

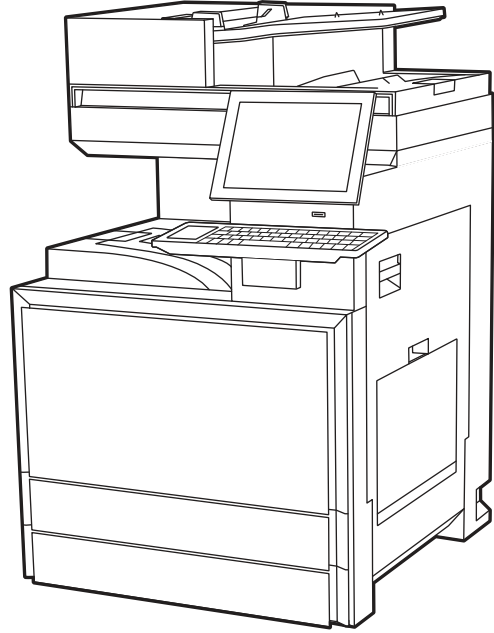
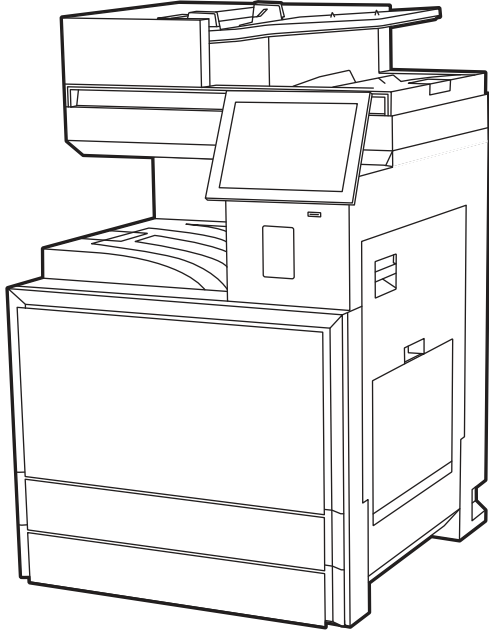


HP LaserJet Managed MFP E826 Series

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82650, E82660, E82670

HP LaserJet Managed Flow MFP E82650, E82660, E82670

Service Manual



www.hp.com/support/ljE826mfp



HP LaserJet Managed E826, E82650, E82660, E82670 - Service Manual

SUMMARY

This guide provides theory of operation, troubleshooting, and repair information.

Legal information

Copyright and License

© Copyright 2023 HP Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 2.2, 01/2023

Revision History

View a list of document revisions.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Table Revision History

Revision Number	Revision Date	Revision Notes
2.2	January, 2023	Removed mention of Drum MEMS PCA per portal request 236, and added part numbers for all CMF panel colors per portal request 238.
2.1	January, 2023	Added control panel diagnostic button note per HPPK PR228. See Control panel - 10.1 inch on page 108 .
2.0	January, 2023	Changed ISA PCA graphics per Portal Request 227
1.3	December, 2022	Remove all 3SJ21-60001 MEMS PCA content per HPPK portal request 207.
1.2	December, 2022	Added keyboard overlay part numbers (theory/parts chapters) per HPPK portal request 205.
1.1	October, 2022	Added a reinstallation step to the replacement procedure for the main formatter board.
1.0	June, 2022	Service manual initial release

Conventions used in this guide

Learn about the conventions used in this publication.



TIP: Tips provide helpful hints or shortcuts.



NOTE: Notes provide important information to explain a concept or to complete a task.



CAUTION: Cautions indicate procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.



WARNING! Warnings alert you to specific procedures that you should follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

Table of contents

1 Product information, configurations, and specifications	1
Printer views.....	1
Printer front view.....	1
Printer back view.....	2
Interface ports view.....	3
Control-panel view.....	4
Specifications.....	6
Basic specifications.....	6
Supported operating systems.....	6
Mobile printing solutions.....	8
Printer dimensions.....	8
Operating-environment range.....	9
General specifications.....	9
Print specifications.....	10
Scan specifications.....	10
Copy specifications.....	11
Paper handling specifications.....	11
Supplies.....	14
Maintenance parts (Long Life Consumables (LLC)).....	15
Network and software specifications.....	15
Network interface.....	15
Options.....	17
Optional input and output devices configuration.....	17
Option specifications.....	20
Color skin configuration.....	24
2 Product installation and maintenance	27
Product installation.....	27
Maintenance.....	27
PM table (Preventive Maintenance).....	27
Cleaning.....	28
Cleaning the paper dust holder.....	28
Cleaning the CTD sensor.....	30
Cleaning the scanner glass.....	31
Cleaning the ADF CIS (Contact Image Sensor).....	32
Cleaning the deve plate guide.....	32
Inspection procedures.....	34
Maintenance (remove and replace).....	36
Counter reset after LLC replacement.....	36
3 Theory of operation	38
Base printer.....	38
Covers (1 of 2).....	38

Covers (2 of 2).....	39
Feeding system.....	40
Feeding system overview.....	40
Feeding system workflow.....	41
Feeding system rollers.....	41
Feeding system sensors.....	43
Feeding system motors and solenoids.....	45
Tray 1 unit.....	47
Tray 1 overview.....	47
Tray 1 unit operation.....	49
Tray 1 unit driving.....	51
Tray 2/3 unit.....	51
Tray 2/3 unit overview.....	52
Tray 2/3 operation.....	60
Tray 2/3 driving.....	62
Registration unit and loop sensing.....	63
Registration unit and loop sensing overview.....	63
Registration unit operation.....	65
Loop sensor operation.....	65
Registration unit driving.....	66
Exit unit.....	66
Exit unit overview.....	66
Job separator (optional).....	69
Exit unit operation for simplex printing.....	69
Exit unit operation for duplex printing.....	70
Exit unit driving.....	71
Duplex unit.....	71
Duplex unit overview.....	71
Duplex unit operation.....	73
Duplex unit driving.....	73
Toner flow system.....	74
Toner flow overview.....	74
Toner flow workflow.....	74
Toner flow sensors.....	75
Toner flow motors.....	76
Toner cartridge.....	77
Toner cartridge overview.....	77
Toner cartridge operation.....	79
Toner dispense and toner cartridge unlock driving.....	79
Toner reservoir.....	80
Toner reservoir overview.....	80
Toner residual amount sensor operation.....	82
Toner reservoir operation.....	83
Toner reservoir driving.....	83
Toner Collection Unit (TCU).....	84
Toner Collection Unit (TCU) overview.....	84
Toner collection unit operation.....	86
Image creation.....	86
Image creation overview.....	87

Image creation workflow	87
Image creation sensors	87
Image creation motors.....	89
Laser Scanning Unit (LSU).....	89
Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) overview.....	90
Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) operation.....	91
Developer and drum unit	91
Developer and drum unit overview.....	92
Developer and drum unit operation.....	93
Developer and drum unit driving.....	94
Color toner density (CTD) sensor operation	95
Color toner density (CTD) sensor cleaning	96
Paper Transfer Belt (PTB).....	96
Paper transfer belt (PTB) overview.....	96
Paper transfer belt (PTB) operation	98
Paper transfer belt (PTB) driving	99
Fuser unit.....	99
Fuser unit overview.....	100
Fuser unit temperature control.....	102
Fuser gap sensor operation.....	102
Fuser wrap jam sensor operation.....	103
Fuser driving.....	104
Environmental sensor, fan, switch.....	105
Environmental sensor, fan, switch overview.....	105
Control panel	108
Control panel - 10.1 inch.....	108
Control panel - 8 inch	110
Hardware configuration.....	112
PCA overview.....	112
Formatter	114
Trusted Platform Module (TPM).....	119
Riser card.....	119
Riser card for HDD	119
Riser card for HDD and USB ports.....	120
Riser card for HDD, USB ports, and accelerator board.....	121
Accelerator	121
Hard disk drive.....	122
USB hub PCA	123
Island of data (IOD).....	123
Echo PCA	124
Power key PCA	124
Keyboard PCA.....	125
Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA.....	127
Paper size sensor PCA.....	127
Drum CRUM PCA	128
Toner Cartridge CRUM PCA.....	128
Eraser PCA	129
Fuser CRUM PCA.....	129
Control panel PCA.....	130

Control Panel 10.1 Inches PCA	131
Control Panel 8 Inches PCA.....	131
High-voltage power supply (HVPS)	132
Low-voltage power supply (LVPS).....	133
Fuser drive board (FDB)	134
Integrated Scan Asset	135
Automatic document feeder system: 300sh Flow ADF	135
ADF cover	135
ADF unit	136
ADF system overview	137
300-sheet ADF workflow	137
ADF sensors.....	138
ADF system motor / solenoid / roller	139
Lift plate unit.....	141
Pickup unit.....	143
Deskew unit.....	146
Scan and exit unit.....	147
Document feeder simplex operation	149
Deskew operation	151
Document feeder hinges operation	152
ADF image scanner cleaning	153
ADF PCA	153
Automatic document feeder system: 200sh Flow ADF, 200sh ADF	155
ADF cover	155
ADF unit	155
ADF system overview	157
200-sheet ADF workflow.....	157
ADF sensors.....	157
ADF system motor / solenoid / roller	158
Lift plate unit.....	159
Pickup unit.....	160
Deskew unit.....	162
Scan and exit unit.....	163
Document feeder simplex operation	164
Deskew operation	166
Document feeder hinges operation	167
ADF image scanner cleaning	168
ADF PCA	168
Scanner system: Tarot Platen.....	169
Scanner workflow	169
Cover	170
Sensor, motor	171
Image scanner and flat-bed glass cleaning	171
PCA	172
Input devices.....	172
Department stand.....	172
Department Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5).....	174
DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers.....	174

DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow	174
DCF (Tray 4, 5) unit.....	175
DCF (Tray 4, 5) rollers.....	176
DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors	178
DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors.....	180
DCF (Tray 4, 5) operation.....	181
DCF (Tray 4, 5) motor operation.....	183
DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA.....	183
Department High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4).....	185
HCI (Tray 4) covers	185
HCI (Tray 4) workflow.....	185
HCI (Tray 4) unit.....	186
HCI (Tray 4) rollers.....	187
HCI (Tray 4) sensors	188
HCI (Tray 4) motors.....	189
HCI (Tray 4) operation	191
HCI (Tray 4) motor operation.....	192
HCI (Tray 4) PCA	194
HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA	195
Department Side High Capacity Input device (sHCI, Tray 5 or 6).....	196
sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) covers.....	196
sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feeding system workflow.....	198
sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) unit	200
sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) roller.....	200
sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) sensors.....	202
sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motors	204
sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) operation.....	206
sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motor operation.....	207
sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) PCA.....	208
Output devices	209
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker.....	209
Detailed Specifications	209
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker covers.....	215
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker unit overview	217
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow	217
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors	218
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids.....	223
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker rollers.....	226
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs.....	227
Bridge unit.....	228
Bridge unit overview.....	228
Stapler-stacker finisher	229
Entrance unit.....	229
Punch unit (optional).....	231
Tray diverter unit	234
Top exit unit	237
Top output tray unit	238
Main exit unit.....	240

Paddle unit.....	242
End fence unit.....	245
Tamper unit.....	247
Stapler unit.....	250
Ejector unit.....	254
Main output tray unit.....	257
Paper holding unit.....	259
Buffer unit.....	263
Booklet maker.....	268
Booklet entrance unit.....	268
Booklet paddle unit.....	270
Booklet end fence unit.....	271
Booklet presser unit.....	273
Booklet tamper unit.....	275
Booklet stapler unit.....	277
Booklet fold unit.....	280
Booklet diverter unit.....	285
Booklet exit unit.....	287
Booklet output tray unit.....	288
PCA.....	291
Finisher main PCA.....	291
Booklet maker PCA.....	294
Manual staple PCA.....	295
Inner finisher.....	296
Detailed specifications.....	296
Cover.....	300
Inner finisher overview.....	302
Inner finisher workflow.....	302
Inner finisher sensor.....	303
Inner finisher motor and solenoid.....	304
Inner finisher roller.....	305
Inner finisher PCA.....	306
Punch unit (optional).....	307
Punch unit overview.....	307
Punch unit operation.....	310
Entrance unit.....	310
Entrance unit overview.....	310
Diverter unit.....	312
Diverter unit overview.....	312
Diverter unit operation.....	313
Exit unit.....	314
Exit unit overview.....	314
Paper support unit.....	316
Paper support unit overview.....	316
Paper support unit operation.....	317
Paddle unit.....	318
Paddle unit overview.....	318
Paddle unit operation.....	320
End fence unit.....	321

End fence unit overview	321
End fence unit operation.....	322
Tamper unit	323
Tamper unit overview	323
Tamper unit operation.....	324
Stapler unit.....	325
Stapler unit overview.....	325
Staple and staple cartridge.....	327
Stapler unit operation.....	328
Ejector unit	329
Ejector unit overview	329
Ejector unit operation.....	331
Output tray and paper holding unit	332
Output tray and paper holding unit overview.....	332
Output tray and paper holding unit operation	335
PCA	336
Inner finisher main PCA.....	336
Inner finisher rear joint PCA.....	338
4 Problem solving.....	340
General troubleshooting guide.....	340
Troubleshooting process	340
Determine the problem source.....	340
Power subsystem.....	340
Control panel checks.....	343
Individual component diagnostics	348
Tools for troubleshooting	351
Problem-solving checklist.....	351
Step 1: Check that the printer power is on	351
Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages.....	351
Step 3: Test print functionality	351
Step 4: Test copy functionality.....	352
Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality.....	352
Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality.....	352
Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer	352
Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality.....	352
Factors that affect printer performance.....	353
Print menu map.....	353
Print current settings pages	353
Additional tools for troubleshooting.....	354
Remote Admin	354
Required software and network connection.....	354
Connect a remote connection.....	356
Disconnect a remote connection.....	361
Clear paper jams	362
Paper jam locations.....	362
Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams	363
Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?.....	364
31.13.yz jam error in the document feeder	364

13.A1 jam error in tray 1 (multipurpose tray).....	366
13.A2, 13.A3, 13.A4 jam errors in tray 2, tray 3, or the optional 2 x 520-sheet trays.....	366
13.E1 jam error in the output bin	368
13.B9, 13.B2, 13.FF jam errors in the right door and fuser area.....	368
HP service and support	369
How to search for printer documentation.....	371
How to search WISE for printer documentation.....	371
Accessing WISE for HP channel partners (CSDP).....	372
Accessing WISE for HP channel partners (HP Partner Portal).....	374
Control panel messages document (CPMD).....	376
Error codes (types and structure).....	376
Image-quality troubleshooting guide (IQTG).....	378

5 Control panel menus.....379

Pre-boot menu options	379
Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.....	379
Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.....	381
Remote Admin.....	389
Required software and network connection	389
Telnet client.....	389
Network connection.....	390
Connect a remote connection.....	391
Start the telnet server function at the printer.....	391
Start the telnet client function at the remote computer	393
Disconnect a remote connection.....	395
Reports menu	396
Settings menu	398
Copy menu.....	434
Scan menu.....	443
Fax menu (when a fax option is installed).....	471
Print menu	475
Supplies menu	475
Trays menu.....	476
Support Tools menu.....	476
Service menu.....	476
Event Log	478
Counts	478
Coverage Report	479
Scanner Settings.....	479
Serial Number	480
Service ID.....	480
Cold Reset Paper	481
Low Alerts.....	481
Reset Supplies Level	481
Consumables Access Control.....	482

Software Version	482
Service Reports.....	483
Print Adjustment	483
Buckle Adjustment	484
Finisher Adjustment	485
Reset Engine NVM.....	493
Engine NVM Read/Write.....	494
Sensors	495
Component tests.....	503
TR Control Mode	509
Low-temperature Idling Mode.....	510
Altitude Adjustment.....	511
Humidity	512
Vapor Mode	512
Footer	513
PTT Test Mode.....	513
Test Support.....	513
Part Replacement Count	513
Reset Supplies.....	514
Fax V.29 Speed.....	514
Maintenance menu	514
Backup/Restore.....	515
Import/Export.....	515
Custom Color	515
Auto Tone Adjustment.....	515
CTD Sensor Cleaning.....	516
Manual Tone Adjustment	516
Toner Density Calibration.....	516
Calibrate Scanner.....	516
USB Firmware Upgrade.....	516
License Management	516
Troubleshooting menu	519
Configuration/Status Pages	519
Fax Reports.....	520
Other Pages	520
Fax T.30 Trace Report.....	520
Fax V.34.....	521
JBIG Compression.....	521
Fax Speaker Mode.....	521
Fax Service Log.....	521
PQ Troubleshooting Pages.....	521
Advanced Print Quality Pages	524
Event Log	524
Paper Path Page.....	524
Run Fax Test.....	524
Retrieve Diagnostic Data.....	524
Retrieve Fax Diagnostic Data.....	525
6 Remove and replace.....	526

Before servicing.....	526
Order parts by authorized service providers	526
Ordering	526
Orderable parts	526
How to use parts lists and diagrams.....	526
ESD precautions	527
Service approach.....	527
Precautions when replacing parts.....	527
Before performing service	528
After performing service	528
Post-service test	529
Print-quality test	529
Copy-quality test.....	529
Fax-quality test.....	529
Parts removal order.....	529
Base printer	529
Covers.....	529
Base covers.....	529
Removal and replacement: Rear upper cover	529
Removal and replacement: Rear lower cover	533
Removal and replacement: Controller cover	536
Removal and replacement: Exit rear cover.....	538
Removal and replacement: Left top cover	541
Removal and replacement: Left upper cover.....	543
Removal and replacement: Left cover	547
Removal and replacement: Middle upper cover	551
Removal and replacement: Right door SHCI dummy cover	553
Removal and replacement: Right upper cover	555
Removal and replacement: Right rear cover.....	563
Removal and replacement: Right front cover	565
Removal and replacement: Right middle cover assembly.....	568
Removal and replacement: Right middle cover.....	576
Removal and replacement: Power key	584
Removal and replacement: Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover.....	593
Removal and replacement: Middle left cover	594
Removal and replacement: Exit cover stacker	597
Removal and replacement: Inner cover	600
Removal and replacement: Tie stoppers	608
Removal and replacement: Front lower cover.....	610
Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly.....	613
Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly - CMF panel.....	615
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 color panel.....	619
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 color panel.....	621
Feeding system.....	623
Right door assembly	623
Removal and replacement: Right door assembly.....	623
Removal and replacement: Right door front link.....	627
Removal and replacement: Right door front damper	632

Removal and replacement: Right door front damper bracket.....	637
Tray 1 unit	642
Removal and replacement: Tray 1 unit.....	642
Removal and replacement: Tray 1 empty sensor.....	660
Removal and replacement: Tray 1 clutch.....	679
Removal and replacement: Tray 1 roller kit (pickup/forward/reverse).....	689
Tray 2-3 units.....	692
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 or Tray 3.....	692
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup assembly.....	694
Removal and replacement: Tray 2, 3 roller kit (pickup/forward/reverse).....	703
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 empty and stack height sensors.....	707
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 prefeed sensor	719
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 open and paper size sensor	731
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup drive assembly	734
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup motor.....	740
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	743
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup motor	746
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup assembly	749
Removal and replacement: Tray 2, 3 roller kit (pickup/forward/reverse).....	757
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 empty and stack height sensors.....	760
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 prefeed sensor	771
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 open and paper size sensor	781
Removal and replacement: Tray heater (accessory).....	785
Removal and replacement: Feed drive assembly	788
Removal and replacement: Feed motor.....	796
Removal and replacement: Feed 2 sensor	806
Registration unit and loop sensing unit.....	816
Removal and replacement: Registration unit.....	816
Removal and replacement: Registration sensor.....	823
Removal and replacement: Registration drive assembly.....	831
Removal and replacement: Registration motor	837
Removal and replacement: Paper transfer belt (PBT)	845
Removal and replacement: Loop sensor 1.....	851
Removal and replacement: Loop sensor 2	859
Removal and replacement: Loop actuator	867
Removal and replacement: Right door exit assembly.....	874
Removal and replacement: Fuser out sensor	877
Removal and replacement: Fuser out sensor harness	881
Removal and replacement: Paper dust holder assembly.....	884
Exit unit.....	886
Removal and replacement: Exit unit	886
Removal and replacement: Output bin 1 sensor.....	901
Removal and replacement: Return gate solenoid.....	917
Removal and replacement: Exit 2 motor	933
Removal and replacement: Exit 2 sensor	948
Removal and replacement: Duplex jam 1 sensor.....	963
Removal and replacement: Duplex 1 motor	979
Removal and replacement: Exit stack guide.....	994
Duplex unit	996

Removal and replacement: Duplex assembly	996
Removal and replacement: Duplex jam 2 sensor	1005
Removal and replacement: Duplex 2 motor	1015
Toner flow	1022
Toner cartridge	1022
Removal and replacement: Toner dispense motor assembly	1022
Removal and replacement: Toner dispense motor	1032
Removal and replacement: Toner dispense motor sensor	1040
Removal and replacement: Toner cartridge (control panel method)	1052
Removal and replacement: Toner cartridge (disassemble method)	1053
Removal and replacement: Toner CRUM module assembly	1063
Removal and replacement: Guide toner cartridge and toner residual amount sensor	1072
Reservoir unit	1084
Removal and replacement: Reservoir unit	1084
Removal and replacement: Reservoir drive assembly	1099
Toner collection unit	1114
Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU)	1114
Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) detection sensor	1116
Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) full sensor	1124
Image creation	1132
Laser scanner unit (LSU)	1132
Removal and replacement: Laser scanner unit (LSU)	1132
Developer and drum	1137
Removal and replacement: Drum unit	1137
Removal and replacement: Black developer unit	1140
Removal and replacement: Developer powder	1145
Removal and replacement: Developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly	1154
Removal and replacement: Drum and PTB motor	1161
Removal and replacement: Developer motor	1164
Removal and replacement: Cable guide	1167
Removal and replacement: CTD sensor assembly	1170
Fuser unit	1177
Removal and replacement: Fuser unit	1178
Removal and replacement: Fuser and exit drive assembly	1180
Removal and replacement: Fuser and exit motor	1185
Removal and replacement: Fuser gap motor	1190
Removal and replacement: Fuser gap sensor	1194
Environmental sensor, switch, and fan	1204
Base sensor, switch, and fan	1204
Removal and replacement: Outer temperature humidity sensor assembly	1204
Removal and replacement: LVPS fan	1212
Removal and replacement: FDB fan	1215
Removal and replacement: LVPS FDB fan assembly	1219
Removal and replacement: Developer fan assembly	1223
Removal and replacement: Developer suction duct	1234
Removal and replacement: Fuser ventilation duct	1237
Removal and replacement: LSU fan	1241
Removal and replacement: Front door switch assembly	1245
Removal and replacement: Right door switch assembly	1253

Control panel	1257
Base control panel.....	1257
Removal and replacement: Control panel.....	1257
PCAs.....	1260
Main PCA	1260
Removal and replacement: Formatter.....	1260
Removal and replacement: Riser card and cradle.....	1267
Removal and replacement: Rivet-HDD	1271
Removal and replacement: Cradle-HDD	1273
Removal and replacement: Hard disk 500GB	1279
Sub PCAs.....	1283
Removal and replacement: Accelerator card (optional).....	1283
Removal and replacement: USB hub PCA.....	1287
Removal and replacement: Island of data (IOD).....	1295
Removal and replacement: Echo PCA and rivet	1299
Removal and replacement: Power key PCA.....	1303
Removal and replacement: Keyboard (Flow models)	1312
Removal and replacement: Fax card (optional).....	1318
Power supply PCAs	1321
Removal and replacement: High-voltage power supply (HVPS).....	1321
Removal and replacement: Low-voltage power supply (LVPS).....	1324
Removal and replacement: Fuser-drive board (FDB).....	1328
Integrated scanner asset (ISA).....	1333
Whole unit.....	1333
300-Sheet ISA for z bundle.....	1333
Removal and replacement: Integrated scanner for Flow z bundle (5QK37A for Flex-build)	1333
200-Sheet ISA for dn bundle	1337
Removal and replacement: Integrated scanner for dn bundle (5QK35A for Flex-build).....	1338
ADF (Automatic document feeder).....	1342
300-Sheet ADF for z bundle.....	1343
Removal and replacement: ADF (300sh).....	1343
Removal and replacement: ADF front cover (300sh).....	1352
Removal and replacement: ADF CMF panel.....	1358
Removal and replacement: ADF rear cover (300sh).....	1360
Removal and replacement: ADF top cover (300sh).....	1365
Removal and replacement: ADF white backing kit (300sh).....	1367
Removal and replacement: ADF input tray (300sh).....	1372
Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit (300sh)	1374
Removal and replacement: ADF image scanner.....	1377
Removal and replacement: ADF PCA (300sh).....	1380
Removal and replacement: ADF flat-flexible cable (300sh).....	1386
Removal and replacement: ADF power cable (300sh).....	1392
Removal and replacement: ADF hinge kit (300sh)	1398
Removal and replacement: ADF hinge damper module 300sh)	1406
200-Sheet ADF for dn bundle	1412
Removal and replacement: ADF (200sh).....	1412
Removal and replacement: ADF CMF panel.....	1419
Removal and replacement: ADF white backing kit (200sh).....	1422

Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit (200sh)	1427
Removal and replacement: ADF image scanner	1431
Removal and replacement: ADF PCA (200sh)	1433
Removal and replacement: ADF flat-flexible cable (200sh).....	1439
Removal and replacement: ADF power cable (200sh)	1445
Removal and replacement: ADF hinge kit (200sh).....	1451
Removal and replacement: ADF hinge damper module (200sh).....	1459
Flatbed Scanner (Tarot).....	1466
Whole unit	1466
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner whole unit.....	1466
Covers	1473
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner rear cover.....	1473
PCA, harness, and sensor	1476
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner PCA assembly.....	1476
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner FFC 50 pin.....	1480
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner FFC 68 pin.....	1485
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner discrete power cable.....	1490
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner flatbed open sensor.....	1495
Input device (department).....	1498
sHCI (department)	1498
Covers	1498
Removal and replacement: sHCI right cover	1498
Removal and replacement: sHCI rear cover.....	1500
Removal and replacement: sHCI harness cover	1502
Removal and replacement: sHCI rear top cover	1504
Removal and replacement: sHCI pickup cover.....	1507
Removal and replacement: sHCI top cover.....	1510
Removal and replacement: sHCI front cover.....	1515
Removal and replacement: sHCI front top cover.....	1518
Removal and replacement: sHCI link door 1st front and rear.....	1522
Removal and replacement: sHCI link door 2nd front and rear	1527
Removal and replacement: sHCI link holder front and rear	1532
Unit.....	1536
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) pickup assembly	1536
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) top cover open switch assembly	1542
Roller.....	1546
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) tray roller kit.....	1546
Motor	1549
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) pickup, feed drive assembly	1549
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) pickup motor	1552
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) feed motor	1555
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) lift drive assembly.....	1559
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) lift motor	1562
Sensor	1565
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) detection sensor 1.....	1565
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) detection sensor 2.....	1569
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) door open sensor	1572
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) paper level sensors.....	1575

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) stack height and paper empty sensors.....	1579
Removal and replacement: sHCI prefeed 5 sensor	1583
PCA	1588
Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) PCA.....	1588
DCF (department).....	1591
Covers	1591
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover	1591
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.....	1593
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover.....	1595
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door	1597
Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 CMF panels.....	1599
Removal and replacement: Caster wheel	1601
Removal and replacement: Holder wheel kit - guide adjust	1603
Unit	1606
Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 cassettes.....	1606
Roller	1608
Removal and replacement: DCF roller kit	1608
Motor	1611
Removal and replacement: DCF pickup drive assembly	1611
Removal and replacement: Tray 4 pickup motor	1614
Removal and replacement: Tray 5 pickup motor	1616
Removal and replacement: DCF feed drive assembly.....	1619
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) feed motor	1621
Sensor	1624
Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors.....	1624
Removal and replacement: Tray 4 pickup assembly	1627
Removal and replacement: Tray 4 paper empty and stack height sensors	1631
Removal and replacement: Tray 4 prefeed sensor	1635
Removal and replacement: Tray 5 pickup assembly	1640
Removal and replacement: Tray 5 paper empty and stack height sensors	1645
Removal and replacement: Tray 5 prefeed sensor	1649
Removal and replacement: DCF feed sensor.....	1655
PCA and harness	1660
Removal and replacement: Tray heater	1660
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA.....	1664
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door open switch holder assembly	1667
Removal and replacement: DCF IF harness	1670
Removal and replacement: DCF door open switch sensor and harness.....	1673
Removal and replacement: DCF motor harness 2nd.....	1677
Removal and replacement: DCF sensor harness 1st.....	1680
Removal and replacement: DCF sensor harness 2nd	1684
Removal and replacement: DCF size harness.....	1688
HCI (department).....	1691
Covers	1691
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) right cover	1691
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) rear cover	1693
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) left cover.....	1695
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) right door.....	1697
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) front CMF panel.....	1699

Removal and replacement: Caster wheel.....	1701
Removal and replacement: Holder wheel kit - guide adjust.....	1702
Unit.....	1705
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) unit.....	1705
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) cassette.....	1708
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly.....	1710
Roller.....	1714
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) roller kit.....	1714
Motor.....	1717
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift and lift motors.....	1717
Removal and replacement: Shift plate.....	1721
Removal and replacement: Knockup plate assembly.....	1726
Removal and replacement: Paper gate.....	1730
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) feed motor drive assembly.....	1733
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) pickup motor drive assembly.....	1735
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift gate solenoid.....	1738
Sensor.....	1741
Removal and replacement: Prefeed 4 sensor.....	1742
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) feed sensor.....	1747
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) paper empty and stack height sensors.....	1753
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) knockup home and shift tray end sensors.....	1756
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 1 and 2.....	1762
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift tray empty and home sensors.....	1765
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) tray open sensor.....	1769
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) gate solenoid home sensor.....	1772
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) gate solenoid home sensor.....	1775
PCA and harness.....	1779
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) PCA.....	1779
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA.....	1782
Removal and replacement: HCI main IF harness.....	1786
Removal and replacement: HCI sub tray IF harness.....	1788
Removal and replacement: HCI DC motor IF (lift and shift).....	1791
Removal and replacement: HCI motor IF (pick and feed).....	1793
Removal and replacement: HCI inner drawer IF.....	1797
Output device.....	1801
Stapler/stacker and (or) Booklet finisher.....	1801
Cover.....	1801
Removal and replacement: Front door.....	1801
Removal and replacement: Caster cover.....	1803
Removal and replacement: Left lower cover.....	1805
Removal and replacement: Left upper cover.....	1813
Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray.....	1823
Removal and replacement: Top output tray.....	1825
Removal and replacement: Main output tray.....	1828
Removal and replacement: Rear cover.....	1830
Removal and replacement: Front cover.....	1832
Removal and replacement: Punch cover.....	1837
Removal and replacement: Top cover.....	1839

Removal and replacement: Top door	1841
Removal and replacement: Right upper cover	1845
Removal and replacement: Front lower left cover	1848
Removal and replacement: Front lower right cover	1853
Removal and replacement: Shaft hinge - door	1855
Removal and replacement: Caster	1857
Removal and replacement: Caster fix nut.....	1860
Removal and replacement: Booklet front cover	1862
Bridge unit.....	1864
Removal and replacement: Bridge unit.....	1865
Removal and replacement: Bridge door sensor.....	1868
Removal and replacement: Bridge entrance sensor	1872
Removal and replacement: Bridge exit sensor.....	1877
Removal and replacement: Bridge motor.....	1883
Entrance unit.....	1888
Removal and replacement: Entrance sensor	1888
Removal and replacement: Entrance motor assembly	1903
Removal and replacement: Entrance motor.....	1907
Punch unit.....	1911
Removal and replacement: Punch unit.....	1911
Tray diverter unit	1913
Removal and replacement: Top jam cover assembly	1913
Removal and replacement: Tray diverter	1917
Removal and replacement: Top door open switch	1921
Removal and replacement: Tray diverter cam	1925
Removal and replacement: Tray diverter home sensor	1933
Top exit unit.....	1940
Removal and replacement: Top exit sensor	1941
Removal and replacement: Exit motor assembly	1950
Removal and replacement: Exit motor	1954
Top output tray unit	1957
Removal and replacement: Top lower feed assembly.....	1957
Removal and replacement: Tray extension.....	1966
Removal and replacement: Top output tray paper full sensor	1969
Main exit unit	1976
Removal and replacement: Main exit sensor	1976
Removal and replacement: Main exit cam motor assembly.....	1983
Removal and replacement: Main exit cam home sensor	1988
Removal and replacement: Main exit cam motor	1993
Removal and replacement: Front door switch	1998
Paddle unit	2004
Removal and replacement: Paddle.....	2004
Removal and replacement: Paddle motor assembly	2014
Removal and replacement: Paddle home sensor	2019
Removal and replacement: Paddle motor	2025
End fence unit.....	2030
Removal and replacement: End fence home sensor	2030
Removal and replacement: End fence motor assembly.....	2044
Removal and replacement: End fence motor	2049

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch guide.....	2054
Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch lower guide.....	2063
Tamper unit	2072
Removal and replacement: Front tamper.....	2072
Removal and replacement: Front tamper home sensor.....	2083
Removal and replacement: Front tamper motor	2094
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper	2105
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper home sensor	2115
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper motor	2126
Stapler unit.....	2138
Removal and replacement: Stapler unit	2138
Removal and replacement: Staple cartridge.....	2144
Removal and replacement: Stapler front sensor.....	2146
Removal and replacement: Stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors	2153
Removal and replacement: Manual staple sensor.....	2160
Removal and replacement: Stapler position motor	2166
Ejector unit	2174
Removal and replacement: Ejector unit.....	2174
Removal and replacement: Ejector sensor	2187
Removal and replacement: Ejector 1 home sensor	2204
Removal and replacement: Ejector 1 motor sensor	2219
Removal and replacement: Ejector 2 motor sensor	2234
Main output tray unit.....	2249
Removal and replacement: Main output tray.....	2249
Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack sensor	2251
Removal and replacement: Main output tray lower limit sensor	2263
Removal and replacement: Main output tray motor sensor	2275
Removal and replacement: Main output tray motor drive assembly	2279
Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch.....	2282
Paper holding unit	2292
Removal and replacement: Front and rear paper holding sensor.....	2292
Removal and replacement: Paper holding home sensor	2305
Removal and replacement: Paper holding motor drive assembly.....	2317
Buffer unit	2329
Removal and replacement: Buffer solenoid assembly.....	2329
Removal and replacement: Buffer motor	2336
Booklet finisher (only).....	2340
Booklet maker	2341
Removal and replacement: Booklet maker	2341
Removal and replacement: Harness guide.....	2350
Booklet entrance unit	2362
Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance unit.....	2362
Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance sensor.....	2374
Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly.....	2387
Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance motor	2391
Booklet paddle unit	2402
Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle home sensor	2402
Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle motor assembly.....	2405
Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle motor	2409

Booklet end fence unit.....	2414
Removal and replacement: Booklet end fence home sensor.....	2414
Removal and replacement: Booklet end fence motor.....	2426
Booklet presser unit.....	2437
Removal and replacement: Booklet presser home sensor.....	2437
Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper.....	2442
Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper home sensor.....	2459
Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper motor.....	2476
Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper sensor.....	2493
Booklet stapler unit.....	2511
Removal and replacement: Booklet stapler.....	2511
Removal and replacement: Booklet staple cartridge.....	2528
Booklet fold unit.....	2530
Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade assembly.....	2530
Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade home sensor.....	2542
Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly.....	2548
Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade motor.....	2553
Removal and replacement: Booklet blade home sensor.....	2559
Removal and replacement: Booklet blade motor.....	2575
Removal and replacement: Booklet fold motor assembly.....	2580
Removal and replacement: Booklet fold motor.....	2584
Booklet diverter unit.....	2588
Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter.....	2588
Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter home sensor.....	2604
Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter motor assembly.....	2610
Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter motor.....	2616
Booklet output tray unit.....	2622
Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray.....	2622
Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray sensor.....	2624
PCA.....	2632
Removal and replacement: Main PCA.....	2632
Removal and replacement: PCA.....	2637
Miscellaneous parts.....	2647
Removal and replacement: Finisher mounting brackets.....	2647
Inner finisher.....	2649
Whole unit and rail.....	2650
Removal and replacement: Inner finisher.....	2650
Removal and replacement: Guide rails.....	2653
Cover.....	2657
Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly.....	2657
Removal and replacement: Top cover assembly.....	2661
Removal and replacement: Middle cover assembly.....	2667
Removal and replacement: Punch cover assembly.....	2673
Removal and replacement: Output tray assembly.....	2677
Removal and replacement: PCA cover.....	2681
Removal and replacement: Finisher sub stay assembly.....	2684
Removal and replacement: Rear cover - base.....	2694
Removal and replacement: Rear cover - punch.....	2697
Removal and replacement: Lock release handle.....	2699

Removal and replacement: Main interface harness	2701
Removal and replacement: Exit bin full.....	2712
Punch unit.....	2715
Removal and replacement: Hole punch.....	2715
Removal and replacement: Punch waste full sensor	2720
Entrance unit.....	2730
Removal and replacement: Entrance sensor	2730
Removal and replacement: Entrance motor assembly.....	2735
Removal and replacement: Entrance motor	2745
Removal and replacement: Entrance motor timing belt	2755
Removal and replacement: Entrance roller.....	2760
Removal and replacement: Middle roller.....	2771
Exit unit.....	2778
Removal and replacement: Exit roller assembly	2778
Removal and replacement: Exit sensor	2787
Removal and replacement: Exit sensor actuator	2797
Removal and replacement: Exit motor assembly	2807
Removal and replacement: Exit motor	2811
Paper support unit.....	2816
Removal and replacement: Rear paper support.....	2816
Removal and replacement: Paper support home sensor.....	2823
Removal and replacement: Paper support motor assembly.....	2831
Removal and replacement: Paper support motor	2839
Removal and replacement: Front paper support.....	2847
Paddle unit.....	2854
Removal and replacement: Main paddle assembly	2854
Removal and replacement: Sub paddle assembly	2863
Removal and replacement: Main paddle home sensor.....	2870
Removal and replacement: Main paddle motor assembly	2877
End fence unit.....	2881
Removal and replacement: End fence sensor	2881
Tamper unit	2892
Removal and replacement: Front tamper	2892
Removal and replacement: Front tamper motor	2899
Removal and replacement: Front tamper home sensor	2906
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper	2913
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper motor	2919
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper home sensor	2926
Stapler unit.....	2933
Removal and replacement: Stapler assembly.....	2933
Removal and replacement: Staple cartridge.....	2937
Removal and replacement: Stapler position sensor	2939
Removal and replacement: Stapler position motor	2951
Ejector unit	2960
Removal and replacement: Ejector	2960
Output tray and paper holding unit.....	2968
Removal and replacement: Output tray motor assembly	2968
Removal and replacement: Output tray motor	2974
Removal and replacement: Output tray motor sensor	2980

Removal and replacement: Output tray lower limit switch assembly.....	2986
Removal and replacement: Output tray top of stack sensor kit.....	2992
Removal and replacement: Paper holding actuator.....	3003
Removal and replacement: Paper holding kit.....	3014
Removal and replacement: Paper holding solenoid.....	3024
Removal and replacement: Paper holding sensor.....	3035
PCA and switch.....	3046
Removal and replacement: PCA.....	3046
Removal and replacement: Rear joint PCA.....	3057
Removal and replacement: Front cover switch.....	3067
Removal and replacement: Top cover switch.....	3078
Removal and replacement: Docking sensor.....	3082

7 Parts and diagrams3086

Base printer.....	3086
Covers.....	3086
Parts and diagrams: Covers.....	3086
Feeding system.....	3089
Tray 1.....	3089
Parts and diagrams: Tray 1.....	3089
Tray 2, 3.....	3091
Parts and diagrams: Tray 2, 3.....	3091
Registration and loop sensors.....	3092
Parts and diagrams: Registration and loop sensors.....	3092
Exit unit.....	3094
Parts and diagrams: Exit unit.....	3094
Duplex.....	3095
Parts and diagrams: Duplex.....	3095
Toner flow.....	3096
Toner cartridge.....	3096
Parts and diagrams: Toner.....	3096
Reservoir.....	3097
Parts and diagrams: Reservoir.....	3097
Toner collection unit (TCU).....	3098
Parts and diagrams: Toner collection unit.....	3098
Image creation.....	3099
Laser scanner unit (LSU).....	3099
Parts and diagrams: laser scanner unit.....	3099
Developer.....	3099
Parts and diagrams: Developer.....	3100
Drum.....	3100
Parts and diagrams: Drum.....	3100
CTD.....	3101
Parts and diagrams: CTD.....	3101
PTB.....	3102
Parts and diagrams: PTB.....	3102
Fuser.....	3103
Parts and diagrams: Fuser.....	3103
Sensor and fan.....	3104

Parts and diagrams: Sensor and fan	3104
PCA.....	3105
Parts and diagrams: PCA.....	3106
ADF / Image scanner assembly.....	3107
Image scanner assembly (ISA).....	3107
Parts and diagrams: ISA	3108
300sh flow ADF	3109
Parts and diagrams: 300sh flow ADF (1 of 2).....	3109
Parts and diagrams: 300sh flow ADF (2 of 2).....	3110
200sh ADF	3112
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (1 of 2).....	3112
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (2 of 2).....	3113
Tarot platen.....	3113
Parts and diagrams: Tarot platen.....	3114
Input devices.....	3115
Department Dual cassette feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5).....	3116
Parts and diagrams: DCF (1 of 2).....	3116
Parts and diagrams: DCF (2 of 2).....	3118
Department High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4).....	3120
Parts and diagrams: HCI (1 of 2).....	3120
Parts and diagrams: HCI (2 of 2).....	3122
Department Side High Capacity Input device (sHCI, Tray 5 or 6).....	3124
Parts and diagrams: sHCI (1 of 2).....	3124
Parts and diagrams: sHCI (2 of 2).....	3126
Output device	3127
Inner finisher	3128
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (1 of 5).....	3128
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (2 of 5).....	3129
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (3 of 5).....	3131
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (4 of 5).....	3133
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (5 of 5).....	3135
Stapler/Stacker finisher.....	3137
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4).....	3137
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4).....	3139
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4).....	3141
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4).....	3142
Booklet finisher	3144
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (1 of 5).....	3144
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (2 of 5).....	3146
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (3 of 5).....	3148
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (4 of 5).....	3150
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (5 of 5).....	3151
Alphabetical parts list.....	3153
Base printer	3086
Covers	3086
Parts and diagrams: Covers.....	3086
Feeding system.....	3089

Tray 1	3089
Parts and diagrams: Tray 1.....	3089
Tray 2, 3	3091
Parts and diagrams: Tray 2, 3.....	3091
Registration and loop sensors	3092
Parts and diagrams: Registration and loop sensors.....	3092
Exit unit.....	3094
Parts and diagrams: Exit unit.....	3094
Duplex.....	3095
Parts and diagrams: Duplex	3095
Toner flow	3096
Toner cartridge	3096
Parts and diagrams: Toner	3096
Reservoir	3097
Parts and diagrams: Reservoir.....	3097
Toner collection unit (TCU).....	3098
Parts and diagrams: Toner collection unit.....	3098
Image creation	3099
Laser scanner unit (LSU).....	3099
Parts and diagrams: laser scanner unit	3099
Developer.....	3099
Parts and diagrams: Developer	3100
Drum.....	3100
Parts and diagrams: Drum	3100
CTD	3101
Parts and diagrams: CTD	3101
PTB.....	3102
Parts and diagrams: PTB	3102
Fuser.....	3103
Parts and diagrams: Fuser	3103
Sensor and fan.....	3104
Parts and diagrams: Sensor and fan	3104
PCA	3105
Parts and diagrams: PCA.....	3106
ADF / Image scanner assembly.....	3107
Image scanner assembly (ISA).....	3107
Parts and diagrams: ISA.....	3108
300sh flow ADF.....	3109
Parts and diagrams: 300sh flow ADF (1 of 2)	3109
Parts and diagrams: 300sh flow ADF (2 of 2)	3110
200sh ADF	3112
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (1 of 2).....	3112
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (2 of 2).....	3113
Tarot platen	3113
Parts and diagrams: Tarot platen.....	3114
Input devices.....	3115
Department Dual cassette feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5).....	3116
Parts and diagrams: DCF (1 of 2).....	3116

Parts and diagrams: DCF (2 of 2).....	3118
Department High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4).....	3120
Parts and diagrams: HCI (1 of 2).....	3120
Parts and diagrams: HCI (2 of 2).....	3122
Department Side High Capacity Input device (sHCI, Tray 5 or 6).....	3124
Parts and diagrams: sHCI (1 of 2).....	3124
Parts and diagrams: sHCI (2 of 2).....	3126
Output device.....	3127
Inner finisher	3128
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (1 of 5)	3128
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (2 of 5).....	3129
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (3 of 5)	3131
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (4 of 5)	3133
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (5 of 5)	3135
Stapler/Stacker finisher	3137
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4).....	3137
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4).....	3139
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4).....	3141
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4).....	3142
Booklet finisher	3144
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (1 of 5)	3144
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (2 of 5)	3146
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (3 of 5)	3148
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (4 of 5)	3150
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (5 of 5)	3151
Numerical parts list.....	3175
Base printer	3086
Covers	3086
Parts and diagrams: Covers.....	3086
Feeding system.....	3089
Tray 1	3089
Parts and diagrams: Tray 1.....	3089
Tray 2, 3	3091
Parts and diagrams: Tray 2, 3.....	3091
Registration and loop sensors	3092
Parts and diagrams: Registration and loop sensors.....	3092
Exit unit.....	3094
Parts and diagrams: Exit unit	3094
Duplex	3095
Parts and diagrams: Duplex	3095
Toner flow	3096
Toner cartridge	3096
Parts and diagrams: Toner	3096
Reservoir	3097
Parts and diagrams: Reservoir.....	3097
Toner collection unit (TCU).....	3098
Parts and diagrams: Toner collection unit.....	3098
Image creation	3099

Laser scanner unit (LSU).....	3099
Parts and diagrams: laser scanner unit	3099
Developer.....	3099
Parts and diagrams: Developer	3100
Drum.....	3100
Parts and diagrams: Drum	3100
CTD.....	3101
Parts and diagrams: CTD	3101
PTB.....	3102
Parts and diagrams: PTB	3102
Fuser.....	3103
Parts and diagrams: Fuser	3103
Sensor and fan.....	3104
Parts and diagrams: Sensor and fan	3104
PCA.....	3105
Parts and diagrams: PCA.....	3106
ADF / Image scanner assembly.....	3107
Image scanner assembly (ISA).....	3107
Parts and diagrams: ISA.....	3108
300sh flow ADF.....	3109
Parts and diagrams: 300sh flow ADF (1 of 2)	3109
Parts and diagrams: 300sh flow ADF (2 of 2)	3110
200sh ADF.....	3112
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (1 of 2).....	3112
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (2 of 2).....	3113
Tarot platen	3113
Parts and diagrams: Tarot platen.....	3114
Input devices.....	3115
Department Dual cassette feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5).....	3116
Parts and diagrams: DCF (1 of 2).....	3116
Parts and diagrams: DCF (2 of 2).....	3118
Department High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4).....	3120
Parts and diagrams: HCI (1 of 2).....	3120
Parts and diagrams: HCI (2 of 2).....	3122
Department Side High Capacity Input device (sHCI, Tray 5 or 6).....	3124
Parts and diagrams: sHCI (1 of 2).....	3124
Parts and diagrams: sHCI (2 of 2).....	3126
Output device.....	3127
Inner finisher	3128
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (1 of 5)	3128
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (2 of 5).....	3129
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (3 of 5)	3131
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (4 of 5)	3133
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (5 of 5)	3135
Stapler/Stacker finisher	3137
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4).....	3137
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4).....	3139
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4).....	3141

Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4).....	3142
Booklet finisher	3144
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (1 of 5)	3144
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (2 of 5)	3146
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (3 of 5).....	3148
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (4 of 5).....	3150
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (5 of 5).....	3151
8 Electrical mechanical relationships (EMR) diagrams.....	3197
Base printer	3197
EMR diagrams: Tray 1.....	3197
EMR diagrams: Tray 2/3.....	3199
EMR diagrams: Registration and loop sensors.....	3201
EMR diagrams: Exit unit.....	3202
EMR diagrams: Duplex.....	3203
EMR diagrams: Toner cartridge.....	3204
EMR diagrams: Reservoir	3205
EMR diagrams: Toner collection unit	3206
EMR diagrams: LSU	3207
EMR diagrams: DEV	3208
EMR diagrams: Drum	3209
EMR diagrams: CTD	3210
EMR diagrams: CPR	3211
EMR diagrams: Fuser	3212
EMR diagrams: Sensor and Fan.....	3213
EMR diagrams: PCA	3215
Input devices.....	3231
EMR diagrams: Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF)	3231
EMR diagrams: High Capacity Input Tray (HCI).....	3235
EMR diagrams: Side High Capacity Input device (sHCI).....	3240
Output devices	3243
EMR diagrams: Inner finisher	3243
EMR diagrams: Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher	3253
Appendix A Certificate of Volatility	3272
Certificate of Volatility	3272
Glossary of terms.....	3275
Index.....	3285

List of videos

View a video of how to use the HP Partner First Portal to access WISE.....	369
View a video of how to access WISE for internal HP users.....	370
View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos (model number search).....	371
View a video of ow to use WISE to find technical support videos (Product detail page [PDP] search).....	371
View a video of how to access WISE (HP channel partners).....	376
View a video of removing and replacing the rear upper cover.....	530
View a video of removing and replacing the rear lower cover.....	533
View a video of removing and replacing the controller cover.....	536
View a video of removing and replacing the exit rear cover.....	538
View a video of removing and replacing the left top cover.....	541
View a video of removing and replacing the left upper cover.....	543
View a video of removing and replacing the left cover.....	547
View a video of removing and replacing the middle upper cover.....	551
View a video of removing and replacing the right door sHCl dummy cover.....	553
View a video of removing and replacing the right upper cover.....	555
View a video of removing and replacing the right rear cover.....	563
View a video of removing and replacing the right front cover.....	566
View a video of removing and replacing the right middle cover assembly.....	568
View a video of removing and replacing the right middle cover.....	576
View a video of removing and replacing the power key.....	584
View a video of removing and replacing the HIP cover.....	593
View a video of removing and replacing the middle left cover.....	595
View a video of removing and replacing the exit cover stacker.....	597
View a video of removing and replacing the inner cover.....	600
View a video of removing and replacing the front lower cover.....	610
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 color panel.....	619
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 color panel.....	621
View a video of removing and replacing the right door.....	623
View a video of removing and replacing the right door front link.....	627

View a video of removing and replacing the right door front damper.....	632
View a video of removing and replacing the right door front damper bracket.....	637
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 unit.....	642
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 empty sensor.....	660
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 clutch.....	679
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 roller kit.....	689
View a video of removing and replacing Tray 2 or Tray 3.....	692
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup assembly.....	694
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 roller kit.....	703
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 roller kit.....	703
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 empty sensor.....	707
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 stack height sensor.....	707
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 prefeed sensor.....	719
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 open and paper size sensor.....	731
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly.....	735
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup motor.....	740
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.....	743
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup motor.....	746
View a video of removing and replacing the tray 3 pickup assembly.....	749
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 roller kit.....	757
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 roller kit.....	757
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 empty sensor.....	761
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 stack height sensor.....	761
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 prefeed sensor.....	771
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 open and paper size sensor.....	781
View a video of removing and replacing the tray heaters.....	785
View a video of removing and replacing the feed drive assembly.....	788
View a video of removing and replacing the feed motor.....	796
View a video of removing and replacing the feed 2 sensor.....	806
View a video of removing and replacing the registration sensor.....	823
View a video of removing and replacing the registration drive assembly.....	831
View a video of removing and replacing the registration motor.....	837

View a video of removing and replacing the PTB.....	845
View a video of removing and replacing the loop sensor 1.....	851
View a video of removing and replacing the loop sensor 2.....	859
View a video of removing and replacing the loop actuator.....	868
View a video of removing and replacing the right door exit assembly.....	875
View a video of removing and replacing the fuser out sensor.....	877
View a video of removing and replacing the fuser out sensor harness.....	881
View a video of removing and replacing the paper dust holder.....	884
View a video of removing and replacing the exit unit.....	887
View a video of removing and replacing the output bin 1 sensor.....	901
View a video of removing and replacing the return gate solenoid.....	917
View a video of removing and replacing the exit 2 motor.....	933
View a video of removing and replacing the exit 2 sensor.....	948
View a video of removing and replacing the duplex jam 1 sensor.....	963
View a video of removing and replacing the duplex 1 motor.....	979
View a video of removing and replacing the exit stack guide.....	994
View a video of removing and replacing the duplex assembly.....	996
View a video of removing and replacing the duplex jam 2 sensor.....	1005
View a video of removing and replacing the duplex 2 motor.....	1016
View a video of removing and replacing the toner dispense motor assembly.....	1022
View a video of removing and replacing the toner dispense motor.....	1032
View a video of removing and replacing the toner dispense motor sensor.....	1041
View a video of removing and replacing the toner cartridges using the control panel.....	1052
View a video of removing and replacing the toner cartridge by disassembling.....	1054
View a video of removing and replacing the toner CRUM modular jack harness.....	1063
View a video of removing and replacing the toner CRUM modular holder.....	1063
View a video of removing and replacing the reservoir unit.....	1084
View a video of removing and replacing the reservoir drive assembly.....	1099
View a video of removing and replacing the toner collection unit.....	1114
View a video of removing and replacing the toner collection unit detection sensor.....	1116
View a video of removing and replacing the toner collection unit full sensor.....	1124
View a video of removing and replacing the LSU.....	1132

View a video of removing and replacing the drum unit.....	1137
View a video of removing and replacing the black developer unit.....	1140
View a video of removing and refilling the black developer unit	1145
View a video of removing and replacing the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly.....	1154
View a video of removing and replacing the drum and PTB motor.....	1161
View a video of removing and replacing the developer motor.....	1164
View a video of removing and replacing the cable guide.....	1167
View a video of removing and replacing the CTD sensor assembly.....	1170
View a video of removing and replacing the fuser unit.....	1178
View a video of removing and replacing the fuser and exit drive assembly.....	1180
View a video of removing and replacing the fuser and exit motor.....	1185
View a video of removing and replacing the fuser gap motor.....	1190
View a video of removing and replacing the fuser gap sensor.....	1194
View a video of removing and replacing the outer temperature humidity sensor assembly.....	1204
View a video of removing and replacing the LVPS fan (E877).....	1212
View a video of removing and replacing the LVPS fan (E826).....	1212
View a video of removing and replacing the FDB fan (E877).....	1215
View a video of removing and replacing the FDB fan (E826).....	1215
View a video of removing and replacing the LVPS FDB fan assembly (E877).....	1219
View a video of removing and replacing the LVPS FDB fan assembly (E826).....	1219
View a video of removing and replacing the developer fan assembly.....	1223
View a video of removing and replacing the fuser ventilation duct.....	1237
View a video of removing and replacing the LSU fan.....	1241
View a video of removing and replacing the front door switch.....	1245
View a video of removing and replacing the formatter.....	1260
View a video of removing and replacing the riser card and cradle.....	1267
View a video of removing and replacing the hard-disk drive rivet.....	1271
View a video of removing and replacing the hard disk drive cradle.....	1273
View a video of removing and replacing the hard disk drive.....	1279
View a video of removing and replacing the accelerator card.....	1283
View a video of removing and replacing the USB hub PCA.....	1287
View a video of removing and replacing the IOD.....	1295

View a video of removing and replacing the echo PCA.....	1299
View a video of removing and replacing the power key PCA.....	1304
View a video of removing and replacing the keyboard.....	1312
View a video of removing and replacing the fax card.....	1318
View a video of removing and replacing the HVPS.....	1321
View a video of removing and replacing the LVPS.....	1324
View a video of removing and replacing the FDB.....	1328
View a video of installing the ISA.....	1333
View a video of installing the ISA.....	1338
View a video of removing and replacing the sHCI door links.....	1527
View a video of removing and replacing the sHCI Tray 5 or 6 pickup, feed drive assembly.....	1549

1 Product information, configurations, and specifications

You will learn more about the product information, configurations, and specifications.

Printer views

Learn more specifically about the different views of the printer.

Printer front view

Locate features on the front of the printer.

Figure 1-1 Printer front view

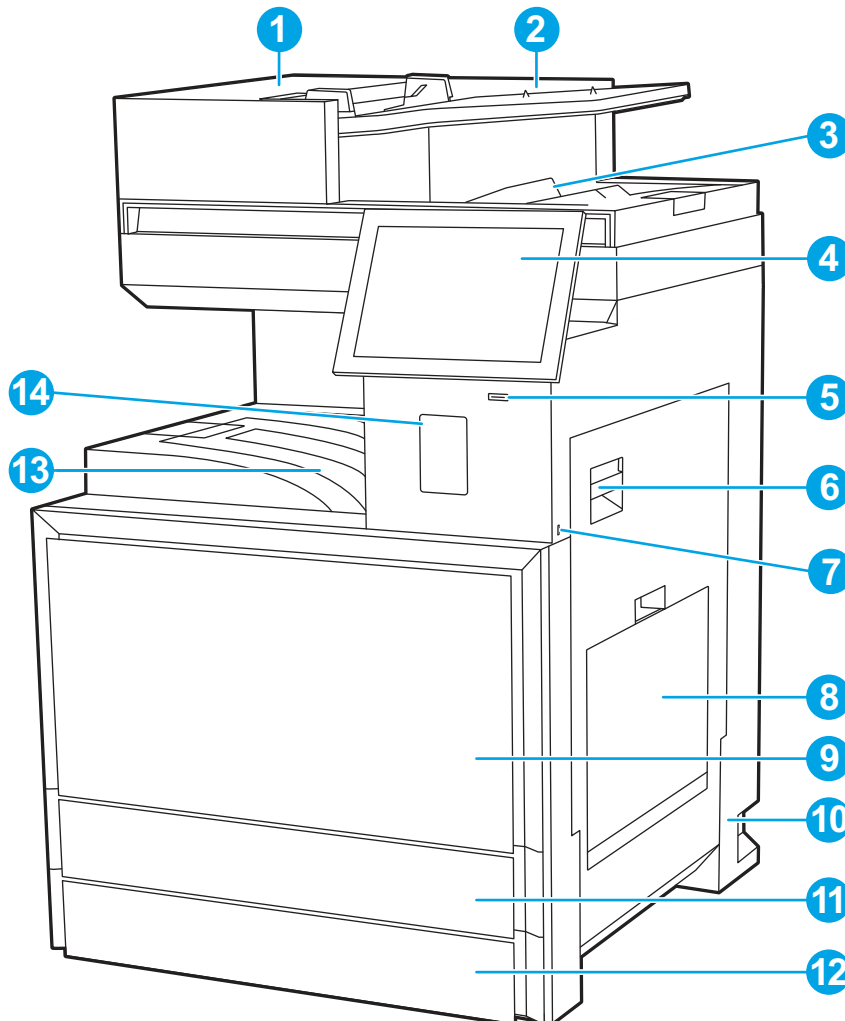


Table 1-1 Printer front view

Item	Description
1	Automatic document feeder cover, for access for clearing jams
2	Automatic document feeder input tray
3	Automatic document feeder output tray
4	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
5	On/off button
6	Right door, for access for clearing jams
7	Easy-access USB port Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer or to update the printer firmware. NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.
8	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)
9	Front door, for access to the toner cartridges
10	Power connection
11	Tray 2
12	Tray 3
13	Output bin
14	Hardware integration pocket (HIP), for connecting accessory and third-party devices

Printer back view

Locate features on the back of the printer.

Figure 1-2 Printer back view

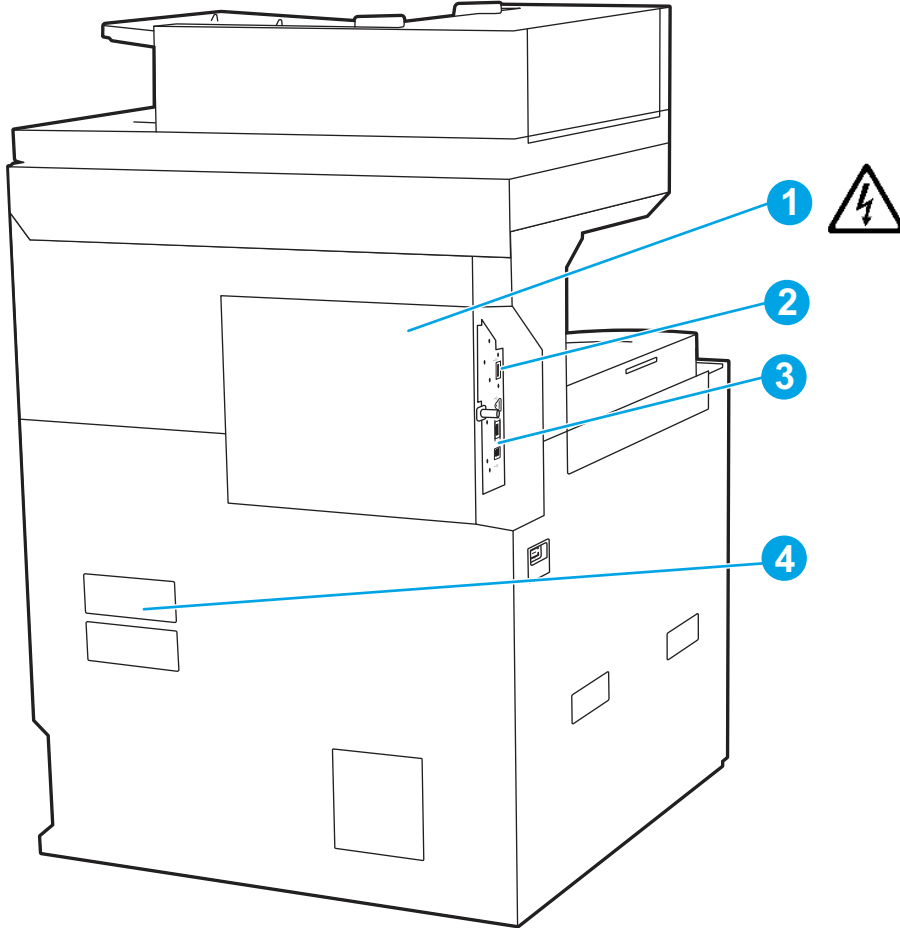




Table 1-2 Printer back view

Item	Description
1	Formatter cover CAUTION:  There is a risk of electric shock. This cover should only be opened by a qualified service technician.
2	Interface ports
3	Thumbscrew CAUTION:  The thumbscrew should be tightened with a tool after both initial installation and subsequent access to the formatter cover.
4	Serial number and product number label

Interface ports view

Locate the interface ports on the printer formatter.

Figure 1-3 Interface ports view

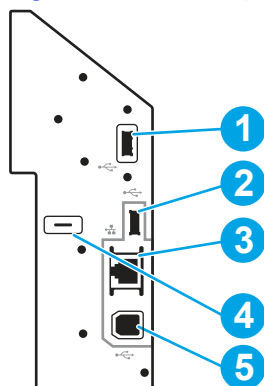



Table 1-3 Interface ports view

Item	Description
1	Hi-speed USB 2.0 host port for connecting external USB devices (this port might be covered) NOTE: For easy-access USB printing, use the USB port near the control panel.
2	SuperSpeed USB 3.0 host port for connecting external USB devices (this port might be covered)
3	Local area network (LAN) Ethernet (RJ-45) network port
4	Slot for a cable-type security lock
5	SuperSpeed USB 3.0 printing port

Control-panel view

The control panel provides access to the printer features and indicates the current status of the printer.

 **NOTE:** Tilt the control panel for easier viewing.

The Home screen provides access to the printer features and indicates the current status of the printer.


 **NOTE:** The features that appear on the Home screen can vary, depending on the printer configuration.

Figure 1-4 Control-panel view

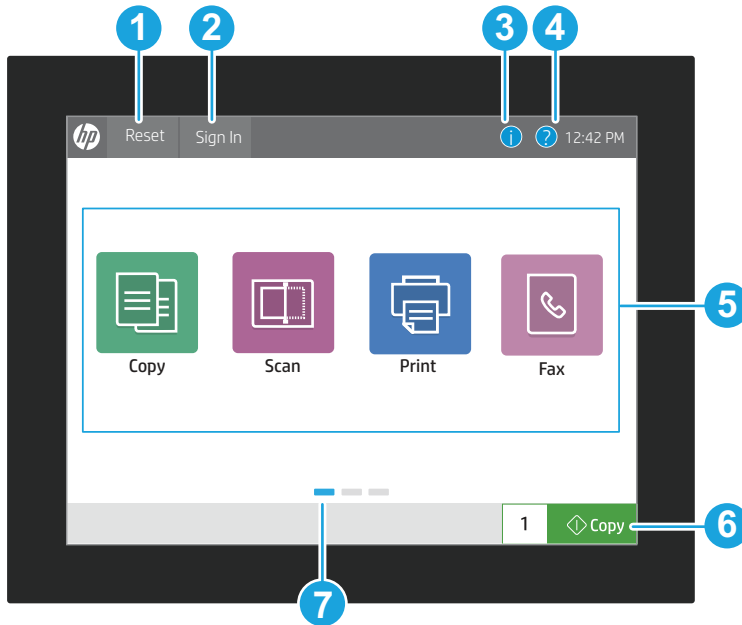





Table 1-4 Control-panel view

Item	Control	Description
1	Reset button	<p>The Reset button returns the printer to default settings and is always present if users are not logged in.</p> <p>The Reset button is not present when the Sign Out button is present.</p> <p>Touch the Reset button to resume and release jobs from the previous pause state and interrupt mode, reset the quick copy count in the copy count field, exit special modes, reset the display language and the keyboard layout.</p>
2	Sign In or Sign Out button	<p>Touch the Sign In button to access secured features.</p> <p>Touch the Sign Out button to sign out of the printer. The printer restores all options to the default settings.</p> <p>NOTE: This button displays only if the administrator has configured the printer to require permission for access to features.</p>

Table 1-4 Control-panel view (continued)

Item	Control	Description
3	Information button 	<p>Touch the information button to access a screen that provides access to several types of printer information. Touch the buttons at the bottom of the screen for the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display Language: Change the language setting for the current user session. • Sleep Mode: Place the printer into sleep mode. • Wi-Fi Direct: View information for how to connect directly to the printer using a phone, tablet, or other device with Wi-Fi (only available when the optional wireless accessory is installed). • Wireless: View or change wireless connection settings (only available when the optional wireless accessory is installed). • Ethernet: View or change Ethernet connection settings. • HP Web Services: View information to connect and print to the printer using HP Web Services (ePrint).
4	Help button 	<p>Touch the Help button to open the embedded help system.</p> <p>The status line provides information about the overall printer status.</p>
5	Applications area	<p>Touch any of the icons to open the application. Swipe the screen sideways to access more applications.</p> <p>NOTE: The available applications vary by printer. The administrator can configure which applications appear and the order in which they appear.</p> <p>On Flow printers the Scan button is replaced by the Scan+ button .</p> <p>Touch the Scan+ button to send a scan job to multiple destinations at once, including email, SharePoint, network folder, USB drive, fax, or printed hard copy. It also includes a preview mode that supports simple editing.</p>
6	Copy button	Touch the Copy button to start a copy job.
7	Home-screen page indicator	Indicates the number of pages on the Home screen or in an application. The current page is highlighted. Swipe the screen sideways to scroll between pages.

Specifications

Learn about the specifications.

Basic specifications

Learn about the basic specifications of the printer.

Supported operating systems

Learn about supported operating systems.

The following information applies to the Printer-Specific Windows PCL 6 and HP print drivers for macOS and to the software installer.

Windows: The HP Software Installer can be downloaded from the printer support website for this printer and installs the correct "HP PCL 6" print driver, depending on the Windows operating system, along with optional software when using the software installer. Download the "HP PCL 6" print driver from the printer-support website for this printer: www.hp.com/support.

macOS: Mac computers are supported with this printer. Download HP Easy Start either from 123.hp.com or from the Printer Support page, and then use HP Easy Start to install the HP print driver. HP Easy Start is not included in the HP Software Installer.

1. Go to 123.hp.com/LaserJet.
2. Follow the steps provided to download the printer software.

Linux: For information and print drivers for Linux, go to www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting.


UNIX: For information and print drivers for UNIX®, go to www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts.

Table 1-5 Supported operating systems and print drivers

Operating system	Print driver installed (from the software on the web)
Windows 7, 32-bit and 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.
Windows 10, 32-bit, 64-bit, and ARM64	The "HP PCL-6" printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.
Windows 11, 64-bit, and ARM64	The "HP PCL-6" printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.
Windows Server 2008 R2, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
Windows Server 2012, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
Windows Server 2012 R2, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
Windows Server 2016, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
Windows Server 2019, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
Windows Server 2022, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
macOS 12 (Monterey), macOS 11 (Big Sur), macOS 10.15 (Catalina)	To install the print driver, download HP Easy Start from 123.hp.com . Follow the steps provided to install the printer software and print driver.

Table 1-5 Supported operating systems and print drivers (continued)

Operating system	Print driver installed (from the software on the web)
Debian 10,11, OpenSuse 15.1,15.2,15.3, Fedora 31,32,33,34,35, RHEL 6,7,8, Ubuntu 20.04,20.10,21.04,21.10, linuxmint 20.1,20.2, ManjaroLinux 20.2,21.0.7, Zorin 15,16 Mxlinux 21, Elementary 6P	Print drivers are available at specific operating system web sites.

 **NOTE:** Supported operating systems can change. For a current list of supported operating systems, go to support.hp.com for HP's all-inclusive help for the printer.


 **NOTE:** For details on client and server operating systems and for HP Smart UPD driver support for this printer, go to www.hp.com/go/smartupd. Under **Additional information**, click the links.

Table 1-6 Minimum system requirements

Windows	macOS
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Internet connection• Dedicated USB 1.1 or 2.0 connection or a network connection• 2 GB of available hard-disk space	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Internet connection• 1 GB of available hard-disk space

Mobile printing solutions

Learn what HP offers for mobile printing solutions.

HP offers multiple mobile solutions to enable easy printing to an HP printer from a laptop, tablet, smartphone, or other mobile device. To see the full list and to determine the best choice, go to [HP Customer Support - Knowledge Base](#).

- Apple AirPrint
- Mopria Certified
- WiFi Direct Printing
- NFC Touch to Print
- ePrintIT PrinterOn

Printer dimensions

Learn about the printer dimensions.

Table 1-7 Printer dimensions

Item	Specification
Size, dn model (Base engine size)	585 x 694.7 x 692.1 mm (23 x 27.4 x 27.2 in)
Size, dn model (Integrated engine size)	585 x 694.7 x 902.7* mm (23 x 27.4 x 35.5* in) (*Maximum, could change depending on configuration)

Table 1-7 Printer dimensions (continued)

Item	Specification
Size, z model (Base engine size)	585 x 694.7 x 692.1 mm (23 x 27.4 x 27.2 in)
Size, z model (Integrated engine size)	585 x 694.7 x 933.9* mm (23 x 27.4 x 36.8* in) (*Maximum, could change depending on configuration)
Weight, dn model (standard)	76 kg (167.6 lbs)
Weight, z model (standard)	79.3 kg (174.8 lbs)

Operating-environment range

In order to operate properly, the printer must be in an environment that meets certain specifications.

Table 1-8 Operating-environment specifications

Environment	Recommended	Storage
Temperature		10 to 32.5°C (50 to 90.5°F)
Relative humidity	30% to 70% relative humidity (RH)	10% to 80% relative humidity (RH)

General specifications

Learn about general specifications for printer models.

Table 1-9 General specifications

Item	Specification
ASIC	GigaTron Quad 1.6 GHz ARM A72 + Dual 1.4 GHz ARM A53
Memory	6 GB
Storage	500 GB HDD
Connectivity (I/O standard)	Gigabit LAN USB 3.2 Gen1 (USB 3.0) Device USB 3.2 Gen1 (USB 3.0)/2.0 Host ports TPM
Power Requirement	Input voltage: 110 to 127Vac (+/- 10%), 220 to 240Vac (+/- 10%), 50/60 Hz (+/- 3%)
Sound Power Level	Blue Angel UZ-205: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 50ppm: ≤7.4 Bel(A) 60ppm: ≤7.5 Bel(A) 70ppm: ≤7.6 Bel(A) ISO, Idle: Sound Pressure Level ≤30dB(A)

Print specifications

Learn about the print specifications.

Table 1-10 Print specifications

Item	Specification
Print speed (normal, A4/ Letter)	E82650: 50 ppm E82660: 60 ppm E82670: 70 ppm
Resolution	1200 dpi
Print Languages	HP PCL 6, HP Postscript level 3 emulation, PDF (v 1.7), AirPrint™ compatible
Supported Network Protocols	IPv4/IPv6: Apple Bonjour Compatible (Mac OS 10.2.4 or higher), SNMPv1/v2c/v3, HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, TFTP, Port 9100, LPD, WS Discovery, IPP, Secure-IPP, IPsec/Firewall IPv6: DHCPv6, MLDv1, ICMPv6 IPv4: Auto-IP, SLP, Telnet, IGMPv2, BOOTP/DHCP, WINS, IP Direct Mode, WS Print Other: NetWare NDS, Bindery, ePrint
USB printing	Yes

Scan specifications

Learn about the scan specifications.

Table 1-11 Scan specifications

Item	Specification
Scan Speed (normal, A4)	E877/E826 dn models ADF: Simplex 90 ipm / Duplex 180 ipm E877/E826 z models ADF: Simplex 150 ipm / Duplex 300 ipm
Input capacity	E877/E826 dn models ADF: 75 gsm / 200 sheets E877/E826 z models ADF: 75 gsm / 300 sheets
Grayscale Levels	256
Scan File Format	Digital Send: Hi-Compression PDF, PDF, JPEG, TIFF, MTIFF, XPS, PDF/A Scan to easy access USB: Hi-Compression PDF, PDF, JPEG, TIFF, MTIFF, XPS, PDF/A Print from easy access USB: PDF, PS, JPEG, TIFF, PNG, Print Ready files (.prn, .pcl, .cht)
Scan Size Maximum	ADF: 297 x 437 mm (11.7 x 17.2 in) Flatbed: 297 x 437 mm (11.7 x 17.2 in)
Scan Size Minimum	ADF: 148 x 210 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in)

Table 1-11 Scan specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Standard Media Size	ADF: Legal, Oficio, Executive, Statement, Ledger, A3, A4, A4R, A5, B4, B5, 16K <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Width: 148 - 297 mm (5.8 - 11.7 in) • Length: 148 - 432 mm (5.8 - 17 in)
Media Weights	ADF: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Simplex: 60 to 128 g/m² (16 to 28 lb) • Duplex: 60 to 128 g/m² (16 to 28 lb)

Copy specifications

Learn about the copy specifications.

Table 1-12 Copy specifications

Item	Specification
Copy Speed (Normal, A4, default rate from flatbed or ADF)	E82650: 50 ppm E82660: 60 cpm E82670: 70 cpm
Copy Speed (Normal, Letter, default rate from flatbed or ADF)	E82650: 50 ppm E82660: 60 cpm E82670: 70 cpm
Copy Speed (Normal, A3, default rate from flatbed or ADF)	E82650 base: 26 cpm E82660: 30 cpm E82670: 35 cpm
Copy Speed (Duplex, A3)	E82650: 26 ipm E82660: 30 ipm E82670: 35 ipm
Copy Resolution (Black Text)	Up to 600 x 600 dpi
Copier Reduce/enlarge	Flatbed: 25 to 400% ADF: 25 to 400%

Paper handling specifications

Learn about the paper handling specifications.

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications

Item	Specification
Input Capacity	Tray 1: 100 sheets (80 gsm) Tray 2: 520 sheets (80 gsm) Tray 3: 520 sheets (80 gsm)
Custom Media Sizes	Tray 1: 98 x 139.7 mm (3.86 x 5.5 in) to 320 x 457 mm (12.6 x 18 in) Tray 2: 98 x 140 mm (3.86 x 5.51 in) to 297 x 390 mm (11.7 x 15.35) Tray 3: 140 x 182 mm (5.51 x 7.16 in) to 320 x 457 mm (12.6 x 18 in)
Standard Media Sizes	Tray 1: A3, A4, A4R, A5, A5R, A6, RA4, SRA4, B4 (JIS), B5 (JIS), B6 (JIS), 10x15cm, Oficio, 8K, 16k, Postcard (JIS), Dpostcard (JIS), Envelope B5, Envelop C5, Envelope C6, Envelope DL Tray 2: A4, A5, A6, B6, Letter, Statement, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C6, Envelope No. 10, Envelope No. 9, Custom (98 x 140 mm (3.86 x 5.51 in) to 297 x 390 mm (11.7 x 15.35)) B4 (JIS) Tray 3: SRA3, A3, A4, A5, B4, B5(JIS), B5(ISO), Tabloid extra, Ledger, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, 8K, 16K, Oficio, Folio, Custom (140 x 182 mm (5.51 x 7.16 in) to 320 x 457 mm (12.6 x 18 in))
Media types supported	Tray 1: Thin, Plain, Thick, Heavy weight, Extra Heavy weight 1, Extra Heavy weight 2, Heavy Cardstock, Extra Heavy weight 3, Extra Heavy weight 4, Envelope, Label, Transparency, Thin Glossy, Thick Glossy, Heavy Glossy Tray 2, 3: Thin, Plain, Thick, Heavy weight, Extra Heavy weight 1, Extra Heavy weight 2, Extra Heavy weight 3, Extra Heavy weight 4, Thin Glossy, Thick Glossy, Heavy Glossy

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Media Weights	<p>Tray 1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thin : 60~70 g/m² • Plain : 71~90 g/m² • Thick : 91~105 g/m² • Heavy weight : 106~130 g/m² • Extra Heavy weight 1 : 131~175 g/m² • Extra Heavy weight 2 : 176~220 g/m² • Heavy Cardstock : 221 ~ 256 g/m² • Extra Heavy weight 3 : 257~300 g/m² • Extra Heavy weight 4 : 301~325 g/m² • Envelope : 76~120 g/m² • Label : 120~150 g/m² • Transparency : 138~146 g/m² • Thin Glossy : 106~163 g/m² • Thick Glossy : 164~216 g/m² • Heavy Glossy : 217~256 g/m² <p>Tray 2, 3:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thin : 60~70 g/m² • Plain : 71~90 g/m² • Thick : 91~105 g/m² • Heavy weight : 106~175 g/m² • Extra Heavy weight 1 : 176~216 g/m² • Extra Heavy weight 2 : 217~256 g/m² • Extra Heavy weight 3 : 257~300 g/m² • Extra Heavy weight 4 : 301~325 g/m² • Thin Glossy : 106~163 g/m² • Thick Glossy : 164~216 g/m² • Heavy Glossy : 217~256 g/m²
Standard Media Sizes (duplex)	139.7 x 182 mm (5.5 x 7.16 in) to 320 x 457 mm (12.6 x 18 in)
Media Weights (duplex)	60 to 300 g/m ²
Media types supported (duplex)	Plain, Thin, Thick, Heavy weight, Extra Heavy weight, Cotton, Colored, Pre-Printed, Recycled, Bond, Archive, LetterHead, Hole Punched, Thin Cardstock, Thick Cardstock, Heavy Cardstock, Extra Heavy Cardstock, Thin Glossy, Thick Glossy, Heavy Glossy

Table 1-14 Paper trays and accessories

Trays and accessories	Availability
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	Included
Tray 2 (520-sheet capacity)	Included
Tray 3 (520-sheet capacity)	Included
2 x 520-sheet paper tray/stand	Optional
2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray/stand	Optional
3,000-sheet side-mount high-capacity input tray/stand	Optional
Printer stand	Optional
Stapler/stacker finishing accessory	Optional
Booklet maker finishing accessory	Optional
Inner finisher accessory	Optional
2/3 hole punch accessory	Optional
2/4 hole punch accessory	Optional
Swedish hole punch accessory	Optional
HP Job separator	Optional
HP Second exit	Included

Supplies

Learn about the supplies.

Table 1-15 Supplies

Item	Product number	Average yield
Black toner cartridge ¹ Standard	W9084MC	Approx. 30,000 pages
Black toner cartridge ¹ High capacity	W9085MC	Approx. 60,000 pages
Toner collection unit (TCU)	W9016MC	300,000 pages

¹Print cartridge life is approximate, based on average A4 /Letter-size page count with ISO coverage. Declared cartridge yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC 19752. Actual yields vary considerably based on images printed and other factors. For more information, visit www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies.



NOTE: Depending on the print pattern and job mode used, the lifespan of the consumable can vary.



IMPORTANT: Toner cartridges or other supplies must be purchased in the same country/region as the printer being used. Otherwise, new toner cartridges or other supplies will be incompatible with the printer. This is due to differing configurations of toner cartridges and other supplies according to the conditions of a specific country/region.

Maintenance parts (Long Life Consumables (LLC))

Learn about the printer maintenance parts.

HP recommends replacing the following maintenance parts at specific intervals to make sure the printer produces quality copies and to extend the service life of the printer.

Some of the printer parts have a shorter lifespan than the life of the printer.

Table 1-16 Maintenance parts

Item	Product number	Life
Black developer unit	5PN82A	1,200,000 pages
Imaging drum	W9086MC	600,000 pages
Fuser unit (100V)	5PN53A	600,000 pages
NOTE: Only for Japan		
Fuser unit (110V)	5PN76A	600,000 pages
Fuser unit (220V)	5PN77A	600,000 pages
Paper transfer belt (PTB) unit	5PN85A	600,000 pages
Pickup/ Forward/ Reverse (separation) roller (for Tray 2-X)	5PN66A	360,000 pages
Tray 1 (MP) Pickup/ Forward/ Reverse (separation) Roller	5RC03A	200,000 pages
ADF roller kit (z bundle)	5RC00A	300,000 pages
ADF roller kit (dn bundle)	J8J95A	150,000 pages



NOTE: Depending on print patterns and the job mode used, maintenance part lifespans vary. See *Replacing the maintenance part* for further instructions.

Network and software specifications

Learn about the network and software specifications.

Network interface

Learn about the network interface.

Network OS

Windows

- Windows 7
- Windows 10
- Windows 11
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012

- Windows Server 2012 R2
- Windows Server 2016
- Windows Server 2019

Mac

- macOS 12(Monterey)
- macOS 11(Big Sur)
- macOS 10.14(Mojave)
- macOS 10.15(Catalina)

Linux

- CentOS 8, 64-bit
- Ubuntu 20.04.2.0 LTS
- Fedora 33
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8

Others

- Unix (HP-UX, Solaris, SunOS, SCO)

Table 1-17 Network interfaces

Type	Protocol	Details
Network Protocol	TCP/IP	TCP/IPv4, HTTP, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, LDAP, SMTP, SSL/TLS, IPsec, DNS, WINS, SLP, Bonjour, SSDP, DDNS, DHCP/BOOTP, IPv6
Network Protocol	NetBIOS over TCP/IP	Supported
Network Protocol	Others	HTTPS, IPsec, 802.1x
IP Addressing	Static IP	Supported
IP Addressing	Auto IP	Supported
IP Addressing	BOOTP	Supported
IP Addressing	DHCP	Supported
SNMP/MIB Access	MIB-2 (RFC 1213)	Supported
SNMP/MIB Access	Host Resource MIB (RFC 2790)	Supported
SNMP/MIB Access	Printer MIB (RFC 3805)	Supported
SNMP/MIB Access	Finisher MIB (RFC 3806)	Supported
SNMP/MIB Access	HP Compatibility	Supported partially
SNMP/MIB Access	SNMP Trap	Supported
Printing Protocols	Windows Printing (SMB)	Not supported
Printing Protocols	LPR/LPD	Supported

Table 1-17 Network interfaces (continued)

Type	Protocol	Details
Printing Protocols	IPP	Supported
Printing Protocols	Port 9100	Supported
Device Discovery	DNS	Supported
Device Discovery	Dynamic DNS	Supported
Device Discovery	Multicast DNS (Bonjour)	Supported
Device Discovery	WSD (including Print and Scan)	Supported (Print and Scan)
Device Discovery	SLP	Supported
Device Discovery	uPNP (SSDP)	Supported

Options

Learn about printer options and accessories.

Optional input and output devices configuration

Learn about the optional input and output devices configuration.

The E877, E826, E786, E731, E785 and E730 series have optional input devices and output devices.


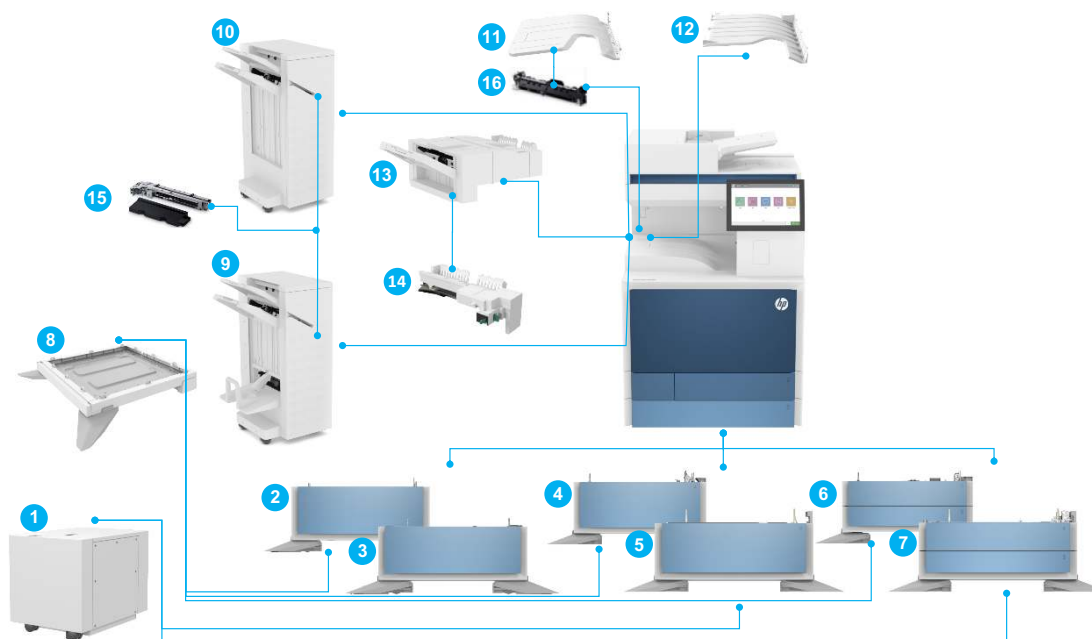
 **NOTE:** The figure below is representational only. Individual devices might appear different from what is shown in the following figure.

Figure 1-5 Optional input and output devices configuration




 **NOTE:** There may be a difference between the appearance of your printer and the photo.

Table 1-18 Optional input and output devices configuration

#	Description	Part number	E877 series	E826 series	E786 series	E731 series	E785 series	E730 series
1	HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI)	6GW56A	✓	✓	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
2	HP LaserJet Workgroup Cabinet	6GW54A	Not available	Not available	✓	✓	✓	✓
3	HP LaserJet Department Cabinet	6GW53A	✓	✓	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
4	HP LaserJet Workgroup 2000 Sheet High Capacity Input Tray (HCI)	6GW48A	Not available	Not available	✓	✓	Not available	Not available
5	HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department (HCI)	6GW57A	✓	✓	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
6	HP LaserJet Workgroup Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF)	6GW46A	Not available	Not available	✓	✓	✓	✓
7	HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder (DCF)	6GW47A	✓	✓	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
8	HP LaserJet Spacer NOTE: This option is required if installing the Stapler/Stacker or Booklet finisher.	6GW58A	Not available	Not available	Not available	✓	Not available	Not available
9	HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher NOTE: The following options are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory - Y1G10A • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory - Y1G11A • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory - Y1G12A • Y1G14A - HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher Refill Staple Cartridge (not shown) • Y1G13A - HP LaserJet Inner Finisher and Booklet Maker Finisher Refill Staple Cartridge (not shown) 	6GW51A	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not available	Not available

Table 1-18 Optional input and output devices configuration (continued)

#	Description	Part number	E877 series	E826 series	E786 series	E731 series	E785 series	E730 series
10	<p>HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher</p> <p>NOTE: The following options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory - Y1G10A • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory - Y1G11A • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory - Y1G12A • Y1G14A - HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher Refill Staple Cartridge (not shown) 	6GW55A	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not available	Not available
11	HP LaserJet Workgroup Job Separator	6GW52A	Not available	Not available	✓	✓	✓	✓
12	HP LaserJet Department Job Separator	6GW50A	✓	✓	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
13/14	<p>HP LaserJet Inner Finisher</p> <p>NOTE: The following options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 14 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch - 155P7A • 14 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch - 155P8A • 14 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch - 155P9A • Y1G13A - HP LaserJet Inner Finisher and Booklet Maker Finisher Refill Staple Cartridge (not shown) <p>NOTE: Inner finisher supports up to 60 ppm.</p>	6GW49A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
15	HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory	Y1G10A	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not available	Not available
15	HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory	Y1G11A	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not available	Not available
15	HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory	Y1G12A	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not available	Not available

Table 1-18 Optional input and output devices configuration (continued)

#	Description	Part number	E877 series	E826 series	E786 series	E731 series	E785 series	E730 series
16	HP LaserJet Second Exit NOTE: This option is required if installing the Stapler/stacker, Booklet Finisher, Inner Finisher, or job separator.	Y1G23A	Not Available	Not Available	✓	✓	✓	✓

Option specifications

Learn about option specifications.

Table 1-19 HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW47A
Capacity	520 x 2 sheets
Media sizes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tray 4: 139.7 mm x 182 mm – 320 mm x 457.2 mm (5.5 in x 7.17 in – 12.59 in x 18 in) Tray 5: 139.7 mm x 182 mm – 320 mm x 457.2 mm (5.5 in x 7.17 in – 12.59 in x 18 in)
Media types	Thin/Plain/Thick/Heavy Weight/Extra Heavy Weight/Letterhead/Pre-Printed/Hole Punched/Colored/Bond/Recycled
Media weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Thin paper: 60–70 grams per square meter (16–18.5 lb) (duplex) Plain paper: 71–90 grams per square meter (18.5–24 lb) (duplex) Thick paper: 91–105 grams per square meter (25–28 lb) (duplex) Heavyweight paper: 106–130 grams per square meter (28.2–34.5 lb) (duplex) Extra Heavyweight paper: 131–175 grams per square meter (34.8–46.5 lb) (duplex) Extra Heavyweight 2 paper: 176–220 grams per square meter (46.8–58.5 lb) (duplex) Extra Heavyweight 3 paper: 221–256 grams per square meter (58.5–68 lb) Extra Heavyweight 4 paper: 257–300 grams per square meter (68.3–79.8 lb) Letterhead: 71–90 grams per square meter (18.5–24 lb) (duplex) Preprinted: 71–90 grams per square meter (18.5–24 lb) (duplex) Hole-punched paper: 71–90 grams per square meter (18.5–24 lb) (duplex) Colored: 71–90 grams per square meter (18.5–24 lb) (duplex) Bond paper: 105–120 grams per square meter (28–32 lb) (duplex) Recycled: 60–90 grams per square meter (16–24 lb) (duplex)

Table 1-19 HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder option specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Sensing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • H/W install detect: Yes • Paper empty and low level detect: Yes • Paper type detect: No • Paper size detect: Yes
Dimensions	585 mm x 694.6 mm x 312.2 mm (23 in x 27 in x 12 in)
Weight	Net 28.5 kg (62.8 lb), packing 32 kg (70.5 lb)

Table 1-20 HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW57A
Capacity	2000 sheets at 80 grams per square meter (20 lb)
Media sizes	A4, letter
Media types	Plain paper, thin paper, thick paper, punched paper
Media weight	60 to 300 grams per square meter
Sensing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • H/W install detect: Yes • Paper empty and low level detect: Yes • Paper type detect: No • Paper size detect: Yes

Table 1-21 HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI) option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW56A
Capacity	3000 sheets at 80 grams per square meter (20 lb)
Media sizes	A4, letter
Media types	Plain paper, thin paper, thick paper, punched paper
Media weight	60 to 300 grams per square meter
Sensing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • H/W install detect: Yes • Paper empty and low level detect: Yes • Paper type detect: No • Paper size detect: Yes

Table 1-22 HP LaserJet Department Cabinet option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW53A
Dimensions	585 mm x 670 mm x 257 mm
Weight (net)	18 kg

Table 1-23 HP LaserJet Job Separator Department option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW50A
Capacity	125 sheets at 80 grams per square meter

Table 1-24 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW49A
Capacity	500 sheets stacking, internal
Staple cartridge capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
Stacking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Top tray: 50 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter) Finishing tray: 500 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter)
Stapling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Maximum number of sheets: 50 sheets stapling with 90 grams per square meter sheet Stapling positions: Front flat and corner (45), dual, rear flat and corner (45)
Saddle stapling	N/A
Offline stapling	N/A
Offset at non-staple job	Yes
Offset at staple job	N/A
Output stacking	Face down

Table 1-25 HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW55A
Capacity	65 sheets stapling, 3,250 sheets stacking
Staple cartridge capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
Stacking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Top tray: 250 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter) Finishing tray: 3000 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter)

Table 1-25 HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher option specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Stapling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Maximum number of sheets: 65 sheets stapling with 90 grams per square meter sheet Stapling positions: 2 corners (single, 45 degree), center (double)
Offline stapling	Yes
Offset at non-staple job	Yes
Offset at staple job	Yes
Output stacking	Face down

Table 1-26 HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW51A
Capacity	65 sheets stapling, 2000 sheets stacking
Staple cartridge capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
Stacking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Top tray: 250 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter) Finishing tray: 2000 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter)
Stapling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Maximum number of sheets: 65 sheets stapling with 90 grams per square meter sheet Stapling positions: 2 corners (single), center (double)
Saddle stapling	Maximum number of sheets: 25 sheets stapling with 80 grams per square meter sheet
Offline stapling	Yes
Offset at non-staple job	Yes
Offset at staple job	Yes
Output stacking	Face down

Table 1-27 HP LaserJet Hole Punch Accessory option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory: Y1G10A HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory: Y1G11A HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory: Y1G12A
Available unit	Auto change 2/3 hole or auto change 2/4 hole, Swedish 4
Media weight	52-300 grams per square meter

Table 1-28 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole Punch option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch: 155P7A HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch: 155P8A HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch: 155P9A
Available unit	Auto change 2/3 hole or auto change 2/4 hole, Swedish 4
Media weight	52-256 grams per square meter

Table 1-29 Other options

Part	Part number
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accy	Y1G22A
HP LaserJet Second Exit Accy	Y1G23A
HP Accessibility Assistant	478C2A
HP Removable Hard Drive Enclosure	2NR12A
HP Accessibility Kit	2TD64A
HP JetDirect 3100w BLE/NFC/Wireless Accy	3JN69A
HP Legic Reader	4QL32A
HP Internal USB Ports	4XN67A
HP MFP Analog Dual Fax 810 Accessory	5QK14A
HP LaserJet Workflow Accelerator Card(z model only)	6HN30A
HP Secure Ultimate Performance TAA Hrd Disk Drive	6HN31A
HP MFP Analog Dual Fax 811 Accessory (BBU only)	7ZA07A
HP MFP Analog Single Fax 800 Accessory	7ZA08A
HP MFP Analog Single Fax 801 Accessory (BBU only)	7ZA09A
HP Jetdirect LAN Accessory	8FP31A
HP Secure Ultimate Performance Hard Disk Drive	9EQ11A
HP Foreign Interface Harness	B5L31A
HP SmartCard NIPRNet Solution for US Government	CC543B
HP SmartCard SIPRNet Solution for US Government	F8B30A
HP USB Universal Card Reader	X3D03A
HP HIP2 Keystroke Reader	Y7C05A
HP SIM for HID iClass for HIP2 Reader	Y7C07A

Color skin configuration

Learn about the color skin configuration.

The E877, E826, E786, E731, E785 and E730 series provides various color skins to satisfy customer's needs.


 **NOTE:** The figure below is representational only. Individual devices might appear different from what is shown in the following figure.

Figure 1-6 Color skin configuration



Table 1-30 Color skin configuration

No	Color type	Description	E877 series	E826 series	E786 series	E731 series	E785 series	E730 series
1	Mineral gray	Printer cover set (Scanner front cover, Front door, Cover for tray 2, 3)	190A2A	190A3A	190A0A	190A1A	190A0A	190A1A
		Dual Casset Feeder (DCF) cover panel	190A4A	190A4A	190A6A	190A6A	190A6A	190A6A
		High Capacity Input (HCI) tray cover panel	190A5A	190A5A	190A7A	190A7A	190A7A	190A7A
		Cabinet cover panel	190A8A	190A8A	190A9A	190A9A	190A9A	190A9A
2	Persimmon	Printer cover set (Scanner front cover, Front door, Cover for tray 2, 3)	190B2A	190B3A	190B0A	190B1A	190B0A	190B1A
		Dual Casset Feeder (DCF) cover panel	190B4A	190B4A	190B6A	190B6A	190B6A	190B6A
		High Capacity Input (HCI) tray cover panel	190B5A	190B5A	190B7A	190B7A	190B7A	190B7A
		Cabinet cover panel	190B8A	190B8A	190B9A	190B9A	190B9A	190B9A
3	Green	Printer cover set (Scanner front cover, Front door, Cover for tray 2, 3)	190C2A	190C3A	190C0A	190C1A	190C0A	190C1A
		Dual Casset Feeder (DCF) cover panel	190C4A	190C4A	190C6A	190C6A	190C6A	190C6A
		High Capacity Input (HCI) tray cover panel	190C5A	190C5A	190C7A	190C7A	190C7A	190C7A
		Cabinet cover panel	190C8A	190C8A	190C9A	190C9A	190C9A	190C9A

Table 1-30 Color skin configuration (continued)

No	Color type	Description	E877 series	E826 series	E786 series	E731 series	E785 series	E730 series
4	Mellow yellow	Printer cover set (Scanner front cover, Front door, Cover for tray 2, 3)	190D2A	190D3A	190D0A	190D1A	190D0A	190D1A
		Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) cover panel	190D4A	190D4A	190D6A	190D6A	190D6A	190D6A
		High Capacity Input (HCI) tray cover panel	190D5A	190D5A	190D7A	190D7A	190D7A	190D7A
		Cabinet cover panel	190D8A	190D8A	190D9A	190D9A	190D9A	190D9A
5	Purple reign	Printer cover set (Scanner front cover, Front door, Cover for tray 2, 3)	190F2A	190F3A	190F0A	190F1A	190F0A	190F1A
		Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) cover panel	190F4A	190F4A	190F6A	190F6A	190F6A	190F6A
		High Capacity Input (HCI) tray cover panel	190F5A	190F5A	190F7A	190F7A	190F7A	190F7A
		Cabinet cover panel	190F8A	190F8A	190F9A	190F9A	190F9A	190F9A

2 Product installation and maintenance

You will learn more about product installation and maintenance.

Product installation

For more information about hardware, engine, and accessory installation for the printer, review the following document.

[HP LaserJet Managed MFP - Installation Guides](#)

Maintenance

Learn about preventive maintenance and printer cleaning procedures.

PM table (Preventive Maintenance)

HP recommends cleaning and checking the following maintenance items at the specified intervals.

Some easy items are strongly recommended to be executed during every visit, regardless of the page count, to make sure the printer produces quality copies and to extend the service life of the printer. Also, HP recommends inspecting consumable parts and replacing if needed to reduce the visit count. After replacing, a counter reset should be done to make sure the next replacement window is clear.



NOTE:

- Depending on the printing patterns and the job mode used, consumable part lifespans vary.
 - Toner cartridges and the Toner Collection Unit are excluded from this table because they are classified as supplies, not long life consumables (LLCs).
-

In the table below, the following abbreviations are used:

- **C:** Clean
- **I:** Inspect
- **R:** Replace

The counts below indicate the recommended engine counter value for each item (Engine life 3,600K).

Table 2-1 Preventative Maintenance

Type	Item	360K	600K	1200K 2400K 3600K	1800K	3000K	Notes
Clean/Inspect	Paper dust holder		C	C	C	C	
	CTD Sensor		C	C	C	C	Mandatory after OPC or Deve unit replaced
	Scanner glass	C	C	C	C	C	Recommended at every visit
	ADF CIS (Contact Image Sensor)	C	C	C	C	C	Recommended at every visit
	Deve guide plate	I/C	I/C	I/C	I/C	I/C	Check for contamination, and then clean if necessary.
	Paper guide adjustment check in Trays	I	I	I	I	I	Recommended at every visit
Consumable check	K OPC		I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	
	Image transfer belt		I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	
	Fuser		I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	
	K Deve units			I/R			
	Roller kit for Tray 1	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	Recommended at every visit
	Roller kit for Tray 2-x	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	Recommended at every visit
	ADF Roller kit	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	Recommended at every visit

Cleaning

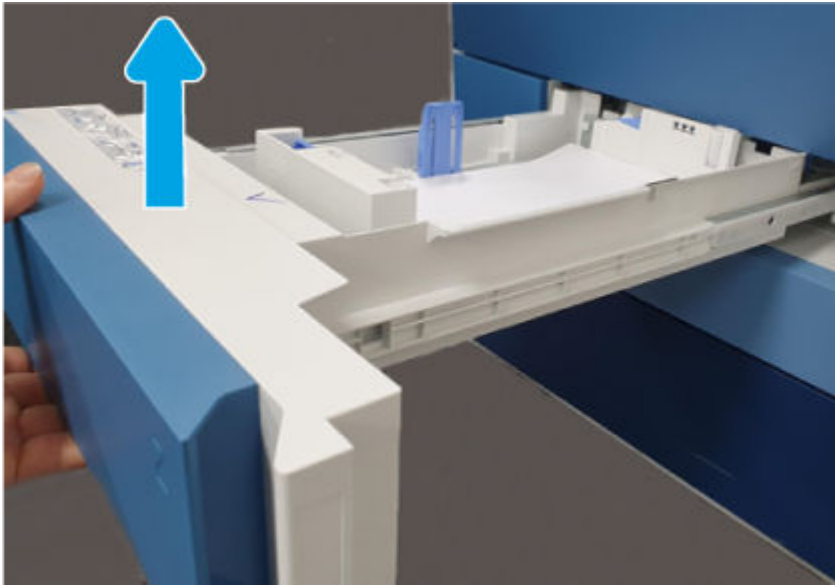
Use the procedures below to carry out regular cleaning procedures.

Cleaning the paper dust holder

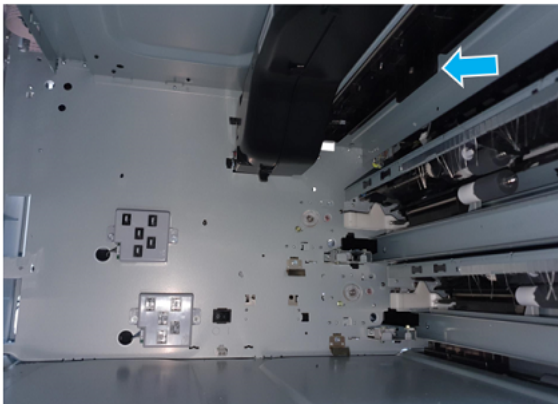
Learn about cleaning the paper dust holder.

The paper dust holder cleaning is recommended at every 600K pages. Be aware that clean the paper dust holder message does not appear to avoid interrupting customer usage. Thus, technicians need to do this task actively. Use the following procedure to complete this task.

1. Remove Trays 2 and 3 from the printer. To remove them, pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.



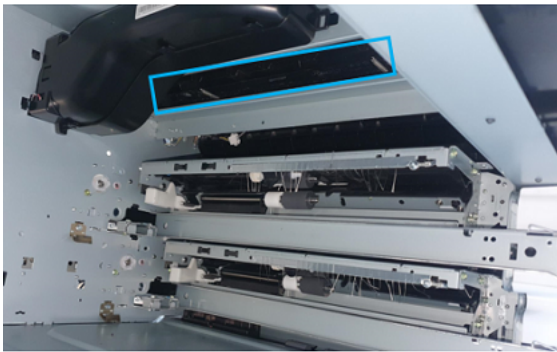
2. Remove the paper dust holder. To remove it, locate the handle and pull it in the direction shown by arrow below.



3. Clean the Paper dust holder, and then reassemble it.



4. Insert the paper dust holder back into the printer. When replacing it, push it back in to the same location until you feel it click into place.



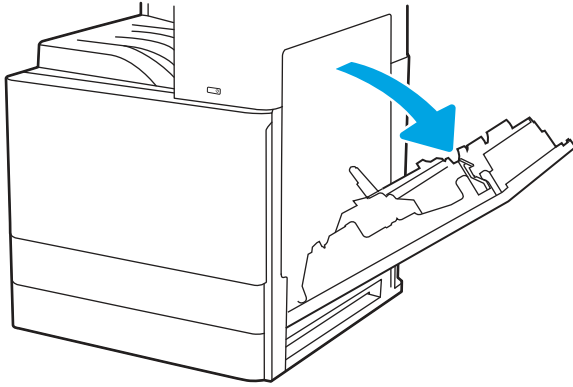
5. Insert Trays 2 and 3 back into the printer.

Cleaning the CTD sensor

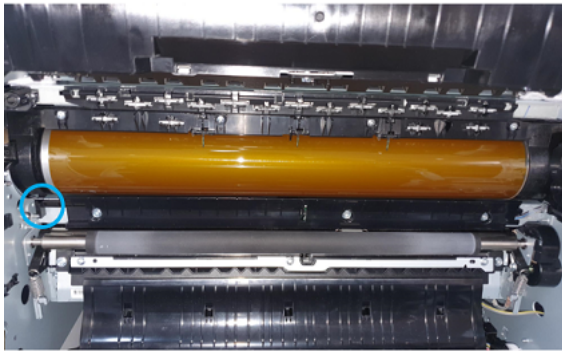
Use the following procedure to clean the CTD sensor.

The CTD sensor is designed to be cleaned automatically by each paper pass. However, it is strongly recommend that manual cleaning take place during every visit in order to maintain quality copies. Note that once the OPC or Developer unit is replaced, manual cleaning is required in order to clear contamination which might be caused during those replacements.

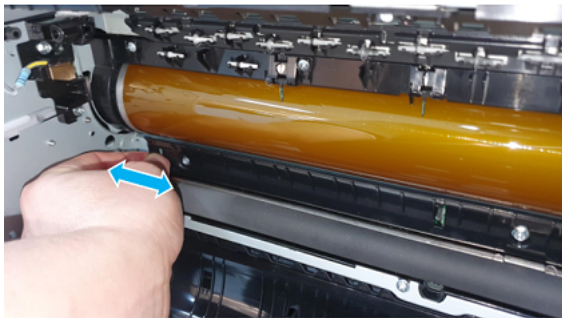
1. Open the right door.



2. Locate the CTD sensor handle.



3. Clean the sensor by sliding the handle left and right several times.



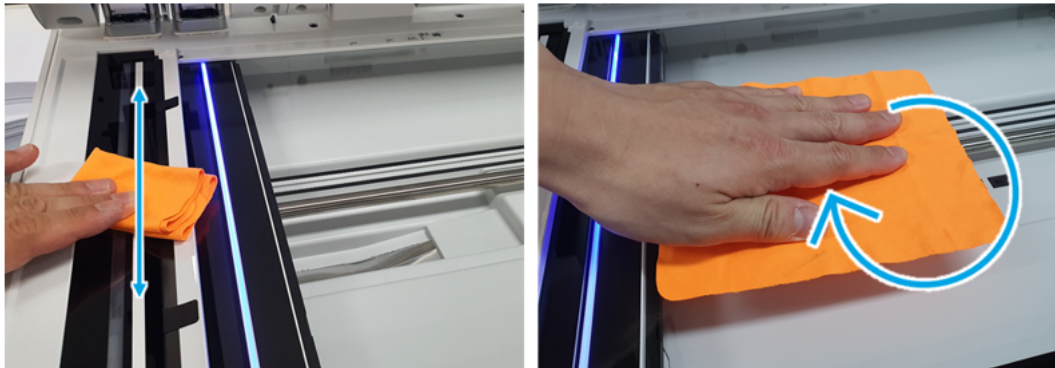
4. Close the right door.

Cleaning the scanner glass

It is recommended that the scanner glass be cleaned during every maintenance visit. Use the following procedure to complete this task.

1. Open the ADF by lifting it up.

2. Clean the image scanner area and flat-bed glass using a lint-free cloth.

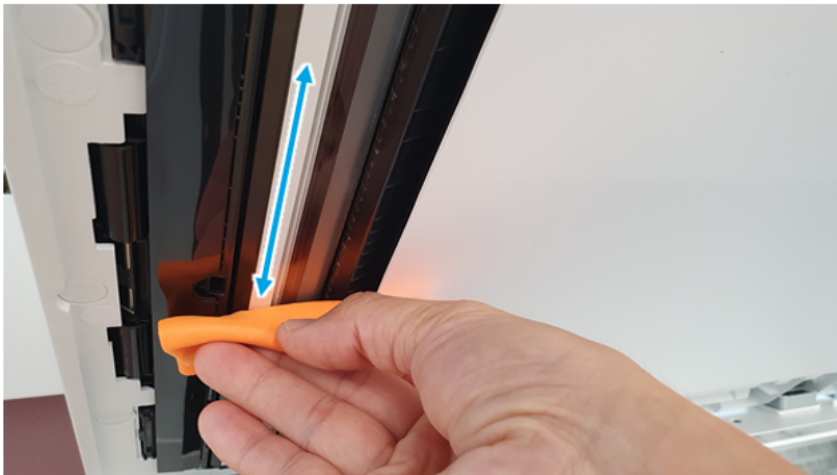


3. Close the ADF.

Cleaning the ADF CIS (Contact Image Sensor)

It is recommended that the ADF CIS (Contact Image Sensor) be cleaned during every maintenance visit. Use the following procedure to complete this task.

1. Open the ADF by lifting it up.
2. Clean the CIS scanning area, located underneath ADF, using a lint-free cloth.




3. Close the ADF.

Cleaning the deve plate guide

Learn about cleaning the deve plate guide.

Inspect the deve plate guide for contamination at every engine counter preventative maintenance visit, and then clean it if necessary. Cleaning the plate guide helps to prevent image quality issues (for example, background).

Use the following procedure to complete this task.

 **TIP:** Cleaning the deve plate guide requires removing the OPC and Deve which is a time consuming activity. Always inspect the plate guide for contamination first, and then only clean the plated guide if it is dirty. If there is no contamination, cleaning is not required.

1. Remove the OPC.
2. Inspect the deve plate guide for contamination.


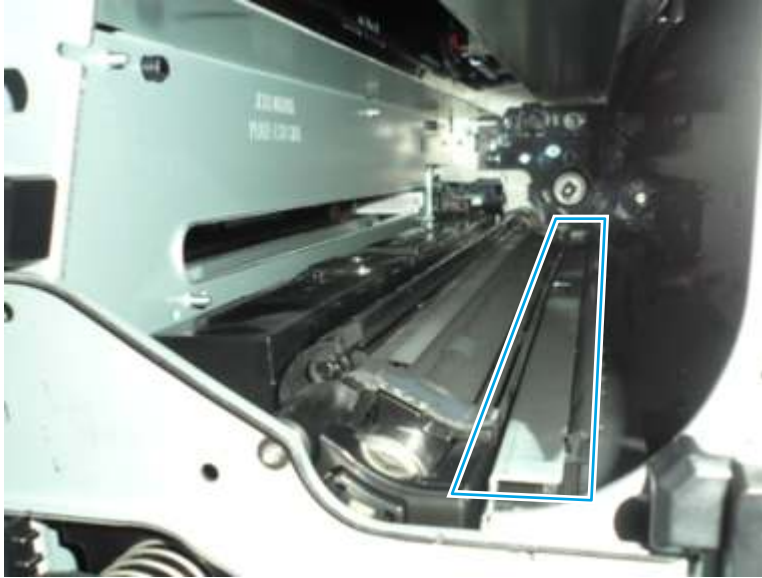
 **NOTE:** If the deve plate guide is not contaminated, skip the remaining steps.

Figure 2-1 Check for contamination



3. If the deve plate guide is contaminated, do the following to clean it.
 - a. Remove the developer unit.
 - b. Clean the surfaces of the plate.


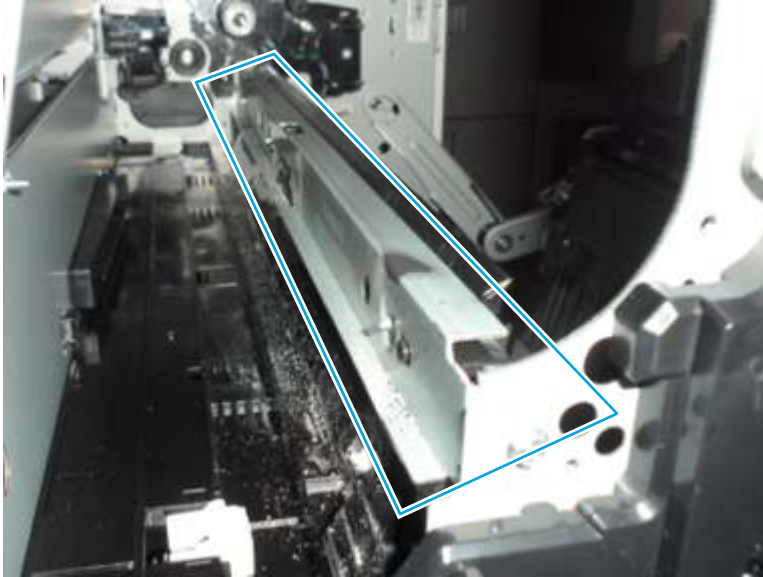
 **TIP:** To increase access to the plate, open the right door.

Figure 2-2 Clean the plate



Inspection procedures

Use the following procedures to inspect the printer during maintenance visits.

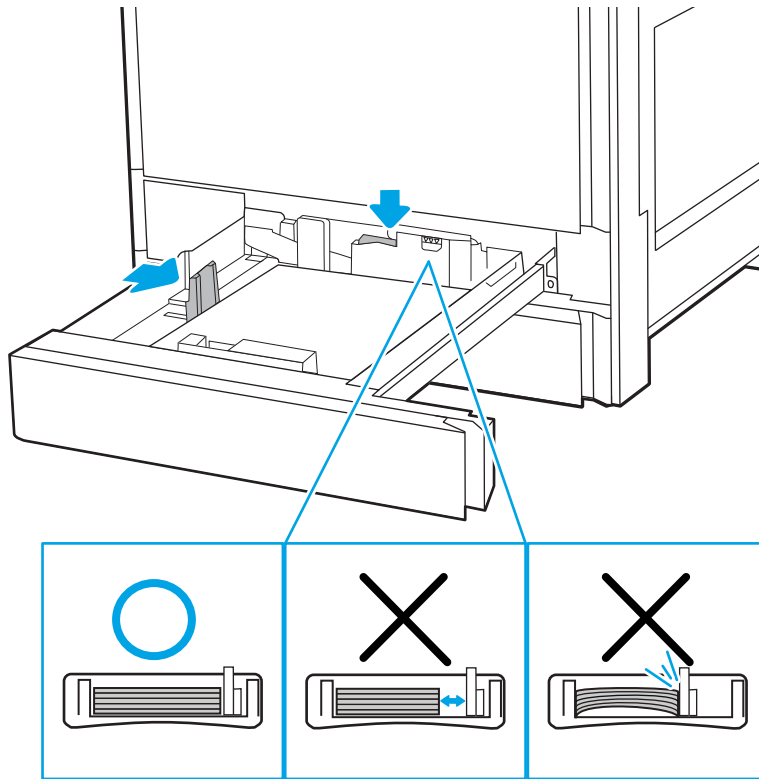
Inspect paper guide adjustment in trays

Checking paper guide adjustment and paper loading status is recommended during every visit. This is important in order to reduce paper jams. Many paper jams occur due to incorrect paper stacking in the trays.

1. Fan the paper.



2. Load the paper. Make sure the paper guides are correctly adjusted.



Inspect consumables (LLC life remaining)

The check of consumable life remaining is recommended at every visit so that the LLC is replaced at the proper time, and does not exceed its end of life. Active replacement is recommended if the LLC life remaining low. This will maintain the expected print quality and, also help to reduce extra visits.

Find the Print Supplies information report by using the following control panel menu navigation:

1. Select the following control panel menus:
 - [Support tools](#)
 - [Service](#) (Enter Pin: 03082622)
 - [Advanced service](#)
 - [Service reports](#)
2. Select [Supplies information report](#) and click the [Print](#) button.

Check the life remaining for each LLC in the Supplies information report. Refer to the following LLC (Long life consumable) list.

Table 2-2 Long life consumables (LLCs)

Item	Part number	Life	Remark
Black OPC	W9086MC	600,000 pages	
Image transfer belt	5PN85A	600,000 pages	Manual counter reset
Fuser unit (100V)	5PN53A	600,000 pages	Only for Japan

Table 2-2 Long life consumables (LLCs) (continued)

Item	Part number	Life	Remark
Fuser unit (110V)	5PN76A	600,000 pages	
Fuser unit (220V)	5PN77A	600,000 pages	
Black developer unit	5PN82A	1,200,000 pages	Manual counter reset
Pickup/Forward/Separation roller (for Tray 2-x)	5PN66A	360,000 pages	Manual counter reset
Pickup/Forward/Separation roller (for Tray1)	5RC03A	200,000 pages	Manual counter reset
ADF roller kit (for 200 sheets dn bundle)	J8J95A	150,000 pages	Manual counter reset
ADF roller kit (for 300 sheets z bundle)	5RC00A	300,000 pages	Manual counter reset



NOTE: Maintenance part lifespans will vary depending upon printing patterns and the job mode used.

Maintenance (remove and replace)

Use the following links to see removal and replacement procedures for long-life consumables (LLCs).

- [Removal and replacement: Drum unit on page 1137](#)
- [Removal and replacement: Paper transfer belt \(PBT\) on page 845](#)
- [Removal and replacement: Fuser unit on page 1178](#)
- [Removal and replacement: Black developer unit on page 1140](#)
- [Removal and replacement: Tray 1 roller kit \(pickup/forward/reverse\) on page 689](#)
- [Removal and replacement: Tray 2, 3 roller kit \(pickup/forward/reverse\) on page 703](#)
- [Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit \(200sh\) on page 1427](#)
- [Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit \(300sh\) on page 1374](#)

Counter reset after LLC replacement

The LLCs listed below require their counter reset manually after replacement. LLCs not listed here have EEPROM/CRUM counters that are reset automatically.

- Image transfer belt (**use steps 1 and 2**)
- Black Developer unit (**use steps 1 and 2**)
- Pickup/Forward/Separation roller (for Tray 2-x) (**use steps 1 and 2**)
- Pickup/Forward/Separation roller (for Tray1) (**use steps 1 and 2**)
- ADF roller kit (for 200-sheet dn bundle ADF or 300-sheet z bundle ADF) (**use steps 3 and 4**)

Reset the counter from the control panel using the following instructions.

1. **For all LLCs except the ADF roller kit:** Select the following menus:
 - [Support tools](#)
 - [Service](#) (Enter Pin: 03082622)
 - [Reset supplies](#)
2. Select the LLC being replaced, and then click the [Reset](#) button.
3. **For the ADF roller kit LLC only:** Select the following menus:
 - [Settings](#)
 - [Manage Supplies](#)
 - [Reset supplies](#)
4. Select the [Document Feeder Kit](#) item, and then click the [Reset](#) button.

3 Theory of operation

You will learn more about theory of operation.

Base printer

Learn about the theory of operation for the base printer.

Covers (1 of 2)

Learn about the printer covers.

Figure 3-1 Covers (1 of 2)

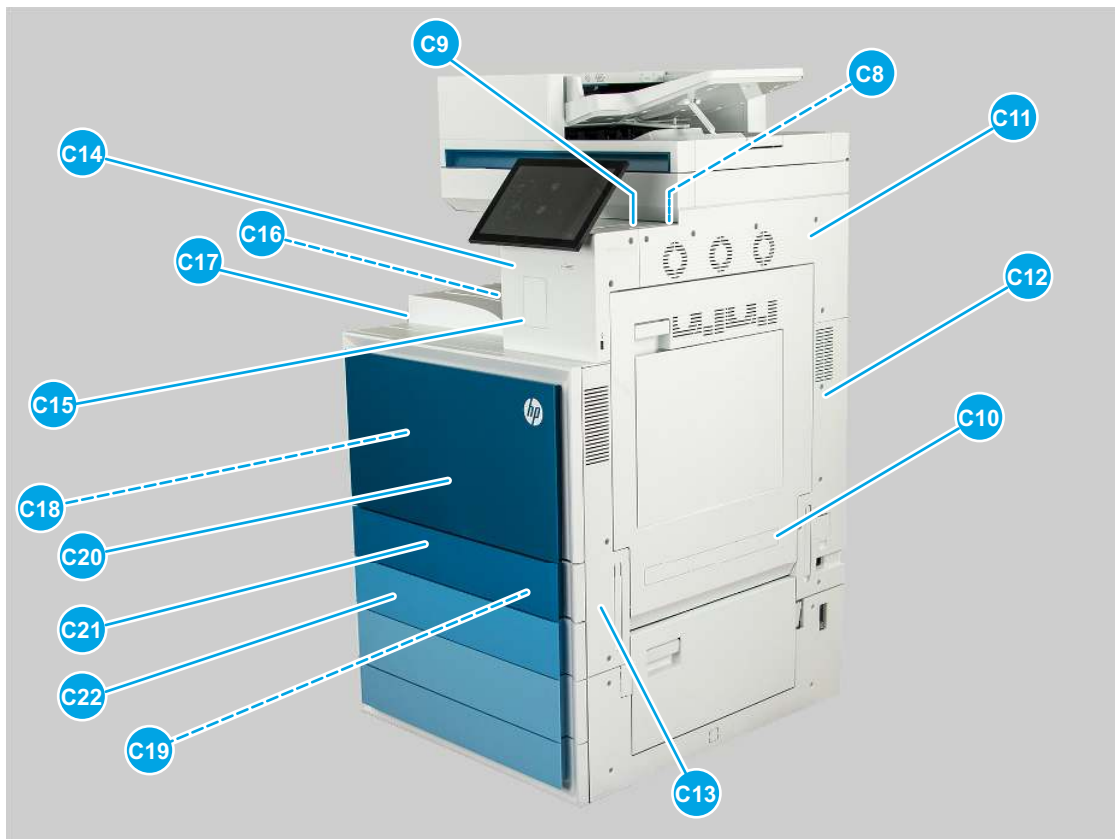


Table 3-1 Covers (1 of 2)

Callout	Part name	Part number
C8	Middle cover NOTE: Located behind the middle upper cover (towards the rear of the printer) under the ISA whole unit.	6ER04-40033
C9	Middle upper cover	6ER04-40026
C10	Right door sHCl dummy cover	JC63-04918B

Table 3-1 Covers (1 of 2) (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number
C11	Right upper cover	6ER04-40021
C12	Right rear cover	6ER04-61003
C13	Right front cover	6ER04-40005
C14	Right middle cover assembly	6ER04-61006
C15	HIP cover	6EQ94-40032
C16	Middle left cover	6ER04-40036
C17	Exit cover stacker	6ER04-61004
C18	Inner cover NOTE: This cover is behind the front cover (C20).	6ER08-61002
C19	Front lower cover NOTE: This cover is behind Tray 2.	6ER04-40030
C20	Front cover assembly	6ER08-61001
C21	Tray 2 cover - CMF panel	5QK09-40055
C22	Tray 3 cover - CMF panel	5QK09-40058

Covers (2 of 2)

Learn about the printer covers.

Figure 3-2 Covers (2 of 2)

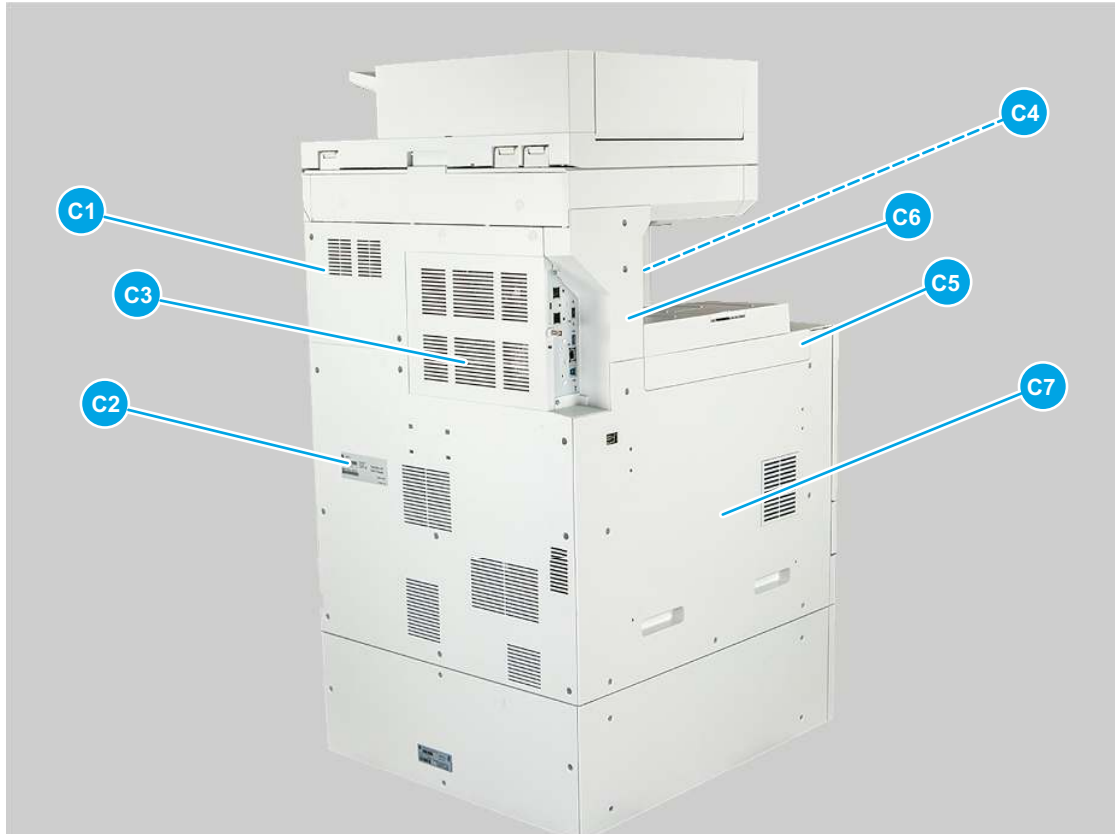


Table 3-2 Covers (2 of 2)

Callout	Part name	Part number
C1	Rear upper cover	6ER04-40008
C2	Rear lower cover	6ER04-61002
C3	Controller cover	6ER04-61005
C4	Exit rear cover	6ER04-40028
C5	Left top cover	6ER04-40027
C6	Left upper cover	JC63-04862B
C7	Left cover	6ER04-40049

Feeding system

Learn about the feeding system.

Feeding system overview

Learn about the feeding system overview.

The feeding system is responsible for the process ranging from picking up paper to ejecting it out of the machine. This system is mainly composed of Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, registration unit, loop sensing unit, exit unit, and duplex unit.

Feeding system workflow

Learn about the feeding workflow.

Figure 3-3 Feeding system workflow

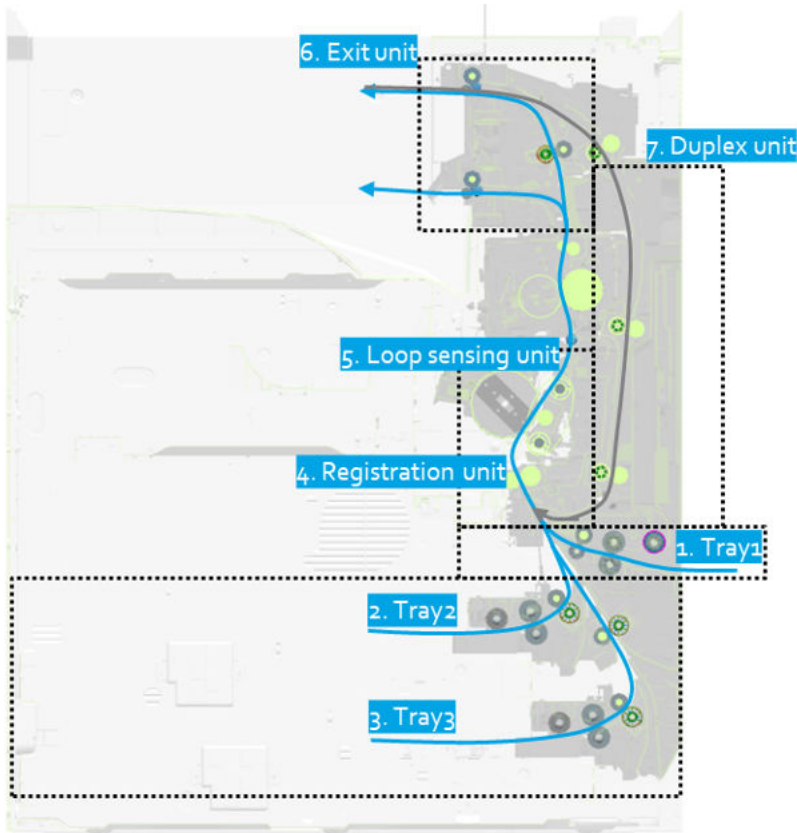


Table 3-3 Feeding system workflow

Callout	Part name	Description
1	Tray 1	Picks up one sheet of paper and delivers it to the registration unit
2	Tray 2	Stores paper for printing, picks up and transfers the paper to the registration unit
3	Tray 3	Stores paper for printing, picks up and transfer the paper to the registration unit
4	Registration unit	Arranges the paper moved from the tray
5	Loop sensing unit	Controls the paper moving speed between the drum and the fuser
6	Exit unit	Discharges the paper to the outside of the product or make and move the paper path so that the paper can be moved toward the duplex unit for duplex printing
7	Duplex unit	Allows paper to move from the exit unit to the registration unit for duplex printing

Feeding system rollers

Learn about the feeding system rollers.

Figure 3-4 Feeding system rollers

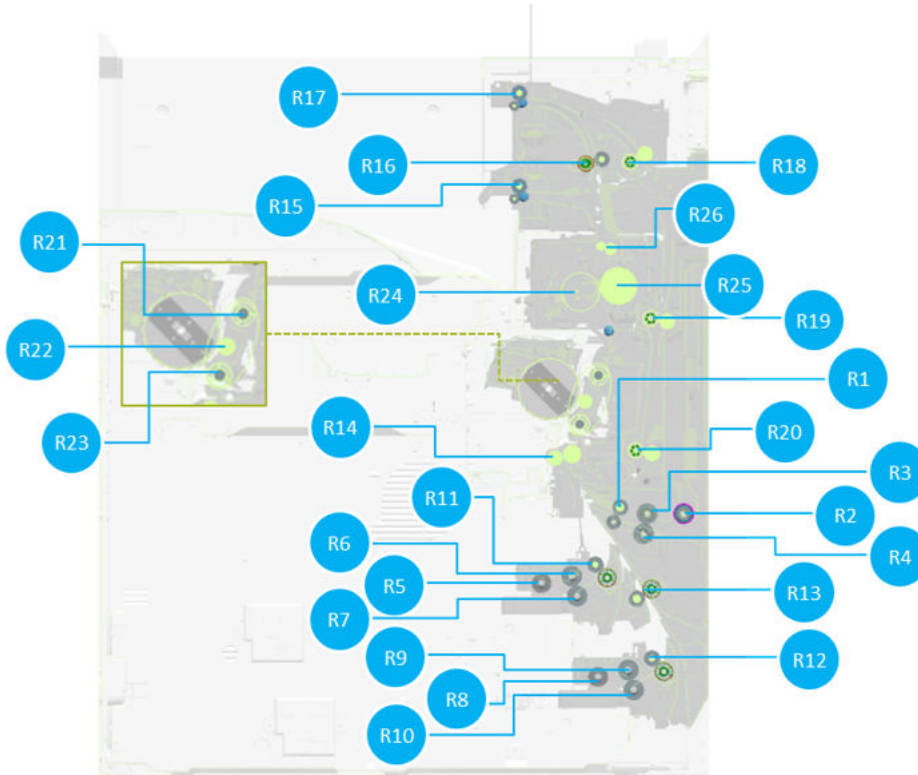


Table 3-4 Feeding system rollers

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R1	Tray 1 prefeed roller	NA	Moves paper to the registration roller
R2	Tray 1 pickup roller	JC93-01721A	Picks up paper on the tray
R3	Tray 1 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper inside the printer
R4	Tray 1 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multiple pages feeding into the printer
R5	Tray 2 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R6	Tray 2 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the feed roller
R7	Tray 2 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multiple pages feeding into the machine
R8	Tray 3 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R9	Tray 3 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the feed roller
R10	Tray 3 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multiple pages feeding into the machine
R11	Tray 2 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the registration roller
R12	Tray 3 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the registration roller
R13	Tray 3 transfer roller	NA	Moves paper from Tray 3 or Tray 4 to the registration roller
R14	Registration roller	NA	Arranges paper moved from the tray and moves the paper to the ITB - second transfer roller
R15	Exit 1 roller	NA	Moves paper to the exit 1
R16	Exit 2 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the exit 2 roller

Table 3-4 Feeding system rollers (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R17	Exit 2 roller	NA	Moves paper to the exit 2
R18	Duplex 1 roller	NA	Moves paper to the duplex unit during duplex printing
R19	Duplex 2 roller	NA	Moves paper to the duplex 2 roller
R20	Duplex 3 roller	NA	Moves paper to the registration roller
R21	PTB drive roller	NA	Rotates the paper transfer belt
R22	PTB transfer roller	NA	Rotates the paper transfer belt and helps image transfer from the drum surface to the paper
R23	PTB guide roller	NA	Guides the paper transfer belt
R24	Fuser heating belt	NA	Receives heat from the halogen lamp and transfers it to the toner and the paper
R25	Fuser pressure roller	NA	Makes contact with the fuser belt to transfer heat and pressure to the paper and toner, and drives the paper to move to the exit unit
R26	Fuser exit roller	NA	Moves the toner fixed paper to the exit unit

Feeding system sensors

Learn about the feeding system sensors.

Figure 3-5 Feeding system sensors



Table 3-5 Feeding system sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Sensor type	Description
S1	Tray 1 paper empty sensor	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Checks whether a paper is on the Tray 1
S2	Tray 2 empty sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks whether a paper is on the Tray 2
S3	Tray 2 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Sets the proper height of paper to make a contact with the pickup roller
S4	Tray 2 prefeed sensor	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Keeps the proper distance between papers on the paper path
S5	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor	JC93-01408A		Checks whether the tray is closed, make signals to identify the paper size
S6	Tray 3 empty sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks whether a paper is on the Tray 3
S7	Tray 3 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Sets the proper height of paper to make a contact with the pickup roller
S8	Tray 3 prefeed sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Keeps the proper distance between papers on the paper path

Table 3-5 Feeding system sensors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Sensor type	Description
S9	Tray 3 open, paper size sensor	JC93-01408A		Checks whether the tray is closed, make signals to identify the paper size
S10	Feed 2 sensor	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Checks whether the paper correctly comes from the Tray 3, 4, 5 or 6
S11	Registration sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Checks whether the paper comes into the registration unit
S12	Loop sensor 1	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks whether the paper is moved with the proper speed and movement by the fuser
S13	Loop sensor 2	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks whether the paper is moved with the proper speed and movement by the fuser
S14	Fuser out sensor	0960-5271	Paper sensor	Checks whether the paper escapes well from the fuser
S15	Out bin 1 full sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks whether the paper correctly goes out on the output bin, and it is loaded up to the maximum capacity
S16	Out bin 2 full sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks whether the paper goes out on the output bin correctly, and it is loaded up to the maximum capacity. (Optional, included in the job separator)
S17	Exit 2 sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks whether the paper goes out to the out bin 2
S18	Duplex jam 1 sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Moves paper to the duplex unit during duplex printing
S19	Duplex jam 2 sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks whether the paper goes through the duplex unit
S30	Fuser wrap jam sensor	NA	Photo interrupter(reflect)	Identifies whether a wrap jam occurred inside the fuser unit

Feeding system motors and solenoids

Learn about the feeding system motors and solenoids.

Figure 3-6 Feeding system motors and solenoids

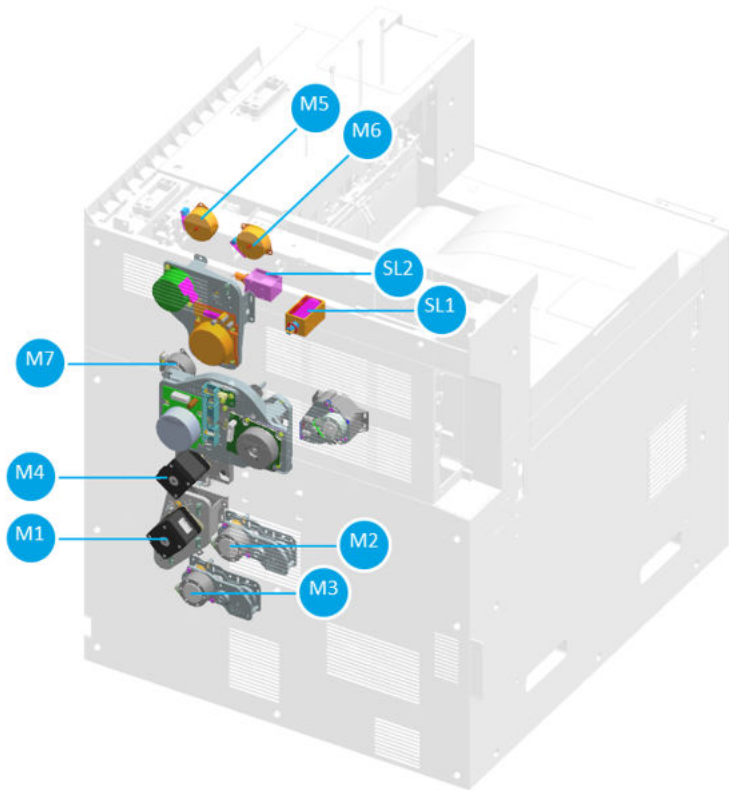


Table 3-6 Feeding system motors and solenoids

Callout	Part name	Part number	Motor type	Description
SL1	Tray 1 pickup solenoid	JC33-00029B	Solenoid	Moves the pickup roller up and down
M1	Feed motor	JC31-00189A	Hybrid stepping motor	Drives the Tray1 rollers, feed rollers, and trans roller
M2	Tray 2 pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Stepping motor	Drives the Tray 2 pickup, forward, and reverse rollers or knock-up plate
M3	Tray 3 pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Stepping motor	Drives the Tray 3 pickup, forward, and reverse rollers or knock-up plate
M4	Registration motor and Tray 1 motor	JC31-00189A	Hybrid stepping motor	Drives the registration roller
M7	Duplex 2 motor	JC93-01085A	Stepping motor	Drives the rollers in the duplex unit to move paper from the exit unit to the registration unit
M6	Duplex 1 motor	JC93-00336A	Stepping motor	Drives the duplex 1 roller
M5	Exit 2 motor	JC93-00336A	Stepping motor	Drives the exit 2 roller
SL2	Return gate solenoid (optional)	JC33-00031B	Solenoid	Changes the paper path to simplex or duplex

Tray 1 unit

Learn about the Tray 1 unit.

Tray 1 overview

Learn about Tray 1 operation.

The Tray 1 unit picks up the paper and delivers to the registration unit.

To ensure that the paper is placed on the Tray 1, a reflective type of tray empty sensor is placed on the side of the paper doorway. The Tray 1 unit is equipped with three rollers to pull a paper and push it into the inside of the machine, each called pickup, forward, and reverse roller. The pickup roller moves downward to pull the paper, which is controlled by the Tray 1 solenoid. The Tray 1 pickup clutch controls the timing of three rollers' rotation coming from the feed motor. The Tray 1 feed roller is mounted to move the pulled paper into the registration unit. The Tray 1 clutch controls the timing of the Tray 1 feed roller's rotation coming from the feed motor.

Figure 3-7 Overview of Tray 1 unit

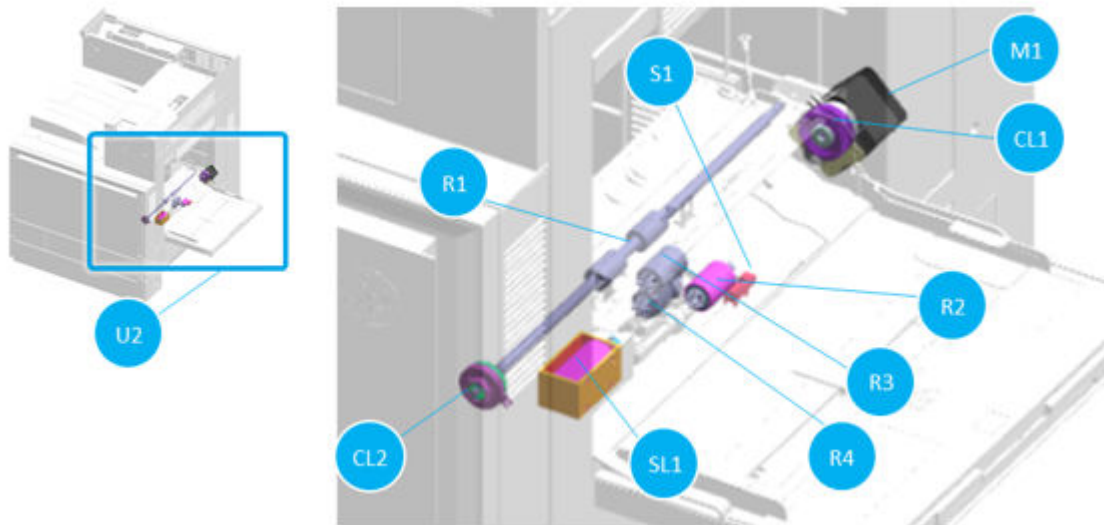


Figure 3-8 Detail view of Tray 1 unit

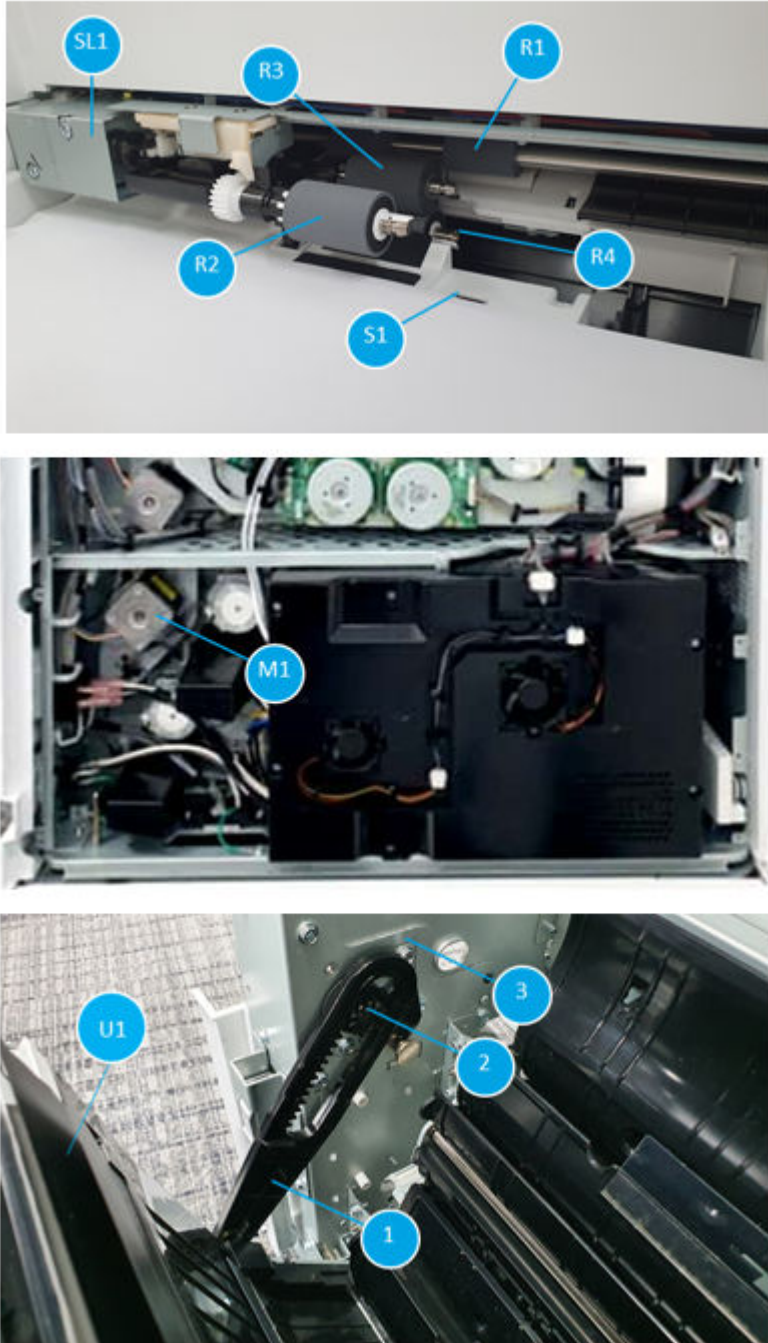


Table 3-7 Parts information for Tray 1 unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U2	Tray 1 unit	JC90-01844A	Picks up paper and delivers to registration unit
M1	Feed motor	JC31-00189A	Drives the Tray 1 feed roller, and pickup/forward/reverse rollers
CL1	Tray 1 clutch	JC47-00037A	Controls the timing of Tray 1 feed roller's rotation coming from the feed motor
R1	Tray 1 feed roller	JC66-05466A	Moves paper inside the machine

Table 3-7 Parts information for Tray 1 unit (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
CL2	Tray 1 pickup clutch	Z9Y05-60012	Controls the timing of three rollers' rotation coming from the feed motor (Pickup roller, Forward roller, Reverse roller)
K1	Tray 1 roller kit	5RC03-67001	Includes pickup, forward, and reverse rollers
R2	Tray 1 pickup roller	JC93-01721A	Picks up paper on the Tray 1
R3	Tray 1 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper inside the printer
R4	Tray 1 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multiple paper feeding into the printer
SL1	Tray 1 solenoid	JC33-00029B	Moves the pickup roller up and down
S1	Tray 1 paper empty sensor	0604-001490	Checks whether a paper is on the Tray 1
U1	Right door assembly	JC95-02247A	
1	Right door front link	JC66-04398A	
2	Right door front damper	JC66-01425A	
3	Right door front damper bracket	JC61-08935A	

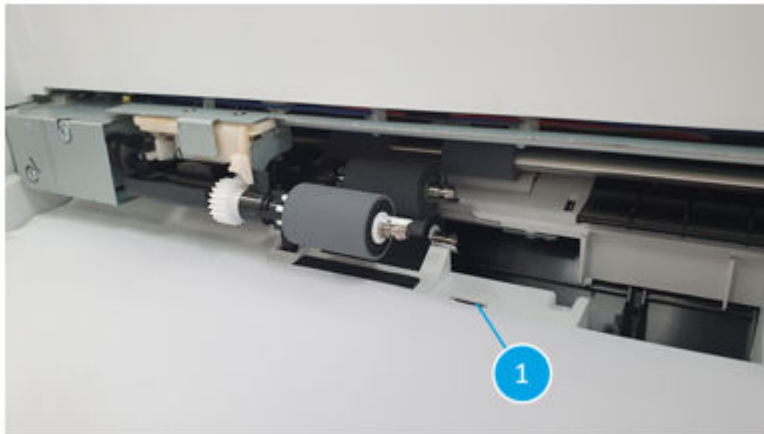
Tray 1 unit operation

Learn about Tray 1 unit operation.

Tray 1 uses the following sequence of operation.

1. The paper empty sensor (callout 1) detects if paper is loaded in Tray 1.

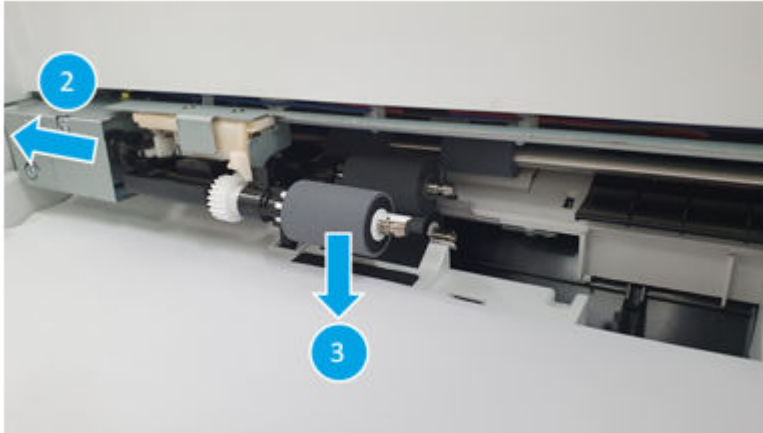
Figure 3-9 Tray 1 empty sensor



2. The Tray 1 solenoid (callout 2) moves to the left.

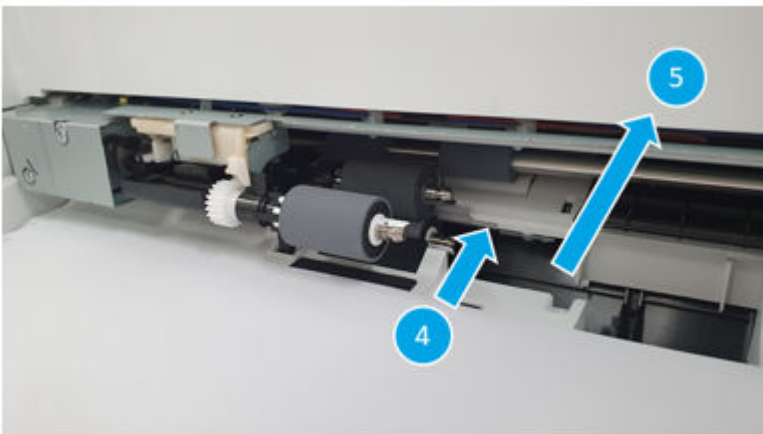
The Tray 1 pickup roller (callout 3) moves downward until it touches the paper in the tray.

Figure 3-10 Tray 1 solenoid and pickup roller



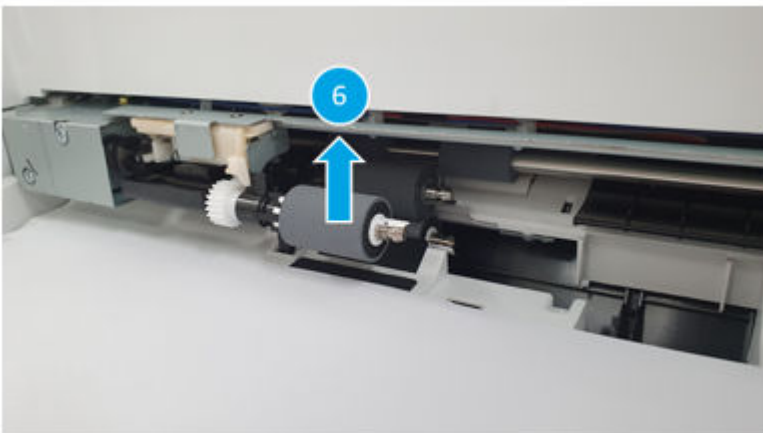
3. The Tray 1 pickup roller moves the paper to the Tray 1 forward and reverse rollers (callout 4). The Tray 1 forward roller moves the paper to the registration unit (callout 5).

Figure 3-11 Moving the paper to the registration unit



4. The Tray 1 pickup roller returns to the original position to wait for the next printing job (callout 6).

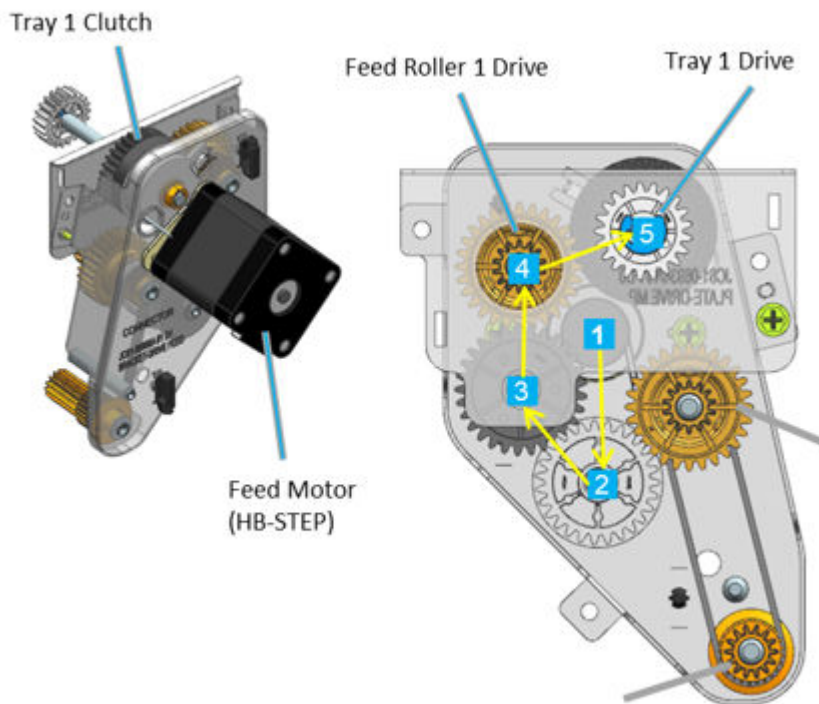
Figure 3-12 Tray 1 pickup roller returns to the original position



Tray 1 unit driving

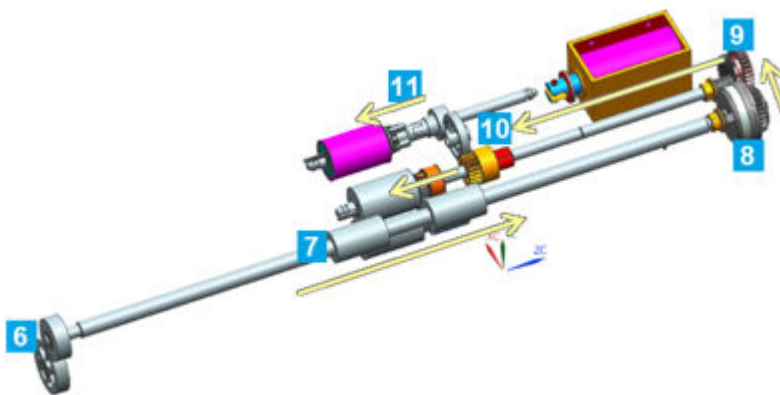
Learn about Tray 1 unit driving.

Figure 3-13 Tray 1 unit driving



- Tray 1 driving: 1 feed motor > 2 pulley and gear > 3 gear > 4 gear and coupler (feed roller 1 drive) > 5 Tray 1 pickup clutch (Tray 1 pickup roller, Tray 1 forward roller)

Figure 3-14 Tray 1 pickup driving



- Tray 1 pickup driving: 6 gear > 7 Tray 1 feed roller > 8 Tray 1 pickup clutch > 9 gear > 10 gears > 11 Tray 1 pickup and forward roller


Tray 2/3 unit

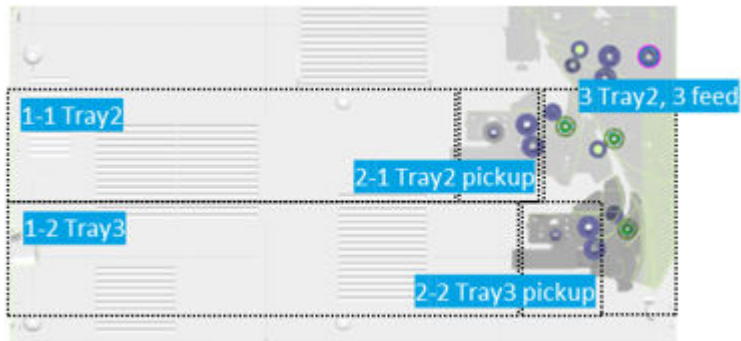
Learn about the Tray 2/3 unit.

Tray 2/3 unit overview

Learn about the Tray 2/3 unit overview.

The Tray 2/3 units store paper. The Tray 2/3 pickup assembly picks up and transfers the paper to the feed roller. Then the feed roller sends the paper to the registration unit.

 **NOTE:** The initial setting of the Tray 2/3 unit is based on ISO216 standard. In countries where letter size paper is used as the base, the tray guide must be adjusted to store the paper correctly before printing.



Tray 2/3 cassette

Learn about Tray 2/3 cassette operation.

The paper size is set using the front and rear guides in each tray cassette. Inside the cassettes there is a knock-up plate operated by the pickup motor, which serves to lift the paper for the pickup process.

Figure 3-15 Overview of Tray 2/3 cassettes

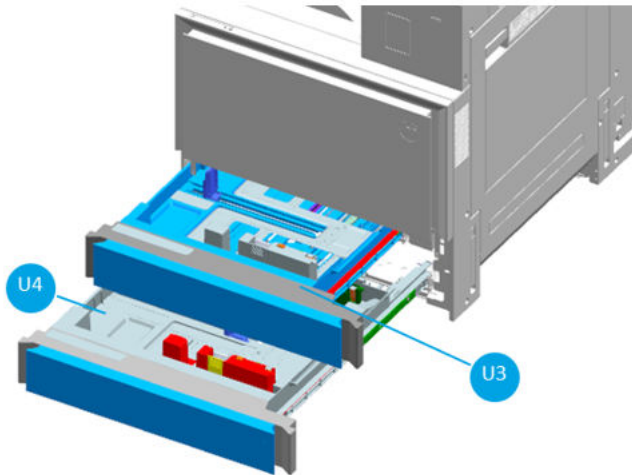


Table 3-8 Overview of Tray 2/3 cassette

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U3	Tray 2 cassette	5QK09-60120	Stores paper
U4	Tray 3 cassette	5QK09-60121	Stores paper

Figure 3-16 Detail view of Tray 2 cassette

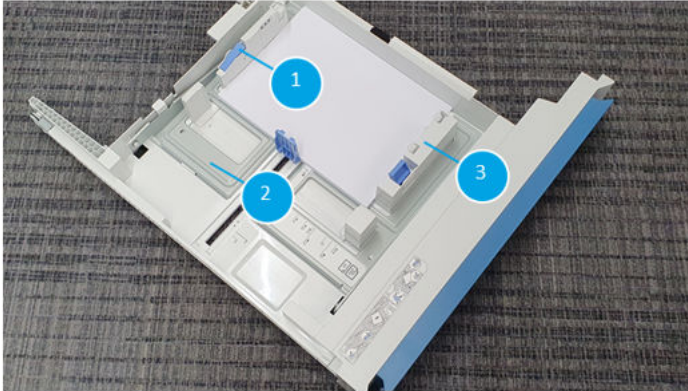


Table 3-9 Detail view of Tray 2 cassette

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Rear guide	NA	Keeps the paper well organized and settled
2	Knock-up plate	NA	Raises the leading edge of the paper for pickup process
3	Front guide	NA	Keeps the paper well organized and settled

Figure 3-17 Detail view of Tray 3 cassette

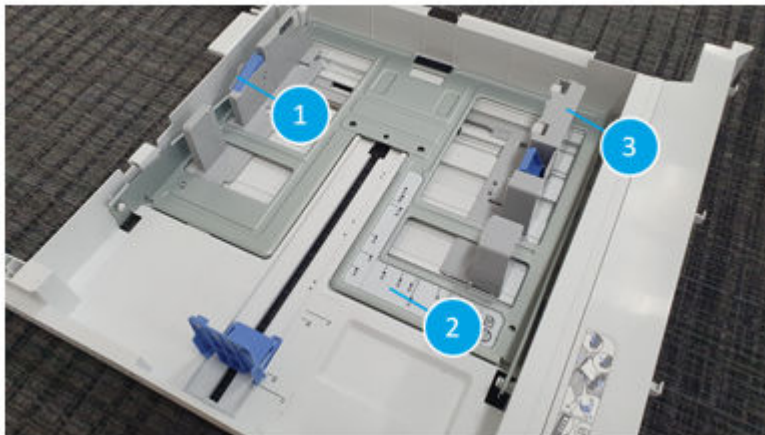


Table 3-10 Detail view of Tray 3 cassette

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Rear guide	NA	Keeps the paper well organized and settled
2	Knock-up plate	NA	Raises the leading edge of the paper for pickup process
3	Front guide	NA	Keeps the paper well organized and settled

Tray 2/3 pickup assembly

Learn about Tray 2/3 pickup assembly.

The Tray 2/3 pickup sections have a pickup roller, a forward roller, and a reverse roller that pulls the paper from the tray.

The Tray 2 empty sensor checks whether paper is loaded on the tray. The stack height sensor detects the proper height to raise the knock-up plate to a position where it can be picked up. When the appropriate pressure is formed between the pickup roller and the paper, and the pickup roller and the forward roller are driven by the pickup motor, the paper is picked up and the reverse roller prevents multiple paper feeding. The prefeed sensor detects whether the paper leading edge is on the pickup roller or the forward roller during pickup process, maintaining the proper span between the first paper and the next page paper.

Figure 3-18 Overview of Tray 2 pickup assembly



Table 3-11 Overview of Tray 2 pickup assembly

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K2	Tray 2 roller kit	5PN66-67001	Roller kit for Tray 2 or Tray 3 includes pickup, forward and reverse roller
R5	Tray 2 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R6	Tray 2 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the registration roller
R7	Tray 2 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the registration roller
S2	Tray 2 empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray is empty
S3	Tray 2 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Checks how much paper is loaded in the tray
S4	Tray 2 prefeed sensor	0604-001490	Checks whether picking up a paper is properly processed
S5	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	Checks whether the tray is closed, make signals to identify the paper size
M2	Tray 2 pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Drives the Tray 2 pickup, forward, and reverse roller or the knock-up plate

Figure 3-19 Detail view of Tray 2 pickup assembly

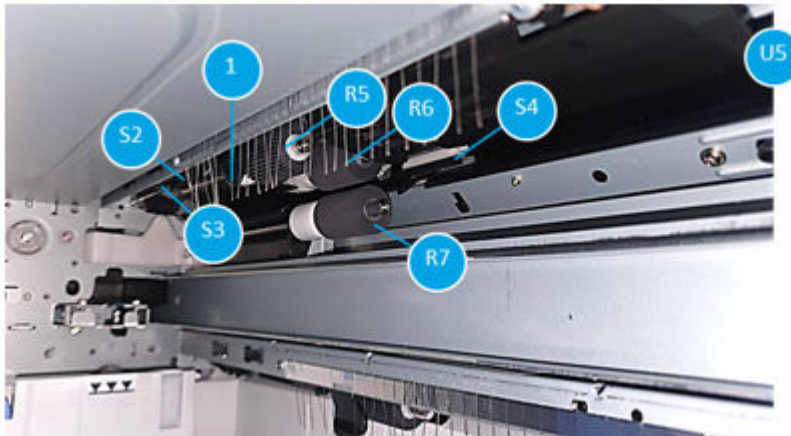


Table 3-12 Parts information for Tray 2 pickup assembly

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U5	Tray 2 pickup assembly	JC93-01694A	
R5	Tray 2 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R6	Tray 2 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the registration roller
R7	Tray 2 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the registration roller
1	Tray 2 empty sensor actuator	SNA	Checks whether the tray is empty
S2	Tray 2 empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray is empty
S3	Tray 2 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Checks how much paper is loaded in the tray
S4	Tray 2 prefeed sensor	0604-001490	Checks whether picking up a paper is properly processed

Figure 3-20 Detail view of Tray 2 cassette, side view

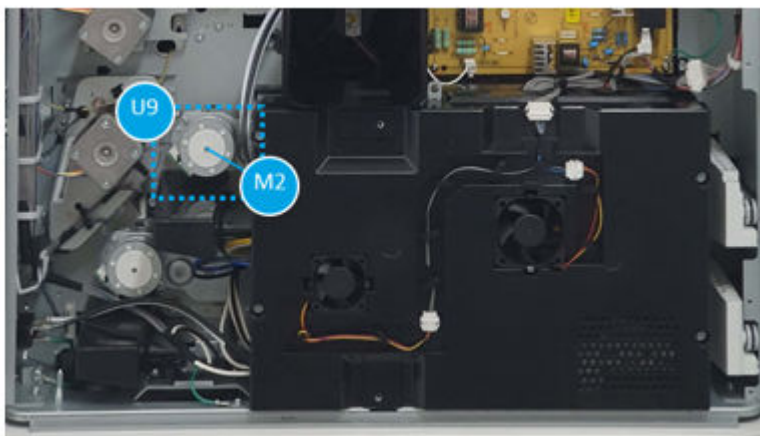


Table 3-13 Parts information for Tray 2 pickup assembly, side view

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U9	Tray 2 pickup drive assembly	JC93-01663A	

Table 3-13 Parts information for Tray 2 pickup assembly, side view (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M2	Tray 2 pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Drives the Tray 2 pickup, forward, and reverse roller or the knock-up plate

Figure 3-21 Overview of Tray 3 pickup assembly

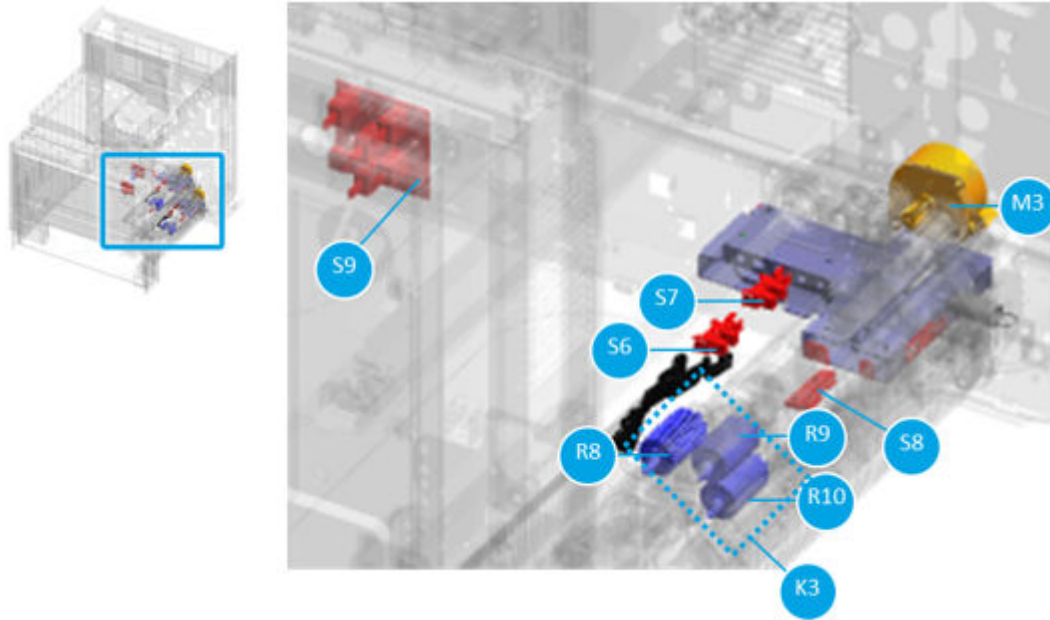


Table 3-14 Overview of Tray 3 pickup assembly

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K3	Tray 3 roller kit	5PN66-67001	
R8	Tray 3 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R9	Tray 3 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the registration roller
R10	Tray 3 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the registration roller
S6	Tray 3 empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray is empty
S7	Tray 3 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Checks how much paper is loaded in the tray
S8	Tray 3 prefeed sensor	0604-001381	Checks whether picking up a paper is properly processed
S9	Tray 3 open, paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	Checks whether the tray is closed, make signals to identify the paper size
M3	Tray 3 pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Drives tray 3 pickup, forward, and reverse roller or the knock-up plate

Figure 3-22 Detail view of Tray 3 pickup assembly

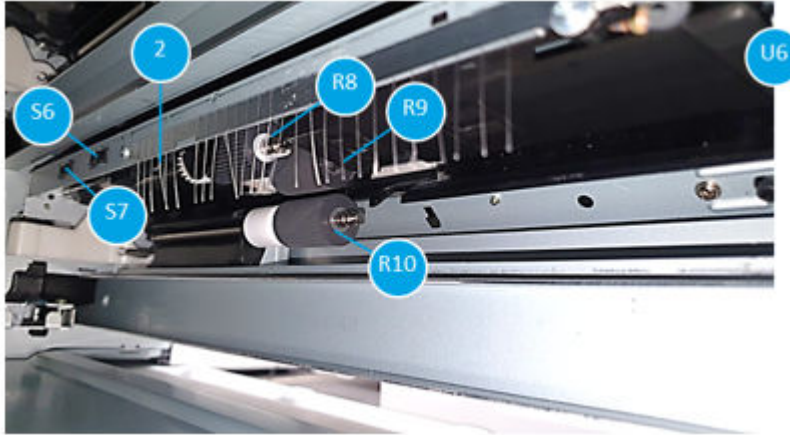


Table 3-15 Parts information for Tray 3 pickup assembly

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U6	Tray 3 pickup assembly	JC93-01695A	
R8	Tray 3 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R9	Tray 3 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the registration roller
R10	Tray 3 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the registration roller
2	Tray 3 empty sensor actuator	SNA	Checks whether the tray is empty
S6	Tray 3 empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray is empty
S7	Tray 3 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Checks how much paper is loaded in the tray

Figure 3-23 Detail view of Tray 3 pickup assembly, side view

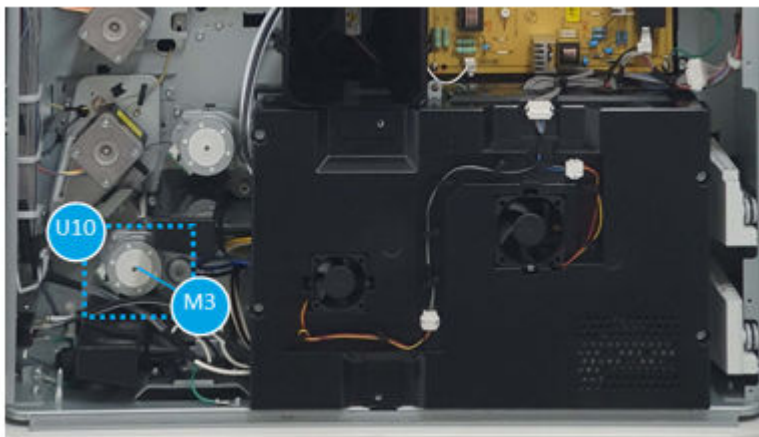


Table 3-16 Parts information for Tray 3 pickup assembly, side view

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U10	Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	JC93-01663A	

Table 3-16 Parts information for Tray 3 pickup assembly, side view (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M3	Tray 3 pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Drives Tray 3 pickup, forward, and reverse roller or the knock-up plate



NOTE: The Tray 2 pickup assembly and the Tray 3 pickup assembly have a similar shape, but they are not interchangeable.

Tray 2/3 page size sensor, tray heater

Learn about Tray 2/3 page size sensor, tray heater.

The Tray 2/3 paper size sensor recognizes the paper size, at the same time the tray open sensor detects whether the tray is opened or closed. The tray heater can be installed to prevent image defects or curling of printed paper. This part is available as an option.

Figure 3-24 Detail view of Tray 2/3 paper size sensor, tray heater

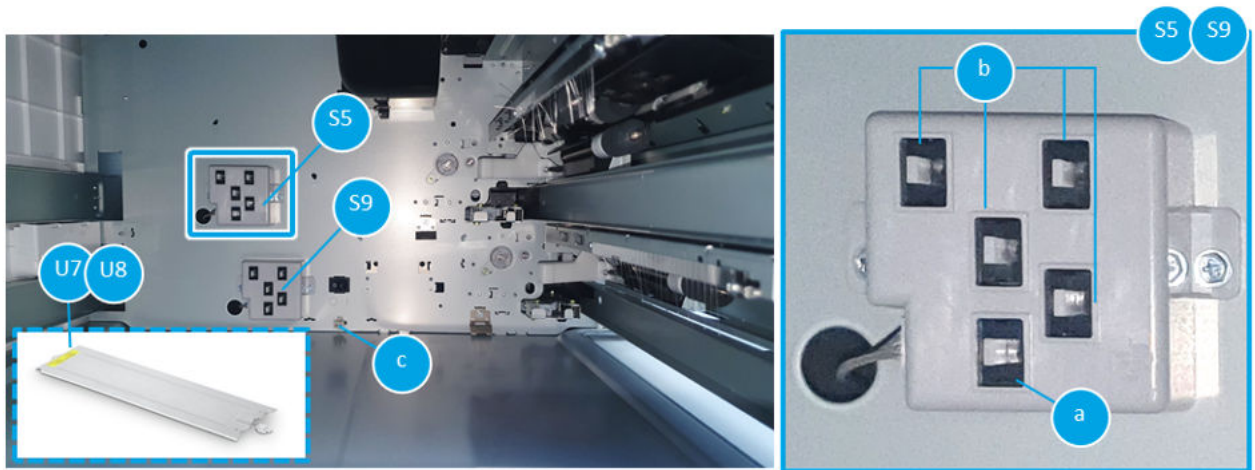


Table 3-17 Parts information for Tray 2/3 paper size sensor, tray heater

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S5	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	Detects the size of the paper in the tray
S9	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	Detects the size of the paper in the tray
a	Tray open sensor	NA	Checks whether the tray is closed
b	Paper size sensor	NA	Makes signals to identify the paper size
c	Tray heater connector	NA	Supplies power to the tray heater
U7	Tray heater 110V	Y1G22-67901	Dries damp paper with heating pipe
U8	Tray heater 220V	Y1G22-67902	Dries damp paper with heating pipe

Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor

Learn about Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor.

The paper from Tray 2 goes through the Tray 2 feed roller to the registration unit. The paper from Tray 3 goes through the Tray 3 feed roller and feed 2 sensor to the registration unit. The feed roller is driven by the feed motor.

Figure 3-25 Overview of Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor

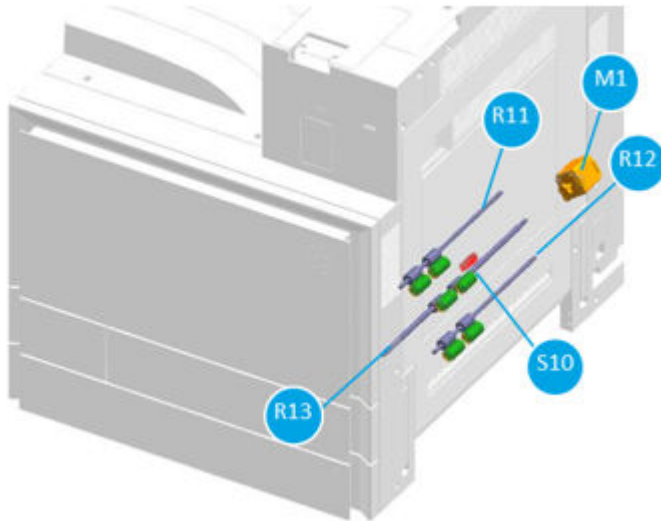


Table 3-18 Overview of Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M1	Feed motor	JC31-00189A	Drives the Tray1 and feed rollers
R11	Tray 2 feed roller	SNA	Moves paper to the registration roller
R12	Tray 3 feed roller	SNA	Moves paper to the tray 3 trans roller
R13	Tray 3 trans roller	SNA	Moves paper to the registration roller
S10	Feed 2 sensor	0604-001490	Checks whether paper comes from Tray 3, 4, 5 or 6 correctly

Figure 3-26 Detail view of Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor, side view

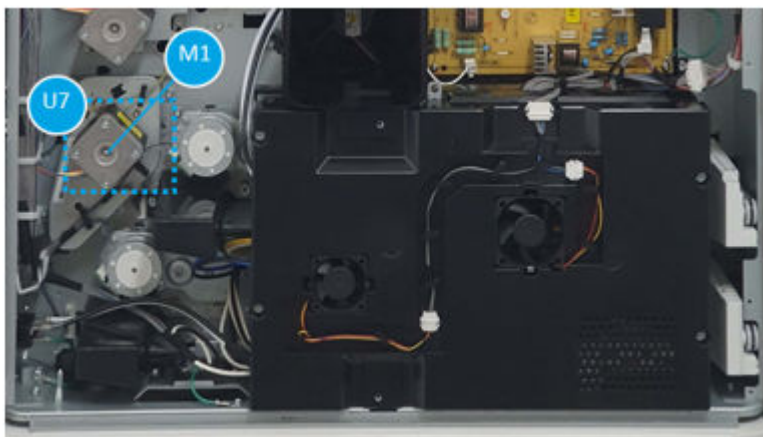


Table 3-19 Parts information for Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor, side view

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U7	Feed drive assembly	JC93-01664A	Drives the rollers of Tray1 and the feed rollers
M1	Feed motor	JC31-00189A	Drives the rollers of Tray1 and the feed rollers

Figure 3-27 Detail view of Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor

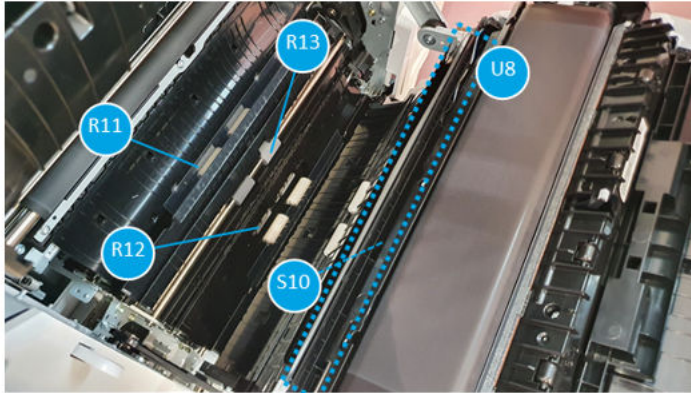


Table 3-20 Parts information for Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor, side view

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R11	Tray 2 feed roller	SNA	Moves paper to the registration roller
R12	Tray 3 feed roller	SNA	Moves paper to the tray 3 trans roller
R13	Tray 3 trans roller	SNA	Moves paper to the registration roller
U8	Right door take away assembly	JC95-01972A	
S10	Feed 2 sensor	0604-001490	Checks whether the paper correctly comes from the tray 3, 4, 5 or 6

Tray 2/3 operation

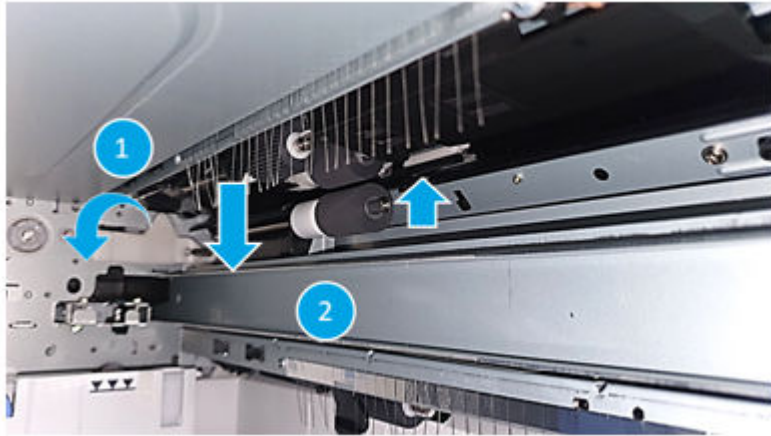
Learn about Tray 2/3 operation.

Tray 2/3 uses the following sequence of operation.

1. When the tray is closed, the tray input lever is pushed.

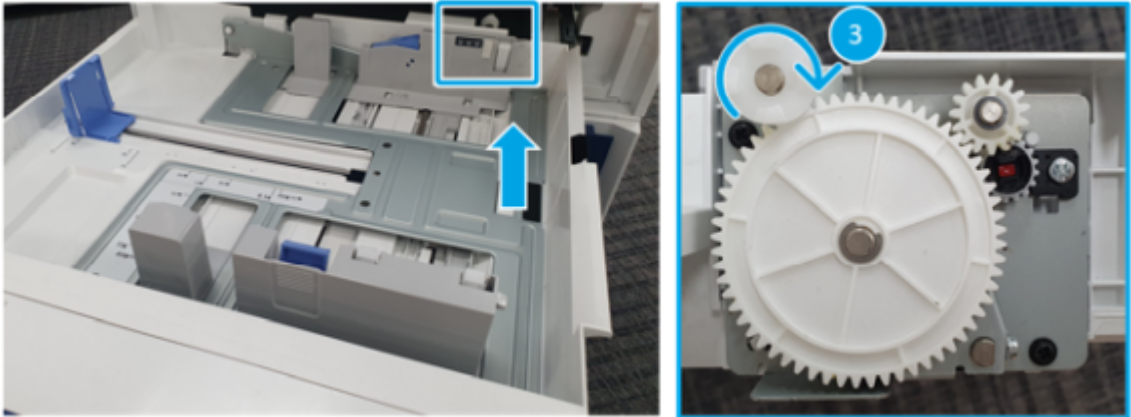
The pickup roller moves down to contact with the surface of the paper (callout 1), and the reverse roller moves upward to make a contact with the forward roller (callout 2).

Figure 3-28 Tray 2/3 pickup roller and reverse roller



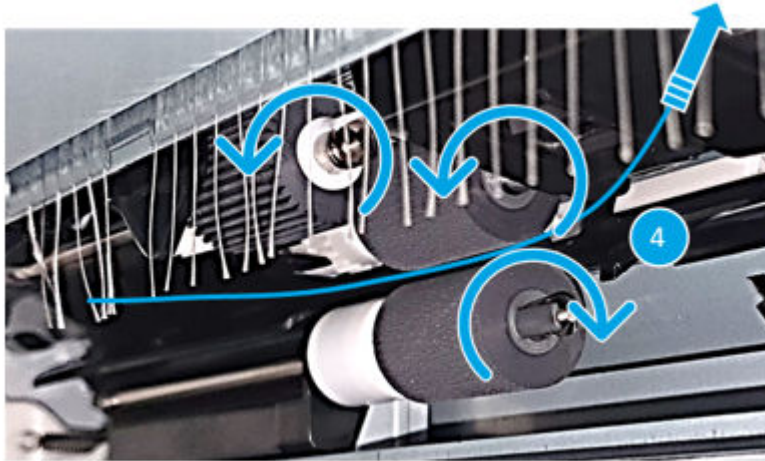
2. The Tray 2/3 motor drives the knock-up plate to move upward to the paper to the pickup roller. The pickup roller moves the paper to the forward roller (callout 3). The forward roller makes the paper moves into the registration roller, and the reverse roller prevents multiple sheets of paper from being lifted at once.

Figure 3-29 Tray 2/3 knock-up plate and forward roller



3. The feed roller moves one sheet of paper to the registration roller (callout 4).

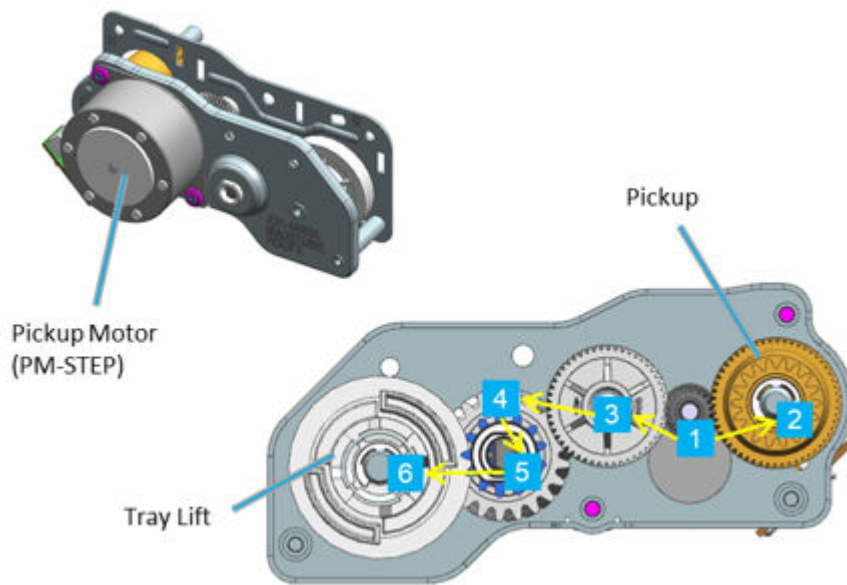
Figure 3-30 Moving the paper to the registration unit.



Tray 2/3 driving

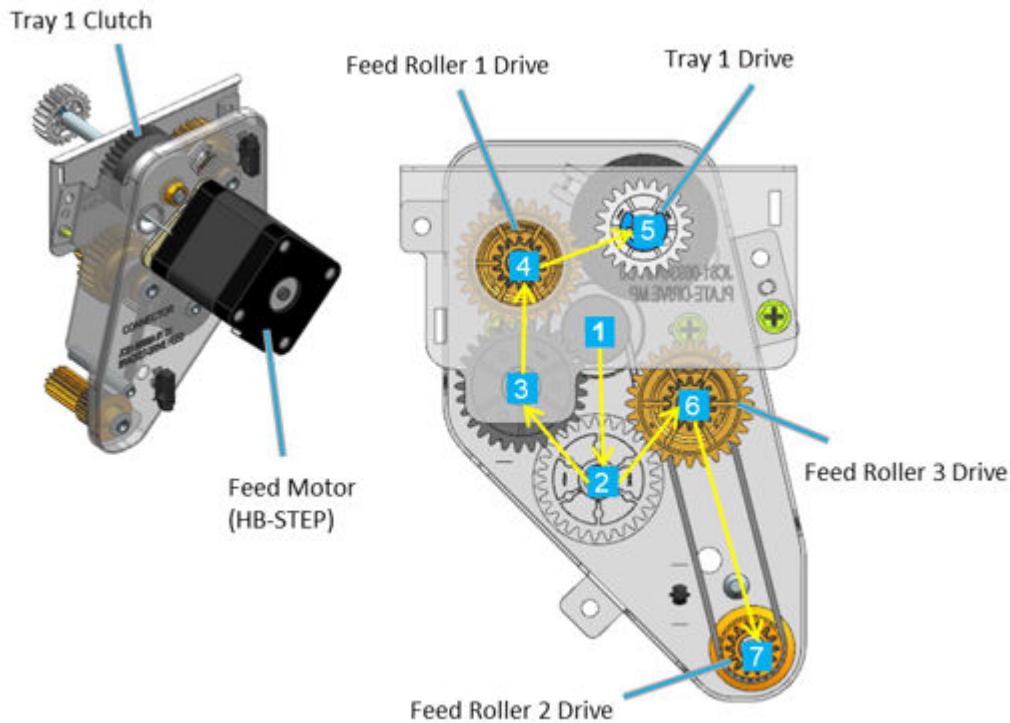
Learn about Tray 2/3 driving.

Figure 3-31 Tray 2/3 driving



- Pickup: Tray 2/3 pickup motor > clockwise rotation > 1 gear > 2 gear (Tray 2/3 pickup roller, forward roller)
- Tray lift: Tray 2/3 pickup motor > counterclockwise rotation > 1 gear > 3 gear > 4 gear > 5 gear > 6 gear and coupler (lift plate)

Figure 3-32 Tray 1 driving



- Tray1 driving: 1 feed motor > 2 pulley and gear > 6 gear and coupler (feed roller 2 drive) > 7 pulley and coupler (feed roller 3 drive)

Registration unit and loop sensing

Learn about registration and loop sensing.

Registration unit and loop sensing overview

Learn about registration unit and loop sensing.

Paper passes out of the tray through the registration unit and loop sensor toward the fuser unit.

Paper moves to the registration unit. It stops the paper for a very short period and aligns with the leading edge of the paper correctly. Registration motor drives the registration roller so that the paper goes between the drum and the paper transfer belt. The paper reaches the loop sensor. The rotation speed of the fuser unit is finely adjusted according to the change of the loop sensor signal. The paper passing through the fuser goes out through the fuser out and the paper moves toward the exit unit. The paper duct holder stores debris; this should be emptied regularly.

Figure 3-33 Overview of the registration and loop sensing unit

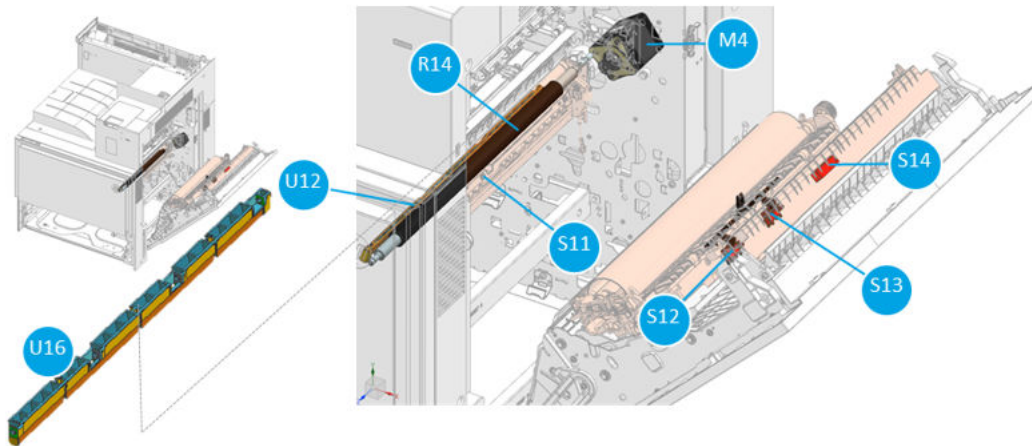


Figure 3-34 Detailed view of registration and loop sensing unit

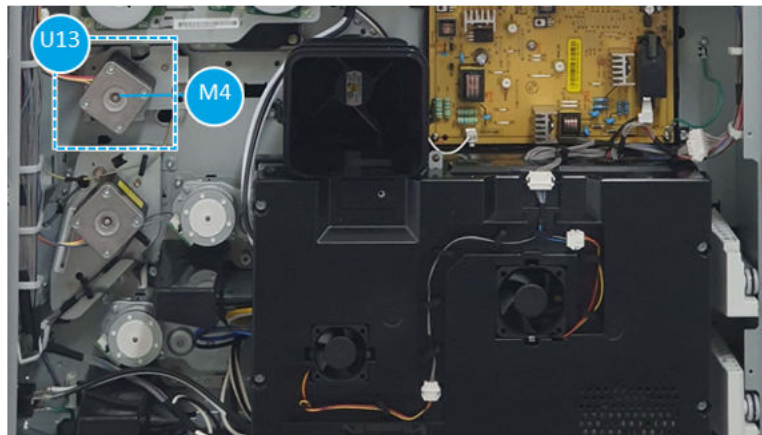
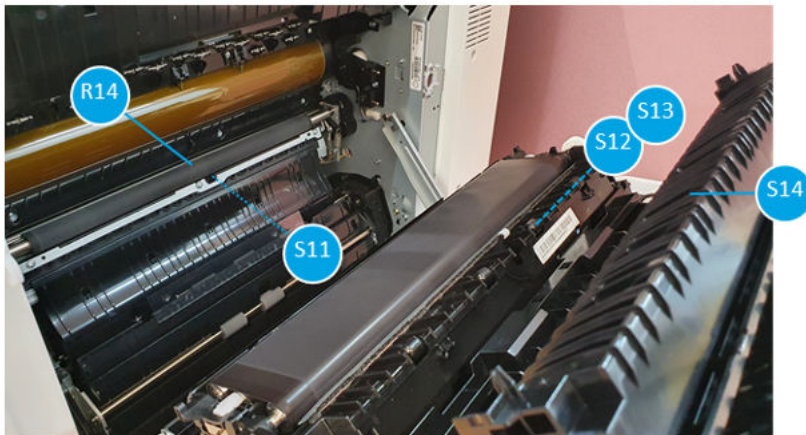


Table 3-21 Overview of the registration and loop sensing unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U12	Registration unit	5QK13-60101	Arranges the paper moved from the tray

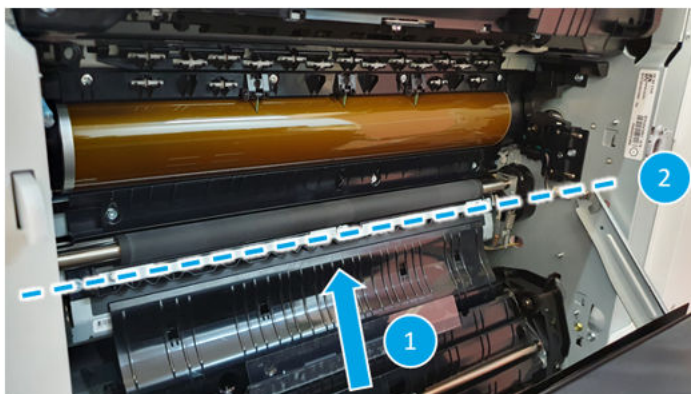
Table 3-21 Overview of the registration and loop sensing unit (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S11	Registration sensor	0604-001381	Checks whether paper enters the registration unit
R14	Registration roller	NA	Aligns with the leading edge straight, moves the paper to the drum and paper transfer belt
U13	Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) unit	5PN85-67001	
S12	Loop sensor 1	0604-001393	Check whether the paper is moved with the proper speed and movement by the fuser
S13	Loop sensor 2	0604-001393	Checks whether paper is moved with the proper speed and movement by the fuser
S14	Fuser out sensor	0960-5271	Checks whether paper moves out from the fuser without a paper jam
U13	Registration drive assembly	JC93-01665A	
M4	Registration motor	JC31-00189A	Drives the registration roller
U16	Paper dust container	5QK09-40109	Collects paper dust or scraps


Registration unit operation

Learn about registration unit operation.

Figure 3-35 Registration unit operation



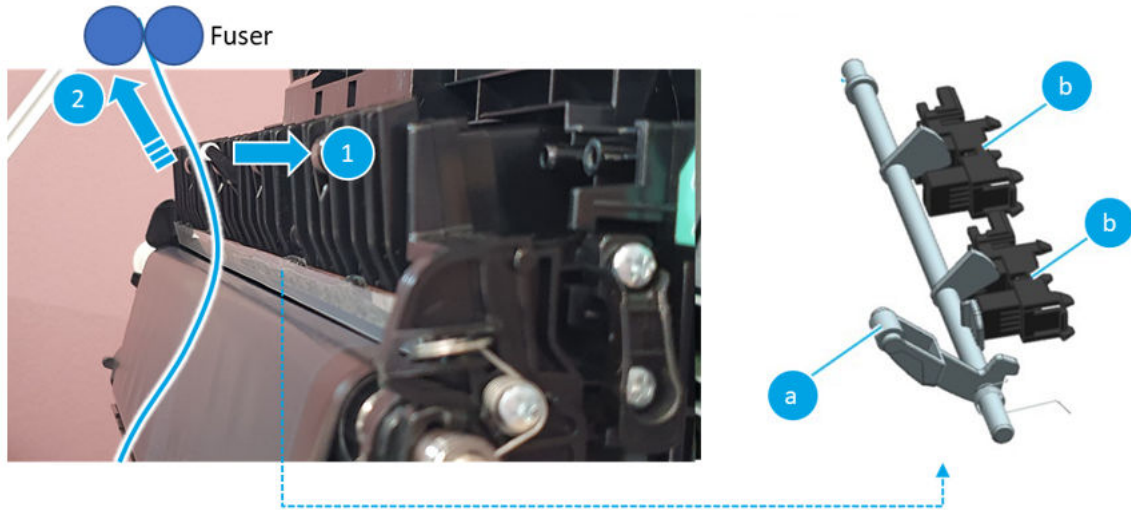
1. The paper is moved into the registration until it reaches the registration roller.
2. The registration roller keeps moving the paper toward the roller for a short period of time to align with the leading edge straight.
3. The registration roller moves the paper to the drum and second transfer roller.

 **NOTE:** Problems such as skew may occur due to the incorrect alignment of the paper. To correct this, Service Tools has a function to adjust the timing of the registration roller's resume operation.

Loop sensor operation

Learn about loop sensor operation.

Figure 3-36 Loop sensor operation

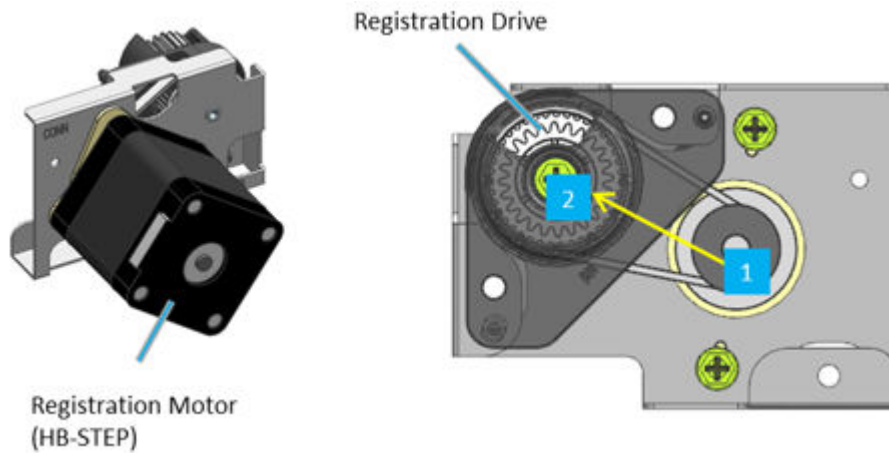


1. If the fuser unit moves the paper slower than the proper level, the curl of the paper accumulates and touches the loop sensor actuator (Callout a), it makes loop sensor (Callout b) signal change.
2. The fuser operation speed is increasing slightly, and it makes the curl of the paper decreased until the loop sensor signal turns back to the original state.

Registration unit driving

Learn about registration unit driving.

Figure 3-37 Registration unit driving



- Registration unit driving: 1 registration motor > 2 pulley and gear (registration roller)

Exit unit

Learn about the exit unit.

Exit unit overview

Learn about the exit unit.

The exit unit is the last step of printing, and it discharges the paper to the outside of the product or moves the paper through the paper path so that it can be moved toward the duplex unit for duplex printing.

The exit unit is largely composed of an exit 1 section for discharging the paper to the output bin, and an exit 2 section for ejecting the paper to the out bin 2 or returning the paper to the duplex unit.

The exit 1 works a role of discharging the paper to the out bin. It is composed of an output bin full sensor that checks whether the paper is correctly discharged to the output bin and the stacked paper exceeds the maximum capacity. The return gate solenoid changes the paper path to move the paper to output bin 2. The roller to move the paper inside the unit is driven by a fuser motor.

The exit 2 is used to print the paper to out bin 2 or to store the paper for duplex printing. The exit 2 sensor is installed to check whether the paper is discharged to out bin 2, and an out bin 2 full sensor is provided to detect whether the bin is full. There is a duplex jam 1 sensor to check if the paper has entered the duplex part correctly when printing duplex.

The exit 2 motor works for transferring paper to out bin 2, and the duplex 1 motor works for moving the paper in the opposite direction for duplex work.

Figure 3-38 Overview of the exit unit

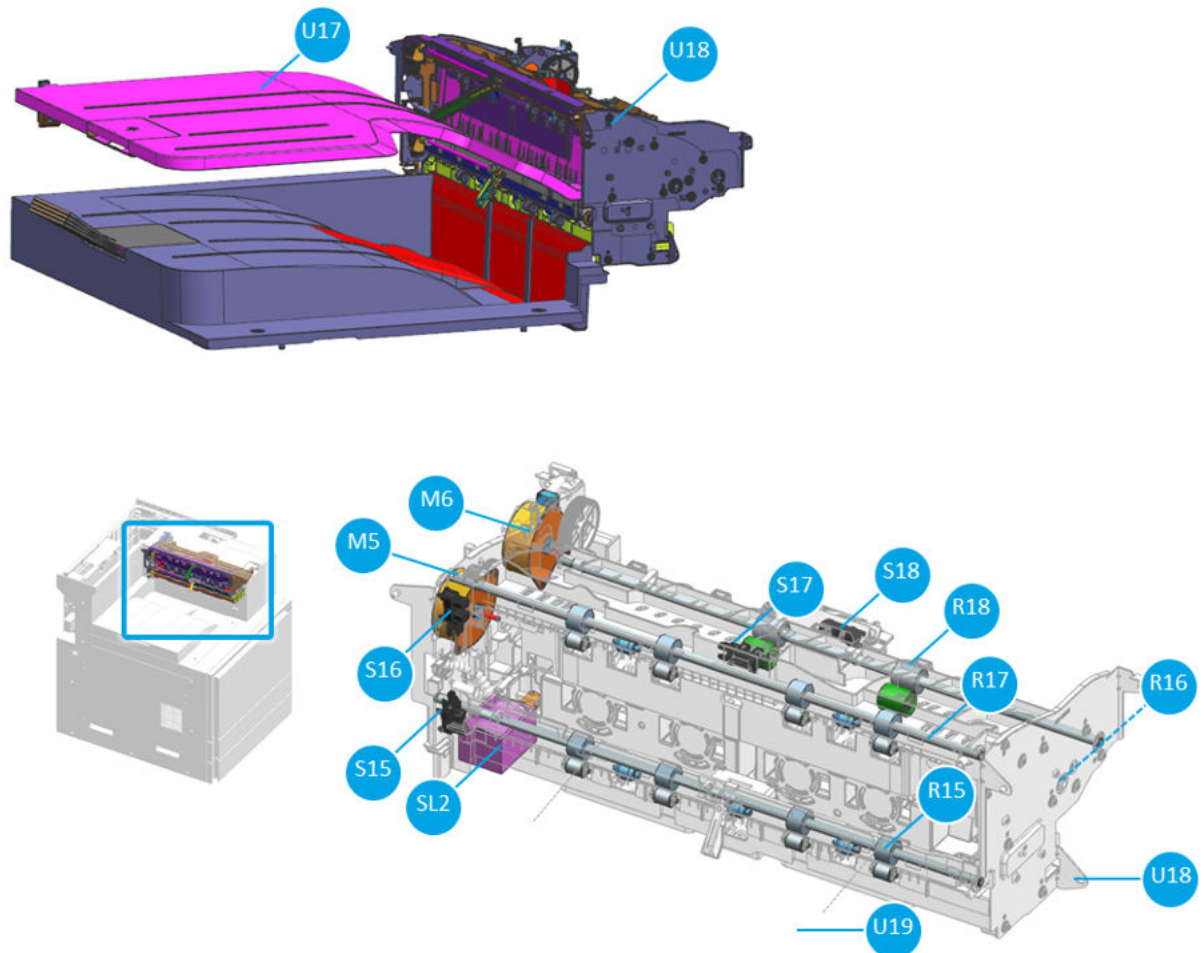


Figure 3-39 Detail view of the exit unit

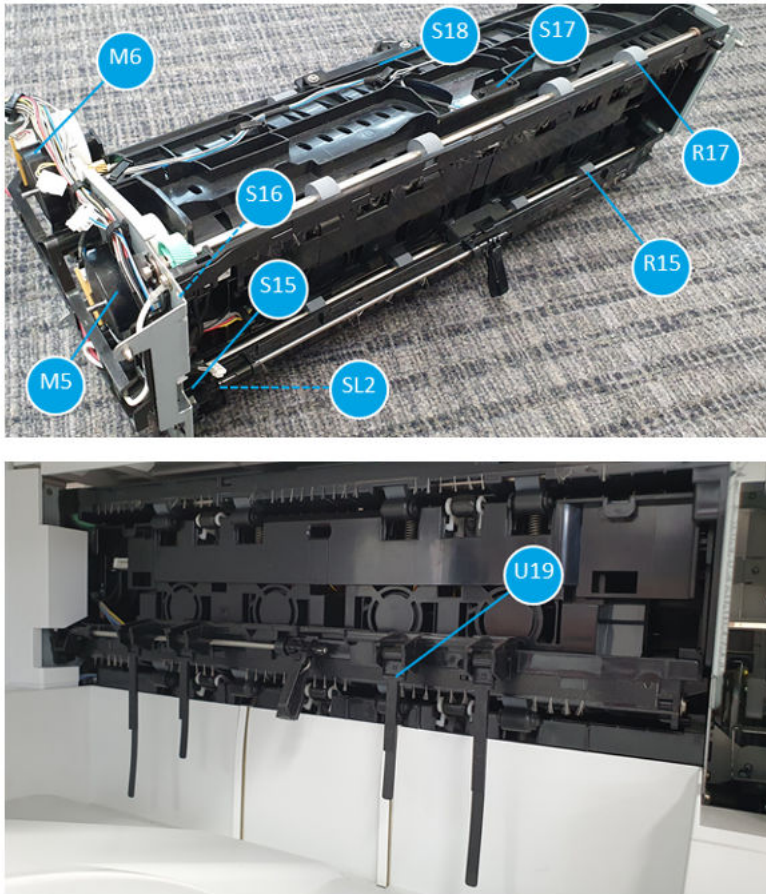


Table 3-22 Overview of the exit unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U17	Job separator (Optional)	5QK03-61008	
U18	Exit unit	JC90-01856A	
S15	Out bin 1 full sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper correctly goes to the output bin, and is loaded to maximum capacity
SL2	Return gate solenoid	JC33-00031B	Opens or closes the paper path in case of duplex printing
S16	Out bin 2 full sensor(optional)	0604-001393	Checks whether paper goes to the output bin correctly, and is loaded to maximum capacity (Optional, included in job separator)
M5	Exit 2 motor	JC93-00336A	Drives the exit 2 roller
S18	Duplex jam 1 sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper correctly moves to the duplex unit
M6	Duplex 1 motor	JC93-00336A	Drives the duplex 1 roller
S17	Exit 2 sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper goes to output bin 2
R15	Exit 1 roller	NA	Moves paper to exit 1
R16	Exit 2 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the exit 2 roller
R17	Exit 2 roller	NA	Moves paper to exit 2

Table 3-22 Overview of the exit unit (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R18	Duplex 1 roller	NA	Moves paper to the duplex unit during duplex printing
U19	Exit stack guide	JC90-01865A	Guides the paper to sit correctly in the output bin

Job separator (optional)

Learn about the job separator.

Figure 3-40 Job Separator (Optional)

Job separator is an output accessory that is installed at the exit 2 area in the exit unit. This optional package includes out bin 2 full sensor, actuator, and out bin 2 tray to store and manage stored papers at the exit 2 tray.

Figure 3-41 Overview of the job separator

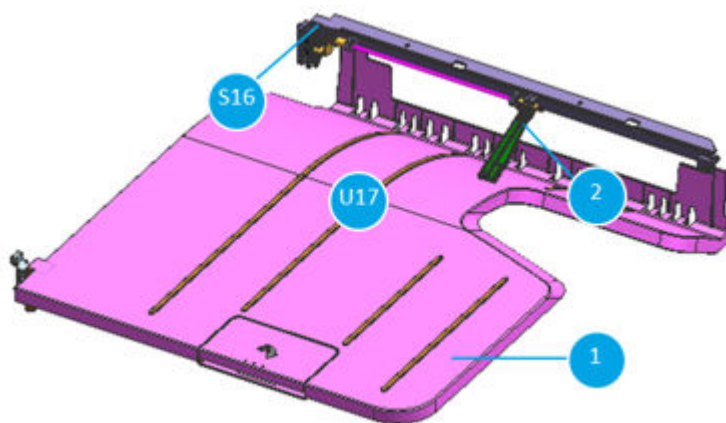


Table 3-23 Overview of the job separator

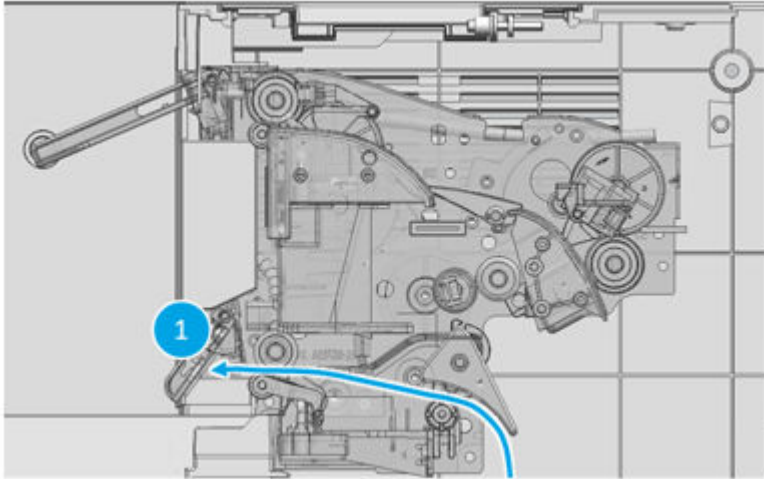
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U17	Job separator	5QK03-61008	Separates print, copy, or scan jobs
1	Exit 2 tray	NA	Stores printed paper
2	Exit 2 actuator	NA	
S16	Output bin 2 full sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper goes to the output bin correctly, and is loaded to maximum capacity

Exit unit operation for simplex printing

Learn about exit unit operation for simplex printing.

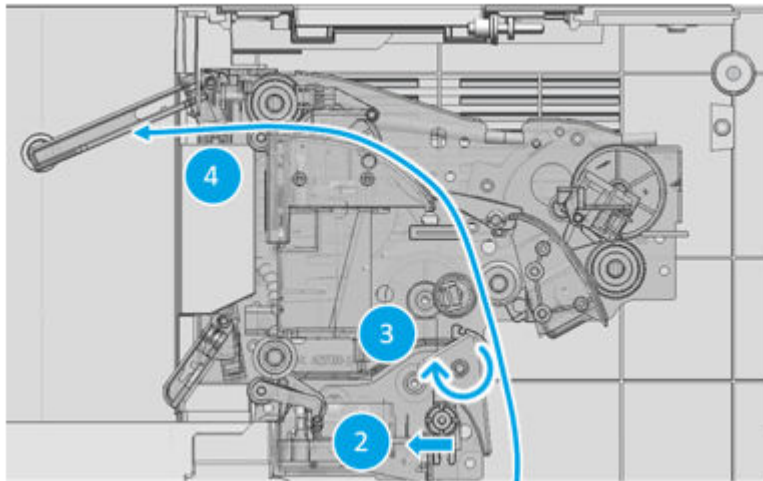
1. In case of simplex printing to output bin, a paper flows through the paper path (callout 1).

Figure 3-42 Simplex printing to output bin



2. When using out bin 2, return gate solenoid moves to the direction of the arrow (callout 2). Return gate moves clockwise (callout 3) to shut off the paper path to output bin. The paper moves through paper path (callout 4).

Figure 3-43 Simplex printing to out bin 2



Exit unit operation for duplex printing

Learn about exit unit operation for duplex printing.

1. A paper moves through out bin 2 path.

Figure 3-44 Duplex printing to out bin 2

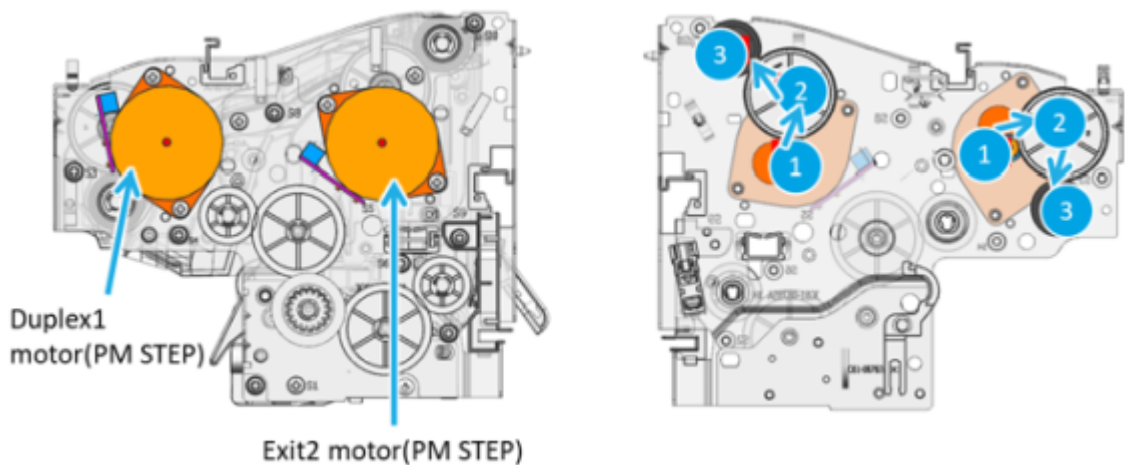


2. Return gate solenoid moves to the direction of the arrow (callout 3). Return gate moves counterclockwise to be back to the original position.
3. A paper continues to move in 1 direction, then goes up on the actuator (callout 4). A paper moves to duplex unit.

Exit unit driving

Learn about exit unit driving.

Figure 3-45 Exit unit driving



- Duplex 1 driving: 1 duplex 1 motor > 2 gear > 3 gear (duplex 1 roller)
- Exit 2 driving: 1 exit 2 motor > 2 gear > 3 gear (exit 2 roller)

Duplex unit

Learn about the duplex unit.

Duplex unit overview

Learn about the duplex unit.

Duplex unit is a device that allows paper to move from the exit unit to the registration unit for duplex printing.

The paper returned from the exit unit moves through this unit mounted on the right door. Duplex jam 2 sensor is applied at the end of the duplex unit paper path to check whether the paper flows through the duplex unit correctly. The operation of this unit is run by the duplex motor mounted on the back of the right door unit.

Figure 3-46 Overview of the duplex unit

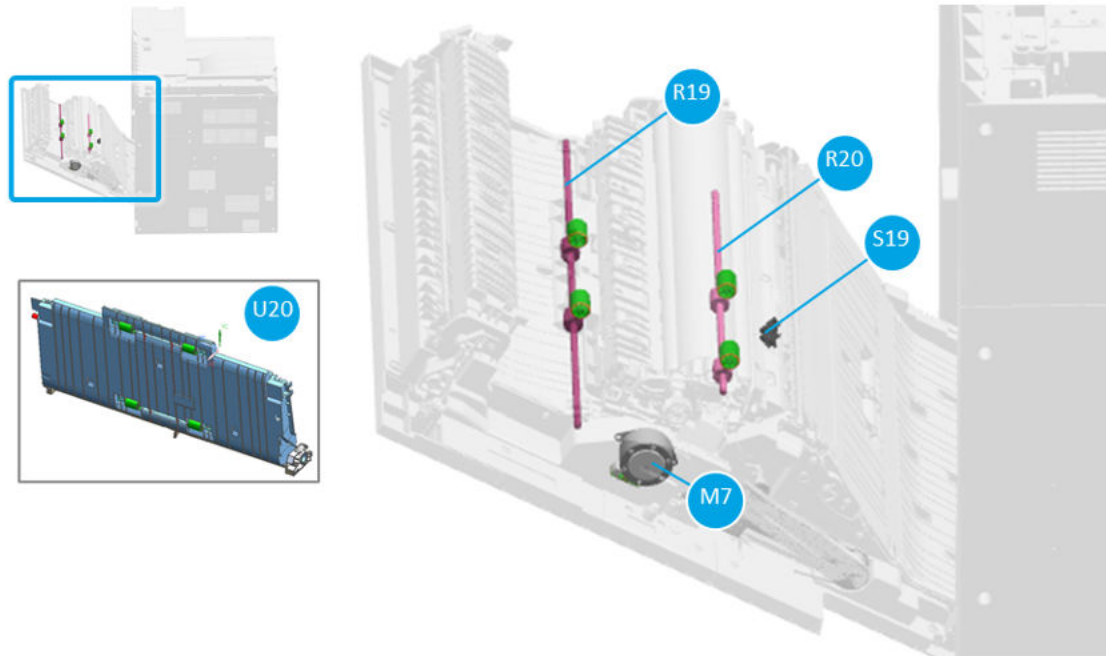


Figure 3-47 Detail view of duplex unit

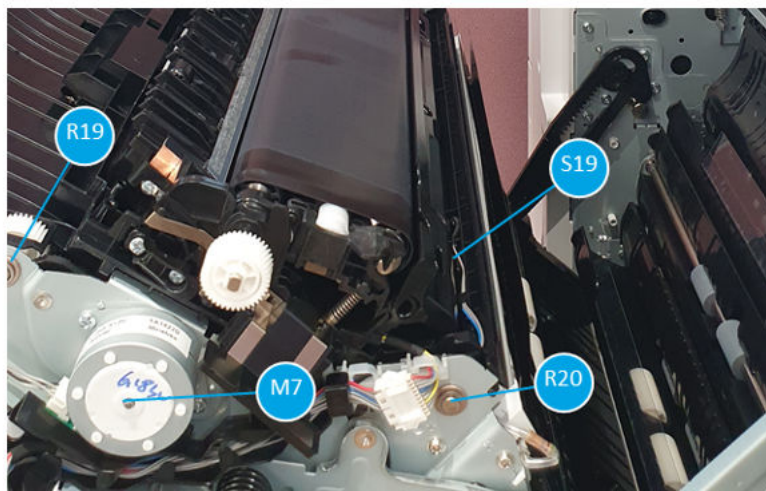


Table 3-24 Parts information of the duplex unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U20	Duplex assembly	JC95-02250A	Allows paper to move from the exit unit to the registration unit for duplex printing

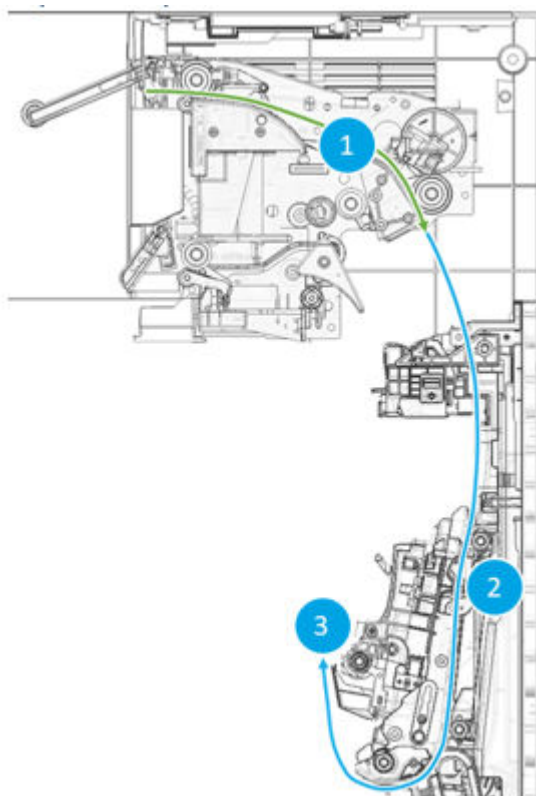
Table 3-24 Parts information of the duplex unit (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S19	Duplex jam 2 sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper goes through the duplex unit
M7	Duplex 2 motor	JC93-01085A	Drives rollers to move paper from the exit unit to the registration unit
R19	Duplex 2 roller	NA	Moves paper to the duplex 2 roller
R20	Duplex 3 roller	NA	Moves paper to the registration roller

Duplex unit operation

Learn about duplex unit operation.

Figure 3-48 Duplex unit operation

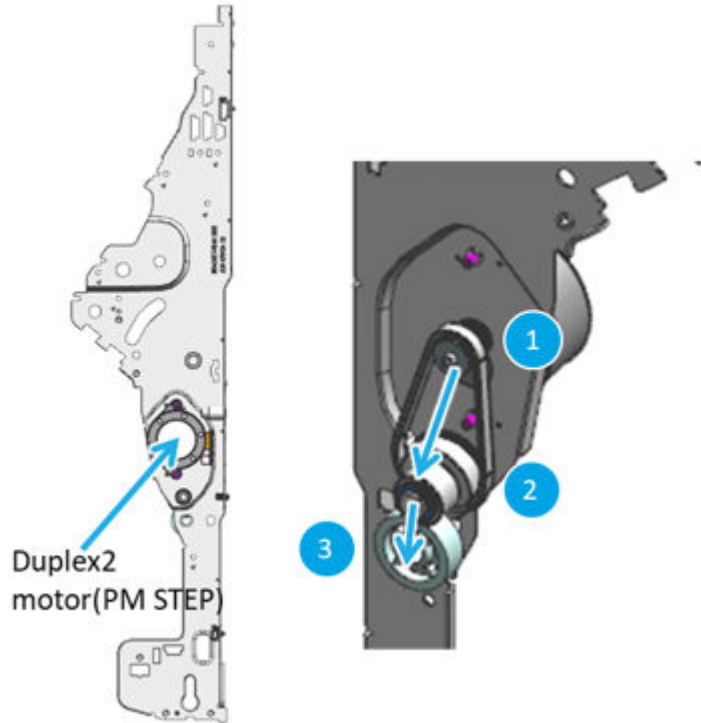


1. In case of duplex printing, a paper turns back and moves to the duplex unit from the exit unit (callout 1).
2. Duplex motor drives feeding rollers so that the paper goes through the duplex unit (callout 2).
3. The paper arrived at the registration roller starts the next printing (callout 3).

Duplex unit driving

Learn about duplex unit driving.

Figure 3-49 Duplex unit driving



- Duplex unit driving: 1 Duplex 2 motor > 2 gear > 3 gear (Duplex 2 roller)

Toner flow system

Learn about the toner flow system.

Toner flow overview

Learn about the toner flow overview.

Toner flow workflow

Learn about the toner flow workflow.

Figure 3-50 Toner flow workflow

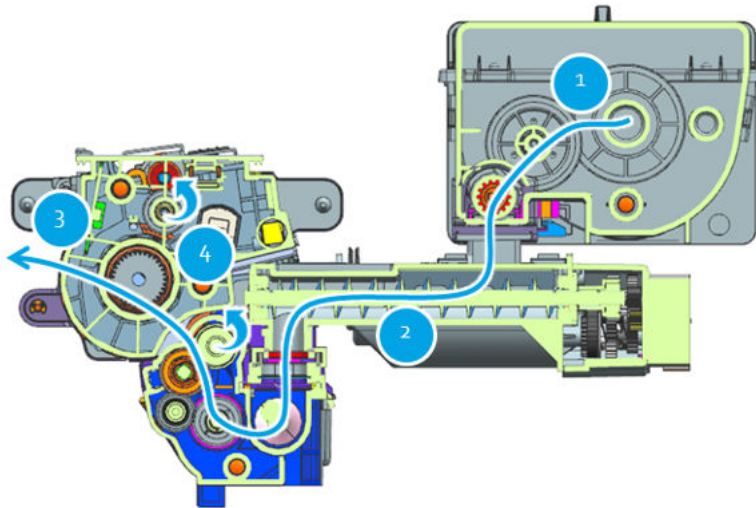


Table 3-25 Toner flow workflow overview

Callout	Part name	Description
1	Toner cartridge	Stores the toner and moves the toner to the toner reservoir when printing
2	Toner reservoir	Stores the toner and moves the toner to the developer unit
3	Image creation	Forms images and transfers toner to the paper to print out
4	Toner collection unit	Receives discarded toner from drum and ITB and stores it

Toner flow sensors

Learn about the toner flow sensors.

Figure 3-51 Toner flow sensors

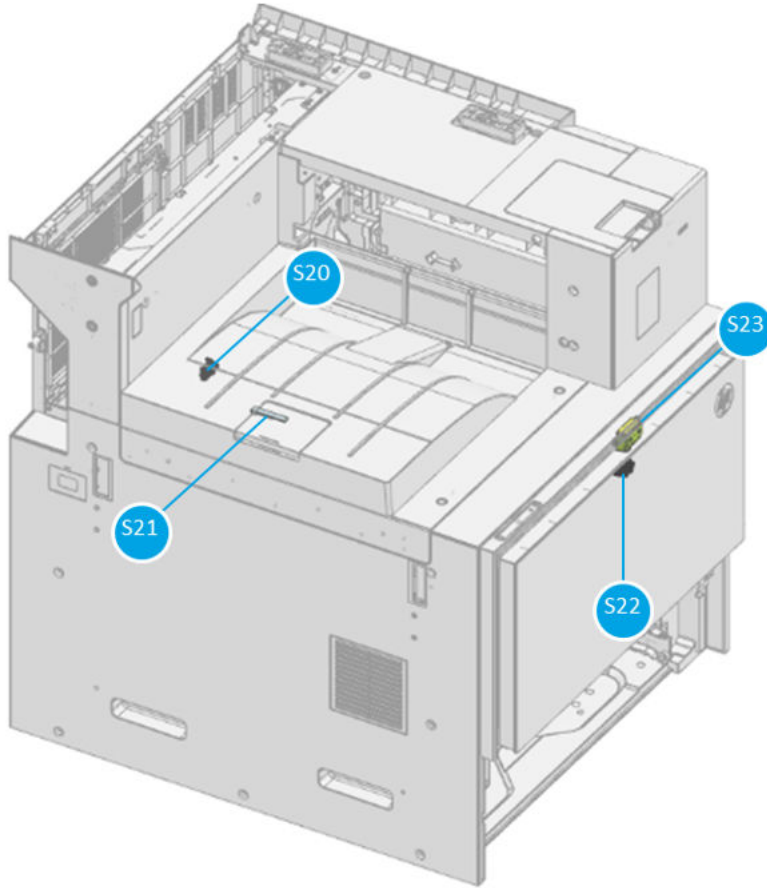


Table 3-26 Toner flow sensor part information

Callout	Part name	Part number	Sensor type	Description
S20	Toner dispense motor sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks the operation of toner dispense motor
S21	Toner residual amount sensor	5QK09-60010	Inductance sensor	Detect the toner level in the cartridge
S22	Toner collection unit detection sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Detects whether the toner collection unit is installed
S23	Toner collection unit full sensor	JC92-02471A	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Detects whether the toner collection unit is full

Toner flow motors

Learn about the toner flow motors.

Figure 3-52 Toner flow motors

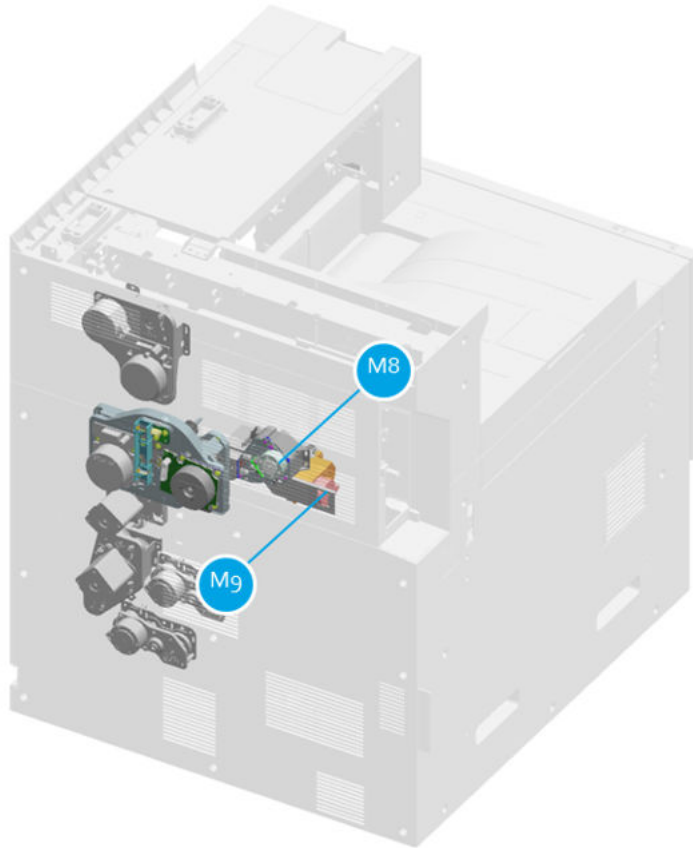


Table 3-27 Toner flow motors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Motor type	Description
M8	Toner dispense motor	SS216-80501	Stepping motor	Drives the toner cartridge
M9	Toner reserve motor	JC93-01067A	Stepping motor	Transfers toner from the toner cartridge to the developer unit

Toner cartridge

Learn about the toner cartridge.

Toner cartridge overview

Learn about the toner cartridge overview.

The toner cartridge is a unit that safely stores toner for printing and supplies toner in the reservoir direction during printing.

When the toner cartridge is mounted on the product, the toner shutter opens to create a passage for the toner to flow to the reservoir, and at the same time, the toner dispense motor rotates, preventing the toner cartridge from being removed from the printer. If it is determined that there is no toner in the toner cartridge, the toner unlock function is activated, and when the user selects it in the control panel, the toner cartridge can be replaced in the printer.

The toner is transferred to the reservoir unit by driving the toner dispense motor. Toner dispense motor sensor is located next to the motor to check whether the motor rotates. Through the auger inside the toner cartridge, the toner moves toward the toner shutter and falls into the toner reservoir by gravity.

Figure 3-53 Overview of the toner cartridge

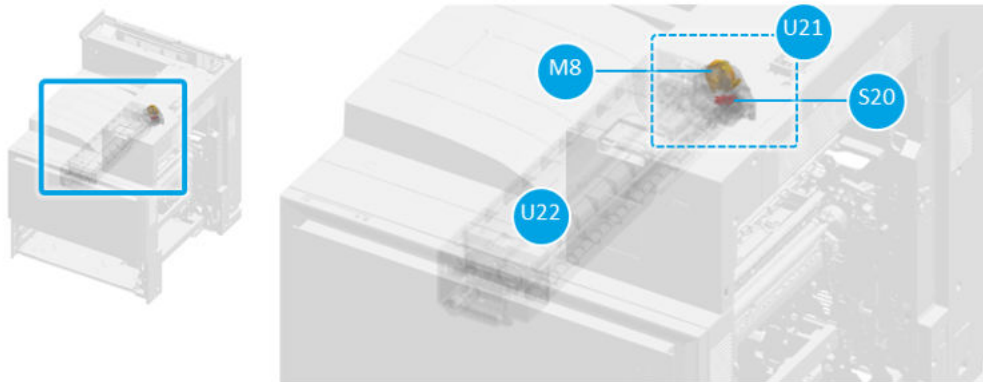


Figure 3-54 Detail view of the toner cartridge

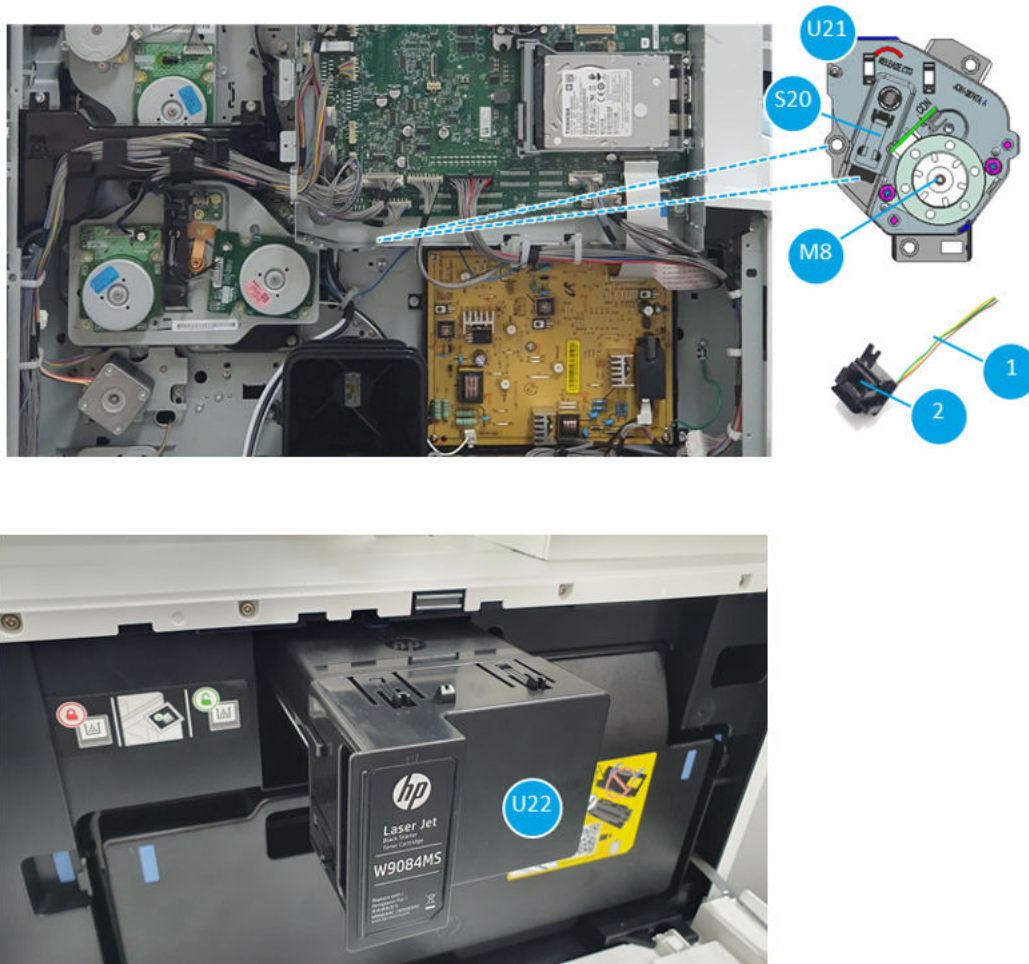


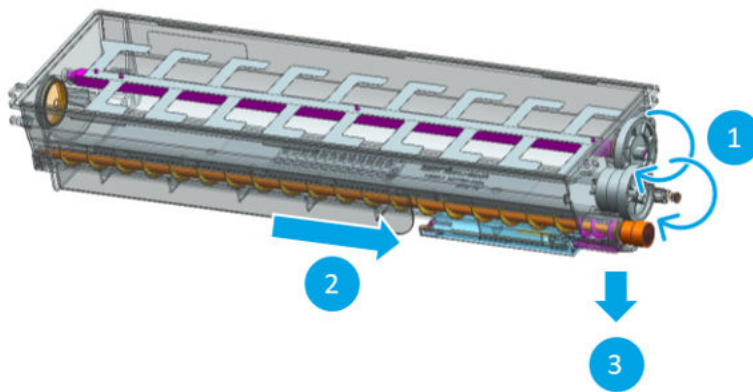
Table 3-28 Toner cartridge parts information

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U21	Toner dispense motor assembly	JC93-01667A	
S20	Toner dispense motor sensor	0604-001393	Checks the operation of toner dispense motor
M8	Toner dispense motor	SS216-80501	Drives toner cartridge to supply toner to reservoir
U22-1	Toner cartridge - standard yield	W9084-67006	Stores black toner
U22-2	Toner cartridge - high yield	W9085-67007	Stores black toner
1	Toner CRUM modular jack	JC39-02214A	Connects the toner cartridge with the formatter
2	Toner CRUM modular holder	JC61-02910A	Connects the toner cartridge with the formatter

Toner cartridge operation

Learn about toner cartridge operation.

Figure 3-55 Toner cartridge operation



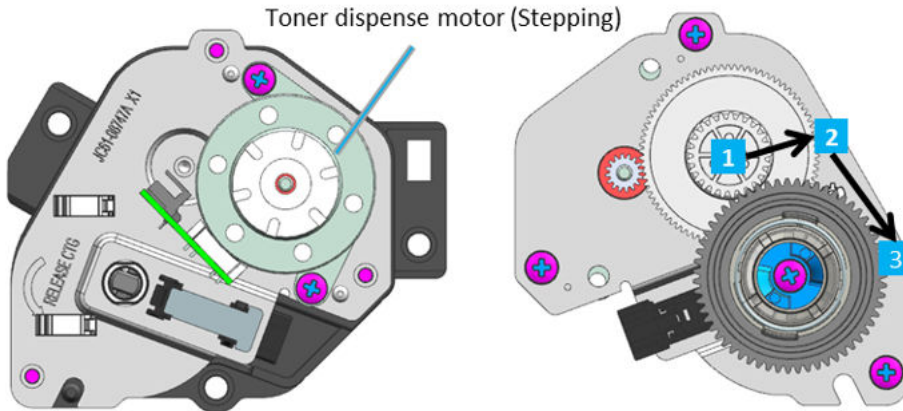
This product applies dual-component(toner + carrier) development system. Toner cartridge consists of toner and magnetic toner carrier at approximately 10:1 ratio.

1. Toner dispense motor drives when toner concentration sensor needs to supply toner to the developer unit (callout 1).
2. Toner auger drives; toner moves in the direction of the arrow (callout 2).
3. Toner moves toward the reservoir. The toner residual amount sensor detects the toner level in the toner cartridge (callout 3).

Toner dispense and toner cartridge unlock driving

Learn about toner dispense and toner cartridge unlock driving.

Figure 3-56 Toner dispense and toner cartridge unlock driving



Toner dispense, toner cartridge lock (clockwise)

- Toner dispense driving: 1 Toner dispense motor > 2 gear > 3 gear, toner supply

Toner cartridge unlock (counterclockwise)

- Toner cartridge unlock: 1 Toner dispense motor > 2 gear > 3 gear, toner cartridge unlock > 20 gear

Toner reservoir

Learn about the toner reservoir.

Toner reservoir overview

Learn about the toner reservoir overview.

The toner reservoir unit serves to receive toner from the toner cartridge and transfers it to the developer unit. The toner level in the cartridge is detected by the toner residual amount sensor which is located right below the toner cartridge.

Figure 3-57 Overview of the toner reservoir

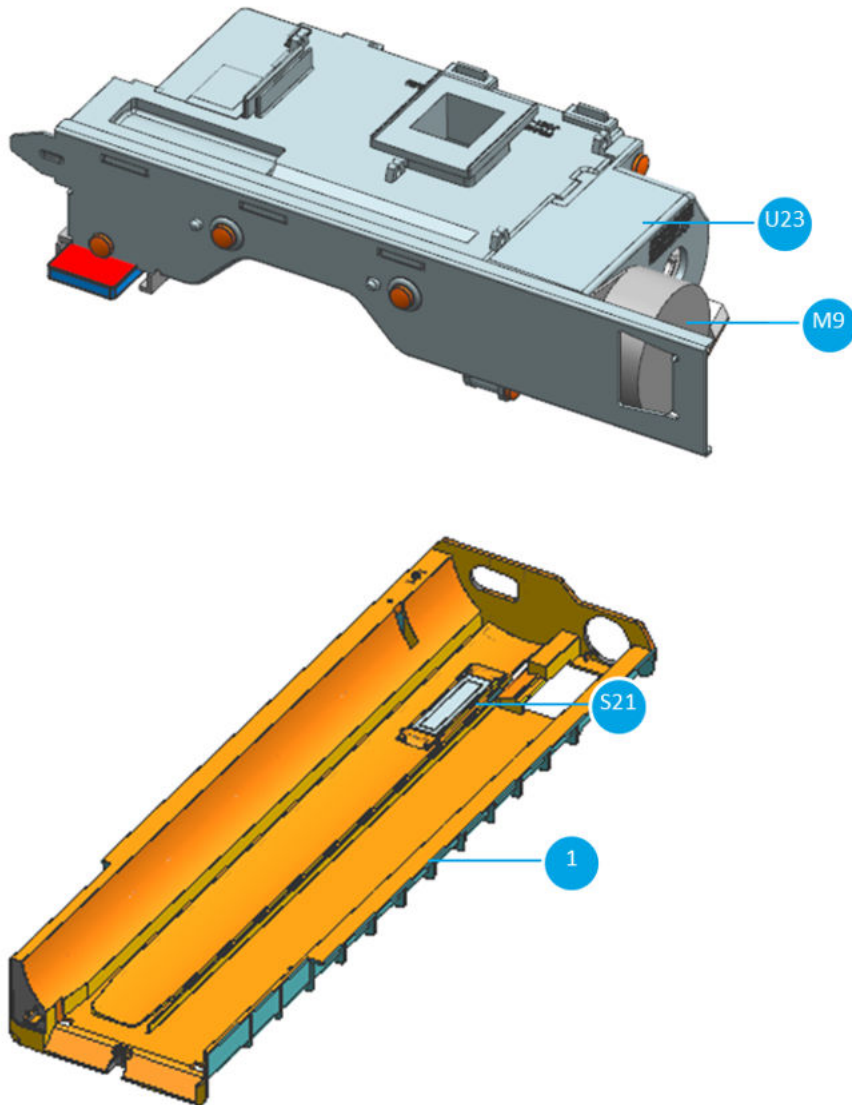


Figure 3-58 Detail view of the toner reservoir

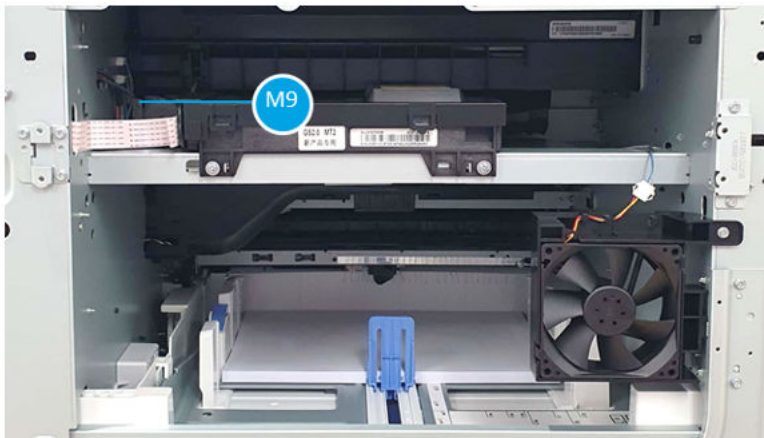
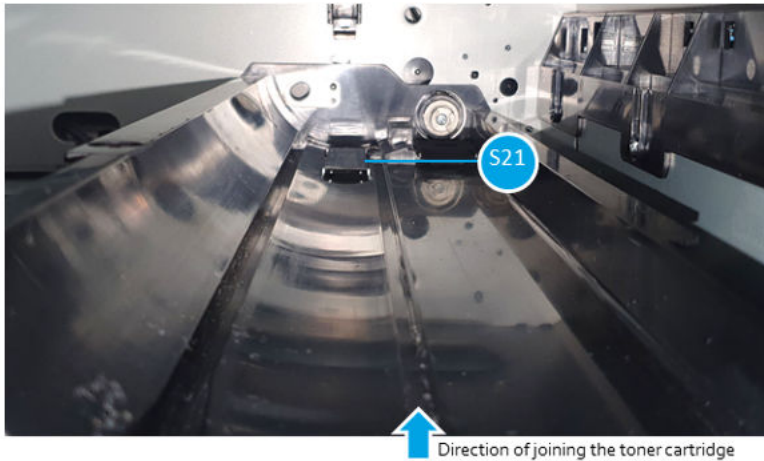


Table 3-29 Overview of the toner reservoir

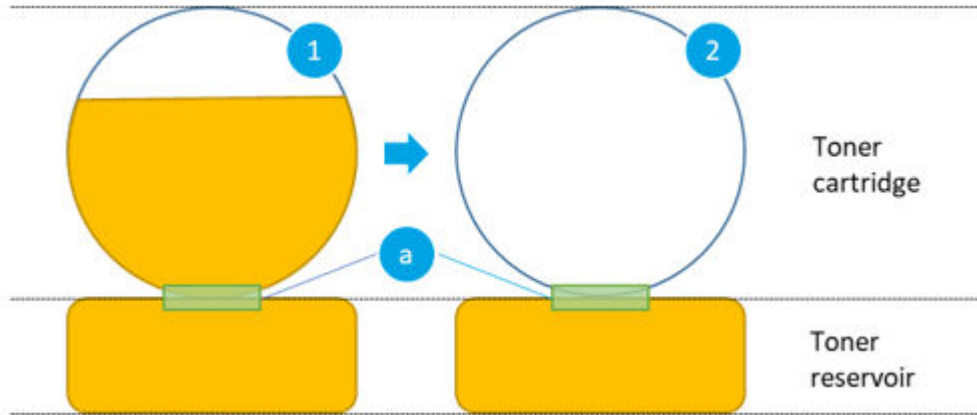
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U23	Toner reservoir unit		Stores and transfers toner from toner cartridge to developer unit
1	Guide toner cartridge assembly	63C82-60006	
S21	Black toner residual amount sensor	5QK09-60010	Detect the toner level in the cartridge
M9	Toner reservoir motor	JC93-01067A	Drives the reservoir auger

Toner residual amount sensor operation

Learn about the toner residual amount sensor operation.

1. When enough toner is left in the cartridge, toner consumption is calculated by an algorithm.

Figure 3-59 Toner residual amount sensor operation

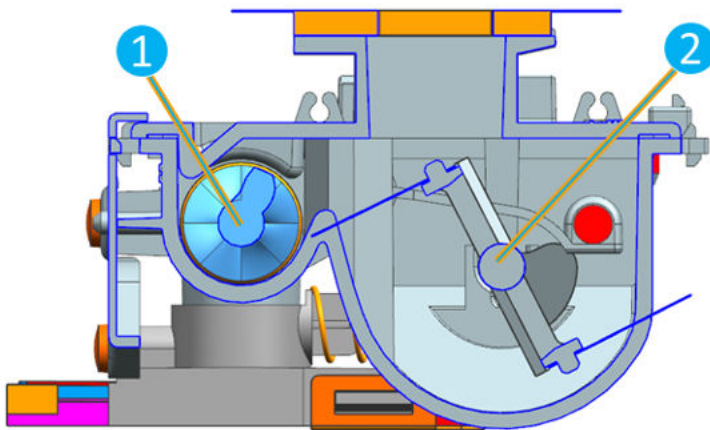


2. If toner in the toner cartridge runs out, the toner residual amount sensor (callout a) detects the toner level in the cartridge by checking carrier amount and displays a toner with very low message.

Toner reservoir operation

Learn about the toner reservoir operation.

Figure 3-60 Toner reservoir operation



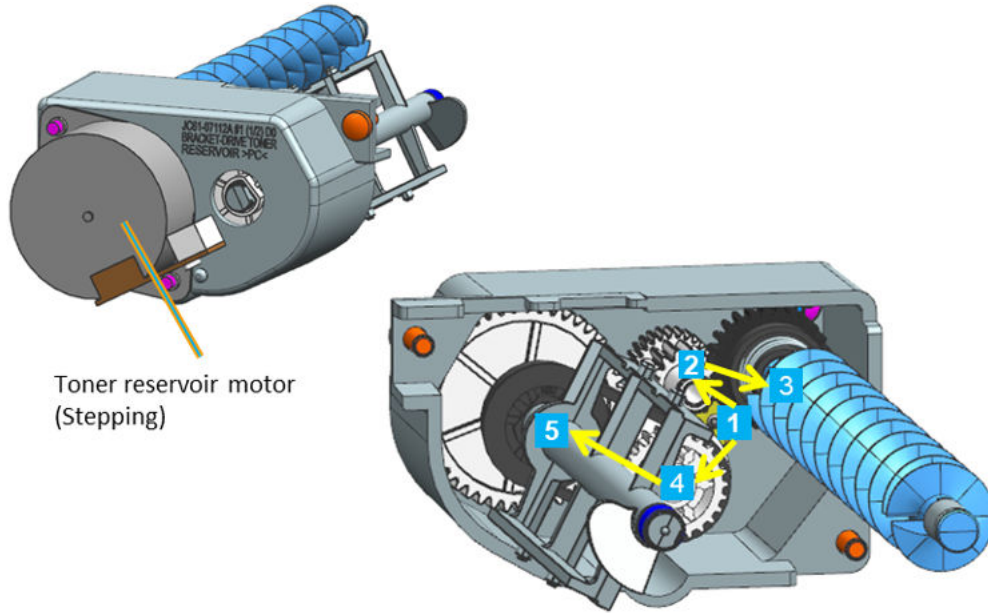
Toner comes from the toner cartridge when the toner concentration sensor checks toner is very low for creating the images at the developer unit.

1. Toner reservoir auger moves toner to the direction of toner duct.
2. Toner moves from the toner reservoir to the developer unit by the paddle inside the toner reservoir.

Toner reservoir driving

Learn about toner reservoir driving.

Figure 3-61 Toner reservoir driving



- Toner reservoir auger driving: 1 toner reservoir motor > 2 gear > 3 gear and latch
- Toner reservoir paddle driving: 1 toner reservoir motor > 2 gear > 4 gear and latch > 5 pully and gear

Toner Collection Unit (TCU)

Learn about the Toner Collection Unit (TCU).

Toner Collection Unit (TCU) overview

Learn about the Toner Collection Unit (TCU).

The toner collection unit receives and stores waste toner from the developer unit and drum unit.

When the toner collection unit is installed, the toner collection unit shutter is open, and the toner collection unit is connected to the machine. The toner collection unit detection sensor judges whether the TCU is installed. The toner collection unit full sensor detects toner level when it exceeds a certain level.


 **NOTE:** The Toner Collection Unit (TCU) is interchangeably used with the Waste Toner Bottle (WTB). These are synonymous for related parts or terms.

Figure 3-62 Overview of the toner collection unit

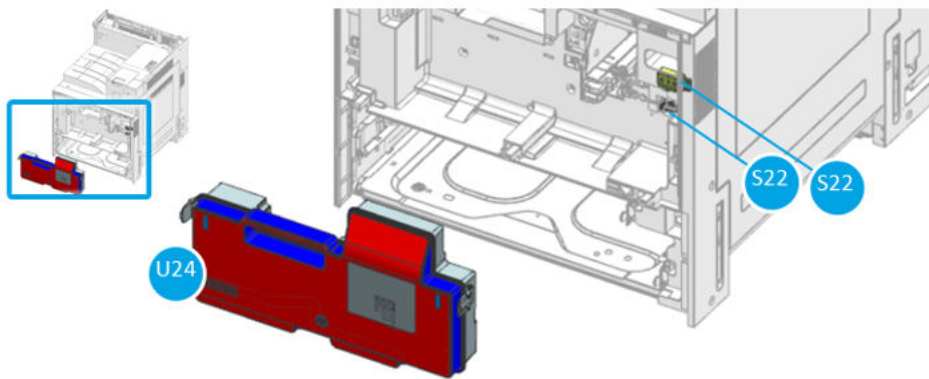


Figure 3-63 Detail view of the toner collection unit

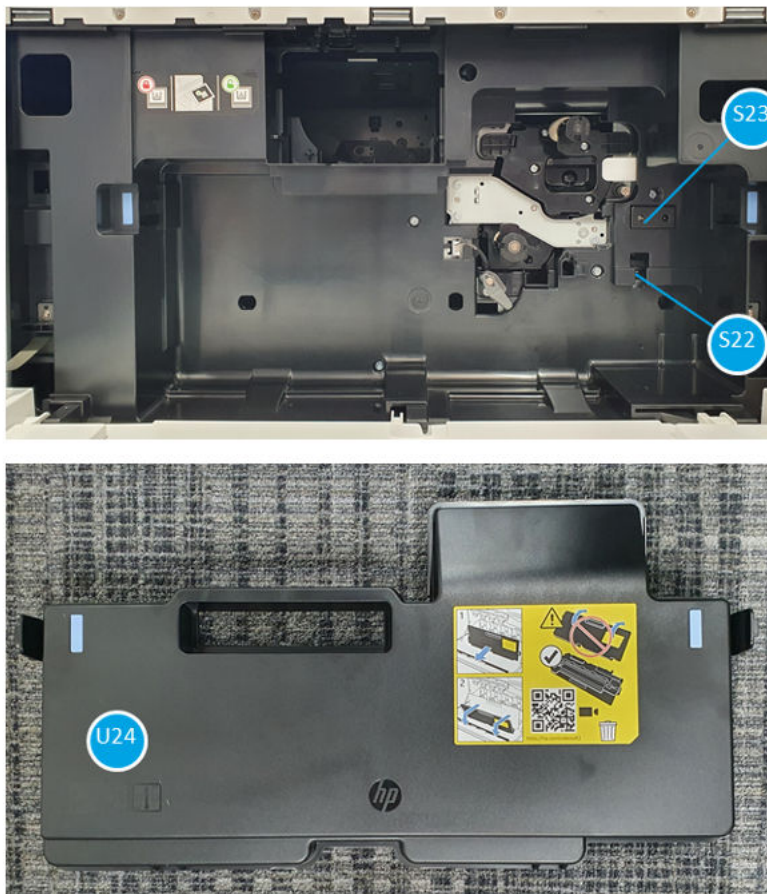


Table 3-30 Toner collection unit part information

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U24	Toner collection unit	W9016-67001	Stores wasted toner moved from the machine
S31	Toner collection unit detection sensor	0604-001393	Detects whether the toner collection unit is installed

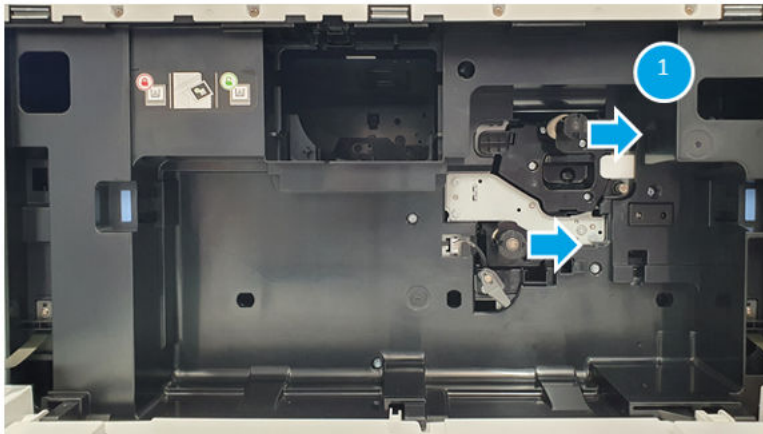
Table 3-30 Toner collection unit part information (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S32	Toner collection unit full sensor	JC93-00492A	Detects whether the toner collection unit is full

Toner collection unit operation

Learn about the toner collection unit operation.

1. After printing, the remaining toner moves from the developer and the drum to the toner collection unit (Callout 1)



2. The wasted toner moves into the toner collection unit and it stores by the gravity inside the unit. The toner collection unit full sensor detects that it is full when the sensor signal is changed by accumulated toner.

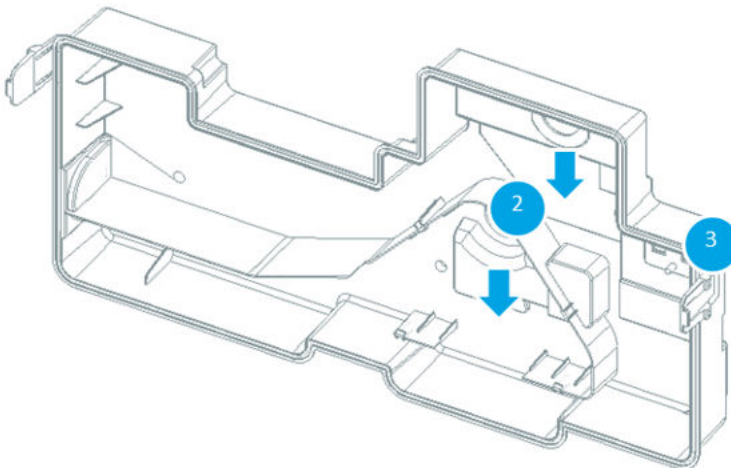


Image creation

Learn about image creation.

Image creation overview

Learn about the image creation overview.

Image creation workflow

Learn about the image creation workflow.

Figure 3-64 Image creation workflow

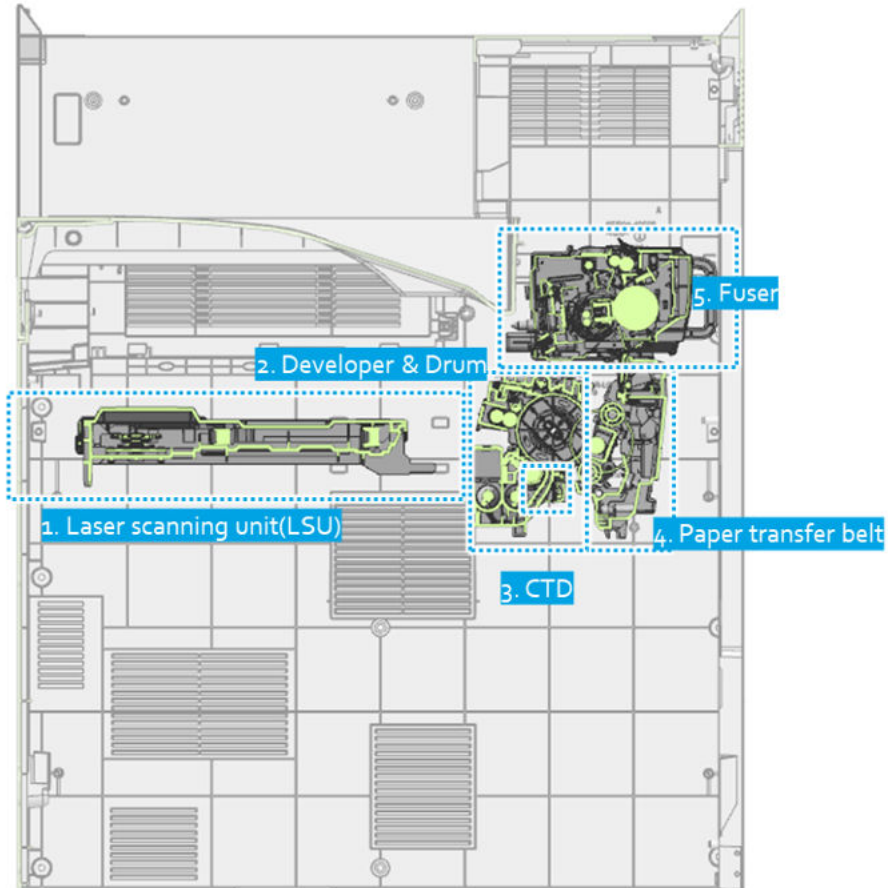


Table 3-31 Image creation workflow part information

Callout	Part name	Description
1	Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)	Constructs a latent image by removing electric charges by a laser on the surface of the drum
2-1	Developer	Receives toner from reservoir unit and makes toner have electrical properties
2-2	Drum	Receives toner from the developer unit and creates the image
3	Color Toner Density (CTD)	Calibrates toner density
4	Paper Transfer Belt (PTB)	Transfers the image formed on the drum unit to the paper
5	Fuser	Applies heat and pressure to the toner particles to adhere to the paper

Image creation sensors

Learn about the toner flow sensors.

Figure 3-65 Image creation sensors

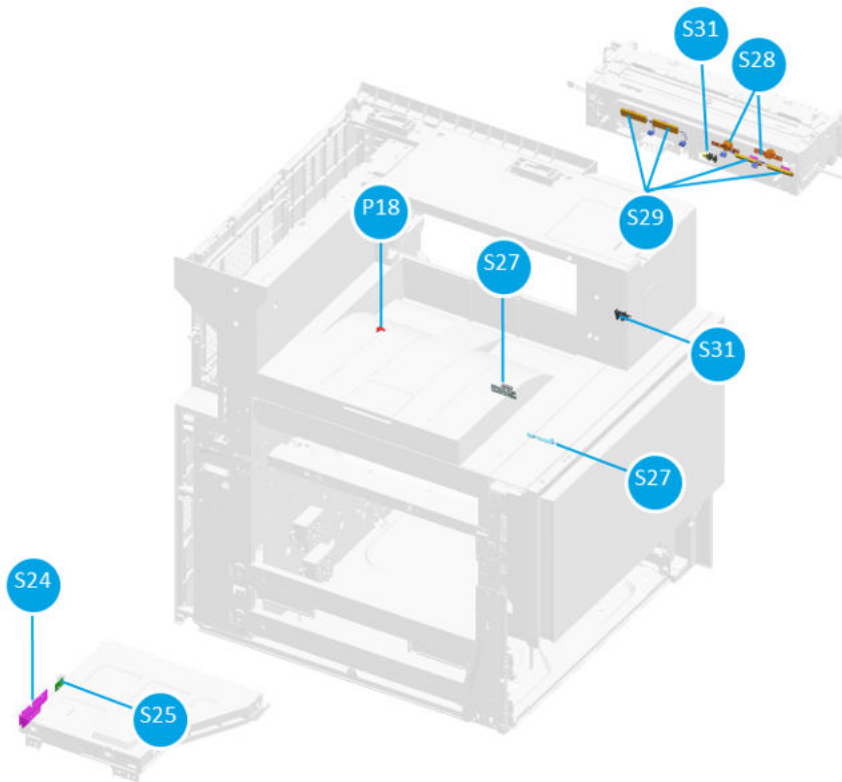


Table 3-32 Image creation sensors part information

Callout	Part name	Part number	Sensor type	Description
S24	LSU LD power	NA	-	Generates the laser
S25	LSU Hsync	NA	-	Decides the starting point of a line.
P18	Eraser	NA	-	Converts drum surface potential to the initial state
S26	Toner concentration sensor	NA	Density sensor	Measures toner concentration in the black developer unit to control the amount of supplying toner
S27	CTD sensor	-	Density sensor	Detects rear side image density
S31	Fuser gap sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter(Sensing)	Moves the toner fixed paper to the exit unit
S29	Thermistor	NA	Non-contact type	Measures the surface temperature of the fuser belt by 4 non-contact type thermistors
S28	Thermostat	NA	-	Cuts off the power supply to the halogen lamp by opening the circuit when the fusing belt becomes abnormally hot
S31	Wrap jam sensor	NA	Density sensor	Identifies whether a wrap jam is occurring inside the fuser unit

Image creation motors

Learn about the image creation motors.

Figure 3-66 Image creation motors

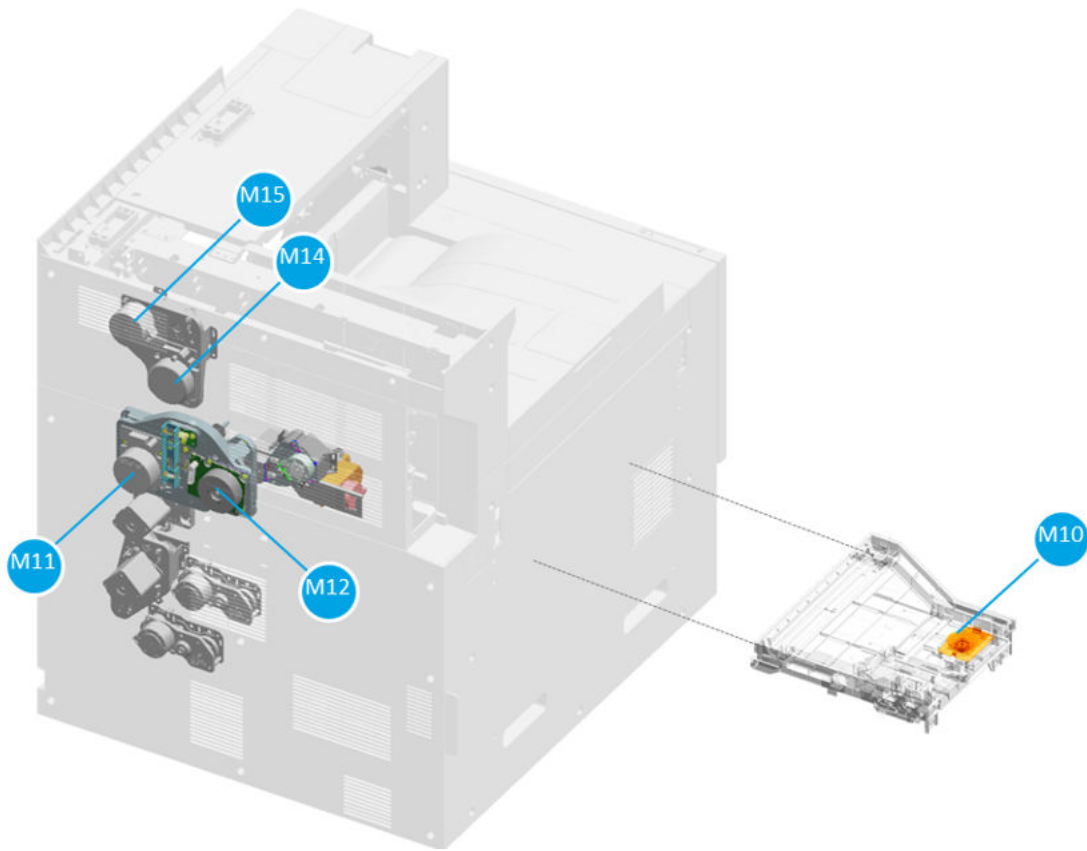


Table 3-33 Image creation motors part information

Callout	Part name	Part number	Motor type	Description
M10	LSU motor	NA	Polygon motor	Applies the laser to the drum surface as a line
M11	Drum and PTB motor	JC31-00123G	BLDC motor	Drives the drum and PTB unit
M12	Developer motor	JC31-00197A	Stepping motor	Drives the developer unit
M14	Fuser, exit motor	JC93-01084A	BLDC motor	Drives the fuser unit, the exit1 roller, and the exit trans roller
M15	Fuser gap motor	JC31-00144G	Stepping motor	Makes a contact with the fuser belt and the pressure roller when printing. The motor detaches the fuser belt from the pressure roller after printing.

Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)

Learn about the Laser Scanning Unit (LSU).

Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) overview

Learn about the Laser Scanning Unit (LSU).

The Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) constructs a latent image by removing electric charges by a laser on the surface of the drum.

The LSU Laser Diode (LD) power makes a laser, driving the LSU motor to expose the laser on the drum as a line through the two F-theta lens. The laser beam is detected by the LSUPD PCA at the scanning start point and creates the horizontal sync signal.


 **NOTE:** When the LSU is replaced or re-installed, CPR reference adjustment in ServiceTools is recommended.

Figure 3-67 Overview of the laser scanning unit

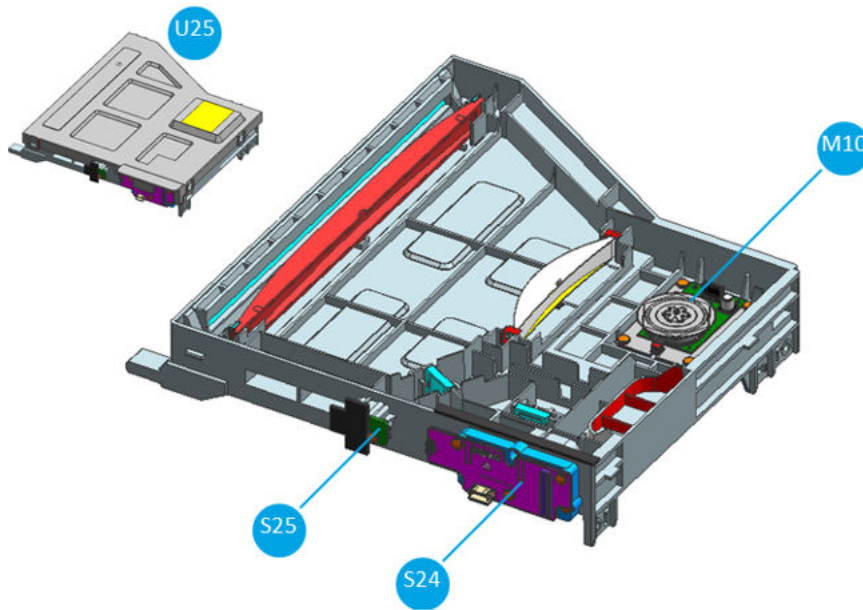


Figure 3-68 LSU detailed view

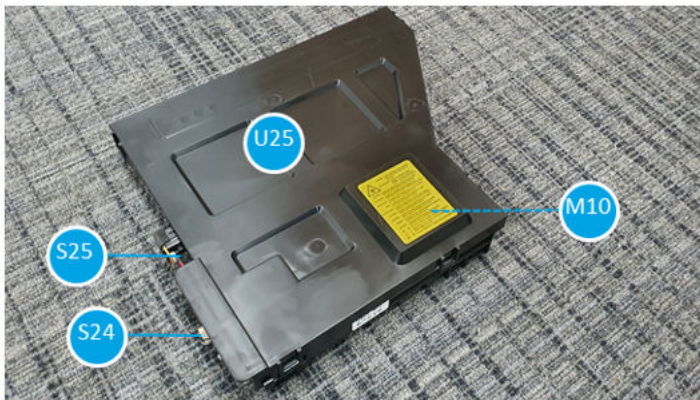


Table 3-34 Overview of the LSU part information

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U25	LSU unit	JC97-05147A	Developes an image on the drum surface

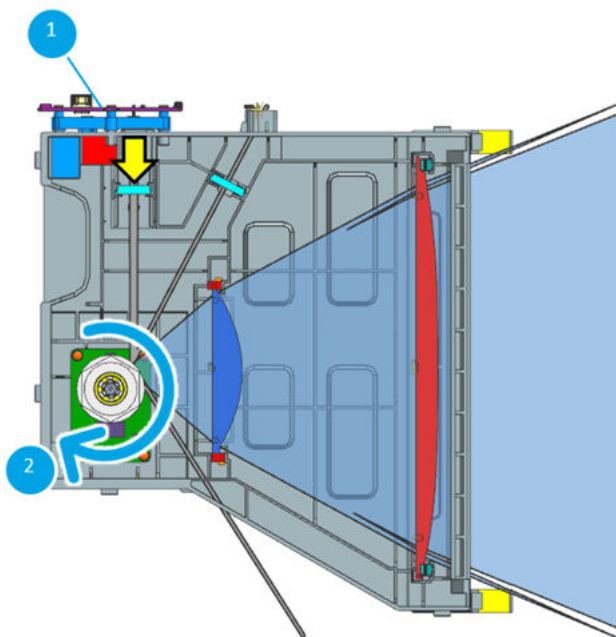
Table 3-34 Overview of the LSU part information (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M10	LSU motor	NA	Applies the laser to the drum surface as a line
S24	LSU LD power	NA	Generates the laser
S25	LSU Hsync	NA	Decides the starting point of a line.

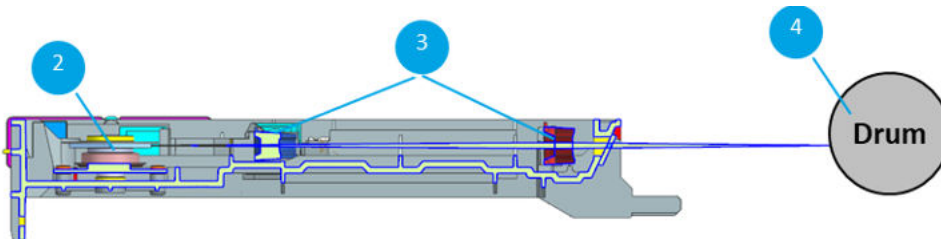
Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) operation

Learn about the Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) operation.

1. The LSU LD PCA generates a laser beam (callout 1), then the polygon motor rotates to reflect the laser beam to the F-theta lens to create the image as a line (callout 2).



2. The horizontal lines reaches the surface of the drum unit (callout 4) through the 2 F-theta lens (callout 3).



Developer and drum unit

Learn about the developer and drum unit.

Developer and drum unit overview

Learn about the developer and the drum unit.

The developer unit receives toner from the reservoir unit and creates images by the toner with the drum unit.

The toner concentration sensor determines whether the toner in the developer unit is insufficient. In this case, the developer unit receives the toner from the reservoir unit. The newly supplied toner is evenly mixed with the existing toner by the mixing auger. At this time, the developer unit's roller and auger are driven by the developer motor. The end of the developer unit is connected to the waste toner duct, the wasted toner after developing process are thrown away to the waste toner duct.

The drum unit receives toner from the developer unit and develops the image. Most of the developed toner is moved to the transfer unit to combine the yellow, magenta, cyan, and black colors and prints out on a paper. Remaining toners that are not relocated to the transfer unit are separated from the drum by the cleaning blade and moved to the waste toner duct.

The drum unit is driven by the drum motor, and the black drum motor drives not only the black drum unit but also the ITB at the same time. As for the rotation of the drum motor, the drum home sensor checks whether the drum motor rotates.

Figure 3-69 Overview of the developer

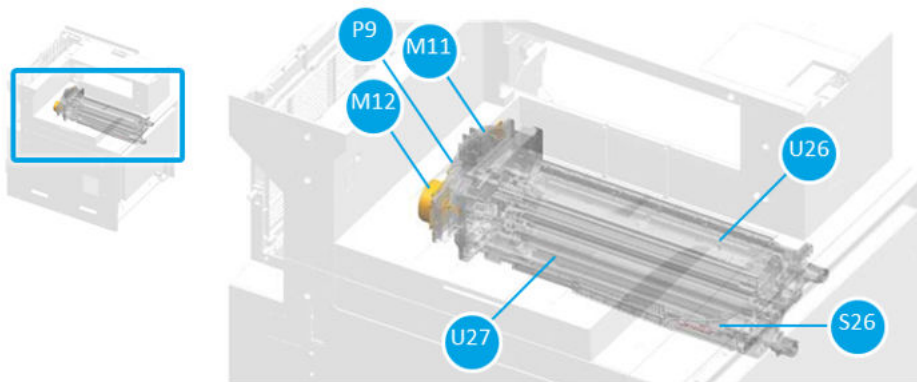


Figure 3-70 Overview of developer and drum unit



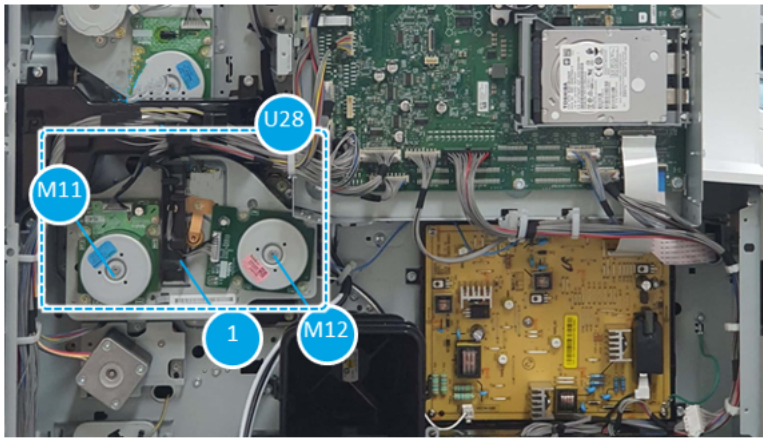
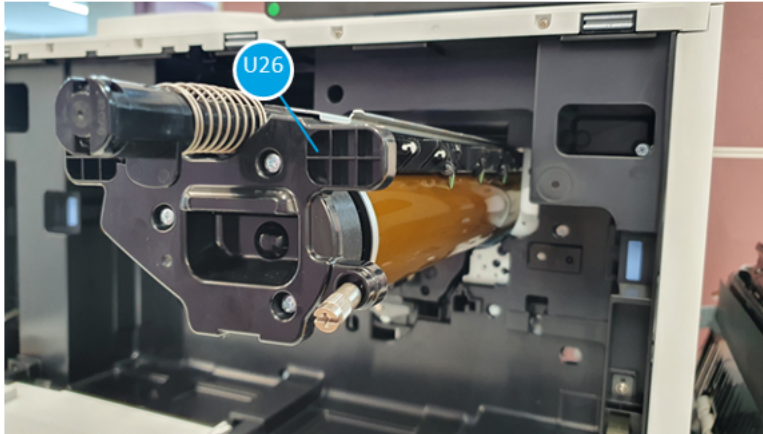


Table 3-35 Overview of the developer

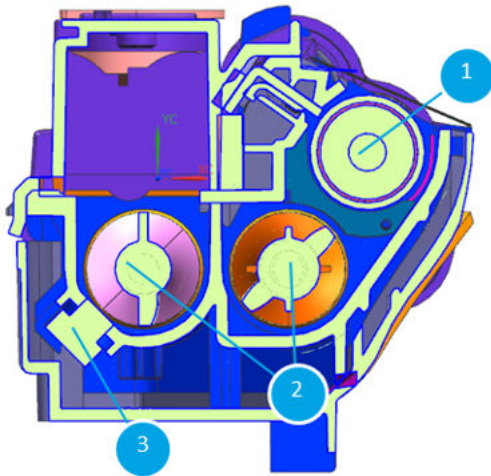
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U26	Drum unit	W9086-67001	Receives toner from the developer unit and creates the image
U27	Developer unit	5PN82-67002	Mixes and charges the toner with the carrier and delivers them to the drum unit
K4	Developer powder kit	5PN82-67001	
M12	Developer motor	JC31-00197A	Drives the developer unit
M11	Drum and PTB motor	JC31-00123G	Drives the drum unit and PTB unit
1	Cable guide	JC61-06282A	Secures cables

Developer and drum unit operation

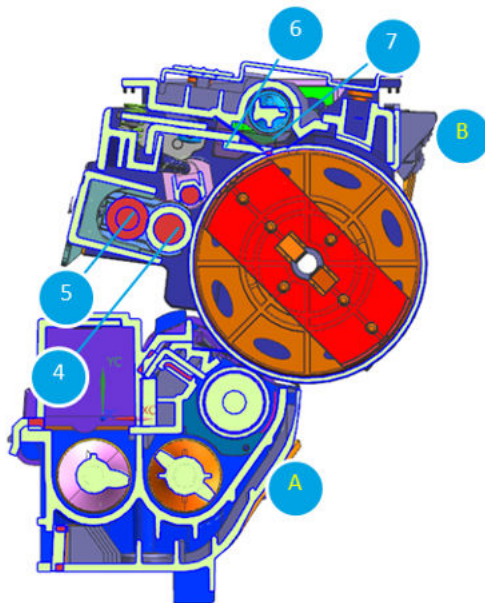
Learn about the developer and drum unit operation.

Figure 3-71 Developer and drum unit operation

1. The developer powder is supplied to the development roller (callout 1) by the two mixing augers (callout 2). The development unit has a Toner Carrier (TC, callout 3) sensor, it is used for controlling the operating range of the toner density of the printing image.



2. The drum surface is charged with a negative voltage and exposed to the light from the Laser Scanning Unit (LSU). The light creates a latent image by discharging on the surface. The negative-charged toner particles are attached to the latent image on the drum and transferred on the paper by positive bias applied to the transfer roller.
3. The developed toner moves to the drum unit (callout B) from the developer unit (callout A). The drum unit has a charge roller (callout 4) to charge the drum surface and a cleaning roller (callout 5) to clean the charge roller after the toner transfer process. The cleaning blade (callout 6) and the eraser (callout 7) removes the toner particles remaining on the drum surface and initializes drum surface for the next printing.

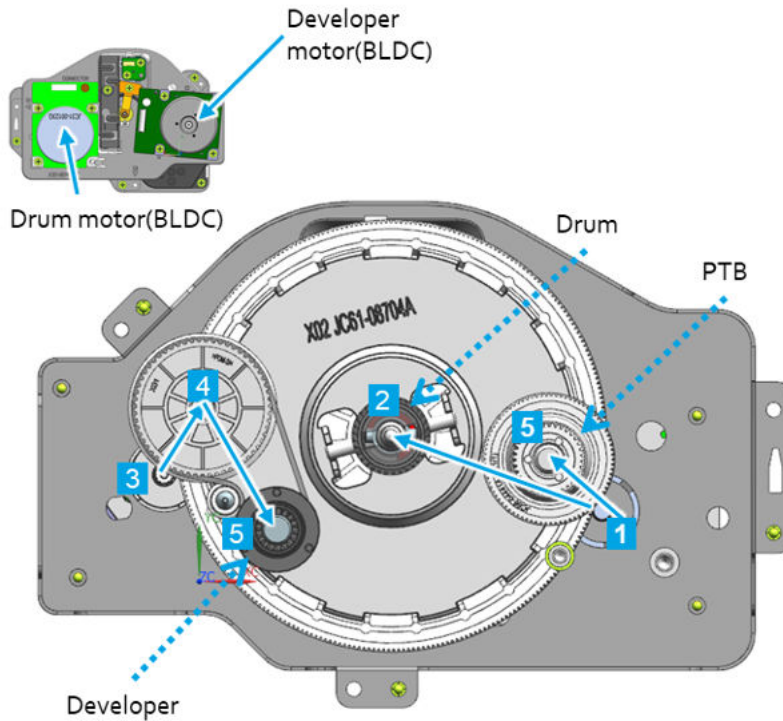


4. There is a security chip (CRUM) at the drum unit which stores the count information and other operating configuration with security algorithm.

Developer and drum unit driving

Learn about developer and drum unit driving.

Figure 3-72 Developer and drum unit driving



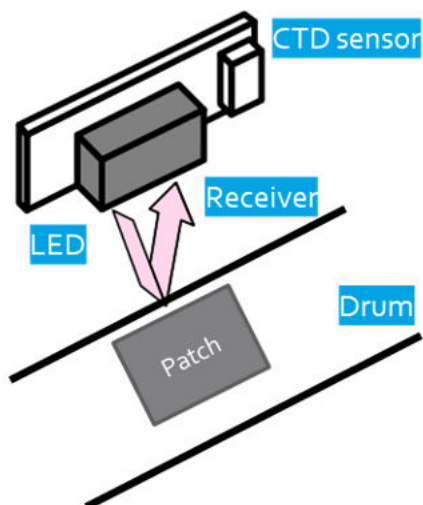
1. . Developer drive: 3 developer motor > 4 gear and pulley > 5 coupler, developer unit rotates
2. Drum drive: 1 drum unit > 2 gear and coupler, drum unit rotates

Color toner density (CTD) sensor operation

Learn about color toner density (CTD) sensor operation.

The CTD sensor emits an LED beam to a patch which is then transferred to the drum surface. It detects toner density to optimize printing image quality.

Figure 3-73 Color Toner Density (CTD) sensor operation



Color toner density (CTD) sensor cleaning

Learn about color toner density (CTD) sensor cleaning.

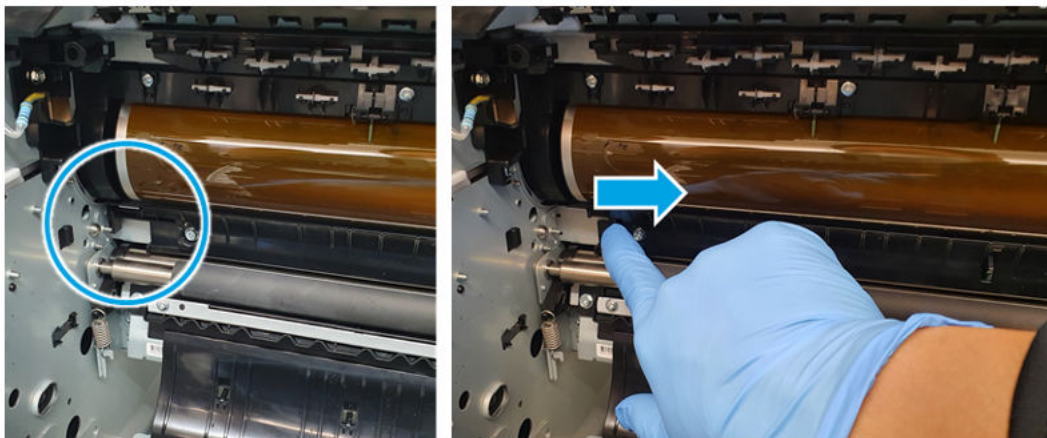
If the CTD sensor is dirty, there may be an image quality problem such as blurred or light printouts. To solve this, CTD cleaning is required periodically.



NOTE: It is recommended to perform CTD sensor cleaning when replacing the drum unit or developer unit.

Figure 3-74 Color Toner Density (CTD) sensor cleaning

1. Open the right door.
2. Move the CTD cleaning lever in the direction of arrow, then naturally remove the lever from your hand.



Paper Transfer Belt (PTB)

Learn about the Paper Transfer Belt (PTB).

Paper transfer belt (PTB) overview

Learn about the paper transfer belt (PTB).

The paper transfer belt (PTB) moves the paper from the registration to the fuser unit after creating the image on the paper.

The charged toner on the drum unit surface is moved to the paper by the transfer roller. The rubber belt in the PTB removes static from the paper then separates the paper from the drum unit so that the paper moves to the fuser unit correctly. Rotation of the PTB is made by the friction between the drive roller and the transfer belt. For this process, the drive roller and guide roller provide proper tension to prevent a belt slip.

Figure 3-75 Overview of the PTB

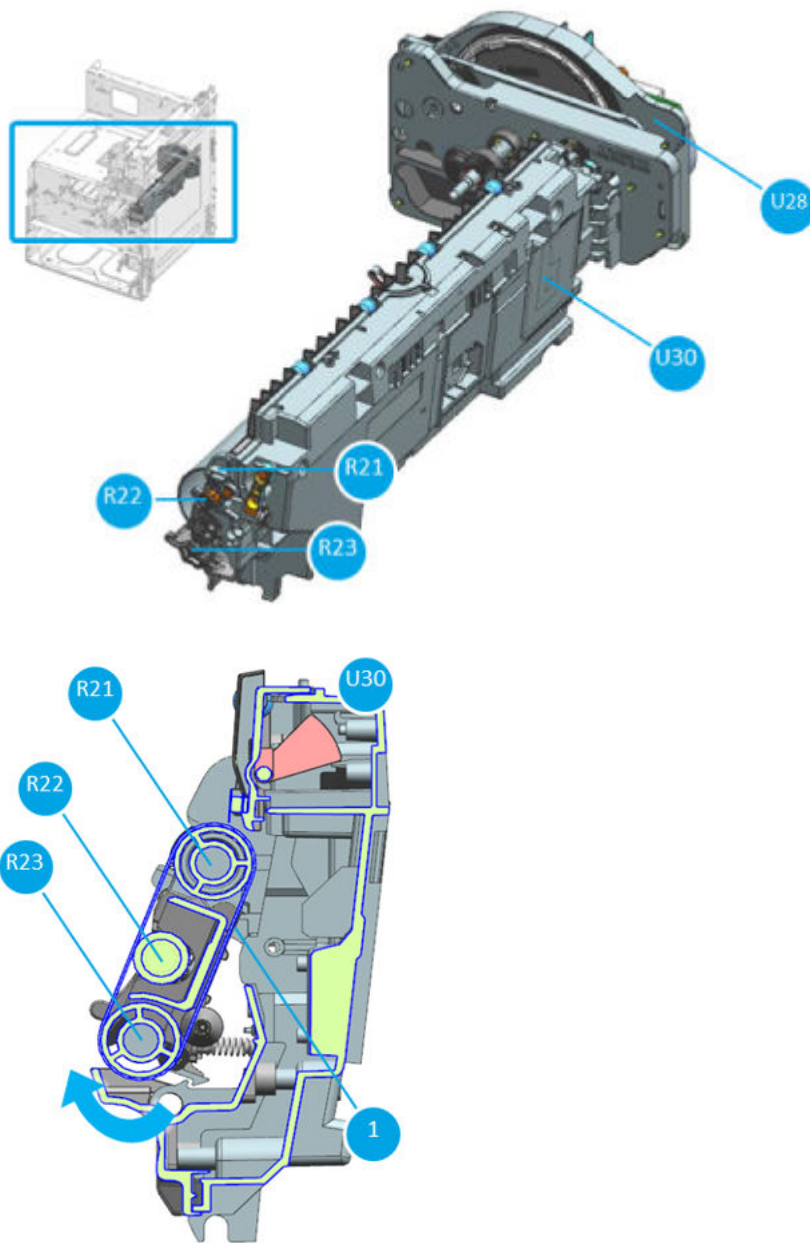


Figure 3-76 PTB detailed view

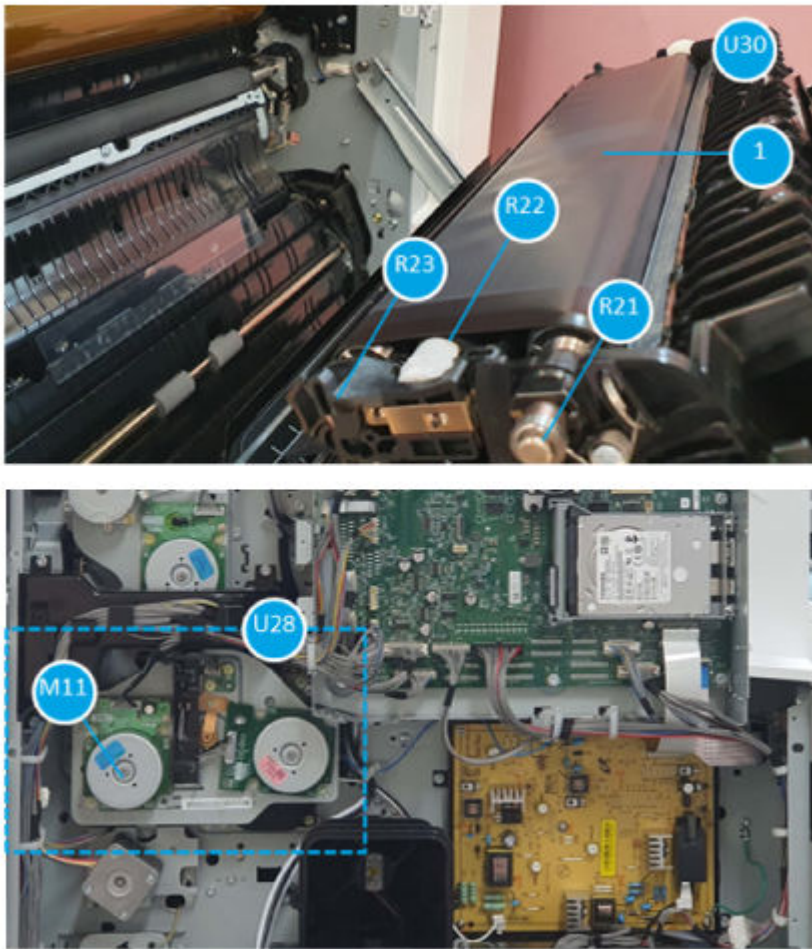


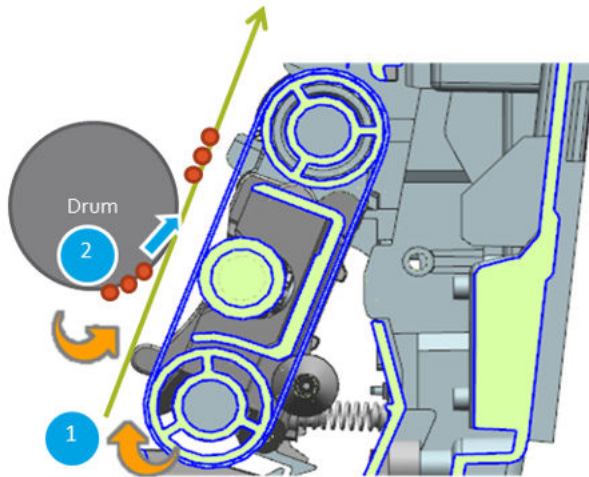
Table 3-36 PTB parts information

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U30	Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) unit	5PN85-67001	Includes PTB and cleaning unit
U28	Developer, drum and PTB drive assembly	JC93-01662A	
M11	Drum and PTB motor	JC31-00123G	Drives PTB
1	Paper transfer belt		
R21	PTB drive roller	NA	Rotates the paper transfer belt
R22	PTB transfer roller	NA	Rotates the paper transfer belt and helps image transferring from drum surface to the paper
R23	PTB guide roller	NA	Guides the paper transfer belt

Paper transfer belt (PTB) operation

Learn about the paper transfer belt (PTB) operation.

1. Paper moves to the fuser by the drum unit and paper transfer roller rotation.

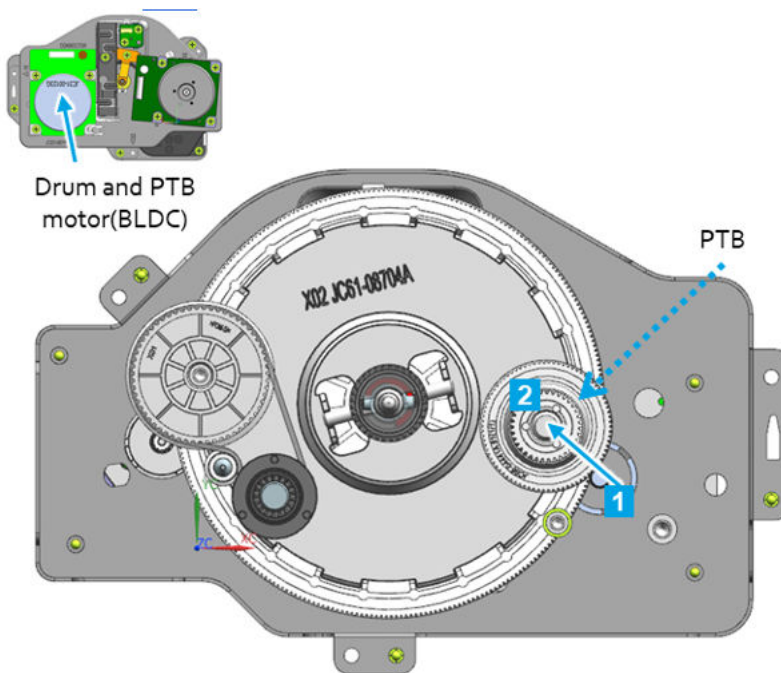


2. At the point of the drum and the transfer roller contact, the toner on the drum unit moves to the paper by a proper level of the pressure between the drum unit and the transfer roller and static of different polarity of the toner and the transfer roller.

Paper transfer belt (PTB) driving

Learn about paper transfer belt (PTB) driving.

Figure 3-77 PTB driving



Paper transfer belt (PTB) drive: 1 drum and PTB motor > 2 gear, PTB rotates

Fuser unit

Learn about the fuser unit.

Fuser unit overview

Learn about the fuser unit.

The fuser unit applies heat and pressure to the toner particles to adhere to the paper. The fuser unit is composed of fuser section and fuser/exit driving section.

Figure 3-78 Overview of the fuser unit

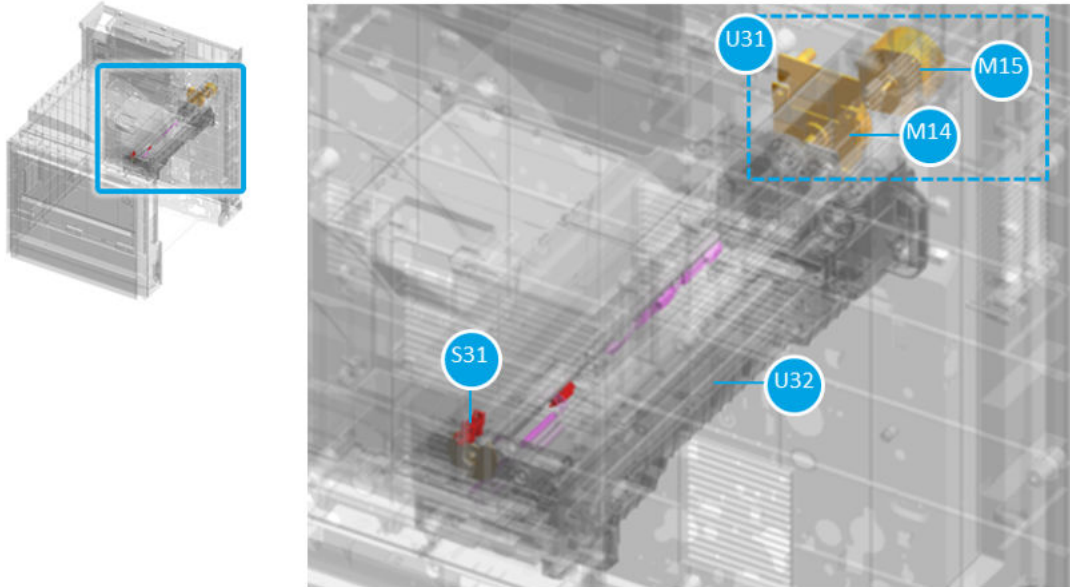


Figure 3-79 Detail view of the fuser unit

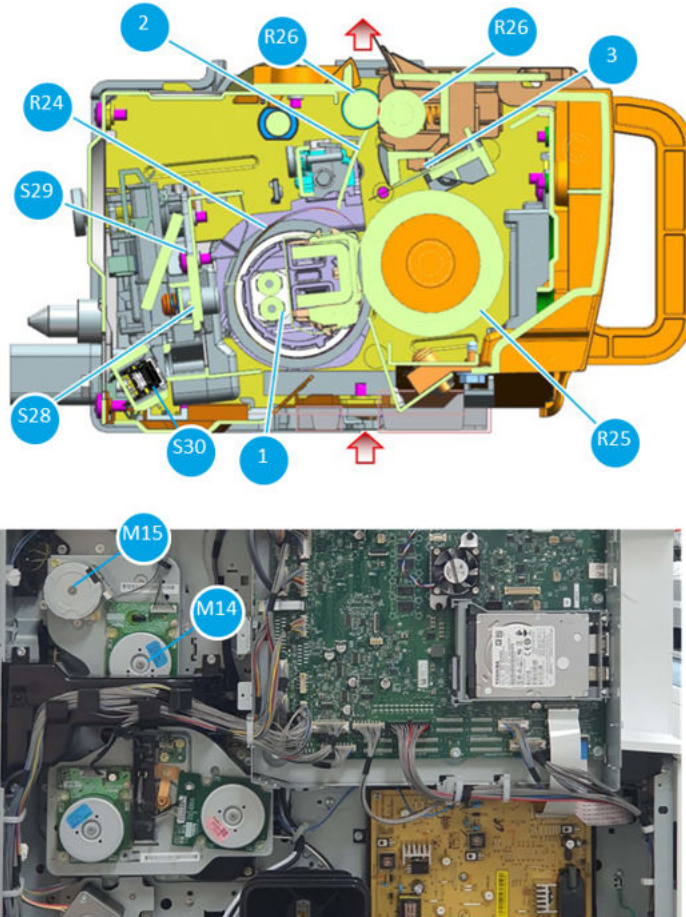


Table 3-37 Fuser unit parts information

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U32-1	Fuser unit 100V	5PN53-67001	Fixes toner to the paper
U32-2	Fuser unit 110V	5PN76-67001	Fixes toner to the paper
U32-3	Fuser unit 220V	5PN77-67001	Fixes toner to the paper
R24	Fuser belt	NA	Receives heat from the halogen lamp and transfers it to the toner and paper
R25	Fuser pressure roller	NA	Makes a contact with the fuser belt to transfer heat and pressure on the paper and the toner, and drives the paper to the exit unit
R26	Fuser exit roller	NA	Moves the paper to the exit unit
S28	Thermostat	NA	Cuts off the power supply to the halogen lamp by opening the circuit when the fusing belt becomes abnormally hot
S29	Thermistor	NA	Measures the surface temperature of the fuser belt by 4 non-contact type thermistors
S30	Wrap jam sensor	NA	Identifies whether a wrap jam occurs inside the fuser unit
U33	Fuser, exit motor assembly	JC93-01850A	Drives the fuser pressure roller and fuser exit roller

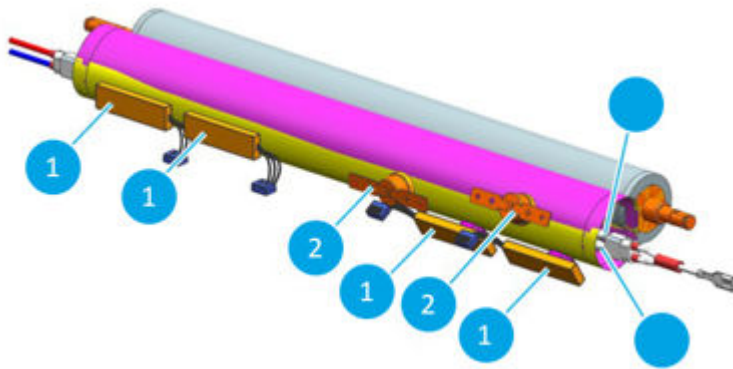
Table 3-37 Fuser unit parts information (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M14	Fuser, exit motor	JC31-00144G	Drives the fuser pressure roller and fuser exit roller
M15	Fuser gap motor	JC93-01084A	Makes contact with the fuser belt to transfer heat and pressure on the paper and toner, and drives the paper moves to the exit unit
S31	Fuser gap sensor	0604-001393	Moves the paper to the exit unit
1	Halogen lamp	NA	Creates heat to the fuser belt to adhere the toner to the paper
2	Baffle plate	NA	Prevents a wrap jam and guides the paper to the fuser exit roller
3	Fuser out brush	NA	Removes static electricity from the printed paper

Fuser unit temperature control

Learn about the fuser unit temperature control.

Figure 3-80 Fuser unit temperature control



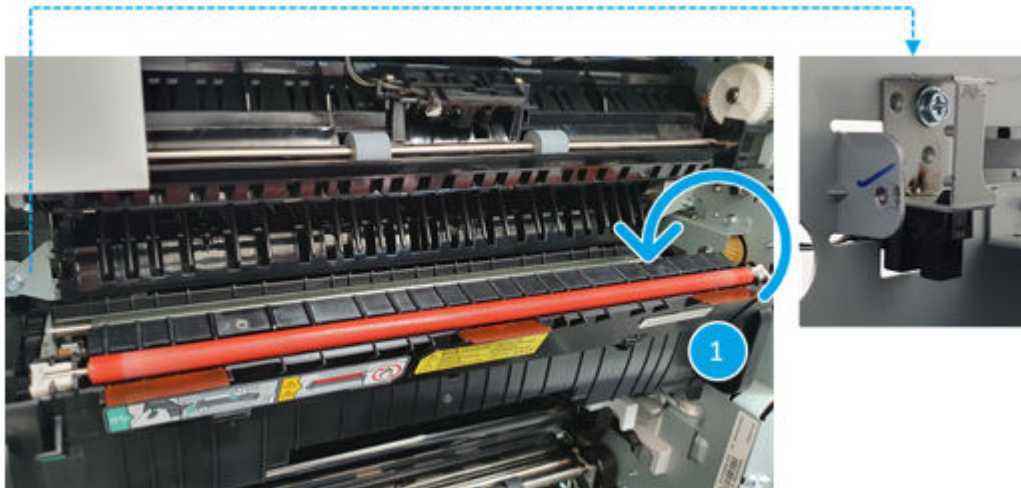
1. Four thermistors detects the fuser belt surface temperature. In case of narrow width paper printing, the thermistors effectively identify differences of the surface temperature, and control turning the halogen lamp off so it will not be overheated.
2. In case of abnormal temperature increment without control, the thermostat shuts off the circuit to prevent abnormal operation.

Fuser gap sensor operation

Learn about the fuser gap sensor operation.

1. When starting a printing job, fuser gap motor drives to the direction of arrow (callout 1) to make the pressure between the fuser belt and the fuser pressure roller. The fuser gap sensor installed left side of the fuser controls location of the fuser belt to press or release with the fuser pressure roller.

Figure 3-81 Fuser gap sensor operation, view 1



2. After finishing a printing job, fuser gap motor rotates to the other side, the fuser belt is released (callout 2).

Figure 3-82 Fuser gap sensor operation, view 2



Fuser wrap jam sensor operation

Learn about the fuser wrap jam sensor operation.

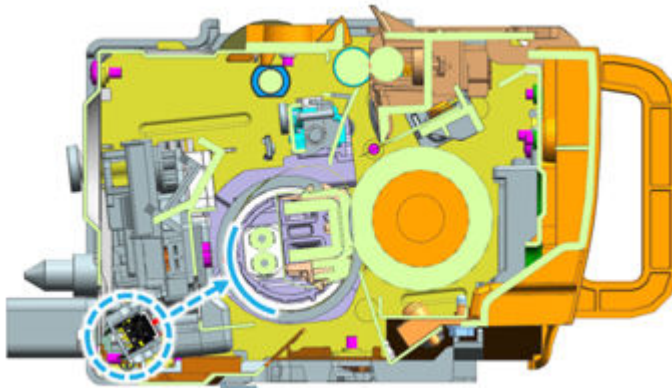
Wrap jam of the fuser unit may cause accidents such as a fire. To prevent this, the wrap jam sensor safely detects in three methods.

Figure 3-83 Wrap jam in the fuser unit



1. The thermistor detects the sudden temperature change and temperature increasing slope of the fusing belt to determine if wrap jam has occurred.
2. The reflective type wrap jam sensor identifies an error by immediately detecting the case of wrapping paper around the fusing belt.

Figure 3-84 Fuser wrap jam sensor operation

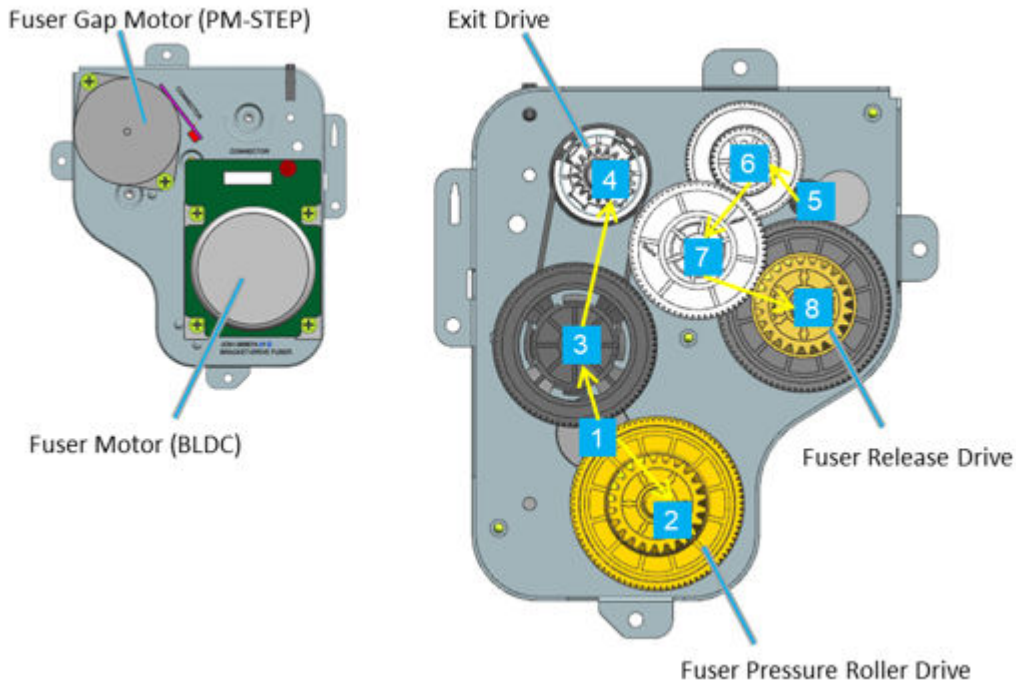


3. The current sensor measures the change in current applied to the fuser motor to check whether a wrap jam has occurred.

Fuser driving

Learn about fuser driving.

Figure 3-85 Fuser driving



- Fuser driving: 1 fuser motor > 2 gear
- Fuser releasing: 5 fuser gap motor > 6 gear > 7 gear > 8 gear
- Fuser exit driving: 1 fuser > 3 gear & pulley > 4 pulley

Environmental sensor, fan, switch

Learn about the environmental sensor, fan and switch.

Environmental sensor, fan, switch overview

Learn about the environmental sensor, fan and switch.

To accurately implement the operation algorithm of the product according to the environment, an internal temperature sensor, an external temperature sensor, and a humidity sensor are installed inside the device.

As the product is used, the temperature of the internal main parts or the inner parts of the machine rises, which can degrade the product's performance. To prevent this, fans are installed to make outside air enter various areas.

Two switches are equipped to read the opening and closing of the front door and the right door.

Figure 3-86 Overview of the temperature and humidity measurement sensor

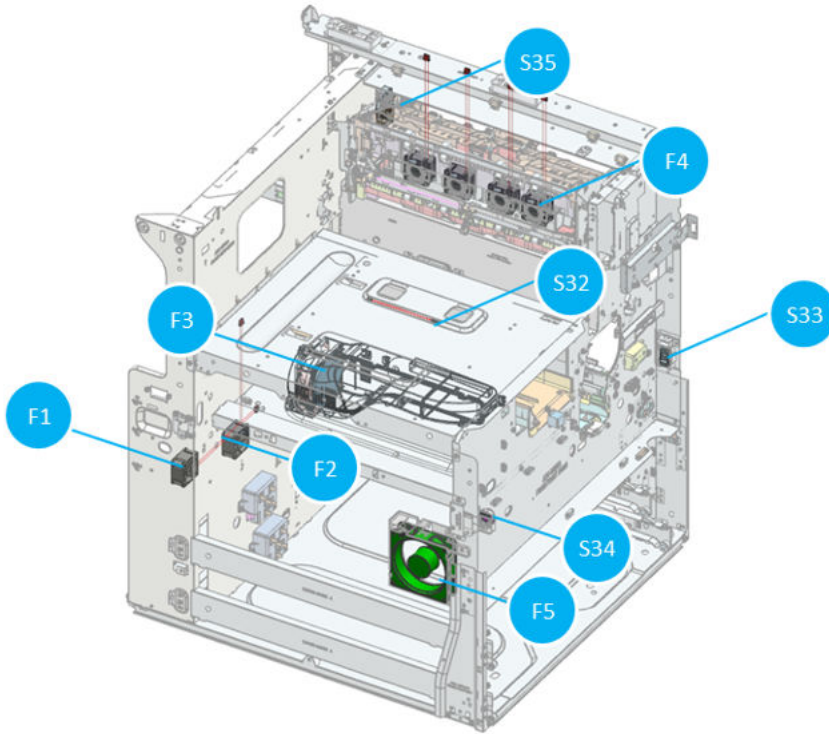
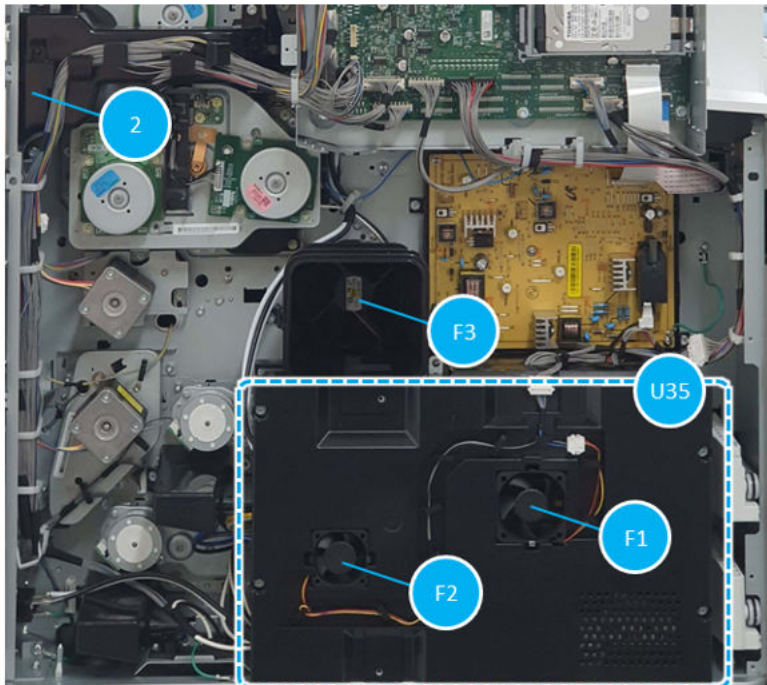
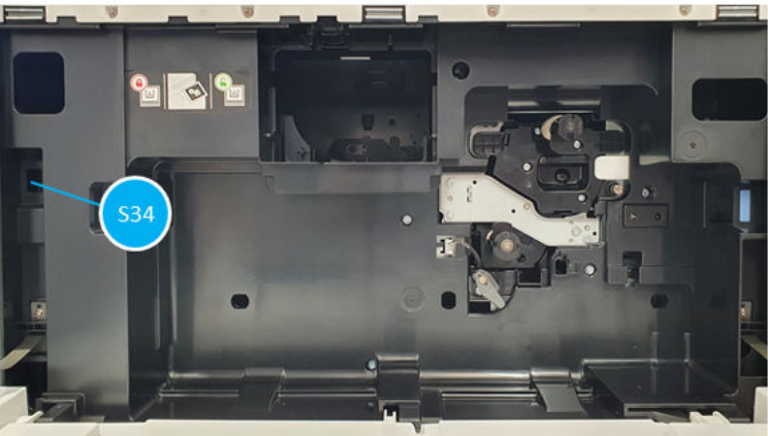
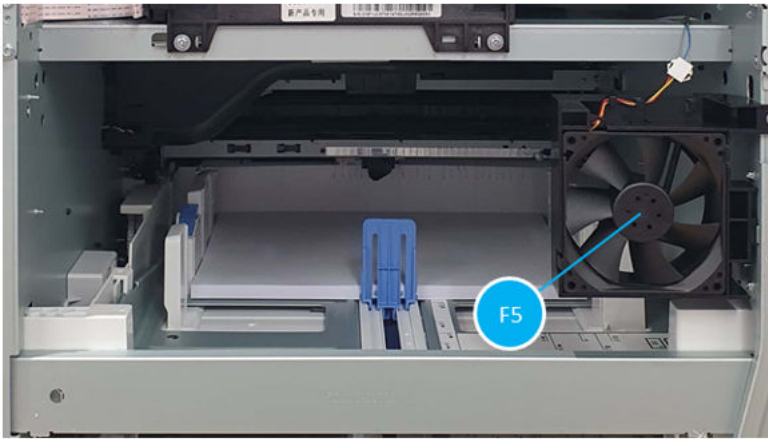
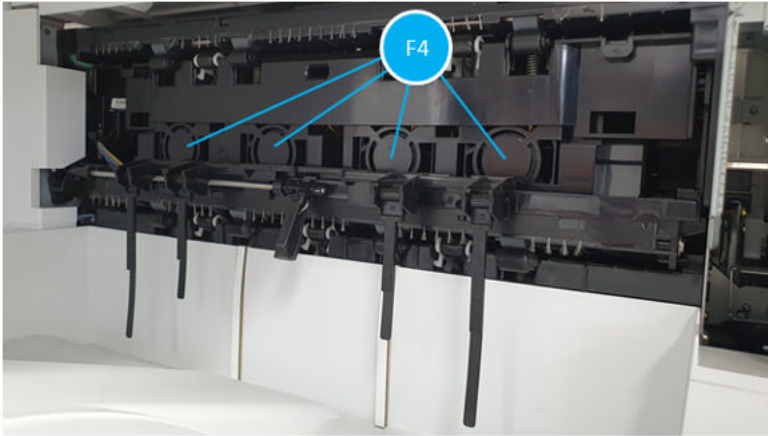


Figure 3-87 Detailed views of the temperature and humidity sensor





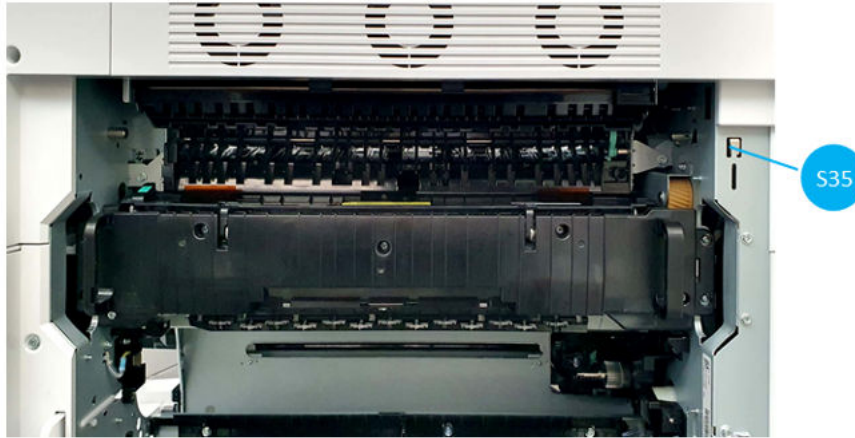


Table 3-38 Parts information temperature and humidity measurement sensor

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S32	Inner temperature sensor	1404-001417	Detects the internal temperature of the machine
U34	Outer temperature, humidity sensor assembly	5QJ90-40002	Detects the external temperature of the machine
S33	Outer temperature, humidity sensor	JC32-00015A	
1	Holder outer temperature, humidity sensor	JC31-00198A	
U35	LVPS FDB fan assembly	5QK09-40083	
F1	LVPS fan	JC31-00198A	Dissipates heat generated by the LVPS
F2	FDB fan	JC31-00154A	Dissipates heat generated by the FDB
2	Fuser ventilation duct	JC93-01446A	Dissipates heat generated by the fuser
F4	Exit fan 1, 2, 3, 4	JC31-00154A	Dissipates heat generated by discharging toner fixed paper
U36	LSU fan assembly	JC93-01446A	
F5	LSU fan	JC31-00154A	Dissipates heat generated by the LSU
S34	Front door switch	JC93-00466A	Checks whether the front door is open
S35	Right door switch	JC93-01467A	Checks whether the right door is open

Control panel

Learn about the control panel.

Control panel - 10.1 inch

Learn about the control panel - 10.1 inch.

The control panel consists of the LCD to show UI, touch sensor for user to set the device from UI, and audio codec/speaker for sound. This control panel uses the 10.1 inch capacitive type touch sensor and 1280x800 WXGA LCD.

- Control panel - 10.1 inch part number: 5QK42-60101

 **NOTE:**

- **Control panel - 8 inch**
 - The diagnostic button always works.
- **Control panel - 10 inch**
 - The diagnostic button works when the printer is in Sleep mode or when the control panel is physically disconnected from the formatter.
 - When the printer is in Ready mode, pressing the diagnostic button stops control panel operation. To reactivate the control panel, press the button again (or do nothing for 10 seconds).

Figure 3-88 Overview of the control panel - 10.1 inch

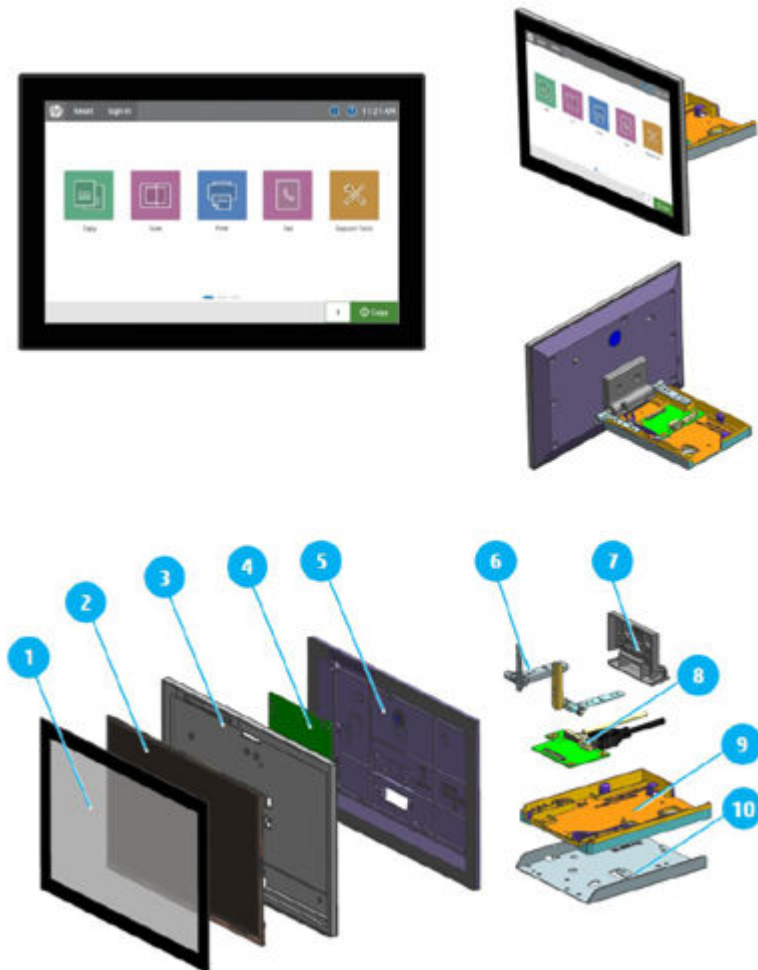


Table 3-39 Overview of the control panel - 10.1 inch

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
0	Control panel - 10.1 inch	5QK42-60101	

Table 3-39 Overview of the control panel – 10.1 inch (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Touch sensor	NA	OGS (One glass solution) type capacitive touch sensor
2	LCD	NA	10.1 inches 1280x800 WXGA LCD
3	Control panel front cover	NA	
4	Control panel PCA	NA	Control panel PCA
5	Control panel rear cover	NA	
6	Hinge	NA	
7	Control panel hinge cover	NA	
8	Interface PCA	NA	Interface PCA between formatter and LCD PCA
9	Hinge holder	NA	
10	Control panel hinge bracket	NA	

Control panel – 8 inch

Learn about the control panel – 8 inch.

The control panel consists of the LCD to show UI, touch sensor for user to set the device from UI, and audio codec/speaker for sound. This control panel uses the 8 inch capacitive type touch sensor and 1024x768 XGA LCD.

- Control panel – 8 inch part number: 3SJ15-60101

Figure 3-89 Overview of the control panel - 8 inch

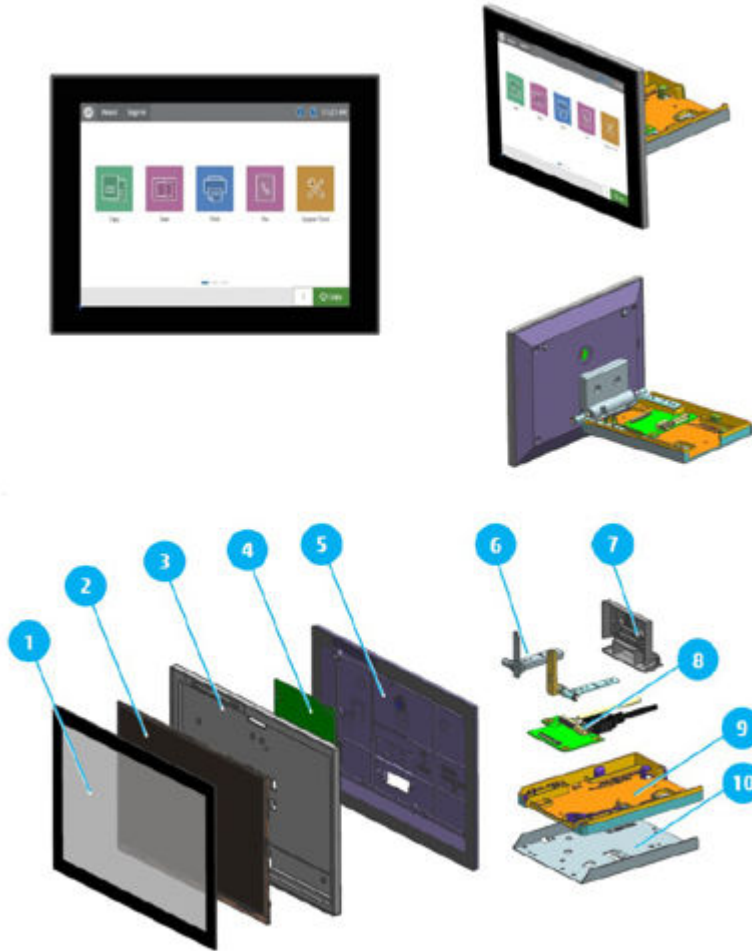


Table 3-40 Overview of the control panel - 8 inch

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
0	Control panel - 8 inch	3SJ15-60101	
1	Touch sensor	NA	OGS (One glass solution) type capacitive touch sensor
2	LCD	NA	8 inches 1024x768 WGA LCD
3	Control panel front cover	NA	
4	Control panel PCA	NA	Control panel PCA
5	Control panel rear cover	NA	
6	Hinge	NA	
7	Control panel hinge cover	NA	
8	Interface PCA	NA	Interface PCA between formatter and LCD PCA
9	Hinge holder	NA	
10	Control panel hinge bracket	NA	

Hardware configuration

Learn about the hardware configuration.

PCA overview

Learn about the PCAs.

Figure 3-90 Overview of the PCAs

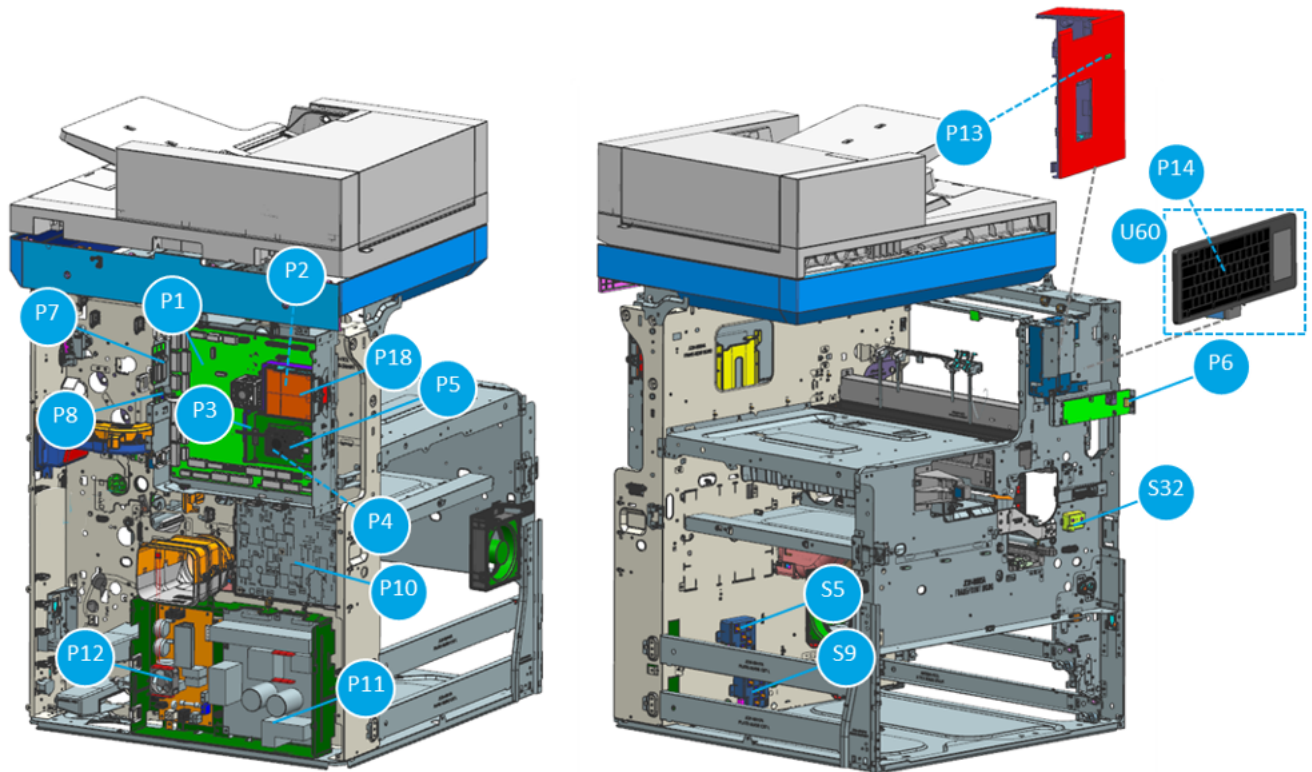


Table 3-41 Overview of the PCAs

No.	Part name	Part number	Description
P1	Formatter	3SJ33-60002	Handles the video controller, engine controller, and scan controller
P2	Trusted platform module (TPM)	3SJ03-60001 (not orderable)	Stores and generates encryption keys that can be used for device authentication
P3	Riser card		Connects data storage to the formatter
P3-1	Riser card for HDD	3SJ01-60001	Connects the hard disk to the formatter
P3-2	Riser card for HDD, and two USB type C	4XN67-60001	Connects the hard disk to the formatter
P3-3	Riser card for HDD and, two USB type C, and accelerator board	3SJ02-60001	Connects the hard disk and the accelerator to the formatter
P4	Accelerator	6HN30-67001	Accelerates digital signal processing (DSP) and optical character recognition (OCR) performance supporting the z-bundle

Table 3-41 Overview of the PCAs (continued)

No.	Part name	Part number	Description
P5	Hard disk drive	933853-010	Stores operating system and machine data to operate the printer system
P6	USB hub	3SJ04-60001	Interfaces with the main PCA, USB device, and HIP2 options
P7	Island of data(IOD)	3SJ06-60001	Stores machine configuration and engine control data
P8	Echo	T3U64-60001	Collects internal acoustics information via microphone for system diagnosis
P10	High voltage power supply (HVPS)	5QK09-60001	Generates 3 high-voltage channels, which include DEV AC/DC, THV+/-, MHV.
P11	Low voltage power supply (LVPS)	(110V) JC44-00149C (220V) JC44-00150C	Supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.
P12	Fuser drive board (FDB)	(110V) JC44-00235C (220V) JC44-00236C	Supplies the voltage to fuser AC, heater, and main PCA
P13	Power key	3SJ33-60007	Turns the machine on and off
P14	Keyboard	5QK47-60001	Connects the keypad with the formatter
P18-1	Single FAX card	7ZA08-67001	Optional fax kit card
P18-2	Single FAX card - BBU	7ZA09-67001	Optional fax kit card - BBU
P18-3	Dual FAX card	5QK14-67001	Optional fax kit card
P18-4	Dual FAX card - BBU	7ZA07-67001	Optional fax kit card - BBU
U60-1	Keyboard assembly - US English	JC93-01742A	Physical keyboard
U60-2	Keyboard assembly - UK English	JC93-01743A	Physical keyboard
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE,ES,UK Kybd)	5851-6019	Language specific keyboard overlay
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES,US Kybd)	5851-6020	Language specific keyboard overlay
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA,UK Kybd)	5851-6021	Language specific keyboard overlay
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	5851-6022	Language specific keyboard overlay
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (ES, PT)	5851-6023	Language specific keyboard overlay
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	5851-6024	Language specific keyboard overlay
S5	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor	JC92-02622A	Detects the size of the paper in the tray
S9	Tray 3 open, paper size sensor	JC92-02622A	Detects the size of the paper in the tray

Table 3-41 Overview of the PCAs (continued)

No.	Part name	Part number	Description
S32	Toner collection unit full sensor	JC92-02471A	Detects the waste toner level of the toner collection unit
Not shown (P15)	Drum CRUM	-	Includes an IC chip for drum unit operation and life cycle counting
Not shown (P16)	Eraser	-	Erases the negative charges on the surface of the drum after printing
Not shown (P17)	Fuser CRUM	-	Includes an IC chip for maintaining the fuser unit life cycle counting, and provides a connection interface for the fuser gap sensor operation
Not shown (P19)	Toner cartridge CRUM PCA	-	Includes an IC chip for toner cartridge operation and life cycle counting

Formatter

Learn about the formatter.

The formatter handles the video controller, engine controller and scan controller. This PCA receives print data from the host through the network or USB port, and it receives copy data from the Scan Controller. It takes this information and generates printable video bitmap data. It controls all modules required to print: LSU, HVPS, FAN, Fuser, etc.

The formatter consists of the main processor, memory (DDR4 6GB), 1G Ethernet PHY, Micom (Power control), Video/CP/FAX signal interface connection, motor driving IC, Engine signal interface connection, and power interface.

The main processor (Quad Core 1.6GHz CPU) of the formatter controls video, engine, CP display and communicates with various devices. The hard disk is connected to the formatter by three types of riser cards.

- Formatter part number: 3SJ33-60001 (P1)

Figure 3-91 Formatter

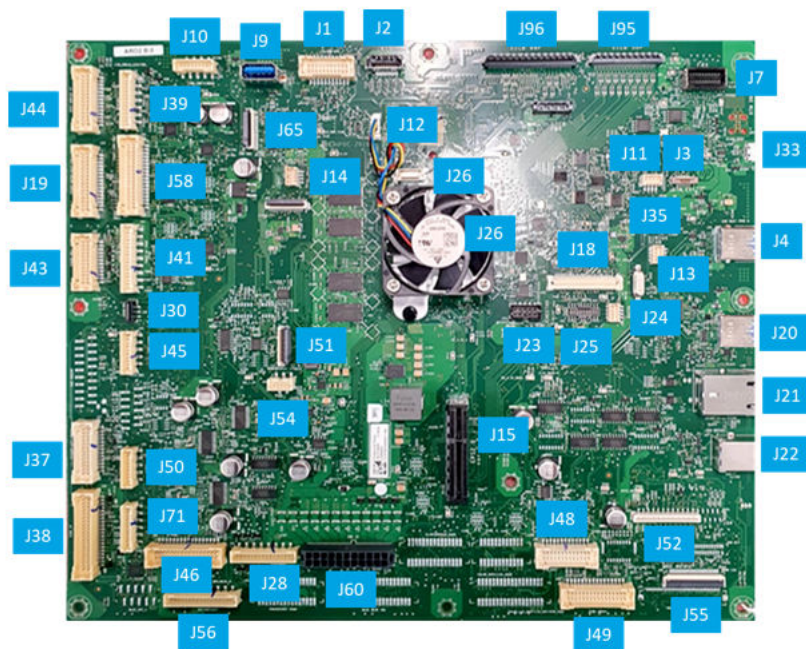


Table 3-42 Formatter connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when disconnected
Main-J1	Control panel Power key PCA	22pin	JC39-02829A	No power supply
Main-J2	Control panel HDMI	19pin HDMI	5QK03-50006	Control panel off
Main-J4	USB 2.0 host	4pin USB	5QK03-50006	
Main-J7	Fax	20pin	Dual Fax 810: 5QK14A Dual Fax 811: 7ZA07A Single Fax 800: 7ZA08A Single Fax 801: 7ZA09A	
Main-J9	Control panel USB host		5QK03-50006	USB not recognized
Main-J10	Unused			
Main-J11	Trusted platform module (TPM)	20pin PCA	3SJ03-60001 (not orderable)	
Main-J12	CPU Fan	4pin	1205-1597 (not orderable)	5710.01
Main-J13	Unused			
Main-J14	Unused			

Table 3-42 Formatter connections (continued)

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when disconnected
Main-J15	Riser-HDD	64pin PCA	Riser for HDD: 3SJ01-60001 Riser for HDD, USB ports: 4XN67-60001 Riser for HDD, USB ports, Accelerator: 3SJ02-60001	99.09.66
Main-J18	Unused			
Main-J19	Fuser and exit motor Fuser fan Right door open switch Fuser gap motor Exit fan 1, 2, 3, 4	32pin	JC39-02195A	50.FF.02
Main-J20	USB 3.0 host	9pin USB		
Main-J21	Network	12pin RJ45		
Main-J22	Mini USB port	9pin USB		
Main-J23	Unused			
Main-J24	Unused			
Main-J25	Unused			
Main-J26	Unused			
Main-J28	Finisher	16pin	JC39-02194A	
Main-J30	Echo PCA	6pin PCA	3SJ11-60108	
Main-J33	USB 3.0 host	4pin USB		
Main-J35	Unused			
Main-J37	Tray 2 paper empty sensor Tray 2 stack height sensor Tray 2 prefeed sensor Tray 2 feed motor Tray 3 paper empty sensor Tray 3 stack height sensor Tray 3 prefeed sensor Tray 3 feed motor	26pin	JC39-02234A	Tray 2 empty Tray 3 empty

Table 3-42 Formatter connections (continued)

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when disconnected
Main-J38	Tray 1 solenoid Tray 1 paper empty sensor Feed 2 sensor Duplex 2 motor Tray 1 clutch Loop sensor 1 Loop sensor 2 Duplex jam 2 sensor Fuser out sensor	40pin	JC39-02586A	13.B9.FF
Main-J39	Island of data (IOD)	14pin PCA	JC39-02823A	Stuck on initialization
Main-J41	Toner cartridge CRUM Drum CRUM Eraser PCA Toner residual amount sensor	17pin	JC39-02835A	Install black cartridge Install black drum
Main-J43	Center thermistor Side thermistor Wrap jam sensor Fuser CRUM Center 2 thermistor Side 2 thermistor	24pin	JC39-02809A	54.FF.02 Install fuser unit
Main-J44	Exit 2 motor Duplex 1 motor Exit 2 sensor Out bin full 1 sensor Out bin full 2 sensor(optional) Return gate solenoid Duplex jam 1 sensor	28pin	JC39-02836A	13.E1.D1 13.E7.D1
Main-J45	ITB engage motor Registration sensor Inner temperature sensor	10pin	JC39-02236A	13.B2.D2
Main-J46	Drum motor Developer motor	34pin	JC39-02828A	59.05.50

Table 3-42 Formatter connections (continued)

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when disconnected
Main-J48	LSU fan Outer temperature and humidity sensor Waste toner duct detection sensor Waste toner duct motor sensor Front door open switch Front fan Waste toner duct motor	26pin	JC39-02832A	Close the front door
Main-J49	FDB LVPS Tray 2 open, paper size sensor Tray 3 open, paper size sensor LVPS fan FDB fan	32pin	JC39-02814A	30.01.44 63.00.20 Tray 2 open Tray 3 open
Main-J50	Unused			
Main-J52	HVPS	24pin FFC	JC39-02250A	63.00.01
Main-J54	Unused			
Main-J55	LSU	40pin FFC	51K09-50001	63.00.26
Main-J56	DCF HCI sHCI	18pin	JC39-02187A	DCF, HCI, sHCI not identified
Main-J58	Toner dispense motor sensor Reservoir motor TC sensor	36pin	JC39-02831A	63.00.39
Main-J60	LVPS	22pin	JC39-02808A	No power supply
Main-J61	Feed motor Registration motor Tray 1 pickup clutch	11pin	JC39-02799A	13.B2.D2
Main-J63	Unused			
Main-J64	SSA-J3 Platen power outlet	4pin	3SJ11-50006	30.03.20
Main-J65	Unused			


Table 3-42 Formatter connections (continued)

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when disconnected
Main-J95	SSA-J9 Platen interface 2	50pin FFC	3SJ11-50021	30.03.45
Main-J96	SSA-J4 Platen interface 1	68pin FFC	3SJ11-50022	30.01.44
Main-U38	CPU			

Trusted Platform Module (TPM)

Learn about the Trusted Platform Module (TPM).

Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a hardware-based encryption device. It stores and/or generates encryption keys that can be used for device authentication.

 **NOTE:** When the formatter needs to be replaced, the TPM should be re-installed to the new formatter after reset password for retain key security credentials.

- Trusted platform module part number: 3SJ03-60001 (P2) (not orderable)

Figure 3-92 Trusted Platform Module (TPM)



Table 3-43 Trusted Platform Module (TPM) connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
TPM-J1	Main-J11	PCA	3SJ03-60001 (not orderable)

Riser card

Learn about the riser card.

The riser card is a connecting board between the formatter and the data storage. There are 3 types of riser card depending on the storage type and the accelerator installation.

Riser card for HDD

Learn about the riser card for HDD.

- Riser card for HDD part number: 3SJ01-60001 (P3-1)

Figure 3-93 Riser card for HDD

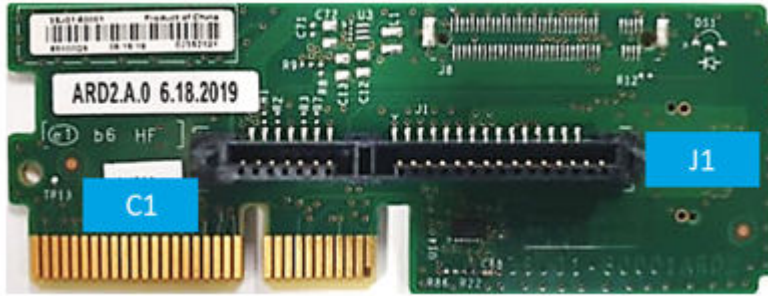


Table 3-44 Riser card for HDD connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Riser1-J1	HDD	HDD	500GB hard disk drive 933853-010
Riser1-C1	Main-J15	PCA	3SJ01-60001

Riser card for HDD and USB ports

Learn about the riser card for HDD and USB ports.

- Riser card for HDD and two USB Type C ports part number: 4XN67-60001 (P3-2)

Figure 3-94 Riser card for HDD and two USB Type C ports



Table 3-45 Riser card for HDD and two USB Type C ports connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Riser2-J1	HDD	HDD	500GB hard disk drive 933853-010
Riser2-J4	USB port	-	-
Riser2-J5	USB port	-	-
Riser2-J7	NA	-	-
Riser2-C1	Main-J15	PCA	4XN67-60001

Riser card for HDD, USB ports, and accelerator board

Learn about the riser card for HDD, USB ports, and accelerator board.

- Riser card for HDD, two USB Type C ports, and accelerator board part number: 3SJ02-60001 (P3-3)

Figure 3-95 Riser card for HDD, two USB Type C ports, and accelerator board



Riser card for HDD, two USB Type C ports, and accelerator board

Table 3-46 Riser card for HDD, two USB Type C ports, and accelerator board connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Riser3-J1	HDD	HDD	500GB hard disk drive 933853-010
Riser3-J4	USB port	-	-
Riser3-J5	USB port	-	-
Riser3-J7	ACC-C1	PCA	3SJ30-60001
Riser3-C1	Main-J15	PCA	3SJ02-60001

Accelerator

Learn about the accelerator.

The accelerator enhances digital signal processing (DSP) and Optical Character Recognition (OCR) performance supporting the z-bundle. This module interfaces with the riser card.

- Accelerator part number: 6HN30-67001 (P4)

Figure 3-96 Accelerator

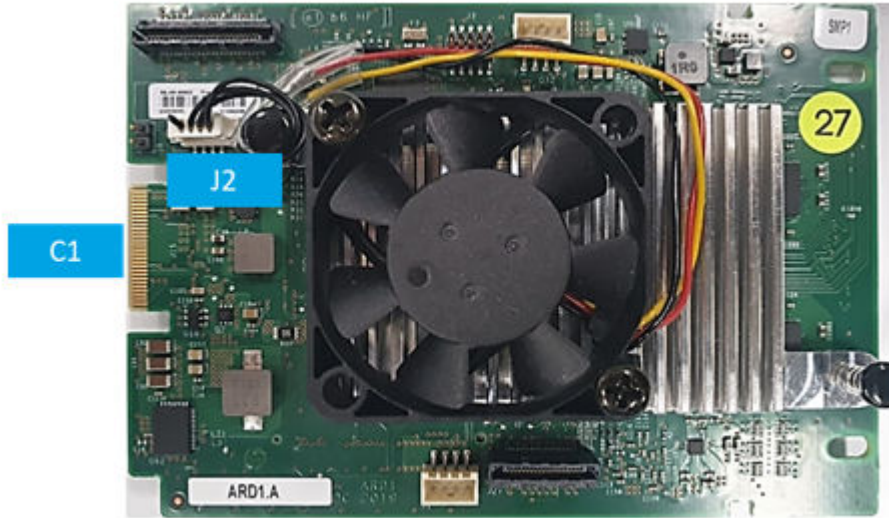


Table 3-47 Accelerator connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Acc-J2	Fan	-	-
Acc-C1	Riser3-J7	PCA	3SJ02-60001

Hard disk drive

Learn about the hard disk drive.

A 500GB hard disk drive is initially installed in the machine to save operating system and machine data which operates the printer system.

- Hard disk drive part number: 933853-010 (P5)

Figure 3-97 Hard disk, 933853-010 (Toshiba)



Hard disk, 933853-010 (Toshiba)

Table 3-48 Hard disk connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Hard disk	Riser1-J1	-	-
	Riser2-J1		
	Riser3-J1		

USB hub PCA

Learn about the USB hub PCA.

USB Hub PCA is used to interface with the formatter, walkup USB port, HIP2 and keyboard options. It interfaces through USB2.0 communication.

- USB hub PCA part number: 3SJ04-60002 (P6)

Figure 3-98 Hub Board PCA



Table 3-49 USB hub PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
USB-J1	Main-J4 (MX3/4)	USB2.0 Type-B	JC39-02780A (MX3)
	Main-J9 (MX7)		5QJ94-50002 (MX4)
			5QK03-50006 (MX7)
USB-J2	HIP2 (MX4)	USB2.0 Mini-B	
USB-J3	Walkup USB port	USB2.0 Type-A	
USB-J4	HIP2 (MX7)	USB2.0 Mini-B	
USB-J5	Keyboard-J1	USB2.0 Type-A	5QK03-50017

Island of data (IOD)

Learn about the island of data (IOD).

The IOD PCA has two EEPROMs and one RTC battery.

One EEPROM stores the machine configuration data and the engine control data. These data are used for all system operation (system parameter, device status, tech information, and service information).

The RTC battery supplies power to store time information even when the machine power is turned off. The RTC battery (CR2032) needs to be replaced when the time information of the machine is not saved.

- Island of data (IOD) part number: 3SJ06-60001 (P7)

NOTE: If IOD is removed from Formatter by replacing IOD or Formatter, the date and time of the product stored in Formatter will be deleted. In this case, be sure to set the date and time again after restarting the product.

Figure 3-99 Island of data (IOD)

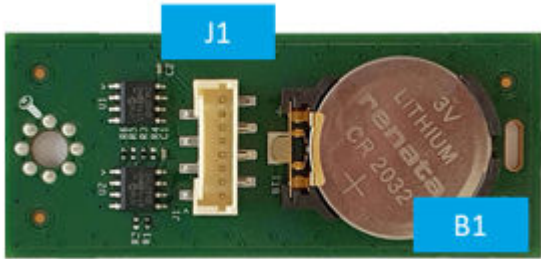


Table 3-50 Island of data (IOD) connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
IOD-J1	Main-J39	8pin	JC39-02823A
IOD-B1	Battery	CR2032	-

Echo PCA

Learn about the echo PCA.

The echo PCA is used for Smart Device Service (SDS). This PCA collects internal acoustics information via microphone for the system diagnosis.

- Echo PCA part number: T3U64-60001 (P8)
- Rivet echo PCA part number: 6ER04-40034 (Callout 1)

Figure 3-100 Echo PCA

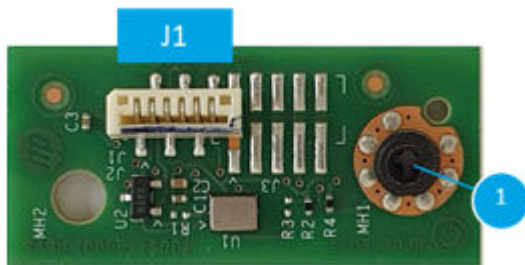


Table 3-51 Echo PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Echo-J1	Main-J30	6pin	3SJ11-60108

Power key PCA

Learn about the power key PCA.

The power key PCA is used to implement the soft-power switch.

- Power key PCA part number: 3SJ33-60007 (P13)

Figure 3-101 Power key PCA

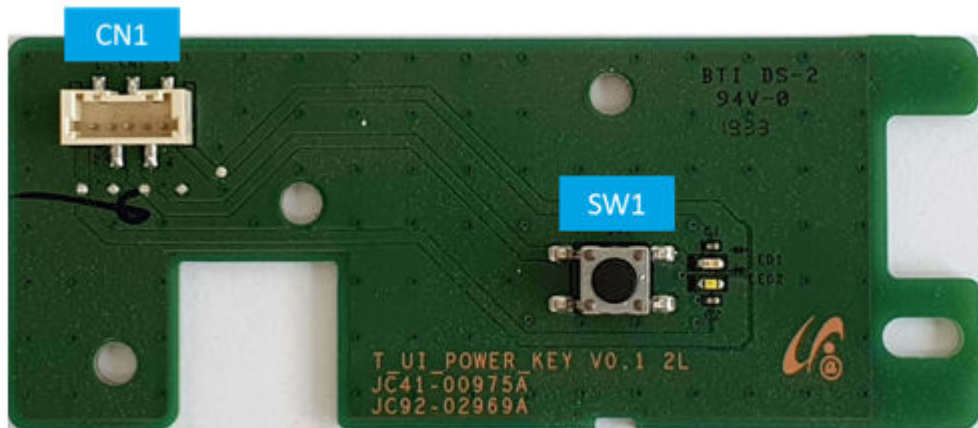


Table 3-52 Power key PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Power-CN1	Main-J1	5pin	JC39-02829A
Power-SW1	-	Switch	-

Keyboard PCA

Learn about the keyboard PCA.

The keyboard PCA an optional part which is used to connect with the keyboard assembly and the printer. It interfaces with the USB hub PCA through USB mini communication.

- Keyboard PCA part number: 5QK47-60001 (P13)
- Keyboard assembly – US English: JC93-01742A (U60-1)
- Keyboard assembly – UK English: JC93-01743A (U60-2)

Figure 3-102 Keyboard PCA

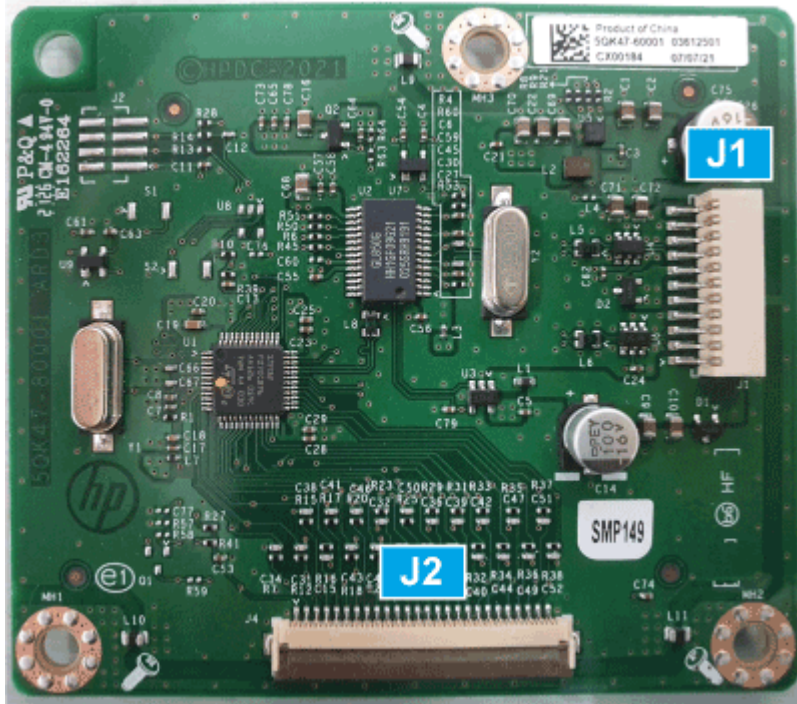


Table 3-53 Keyboard PCA

CN-number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
-	USB-J4		
Key-J1			
Key-J2	Keypad	26 pin (FFC)	5851-6603 (Keypad-US) 5851-6604 (Keypad-UK)

Figure 3-103 Keyboard assembly



Table 3-54 Keyboard PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Key-J1	USB-J4	11pin	5QK03-50010
Key-J4	Keypad	FFC 26pin	5851-6603 (Keypad-US) 5851-6604 (Keypad-UK)

Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA

Learn about the Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA.

The Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA detects the waste toner level of the toner collection unit.

- TCU full sensor PCA part number: JC92-02471A (S32)

Figure 3-104 TCU full sensor PCA

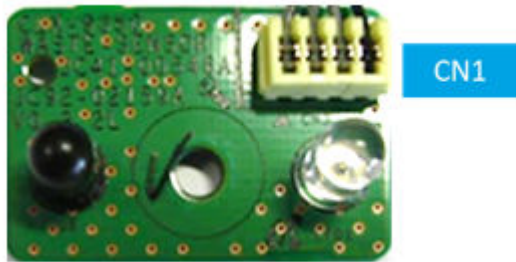


Table 3-55 TCU full sensor PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
TCU-CN1	Main-J6	4pin	JC39-02815A

Paper size sensor PCA

Learn about the Paper size sensor PCA.

The paper size sensor PCA is used to detect the size of the paper in the tray.

- Paper size sensor PCA part number: JC92-02622A

Figure 3-105 Paper size sensor PCA



Table 3-56 Paper size sensor PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Paper-CN3	Main-J49	4pin	5QK03-50008

Drum CRUM PCA

Learn about the drum CRUM PCA.

The drum CRUM PCA includes an IC chip for drum unit operation and life cycle counting.

- Drum CRUM PCA part number: 3SJ07-60001 (P15)

Figure 3-106 Drum CRUM PCA

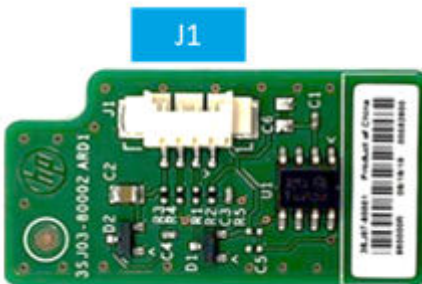


Table 3-57 Drum CRUM PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
DCRUM-J1	Main-J42	4pin	JC39-02256A

Toner Cartridge CRUM PCA

Learn about the toner cartridge CRUM PCA.

The Toner Cartridge CRUM PCA includes an IC chip for toner cartridge operation and cycle counting.

- Toner cartridge CRUM PCA part number: 3SJ07-60001

Figure 3-107 Toner Cartridge CRUM PCA

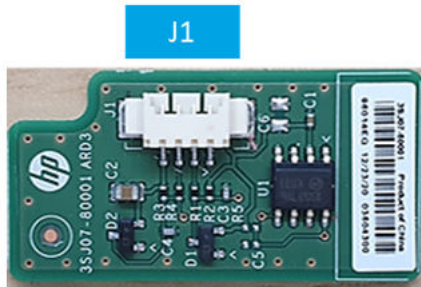


Table 3-58 Drum CRUM PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
DCRUM-J1	Main-J41	4pin	JC39-02261A

Eraser PCA

Learn about the eraser PCA.

The eraser PCA has one LED. The LED is used for erasing the negative charges on the surface of the drum after printing.

- Eraser PCA part number: JC92-02744A

Figure 3-108 Eraser PCA



Table 3-59 Eraser PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Eraser-J1	Main-J41	3 pin	J39-02835A

Fuser CRUM PCA

Learn about the fuser CRUM PCA.

The fuser CRUM PCA includes an IC chip for maintaining the fuser unit life cycle counting. It also provides a connection interface for the fuser gap sensor.

- Fuser CRUM PCA part number: 6CF14-60001

Figure 3-109 Fuser CRUM PCA



Table 3-60 Fuser CRUM PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Fuser-CN1	Fuser EEPROM, fuser gap sensor interface	5 pin	NA
Fuser-CN2	Fuser gap sensor	3 pin	NA

Control panel PCA

Learn about the control panel PCA.

The control panel PCA manages the control panel operation communicating with the formatter.

- Control panel base PCA part number: 3SJ15-60001
- Control panel 10.1 inches PCA part number: 5QK42-60001
- Control panel 8 inches PCA part number: 3SJ15-60002

Figure 3-110 Control panel base PCA

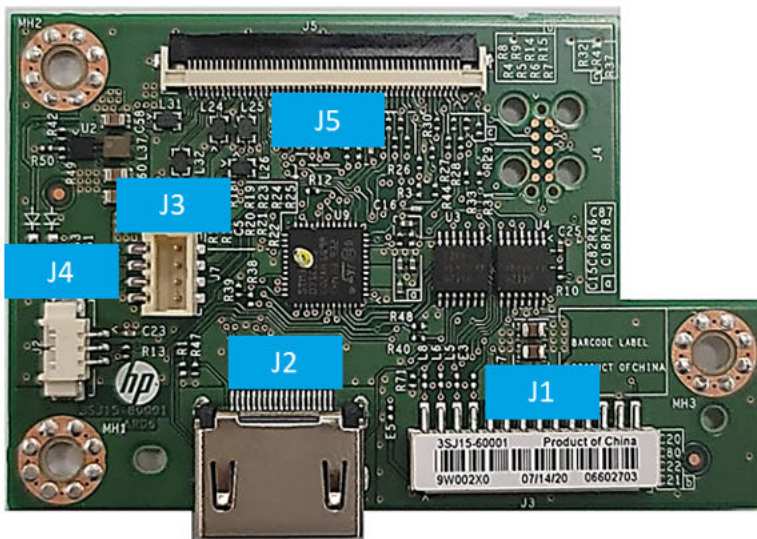


Table 3-61 Control panel base PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
CP-J1	Main-J1	14 pin	1254-3368
CP-J2	Main-J2	19 pin	1254-4067
CP-J3	Micom (STM32)	10 pin	0960-3860

Table 3-61 Control panel base PCA connections (continued)

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
CP-J4	RFID CP10.1-J1	3 pin	1253-8237
CP-J5	CP8-J1	50 pin	1254-4496

Control Panel 10.1 Inches PCA

Learn about the control panel 10.1 inches PCA.

Figure 3-111 Control Panel 10.1 inches PCA

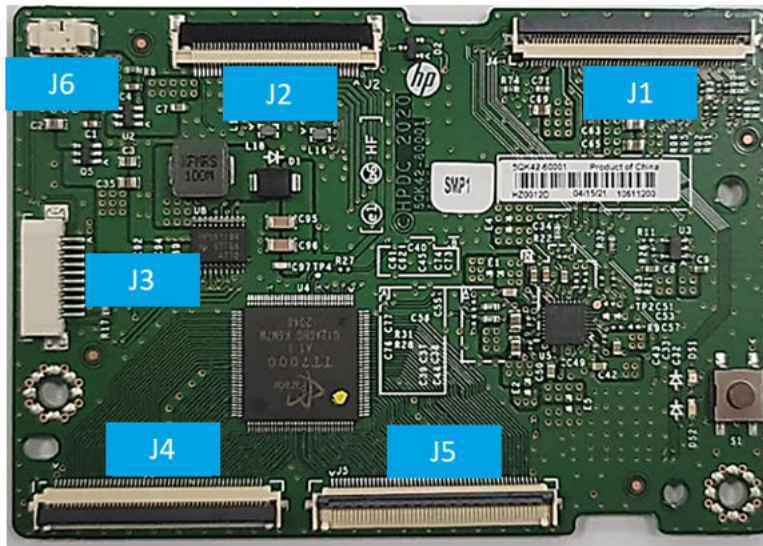


Table 3-62 Control Panel 10.1 inches PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
CP10.1-J1	CP-J5	50 pin	1254-4496
CP10.1-J2	LCD	40 pin	1254-3213
CP10.1-J3	Touch IC	10 pin	1253-7348
CP10.1-J4/J5	Touch screen panel	50 pin	1254-4496
CP10.1-J6	Speaker	2 pin	1254-1607

Control Panel 8 Inches PCA

Learn about the control panel 8 inches PCA.

Figure 3-112 Control Panel 8 inches PCA

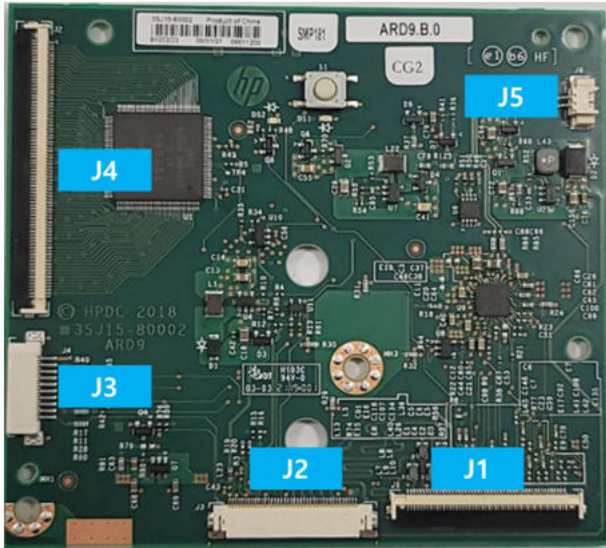


Table 3-63 Control Panel 8 inches PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
CP8-J1	CP-J5	50 pin	1254-4496
CP8-J2	LCD	40 pin	1254-0737
CP8-J3	Touch IC	10 pin	1253-7348
CP8-J4	TSP	80 pin	1254-4475
CP8-J5	Speaker	2 pin	1254-1607

High-voltage power supply (HVPS)

Learn about the high-voltage power supply (HVPS).

The high-voltage power supply (HVPS) PCA generates 3 high-voltage channels, which include DEV AC/DC, THV+/-, MHV.

- High-voltage power supply (HVPS): 5QK09-60001

Figure 3-113 HVPS

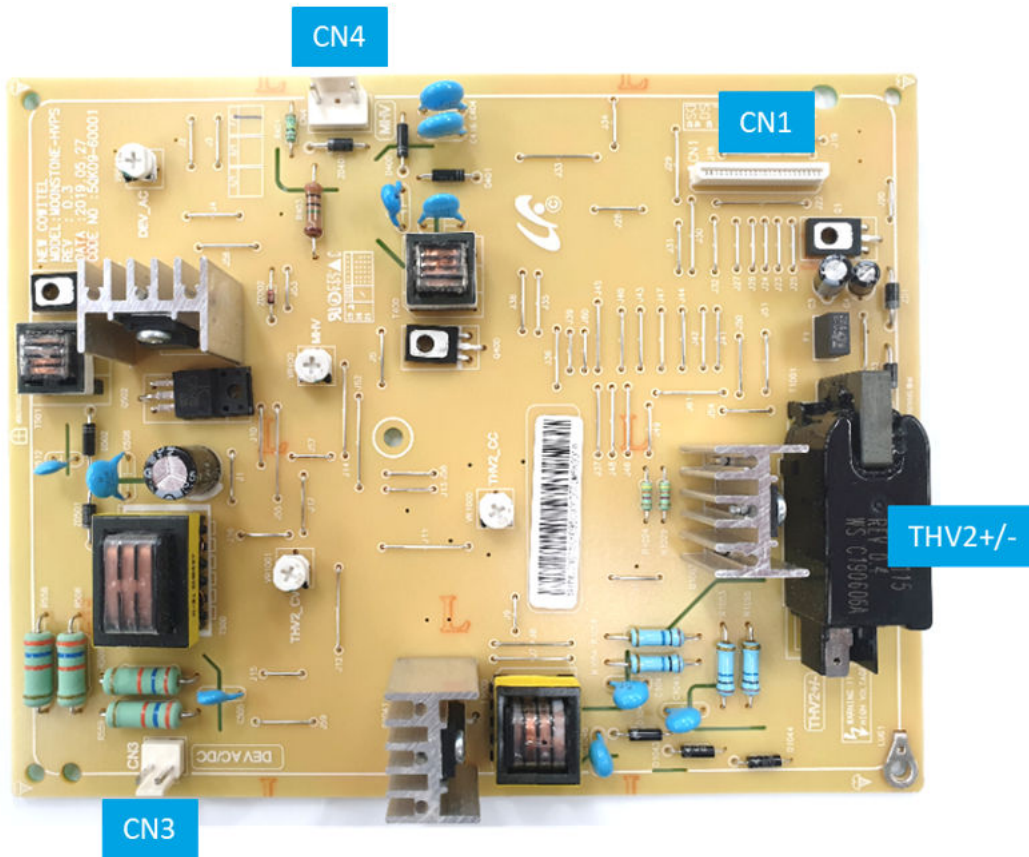


Table 3-64 HVPS connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when disconnected
HVPS-CN1	Main-J52	24pin, FFC	JC39-02250A	Bland page printed
HVPS-CN3	Developer AC/DC	2 pin	JC39-02248A	63.00.01
HVPS-CN4	Charge roller, saw	2 pin	JC39-02247A	Light image
HVPS-THV2+/-	Paper transfer unit	1 pin	JC39-02249A	

Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Learn about the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

The low-voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies the electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

- Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) part number: (110V) JC44-00149C, (220V) JC44-00150C

Figure 3-114 LVPS

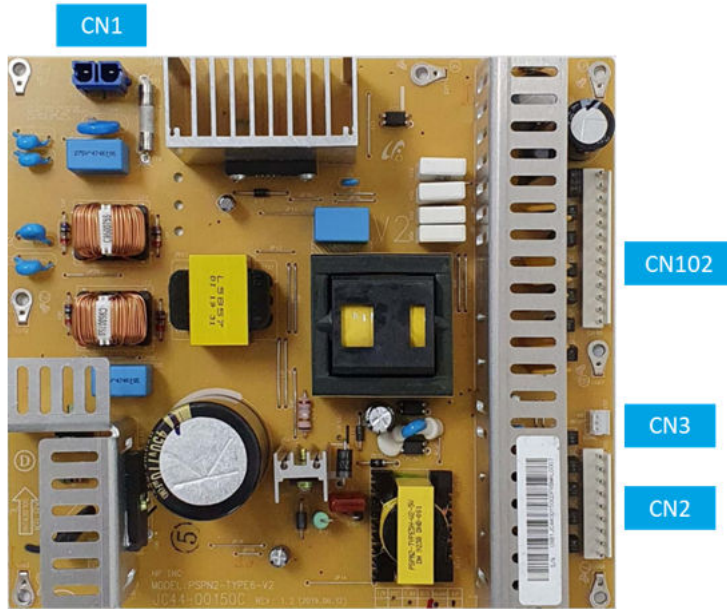


Table 3-65 LVPS connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when disconnected
LVPS-CN1	FDB-CN7	2pin	JC39-02193A	No power supply
LVPS-CN2	Main-J60	9 pin	JC39-02808A	30.01/44 63.00.20
LVPS-CN3	Main-J60	3 pin	JC39-02808A	30.01/44 63.00.20
LVPS-CN102	Main-J49	13 pin	JC39-02814A	

Fuser drive board (FDB)

Learn about the fuser drive board (FDB).

The fuser drive board (FDB) supplies the voltage to fuser AC, heater, and the formatter.

- Fuser drive board (FDB) part number: (110V) JC44-00235C, (220V) JC44-00236C

Figure 3-115 Fuser drive board (FDB)

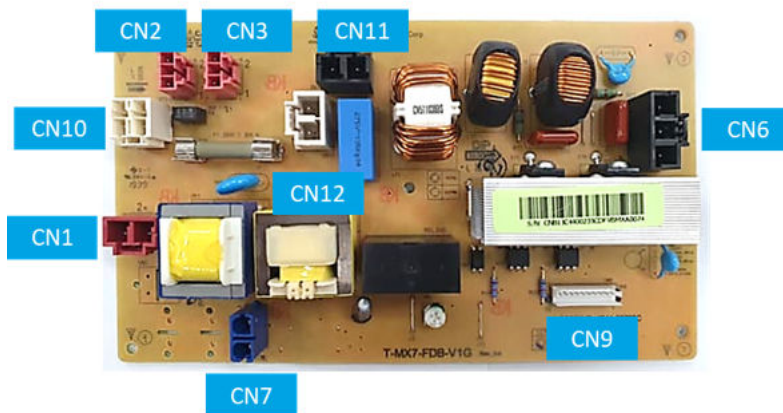


Table 3-66 FDB connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when not connected
FDB-CN1	AC inlet Base printer tray	2 pin	JC39-02803A	No power supply
FDB-CN2	Heater	3 pin	JC39-02196A	
FDB-CN3	DCF, HCI tray heater	3 pin	JC39-02187A	
FDB-CN6	Fuser heating lamp	3 pin	JC39-02809A	50.FF.01
FDB-CN7	LVPS-CN1	2 pin	JC39-02818A	No power supply
FDB-CN9	Main-J49	10 pin	JC39-02845A	50.FF.0E
FDB-CN10	Tray heater switch	4 pin	JC39-02197A	
FDB-CN11	Reactor	2 pin	(220V) JC27-00009A (110V) JC27-00012A	
FDB-CN12	Reactor	2 pin	(220V) JC27-00009A (110V) JC27-00012A	

Integrated Scan Asset

You will learn more about the integrated scan asset (ISA).

Integrated scan asset (ISA) is a device that scans a user's document and allows it to be saved to a file or printed. This machine consists of an Auto Document Feeder (ADF) that can scan a large batch of documents automatically, and a Platen that scans documents one by one from the flatbed.

Automatic document feeder system: 300sh Flow ADF

You will learn more about Automatic document feeder system: 300sh Flow ADF.

ADF cover

Learn about the ADF cover.

Figure 3-116 ADF cover

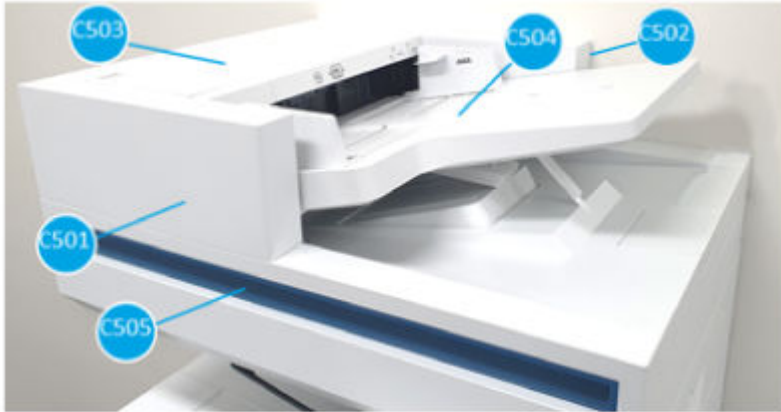


Table 3-67 ADF cover

Callout	Part name	Part number
C501	ADF front cover	5QJ90-40049
C502	ADF rear cover	5QJ90-40041
C503	ADF top cover	5QJ90-40054
C504	ADF input tray	Z9Y05-60031
C505	ADF CMF panel	5QJ90-40056

ADF unit

Learn about the ADF unit.

Figure 3-117 ADF unit, view 1

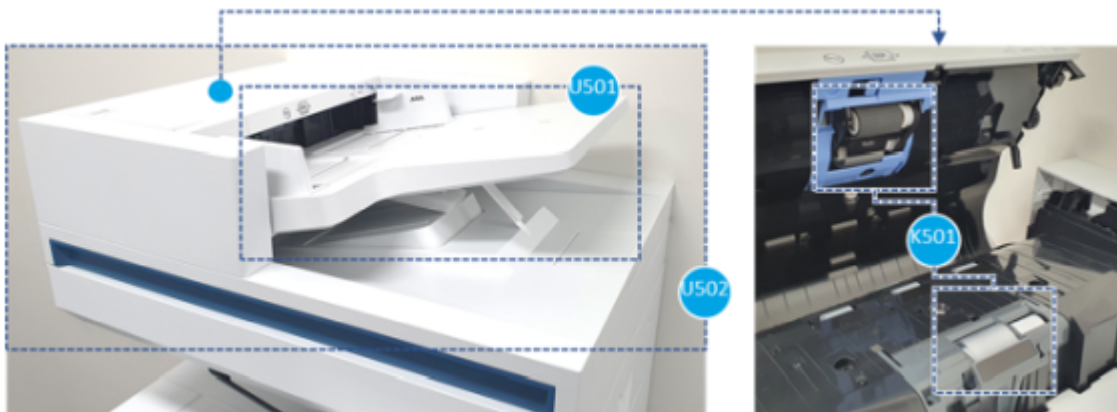


Table 3-68 ADF unit, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number
U501	300 sheet flow ADF	5QJ90-61042
U502	ADF tray upper assembly	Z9Y05-60032
K501	ADF roller kit	5RC00-67001

Figure 3-118 ADF unit, view 2

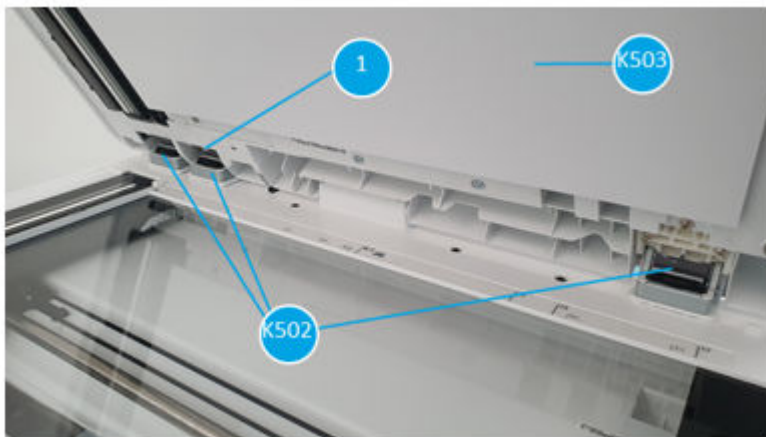


Table 3-69 ADF unit, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number
K502	Hinge left	Z9Y05-60014
	Hinge middle	Z9Y05-60015
	Hinge right	Z9Y05-60013
1	ADF hinge damper module	Z9Y05-60016
K503	ADF white backing kit	5QK08-67005

ADF system overview

You will learn more about ADF system overview.

300-sheet ADF workflow

Learn about the ADF workflow.

Figure 3-119 ADF workflow

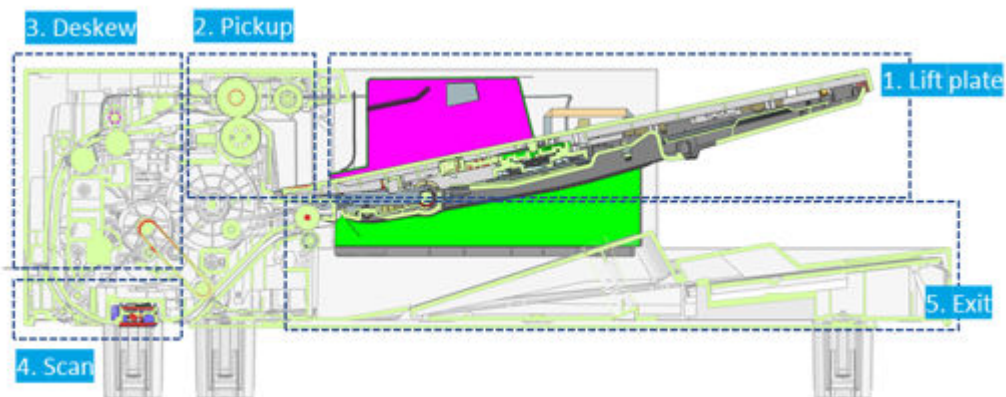


Table 3-70 ADF workflow

Callout	Unit name	Description
1	Lift plate	Moves an original document upward so that it is on the pickup paper path
2	Pickup	Picks up an original document to the deskew unit inside the ADF
3	Deskew	Adjusts the skew of the original document
4	Scan	Scans an original document
5	Exit	Discards scanned documents to the ADF output bin

ADF sensors

Learn about the ADF sensors.

Figure 3-120 ADF sensors, view 1

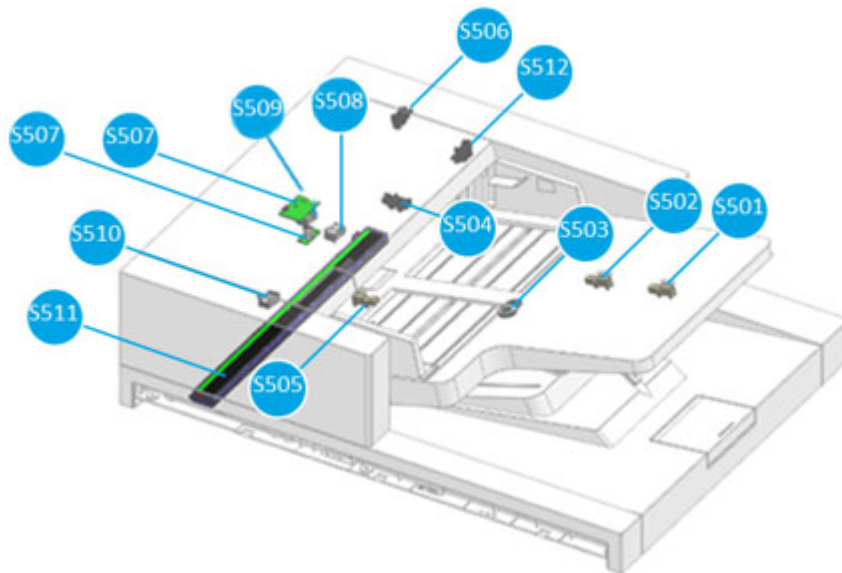


Table 3-71 ADF sensors, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S501	ADF paper long size sensor	NA	Checks the length size of paper
S502	ADF paper short size sensor	NA	Checks the length size of paper
S503	ADF paper width sensor	NA	Checks the width size of paper
S504	ADF lift sensor	NA	Checks the pickup ready position of the paper
S505	ADF paper present sensor	NA	Checks whether there is no paper on lift plate
S506	ADF pick lift sensor	NA	Checks the position of the pickup roller
S507	ADF multi feed sensor	NA	Checks the multi feeding of paper
S508	ADF pick success sensor	NA	Check the paper location between the forward roller and the deskew roller
S509	ADF deskew sensor	NA	Checks the paper arrival at the deskew roller and sets the time to start the deskew roller

Table 3-71 ADF sensors, view 1 (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S510	ADF top of page sensor	NA	Checks whether the paper is arrived at the sensor. Then determines the starting point of the document scanning.
S511	ADF image scanner	NA	Scans the back side of the paper
S512	ADF cover sensor	NA	Checks whether the ADF cover is open or closed

Figure 3-121 ADF sensors, view 2

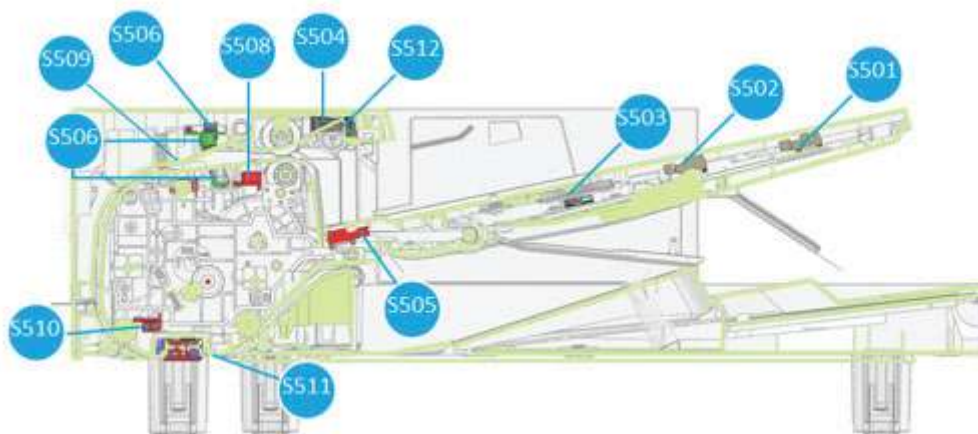


Table 3-72 ADF sensors, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S501	ADF paper long size sensor	NA	Checks the length size of paper
S502	ADF paper short size sensor	NA	Checks the length size of paper
S503	ADF paper width sensor	NA	Checks the width size of paper
S504	ADF lift sensor	NA	Checks the pickup ready position of the paper
S505	ADF paper present sensor	NA	Checks whether there is paper on the lift plate
S506	ADF pick lift sensor	NA	Checks the position of the pickup roller
S508	ADF pick success sensor	NA	Checks the paper location between the forward roller and the deskew roller
S509	ADF deskew sensor	NA	Checks the paper arrival at the deskew roller and sets the time to start the deskew roller
S510	ADF top of page sensor	NA	Checks whether the paper is arrived at the sensor. Then determines the starting point of the document scanning.
S511	ADF image scanner	NA	Scans the back side of the paper
S512	ADF cover sensor	NA	Checks whether the ADF cover is open or closed

ADF system motor / solenoid / roller

Learn about the ADF system motor / solenoid / roller.

Figure 3-122 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 1

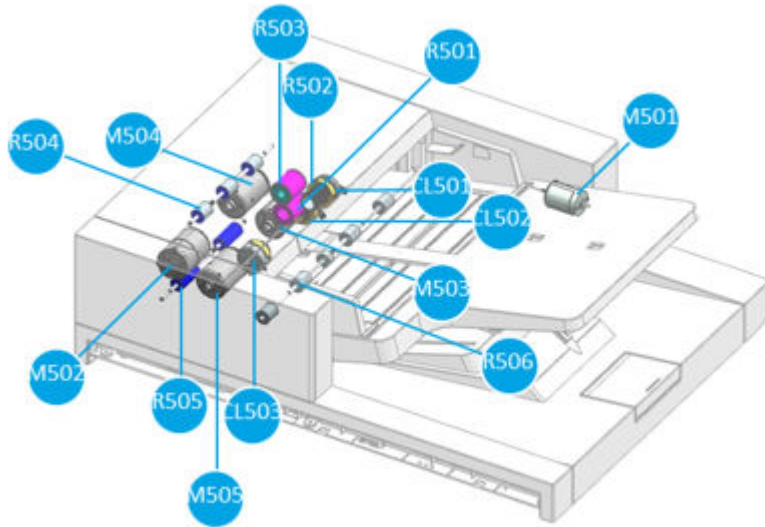


Table 3-73 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M501	ADF lift plate motor	NA	Moves the lift plate up and down
M502	ADF retard motor	NA	Drives the separation roller
R501	ADF separation roller	NA	Prevents multiple pages from feeding in contact with the forward roller
CL502	ADF pickup up/down clutch	NA	Moves the pickup roller down to contact with paper
M503	ADF deskew motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the deskew roller
CL501	ADF pickup clutch	NA	Connects the driving force from the feed motor to the pickup roller and the forward roller
R502	ADF pickup roller	NA	Picks up paper
R503	ADF forward roller	NA	Moves paper out of the pickup roller to the inside of the ADF
CL503	ADF deskew clutch	NA	Connects driving force from the deskew motor to the deskew roller
R504	ADF deskew roller	NA	Aligns the leading edge straight, moves the paper to the scan area
M504	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the scan roller
R505	ADF scan roller	NA	Sends paper from the deskew roller to the exit roller
M505	ADF exit motor	NA	Drives the exit roller
R506	ADF exit roller	NA	Discharges the paper

Figure 3-123 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 2

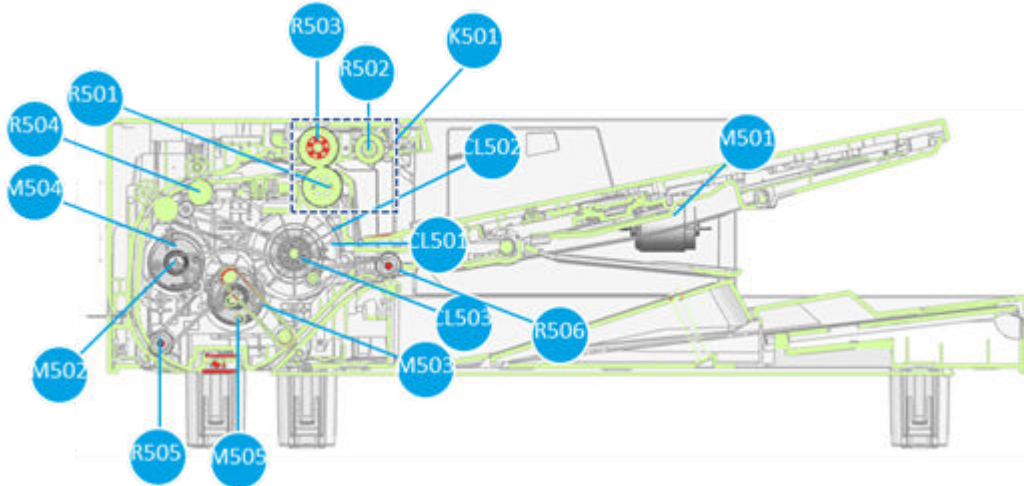


Table 3-74 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M501	ADF lift plate motor	NA	Moves the lift plate up and down
M502	ADF retard motor	NA	Drives the separation roller
R501	ADF separation roller	NA	Prevents multiple papers from feeding in contact with the forward roller
CL502	ADF pickup up/down clutch	NA	Moves the pickup roller down to contact with paper
M503	ADF deskew motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the deskew roller
CL501	ADF pickup clutch	NA	Connects the driving force from the feed motor to the pickup roller and the forward roller
R502	ADF pickup roller	NA	Picks up paper
R503	ADF forward roller	NA	Moves paper from the pickup roller to the inside of the ADF
CL503	ADF deskew clutch	NA	Connects driving force from the deskew motor to the deskew roller
R504	ADF deskew roller	NA	Aligns the leading edge straight, moves the paper to the scan area
M504	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the scan roller
R505	ADF scan roller	NA	Sends the paper from the deskew roller to the exit roller
M505	ADF exit motor	NA	Drives the exit roller
R506	ADF exit roller	NA	Discharges the paper
K501	ADF roller kit	5RC00-67001	Includes pickup, forward, and separation rollers

Lift plate unit

Learn about the lift plate unit.

Figure 3-124 Overview of lift plate unit

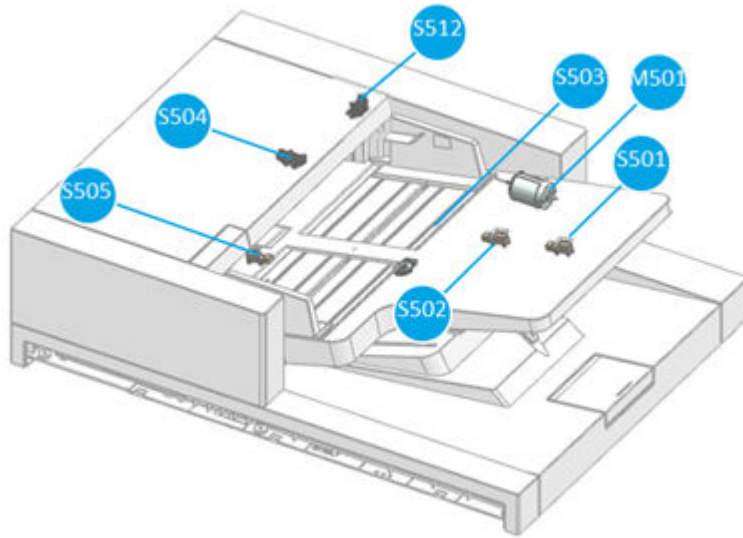


Table 3-75 Overview of lift plate unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S501	ADF paper long size sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in length
S502	ADF paper short size sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in length
S503	ADF paper width sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in width
S504	ADF lift sensor	NA	Checks the pickup ready position of the paper
S505	ADF paper present sensor	NA	Checks whether there is no paper on the lift plate
M501	ADF lift plate motor	NA	Moves the lift plate up and down
S512	ADF cover sensor	NA	Checks whether the ADF cover is open or closed

Figure 3-125 Detail view of lift plate unit

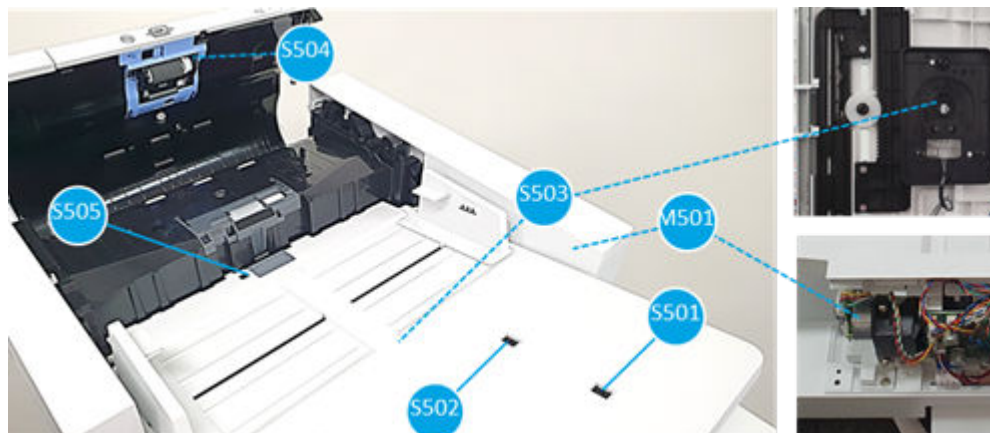


Table 3-76 Detail view of lift plate unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S501	ADF paper long size sensor	NAa	Checks the size of paper in length

Table 3-76 Detail view of lift plate unit (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S502	ADF paper short size sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in length
S503	ADF paper width sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in width
S504	ADF lift sensor	NA	Checks the pickup ready position of the paper
S505	ADF paper present sensor	NA	Checks whether there is no paper on the lift plate
M501	ADF lift plate motor	NA	Moves the lift plate up and down

Pickup unit

Learn about the pickup unit.

The pickup unit takes a paper out of the lift plate and moves it to the deskew roller.

The pickup down clutch moves the pickup roller downward. The paper rises by the movement of the lift plate, and for a certain period, the pickup roller moves upward so as not to touch the paper. The lift sensor detects where the pickup roller is located, then the lift plate stops. The pickup roller and the forward roller rotate by the deskew motor and the pickup clutch, and make the paper is moved forward between the forward roller and the separation roller. The forward roller and the separation roller rotate in the opposite directions to each other to prevent from multi-feeding. The separation roller is rotated by the retard motor.

The paper moves through the pick success sensor and the multi feed sensor to the deskew roller. During this process, the pick success sensor detects whether the paper position is correct, and then the multi feed sensor detects whether a multiple page of paper come from the pickup unit. If a multi-feeding error comes up, it returns to the lift plate to be picked up again.

Figure 3-126 Overview of pickup unit

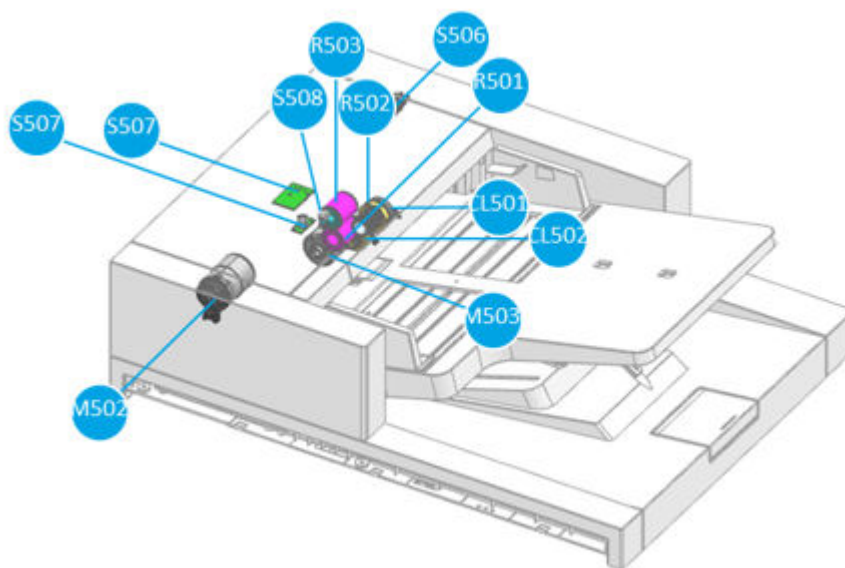


Table 3-77 Overview of pickup unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K501	ADF roller kit	5RC00-67001	Includes in the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the separation roller
CL501	ADF pickup up, down clutch	NA	Makes the pickup roller go down to contact with paper
M503	ADF deskew motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the deskew roller
CL502	ADF pickup clutch	NA	Connects the driving force from the feed motor to the pickup roller and the forward roller
R502	ADF pickup roller	NA	Picks up paper
R503	ADF forward roller	NA	Moves paper from the pickup roller to the ADF inside
M502	ADF retard motor	NA	Drives the separation roller
R501	ADF separation roller	NA	Prevents multiple pages from feeding in contact with the forward roller
S506	ADF pick lift sensor	NA	Checks the position of the pickup roller
S507	ADF multi feed sensor	NA	Checks the multi-feeding of paper
S508	ADF pick success sensor	NA	Checks the paper location between the forward roller and the deskew the roller

Figure 3-127 Detail view of pickup unit, view 1

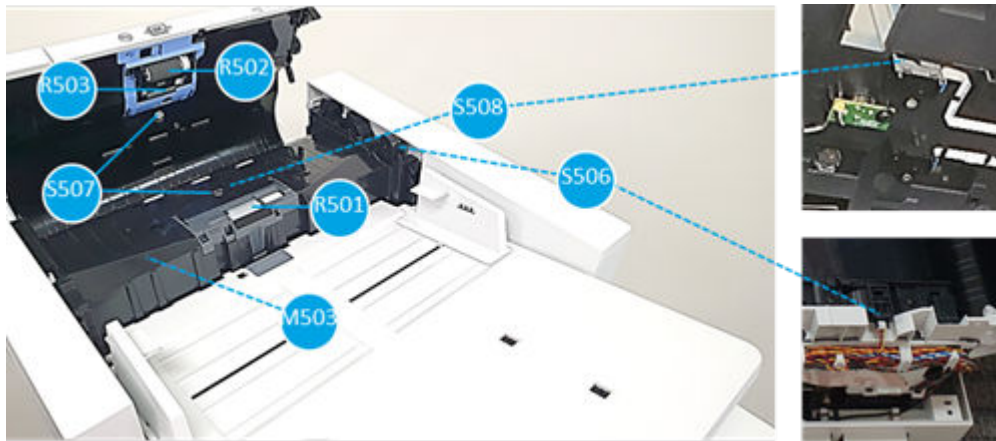


Table 3-78 Detail view of pickup unit, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M503	ADF deskew motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the deskew roller
R502	ADF pickup roller	NA	Picks up paper
R503	ADF forward roller	NA	Moves paper from the pickup roller to the ADF inside
R501	ADF separation roller	NA	Prevents multiple pages from feeding in contact with the forward roller
S506	ADF pick lift sensor	NA	Checks the position of the pickup roller
S507	ADF multi feed sensor	NA	Checks the multi-feeding of paper

Table 3-78 Detail view of pickup unit, view 1 (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S508	ADF pick success sensor	NA	Checks the paper location between the forward roller and the deskew the roller

Figure 3-128 Detail view of pickup unit, view 2

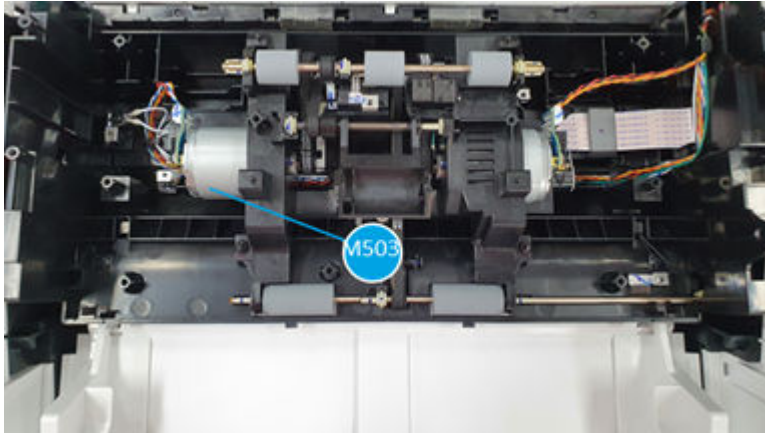


Table 3-79 Detail view of pickup unit, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M503	ADF deskew motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the deskew roller

Figure 3-129 Detail view of pickup unit, view 3

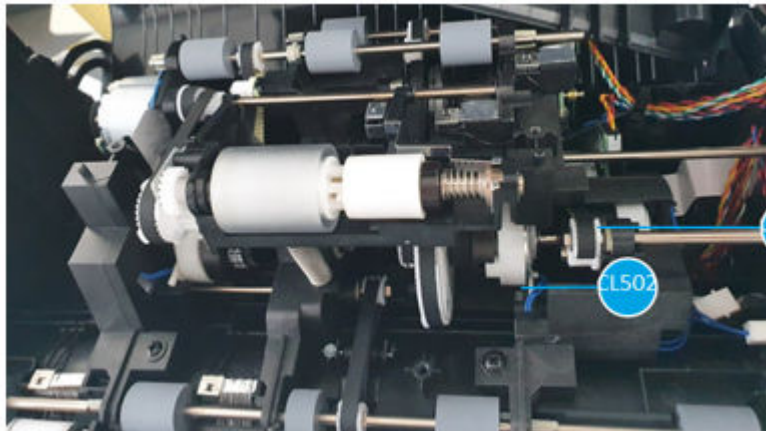


Table 3-80 Detail view of pickup unit, view 3

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
CL501	ADF pickup up, down clutch	NA	Makes the pickup roller go down to contact with paper
CL502	ADF pickup clutch	NA	Connects the driving force from the feed motor to the pickup roller and the forward roller

Deskew unit

Learn about the deskew unit.

The deskew unit receives a paper that has passed through the multi-feeding sensor, aligns the paper in the width direction and sends it to the scan roller. When a paper enters the deskew sensor, the deskew roller rotates after a certain period. The leading edge of the paper is aligned by the deskew roller since the forward roller sorts the paper with the stuck roller. During this process, the deskew motor and the deskew clutch rotate the deskew roller.

Figure 3-130 Overview of deskew unit

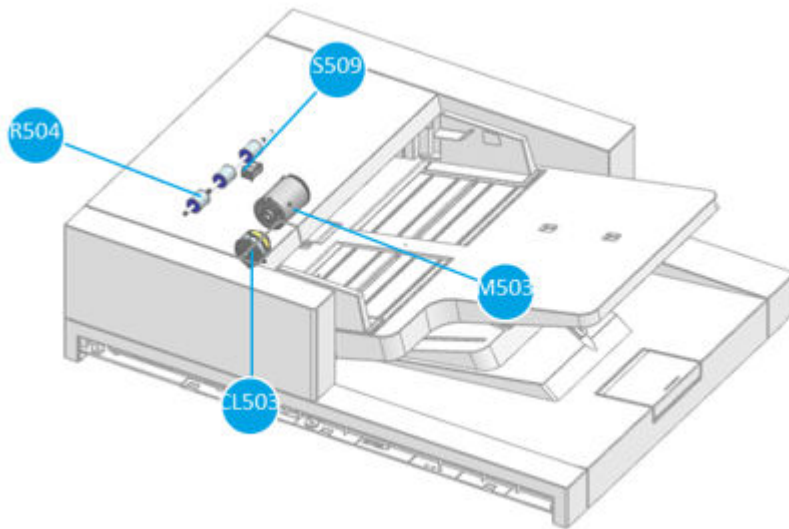


Table 3-81 Overview of deskew unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M503	ADF deskew motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the deskew roller
CL503	ADF deskew clutch	NA	Connects driving force from the deskew motor to the deskew roller
R504	ADF deskew roller	NA	Aligns the leading edge straight and move the paper to the scan area.
S509	ADF deskew sensor	NA	Checks the paper arrival at the deskew roller. And it sets the time to start the deskew roller

Figure 3-131 Detail view of deskew unit

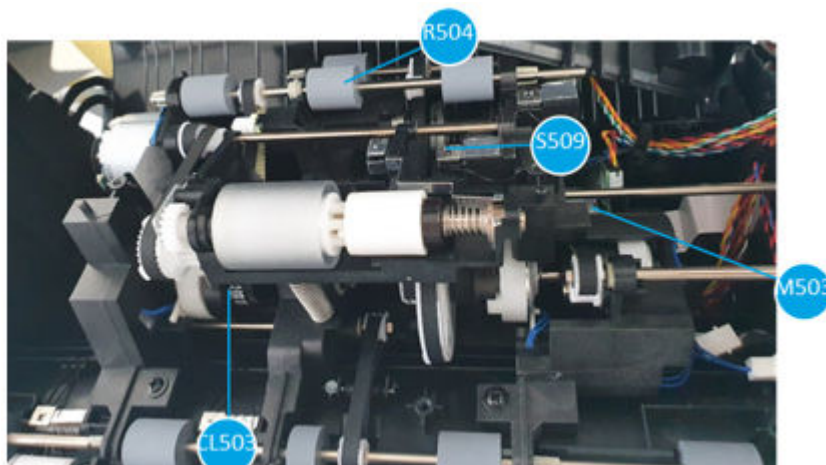


Table 3-82 Detail view of deskew unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M503	ADF deskew motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the deskew roller
CL503	ADF deskew clutch	NA	Connects driving force from the deskew motor to the deskew roller
R504	ADF deskew roller	NA	Aligns the leading edge straight and moves the paper to the scan area.
S509	ADF deskew sensor	NA	Checks the paper arrival at the deskew roller. And it sets the time to start the deskew roller

Scan and exit unit

Learn about the scan and exit unit.

The scan and exit unit receives a paper from the deskew roller, and then scans the image from the paper and discharges it to the out-bin.

A paper passes through the scan roller rotated by the feed motor. The top of page sensor detects whether the paper is correctly located and determines the starting point of the scanning. After the scanning process, the paper is discharged by the exit roller which rotates by the exit motor.

Figure 3-132 Overview of scan and exit unit

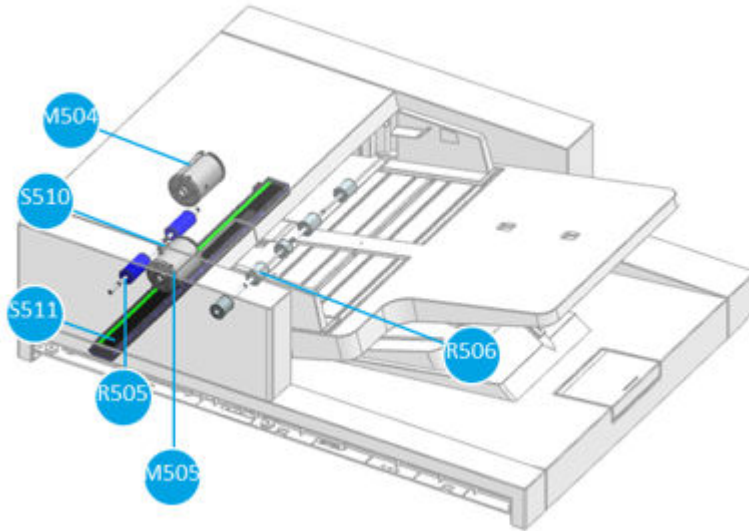


Table 3-83 Overview of scan and exit unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M504	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the scan roller
R505	ADF scan roller	NA	Sends a paper from the deskew roller to the exit roller
S510	ADF top of page sensor	NA	Checks whether paper arrived at the sensor, and then decides to start scanning
S511	ADF image scanner	Z9Y05-60047	Scans the back side of the paper
M505	ADF exit motor	NA	Drives the exit roller
R506	ADF exit motor	NA	Discharges the paper to the output bin

Figure 3-133 Detail view of scan and exit unit

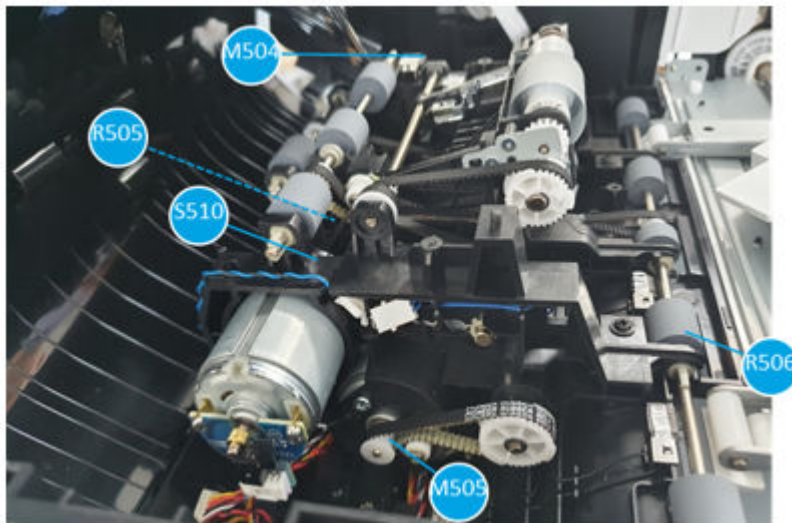


Table 3-84 Detail view of scan and exit unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M504	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the scan roller
R505	ADF scan roller	NA	Sends paper from the deskew roller to the exit roller
S510	ADF top of page sensor	NA	Checks whether paper arrived at the sensor, and then decides to start scanning
M505	ADF exit motor	NA	Drives the exit roller
R506	ADF exit roller	NA	Discharges paper to the output bin

Document feeder simplex operation

Learn about the document feeder simplex operation.

The following is the basic sequence of operation for a document feeder job.

1. The ADF cover sensor (callout S512) detects when the cover door is in the closed position.

Figure 3-134 Document feeder simplex operation, view 1



2. The ADF paper present sensor (callout 2) activates when paper is loaded onto the input tray. Then the paper length sensors (callout 4) and the paper width guide (callout 3) identify the paper size.

Figure 3-135 Document feeder simplex operation, view 2



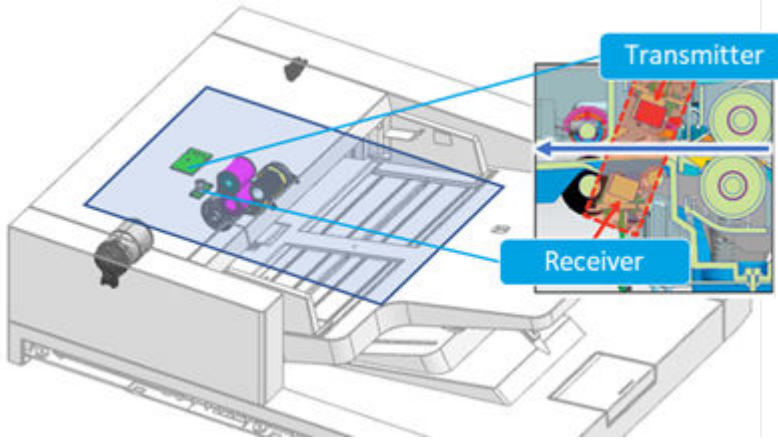
3. The ADF lift plate motor rotates to raise the lift plate and the pickup roller starts to pick up the loaded paper.

Figure 3-136 Document feeder simplex operation, view 3



4. The ADF multi feed (ultrasonic) sensor is activated when the leading edge of the media is driven past the sensor.

Figure 3-137 Document feeder simplex operation, view 4



5. The ADF deskew sensor activates when the leading edge of the paper passes it.
6. The leading edge of the paper drives into the nip point of the deskew drive roller and the deskew pinch rollers. This creates a curl at the leading edge of the paper (callout 5).

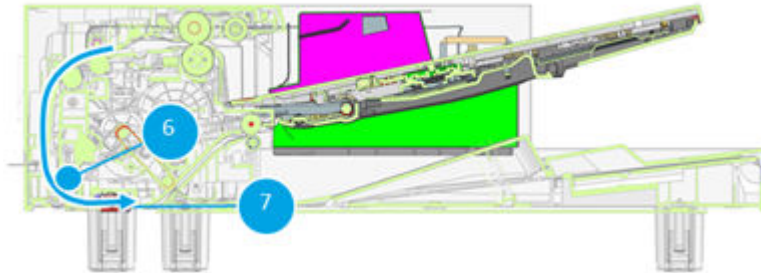
Figure 3-138 Document feeder simplex operation, view 5



7. The deskew motor rotates the deskew roller to pull the paper into the scan roller.

8. The pickup clutch stops the turning and allows both the pickup and forward roller to turn freely while the paper is pulled in by the deskew roller.
9. The feed motor drives the leading edge of the paper into the top of page sensor (callout 6). The scanner begins the scanning and the data retrieval process (callout 7).

Figure 3-139 Document feeder simplex operation, view 6



10. The ADF multi feeding (ultrasonic) sensor is deactivated when the trailing edge of the paper passes the sensor.
11. The exit motor rotates the exit roller. Paper is discharged to the output bin. The scanner ends the scanning and data retrieval process.
12. If the copy job is completed, the ADF paper present sensor is deactivated. The ADF pickup up down clutch raises the pick roller or if the copy job is not completed, the ADF paper present sensor still operates. The printer firmware detects additional pages in the input tray and the process repeats.

Deskew operation

Learn about the deskew operation.

Sliding side guides on the input tray make sure that the paper stack is correctly aligned at the center of the input tray when the paper is loaded in the tray. The correct position of the loaded paper is parallel with the direction of travel into the document feeder paper path.

The document feeder further reduces paper skew due to an improper loading of the paper in the input tray by buckling the paper to create a paper buffer.


The document feeder aligns with the leading edge of the paper, parallel with the deskew drive rollers before it is driven further into the document feeder paper path.

Figure 3-140 Deskew operation



Document feeder hinges operation

Learn about the document feeder hinges operation.

 **NOTE:** The left and the right document feeder hinges are different parts. During repairs, they must be clearly identified and installed in the correct orientation. The parts are essential so they should not be installed in the wrong position.

The document feeder hinges allow positioning the assembly vertically above the scanner glass to accommodate the placement of books and other objects up to 25 mm (1.0 in) in height on the scanner glass. The document feeder still closes (the bottom of the document feeder is kept parallel to the scanner glass) and allows the printer to operate.

The document feeder hinges provide the height adjustment of 25 mm (1.0 in) when a maximum downward force of 4.5 kg (10 lb) is applied at the front edge of the assembly, with the fulcrum (such as the spine of a book) centered on the scanner glass and parallel to its long axis.

The document feeder will withstand a downward force of at least 4.5 kg (10 lb) applied at the front edge center of the assembly—when the fulcrum (such as the spine of a book) is located anywhere on the scanner glass and parallel to its long axis—without breaking, deforming, detaching or experiencing performance degradation.

The document feeder hinges support the assembly in the open position and prevent the document feeder from suddenly closing with a damaging or in a loud manner.

The hinges can hold the document feeder static in all positions higher than 100 mm (3.93 in); measured at the front of the assembly. Less than 2.3 kg (5 lb) of force is required to open or close the document feeder.

The hinges allow the document feeder to open to a maximum angle of 65° from the horizontal position (this angle will not allow the printer to tip over).

Figure 3-141 Document feeder open (book mode)

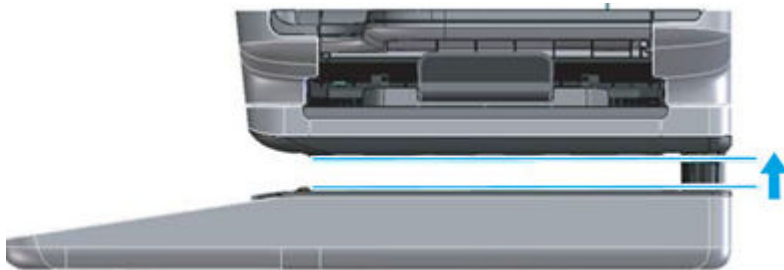


Figure 3-142 Document feeder open (maximum 65°)



ADF image scanner cleaning

Learn about cleaning the ADF image scanner.

Wipe the image scanner area with a soft cloth or microfiber. To maintain optimal document scanning performance without scanning image quality problems, the image scanner area should be cleaned periodically.

Figure 3-143 ADF image scanner cleaning



ADF PCA

Learn about the ADF PCA.

- 300sh Flow ADF part number: Z9Y05-60004 (P501)

Figure 3-144 ADF PCA connections

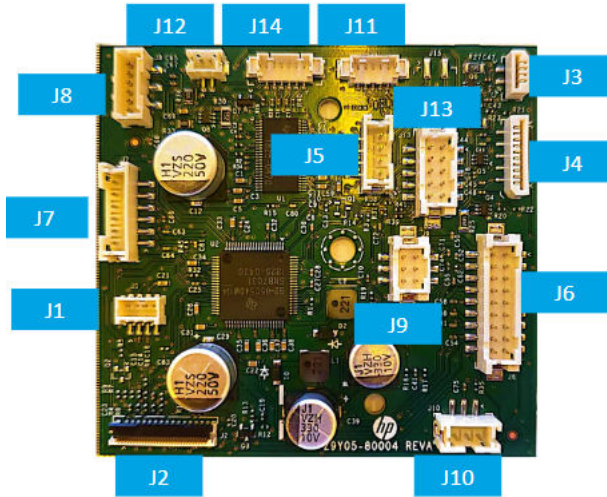



Table 3-85 ADF PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
ADFv-J1	Power inlet	4pin	Z9Y05-50003
ADFv-J2	Connecting with the platen	FFC 30pin	Z9Y05-50002
ADFv-J3	ADF top of page sensor	FFC 4pin	Z9Y05-50016
ADFv-J4	ADF pickup sensor ADF deskew sensor	FFC 10pin	Z9Y05-50013
ADFv-J5	ADF pick clutch ADF deskew clutch	4pin	Z9Y05-50022
ADFv-J6	ADF feed motor ADF deskew motor ADF exit motor	18pin	Z9Y05-50019
ADFv-J7	ADF lift motor	6pin	Z9Y05-50009
ADFv-J8	ADF retard motor	6pin	Z9Y05-50021
ADFv-J9	ADF paper long length sensor ADF paper short length sensor	6pin	Z9Y05-50010
ADFv-J10	ADF fan	3pin	-
ADFv-J11	ADF pick lift sensor	5pin	Z9Y05-50023
ADFv-J12	ADF USM transmitter	2pin	
ADFv-J13	ADF USM receiver ADF lift sensor	10pin	Z9Y05-50004
ADFv-J14	ADF cover sensor	6pin	Z9Y05-50011

Automatic document feeder system: 200sh Flow ADF, 200sh ADF

You will learn more about Automatic document feeder system: 200sh Flow ADF, 200sh ADF.

 **NOTE:** The 200sh Flow ADF is only for the E7xxx series printers. The E826/E877 series printers do not support the 200sh Flow ADF.

The E826/E877 series printers use the 300sh Flow ADF to support flow features.

ADF cover

Learn about the ADF cover.

Figure 3-145 ADF cover



Table 3-86 ADF cover

Callout	Part name	Part number
C601	ADF front cover	NA
C602	ADF rear cover	NA
C603	ADF top cover	NA
C604	ADF input tray	NA
C605	ADF CMF panel	5QJ90-40056

ADF unit

Learn about the ADF unit.

Figure 3-146 ADF unit, view 1



Table 3-87 ADF unit, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number
U602	200-sheet ADF ²	5QJ90-67011

Figure 3-147 ADF unit, view 2

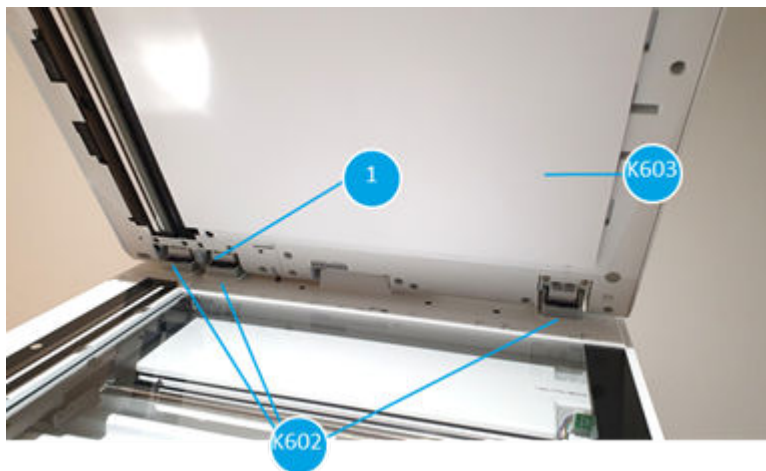



Table 3-88 ADF unit, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number
K602	ADF hinge kit	5QJ90-67004
1	ADF hinge damper module	5QJ90-67006
K603	ADF white backing kit	5QJ90-67005

 **NOTE:** The 200-sheet Flow ADF¹ and 200-sheet ADF² are all the same except for the ADF multi-feeding sensor installation.

¹200-sheet flow ADF: ADF multi-feeding sensor is installed

²200-sheet ADF: ADF multi-feeding sensor is not installed

ADF system overview

You will learn more about ADF system overview.

200-sheet ADF workflow

Learn about the ADF workflow.

Figure 3-148 ADF workflow

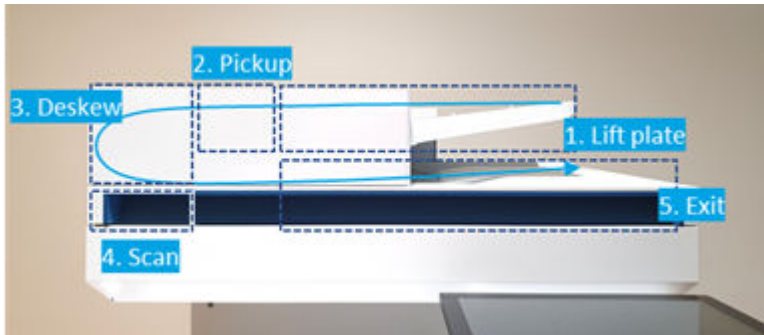


Table 3-89 ADF workflow

Callout	Unit name	Description
1	Lift plate	Moves an original document upward so that it is on the pickup paper path
2	Pickup	Picks up an original document to the deskew unit inside the ADF
3	Deskew	Adjusts the skew of the original document
4	Scan	Scan an original document
5	Exit	Discard scanned documents to the ADF out-bin

ADF sensors

Learn about the ADF sensors.

Figure 3-149 ADF sensors



Table 3-90 ADF sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S601	ADF paper long size sensor	NA	Checks the size of a paper in length
S602	ADF paper short size sensor	NA	Checks the size of a paper in length
S603	ADF paper width sensor	NA	Checks the size of a paper in width

Table 3-90 ADF sensors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S604	ADF lift sensor	NA	Checks the pickup ready position of a paper
S605	ADF paper present sensor	NA	Checks whether there is paper on lift plate
S606	ADF multi feed sensor	NA	Checks the multi feeding of paper
S607	ADF deskew sensor	NA	Checks the paper arrival at the deskew roller and sets the time to start the deskew roller
S608	ADF top of page sensor	NA	Checks whether the paper arrived at the sensor. Then determines the starting point of the document scanning
S609	ADF image scanner	NA	Scans the back side of the paper
S610	ADF cover sensor	NA	Checks whether the ADF cover is open or closed

ADF system motor / solenoid / roller

Learn about the ADF system motor / solenoid / roller.

Figure 3-150 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 1

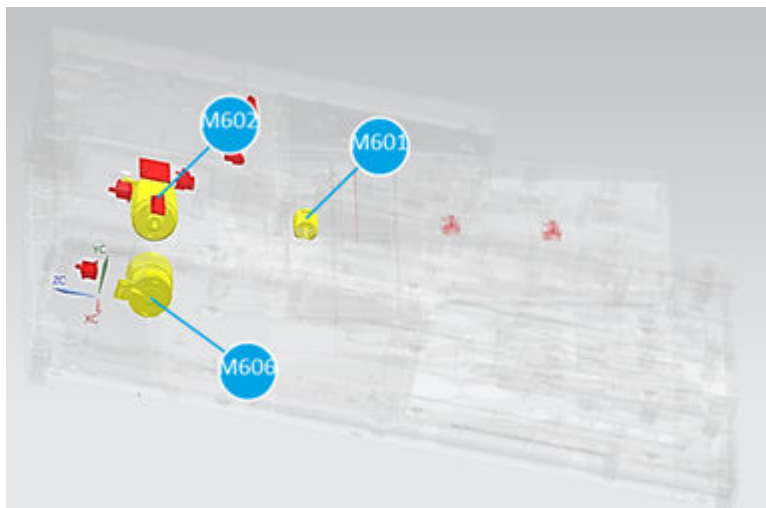


Table 3-91 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M601	ADF lift plate motor	NA	Moves the lift plate up and down
M602	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, the separation roller, the scan roller, and the exit roller
M606		NA	

Figure 3-151 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 2

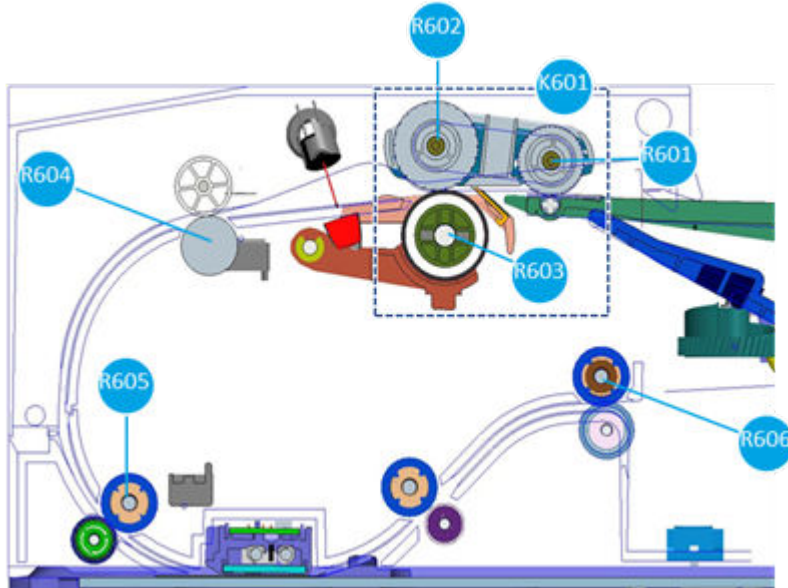


Table 3-92 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K601	ADF roller kit	5851-7202	Pickup, forward, and separation roller
R601	ADF pickup roller	NA	Pick up a paper
R602	ADF forward roller	NA	Move a paper out of the pickup roller to the inside of the ADF
R603	ADF separation roller	NA	Prevent multiple papers from feeding in contact with the forward roller
R604	ADF deskew roller	NA	Align the leading edge straight, move the paper to the scan area
R605	ADF scan roller	NA	Send the paper out of the deskew roller to the exit roller
R606	ADF exit roller	NA	Discharge the paper

Lift plate unit

Learn about the lift plate unit.

The lift plate unit is the place to store the original documents and lifts a paper up to touch the pickup roller.

When original documents are stacked on the tray, at first the paper present sensor checks whether there is no paper. Then the paper short size sensor, the paper long size sensor and the paper width sensor detects what size of paper is loaded on the tray. As scanning continues, the feed motor moves the lift plate up to ensure that the paper is picked up stably. When all of the paper runs out, the tray returns to the initial position.

Figure 3-152 Detail view of lift plate unit

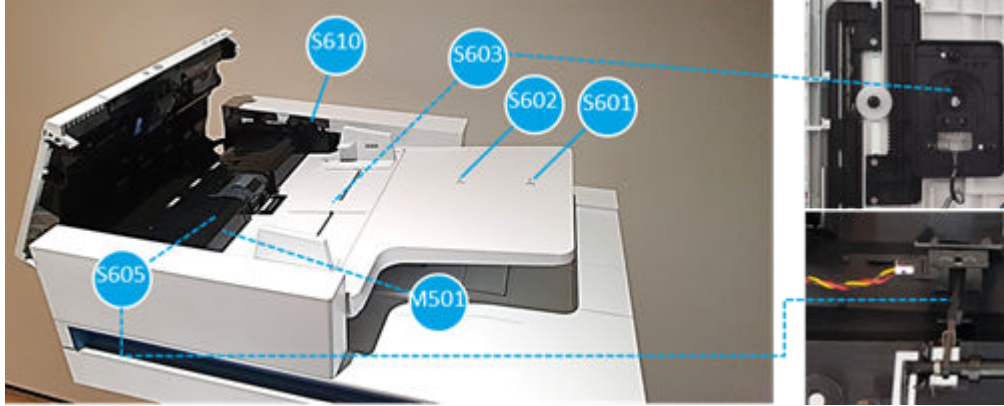


Table 3-93 Detail view of lift plate unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S601	ADF paper long size sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in length
S602	ADF paper short size sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in length
S603	ADF paper width sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in width
S605	ADF paper present sensor	NA	Checks whether there is paper on the lift plate
M501	ADF feed motor	NA	Moves the lift plate up and down
S610	ADF cover sensor	NA	Checks whether the ADF cover is open or closed

Pickup unit

Learn about the pickup unit.

The pickup unit takes a paper out of the lift plate and moves it to the deskew roller.

The pick-up down clutch moves the pickup roller downward. The paper rises by the movement of the lift plate, and for a certain period, the pickup roller moves upward so as not to touch the paper. The lift sensor detects where the pickup roller is located, then the lift plate stops. The pickup roller, the forward roller, and the separation roller are rotated by the feed motor and make the paper to move forward. At this moment, the forward roller and the separation roller rotate in the opposite directions of each other to prevent from multi-feeding.

The paper moves through the multi feed sensor to the deskew roller. During this process, the multi feed sensor detects whether a multiple page of paper come from the pickup unit. If a multi-feeding error comes up, it returns to the lift plate to be picked up again.

Figure 3-153 Detail view of pickup unit, view 1

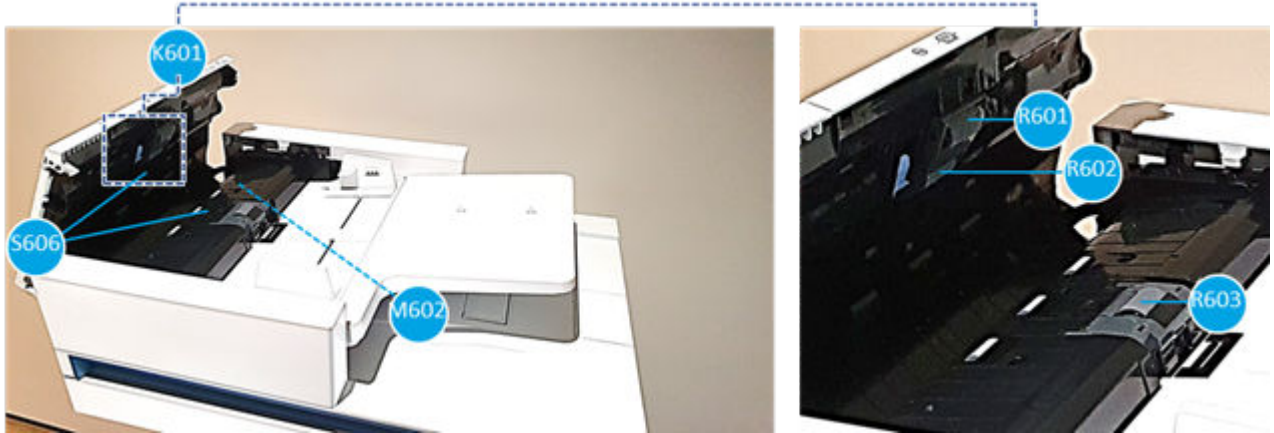


Table 3-94 Detail view of pickup unit, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K601	ADF roller kit	5851-7202	Includes the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the separation roller
R601	ADF pickup roller	NA	Picks up paper
R602	ADF forward roller	NA	Moves paper from the pickup roller to the ADF inside
R603	ADF	NA	Prevents multiple pages from feeding in contact with the forward roller
M602	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the separation roller
S606	ADF multi feed sensor (only for 200sh flow ADF)	NA	Checks the multi-feeding of paper

Figure 3-154 Detail view of pickup unit, view 2

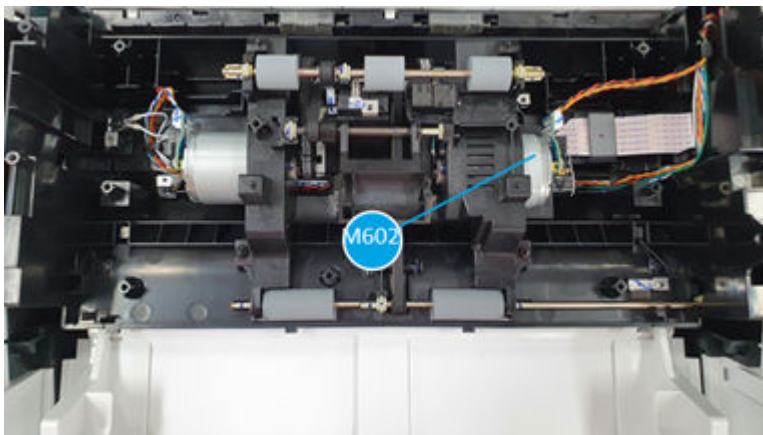


Table 3-95 Detail view of pickup unit, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M602	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the separation roller

Figure 3-155 Detail view of pickup unit, view 3

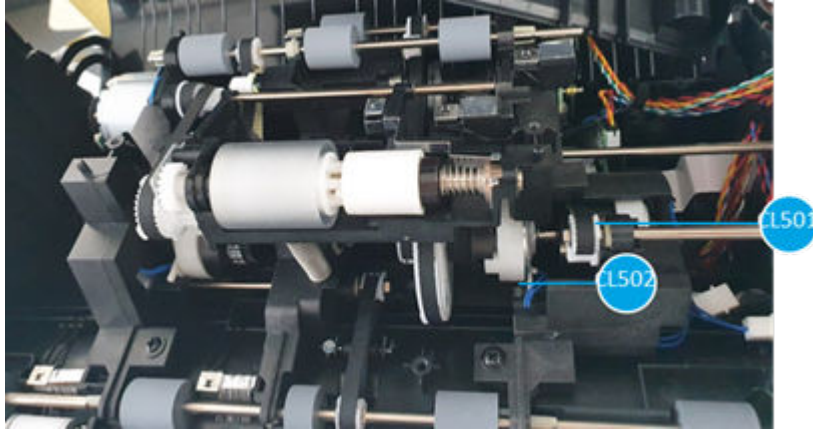


Table 3-96 Detail view of pickup unit, view 3

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
CL501	ADF pickup up, down clutch	NA	Makes the pickup roller go down to contact with paper
CL502	ADF pickup clutch	NA	Connects the driving force from the feed motor to the pickup roller and the forward roller

Deskew unit

Learn about the deskew unit.

The deskew unit receives a page that has passed through the multi-feeding sensor, aligns the page in the width direction and sends it to the scan roller. When paper enters the deskew sensor, the deskew roller rotates after a certain period. The leading edge of the paper is aligned by the deskew roller since the forward roller sorts the paper with the stuck roller. During this process, the deskew motor and the deskew clutch rotate the deskew roller.

Figure 3-156 Detail view of deskew unit, view 1

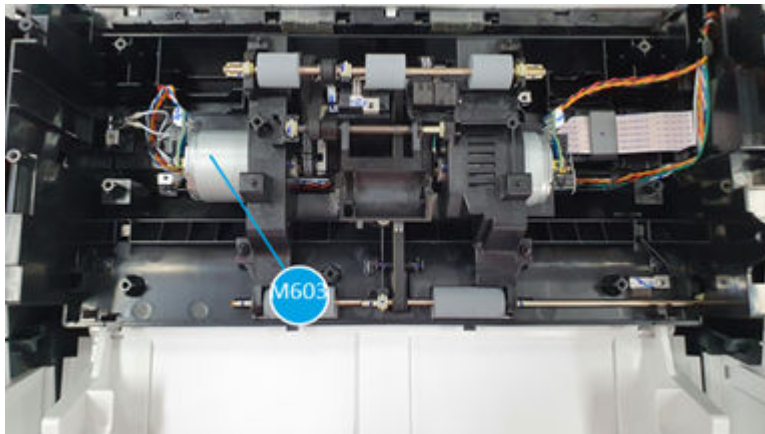


Table 3-97 Detail view of deskew unit, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M603	ADF deskew motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the deskew roller

Figure 3-157 Detail view of deskew unit, view 2

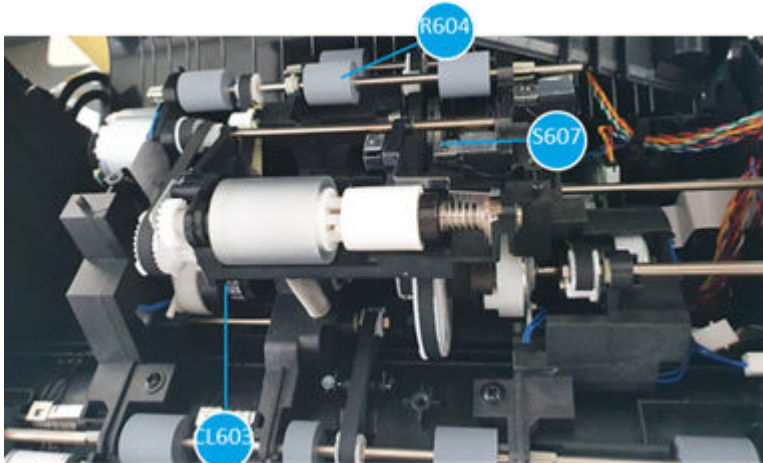


Table 3-98 Detail view of deskew unit, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
CL603	ADF deskew clutch	NA	Connects driving force from the deskew motor to the deskew roller
R604	ADF deskew roller	NA	Aligns the leading edge straight and move the paper to the scan area.
S607	ADF deskew sensor	NA	Checks the paper arrival at the deskew roller. And it sets the time to start the deskew roller.

Scan and exit unit

Learn about the scan and exit unit.

The scan and exit unit receives a page from the deskew roller, and then scans the image from the paper and discharges it to the out-bin.

Paper passes through the scan roller rotated by the feed motor. The top of page sensor detects whether the paper is correctly located and determines the starting point of the scanning. After the scanning process, the paper is discharged by the exit roller which is rotated by the exit motor.

Figure 3-158 Detail view of scan and exit unit

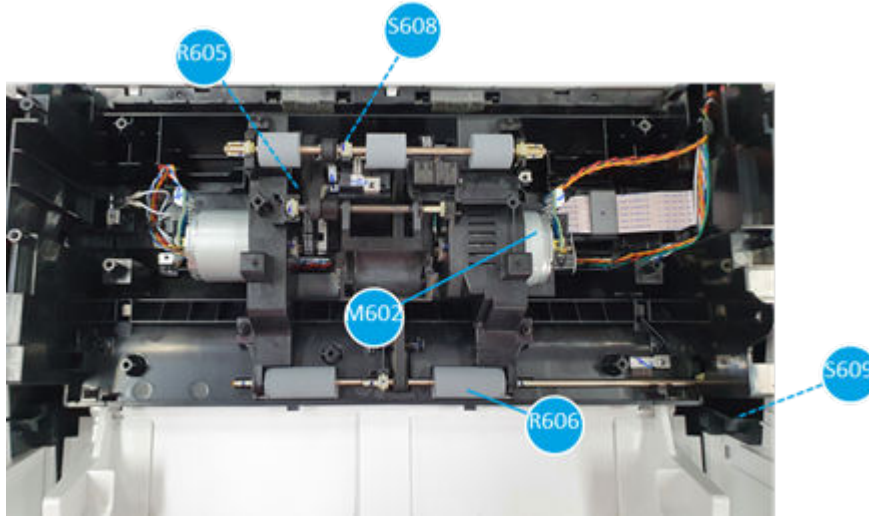


Table 3-99 Detail view of scan and exit unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M602	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the scan roller and the exit roller
R605	ADF scan motor	NA	Sends paper from the deskew roller to the exit roller
S608	ADP top of page sensor	NA	Checks whether the paper arrived at the sensor, and then decides to start scanning
S609	ADF image scanner	NA	Scans the back side of the paper
R606	ADF exit roller	NA	Discharges the paper to the output bin

Document feeder simplex operation

Learn about the document feeder simplex operation.

The following is the basic sequence of operation for a document feeder job.

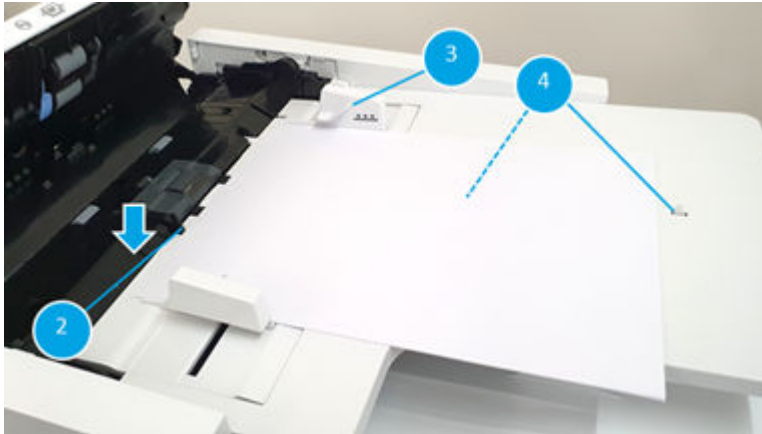
1. The ADF cover sensor (callout 1) detects when the cover door is in the closed position.

Figure 3-159 Document feeder simplex operation, view 1



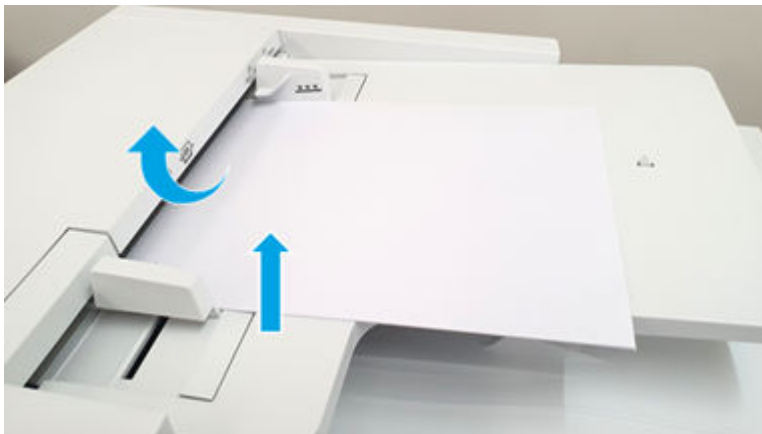
2. The ADF paper present sensor (callout 2) activates when paper is loaded onto the input tray. Then the paper length sensors (callout 4) and the paper width guide (callout 3) identify the paper size.

Figure 3-160 Document feeder simplex operation, view 2



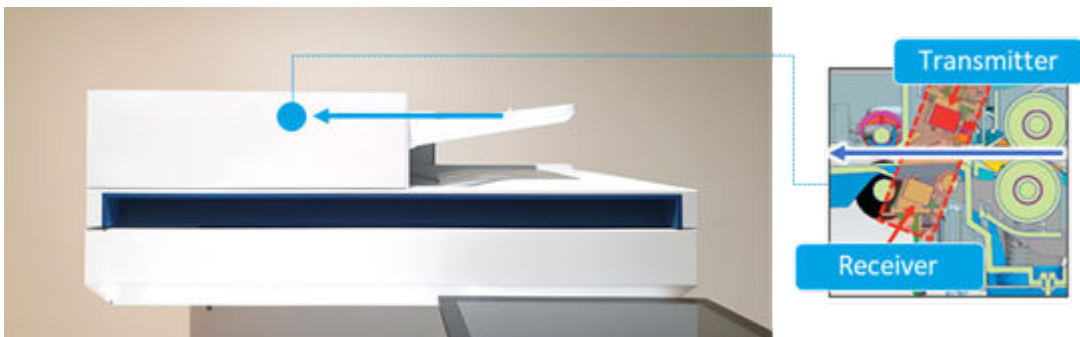
3. The ADF lift plate motor rotates to raise the lift plate, and the pickup roller starts to pick up the loaded paper.

Figure 3-161 Document feeder simplex operation, view 3



4. The ADF multi feed (ultrasonic) sensor is activated when the leading edge of the media is driven past the sensor.

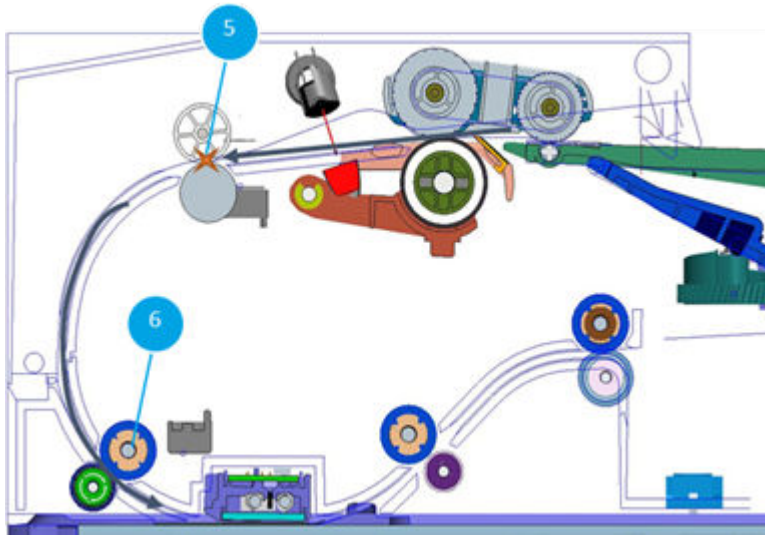
Figure 3-162 Document feeder simplex operation, view 4



5. The ADF deskew sensor activates when the leading edge of the paper passes it.

6. The leading edge of the paper drives into the nip point of the deskew drive roller and the deskew pinch rollers. This creates a curl at the leading edge of the paper (callout 5).

Figure 3-163 Document feeder simplex operation, view 5



7. The deskew motor rotates the deskew roller to pull the paper into the scan roller.
8. The pickup clutch stops the turning and allows both the pickup and forward roller to turn freely while the paper is pulled in by the deskew roller.
9. The feed motor drives the leading edge of the paper into the top of page sensor (callout 6). The scanner begins the scanning and the data retrieval process (callout 7).
10. The ADF multi feeding (ultrasonic) sensor is deactivated when the trailing edge of the paper passes the sensor.
11. Paper is discharged to the output bin. The scanner ends the scanning and the data retrieval process.
12. If the copy job is completed, the ADF paper present sensor is deactivated. The ADF pickup clutch raises the pick roller or if the copy job is not completed, the ADF paper present sensor still operates. The printer firmware detects additional pages in the input tray and the process repeats.

Deskew operation

Learn about the deskew operation.

Sliding side guides on the input tray make sure that the paper stack is correctly aligned at the center of the input tray when the paper is loaded in the tray. The correct position of the loaded paper is parallel with the direction of travel into the document feeder paper path.

The document feeder further reduces paper skew due to an improper loading of the paper in the input tray by buckling the paper to create a paper buffer.


The document feeder aligns with the leading edge of the paper, parallel with the deskew drive rollers before it is driven further into the document feeder paper path.

Figure 3-164 Deskew operation



Document feeder hinges operation

Learn about the document feeder hinges operation.

 **NOTE:** The left and the right document feeder hinges are different parts. During repairs, they must be clearly identified and installed in the correct orientation. The parts are essential so they should not be installed in the wrong position.

The document feeder hinges allow positioning the assembly vertically above the scanner glass to accommodate the placement of books and other objects up to 25 mm (1.0 in) in height on the scanner glass. The document feeder still closes (the bottom of the document feeder is kept parallel to the scanner glass) and allows the printer to operate.

The document feeder hinges provide the height adjustment of 25 mm (1.0 in) when a maximum downward force of 4.5 kg (10 lb) is applied at the front edge of the assembly, with the fulcrum (such as the spine of a book) centered on the scanner glass and parallel to its long axis.

The document feeder will withstand a downward force of at least 4.5 kg (10 lb) applied at the front edge center of the assembly—when the fulcrum (such as the spine of a book) is located anywhere on the scanner glass and parallel to its long axis—without breaking, deforming, detaching or experiencing performance degradation.

The document feeder hinges support the assembly in the open position and prevent the document feeder from suddenly closing with a damaging or in a loud manner.

The hinges can hold the document feeder static in all positions higher than 100 mm (3.93 in); measured at the front of the assembly. Less than 2.3 kg (5 lb) of force is required to open or close the document feeder.

The hinges allow the document feeder to open to an angle of between 60° and 80° from the horizontal position (this angle will not allow the printer to tip over).

Figure 3-165 Document feeder open (book mode)

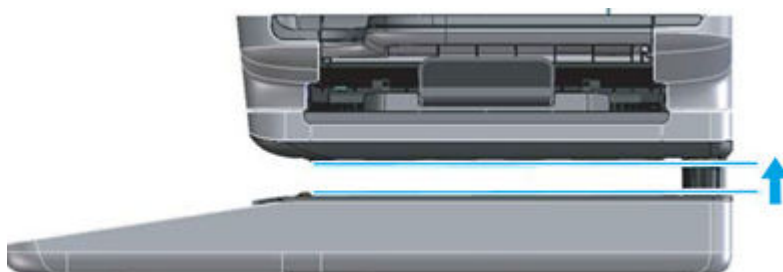


Figure 3-166 Document feeder open (60° to 80°)



ADF image scanner cleaning

Learn about cleaning the ADF image scanner.

Wipe the image scanner area with a soft cloth or microfiber. To maintain optimal document scanning performance without scanning image quality problems, the image scanner area should be cleaned periodically.

Figure 3-167 ADF image scanner cleaning



ADF PCA

Learn about the ADF PCA.

- 200sh Flow ADF PCA part number: 5QJ90-67008
- 200sh ADF PCA part number: 5QJ90-67013

Figure 3-168 ADF PCA connections

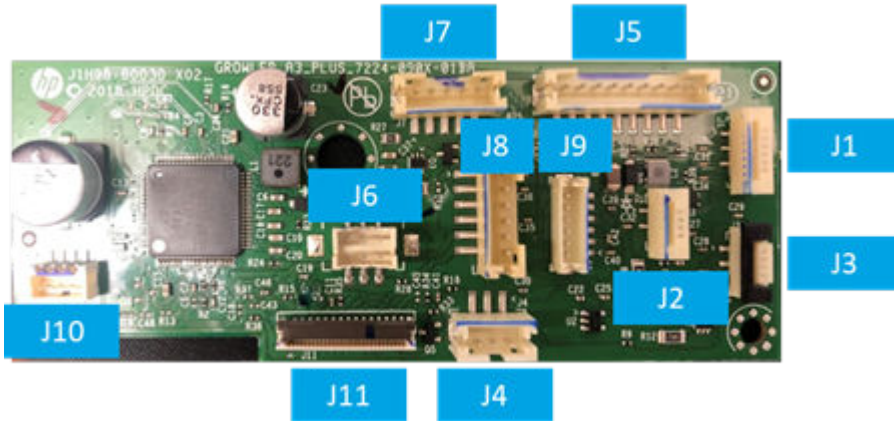


Table 3-100 ADF PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
ADFG-J1	ADF lift plate motor	FFC 6pin	NA
ADFG-J2	ADF top of page sensor	FFC 4pin	NA
ADFG-J3	ADF deskew sensor	FFC 4pin	NA
ADFG-J4	ADF paper width sensor	3pin	NA
ADFG-J5	ADF cover open sensor ADF multi feed sensor - receiver ADF lift sensor	9pin	NA
ADFG-J6	ADF paper long size sensor ADF paper short size sensor	6pin	NA
ADFG-J7	ADF multi feed sensor - transmitter ADF paper present sensor	5pin	NA
ADFG-J8	ADF feed motor	6pin	NA
ADFG-J9	ADF deskew motor	6pin	NA
ADFG-J10	ADF power inlet	4pin	NA
ADFG-J11	Connecting with the platen	FFC 30pin	NA

Scanner system: Tarot Platen

You will learn more about the scanner system: Tarot Platen.

Scanner workflow

Learn about the scanner workflow.

The scanner converts an original document image into data. To scan an original document, the scanner uses a CIS image sensor which stores and transfers the converted image data to the storage space or transfers it to the printer engine for copy.

Figure 3-169 Tarot platen workflow

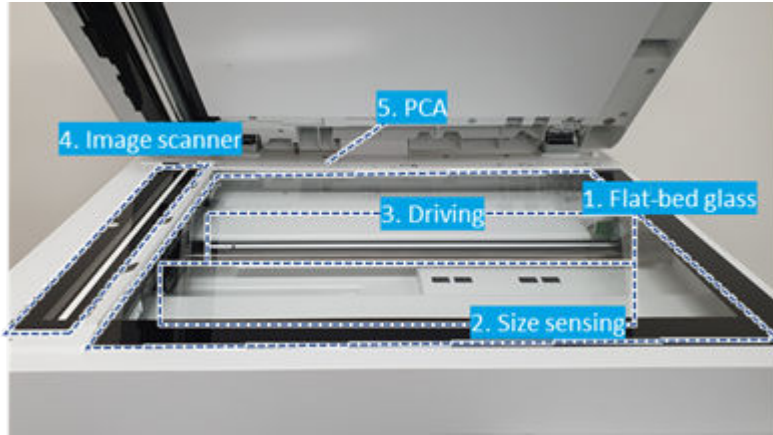


Table 3-101 Tarot platen workflow

Callout	Unit name	Part number	Description
U811	Tarot platen	3SJ11-60103	-
1	Flat-bed glass	NA	The glass that places the original document when performing single-sided scanning
2	Size sensing	NA	Detects the original document size
3	Driving	NA	Moves the image scanner to scan the original document
4	Image scanner	NA	Scans the original image and convert it to data
5	PCA	Y6V12-60035	Interfaces with the formatter and the ADF

Cover

Learn about the cover.

Figure 3-170 Tarot platen cover

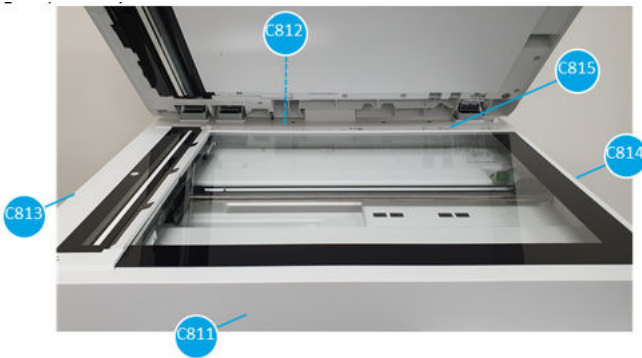


Table 3-102 Tarot platen cover

Callout	Unit name	Part number
C811	Tarot platen front cover	NA
C812	Tarot platen rear cover	3SJ11-40008
C813	Tarot platen left cover	NA
C814	Tarot platen right cover	NA

Table 3-102 Tarot platen cover (continued)

Callout	Unit name	Part number
C815	Tarot platen upper cover	NA

Sensor, motor

Learn about the sensor and motor.

Figure 3-171 Tarot platen sensor, motor

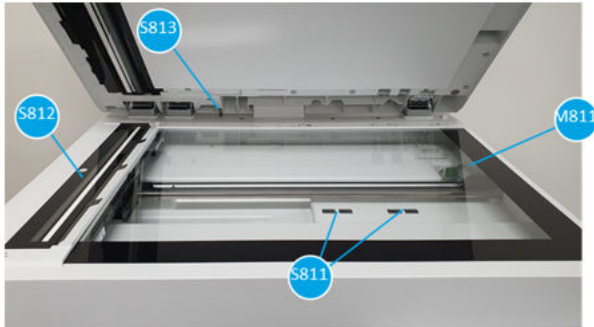


Table 3-103 Tarot platen sensor, motor

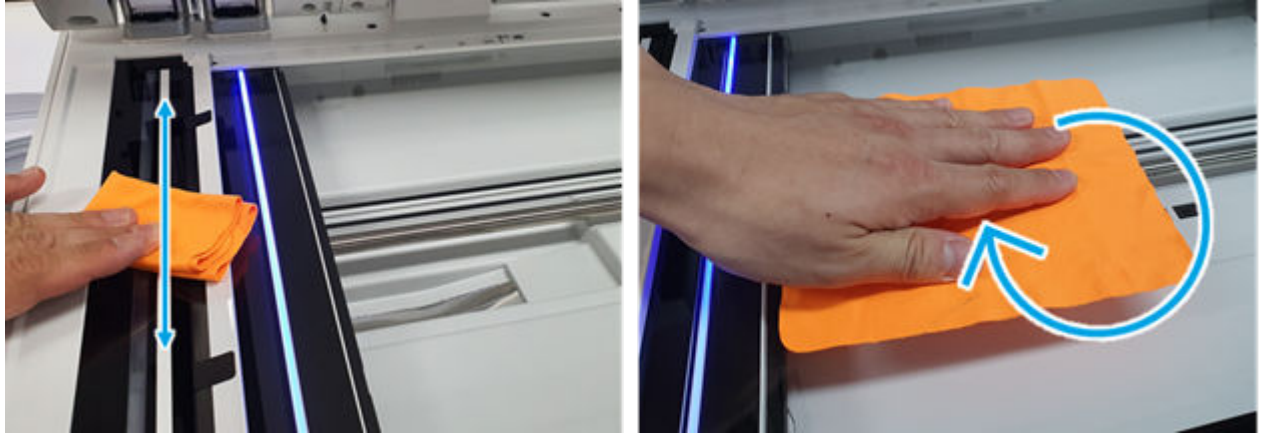
Callout	Unit name	Part number	Description
M811	Tarot motor	NA	Moves the image scanner to scan the original document
S811	Paper size detection sensor	NA	Detects the original document size
S812	Image scanner	NA	Scans the original image and convert it to data
S813	ADF open sensor	NA	Detects whether the ADF is open

Image scanner and flat-bed glass cleaning

Learn about cleaning the Tarot high speed (HS) platen image scanner and flat-bed glass.

Wipe the image scanner area with a soft cloth or microfiber. To maintain optimal document scanning performance without scanning image quality problems, the image scanner area should be cleaned periodically.

Figure 3-172 Image scanner and flat-bed glass cleaning



PCA

Learn about the PCA.

- Tarot platen PCA part number: Y6V12-60035 (P811)

Figure 3-173 Tarot platen PCA connections

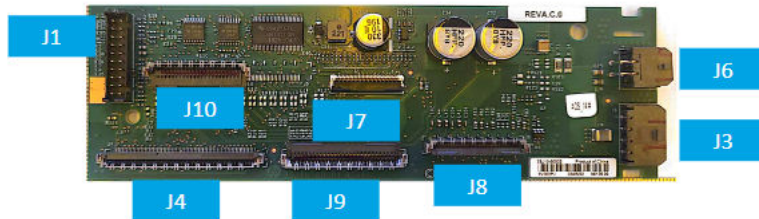


Table 3-104 Tarot platen PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
SSAt-J1	Tarot motor, paper size detection sensor 1, 2, ADF open sensor	-	3SJ11-50023
SSAt-J3	Power inlet	4pin	3SJ11-50006
SSAt-J4	Formatter interface 1	68pin FFC	3SJ11-50022
SSAt-J6	Power outlet to ADF	-	NA
SSAt-J7	ADF interface	-	NA
SSAt-J8	ADF scanner	-	NA
SSAt-J9	Formatter interface 2	50pin FFC	3SJ11-50021
SSAt-J10	Image scanner	40pin FFC	3SJ11-50020

Input devices

Learn about the input devices that are available for these printers.

Department stand

Learn about the department stand.

Figure 3-174 Department stand, view 1

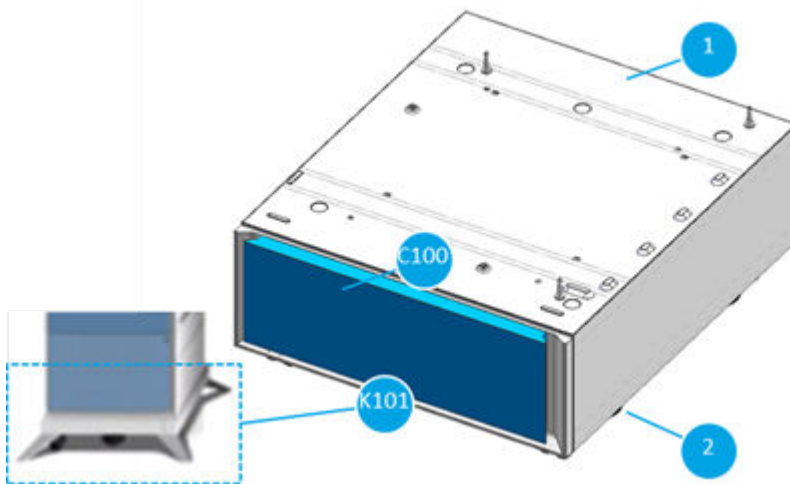


Table 3-105 Department stand, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number
1	Stand	6GW53A
C100	Stand CMF panel	NA
2	Caster wheel	6109-001138
K101	Holder wheel kit	6GW46-40011

NOTE: When installing a stand, there is an empty space between the base printer and the stand. Additional spare part is in operation to prevent rodents from entering inside the product.

- Cover side lower blocker Part number: X3A76-40003

Empty space between the base printer and the stand and cover side lower blocker (callout 3).

Figure 3-175 Department stand, view 2



Table 3-106 Department stand, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number
3	Cover side lower blocker	X3A76-40003

Department Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5)

The Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) is optional, and provides additional paper capacity for the printer.

DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers.

Figure 3-176 DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers

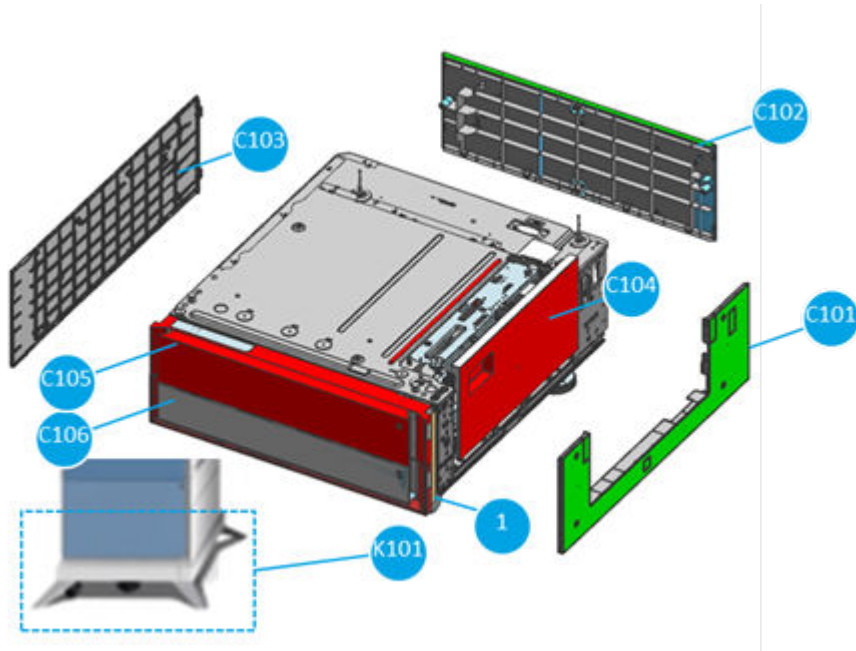


Table 3-107 DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers

Callout	Part name	Part number
C101	DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover	5QK08-40006
C102	DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover	5QK08-40007
C103	DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover	5QK08-40008
C104	DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door	5QK08-61004
C105	Tray 4 CMF panel	5QK08-40011
C106	Tray 5 CMF panel	5QK08-40012
1	Caster wheel	6109-001138
K101	Holder wheel kit	6GW46-40011

DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow.

Figure 3-177 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow

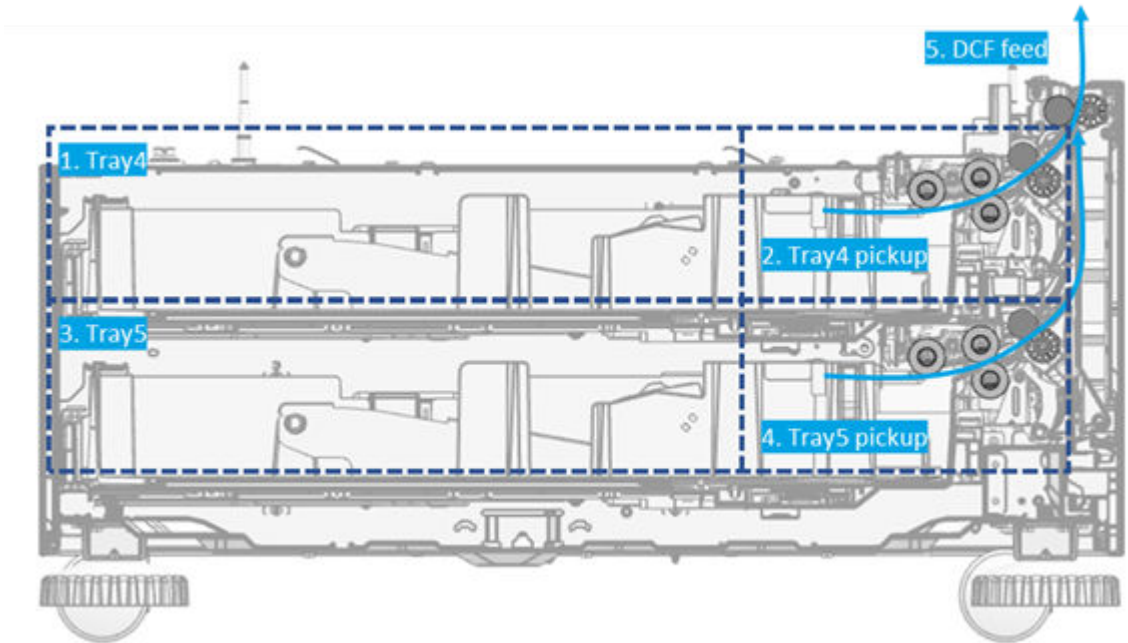


Figure 3-178 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow



Table 3-108 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow

Callout	Part name	Description
1	Tray 4	Stores paper
2	Tray 4 pickup unit	Picks up paper to the DCF feed roller
3	Tray 5	Stores paper
4	Tray 5 pickup unit	Picks up paper to the DCF feed roller
5	Tray 4, 5 feed unit	Moves paper to the base printer

DCF (Tray 4, 5) unit

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) unit.

Figure 3-179 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) unit

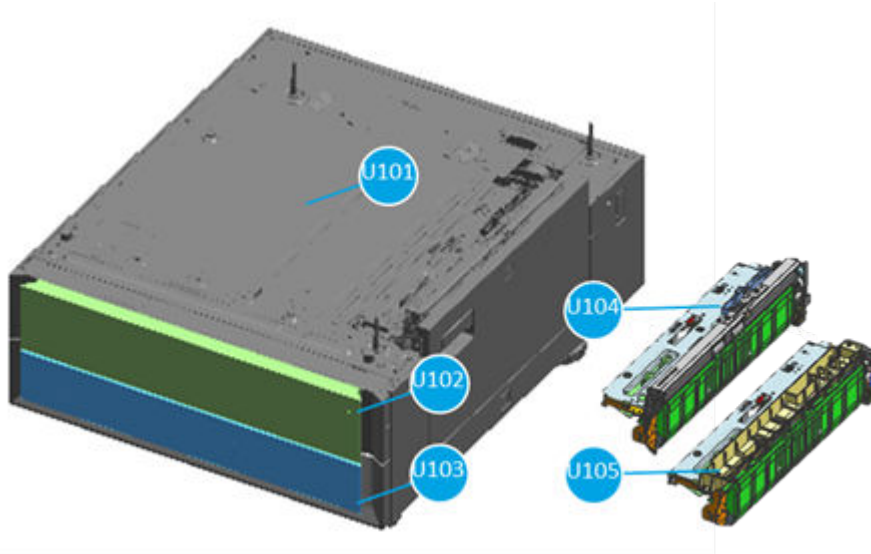


Table 3-109 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U101	DCF (Tray4, 5) unit	6GW47-67001	-
U102	Tray 4 cassette	5QK08-61007	Stores paper
U103	Tray 5 cassette	5QK08-61005	Stores paper
U104	Tray 4 pickup assembly	5QK08-61009	-
U105	Tray 5 pickup assembly	5QK08-61010	-

DCF (Tray 4, 5) rollers

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rollers.

Figure 3-180 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) rollers

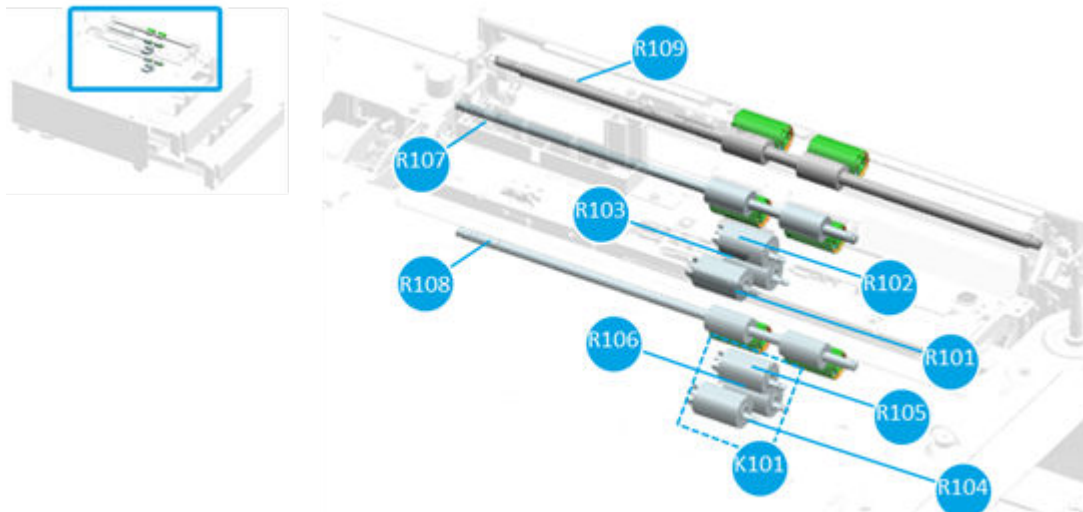


Table 3-110 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) rollers

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K101	DCF roller kit	5PN66-67001	-
R101	Tray 4 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from Tray 4
R102	Tray 4 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the Tray 4 feed roller
R103	Tray 4 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multi paper feeding
K101	DCF roller kit	5PN66-67001	-
R104	Tray 5 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from Tray 5
R105	Tray 5 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the Tray 5 feed roller
R106	Tray 5 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multi paper feeding
R107	Tray 4 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the Tray 4 trans roller
R108	Tray 5 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the Tray 5 trans roller
R109	Tray 4 trans roller	NA	Moves paper to the base printer feeding system

Figure 3-181 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) rollers, view 1

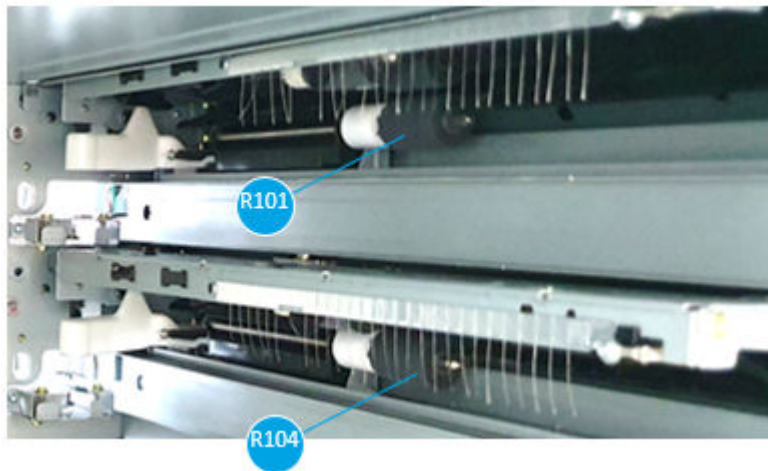


Table 3-111 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) rollers, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R101	Tray 4 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from Tray 4
R104	Tray 5 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from Tray 5

Figure 3-182 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) rollers, view 2



Table 3-112 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) rollers, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R102	Tray 4 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the Tray 4 feed roller
R105	Tray 5 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the Tray 5 feed roller
R107	Tray 4 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the Tray 4 trans roller
R108	Tray 5 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the Tray 5 trans roller
R109	Tray 4 trans roller	NA	Moves paper to the base printer feeding system

DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors.

Figure 3-183 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors

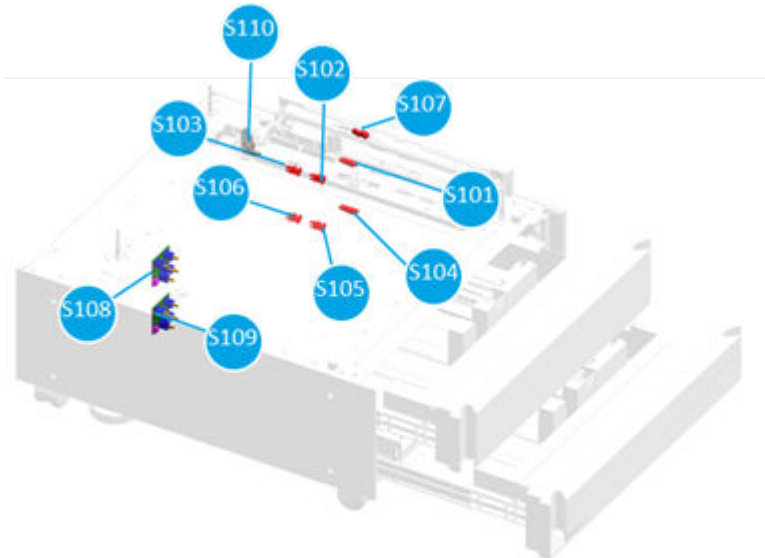


Table 3-113 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S101	Prefeed 4 sensor	0604-001381	Keeps the proper distance between papers on the paper path

Table 3-113 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S102	Tray 4 paper empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray has paper
S103	Tray 4 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Sets the proper height of paper to make contact with the pickup roller
S104	Pre feed 5 sensor	0604-001381	Keeps the proper distance between papers on the paper path
S105	Tray 5 paper empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray has paper
S106	Tray 5 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Sets the proper height of paper to make contact with the pickup roller
S107	Tray 4 feed sensor	0604-001490	Checks the paper path out of Tray4, 5
S108	Tray 4 paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	Checks the opening and closing of the tray and then sends signals to identify the paper size
S109	Tray 5 paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	Checks the opening and closing of the tray and then sends signals to identify the paper size
S110	DCF (Tray4, 5) right door open switch	JC90-01385A	Checks whether the tray 4, 5 right door is open
U7	Tray heater 110V	Y1G22-67901	Dries damp paper with heating pipe
U8	Tray heater 220V	Y1G22-67902	Dries damp paper with heating pipe

Figure 3-184 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors, view 1



Table 3-114 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S101	Prefeed 4 sensor	0604-001381	Keeps the proper distance between papers on the paper path
S104	Prefeed 5 sensor	0604-001381	Keeps the proper distance between papers on the paper path
S107	Tray 4 feed sensor	0604-001490	Checks the paper path out of Tray4, 5

Figure 3-185 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors, view 2

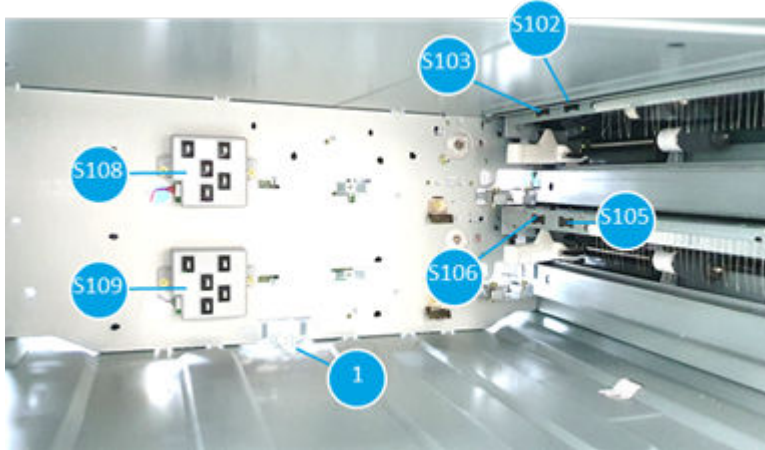


Table 3-115 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S102	Tray 4 paper empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray has paper
S103	Tray 4 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Sets the proper height of paper to make contact with the pickup roller
S105	Tray 5 paper empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray has paper
S106	Tray 5 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Sets the proper height of paper to make contact with the pickup roller
S108	Tray 4 paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	Checks the opening and closing of the tray and then sends signals to identify the paper size
S109	Tray 5 paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	Checks the opening and closing of the tray and then sends signals to identify the paper size
1	Tray heater connector	NA	Connects to the tray heater

DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors.

Figure 3-186 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors

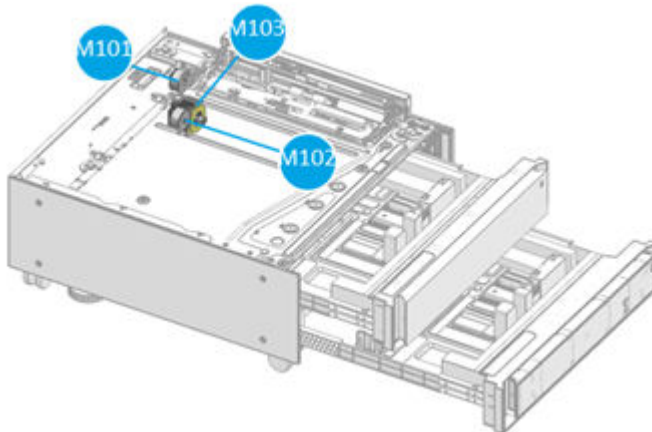


Table 3-116 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M101	DCF (Tray 4) pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Drives the Tray 4 pickup, forward, and reverse rollers or knock-up plate
M102	DCF (Tray 5) pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Drives the Tray 5 pickup, forward, and reverse rollers or knock-up plate
M103	DCF (Tray 4, 5) feed motor	JC31-00177A	Drives the Tray 4, 5 feed roller and Tray 4 trans roller

Figure 3-187 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors

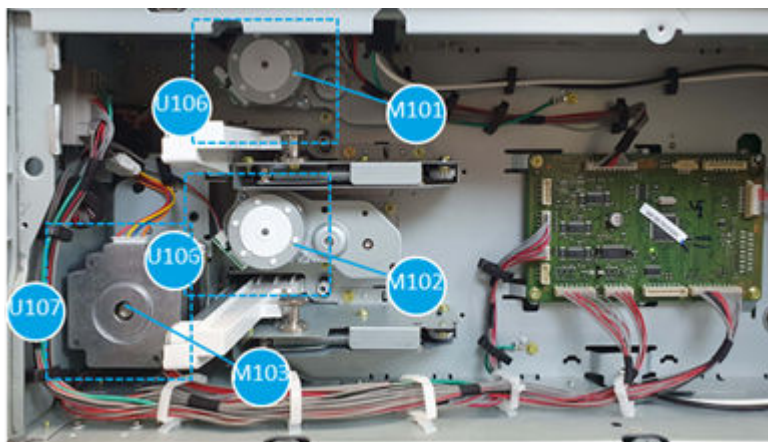


Table 3-117 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors

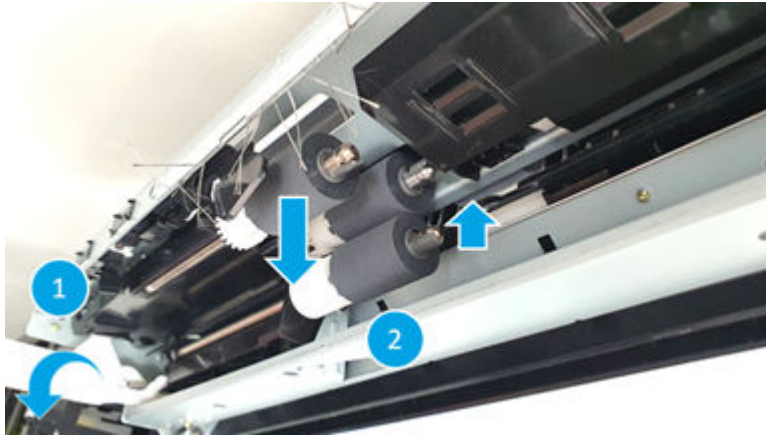
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U106	DCF pickup drive assembly	JC93-01663A	-
M101	DCF (Tray 4) pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Drives the Tray 4 pickup, forward, and reverse rollers or knock-up plate
M102	DCF (Tray 5) pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Drives the Tray 5 pickup, forward, and reverse rollers or knock-up plate
U107	DCF (Tray 4, 5) feed drive assembly	JC93-01135A	-
M103	DCF (Tray 4, 5) feed motor	JC31-00177A	Drives the Tray 4, 5 feed roller and Tray 4 trans roller

DCF (Tray 4, 5) operation

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) operation.

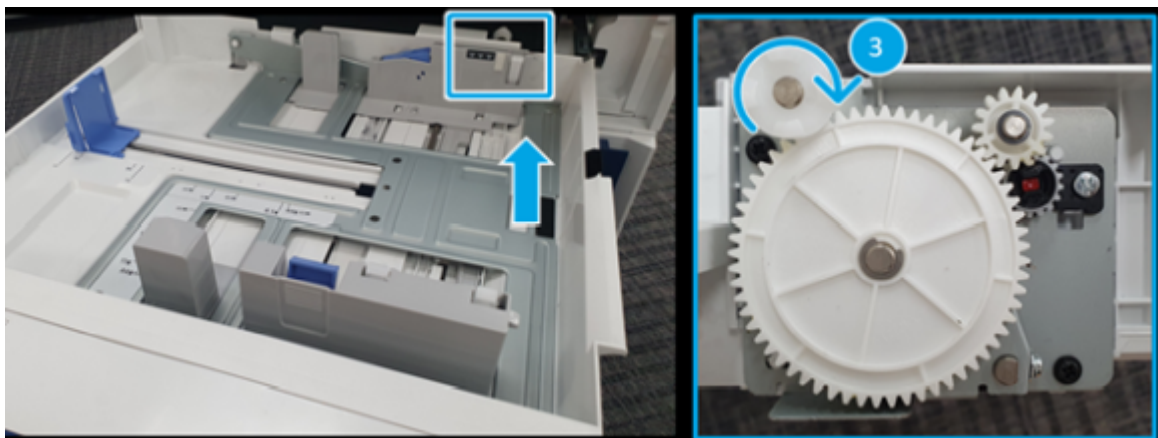
1. When the tray is closed, tray input lever is pushed.
2. The pickup roller moves down to contact with the surface of the paper, and the reverse roller moves upward to make a contact with the forward roller.

Figure 3-188 DCF (Tray 4, 5) operation, view 1



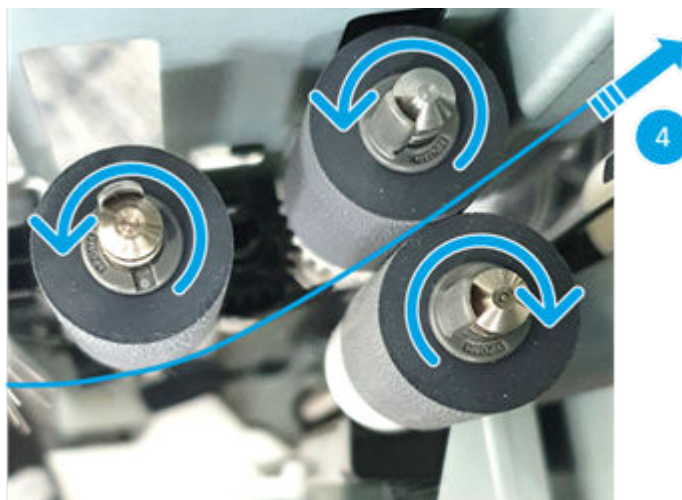
3. Tray motor drives the knock-up plate to move paper upward to the pickup roller.

Figure 3-189 DCF (Tray 4, 5) operation, view 2



4. The pickup roller moves the paper forward. The forward roller makes paper move into the feed roller. The reverse roller prevents the printer from multi-feeding.

Figure 3-190 DCF (Tray 4, 5) operation, view 3

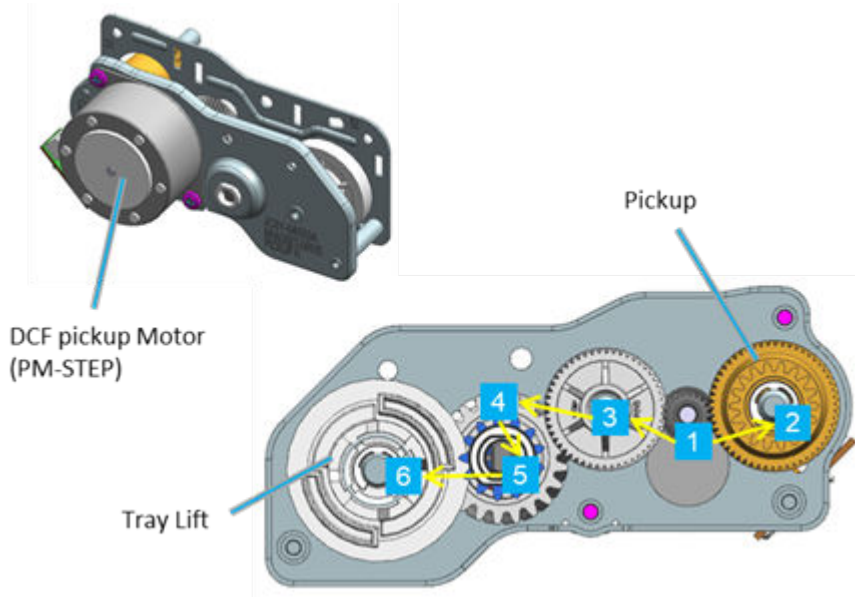


5. The feed roller sends the paper to the trans roller.

DCF (Tray 4, 5) motor operation

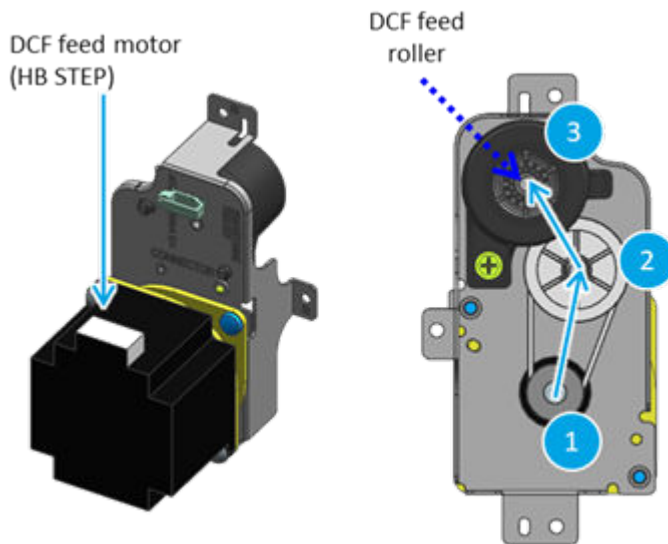
Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) motor operation.

Figure 3-191 DCF (Tray 4, 5) motor operation, view 1



- Pickup: Tray 4, 5 pickup motor > clockwise rotation > 1 gear > 2 gear (pickup roller, forward roller)
- Tray lift: Tray 4, 5 pickup motor > counterclockwise rotation > 1 gear > 3 gear > 4 gear > 5 gear > 6 gear & coupler (knock-up plate)

Figure 3-192 DCF (Tray 4, 5) motor operation, view 2



- DCF feed driving: 1 DCF feed motor > 2 pulley and gear > 3 gear & coupler (feed roller, trans roller)

DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA.

DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA connects to the formatter to control the DCF operation.

- DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA part number: 6GW47-60001 (P101)

Figure 3-193 DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA

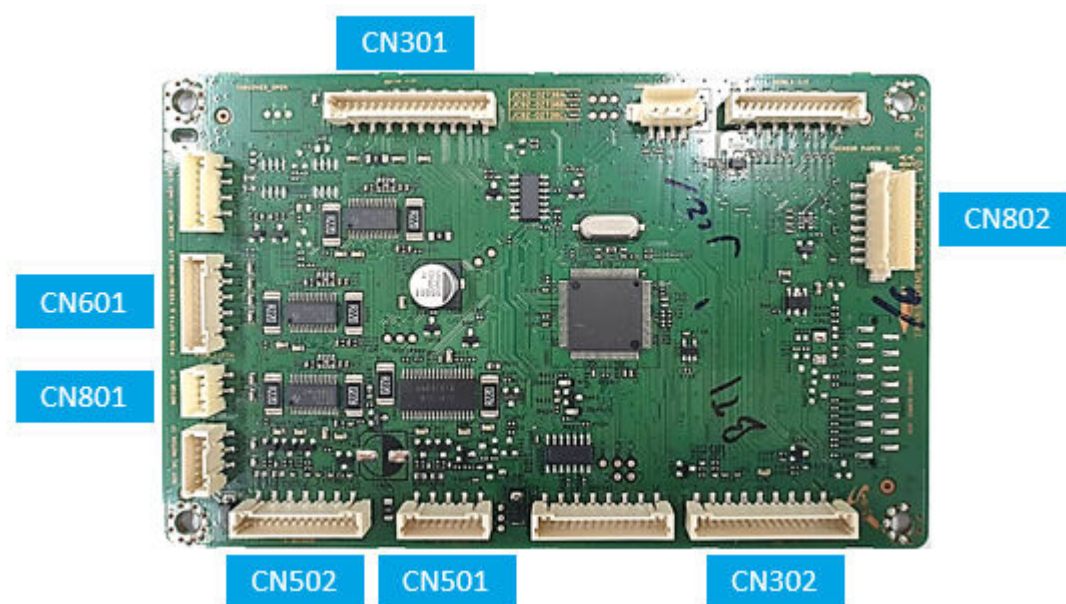


Table 3-118 DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	CN Number Error Code when disconnected
DCF-CN301	Main-J56	18pin	JC39-02606A	DCF not recognized
DCF-CN302	sHCI-CN301	18pin	JC39-02603A	-
DCF-CN501	Tray 5 paper empty sensor Tray 5 stack height sensor Tray 5 stack feed sensor	9pin	JC39-02269A, JC39-02270A	Load tray 5
DCF-CN502	Tray 4 paper empty sensor Tray 4 stack height sensor Tray 4 feed sensor Prefeed 4 sensor	14pin	JC39-02271A, JC39-02272A	Load tray 4
DCF-CN601	Tray 4 pickup motor Tray 4, 5 feed motor Tray 4, 5 right door open switch	10pin	JC39-02268A	Close the tray 4 right door
DCF-CN801	Tray 5 pickup motor	4pin	JC39-02274A	13.A7.D5
DCF-CN802	Tray 4 paper size sensor Tray 5 paper size sensor	8pin	JC39-02275A	Tray 4 open, Tray 5 open

Department High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4)

Learn more about Department High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4).

The High Capacity Input (HCI) device is optional. It provides additional paper capacity for the printer. The HCI consists of the shift tray that stores excess paper, the lift tray that supplies paper to the pickup, and the feeding system that supplies paper to the base printer.

HCI (Tray 4) covers

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) covers.

Figure 3-194 HCI (Tray 4) covers

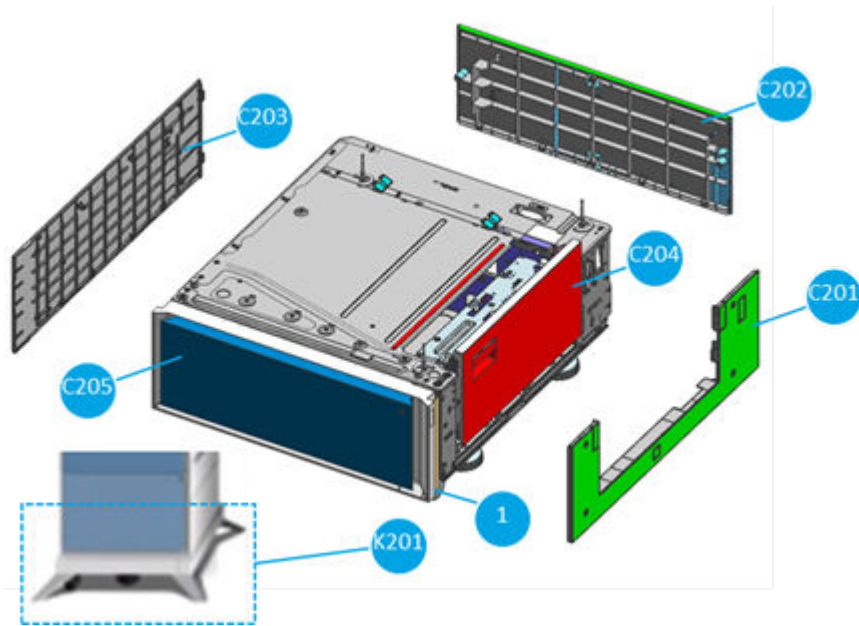


Table 3-119 HCI (Tray 4) covers

Callout	Part name	Part number
C201	HCI (Tray 4) right cover	5QK08-40006
C202	HCI (Tray 4) rear cover	5QK08-40007
C203	HCI (Tray 4) left cover	5QK08-40008
C204	HCI (Tray 4) right door	5QK08-61023
C205	HCI (Tray 4) front CMF panel	5QK08-40016
1	Caster wheel	6109-001138
K201	Holder wheel kit	6GW46-40011

HCI (Tray 4) workflow

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) workflow.

Figure 3-195 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) workflow

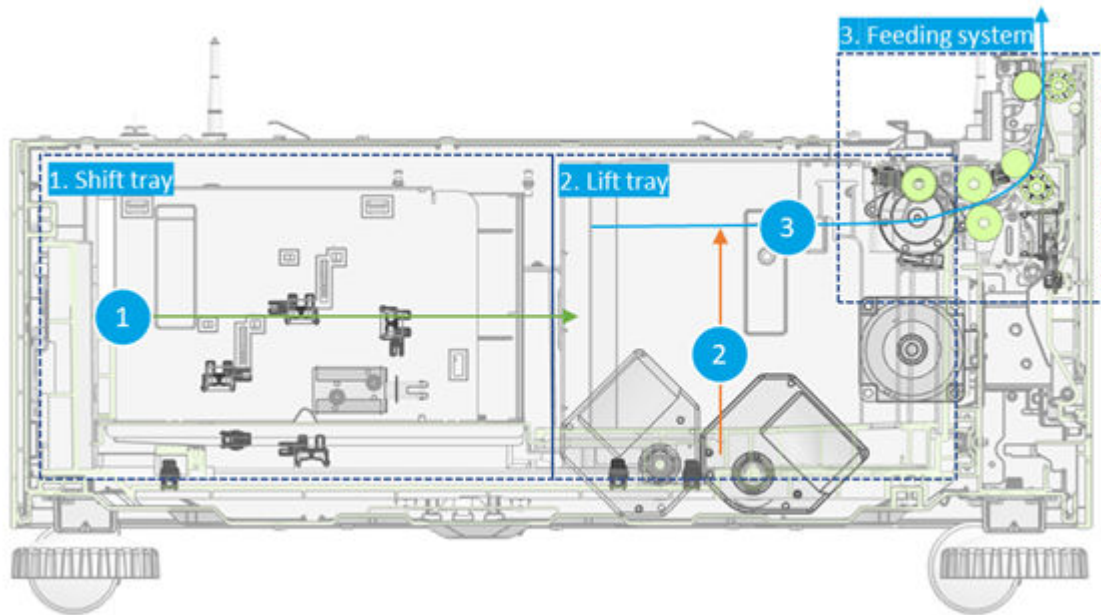


Figure 3-196 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) workflow

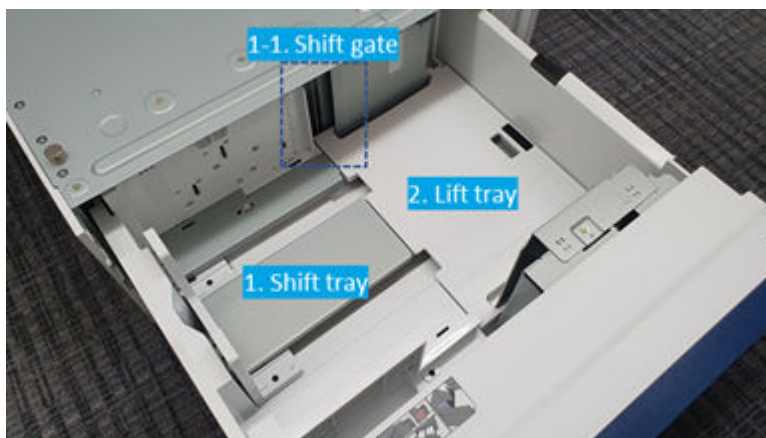


Table 3-120 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) workflow

Callout	Part name	Description
1	Shift tray	Loads an excess number of papers for printing, and when the lift tray runs out of paper, it moves the paper to the lift tray
1-1	Shift gate	Arranges the paper and opens the gate to move the paper to the lift tray during the shifting process
2	Lift tray	Stores paper for printing

HCI (Tray 4) unit

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) unit.

Figure 3-197 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) unit

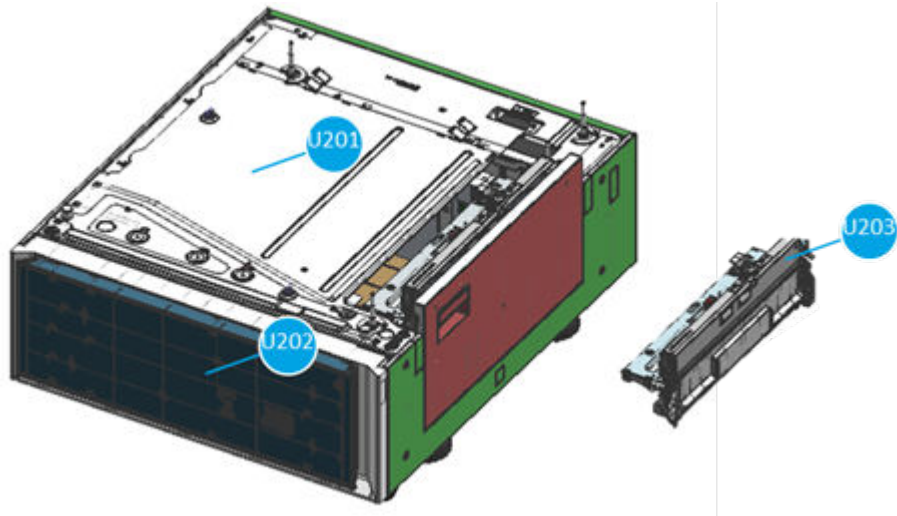


Table 3-121 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U201	HCI (Tray 4) unit	6GW57-67001	-
U202	HCI (Tray 4) cassette	5QK08-61014	Stores paper
U203	HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly	5QK08-61013	-

HCI (Tray 4) rollers

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) rollers.

Figure 3-198 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) rollers

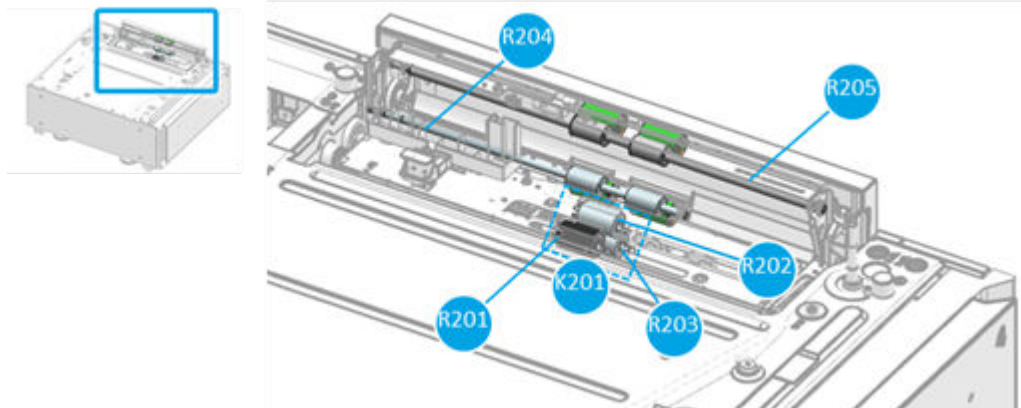


Table 3-122 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) rollers

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K201	HCI (Tray 4) roller kit	5PN66-67001	-
R201	HCI (Tray 4) pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from the lift tray
R202	HCI (Tray 4) forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the Tray 4 feed roller
R203	HCI (Tray 4) reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multi paper feeding

Table 3-122 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) rollers (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R204	HCI (Tray 4) feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the Tray 4 trans roller
R205	HCI (Tray 4) trans roller	NA	Moves paper to the base printer feeding system

Figure 3-199 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) rollers

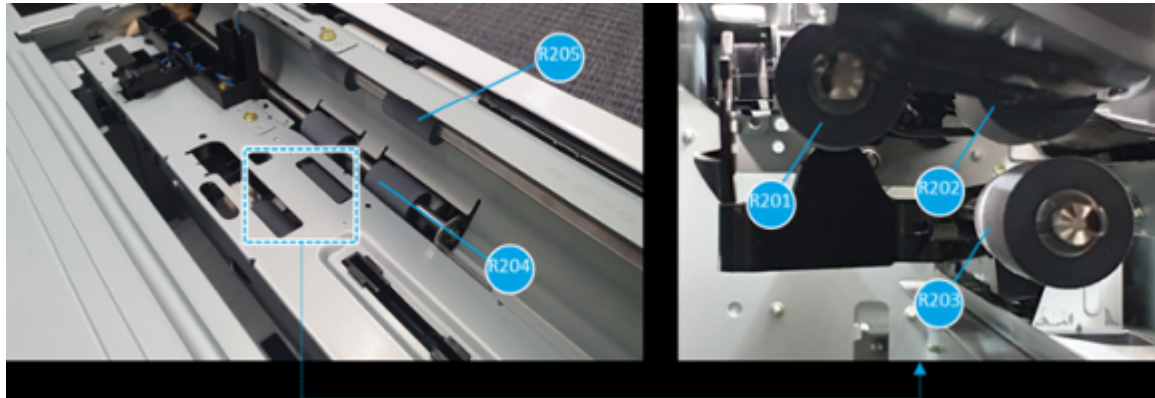


Table 3-123 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) rollers

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R201	HCI (Tray 4) pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from the lift tray
R202	HCI (Tray 4) forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the Tray 4 feed roller
R203	HCI (Tray 4) reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multi paper feeding
R204	HCI (Tray 4) feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the Tray 4 trans roller
R205	HCI (Tray 4) trans roller	NA	Moves paper to the base printer feeding system

HCI (Tray 4) sensors

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) sensors.

Figure 3-200 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) sensors (1 of 2)

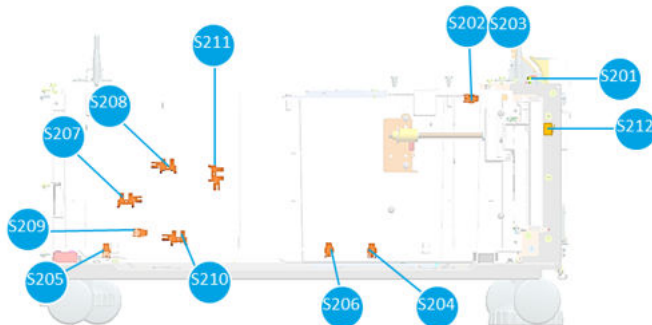


Figure 3-201 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) sensors (2 of 2)

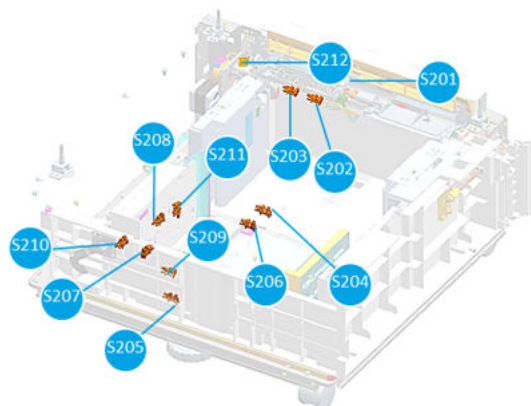


Table 3-124 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S201	HCI(Tray 4) feed sensor	0604-001490	Checks whether paper is ready to move to the base printer
S202	HCI(Tray 4) paper empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray has paper
S203	HCI (Tray 4) stack height sensor	0604-001393	Sets the proper height of the paper to make contact with the pickup roller
S204	HCI(Tray 4) knock-up home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home location of the knock-up plate
S205	HCI(Tray 4) shift tray home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home location of the shift tray
S206	HCI(Tray 4) shift tray end sensor	0604-001393	Detects the end location of the shift tray
S207	HCI(Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 1	0604-001393	Detects the amount of paper on the shift tray
S208	HCI(Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 2	0604-001393	Detects the amount of paper on the shift tray
S209	HCI(Tray 4) shift tray empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper is loaded on the shift tray
S210	HCI(Tray 4) tray open sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray is open
S211	HCI(Tray 4) shift gate solenoid home sensor	0604-001393	Detects whether the shift gate is closed
S212	HCI(Tray 4) right door open sensor	JC90-01385A	Checks whether the right door is open

HCI (Tray 4) motors

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) motors.

Figure 3-202 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) motors

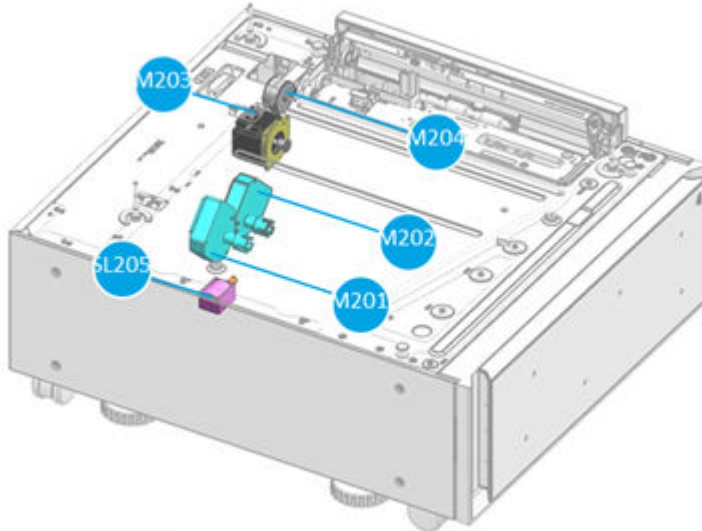


Table 3-125 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) motors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M201	HCI (Tray 4) paper shift motor	JC31-00125A	Moves the shift tray to the lift tray
M202	HCI (Tray 4) tray lift motor	JC31-00109A	Moves the lift tray upward so that paper is picked up
M203	HCI (Tray 4) feed motor	JC93-01114A	Drives the HCI (Tray 4) feed and trans roller
M204	HCI (Tray 4) pickup motor	JC93-01115A	Picks up paper
SL201	HCI (Tray 4) shift gate solenoid	JC33-00031B	Drives the shift gate

Figure 3-203 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) motors, view 1



Table 3-126 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) motors, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M201	HCI (Tray 4) paper shift motor	JC31-00125A	Moves the shift tray to the lift tray
M202	HCI (Tray 4) tray lift motor	JC31-00109A	Moves the lift tray upward so that paper is picked up
M203	HCI (Tray 4) feed motor	JC93-01114A	Drives the HCI (Tray 4) feed and trans roller
M204	HCI (Tray 4) pickup motor	JC93-01115A	Picks up paper

Figure 3-204 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) motors, view 2



Table 3-127 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) motors, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
SL201	HCI (Tray 4) shift gate solenoid	JC33-00031B	Drives the shift gate

Figure 3-205 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) motors, view 3

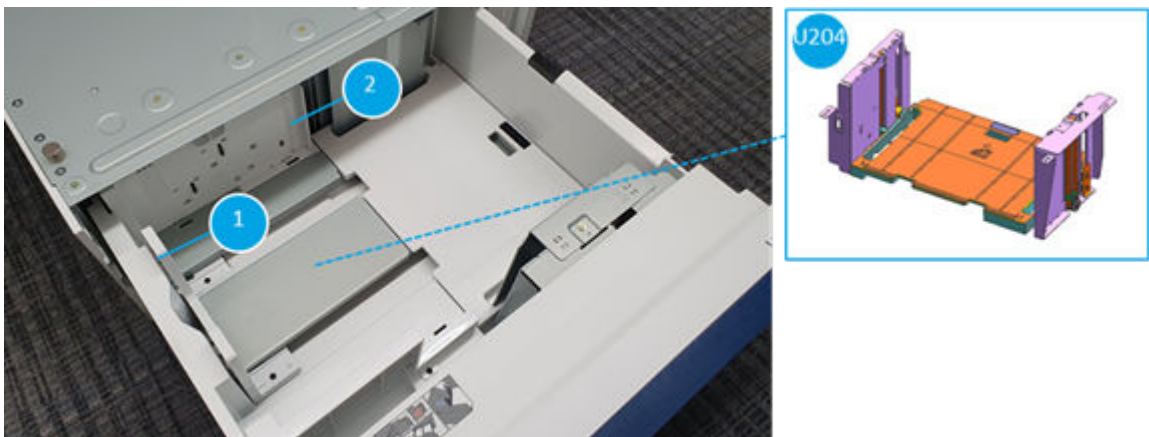


Table 3-128 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) motors, view 3

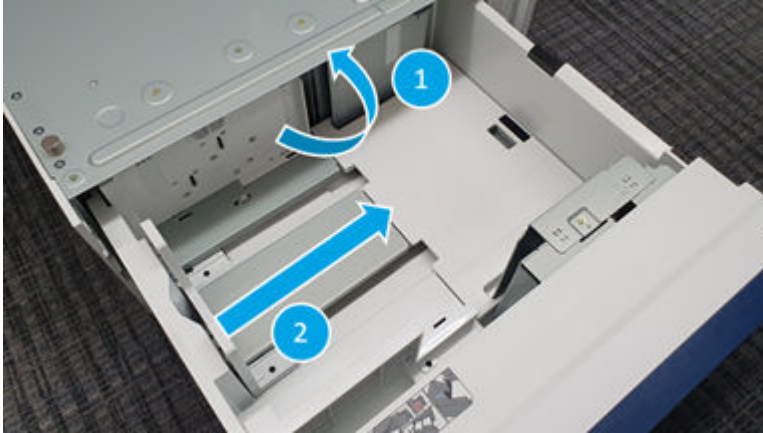
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Shift plate	JC81-07481B	-
2	Paper gate	JC81-07478B	-
U204	Knock-up plate assembly	6GW48-60003	-

HCI (Tray 4) operation

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) operation.

1. When a paper on the lift tray runs out, the paper on the shift unit moves to the lift tray. The HCI (Tray 4) shift gate solenoid moves so that the shift gate opens to make paper move to the lift tray.

Figure 3-206 HCI (Tray 4) operation, view 1



2. The HCI (Tray 4) shift motor operates, moving the shift tray to the lift tray side. The HCI (Tray 4) shift tray home and end sensor control how much the shift motor is operating. After the tray shifting process, the shift tray moves back to the original position and the shift gate solenoid turns back to the initial location.
3. If the HCI (Tray 4) tray is closed by the HCI (Tray 4) tray open sensor, knock-up plate moves upward until paper reaches the HCI (Tray 4) stack height sensor.

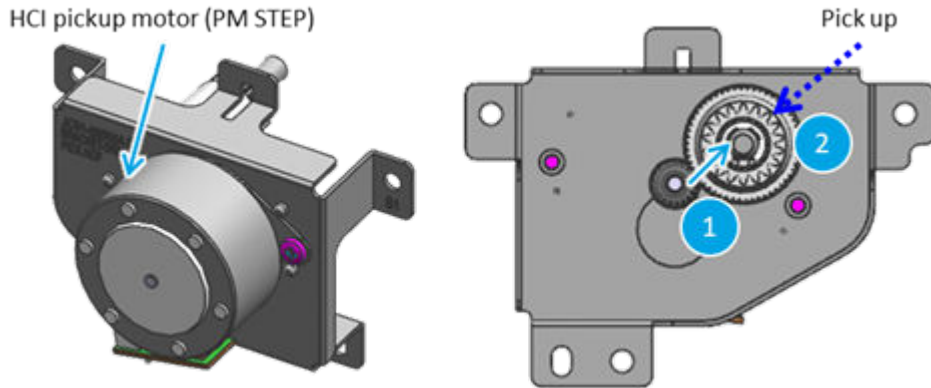
Figure 3-207 HCI (Tray 4) operation, view 2



HCI (Tray 4) motor operation

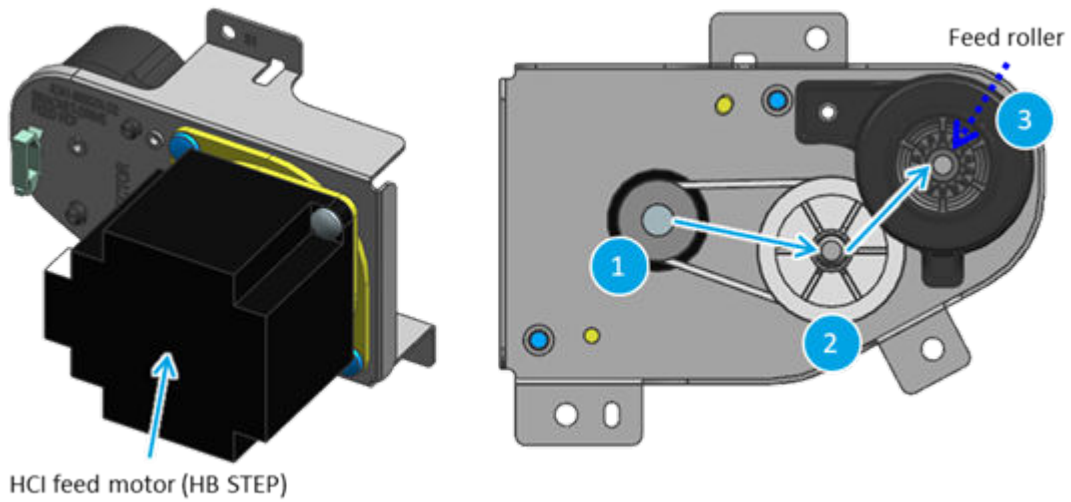
Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) motor operation.

Figure 3-208 HCI (Tray 4) motor operation, view 1



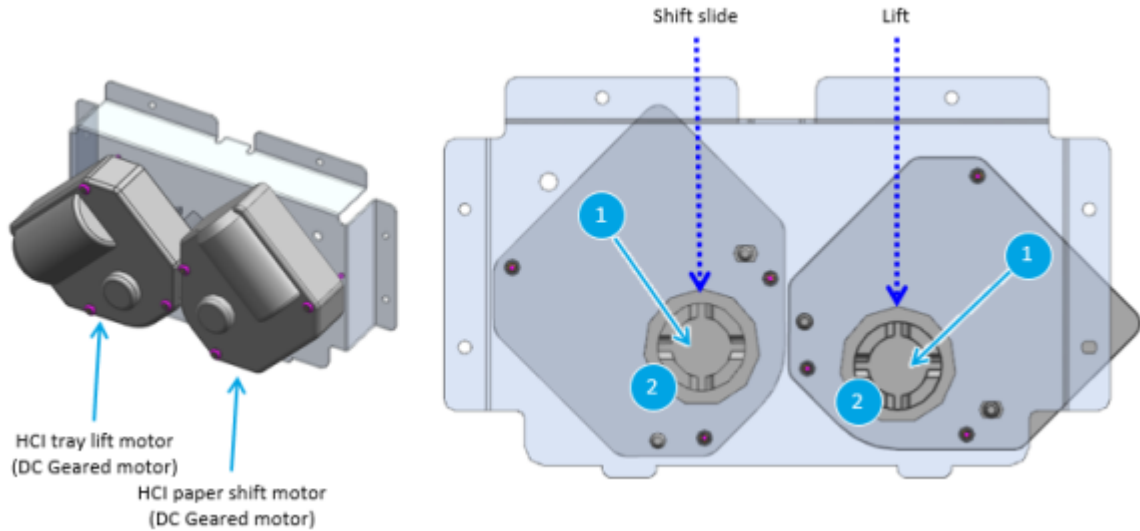
- HCI (Tray 4) pickup driving: 1 HCI (Tray 4) pickup motor > 2 gear (pickup roller, reverse roller)

Figure 3-209 HCI (Tray 4) motor operation, view 2



- HCI (Tray 4) feed driving: 1 HCI (Tray 4) feed motor > 2 pulley & gear (feed roller) > 3 gear & coupler (trans roller)

Figure 3-210 HCI (Tray 4) motor operation, view 3



- HCI (Tray 4) paper shift driving: 1 HCI (Tray 4) paper shift motor > 2 coupler (shift plate)
- HCI (Tray 4) tray lift motor: 1 HCI (Tray 4) tray lift motor > 2 coupler (knock-up plate)

HCI (Tray 4) PCA

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) PCA.

HCI (Tray 4) PCA connects to the formatter to control the HCI operation.

- HCI (Tray 4) PCA part number: 6GW57-60001 (P201)

Figure 3-211 HCI (Tray 4) PCA

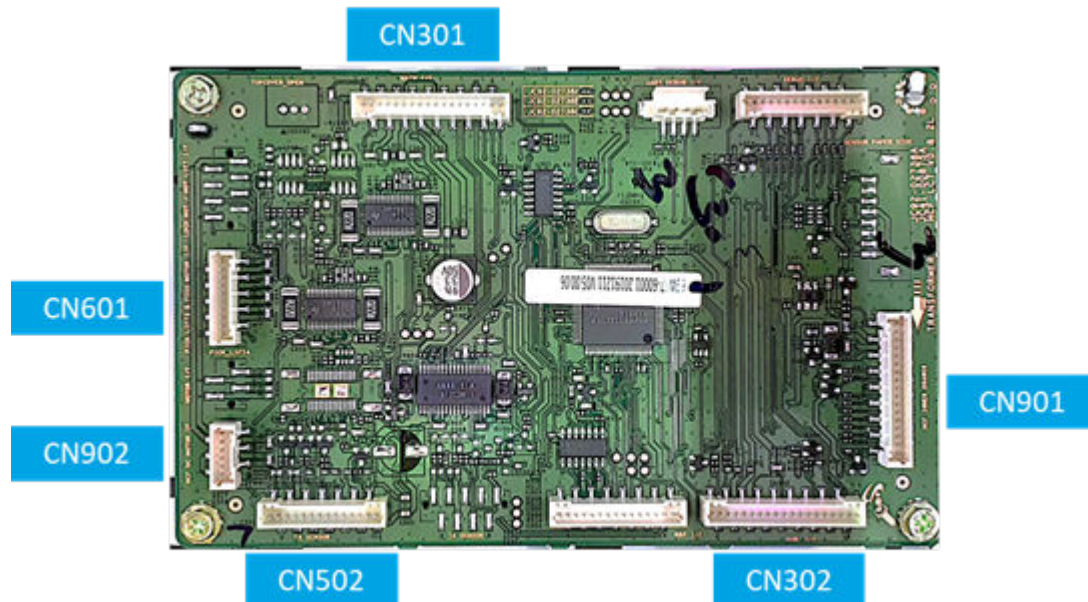


Table 3-129 HCI (Tray 4) PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Cn Number Error code when disconnected
HCI-CN301	Main-J56	18pin	JC39-02605A	Tray 4 not recognized
HCI-CN302	sHCI-CN301	18pin	JC39-02604A	-
HCI-CN502	Tray 4 paper empty sensor Tray 4 stack height sensor Prefeed 4 sensor Tray 4 feed sensor	-	JC39-02280A, JC39-02281A	Tray 4 empty
HCI-CN601	Tray 4 pickup motor Tray 4 feed motor Tray 4 right door open sensor	10pin	JC39-02279A	Close the tray 4 right door
HCI-CN901	HCIsub-CN5 HCI tray open sensor	17pin	JC39-02286A	-
HCI-CN902	Tray 4 lift motor Tray 4 shift motor	6pin	JC39-02282A	-

HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA.

The HCI sub PCA is a joint board to communicate with the sensors inside the shift tray and the HCI PCA.

- HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA part number: JC92-02792A (P202)

Figure 3-212 HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA

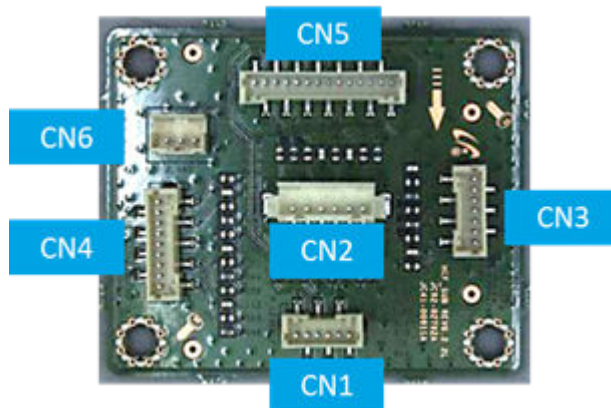


Table 3-130 HCl (Tray 4) sub PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
HClsub-CN1	Tray 4 shift tray level sensor 1 Tray 4 shift tray level sensor 2	6pin	JC39-02351A
HClsub-CN2	Tray 4 shift tray home sensor Tray 4 shift tray end sensor	6pin	5QK03-50013
HClsub-CN3	Tray 4 shift tray empty sensor Tray 4 knock-up home sensor	7pin	5QK03-50013
HClsub-CN4	Tray 4 shift tray solenoid home sensor	9pin	JC39-02355A
HClsub-CN5	HCl-CN302	14pin	JC39-02356A
HClsub-CN6	Tray 4 shift gate solenoid	3pin	-

Department Side High Capacity Input device (sHCl, Tray 5 or 6)

Learn more about Department Side High Capacity Input device (sHCl, Tray 5 or 6).

The Side High Capacity Input (sHCl) device is an optional input tray which can be installed on the right side of the DCF or HCl to provide additional paper capacity for in the printer. The sHCl consists of a lift tray that supplies papers to the pickup, and the feeding system that supplies papers to the base printer.



NOTE: The Side High Capacity Input (sHCl) device becomes Tray 5 or Tray 6 depending on the tray type installed at the base printer.

- HCl Tray 4 installed > sHCl Tray 5
- DCF Tray 4, Tray 5 installed > sHCl Tray 6

sHCl (Tray 5 or 6) covers

Learn about the sHCl (Tray 5 or 6) cover.

Figure 3-213 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) covers

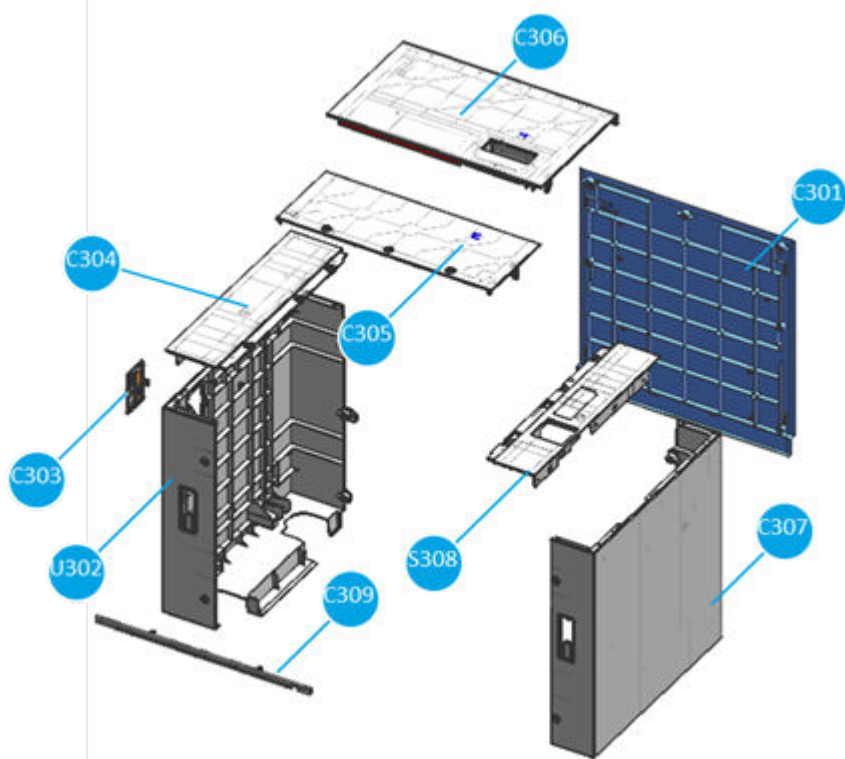


Table 3-131 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) covers

Callout	Part name	Part number
C301	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) right cover	5QK08-40020
C302	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) rear cover	5QK08-40025
C303	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) harness right cover	5QK08-40018
C304	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) rear top cover	5QK08-40024
C305	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup cover	5QK08-40019
C306	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) top cover	5QK08-61018
C307	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) front cover	5QK08-40026
C308	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) front top cover	5QK08-40027
C309	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) left cover	5QK08-40028

Figure 3-214 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) front links

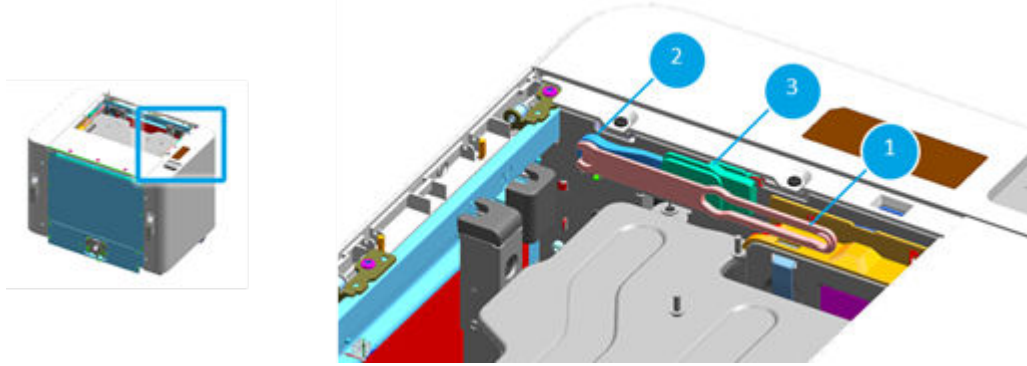


Table 3-132 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) front links

Callout	Part name	Part number
1	Link door 1st front	JC66-04279A
2	Link door 2nd front	JC66-04277A
3	Link holder front	JC61-06567A

Figure 3-215 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) rear links

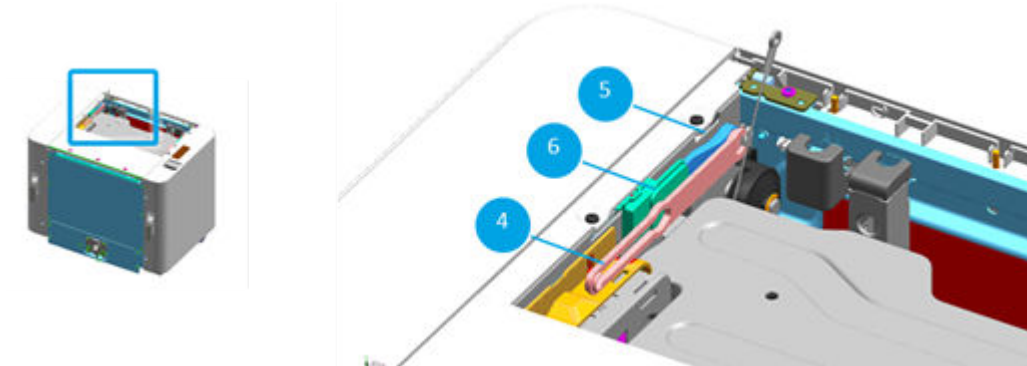


Table 3-133 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) rear links

Callout	Part name	Part number
4	Link door 1st rear	JC66-04279A
5	Link door 2nd rear	JC66-04278A
6	Link holder rear	JC61-06568A

sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feeding system workflow

Learn about the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feeding system workflow.

Figure 3-216 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feeding system workflow

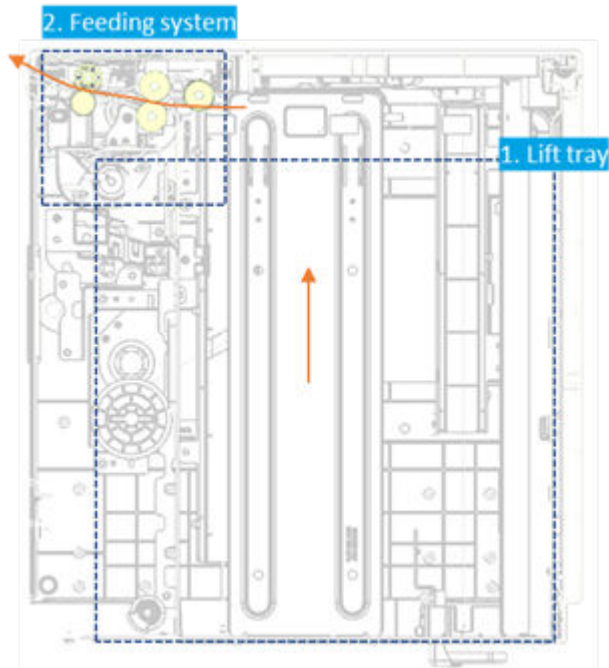


Table 3-134 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feeding system workflow

Callout	Part name	Part number
1	Lift tray	Stores paper for printing
2	Feeding system	Picks up and transfers paper to the base printer feeding system

Figure 3-217 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feeding system workflow

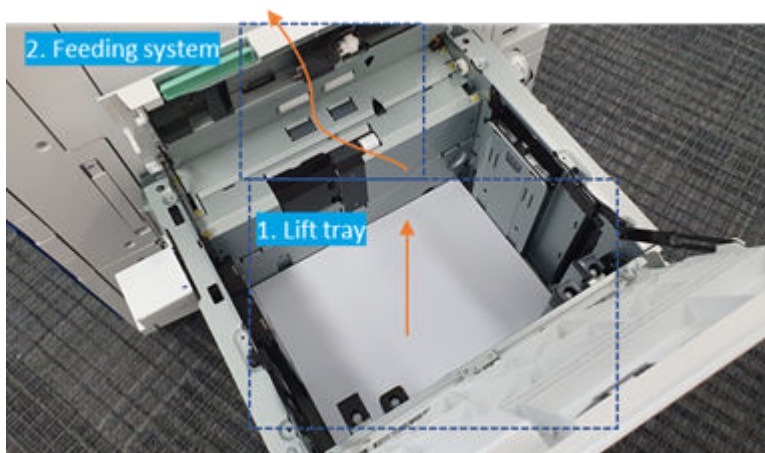


Table 3-135 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feeding system workflow

Callout	Part name	Part number
1	Lift tray	Stores paper for printing
2	Feeding system	Picks up and transfers paper to the base printer feeding system

sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) unit

Learn about the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) unit.

Figure 3-218 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) unit

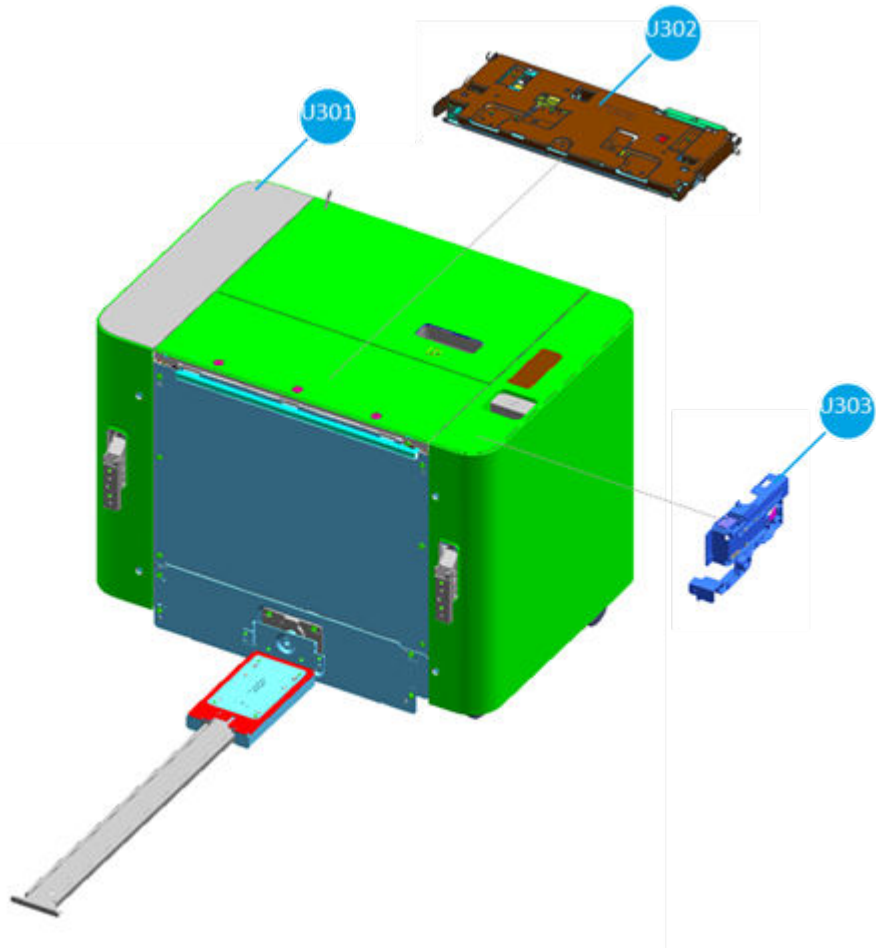


Table 3-136 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U301	sHCI unit	6GW56-67001	-
U302	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup assembly	5QJ98-60014	-
U303	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) top cover open switch assembly	JC93-01123A	Locks the pickup cover and the top cover and checks whether covers are open

sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) roller

Learn about the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) rollers.

Figure 3-219 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) rollers

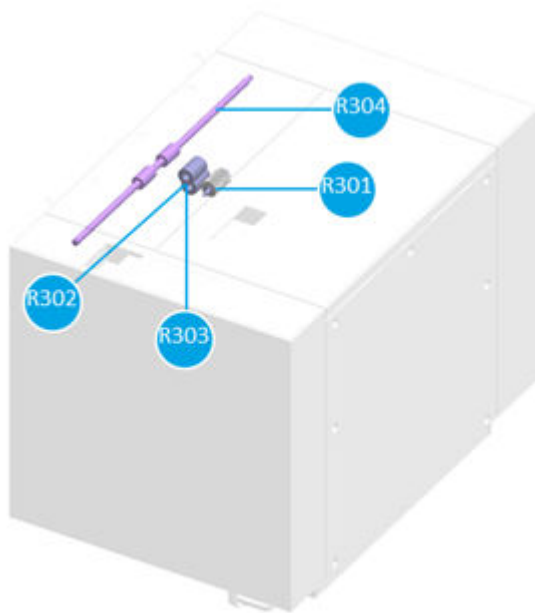


Table 3-137 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) rollers

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U303	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup unit	5QJ98-60014	-
K301	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) roller kit	5PN66-67001	-
R301	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper
R302	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the Tray 5 feed roller
R303	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multi-feeding
R304	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feed roller	JC66-04606A	Moves paper to the base printer feeding system

Figure 3-220 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) rollers

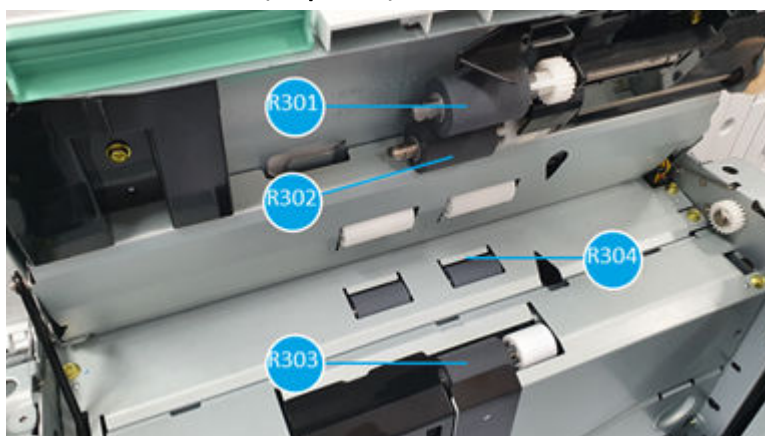


Table 3-138 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) rollers

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R301	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper
R302	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the Tray 5 feed roller
R303	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multi-feeding
R304	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feed roller	JC66-04606A	Moves paper to the base printer feeding system

sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) sensors

Learn about the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) sensors.

Figure 3-221 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) sensors

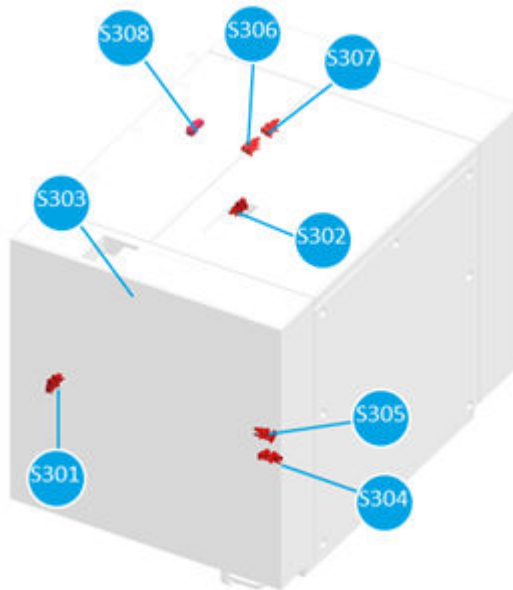


Table 3-139 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S301	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) detection sensor 1	0604-001393	Checks the installation of the sHCI to the base printer
S302	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) detection sensor 2	0604-001393	Checks the installation of the sHCI to the base printer
U303	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) top cover open switch assembly	JC93-01123A	-
S303	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) door open switch	JC39-02346A	Checks whether the sHCI top cover is open
S304	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) paper level sensor 1	0604-001393	Checks the paper level on the tray
S305	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) paper level sensor 2	0604-001393	Checks the paper level on the tray

Table 3-139 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) sensors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S306	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) stack height sensor	0604-001393	Sets the proper height of the paper to make contact with the pickup roller
S307	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) paper empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray has paper
S308	Prefeed 5 sensor	0604-001490	Checks whether paper is properly picked up

Figure 3-222 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) sensors, view 1

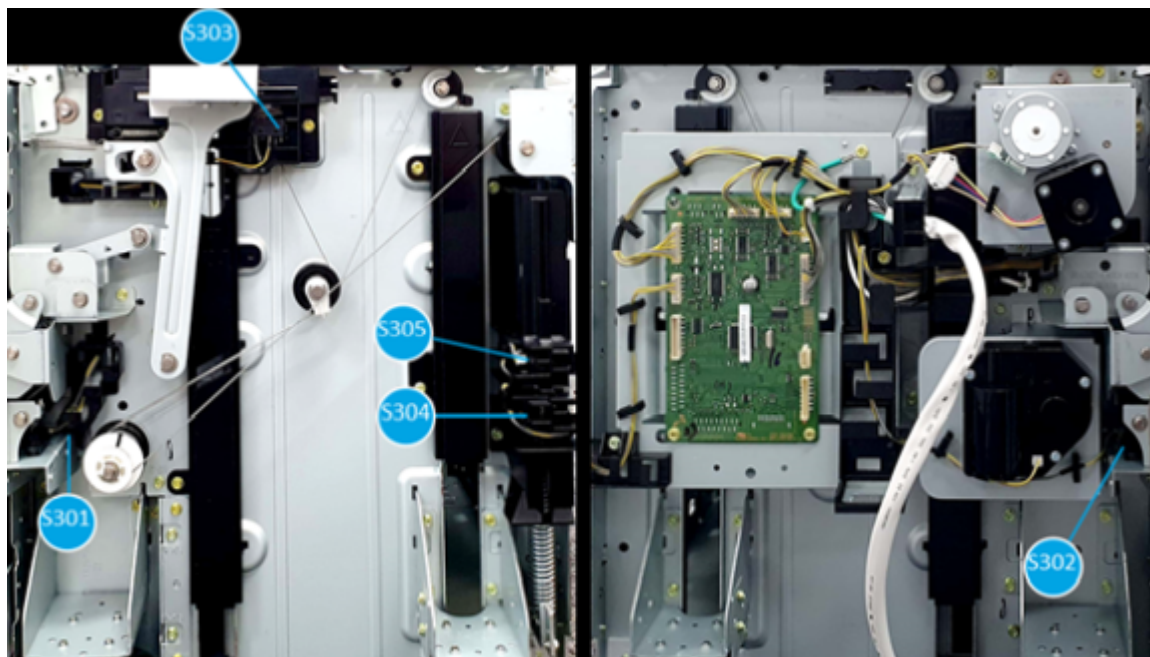


Table 3-140 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) sensors, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S301	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) detection sensor 1	0604-001393	Checks the installation of the sHCI to the base printer
S302	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) detection sensor 2	0604-001393	Checks the installation of the sHCI to the base printer
S303	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) door open switch	JC39-02346A	Checks whether the sHCI top cover is open
S304	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) paper level sensor 1	0604-001393	Checks the paper level on the tray
S305	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) paper level sensor 2	0604-001393	Checks the paper level on the tray

Figure 3-223 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) sensors, view 2

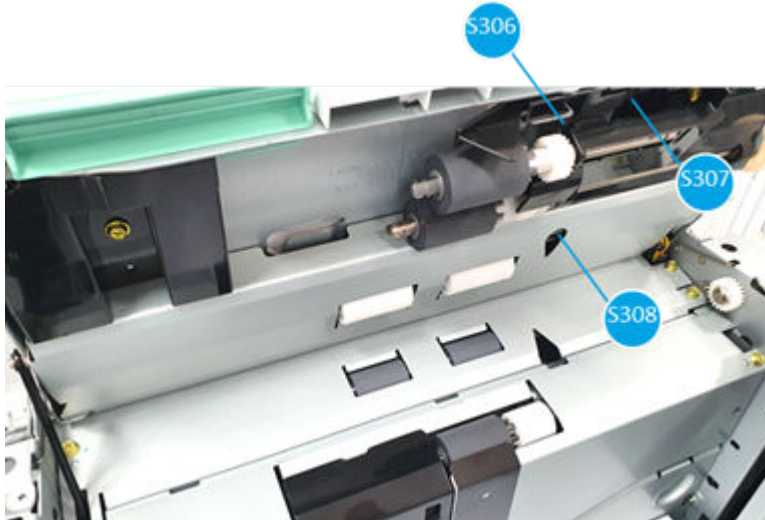


Table 3-141 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) sensors, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S306	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) stack height sensor	0604-001393	Sets the proper height of the paper to make contact with the pickup roller
S307	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) paper empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray has paper
S308	Prefeed 5 sensor	0604-001490	Checks whether paper is properly picked up

sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motors

Learn about the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motors.

Figure 3-224 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motors

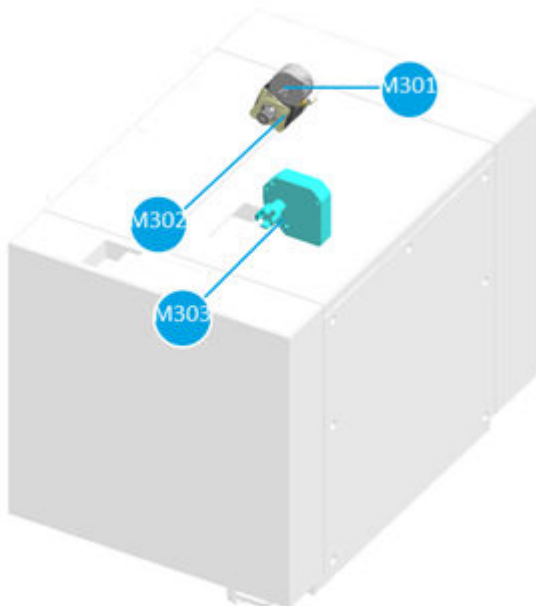


Table 3-142 Overview of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M301	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Picks up paper
M302	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feed motor	JC31-00163A	Drives the Tray 5 feed roller
M303	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) tray lift motor	JC31-00109A	Moves the tray upward so that paper is picked up

Figure 3-225 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motors, view 1

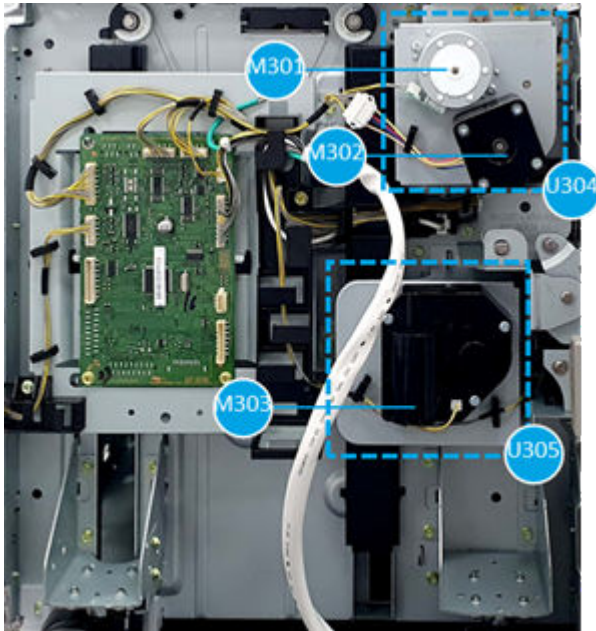


Table 3-143 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motors, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U304	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup, feed drive assembly	JC93-01112A	-
M301	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup motor	JC93-01083A	Picks up paper
M302	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feed motor	JC31-00163A	Drives the Tray 5 feed roller
U305	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) lift drive assembly	JC93-01127A	-
M303	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) tray lift motor	JC31-00109A	Moves the tray upward so that paper is picked up

Figure 3-226 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motors, view 2



Table 3-144 Detail view of sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motors, view 2

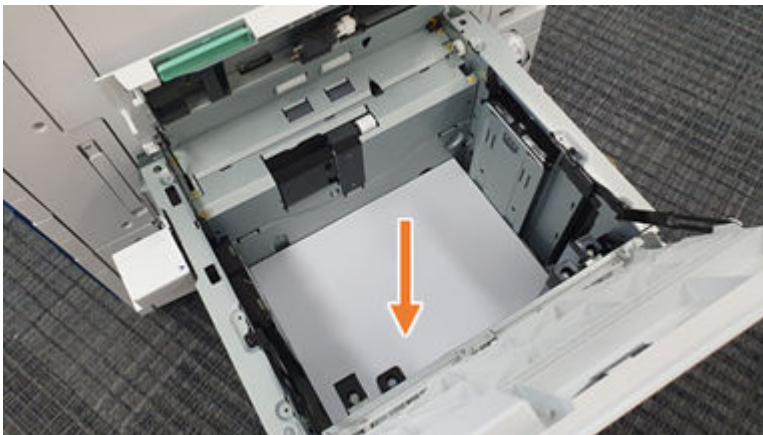
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Knock-up plate	JC93-01129A	-

sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) operation

Learn about the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) operation.

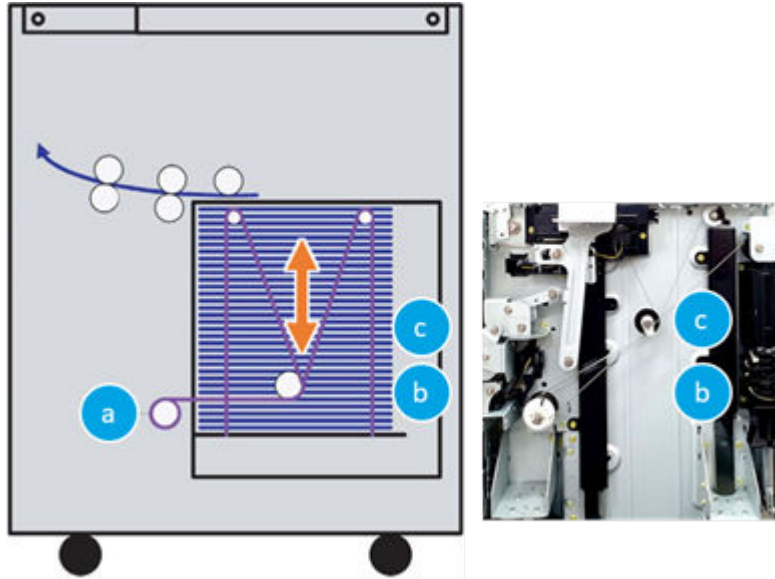
1. When placing paper on the knock-up plate, it goes down by its own weight.

Figure 3-227 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) operation, view 1



2. The amount of paper stored in the tray is detected with two sHCI paper level sensors (callout b, c)

Figure 3-228 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) operation, view 2

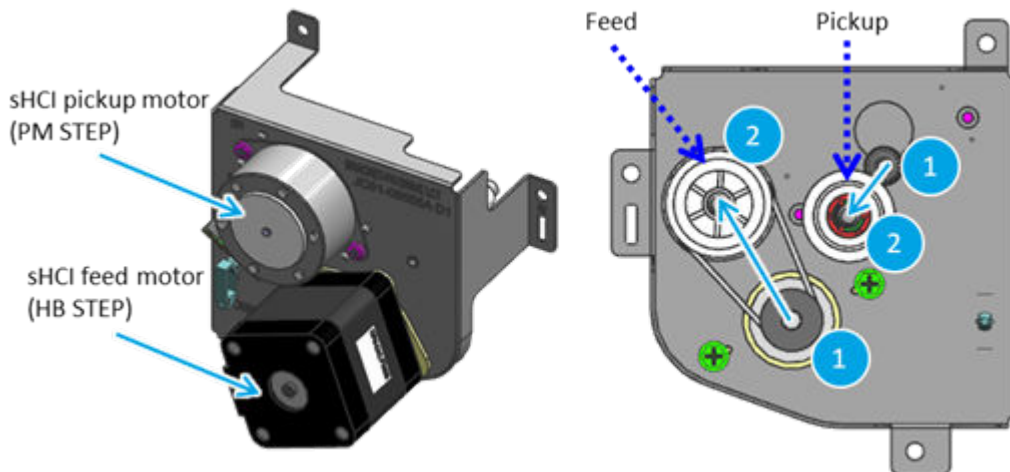


3. When the printing starts, the sHCI tray lift motor (callout a) operates to move the steel wire, and the tray connected to it moves upwards to the point where the signal of sHCI stack height sensor changes.
4. After ready to print, the paper moves by the pickup, forward, and reverse rollers and the prefeed 5 sensor confirms that the paper has been picked up normally.
5. The paper exiting sHCI goes to the base printer.

sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motor operation

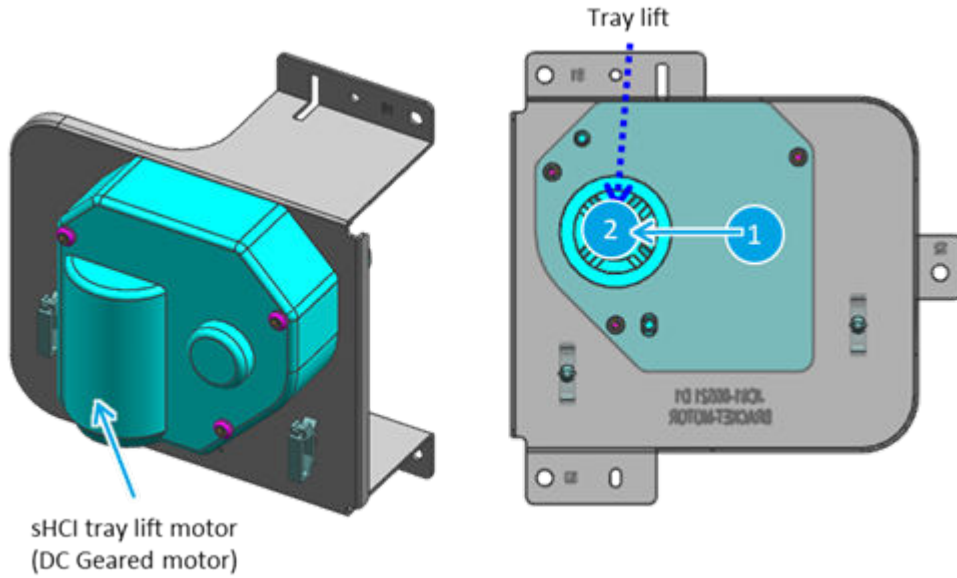
Learn about the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motor operation.

Figure 3-229 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motor operation, view 1



- sHCI pickup driving: 1 sHCI pickup motor >> 2 pulley and gear (pickup roller)
- sHCI feed driving: 1 sHCI feed motor > 2 gear and gear (feed roller)

Figure 3-230 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) motor operation, view 2



- sHCI lift driving: 1 sHCI tray lift motor > 2 coupler (knock-up plate)

sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) PCA

Learn about the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) PCA.

Figure 3-231 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) PCA

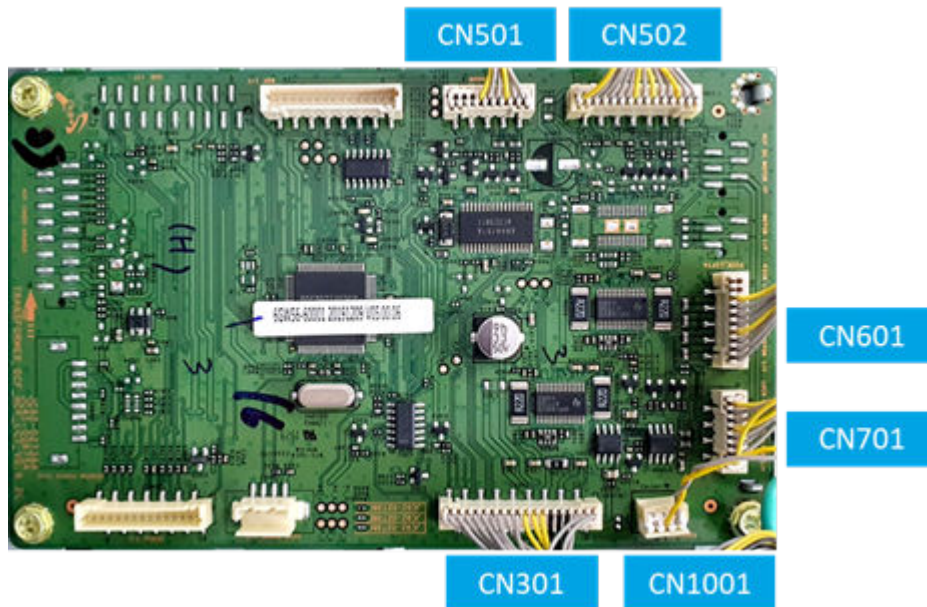


Table 3-145 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	CN Number Error Code when disconnected
sHCI-CN301	Main-J56	18pin	JC39-02294A	sHCI not recognized

Table 3-145 sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) PCA (continued)

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	CN Number Error Code when disconnected
sHCI-CN501	sHCI paper level sensor 1 sHCI paper level sensor 2	9pin	JC39-02288A	-
sHCI-CN502	sHCI paper empty sensor sHCI stack height sensor Prefeed 5 sensor	14pin	JC39-02289A, JC39-02290A	Tray 5 empty
sHCI-CN601	sHCI pickup motor sHCI feed motor	10pin	JC39-02287A	13.A8.D5
sHCI-CN701	sHCI tray lift motor sHCI detection sensor 1 sHCI detection sensor 2	8pin	JC39-02291A	Reattach
sHCI-CN1001	sHCI door open switch	3pin	JC39-02346A	Close the tray 5 cover

Output devices

You will learn more about output devices.

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker

You will learn more about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker.

Detailed Specifications

Learn about the detailed specifications of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker.

Stapler-stacker finisher

Table 3-146 Stapler-stacker finisher detailed specifications

Item		Stapler-stacker finisher	Booklet maker
Speed	PPM	18.3~70,(70ppm)	18.3~70,(70ppm)
Stack Capacity (A4/Letter 80gsm)	Main	3,000 sheets	2,000 sheets
	Top	250 sheets	250 sheets
Paper Size	Main	Statement SEF ~ 320 x 457	Statement SEF ~ 320 x 457
	Top	98 x 148 ~ 13" x 19.2" (330×1200)	98 x 148 ~ 13" x 19.2" (330×1200)
Paper Weight	Main	52 ~ 350 gsm	52 ~ 350 gsm
	Top	52 ~ 300 gsm	52 ~ 300 gsm
Offset (Non Staple)		15mm(minimum)	15mm(minimum)
※Exception SRA3 and larger size.			

Table 3-146 Stapler-stacker finisher detailed specifications (continued)

Item		Stapler-stacker finisher	Booklet maker
Staple	Clinching position	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Front/Rear Corner(45°,Flat) • Dual 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Front/Rear Corner(45°,Flat) • Dual
	Paper weight	52~256 gsm	52~256 gsm
	Capacity	65 sheets (90gsm)	65 sheets (90gsm)
	Cartridge Capacity	5,000 clinching/cartridge	5,000 clinching/cartridge
	Offline	Yes	Yes
Hole Punch	Paper weight	52 ~ 300 gsm	52 ~ 300 gsm
	available unit (Auto change)	NA2/3, EU2/4, Swedish	NA2/3, EU2/4, Swedish

Booklet maker

Table 3-147 Booklet maker specifications

Item		Description
Set Speed	PPM	18.3~70(70ppm)
Paper size		B5 SEF ~ 12" x 18"
Paper weight		60 ~ 120 gsm
Staple + Fold Capacity(80gsm)		25 sheets
Fold Capacity(80gsm)		5 sheets
Tray Capacity		5 sets / 25 sheets
Staple Cartridge Capacity		5,000 clinching/cartridge
C - Folding		3 sheets Letter SEF, A4 SEF (52~90gsm)

Physical

Table 3-148 Physical

Module	Option (Reference)	Size W X D X H [mm]	Module Weight [Kg]	Packed Weight [Kg]
Stapler-stacker		751.7 x 610 x 1016.4	40	62
Booklet maker		751.7 x 610 x 1016.4	62	84.5
	Hole punch	80 x 485 x 235	2.8	4.1

Paper size

Table 3-149 Paper size specification

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position			Punch				Booklet Maker	C-Folding		
	mm	Inches		direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H			Swedish 4H	
					52-350g	Offset	52-300g	45°	Flat		2H	3H	2H				4H
A5	210 X148	8.3X5.8	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	
Statement	216 X140	8.5X5.5	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	
Letter	279 X216	11X8.5	LEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	X	
A4	297 X210	8.3X11.7	LEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	X	
B5(JIS)	257 X182	101×7.2	LEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	X	O	X	X	
B5(ISO)	250 X176	9.8×6.9	LEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	X	O	X	X	
Executive	267 X184	10.5X7.3	LEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	X	
No 9 Env	98X225	3.9X8.9	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Monarch Env	98.4×190.5	3.9×7.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Postcard 4x6	101.6×152.4	4.0×6.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
A6	105 X148	4.1X5.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
No 10 Env	105 ×241	4.1×9.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
DL Env	110×220	4.3×8.7	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
C6 Env	114×162	4.5×6.4	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
B6	128 x182	5.0x7.2	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	

Table 3-149 Paper size specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position			Punch				Booklet Maker	C-Folding		
	mm	Inches		direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H			Swedish 4H	
					52-350g	Offset	52-300g	45°	Flat		2H	3H	2H				4H
Statement	140 X216	5.5X8.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	
A5	148 X210	5.8X8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	
C5 Env	162 x229	6.4x9.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
B5(ISO)	176x250	6.9x9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	X	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	
B5(JIS)	182 X257	7.2X10.1	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	X	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
Executive	184 X267	7.3X10.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	X	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
16k	195 X270	7.7X10.6	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
A4	210 X297	8.3X11.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	O	
Legal	216 X356	8.5X14	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
Letter	216 X279	8.5X11	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	O	
Folio	216 X330	8.5X13	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
Oficio	215.9x342.9	8.5x13.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
C4 Env	229 x324	9.1X12.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Tabloid	254 X374	10 X14.7	SEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	X	O	O	X	

Table 3-149 Paper size specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position			Punch				Booklet Maker	C-Folding		
	mm	Inches		direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H			Swedish 4H	
					52-350g	Offset	52-300g	45°	Flat		2H	3H	2H				4H
B4	257 X364	10X14.3	SEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	X	
8K	270 X390	10.6X15.4	SEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	
Ledger	279 X432	11X17	SEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	
A3	297 X420	11.7X16.5	SEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	
Tabloid Extra	304.8x457.2	12x18	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	X	
SRA3	320x450	12.6x17.7	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
13"x19.2"	330x487	13x19.2	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Custom	W98-320 L139.7-457.2	W3.86-12.59 L5.5-18	-	X	NA	O	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	

* "F/R" means front side and rear side can be supported.

Media performance

Table 3-150 Media performance

Paper Type	Function						
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	HP	BM		
					Cover	Content	C-Fold
Plain (71-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Thick (91-105 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	X	X
Heavy weight (106-175 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	X	X

Table 3-150 Media performance (continued)

Paper Type	Function						
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	HP	BM		
					Cover	Content	C-Fold
Extra Heavy weight 1 (176-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 2 (217-256 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 3 (257-300 g/m ²)	O	O	X	O	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 4 (301-325 g/m ²)	O	X	X	X	X	X	X
Thin (60-70 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Cotton (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	X	X	X	X	X
Colored (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Pre-Printed (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Recycled (60-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Bond	O	O	O	O	O	O	X
Archive (75-105 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	X
Letterhead	O	O	O	O	O	O	X
Pre-Punched	O	O	O	X	X	X	X
Thin Cardstock (105-163 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	X	X	X
Thick Cardstock (170-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X	X	X	X
Heavy Cardstock (217-256 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X	X	X	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 1(257-300 g/m ²)	O	O	X	X	X	X	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 2(301-325 g/m ²)	O	X	X	X	X	X	X
Thin Glossy (106-169 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	X	X
Thick Glossy (170-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X	O	X	X
Heavy Glossy (217-256 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X	O	X	X
Envelope (75-90 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X	X	X	X
Thick Envelope (217-256 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X	X	X	X
Transparency (138~146 gsm)	O	O	X	X	X	X	X
Labels (120~150 gsm)	X	O	X	X	X	X	X
Tab	O	O	X	O	X	X	X

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker covers

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker covers.

Figure 3-232 Front-left view of the stapler-stacker finisher

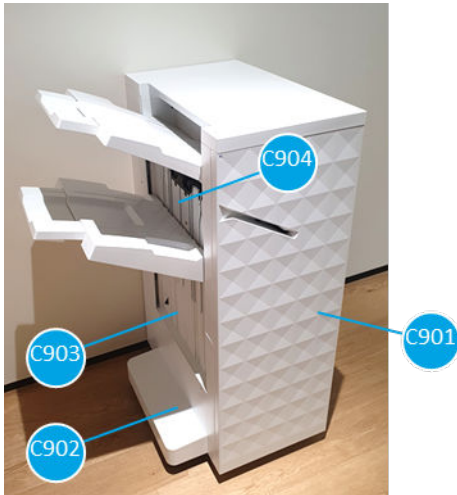


Table 3-151 Front-left view of the stapler-stacker finisher

Callout	Part name	Part number
C901	Front doors	5QK09-60106
C902	Caster cover	JC63-04985B
C903	Left lower cover (stapler-stacker)	5QK09-40041
C904	Left upper cover	5QK09-40040

Figure 3-233 Front-left view of the booklet maker



Table 3-152 Front-left view of the booklet maker

Callout	Part name	Part number
C903-1	Left lower cover (booklet maker)	8GS05-60124
C905	Booklet maker output tray	8GS05-60126

Figure 3-234 Rear-right view of the bookler maker

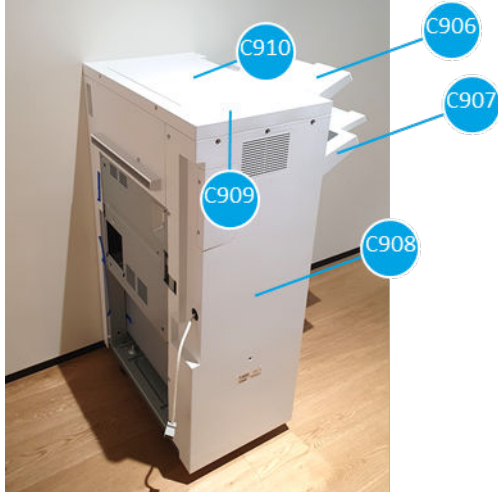


Table 3-153 Rear right view of the booklet maker

Callout	Part name	Part number
C906	Top output tray	5QK09-40027, 5QK09-40029
C907	Main output tray	5QK09-40028, 5QK09-40029
C908	Rear cover	5QK09-40021
C909	Top cover	5QK09-60108
C910		

Figure 3-235 Front view of the bookler maker

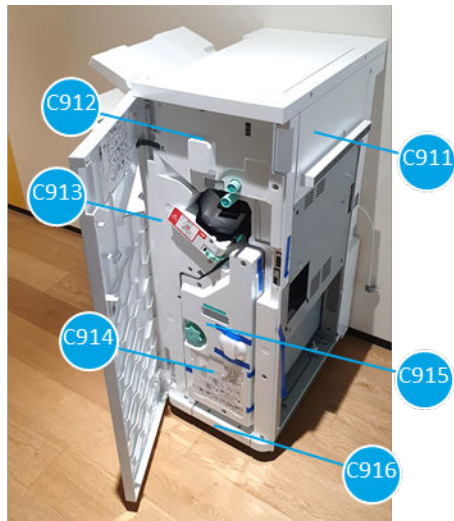


Table 3-154 Front view of the booklet maker

Callout	Part name	Part number
C911	Right uppercover	5QK09-60109
C912	Front cover	5QK09-40019
C913	Front lower cover L	5QK09-40021

Table 3-154 Front view of the booklet maker (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number
C914	Booklet front cover	5QK09-60105
C915	Front lower cover R	5QK09-40022
C916	Front lower cover	5QK09-40020

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker unit overview

You will learn more about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker unit overview.

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow.

Figure 3-236 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow

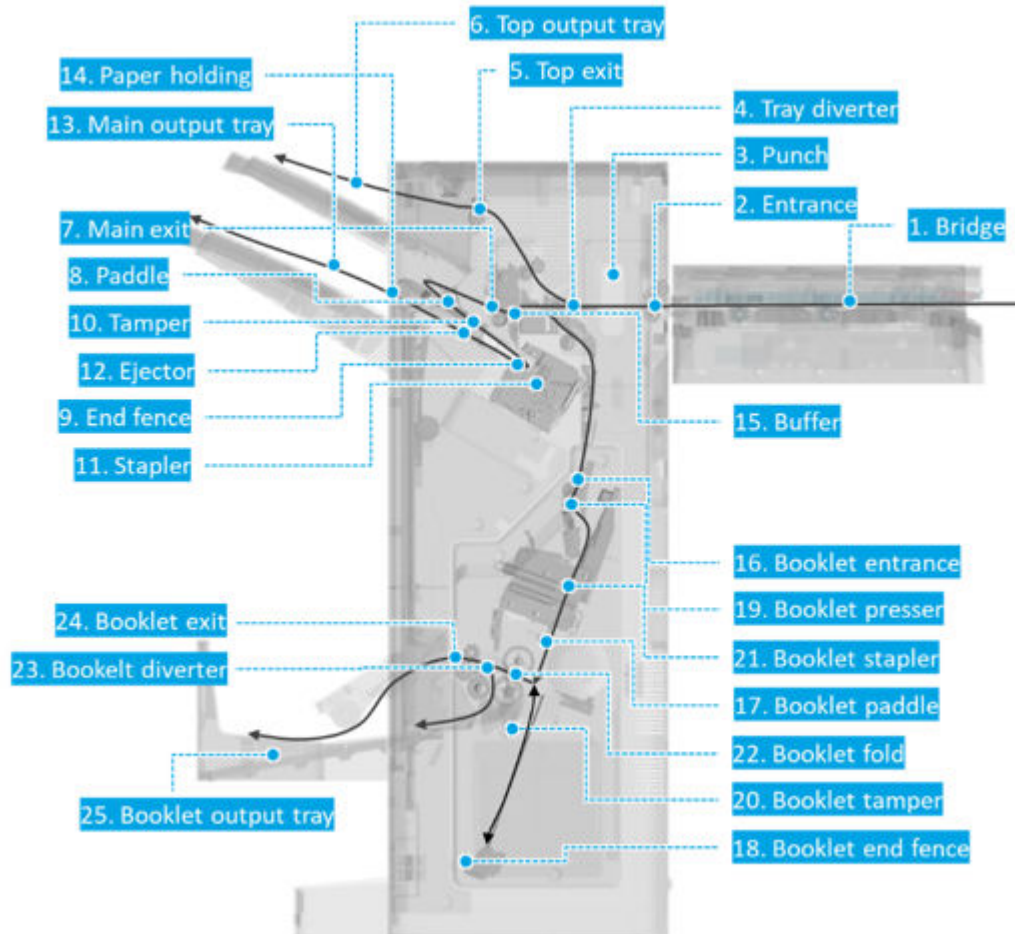


Table 3-155 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow

Item	Unit	Description
1	Bridge unit	Moves paper from the printer to the finisher
2	Entrance unit	Allows the paper to move into the finisher
3	Punch unit (optional)	Makes the holes in a specific location on the paper

Table 3-155 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow (continued)

Item	Unit	Description
4	Tray diverter unit	Changes the paper direction to the main output tray or top output tray
5	Top exit unit	Moves the paper from the diverter to the top output tray
6	Top output tray unit	Loads paper that has completed its printing job
7	Main exit unit	Move sthe paper from the diverter unit to the ejector unit with forward direction or to the buffer unit with backward direction
8	Paddle unit	Pushes to the end fence to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper
9	End fence unit	Sets the standard position of the paper to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper
10	Tamper unit	Aligns the paper on the right and left side
11	Stapler unit	Staples a bundle of an aligned documents
12	Ejector unit	Transfers the stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the output bin
13	Main output tray unit	Loads paper that has completed its printing job
14	Paper holding unit	Keeps the paper stable when ejecting to the output bin and controls the output bin movement
15	Buffer unit	Maintains the paper inside the unit for a while or moves it to the booklet maker
16	Booklet entrance unit	Moves paper into the booklet maker
17	Booklet paddle unit	Moves paper to the booklet end fence
18	Booklet end fence unit	Moves paper to the designated position for folding and stapling
19	Booklet presser unit	Presses the paper that enters to the booklet tamper unit to prevent paper being shuffled
20	Booklet tamper unit	Aligns the paper on the right and left side to make a booklet
21	Booklet stapler unit	Staples a bundle of aligned documents to make a booklet
22	Booklet fold unit	Folds a bundle of aligned documents as a booklet
23	Booklet diverter unit	Changes the paper direction to the booklet exit unit or the location to make a C-fold
24	Booklet exit unit	Moves paper to the booklet output bin
25	Booklet output tray unit	Loads a bundle of booklets

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors.

Figure 3-237 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors, view 1

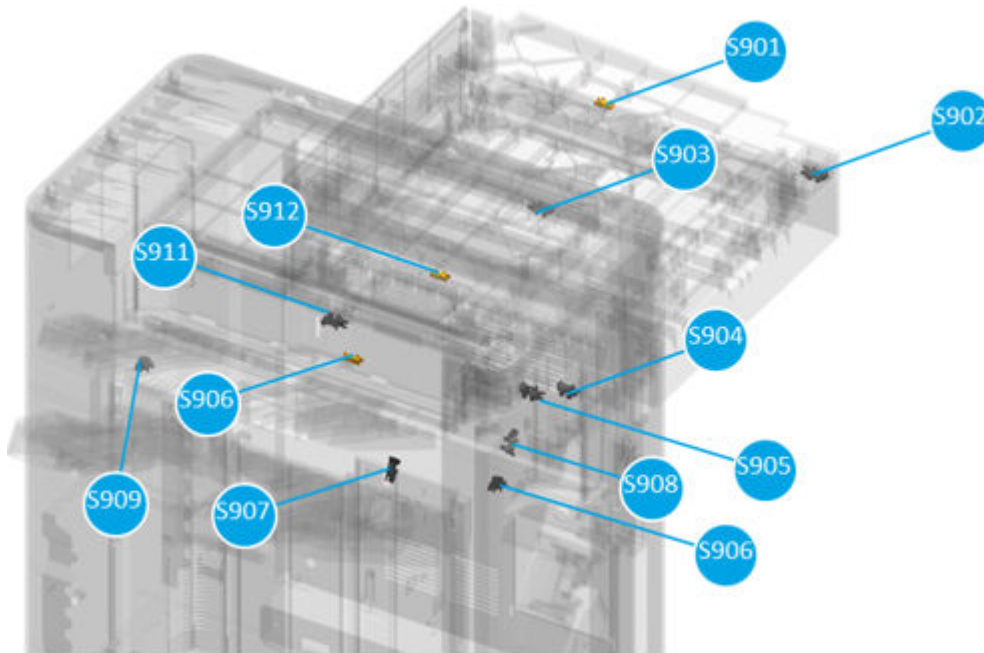


Table 3-156 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors, view 1

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S901	Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes to the bridge entrance unit
S902	Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the bridge door is open
S903	Bridge exitsensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether paper comes to the bridge exit unit
S904	Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the tray diverter sets at the home position
S905	Main exit CAM home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checkss whether the main exit CAM sets at the home position
S906	Front tamperhome sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the front tamper sets at the home position
S907	End fence home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the end fence sets at the home position
S908	Paddle homesensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the paddle sets at the home position
S909	Rear tamperhome sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the rear tamper sets at the home position
S910	Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes to the main exit unit
S911	Top exit sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether paper comes to the top exit unit
S912	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes to the entrance unit

Figure 3-238 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors, view 2

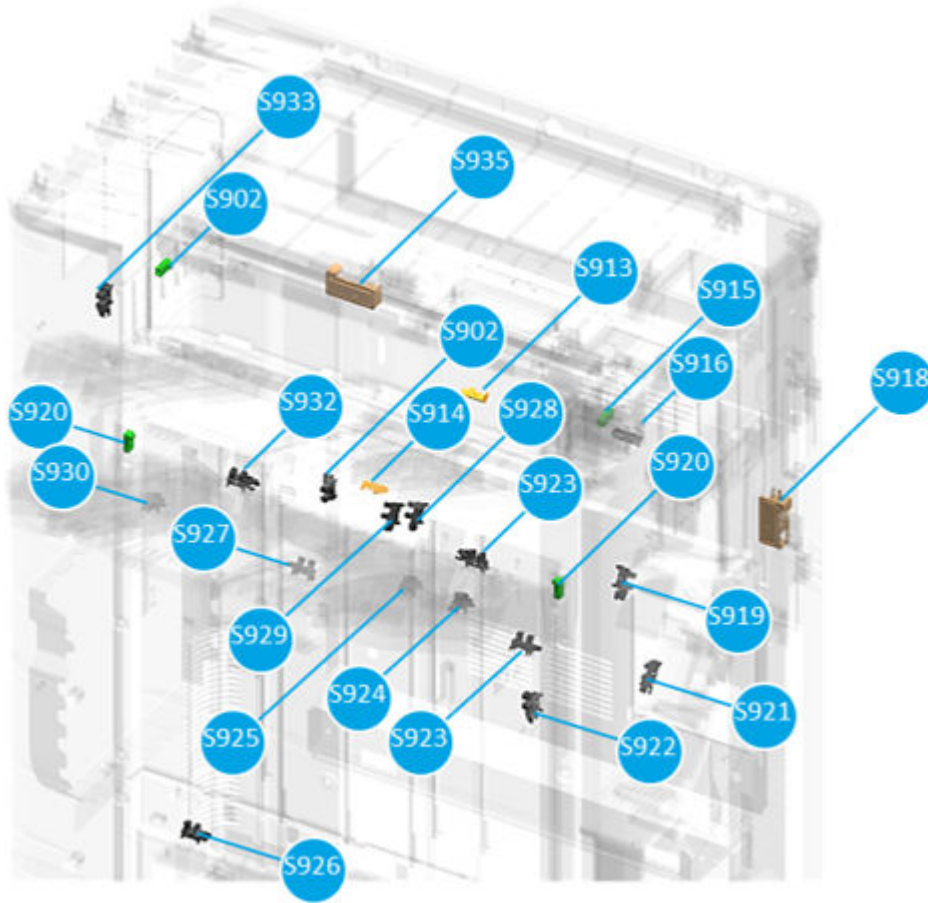


Table 3-157 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors, view 2

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S913	Buffer sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper exits the buffer unit
S914	Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper is on the ejector or not
S915	Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	LED IR, Photo TR	Checks whether the top output tray is full or not
S916	Buffer home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the buffer roller and the idle roller are attached or detached
S917	Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks the location of the paper holding actuator for controlling the position of the main output tray
S918	Front door switch	JC39-02309A	Switch	Checks whether the front door is open
S919	Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether paper comes to the manual staple position
S920	Main output tray top of stack sensor	JC82-01039A	LED IR, Photo TR	Checks whether the main output tray reaches the top of stack
S921	Stapler front sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Places the stapler in the manual stapling position
S922	Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the paper holding actuator sets at the home position

Table 3-157 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors, view 2 (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S923	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector 2 motor is operational
S924	Stapler mid front sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Places the stapler at the exact stapling position
S925	Stapler mid rear sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Places the stapler at the exact stapling position
S926	Main output tray lower limit sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the output tray is full
S927	Ejector1 motor sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector1 motor is operational
S928	Ejector1 end sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector1 sets at the end position
S929	Ejector1 home sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector1 sets at the home position
S930	Stapler rear sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the stapler sets at the home (rear) position
S931	Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks the location of the paper holding actuator for controlling the position of the main output tray
S932	Ejector2 home sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector2 sets at the home position
S933	Main output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the main output tray motor is operational
S934	Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A	Switch	Checks whether the main output tray reaches at the top of stack
S935	Top door switch	JC39-02310A	Switch	Checks whether the top door is open

Figure 3-239 Booklet maker sensors

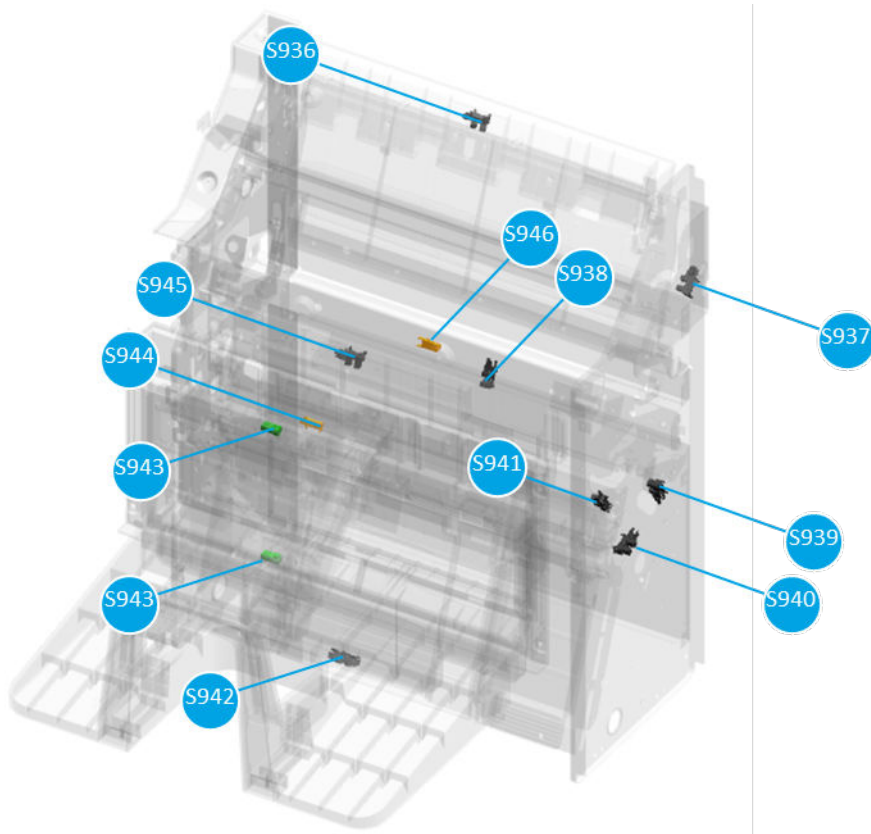


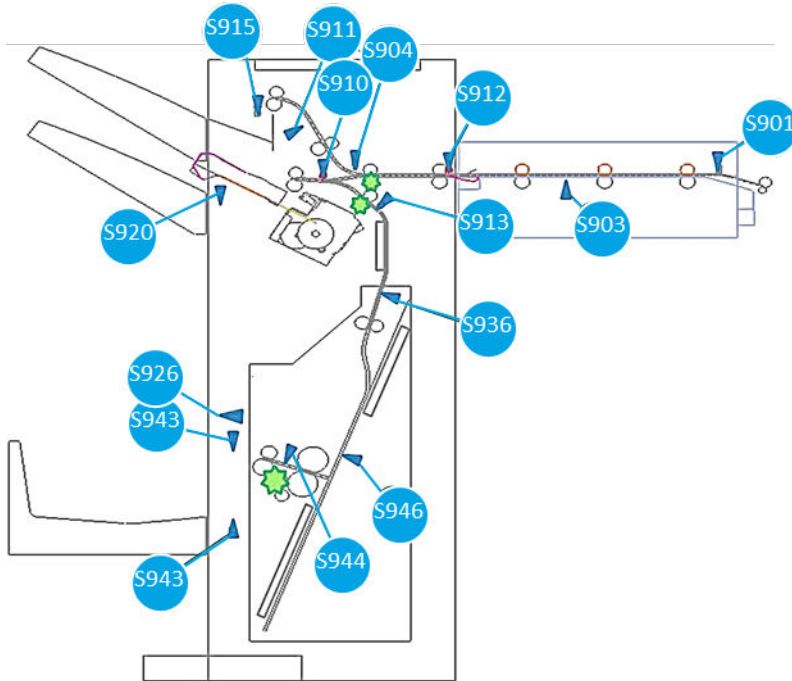
Table 3-158 Booklet maker sensors

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S936	Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the paper comes to the bridge entrance unit
S937	Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet presser sets at the home position
S938	Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet tamper sets at the home position
S939	Booklet C-fold blade home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet C-fold blade sets at the home position
S940	Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet diverter sets at the home position
S941	Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet paddle sets at the home position
S942	Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet end fence sets at the home position
S943	Booklet output tray sensor	JC82-01039A	LED IR, Photo TR	Checks whether the paper goes to the booklet output bin
S944	Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether the paper goes to the booklet exit unit
S945	Booklet blade home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet blade sets at the home position

Table 3-158 Booklet maker sensors (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S946	Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether the paper comes to the booklet tamper unit

Figure 3-240 Paper path sensors



Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids.

Figure 3-241 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids

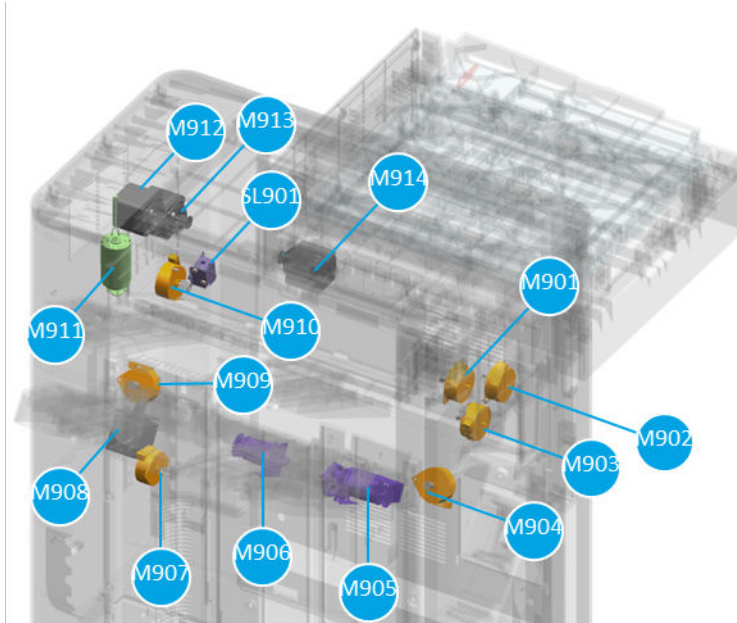


Table 3-159 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
M901	Paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Rotates the paddle and moves the paddle pusher up and downward at the same time
M902	Main exit cam motor	JC93-01155A	Stepping motor	Rotates the main exit cam to detach the exit roller from the exit idle roller
M903	End fence motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Moves the front and rear end fence depending on paper size (width) so that paper is correctly arranged at the end fence
M904	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Moves the front tamper unit
M905	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	DC motor	Moves the ejector 2 and grabs paper
M906	Ejector 1 motor	JC93-01168A	DC motor	Moves the ejector 1 forward and backward
M907	Paper holding motor	8GS05-60104	Stepping motor	Moves paper holding actuator up when paper goes out to the output bin
M908	Stapler position motor	JC31-00163A	Hybrid Stepping motor	Moves the stapler
M909	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Moves the rear tamper unit
SL901	Buffer solenoid	JC33-00038A	Solenoid	Holds paper so that it does not fall out to the booklet maker during the buffering task
M910	Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	Stepping motor	Moves paper to the buffer space or the booklet maker
M911	Main output tray motor	JC31-00178B	DC motor	Moves the main output bin up and down
M912	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Hybrid Stepping motor	Operates the entrance roller, middle roller, and top middle roller when driving forward and moves the diverter cam when driving backward

Table 3-159 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
M913	Exit motor	3SJ19-80501	Hybrid Stepping motor	Rotates the main exit roller and the top exit roller
M914	Bridge motor	3SJ19-80501	Hybrid Stepping motor	Rotates the bridge entrance roller, the bridge middle roller, and the bridge exit roller

Figure 3-242 Booklet maker motors and solenoids

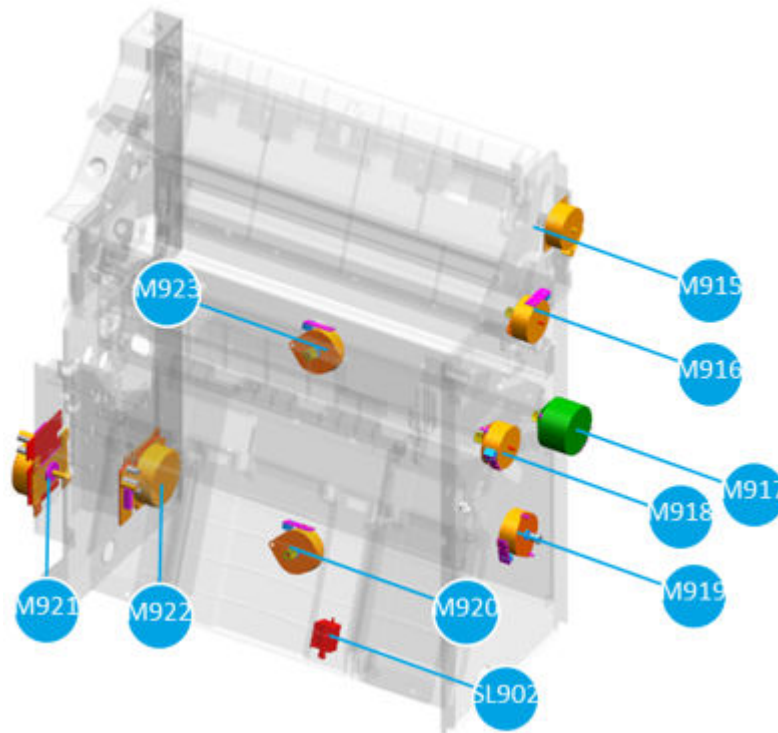


Table 3-160 Booklet maker motors and solenoids

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
M915	Booklet entrance motor	JC93-01152A	Stepping moto	Rotates the booklet entrance roller
M916	Booklet presser motor	JC93-01155A	Stepping moto	Operates the booklet presser
M917	Booklet C-fold blade motor	JC93-01154A	Stepping moto	Drives the booklet C-fold blade and the moving guide
M918	Booklet diverter motor	JC93-01153A	Stepping moto	Drives the booklet diverter
M919	Booklet paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping moto	Rotates the booklet paddle
M920	Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	Stepping moto	Moves the booklet end fence up and down
M921	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	BLDC motor	Rotates the booklet fold roller, the booklet C-fold roller, and the booklet exit roller

Table 3-160 Booklet maker motors and solenoids (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
M922	Booklet blade motor	JC31-00144A	BLDC motor	Drives the booklet blade
M923	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	Stepping motor	Moves the booklet tamper unit
SL902	Booklet end fence solenoid	JC33-00038A	Solenoid	Operates the gripper of the booklet end fence to grip paper that comes to the booklet end fence

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker rollers

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker roller.

Figure 3-243 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker rollers

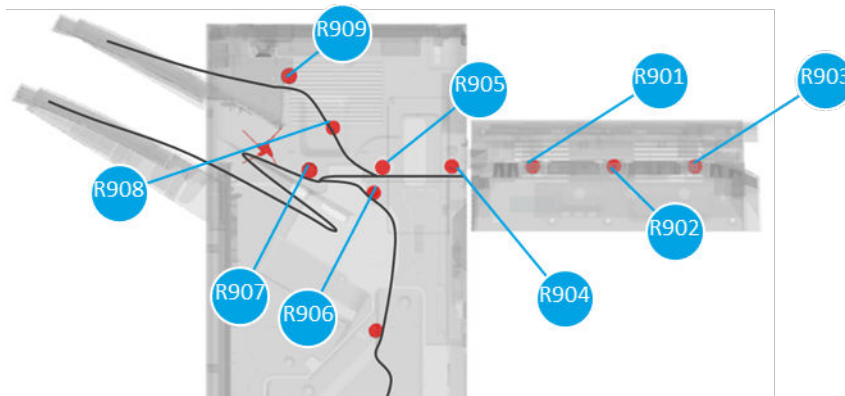


Table 3-161 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker rollers

No	Name	Part number	Description
R901	Bridge exit roller	JC66-04732A	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit
R902	Bridge middle roller	JC66-04732A	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit
R903	Bridge entrance roller	JC66-04733A	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit
R904	Entrance roller	JC66-04722A	Moves paper from the machine to the exit unit
R905	Middle roller	JC66-04724A	Moves paper from the machine to the exit unit
R906	Buffer roller	JC66-05161A	Moves paper to the booklet maker and makes the gap between the buffer roller and the idle roller so that the paper remains there for the buffering process
R907	Main exit roller	JC66-04726A	Moves paper to the ejector unit or the buffer unit and makes the gap between the main exit roller and the idle roller so that paper remains there for the buffering process
R908	Top middle roller	JC66-04725A	Moves paper to the top output bin
R909	Top exit roller	JC66-04727A	Moves paper to the top output bin

Figure 3-244 Booklet maker rollers

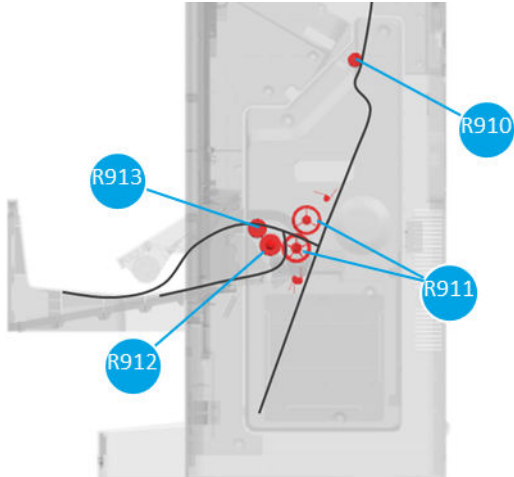


Table 3-162 Booklet maker rollers

No	Name	Part number	Description
R910	Booklet entrance roller	JC66-04717A	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit
R911	Booklet fold roller	JC66-04748A	Presses a stack of paper to fold completely
R912	Booklet c-fold roller	JC66-04744A	In case of C-fold, presses a stack of paper to fold completely
R913	Booklet exit roller	JC66-04721A	Moves paper to the booklet output tray unit

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs.

Figure 3-245 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs

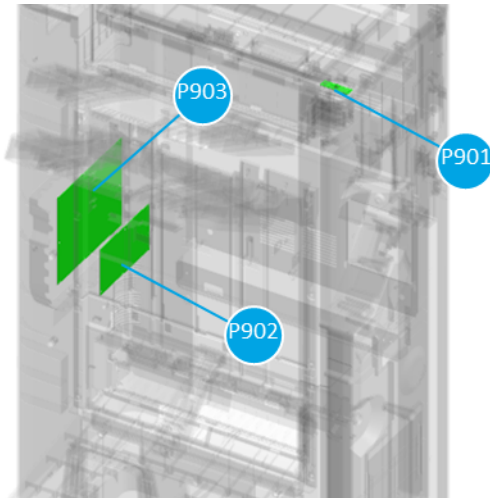


Table 3-163 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs

No	Name	Part number	Description
P901	Manual staple PCA	JC92-02789B	Shows the manual stapling condition and accepts the button input for manual staple

Table 3-163 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Description
P902	Booklet maker PCA	6GW51-60001	Controls the booklet maker module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs
P903	Finisher main PCA	6GW55-60001	Controls the finisher modules and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs
Not shown	Hole punch PCA	-	Controls the hole punch module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs

Bridge unit

You will learn more about the bridge unit.

Bridge unit overview

Learn about the bridge unit.

The bridge unit is the unit that transfers paper from the base printer to the finisher.

The bridge entrance sensor detects whether a paper enters into the bridge unit from the base printer. In the same way, the bridge exit sensor checks whether the paper leaves from the bridge unit to the finisher inside. The bridge motor drives the bridge entrance roller, bridge middle roller, and bridge exit roller. It makes the paper moves through the bridge unit. The jam removal door locating at the front side of the unit helps user to remove the jammed paper.

Figure 3-246 Overview of the bridge unit

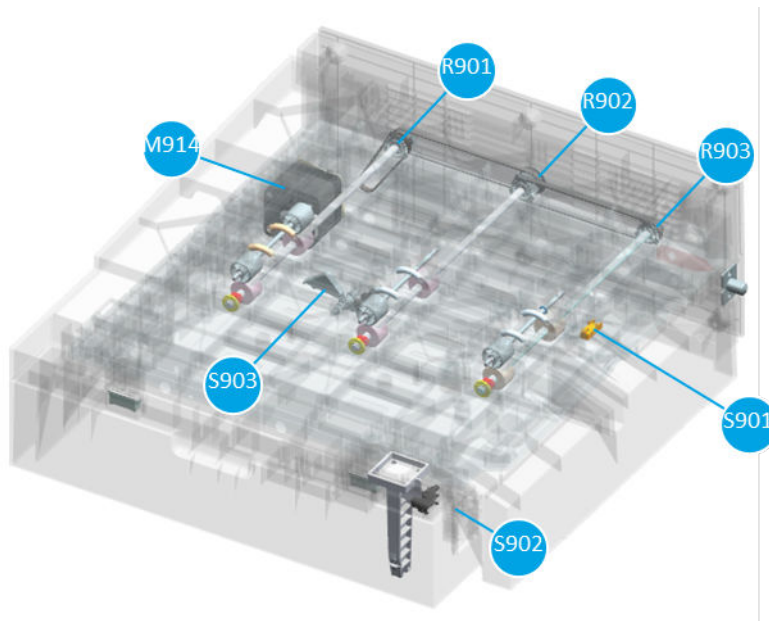


Table 3-164 Overview of the bridge unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S902	Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	Detects if the bridge door is open
S901	Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Checks whether paper comes to the bridge entrance unit
S903	Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper moves out of the bridge unit

Table 3-164 Overview of the bridge unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M914	Bridge motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotates the bridge entrance roller, the bridge middle roller, and the bridge exit roller
R903	Bridge entrance roller	JC66-04733A	Moves paper from the printer to the bridge unit
R902	Bridge middle roller	JC66-04732A	Move paper from the printer to the bridge unit
R901	Bridge exit roller	JC66-04732A	Moves paper from the printer to the finisher entrance unit

Figure 3-247 Detail view of the bridge unit

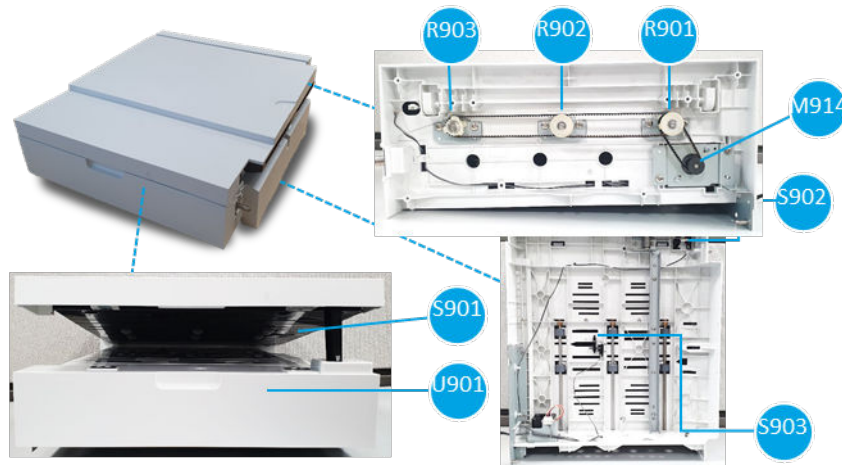


Table 3-165 Detail view of the bridge unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
U901	Bridge unit	5QK09-60110	Moves paper from the printer to the finisher
S902	Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	Detects if the bridge door is open
S901	Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Checks whether paper comes to the bridge entrance unit
S903	Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper moves out of the bridge unit
M914	Bridge motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotates the bridge entrance roller, the bridge middle roller, and the bridge exit roller
R903	Bridge entrance roller	JC66-04733A	Moves paper from the printer to the bridge unit
R902	Bridge middle roller	JC66-04732A	Moves paper from the printer to the bridge unit
R901	Bridge exit roller	JC66-04732A	Moves paper from the printer to the finisher entrance unit

Stapler-stacker finisher

You will learn more about the stapler-stacker finisher.

Entrance unit

You will learn more about the entrance unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Entrance unit overview

Learn about the entrance unit overview.

Entrance unit moves a paper from the bridge unit to the finisher inside. The entrance sensor installed at the right side of the unit senses whether the paper enters into the finisher. The entrance motor rotates forward to drive the entrance roller and the middle roller to move the paper from the entrance unit to the exit area.

Figure 3-248 Overview of the entrance unit

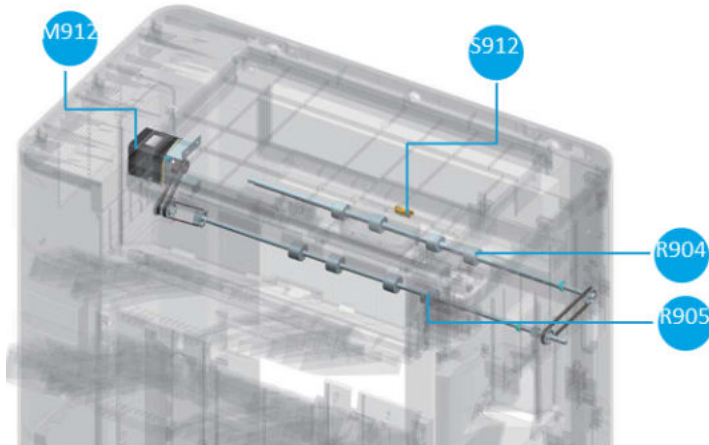


Table 3-166 Overview of the entrance unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S912	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Detects whether paper enters at the entrance unit
M912	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Operates the entrance roller and middle roller when driving forward
R904	Entrance roller	JC66-04722A	Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit
R905	Middle roller	JC66-04724A	Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit

Figure 3-249 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 1

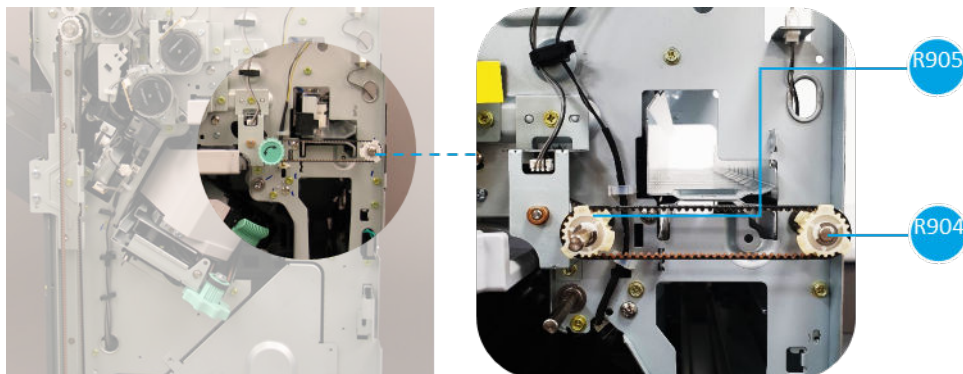


Table 3-167 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
R904	Entrance roller	JC66-04722A	Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit
R905	Middle roller	JC66-04724A	Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit

Figure 3-250 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 2

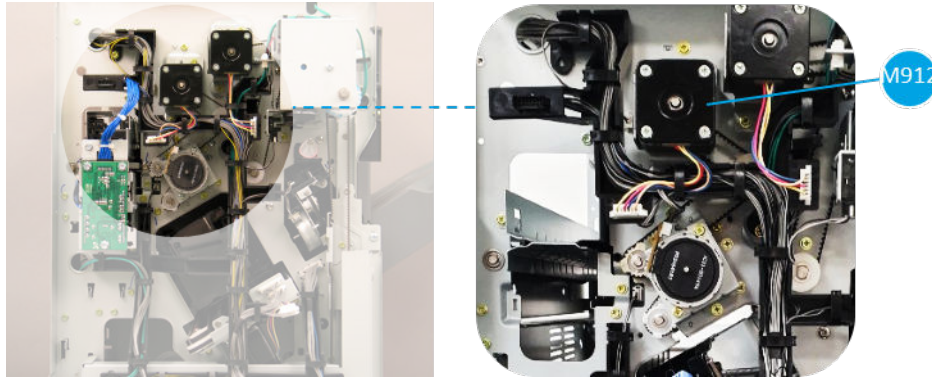


Table 3-168 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M912	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Operates the entrance roller and middle roller when driving forward

Figure 3-251 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 3

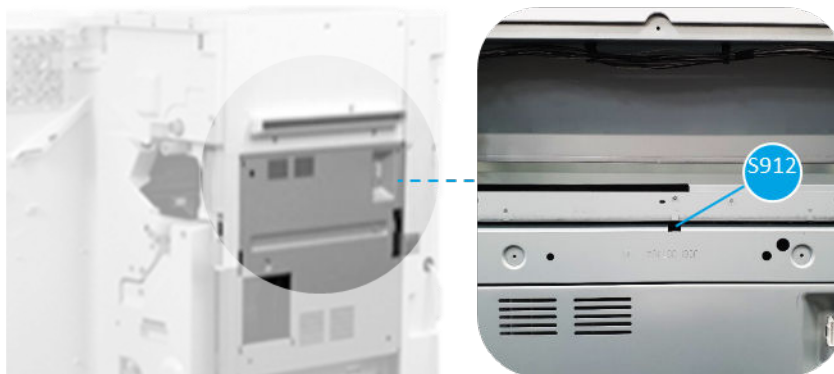


Table 3-169 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 3

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S912	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Detects whether paper enters at the entrance unit

Punch unit (optional)

You will learn more about the punch unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Punch unit overview

Learn about the punch unit overview.

The punch unit is an optional device that punches the holes in a specific location on a sheet of paper. The punch unit is positioned right after the entrance unit.

In case of 2/3 hole punch, the 5 hole-punches are mounted in the punch unit. As the punch motor rotates forward, the inner gear moves to the right and the 3 hole-punches are moved downward to make the holes on the paper. When making 2 holes, the motor rotates in the backward direction and the inner gear

rotates to the left to drill two holes. The travel distance and position of the hole-punches are detected and controlled by the 3 punch position sensors.


 **NOTE:** Puncher types are various depending on the country.

Figure 3-252 Overview of the punch unit

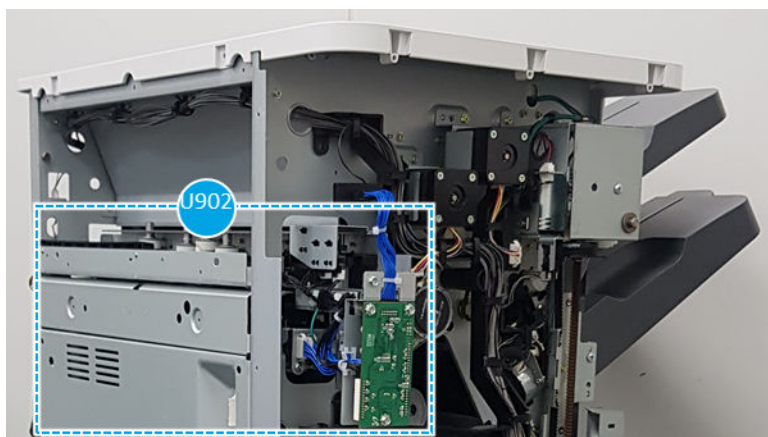


Table 3-170 Overview of the punch unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
U902-1	2-3 hole punch unit	Y1G10-67901	-
U902-2	2-4 hole punch unit	Y1G11-67901	-
U902-3	Swedish hole punch unit	Y1G12-67901	-

Figure 3-253 Detail view of the punch unit

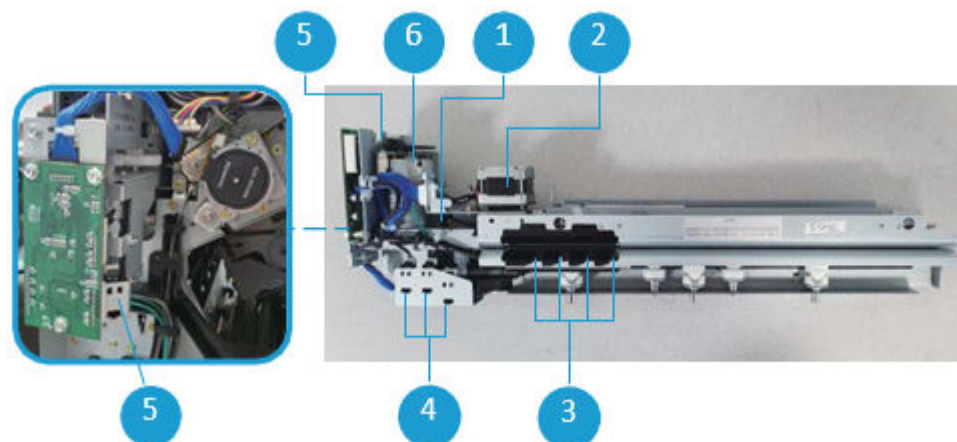


Table 3-171 Detail view of the punch unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Punch scan home sensor	NA	Detects the home position of the punch unit
2	Punch scan motor	NA	Transmits the force to move the punch unit in the horizontal direction
3	Punch scan edge sensor	NA	Checks the paper width to make hole on the right position of paper

Table 3-171 Detail view of the punch unit (continued)

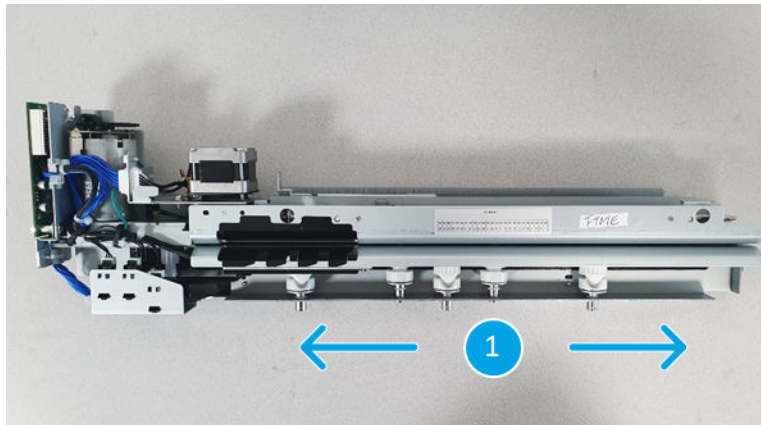
No	Part name	Part number	Description
4	Punch position sensor	NA	Detects the travel distance and position of the hole-punches
5	Punch motor sensor	NA	Checks whether the punch motor is operational
6	Punch motor	NA	Transmits the force to make holes on the paper

Punch unit operation

Learn about the punch unit operation.

1. A paper comes into the punch unit, and it is aligned to drill holes. The motor rotates forward or backward (callout 1), then the punch rail in the punch unit moves in order to move the punch hole makers.

Figure 3-254 Punch unit operation, view 1



2. The punch position sensors determine the punch rail location (callout 2). It drives the punch hole makers up and down to make holes (callout 3).

Figure 3-255 Punch unit operation, view 2

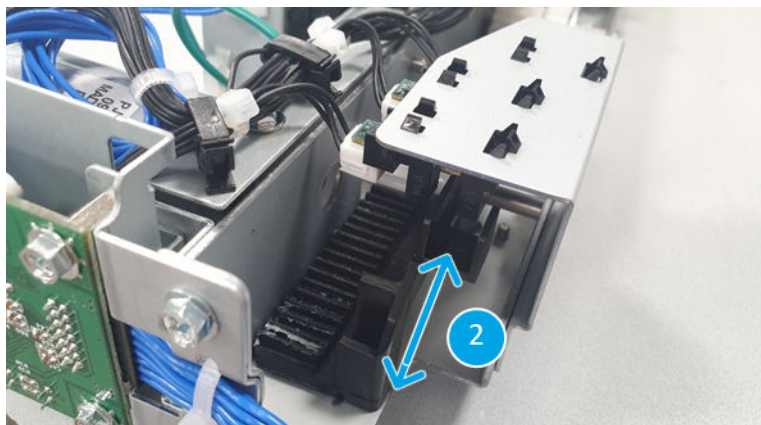
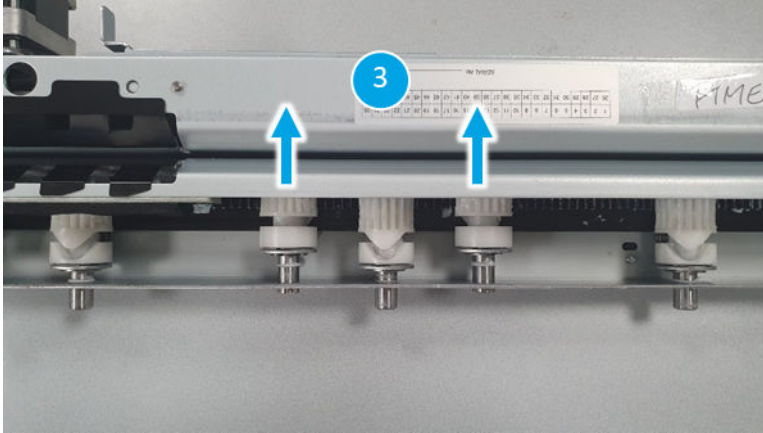
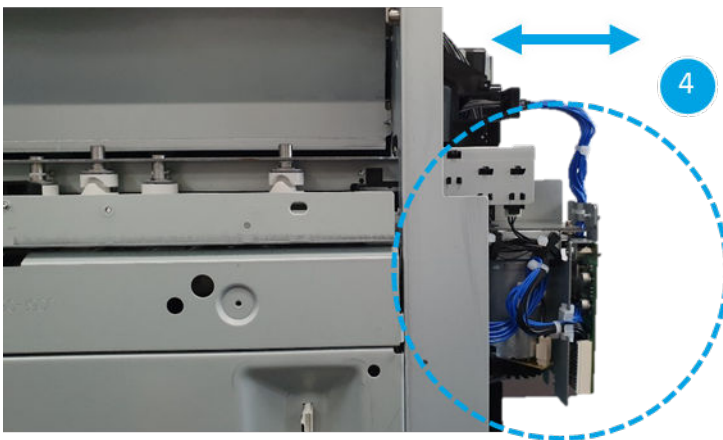


Figure 3-256 Punch unit operation, view 3



3. In some paper sizes, paper might be jammed in a place where punch hole maker is located. Therefore, the punch unit moves left and right (callout 4).

Figure 3-257 Punch unit operation, view 4



Tray diverter unit

You will learn more about the tray diverter unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Tray diverter unit overview

Learn about the tray diverter unit overview.

The tray diverter unit is responsible for determining the paper feed direction so that paper can be ejected to the main output tray or top output tray

The entrance motor rotates this unit. When the entrance motor rotates backward, the phase of the diverter CAM changes so that the paper path direction changes. The tray diverter home sensor (S4) checks whether the tray diverter is located at the home position or not.

Figure 3-258 Overview of the tray diverter unit

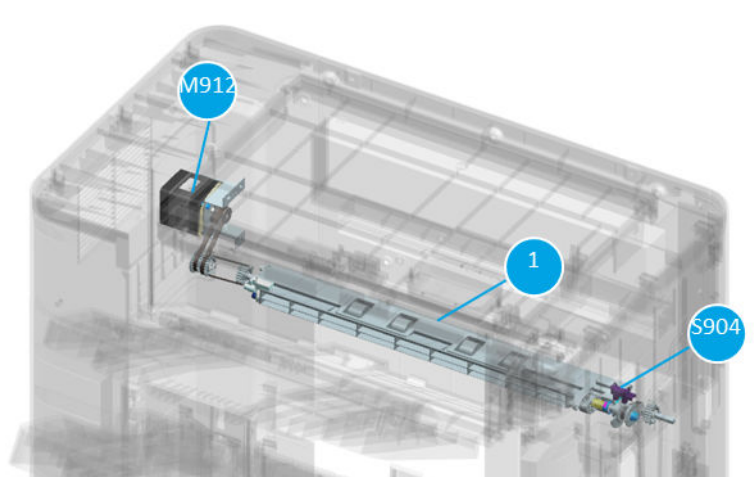


Table 3-172 Overview of the tray diverter unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Tray diverter	JC61-07205A	Selects the paper path of either the main output tray or the top output tray
S904	Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Checks whether home position of the tray diverter
M912	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Operates the tray diverter cam when driving in the backward direction

Figure 3-259 Detail view of the tray diverter unit, view 1

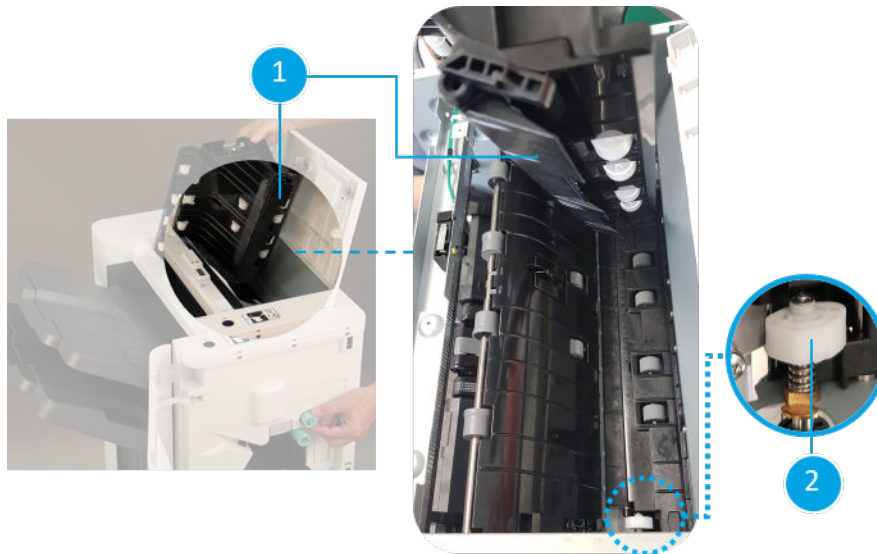


Table 3-173 Detail view of the tray diverter unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Tray diverter	JC61-07205A	Selects the paper path of either the main output tray or the top output tray
2	Tray diverter cam	JC66-04560A	Changes the paper path

Figure 3-260 Detail view of the tray diverter unit, view 2

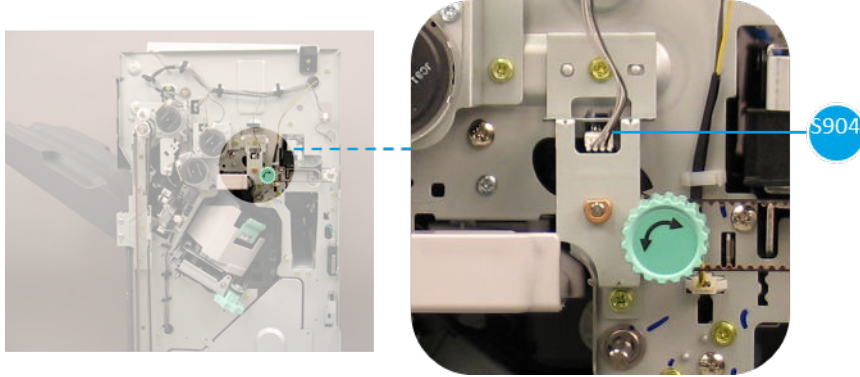


Table 3-174 Detail view of the tray diverter unit, view 2

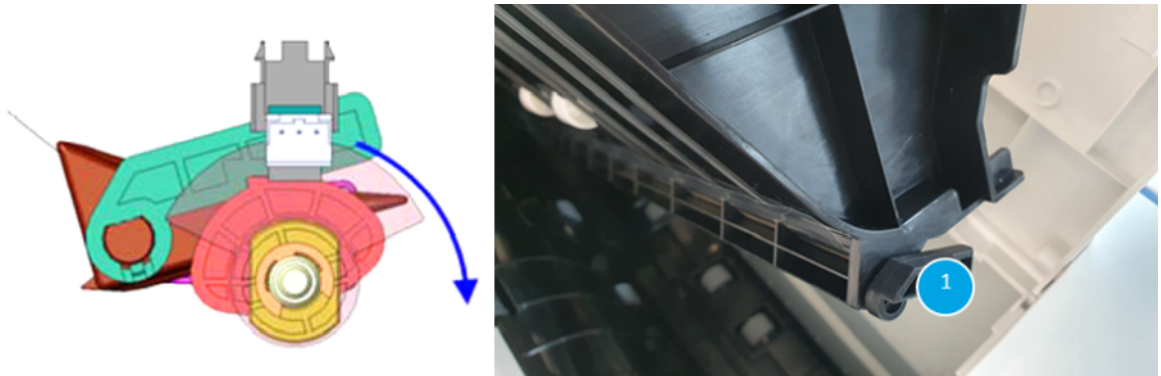
No	Part name	Part number	Description
S904	Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Checks whether home position of the tray diverter

Tray diverter unit operation

Learn about the tray diverter unit operation.

1. When printing out the document to the main output tray, the entrance motor rotates (callout 1) so that the tray diverter moves downwards to move the paper out to the main output tray.

Figure 3-261 Tray diverter unit operation, view 1



2. In case of top output tray, the diverter cam moves. The tray diverter moves upwards (callout 2) so that the paper moves out to the top output tray.

Figure 3-262 Tray diverter unit operation, view 2



Top exit unit

You will learn more about the top exit unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Top exit unit overview

Learn about the top exit unit overview.

The top exit unit sends paper from the tray diverter unit to the top output tray unit.

The top exit sensor detects paper entry into the top exit unit. The entrance motor drives the top middle roller, and the exit motor transmit the force to rotate the top exit roller so that paper moves to the top output tray unit.

Figure 3-263 Overview of the top exit unit

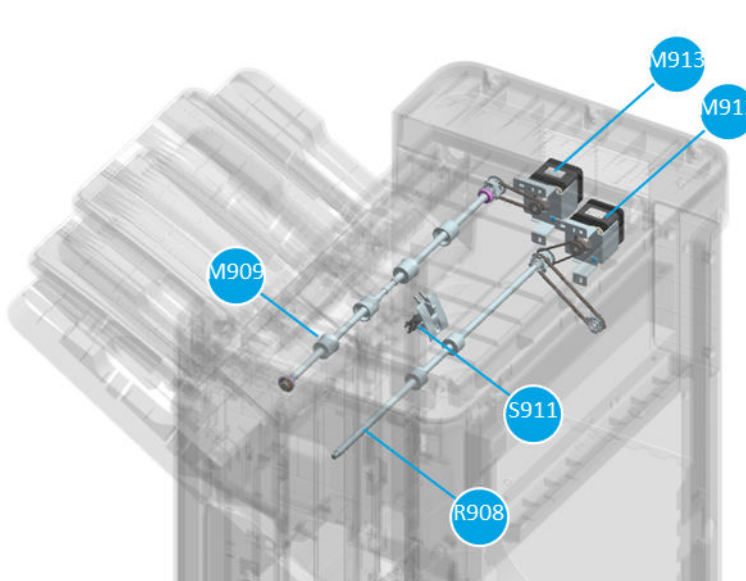


Table 3-175 Overview of the top exit unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S911	Top exit sensor	0604-001393	Check whether the paper has entered at the top exit unit
M912	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotate the top middle roller when driving in the forward direction
M913	Exit motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotate the top exit roller

Table 3-175 Overview of the top exit unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
R908	Top middle roller	JC66-04725A	Move the paper to the top output tray
R909	Top exit roller	JC66-04725A	Move the paper to the top output tray

Figure 3-264 Detail view of the top exit unit

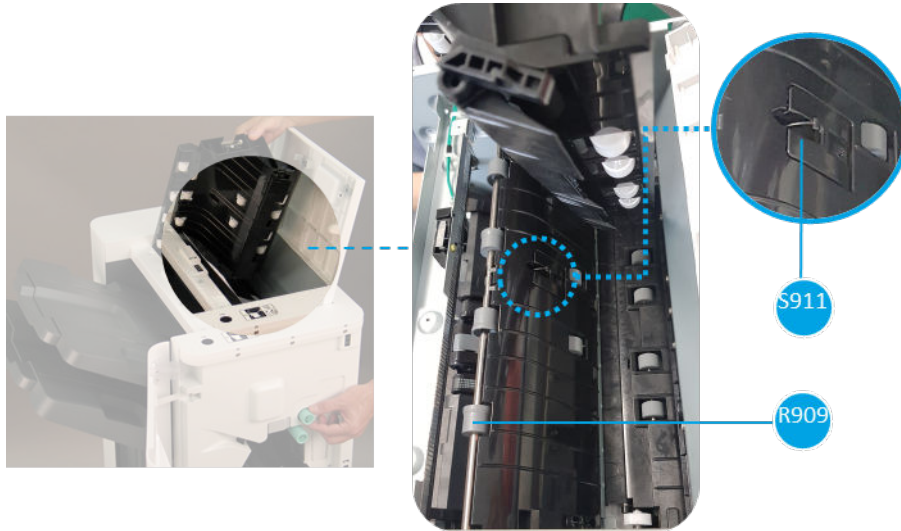


Table 3-176 Detail view of the top exit unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S911	Top exit sensor	0604-001393	Check whether the paper has entered at the top exit unit
R909	Top exit roller	JC66-04725A	Move the paper to the top output tray

Top output tray unit

You will learn more about the top output tray unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Top output tray unit overview

Learn about the top output tray unit overview.

The top output tray unit loads discharged paper from the finisher. It has the paper pull sensor to detect whether the tray is full with the paper.

Figure 3-265 Overview of the top output tray unit

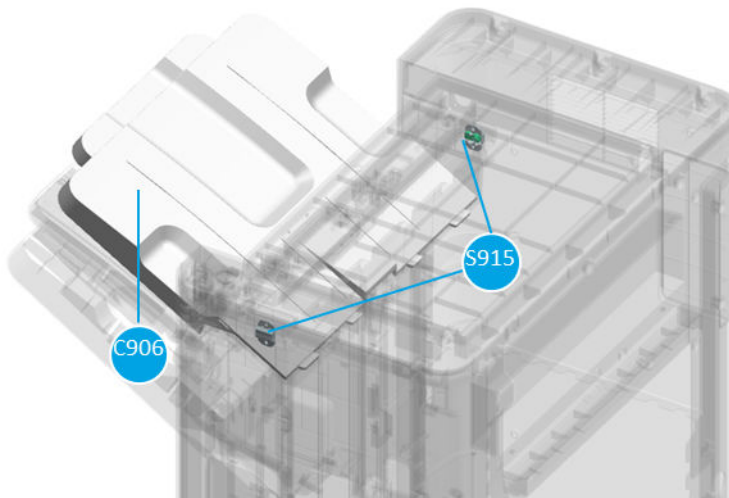


Table 3-177 Overview of the top output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Top output tray	5QK09-40027 5QK09-40029	Load the ejected paper
S915	Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	Detect whether the tray is full

Figure 3-266 Detail view of the top output tray unit

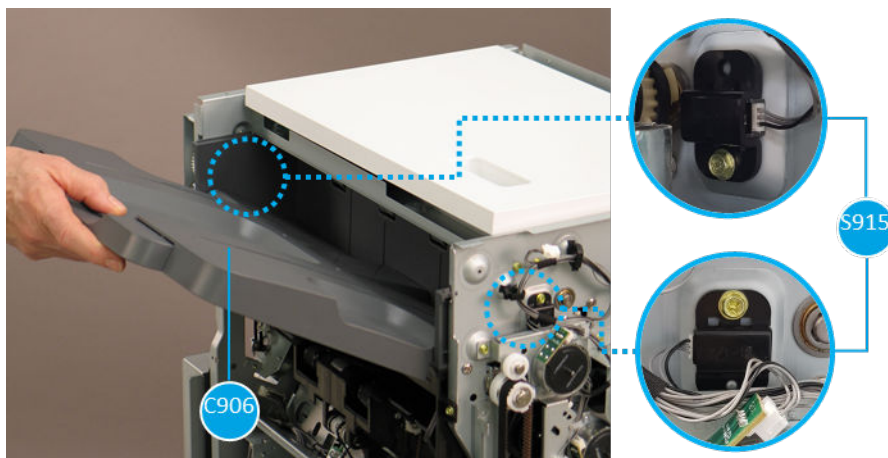


Table 3-178 Detail view of the top output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Top output tray	5QK09-40027 5QK09-40029	Load the ejected paper
S915	Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	Detect whether the tray is full

Main exit unit

You will learn more about the main exit unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Main exit unit overview

Learn about the main exit unit overview.

The main exit unit delivers paper from the tray diverter unit to the ejector unit or buffer unit.

The main exit sensor detects whether paper comes in from main exit unit. The exit motor drives the main exit roller to send the paper to the ejector unit or buffer unit.

Figure 3-267 Overview of the main exit unit

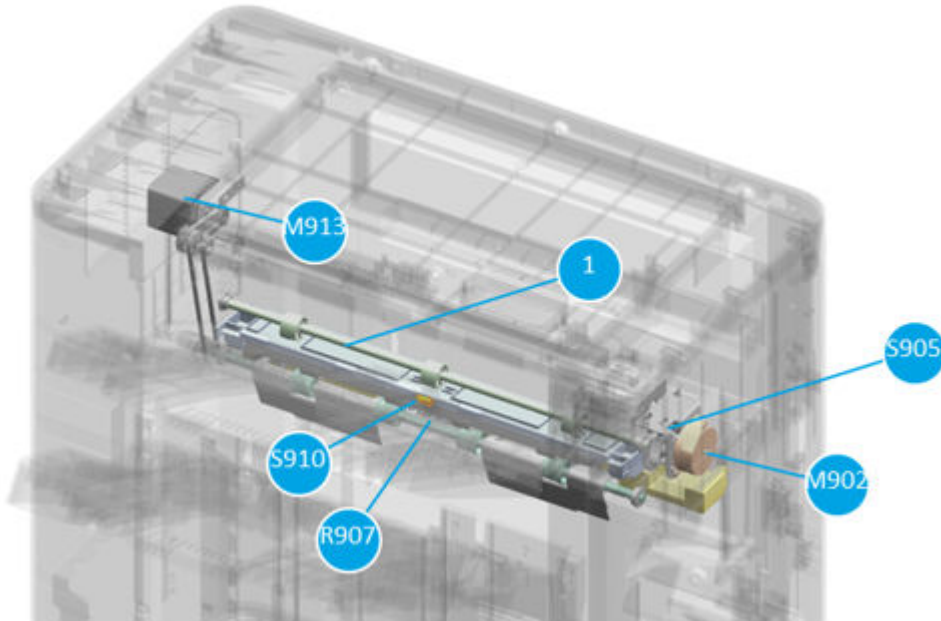


Table 3-179 Overview of the main exit unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S910	Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Detect whether the paper entered at the main exit unit
M913	Exit motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotate the main exit roller
R907	Main exit roller	JC66-04726A	Move the paper to the ejector unit or the buffer unit
1	Main exit cam	-	Adjust the gap between the main exit roller and the idle roller for the buffering
S905	Main exit cam home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the main exit cam
M902	Main exit cam motor	JC93-01155A	Rotate the main exit cam

Figure 3-268 Detail view of the main exit unit, view 1

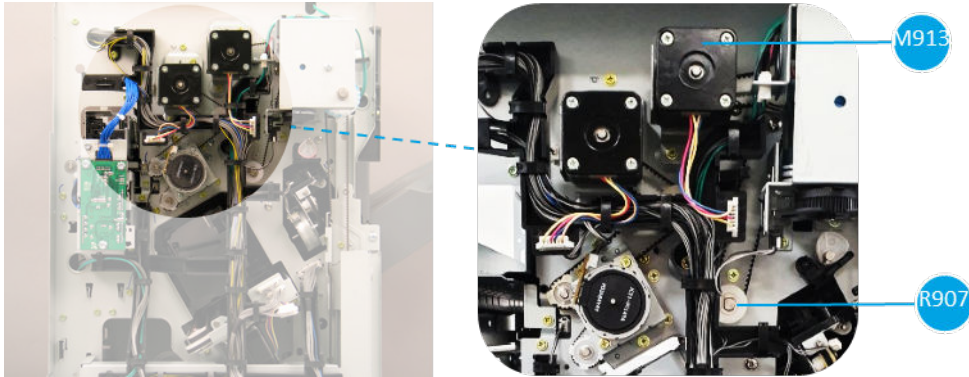


Table 3-180 Detail view of the main exit unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M913	Exit motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotate the main exit roller
R907	Main exit roller	JC66-04726A	Move the paper to the ejector unit or the buffer unit

Figure 3-269 Detail view of the main exit unit, view 2

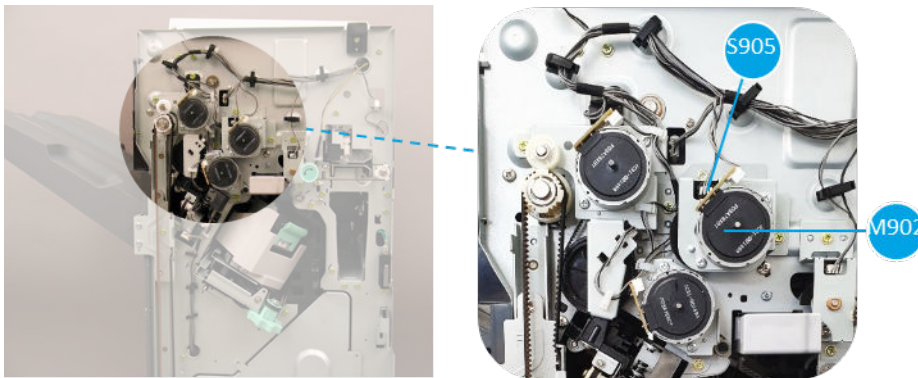


Table 3-181 Detail view of the main exit unit, view 2

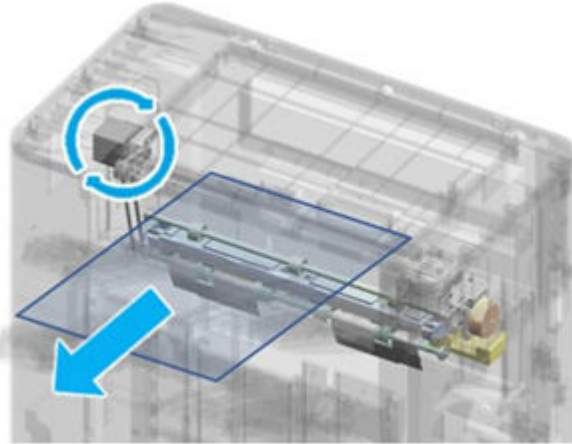
No	Part name	Part number	Description
S905	Main exit cam home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the main exit cam
M902	Main exit cam motor	JC93-01155A	Rotate the main exit cam

Main exit unit operation

Learn about the main exit unit operation.

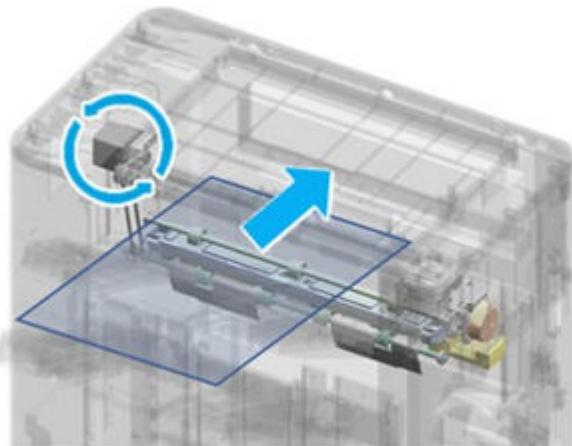
1. The exit motor drives forward so that paper will moves towards the ejector unit.

Figure 3-270 Main exit unit operation, view 1



2. If the exit motor rotates backwards paper moves towards the buffer unit.

Figure 3-271 Main exit unit operation, view 2



Paddle unit

You will learn more about the paddle unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Paddle unit overview

Learn about the paddle unit overview.

The paddle unit rotates the rubber paddles mounted on the shaft to move paper to the end fence unit, allowing paper to be arranged well for the next job. The paddle presser is mounted behind the rubber paddles and presses the end of paper to help paper be stacked well at the end fence unit. The paddle home sensor checks the home position to drive the paddles. And the paddle motor drives the paddle and paddle presser.

Figure 3-272 Overview of the paddle unit

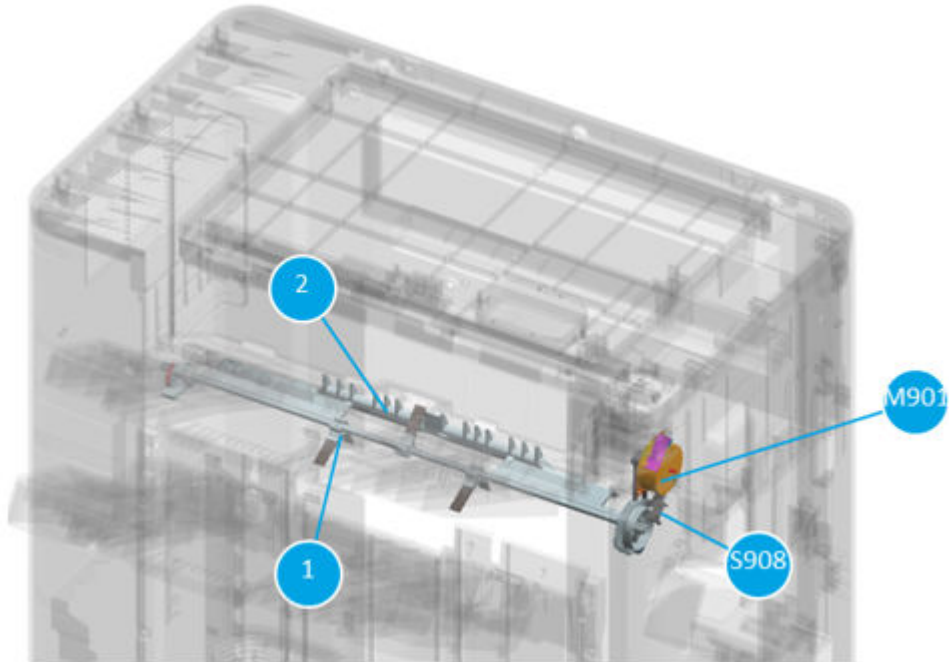


Table 3-182 Overview of the paddle unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paddle	JC90-01480A	Moves paper into the end fence unit
2	Paddle presser	JC61-07206A	Presses the end of bent paper helps paper to be loaded well at the end fence unit
S908	Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the paddle
M901	Paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Rotates the paddle, and moves the paddle presser up and downward at the same time

Figure 3-273 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 1

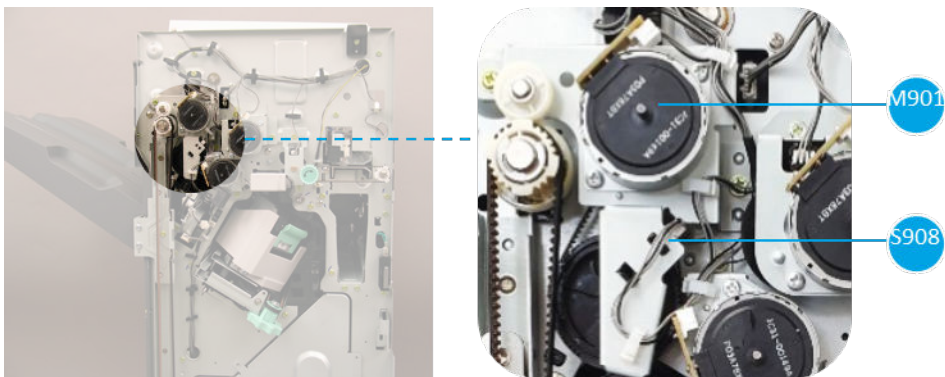


Table 3-183 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S908	Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the paddle

Table 3-183 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 1 (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M901	Paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Rotates the paddle, and moves the paddle presser up and downward at the same time

Figure 3-274 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 2

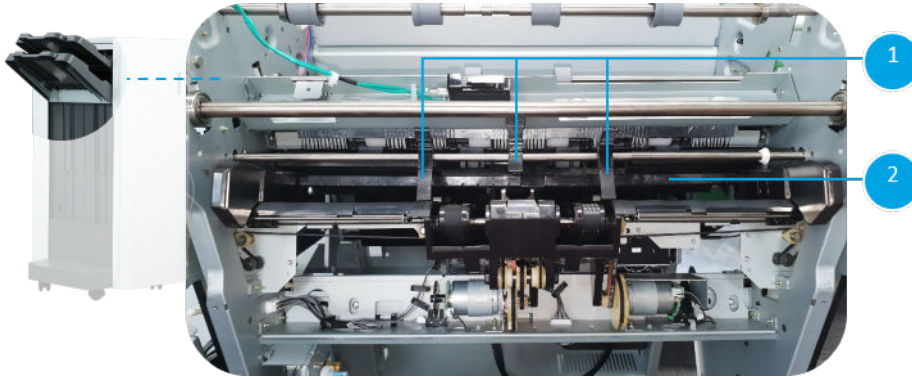


Table 3-184 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 2

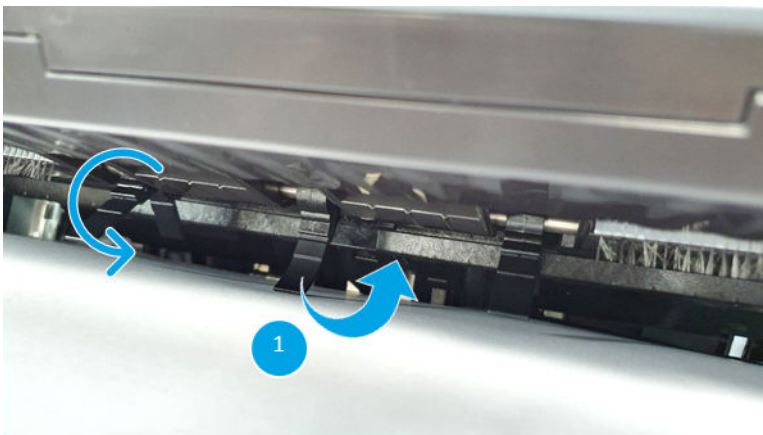
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paddle	JC90-01480A	Moves paper into the end fence unit
2	Paddle presser	JC61-07206A	Presses the end of bent paper helps paper to be loaded well at the end fence unit

Paddle unit operation

Learn about the paddle unit operation.

1. A paper falls downward through the exit unit. The paddles rotate to make the paper moves into the end fence unit.

Figure 3-275 Paddle unit operation, view 1



2. The paddle presser pushes the end of the paper so as not to be scattered around the paddle unit.

Figure 3-276 Paddle unit operation, view 2



End fence unit

You will learn more about the end fence unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

End fence unit overview

Learn about the end fence unit overview.

The end fence unit sets the standard position of the paper to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper. End fence motor operates the two end fences and adjust width of them to stack a bunch of paper correctly. The end fence home sensor detects the home position of the end fence.

Figure 3-277 Overview of the end fence unit

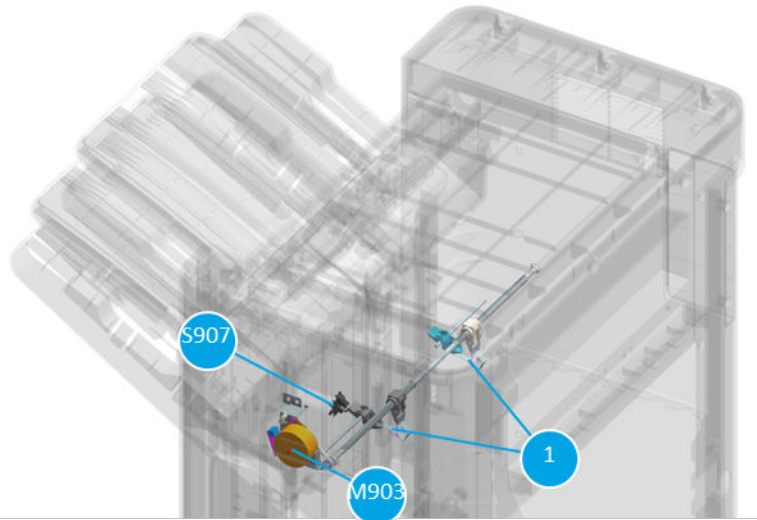


Table 3-185 Overview of the end fence unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	End fence	NA	Aligns top and bottom side of paper
S907	End fence home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the end fence
M903	End fence motor	JC93-01001A	Moves front and rear end fence depending on paper size (width) so that paper sits correctly at the end fence

Figure 3-278 Detail view of the end fence unit, view 1

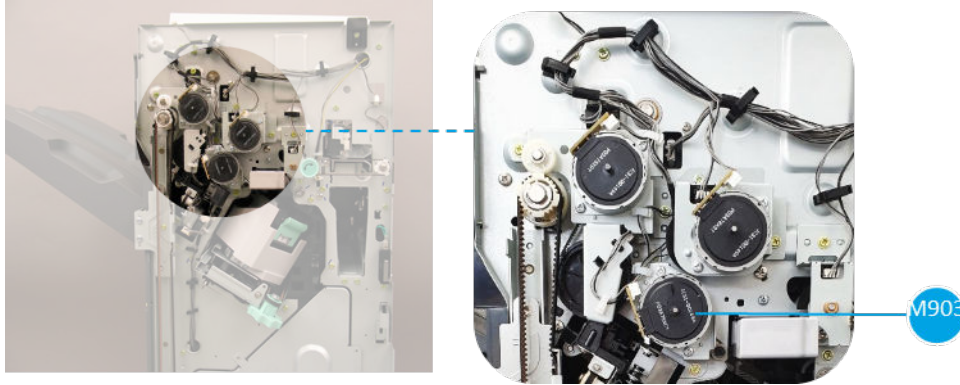


Table 3-186 Detail view of the end fence unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M903	End fence motor	JC93-01001A	Moves front and rear end fence depending on paper size (width) so that paper arranged well at the end fence

Figure 3-279 Detail view of the end fence unit, view 2

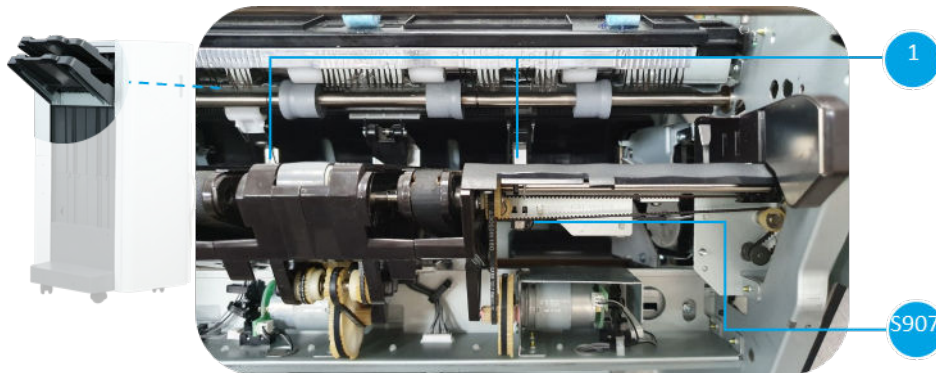


Table 3-187 Detail view of the end fence unit, view 2

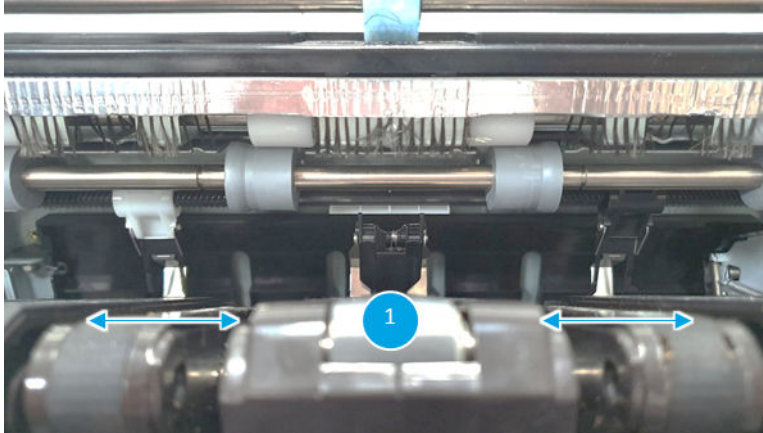
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	End fence	NA	Aligns top and bottom side of paper
S907	End fence home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the end fence

End fence unit operation

Learn about the end fence unit operation.

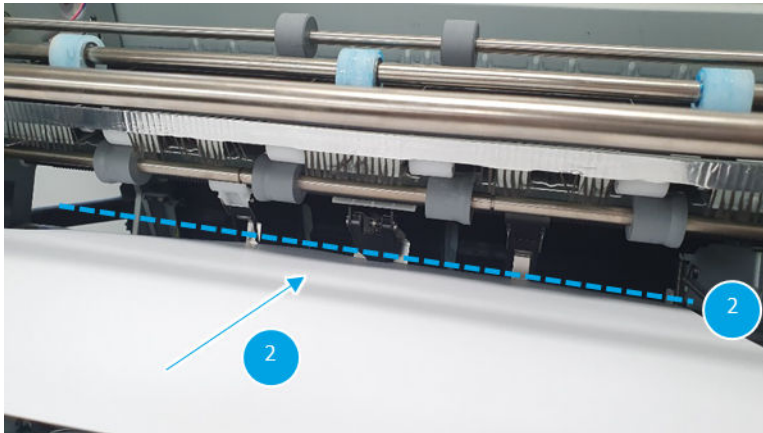
1. The end fence motor moves the front and rear end fences in the arrow direction (callout 1) depending on paper width.

Figure 3-280 End fence unit operation, view 1



2. A paper goes into the end fence unit by the paddle unit (callout 2). At the same time the end fence unit aligns the paper to the direction of blue line (callout 3).

Figure 3-281 End fence unit operation, view 2



Tamper unit

You will learn more about the tamper unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Tamper unit overview

Learn about the tamper unit overview.

The tamper unit functions to align the left and right sides of a bundle of paper. When a certain amount of paper is collected after printing, the tamper unit hits the left and right ends of the paper to align the paper correctly. Each tamper has a motor on the back side that delivers driving force to move. The tamper home sensors are mounted on the back side of the unit to check the home position of the tamper unit.

Figure 3-282 Overview of the tamper unit

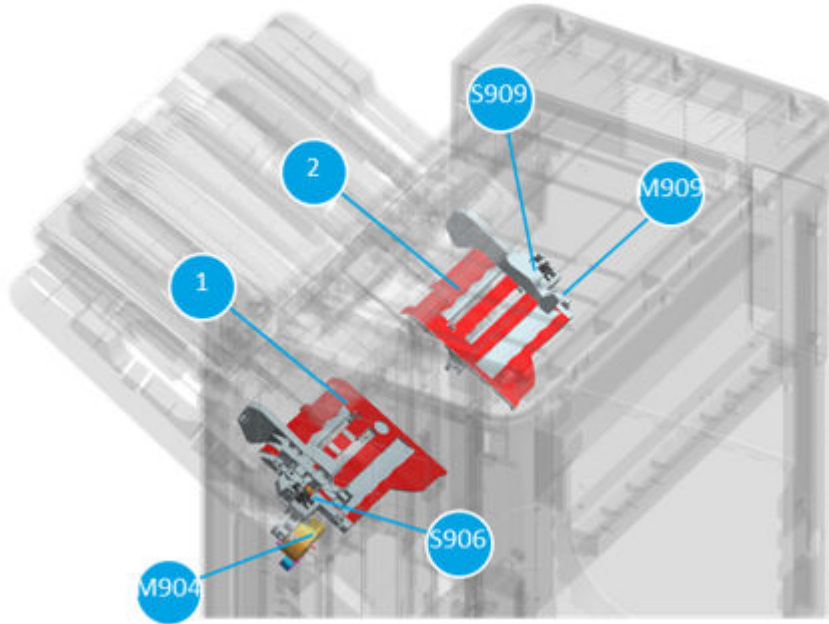


Table 3-188 Overview of the tamper unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00901A	Align left and right side of the paper
S906	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the tamper unit
M904	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Move the front tamper unit
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	Align left and right side of the paper
S909	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the tamper unit
M909	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Move the front tamper unit

Figure 3-283 Detail view of the tamper unit, view 1

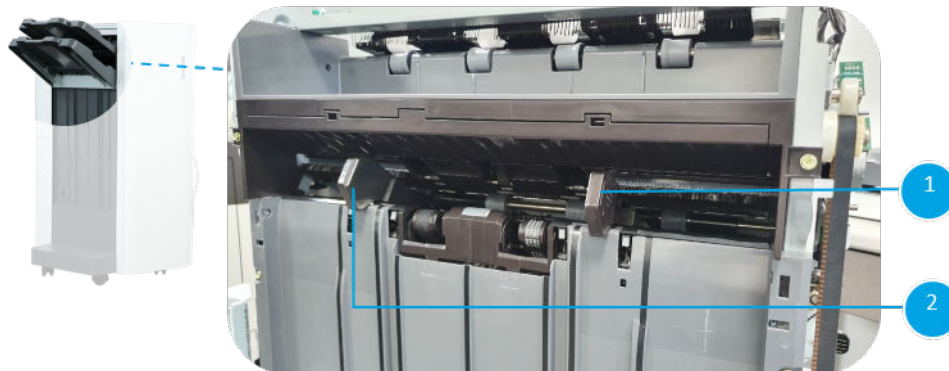


Table 3-189 Detail view of the tamper unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00901A	Align left and right side of the paper
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	Align left and right side of the paper

Figure 3-284 Detail view of the tamper unit, view 2

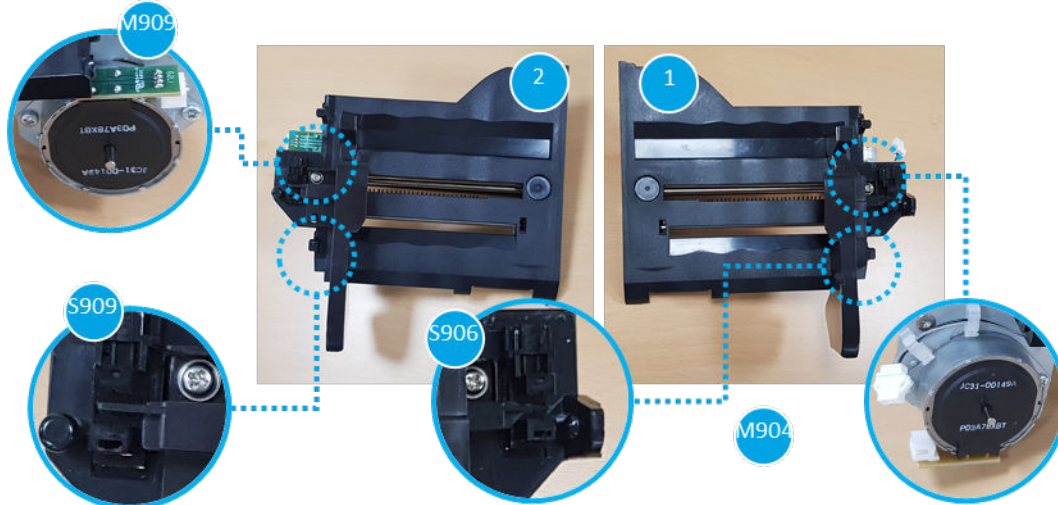


Table 3-190 Detail view of the tamper unit, view 2

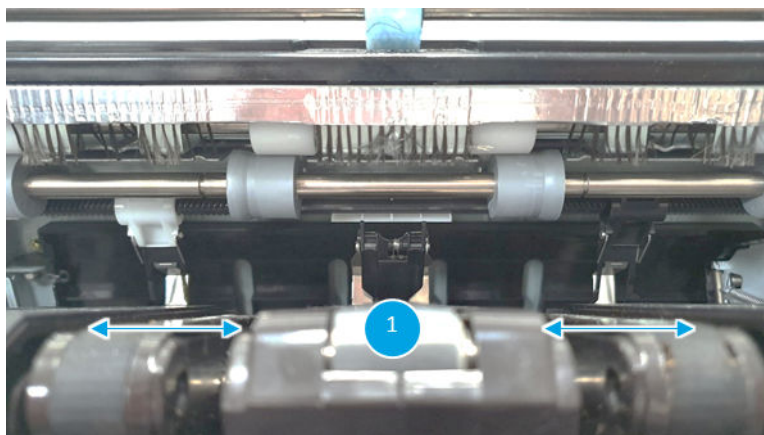
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00901A	Align left and right side of the paper
S906	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the tamper unit
M904	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Move the front tamper unit
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	Align left and right side of the paper
S909	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the tamper unit
M909	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Move the front tamper unit

Tamper unit operation

Learn about the tamper unit operation.

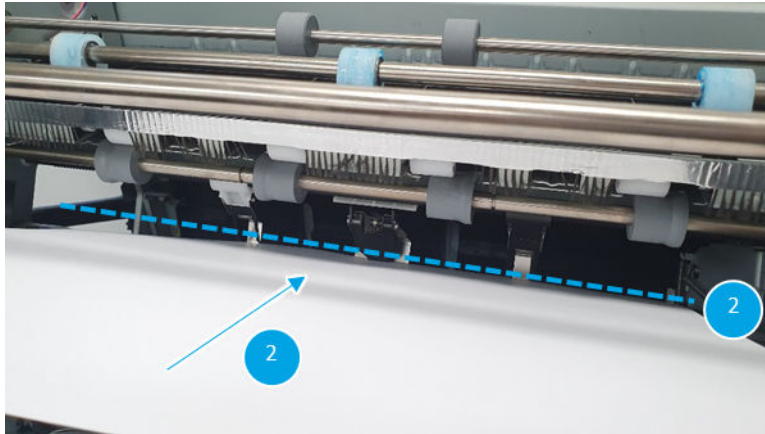
1. A stack of paper is arranged at the end fence unit through end fence unit operation. Then the left and right tampers arrange both side of the paper.

Figure 3-285 Tamper unit operation, view 1



2. In case of offset printing, the tamper unit moves slightly different from the previous bundles location so that the next bunch of paper could be shifted.

Figure 3-286 Tamper unit operation, view 2



Stapler unit

You will learn more about the stapler unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Stapler unit overview

Learn about the stapler unit overview.

The stapler unit is a device installed inside the finisher that staples a bundle of aligned documents. Documents are collected as a bundle by the tamper unit and the end fence unit for stapling, then the stapler assembly staples the bundle. There are six options to make a bundle.

Figure 3-287 Stapling options



The stapler unit moves using the stapler motor installed inside. The one home sensor and two position sensors are mounted so that the stapler can be positioned in the exact stapling position whether it is stapled on the left, the right, or at the center of the document. Stapling is done by the motor inside the stapler assembly.

In addition, a manual staple feature is available on the front-upper side of the finisher. The manual staple sensor detects whether a stack of paper comes into the manual staple location or not. The front sensor makes the stapler move to the manual staple location.

Figure 3-288 Overview of the stapler unit

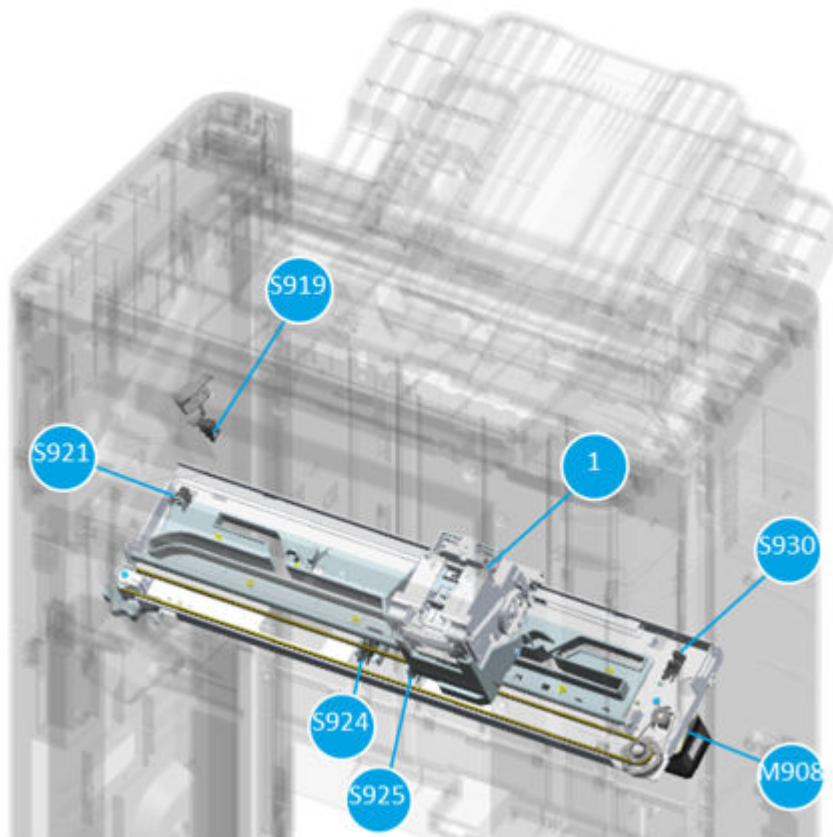


Table 3-191 Overview of the stapler unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Stapler unit	8GS05-60116	Staple a bundle of paper
S921	Stapler front sensor	0604-001393	Detect the stapler at the manual stapling position
S924	Stapler mid-front	0604-001393	Detect the stapler location
S925	Stapler mid-rear sensor	0604-001393	Detect the stapler location
S930	Stapler rear sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the stapler
S919	Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	Detect paper when manual stapling
M908	Stapler position motor	JC31-00163A	Move the stapler

Figure 3-289 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 1

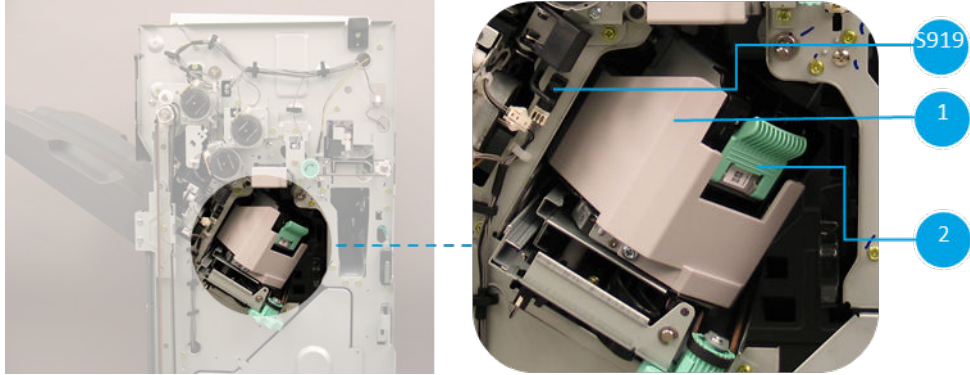


Table 3-192 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Stapler unit	8GS05-60116	Staple a bundle of paper
2	Staple cartridge	JC81-09882A	Staple cartridge
S919	Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	Detect paper when manual stapling

Figure 3-290 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 2

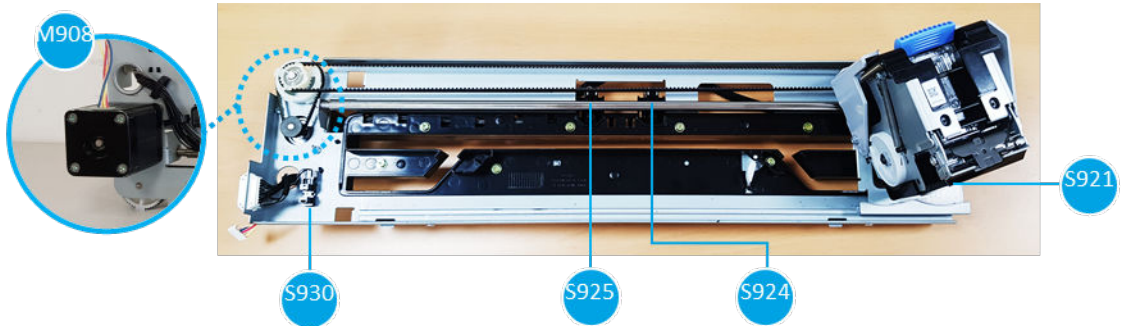


Table 3-193 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 2

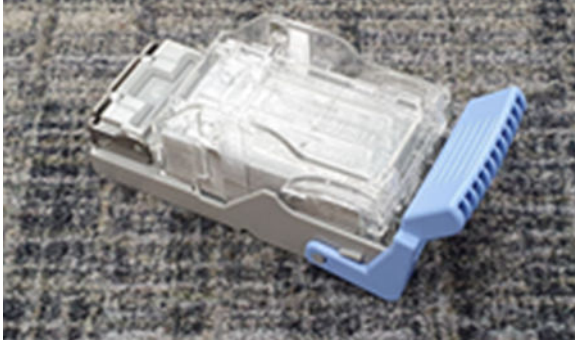
No	Part name	Part number	Description
S921	Stapler front sensor	0604-001393	Detect the stapler at the manual stapling position
S924	Stapler mid-front	0604-001393	Detect the stapler location
S925	Stapler mid-rear sensor	0604-001393	Detect the stapler location
S930	Stapler rear sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the stapler
M908	Stapler position motor	JC31-00163A	Move the stapler


Staple and staple cartridge

Learn about the staple and staple cartridge.

1. Staple cartridge: JC81-09882B. Initial staples included.

Figure 3-291 Staple cartridge for stapler unit



 **NOTE:** Staple handle color may vary (blue or green color).

2. Staple: Y1G14-67901. 3 EA in 1 box.

Figure 3-292 Staple for stapler unit

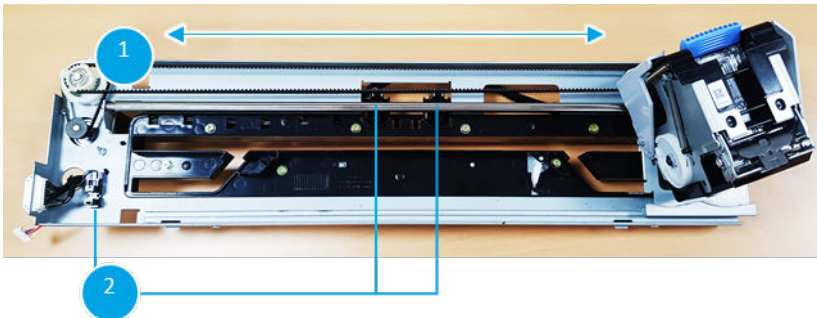


Stapler unit operation

Learn about the stapler unit operation.

1. The stapler position motor drives the stapler assembly to direction 1. During this process the stapler assembly moves through the rail using three stapler position sensors (callout 2) and staples a stack of paper.

Figure 3-293 Stapler unit operation, view 1



2. In case of staple cartridge replacement, the stapler moves to direction 3. During manual stapling, the stapler moves in direction 4.

Figure 3-294 Stapler unit operation, view 2



Ejector unit

You will learn more about the ejector unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Ejector unit overview

Learn about the ejector unit overview.

The ejector unit ejects a bundle of paper out to the main output tray which consists of the ejector 1 and the ejector 2. The ejector 1 moves a stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the ejector 2 unit. During this process, the ejector 1 motor transmits the driving force to the ejector1 unit. And ejector 1 motor sensor checks the ejector 1 motor operation. And the ejector 1 home sensor detects the home position of the ejector 1. The ejector 1 end sensor detects the end position of the ejector 1. When the paper arrives at the ejector 2 unit, the ejector 2 grabs a stack of paper and ejects it onto the main output tray. The ejector 2 motor is responsible for this process, and the ejector 2 motor sensor helps it to be controlled correctly. In addition, the ejector2 home sensor checks the location of the ejector 2.

Figure 3-295 Overview of the ejector unit

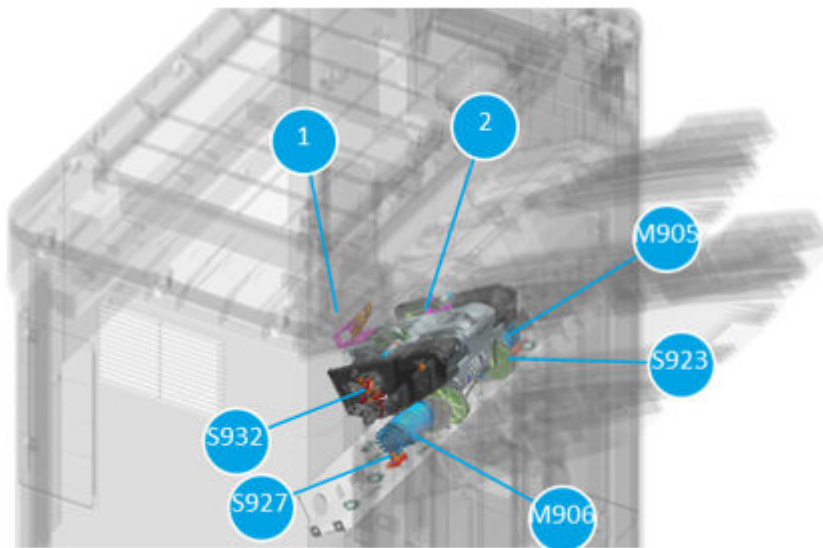


Table 3-194 Overview of the ejector unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
-	Ejector unit	JC90-01824A	
S14	Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	Detects whether the paper is on the ejector or not
1	Ejector 1		Moves the stack of paper from the end fence to the ejector 2
S927	Ejector 1 motor sensor	0604-001415	Detects whether the ejector1 motor rotates

Table 3-194 Overview of the ejector unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M906	Ejector 1 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 1 forward and backward
2	Ejector 2		Moves the paper from the ejector 1 to the main output tray
S932	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001415	Detects the home position of the ejector 2
S923	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001415	Detects the ejector 2 motor rotation
M905	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 2 and grabs the paper

Figure 3-296 Detail view of the ejector unit, view 1

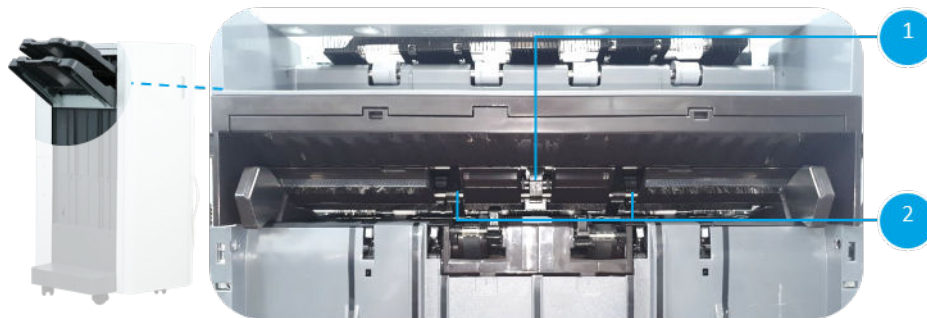


Table 3-195 Detail view of the ejector unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Ejector 1		Moves the stack of paper from the end fence to the ejector 2
2	Ejector 2		Moves the paper from the ejector 1 to the main output tray

Figure 3-297 Detail view of the ejector unit, view 2

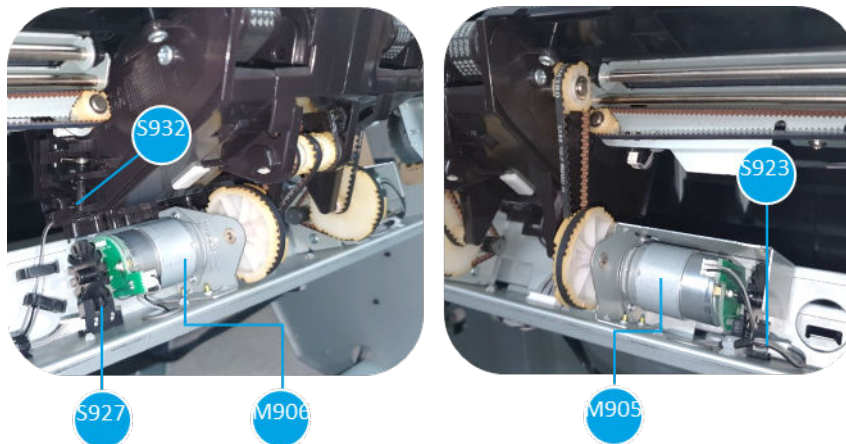


Table 3-196 Detail view of the ejector unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S927	Ejector 1 motor sensor	0604-001415	Detects whether the ejector1 motor rotates
M906	Ejector 1 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 1 forward and backward

Table 3-196 Detail view of the ejector unit, view 2 (continued)

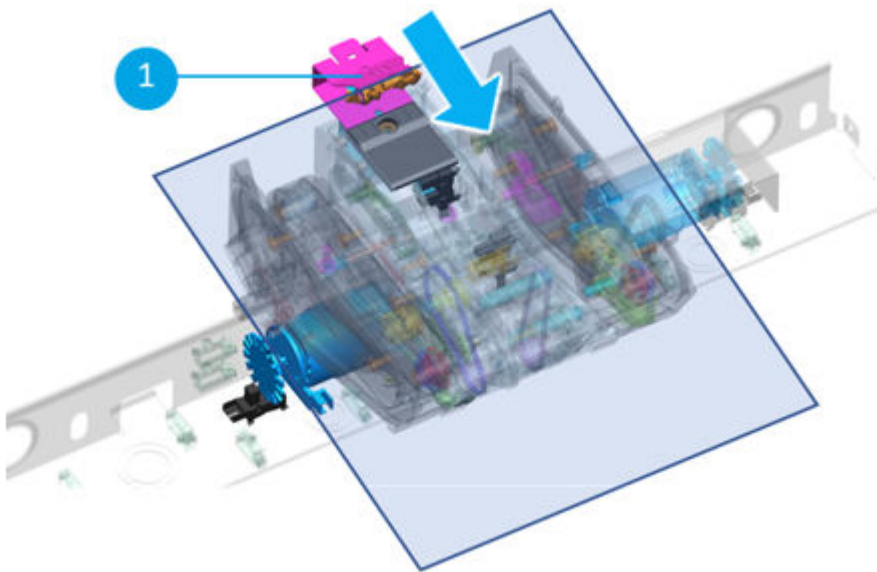
No	Part name	Part number	Description
S932	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001415	Detects the home position of the ejector 2
S923	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001415	Detects the ejector 2 motor rotation
M905	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 2 and then grabs the paper

Ejector unit operation

Learn about the ejector unit operation.

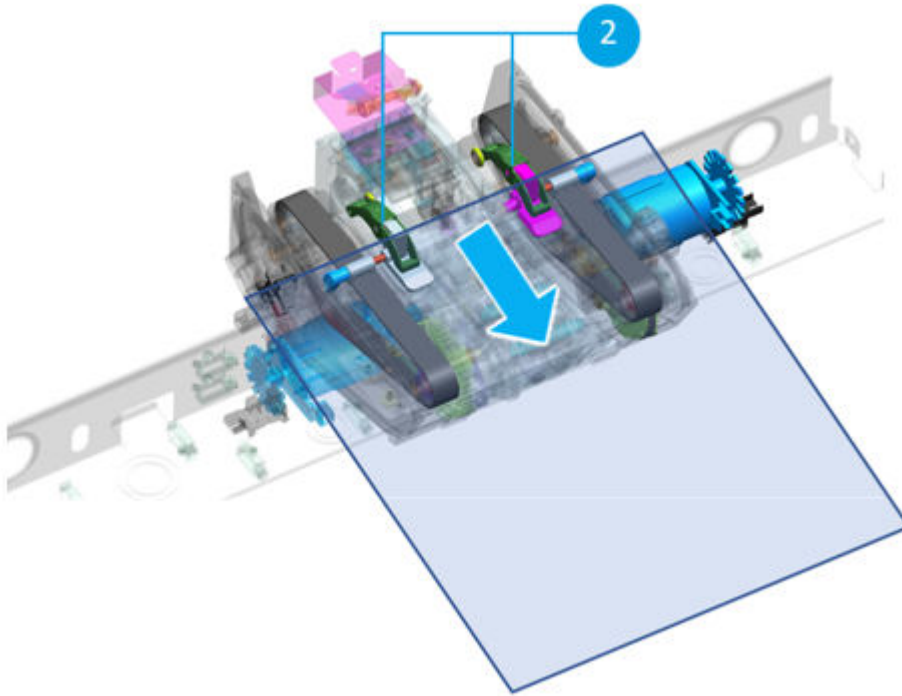
1. The ejector 1 (callout 1) pushes aligned paper at the end fence unit to ejector 2 unit.

Figure 3-298 Ejector unit operation, view 1



2. The ejector 2 (callout 2) picks up paper, then moves forward to the main output tray direction.

Figure 3-299 Ejector unit operation, view 2



Main output tray unit

You will learn more about the main output tray unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Main output tray unit overview

Learn about the main output tray unit overview.

Printouts are stacked on the main output tray. The main output tray moves up and down along the rails inside the finisher, and the main output tray motor controls those movements according to the signals of the front & rear paper holding sensor. Main output tray motor sensor checks whether the main output tray motor rotates properly.

When main output tray hits the lower limit sensor of the main output tray, the machine detects that paper tray is full. The main output tray top of stack sensor detects that the main output tray is on the top.

Figure 3-300 Overview of the main output tray unit

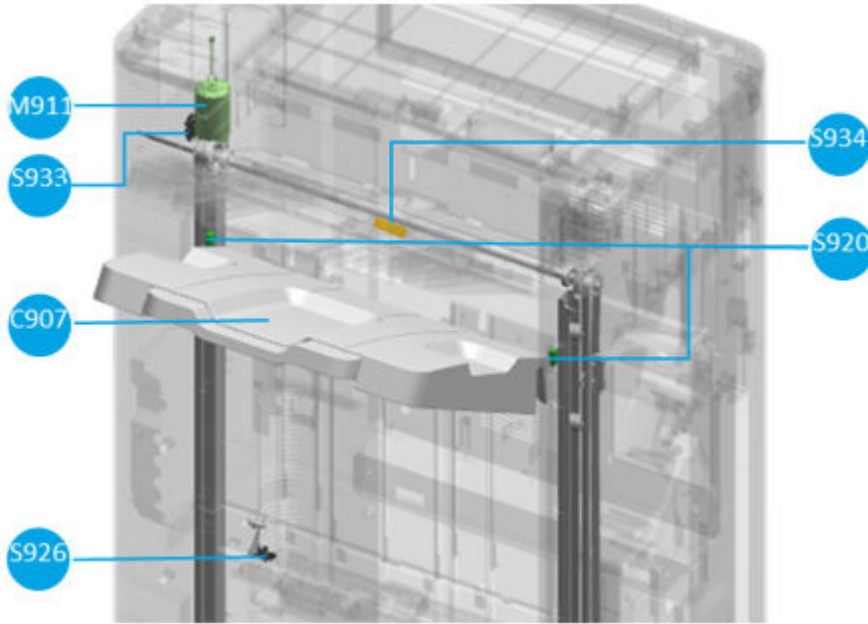


Table 3-197 Overview of the main output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
C907	Main output tray	5QK09-40028	Stacking plate for ejected paper
S920	Main output tray top of stack sensor (receiver, led)	JC82-01039A	Checks the upper limit of main output tray
S926	Main output tray lower limit	0604-001415	Detects the lowest position of the output tray
S933	Main output tray motor	0604-001393	Detects whether the main output tray motor rotates
M911	Main output tray motor	JC90-01415B	Moves the main output tray up and down
S934	Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A	Checks the upper limit of main output tray so that detects abnormal movement of output tray

Figure 3-301 Detail view of the main output tray unit, view 1

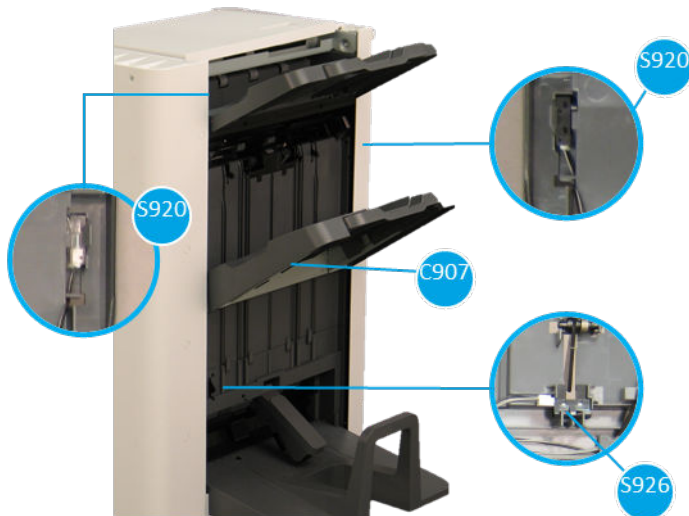


Table 3-198 Detail view of the main output tray unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
C907	Main outputtray	5QK09-40028	Stacking plate for ejected paper
S920	Main outputtraytopof stack sensor (receiver, led)	JC82-01039A	Checks the upper limit of main output tray
S926	Main outputtraylower limit	0604-001415	Detects the lowest position of the output tray

Figure 3-302 Detail view of the main output tray unit, view 2

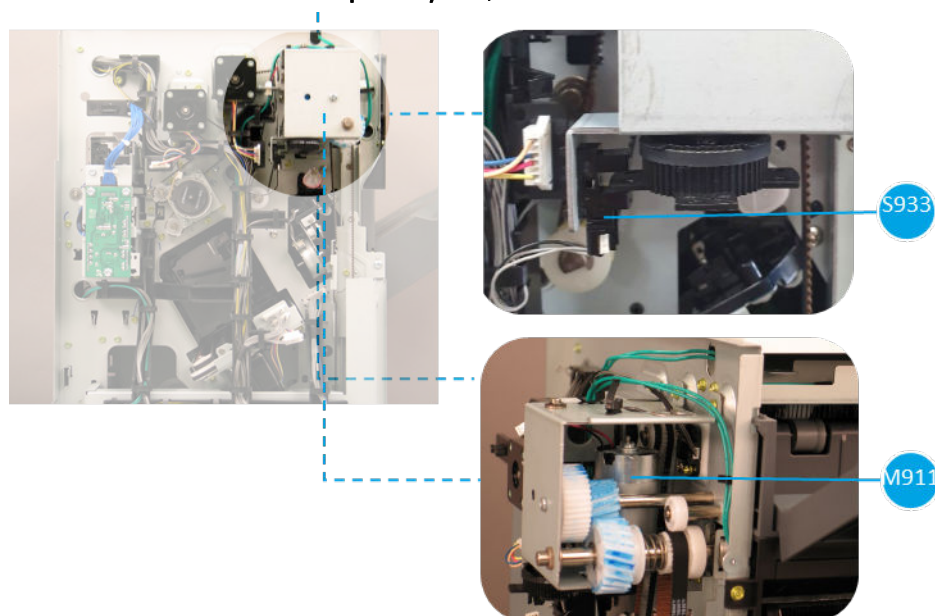


Table 3-199 Detail view of the main output tray unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S933	Main output tray motor	0604-001393	Detects whether the main output tray motor rotates
M911	Main output tray motor	JC90-01415B	Moves the main output tray up and down

Paper holding unit

You will learn more about the paper holding unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Paper holding unit overview

Learn about the paper holding unit overview.

The paper holding unit holds printouts on the main output tray. It has a sensor that detects the height of stacked paper so that the output tray moves up and down to stack paper in a stable manner.

The paper holding motor lifts the paper holding actuator when printouts come out to the main output tray. The paper holding home sensor detects the location of paper holding actuator at the home position. The front and rear paper holding sensor checks the volume of printouts on the main output tray and makes the main output tray move downward.

Figure 3-303 Overview of the paper holding unit

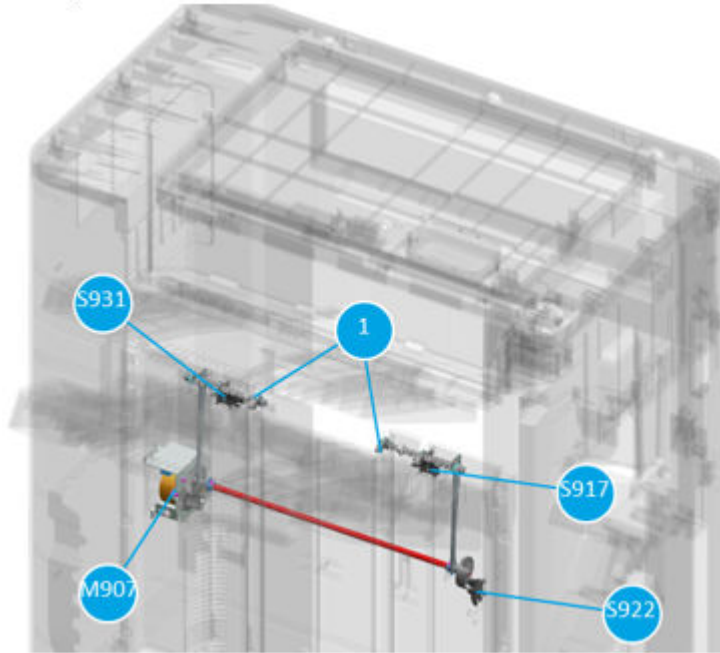


Table 3-200 Overview of the paper holding unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paper holding actuator	-	Control the height of the main output tray and hold printouts so as not to be scattered
S917	Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detects stacked paper position
S931	Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detects stacked paper position
S922	Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of paper holding actuator
M907	Paper holding motor	8GS05-60104	Lift paper holding actuator up when printouts delivered to the main output tray

Figure 3-304 Detail view of the paper holding unit, view 1

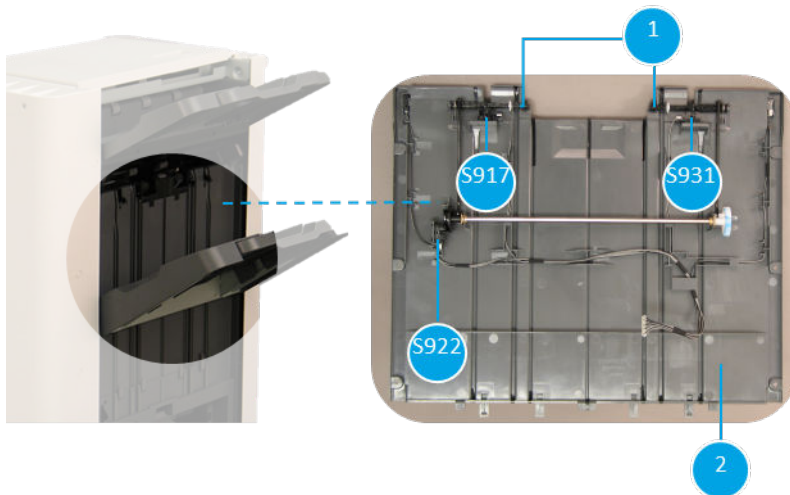


Table 3-201 Detail view of the paper holding unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paper holding actuator	-	Control the height of the main output tray and hold printouts so as not to be scattered
S917	Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detects stacked paper position
S931	Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detects stacked paper position
S922	Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of paper holding actuator
2	Left upper cover	5QK09-40040	-

Figure 3-305 Detail view of the paper holding unit, view 2

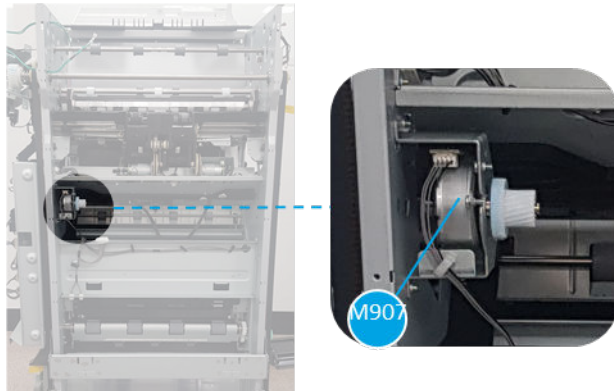


Table 3-202 Detail view of the paper holding unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M907	Paper holding motor	8GS05-60104	Lift paper holding actuator up when printouts delivered to the main output tray

Paper holding unit operation

Learn about the paper holding unit operation.

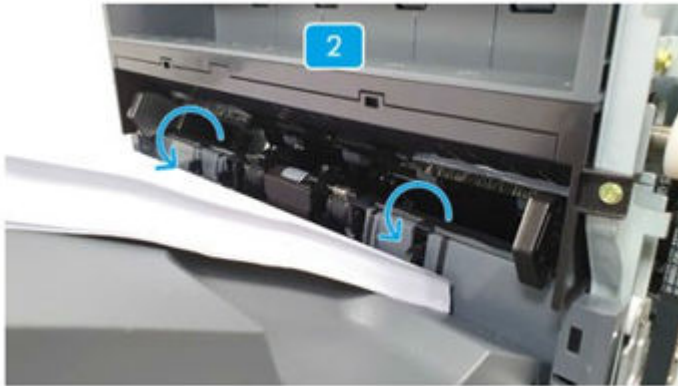
1. When printouts are delivered to the main output tray, a paper holding motor moves paper holding actuator upward to create a paper path to prevent jam (callout 1).

Figure 3-306 Paper holding unit operation, view 1



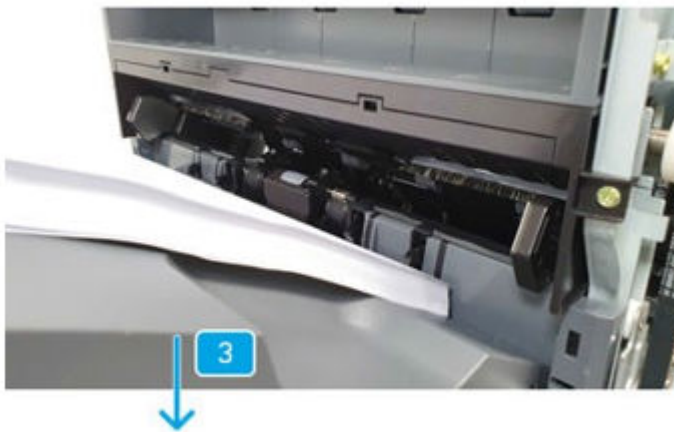
2. When printouts are stacked on top of the main output tray, the paper holding actuator goes down to hold them (callout 2).

Figure 3-307 Paper holding unit operation, view 2



3. As paper stacks up on the main output tray, the paper holding actuator is lifted by papers. The front & rear paper holding sensors make the main output tray moves downward to store more printouts (callout 3).

Figure 3-308 Paper holding unit operation, view 3



4. As printouts are stacked on the main output tray, the tray goes down. When it reaches at the end of its moving range (callout 4), the main output tray touches the lower limit sensor. The sensor detects that the main output tray is full of printouts.

Figure 3-309 Paper holding unit operation, view 4



Buffer unit

You will learn more about the buffer unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Buffer unit overview

Learn about the buffer unit overview.

The buffer unit keeps paper inside the unit or moves them to the booklet maker. The buffer diverter creates a paper path so that paper can move to the buffer unit, and the buffer sensor detects whether paper moved out from the buffer unit. The buffer motor controls buffer roller, and buffer home sensors checks the location of buffer rollers. The buffer solenoid holds papers so that they do not fall into the booklet maker while buffering.


 **NOTE:** Buffering: It is to maintain print speed when users print multiple copies continuously. The first page of a print job stays in the buffer unit for a moment while the previous job is being ejected. After the previous print job was ejected, the first and second page of the job move to the ejector unit together.

Figure 3-310 Overview of the buffer unit

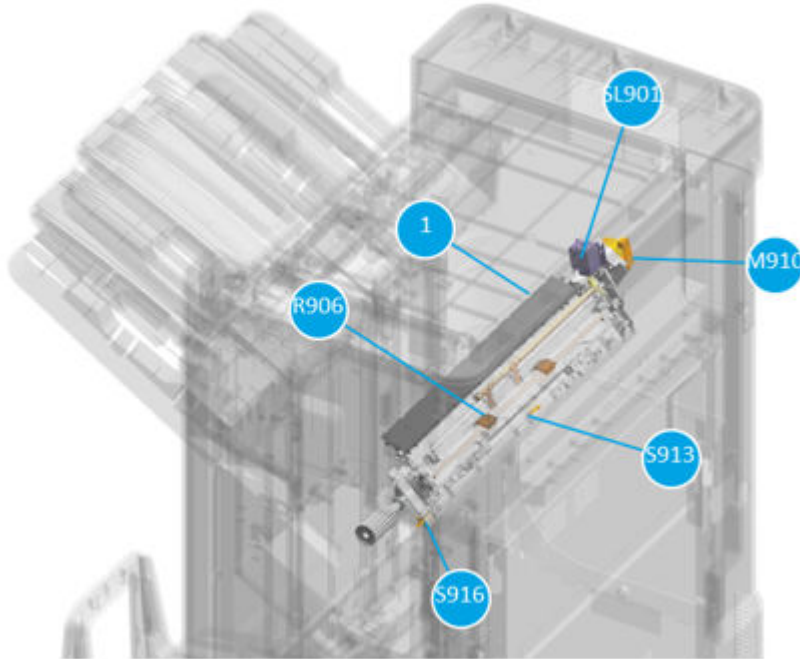


Table 3-203 Overview of the buffer unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Buffer diverter	JC61-07204A	Make the way to the buffer space
S913	Buffer sensor	JC32-00020A	Detect whether paper has moved out from the buffer unit
S916	Buffer home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the buffer roller
M910	Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	Move the paper to the buffer space or the booklet maker
SL901	Buffer solenoid	JC33-00038A	Hold the paper to prevent them from falling out to the booklet maker during buffering
R906	Buffer roller	JC66-05161A	Move the paper to the booklet maker or makes the gap so that paper stays in this space

Figure 3-311 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 1

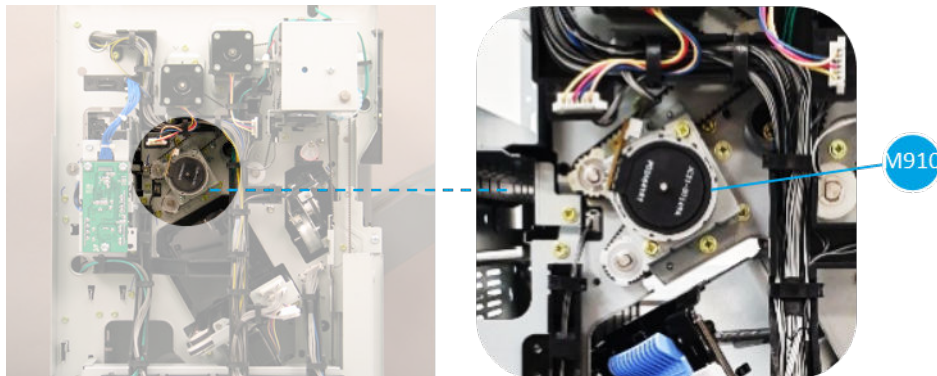


Table 3-204 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M910	Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	Move the paper to the buffer space or the booklet maker

Figure 3-312 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 2

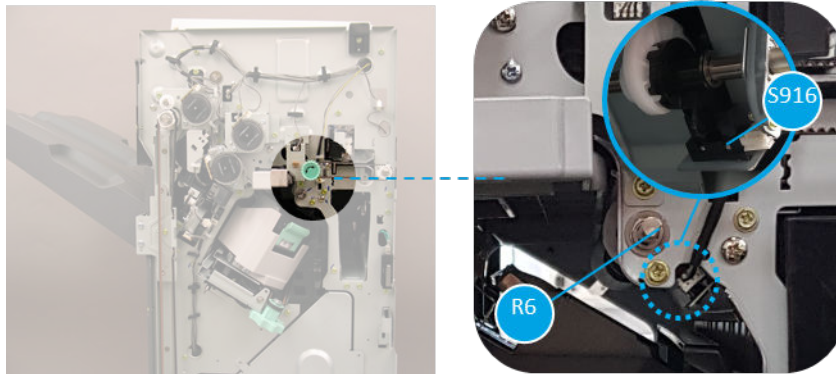


Table 3-205 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S916	Buffer home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the buffer roller
R906	Buffer roller	JC66-05161A	Move the paper to the booklet maker or makes the gap so that paper stays in this space

Figure 3-313 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 3



Table 3-206 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 3

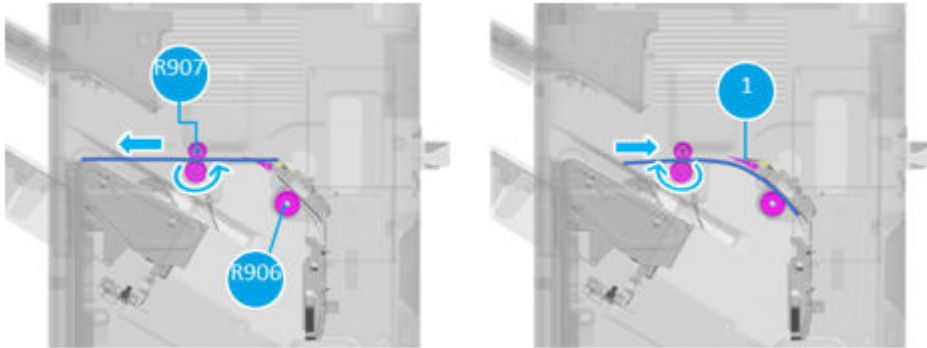
No	Part name	Part number	Description
SL901	Buffer solenoid	JC33-00038A	Hold the paper to prevent them from falling out to the booklet maker during buffering

Buffer unit operation

Learn about the buffer unit operation.

1. When the buffer motor rotates backward to move the cam, the buffer roller makes a gap so that a paper can stay inside the buffer unit.
 - a. When the exit motor rotates backward to drive the main exit roller (R907), paper moves to the buffer unit through the buffer diverter (callout 1).

Figure 3-314 Buffer unit operation, view 1



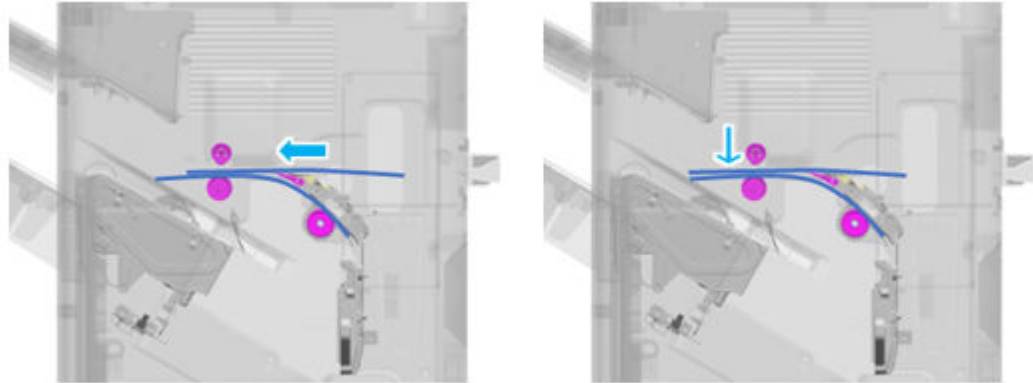
- b. The main exit cam motor moves the main exit cam so that the main exit roller (R907) is separated with the idle roller to have a gap, and then paper can stay in this place for a while.

Figure 3-315 Buffer unit operation, view 2



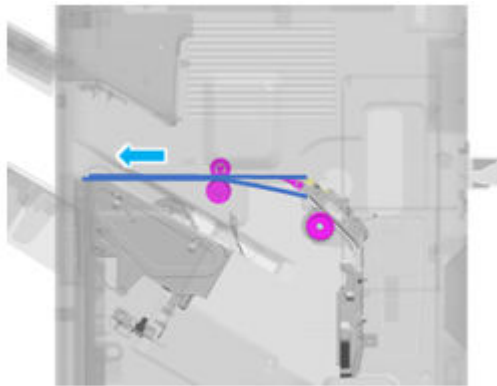
- c. When the next sheet comes to the main exit unit, the main exit motor turns the main exit cam so that the main exit roller is attached to the idle roller.

Figure 3-316 Buffer unit operation, view 3



- d. The exit motor rotates forward and operates the main exit roller. It makes two paper moves to the ejector together.

Figure 3-317 Buffer unit operation, view 4



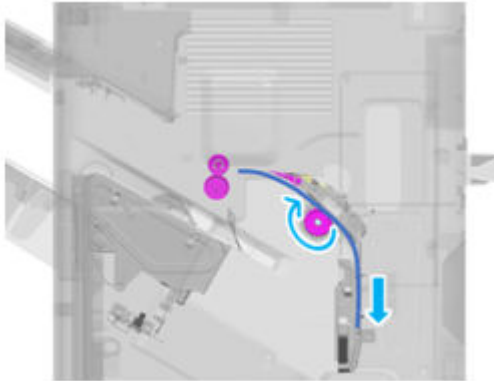
- 2. In case of booklet making job, the buffer unit moves paper to the booklet maker.
 - a. The buffer motor rotates, the buffer roller (R906) is attached to the idle roller.
 - b. When paper arrives at the main exit unit, the exit motor rotates backward and moves the main exit roller (R907) so that paper moves to the buffer unit through the buffer diverter.

Figure 3-318 Buffer unit operation, view 5



- c. The buffer motor rotates the buffer roller to move paper to the booklet maker.

Figure 3-319 Buffer unit operation, view 6



Booklet maker

You will learn more about the booklet maker.

Booklet entrance unit

You will learn more about the booklet entrance unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet entrance unit overview

Learn about the booklet entrance unit overview.

The booklet entrance unit receives paper into the booklet maker. The entrance sensor detects whether a paper enters the entrance unit. The entrance motor drives the booklet entrance roller to move the paper.

Figure 3-320 Overview of the booklet entrance unit

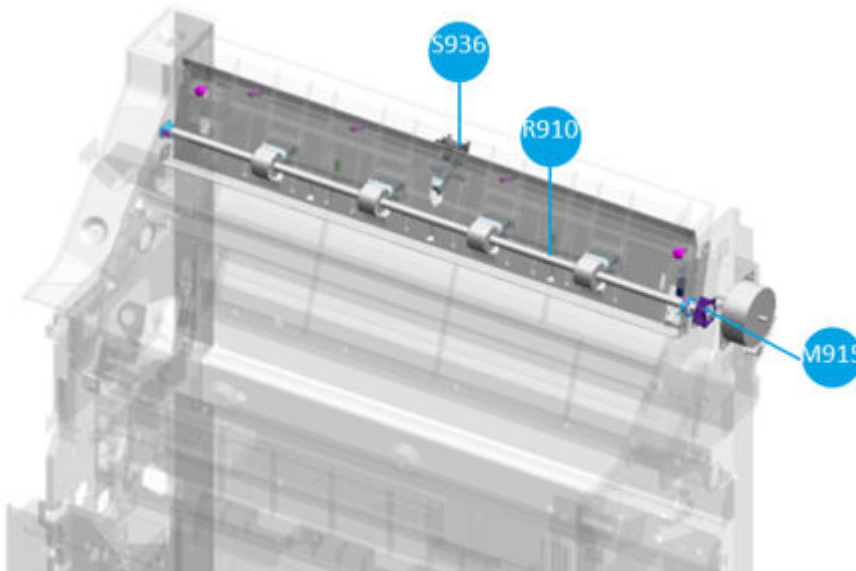


Table 3-207 Overview of the booklet entrance unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S936	Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	Detects whether paper has come into the booklet entrance unit
M915	Booklet entrance motor	JC93-01152A	Drives the booklet entrance roller

Table 3-207 Overview of the booklet entrance unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
R910	Booklet entrance roller	JC66-04717A	Moves paper into the booklet maker

Figure 3-321 Detail view of the booklet entrance unit

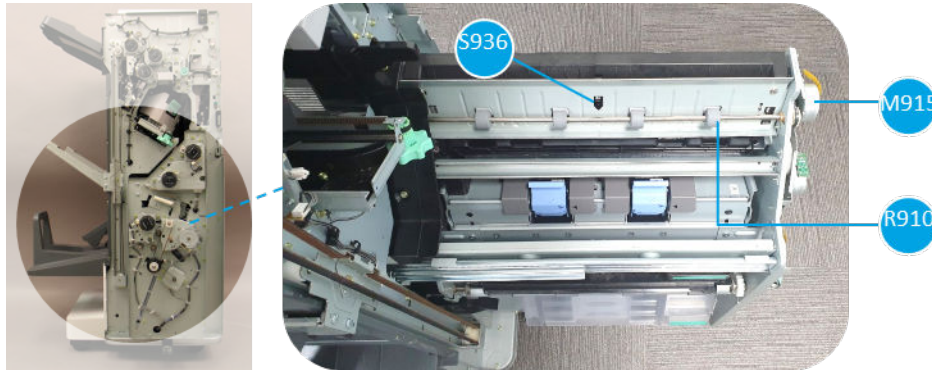


Table 3-208 Detail view of the booklet entrance unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S936	Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	Detects whether paper has come into the booklet entrance unit
M915	Booklet entrance motor	JC93-01152A	Drives the booklet entrance roller
R910	Booklet entrance roller	JC66-04717A	Moves paper into the booklet maker

Figure 3-322 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 2

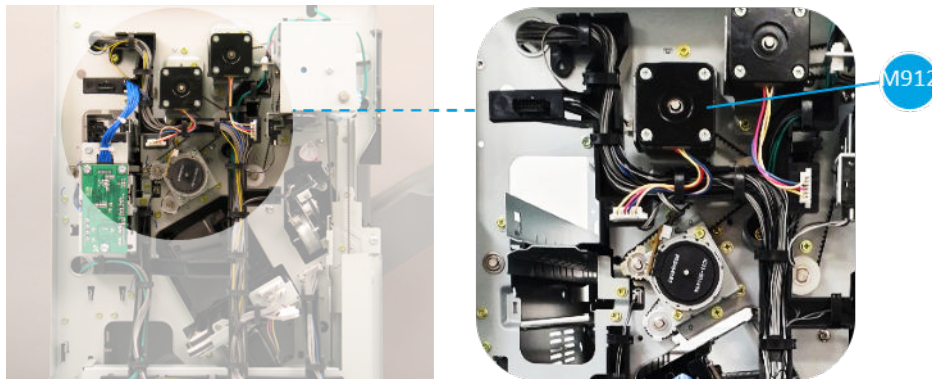


Table 3-209 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M12	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Operates the entrance roller and middle roller when driving forward

Figure 3-323 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 3

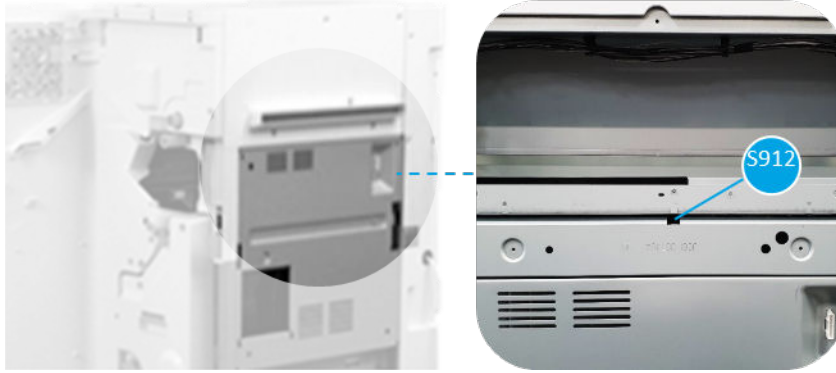


Table 3-210 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 3

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S12	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Detects whether paper enters at the entrance unit

Booklet paddle unit

You will learn more about the booklet paddle unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet paddle unit overview

Learn about the booklet paddle unit overview.

The booklet paddle unit pushes paper to the booklet end fence by rotating the rubber paddles. The booklet paddle motor rotates two booklet paddles, and the booklet paddle home sensor connected to the lower booklet paddle checks the home position of the booklet paddle.

Figure 3-324 Overview of the booklet paddle unit

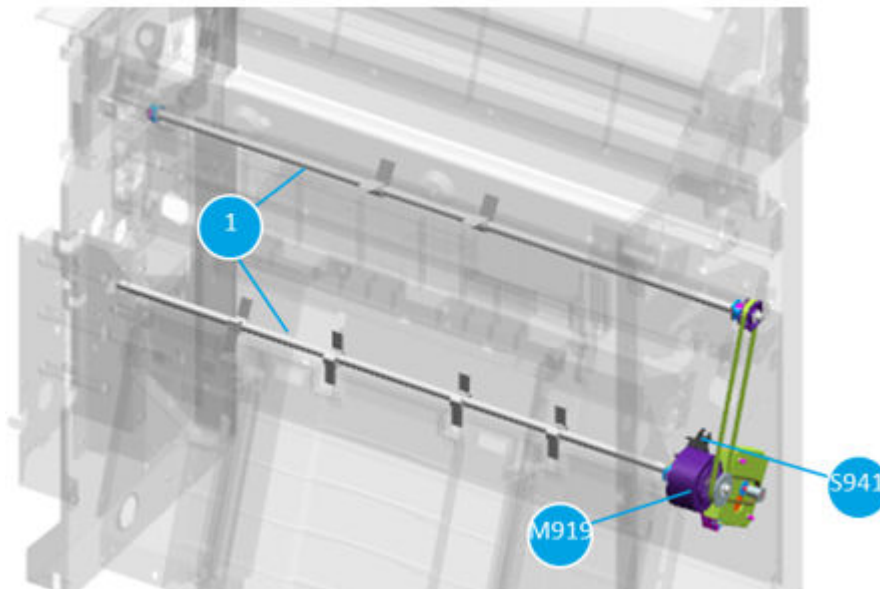


Table 3-211 Overview of the booklet paddle unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Upper booklet paddle	JC66-04718A	Moves paper to the booklet end fence unit

Table 3-211 Overview of the booklet paddle unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Lower booklet paddle	JC90-01429A, JC61-07225A, JC66-04719A	Moves paper to the booklet end fence unit
S941	Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Check the home position of the booklet paddle
M919	Booklet paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Drives two booklet paddles

Figure 3-325 Detail view of the booklet paddle unit

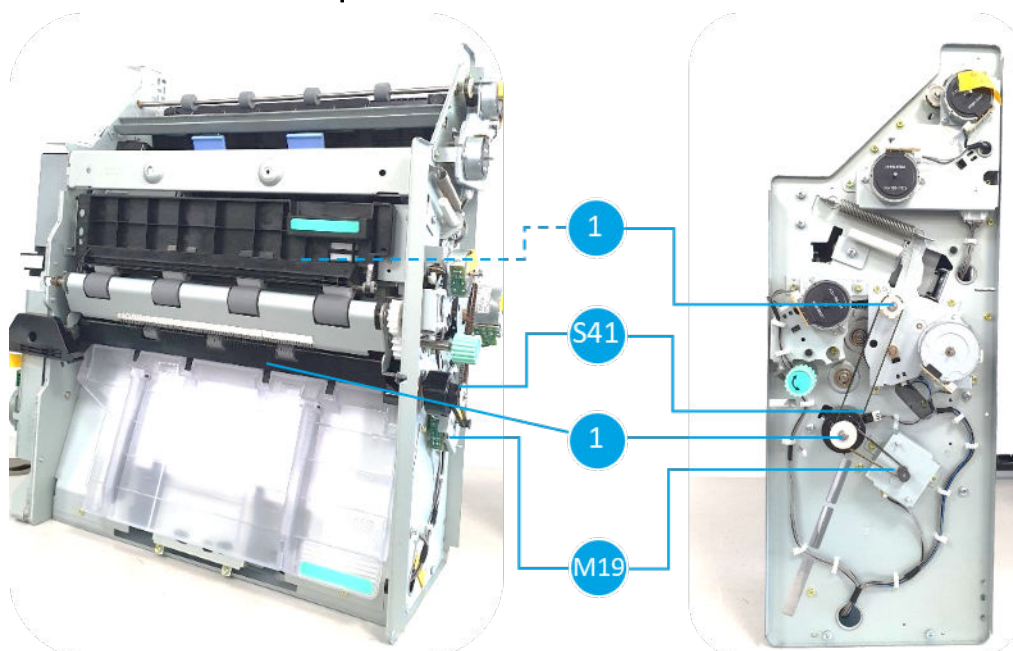


Table 3-212 Detail view of the booklet paddle unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Upper booklet paddle	JC66-04718A	Moves paper to the booklet end fence unit
1	Lower booklet paddle	JC90-01429A, JC61-07225A, JC66-04719A	Moves paper to the booklet end fence unit
S941	Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Check the home position of the booklet paddle
M919	Booklet paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Drives two booklet paddles

Booklet end fence unit

You will learn more about the booklet end fence unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet end fence unit overview

Learn about the booklet end fence unit overview.

The booklet end fence unit supports paper that enters from the booklet paddle unit, then moves paper to the designated position for folding and stapling. The booklet end fence motor moves the booklet end

fence up and down. The booklet end fence home sensor checks the home position of the booklet end fence. The booklet end fence solenoid drives the clamp to hold paper that comes into the booklet end fence.

Figure 3-326 Overview of the booklet end fence unit

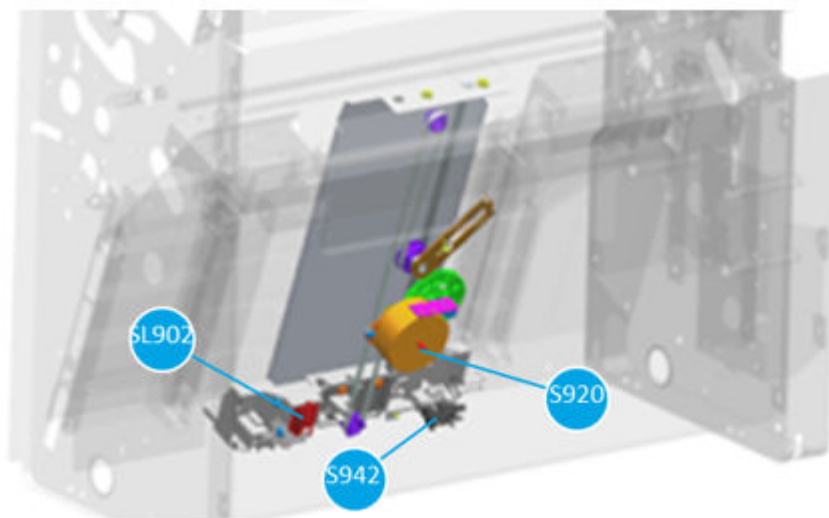


Table 3-213 Overview of the booklet end fence unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet end fence	JC90-01432A	Supports paper, then moves it to the designated location to fold or staple
S942	Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet end
M920	Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	Moves the booklet end fence up and down
SL902	Booklet end fence solenoid	JC33-00038A	Drives the clamp to hold paper that comes into the booklet end fence

Figure 3-327 Detail view of the booklet end fence unit

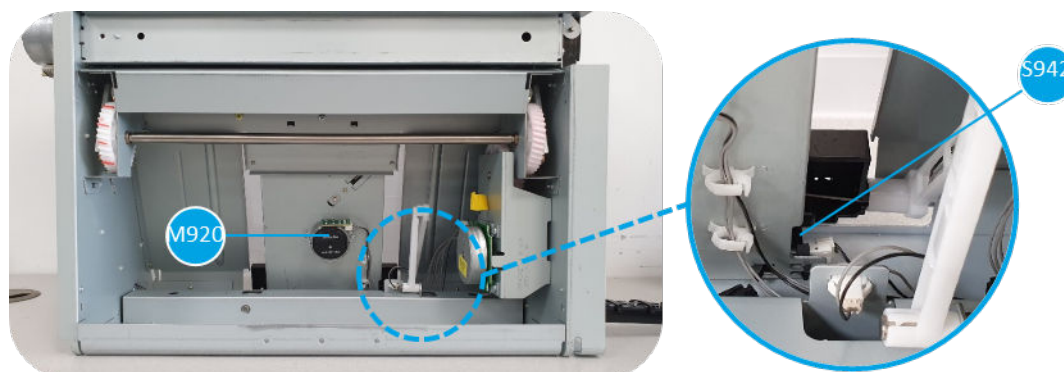


Table 3-214 Detail view of the booklet end fence unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S942	Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet end

Table 3-214 Detail view of the booklet end fence unit (continued)

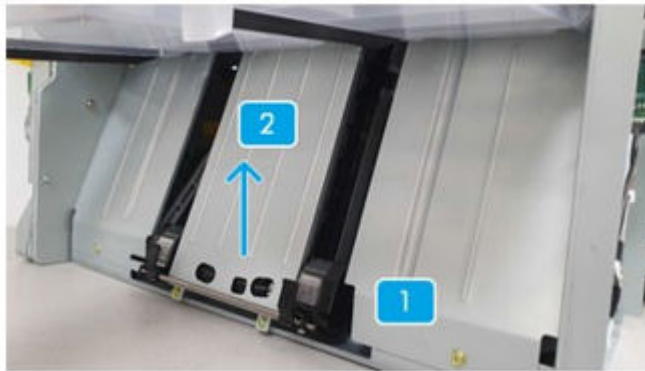
No	Part name	Part number	Description
M920	Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	Moves the booklet end fence up and down

Booklet end fence unit operation

Learn about the booklet end fence unit operation.

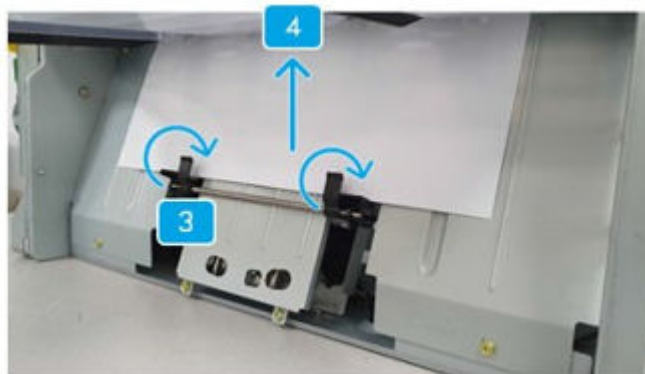
1. The booklet end fence is located at the home position (callout1). When the booklet maker starts its job, the end fence goes to the direction 2.

Figure 3-328 Booklet end fence unit operation, view 1



2. The booklet end fence unit supports paper comes from the booklet paddle unit and holds paper so as not to be scattered (callout3). Then it moves to the certain location to fold or staple it (callout 4).

Figure 3-329 Booklet end fence unit operation, view 2



Booklet presser unit

You will learn more about the booklet presser unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet presser unit overview

Learn about the booklet presser unit overview.

The booklet presser unit sort print pages that enter to the booklet maker in order. The Booklet presser motor moves the booklet presser, and the booklet presser home sensor checks whether the booklet presser is at the home position.

Figure 3-330 Overview of the booklet presser unit

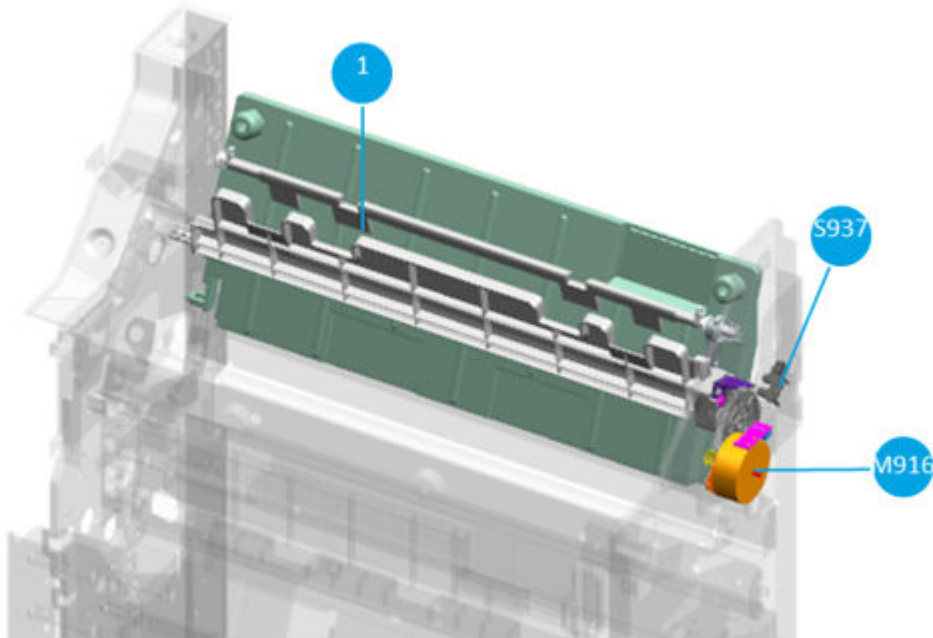


Table 3-215 Overview of the booklet presser unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet presser	JC61-07237A	Accumulates paper from the entrance unit not to be shuffled
S937	Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet presser
M916	Booklet presser motor	JC93-01155A	Drives the booklet presser

Figure 3-331 Detail view of the booklet presser unit

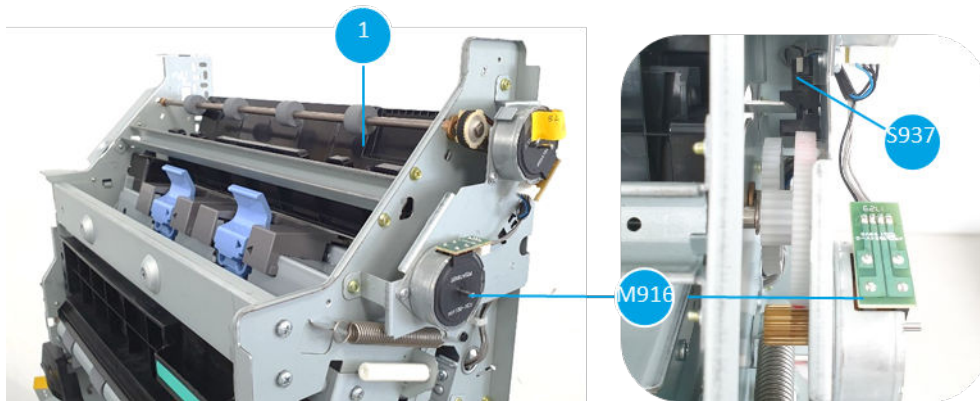


Table 3-216 Detail view of the booklet presser unit

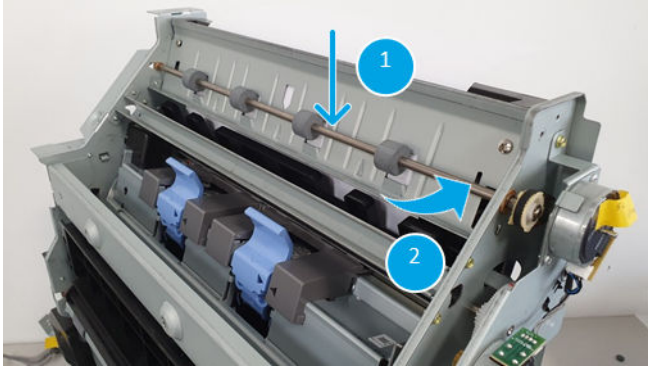
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet presser	JC61-07237A	Accumulates paper from the entrance unit not to be shuffled
S937	Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet presser
M916	Booklet presser motor	JC93-01155A	Drives the booklet presser

Booklet presser unit operation

Learn about the booklet presser unit operation.

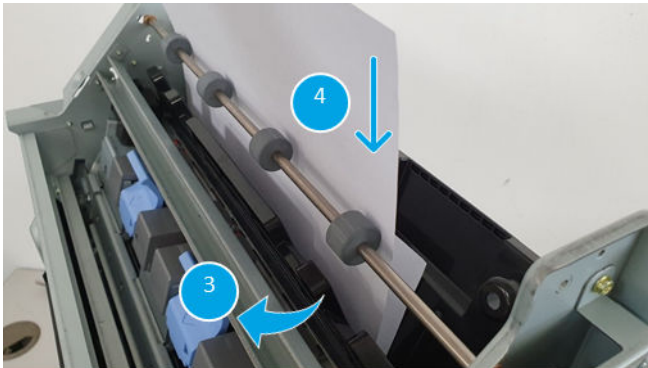
1. Paper comes into the booklet presser unit (callout 1). When the training edge of the paper exits the booklet entrance unit, the presser hits the paper to be bent to the direction of the arrow (callout 2).

Figure 3-332 Booklet presser unit operation, view 1



2. When a next sheet arrives, the presser turns back to the original position (callout 3) so that the paper falls on the left side of the previous sheet pushed by the booklet presser (callout 4).

Figure 3-333 Booklet presser unit operation, view 2



Booklet tamper unit

You will learn more about the booklet tamper unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet tamper unit overview

Learn about the booklet tamper unit overview.

The booklet tamper unit aligns the left and right side of documents for stapling or folding.

The booklet tamper motor adjusts the booklet tampers' width according to paper size. The booklet tamper home sensor checks the home position of the booklet tamper.

Figure 3-334 Overview of the booklet tamper unit

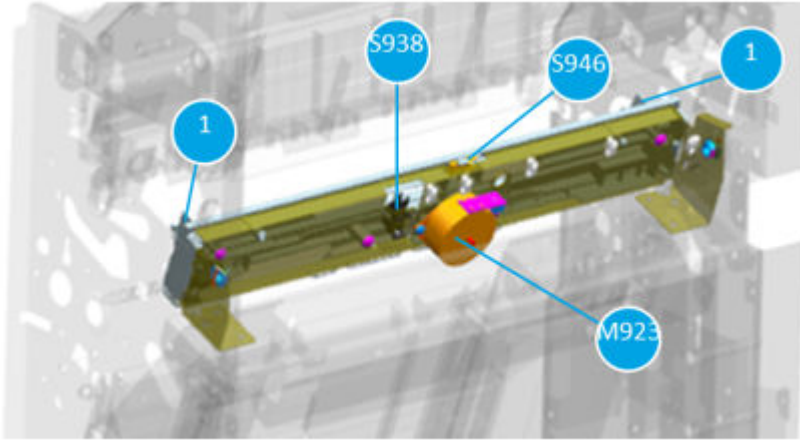


Table 3-217 Overview of the booklet tamper unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet tamper	JC90-01431A	Aligns documents for stapling or folding
S938	Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet
M923	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	Drives the booklet tamper
S946	Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	-

Figure 3-335 Detail view of the booklet tamper unit, view 1

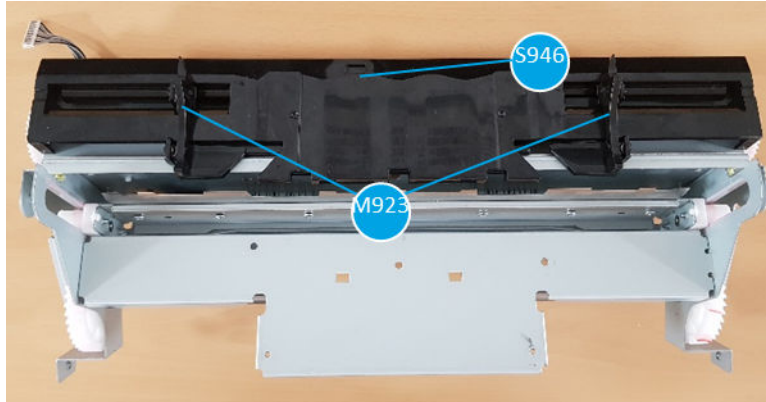


Table 3-218 Detail view of the booklet tamper unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M923	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	Drives the booklet tamper
S946	Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	-

Figure 3-336 Detail view of the booklet tamper unit, view 2

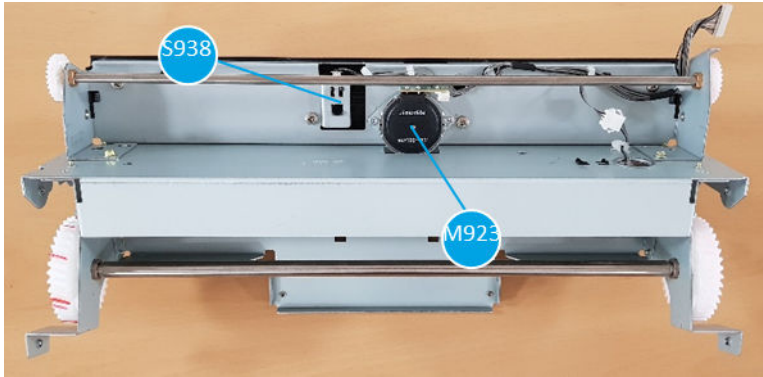


Table 3-219 Detail view of the booklet tamper unit, view 2

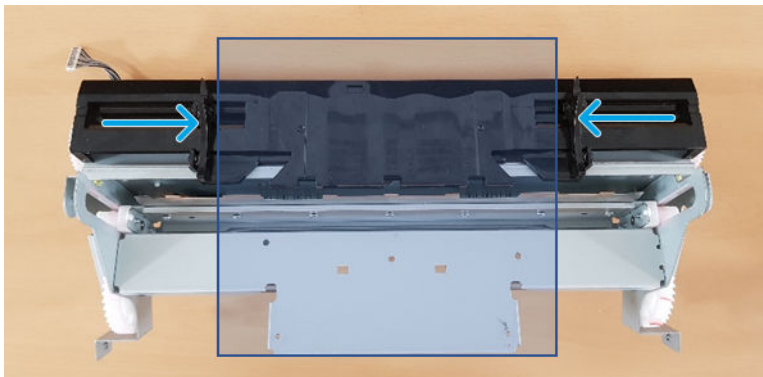
No	Part name	Part number	Description
S938	Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet
M923	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	Drives the booklet tamper

Booklet tamper unit operation

Learn about the booklet tamper unit operation.

When a certain amount of paper is collected, the booklet tamper unit hits the left and right sides of the paper so that it is aligned correctly for the next process such as stapling or folding.

Figure 3-337 Booklet tamper unit operation



Booklet stapler unit

You will learn more about the booklet stapler unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet stapler unit overview

Learn about the booklet stapler unit overview.

Booklet stapler unit is a device installed inside the booklet maker that staples a bundle of aligned documents as a booklet.

There is only one option to make a bundle. If the user selects the option, this unit staples at the two location in the middle of stacks.

Figure 3-338 Overview of the booklet stapler unit

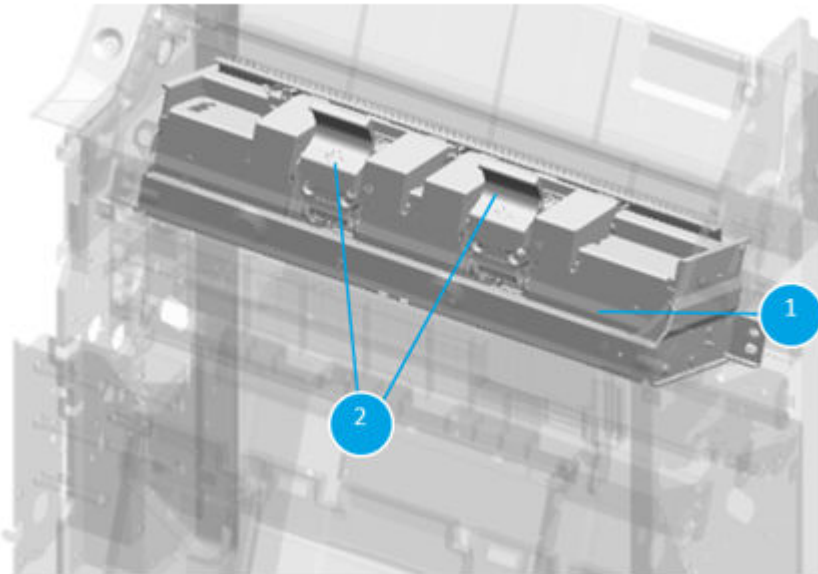


Table 3-220 Overview of the booklet stapler unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet stapler	6GW41-40001	
2	Booklet stapler cartridge	JC81-09881A	

Figure 3-339 Detail view of the booklet stapler unit

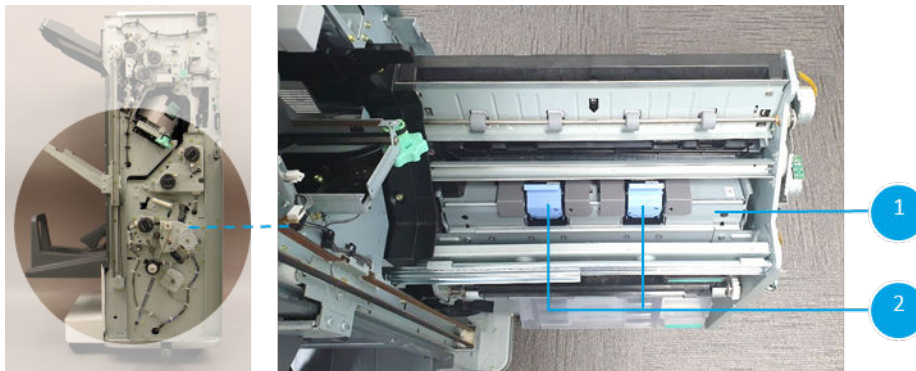


Table 3-221 Detail view of the booklet stapler unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet stapler	6GW41-40001	
2	Booklet stapler cartridge	JC81-09881A	


Staple and staple cartridge

Learn about the staple and staple cartridge.

1. Staple cartridge: JC81-09881B. Initial staples included.

Figure 3-340 Staple cartridge for the booklet stapler unit



 **NOTE:** Staple handle color may vary (blue or green color).

2. Staple: Y1G13-67901. 3 EA in 1 box.

Figure 3-341 Staple for the booklet stapler unit

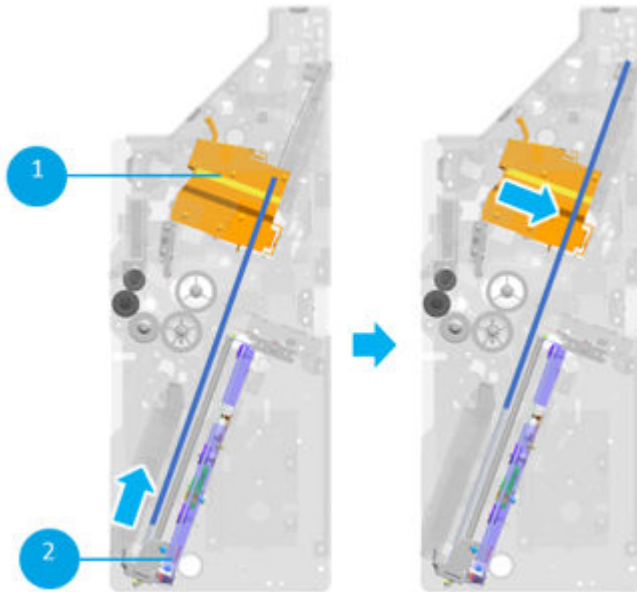


Booklet stapler unit operation

Learn about the booklet stapler unit operation.

1. When a stack of sheets is collected in booklet end fence unit, the booklet end fence (callout 2) changes its location to be stapled.
2. The booklet stapler (callout 1) staples at the middle of stacks.

Figure 3-342 Booklet stapler unit operation



Booklet fold unit

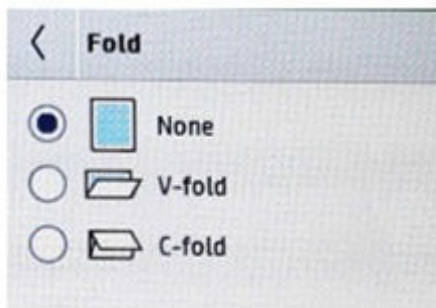
You will learn more about the booklet fold unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet fold unit overview

Learn about the booklet fold unit overview.

The booklet fold unit is a device installed inside the booklet maker that folds a bundle of aligned documents as a. This unit consists of two types of blades: blade and c-fold blade. It creates two types of output.

Figure 3-343 Fold options



The booklet blade motor drives the booklet blades and lightly folds the stack of paper. The folded paper passes through the booklet fold rollers to be fully folded. The booklet blade home sensor checks the home position of the booklet blade, and the booklet fold motor drives the rollers that enable folding

In case of c-fold, the booklet c-fold blade motor drives the booklet c-fold blade and lightly folds the stack of paper once more. The folded paper passes through the booklet c-fold roller to be fully folded. The booklet c-fold blade home sensor checks the home position of the c-fold blade.

Figure 3-344 Overview of the booklet fold unit, view 1

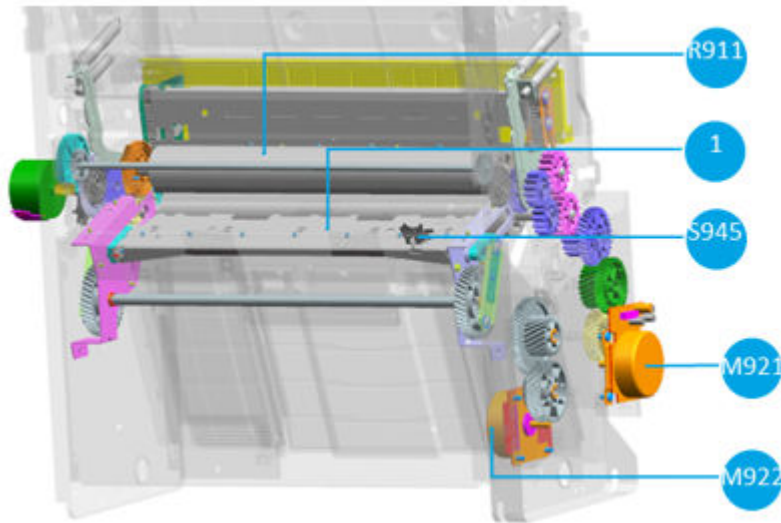


Table 3-222 Overview of the booklet fold unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet blade	JC93-01163A	Pushes a stack of paper to fold
S945	Booklet blade home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet blade
M922	Booklet blade motor	JC31-00144A	Drives the booklet blade
M921	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	Drives the booklet roller and c-fold blade
R911	Booklet fold roller	JC66-04748A	Presses a stack of paper to be fully folded

Figure 3-345 Overview of the booklet fold unit, view 2

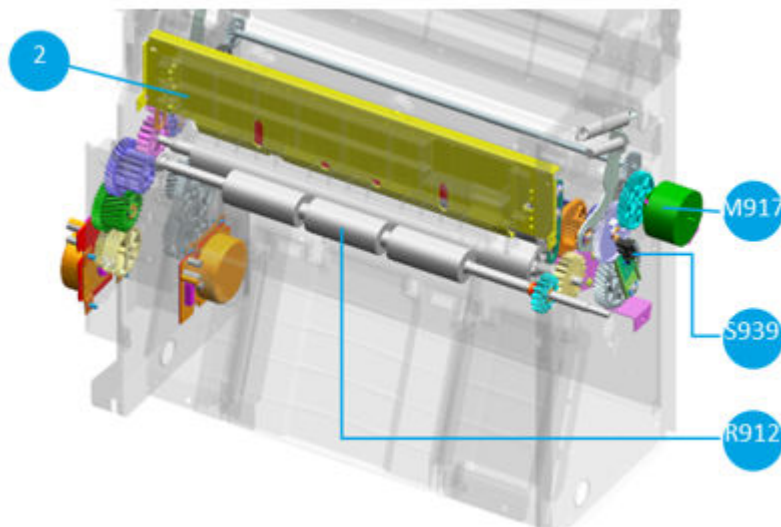


Table 3-223 Overview of the booklet fold unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
2	Booklet c-fold blade	JC61-07366A	Pushes a stack of paper to fold for the c-fold task

Table 3-223 Overview of the booklet fold unit, view 2 (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S939	Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet c-fold blade
M917	Booklet c-fold blade motor	JC93-01154A	Drives the booklet c-fold blade
R912	Booklet c-fold roller	JC66-04744A	In case of c-fold, presses a stack of paper to fold completely

Figure 3-346 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 1

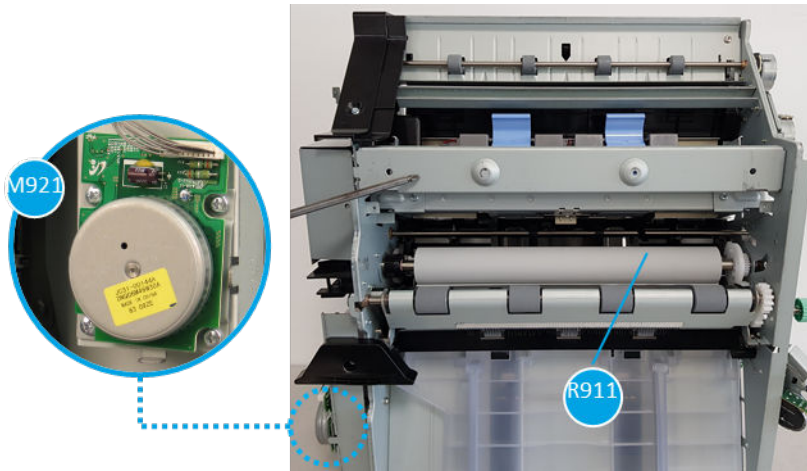


Table 3-224 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M921	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	Drives the booklet roller and c-fold blade
R911	Booklet fold roller	JC66-04748A	Presses a stack of paper to be fully folded

Figure 3-347 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 2

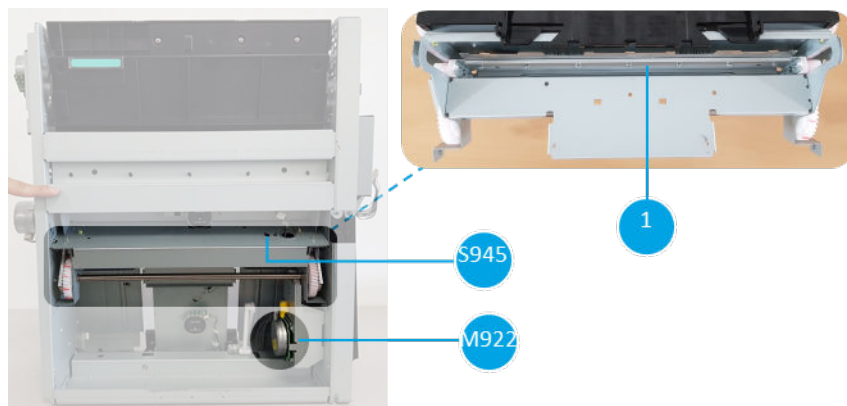


Table 3-225 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet blade	JC93-01163A	Pushes a stack of paper to fold
S945	Booklet blade home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet blade

Table 3-225 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 2 (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M922	Booklet blade motor	JC31-00144A	Drives the booklet blade

Figure 3-348 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 3

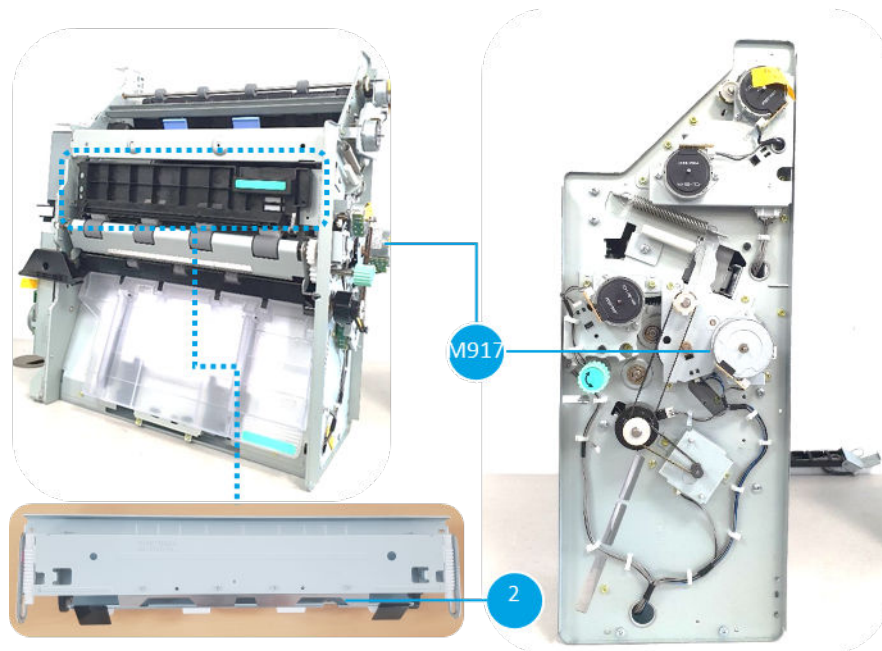


Table 3-226 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 3

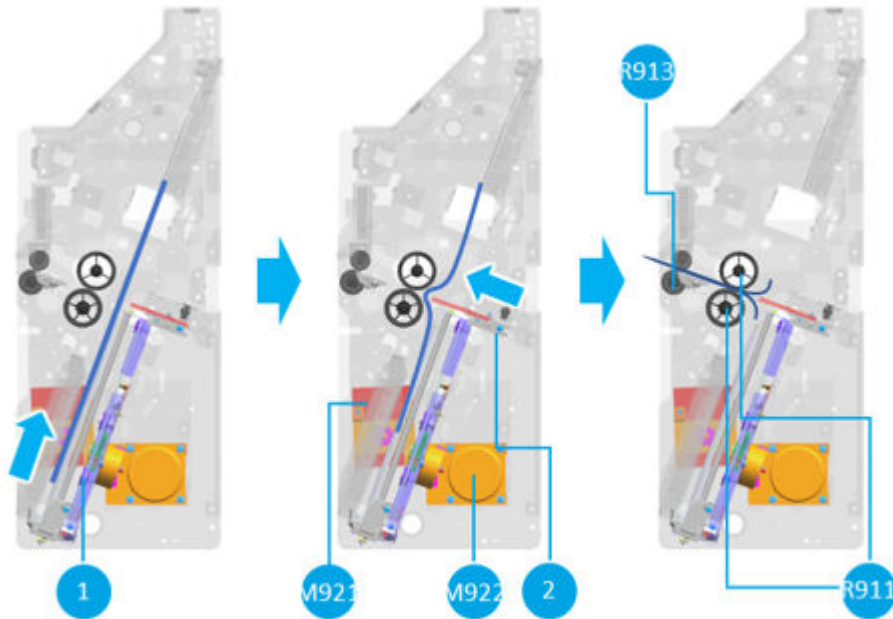
No	Part name	Part number	Description
2	Booklet c-fold blade	JC61-07366A	Pushes a stack of paper to fold for the c-fold task
M917	Booklet c-fold blade motor	JC93-01154A	Drives the booklet c-fold blade

Booklet fold unit operation

Learn about the booklet fold unit operation.

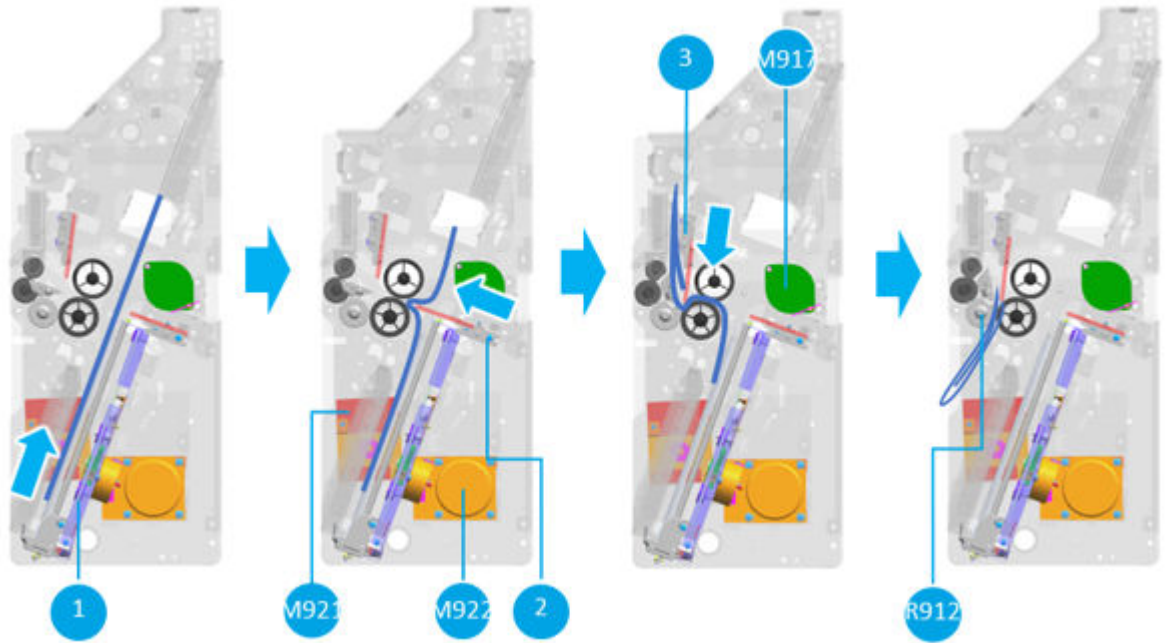
1. In case of v-fold.

Figure 3-349 Booklet fold unit operation, v-fold



- a. After a stack of paper is collected at a booklet end fence unit, the booklet end fence (callout 1) moves to a designated location.
 - b. The booklet blade motor (M922) drives the booklet blade (callout 2) to push the center of paper.
 - c. Paper enters between the booklet fold rollers (R911) by the booklet blade and it is completely folded between the rollers.
 - d. The folded paper stack is discharged to the booklet output tray via the booklet exit roller (R913).
2. In case of c-fold.

Figure 3-350 Booklet fold unit operation, c-fold



- a. After a stack of paper is collected at a booklet end fence unit, the booklet end fence (callout 1) is moved to a designated location.
- b. The booklet blade motor (M22) drives the booklet blade (callout 2) to push one-third of paper.
- c. The paper enters between the booklet fold rollers (R11) by the booklet blade and it is completely folded between the rollers.
- d. The folded sheets move to a location where they will be c-folded by a booklet diverter.
- e. The booklet c-fold blade motor (M17) drives the booklet c-fold blade (callout 3), pokes two-thirds of paper.
- f. Paper enters between the booklet c-fold roller (R12) and the booklet fold roller by the booklet c-fold blade and it is completely folded between the rollers.

Booklet diverter unit

You will learn more about the booklet diverter unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet diverter unit overview

Learn about the booklet diverter unit overview.

The booklet diverter unit determines a paper path to allow the stack of folded paper to exit to the booklet output tray during the v-fold. In case of c-fold, it makes another paper path so the folded sheets can move to a location that can be c-folded. The booklet diverter motor drives the booklet diverter, and the booklet diverter home sensor (S940) checks whether the booklet diverter is at the home position.

Figure 3-351 Overview of the booklet diverter unit, view 1

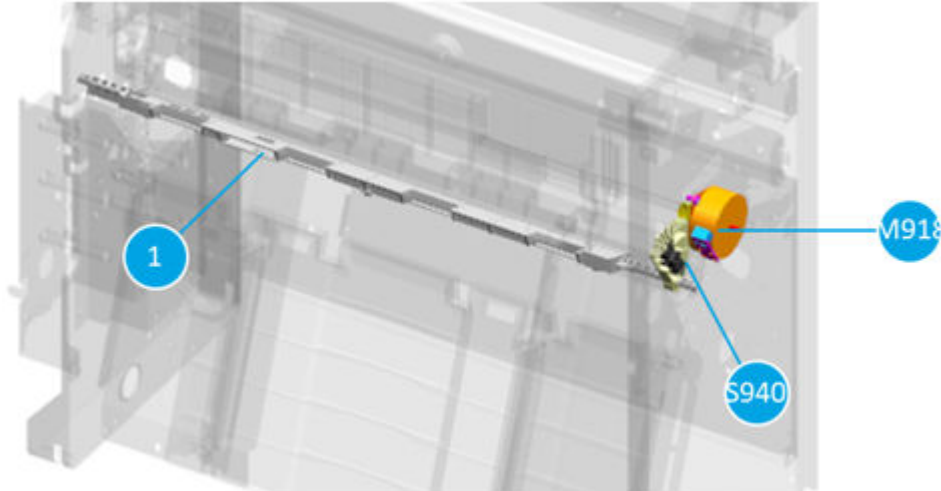


Table 3-227 Overview of the booklet diverter unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet diverter	JC90-01398A	Determines the paper path for either the booklet exit unit or the location for c-fold
S940	Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Checks the home position of the booklet diverter
M918	Booklet diverter motor	JC93-01153A	Drives the booklet diverter

Figure 3-352 Overview of the booklet diverter unit, view 2

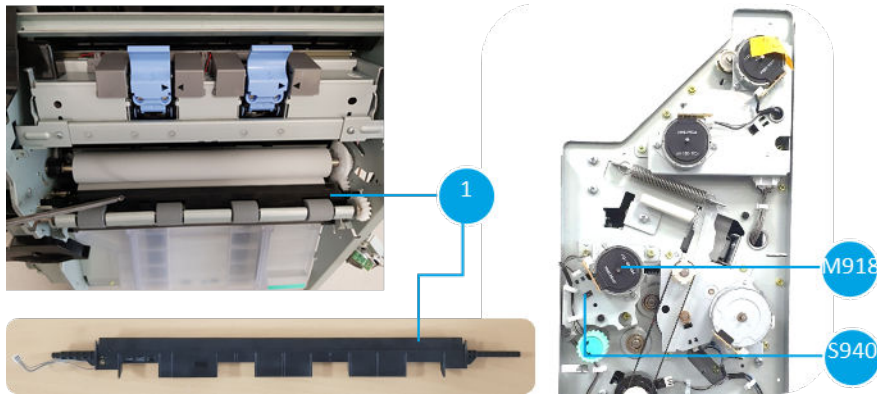


Table 3-228 Overview of the booklet diverter unit, view 2

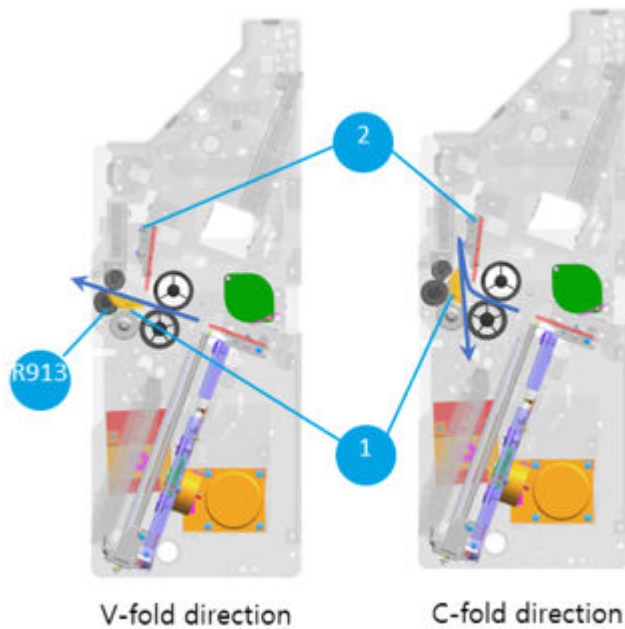
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet diverter	JC90-01398A	Determines the paper path for either the booklet exit unit or the location for c-fold
S940	Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Checks the home position of the booklet diverter
M918	Booklet diverter motor	JC93-01153A	Drives the booklet diverter

Booklet diverter unit operation

Learn about the booklet diverter unit operation.

1. In case of v-fold, the booklet diverter (callout 1) determines the paper path so that the folded sheets exit to the booklet exit unit and into the booklet output tray.

Figure 3-353 Booklet diverter unit operation



2. On the other hand, in c-fold, it makes another paper path to fold it by c-fold blade (callout 2).

Booklet exit unit

You will learn more about the booklet exit unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet exit unit overview

Learn about the booklet exit unit overview.

The booklet exit unit ejects a stack of v-fold paper to the booklet output tray unit. The booklet exit sensor detects paper entry into the booklet exit unit, and the booklet fold motor drives the booklet exit roller to discharge paper.

Figure 3-354 Overview of the booklet exit unit

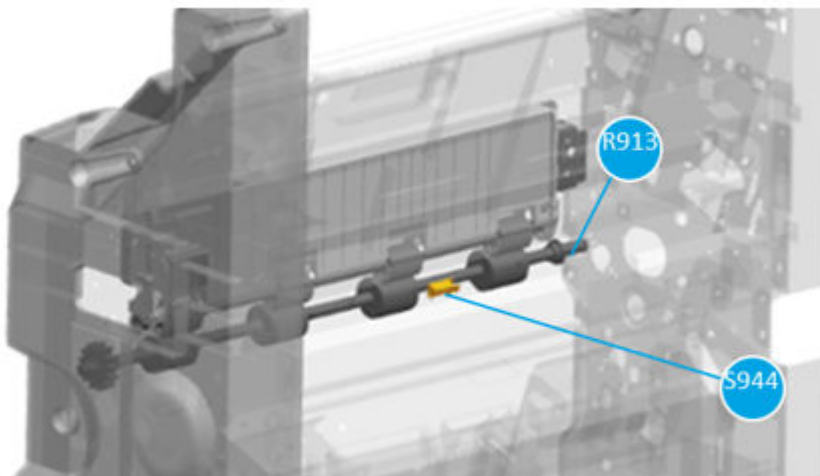


Table 3-229 Overview of the booklet exit unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S944	Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Check whether paper has come into the booklet unit
M921	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	Drives the booklet exit roller
R913	Booklet exit roller	JC66-04721A	Moves paper to the booklet output tray unit

Figure 3-355 Detail view of the booklet exit unit

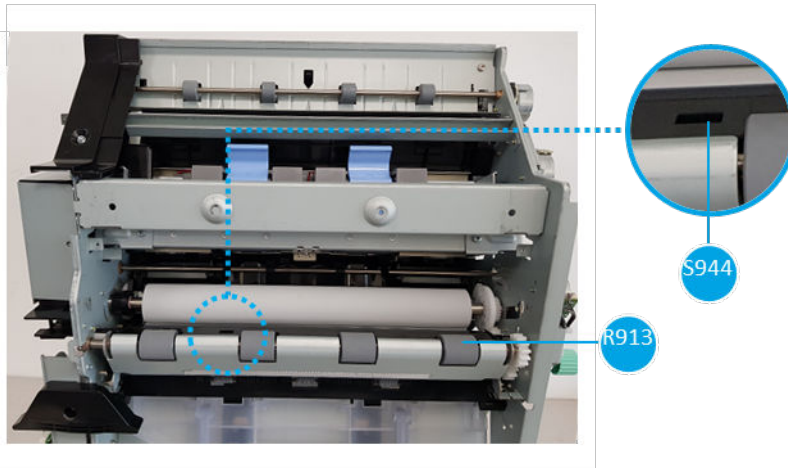


Table 3-230 Detail view of the booklet exit unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S944	Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Check whether paper has come into the booklet unit
R913	Booklet exit roller	JC66-04721A	Moves paper to the booklet output tray unit

Booklet output tray unit

You will learn more about the booklet output tray unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet output tray unit overview

Learn about the booklet output tray unit overview.

The booklet output tray unit is the place where the ejected paper is stacked. The booklet output tray sensor detects whether paper is on the booklet output tray or not.

Figure 3-356 Overview of the booklet output tray unit

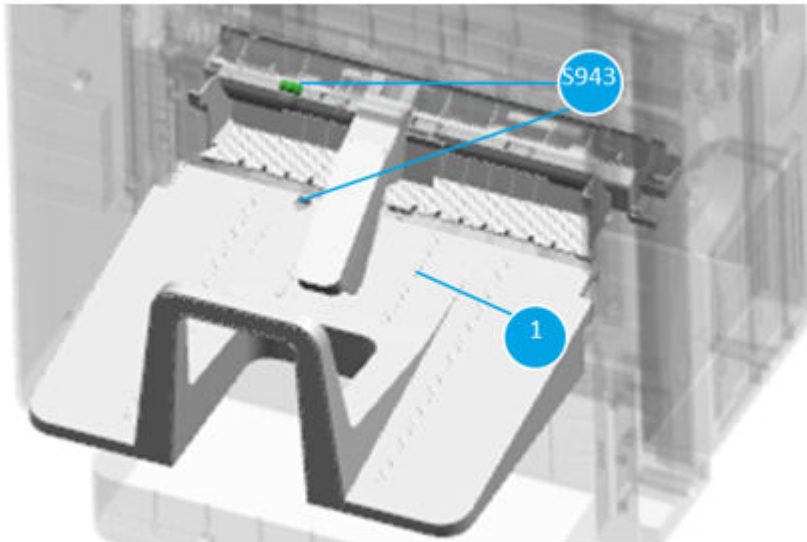


Table 3-231 Overview of the booklet output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet output tray	5QK09-40017, 5QK09-40015	Stores paper stacks from the booklet exit unit
S943	Booklet output tray sensor	JC82-01039A	Detects whether paper is on the booklet output tray

Figure 3-357 Detail view of the booklet output tray unit

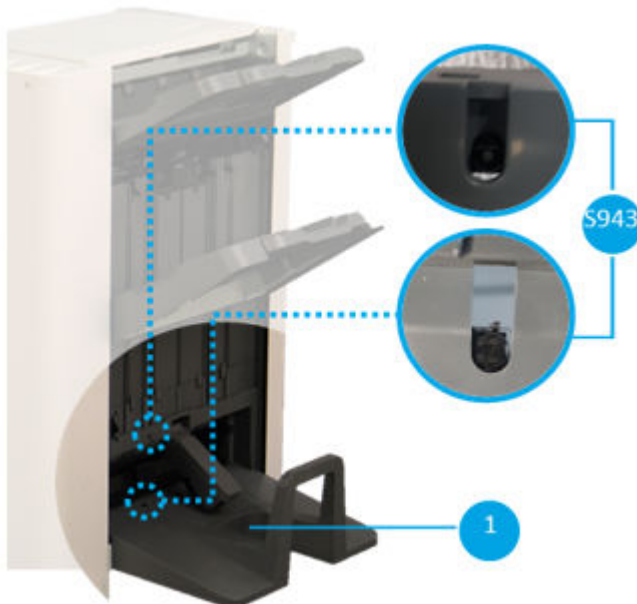


Table 3-232 Detail view of the booklet output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet output tray	5QK09-40017, 5QK09-40015	Stores paper stacks from the booklet exit unit

Table 3-232 Detail view of the booklet output tray unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S943	Booklet output tray sensor	JC82-01039A	Detects whether paper is on the booklet output tray

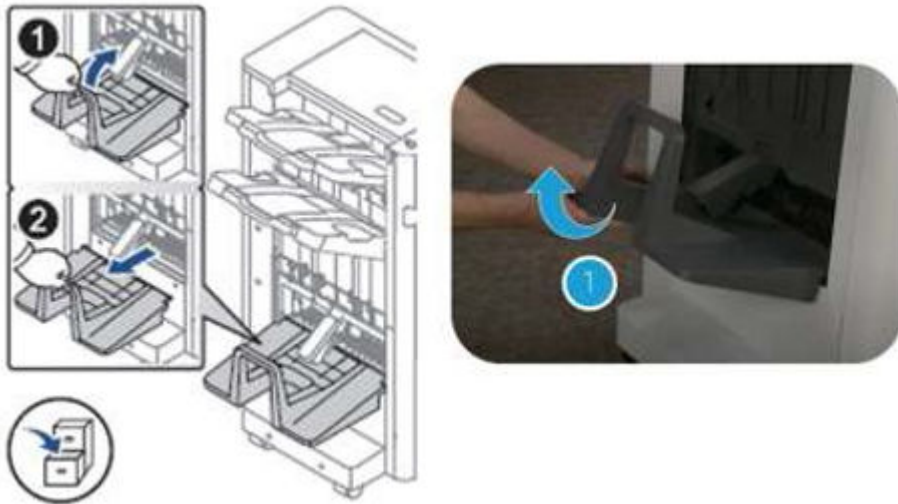
Booklet output tray unit operation: loading a large number of booklets

Learn about the booklet output tray unit operation.

Y1G07A Booklet finisher is support available to print a large number of booklets.

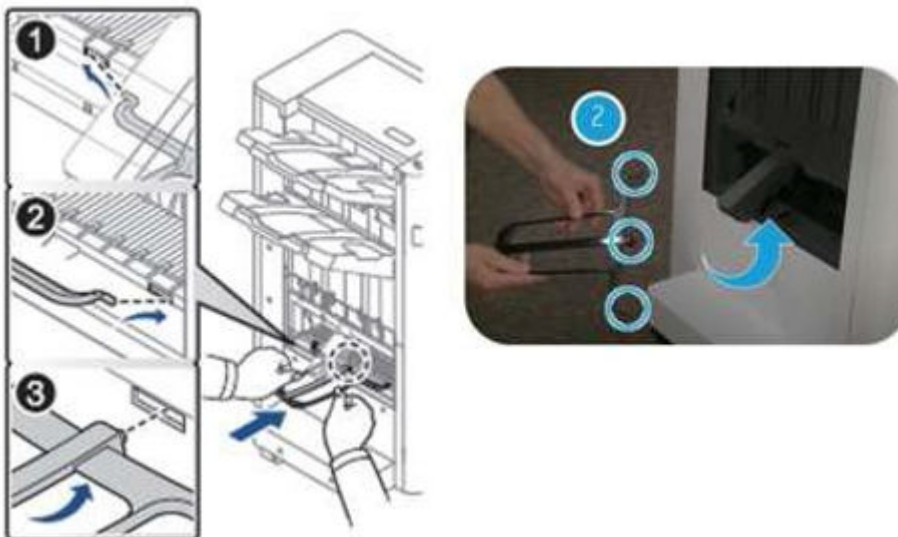
1. Remove the booklet output tray (callout 1).

Figure 3-358 Booklet output tray unit operation, view 1



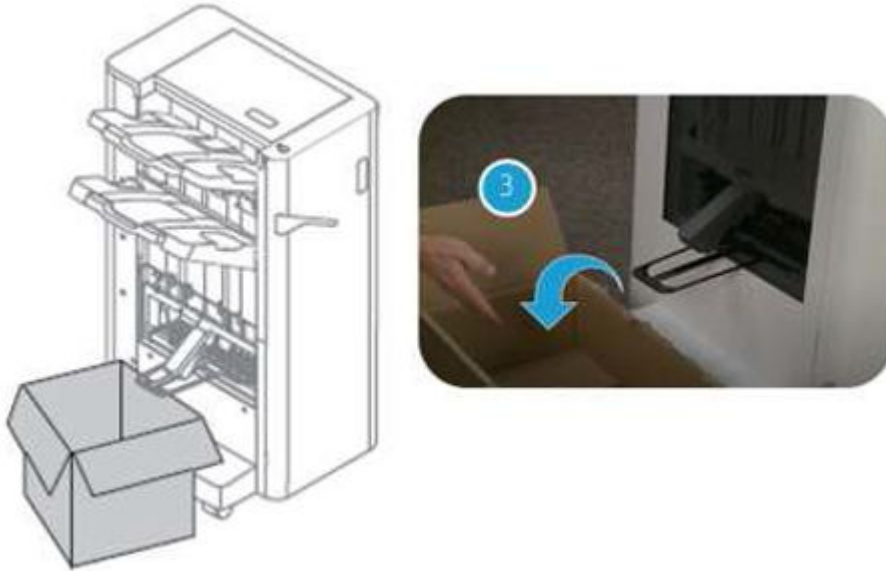
2. Install the booklet sub tray at the booklet output (callout 2)

Figure 3-359 Booklet output tray unit operation, view 2



3. Install a box to store printouts (callout 3).

Figure 3-360 Booklet output tray unit operation, view 3



PCA

You will learn more about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCA.

Finisher main PCA

Learn about the finisher main PCA.

The stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher main PCA controls operation of the finishers by communicating with the printer main PCA.

- Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher main PCA part number: 6GW55-60001

Figure 3-361 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker finisher main PCA connectors

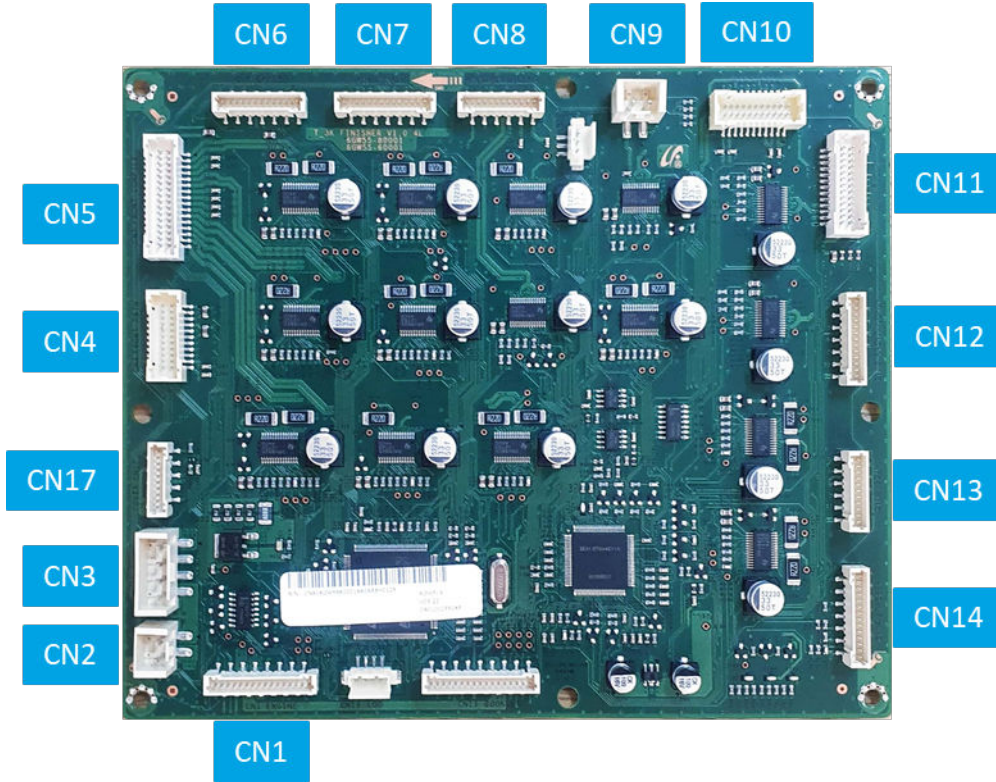


Table 3-233 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker finisher main PCA connectors

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Error code when disconnected
SS-CN1	Mainboard	16pin	JC39-02308A	
SS-CN2	Door	2pin	JC39-02309A	
SS-CN3	Cover Buffer sensor Entrance sensor Diverter home sensor	4pin	JC39-02631A	
SS-CN4	Entrance motor Tray diverter home sensor Top exit sensor Main exit sensor Rear tamper motor Entrance motor	22pin	JC39-02313A	

Table 3-233 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker finisher main PCA connectors (continued)

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Error code when disconnected
SS-SN5	Paddle motor End fence motor Front tamper home sensor Paddle home sensor Top output tray paper full sensor Manual staple op board Rear tamper home sensor Bridge feed motor Bridge entrance sensor	32pin	JC39-02313A	
SS-CN6	Bridge door sensor Bridge exit sensor	18pin	6GW51-50001	
SS-CN7	Punch option Exit motor Main output tray motor	14pin	JC39-02314A	
SS-CN8	Main output tray motor sensor Top output tray paper full sensor	12pin	JC39-02312A	
SS-CN9	Main output tray top of stack sensor Stapler head motor Stapler position motor	2pin	JC39-02316A	
SS-CN10	Stapler mid-rear sensor Stapler front-rear sensor Stapler rear sensor Ejector 2 motor Ejector 1 motor Ejector 2 motor sensor Ejector 1 motor sensor	22pin	JC39-02315A	

Table 3-233 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker finisher main PCA connectors (continued)

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Error code when disconnected
SS-CN11	Ejector 2 home sensor Ejector sensor Ejector 1 end sensor Ejector 1 home sensor Front tamper motor Manual staple sensor	26pin	JC39-02317A	
SS-CN12	End fence home sensor Stapler front sensor Paper holding motor	13pin	JC39-02318A	
SS-CN13	Booklet output tray full sensor Main output tray lower limit sensor Main output tray top of stack sensor (LED) Rear paper holding sensor	11pin	JC39-02319A	
SS-CN14	Paper holding home sensor Front paper holding sensor Main output tray top of stack sensor (receiver) Buffer home sensor	14pin	JC39-02319A	
SS-CN17	Buffer motor Buffer solenoid	10pin	JC39-02575A	

Booklet maker PCA

Learn about the booklet maker PCA.

The booklet maker PCA controls operation of the booklet maker by communicating with the booklet maker finisher main PCA.

- Booklet maker PCA part number: 6GW51-60001

Figure 3-362 Booklet maker PCA connectors

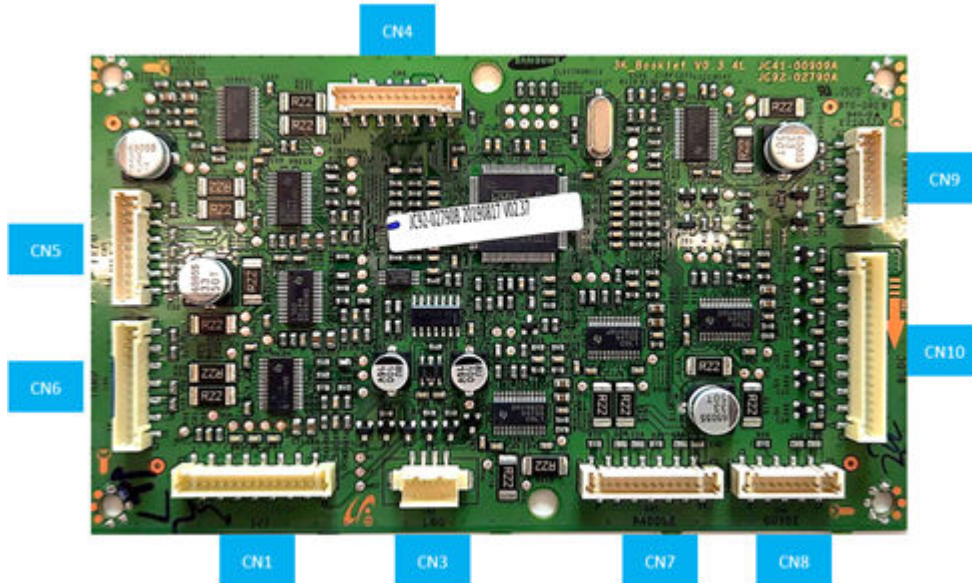


Table 3-234 Booklet maker PCA connectors

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Error code when disconnected
BM-CN1	Finisher main PCA	16pin	JC39-02296A	
BM-CN3	Log	4pin		
BM-CN4	Stapler	13pin	JC39-02301A	
BM-CN5	Feed	11pin	JC39-02298A	
BM-SN6	Tamp	13pin	JC39-02298A	
BM-CN7	Paddle	14pin	JC39-02304A	
BM-CN8	Guide	10pin	JC39-02304A	
BM-CN9	Stopper	9pin	JC39-02305A	
BM-CN10	BLDC	20pin	JC39-02305A	

Manual staple PCA

Learn about the manual staple PCA.

The manual staple PCA communicates with the finisher main PCA

Figure 3-363 Manual staple PCA connectors



Table 3-235 Manual staple PCA connectors

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Error code when disconnected
MS-CN1	Finisher main PCA	4pin	JC39-02345A	

Inner finisher

You will learn more about the inner finisher.

Detailed specifications

Learn about the detailed specifications of the inner finisher.

Table 3-236 General specifications

Item	Description
Capacity	550 Sheets (Main 500, Top 50) @ 80gsm
Sensing	Paper Jam/Tray Sensing/Stapler/Cover Open
Media Sizes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Main: 98mm - 320mm x 139.7mm - 457.2mm (3.86in - 12.59in x 5.5in - 18in) Top: 98mm - 320mm x 148.0mm - 430.0mm (3.86in - 12.59in x 5.83in - 16.93in)
Media types	Plain/Thick/Heavy weight/Thin/Cotton/Colored/Recycled/Bond/Archive/Pre-Punched/Cardstock/Glossy/Envelope
Media Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Main: 52-256 gsm (13.9-68.3 lb.) Top: 52-325 gsm (13.9-86.7 lb.)
Number of Bin	2 (Main/Top)
Dimension (W X D X H)	458 x 491 x 173 mm (18.0 X 19.3 X 6.8 inch)
Weight	Net weight: 15 kg (33 lb.) Packing weight: 18.39 kg (40.53 lb.)
Tray 1 Finishing Capacity	50 Sheets @ 80gsm
Tray 1 Finishing Mode	Stapling (Left, Right, Dual)/Punch (2/3, 2/4, Swedish)
Tray 2 Finishing Capacity	500 Sheets @ 80 gsm

Table 3-237 Paper Size Specification

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
B5(JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
B5(ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X

Table 3-237 Paper Size Specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	X
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	X
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	X
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	O	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	O	X	X	X	X	X

Table 3-237 Paper Size Specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47.2	–	O	X	O (W 98-297 ~ L 140-1200)	X	X	X

¹ "F/R" means front side and rear side can be supported.

Table 3-238 Punch specifications

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
B5 (JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
B5 (ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	X	O	X	O

Table 3-238 Punch specifications (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	X	O
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O		O	O	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47	–	X	X	X	X	X

Table 3-239 Media performance

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Plain (71-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Thick (91-105 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Heavy weight (106-175 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 1 (176-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 2 (217-256 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 3 (257-300 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 4 (301-325 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X
Thin (60-70 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Cotton (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Colored (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Pre-Printed (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Recycled (60-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O

Table 3-239 Media performance (continued)

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Bond	O	O	O	O
Archive (75-105 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
LetterHead	O	O	O	O
Pre-Punched	O	O	O	X
Thin Cardstock (105-163 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Thick Cardstock (170-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Cardstock (217-256 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 1(257-300 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 2(301-325 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X
Thin Glossy (106-169 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Thick Glossy (170-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Glossy (217-256 g/m ²)	O	X	X	X
Envelope (75-90 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X
Thick Envelope (217-256 g/m ²)	O	X	X	X
Tab	O	X	X	O

Cover

Learn about the front view and rear view of the inner finisher.

Figure 3-364 Front view of the inner finisher

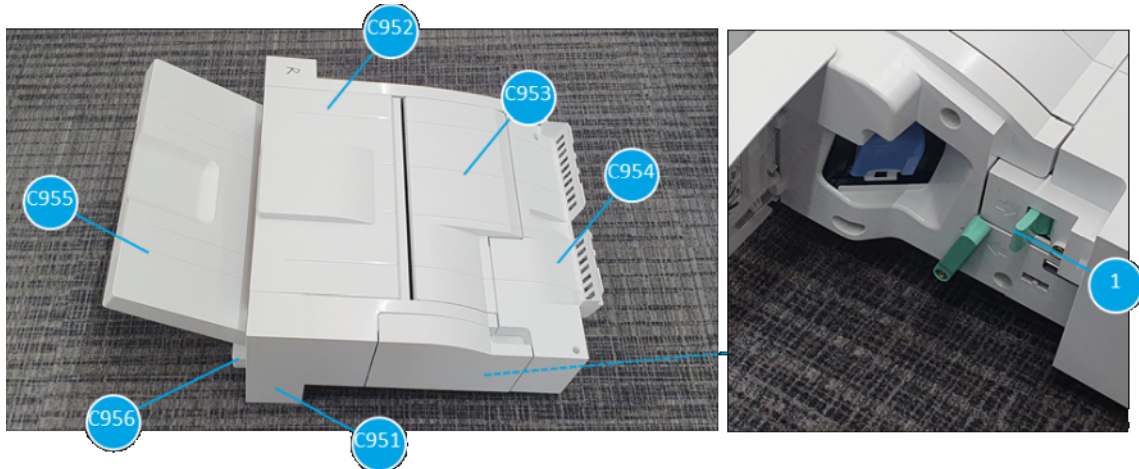


Table 3-240 Front view of the inner finisher

Callout	Part name	Part number
C951	Front cover	5QK09-60123

Table 3-240 Front view of the inner finisher (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number
C952	Top cover	5QK09-60124
C953	Middle cover	5QK09-60125
C954	Punch cover	8GS05-60114
C955	Output tray	5QK09-60118
C956	PCA tray	5QK09-40004
1	Lock release handle	JC66-04233A
Not shown	Exit bin full	JC90-01546A

Figure 3-365 Rear view of the inner finisher



Table 3-241 Rear view of the inner finisher

Callout	Part name	Part number
C957	Left cover	8GS05-60113
C958	Rear cover	5QK09-40037
C959	Low cover	5QK09-40018
2	Main interface harness	JC39-02169A
Not shown	Exit bin full	JC90-01546A

NOTE: An exit bin full is included in the product box. This assembly is used for only E877 and E826 series which should be installed at the second exit unit output area.

Figure 3-366 Exit bin full



Inner finisher overview

You will learn more about the inner finisher overview.

Inner finisher workflow

Learn about the inner finisher workflow.

Figure 3-367 Inner finisher workflow

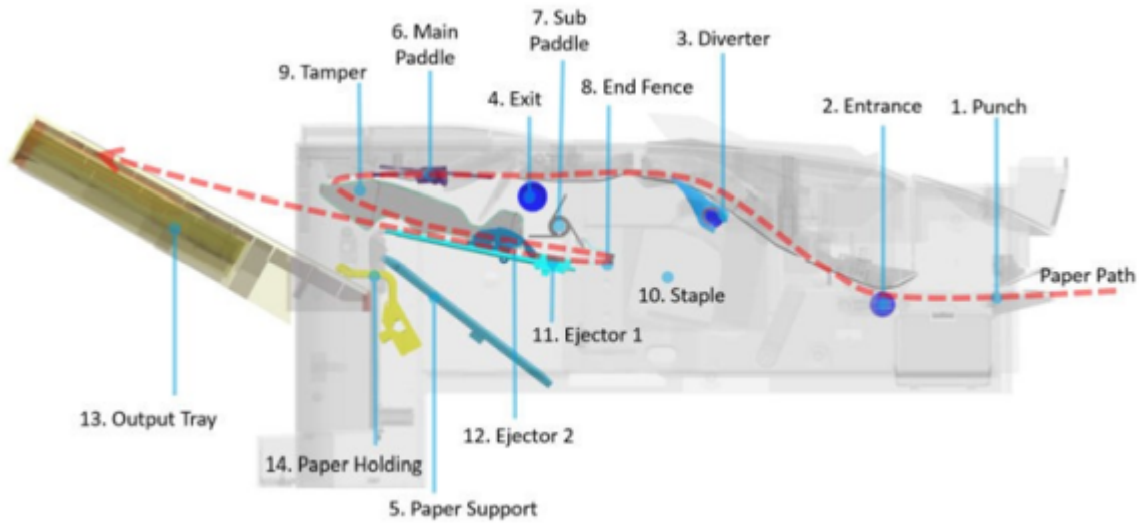


Table 3-242 Inner finisher workflow

Item	Unit	Description
1	Punch unit	Make holes in a specific location on a sheet of paper
2	Entrance unit	Allow a paper to move into the finisher
3	Diverter unit	Hold the paper so that the newly printed paper can stay out for seconds while the stapled bundle of paper moves to the output tray
4	Exit unit	Move the paper from the diverter unit to the ejector unit
5	Paper support unit	Prevent the paper from being fell down or bent when the long length paper such as A3 is ejected from the exit unit
6	Main paddle unit	Move the paper to the sub paddle
7	Sub paddle unit	Move the paper to the end fence
8	End fence unit	Set the standard position of the paper to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper
9	Tamper unit	Align the paper on the right and left side of the paper

Table 3-242 Inner finisher workflow (continued)

Item	Unit	Description
10	Stapler unit	Perform stapling to a bundle of aligned documents
11	Ejector 1 unit	Transfer the stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the ejector 2 unit
12	Ejector 2 unit	Grip a stack of paper up and ejects it onto the output tray
13	Output tray unit	Stack the job ended paper
14	Paper holding unit	Control the output tray movement

Inner finisher sensor

Learn about the inner finisher sensor.

Figure 3-368 Inner finisher sensor

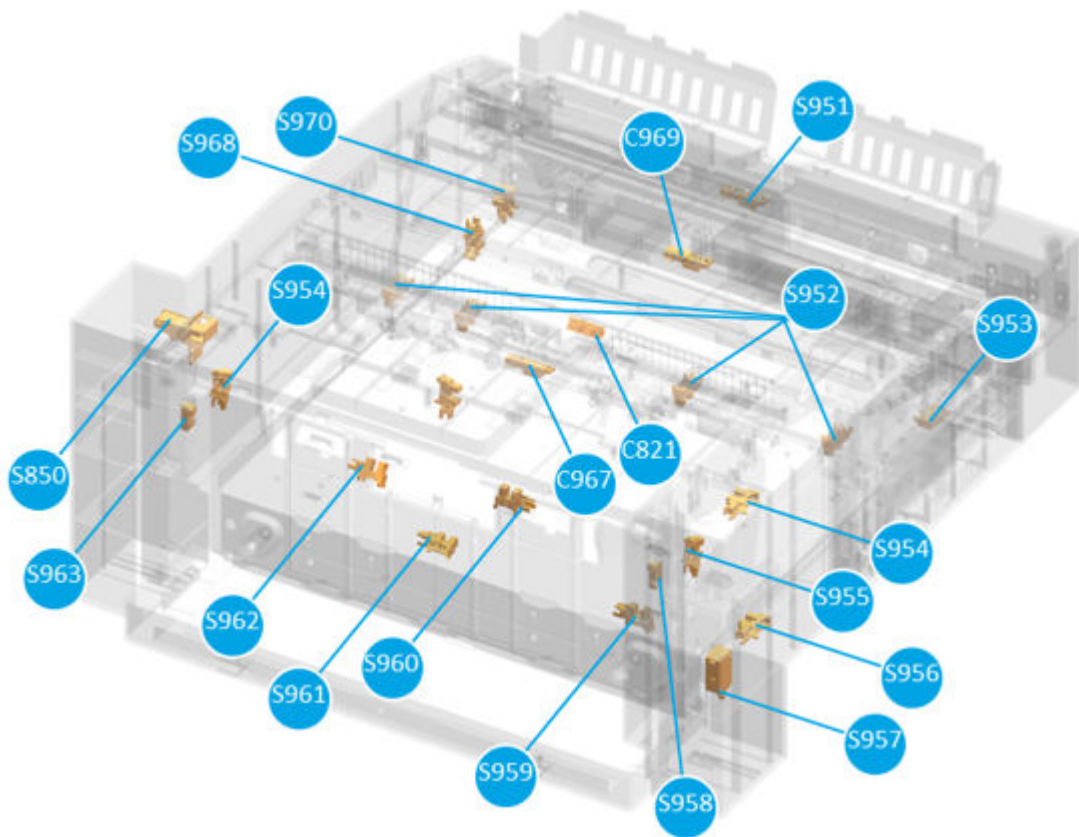


Table 3-243 Inner finisher sensor

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S951	Entrance sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check a paper comes into the entrance unit
S952	Stapler position sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Make the stapler be positioned in the exact stapling position
S953	Front cover switch	JC39-01610A	Switch	Check whether the front cover is closed or opened

Table 3-243 Inner finisher sensor (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S954	Main paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the main paddle locates at the home position
S955	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the front tamper locates at the home position
S956	Output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the output tray motor is operational
S957	Output tray lower limit switch	JC90-01320A	Switch	Check the lower limit (=Output tray is full) of the output tray
S958	Output tray top of stack sensor (receiver)	0603-001309	Photo TR	Check the upper limit of output tray
S959	Paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the location of the paper holding actuator
S960	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the ejector 2 locates at the home position
S961	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the ejector 2 motor is operational
S962	Paper support home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the paper support locates at the home position
S963	Output tray top of stack sensor (transmitter)	0601-003440	LED IR	Check the upper limit of output tray
S964	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the rear tamper locates at the home position
S965	Top cover switch	JC39-01610A	Switch	Check whether the top cover is closed or opened
S966	Ejector 1 home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the ejector 1 locates at the home position
S967	End fence sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check paper comes into the end fence unit
S968	Punch waste box sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Detect the punch waste box is installed
S969	Punch waste full sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check the punch waste box is full
S970	Finisher docking sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the finisher is installed
S971	Exit sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check paper comes into the exit unit

Inner finisher motor and solenoid

Learn about the inner finisher motor and solenoid.

Figure 3-369 Inner finisher motor and solenoid

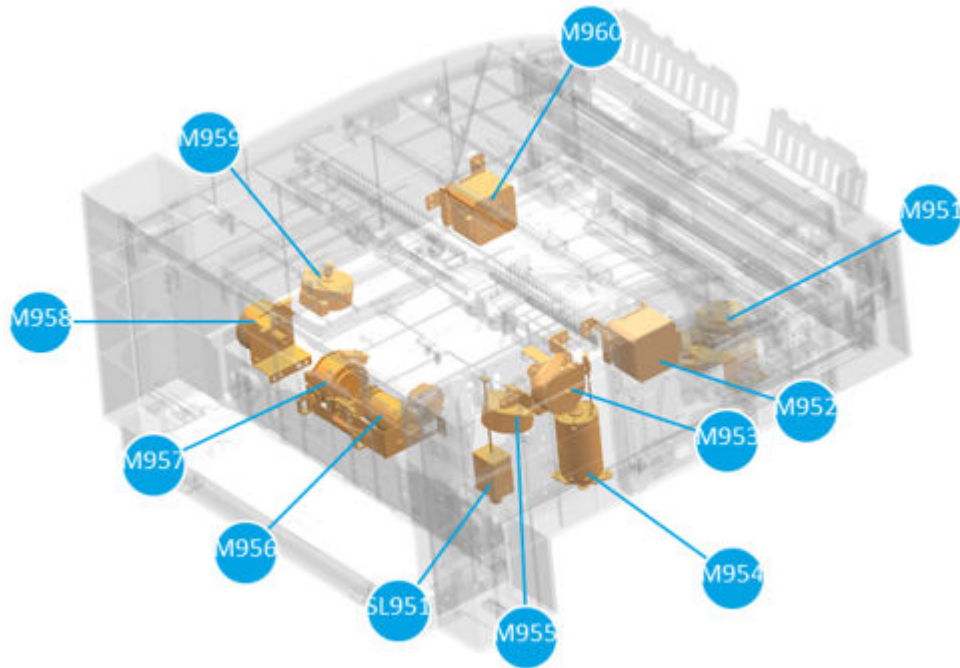


Table 3-244 Inner finisher motor and solenoid

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
M951	Stapler position motor	JC93-00999A	Stepping motor	Drive the stapler unit
M952	Exit motor	JC31-00169B	Stepping motor	Drive the exit roller and the sub paddle unit
M953	Main paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Drive the main paddle unit
M954	Output tray motor	JC90-01334B	DC motor	Drive the output tray unit
M955	Rear tamper motor assembly	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Drive the rear tamper unit
M956	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	DC motor	Drive the ejector 2 unit
M957	Ejector 1 motor	JC93-00998A	Stepping motor	Drive the ejector 1 unit
M958	Paper support motor	JC93-00802B	Stepping motor	Drive paper support unit
M959	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Drive the front tamper unit
M960	Entrance motor	JC31-00169B	Stepping motor	Drive the entrance roller
SL951	Paper holding solenoid	JC33-00037A	Solenoid	Move the paper holding actuator

Inner finisher roller

Learn about the inner finisher roller.

Figure 3-370 Inner finisher roller

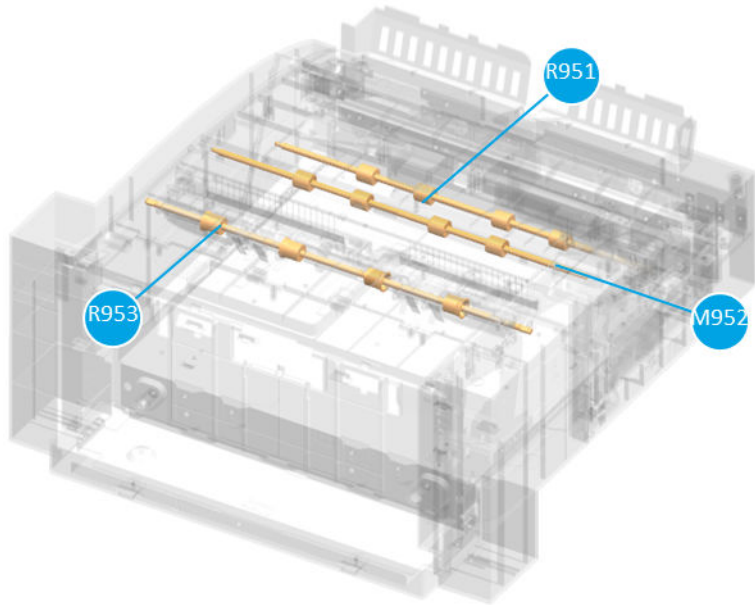


Table 3-245 Inner finisher roller

No	Name	Part number	Description
R951	Entrance roller	JC66-04243A	Move the paper to the finisher inside
R952	Middle roller	JC66-04243A	Move the paper to the exit unit
R953	Exit roller	JC66-04244A	Move the paper to the out bin tray

Inner finisher PCA

Learn about the inner finisher PCA.

Figure 3-371 Inner finisher PCA

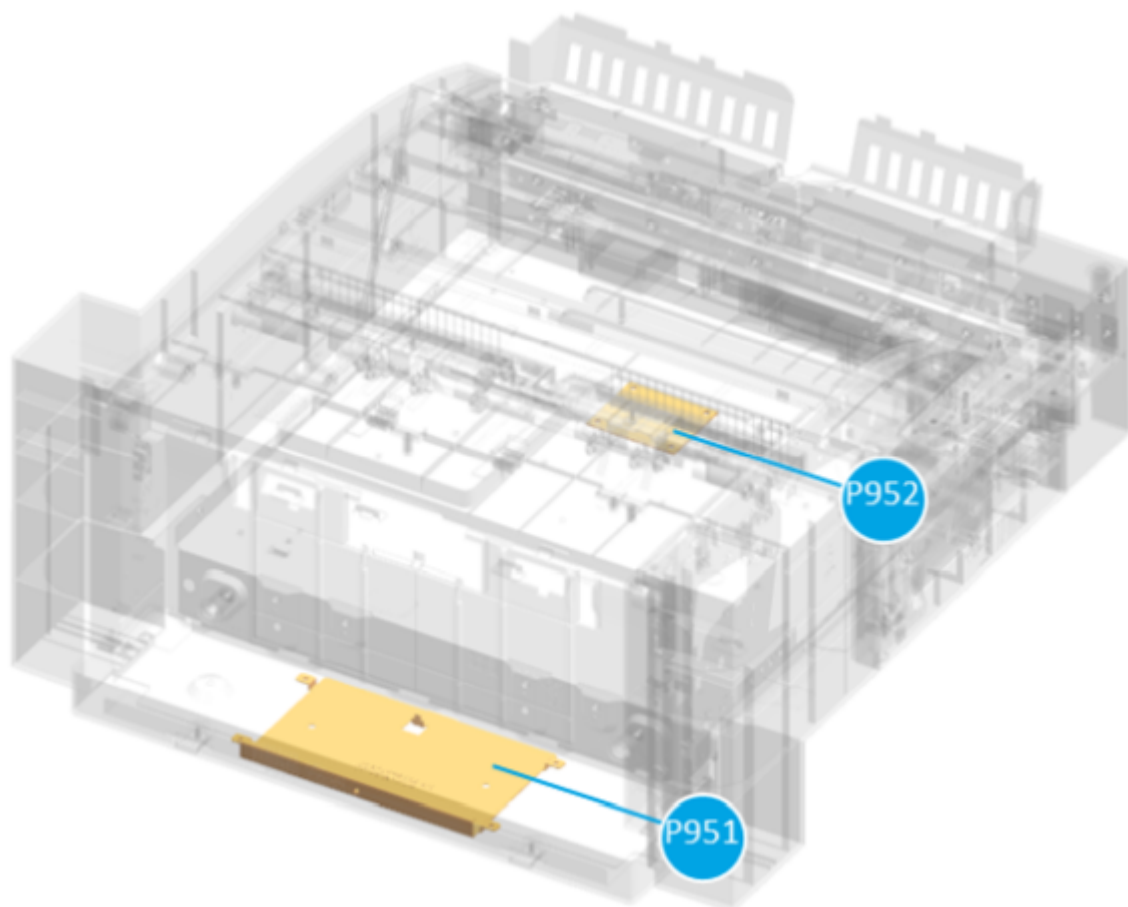


Table 3-246 Inner finisher PCA

No	Name	Part number	Description
P951	Finisher main PCA	6GW49-60001	-
P952	Rear joint PCA	JC92-02780A	Joint PCA between main PCA and several parts such as punch, stapler, entrance, and front door switch

Punch unit (optional)

You will learn more about the punch unit of the inner finisher.


Punch unit overview

Learn about the punch unit overview.

The punch unit is a device that punches holes in a specific location on a sheet of paper. The punch unit is located immediately before the entrance unit and punches holes in a paper.

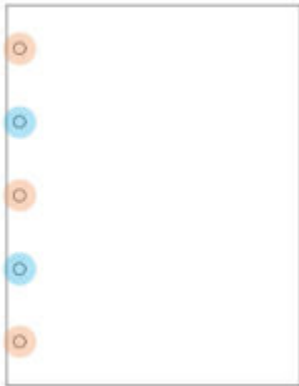
- HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch: 155P7-67001
- HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch: 155P8-67001

- HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch: 155P9-67001

 **NOTE:** Puncher types vary depending on the country or region.

In case of 2/3 hole punch, the 5 hole-punches are mounted in the punch unit. As the punch motor rotates clockwise, the inner gear moves to the right and the 3 hole-punches are moved downward to make holes. When making 2 holes, the motor rotates in the counterclockwise direction and the inner gear rotates to the left to drill two holes. The travel distance and position of the motor are detected and controlled by the hole punch home sensor and the hole punch motor sensor.

Figure 3-372 Punch unit overview, view 1



For more information, go to the HP WISE support portal and search for *HP LaserJet Managed MFP - How to use the hole punch* (c05450959).

Figure 3-373 Punch unit overview, view 2

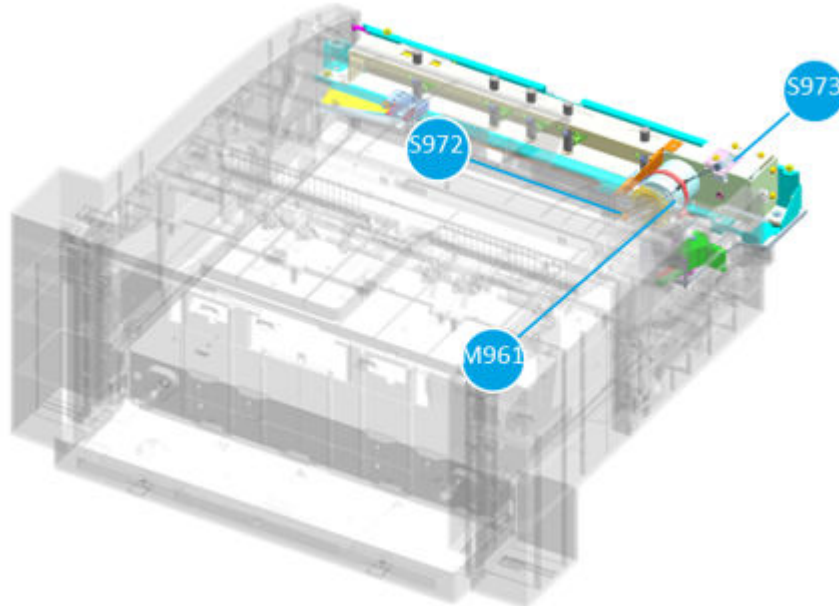


Table 3-247 Punch unit overview, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
U952-1	2/3 hole punch unit	155P7-67001	-
U952-2	2/4 hole punch unit	155P8-67001	-
U952-3	Swedish punch	155P9-67001	-

Table 3-247 Punch unit overview, view 2 (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M961	Punch motor	NA	Drive the entrance roller connected by a belt
S972	Punch motor sensor	NA	Detect whether the punch motor moves correctly
S973	Punch home sensor	NA	Detect home position of the punch head
P953-1	2/3 hole punch PCA	JC92-02773A	-
P953-2	2/4 hole punch PCA	JC92-02773B	-
P953-3	Swedish hole punch PCA	155P9-67001	-
U953	Punch cover assembly	8GS05-60114	Dummy cover instead of the punch unit
S	Punch waste full sensor	0604-001381	Detect whether the punch waste box is full

Figure 3-374 Punch unit overview, view 3

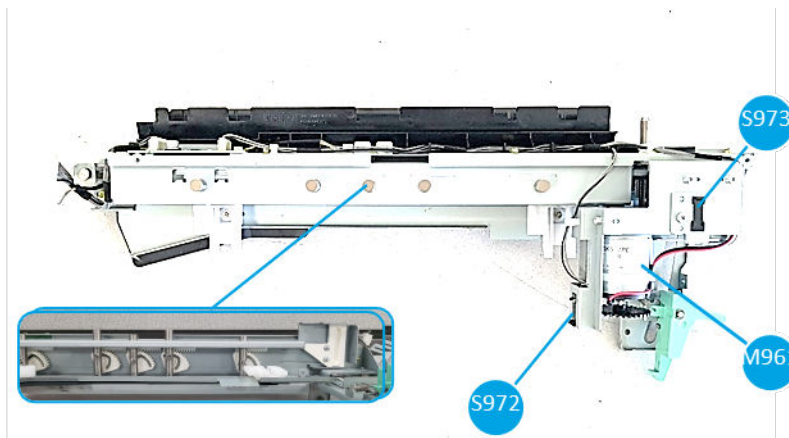


Table 3-248 Punch unit overview, view 3

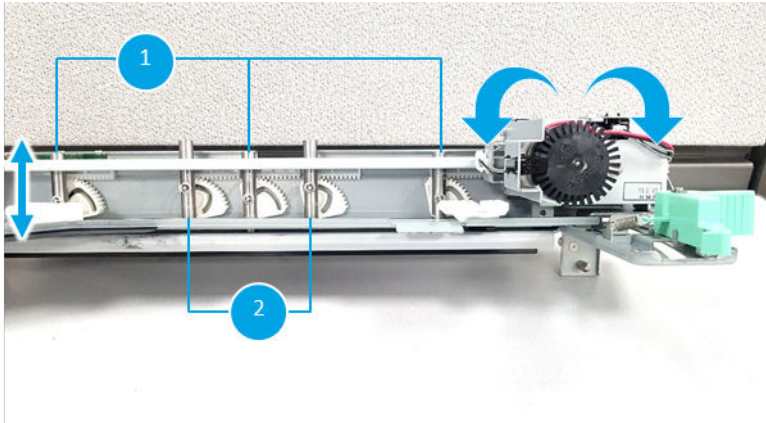
No	Part name	Part number	Description
U952-1	2/3 hole punch unit	155P7-67001	-
U952-2	2/4 hole punch unit	155P8-67001	-
U952-3	Swedish punch	155P9-67001	-
M961	Punch motor	NA	Drive the entrance roller connected by a belt
S972	Punch motor sensor	NA	Detect whether the punch motor moves correctly
S973	Punch home sensor	NA	Detect home position of the punch head
P953-1	2/3 hole punch PCA	JC92-02773A	-
P953-2	2/4 hole punch PCA	JC92-02773B	-
P953-3	Swedish hole punch PCA	155P9-67001	-
U953	Punch cover assembly	8GS05-60114	Dummy cover instead of the punch unit
S	Punch waste full sensor	0604-001381	Detect whether the punch waste box is full

Punch unit operation

Learn about the punch unit operation.

The punch unit is driven by a punch motor and two associated sensors which are the punch motor sensor and the punch home sensor. When the motor rotates clockwise (callout 1), the 3 punch hole heads move and punch 3 holes in the paper. Conversely, when the motor runs counterclockwise (callout 2), the two punch hole heads move and punch two holes in the paper.

Figure 3-375 Punch unit operation, view 1



Entrance unit

You will learn more about the entrance unit of the inner finisher.

Entrance unit overview

Learn about the entrance unit overview.

The entrance unit is located right after the punch unit. This unit is driven by entrance motor which is installed on the rear of the finisher. This motor is connected to the entrance roller by a belt to transfer driving force to move paper from the base printer exit unit to the finisher inside. If an error such as paper jam occurs in the entrance unit, the entrance sensor detects the error and generates an event code (13.60.xx).

Figure 3-376 Entrance unit overview, view 1

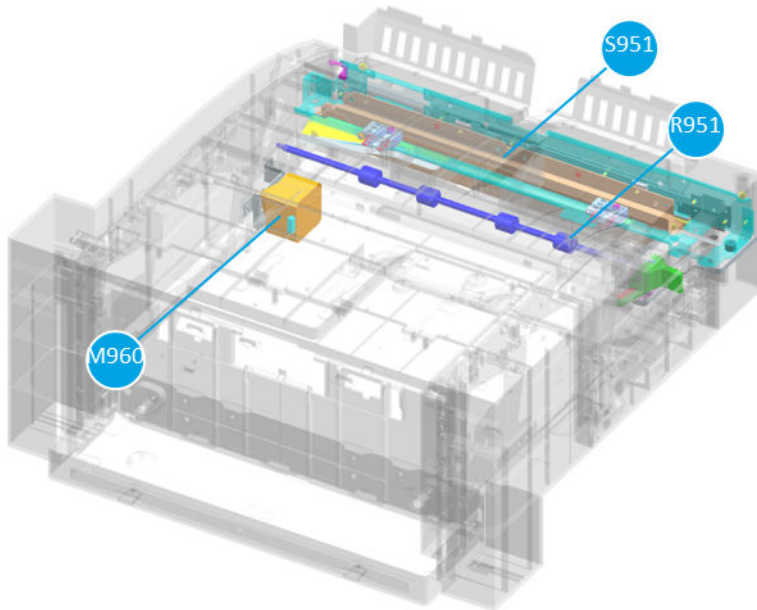


Table 3-249 Entrance unit overview, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S951	Entrance sensor	0604-001381	Detect a paper whether it comes from the base printer exit unit correctly
M960	Entrance motor	5QK09-60128	Drive the entrance roller to make the paper moved to the finisher inside
R951	Entrance roller	JC66-04243A	Move the paper to the finisher exit unit

Figure 3-377 Entrance unit overview, view 2

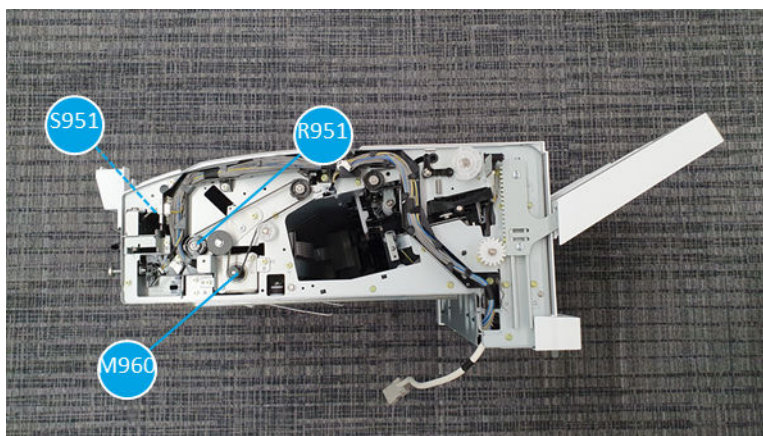


Table 3-250 Entrance unit overview, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S951	Entrance sensor	0604-001381	Detect a paper whether it comes from the base printer exit unit correctly
M960	Entrance motor	5QK09-60128	Drive the entrance roller to make the paper moved to the finisher inside

Table 3-250 Entrance unit overview, view 1 (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
R951	Entrance roller	JC66-04243A	Move the paper to the finisher exit unit

Diverter unit

You will learn more about the diverter unit of the inner finisher.

Diverter unit overview

Learn about the diverter unit overview.

Figure 3-378 Diverter unit overview, view 1

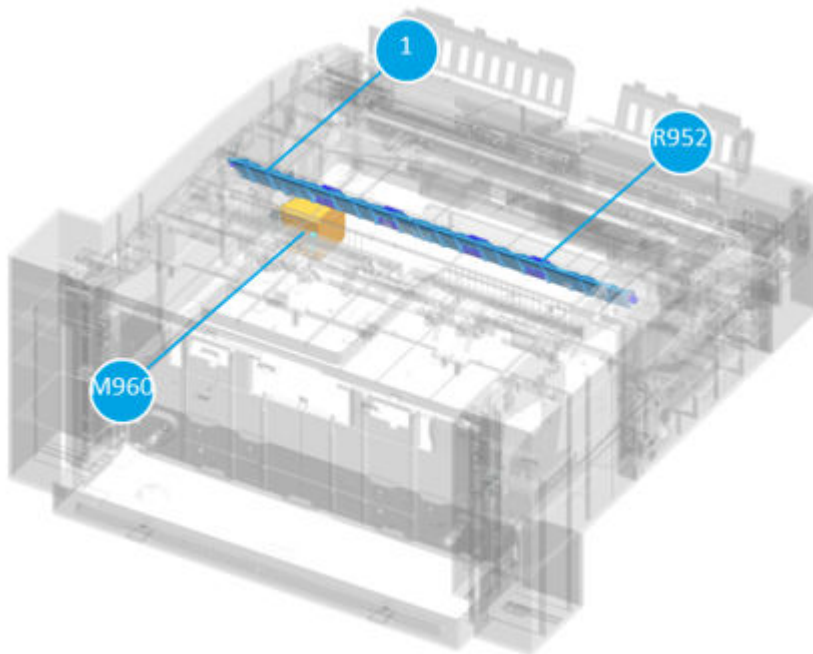


Table 3-251 Diverter unit overview, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M960	Entrance motor	5QK09-60128	Drive the feed roller connected by a belt
R952	Middle roller	JC66-04243A	Drive the paper forward installed in front of the diverter
1	Diverter	JC61-06392A	Change paper path when a paper goes backward

Figure 3-379 Diverter unit overview, view 2

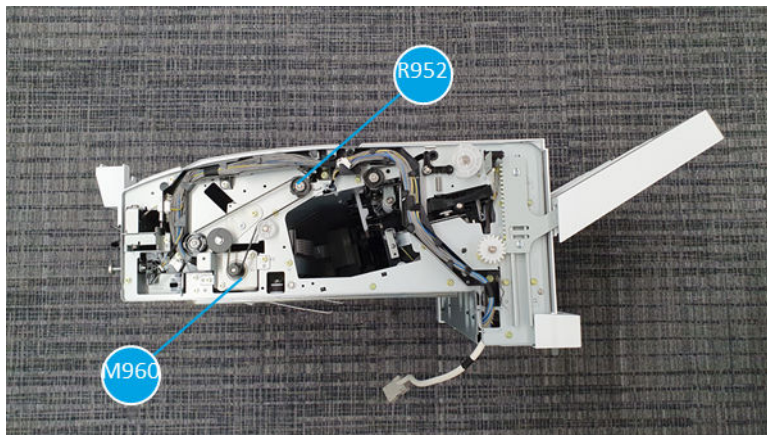


Table 3-252 Diverter unit overview, view 2

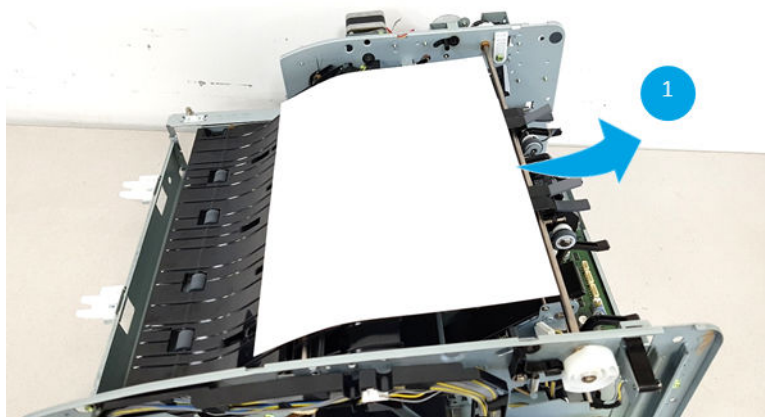
No	Part name	Part number	Description
M960	Entrance motor	5QK09-60128	Drive the feed roller connected by a belt
R952	Middle roller	JC66-04243A	Drive the paper forward installed in front of the diverter

Diverter unit operation

Learn about the diverter unit operation.

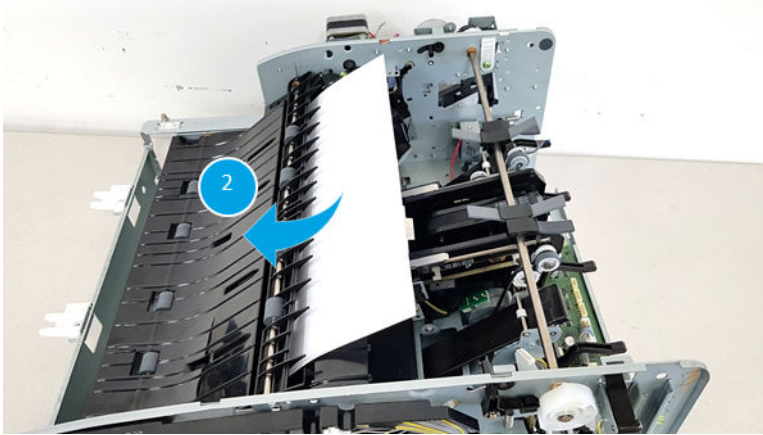
1. The paper goes forward to the output tray, then the exit roller stops.

Figure 3-380 Diverter unit operation, view 1



2. The paper turns towards the diverter unit, then comes down. It waits for a while until the stapling operation is finished.

Figure 3-381 Diverter unit overview, view 2



3. The paper goes out to the output bin with the stapled paper at the same time.

Exit unit

You will learn more about the exit unit of the inner finisher.

Exit unit overview

Learn about the exit unit overview.

The exit unit is the part that moves the paper from the diverter unit to the ejector unit. The exit unit is powered by an exit motor installed on the front of the finisher. The motor and the exit roller are connected by a single belt. The exit motor rotates counterclockwise so that the paper moves forwards. The exit sensor is installed right in front of exit roller, it detects whether the paper comes from the entrance unit correctly.

Figure 3-382 Exit unit overview, view 1

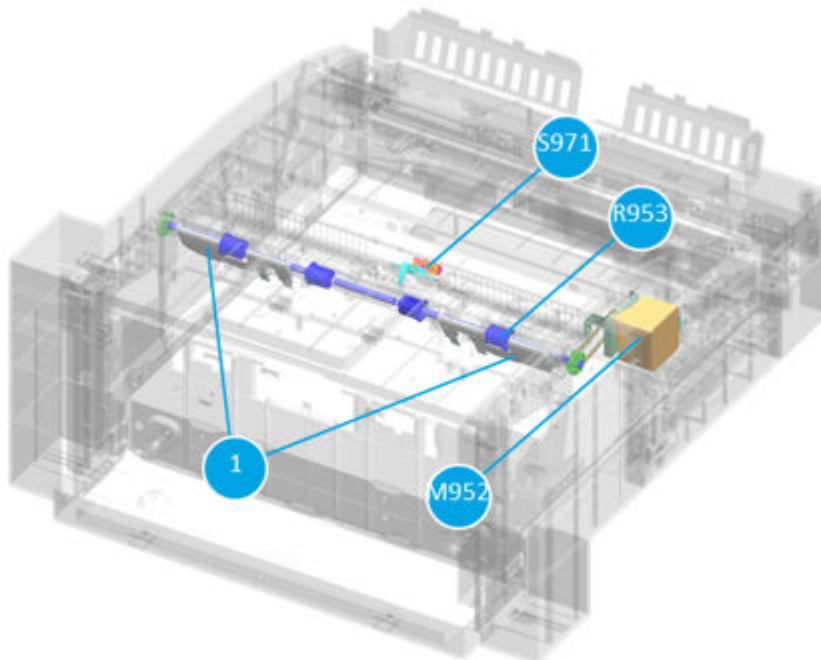


Table 3-253 Exit unit overview, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S971	Exit sensor	0604-001415	Check whether the passes through the exit unit
M952	Exit motor	JC90-01331A	Drive the exit roller connected by a belt
R953	Exit roller	JC66-04244A	Move the paper to the ejector unit
1-1	Rear compile guide	JC61-07450A	Guide to help paper move through the paper path
1-2	Front compile guide	JC61-07449A	Guide to help paper move through the paper path

Figure 3-383 Exit unit overview, view 2

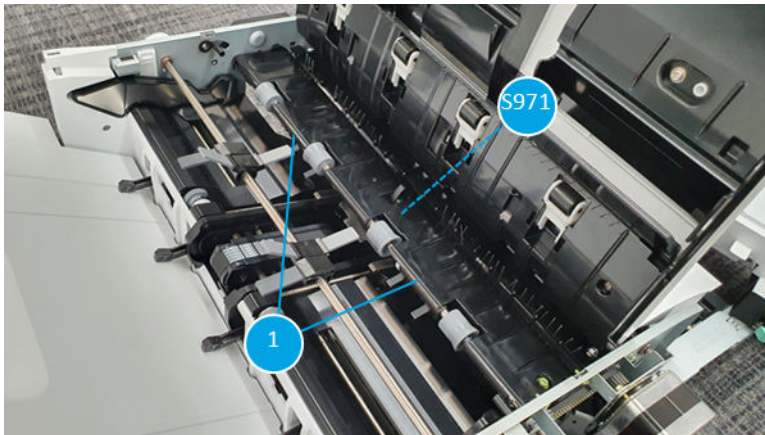


Table 3-254 Exit unit overview, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S971	Exit sensor	0604-001415	Check whether the passes through the exit unit
1-1	Rear compile guide	JC61-07450A	Guide to help paper move through the paper path
1-2	Front compile guide	JC61-07449A	Guide to help paper move through the paper path

Figure 3-384 Exit unit overview, view 3

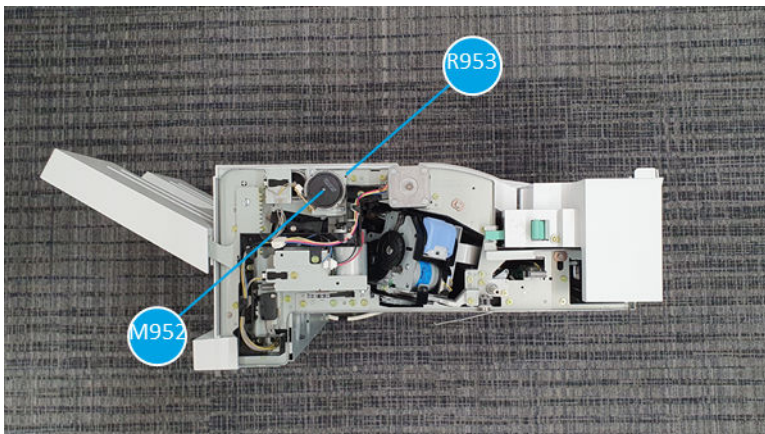


Table 3-255 Exit unit overview, view 3

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M952	Exit motor	JC90-01331A	Drive the exit roller connected by a belt
R953	Exit roller	JC66-04244A	Move the paper to the ejector unit

Paper support unit

You will learn more about the paper support unit of the inner finisher.

Paper support unit overview

Learn about the paper support unit overview.

Figure 3-385 Paper support unit overview, view 1

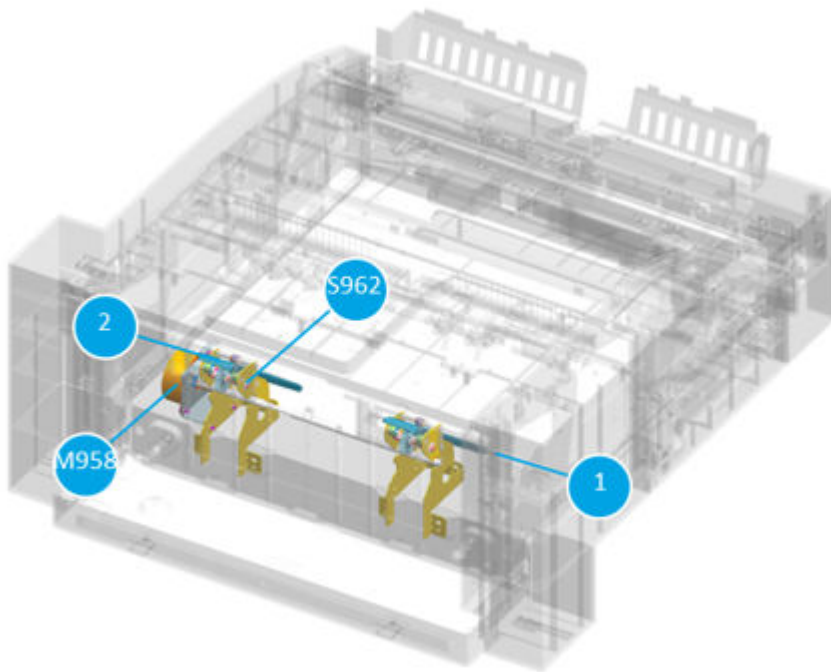


Table 3-256 Paper support unit overview, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S962	Paper support home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the paper support guides locate at the home
M958	Paper support motor	JC93-00802B	Detect the paper support guides locate at the home
1	Front paper support	JC90-01310A	Support the paper not to be bended downwards
2	Rear paper support	JC90-01311A	Support the paper not to be bended downwards

Figure 3-386 Paper support unit overview, view 2

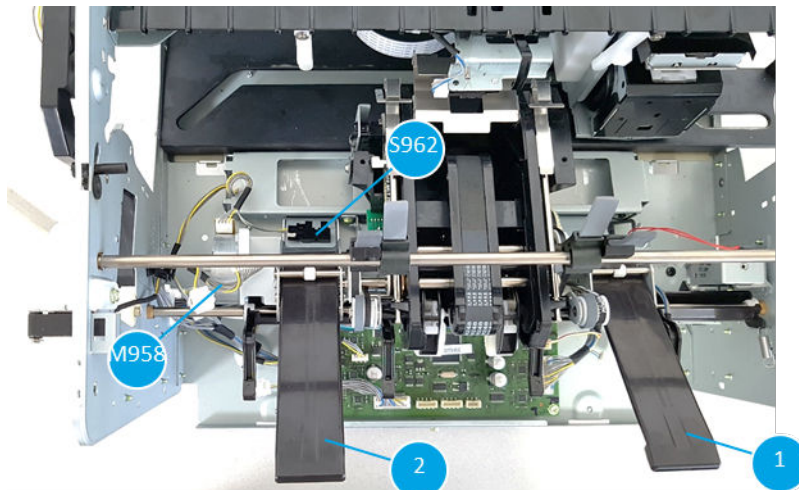


Table 3-257 Paper support unit overview, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S962	Paper support home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the paper support guides locate at the home
M958	Paper support motor	JC93-00802B	Detect the paper support guides locate at the home
1	Front paper support	JC90-01310A	Support the paper not to be bended downwards
2	Rear paper support	JC90-01311A	Support the paper not to be bended downwards

Paper support unit operation

Learn about the paper support unit operation.

1. When a paper goes out to the output tray direction, the paper might be bent to downwards (callout 1) if the paper is longer than the paper guide.

Figure 3-387 Paper support unit operation, view 1



2. In order to properly eject the paper without disturbing the already stacked paper, two guides extend in the direction of the arrow (callout 2). As a result, the long paper can be stacked stably without being pushed toward the tray.

Figure 3-388 Paper support unit operation, view 2



Paddle unit

You will learn more about the paddle unit of the inner finisher.

Paddle unit overview

Learn about the paddle unit overview.

Figure 3-389 Overview of the paddle unit, view 1

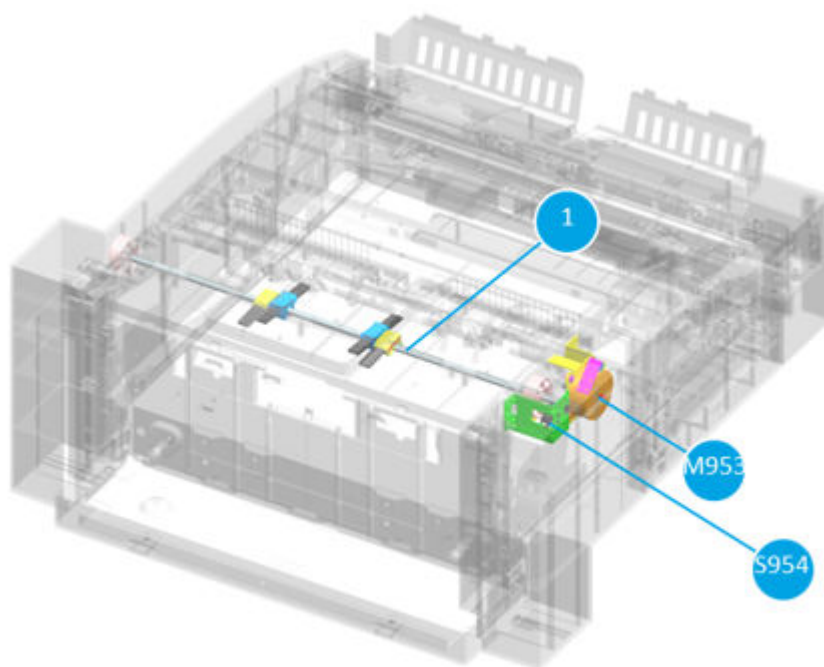


Table 3-258 Overview of the paddle unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S954	Main paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the main paddle
M953	Main paddlemotor	JC90-01331A	Drive the main paddle unit connected by a belt
1	Main paddle	JC90-01327A	Move the paper to the sub paddle unit

Figure 3-390 Overview of the paddle unit, view 2

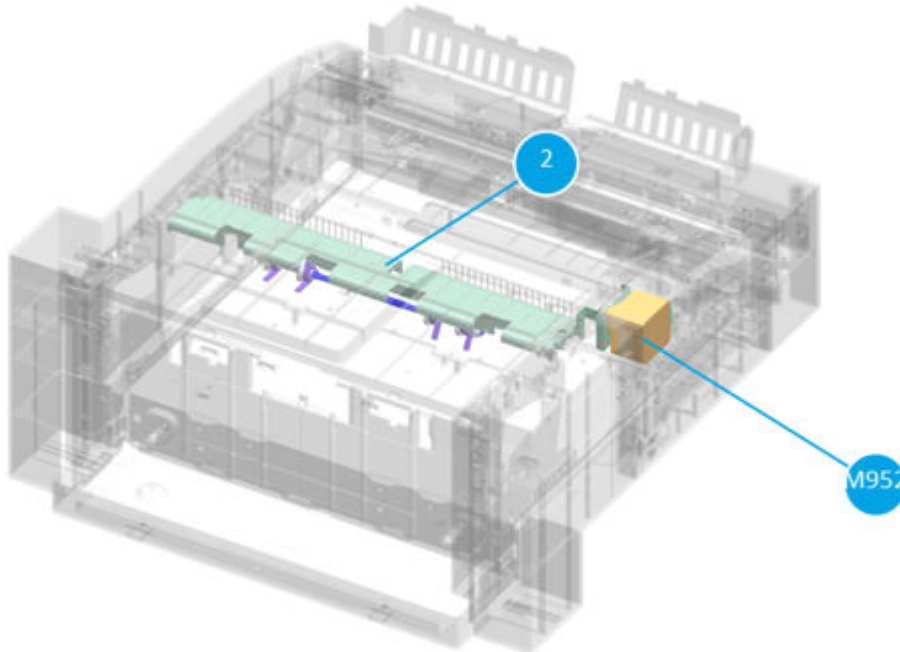


Table 3-259 Overview of the paddle unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M952	Exit motor	JC31-00169B	Drive the sub paddle unit connected by a belt
2	Sub paddle	JC90-01336A	Get the paper move to the end fence and arrange them to be stapled correctly

Figure 3-391 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 1

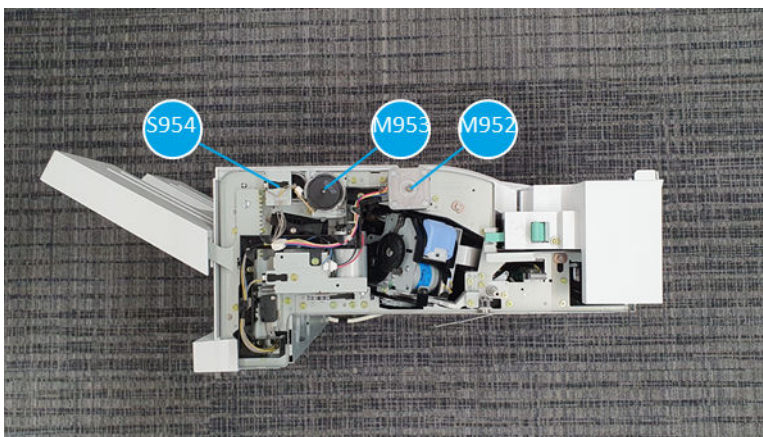


Table 3-260 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S954	Main paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the main paddle
M953	Main paddlemotor	JC90-01331A	Drive the main paddle unit connected by a belt
M952	Exit motor	JC31-00169B	Drive the sub paddle unit connected by a belt

Figure 3-392 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 2

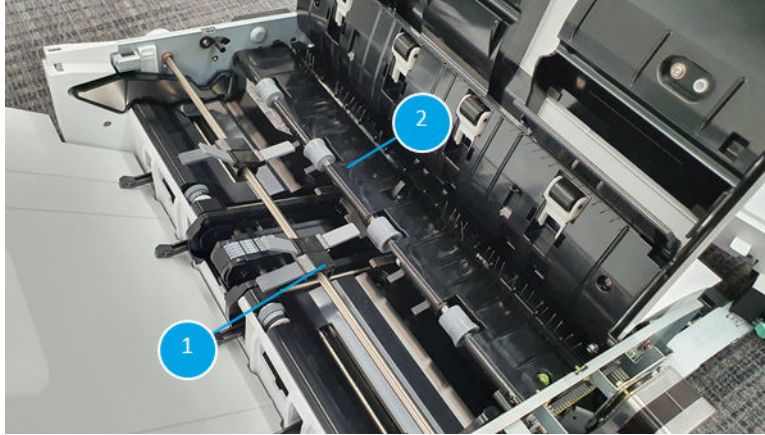


Table 3-261 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 2

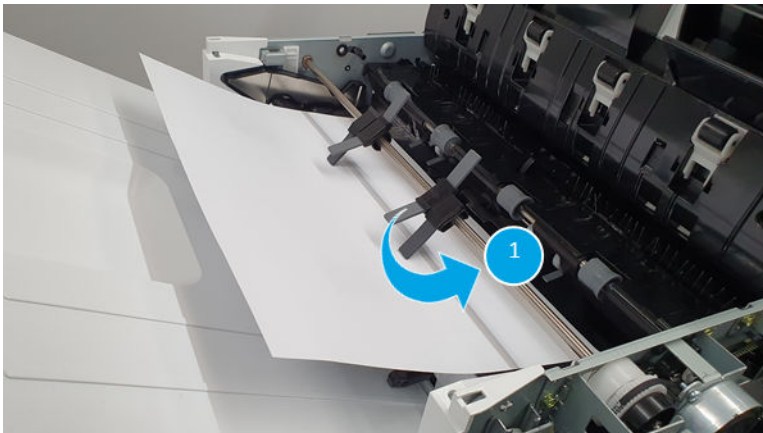
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Main paddle	JC90-01327A	Move the paper to the sub paddle unit
2	Sub paddle	JC90-01336A	Get the paper move to the end fence and arrange them to be stapled correctly

Paddle unit operation

Learn about the paddle unit operation.

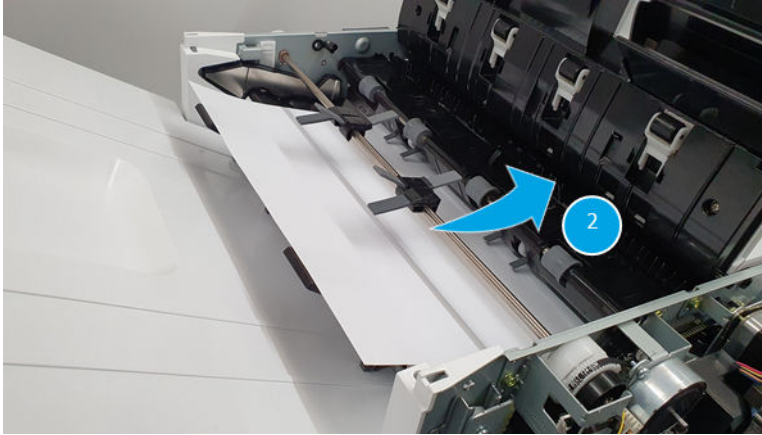
1. A paper drops down from the exit unit, then it moves inside the sub paddle unit by the main paddle unit which is rotated by the main paddle motor.

Figure 3-393 Paddle unit operation, view 1



2. The sub paddle rotates so that the paper goes into the end fence unit. Repeat this process to collect a certain amount of paper and store it inside the end fence unit.

Figure 3-394 Paddle unit operation, view 2



End fence unit

You will learn more about the end fence unit of the inner finisher.

End fence unit overview

Learn about the end fence unit overview.

Figure 3-395 Overview of the end fence unit

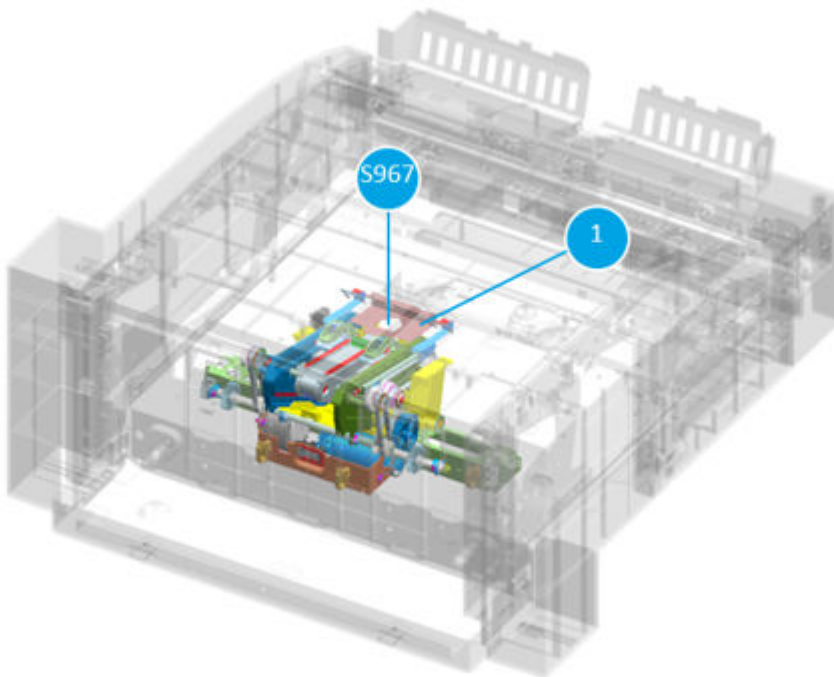


Table 3-262 Overview of the end fence unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	End fence	JC61-06428A	Align a paper toward top and bottom direction
S967	End fence sensor	0604-001381	Check the paper is properly loaded into the end fence unit for paper alignment.

Figure 3-396 Detail view of the end fence unit

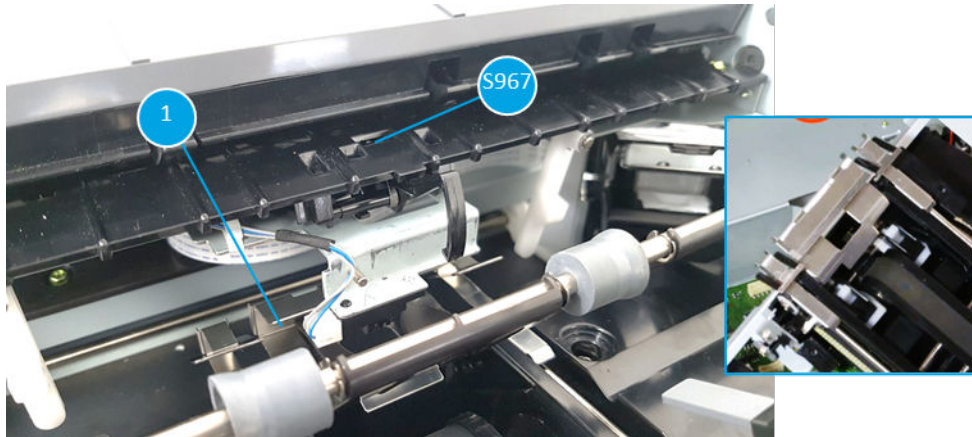


Table 3-263 Overview of the end fence unit

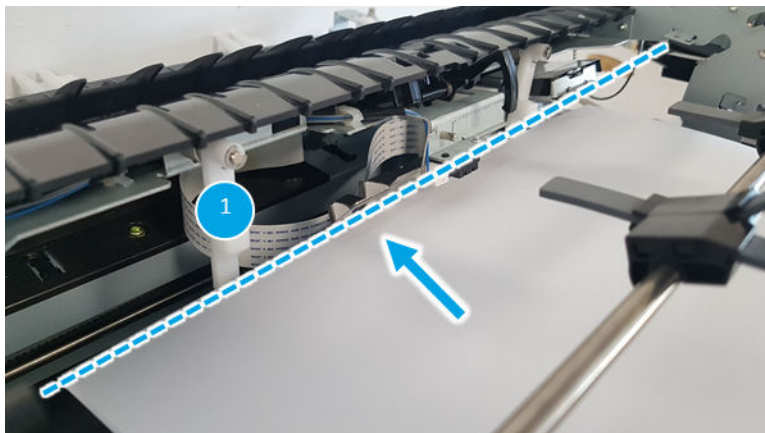
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	End fence	JC61-06428A	Align a paper toward top and bottom direction
S967	End fence sensor	0604-001381	Check the paper is properly loaded into the end fence unit for paper alignment.

End fence unit operation

Learn about the end fence unit operation.

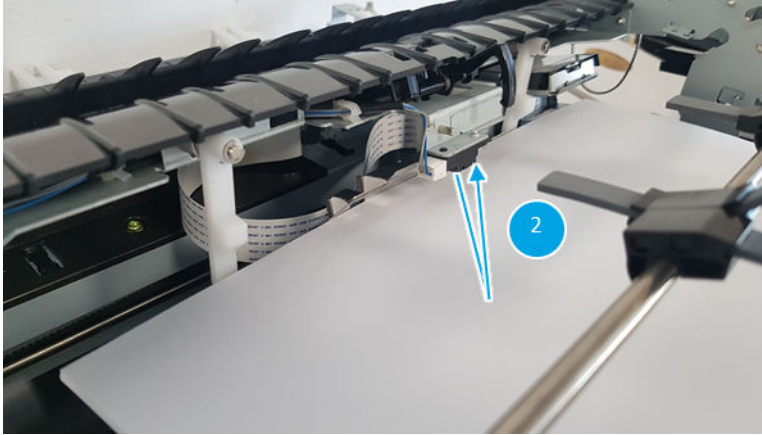
1. A paper goes into the end fence unit through the main paddle unit and sub paddle unit. At the same time the end fence unit is aligned the paper to the direction of line (callout 1).

Figure 3-397 End fence unit operation, view 1



2. The end fence sensor is checking whether the paper goes into the end fence sensor properly.

Figure 3-398 End fence unit operation, view 2



Tamper unit

You will learn more about the tamper unit of the inner finisher.

Tamper unit overview

Learn about the tamper unit overview.

The tamper unit functions to align the left and right sides of a bundle of paper in order to staple it to the correct position. When a certain amount of paper for stapling is collected after printing, the tamper unit hits the left and right ends of the paper to align the paper correctly. Each tamper has a motor on the back side that delivers driving force to move. The tamper unit sensors are mounted on the back side of the unit, to check the position of the tamper unit.

Figure 3-399 Overview of the tamper unit

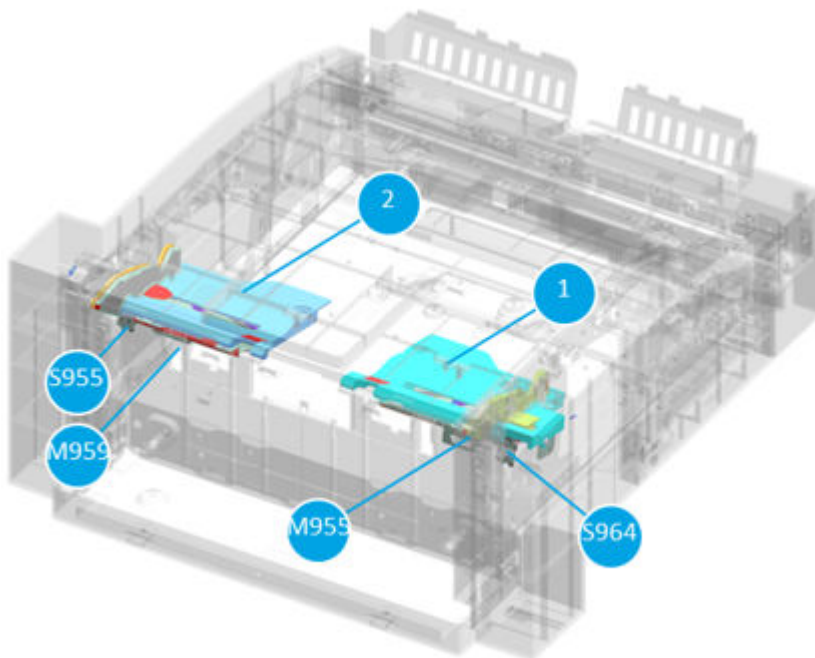


Table 3-264 Overview of the tamper unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00899A	Align left and right side of paper
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00900A	Align left and right side of paper
M955	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Drive the rear tamper unit
S964	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the reference position of the tamper unit
M959	Front tamper motor assembly	JC93-01001A	Drive the front tamper unit
S955	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the reference position of the tamper unit

Figure 3-400 Detail view of the tamper unit

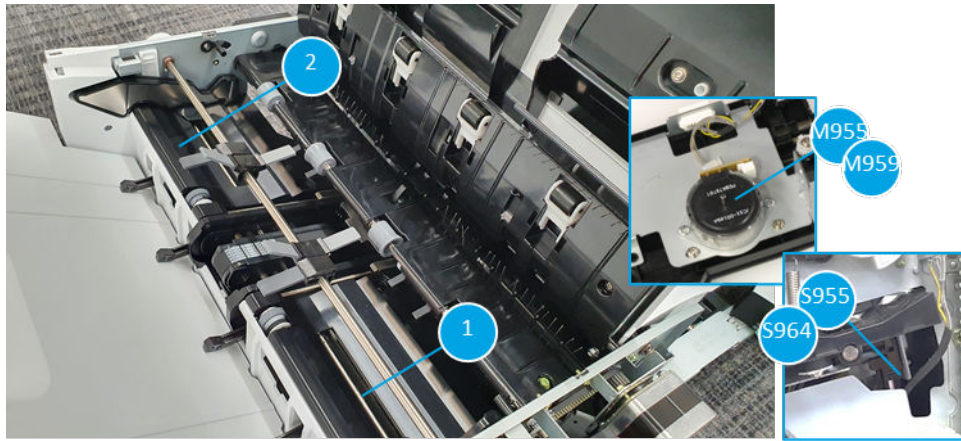


Table 3-265 Overview of the tamper unit

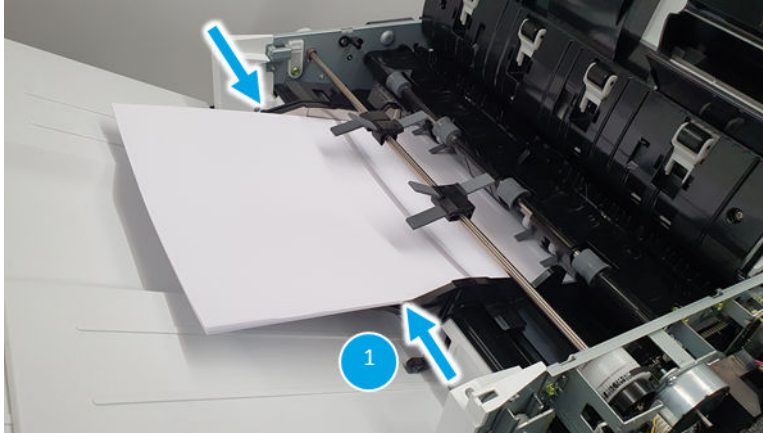
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00899A	Align left and right side of paper
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00900A	Align left and right side of paper
M955	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Drive the rear tamper unit
S964	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the reference position of the tamper unit
M959	Front tamper motor assembly	JC93-01001A	Drive the front tamper unit
S955	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the reference position of the tamper unit

Tamper unit operation

Learn about the tamper unit operation.

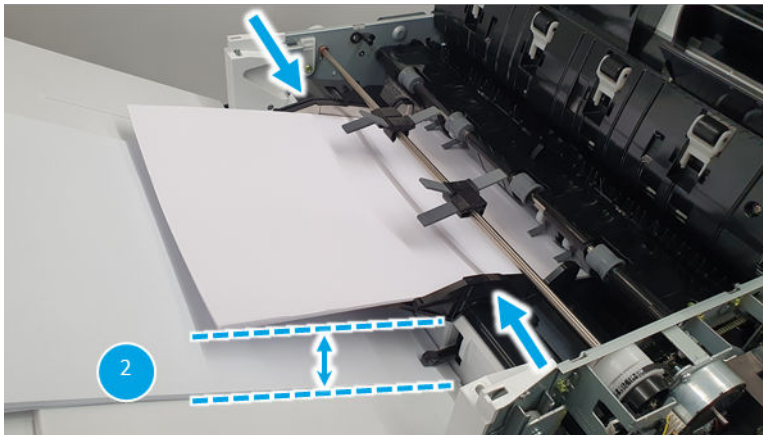
1. The paper is arranged at the end fence unit, then front and rear tamper arrange both left and right side of the paper.

Figure 3-401 Tamper unit operation, view 1



2. In case of offset printing, move the tamping position to the left or right rather than the center of the output tray. Due to this, the stacking position of the paper is different for each copy.

Figure 3-402 Tamper unit operation, view 2



Stapler unit

You will learn more about the stapler unit of the inner finisher.

Stapler unit overview

Learn about the stapler unit overview.

Stapler unit is a device installed inside the finisher that staples a bundle of aligned documents. Documents are collected as a bundle by the tamper unit and the end fence unit for stapling, then stapler assembly staples the bundle. There are six options to make a bundle.

Figure 3-403 Stapling location



The stapler unit moves using the stapler motor installed inside. The four stapler position sensors are mounted so that the stapler can be positioned in the exact stapling position whether it is stapled on the left, the right, or at the center of the document. Stapling is done by the motor inside the stapler assembly.

Figure 3-404 Overview of the stapler unit, view 1

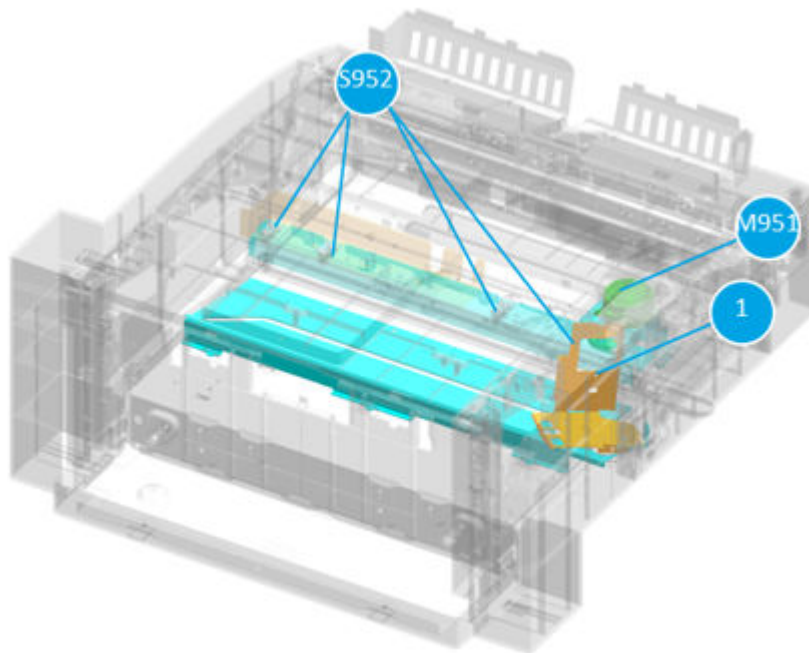


Table 3-266 Overview of the stapler unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Stapler assembly	6GW49-40001	Staple a bundle of paper
S952	Stapler position sensor	0604-001393	Detect and moves the staple assembly position to make a bundle of paper at the exact location
M951	Stapler position motor	JC93-00999A	Get the staple assembly move toward top and down direction of paper

Figure 3-405 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 1

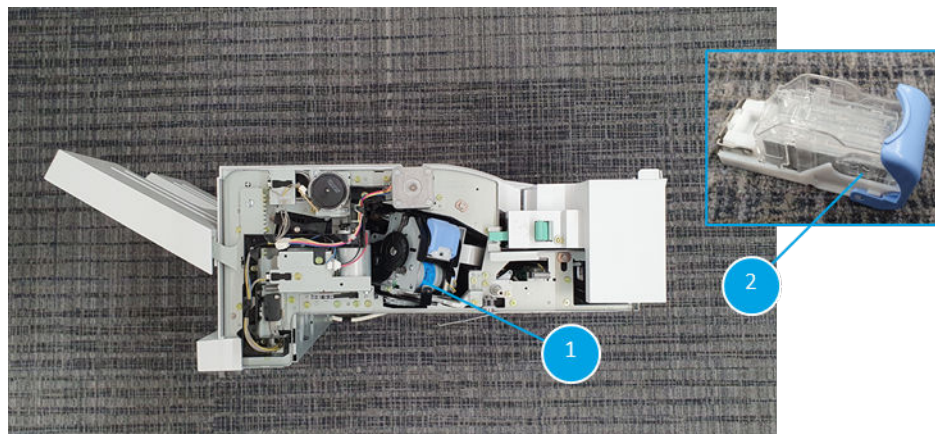


Table 3-267 Overview of the stapler unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Stapler assembly	6GW49-60003	Staple a bundle of paper
2	Staple cartridge	6GW49-40001	Staple cartridge

Figure 3-406 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 2

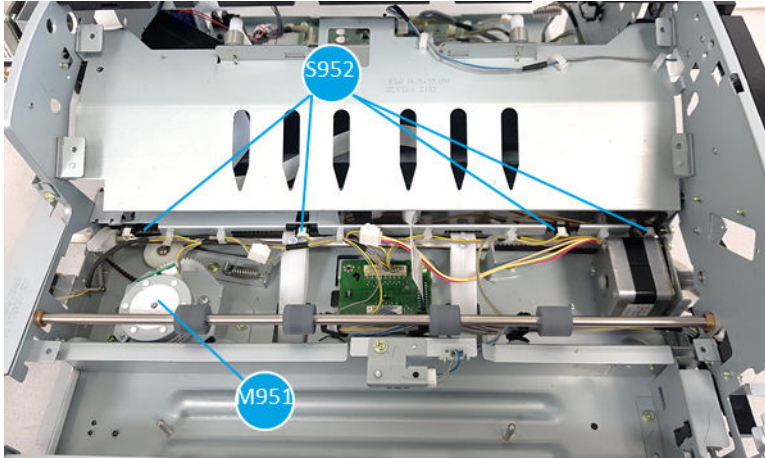


Table 3-268 Overview of the stapler unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S952	Stapler position sensor	0604-001393	Detect and moves the stapler position to make a bundle of paper at the exact location
M951	Stapler position motor	JC93-00999A	Get the stapler assembly move toward top and down direction of paper


Staple and staple cartridge

Learn about the stapler and staple cartridge.

1. Staple cartridge: JC81-07408B. Initial staples included

Figure 3-407 Staple cartridge for stapler unit



 **NOTE:** Staple handle color may vary (blue or green color).

2. Staple: Y1G13-67901. 3 EA in 1 box.

Figure 3-408 Staple for stapler unit

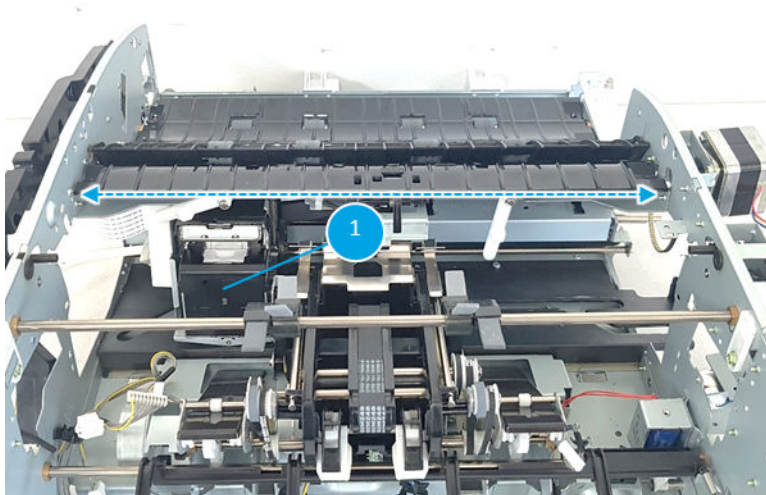


Stapler unit operation

Learn about the stapler unit operation.

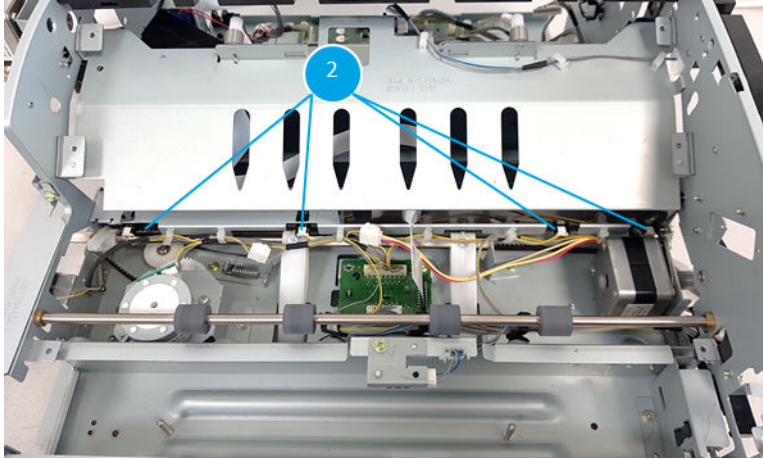
1. The stapler position motor delivers the stapler assembly (callout 1) to the horizontal direction.

Figure 3-409 Stapler unit operation, view 1



2. The stapler assembly checks front and rear home position and moves where the stapler position sensors are located depending on stapling types.

Figure 3-410 Stapler unit operation, view 2



Ejector unit

You will learn more about the ejector unit of the inner finisher.

Ejector unit overview

Learn about the ejector unit overview.

The ejector unit moves a bundle of stapled paper out to the output tray direction. The ejector unit consists of ejector 1 and ejector 2. The ejector 1 transfers a stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the ejector 2 unit. During this process, the ejector 1 motor transmits the driving force to the ejector 1 unit. And the ejector 1 home position sensor controls the movement of the ejector 1. When the paper arrives at the ejector 2 unit, the ejector 2 grabs a stack of paper and ejects it onto the output tray. The ejector 2 motor is responsible for this process, and the ejector 2 motor sensor helps it to be controlled correctly. In addition, the ejector 2 home position sensor is mounted to check the location of the ejector 2.

Figure 3-411 Overview of the ejector unit

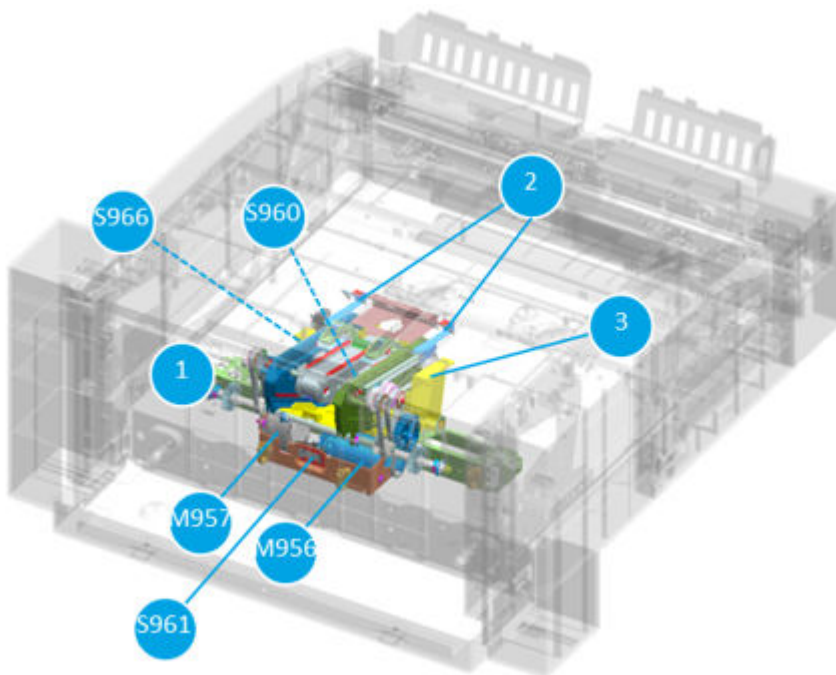


Table 3-269 Overview of the ejector unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Ejector	SS456-61001	
2	Ejector 1	NA	Moves the stack of paper from the end fence to the ejector 2
3	Ejector 2	NA	Moves the paper from the ejector 1 to the output tray
S960	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the ejector 2
S966	Ejector 1 home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the ejector 1
M956	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 2 forward and backward
S961	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001393	Detects the ejector 2 motor rotation
M957	Ejector1 motor	JC93-00998A	Grabs a stack of paper, then moves it to the output tray

Figure 3-412 Detail view of the ejector unit

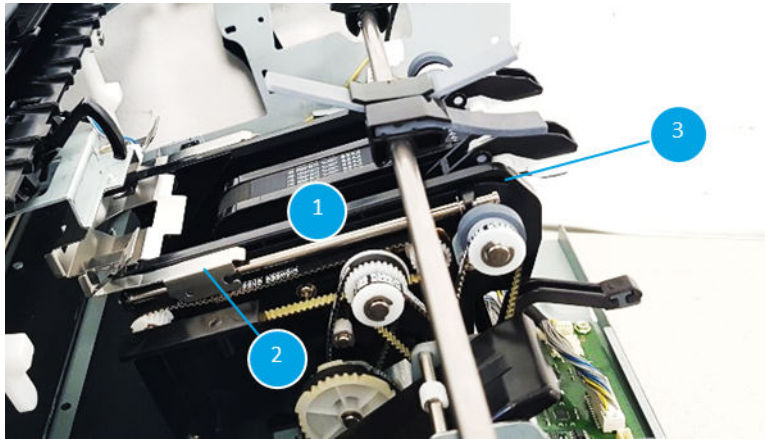


Table 3-270 Detail view of the ejector unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Ejector	SS456-61001	
2	Ejector 1	NA	Moves the stack of paper from the end fence to the ejector 2
3	Ejector 2	NA	Moves the paper from the ejector 1 to the output tray
S960	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the ejector 2

Figure 3-413 Parts information of the ejector unit

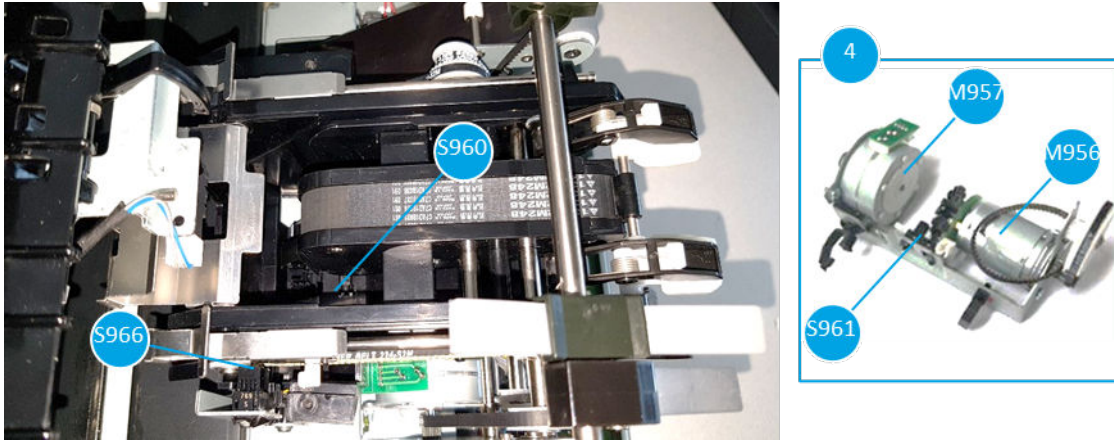


Table 3-271 Parts information of the ejector unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S960	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the ejector 2
S966	Ejector 1 home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the ejector 1
4	Ejector motor assembly	JC90-01309A	Moves the ejector 1 and ejector 2
M956	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 2 forward and backward
S961	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001393	Detects the ejector 2 motor rotation
M957	Ejector1 motor	JC93-00998A	Grabs a stack of paper, then moves it to the output tray

Ejector unit operation

Learn about the ejector unit operation.

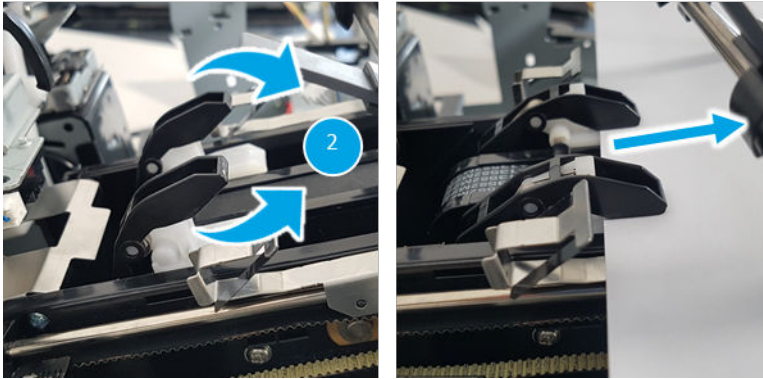
1. The ejector 1 pushes aligned paper at the end fence unit to ejector 2 unit.

Figure 3-414 Ejector unit operation, view 1



2. The ejector 2 grabs paper, then moves forward to the output tray unit direction, then drops the paper on the output tray.

Figure 3-415 Ejector unit operation, view 2



Output tray and paper holding unit

You will learn more about the output tray and paper holding unit of the inner finisher.

Output tray and paper holding unit overview

Learn about the output tray and paper holding unit overview.

The output tray moves up and down along the rails inside the finisher, and the output tray motor controls those movement according to the signals sent from the paper holding sensor. As paper stacks up on the output tray, the paper holding unit is lifted by papers. When the paper holding sensor is touched, the output tray moves downward.

The machine detects when the output tray is full as the output tray hits the lower limit switch. The output tray top of stack sensor is mounted on both left and right sides for the case that the paper holding sensor breaks down.

The paper holding solenoid lifts the paper holding actuator up when a new bundle of paper come to the output tray.

Figure 3-416 Overview of the output tray unit

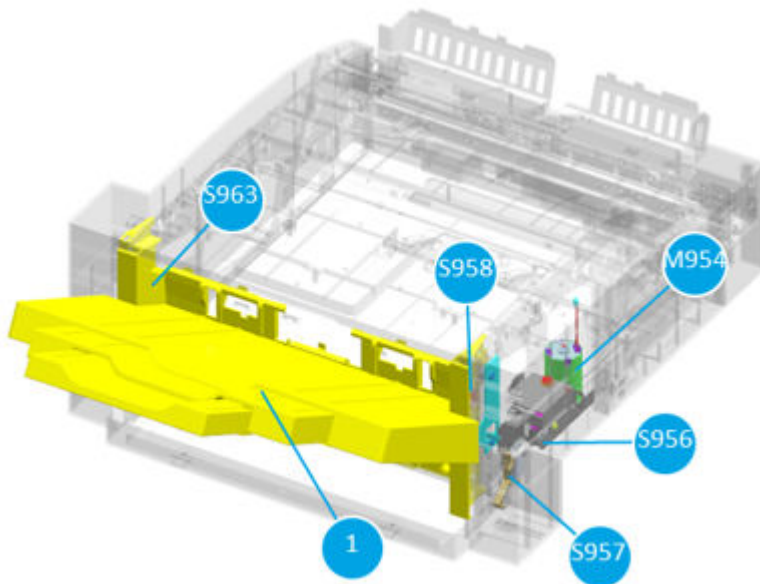


Table 3-272 Overview of the output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Output tray	5QK09-60118	Stores paper
M954	Output tray motor assembly	JC90-01334B	Move the output tray up and down
S956	Output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Detect whether the output tray motor is operational
S957	Output tray lower limit switch	JC90-01320A	Detects the lowest position of the output tray
2	Output tray top of stack sensor kit	JC82-01039A	Detect abnormal movement of output tray (output tray top of stack sensor receiver + led)
S958	Output tray top of stack sensor receiver	NA	-
S963	Output tray top of stack sensor transmitter	NA	-

Figure 3-417 Detail view of the output tray unit

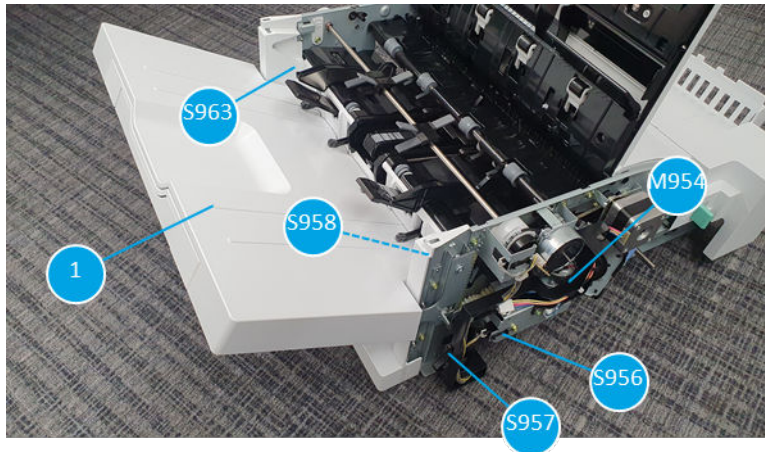


Table 3-273 Detail view of the output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Output tray	5QK09-60118	Stores paper
M954	Output tray motor assembly	JC90-01334B	Move the output tray up and down
S956	Output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Detect whether the output tray motor is operational
S957	Output tray lower limit switch	JC90-01320A	Detects the lowest position of the output tray
2	Output tray top of stack sensor kit	JC82-01039A	Detect abnormal movement of output tray (output tray top of stack sensor receiver + led)
S958	Output tray top of stack sensor receiver	NA	-
S963	Output tray top of stack sensor transmitter	NA	-

Figure 3-418 Overview of the paper holding unit

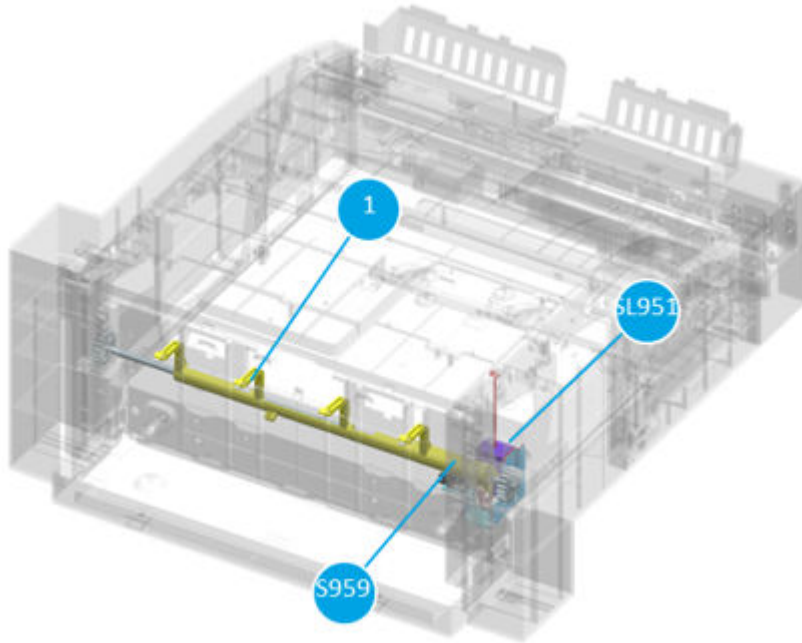


Table 3-274 Overview of the paper holding unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paper holding actuator	JC90-01313A	Control the output tray height, and grabs stacked paper not to be scattered
SL951	Paper holding solenoid	JC33-00037A	Move paper holding actuator up when paper goes out to the output tray
S959	Paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detect stacked paper position

Figure 3-419 Detail view of the paper holding unit

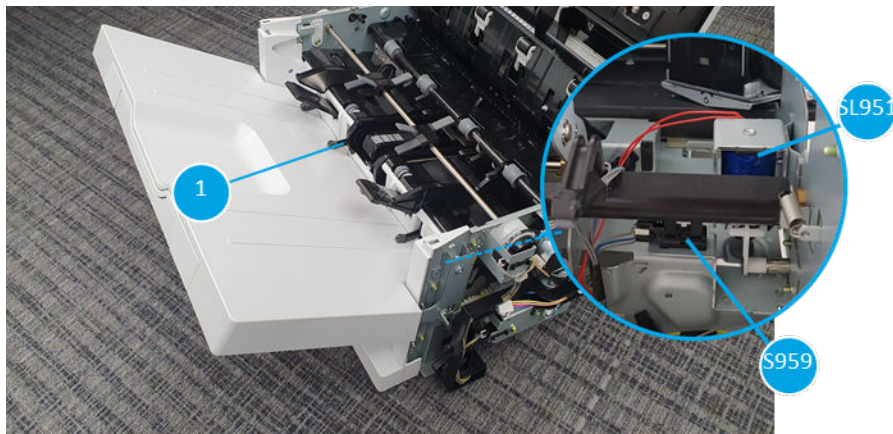


Table 3-275 Detail view of the paper holding unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paper holding actuator	JC90-01313A	Control the output tray height, and grabs stacked paper not to be scattered

Table 3-275 Detail view of the paper holding unit (continued)

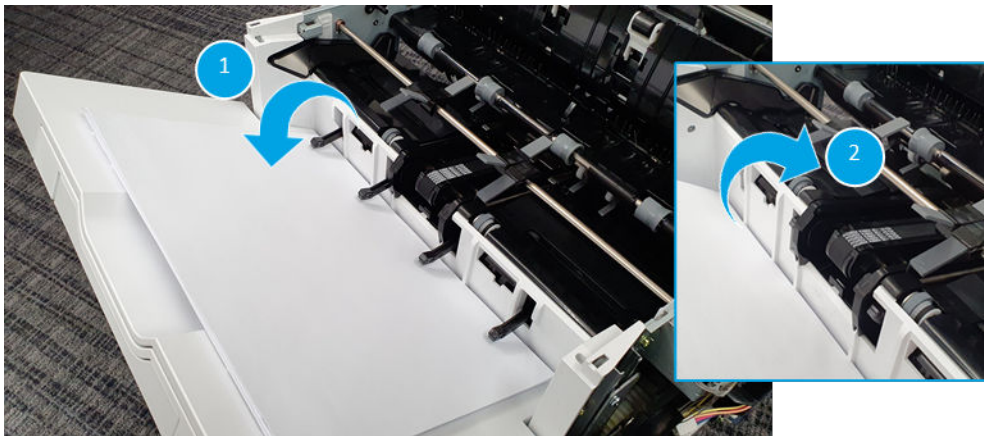
No	Part name	Part number	Description
SL951	Paper holding solenoid	JC33-00037A	Move paper holding actuator up when paper goes out to the output tray
S959	Paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detect stacked paper position

Output tray and paper holding unit operation

Learn about the output tray and paper holding unit operation.

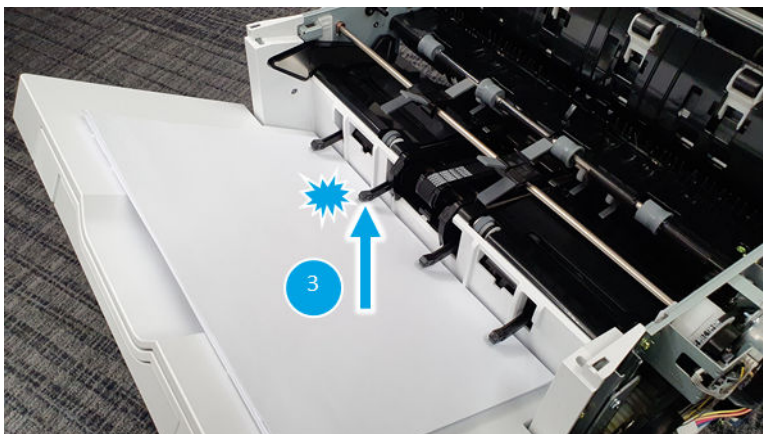
1. The paper holding actuator helps the paper stay stable on the output tray by pushing the paper (callout 1). When ejecting the paper, it moves to the inside of the left cover so that the paper properly stacks on the output tray (callout 2).

Figure 3-420 Output tray and paper holding unit operation, view 1



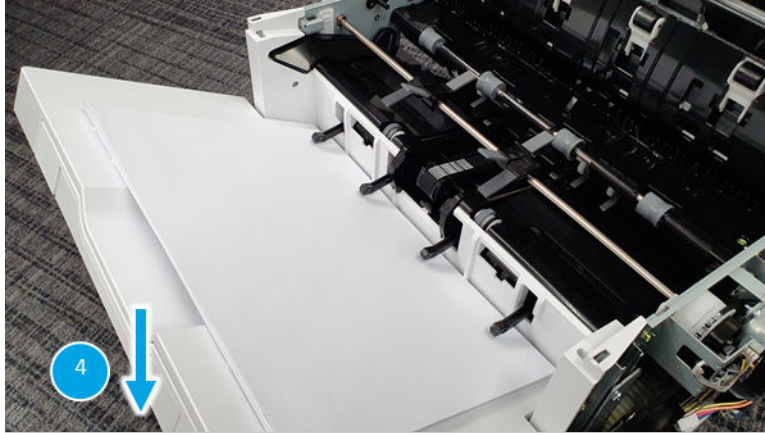
2. As the paper piles up on the tray, it touches the paper holding actuator to upwards (callout 3) and changes the paper holding sensor signal.

Figure 3-421 Output tray and paper holding unit operation, view 2



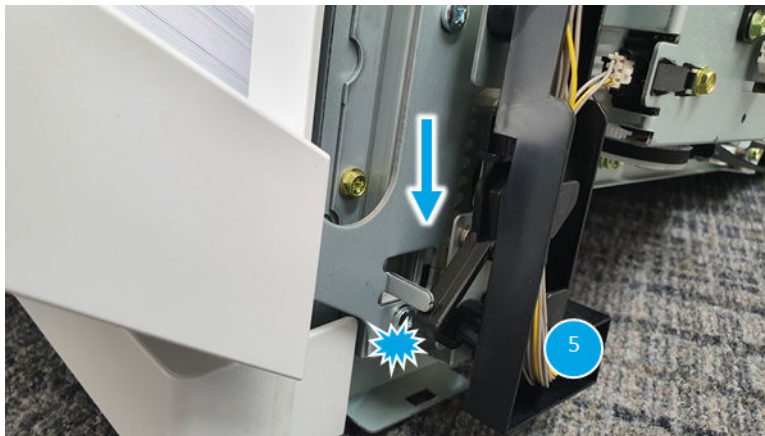
3. Recognizing this, the output tray motor lowers the position of the output tray to the bottom (callout 4), allowing more paper to be stacked.

Figure 3-422 Output tray and paper holding unit operation, view 3



4. When it reaches the end of the moving range, the output tray lower limit switch is pressed (callout 5), and the finishing job stops with the output tray full message.

Figure 3-423 Output tray and paper holding unit operation, view 4



5. In the event of an abnormal loading of paper, for example overflow due to a very severe curl, the signal from the top of stack sensor is changed by being obscured by the paper. Recognizing this, the machine forcibly terminates printing and displays an error message.

PCA

You will learn more about the inner finisher PCA.

Inner finisher main PCA

Learn about the inner finisher main PCA.

The inner finisher main PCA controls operation of the inner finisher as well as communicate with the main PCA.

- Inner finisher main PCA part number: 6GW49-60001 (P951)

Figure 3-424 Inner finisher main PCA

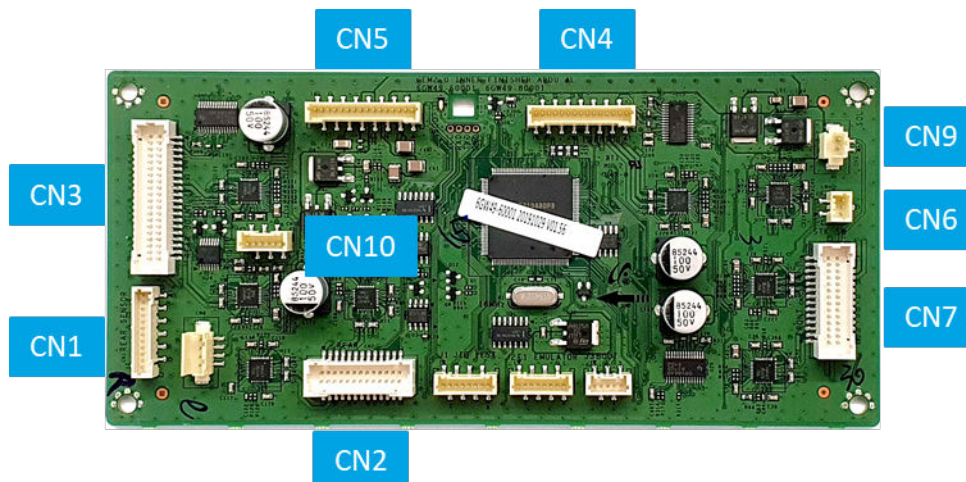


Table 3-276 Inner finisher main PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
IF-CN1	Punch wastebbox sensor Finisher docking sensor	12pin	JC31-02174A
IF-CN2	Rear tamper home sensor Output tray top of stack sensor Exit sensor end fence sensor Paper support home sensor Rear tamper motor Paper support motor	26pin	JC39-02176A
IF-CN3	Stapler low sensor Stapler ready sensor Stapler home sensor Stapler motor Stapler position motor Entrance motor Front cover switch Punch motor Stapler position sensor (front home) Stapler position sensor (rear home) Punch waste full sensor Punch motor sensor Punch home sensor	40pin	JC39-02173A

Table 3-276 Inner finisher main PCA (continued)

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
IF-CN4	Ejector 2 motor Ejector 1 motor Ejector 2 motor sensor Ejector 2 home sensor Ejector 1 home sensor	15pin	JC39-02165A
IF-CN5	Main PCA	16pin	JC39-02169A
IF-CN6	Output tray lower limit switch	3pin	JC39-02178A
IF-CN7	Exit motor Main paddle motor Output tray motor Front tamper motor Output tray motor sensor Main paddle home sensor Front tamper home sensor Paper holding sensor Output tray top of stack sensor	28pin	JC39-02168A
IF-CN9	Paper holding solenoid	2pin	-
IF-CN10	Stapler position sensor (mid front) Stapler position sensor (mid rear)	6pin	JC39-02173A

Inner finisher rear joint PCA

Learn about the inner finisher rear joint PCA.

Inner finisher rear joint PCA locates inside the inner finisher so that it communicates with the inner finisher mainPCA and transfer signals and commands to the stapler motor, sensor, top door switch, and the entrance motor.

- Inner finisher rear joint PCA part number: JC92-02780A (P952)

Figure 3-425 Inner finisher rear joint PCA

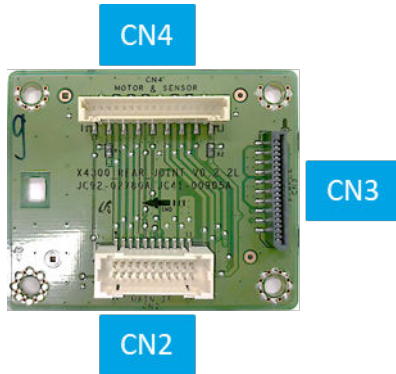


Table 3-277 Inner finisher rear joint PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
IFsub-CN2	IF-CN3	22pin	JC39-02173A
IFsub-CN3	Stapler assembly	20Pin FFC	JC39-02164, JC39-02177A
IFsub-CN4	Stapler position motor Front stapler position sensor Rear stapler position sensor Top door switch Entrance moto	18pin	JC39-02172A

4 Problem solving

Learn about problem solving.

General troubleshooting guide

Learn about general troubleshooting.

Troubleshooting process

Learn about the troubleshooting process.

Determine the problem source

When the printer malfunctions or encounters an unexpected situation, the printer control panel alerts you to the situation. This section contains a pre-troubleshooting checklist to filter out many possible causes of the problem. A troubleshooting flowchart helps you diagnose the root cause of the problem. The remainder of this chapter provides steps for correcting problems.

- Use the troubleshooting flowchart to pinpoint the root cause of hardware malfunctions. The flowchart guides you to the section of this chapter that contains steps for correcting the malfunction.

Before beginning any troubleshooting procedure, check the following issues:

- Are supply items within their rated life?
- Are supply items Genuine HP supplies?
- Does the configuration page reveal any configuration errors?



NOTE: The customer or service provider is responsible for checking supplies and for using supplies that are in good condition.

Power subsystem

Learn about the power subsystem.

Power-on checks

The basic printer functions should start up when the printer is connected into an electrical outlet and the power switch is pushed to the *on* position. If the printer does not start, use the information in this section to isolate and solve the problem.

If the control-panel display remains blank, random patterns display, or asterisks remain on the control-panel display, perform power-on checks to find the cause of the problem.

Power-on troubleshooting overview

If the control panel is blank 1 minute after turning on the printer, check the following items:

During normal operation, a cooling fan begins to spin briefly after the printer power is turned on. Place your hand over the vents at the rear of the printer, next to the formatter, or on the rear of the

scanner. If the fan is operating, you will feel air passing out of the printer. You can lean close to the printer and hear the fan operating.

A fan begins to blow on the right door (fuser), and then the control panel goes through a series of set up functions. The main motor turns on (unless the left door or cartridge access door is open, a jam condition is sensed, or the paper-path sensors are damaged). You might be able to visually and audibly determine if the main motor is turned on.

If the fan and main motor are operating correctly, the next troubleshooting step is to isolate print engine, formatter, and control panel problems.

1. Make sure that the printer is connected directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip) that delivers the correct voltage.
2. Make sure that the power switch is in the *on* position, and then verify that the LED is on.
3. Make sure that the fan runs briefly, which indicates that the power supply is operational.
4. Depress the button on the back of the control panel to test the control panel functionality.
5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness is connected.
6. Remove any external solutions, and then try to turn the printer on again.

Troubleshooting a blank display, black display, no display, or no power situation

Customers usually report that the control-panel display is not showing anything. It is very important to collect as much information as possible from the customer about the issue to help resolve it.

Following are some printer behaviors the customer might encounter:

- The control panel is completely blank (no LEDs or back light).
- The control panel is blank, but there might be LEDs illuminated.
- The control panel is blank (LEDs are on or flashing) and the back light is on (but no text visible).

Following are some possible causes of a blank control-panel display:

- No power to the printer.
- The control panel contrast setting is not correctly adjusted.
- The formatter connector(s) are not fully seated into the connector(s) on the DC controller, or the connectors are not fully seated on the formatter.
- A faulty component is installed on the formatter (for example a memory DIMM, fax PCA, network PCA, USB device, or other component).
- The formatter is defective.
- The control panel connector is not fully seated, or the control panel is defective.
- The DC controller is defective.

Following are some questions to ask the customer:


- Was the printer newly install or has the printer been properly functioning?
 - For a new install, investigate to see if there was any shipping damage to the printer.


- Did the customer notice any damage to the shipping box or any visible damage to the printer?
- What happened just prior to the control panel going blank?
 - Was the printer serviced recently, a power outage occurred?
 - Has a lightning storm recently occurred?
 - Did the customer recently add a memory DIMM or install a third-party component?
- Make sure to get a complete description of the failure.
 - Is the control-panel display completely blank (might be faint text and no back light)?
 - Is the control-panel display back light on?
 - Has a print job been sent to the printer? The customer might report that their print jobs seemed to print but when they go to the printer the control-panel display is blank.

Recommended actions


If the control-panel display is completely blank (no LEDs illuminated or no back light) check to see if the printer is getting power. Listen for fans or any printer initialization sounds when the power is turned on.

If there are no signs of power, then perform the following:


1. Make sure that the printer is plugged directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip or interruptible power supply) that delivers the correct voltage.
-
-  **TIP:** Try using a different power cable if possible.
-
2. Turn the printer power on, and make sure that the fan(s) run briefly (this indicates that the power supply is operational).
 3. Check if the yellow LED on formatter is flashing. If so, there is a communication issue between the formatter and the control panel.
 4. Turn the printer power off.
 5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness (and/or flat cable) is properly connected (and fully seated), and then turn the printer power on again.
 6. Check control panel diagnostics by pressing the button on the back of the control panel to run different diagnostic tests.
 7. Verify the status LEDs are illuminated, but the control-panel display is blank. If applicable: Check if the contrast setting is adjusted to very low. If so, try turning the contrast knob to see if the control-panel display becomes visible.
 8. From a host computer, send a print job to the printer.

 **NOTE:** If the print job correctly prints, then the problem is most likely to a defective control panel.


9. Turn the printer power off, and then make sure that the memory DIMM is installed in the correct slot and is fully seated.

 **NOTE:** For some printers, there may be more than one memory DIMM installed. Some printers have third-party solutions/applications or fonts that use memory.

10. Remove all of the components/accessories installed on the formatter (for example, hard drive, solid-state drive, memory DIMM(s), fax PCA, network PCA, USB devices, or other devices).
 - Make sure that the formatter is fully seated.

 **IMPORTANT:** This is important because the formatter or a component on the formatter might be defective or shorted, which causes the printer to lose power.

11. Reinstall the formatter. Make sure that it makes a good connection and is fully seated.
Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are correctly connected and fully seated.
12. Turn the printer power on, and then check the control-panel display.
13. If the printer control panel is properly working, replace each removed component (one at a time) to determine which one is causing the problem.

 **CAUTION:** Turn the printer power off, and then on again, after replacing a component on the formatter.

14. If the control-panel display is still blank after performing the above troubleshooting steps, and the control panel diagnostics do not function, replace the control panel. If the control panel diagnostics are functioning, then replace the formatter.

Control panel checks

Learn about the control panel checks.

Control panel diagnostic flowcharts

Learn about the control panel diagnostic flowcharts.

Use the flowcharts in this section to troubleshoot the following control panel problems.

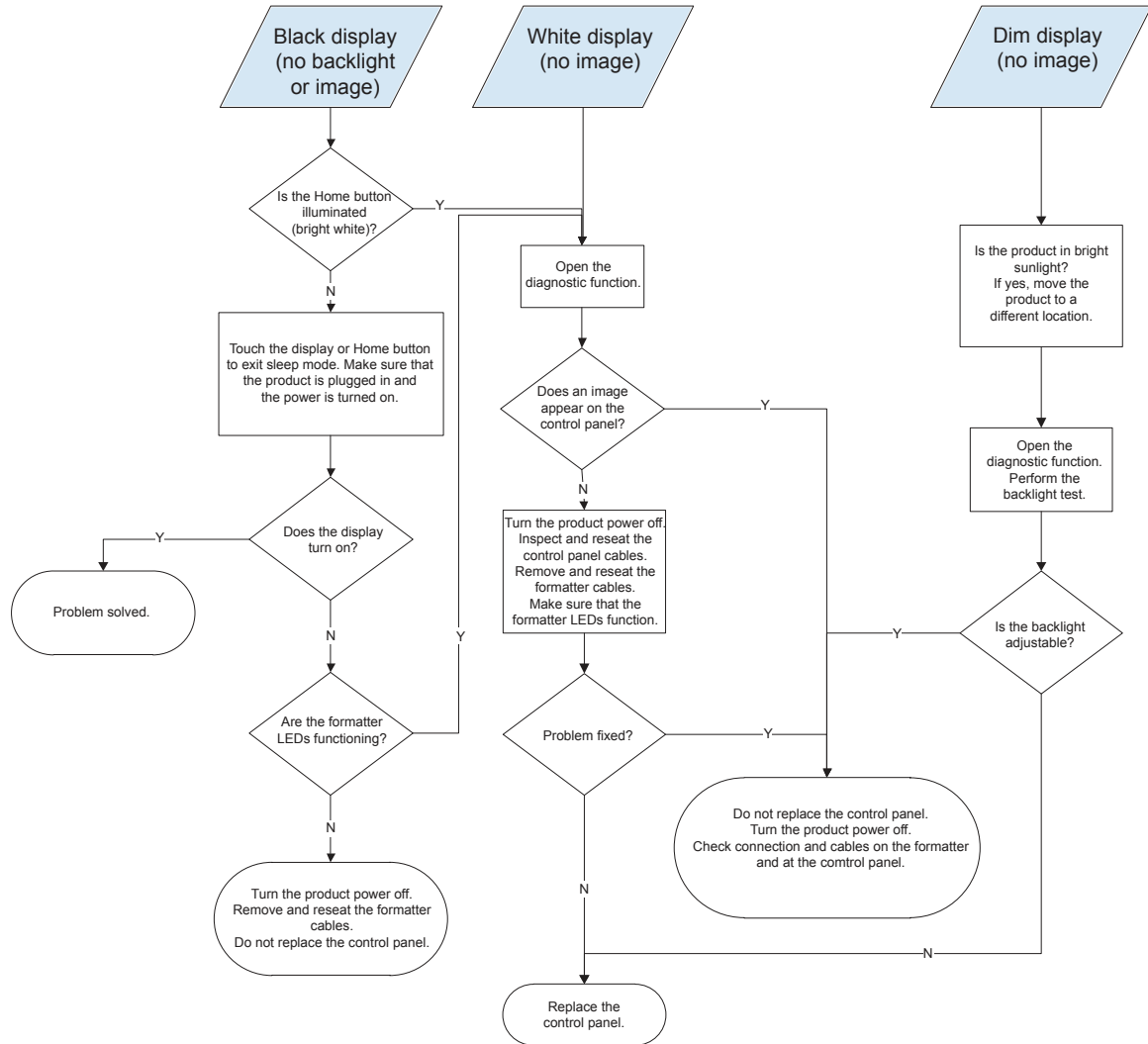
- Touchscreen is blank, white, or dim (no image).
- Touchscreen is slow to respond or requires multiple presses to respond.
- Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.
- No control panel sound.
- [Home](#) button is unresponsive.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image)

Learn about the touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image).

 **NOTE:** To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 4-1 Touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image)

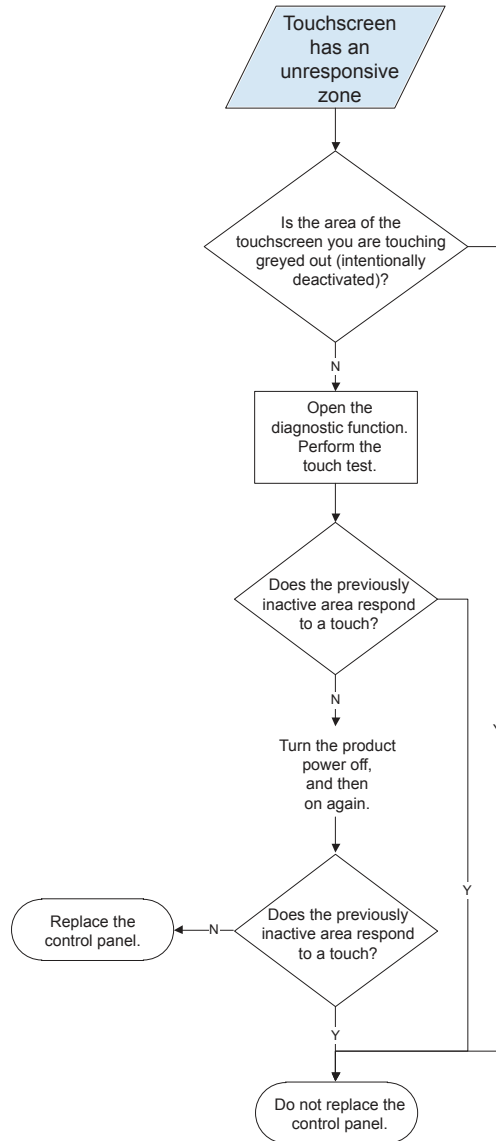


Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone

Learn about how the touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 4-2 Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone



No control panel sound

Learn what to do when there is no control panel sound.


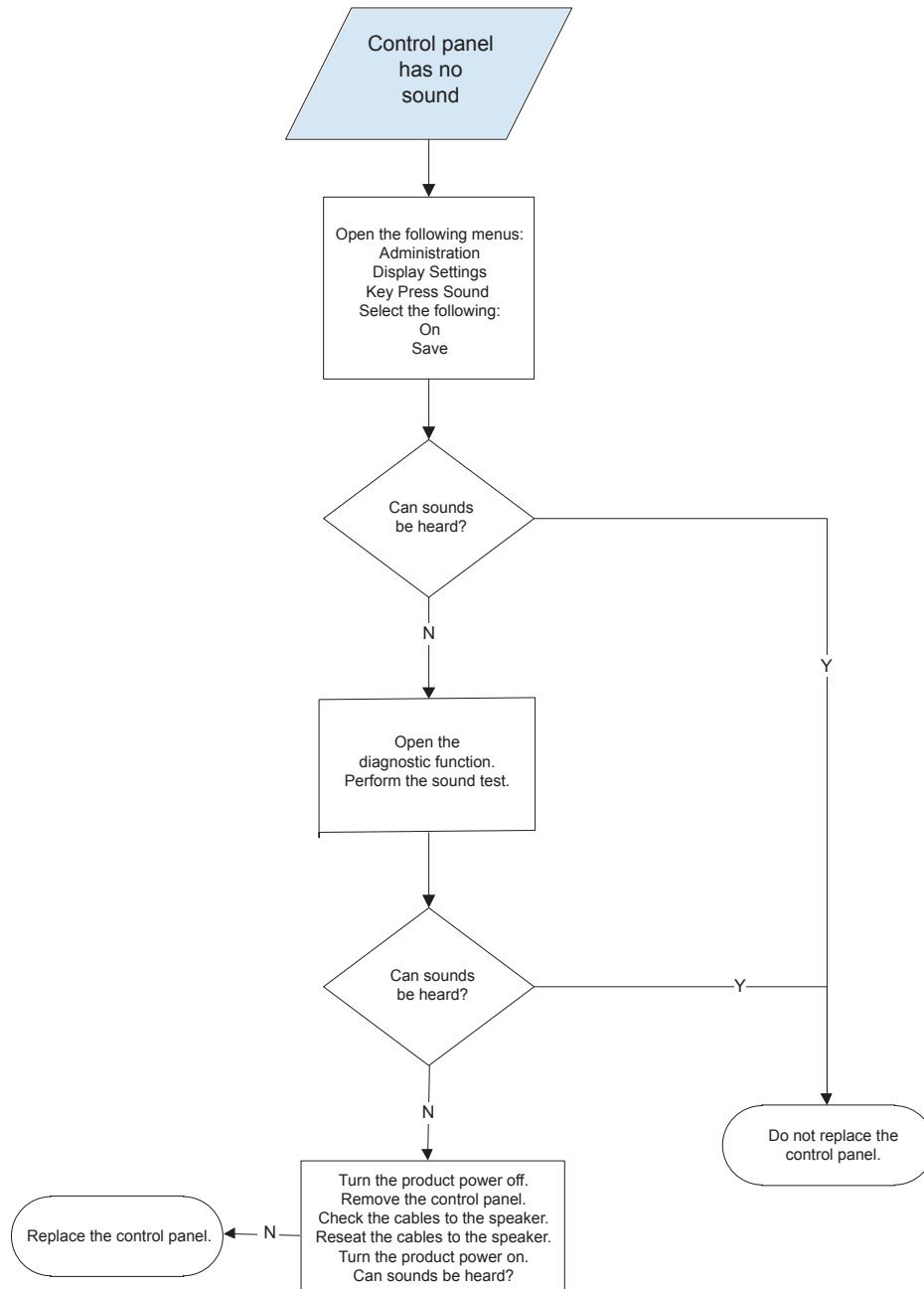
 **NOTE:** To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 4-3 No control panel sound



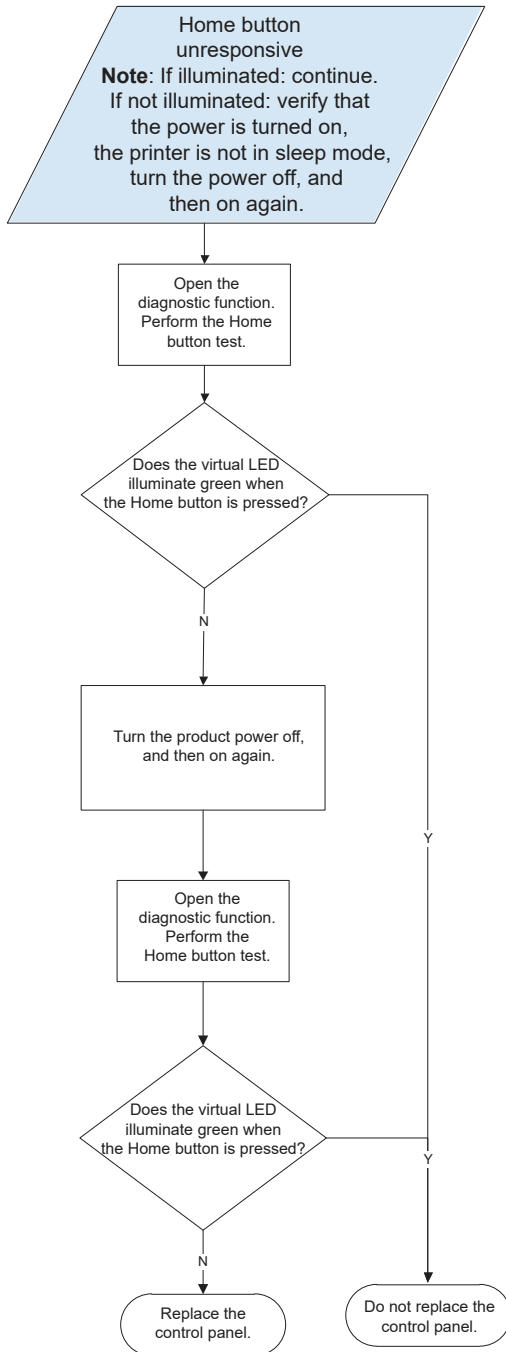
Home button is unresponsive

Learn what to do when the home button is unresponsive.



NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

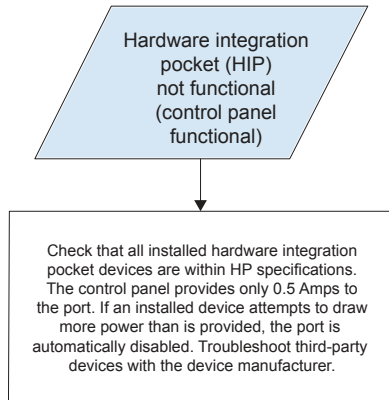
Figure 4-4 Home button is unresponsive



Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)

Learn about when the hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Figure 4-5 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)



Individual component diagnostics

Learn about individual component diagnostics.

Tools for troubleshooting: LED diagnostics

LED, engine, and individual diagnostics can identify and troubleshoot printer problems.

Understand lights on the formatter

Three LEDs on the formatter indicate that the printer is functioning correctly.

Figure 4-6 LEDs

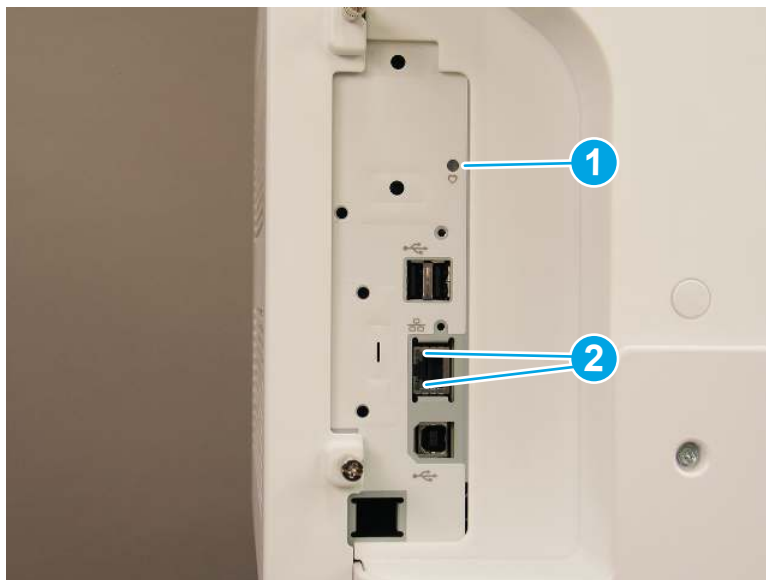


Table 4-1 LEDs

Item	Description
1	Heartbeat LED
2	HP Jetdirect LEDs

HP Jetdirect LEDs

Learn about the HP Jetdirect LEDs.

The embedded HP Jetdirect print server has two LEDs. The yellow LED indicates network activity, and the green LED indicates the link status. A blinking yellow LED indicates network traffic. If the green LED is off, a link has failed.

For link failures, check all the network cable connections. In addition, try to manually configure the link settings on the embedded print server by using the printer control-panel menus.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select **Settings**.
2. Open the following menus:
 - **Networking**
 - **Ethernet**
 - **Link Speed**
3. Select the appropriate link speed, and then select **OK**.


Tools for troubleshooting: Engine diagnostics

The printer contains extensive internal engine diagnostics that help in troubleshooting print quality, paper path, noise, assembly, and timing issues.

Defeating interlocks

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the toner cartridge door or right door is open.

Defeating the door interlocks allows observation of the paper pick operation (and view the page enter registration).

 **WARNING!** Be careful when performing printer diagnostics to avoid risk of injury. Only trained service personnel should open and run the diagnostics with a door open. Never touch any of the power supplies when the printer is turned on.

Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock

Learn how to defeat the toner cartridge door interlock.

1. Open the toner cartridge door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.


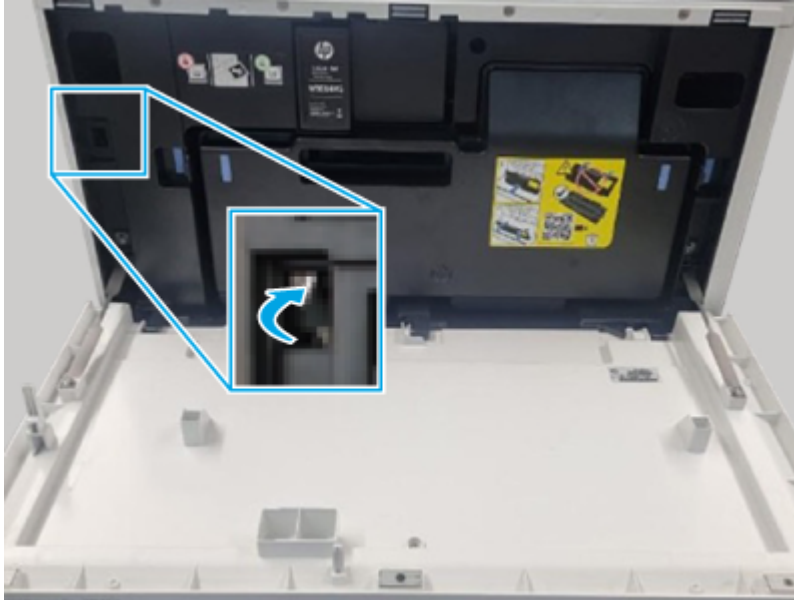
 **TIP:** Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the cartridge door logic switches.

Figure 4-7 Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock



Defeat the right door interlock

Learn how to defeat the right door interlock.

1. Open the right door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.


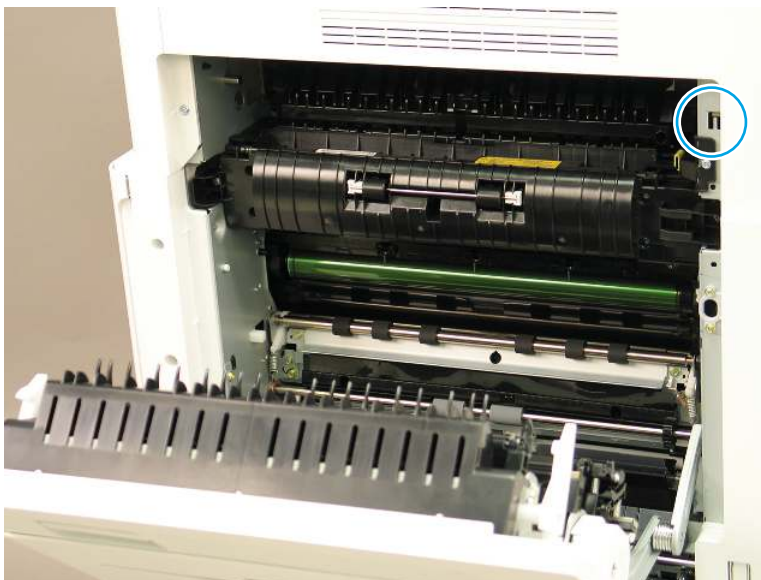
 **TIP:** Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the front door logic switches.

Figure 4-8 Defeat the right door interlock



Tools for troubleshooting

Use the procedure below to test various printer mechanical and electromechanical assemblies.

Individual component diagnostics (special-mode test)

Learn about the individual component diagnostics (special-mode test).

This test activates individual parts independently to isolate problems.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.



NOTE: The cartridge door interlocks must be defeated to run the component tests.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Select one of the following tests:
 - [Continuous Scan](#)
 - [Run Fax Test](#)
3. Select the component test options for the test.

Tools for troubleshooting

Learn about tools for troubleshooting.

Problem-solving checklist

Follow these steps when trying to solve a problem with the printer.

Step 1: Check that the printer power is on

Learn how to check that the printer power is on.

1. Make sure that the printer is plugged in and turned on. The power button should be lit with a white light. If it is not, press the power button. If the power button does not light up, check the following conditions.
 - Make sure that the power cable is connected to the printer and the outlet.
 - Check the power source by connecting the power cable to a different outlet.
2. If the printer motors do not rotate, make sure that the toner cartridges are installed and that the doors are all closed. The control panel displays messages to indicate these problems.

Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages

Learn how to check the control panel for error messages.

The control panel should indicate ready status. If an error message appears, resolve the error.

Print a supplies status page to ensure that the supplies are not at or over end of life.



NOTE: HP long-life consumable and maintenance kit life specifications are estimations. Actual individual life or yield during normal use will vary depending on usage, environment, media, and other factors. Estimated life is not an implied warranty.

Step 3: Test print functionality

Learn how to test print functionality.

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the [Reports](#) button.
2. Open the [Reports](#) menu, touch the [Configuration/Status Pages](#) menu, select the [Configuration Page](#) item, and then touch the [Print](#) button to print the report.
3. If the report does not print, make sure that paper is loaded in the tray, and check the control panel to see if paper is jammed inside the printer.



NOTE: Make sure that the paper in the tray meets specifications for this printer.

Step 4: Test copy functionality

Learn how to test copy functionality.

1. Place the configuration page into the ADF and make a copy. If paper does not feed smoothly through the ADF, you might need to clean the ADF rollers and separation pad. Make sure that the paper meets specifications for this printer.
2. Place the configuration page onto the scanner glass and make a copy.
3. If the print quality on the copied pages is not acceptable, clean the scanner glass and the small glass strip.

Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality

Learn how to test the fax sending functionality.

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the [Troubleshooting](#) menu, and then open the [Diagnostics Tools](#) menu. Touch the [Run Fax Test](#) button to test the fax functionality.
3. Touch the [Fax](#) on the printer control panel, and then touch the [Start Fax](#) button.

Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality

Learn how to test the fax receiving functionality.

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Touch the [Troubleshooting](#) menu, and then open the [Diagnostics Tests](#) menu. Touch the [Run Fax Test](#) button to test the fax functionality.
3. Use another fax machine to send a fax to the printer.
4. Review and reset the printer fax settings.

Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer

Learn how to try sending a print job from a computer.

1. Use a word-processing program to send a print job to the printer.
2. If the job does not print, make sure that you selected the correct printer driver.
3. Uninstall and then reinstall the printer software.

Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality

Learn how to test the plug and print USB drive printing functionality.

1. Load a .PDF document or .JPEG photo onto a USB flash drive, and insert it in the USB port near the control panel.
2. The [USB Flash Drive](#) menu opens. Try printing the document or photo.
3. If no documents are listed, try a different type of USB flash drive.

Factors that affect printer performance

Several factors affect the time it takes to print a job:


- The software program that you are using and its settings
- The use of special paper (such as heavy paper or custom-size paper)
- Printer processing and download time
- The complexity and size of graphics
- The speed of the computer you are using
- The USB or network connection
- Whether the printer is printing in color or in monochrome
- The type of USB drive, if you are using one
- Environmental factors, such as low temperature or high humidity

Print menu map

Learn how to print the menu map.

To more easily navigate individual settings, print a report of the complete [Reports](#) menu.

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Reports](#) button.
2. Open the [Configuration/Status Pages](#) menu.
3. Select the [Settings Menu Map](#) option.
4. Touch the [Print](#) button to print the report.

 **TIP:** Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Print current settings pages

Learn how to print current settings pages.

Printing the current settings page provides a map of the user configurable settings that might be helpful in the troubleshooting process.

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Reports](#) button.
2. Open the [Configuration/Status Pages](#) menu.
3. Select the [Current Settings Page](#) option.

4. Touch the [Print](#) button to print the report.



TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Additional tools for troubleshooting

Find additional troubleshooting topics.

Use the links below to go to additional troubleshooting tools topics.

- Pre-boot menu options
See [Pre-boot menu options on page 379](#).
- Event log (display and print)
See [Event Log on page 524](#).

Remote Admin

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer Pre-boot menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the Pre-boot menu.



IMPORTANT: While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the Pre-boot menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

This section describes the following Remote Admin items.

Required software and network connection

Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed, and enabled, on the remote telnet client computer.



NOTE: This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows® operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows based system, however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

Telnet client

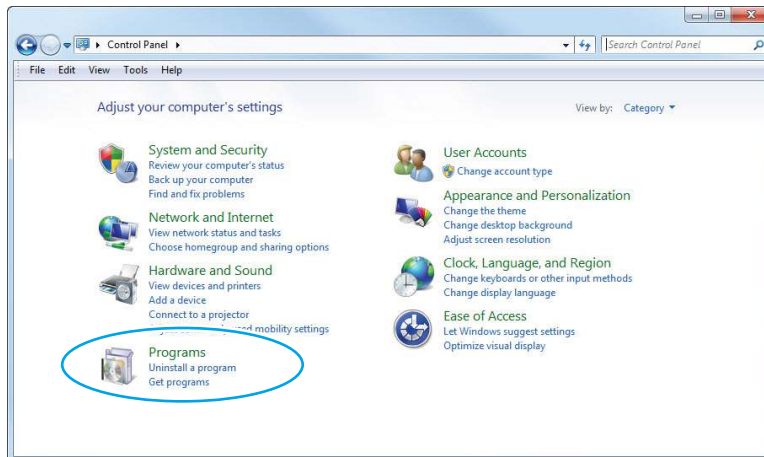
All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.



NOTE: The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 7 Enterprise® operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

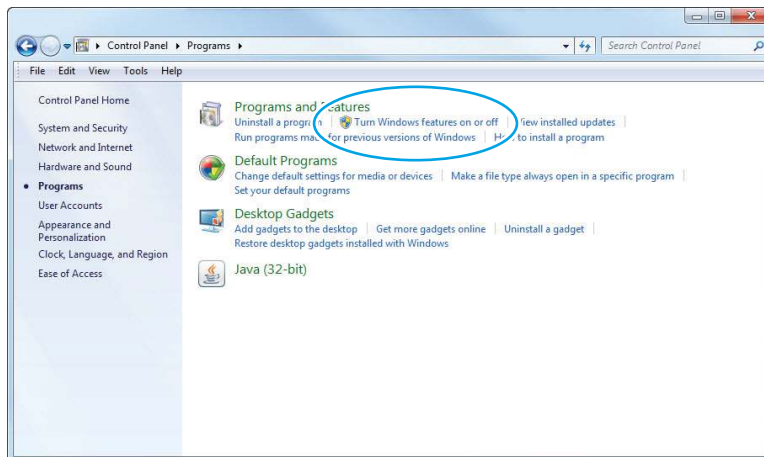
1. Use the **Start** menu to open the **Control Panel**, and then click the **Programs** item to select it.

Figure 4-9 Open the Control Panel



2. Click the **Turn Windows features on or off** item to select it.

Figure 4-10 Turn Windows features on or off



3. In the **Windows Features** box, scroll down to **Telnet Client**. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the **OK** button.


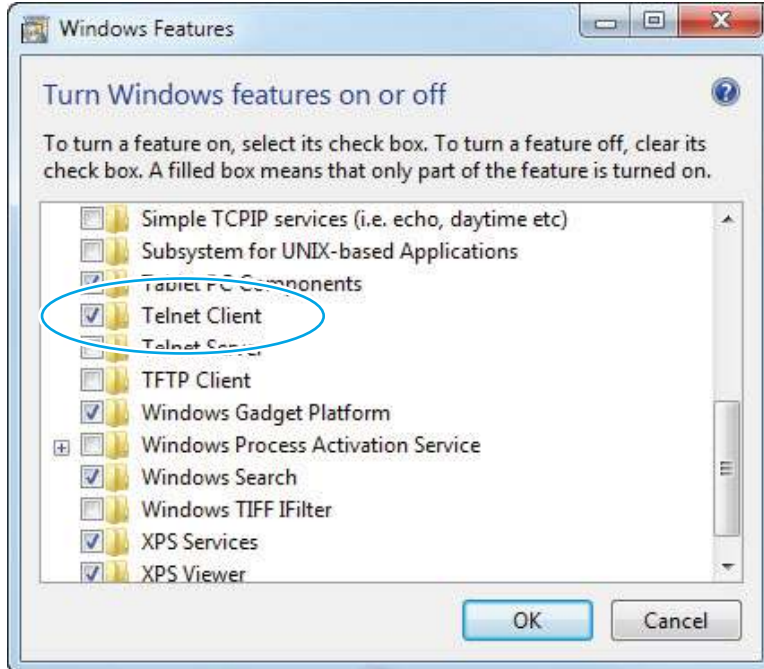
 **TIP:** If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the **Cancel** button.

Figure 4-11 Enable the telnet client feature



Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer. The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.


If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

Connect a remote connection

Learn how to connect a remote connection using telnet.

Start the telnet server function at the printer

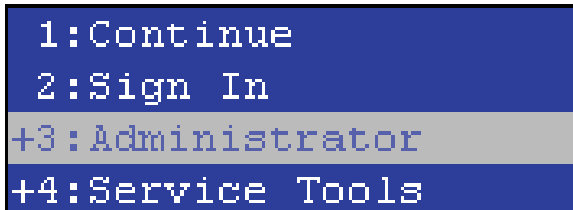
For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

 **NOTE:** This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

1. Turn the printer on.
2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a "1/8" with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the [Pre-boot](#) menu.

3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+3:Administrator** item, and then touch the **OK** button to select it.

Figure 4-12 Select the **+3:Administrator** item



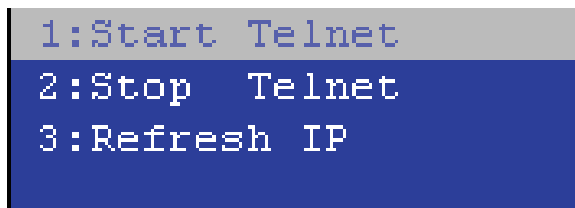
4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then touch the **OK** button to select it.

Figure 4-13 Select the **+A:Remote Admin** item



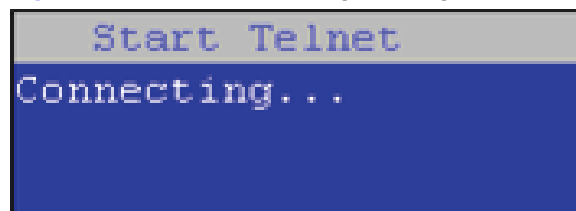
5. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **1:Start Telnet** item, and then touch the **OK** button to select it.

Figure 4-14 Select the **1:Start Telnet** item



6. Do one of the following
 - If a connecting message displays briefly, go to step vii..

Figure 4-15 Telnet connecting message



- If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 4-16 Telnet error message

```
Start Telnet
Unable to connect
Contact network
administrator.
```

- a. The printer network cable is not correctly connected.
 - b. The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.
 - o The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.
 - o The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.
 - c. The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.
7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.



NOTE: The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- **IP:** The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port:** The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin:** A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 4-17 Telnet server function initialized

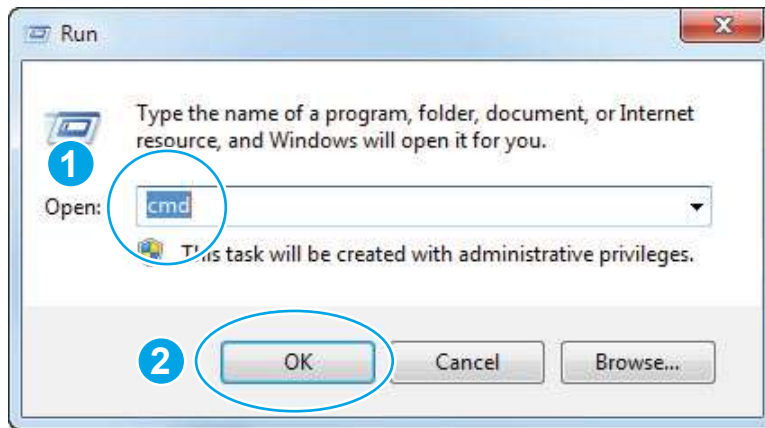
```
Start Telnet
IP: 16.88.109.66
Port: 23
Pin : 4031
```

Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

1. From the **Start** menu click **Run** to open a dialog box, type `cmd` in the **Open** field, and then click the **OK** button to open a Windows command window.

Figure 4-18 Open a command window




2. From any displayed directory, type `telnet` at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 4-19 Start a telnet session



3. Type `<IP ADDRESS>` at the telnet prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

 **NOTE:** For `<IP ADDRESS>`, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step vii. in [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 356](#).


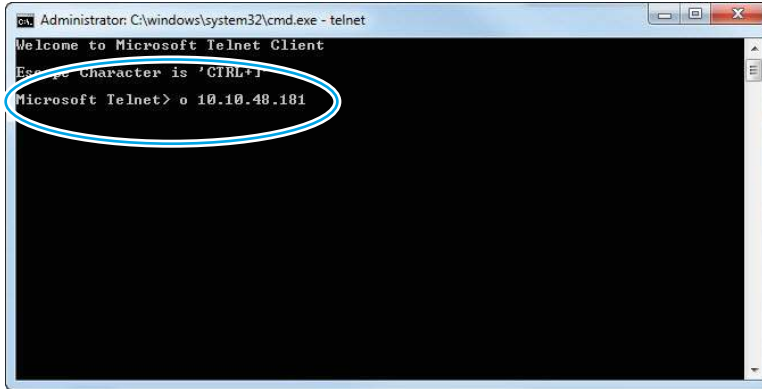
 **TIP:** If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network than the remote telnet client computer. See [Network connection on page 356](#).

Figure 4-20 Establish a telnet connection



4. Type the PIN that was displayed in step vii. in [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 356](#) at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.


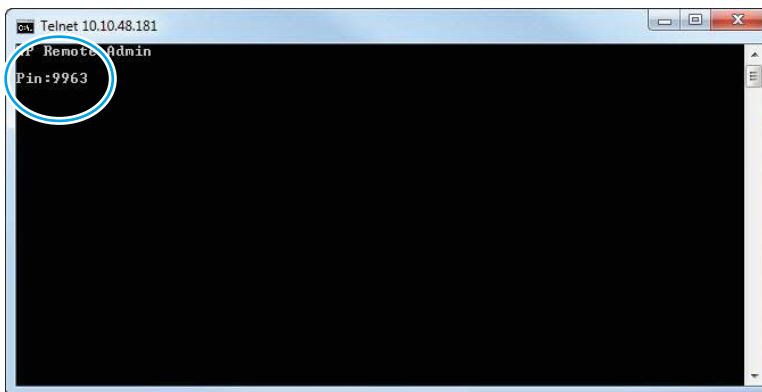

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 356](#).

Figure 4-21 Enter the PIN

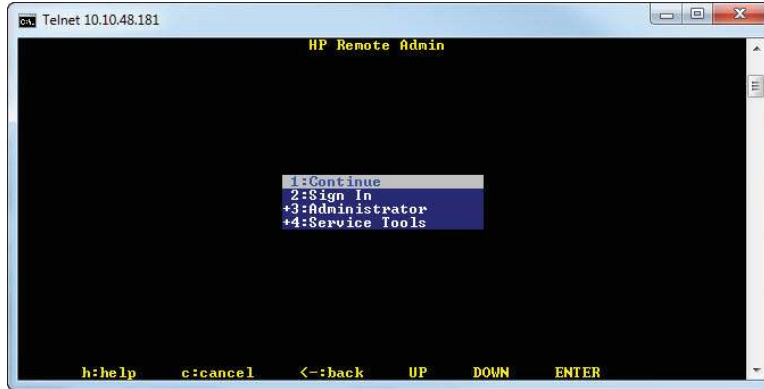


5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see [Pre-boot menu options on page 379](#).

 **NOTE:** Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecure telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.

- The **+3:Administrator** menu **4:Change Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **5:Clear Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **6:Disk Manage** item.


Figure 4-22 Remote Admin window



Disconnect a remote connection

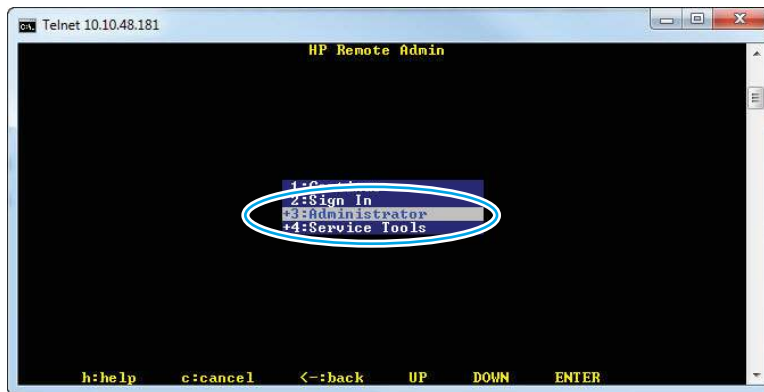
Learn how to disconnect a remote connection.

The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.

 **NOTE:** The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

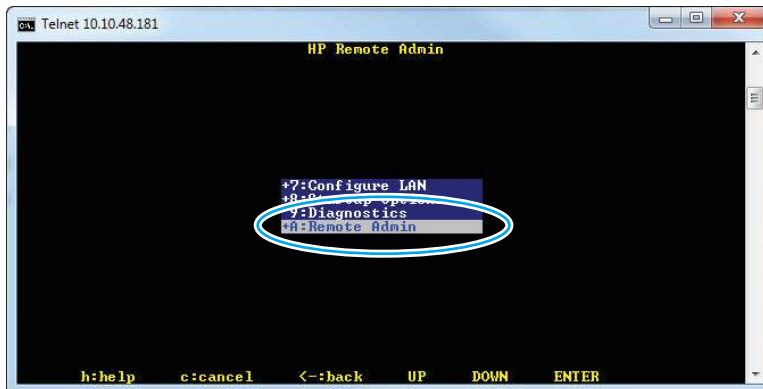
1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+3:Administrator** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 4-23 Access the administrator menu




2. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 4-24 Access the remote admin menu

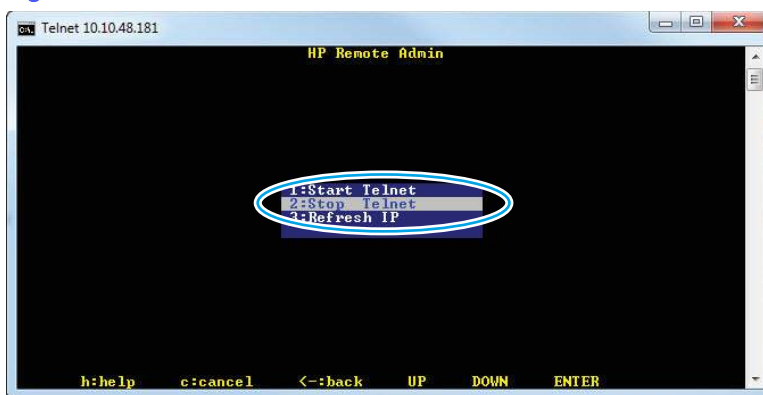


3. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

 **IMPORTANT:** The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

- Touch the **Home** button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the **OK** button. The printer will continue to initialize.

Figure 4-25 Terminate the telnet connection



Clear paper jams

Use the procedures in this section to clear jammed paper from the printer paper path.

Paper jam locations

Jams can occur in these locations.

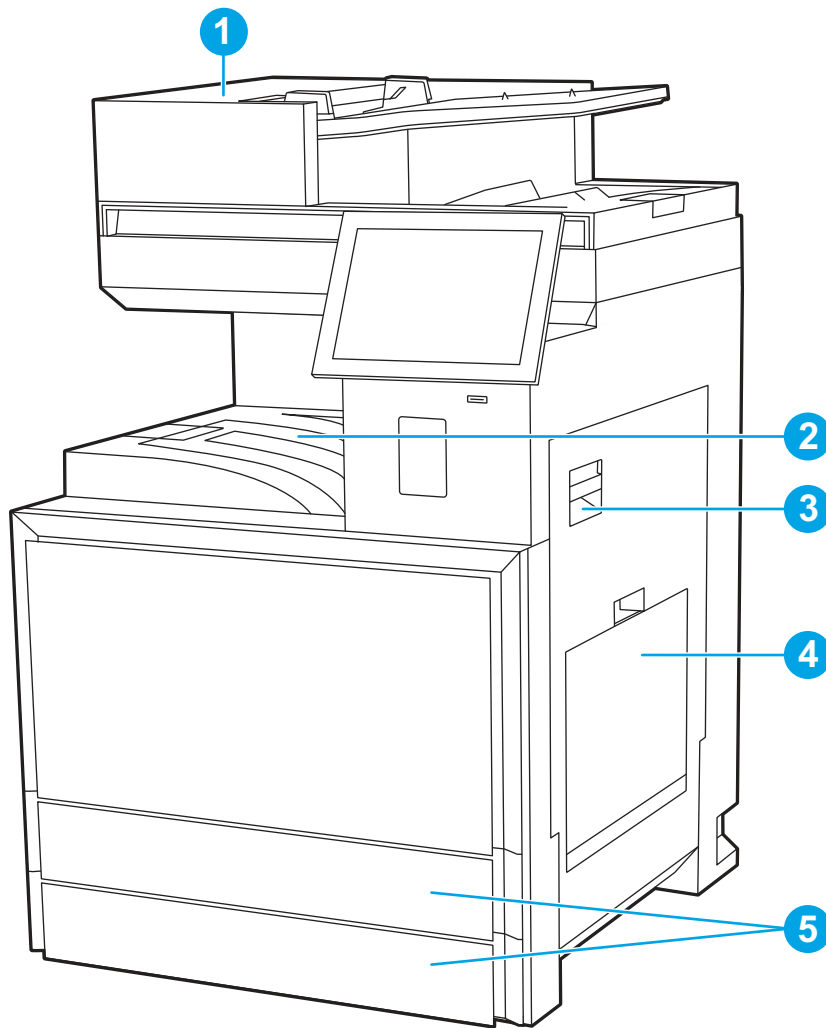


Table 4-2 Jam locations

Item	Description
1	Document feeder
2	Output bin
3	Right door and fuser area
4	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)
5	Tray 2 and Tray 3

Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams

Learn about printer jam clearing auto-navigation.

The auto-navigation feature assists in clearing jams by providing step-by-step instructions on the control panel.

When you complete a step, the printer displays instructions for the next step until you have completed all steps in the procedure.

Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?

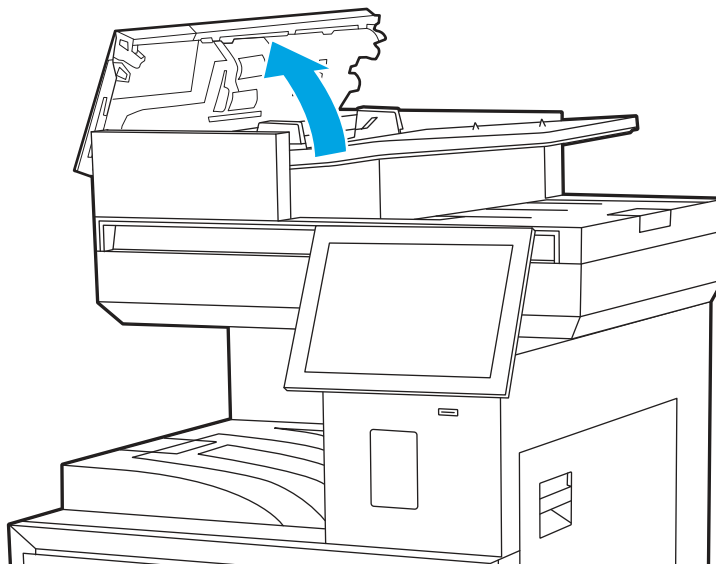
To reduce the number of paper jams, try these solutions.

1. Use only paper that meets HP specifications for this printer.
2. Use paper that is not wrinkled, folded, or damaged. If necessary, use paper from a different package.
3. Use paper that has not previously been printed or copied on.
4. Make sure the tray is not overfilled. If it is, remove the entire stack of paper from the tray, straighten the stack, and then return some of the paper to the tray.
5. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides so they are touching the paper stack without bending it.
6. Make sure that the tray is fully inserted in the printer.
7. If you are printing on heavy, embossed, or perforated paper, use the manual feed feature and feed sheets one at a time.
8. Open the [Trays](#) menu on the printer control panel. Verify that the tray is configured correctly for the paper type and size.
9. Make sure the printing environment is within recommended specifications.

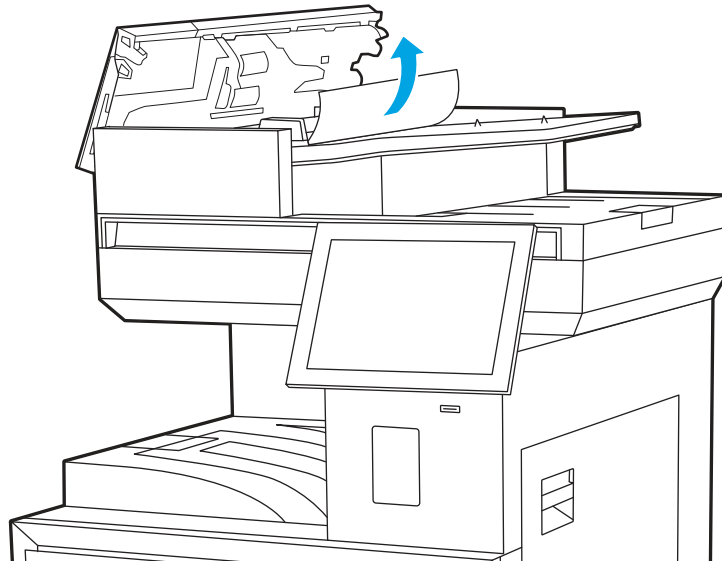
31.13.yz jam error in the document feeder

The following information describes how to clear paper jams in the document feeder. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

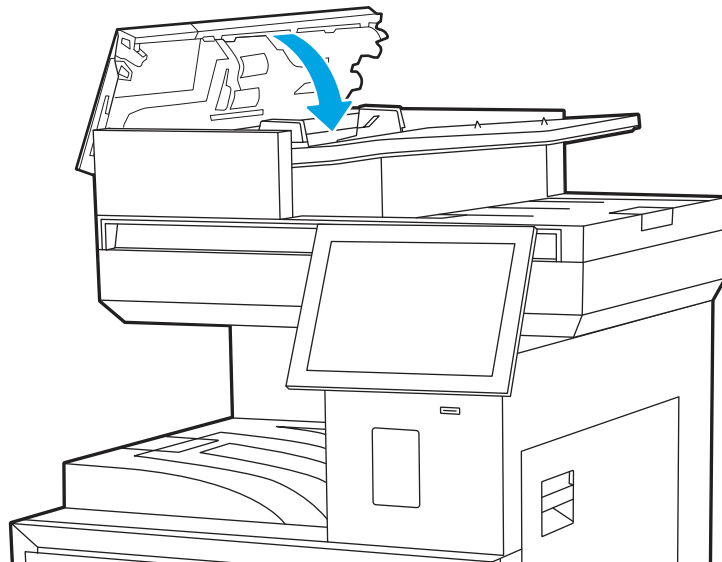
1. Open the document-feeder cover.





2. Remove any jammed paper.



3. Close the document-feeder cover.



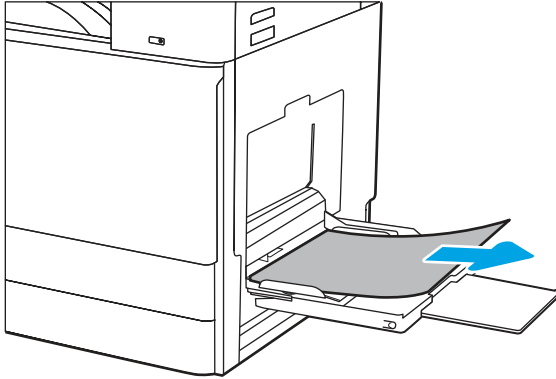
 **NOTE:** To avoid jams, make sure the guides in the document-feeder input tray are adjusted against the document, without bending the document. To copy narrow documents, use the flatbed scanner. Remove all staples and paper clips from original documents.

 **NOTE:** Original documents that are printed on heavy, glossy paper can jam more frequently than originals that are printed on plain paper.

13.A1 jam error in tray 1 (multipurpose tray)

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in Tray 1. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

1. Gently remove the jammed paper.



2. Open and then close the front door to resume printing.

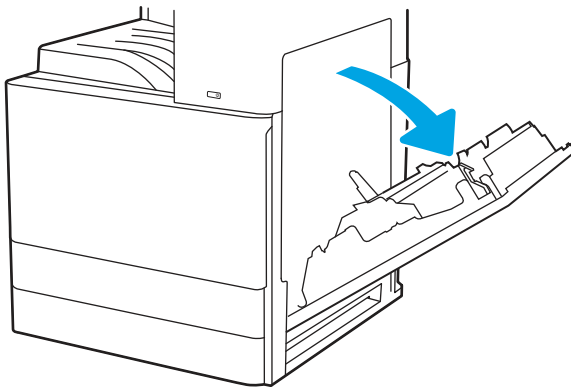
13.A2, 13.A3, 13.A4 jam errors in tray 2, tray 3, or the optional 2 x 520-sheet trays

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 2 or Tray 3. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

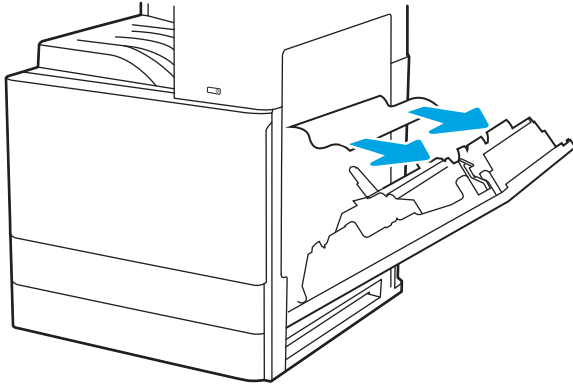
CAUTION: The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

NOTE: The procedure to clear a paper jam in Tray 3 is the same as for Tray 2. Only Tray 2 is shown here.

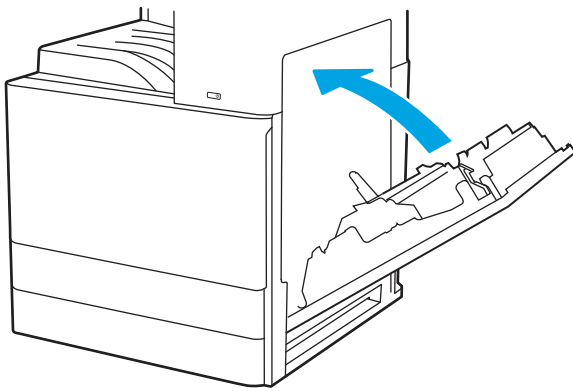
1. Open the right door.



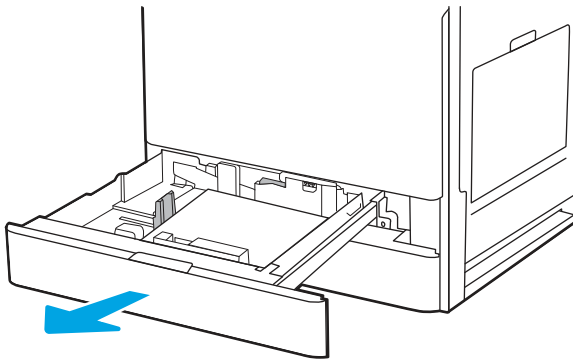
2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



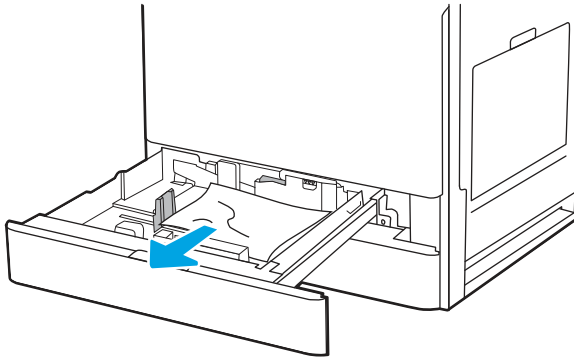
3. Close the right door.



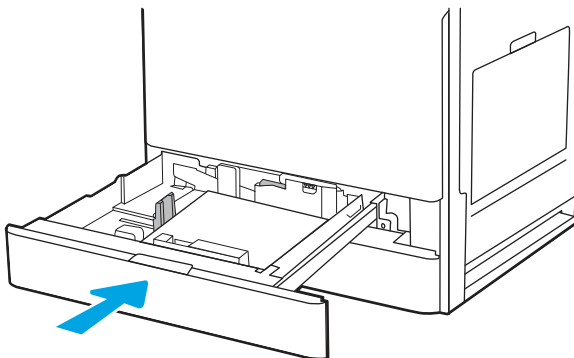
4. Open the tray.



5. Gently remove any jammed paper.



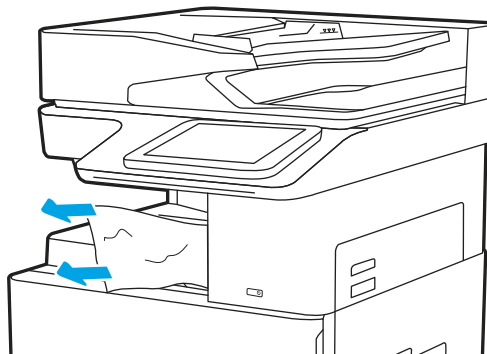
6. Close the tray. Printing automatically resumes.



13.E1 jam error in the output bin


Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations in the output bin. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- If paper is visible in the output bin, grasp the leading edge and remove it.

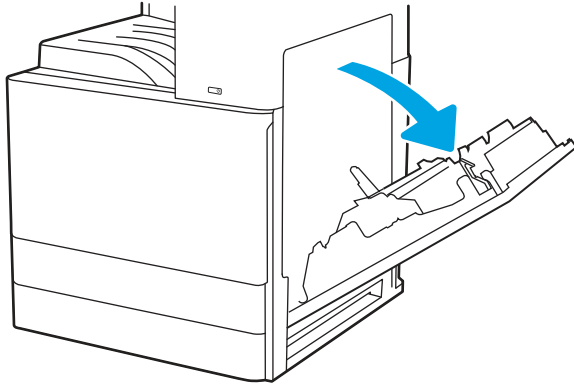


13.B9, 13.B2, 13.FF jam errors in the right door and fuser area

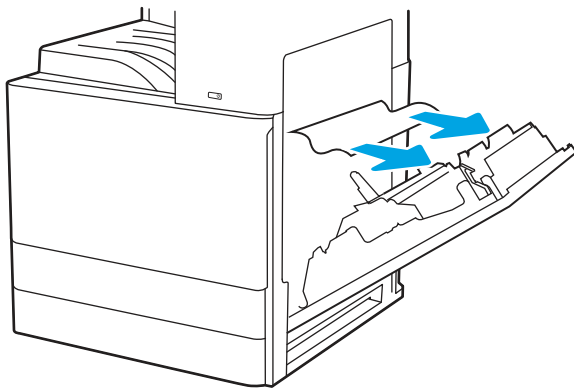
Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

 **NOTE:** The fuser is hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before clearing jams.

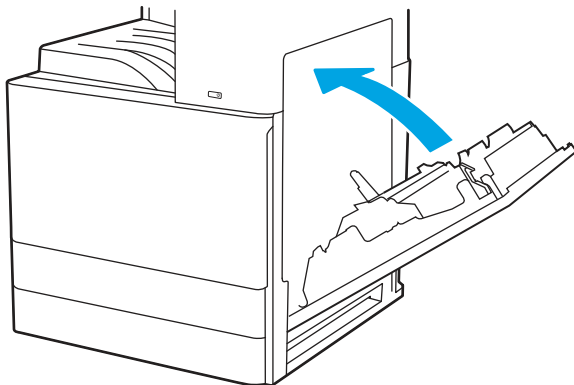
1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



3. Close the right door.



HP service and support

Learn about HP access to additional service and support information.

Additional service and support for channel partners

Channel partners go to partner.hp.com, and then use the steps below to access the HP Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE).



[View a video of how to use the HP Partner First Portal to access WISE.](#)

Access WISE for Channel partners

1. Select [Services & Support](#) (near the top of the screen).
2. Under [Services Delivery](#), select [Technical Support](#).
3. Select [Technical Documentation](#).

Find information about the following topics

- Service manuals
- Service advisories
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Warranty and regulatory information

Additional service and support for HP internal personnel

HP internal personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE) sites:

 [View a video of how to access WISE for internal HP users.](#)

Americas (AMS)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Spanish](#)
- [WISE - Portuguese](#)
- [WISE - French](#)

Asia Pacific / Japan (APJ)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Japanese](#)
- [WISE - Korean](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(simplified\)](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(traditional\)](#)
- [WISE - Thai](#)

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- [WISE - English](#)

Additional technical support WISE videos

The videos below provide additional ways to access printer information using WISE.



[View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos \(model number search\).](#)



[View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos \(Product detail page \[PDP\] search\).](#)

How to search for printer documentation

The CPMD, error codes, and other support documentation for each printer is found on the internal HP portals.

These portals are on WISE for Channel (please see [Accessing WISE for HP channel partners \(HP Partner Portal\) on page 374](#) below for instructions on how to navigate to the site) and [WISE](#). WISE for Channel is available to HP channel partners and WISE is available to call agents, service technicians, and other HP internal users. The level of detail available will depend on your access credentials. To learn how to find support content in WISE, [watch the video here](#).

How to search WISE for printer documentation

These instructions are for HP internal use by call agents, service technicians, and other internal users.

To learn how to find support content in WISE, watch the video here: [Finding Error Code and Control Panel Message Document in WISE](#).

To view a list of control panel message documents per printer, search for the following topic in **WISE**: HP LaserJet, OfficeJet, PageWide, ScanJet Enterprise - Control panel message document (CPMD) list.

How to search for specific error codes

Use WISE to quickly find error code troubleshooting procedures using the following steps.

1. Type the printer model number (for example, M609) in the dialog box search field.

Figure 4-26 WISE search box

hp Products

Welcome to WISE

Enter your product number or keywords

Example: "Laserjet P1102w driver" or "HP Pavilion 17-f002na will not turn on"

2. A drop-down list appears. Click on the full printer series name (for example, HP LaserJet Enterprise M609 series) in the list.

Figure 4-27 WISE drop-down list



3. Type the error code (for example, 13.E1.D3) in the keyword field. The error code troubleshooting content displays in the **All Search Results** area.


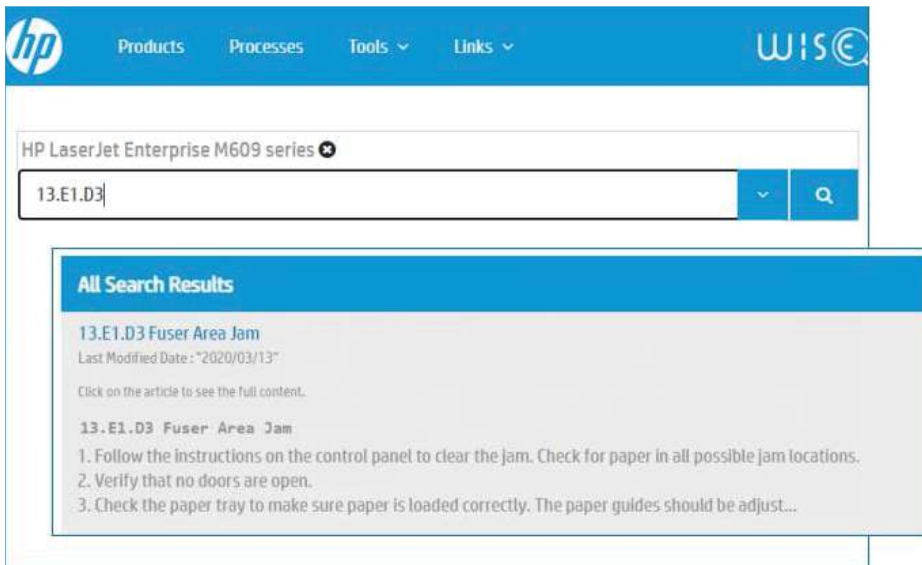

 **TIP:** Another method to find error code information is to use WISE to navigate to the printer detail page (PDP), and then search **Troubleshooting > Error Code Search**.

Figure 4-28 WISE search results



Accessing WISE for HP channel partners (CSDP)

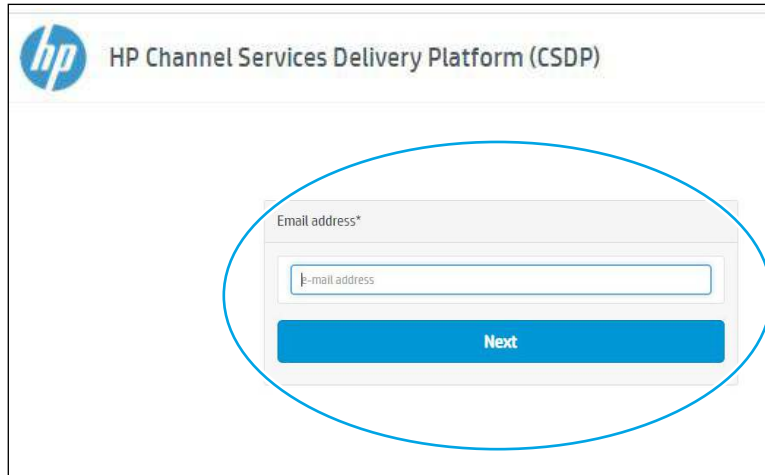
Learn how to access WISE by accessing the HP Channel Services Delivery Platform (CSDP) if you are an HP Channel Partner.

 **IMPORTANT:** A Partner Admin must requested access, via the CSDP portal, to create a new user before you can sign into the CDSP portal.

Use WISE to find printer information. For example:

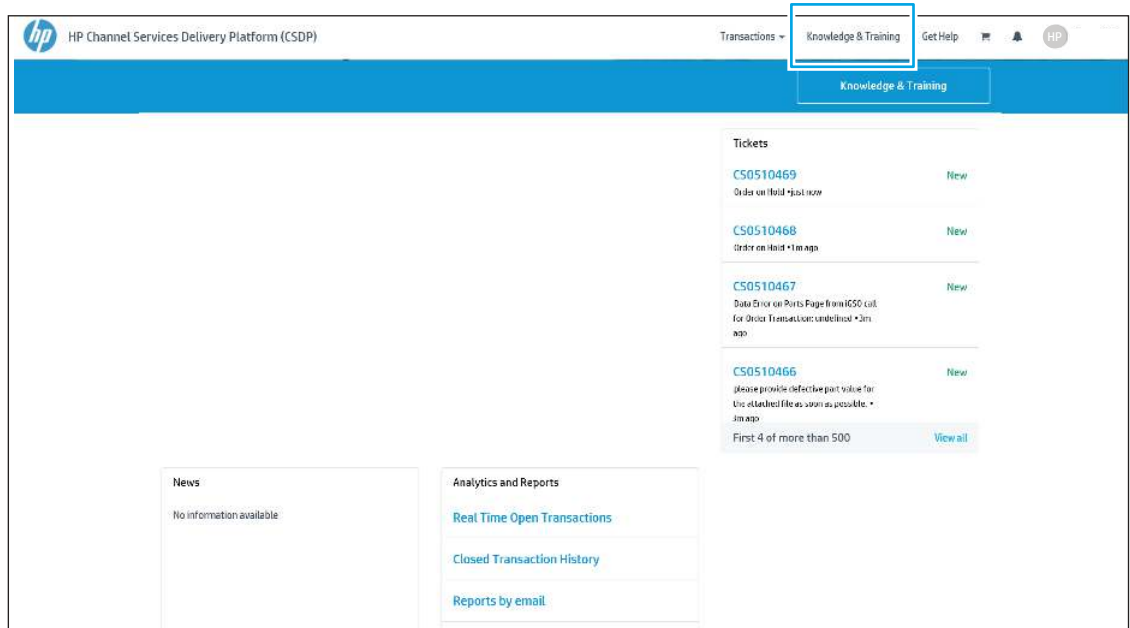
- User Guides
 - Service Manuals
 - Control Panel Message Documents (CPMDs)
 - Product Detail Pages (PDPs)
 - Certificate of Volatility (CoV)
1. Sign-in to the CSDP portal (click csdp.hp.com to access the sign in page).

Figure 4-29 CSDP sign in page



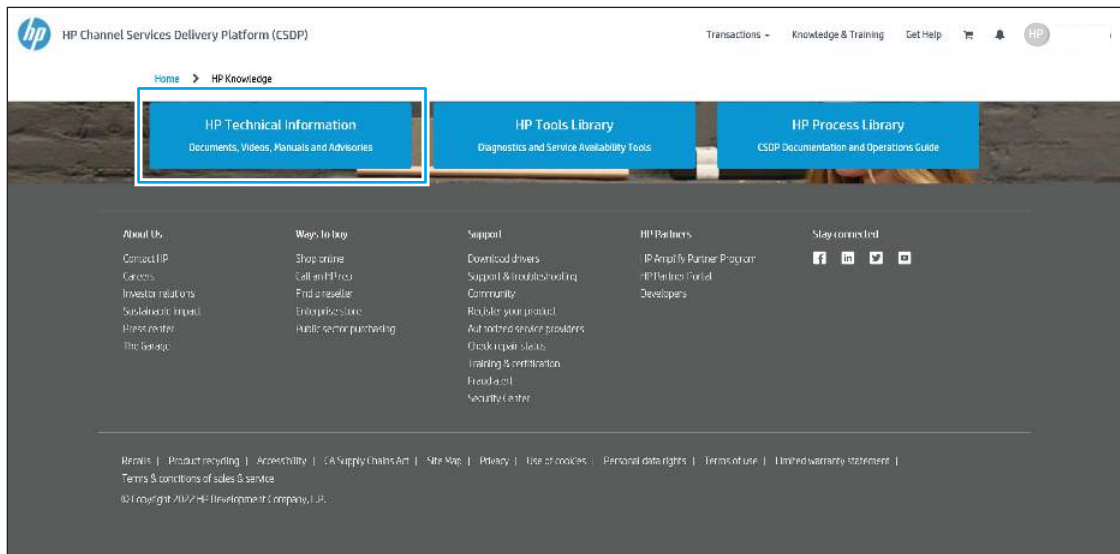
2. On the CSDP home page, click **Knowledge & Training**.

Figure 4-30 CSDP portal home page



3. Select **HP Technical Documentation** to open the WISE portal page.

Figure 4-31 CSDP portal HP Knowledge page




4. Use the WISE portal to search for printer information.

Figure 4-32 WISE portal page

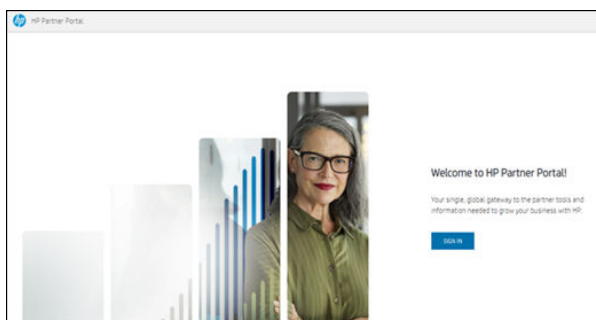


Accessing WISE for HP channel partners (HP Partner Portal)

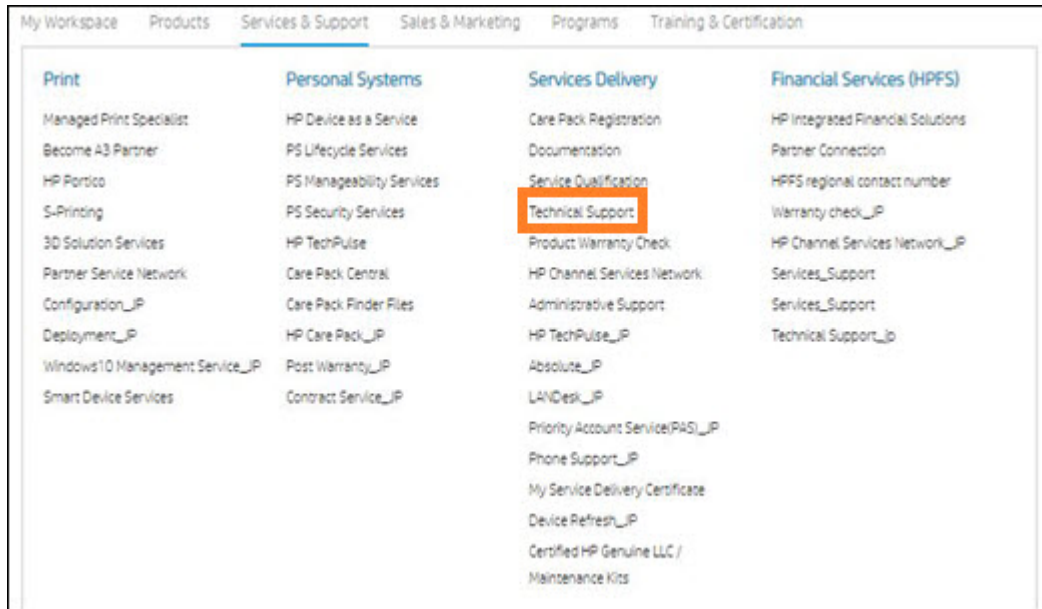
Learn how to access WISE by accessing the HP Partner Portal if you are an HP Channel Partner.

 **NOTE:** If this is your first visit to the HP Partner Portal, you will be asked to create an account. Follow the setup directions using your HP Partner credentials.

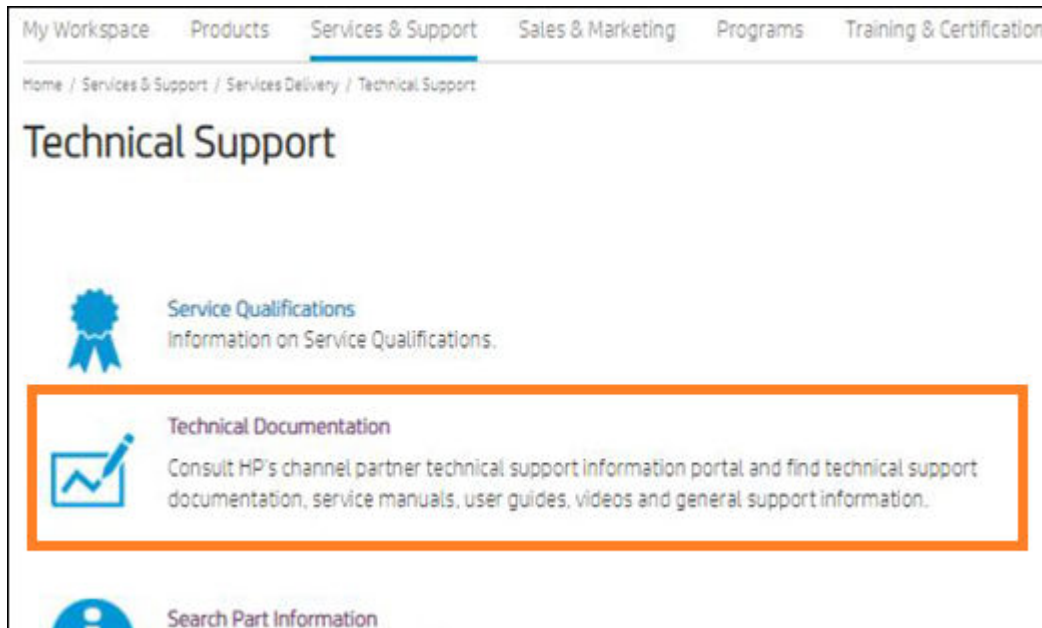
1. Open the HP Partner First Portal located at <https://partner.hp.com>.



2. Select the **Services & Support** tab, and then select **Technical Support**.



3. Select **Technical Documentation**.



4. You will be taken to the WISE portal.



Play the video:



[View a video of how to access WISE \(HP channel partners\)](#)

Control panel messages document (CPMD)

Learn about the printer control panel messages document (CPMD).



NOTE: A complete CPMD is not included in this service manual.

[Click here to access the complete CPMD for this printer.](#)

Error codes (types and structure)

Error codes and control-panel messages display on the printer control panel to indicate the current printer status or situations that might require action. Error codes are numerical, or alphanumerical, and have a set structure with six characters (example: 13.WX.YZ).

- The first two characters are numeric and represent the system component that is causing the error. For example, in error code 10 . 22 . 15, **10 = Supplies** for HP LaserJets.
- The remaining four characters (W, X, Y, and Z values) further define the error.

HP LaserJet and HP PageWide Enterprise error codes are documented in the control panel message document (CPMD) for each printer.

The CPMD is a comprehensive list of error codes, diagnostic and troubleshooting steps to clear or resolve the error, and other helpful information such as service mode pins and part numbers.

The CPMD is continually updated and republished with the latest information for the following error codes.

Table 4-3 ERROR CODES: The first two characters

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
10.WX.YZ	Supplies (LaserJet)	Supply error or supply memory error.
11.WX.YZ	Real-time clock	Internal error with the clock on the formatter.
13.WX.YZ	Jam (LaserJet)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
15.WX.YZ	Jam (PageWide)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
17.WX.YZ	Supplies (PageWide)	Supply error or supply memory error.
20.WX.YZ	Printer memory	Insufficient memory or buffering error.
21.WX.YZ	Page	Page complexity causing a decompression error when trying to process job.
30.WX.YZ	Scanner	Flatbed scanner error occurring inside the unit.
31.WX.YZ	Document feeder	Document feeder, scanner, or jam error.
32.WX.YZ	Backup, restore, or reset	Backup, restore, or reset notification or error.
33.WX.YZ	Security	Backup, Disk, EFI BIOS, Firmware integrity (SureStart), or Trusted Platform Module (TPM) notification or error.

Table 4-3 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
40.WX.YZ	Input/Output (I/O)	Partition manager, secure erase, or USB accessory error.
41.WX.YZ	Fuser, Laser scanner, or Paper path	Miscellaneous error including general and misprint or mismatch errors typically involving (but not limited to) the fuser, the laser scanner, or the paper path.
42.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving the Event Log, Shell, System Manager, or other component.
44.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving a digital sending component.
45.WX.YZ	OXPd/Web Kit (PageWide)	Informational notifications involving the OXPd Web Kit (communications log).
46.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	Engine communication error.
47.WX.YZ	Firmware	Job parser or printer calibration error.
48.WX.YZ	Firmware	PJA job accounting, job management, or job pipeline error.
49.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware communication error.
50.WX.YZ	Fuser (LaserJet)	Fuser error.
51.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner beam error.
52.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner startup error.
54.WX.YZ	Sensor	Sensor error (not jam related).
55.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller communication error.
56.WX.YZ	Paper handling (LaserJet)	Paper input/output or accessory error.
57.WX.YZ	Fan	Fan error.
58.WX.YZ	Sensor	Engine sensor failure.
59.WX.YZ	Motor (LaserJet)	Motor error.
60.WX.YZ	Tray motor error (LaserJet)	Tray lifting or pick up error.
61.WX.YZ	Engine (PageWide)	Print engine error with the 8-bit data package.
62.WX.YZ	System (LaserJet)	LaserJet internal system error.
	Print bar (PageWide)	PageWide print system error.
63.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	General engine error (electrical, communication, etc.).
65.WX.YZ	Connector	Output accessory connection error.
66.WX.YZ	Output accessory	Output accessory error.
67.WX.YZ	Input accessory	Input accessory connection error
69.WX.YZ	Duplexer	Duplexer error.
70.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller firmware error.

Table 4-3 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
76.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	Power supply fluctuations causes formatter and DC controller communication issue and results them not to be in synchronization.
80.WX.YZ	Managed device	Embedded Jetdirect error.
81.WX.YZ	Near Field Communication (NFC)	Wireless, Bluetooth or internal EIO error.
82.WX.YZ	Memory (hard disk, EMMC, etc.)	Disk hardware error.
90.WX.YZ	Internal diagnostics	Internal test of systems (i.e. disk, CPB, display) or interconnection error.
98.WX.YZ	Hard disk	Hard disk partition error.
99.WX.YZ	Firmware installer	Remote Firmware Upgrade (RFU), firmware install (engine or accessory), or disk error.

Image-quality troubleshooting guide (IQTG)

For more information about image-quality troubleshooting, see the following topic.



NOTE: A complete IQTG is not included in this service manual.

[Click here to see the Image Quality Troubleshooting Guide \(IQTG\) for this printer.](#)

5 Control panel menus

You can perform basic printer setup by using the [Settings](#) menu. Use the HP Embedded Web Server for more advanced printer setup. To open the HP Embedded Web Server, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address bar of a web browser.

Pre-boot menu options

The [Pre-boot](#) menus are available prior to the printer initializing.

⚠ CAUTION: The [Format Disk](#) option (printers with a hard-disk drive only) performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) will be completely lost. HP does not recommend this action.

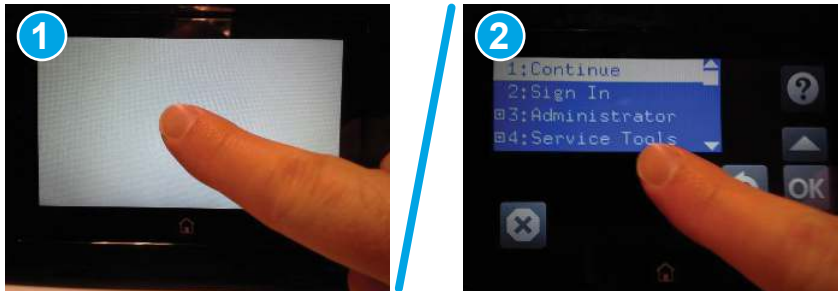
💡 TIP: The Pre-boot menu can be remotely accessed by using a telnet network protocol to establish an administration connection to the printer. See [Remote Admin on page 354](#).

Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

Learn how to open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the [1/8](#) under the logo.

Figure 5-1 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. On the **Pre-boot** menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 5-2 Pre-boot menu

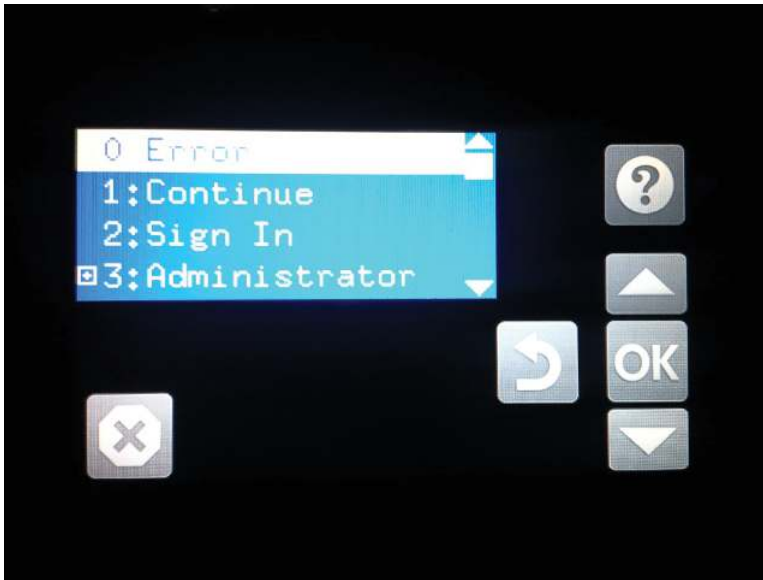









Table 5-1 Pre-boot screen buttons

	Use this button to see more information about a selected item.
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.
	Use this button to exit a diagnostic test.

3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to navigate the [Pre-boot](#) menu.
4. Touch the [OK](#) button to select a menu item.

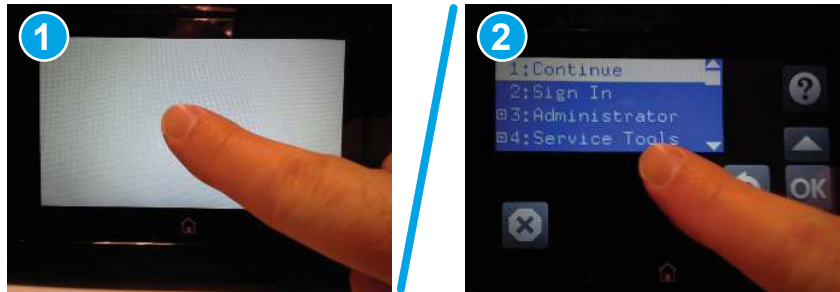
Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

Learn how to cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.

CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the [1/8](#) under the logo.

Figure 5-3 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. Use the ▼ button to highlight the [+3:Administrator](#) item, and then touch the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the ▼ button to highlight the [+8:Startup Options](#) item, and then touch the [OK](#) button.
4. Use the ▼ button to highlight the [2 Cold Reset](#) item, and then touch the [OK](#) button to select it.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main [Pre-boot](#) menu and highlight the [1:Continue](#) item, and then touch the [OK](#) button.

NOTE: The printer will initialize.

NOTE: Some of the pre-boot options in the following tables are not supported by the current version of the printer firmware and are included for information only. Future versions of firmware will support these options.

Table 5-2 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Continue				<p>Selecting the Continue item exits the Pre-boot menu and continues the normal boot process.</p> <p>If a selection is not made in the initial menu within 30 seconds, the printer returns to a normal boot (the same as selecting Continue).</p> <p>If the user navigates to another menu, the timeout does not apply.</p>
Sign In				Enter the administrator PIN or service PIN if one is required to open the Pre-boot menu.

Table 5-2 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator				<p>This item navigates to the Administrator submenus.</p> <p>If authentication is required (and the user is not already signed in) the Sign In prompt displays. The user is required to sign in.</p>
	Download	Network USB USB Thumbdrive		<p>This item initiates a Pre-boot firmware download process. A USB Thumbdrive option will work on all FutureSmart printers. USB or Network connections are not currently supported.</p>
	Format Disk			<p>This item reinitializes the disk and cleans all disk partitions.</p> <p>CAUTION: Selecting the Format Disk item removes all data.</p> <p>A delete confirmation prompt is not provided.</p> <p>The system is not bootable after this action and a 99.09.67 error displays on the control panel. A firmware download must be performed to return the system to a bootable state.</p>
	Partial Clean			<p>This item reinitializes the disk (removing all data except the firmware repository where the master firmware bundle is downloaded and saved).</p> <p>CAUTION: Selecting the Partial Clean item removes all data except the firmware repository. A delete confirmation prompt is not provided.</p> <p>CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).</p> <p>This allows a user to reformat the disk by removing the firmware image from the active directory without having to download new firmware code (printer remains bootable).</p>
	Change Password			<p>Select this item to set or change the administrator password.</p>
	Clear Password			<p>Select the Clear Password item to remove a password from the Administrator menu. Before the password is actually cleared, a message will be shown asking to confirm that the password should be cleared. Press the OK button to confirm the action.</p> <p>When the confirmation prompt displays, press the OK button to clear the password.</p>

Table 5-3 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Manage Disk	Clear disk		Select the Clear disk item to enable using an external device for job storage. Job storage is normally enabled only for the Boot device. This will be grayed out unless the 99.09.68 error is displayed.
		Lock Disk		Select the Lock Disk item to lock (mate) a new secure disk to this printer. The secure disk already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer. Use this function to have more than one encrypted disk accessible by the printer when using them interchangeably. The data stored on the secure disk locked to this printer always remains accessible to this printer.
		Leave Unlocked		Select the Leave Unlocked item to use a new secure disk in an unlocked mode for a single service event. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer and uses the old disk's encryption password with the new disk. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer remains accessible to this printer.
		Clear Disk Pwd		Select the Clear Disk Pwd item to continue using the non-secure disk and clear the password associated with the yet-to-be installed secure disk. CAUTION: Data on the missing secure disk will be permanently inaccessible.
		Retain Password		Select the Retain Password item to use the non-secure disk for this session only, and then search for the missing secure disk in future sessions.
		Boot Device	Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command is a one-pass overwrite, which erases the entire disk including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all data on the disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. It erases the encryption key. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 5-4 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Manage Disk	Internal Device		Select the Internal Device item to erase the internal device or get a status about the internal device.
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow the user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The HP High Performance Secure Hard Disk is erased.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.
		External Device		Select the External Device item to erase the external device or get status about the external device.
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 5-5 Pre-boot menu options (4 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [DHCP]		The network can be configured to obtain the network settings from a DHCP server or as static. Use this item for automatic IP address acquisition from the DHCP server.

Table 5-5 Pre-boot menu options (4 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		IP Mode [STATIC]		Use this item to manually assign the network addresses.
			IP Address	Use this item to manually enter the IP addresses.
			Subnet Mask	Use this item to manually enter the subnet mask.
			Default Gateway	Use this item to manually enter the default gateway.
			Save	Select the Save item to save the manual settings.

Table 5-6 Pre-boot menu options (5 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Startup Options			Select the Startup Options item to specify options that can be set for the next time the printer is turned on and initializes to the Ready state.
		Show Revision		Not currently functional: Select the Show Revision item to allow the printer to initialize and show the firmware version when the printer reaches the Ready state. Once the printer power is turned on the next time, the Show Revision item is unchecked so that the firmware revision is not shown.
		Cold Reset		Select the Cold Reset item to clear the IP address and all customer settings. (This item also returns all settings to factory defaults.) NOTE: Items in the Service menu are not reset.
		Skip Disk Load		Select the Skip Disk Load item to disable installed third-party applications.
		Skip Cal		Select the Skip Cal item to skip the printer calibration for the very next power-initialization cycle only.
		Lock Service		CAUTION: Select the Lock Service item to lock the Service menu access (both in the Pre-boot menu and the Device Maintenance menu). Service personnel must have the administrator remove the Lock Service setting before they can open the Service menu.
		Skip FSCK		Select the Skip FSCK item to disable Chkdisk/ScanVolume during startup.

Table 5-6 Pre-boot menu options (5 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		First Power		<p>Not currently functional: This item allows the printer to initialize as if it is the first time it has been turned on.</p> <p>For example, the user is prompted to configure first-time settings like date/time, language, and other settings.</p> <p>Select this item so that it is enabled for the next time the printer power is turned on.</p> <p>When the printer power is turned on the next time, this item is unchecked so that the pre-configured settings are used during configuration, and the first-time setting prompt is not used.</p>
		Embedded Jetdirect Off		<p>Select the Embedded Jetdirect Off item to disable the embedded HP Jetdirect.</p> <p>By default this item is unchecked so that HP Jetdirect is always enabled.</p>
		WiFi Accessory		<p>Select the WiFi Accessory item to enable the wireless accessory.</p>

Table 5-7 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Diagnostics			<p>Diagnostic items are useful to diagnose hardware components and their interface connections. Use these items to troubleshoot specific hardware components, and the interface between them and other components.</p>
		Memory	Do Not Run	<p>Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Memory diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.</p>
			Short	<p>Use the Short item to select a brief memory test.</p> <p>NOTE: This test requires about four minutes to execute.</p>
			Long	<p>Use the Long item to select an extended memory test.</p> <p>NOTE: This test requires about twenty minutes to execute.</p>

Table 5-7 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Disk	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Disk diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief firmware self-test. NOTE: This test requires about two or three minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended firmware self-test. NOTE: This test requires about sixty minutes to execute.
			Optimized	Use the Optimized item to select a test that checks the active sectors on the disk. NOTE: This test requires about thirty minutes to execute.
			Raw	Use the Raw item to select a test that checks every sector on the disk. NOTE: This test requires about fifty minutes to execute.
			Smart	Use the Smart item to select a very brief test that checks the drive self-monitoring analysis and reporting technology (SMART) status—the drive detects and reports reliability indicators to help anticipate disk failures (SMART status).
		CPB		Use the CPB item to verify the integrity of the copy processor board (CPB) and the formatter PCA connections.

Table 5-7 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Interconnect		Use the Interconnect item to verify the integrity of the interconnect PCA (ICB) and its connections.
		Run Selected		Select the Run Selected item to execute a selected test. NOTE: If more than one test is selected, they are executed in sequence.

Table 5-8 Pre-boot menu options (7 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Remote Admin	Start Telnet		The Remote Admin item allows a service technician to access to the printer Pre-boot menu remotely, and to navigate the menu selections from a remote location. IMPORTANT: A Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. This person will also need to provide a randomly generated PIN to the remote service technician. NOTE: For more information about using the Remote Admin function, see Remote Admin on page 354 .
		Stop Telnet		
		Refresh IP		
	System Triage	Copy Logs		If the device will not boot to the Ready state, or the diagnostic log feature found in the Troubleshooting menu is not accessible, then use the System Triage item to copy the diagnostic logs to a USB flash drive at the next printer start up. The files can then be sent to HP to help diagnose the problem.
	Change Svc PWD			Use this item to change the Service menu personal identification number (PIN).
	Reset Svc PWD			If the Service menu personal identification number (PIN) has been changed. Use this item to reset it to the original PIN.
Service Tools	Reset Password			Use this item to reset the Pre-boot administrator password.
	Subsystems			For manufacturing use only. Do not change these values.
Developer Tools	Netexec			

Remote Admin

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer Pre-boot menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the Pre-boot menu.

IMPORTANT: While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the Pre-boot menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

This section describes the following Remote Admin items.

Required software and network connection

Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed, and enabled, on the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows® operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows based system, however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

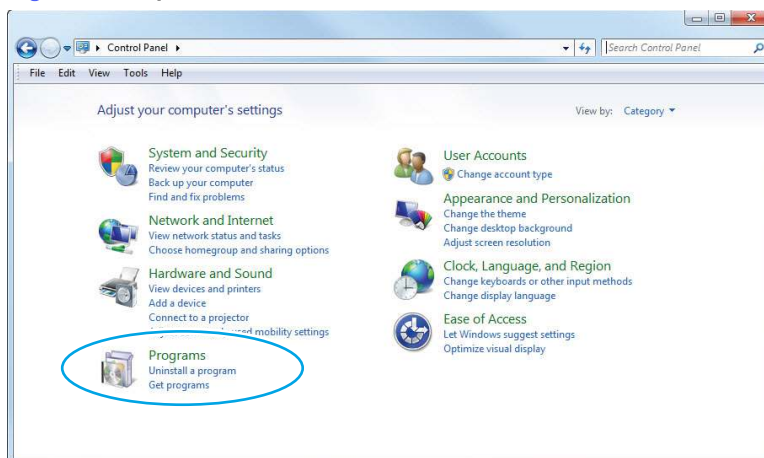
Telnet client

All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.

NOTE: The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 7 Enterprise® operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

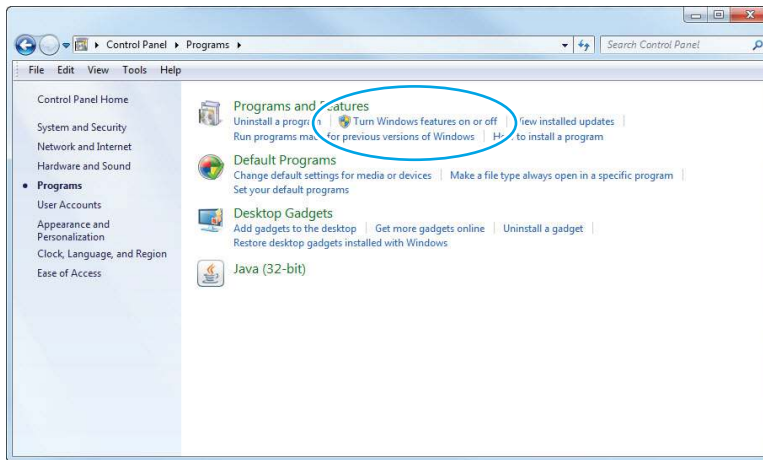
1. Use the **Start** menu to open the **Control Panel**, and then click the **Programs** item to select it.

Figure 5-4 Open the Control Panel



2. Click the **Turn Windows features on or off** item to select it.

Figure 5-5 Turn Windows features on or off



3. In the **Windows Features** box, scroll down to **Telnet Client**. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the **OK** button.


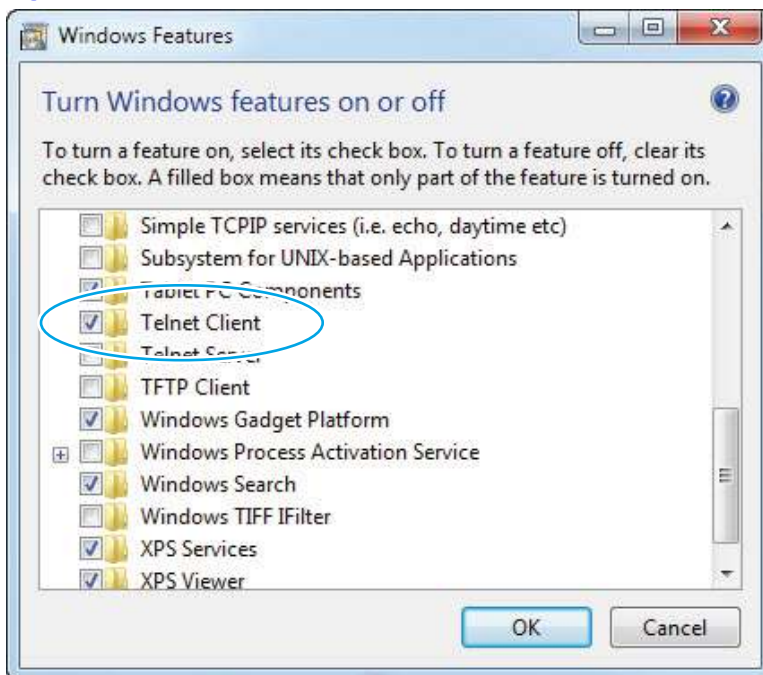
 **TIP:** If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the **Cancel** button.

Figure 5-6 Enable the telnet client feature



Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer. The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.


If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

Connect a remote connection

Learn how to connect a remote connection using telnet.

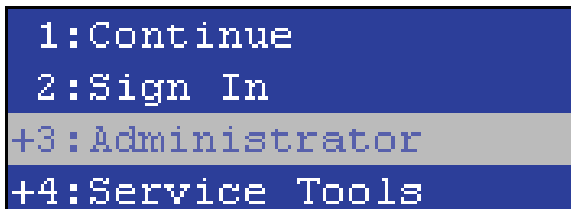
Start the telnet server function at the printer

For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

 **NOTE:** This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

1. Turn the printer on.
2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a "1/8" with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the [Pre-boot](#) menu.
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+3:Administrator** item, and then touch the [OK](#) button to select it.

Figure 5-7 Select the **+3:Administrator** item



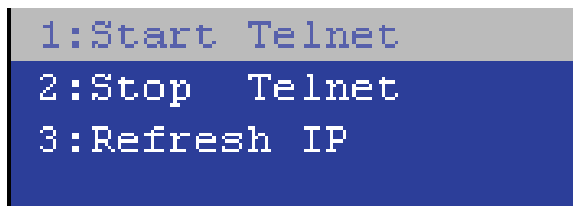
4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then touch the [OK](#) button to select it.

Figure 5-8 Select the **+A:Remote Admin** item



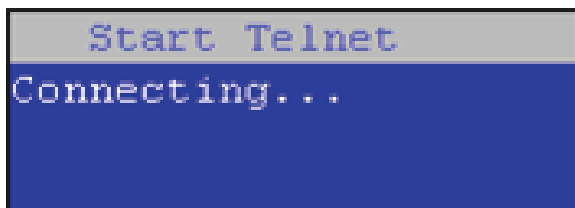
5. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **1:Start Telnet** item, and then touch the [OK](#) button to select it.

Figure 5-9 Select the **1:Start Telnet** item



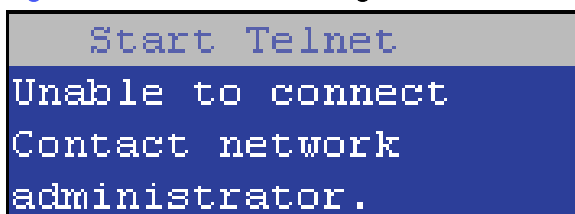
6. Do one of the following
 - If a connecting message displays briefly, go to step vii..

Figure 5-10 Telnet connecting message



- If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 5-11 Telnet error message



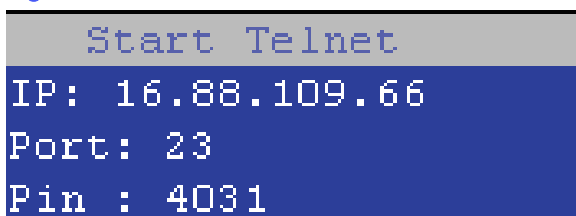
- a. The printer network cable is not correctly connected.
 - b. The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.
 - The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.
 - The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.
 - c. The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.
7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.



NOTE: The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- **IP:** The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port:** The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin:** A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 5-12 Telnet server function initialized

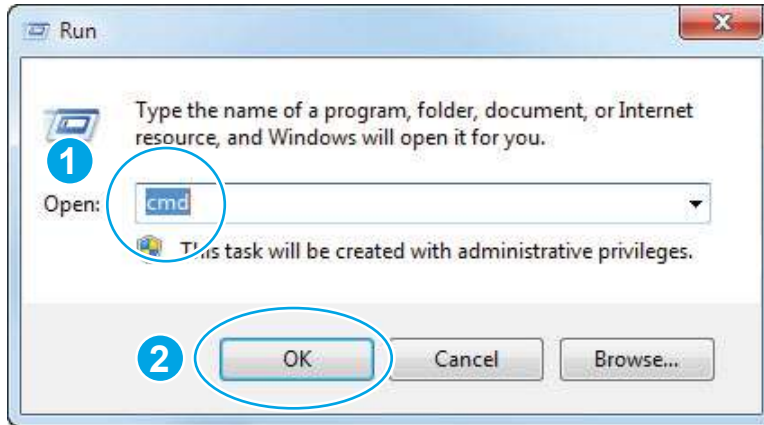


Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

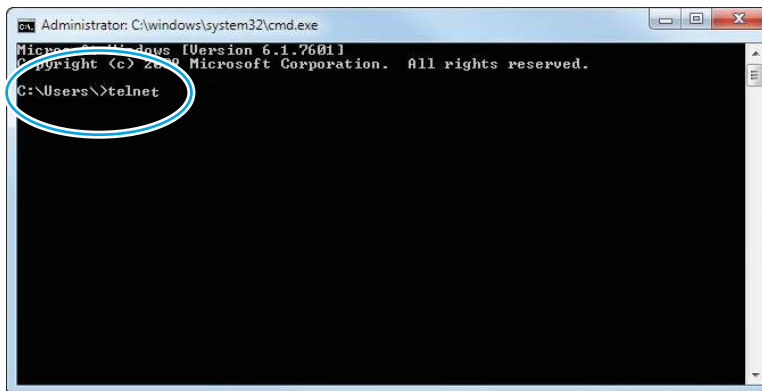
1. From the **Start** menu click **Run** to open a dialog box, type `cmd` in the **Open** field, and then click the **OK** button to open a Windows command window.

Figure 5-13 Open a command window




2. From any displayed directory, type `telnet` at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-14 Start a telnet session



3. Type `<IP ADDRESS>` at the telnet prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

 **NOTE:** For `<IP ADDRESS>`, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step vii. in [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 356](#).


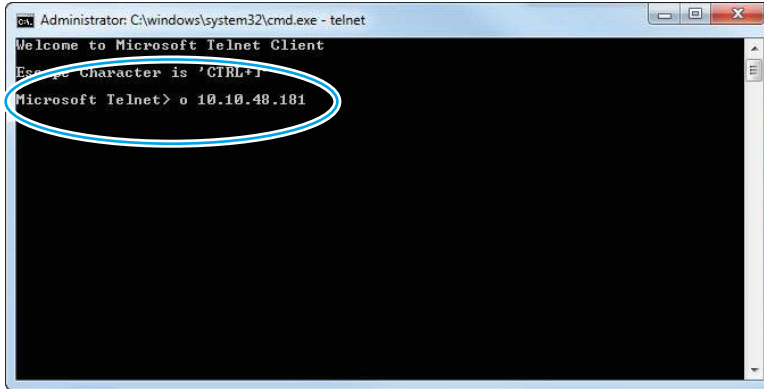
 **TIP:** If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network than the remote telnet client computer. See [Network connection on page 356](#).

Figure 5-15 Establish a telnet connection



4. Type the PIN that was displayed in step vii. in [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 356](#) at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.


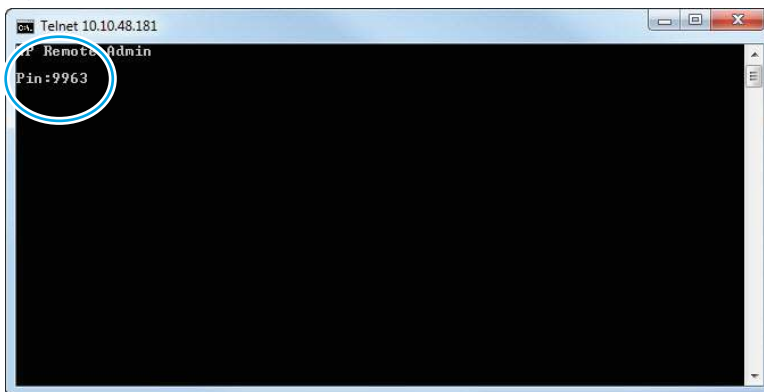

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 356](#).

Figure 5-16 Enter the PIN

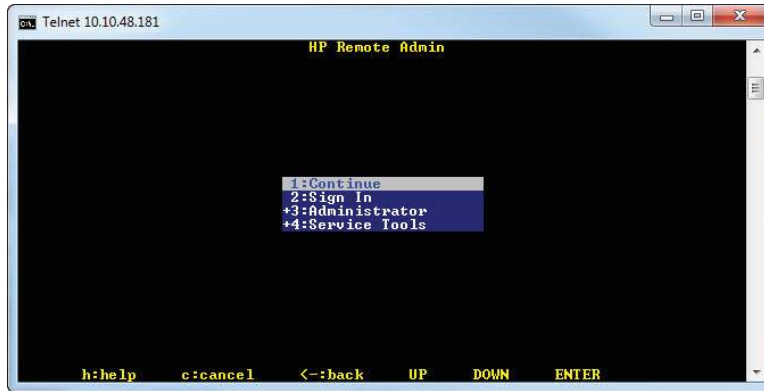


5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see [Pre-boot menu options on page 379](#).

 **NOTE:** Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecure telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.

- The **+3:Administrator** menu **4:Change Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **5:Clear Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **6:Disk Manage** item.


Figure 5-17 Remote Admin window



Disconnect a remote connection

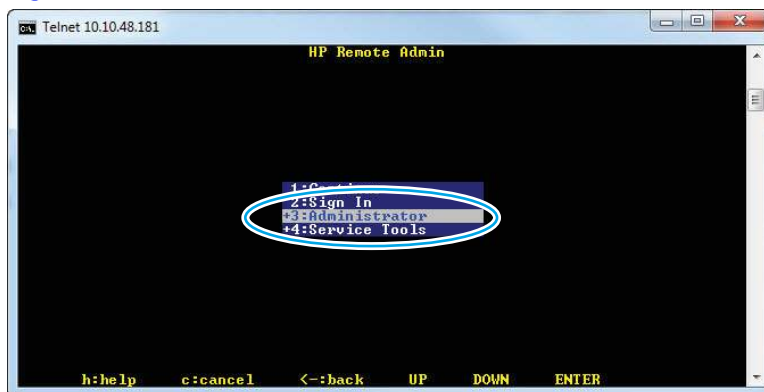
Learn how to disconnect a remote connection.

The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.

 **NOTE:** The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

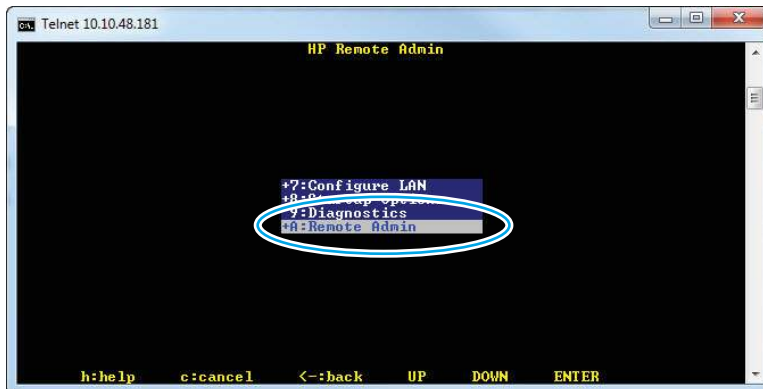
1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+3:Administrator** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-18 Access the administrator menu



- Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-19 Access the remote admin menu

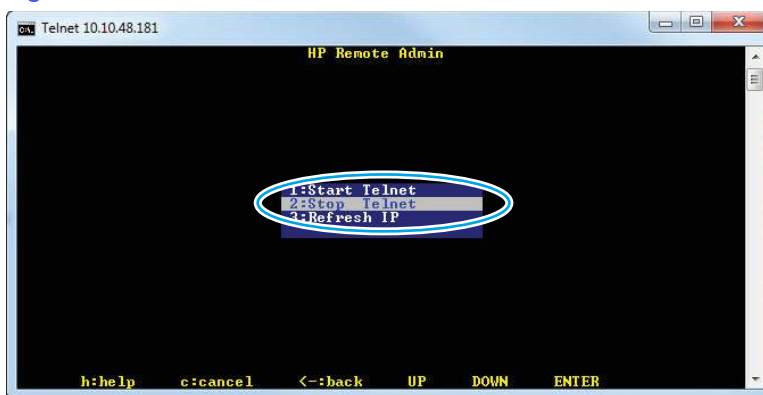


- Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

IMPORTANT: The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

- Touch the **Home** button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the **OK** button. The printer will continue to initialize.

Figure 5-20 Terminate the telnet connection



Reports menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select **Reports**.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-9 Reports menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	Settings Menu Map	Print View	Shows a map of the entire Settings menu and the selected values for each setting.

Table 5-9 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
	Current Settings Page	Print View	Shows the current printer settings.
	Configuration Page	Print View	Shows the printer settings and installed accessories.
	How to Connect Page	Print View	Shows the IP address, the host name, and the hardware (MAC) address for the printer if it is connected to a network.
	Supplies Status Page	Print View	Shows the approximate remaining life for the supplies; reports statistics on total number of pages and jobs processed, serial number, page counts, and maintenance information. HP provides approximations of the remaining life for the supplies as a customer convenience. The actual remaining supply levels might be different from the approximations provided.
	Usage Page	Print View	Shows a count of all paper sizes that have passed through the printer; lists whether they were simplex, duplex, monochrome, or color; and reports the page count.
	File Directory Page	Print View	Shows the file name and folder name for files that are stored in the printer memory.
	Web Services Status Page	Print View	Shows the detected Web Services for the printer.
	HP Flex Build Configuration Page	Print View	Shows installed Flex Build components and replacement history. NOTE: 877/826/786/731 printers only.
	Event Log	Print View	Displays or prints event logs listing event code, date/time, cycles and repetitions on the printer.
	Paper Path Page	Print View	Shows paper path usage on the printer.
Fax Reports (MFP fax models only)	Fax Activity Log	Print View	Contains a list of the faxes that have been sent from or received by this printer.

Table 5-9 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
	Billing Codes Report	Print View	Provides a list of billing codes that have been used for outgoing faxes. This report shows how many sent faxes were billed to each code.
	Blocked Fax List	Print View	Provides a list of phone numbers that are blocked from sending faxes to this printer.
	Fax Call Report	Print View	Provides a detailed report of the last fax operation, either sent or received.
Other Pages	PCL Font List	Print	Prints the available PCL fonts.
	PS Font List	Print	Prints the available PS fonts.
	Secure Drum Data Erase	Print	Prints the secure drum data erase pattern to overwrite any residual image data that might be left on the drum from the previous print job.

Settings menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Settings](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-10 Settings menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
General	Date/Time Settings	Date/Time Format	Date Format		DD/MMM/YYYY MMM/DD/YYYY YYYY/MMM/DD	Use the Date/Time Settings menu to specify the date and time and to configure date/time settings.
			Time Format		12 hour (AM/PM) 24 hours	Select the format that the printer uses to show the date and time, for example 12-hour format or 24-hour format.
		Date/Time	Date		Select the time zone from a list.	Select the time zone, date, and time that the printer uses.
			Time		Select the date from a pop-up calendar.	

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Time Zone		Select the time from a pop-up keypad.	
	Energy Settings	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.		+ (Add) Edit Delete	Use to configure the printer to automatically wake up or go to sleep at specific times on specific days. Using this feature saves energy. NOTE: You must configure the date and time settings before you can use this feature.
			New event	Event Type		Select whether to add or edit a Wake event or a Sleep event, and then select the time and the days for the wake or sleep event.
				Time		Set the wake or sleep event time parameters.
				Event Days	Select days of the week from a list.	Set the wake or sleep event day parameters.
		Sleep Settings	Sleep After Inactivity Shut Down		Range: 1 to 110 minutes Default = 0 minutes	Set the number of minutes after which the printer enters Sleep or Auto Off mode. Touch the existing number to open the virtual keypad, and then increase or decrease the number of minutes.
	Display Settings	Display Brightness	Manual		The Manual setting uses a slider to manually control the display brightness.	Use to specify the intensity of the LCD control panel display.
		System Sound			On* Off	Use to specify whether you hear a sound when you touch the screen or press buttons on the control panel.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Language Settings	Language		Select from a list of languages that the printer supports.	Use to select a different language for control panel messages and specify the default keyboard layout. When you select a new language, the keyboard layout automatically changes to match the factory default for the selected language.
			Keyboard Layout Flow models only		Each language has a default keyboard layout. To change it, select from a list of layouts.	Select the default keyboard layout that matches the language you want to use.
		Information Screen			Show connection information* Hide connection information	Use this menu item to display or hide connection information on the Home screen.
		Display Date and Time			Yes* No	Select whether to display or hide the date and time on the control panel Home screen.
		Job Status Notifications			Fewer* More	Use this feature to control how many job status notifications appear while a job is proceeding <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the setting is Fewer, there will only be a notification to indicate the job has been added to the job queue (except Fa, which always indicates success or failure). If the setting is More, there will be status notifications while the job is proceeding including a completion notification.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Inactivity Timeout			Range: 10-300 seconds Default = 60 seconds	Specifies the amount of time that elapses between any activity on the control panel and when the printer resets to the default settings. When the timeout expires, the control panel display returns to the Home menu, and any user signed in to the printer is signed out.
		Clearable Warnings			On Job*	Use this feature to set the period that a clearable warning displays on the control panel. If the On setting is selected, clearable warnings appear until the Clearable Warnings button is pressed. If the Job setting is selected, clearable warnings stay on the display during the job that generated the warning and disappear from the display when the next job starts.
		Continuable Events			Auto-continue (10 seconds)* Touch OK to continue	Use this option to configure the printer behavior when the printer encounters certain errors. If the Auto-continue (10 seconds) option is selected, the job will continue after 10 seconds. If the Touch OK to continue option is selected, the job will stop and require the user to touch the OK button before continuing.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Enable Device USB				Enabled* Disabled	Use this feature to enable or disable the USB port, which allows connecting to a computer by using a USB device.
	Jam Recovery				Auto* Off On	<p>This printer provides a jam recovery feature that reprints jammed pages. Select one of the following options:</p> <p>Auto: The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.</p> <p>Off: The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal.</p> <p>NOTE: When using this option, if the printer runs out of paper and the job is being printed on both sides, some pages can be lost.</p> <p>On: The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed. This might cause a decrease in overall performance.</p>
	Auto Recovery				Enabled Disabled*	The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Enable AutoSend				Disabled Enabled*	Use the Enable AutoSend menu to enable or disable the AutoSend feature. The AutoSend feature enables your product to periodically send product configuration information including serial number, event logs, page usage counts, and supplies status information to HP web addresses (URLs), or email addresses. Information sent to HP is used to improve products and services, and to monitor the product if you have a relationship with HP that provides you services such as proactive cartridge replacement, pay-per-page contracts, support agreements, or usage tracking.
	Hold Off Print Job				Enabled* Disabled	Enable this feature if you want to prevent print jobs from starting while a user is initiating a copy job from the control panel. Held print jobs start printing after the copy job is finished, provided that no other copy job is in the print queue.
Copy/Print	Copy Settings	Image Preview				Display a preview of the image before printing it.
	Enable Print from USB Drive				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Manage Stored Jobs	Job Sort Order			Job Name* Date	This option allows you list the jobs either alphabetically or chronologically.
		Retain Temporary Jobs After Reboot			Do not retain* Personal jobs only All temporary jobs	Sets which temporary jobs will be retained in the event of a printer reboot.
		Temporary Job Storage Limit			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Job Storage Limit feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
		Temporary Stored Job Retention			Off* 30 minutes 1 hour 4 hours 1 day 3 days 1 week 4 weeks	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
		Standard Stored Job Retention			Off* 30 minutes 1 hour 4 hours 1 day 3 days 1 week 4 weeks	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of standard jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Default Print Options	Number of Copies		Range: 1-32000 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen.	
		Paper Selection		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Configures the default paper size used for print jobs.	
		Default Custom Paper Size	X Dimension	Range: 3-8.5 inches Default = 8.5 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects Custom as the paper size for a print job.	
			Y Dimension	Range: 5-14 inches Default = 14 inches		
			Use Inches	Enabled* Disabled		
		Output Sides			1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides, and whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides. For example, select the 1-sided original , 2-sided output option when the original is printed on one side, but you want to make two-sided copies.
		Fit to Page (PDF)			On Off*	Use this feature to reduce or enlarge the image/content of each page to fit the currently selected paper size.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Fit to Page (TIFF, BMP, JPG, PNG)			On Off*	Use this feature to reduce or enlarge the image/content of each page to fit the currently selected paper size.
		Quality and Speed			Quick View Normal* Fine Lines	
	Envelope Rotate				Off* 90 Degrees 180 degrees	<p>Use this feature to enable rotation when printing on envelopes.</p> <p>Envelopes are usually loaded into the printer as short-edge feed. However, if the Envelope Rotate function is enabled, you can load envelopes as long-edge feed. The printer rotates the image to be printed so that it appears correctly on the envelopes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off (default): Load envelopes in short-edge feed direction. • 90 degrees: Load envelopes in long-edge feed direction. • 180 degrees: Load envelopes in short-edge feed direction with the flap on the bottom side.
	PCL and PostScript Settings	Suppress Blank Pages			Off* On	When set to On, any blank pages will not be printed.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Courier Font			Regular* Dark	Select which version of the Courier font you want to use. The factory default setting is Regular, which uses an average stroke width. The Dark setting can be used if a heavier Courier font is needed.
		Print PS Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Use this feature to select whether a PostScript (PS) error page is printed when the printer encounters a PS error.
		Print PDF Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Selects whether a PDF error page is printed when the printer encounters a PDF error.
		Personality			Auto* PCL PS PDF	Configures the default print language or personality for the printer. Normally you should not change the printer language. If you change the setting to a specific printer language, the printer does not automatically switch from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to it.
		PCL	Font Settings	Font Source	Internal Disk resident	Selects the font source for the user-soft default font. The list of available options varies depending on the installed printer options.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Font Number	Range: 0-110 Default = 0	Specifies the font number for the user-soft default font using the source that is specified in the Font Source menu. The printer assigns a number to each font and lists it on the PCL font list. The font number displays in the Font # column of the printout.
				Font Pitch	Range: 0.44-99.99 Default = 10	If the Font Source option and the Font Number setting indicate a contour font, then use this feature to select a default pitch (for a fixed-spaced font).
			PCL Settings	Form Length	Range: 5-128 Default = 60	Controls the PCL print-command options. PCL is a set of printer commands that HP developed to provide access to printer features. Use the Form Length feature to select the user-soft default vertical form length.
				Orientation	Portrait * Landscape	Select the orientation that is most often used for copy or scan originals. Select the Portrait option if the short edge is at the top or select the Landscape option if the long edge is at the top.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Symbol Set	Select from a list of symbol sets.	Select any one of several available symbol sets from the control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. The factory default value for this option is PC-8. Either PC-8 or PC-850 are recommended for line-draw characters.
				Append CR to LF	No* Yes	Configure whether a carriage return (CR) is appended to each line feed (LF) encountered in backwards-compatible PCL jobs (pure text, no job control). Select Yes to append the carriage return. The default setting is No. Some environments, such as UNIX, indicate a new line by using only the line-feed control code. This option allows the user to append the required carriage return to each line feed.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Media Source Mapping	Standard* Classic	Use to select and maintain input trays by number when you are not using the printer driver, or when the software program has no option for tray selection. The following options are available: Standard: Tray numbering is based on newer HP LaserJet models. Classic: Tray numbering is based on HP LaserJet 4 and older models.
	Print Quality	Adjust paper types			Select from a list of paper types Reset Paper Types	If print quality problems occur, use this menu to adjust the Print Mode for the paper type in use. If a user-defined type (enabled in the Embedded Web Server) has preprinted content that makes the sides of the paper different, set the paper type as Marked Paper .
		REt			On* Off	Use this feature to enable Resolution Enhancement technology (REt), which produces print output with smooth angles, curves, and edges.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Manage Trays	Use Requested Tray			Exclusively* First	<p>Controls how the printer handles jobs that have specified a specific input tray. Two options are available:</p> <p>Exclusively: The printer never selects a different tray when the user has indicated that a specific tray should be used, even if that tray is empty.</p> <p>First: The printer pulls from another tray if the specified tray is empty, even though the user specifically indicated a tray for the job.</p>
		Manually Feed Prompt			Always* Unless loaded	<p>Indicate whether a prompt should appear when the type or size for a job does not match the specified tray and the printer pulls from the multipurpose tray instead. Two options are available:</p> <p>Always: A prompt always displays before using the multipurpose tray.</p> <p>Unless loaded: A message displays only if the multipurpose tray is empty.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Size/Type Prompt			<p>Display*</p> <p>Do not display</p>	<p>Controls whether the tray configuration message displays whenever a tray is closed. Two options are available:</p> <p>Display: Shows the tray configuration message when a tray is closed. The user is able to configure the tray settings directly from this message.</p> <p>Do not display: Prevents the tray configuration message from automatically appearing.</p>
		Use Another Tray			<p>Allow*</p> <p>Do not allow</p>	<p>Use to turn on or off the control panel prompt to select another tray when the specified tray is empty. Two options are available:</p> <p>Enabled: When this option is selected, the user is prompted either to add paper to the selected tray or to choose a different tray.</p> <p>Disabled: When this option is selected, the user is not given the option of selecting a different tray. The printer prompts the user to add paper to the tray that was initially selected.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Alternative Letterhead Mode			Off* On	Use to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing to one side of the sheet or to both sides of the sheet. When this option is selected, load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. See the user documentation that came with the printer for instructions about loading letterhead for printing on both sides. When this option is selected, the printer speed slows to the speed required for printing on both sides.
		Duplex Blank Pages			Automatic* Always	Controls how the printer handles two-sided jobs (duplexing). Two options are available: Auto: Enables Smart Duplexing, which instructs the printer not to process blank pages. Yes: Disables Smart Duplexing and forces the duplexer to flip the sheet of paper even if it is printed on only one side. This might be preferable for certain jobs that use paper types such as letterhead or prepunched paper.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Image Rotation			Left to right* Right to left Alternate	<p>The Image Rotation setting allows alternatives affecting how preprinted paper is loaded into the tray</p> <p>NOTE: For stapled print or copy jobs, make sure the Staple/ Collate setting matches the Image Rotation setting as to which side of paper (left or right) you want stapled. If these settings do not match each other, you will need to change the loading orientation of the paper so that the job is stapled in the correct spot.</p>
		Override A4/Letter			Yes* No	<p>Prints on letter-size paper when an A4 job is sent but no A4-size paper is loaded in the printer (or to print on A4 paper when a letter-size job is sent but no letter-size paper is loaded). This option will also override A3 with ledger-size paper and ledger with A3-size paper.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Unsupported Size Behavior			Use default size automatically* Prompt for user response	<p>Use this feature to print documents that are on a paper size that the product does not support</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Use default size automatically to use the paper size selected in Default Print Options. • Select Prompt for user response to be asked to use the size selected in Default Print Options or to cancel the job.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		<p>Rotate Offset</p> <p>NOTE: When set to <i>Automatic</i>, rotation does not occur if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The tray is specified in the job and the User Selected Tray setting is set to Exclusively. The specified bin in the job does not support both orientations. The job is uncollated. The job is collated, but only has one sheet per copy. The job has mixed paper size or type. The user selects a different paper after the job has started. A job setting works only with a specific orientation. The Job Offset setting is available and set to On. 			<p>Automatic</p> <p>Off*</p>	<p>Use this feature to separate each copy by rotating its position in the output bin. Two options are available:</p> <p>Off: Jobs are printed normally with separating each copy.</p> <p>Automatic: Copies are rotated automatically.</p>
		Tray Priority			<p>Tray 4</p> <p>Tray 3</p> <p>Tray 2</p> <p>Tray 1</p>	<p>You can set the tray priority. If first setting is Tray 1, the printer automatically prints from Tray 1 after the current tray runs out of paper.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Tray Protection			<p>NOTE: You can select all but one of the trays. At least one tray must be unselected at all times</p> <p>Tray 4</p> <p>Tray 3</p> <p>Tray 2</p> <p>Tray 1</p>	When this option is chosen, the selected tray will be protected. This prevents paper from being fed if Use Another Tray is enabled. If you select Tray 1, for example, then Tray 1 is excluded when using another tray.
		Paper Out Action			<p>Auto Continue Time-Out</p> <p>Auto Continue Action</p>	Specify the action the printer will take when the paper configured for the print job does not match the paper loaded in the input tray
Scan/Digital Send	Scan+ Settings			Image Preview	<p>Make optional*</p> <p>Require preview</p> <p>Disable preview</p>	Use this menu to configure settings that affect scan apps.
	E-mail Settings	<p>E-mail Setup</p> <p>NOTE: Email Settings only</p>				<p>Use to configure settings that apply to sending documents through email or saving documents to a folder on the network or on a USB multi-drive.</p> <p>The E-mail Setup Wizard feature configures the printer to send scanned images as email attachments. To open the printer HP Embedded Web Server and set up the email notification server, enter the printer IP address into a Web browser.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	<p>Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser.</p> <p>Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer.</p> <p>Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in.</p> <p>Require preview Previews are required for all users.</p> <p>Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Network Folder Settings	Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	<p>Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser.</p> <p>Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer.</p> <p>Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in.</p> <p>Require preview Previews are required for all users.</p> <p>Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	SharePoint Settings	Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	<p>Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser.</p> <p>Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer.</p> <p>Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in.</p> <p>Require preview Previews are required for all users.</p> <p>Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Scan to USB Drive Settings	Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	<p>Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser.</p> <p>Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer.</p> <p>Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in.</p> <p>Require preview Previews are required for all users.</p> <p>Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Digital Sending Software Setup	Allow Use of a DSS Server Allow Transfer to New DSS server			Disabled Enabled*	Configure how the printer interacts with the HP Digital Sending Software (DSS) server. HP DSS handles digital sending tasks, such as faxing, emailing, and sending scanned documents to a network folder or USB storage device. Use the Allow Use of a DSS Server and Allow Transfer to New DSS server options to configure the printer to use HP DSS.
Fax	Internal Fax Modem Setup	Line 1 Line 2				
	Fax Send Settings	Image Preview				
		Fax Dialing Settings	Line Monitor Volume		Off Low* High	These settings control how the fax modem dials the outgoing fax number when faxes are sent.
			Dialing Mode		Tone* Pulse	
			Redial Interval		1-5 Minutes Default = 5 minutes	
			Fax Send Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
			Dialing Prefix			
			Detect Dial Tone			
			Redial on Error		Range: 0-9 Default = 2	

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Redial on No Answer		Range: 0-2 Default = 0	
			Redial on Busy		Range: 0-9 Default = 3	
		General Fax Send Settings	Fax Number Confirmation		Enabled Disabled*	If this feature is enabled, you must enter the fax number twice.
			Fax Line Selection		Automatic* Line 1 Line 2	
			PC Fax Send		Enabled* Disabled	Enables users who have the correct driver installed to send faxes through the printer from their computers.
			Error Correction Mode	Line 1* Line 2	Enabled* Disabled	When error-correction mode is enabled and an error occurs during fax transmission, the printer sends or receives the error portion again.
			Fax Header		Prepend* Overlay	Use to prepend or overlay the fax header page.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Billing Code Settings	Enable Billing Codes		Off* On	<p>When billing codes are enabled, a prompt displays that asks the user to enter the billing code for an outgoing fax. This prompt does not appear if the Allow users to edit billing codes check box is not checked.</p> <p>You can also use the billing codes report in the Reports menu to view the list of the billing codes that have been used for faxes that have been sent from the printer. The list is grouped by billing code and also shows fax details. This feature can be used for billing or usage tracking.</p>
			Default Billing Code			Specify a default billing code for faxing. If you specify a default billing code, this code displays in the Billing Code field when the user sends an outgoing fax. If this field is blank, no default billing code is provided for the user.
			Minimum Length		Range: 1-16 Default = 1	Specify the required length of the billing code. Billing codes can be between 1 and 16 characters long.
			Allow users to edit billing codes		Off On*	
	Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Ring Volume		Off Low* High	Use to configure settings for receiving faxes.
			Rings To Answer		Range: 1-6 Default = 1	

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Fax Receive Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
		Fax Printing Schedule			Always store faxes Always print faxes* Use Fax Printing Schedule	If you have concerns about the security of private faxes, use this feature to store faxes rather than having them automatically print. Open the Fax Printing Schedule sub-menu, and then you can choose to always store faxes, always print them, or you can set up a schedule for each day of the week.
			Schedule Touch this to set up a fax printing schedule if you selected the Use Fax Printing Schedule option.	+ (Add) Edit Delete (trash can)	Print incoming faxes Store incoming faxes Time Event Days	If you are using a fax printing schedule, use this menu to configure when to print faxes.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Blocked Fax Numbers	Fax Number to Block			<p>The blocked fax list can contain up to 30 numbers. When the printer receives a call from one of the blocked fax numbers, it deletes the incoming fax. It also logs the blocked fax in the activity log along with job-accounting information.</p> <p>Add blocked numbers: Enter a fax number into the Fax Number to Block field, and then touch the arrow button to add a new number to the blocked fax list.</p> <p>To remove blocked numbers: Select a number and touch the Delete button to delete it from the blocked fax list.</p> <p>To clear all blocked numbers: Touch the Delete All button to clear all of the numbers from the blocked fax list.</p> <p>You also can use the Blocked Fax List report in the Information menu to view the list of the fax numbers that have been blocked on this printer.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Default Job Options	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
					Print E-mail*	E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.
				Include Thumbnail		NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
				Notification E-mail address		Touch this text field, provide the email address to which you want notifications sent, and then touch the OK button.
			Stamp Received Faxes		On Off*	Use this option to add the date, time, sender's phone number, and page number to each page of the faxes that this printer receives.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Fit to Page		On* Off	Use to shrink faxes that are larger than Letter-size or A4-size so that they can fit onto a Letter-size or A4-size page. If this feature set to Disabled, faxes larger than Letter or A4 will flow across multiple pages.
			Paper Tray		Automatic* Select from a list of the trays.	
			Out Sides		1-sided* 2-sided Page flip up	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides.
	Fax Forwarding	Enable Fax Forwarding			Disabled* Enabled	Use to forward received faxes to another fax machine.
			Type of Fax Job to Forward		All faxes Sent faxes Received faxes*	Use to select the type of fax jobs that you want forwarded.
			Fax Forwarding Method		IP Fax Internal Modem*	
			Fax Forwarding Number			Provide the forwarding phone number, and then touch the OK button.
	Clear Fax Activity Log					Clears all events from the fax activity log.
Manage Supplies	Low Warning Thresholds			Black Cartridge • ##% Document feeder kit • ##%		Set the estimated percentage at which the printer notifies you when a toner cartridge is very low.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Low Warning Threshold Message				On Off	Displays a message on the control panel when a cartridge is very low.
	Very Low Behavior	Black Cartridge Document Feeder Kit			Stop Continue Prompt to continue	
		Staples			Stop Prompt to continue	
	Delay Very Low Message			Stop Continue	Black Cartridge 0 pages*	After a supply reaches the very low state, the warning message can be delayed by a specified page count.
	Store Usage Data				On supplies Not on supplies	The Store Usage Data provides a way to suppress the toner cartridges from storing most of the information gathered exclusively for the purpose of understanding the usage of the printer. Select the On supplies setting to store the data on the toner cartridge memory chip. Select the Not on supplies setting to suppress the information from being stored on the memory chip.
	Supply Protection				Off* Protect Supplies	Select to permanently protect cartridges so that they can be used only in this product or fleet of products.
	Cartridge Policy				Off* Authorized HP	Set Authorized HP to allow only genuine HP cartridges to be used in this product.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Reset Supplies				Document Feeder Kit	After replacing a supply kit, select it from the list and touch "Reset."
Manage Stapler/Stacker	Job Offset				On Off	
Developer Options						Use this menu to configure developer settings for the product.
Networking	Ethernet	INFORMATION	PRINT SECURITY REPORT		YES NO*	Yes: Prints a page that contains the current security settings on the HP Jetdirect print server. No: A security settings page is not printed.
		TCP/IP	HOST NAME		Use the arrow buttons to edit the host name. NP1XXXXXX*	An alphanumeric string, up to 32 characters, used to identify the printer. This name is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page. The default host name is NP1xxxxxx, where xxxxxx is the last six digits of the LAN hardware (MAC) address.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			IPV4 SETTINGS	CONFIG METHOD	BOOTP DHCP* AUTO IP MANUAL	<p>Specifies the method that TCP/IPv4 parameters will be configured on the HP Jetdirect print server.</p> <p>Bootp (Bootstrap Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a BootP server.</p> <p>DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a DHCPv4 server. If selected and a DHCP lease exists, the DHCP Release menu and the DHCP Renew menu are available to set DHCP lease options.</p> <p>Auto IP: Use for automatic link-local IPv4 addressing. An address in the form 169.254.x.x is assigned automatically.</p> <p>If you set this option to the Manual setting, use the Manual Settings menu to configure TCP/IPv4 parameters.</p>
				DHCP RELEASE	YES NO*	
				DHCP RENEW	YES NO*	
				PRIMARY DNS	RANGE: 0-255 DEFAULT = xxx.xxx.xxx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				S DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = 0.0.0.0	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			IPV6 SETTINGS	ENABLE	OFF ON*	Use this item to enable or disable IPv6 operation on the print server. Off: IPv6 is disabled. On: IPv6 is enabled.
				ADDRESS	MANUAL SETTINGS ENABLE ADDRESS	Use this item to enable and manually configure a TCP/IPv6 address.
				DHCPV6 POLICY	ROUTER SPECIFIED ROUTER UNAVAILABLE* ALWAYS	Router Specified: The stateful auto-configuration method to be used by the print server is determined by a router. The router specifies whether the print server obtains its address, its configuration information, or both from a DHCPv6 server. Router Unavailable: If a router is not available, the print server should attempt to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server. Always: Whether a router is available, the print server always attempts to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server.
				PRIMARY DNS	RANGE: 0-255 DEFAULT = xxx.xxx.xx.xx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				SECONDARY DNS	RANGE: 0-255 DEFAULT = 0.0.0.0	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			PROXY SERVER			<p>Specifies the proxy server to be used by embedded applications in the printer. A proxy server is typically used by network clients for Internet access. It caches Web pages, and provides a degree of Internet security for those clients.</p> <p>To specify a proxy server, enter its IPv4 address or fully-qualified domain name. The name can be up to 255 octets.</p> <p>For some networks, you might need to contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP) for the proxy server address.</p>
			PROXY PORT		DEFAULT = 0080	Enter the port number used by the proxy server for client support. The port number identifies the port reserved for proxy activity on your network, and can be a value from 0 to 65535.
			IDLE TIMEOUT		DEFAULT = 0270	The time period, in seconds, after which an idle TCP print data connection is closed (default is 270 seconds, 0 disables the timeout).
		SECURITY	SECURE WEB		HTTPS REQUIRED* HTTPS OPTIONAL	
			IPSEC		KEEP DISABLE*	
			FIREWALL		KEEP DISABLE*	

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			802.1X		RESET KEEP*	
			ANNOUNCE MENT AGENT		ENABLE* DISABLE	
			RESET SECURITY		YES NO*	
			FIPS		KEEP RESET & REBOOT DEVICE	
		LINK SPEED			AUTO* 10T HALF 10T FULL 10T AUTO 100TX HALF 100TX FULL 100TX AUTO 1000T FULL	
	I/O Timeout				15 seconds* Range: 5 to 300	

Copy menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Copy](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-11 Copy menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
Sides	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides.	
	Output Sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides.	
Quick Sets and Defaults			Load Save		

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
Options	Sides	Original Sides	1-sided 2-sided		
		Output Sides	1-sided 2-sided		
	Watermark		None* Text Secure	Use this feature to add a watermark to the document <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Text: Text is placed at the center of the page. • Secure: Background text and pattern that is barely visible on the first copy of a document. 	
	Stamps		Top Left Top Center Top Right Bottom Left Bottom Center Bottom Right	Select up to six preset positions for a stamp and configure the content that will be printed there. Some positions might require selecting the stamp from a list of predefined options.	

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Image Overlay		Add New Image None*	<p>Use this feature to add an image to each page of a copy job.</p> <p>After scanning and saving the desired image from the control panel, this image will be placed behind the content on each page of the copy job.</p> <p>NOTE: To use this feature, the images must be scanned from the scanner glass.</p> <p>Follow these steps to copy using an overlay image.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Touch Image Overlay, touch Add New Image, and then follow the on-screen instructions to scan the desired image from the scanner glass. <p>TIP: For best results, use the same paper size and the same orientation for the saved image and the copy job.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Select the saved image that you want to add to each page of the copy job. 3. Start the copy job, or select the Preview option to preview the output.

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
	Staple		None* Top left angled Two left Two to Top right angled Two right Top left or right	Sets the position of the staple on the page.	
	Hole Punch		None* Three left Two left Three top Two top Three right Two right Two bottom Four left Four right Four left or top		
		C-fold	Max sheets folded together Inward fold; opens left or up Inward fold; opens right or down Outward fold; opens left or up Outward fold; opens right or down	Controls the C-fold action of the booklet maker.	
	Scan mode		Standard Document Book Mode 2-sided ID	Book Mode allows the user to scan pages from a book. 2-sided ID allows the user to scan both sides of an identification card onto one sheet.	

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Reduce/Enlarge		<p>Automatic*</p> <p>Manual</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 25% • 50% • 63% (Letter to Statement) • 64% (11x17 to Letter) • 77% (11x17 to Legal) • 78% (Legal to Letter) • 85% (Letter to Exec) • 100% (Letter to Legal) • 105% (Exec to Letter) • 122% (Legal to 11x17) • 131% (Letter to 11x17) • 131% (Statement to Letter) • 150% • 200% • 400% • Custom1 • Custom2 	<p>Use to scale the size of the document up or down. Select one of the predefined percentages, or select the Scaling field and type a percentage between 25 and 400. The Auto option automatically scales the image to fit the paper size in the tray.</p> <p>NOTE: To reduce the image, select a scaling percentage that is less than 100. To enlarge the image, select a scaling percentage that is greater than 100.</p>
	Image Shift		<p>Off*</p> <p>Automatically center</p> <p>Manual</p>	<p>Use this feature to shift the content of the page. This is useful for moving the image away from punched holes, staples, folds, or binding edges.</p>
	Original Size		<p>Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.</p>	<p>Describes the page size of the original document.</p>

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
	Paper Selection		Paper Size Paper Type Paper Tray	For the best color and image quality, select the appropriate paper type from the control panel menu or from the print driver.	
	Booklet	Booklet Format	(Checkbox)	Use to copy two or more pages onto one sheet of paper so you can fold the sheets in the center to form a booklet. The printer arranges the pages in the correct order. For example, if the original document has eight pages, the printer prints pages 1 and 8 on the same sheet.	
	Content Orientation		Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.	
	Pages per Sheet		One (1) Two (2) Four (4)	Copies multiple pages onto one sheet of paper. NOTE: Before using this screen, use the Content Orientation screen to describe the original document orientation.	

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
	Image Adjustment	Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.	
		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.	
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.	
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.	
		Automatic Tone			
		Auto Paper Color Removal			

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
	Optimize Text/ Picture		Text Mixed* Printed picture Photograph	<p>Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content.</p> <p>Use Text for documents that contain mostly text. This option is also best suited for scanning documents with highlighter marks.</p> <p>Use Mixed for documents that contain a mix of text and graphics.</p> <p>Use Printed picture for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed picture to improve the quality.</p> <p>Use Photograph for photographic prints.</p>	
	Erase Edges			<p>Front Side</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge <p>Back Side</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge 	Use this feature to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Collate		Collate on (Sets in page order)* Collate off (Pages grouped)	If you are making more than one copy, select the Collate on (Sets in page order) option to assemble the pages in the correct order in each set of copies. Select the Collate off (Pages grouped) option to group the same pages together. For example, if you are making five copies of an original document that has two pages, all five first pages would be grouped together and all five second pages would be grouped together.
	Blank Page Suppression		Off* Suppress Blank Pages	When enabled, blank pages found in the original document are not included in the output document.
	Automatically Straighten		Off* Automatically Straighten on	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.
	Output Bin		Automatically select Output bin 1 Output bin 2 Alternate bin Lower booklet bin Standard bin Upper bin Middle bin	

Scan menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Scan](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-12 Scan menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Email	File Type and Resolution			<p>File Type</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PDF* • PDF/A • JPEG • TIFF • MTIFF • XPS <p>Resolution</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 600 dpi • 400 dpi • 200 dpi* • 150 dpi • 75 dpi <p>Quality and File Size</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Very Low (smaller file) • Low • Medium* • High • Very High (larger file) 	<p>Touch Options, and then touch File Type and Resolution to select the file format for the scanned image. Each file type has subsettings, some of which affect resolution and file size.</p> <p>NOTE: If restricted by your administrator, some file types will be unavailable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PDF (Portable Document Format) provides good image and text quality, and is a good choice for most documents. • JPEG is a good choice for most graphics. Most computers have a browser that can view .JPEG files. This file type produces one file per page. • TIFF/MTIFF TIFF (Tagged Image File Format) is a standard file format that many graphics programs support. This file type produces one file per page. MTIFF (Multi-page TIFF) saves multiple scanned pages in a single file. • XPS (XML Paper Specification) is a good choice for most types of printing. Viewing XPS documents requires a software program that is included with some operating systems.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Original Sides			Auto (keep sides with content) 1-sided* 2-sided Pages Flip Up	Use this feature to describe the layout for each side of the original document Use 1-sided for originals that are printed on one side of the page. Use 2-sided for originals that are printed on both sides of the page. Select Pages Flip Up for originals that flip on the top/bottom edge of the page, such as calendars.
	Color/Black			Automatically detect color or black* Automatically detect color or gray Color Black/Gray Black	Use this feature to enable or disable color scanning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Automatically detect color or black when trying to create smaller file sizes. When pages without color are detected, the product creates an image of the page in 1-bit black if other settings allow. If the other settings don't allow (File Type, for example), the image is in gray. • Select Automatically detect color or gray for the best image quality for non-color pages. • Select Color to scan all documents in color. • Select Black/Gray to scan documents in grayscale. • Select Black to scan documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
	Watermark			None* Text	Use this feature to add a watermark to the document Text: Text is placed at the center of the page.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Stamps			Top Left Top Center Top Right Bottom Left Bottom Center Bottom Right	<p>Select up to six preset positions for a stamp and configure the content that will be printed there. Some positions might require selecting the stamp from a list of predefined options.</p>
	Scan Mode			Standard Document Book 2-sided ID Prompt for Additional Pages	<p>Use this feature to provide information about the type of document to be scanned and to change the format of the output.</p> <p>Use Standard Document to scan regular documents using default scan settings.</p> <p>Use Prompt for Additional Pages to create a single job from multiple scans without having to do a preview.</p> <p>Use Book to scan the pages of an open book and to print the pages on separate sheets of paper.</p> <p>Use 2-sided ID to scan both sides of an ID and print them on one side of a sheet of paper.</p>
	Original Size			Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Describes the page size of the original document.
	Content Orientation			Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	<p>For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top.</p> <p>Use Automatically detect when the format of the original document is known to specifically work with the Automatically detect setting. Using Automatically detect is not recommended in other circumstances.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Image Adjustment			<p>Sharpness</p> <p>Darkness</p> <p>Contrast</p> <p>Background Cleanup</p>	<p>Use this feature to improve the overall quality of the scanned image.</p> <p>Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.</p> <p>Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p>
	Optimize Text/Picture			<p>Text</p> <p>Mixed*</p> <p>Printed Picture</p> <p>Photograph</p>	<p>Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content.</p> <p>Use Text for documents that contain mostly text. This option is also best suited for scanning documents with a highlighter.</p> <p>Use Mixed for documents that contain a mix of text and graphics.</p> <p>Use Printed Picture for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed Picture to improve the quality.</p> <p>Use Photograph for photographic prints.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Erase Edges			Front Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge Back Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge 	Use this feature to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
	Cropping Options			Do not crop* Crop to Paper Crop to Content	Use this menu item to specify a method to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to Paper option to crop the scan to the edge of the document being scanned. Use the Crop to Content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content. <p>NOTE: The Crop to Paper option is effective only when you scan pages by using the document feeder. It has an unpredictable effect for pages that you scan from the glass.</p>
	Automatically Straighten			Off* Automatically Straighten*	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.
	Blank Page Suppression			Off* Suppress Blank Pages	Use this feature to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Create Multiple Files			Off* Maximum Pages Per File	<p>Use this item to enable the product to separate scanned output into multiple files.</p> <p>Touch the Create Multiple Files checkbox. Enter the maximum number of pages for each output file in the Maximum Pages Per File field.</p> <p>When a file type that does not support multiple pages is selected, such as JPEG or TIFF, this feature is ignored. When scanning front and back sides, two pages are generated per original document.</p> <p>When scanning to email, the configuration option that specifies the maximum size of the email also interacts with this feature. In this case, the more restrictive of the two settings will take effect.</p>
	Notification			Do Not Notify* Notify When Job Completes Notify Only If Job Fails	<p>Use this feature to receive notification about the status of the sent document.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Do Not Notify to turn off this feature • Select Notify When Job Completes to receive notification for this job only. • Select Notify Only If Job Fails to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully
	Signing and Encryption			SigningSigning EncryptEncrypt	<p>A digitally signed email ensures the recipient that you sent this email. An encrypted message can be opened only by the recipient.</p>
Scan to Network Folder	File Name				
	Folder Paths				
	Quick Sets and Defaults				

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Options	File Type and Resolution		File Type Resolution Quality and File Size High Compression (smaller file) PDF Encryption	
		Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided Pages Flip Up	Use this feature to describe the layout for each side of the original document Use 1-sided for originals that are printed on one side of the page. Use 2-sided for originals that are printed on both sides of the page. Select Pages Flip Up for originals that flip on the top/bottom edge of the page, such as calendars.
		Stamps		Top Left Top Center Top Right Bottom Left Bottom Center Bottom Right	Select up to six preset positions for a stamp and configure the content that will be printed there. Some positions might require selecting the stamp from a list of predefined options.
		Scan Mode		Standard document* Book 2-sided ID <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prompt for additional pages 	Use this feature to provide information about the type of document to be scanned and to change the format of the output Use Standard document to scan regular documents using the default scan settings. Use Prompt for additional pages to create a single job from multiple scans without having to do a preview. Use Book to scan the pages of an open book and to print the pages on separate sheets of paper. Use 2-sided ID to scan both sides of an ID and print them on one side of a sheet of paper.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation	Orientation	Automatically Detect Portrait* Landscape	<p>For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.</p> <p>Use Automatically Detect when the format of the original document is known to specifically work with the Automatically Detect setting. Using Automatically Detect is not recommended in other circumstances.</p>
		Image Adjustment		Sharpness Darkness Contrast Background Cleanup Automatic Tone Auto Paper Color Removal	<p>Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the darkness and sharpness, and you can use the Background Cleanup setting to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.</p> <p>Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.</p> <p>Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness , Contrast , and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
			Auto Paper Color Removal (Flow models only)		
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Optimize Text/Picture	Automatically detect (Flow models only) Text Mixed* Printed picture Photograph		Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content. Use Text for documents that contain mostly text. This option is also best suited for scanning documents with highlighter marks. Use Mixed for documents that contain a mix of text and graphics. Use Printed picture for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed picture to improve the quality. Use Photograph for photographic prints.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Blank Page Suppression		Off* Suppress Blank	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Automatically Straighten		Off* Automatically Straighten*	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.
		Multi-feed Detection		Off On* <ul style="list-style-type: none">Automatically Retry (E877, E826 z bundles only)	Use this feature to prevent multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.
		Create Multiple Files		Off* Maximum pages per file Blank page separator (E877, E826, E786, E731 z bundles only) <ul style="list-style-type: none">White pageRed/pink pageGreen pageYellow pageAny color page Barcode page separator (E877, E826, E786, E731 z bundles only)	Use this item to enable the product to separate scanned output into multiple files. Touch the Create Multiple Files checkbox. Enter the maximum number of pages for each output file in the Maximum pages per file field. When a file type that does not support multiple pages is selected, such as JPEG or TIFF, this feature is ignored. When scanning front and back sides, two pages are generated per original document. When scanning to email, the configuration option that specifies the maximum size of the email also interacts with this feature. In this case, the more restrictive of the two settings will take effect.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Notification		Do not notify Notify When Job Completes Notify Only If Job Fails	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify When Job Completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify Only If Job Fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
Scan to USB Drive	Destination				
	File Name				
	Quick Set Defaults				
	Options	File Type and Resolution		File Type Resolution Quality and File Size High Compression (smaller file) PDF Encryption	
		Original sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Color/Black		<p>Automatically detect color or balck*</p> <p>Automatically detect color or gray</p> <p>Color</p> <p>Black/Gray</p> <p>Black</p>	<p>Use this feature to enable or disable color scanning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Automatically detect color or black when trying to create smaller file sizes. When pages without color are detected, the product creates an image of the page in 1-bit black if other settings allow. If the other settings don't allow (File Type, for example), the image is in gray. Select Automatically detect color or gray for the best image quality for non-color pages. Select Color to scan all documents in color. Select Black/Gray to scan documents in grayscale. Select Black to scan documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation		<p>Automatically detect</p> <p>Portrait*</p> <p>Landscape</p>	<p>For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.</p> <p>Use Automatically Detect when the format of the original document is known to specifically work with the Automatically Detect setting. Using Automatically Detect is not recommended in other circumstances.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Image Adjustment	Darkness	Sharpness Darkness Contrast Background Cleanup Automatic tone Auto Paper Color Removal	<p>Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the darkness and sharpness, and you can use the Background Cleanup setting to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.</p> <p>Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.</p> <p>Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p>
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness , Contrast , and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
			Auto Paper Color Removal (Flow models only)		
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Optimize Text/Picture		Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten		Off* Automatically Straighten*	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.
		Blank Page Suppression		Off* Suppress Blank Pages	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Multi-feed Detection		<p>Off</p> <p>On*</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically retry (E877, E826 z bundles only) 	Use this feature to prevent multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.
		Create Multiple Files		<p>Off*</p> <p>Maximum pages per file</p> <p>Blank page separator (E877, E826, E785, E731 z bundles only)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> White page Red/pink page Green page Yellow page Any color page <p>Barcode page separator (E877, E826, E785, E731 z bundles only)</p>	<p>Use this item to enable the product to separate scanned output into multiple files.</p> <p>Touch the Create Multiple Files checkbox. Enter the maximum number of pages for each output file in the Maximum pages per file field.</p> <p>When a file type that does not support multiple pages is selected, such as JPEG or TIFF, this feature is ignored. When scanning front and back sides, two pages are generated per original document.</p> <p>When scanning to email, the configuration option that specifies the maximum size of the email also interacts with this feature. In this case, the more restrictive of the two settings will take effect.</p>
		Notification		<p>Do not notify</p> <p>Notify When Job Completes</p> <p>Notify Only If Job Fails</p>	<p>Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document.</p> <p>Do not notify: Turns off this feature.</p> <p>Notify When Job Completes: Select to receive notification for this job only.</p> <p>Notify Only If Job Fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.</p>
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the job in your notification.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Job Storage	Sides			Original Sides <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1-sided • 2-sided Output Sides <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1-sided • 2-sided 	
	Scan Mode			Standard document* Book 2-sided ID	
	Reduce/Enlarge			Automatic* Manual	
	Image Shift			Off* Automatically center Manual	
	Original Size			Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
	Paper Selection			Paper Size Paper Type Paper Tray	
	Booklet			Booklet Format	
	Content Orientation			Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. Use Automatically detect when the format of the original document is known to specifically work with the Automatically detect setting. Using Automatically detect is not recommended in other circumstances.
	Pages per Sheet			One Two Four (right, then down) Four (down, then right)	

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Image Adjustment			Sharpness Darkness Contrast Background Cleanup	
	Optimize Text/Picture			Automatically detect Text Mixed* Printed picture Photograph	
	Erase Edges			Front Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge Back Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge 	
	Collate			Collate* Collate off	
	Blank Page Suppression			Off* Suppress Blank Pages	
	Automatically Straighten			Off* Automatically Straighten on	
	Multi-feed Detection			Off On* <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatically Retry (E877, E826 z bundles only) 	Use this feature to prevent multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Sharepoint	Save Settings				Use this feature to save the current settings as the default settings for an app or to create a new Quick Set. First configure the desired options. Then touch Save and choose to either save the current settings as the default settings for the app or as a new Quick Set.
	File Type and Resolution			File Type Resolution Quality and File Size High Compression (smaller file) PDF Encryption	
	Original Sides			1-sided* 2-sided Pages Flip Up	Use this feature to describe the layout for each side of the original document Use 1-sided for originals that are printed on one side of the page. Use 2-sided for originals that are printed on both sides of the page. Select Pages Flip Up for originals that flip on the top/ bottom edge of the page, such as calendars.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Color/Black			<p>Automatically detect color or black*</p> <p>Automatically detect color or gray</p> <p>Color</p> <p>Black/Gray</p> <p>Black</p>	<p>Use this feature to enable or disable color scanning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Automatically detect color or black when trying to create smaller file sizes. When pages without color are detected, the product creates an image of the page in 1-bit black if other settings allow. If the other settings don't allow (File Type, for example), the image is in gray. • Select Automatically detect color or gray for the best image quality for non-color pages. • Select Color to scan all documents in color. • Select Black/Gray to scan documents in grayscale. • Select Black to scan documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
	Scan Mode			<p>Standard Document</p> <p>Book</p> <p>2-sided ID</p> <p>Prompt for Additional Pages</p>	<p>Use this feature to provide information about the type of document to be scanned and to change the format of the output.</p> <p>Use Standard Document to scan regular documents using default scan settings.</p> <p>Use Prompt for Additional Pages to create a single job from multiple scans without having to do a preview.</p> <p>Use Book to scan the pages of an open book and to print the pages on separate sheets of paper.</p> <p>Use 2-sided ID to scan both sides of an ID and print them on one side of a sheet of paper.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Content Orientation			<p>Automatically detect</p> <p>Portrait*</p> <p>Landscape</p>	<p>For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top.</p> <p>Use Automatically detect when the format of the original document is known to specifically work with the Automatically detect setting. Using Automatically detect is not recommended in other circumstances.</p>
	Image Adjustment			<p>Sharpness</p> <p>Darkness</p> <p>Contrast</p> <p>Background Cleanup</p> <p>Automatic tone</p> <p>Auto Paper Color Removal</p>	<p>Use this feature to improve the overall quality of the scanned image.</p> <p>Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.</p> <p>Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p> <p>If you select the Automatic Tone options, the product automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture			<p>Automatically detect</p> <p>Text</p> <p>Mixed*</p> <p>Printed picture</p> <p>Photograph</p>	<p>Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content.</p> <p>Use Text for documents that contain mostly text. This option is also best suited for scanning documents with a highlighter.</p> <p>Use Mixed for documents that contain a mix of text and graphics.</p> <p>Use Printed picture for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed Picture to improve the quality.</p> <p>Use Photograph for photographic prints.</p>
	Erase Edges			<p>Front Side</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge <p>Back Side</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge 	<p>Use this feature to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.</p>
	Cropping Options			<p>Do not crop*</p> <p>Crop to Paper</p> <p>Crop to Content</p>	<p>Use this menu item to specify a method to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to Paper option to crop the scan to the edge of the document being scanned. Use the Crop to Content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.</p> <p>NOTE: The Crop to Paper option is effective only when you scan pages by using the document feeder. It has an unpredictable effect for pages that you scan from the glass.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Blank Page Suppression			Off* Suppress Blank Pages	Use this feature to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
	Create Multiple Files			Off* Maximum pages per file Blank page separator (E877, E826, E785, E731 z bundles only) Barcode page separator (E877, E826, E785, E731 z bundles only)	<p>Use this item to enable the product to separate scanned output into multiple files.</p> <p>Touch the Create Multiple Files checkbox. Enter the maximum number of pages for each output file in the Maximum Pages Per File field.</p> <p>When a file type that does not support multiple pages is selected, such as JPEG or TIFF, this feature is ignored. When scanning front and back sides, two pages are generated per original document.</p> <p>When scanning to email, the configuration option that specifies the maximum size of the email also interacts with this feature. In this case, the more restrictive of the two settings will take effect.</p>
	Notification			Do not notify* Notify When Job Completes Notify Only If Job Fails	<p>Use this feature to receive notification about the status of the sent document.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Do not notify to turn off this feature • Select Notify When Job Completes to receive notification for this job only. • Select Notify Only If Job Fails to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully
Remote Scan Request					<p>Use the Remote Scan Request app to scan and send documents requested by a remote computer.</p> <p>Remote scans are initiated on a computer with applications such as TWAIN Software or other AirPrint Compatible devices</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan+	Common	Scan Shortcuts		Redact and Sign OCR Document Separation Barcode Separation Sticky Notes and Envelopes 2-sided ID	Scan Shortcuts can be used to quickly set up a job for specialty tasks.
		Auto Sense Preset		Fastest Scan Speeds Best Productivity (Recommended)	Auto Sense Presets make it easy to optimize a scan job for fastest scan speeds or best productivity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fastest Scan Speeds disables some automatic features, which requires less image processing and allows scanning at the fastest speeds available. • Best Productivity enables several automatic features, including automatic sides, automatic content orientation, automatic image straightening, and automatic image optimization. <p>NOTE: Unlike Quick Sets, Auto Sense Preset presets do not affect destinations and recipients.</p>
		Watermark		None* Text	Use this feature to add a watermark to the document <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Text: Text is placed at the center of the page.
		Stamps		Top Left Top Center Top Right Bottom Left Bottom Center Bottom Right	Select up to six preset positions for a stamp and configure the content that will be printed there. Some positions might require selecting the stamp from a list of predefined options.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Notification		Do not notify* Notify When Job Completes Notify Only If Job Fails	Use this feature to receive notification about the status of the sent document. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Do not notify to turn off this feature Select Notify When Job Completes to receive notification for this job only. Select Notify Only If Job Fails to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully
	Scan	Color/Black		Automatically detect color or black Automatically detect color or gray Color Black/Gray Black	If Automatically detect color or black is selected and the current settings do not allow scanning in black, pages will be scanned in grayscale.
		Create Multiple Files		Off* Maximum pages per file Blank page separator Barcode page separator	Use this item to enable the product to separate scanned output into multiple files. Touch the Create Multiple Files check box. Enter the maximum number of pages for each output file in the Maximum Pages Per File field. When a file type that does not support multiple pages is selected, such as JPEG or TIFF, this feature is ignored. When scanning front and back sides, two pages are generated per original document. When scanning to email, the configuration option that specifies the maximum size of the email also interacts with this feature. In this case, the more restrictive of the two settings will take effect.
		Signing and Encryption		Signing Encrypt	A digitally signed email ensures the recipient that you sent this email. An encrypted message can be opened only by the recipient.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Cropping Options		Do not crop* Crop to Paper Crop to Content	Use this menu item to specify a method to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to Paper option to crop the scan to the edge of the document being scanned. Use the Crop to Content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content. NOTE: The Crop to Paper option is effective only when you scan pages by using the document feeder. It has an unpredictable effect for pages that you scan from the glass.
	Copy	Number of Copies		Copies (1 to 9999)	Use this feature to set the number of printed copies.
		Output Sides		1-sided* 2-sided Pages flip-up	Use this feature to set the layout and format for the output. Select from the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use 1-sided for originals that are printed on one side of the page. • Use 2-sided for originals that are printed on both sides of the page. • Select Pages flip-up for originals that flip on the top/bottom edge of the page, such as calendars.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray	Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the product will determine whether to print in color or black and white. Color: Prints documents in color. Black/Gray: Prints documents in grayscale.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Paper Selection		Paper Size Paper Type Paper Tray	Use this feature to select the paper for the job. Use Paper Size or Paper Type to enable the printer to automatically find the selected paper size or type. Use Paper Tray to select a source tray. Depending on the administrator's setting, the product will either print from that tray first, or it will limit printing from that tray.
	Fax	Resolution		Standard (100 x 200dpi) Fine (200 x 200dpi) Superfine (300 x 300dpi)	Select the resolution for outgoing faxes. If you increase the resolution, faxes might be clearer but they could transmit more slowly.
	Auto Sense	Original Sides		Auto (keep sides with content) 1-sided* 2-sided Pages Flip Up	Use this feature to describe the layout for each side of the original document Use 1-sided for originals that are printed on one side of the page. Use 2-sided for originals that are printed on both sides of the page. Select Pages Flip Up for originals that flip on the top/bottom edge of the page, such as calendars.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation		Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Image Adjustment		<p>Sharpness</p> <p>Darkness</p> <p>Contrast</p> <p>Background Cleanup</p> <p>Automatic Tone</p> <p>Auto Paper Color Removal</p>	<p>Use this feature to improve the quality of the scanned image.</p> <p>Adjusting Sharpness clarifies or softens the image. Increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p> <p>Adjusting Darkness increases or decreases the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjusting Contrast increases or decreases the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust Background Cleanup to improve copying a faint image.</p> <p>Automatic Tone options automatically adjust the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings.</p> <p>The Auto Paper Color Removal option dynamically adjusts the color balance and lightness of the background. Slide left: Most white paper with normal brightness is output as white background in the scanned output. Slider right: Very colorful paper/background colors are converted to white in the scanned output.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/Picture		Automatically detect Text Mixed* Printed picture Photograph	Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content. Use Text for documents that contain mostly text. This option is also best suited for scanning documents with a highlighter. Use Mixed for documents that contain a mix of text and graphics. Use Printed picture for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed Picture to improve the quality. Use Photograph for photographic prints.
		Automatically Straighten		Off* Automatically Straighten	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.
		Blank Page Suppression		Off* Suppress Blank Pages	Use this feature to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
	Advanced	File Type and Resolution		File Type Resolution Quality and File Size High Compression (smaller file) DF EncryptionP	Select File Type and Resolution to select the file format for the scanned image. Each file type has sub-settings, some of which affect resolution and file size.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Scan Mode		Standard Document Book 2-sided ID Prompt for Additional Pages	Use this feature to provide information about the type of document to be scanned and to change the format of the output. Use Standard Document to scan regular documents using default scan settings. Use Prompt for Additional Pages to create a single job from multiple scans without having to do a preview. Use Book to scan the pages of an open book and to print the pages on separate sheets of paper. Use 2-sided ID to scan both sides of an ID and print them on one side of a sheet of paper.
		Erase Edges		Front Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge Back Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge 	Use this feature to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.

Fax menu (when a fax option is installed)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Fax](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-13 Fax menu (fax models only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Dialing Prefix				
Fax Recipients				
Quick Sets and Defaults				

Table 5-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Options	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
	Watermark		None* Text <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Watermark Text • Text Font • Text Size • Text Color 	Use this feature to add a watermark to the document. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Text: Text is placed at the center of the page. NOTE: Flow models only.
	Stamps		None* Top Left Top Center Top Right Bottom Left Bottom Center Bottom Right	Select up to six preset positions for a stamp and configure the content that will be printed there. Some positions might require selecting the stamp from a list of predefined options. NOTE: Flow models only.
	Resolution		Standard (100 x 200dpi)* Fine (200 x 200dpi) Superfine (300 x 300dpi)	Select the resolution for outgoing faxes. If you increase the resolution, faxes might be clearer but they could transmit more slowly. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might be automatically changed to a valid value.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.

Table 5-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Content Orientation	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	<p>For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page.</p> <p>Portrait: This setting means the short edge of the page is along the top.</p> <p>Landscape: This setting means the long edge of the page is along the top.</p>
	Image Adjustment		Sharpness Darkness Contrast Background Cleanup Automatic tone Auto Paper Color Removal	<p>Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the darkness and sharpness, and you can use the Background Cleanup setting to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.</p> <p>Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.</p> <p>Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p>

Table 5-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust* Automatically detect NOTE: Flow models only.	Optimize For: Text Mixed Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
	Fax Line Selection		Automatic* Line 1 Line 2	HP MFP Analog Dual Fax 810 Accessory needs to be installed
	Blank Page Suppression		Disabled* Enabled	Prevents blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
	Automatically Straighten		Off* Automatically Straighten*	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.

Table 5-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Use to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do Not Notify: Turns off this feature. Notify When Job Completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify Only If Job Fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.

Print menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Print](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-14 Print Options menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Print from Job Storage	Stored Job to Print	Untitled Stored Faxes	Print a job stored on the printer.
Print from USB Drive	USB File to Print	Choose file to print on USB drive.	Print a job stored on a USB drive.
Fax Polling	Fax Polling Number		Use the Fax Polling app to print faxes sent to another fax machine.

Supplies menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Supplies](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-15 Supplies menu

First level	Values
Supplies Summary	

Table 5-15 Supplies menu (continued)

First level	Values
Black Cartridge	Status Order HP Part Pages Printed Approximate Pages Remaining
Toner Collection Unit Document Feeder Kit Stapler 1	Status Order HP Part

Trays menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Trays](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-16 Trays menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Tray 1 Tray 2-x	Size	Select paper size from a list of supported sizes.	Choose the paper size for the tray
	Type	Select paper type from a list of supported types.	Choose the paper type for the tray.

Support Tools menu

The menus under the [Support Tools](#) menu contain the options for maintaining the printer and troubleshooting printer problems. Learn about these menus and settings.

Service menu

Use this menu to access features for diagnosing, maintaining, and repairing the product. You might be required to sign in to gain access to the Service menu.

- Service Access Code: 03082622

Table 5-17 Service menu

First level	Second level	Third level
Event Log		
Counts		
Coverage Report	All	
Coverage Report	Print	
Coverage Report	Copy	

Table 5-17 Service menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level
Coverage Report	Fax	
Scanner Settings		
Serial Number		
Service ID		
Cold Reset Paper		
MPS Settings	Low Alerts	
MPS Settings	Reset Supplies Level	
MPS Settings	Consumables Access Control	
Advanced Service	Software Version	
Advanced Service	Service Reports	
Advanced Service	Adjustment	Print Adjustment
Advanced Service	Adjustment	Buckle Adjustment
Advanced Service	Adjustment	Finisher Adjustment
Advanced Service	*Calibration/Cleaning NOTE: Refer to the Maintenance menu map.	
Advanced Service	Advanced Diagnostics	Reset Engine NVM
Advanced Service	Advanced Diagnostics	Engine NVM Read/Write
Advanced Service	Advanced Diagnostics	Sensors
Advanced Service	Advanced Diagnostics	Component Tests
Advanced Service	Service Functions	TR Control Mode
Advanced Service	Service Functions	Low-temperature Idling Mode
Advanced Service	Service Functions	Altitude Adjustment
Advanced Service	Service Functions	Humidity
Advanced Service	Service Functions	Vapor Mode
Advanced Service	Service Functions	Footer
PTT Test Mode		
Test Support		
Part Replacement Count		
Reset Supplies		
Fax V.29 Speed		

Event Log

Use this menu to view or print a list of the most recent 50 events in the Event Log. For each event, the log shows the event code, cycle (approximate page count), and description.

Event Log						
Device Information						
Product	Serial Number:	XXXXXXXXXX				
Number	Date and Time	Cycles	Event	Firmware	Description or Personality	Re
50	8/10/2021 3:15:25 PM	1396	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	Fax Modem 2 failure	0
49	8/10/2021 3:15:25 PM	1396	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	Fax Modem Failure	0
48	8/10/2021 1:34:25 PM	1396	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
47	8/10/2021 1:31:08 PM	1346	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
46	8/10/2021 1:22:48 PM	1246	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
45	8/10/2021 1:18:17 PM	1196	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
44	8/10/2021 1:05:28 PM	1100	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
43	8/10/2021 12:26:44 PM	1050	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
42	8/10/2021 12:22:22 PM	1050	13.89.A1	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	Stopped at fuser Jan. [0.0] (MS-1334)	0
41	8/10/2021 11:56:06 AM	980	13.89.A1	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	Stopped at fuser Jan. [0.0] (MS-1334)	0
40	8/10/2021 11:52:59 AM	960	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
39	8/10/2021 11:25:06 AM	800	10.99.40	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	Genuine HP supplies installed	0
38	8/10/2021 11:24:46 AM	800	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	Fax Modem Failure	0
37	8/10/2021 11:24:46 AM	800	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	Fax Modem 2 failure	0
36	8/10/2021 11:23:28 AM	0	33.02.02	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102.245_2481684	Save/Recover disabled	0
35	8/10/2021 11:06:50 AM	800	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357.245_2481692	Fax Modem 2 failure	0
34	8/10/2021 11:06:50 AM	800	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357.245_2481692	Fax Modem Failure	0
33	8/10/2021 11:05:33 AM	800	33.02.02	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357.245_2481692	Save/Recover disabled	0
32	8/10/2021 11:05:33 AM	800	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357.245_2481692	Fax Modem 2 failure	0
31	8/10/2021 11:05:33 AM	800	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357.245_2481692	Fax Modem Failure	0
30	8/10/2021 11:03:05 AM	800	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357.245_2481692	Fax Modem 2 failure	0
29	8/10/2021 11:03:05 AM	800	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357.245_2481692	Fax Modem Failure	0
28	8/10/2021 11:02:52 AM	800	33.02.02	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357.245_2481692	Save/Recover disabled	0
27	8/9/2021 4:07:10 PM	800	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357.245_2481692	Fax Modem 2 failure	0
26	8/9/2021 4:07:10 PM	800	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357.245_2481692	Fax Modem Failure	0

Counts

Use this menu to see the total number of pages that have been printed to-date by various product components. Typically, this is only required when a new formatter is installed.

Before replacing the formatter, print a configuration page to obtain the current counts.

- **Service Count:** Total sum of Mono Service Count.
- **Mono Service Count:** This count tracks all media picked from all media sources on the device. For jobs with blank sides or interpreted as mono at the time of media pickup, this count will increment +1 (simplex) or +2 (duplex).
- **Refurbish Count:** Use this item to record the page count when the printer was refurbished.
- **Document Feeder Kit Count:** Total number of pages since the document feeder kit was replaced.
- **Document Feeder Kit Interval:** Use this item to set the interval that causes the printer to prompt the customer to replace document feeder kit.
- **Clean Rollers Count:** Total number of pages since the document feeder rollers were cleaned.

- **Clean Rollers Interval:** Use this item to set the interval that causes the printer to prompt the customer to clean the document feeder rollers and separation pad.
- **ADF Count:** Total pages fed through the document feeder.
- **Flatbed Count:** Total pages scanned from the flatbed.
- **ADF Simplex Count:** Total single-sided pages fed through the document feeder.
- **ADF Duplex Count:** Total two-sided pages fed through the document feeder.
- **Copy Scan Count:** Total copy pages that have been scanned.
- **Send Scan Count:** Number of scanned pages sent to email.
- **Fax Scan Count:** Number of scanned pages that have been faxed.
- **Copy Pages Count:** Number of scanned pages that have been printed.

Coverage Report


Use this menu to print coverage reports based on print, copy, and fax jobs. The Reset button restores all estimation of coverages to default.

- **All:** This will print all average coverage values for a print, copy, and fax job.
- **Print:** This will print the last page coverage and average coverage values for a print job.
- **Copy:** This will print the last page coverage and average coverage values for copy job.

Scanner Settings

Use this menu to adjust Scanner setting value manually when a scanned area is inappropriate.

The [Clear All](#) button restores all scanner setting values to default.

 **NOTE:** Select the adjustable items on the control panel and adjust the values accordingly.

- **Glass - Left edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -20 to +20.
- **Glass - Rear edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -25 to +25.
- **ADF - Leading front edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -200 to +200.
- **ADF - Leading back edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -200 to +200.
- **ADF - Trailing front edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -200 to +200.
- **ADF - Trailing back edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -200 to +200.
- **ADF - Left side front:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -120 to +120.
- **ADF - Left side back:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -120 to +120.


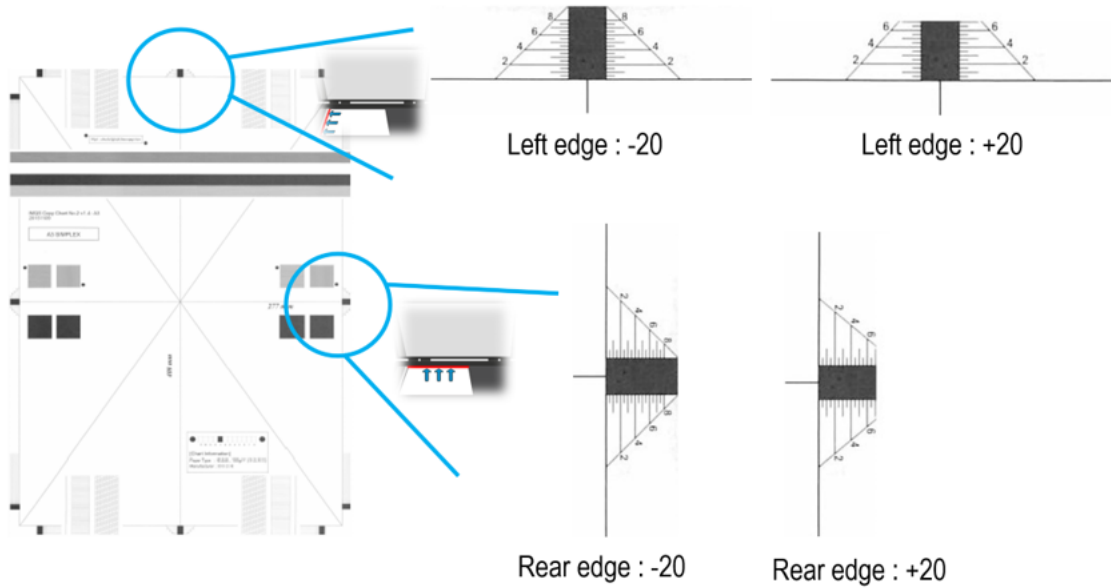
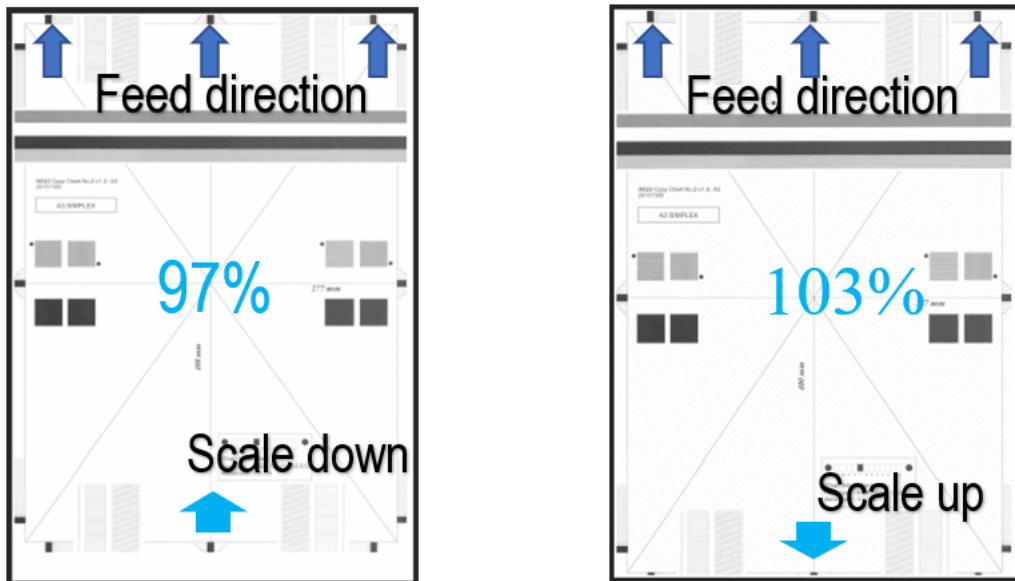
 **NOTE:** Negative values crop the edge less and positive values crop the edge more.

Figure 5-21 Examples of scanner settings



- **ADF – Feed direction magnification:** Default is 100%. It can be adjusted from 97% to 103%.

Figure 5-22 Examples of Feed direction magnification settings



Serial Number

Use this menu to set the product serial number.



IMPORTANT: Modify the serial number only after replacing the formatter.

Service ID

Use this menu to display the date that the product was first used.

The Service ID menu eliminates the need to keep paper receipts for proof of warranty.

Cold Reset Paper

Use this menu to reset the default paper size after the replacement of a formatter board in a location using a different standard paper size.



NOTE: The product will restart automatically when this setting changes.

Low Alerts

Use this menu to enable or disable the Supplies Low message.

The Supplies Low message can be enabled or disabled in these locations:

- Control panel
- SNMP alerts
- Remote monitoring tools, such as the Embedded Web Server

Disabling low alerts has the following effects:

- Supplies Low messages are suppressed.
- Supplies Very Low messages still appear.
- The supplies status levels are visible in all locations.
- The control panel menu options for configuring the Low Message and the Low Threshold Settings are available, but they have no effect.

Reset Supplies Level

Use this menu to reset customized settings for Supplies Low and Supplies Very Low messages and alerts.



IMPORTANT: Use this menu for products that are under a service agreement with HP.

- **Reset to Level 1:** When this option is selected, standard menus for Supplies Very Low are available, and the Supplies Low Threshold is set to 0%. The Supplies Low messages are enabled and Low Alerts are enabled. Customer can modify the Supplies Low Threshold and the Low message behavior.
- **Reset to Level 2:** When this option is selected, standard menus for Supplies Very Low are available, and the Supplies Low Threshold is set to 0%. The Supplies Low messages are off and Low Alerts are enabled. Customer can modify the Supplies Low Threshold and the Low message behavior.
- **Reset to Level 3:** When this option is selected, standard menus for Supplies Very Low are available, and the Supplies Low Threshold is set to 0%. The Supplies Low messages are off and Low Alerts are disabled. Customer can modify the Supplies Low Threshold and Low Message settings are set to standard values for a product that is not under a service agreement with HP.
- **Set to non-HP managed mode:** When this option is selected, the menu for Supplies Very Low is removed. The Supplies Low Threshold and Low Message settings are set to standard values for a product that is not under a service agreement with HP.

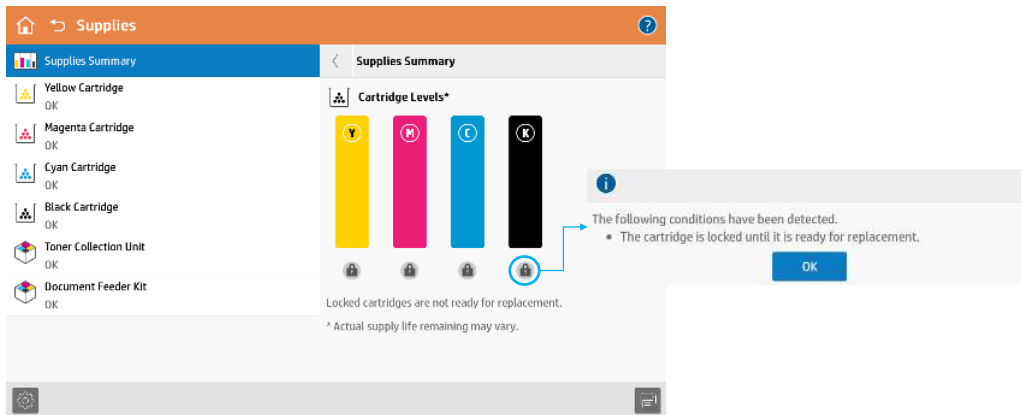
Consumables Access Control

Use this menu to lock toner cartridges into the product to help prevent early replacement.

Each cartridge will automatically unlock when it reaches the replacement threshold or encounters an error. Signing in with Admin or Service credentials will also unlock all cartridges for the duration of the session.

The settings are as follows:

- **Unchecked:** Disables this function. The **Eject** button is always selectable.
- **Checked:** Enables this function. If a toner cartridge is in the locked state, the **Eject** button is not selectable.



Software Version

Use this menu to see the following software versions.

- Engine Firmware Version
- Tray 2 Version
- Tray 3 Version
- Tray 4 Version (*Optional)
- Tray 5 Version (*Optional)
- Finisher Version (*Optional)
- Booklet Version (*Optional)
- Punch Version (*Optional)
- EP Version
- Toner Version
- TR Version
- Fuser Version

Service Reports

Use this menu to print the following reports.

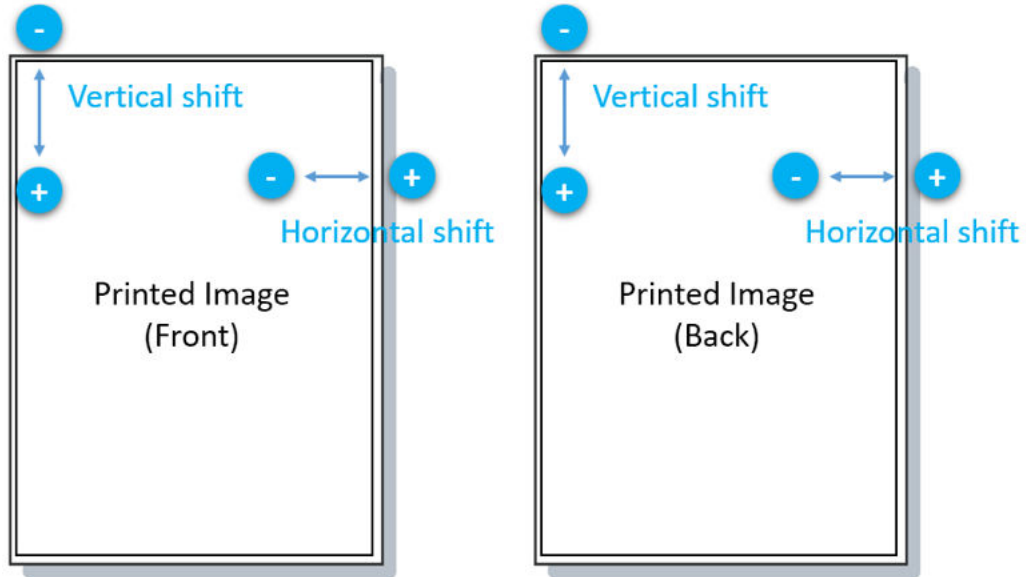
- Supplies Information Report
- Auto Toning History

Print Adjustment

Use this menu to adjust the image position manually and perform the Print Margin Test when the printed area is inappropriate, or the printed image is skewed to one side.

- Image Position
 - **Select Tray:** Select the tray that needs to be adjusted.
 - **Front-side Horizontal Shift:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -4 to +4.
 - +: The printed image will be shifted to the right.
 - : The printed image will be shifted to the left.
 - **Front-side Vertical Shift:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -4 to +4.
 - +: The printed image will be shifted downward.
 - : The printed image will be shifted upward.
 - **Back-side Horizontal Shift:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -4 to +4.
 - +: The printed image will be shifted to the right.
 - : The printed image will be shifted to the left.
 - **Back-side Vertical Shift:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -4 to +4.
 - +: The printed image will be shifted downward.
 - : The printed image will be shifted upward.
 - **Apply to all Trays:** If it is checked, all trays will be affected.


Figure 5-23 Examples of image position shifts



- Print Margin Test
 - **A3 Skew Pattern:** If this option is selected, the printer will print the A3 skew pattern.
 - **A4 Skew Pattern:** If this option is selected, the printer will print the A4 skew pattern.
 - **11x17 Skew Pattern:** If this option is selected, the printer will print the 11x17 skew pattern.
 - **Letter Skew Pattern:** If this option is selected, the printer will print the Letter skew pattern.

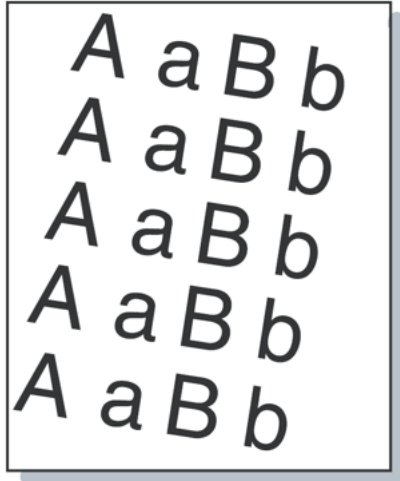
Buckle Adjustment

Use this menu to adjust the Registration Curl value when a printed image has a skew.

 **IMPORTANT:** Check the paper guide on the tray before performing the Buckle Adjustment.


- **Process Speed:** Default is **Full**. Select the appropriate speed for the paper type.
- **Fast Feed:** Default is **Off**. If **On** is selected, the printer will feed paper faster.
- **Print Side:** Default is **Simplex**. Select the appropriate print side.
- **Paper Source:** Default is **Tray 1**. Select the appropriate tray.
- **Registration Curl:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -5 to +5.

Figure 5-24 Typical faulty image



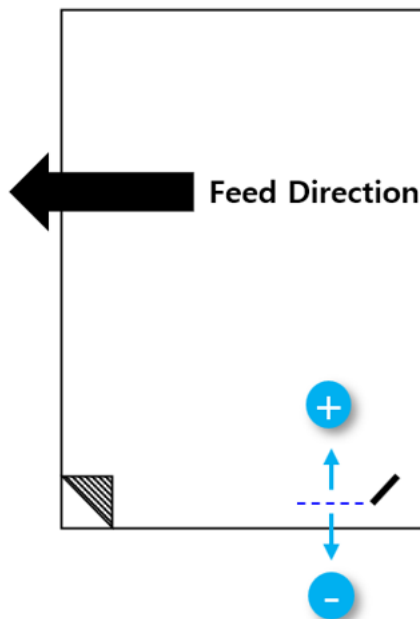
Finisher Adjustment

Use this menu to adjust settings related to the finisher, such as staple position, folding position, punch hole position, tamper position, and eject level.

 **NOTE:** This menu will only be shown when a finisher is installed.

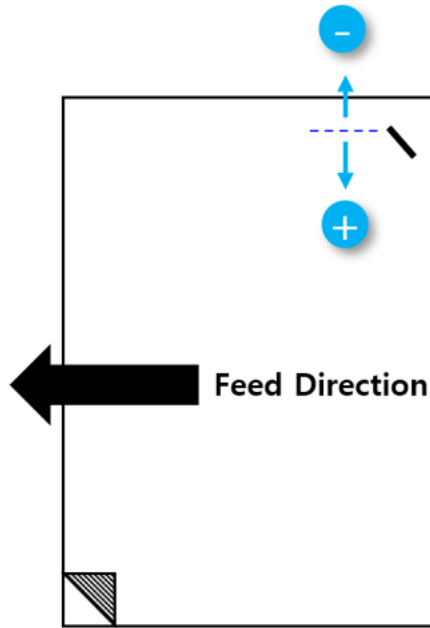
- **Staple position:** Use this menu adjust the staple position on the paper.
 - **Single Front Corner STS:** Use this feature to adjust the front corner staple position on the paper.
 - +: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.
 - : Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-25 Front corner staple position



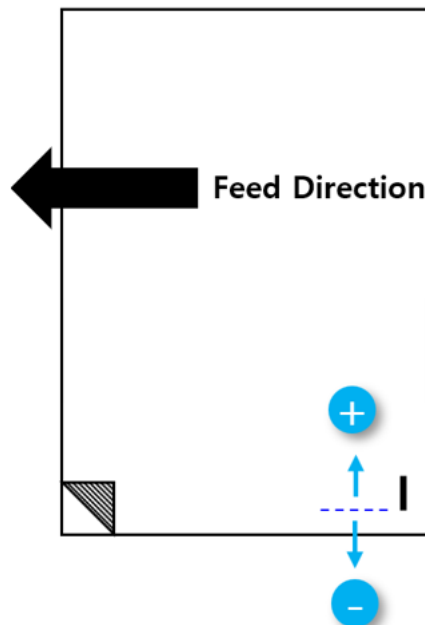
- **Single Rear Corner STS:** Use this feature to adjust the rear corner staple position on the paper.
 - + : Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.
 - : Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-26 Rear corner staple position



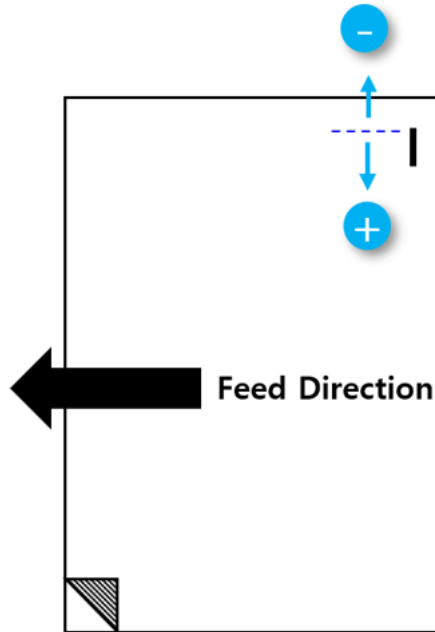
- **Single Front Flat STS:** Use this feature to adjust the front flat staple position on the paper.
 - + : Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.
 - : Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-27 Front flat staple position



- **Single Rear Flat STS:** Use this feature to adjust the rear flat staple position on the paper.
 - +: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.
 - : Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-28 Rear flat staple position



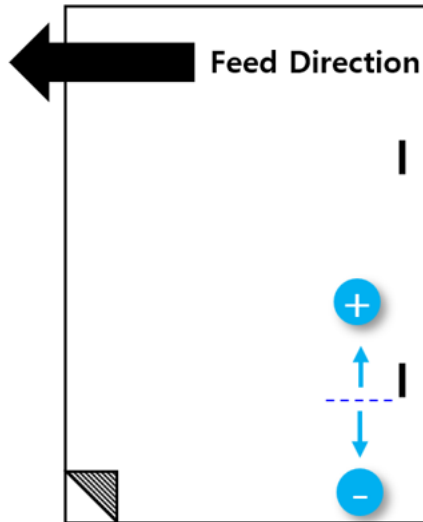
- **Dual Front STS:** Use this feature to adjust the front staple position of the dual staple on the paper



NOTE: This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher or stapler/stacker finisher is installed.

- +: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.
- : Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-29 Dual front staple position



- **Dual Rear STS:** Use this feature to adjust the rear staple position of the dual staple on the paper

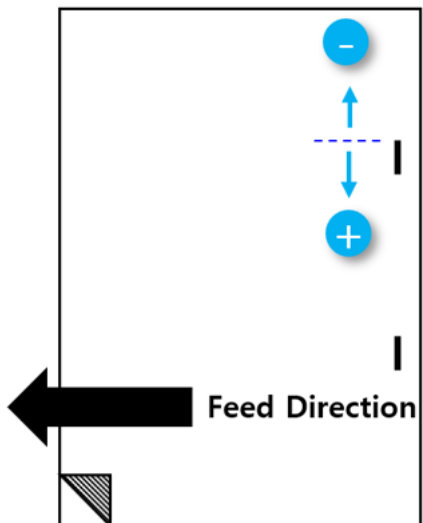


NOTE: This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher or stapler/stacker finisher is installed.

+: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.

-: Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-30 Dual rear staple position



- **Dual All STS:** Use this feature to adjust the dual staple position on the paper.

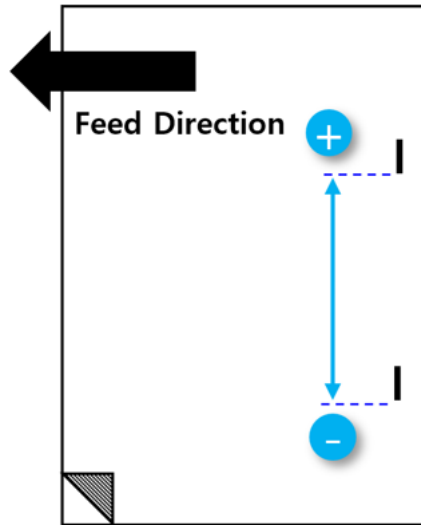


NOTE: This menu will only be shown when an inner finisher is installed


+: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.

-: Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-31 Dual staple position



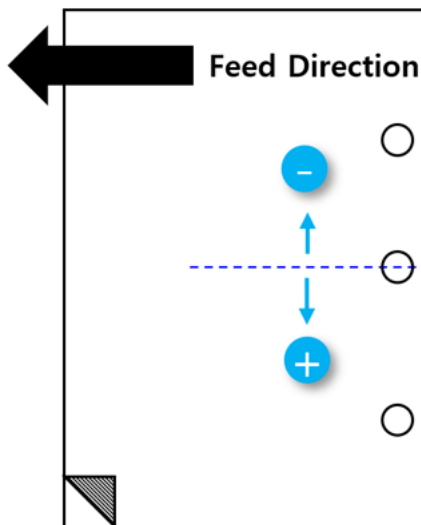
- **Punch Hole position:** Use this menu to adjust the position of punch holes on the paper.
 - **STS:** Use this feature to adjust the STS position of punched holes on the paper.

 **NOTE:** This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher or staple/stacker finisher is installed with a punch unit.


+: Move the position of punched holes towards the front of the device.

-: Move the position of punched holes towards the rear of the device.

Figure 5-32 Punched holes position (up/down)



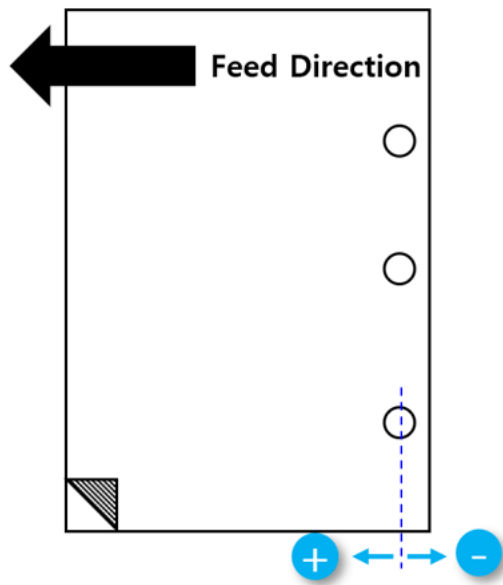
- **DOF:** Use this feature to adjust the DOF position of punched holes on the paper.

 **NOTE:** This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher, stapler/stacker finisher, or inner finisher is installed with a punch unit.

+: Move the position of punched holes towards the center of the paper.

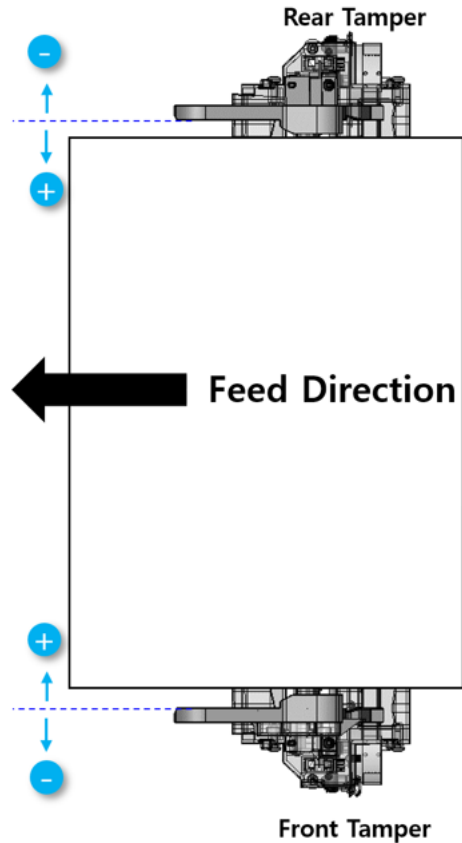
-: Move the position of punched holes towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-33 Punched holes position (left/right)




- **Enable Punch Scan:** Use this feature to enable the detection of leading edge of the paper when the punch is operating.
 - **On (default):** Detect the leading edge of the paper for every page.
 - **Off:** Detect the leading edge of the paper for the first page of the job.
- **Tamper Position:** Use this menu to adjust the tamper position.
 - **Front:** Use this feature to adjust the front tamper position.
 - **Rear:** Use this feature to adjust the rear tamper position.
 - +: Move toward the compile center (away from the tamper home).
 - : Move away from the compile center (toward the tamper home).

Figure 5-34 Tamper position



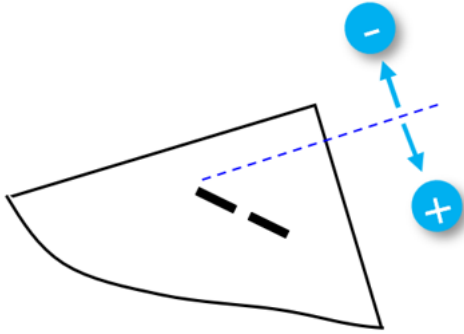
- **Finisher Eject Level:** Use this feature to adjust the eject level to reduce scattering.
+: Higher level (increased feed time).
-: Lower level (decreased feed time).
- **Disable Buffering Option:** Use this feature to align paper for stapling in staple jobs.
Off (default): The buffering function is enabled.
On: The buffering function is disabled. This will try to align the paper for stapling, but the job speed will be slower.
- **Manual Staple Position:** Use this feature to adjust the manual staple position.

 **NOTE:** This menu item will only be shown when a booklet finisher or stapler/stacker finisher is installed.


+: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.


-: Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-35 Manual staple position



- **Booklet Staple Position:** Use this menu to adjust the staple position of printed booklets for supported paper sizes.

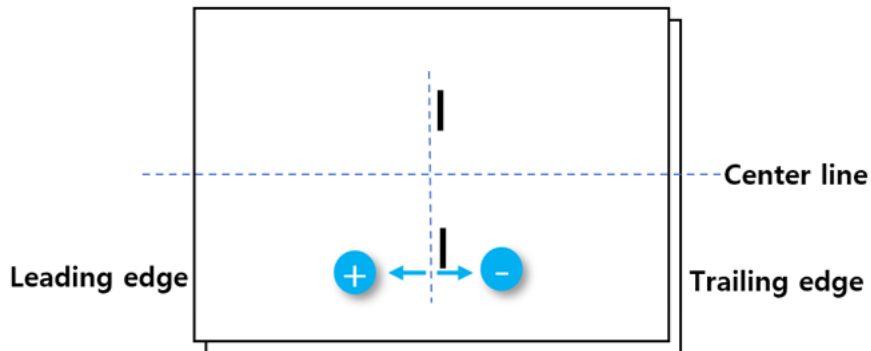
 **NOTE:** This menu item will only be shown when a booklet finisher is installed.

 **IMPORTANT:** Select paper size you want to use in the menu.


+: Move the staple position towards the leading edge of the paper.


-: Move the staple position towards the trailing edge of the paper.

Figure 5-36 Booklet staple position



- **Booklet Folding Position:** User this menu to adjust the folding position of printed booklets for supported paper sizes.

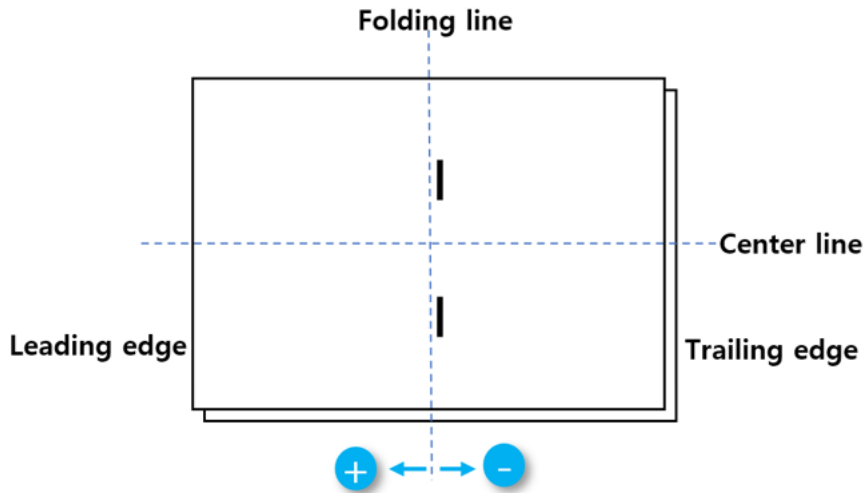
 **NOTE:** This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher is installed.

 **IMPORTANT:** Select paper size you want to use in the menu.


+: Move the folding position towards the leading edge of the paper.


-: Move the folding position towards the trailing edge of the paper.

Figure 5-37 Booklet fold position



- **Booklet C-Folding Position:** Use this menu to adjust the c-folding of printed pages for supported paper sizes.

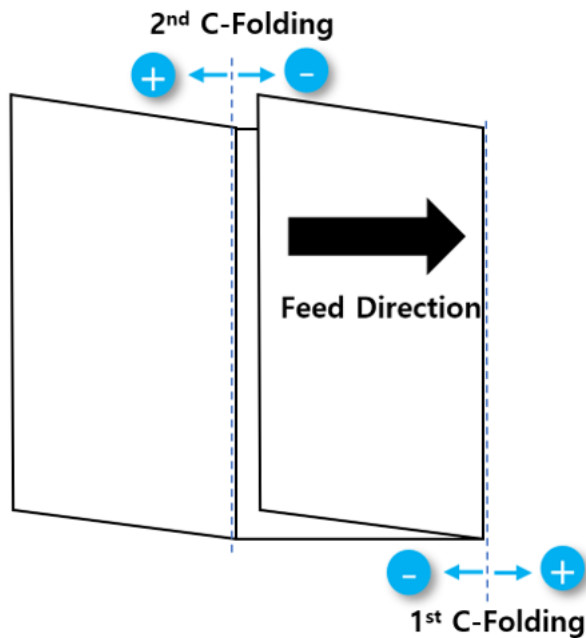
 **NOTE:** This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher is installed.

 **IMPORTANT:** Select paper size you want to use in the menu.

+: Move the folding position towards the leading edge of the paper.

-: Move the folding position towards the trailing edge of the paper.

Figure 5-38 Booklet C-fold position



Reset Engine NVM

Use this menu to initialize the engine NVM (Non-Volatile Memory) read/write values to the default.

Engine NVM Read/Write

Use this menu to adjust the NVM configuration value for the printing engine operation.

Table 5-18 Engine NVM Read/Write values

Code	Name	Type	Default
109-0200	StandBy Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0201	StandBy Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0205	Warmup Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0206	Warmup Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0255	Light 60-74g Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0256	Light 60-74g Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0265	Plain Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0266	Plain Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0275	Heavy 111-130g Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0276	Heavy 111-130g Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0280	Extra Heavy 131-175g Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0281	Extra Heavy 131-175g Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0290	Cardstock Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0291	Cardstock Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0300	Envelope Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0301	Envelope Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0305	Labels Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0306	Labels Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0310	Mid-Weight 96-110g Center Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0311	Mid-Weight 96-110g Side Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0315	Recycled Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10

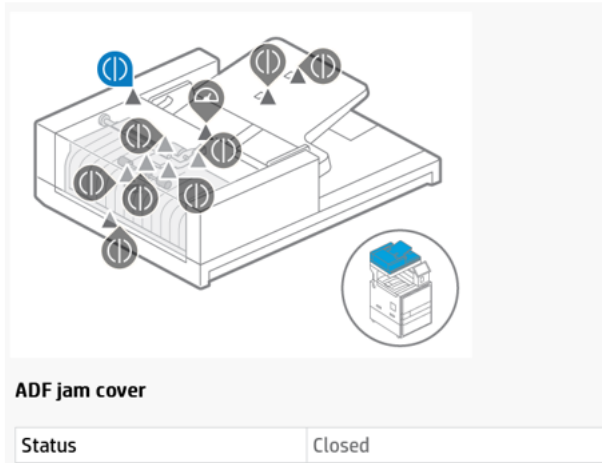
Table 5-18 Engine NVM Read/Write values (continued)


Code	Name	Type	Default
109-0316	Recycled Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0320	Special Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0321	Special Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0325	1200 dpi_light 60-74g Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0326	1200 dpi_light 60-74g Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0330	1200 dpi_plain Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0331	1200 dpi_plain Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0335	1200 dpi_mid-weight 96-110g Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0336	1200 dpi_mid-weight 96-110g Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0340	XHvyGlossy 131-175g Center Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0341	XHvyGlossy 131-175g Side Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0345	Card Glossy 176-220g Center Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0346	Card Glossy 176-220g Side Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0350	Paperboard Center Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0351	Paperboard Side Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0355	Heavy Paperboard Center Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0356	Heavy Paperboard Side Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10

Sensors

Use this menu to check the status of sensors using each sensor's callout on the control panel.

Select the callout to display the status of the sensor.



 **NOTE:** This image may differ from your control panel display.


 **IMPORTANT:** Include this information when escalating related issues to the GBU engineer.

Table 5-19 Sensor types

Name	Reference table
Document Feeder Sensors	Document Feeder sensors
Flatbed Sensors	Flatbed sensors
ACR/CTD	ACR/CTD sensors
Finisher (Option)	Finisher (Option) sensors
Covers	Cover sensors
Developer	Developer sensors
Environment	Environmental sensors
Fuser	Fuser sensors
LSU	LSU sensors
Paper Path	Paper Path sensors
Power Supply	Power Supply sensors
TCU	TCU sensors
Toner	Toner sensors
Toner Residual Amount	Toner Residual Amount sensors
Tray	Tray sensors

Table 5-20 Document Feeder sensors

Name	Type	Status
ADF Top of Form Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Paper Path Deskew Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-20 Document Feeder sensors (continued)

Name	Type	Status
ADF Paper Present Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Width Sensor	Input	Numeric
ADF Y Length (Short)	Input	High/Low
ADF Y Length (Long)	Input	High/Low
ADF Jam Cover Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Paper Path Pick Height Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Ultrasonic	Input	Numeric
ADF Pick Success Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Top of Form Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Paper Path Deskew Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Paper Present Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Width Sensor	Input	Numeric

Table 5-21 Flatbed sensors

Name	Type	Status
Flatbed Cover Sensor	Input	High/Low
Flatbed Y (length) short Sensor	Input	High/Low
Flatbed Y (length) long Sensor	Input	High/Low
Flatbed Cover Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-22 ACR/CTD sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
112-0340	Center ID Sensor - P Wave Value	Input	Numeric

Table 5-23 Finisher (Option) sensors

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Booklet End Fence	113-3000	Booklet End Fence Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Entrance	113-3100	Booklet Entrance Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Exit	113-3120	Booklet Exit Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Fold	113-2202	Booklet Maker Detection	Input	Installed/Not installed

Table 5-23 Finisher (Option) sensors (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Booklet Fold	113-3040	Booklet Blade Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Output Tray	113-2150	Booklet Output Tray Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Paddle	113-3050	Booklet C-Fold Blade Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Paddle	113-3060	Booklet Diverter Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Paddle	113-3090	Booklet Paddle Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Paddle	113-3130	Booklet Presser Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Stapler	113-3010	Booklet Stapler Head Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Stapler	113-3020	Booklet Front Stapler Cartridge Level Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Stapler	113-3030	Booklet Rear Stapler Cartridge Level Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Tamper	113-3080	Booklet Tamper Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Tamper	113-3110	Booklet Tamper Sensor	Input	High/Low
Covers	113-0410	Front Cover Sensor	Input	High/Low
Covers	113-0420	Top Cover Sensor	Input	High/Low
Ejector	113-0461	Ejector1 Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Ejector	113-0462	Ejector2 Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Ejector	113-0463	Ejector2 Motor Sensor	Input	High/Low
End Fence	113-0361	End Fence Sensor	Input	High/Low
Entrance	113-0350	Entrance Sensor	Input	High/Low
Exit	113-0360	Exit Sensor	Input	High/Low
Finisher Connection	113-0351	Finisher Detection Sensor	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Output Tray	113-0470	Paper Holding Sensor	Input	High/Low
Output Tray	113-0471	Output Tray Top of Stack Sensor	Input	High/Low
Output Tray	113-0472	Output Tray Lower Limit Sensor	Input	High/Low
Output Tray	113-0473	Output Tray Motor Sensor	Input	High/Low
Paddle	113-0370	Paddle Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Paper Support	113-0481	Paper Support Home Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-23 Finisher (Option) sensors (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Punch	113-0610	Punch Motor Sensor	Input	High/Low
Punch	113-0612	Punch Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Punch	113-0620	Punch Waste Box Sensor	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Punch	113-0621	Punch Waste Full Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0430	Stapler Head Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0440	Stapler Cartridge Level Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0451	Stapler Cartridge Detection Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0491	Stapler Front Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0492	Stapler Rear Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0493	Stapler Front Pos Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0494	Stapler Rear Pos Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tamper	113-0380	Rear Tamper Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tamper	113-0390	Front Tamper Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Bridge	113-2070	Bridge Entrance Sensor	Input	High/Low
Bridge	113-2071	Bridge Exit Sensor	Input	High/Low
Bridge	113-2180	Bridge Door Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Bridge	113-2200	Bridge Detection	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Buffer	113-2100	Buffer Sensor	Input	High/Low
Buffer	113-2210	Buffer Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Manual Stapler	113-2160	Manual Staple Sensor	Input	High/Low
Manual Stapler	113-2161	Manual Staple Button Sensor	Input	High/Low
Punch Detection	113-2201	Punch Detection	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Punch Detection	113-4000	Punch Scan Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Punch Detection	113-4060	Punch Type Detection1	Input	High/Low
Punch Detection	113-4061	Punch Type Detection2	Input	High/Low
SCU (Set Clam Unit)	113-2010	Paper Holding Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
SCU (Set Clam Unit)	113-2141	Front Paper Holding Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-23 Finisher (Option) sensors (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
SCU (Set Clam Unit)	113-2142	Rear Paper Holding Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-24 Cover sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
102-0352	DCF Feed Cover Open	Input	Closed/Open
102-0435	Front Cover Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
102-0436	Side Cover Sensor	Input	Closed/Open

Table 5-25 Developer sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0070	Black Toner Concentration Sensor	Input	Numeric

Table 5-26 Environmental sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
109-0012	Inner Temperature Sensor	Input	Numeric
109-0013	Outer Temperature Sensor	Input	Numeric
109-0014	Humidity Sensor	Input	Numeric

Table 5-27 Fuser sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
109-0000	Fuser Temperature A Sensor	Input	Numeric
109-0010	Fuser Temperature B Sensor	Input	Numeric
109-0016	Fuser Temperature C Sensor	Input	Numeric
109-0017	Fuser Temperature D Sensor	Input	Numeric
109-0400	Wrap Jam Sensor	Input	Numeric
109-0140	Fuser Gap Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
109-0141	Fuser Gap Home Sensor (through motor running)	Input	High/Low
109-0300	Fuser Detection	Input	Installed/Not Installed

Table 5-28 LSU sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
110-0170	LSU HSync4 Sensor	Input	High/Low
110-0200	LSU Detection	Input	High/Low

Table 5-29 Paper Path sensors

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Feed	102-0293	Feed2 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Feed	102-0361	Fuser Out Sensor	Input	High/Low
Feed Registration	102-0360	Regi. Sensor	Input	High/Low
Output	101-0190	Out-Bin Full Sensor	Input	High/Low
Output	101-0191	Out-Bin2 Full Sensor (Option)	Input	High/Low
Output Exit	102-0371	Exit2 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Duplex Jam 1	102-0380	Duplex Jam1 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Duplex Jam 2	102-0390	Duplex Jam2 Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-30 Power Supply sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
109-0200	Fuser Relay Sensor	Input	High/Low
109-0210	Zero Cross Period	Input	Numeric
101-1000	Power 24V	Input	Numeric
106-0200	HVPS Detection	Input	High/Low

Table 5-31 TCU sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
100-0250	Waste Toner Full Sensor	Input	Numeric
104-0000	Waste Toner Detection Sensor	Input	Installed/Not Installed

Table 5-32 Toner sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0230	Black Toner Dispense Motor Sensor	Input	High/Low
111-0231	Black Toner Dispense Motor Sensor (through motor running)	Input	High/Low

Table 5-33 Toner Residual Amount sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0075	Black Toner Residual Amount Sensor	Input	Numeric

Table 5-34 Tray sensors

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Tray 1	102-0280	Tray 1 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 2	102-0000	Tray 2 Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 2	102-0010	Tray 2 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 2	102-0041	Tray 2 Paper Size Sensor	Input	Numeric
Tray 2	102-0050	Tray 2 Stack Height Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 2	102-0292	Pre Feed2 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 3	102-0070	Tray 3 Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 3	102-0080	Tray 3 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 3	102-0111	Tray 3 Paper Size Sensor	Input	Numeric
Tray 3	102-0120	Tray 3 Stack Height Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 3	102-0301	Pre Feed3 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0730	Tray 4 Knock Up Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0731	Tray 4 Shift Tray Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0732	Tray 4 Shift Tray Level Sensor1	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0733	Tray 4 Shift Tray Level Sensor2	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0734	Tray 4 Shift Plate Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0735	Tray 4 Shift Plate End Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0736	Tray 4 Gate Solenoid Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0140	Tray 4 Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0150	Tray 4 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0181	Tray 4 Paper Size Sensor	Input	Numeric 3 digits

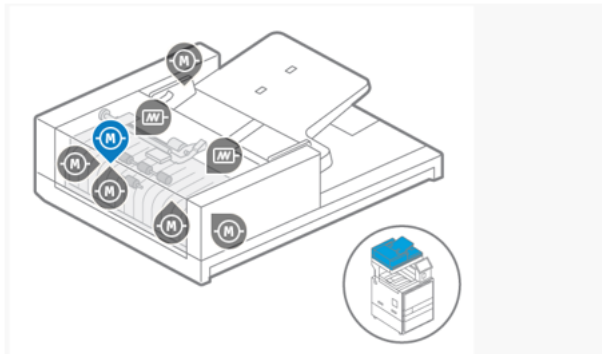
Table 5-34 Tray sensors (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0190	Tray 4 Stack Height Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0321	Pre Feed4 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0330	Tray 4 Door Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0320	Tray 4 Feed Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0210	Tray 5 Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0220	Tray 5 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0251	Tray 5 Paper Size Sensor	Input	Numeric
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0260	Tray 5 Stack Height Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0271	Tray 5 Level Sensor1	Input	High/Low
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0272	Tray 5 Level Sensor2	Input	High/Low
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0273	Tray 5 Detection Sensor1	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0274	Tray 5 Detection Sensor2	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0343	Pre Feed5 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0350	Tray 5 Door Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 6 (Option)	102-0480	Tray 6 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 6 (Option)	102-0520	Tray 6 Stack Height Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 6 (Option)	102-0531	Tray 6 Level Sensor1	Input	High/Low
Tray 6 (Option)	102-0532	Tray 6 Level Sensor2	Input	High/Low
Tray 6 (Option)	102-0533	Tray 6 Detection Sensor1	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Tray 6 (Option)	102-0534	Tray 6 Detection Sensor2	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Tray 6 (Option)	102-0353	Pre Feed6 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 6 (Option)	102-0351	Tray 6 Door Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open


Component tests

Use this menu to test components such as a motor, clutch, solenoid, fan, or bias, by selecting each component's callout on the control panel.

Select the callout and touch the [Start](#) button to run the component test.



ADF Pick Roller Up/Down
Touch "Start" to run the test.

 **NOTE:** This image may differ from your control panel display.


 **IMPORTANT:** Include this information when escalating related issues to the GBU engineer.

Table 5-35 Component types

Name	Reference table
Document Feeder Motors	Document Feeder Motor component tests
Scanner Motors	Scanner Motor component tests
Finisher (Option)	Finisher (Option) component tests
Developer	Developer component tests
Drum	Drum component tests
Duct/Reservoir	Duct/Reservoir component tests
Fan	Fan component tests
Fuser	Fuser component tests
LSU	LSU component tests
Paper Path	Paper Path component tests
Power Supply	Power Supply component tests
TCU	TCU component tests
Toner	Toner component tests
Trays	Tray component tests

Table 5-36 Document Feeder Motor component tests

Name	Type	Status
ADF Tray Lift Motor	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Feed Motor	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Deskew Motor	Output	Start/Stop

Table 5-36 Document Feeder Motor component tests (continued)

Name	Type	Status
ADF Pickup Clutch	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Deskew Clutch	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Pick Roller Up/Down	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Retard Motor	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Exit Motor	Output	Start/Stop

Table 5-37 Scanner Motor component tests

Name	Type	Status
Scanner Motor	Output	Start/Stop

Table 5-38 Finisher (Option) component tests

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Booklet End Fence	113-3510	Booklet Fold Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet End Fence	113-3520	Booklet End Fence Solenoid	Output	On/Off
Booklet End Fence	113-3530	Booklet End Fence Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Entrance	113-3500	Booklet Entrance Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Entrance	113-3510	Booklet Fold Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Entrance	113-3520	Booklet End Fence Solenoid	Output	On/Off
Booklet Entrance	113-3530	Booklet End Fence Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Fold	113-3590	Booklet C-Fold Blade Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Paddle	113-3560	Booklet Diverter Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Paddle	113-3570	Booklet Presser Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Paddle	113-3580	Booklet Paddle Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Stapler	113-3600	Booklet Stapler Head Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Tamper	113-3540	Booklet Tamper Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Tamper	113-3550	Booklet Blade Motor	Output	On/Off
Ejector	113-2530	Pre Ejector Motor	Output	On/Off
Ejector	113-2540	Post Ejector Motor	Output	On/Off
Entrance	113-2510	Paper Holding Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-38 Finisher (Option) component tests (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Entrance	113-2520	Entrance Motor - Diverter	Output	On/Off
Entrance	113-2570	Entrance Motor - Entrance	Output	On/Off
Exit	113-2500	Main Exit Cam Motor	Output	On/Off
Exit	113-2580	Exit Motor	Output	On/Off
Output Tray	113-2610	Main Output Tray Motor	Output	On/Off
Paddle	113-2600	Paddle Motor	Output	On/Off
Paper Support	113-0571	Paper Support Motor	Output	On/Off
Punch	113-0610	Punch Motor Sensor	Input	High/Low
Punch	113-0600	Punch Motor	Output	On/Off
Punch	113-4500	Punch Scan Motor	Output	On/Off
Stapler	113-0550	Stapler Head Motor	Output	On/Off
Stapler	113-0581	Stapler Position Motor	Output	On/Off
Stapler	113-2620	Stapler Position Motor	Output	On/Off
Stapler	113-2621	Stapler Head Motor	Output	On/Off
Tamper	113-0520	Rear Tamper Motor	Output	On/Off
Tamper	113-0530	Front Tamper Motor	Output	On/Off
Tamper	113-2630	Front Tamper Motor	Output	On/Off
Tamper	113-2640	Rear Tamper Motor	Output	On/Off
Bridge	113-2560	Bridge Motor	Output	On/Off
Buffer	113-2660	Buffer Motor	Output	On/Off
Buffer	113-2670	Buffer Solenoid	Output	On/Off
Covers	113-2650	Top Cover LED - Blue	Output	On/Off
Covers	113-2651	Top Cover LED - Red	Output	On/Off
End Fence	113-2590	End Fence Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-39 Developer component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0140	Black Toner Control Voltage	Output	On/Off
100-0071	Black Deve Motor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-40 Drum component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
100-0049	Black Drum Motor	Input	High/Low
107-0169	Black Eraser	Input	High/Low

Table 5-41 Duct/Reservoir component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0330	Black Toner Duct/Reservoir Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-42 Fan component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
100-0270	SMPS Fan	Input	High/Low
100-0271	SMPS Fan2	Input	High/Low
109-0047	Exit Fan	Input	High/Low
109-0022	Exit Fan2	Input	High/Low
109-0024	Exit Fan3	Input	High/Low
109-0026	Exit Fan4	Input	High/Low
110-0020	LSU Fan1	Input	High/Low

Table 5-43 Fuser component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
109-0034	Fuser Motor - Forward	Input	High/Low
109-0130	Fuser Gap Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-44 LSU component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
110-0000	LSU Motor1	Input	High/Low

Table 5-45 Paper Path component tests

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Feed	100-0420	Tray 1 Feed Motor	Output	On/Off
Feed	101-0120	Tray 2 Feed Motor	Output	On/Off
Feed	101-0130	Tray 3 Feed Motor	Output	On/Off
Feed	100-0410	Registration Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-45 Paper Path component tests (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Feed	101-0140	Tray 4 Feed Motor (Option)	Output	On/Off
Feed	101-0150	Tray 5 Feed Motor (Option)	Output	On/Off
Feed	101-0160	Tray 6 Feed Motor (Option)	Output	On/Off
Output	100-0430	Exit2 Motor - Forward	Output	On/Off
Output	100-0440	Exit2 Motor - Backward	Output	On/Off
Duplex	100-0140	Duplex Motor	Output	On/Off
Duplex	101-0280	Return Gate Solenoid	Output	On/Off
Duplex	100-0490	Duplex2 Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-46 Power Supply component tests

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Transfer	107-0033	THV(-) Bias	Output	On/Off
Transfer	107-0034	THV CC Bias	Output	On/Off
Transfer	107-0035	THV CV Bias	Output	On/Off
Drum	105-0030	Black MHV Bias	Output	On/Off
Developer	106-0030	Black Developer Bias	Output	On/Off
Developer	106-0031	Black Developer AC Bias	Output	On/Off

Table 5-47 TCU component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
100-0241	Waste Toner LED	Output	On/Off

Table 5-48 Toner component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0030	Black Toner Dispense Motor	Output	On/Off
111-0430	Black Toner Unlock Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-49 Tray component tests

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Tray 1 Clutch	101-0270	Tray 1 Clutch	Output	On/Off
Tray 1	101-0271	Tray 1 Solenoid	Output	On/Off

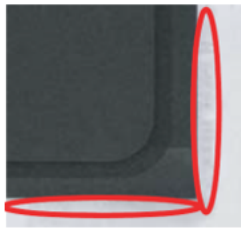
Table 5-49 Tray component tests (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Tray 1	101-0272	Tray 1 Pickup Clutch	Output	On/Off
Tray 2	100-0200	Tray 2 Pickup Motor - Lift	Output	On/Off
Tray 2	100-0370	Tray 2 Pickup Motor - Pickup	Output	On/Off
Tray 3	100-0210	Tray 3 Pickup Motor - Lift	Output	On/Off
Tray 3	100-0380	Tray 3 Pickup Motor - Pickup	Output	On/Off
Tray 4 (Option)	100-0220	Tray 4 Pickup Motor - Lift	Output	On/Off
Tray 4 (Option)	100-0390	Tray 4 Pickup Motor - Pickup	Output	On/Off
Tray 4 (Option)	101-0101	Tray 4 Shift Gate Solenoid	Output	On/Off
Tray 4 (Option)	100-0232	Tray 4 Shift Motor	Output	On/Off
Tray 5 (Option)	100-0230	Tray 5 Pickup Motor - Lift	Output	On/Off
Tray 5 (Option)	100-0400	Tray 5 Pickup Motor - Pickup	Output	On/Off
Tray 6 (Option)	100-0231	Tray 6 Elevating Motor	Output	On/Off
Tray 6 (Option)	100-0700	Tray 6 Pickup Motor	Output	On/Off

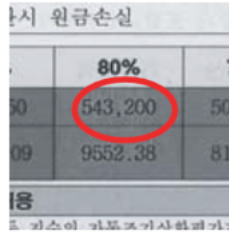
TR Control Mode

Use this menu to correct transfer related problems. This menu can be used to change the transfer value to optimize image quality for a certain type of paper.

Figure 5-39 Typical faulty images



[Blur]



[Poor Transfer]



[Re-Transfer]



[White Spot]



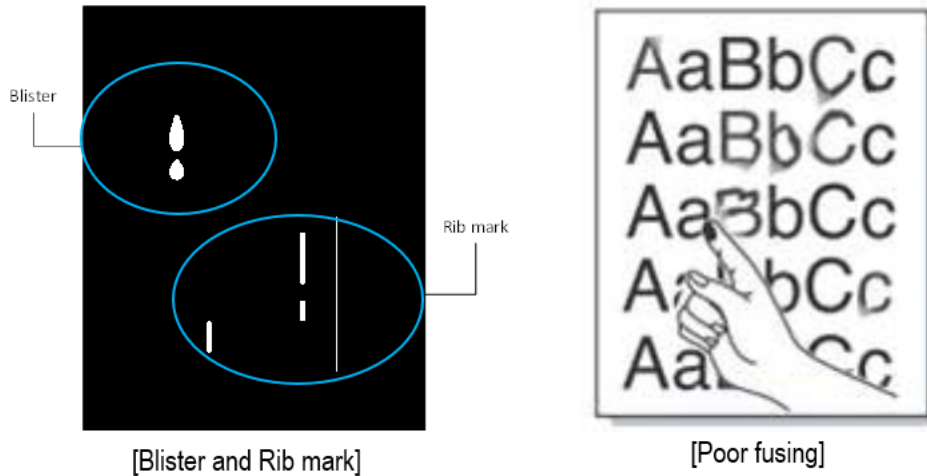
[OPC Cyclic Ghost]

- T2 Control Mode
 - **T2 PWM:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -20 to +20. For example:
 - Blur: Increase T2 PWM value.
 - Poor Transfer: Increase T2 PWM value.
 - Re-Transfer: Decrease T2 PWM value.
 - White Spot: Decrease T2 PWM value.
 - OPC Cyclic Ghost: Decrease T2 PWM value.


Low-temperature Idling Mode

Use this menu to improve print quality in low temperatures (below 7°C/ (44.6 °F)). Environment quality issues include rib marks (duplex), blisters in the printed image, or poor fusing, as show below.

Figure 5-40 Typical faulty images



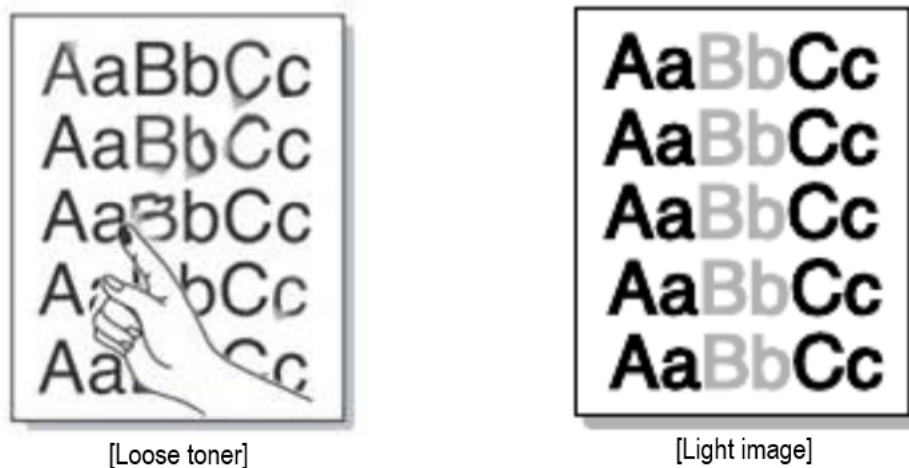
- **Off (default):** Disable this function.
- **On:** The printer will perform this function.

 **NOTE:** When this function is enabled, the printer will perform the fuser idle for 4 to 10 minutes before printing, depending on the outside temperature (below 7°C/ (44.6 °F)). Printing speed is therefore slower than when this function is off.

Altitude Adjustment

Use this menu to choose the altitude of the place where the printer is located. The print quality is affected by atmospheric pressure, which is determined by the height of the machine above sea level.

Figure 5-41 Typical faulty images



- **Normal (default):** 0 ~ 1,000 m (3,280 ft)
- **High 1:** 1,000 m (3,280 ft) ~ 2,000 m (6,561 ft)
- **High 2:** 2,000 m (6,561 ft) ~ 3,000 m (9,842 ft)
- **High 3:** 3,000 m (9,842 ft) ~ 4,000 m (13,123 ft)

- **High 4:** 4,000 m (13,123 ft) ~ 5,000 m (16,404 ft)

Humidity

Use this menu to troubleshoot print quality issues such as paper curl, dog ears, and poor paper stacking in the stacker output bins.

Increase the Humidity level from High 1 to High 3 until the print quality issues are resolved.

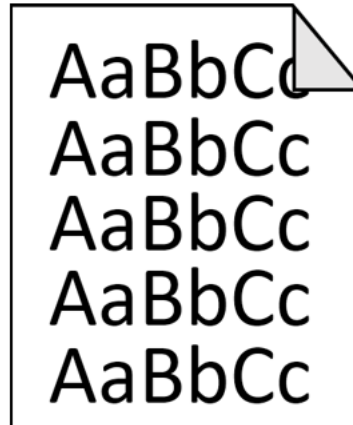


NOTE: Printing speed will be slow when the Humidity level is set to High 3.

Figure 5-42 Typical faulty images



[Paper curl]



[Dog ears]

- **Normal (default)**
- **High 1:** Preheating Idling for 13 seconds before the first job and increased gap for paper transfer (150 mm (6 in), Simplex only)
- **High 2:** Preheating Idling for 18 seconds before the first job and increased gap for paper transfer (200 mm (7.9 in), Simplex only)
- **High 3:** Preheating Idling for 20 seconds before the first job, increased gap for paper transfer (65 mm (2.5 in), Simplex only), and 50% process speed slow-down

Vapor Mode

Use this menu to prevent moisture on paper from affecting the print quality, including print-quality defects such as Dropouts or Background scatter.

Figure 5-43 Typical faulty images



[Dropouts]



[Background scatter]

- **Off (default):** Disables this function.
- **On:** Slows the printing speed by 50% and lowers the temperature of the fusing device when printing.
- **Auto:** Detects the temperature and humidity in the machine and adjusts the settings accordingly.

Footer

Use this menu to add printing information at the bottom of the printed page.

- **Off (default):** Disables this function.
- **On:** The printer performs this function.

PTT Test Mode

Use this menu to determine whether a fax transmission meets local standards.

Test Support

Use this menu to test the items listed below.

- Continuous Scan
- Continuous Copy
- Raw Scan
- Continuous Print From USB
- Automatic Calibrations
- Runtime Configuration

Part Replacement Count

Use this menu to display the number of parts replaced.

Table 5-50 Part Replacement Count items

Item
Black Cartridge
Black Drum
Black Developer Unit
Fuser Kit
Transfer Belt
Tray 1 Roller Kit
Tray 2 Roller Kit
Tray 3 Roller Kit
Tray 4 Roller Kit (Option)
Tray 5 Roller Kit (Option)
Tray 6 Roller Kit (Option)

Reset Supplies

Use this menu to reset the supplies counters.



IMPORTANT: After replacing a supply kit, use this function.

Table 5-51 Reset Supplies items

Item
Black Developer Unit
Tray 1 Roller Kit
Tray 2 Roller Kit
Tray 3 Roller Kit
Tray 4 Roller Kit (Option)
Tray 5 Roller Kit (Option)
Tray 6 Roller Kit (Option)

Fax V.29 Speed

Use this menu to select Line 1 or 2 of V.29, which will transmit at 9600 bps for faxes over VoIP when the VoIP connection is failing.

Maintenance menu

Use this menu to access features for maintaining the printer.

Table 5-52 Maintenance menu

First level	Second level	Third level
Backup/Restore		
Import/Export		
Calibration/Cleaning	Advanced Calibration Support	Custom Color
Calibration/Cleaning	Advanced Calibration Support	Auto Tone Adjustment
Calibration/Cleaning	Advanced Calibration Support	CTD Sensor Cleaning
Calibration/Cleaning	Advanced Calibration Support	Manual Tone Adjustment
Calibration/Cleaning	Toner Density Calibration	
Calibration/Cleaning	Calibrate Scanner	
USB Firmware Upgrade		
License Management		

Backup/Restore

Use this menu to create a backup copy of the product configuration and settings. Use the backup copy to restore settings when configuration recovery is necessary.

Import/Export

Use this menu to export files that can be used to configure other devices. Select which settings, contacts, or user accounts to include in the export. The files can be imported to other devices including those with different capabilities. Any imported settings that are not available on the target device will be ignored.

Custom Color

Use this menu to adjust the color density manually in order to meet the customer's needs.

- **Black:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -10 to +10.

Auto Tone Adjustment

Use this menu to adjust color tone automatically.

- **Off:** Disables this function.
- **On (Default):** The printer will perform this function when the following determined conditions have been met.
 - **After Pages Printed:** The printer will perform this function based on the count of printed pages since the last execution.
 - **After Period of Inactivity (Minutes):** The printer will perform this function when the printer returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceed the configured value.
 - **Adaptive:** Unchecked as a default.

- **Start:** The printer performs this function now.



NOTE: Select **Start** to manually perform this operation when the control panel displays sensor failure errors such as “CTD sensor calibration failure,” or when imaging parts such as the OPC drum, development unit, or ITB unit are replaced or reinstalled.

CTD Sensor Cleaning

Use this menu to calibrate the CTD sensor after cleaning the CTD and ACR sensor, when the control panel displays sensor errors such as “CTD sensor calibration failure” or “ACR sensor calibration failure.”

- **Start:** The printer performs this function immediately, and the sensor failure error message is cleared from the control panel.

Manual Tone Adjustment

Use this menu to adjust the color tone manually.

This function can adjust Highlights, Midtones, and Shadows.

- **Black:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -5 to +5.

Toner Density Calibration

Use this menu to calibrate the product immediately if you see problems with printer density.

- **Start:** The printer will perform this function now.

Calibrate Scanner

Use this menu when messages on the control panel direct you to run the calibration process.

- **Start:** The printer performs this function immediately.

USB Firmware Upgrade

Use this menu to perform a firmware upgrade using a USB flash drive.

Insert the USB flash drive that contains a firmware upgrade bundle into the USB port, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

- **Install:** Executes the firmware upgrade.

License Management

Use this menu to install a speed license, which will configure the engine to print at an upgraded speed.

Use **one** of the following procedures to install the speed license.


- Install a speed license from the HP Cloud using the control panel.



IMPORTANT: When an inner finisher is installed, the printer cannot exceed 60 pages-per minute (ppm). Do not install a speed license higher than 60 ppm for a printer with an inner finisher installed.

1. Connect a network cable to the printer.
2. Turn the printer power on, and wait for it to initialize to the **Ready** state.


3. Verify that the printer has a valid IP address and a working internet connection.

 **NOTE:** A proxy server might need to be configured now using the Embedded Web Server (EWS) or manually at the control panel.

4. At the printer Home screen, scroll to and then touch the Support Tools button.


5. Select the **License Management** menu in the left-side navigation pane.

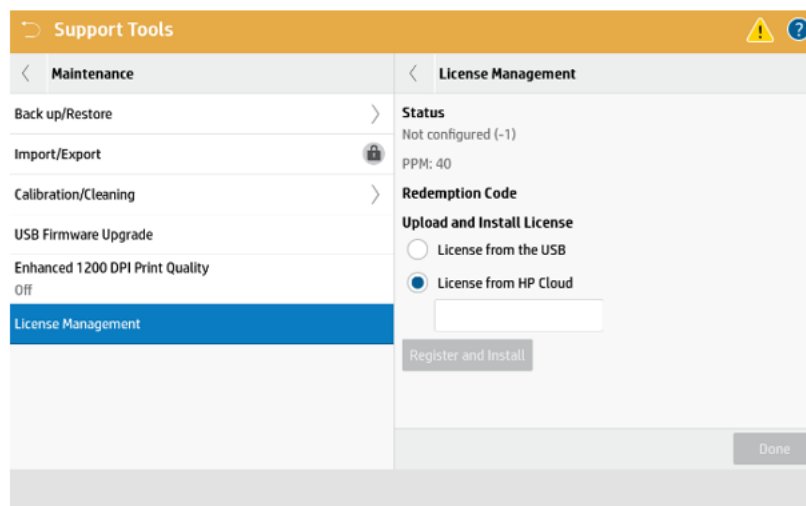
6. Select **License from HP Cloud** under **Upload and Install License**.

 **IMPORTANT:** A redemption code must be obtained from the HP Printer License Activation and Management website. <https://activation.jamangement.hp.com>.


7. Type in the redemption code obtained from the HP Printer License Activation and Management website.

8. Select the Register and Install button.

 **NOTE:** The printer restarts as part of the installation process. Wait at least a few minutes after the printer initializes to the **Ready** state to allow the speed license installation process to finish completely.



- Install a speed license offline manually using the HP Printer License Activation and Management web site.

 **IMPORTANT:** When an inner finisher is installed, the printer cannot exceed 60 pages-per minute (ppm). Do not install a speed license higher than 60 ppm for a printer with an inner finisher installed.

1. Download the speed license file to the PC from the HP Cloud Server.

- a. Open a browser and go to the HP Printer License Activation and Management website: <https://activation.jamangement.hp.com>.
- b. Select the country/region and SIGN IN on the HP Partner Portal.
- c. Select **Activation speed for new HP LaserJets** or select **Product Number**.

- d. Type the printer serial number in the **Device Serial Number** field.
- e. Use the drop-down menu to select the **Device Product Number**.
- f. Type in the redemption code in the **Redemption Code** field.



NOTE: A redemption code must be obtained from the HP Printer License Activation and Management website. <https://activation.jamanagement.hp.com>.

hp HP JetAdvantage Management Activation Sign Out

Register License Manage License Reports

Device Serial Number

Device Product Number

--- Select Device Product Number ---

Redemption Code

Register

- g. Click the **Register** button.
- h. When the registration is complete, download the speed license file to the computer, and then transfer it to a USB storage device.



CAUTION: The license file must be saved in the root directory of the USB device. Do not change the license file name.

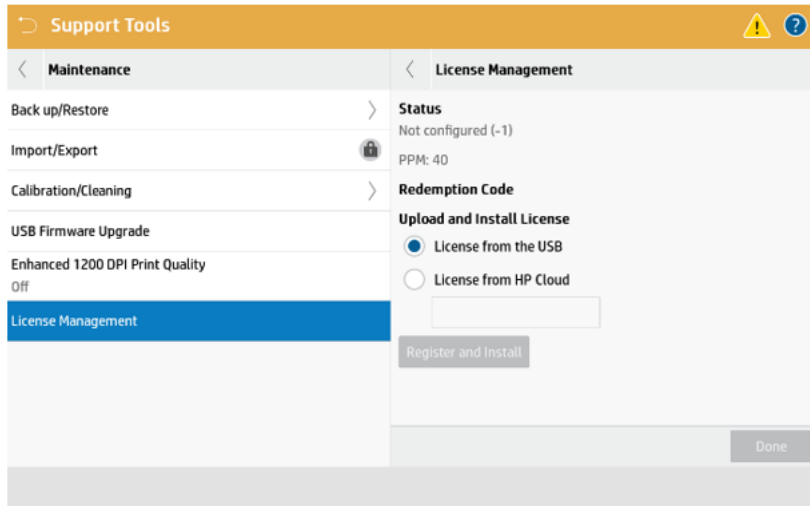
2. Use the steps below to manually install the speed license.
 - a. Turn the printer power on, and wait for it to initialize to the **Ready** state.
 - b. Insert the USB into the USB port on the printer.
 - c. At the printer Home screen, scroll to and then touch the **Support Tools** button.
 - d. Select **License from the USB** under **Upload and Install License**.
 - e. Touch the **Register and Install** button.



IMPORTANT: The printer installs the highest speed license among the license files on the USB device. Remove any license files for speeds above 60 ppm for a printer with an inner finisher installed. Speed upgrades cannot be downgraded.



NOTE: If the USB device is not detected, remove the USB device and turn the printer power off. Reinsert the USB device, and then turn the printer power on.



Troubleshooting menu

Use this menu to access features for troubleshooting the printer.

Table 5-53 Troubleshooting menu

First level	Second level
Reports	Configuration/Status Pages
Reports	Fax Reports
Reports	Other Pages
Fax Tools	Fax T.30 Trace Report
Fax Tools	Fax V.34
Fax Tools	JBIG Compression
Fax Tools	Fax Speaker Mode
Fax Tools	Fax Service Log
Print Quality Pages	PQ Troubleshooting Pages
Print Quality Pages	Advanced Print Quality Pages
Event Log	
Paper Path Page	
Diagnostic Tests	Run Fax Test
Retrieve Diagnostic Data	
Retrieve Fax Diagnostic Data	

Configuration/Status Pages

Use this menu to display (🖨️) or print (🖨️) the information listed below.

- Settings Menu Map

- Current Settings Page
- Configuration Page
- How to Connect Page
- Supplies Status Page
- Usage Page
- File Directory Page
- Web Services Status Page
- HP Flex Build Configuration Page

Fax Reports

Use this menu to display () or print () the information listed below.

- Fax Activity Log
- Billing Codes Report
- Blocked Fax List
- Fax Call Report

Other Pages

Use this menu to print () the information listed below.

- PCL Font List
- PS Font List

Fax T.30 Trace Report

Use this menu to print the Fax trace reports with the selected conditions on each Line 1 or Line 2.

The T.30 trace is a printed report which produces a record of all the communications between the sending and receiving fax machines for the last fax transmission or reception. The report has many technical details which are usually beyond the scope of most users. However, the report contains detailed error codes and other information that might be useful in troubleshooting a particular problem related to sending or receiving a fax. The report contents might be requested by an HP service representative when trying to determine the cause of a problem and will help to determine the appropriate action.

- **Never automatically print:** The printer does not print the fax trace report.
- **Print after every fax:** The printer will print the fax trace report after every fax job.
- **Print only after fax send jobs:** The printer will print the fax trace report after sending a fax job.
- **Print only after received faxes:** The printer will print the fax trace report after receiving a fax job.
- **Print only after fax send errors:** The printer will print the fax trace report when a fax sending error occurs.

- **Print only after fax receive errors:** The printer will print the fax trace report when a fax receiving error occurs.
- **Print only after any fax error:** The printer will print the fax trace report when any fax error occurs.
- **Print Now:** The printer prints the fax trace report immediately.

Fax V.34

Use this menu to resolve a fax sending or receiving problem on each Line 1 or Line 2.

The V.34 setting is the modem protocol that the printer uses to send faxes. It is the worldwide standard for full-duplex modems that send and receive data across telephone lines at up to 33,600 bits per second (bps). The factory-set default for the V.34 setting is On.

You should change the V.34 setting only if you are having trouble sending a fax to or receiving a fax from a particular device. Turning off the setting might be useful when you are trying to send a fax overseas, or receive one from overseas, or if you are using a satellite telephone connection.

- **Enable (default):** The Fax V.34 is activated.
- **Disable:** The Fax V.34 is not activated.

JBIG Compression

Use this menu to resolve a fax sending problem when another receiving fax device cannot support it.

JBIG compression can reduce fax transmission times significantly when enabled. When enabled, documents will be JBIG encoded when sending and receiving with another JBIG capable fax device. When a fax is sent to or received from a non-JBIG capable device, other compression algorithms will be used.

- **On:** JBIG compression is enabled.
- **Off (default):** JBIG compression is disabled.

Fax Speaker Mode

Use this menu to enable or disable the fax speaker mode.

- **Normal (default):** The fax modem speaker is turned on during dialing through the initial connection and then shuts off.
- **Diagnostic:** The speaker is turned on and remains on for all fax communications until the setting is returned to Normal mode.

Fax Service Log

Use this menu to print the detailed fax service log.


- **Print:** The printer prints the detailed fax service log.

PQ Troubleshooting Pages

Use this menu to check the print quality with a printed test page.

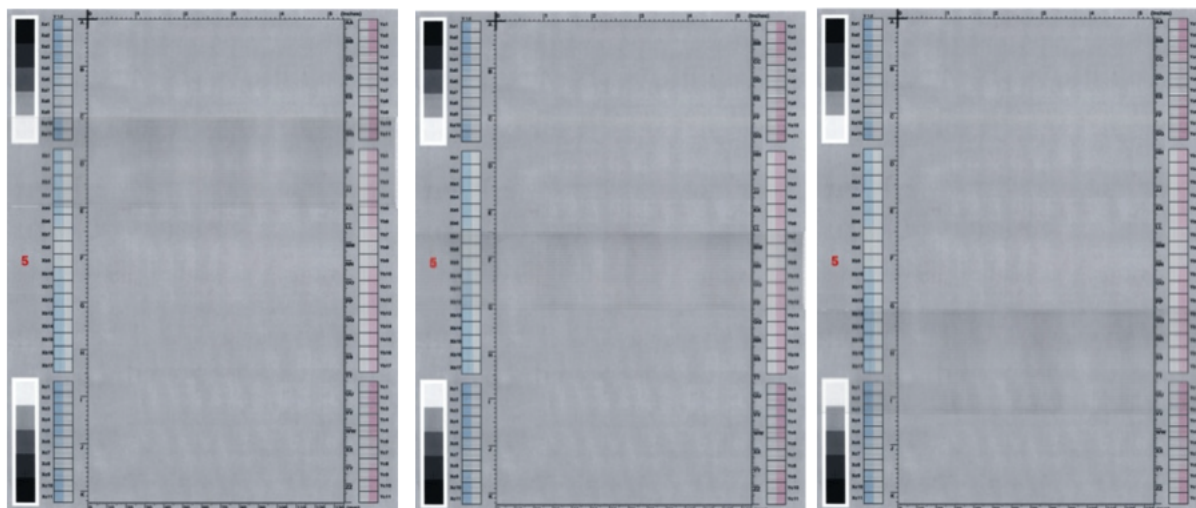
- **Print:** The printer prints the PQ troubleshooting pages.

The printer returns to the [Ready](#) state after printing the PQ troubleshooting pages. Review the PQ troubleshooting pages, and perform the corresponding troubleshooting procedure below.

 **NOTE:** The images below are only examples and may not exactly match your output. Black toner is being used for clarity.

Toner smear

As shown below, the issue may vary in location and appearance.



Description

A portion of the image is smeared in the feed (horizontal) direction. The section that is smeared may be a narrow or wide streak, and may extend across the entire page.

Most likely causes

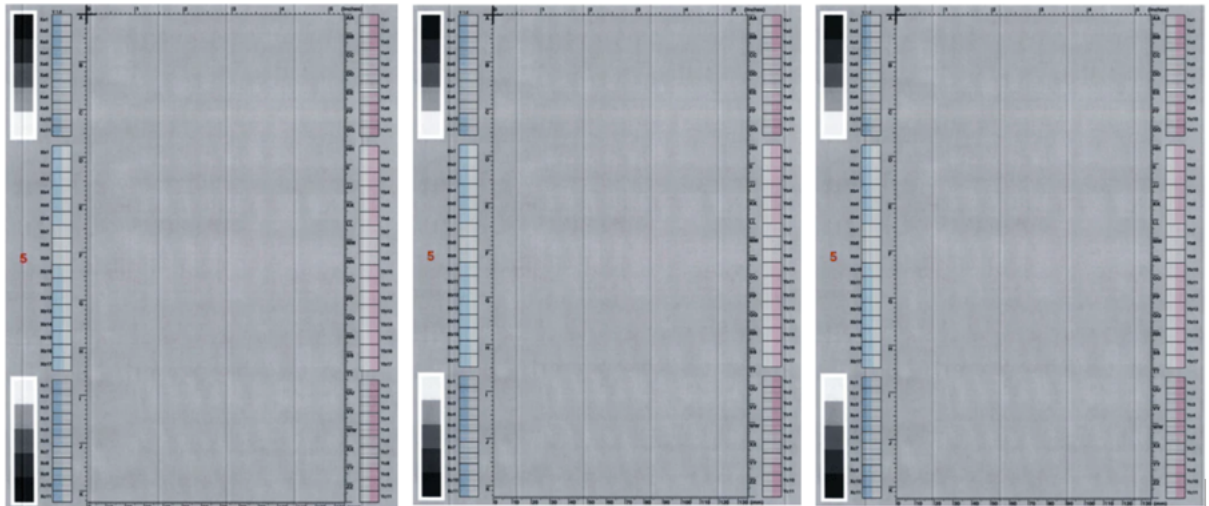
- Smears occur more commonly after a paper jam, or during the first daily printing in a high-temperature, high-humidity environment.

Troubleshooting and suggestions

1. If the smear was first observed after a paper jam, check the PTB unit for torn pieces of paper. Then go to the next step.
2. Print approximately 10 pages to see if the smear clears. If the toner smear still can be observed, go to the next step.
3. Replace the PTB unit.
4. After replacing the PTB unit, print another set of PQ troubleshooting pages.
5. Look at the new set of PQ troubleshooting test pages. If the issue is not resolved, contact HP.

Sharp banding repeating

As shown below, the issue may vary in location and appearance.



Description

Pages print with sharp, narrow, dark bands repeating.

Most likely causes

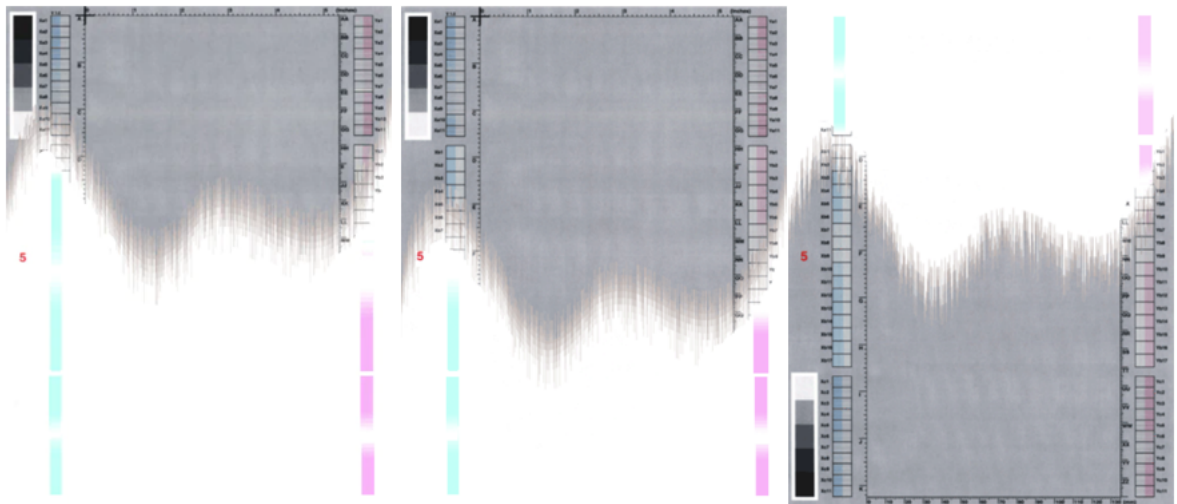
- The developer roller in the black image drum.

Troubleshooting and suggestions

1. Replace the black image drum.
2. After replacing the black image drum, print another set of PQ troubleshooting pages.
3. Look at the new set of test pages. If the issue is not resolved, contact HP.

Partial Missing color plane

As shown below, the issue may vary in location and appearance.



Description

The background color of the black test page is missing toner. The boundary between where the toner is present and not present creates a wavy pattern.

Most likely causes

- One of the transfer rollers in the intermediate-transfer belt unit does not have even pressure across the belt.

Troubleshooting and suggestions

1. Check the PTB unit to see whether the bushings are correctly positioned.
2. Print another set of PQ troubleshooting pages.
3. Look at the new set of test pages. If the issue is not resolved, then check the printer toner cartridge.
4. Print and examine another set of PQ troubleshooting pages.
5. If the issue is not resolved by the black image drum test procedure, contact HP.

Advanced Print Quality Pages

Use this menu to print test pages with the selected test page type.

- **Print:** The printer prints the selected quality test pages
 - EP Calibration Pattern2 Halftone
 - Tone Curve Int Calibration K Pattern
 - Engine K Pattern for Optical Density
 - Tone Curve Ext Measurement Page

Event Log

Use this menu to display and print event logs such as an event code, date/time, cycles and repetitions on the printer.

- **Print** (): The printer prints the event logs.

Paper Path Page

Use this menu to display and print a paper path usage on the printer.

- **Print:** The printer prints the paper path usage report.

Run Fax Test

Use this menu to perform tests on specific components within the product to determine whether the components are functioning correctly.

The printer prints a fax test report. The report contains the following possible results.

- **Pass:** The report contains all of the current fax settings. The printer is ready to send and receive faxes.
- **Fail:** The report indicates the nature of the error and contains information on how to resolve the issue.

Retrieve Diagnostic Data

Use this feature to generate debug data and to retrieve that diagnostic data from the product.

Select from the following options:

- [Create zipped debug information file](#): This option creates a .zip file that can be saved only to a USB device.
- [Create device data file](#): This option creates a device data file. By default it is sent to a USB drive. Select **Send to Email** to send the file as an email instead.

Retrieve Fax Diagnostic Data

Use this menu to export Fax diagnostic data from the printer using a USB drive.

Insert a USB drive into the USB port. Click the [Save](#) button.

6 Remove and replace

You will learn more about remove and replace.

Before servicing

Learn about ordering parts, using part lists, electrostatic precautions, and the HP service approach.

Order parts by authorized service providers

Find information about ordering parts and supplies for the printer.

Ordering

Order parts by authorized service providers.

Table 6-1 Ordering

Item or provider	Description
Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order parts from authorized service providers	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the exploded assembly diagrams are orderable parts.

Refer to the tables following the diagrams or the alphabetical/numerical parts lists to determine if a part is orderable.


How to use parts lists and diagrams

Learn how to use the parts lists and diagrams.

The figures in this chapter show the major sub-assemblies in the printer and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. The table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).





NOTE: Be sure to order the correct part. When looking for part numbers for electrical parts, pay careful attention to the voltage that is listed in the part description. Doing so will make sure that the selected part number is for the correct printer model.

 **NOTE:** The abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

ESD precautions

Learn the importance of electrostatic discharge.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Service approach

Learn more about the service approach.

Precautions when replacing parts

Learn about precautions when replacing parts.

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the machine, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains different kinds of screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCAs

Static electricity might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
 - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
 - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
 - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.

- Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
 - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
 - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
 - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
 - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches might easily break. Be careful when releasing them. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

Before performing service

Learn what to do before performing service.

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Remove any finishing devices and the side HCl, if they are installed.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges, if needed.

After performing service

Learn what to do after performing service.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

Learn about the print-quality test.

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Copy-quality test

Learn about the copy-quality test.

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder, print a copy job, and then verify the results.
2. Place the configuration page on the flatbed glass, print a copy job, and then verify the results

Fax-quality test

Learn about the fax-quality test.

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder.
2. Type a valid fax number, and send the fax job.
3. Verify that the send quality and the receive quality meet expectations.

Parts removal order

For procedures and/or steps that require identifying the right, left, or rear side of the printer, face the front of the printer for correct orientation.

Base printer

Learn about base printer parts removal and replacement.

Covers

Learn about base printer cover replacement.

Base covers

Review the base cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Rear upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the rear upper cover.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the rear upper cover.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-2 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40008	Rear upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

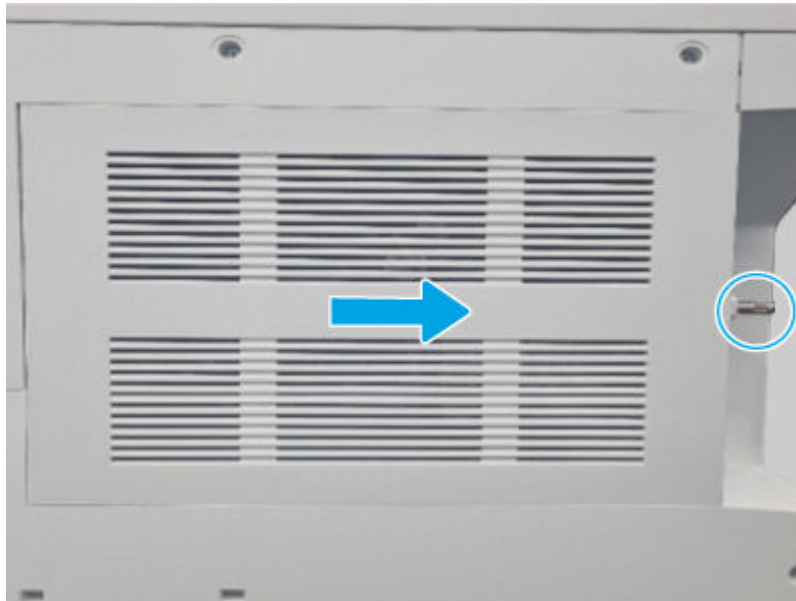
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1 Remove the cover

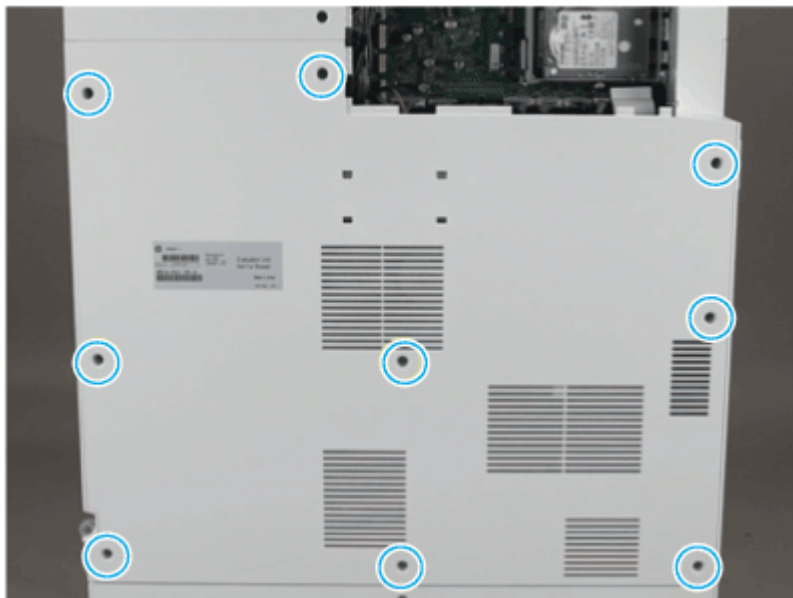


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-2 Remove the cover

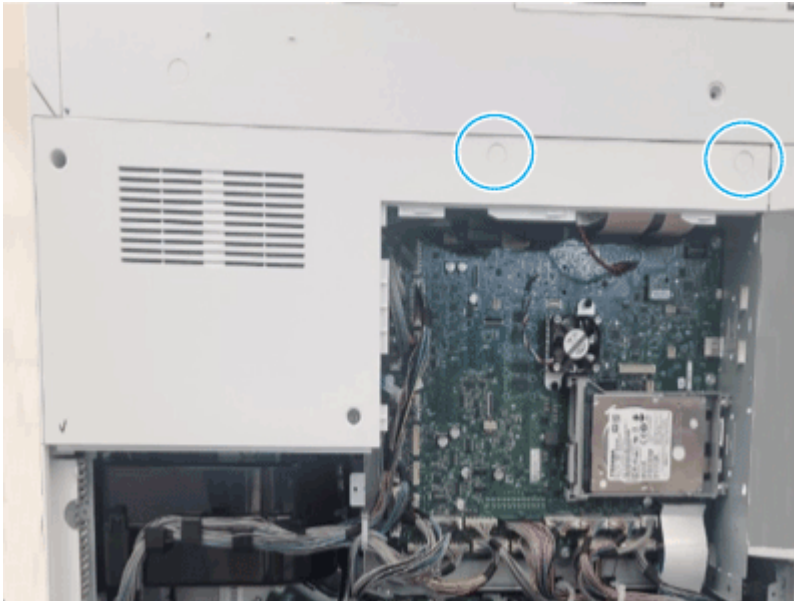


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

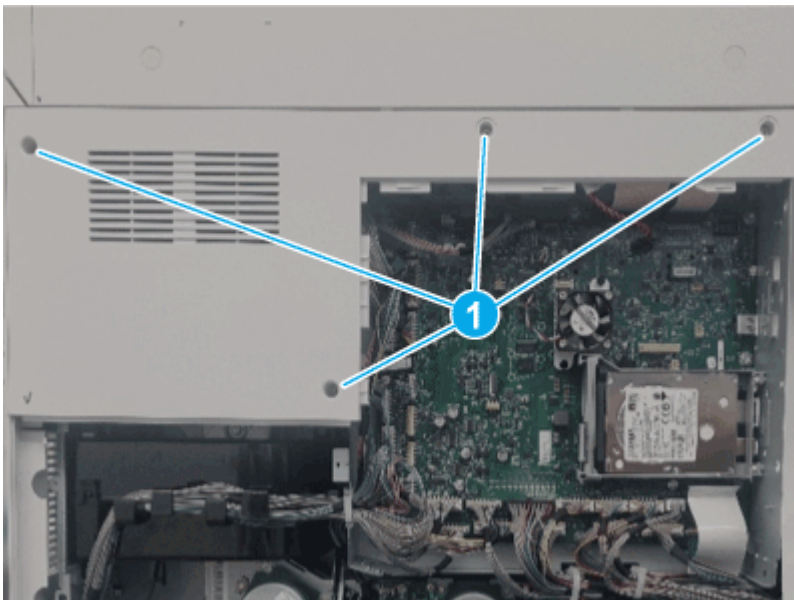
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-3 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-4 Remove the cover



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear lower cover

Learn about removing and replacing the rear lower cover.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the rear lower cover.](#)


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-3 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40019	Rear lower cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

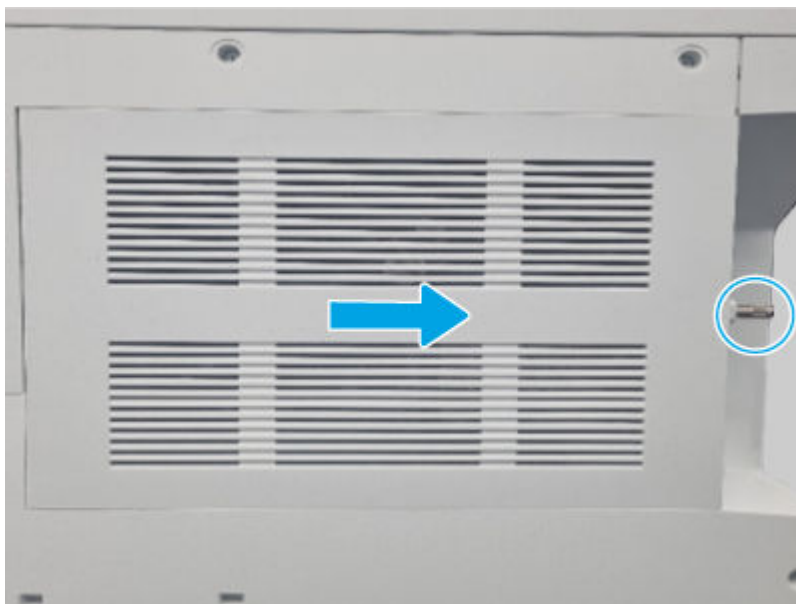
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-5 Remove the cover

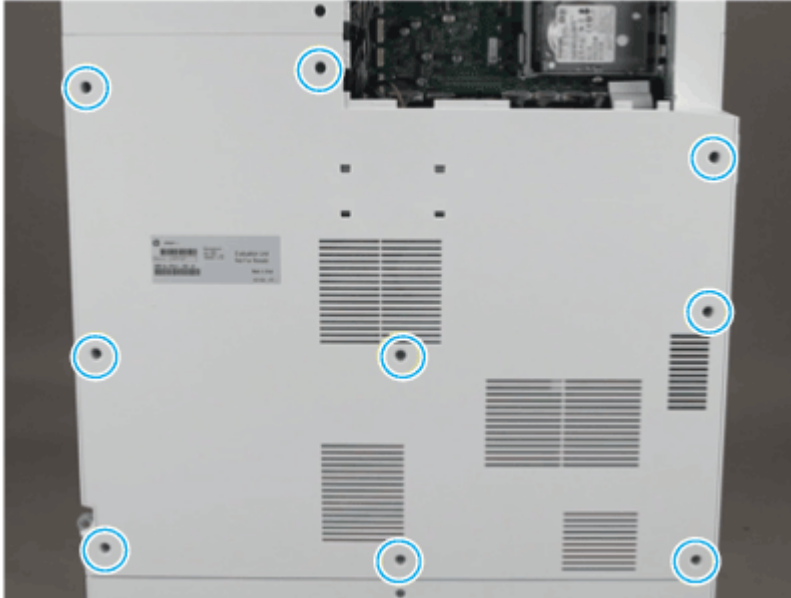


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-6 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Controller cover

Learn about removing and replacing the controller cover.



[View a video of removing and replacing the controller cover.](#)

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-4 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-61005	Controller cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

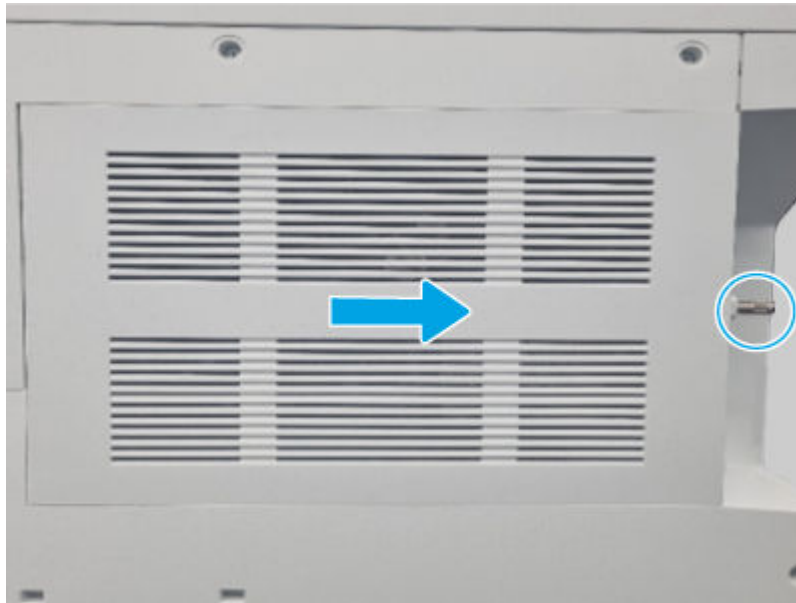
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-7 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the exit rear cover.



[View a video of removing and replacing the exit rear cover.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-5 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40028	Exit rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-8 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-9 Remove the cover



2. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-10 Remove the cover

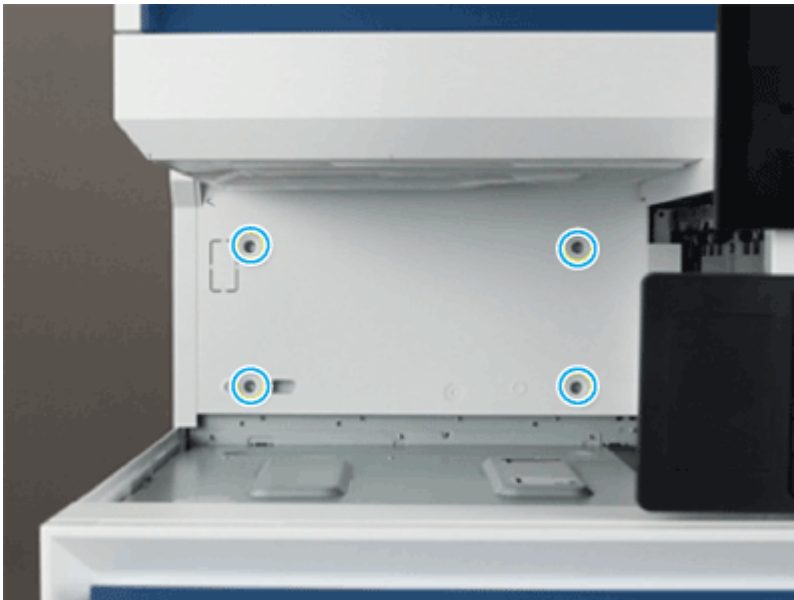


3. Remove the exit rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the cover.


Figure 6-11 Remove the cover



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left top cover

Learn about removing and replacing the left top cover.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the left top cover.](#)


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-6 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04862B	Left top cover

Required tools

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-12 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the left upper cover.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the left upper cover.](#)


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-7 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40027	Left upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.

💡 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-13 Remove the cover



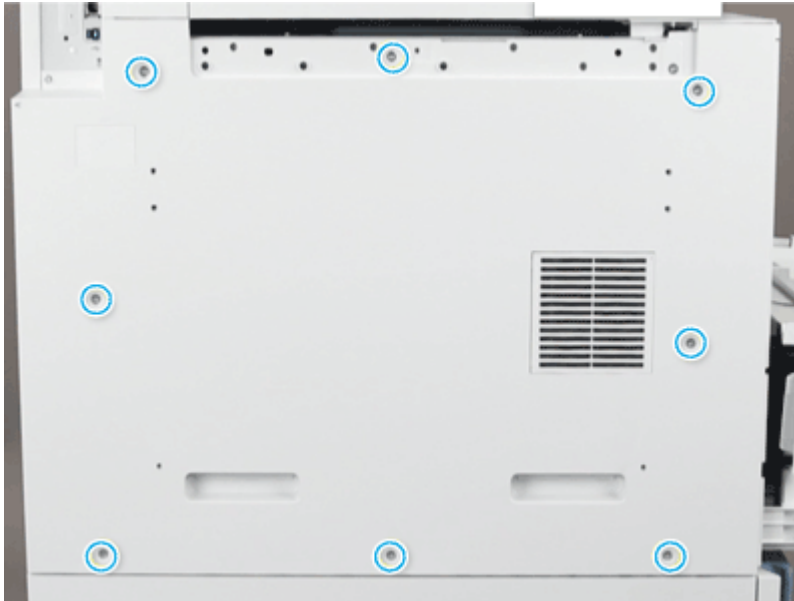
2. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

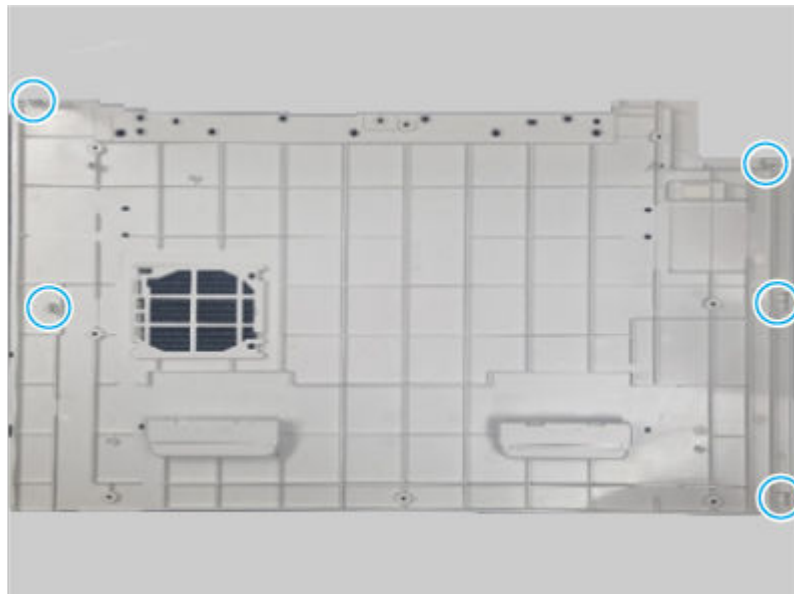
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-14 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-15 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-16 Remove the cover

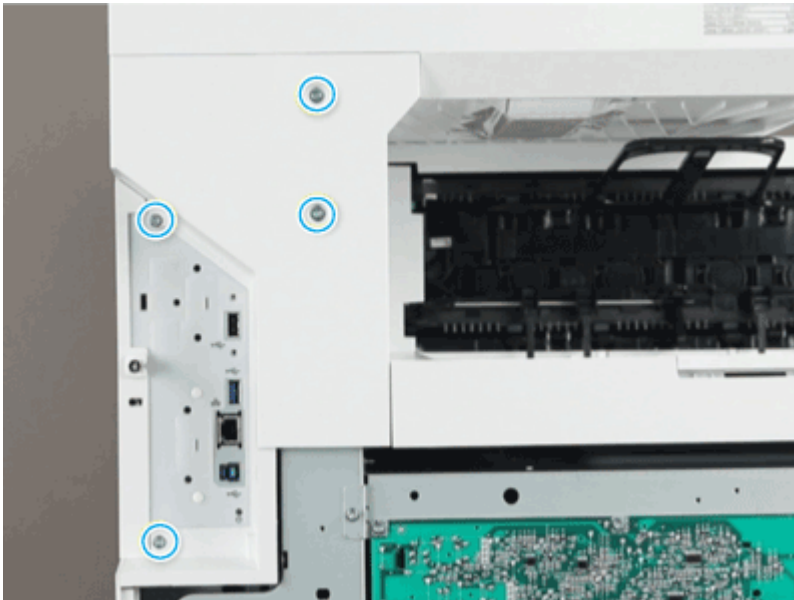


3. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-17 Remove the cover



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the left cover.



[View a video of removing and replacing the left cover.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-8 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40049	Left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-18 Remove the cover



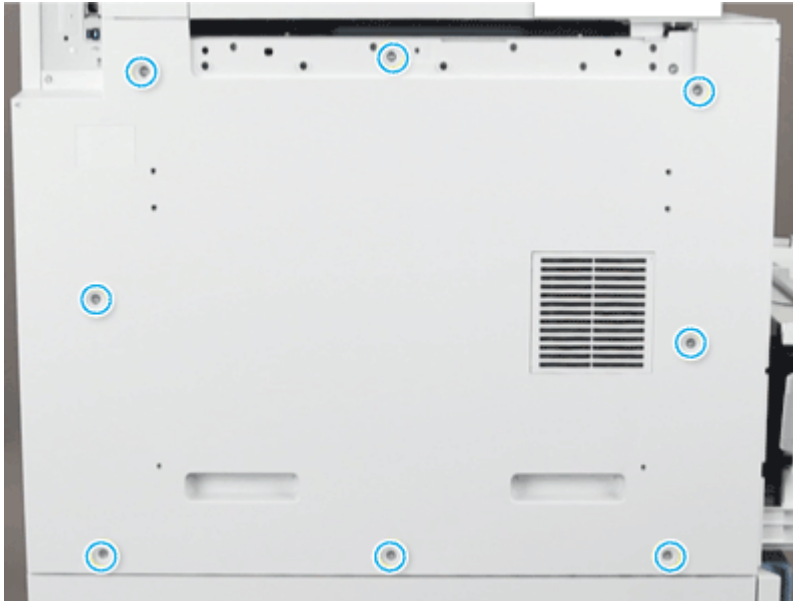
2. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

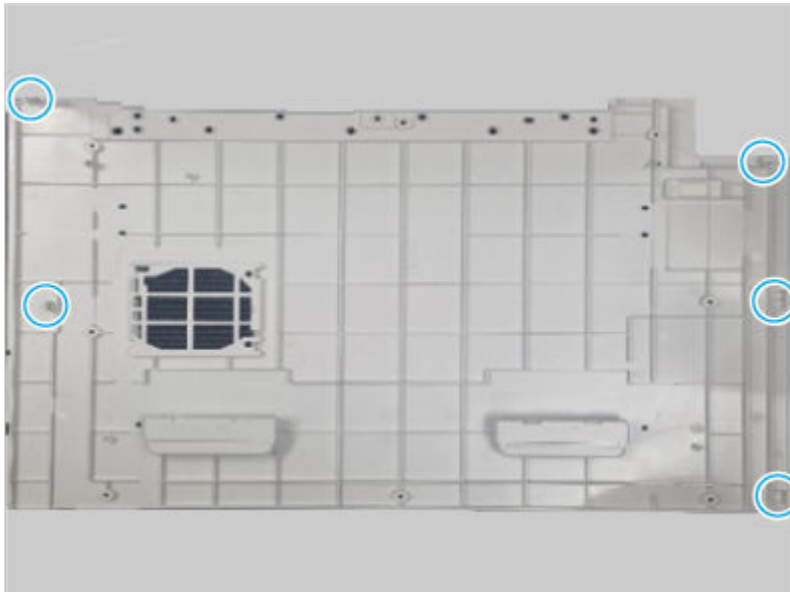
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-19 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-20 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-21 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Middle upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the middle upper cover.



[View a video of removing and replacing the middle upper cover.](#)

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-9 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40026	Middle upper cover

Required tools

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle upper cover.

1. Rotate the control panel into the upright position.

Figure 6-22 Raise the control panel



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release the cover, and then remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.


Figure 6-23 Remove the cover





2. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door sHCl dummy cover

Learn about removing and replacing the right door sHCl dummy cover.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the right door sHCl dummy cover.](#)


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-10 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04918B	Right door sHCl dummy cover

Required tools

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door sHCI dummy cover

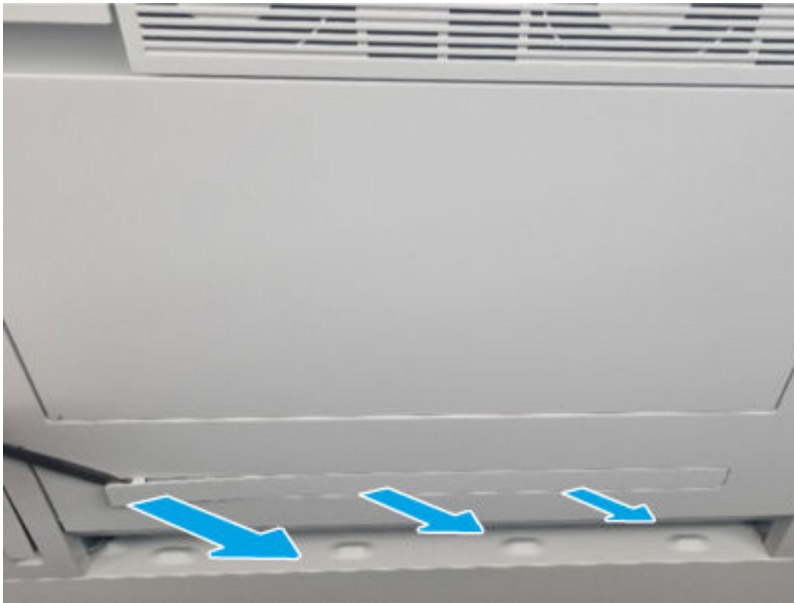
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door sHCI dummy cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to release the cover. Remove the cover.

 **TIP:** Position the tweezers as shown below.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.


Figure 6-24 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.


 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch

the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the right upper cover.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the right upper cover.](#)


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-11 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40021	Right upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.

- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

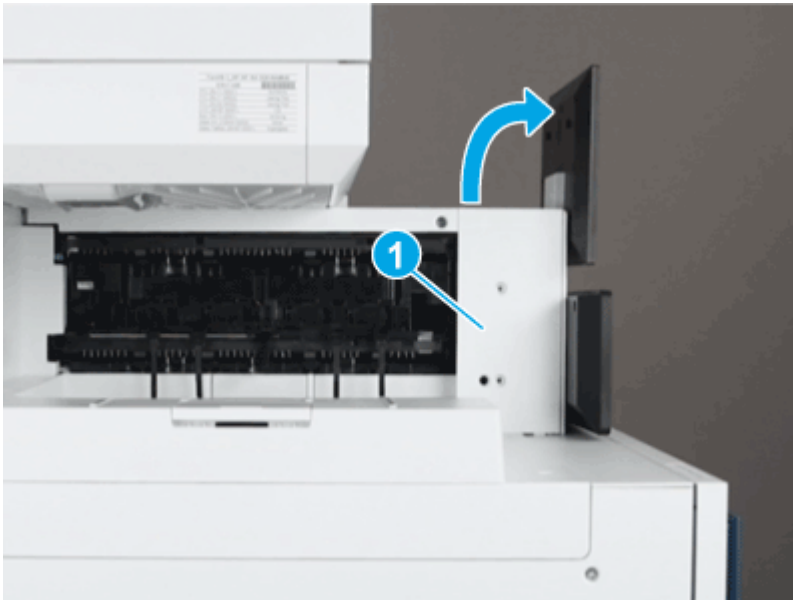
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-25 Remove two screws




2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-26 Remove the cover



2. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-27 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-28 Remove one screw



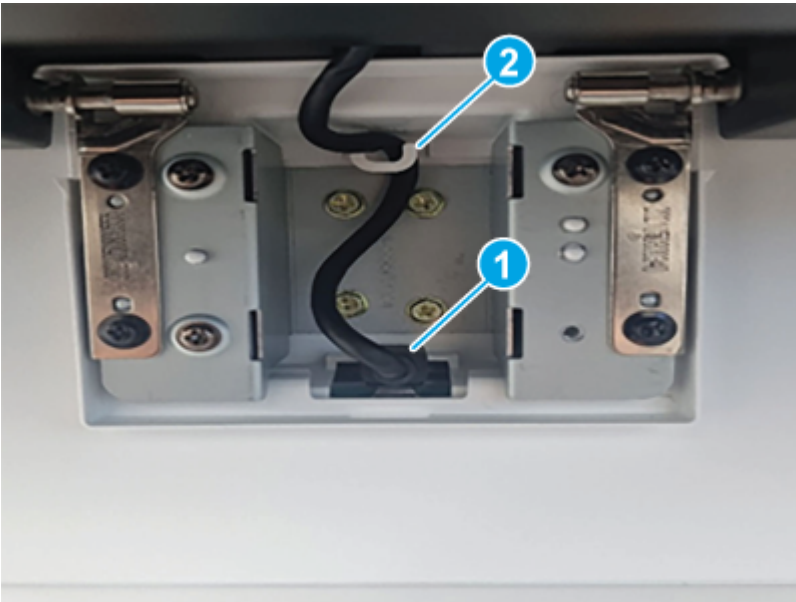
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-29 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-30 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-31 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-32 Remove the keyboard



3. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-33 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-34 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

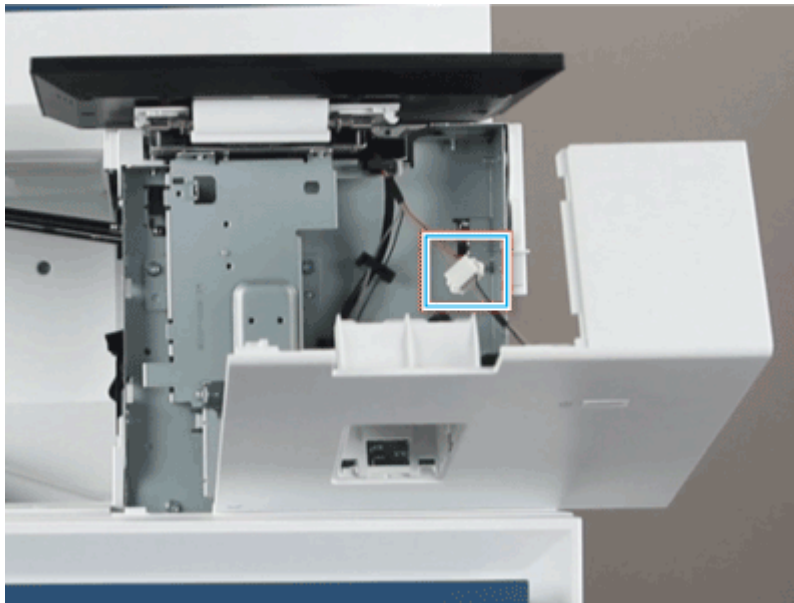
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-35 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-36 Remove the cover assembly

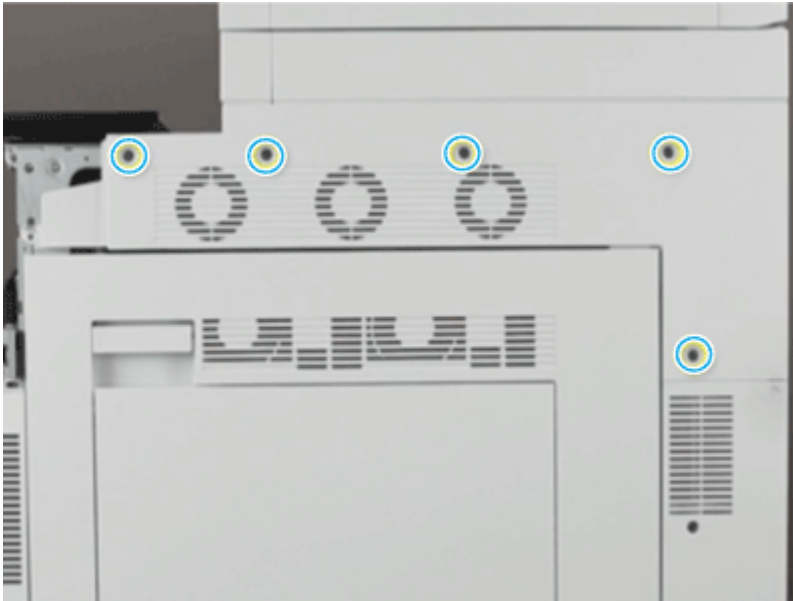


4. Remove the right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right upper cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-37 Remove five screws



2. Remove one screw (circled), and then carefully slide the cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-38 Remove the cover



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the right rear cover.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the right rear cover.](#)


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-12 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-61003	Right rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-39 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-40 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right front cover

Learn about removing and replacing the right front cover.



[View a video of removing and replacing the right front cover.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-13 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40005	Right front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right front cover.

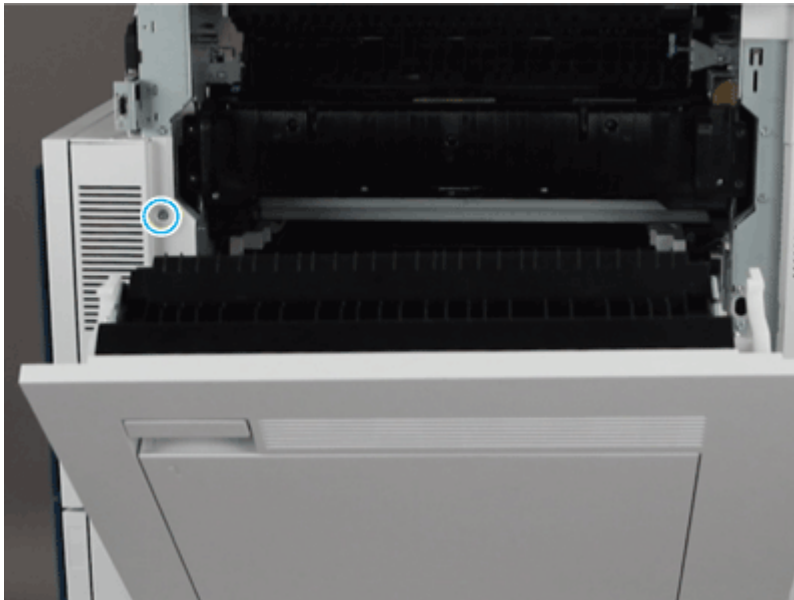
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-41 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door, remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-42 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right middle cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the right middle cover assembly.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the right middle cover assembly.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-14 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-61006	Right middle cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

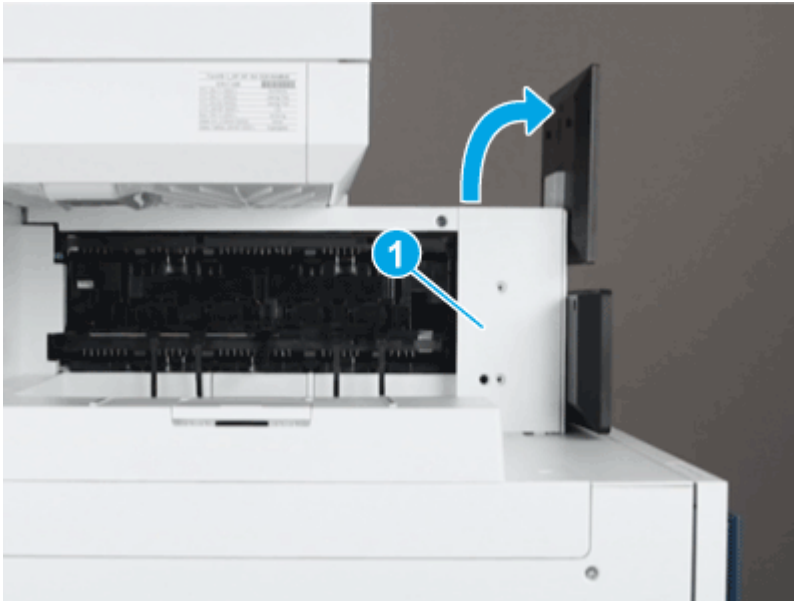
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-43 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-44 Remove the cover



2. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.



NOTE: The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-45 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-46 Remove one screw



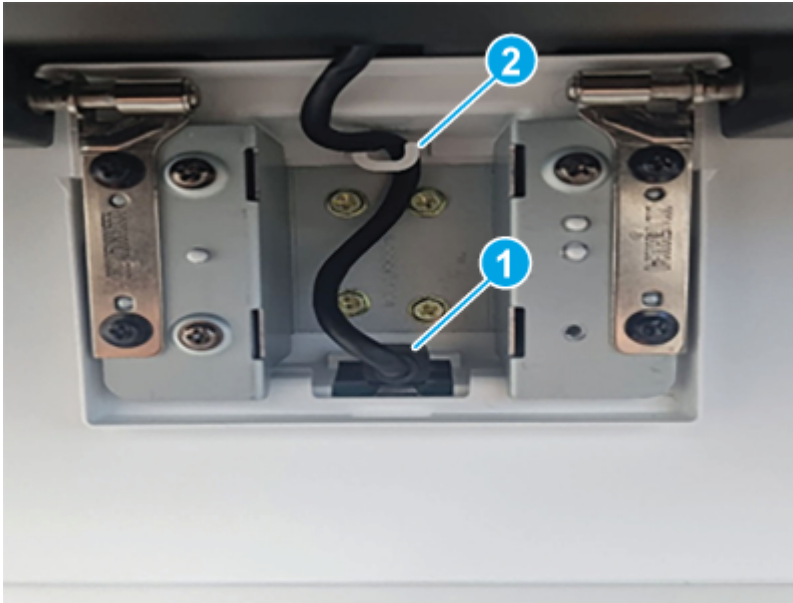
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-47 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-48 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-49 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-50 Remove the keyboard



3. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

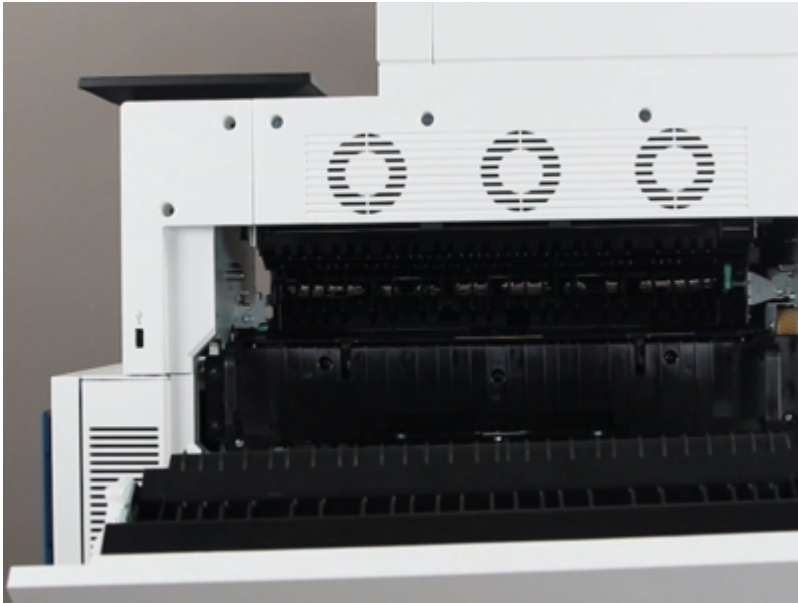
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-51 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-52 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

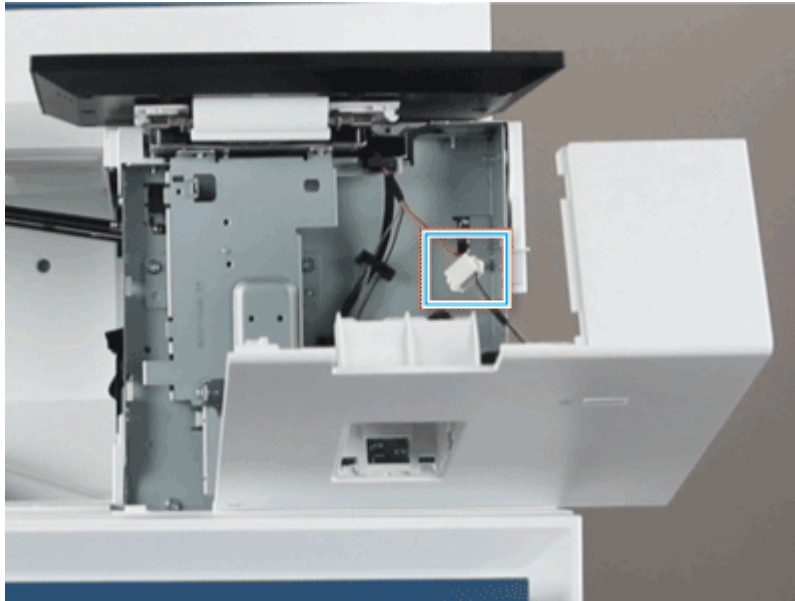
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-53 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-54 Remove the cover assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right middle cover

Learn about removing and replacing the right middle cover.



[View a video of removing and replacing the right middle cover.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-15 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40025	Right middle cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

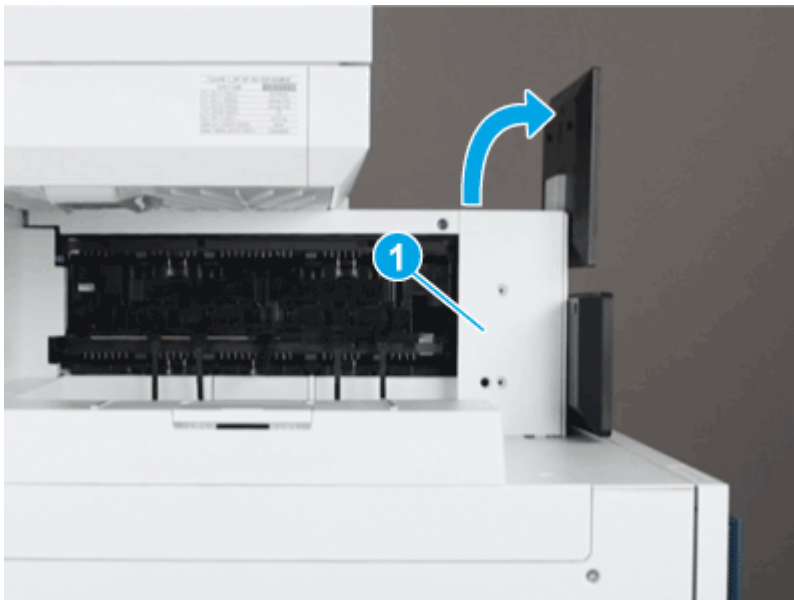
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-55 Remove two screws




2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-56 Remove the cover



2. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-57 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-58 Remove one screw



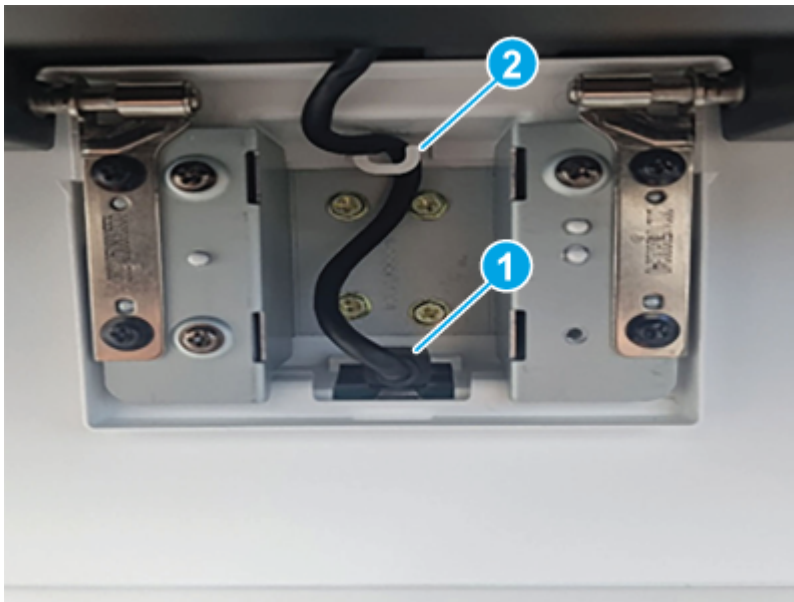
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-59 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-60 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-61 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-62 Remove the keyboard



3. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-63 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-64 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

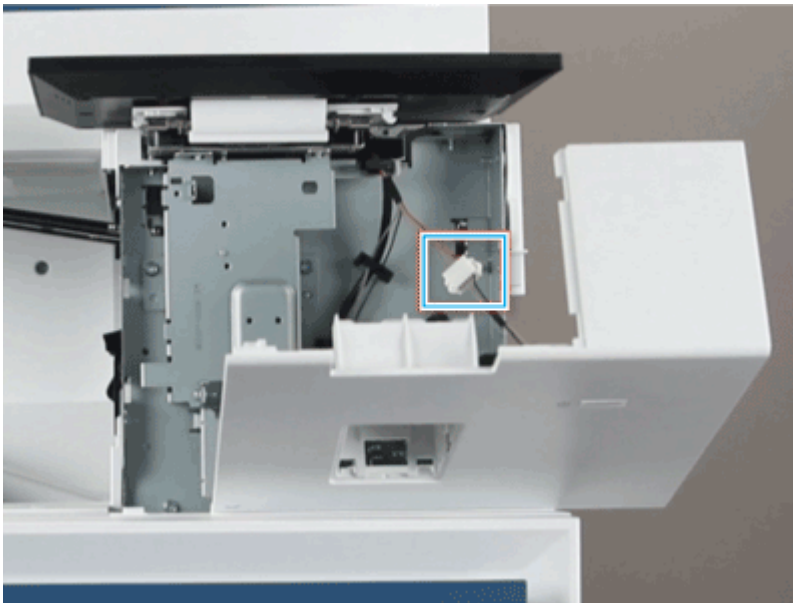
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-65 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-66 Remove the cover assembly

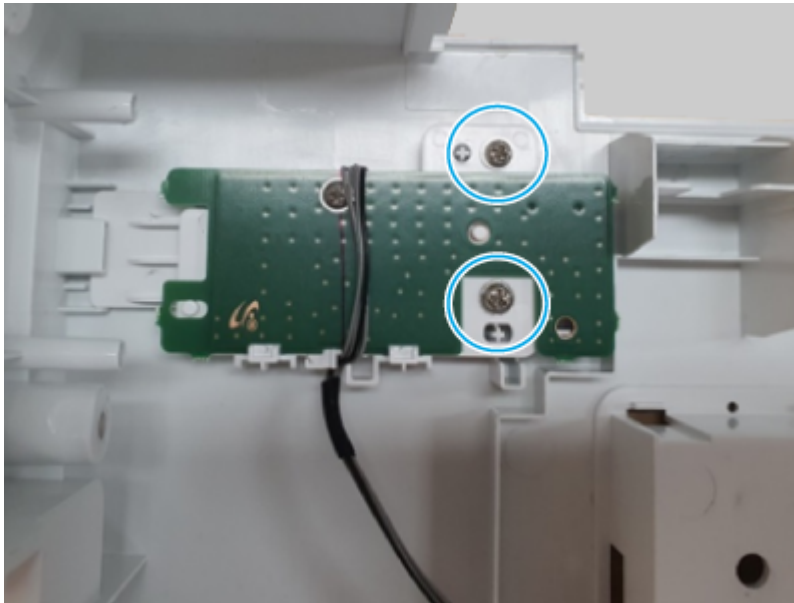


4. Remove the right middle cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the right middle cover.

Figure 6-67 Remove the cover



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Power key

Learn about removing and replacing the power key.



[View a video of removing and replacing the power key.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-16 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40029	Power key

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-68 Remove two screws




2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-69 Remove the cover



2. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-70 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-71 Remove one screw



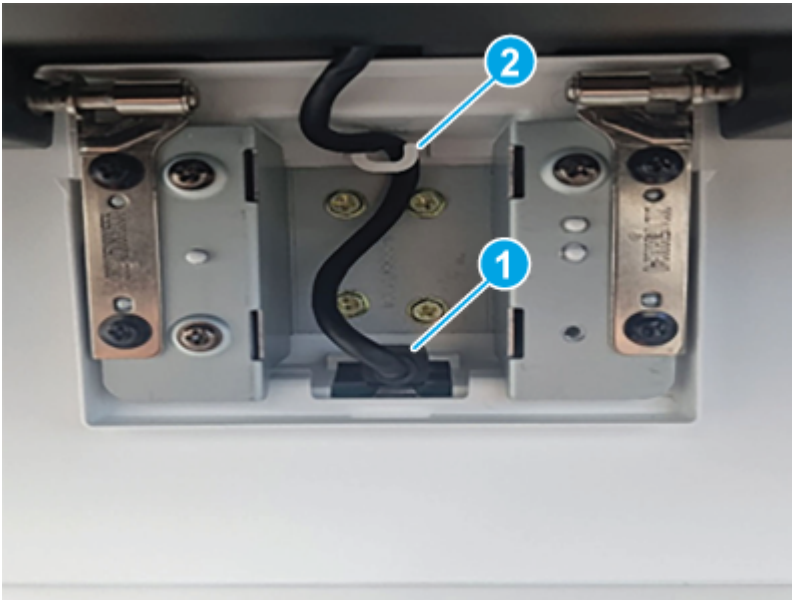
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-72 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-73 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-74 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-75 Remove the keyboard



3. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-76 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-77 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

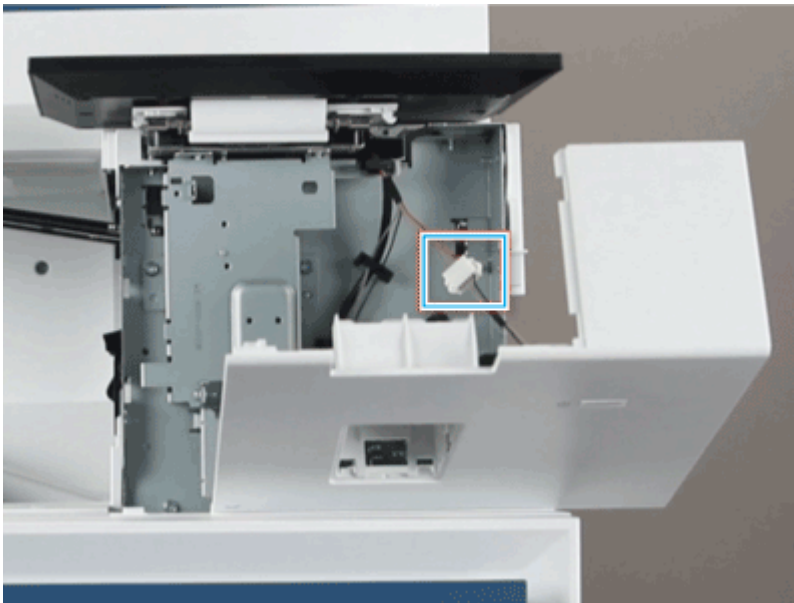
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-78 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-79 Remove the cover assembly

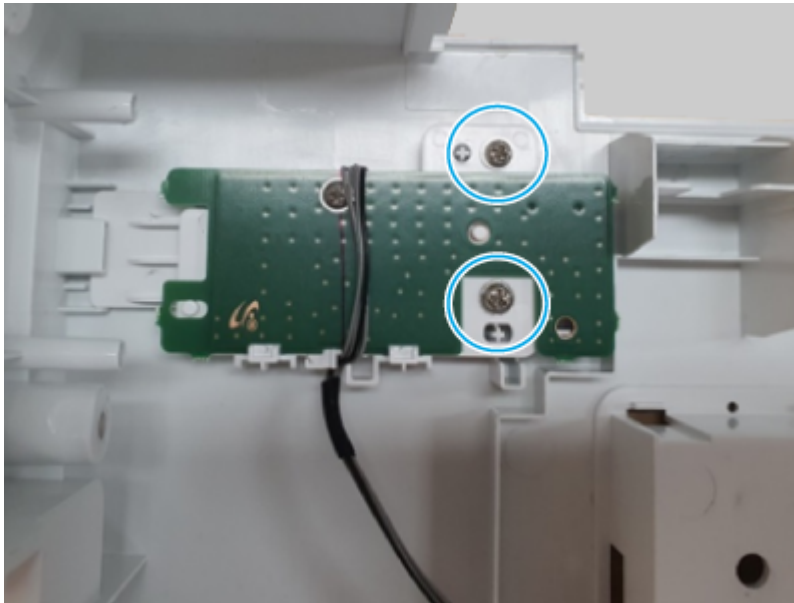


4. Remove the right middle cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the right middle cover.

Figure 6-80 Remove the cover

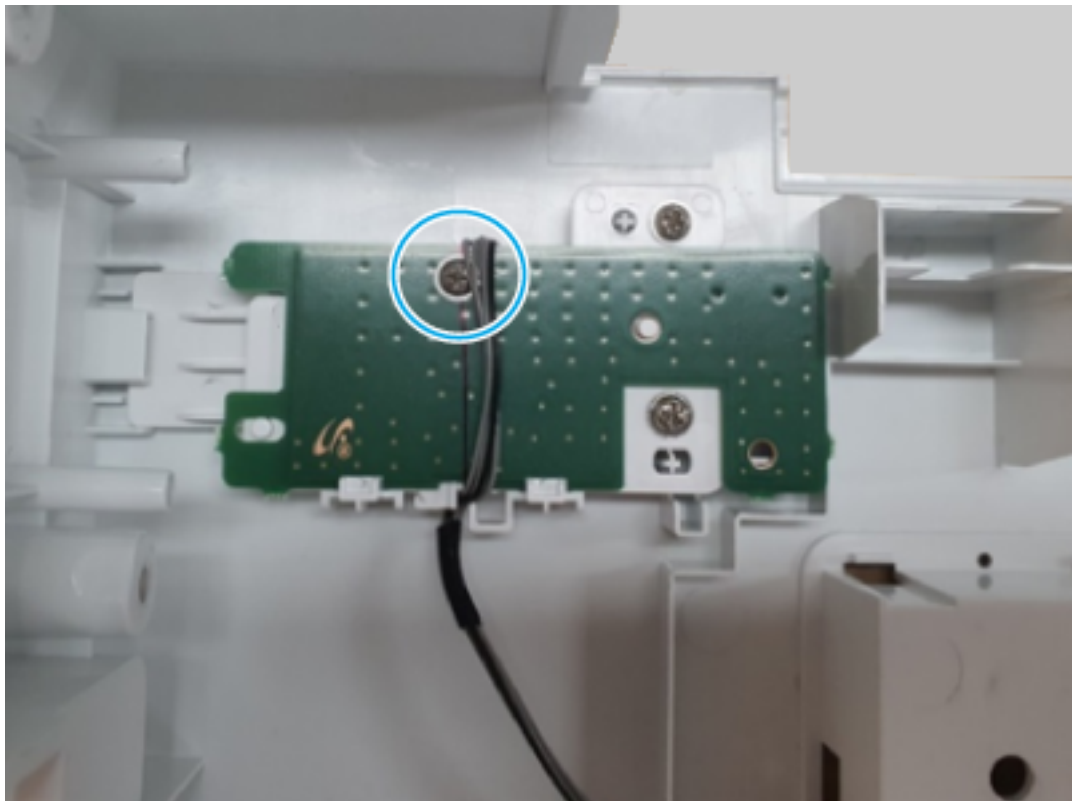


5. Remove the power key

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

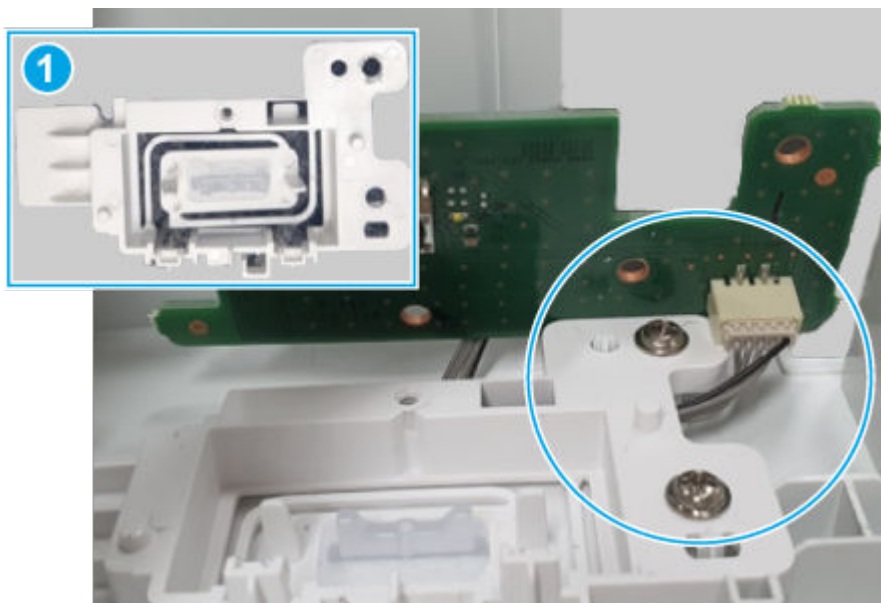
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-81 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect the power key PCA, remove two screws, and then remove the power key (callout 1).


Figure 6-82 Remove the power key



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover

Learn about removing and replacing the HIP cover.



[View a video of removing and replacing the HIP cover.](#)


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-17 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40032	Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HIP cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HIP cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to release the cover. Remove the cover.



TIP: Position the tweezers as shown below.



Reinstallation tip: Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-83 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Middle left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the middle left cover.



[View a video of removing and replacing the middle left cover.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-18 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40036	Middle left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

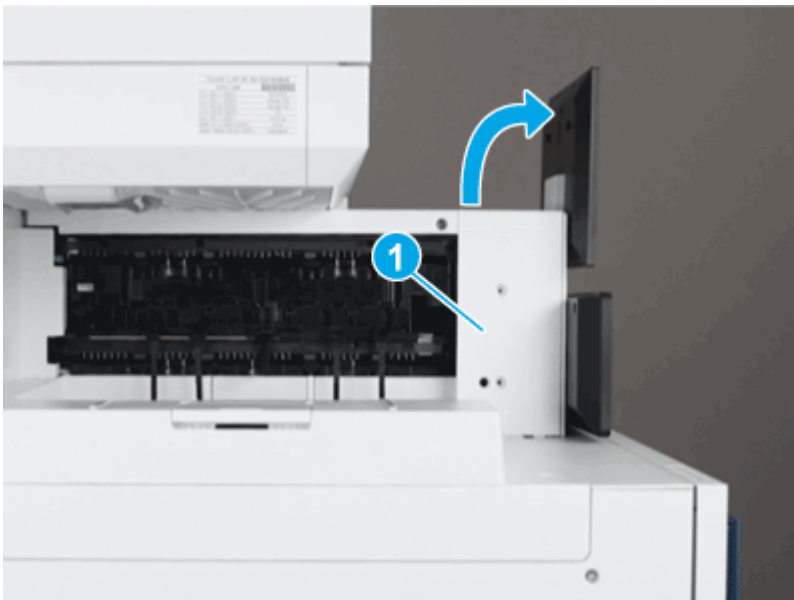
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-84 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).


Figure 6-85 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit cover stacker

Learn about removing and replacing the exit cover stacker.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the exit cover stacker.](#)


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-19 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-61004	Exit cover stacker

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

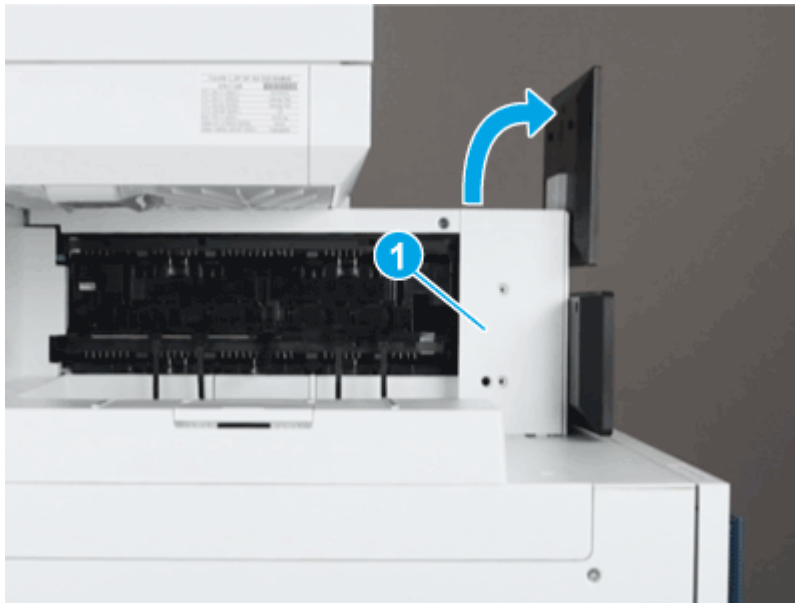
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-86 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-87 Remove the cover

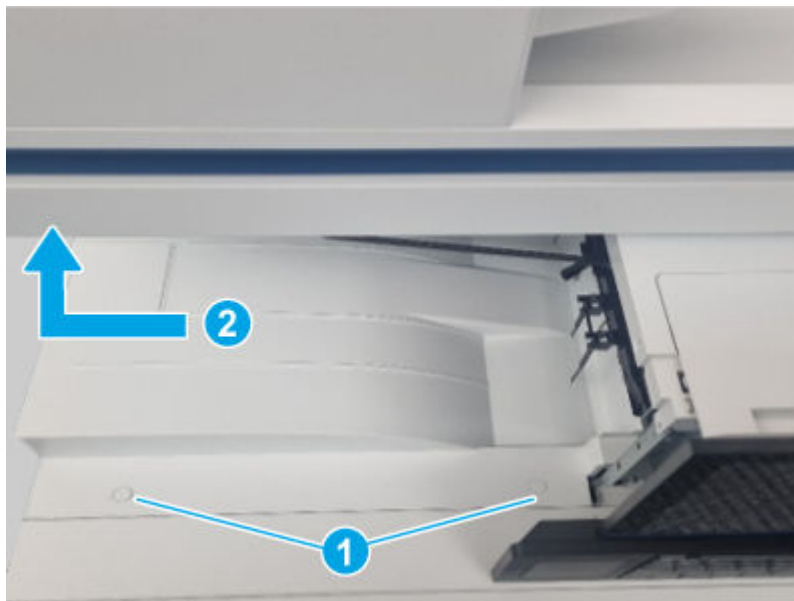


2. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).


Figure 6-88 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Inner cover


Learn about removing and replacing the inner cover.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the inner cover.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

 **NOTE:** Before turning the printer power off, use the control panel method to remove the toner cartridges. See the instructions in this section.

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-20 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER08-61002	Inner cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03082622
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

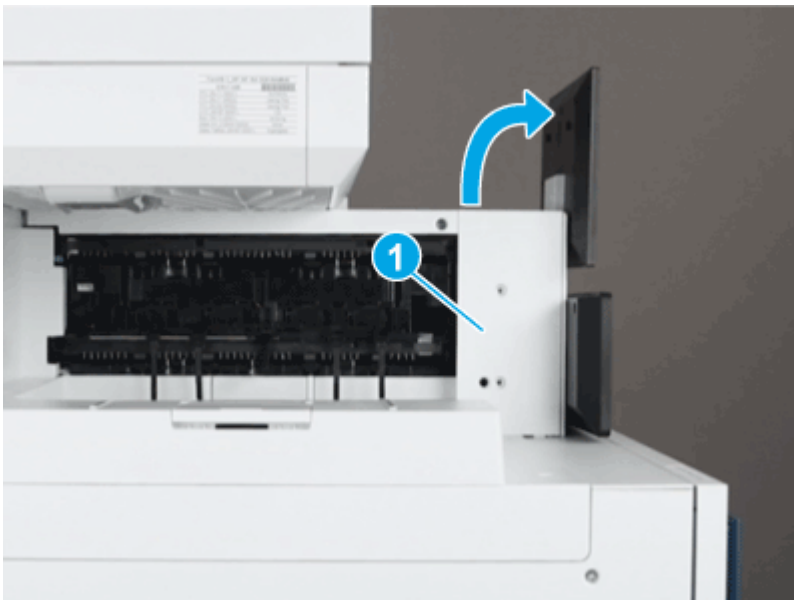
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-89 Remove two screws




2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-90 Remove the cover



3. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-91 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-92 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

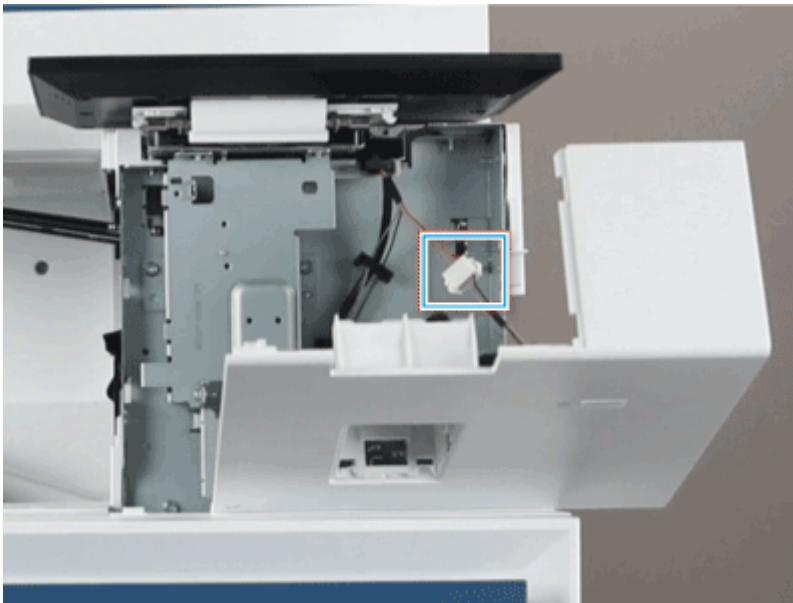
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-93 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-94 Remove the cover assembly

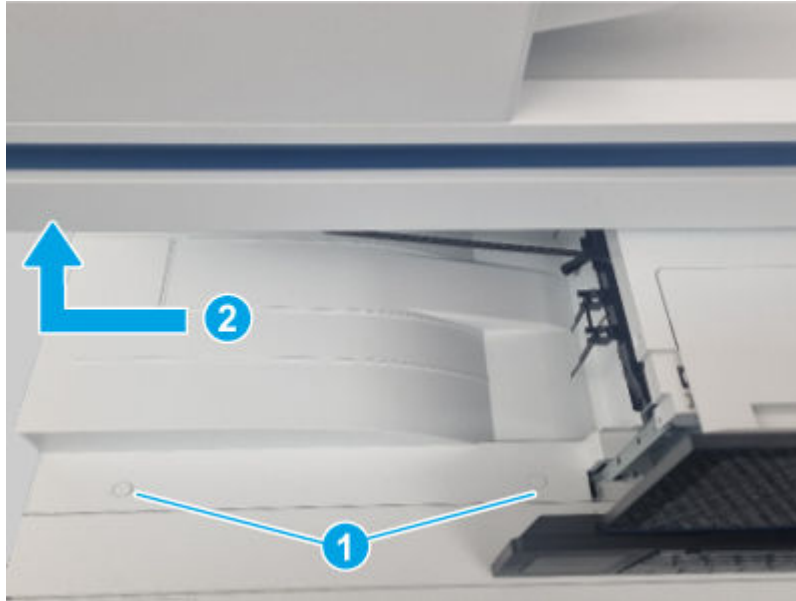


4. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-95 Remove the cover

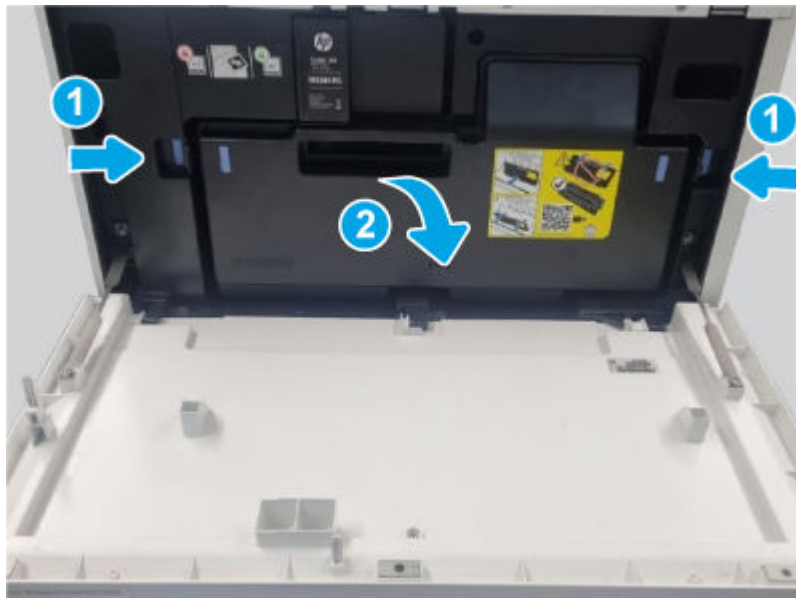


5. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-96 Remove the TCU

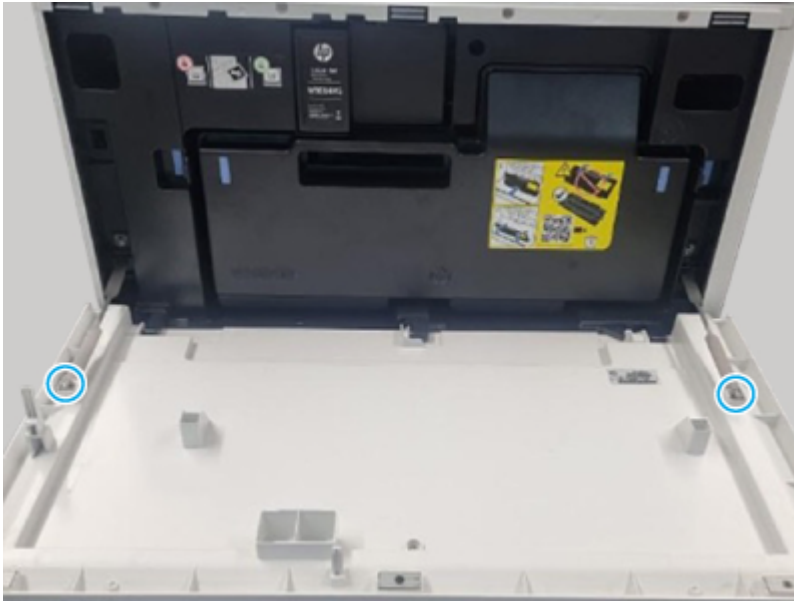


6. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

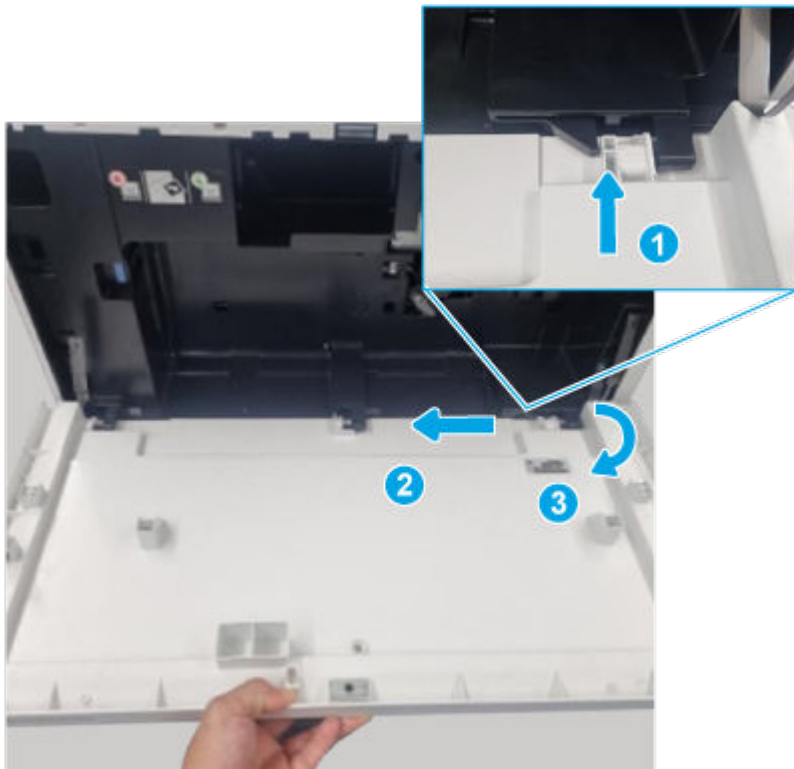
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-97 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-98 Remove the cover

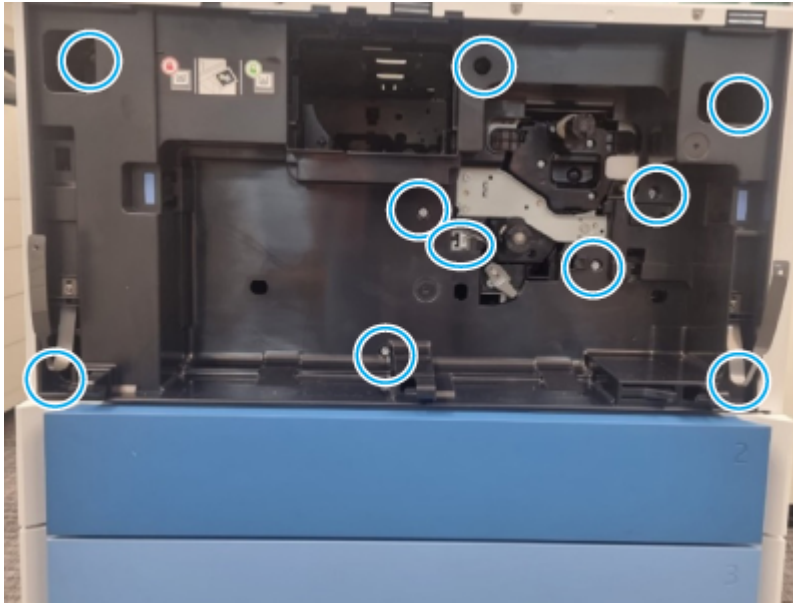


7. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

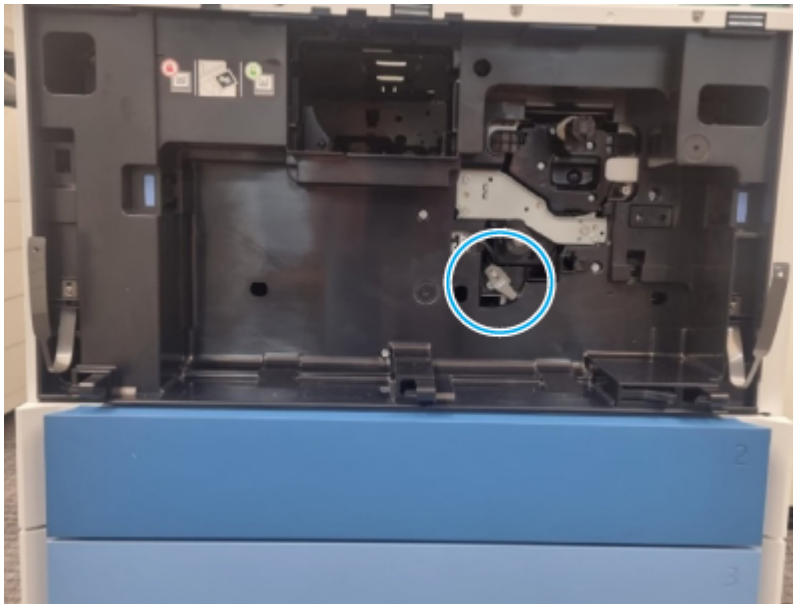
1. Remove nine screws and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-99 Remove screws and disconnect connector



2. Remove the cover carefully, making sure not to damage the drum engage lever as you remove the cover.

Figure 6-100 Avoid damaging the drum engage lever



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tie stoppers

Learn about removing and replacing the tie stoppers.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

- None

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-21 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-04626A	Tie stoppers (front cover restraint - requires 2 tie stoppers)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

- None

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the tie stoppers

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the tie stoppers.

- Open the front cover, remove four screws, and then remove the tie stoppers.

Figure 6-101 Remove the tie stoppers



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front lower cover

Learn about removing and replacing the front lower cover.



[View a video of removing and replacing the front lower cover.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-22 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40030	Front lower cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right front cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-102 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door, remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-103 Remove the cover



2. Remove the front lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front lower cover.

1. If Tray 2 and Tray 3 are installed, remove them now.

2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-104 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the front cover.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-23 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER08-61001	Front cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

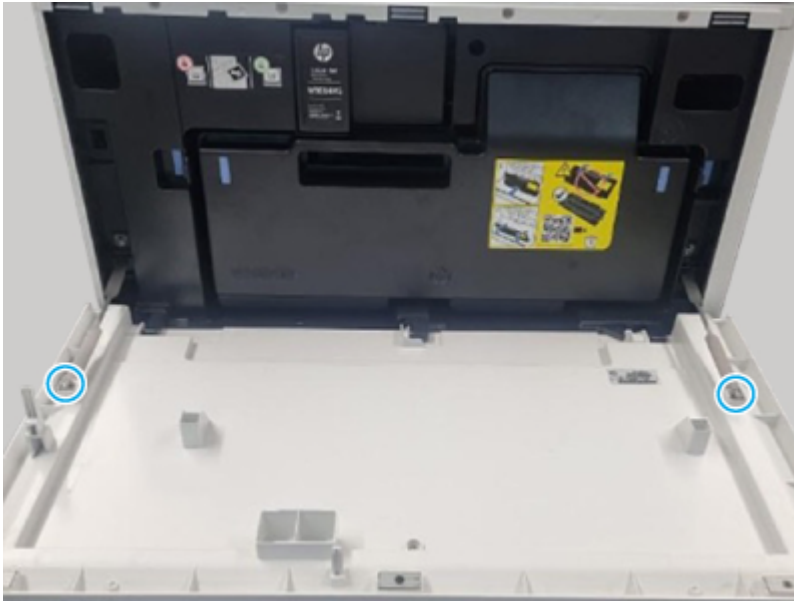
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

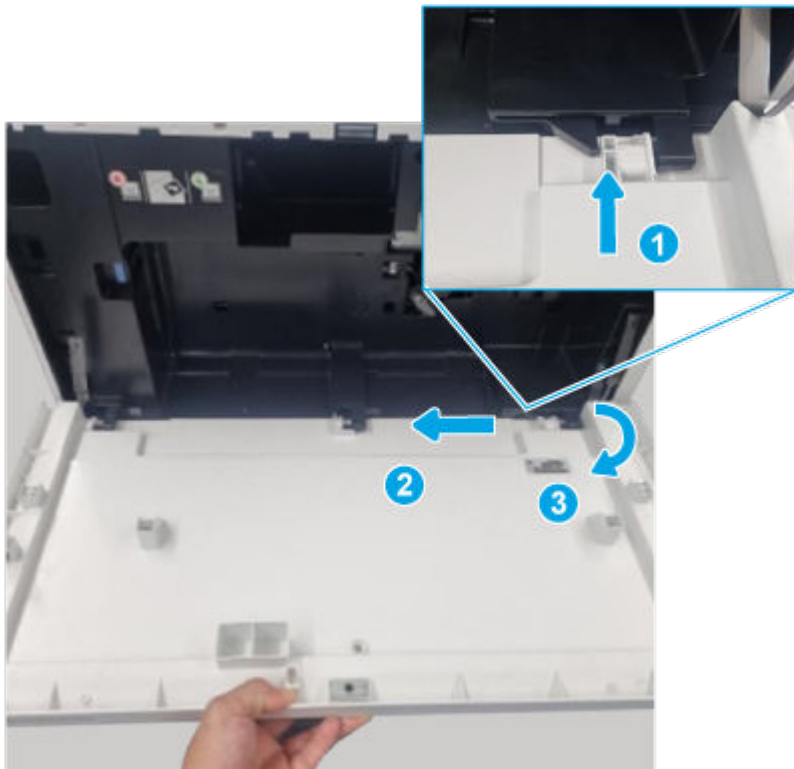
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-105 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-106 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly - CMF panel

Learn about removing and replacing the front cover CMF panel.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-24 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40003	Front cover - CMF panel (color panel)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

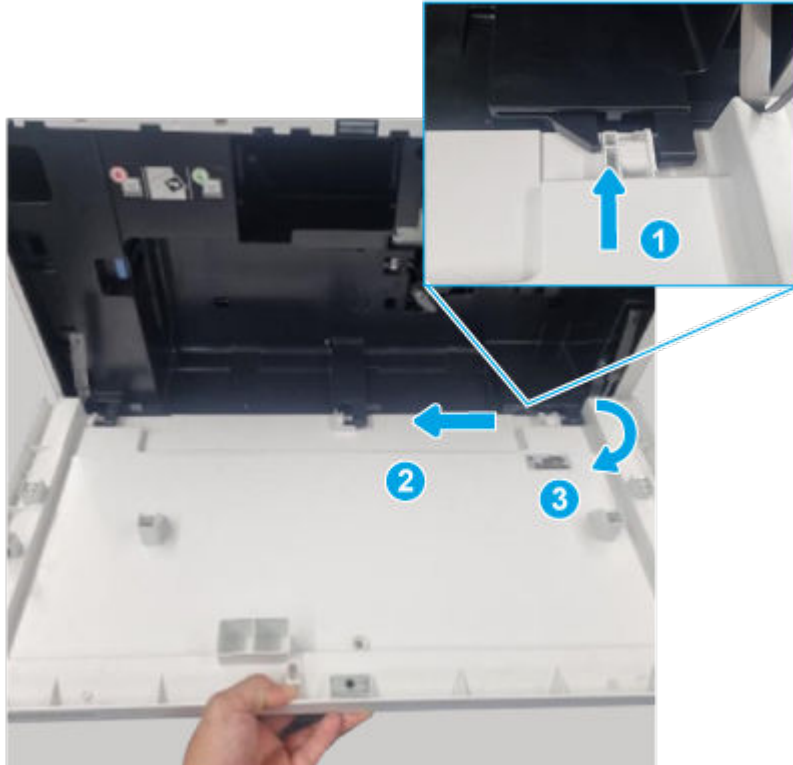
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-107 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-108 Remove the cover



2. Remove the front cover - CMF panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover CMF panel.

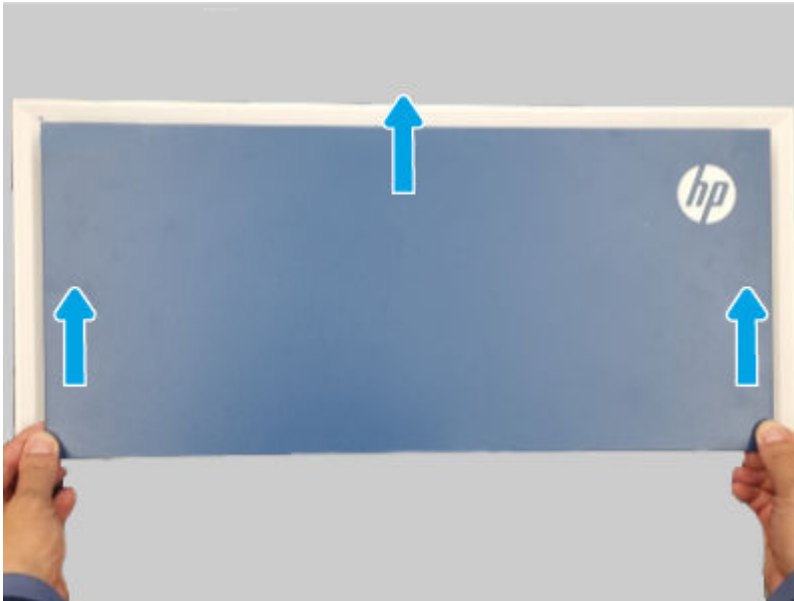
1. Turn the cover over, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-109 Remove one screw



2. With the panel face up, grasp the panel corners, and then push it up to remove it.

Figure 6-110 Remove the panel



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 color panel

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 color panel.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 color panel.](#)

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-25 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40055	Tray 2 color panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

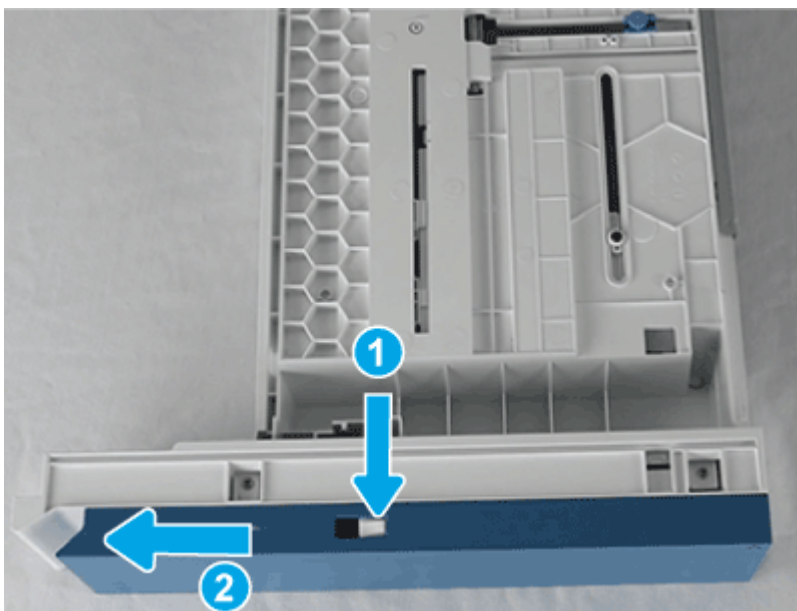
1. Remove the Tray 2 color panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 color panel.

1. Remove the Tray 2 cassette from the printer.

2. Push in on the hook, and then slide the panel as shown below to release it. Remove the color panel.

Figure 6-111 Remove the panel



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 color panel

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 color panel.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 color panel.](#)

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-26 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40058	Tray 3 color panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

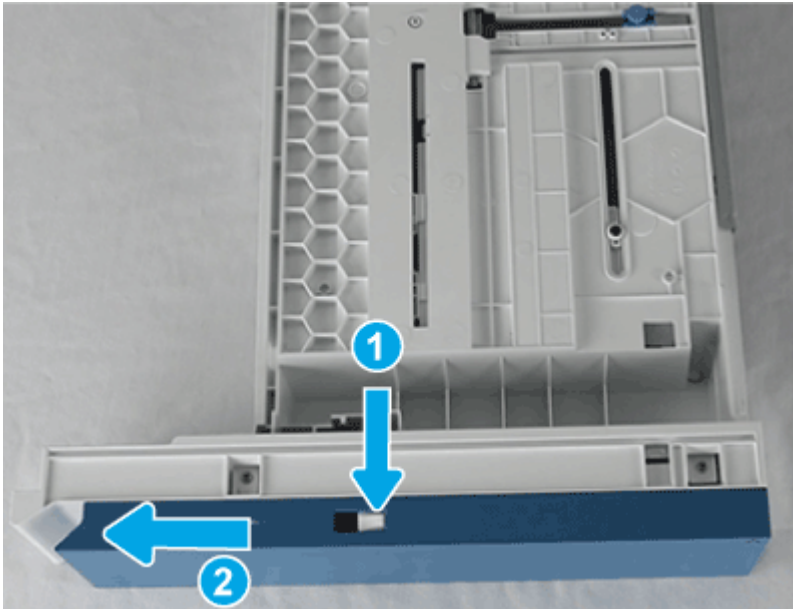
1. Remove the Tray 3 color panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 color panel.

1. Remove the Tray 3 cassette from the printer.

2. Push in on the hook, and then slide the panel as shown below to release it. Remove the color panel.

Figure 6-112 Remove the panel



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feeding system

Learn about feeding system parts removal and replacement.

Right door assembly

Learn about feeding system right door parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Right door assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the right door.



[View a video of removing and replacing the right door.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-27 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02246A	Right door assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

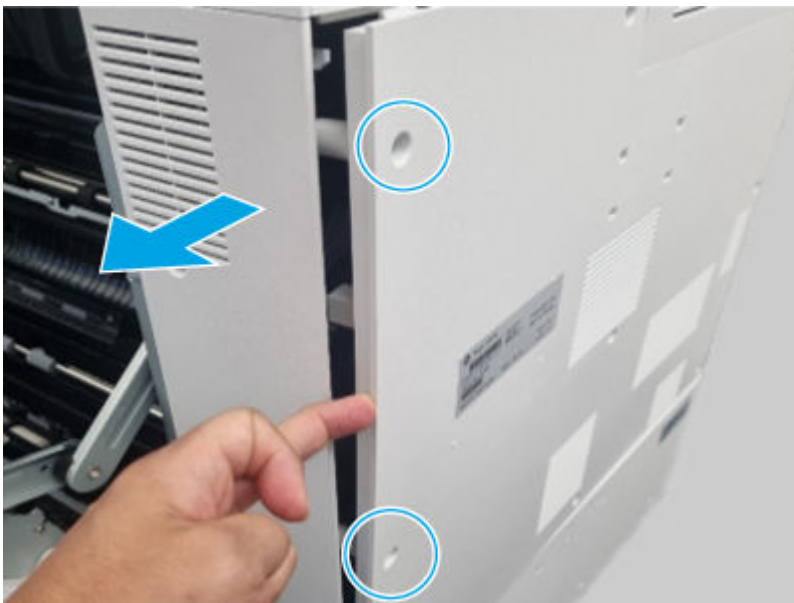
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-113 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-114 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

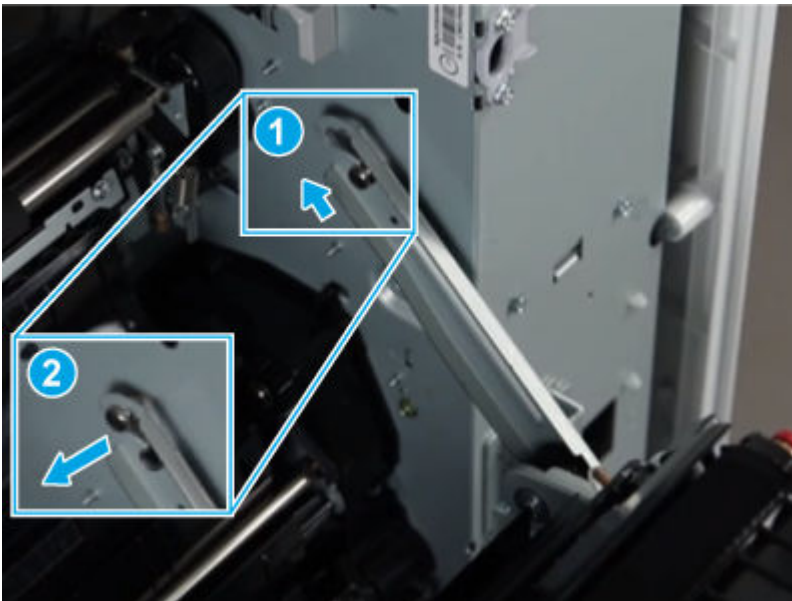
Figure 6-115 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

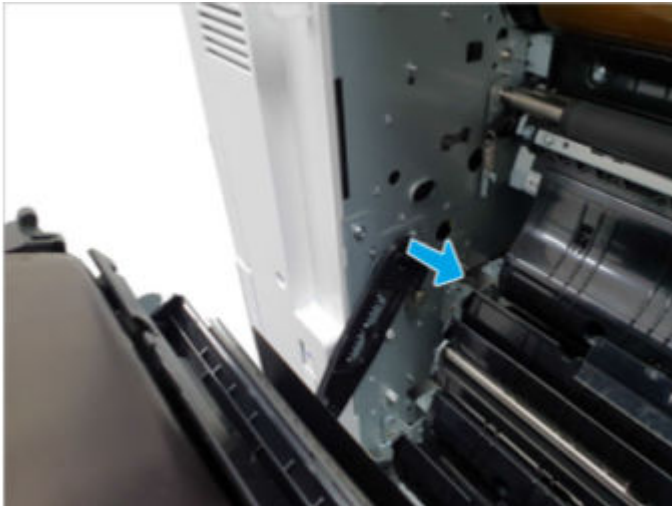
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-116 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-117 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

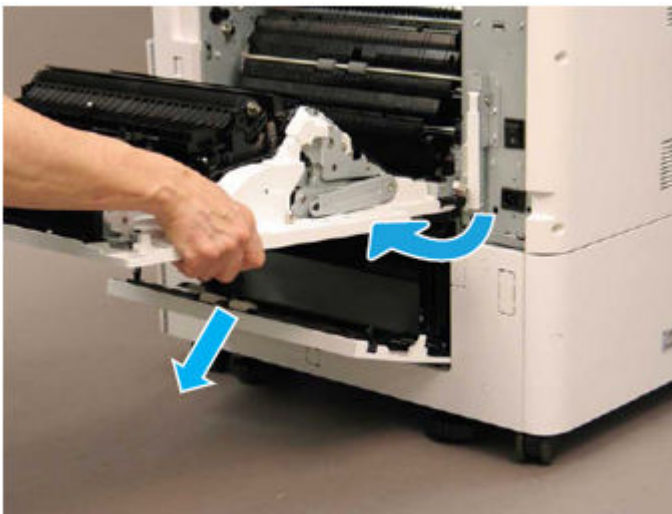


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-118 Remove the door



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door front link

Learn about removing and replacing the right door front link.



[View a video of removing and replacing the right door front link.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-28 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04398A	Right door front link

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-119 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-120 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

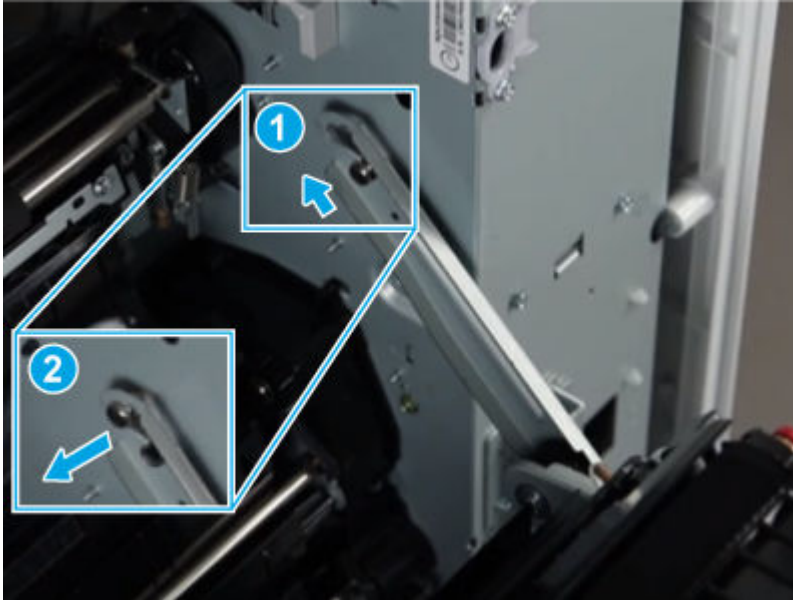
Figure 6-121 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

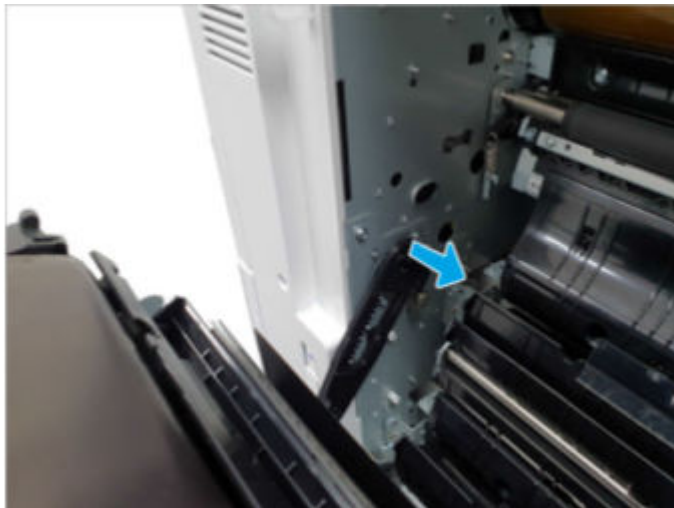
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-122 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-123 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

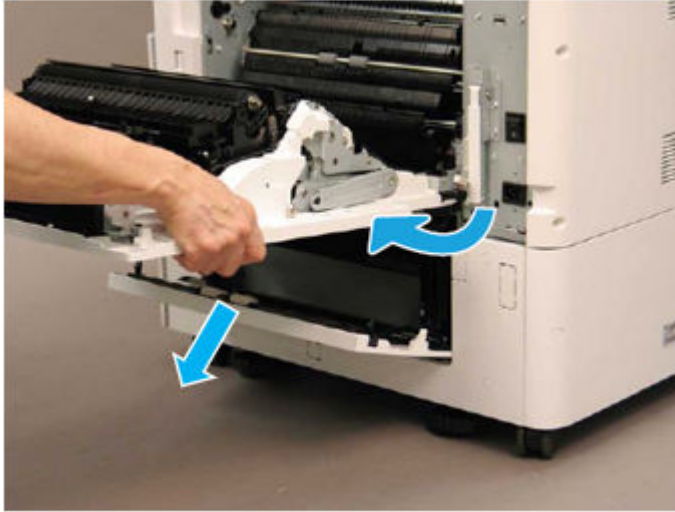


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-124 Remove the door

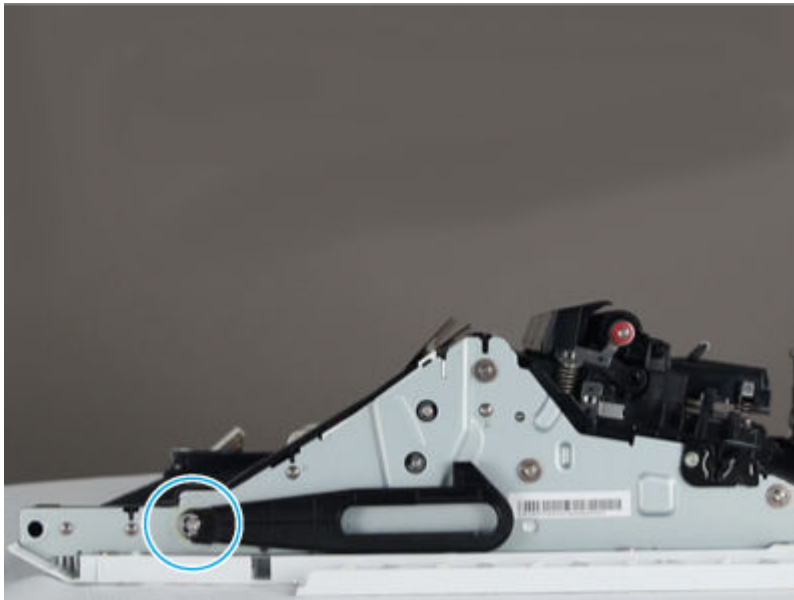


3. Remove the right door front link

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door front link.

- Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the right door front link.

Figure 6-125 Remove the door link



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door front damper

Learn about removing and replacing the right door front damper.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the right door front damper.](#)


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-29 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-01425A	Right door front damper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

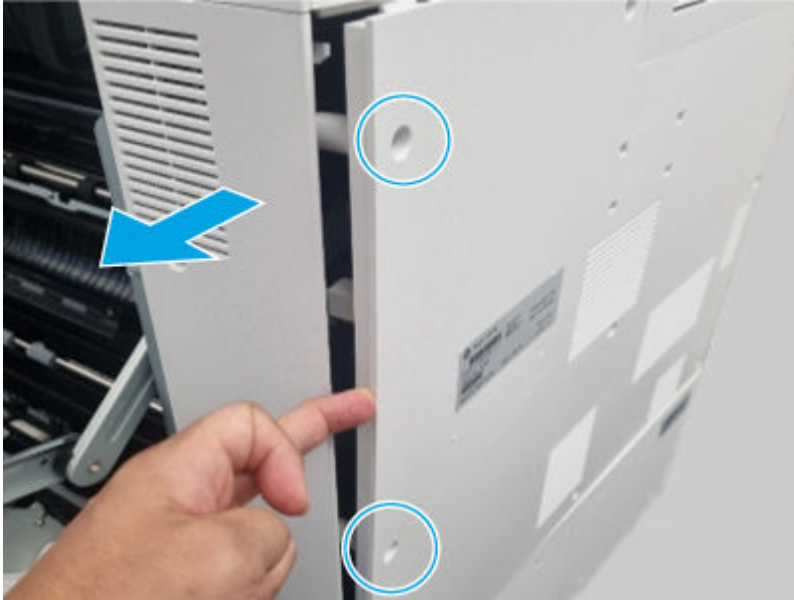
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-126 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-127 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

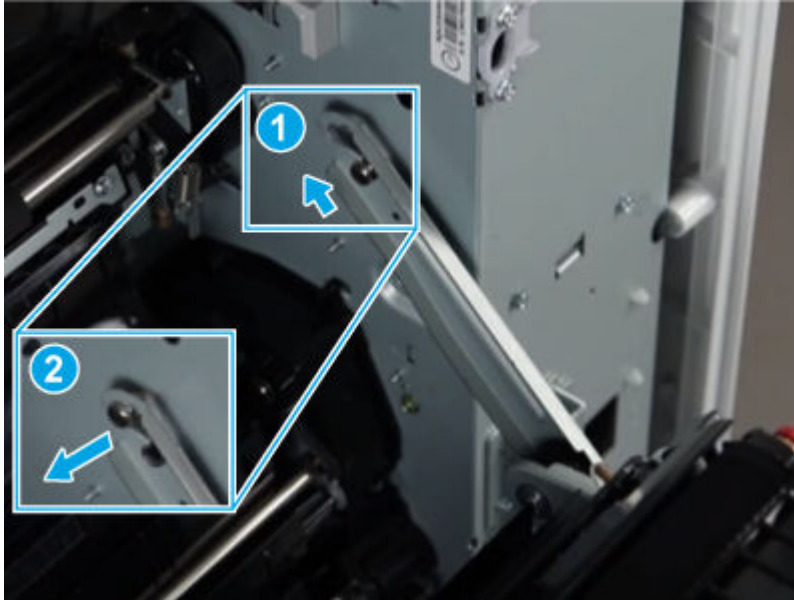
Figure 6-128 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

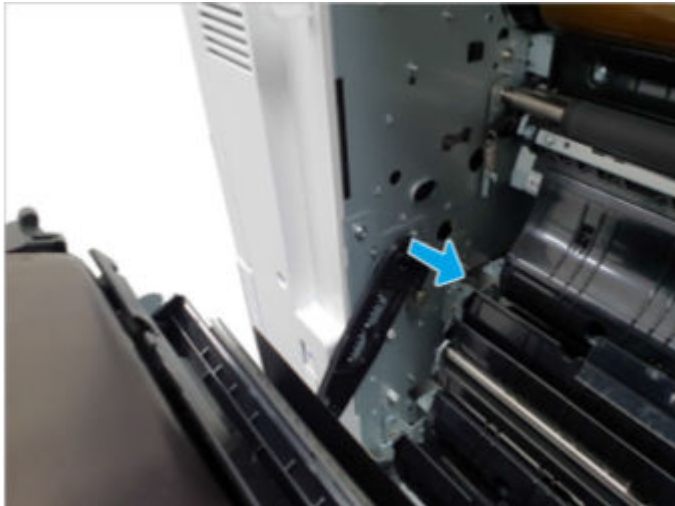
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-129 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-130 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


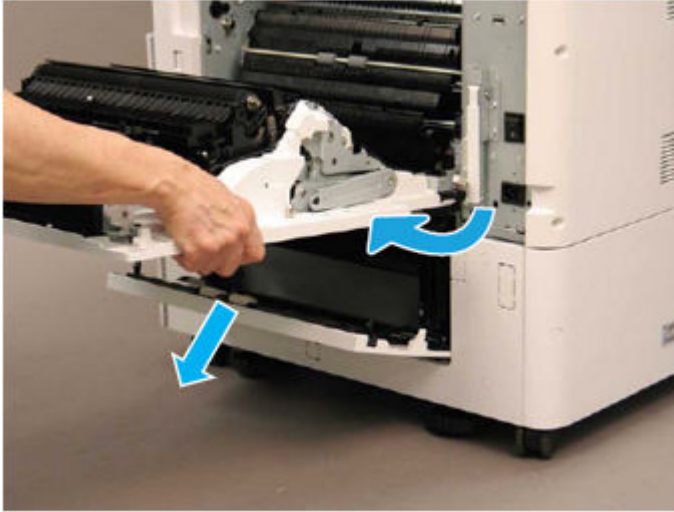
 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-131 Remove the door



3. Remove the right door front damper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door front damper.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the right door front damper.


Figure 6-132 Remove the door damper



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door front damper bracket

Learn about removing and replacing the right door front damper bracket.



[View a video of removing and replacing the right door front damper bracket.](#)


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-30 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-08935A	Right door front damper bracket

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

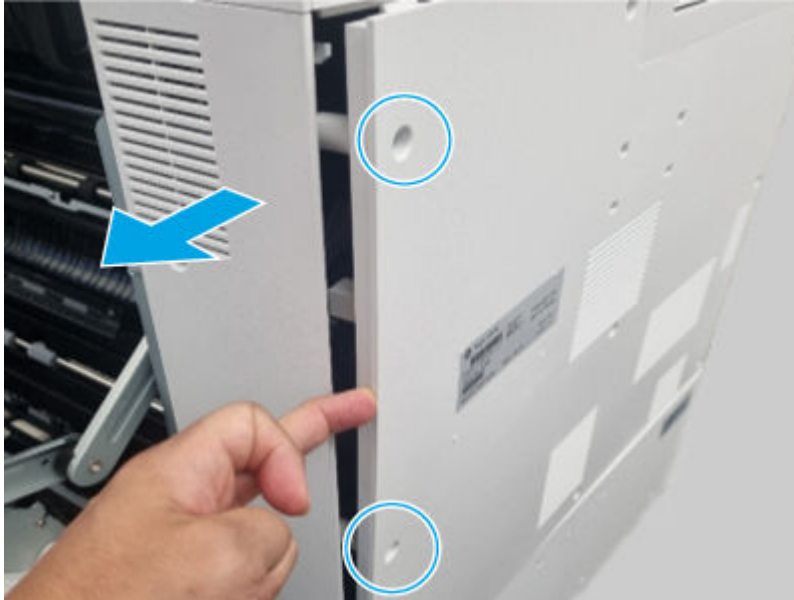
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-133 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-134 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

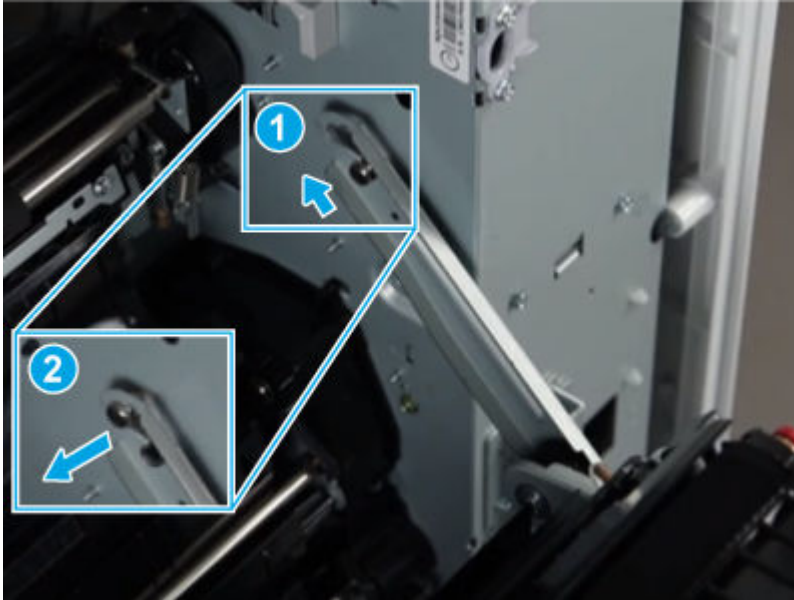
Figure 6-135 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

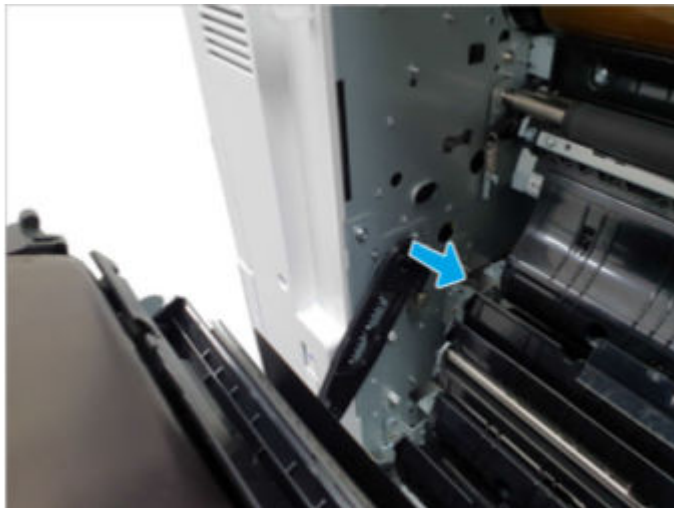
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-136 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-137 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

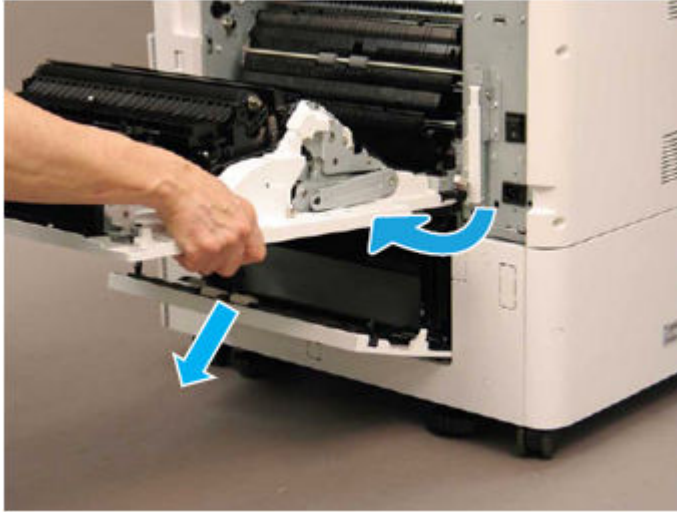


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-138 Remove the door



3. Remove the right door front damper bracket

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door front damper bracket.

- Remove two screws, remove the right door front damper, and then separate the damper from the bracket.

Figure 6-139 Remove the door damper bracket



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tray 1 unit

Learn about feeding system Tray 1 unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 unit

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 1 unit.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 unit.](#)


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-31 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01844A	Tray 1 unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

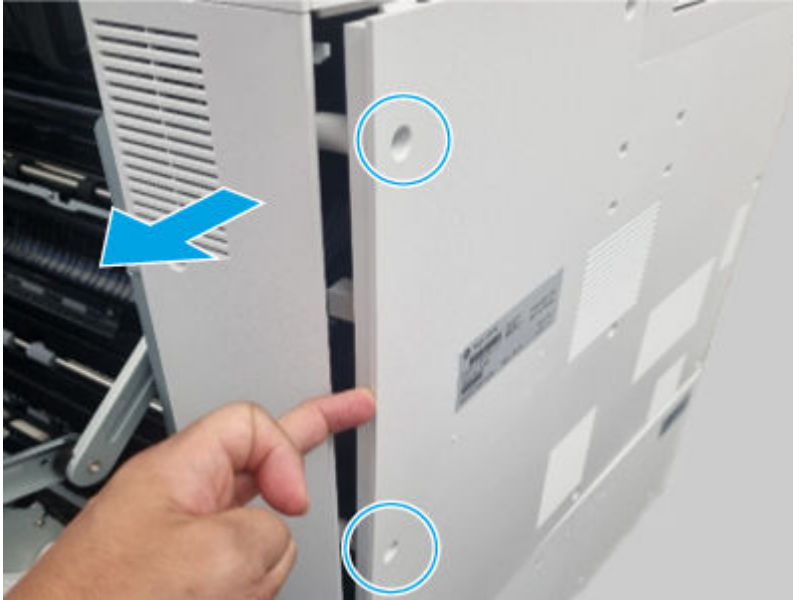
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-140 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-141 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

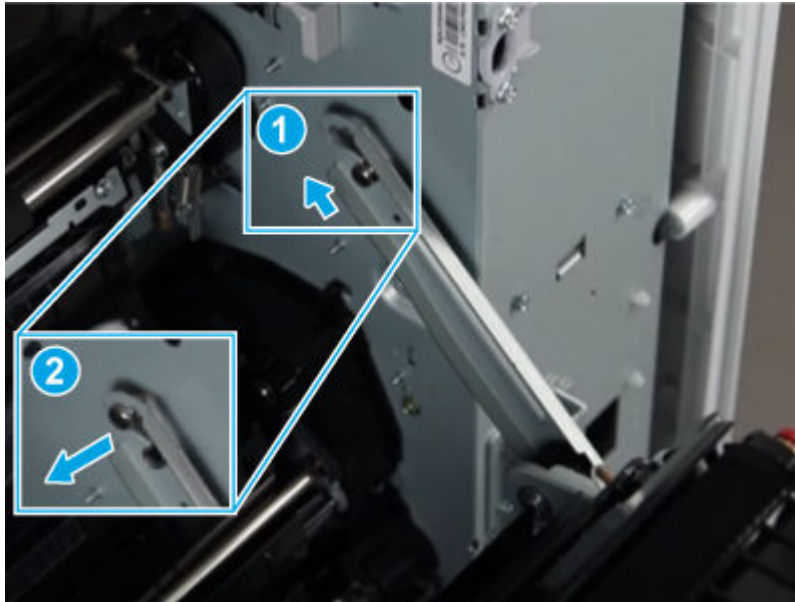
Figure 6-142 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-143 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-144 Release the link



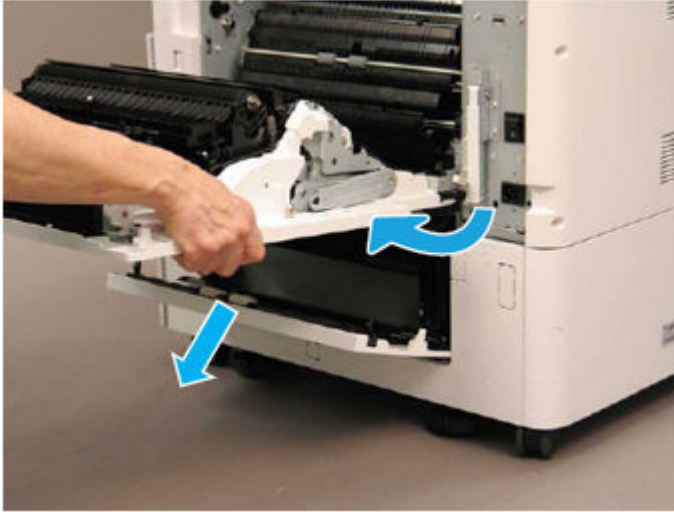
4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-145 Remove the door

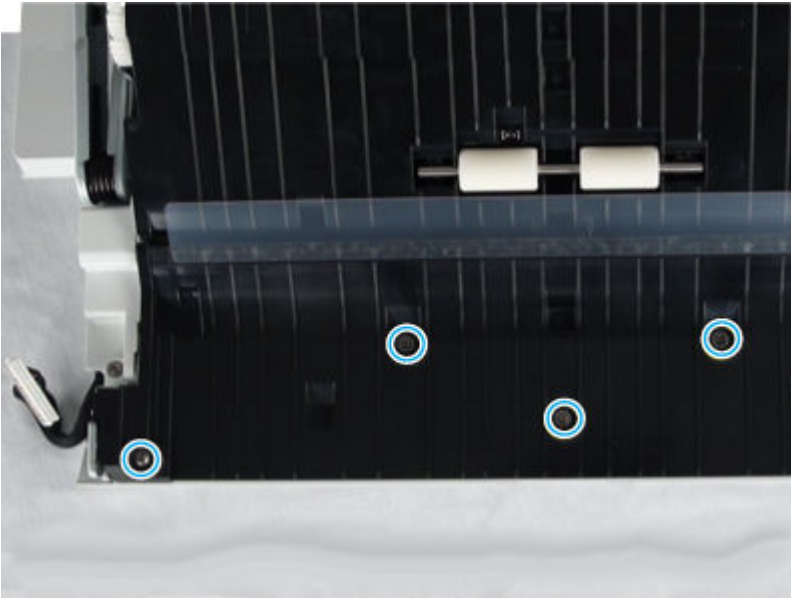


3. Remove the right door take-away assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door take-away assembly.

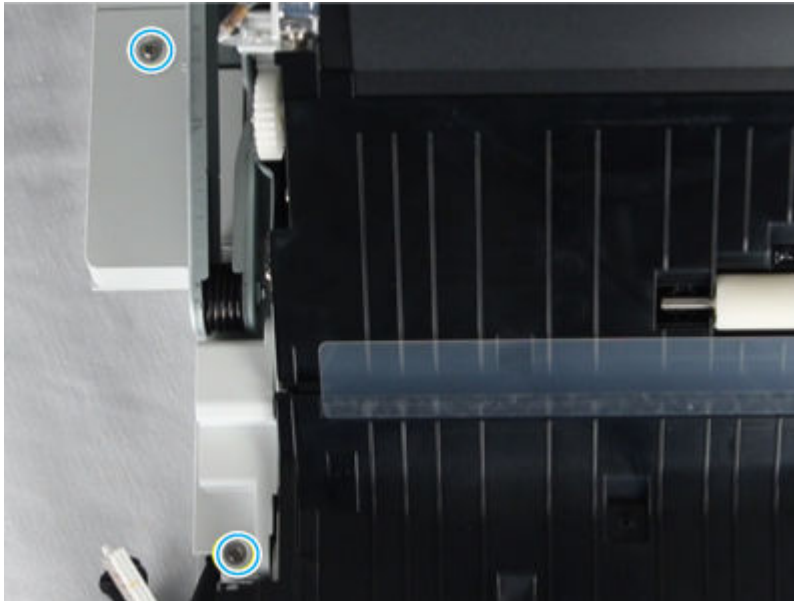
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-146 Remove four screws



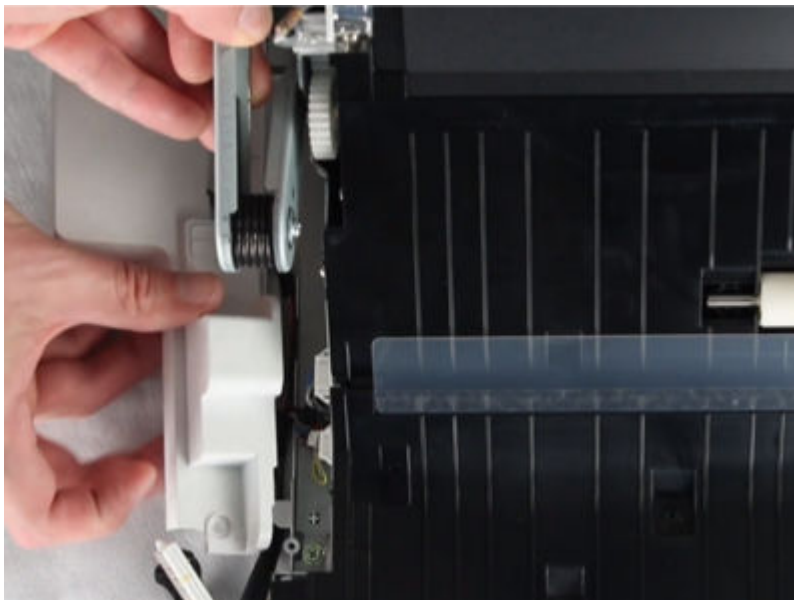
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-147 Remove two screws



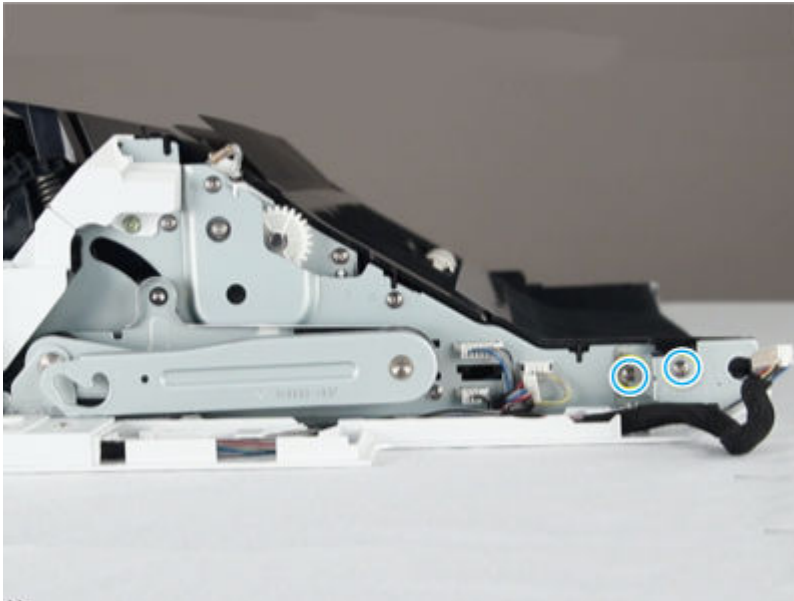
3. Remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 6-148 Remove the cover



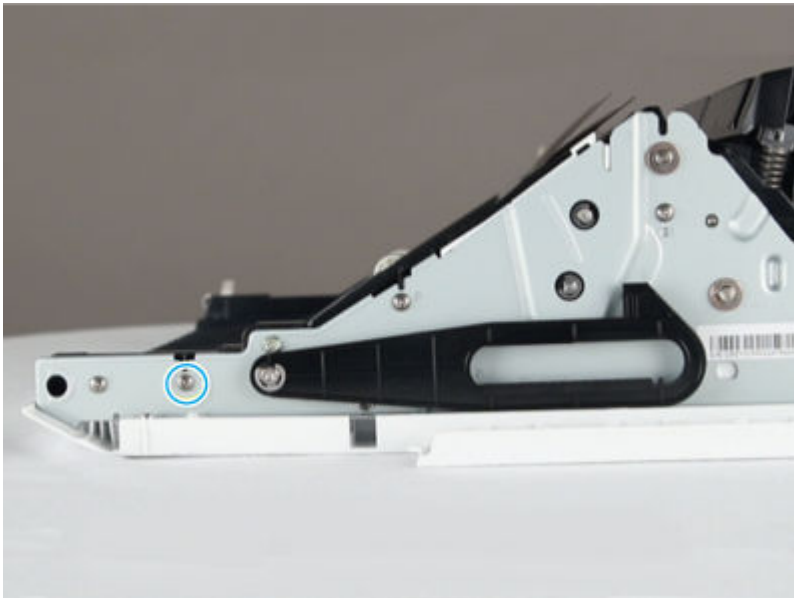
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-149 Remove two screws



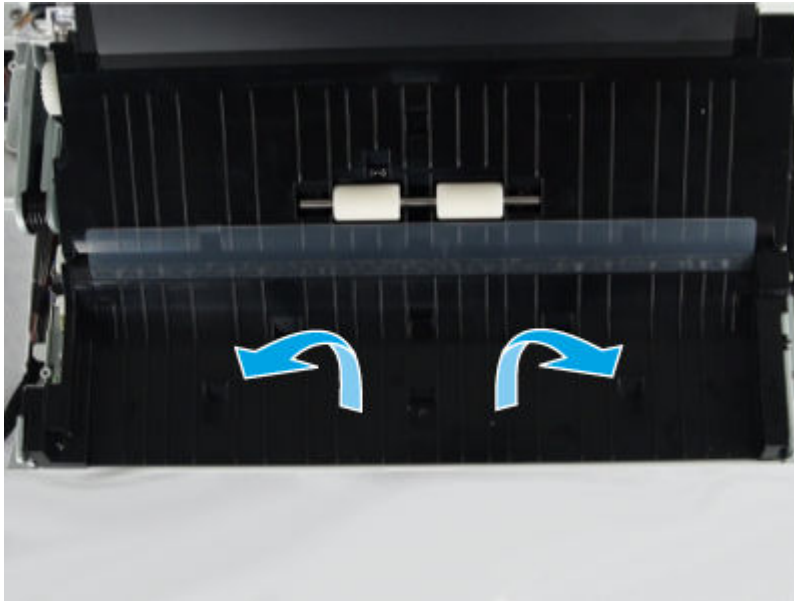
5. Remove one screw (on the other side of the door).

Figure 6-150 Remove one screw



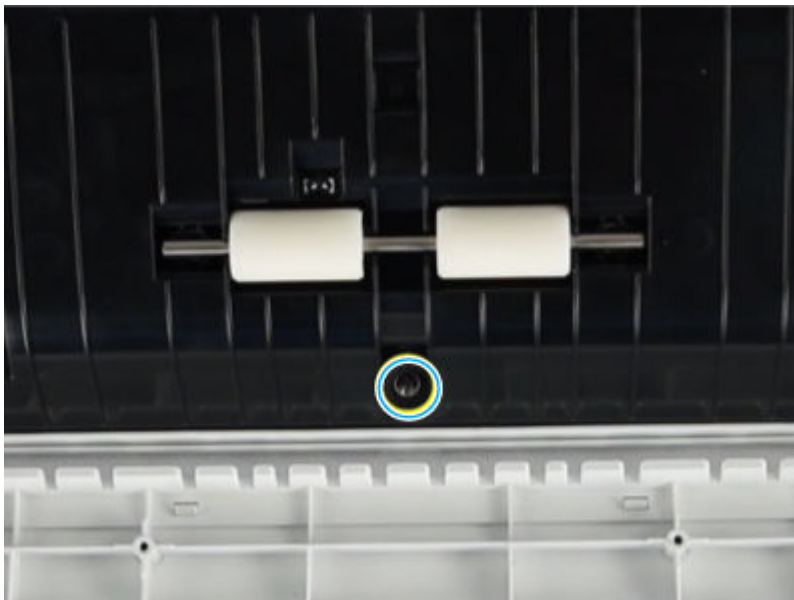
6. Remove the feed guide take-away lower.

Figure 6-151 Remove the take-away lower



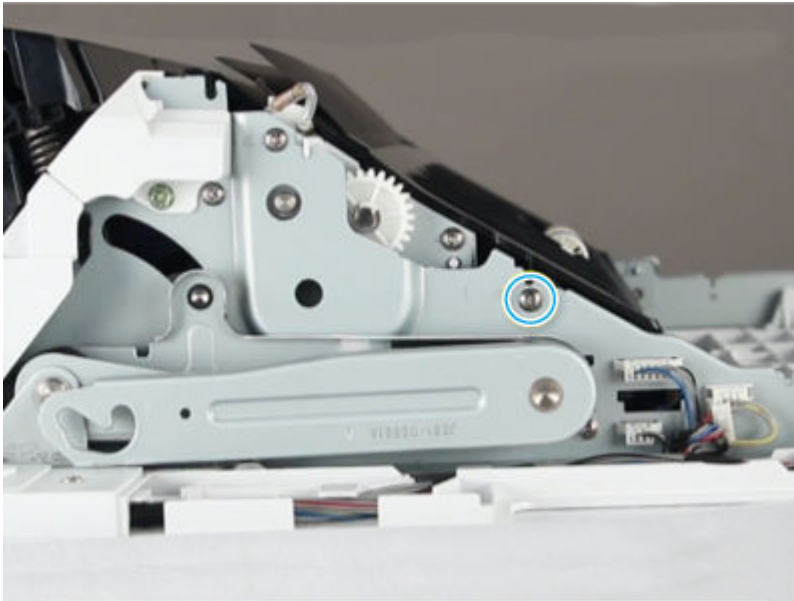
7. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-152 Remove one screw



8. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-153 Remove one screw



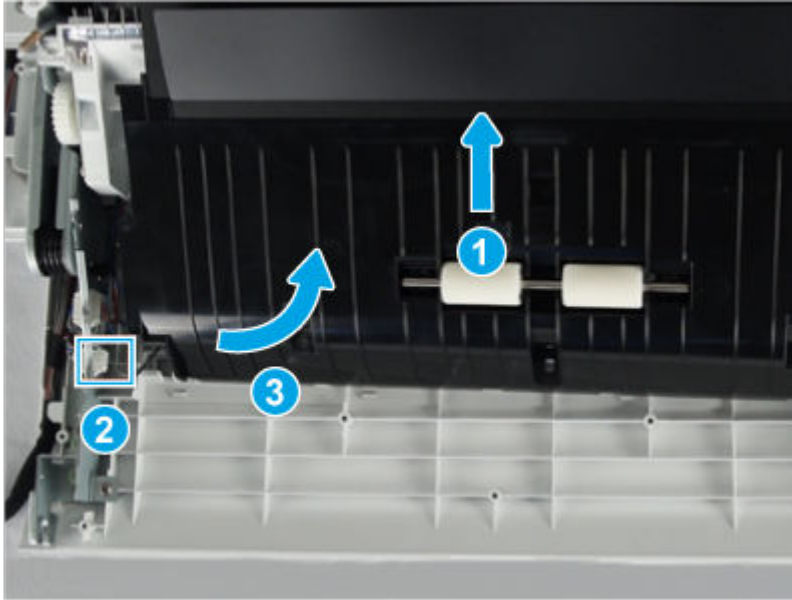
9. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-154 Remove one screw



10. Do the following:
 - a. Lift up the feed guide take-away upper to slightly separate it from the door (callout 1).
 - b. Disconnect one connector (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the take-away assembly from the door (callout 3).

Figure 6-155 Remove the take-away assembly

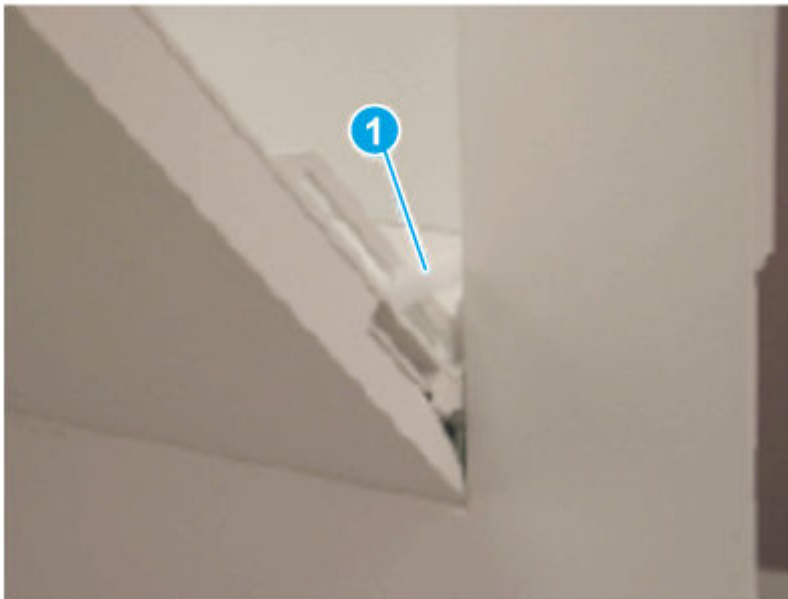


4. Remove the Tray 1 unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 unit.

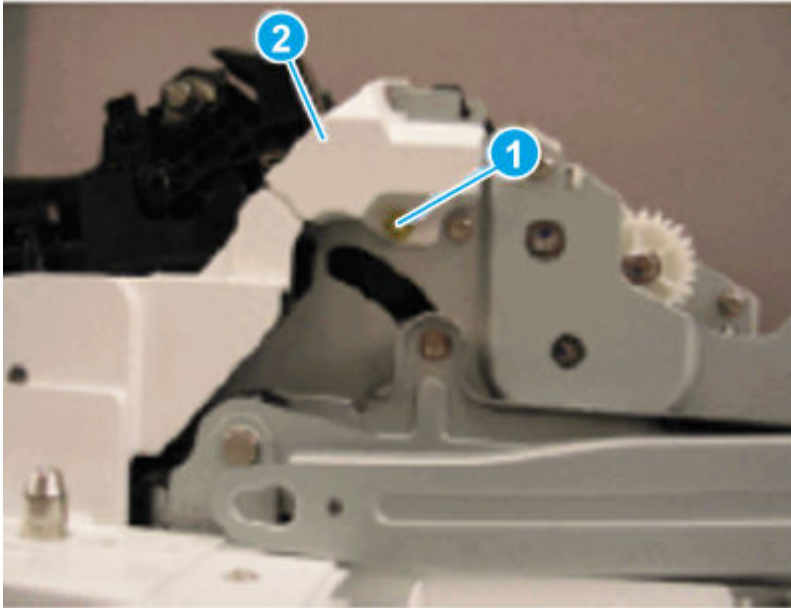
1. Hold the right door upright. Open Tray 1, and then release the hinge arm (callout 1).

Figure 6-156 Release the hinge arm



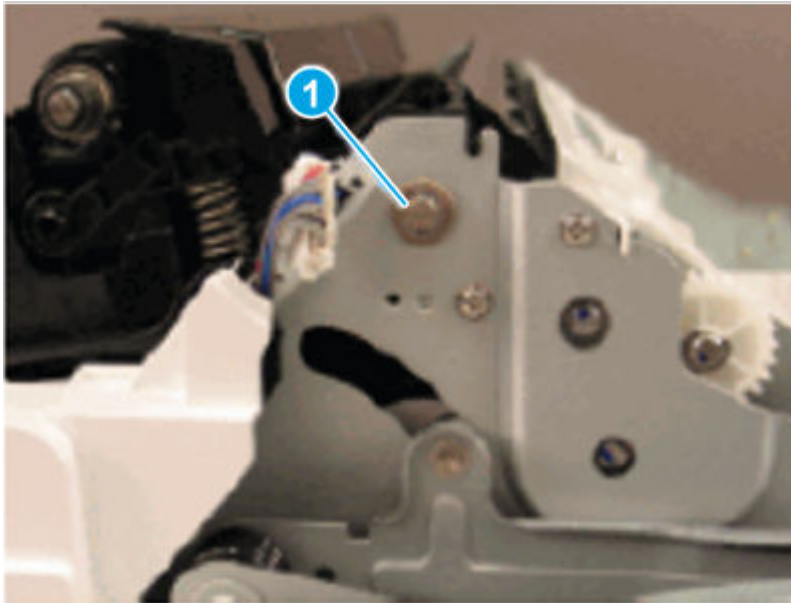
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bushing cover (callout 2).

Figure 6-157 Remove the bushing cover



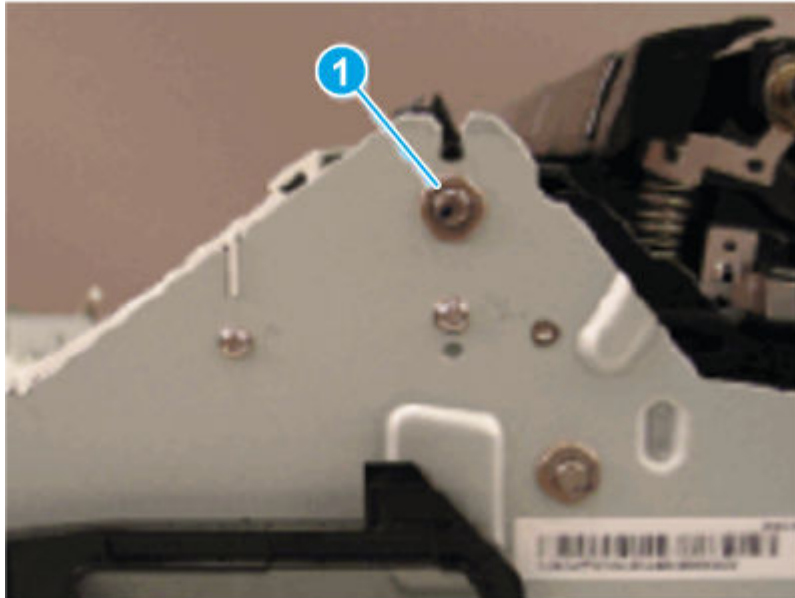
3. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 6-158 Remove one e-ring and bushing



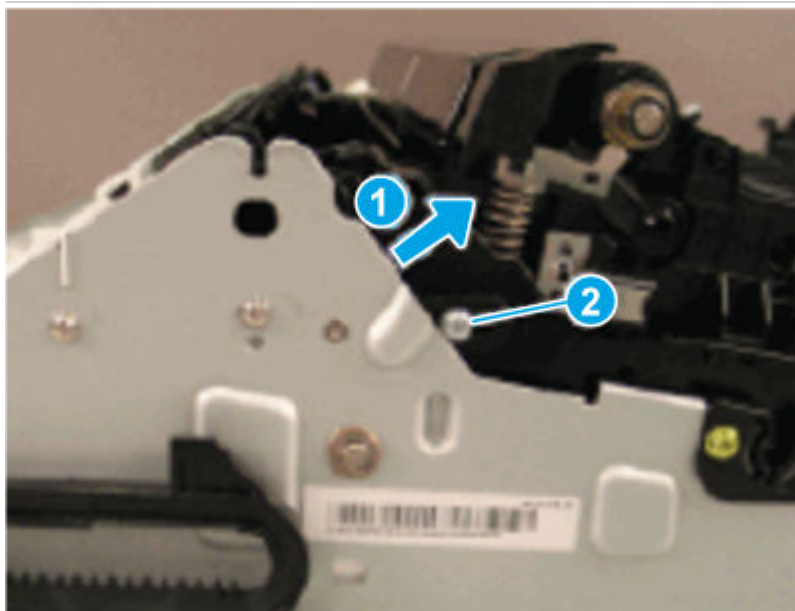
4. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1; on the other side).

Figure 6-159 Remove one e-ring and bushing



5. Pull the hinge arm up (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-160 Remove one screw



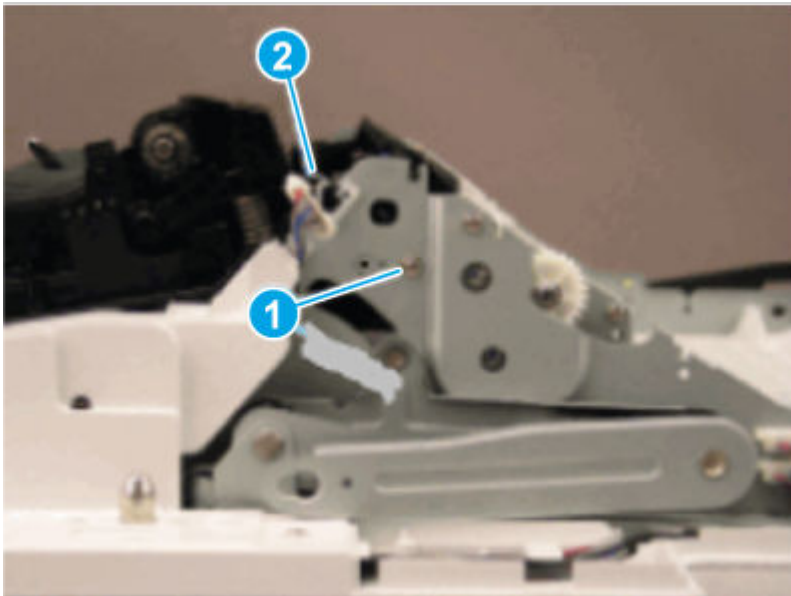
6. Release the hinge.

Figure 6-161 Release the hinge



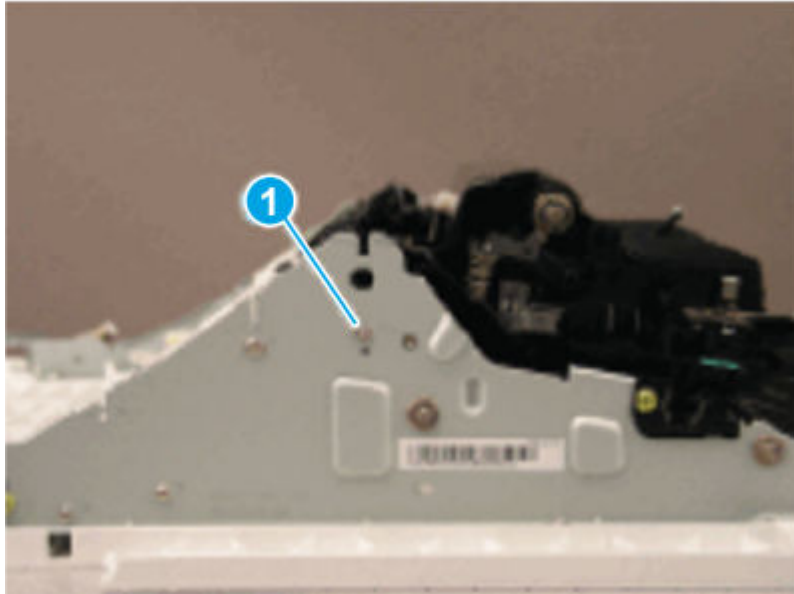
7. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-162 Release one retainer



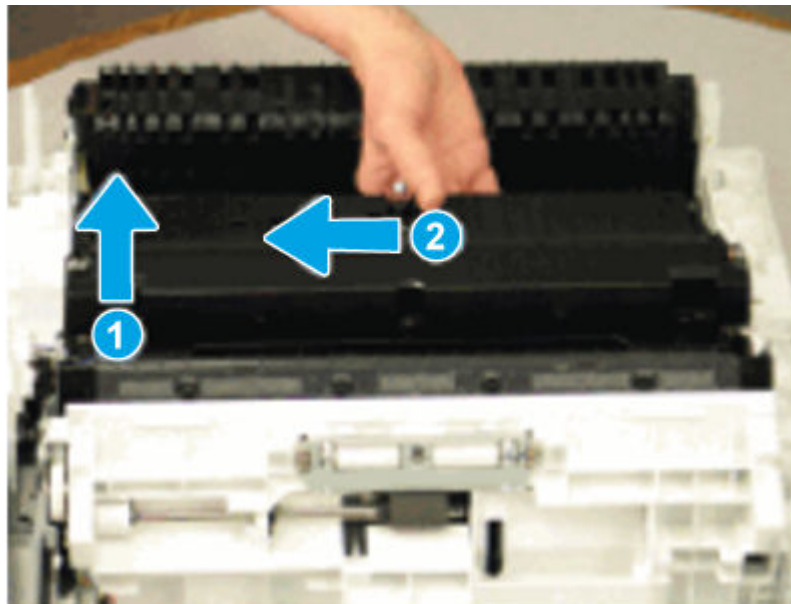
8. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 6-163 Remove one screw



9. Lift up on the feed roller assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2) to release it.

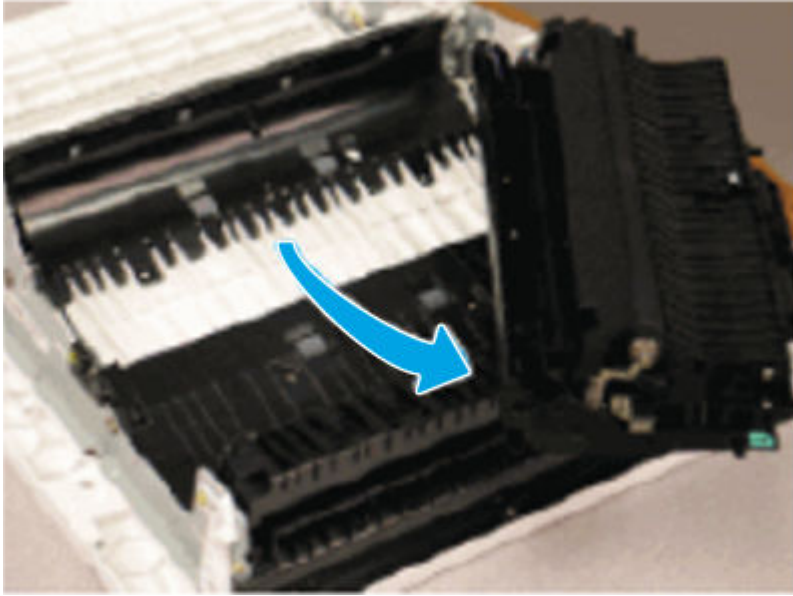
Figure 6-164 Release the feed roller assembly



10. Rotate the feed roller assembly to the side.

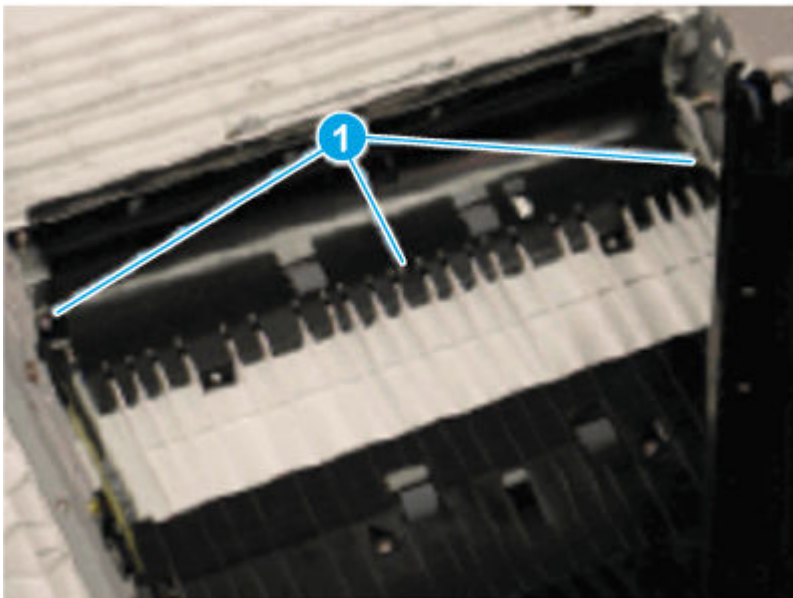
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the feed roller assembly. It is still attached to the right door.

Figure 6-165 Move the feed roller assembly



11. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-166 Remove three screws



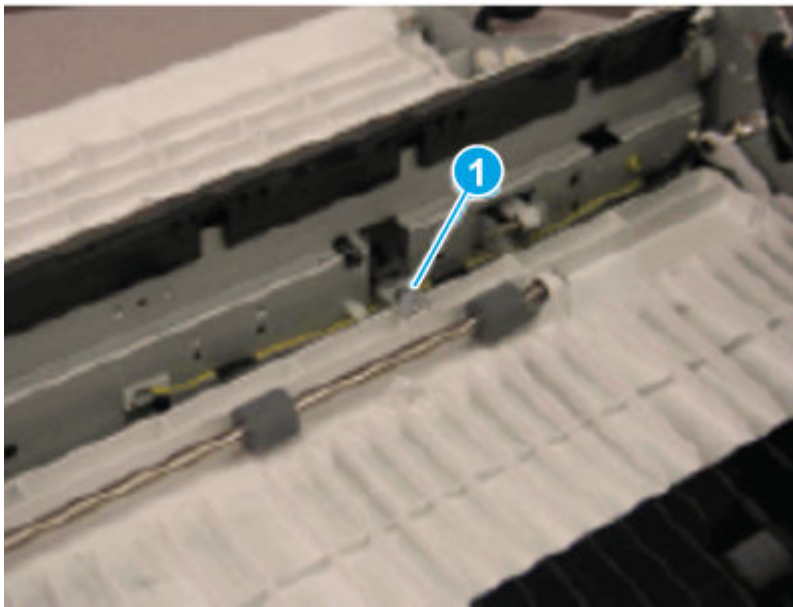
12. Remove the duplex lower guide.

Figure 6-167 Remove the duplex lower guide



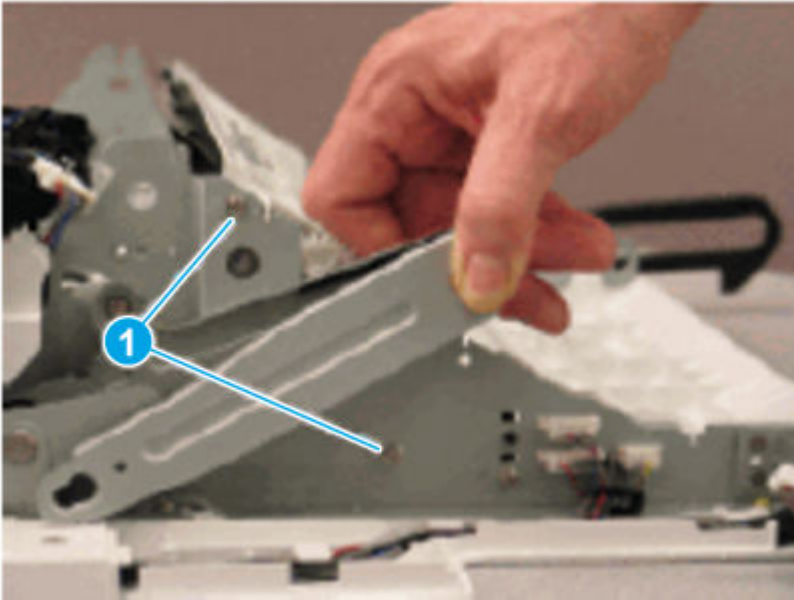
13. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 6-168 Remove one screw



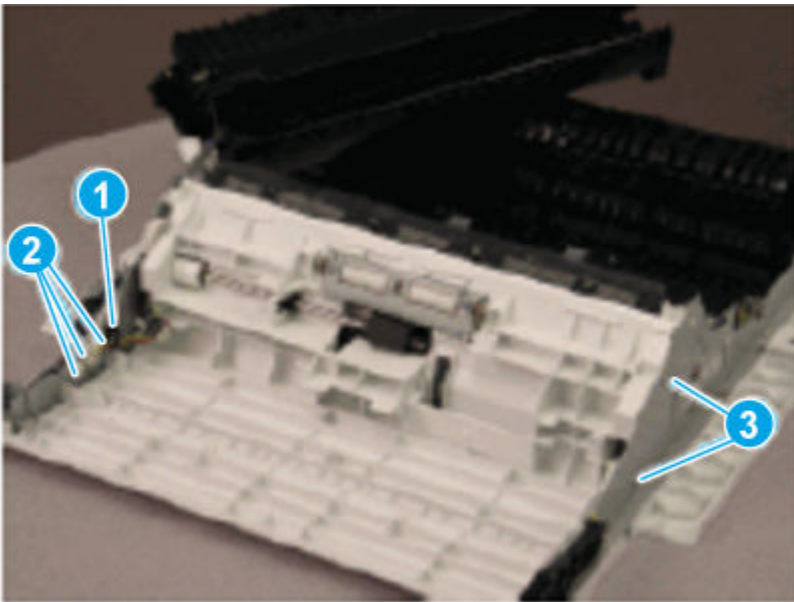
14. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-169 Remove two screws



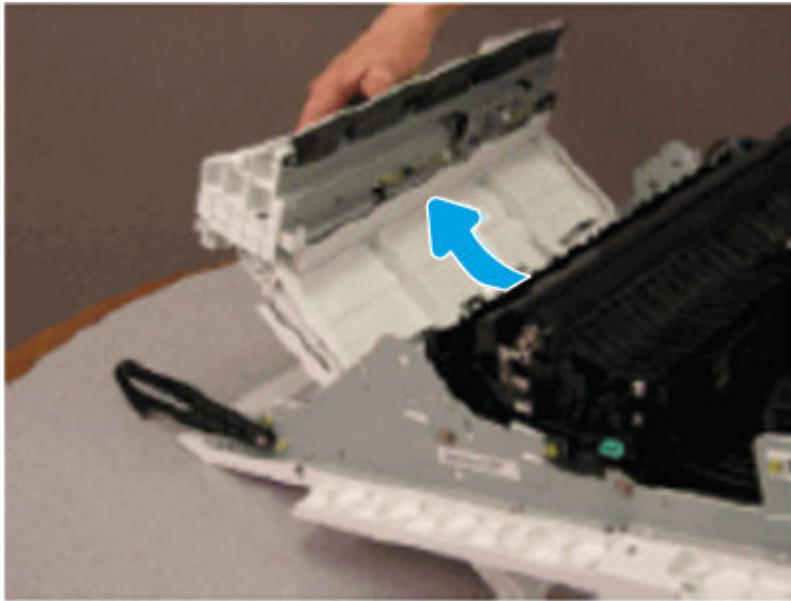
15. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 6-170 Remove two screws



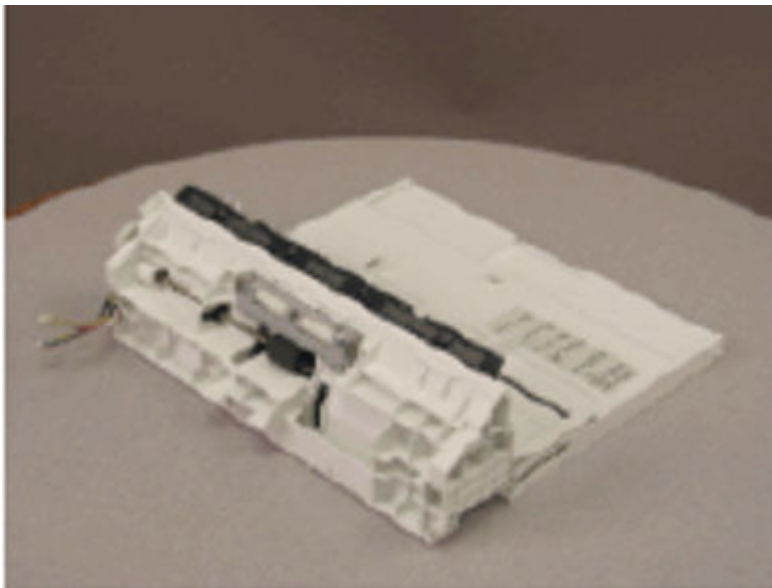
16. Release the Tray 1 unit from the right door.

Figure 6-171 Release the Tray 1 unit



17. Remove the Tray 1 unit.

Figure 6-172 Remove the Tray 1 unit



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 empty sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 1 empty sensor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 empty sensor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-32 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter (Tray 1 empty sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

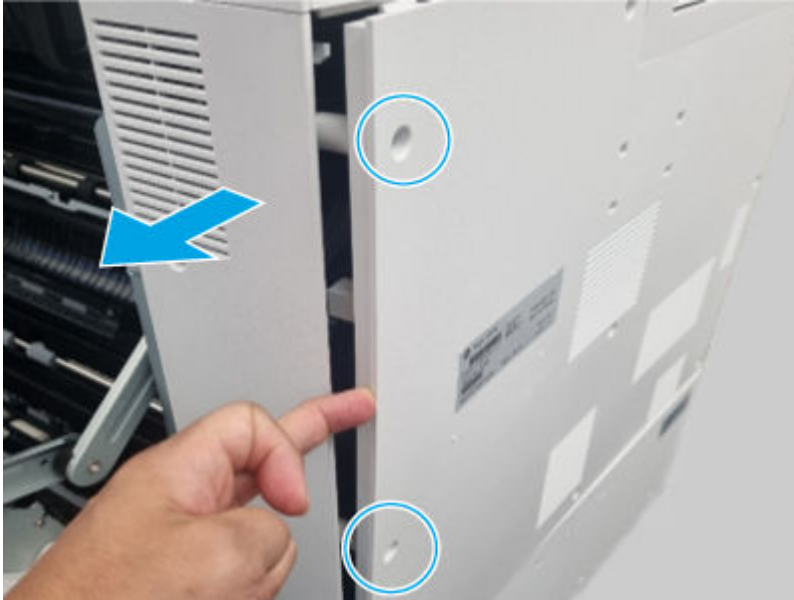
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-173 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-174 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

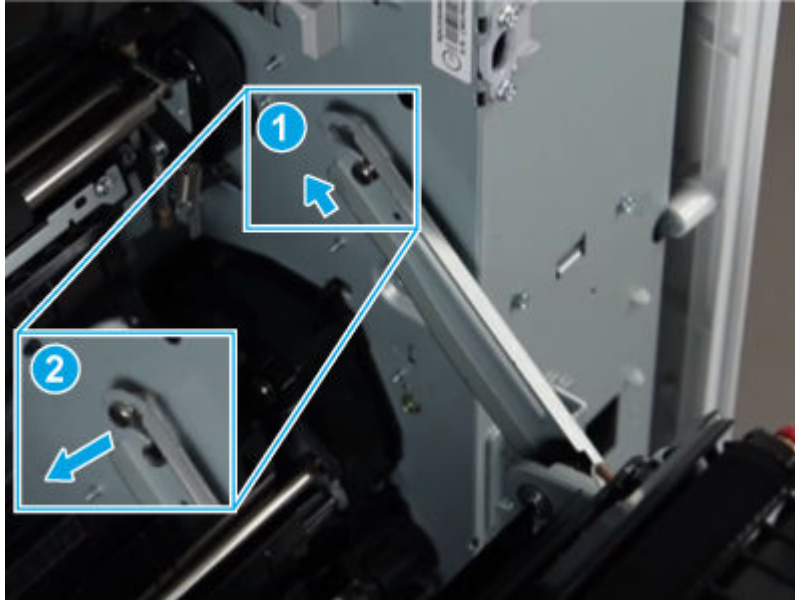
Figure 6-175 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

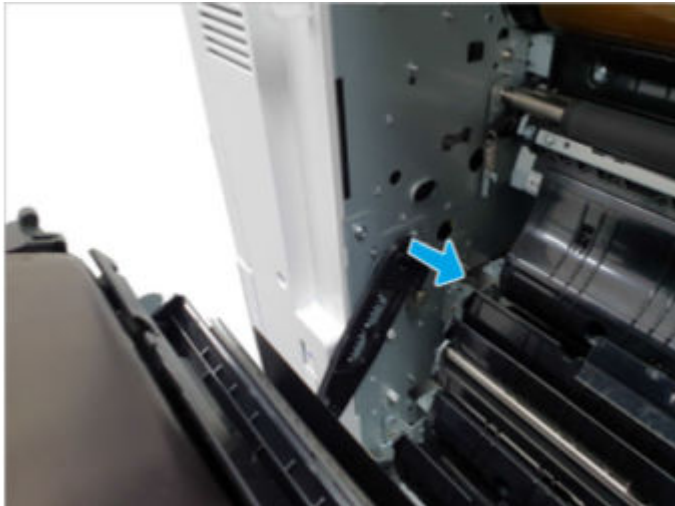
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-176 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-177 Release the link



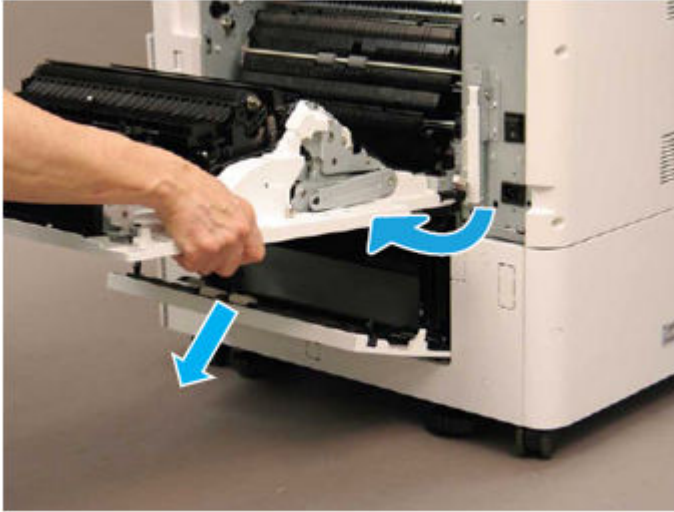
4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-178 Remove the door

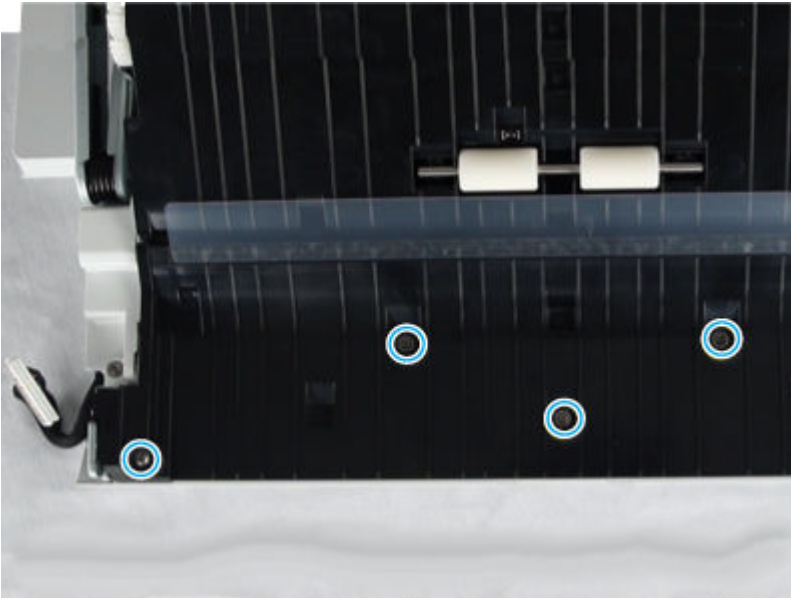


3. Remove the right door take-away assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door take-away assembly.

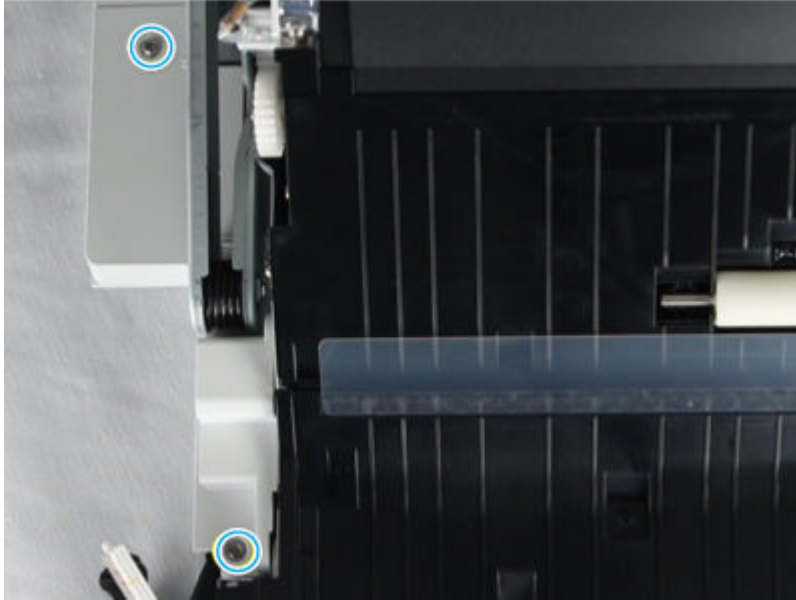
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-179 Remove four screws



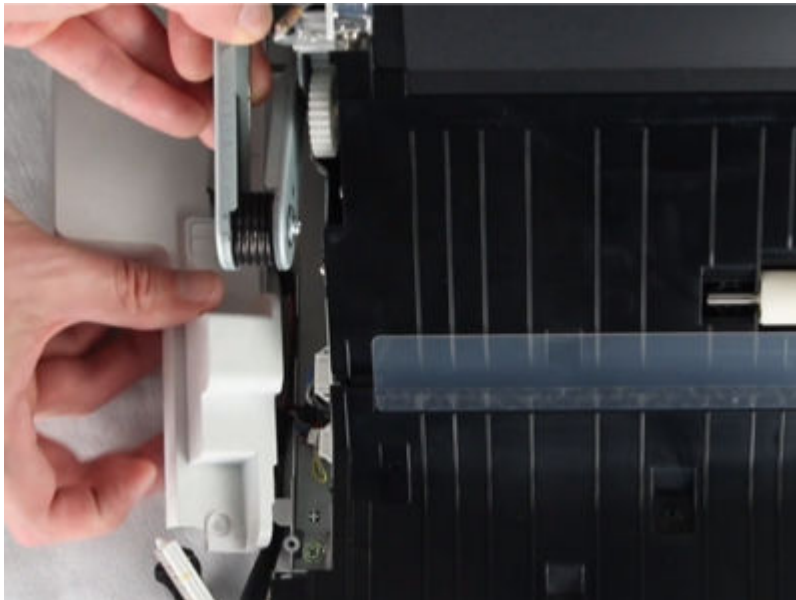
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-180 Remove two screws



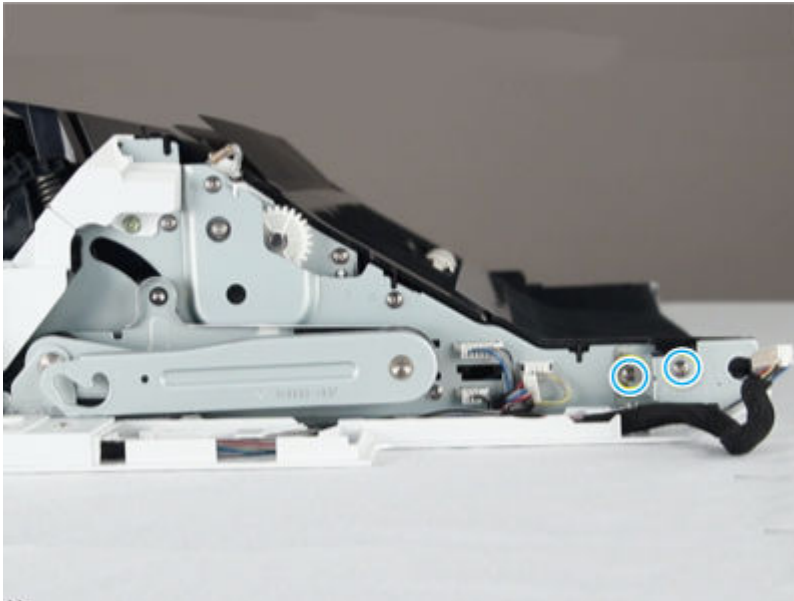
3. Remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 6-181 Remove the cover



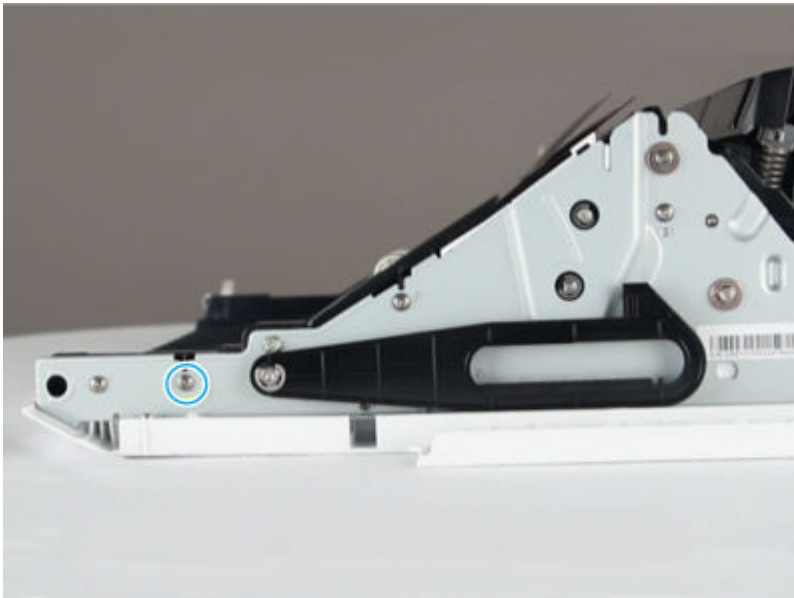
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-182 Remove two screws



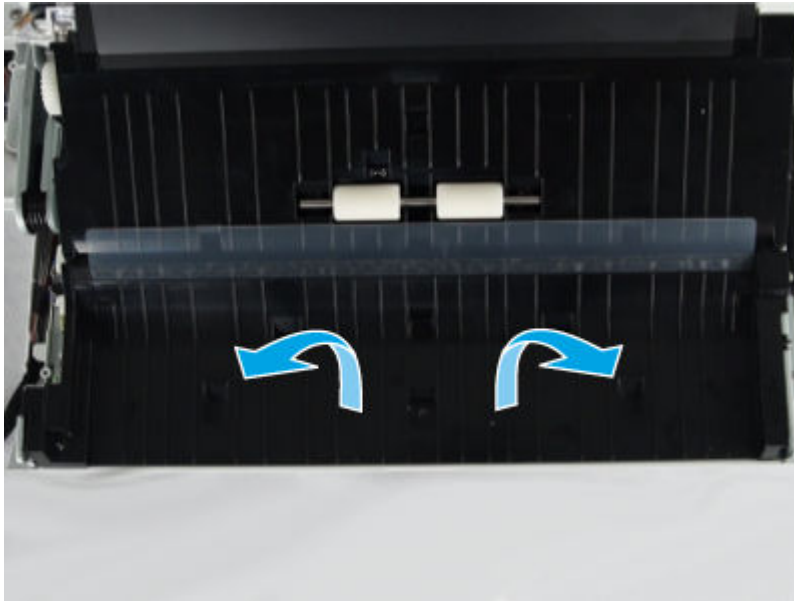
5. Remove one screw (on the other side of the door).

Figure 6-183 Remove one screw



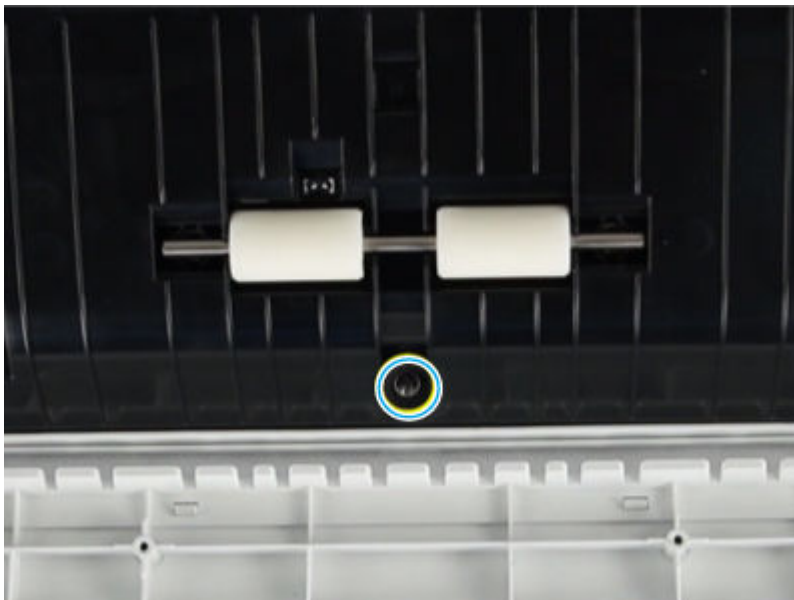
6. Remove the feed guide take-away lower.

Figure 6-184 Remove the take-away lower



7. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-185 Remove one screw



8. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-186 Remove one screw



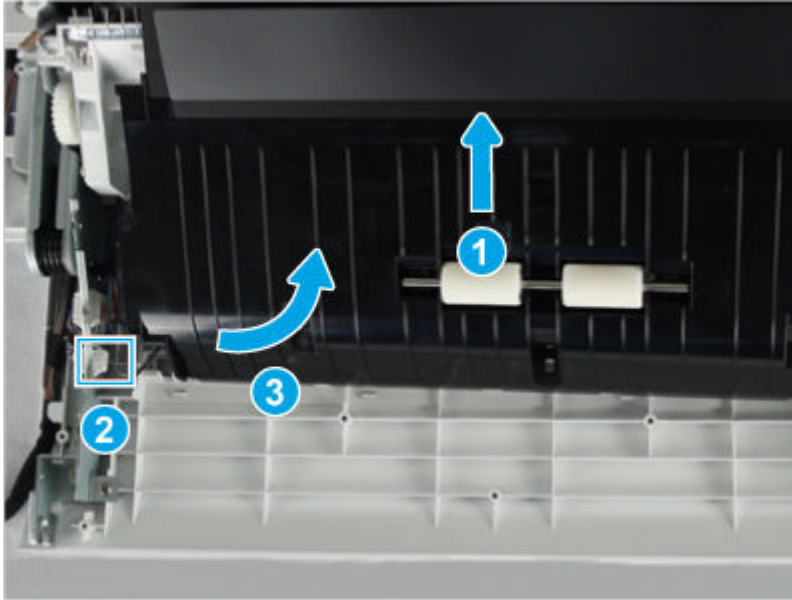
9. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-187 Remove one screw



10. Do the following:
 - a. Lift up the feed guide take-away upper to slightly separate it from the door (callout 1).
 - b. Disconnect one connector (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the take-away assembly from the door (callout 3).

Figure 6-188 Remove the take-away assembly

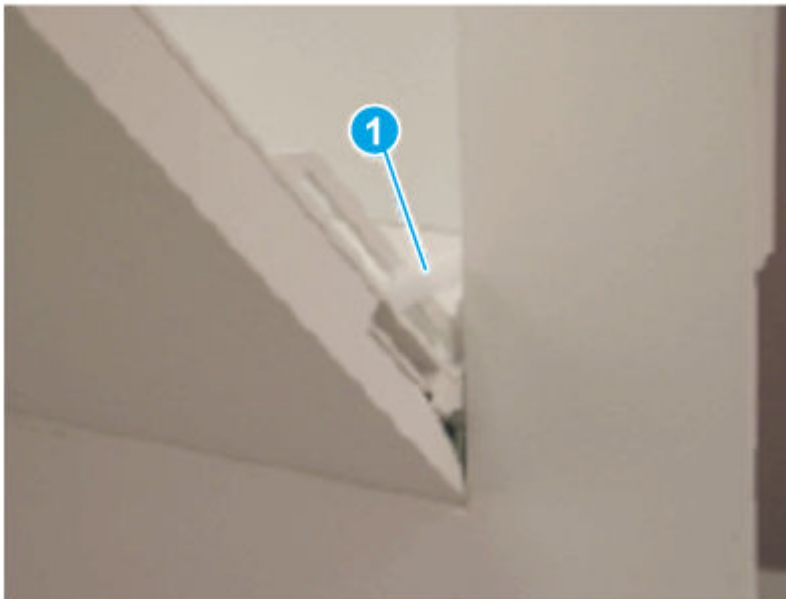


4. Remove the Tray 1 unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 unit.

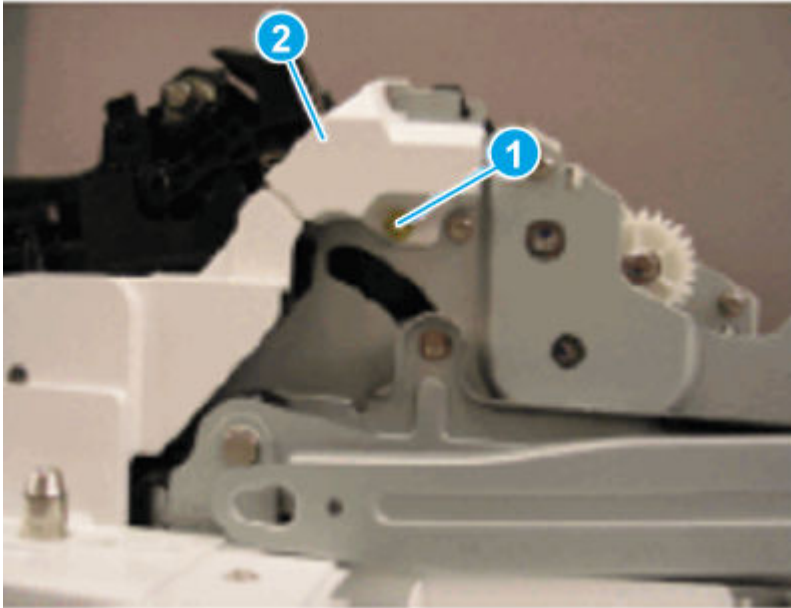
1. Hold the right door upright. Open Tray 1, and then release the hinge arm (callout 1).

Figure 6-189 Release the hinge arm



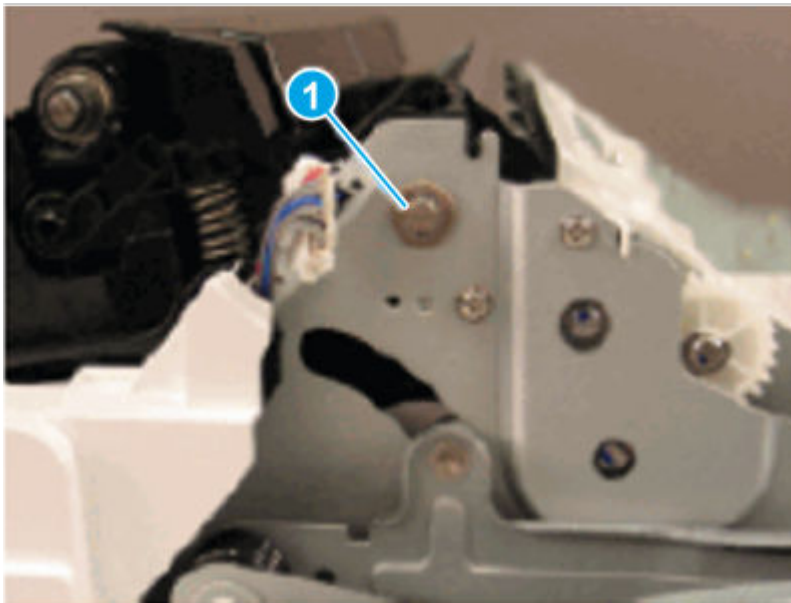
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bushing cover (callout 2).

Figure 6-190 Remove the bushing cover



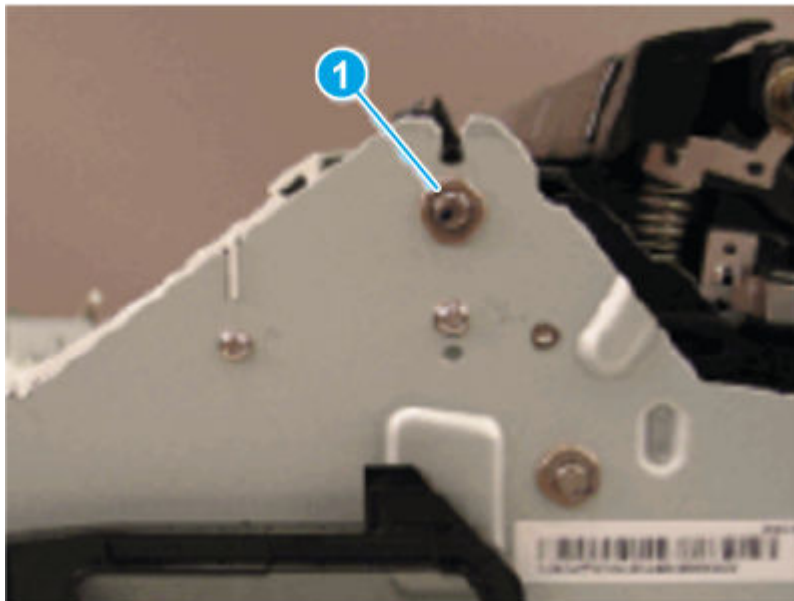
3. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 6-191 Remove one e-ring and bushing



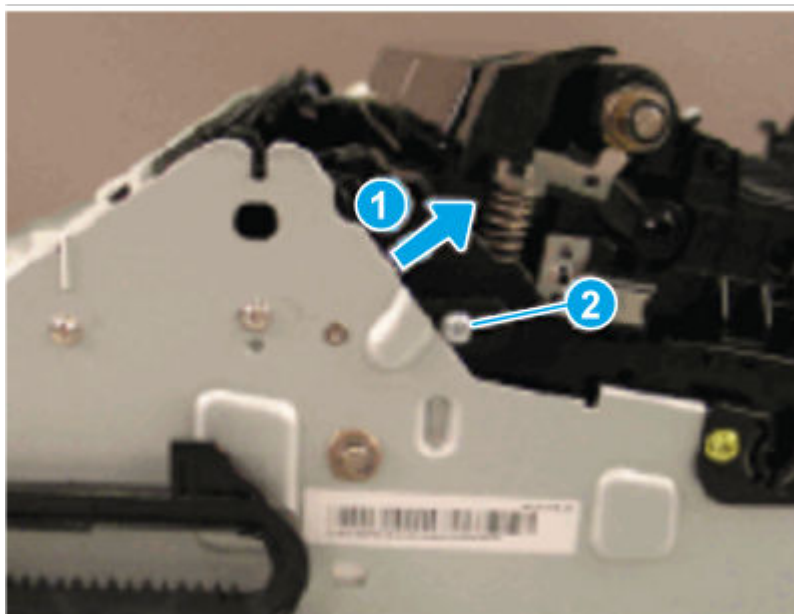
4. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1; on the other side).

Figure 6-192 Remove one e-ring and bushing



5. Pull the hinge arm up (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-193 Remove one screw



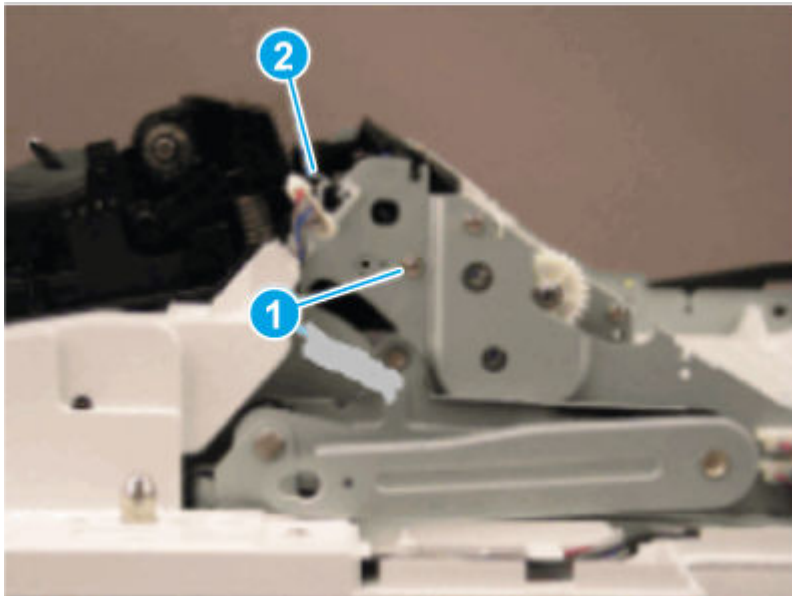
6. Release the hinge.

Figure 6-194 Release the hinge



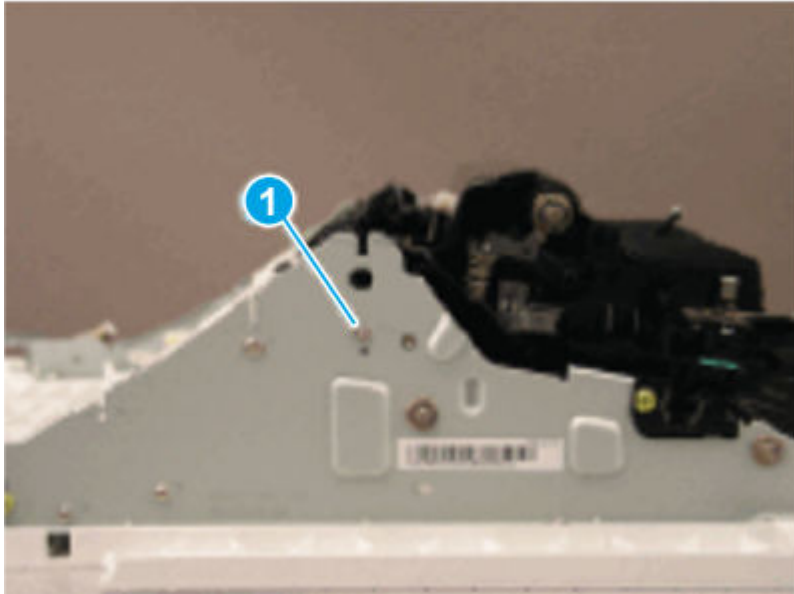
7. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-195 Release one retainer



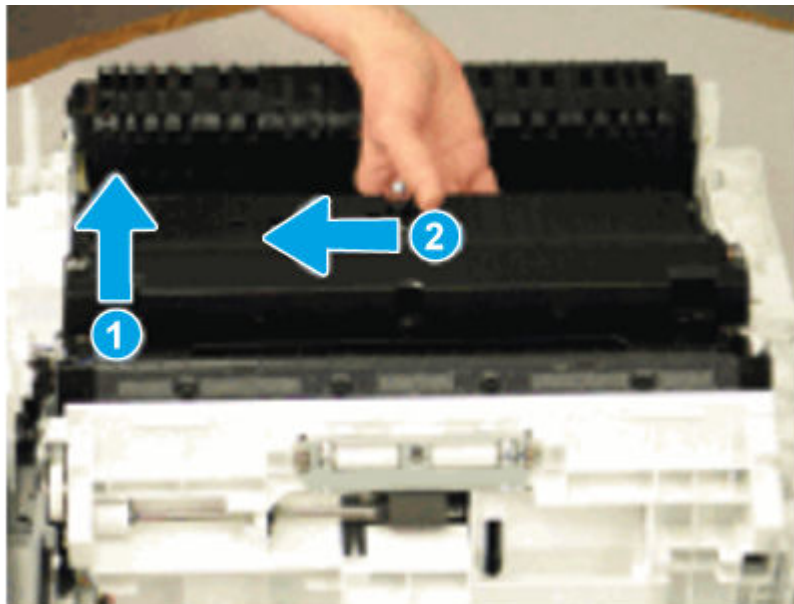
8. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 6-196 Remove one screw



9. Lift up on the feed roller assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2) to release it.

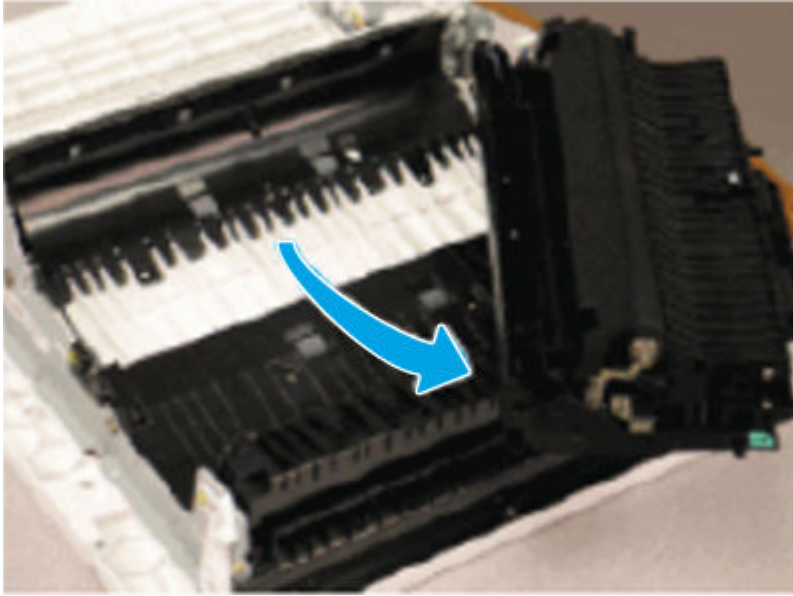
Figure 6-197 Release the feed roller assembly



10. Rotate the feed roller assembly to the side.

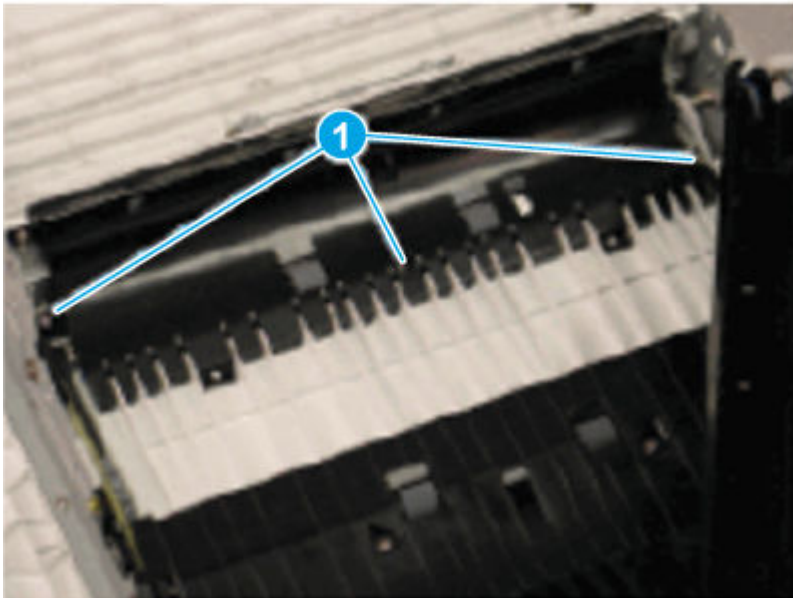
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the feed roller assembly. It is still attached to the right door.

Figure 6-198 Move the feed roller assembly



11. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-199 Remove three screws



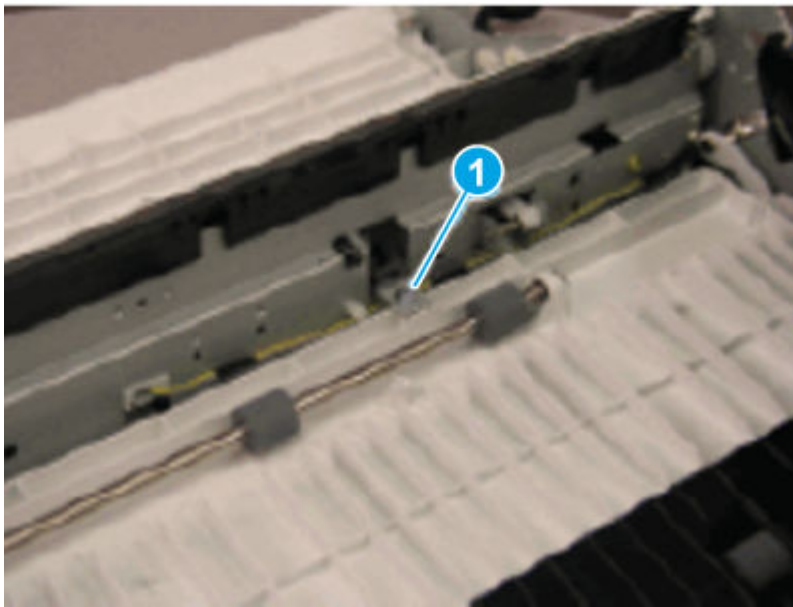
12. Remove the duplex lower guide.

Figure 6-200 Remove the duplex lower guide



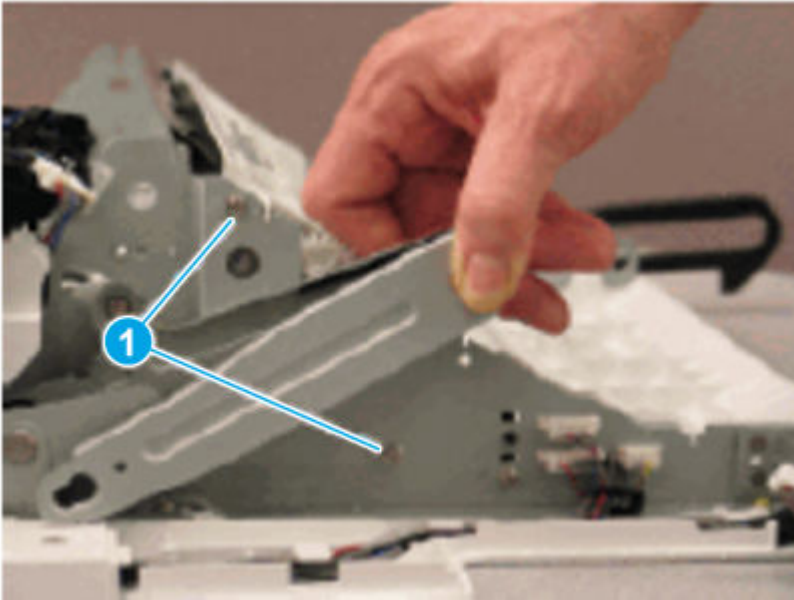
13. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 6-201 Remove one screw



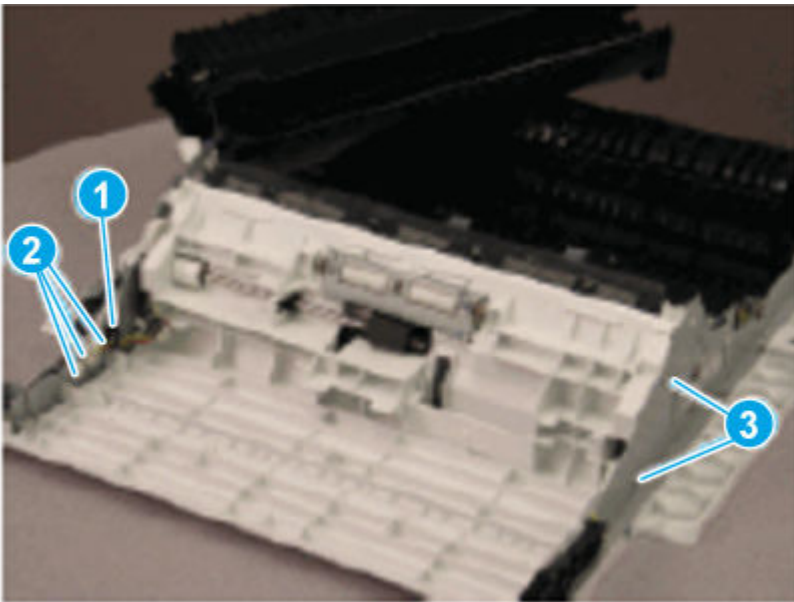
14. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-202 Remove two screws



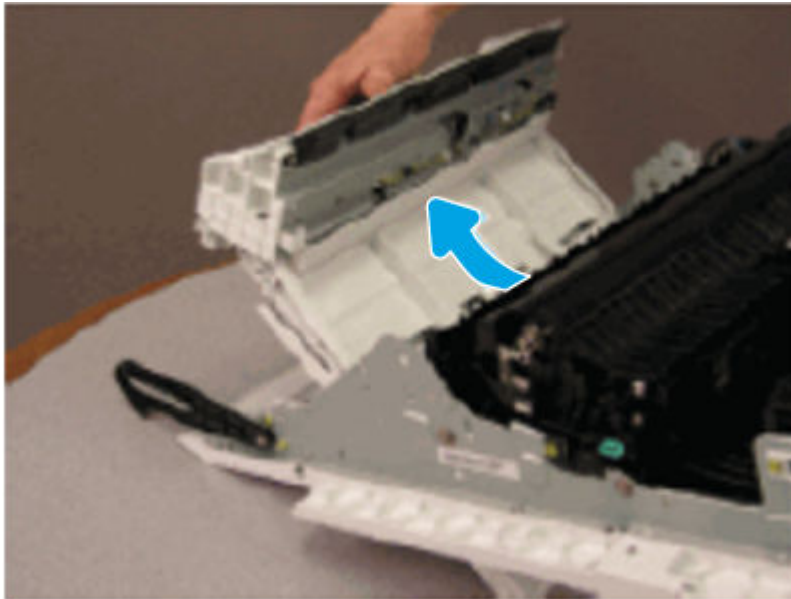
15. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and the remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 6-203 Remove two screws



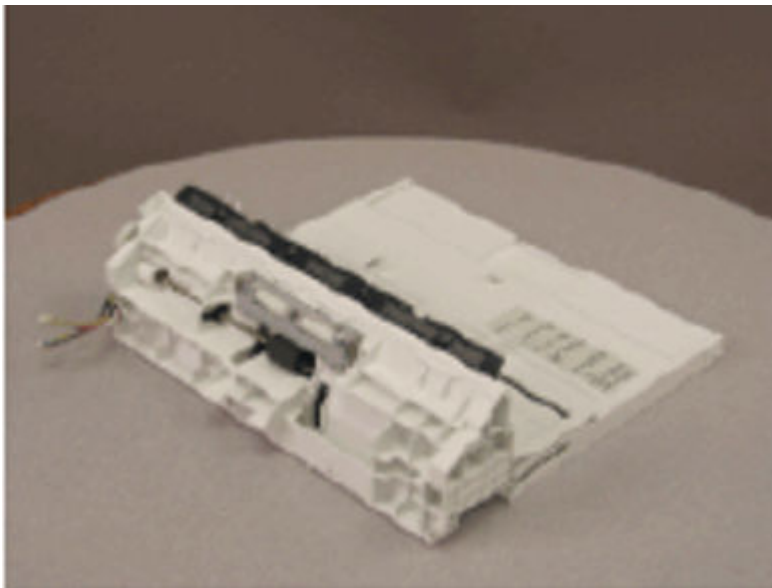
16. Release the Tray 1 unit from the right door.

Figure 6-204 Release the Tray 1 unit



17. Remove the Tray 1 unit.

Figure 6-205 Remove the Tray 1 unit

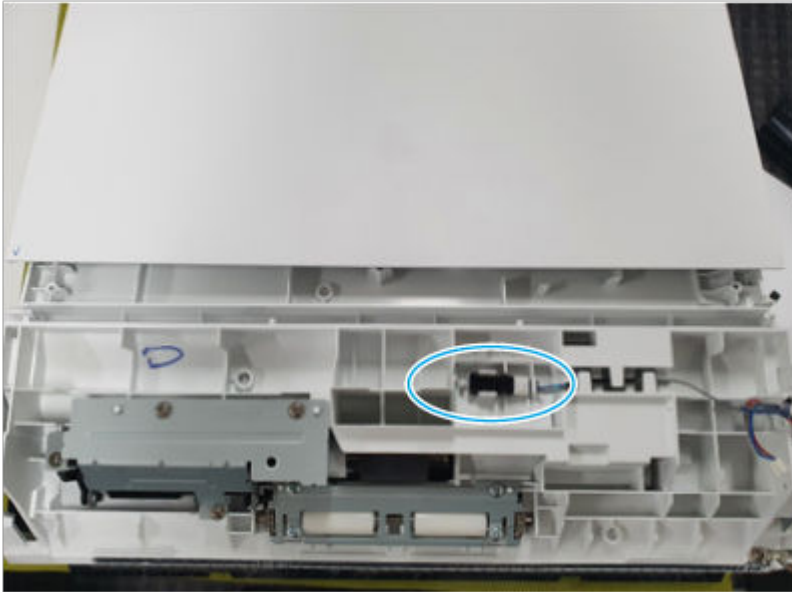


5. Remove the Tray 1 paper empty sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 paper empty sensor.

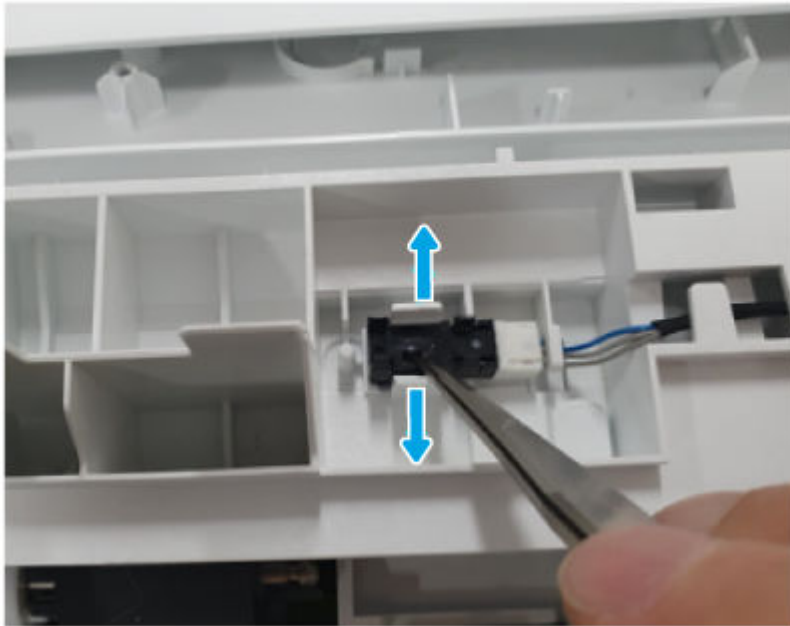
1. Locate the Tray 1 paper empty sensor.

Figure 6-206 Locate the sensor



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release two tabs, and then remove sensor.

Figure 6-207 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 clutch

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 1 clutch.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 clutch.](#)


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-33 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC47-00037A	Tray 1 clutch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

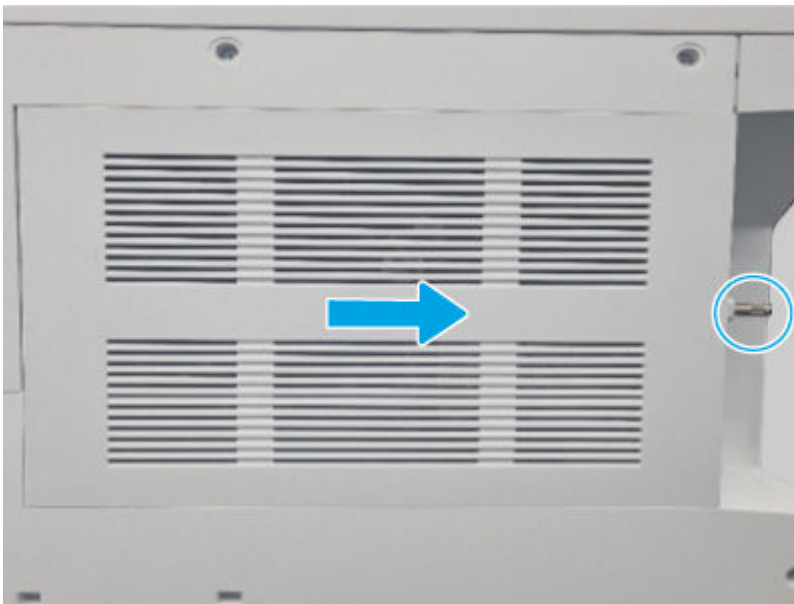
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-208 Remove the cover

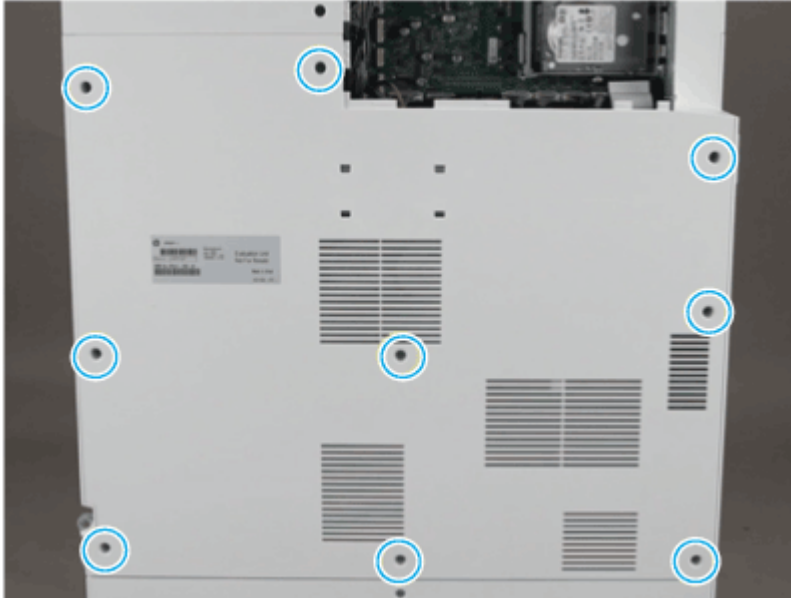


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-209 Remove the cover



3. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove four screws.

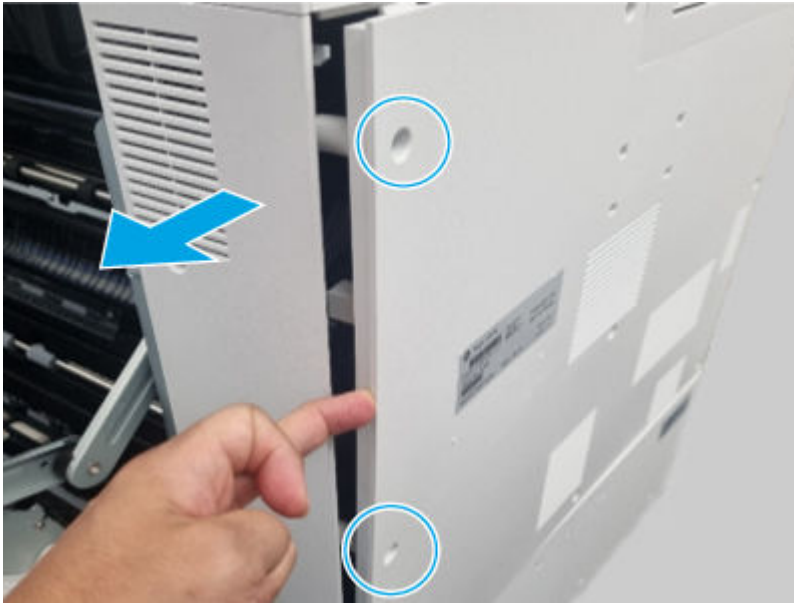
Figure 6-210 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.

- c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-211 Remove the cover



4. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

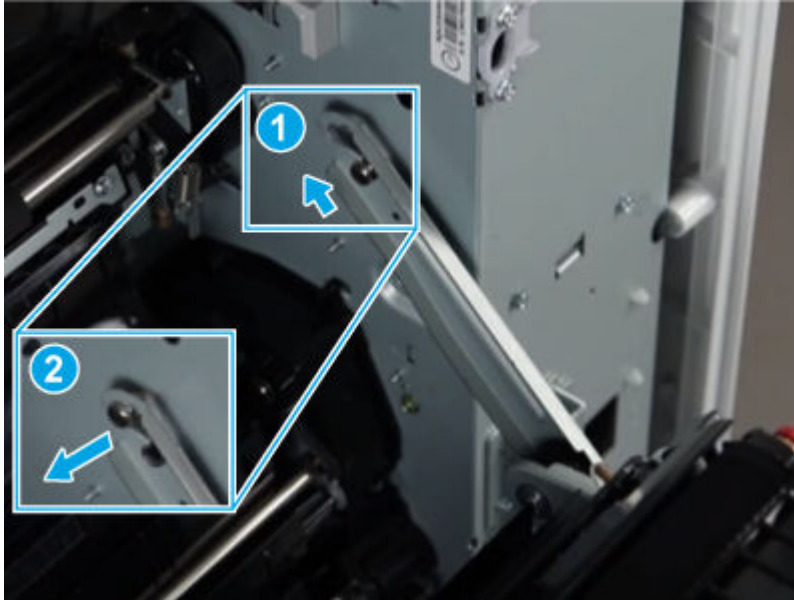
Figure 6-212 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

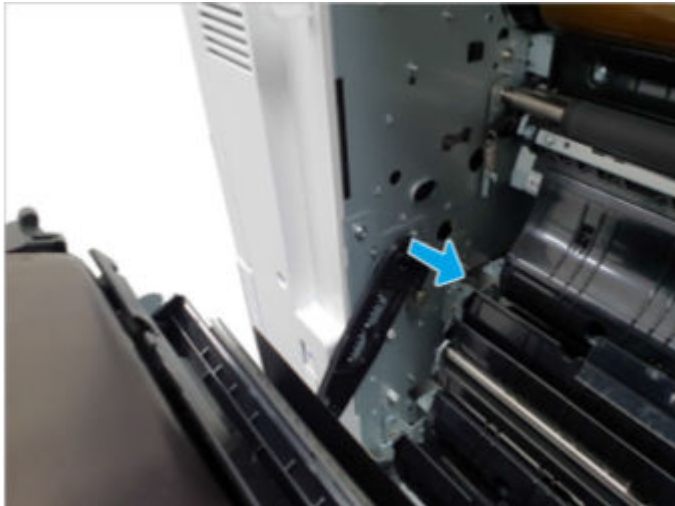
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-213 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-214 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


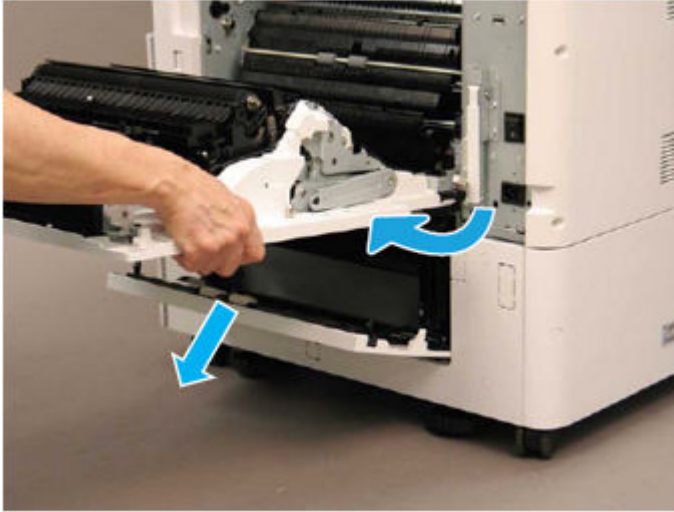
 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-215 Remove the door



5. Remove the feed drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the feed drive assembly.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-216 Remove one screw



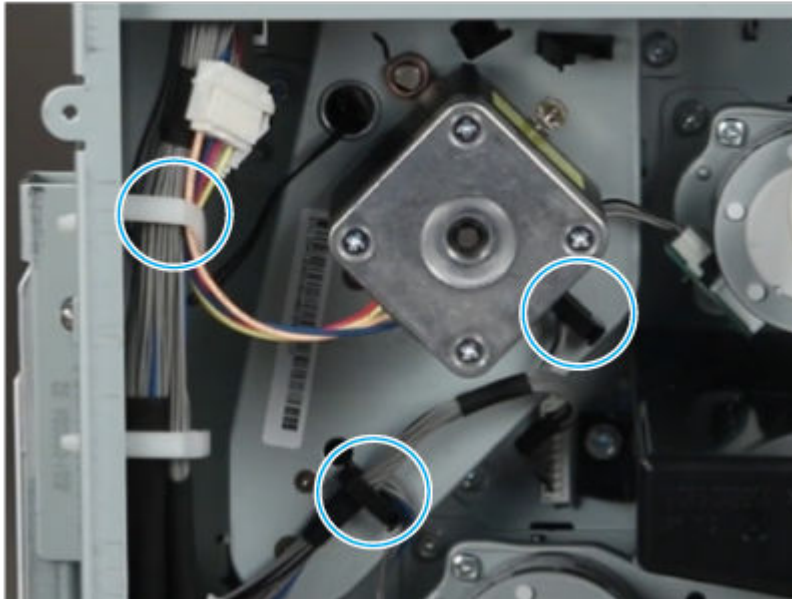
2. Release one hook, and then remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-217 Remove the gear cover



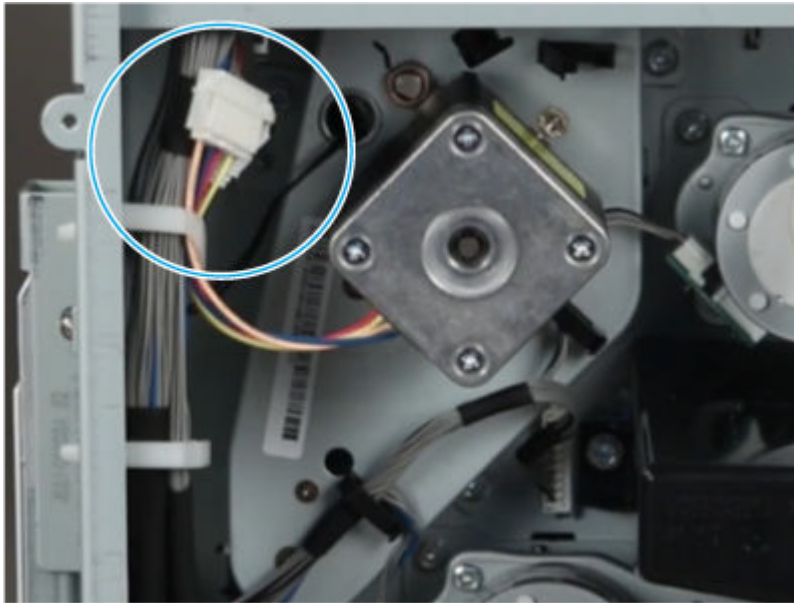
3. Release three retainers.

Figure 6-218 Release three retainers



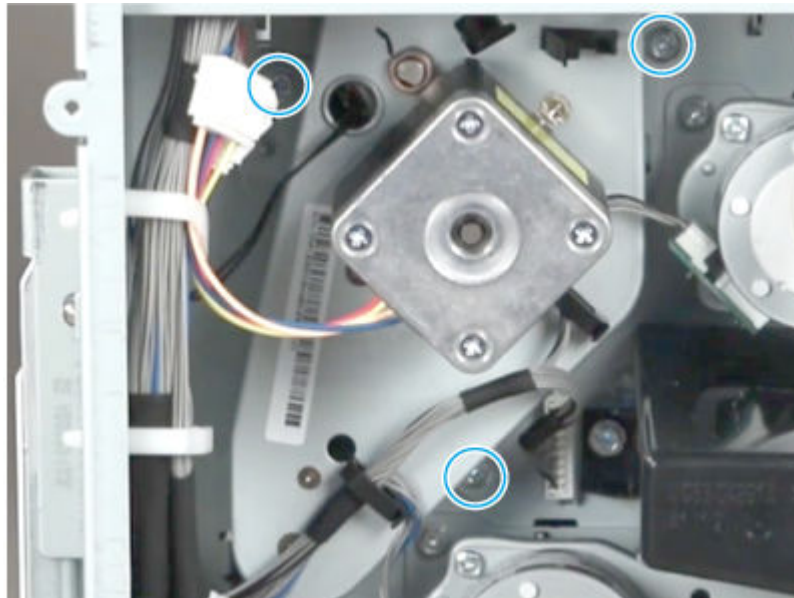
4. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-219 Disconnect two connectors



5. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-220 Remove the feed drive assembly



6. Remove the Tray 1 clutch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 clutch.

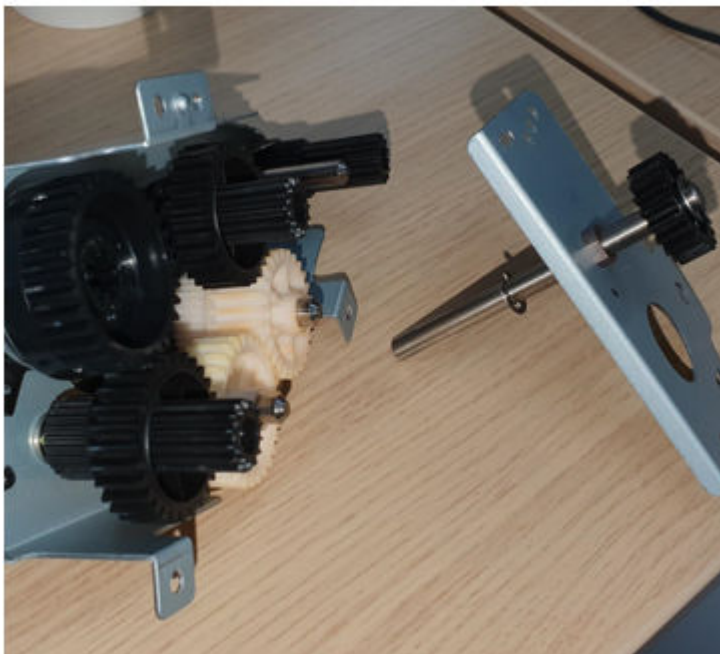
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-221 Remove one screw



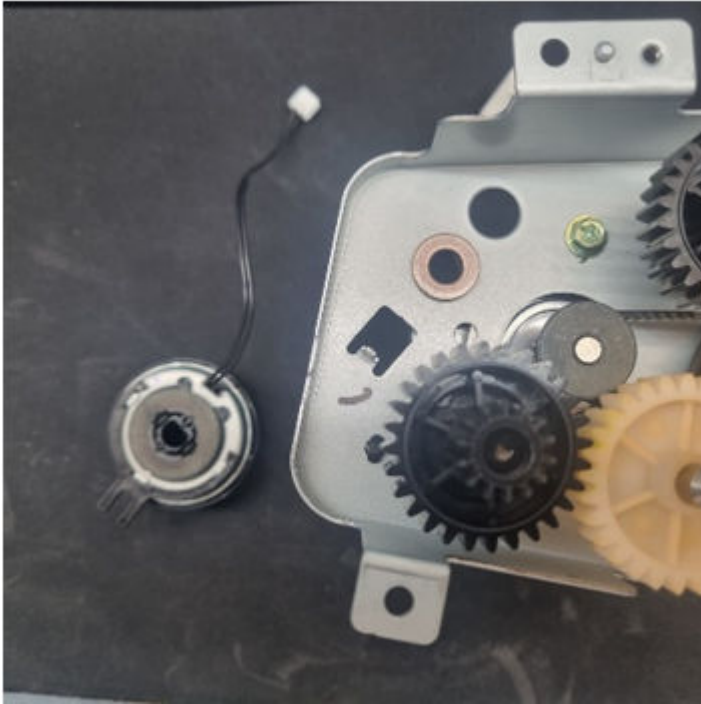
2. Remove the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-222 Remove the cover



3. Remove the clutch.

Figure 6-223 Remove the clutch



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 roller kit (pickup/forward/reverse)

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 1 roller kit.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 roller kit.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-34 Part information

Part number	Part description
5RC03-67001	Tray 1 roller kit NOTE: This kit includes the pickup, forward, and reverse rollers.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

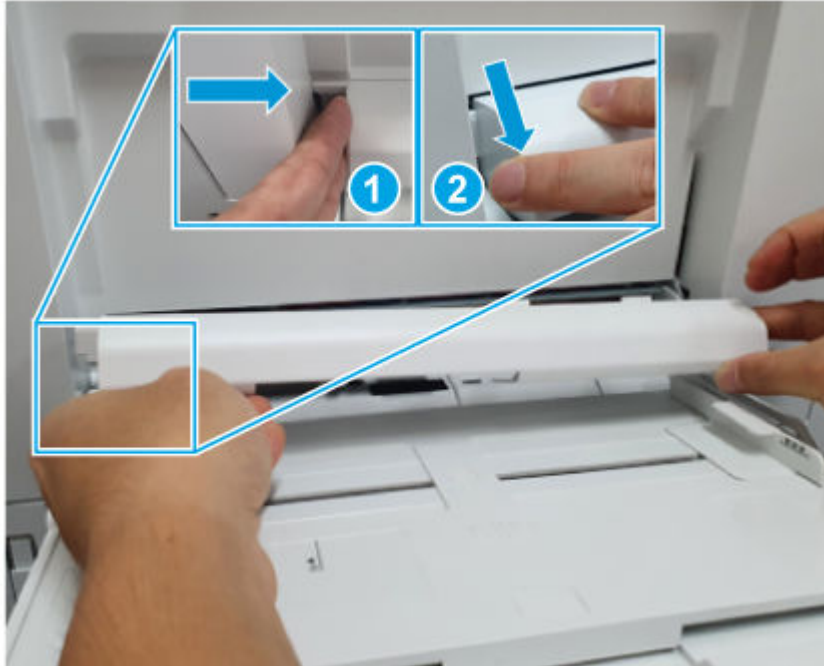
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 1 roller kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 roller kit.

1. Release the right- and left side tabs, and then remove the Tray 1 roller cover.

Figure 6-224 Remove the cover



2. Release one tab, and then remove the sensor cover.

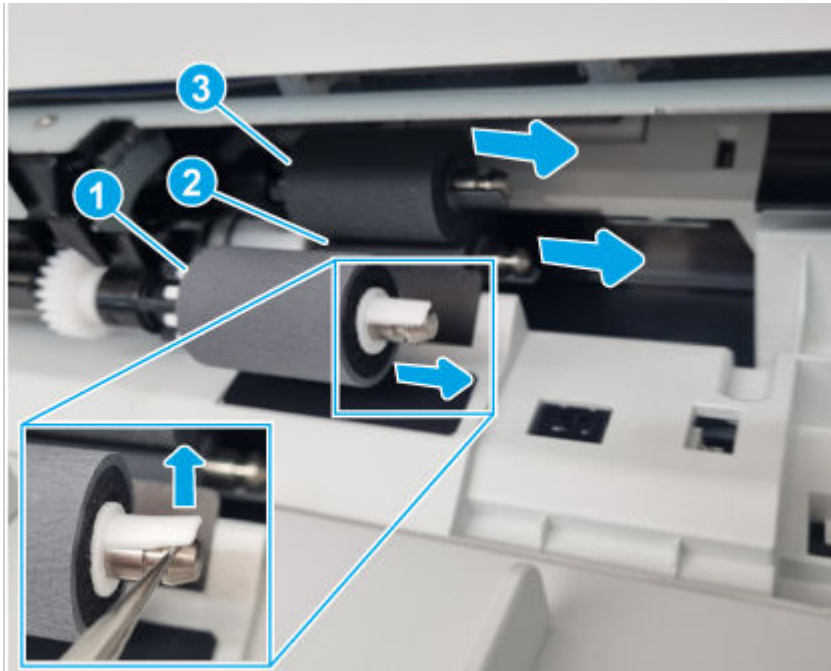
Figure 6-225 Remove the cover



3. Use a pair of tweezers to release the locking tab, and then slide the roller off the shaft to remove it.
 - **Pickup roller:** callout 1
 - **Reverse roller:** callout 2

- **Forward roller:** callout 3

Figure 6-226 Remove the rollers



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tray 2-3 units

Learn about feeding system Tray 2-3 units parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 or Tray 3

Learn about removing and replacing Tray 2 or Tray 3.



[View a video of removing and replacing Tray 2 or Tray 3.](#)

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-35 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60120	Tray 2
5QK09-60121	Tray 3

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

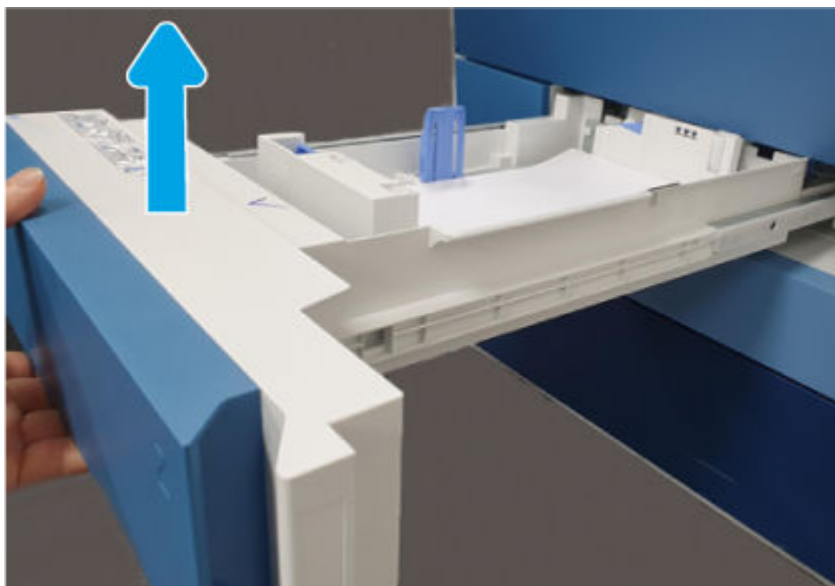
1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.


Figure 6-227 Remove the tray



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-36 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01694A	Tray 2 pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

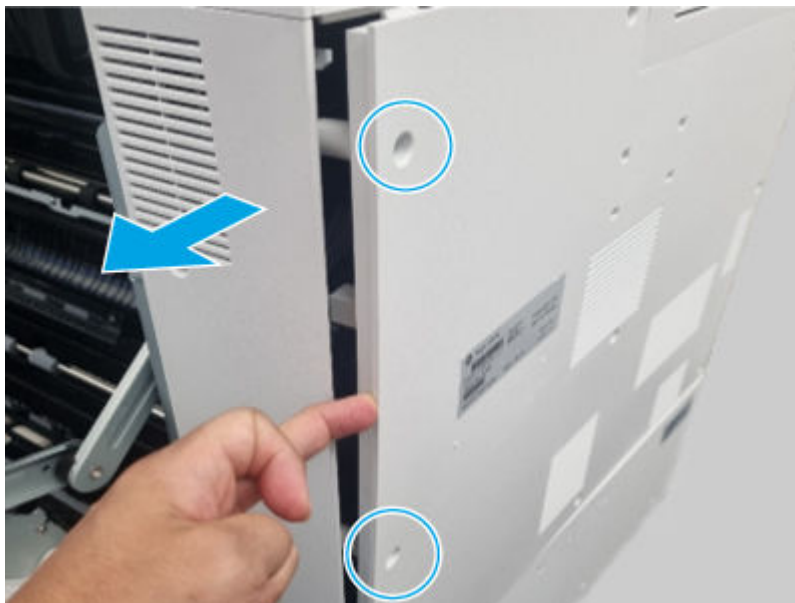
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-228 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-229 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

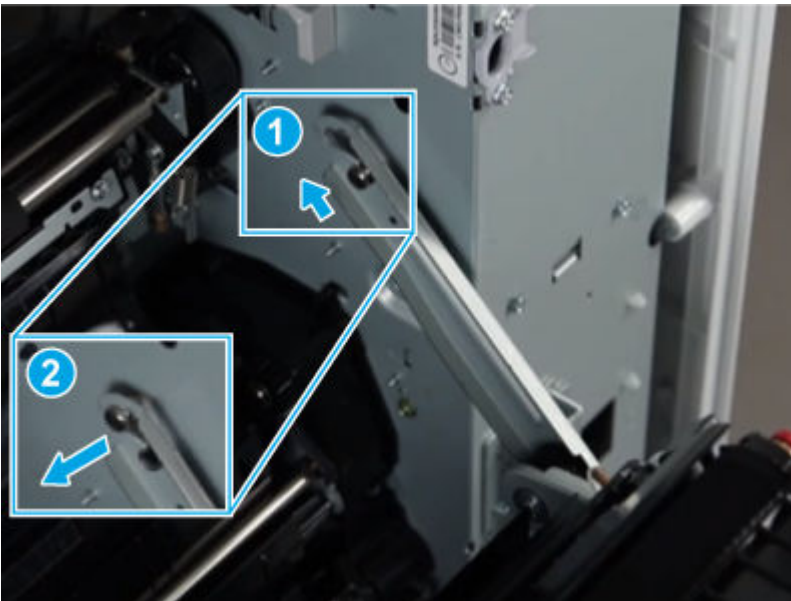
Figure 6-230 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

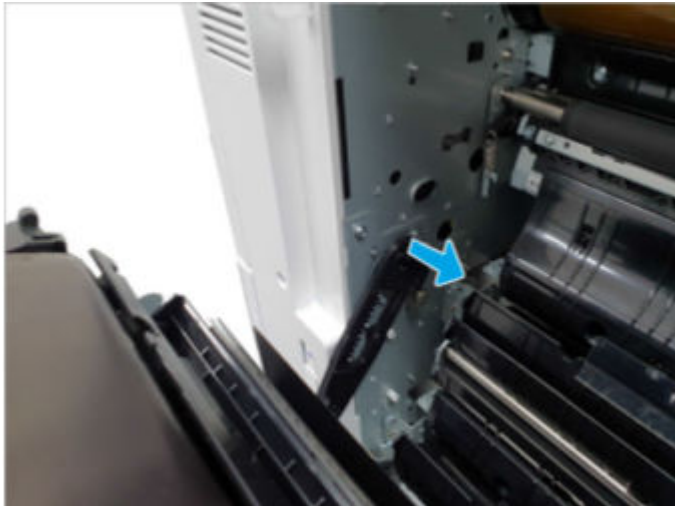
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-231 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-232 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


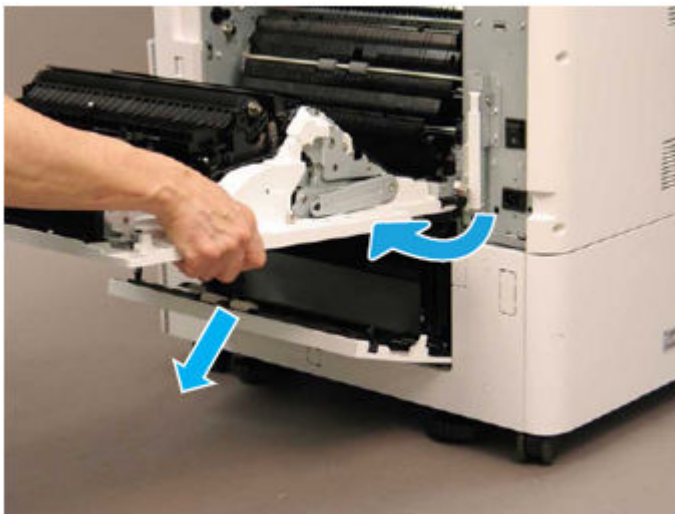

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-233 Remove the door



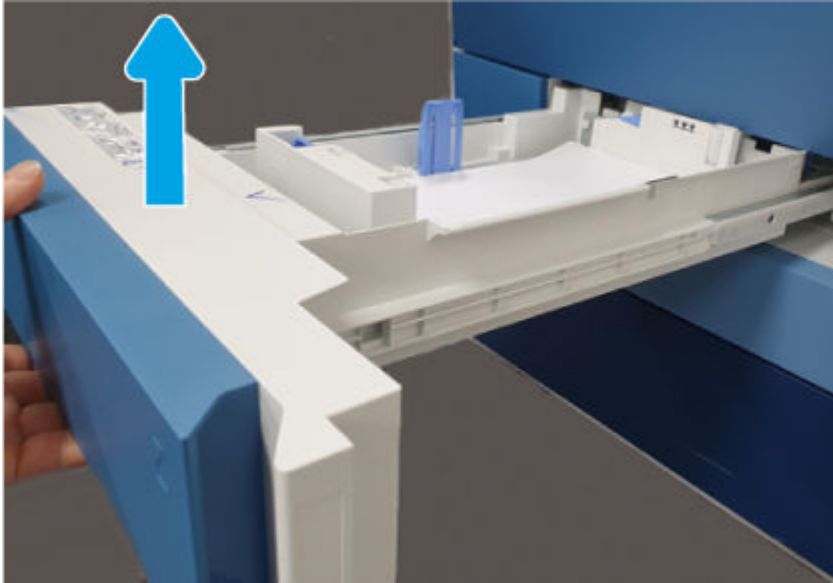
3. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-234 Remove the tray

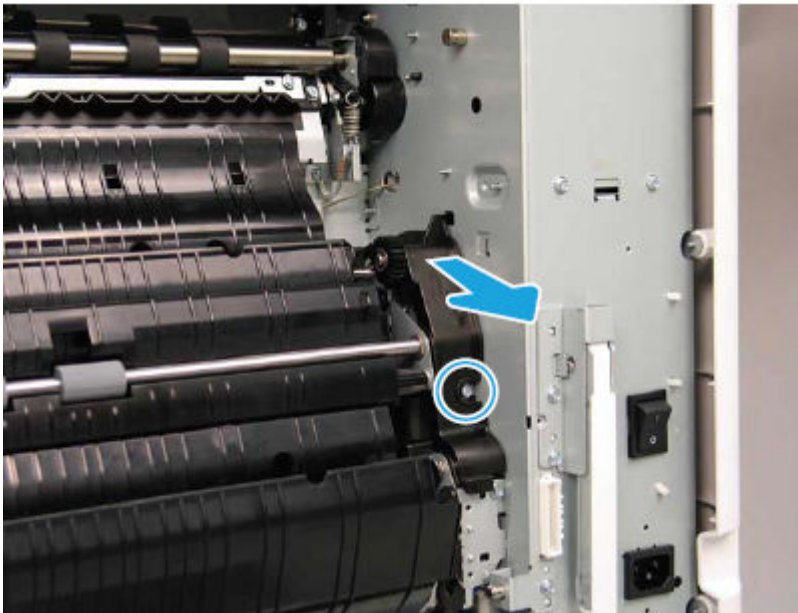


4. Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup assembly.

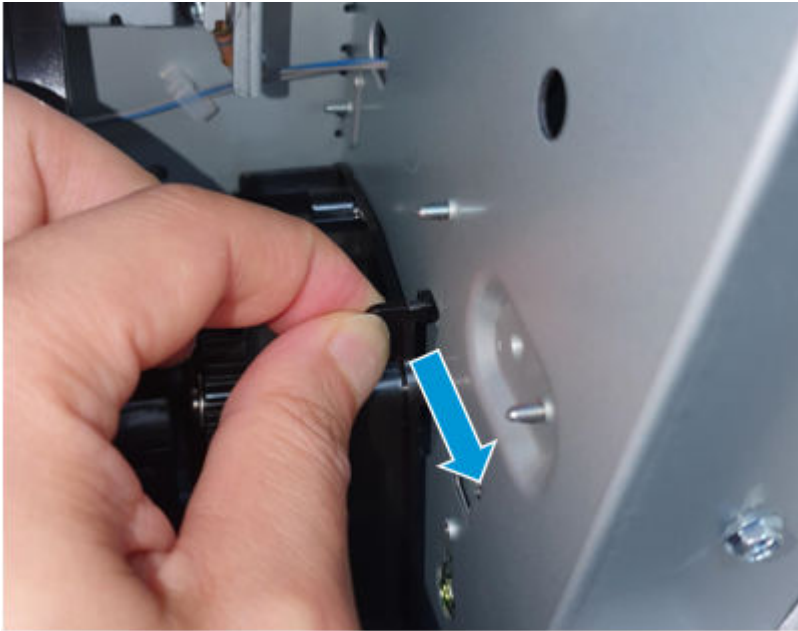
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-235 Remove the cover



2. Release one hook.

Figure 6-236 Release the hook



3. Remove three screws.

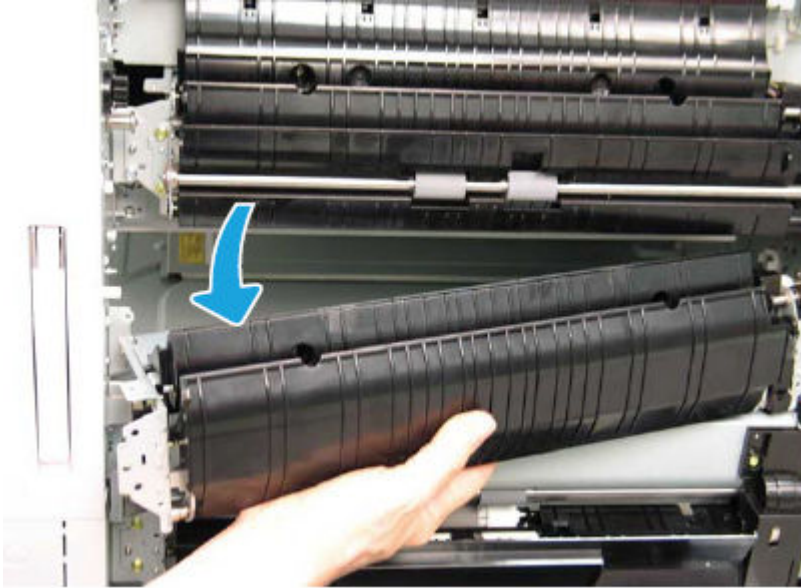
Figure 6-237 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup assembly away from the printer.

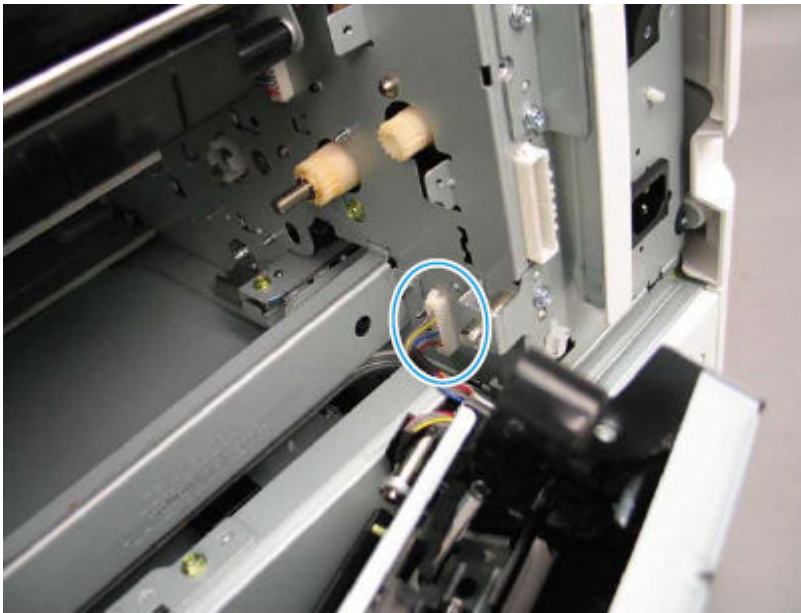
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-238 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-239 Remove the assembly




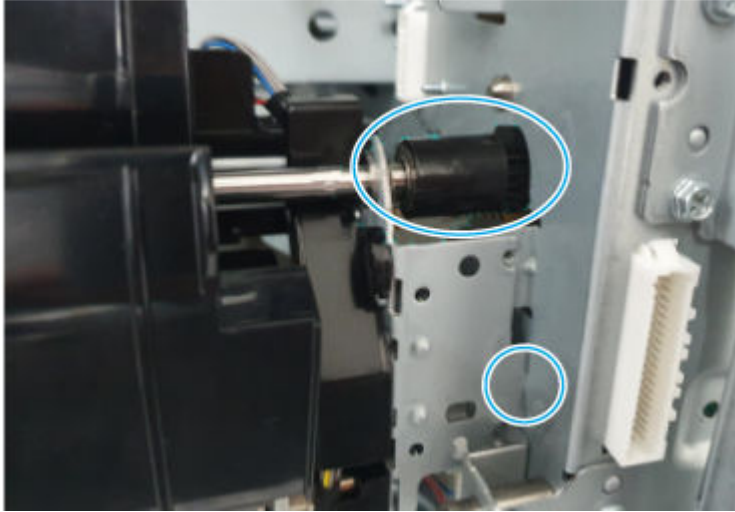
 **Reinstallation tip:** When installing the assembly, insert and align the right side first.

Figure 6-240 Install the assembly



5. Remove the Tray 2 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 pickup assembly.

1. Remove three screws.

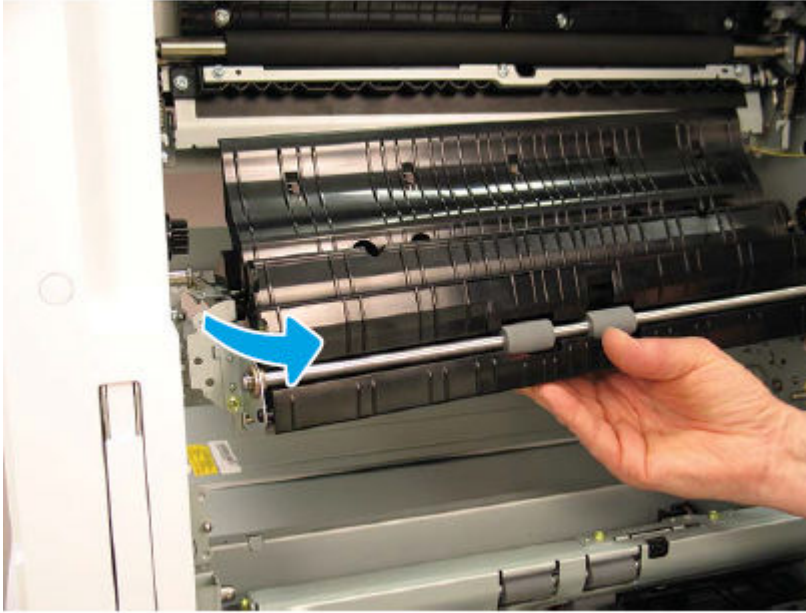
Figure 6-241 Remove three screws



2. Rotate the left side of the pickup assembly away from the printer.

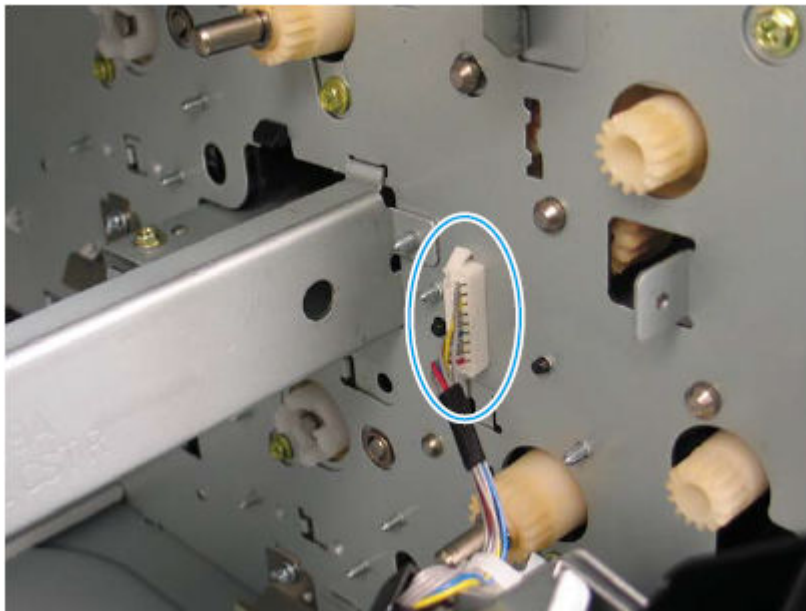
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-242 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-243 Remove the assembly




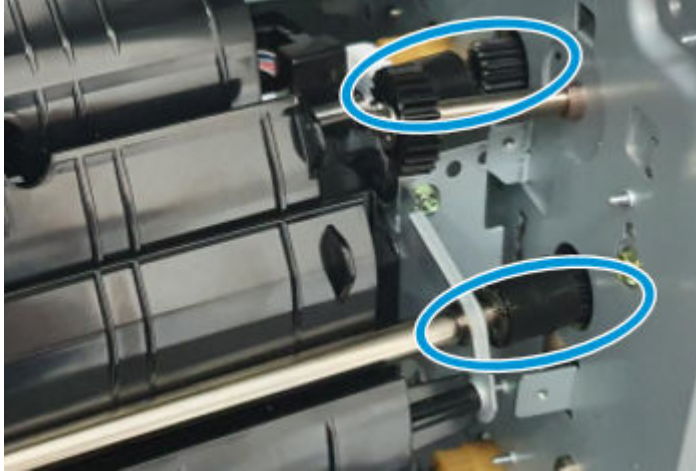
 **Reinstallation tip:** When installing the assembly, insert and align the right side first.

Figure 6-244 Install the assembly



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2, 3 roller kit (pickup/forward/reverse)

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2/3 roller kit.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 roller kit.](#)



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 roller kit.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-37 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN66-67001	Tray 2/3 roller kit NOTE: This kit includes the pickup, forward, and reverse rollers.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

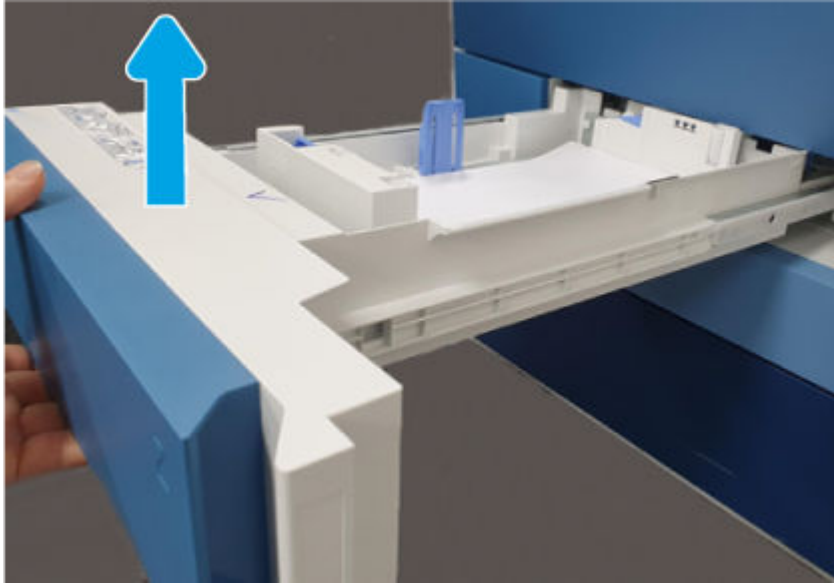
1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-245 Remove the tray



2. Remove the Tray 2/3 roller kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2/3 roller kit.

1. Locate the return guide inside the tray opening, and then slide the guide toward the front of the printer until it stops.


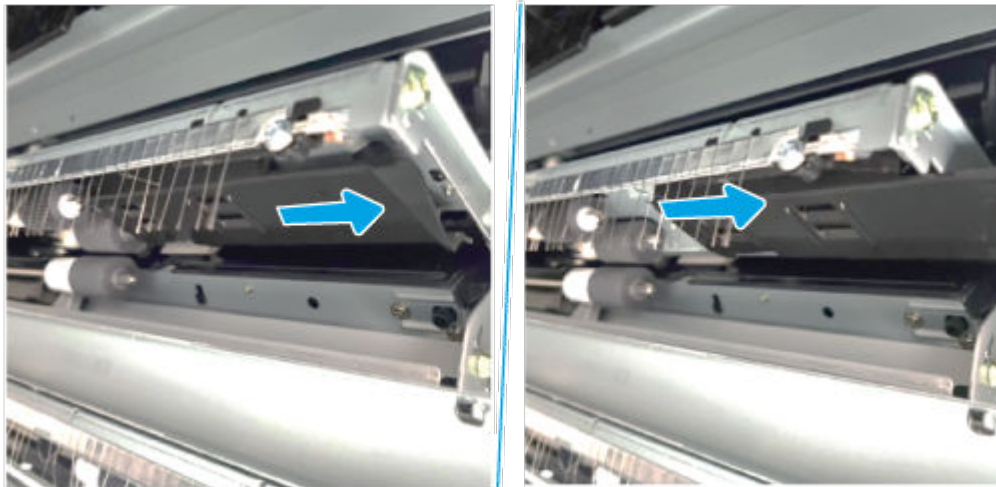
 **Reinstallation tip:** After installing replacement rollers, make sure to fully slide the return guide towards the rear of the printer to prevent paper jams.

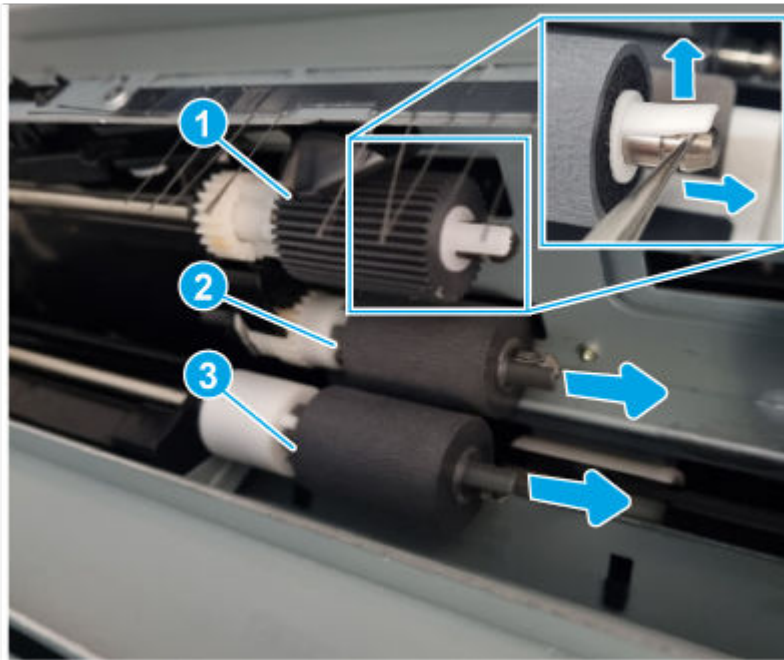
Figure 6-246 Slide the return guide



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release the locking tab, and then slide the roller off the shaft to remove it.
 - **Pickup roller:** callout 1
 - **Forward roller:** callout 2

- **Reverse roller:** callout 3

Figure 6-247 Remove the rollers

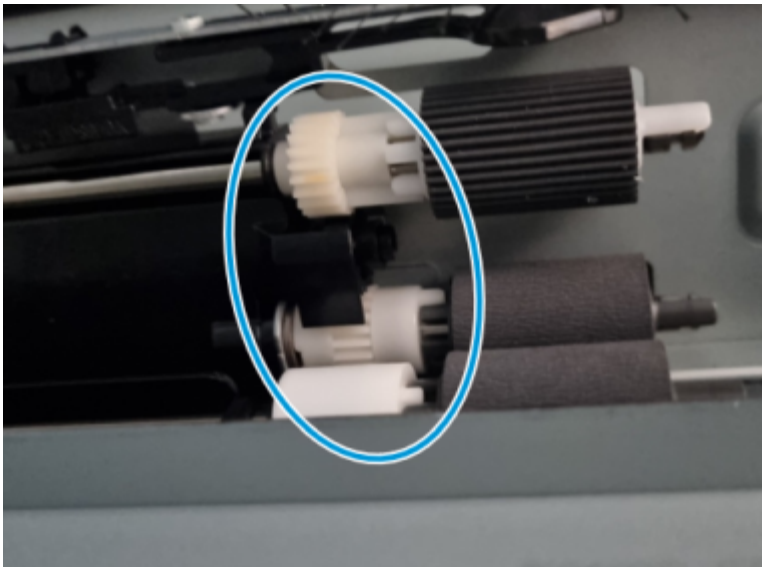


3. When the rollers are removed, be careful not to dislodge the couplers. If the couplers are dislodged, install them on the shafts as shown below.



NOTE: The figure below shows the pickup assembly removed to more clearly show the rollers and couplers.

Figure 6-248 Rollers and couplers installed



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 empty and stack height sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 empty and stack height sensors.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 empty sensor.](#)



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 stack height sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-38 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 2 empty sensor)

Table 6-38 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 2 stack height sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove four screws.

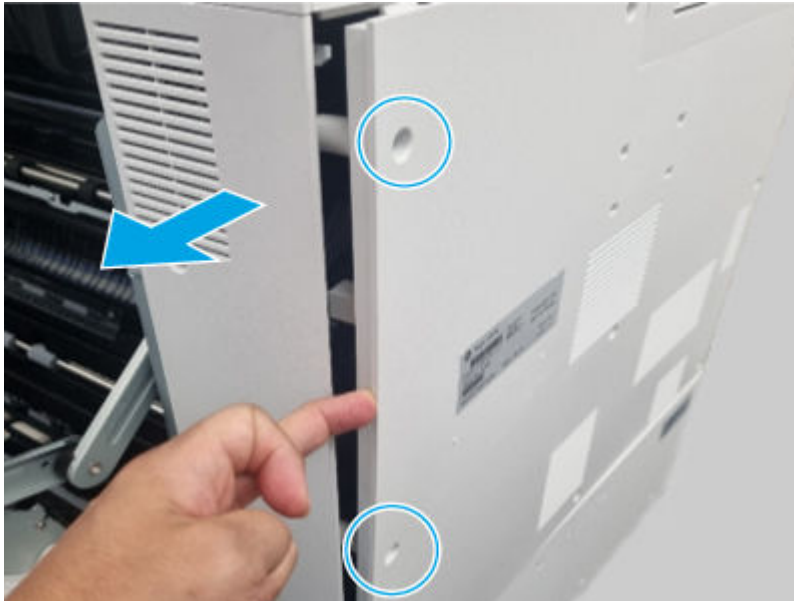
Figure 6-249 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.

- c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-250 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

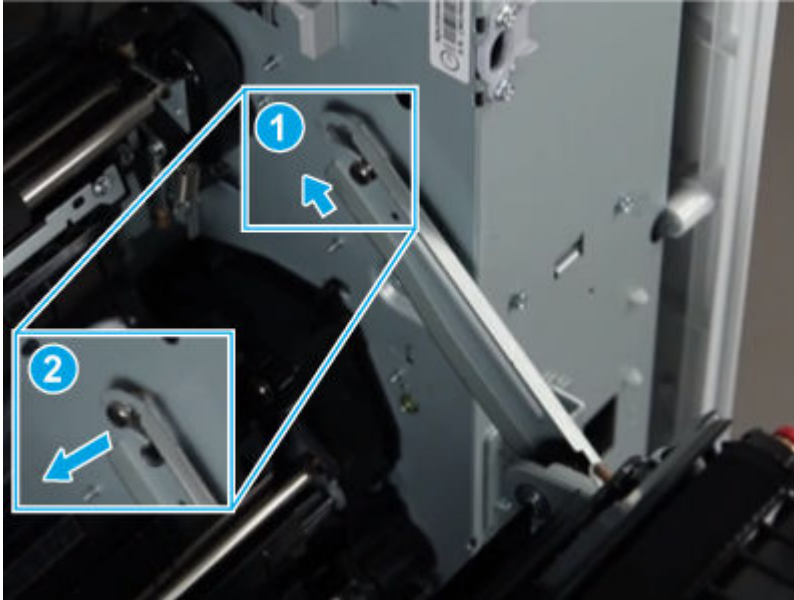
Figure 6-251 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

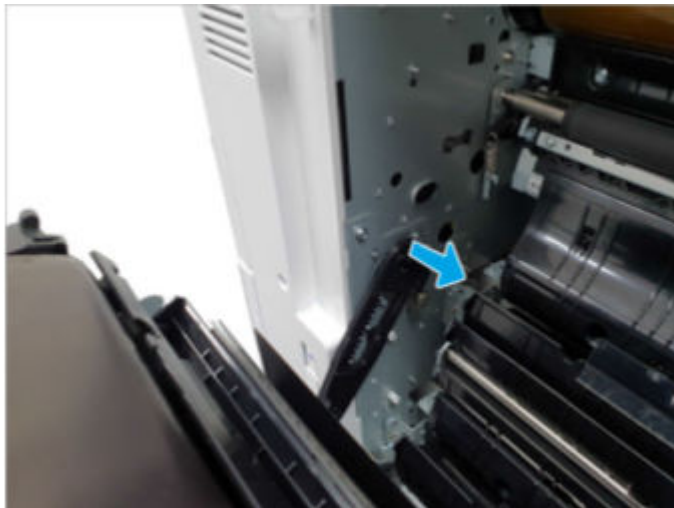
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-252 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-253 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

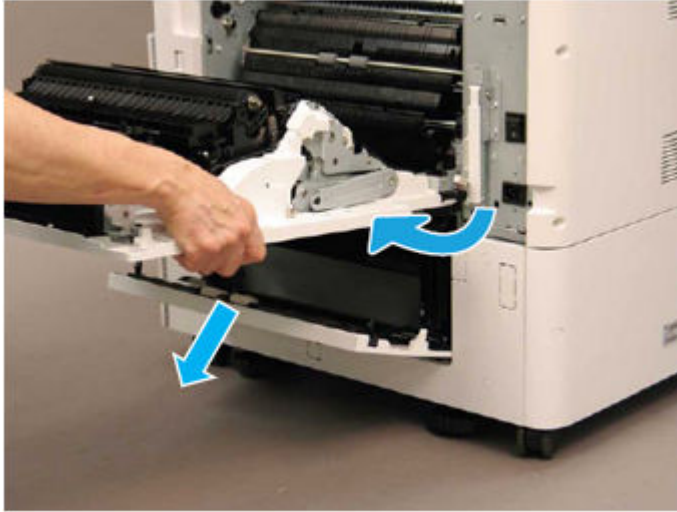


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-254 Remove the door



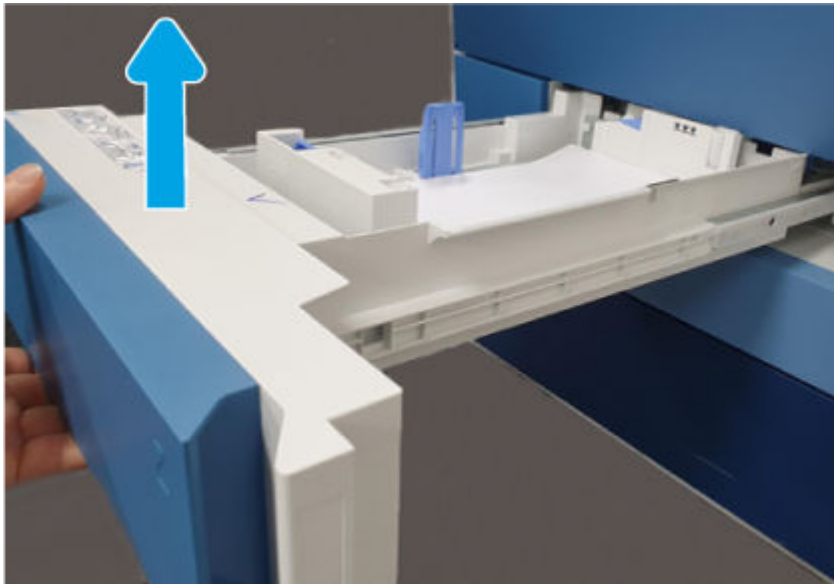
3. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-255 Remove the tray

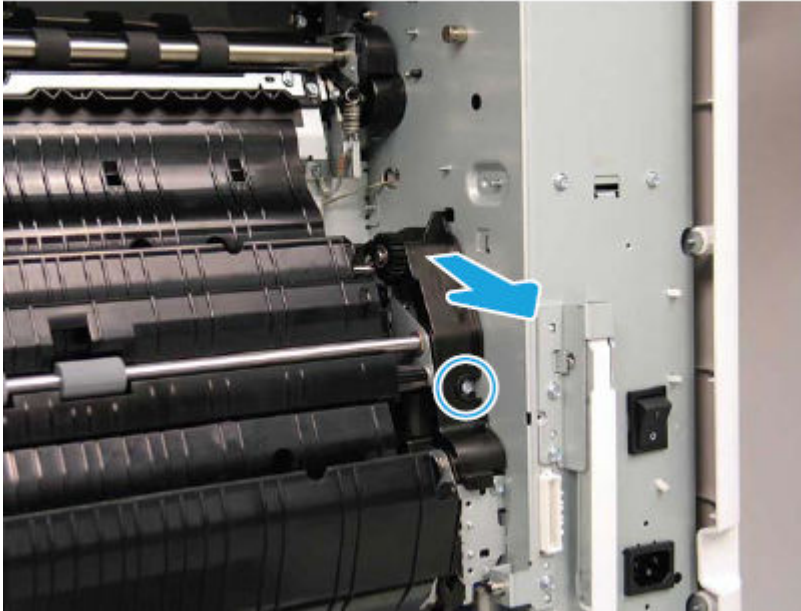


4. Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup assembly.

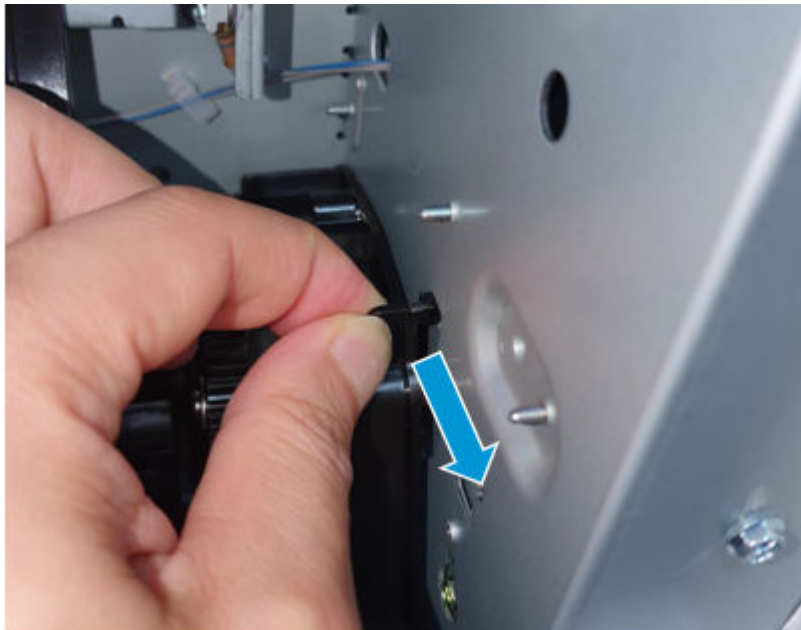
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-256 Remove the cover



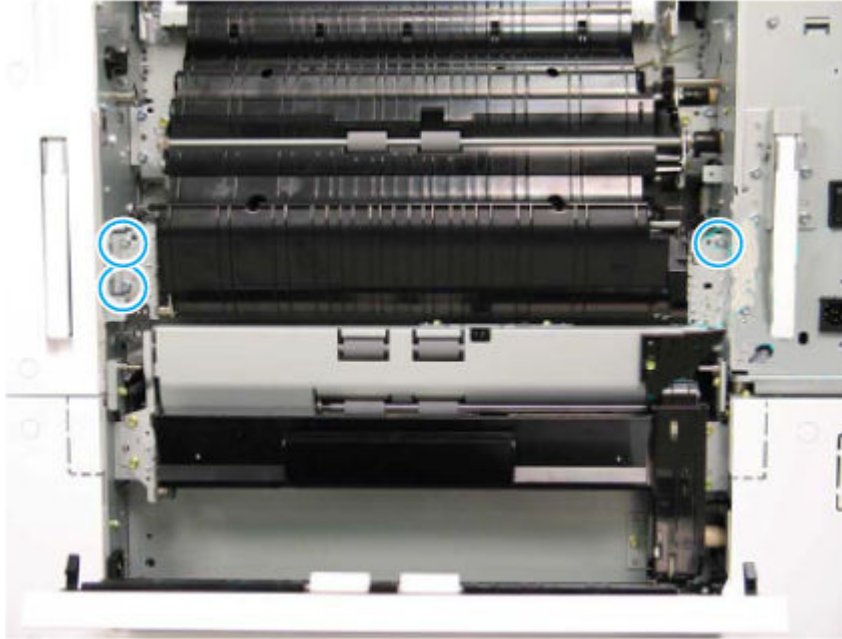
2. Release one hook.

Figure 6-257 Release the hook



3. Remove three screws.

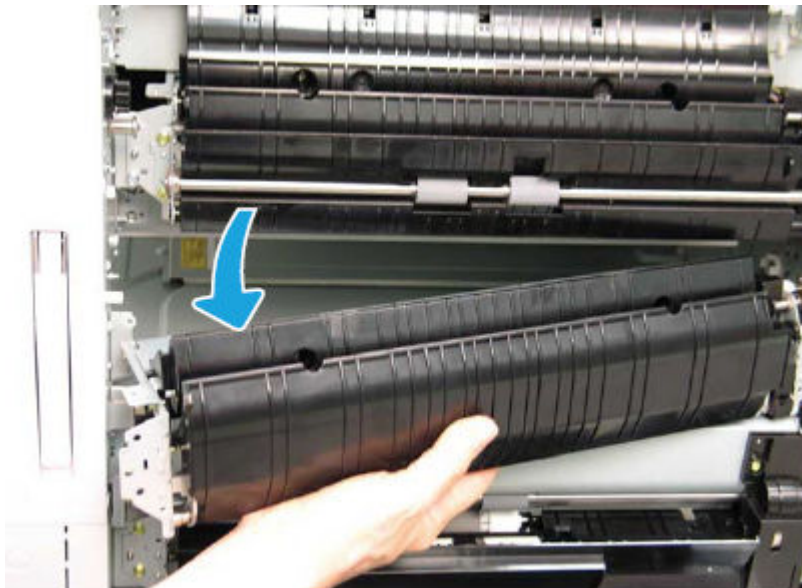
Figure 6-258 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup assembly away from the printer.

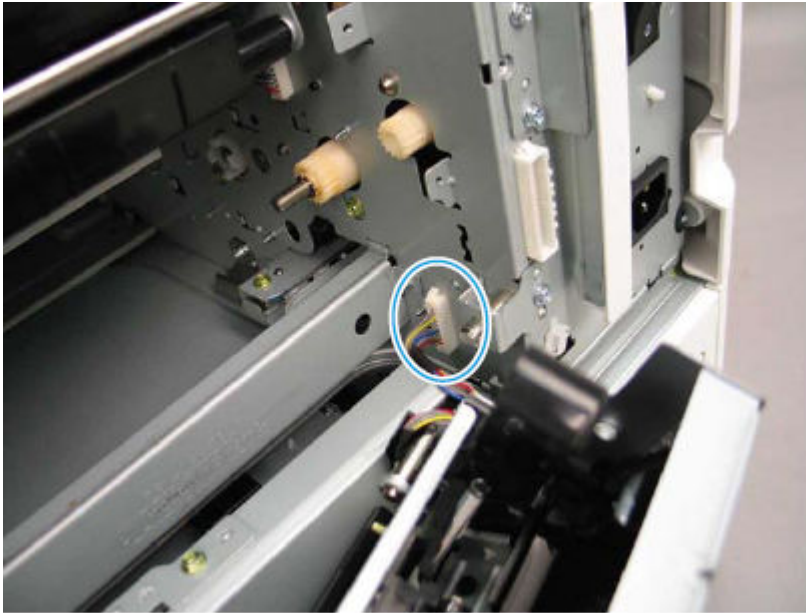
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-259 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-260 Remove the assembly




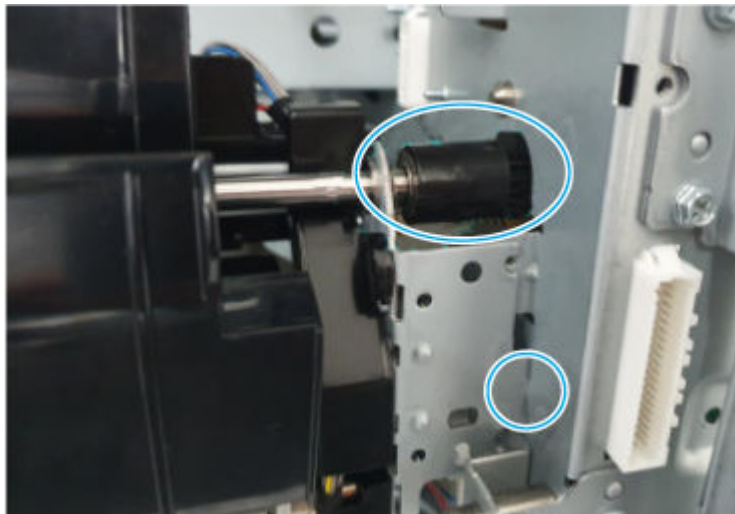
 **Reinstallation tip:** When installing the assembly, insert and align the right side first.

Figure 6-261 Install the assembly



5. Remove the Tray 2 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 pickup assembly.

1. Remove three screws.

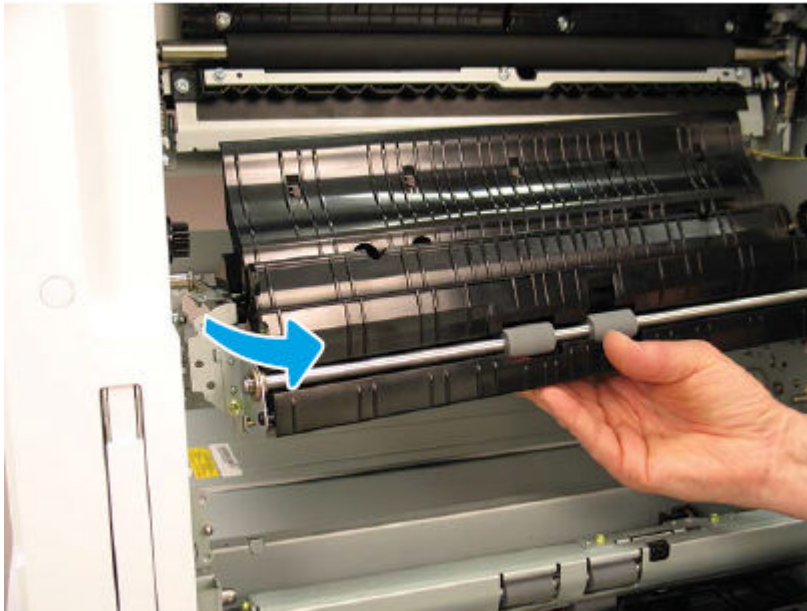
Figure 6-262 Remove three screws



2. Rotate the left side of the pickup assembly away from the printer.

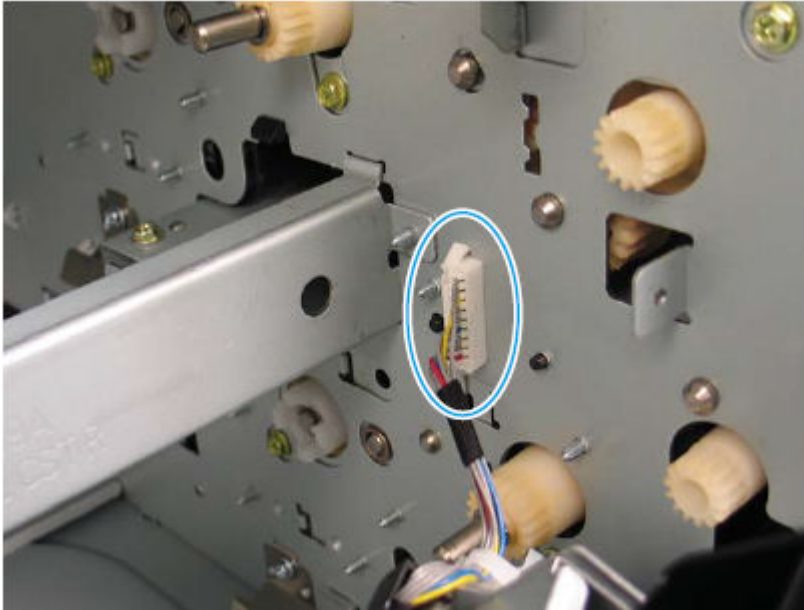
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-263 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



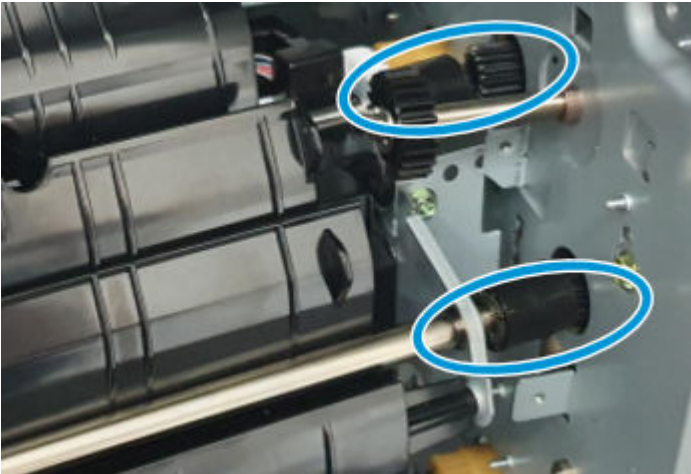
3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-264 Remove the assembly



💡 Reinstallation tip: When installing the assembly, insert and align the right side first.

Figure 6-265 Install the assembly

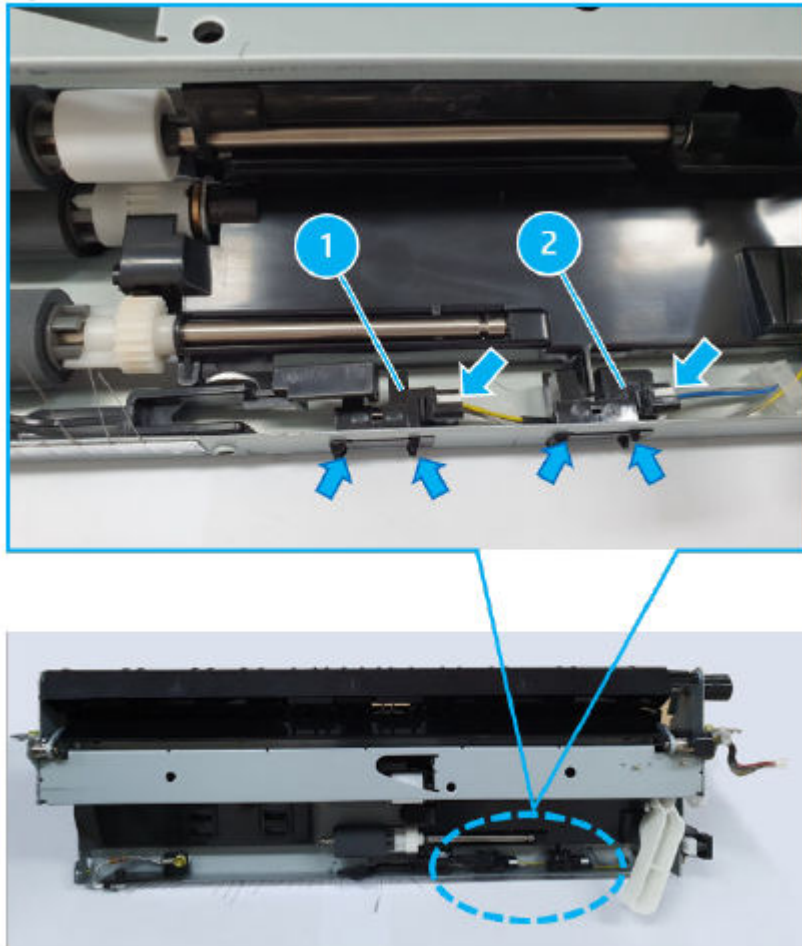


6. Remove the Tray 2 empty and stack height sensors


Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 empty and stack height sensors.

1. Locate the Tray 2 empty (callout 1) and stack height (callout 2) sensors, connectors, and locking tabs on the pickup assembly.

Figure 6-266 Locate the sensors

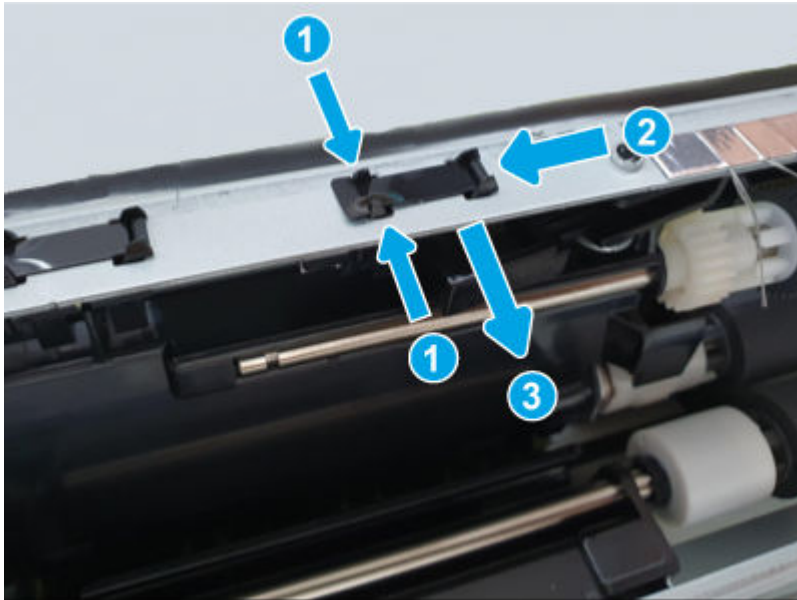


2. Do the following:

 **NOTE:** The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

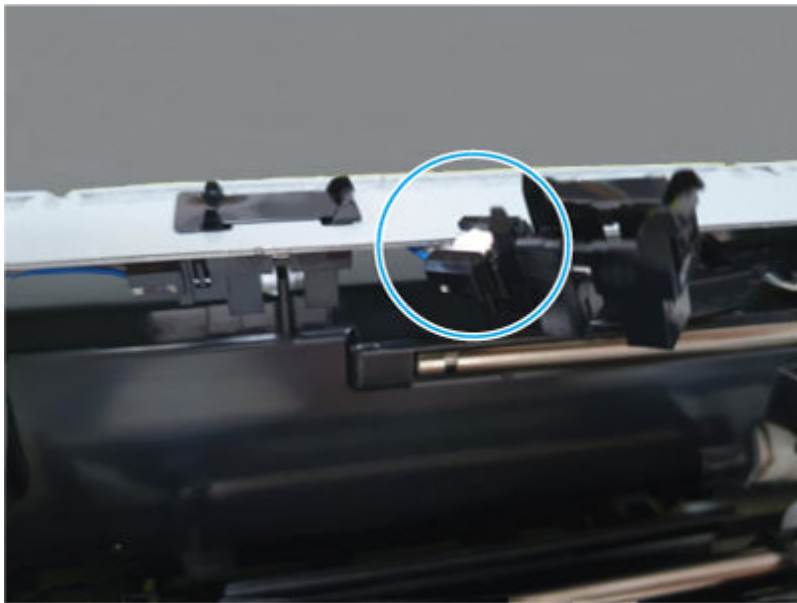
- Release the hooks (callout 1).
- Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 3) to release it.

Figure 6-267 Release the sensors



3. Disconnect the connector and remove the sensor assembly.

Figure 6-268 Remove the sensors



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 prefeed sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 prefeed sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 prefeed sensor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-39 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter (Tray 2 prefeed sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-269 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-270 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

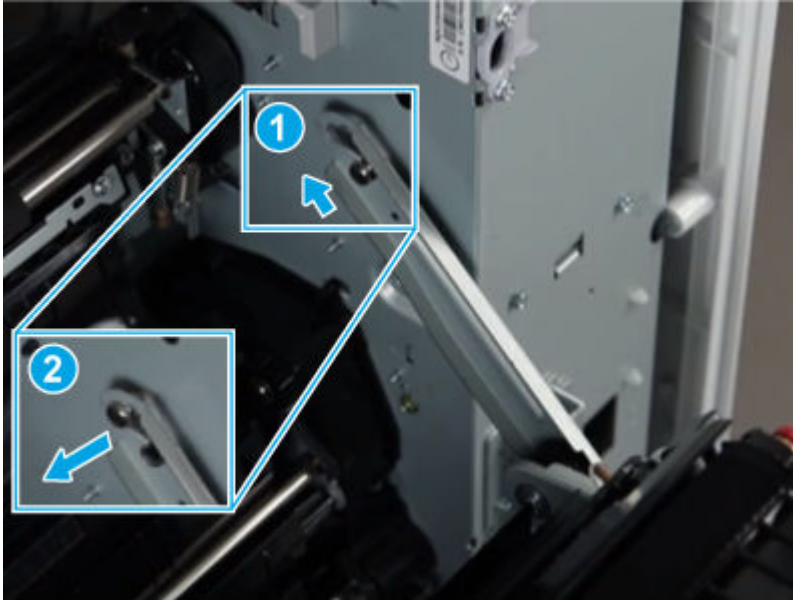
Figure 6-271 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

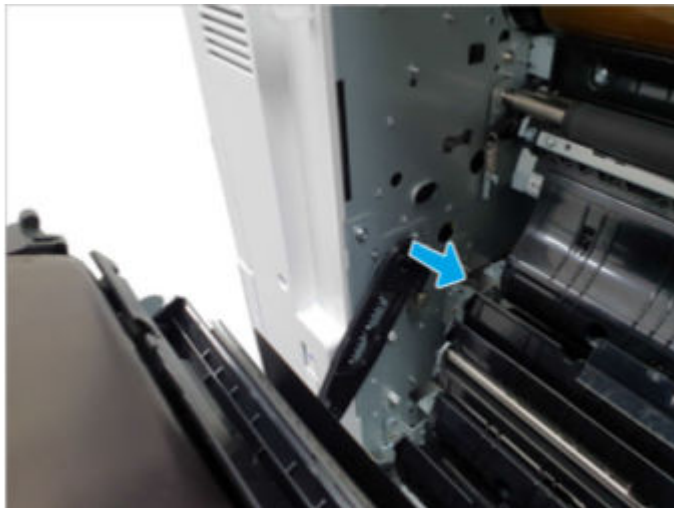
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-272 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-273 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


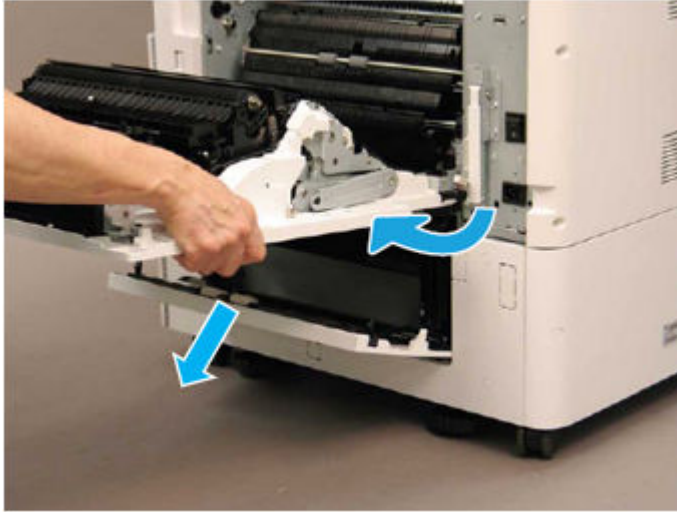

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-274 Remove the door



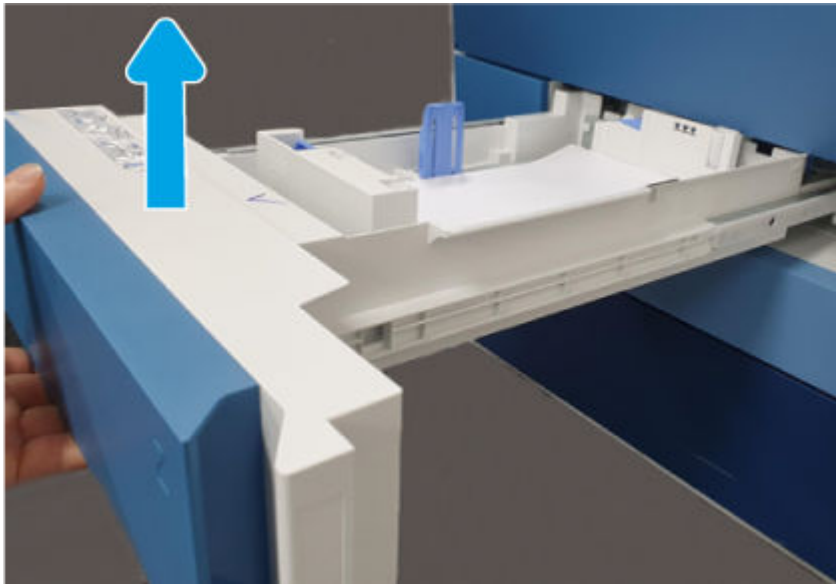
3. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-275 Remove the tray

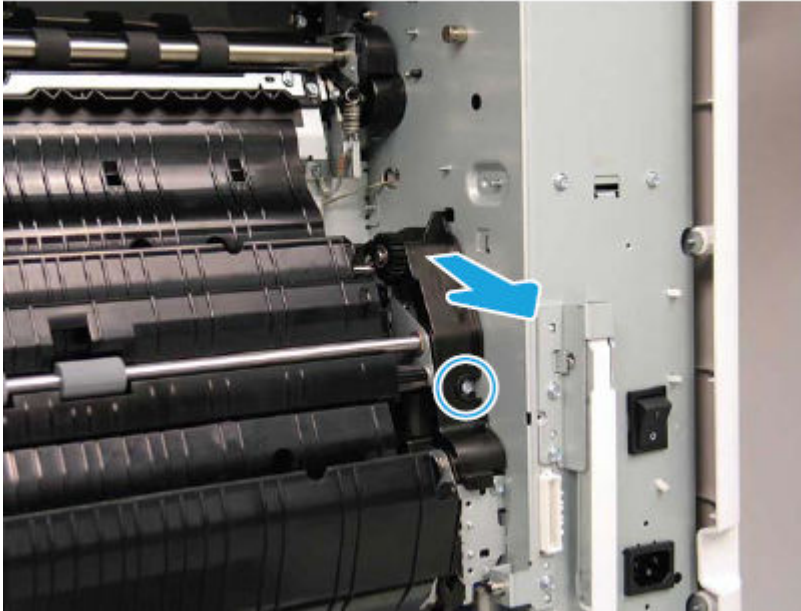


4. Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup assembly.

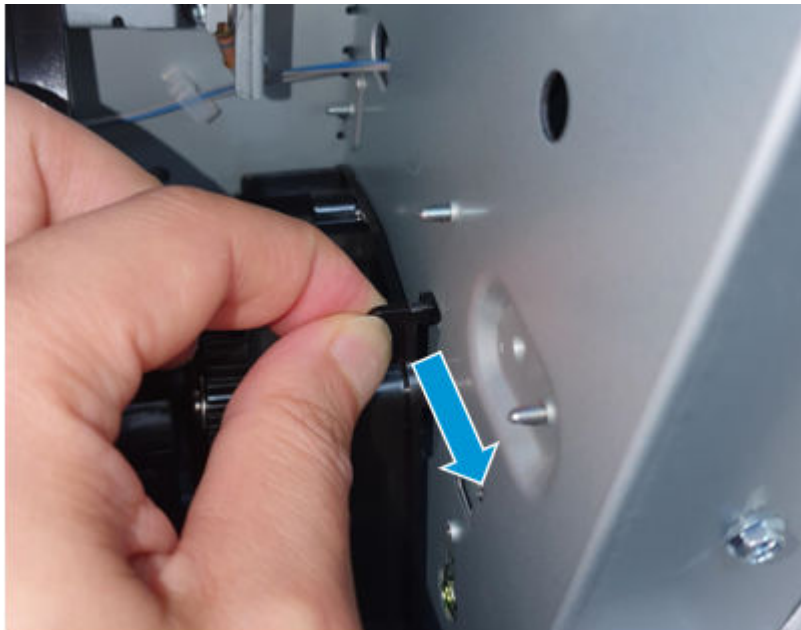
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-276 Remove the cover



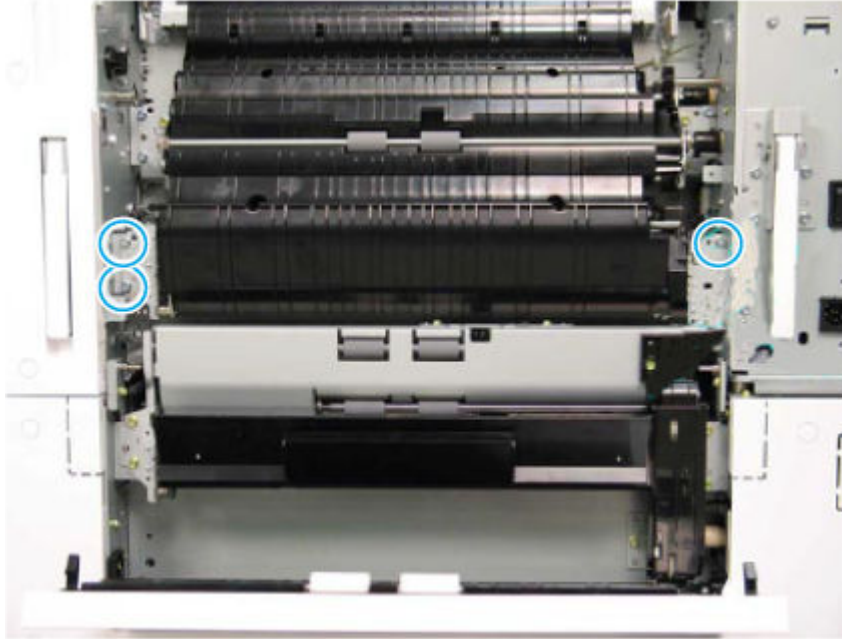
2. Release one hook.

Figure 6-277 Release the hook



3. Remove three screws.

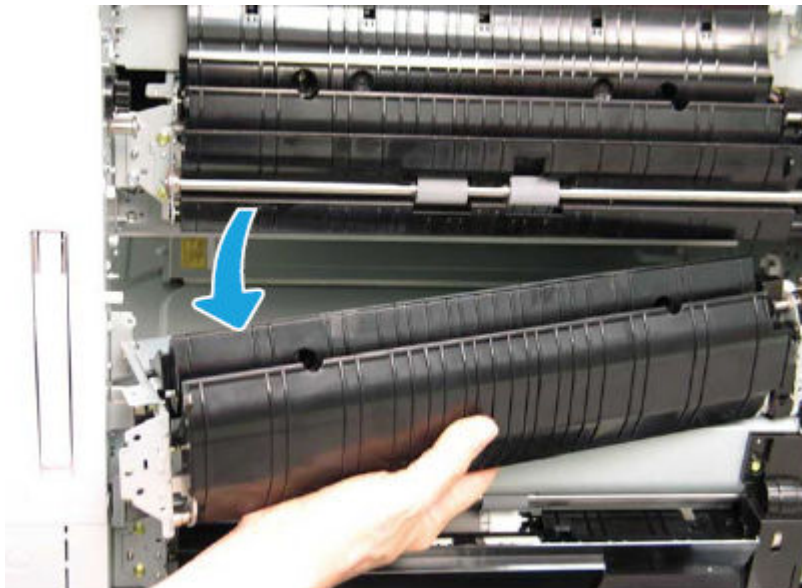
Figure 6-278 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup assembly away from the printer.

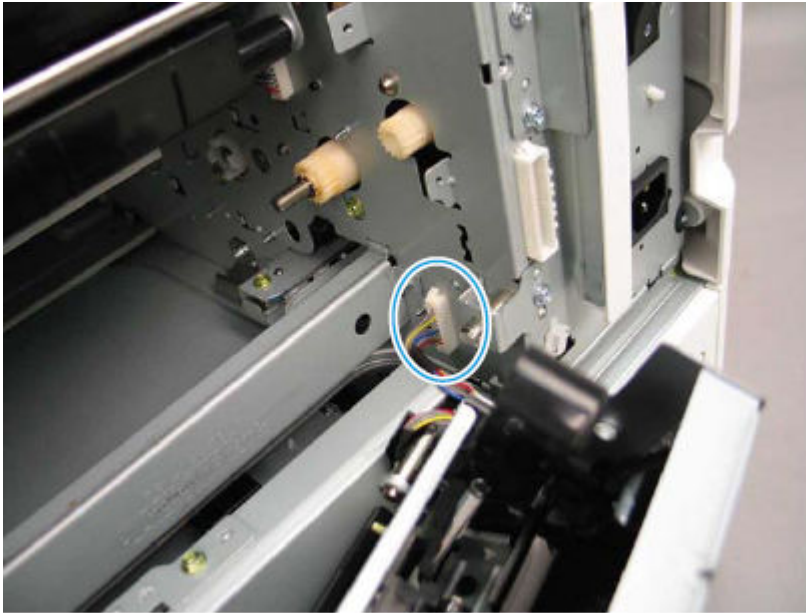
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-279 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-280 Remove the assembly




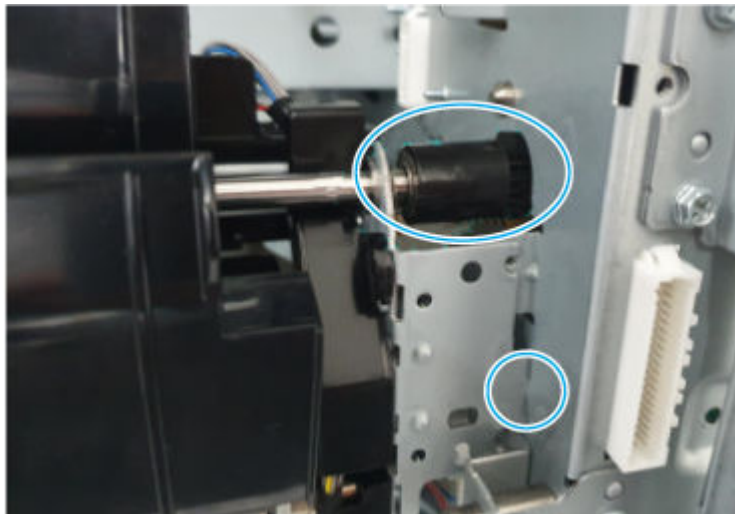
 **Reinstallation tip:** When installing the assembly, insert and align the right side first.

Figure 6-281 Install the assembly



5. Remove the Tray 2 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 pickup assembly.

1. Remove three screws.

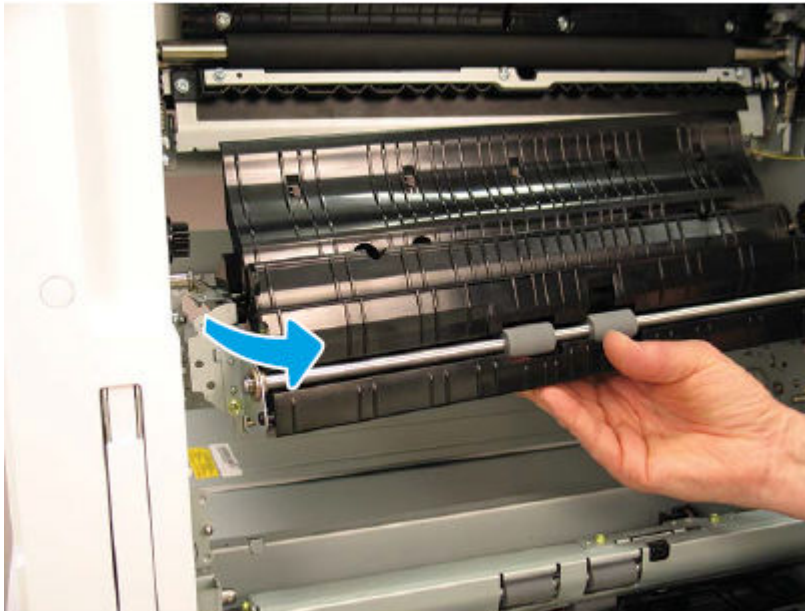
Figure 6-282 Remove three screws



2. Rotate the left side of the pickup assembly away from the printer.

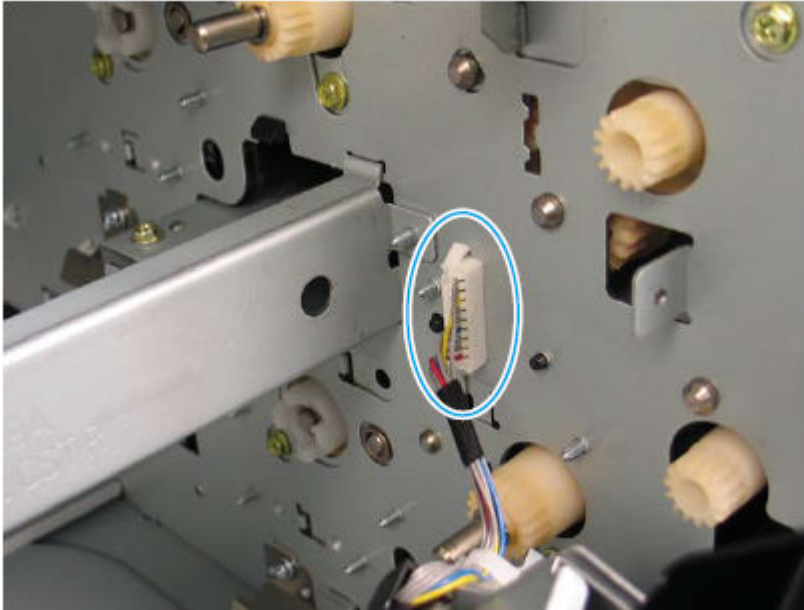
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-283 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-284 Remove the assembly




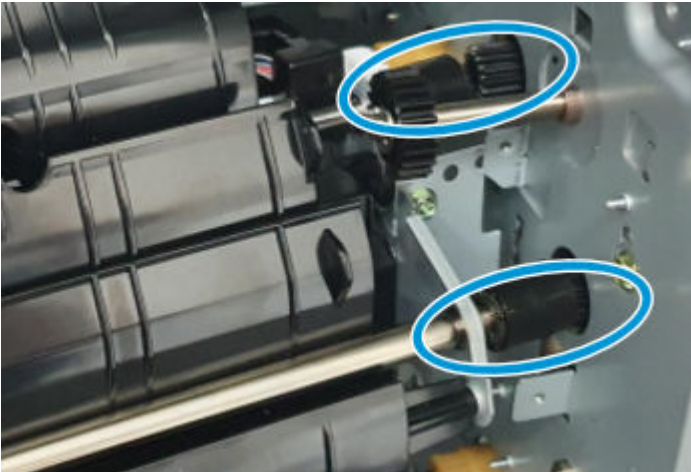
 **Reinstallation tip:** When installing the assembly, insert and align the right side first.

Figure 6-285 Install the assembly



6. Remove the Tray 2 prefeed sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 prefeed sensor.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-286 Remove four screws

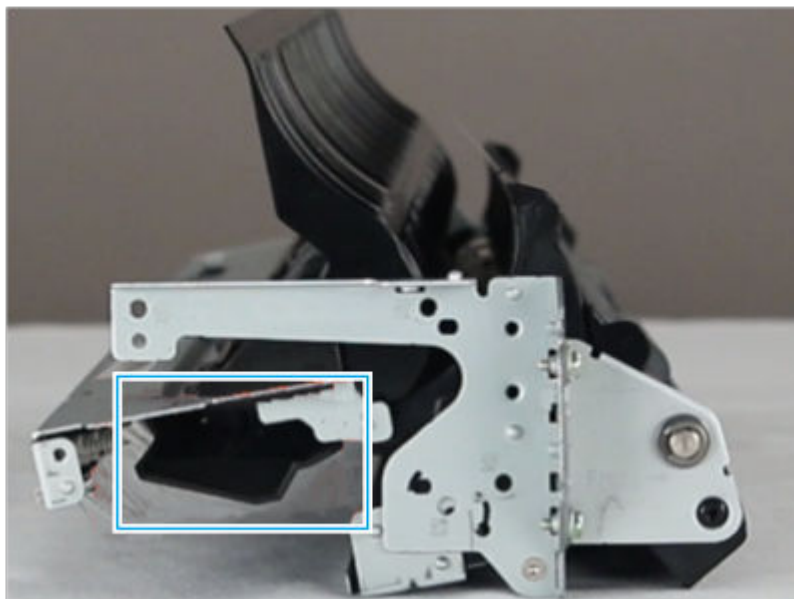


2. Tightly grasp the sensor guide, and then remove it.

CAUTION: The sheet-metal edges are sharp. Be careful when removing the guide to avoid personal injury.

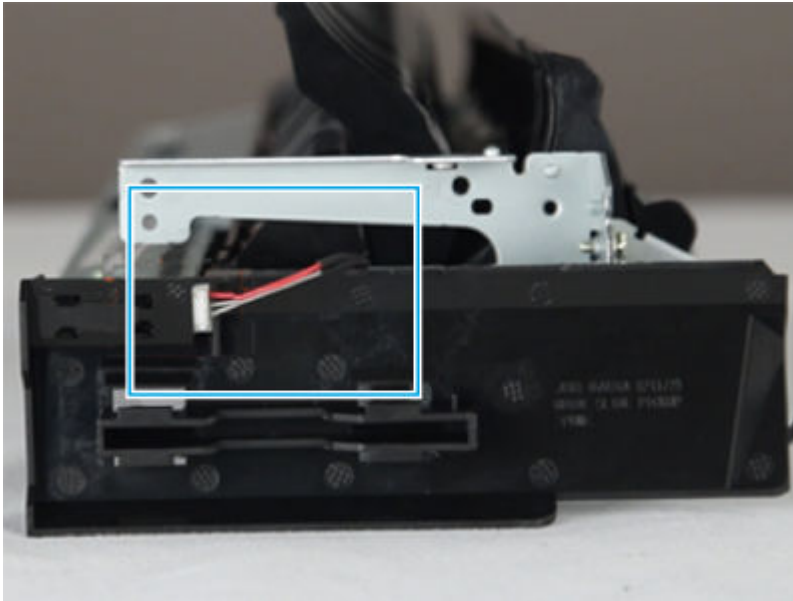
NOTE: It might take some force to remove the guide from the rail.

Figure 6-287 Remove the sensor guide



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the Tray 2 prefeed sensor.

Figure 6-288 Remove the sensor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 open and paper size sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 open and paper size sensor.



NOTE: This procedure removes the front door for better access to the sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 open and paper size sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-40 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01408A	Tray 2 open and paper size sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

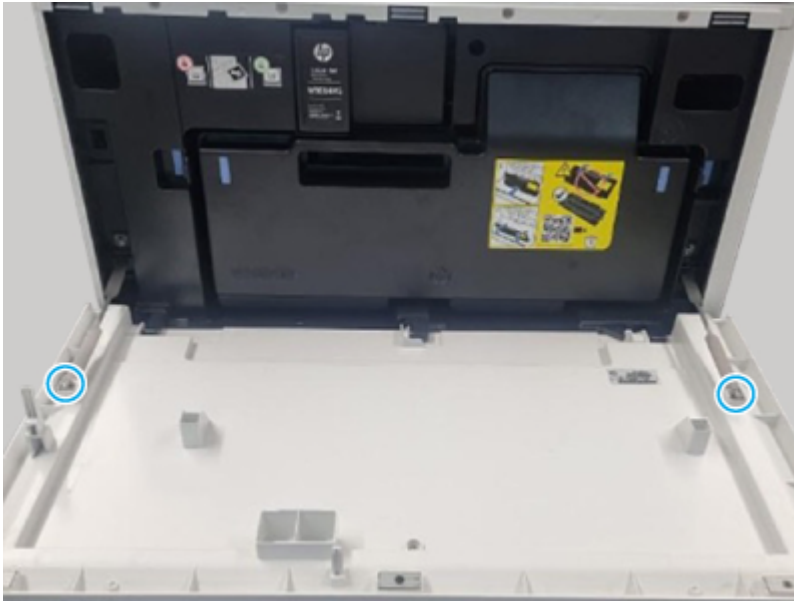
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

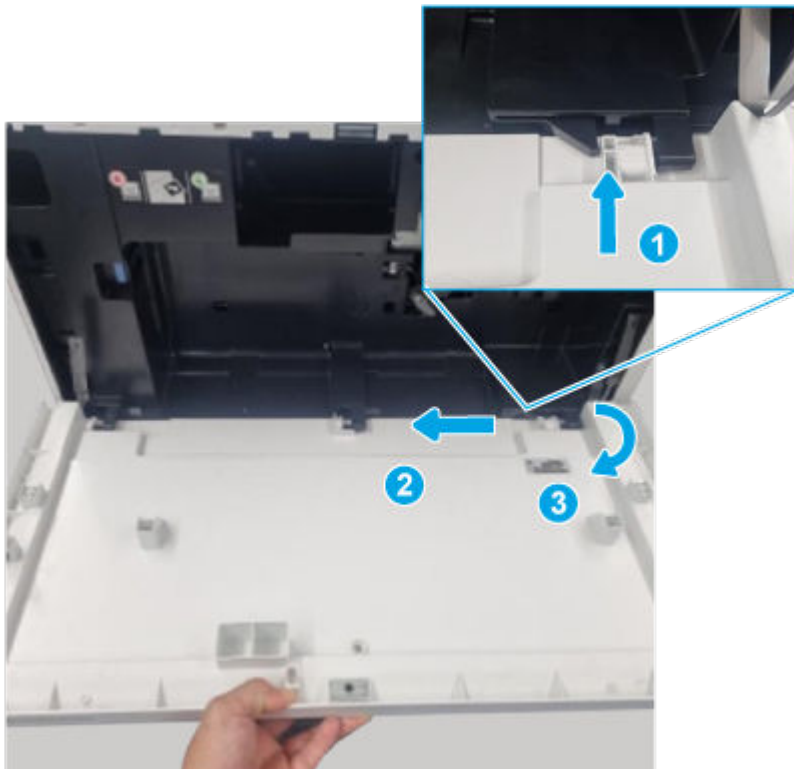
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-289 Remove two screws




2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-290 Remove the cover



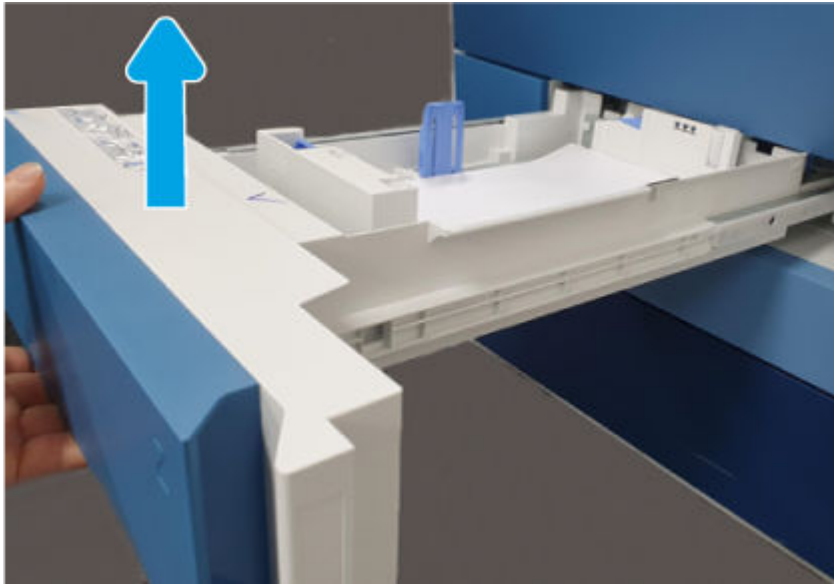
2. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-291 Remove the tray

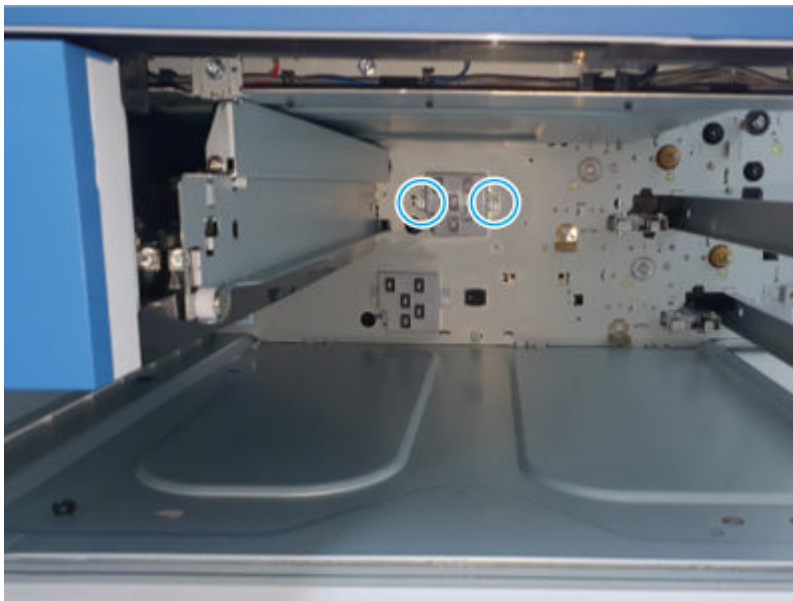


3. Remove the Tray 2 open and paper size sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 open and paper size sensor.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-292 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the sensor assembly.


 **NOTE:** The sensor assembly is located far back in the tray cavity. Hold the sensor as shown below to easily disconnect (and reconnect at installation) the connector.

Figure 6-293 Remove the sensor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-41 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01663A	Tray 2 pickup drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

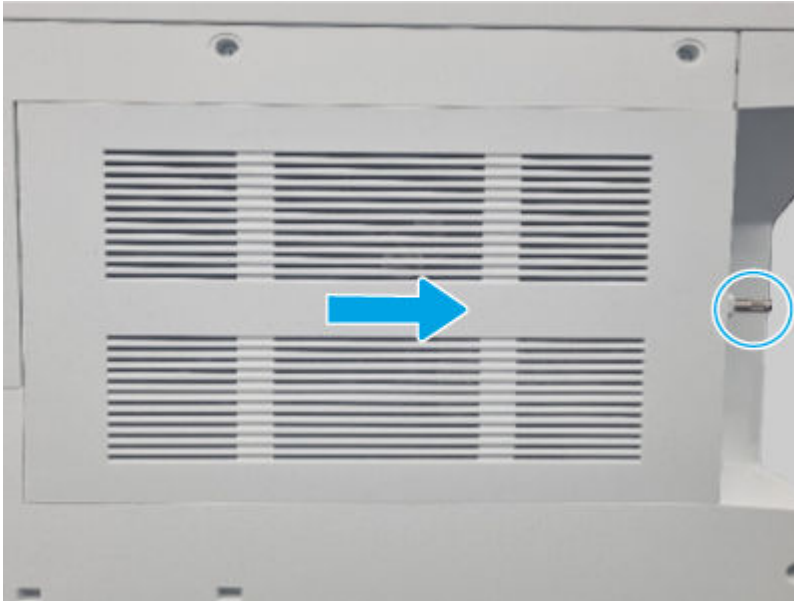
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-294 Remove the cover

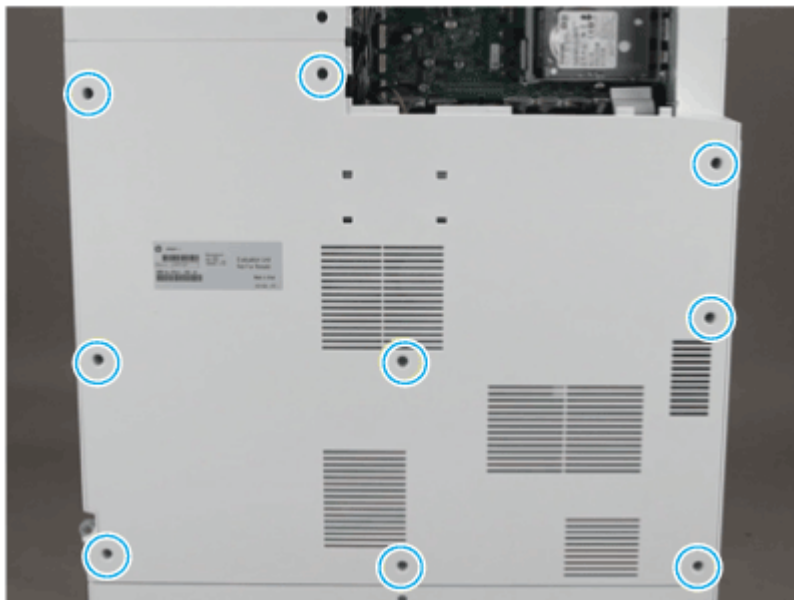


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-295 Remove the cover



3. Remove the LVPS FDB fan assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LVPS FDB fan assembly.

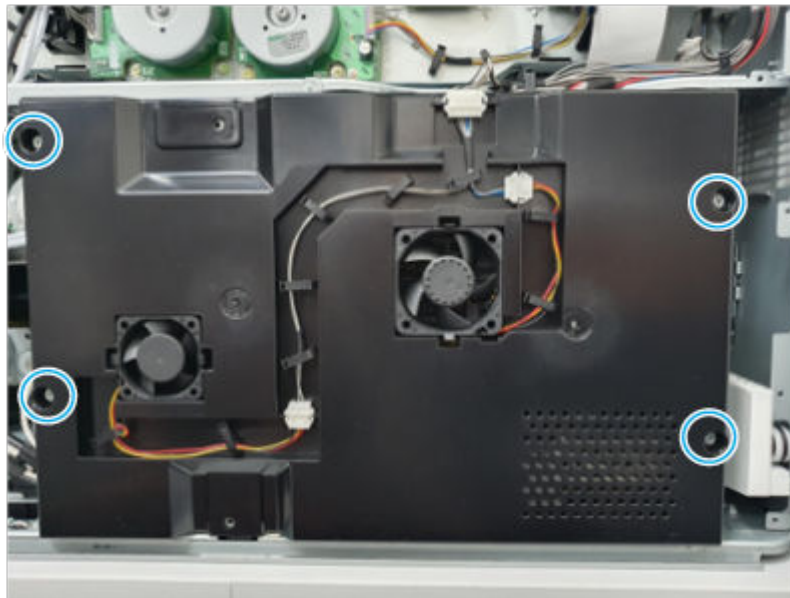
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-296 Disconnect one connector



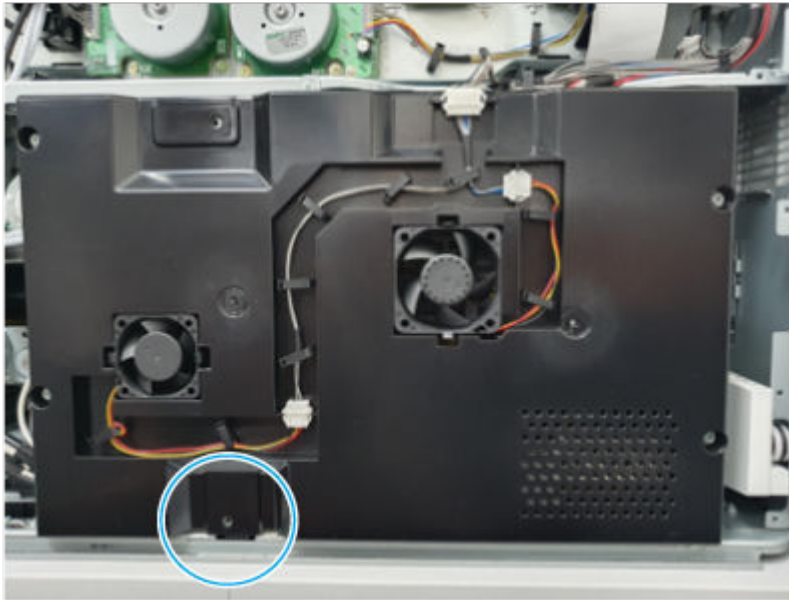
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-297 Remove four screws



3. Release one tab, and then remove the LVP FDB fan assembly.

Figure 6-298 Remove the LVP FDB fan assembly



4. Remove the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the fuser drive board, and then release the wire harnesses from the restraints (callout 1).


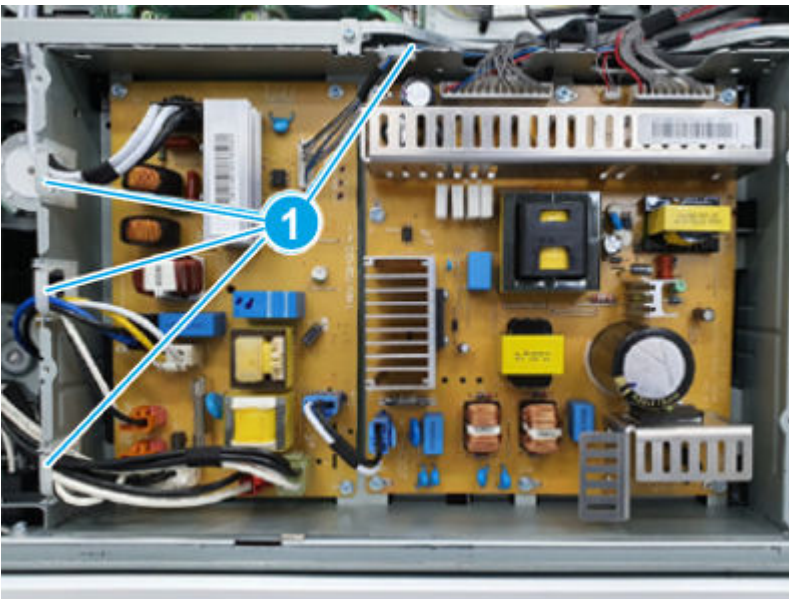
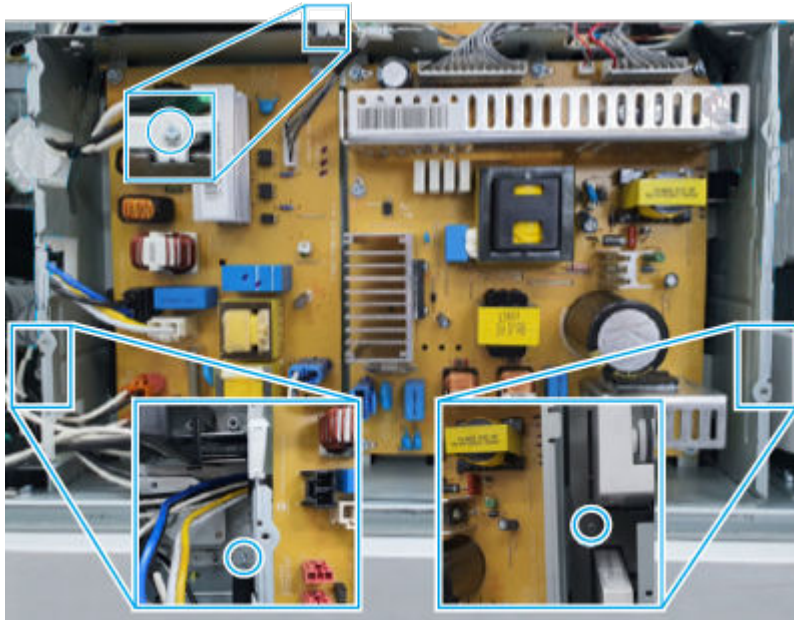
 **NOTE:** Some of the connectors have a locking tab that must be pressed to remove them.

Figure 6-299 Release the wire harnesses



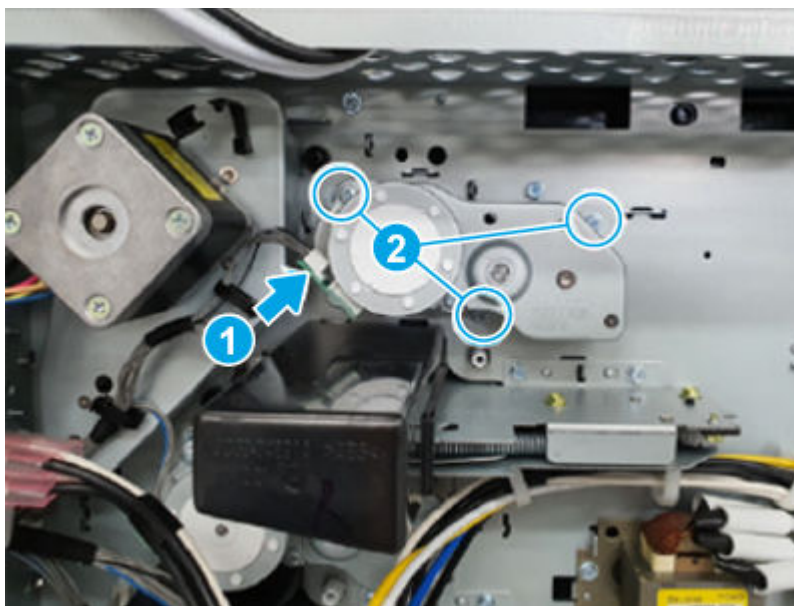
2. Remove three screws, rotate the top of the sheet-metal cage out and away from the printer, and then remove the PCAs and cage together.

Figure 6-300 Remove the PCAs and cage



3. Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - b. Remove three screws (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly.

Figure 6-301 Remove the assembly



5. **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup motor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup motor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup motor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-42 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01083A	Drive-motor, step (Tray 2 pickup motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

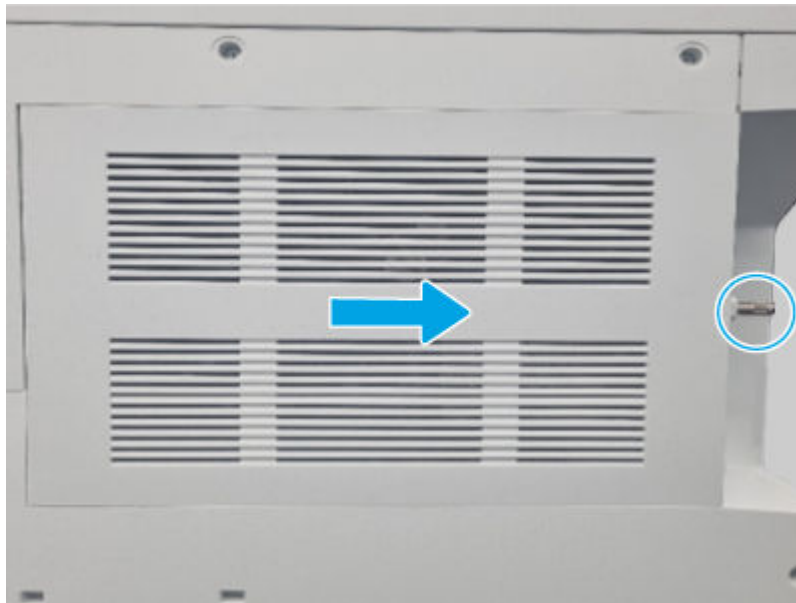
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-302 Remove the cover

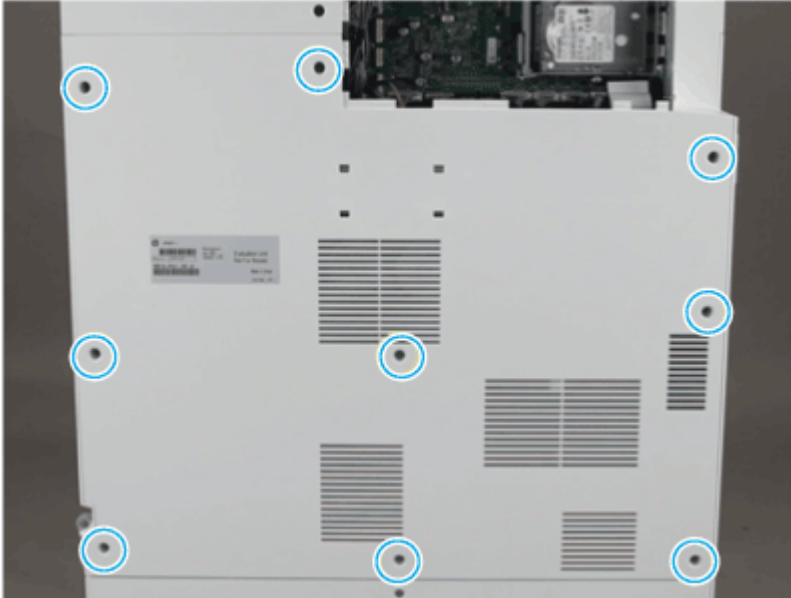


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-303 Remove the cover

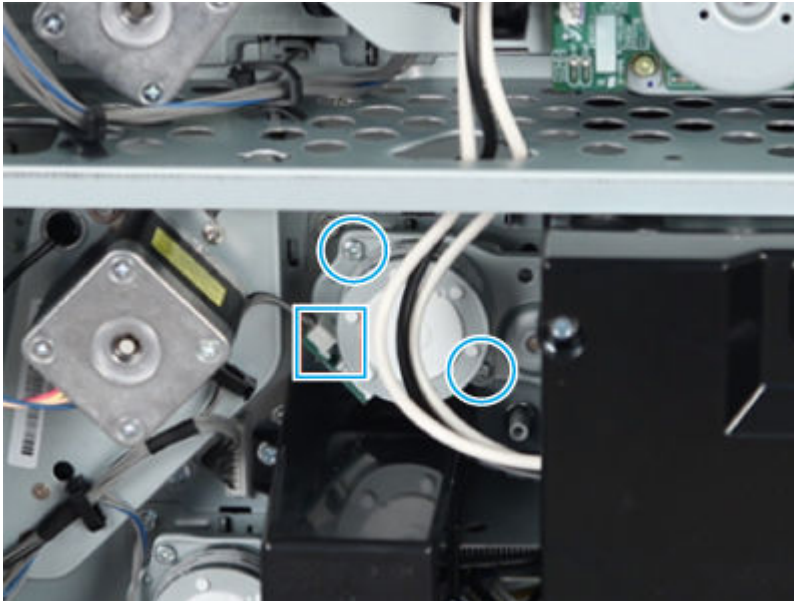


3. Remove the Tray 2 pickup motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 pickup motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-304 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-43 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01663A	Tray 3 pickup drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

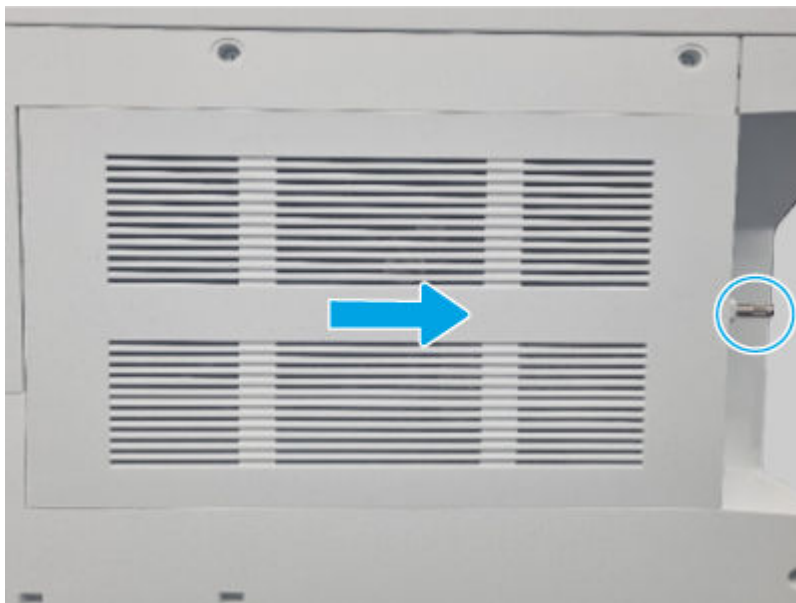
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-305 Remove the cover

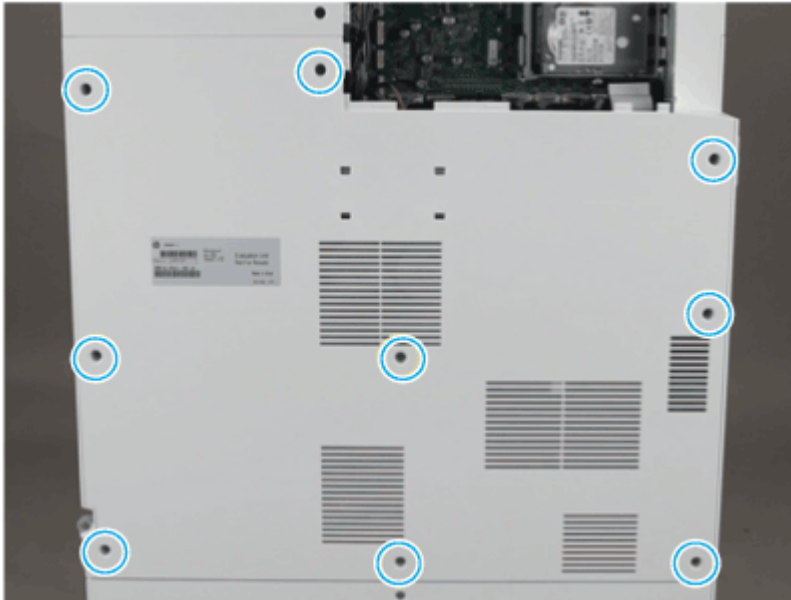


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-306 Remove the cover

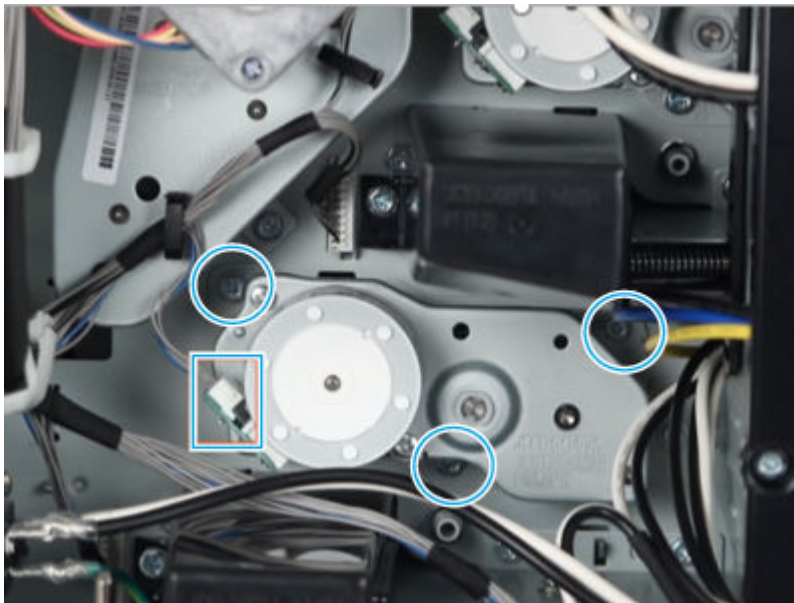


3. Remove the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the drive assembly.


Figure 6-307 Remove the drive assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup motor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup motor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup motor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-44 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01083A	Drive-motor step (Tray 3 pickup motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

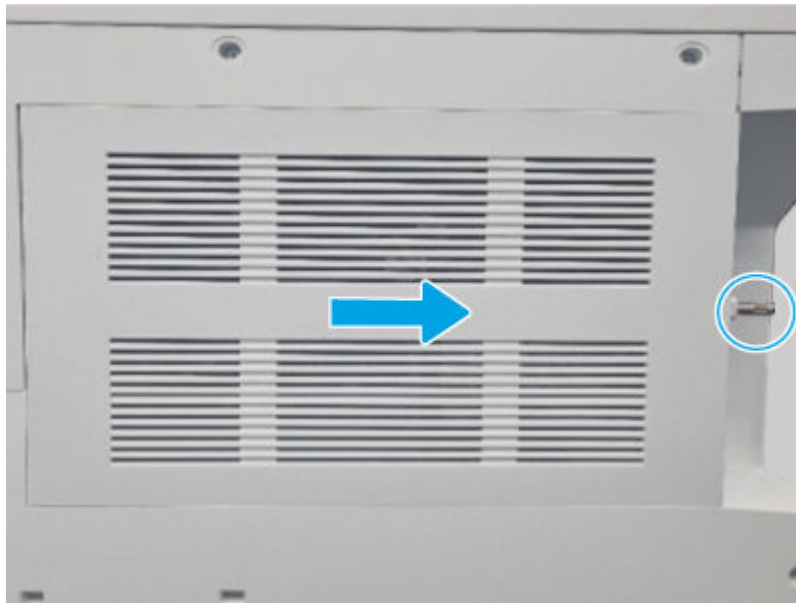
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-308 Remove the cover

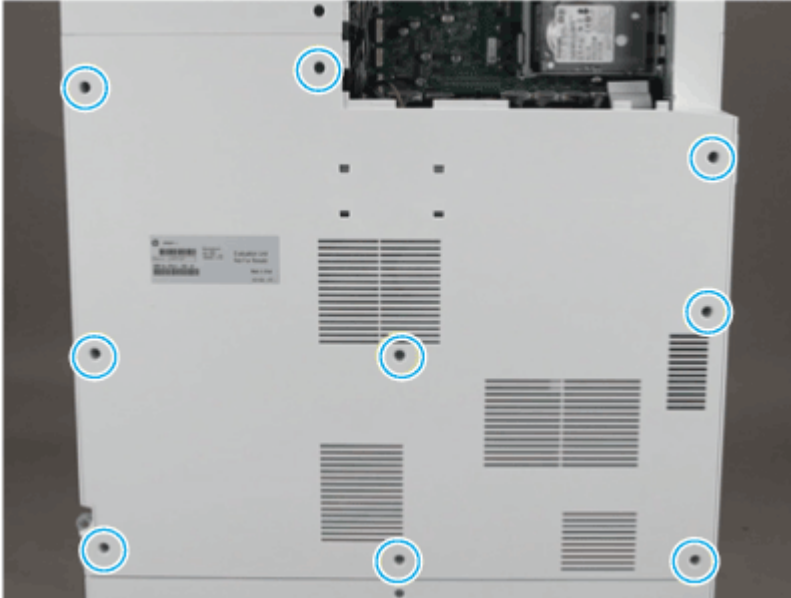


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-309 Remove the cover

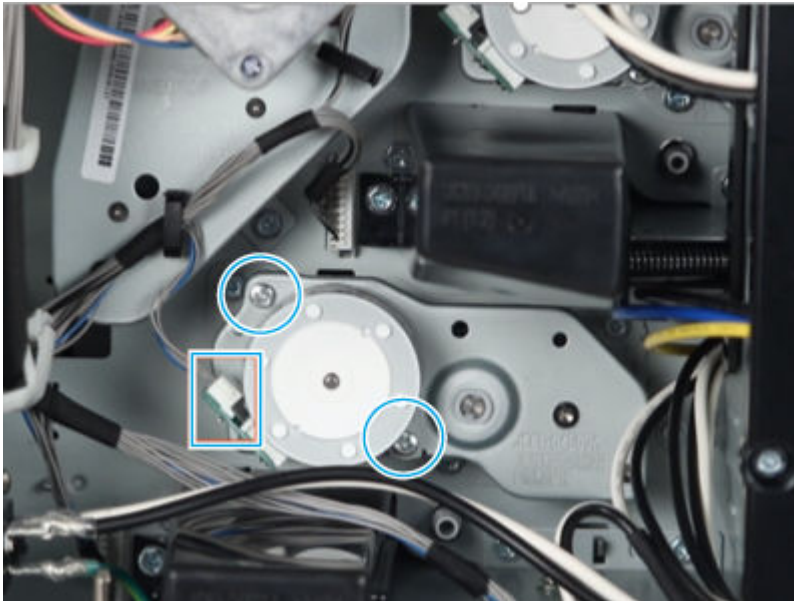


3. Remove the Tray 3 pickup motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the motor.


Figure 6-310 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the tray 3 pickup assembly.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the tray 3 pickup assembly.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-45 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01695A	Tray 3 pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

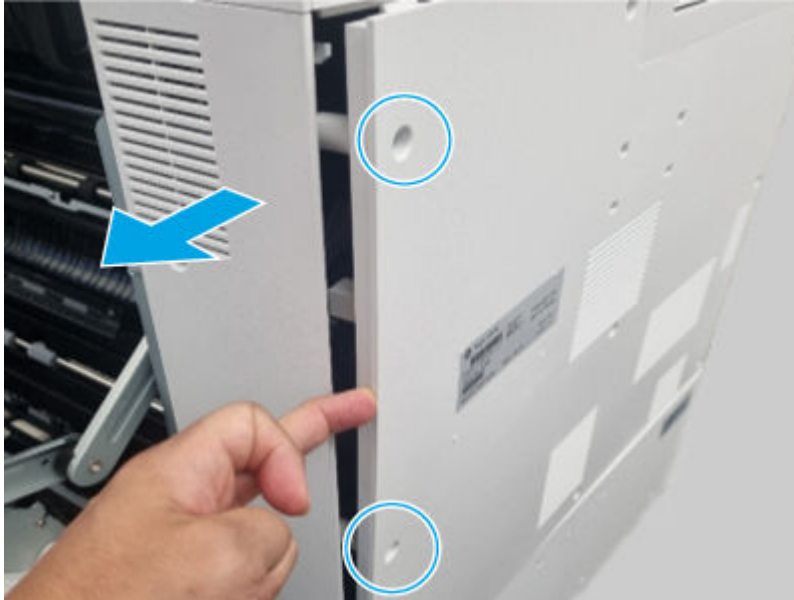
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-311 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-312 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

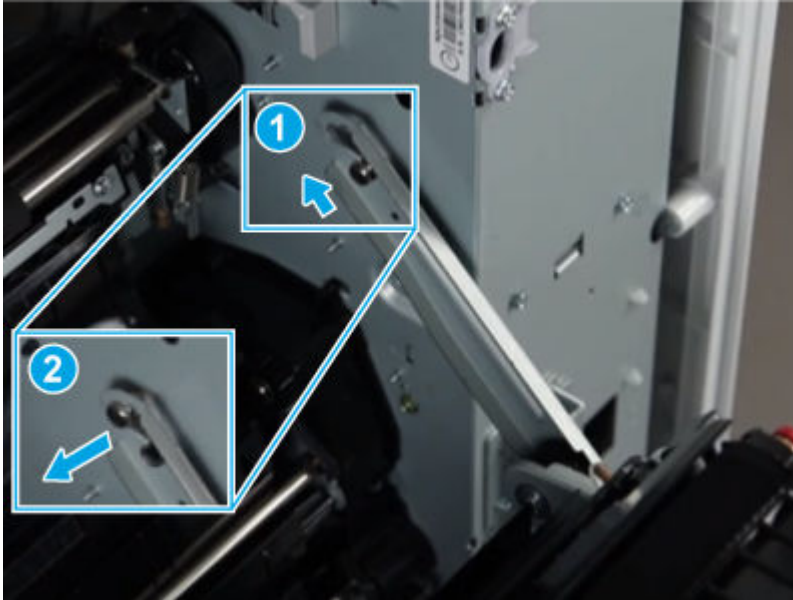
Figure 6-313 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

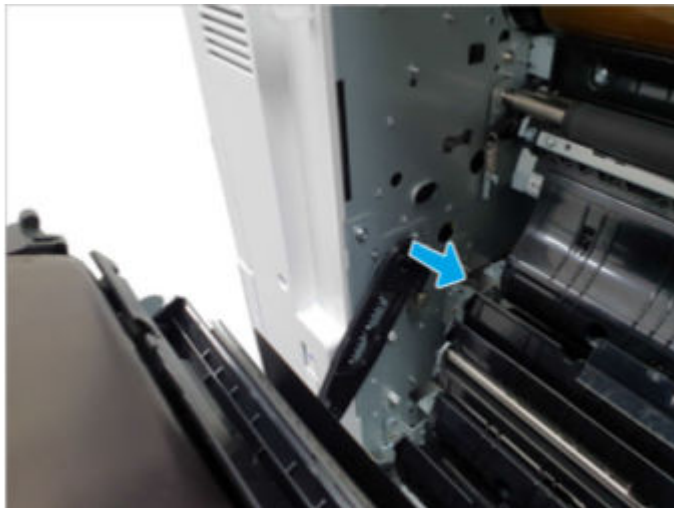
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-314 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-315 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


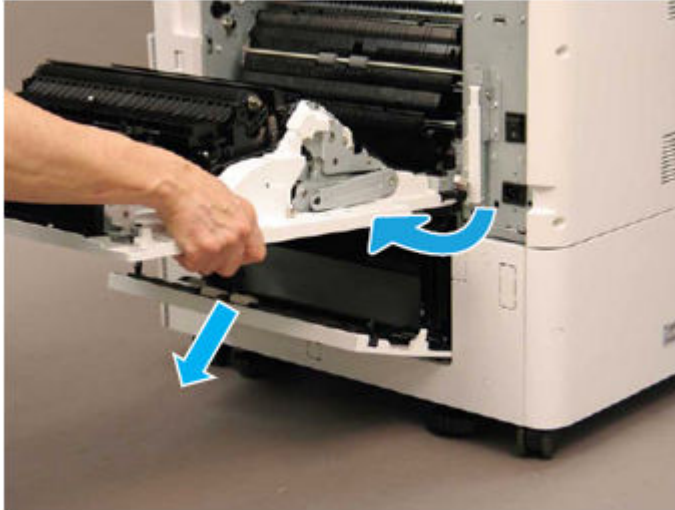

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-316 Remove the door



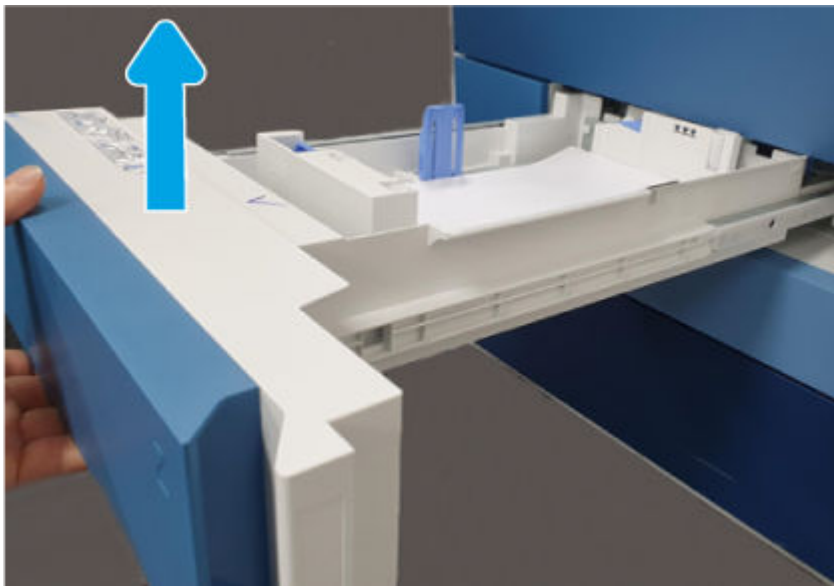
3. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-317 Remove the tray

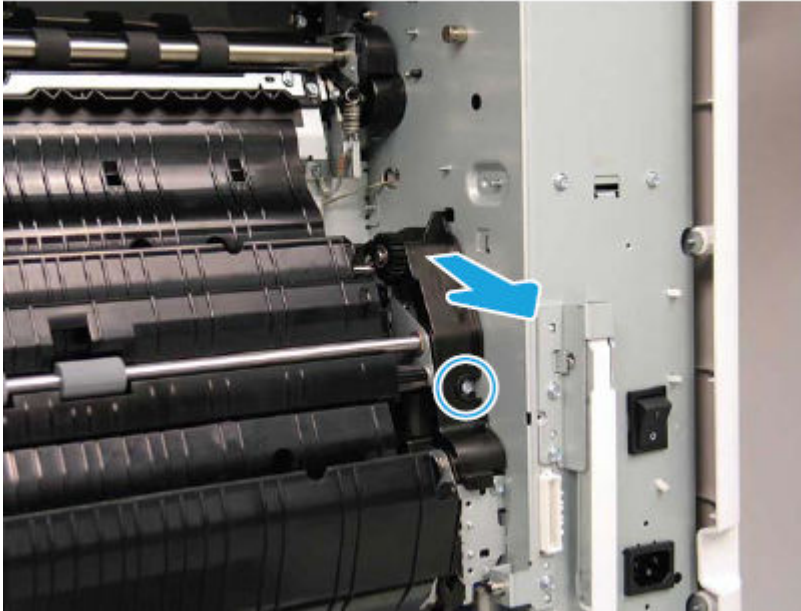


4. Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup assembly.

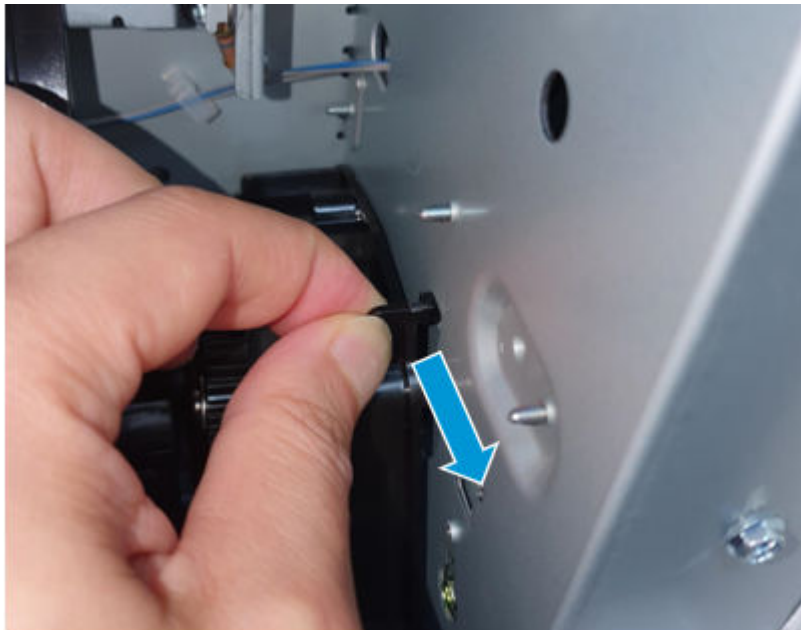
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-318 Remove the cover



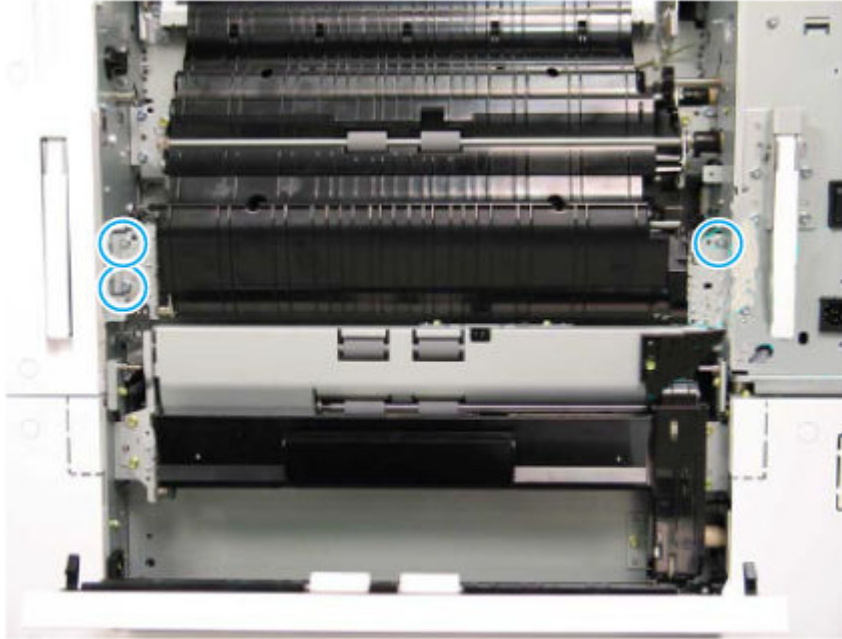
2. Release one hook.

Figure 6-319 Release the hook



3. Remove three screws.

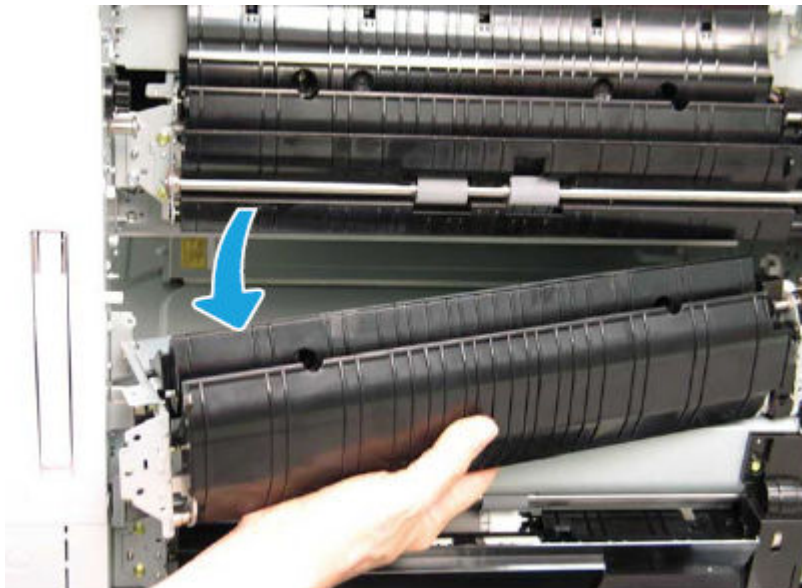
Figure 6-320 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup assembly away from the printer.

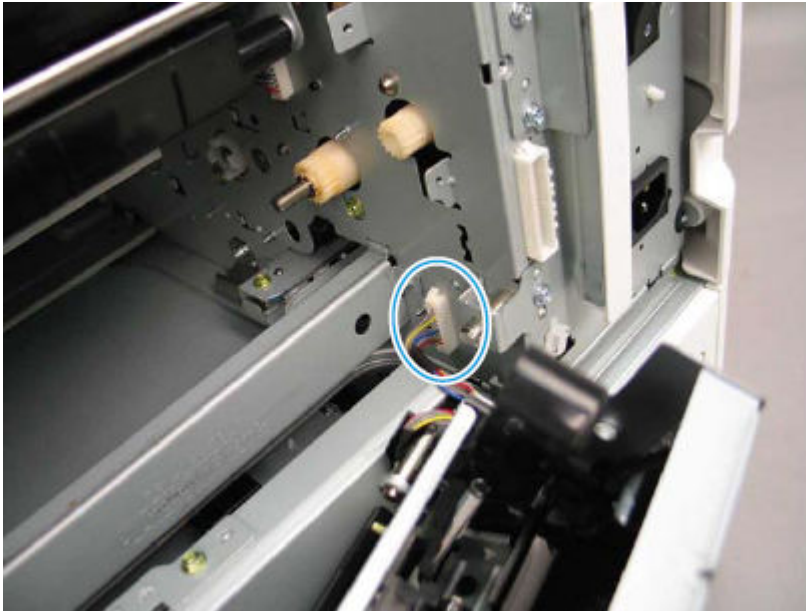
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-321 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-322 Remove the assembly




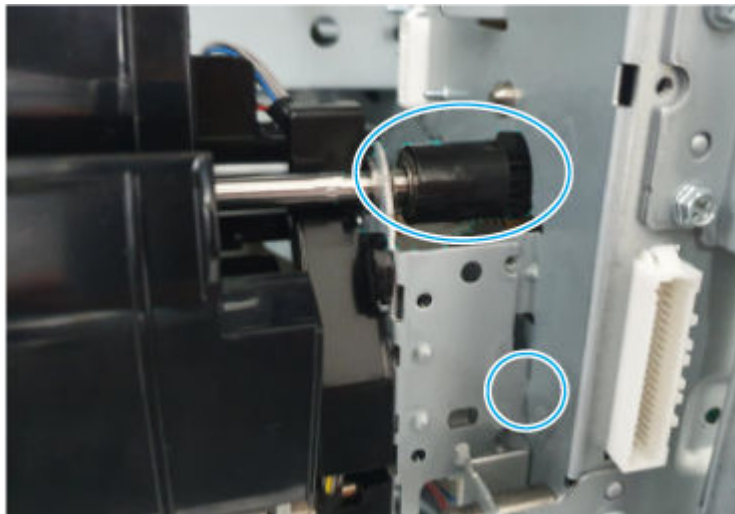
 **Reinstallation tip:** When installing the assembly, insert and align the right side first.


Figure 6-323 Install the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2, 3 roller kit (pickup/forward/reverse)

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2/3 roller kit.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 roller kit.](#)

 [View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 roller kit.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-46 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN66-67001	Tray 2/3 roller kit NOTE: This kit includes the pickup, forward, and reverse rollers.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

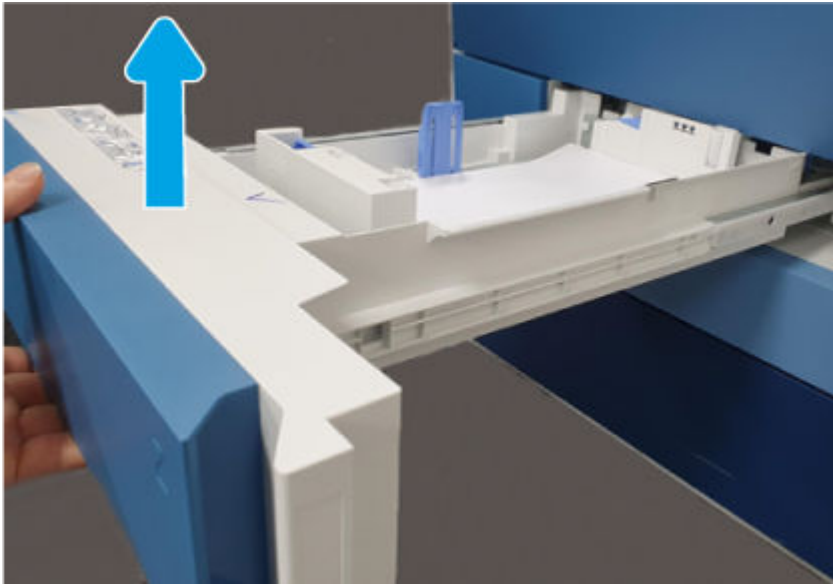
1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-324 Remove the tray



2. Remove the Tray 2/3 roller kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2/3 roller kit.

1. Locate the return guide inside the tray opening, and then slide the guide toward the front of the printer until it stops.


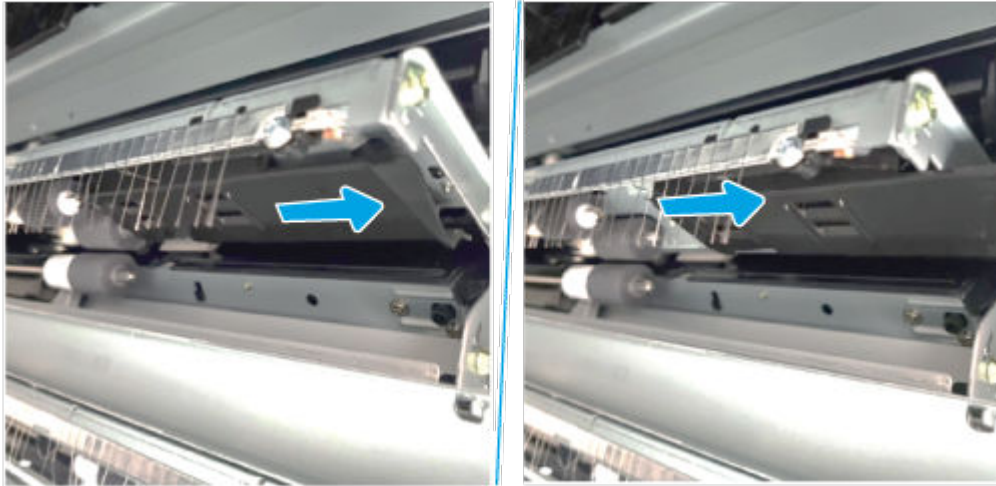
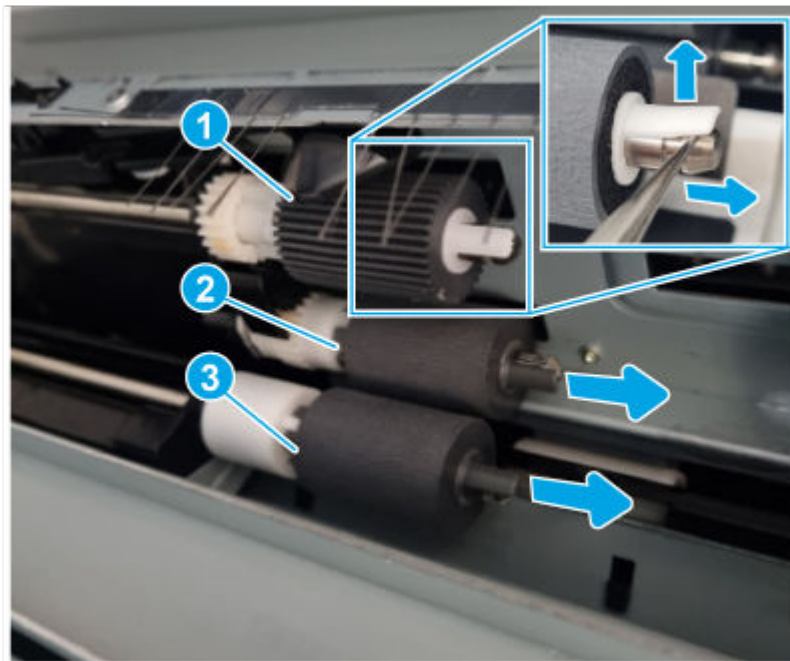
 **Reinstallation tip:** After installing replacement rollers, make sure to fully slide the return guide towards the rear of the printer to prevent paper jams.

Figure 6-325 Slide the return guide



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release the locking tab, and then slide the roller off the shaft to remove it.
 - Pickup roller: callout 1
 - Forward roller: callout 2
 - Reverse roller: callout 3

Figure 6-326 Remove the rollers



3. When the rollers are removed, be careful not to dislodge the couplers. If the couplers are dislodged, install them on the shafts as shown below.


 **NOTE:** The figure below shows the pickup assembly removed to more clearly show the rollers and couplers.

Figure 6-327 Rollers and couplers installed



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 empty and stack height sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 empty and stack height sensors.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 empty sensor.](#)



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 stack height sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-47 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 3 empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 3 stack height sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

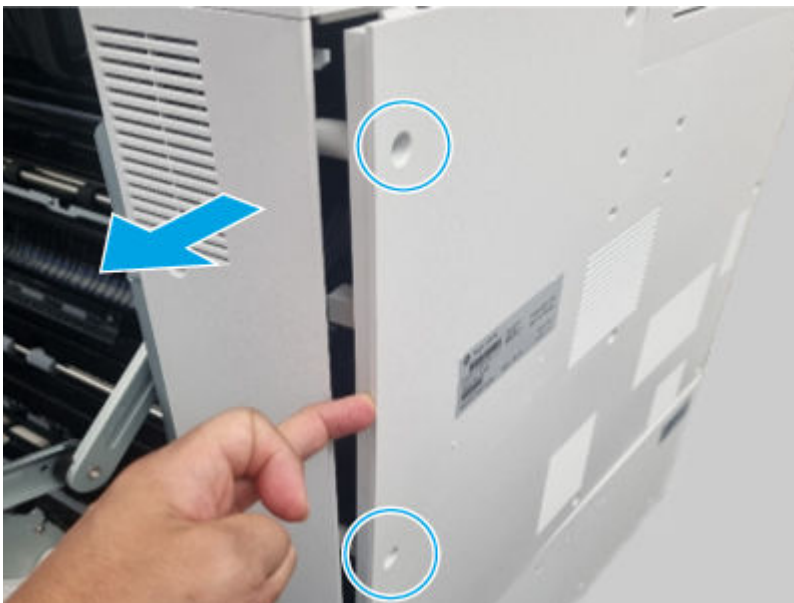
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-328 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-329 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

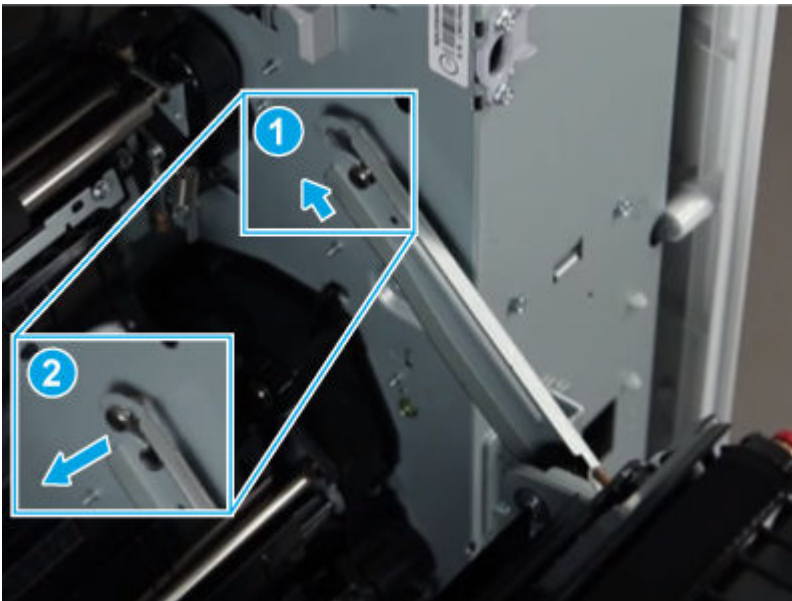
Figure 6-330 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

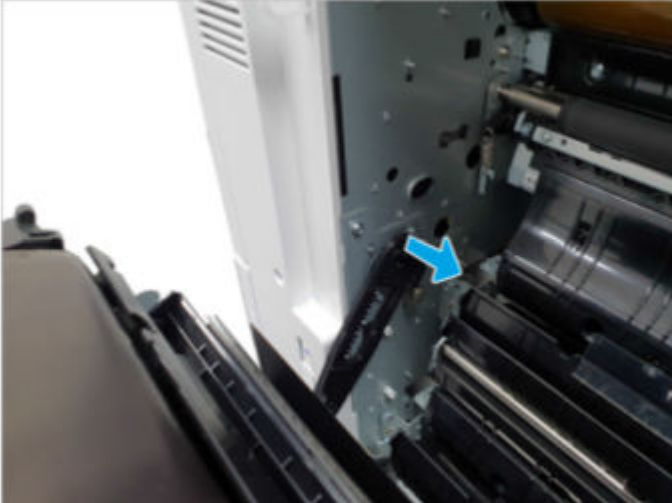
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-331 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-332 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.



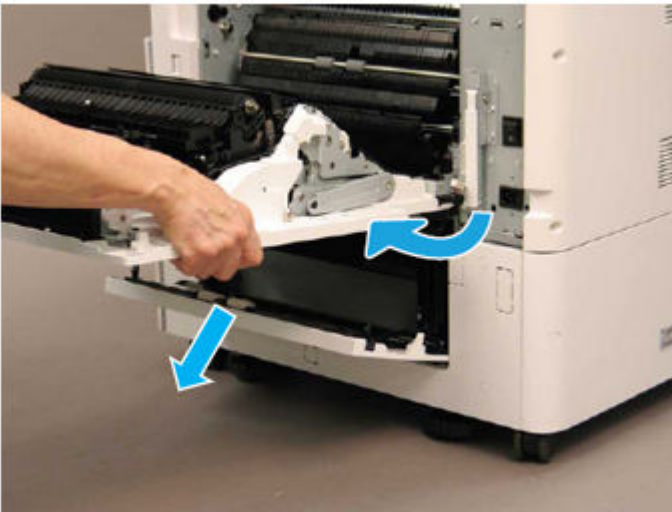
NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.



CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-333 Remove the door



3. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

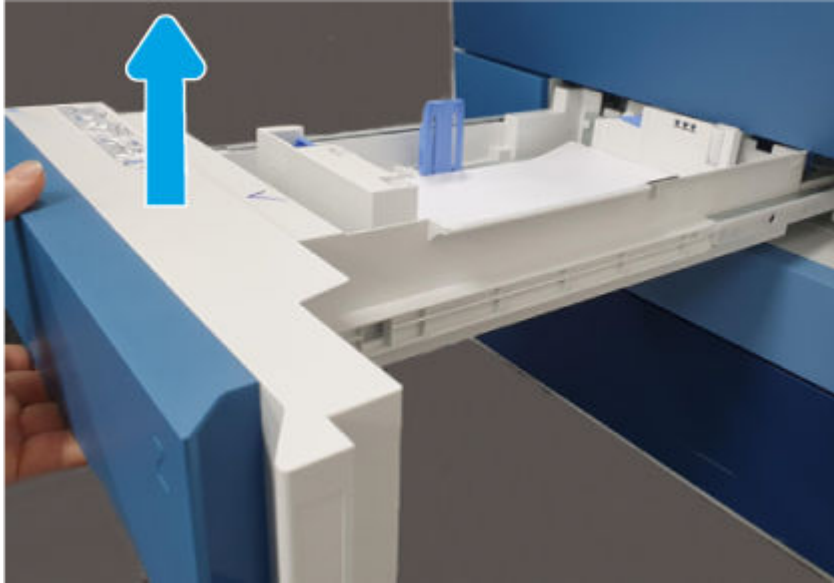
Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.



NOTE: Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-334 Remove the tray

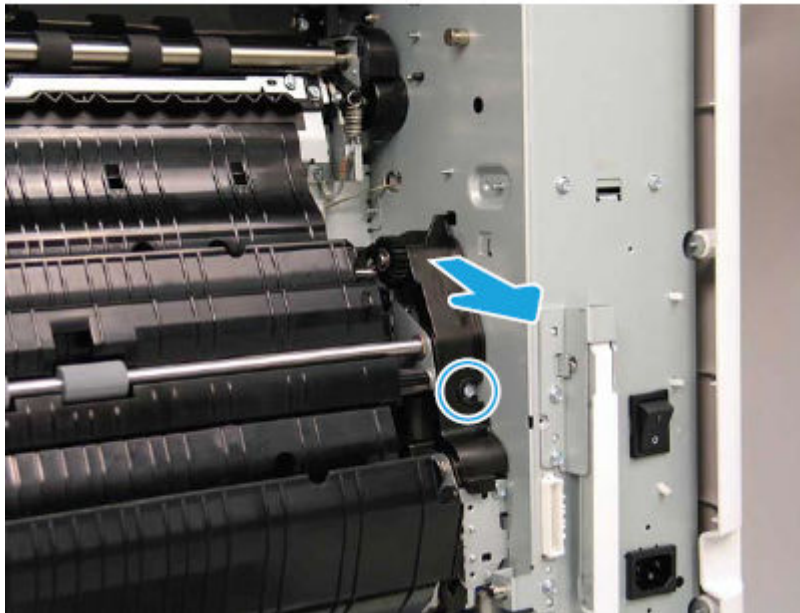


4. Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup assembly.

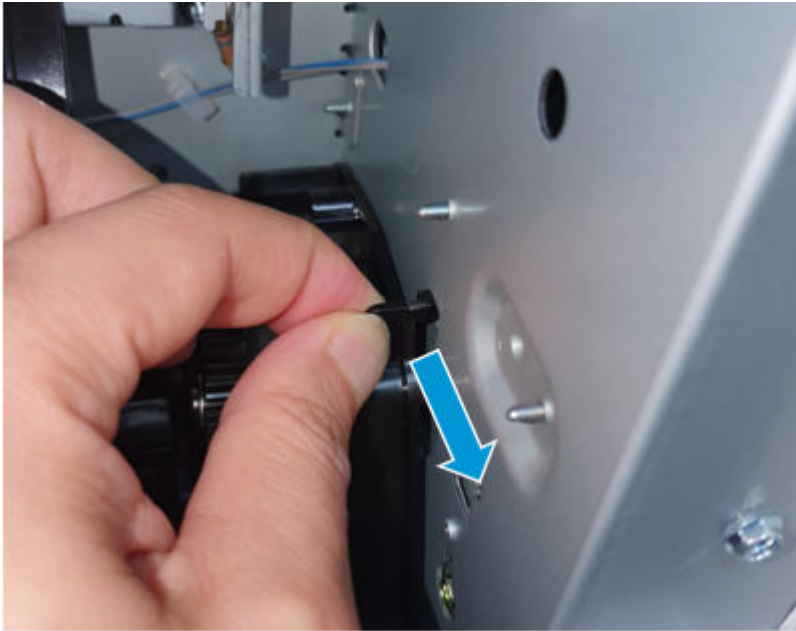
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-335 Remove the cover



2. Release one hook.

Figure 6-336 Release the hook



3. Remove three screws.

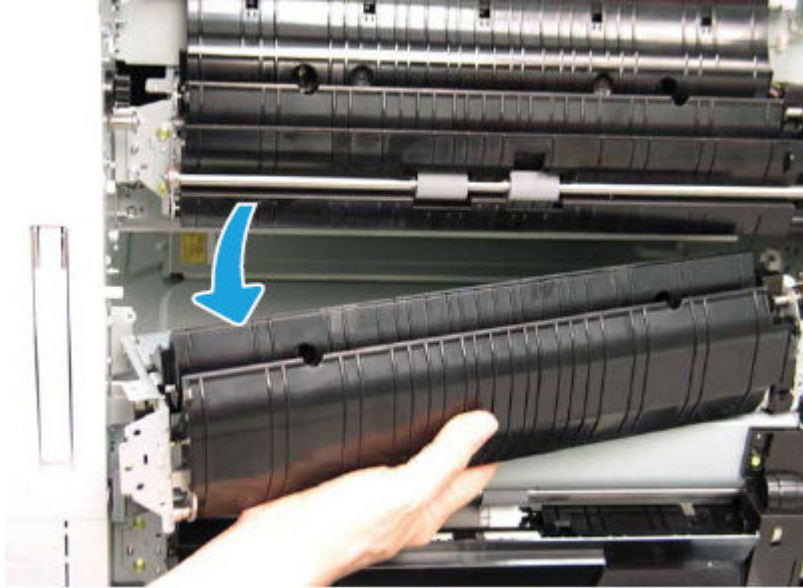
Figure 6-337 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup assembly away from the printer.

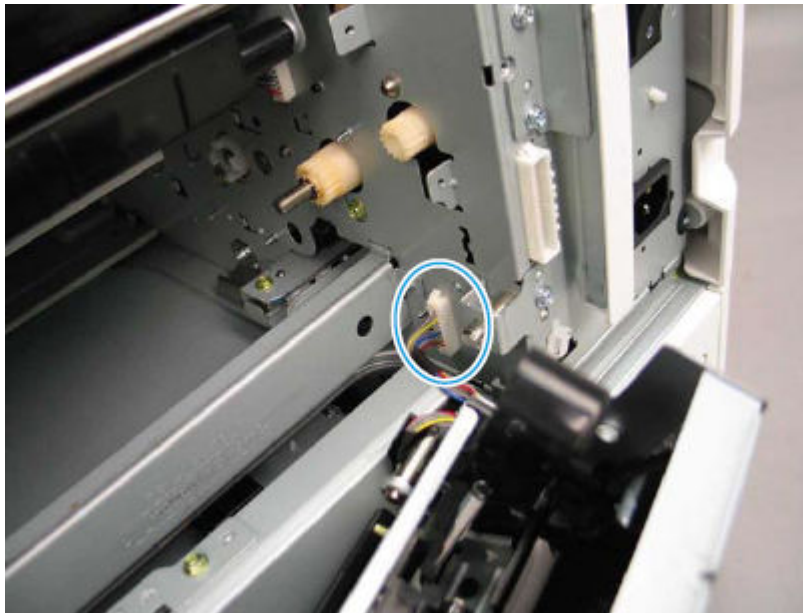
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-338 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-339 Remove the assembly




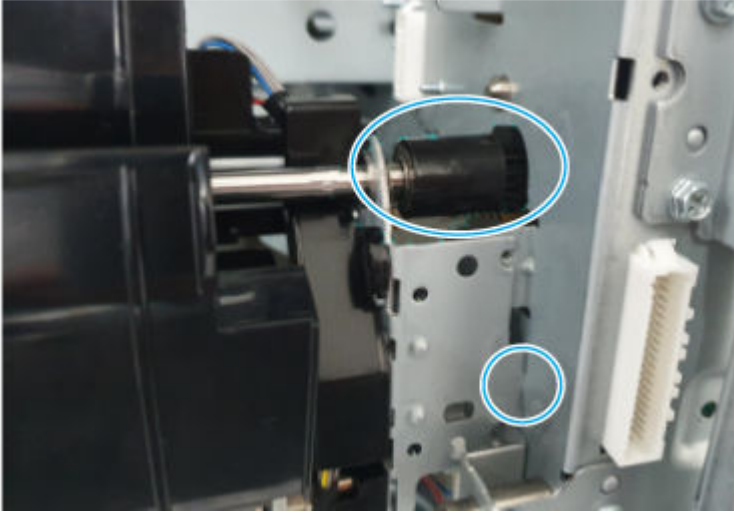
 **Reinstallation tip:** When installing the assembly, insert and align the right side first.

Figure 6-340 Install the assembly

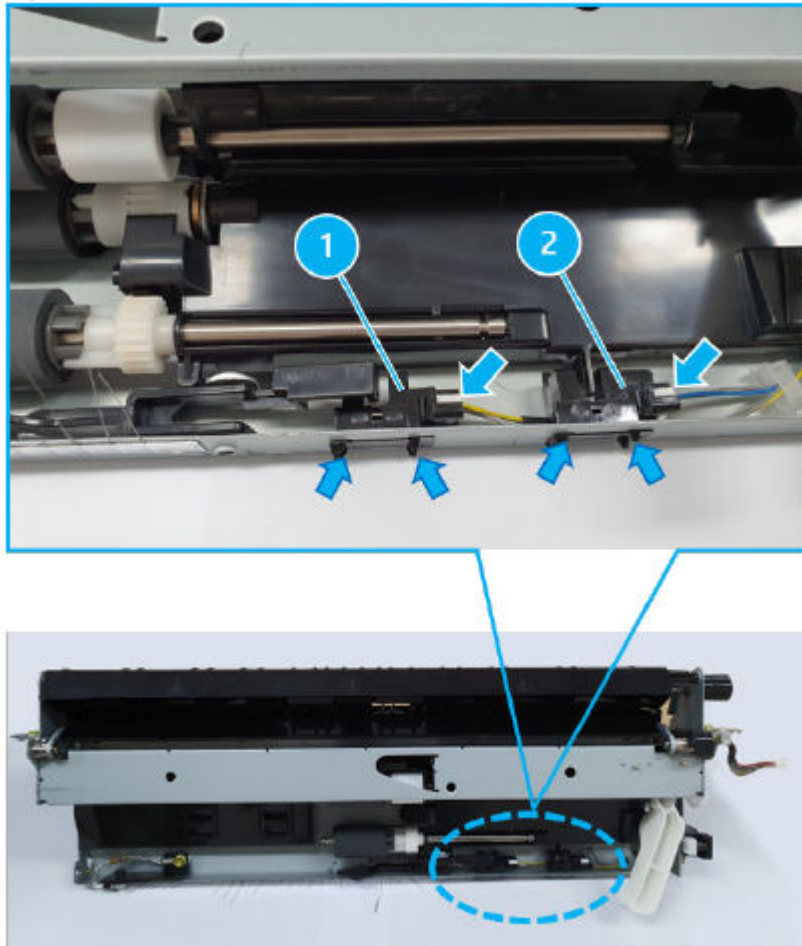


5. Remove the Tray 3 empty and stack height sensors


Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 empty and stack height sensors.

1. Locate the Tray 3 empty (callout 1) and stack height (callout 2) sensors, connectors, and locking tabs on the pickup assembly.

Figure 6-341 Locate the sensors

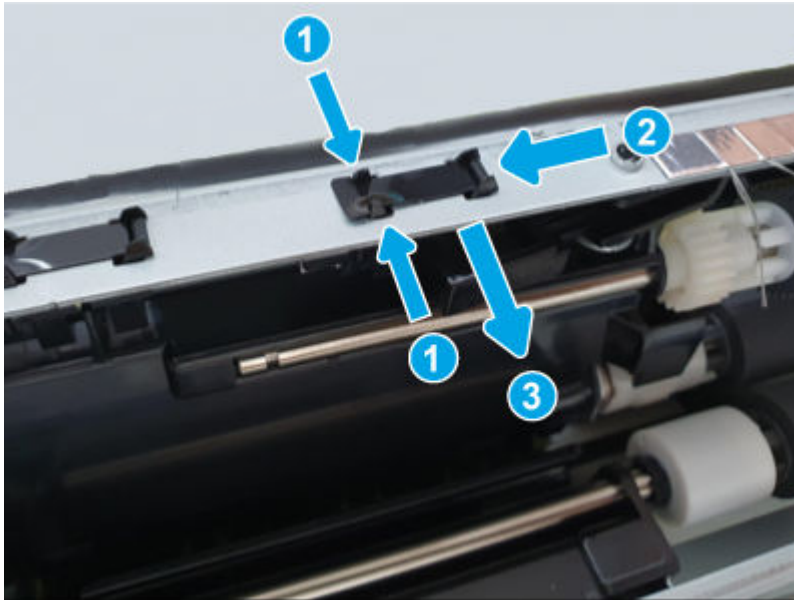


2. Do the following:

 **NOTE:** The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

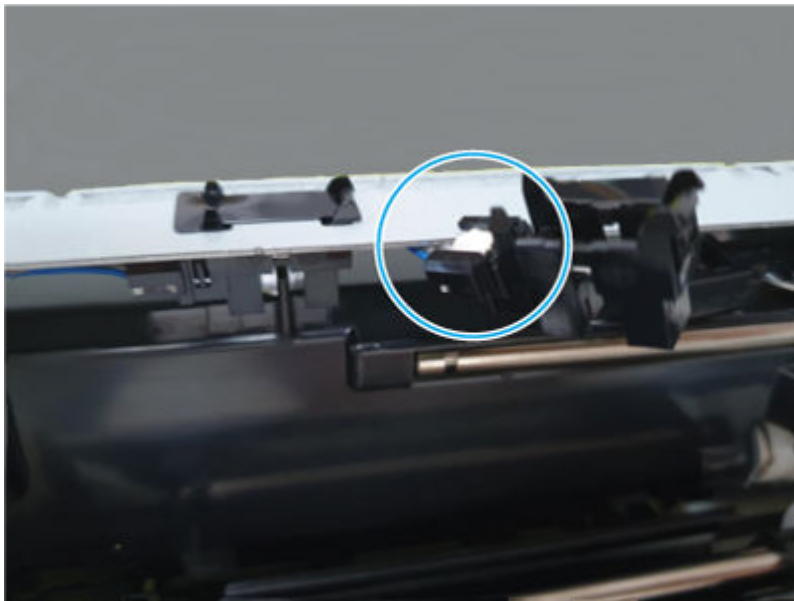
- Release the hooks (callout 1).
- Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 3) to release it.

Figure 6-342 Release the sensors



3. Disconnect the connector and remove the sensor assembly.

Figure 6-343 Remove the sensors



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 prefeed sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 prefeed sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 prefeed sensor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-48 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Tray 3 prefeed sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-344 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-345 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

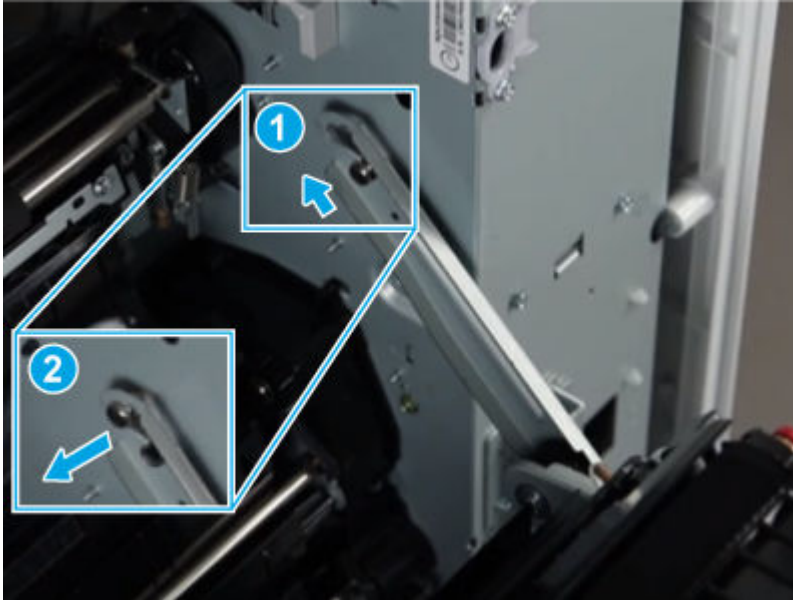
Figure 6-346 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

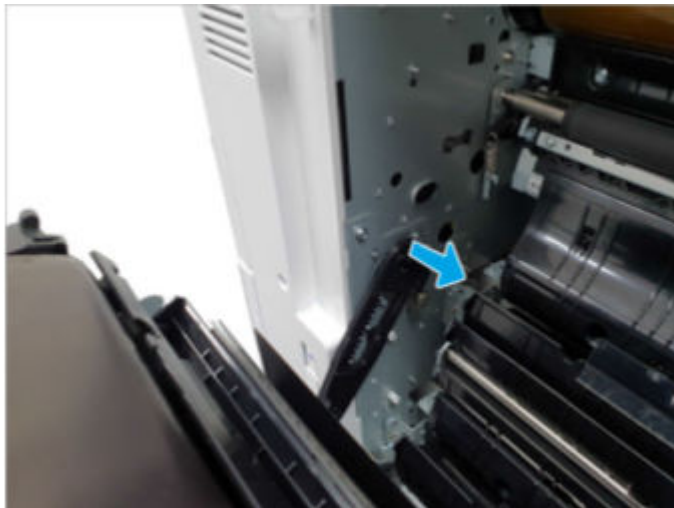
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-347 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-348 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

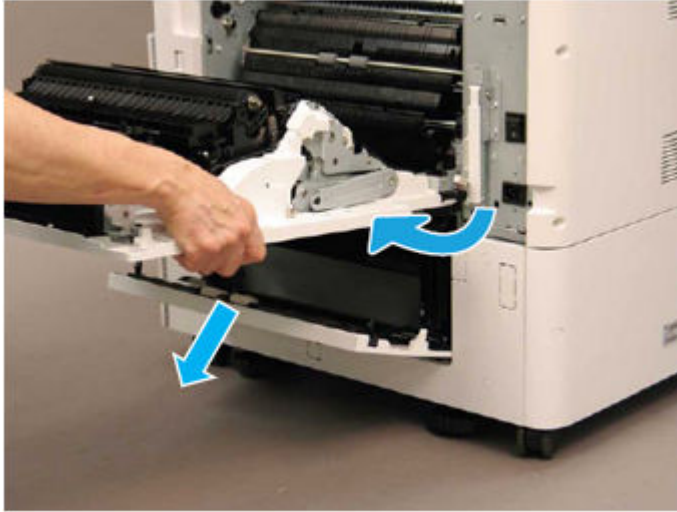


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-349 Remove the door



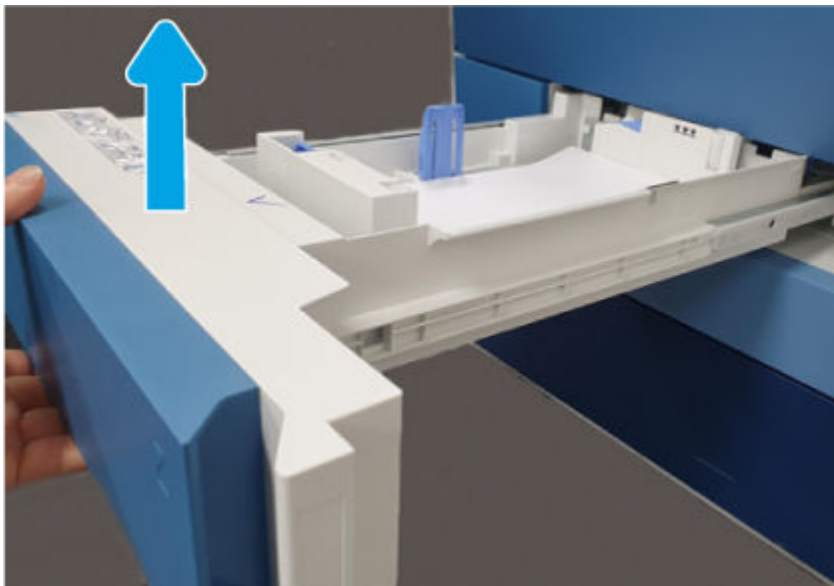
3. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-350 Remove the tray

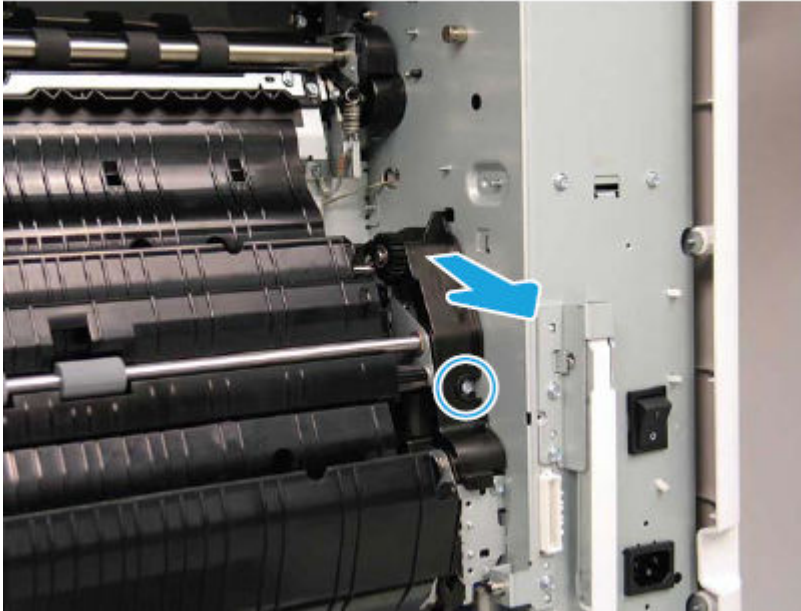


4. Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup assembly.

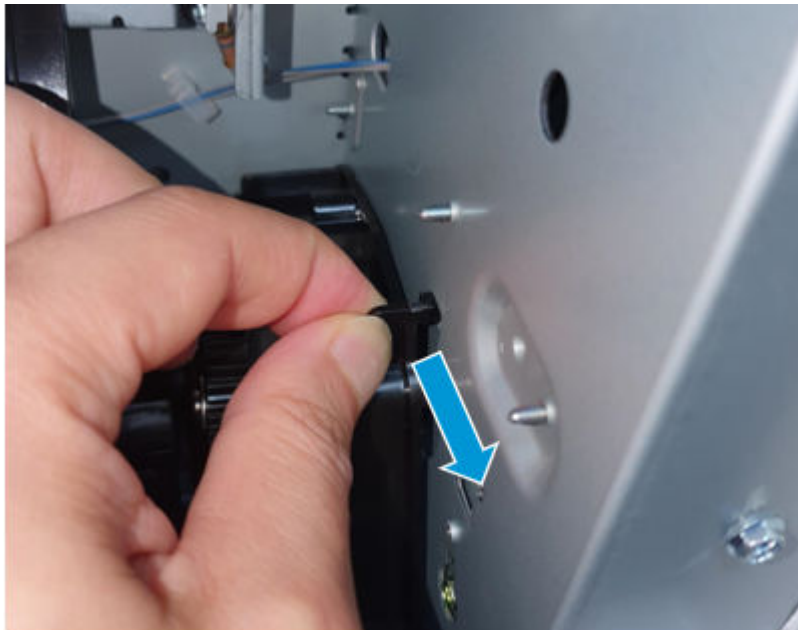
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-351 Remove the cover



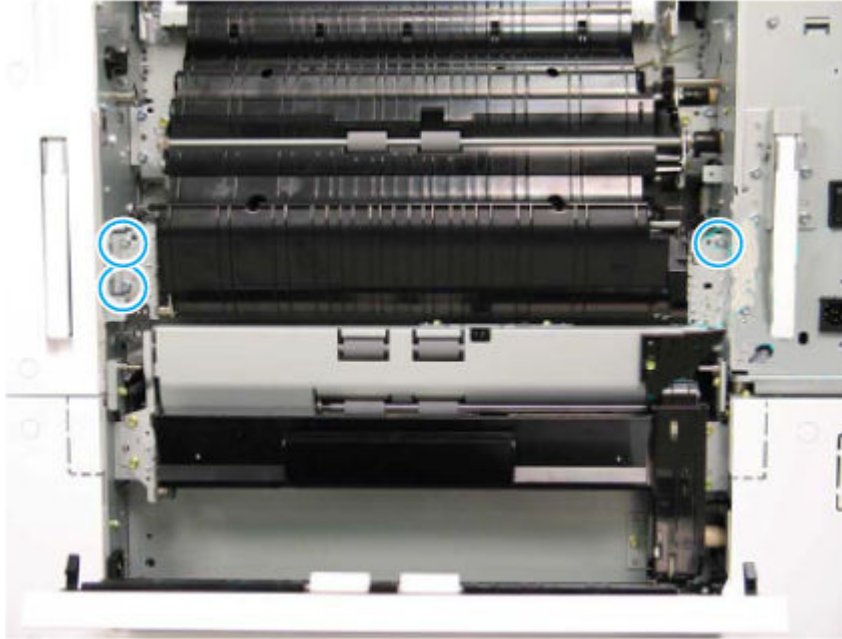
2. Release one hook.

Figure 6-352 Release the hook



3. Remove three screws.

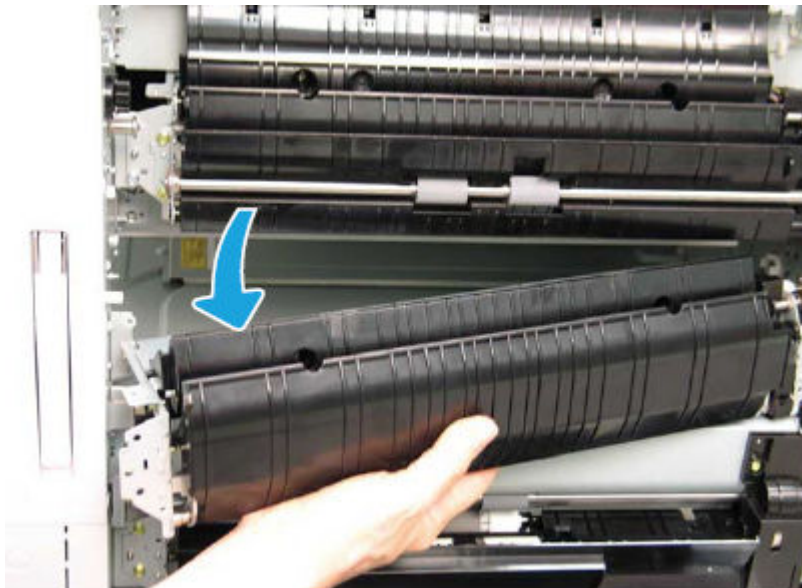
Figure 6-353 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup assembly away from the printer.

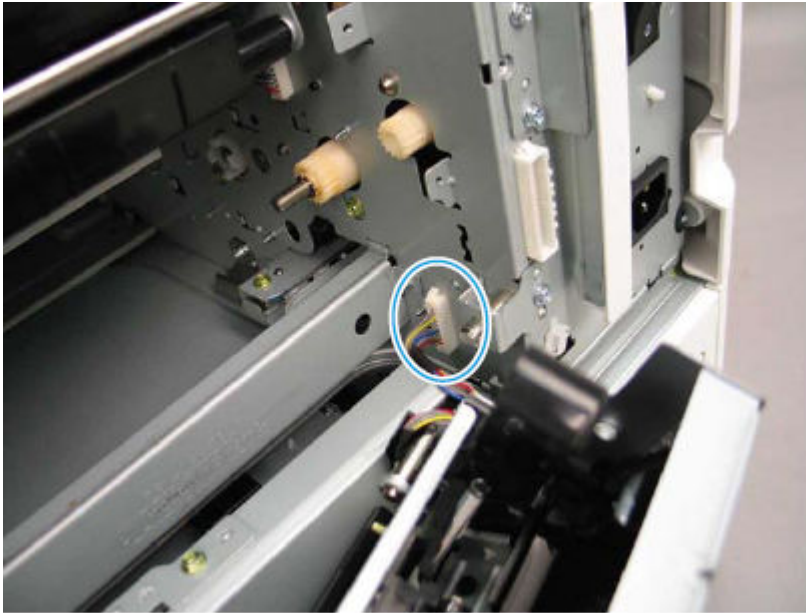
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-354 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-355 Remove the assembly




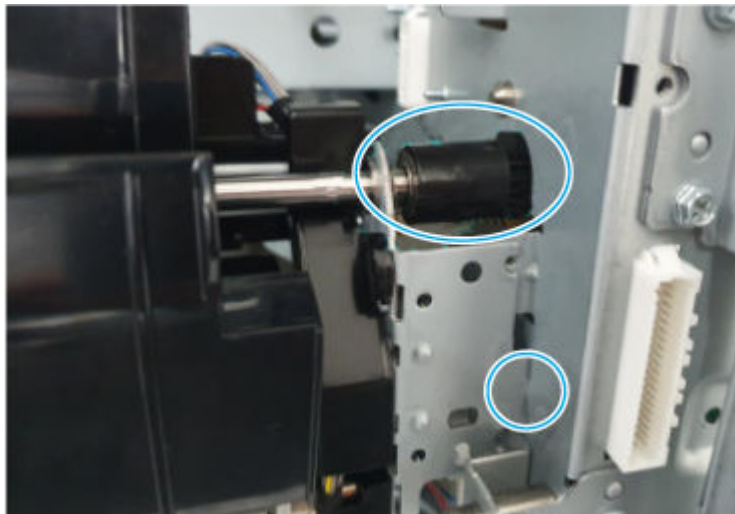
 **Reinstallation tip:** When installing the assembly, insert and align the right side first.

Figure 6-356 Install the assembly

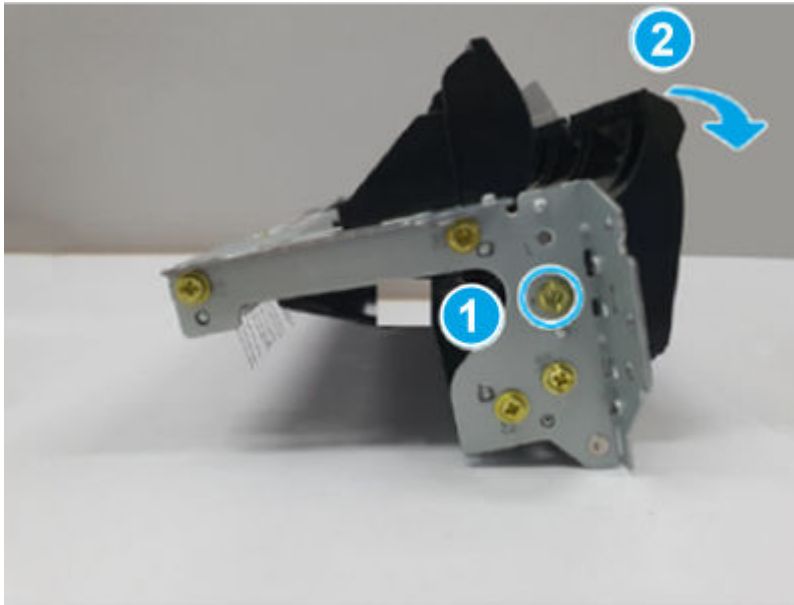


5. Remove the Tray 3 prefeed sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 prefeed sensor.

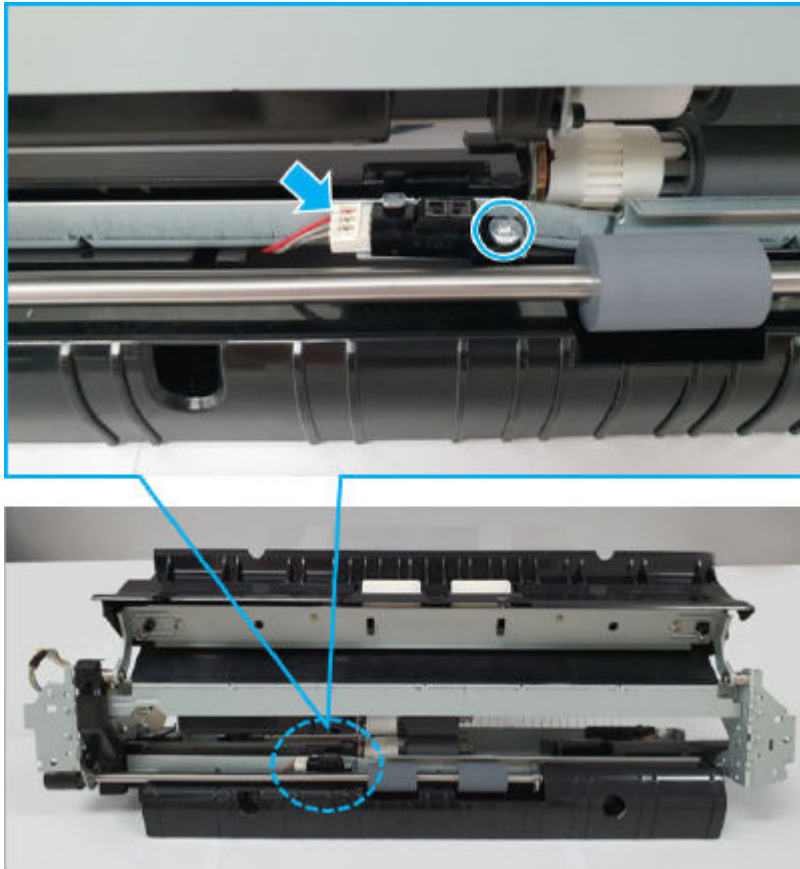
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then open the pickup guide (callout 2).

Figure 6-357 Open the pickup guide



2. Locate the sensor on the pickup assembly, and then do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector.
 - Remove one screw.
 - Release the Tray 3 prefeed sensor.

Figure 6-358 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.




IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.




NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 open and paper size sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 open and paper size sensor.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the front door for better access to the sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 open and paper size sensor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-49 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01408A	Tray 3 open and paper size sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

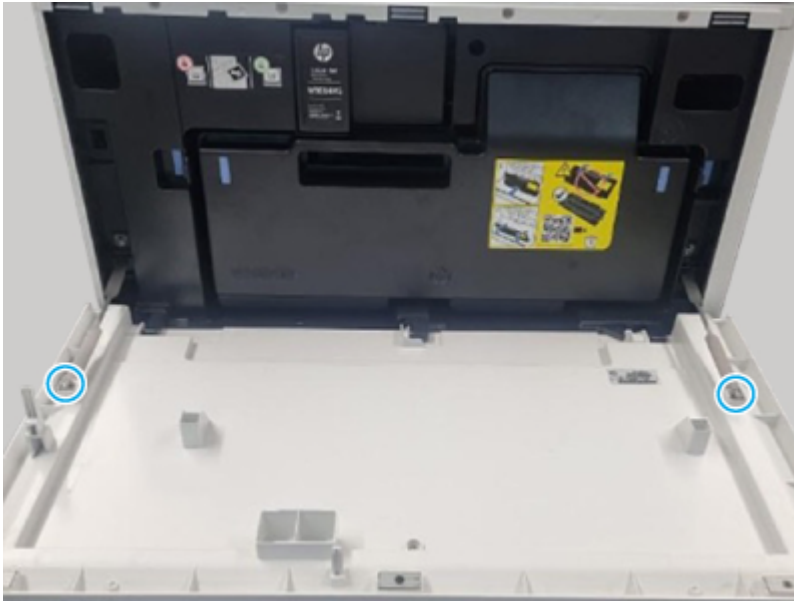
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

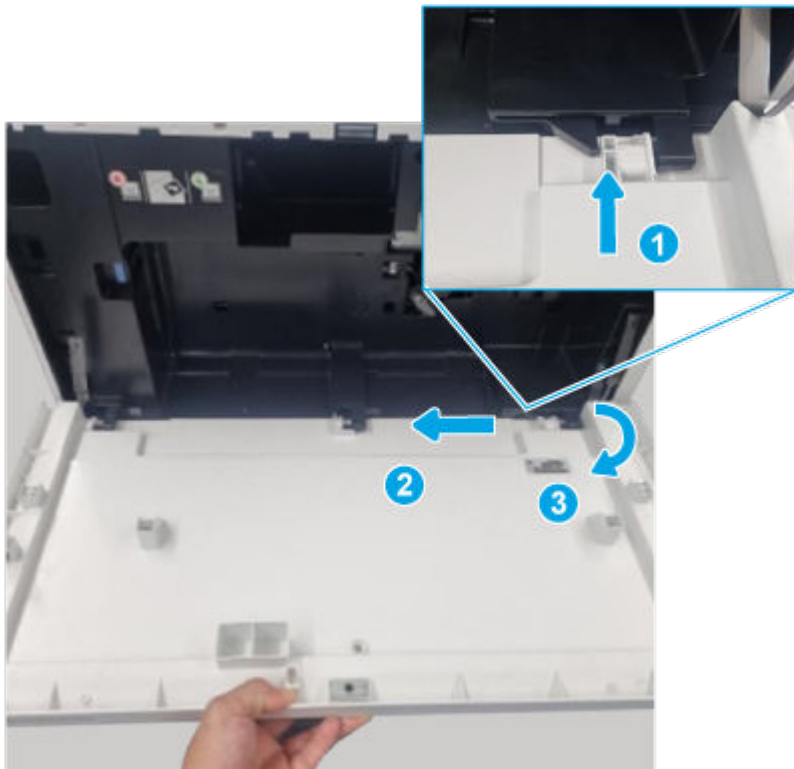
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-359 Remove two screws




2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-360 Remove the cover



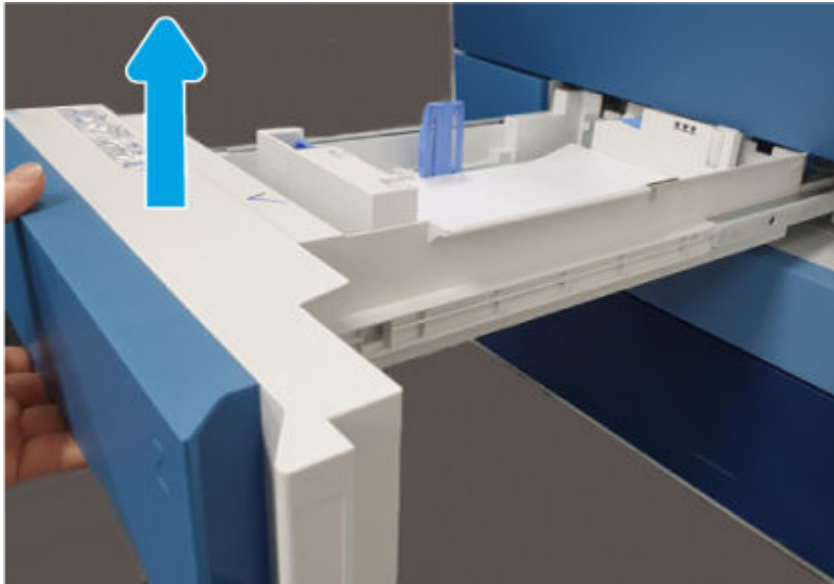
2. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-361 Remove the tray

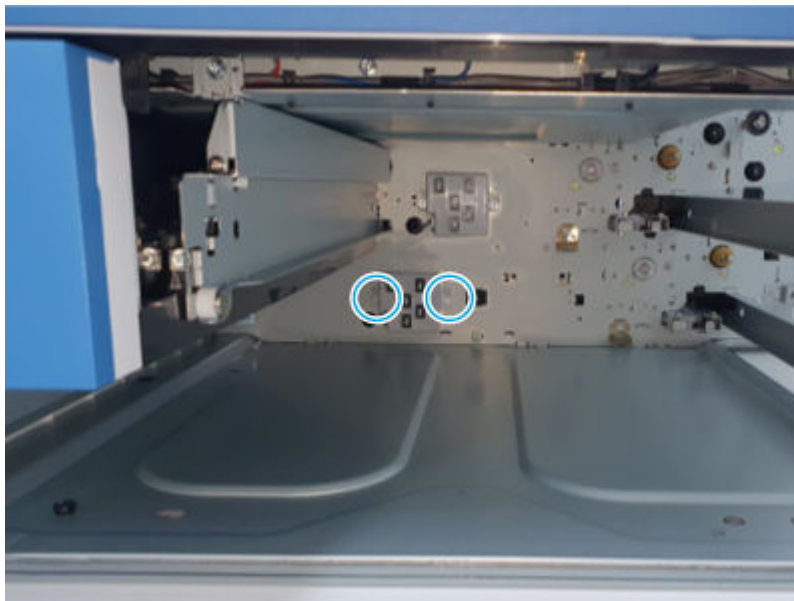


3. Remove the Tray 3 open and paper size sensor


Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 open and paper size sensor.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-362 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the sensor assembly.

 **NOTE:** The figure below shows the Tray 2 sensor being removed. Removing the Tray 3 sensor (lower) is identical to Tray 2.


 **TIP:** The sensor assembly is located far back in the tray cavity. Hold the sensor as shown below to easily disconnect (and reconnect at installation) the connector.

Figure 6-363 Remove the sensor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray heater (accessory)

Learn about removing and replacing the tray heaters.



[View a video of removing and replacing the tray heaters.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-50 Part information

Part number	Part description
Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V
Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

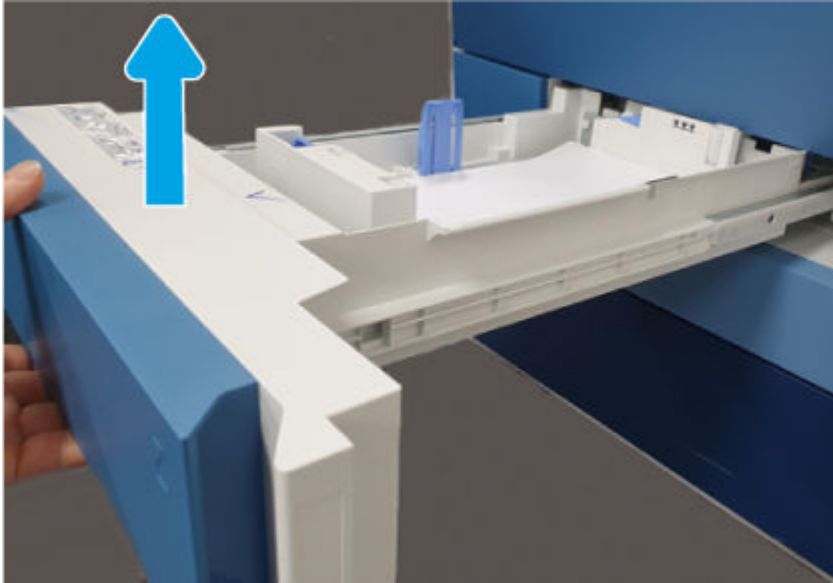
Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.



NOTE: Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.


- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-364 Remove the tray



2. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-365 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:

- Slightly lift up on the front of the heater, and pull it toward the front of the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the heater. It is still attached to the printer by a wire-harness connector.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the heater.

Figure 6-366 Remove the heater



3. **Unpack the replacement assembly**


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

📄 NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

⚠ CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

📄 IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

📄 NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Feed drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the feed drive assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the feed drive assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-51 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01664A	Feed drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

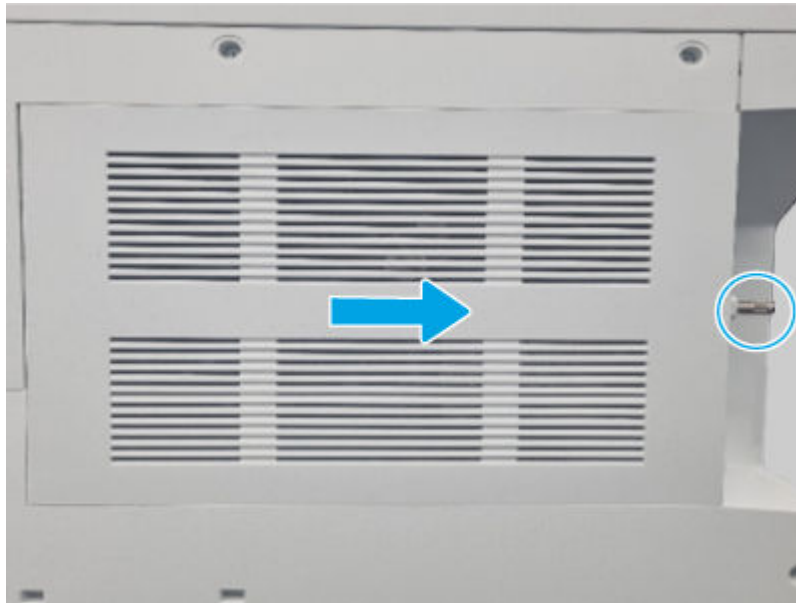
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-367 Remove the cover

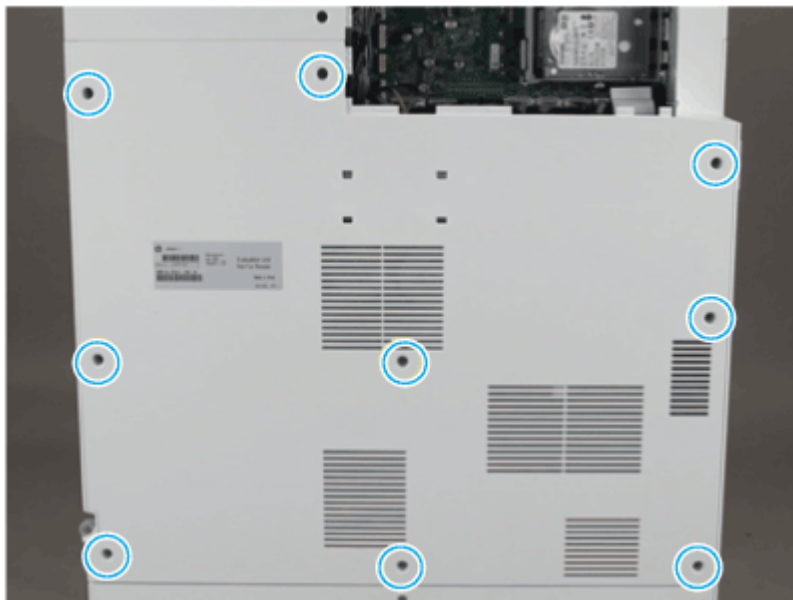


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-368 Remove the cover



3. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

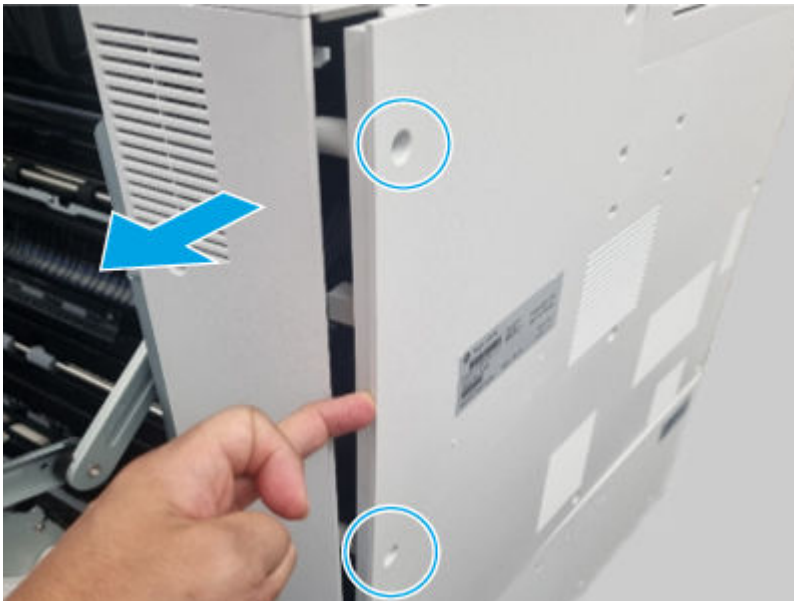
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-369 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-370 Remove the cover



4. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

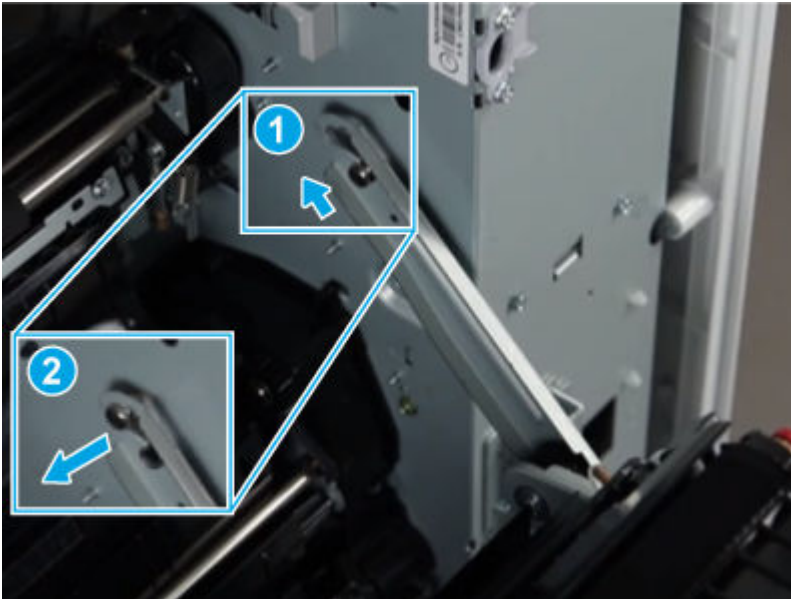
Figure 6-371 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

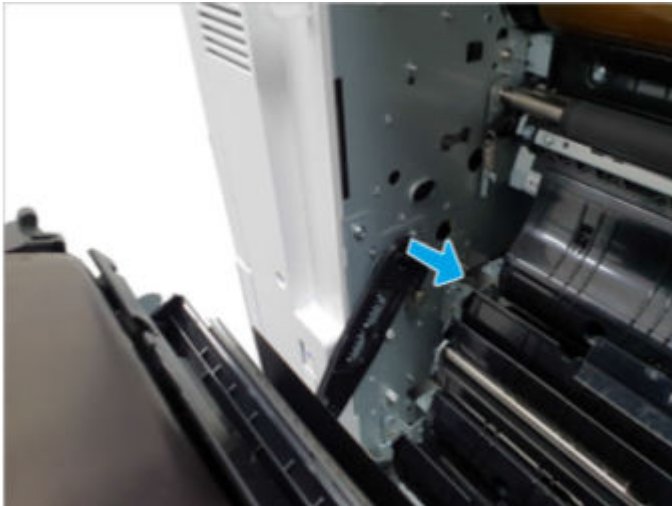
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-372 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-373 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

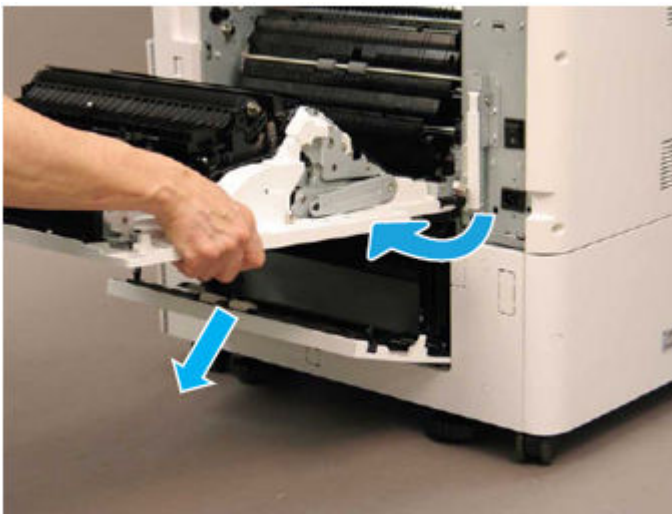


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-374 Remove the door



5. Remove the feed drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the feed drive assembly.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-375 Remove one screw



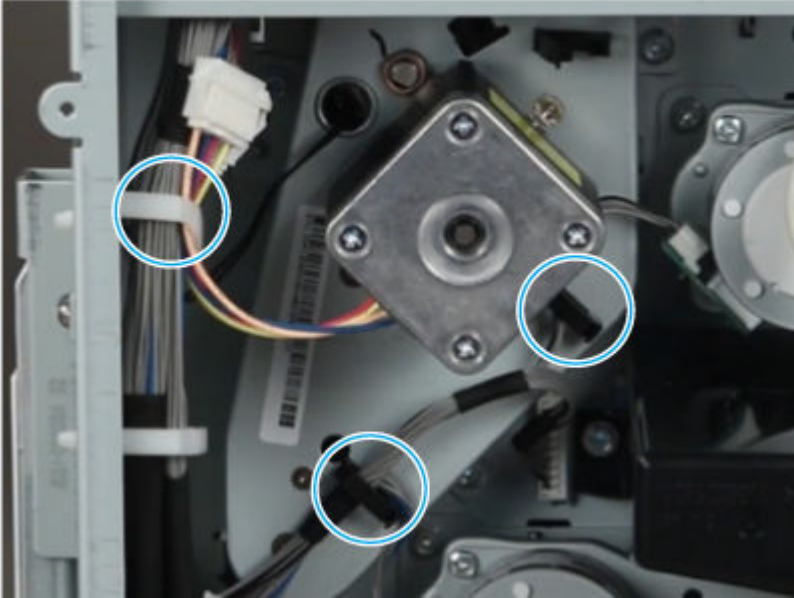
2. Release one hook, and then remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-376 Remove the gear cover



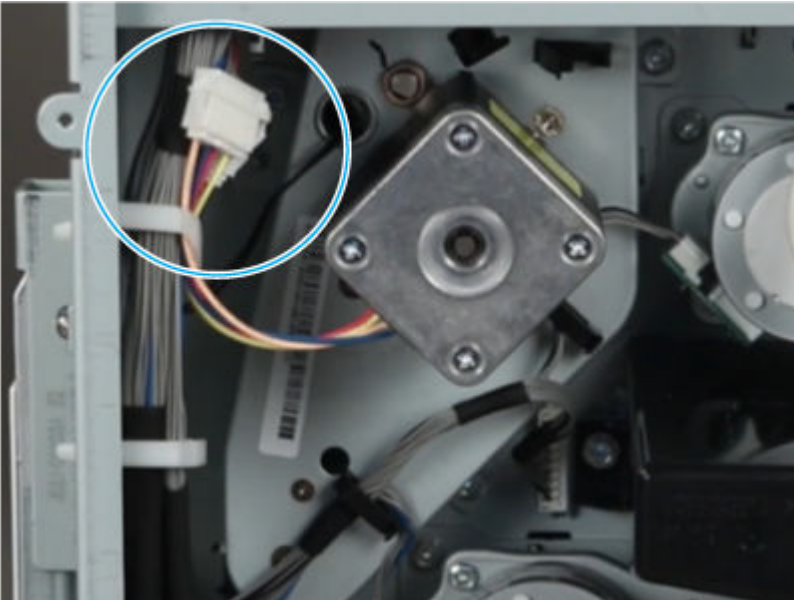
3. Release three retainers.

Figure 6-377 Release three retainers



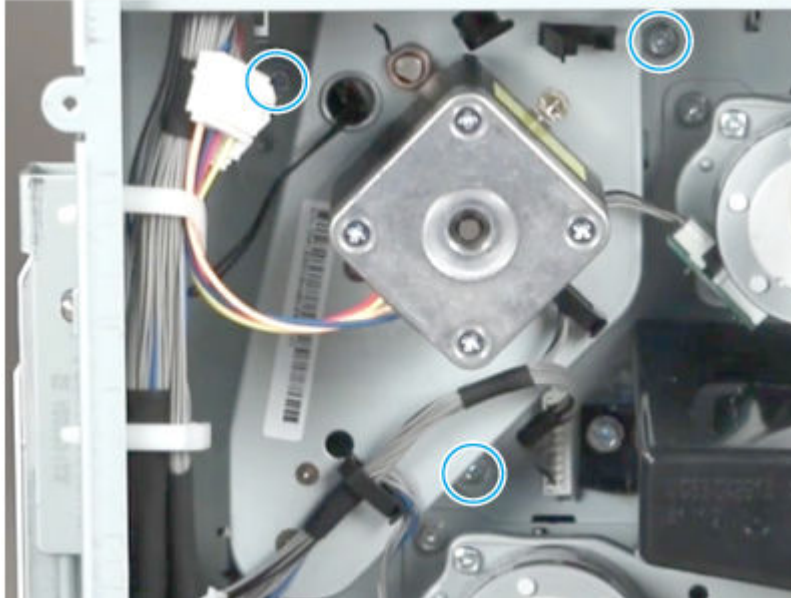
4. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-378 Disconnect two connectors



5. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-379 Remove the feed drive assembly



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Feed motor

Learn about removing and replacing the feed motor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the feed motor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-52 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00189A	Drive-motor step (Feed motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

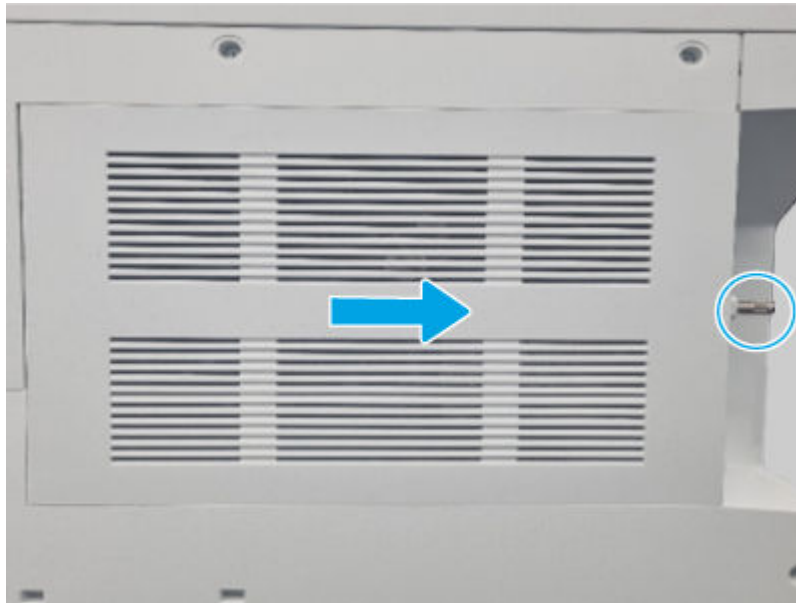
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-380 Remove the cover

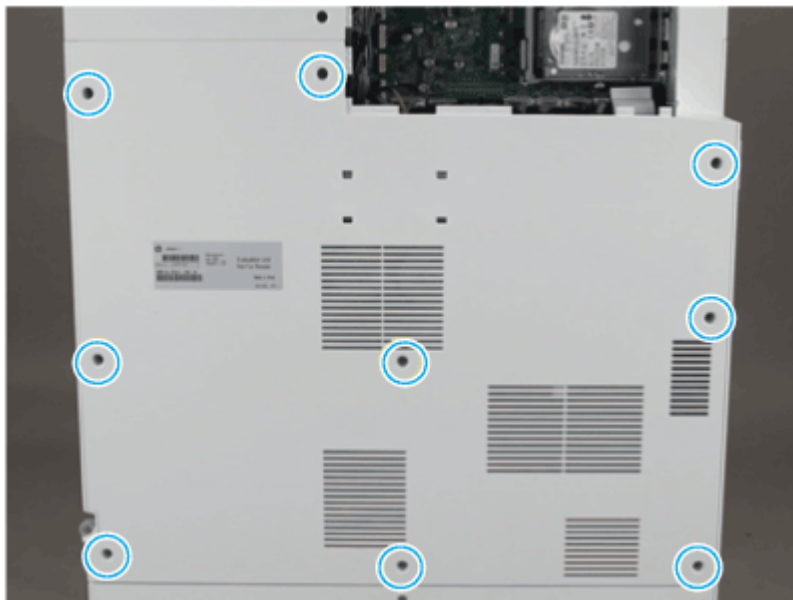


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-381 Remove the cover



3. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

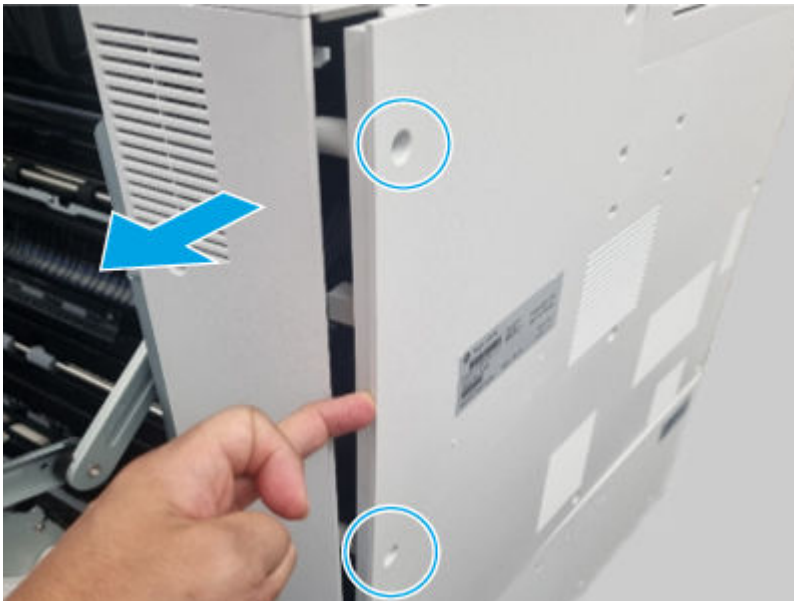
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-382 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-383 Remove the cover



4. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

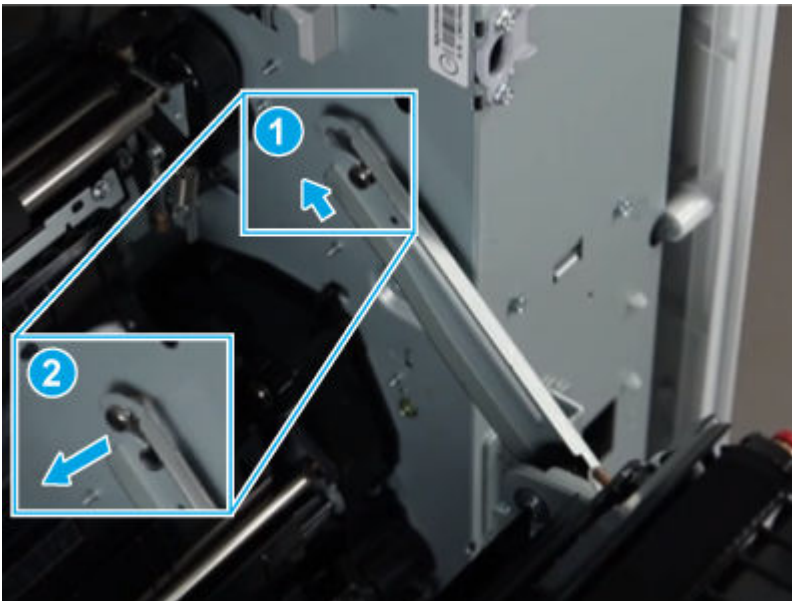
Figure 6-384 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

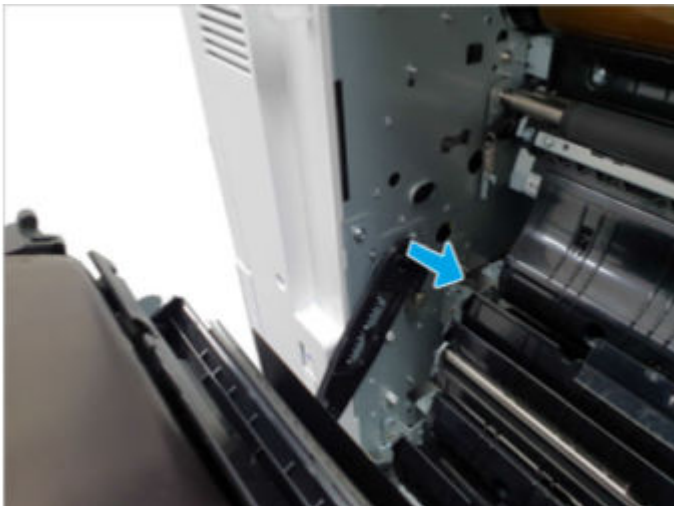
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-385 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-386 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.



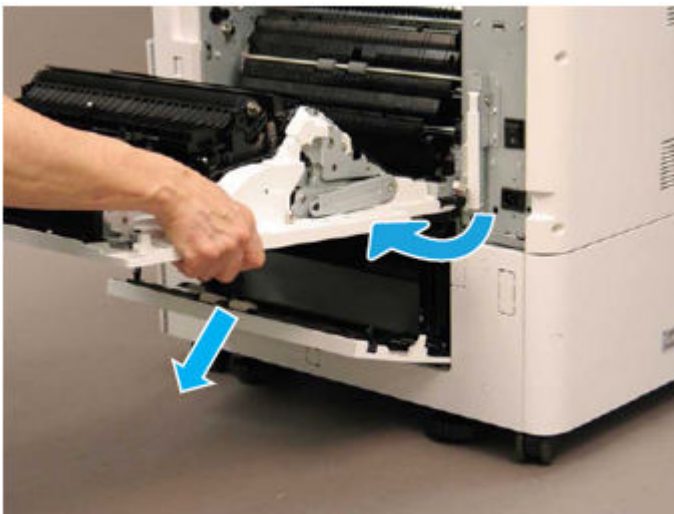
NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.



CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-387 Remove the door



5. Remove the feed drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the feed drive assembly.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-388 Remove one screw



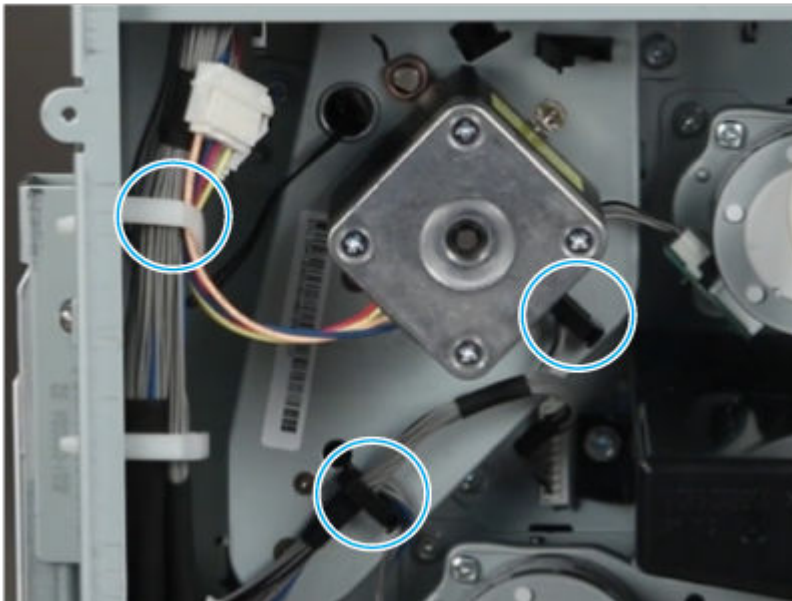
2. Release one hook, and then remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-389 Remove the gear cover



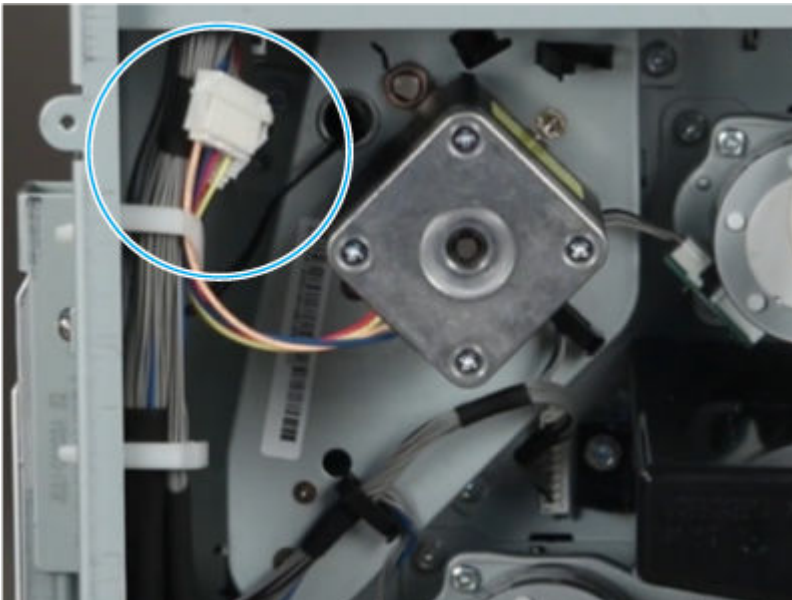
3. Release three retainers.

Figure 6-390 Release three retainers



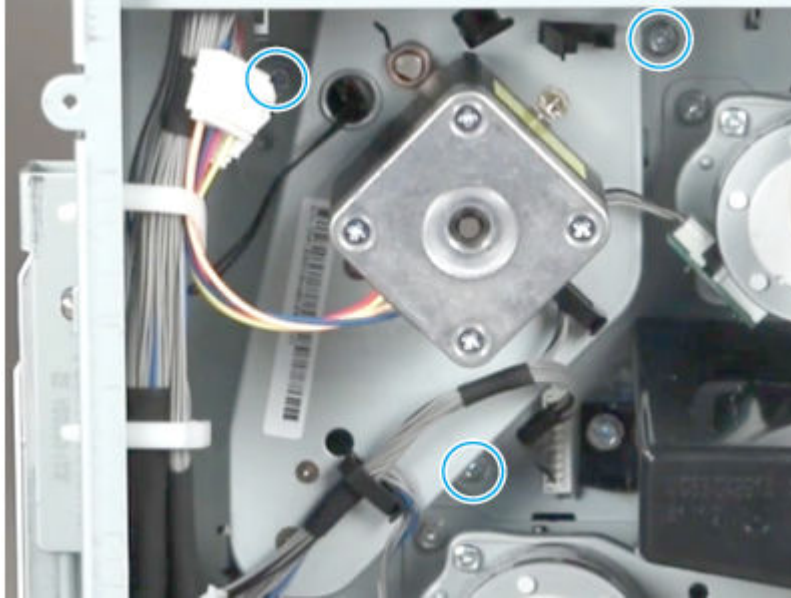
4. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-391 Disconnect two connectors



5. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-392 Remove the feed drive assembly



6. Remove the Tray 1 clutch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 clutch.

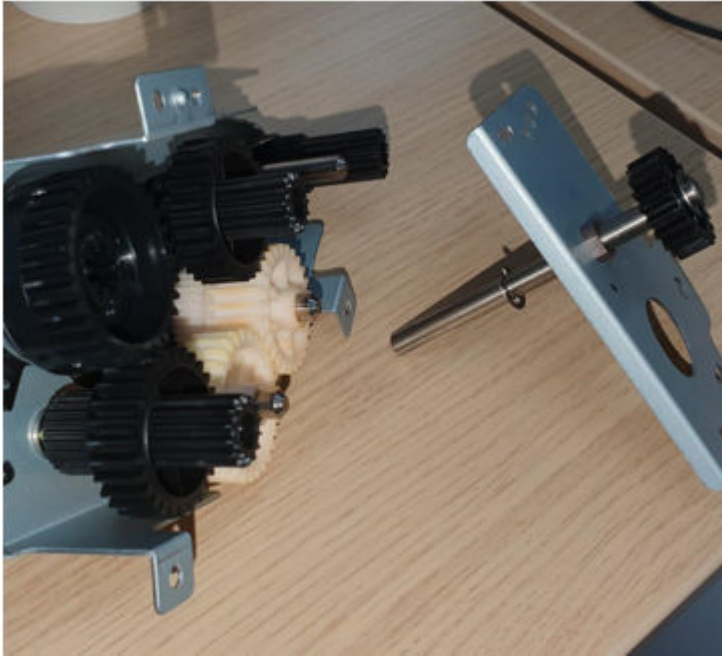
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-393 Remove one screw



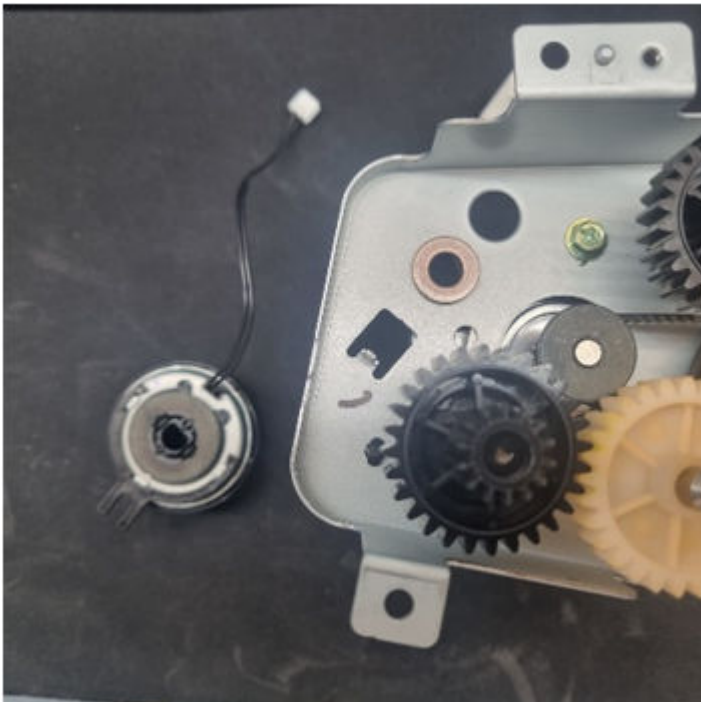
2. Remove the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-394 Remove the cover



3. Remove the clutch.

Figure 6-395 Remove the clutch

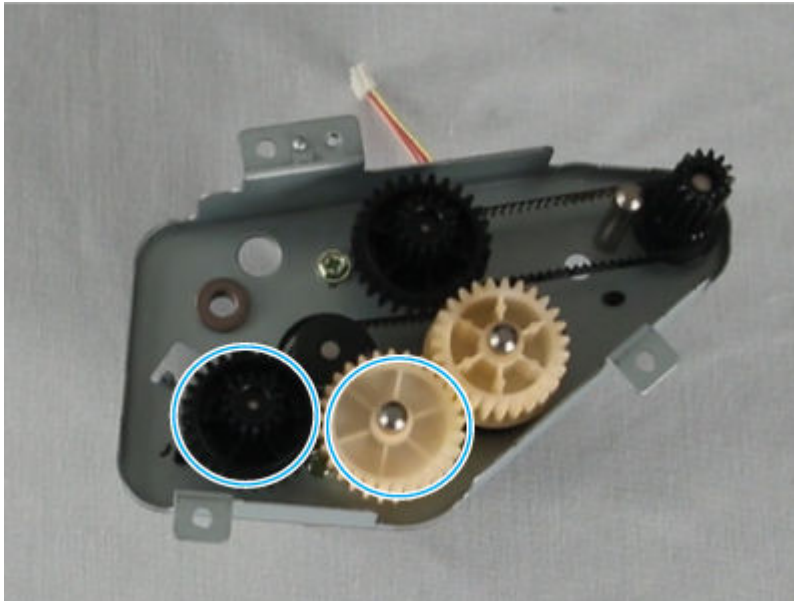


7. Remove the feed motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the feed motor.

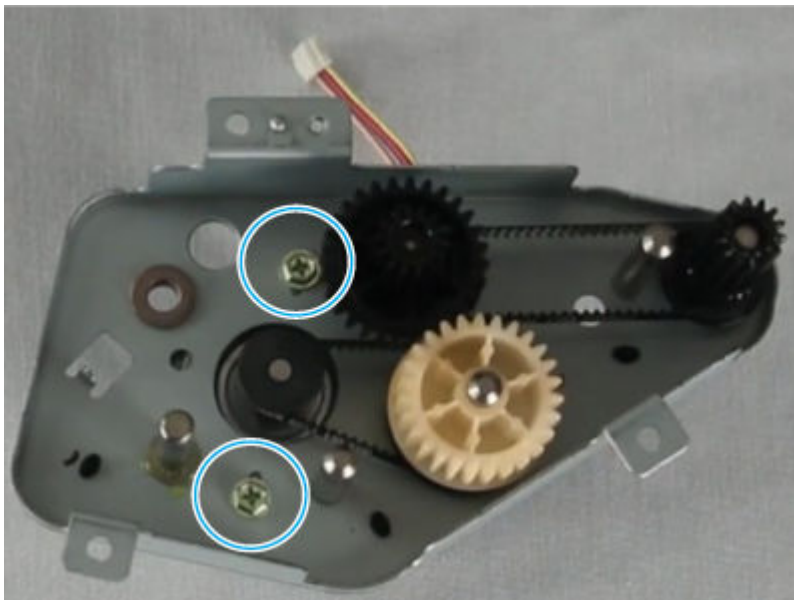
1. Remove two gears.

Figure 6-396 Remove two gears



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-397 Remove the motor



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Feed 2 sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the feed 2 sensor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the feed 2 sensor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-53 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter (Feed 2 sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

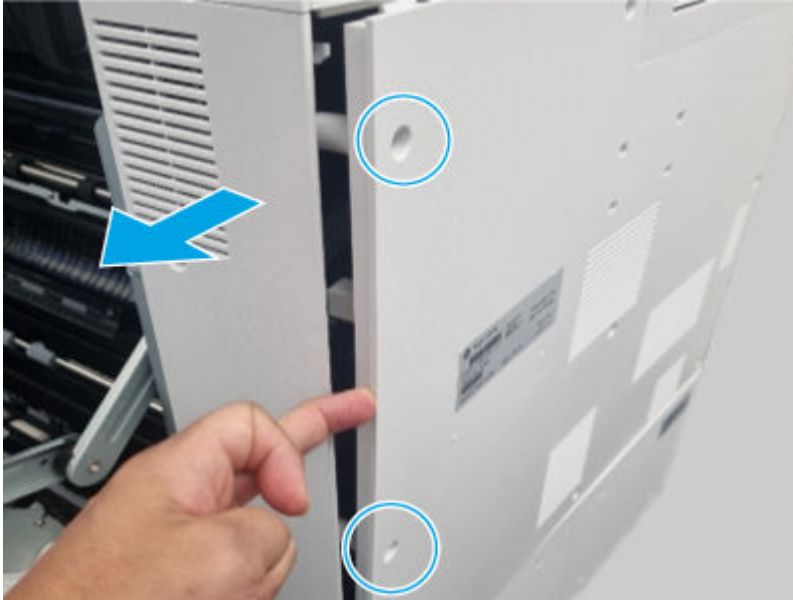
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-398 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-399 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

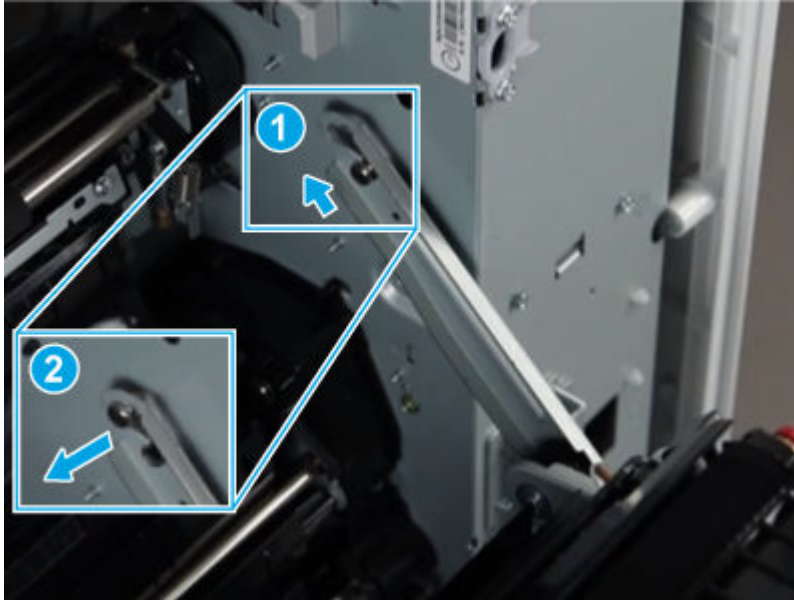
Figure 6-400 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-401 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-402 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


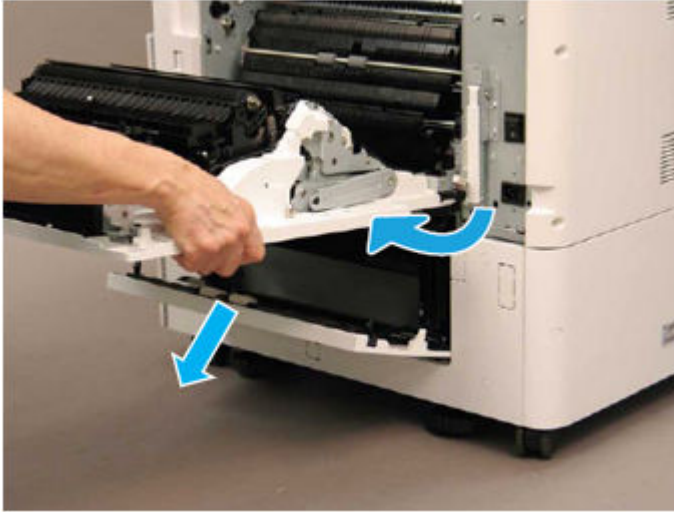
 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-403 Remove the door

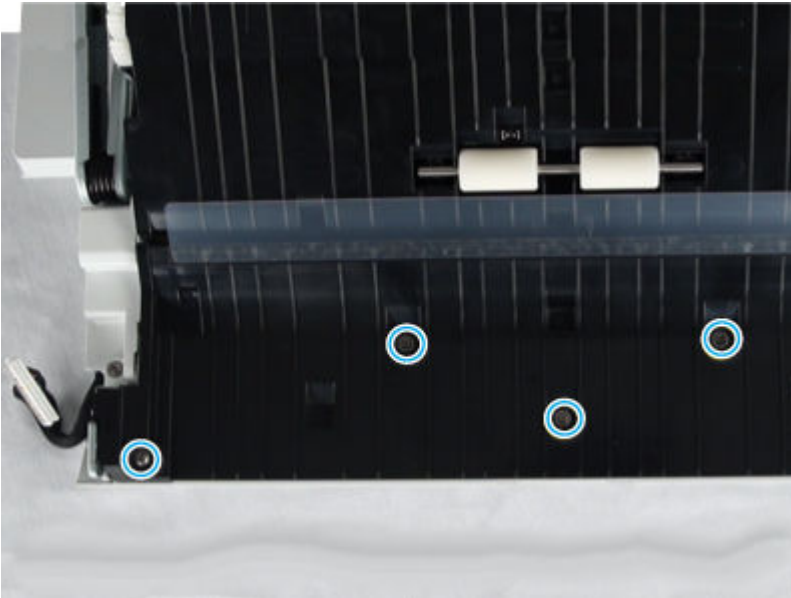


3. Remove the right door take-away assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door take-away assembly.

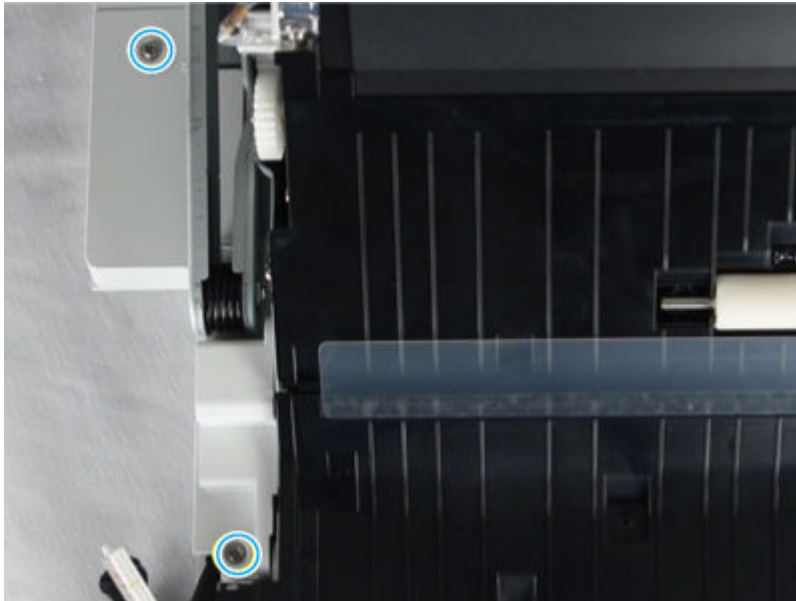
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-404 Remove four screws



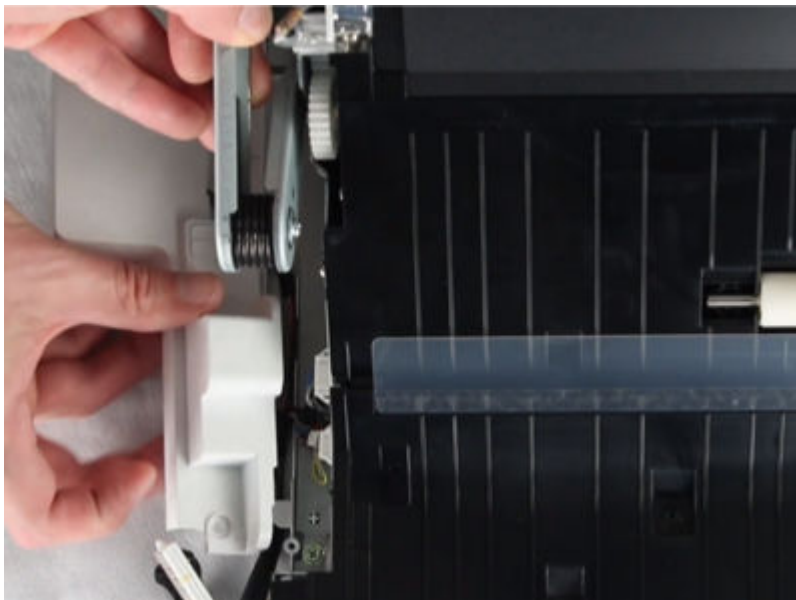
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-405 Remove two screws



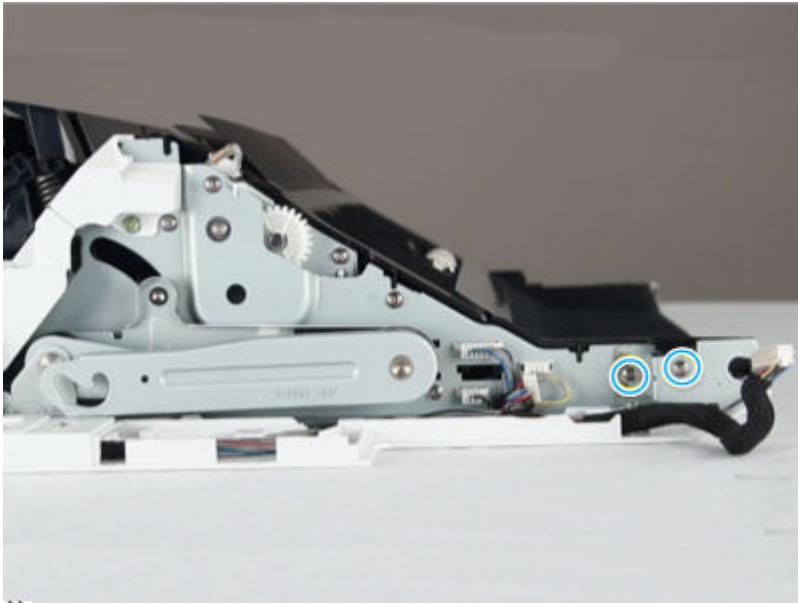
3. Remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 6-406 Remove the cover



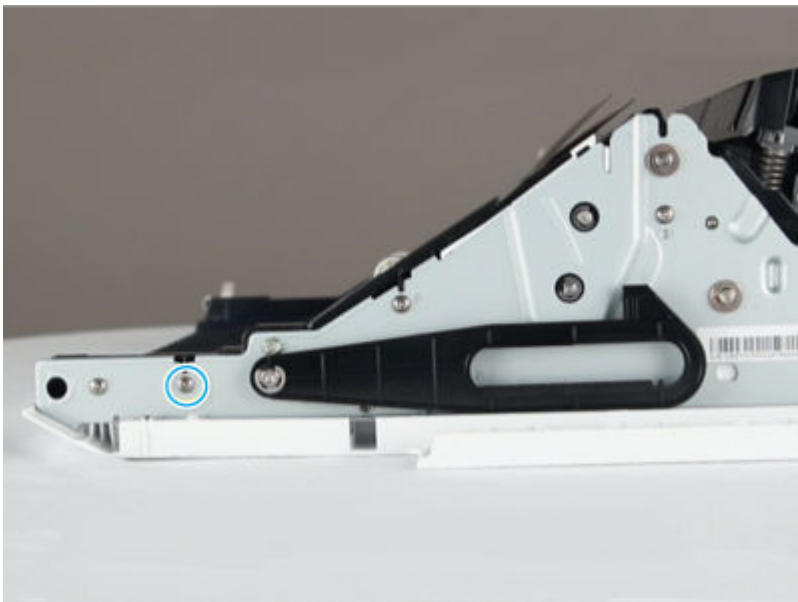
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-407 Remove two screws



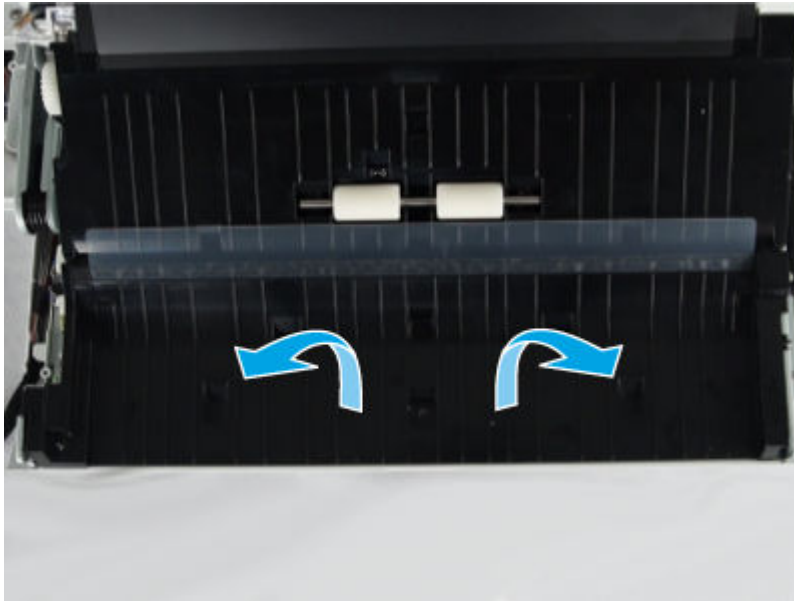
5. Remove one screw (on the other side of the door).

Figure 6-408 Remove one screw



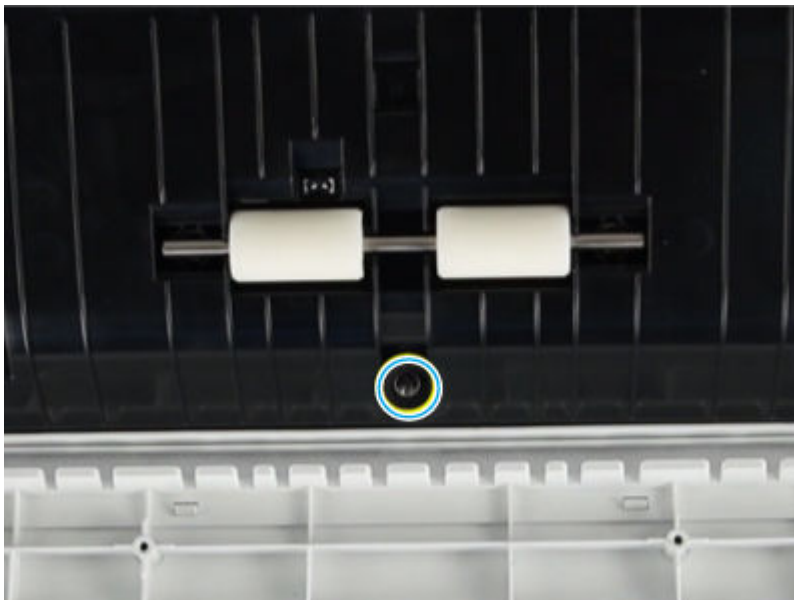
6. Remove the feed guide take-away lower.

Figure 6-409 Remove the take-away lower



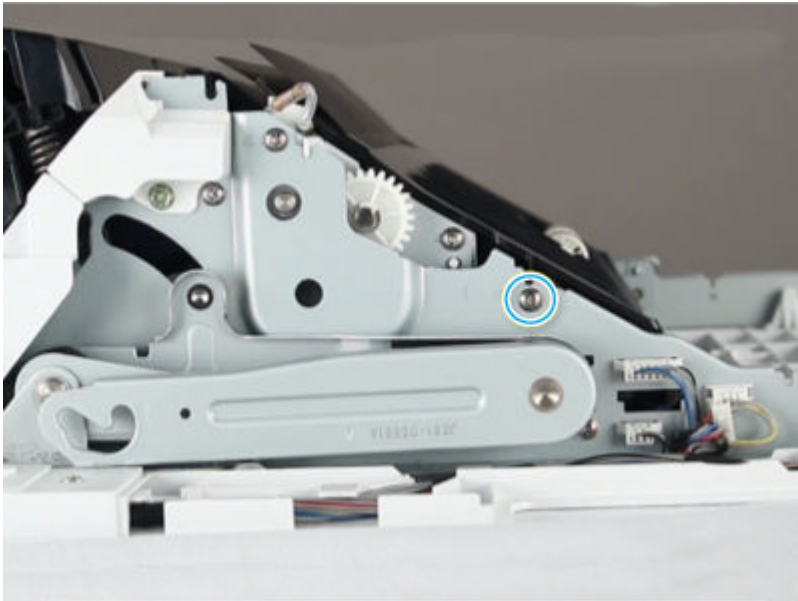
7. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-410 Remove one screw



8. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-411 Remove one screw



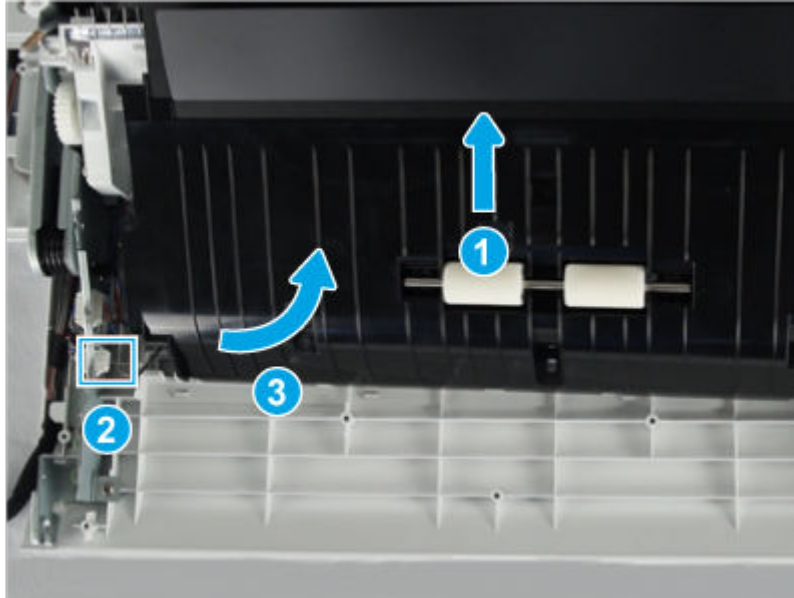
9. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-412 Remove one screw



10. Do the following:
 - a. Lift up the feed guide take-away upper to slightly separate it from the door (callout 1).
 - b. Disconnect one connector (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the take-away assembly from the door (callout 3).

Figure 6-413 Remove the take-away assembly

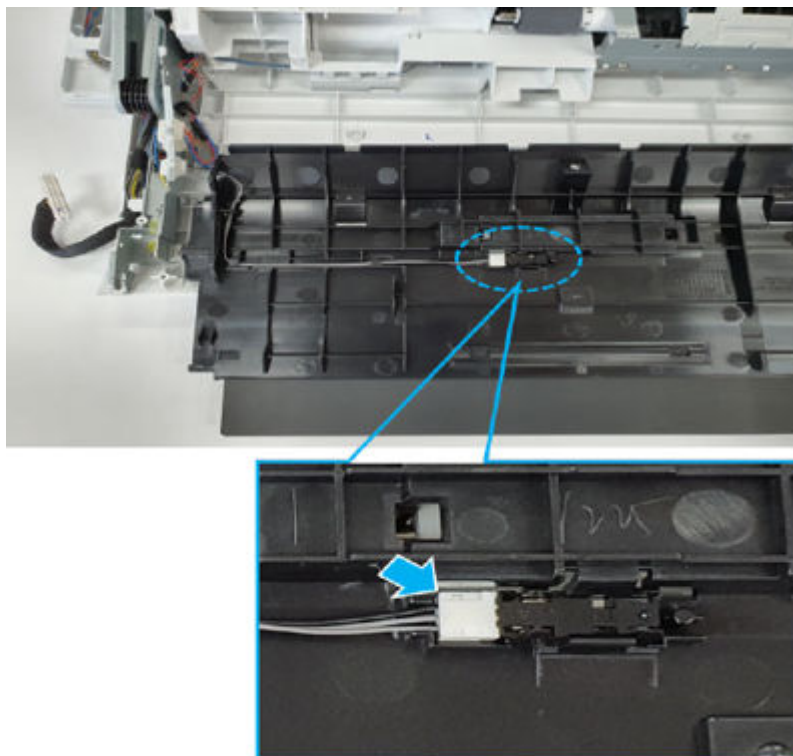


4. Remove the feed 2 sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the feed 2 sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the sensor from the feed guide take away upper.

Figure 6-414 Remove the sensor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Registration unit and loop sensing unit

Learn about registration unit and loop sensing unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Registration unit

Learn about removing and replacing the registration unit.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-54 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK13-60101	Registration unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

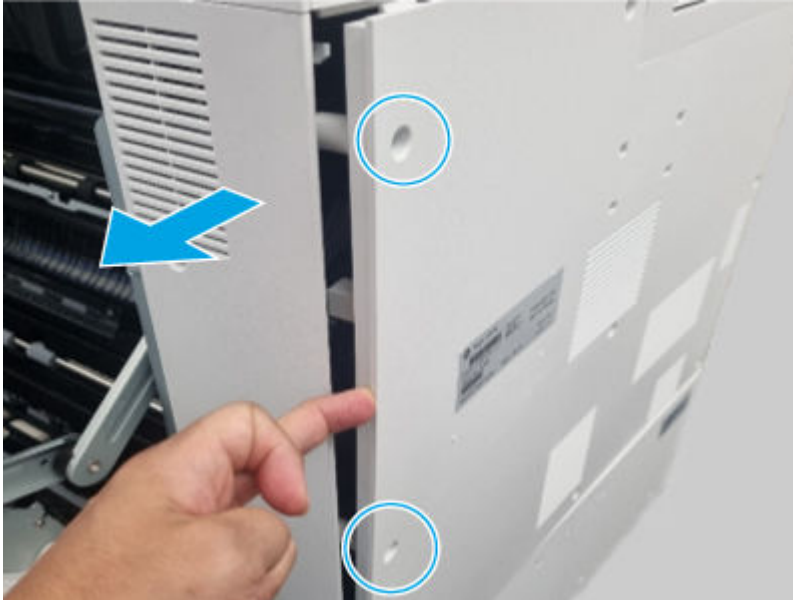
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-415 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-416 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

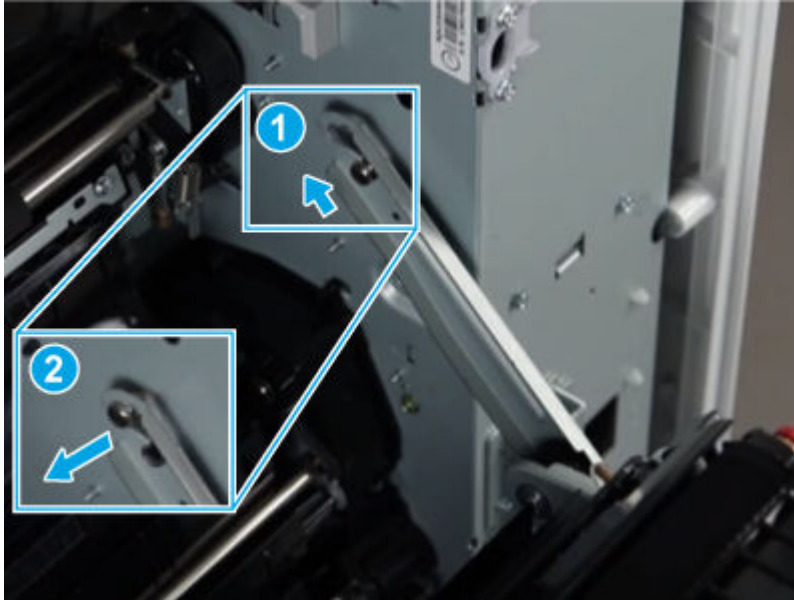
Figure 6-417 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

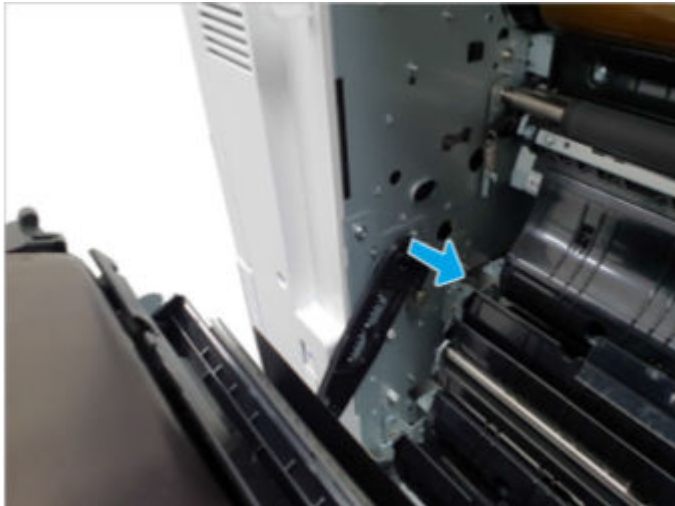
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-418 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-419 Release the link



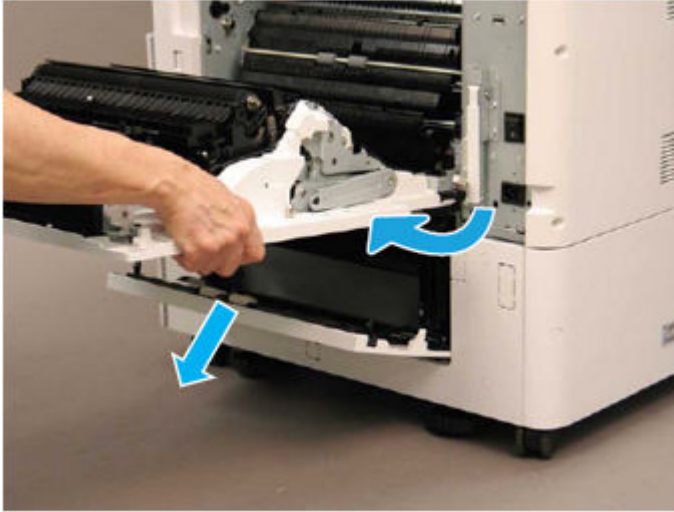
4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-420 Remove the door



3. Remove the registration unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the registration unit.

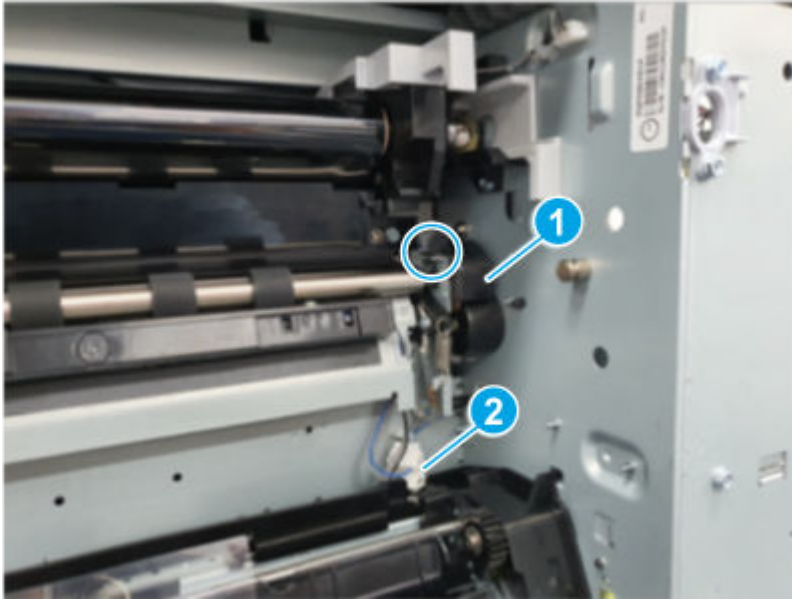
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the paper path guide (callout 1).

Figure 6-421 Remove the guide



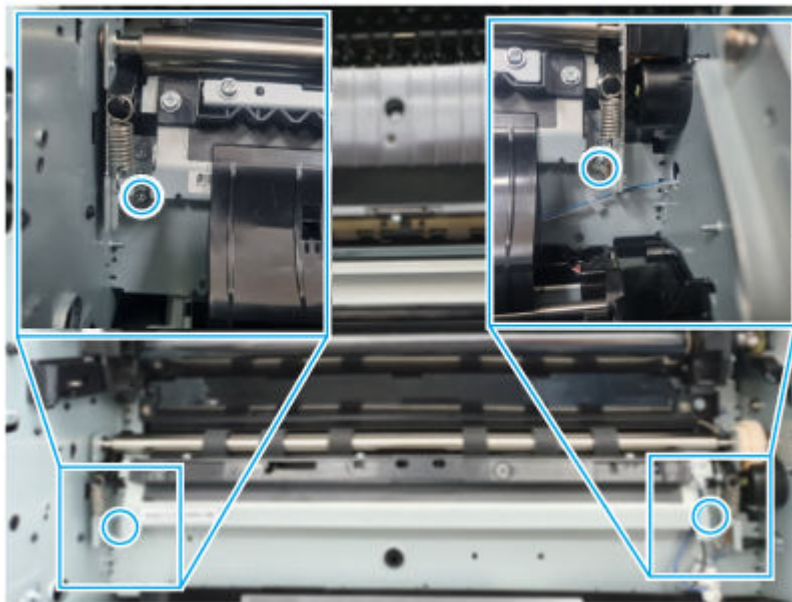
2. Release one tab and remove the gear cover (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 6-422 Disconnect one connector



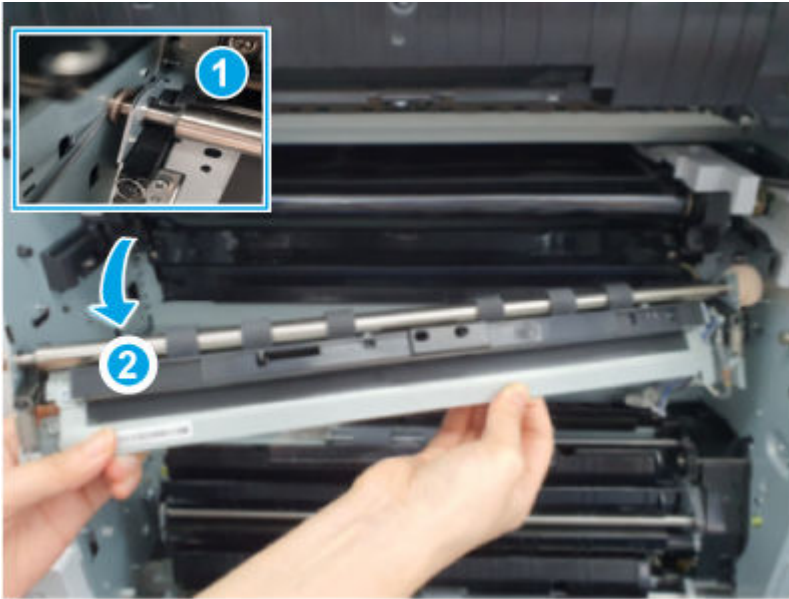
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-423 Remove two screws



4. Release the left side of the registration unit, and then rotate it away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-424 Remove the unit



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Registration sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the registration sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the registration sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-55 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (registration sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

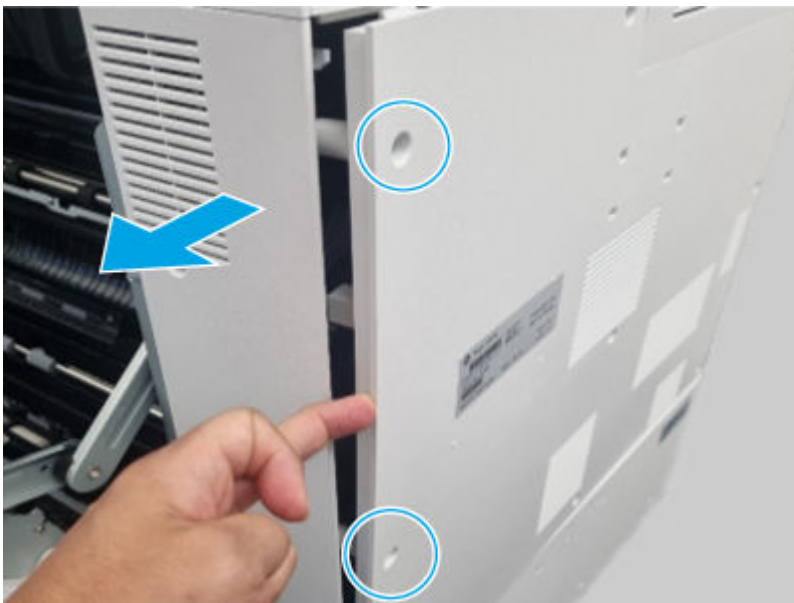
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-425 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-426 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

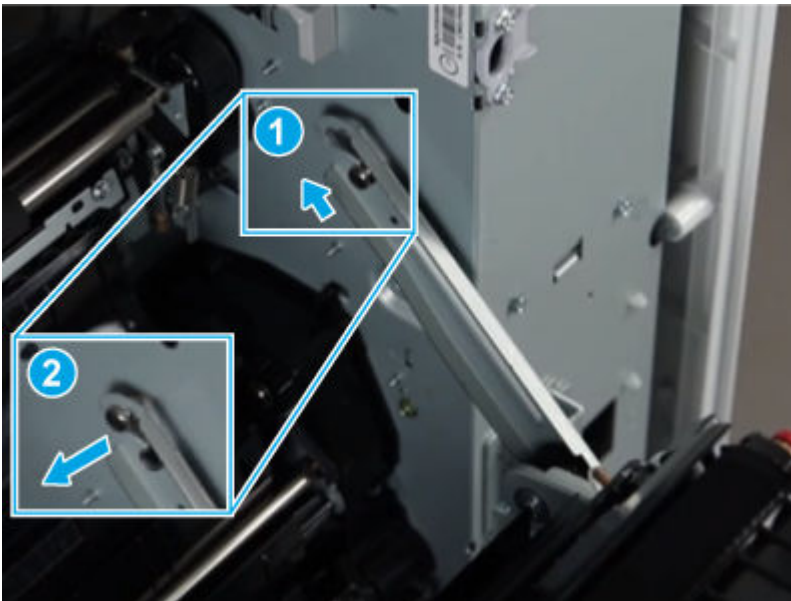
Figure 6-427 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

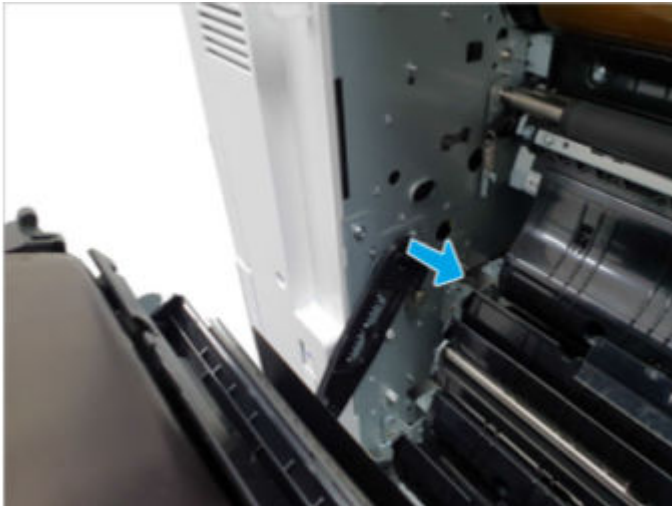
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-428 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-429 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

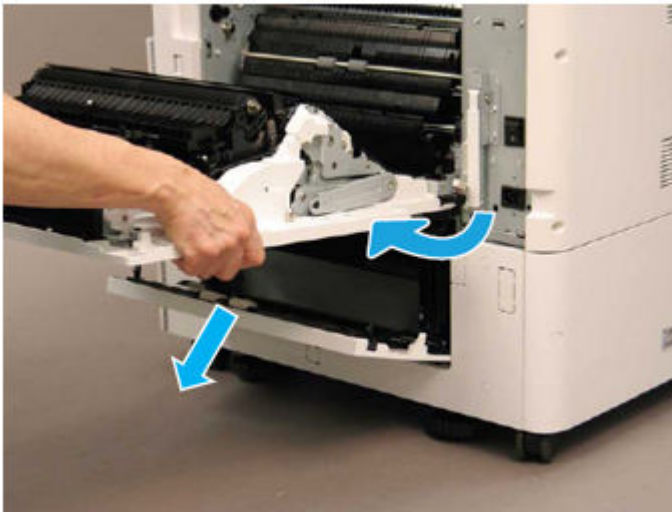


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-430 Remove the door



3. Remove the registration unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the registration unit.

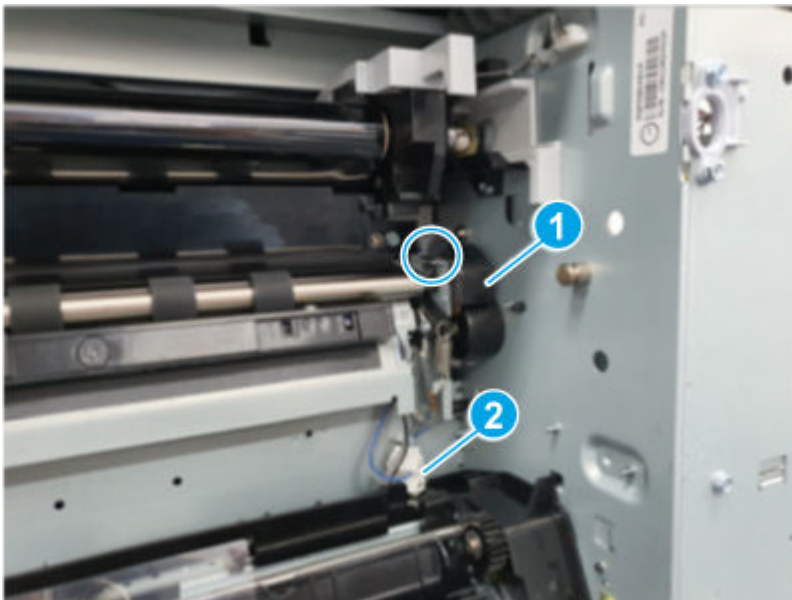
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the paper path guide (callout 1).

Figure 6-431 Remove the guide



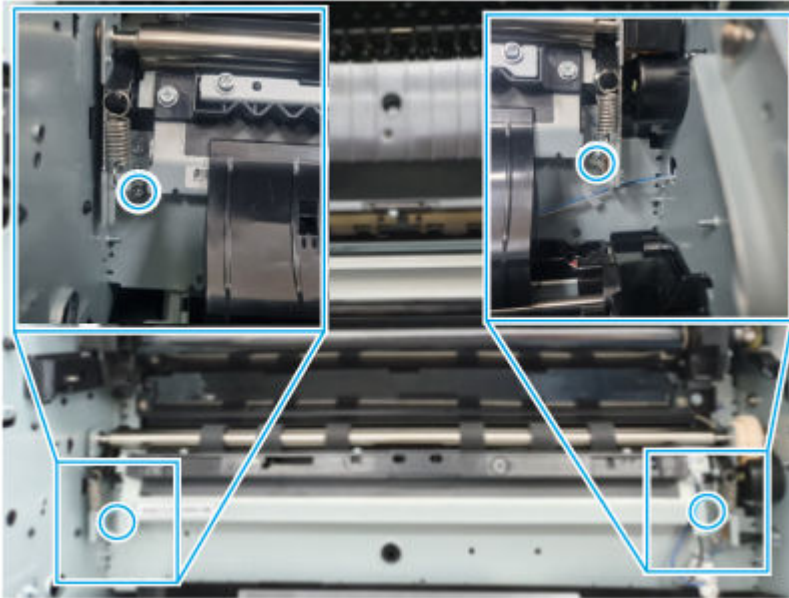
2. Release one tab and remove the gear cover (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 6-432 Disconnect one connector



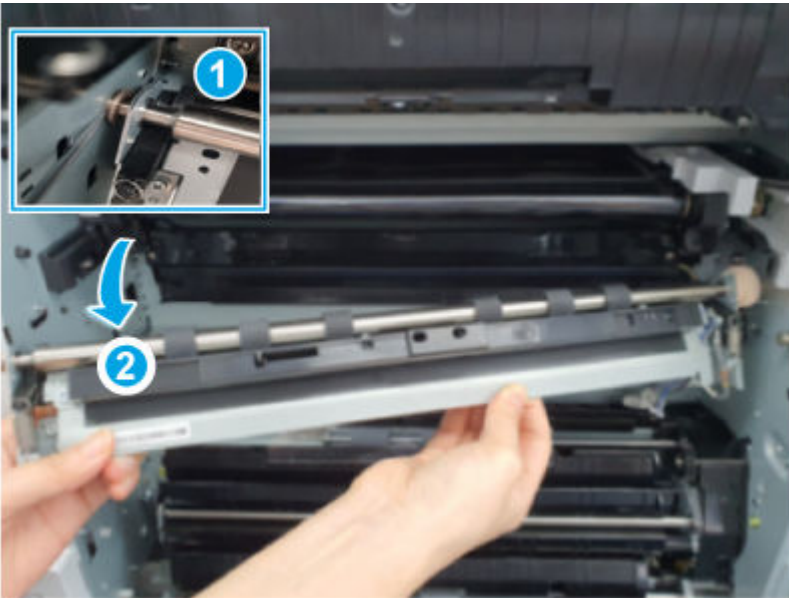
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-433 Remove two screws



4. Release the left side of the registration unit, and then rotate it away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-434 Remove the unit

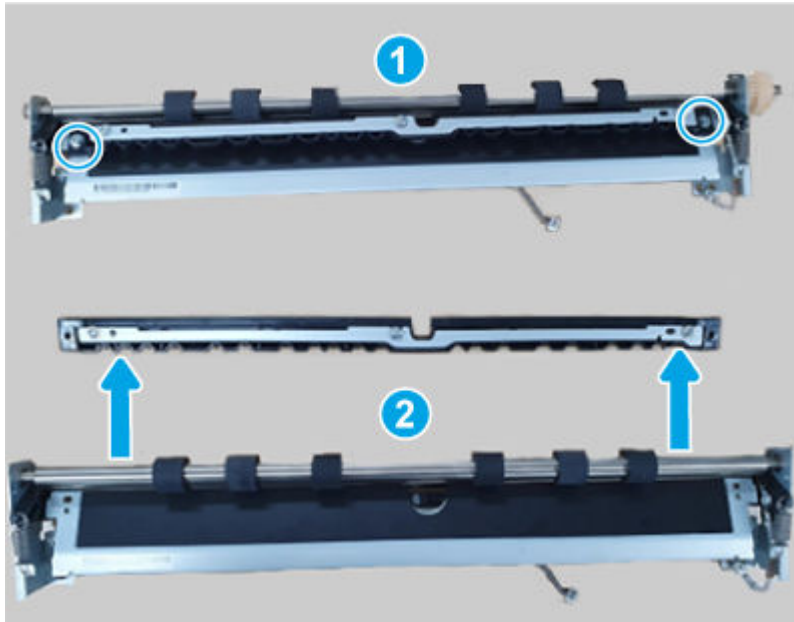


4. Remove the registration sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the registration sensor.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sensor cover (callout 2).

Figure 6-435 Remove the cover



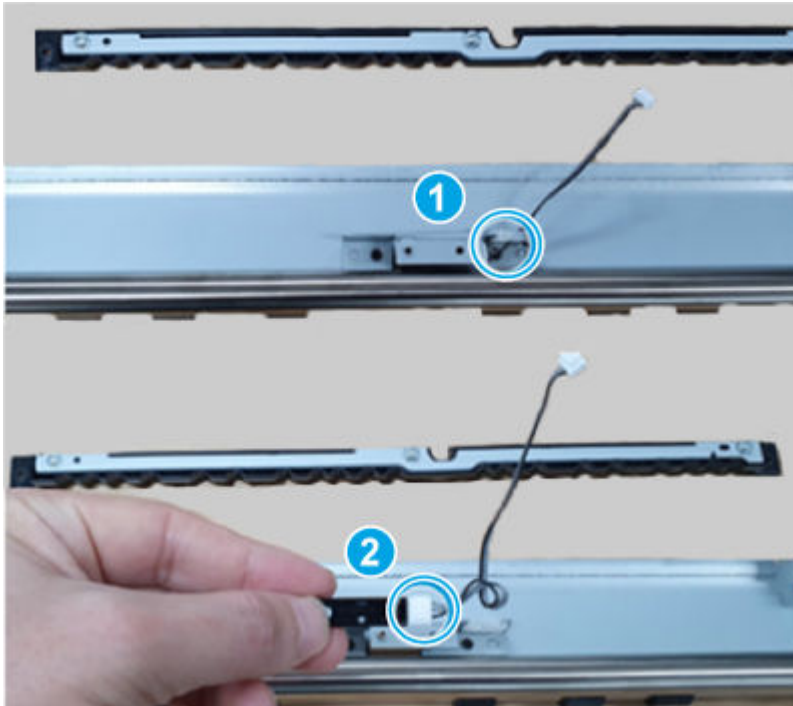
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-436 Remove one screw



3. Turn the registration unit over, release the retainer and wire harness (callout 1), and then remove the sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-437 Remove the sensor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Registration drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the registration drive assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the registration drive assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-56 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01665A	Registration drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

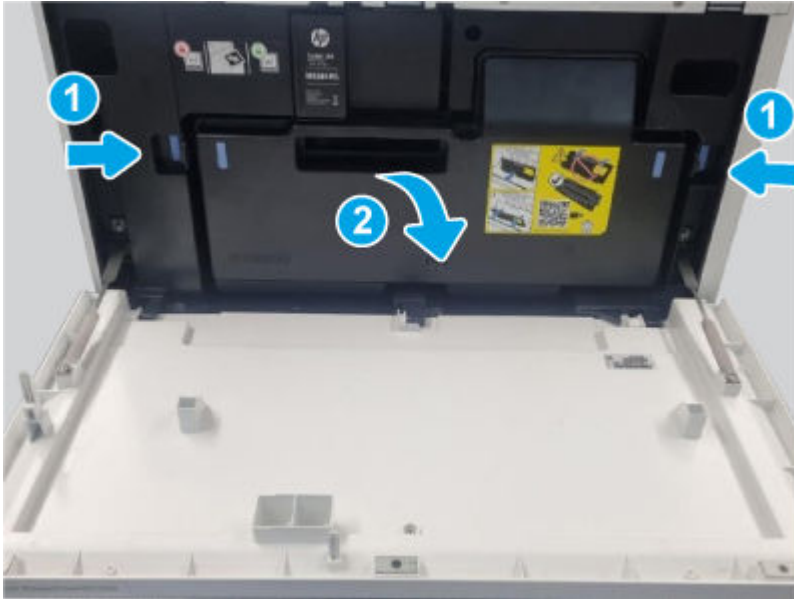
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-438 Remove the TCU

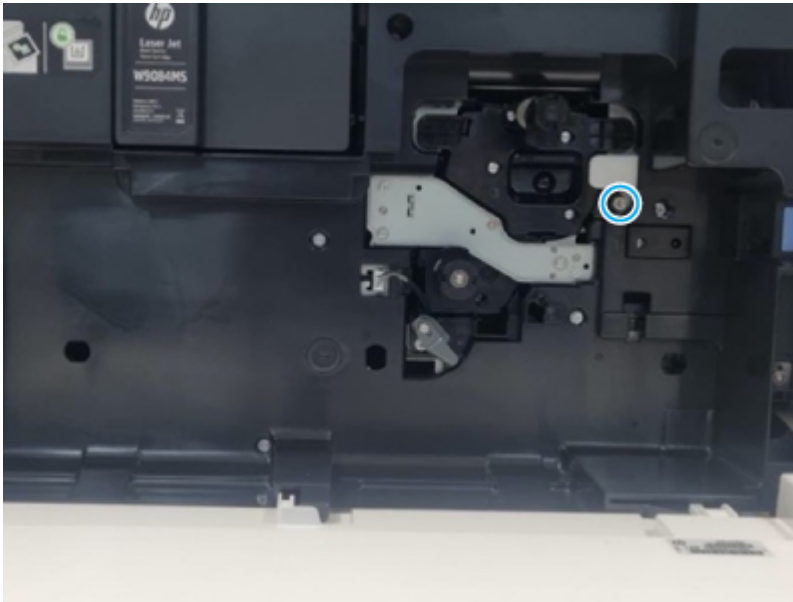


2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

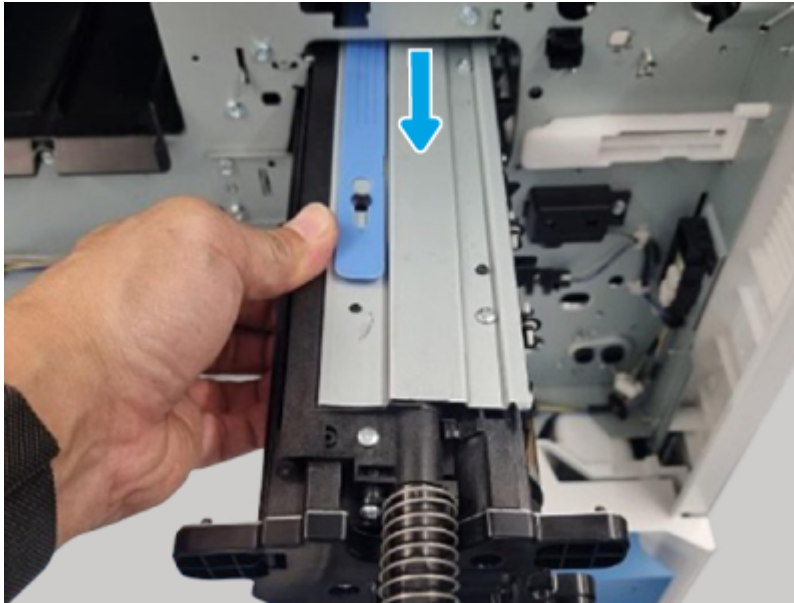
1. Open the right door.
2. At the front of the printer, remove one screw.

Figure 6-439 Remove one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-440 Remove the unit

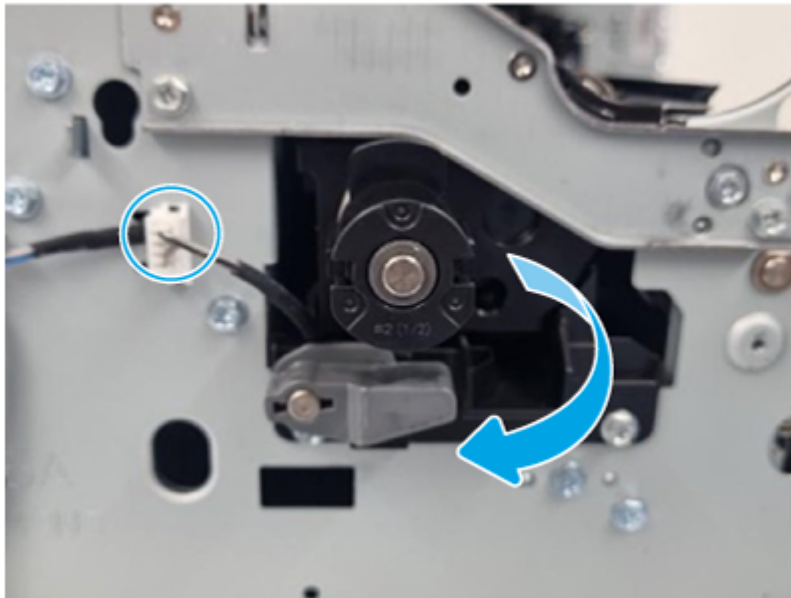


3. Remove the black developer unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black developer unit.

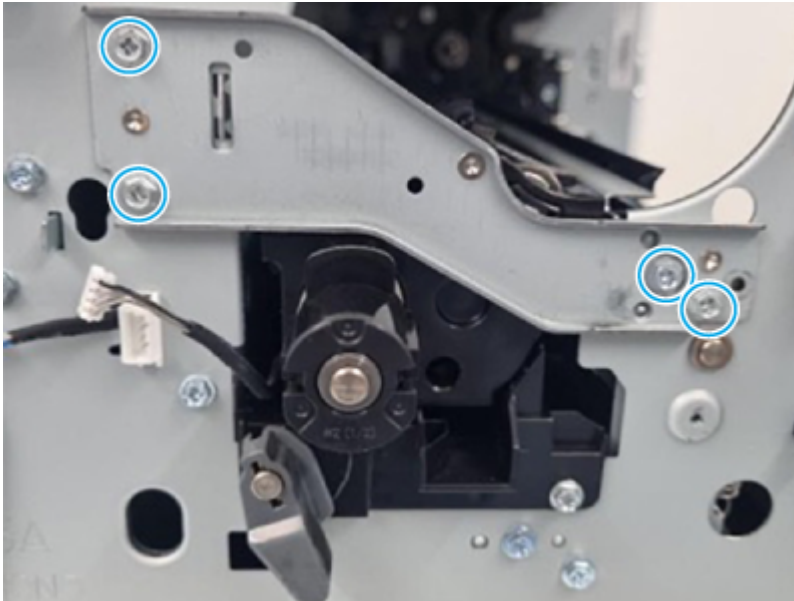
1. Release the lever and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-441 Release the lever and disconnect the connector



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-442 Remove four screws



3. Pull the developer unit out of the printer.



NOTE: If the developer unit is empty, use the steps included in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step) to fill or refill the developer powder.

During removal and installation, do not grab the unit by the lever. Doing so can result in a toner spill.

Figure 6-443 Do not grab lever

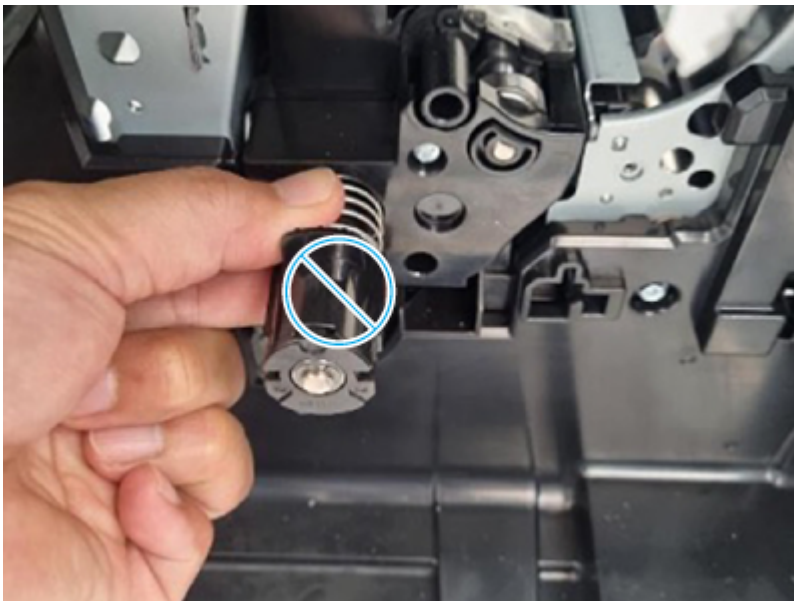
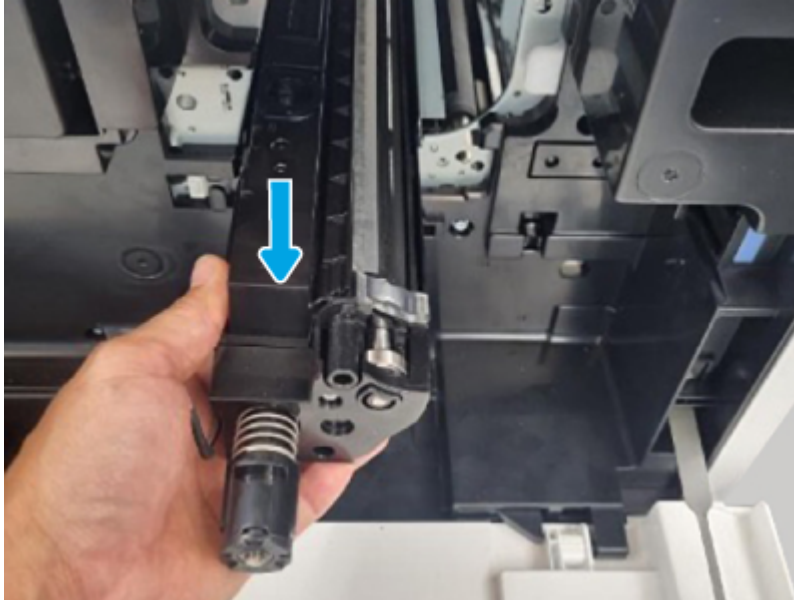


Figure 6-444 Remove the unit

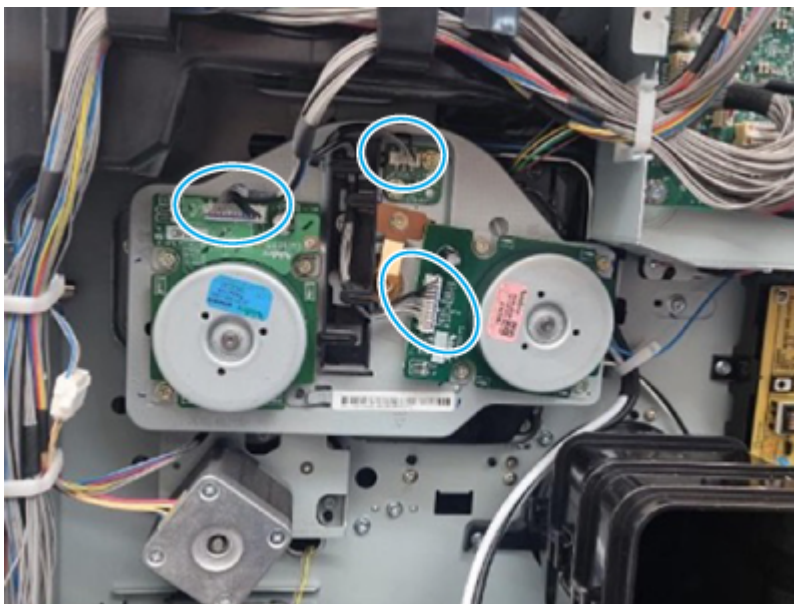


4. Remove the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly.

1. Disconnect three connectors.

Figure 6-445 Disconnect three connectors



2. Remove three screws, and then remove the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly.


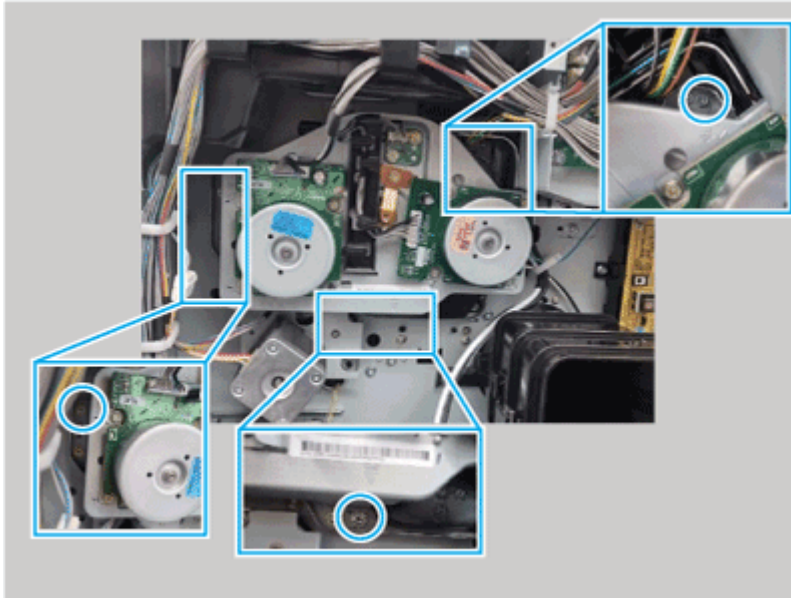
 **NOTE:** Remove the three silver screws (not the gold screws) shown below.

Figure 6-446 Remove three screws

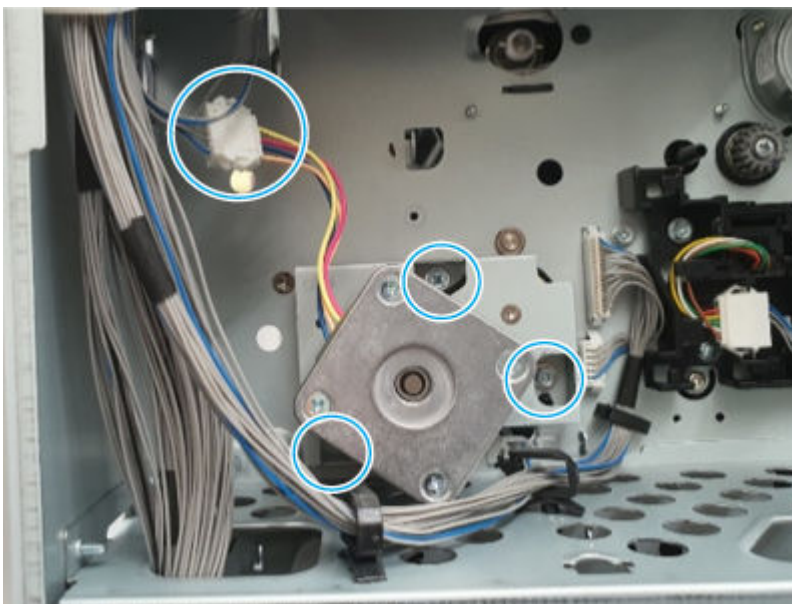


5. Remove the registration drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the registration drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the registration drive assembly.


Figure 6-447 Remove the assembly





6. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Registration motor

Learn about removing and replacing the registration motor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the registration motor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-57 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00189A	Drive-motor step (registration motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

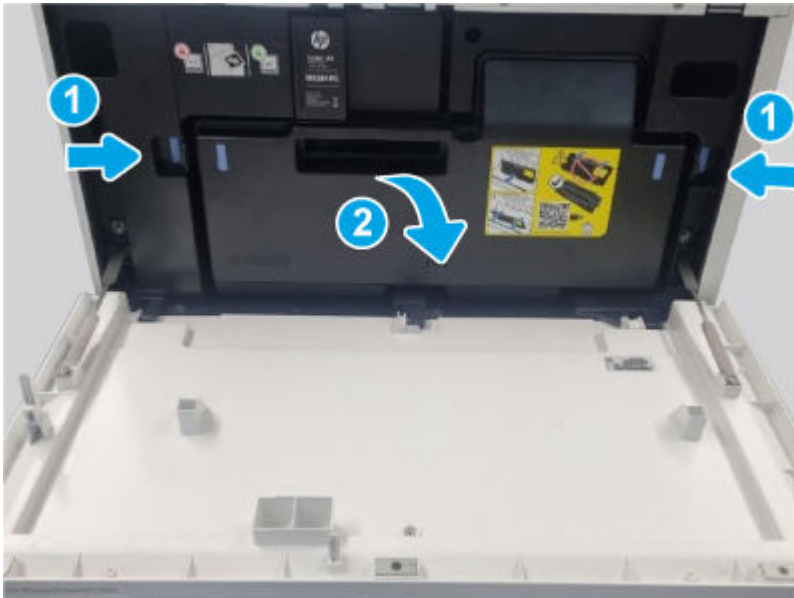
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-448 Remove the TCU



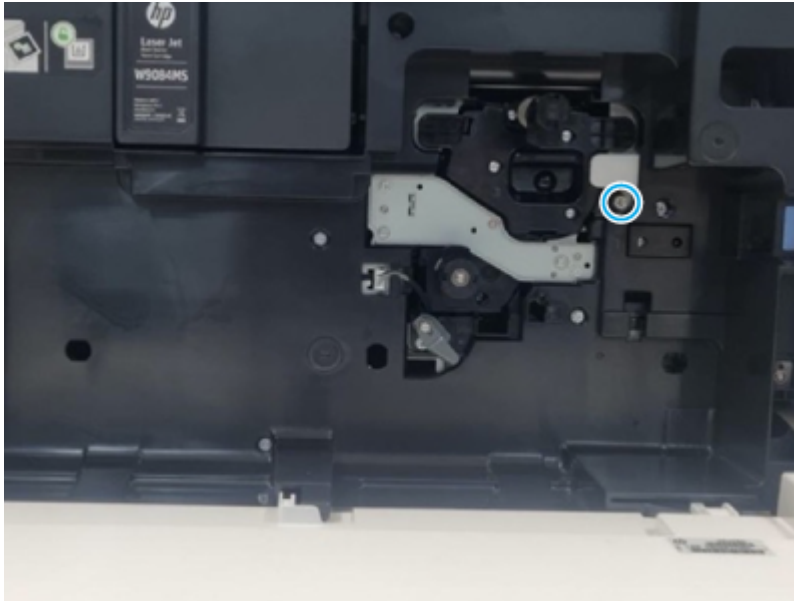
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

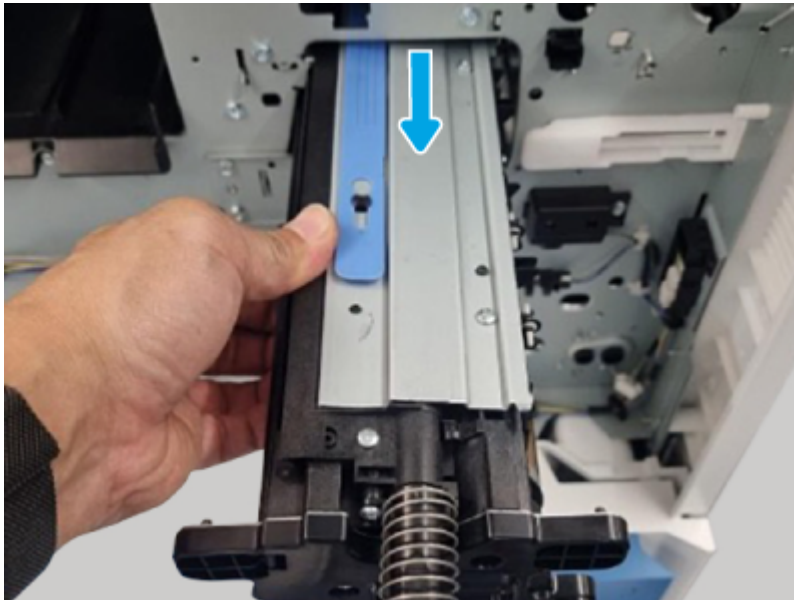
2. At the front of the printer, remove one screw.

Figure 6-449 Remove one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-450 Remove the unit

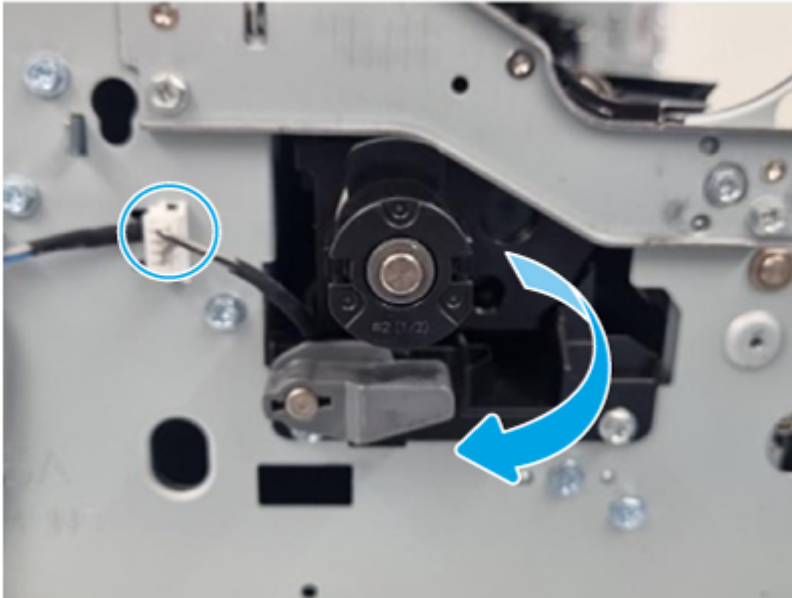


3. Remove the black developer unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black developer unit.

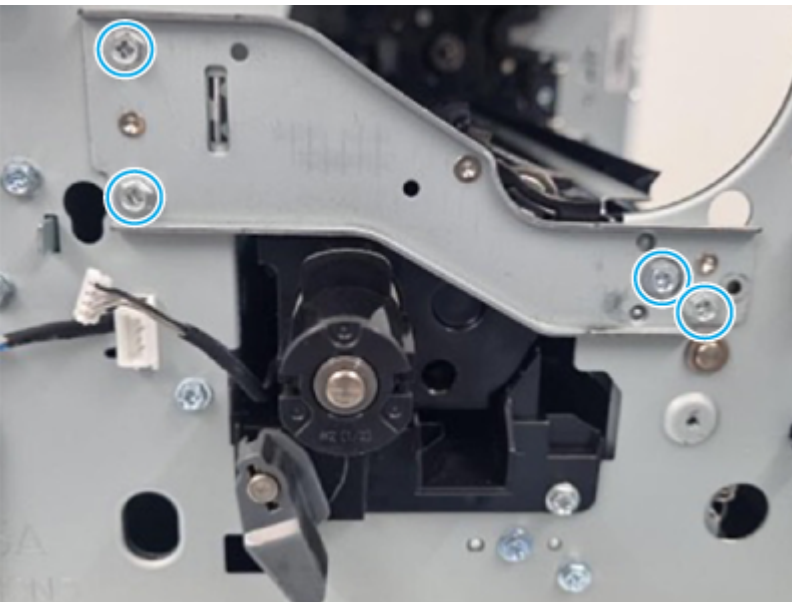
1. Release the lever and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-451 Release the lever and disconnect the connector



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-452 Remove four screws



3. Pull the developer unit out of the printer.



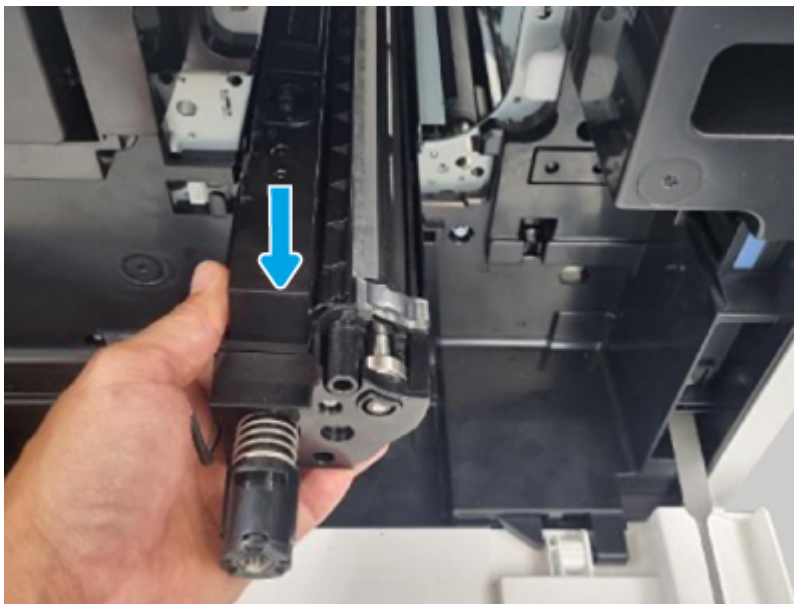
NOTE: If the developer unit is empty, use the steps included in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step) to fill or refill the developer powder.

During removal and installation, do not grab the unit by the lever. Doing so can result in a toner spill.

Figure 6-453 Do not grab lever



Figure 6-454 Remove the unit

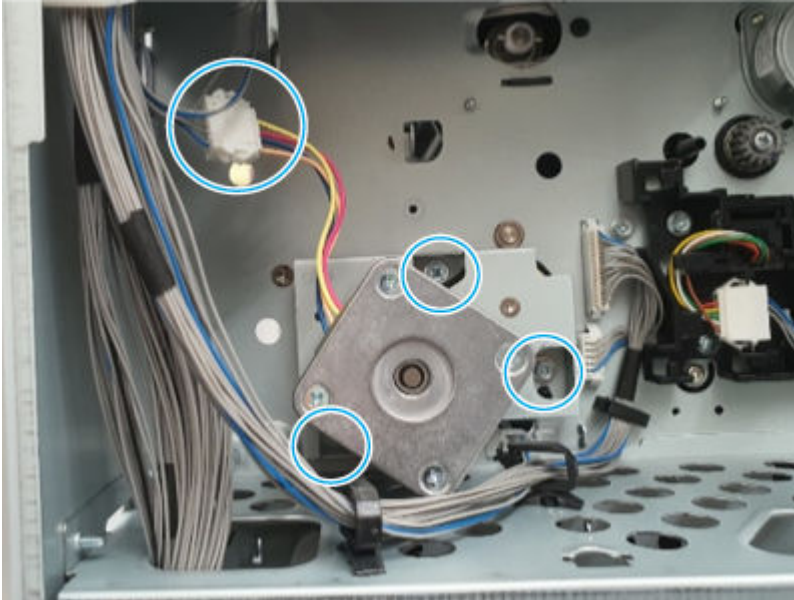


4. Remove the registration drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the registration drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the registration drive assembly.

Figure 6-455 Remove the assembly

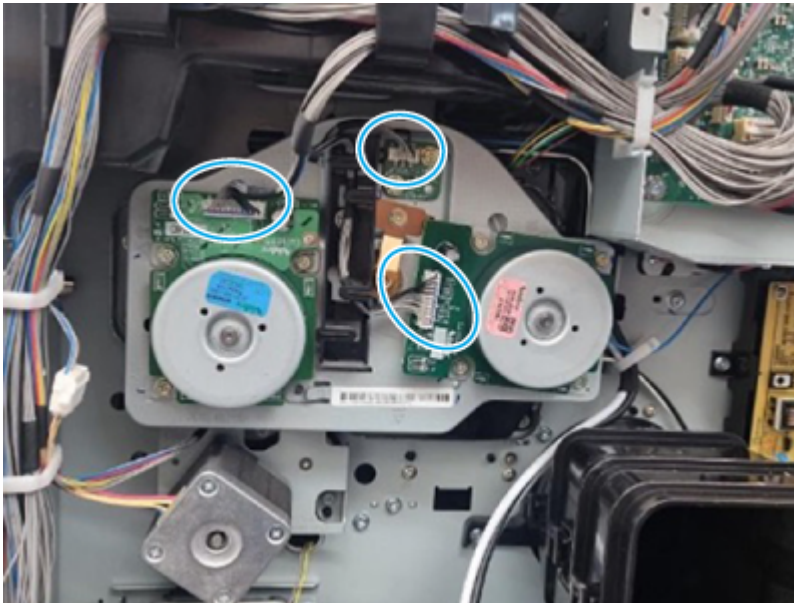


5. Remove the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly.

1. Disconnect three connectors.

Figure 6-456 Disconnect three connectors



2. Remove three screws, and then remove the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly.


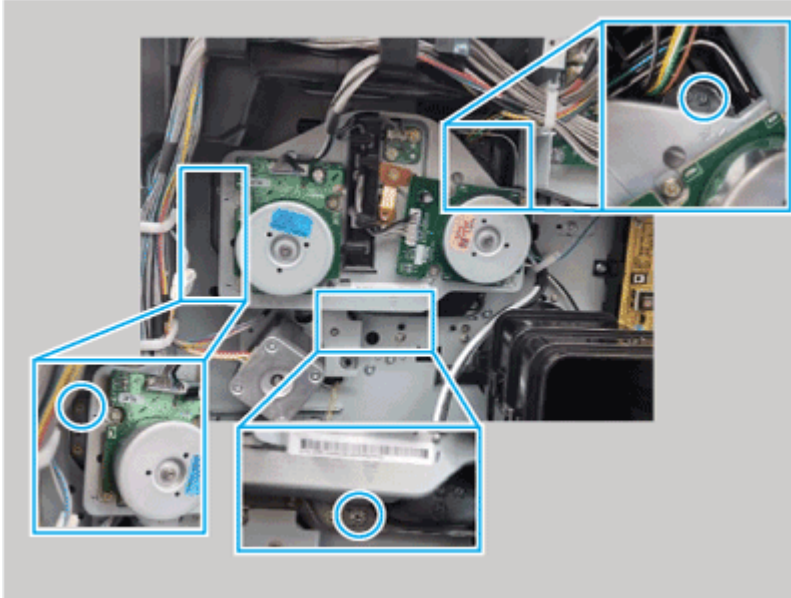
 **NOTE:** Remove the three silver screws (not the gold screws) shown below.

Figure 6-457 Remove three screws

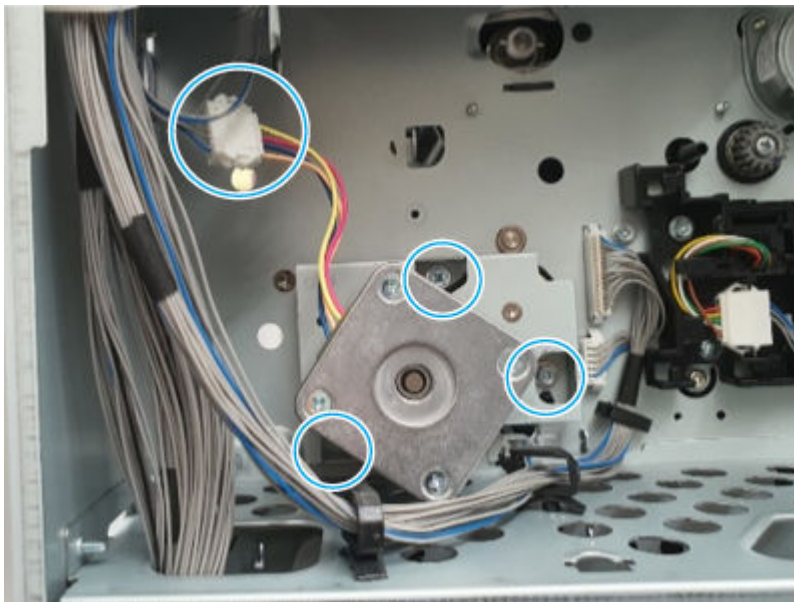


6. Remove the registration drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the registration drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the registration drive assembly.

Figure 6-458 Remove the assembly

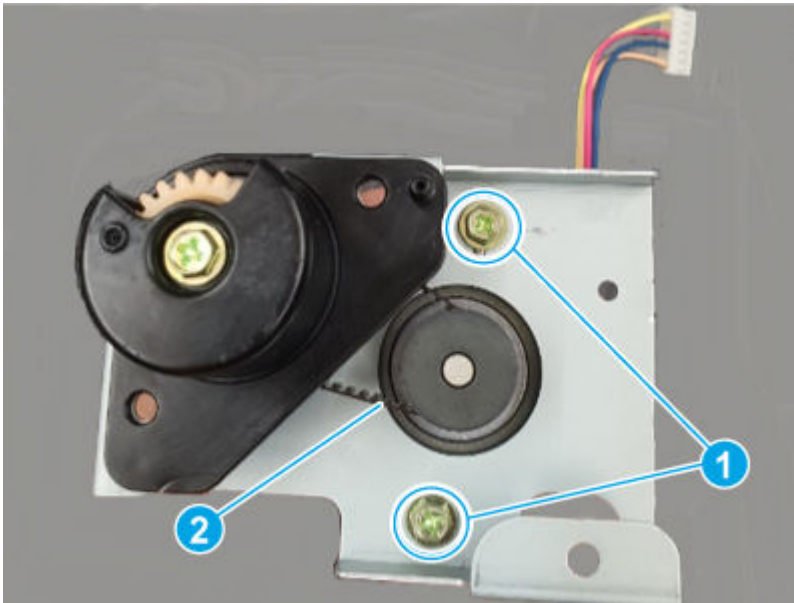


7. Remove the registration motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the registration motor.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), disengage the drive belt (callout 2), and then remove the registration motor.


Figure 6-459 Remove the motor



8. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper transfer belt (PBT)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper transfer belt (PTB).



[View a video of removing and replacing the PTB.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-58 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN85-67001	Paper transfer belt (PTB)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

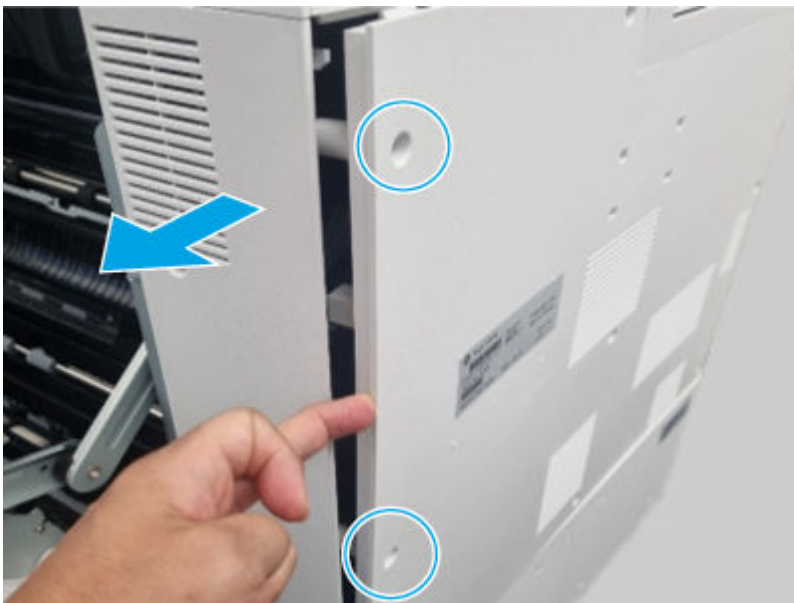
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-460 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-461 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

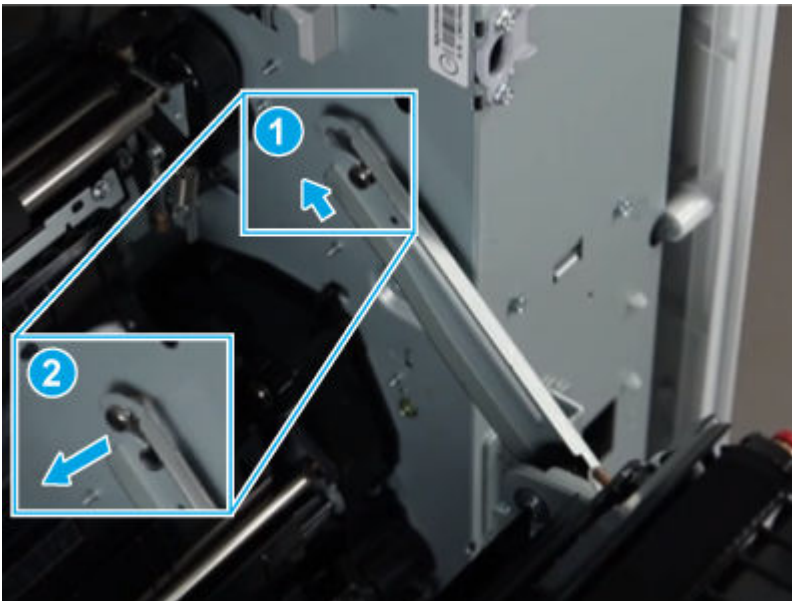
Figure 6-462 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

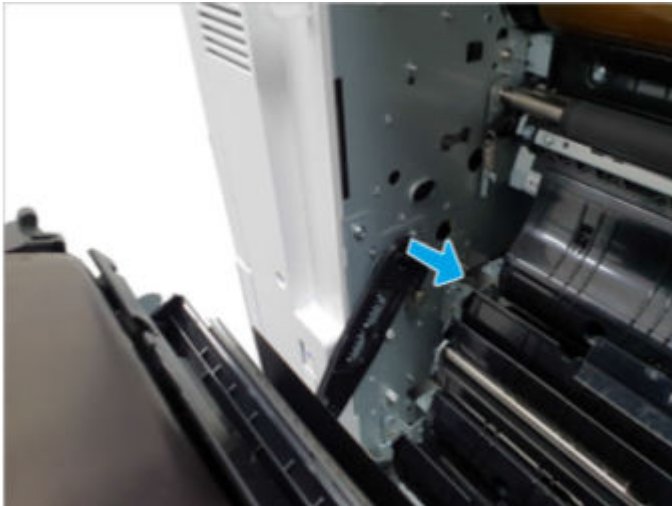
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-463 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-464 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

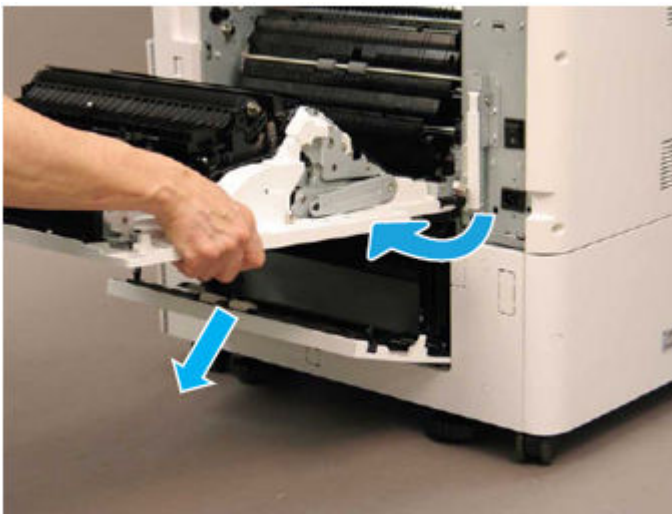


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-465 Remove the door

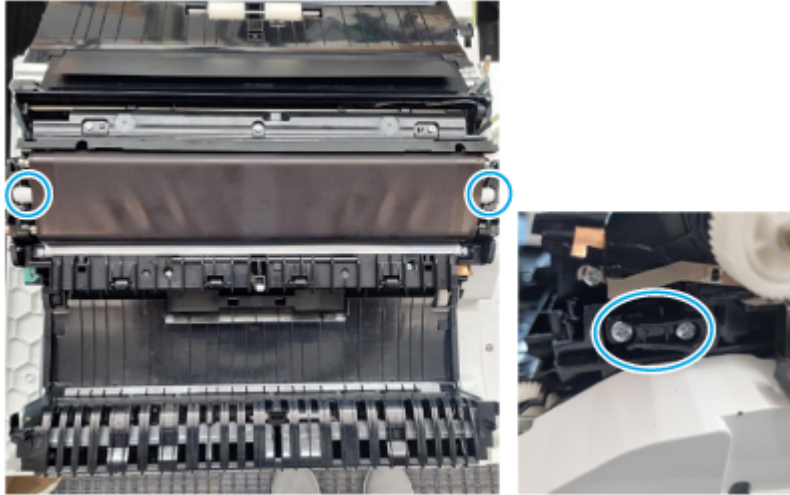


3. Remove the paper transfer belt (PTB)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the PTB.

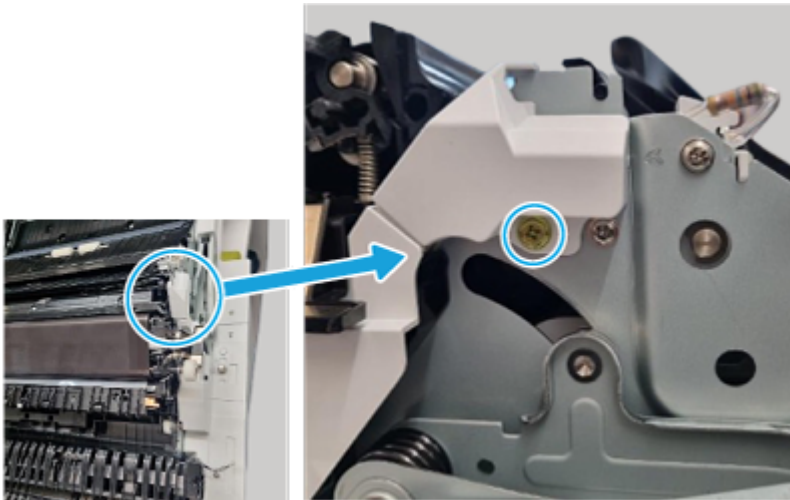
1. Remove four screws (two screws on each side).

Figure 6-466 Remove four screws



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-467 Remove the cover



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the PTB.

Figure 6-468 Disconnect one connector



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Loop sensor 1

Learn about removing and replacing the loop sensor 1.



[View a video of removing and replacing the loop sensor 1.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-59 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (loop sensor 1)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

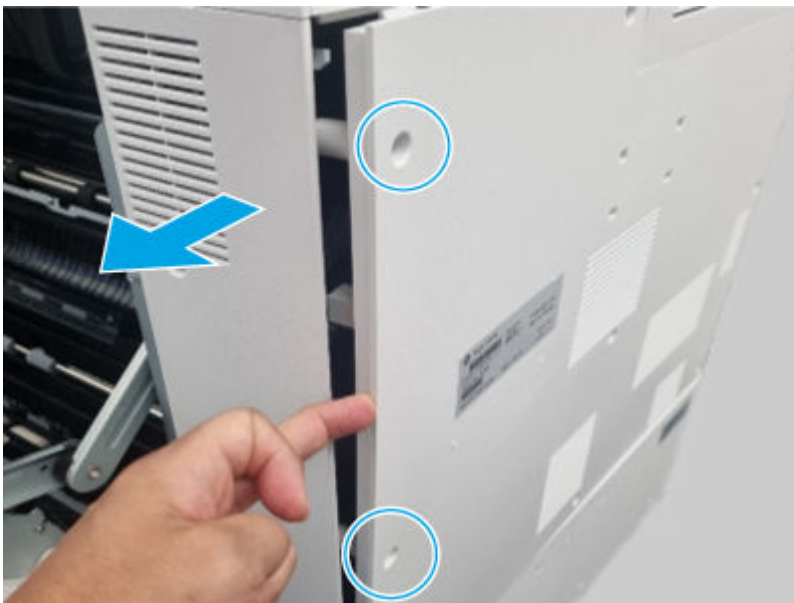
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-469 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-470 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

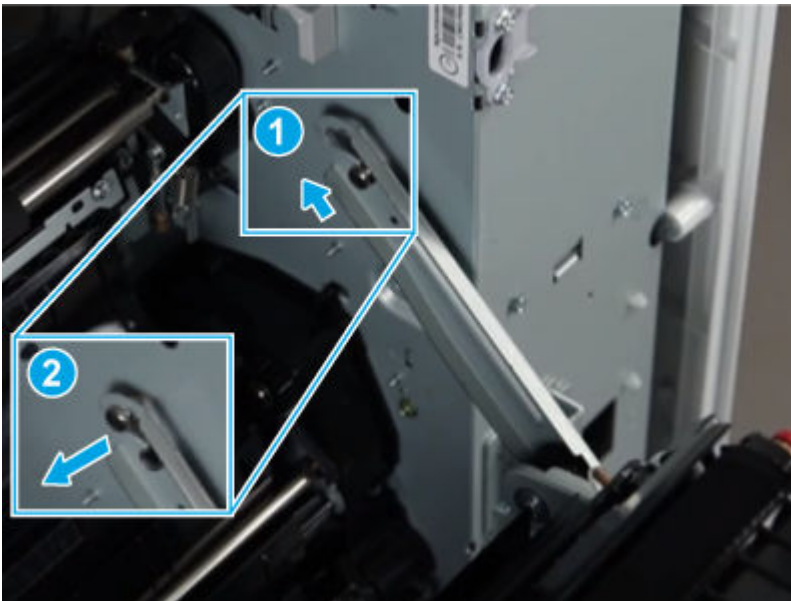
Figure 6-471 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

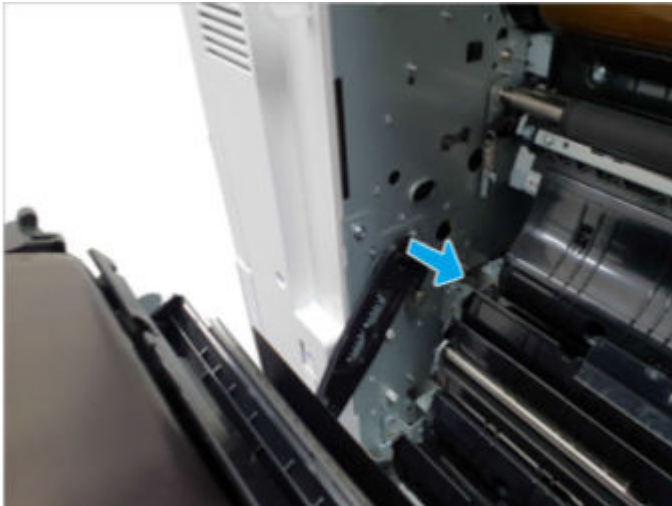
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-472 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-473 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

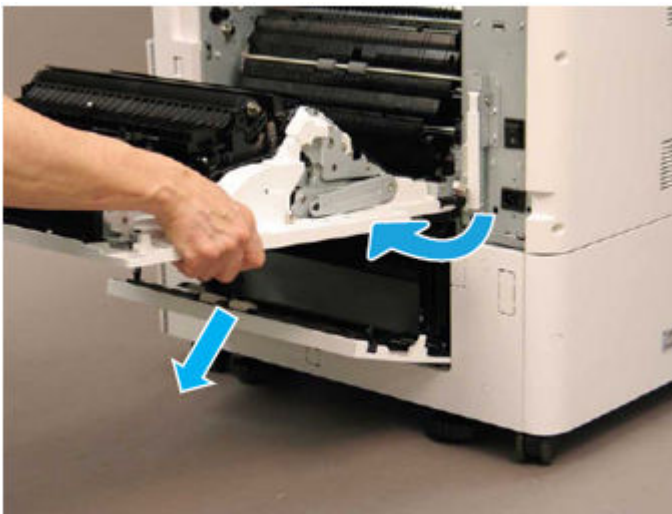


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-474 Remove the door

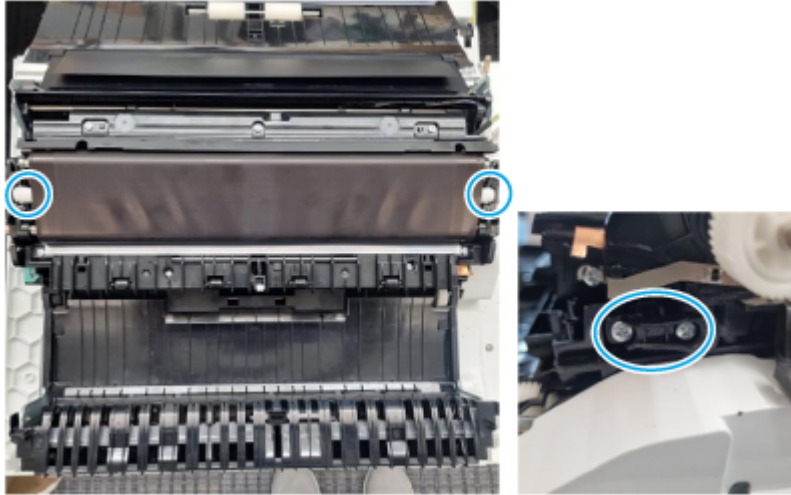


3. Remove the paper transfer belt (PTB)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the PTB.

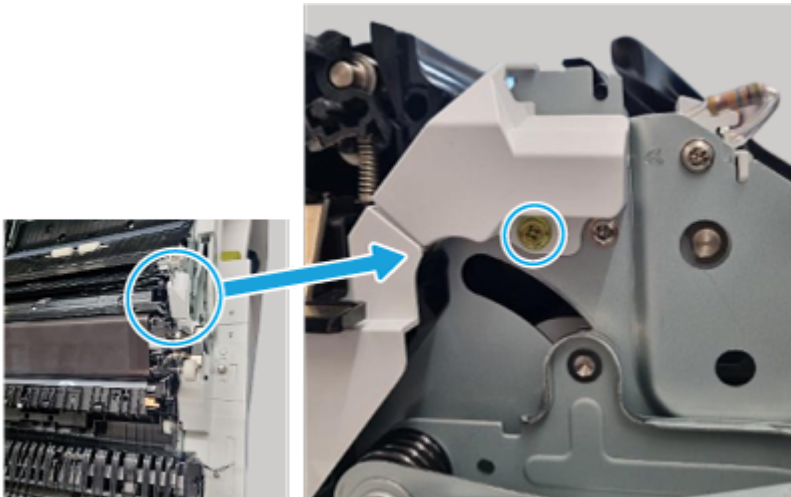
1. Remove four screws (two screws on each side).

Figure 6-475 Remove four screws



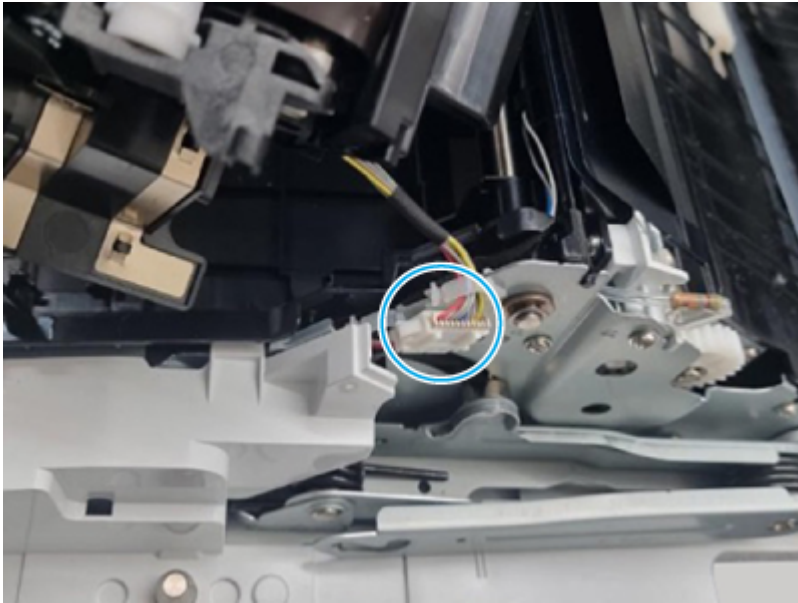
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-476 Remove the cover



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the PTB.

Figure 6-477 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove the loop actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the loop actuator.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-478 Remove four screws

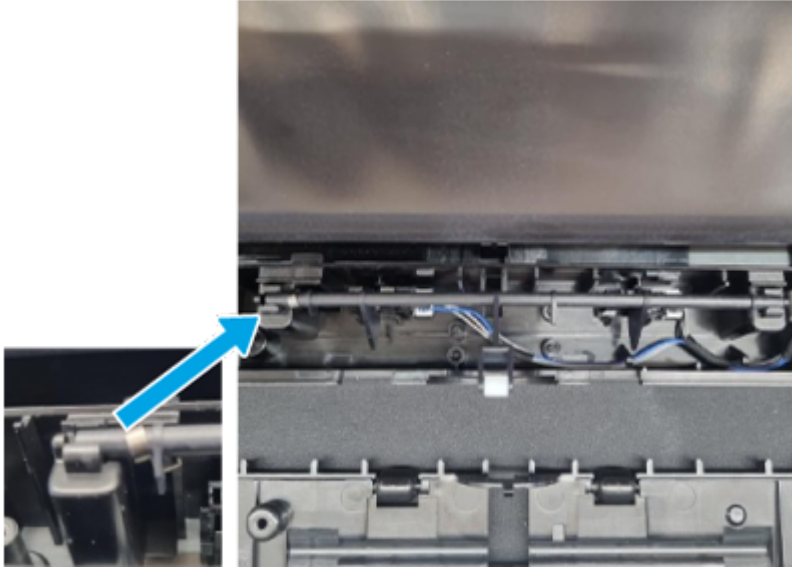


2. Remove the loop actuator.



NOTE: Note the spring position in order to install the actuator correctly.

Figure 6-479 Actuator spring



5. Remove the loop sensor 1

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the loop sensor 1.

1. Locate the sensor inside the cover.

Figure 6-480 Inside the cover

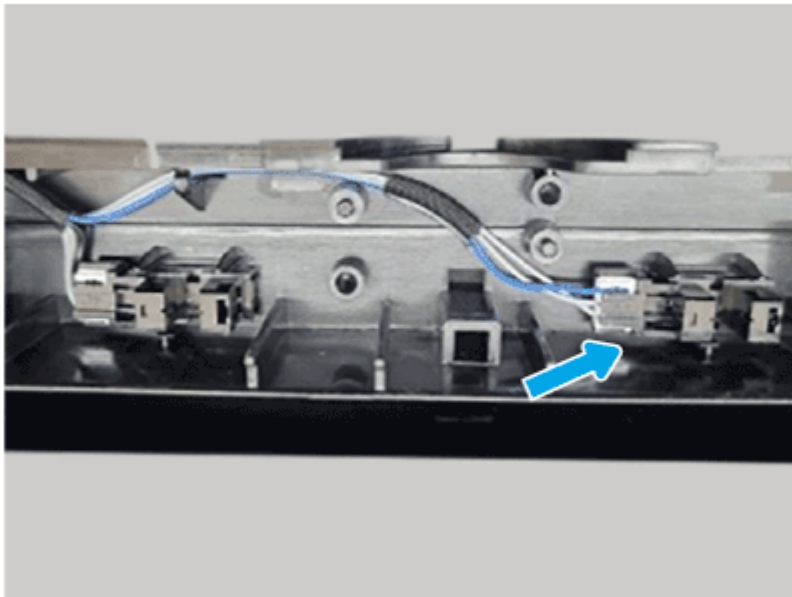
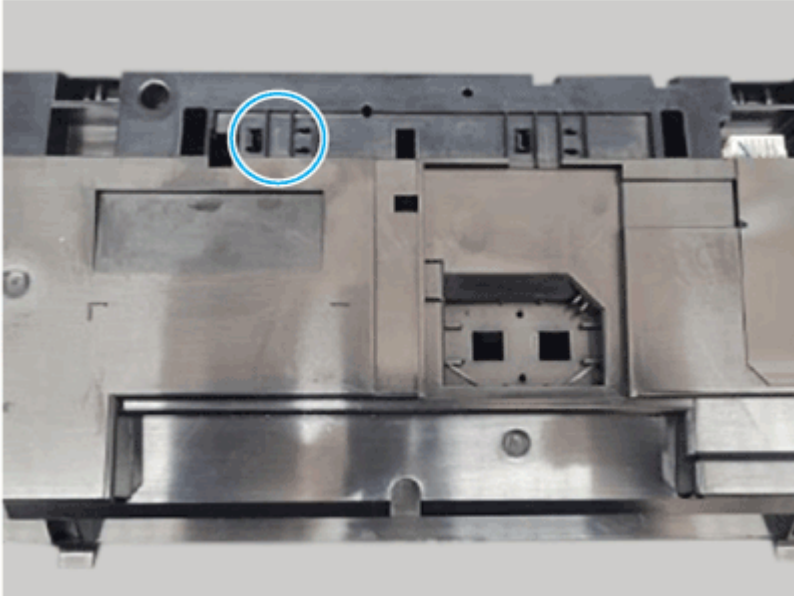
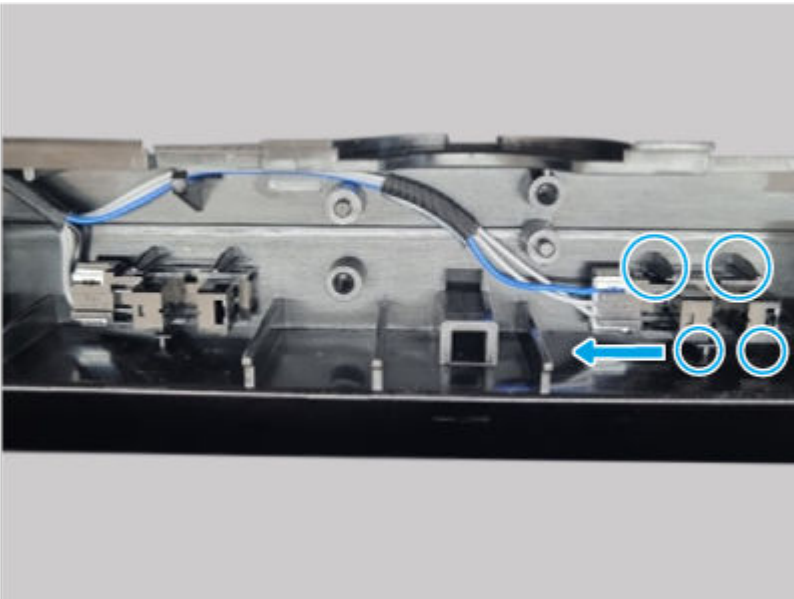


Figure 6-481 Outside the cover



2. To remove a photo sensor, do the following:
 - Release the hooks.
 - Slide the sensor assembly in the direction indicated.
 - Remove the sensor assembly.

Figure 6-482 Release the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Loop sensor 2

Learn about removing and replacing the loop sensor 2.



[View a video of removing and replacing the loop sensor 2.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-60 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (loop sensor 2)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-483 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-484 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

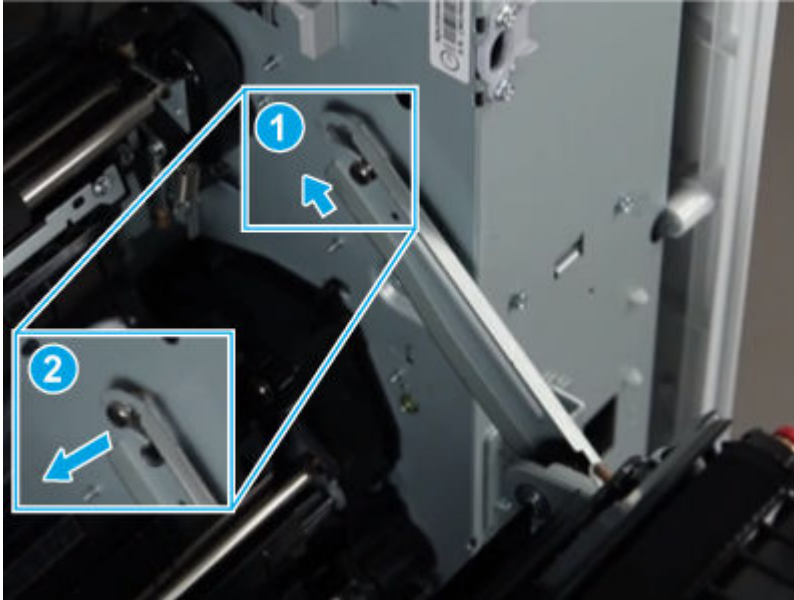
Figure 6-485 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

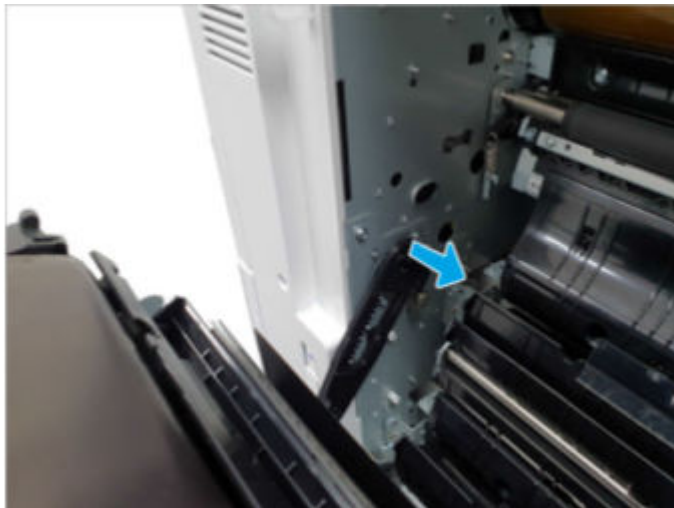
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-486 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-487 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

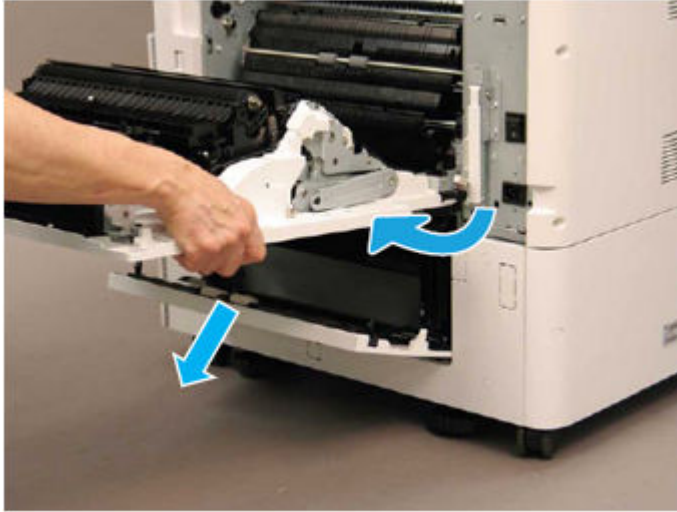


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-488 Remove the door

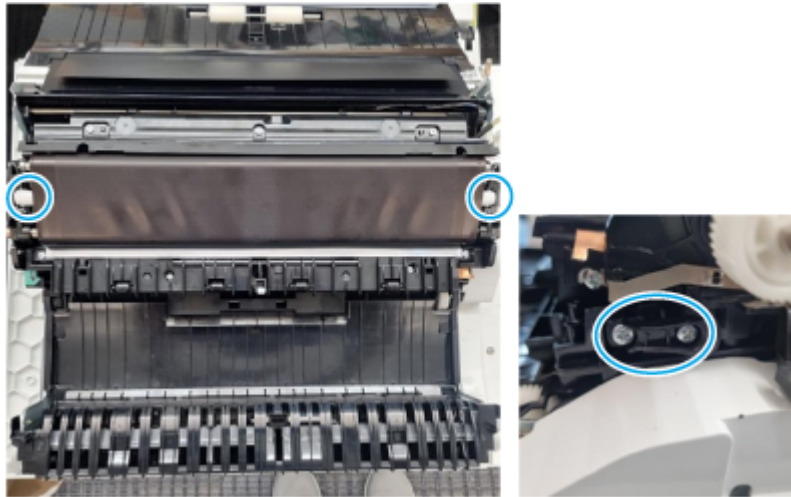


3. Remove the paper transfer belt (PTB)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the PTB.

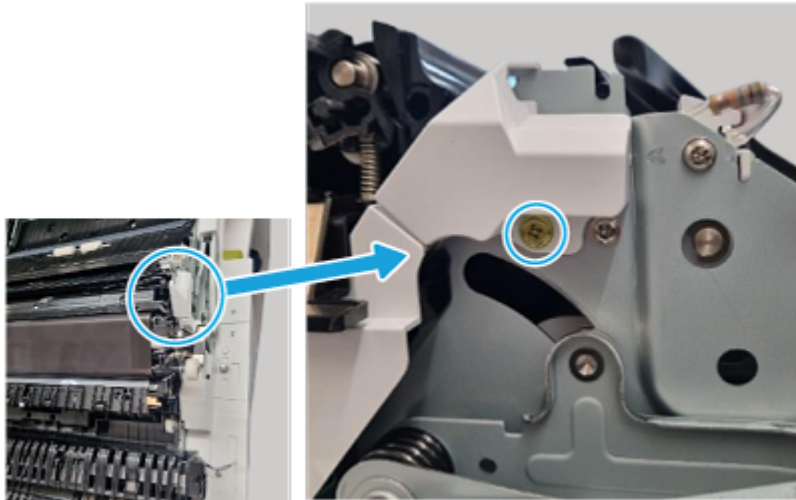
1. Remove four screws (two screws on each side).

Figure 6-489 Remove four screws



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-490 Remove the cover



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the PTB.

Figure 6-491 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove the loop actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the loop actuator.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-492 Remove four screws



2. Remove the loop actuator.


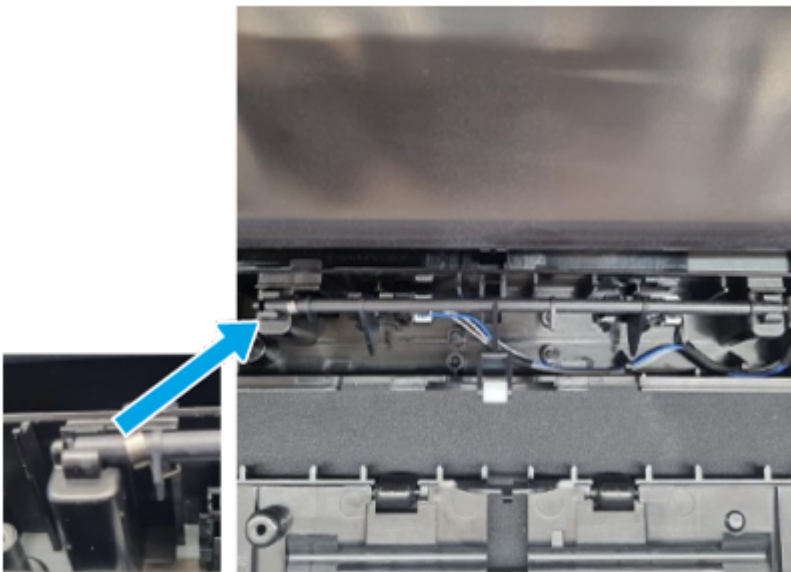
 **NOTE:** Note the spring position in order to install the actuator correctly.

Figure 6-493 Actuator spring



5. Remove the loop sensor 2

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the loop sensor 2.

1. Locate the sensor inside the cover.

Figure 6-494 Inside the cover

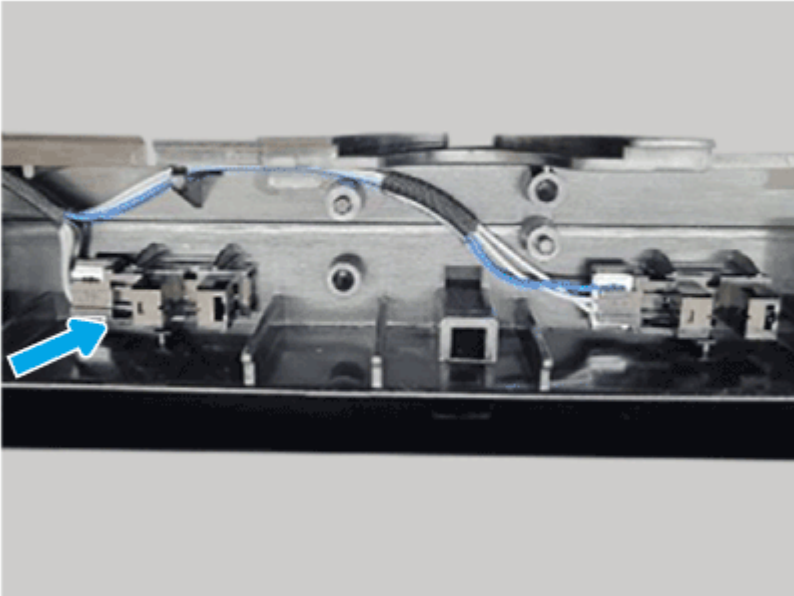
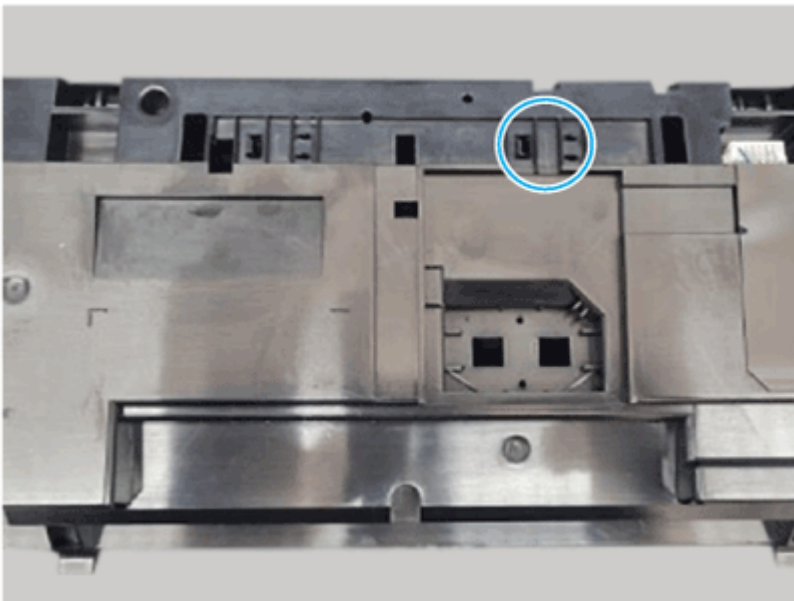
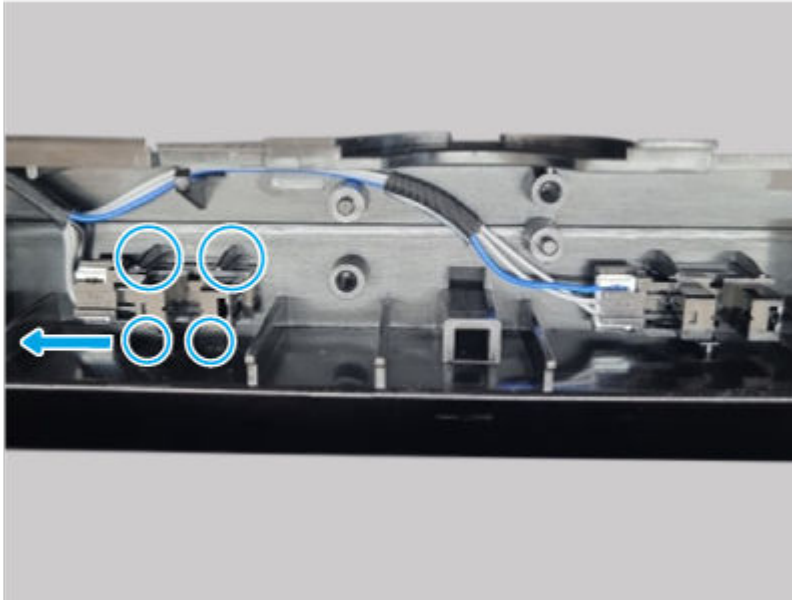


Figure 6-495 Outside the cover



2. To remove a photo sensor, do the following:
 - Release the hooks.
 - Slide the sensor assembly in the direction indicated.
 - Remove the sensor assembly.

Figure 6-496 Release the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Loop actuator

Learn about removing and replacing the loop actuator.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the loop actuator.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-61 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04572A	Loop actuator

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

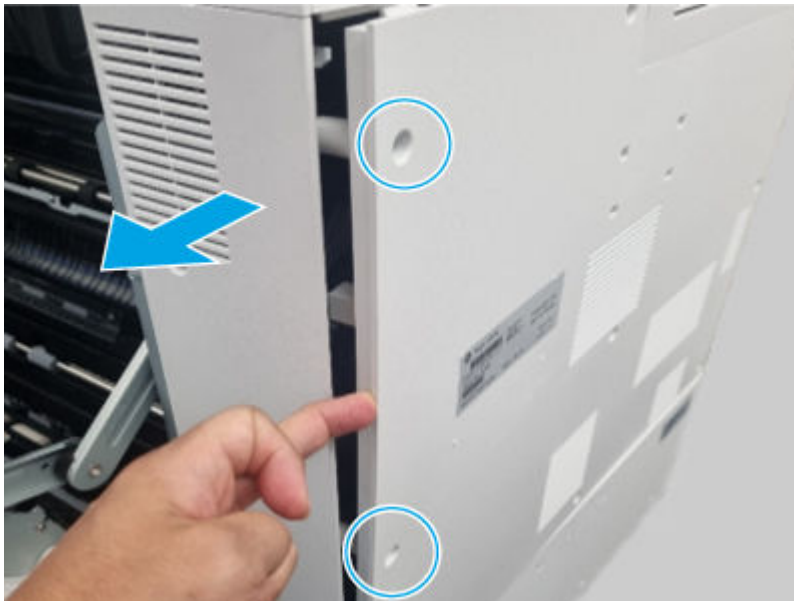
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-497 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-498 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

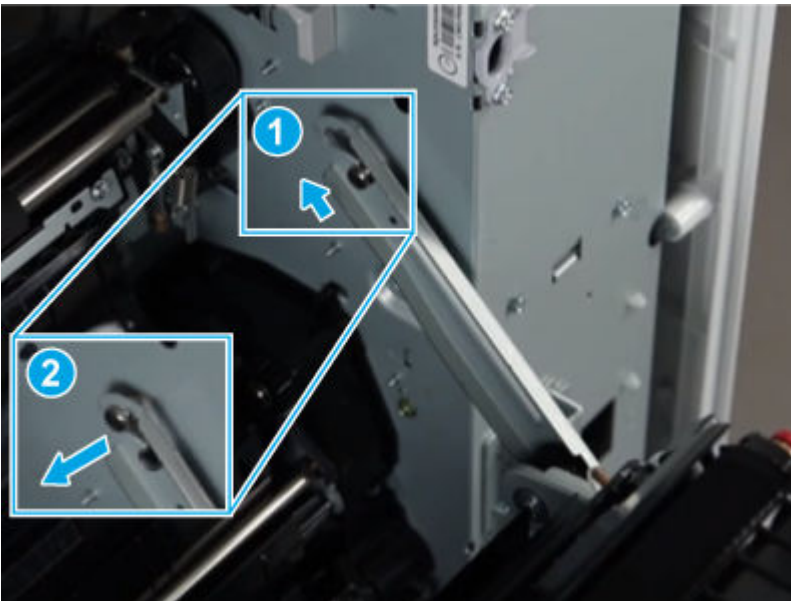
Figure 6-499 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

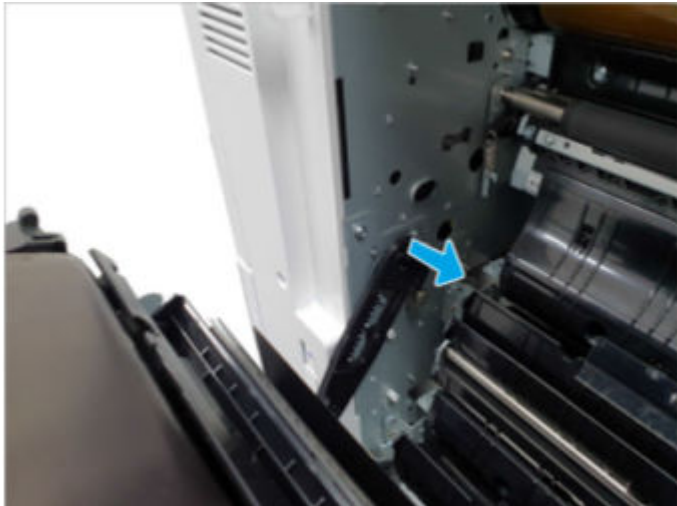
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-500 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-501 Release the link



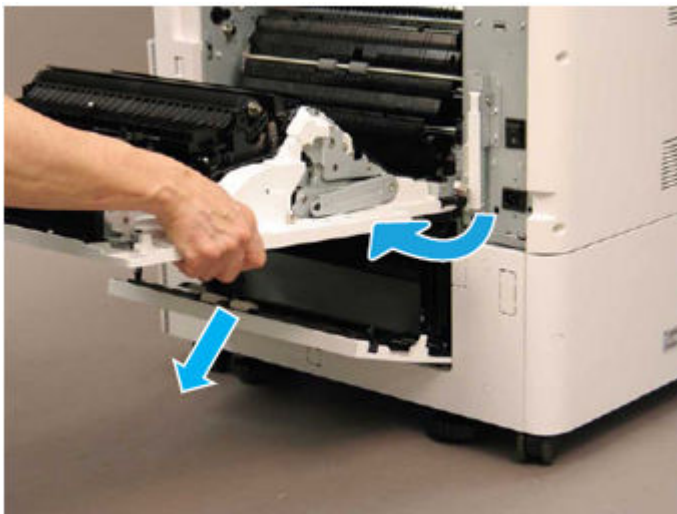
4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-502 Remove the door

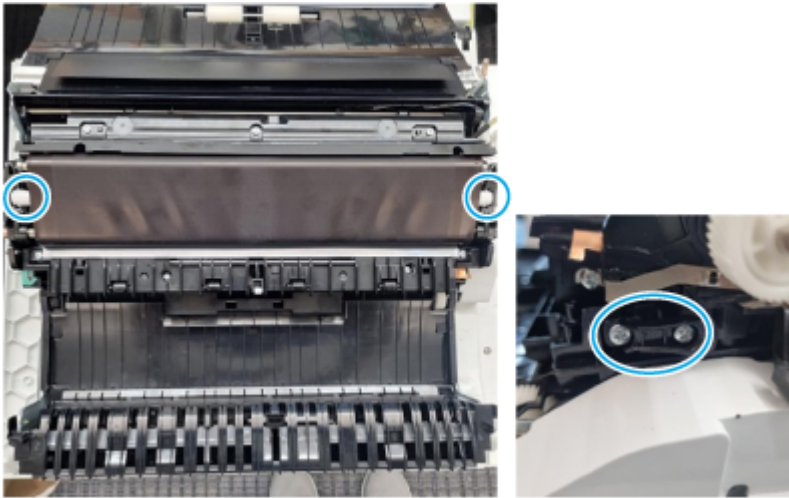


3. Remove the paper transfer belt (PTB)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the PTB.

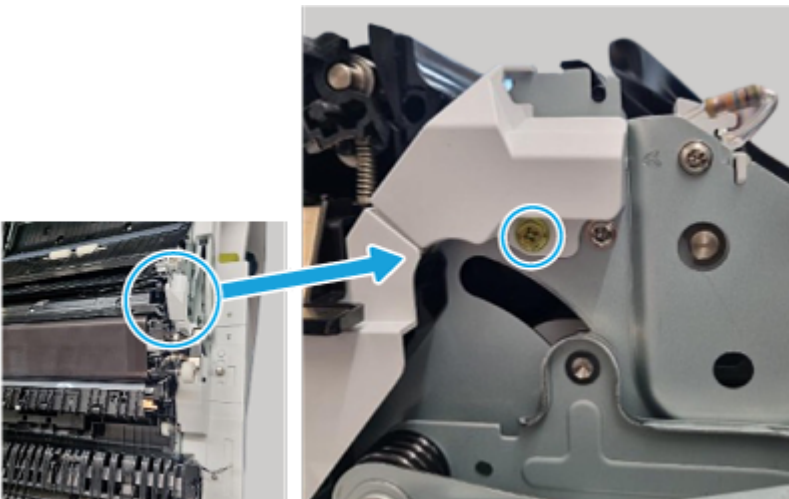
1. Remove four screws (two screws on each side).

Figure 6-503 Remove four screws



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-504 Remove the cover



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the PTB.

Figure 6-505 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove the loop actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the loop actuator.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-506 Remove four screws



2. Remove the loop actuator.


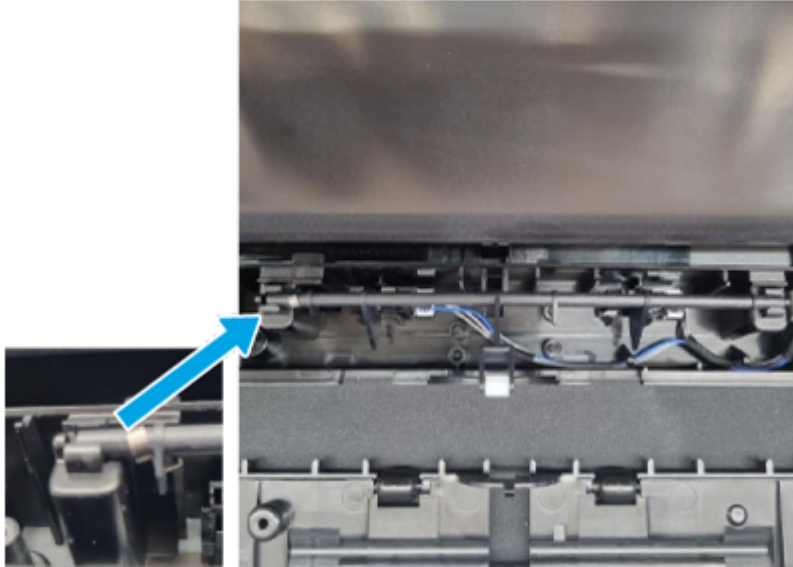
 **NOTE:** Note the spring position in order to install the actuator correctly.

Figure 6-507 Actuator spring



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door exit assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the right door exit assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the right door exit assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-62 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02249A	Right door exit assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

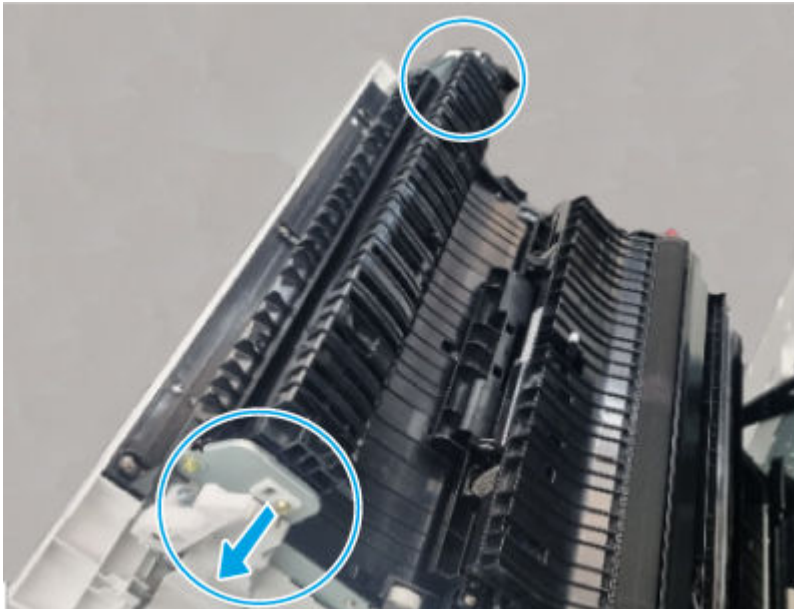
1. Remove the right door exit assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door exit assembly.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove two screws and the white-plastic molded parts.

Figure 6-508 Remove the guide



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right door exit assembly.

Figure 6-509 Remove the unit



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser out sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser out sensor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the fuser out sensor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-63 Part information

Part number	Part description
0960-5271	Photo interrupter (fuser out sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

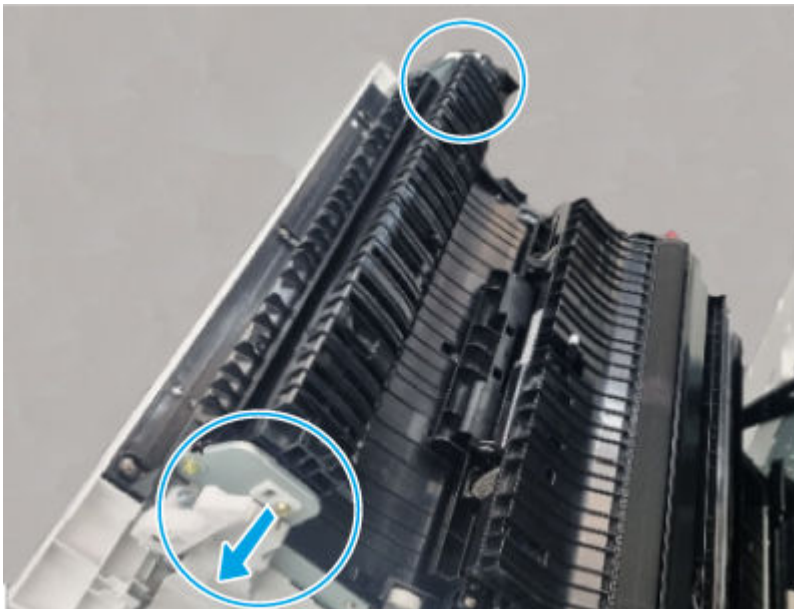
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door exit assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door exit assembly.

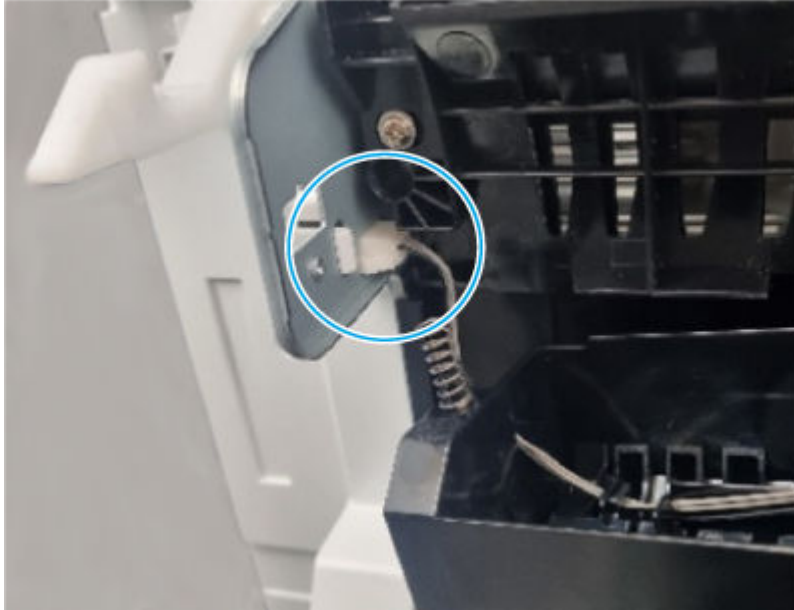
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove two screws and the white-plastic molded parts.

Figure 6-510 Remove the guide



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right door exit assembly.

Figure 6-511 Remove the unit

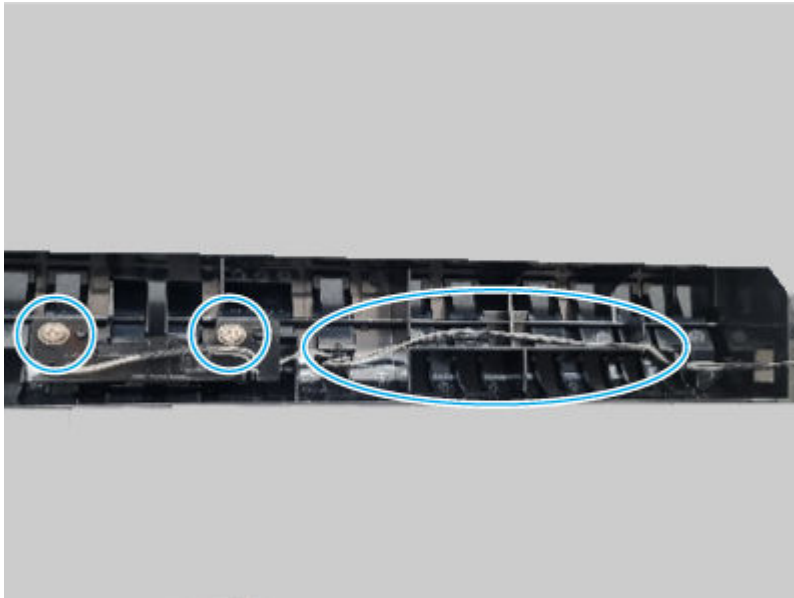


2. Remove the fuser out sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser out sensor.

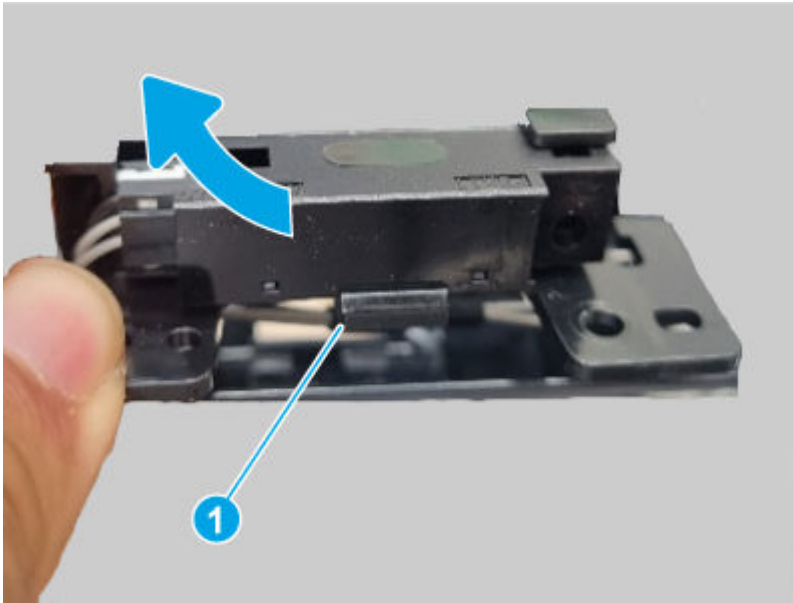
1. Remove two screws and release the wire harness.

Figure 6-512 Remove two screws



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the fuser out sensor.

Figure 6-513 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser out sensor harness

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser out sensor harness.



[View a video of removing and replacing the fuser out sensor harness.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-64 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK03-50001	Fuser out sensor harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

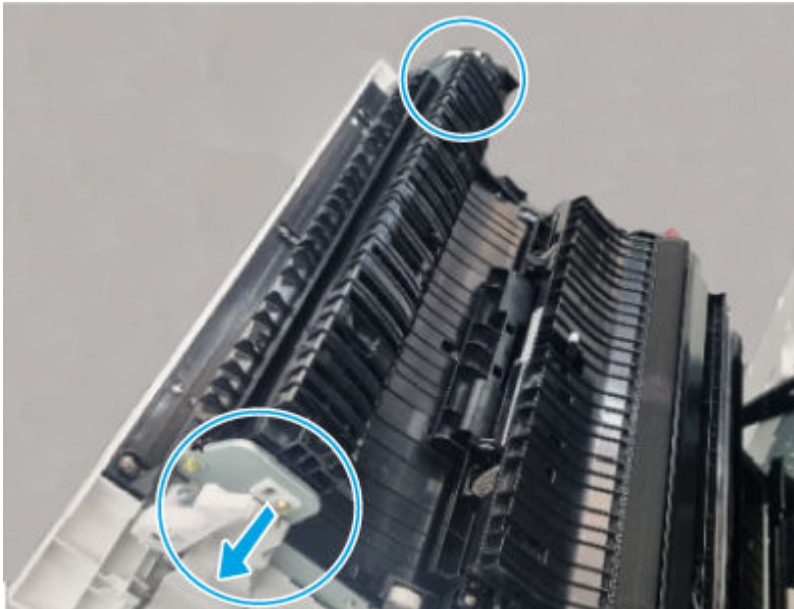
1. Remove the right door exit assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door exit assembly.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove two screws and the white-plastic molded parts.

Figure 6-514 Remove the guide



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right door exit assembly.

Figure 6-515 Remove the unit

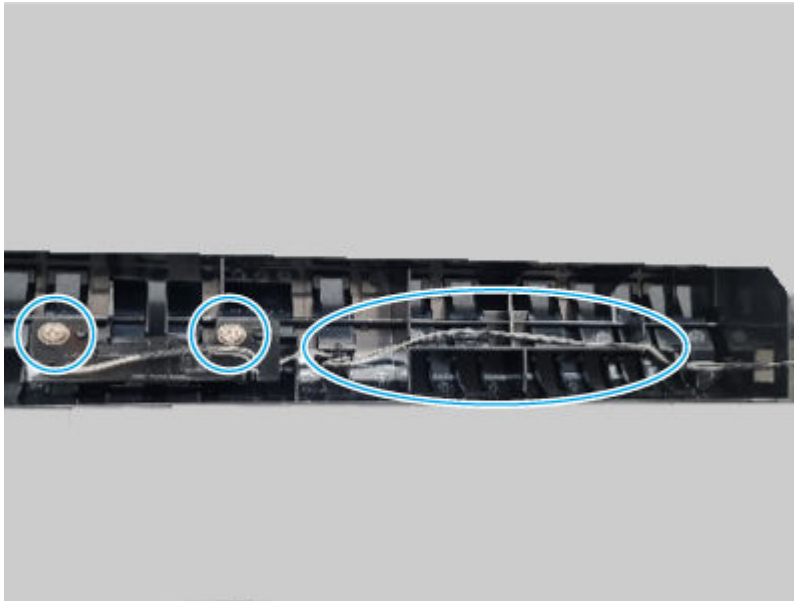


2. Remove the fuser out sensor harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser out sensor harness.

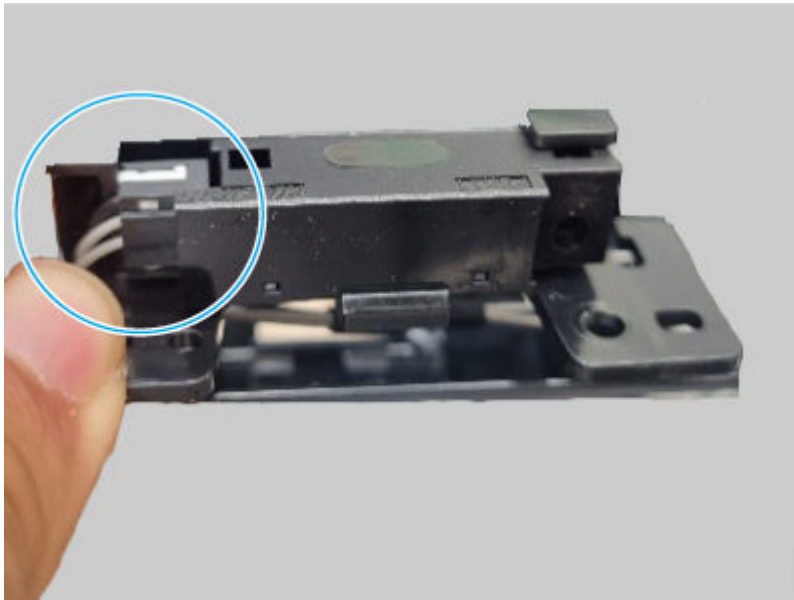
1. Remove two screws and release the wire harness.

Figure 6-516 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the fuser out sensor wire harness.

Figure 6-517 Remove the wire harness



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper dust holder assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the paper dust holder.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the paper dust holder.](#)


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-65 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01026B	Paper dust holder assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

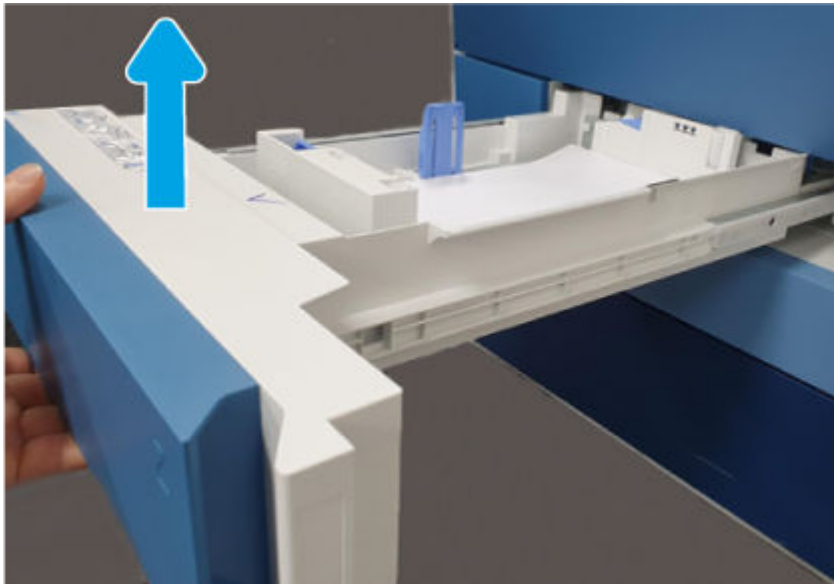
1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-518 Remove the tray



2. Remove the paper dust container

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the paper dust container.

1. Locate the paper dust container in the tray cavity.

Figure 6-519 Locate the paper dust container



2. Pull the paper dust container straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-520 Remove the assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Exit unit

Learn about exit unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Exit unit

Learn about removing and replacing the exit unit.



[View a video of removing and replacing the exit unit.](#)

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-66 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01856A	Exit unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser assembly.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-521 Remove four screws



3. Pull the fusor straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-522 Remove the fusor



2. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-523 Remove two screws




2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-524 Remove the cover



3. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-525 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-526 Remove one screw



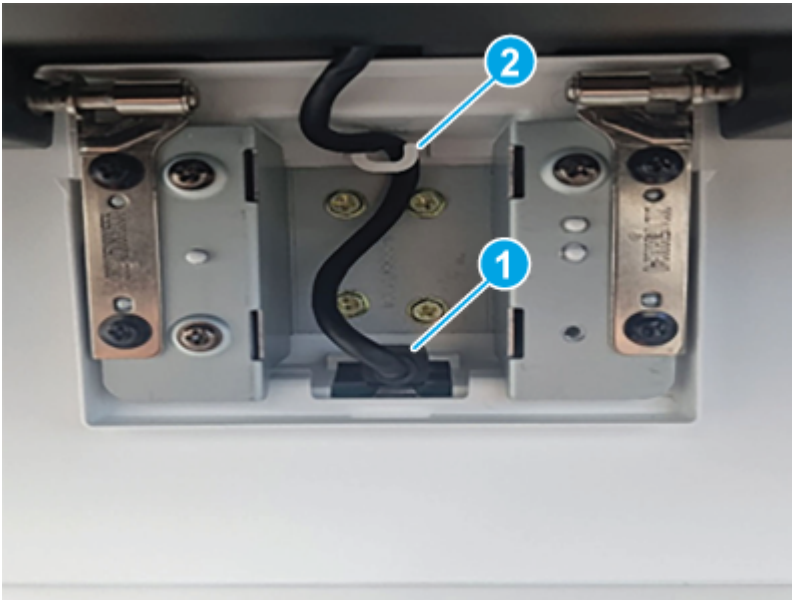
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-527 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-528 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-529 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-530 Remove the keyboard



4. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-531 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-532 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

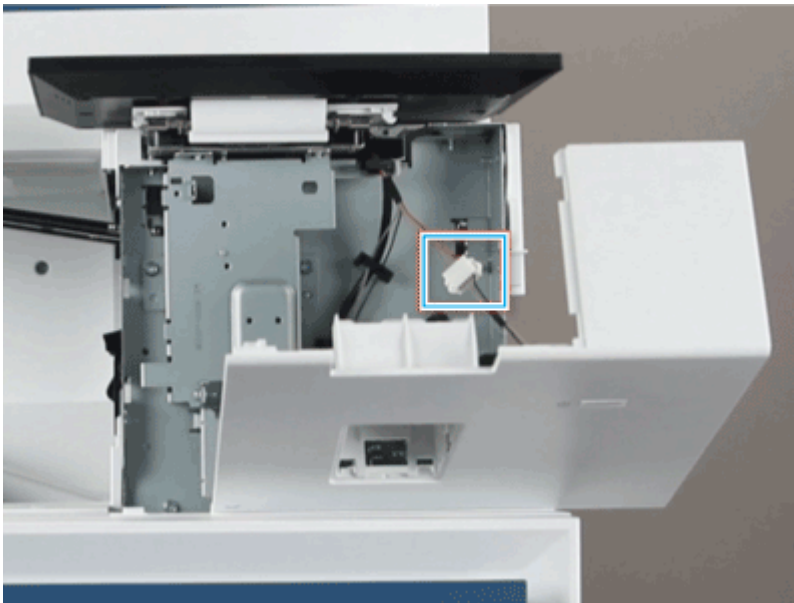
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-533 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-534 Remove the cover assembly



5. Remove the right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right upper cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-535 Remove five screws



2. Remove one screw (circled), and then carefully slide the cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-536 Remove the cover



6. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

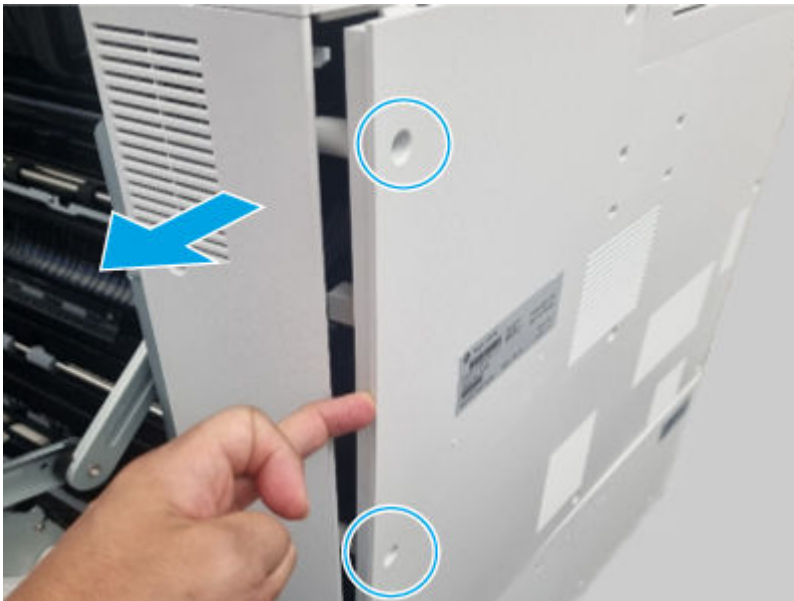
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-537 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-538 Remove the cover



7. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

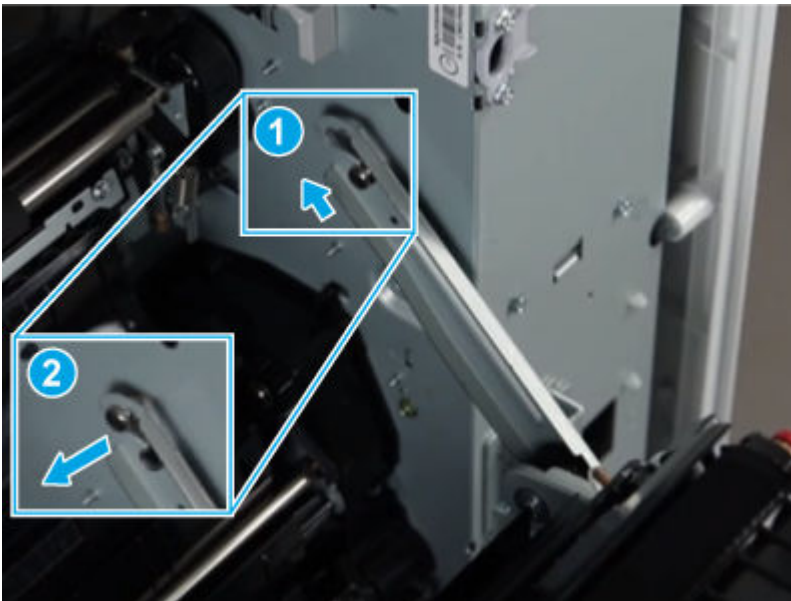
Figure 6-539 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

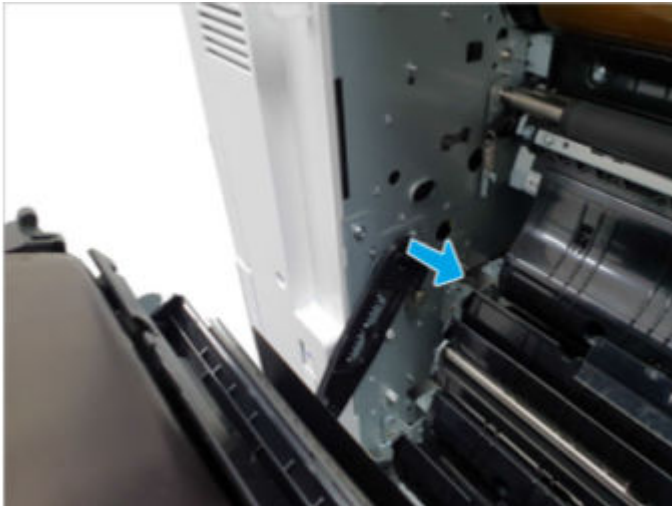
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-540 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-541 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

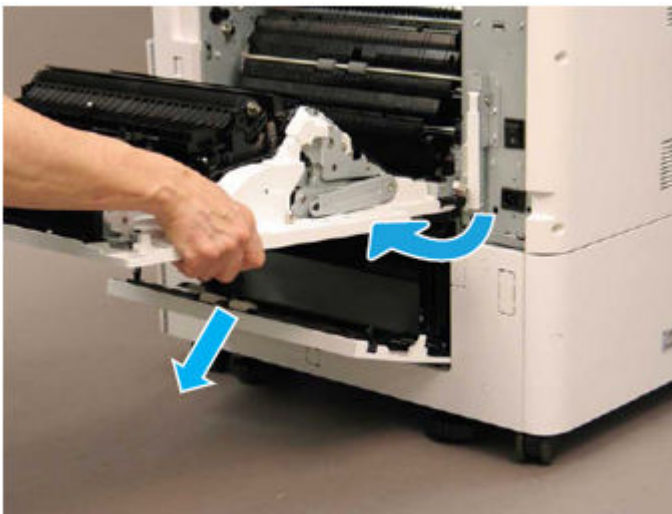


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-542 Remove the door



8. Remove the exit unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit unit.

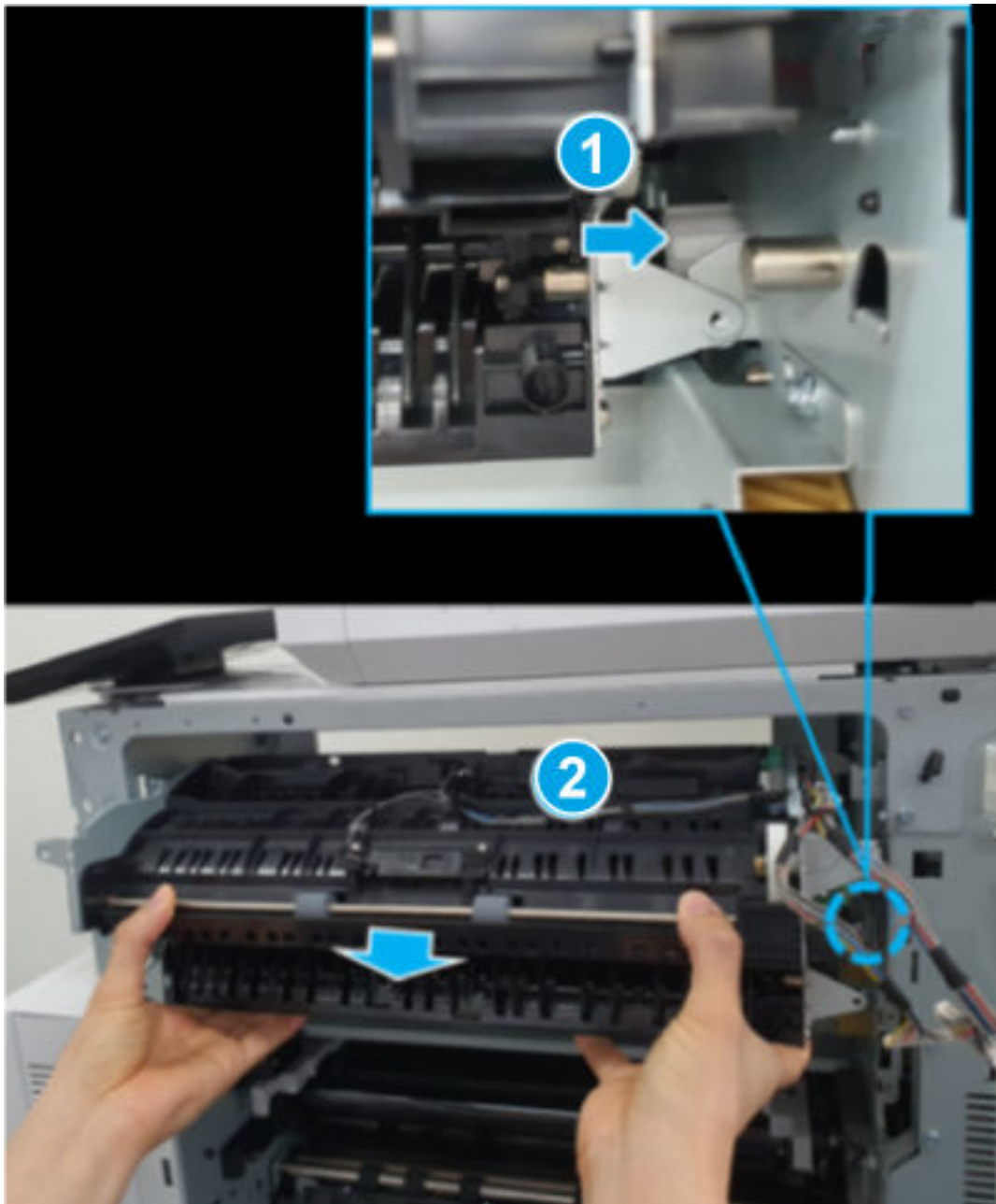
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 6-543 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Push in on the white-plastic coupler (callout 1), and then pull the exit unit straight out to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-544 Remove the unit



9. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output bin 1 sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the output bin 1 sensor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the output bin 1 sensor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-67 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (output bin 1 sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser assembly.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-545 Remove four screws



3. Pull the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-546 Remove the fuser



2. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-547 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-548 Remove the cover



3. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.



NOTE: The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-549 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-550 Remove one screw



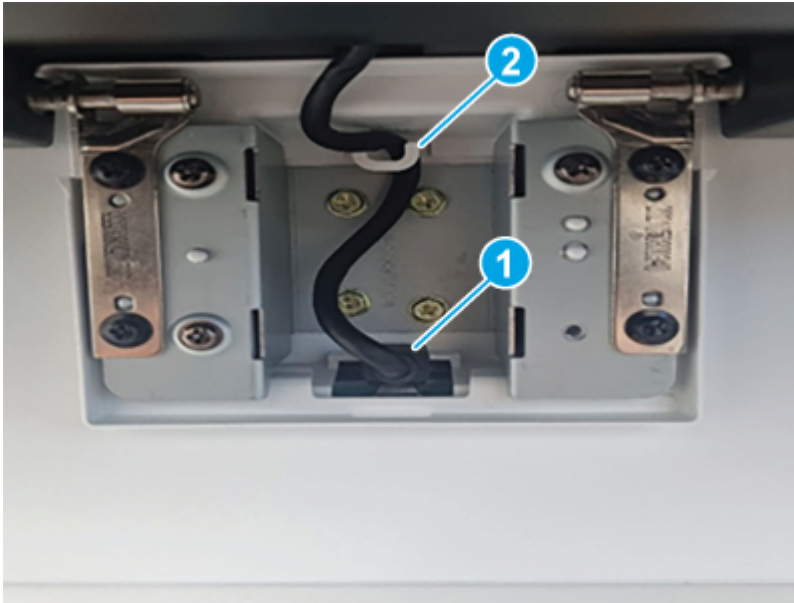
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-551 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-552 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-553 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-554 Remove the keyboard



4. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

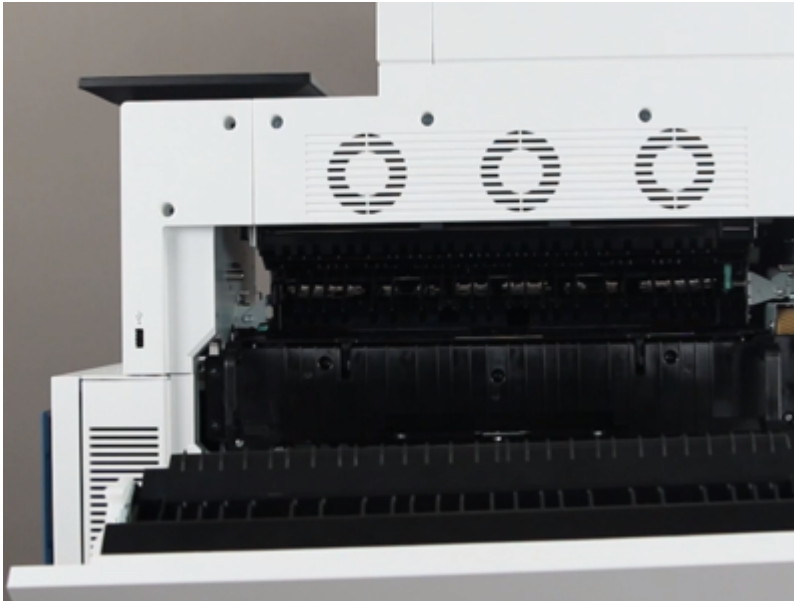
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-555 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-556 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

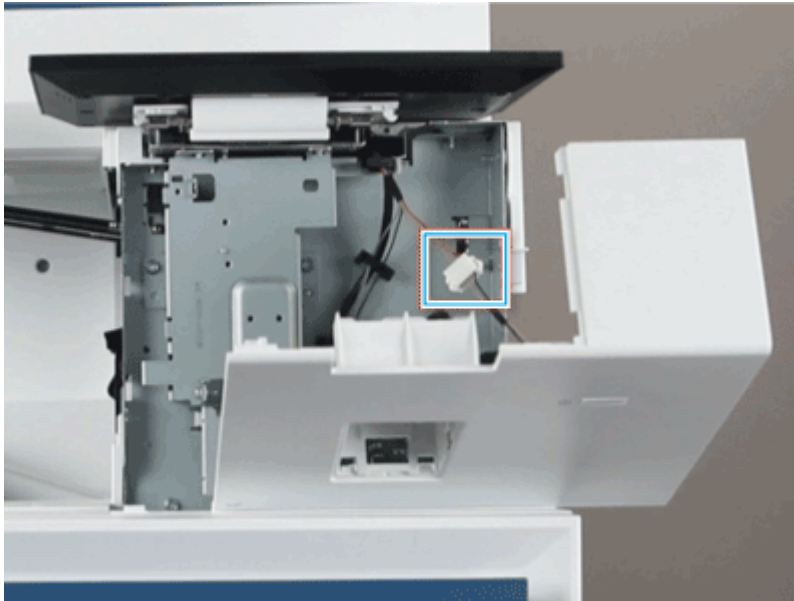
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-557 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-558 Remove the cover assembly

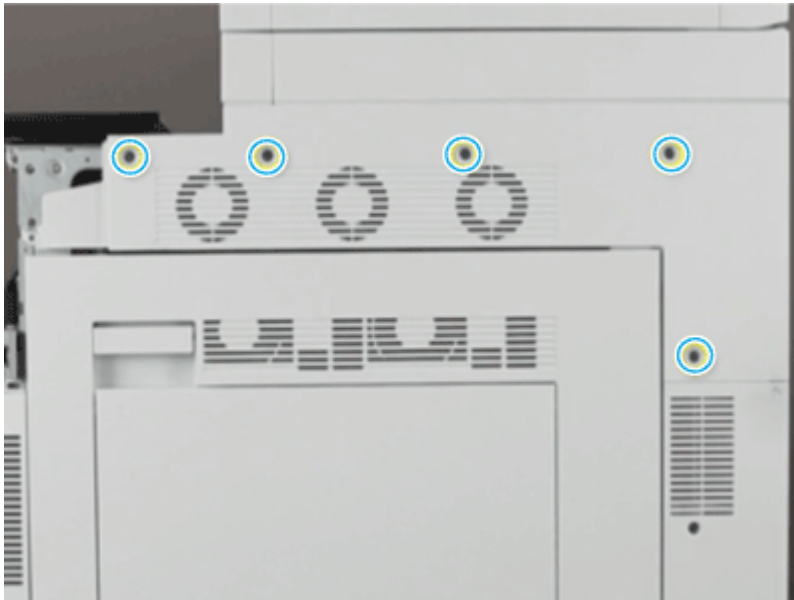


5. Remove the right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right upper cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-559 Remove five screws



2. Remove one screw (circled), and then carefully slide the cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-560 Remove the cover



6. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

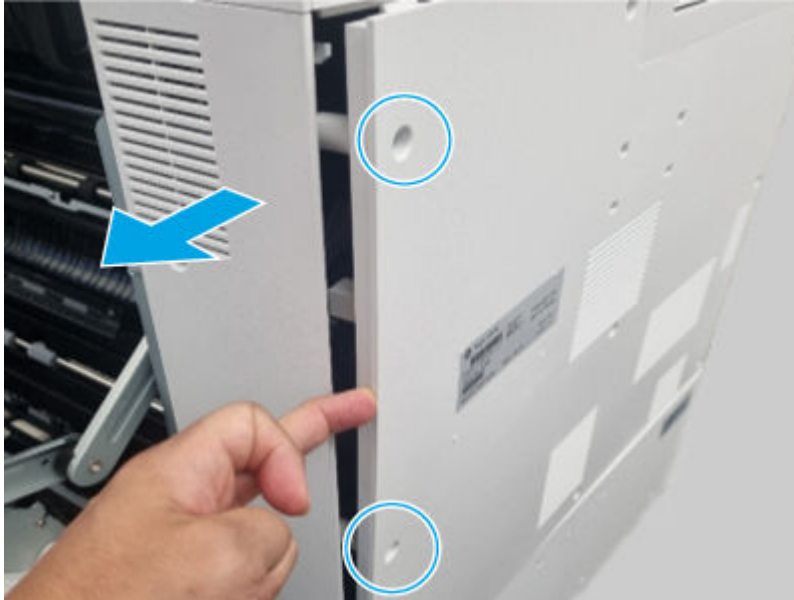
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-561 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-562 Remove the cover



7. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

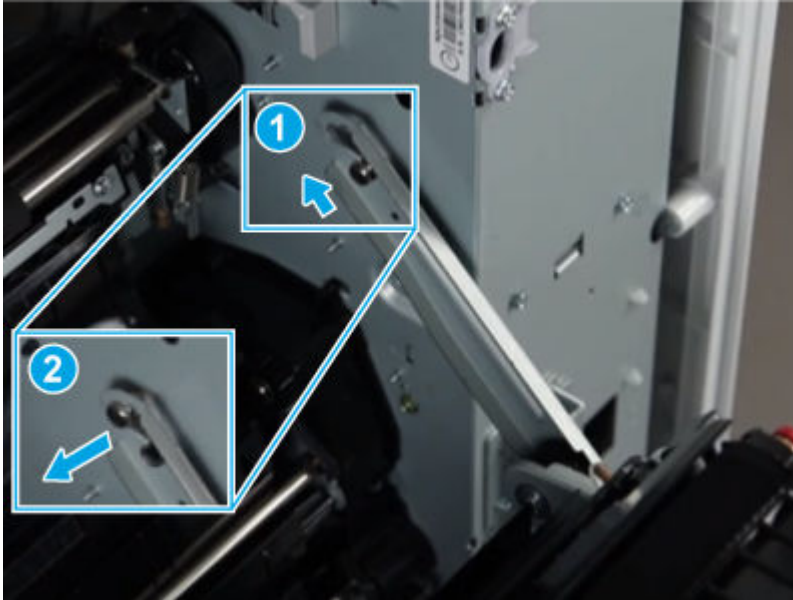
Figure 6-563 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

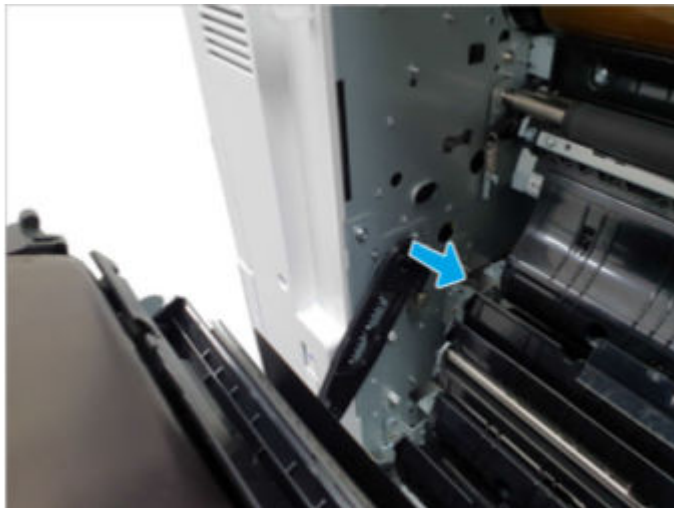
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-564 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-565 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


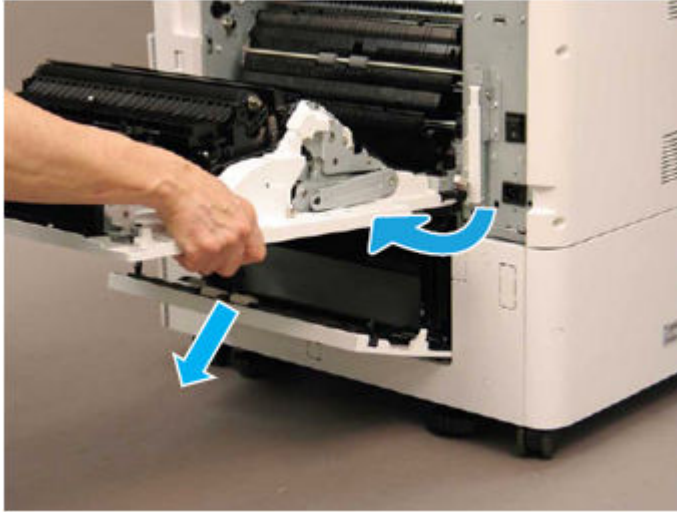
 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-566 Remove the door



8. Remove the exit unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit unit.

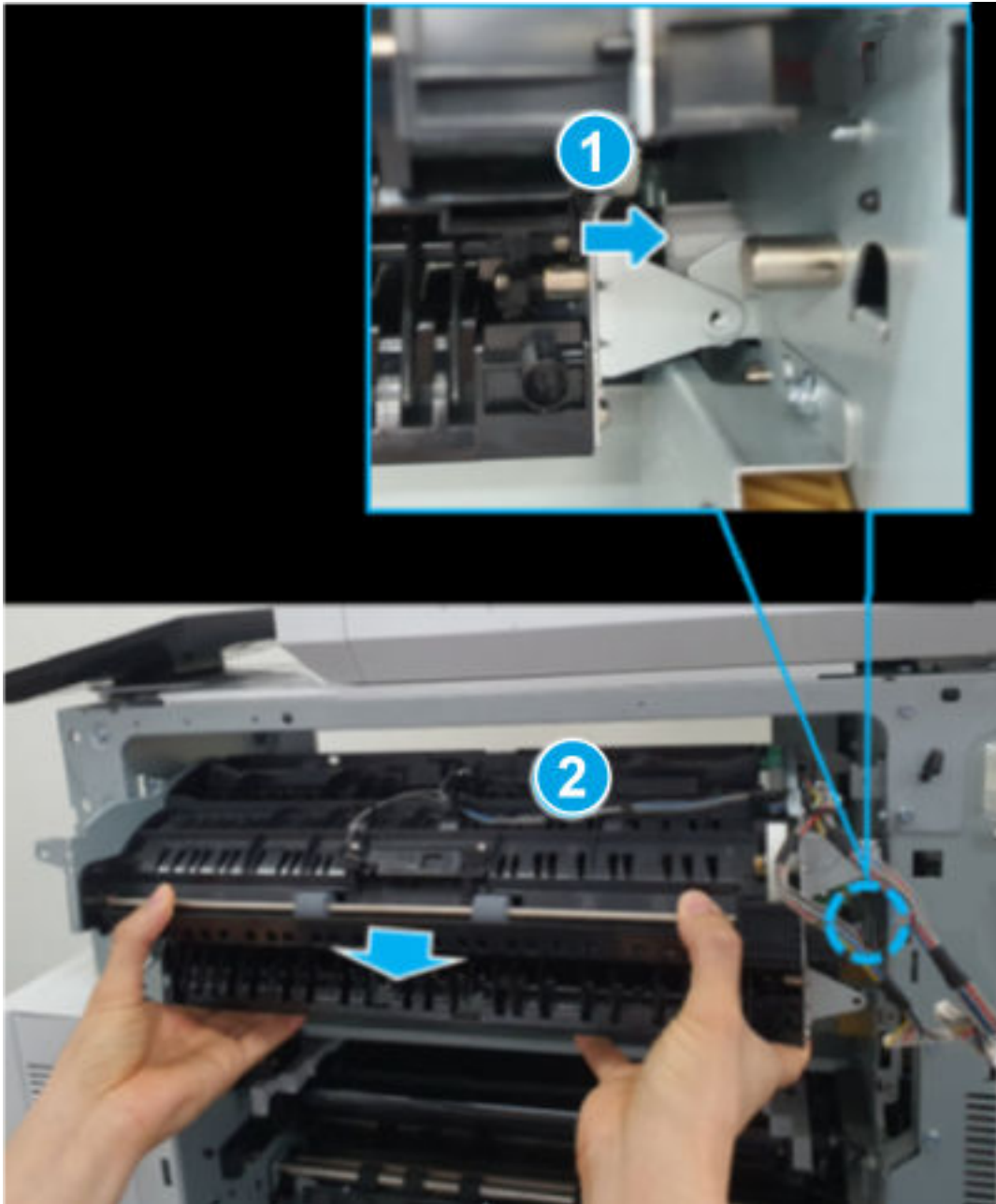
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 6-567 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Push in on the white-plastic coupler (callout 1), and then pull the exit unit straight out to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-568 Remove the unit

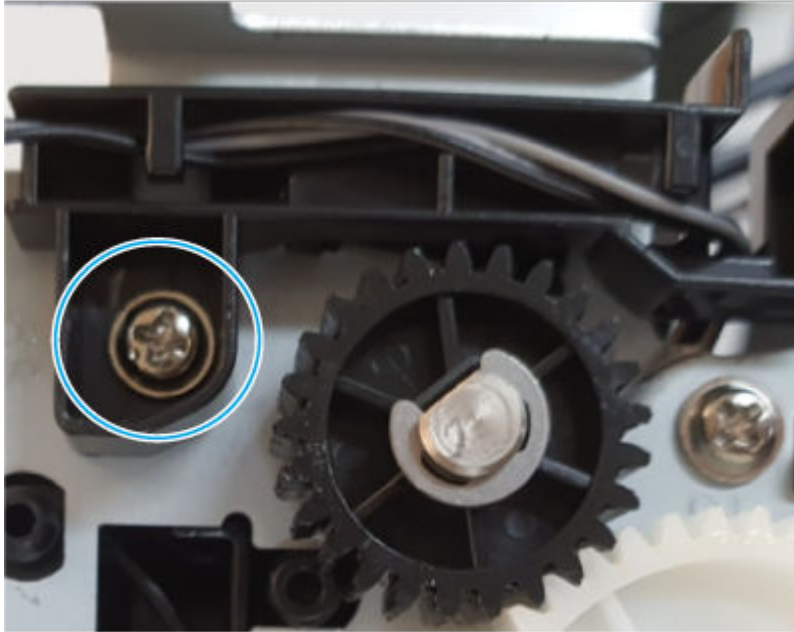


9. Remove the output bin 1 sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the output bin 1 sensor.

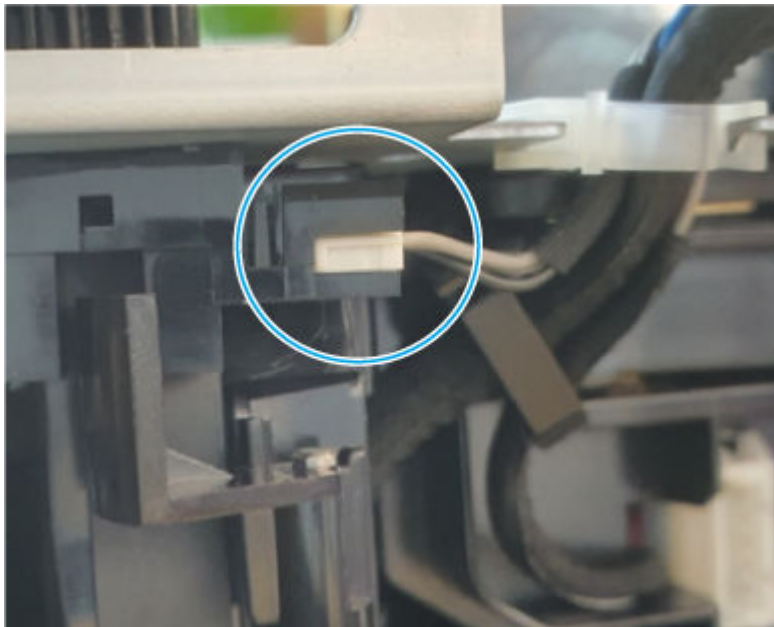
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-569 Remove one screw




2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-570 Disconnect one connector



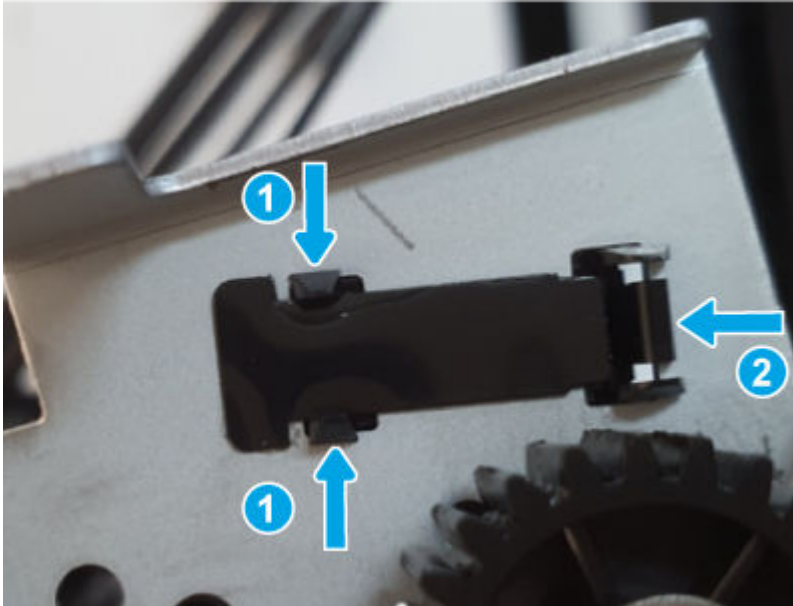
3. Do the following:

 **NOTE:** The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

- Release the hooks (callout 1).
- Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).

- Remove the sensor.

Figure 6-571 Remove the sensor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Return gate solenoid

Learn about removing and replacing the return gate solenoid.



[View a video of removing and replacing the return gate solenoid.](#)

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-68 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting (return gate solenoid)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser assembly.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-572 Remove four screws



3. Pull the fusor straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-573 Remove the fusor



2. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-574 Remove two screws




2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-575 Remove the cover



3. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-576 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-577 Remove one screw



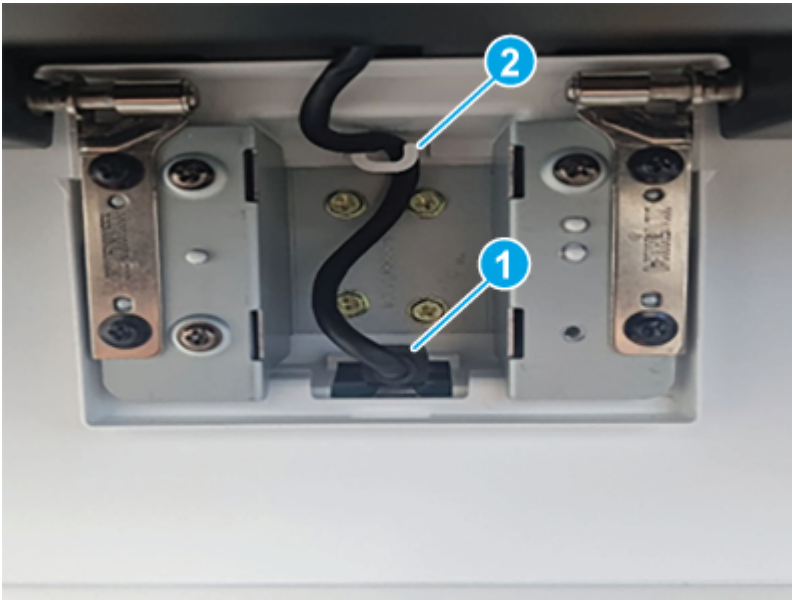
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-578 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-579 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-580 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-581 Remove the keyboard



4. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-582 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-583 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

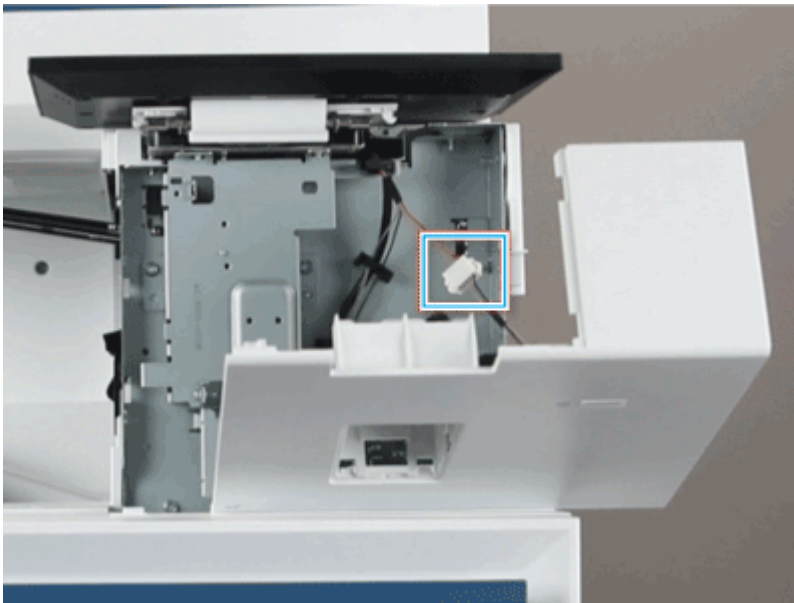
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-584 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-585 Remove the cover assembly



5. Remove the right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right upper cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-586 Remove five screws



2. Remove one screw (circled), and then carefully slide the cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-587 Remove the cover



6. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

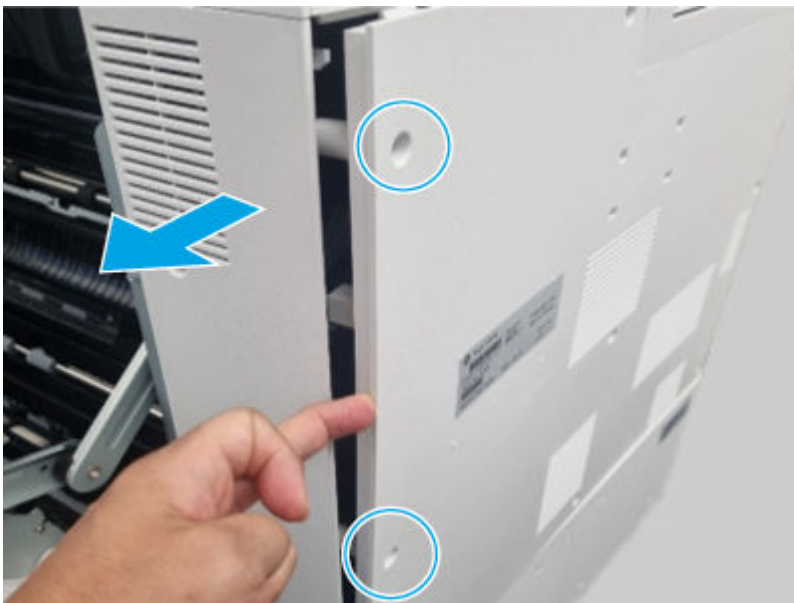
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-588 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-589 Remove the cover



7. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

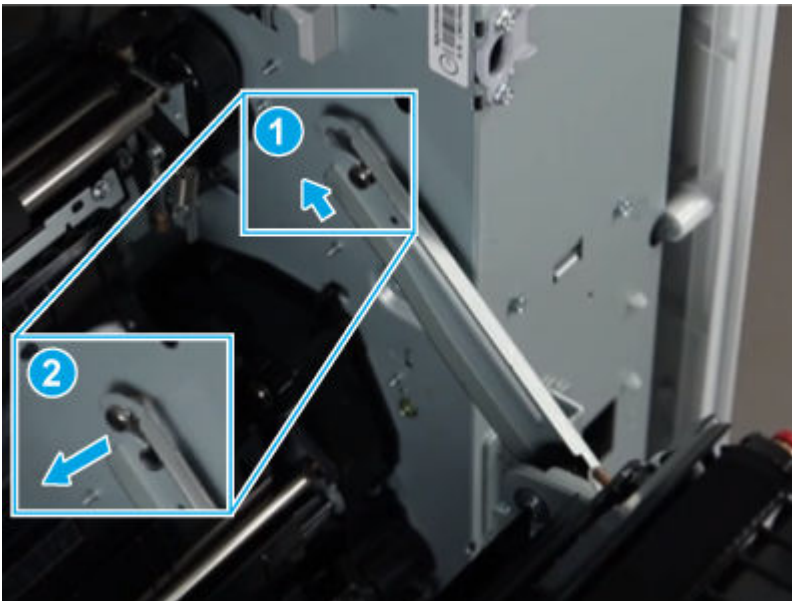
Figure 6-590 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

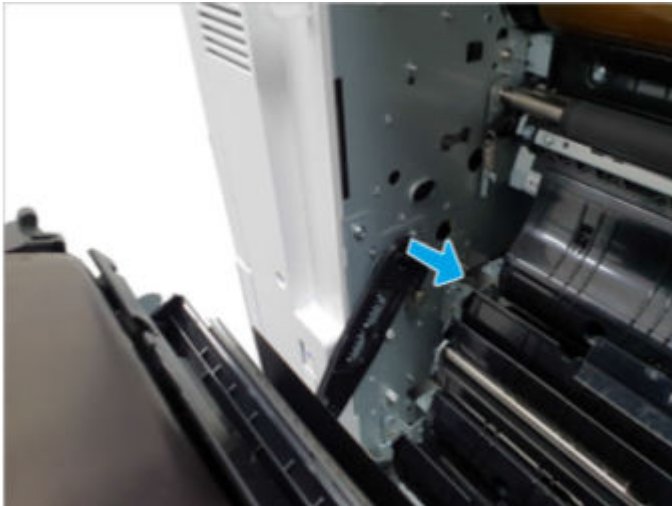
⚠ **CAUTION:** The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-591 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-592 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

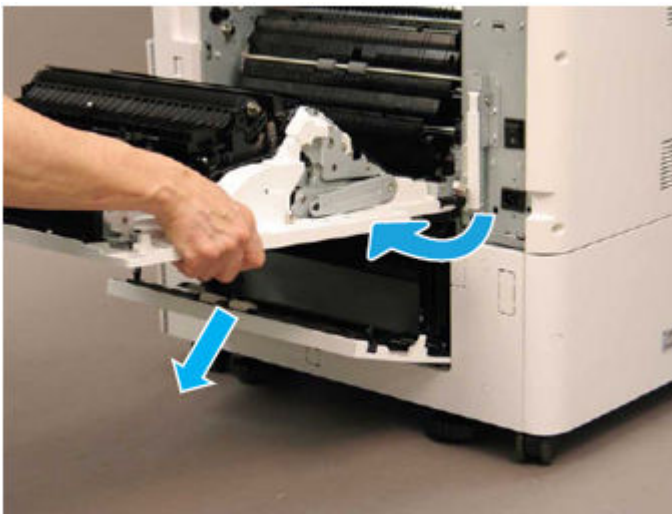


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-593 Remove the door



8. Remove the exit unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit unit.

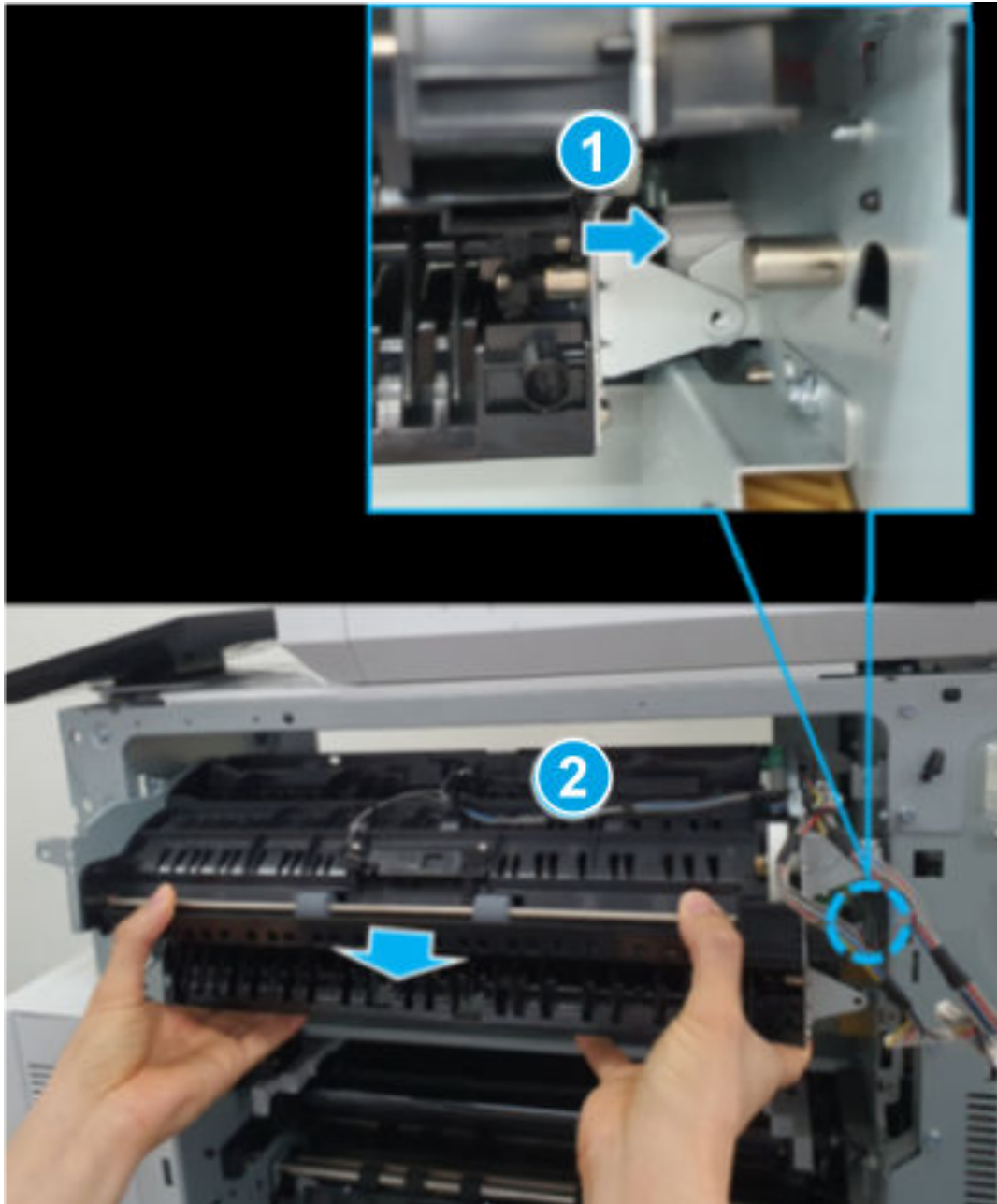
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 6-594 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Push in on the white-plastic coupler (callout 1), and then pull the exit unit straight out to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-595 Remove the unit

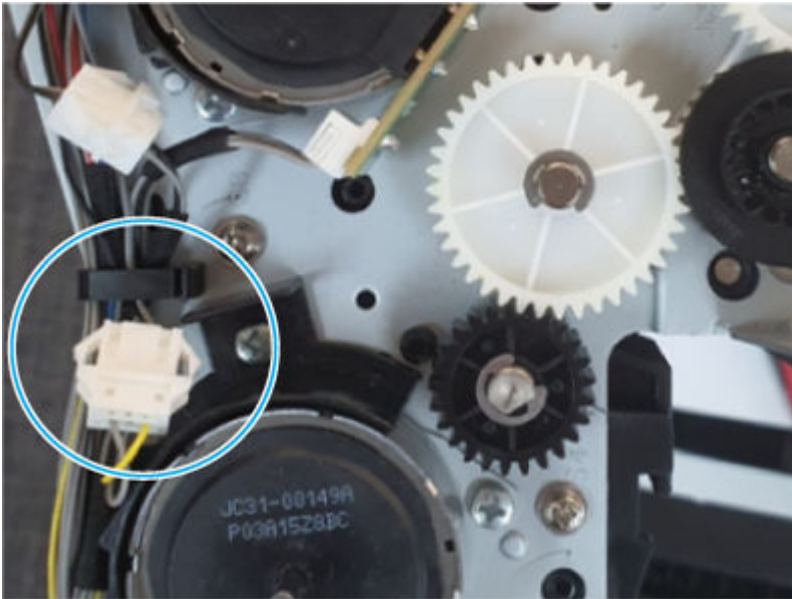


9. Remove the return gate solenoid

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the return gate solenoid.

1. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

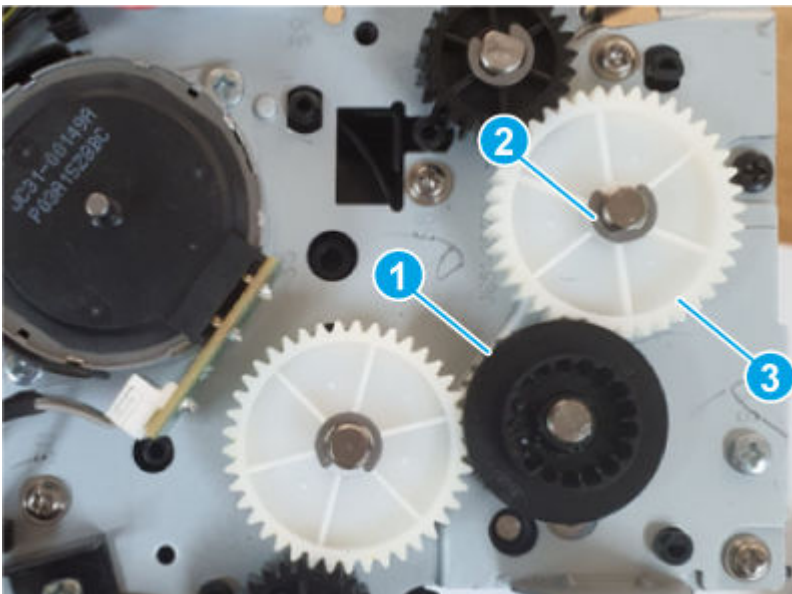
Figure 6-596 Disconnect one connector



2. Do the following:

- Remove the black gear (callout 1).
- Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 2), and then remove the white gear (callout 3)/

Figure 6-597 Remove the gears



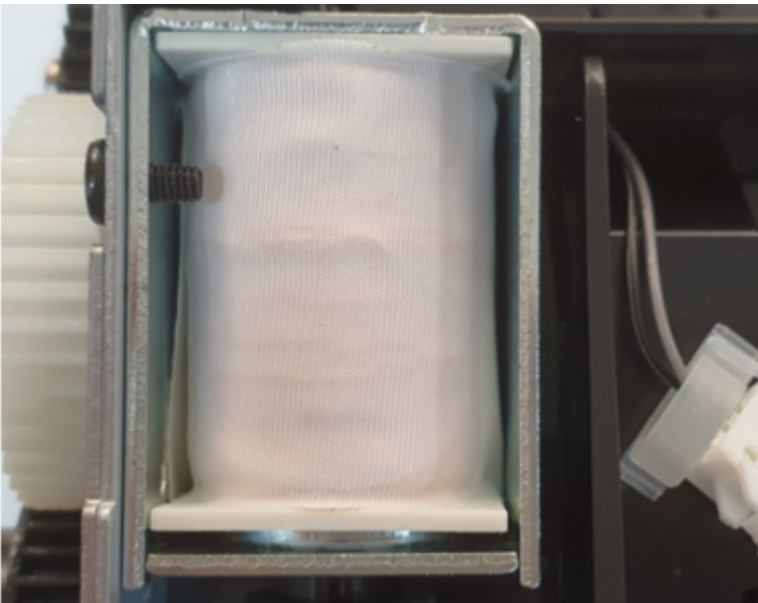
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-598 Remove two screws



4. Remove the return gate solenoid.

Figure 6-599 Remove the solenoid



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit 2 motor

Learn about removing and replacing the exit 2 motor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the exit 2 motor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-69 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00336A	Drive-motor step (exit 2 motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser assembly.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-600 Remove four screws



3. Pull the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-601 Remove the fuser



2. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

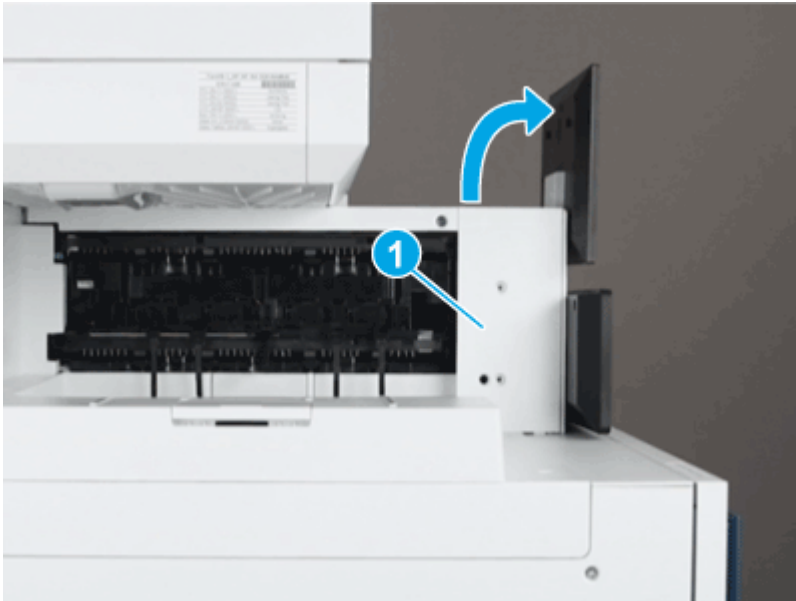
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-602 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-603 Remove the cover



3. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.



NOTE: The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-604 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-605 Remove one screw



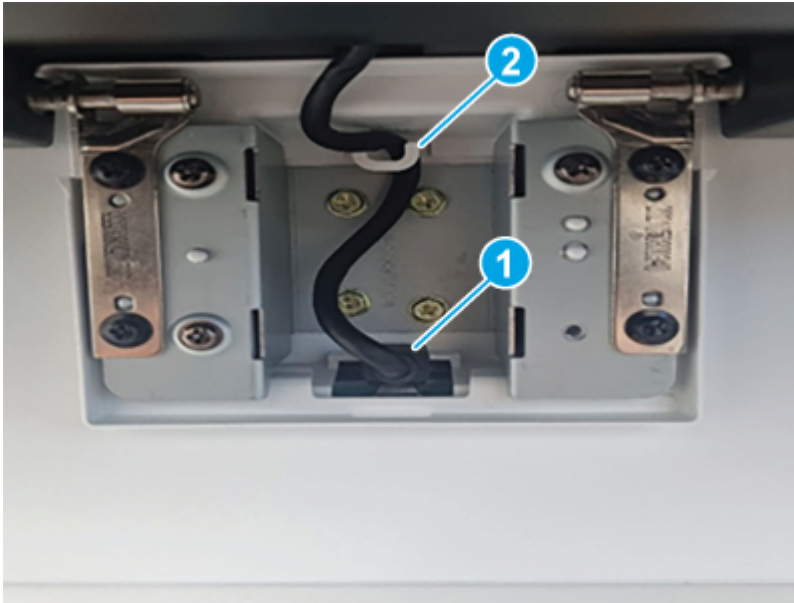
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-606 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-607 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-608 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-609 Remove the keyboard



4. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-610 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-611 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

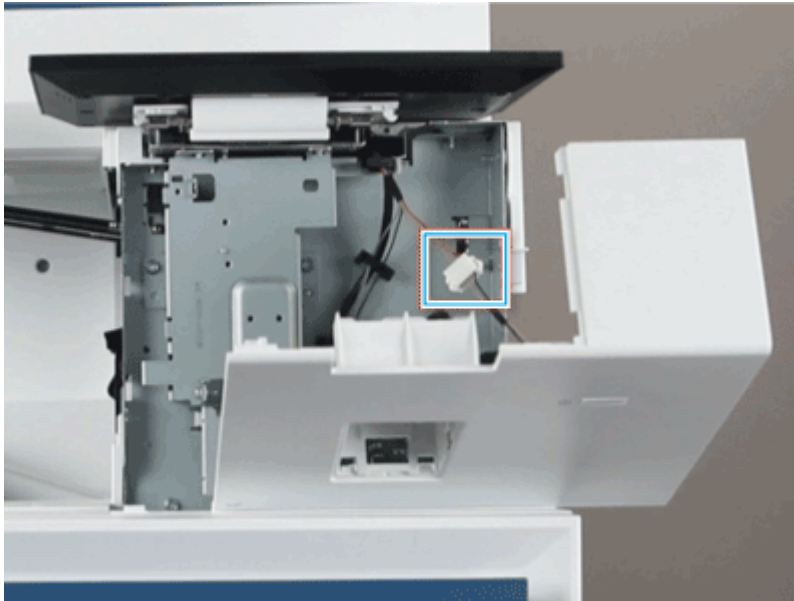
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-612 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-613 Remove the cover assembly

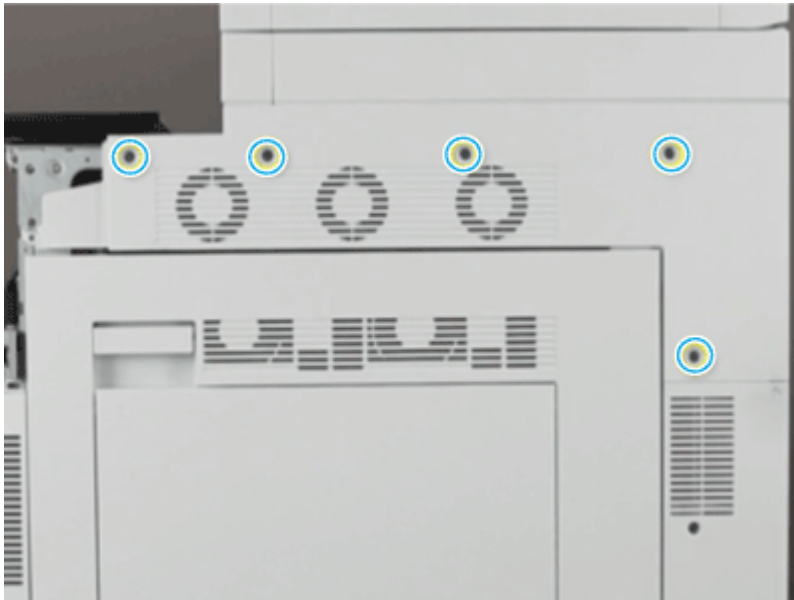


5. Remove the right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right upper cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-614 Remove five screws



2. Remove one screw (circled), and then carefully slide the cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-615 Remove the cover



6. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

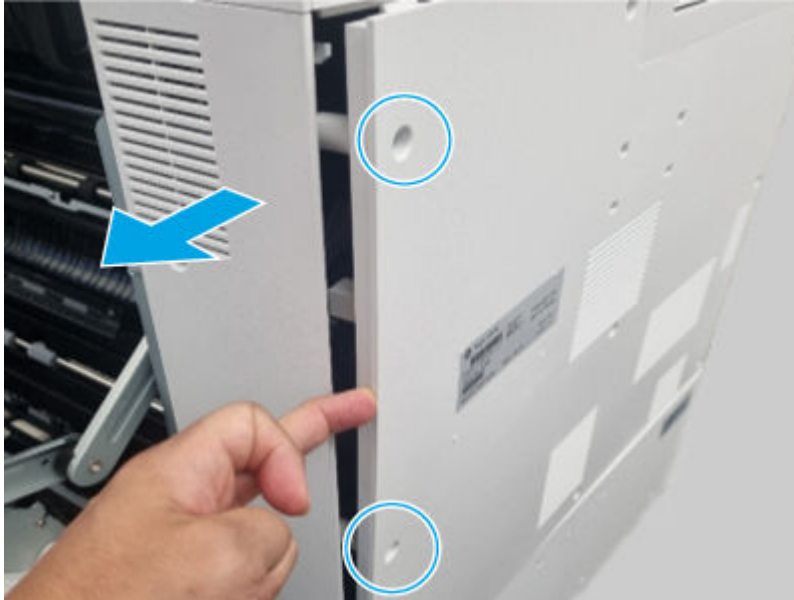
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-616 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-617 Remove the cover



7. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

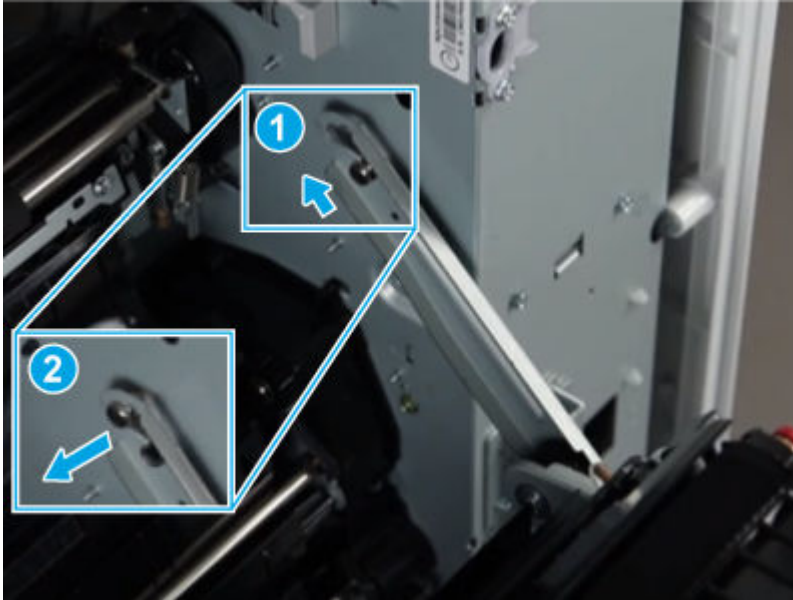
Figure 6-618 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

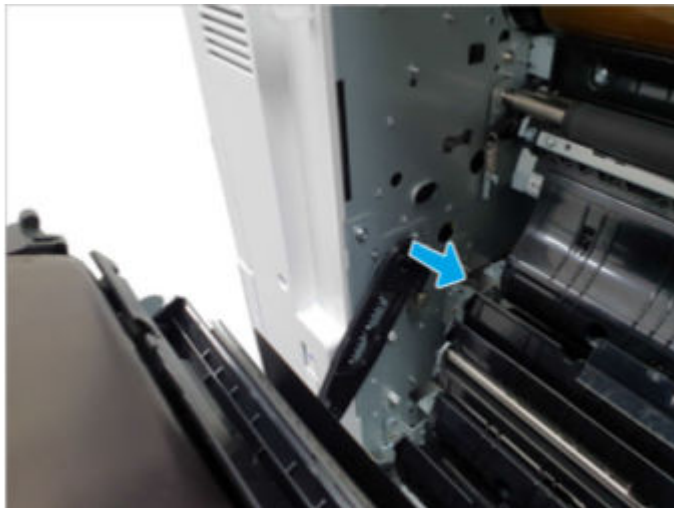
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-619 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-620 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

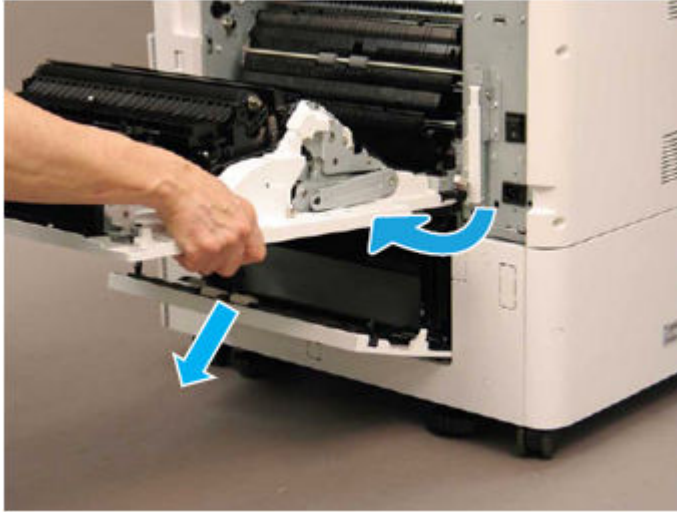


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-621 Remove the door



8. Remove the exit unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit unit.

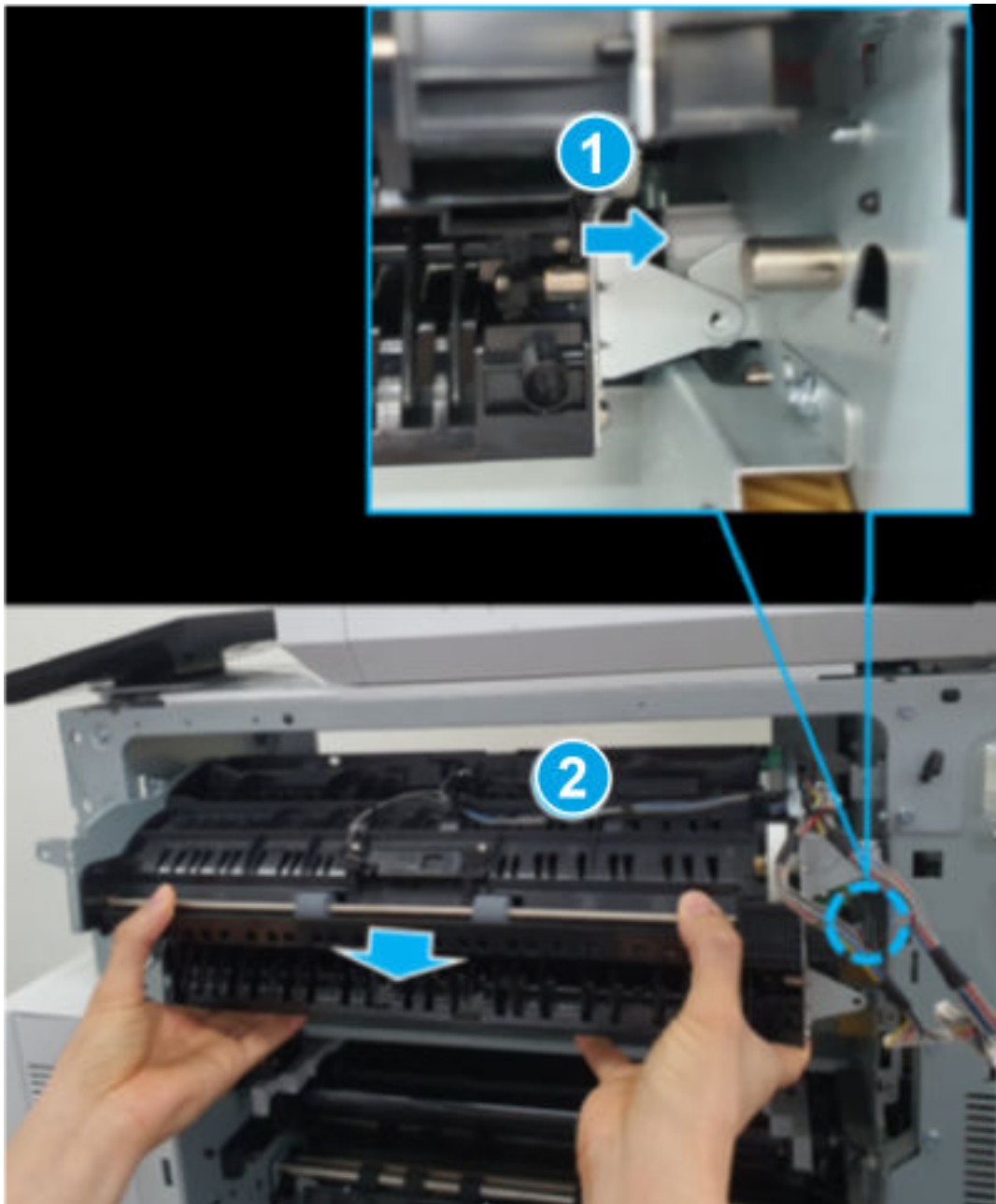
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 6-622 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Push in on the white-plastic coupler (callout 1), and then pull the exit unit straight out to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-623 Remove the unit



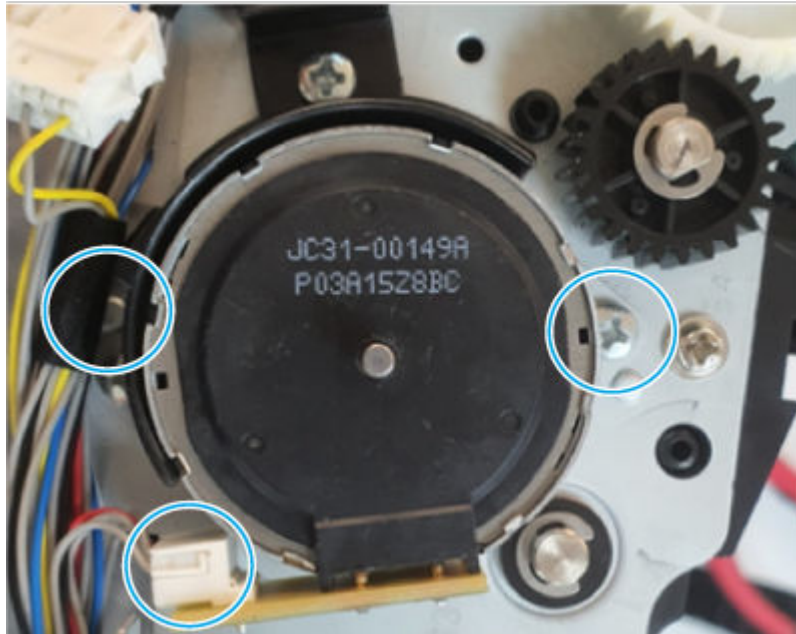
9. Remove the exit 2 motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit 2 motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit 2 motor.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not damage the wire harness when removing the motor.

Figure 6-624 Remove the motor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit 2 sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the exit 2 sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the exit 2 sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-70 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (exit 2 sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser assembly.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-625 Remove four screws



3. Pull the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-626 Remove the fuser



2. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

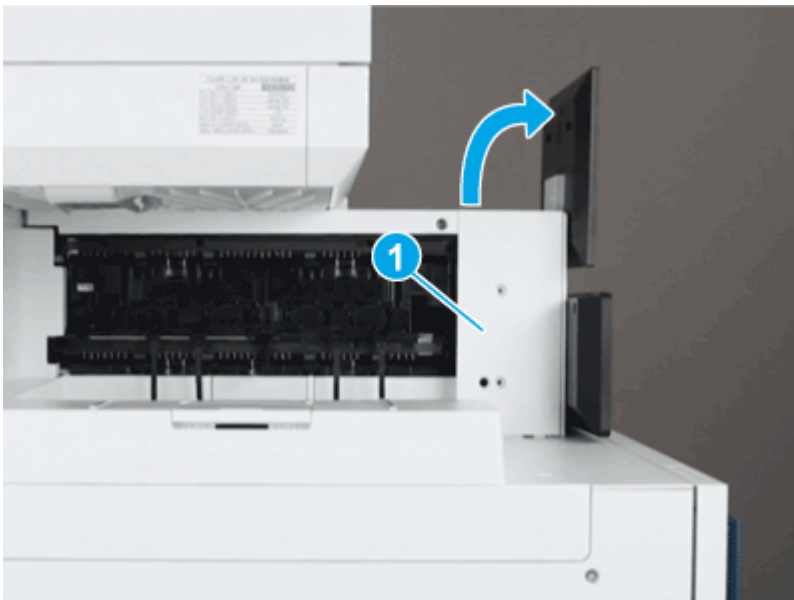
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-627 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-628 Remove the cover



3. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.



NOTE: The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-629 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-630 Remove one screw



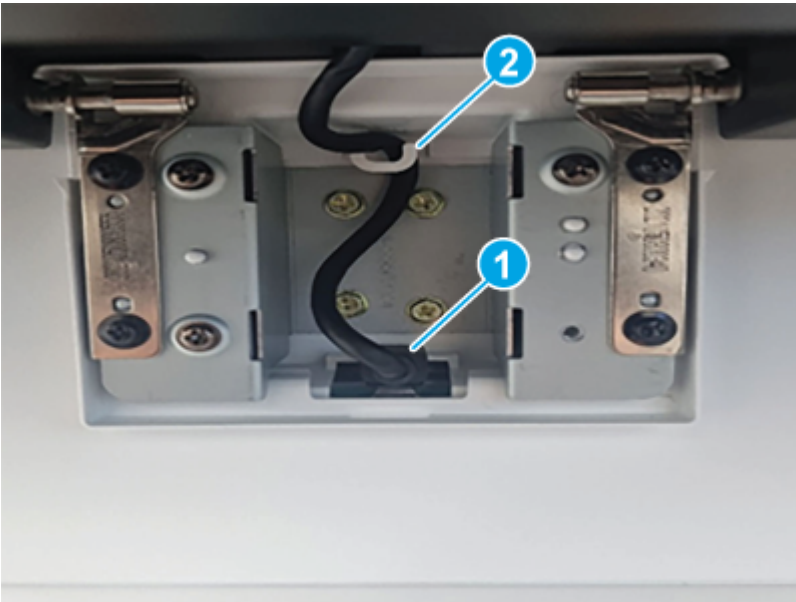
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-631 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-632 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-633 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-634 Remove the keyboard



4. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

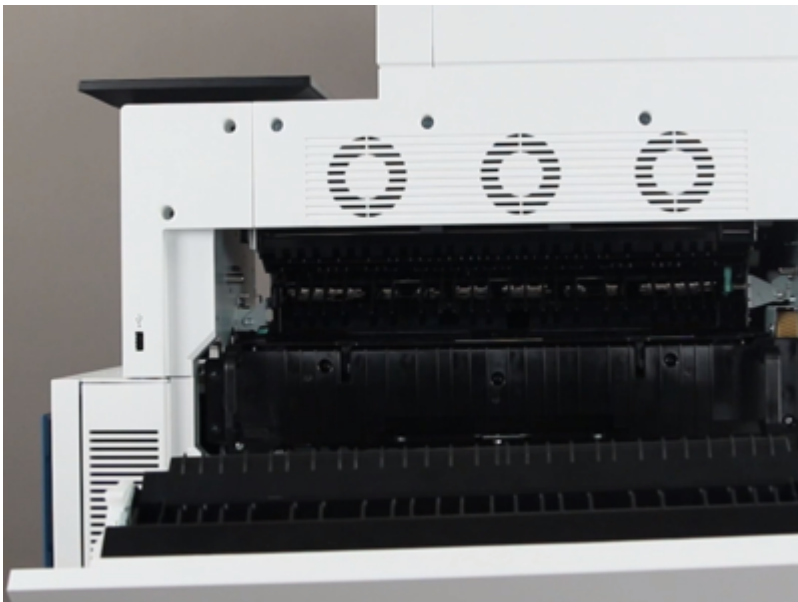
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-635 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-636 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

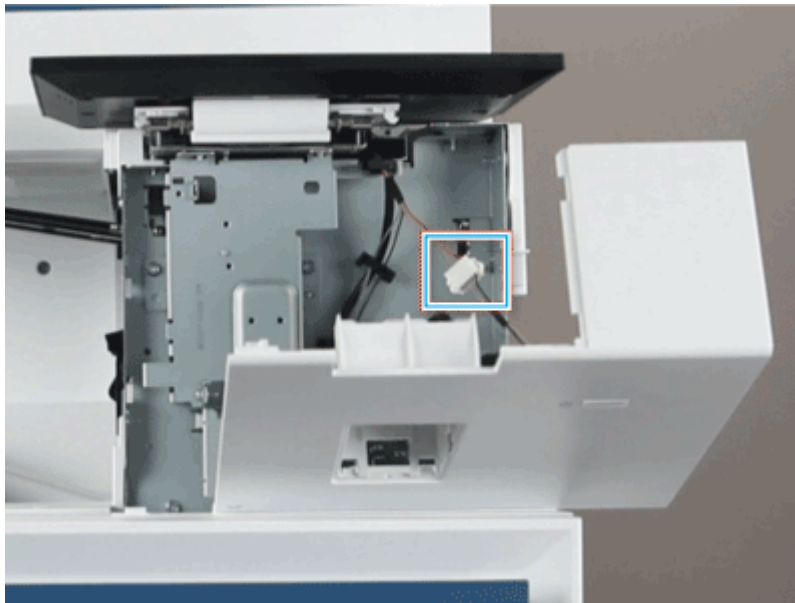
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-637 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-638 Remove the cover assembly



5. Remove the right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right upper cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-639 Remove five screws



2. Remove one screw (circled), and then carefully slide the cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-640 Remove the cover



6. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

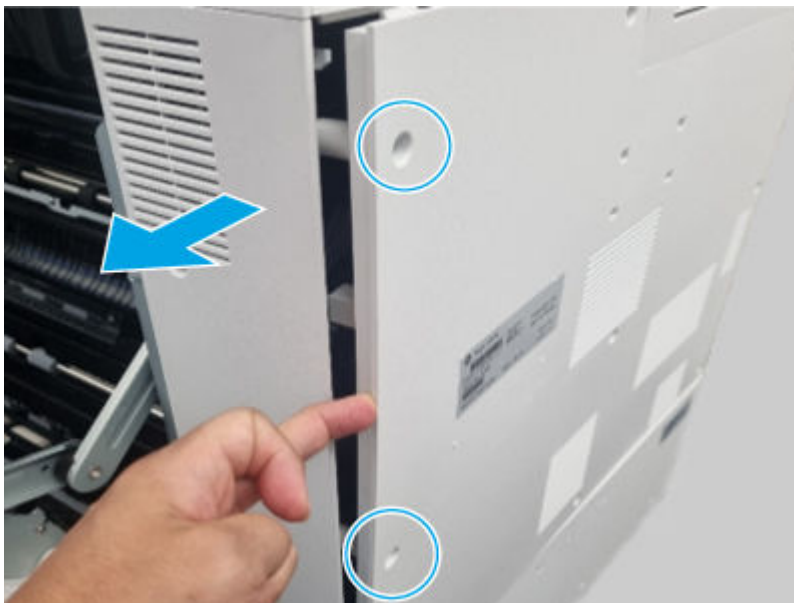
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-641 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-642 Remove the cover



7. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

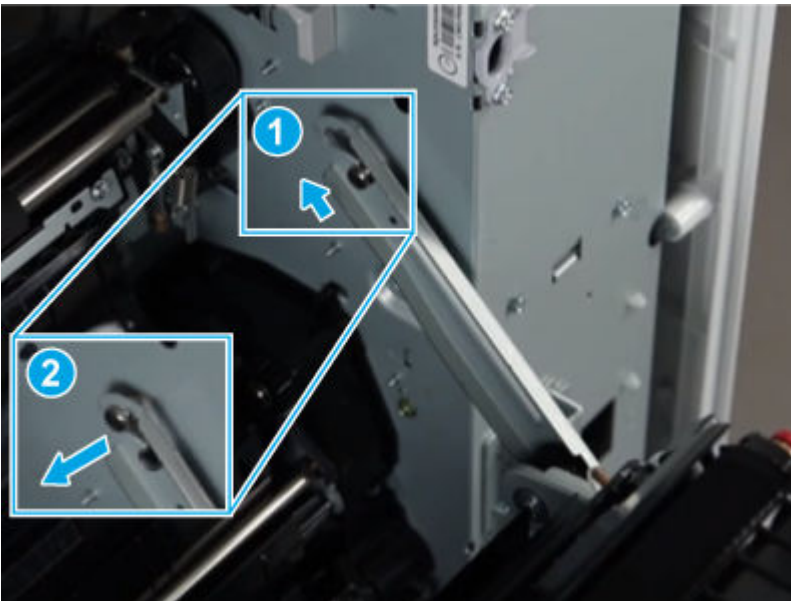
Figure 6-643 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

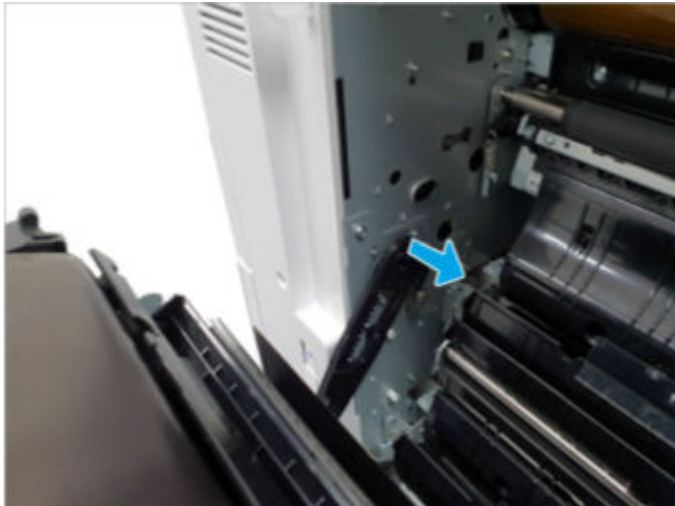
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-644 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-645 Release the link



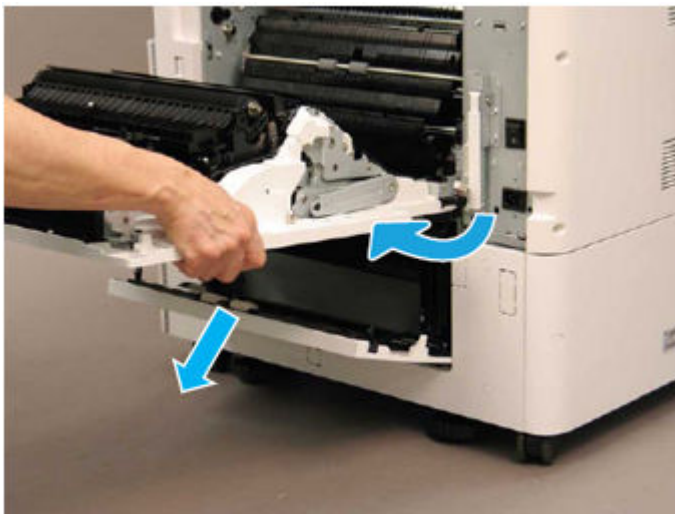
4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-646 Remove the door



8. Remove the exit unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit unit.

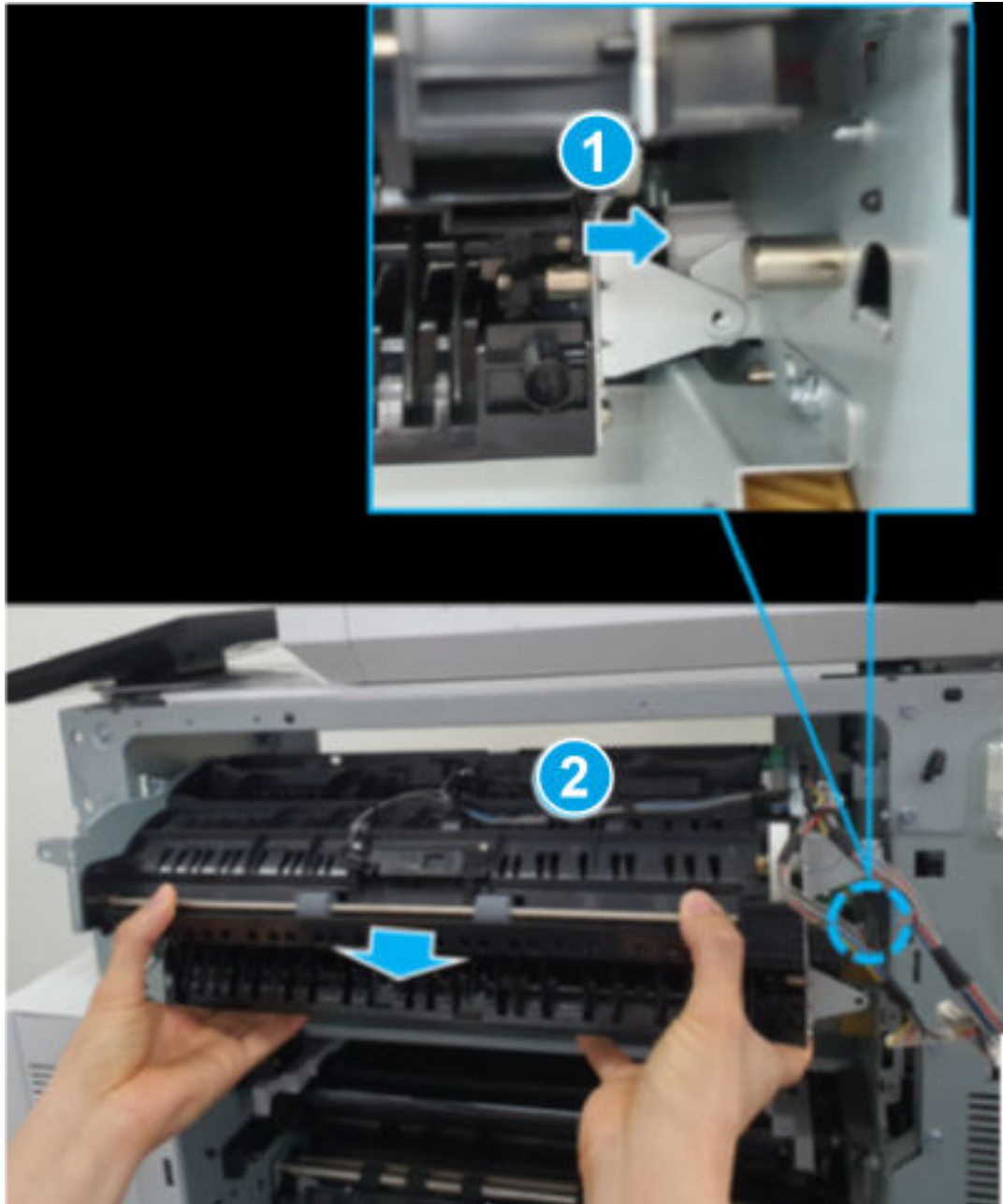
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 6-647 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Push in on the white-plastic coupler (callout 1), and then pull the exit unit straight out to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-648 Remove the unit

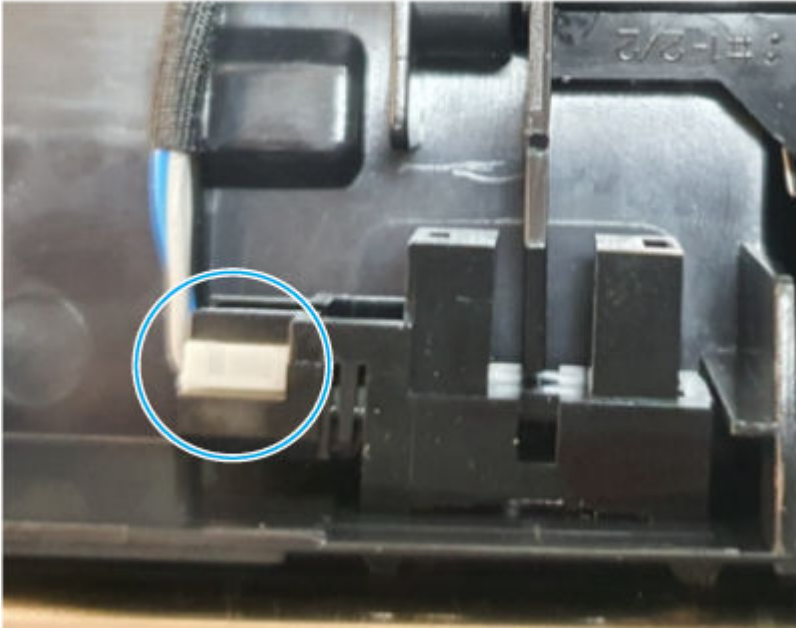


9. Remove the exit 2 sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit 2 motor.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-649 Disconnect one connector



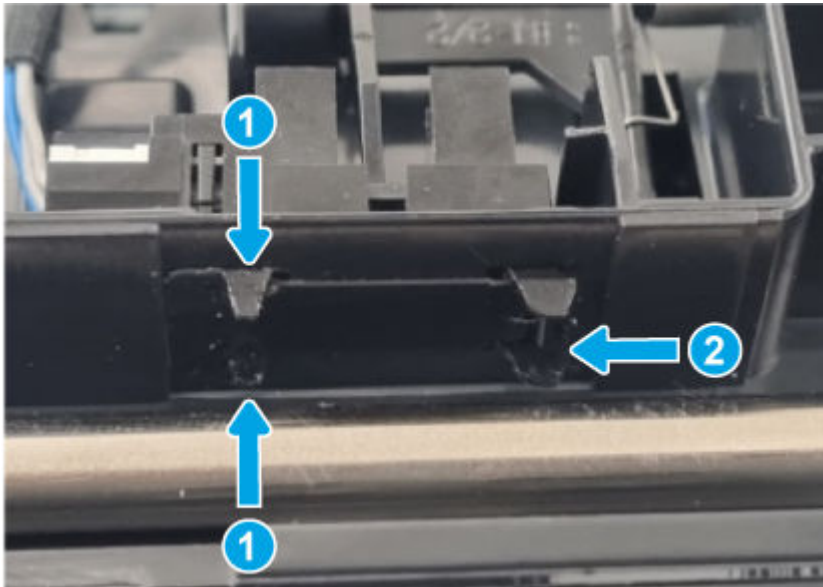
2. Do the following:



NOTE: The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

- Release the hooks (callout 1).
- Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
- Remove the sensor.

Figure 6-650 Remove the sensor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Duplex jam 1 sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the duplex jam 1 sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the duplex jam 1 sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-71 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (duplex jam 1 sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser assembly.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-651 Remove four screws



3. Pull the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-652 Remove the fuser



2. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

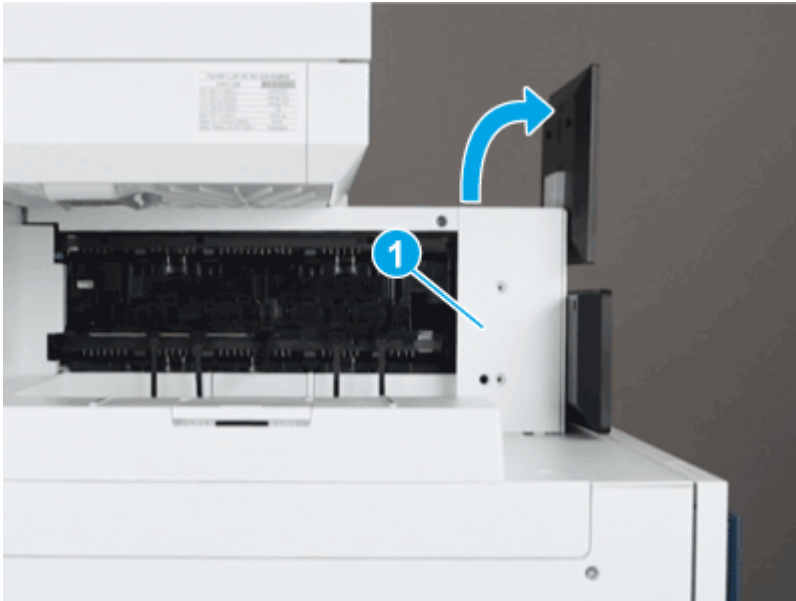
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-653 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-654 Remove the cover



3. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.



NOTE: The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-655 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-656 Remove one screw



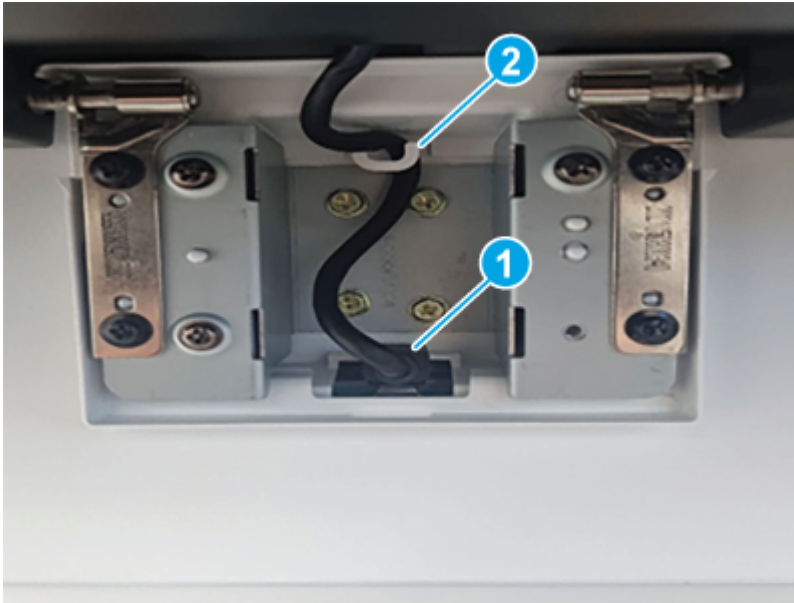
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-657 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-658 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-659 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-660 Remove the keyboard



4. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

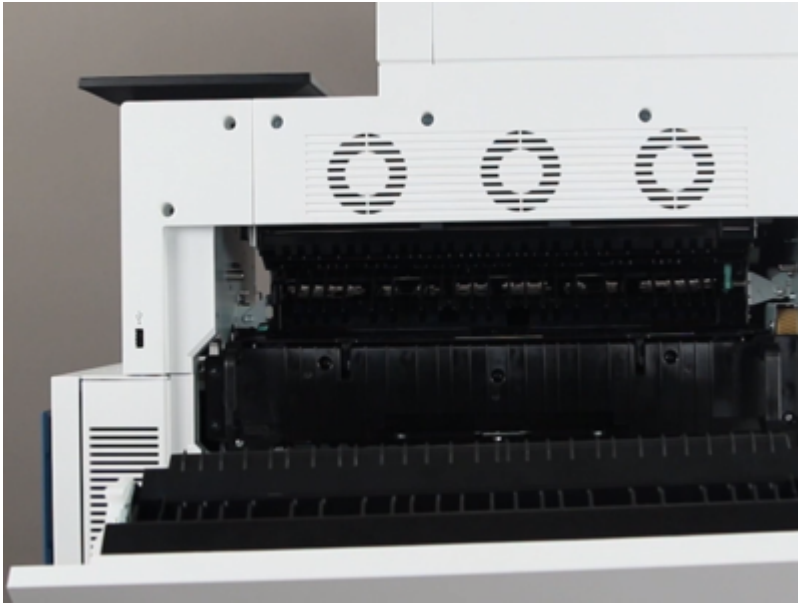
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-661 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-662 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

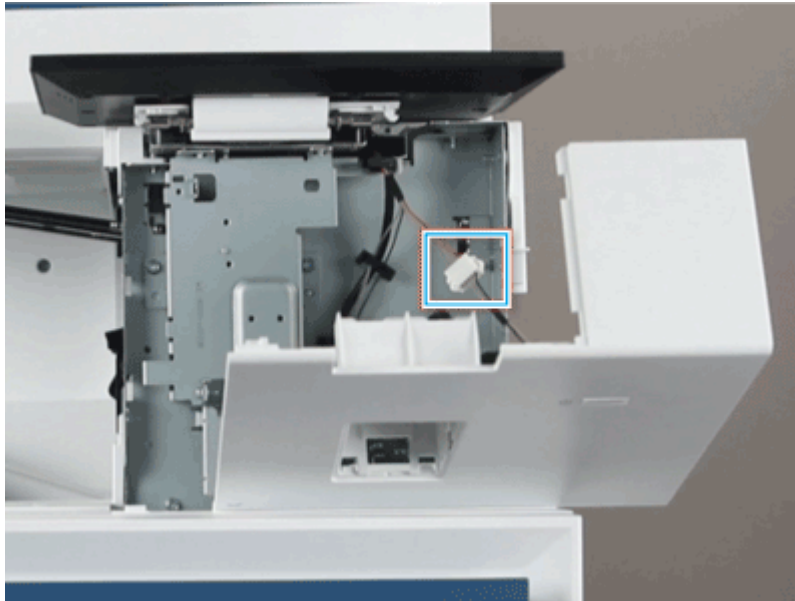
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-663 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-664 Remove the cover assembly

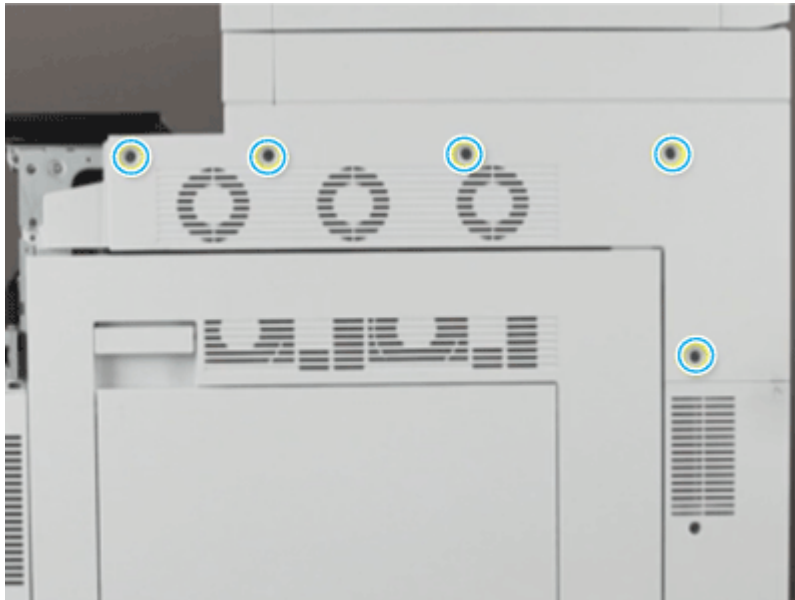


5. Remove the right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right upper cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-665 Remove five screws



2. Remove one screw (circled), and then carefully slide the cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-666 Remove the cover



6. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-667 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-668 Remove the cover



7. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

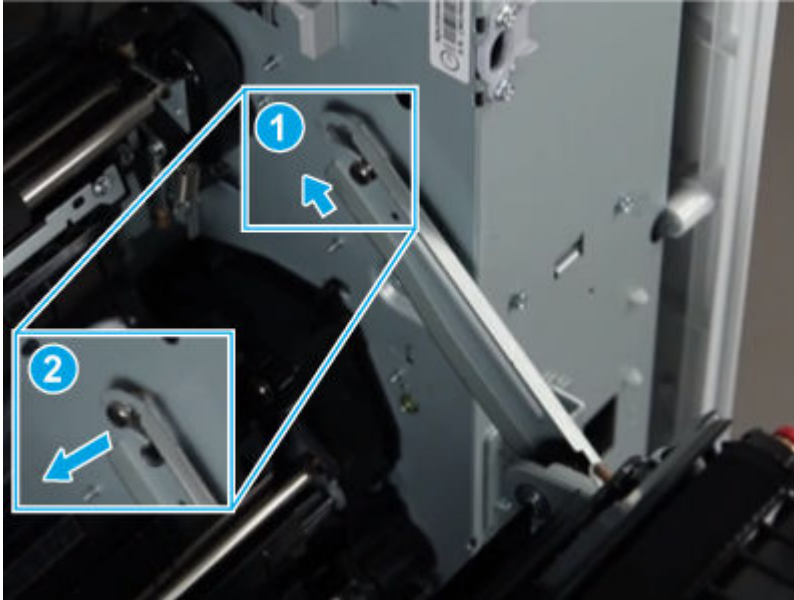
Figure 6-669 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

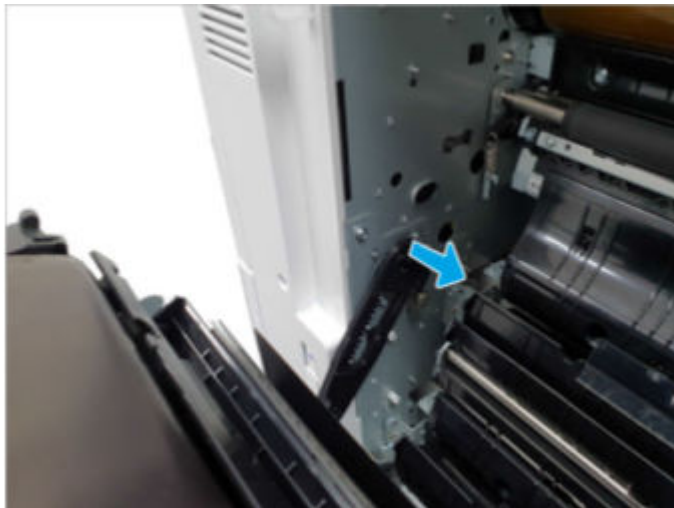
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-670 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-671 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

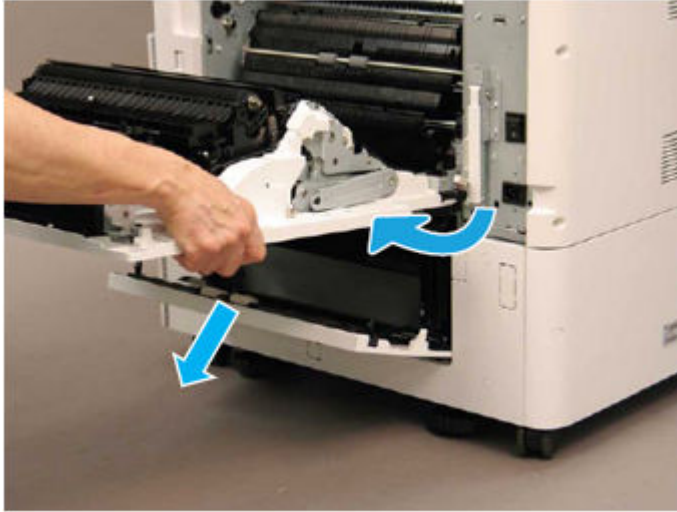


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-672 Remove the door



8. Remove the exit unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit unit.

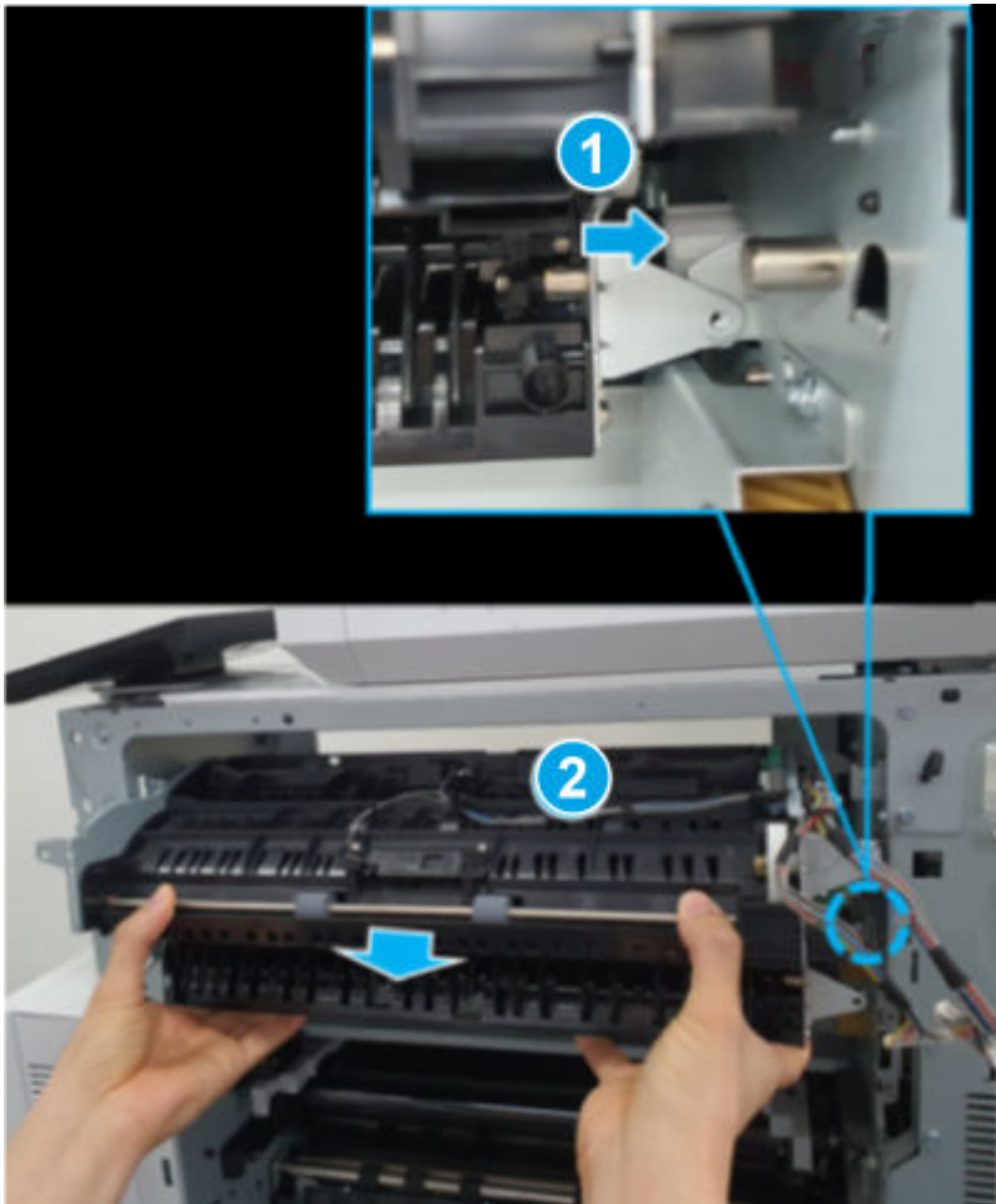
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 6-673 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Push in on the white-plastic coupler (callout 1), and then pull the exit unit straight out to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-674 Remove the unit

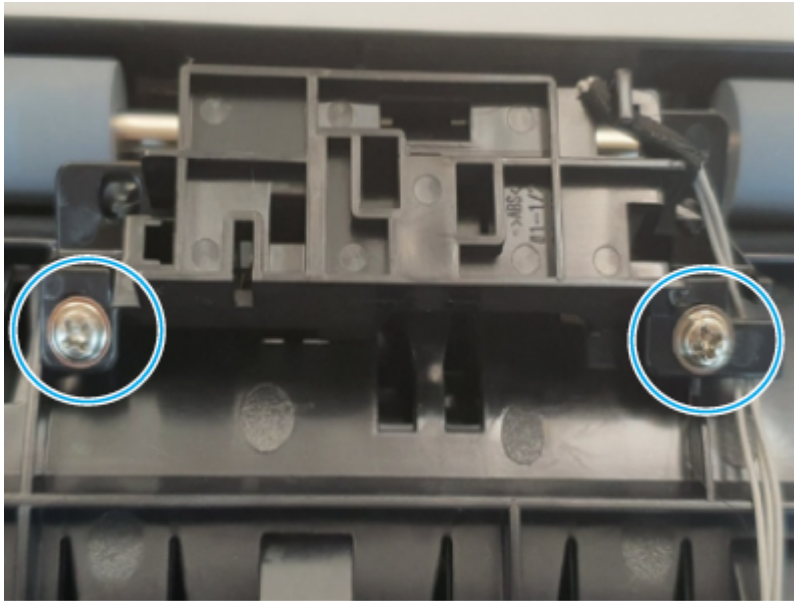


9. Remove the duplex jam 1 sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex jam 1 sensor.

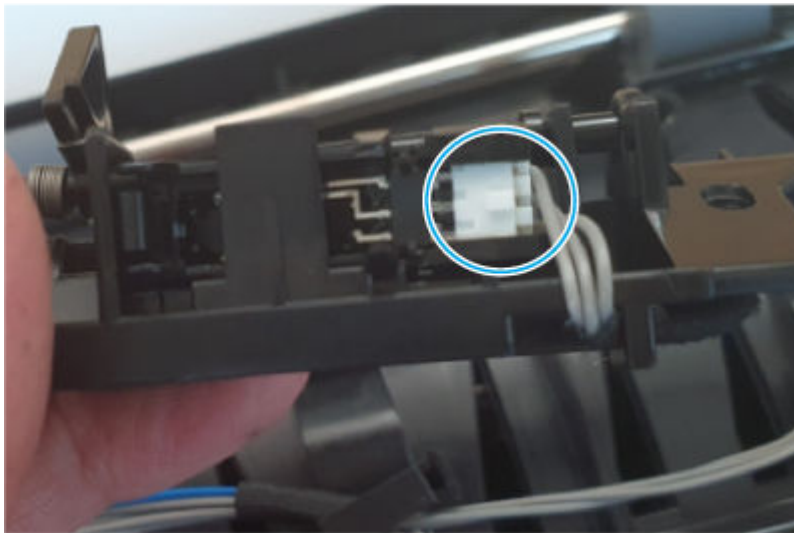
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-675 Remove two screws



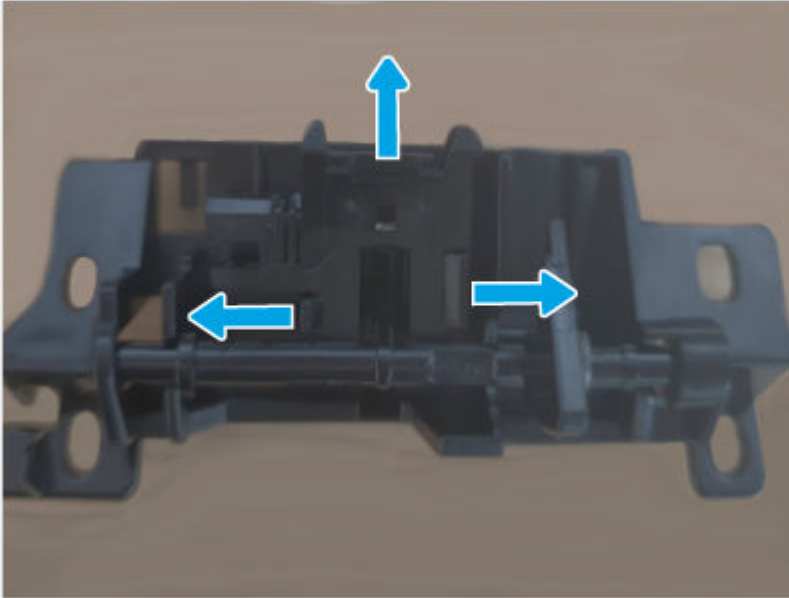
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-676 Disconnect one connector



3. Release three hooks, and then remove the duplex jam 1 sensor.


Figure 6-677 Remove the sensor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Duplex 1 motor

Learn about removing and replacing the duplex 1 motor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the duplex 1 motor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-72 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00336A	Drive-motor step (duplex 1 motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser assembly.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-678 Remove four screws



3. Pull the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-679 Remove the fuser



2. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-680 Remove two screws




2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-681 Remove the cover



3. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-682 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-683 Remove one screw



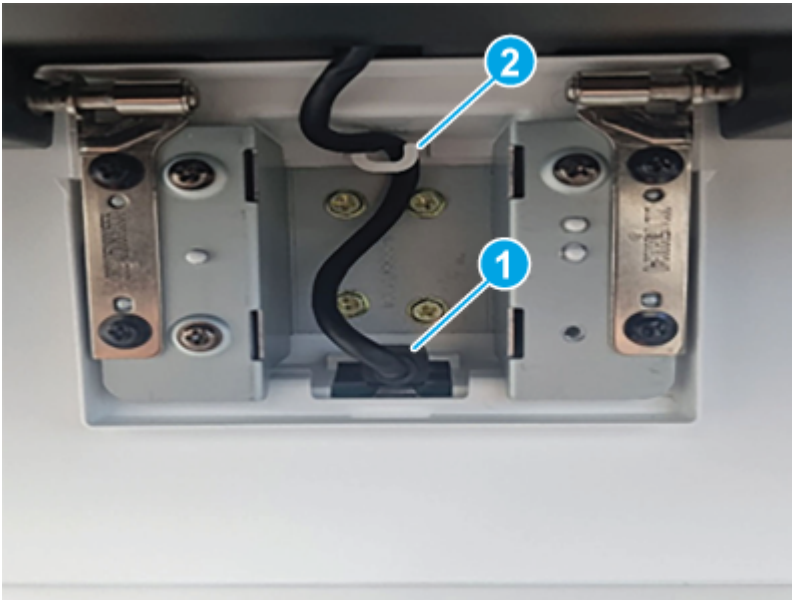
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-684 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-685 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-686 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-687 Remove the keyboard



4. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-688 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-689 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

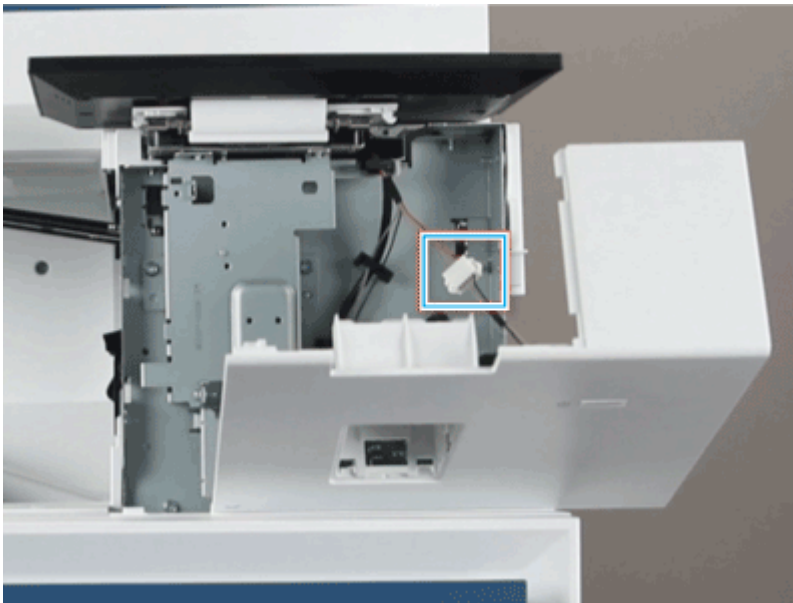
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-690 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-691 Remove the cover assembly



5. Remove the right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right upper cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-692 Remove five screws



2. Remove one screw (circled), and then carefully slide the cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-693 Remove the cover



6. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

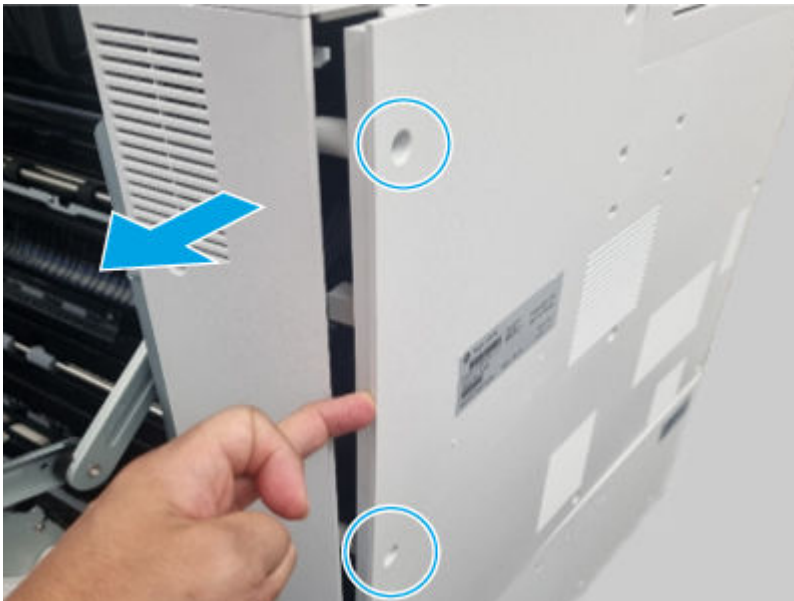
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-694 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-695 Remove the cover



7. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

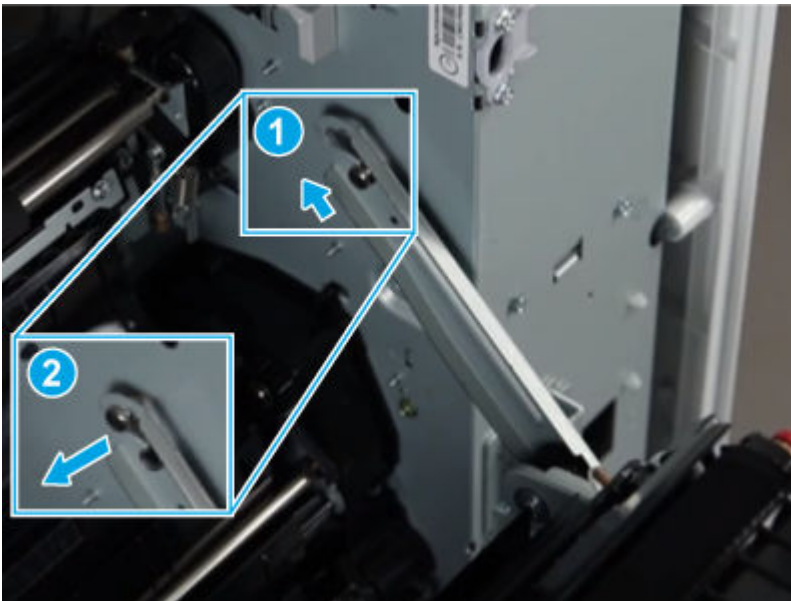
Figure 6-696 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

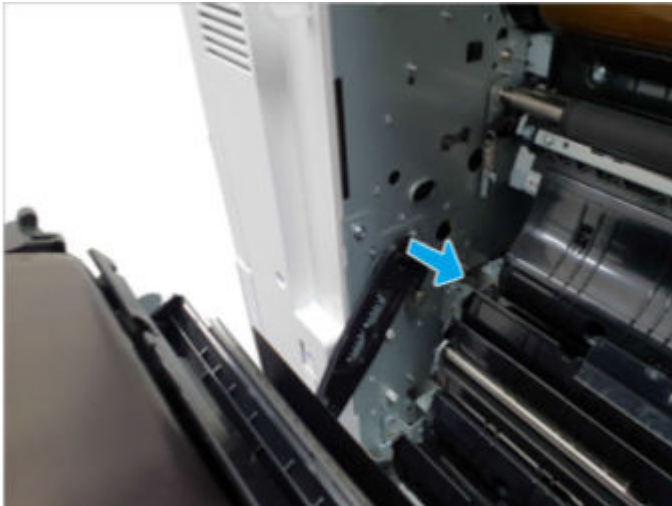
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-697 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-698 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

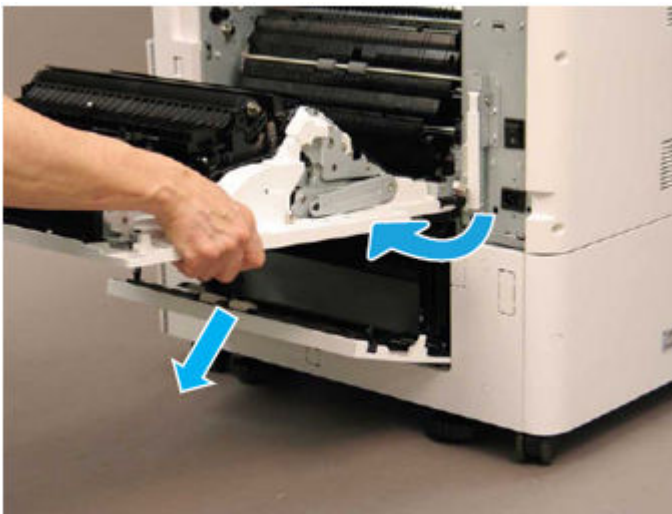


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-699 Remove the door



8. Remove the exit unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit unit.

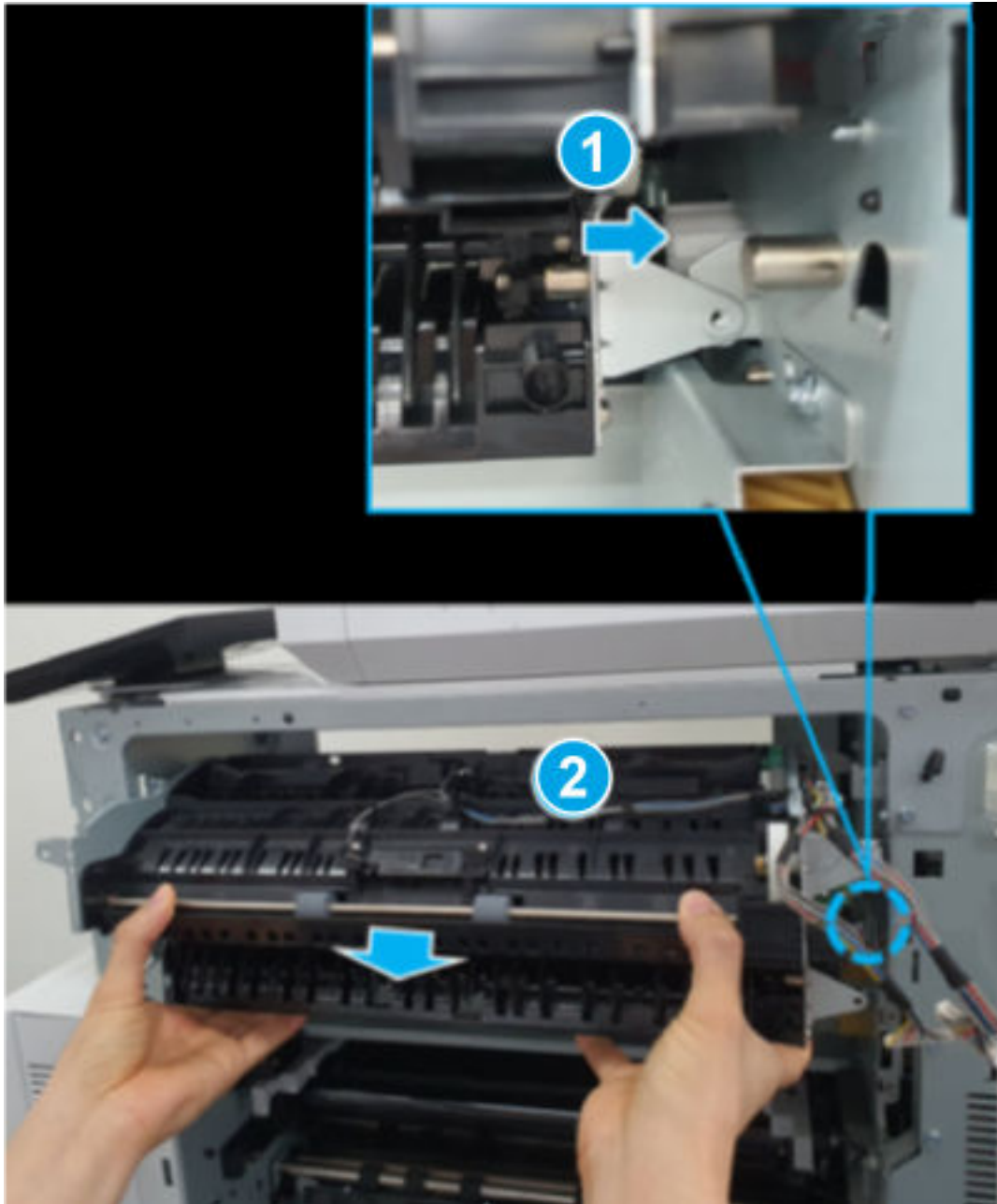
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove four screws.

Figure 6-700 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Push in on the white-plastic coupler (callout 1), and then pull the exit unit straight out to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-701 Remove the unit

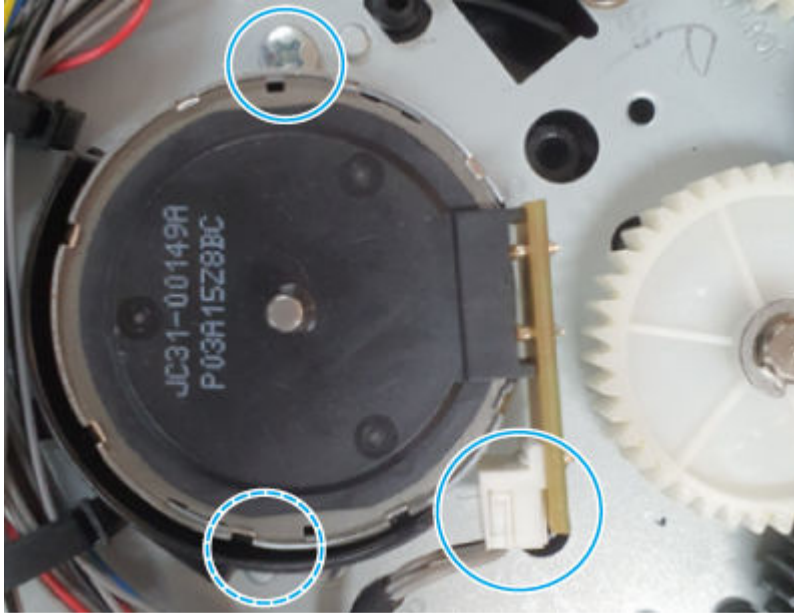


9. Remove the duplex 1 motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex 1 motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the duplex 1 motor.

Figure 6-702 Remove the motor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit stack guide

Learn about removing and replacing the exit stack guide.



[View a video of removing and replacing the exit stack guide.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-73 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01865A	Exit stack guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

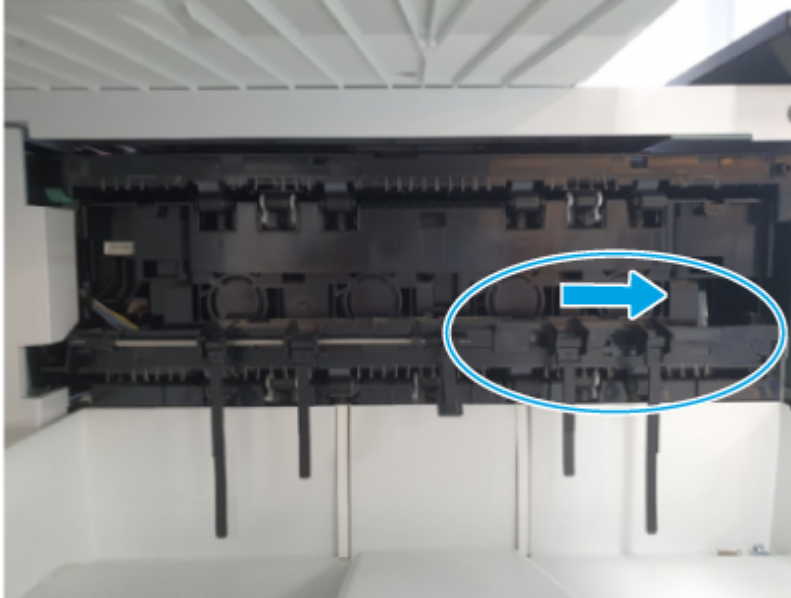
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the exit stack guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit stack guide.

- Slide the exit stack guide to the right to remove it.

Figure 6-703 Remove the guide




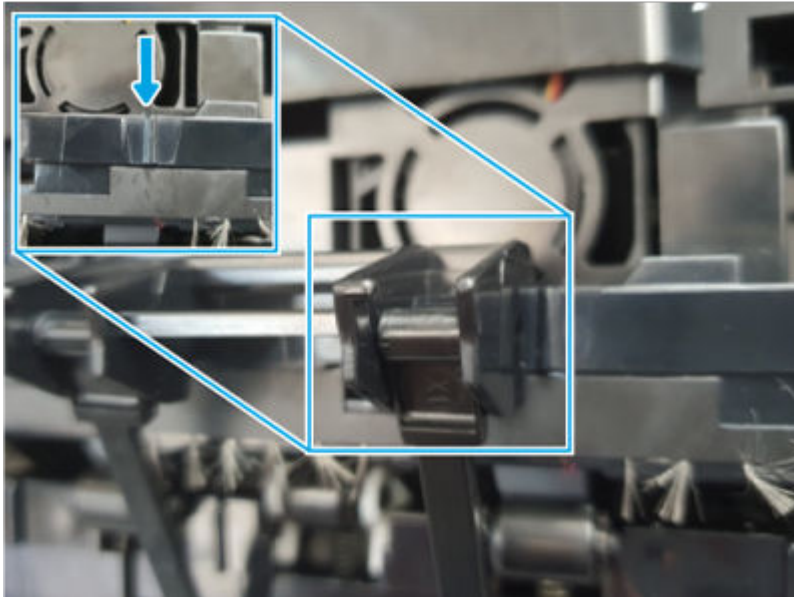
 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the guide over the holder, and then push it down to install it.


Figure 6-704 Reinstall the guide



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Duplex unit

Learn about duplex unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Duplex assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the duplex assembly.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the duplex assembly.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-74 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02250A	Duplex assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

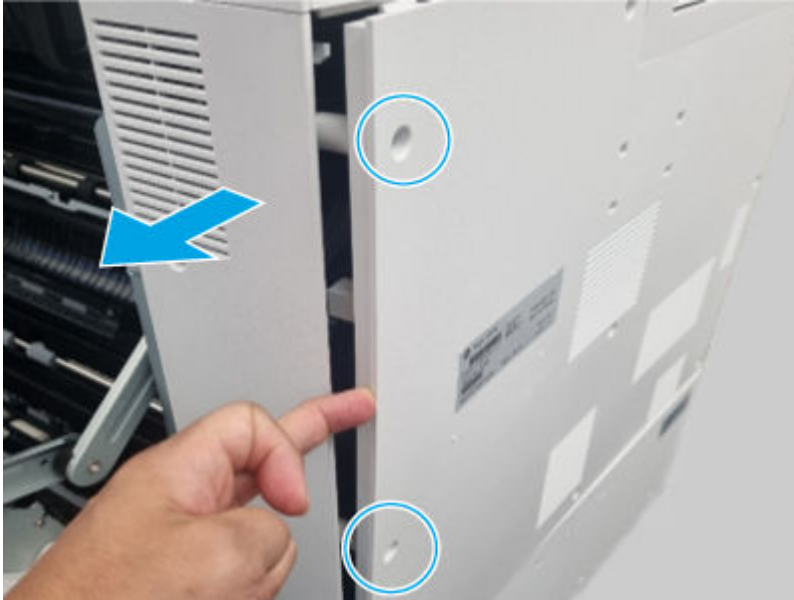
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-705 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-706 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

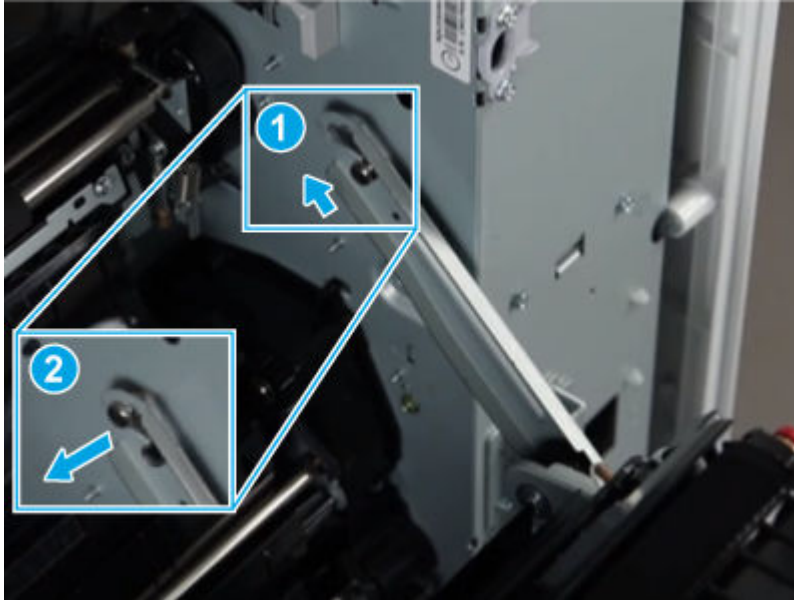
Figure 6-707 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

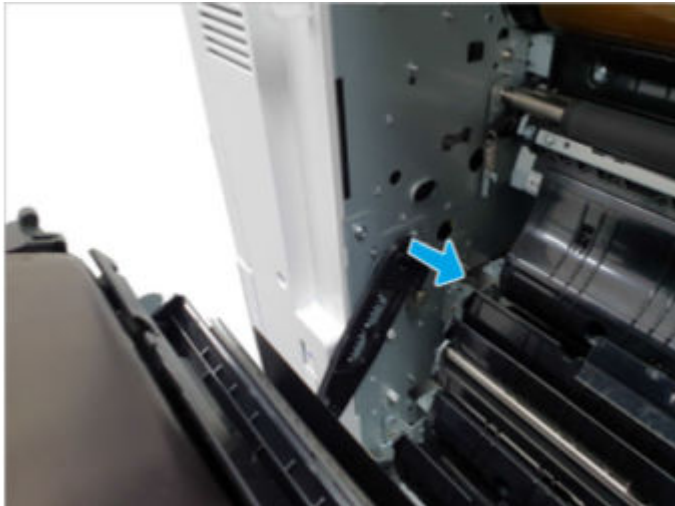
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-708 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-709 Release the link



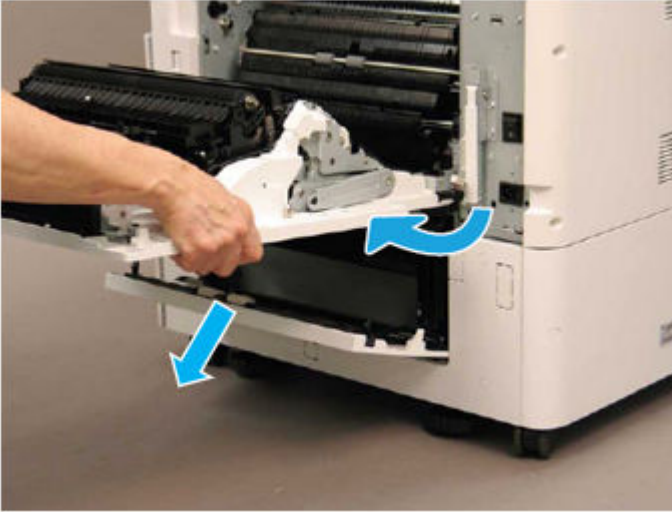
4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-710 Remove the door

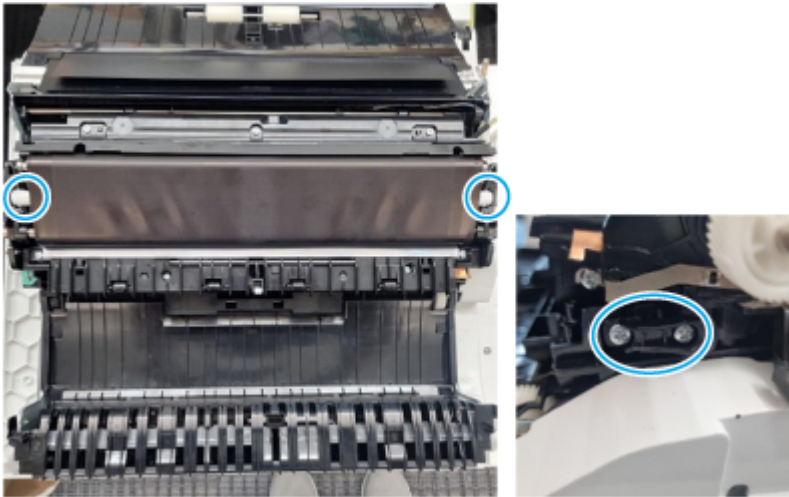


3. Remove the paper transfer belt (PTB)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the PTB.

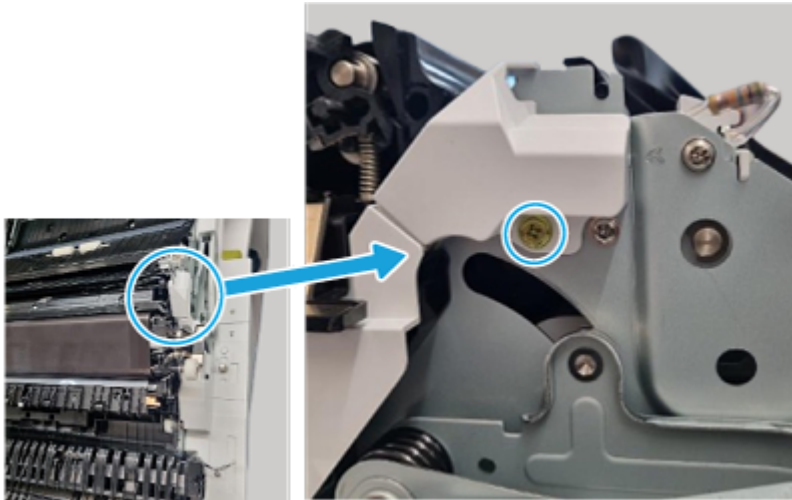
1. Remove four screws (two screws on each side).

Figure 6-711 Remove four screws



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-712 Remove the cover



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the PTB.

Figure 6-713 Disconnect one connector

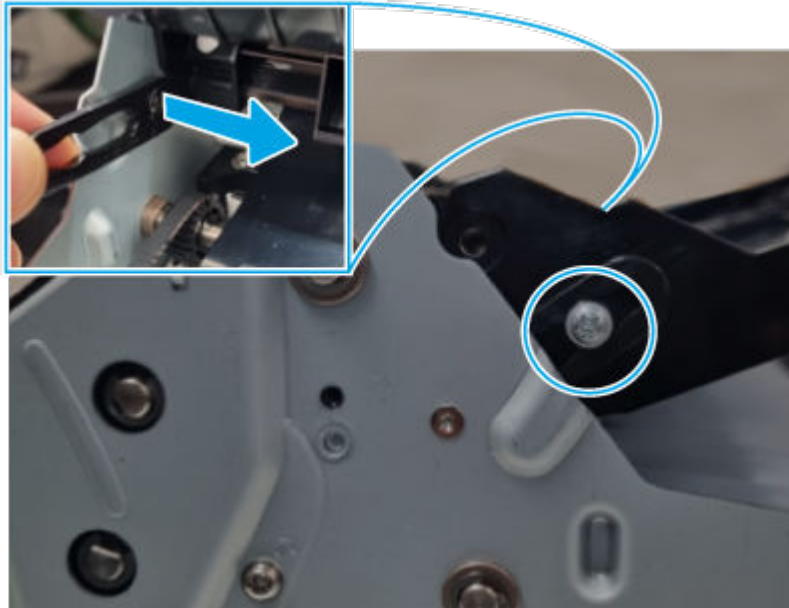


4. Remove the duplex assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex assembly.

1. Remove one screw, and then disengage the guide rail.

Figure 6-714 Disengage the guide rail



2. Remove one e-ring, and then slide the shaft to the right to release it.


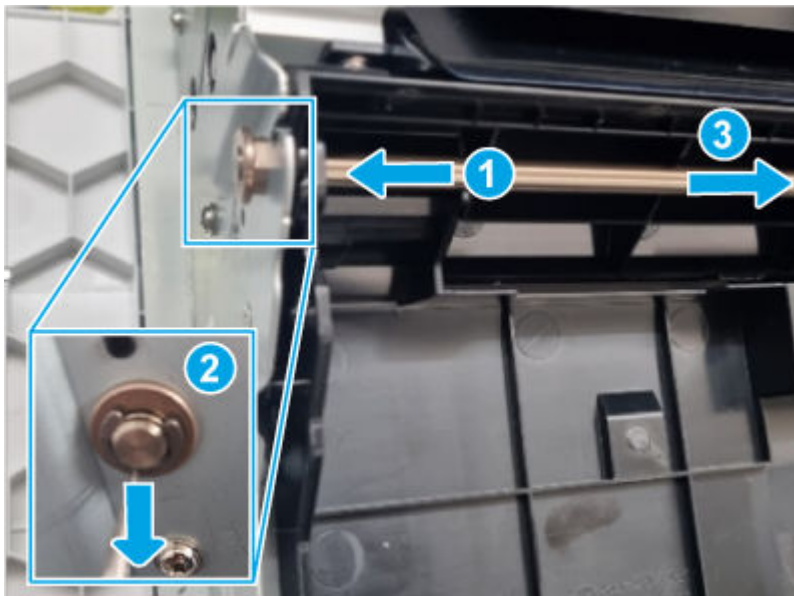
 **NOTE:** To easily remove the e-ring, slightly slide the shaft away from the assembly to loosen the e-ring, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove it.

Figure 6-715 Remove the e-reing



3. Remove one screw (on the side of the assembly).

Figure 6-716 Remove one screw



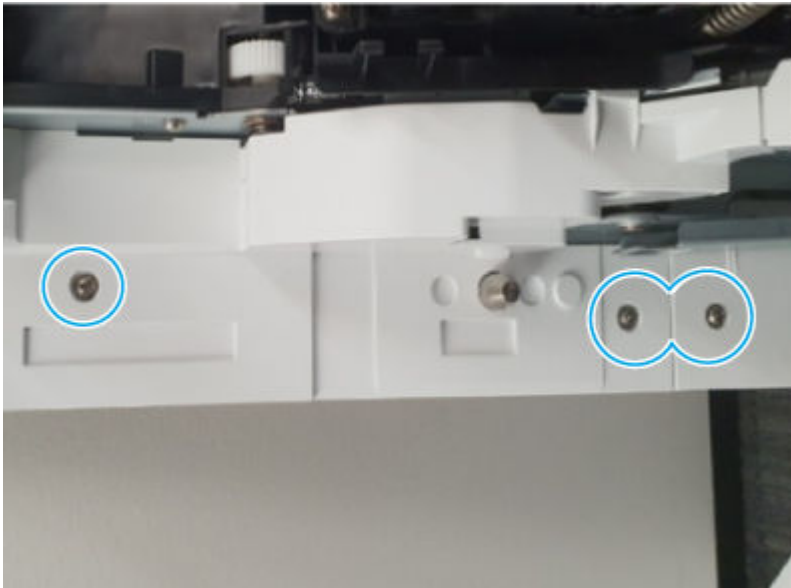
4. Remove one screw (on the side of the assembly).

Figure 6-717 Remove one screw



5. Remove three screws (on the right door), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-718 Remove three screws



6. Disconnect one connector, and then lift the duplex assembly up to remove it.

Figure 6-719 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Duplex jam 2 sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the duplex jam 2 sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the duplex jam 2 sensor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-75 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (duplex jam 2 sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

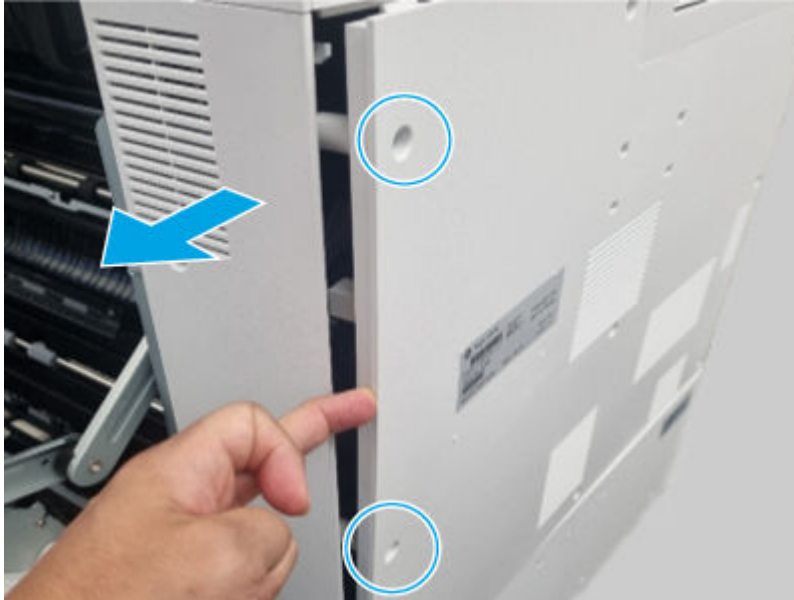
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-720 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-721 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

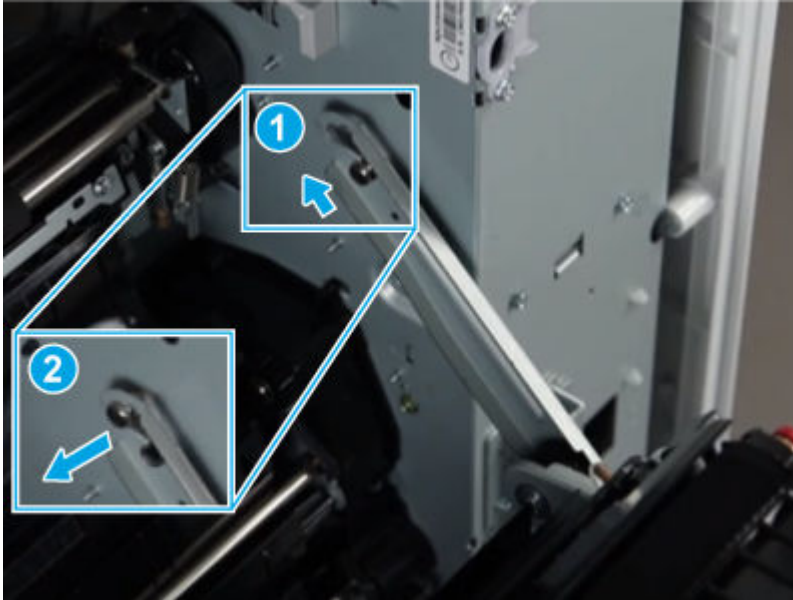
Figure 6-722 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

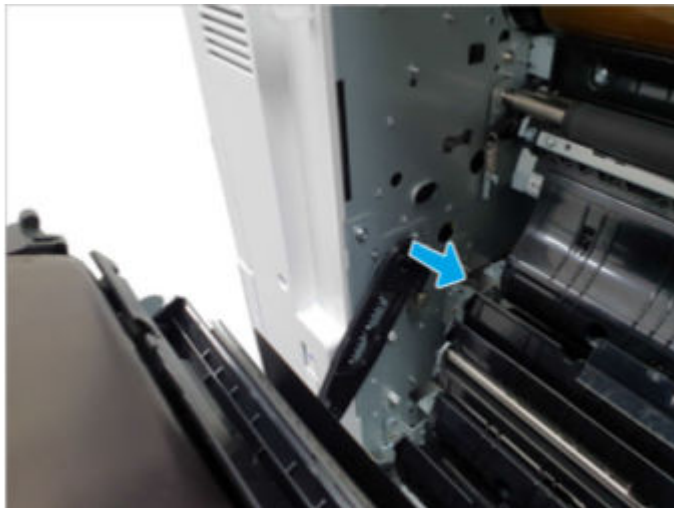
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-723 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-724 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

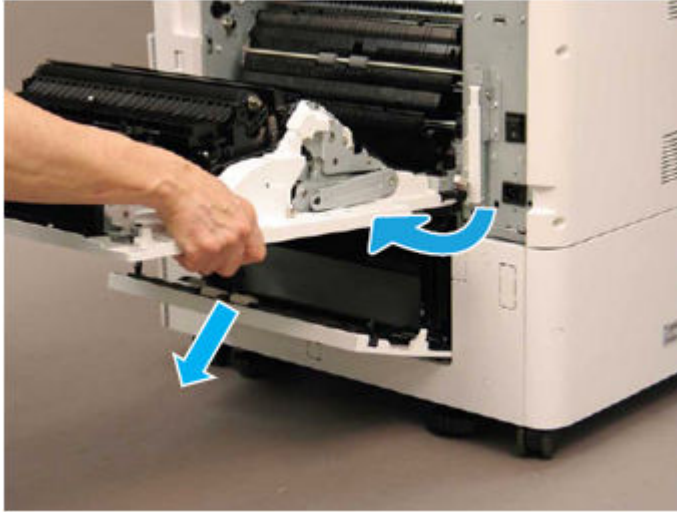


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-725 Remove the door

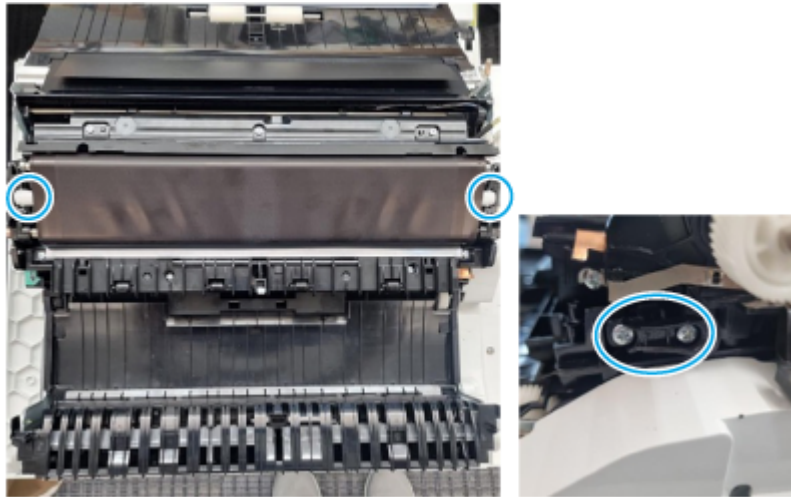


3. Remove the paper transfer belt (PTB)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the PTB.

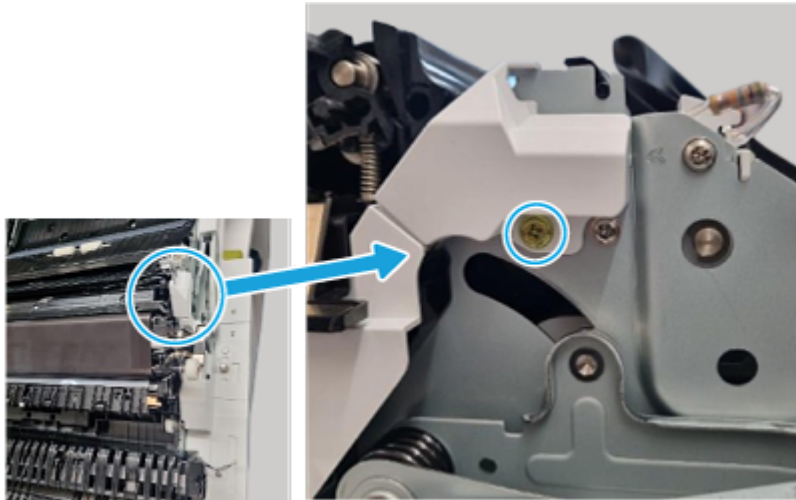
1. Remove four screws (two screws on each side).

Figure 6-726 Remove four screws



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-727 Remove the cover



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the PTB.

Figure 6-728 Disconnect one connector

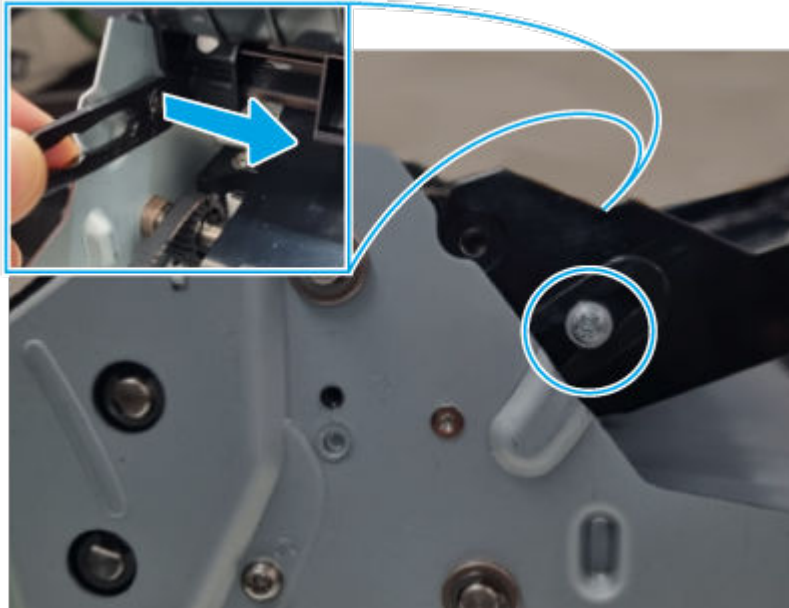


4. Remove the duplex assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex assembly.

1. Remove one screw, and then disengage the guide rail.

Figure 6-729 Disengage the guide rail



2. Remove one e-ring, and then slide the shaft to the right to release it.


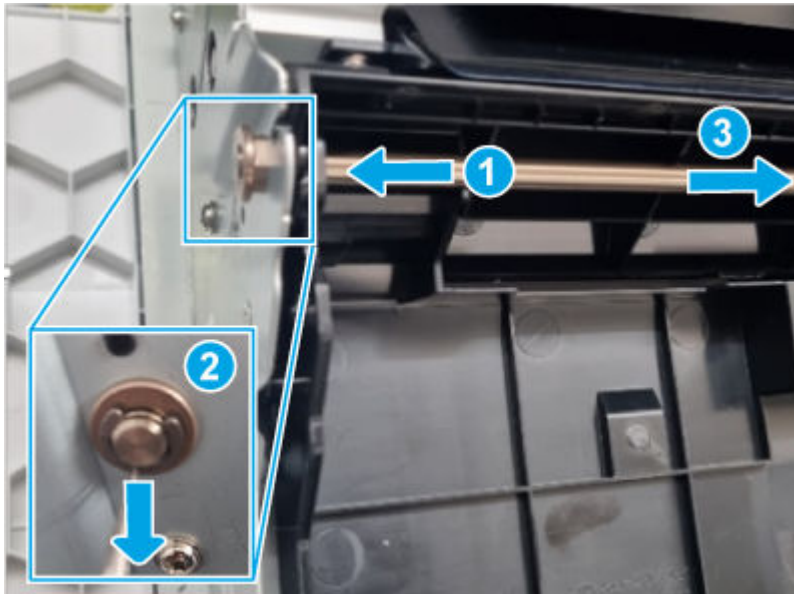
 **NOTE:** To easily remove the e-ring, slightly slide the shaft away from the assembly to loosen the e-ring, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove it.

Figure 6-730 Remove the e-reing



3. Remove one screw (on the side of the assembly).

Figure 6-731 Remove one screw



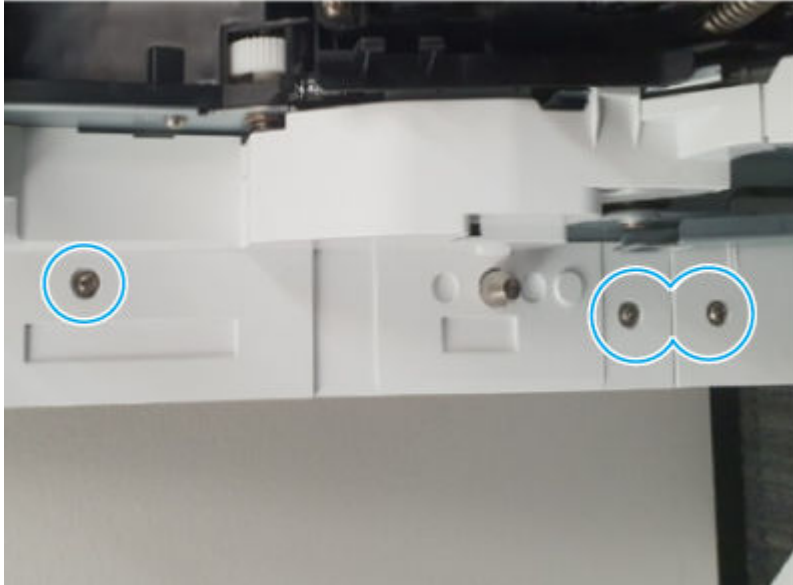
4. Remove one screw (on the side of the assembly).

Figure 6-732 Remove one screw



5. Remove three screws (on the right door), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-733 Remove three screws



6. Disconnect one connector, and then lift the duplex assembly up to remove it.

Figure 6-734 Remove the assembly

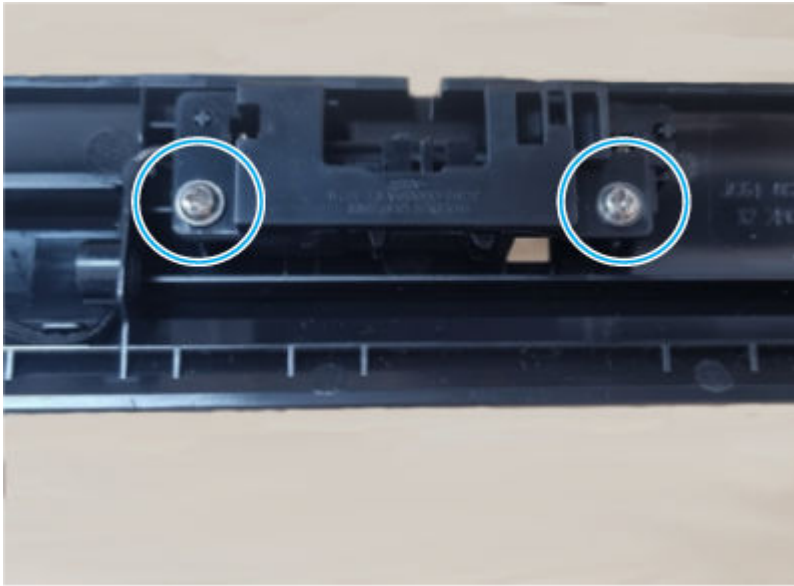


5. Remove the duplex jam 2 sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex jam 2 sensor.

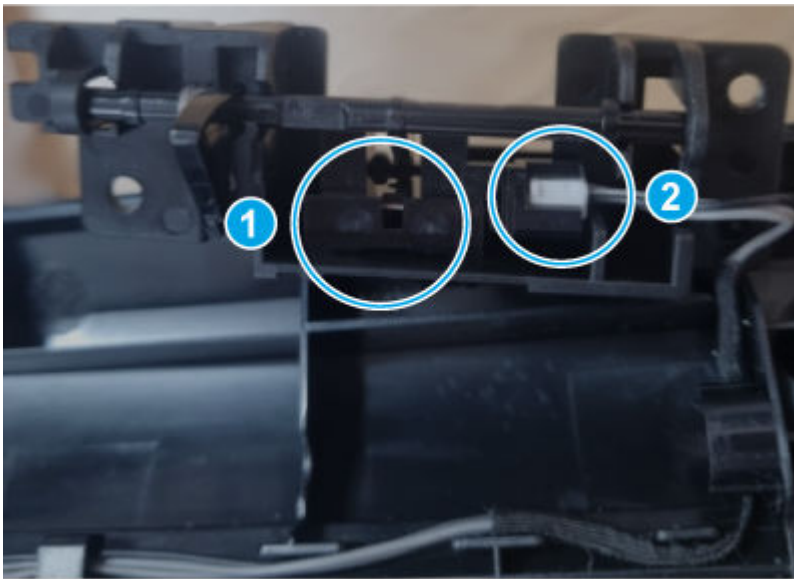
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-735 Remove two screws



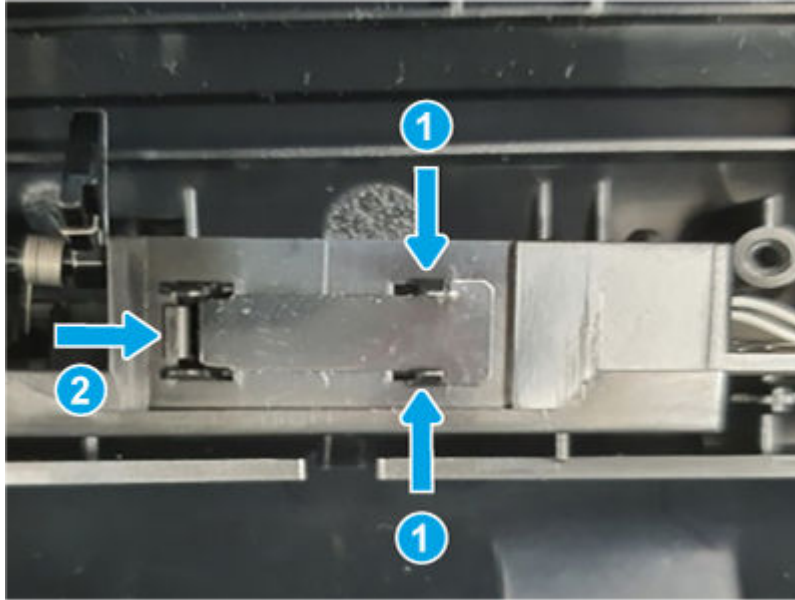
2. Remove the actuator, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-736 Disconnect one connector



3. Turn the duplex assembly over, and then do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly to the right (callout 2).
 - Remove the sensor.

Figure 6-737 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Duplex 2 motor

Learn about removing and replacing the duplex 2 motor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the duplex 2 motor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-76 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01085A	Drive-motor step (duplex 2 motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

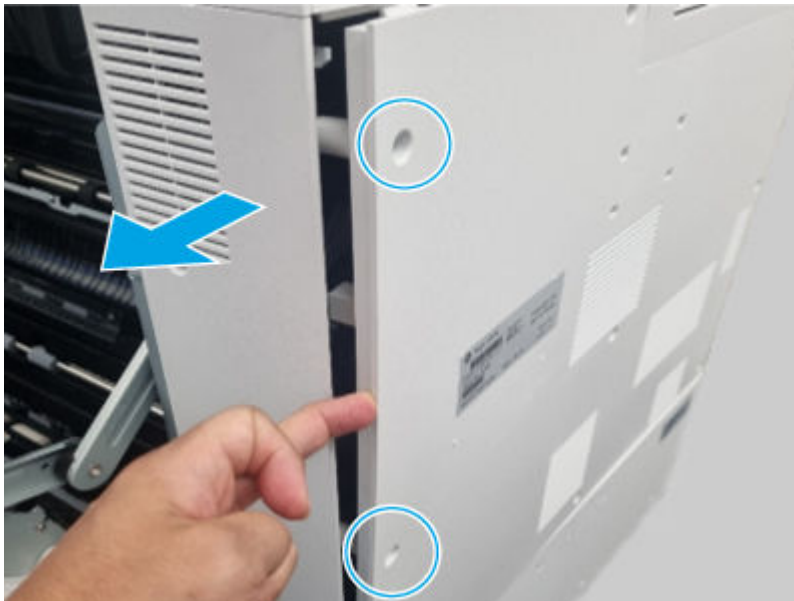
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-738 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-739 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

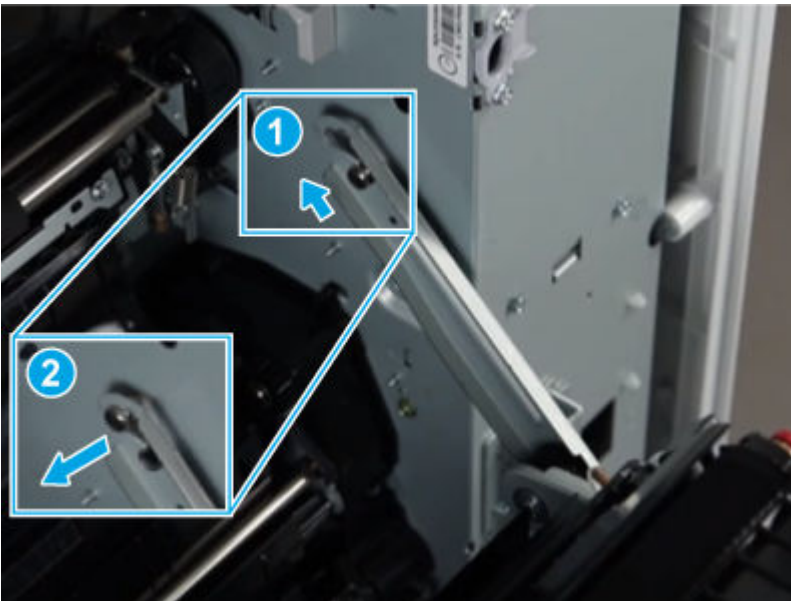
Figure 6-740 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

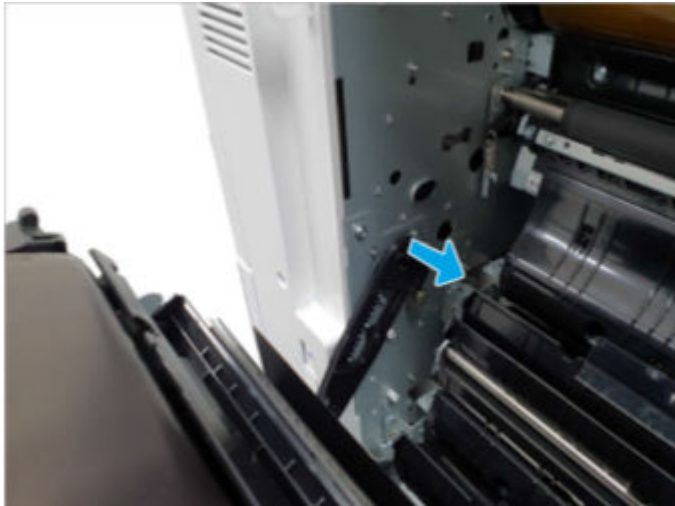
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-741 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-742 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


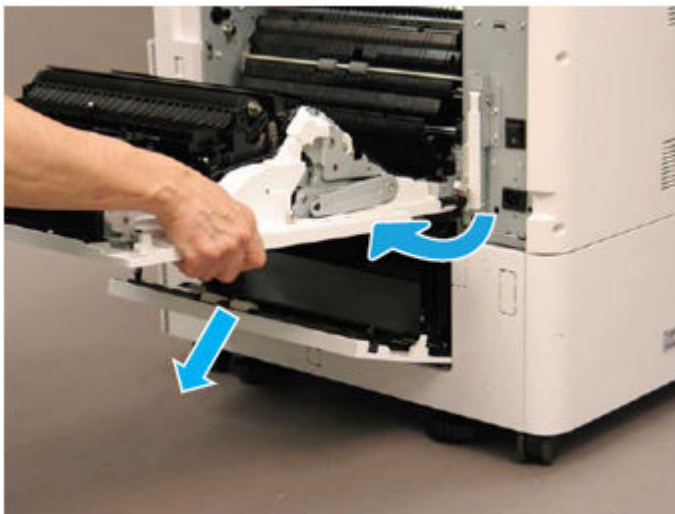
 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-743 Remove the door

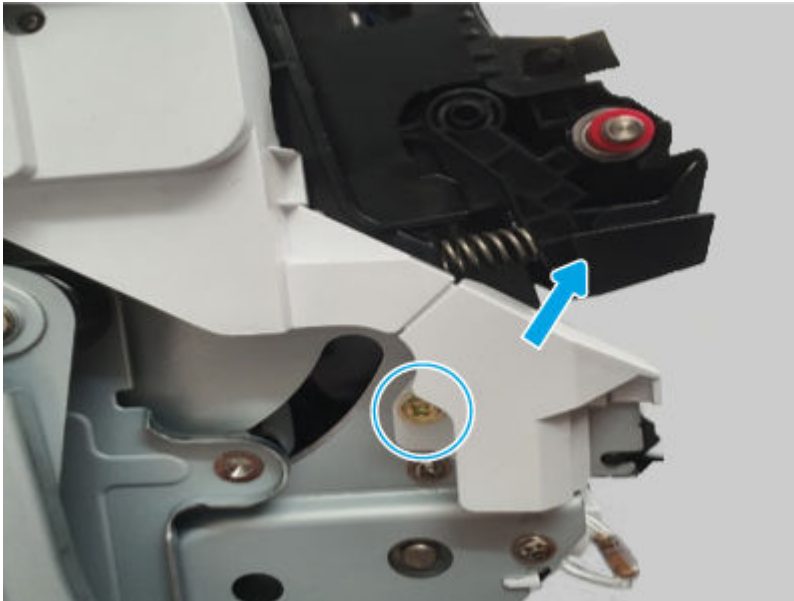


3. Remove the duplex 2 motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex 2 motor.

1. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-744 Remove the cover



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-745 Remove one screw



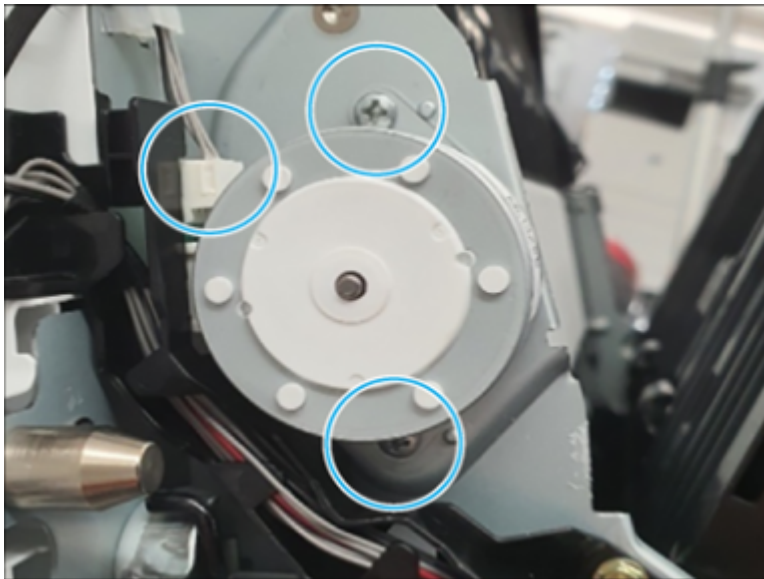
3. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-746 Remove the cover



4. Remove two screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the duplex 2 motor.

Figure 6-747 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner flow

Learn about toner flow parts removal and replacement.

Toner cartridge

Learn about toner cartridge parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Toner dispense motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the toner dispense motor assembly.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the toner dispense motor assembly.](#)


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-77 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01667A	Toner dispense motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

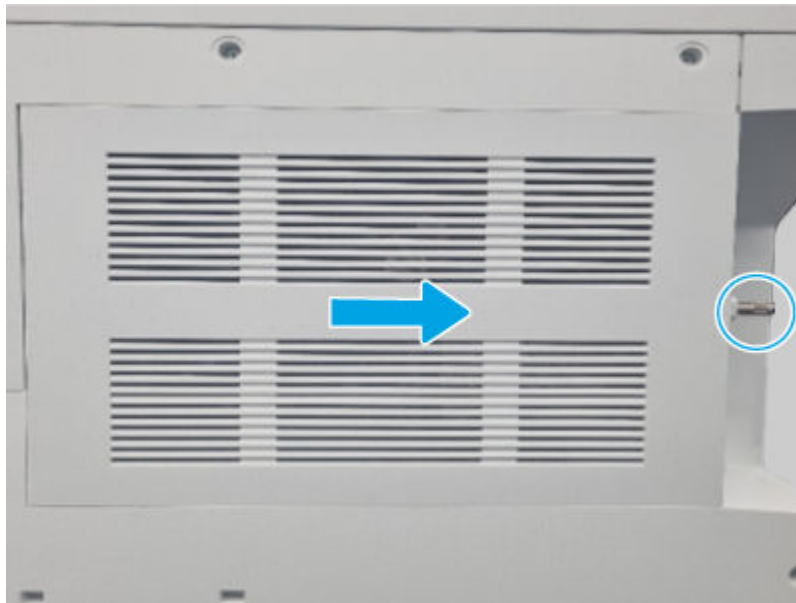
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-748 Remove the cover

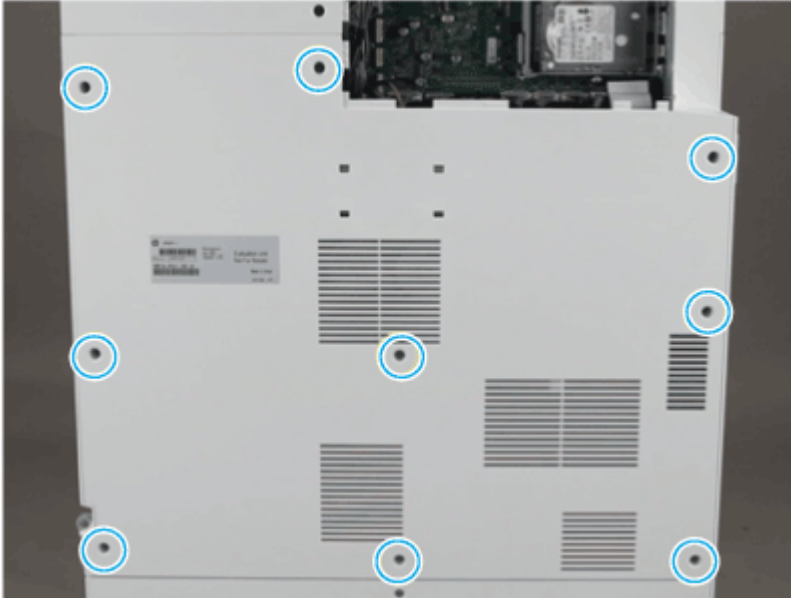


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-749 Remove the cover

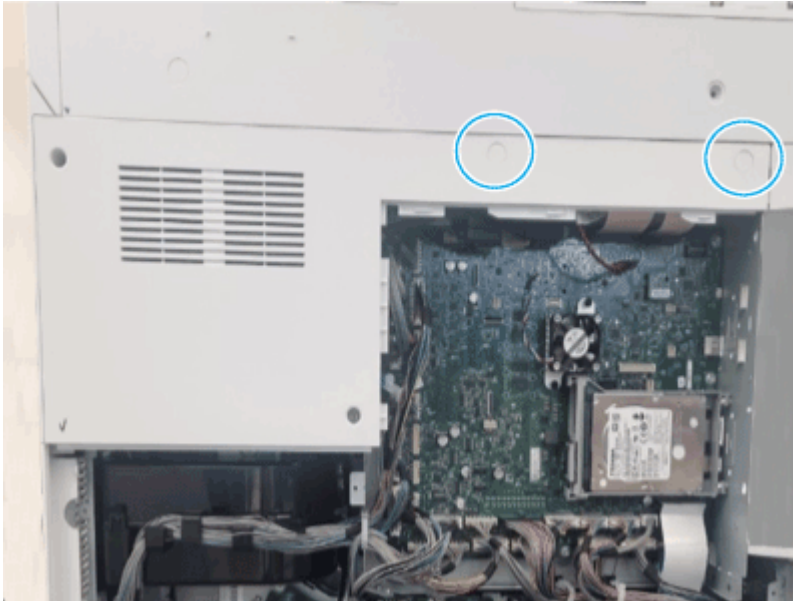


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

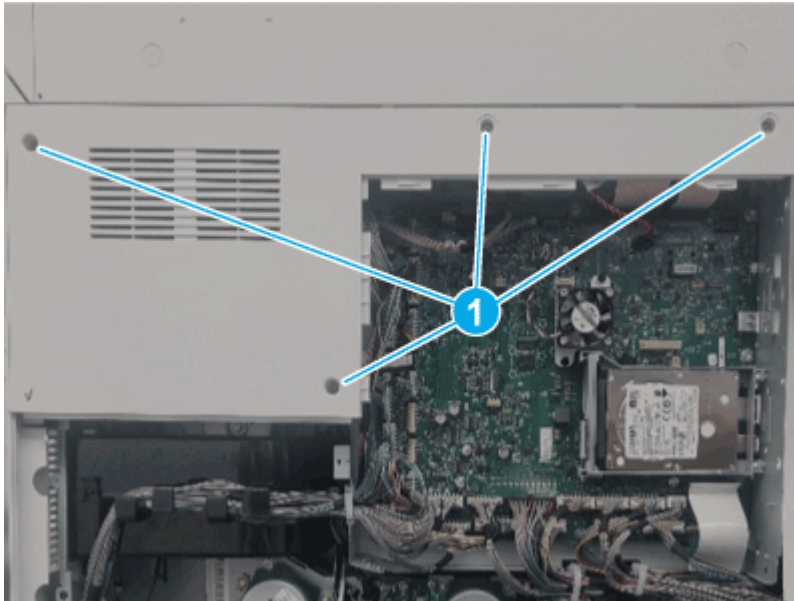
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-750 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-751 Remove the cover



4. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-752 Remove the cover



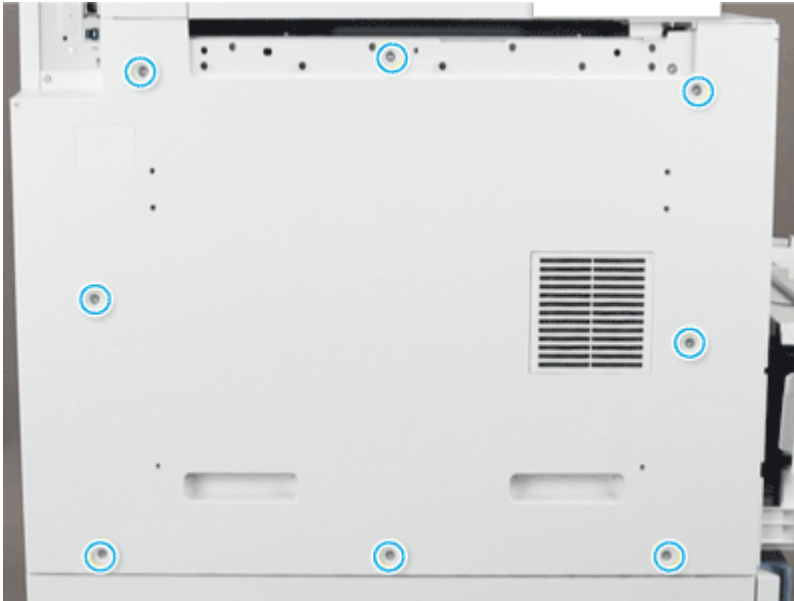
5. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

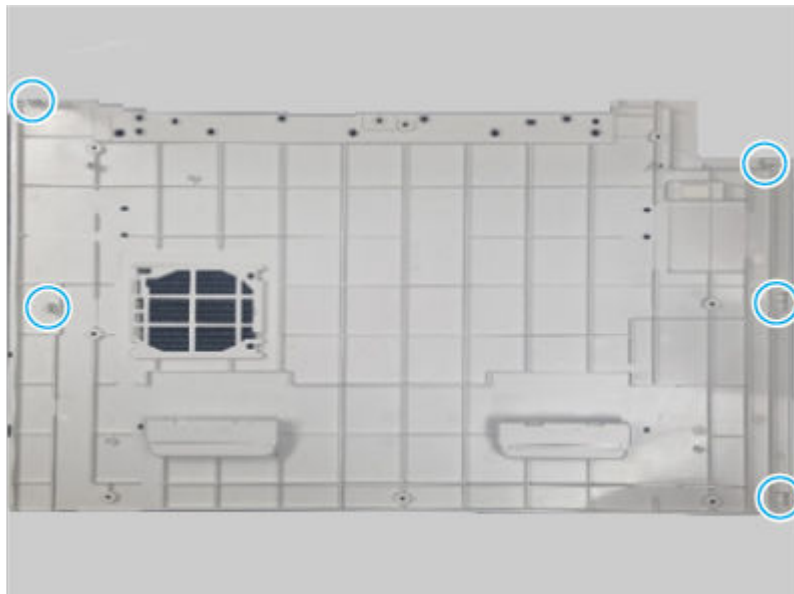
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-753 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-754 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-755 Remove the cover

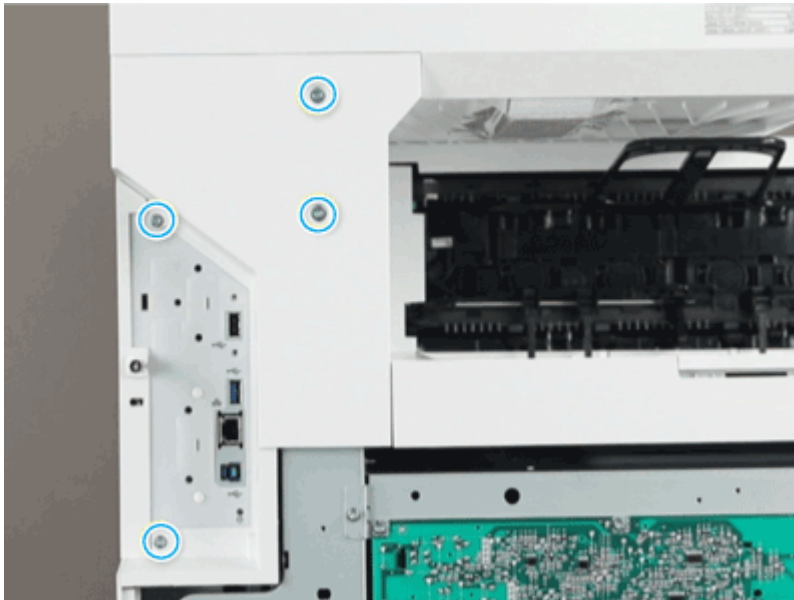


6. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.


- Remove four screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-756 Remove the cover



7. Remove the formatter and formatter bracket

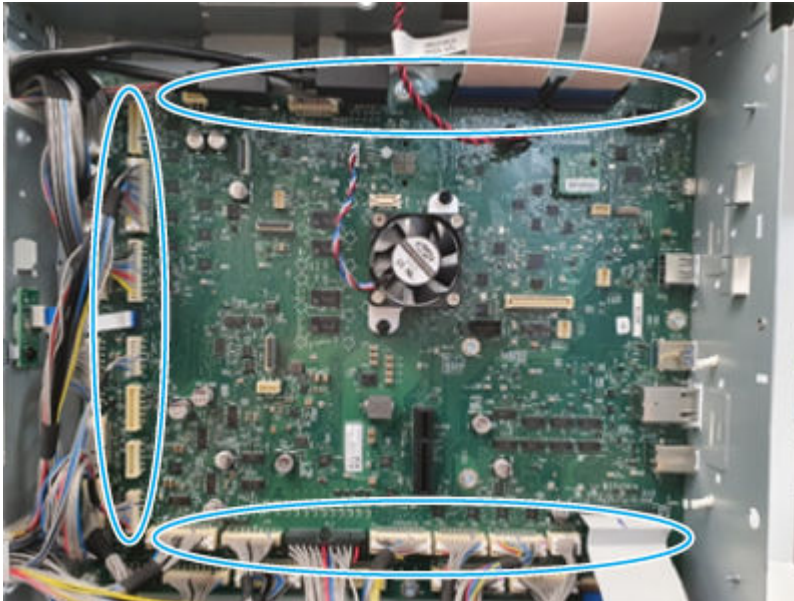
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the formatter and formatter bracket.

-  **NOTE:** Some of the figures in this topic might look different than the printer you are servicing. However, the procedure is correct for the E82XXX and E87XXX model printers.

Always read the instruction carefully to make sure you are performing the correct steps for the printer being serviced.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

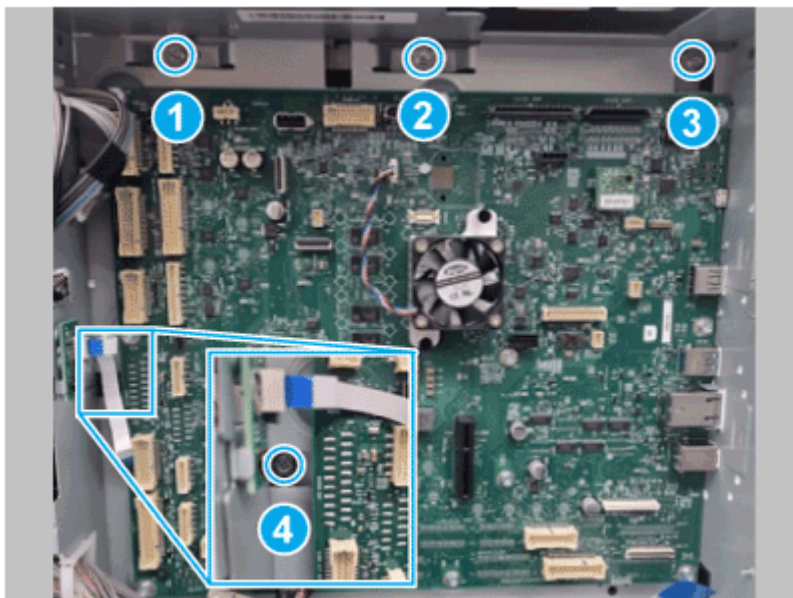
Figure 6-757 Disconnect all connectors



2. Do one of the following:

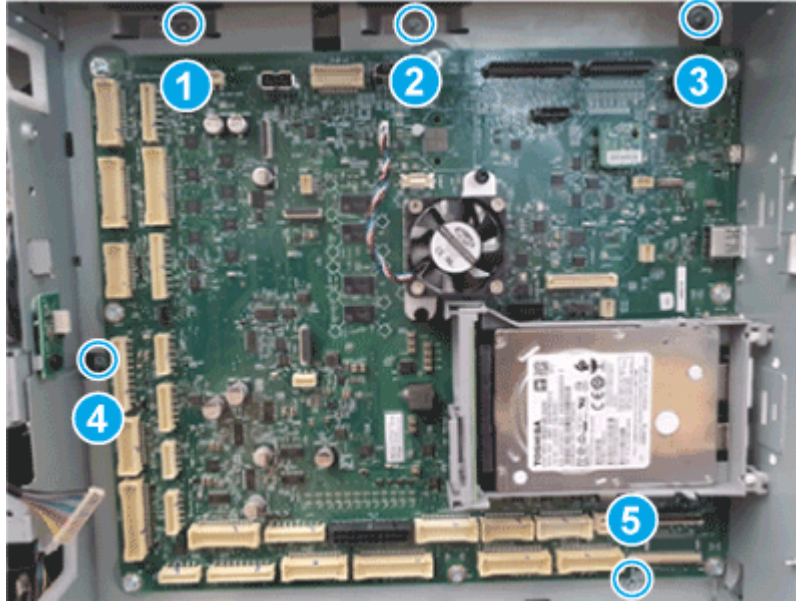
- **E82XXX models:** Remove four screws (callouts 1-2-3-4).

Figure 6-758 Remove four screws



- **E87XXX models:** Remove five screws (callouts 1-2-3-4-5).

Figure 6-759 Remove five screws



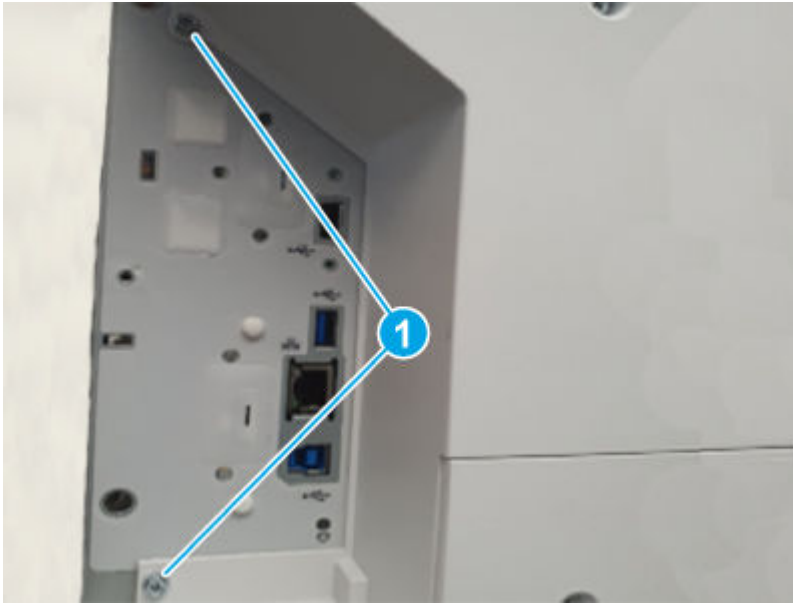
3. **E82XXX models only:** Support the formatter and bracket, remove one screw, and then remove the formatter and formatter bracket together.

Figure 6-760 Remove the formatter and bracket



4. **E87XXX models only:** Support the formatter and bracket, remove two screws (callout 10 and then remove the formatter and formatter bracket together..

Figure 6-761 Remove the formatter and bracket



8. Remove the toner cartridge (disassemble method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- On the toner dispense motor assembly, rotate the gear counterclockwise, to mechanically release the toner cartridge. Remove the toner cartridge from the front side of the printer.


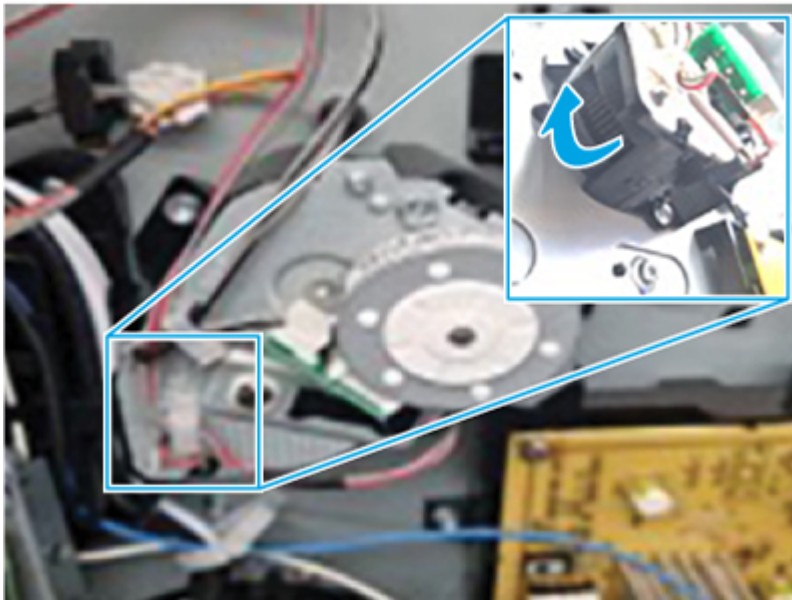
 **Reinstallation tip:** To prevent mechanical interference when installing the cartridge, first rotate the gear clockwise to return it to the home position, and then install the cartridge.

Figure 6-762 Rotate the gear



9. Remove the toner dispense motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor assembly.

- Remove three screws, and then remove the dispense motor assembly.


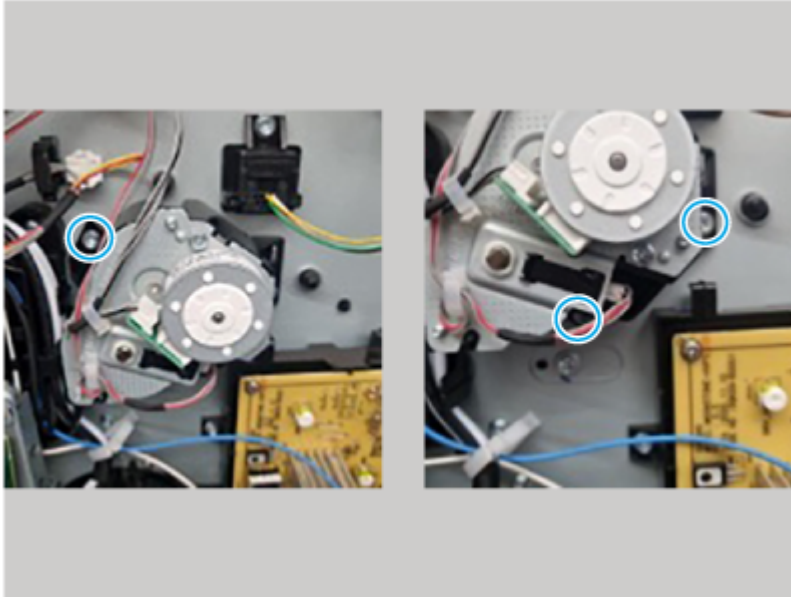
 **NOTE:** Disconnect connectors and release wire-harness retainers as needed to remove the assembly.


Figure 6-763 Remove the assembly



10. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner dispense motor

Learn about removing and replacing the toner dispense motor assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the toner dispense motor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-78 Part information

Part number	Part description
SS216-80501	Toner dispense motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

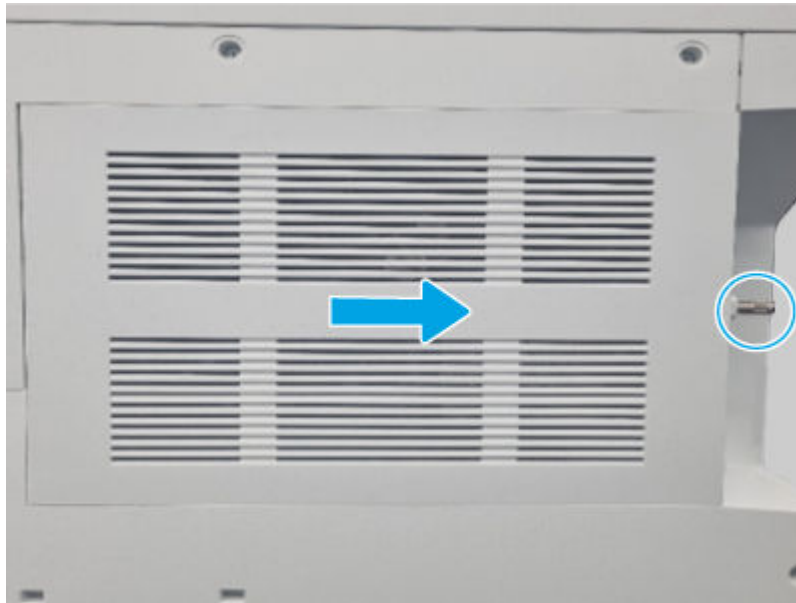
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-764 Remove the cover

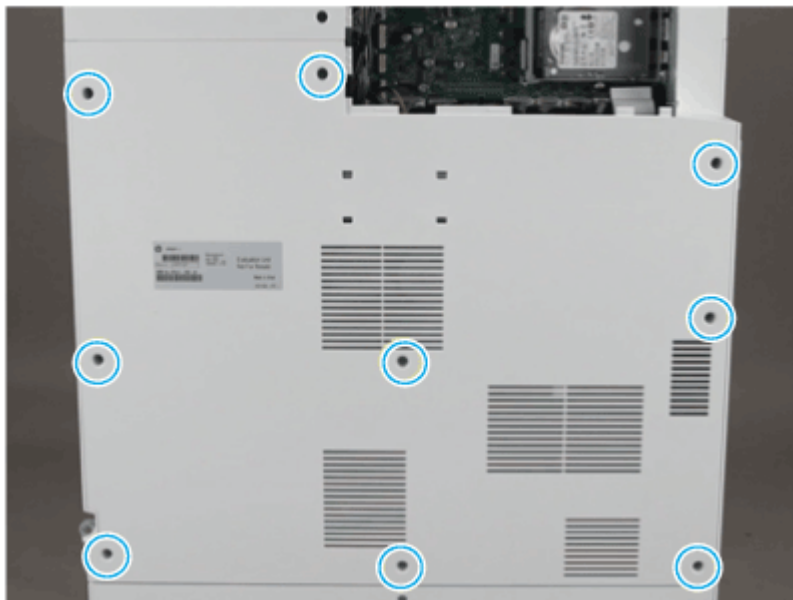


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-765 Remove the cover

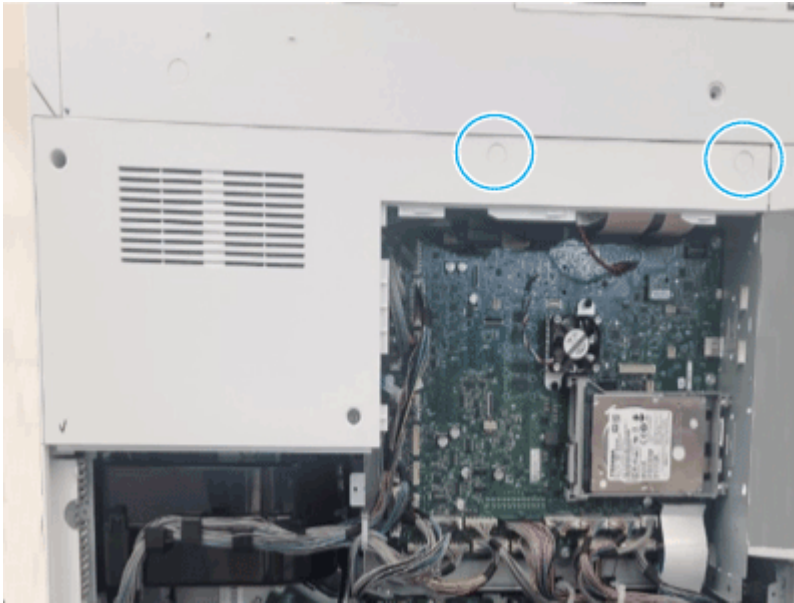


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

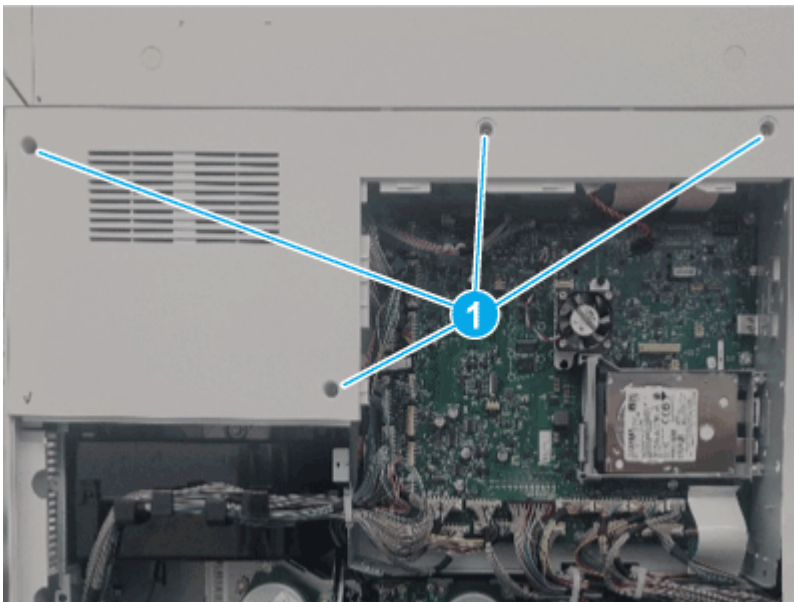
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-766 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-767 Remove the cover



4. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.


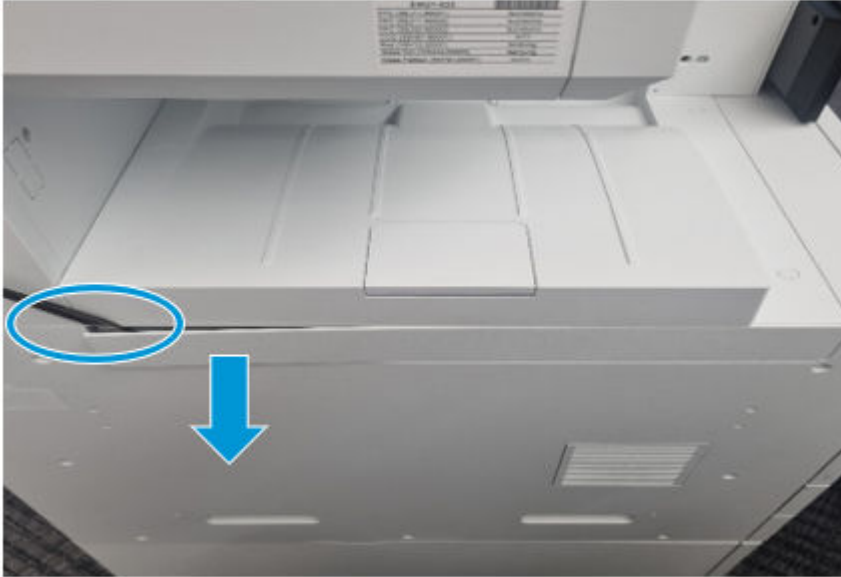
 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-768 Remove the cover

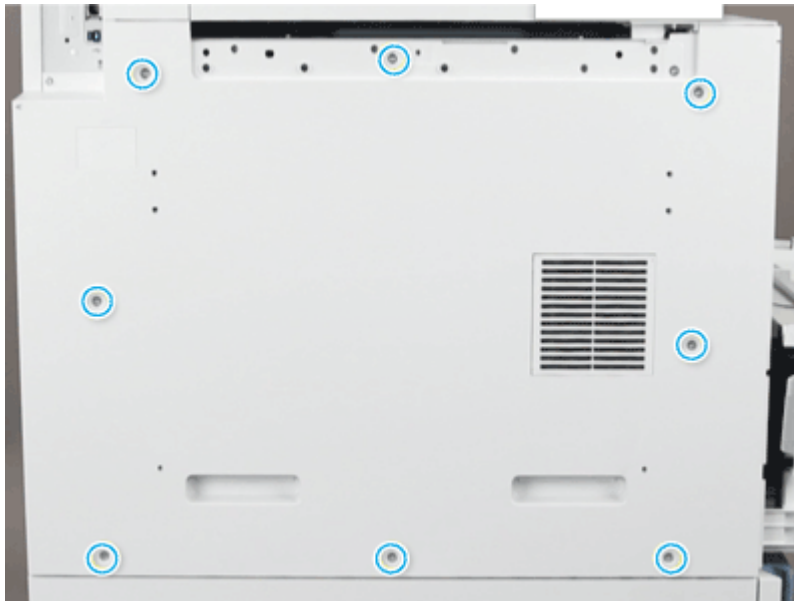


5. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

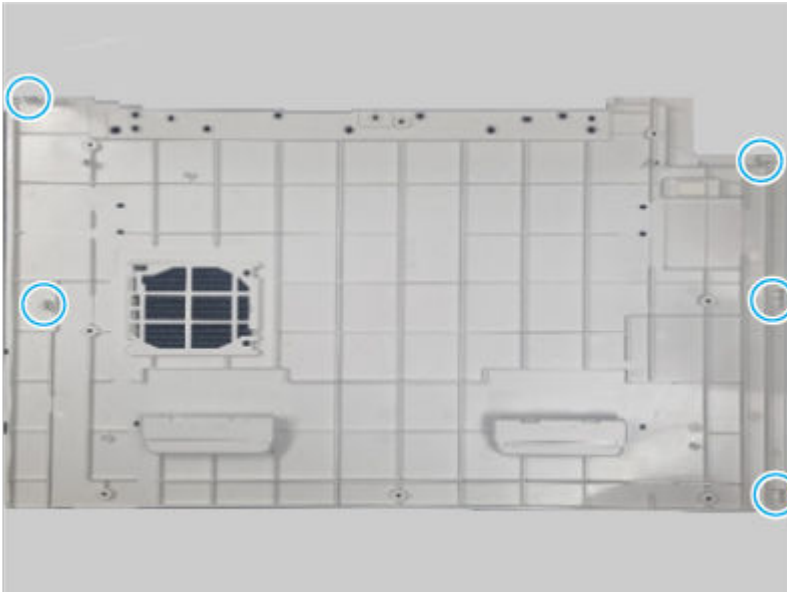
1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-769 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-770 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-771 Remove the cover

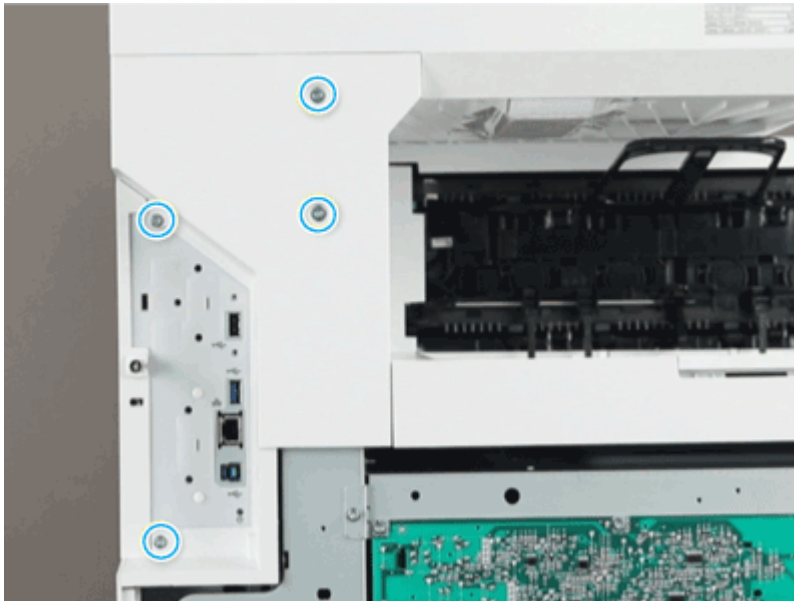


6. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.


- Remove four screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-772 Remove the cover



7. Remove the formatter and formatter bracket

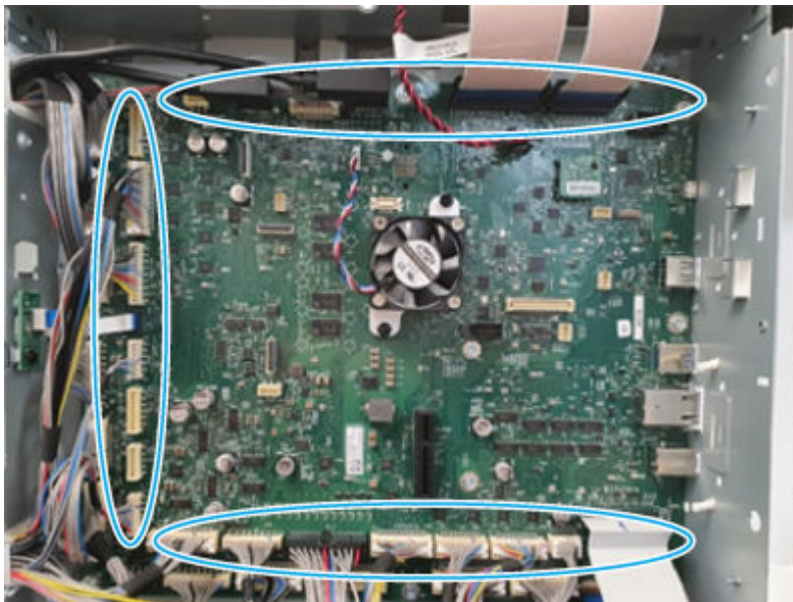
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the formatter and formatter bracket.

 **NOTE:** Some of the figures in this topic might look different than the printer you are servicing. However, the procedure is correct for the E82XXX and E87XXX model printers.

Always read the instruction carefully to make sure you are performing the correct steps for the printer being serviced.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

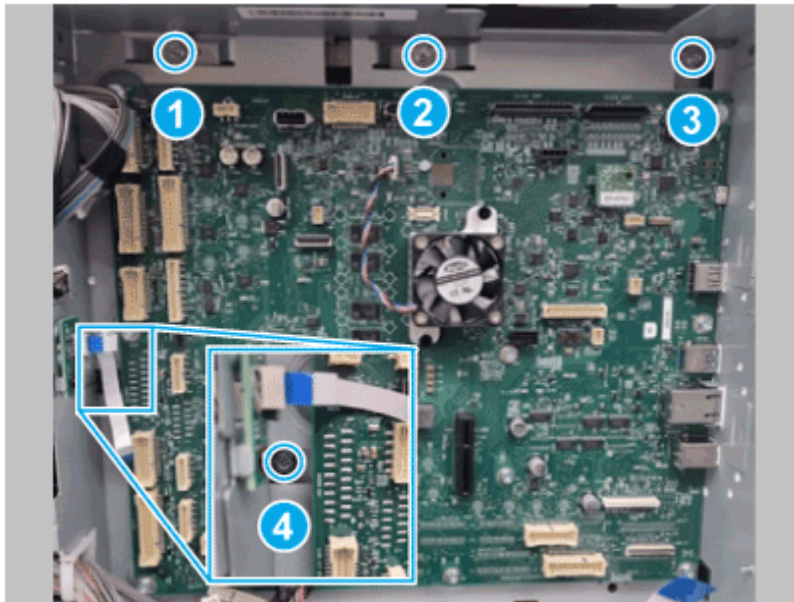
Figure 6-773 Disconnect all connectors



2. Do one of the following:

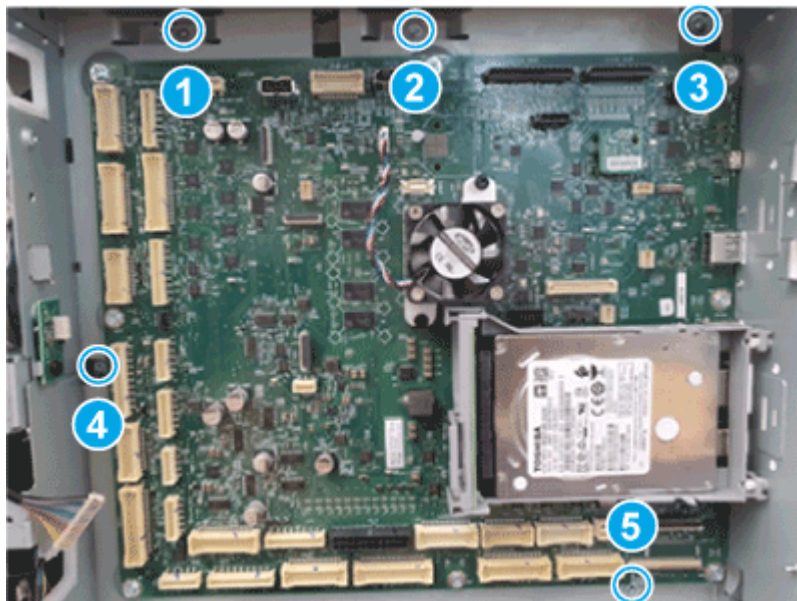
- **E82XXX models:** Remove four screws (callouts 1-2-3-4).

Figure 6-774 Remove four screws



- **E87XXX models:** Remove five screws (callouts 1-2-3-4-5).

Figure 6-775 Remove five screws



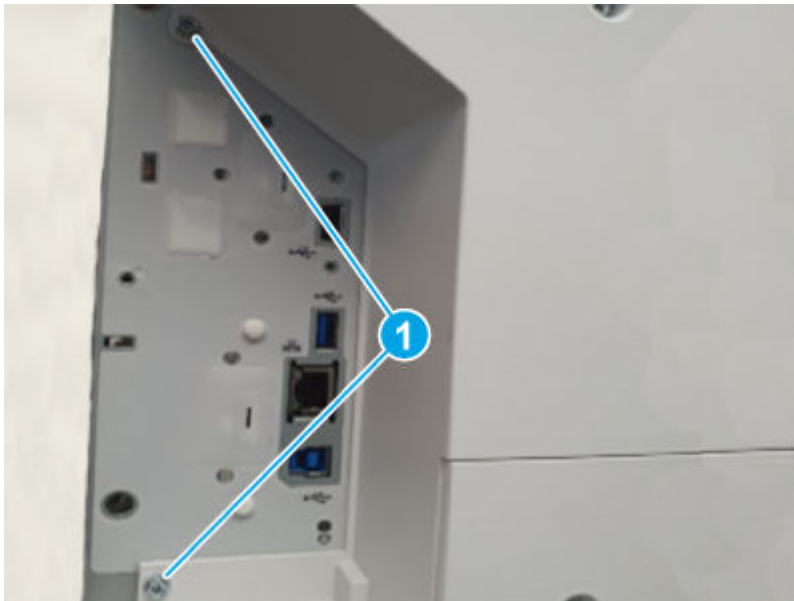
3. **E82XXX models only:** Support the formatter and bracket, remove one screw, and then remove the formatter and formatter bracket together.

Figure 6-776 Remove the formatter and bracket



4. **E87XXX models only:** Support the formatter and bracket, remove two screws (callout 10 and then remove the formatter and formatter bracket together.

Figure 6-777 Remove the formatter and bracket



8. Remove the toner dispense motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the dispense motor.


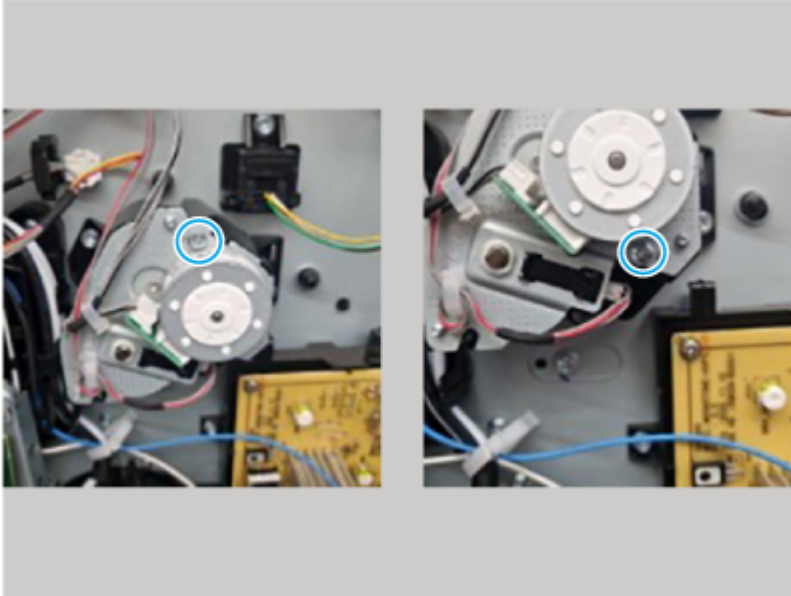
 **NOTE:** Disconnect connectors and release wire-harness retainers as needed to remove the motor.

Figure 6-778 Remove the motor



9. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner dispense motor sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the toner dispense motor sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the toner dispense motor sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-79 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (toner dispense motor sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

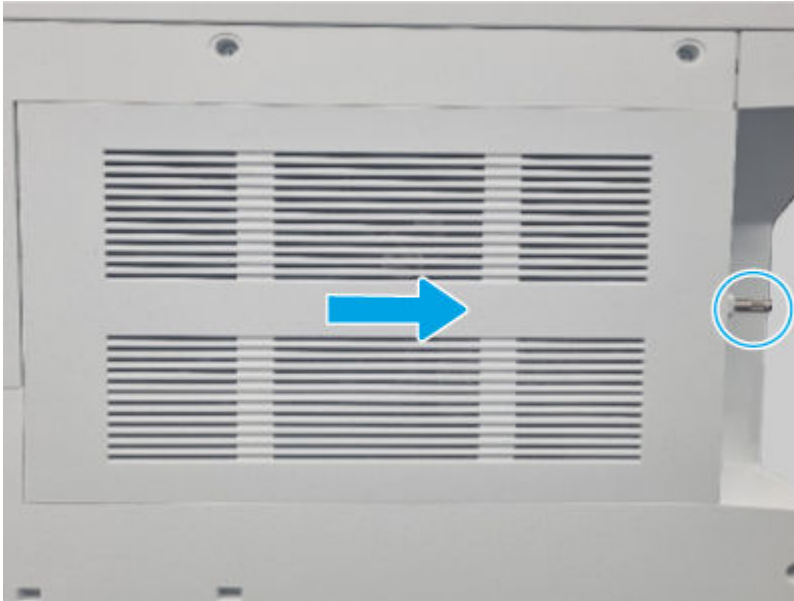
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-779 Remove the cover

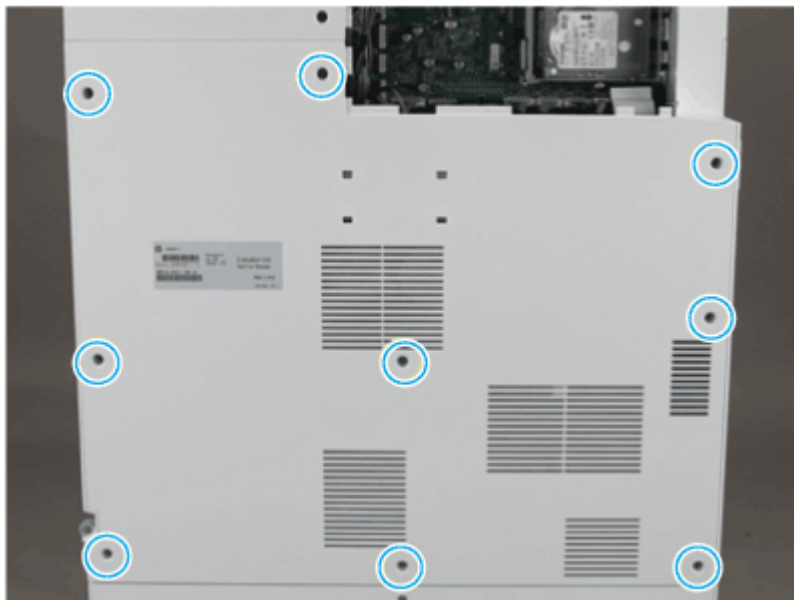


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-780 Remove the cover

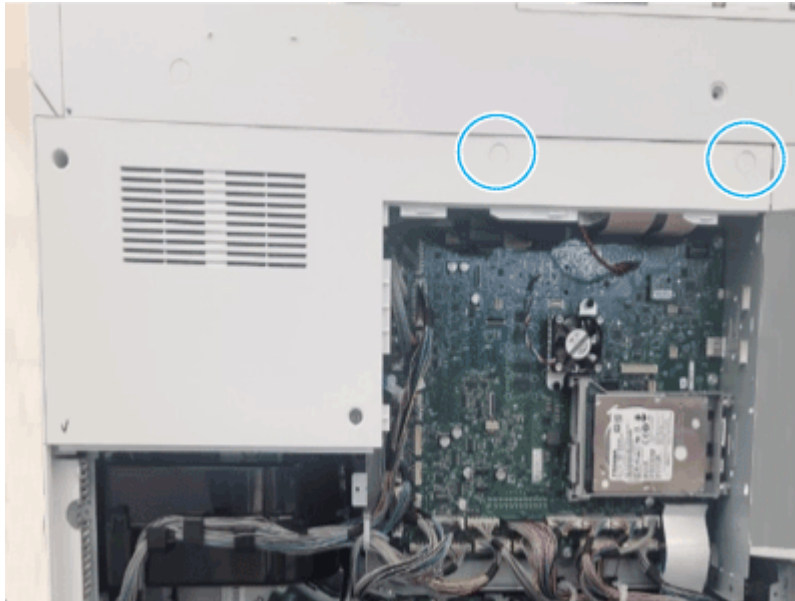


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

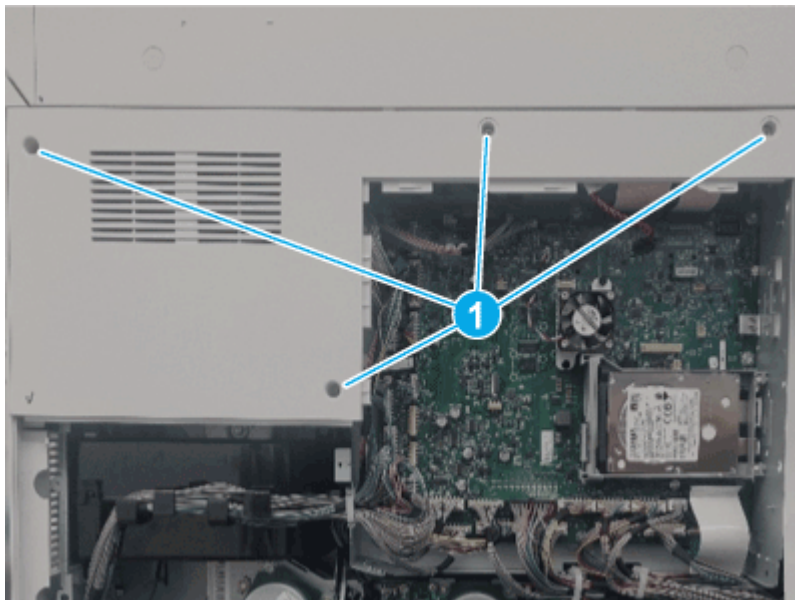
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-781 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-782 Remove the cover



4. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.


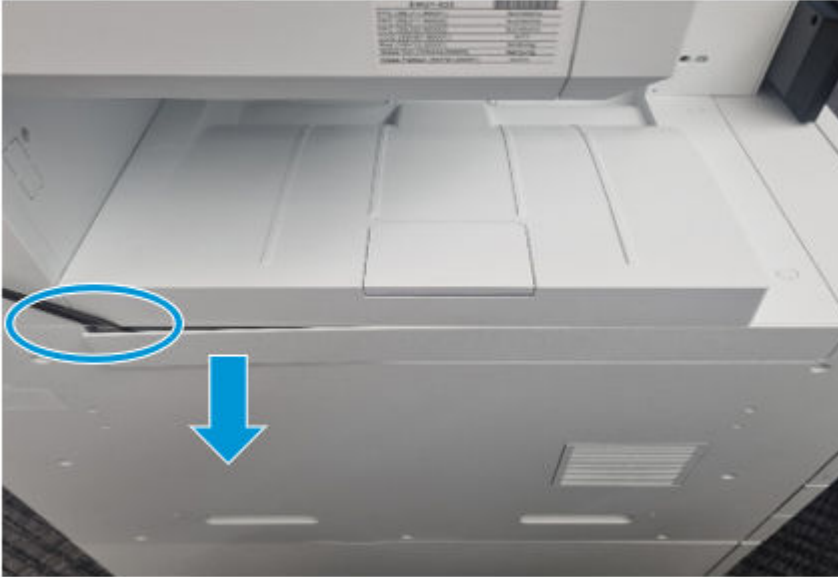
 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-783 Remove the cover

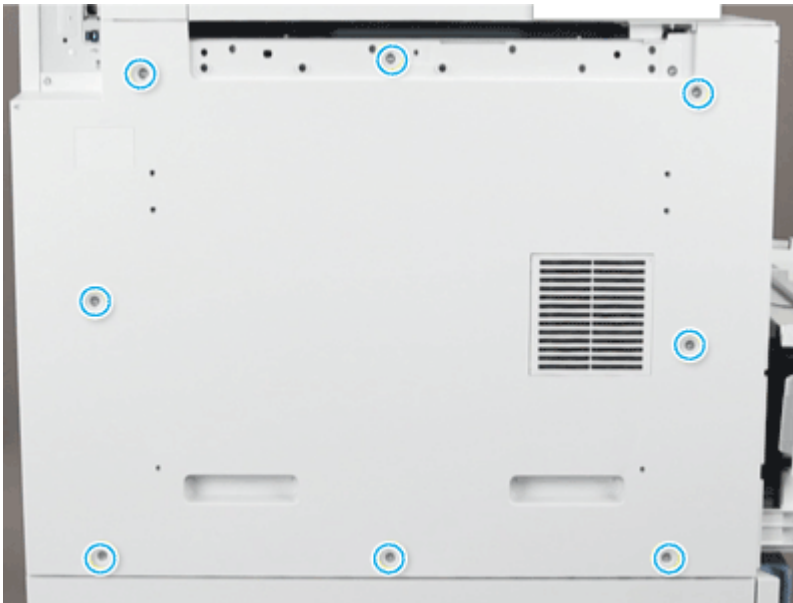


5. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

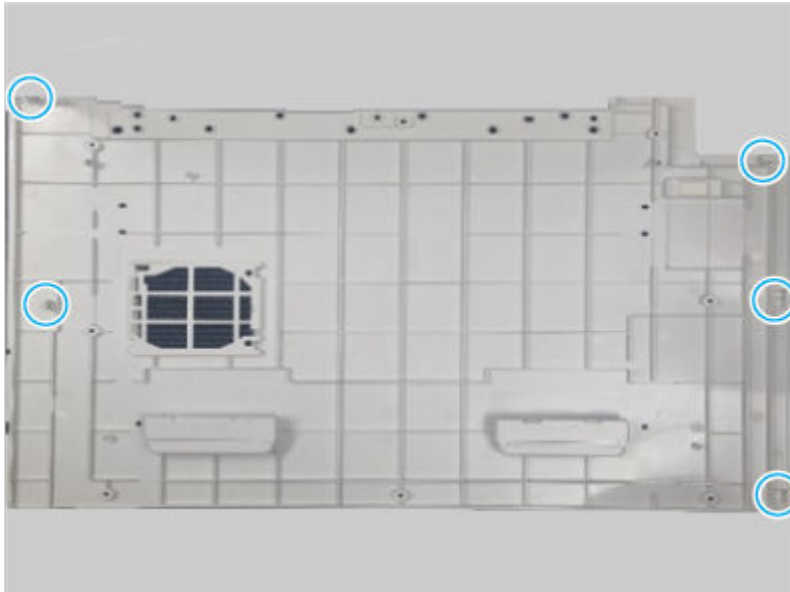
1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-784 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-785 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-786 Remove the cover

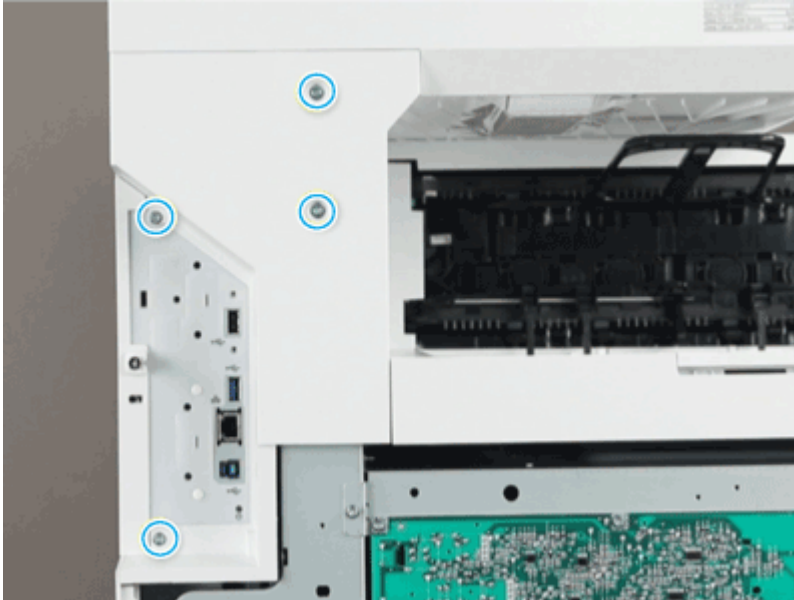


6. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-787 Remove the cover



7. Remove the formatter and formatter bracket

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the formatter and formatter bracket.

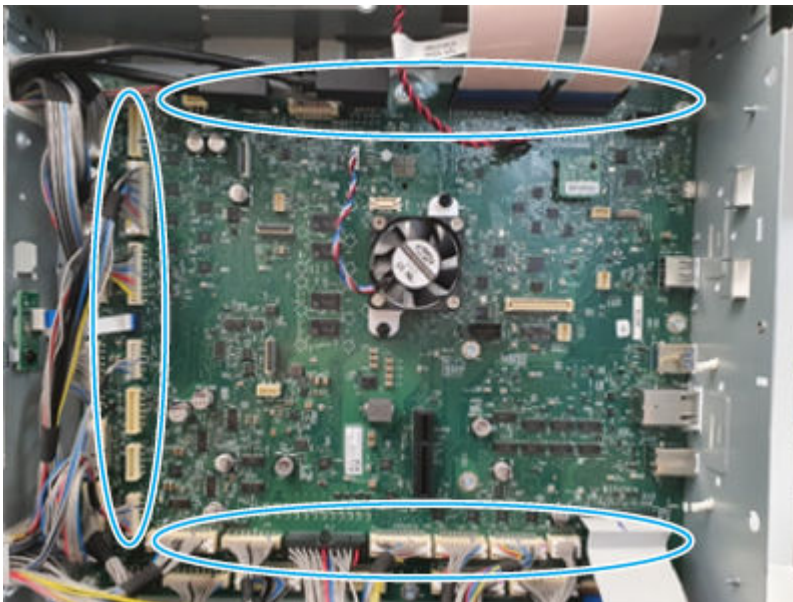


NOTE: Some of the figures in this topic might look different than the printer you are servicing. However, the procedure is correct for the E82XXX and E87XXX model printers.

Always read the instruction carefully to make sure you are performing the correct steps for the printer being serviced.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

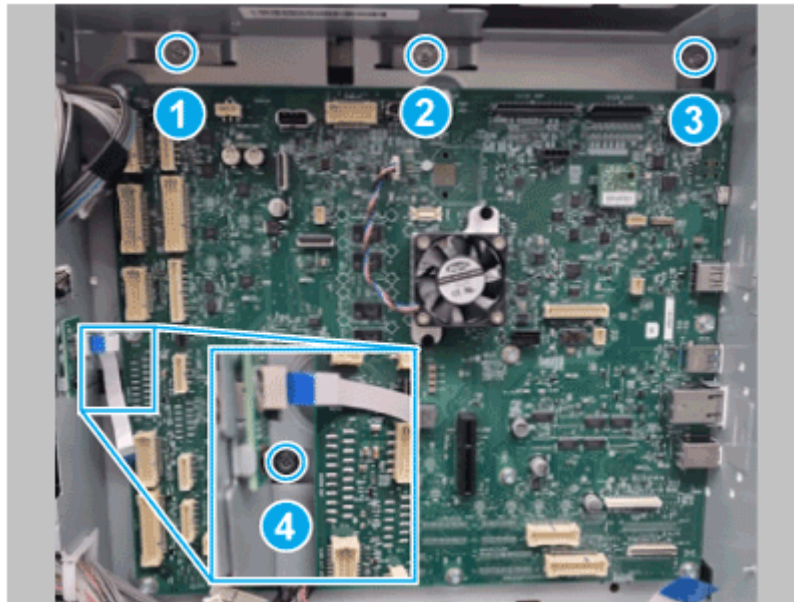
Figure 6-788 Disconnect all connectors



2. Do one of the following:

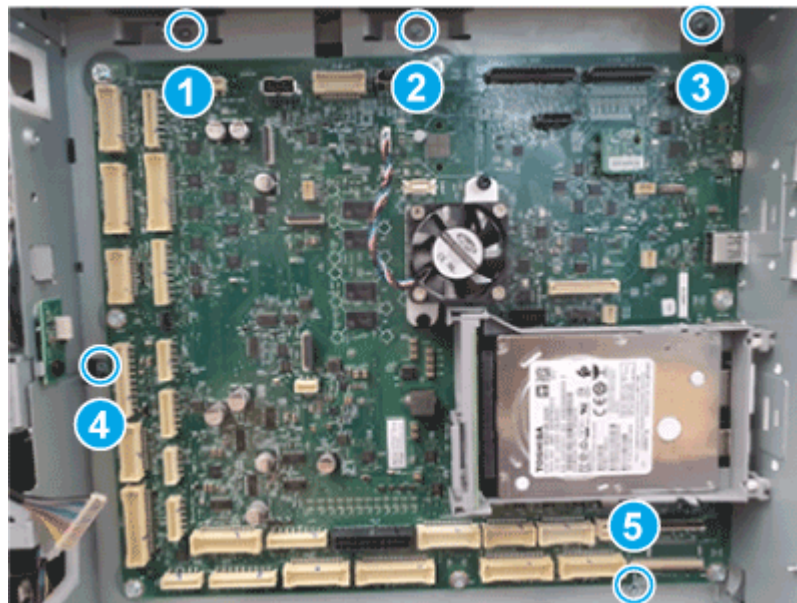
- **E82XXX models:** Remove four screws (callouts 1-2-3-4).

Figure 6-789 Remove four screws



- **E87XXX models:** Remove five screws (callouts 1-2-3-4-5).

Figure 6-790 Remove five screws



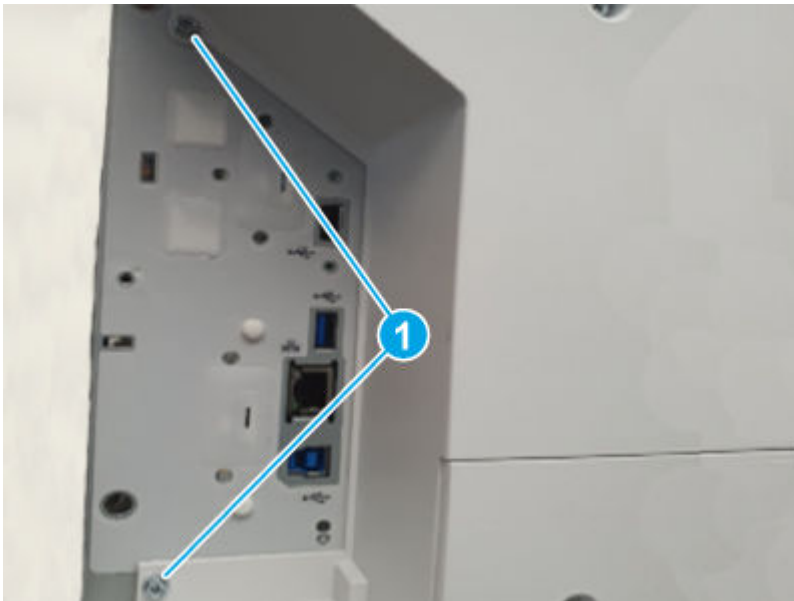
3. **E82XXX models only:** Support the formatter and bracket, remove one screw, and then remove the formatter and formatter bracket together.

Figure 6-791 Remove the formatter and bracket



4. **E87XXX models only:** Support the formatter and bracket, remove two screws (callout 10 and then remove the formatter and formatter bracket together..

Figure 6-792 Remove the formatter and bracket



8. Remove the toner cartridge (disassemble method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- On the toner dispense motor assembly, rotate the gear counterclockwise, to mechanically release the toner cartridge. Remove the toner cartridge from the front side of the printer.


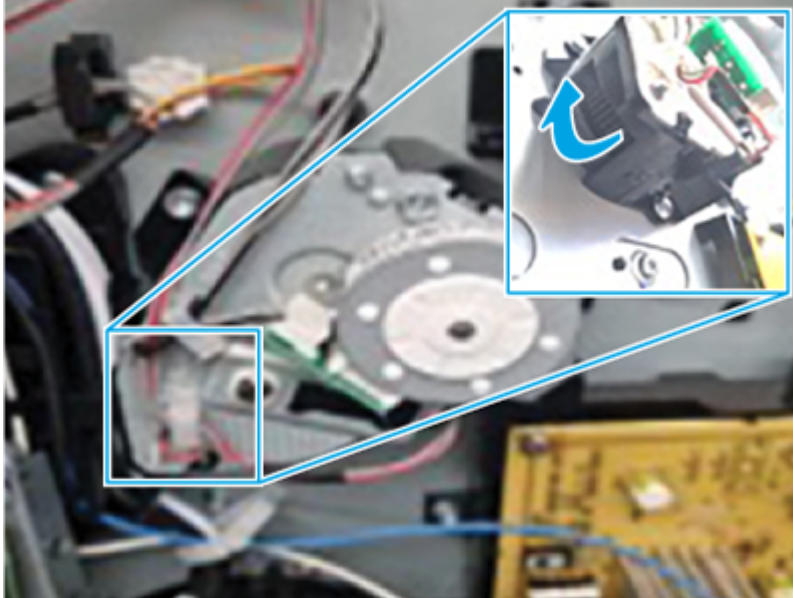
 **Reinstallation tip:** To prevent mechanical interference when installing the cartridge, first rotate the gear clockwise to return it to the home position, and then install the cartridge.

Figure 6-793 Rotate the gear



9. Remove the toner dispense motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor assembly.

- Remove three screws, and then remove the dispense motor assembly.


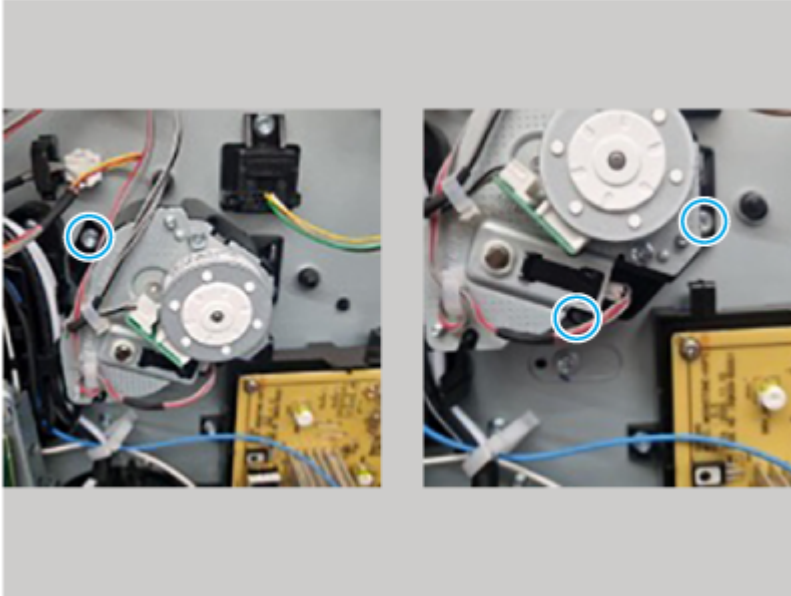
 **NOTE:** Disconnect connectors and release wire-harness retainers as needed to remove the assembly.

Figure 6-794 Remove the assembly



10. Remove the toner dispense motor sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor sensor.

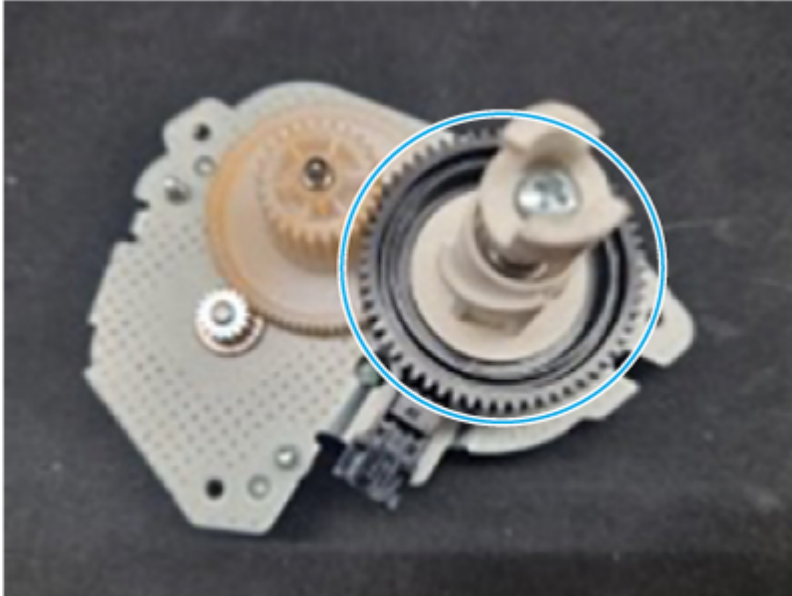
1. On the back of the toner dispense motor assembly, remove three screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-795 Remove three screws



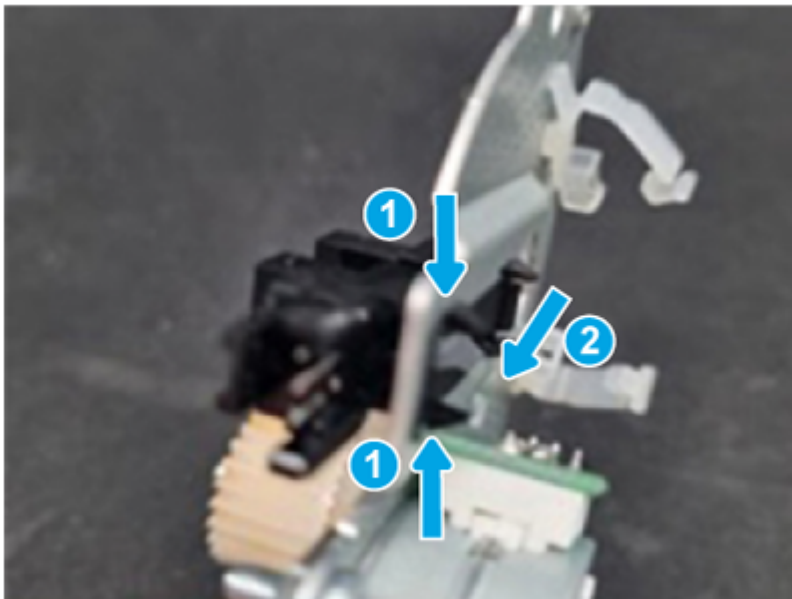
2. Remove the gear.

Figure 6-796 Remove the gear



3. To release the sensor, do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the hook as shown (callout 2) to remove the sensor.

Figure 6-797 Remove the sensor



11. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner cartridge (control panel method)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner cartridge.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the toner cartridges using the control panel.](#)

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

No before performing service procedures required.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-80 Part information

Part number	Part description
W9084-67006	Toner cartridge - Standard yield
W9085-67007	Toner cartridge - High yield

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.


After performing service

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the **Sign In** item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the **Service Access Code** item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03082622
 - c. Select the **Supplies** item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the **Eject** button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner cartridge (disassemble method)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner cartridge.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the toner cartridge by disassembling.](#)

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-81 Part information

Part number	Part description
W9084-67006	Toner cartridge - Standard yield
W9085-67007	Toner cartridge - High yield

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

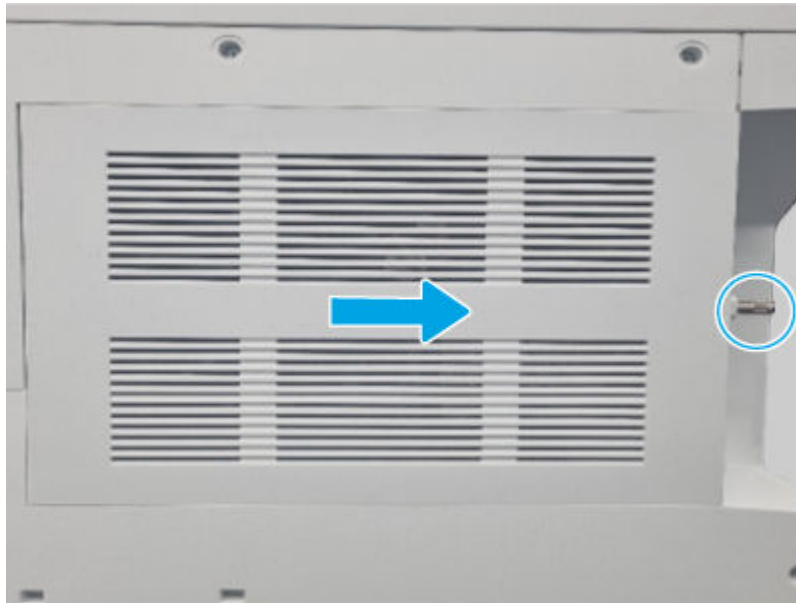
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-798 Remove the cover

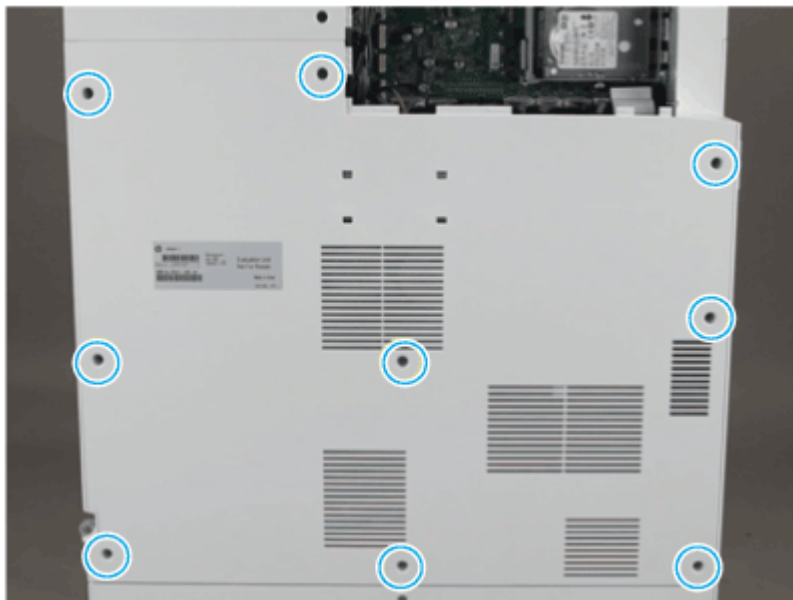


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-799 Remove the cover

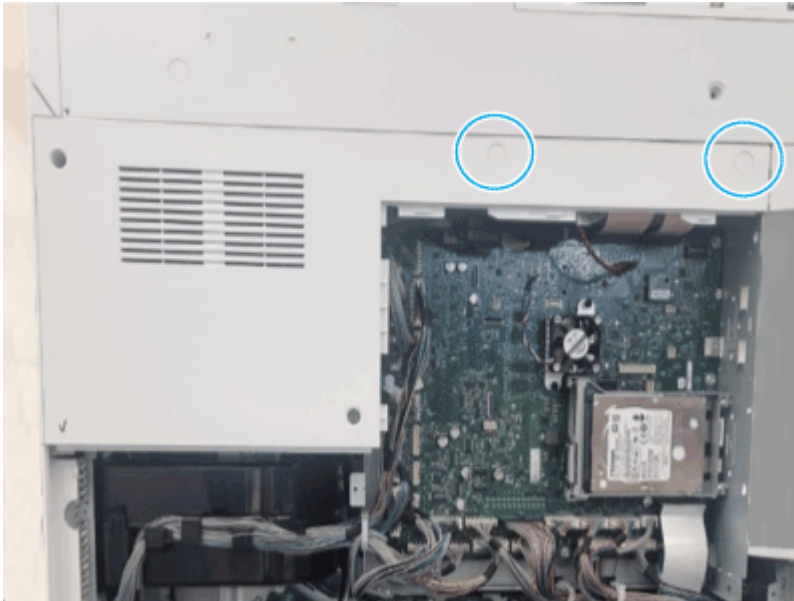


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

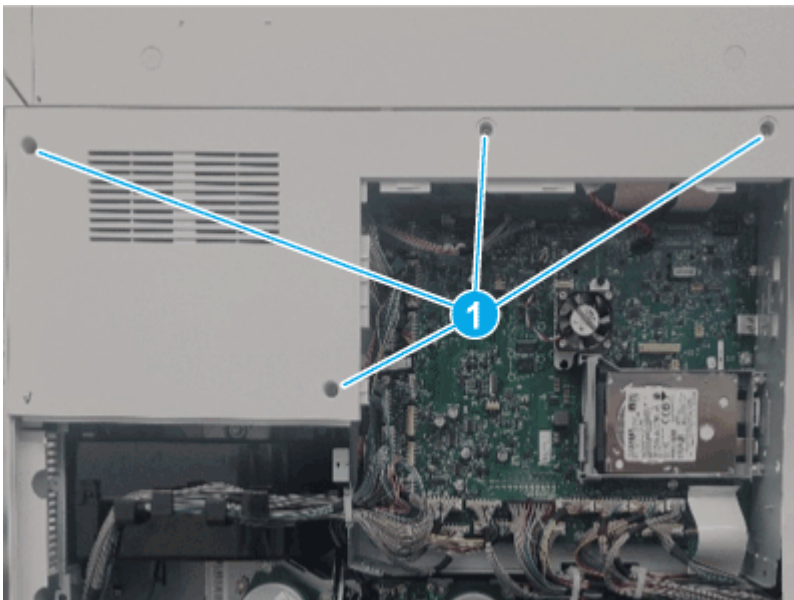
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-800 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-801 Remove the cover



4. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.


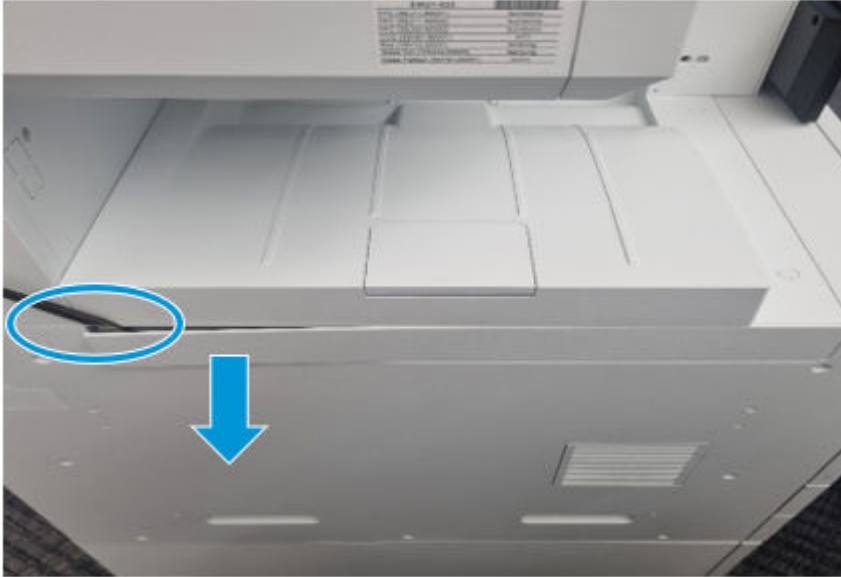
 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-802 Remove the cover

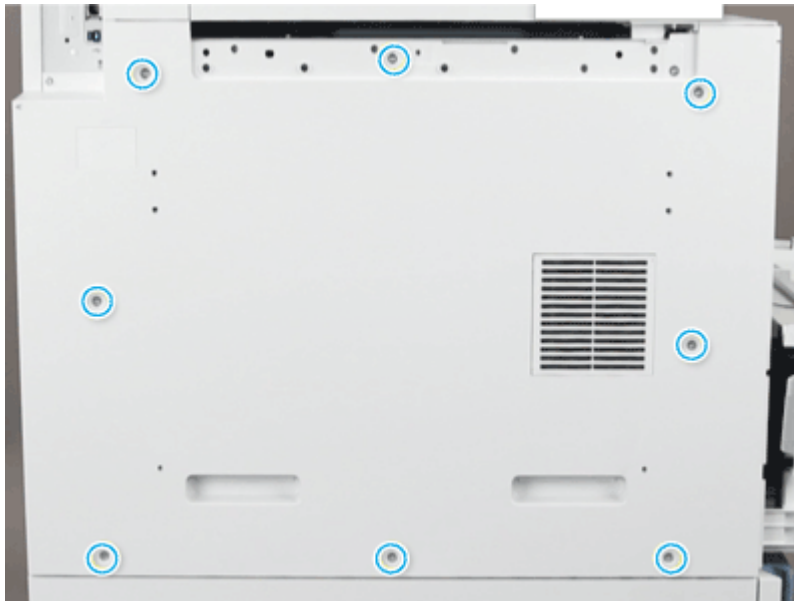


5. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

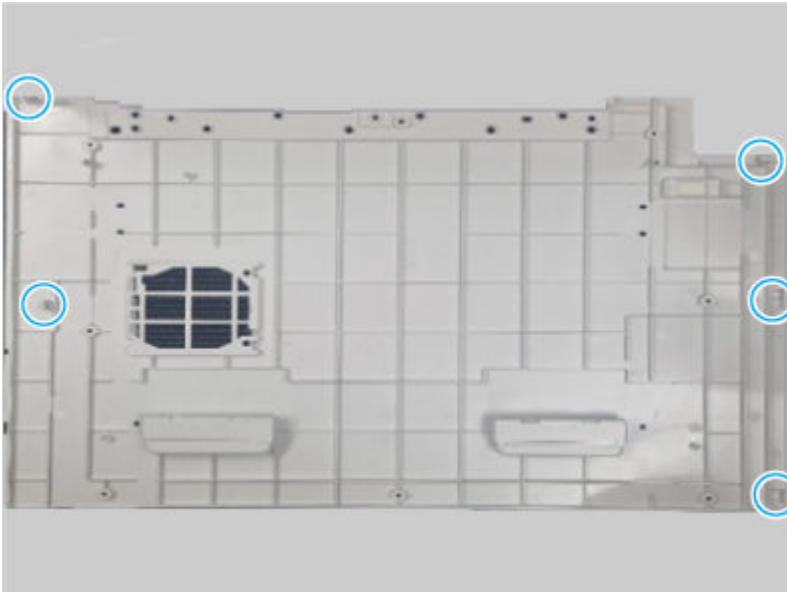
1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-803 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-804 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-805 Remove the cover

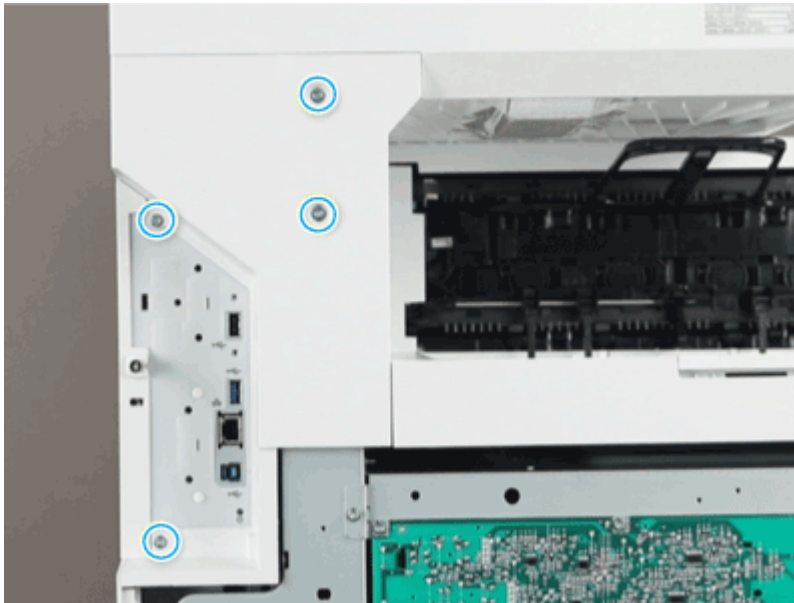


6. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.


- Remove four screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-806 Remove the cover



7. Remove the formatter and formatter bracket

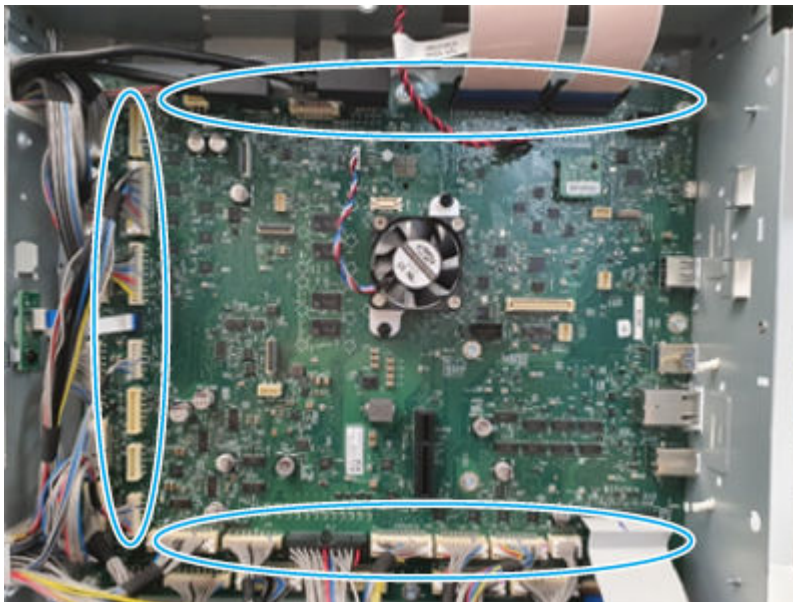
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the formatter and formatter bracket.

 **NOTE:** Some of the figures in this topic might look different than the printer you are servicing. However, the procedure is correct for the E82XXX and E87XXX model printers.

Always read the instruction carefully to make sure you are performing the correct steps for the printer being serviced.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

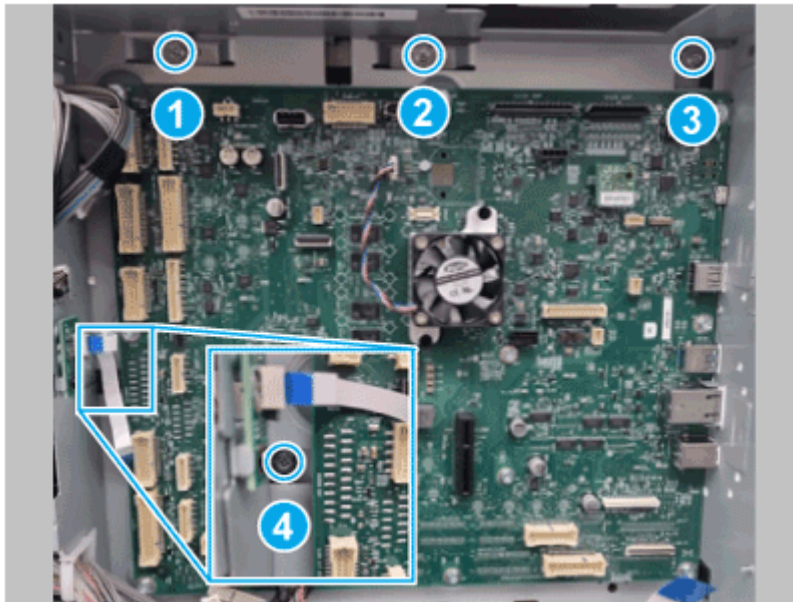
Figure 6-807 Disconnect all connectors



2. Do one of the following:

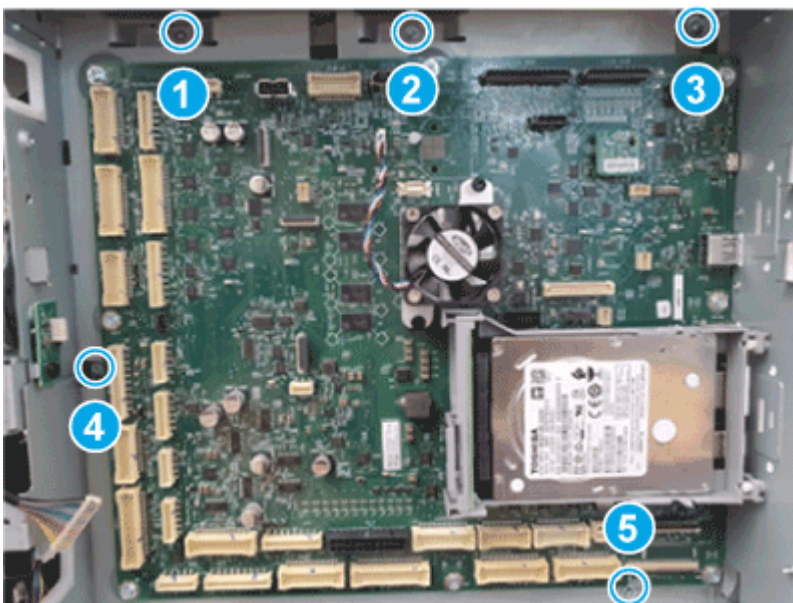
- **E82XXX models:** Remove four screws (callouts 1-2-3-4).

Figure 6-808 Remove four screws



- **E87XXX models:** Remove five screws (callouts 1-2-3-4-5).

Figure 6-809 Remove five screws



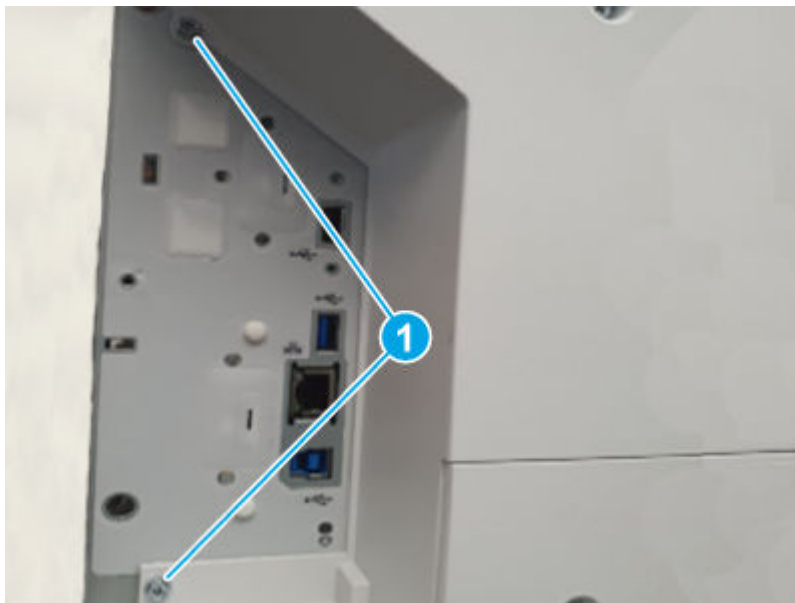
3. **E82XXX models only:** Support the formatter and bracket, remove one screw, and then remove the formatter and formatter bracket together.

Figure 6-810 Remove the formatter and bracket



4. **E87XXX models only:** Support the formatter and bracket, remove two screws (callout 10 and then remove the formatter and formatter bracket together..

Figure 6-811 Remove the formatter and bracket



8. Remove the toner cartridge (disassemble method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- On the toner dispense motor assembly, rotate the gear counterclockwise, to mechanically release the toner cartridge. Remove the toner cartridge from the front side of the printer.


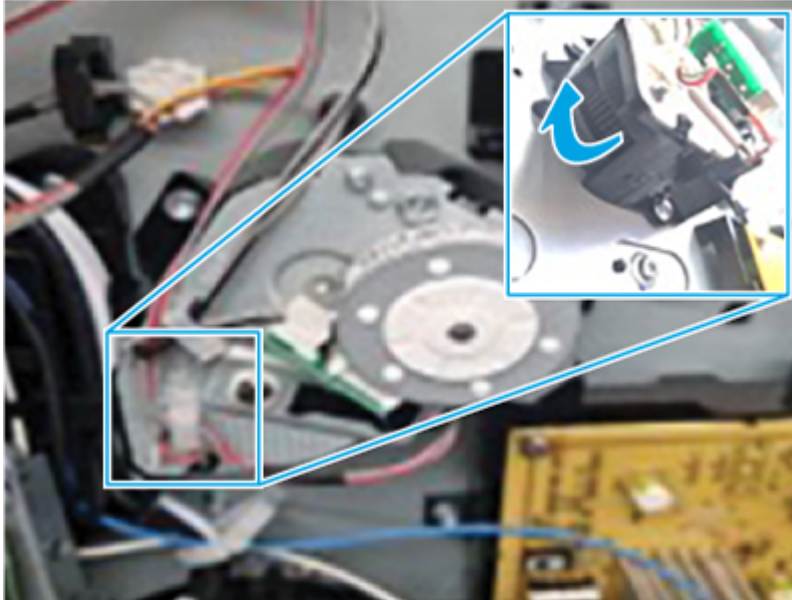
 **Reinstallation tip:** To prevent mechanical interference when installing the cartridge, first rotate the gear clockwise to return it to the home position, and then install the cartridge.


Figure 6-812 Rotate the gear



9. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner CRUM module assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the toner CRUM module assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the toner CRUM modular jack harness.](#)



[View a video of removing and replacing the toner CRUM modular holder.](#)

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-82 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-02910A	Toner CRUM modular holder
JC39-02214A	Toner CRUM modular jack harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

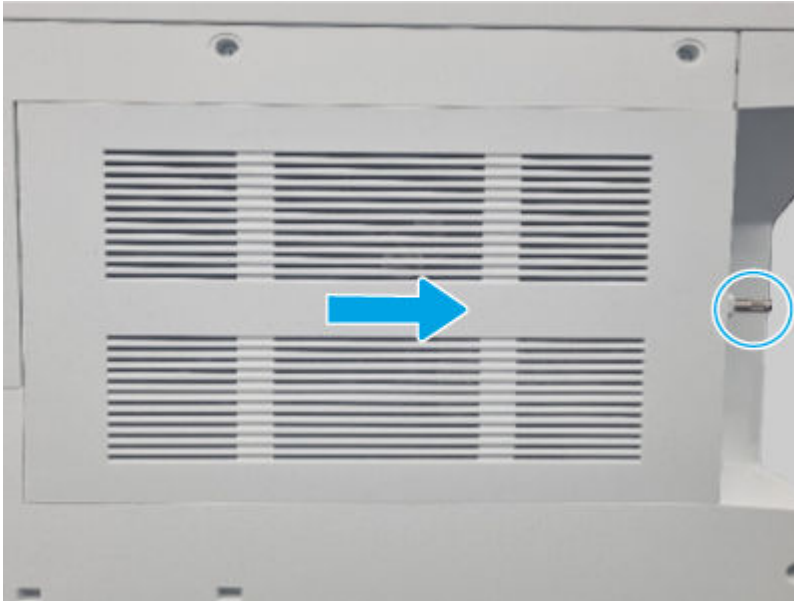
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-813 Remove the cover

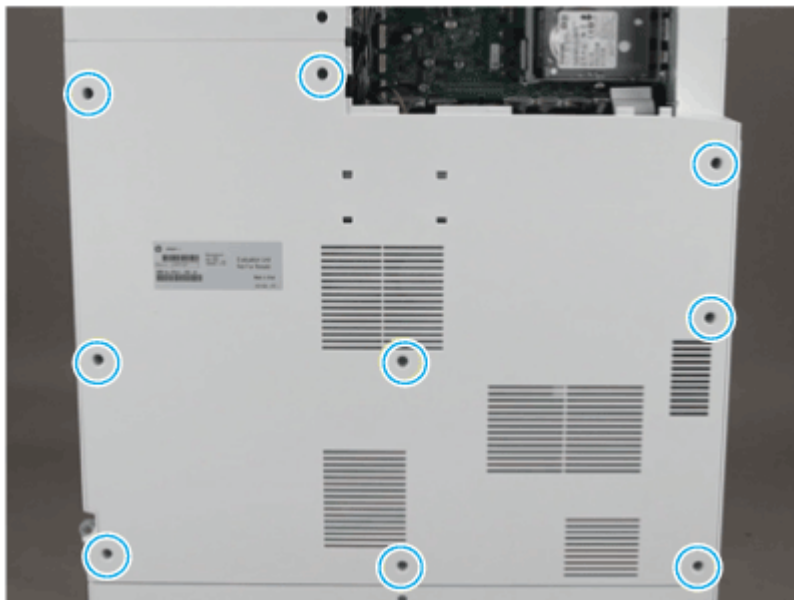


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-814 Remove the cover

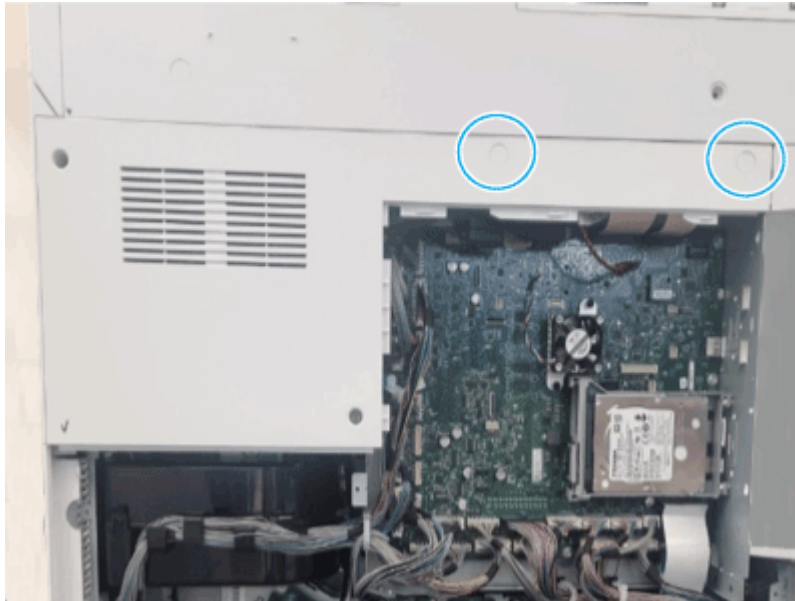


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

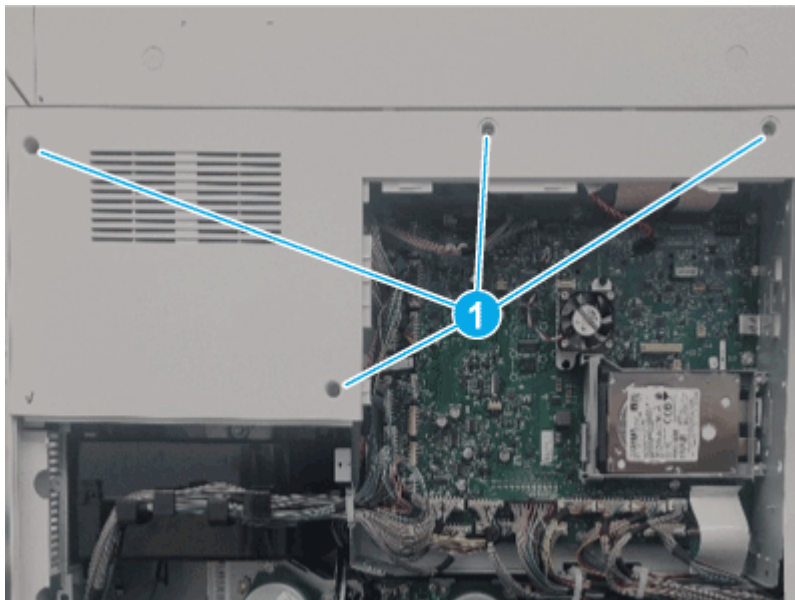
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-815 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-816 Remove the cover



4. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.


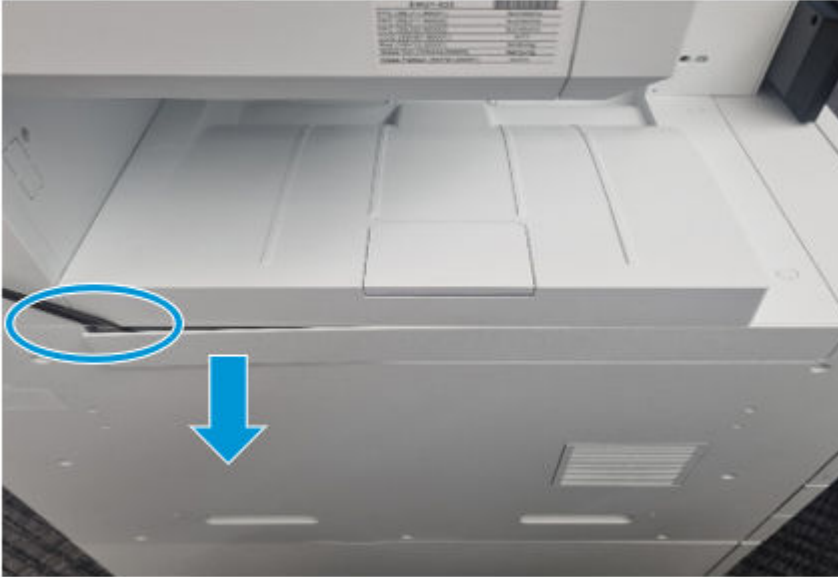
 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-817 Remove the cover

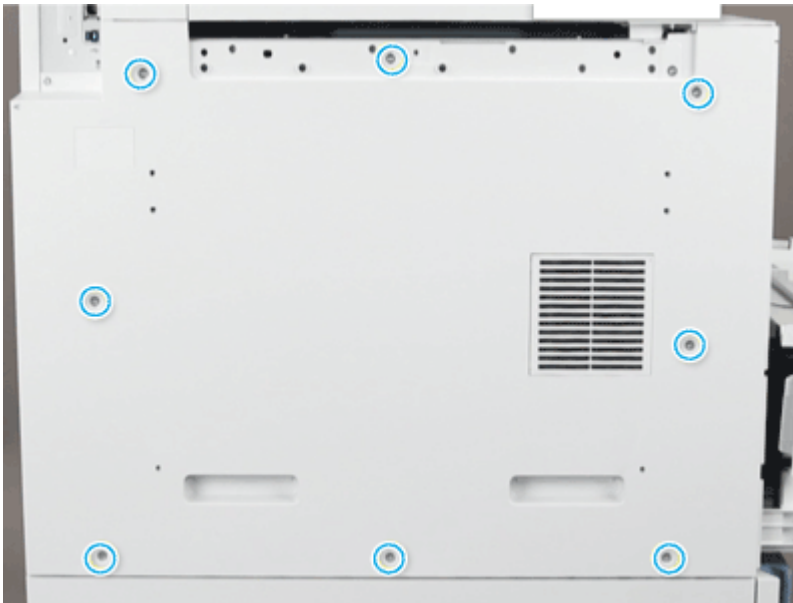


5. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

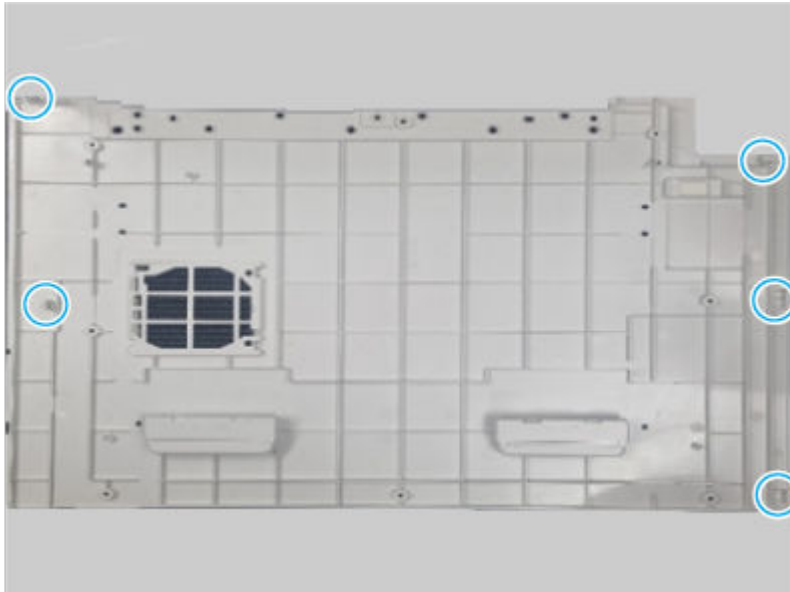
1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-818 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-819 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-820 Remove the cover

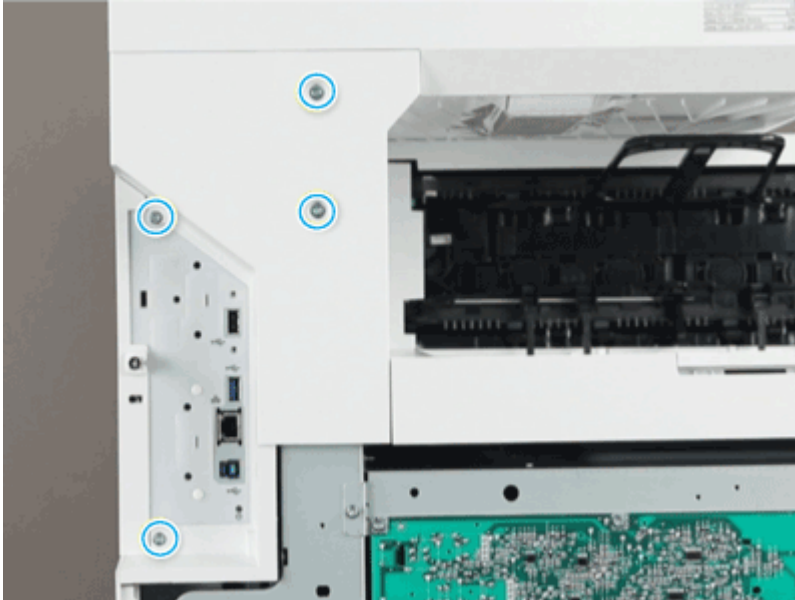


6. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-821 Remove the cover



7. Remove the formatter and formatter bracket

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the formatter and formatter bracket.

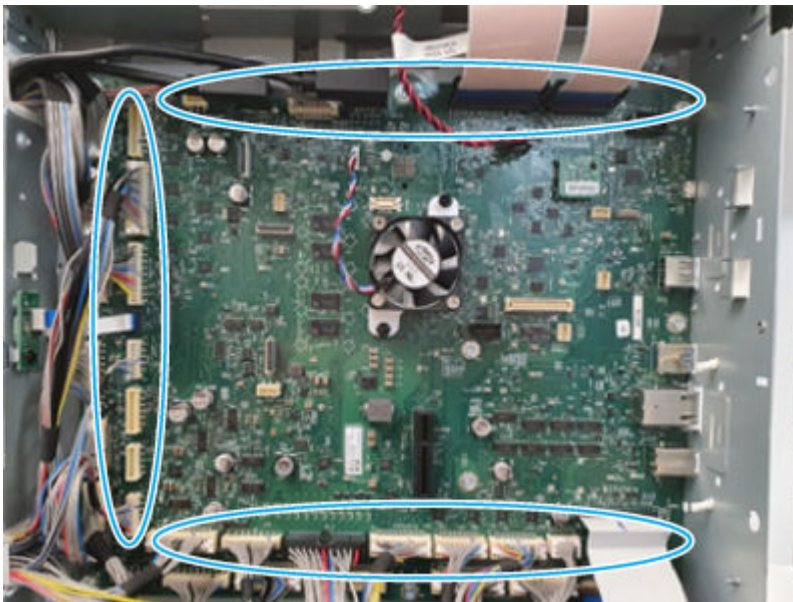


NOTE: Some of the figures in this topic might look different than the printer you are servicing. However, the procedure is correct for the E82XXX and E87XXX model printers.

Always read the instruction carefully to make sure you are performing the correct steps for the printer being serviced.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

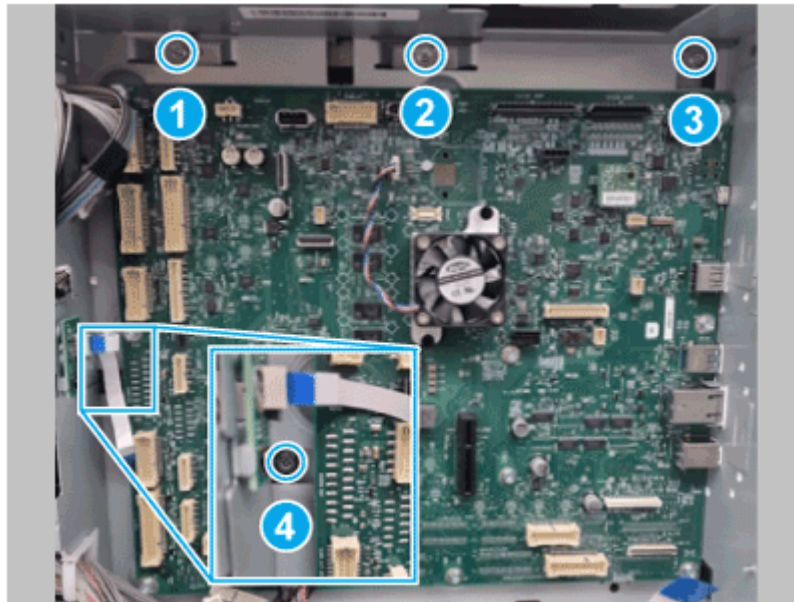
Figure 6-822 Disconnect all connectors



2. Do one of the following:

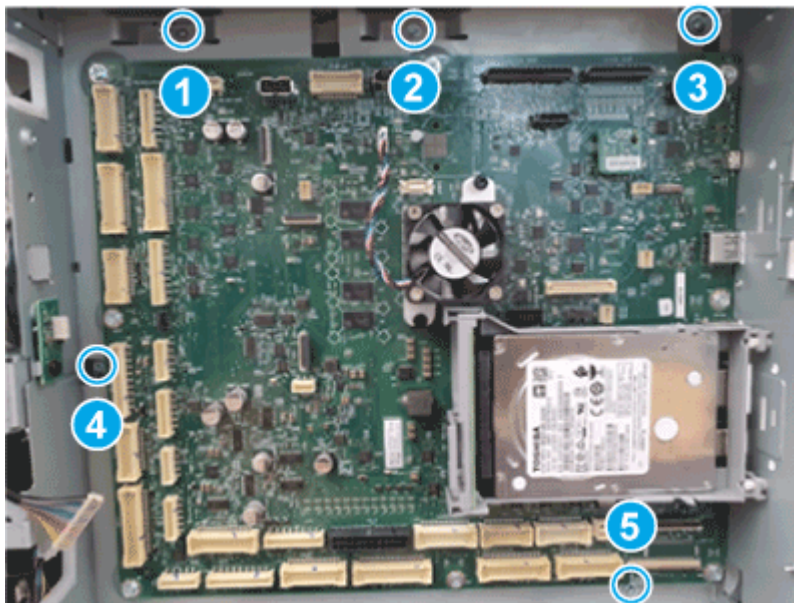
- **E82XXX models:** Remove four screws (callouts 1-2-3-4).

Figure 6-823 Remove four screws



- **E87XXX models:** Remove five screws (callouts 1-2-3-4-5).

Figure 6-824 Remove five screws



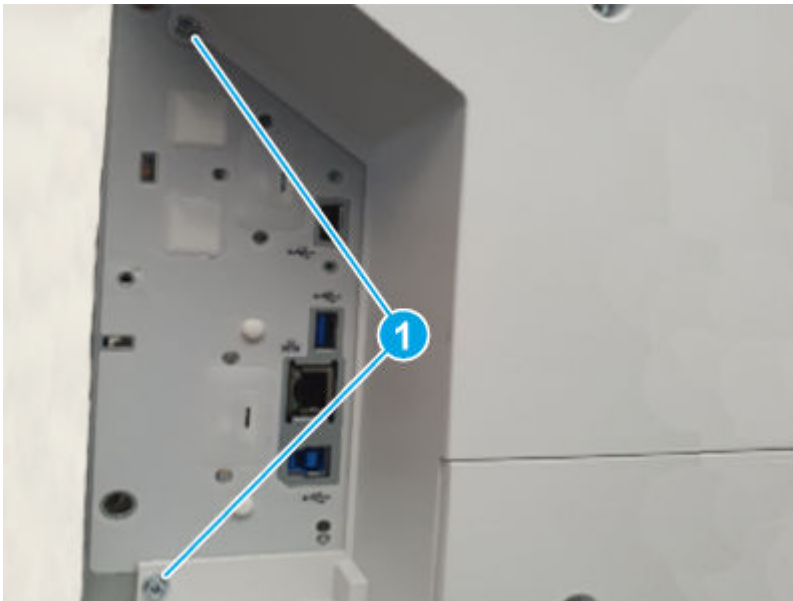
3. **E82XXX models only:** Support the formatter and bracket, remove one screw, and then remove the formatter and formatter bracket together.

Figure 6-825 Remove the formatter and bracket



4. **E87XXX models only:** Support the formatter and bracket, remove two screws (callout 10 and then remove the formatter and formatter bracket together..

Figure 6-826 Remove the formatter and bracket

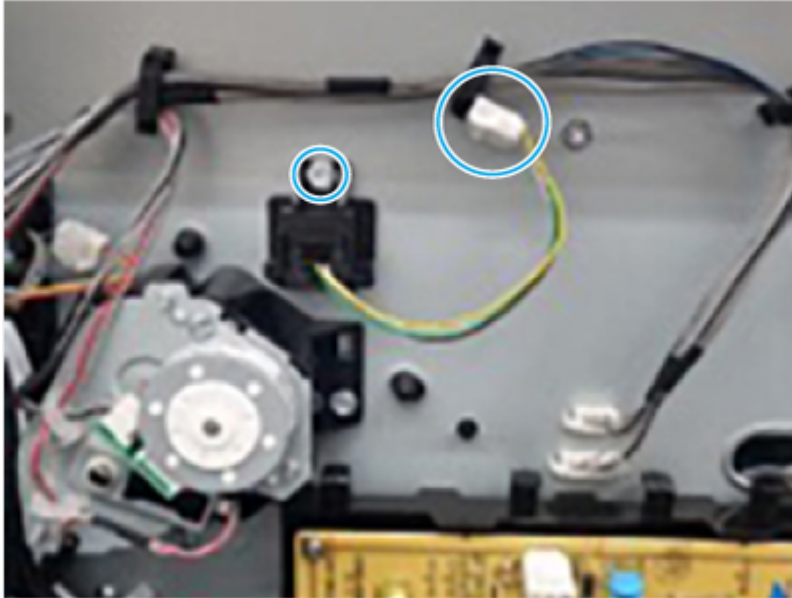


8. Remove the toner CRUM module assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner CRUM module assembly.

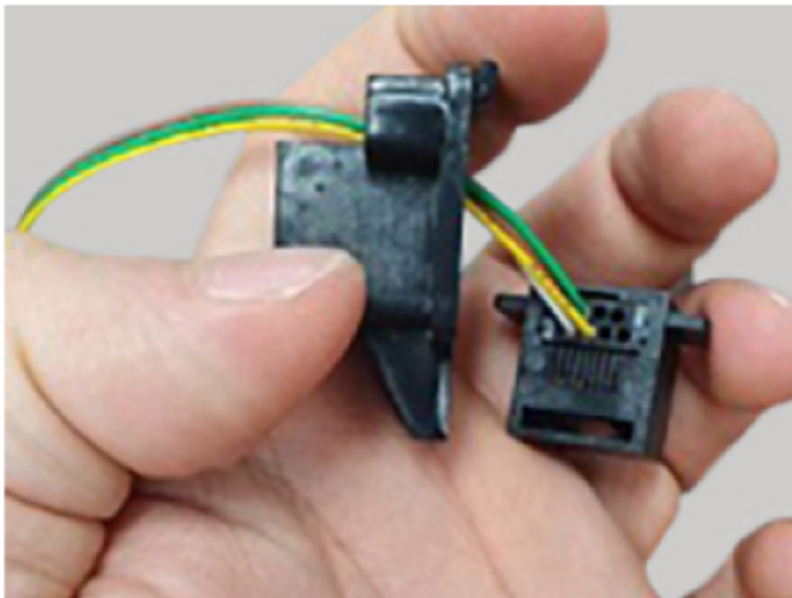
1. Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and remove the module.

Figure 6-827 Remove the module



2. Remove the toner CRUM modular holder from the toner CRUM modular jack harness.

Figure 6-828 Remove the holder from the harness



9. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Guide toner cartridge and toner residual amount sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the guide toner cartridge assembly.

 **NOTE:** The toner amount residual sensor is a sub-assembly on the guide toner cartridge assembly.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-83 Part information

Part number	Part description
63C82-60006	Guide toner cartridge assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03082622
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

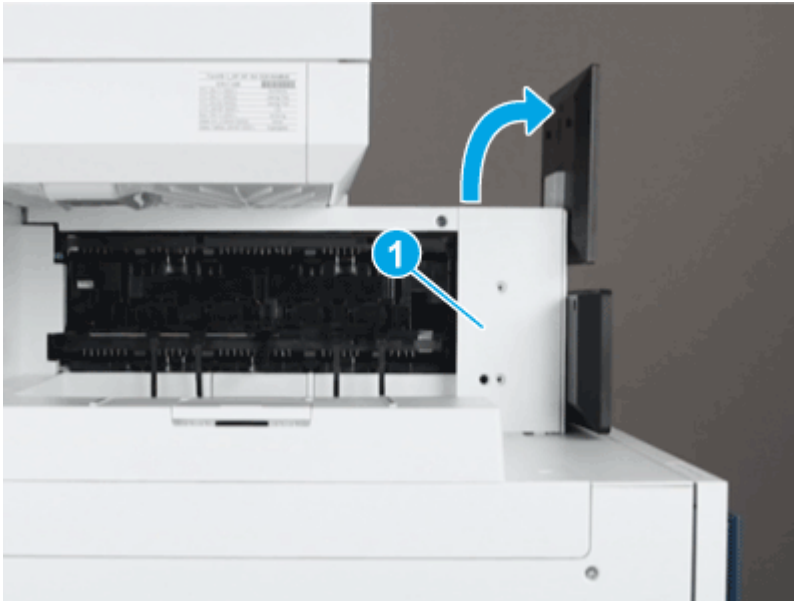
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-829 Remove two screws




2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-830 Remove the cover



3. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

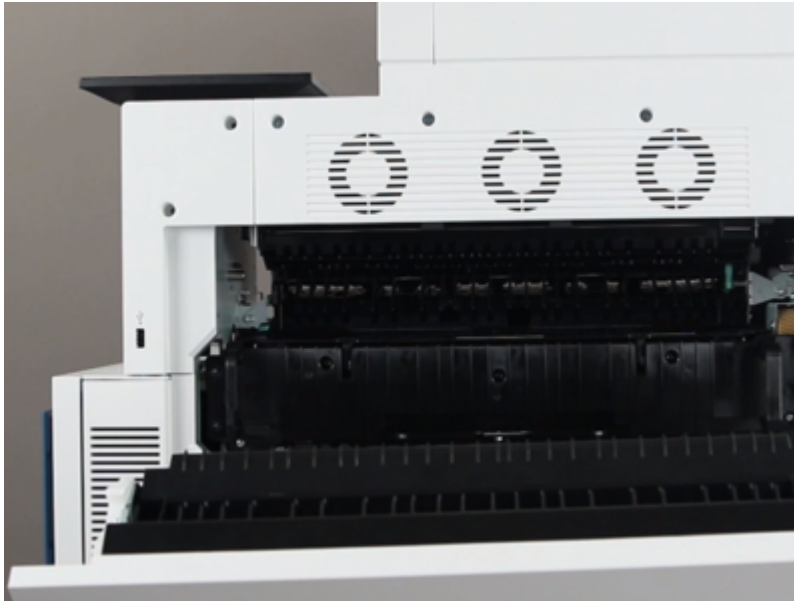
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-831 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-832 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

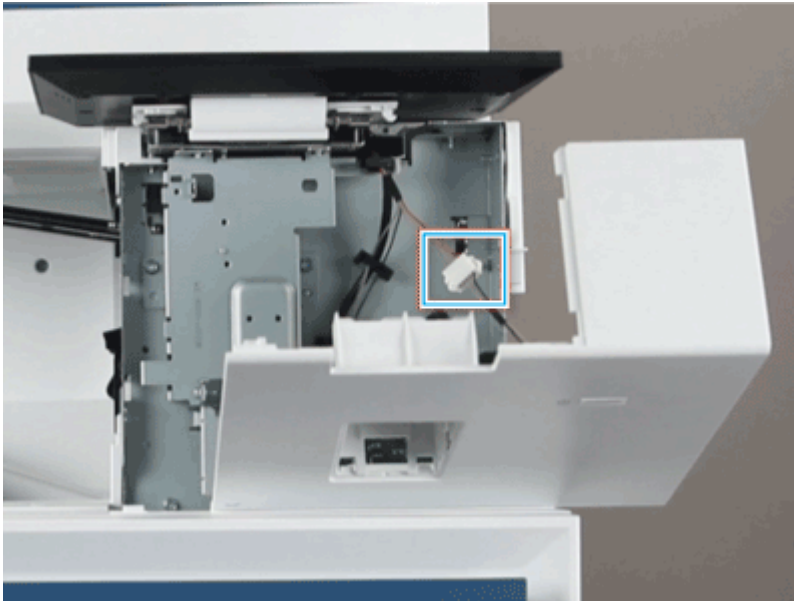
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-833 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-834 Remove the cover assembly

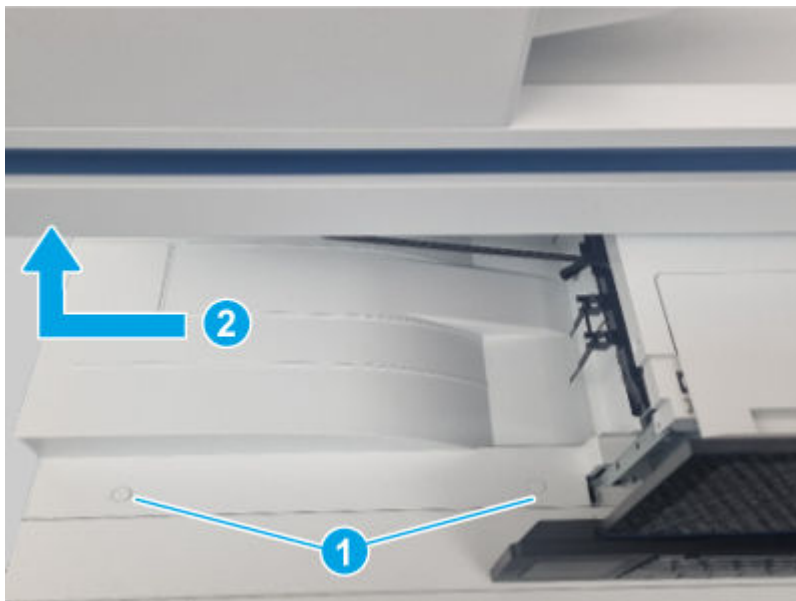


4. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-835 Remove the cover

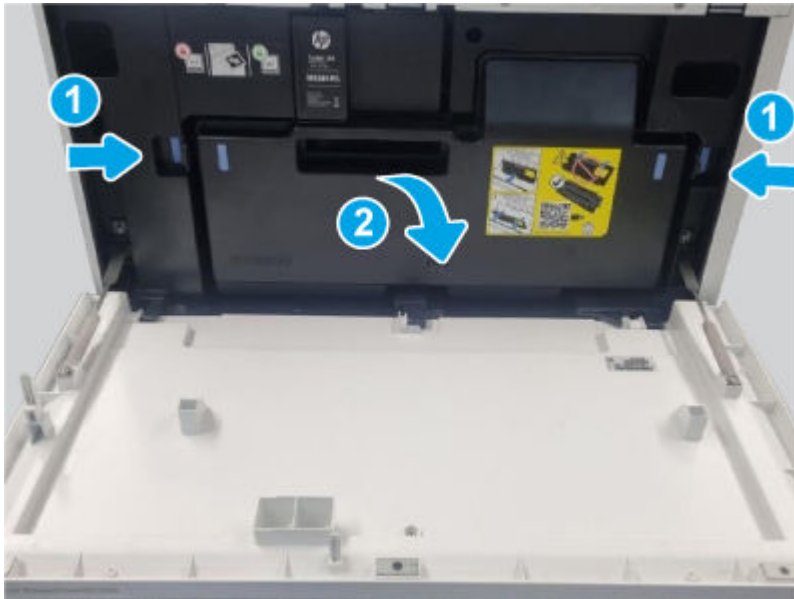


5. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-836 Remove the TCU



6. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

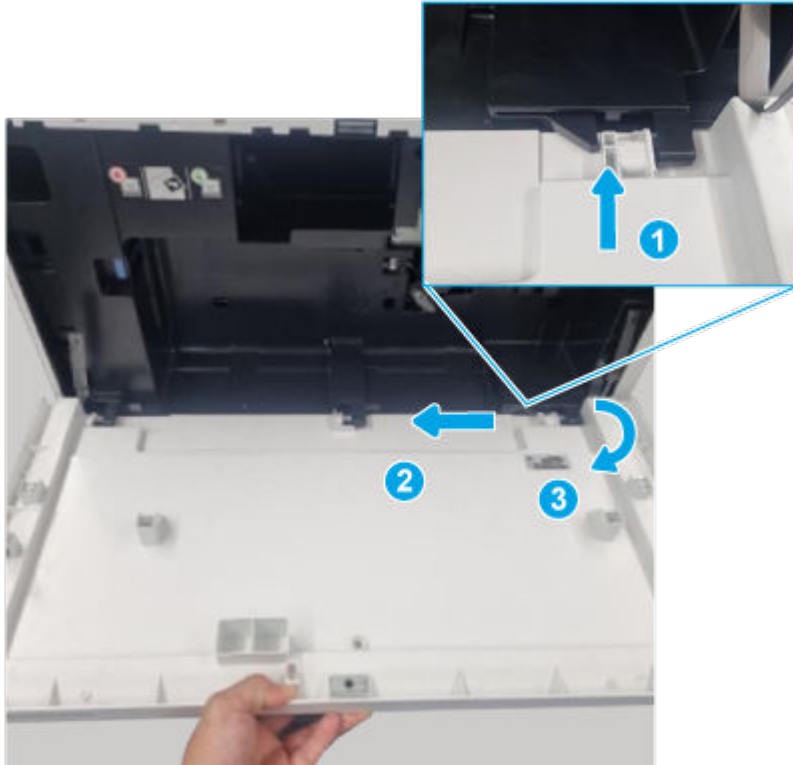
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-837 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-838 Remove the cover

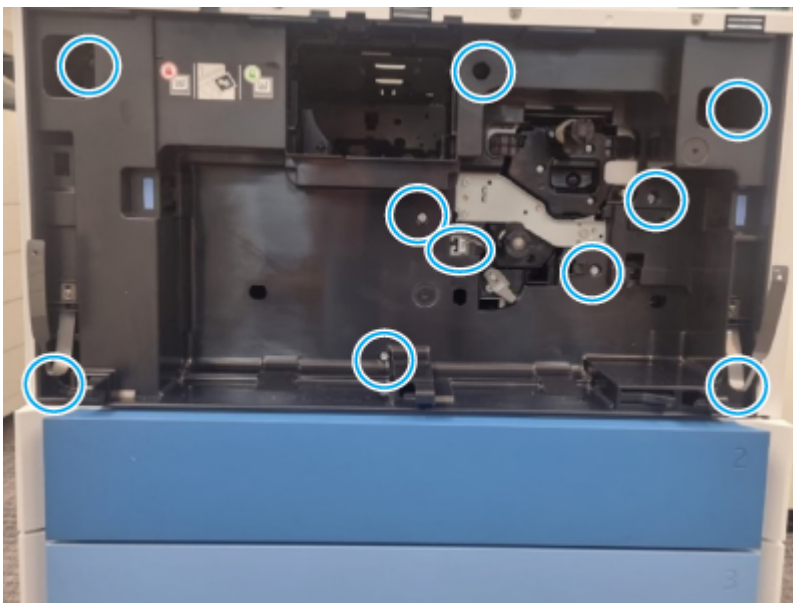


7. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

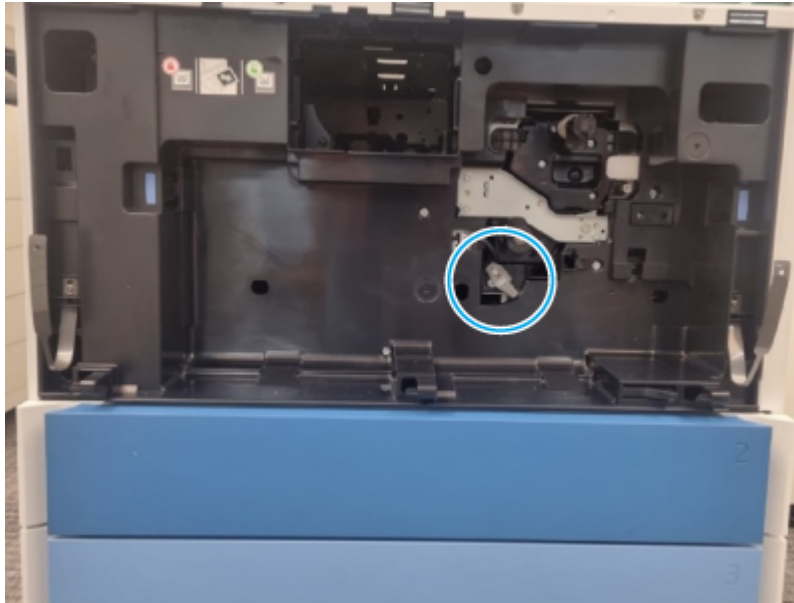
1. Remove nine screws and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-839 Remove screws and disconnect connector



2. Remove the cover carefully, making sure not to damage the drum engage lever as you remove the cover.

Figure 6-840 Avoid damaging the drum engage lever



8. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-841 Remove the cover

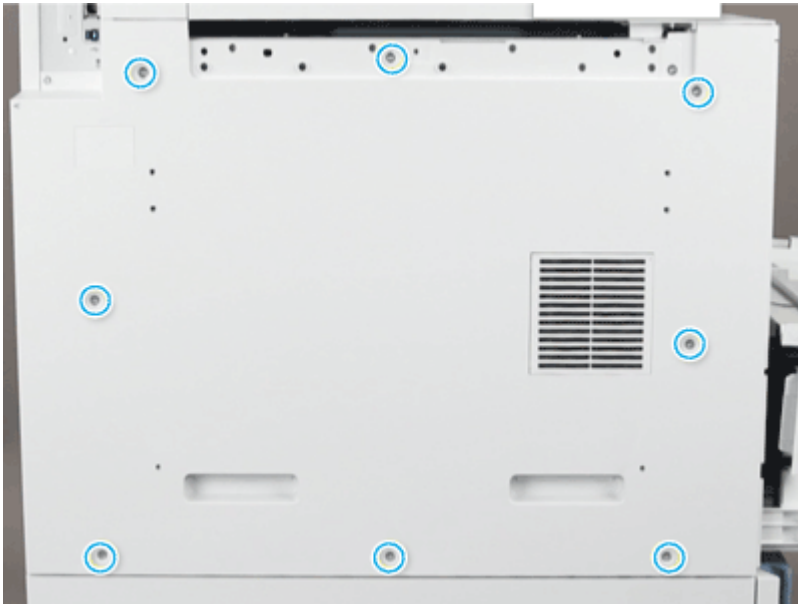


9. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

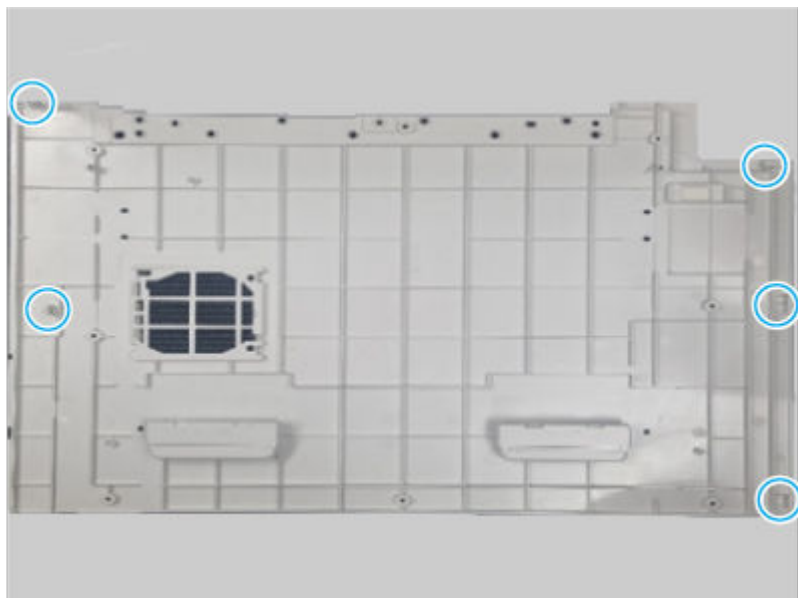
1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-842 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-843 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-844 Remove the cover



10. Remove the LSU

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LSU.

1. Remove two screws

Figure 6-845 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one FFC.



 **NOTE:** The FFC has a locking clip. Release the clip as shown to disconnect the FFC.

Figure 6-846 Locking clip closed



Figure 6-847 Locking clip open



 **Reinstallation tip:** Do not overtighten the screws on the LSU. Overtightening the screws can cause image-distortion issues.

11. Remove the guide toner cartridge assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the guide toner cartridge assembly.

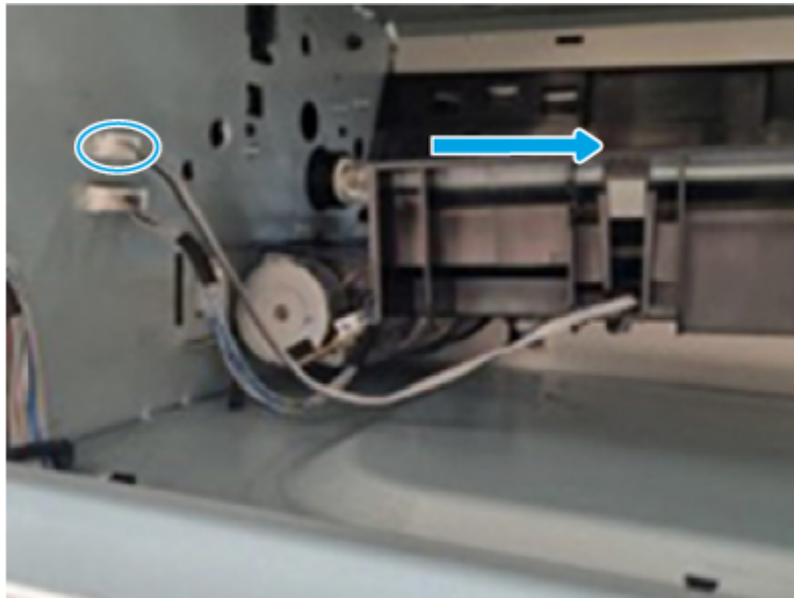
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-848 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect the upper connector, and then remove the assembly.


Figure 6-849 Disconnect the upper connector



12. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reservoir unit

Learn about reservoir unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Reservoir unit

Learn about removing and replacing the reservoir unit.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the reservoir unit.](#)


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-84 Part information

Part number	Part description
X3A79-60003	Reservoir unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

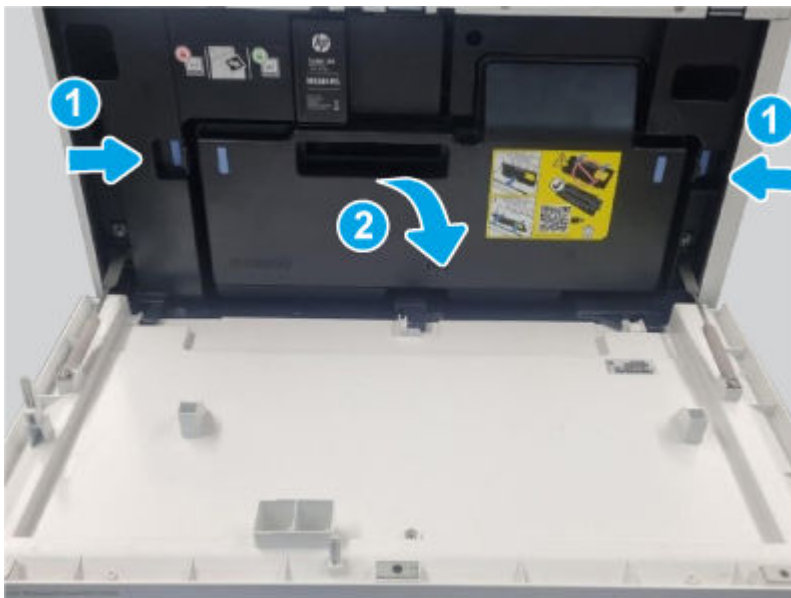
- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03082622
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-850 Remove the TCU

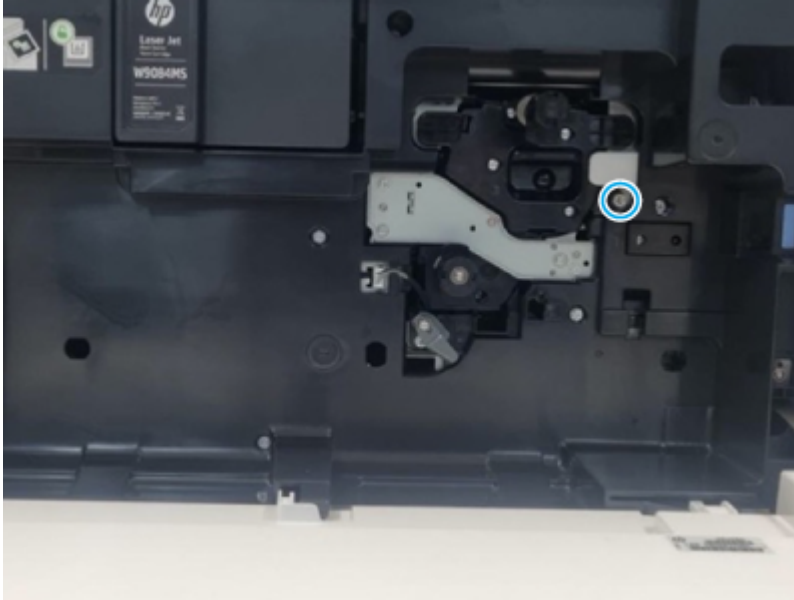


3. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

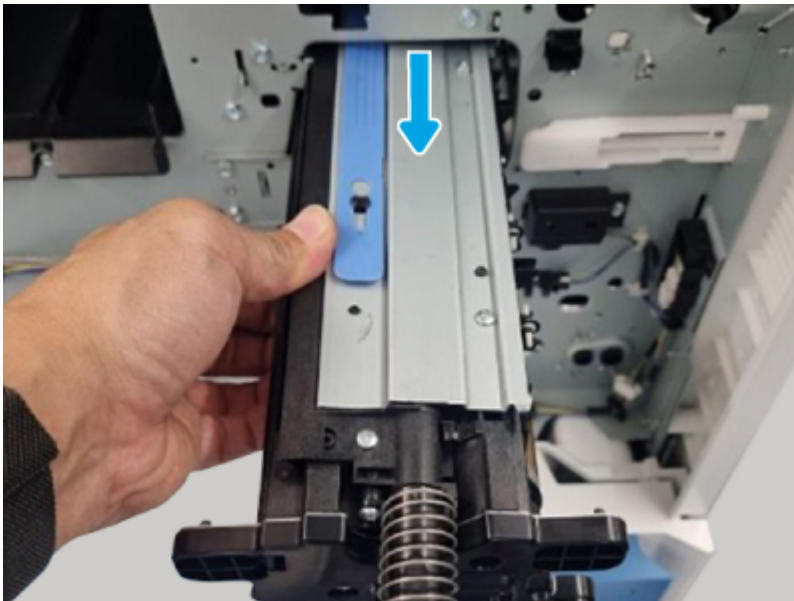
1. Open the right door.
2. At the front of the printer, remove one screw.

Figure 6-851 Remove one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-852 Remove the unit



4. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-853 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-854 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.


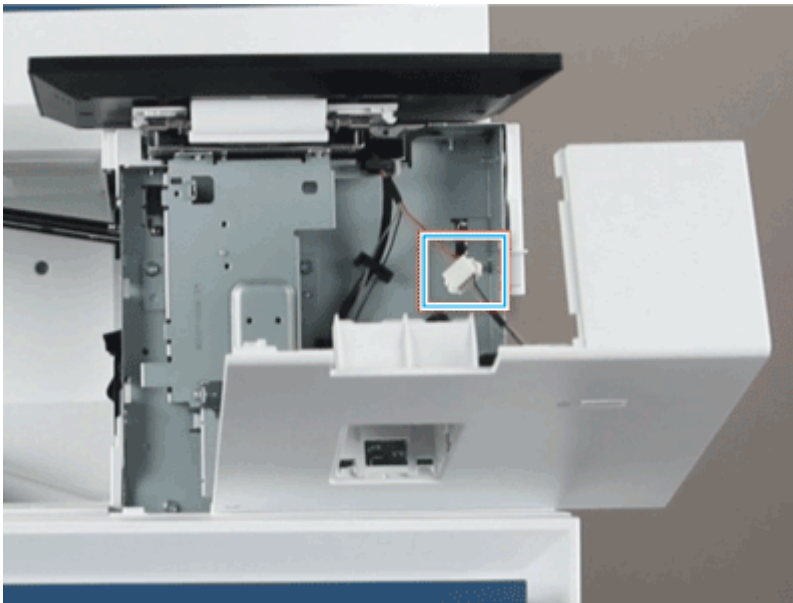
 **CAUTION:** Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-855 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-856 Remove the cover assembly

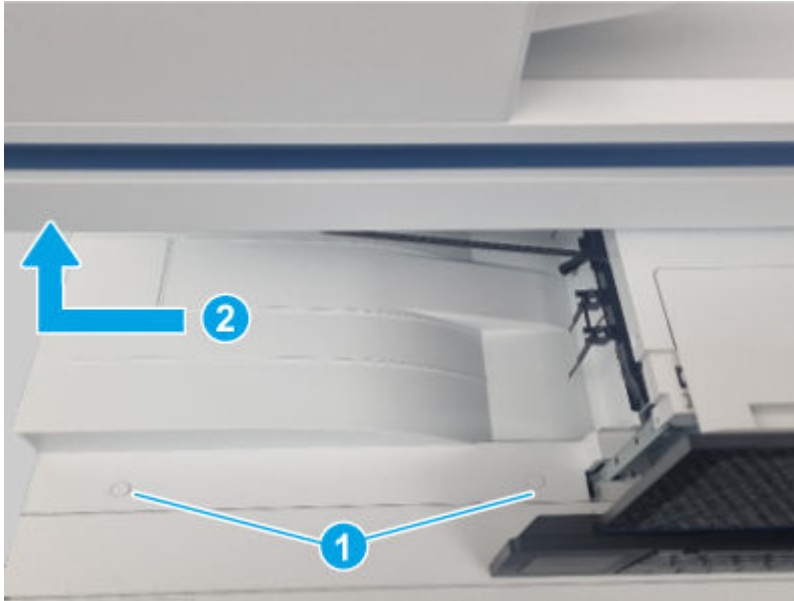


5. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-857 Remove the cover



6. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

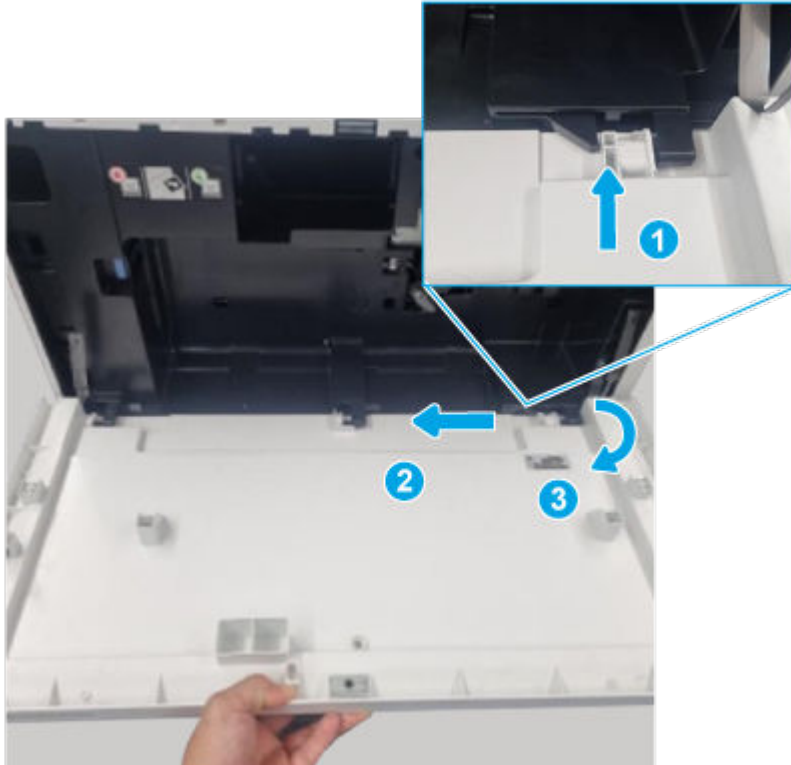
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-858 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-859 Remove the cover

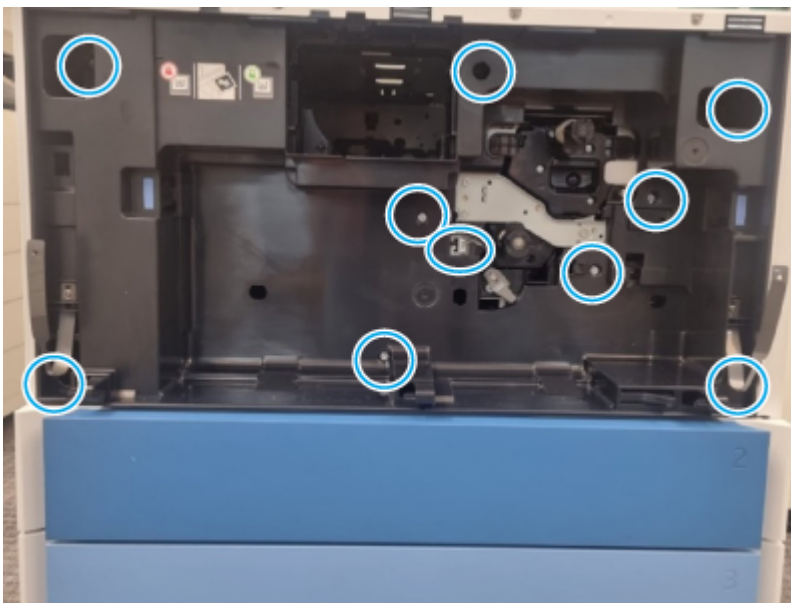


7. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

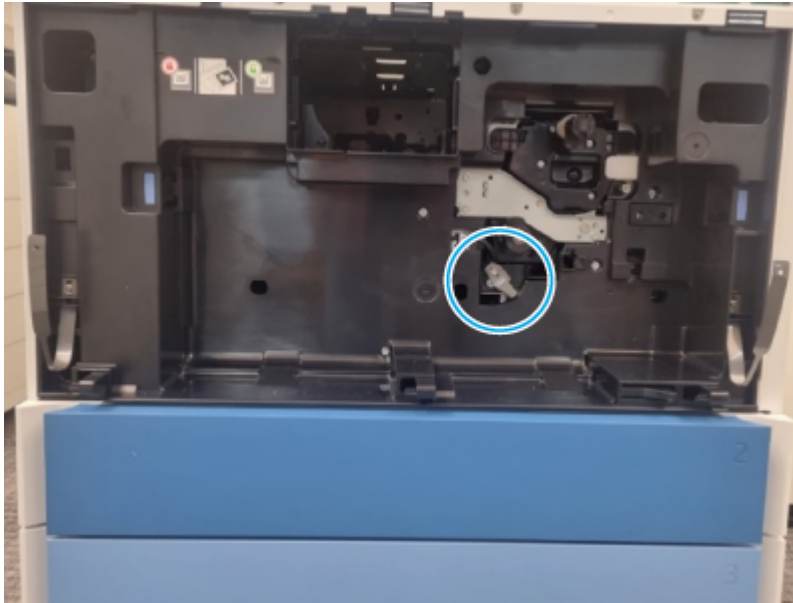
1. Remove nine screws and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-860 Remove screws and disconnect connector



2. Remove the cover carefully, making sure not to damage the drum engage lever as you remove the cover.

Figure 6-861 Avoid damaging the drum engage lever



8. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.


 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-862 Remove the cover

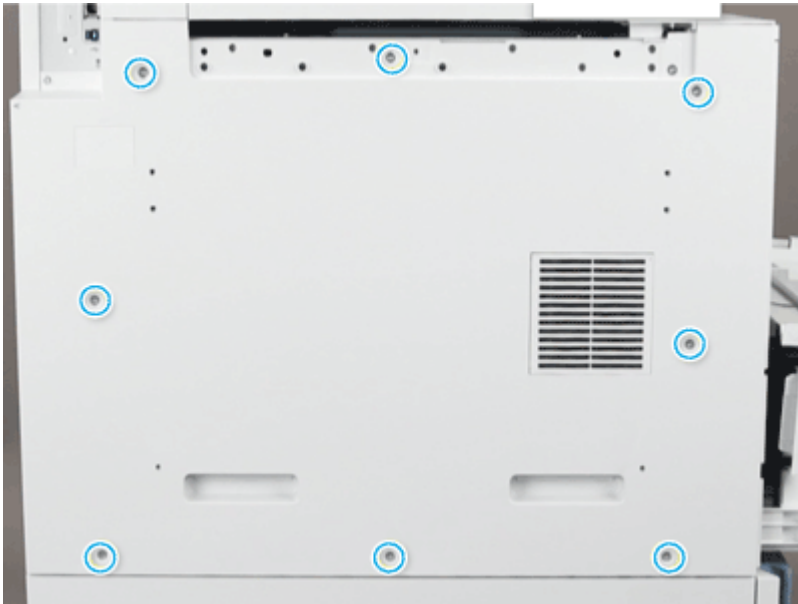


9. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

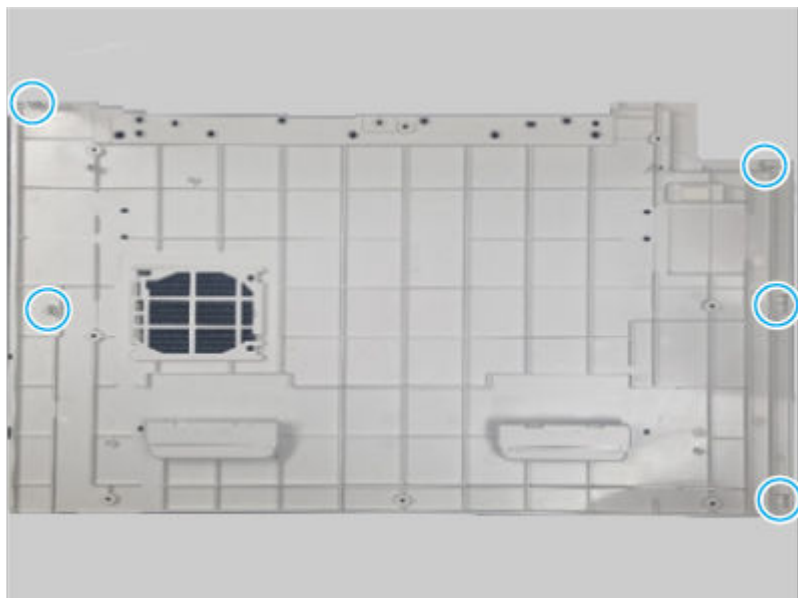
1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-863 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-864 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-865 Remove the cover



10. Remove the LSU

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LSU.

1. Remove two screws

Figure 6-866 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one FFC.



 **NOTE:** The FFC has a locking clip. Release the clip as shown to disconnect the FFC.

Figure 6-867 Locking clip closed



Figure 6-868 Locking clip open



 **Reinstallation tip:** Do not overtighten the screws on the LSU. Overtightening the screws can cause image-distortion issues.

11. Remove the guide toner cartridge assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the guide toner cartridge assembly.

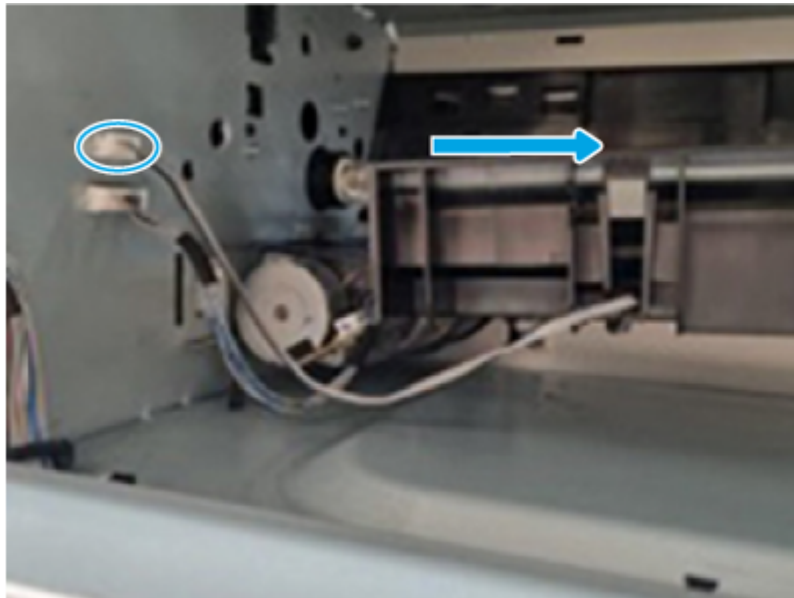
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-869 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect the upper connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-870 Disconnect the upper connector

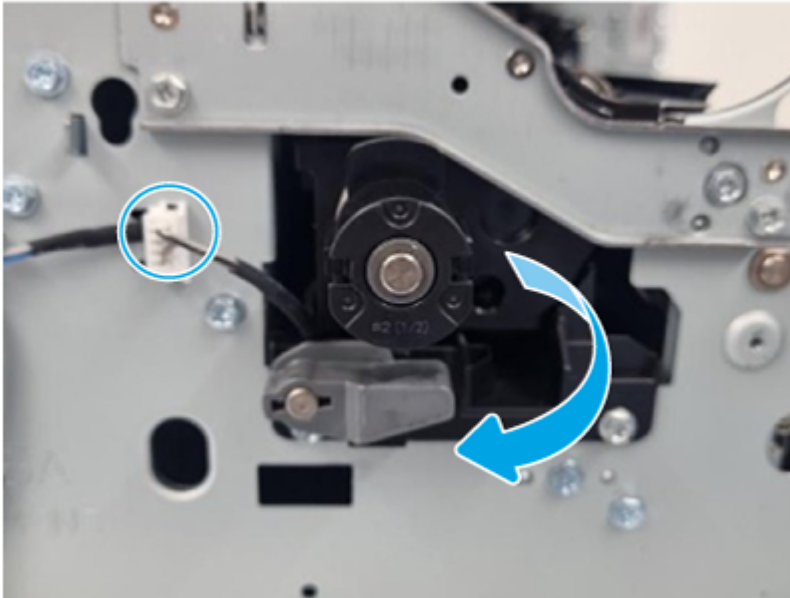


12. Remove the black developer unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black developer unit.

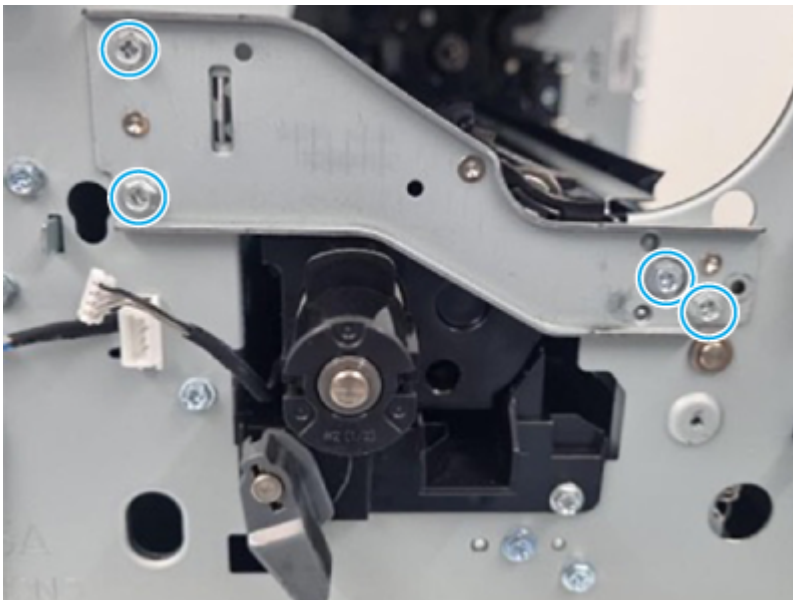
1. Release the lever and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-871 Release the lever and disconnect the connector



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-872 Remove four screws



3. Pull the developer unit out of the printer.



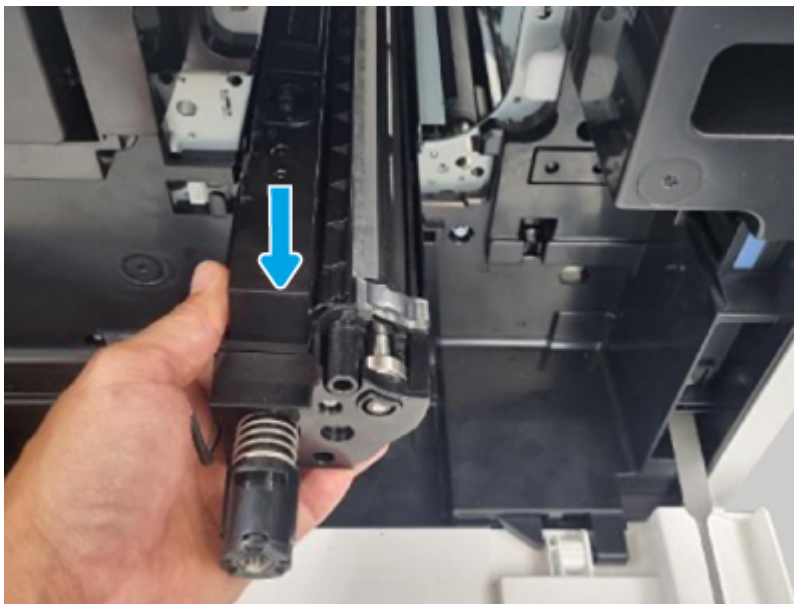
NOTE: If the developer unit is empty, use the steps included in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step) to fill or refill the developer powder.

During removal and installation, do not grab the unit by the lever. Doing so can result in a toner spill.

Figure 6-873 Do not grab lever



Figure 6-874 Remove the unit

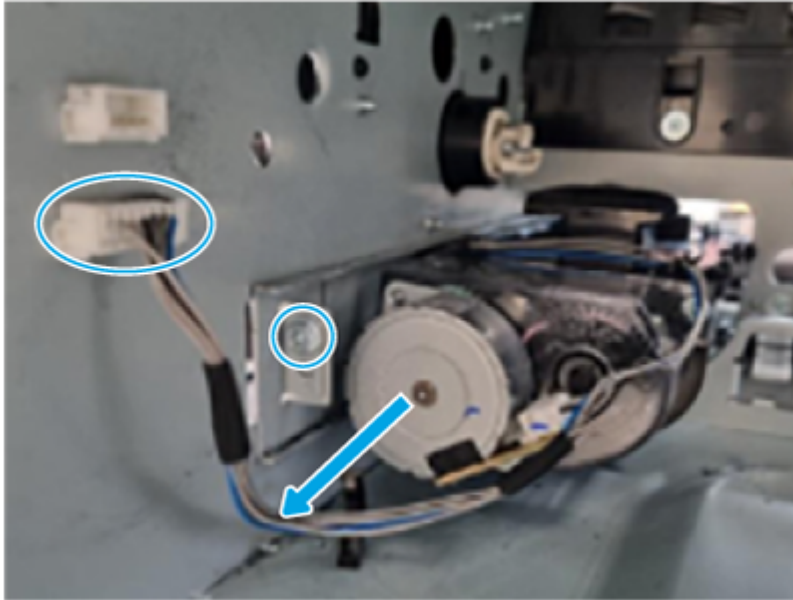


13. Remove the reservoir unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the reservoir unit.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then pull the unit toward the front of the printer.

Figure 6-875 Disconnect connector and remove screw



⚠ CAUTION: In order to avoid spilling toner particles inside the printer, use care in removing this unit.

14. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

📄 NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

⚠ CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

📄 IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

📄 NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Reservoir drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the reservoir drive assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the reservoir drive assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-85 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01067A	Reservoir drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.


Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the **Sign In** item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).

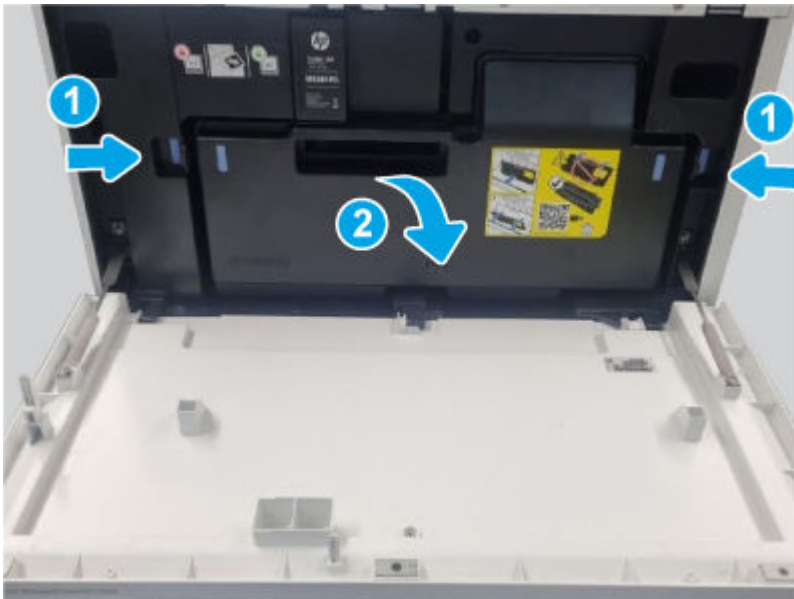
- b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03082622
- c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
- d. Open the front door.
- e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-876 Remove the TCU



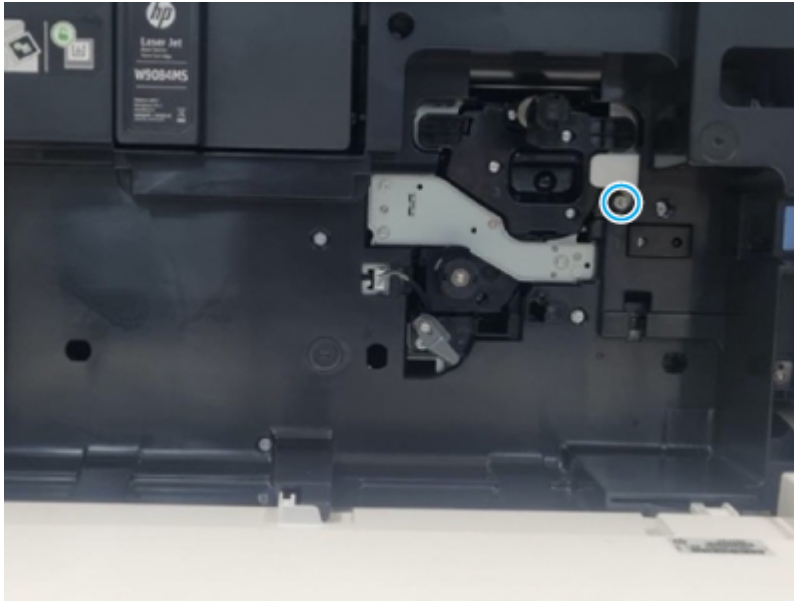
3. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

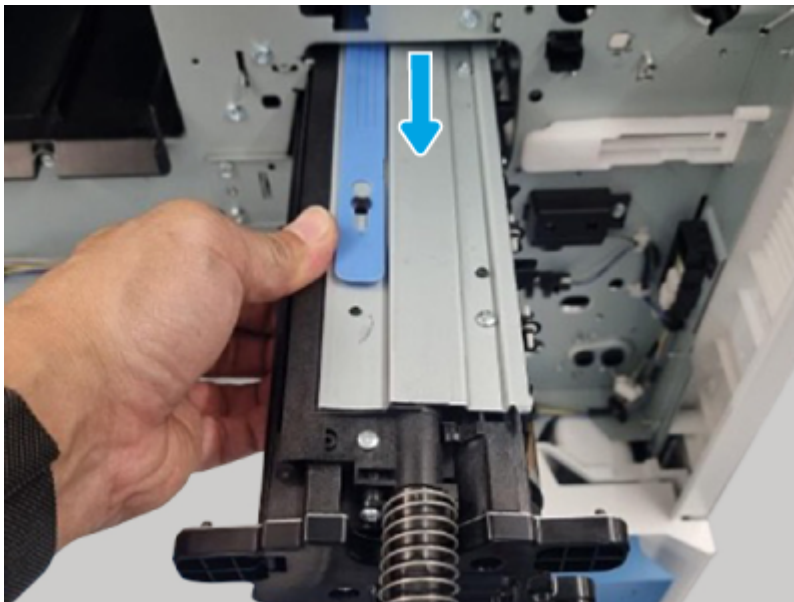
2. At the front of the printer, remove one screw.

Figure 6-877 Remove one screw




3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-878 Remove the unit



4. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-879 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-880 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

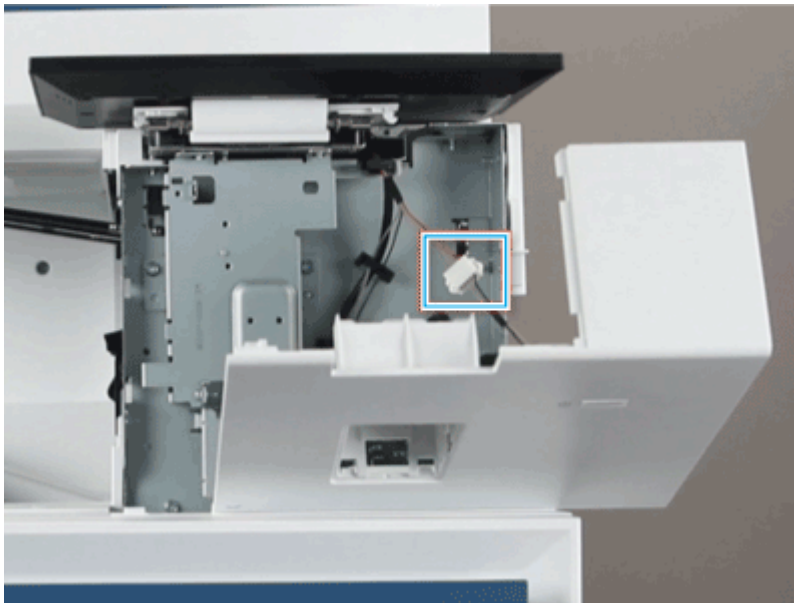
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-881 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-882 Remove the cover assembly



5. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-883 Remove the cover



6. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

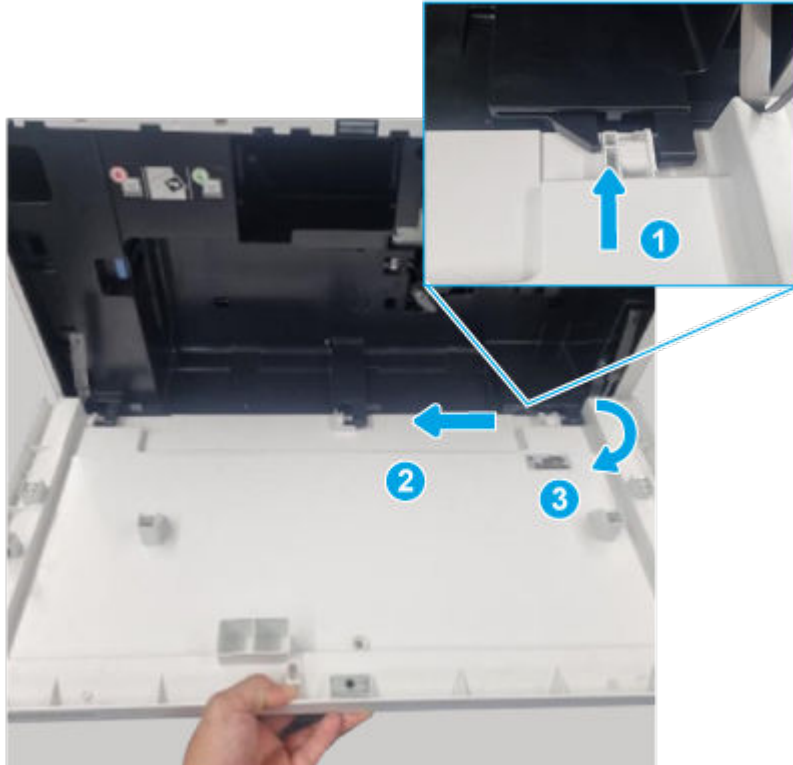
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-884 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-885 Remove the cover

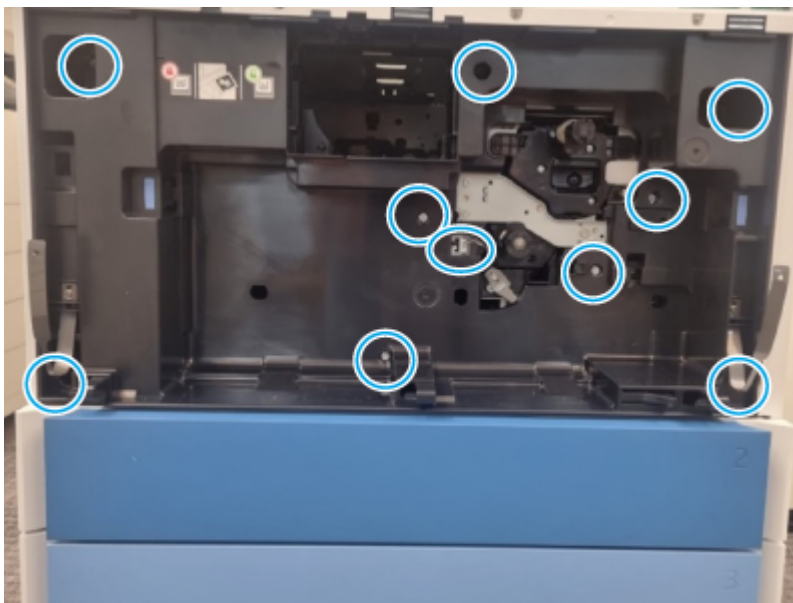


7. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

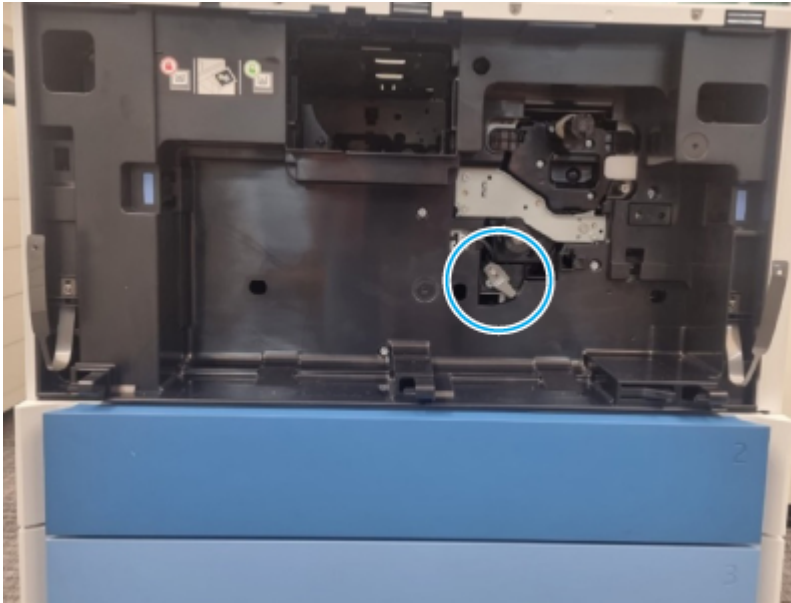
1. Remove nine screws and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-886 Remove screws and disconnect connector



2. Remove the cover carefully, making sure not to damage the drum engage lever as you remove the cover.

Figure 6-887 Avoid damaging the drum engage lever



8. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-888 Remove the cover

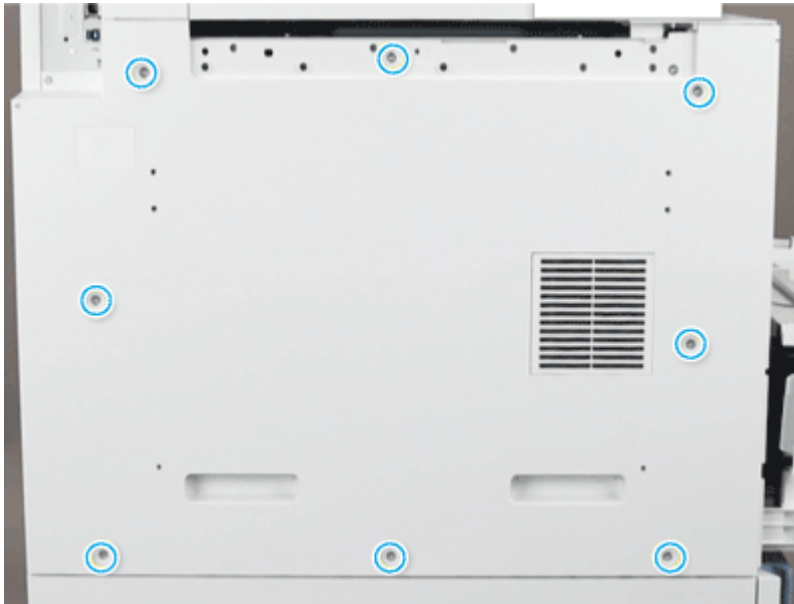


9. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

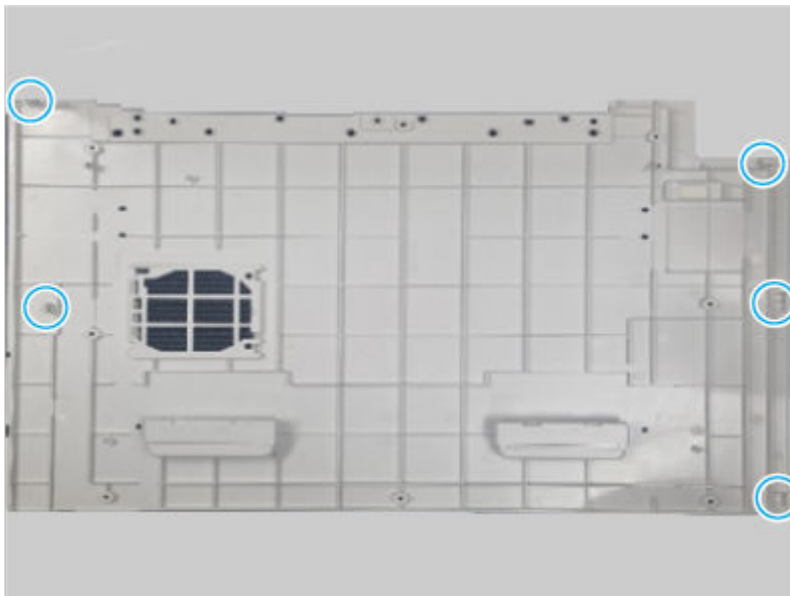
1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-889 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-890 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-891 Remove the cover



10. Remove the LSU

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LSU.

1. Remove two screws

Figure 6-892 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one FFC.



 **NOTE:** The FFC has a locking clip. Release the clip as shown to disconnect the FFC.

Figure 6-893 Locking clip closed



Figure 6-894 Locking clip open



 **Reinstallation tip:** Do not overtighten the screws on the LSU. Overtightening the screws can cause image-distortion issues.

11. Remove the guide toner cartridge assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the guide toner cartridge assembly.

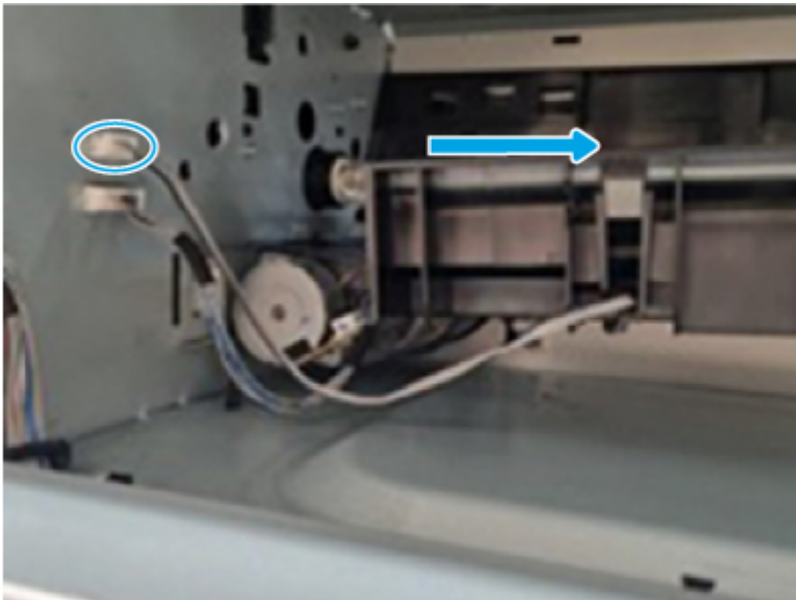
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-895 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect the upper connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-896 Disconnect the upper connector

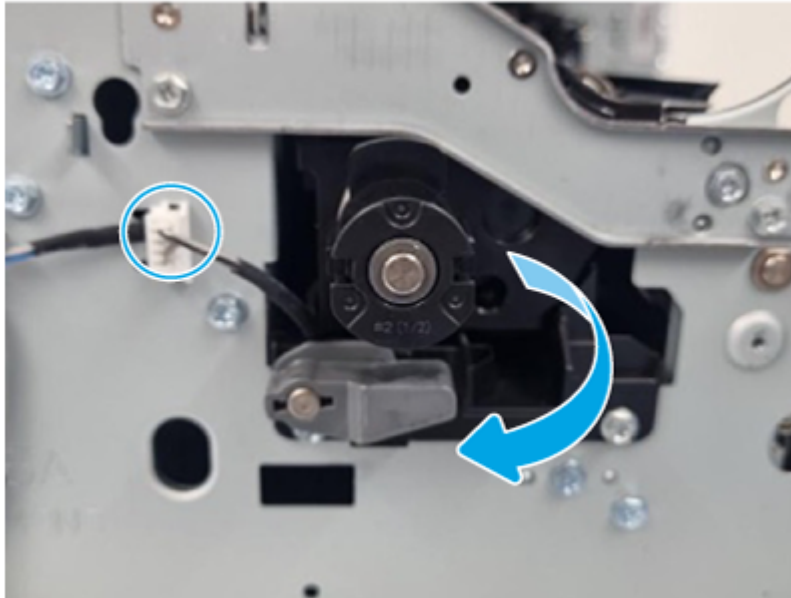


12. Remove the black developer unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black developer unit.

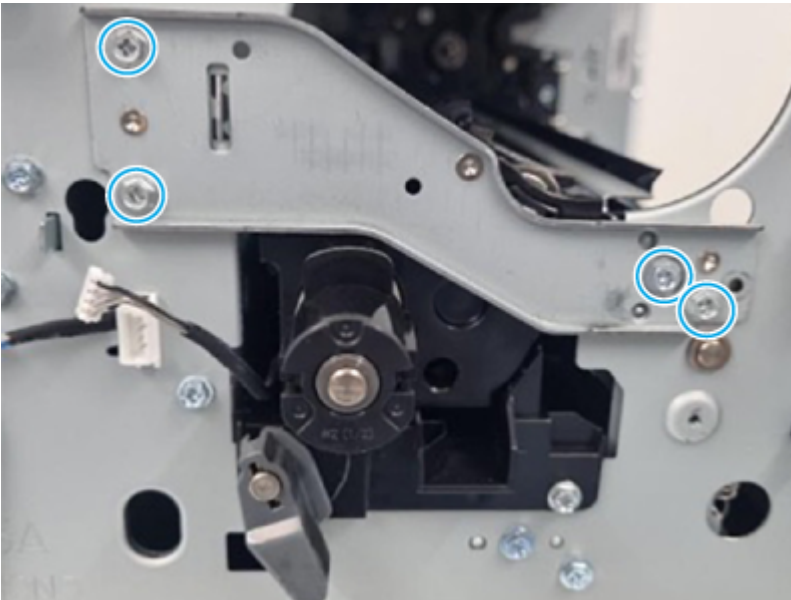
1. Release the lever and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-897 Release the lever and disconnect the connector



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-898 Remove four screws



3. Pull the developer unit out of the printer.



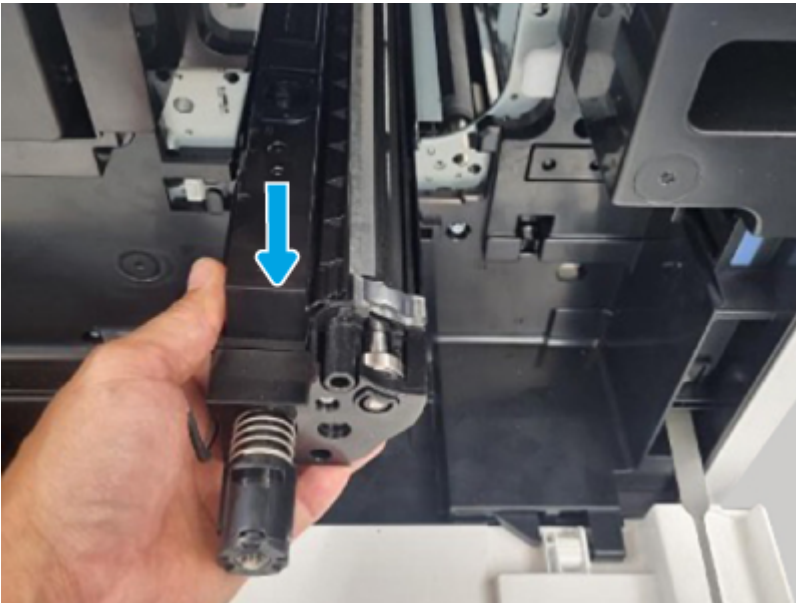
NOTE: If the developer unit is empty, use the steps included in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step) to fill or refill the developer powder.

During removal and installation, do not grab the unit by the lever. Doing so can result in a toner spill.

Figure 6-899 Do not grab lever



Figure 6-900 Remove the unit

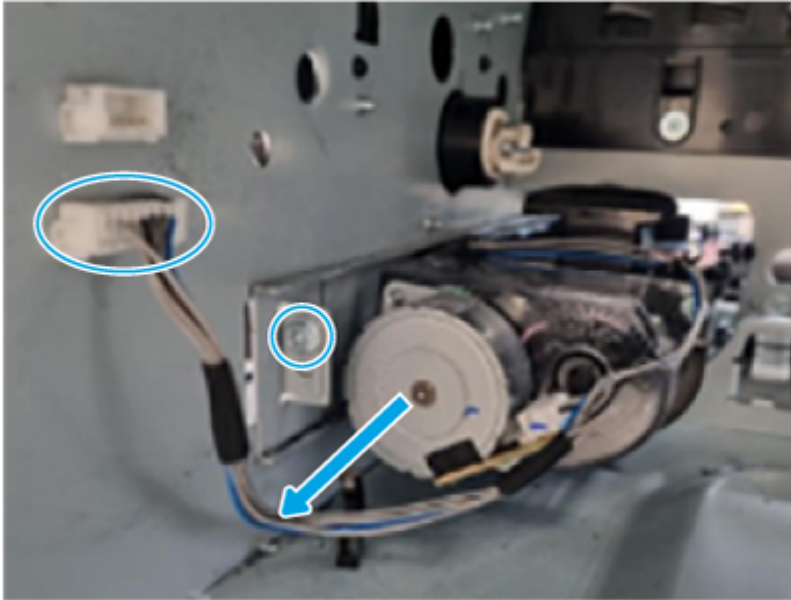


13. Remove the reservoir unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the reservoir unit.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then pull the unit toward the front of the printer.

Figure 6-901 Disconnect connector and remove screw



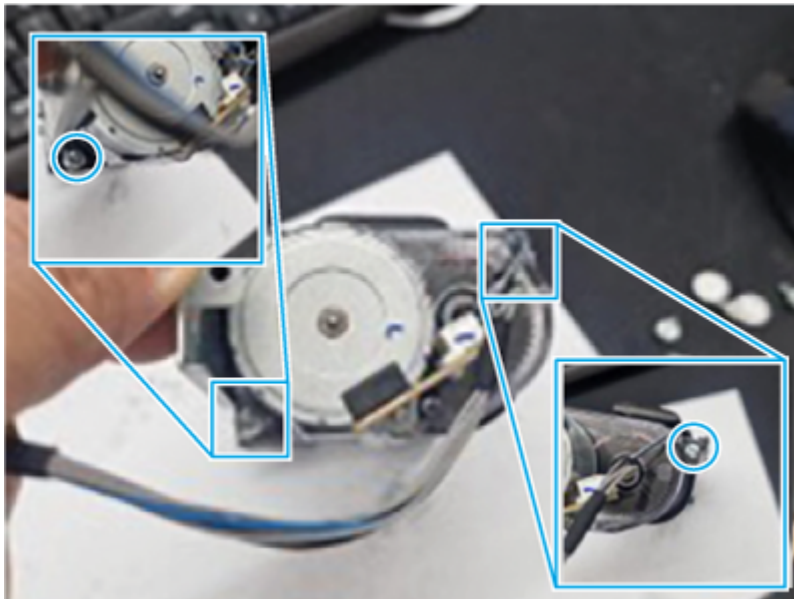
CAUTION: In order to avoid spilling toner particles inside the printer, use care in removing this unit.

14. Remove the reservoir drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the reservoir drive assembly.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the drive assembly from the unit.


Figure 6-902 Remove two screws



15. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner collection unit

Learn about toner collection unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner collection unit.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the toner collection unit.](#)


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-86 Part information

Part number	Part description
W9016-67001	Toner collection unit

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

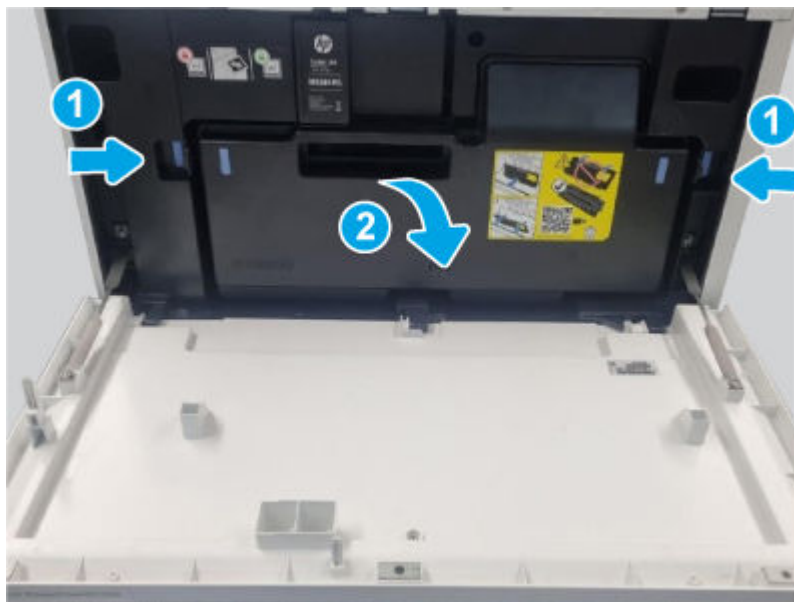
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.


Figure 6-903 Remove the TCU





2. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) detection sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the toner collection unit detection sensor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the toner collection unit detection sensor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-87 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (toner collection unit detection sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03082622
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.



NOTE: If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-904 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-905 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

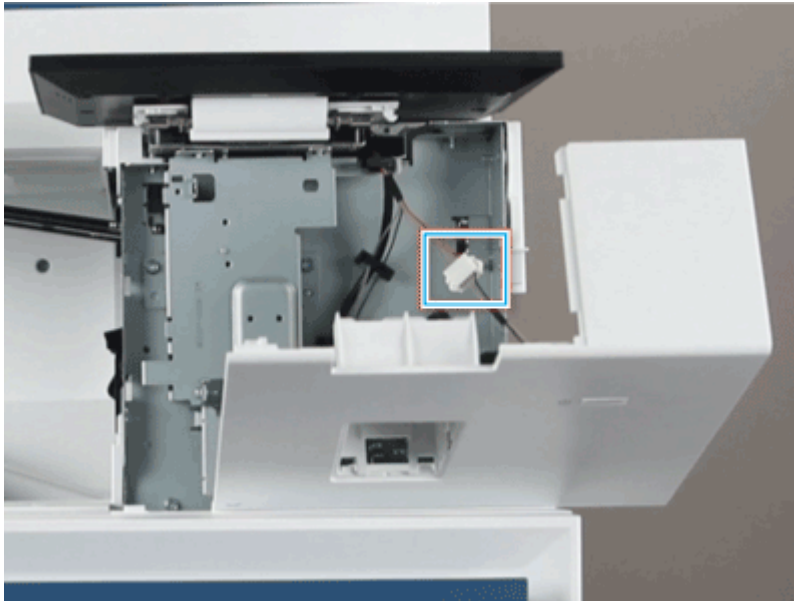
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-906 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-907 Remove the cover assembly



3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-908 Remove the cover

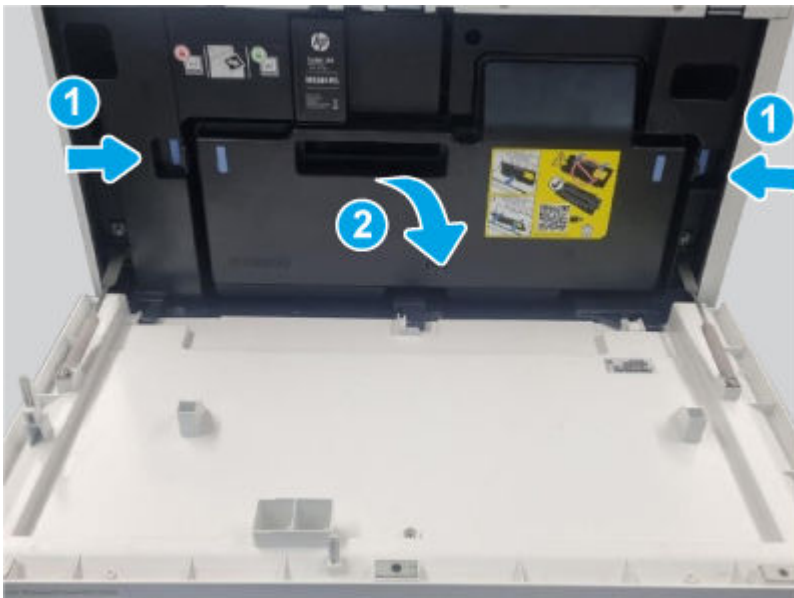


4. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-909 Remove the TCU

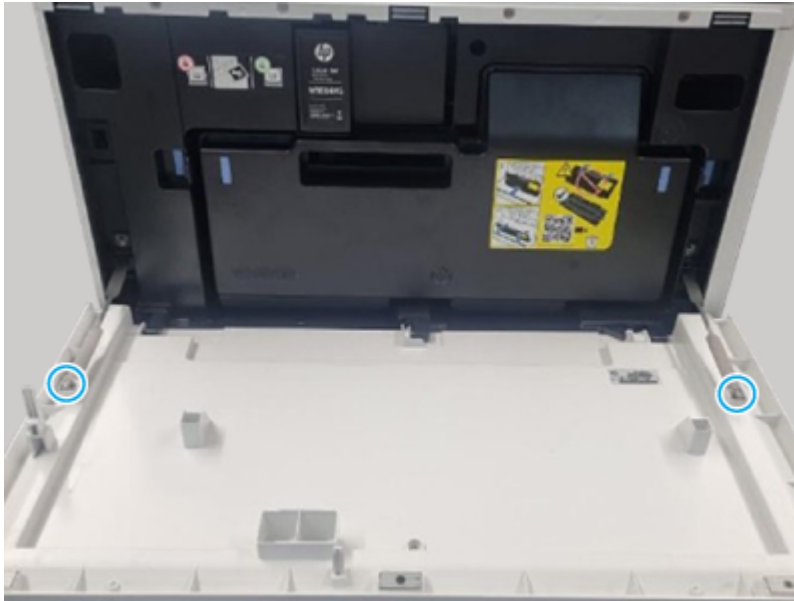


5. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

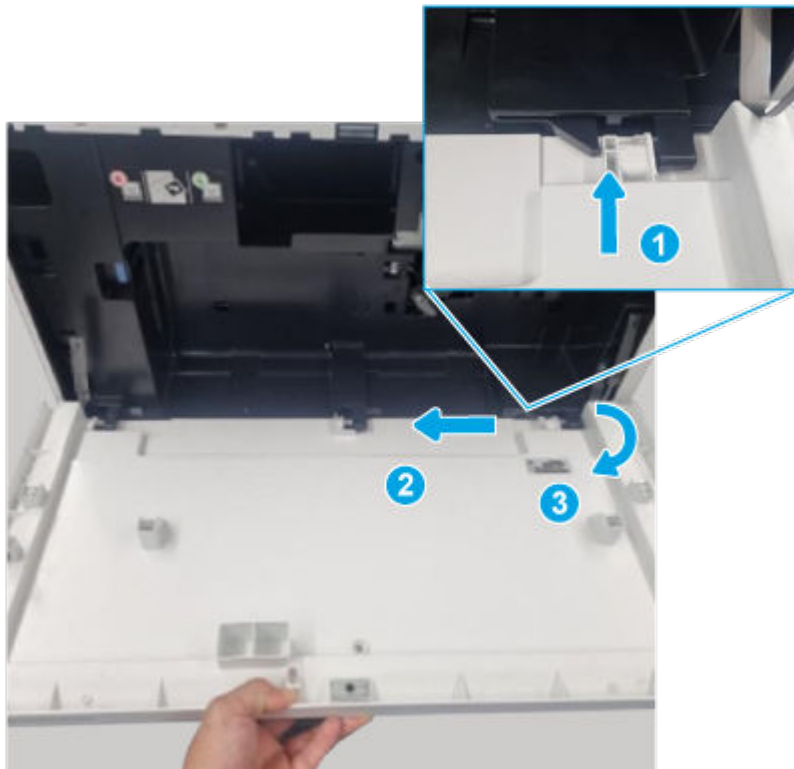
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-910 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-911 Remove the cover

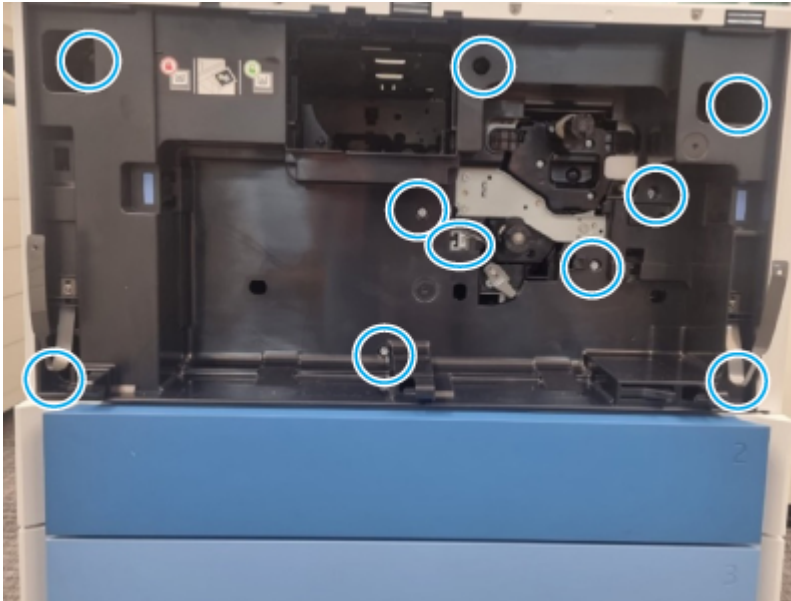


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

1. Remove nine screws and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-912 Remove screws and disconnect connector



2. Remove the cover carefully, making sure not to damage the drum engage lever as you remove the cover.

Figure 6-913 Avoid damaging the drum engage lever



7. Remove the TCU detection sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU detection sensor.

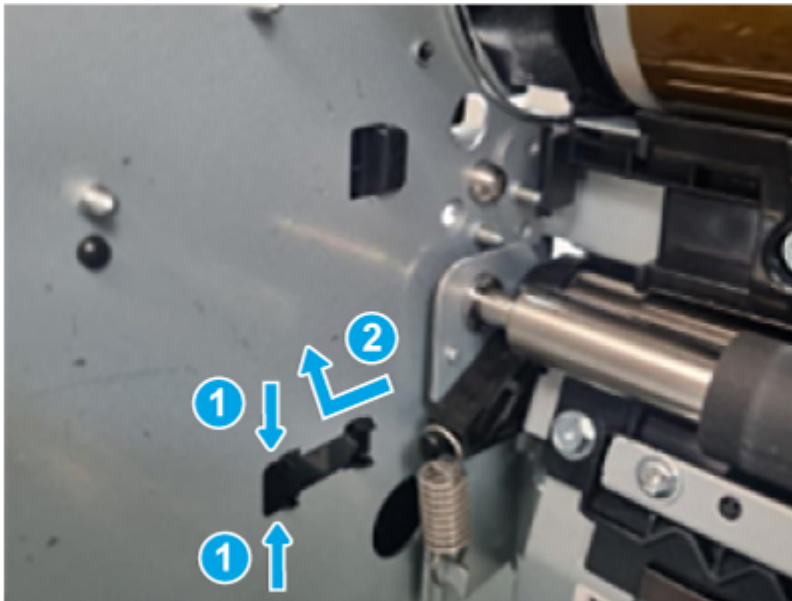
1. Locate the sensor, and then disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-914 Disconnect the connector



2. Open the right door, and then remove the sensor.
 - a. Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - b. Slide the sensor to the right (callout 2), and then remove the sensor.


Figure 6-915 Remove the sensor



8. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) full sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the toner collection unit full sensor assembly.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the toner collection unit full sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes


Service level: Medium

Before performing service

This procedure requires removing the toner cartridges using the control panel method. Do this prior to turning the power off. For more information, see *Remove the toner cartridges (control panel method)* in this topic.

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-88 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00492A	Toner collection unit full sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.


1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03082622
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-916 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-917 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

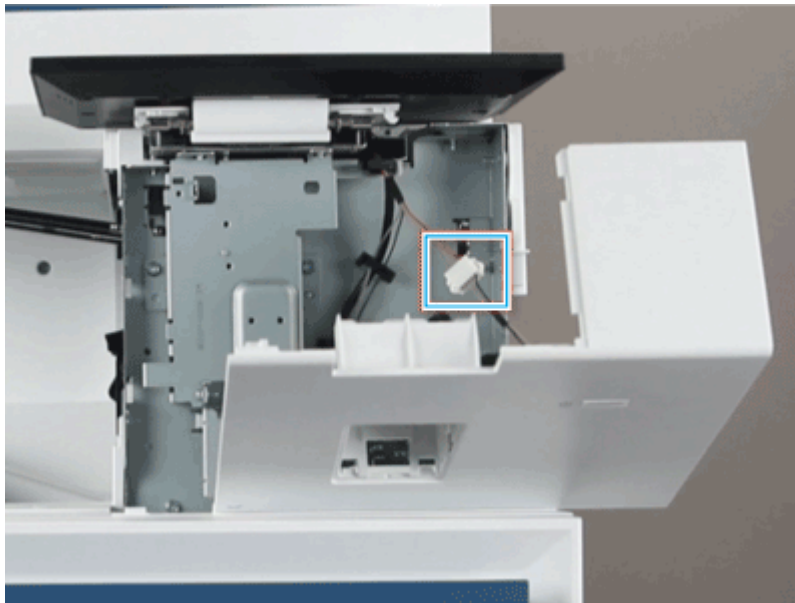
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-918 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-919 Remove the cover assembly



3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-920 Remove the cover

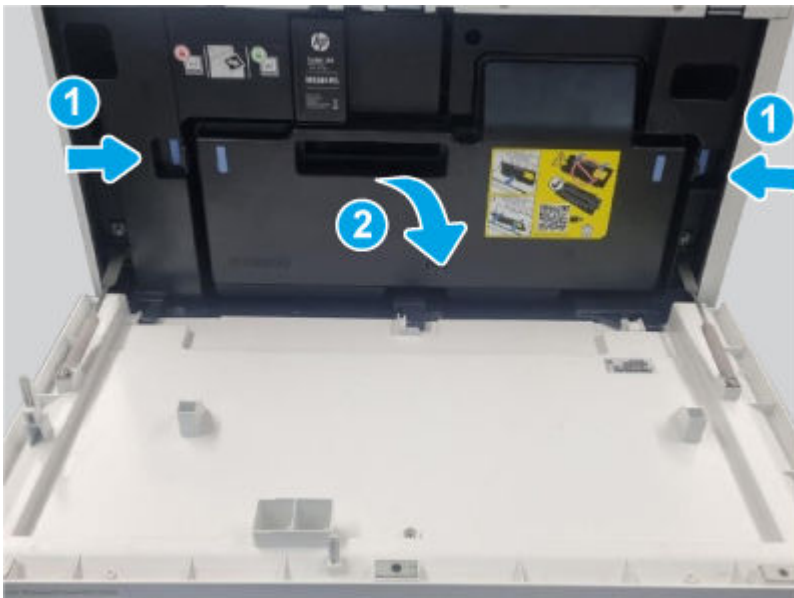


4. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-921 Remove the TCU

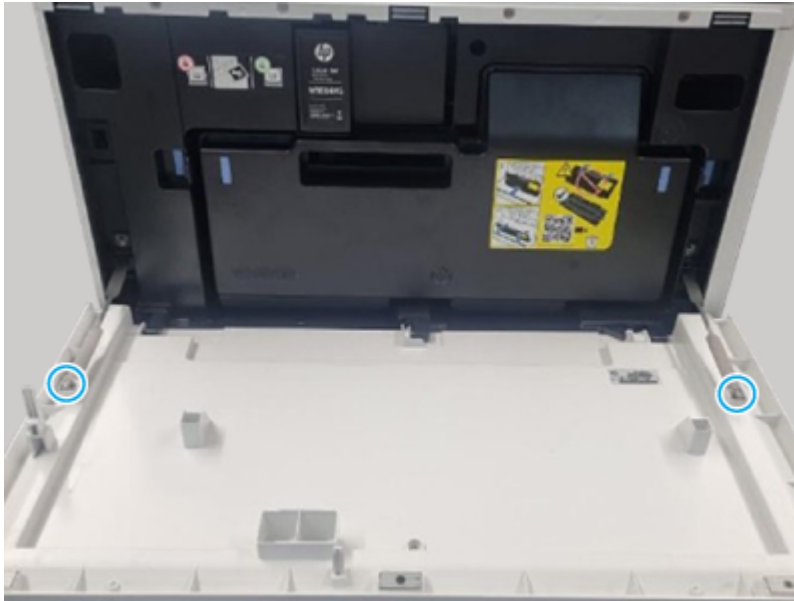


5. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

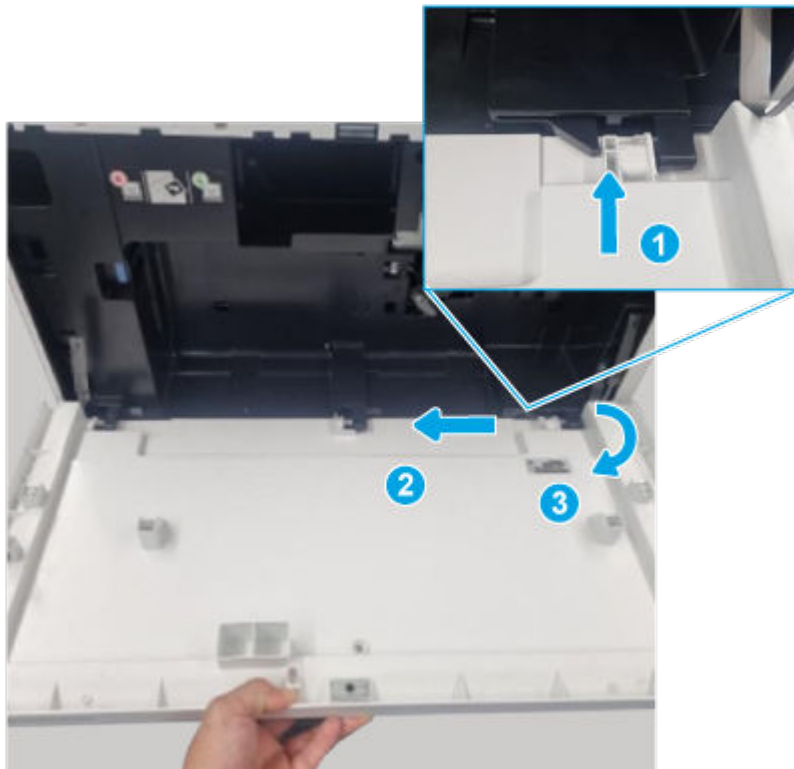
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-922 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-923 Remove the cover

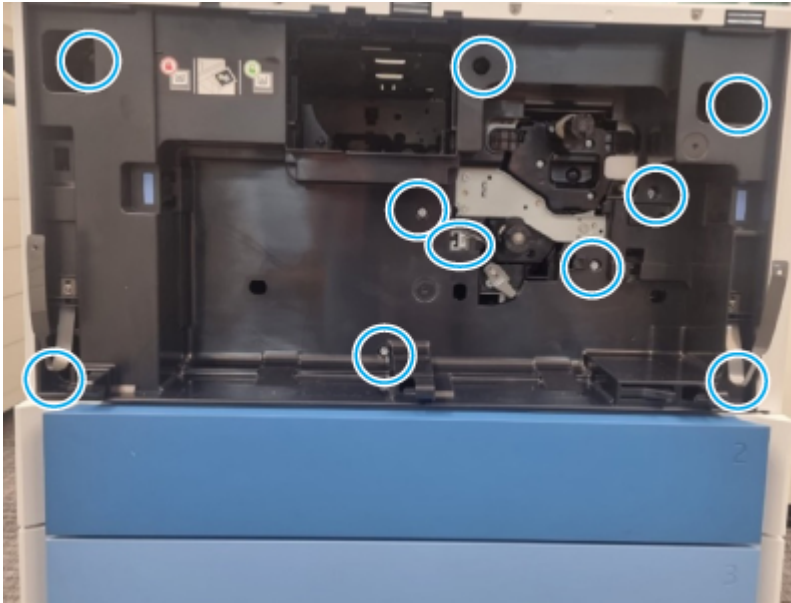


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

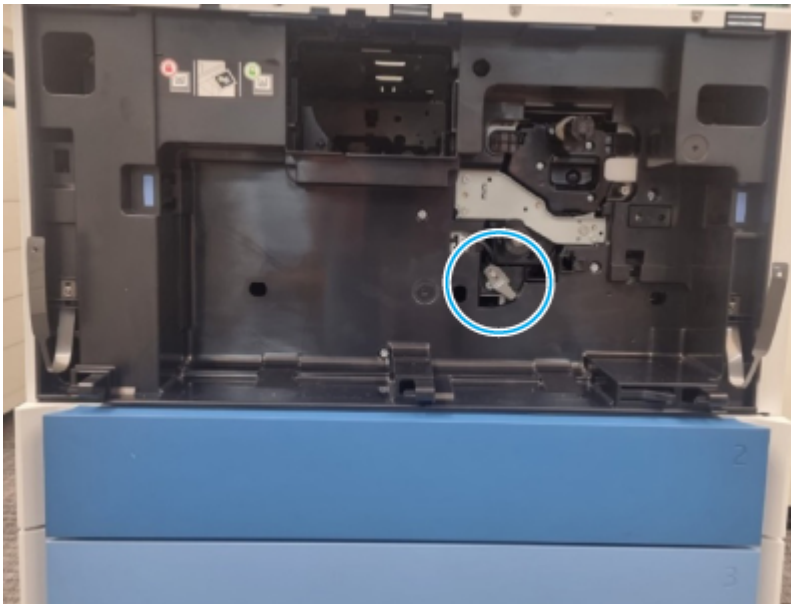
1. Remove nine screws and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-924 Remove screws and disconnect connector



2. Remove the cover carefully, making sure not to damage the drum engage lever as you remove the cover.

Figure 6-925 Avoid damaging the drum engage lever

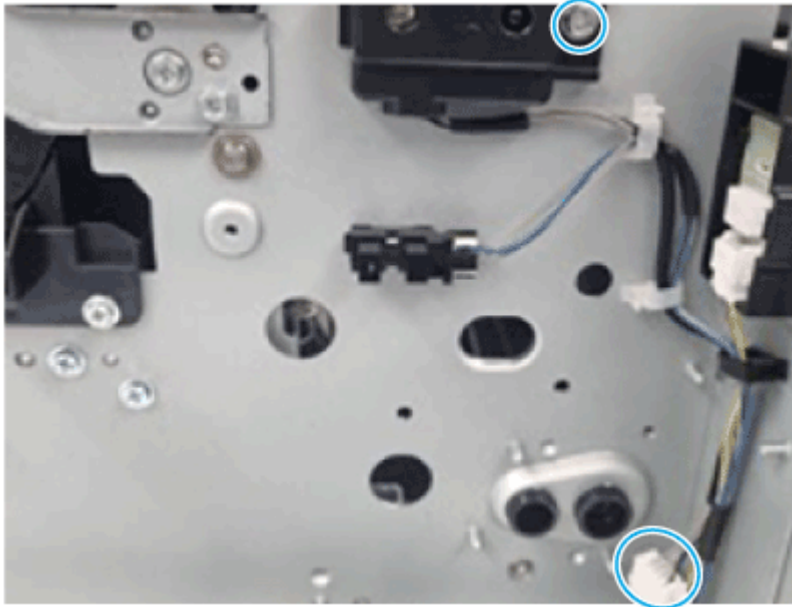


7. Remove the TCU full sensor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU full sensor assembly.

1. Remove one screw, and then disconnect the connector.

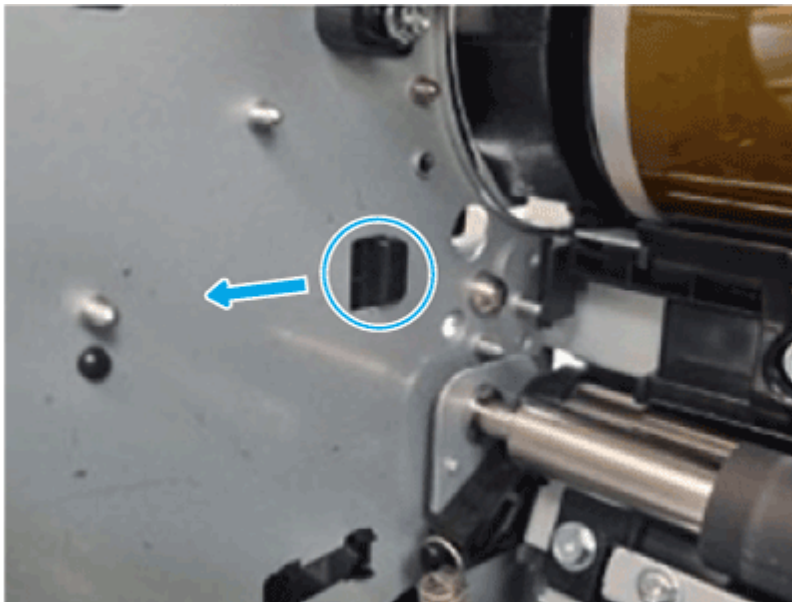
Figure 6-926 Disconnect the connector



2. On the back of the sensor assembly, release the hook to remove the assembly from the printer.

\


Figure 6-927 Release the hook





8. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Image creation

Learn about image creation parts removal and replacement.

Laser scanner unit (LSU)

Learn about laser scanner unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Laser scanner unit (LSU)

Learn about removing and replacing the LSU.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the LSU.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-89 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-05147A	Laser scanner unit (LSU)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-928 Remove the cover



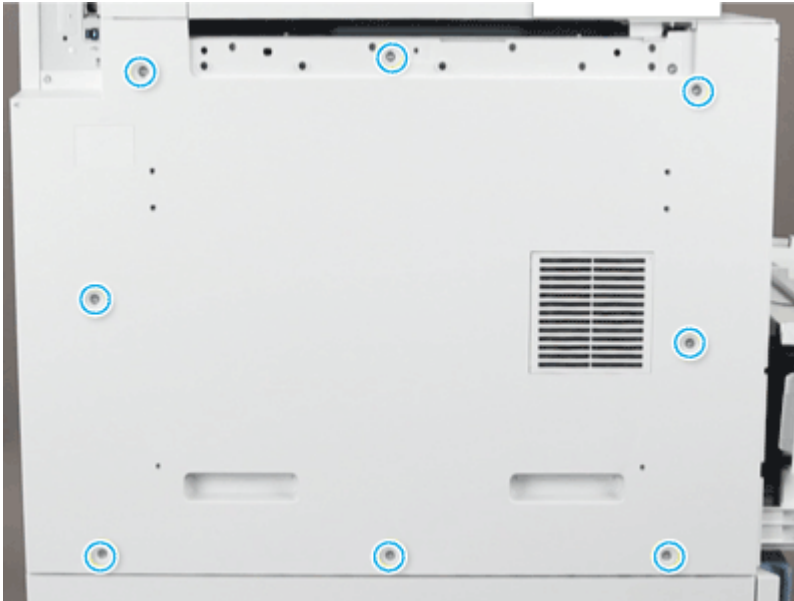
2. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

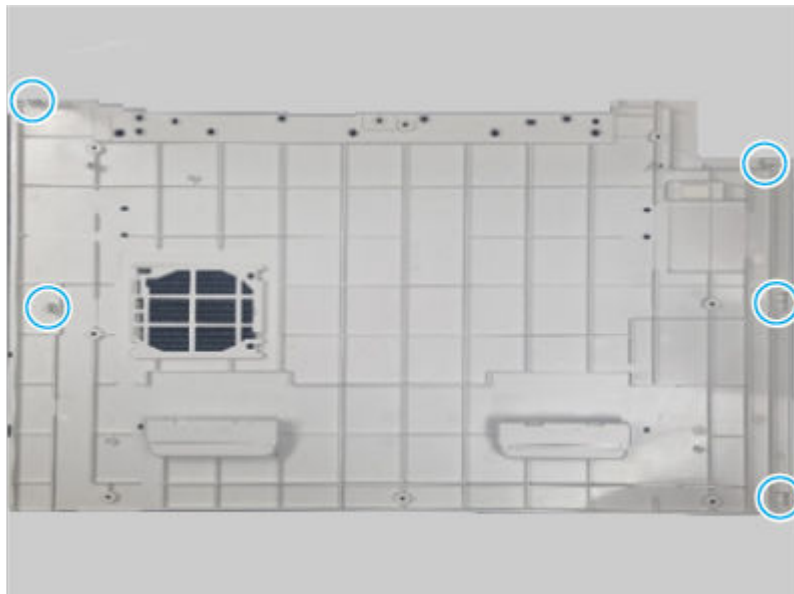
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-929 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-930 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-931 Remove the cover



3. Remove the LSU

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LSU.

1. Remove two screws

Figure 6-932 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one FFC.



 **NOTE:** The FFC has a locking clip. Release the clip as shown to disconnect the FFC.

Figure 6-933 Locking clip closed



Figure 6-934 Locking clip open




 **Reinstallation tip:** Do not overtighten the screws on the LSU. Overtightening the screws can cause image-distortion issues.

4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Developer and drum

Learn about developer and drum parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Drum unit

Learn about removing and replacing the drum unit.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the drum unit.](#)


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-90 Part information

Part number	Part description
W9086-67001	Black drum unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

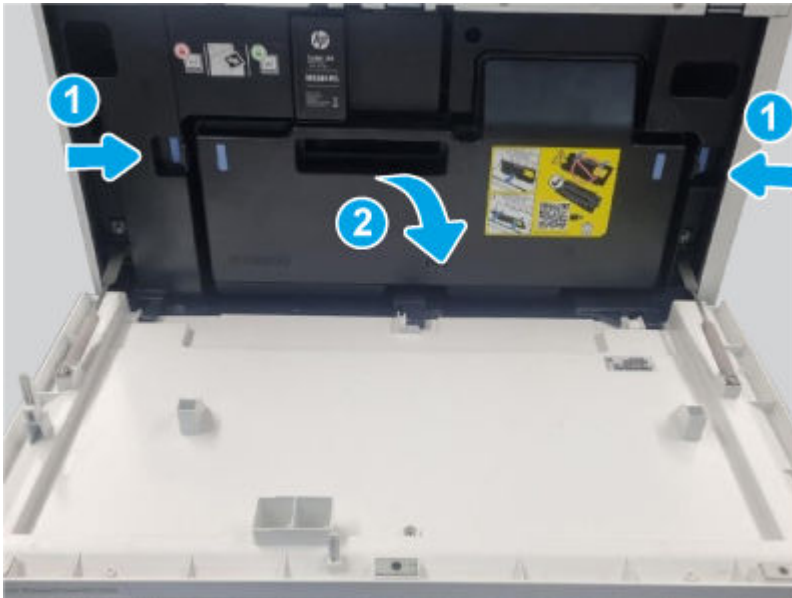
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-935 Remove the TCU



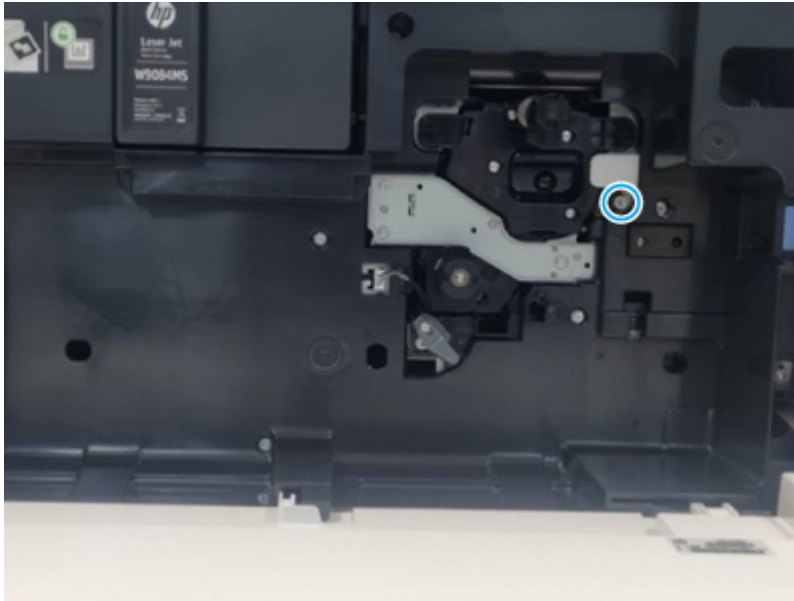
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

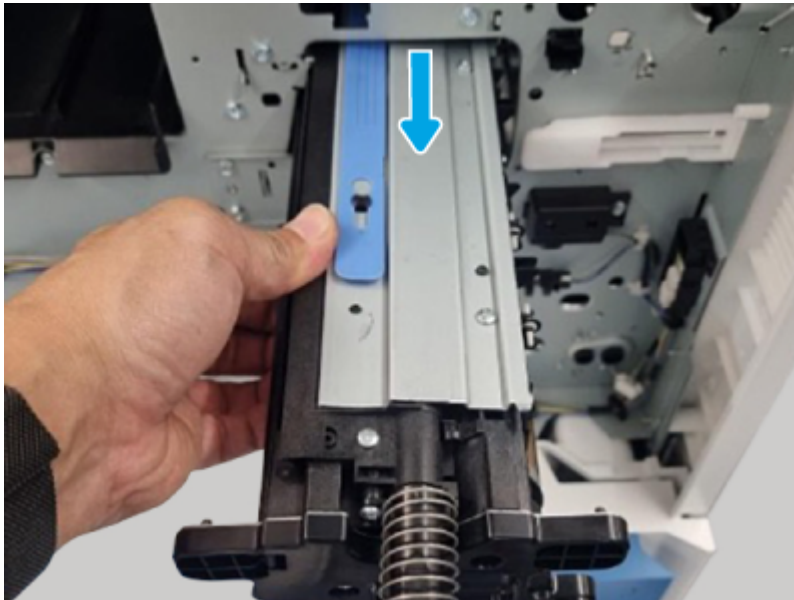
2. At the front of the printer, remove one screw.

Figure 6-936 Remove one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-937 Remove the unit



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Black developer unit

Learn about removing and replacing the black developer unit.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the black developer unit.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-91 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN82-67002	Black developer unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

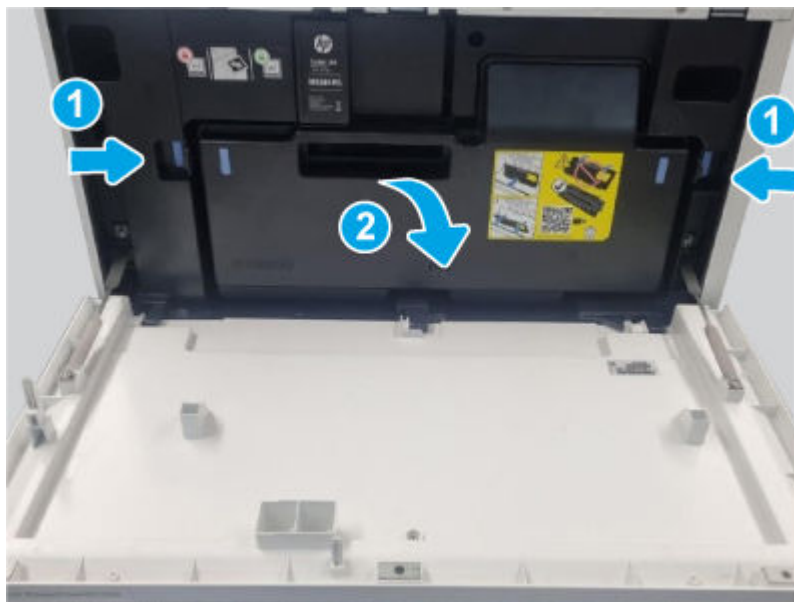
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-938 Remove the TCU



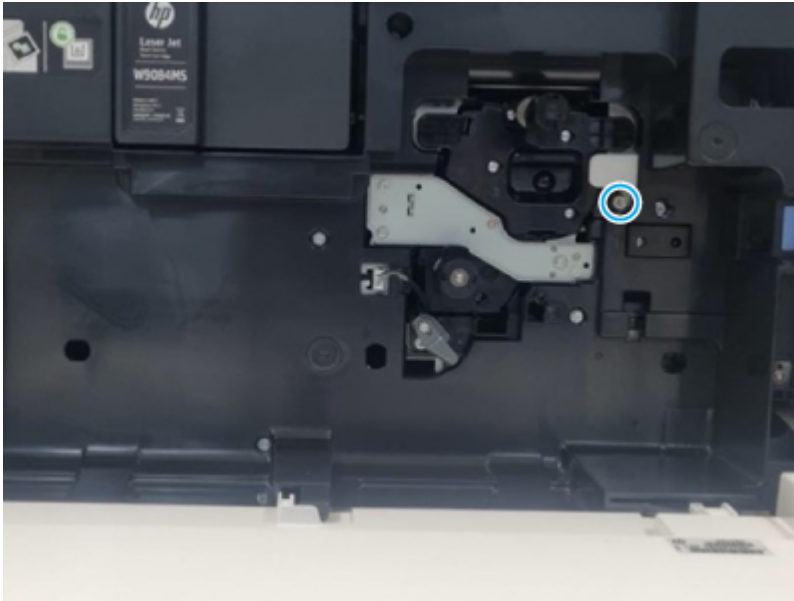
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

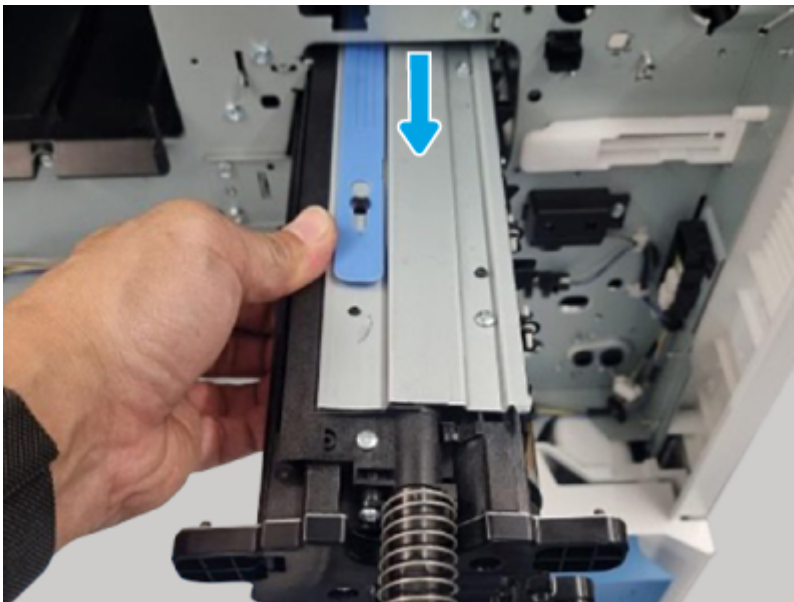
2. At the front of the printer, remove one screw.

Figure 6-939 Remove one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-940 Remove the unit

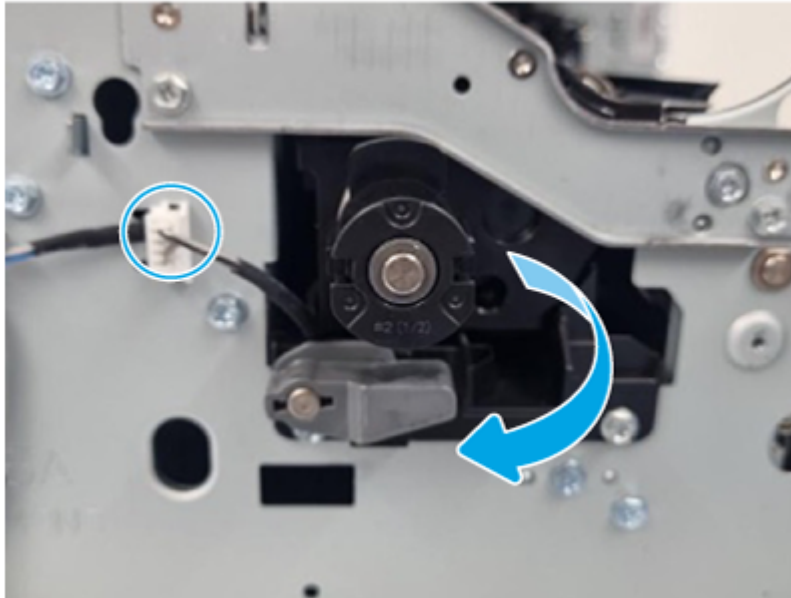


3. Remove the black developer unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black developer unit.

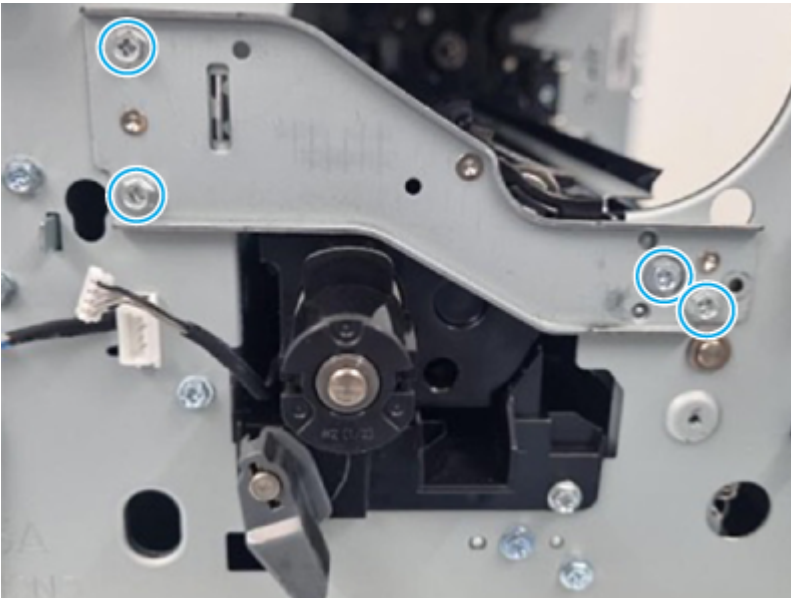
1. Release the lever and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-941 Release the lever and disconnect the connector




2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-942 Remove four screws



3. Pull the developer unit out of the printer.

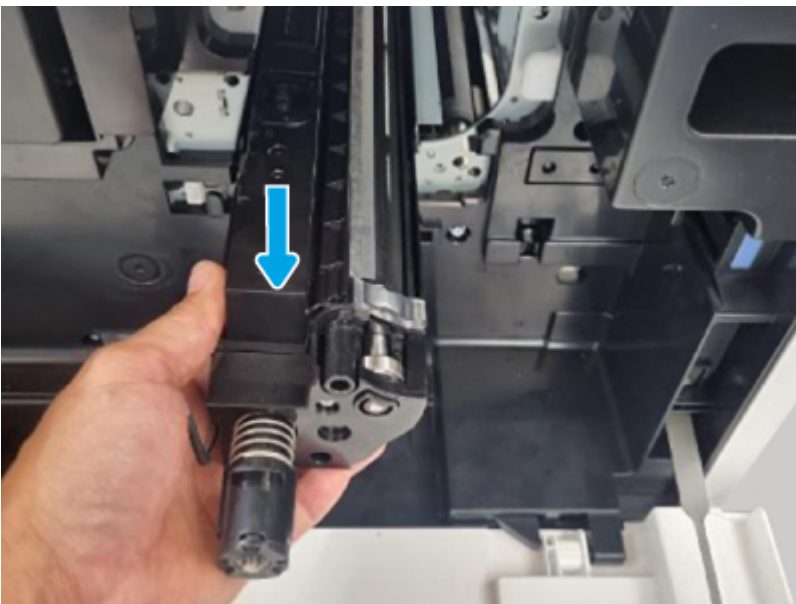
 **NOTE:** If the developer unit is empty, use the steps included in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step) to fill or refill the developer powder.

During removal and installation, do not grab the unit by the lever. Doing so can result in a toner spill.

Figure 6-943 Do not grab lever



Figure 6-944 Remove the unit



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer powder

Learn about filling or refilling the developer powder.

 **NOTE:** Use this procedure to fill or refill an empty developer unit with developer powder.

 [View a video of removing and refilling the black developer unit.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-92 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN82-67001	Black developer powder kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

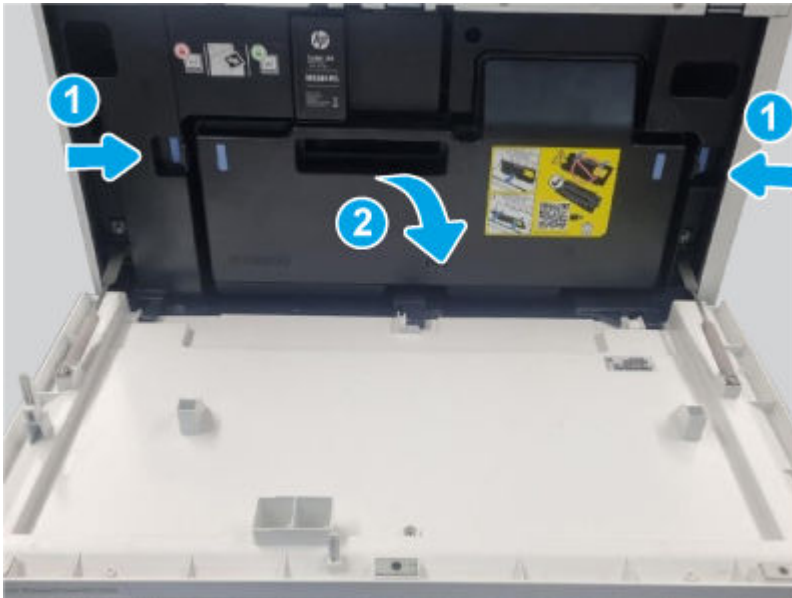
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-945 Remove the TCU



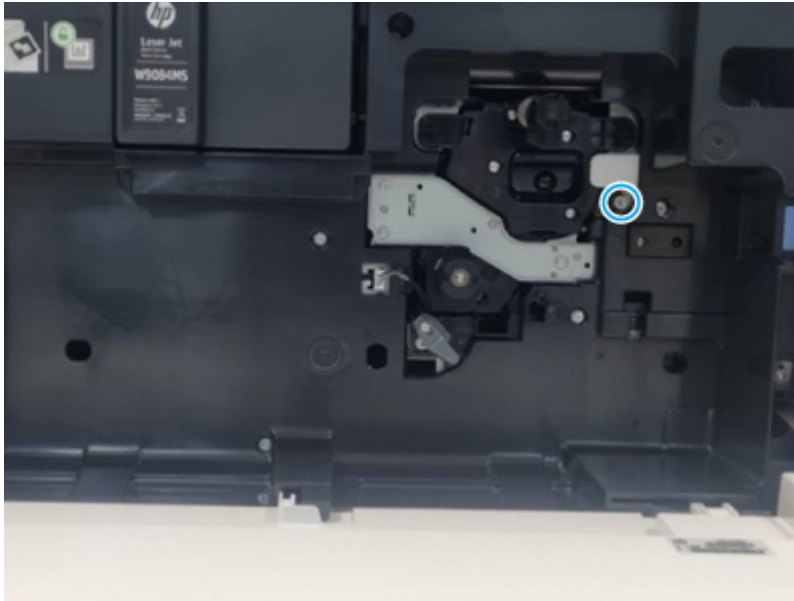
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

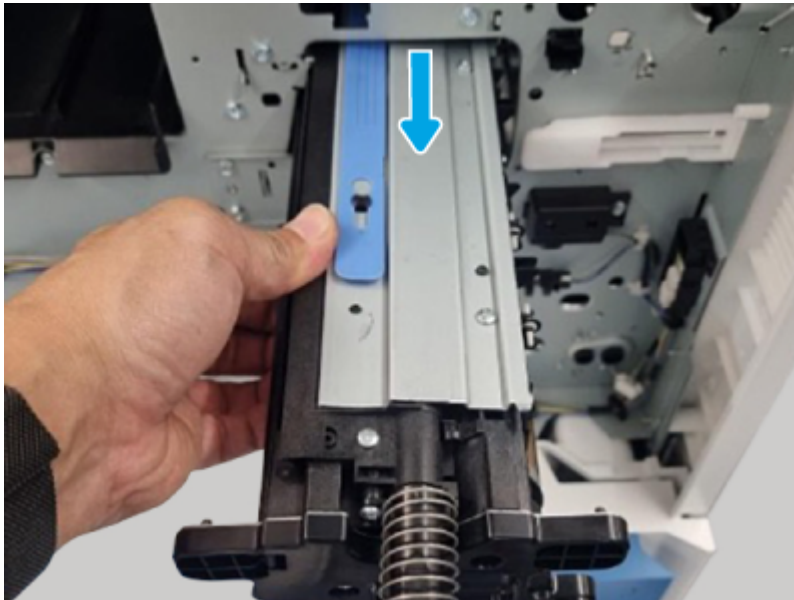
2. At the front of the printer, remove one screw.

Figure 6-946 Remove one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-947 Remove the unit

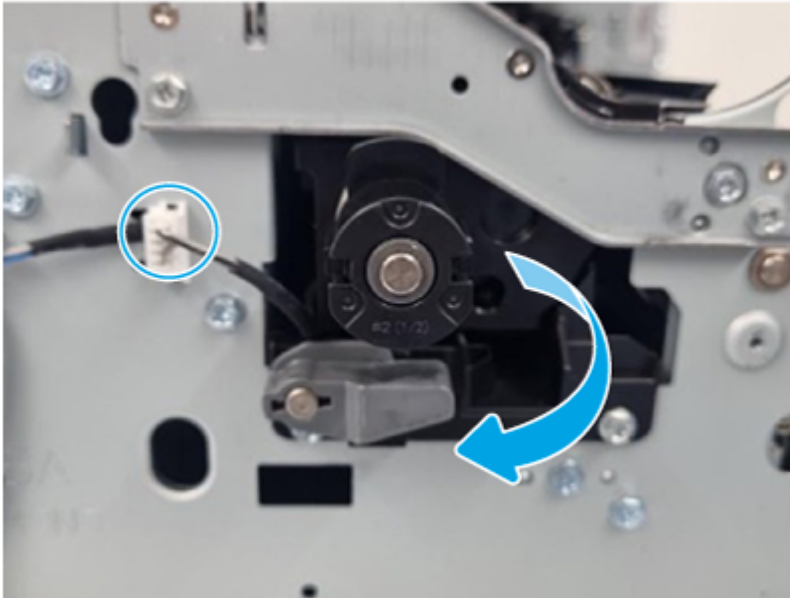


3. Remove the black developer unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black developer unit.

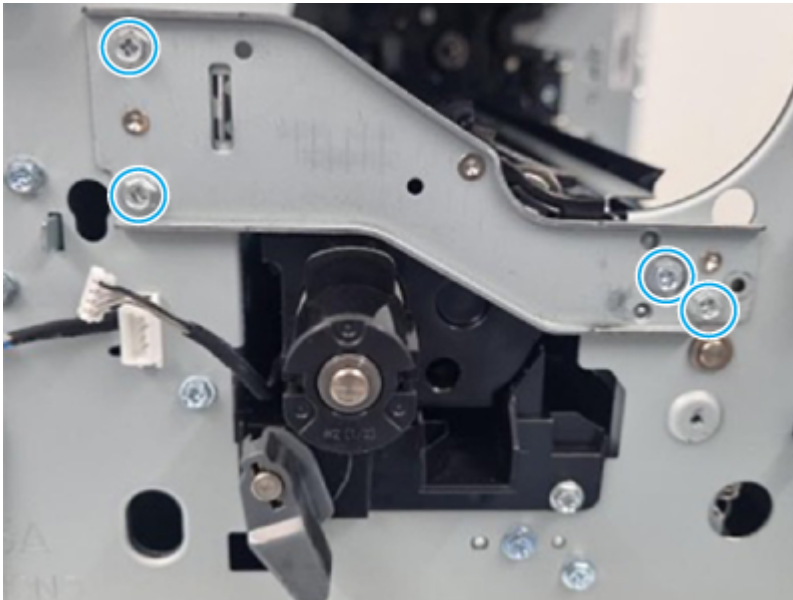
1. Release the lever and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-948 Release the lever and disconnect the connector



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-949 Remove four screws



3. Pull the developer unit out of the printer.



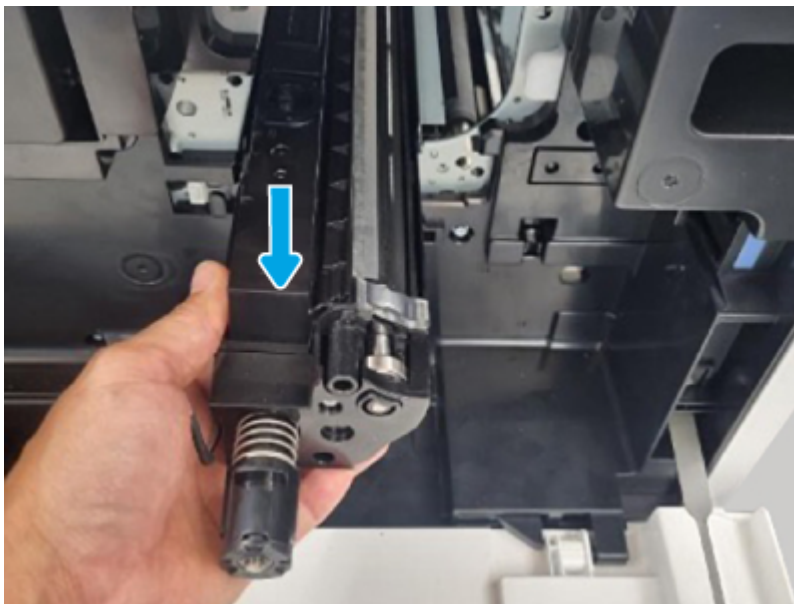
NOTE: If the developer unit is empty, use the steps included in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step) to fill or refill the developer powder.

During removal and installation, do not grab the unit by the lever. Doing so can result in a toner spill.

Figure 6-950 Do not grab lever




Figure 6-951 Remove the unit



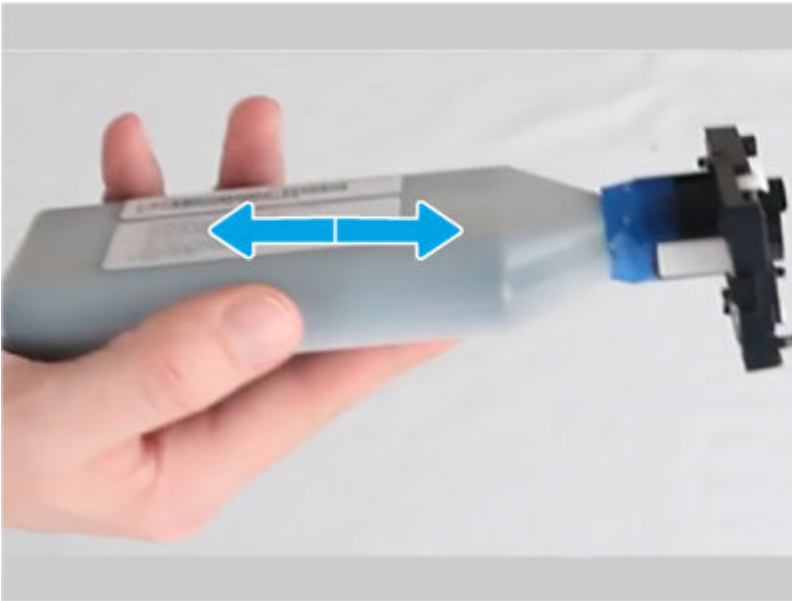
4. Fill or refill the developer unit with developer powder

Use the following procedure to fill or refill the developer powder in a developer unit.

 **TIP:** If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

1. Shake the developer powder bottle.

Figure 6-952 Shake the bottle



2. Do one of the following:
 - To *fill* a replacement developer unit: Skip this step.
 - To *refill* an in-service developer unit: Remove one cap from the developer unit.


 **NOTE:** Removing the cap might require considerable force.

Figure 6-953 Install the cap



3. Attach the bottle to the developer unit.


 **NOTE:** Make sure that the bottle firmly hooks onto the developer unit.

Figure 6-954 Attach the bottle



4. Slide the shutter on the developer unit to the open position.

Figure 6-955 Open the shutter



5. Slightly raise the right end of the developer unit (callout 1), and then carefully squeeze the bottle (callout 2) to start toner flowing into the developer unit. Continue this process until there is no toner remaining in the bottle.


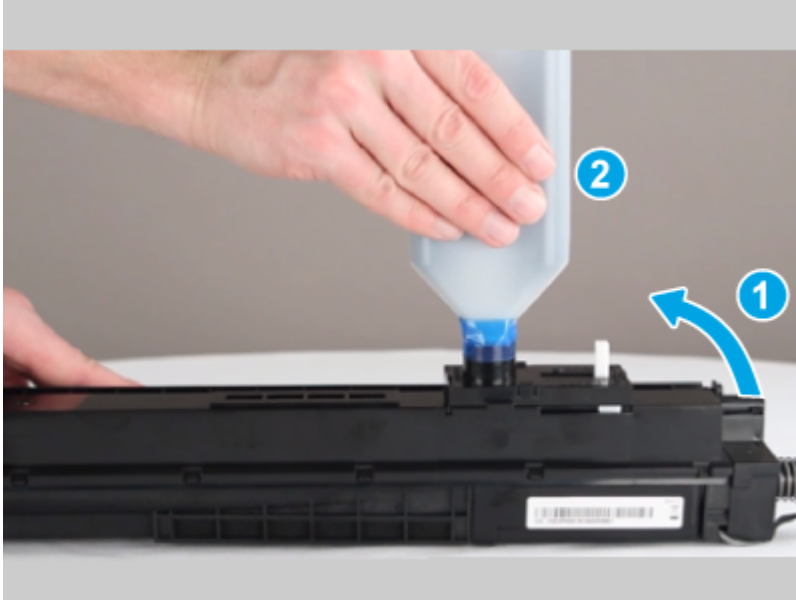
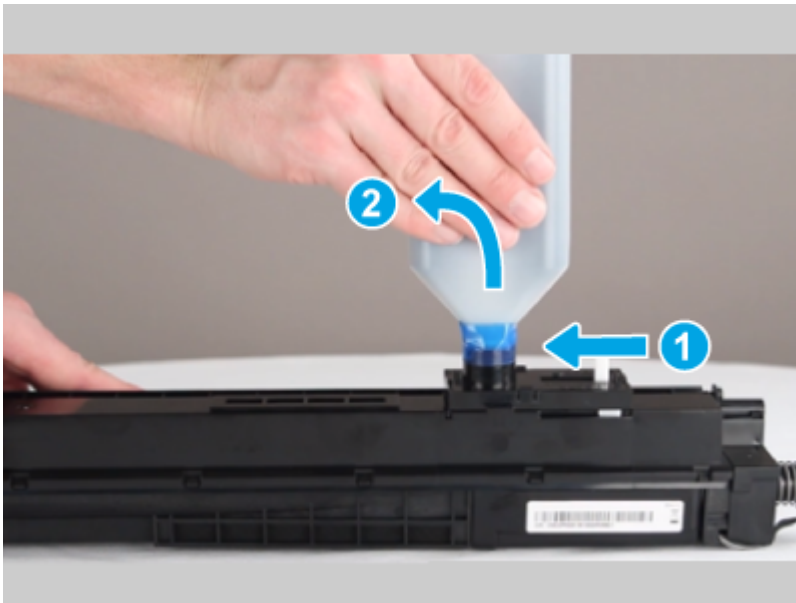
 **TIP:** To check the level of powder in the bottle, hold it up to a light source.

Figure 6-956 Open the shutter



6. When the bottle is empty, close the shutter (callout 1) and remove the bottle (callout 2).

Figure 6-957 Close the shutter



7. Install the cap (supplied in the kit) in the hole on the developer unit.



NOTE: Installing the cap might require considerable force.

Figure 6-958 Install the cap



8. Shake the developer unit back and forth to evenly distribute the toner powder.

Figure 6-959 Distribute the toner powder



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly.](#)


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-93 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01662A	Developer, drum and PTB drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

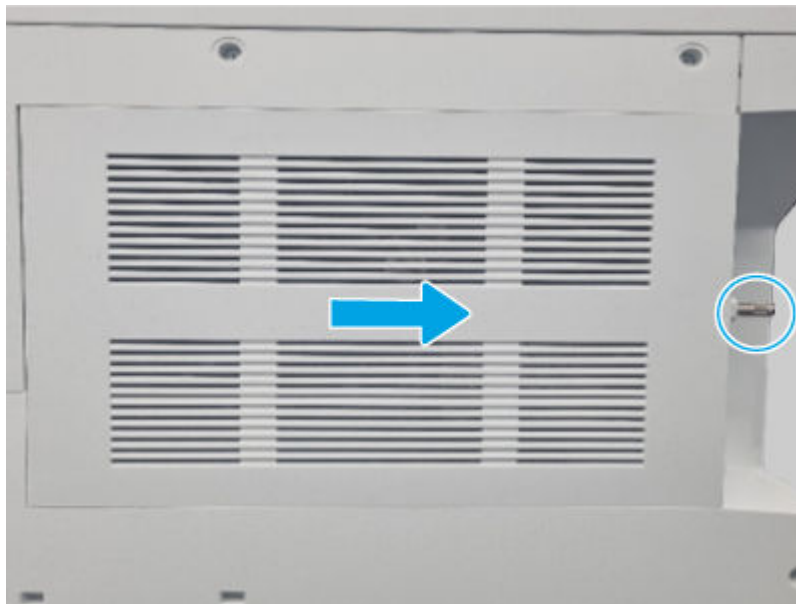
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-960 Remove the cover

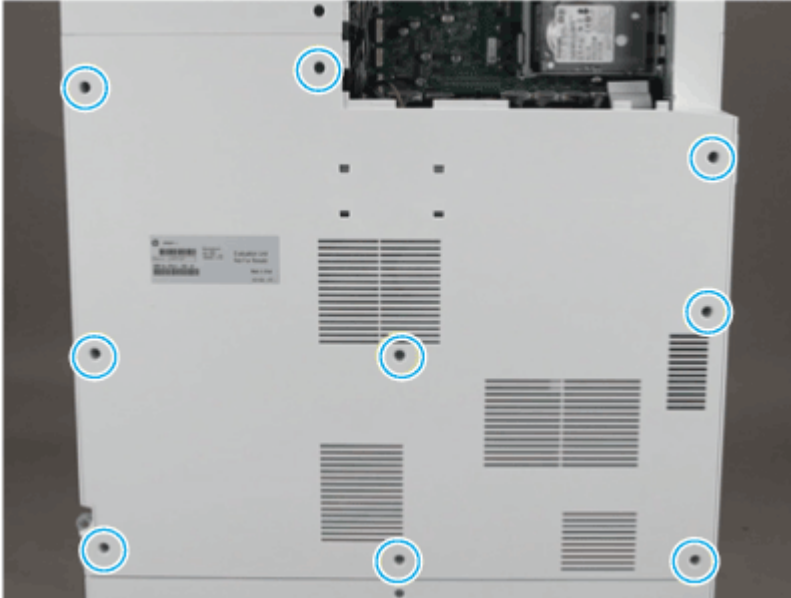


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-961 Remove the cover

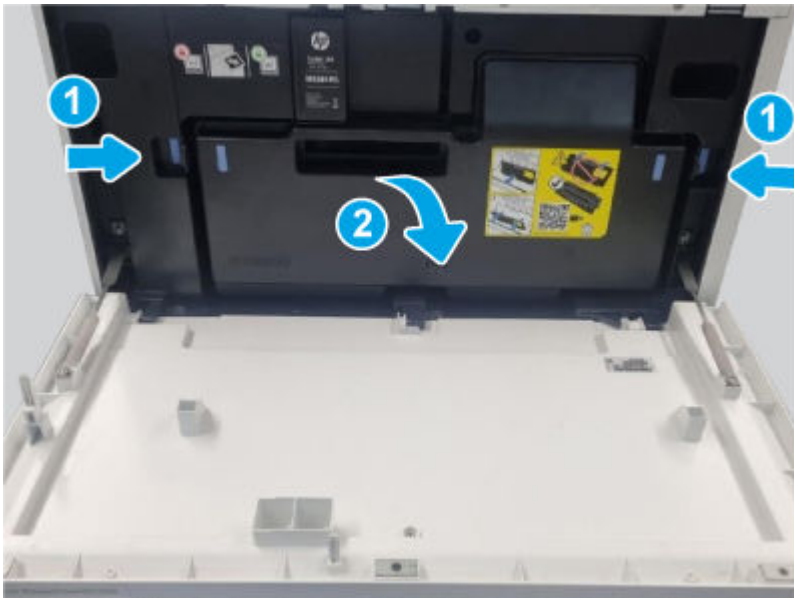


3. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-962 Remove the TCU



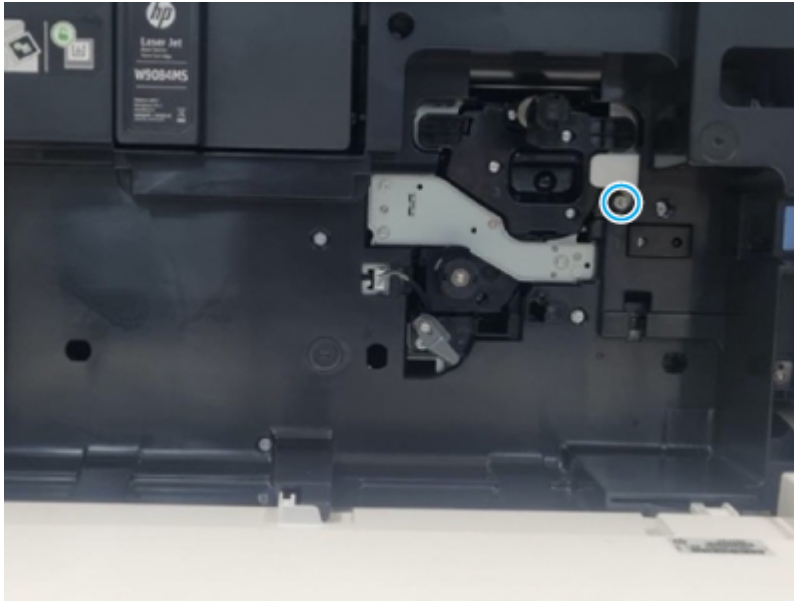
4. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

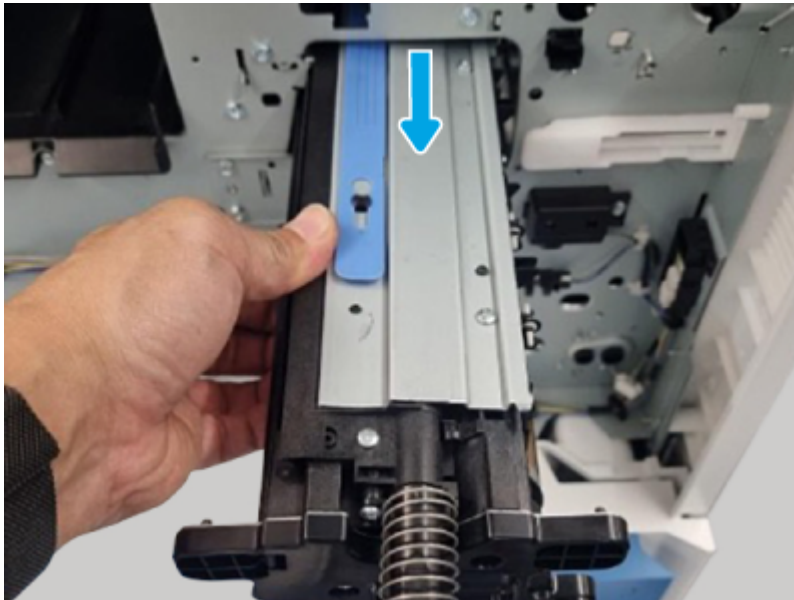
2. At the front of the printer, remove one screw.

Figure 6-963 Remove one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-964 Remove the unit

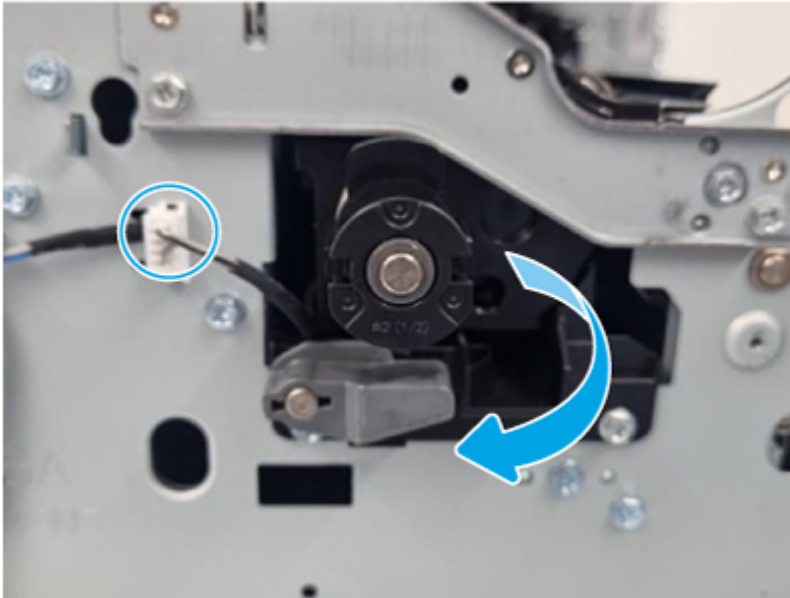


5. Remove the black developer unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black developer unit.

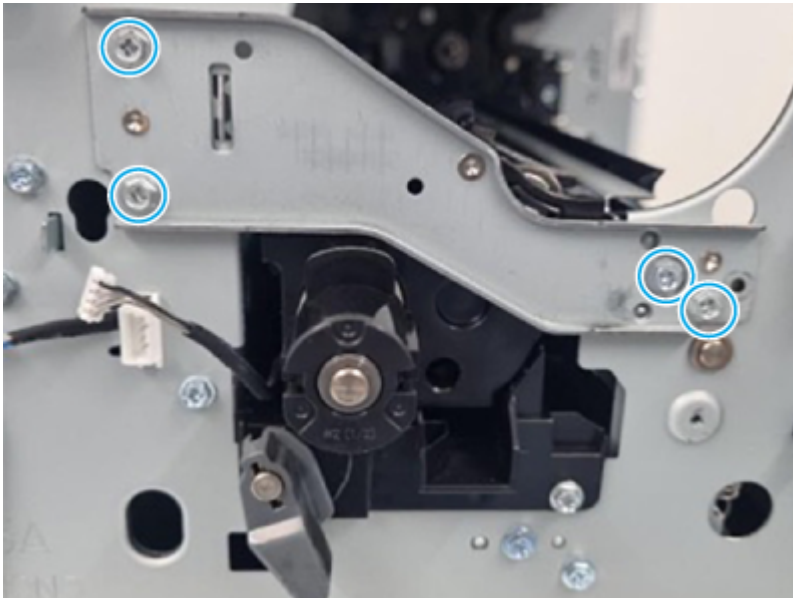
1. Release the lever and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-965 Release the lever and disconnect the connector



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-966 Remove four screws



3. Pull the developer unit out of the printer.



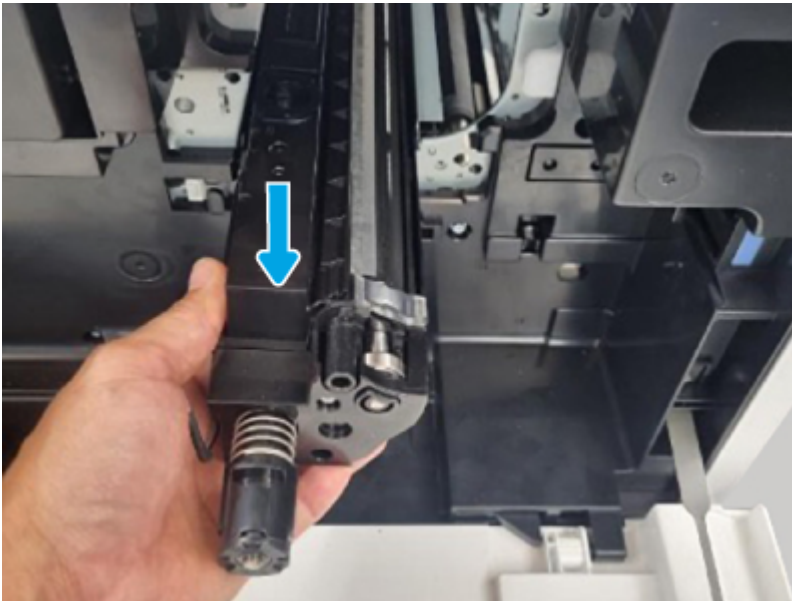
NOTE: If the developer unit is empty, use the steps included in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step) to fill or refill the developer powder.

During removal and installation, do not grab the unit by the lever. Doing so can result in a toner spill.

Figure 6-967 Do not grab lever



Figure 6-968 Remove the unit

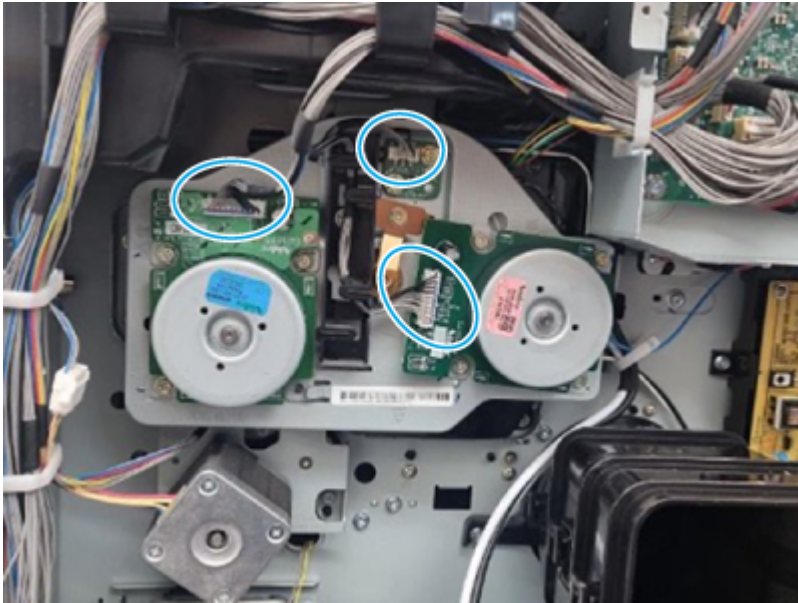


6. Remove the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly.

1. Disconnect three connectors.

Figure 6-969 Disconnect three connectors

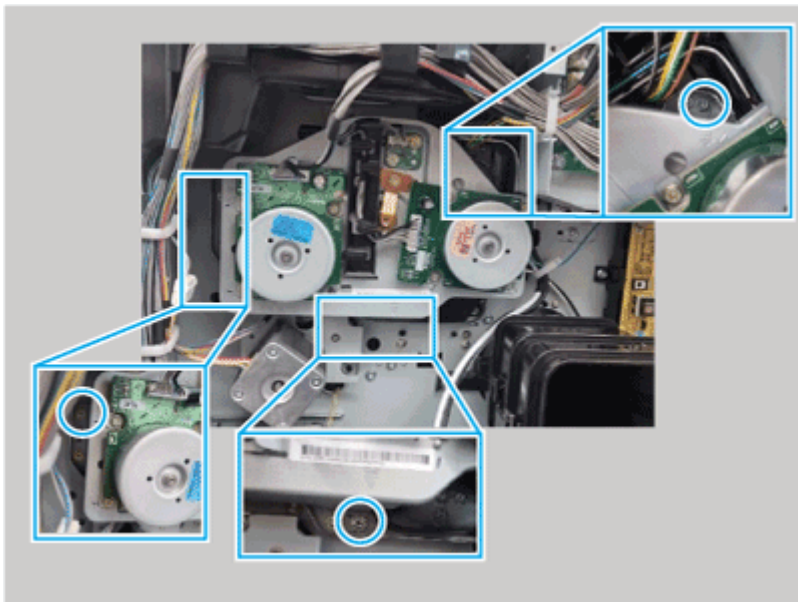


2. Remove three screws, and then remove the developer, drum, and PTB drive assembly.



NOTE: Remove the three silver screws (not the gold screws) shown below.

Figure 6-970 Remove three screws



7. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Drum and PTB motor

Learn about removing and replacing the drum motor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the drum and PTB motor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-94 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00123G	Motor 24V (Drum and PTB motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

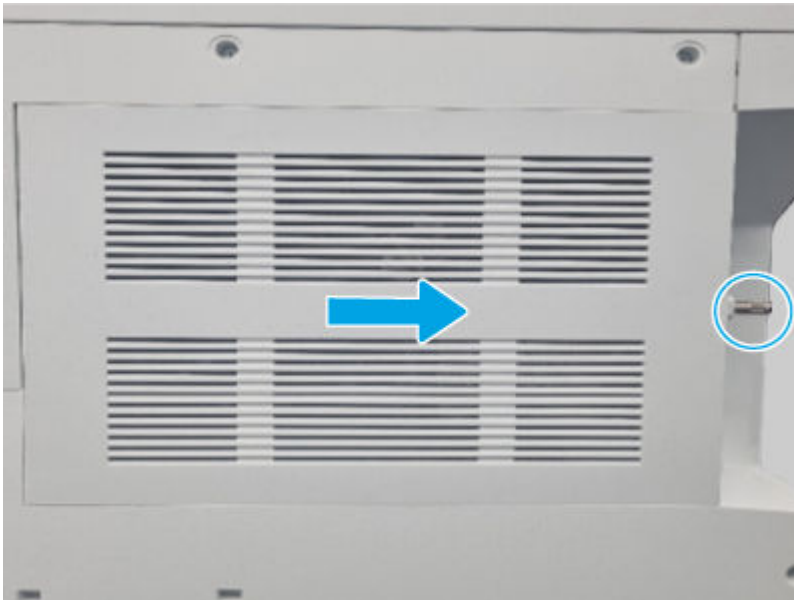
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-971 Remove the cover

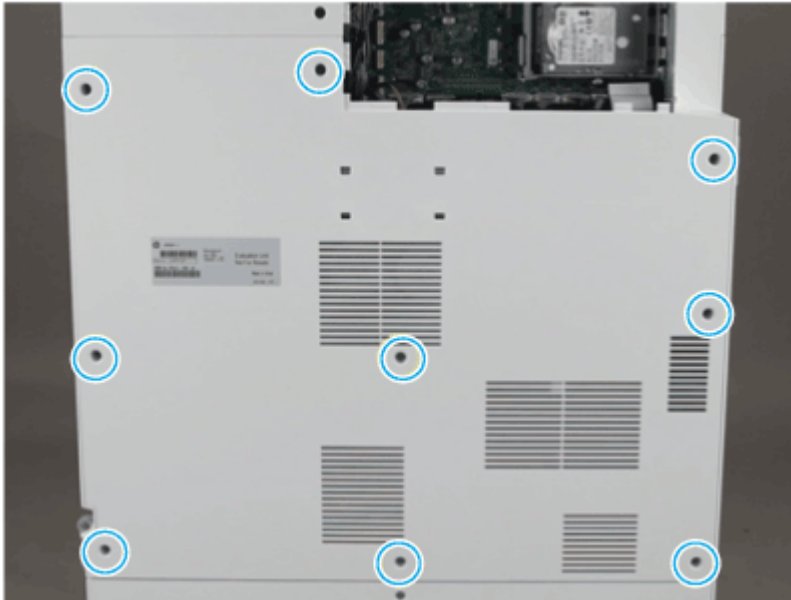


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-972 Remove the cover

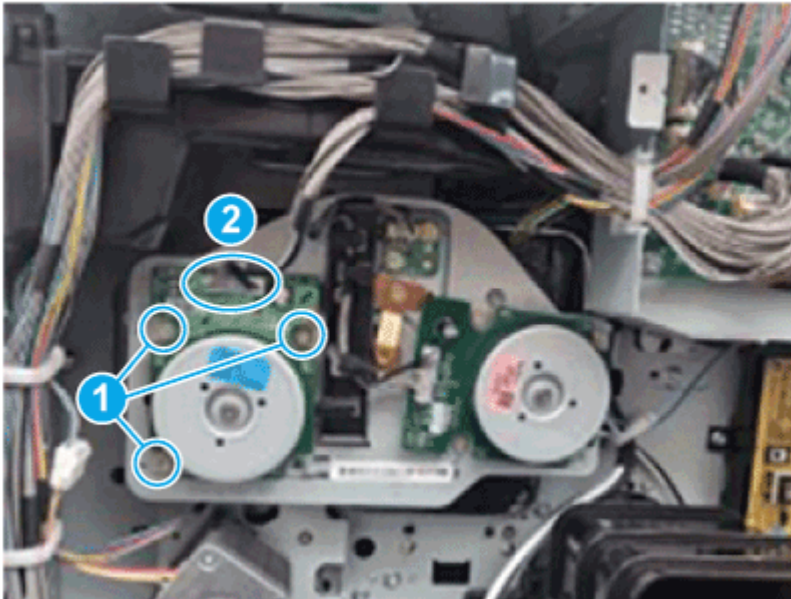


3. Remove the drum and PTB motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the drum and PTB motor.

- Remove three screws (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), and then remove the motor.


Figure 6-973 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer motor

Learn about removing and replacing the developer motor.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the developer motor.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-95 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00197A	Developer motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

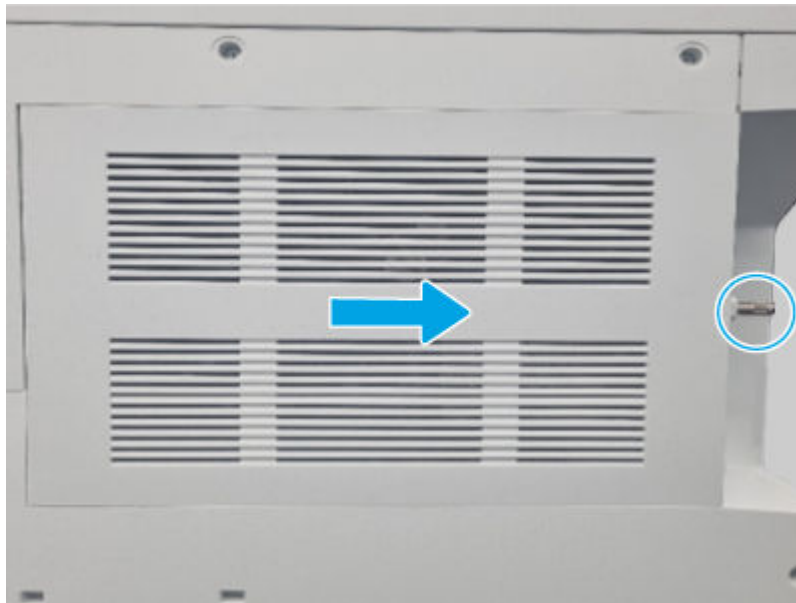
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-974 Remove the cover

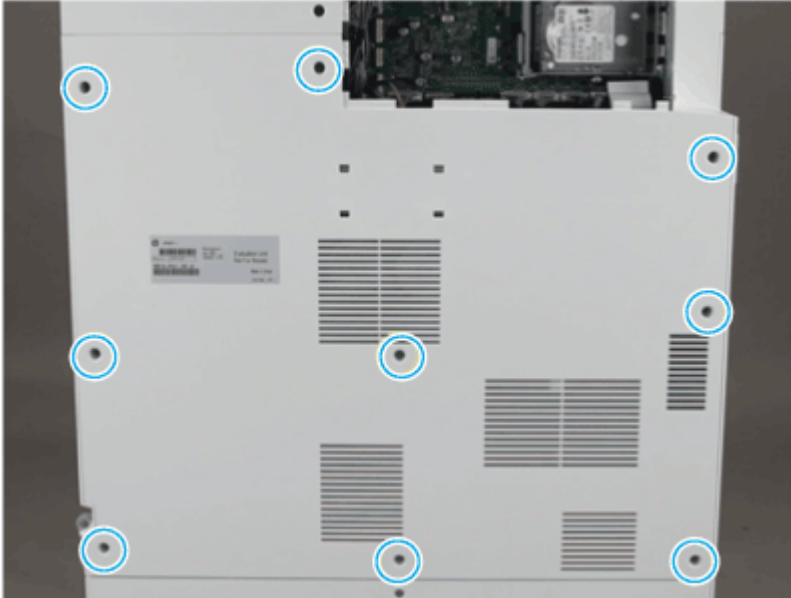


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-975 Remove the cover

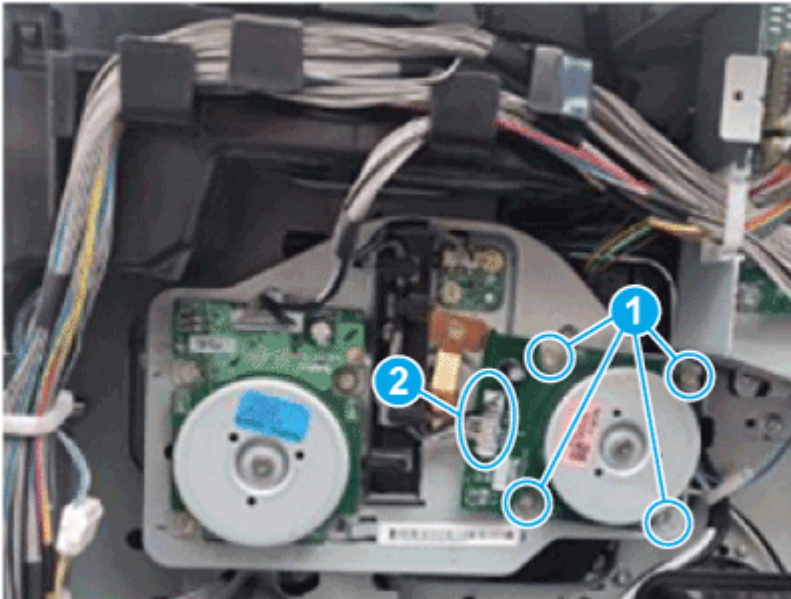


3. Remove the developer motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the developer motor.

- Remove four screws (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-976 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Cable guide

Learn about removing and replacing the cable guide.



[View a video of removing and replacing the cable guide.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-96 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-06282A	Cable guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

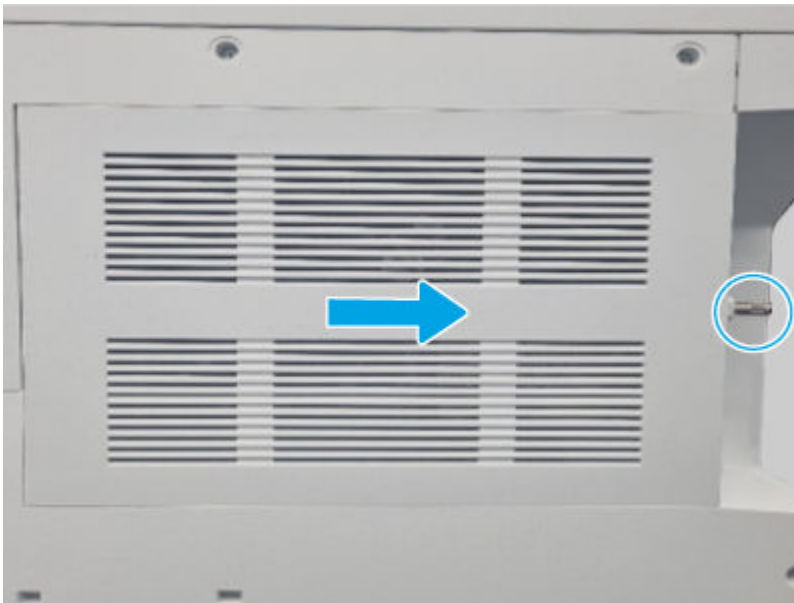
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-977 Remove the cover

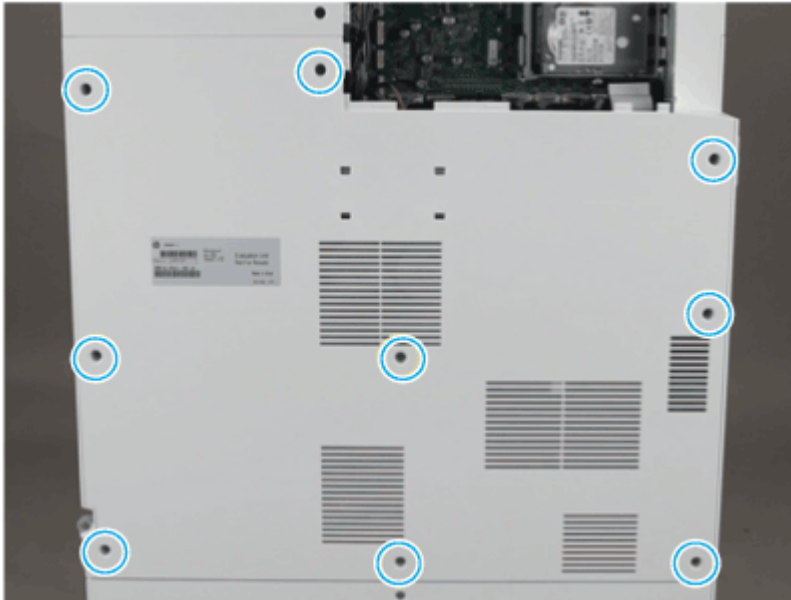


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-978 Remove the cover



3. Remove the cable guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the cable guide.

- Release the cables, remove one screw, and then remove the cable guide.

Figure 6-979 Remove one screw



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: CTD sensor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the CTD sensor assembly.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the CTD sensor assembly.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-97 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-60002	CTD sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

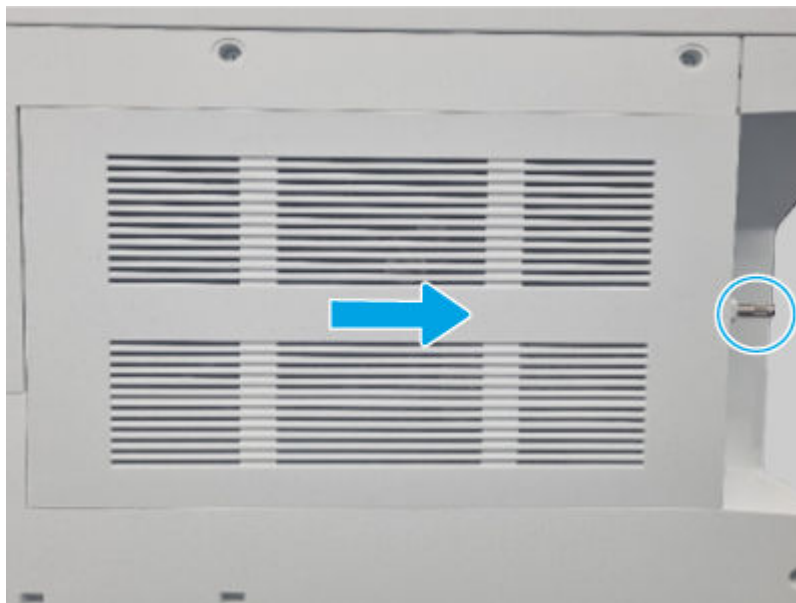
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-980 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

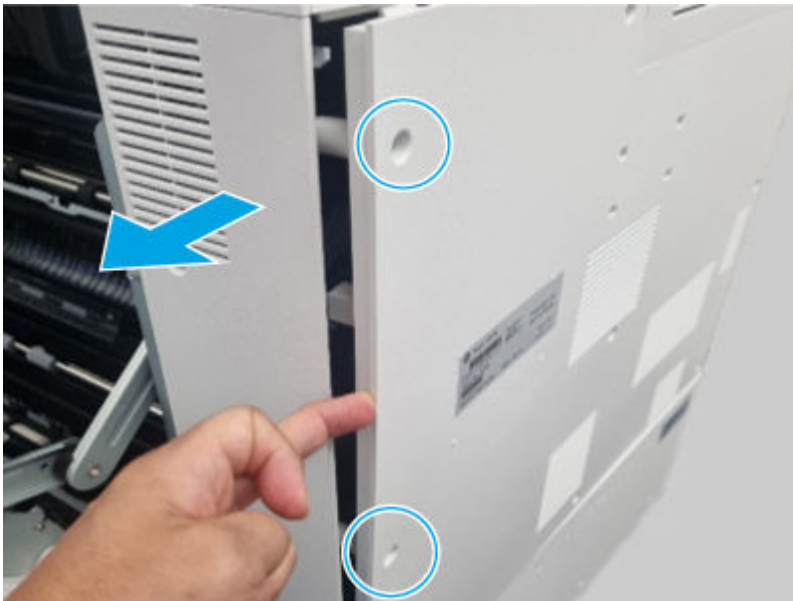
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-981 Remove four screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-982 Remove the cover



3. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

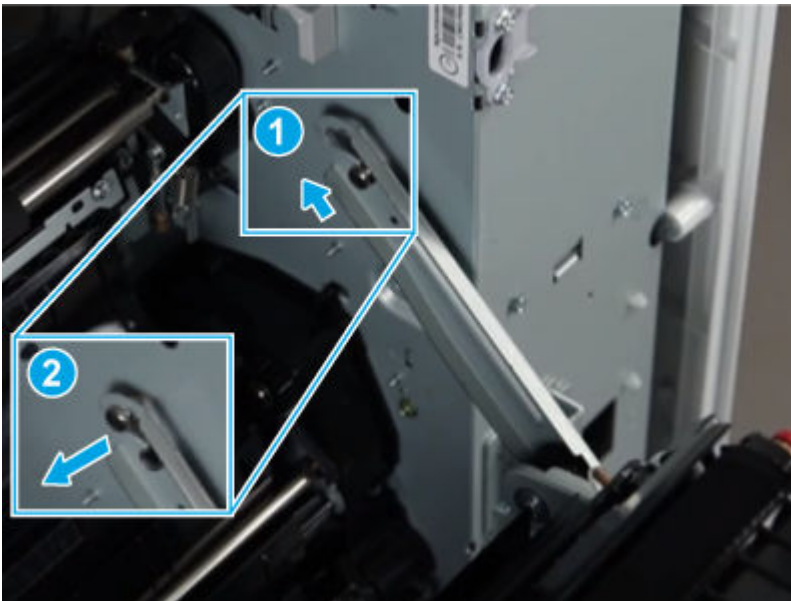
Figure 6-983 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

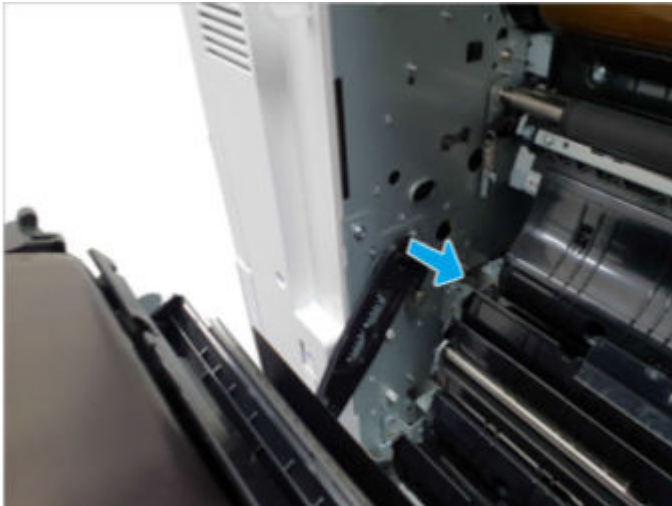
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-984 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-985 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

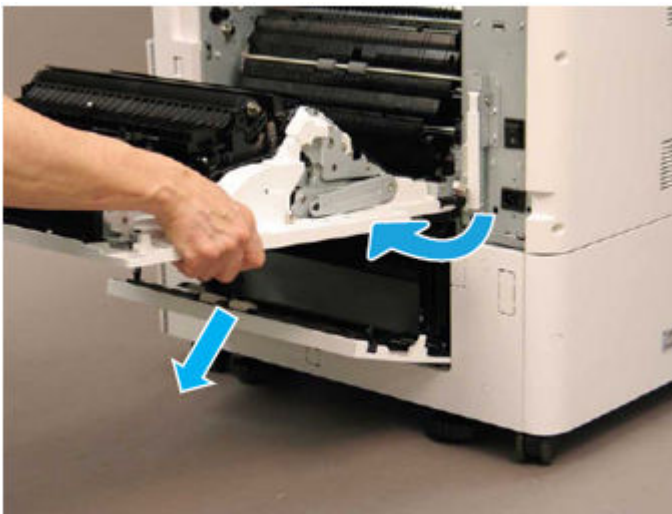


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-986 Remove the door

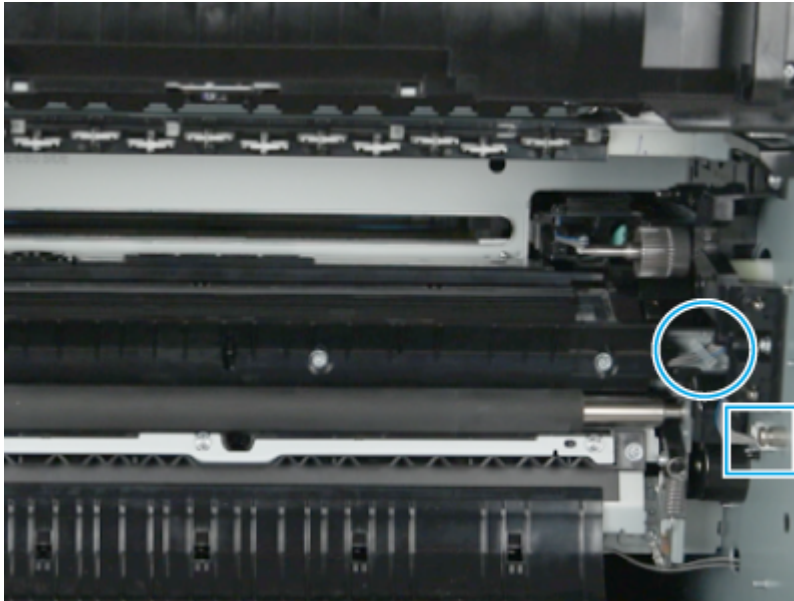


4. Remove the CTD sensor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the CTD sensor assembly.

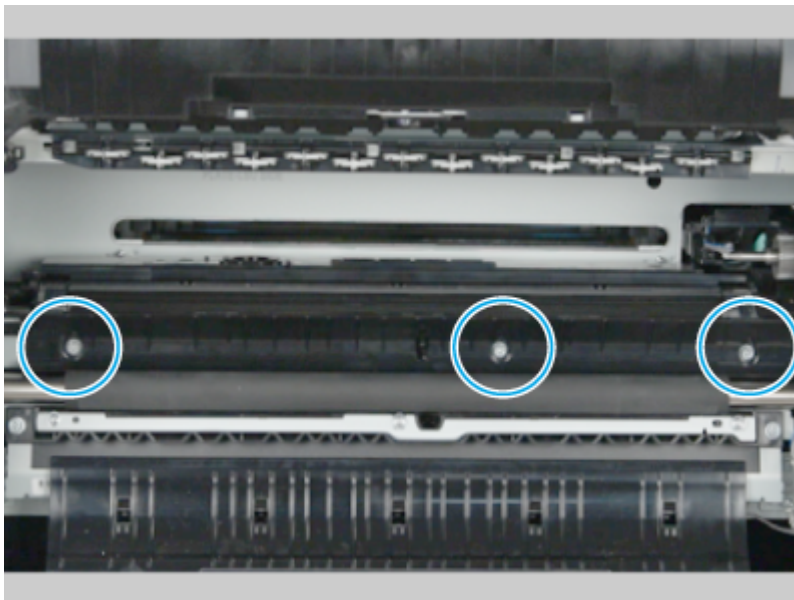
1. Release the cable clamp, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-987 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-988 Remove three screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the spring installed underneath the cleaner assembly.

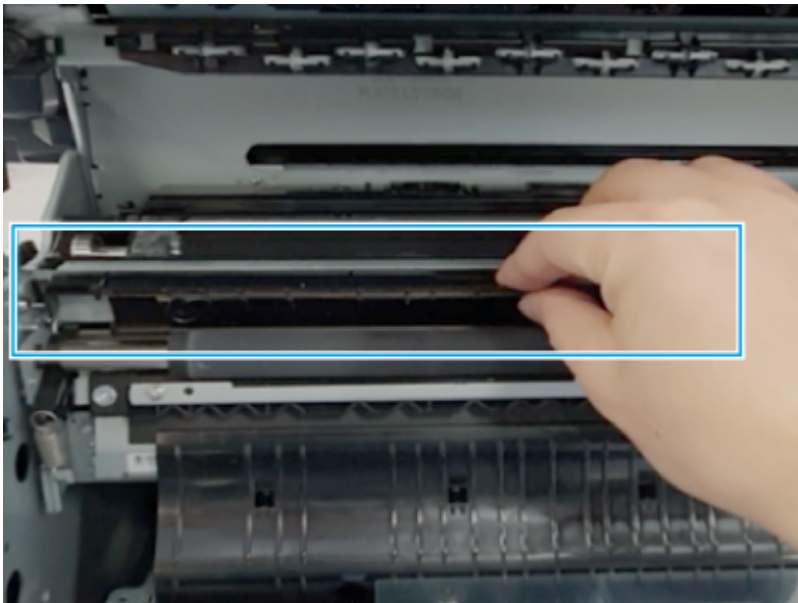
CAUTION: Do not lose the spring when handling the assembly.

Figure 6-989 Cleaner assembly spring



4. Grasp the cleaner and sensor assembly and carefully remove it.

Figure 6-990 Remove the assembly



5. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the sensor assembly.



NOTE: A service part order might include a base frame due to shipment security. Install all of the replacement parts that are included with the parts order.

Figure 6-991 Remove the sensor assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser unit

Learn about fuser unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Fuser unit

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser unit.



[View a video of removing and replacing the fuser unit.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-98 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN53-67001	Fuser unit 100V
5PN76-67001	Fuser unit 110V
5PN77-67001	Fuser unit 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser assembly.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-992 Remove four screws



3. Pull the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-993 Remove the fuser



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser and exit drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser and exit drive assembly.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the fuser and exit drive assembly.](#)

 **NOTE:** This video shows the E877 printer. The procedure is similar for the E826 printer.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-99 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01850A	Fuser and exit drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

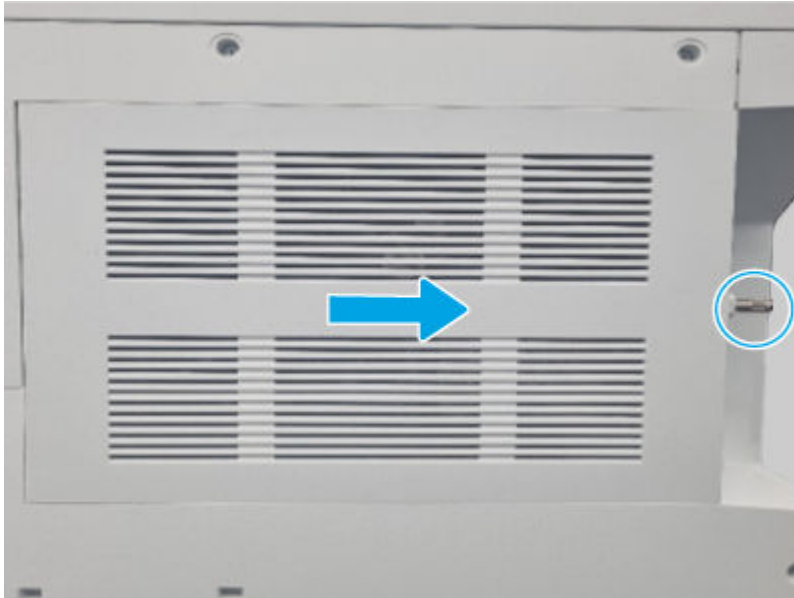
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-994 Remove the cover

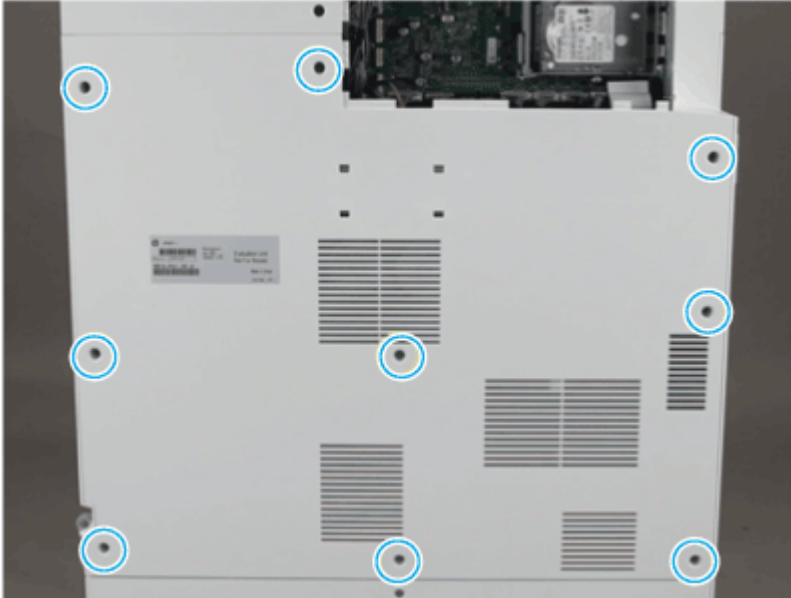


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-995 Remove the cover

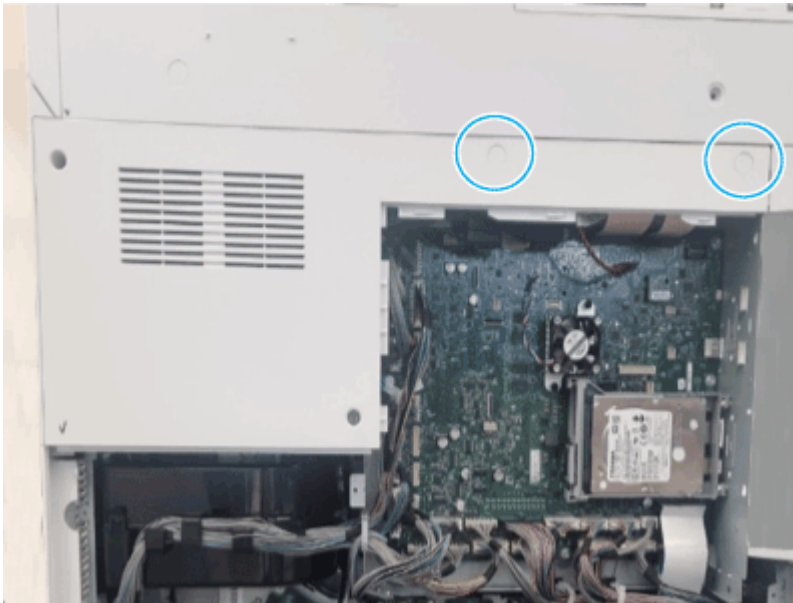


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

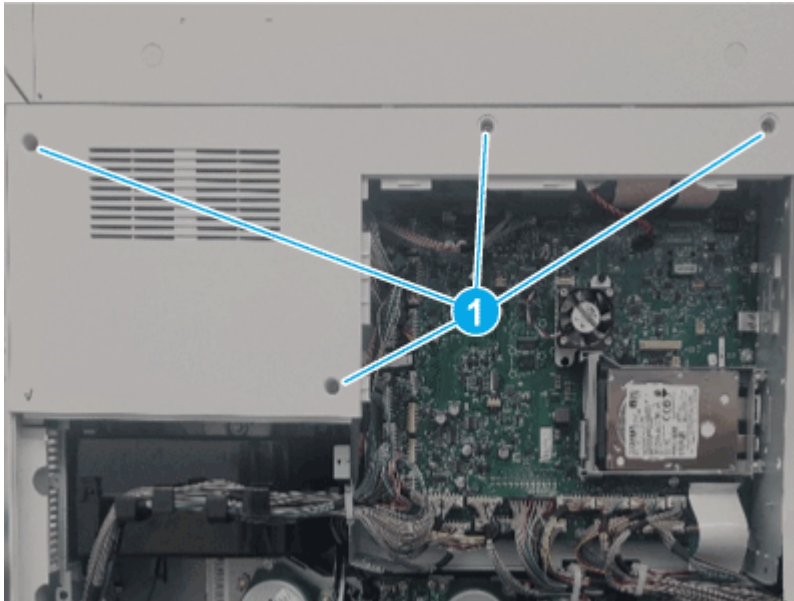
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-996 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-997 Remove the cover

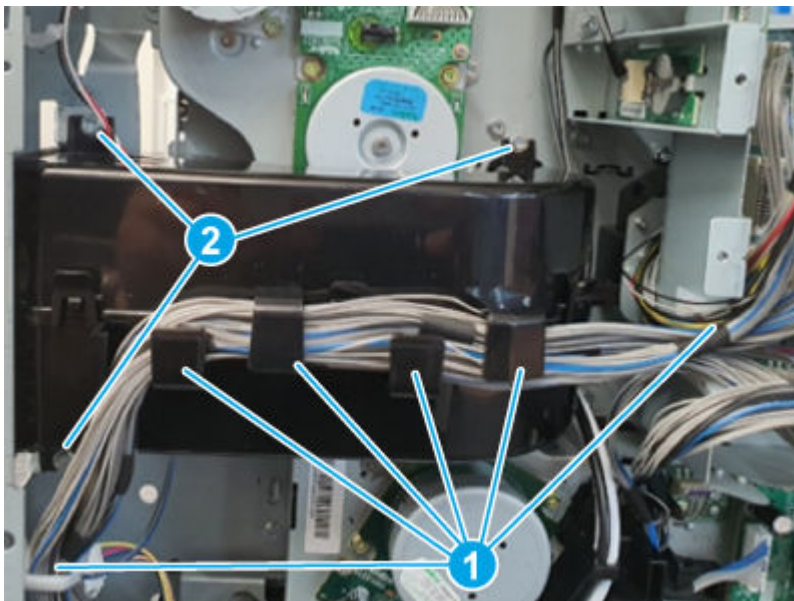


4. Remove the fuser ventilation duct

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser ventilation duct.

- Release the wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the fuser ventilation duct..

Figure 6-998 Remove the duct

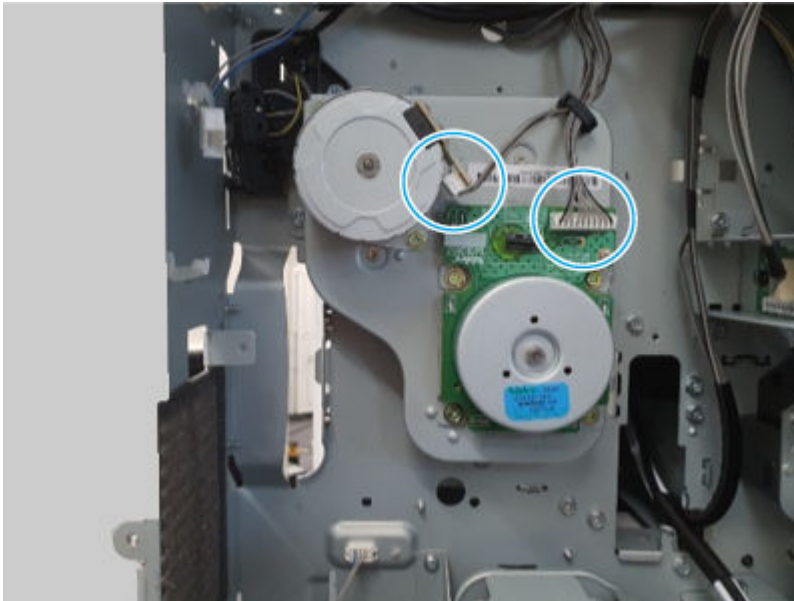


5. Remove the fuser and exit drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser and exit drive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-999 Disconnect two connectors



2. Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser and exit drive unit.

Figure 6-1000 Remove the unit



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser and exit motor

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser and exit motor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the fuser and exit motor.](#)



NOTE: This video shows the E877 printer. The procedure is similar for the E826 printer.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-100 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00144G	Motor BLDC (fuser and exit motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

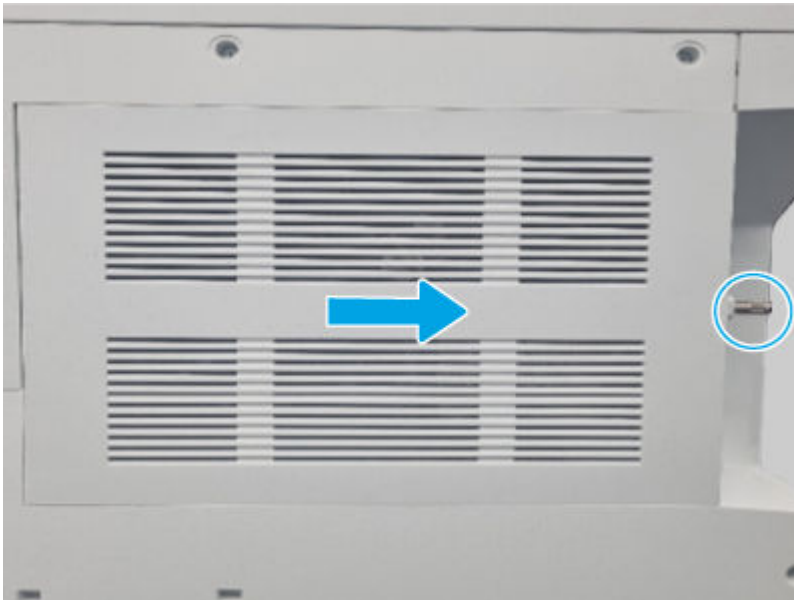
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1001 Remove the cover

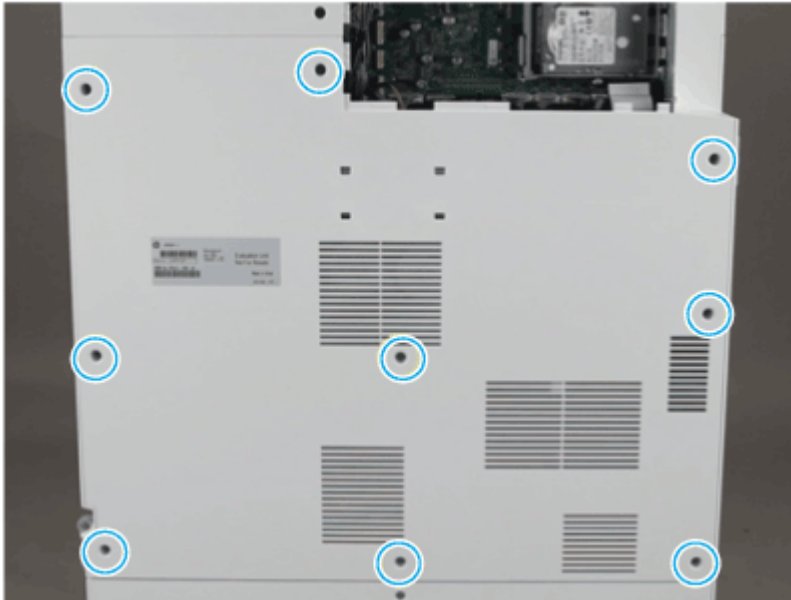


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1002 Remove the cover

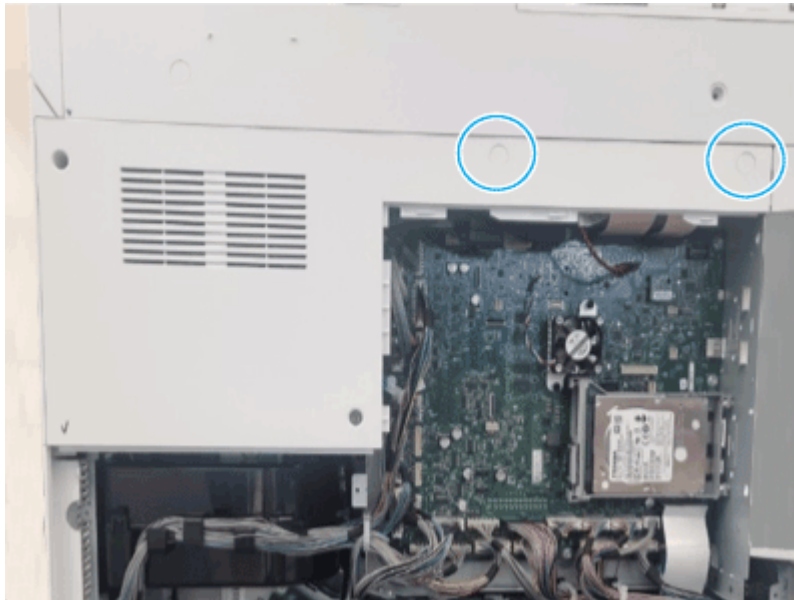


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

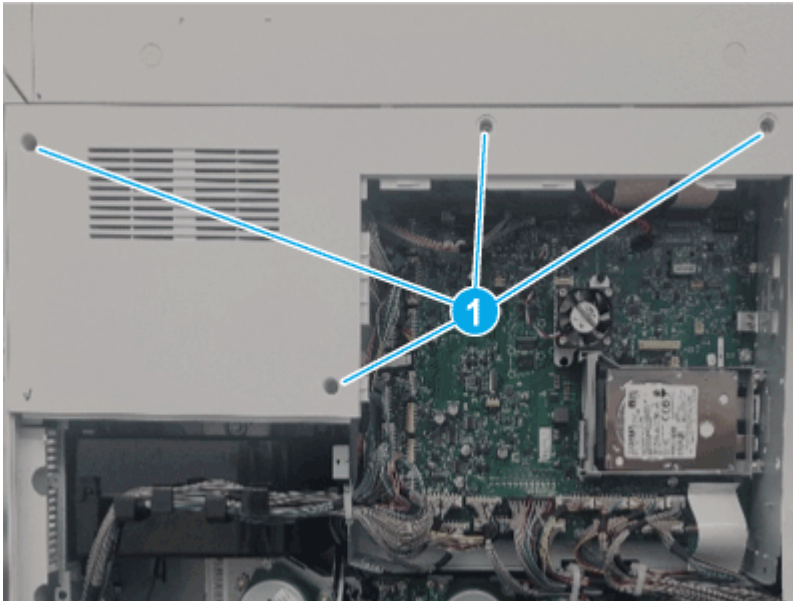
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1003 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1004 Remove the cover

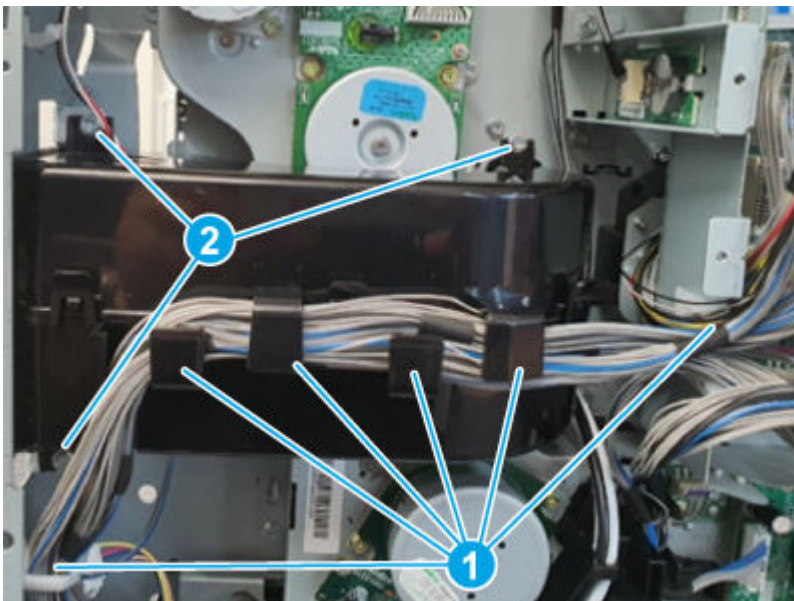


4. Remove the fuser ventilation duct

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser ventilation duct.

- Release the wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the fuser ventilation duct.

Figure 6-1005 Remove the duct

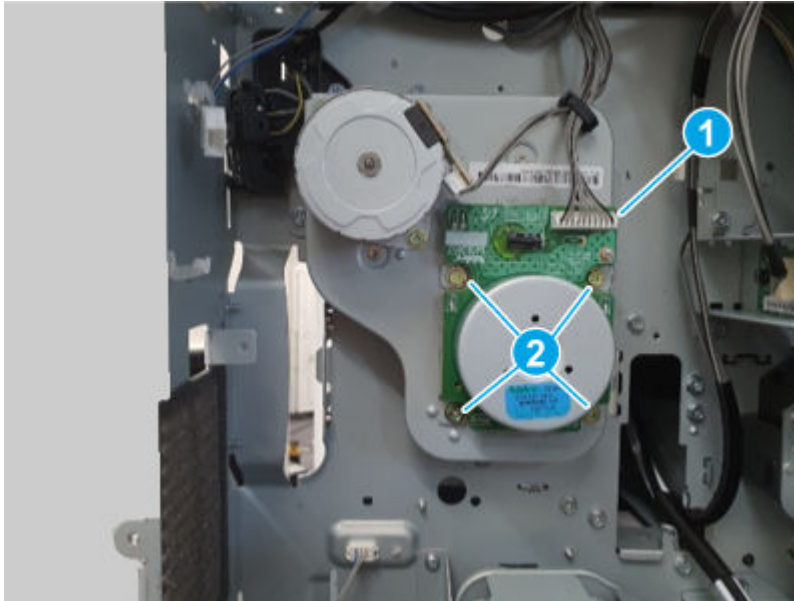


5. Remove the fuser and exit motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser and exit motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the fuser and exit motor.


Figure 6-1006 Remove the motor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser gap motor

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser gap motor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the fuser gap motor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-101 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01084A	Drive-motor step (fuser gap motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

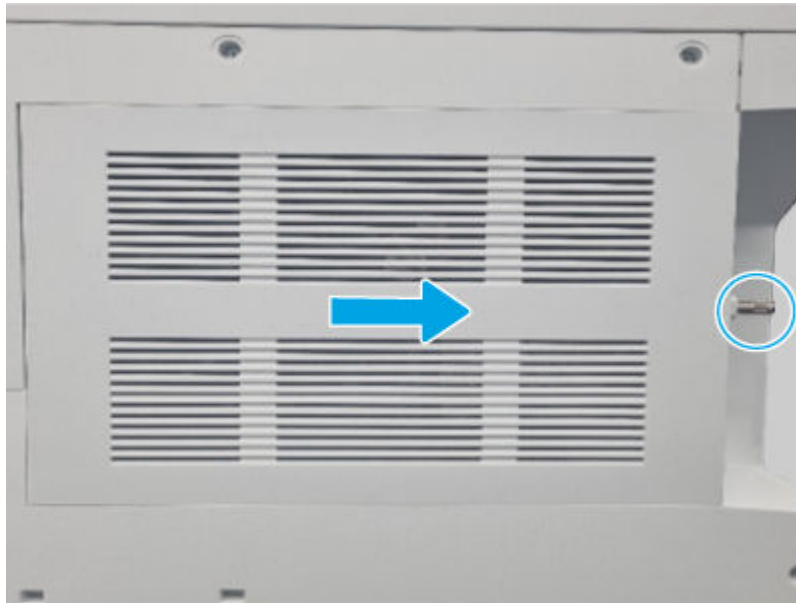
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1007 Remove the cover

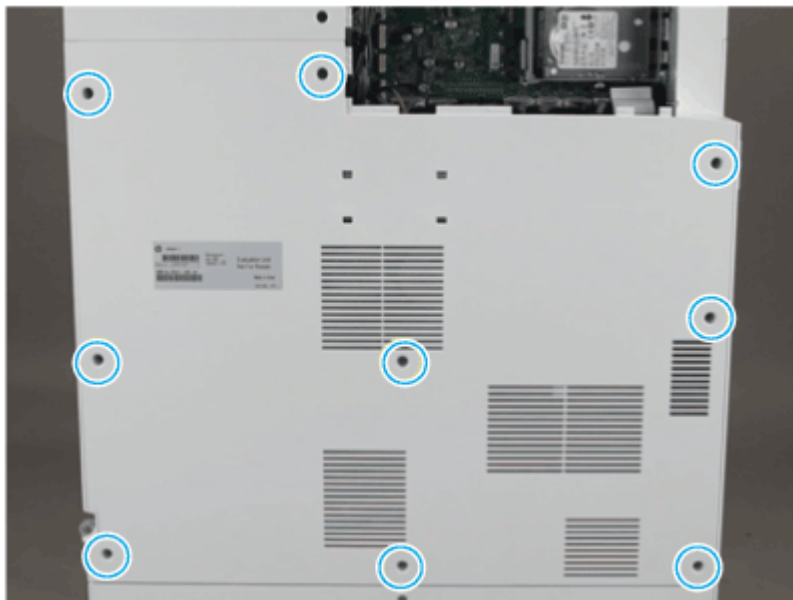


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1008 Remove the cover

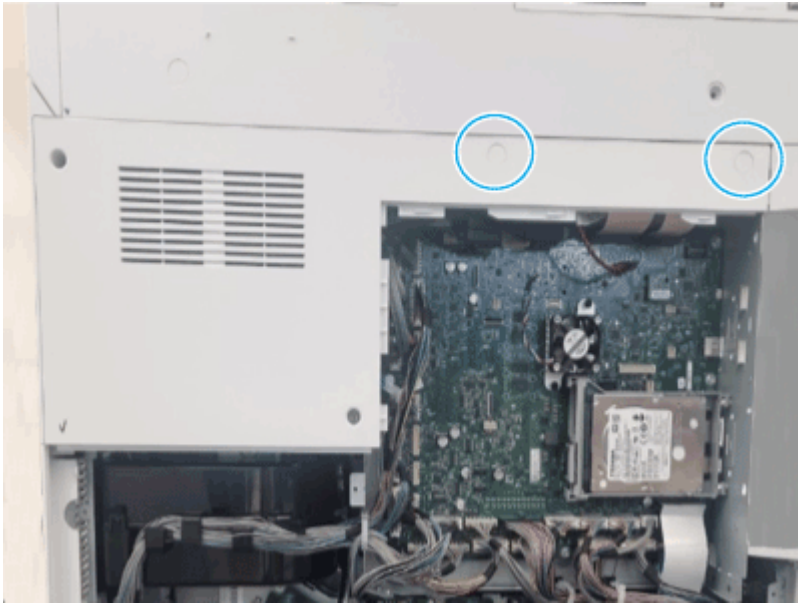


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

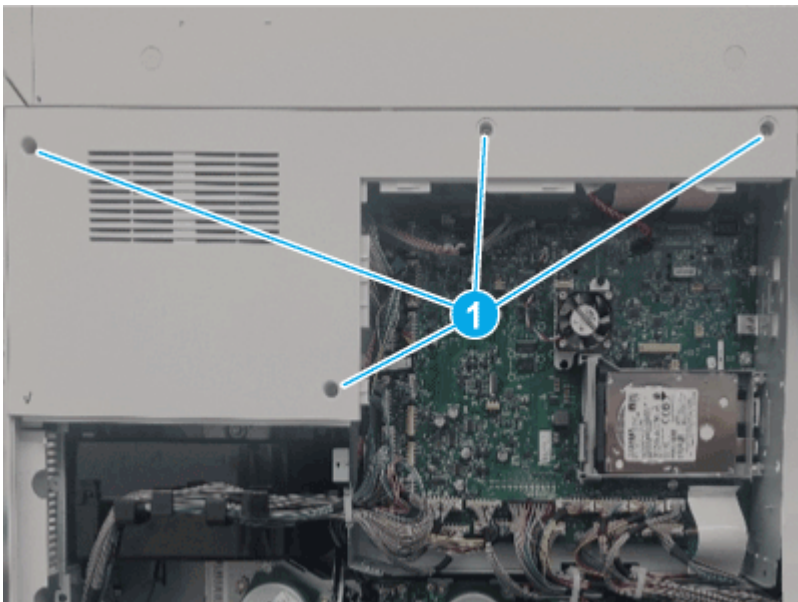
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1009 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1010 Remove the cover



4. Remove the fuser gap motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser gap motor.

- Remove two screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the fuser gap motor.


Figure 6-1011 Remove the motor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser gap sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser gap sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the fuser gap sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-102 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (fuser gap sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser assembly.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1012 Remove four screws



3. Pull the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1013 Remove the fuser



2. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

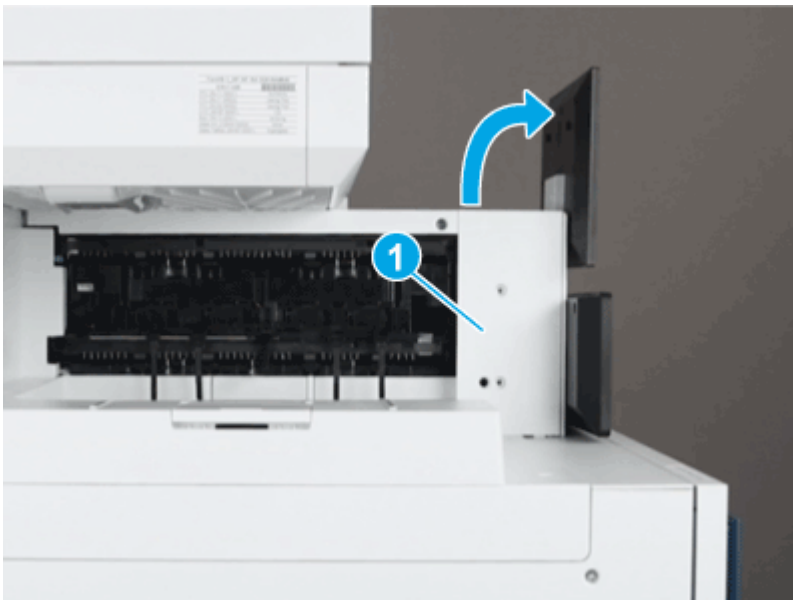
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1014 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-1015 Remove the cover



3. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.



NOTE: The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-1016 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1017 Remove one screw



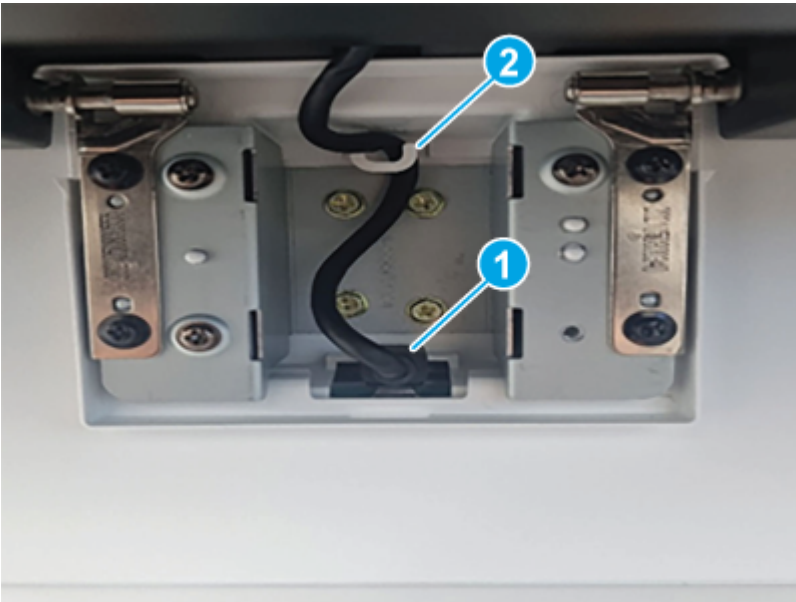
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-1018 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-1019 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1020 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-1021 Remove the keyboard



4. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1022 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-1023 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

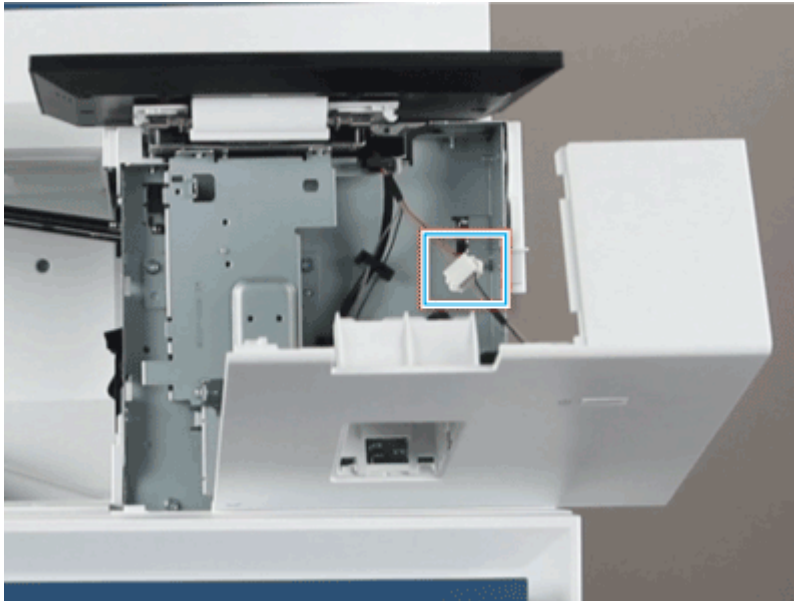
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-1024 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-1025 Remove the cover assembly

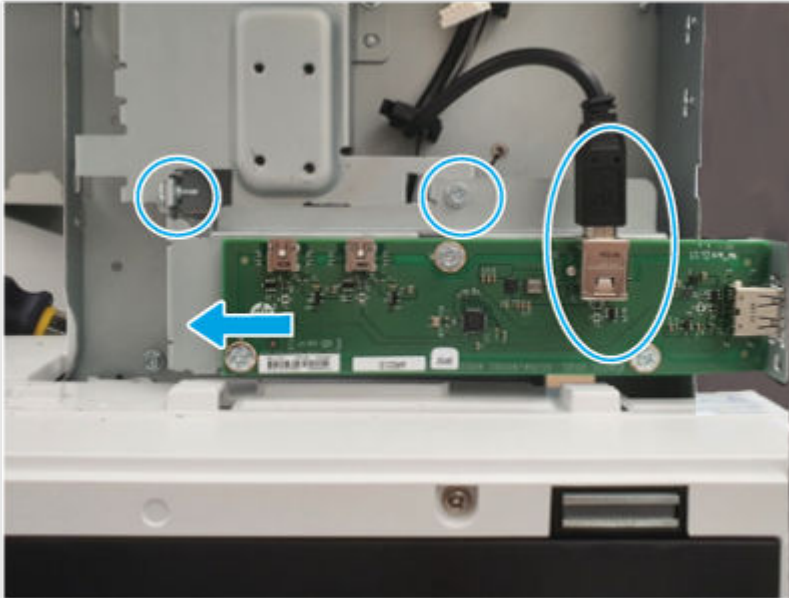


5. Remove the fuser gap sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser gap sensor.

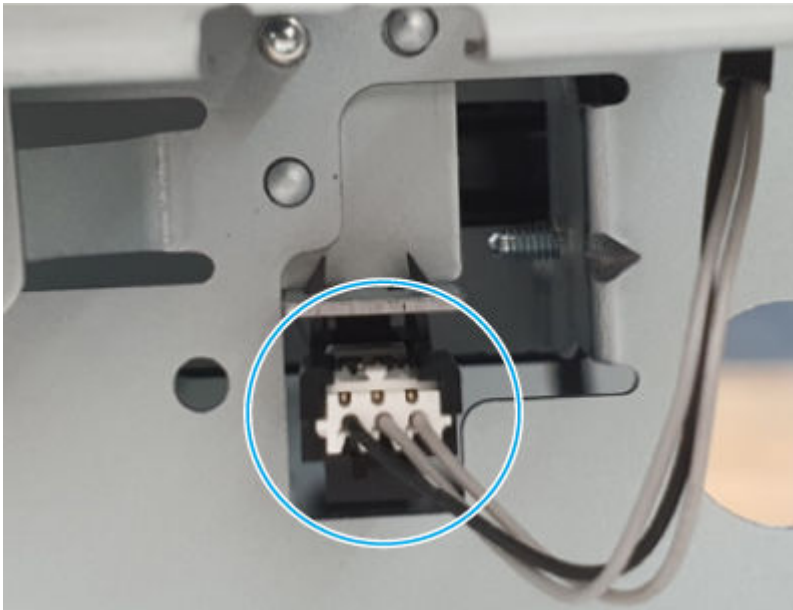
1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then slide the PCA to the left to remove it.

Figure 6-1026 Remove the PCA



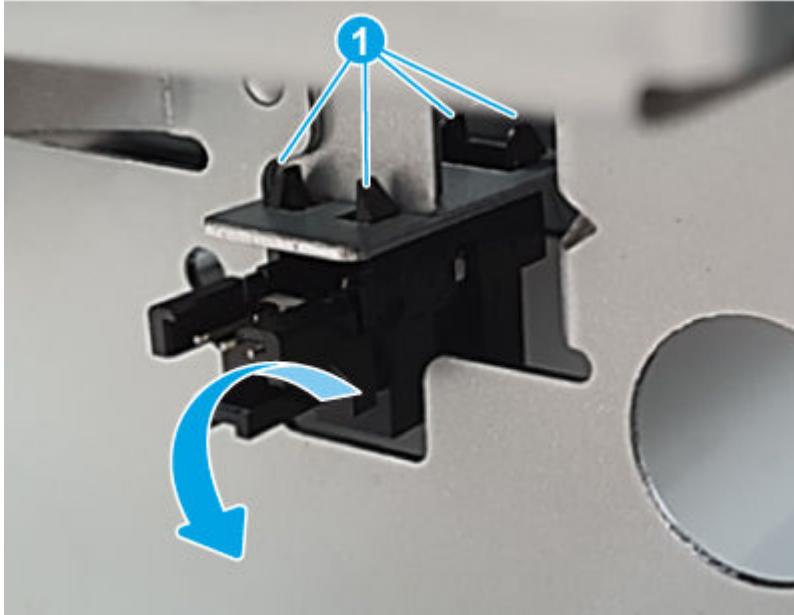
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1027 Disconnect one connector



3. Release the tabs (callout 1), and then remove the fuser gap sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-1028 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Environmental sensor, switch, and fan

Learn about environmental sensor, switch, and fan parts removal and replacement.

Base sensor, switch, and fan

Review the base sensor, switch, and fan removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Outer temperature humidity sensor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the outer temperature humidity sensor assembly, sensor, and holder.



[View a video of removing and replacing the outer temperature humidity sensor assembly.](#)



NOTE: These videos show the E877 printer. The procedures are similar for the E826 printer.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off



NOTE: This procedure requires removing the toner cartridges using the control panel method. Do this prior to turning the power off. For more information, see *Remove the toner cartridges (control panel method)* in this topic.

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-103 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40002	Outer temperature humidity sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.


1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03082622
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

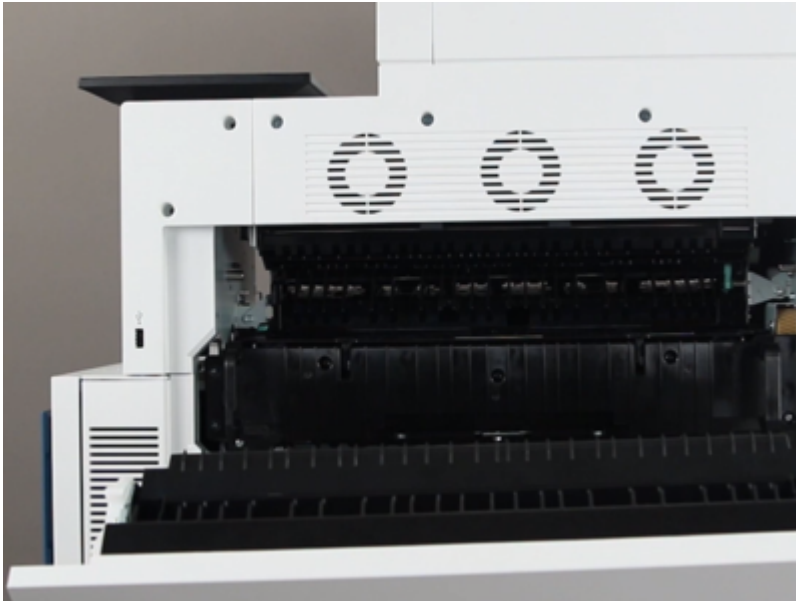
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1029 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-1030 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

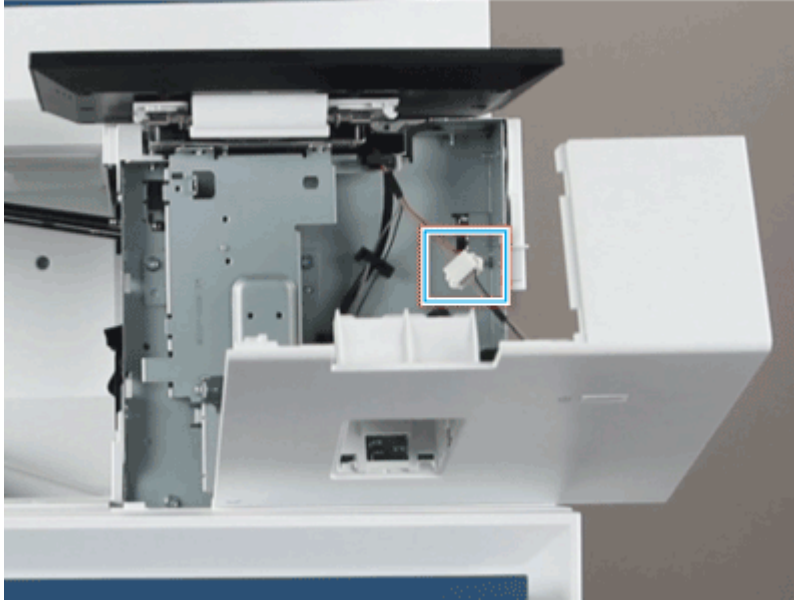
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-1031 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-1032 Remove the cover assembly

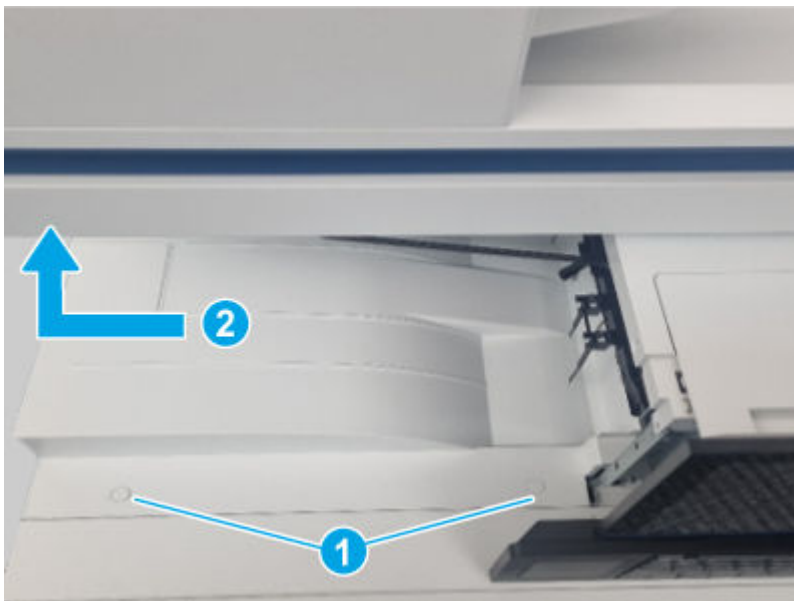


3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-1033 Remove the cover

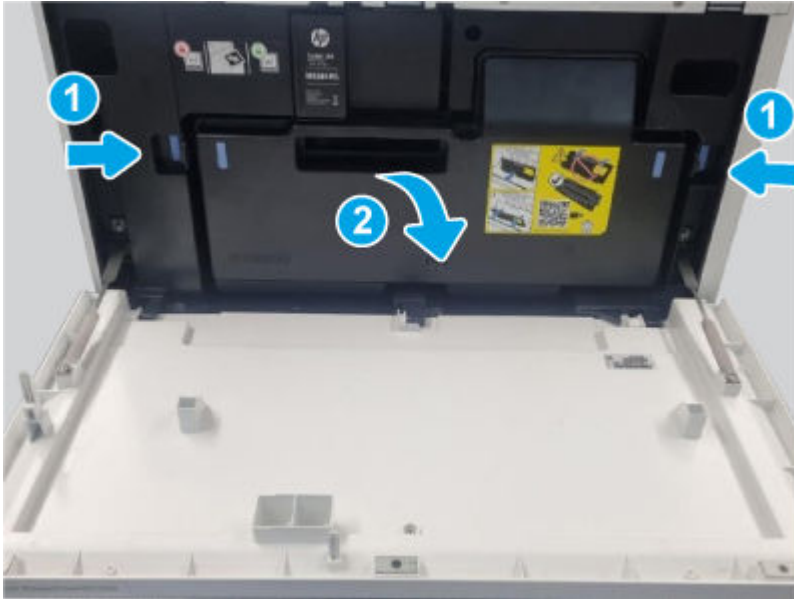


4. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-1034 Remove the TCU



5. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

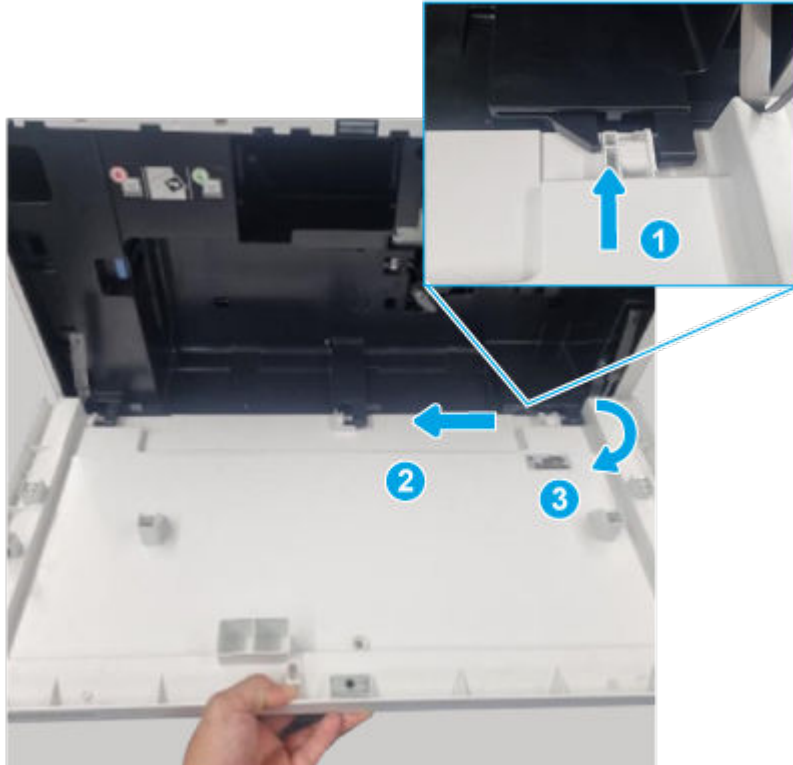
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1035 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-1036 Remove the cover

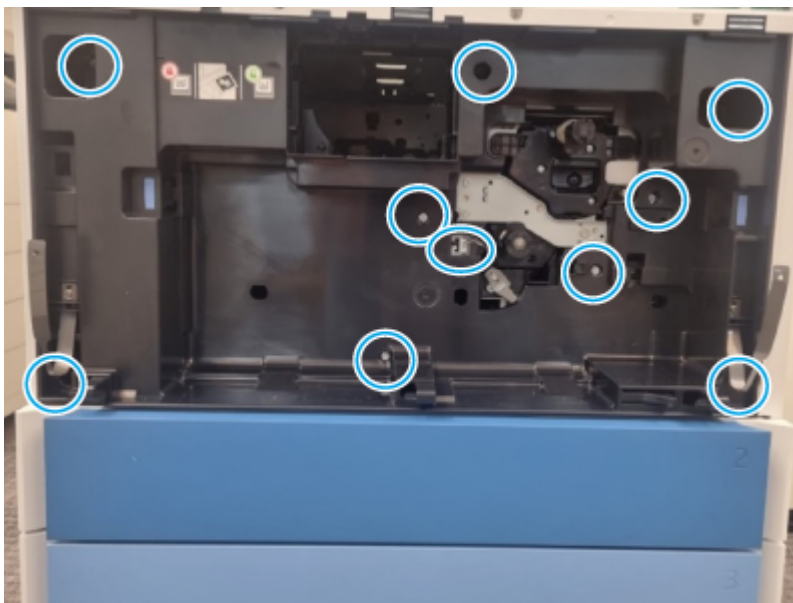


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

1. Remove nine screws and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-1037 Remove screws and disconnect connector



2. Remove the cover carefully, making sure not to damage the drum engage lever as you remove the cover.

Figure 6-1038 Avoid damaging the drum engage lever

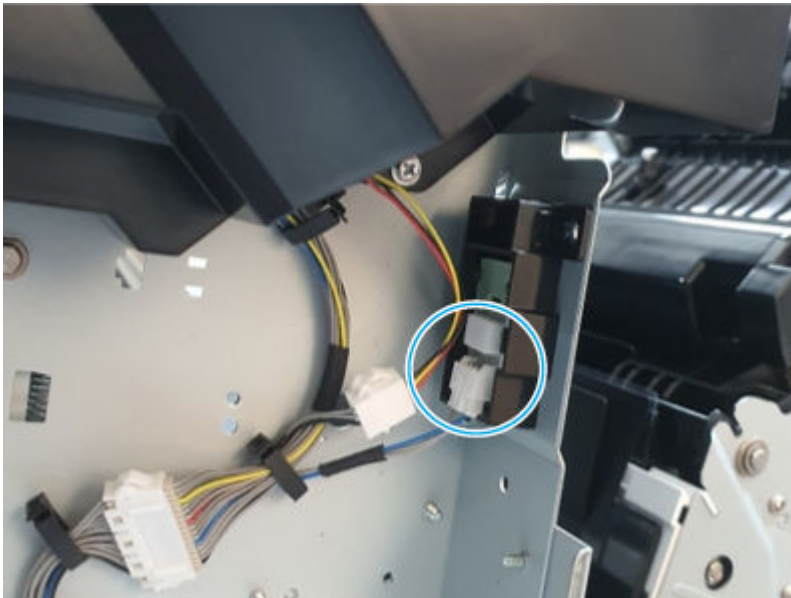


7. Remove the outer temperature humidity sensor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the outer temperature humidity sensor assembly.

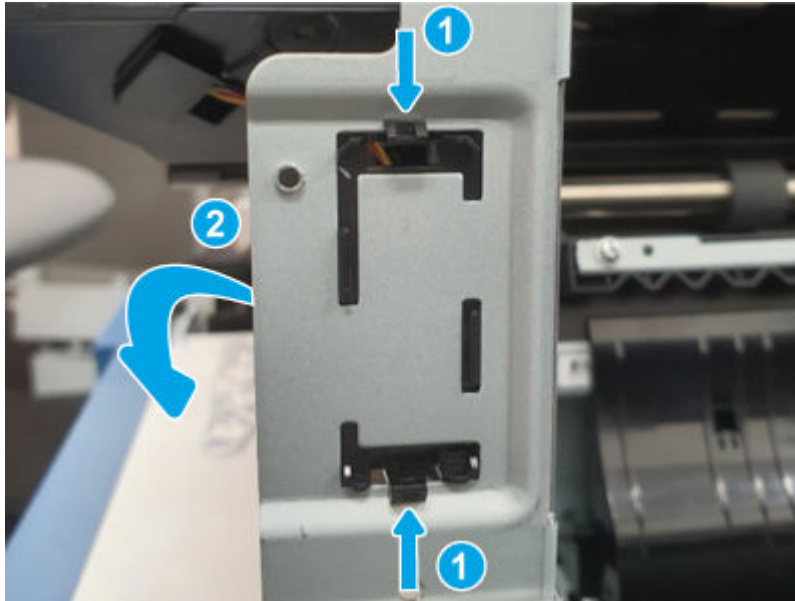
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1039 Disconnect one connector



2. Release two hooks (callout 1), and then remove the outer temperature humidity sensor assembly (callout 2).

Figure 6-1040 Remove the sensor assembly



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: LVPS fan

Learn about removing and replacing the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) fan.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the LVPS fan \(E877\).](#)

 [View a video of removing and replacing the LVPS fan \(E826\).](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-104 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00198A	Fan (LVPS fan)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

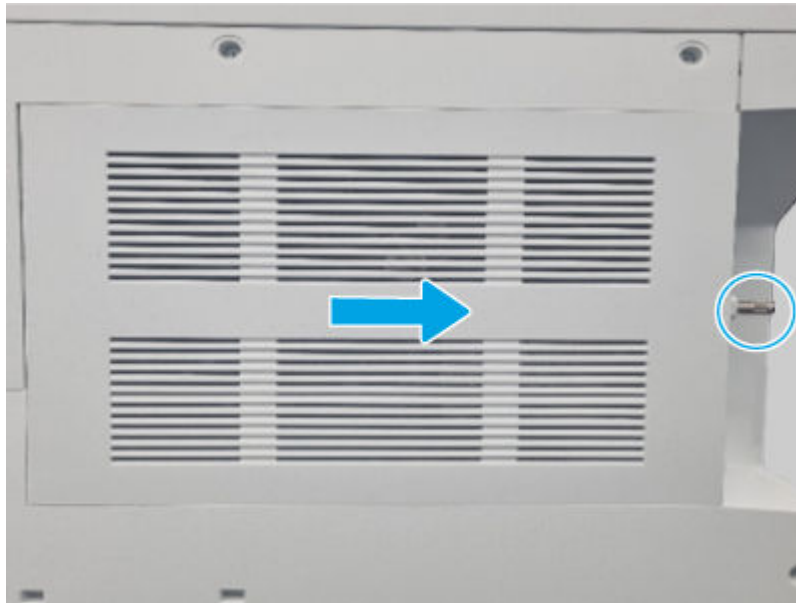
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1041 Remove the cover

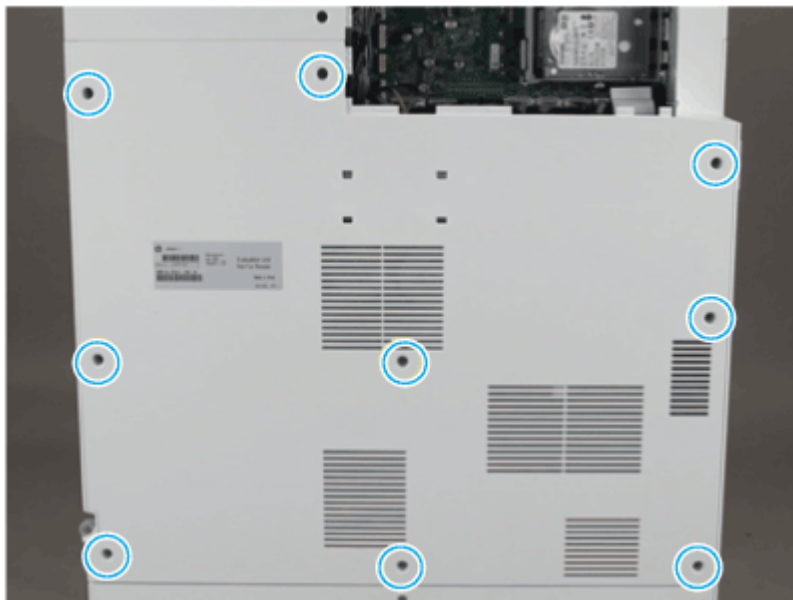


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1042 Remove the cover

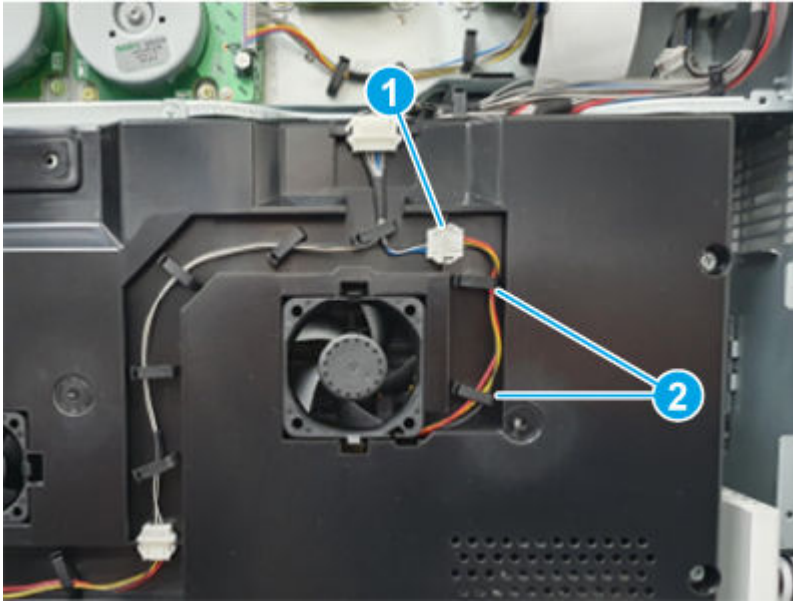


3. Remove the LVPS fan

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LVPS fan.

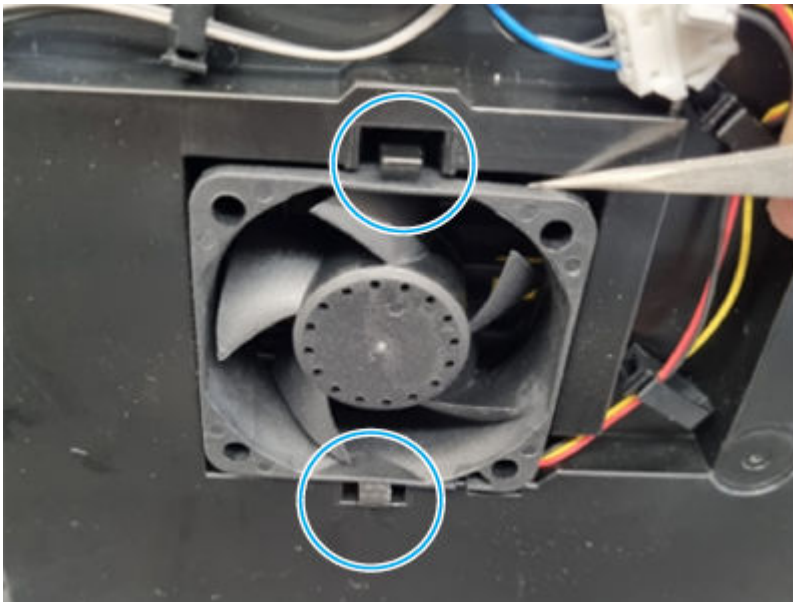
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 6-1043 Disconnect one connector



2. Release two tabs, and then remove the fan.

Figure 6-1044 Remove the fan



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: FDB fan

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser drive board fan.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the FDB fan \(E877\).](#)

 [View a video of removing and replacing the FDB fan \(E826\).](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-105 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00154A	Fan (FDB fan)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

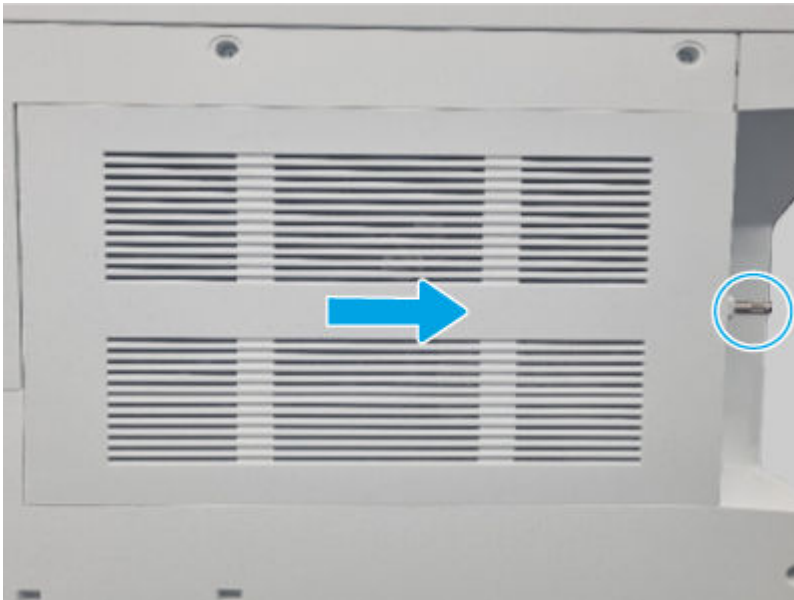
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1045 Remove the cover

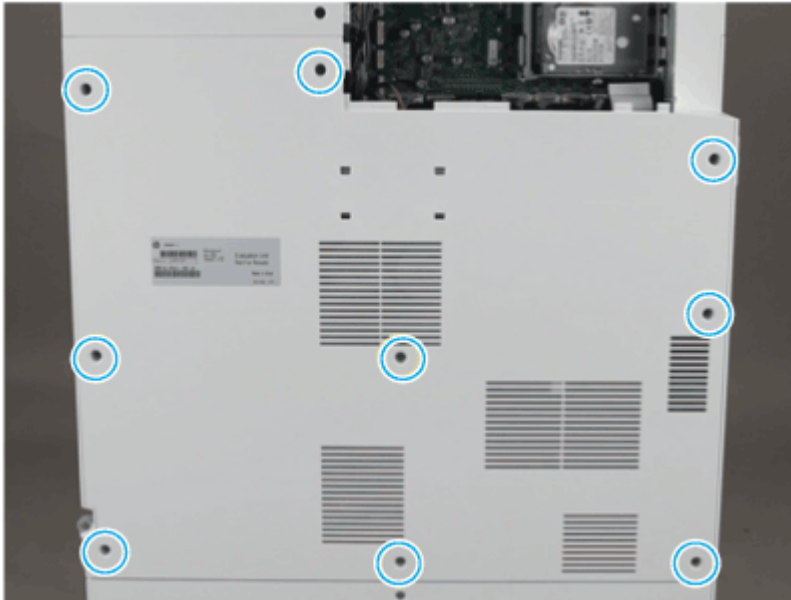


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1046 Remove the cover

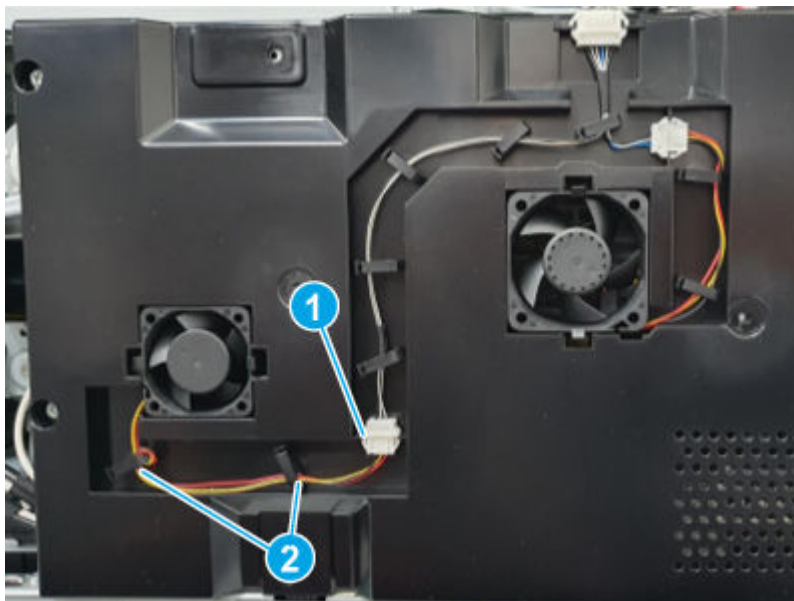


3. Remove the FDB fan

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the FDB fan.

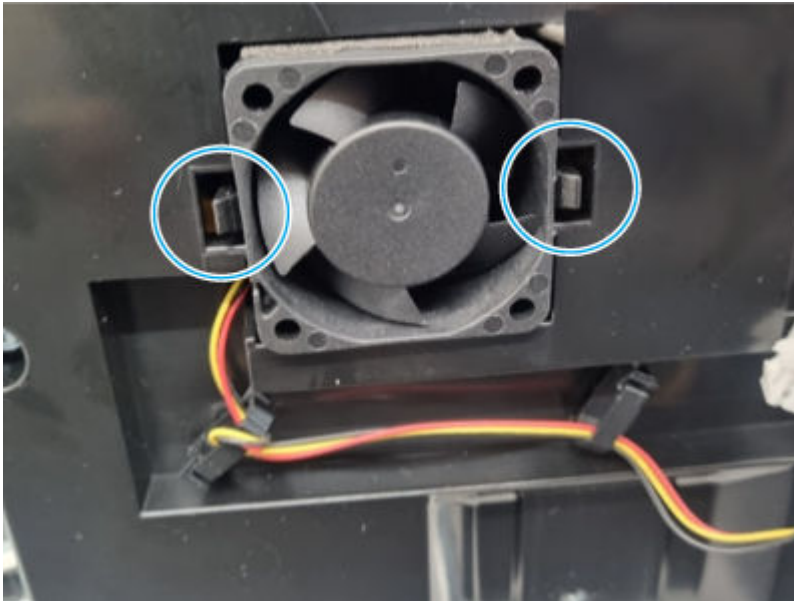
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 6-1047 Disconnect one connector



2. Release two tabs, and then remove the fan.

Figure 6-1048 Remove the fan



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: LVPS FDB fan assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) fuser drive board (FDB) fan assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the LVPS FDB fan assembly \(E877\).](#)



[View a video of removing and replacing the LVPS FDB fan assembly \(E826\).](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-106 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01795A	LVPS FDB fan assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

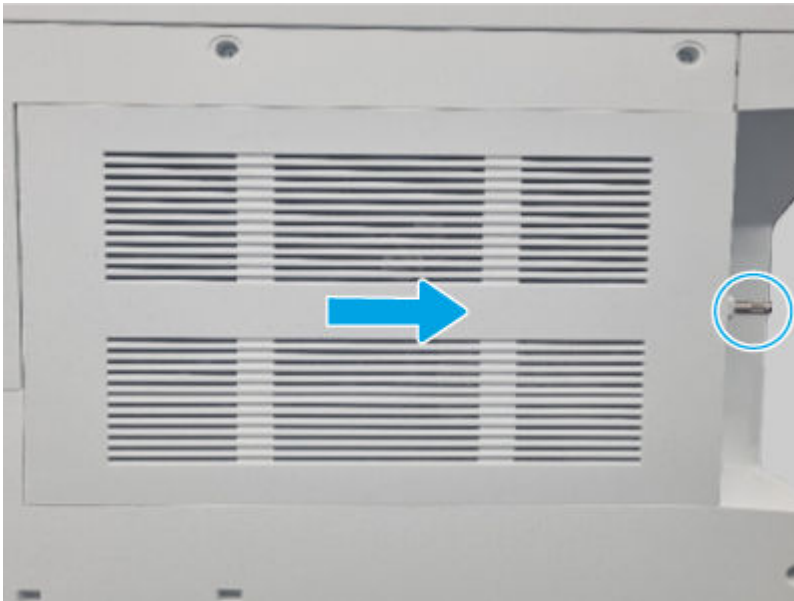
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1049 Remove the cover

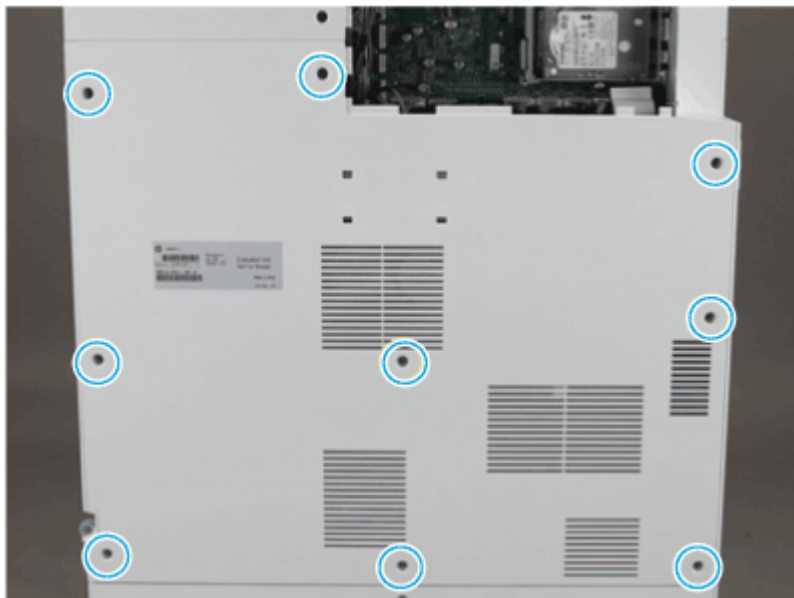


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1050 Remove the cover



3. Remove the LVPS FDB fan assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LVPS FDB fan assembly.

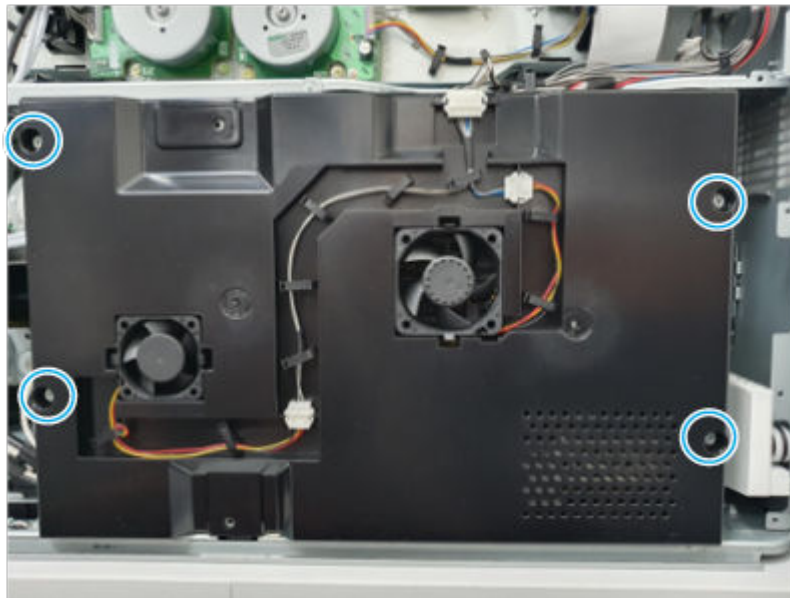
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1051 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1052 Remove four screws



3. Release one tab, and then remove the LVP FDB fan assembly.

Figure 6-1053 Remove the LVP FDB fan assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer fan assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the developer fan assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the developer fan assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-107 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40083	Developer fan assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

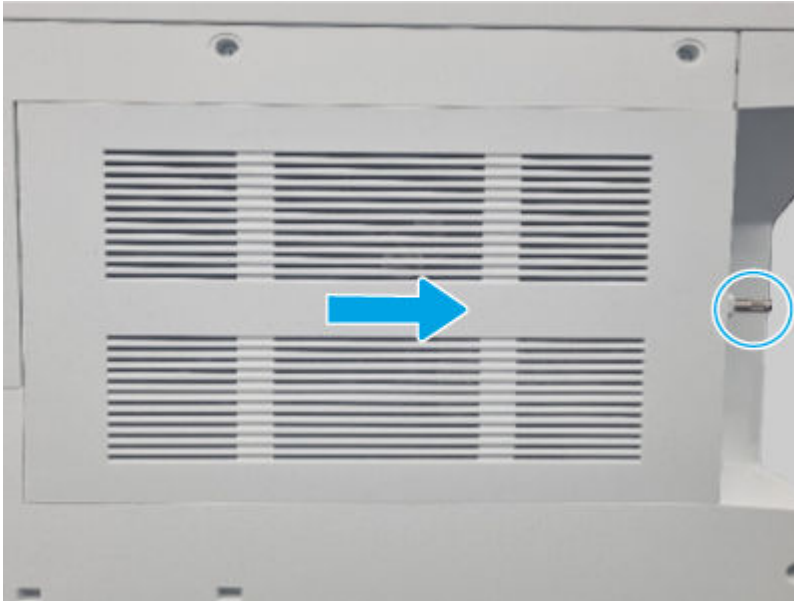
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1054 Remove the cover

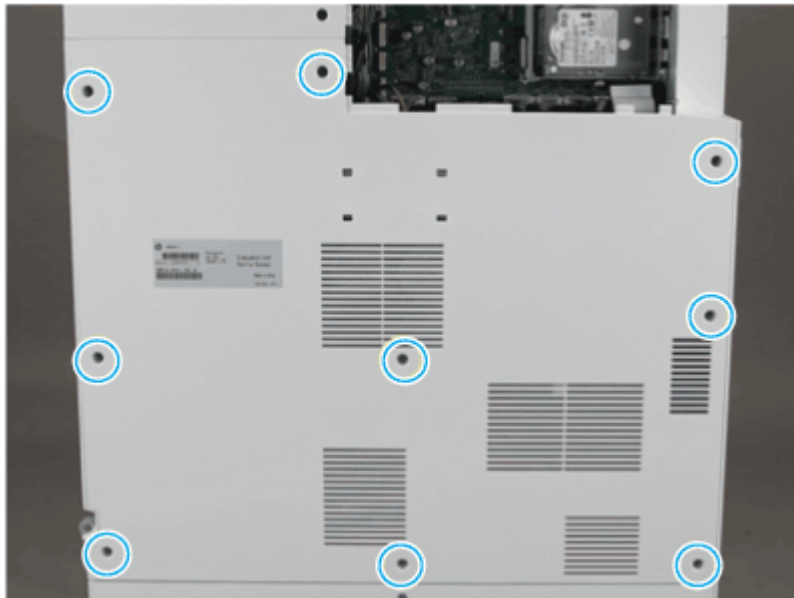


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1055 Remove the cover

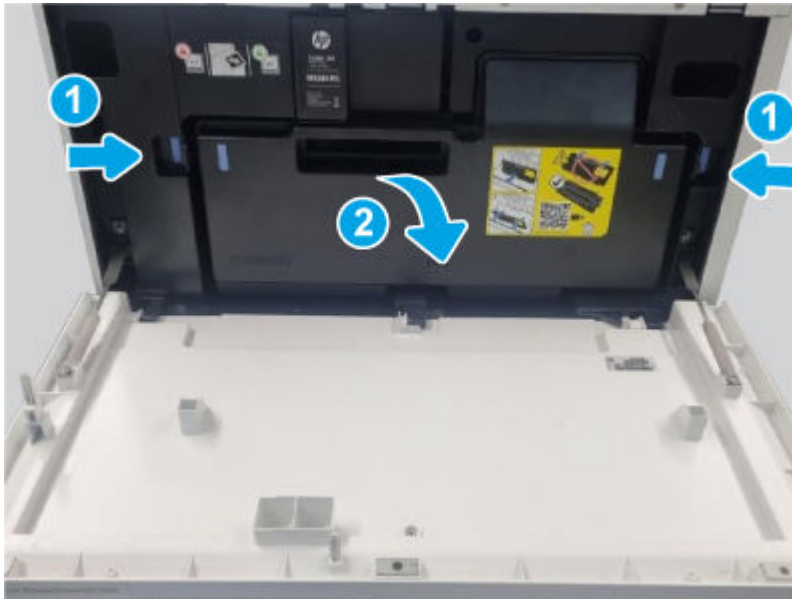


3. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-1056 Remove the TCU



4. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

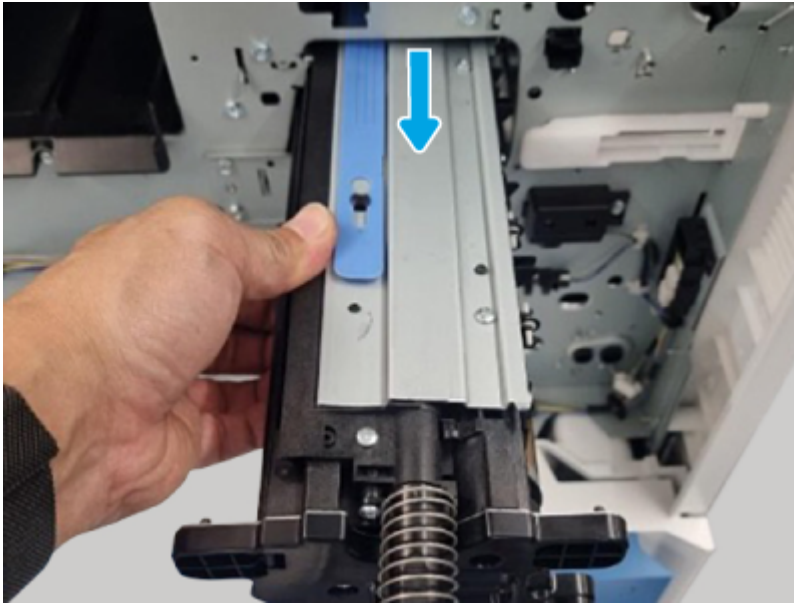
1. Open the right door.
2. At the front of the printer, remove one screw.

Figure 6-1057 Remove one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-1058 Remove the unit

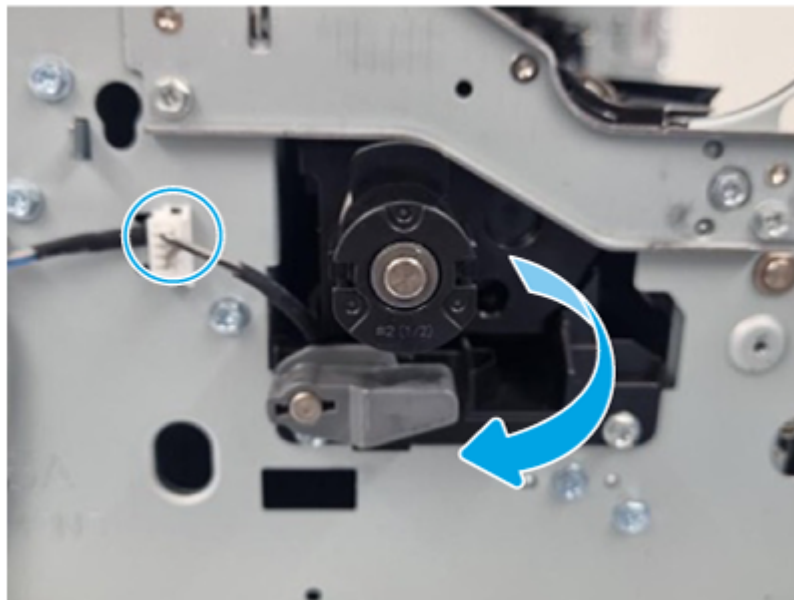


5. Remove the black developer unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black developer unit.

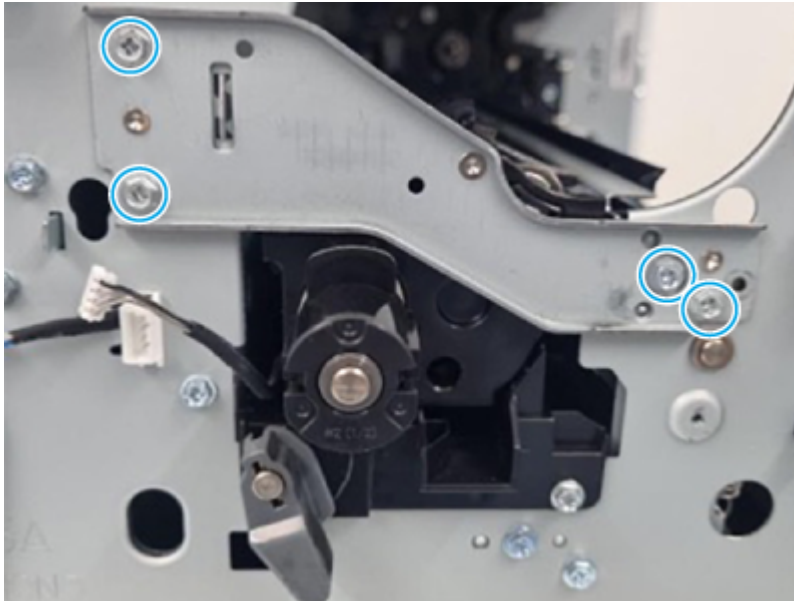
1. Release the lever and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-1059 Release the lever and disconnect the connector



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1060 Remove four screws



3. Pull the developer unit out of the printer.



NOTE: If the developer unit is empty, use the steps included in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step) to fill or refill the developer powder.

During removal and installation, do not grab the unit by the lever. Doing so can result in a toner spill.

Figure 6-1061 Do not grab lever

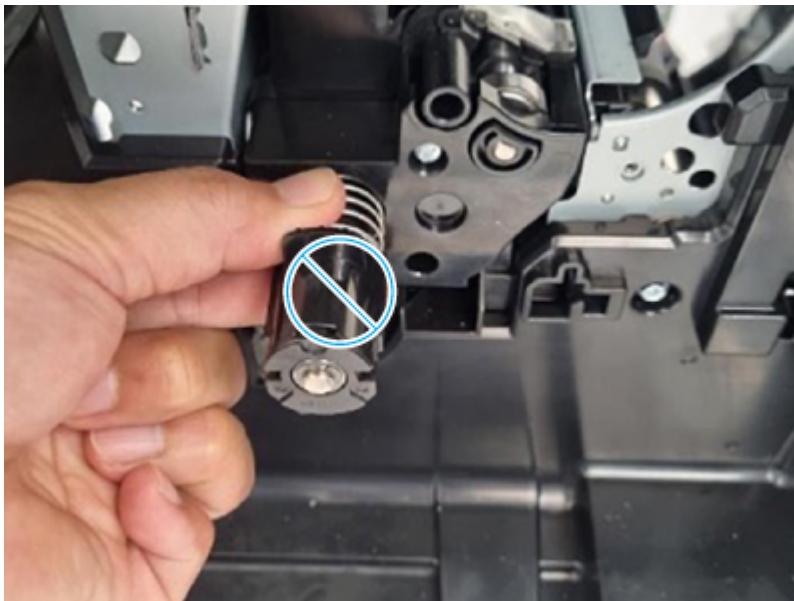
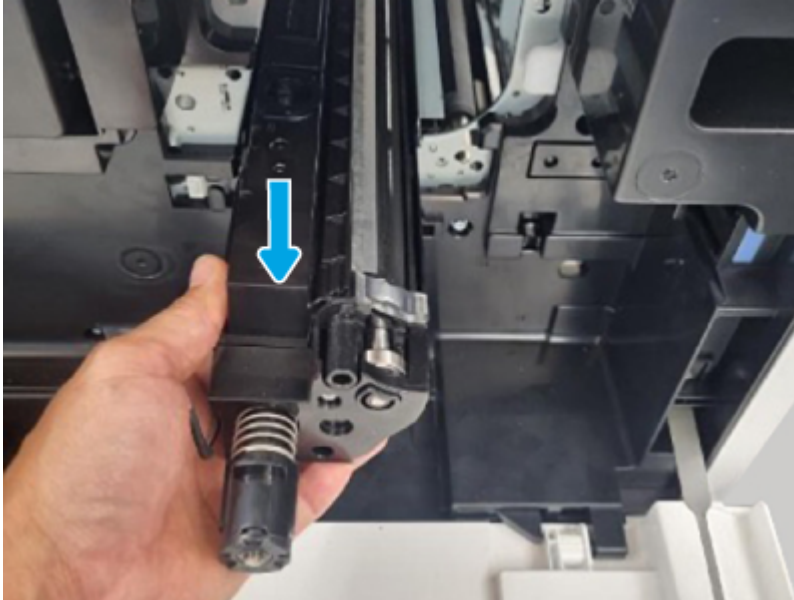


Figure 6-1062 Remove the unit



6. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-1063 Remove the cover



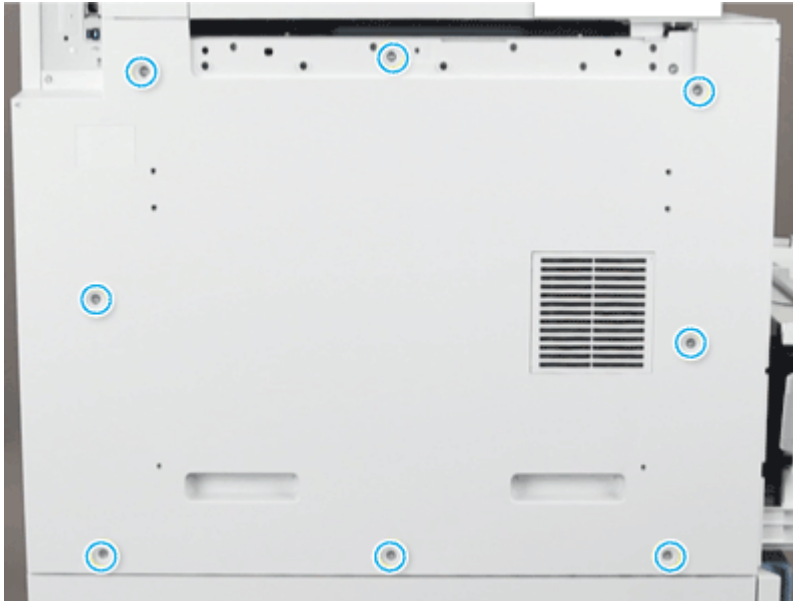
7. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

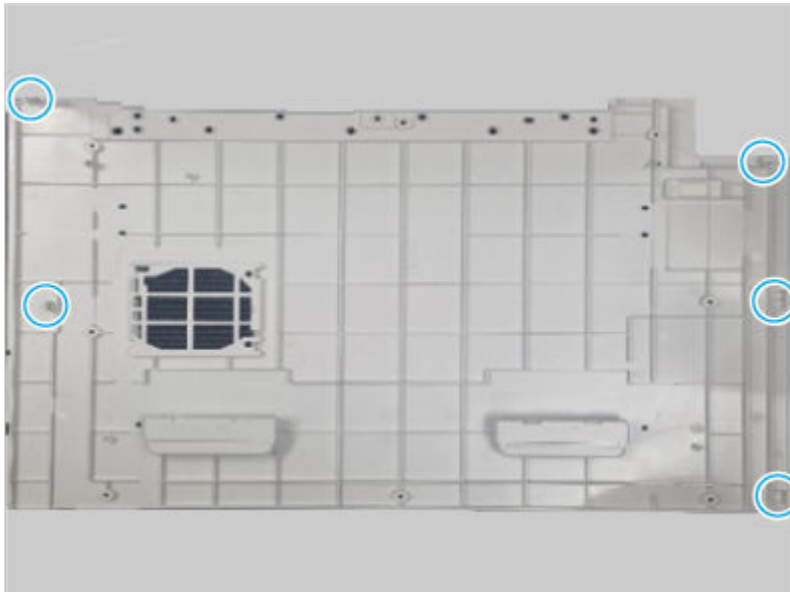
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-1064 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-1065 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-1066 Remove the cover



8. Remove the developer suction duct

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the developer suction duct.

- Remove one screw, and then pull the duct from the printer.

Figure 6-1067 Remove one screw

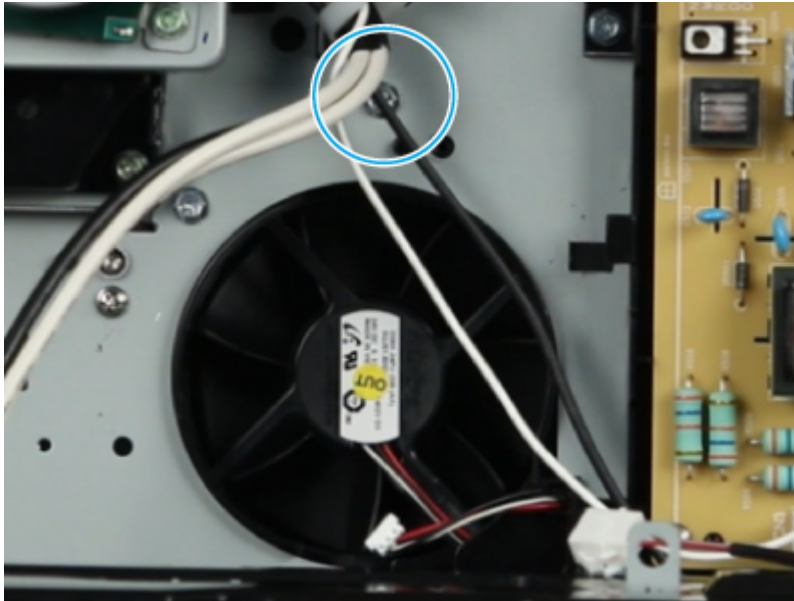


9. Remove the developer fan assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the developer fan assembly.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1068 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1069 Disconnect one connector



3. Inside the right door area, use tweezers to release the tab.

Figure 6-1070 Release the tab



 **NOTE:** See the difference between the hooked tab and the released tab in the pictures below.

Figure 6-1071 Hooked tab



Figure 6-1072 Released tab



4. Inside the left cover, slide the developer fan assembly to the front of the printer, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-1073 Remove developer fan assembly



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer suction duct

Learn about removing and replacing the developer suction duct.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-108 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01007A	Developer suction duct

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

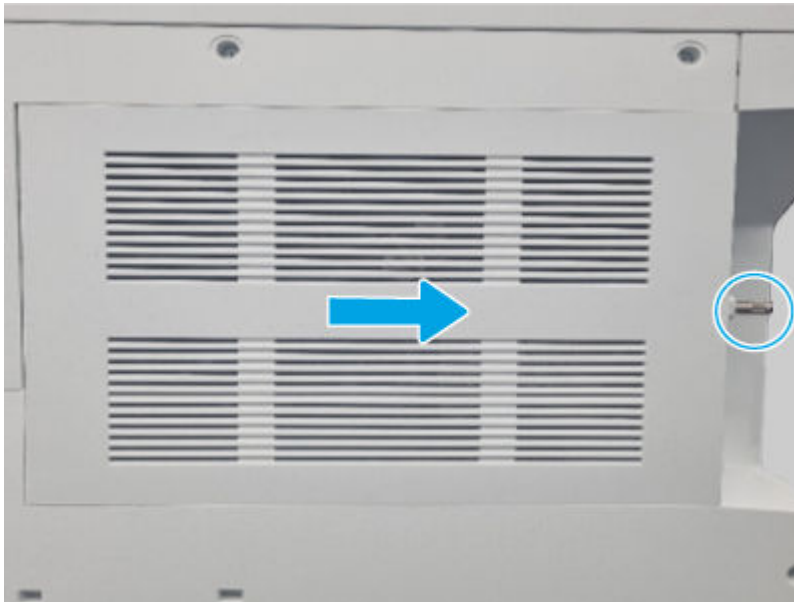
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1074 Remove the cover

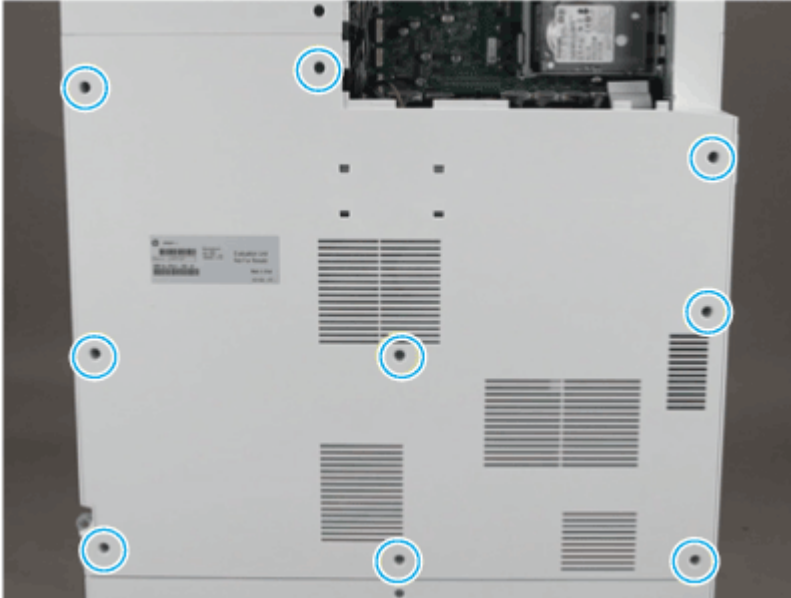


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1075 Remove the cover

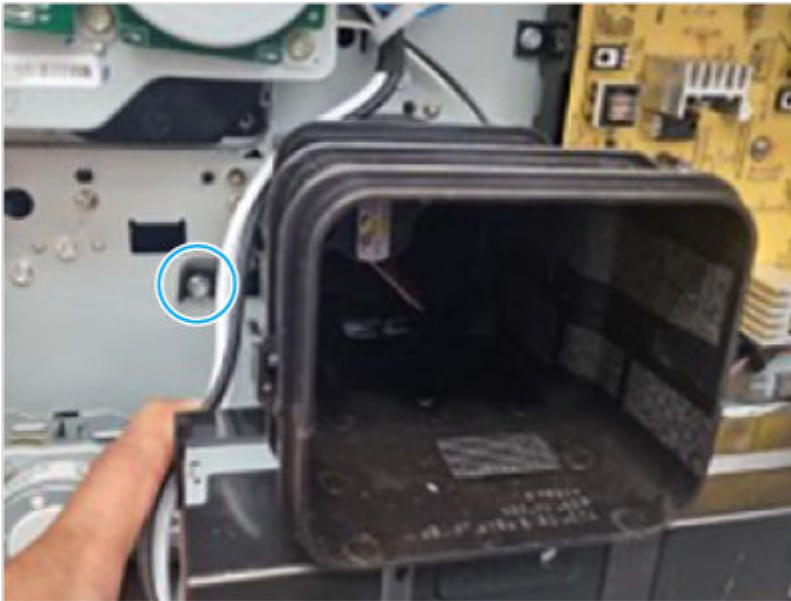


3. Remove the developer suction duct

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the developer suction duct.

- Remove one screw, and then pull the duct from the printer.

Figure 6-1076 Remove one screw



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser ventilation duct

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser ventilation duct.



[View a video of removing and replacing the fuser ventilation duct.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-109 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01446A	Fuser ventilation duct

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

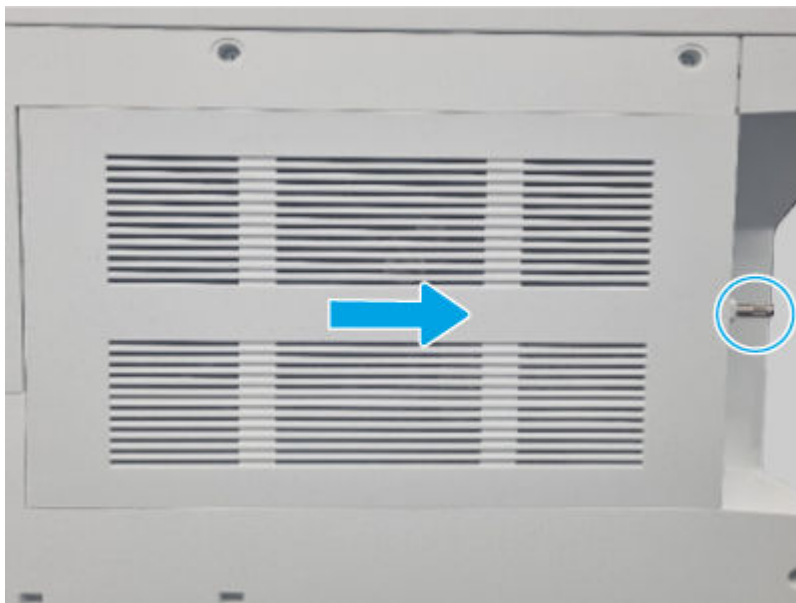
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1077 Remove the cover

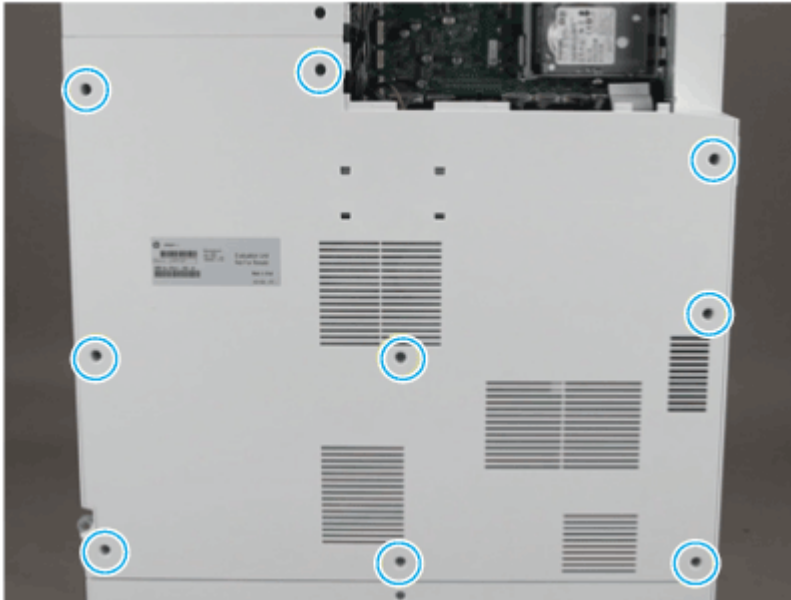


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1078 Remove the cover

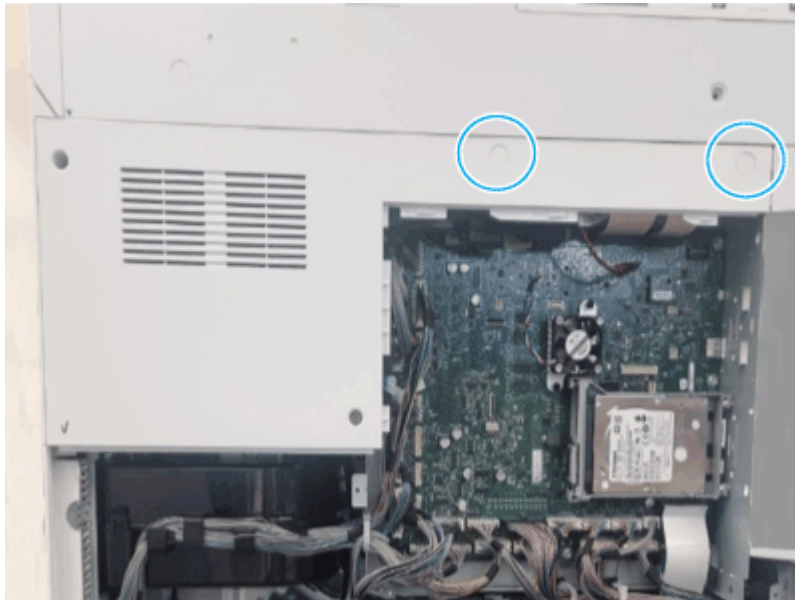


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

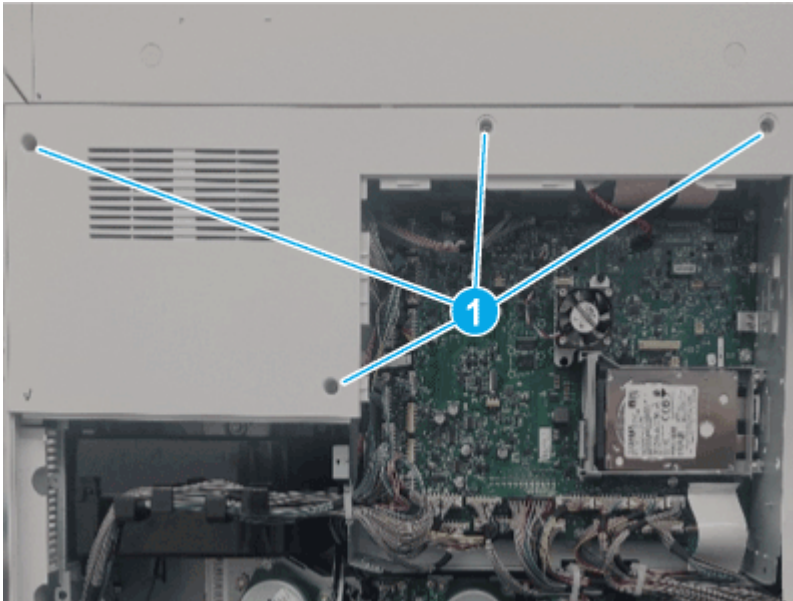
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1079 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1080 Remove the cover

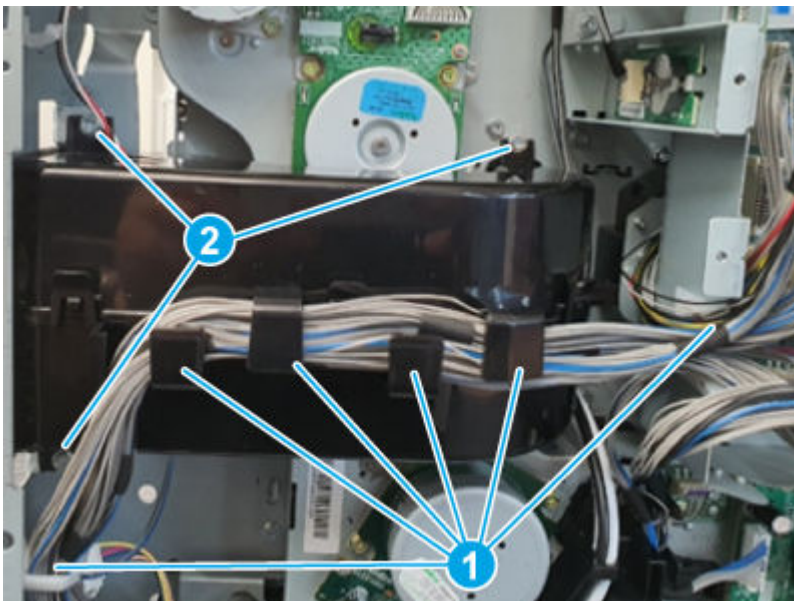


4. Remove the fuser ventilation duct

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser ventilation duct.

- Release the wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the fuser ventilation duct.

Figure 6-1081 Remove the duct



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: LSU fan

Learn about removing and replacing the laser scanner unit (LSU) fan.



[View a video of removing and replacing the LSU fan.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-110 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-64013	LSU fan

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the left top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-1082 Remove the cover



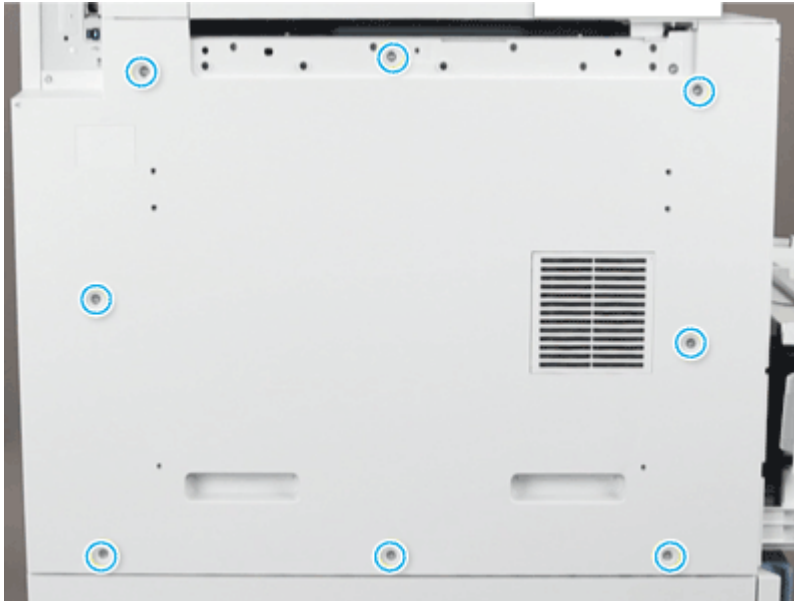
2. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

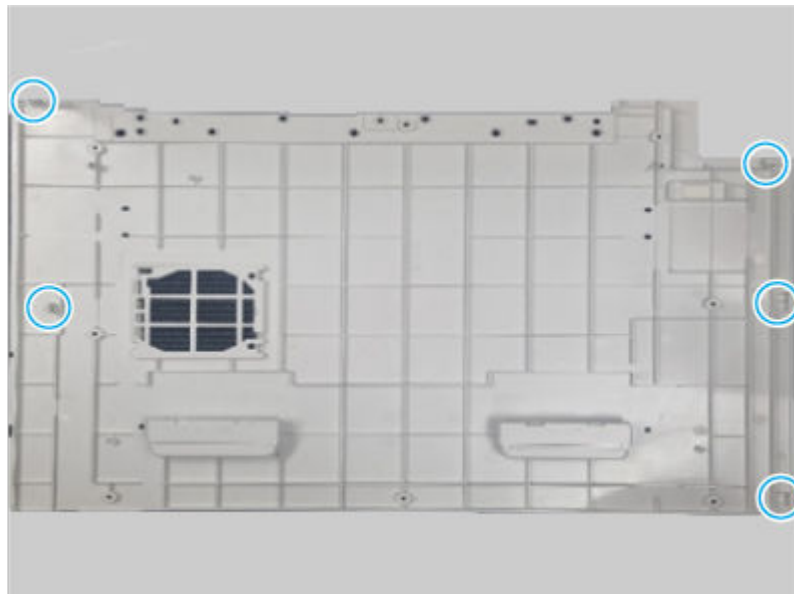
2. Remove eight screws.

Figure 6-1083 Remove eight screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-1084 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right- to left side. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-1085 Remove the cover

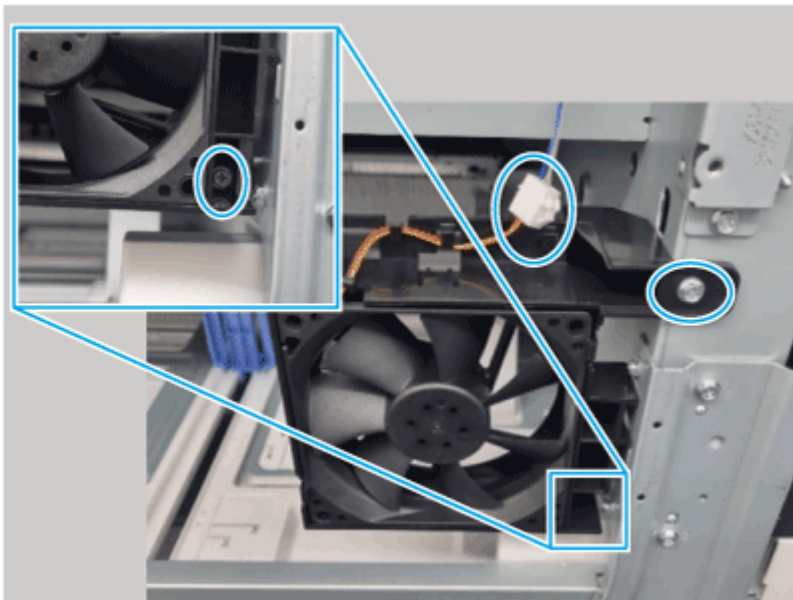


3. Remove the LSU fan

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LSU fan.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the LSU fan.


Figure 6-1086 Remove the fan



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front door switch assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the front door switch.


 [View a video of removing and replacing the front door switch.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes


Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

 **NOTE:** This procedure requires removing the toner cartridges using the control panel method. Do this prior to turning the power off. For more information, see *Remove the toner cartridges (control panel method)* in this topic.

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-111 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00466A	Front door open switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03082622
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.



NOTE: If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1087 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-1088 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

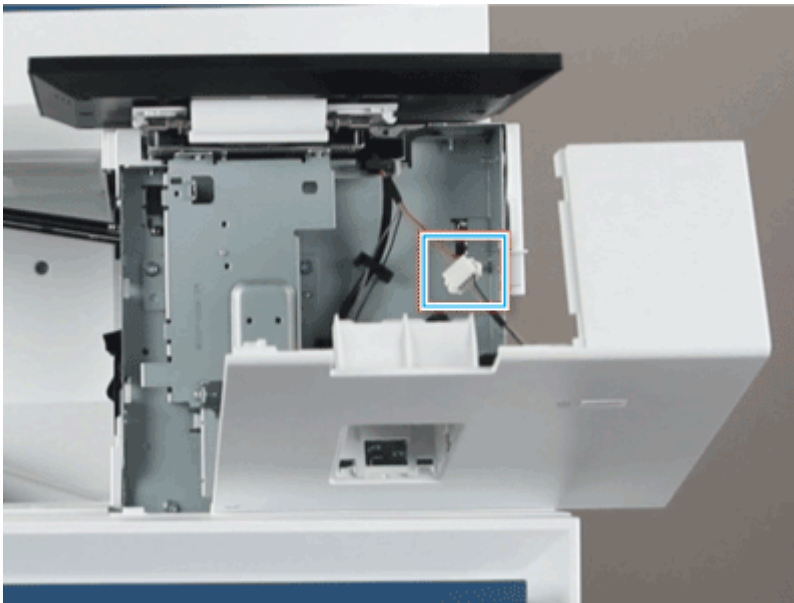
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-1089 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-1090 Remove the cover assembly

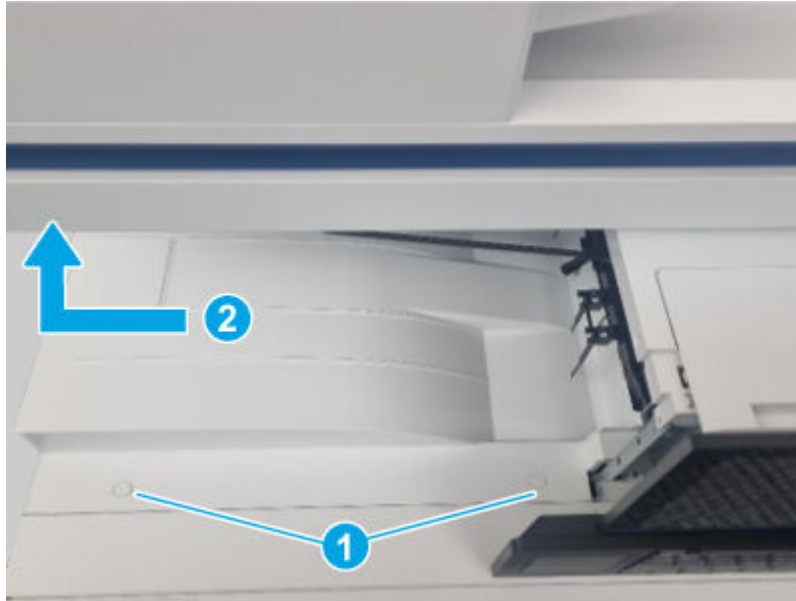


3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-1091 Remove the cover

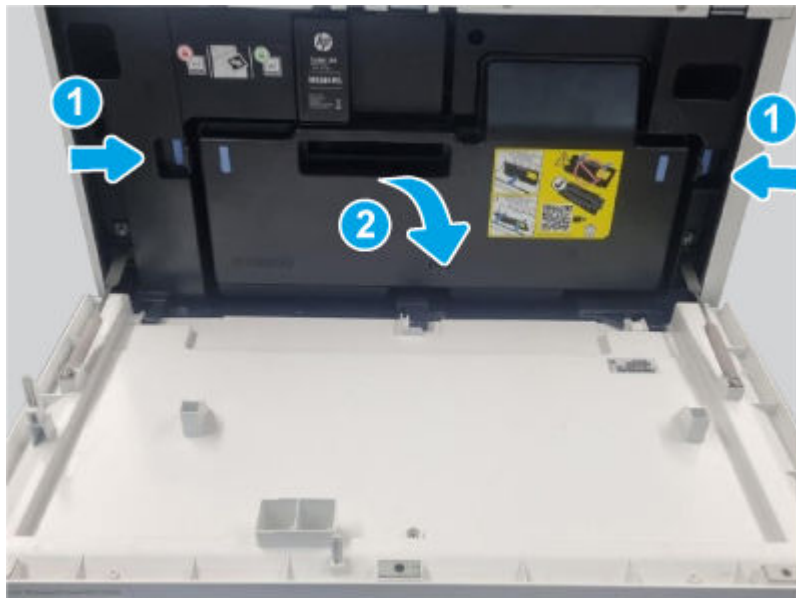


4. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-1092 Remove the TCU

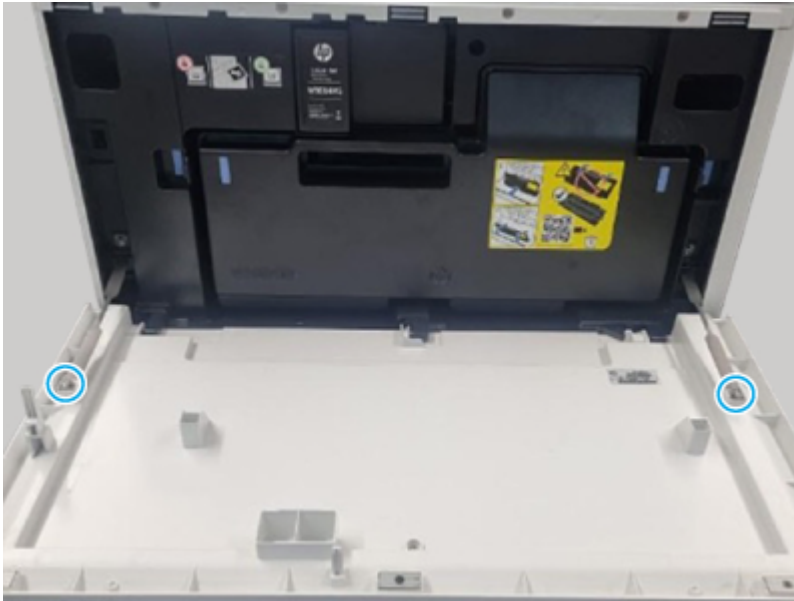


5. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

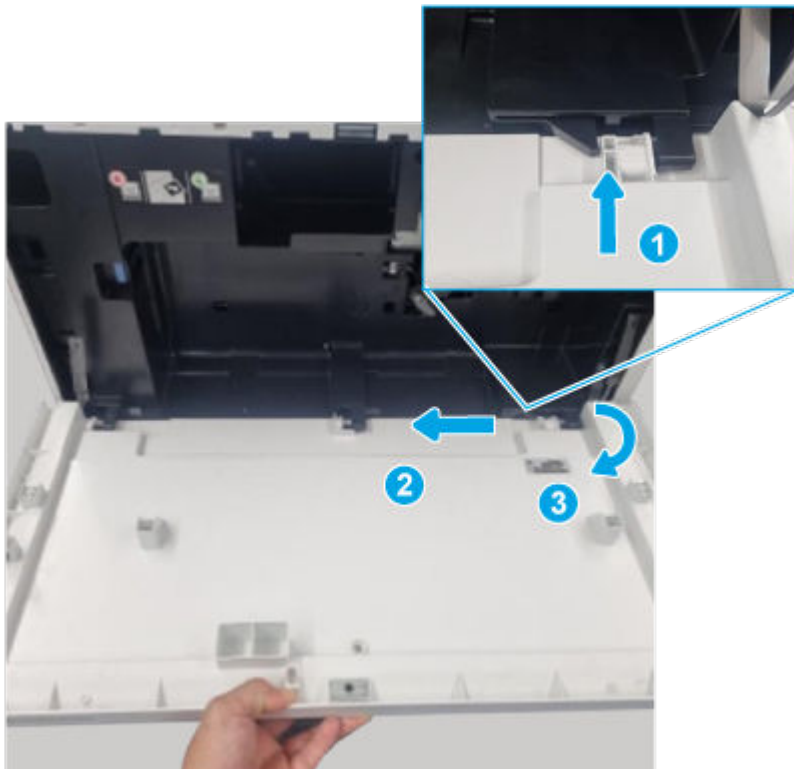
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1093 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-1094 Remove the cover

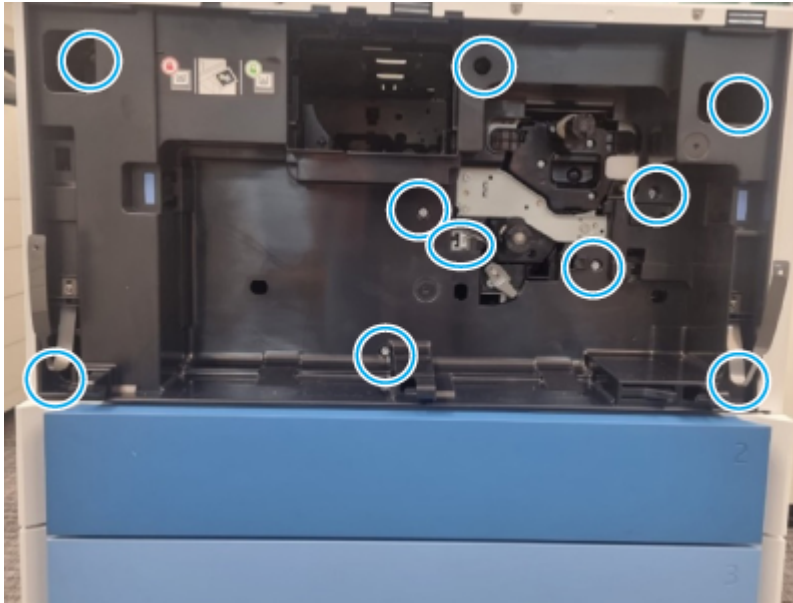


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

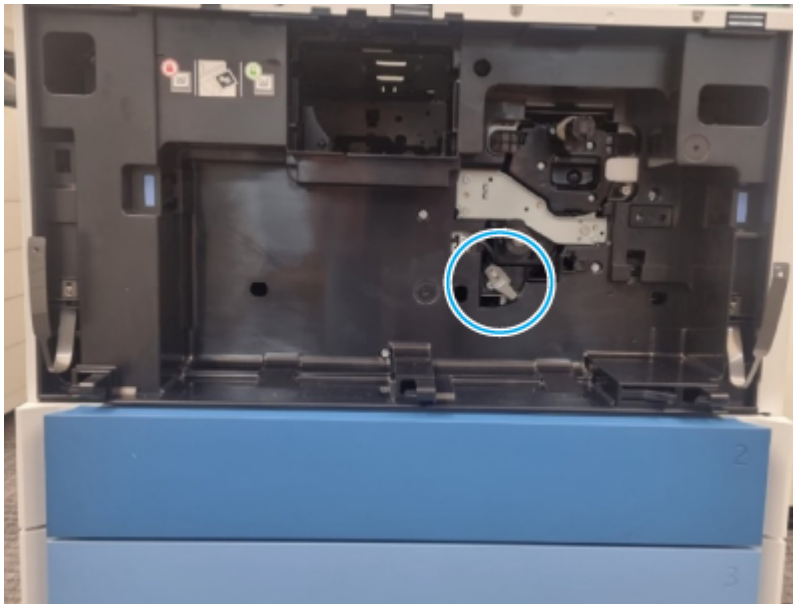
1. Remove nine screws and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-1095 Remove screws and disconnect connector



2. Remove the cover carefully, making sure not to damage the drum engage lever as you remove the cover.

Figure 6-1096 Avoid damaging the drum engage lever

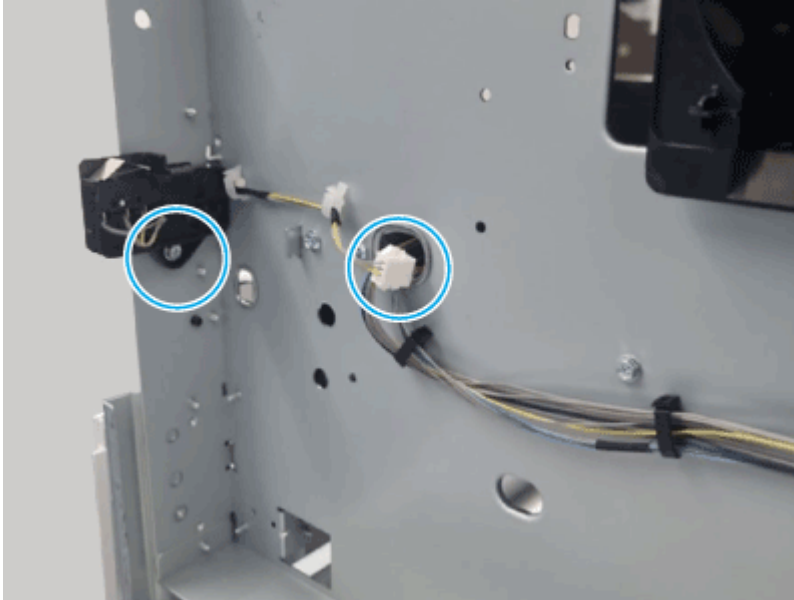


7. Remove the front door switch assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front door switch assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the front door switch.

Figure 6-1097 Remove the switch



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door switch assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the right door switch.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-112 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01467A	Switch (right door switch)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

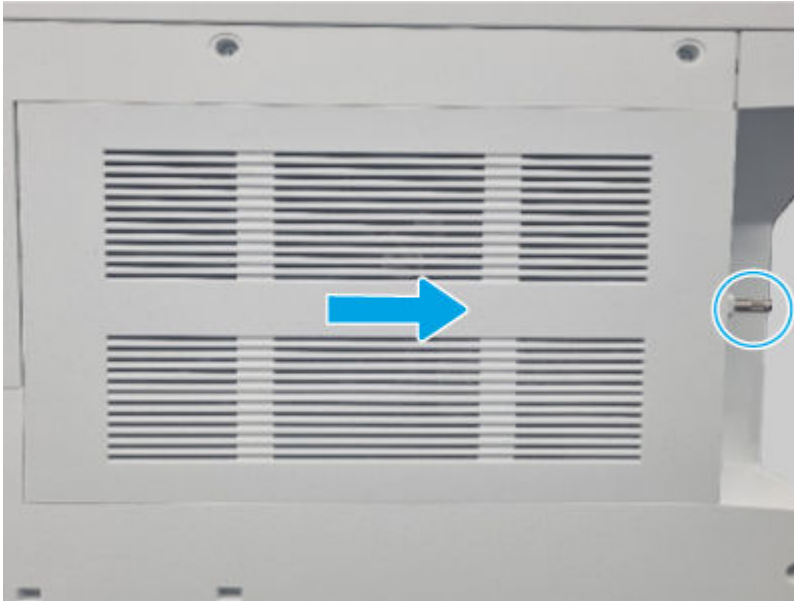
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1098 Remove the cover

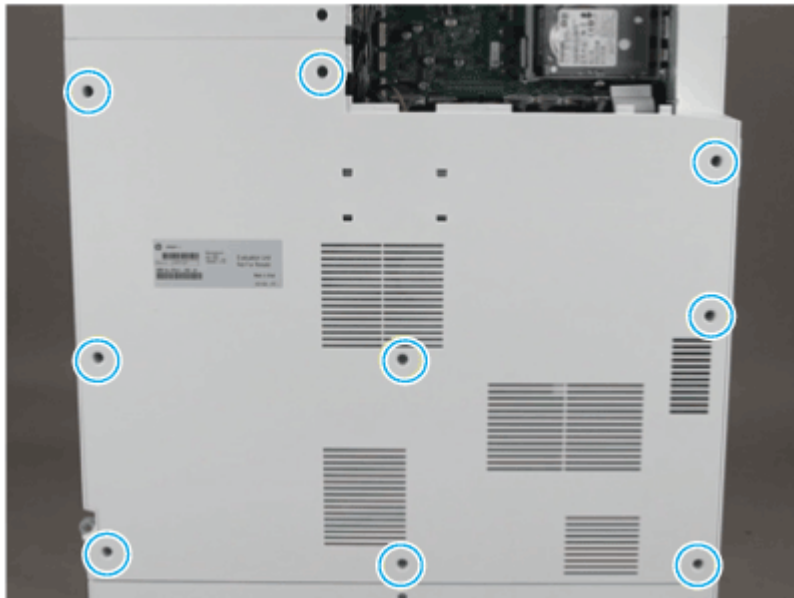


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1099 Remove the cover

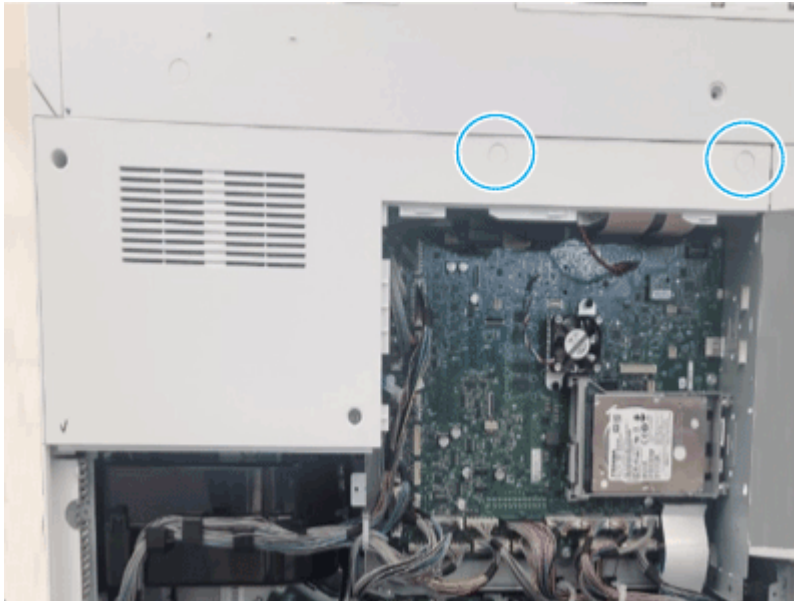


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

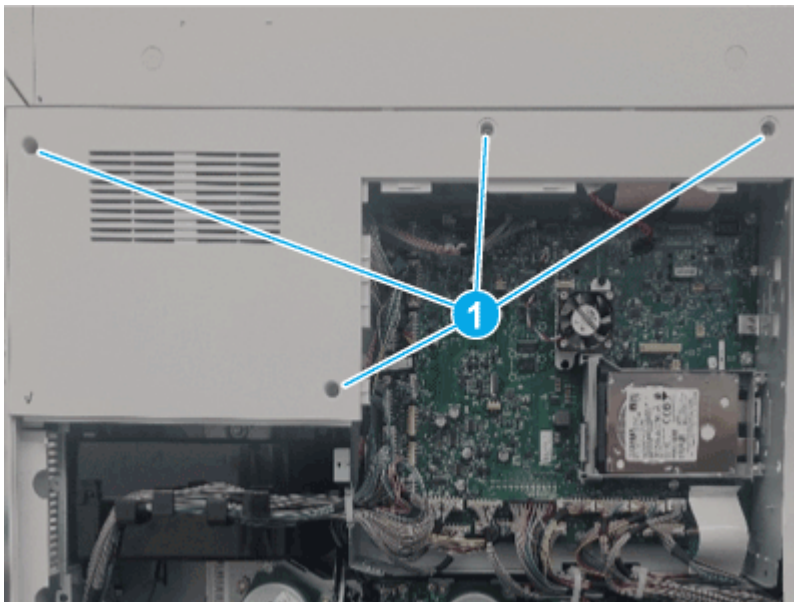
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1100 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1101 Remove the cover



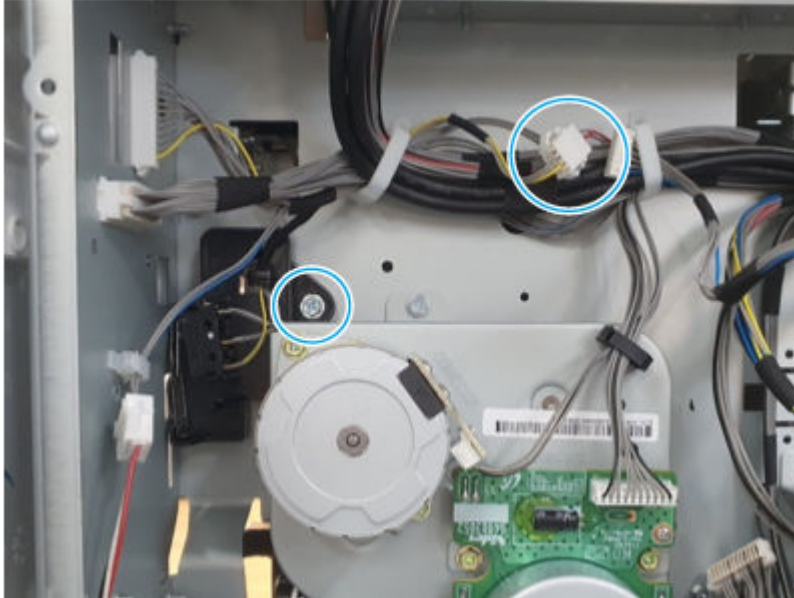
4. Remove the right door switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door switch.

- Open the right door, disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the right door switch.

 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainer.

Figure 6-1102 Remove the switch



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Control panel

Learn about control panel parts removal and replacement.

Base control panel

Review the base control panel removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Control panel

Learn about removing and replacing the control panel.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-113 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK42-60101	Control-panel assembly 25.6 cm (10.1 in)
3SJ15-60101	Control-panel assembly 20.3 cm (8 in)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle upper cover.

1. Rotate the control panel into the upright position.

Figure 6-1103 Raise the control panel



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release the cover, and then remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-1104 Remove the cover



2. Remove the control panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the control panel.

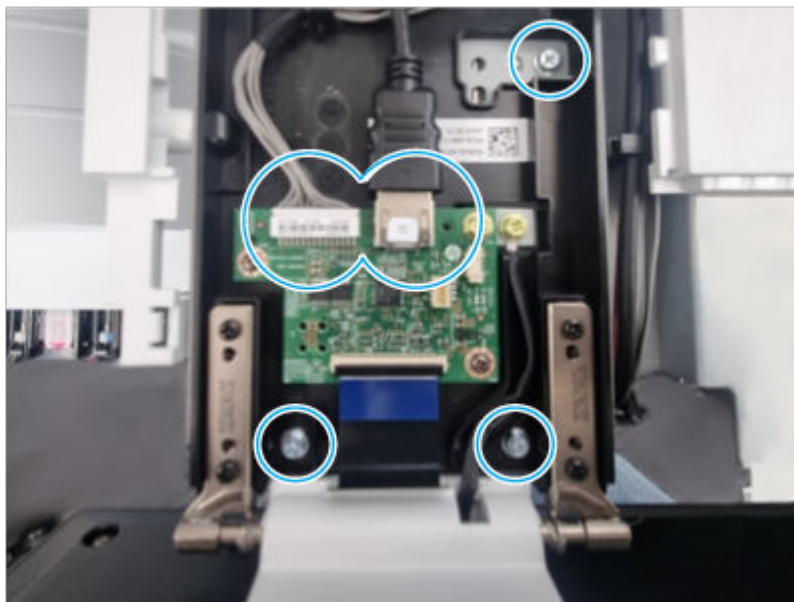
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1105 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the control panel.

Figure 6-1106 Remove the control panel



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCAs

Learn about printed circuit assembly (PCA) parts removal and replacement.

Main PCA

Learn about main printed circuit assembly (PCA) parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Formatter

Learn about removing and replacing the formatter.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the formatter.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-114 Part information

Part number	Part description
6CF14-67002	SVC AS PCA controller mono (Formatter)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

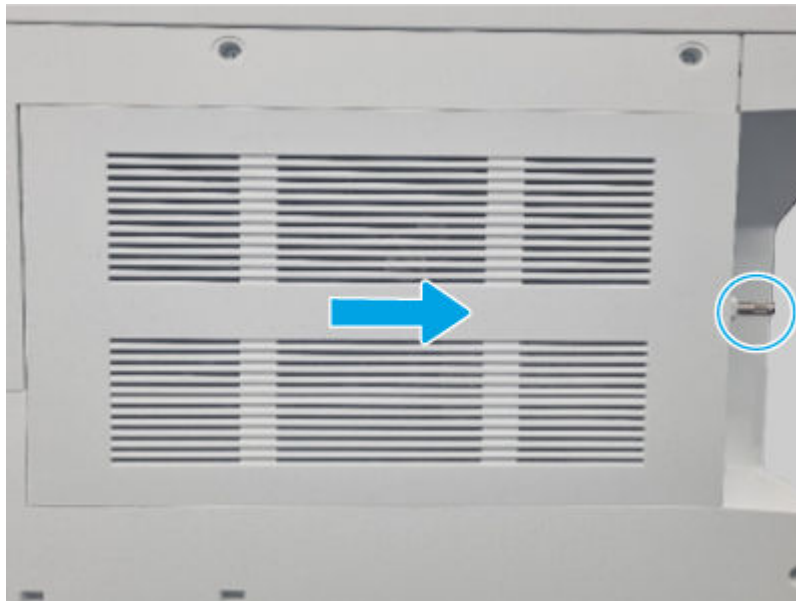
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1107 Remove the cover

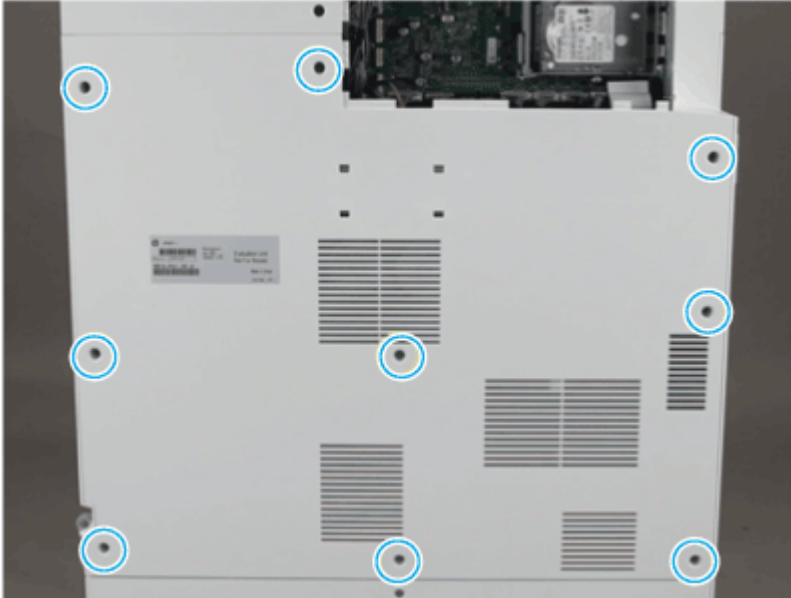


2 Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1108 Remove the cover

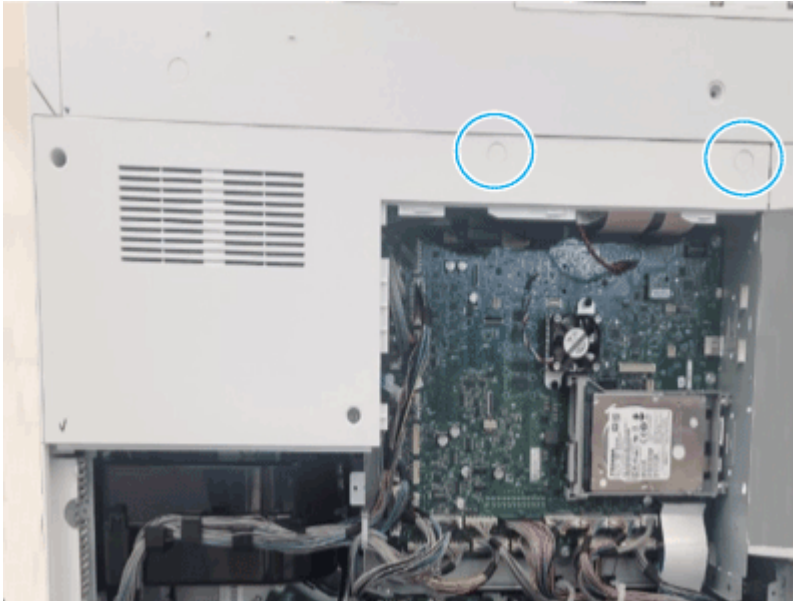


3 Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

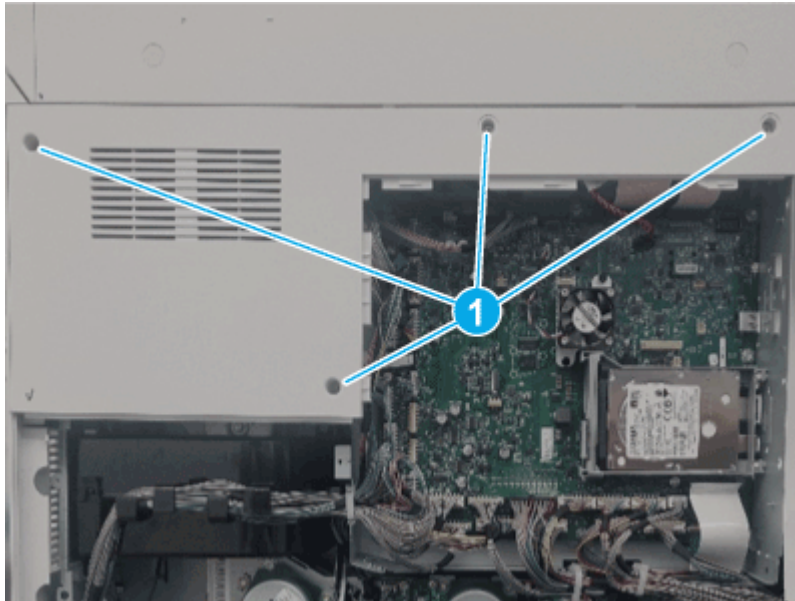
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1109 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1110 Remove the cover



4 Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-1111 Remove the rivets



5 Remove the hard disk

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD.

- Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the hard disk, and then remove the hard drive and cradle together (callout 2).

Figure 6-1112 Remove the HDD

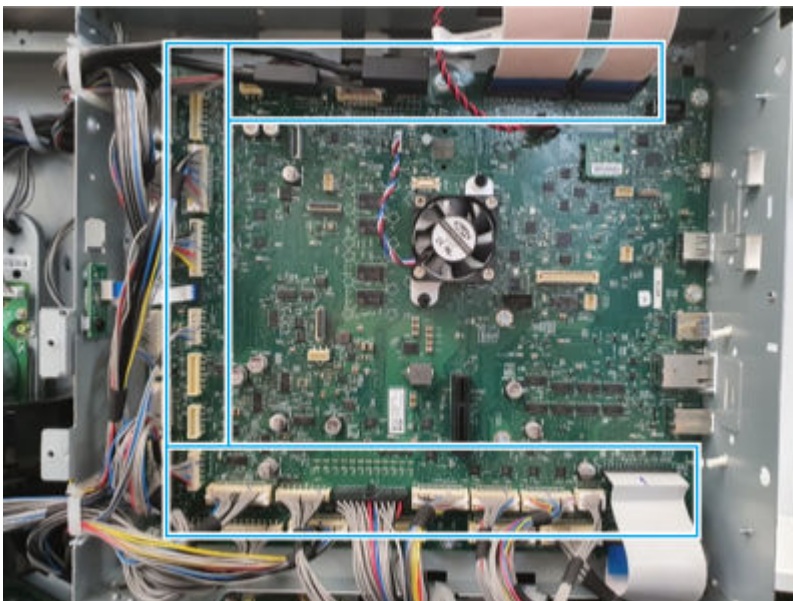


6 Remove the formatter

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the formatter.

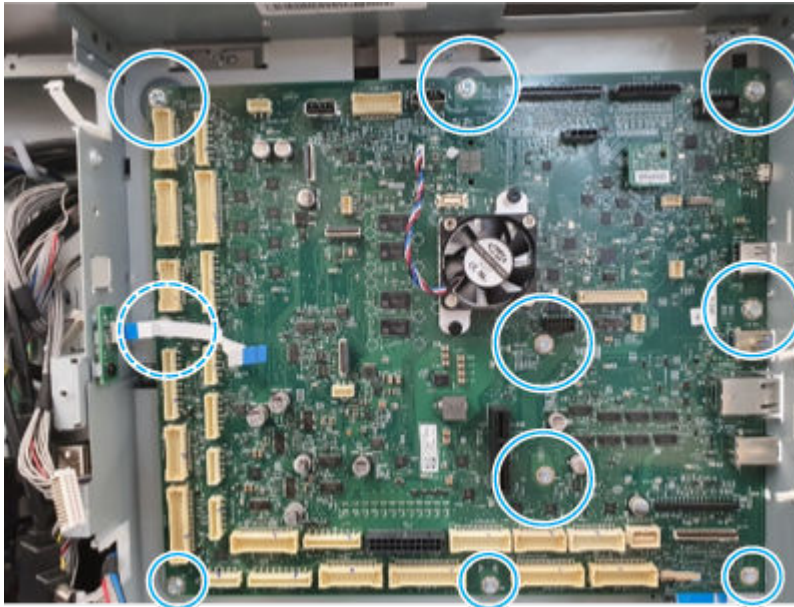
1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

Figure 6-1113 Disconnect all connectors



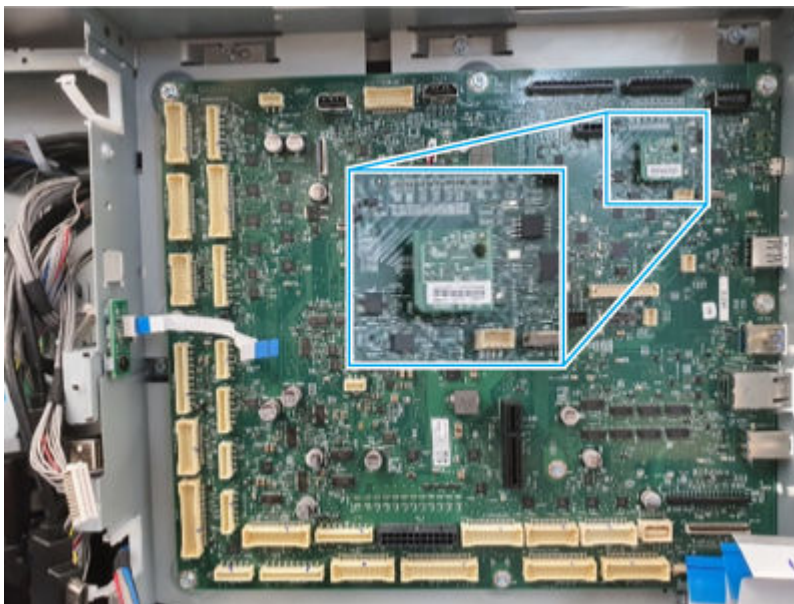
2. Remove ten screws, and then remove the formatter.

Figure 6-1114 Remove ten screws



3. **For replacement formatter installations:** The trusted platform module (TPM) is not a replaceable service part. Remove the TPM from the discarded formatter, and then install it on the replacement formatter.

Figure 6-1115 Formatter TPM



4. Install the replacement formatter by tilting the board and lining it up with the four tabs shown.

Figure 6-1116 Four tabs on the printer housing

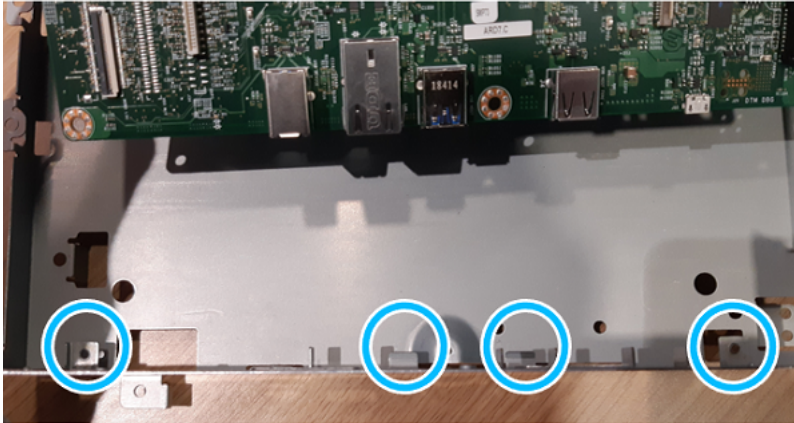
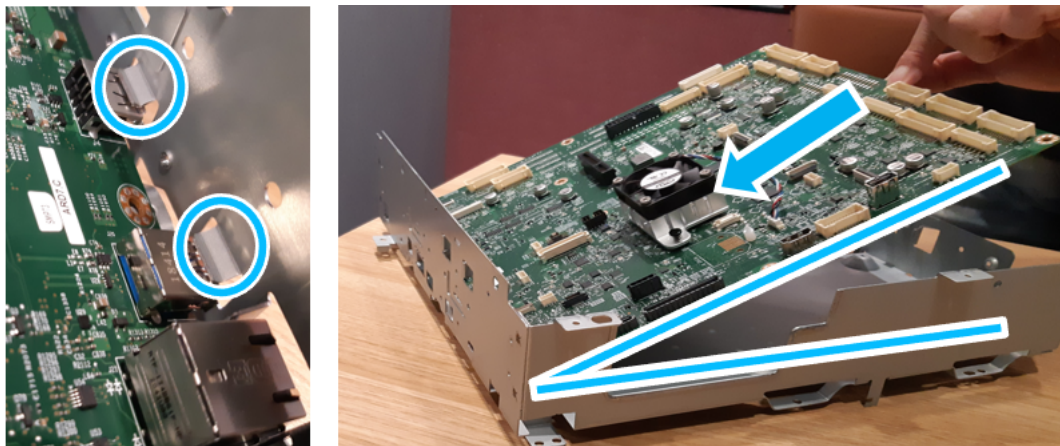



Figure 6-1117 Tilting the formatter board and lining up the tabs



7 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Riser card and cradle

Learn about removing and replacing the riser card and cradle.



[View a video of removing and replacing the riser card and cradle.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-115 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ01-60001	Riser card-EPS2.0 Riser for HDD
5851-7754	Cradle-Riser card

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

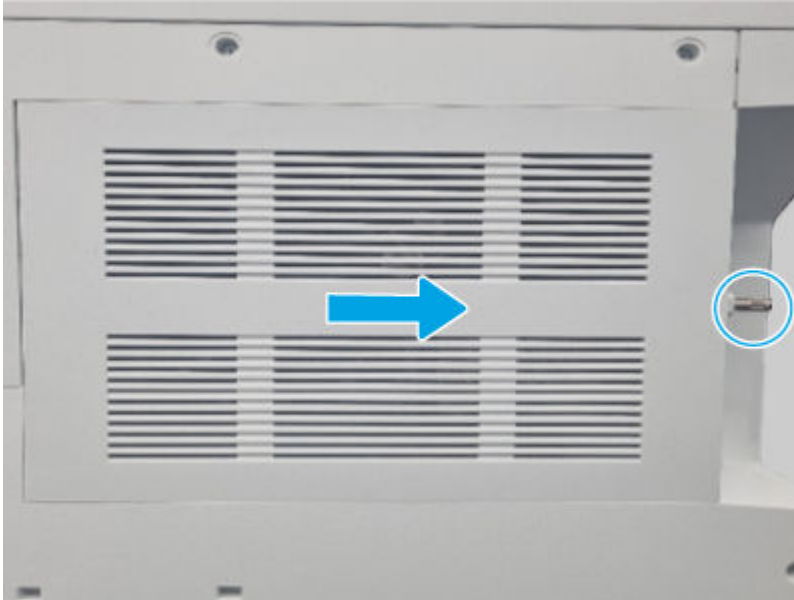
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1118 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-1119 Remove the rivets



3. Remove the hard disk

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD.

- Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the hard disk, and then remove the hard drive and cradle together (callout 2).

Figure 6-1120 Remove the HDD

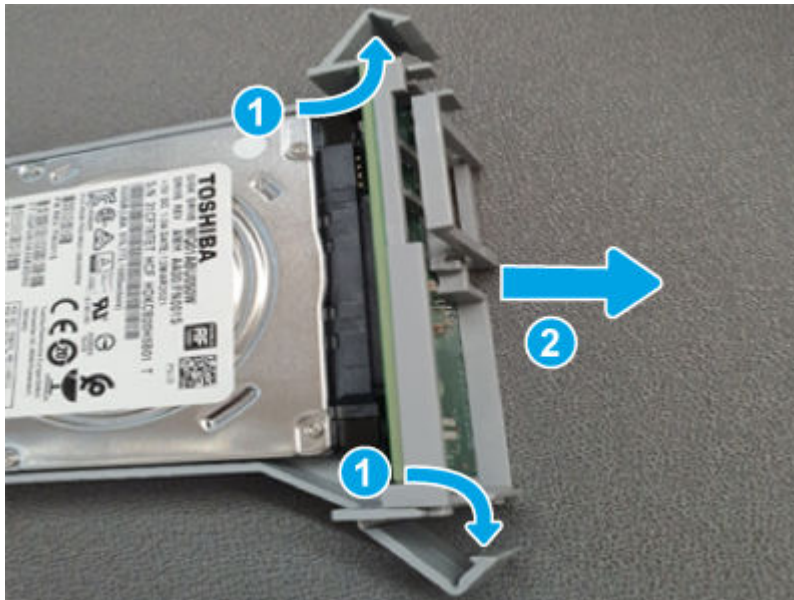


4. Remove the riser card and cradle

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the riser card and cradle.

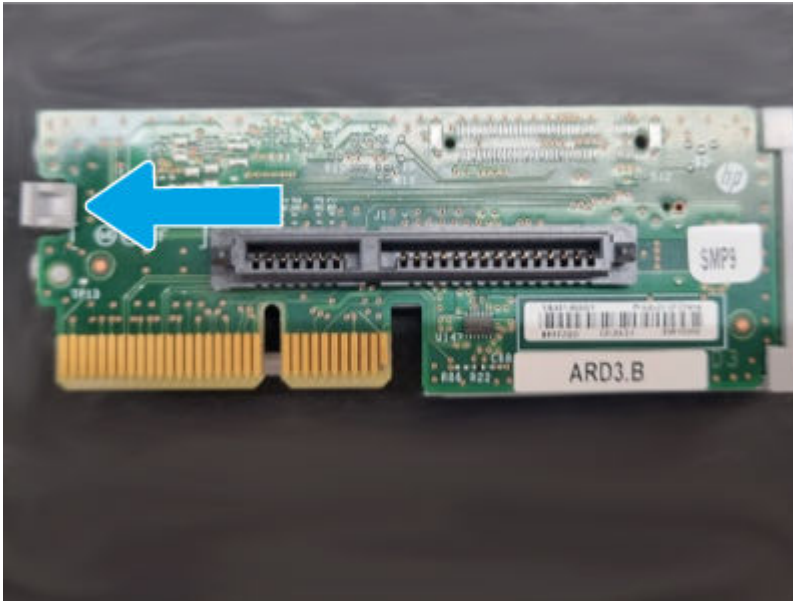
1. Release the clips on both ends of the cradle (callout 1), and then remove the riser card from the HDD callout 2).

Figure 6-1121 Remove the riser card



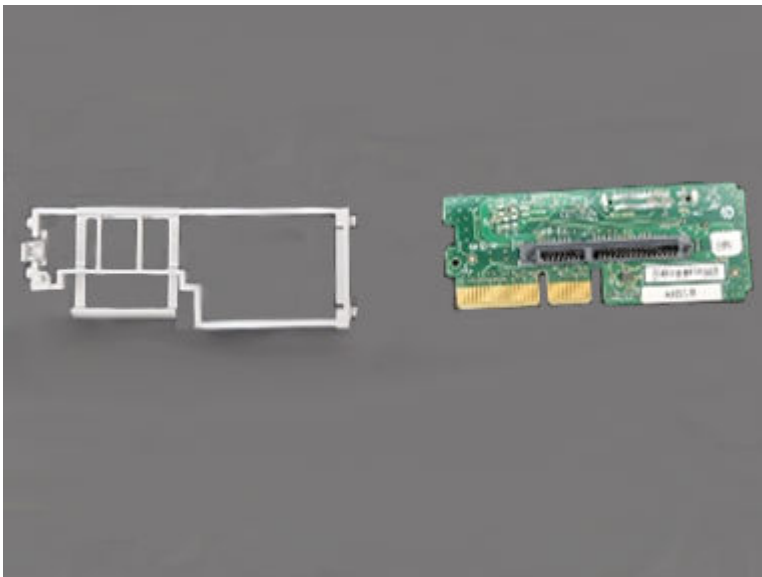
2. Release the hook.

Figure 6-1122 Release the hook



3. Separate the riser card from the cradle.

Figure 6-1123 Remove the riser card and cradle



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rivet-HDD

Learn about removing and replacing the hard-disk drive rivet.



[View a video of removing and replacing the hard-disk drive rivet.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-116 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40035	Rivet-HDD

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-1124 Remove the rivets



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Cradle-HDD

Learn about removing and replacing the hard disk cradle.



[View a video of removing and replacing the hard disk drive cradle.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-117 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-7753	Cradle-HDD

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

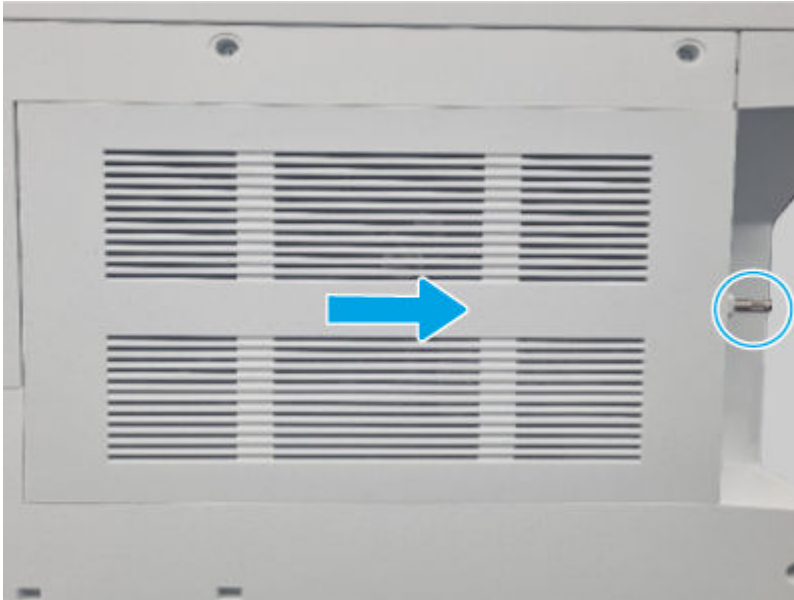
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1125 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

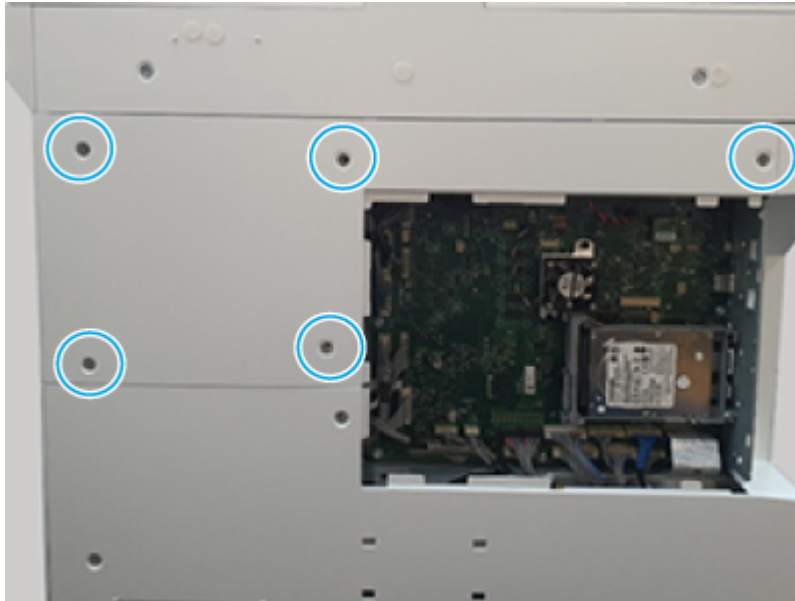
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1126 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1127 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1128 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-1129 Remove the rivets



5. Remove the hard disk

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD.

- Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the hard disk, and then remove the hard drive and cradle together (callout 2).

Figure 6-1130 Remove the HDD

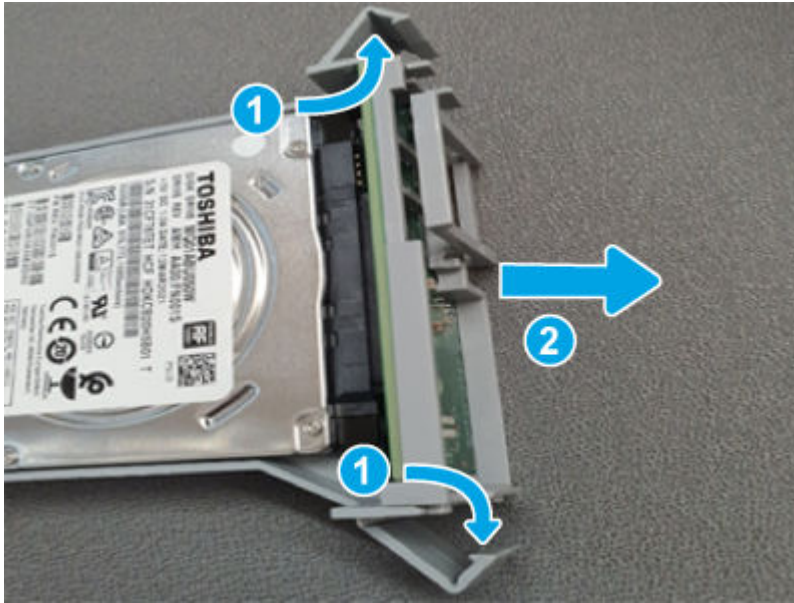


6. Remove the hard disk from the cradle

Use the following procedure to remove the HDD from the cradle.

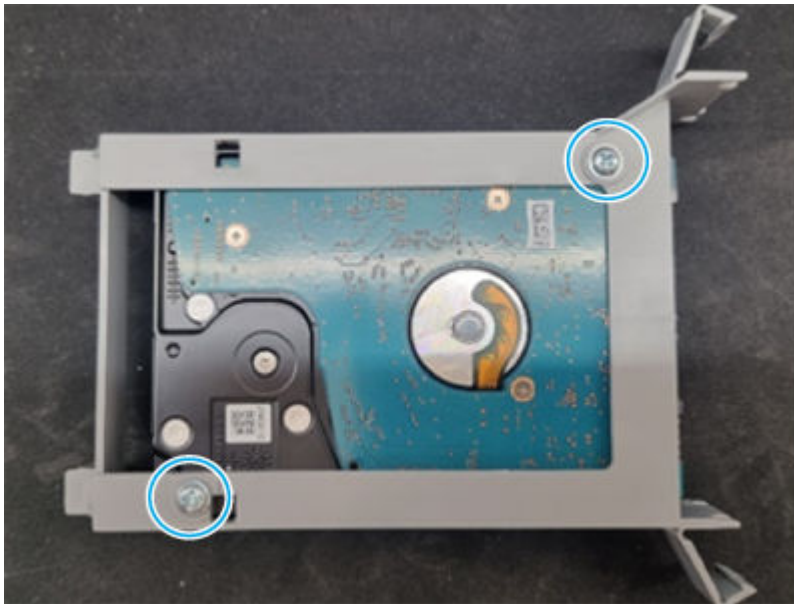
1. Release the clips on both ends of the cradle (callout 1), and then remove the riser card from the HDD (callout 2).

Figure 6-1131 Remove the riser card



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1132 Remove two screws



3. Separate the HDD from the cradle.

Figure 6-1133 Remove the cradle



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Hard disk 500GB

Learn about removing and replacing the hard disk.



[View a video of removing and replacing the hard disk drive.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-118 Part information

Part number	Part description
933853-010	HDD 500G SED

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

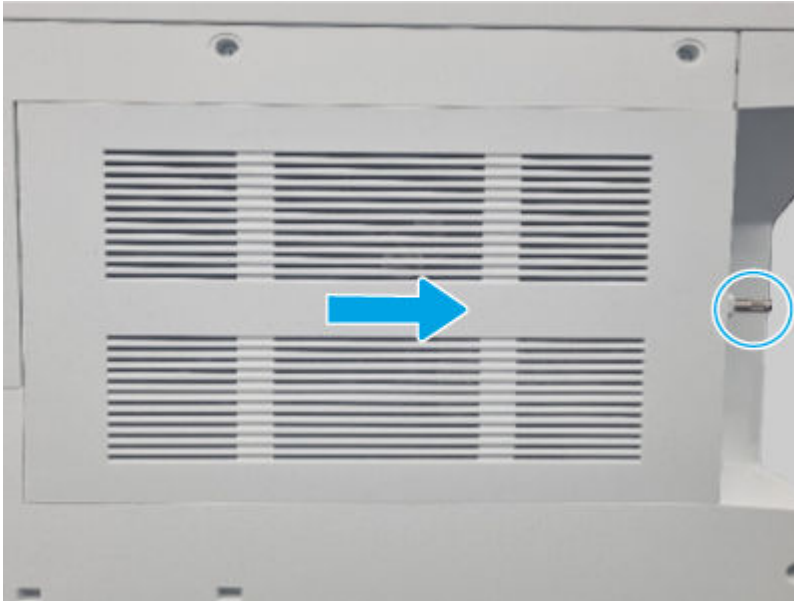
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1134 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-1135 Remove the rivets



3. Remove the hard disk

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD.

- Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the hard disk, and then remove the hard drive and cradle together (callout 2).

Figure 6-1136 Remove the HDD

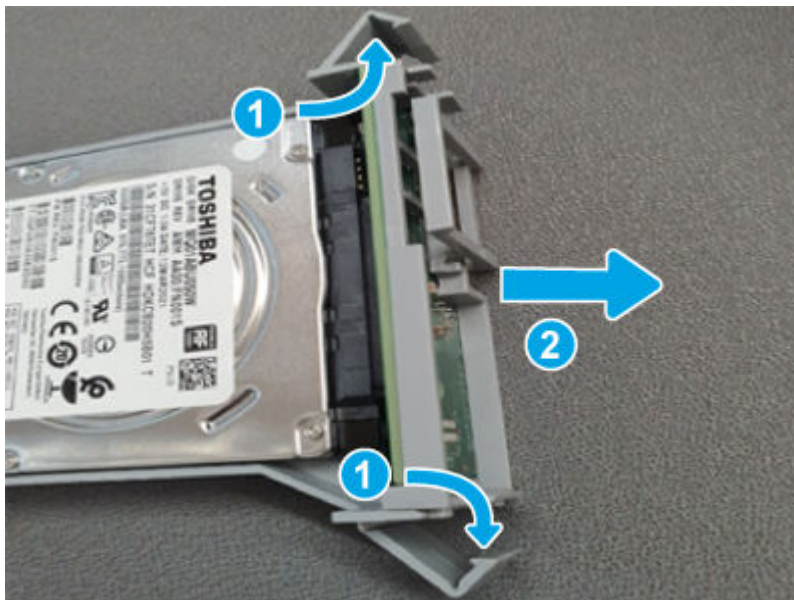


4. Remove the hard disk from the cradle

Use the following procedure to remove the HDD from the cradle.

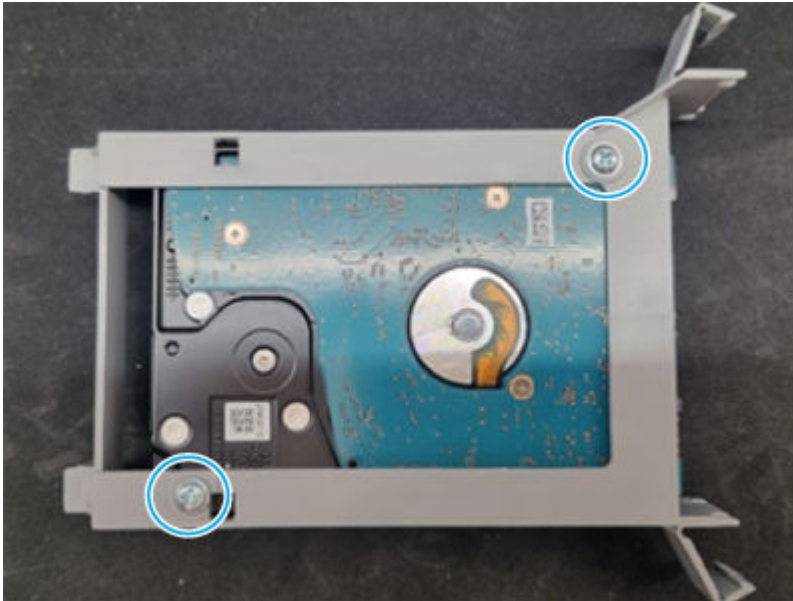
1. Release the clips on both ends of the cradle (callout 1), and then remove the riser card from the HDD (callout 2).

Figure 6-1137 Remove the riser card



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1138 Remove two screws



3. Separate the HDD from the cradle.

Figure 6-1139 Remove the cradle



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Sub PCAs

Learn about sub printed circuit assembly (PCA) parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Accelerator card (optional)

Learn about removing and replacing the accelerator card.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the accelerator card.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-119 Part information

Part number	Part description
6HN30-67001	Accelerator card

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

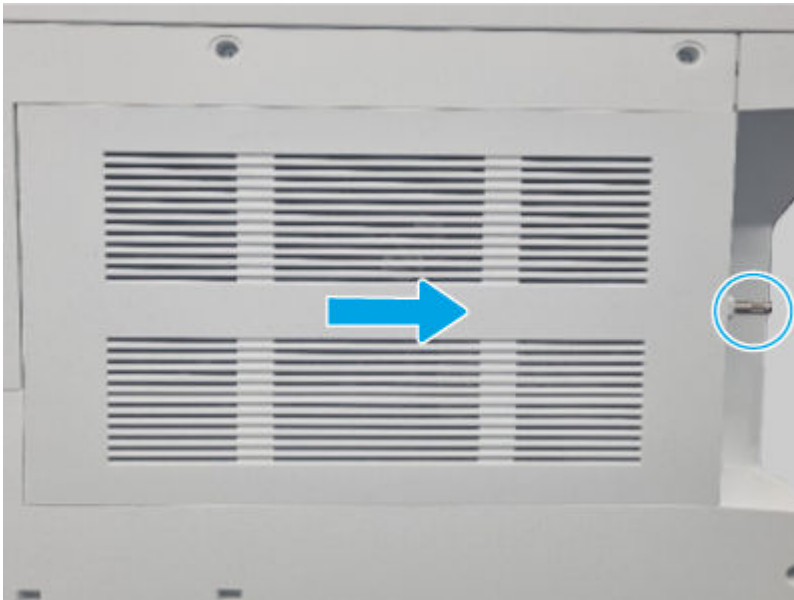
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1140 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-1141 Remove the rivets

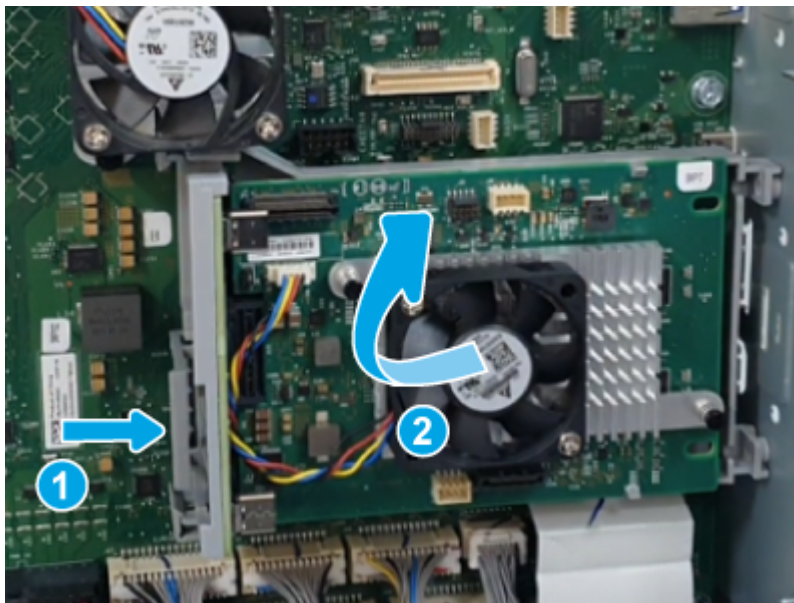


3. Remove the hard disk and accelerator card assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD and accelerator card assembly.

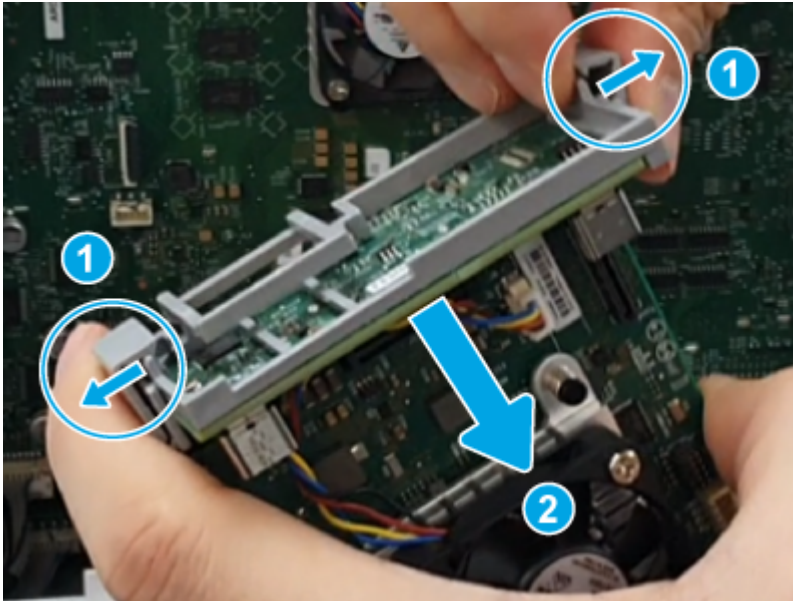
1. Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the assembly, and then remove the hard drive and accelerator card together (callout 2).

Figure 6-1142 Remove the HDD and accelerator card assembly



2. Release two clips (callout 1), and then separate the accelerator card from the riser card to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-1143 Remove the accelerator card



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: USB hub PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the USB hub PCA.



[View a video of removing and replacing the USB hub PCA.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-120 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ04-60001	USB hub PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

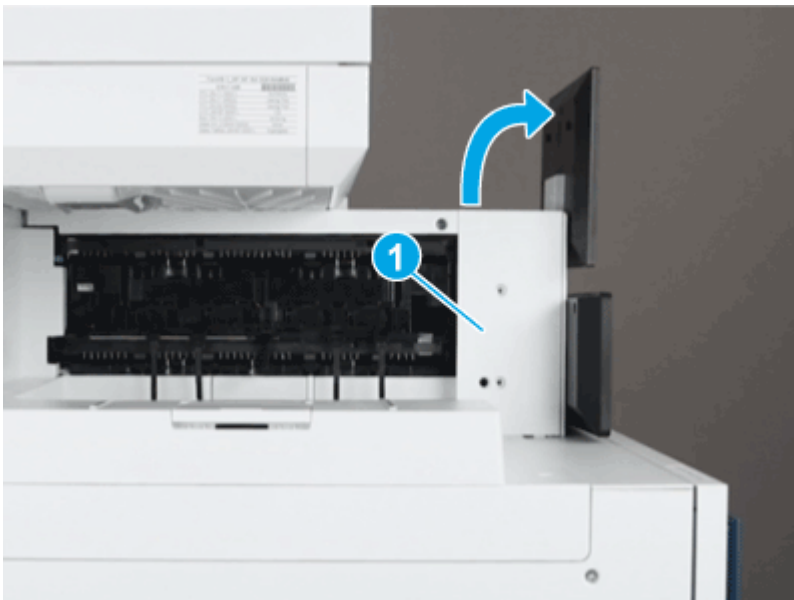
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1144 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-1145 Remove the cover



2. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.



NOTE: The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-1146 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1147 Remove one screw



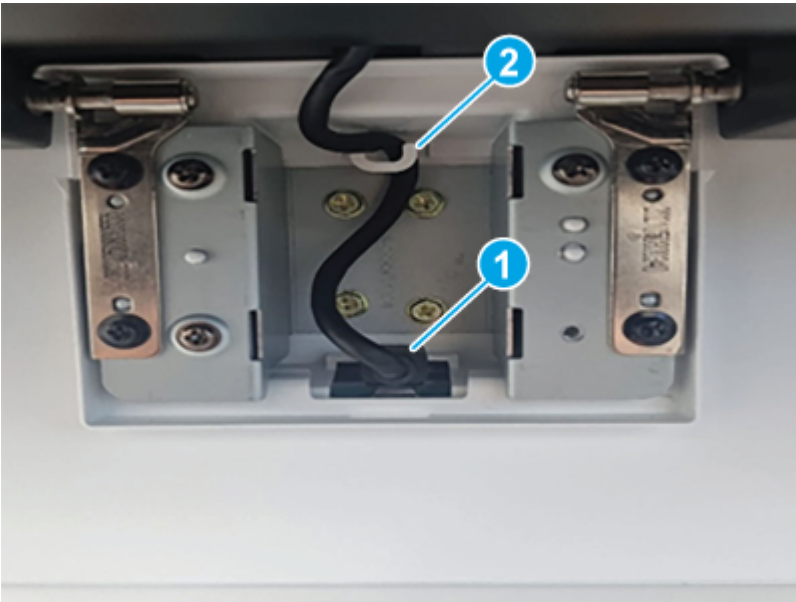
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-1148 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-1149 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1150 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-1151 Remove the keyboard



3. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

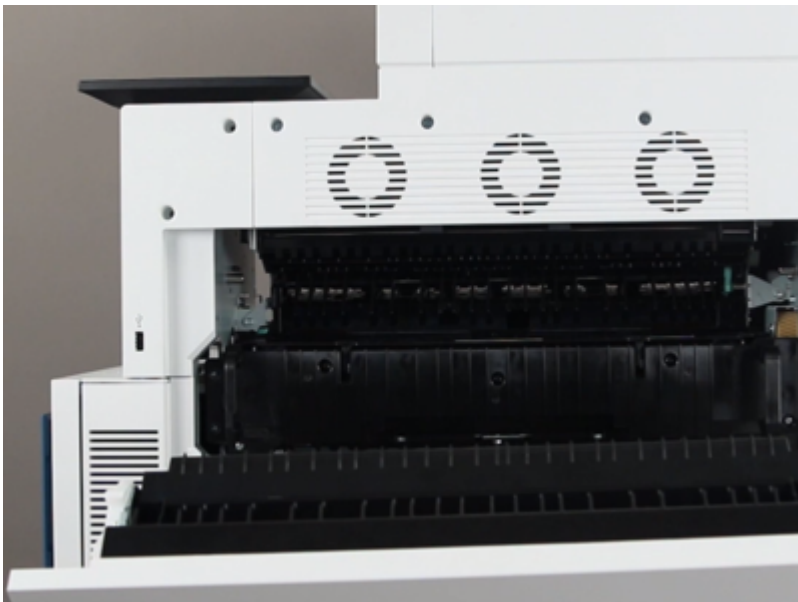
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1152 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-1153 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

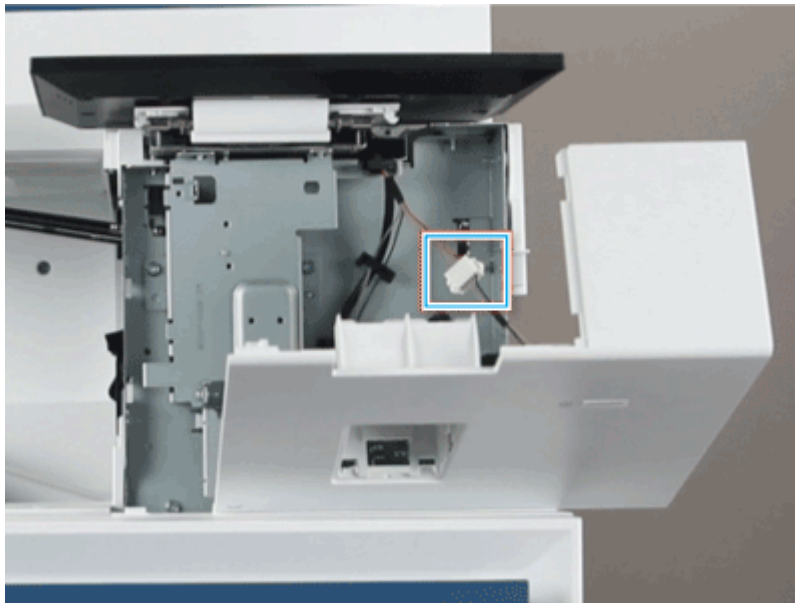
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-1154 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-1155 Remove the cover assembly

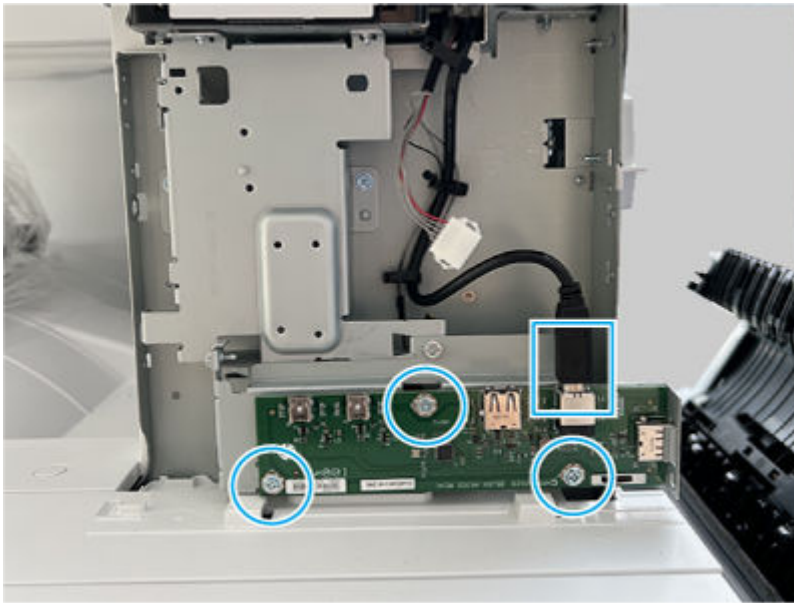


4. Remove the USB hub PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the USB hub PCA.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the USB hub PCA.

Figure 6-1156 Remove the PCA



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Island of data (IOD)

Learn about removing and replacing the IOD.



[View a video of removing and replacing the IOD.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-121 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ06-60001	Island of Data

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

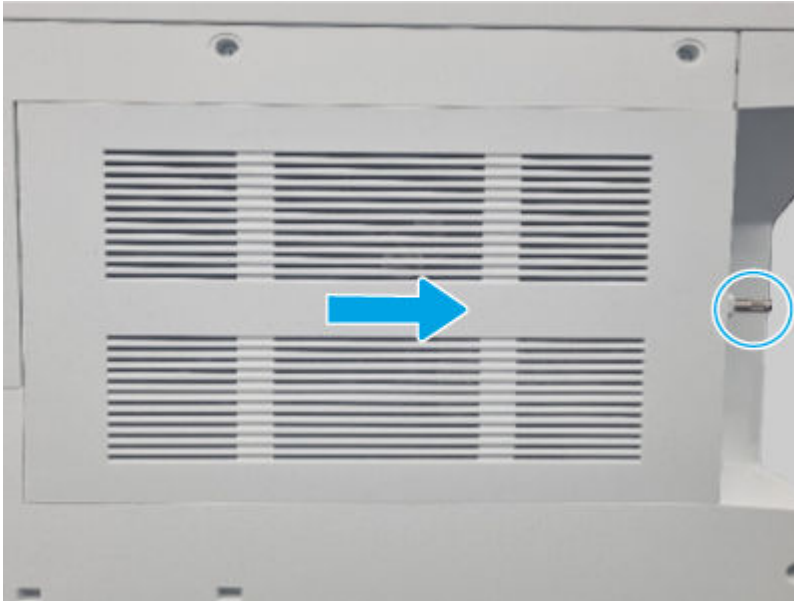
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1157 Remove the cover

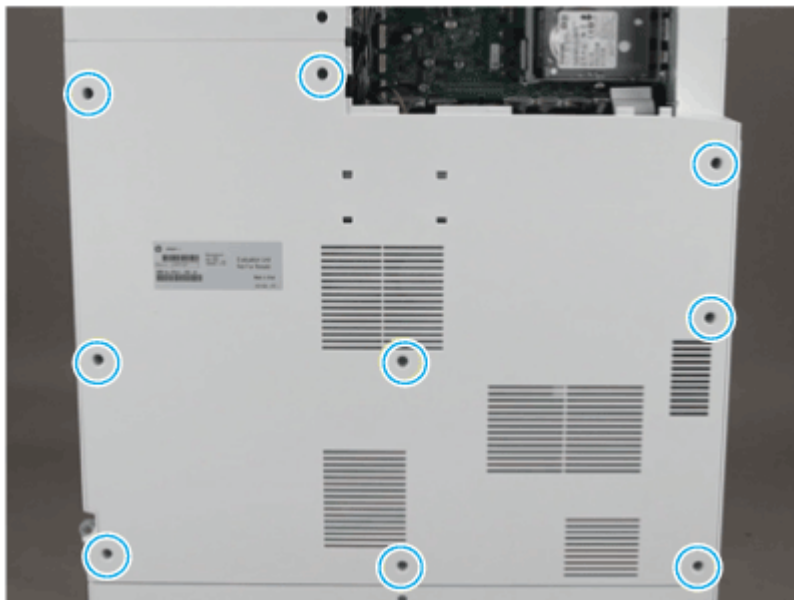


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1158 Remove the cover

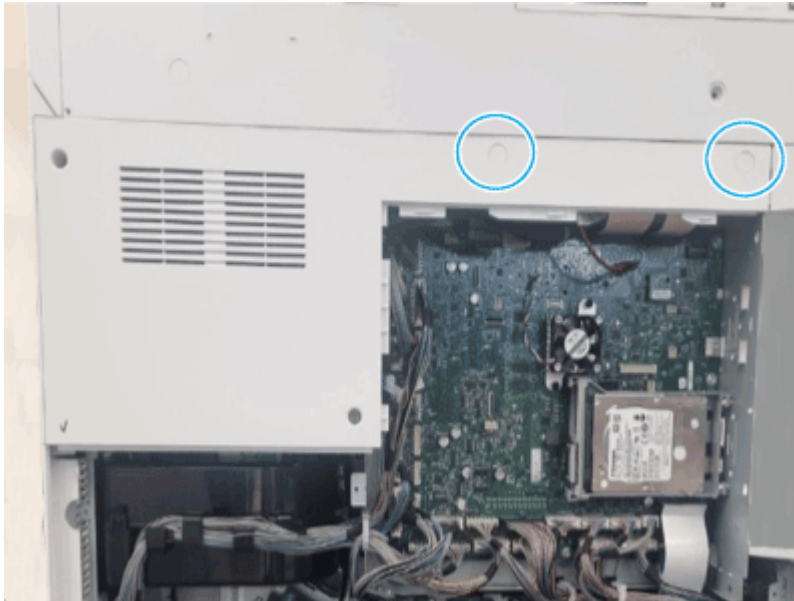


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

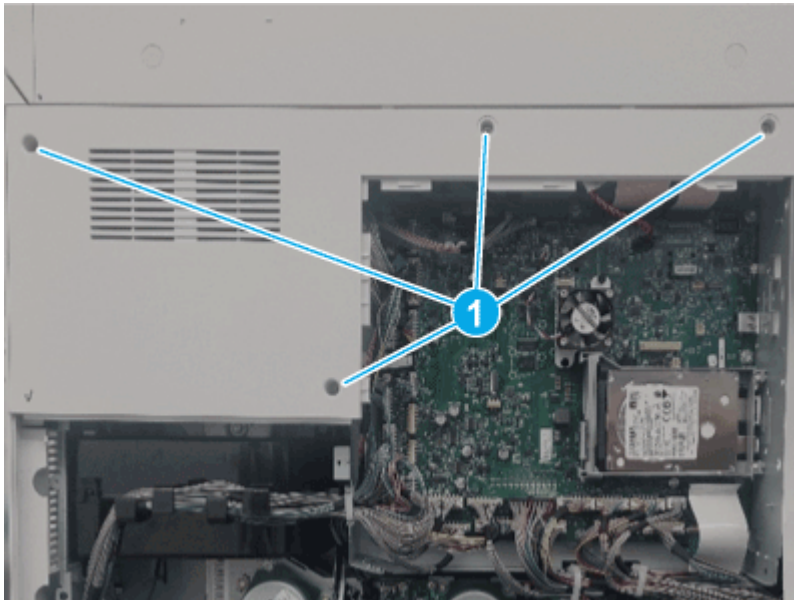
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1159 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1160 Remove the cover

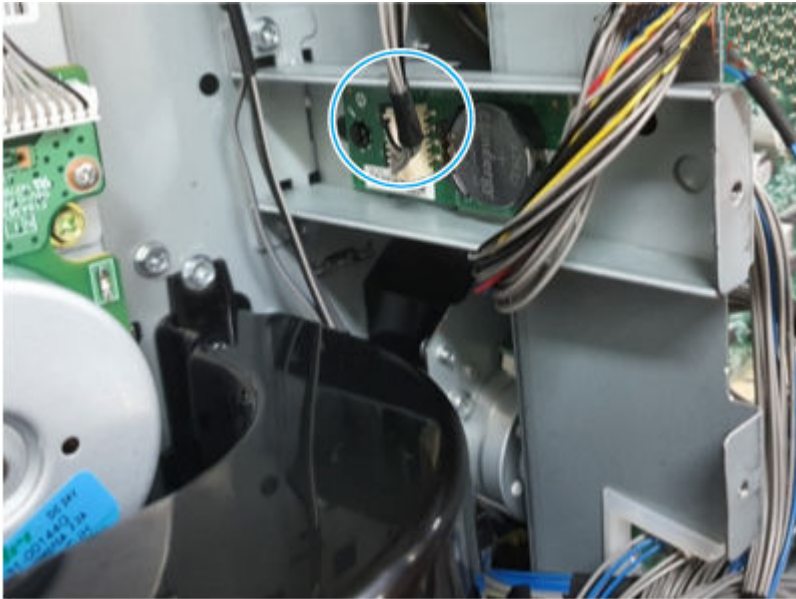


4. Remove the IOD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the IOD.

1. Disconnect one connector.

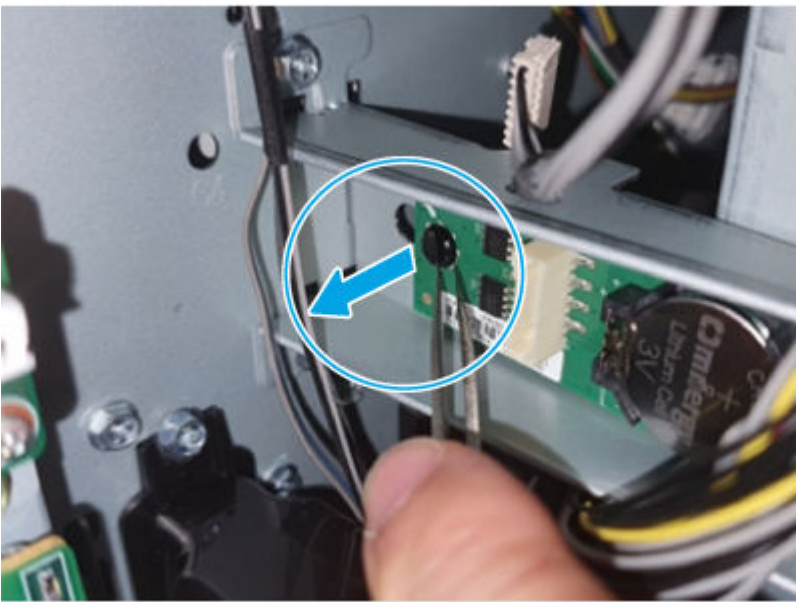
Figure 6-1161 Disconnect one connector



2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one rivet, and then remove the island of data.

CAUTION: Be careful when handling the rivet. Do not drop it into the printer engine.

Figure 6-1162 Remove the PCA





5. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Echo PCA and rivet

Learn about removing and replacing the echo PCA.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the echo PCA.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-122 Part information

Part number	Part description
T3U64-60001	Echo PCA
6ER04-40034	Rivet-Echo PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

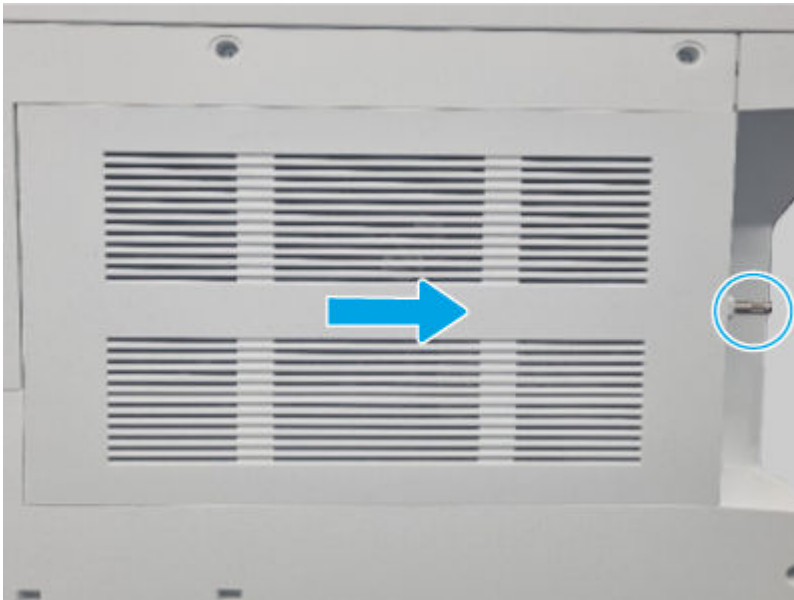
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1163 Remove the cover

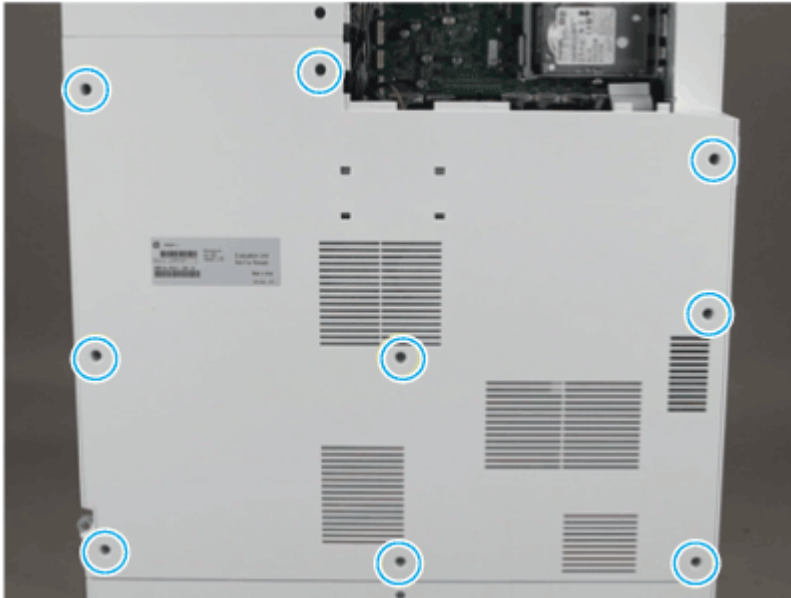


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1164 Remove the cover

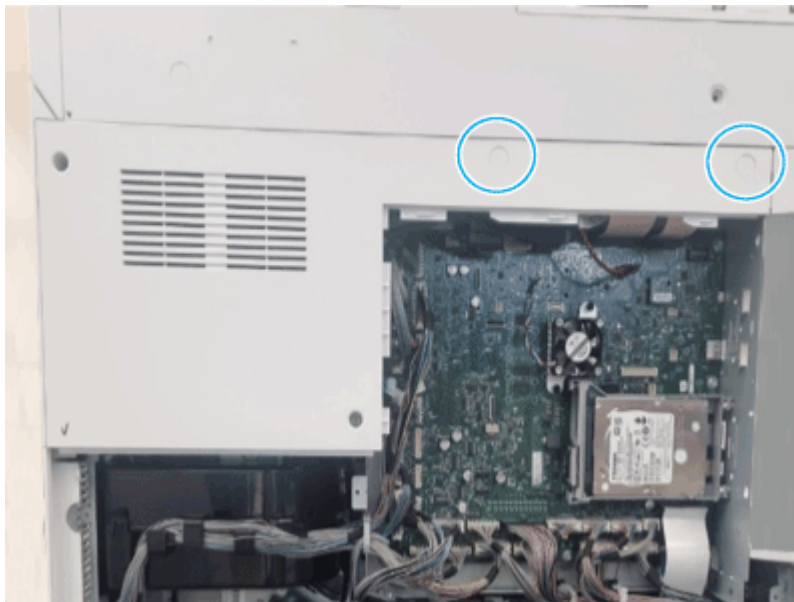


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

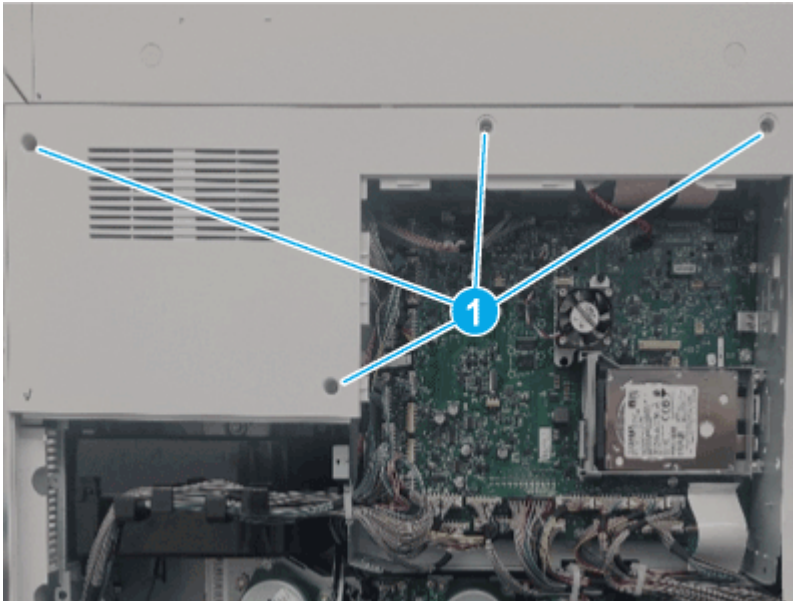
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1165 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1166 Remove the cover

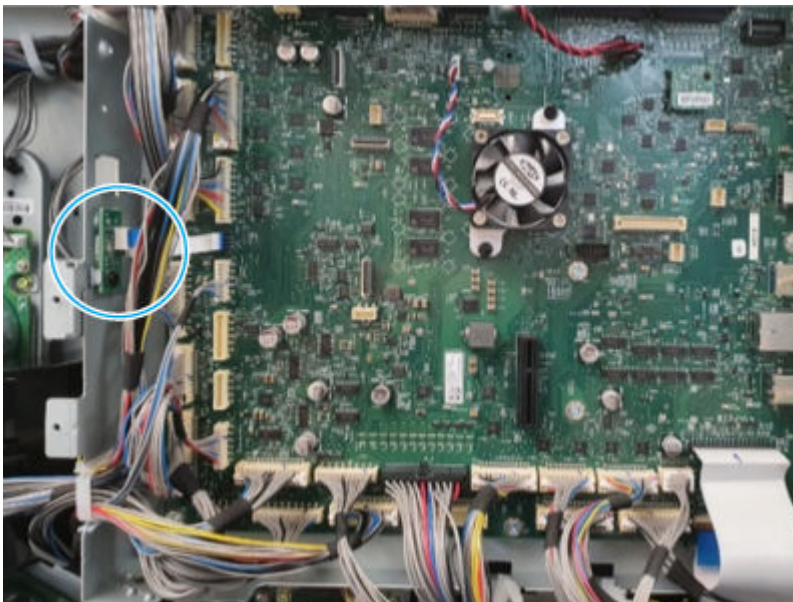


4. Remove the echo PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the echo PCA.

1. Disconnect one connector.

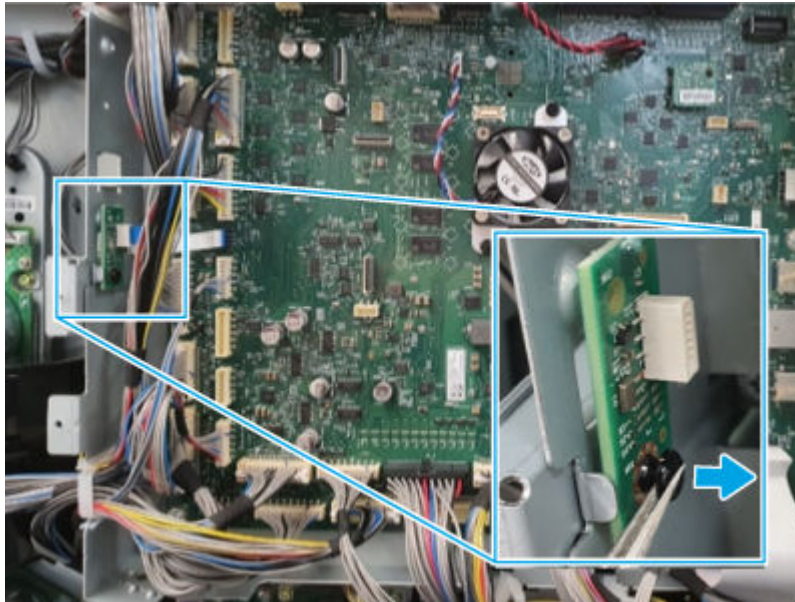
Figure 6-1167 Disconnect one connector



2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one rivet, and then remove the echo PCA.

CAUTION: Be careful when handling the rivet. Do not drop it into the printer engine.

Figure 6-1168 Remove the PCA



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Power key PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the power key PCA.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the power key PCA.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-123 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ33-60007	Power key PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1169 Remove two screws




2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-1170 Remove the cover



2. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-1171 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1172 Remove one screw



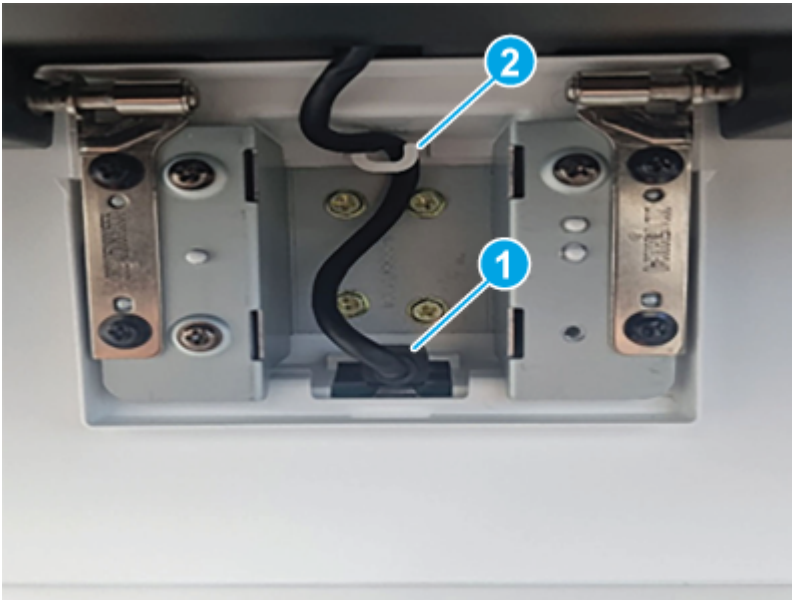
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-1173 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-1174 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1175 Remove four screws




6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-1176 Remove the keyboard



3. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** If an optional keyboard is installed, remove it now.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1177 Remove two screws



2. Open the right door.

Figure 6-1178 Open the right door



3. Move the control panel out of the way, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

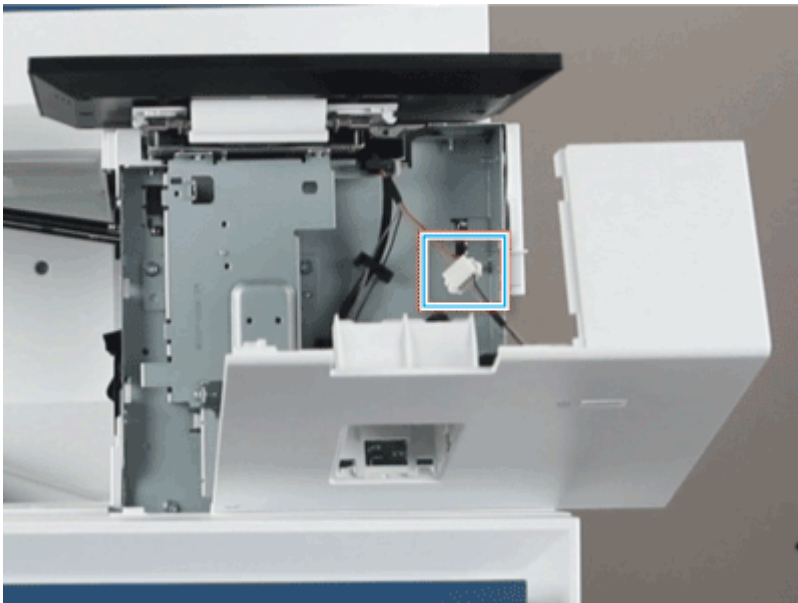
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-1179 Slide the cover



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-1180 Remove the cover assembly

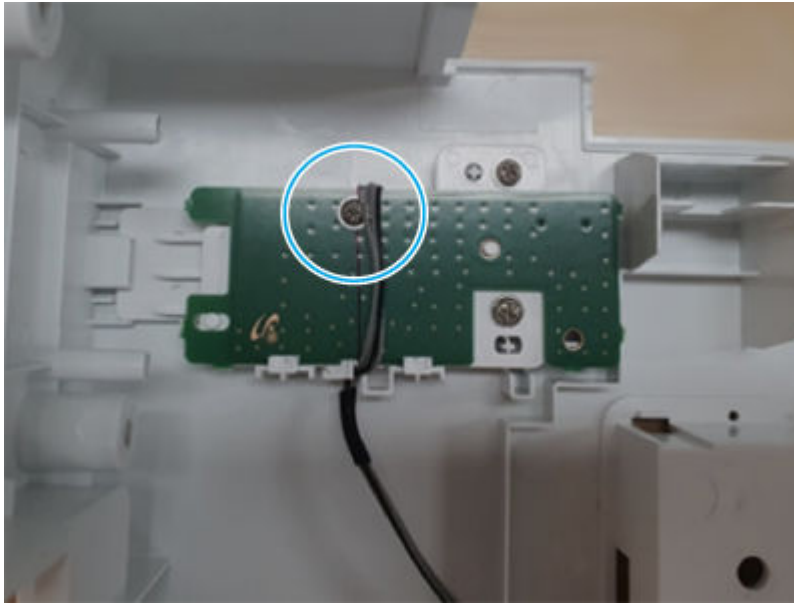


4. Remove the power key PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the power key PCA.

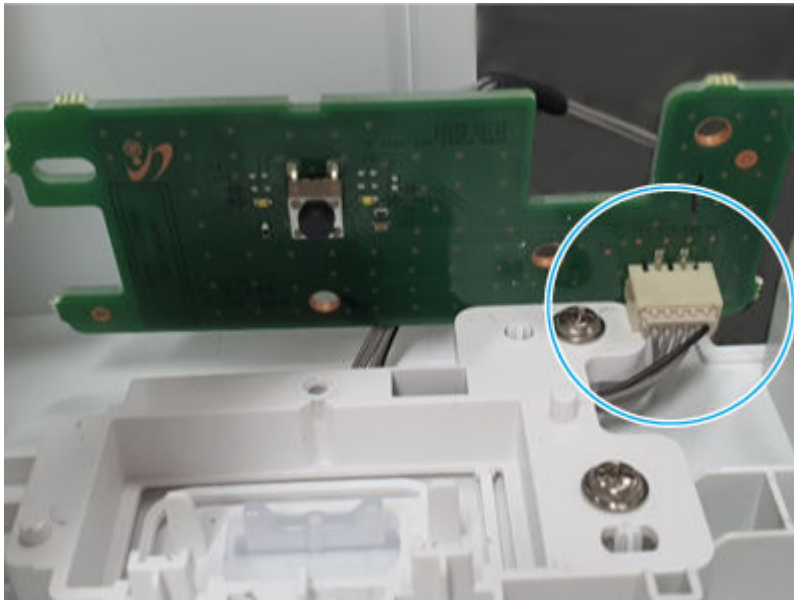
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1181 Remove one screw



2. Lift the PCA up, disconnect one connector, and then remove the power key PCA.


Figure 6-1182 Remove the PCA



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Keyboard (Flow models)

Learn about removing and replacing the keyboard.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the keyboard.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-124 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01742A	Keyboard Assy-US English
JC93-01743A	Keyboard Assy-UK English

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

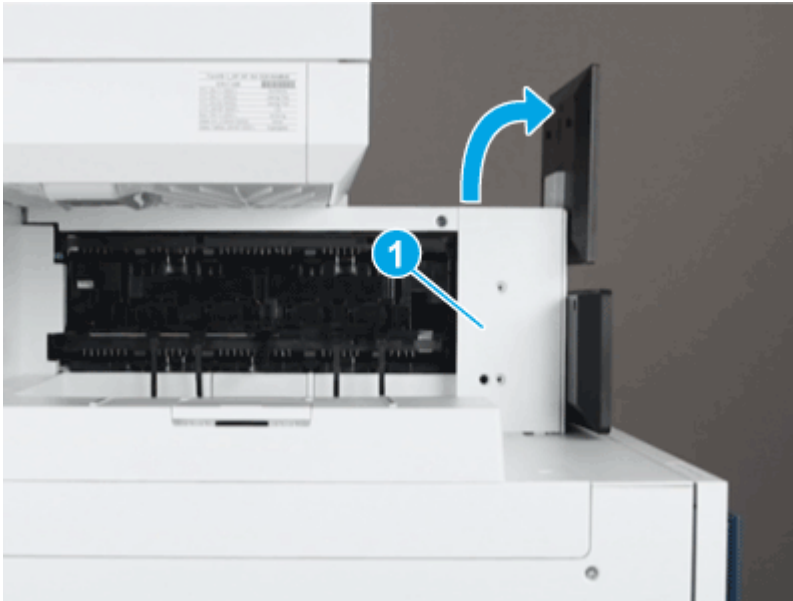
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1183 Remove two screws



2. Rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-1184 Remove the cover



2. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.



NOTE: The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-1185 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1186 Remove one screw



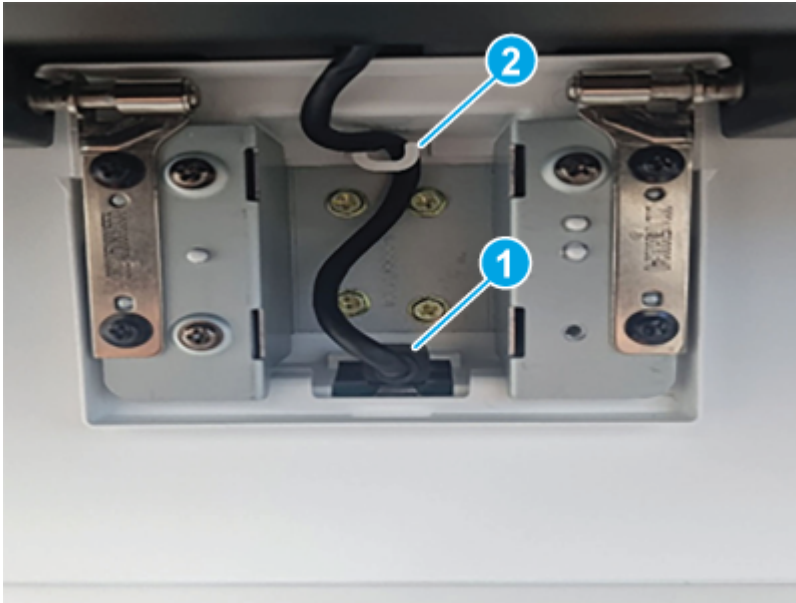
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-1187 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-1188 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1189 Remove four screws



6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-1190 Remove the keyboard



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fax card (optional)

Learn about removing and replacing the fax card.



[View a video of removing and replacing the fax card.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.



NOTE: Fax card part numbers can vary by country/region. Check with your genuine HP parts supplier if you are unsure of the correct fax card part number for your country/region.

Table 6-125 Part information

Part number	Part description
7ZA08-67001	Single Fax 800 Accessory
5QK14-67001	Dual Fax 810 Accessory

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

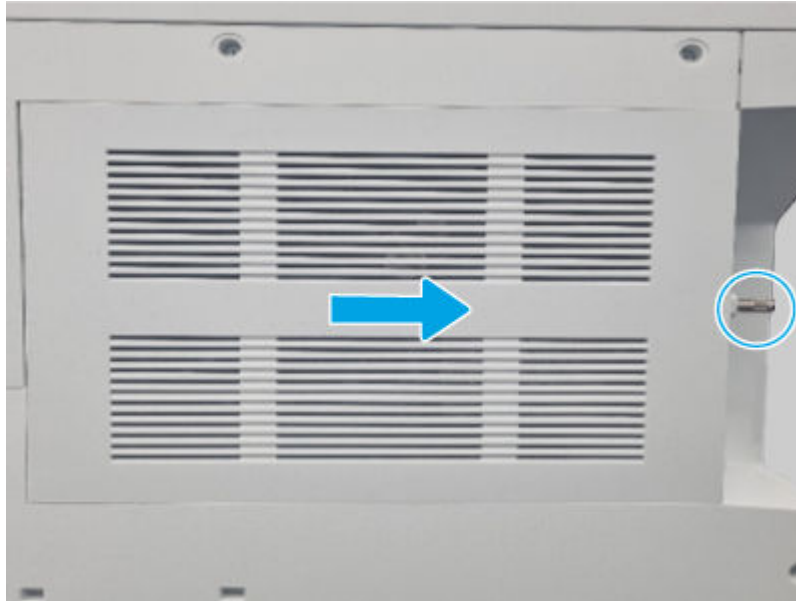
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1191 Remove the cover

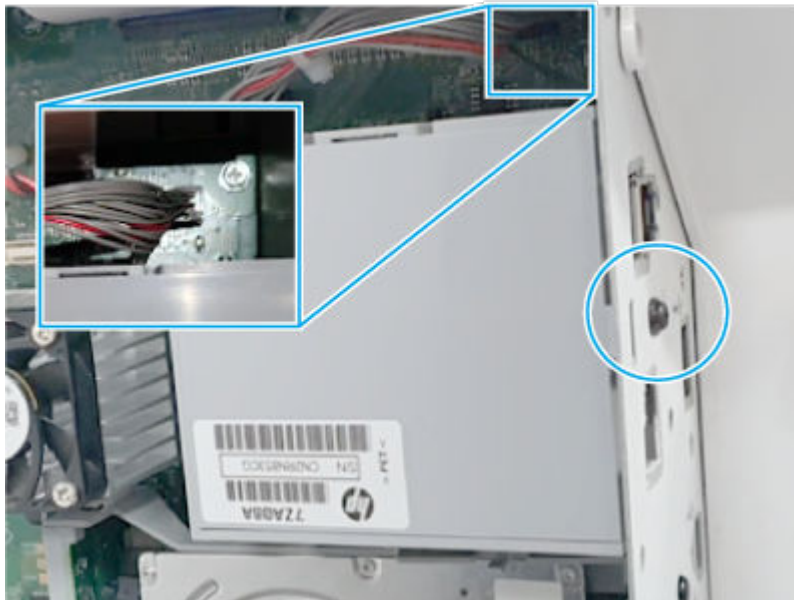


2. Remove the fax card assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fax card.

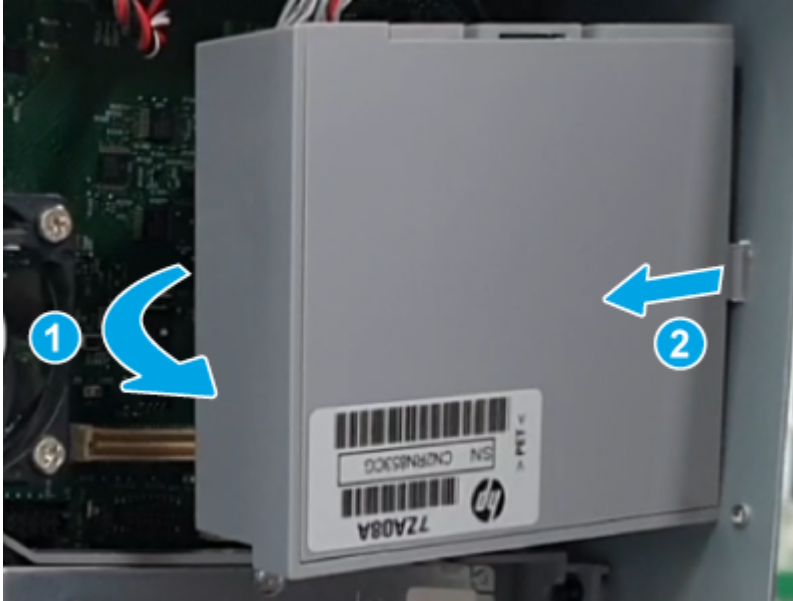
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-1192 Release the fax card



2. Slightly rotate the fax card away from the formatter PCA (callout 1), and then slide it as shown (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-1193 Remove the fax card



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Power supply PCAs

Learn about power supply printed circuit assembly (PCA) parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: High-voltage power supply (HVPS)

Learn about removing and replacing the HVPS.



[View a video of removing and replacing the HVPS.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-126 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60001	High-Voltage Power Supply (HVPS)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

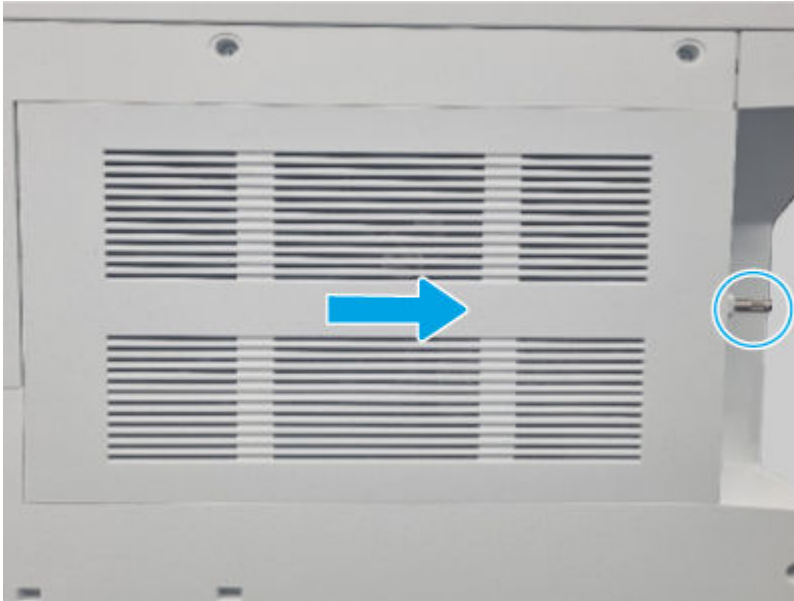
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1194 Remove the cover

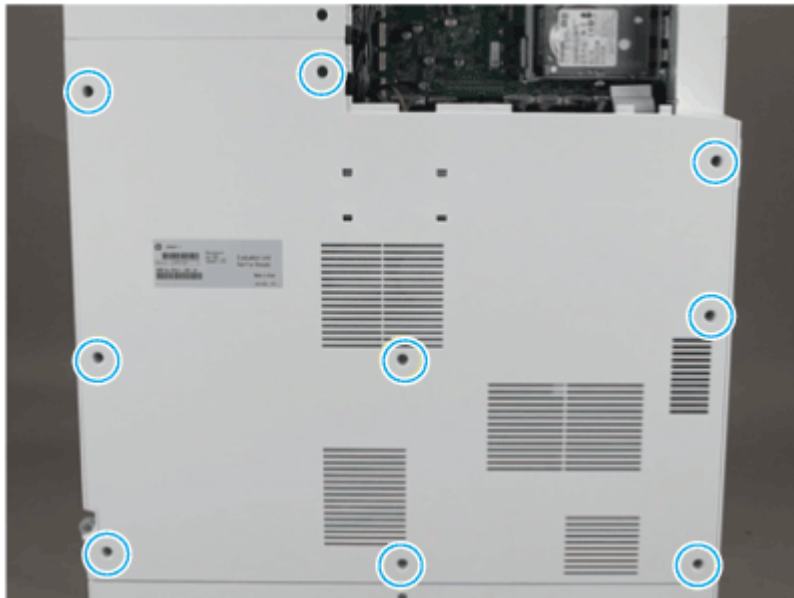


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1195 Remove the cover

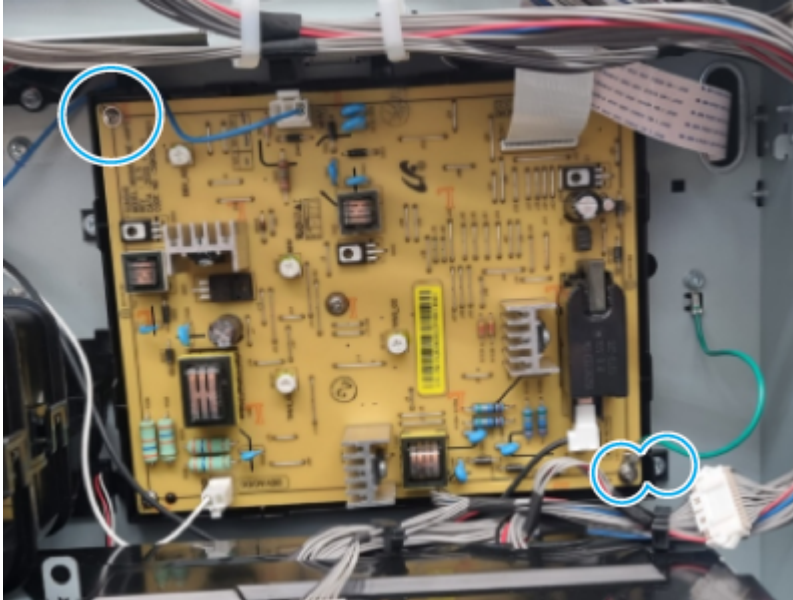


3. Remove the HVPS

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HVPS.

- Disconnect all of the connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the HVPS.


Figure 6-1196 Remove the HVPS



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Learn about removing and replacing the LVPS.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the LVPS.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-127 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC44-00149C	Low-Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 110V
JC44-00150C	Low-Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

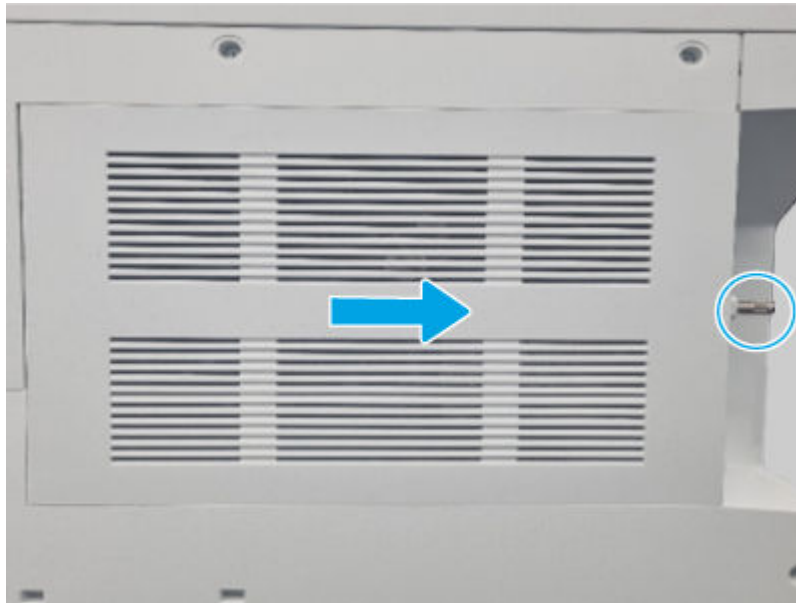
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1197 Remove the cover

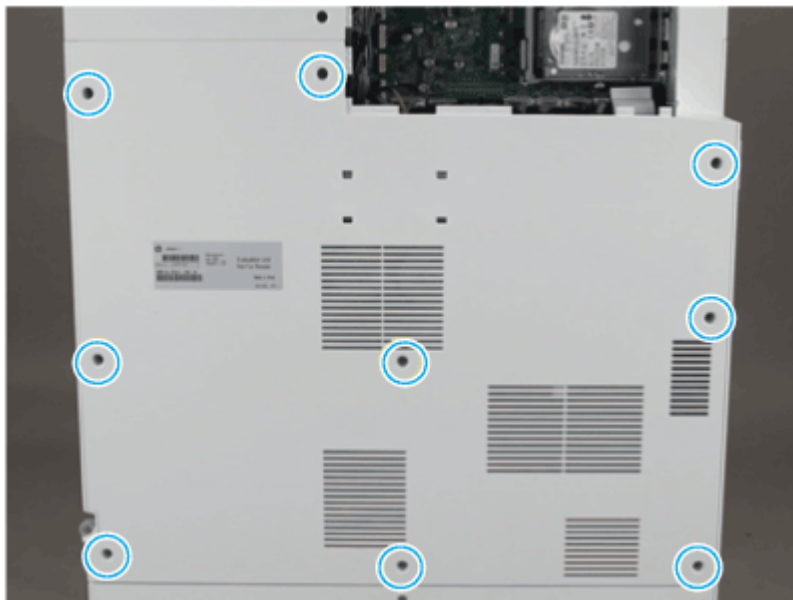


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1198 Remove the cover



3. Remove the LVPS FDB fan assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LVPS FDB fan assembly.

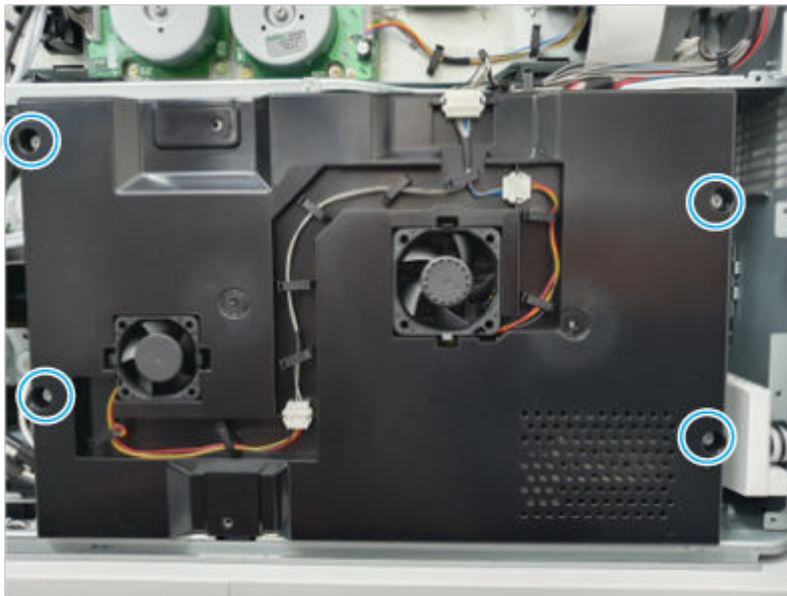
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1199 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1200 Remove four screws



3. Release one tab, and then remove the LVP FDB fan assembly.

Figure 6-1201 Remove the LVP FDB fan assembly

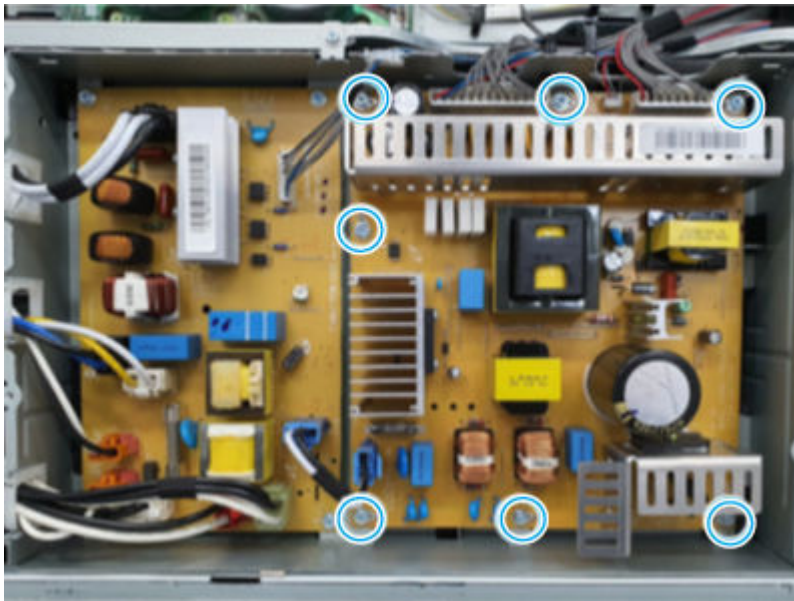


4. Remove the LVPS

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LVPS.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect all of the connectors on the LVPS.
 - Remove seven screws.
 - Remove the LVPS.

Figure 6-1202 Remove the PCA



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser-drive board (FDB)

Learn about removing and replacing the FDB.



[View a video of removing and replacing the FDB.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-128 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC44-00235C	Fuser-drive board (FDB), 110V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

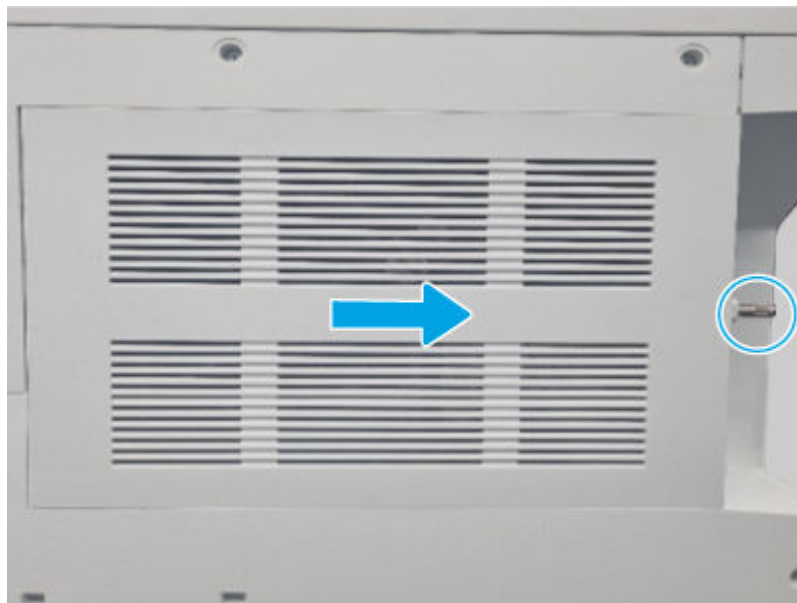
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1203 Remove the cover

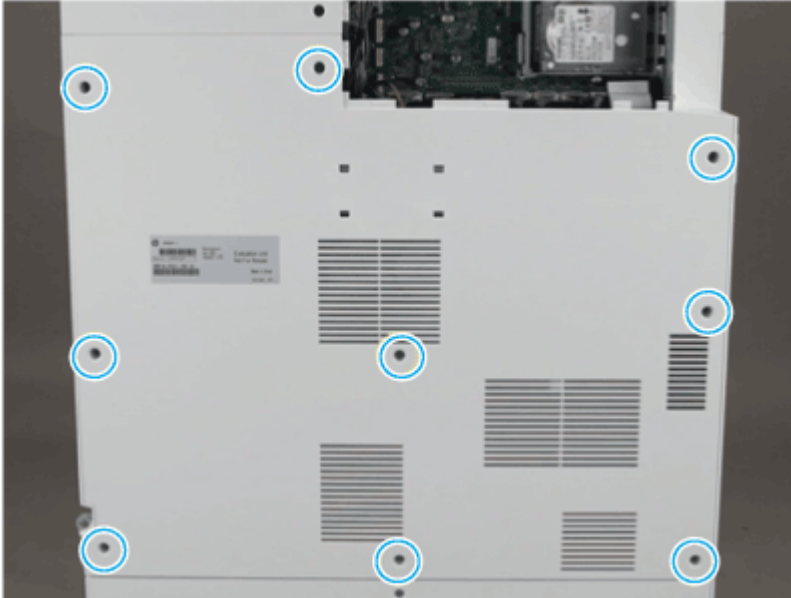


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1204 Remove the cover

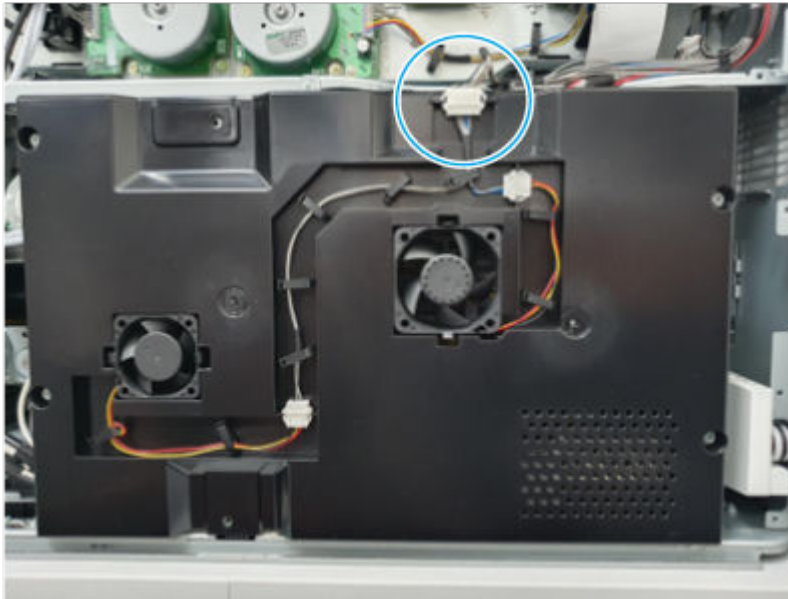


3. Remove the LVPS FDB fan assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LVPS FDB fan assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1205 Disconnect one connector



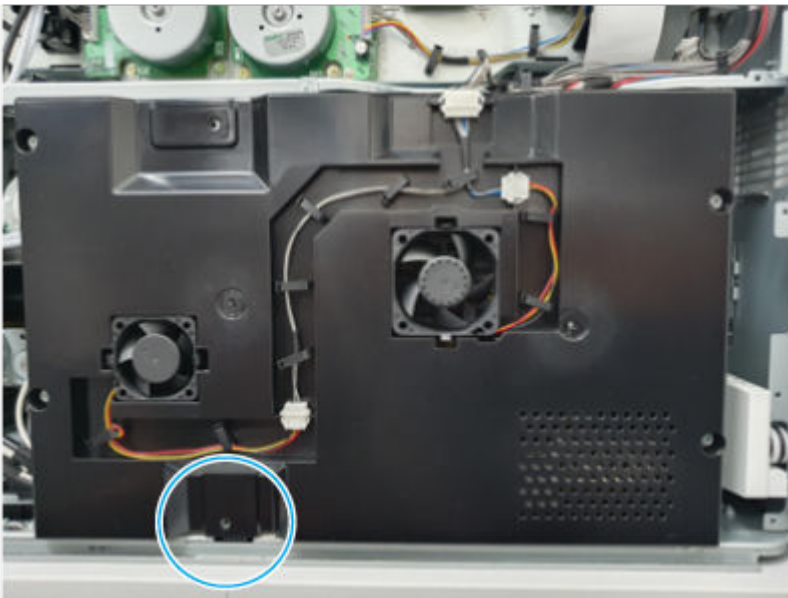
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1206 Remove four screws



3. Release one tab, and then remove the LVP FDB fan assembly.

Figure 6-1207 Remove the LVP FDB fan assembly



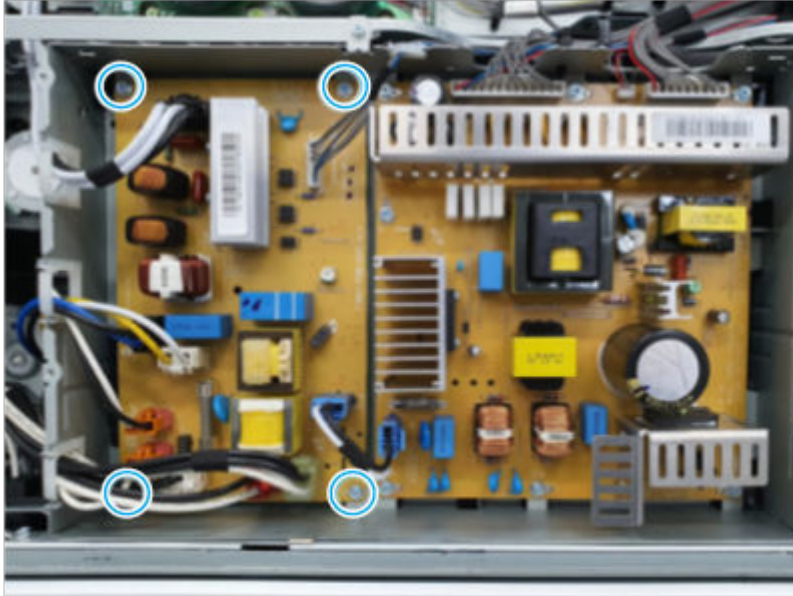
4. Remove the FDB

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the FDB.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect all of the connectors and wire harness retainers on the FDB.
 - Remove four screws.

- Remove the FDB.


Figure 6-1208 Remove the PCA



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Integrated scanner asset (ISA)

Learn about ISA parts removal and replacement.

Whole unit

You will learn more about the ISA whole unit replacement.

300-Sheet ISA for z bundle

Learn about ISA removal and replacement.


Removal and replacement: Integrated scanner for Flow z bundle (5QK37A for Flex-build)

Learn about removing and replacing the ISA.

 [View a video of installing the ISA.](#)

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes


Service level: Medium

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-129 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK37-67001	HP LaserJet 300ipm 300-sheet Flow DADF scanner (z bundle)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

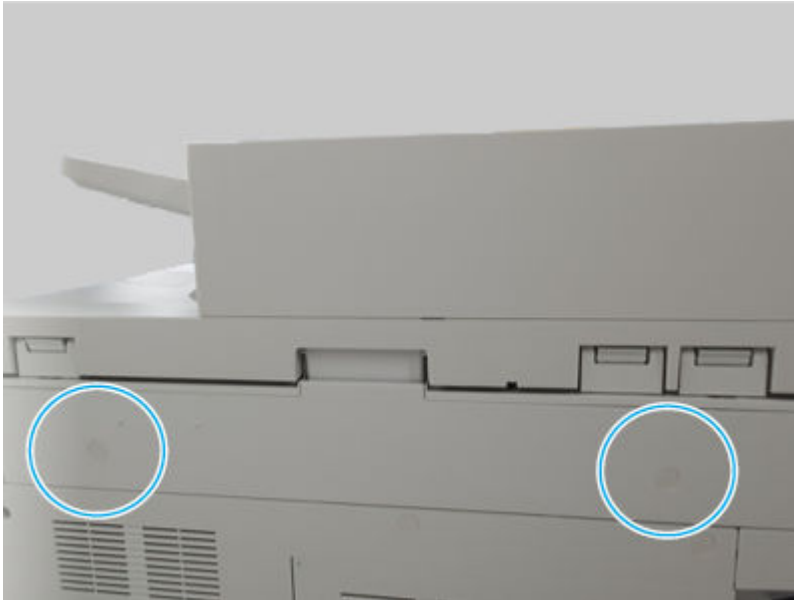
Use the flatbed glass to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

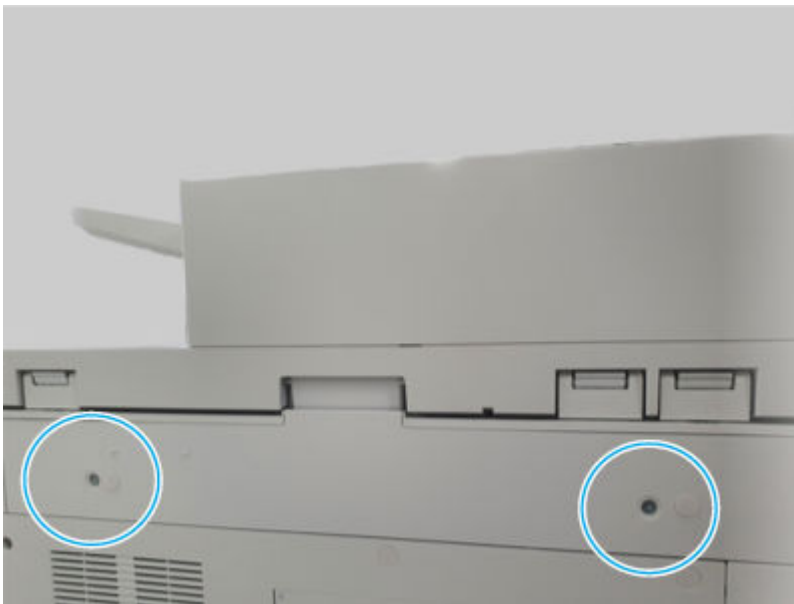
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1209 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1210 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the ISA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the ISA.

1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


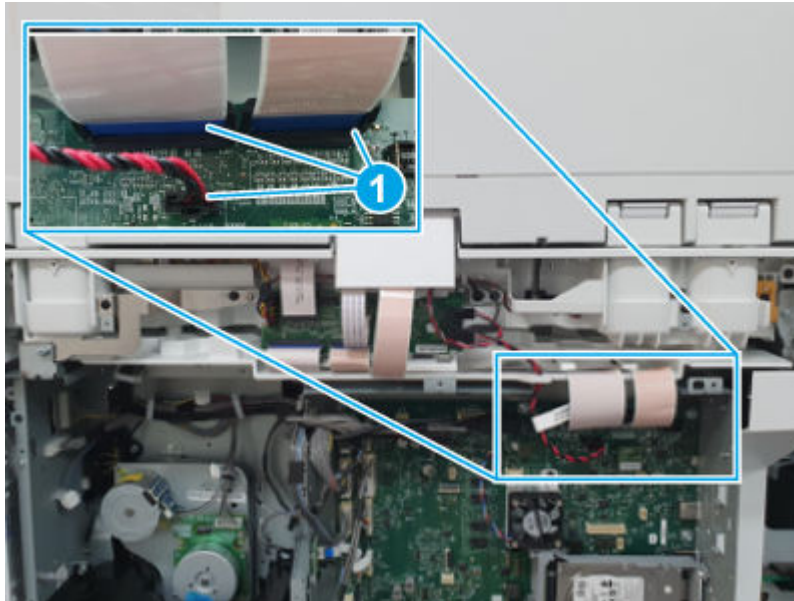
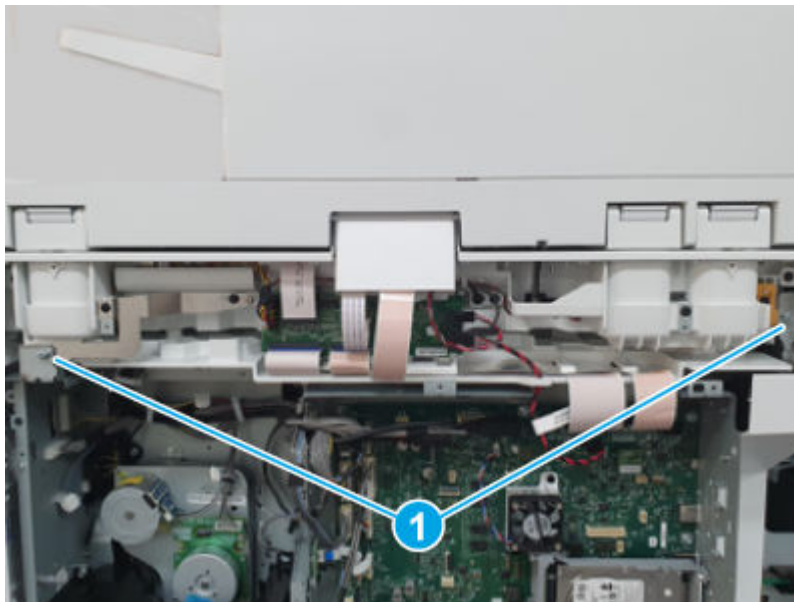
 **NOTE:** For the zero-force insertion (ZIF) flat-flexible cable (FFC) connectors, raise the locking clip to release the cable.

Figure 6-1211 Disconnect three connectors



2. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1212 Remove two screws



3. Slide the ISA towards the front of the printer until it stops to release it.


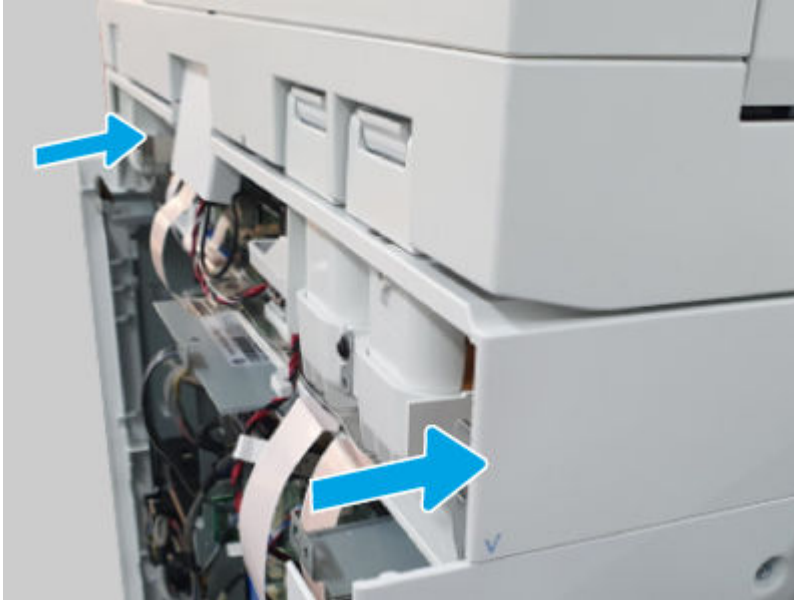
 **NOTE:** Sliding the ISA might require considerable force to release the mounting locks.

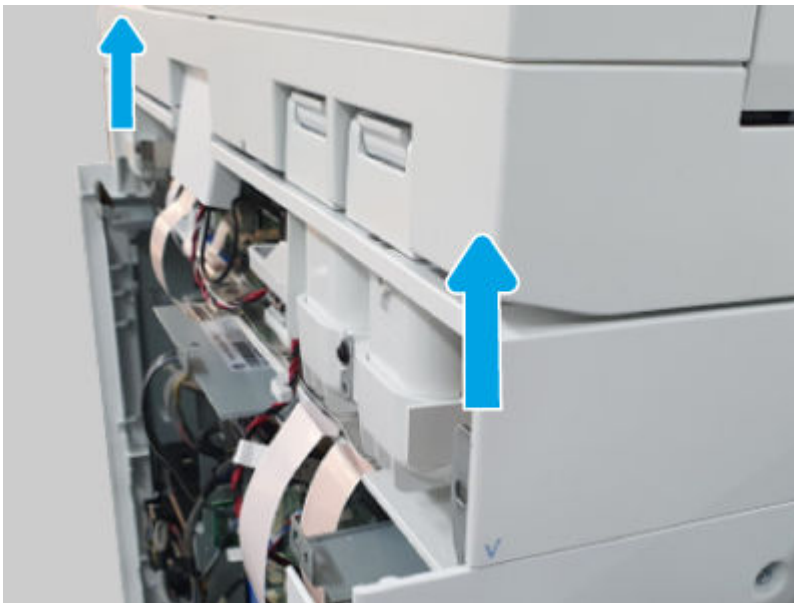
Figure 6-1213 Slide the ISA



4. Lift the ISA up and off of the printer to remove it.

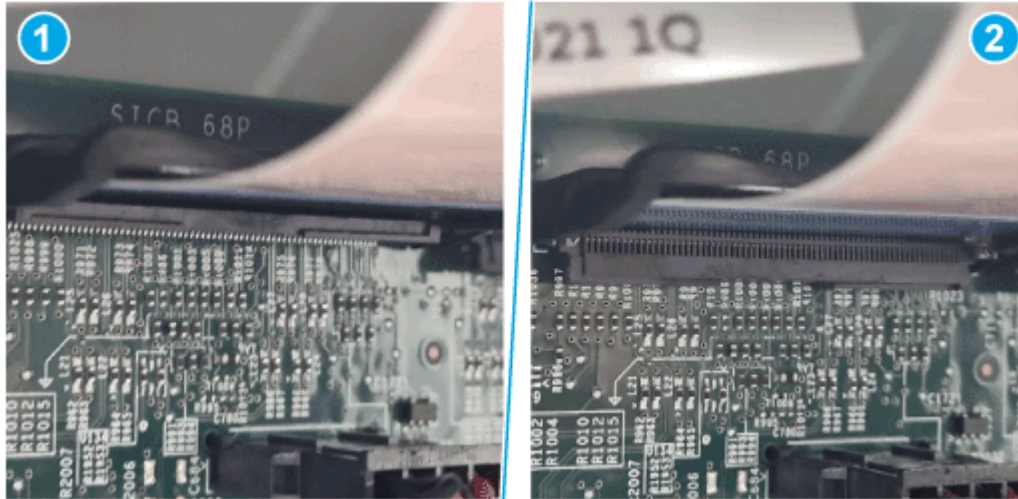
⚠ **CAUTION:** The ISA is heavy. Always use safe lifting practices. HP recommends more than one person lift the ISA.

Figure 6-1214 Remove the ISA



5. When reinstalling the FFCs into the connectors, make sure to push down on the locking clip so that the connector firmly grasps the cable film.
 - **Callout 1:** Unlocked
 - **Callout 2:** Locked

Figure 6-1215 Lock the FFC connector clip



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

200-Sheet ISA for dn bundle

Learn about ISA removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Integrated scanner for dn bundle (5QK35A for Flex-build)

Learn about removing and replacing the ISA.



[View a video of installing the ISA.](#)

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium



NOTE: This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-130 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK35-67001	HP LaserJet 180ipm 200-sheet DADF scanner (dn bundle)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

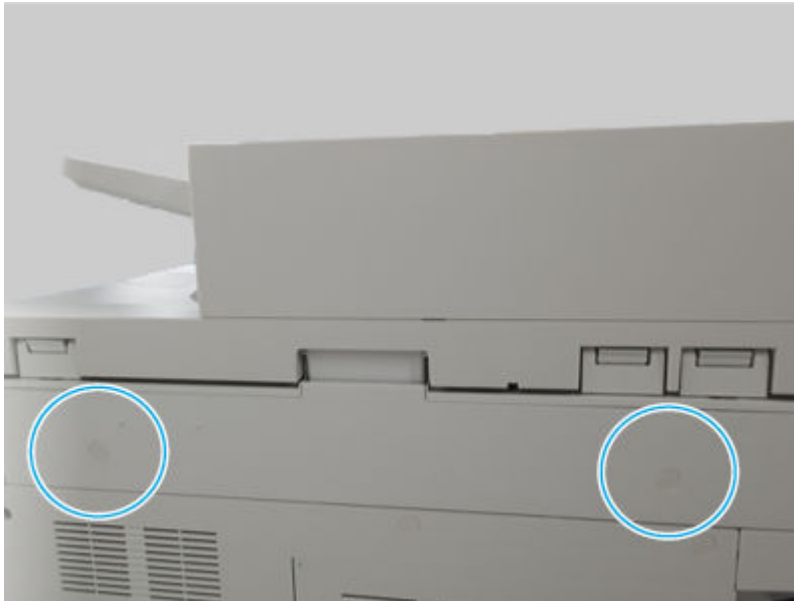
Use the flatbed glass to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

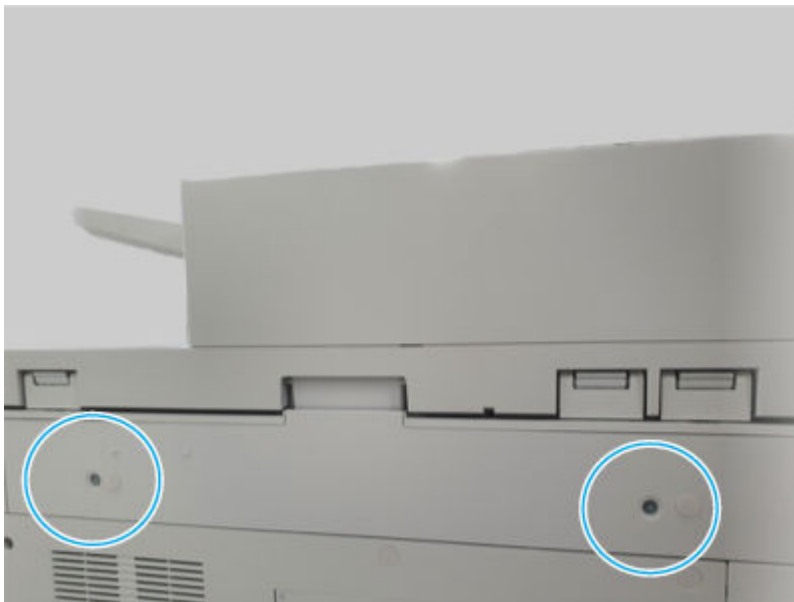
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1216 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1217 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the ISA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the ISA.

1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


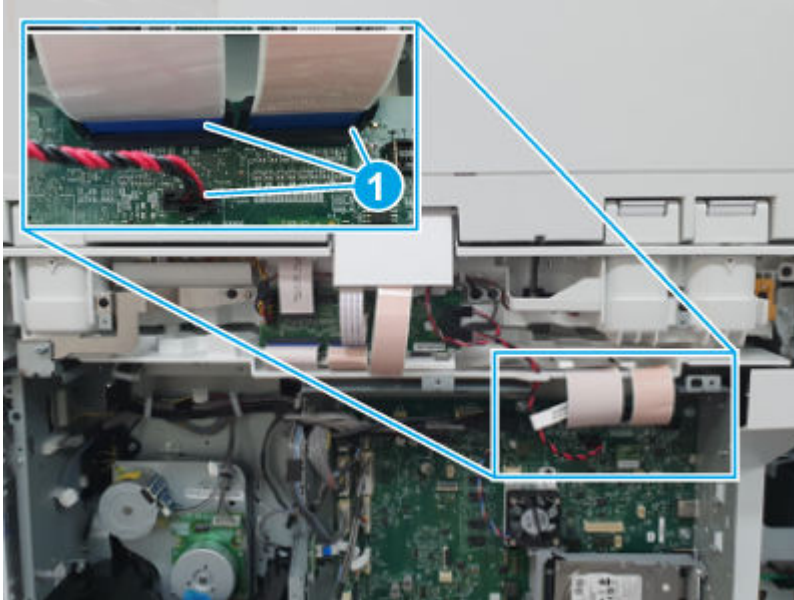
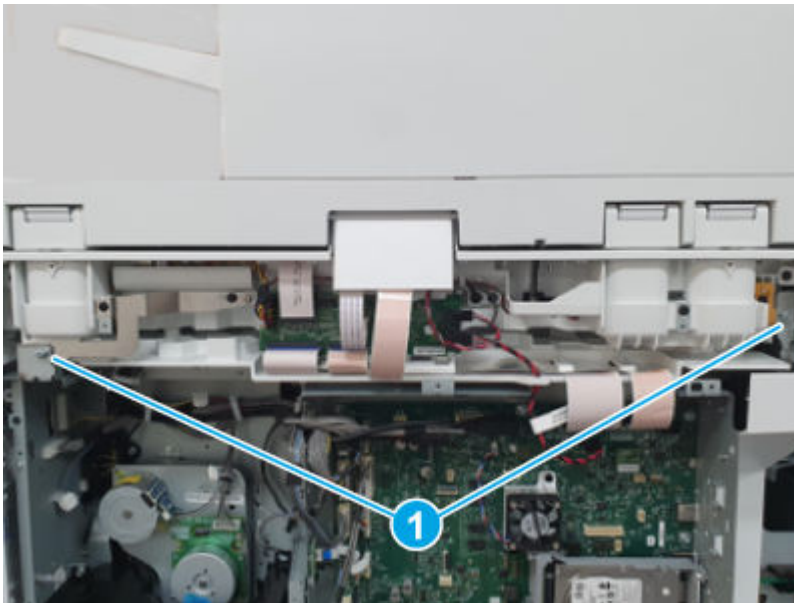
 **NOTE:** For the zero-force insertion (ZIF) flat-flexible cable (FFC) connectors, raise the locking clip to release the cable.

Figure 6-1218 Disconnect three connectors



2. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1219 Remove two screws

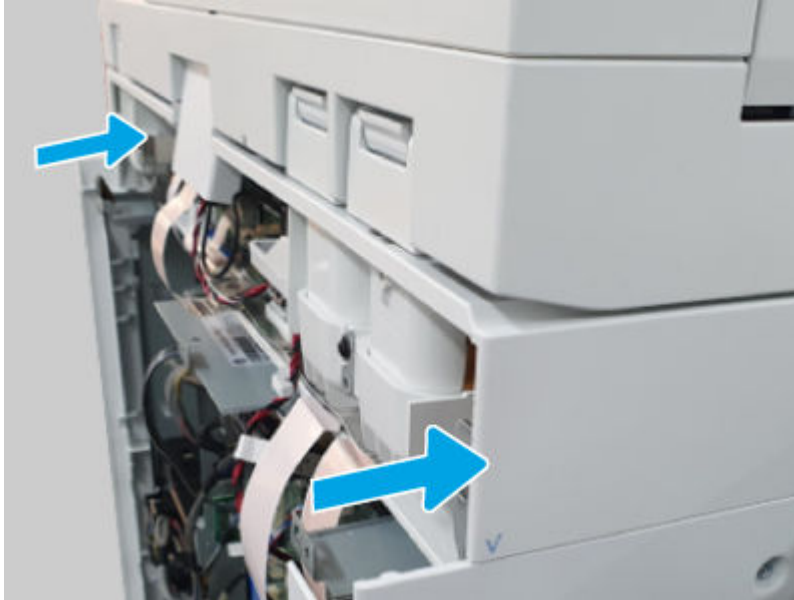


3. Slide the ISA towards the front of the printer until it stops to release it.



NOTE: Sliding the ISA might require considerable force to release the mounting locks.

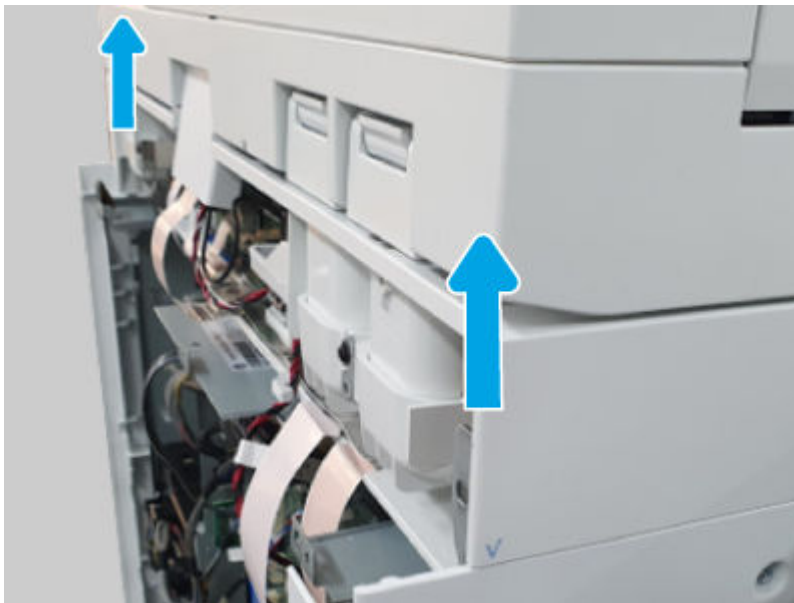
Figure 6-1220 Slide the ISA



4. Lift the ISA up and off of the printer to remove it.

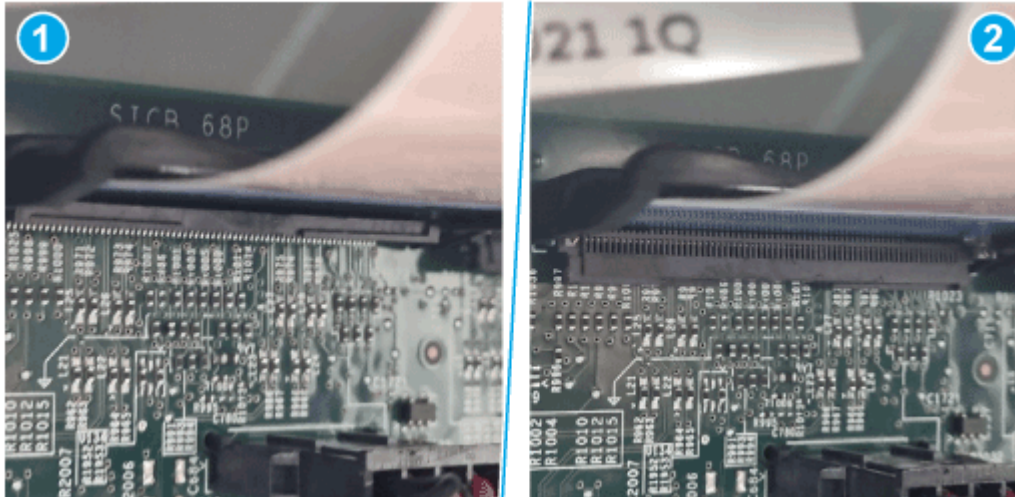
CAUTION: The ISA is heavy. Always use safe lifting practices. HP recommends more than one person lift the ISA.

Figure 6-1221 Remove the ISA



5. When reinstalling the FFCs into the connectors, make sure to push down on the locking clip so that the connector firmly grasps the cable film.
 - **Callout 1:** Unlocked
 - **Callout 2:** Locked

Figure 6-1222 Lock the FFC connector clip



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF (Automatic document feeder)


Learn about ADF parts removal and replacement.

300-Sheet ADF for z bundle

Learn about ADF parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: ADF (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder.

 **IMPORTANT:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

Instruction for installing a replacement white backing plate are also included.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-131 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-61042	300-sheet Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) NOTE: The white backing plate is not included. Order 5QJ83-40019 (Qty 1) and J8J63-60135 (Qty 9) to receive the White backing plate and White backing suspension clips.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

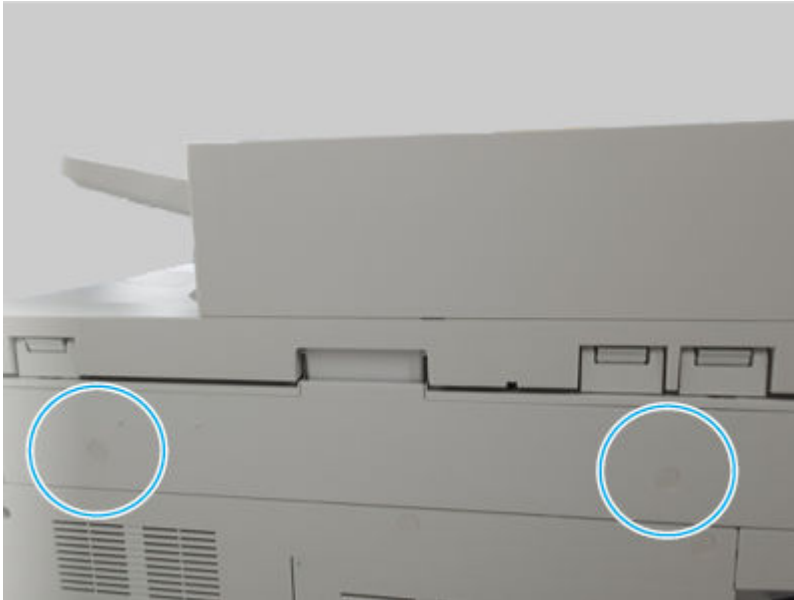
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

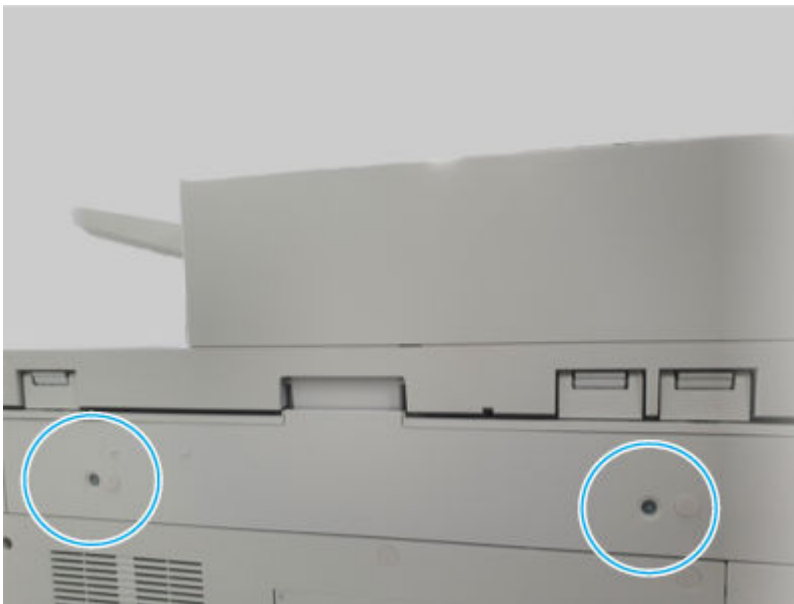
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1223 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1224 Remove two screws and the cover




2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

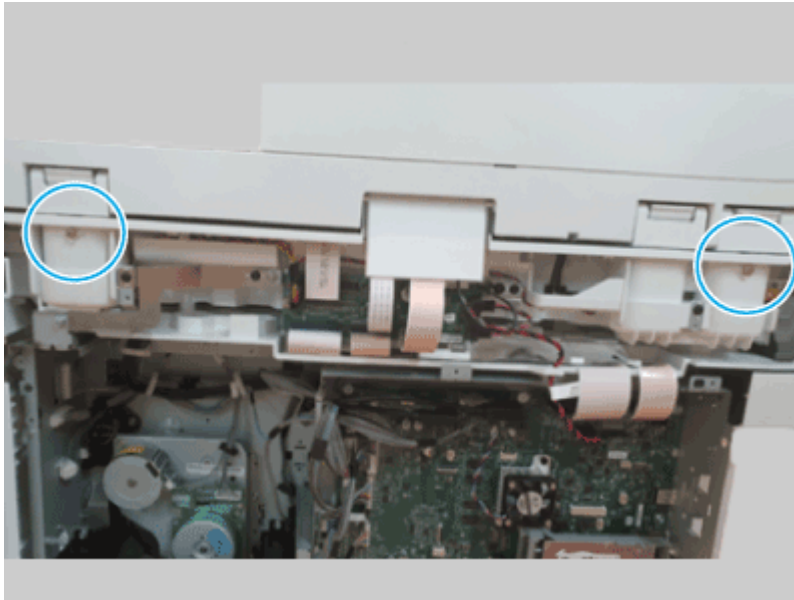
To install a replacement document feeder only: The following parts are required:

- White backing plate; 5QJ83-40019 (QTY 1)
- White backing suspension; J8J63-60135 (Qty 9)

 **NOTE:** Nine are required. Make sure the order quantity is nine.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1225 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector and two flat-flexible cables FFCs (callout 1).

 **CAUTION:** Disconnecting one of the FFCs requires opening a retaining clip (callout 2).


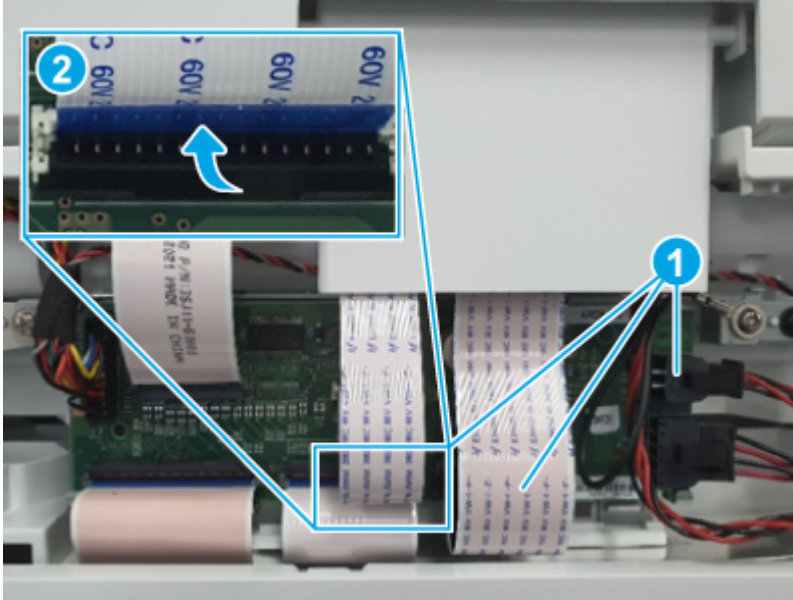
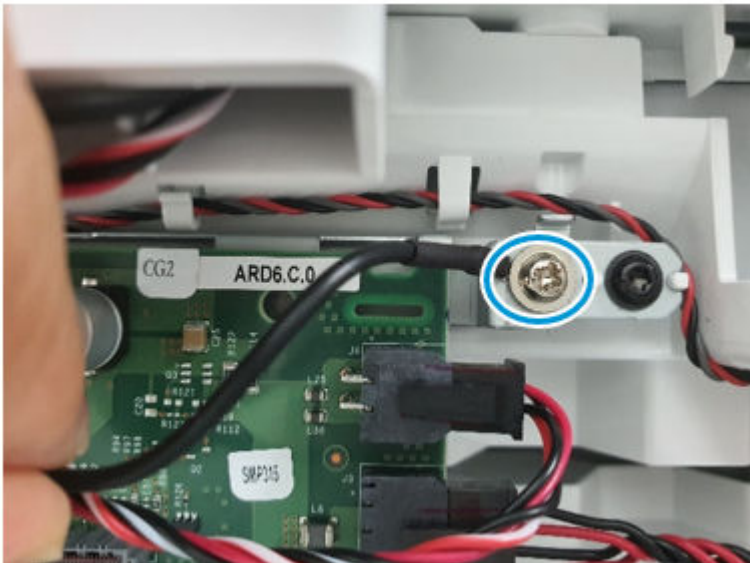
 **Reinstallation tip:** Use the special installation instructions in this topic to avoid damaging the FFCs.


Figure 6-1226 Disconnect three connectors



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1227 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

4. Special installation instructions: Document feeder

Use the following instructions to install the document feeder.



NOTE: To avoid damage to the document feeder, reverse the removal steps and follow these special instructions.

1. The flat-flexible cable (FFC) connectors are a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) type that uses a hinged retainer clip to secure the FFC.



CAUTION: Do not force the FFC into or out of the connector if the hinged retainer is in the locked position.

Forcing the FFC into or out of a locked connector can damage the FFC and cause the document feeder to be in operable.

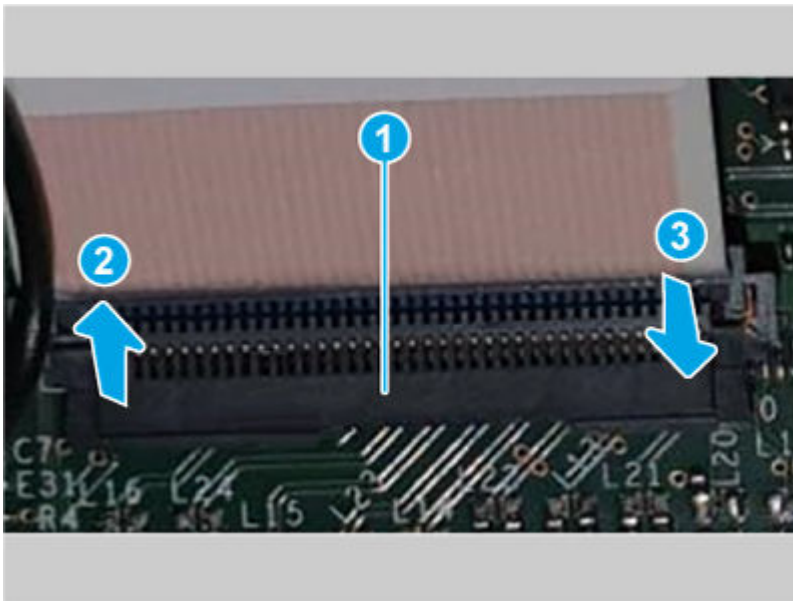
- **Callout 1:** FFC missing pin
- **Callout 2:** FFC pin peeled back

Figure 6-1228 Damaged FFC



2. Verify that the ZIF connector hinged retainer (callout 1) is unlocked. The image below shows a locked connector.
 - **Callout 2:** Unlock the hinged retainer
 - **Callout 3:** Lock the hinged retainer

Figure 6-1229 ZIF connector hinged retainer

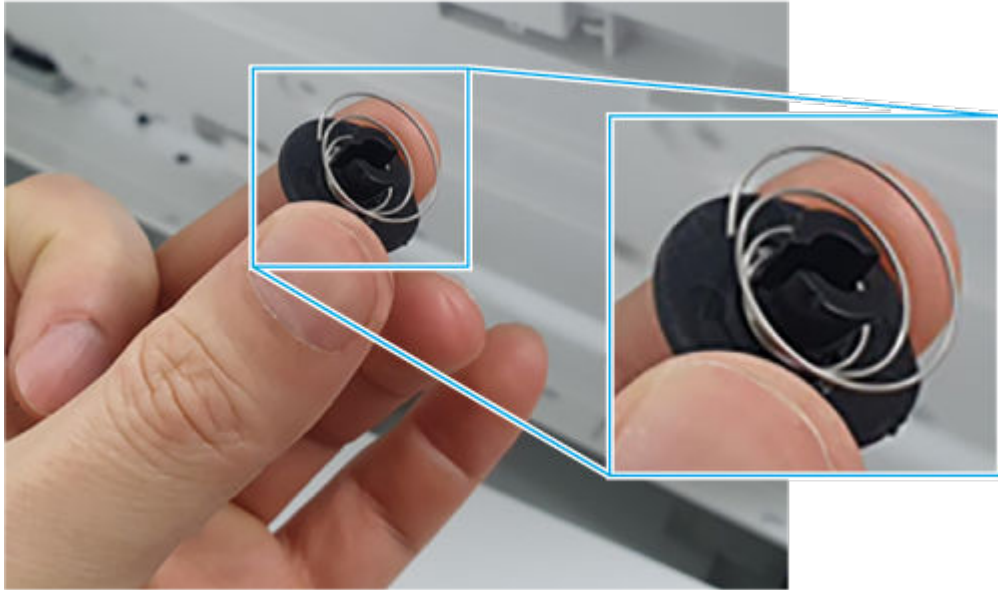


5. Special installation instructions: White backing plate

Use the following instructions to install the white backing plate

1. If the spring and suspension clip have become separated during shipping, install the spring on the clip as shown below.

Figure 6-1230 Spring installed on the suspension clip



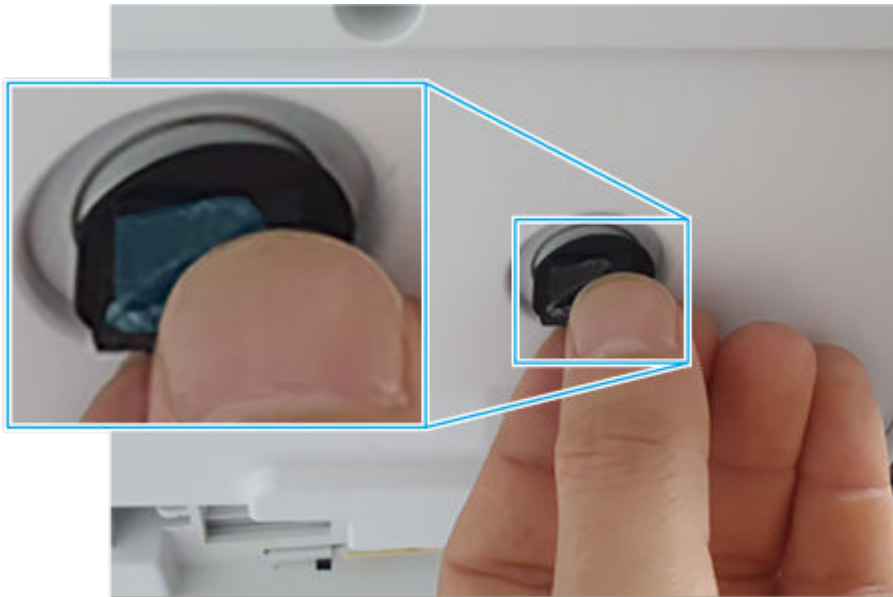
2. Position a suspension clip near the mounting feature on the document feeder, and then push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-1231 Install the suspension clip



3. Remove the protective film from the double-sided tape on the suspension clip.

Figure 6-1232 Expose the double-sided tape



4. Repeat these steps for the remaining eight suspension clips.

Figure 6-1233 Install the remaining suspension clips



5. Place the white backing plate on the flatbed glass.



NOTE: One corner of the white backing plate has an arrow embossed on it. Place that corner towards the rear left corner of the flatbed glass.

Figure 6-1234 Place the white backing plate



6. Position the white backing plate so that the corner with the embossed arrow fits tightly up against the flatbed glass frame.


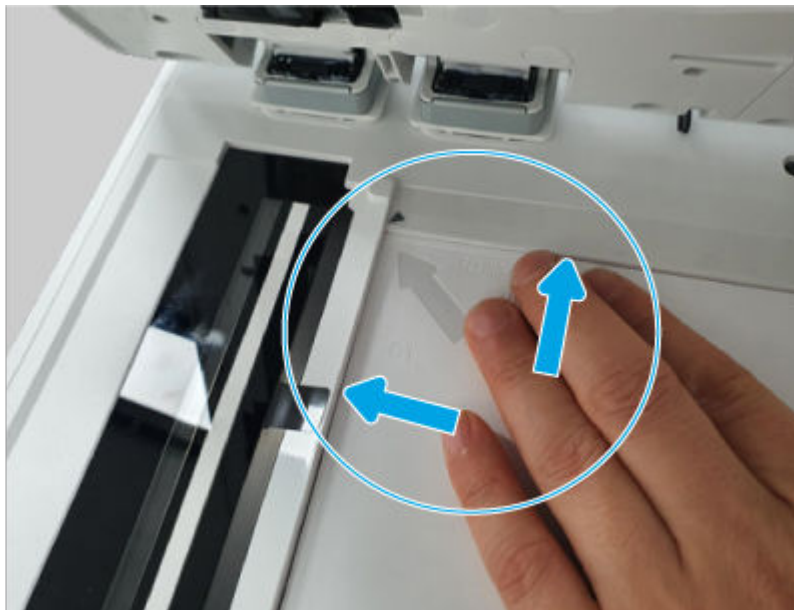
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the rear and left edges of the plate are firmly against the flatbed frame.

Figure 6-1235 Register the white backing plate against the frame



7. Fully close the document feeder to install the white backing plate.


 **NOTE:** Open the document feeder and make sure the white backing plate is firmly attached.

Figure 6-1236 Close the document feeder



Removal and replacement: ADF front cover (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder front cover.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-132 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40049	ADF front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.

- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

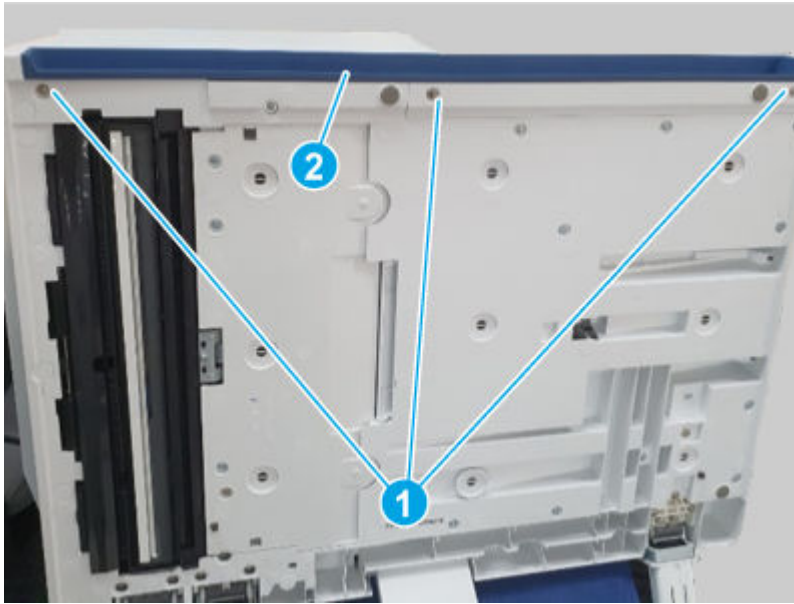
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder color panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder color panel.

1. Open the document feeder.
2. Remove three screws (callout 1), release four tabs, and then remove the document feeder color panel (callout 2).

Figure 6-1237 Remove the color panel

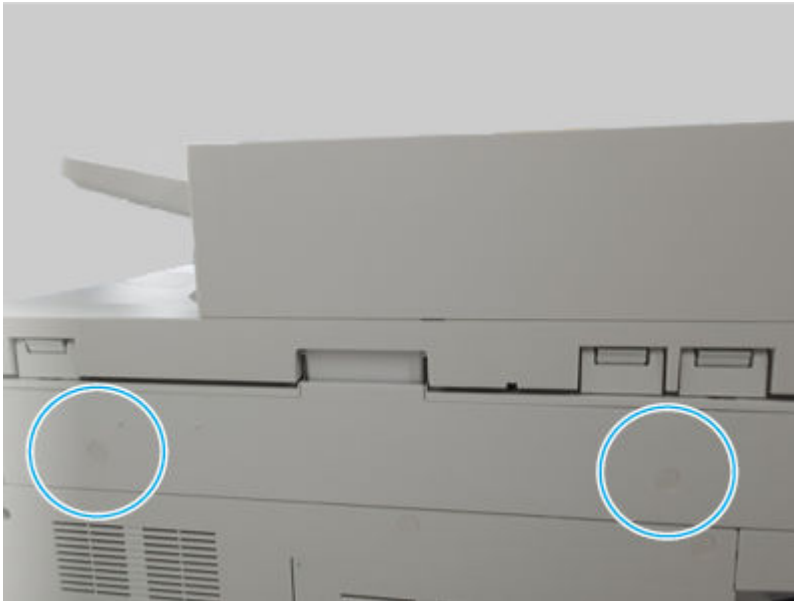


2. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

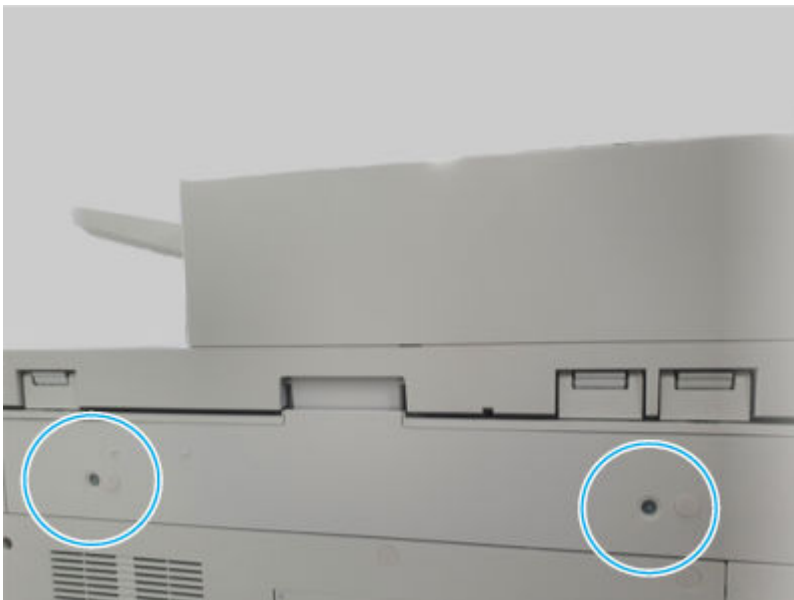
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1238 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1239 Remove two screws and the cover



3. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

To install a replacement document feeder only: The following parts are required:

- White backing plate; 5QJ83-40019 (QTY 1)

- White backing suspension; J8J63-60135 (Qty 9)

 **NOTE:** Nine are required. Make sure the order quantity is nine.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1240 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector and two flat-flexible cables FFCs (callout 1).

 **CAUTION:** Disconnecting one of the FFCs requires opening a retaining clip (callout 2).


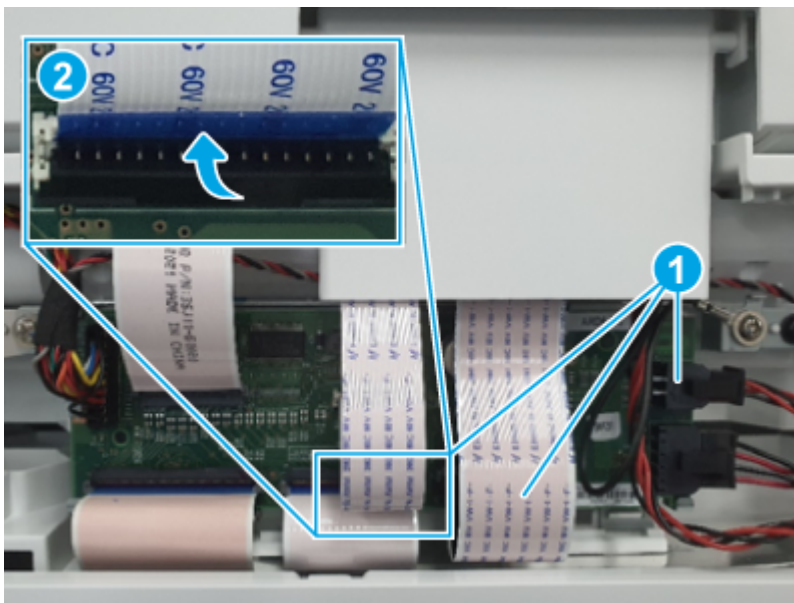
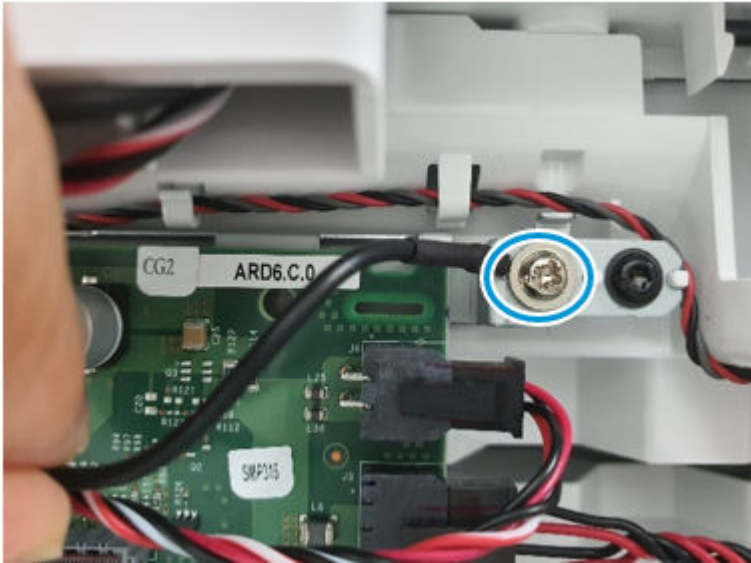
 **Reinstallation tip:** Use the special installation instructions in this topic to avoid damaging the FFCs.


Figure 6-1241 Disconnect three connectors



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1242 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

4. Remove the document feeder front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder front cover.

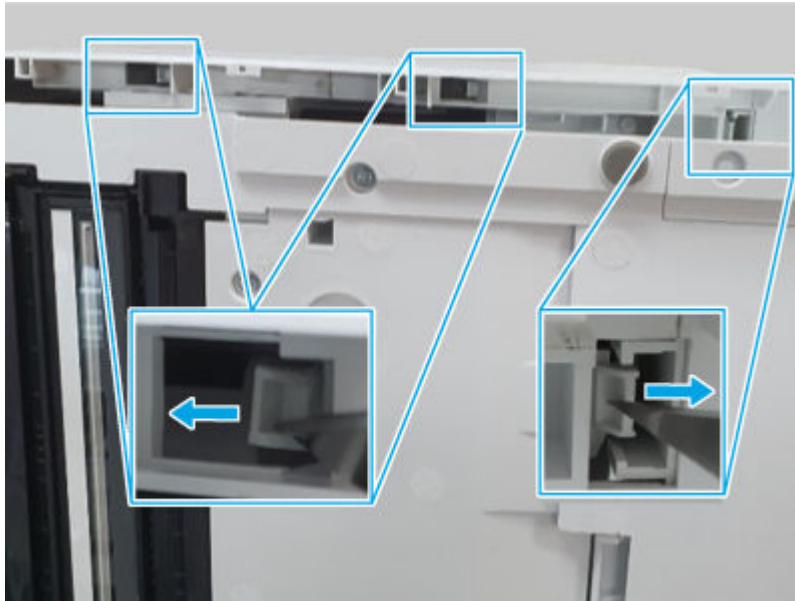
1. Open the ADF top cover, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1243 Remove two screws



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release three hooks, and then remove the document feeder front cover.


Figure 6-1244 Remove the cover



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF CMF panel

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder color panel.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-133 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40056	ADF CMF panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

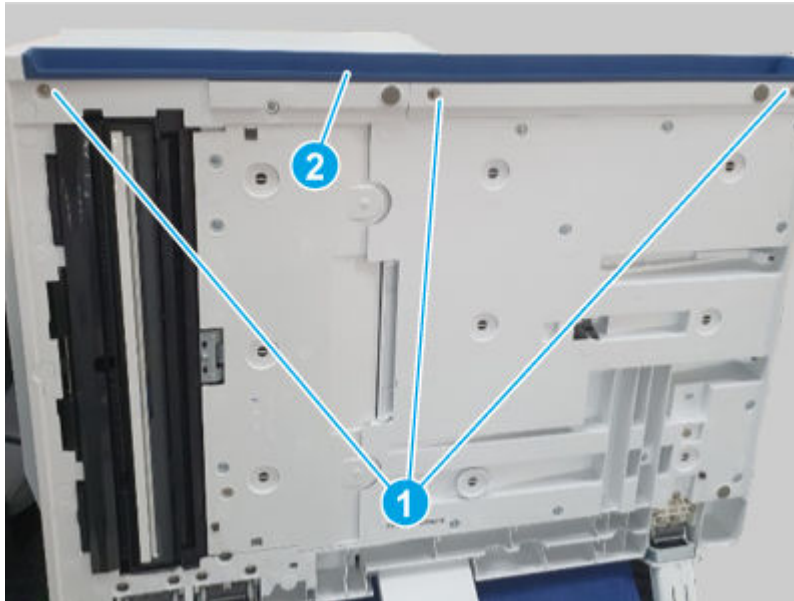
1. Remove the document feeder color panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder color panel.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Remove three screws (callout 1), release four tabs, and then remove the document feeder color panel (callout 2).

Figure 6-1245 Remove the color panel



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF rear cover (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-134 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40041	ADF rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

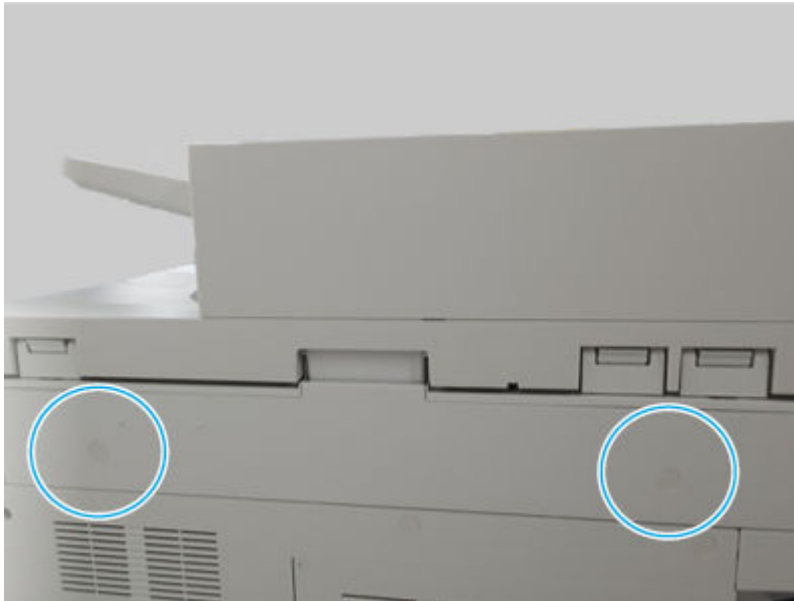
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

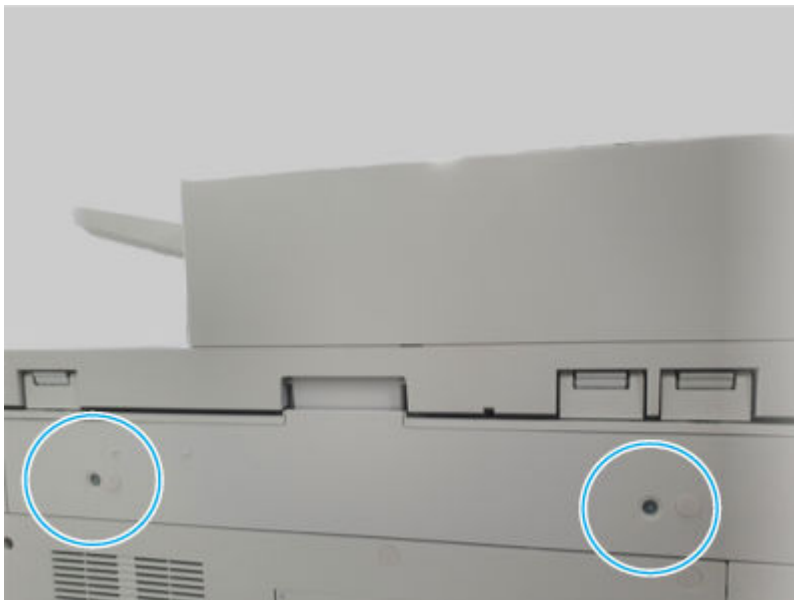
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1246 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1247 Remove two screws and the cover



Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

To install a replacement document feeder only: The following parts are required:

- White backing plate; 5QJ83-40019 (QTY 1)

- White backing suspension; J8J63-60135 (Qty 9)

 **NOTE:** Nine are required. Make sure the order quantity is nine.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1248 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector and two flat-flexible cables FFCs (callout 1).

 **CAUTION:** Disconnecting one of the FFCs requires opening a retaining clip (callout 2).


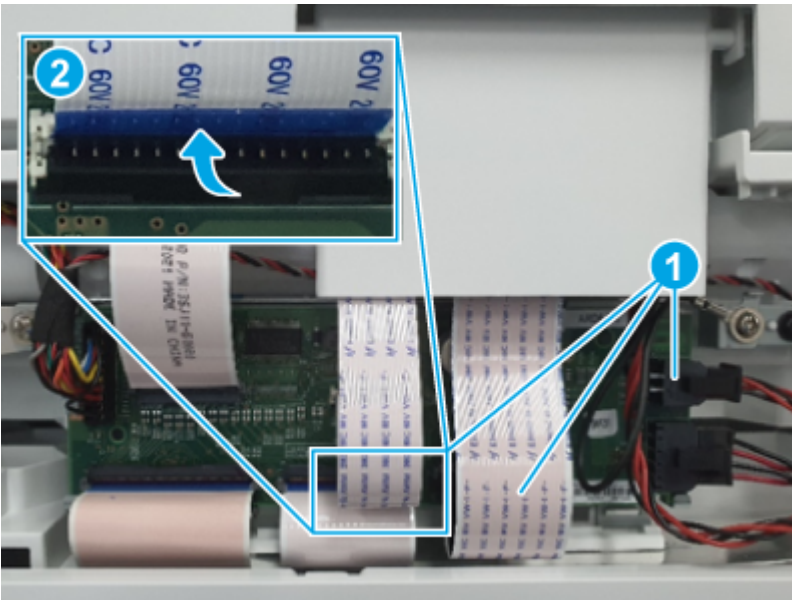
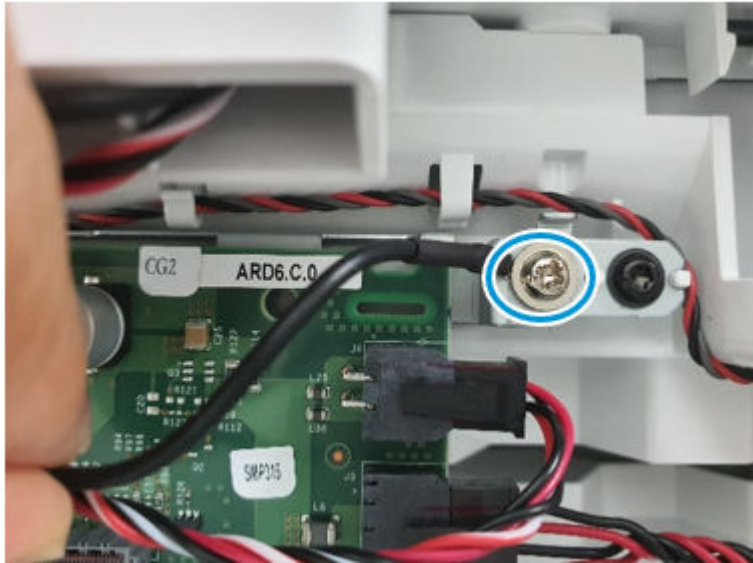
 **Reinstallation tip:** Use the special installation instructions in this topic to avoid damaging the FFCs.

Figure 6-1249 Disconnect three connectors



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1250 Remove the document feeder assembly



IMPORTANT: Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

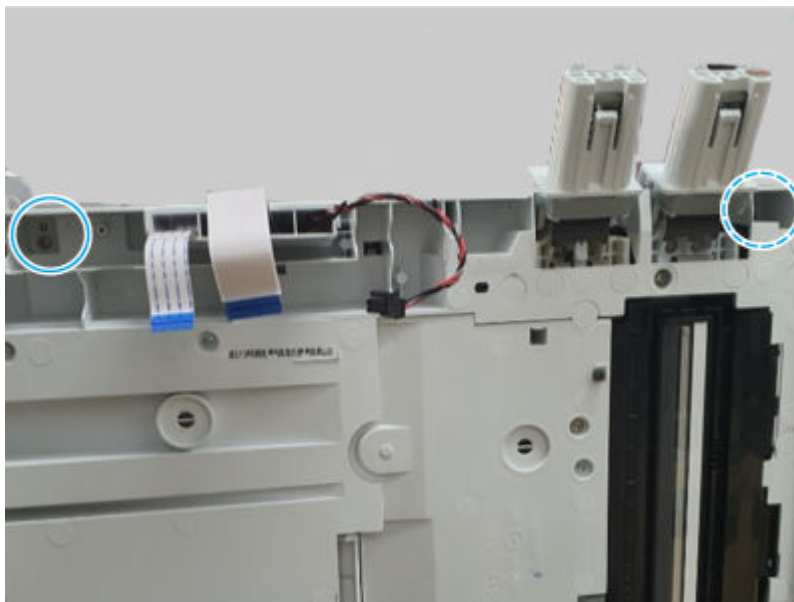
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1251 Remove two screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove two screws, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1252 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF top cover (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder top cover.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-135 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40054	ADF top cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

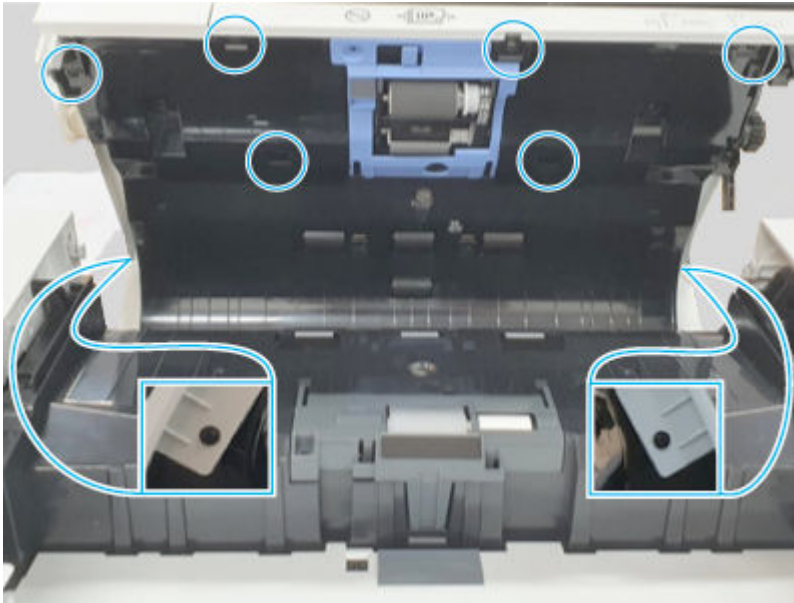
1. Remove the document feeder top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder top cover.

1. Open the ADF top cover.

2. Remove eight screws, and then remove the ADF top cover.

Figure 6-1253 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF white backing kit (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder white backing.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-136 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ83-40019	White backing plate
J8J63-60135	White backing suspension (clips) NOTE: Nine are required. Make sure the order quantity is nine.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder white backing

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Disconnect nine hooks, and then remove the white backing.


Figure 6-1254 Remove the white backing



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

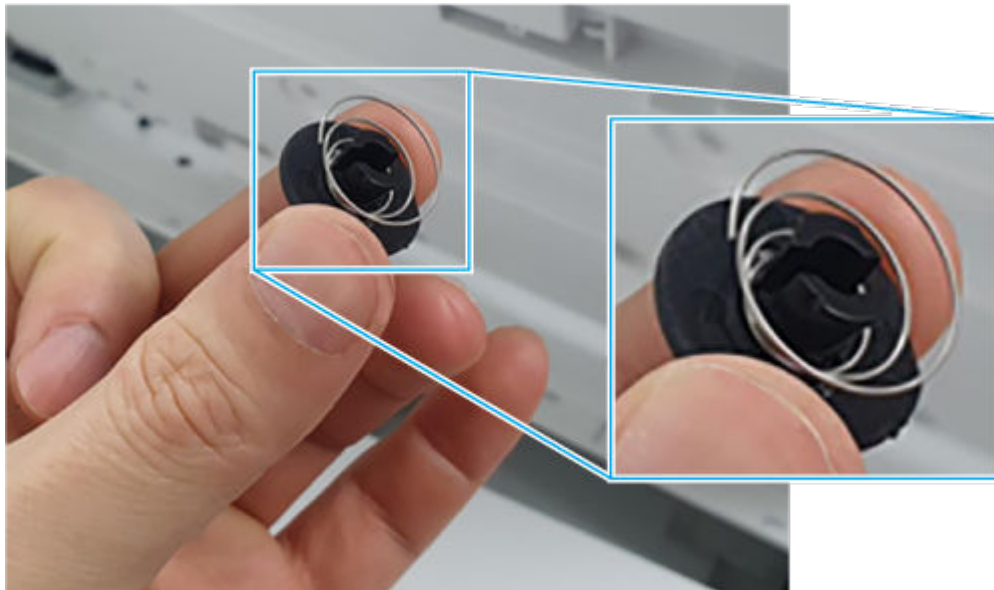
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

3. Special installation instructions: White backing plate

Use the following instructions to install the white backing plate

1. If the spring and suspension clip have become separated during shipping, install the spring on the clip as shown below.

Figure 6-1255 Spring installed on the suspension clip



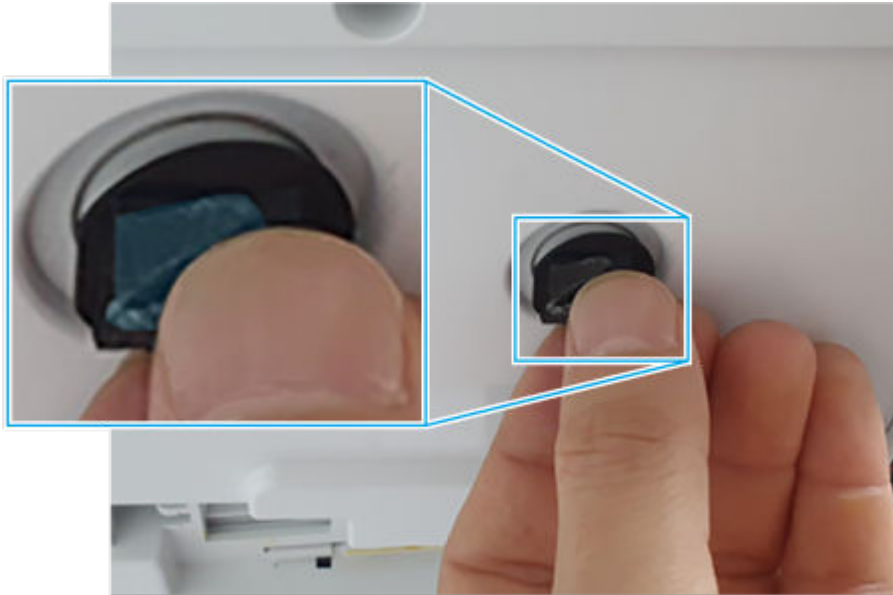
2. Position a suspension clip near the mounting feature on the document feeder, and then push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-1256 Install the suspension clip



3. Remove the protective film from the double-sided tape on the suspension clip.

Figure 6-1257 Expose the double-sided tape



4. Repeat these steps for the remaining eight suspension clips.

Figure 6-1258 Install the remaining suspension clips



5. Place the white backing plate on the flatbed glass.



NOTE: One corner of the white backing plate has an arrow embossed on it. Place that corner towards the rear left corner of the flatbed glass.

Figure 6-1259 Place the white backing plate



6. Position the white backing plate so that the corner with the embossed arrow fits tightly up against the flatbed glass frame.


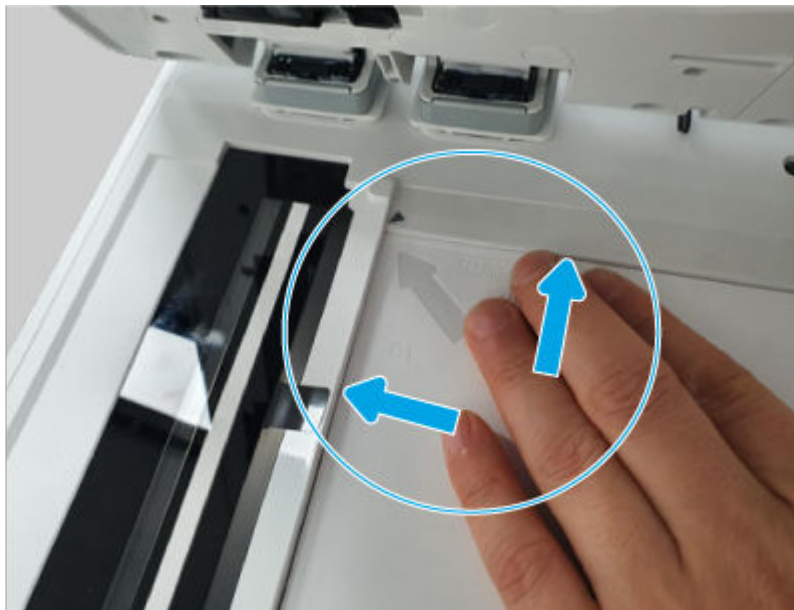
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the rear and left edges of the plate are firmly against the flatbed frame.

Figure 6-1260 Register the white backing plate against the frame



7. Fully close the document feeder to install the white backing plate.


 **NOTE:** Open the document feeder and make sure the white backing plate is firmly attached.

Figure 6-1261 Close the document feeder



Removal and replacement: ADF input tray (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder input tray.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-137 Part Information

Part number	Part description
Z9Y05-60032	Stacker upper assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.

- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

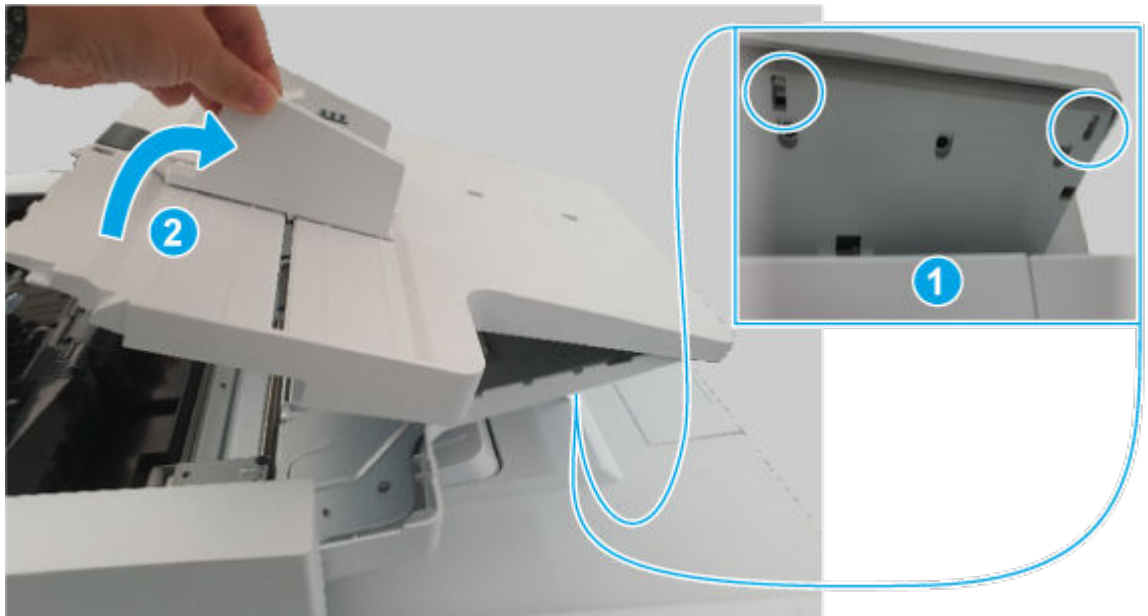
1. Remove the document feeder input tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder input tray.

1. Disconnect two hooks (callout 1), and then separate the tray from the ADF.

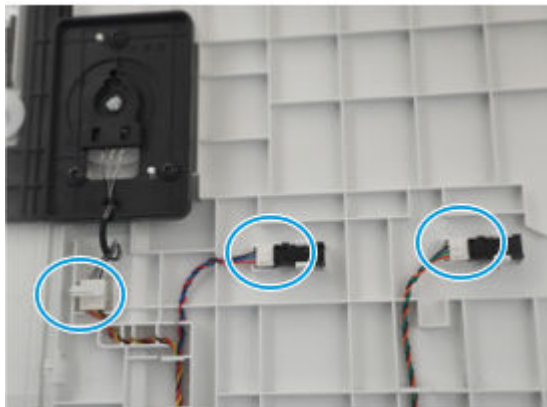
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the tray. It is still connected to the ADF by wire harnesses.

Figure 6-1262 Disconnect two hooks



2. Turn the tray over, disconnect three connectors (release wire harnesses), and then remove the tray.

Figure 6-1263 Remove the tray



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder pickup roller kit.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-138 Part information

Part number	Part description
5RC00-67001	ADF roller kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

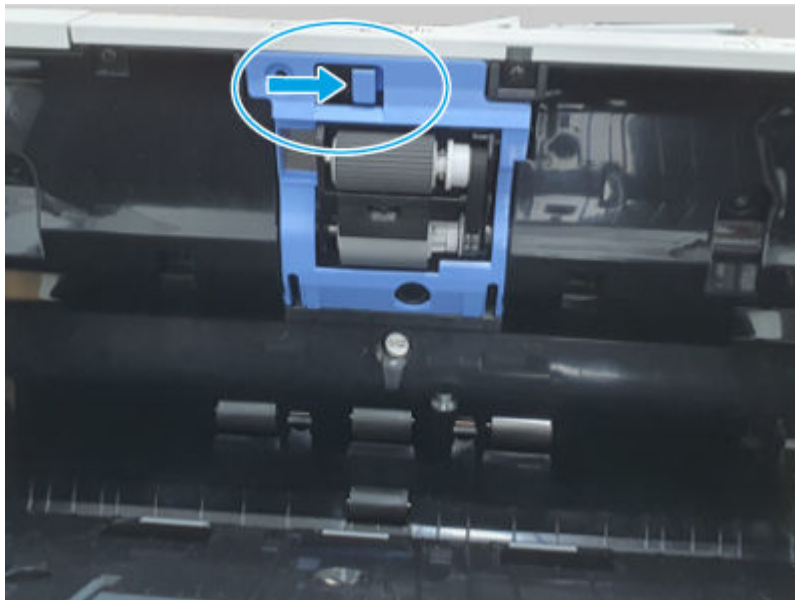
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder pickup roller kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder pickup roller kit.

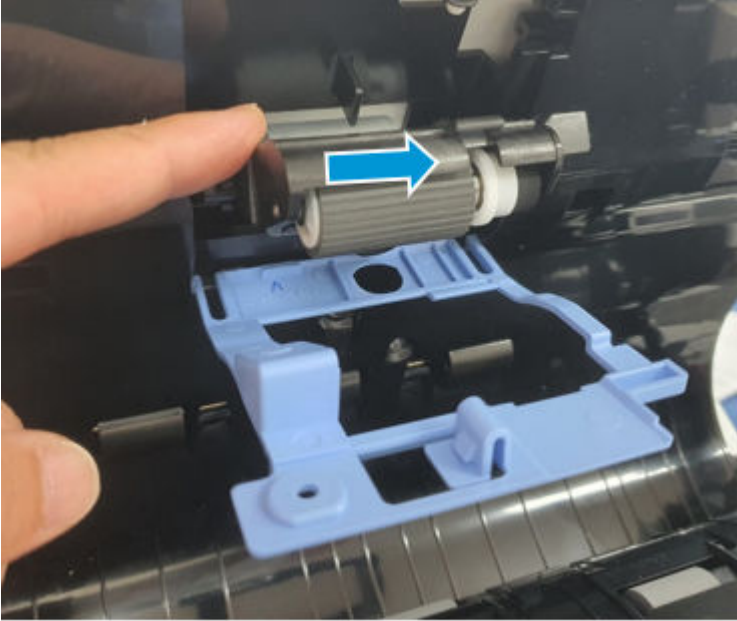
1. Open the ADF top cover.
2. Remove the roller cover.

Figure 6-1264 Remove the roller cover



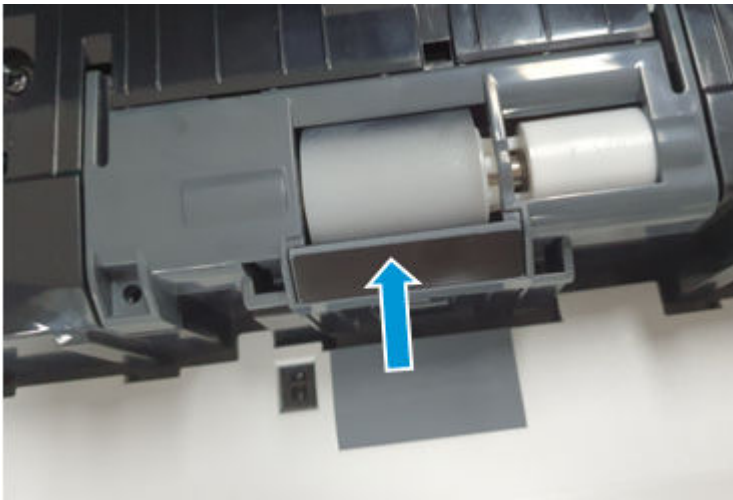
3. Remove the roller assembly.

Figure 6-1265 Remove the roller assembly



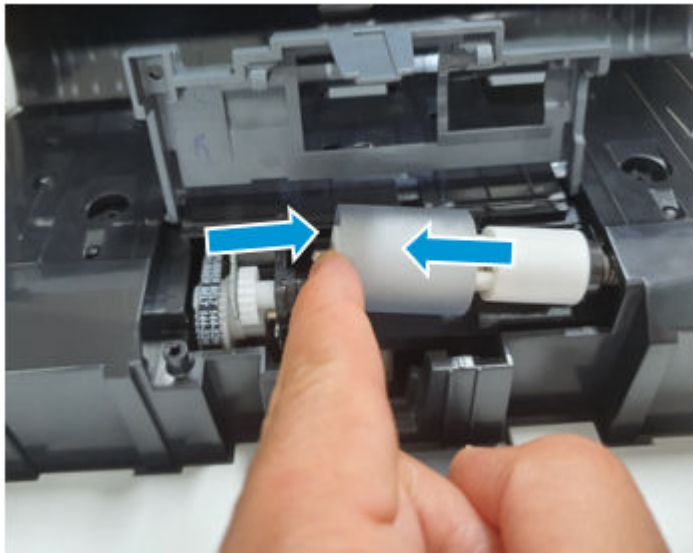
4. Open the separation roller cover.

Figure 6-1266 Open the cover



5. Remove the separation roller.

Figure 6-1267 Remove the separation roller



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF image scanner

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder image scanner.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-139 Part information

Part number	Part description
Z9Y05-60047	ADF image scanner

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder image scanner

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder image scanner.

1. Open the ADF top cover.
2. Release the document feeder image scanner, and then slightly separate it from the ADF.


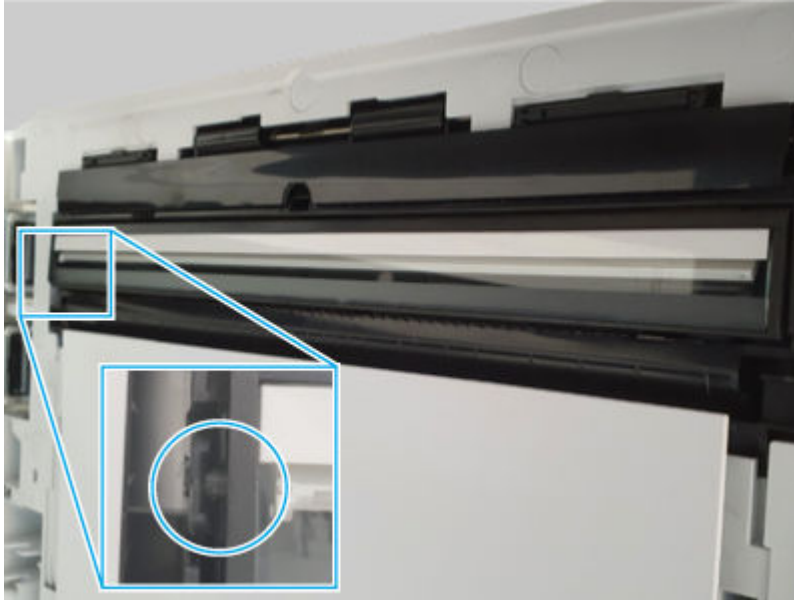
 **NOTE:** Do not attempt to completely remove the image scanner. It is still connected to the ADF by a flat-flexible cable (FFC).

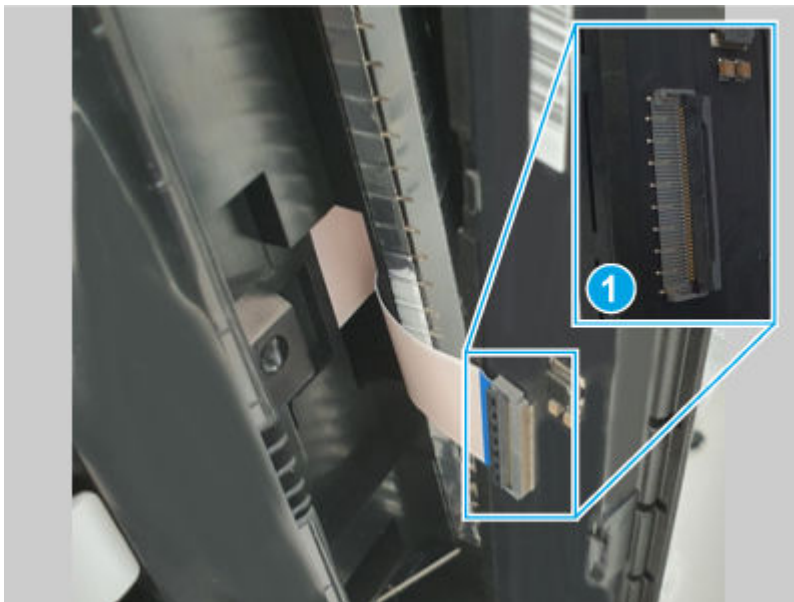
Figure 6-1268 Release the image scanner



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the image scanner.

 **NOTE:** Release the connector locking clip (callout 2) to remove the FFC.


Figure 6-1269 Remove the image scanner



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF PCA (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder printed circuit assembly (PCA).


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-140 Part Information

Part number	Part description
Z9Y05-60004	ADF PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

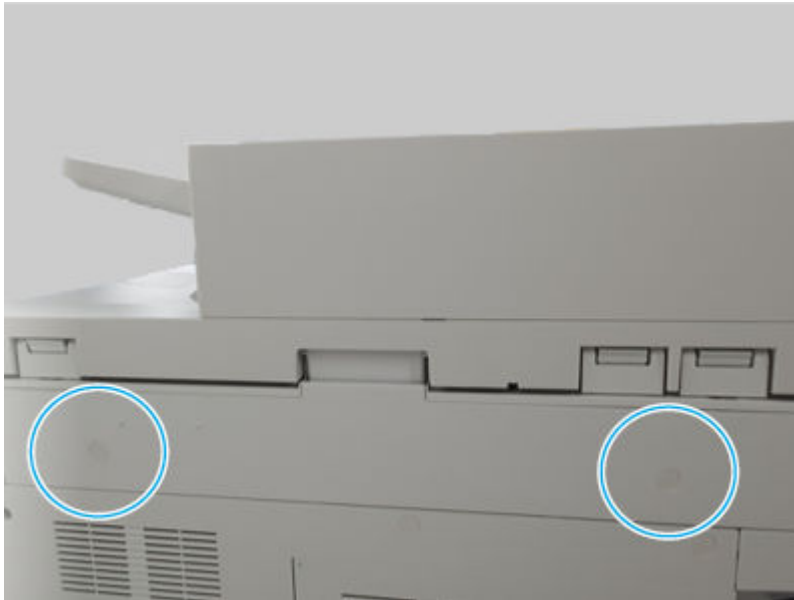
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

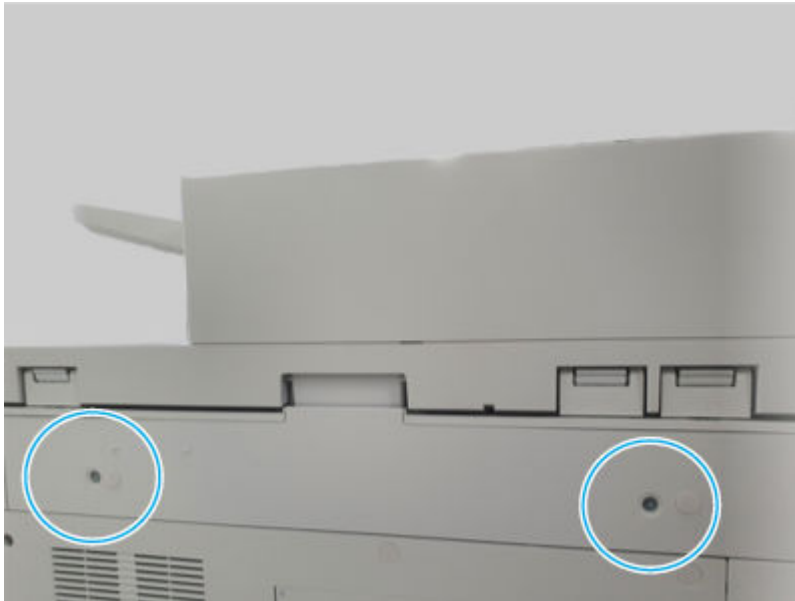
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1270 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1271 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

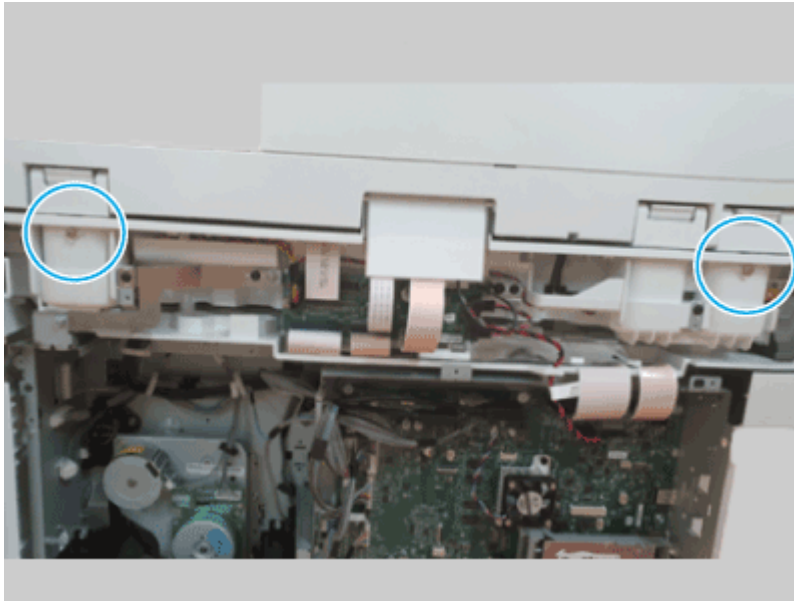
To install a replacement document feeder only: The following parts are required:

- White backing plate; 5QJ83-40019 (QTY 1)
- White backing suspension; J8J63-60135 (Qty 9)

 **NOTE:** Nine are required. Make sure the order quantity is nine.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1272 Remove two screws

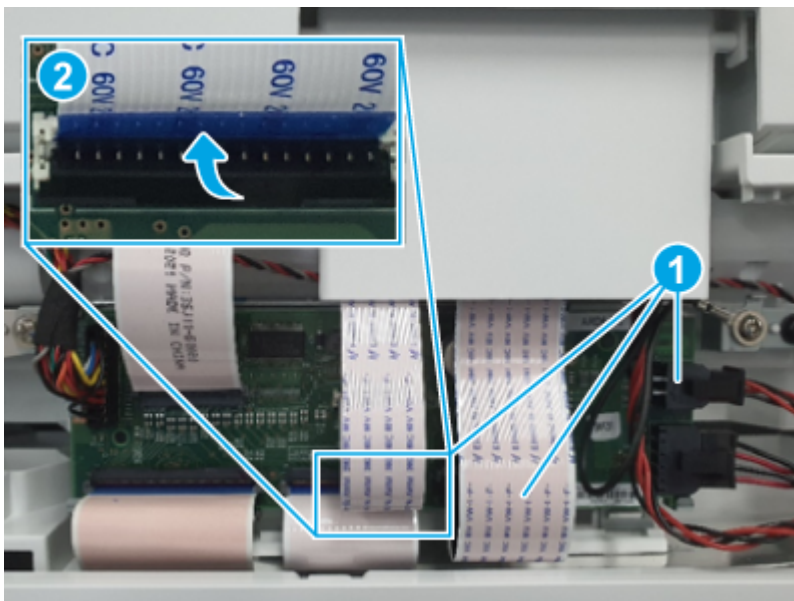


2. Disconnect one connector and two flat-flexible cables FFCs (callout 1).

CAUTION: Disconnecting one of the FFCs requires opening a retaining clip (callout 2).

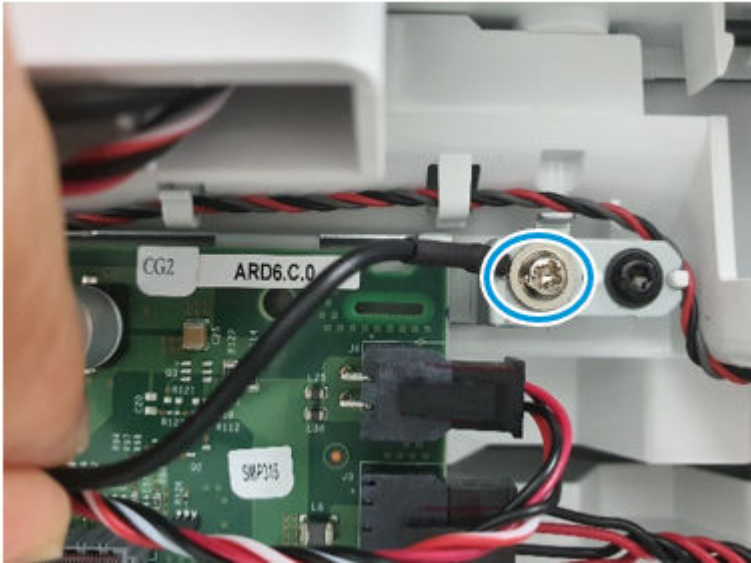
Reinstallation tip: Use the special installation instructions in this topic to avoid damaging the FFCs.

Figure 6-1273 Disconnect three connectors



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1274 Remove the document feeder assembly



IMPORTANT: Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

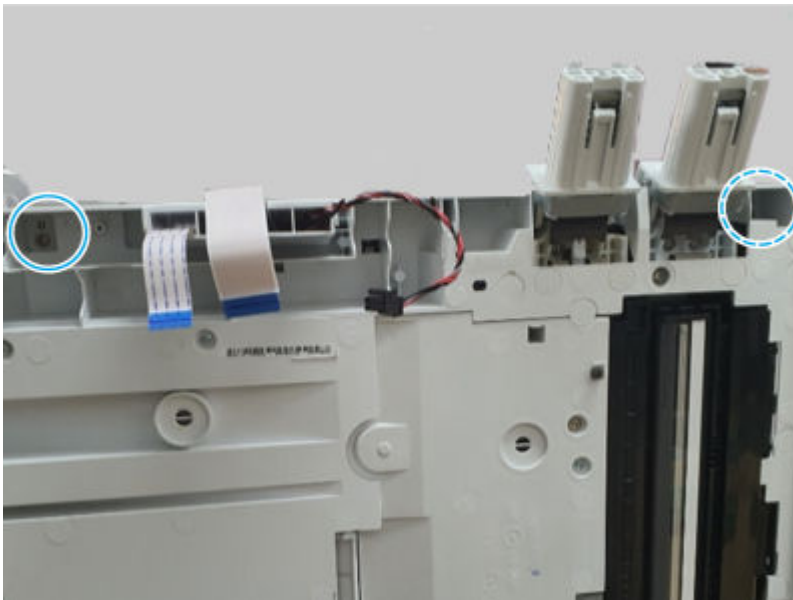
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

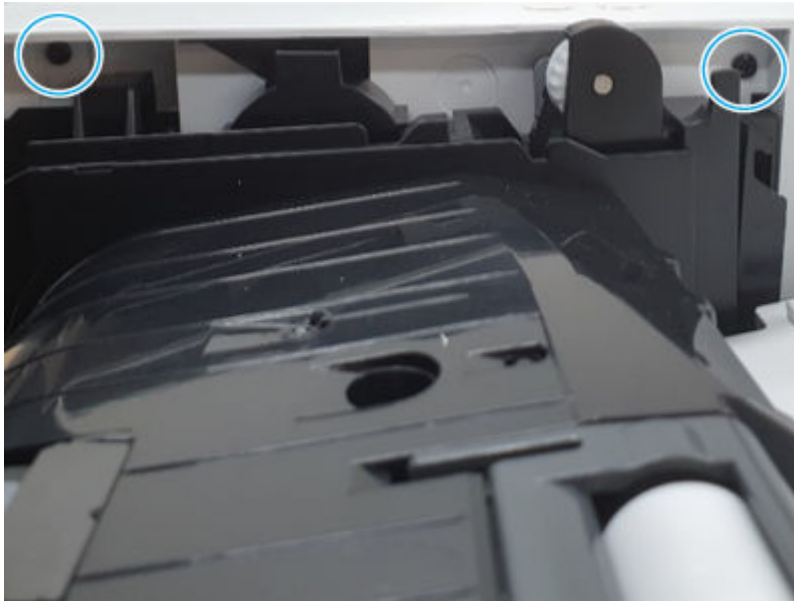
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1275 Remove two screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove two screws, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1276 Remove the cover

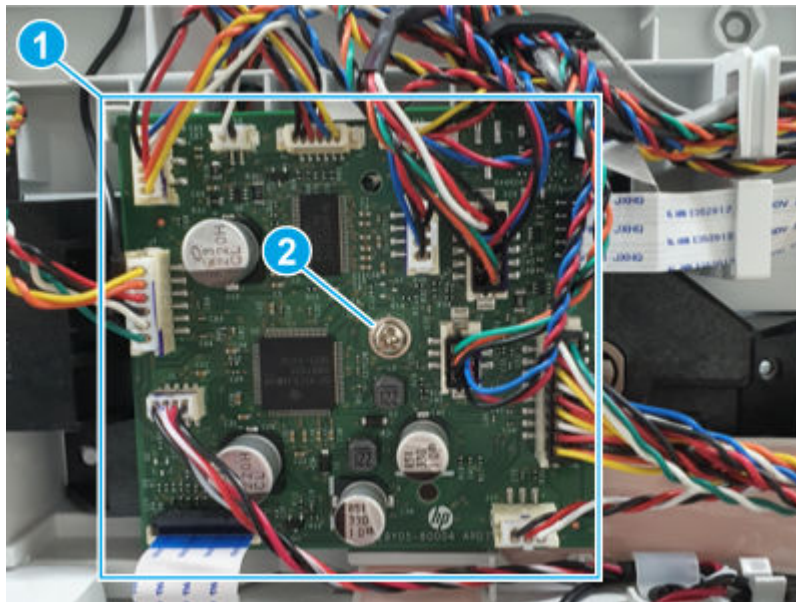


4. Remove the document feeder PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder PCA.

- Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the PCA.

Figure 6-1277 Remove the PCA



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF flat-flexible cable (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder flat-flexible cable (FFC) to SSA.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-141 Part information

Part number	Part description
Z9Y05-50002	ADF FFC to SSA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

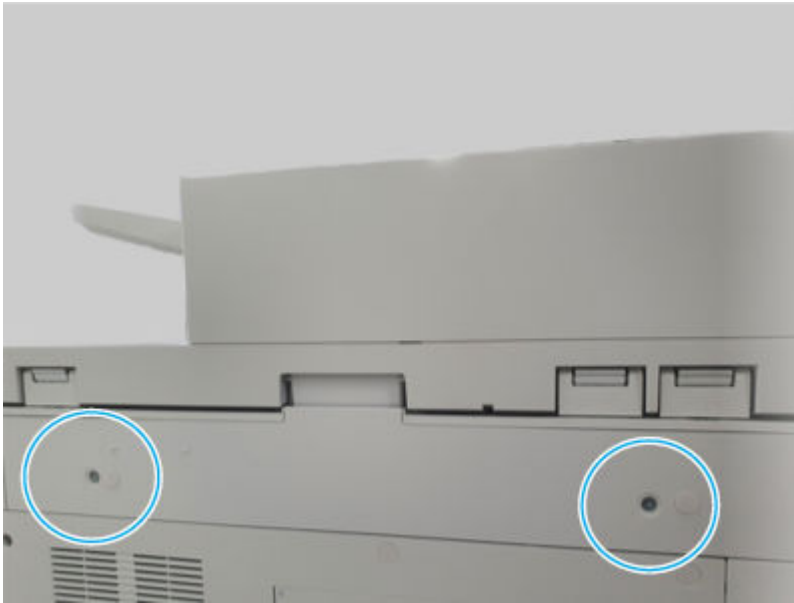
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1278 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1279 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

To install a replacement document feeder only: The following parts are required:

- White backing plate; 5QJ83-40019 (QTY 1)
- White backing suspension; J8J63-60135 (Qty 9)

 **NOTE:** Nine are required. Make sure the order quantity is nine.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1280 Remove two screws

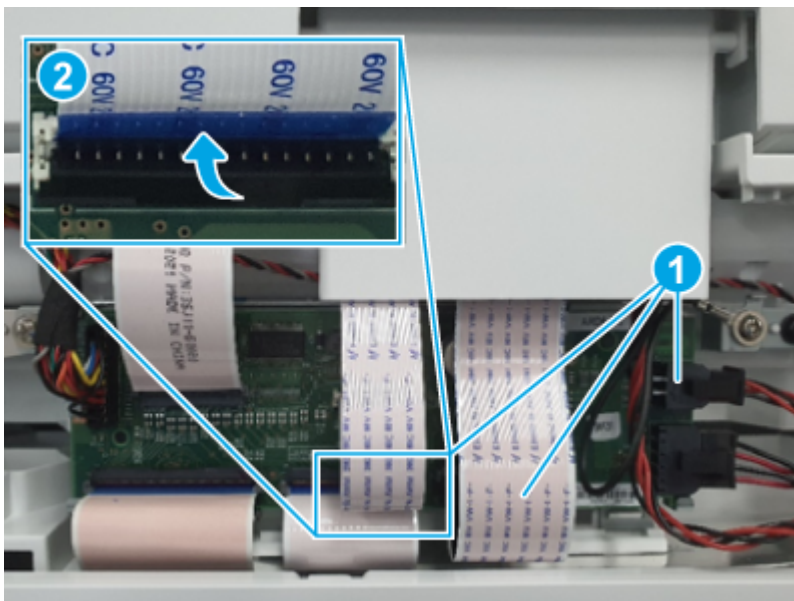


2. Disconnect one connector and two flat-flexible cables FFCs (callout 1).

⚠ CAUTION: Disconnecting one of the FFCs requires opening a retaining clip (callout 2).

💡 Reinstallation tip: Use the special installation instructions in this topic to avoid damaging the FFCs.

Figure 6-1281 Disconnect three connectors



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1282 Remove the document feeder assembly



IMPORTANT: Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

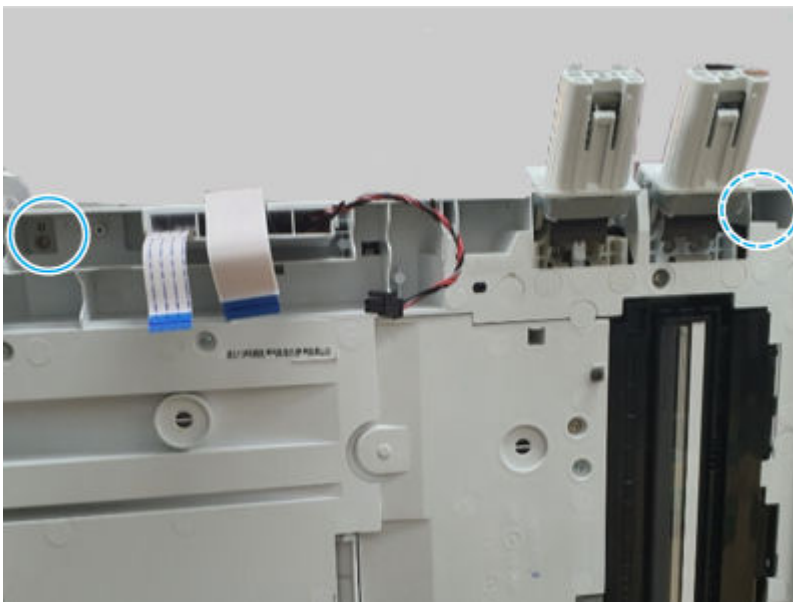
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

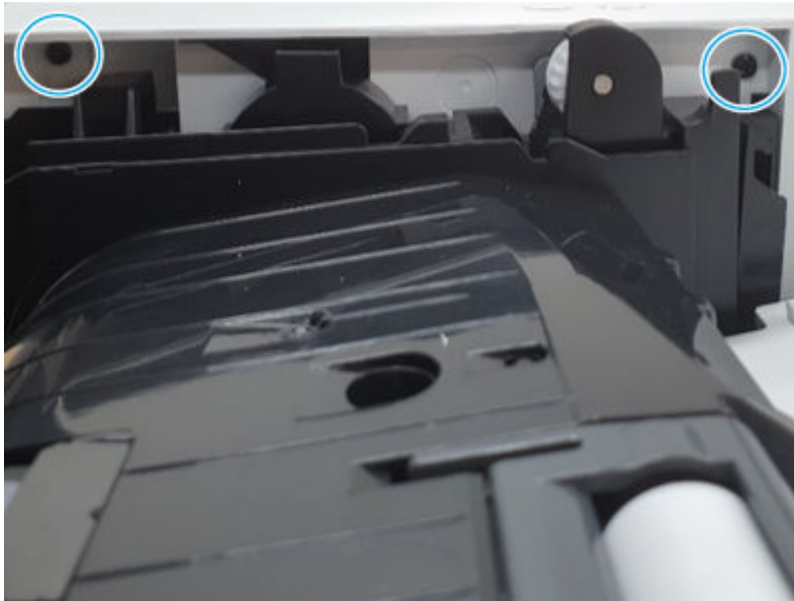
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1283 Remove two screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove two screws, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1284 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder FFC to SSA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder FFC to SSA.

- Disconnect the flat-flexible cable (FFC) to SSA, and then remove the FFC.


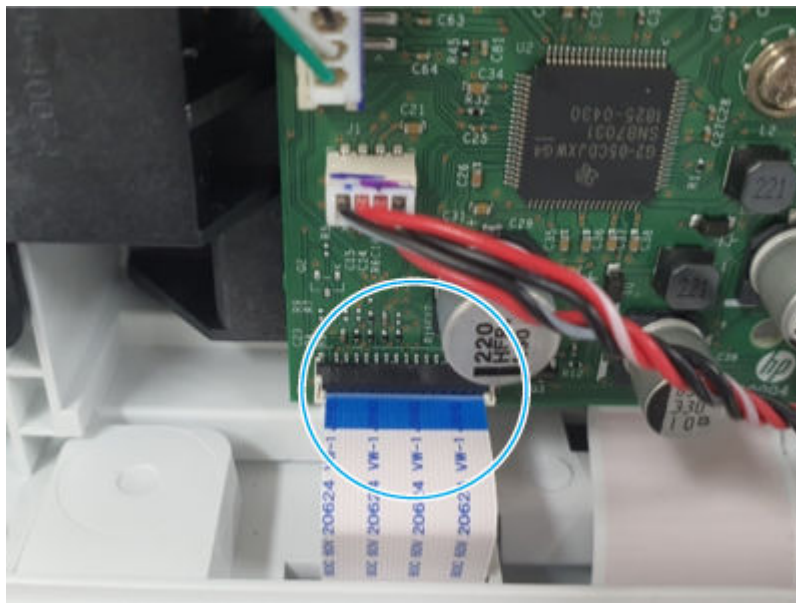
 **NOTE:** The FFC is located at the bottom left corner of the ADF PCA.


Figure 6-1285 Remove the FFC



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF power cable (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder power cable.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-142 Part information

Part number	Part description
Z9Y05-50003	ADF power cable

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

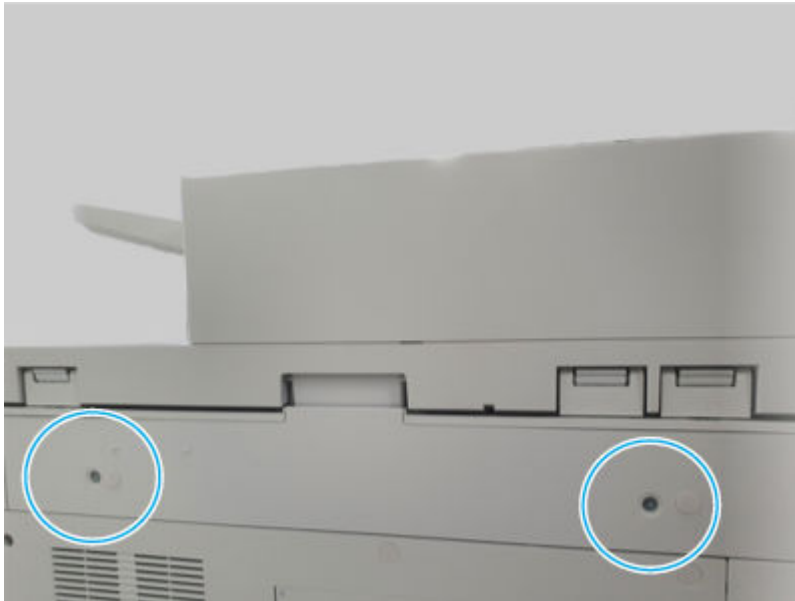
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1286 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1287 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

To install a replacement document feeder only: The following parts are required:

- White backing plate; 5QJ83-40019 (QTY 1)
- White backing suspension; J8J63-60135 (Qty 9)

 **NOTE:** Nine are required. Make sure the order quantity is nine.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1288 Remove two screws

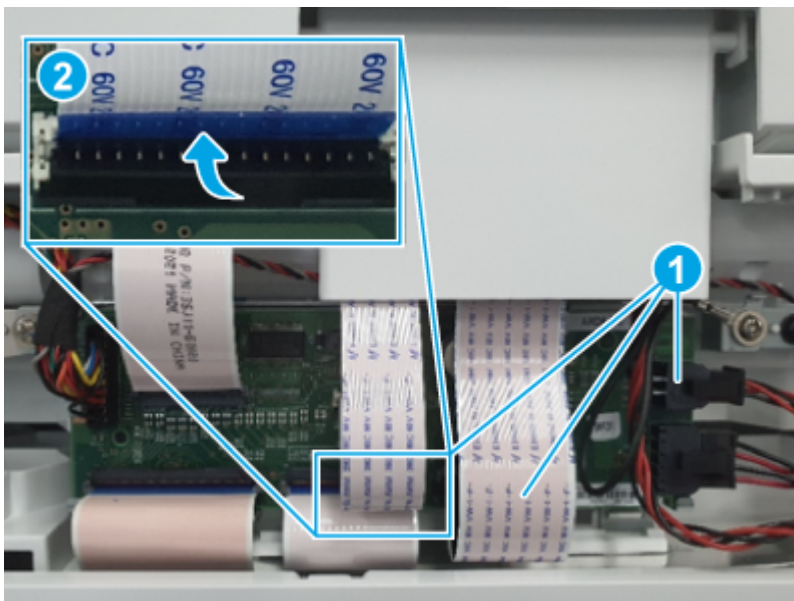


2. Disconnect one connector and two flat-flexible cables FFCs (callout 1).

CAUTION: Disconnecting one of the FFCs requires opening a retaining clip (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Use the special installation instructions in this topic to avoid damaging the FFCs.

Figure 6-1289 Disconnect three connectors



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1290 Remove the document feeder assembly



IMPORTANT: Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

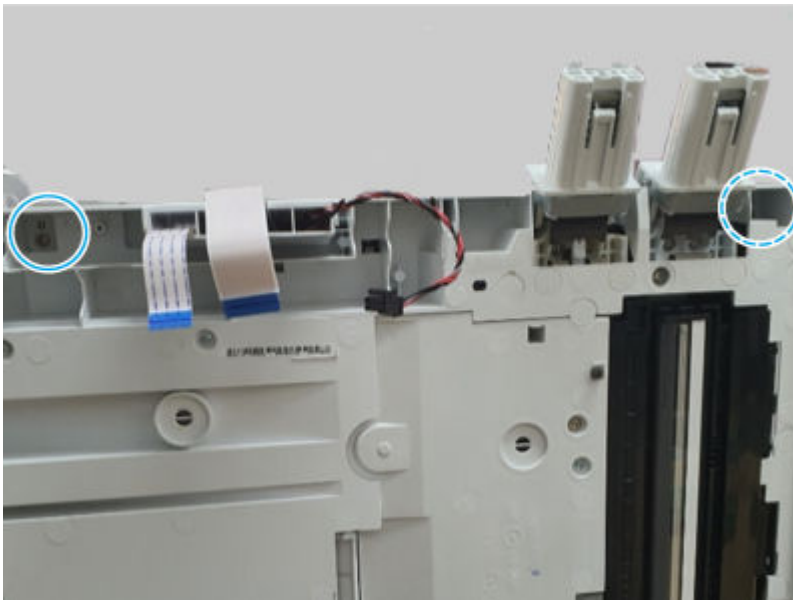
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1291 Remove two screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove two screws, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1292 Remove the cover



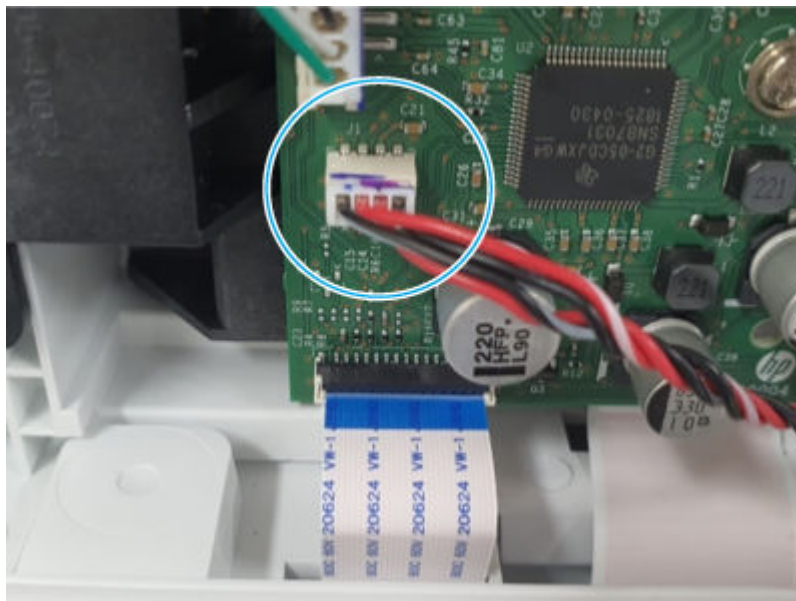
4. Remove the document feeder power cable

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder power cable.

- Disconnect the power cable, and then remove the cable.

 **NOTE:** The power cable is located near the bottom left corner of the ADF PCA.

Figure 6-1293 Remove the power cable



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF hinge kit (300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder hinge kit.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-143 Part information

Part number	Part description
Z9Y05-60013	Hinge right
Z9Y05-60014	Hinge left
Z9Y05-60015	Hinge middle

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder white backing

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.
2. Disconnect nine hooks, and then remove the white backing.

Figure 6-1294 Remove the white backing

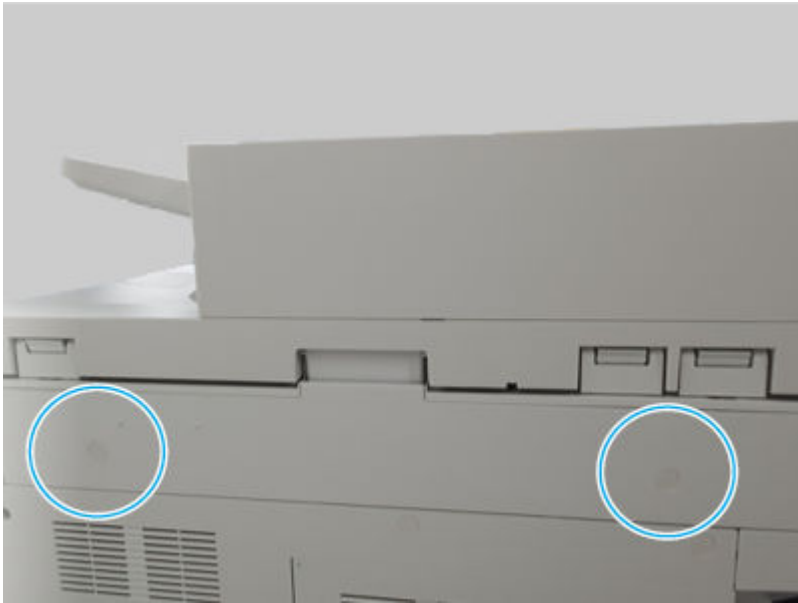


2. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

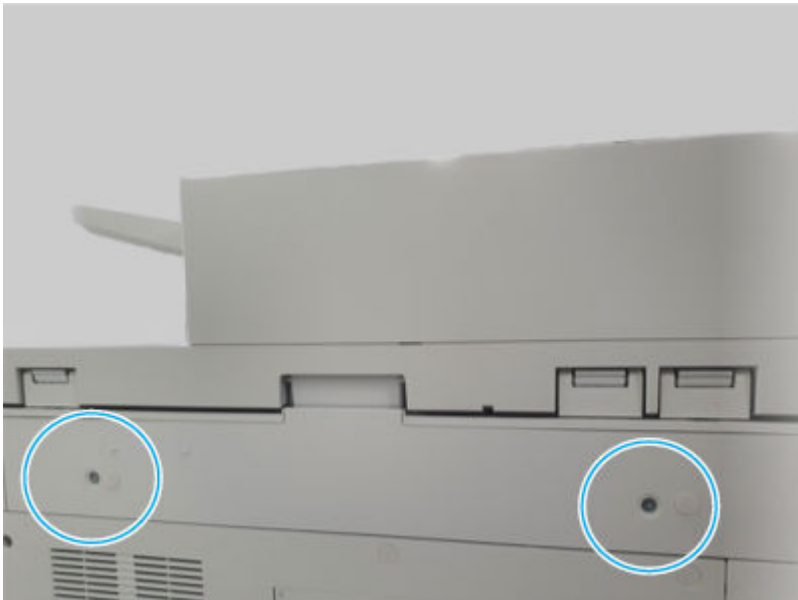
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1295 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1296 Remove two screws and the cover



3. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

To install a replacement document feeder only: The following parts are required:

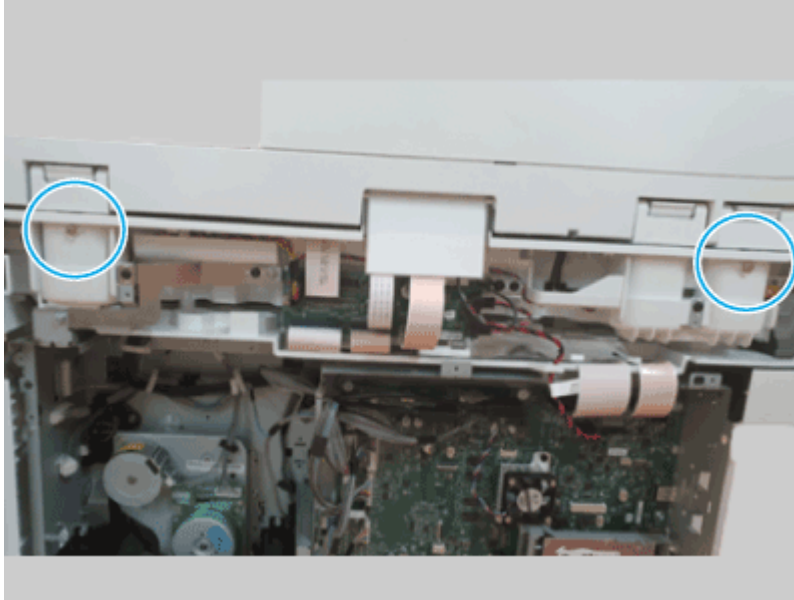
- White backing plate; 5QJ83-40019 (QTY 1)

- White backing suspension; J8J63-60135 (Qty 9)

 **NOTE:** Nine are required. Make sure the order quantity is nine.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1297 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector and two flat-flexible cables FFCs (callout 1).

 **CAUTION:** Disconnecting one of the FFCs requires opening a retaining clip (callout 2).


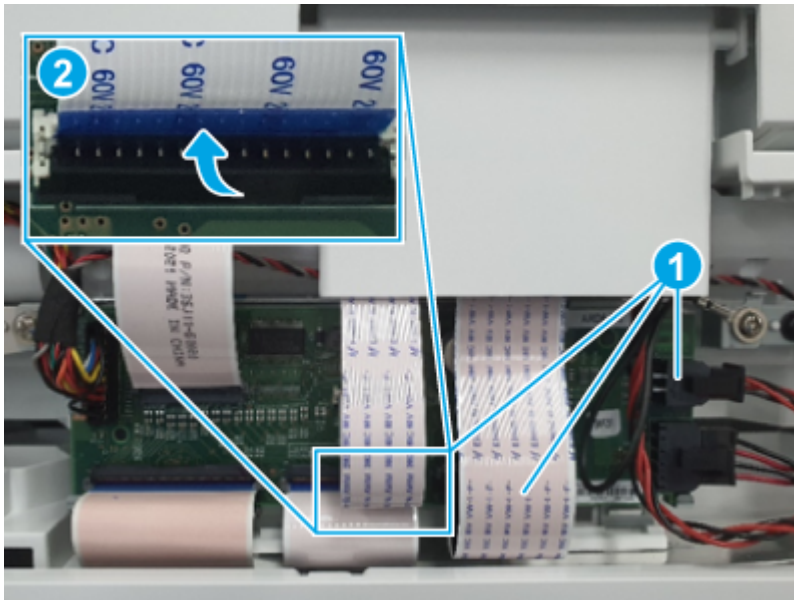
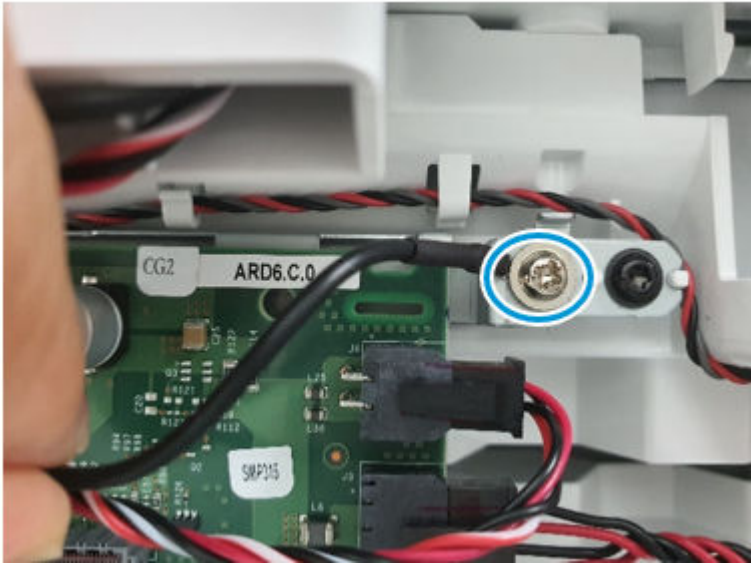
 **Reinstallation tip:** Use the special installation instructions in this topic to avoid damaging the FFCs.

Figure 6-1298 Disconnect three connectors



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1299 Remove the document feeder assembly



IMPORTANT: Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

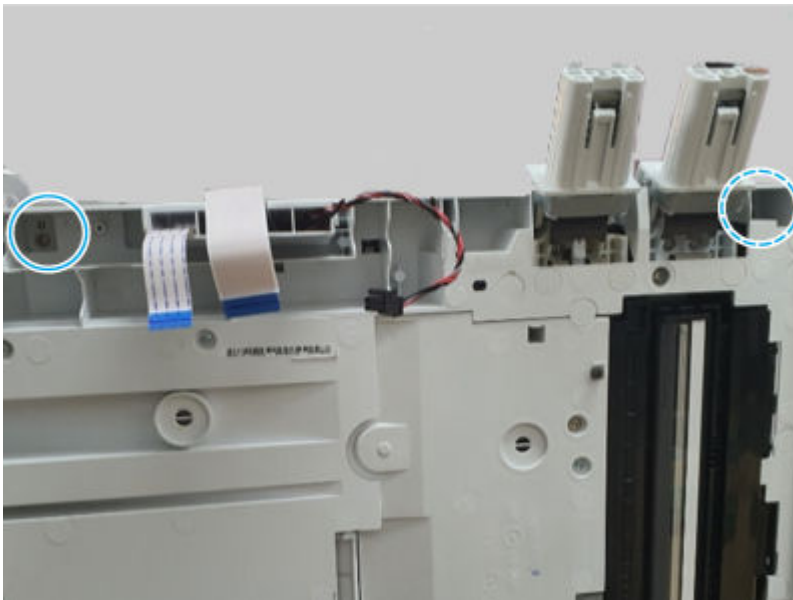
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

4. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1300 Remove two screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove two screws, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1301 Remove the cover

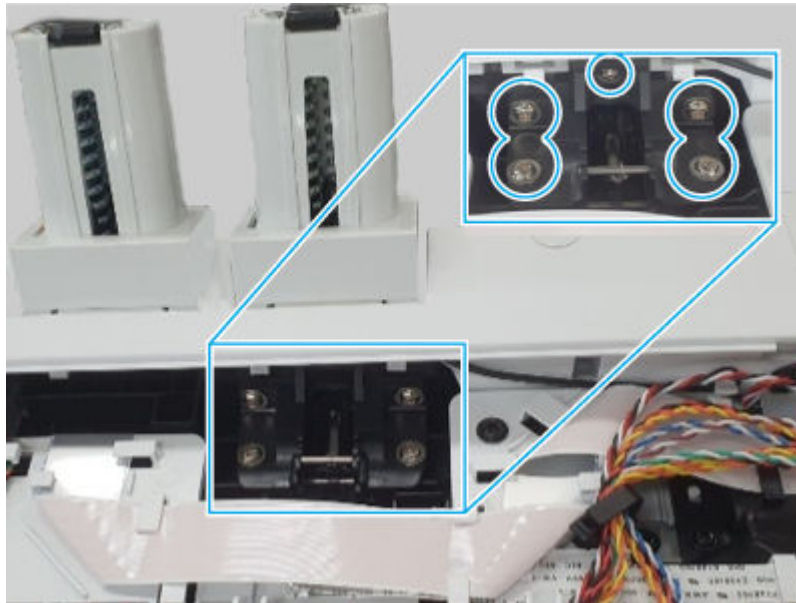


5. Remove the document feeder hinge damper module

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder hinge damper module.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the hinge damper module.

Figure 6-1302 Remove the hinge damper module

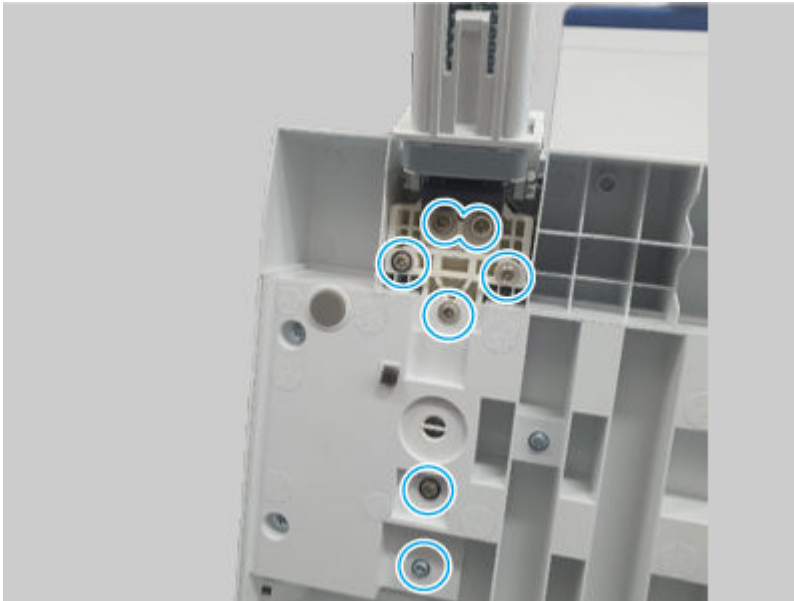


6. Remove the document feeder hinge kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder hinge kit.

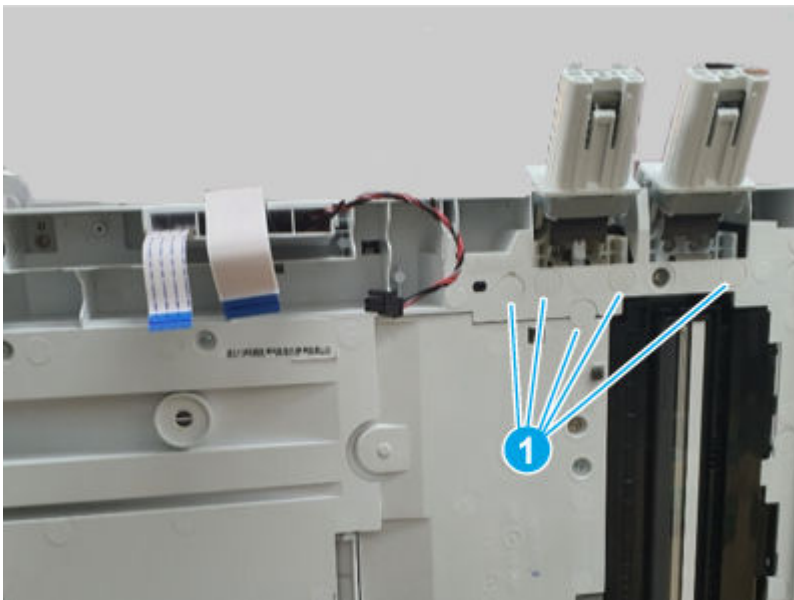
1. Remove seven screws, and then remove the hinge.

Figure 6-1303 Remove the hinge



2. Remove five screw caps.

Figure 6-1304 Remove five screw caps



3. Remove eleven screws, and then remove the hinges.

Figure 6-1305 Remove the hinges



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF hinge damper module 300sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder damper module.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-144 Part information

Part number	Part description
Z9Y05-60016	ADF hinge damper module

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder white backing

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Disconnect nine hooks, and then remove the white backing.

Figure 6-1306 Remove the white backing



2. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

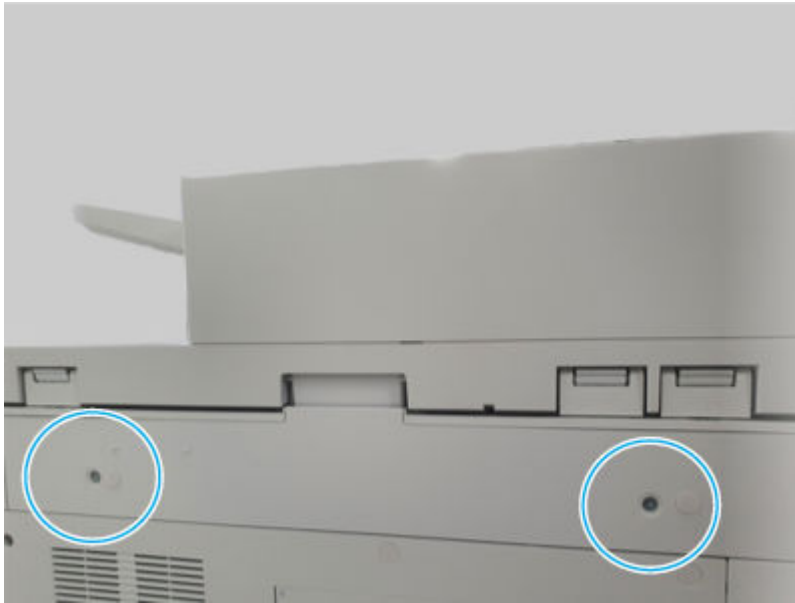
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1307 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1308 Remove two screws and the cover



3. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

To install a replacement document feeder only: The following parts are required:

- White backing plate; 5QJ83-40019 (QTY 1)
- White backing suspension; J8J63-60135 (Qty 9)

 **NOTE:** Nine are required. Make sure the order quantity is nine.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1309 Remove two screws

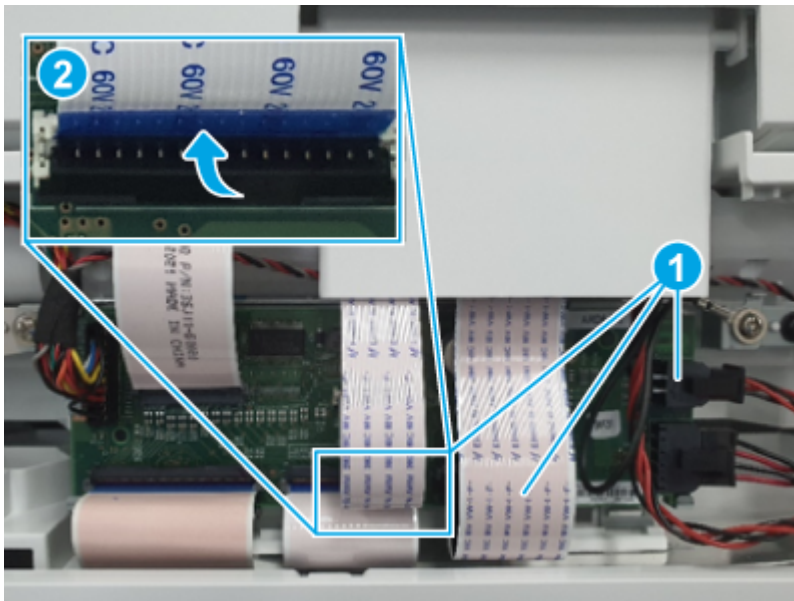


2. Disconnect one connector and two flat-flexible cables FFCs (callout 1).

CAUTION: Disconnecting one of the FFCs requires opening a retaining clip (callout 2).

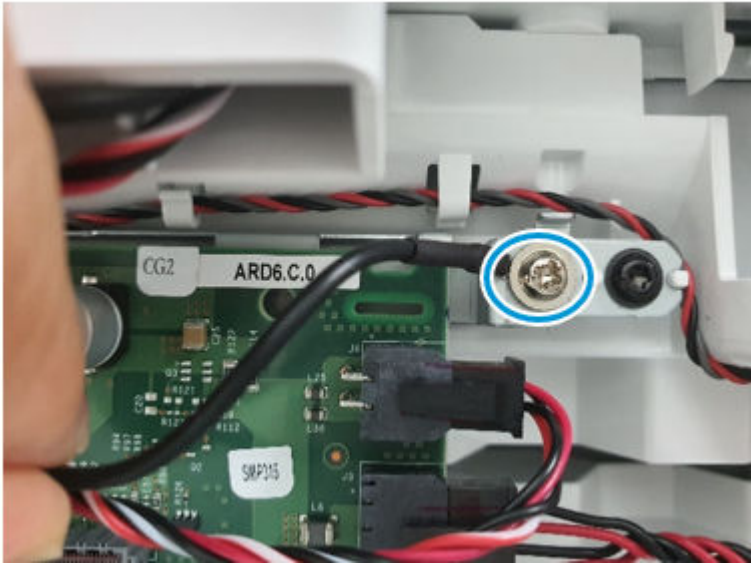
Reinstallation tip: Use the special installation instructions in this topic to avoid damaging the FFCs.


Figure 6-1310 Disconnect three connectors



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1311 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

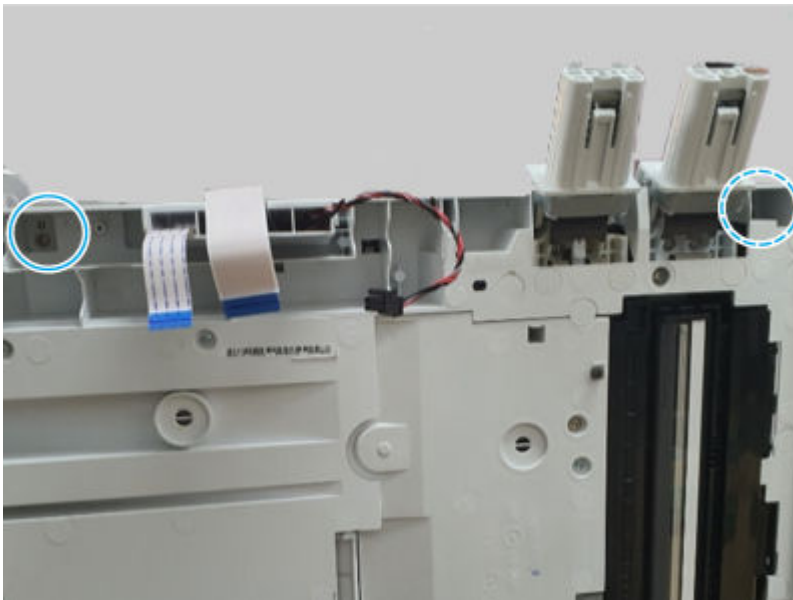
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

4. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

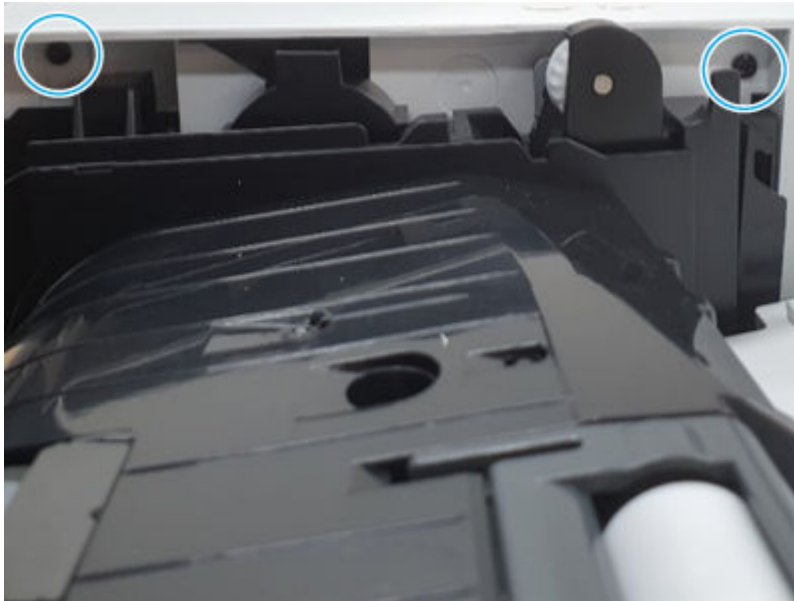
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1312 Remove two screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove two screws, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1313 Remove the cover

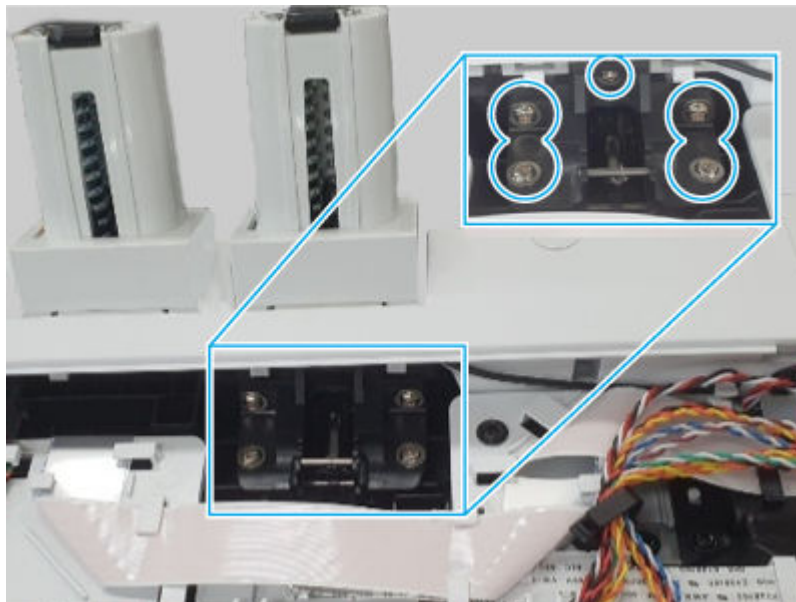


5. Remove the document feeder hinge damper module

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder hinge damper module.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the hinge damper module.


Figure 6-1314 Remove the hinge damper module



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

200-Sheet ADF for dn bundle

Learn about ADF parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: ADF (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder.

 **IMPORTANT:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes


Service level: Medium

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

 **NOTE:** The whole unit replacement parts below include the Kit - white backing A3 (5QJ90-67005).

Table 6-145 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67011	Automatic document feeder (ADF) (Growler + ENT)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

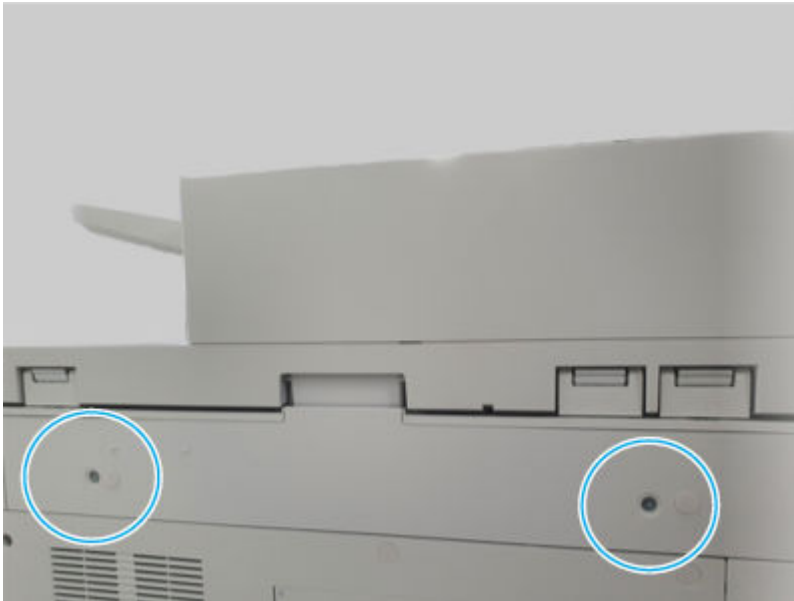
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1315 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1316 Remove two screws and the cover

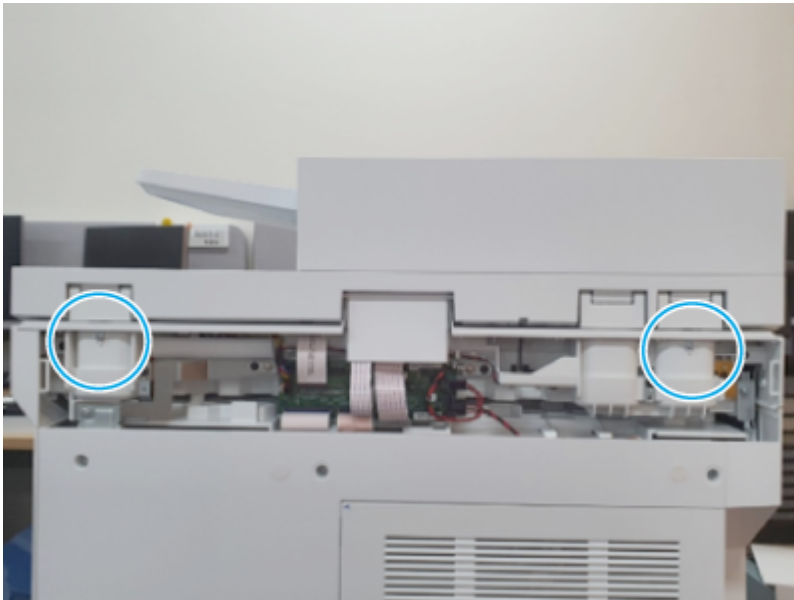


2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1317 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


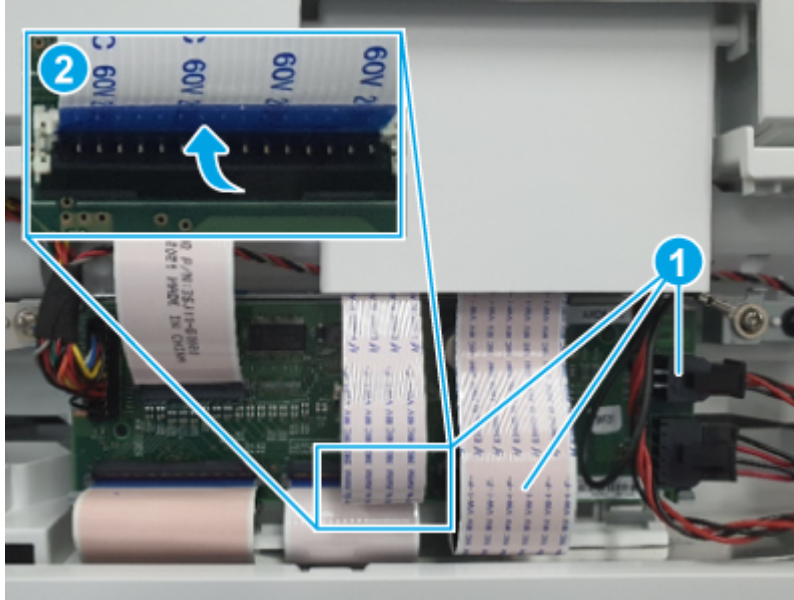
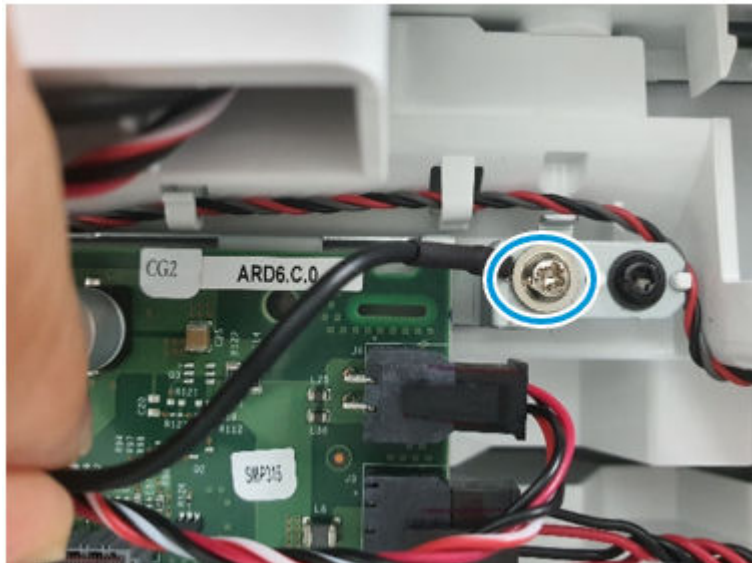
 **NOTE:** Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-1318 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1319 Remove the document feeder assembly




 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

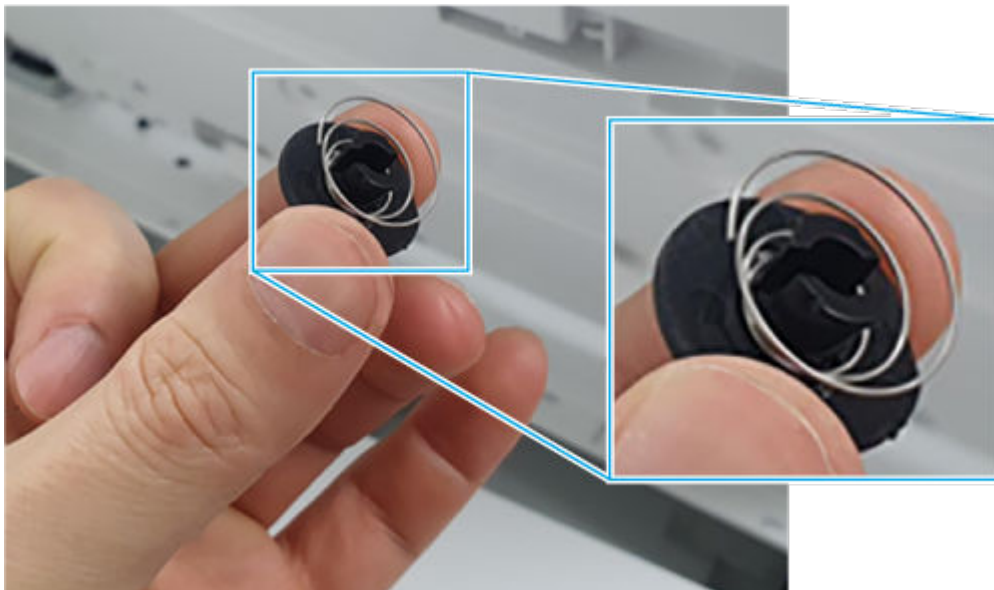
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

4. Special Installation Instructions: White backing plate

Use the following instructions to install the white backing plate

1. If the spring and suspension clip have become separated during shipping, install the spring on the clip as shown below.

Figure 6-1320 Spring installed on the suspension clip



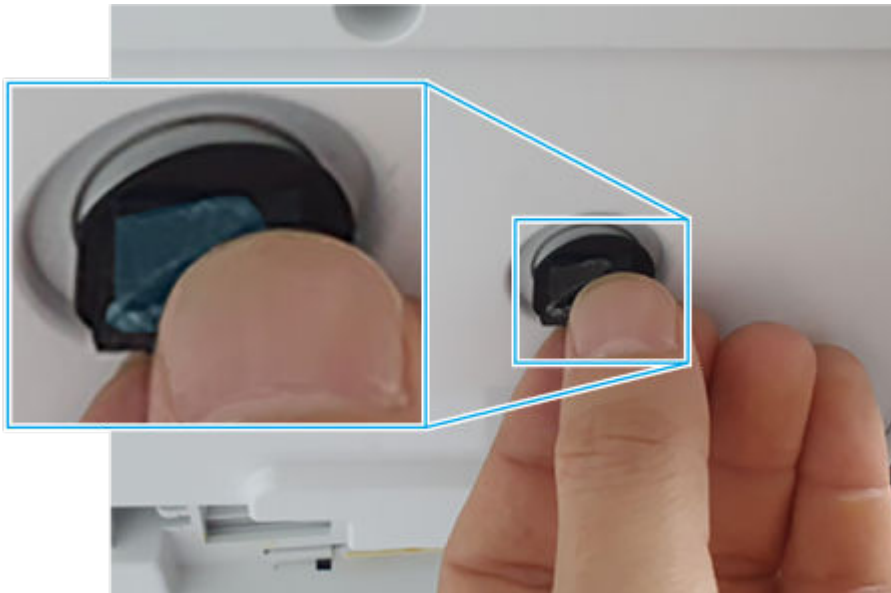
2. Position a suspension clip near the mounting feature on the document feeder, and then push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-1321 Install the suspension clip



3. Remove the protective film from the double-sided tape on the suspension clip.

Figure 6-1322 Expose the double-sided tape



4. Repeat these steps for the remaining eight suspension clips.

Figure 6-1323 Install the remaining suspension clips



5. Place the white backing plate on the flatbed glass.


 **NOTE:** One corner of the white backing plate has an arrow embossed on it. Place that corner towards the rear left corner of the flatbed glass.

Figure 6-1324 Place the white backing plate



6. Position the white backing plate so that the corner with the embossed arrow fits tightly up against the flatbed glass frame.


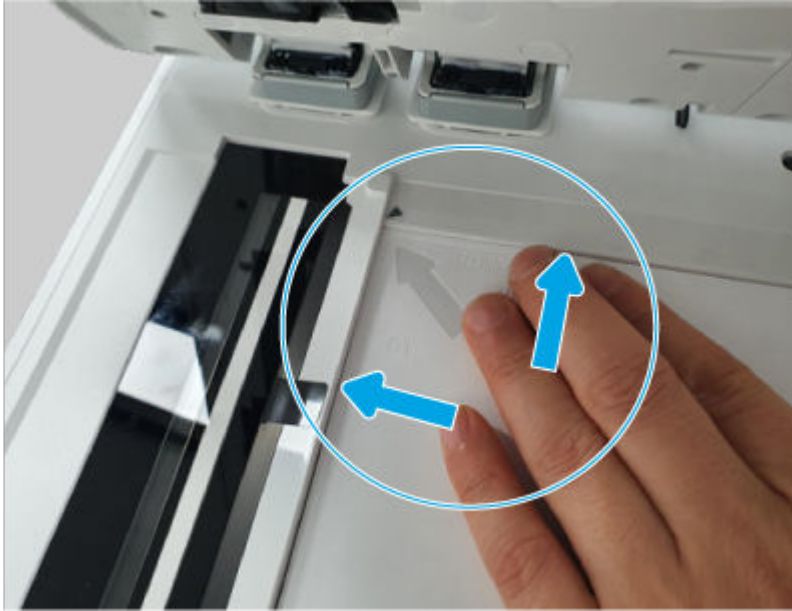
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the rear and left edges of the plate are firmly against the flatbed frame.

Figure 6-1325 Register the white backing plate against the frame



7. Fully close the document feeder to install the white backing plate.


 **NOTE:** Open the document feeder and make sure the white backing plate is firmly attached.

Figure 6-1326 Close the document feeder



Removal and replacement: ADF CMF panel

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder color panel.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-146 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40056	ADF CMF panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

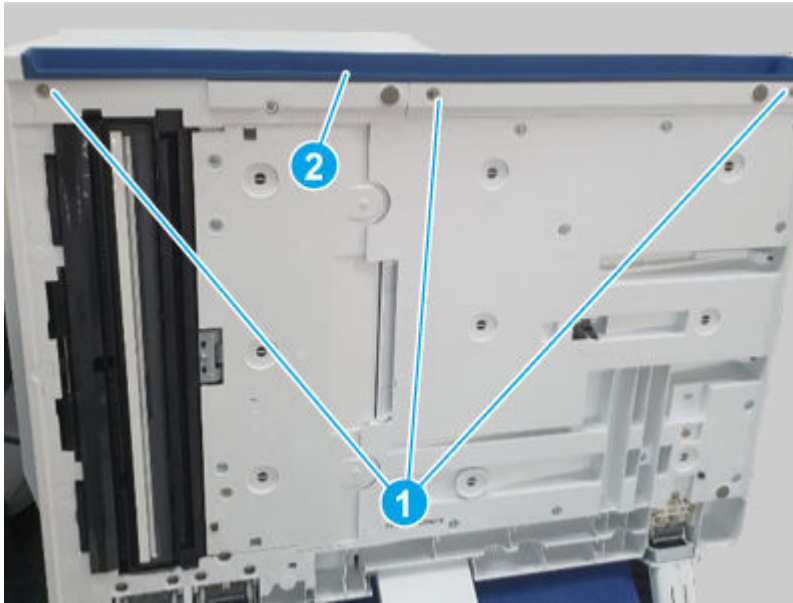
1. Remove the document feeder color panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder color panel.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Remove three screws (callout 1), release four tabs, and then remove the document feeder color panel (callout 2).

Figure 6-1327 Remove the color panel



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF white backing kit (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder white backing plate.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-147 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67005	Kit - white backing A3

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder white backing

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Disconnect nine hooks, and then remove the white backing.

Figure 6-1328 Remove the white backing



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



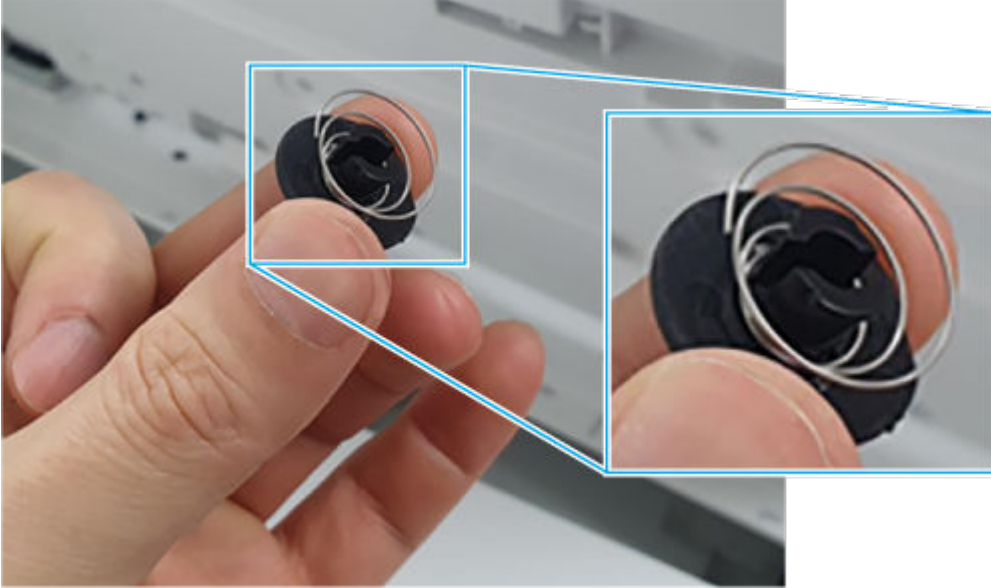
NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

3. Special installation instructions: White backing plate

Use the following instructions to install the white backing plate

1. If the spring and suspension clip have become separated during shipping, install the spring on the clip as shown below.

Figure 6-1329 Spring installed on the suspension clip



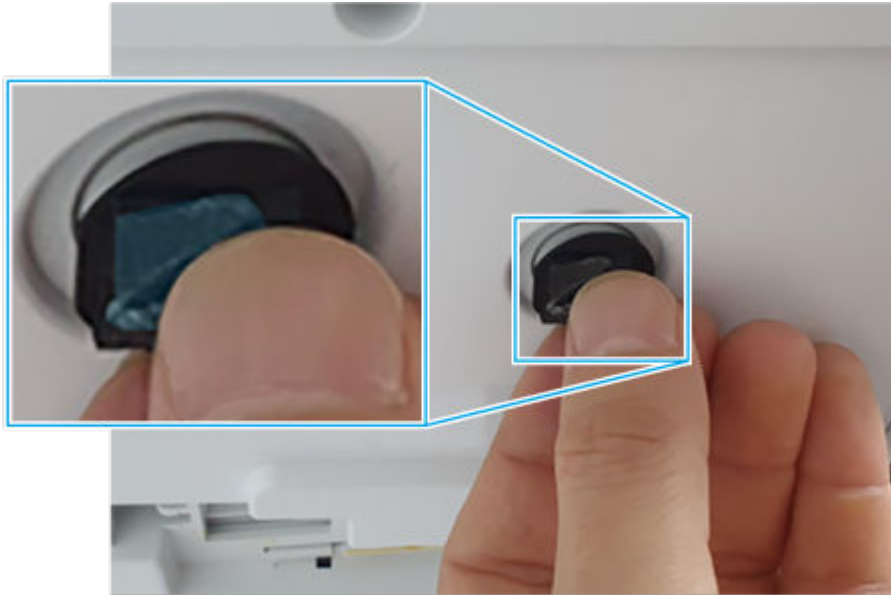
2. Position a suspension clip near the mounting feature on the document feeder, and then push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-1330 Install the suspension clip



3. Remove the protective film from the double-sided tape on the suspension clip.

Figure 6-1331 Expose the double-sided tape



4. Repeat these steps for the remaining eight suspension clips.

Figure 6-1332 Install the remaining suspension clips



5. Place the white backing plate on the flatbed glass.



NOTE: One corner of the white backing plate has an arrow embossed on it. Place that corner towards the rear left corner of the flatbed glass.

Figure 6-1333 Place the white backing plate

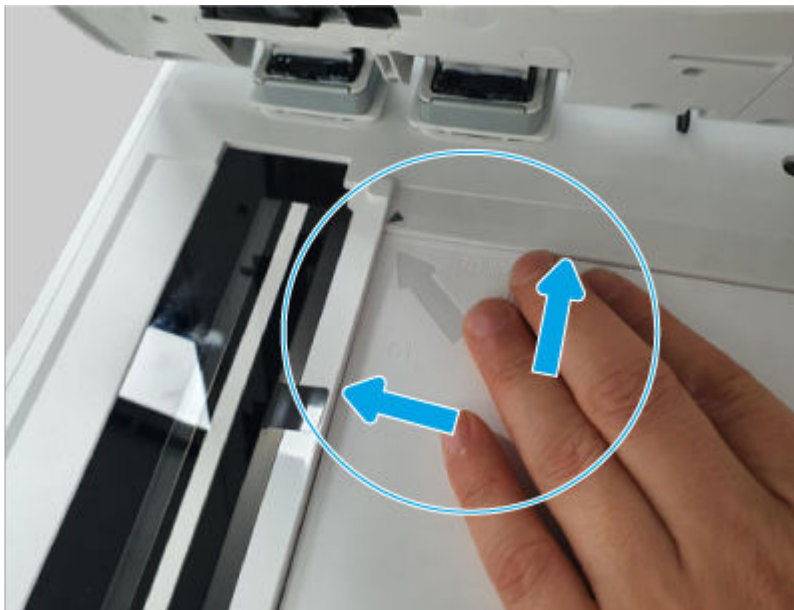


6. Position the white backing plate so that the corner with the embossed arrow fits tightly up against the flatbed glass frame.



NOTE: Make sure that the rear and left edges of the plate are firmly against the flatbed frame.

Figure 6-1334 Register the white backing plate against the frame

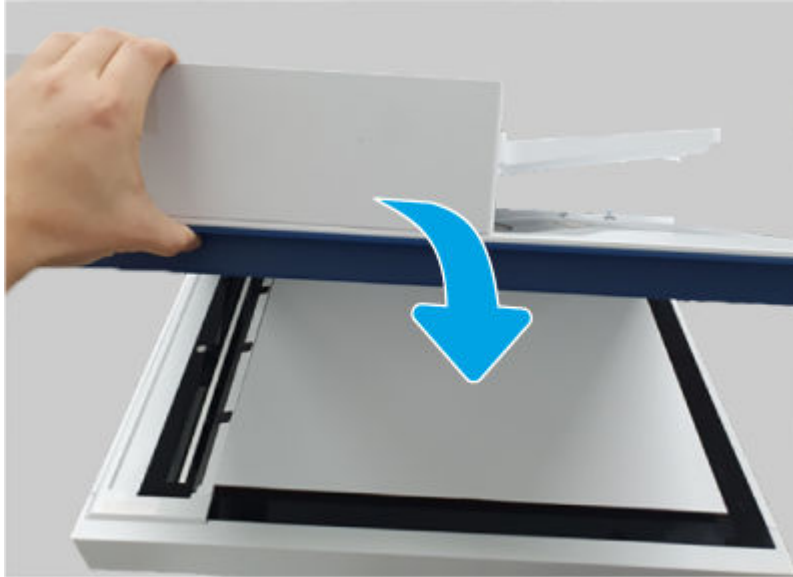


7. Fully close the document feeder to install the white backing plate.



NOTE: Open the document feeder and make sure the white backing plate is firmly attached.

Figure 6-1335 Close the document feeder



Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder pickup roller kit.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-148 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5851-7202	ADF roller kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.

- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder pickup roller kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder pickup roller kit.

1. Release the latch, and then open the ADF top door.

Figure 6-1336 Opne the cover



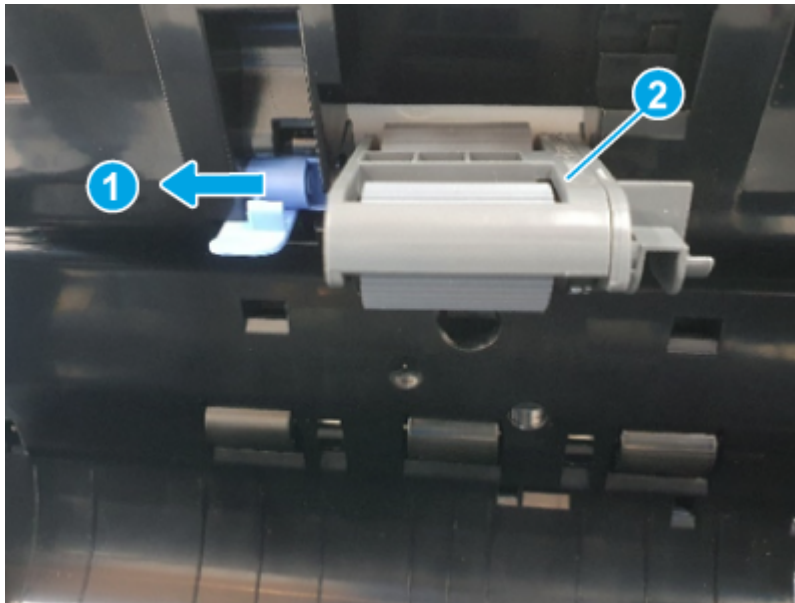
2. Rotate the blue locking lever down.

Figure 6-1337 Rotate the lever



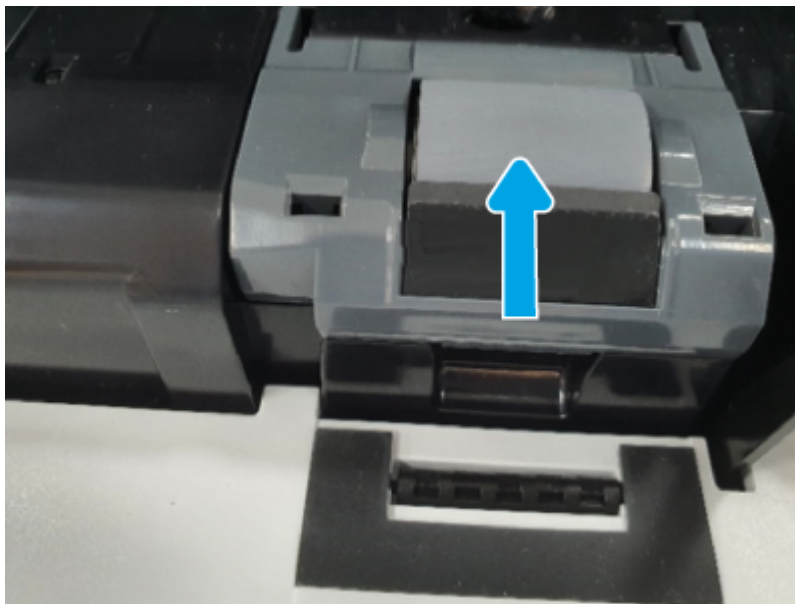
3. Slide the locking lever toward the front of the printer (callout 1), and then remove the pick roller assembly (callout 2).

Figure 6-1338 Remove the roller assembly



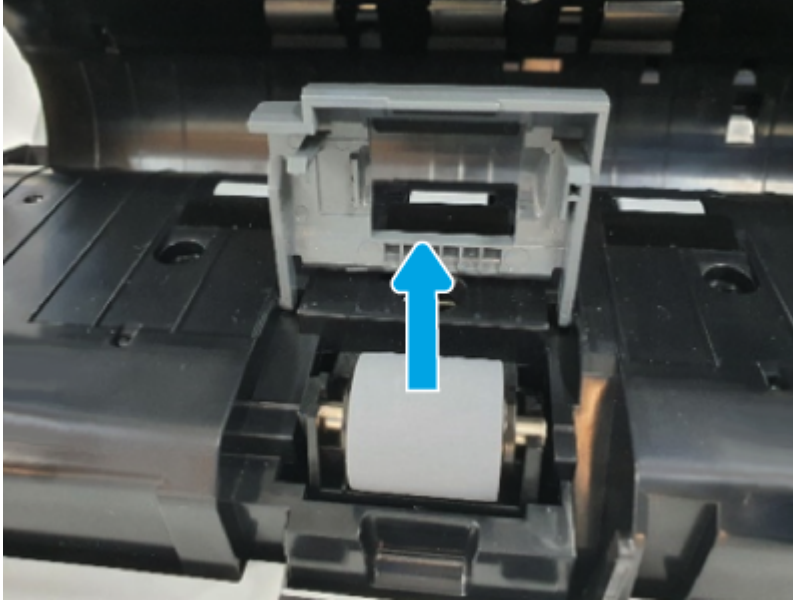
4. Open the separation roller cover.

Figure 6-1339 Open the cover



5. Remove the separation roller.

Figure 6-1340 Remove the roller



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF image scanner

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder image scanner.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-149 Part information

Part number	Part description
Z9Y05-60047	ADF image scanner

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder image scanner

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder image scanner.

1. Open the ADF top cover.
2. Release the document feeder image scanner, and then slightly separate it from the ADF.


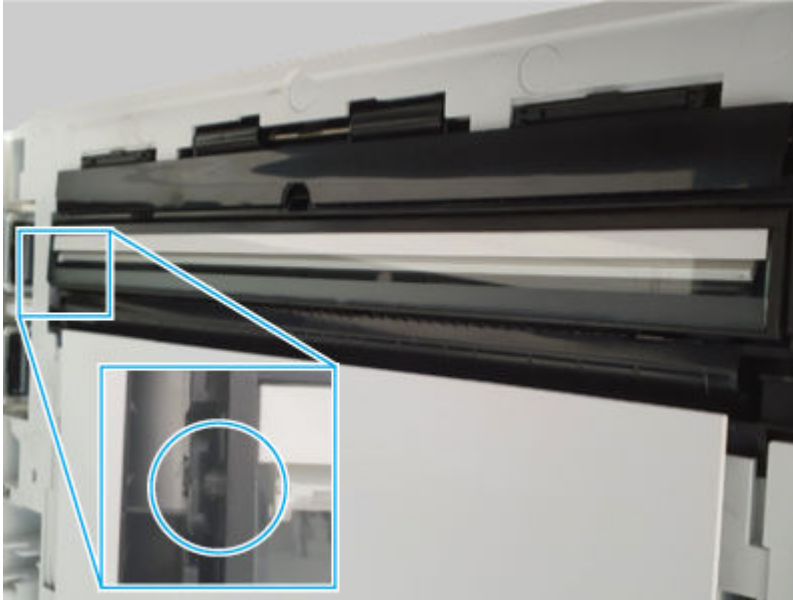
 **NOTE:** Do not attempt to completely remove the image scanner. It is still connected to the ADF by a flat-flexible cable (FFC).

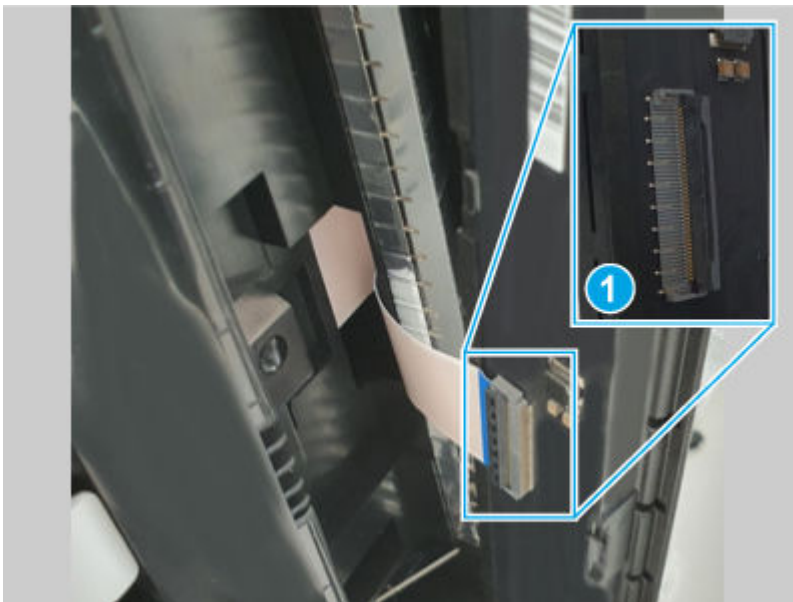
Figure 6-1341 Release the image scanner



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the image scanner.

 **NOTE:** Release the connector locking clip (callout 2) to remove the FFC.


Figure 6-1342 Remove the image scanner



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF PCA (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder printed circuit assembly (PCA).


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-150 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67013	ADF PCA_ENT EASE board
5QJ90-67008	ADF PCA_WF EASE board (for flow)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

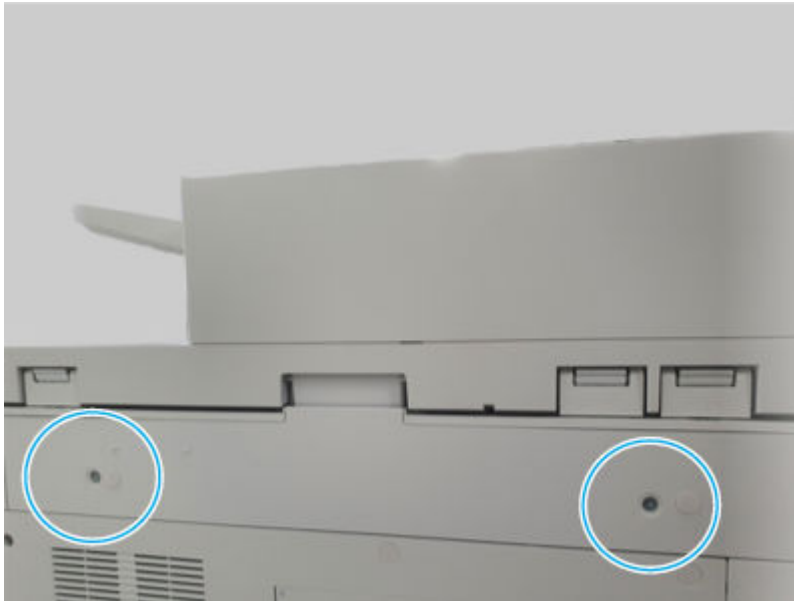
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1343 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1344 Remove two screws and the cover

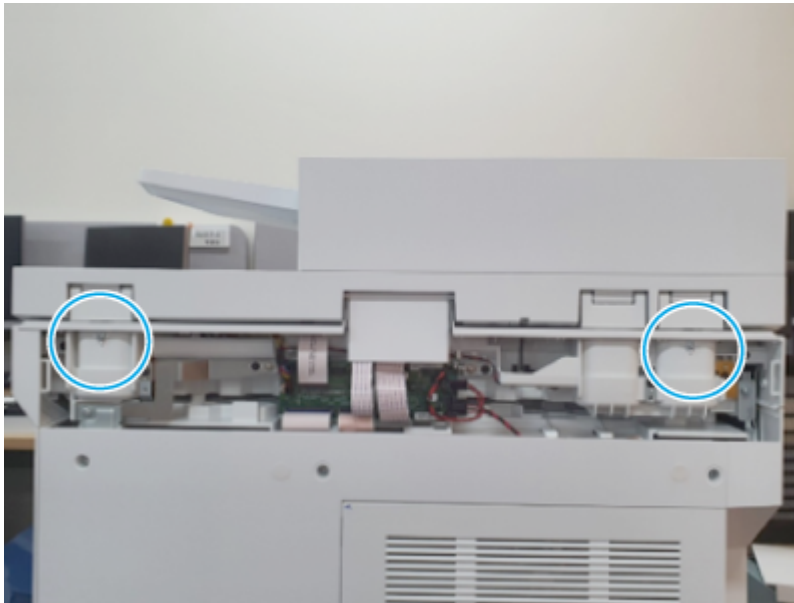


2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1345 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


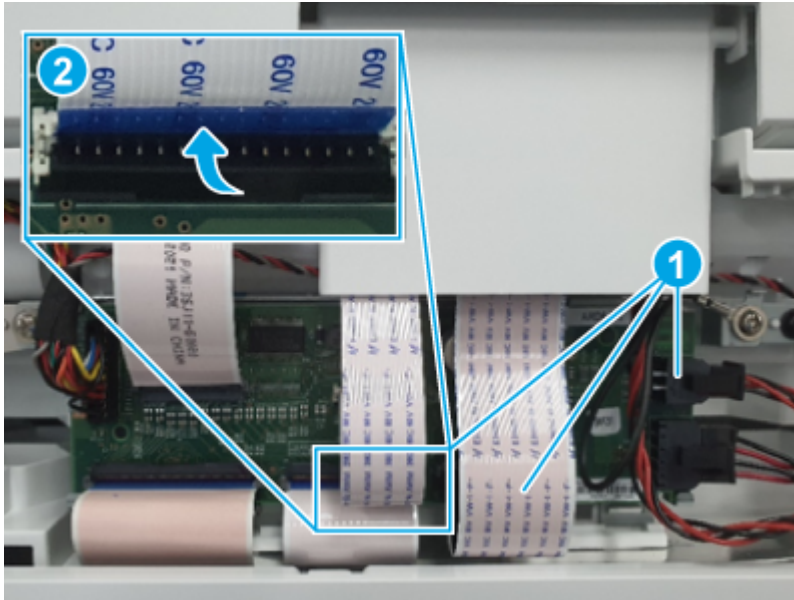
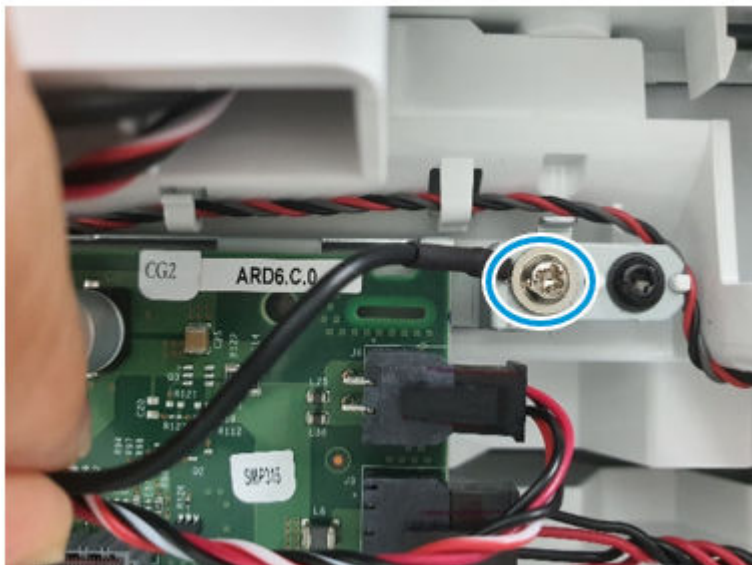
 **NOTE:** Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-1346 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1347 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

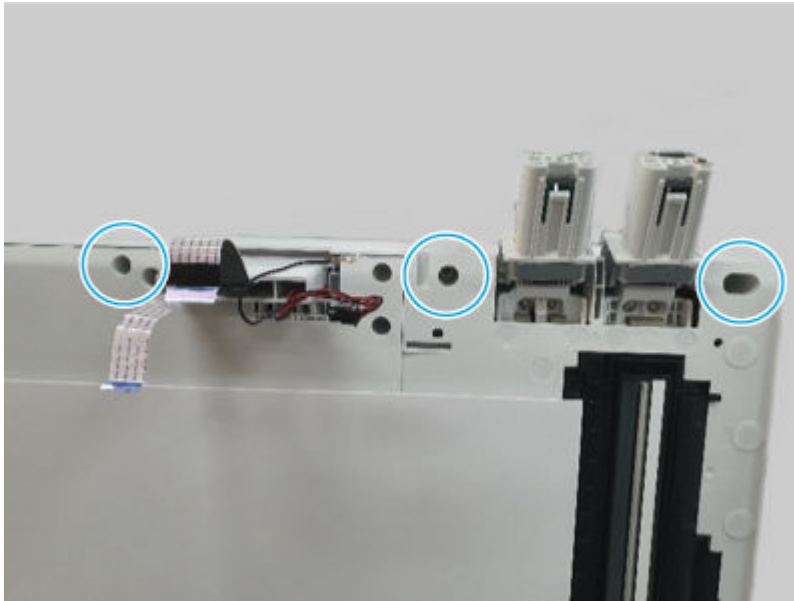
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1348 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove one screw, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1349 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder PCA.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors.


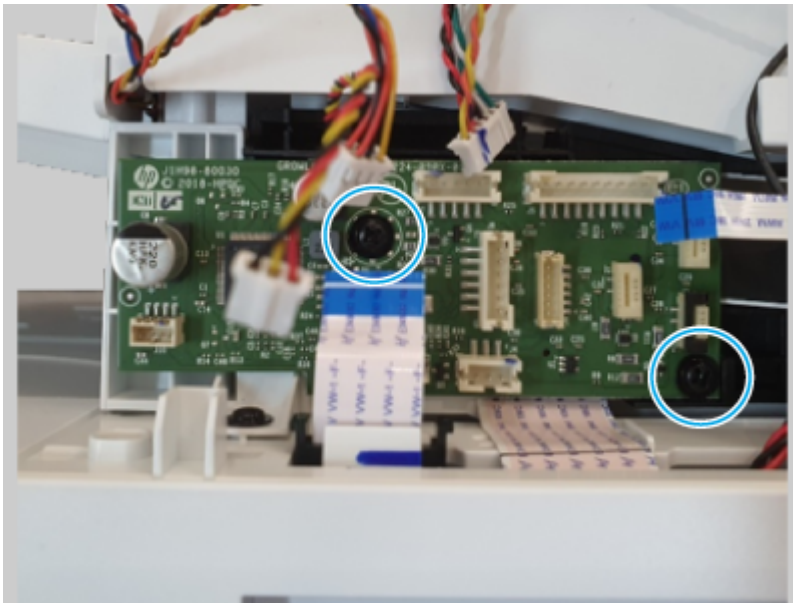
 **NOTE:** One flat-flexible cable (FFC; callout 1) is connected to the PCA with a zero-insertion force (ZIF) connector. Release the connector locking clip to remove the FFC.

Figure 6-1350 Disconnect connectors



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA

Figure 6-1351 Remove the PCA



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF flat-flexible cable (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder flat-flexible cable (FFC).


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-151 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67009	ADF flat-flexible cable

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

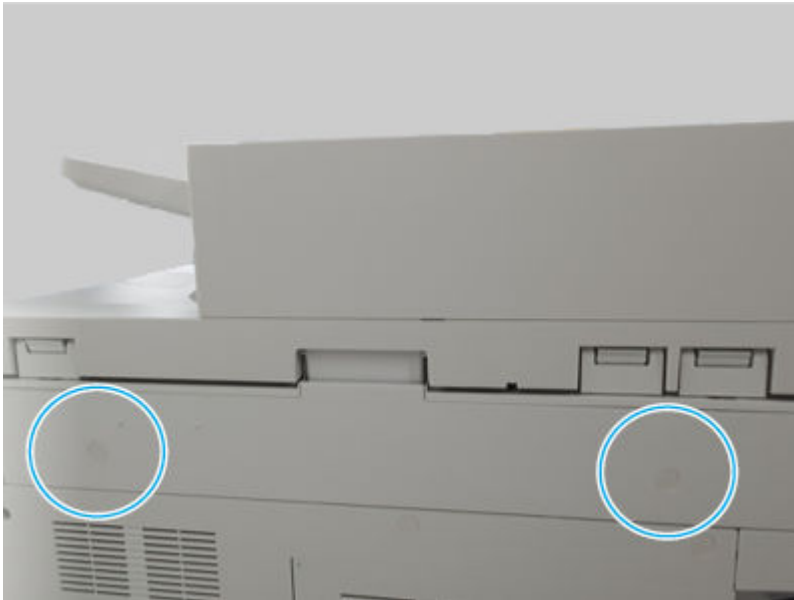
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

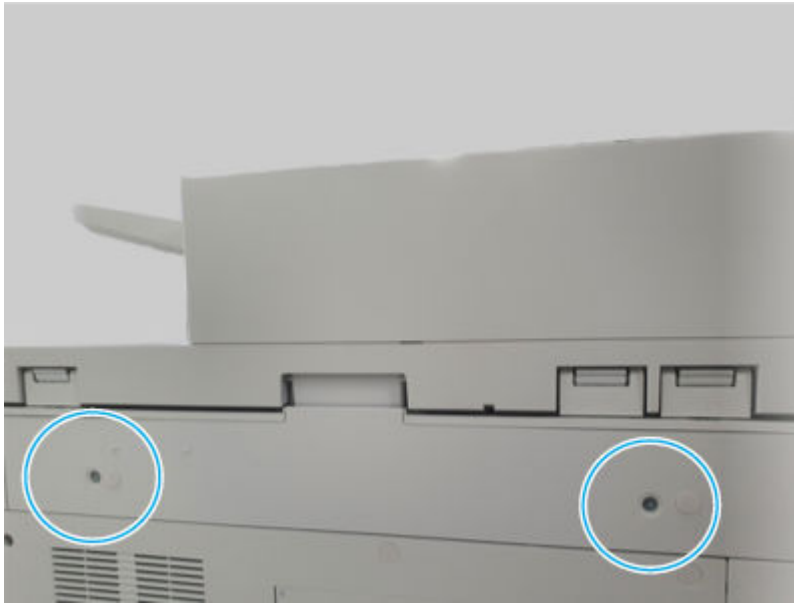
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1352 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1353 Remove two screws and the cover

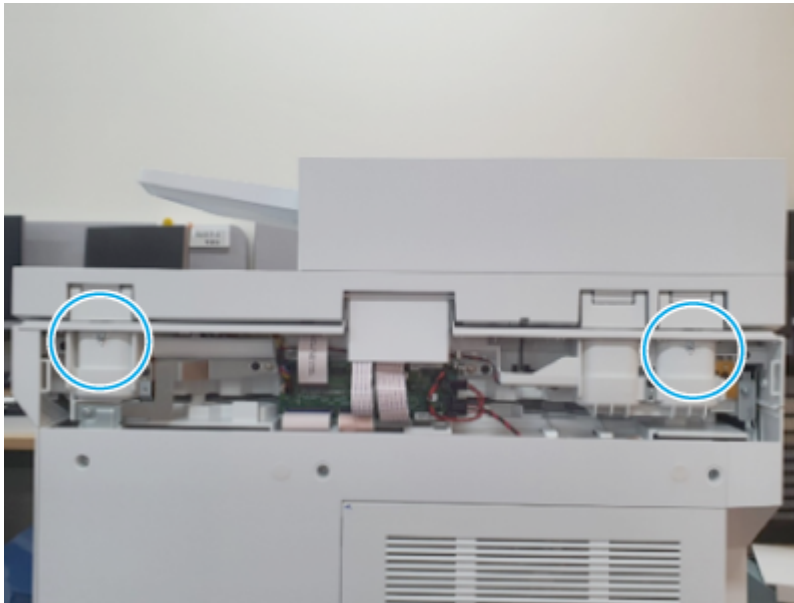


2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1354 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


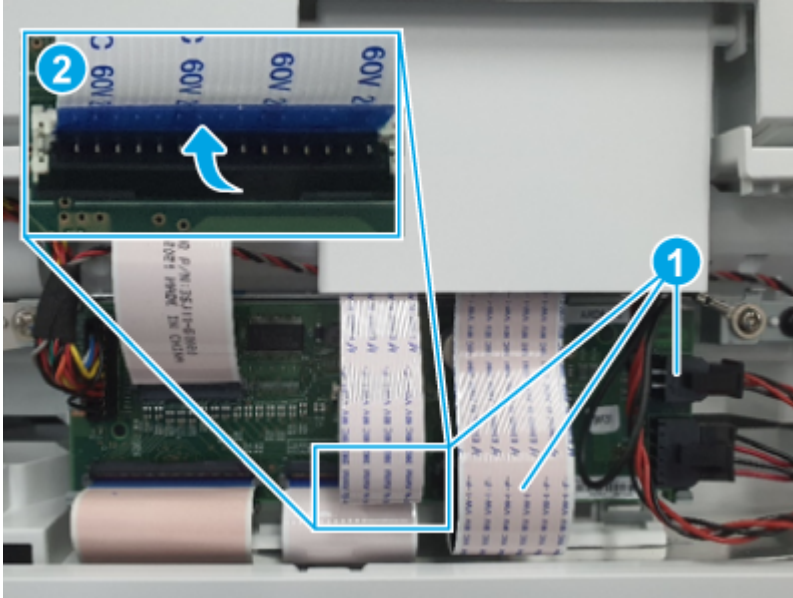
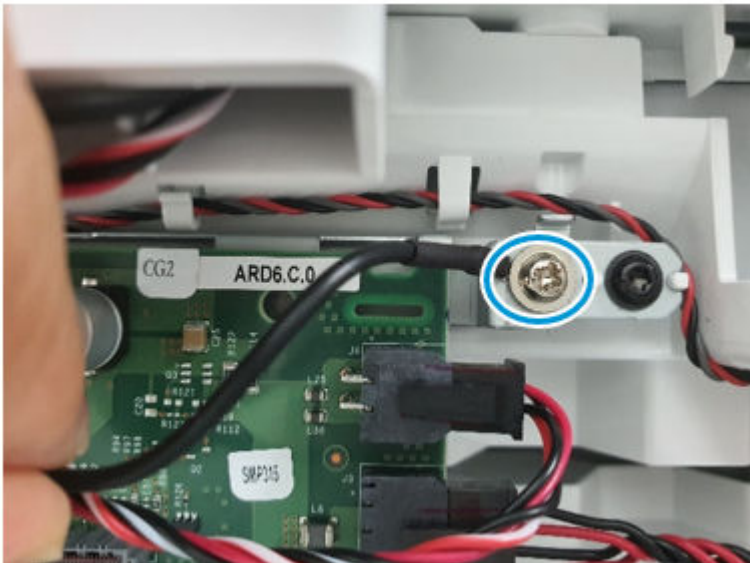
 **NOTE:** Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-1355 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1356 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

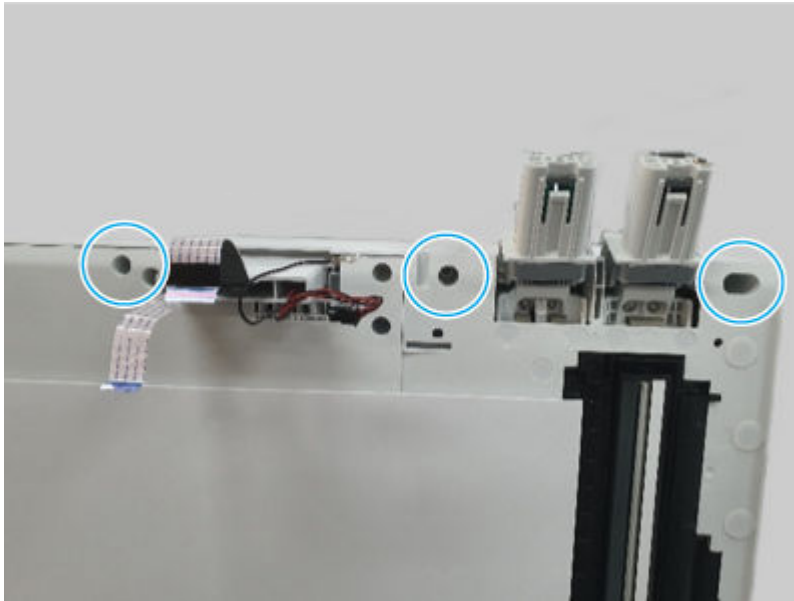
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1357 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove one screw, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1358 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder FFC

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder FFC.

1. Disconnect the FFC.


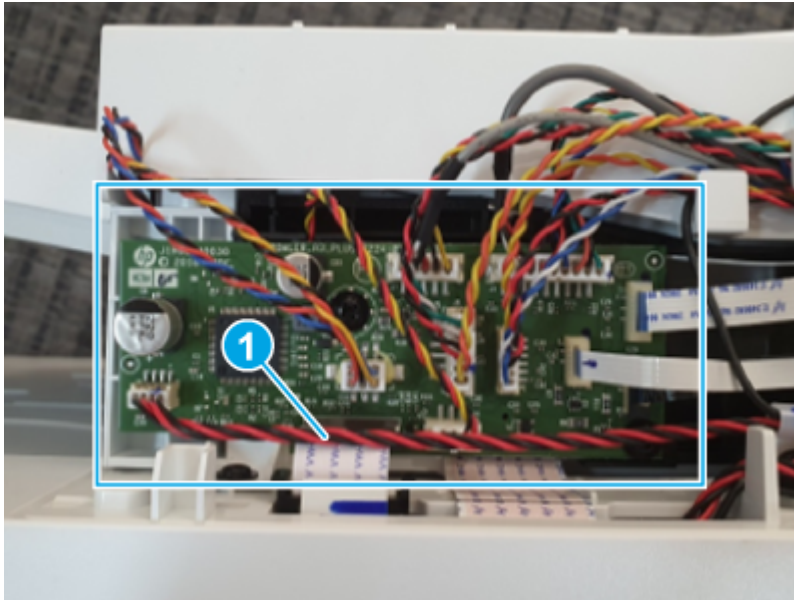
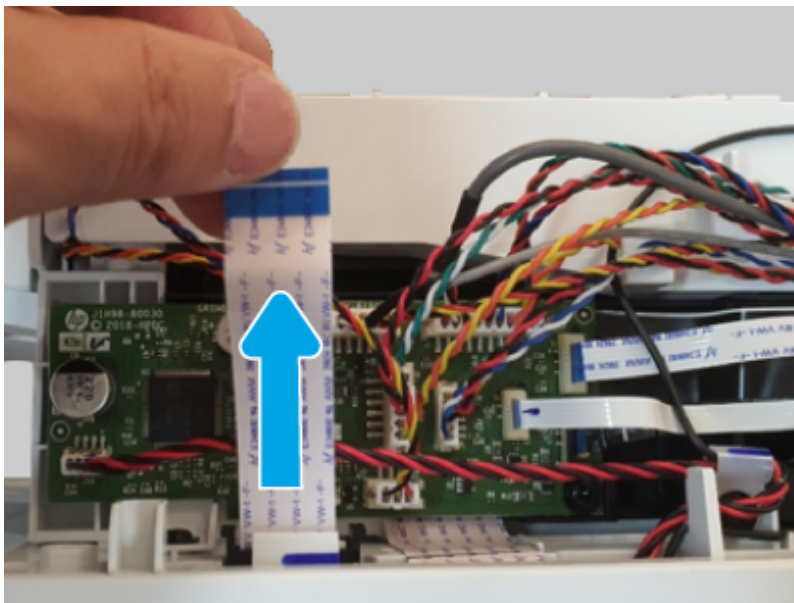
 **NOTE:** The FFC (callout 1) is connected to the PCA with a zero-insertion force (ZIF) connector. Release the connector locking clip to remove the FFC.

Figure 6-1359 Disconnect the FFC



2. Remove the FFC.

Figure 6-1360 Remove the FFC



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF power cable (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder power cable.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-152 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67010	ADF power cable

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

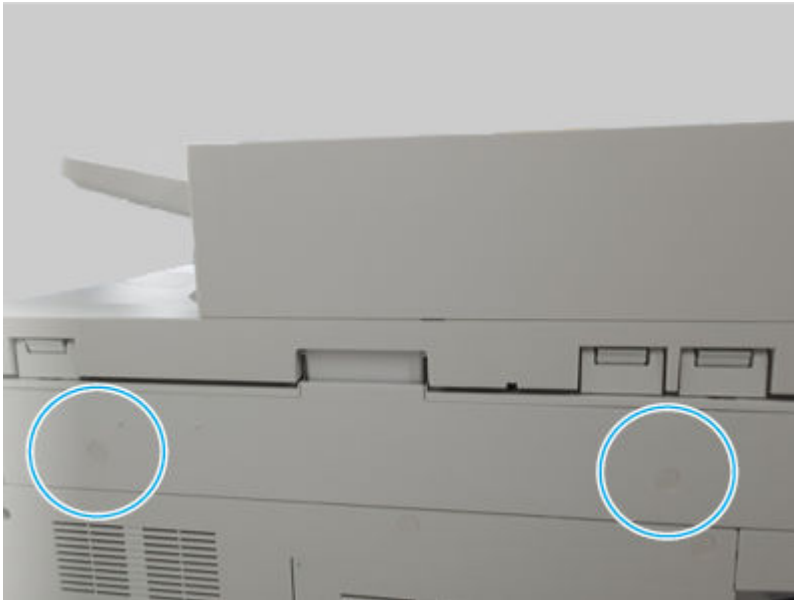
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

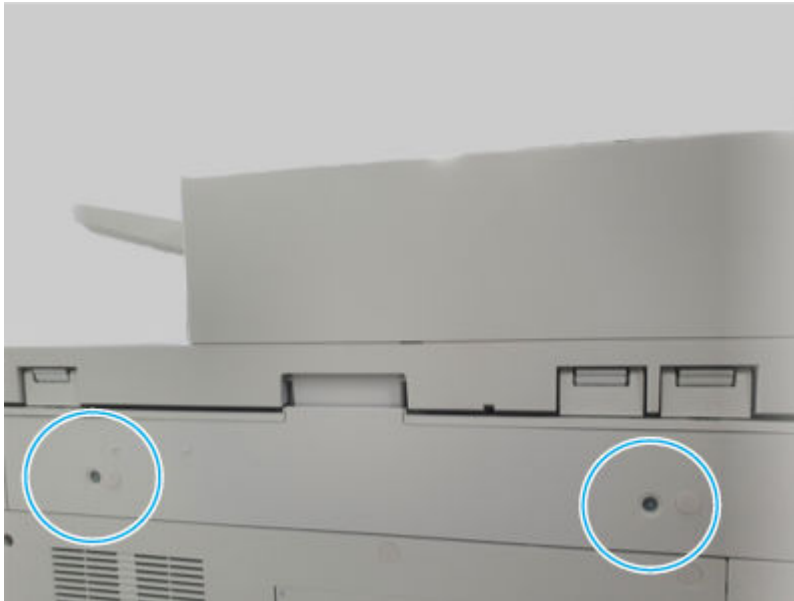
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1361 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1362 Remove two screws and the cover

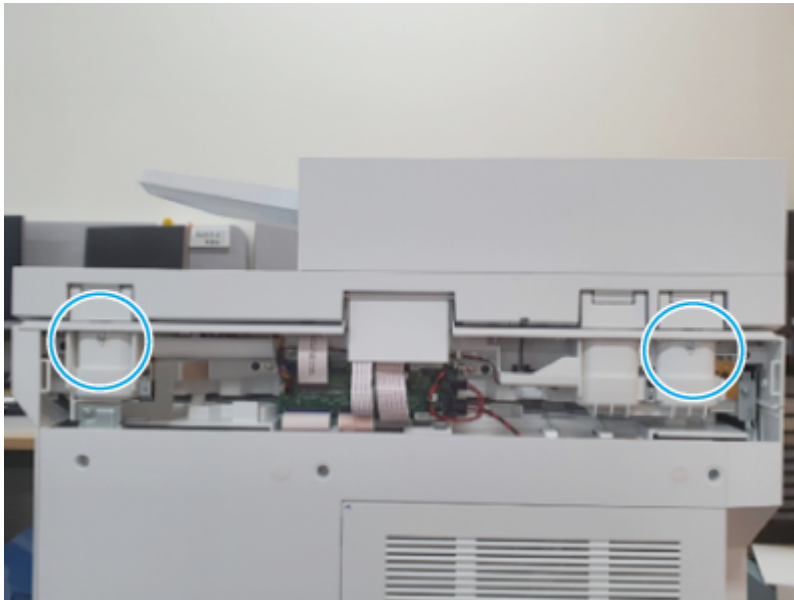


2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1363 Remove two screws

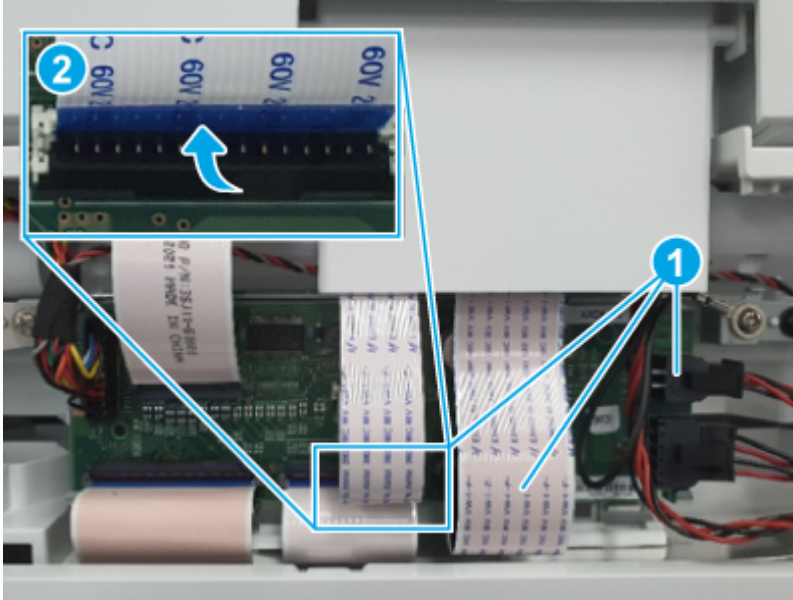


2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).



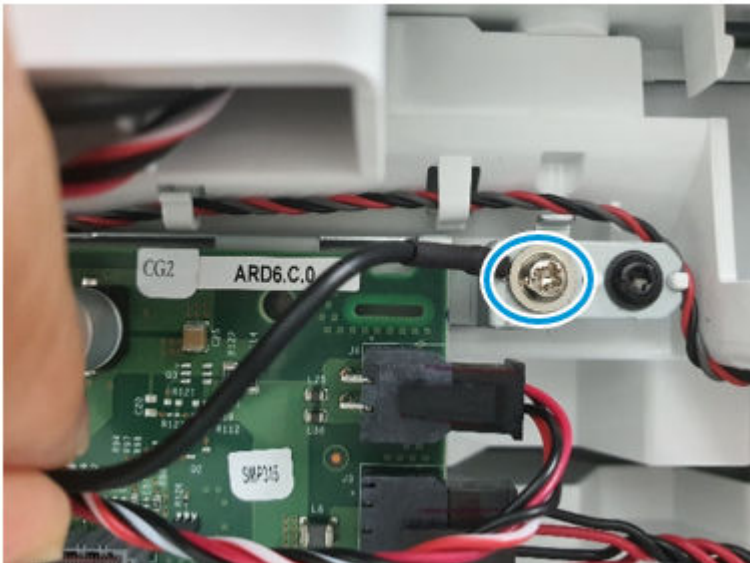
NOTE: Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-1364 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1365 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

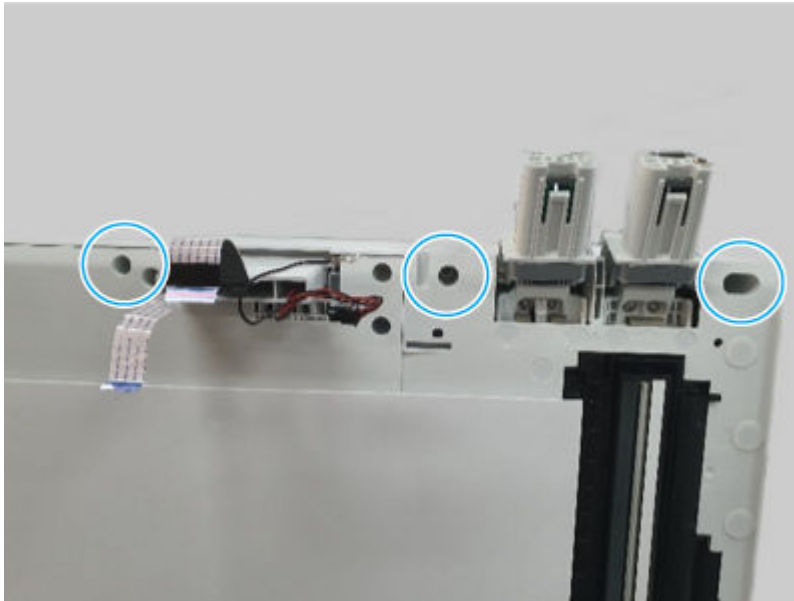
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1366 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove one screw, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1367 Remove the cover

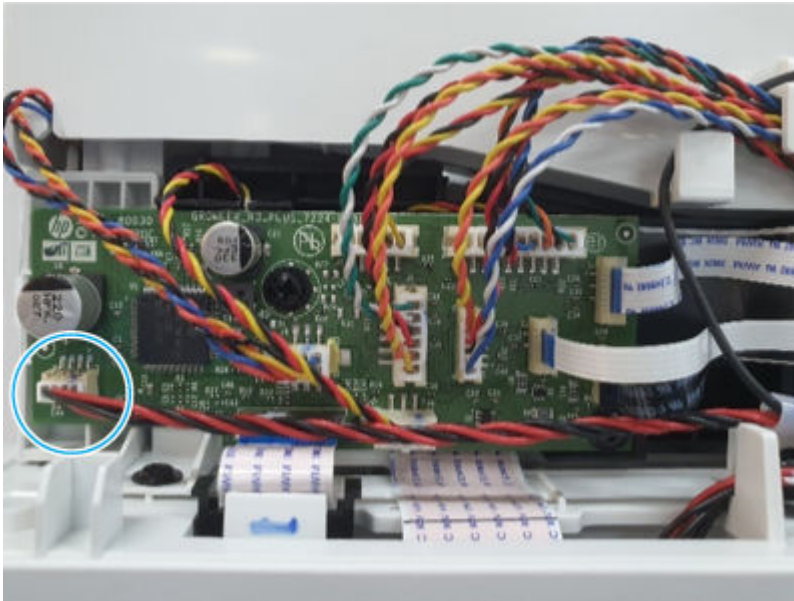


4. Remove the document feeder power cable

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder power cable.

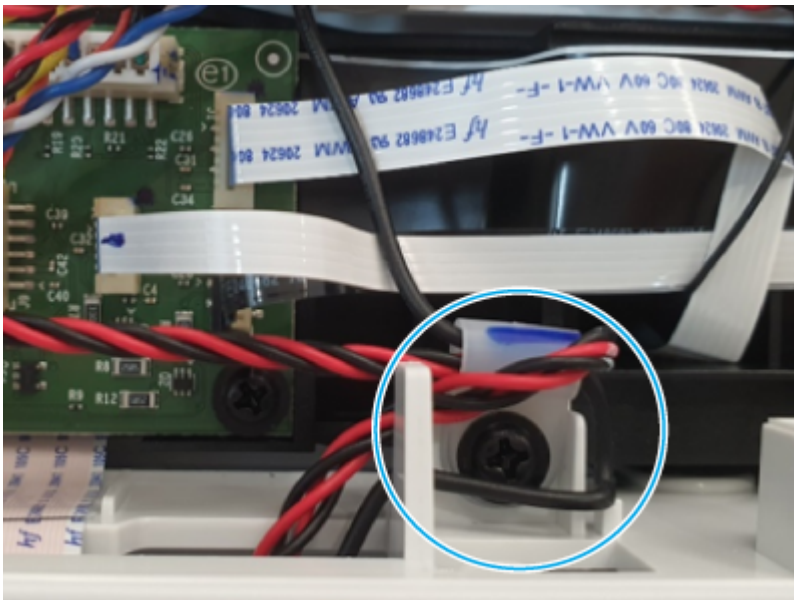
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1368 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cable.


Figure 6-1369 Remove the cable



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF hinge kit (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder hinge kit.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-153 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67004	ADF hinge kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

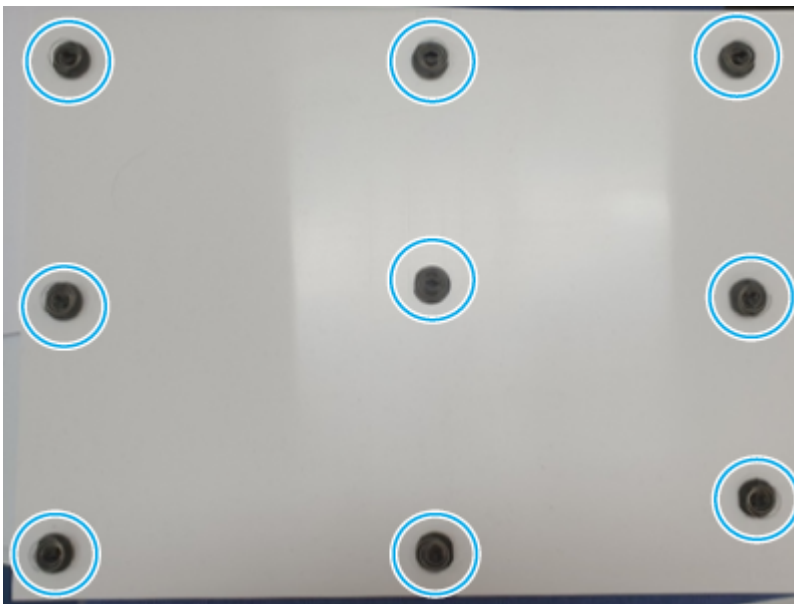
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder white backing

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.
2. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the white backing mounting clips.

Figure 6-1370 Locate the clips



3. Disconnect nine clips, and then remove the white backing.

Figure 6-1371 Remove the white backing



2. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

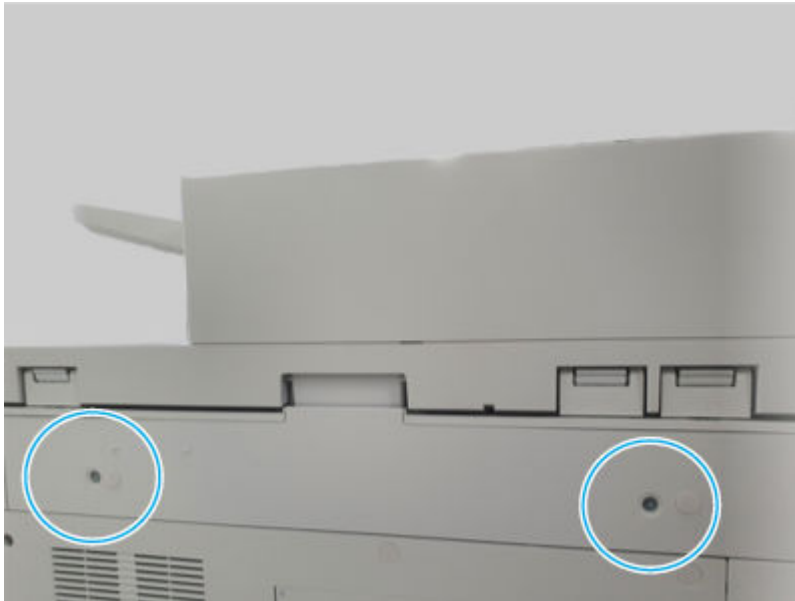
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1372 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1373 Remove two screws and the cover

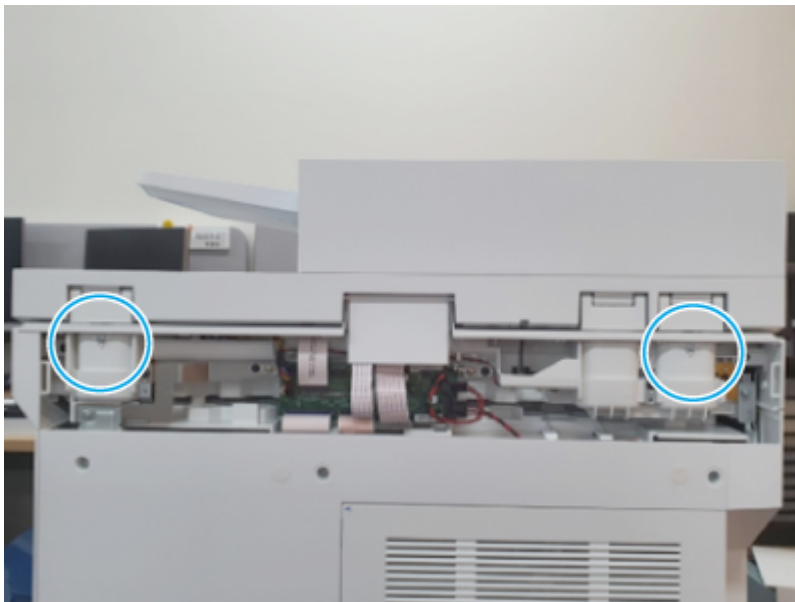


3. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1374 Remove two screws

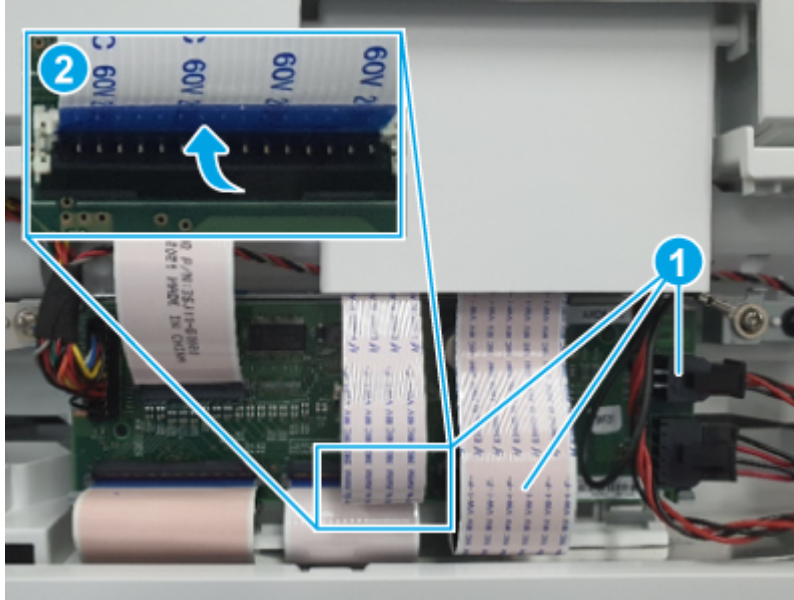


2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).



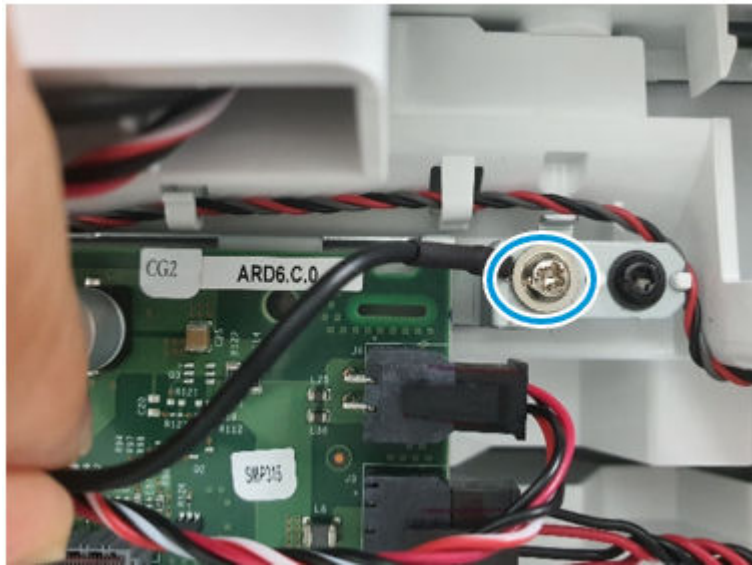
NOTE: Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-1375 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1376 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

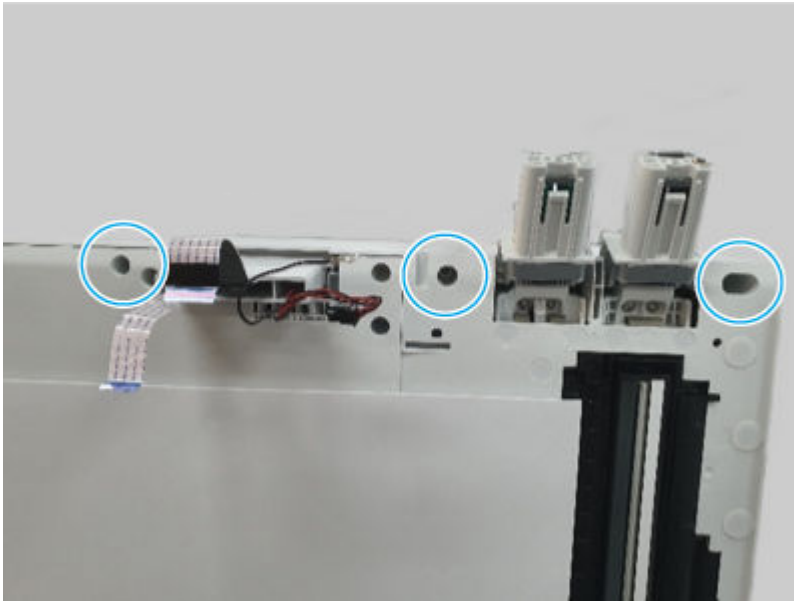
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

4. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1377 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove one screw, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1378 Remove the cover

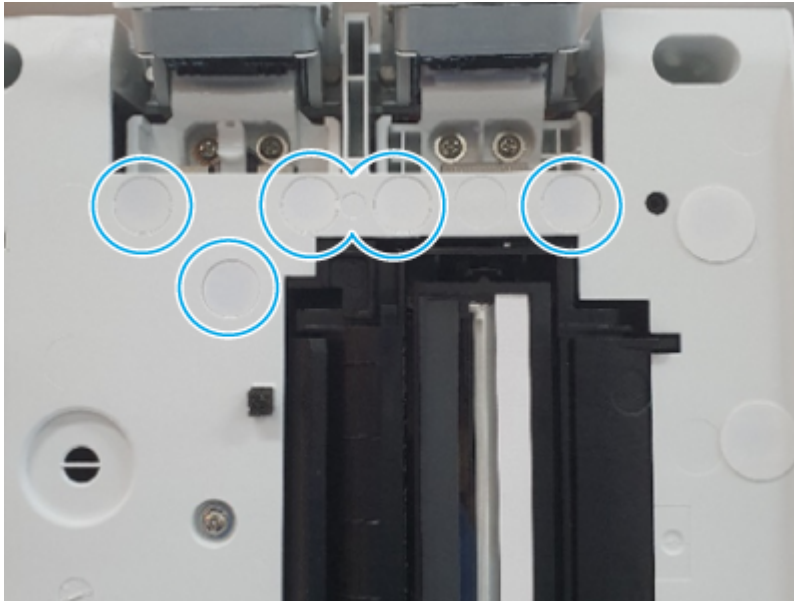


5. Remove the document feeder hinge kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder hinge kit.

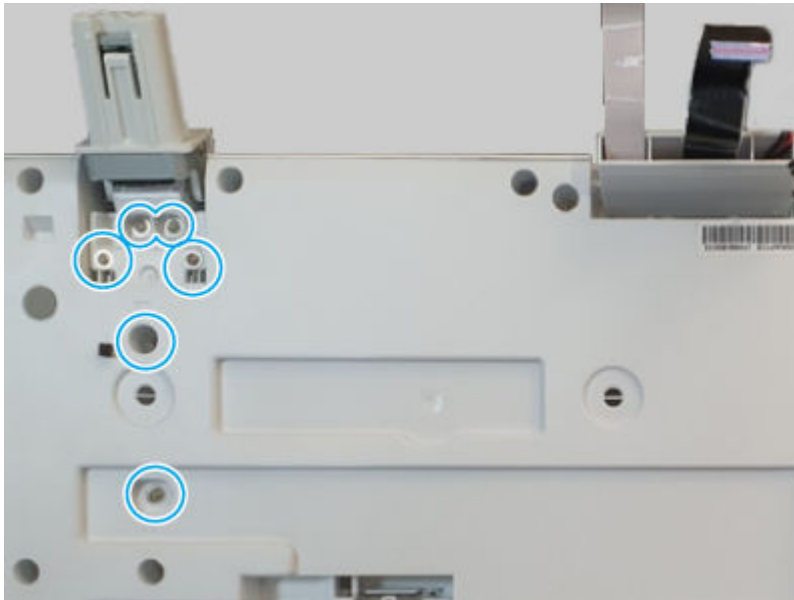
1. Remove five screw caps.

Figure 6-1379 Remove five screw caps



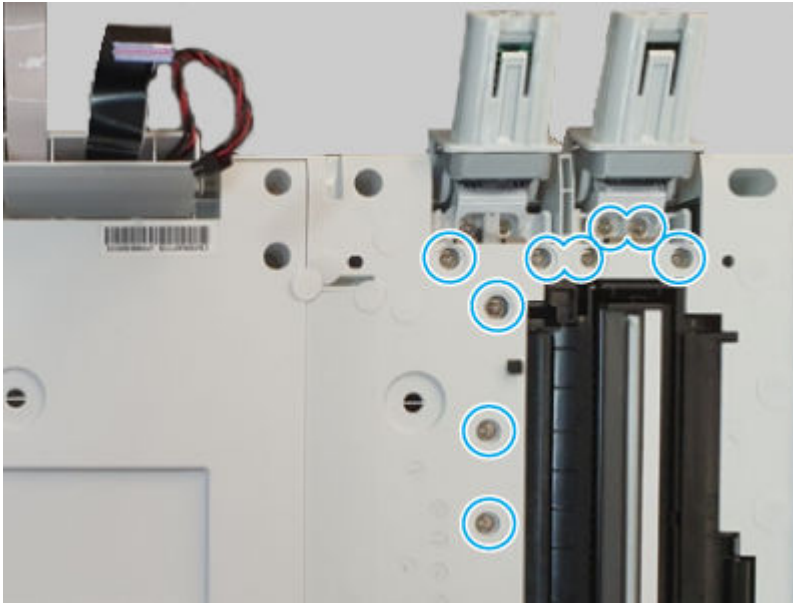
2. Remove six screws, and then remove the hinge.

Figure 6-1380 Remove the hinge



3. Remove nine screws, and then remove the hinges.

Figure 6-1381 Remove the hinges



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF hinge damper module (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder damper module.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-154 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67006	ADF hinge damper module

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

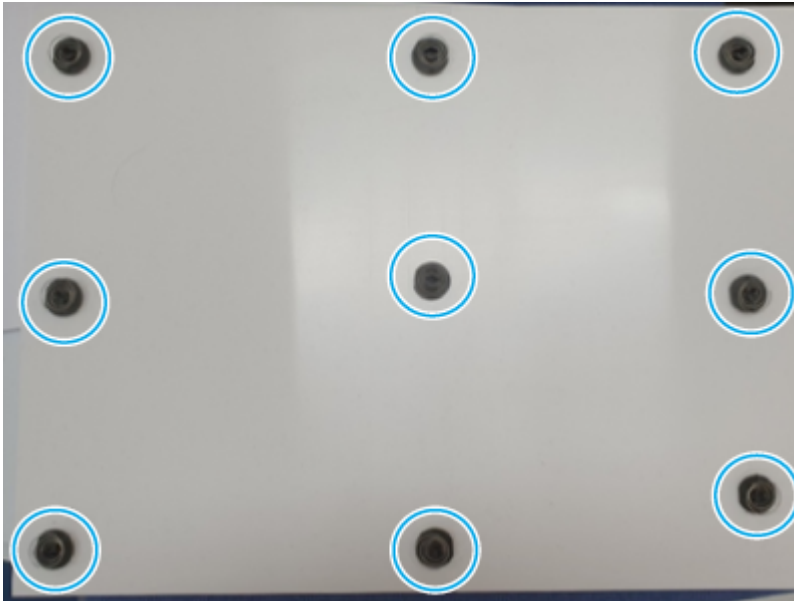
1. Remove the document feeder white backing

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the white backing mounting clips.

Figure 6-1382 Locate the clips



3. Disconnect nine clips, and then remove the white backing.

Figure 6-1383 Remove the white backing

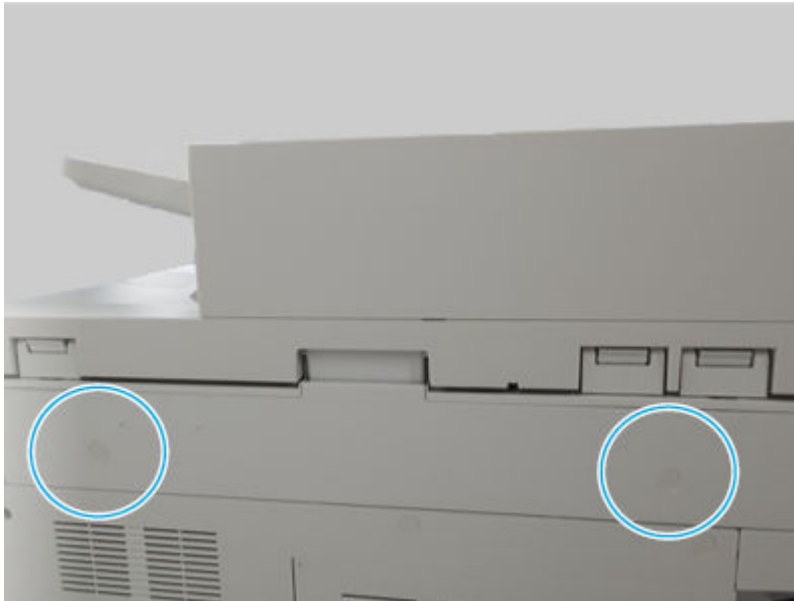


2. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

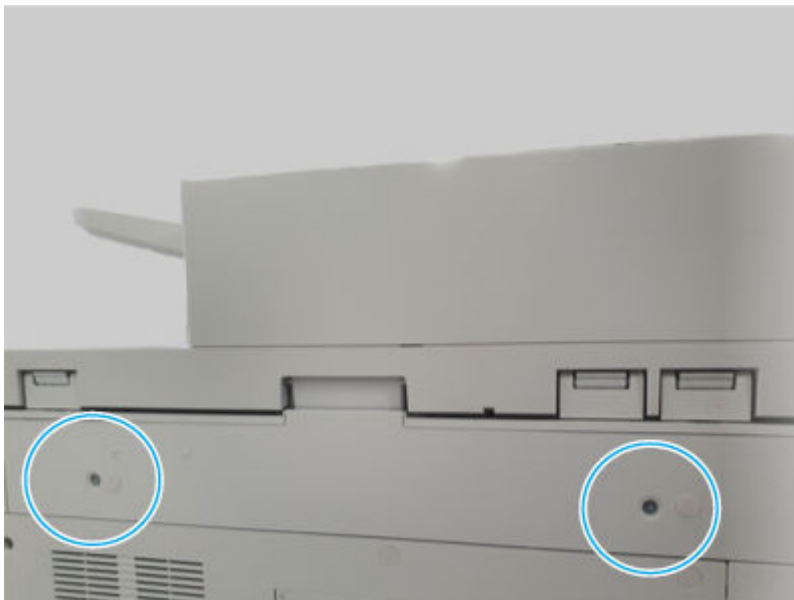
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1384 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1385 Remove two screws and the cover

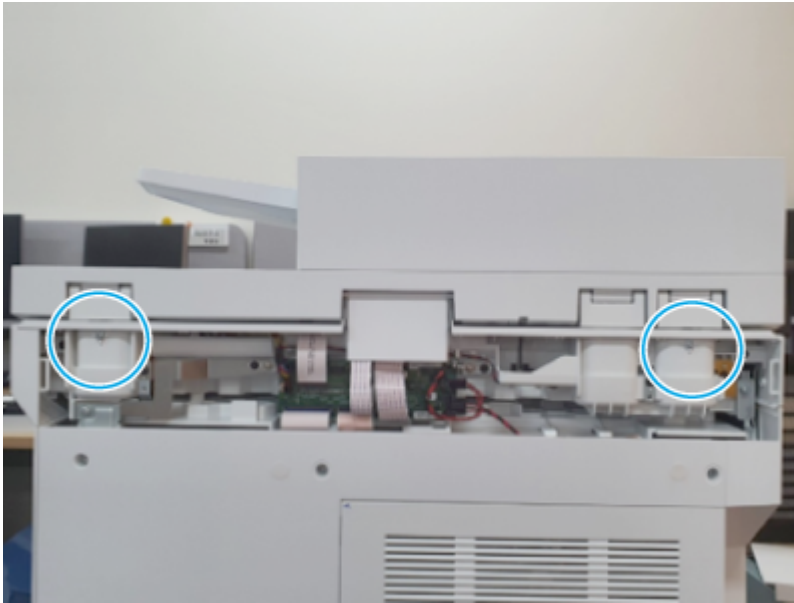


3. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1386 Remove two screws

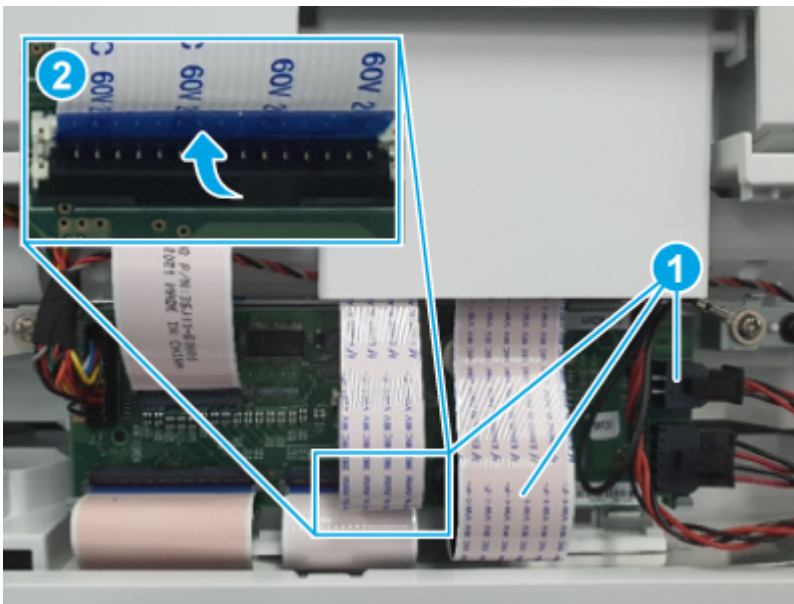


2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).



NOTE: Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-1387 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1388 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

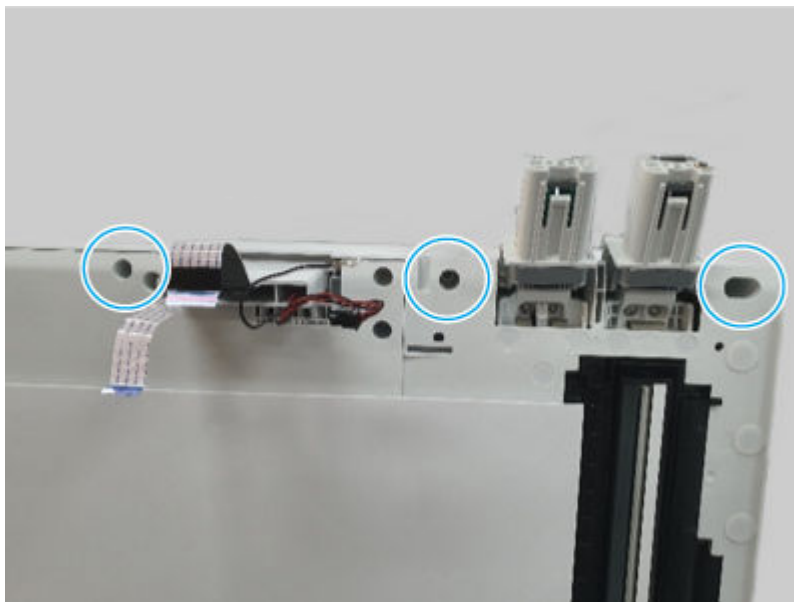
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

4. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1389 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove one screw, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1390 Remove the cover



5. Remove the document feeder hinge damper module

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder hinge damper module.

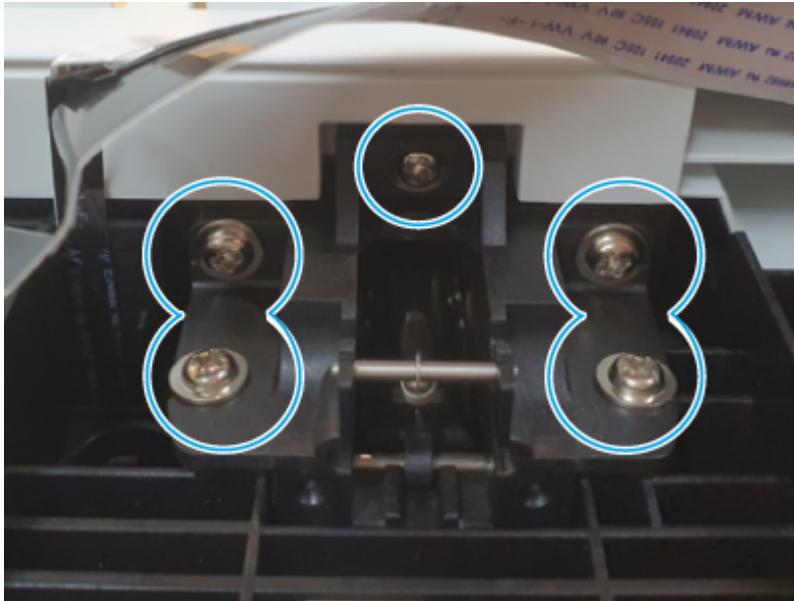
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1391 Remove two screws



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the hinge damper module.

Figure 6-1392 Remove the hinge damper module



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flatbed Scanner (Tarot)

Learn about flatbed scanner parts removal and replacement.

Whole unit

Learn about the flatbed scanner whole unit replacement.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner whole unit

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed whole unit.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-155 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ11-60103	Flatbed scanner (Tarot)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

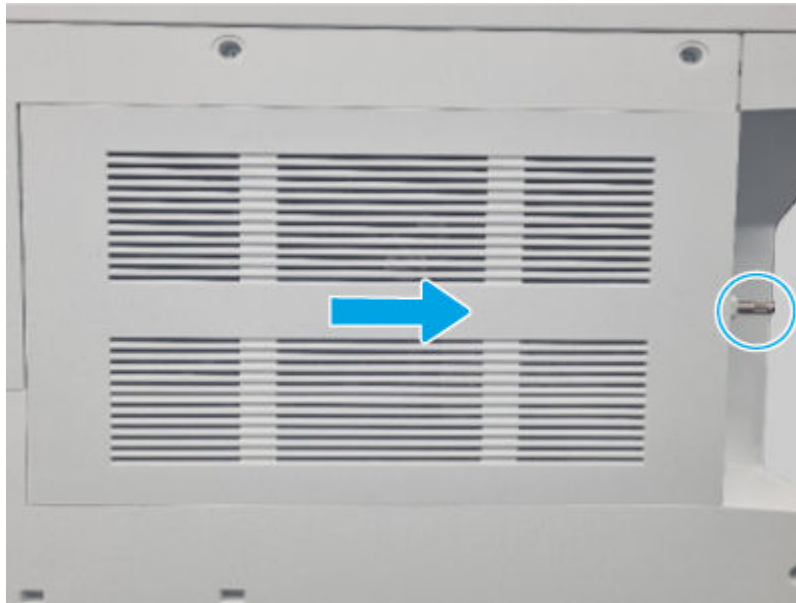
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1393 Remove the cover

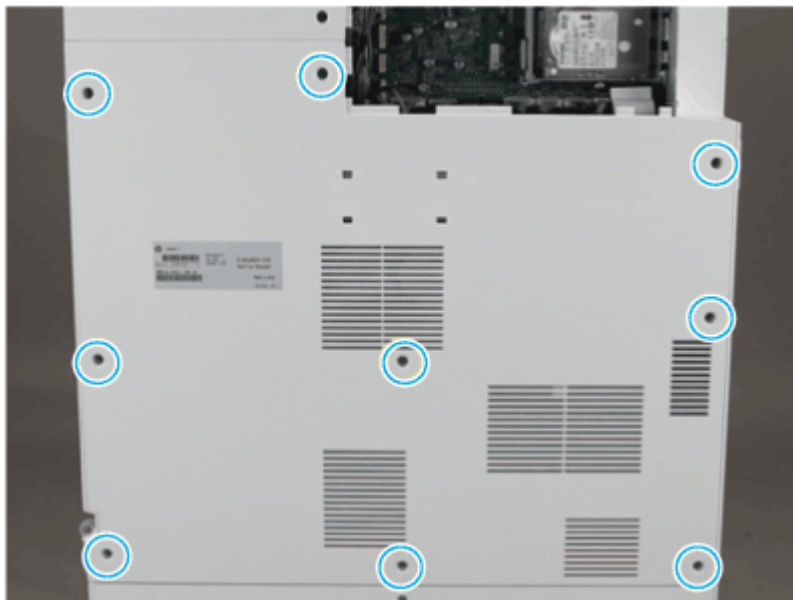


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1394 Remove the cover

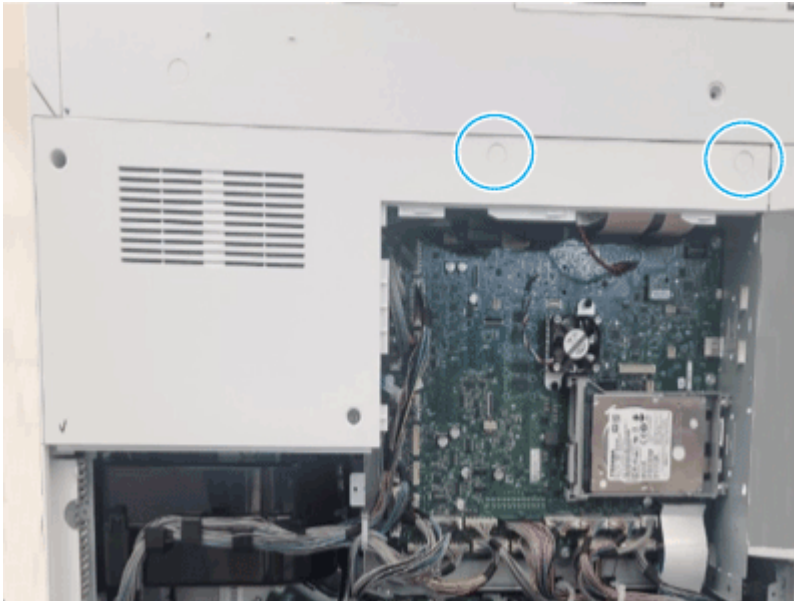


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

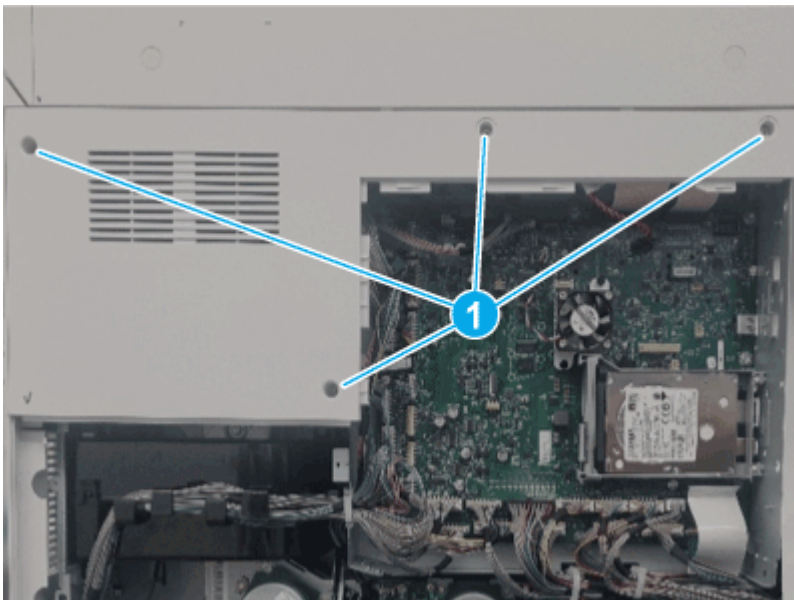
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1395 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1396 Remove the cover

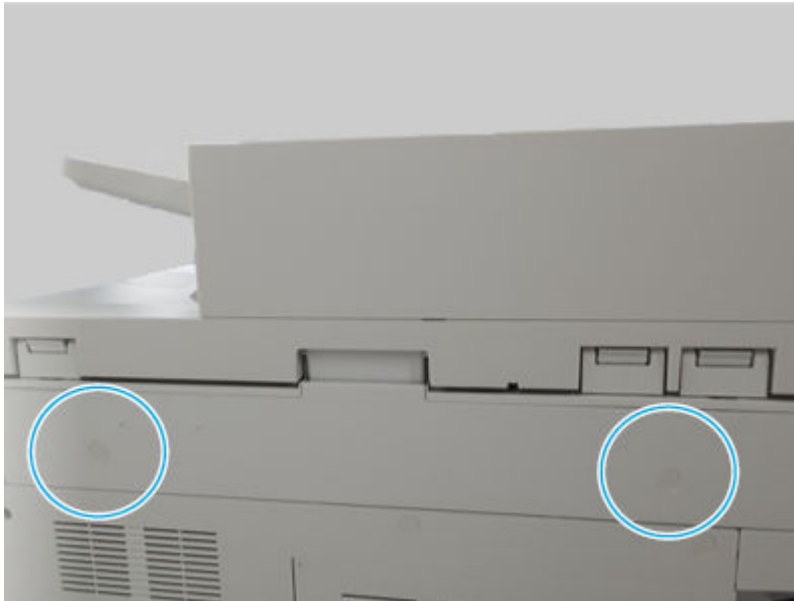


4. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

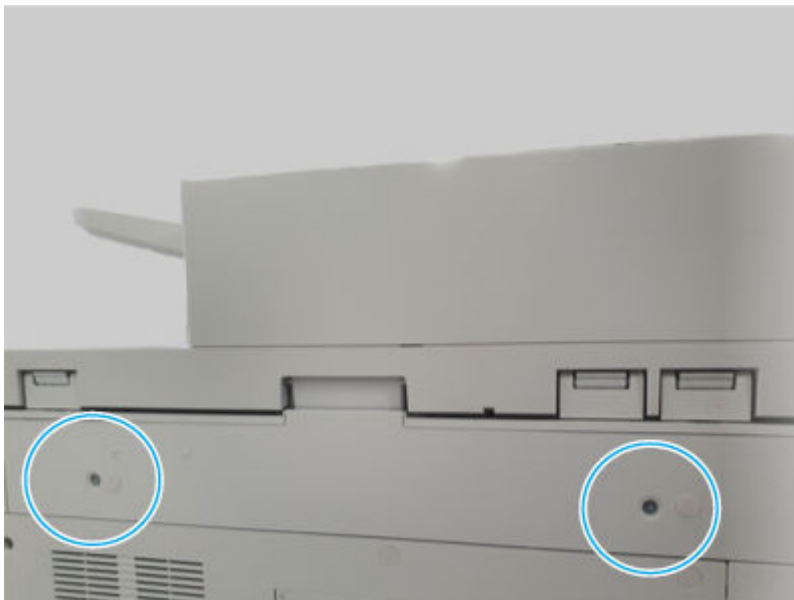
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1397 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1398 Remove two screws and the cover

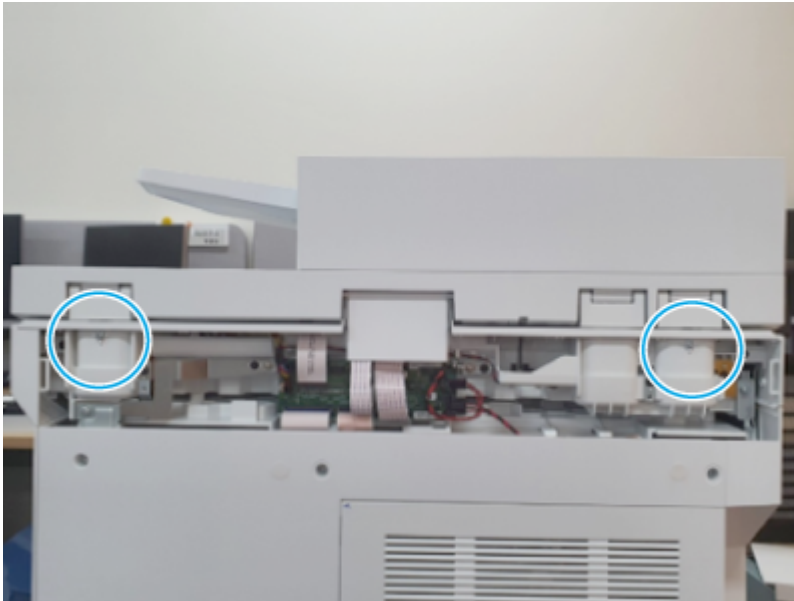


5. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

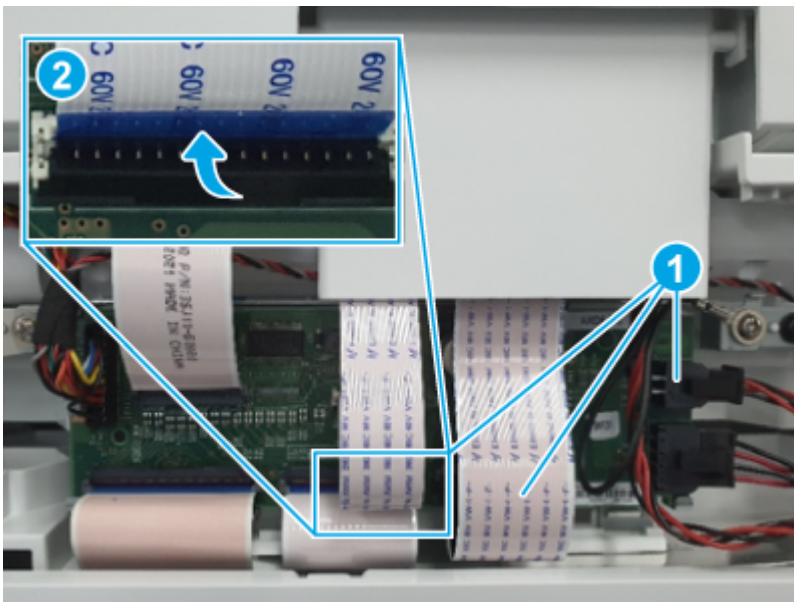
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1399 Remove two screws



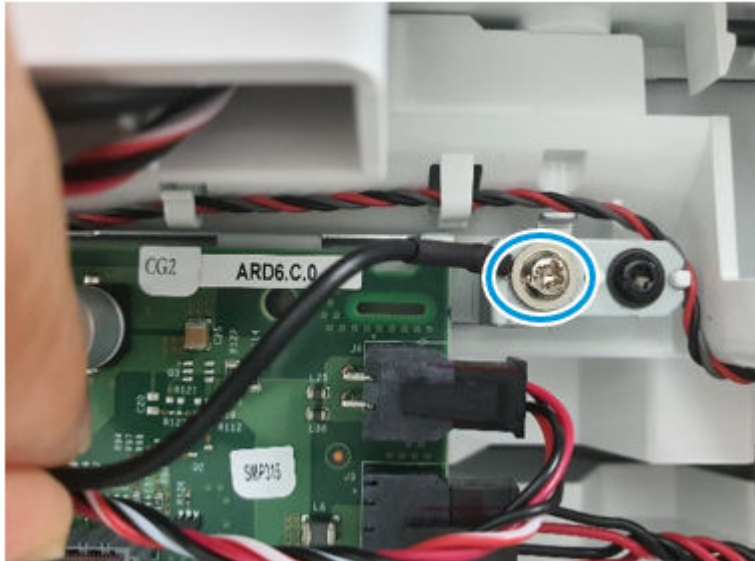
2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the document feeder.

Figure 6-1400 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1401 Remove the document feeder assembly

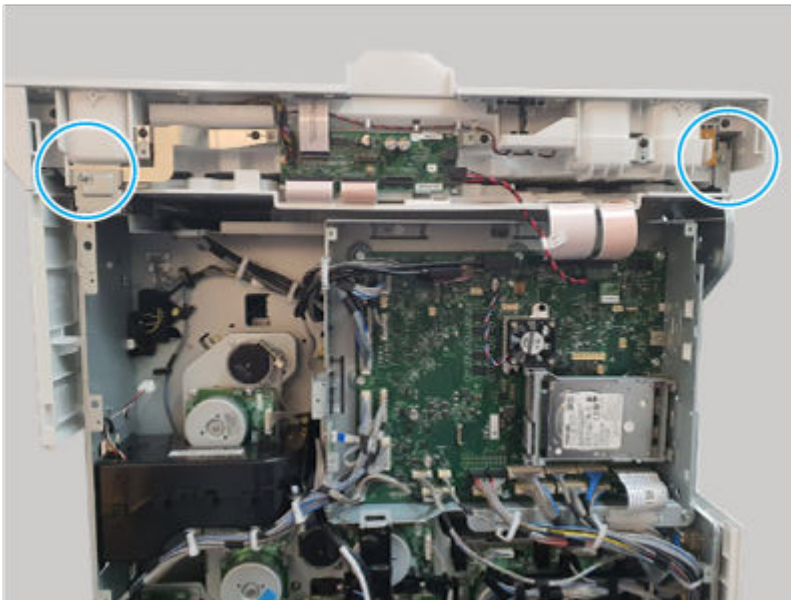


6. Remove the flatbed scanner whole unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed scanner.

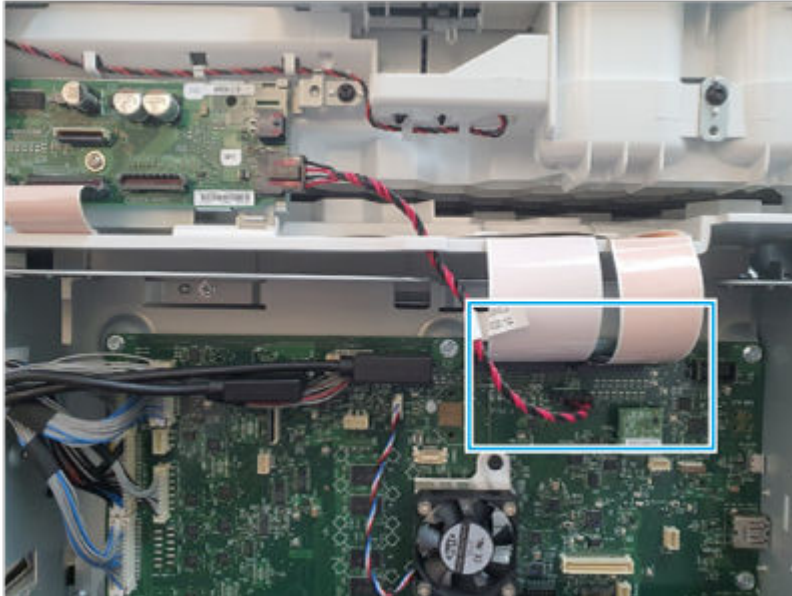
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1402 Remove two screws



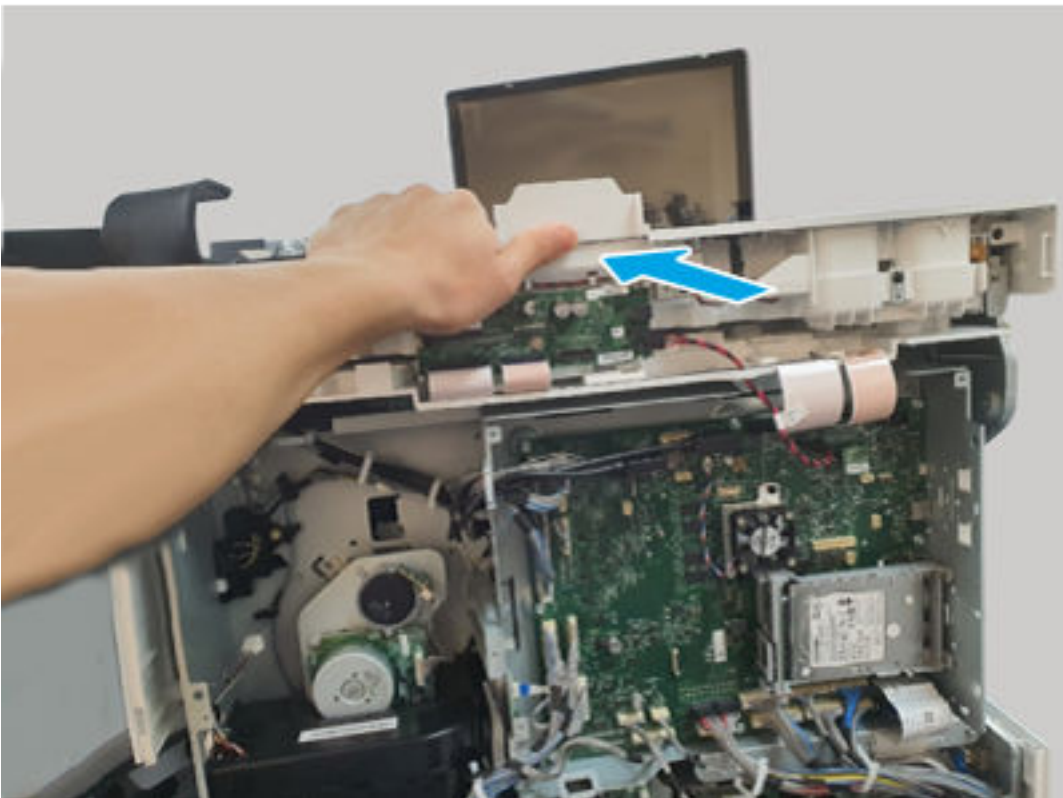
2. Disconnect three connectors.

Figure 6-1403 Disconnect three connectors



3. Push the flatbed towards the front of the printer to release it, and then remove the flatbed scanner whole unit.

Figure 6-1404 Remove the whole unit



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Covers

Learn about the flatbed scanner covers replacement.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-156 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ11-40008	Rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

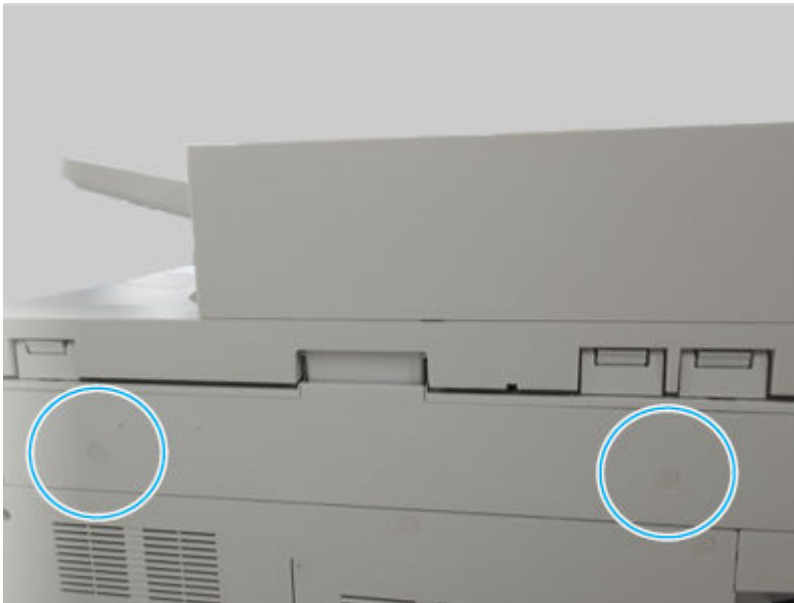
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

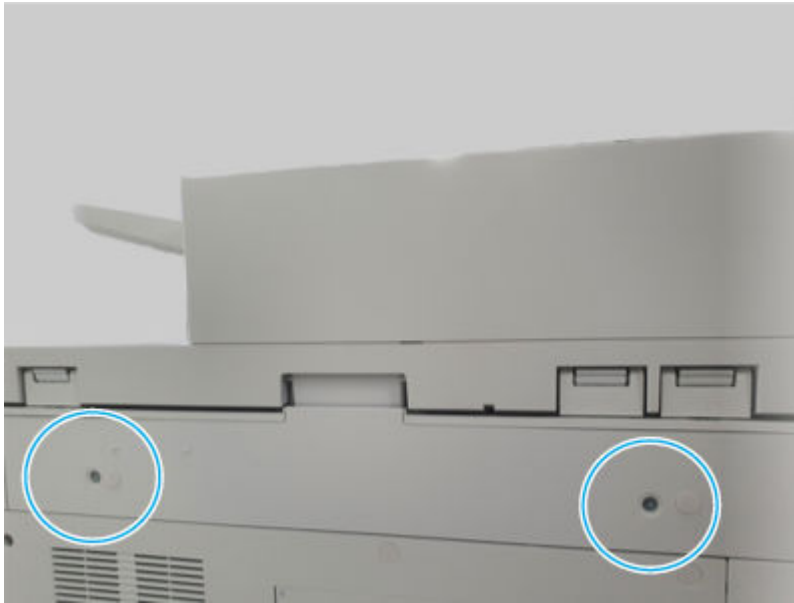
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1405 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1406 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA, harness, and sensor

Learn about the flatbed scanner PCA, harness, and sensor replacement.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner PCA assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed PCA.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-157 Part information

Part number	Part description
Y6V12-60035	Flatbed PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

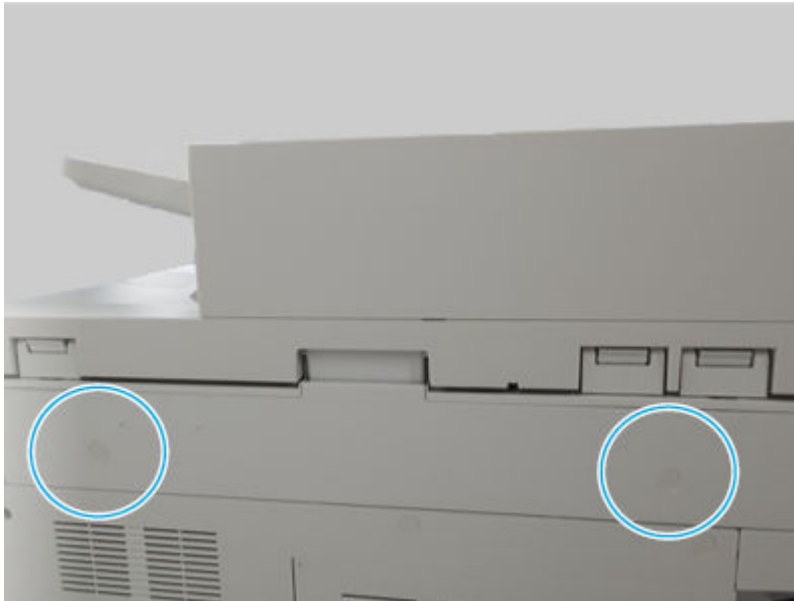
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

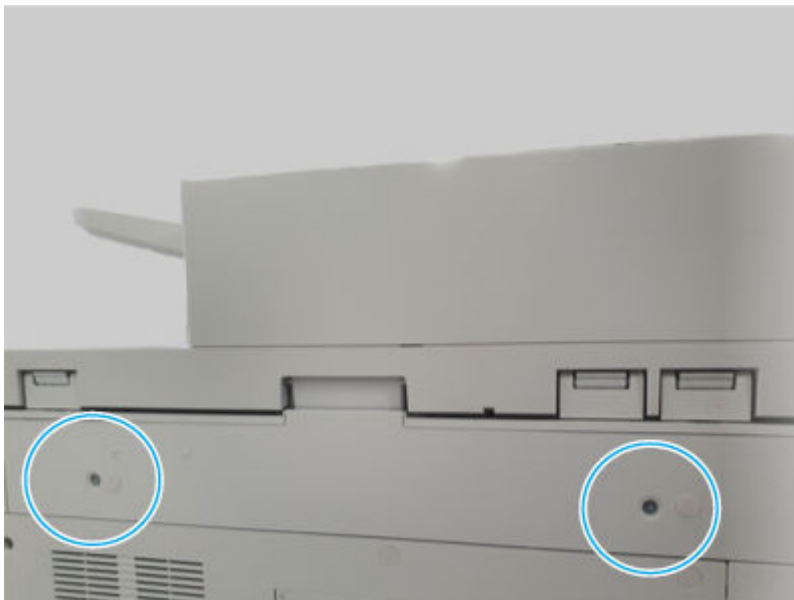
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1407 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1408 Remove two screws and the cover

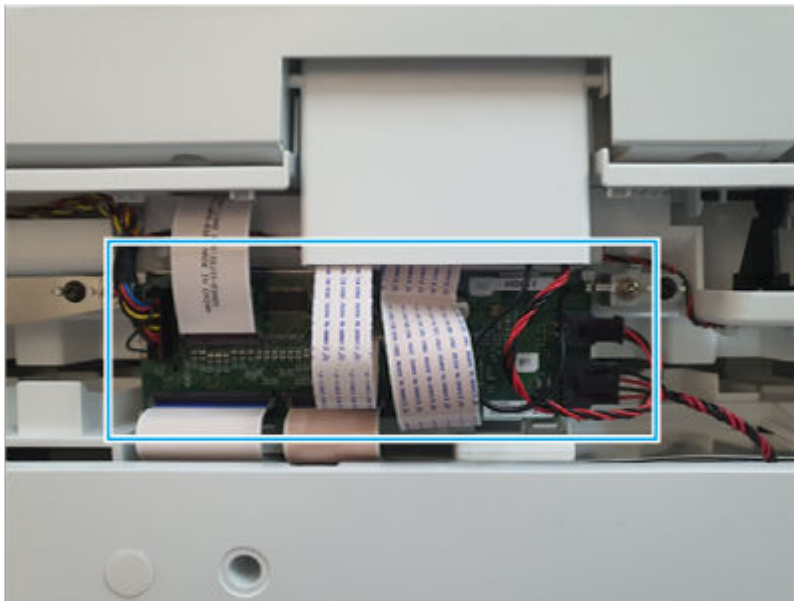


2. Remove the flatbed PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed PCA.

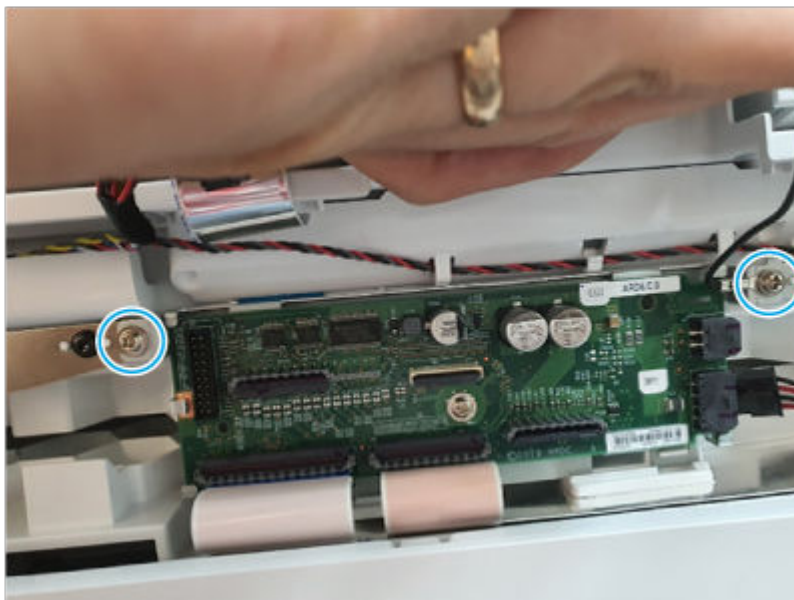
1. Disconnect all of the connectors.

Figure 6-1409 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1410 Remove two screws



3. Remove the flatbed scanner PCA and bracket assembly.

Figure 6-1411 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner FFC 50 pin

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed FFC 50 pin.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-158 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ11-50021	Flatbed FFC 50 pin

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

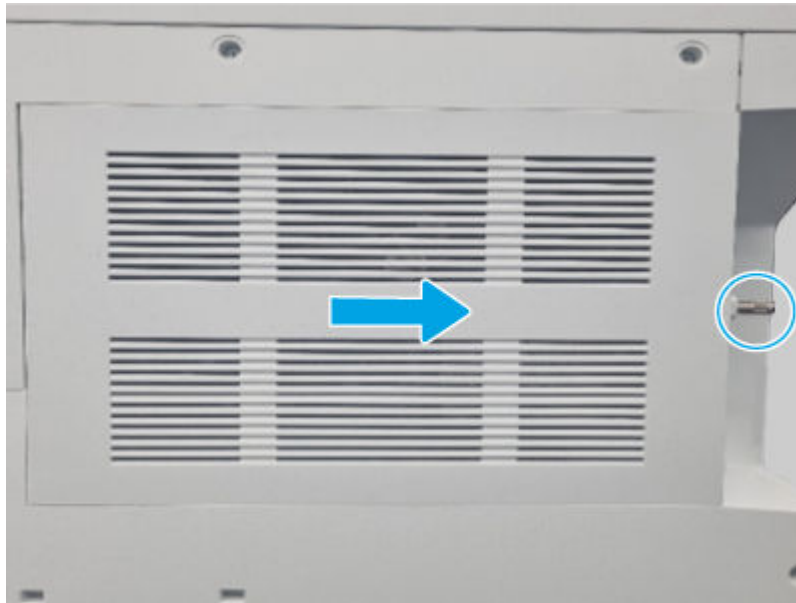
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1412 Remove the cover

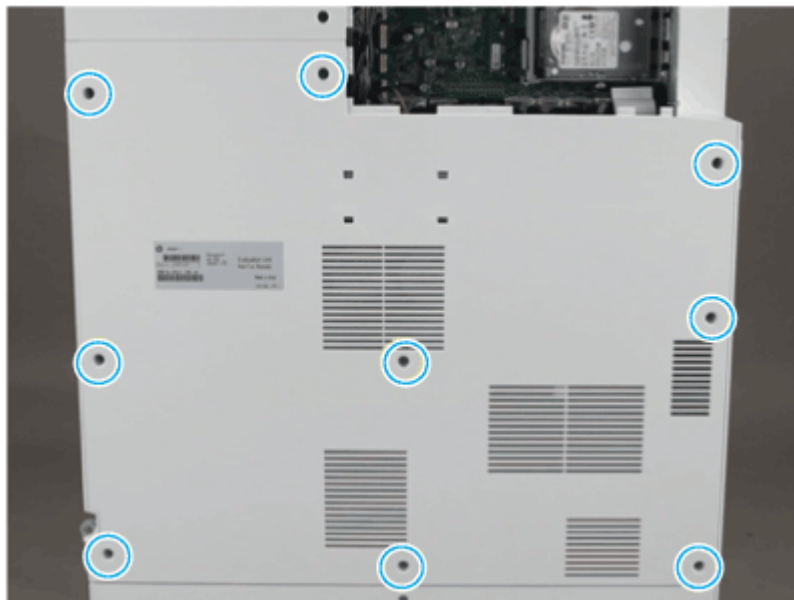


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1413 Remove the cover

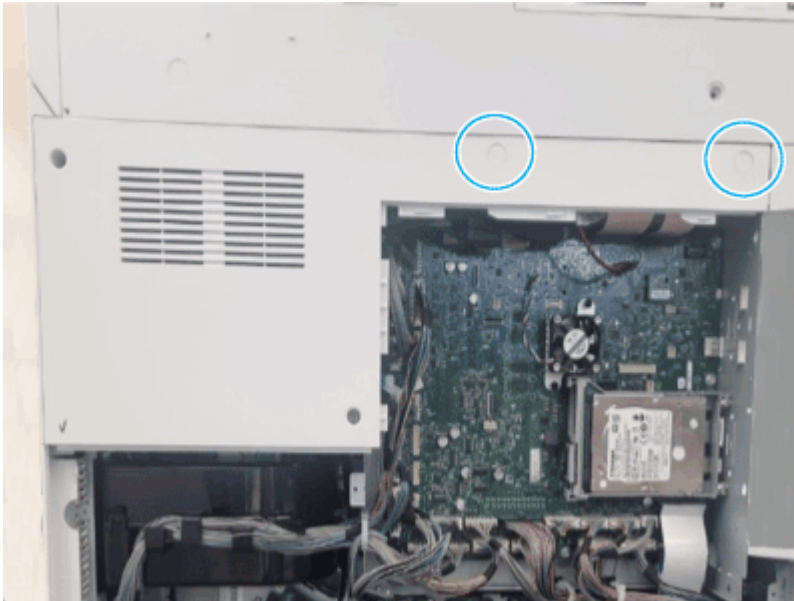


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

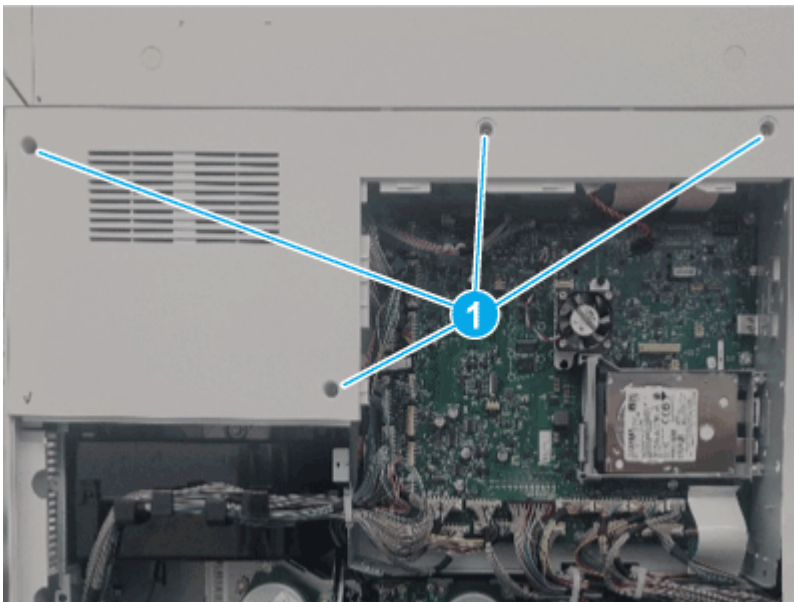
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1414 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1415 Remove the cover

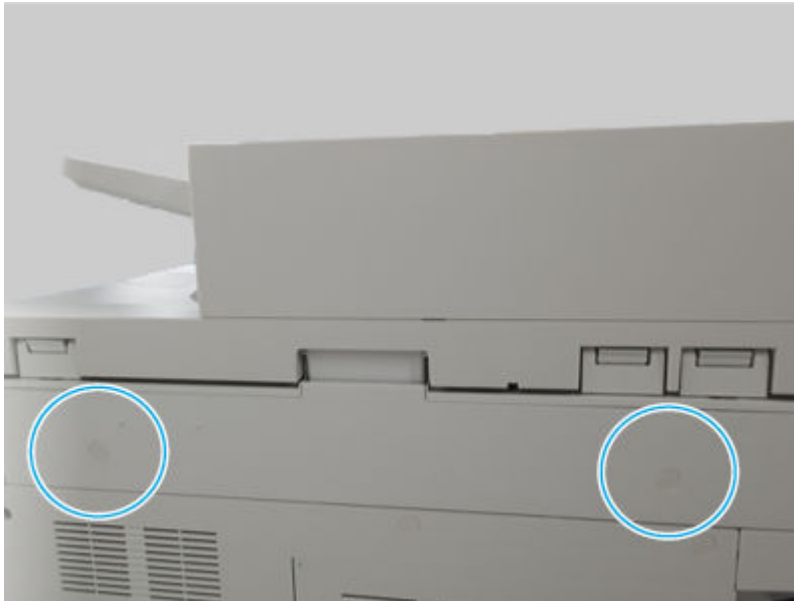


4. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

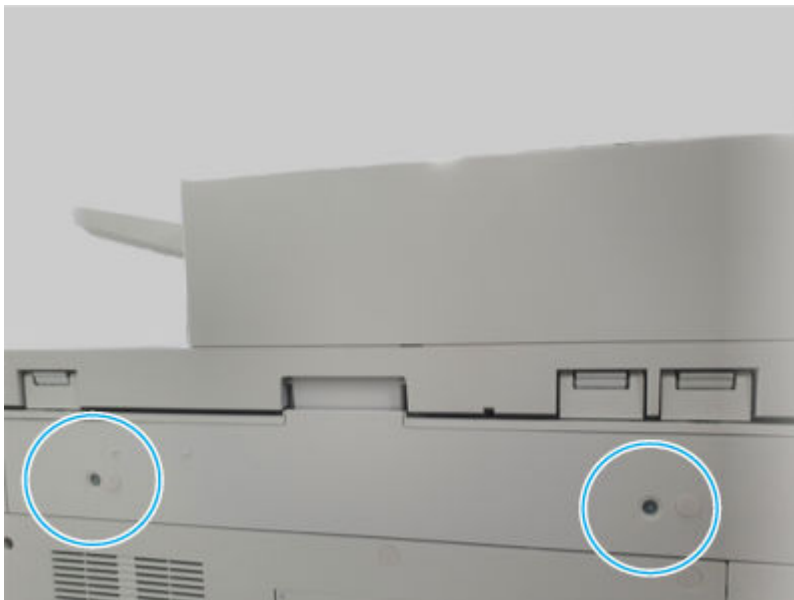
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1416 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1417 Remove two screws and the cover

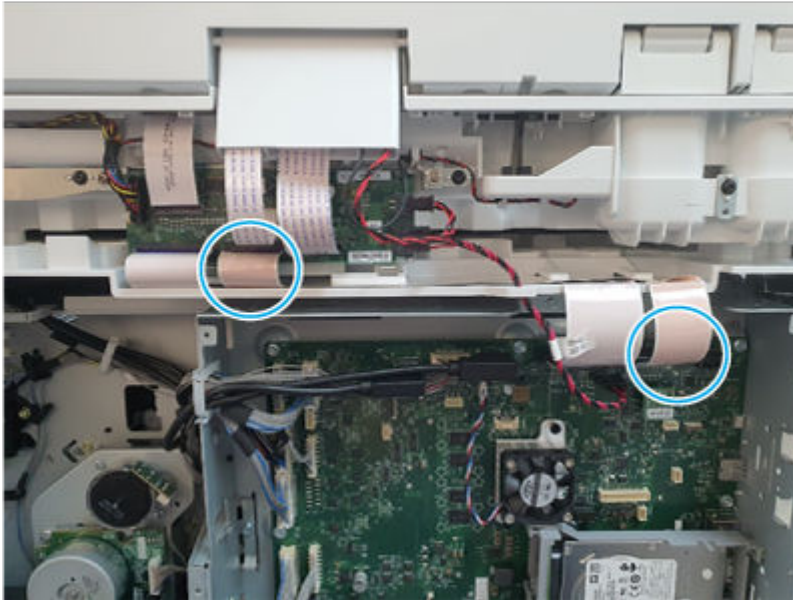


5. Remove the flatbed FFC 50 pin

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed FFC 50 pin.

- Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the flatbed FFC 50 pin..

Figure 6-1418 Remove the FFC



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner FFC 68 pin

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed FFC 68 pin.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-159 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ1-50022	Flatbed FFC 68 pin

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

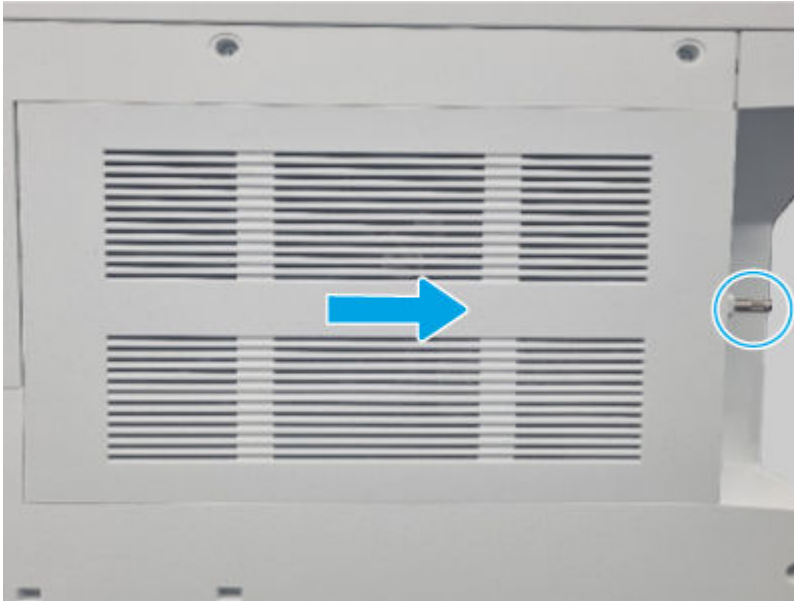
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1419 Remove the cover

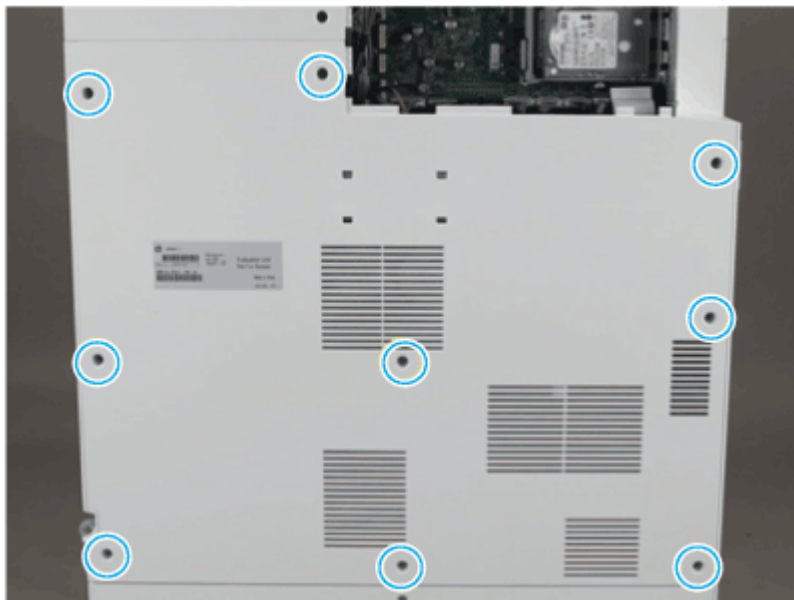


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1420 Remove the cover

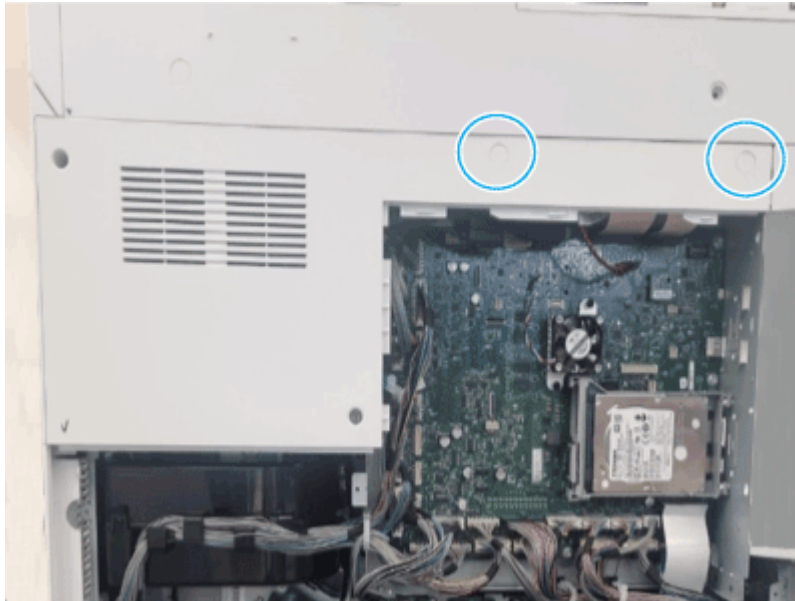


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

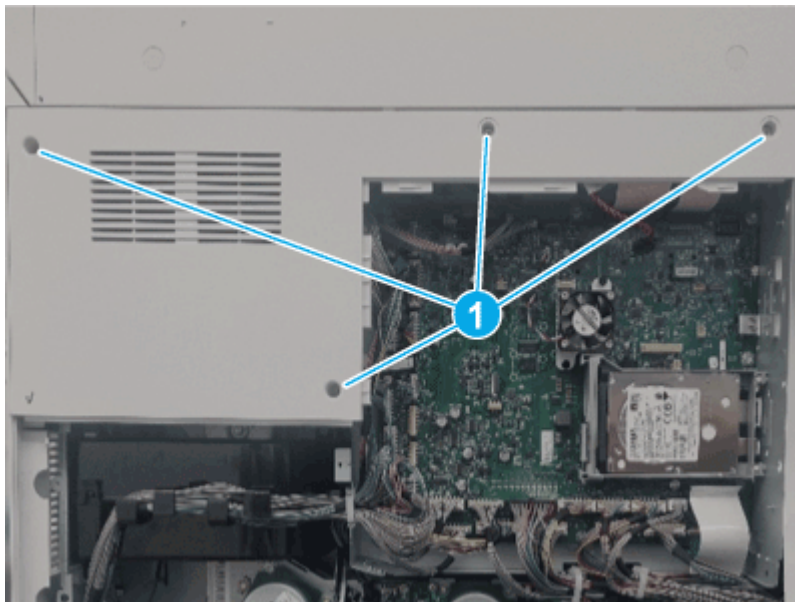
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1421 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1422 Remove the cover

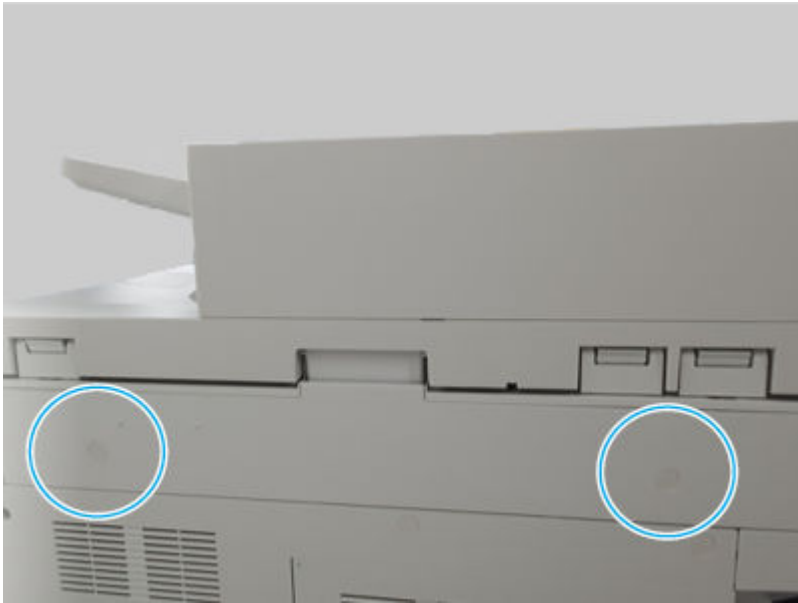


4. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

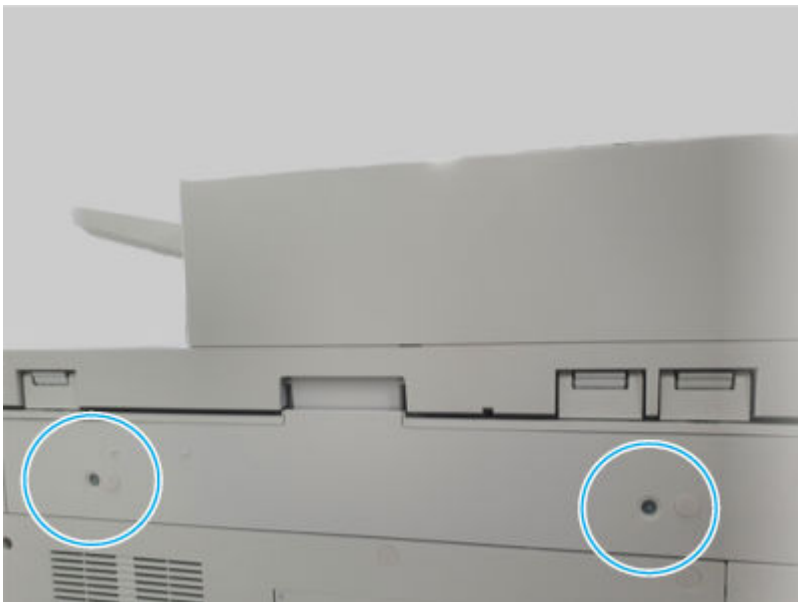
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1423 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1424 Remove two screws and the cover

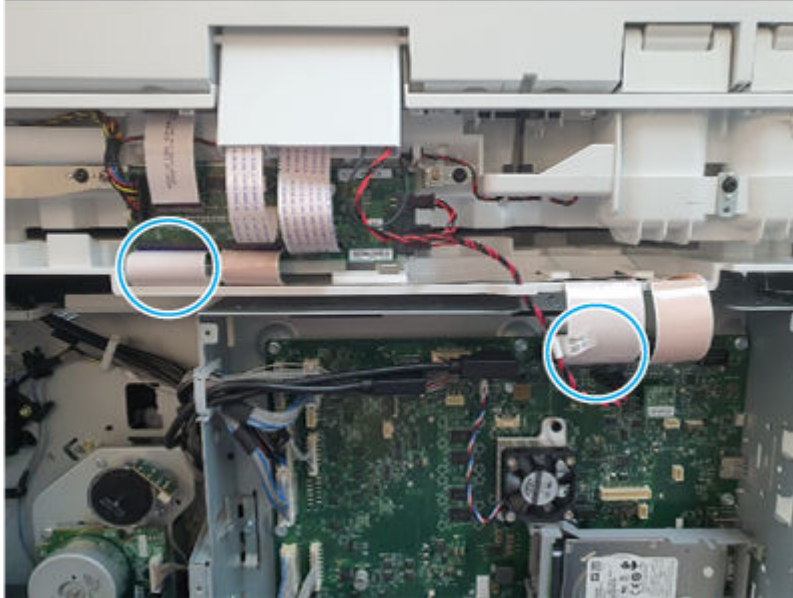


5. Remove the flatbed FFC 68 pin

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed FFC 68 pin.

- Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the flatbed FFC 68 pin.


Figure 6-1425 Remove the FFC



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner discrete power cable

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed power cable.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-160 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ11-50006	Flatbed discrete power cable

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

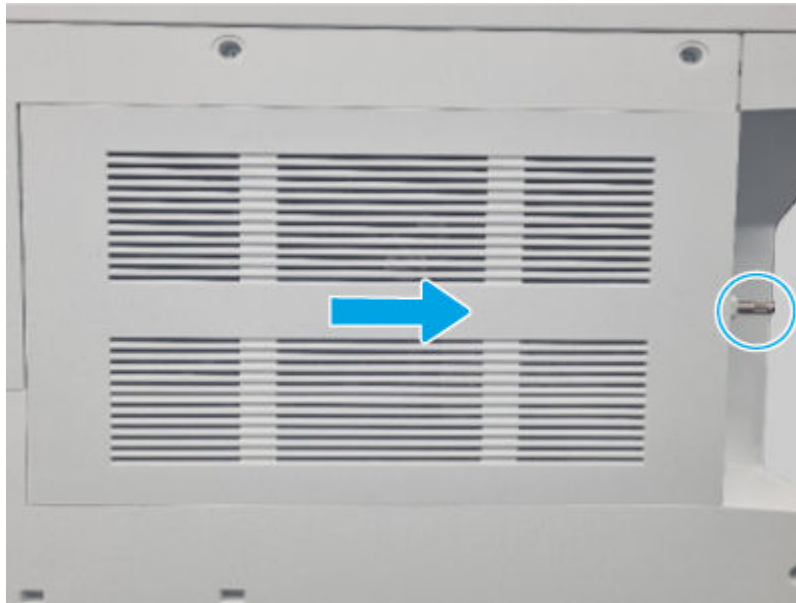
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1426 Remove the cover

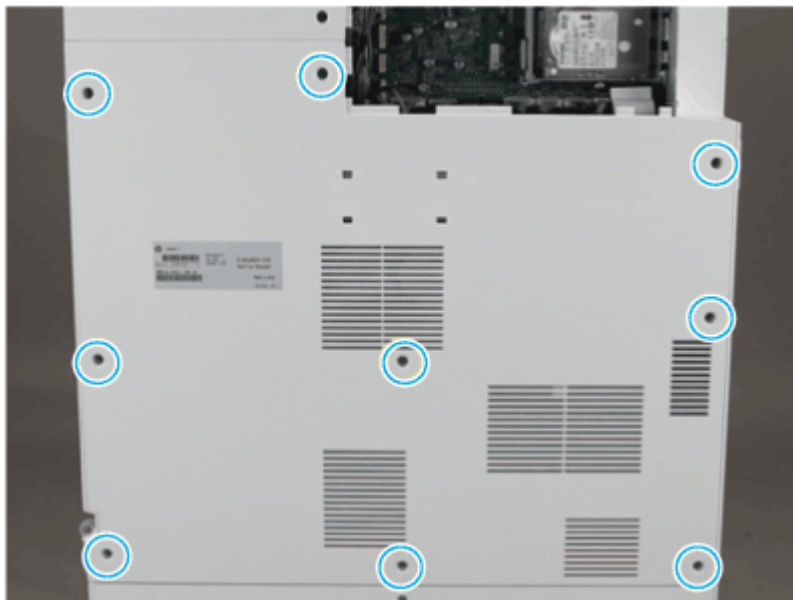


2. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove nine screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1427 Remove the cover

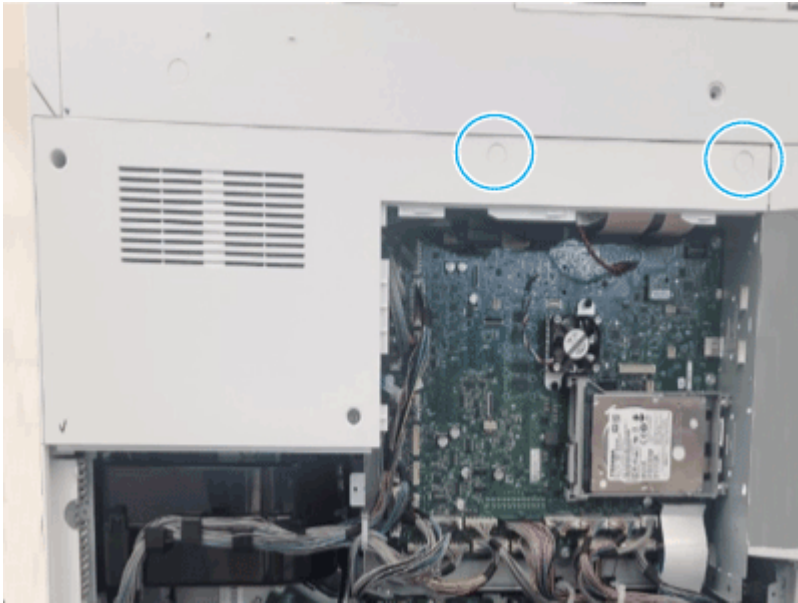


3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

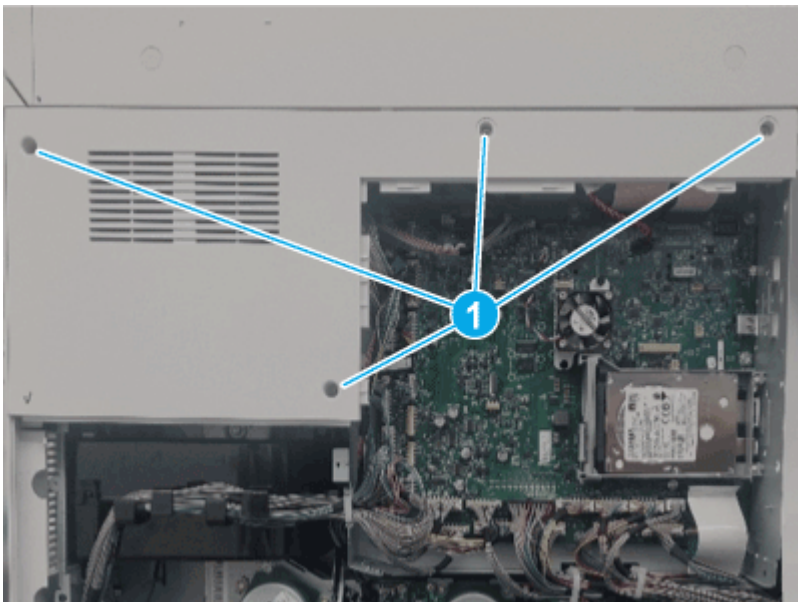
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1428 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1429 Remove the cover

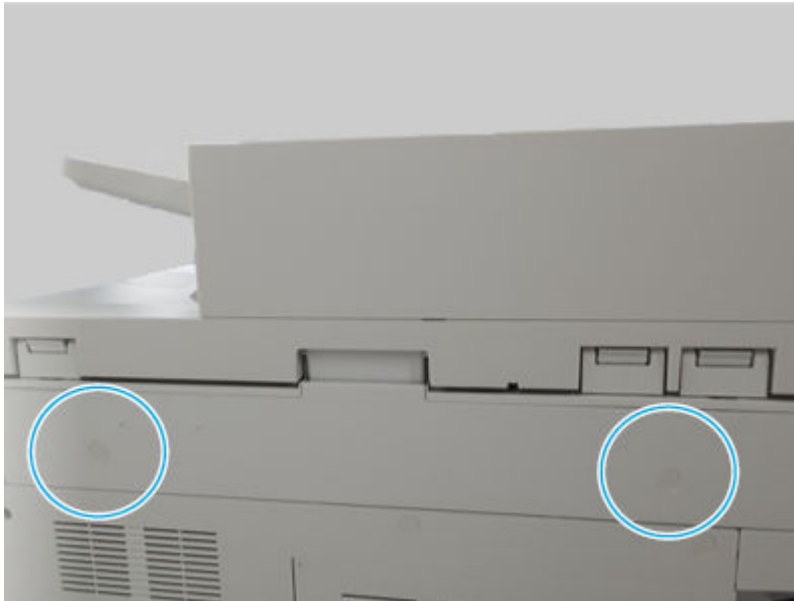


4. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

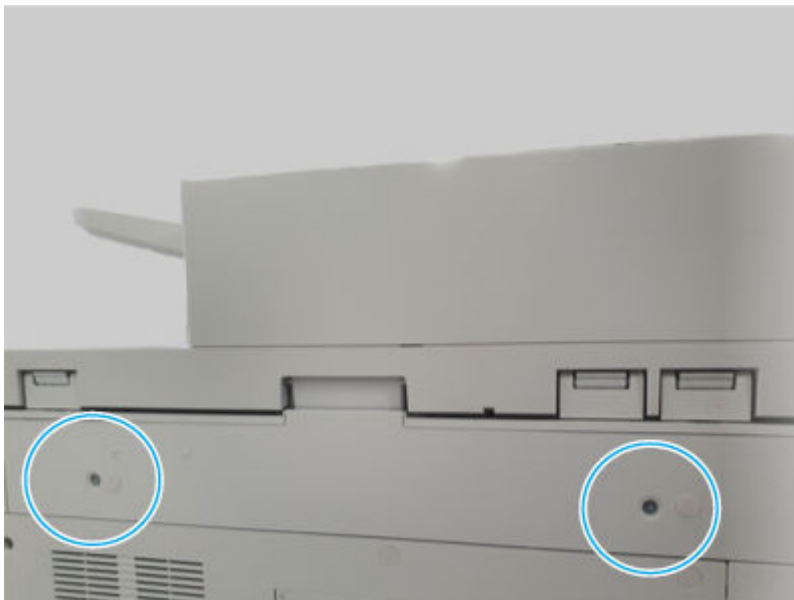
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1430 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1431 Remove two screws and the cover

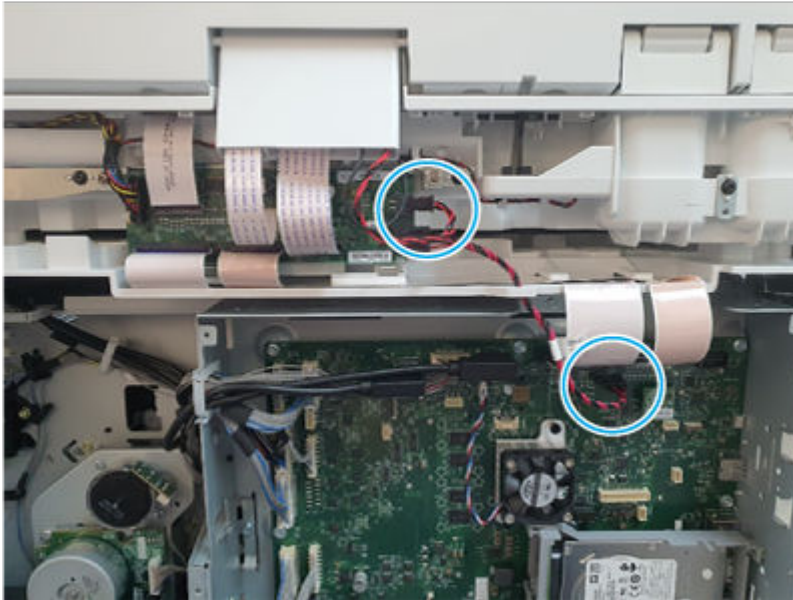


5. Remove the flatbed power cable

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed power cable.

- Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the flatbed power cable.

Figure 6-1432 Remove the cable



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner flatbed open sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed open sensor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-161 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (flatbed open sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

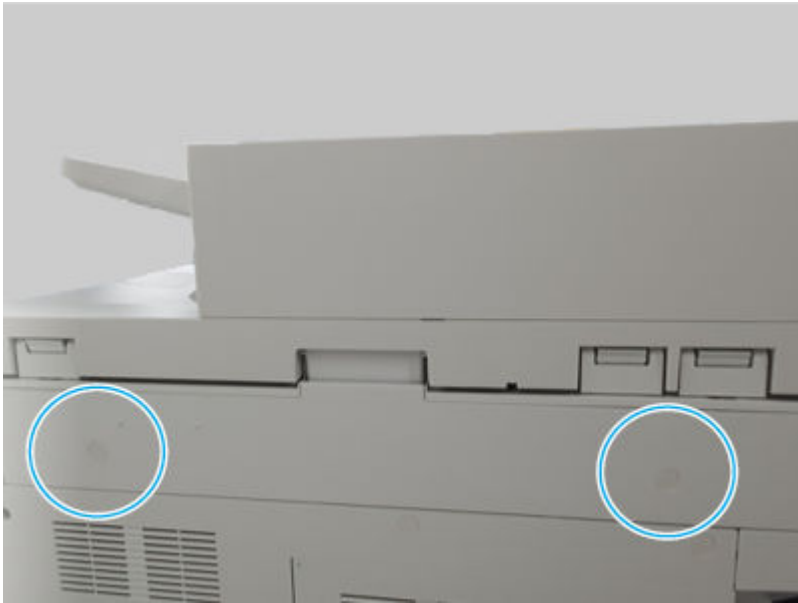
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

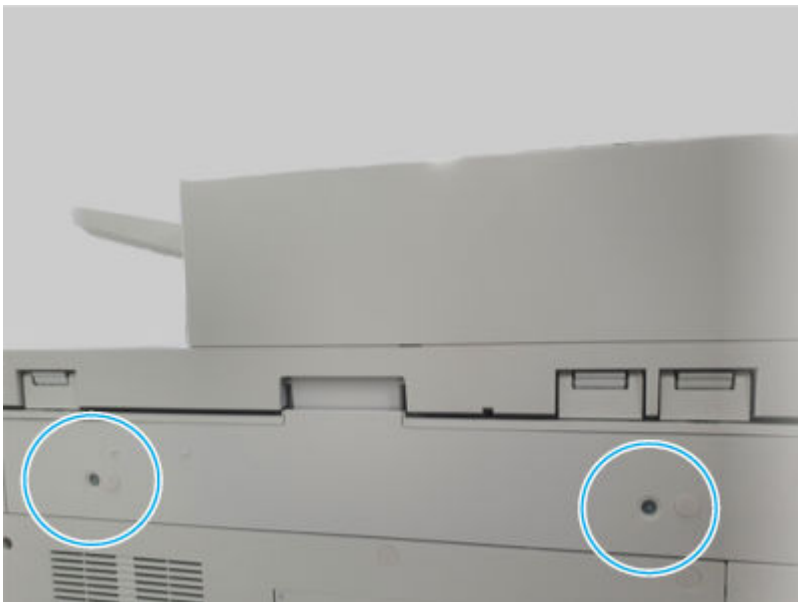
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1433 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1434 Remove two screws and the cover



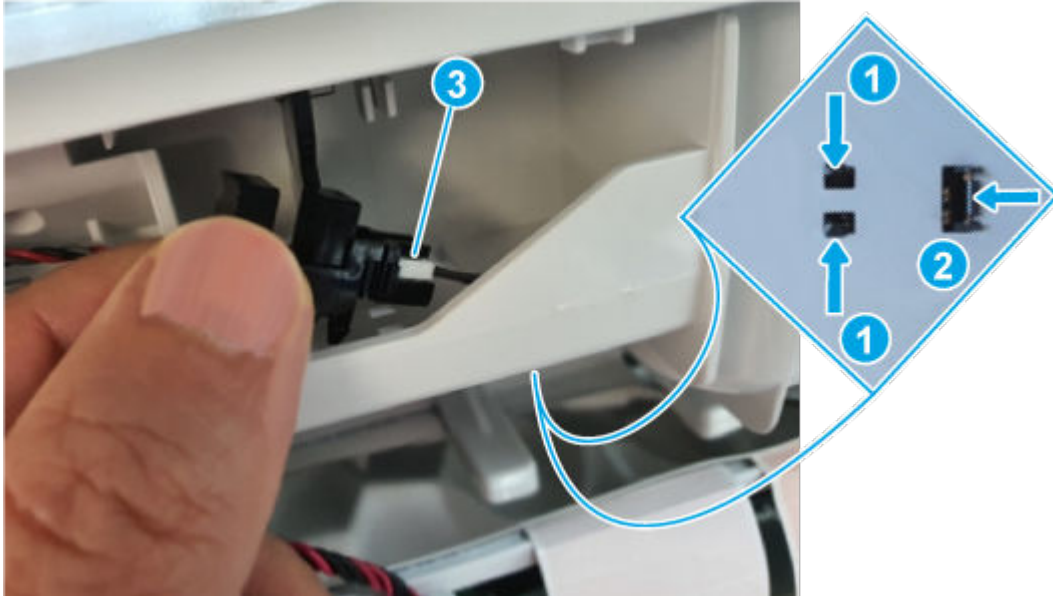
2. Remove the flatbed power cable

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed power cable.

- Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Separate the sensor from the flatbed (callout 2).

- Disconnect one connector (callout 3), and then remove the flatbed open sensor.

Figure 6-1435 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Input device (department)

Learn about input device (department) parts removal and replacement.

sHCI (department)

Learn about side high capacity input (department) parts removal and replacement.

Covers

Review the sHCI cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: sHCI right cover

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) right cover.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-162 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40020	sHCI right cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

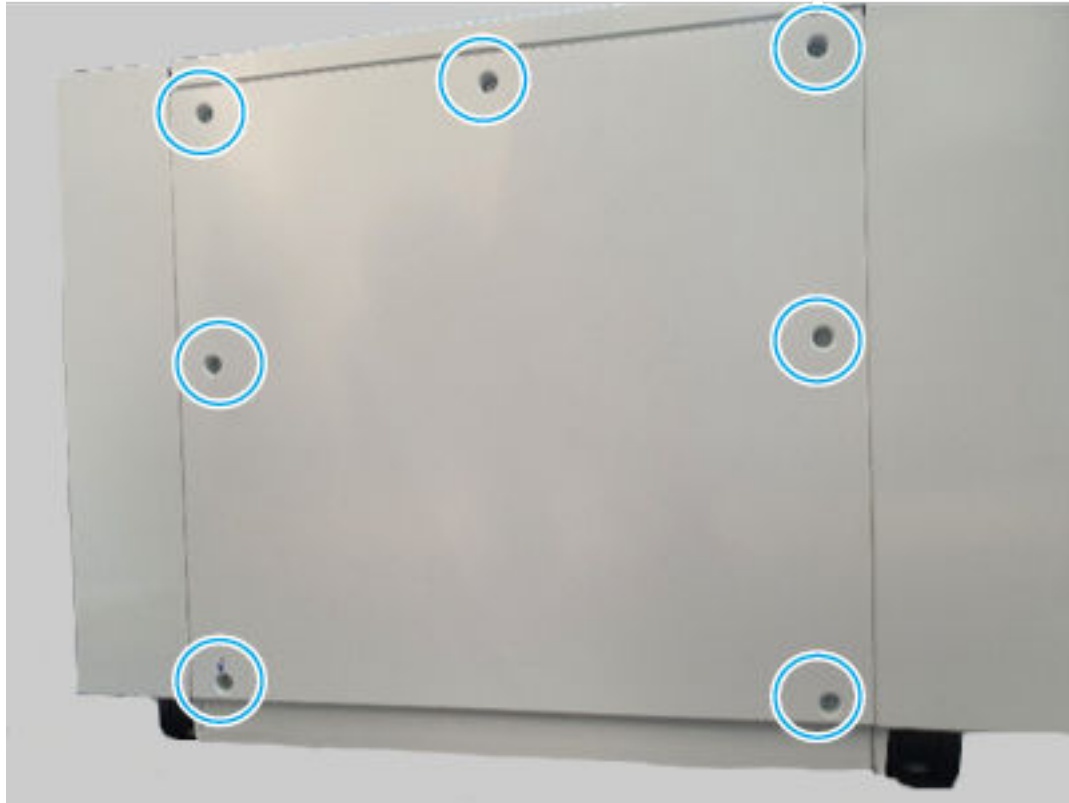
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1436 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-163 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-61019	sHCI rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

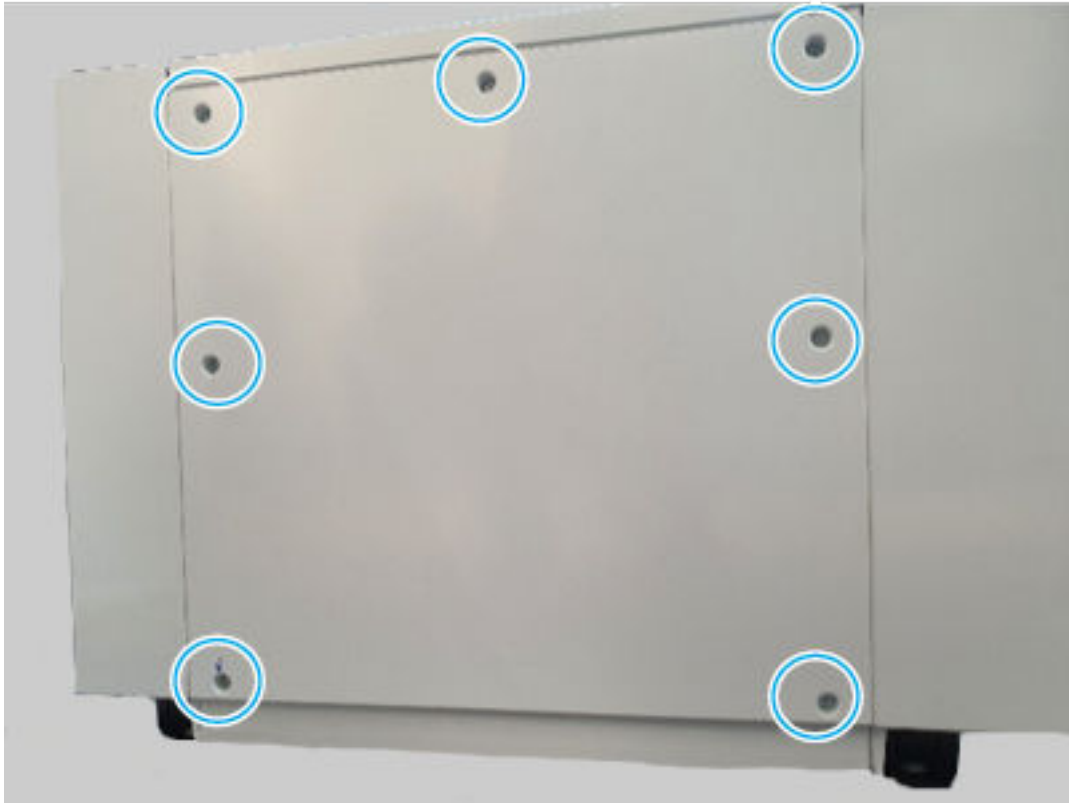
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1437 Remove the cover

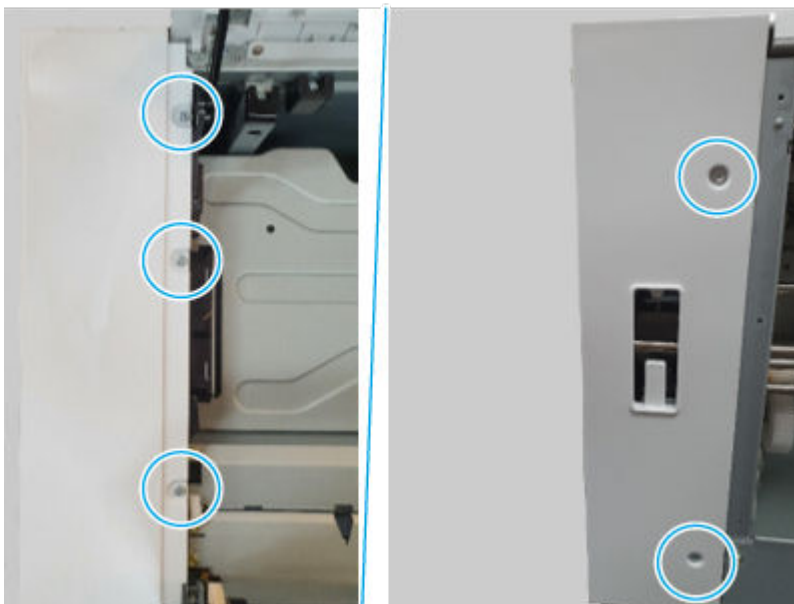


2. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1438 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI harness cover

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) harness cover.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-164 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40018	sHCI harness cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

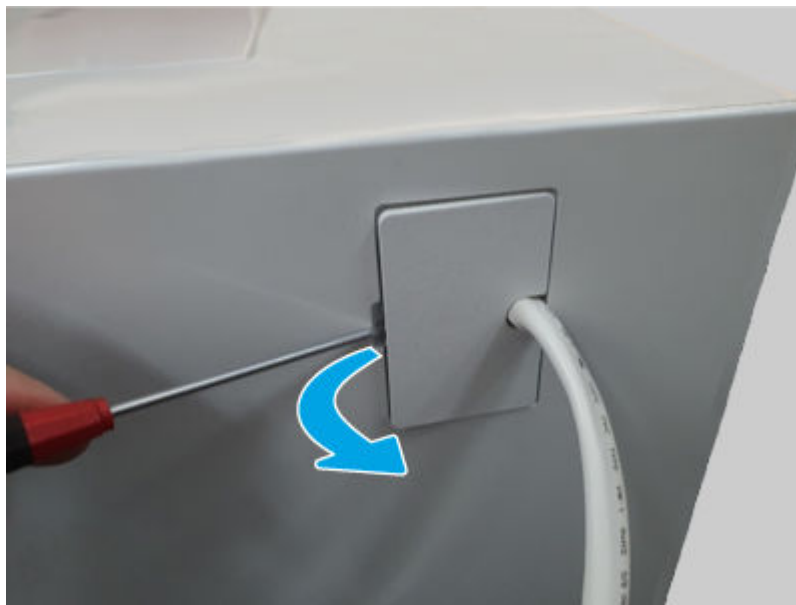
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCl harness cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCl harness cover.

- Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release the harness cover, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1439 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI rear top cover

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) rear top cover.


Mean time to repair: 6 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-165 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40024	sHCI rear top cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

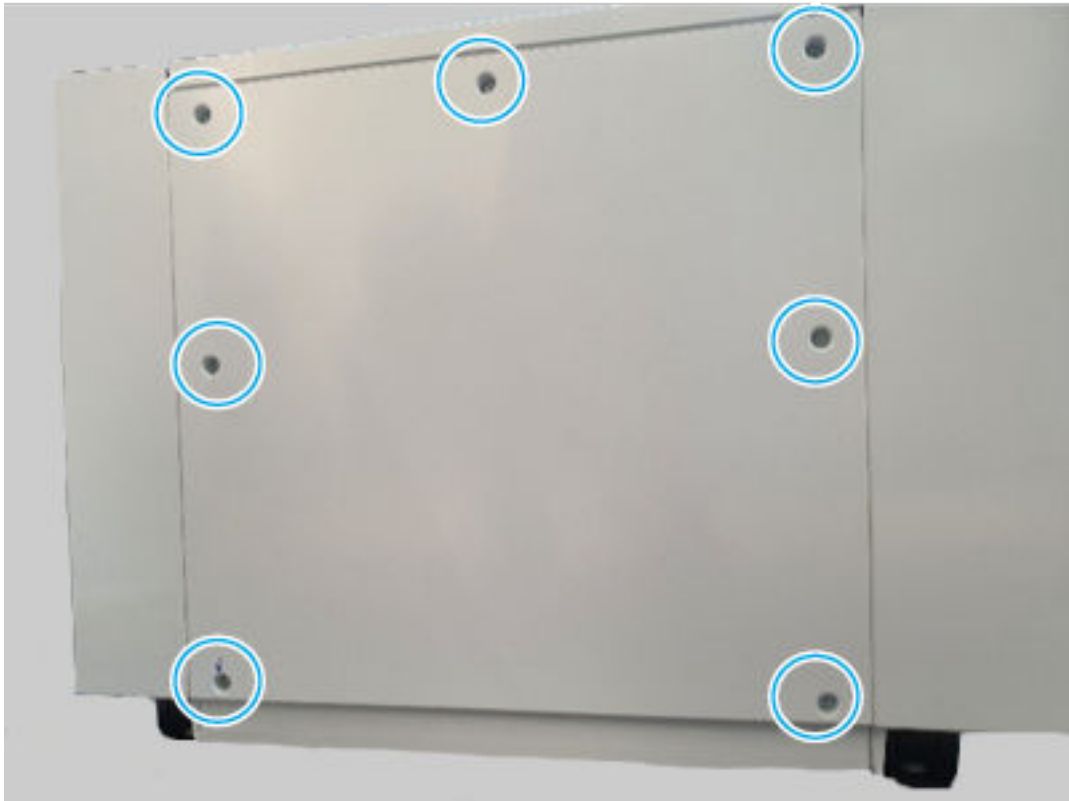
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1440 Remove the cover

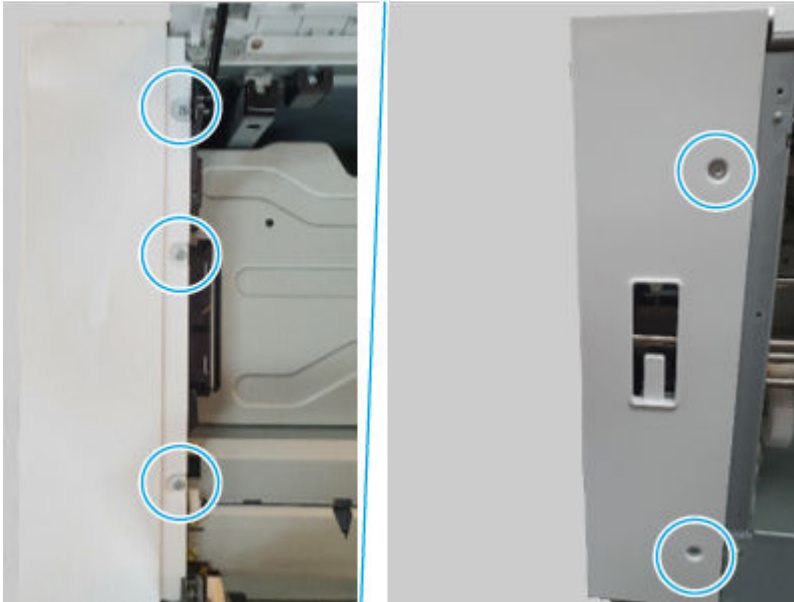


2. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1441 Remove the cover

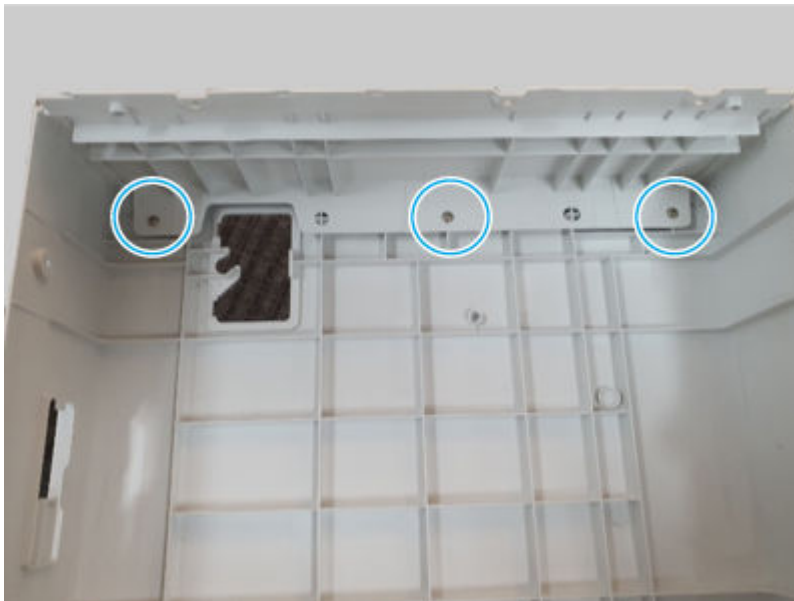


3. Remove the sHCI right top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right top cover.

1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the right top cover.

Figure 6-1442 Remove the cover



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI pickup cover

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) pickup cover.

Mean time to repair: 6 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-166 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40019	sHCI pickup cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI pickup cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI pickup cover.

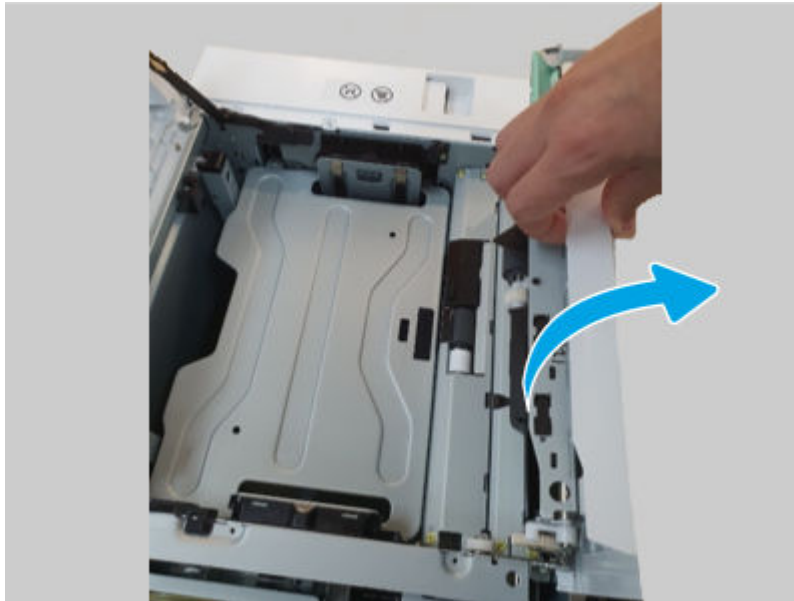
1. Remove three screw caps, and then remove three screws.

Figure 6-1443 Remove three screws



2. Remove the pickup cover.


Figure 6-1444 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI top cover

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) top cover.

Mean time to repair: 6 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-167 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-61018	sHCI top cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

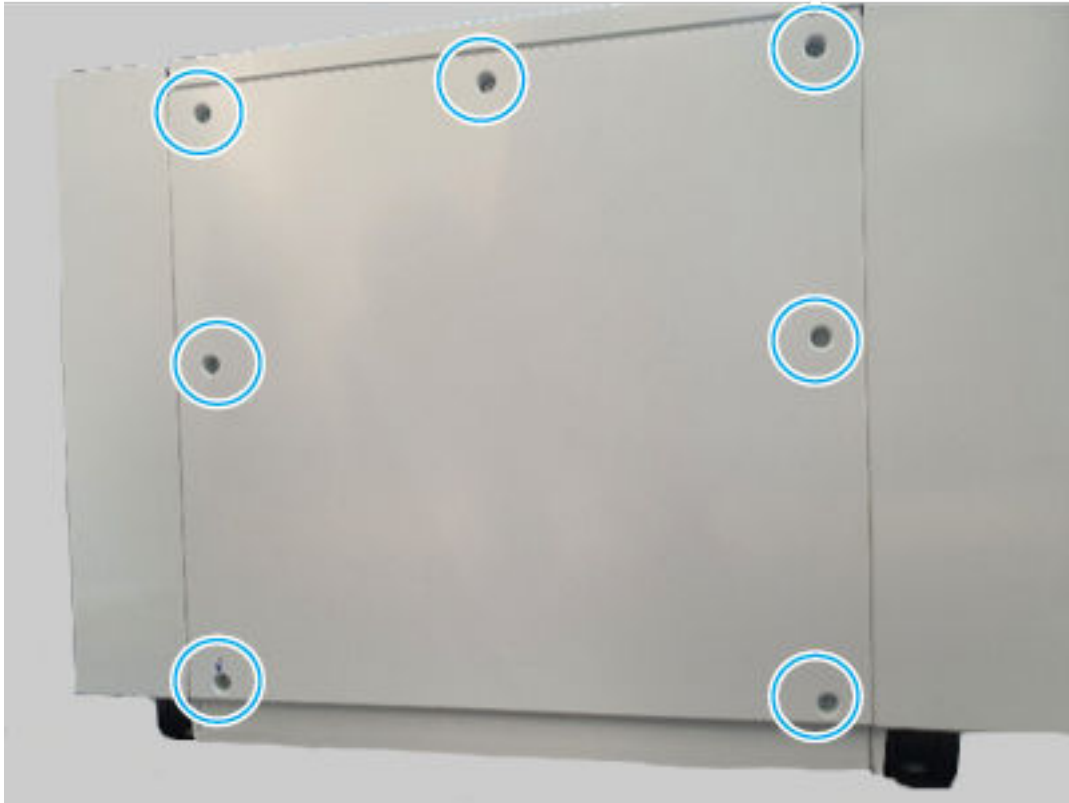
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1445 Remove the cover

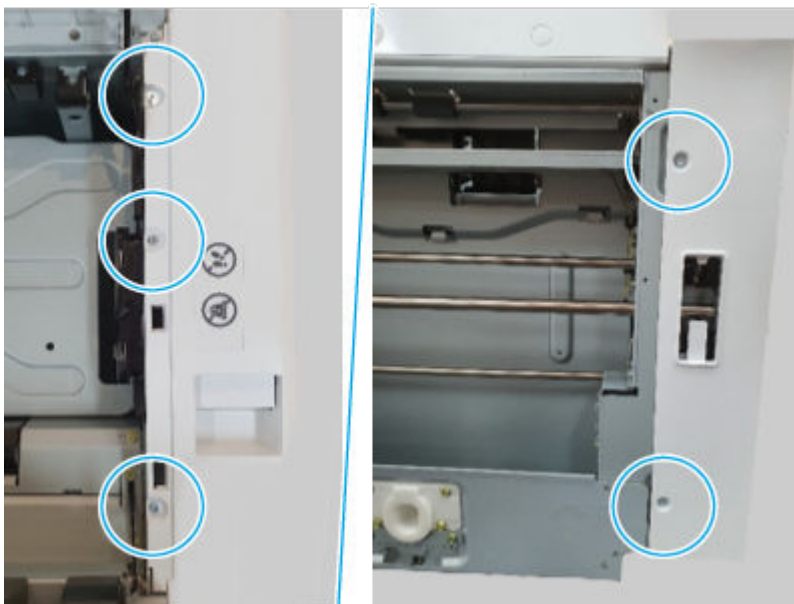


2. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1446 Remove the cover



3. Remove the sHCI link door 1st front and rear

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI door links.

1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1447 Remove one screw



3. Slightly close the door, release the boss on the door from the link, and then remove the link assembly.



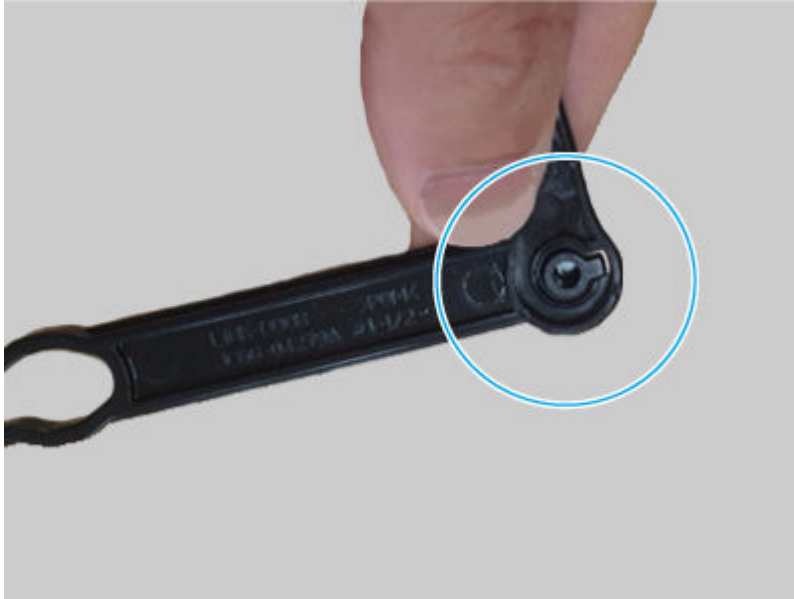
NOTE: Repeat these steps to remove the remaining door link if necessary.

Figure 6-1448 Remove the assembly



4. **Optional step:** Align the pin on one link with the slot on the other link, and then separate the two link arms.

Figure 6-1449 Separate the link arms



4. Remove the sHCI top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI top cover.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring and then remove wire and holder.

Figure 6-1450 Remove the e-ring and wire



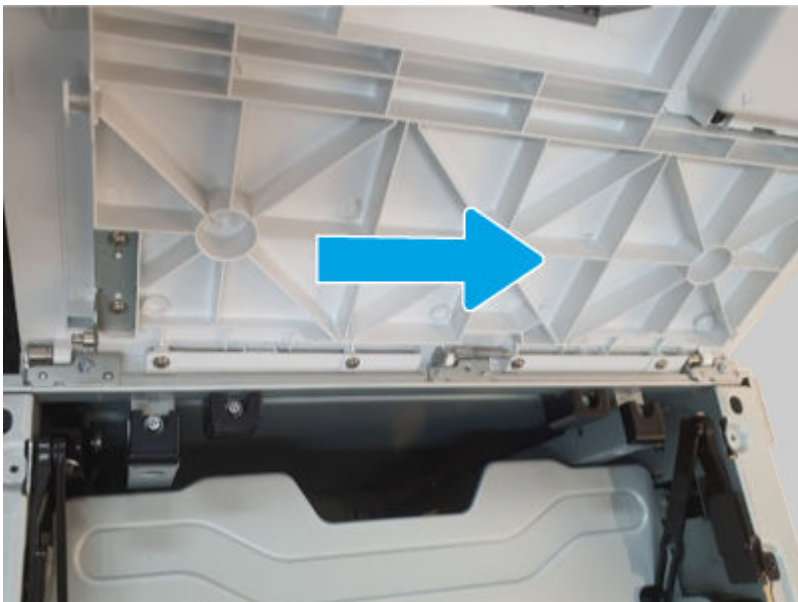
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1451 Remove one screw



3. Slide the top cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 6-1452 Remove the cover



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI front cover

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) front cover.


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-168 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40026	sHCI front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

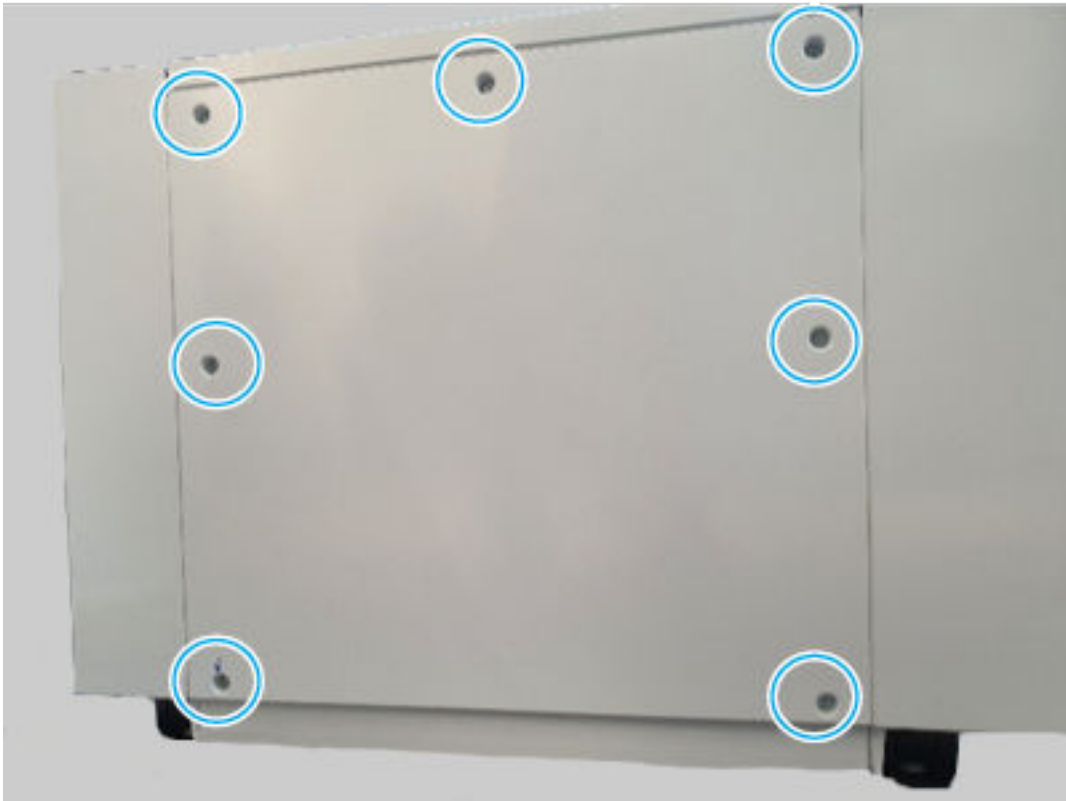
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1453 Remove the cover

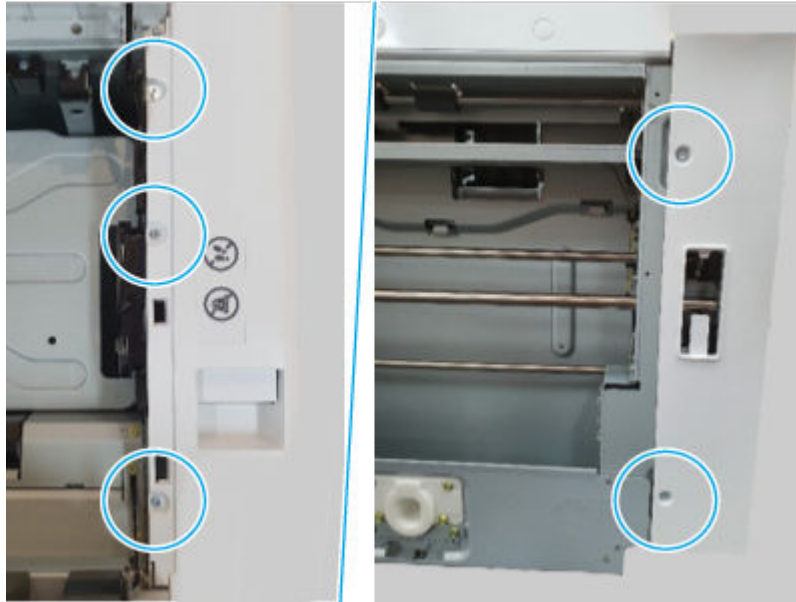


2. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1454 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI front top cover

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) front top cover.

Mean time to repair: 6 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-169 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40027	sHCI front top cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI pickup cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI pickup cover.

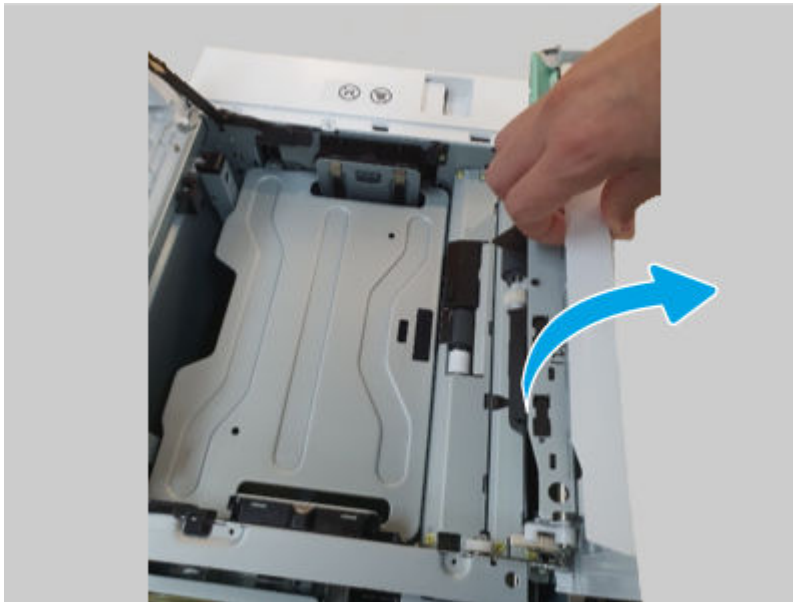
1. Remove three screw caps, and then remove three screws.

Figure 6-1455 Remove three screws



2. Remove the pickup cover.

Figure 6-1456 Remove the cover

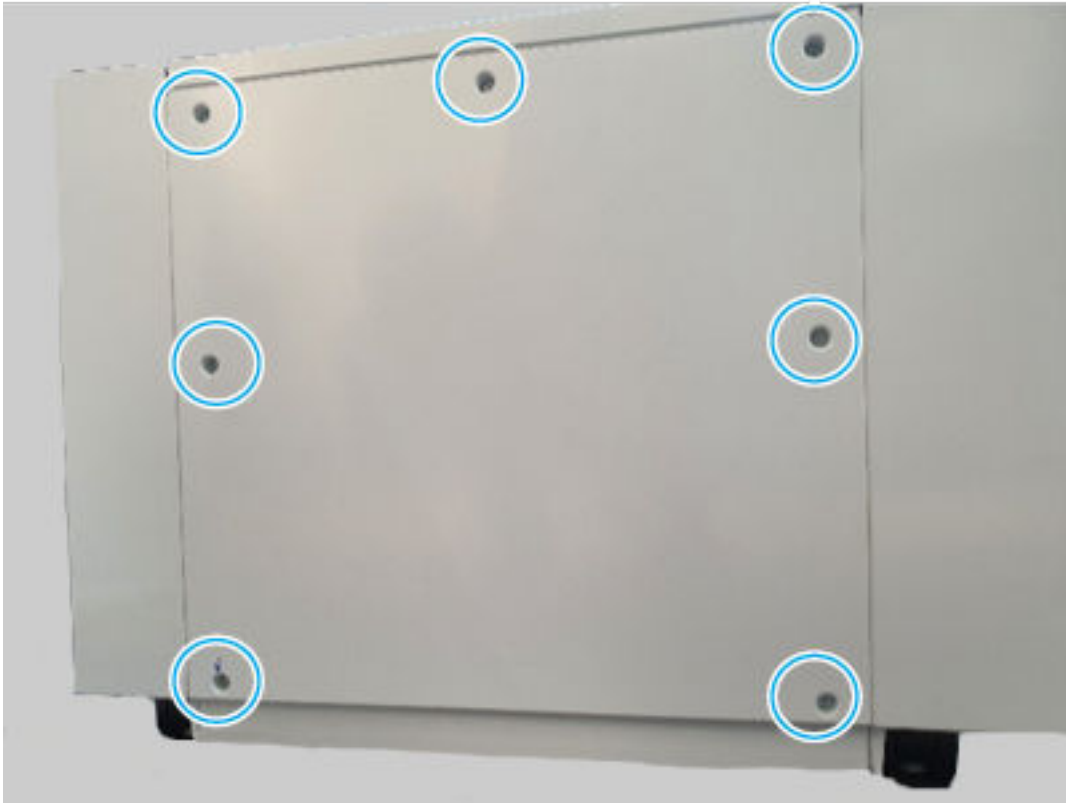


2. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1457 Remove the cover

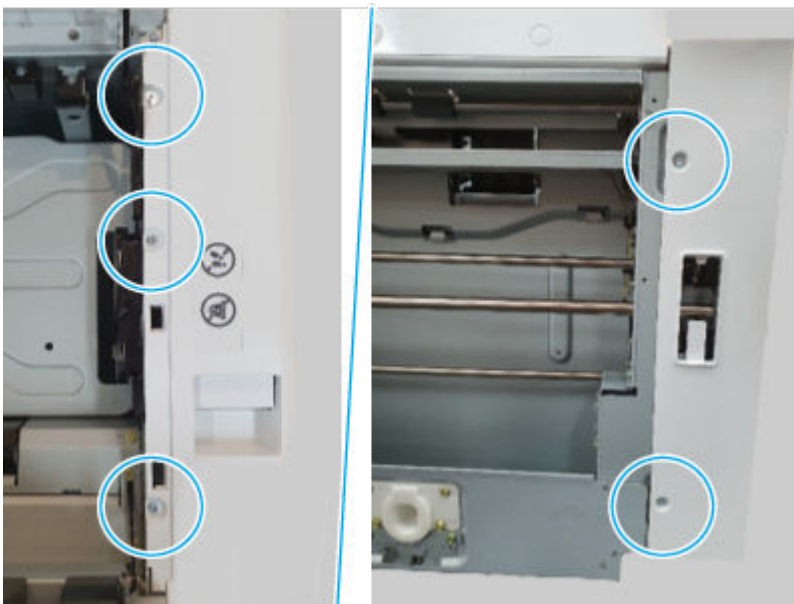


3. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1458 Remove the cover

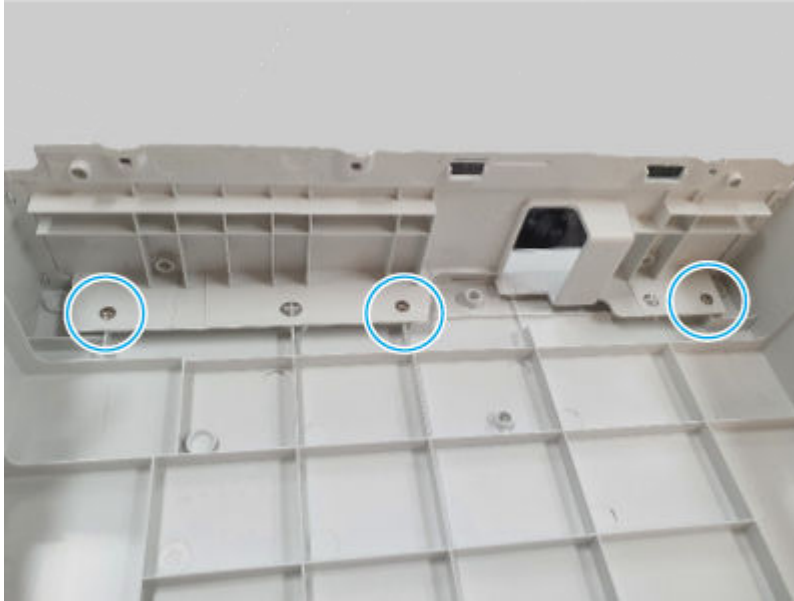


4. Remove the sHCI front top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front top cover.

- Remove three screws, and then remove the front top cover.

Figure 6-1459 Remove the cover



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI link door 1st front and rear

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) door links.



NOTE: The steps to remove the door link 1st front are identical to removing the door link 1st rear.



TIP:

- **Link door 1st front removal only:** Remove the right and *front* covers.
- **Link door 1st rear removal only:** Remove the right and *rear* covers.
- **Link door 1st front and rear:** Remove the right and *front* and *rear* covers.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-170 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04279A	Link door 1st front
JC66-04279A	Link door 1st rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

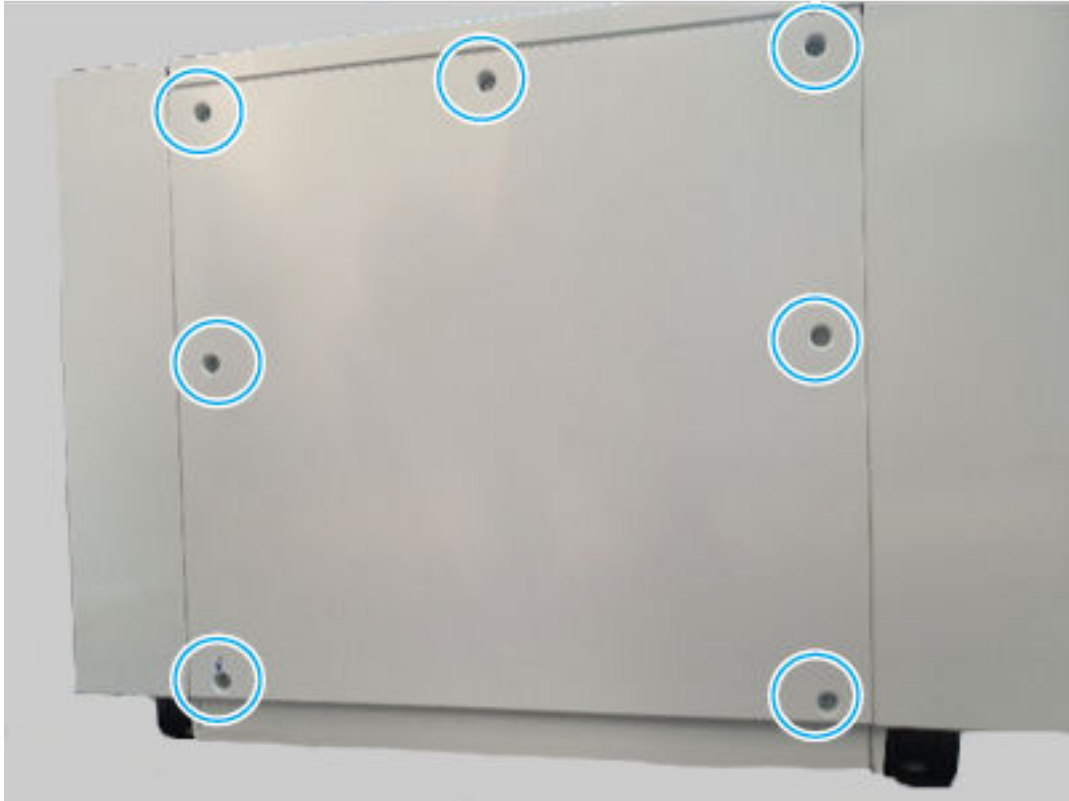
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1460 Remove the cover

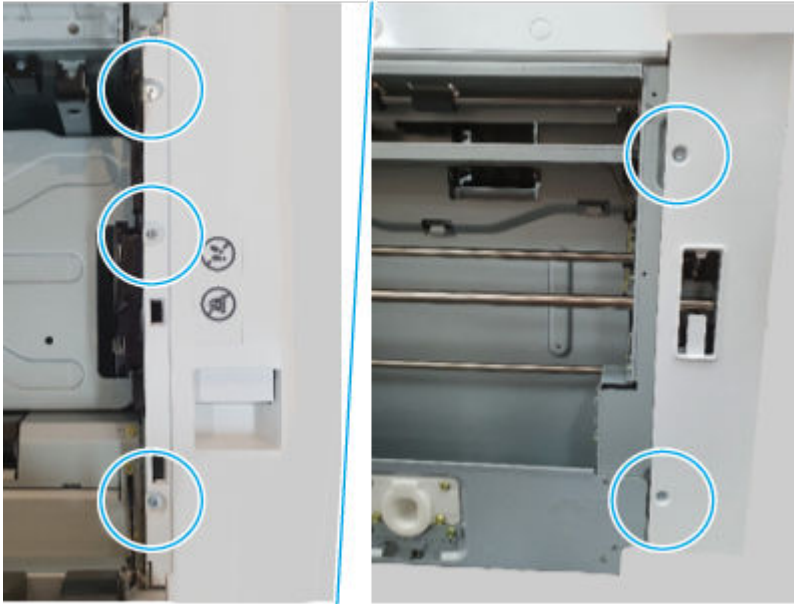


2. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1461 Remove the cover

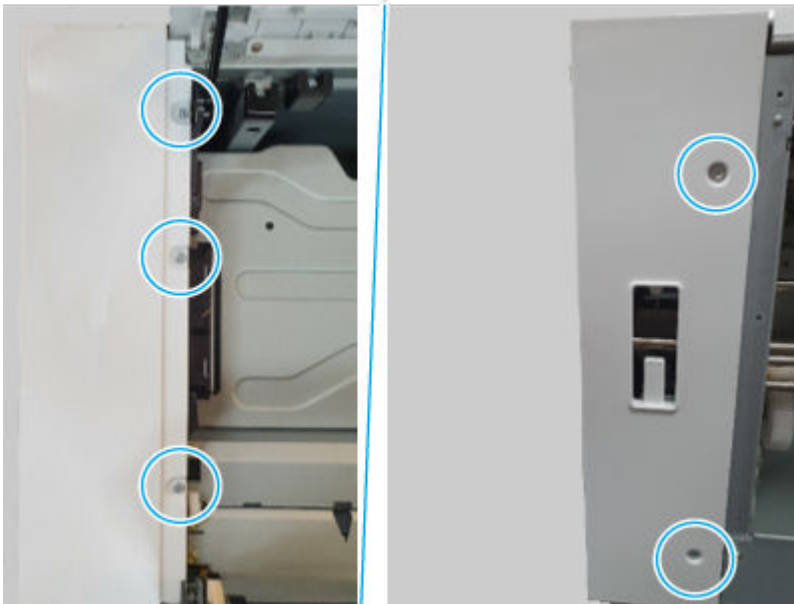


3. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1462 Remove the cover



4. Remove the sHCI link door 1st front and rear

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI door links.

1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.

2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1463 Remove one screw



3. Slightly close the door, release the boss on the door from the link, and then remove the link assembly.

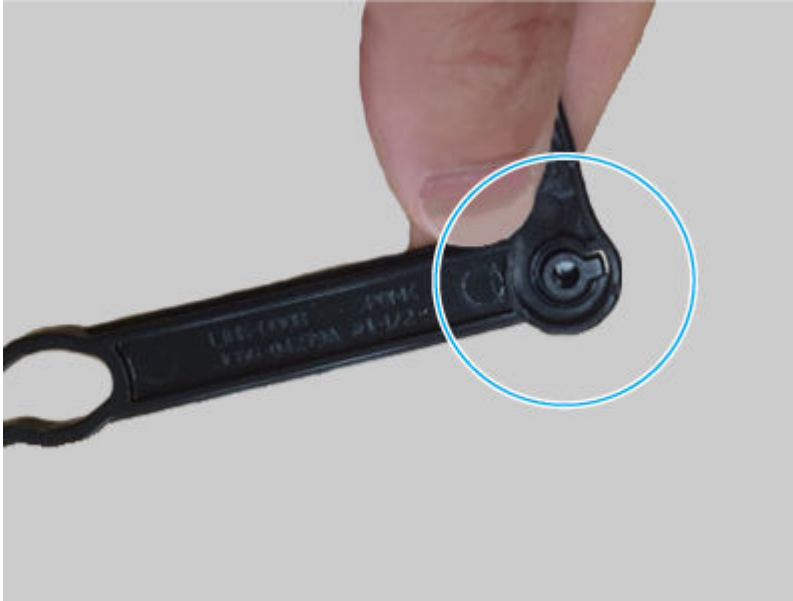
 **NOTE:** Repeat these steps to remove the remaining door link if necessary.

Figure 6-1464 Remove the assembly



4. **Optional step:** Align the pin on one link with the slot on the other link, and then separate the two link arms.

Figure 6-1465 Separate the link arms



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI link door 2nd front and rear

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) door links.

 **NOTE:** The steps to remove the door link 2nd front are identical to removing the door link 2nd rear.

 **TIP:**

- **Link door 2nd front removal only:** Remove the right and *front* covers.
- **Link door 2nd rear removal only:** Remove the right and *rear* covers.
- **Link door 2nd front and rear:** Remove the right and *front* and *rear* covers.



[View a video of removing and replacing the sHCI door links.](#)


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-171 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04278A	Link door 2nd front
JC66-04277A	Link door 2nd rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

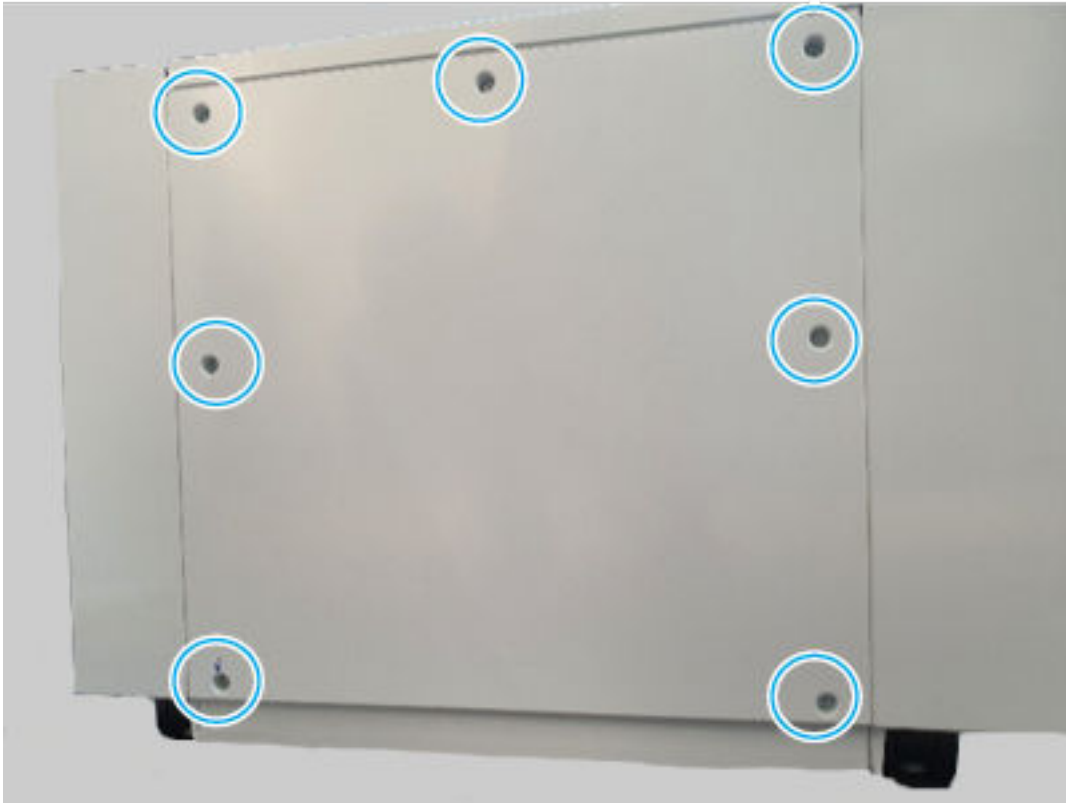
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1466 Remove the cover

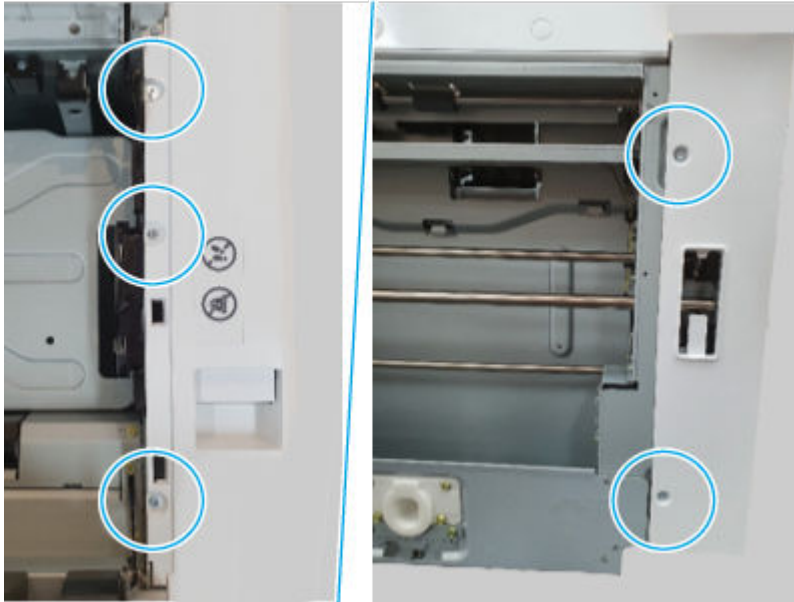


2. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1467 Remove the cover

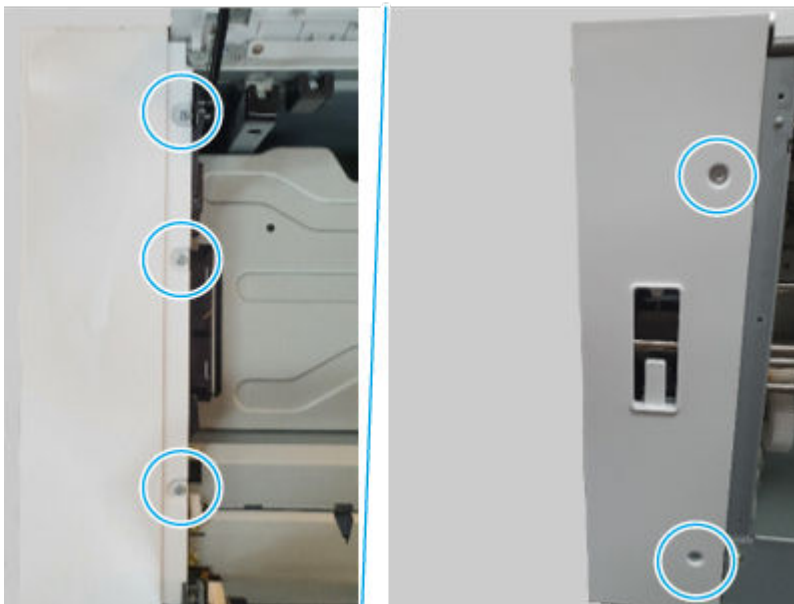


3. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1468 Remove the cover



4. Remove the sHCI link door 2nd front and rear

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI door links.

1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.

2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1469 Remove one screw



3. Slightly close the door, release the boss on the door from the link, and then remove the link assembly.



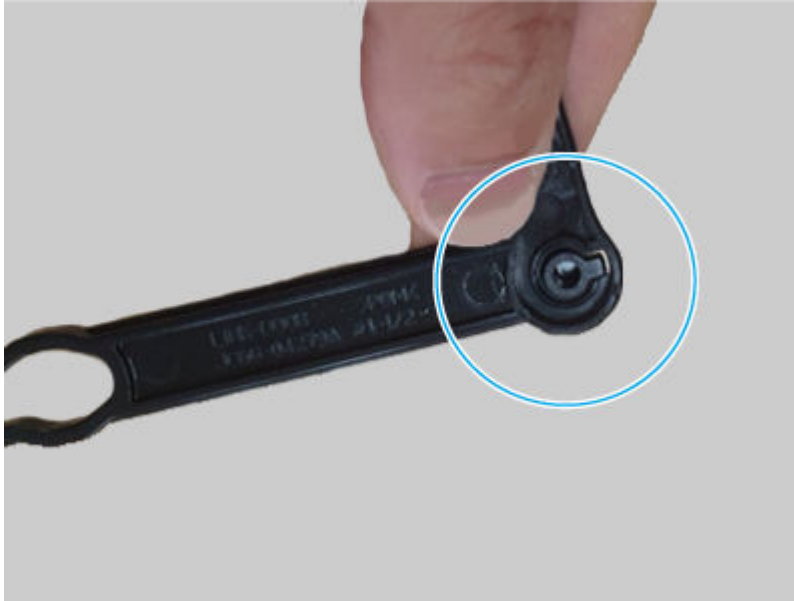
NOTE: Repeat these steps to remove the remaining door link if necessary.

Figure 6-1470 Remove the assembly



4. **Optional step:** Align the pin on one link with the slot on the other link, and then separate the two link arms.

Figure 6-1471 Separate the link arms



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI link holder front and rear

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) link holders.



NOTE: The steps to remove the link holder front are identical to removing the link holder rear.



TIP:

- **Link holder front removal only:** Remove the right and *front* covers.
- **Link holder rear removal only:** Remove the right and *rear* covers.
- **Link holder front and rear:** Remove the right and *front* and *rear* covers.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-172 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-06567A	Link holder front
JC61-06568A	Link holder rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

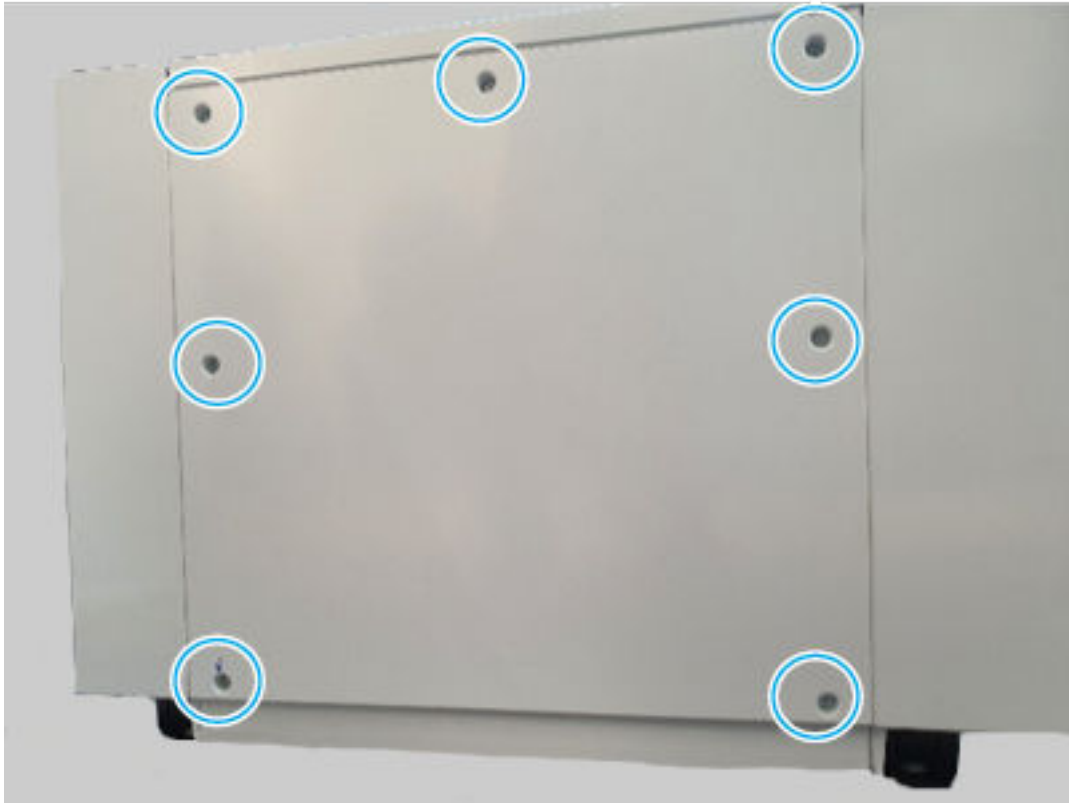
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1472 Remove the cover

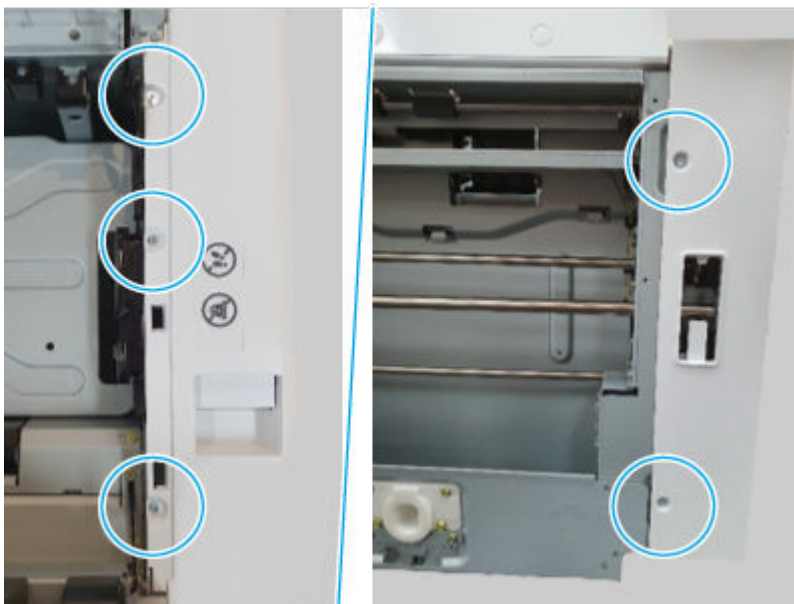


2. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1473 Remove the cover

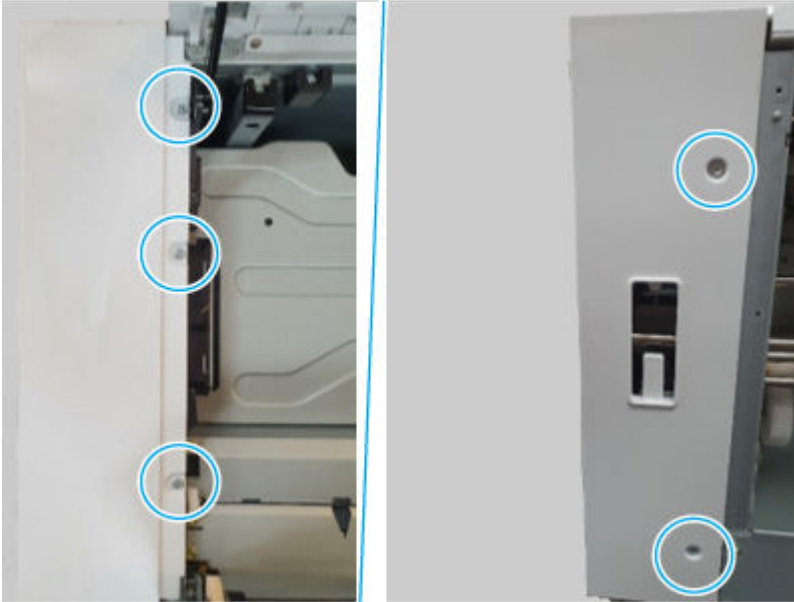


3. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1474 Remove the cover

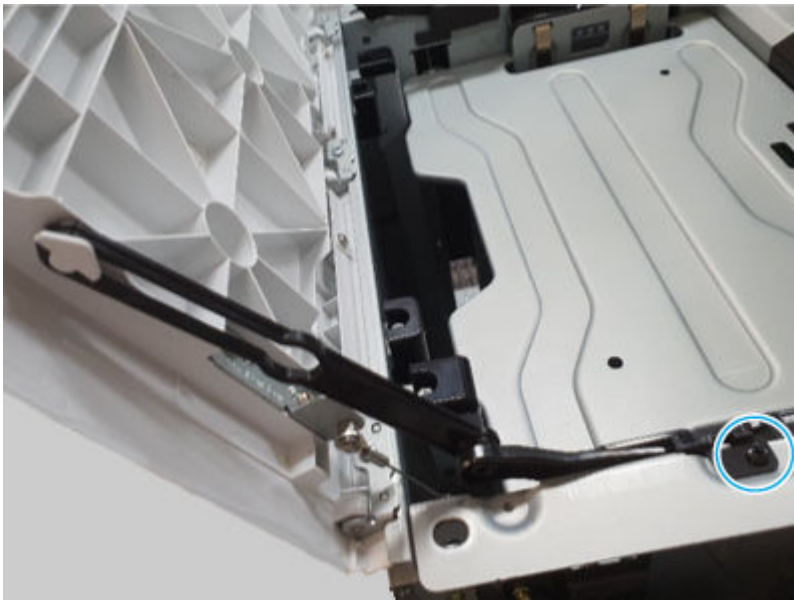


4. Remove the sHCI link holder front and rear

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI link holders.

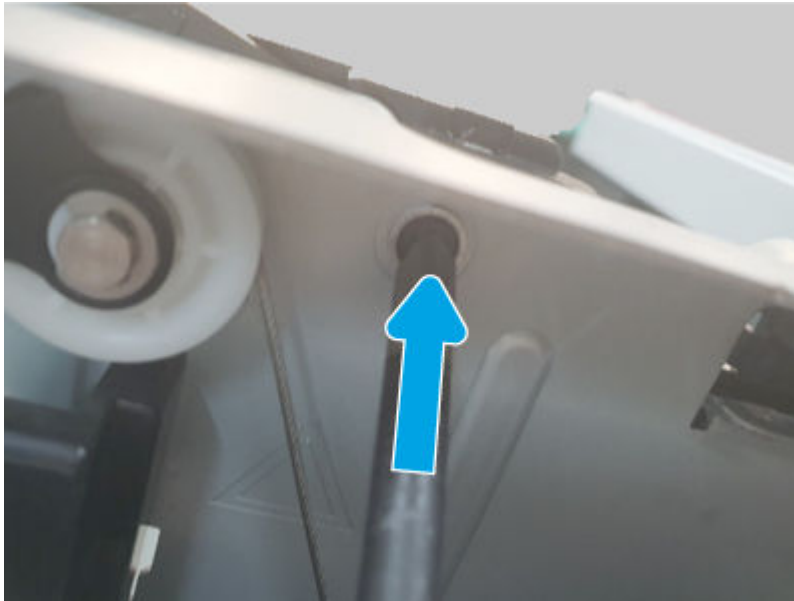
1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1475 Remove one screw




3. Use a small screwdriver to release one pin.

Figure 6-1476 Release the assembly

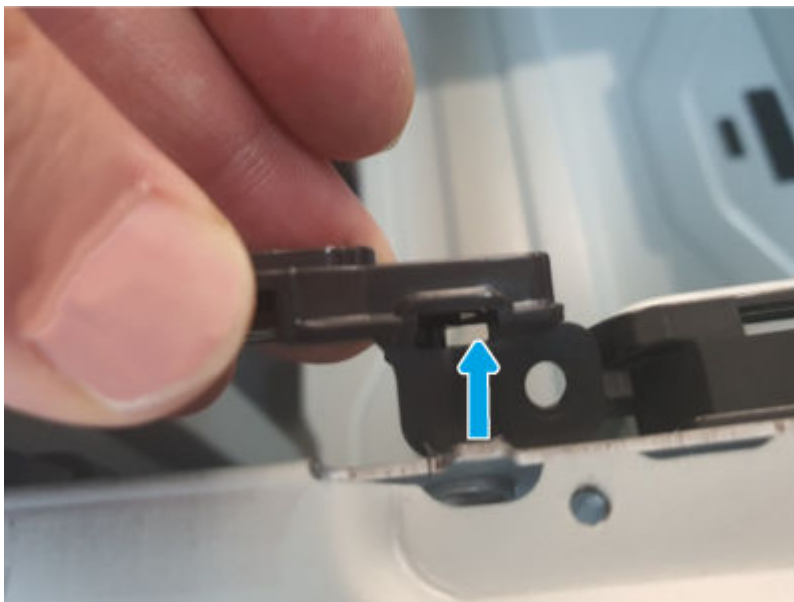


4. Lift up on the holder to remove it.

 **NOTE:** Repeat these steps to remove the remaining link holder if necessary.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the holder on the sHCI chassis, and then push straight down to install it.


Figure 6-1477 Remove the holder



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Unit

Review the sHCI unit parts removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) pickup assembly.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-173 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-60014	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI pickup cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI pickup cover.

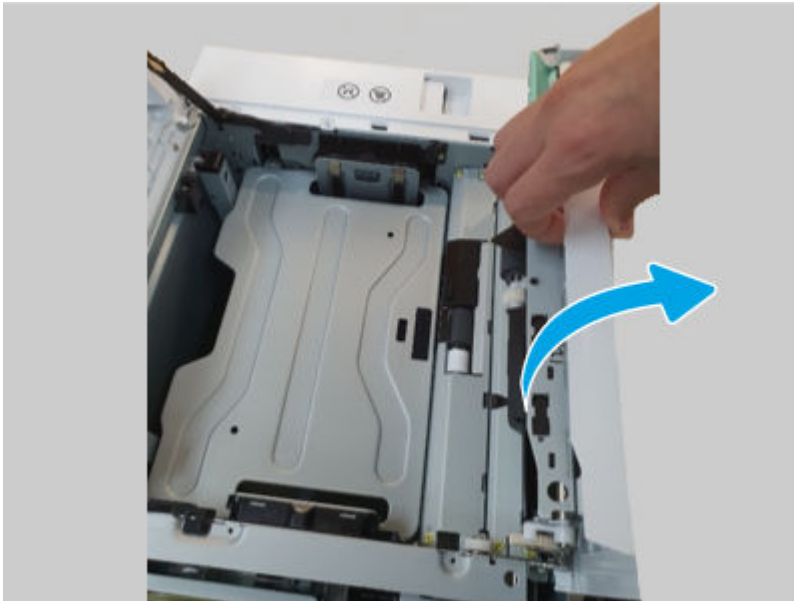
1. Remove three screw caps, and then remove three screws.

Figure 6-1478 Remove three screws



2. Remove the pickup cover.

Figure 6-1479 Remove the cover

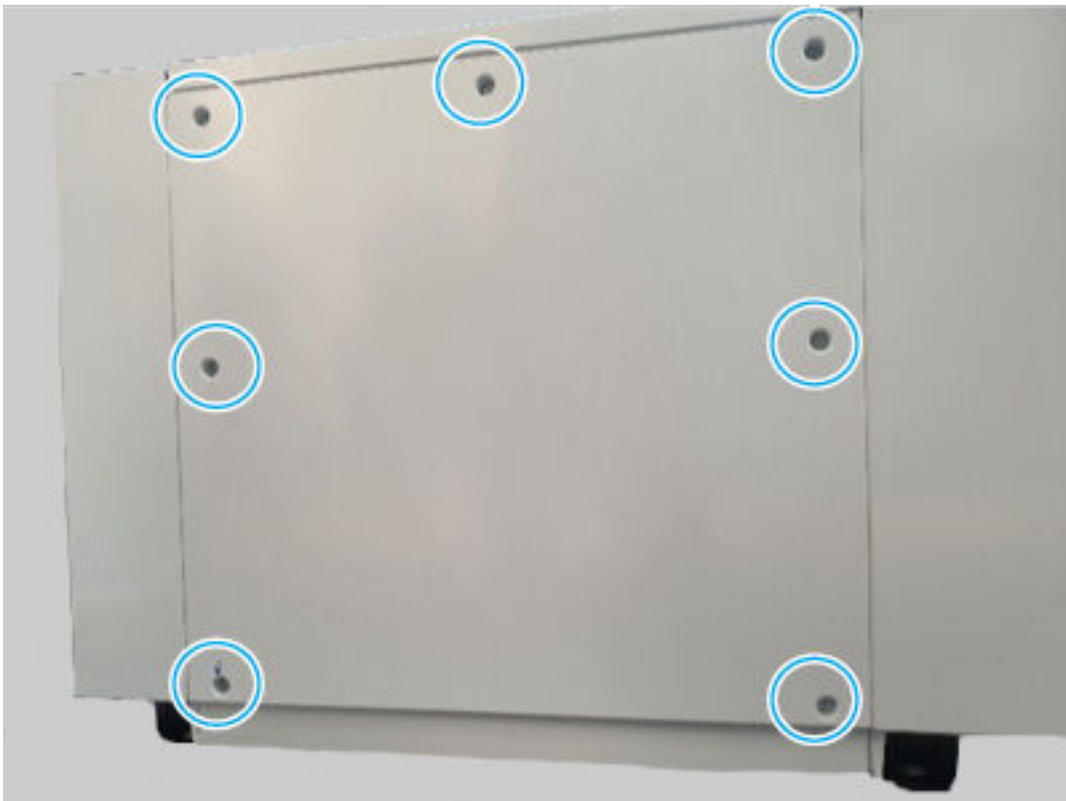


2. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1480 Remove the cover

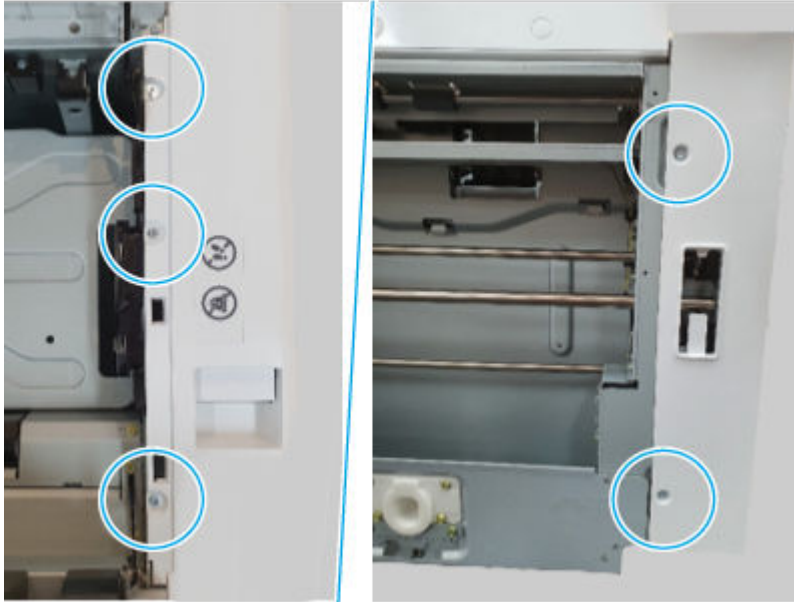


3. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1481 Remove the cover

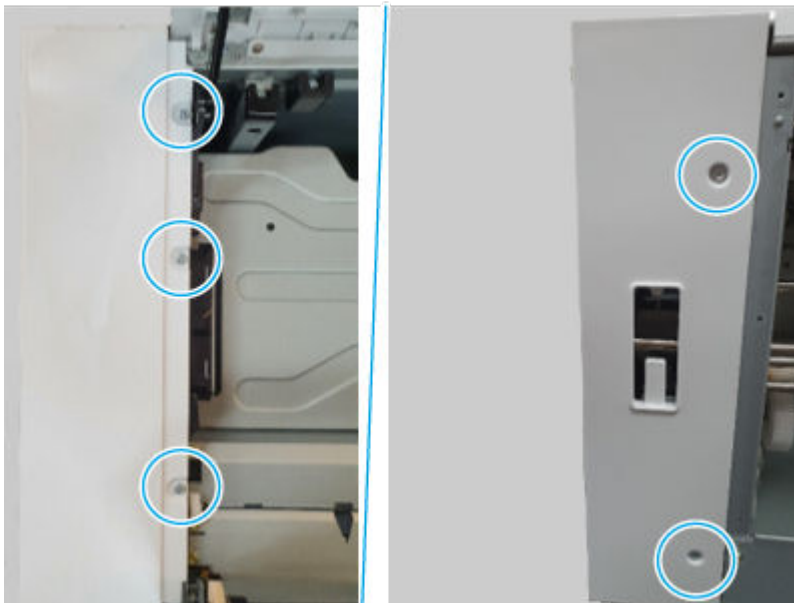


4. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1482 Remove the cover

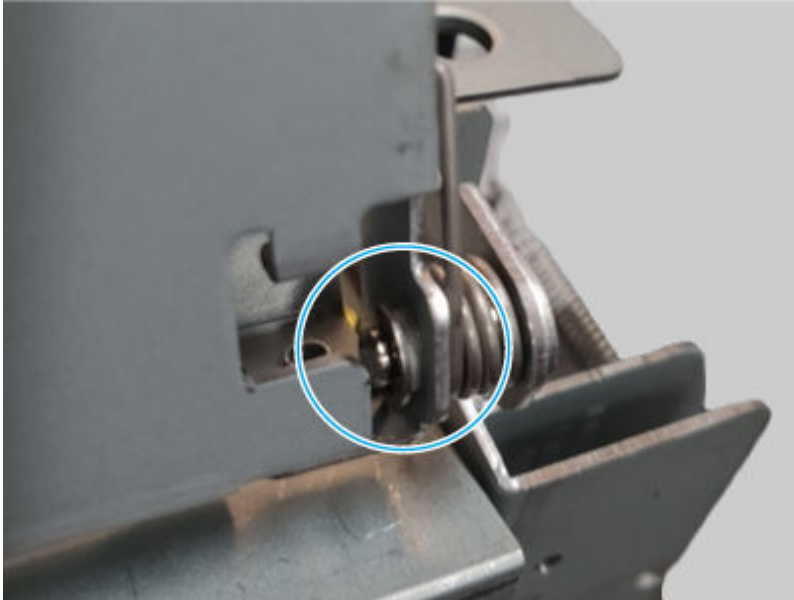


5. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI pickup assembly.

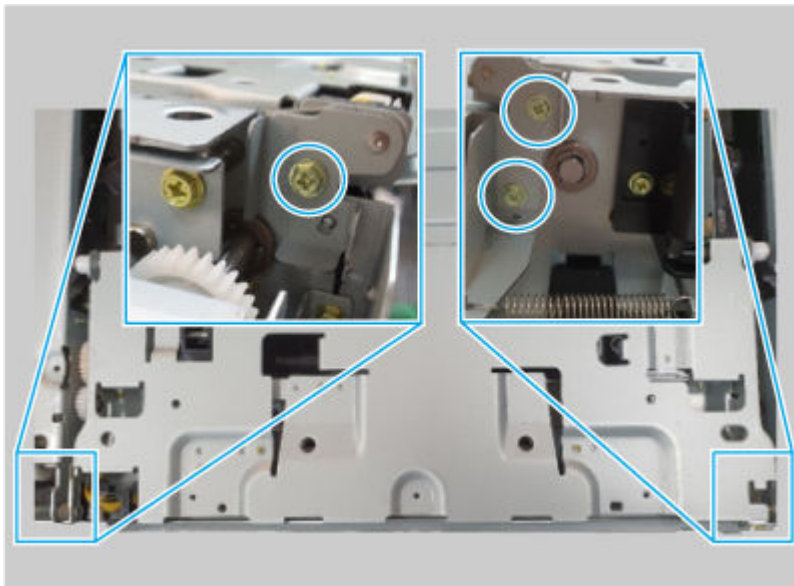
1. Open the top cover.
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.

Figure 6-1483 Remove one e-ring



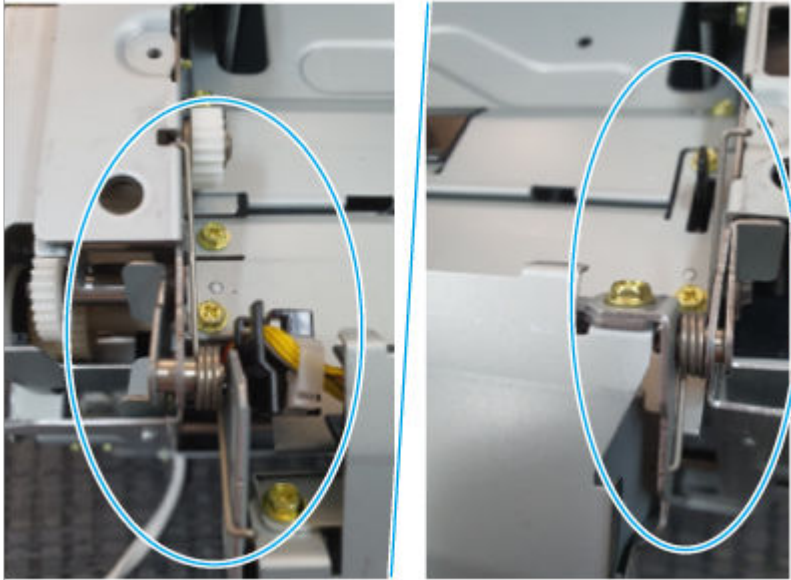
3. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1484 Remove three screws



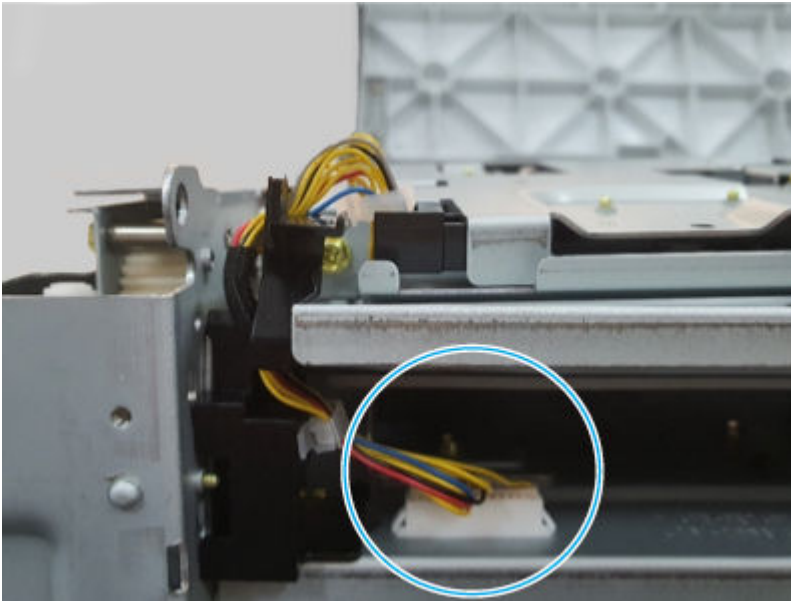
4. Before proceeding, take note of the spring positions. Do not loose the springs when removing the assembly.

Figure 6-1485 Spring positions



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the pickup assembly.

Figure 6-1486 Remove the assembly



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) top cover open switch assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) top cover open switch assembly.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-174 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01123A	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) top cover open switch assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

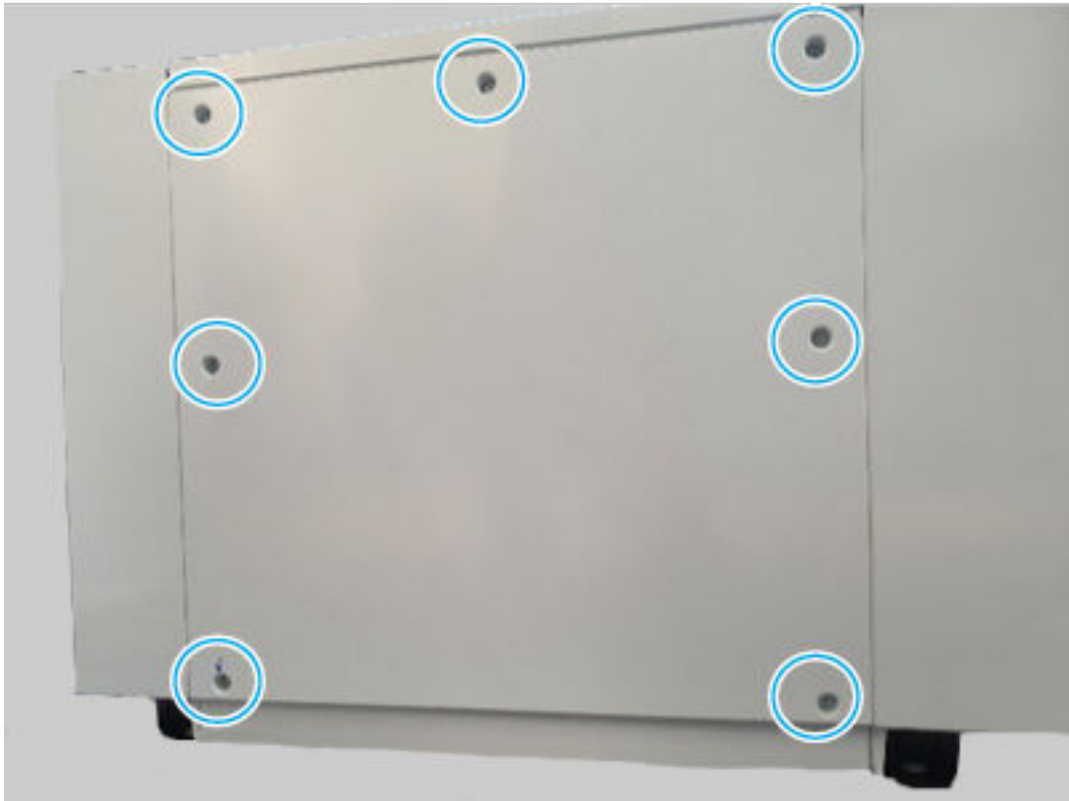
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1487 Remove the cover

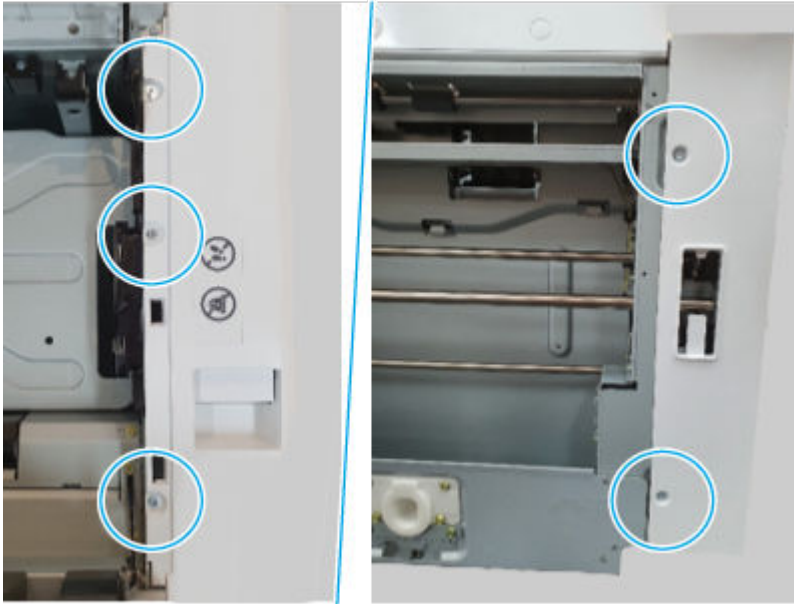


2. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1488 Remove the cover

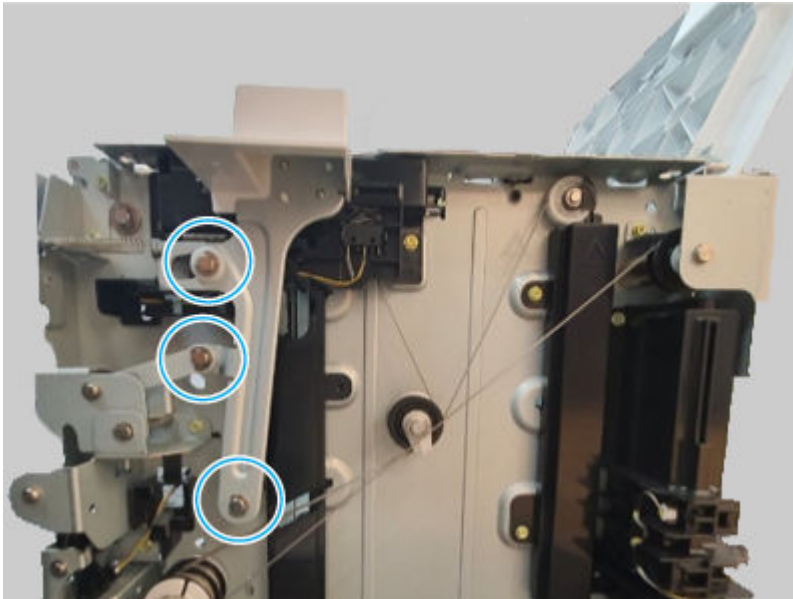


3. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) top cover open switch assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI top cover open switch assembly.

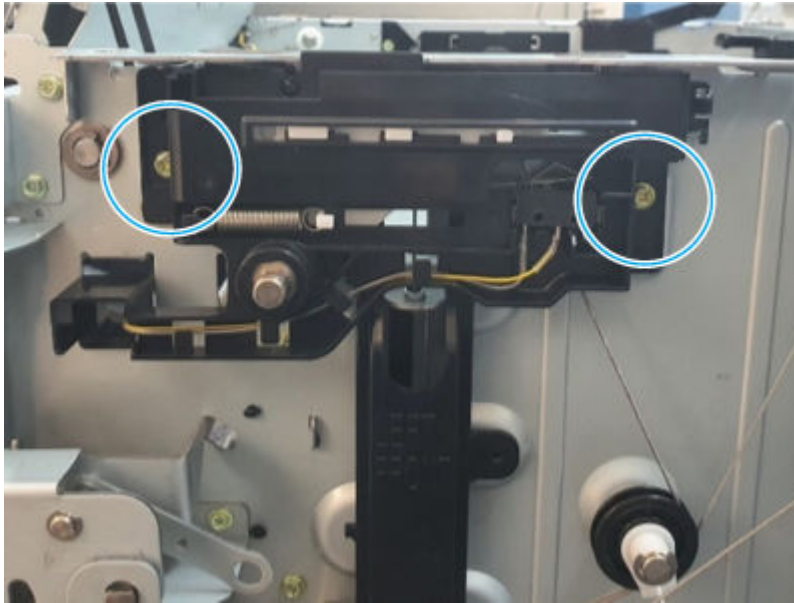
1. Open the top cover.
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove three e-rings, and then remove the lever handle.

Figure 6-1489 Remove the lever handle



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover open switch assembly.

Figure 6-1490 Remove the assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Roller

Review the sHCI roller removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) tray roller kit

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) tray roller kit.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-175 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN66-67001	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) tray roller kit
5QJ90-60128	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup roller
JC93-01726A	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) forward roller
JC93-01726A	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) reverse roller

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) tray roller kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI tray roller kit.

1. Open the pickup assembly.

2. Open the retard guide.


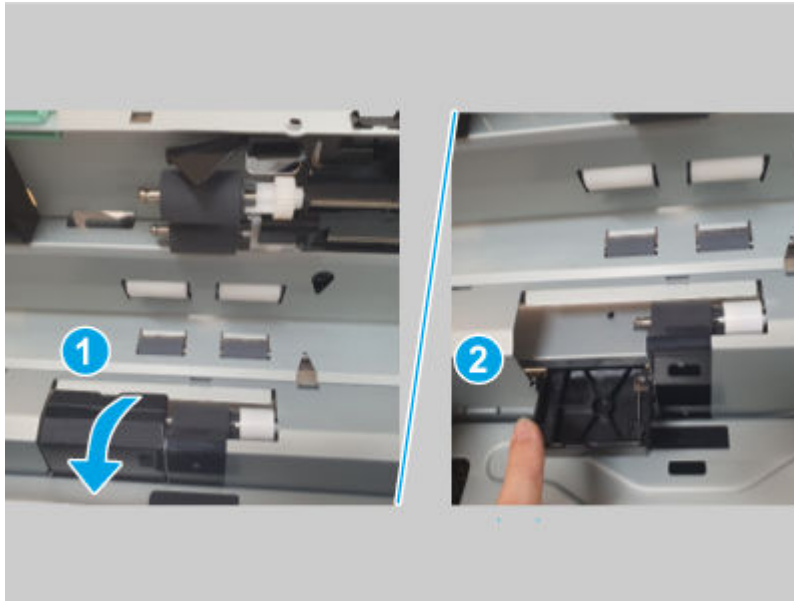
 **Reinstallation tip:** After installing replacement rollers, make sure to firmly push the return guide towards the rear of the sHCI to prevent paper jams.

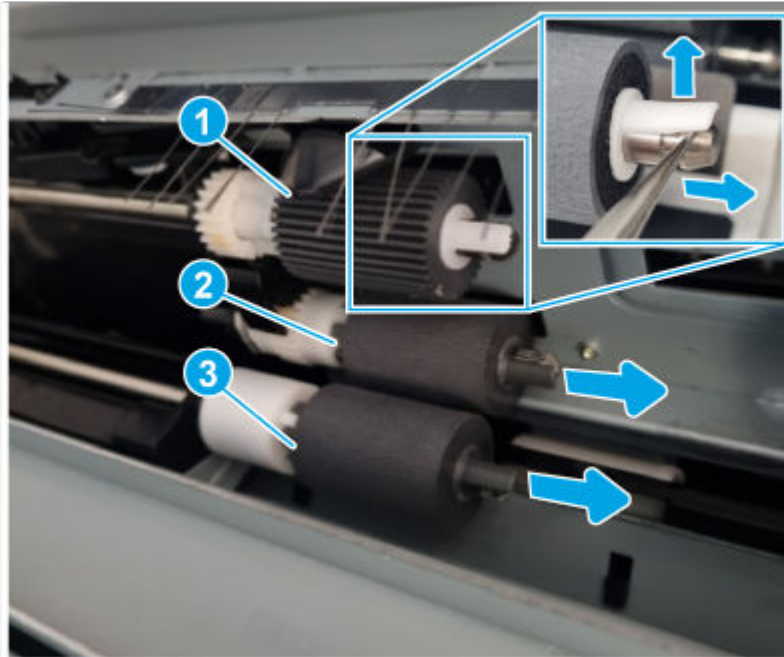
Figure 6-1491 Open the guide



3. Use a pair of tweezers to release the locking tab, and then slide the roller off the shaft to remove it.
 - **Pickup roller:** callout 1
 - **Forward roller:** callout 2
 - **Reverse roller:** callout 3

 **NOTE:** Hold the guide open to remove the reverse roller.

Figure 6-1492 Remove the rollers



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Motor

Review the sHCI motor removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) pickup, feed drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) pickup, feed drive assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the sHCI Tray 5 or 6 pickup, feed drive assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-176 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01112A	sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup, feed drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

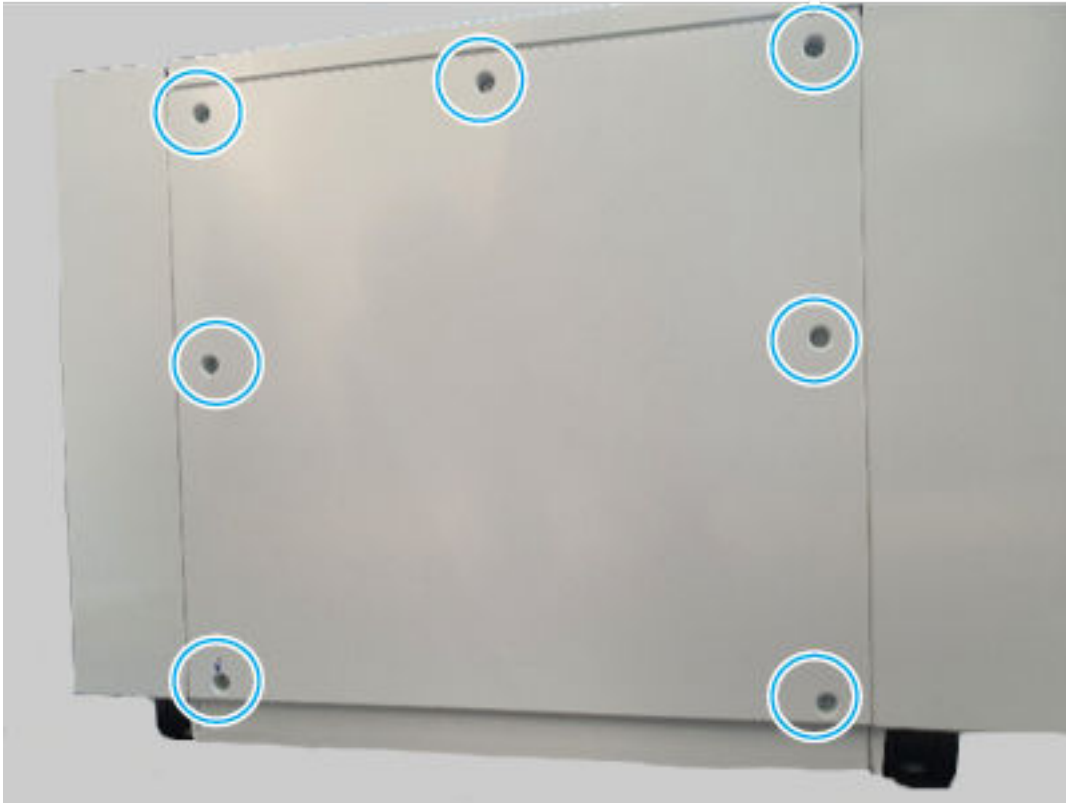
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1493 Remove the cover

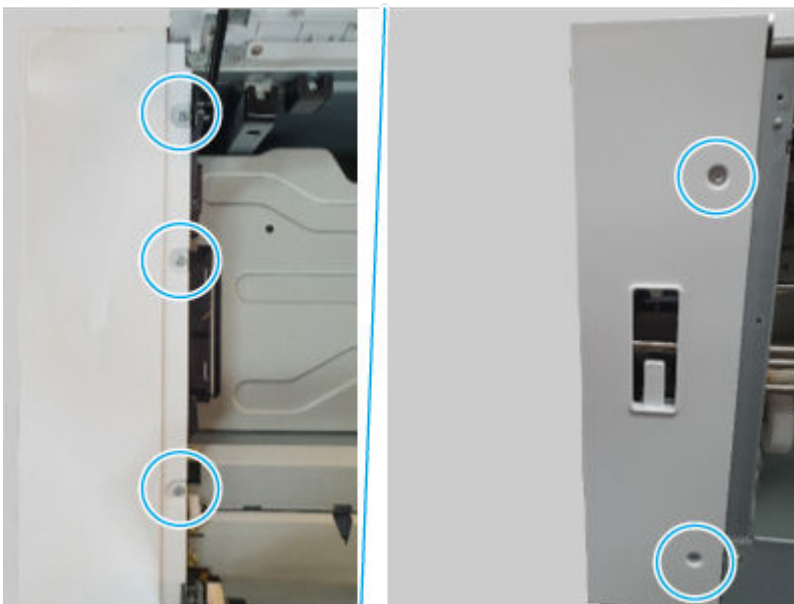


2. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1494 Remove the cover

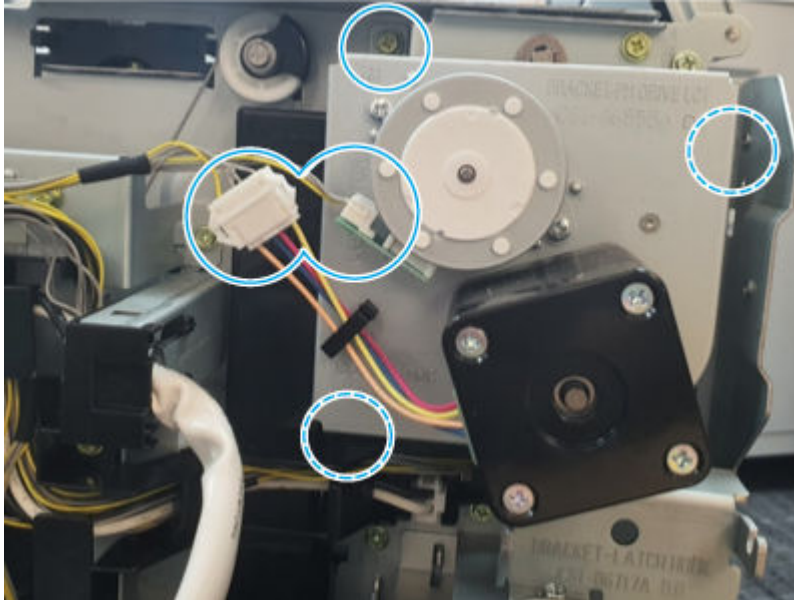


3. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup, feed drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI pickup, feed drive assembly.

1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the sHCI pickup, feed drive assembly.

Figure 6-1495 Remove the assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) pickup motor

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) pickup motor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-177 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01083A	Drive-motor step (sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

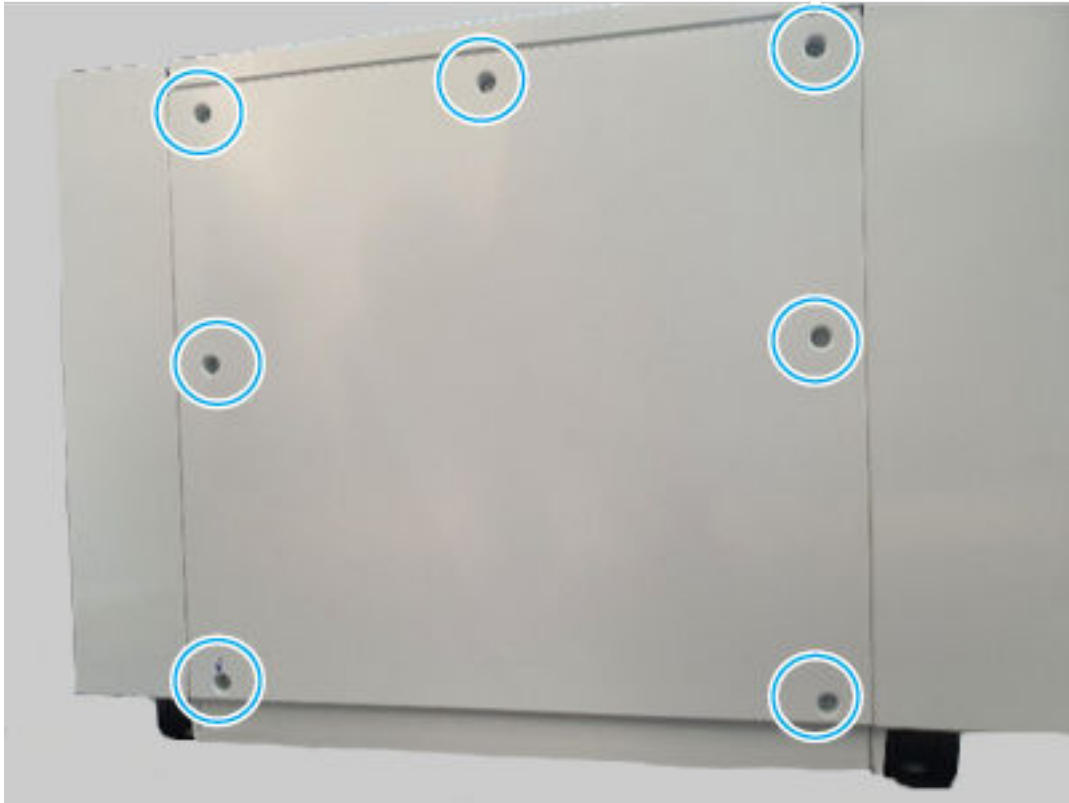
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1496 Remove the cover

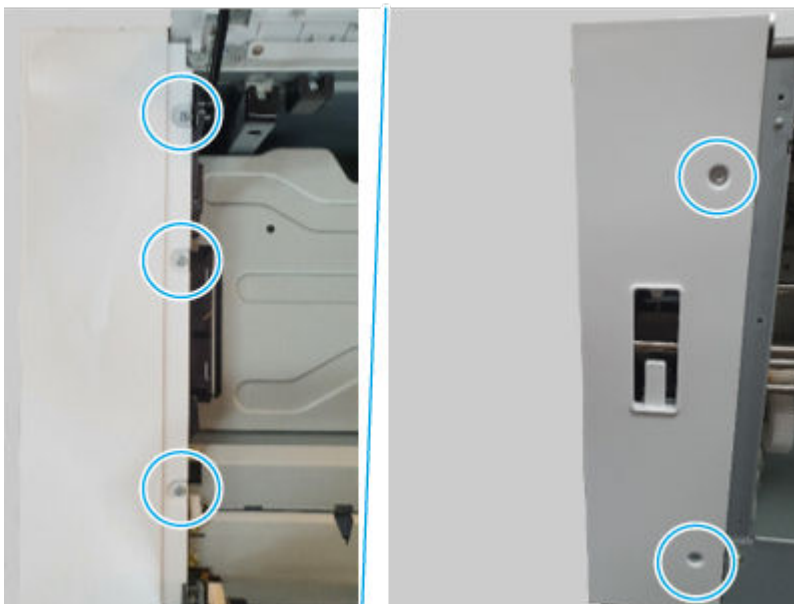


2. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1497 Remove the cover

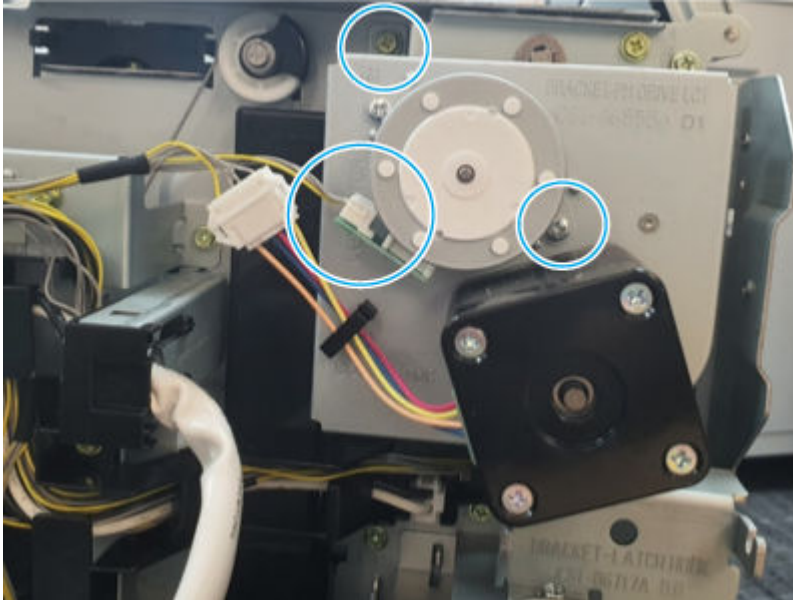


3. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI pickup motor.

1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the sHCI pickup motor.


Figure 6-1498 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) feed motor

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) feed motor.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-178 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00163A	Motor, step (sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feed motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

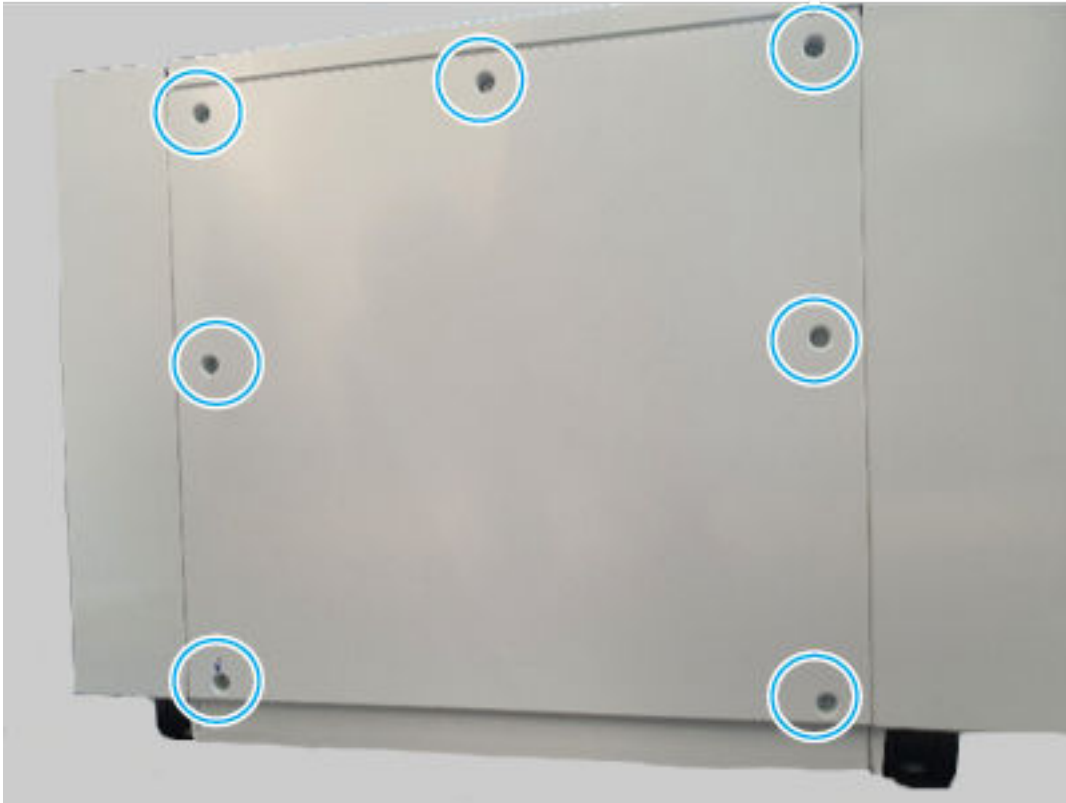
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1499 Remove the cover

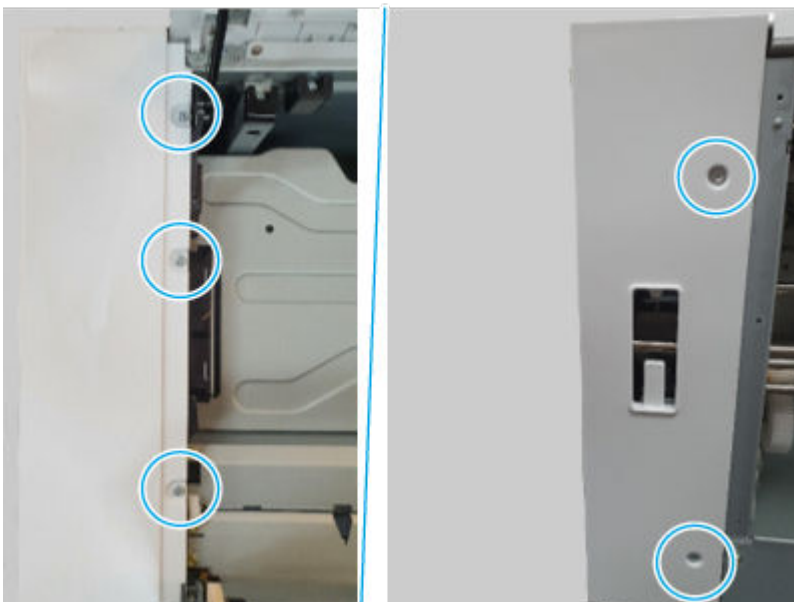


2. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1500 Remove the cover

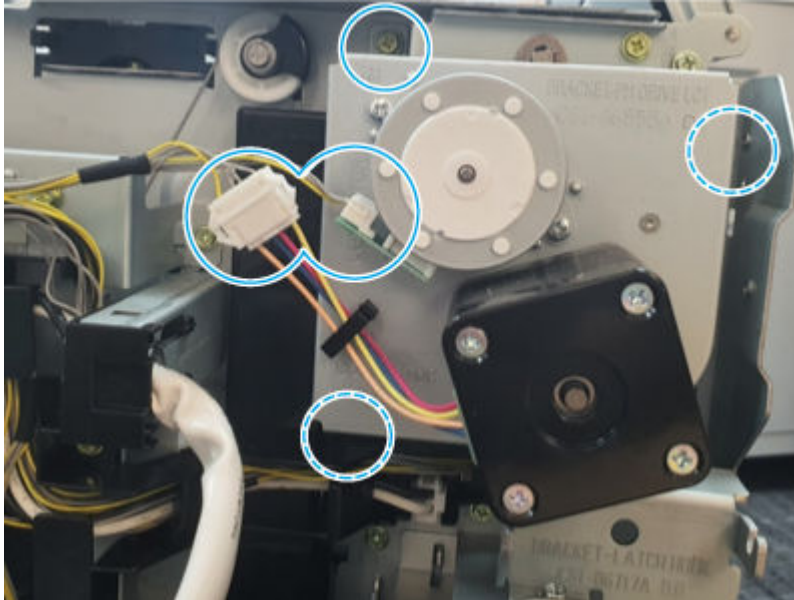


3. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) pickup, feed drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI pickup, feed drive assembly.

1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the sHCI pickup, feed drive assembly.

Figure 6-1501 Remove the assembly

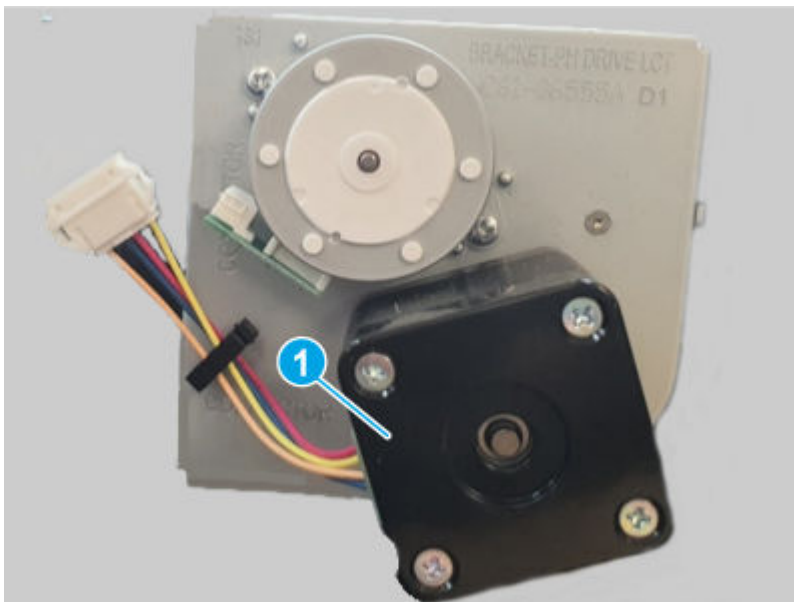


4. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) feed motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI feed motor.

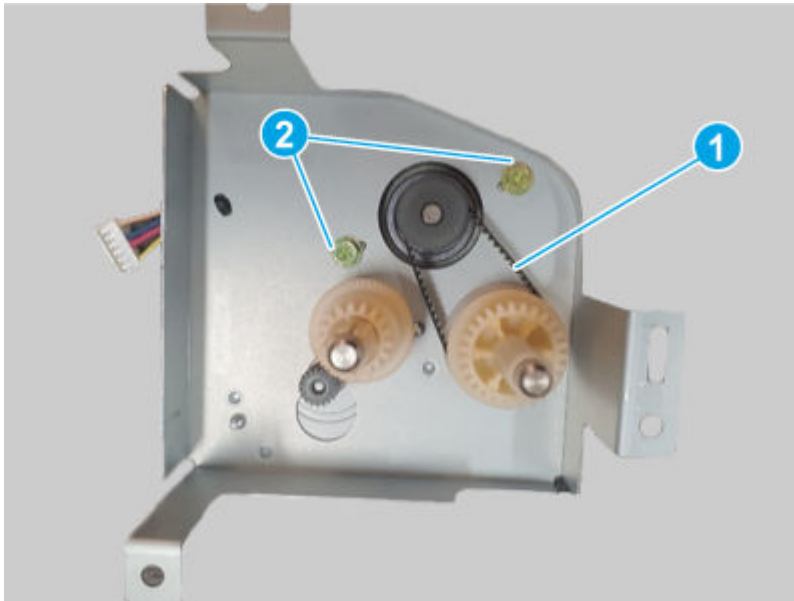
1. Locate the sHCI feed motor (callout 1) on the pickup feed drive assembly.

Figure 6-1502 Locate the motor



2. Do the following:
 - a. Turn the pickup feed drive assembly over.
 - b. Remove one belt (callout 1).
 - c. Remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the feed motor.

Figure 6-1503 Remove the motor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) lift drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) lift drive.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-179 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01127A	sHCI(Tray5 or 6) lift drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

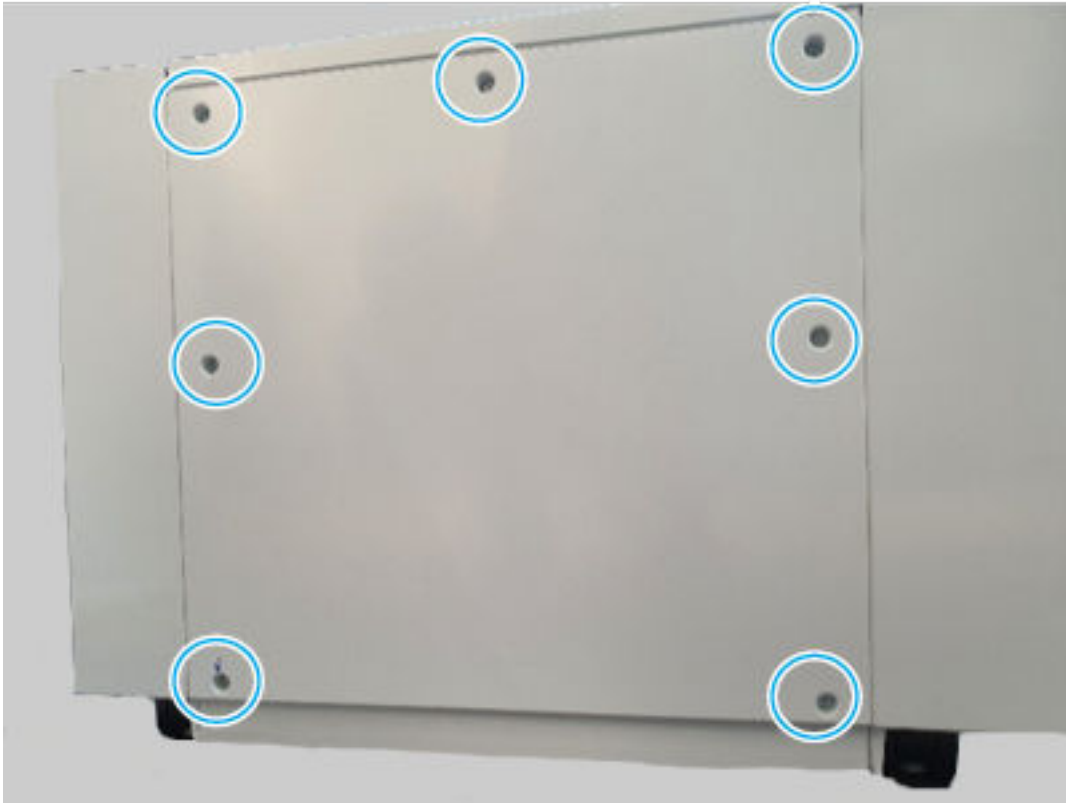
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1504 Remove the cover

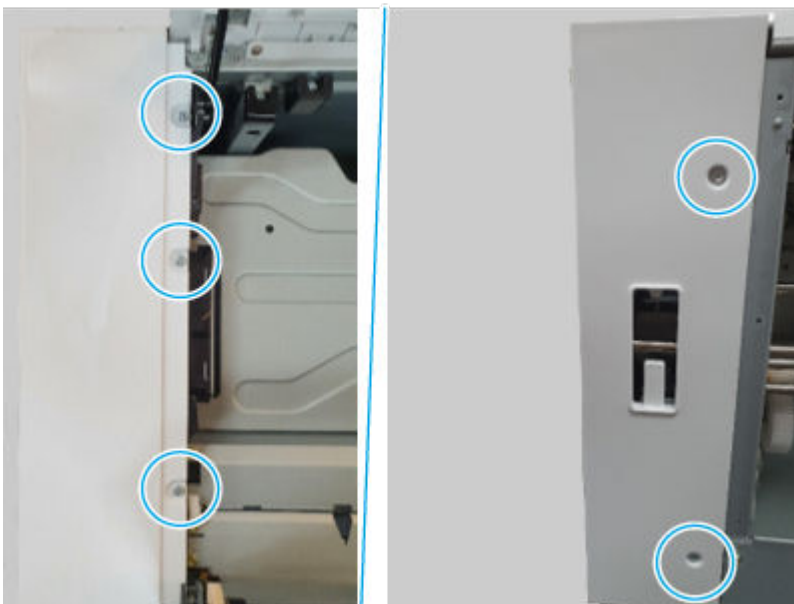


Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1505 Remove the cover

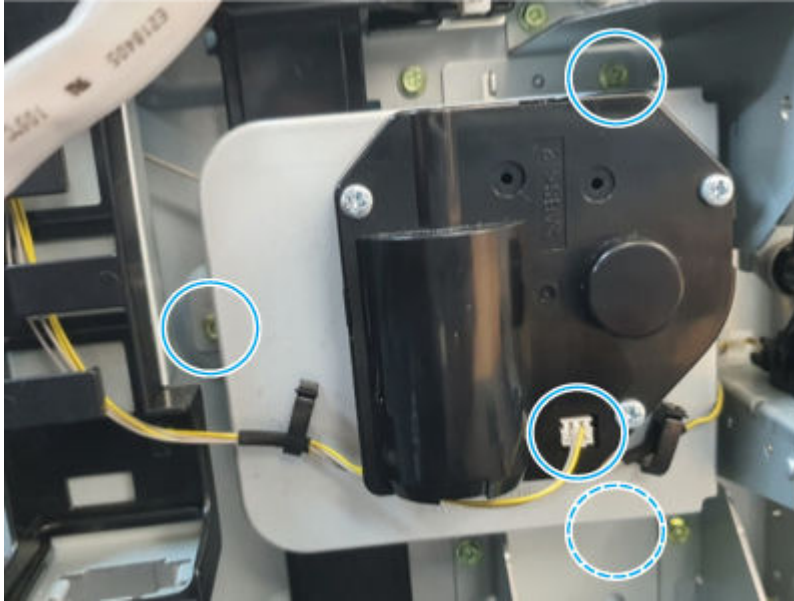


Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) lift drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI lift drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the lift drive assembly.

Figure 6-1506 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) lift motor

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) lift motor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-180 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00109A	Motor, geared (sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) lift motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

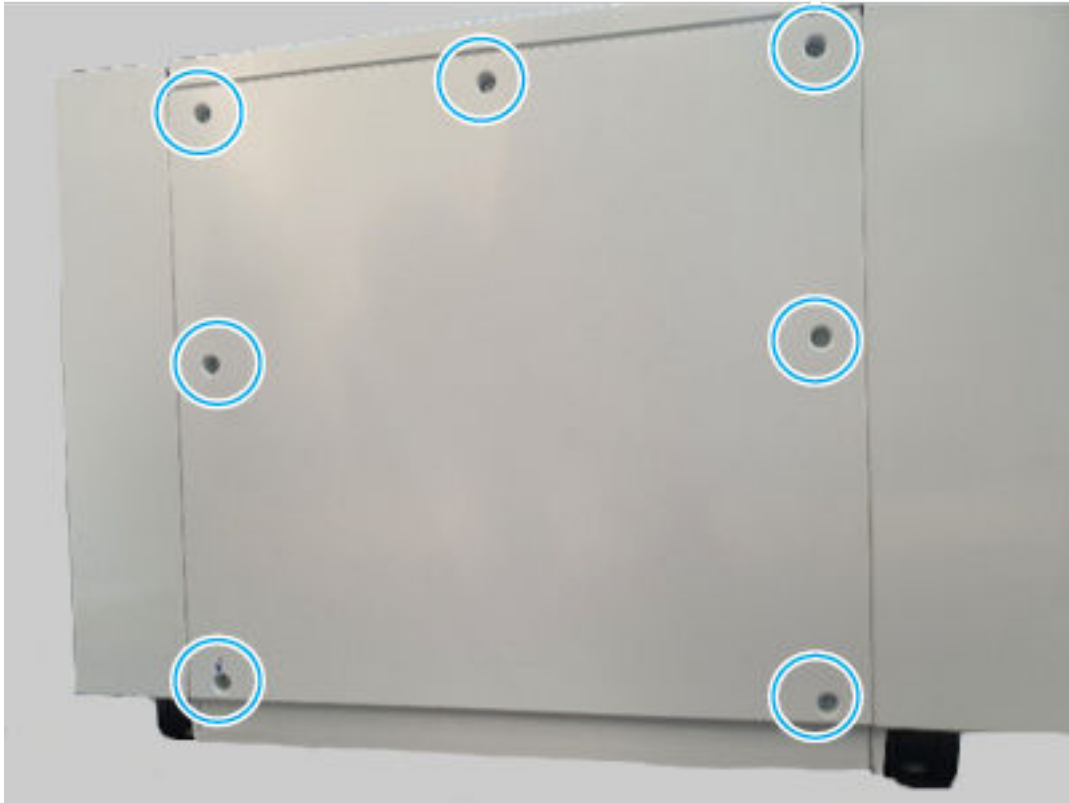
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1507 Remove the cover

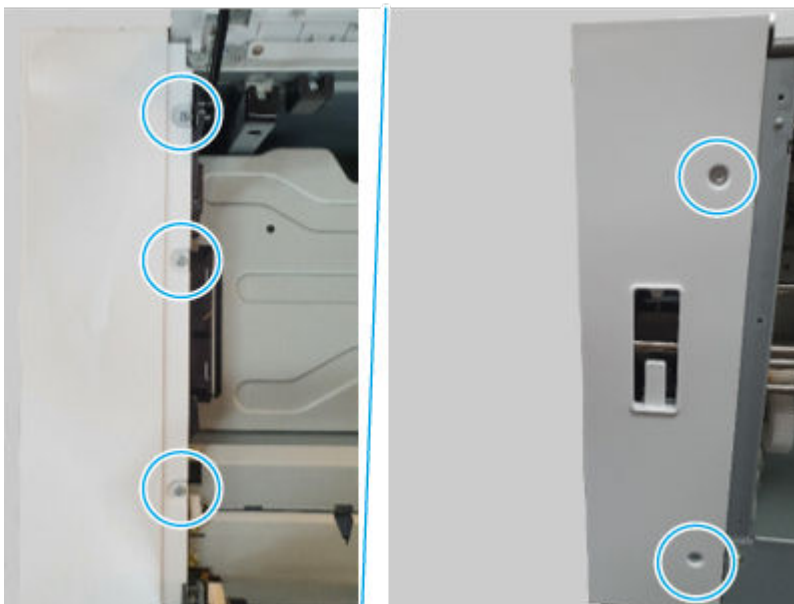


2. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1508 Remove the cover

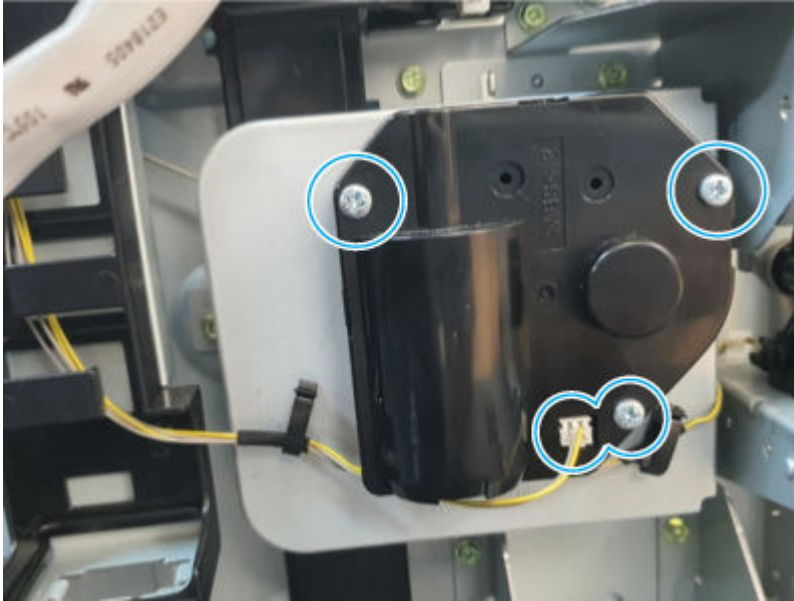


3. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) lift motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI lift motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the lift motor.

Figure 6-1509 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Sensor

Review the sHCI sensor removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) detection sensor 1

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) detection sensor 1.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-181 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) detection sensor 1)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

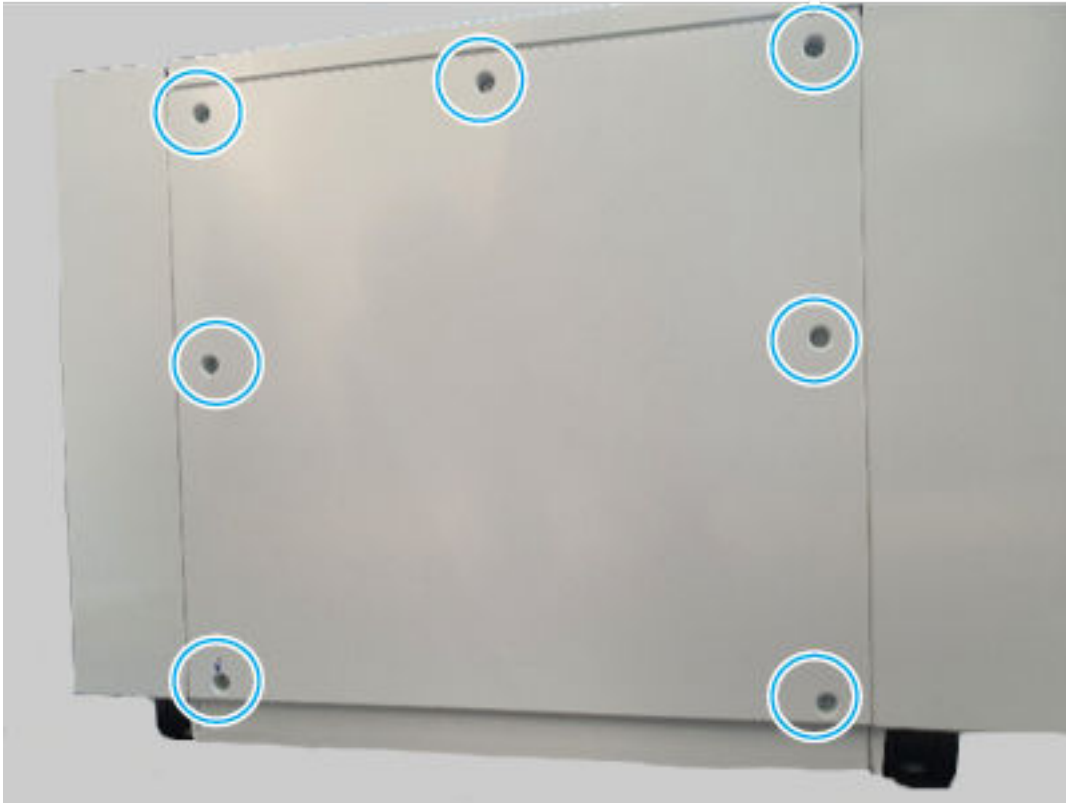
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1510 Remove the cover

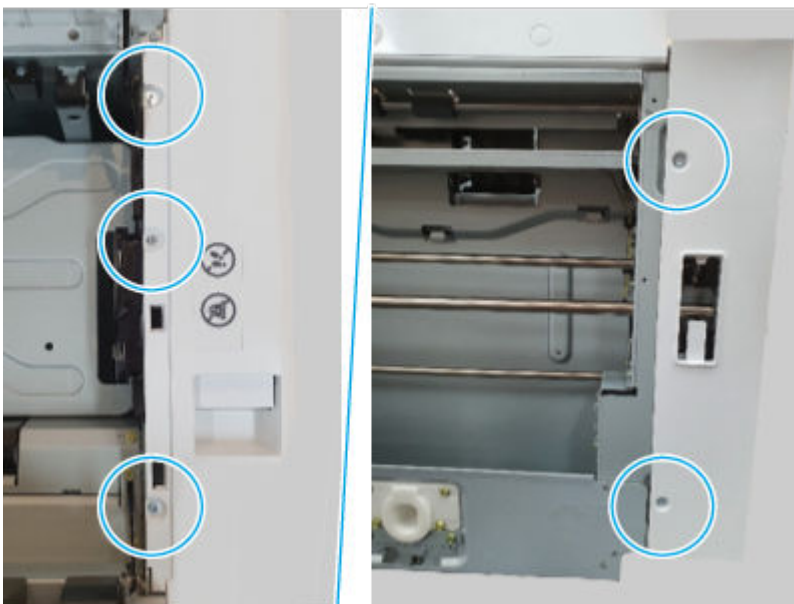


2. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1511 Remove the cover



3. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) detection sensor 1

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI detection sensor 1.

1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1512 Remove one screw



3. Separate the mounting bracket assembly from the sHCI chassis, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1513 Remove two screws



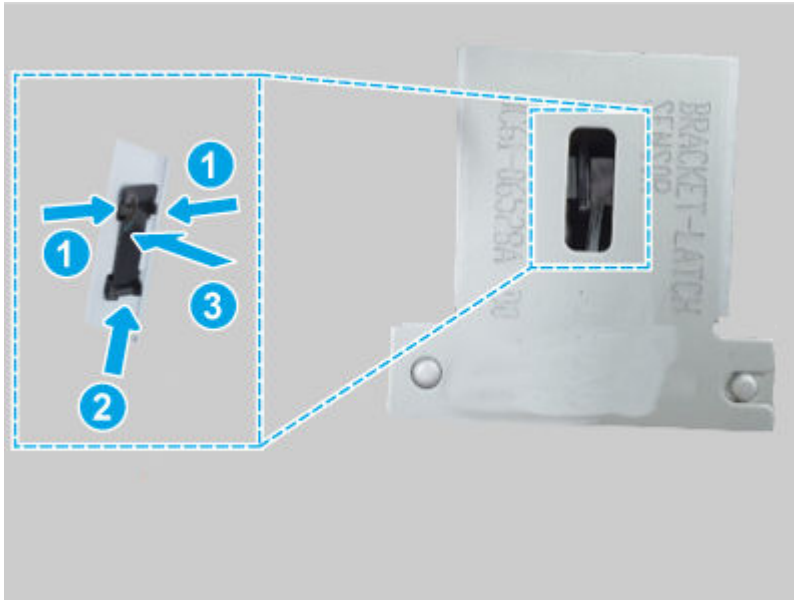
4. Do the following:



NOTE: The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

- Locate the sensor on the backside of the sensor bracket.
- Release the hooks (callout 1).
- Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 6-1514 Remove the sensor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) detection sensor 2

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) detection sensor 2.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-182 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) detection sensor 2)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

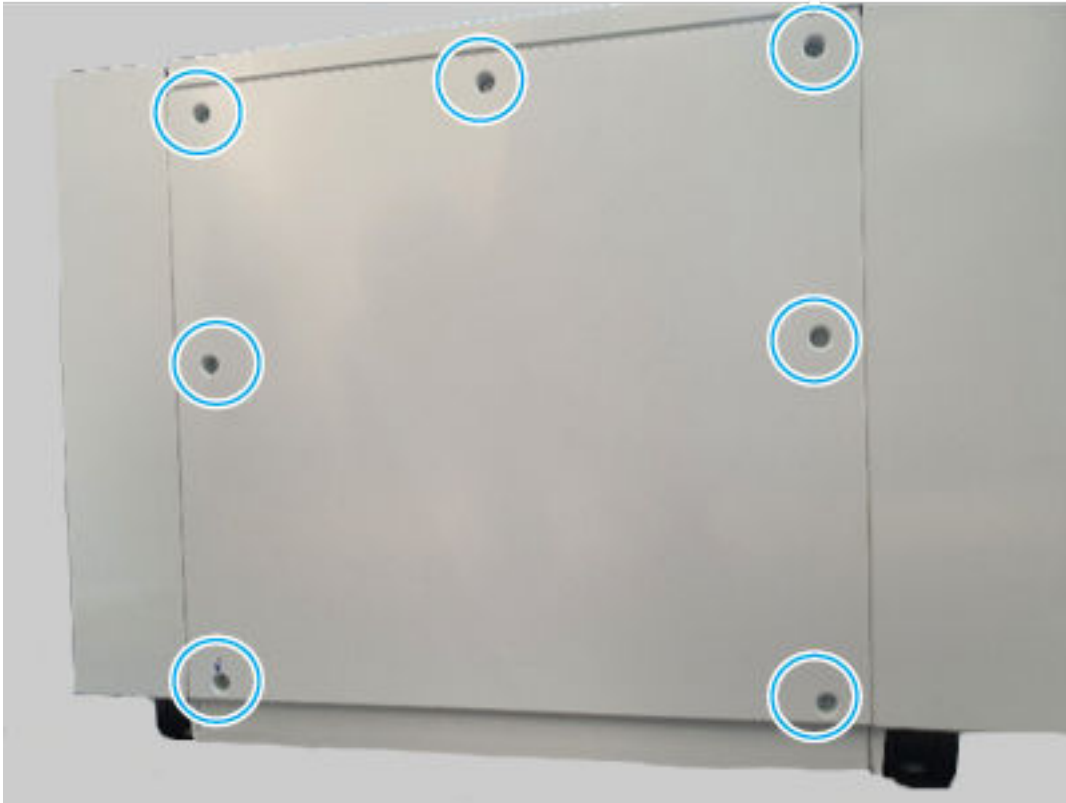
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1515 Remove the cover

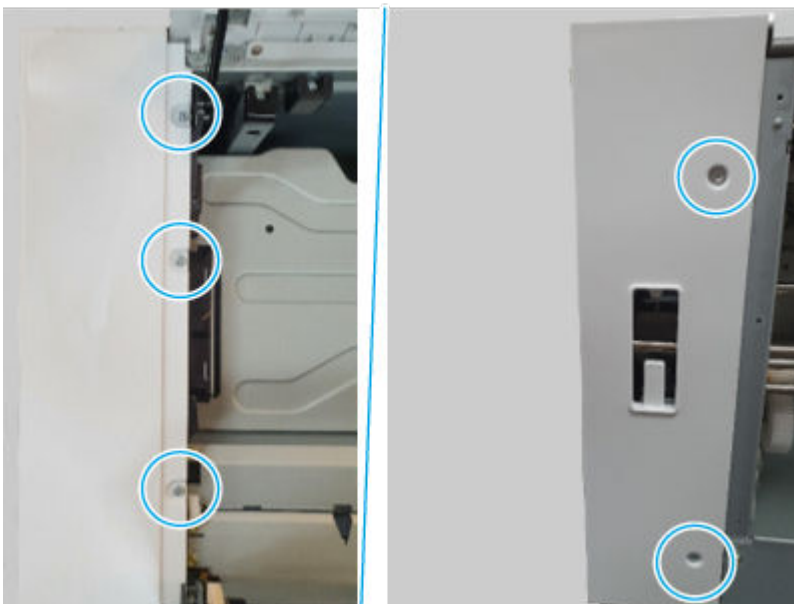


2. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1516 Remove the cover



3. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) detection sensor 2

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI detection sensor 2.

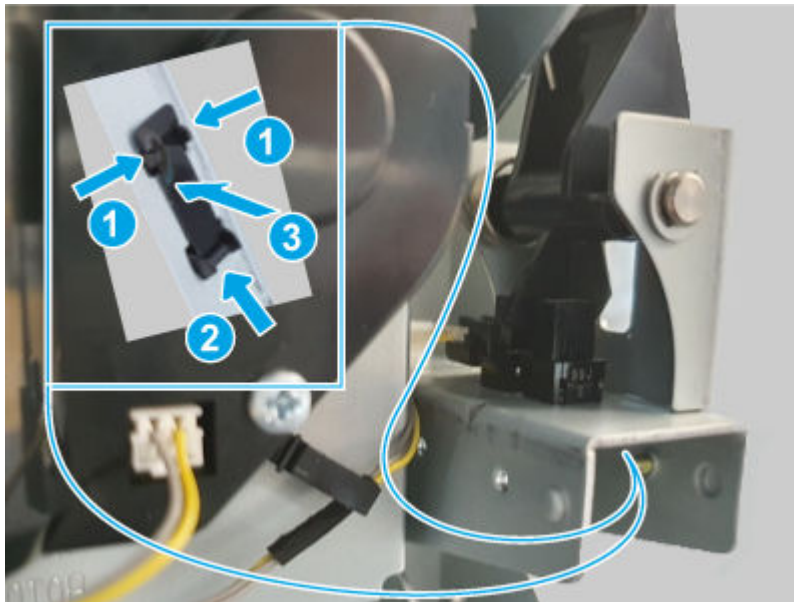
1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Do the following:



NOTE: The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
- Release the hooks (callout 2).
- Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 4) to remove it.

Figure 6-1517 Remove the sensor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) door open sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) door open sensor.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-183 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02346A	Interlock switch (sHCI [Tray 5 or 6] door open sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

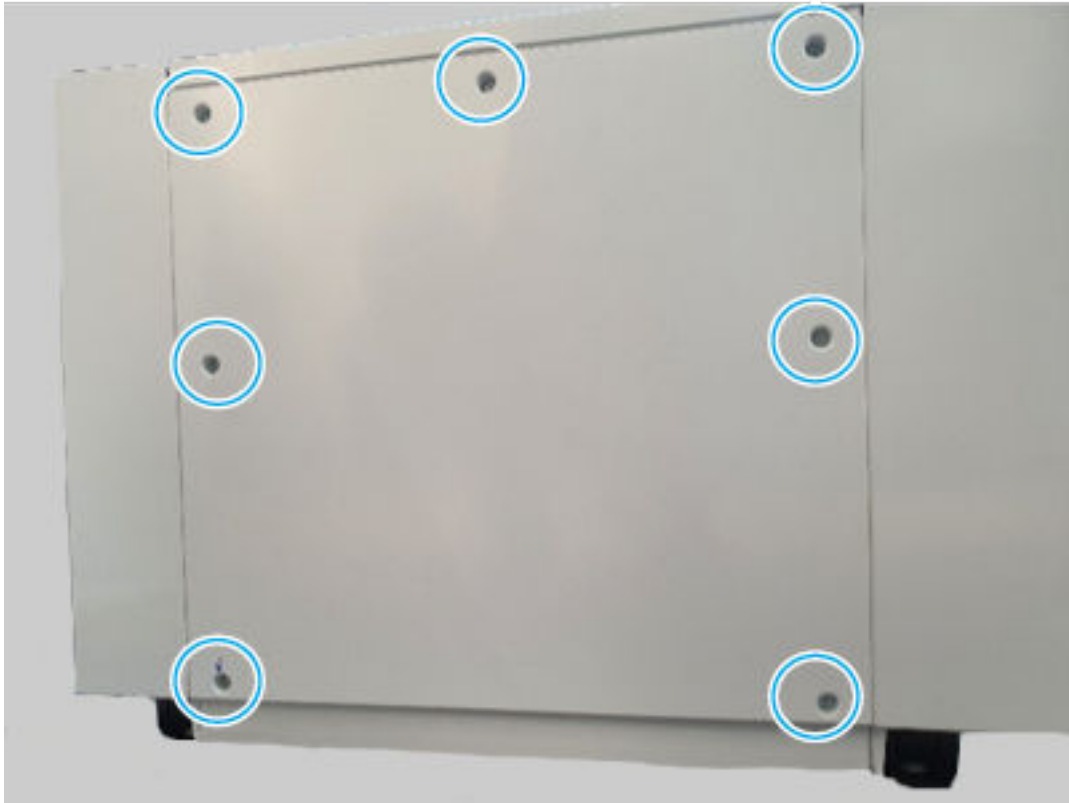
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1518 Remove the cover

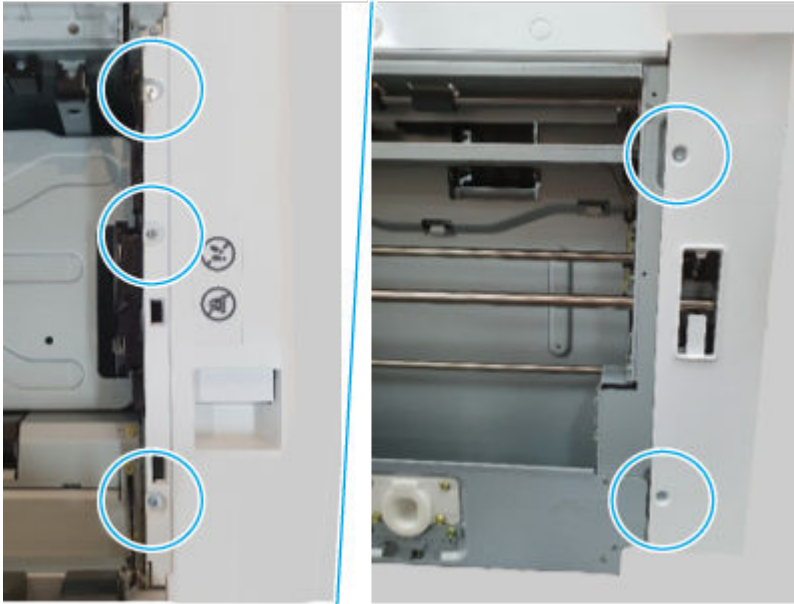


2. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1519 Remove the cover

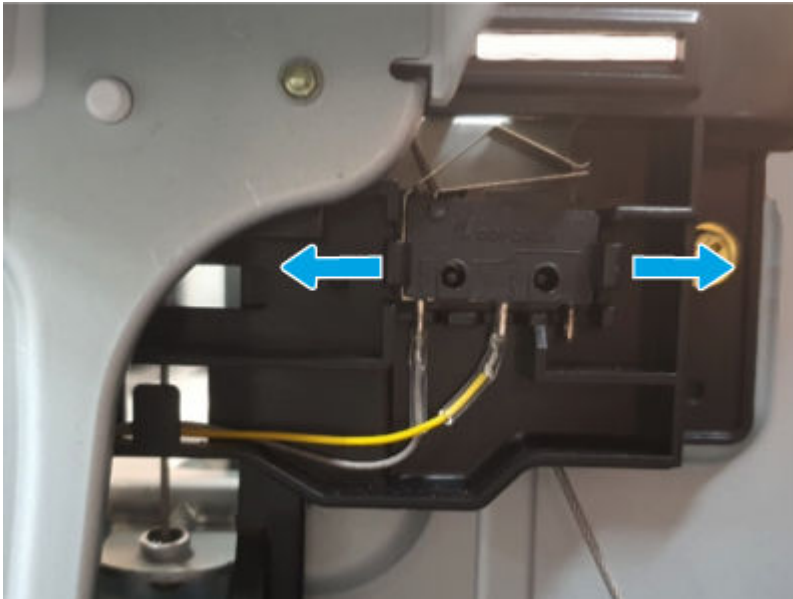


3. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) door open sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI door open sensor.

1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Release two tabs, and then remove the door open sensor.

Figure 6-1520 Remove the sensor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) paper level sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) paper level sensor.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-184 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) paper level sensor 1)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) paper level sensor 2)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

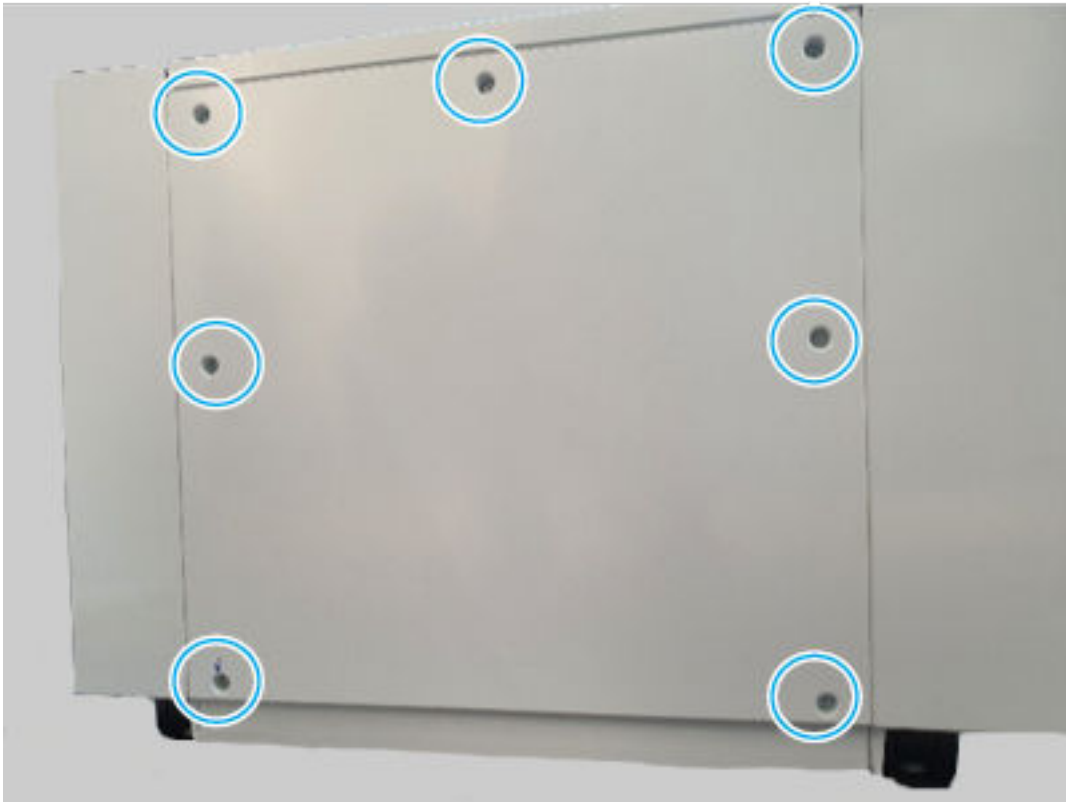
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1521 Remove the cover

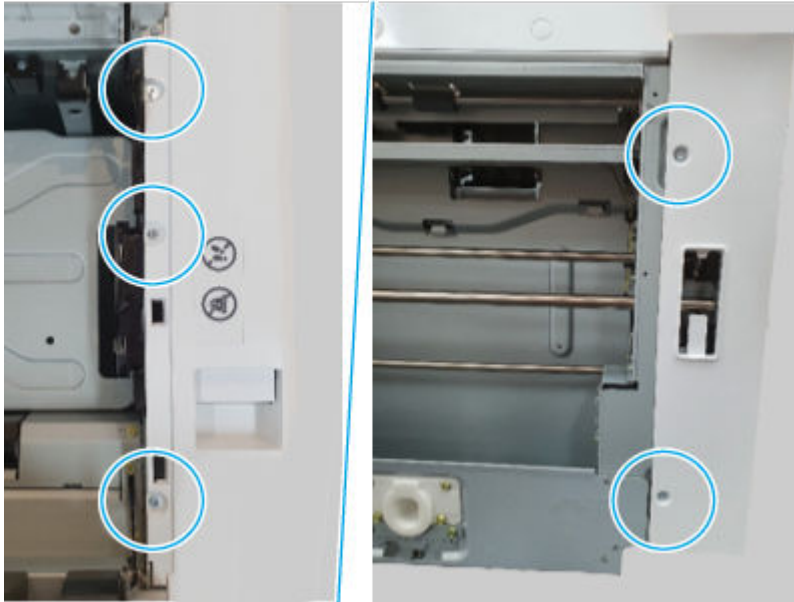


2. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.


Figure 6-1522 Remove the cover



3. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) detection sensor 2paper level sensor

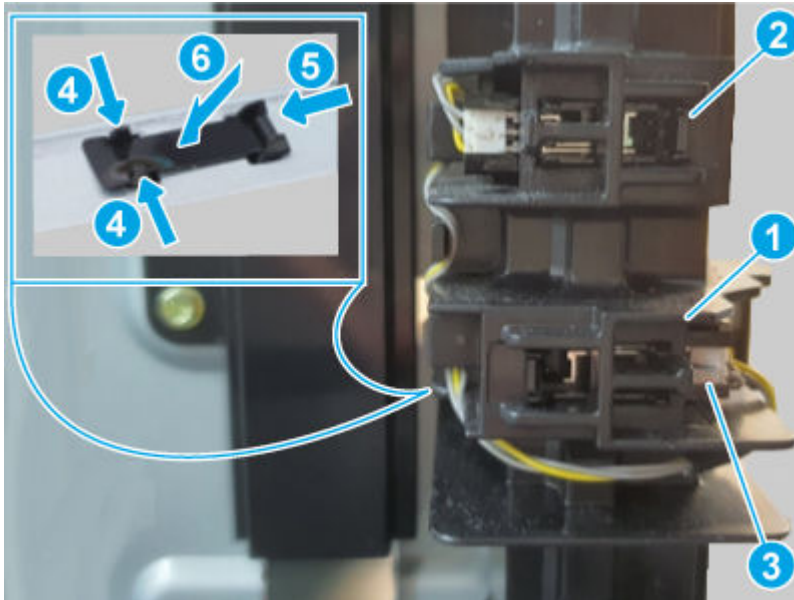
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI paper level sensor.

1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Do the following:

 **NOTE:** The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

- **Callout 1:** Paper level sensor 1
- **Callout 2:** Paper level sensor 2
- Disconnect one connector (callout 3).
- Release the hooks (callout 4).
- Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 5).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 6) to remove it.

Figure 6-1523 Remove the sensor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) stack height and paper empty sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) stack height and paper empty sensors.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-185 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) stack height sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) paper empty sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI pickup cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI pickup cover.

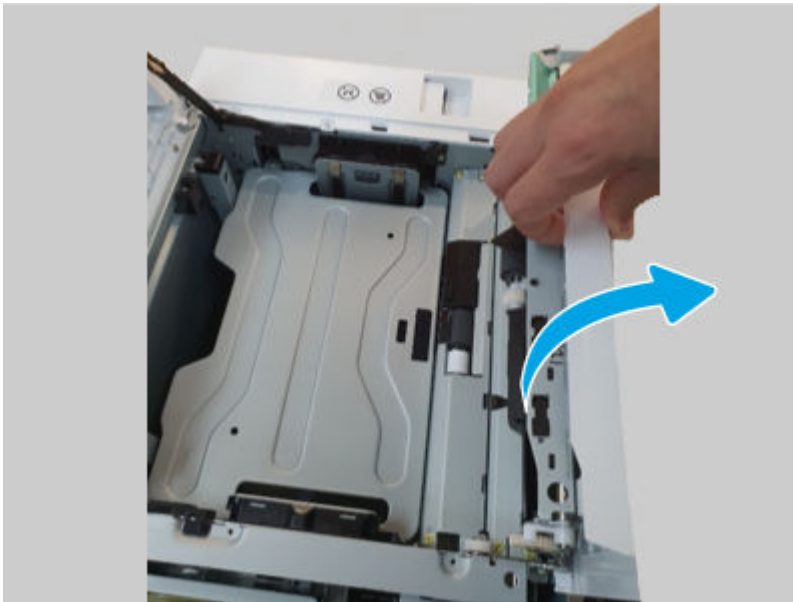
1. Remove three screw caps, and then remove three screws.

Figure 6-1524 Remove three screws



2. Remove the pickup cover.

Figure 6-1525 Remove the cover

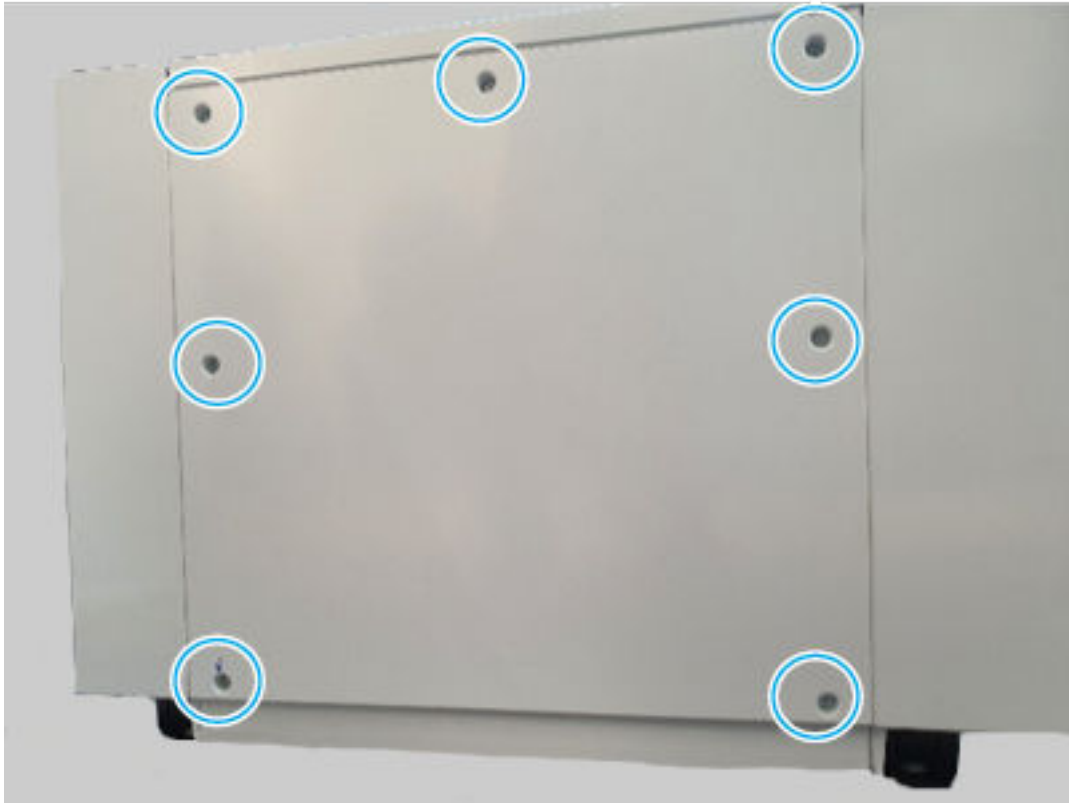


2. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1526 Remove the cover

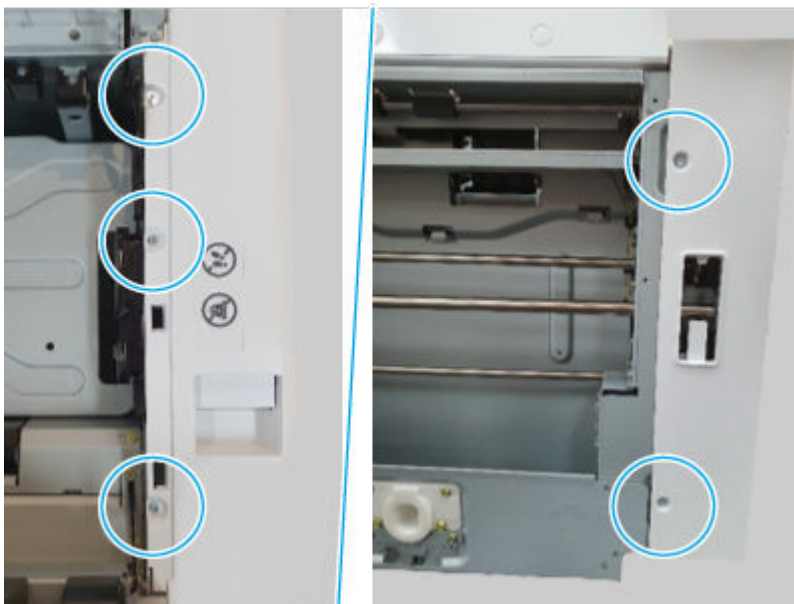


3. Remove the sHCI front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI front cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1527 Remove the cover

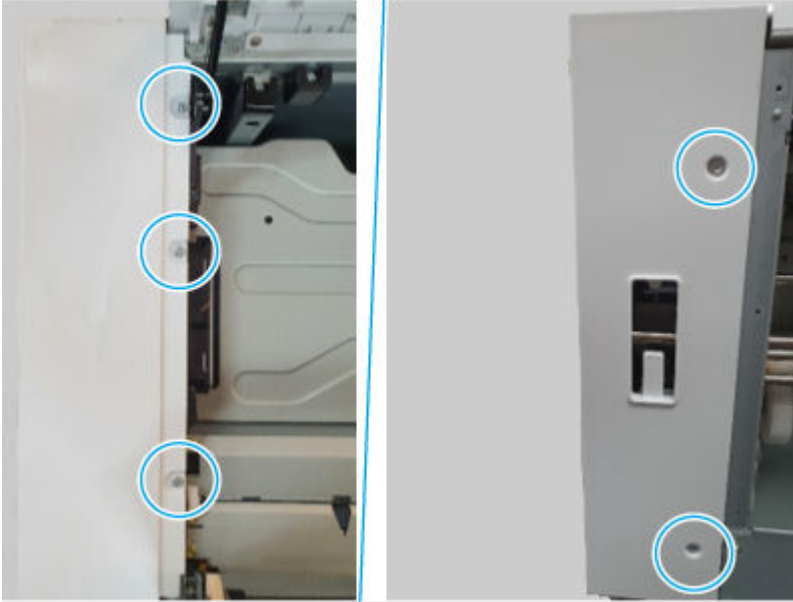


4. Remove the sHCI rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1528 Remove the cover



5. Remove the sHCI (Tray 5 or 6) paper level sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI paper level sensor.

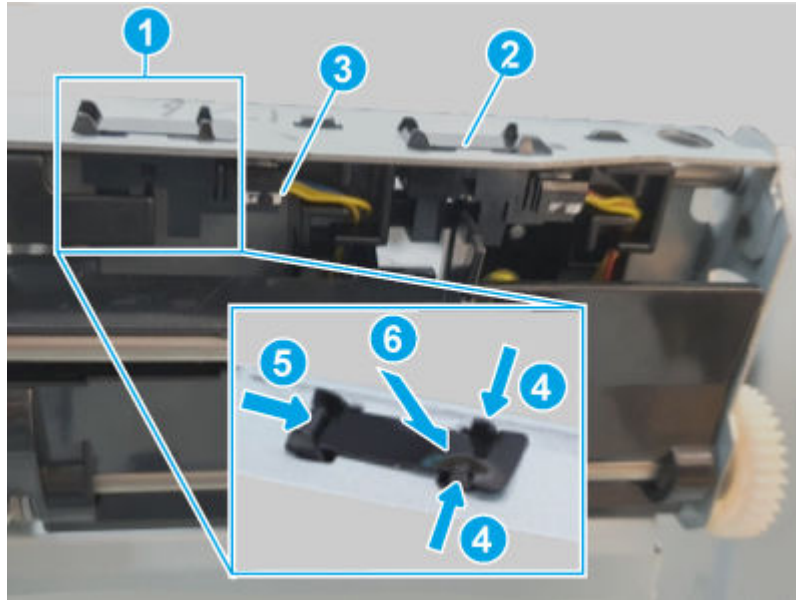
1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Do the following:



NOTE: The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

- **Callout 1:** Stack height sensor
- **Callout 2:** Paper empty sensor
- Disconnect one connector (callout 3).
- Release the hooks (callout 4).
- Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 5).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 6) to remove it.

Figure 6-1529 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: sHCI prefeed 5 sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) prefeed 5 sensor.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-186 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter (sHCl prefeed 5 sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCl pickup cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCl pickup cover.

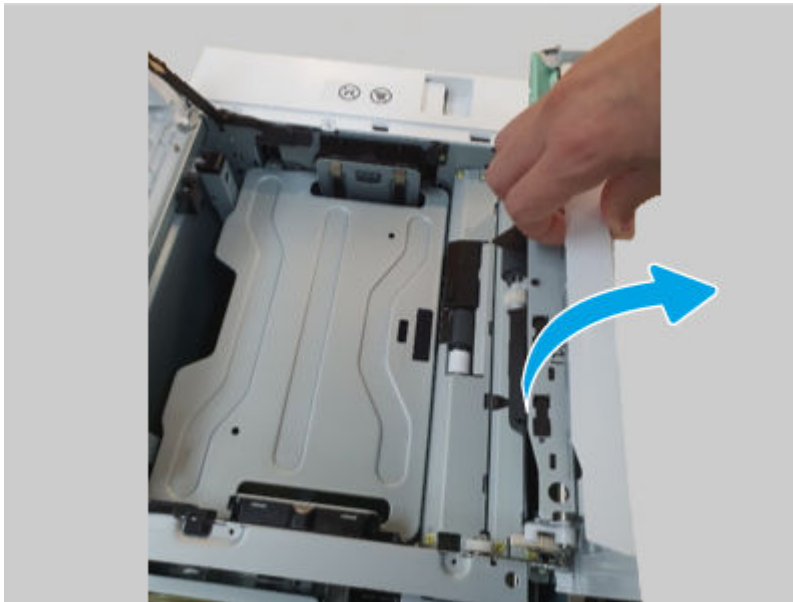
1. Remove three screw caps, and then remove three screws.

Figure 6-1530 Remove three screws



2. Remove the pickup cover.

Figure 6-1531 Remove the cover



2. Remove the sHCI prefeed 5 sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI prefeed 5 sensor.

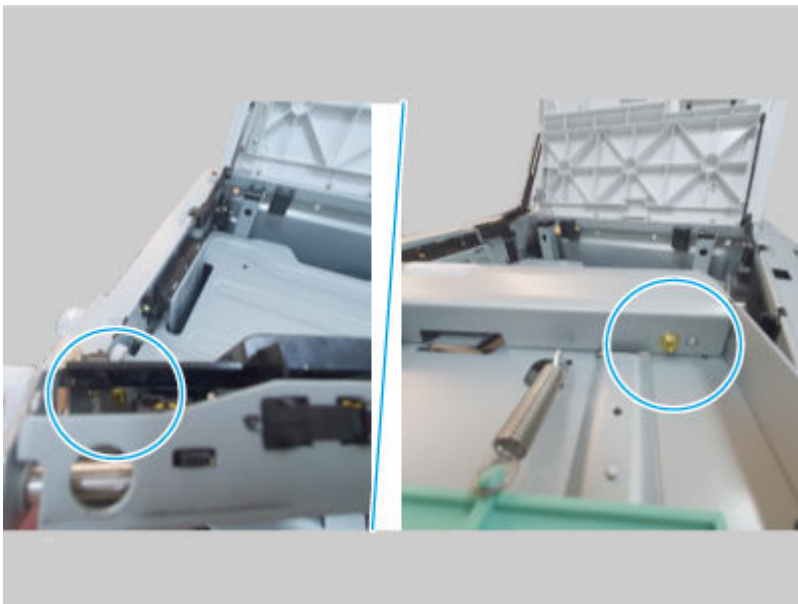
1. Open the top cover.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the guide upper cover.

Figure 6-1532 Remove the cover



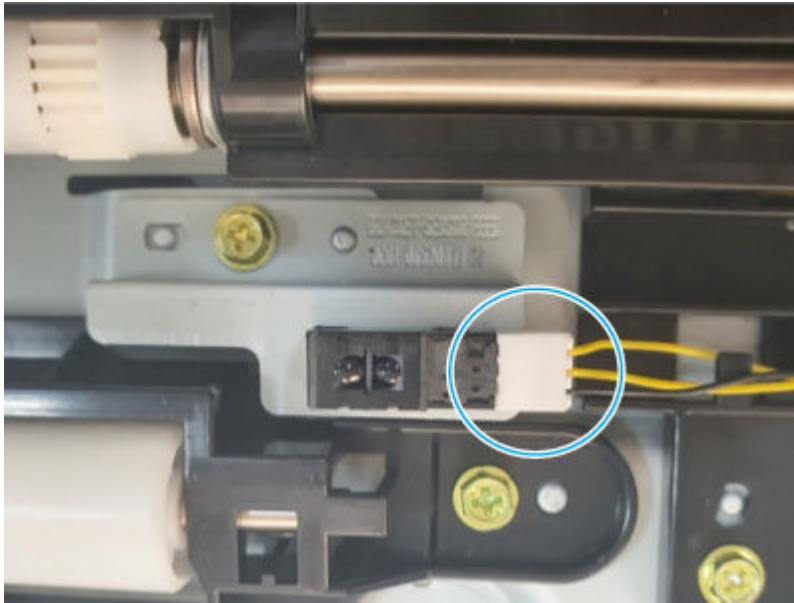
3. Remove two screws, and then remove the guide takeaway upper cover.

Figure 6-1533 Remove the cover




4. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1534 Remove the assembly

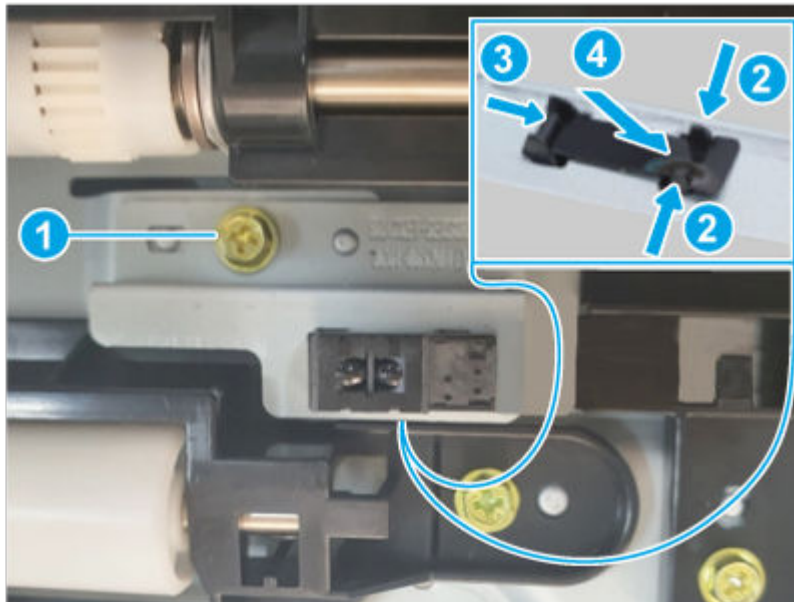


5. Do the following:

 **TIP:** It might be easier to remove the sensor by first removing one screw (callout 1), and then turning the sensor/bracket assembly over to access the sensor mounting features.

- Release the hooks (callout 2).
- Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 4) to remove it.

Figure 6-1535 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA

Review the sHCI PCA removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: sHCI (Tray5 or 6) PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the side high capacity input (sHCI) PCA.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-187 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW56-60001	sHCI PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the sHCI right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI right cover.

- Remove seven screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1536 Remove the cover

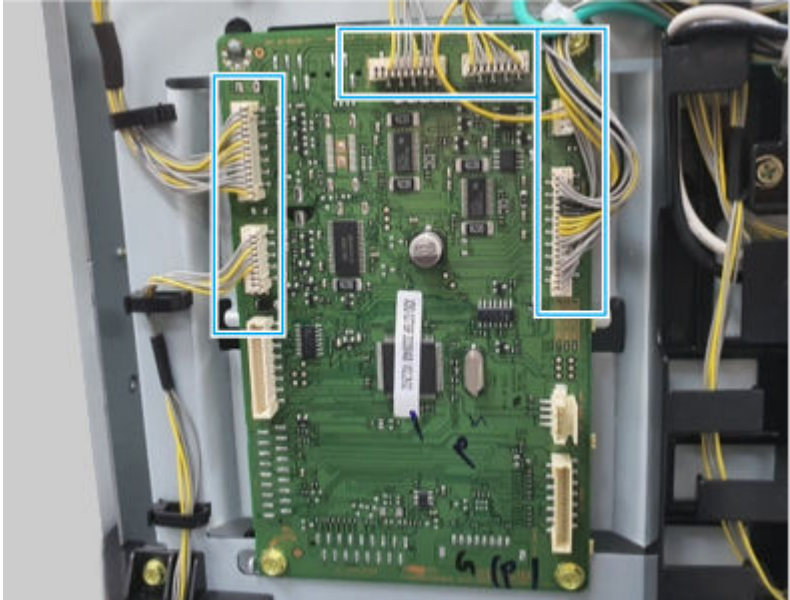


2. Remove the sHCI PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the sHCI PCA.

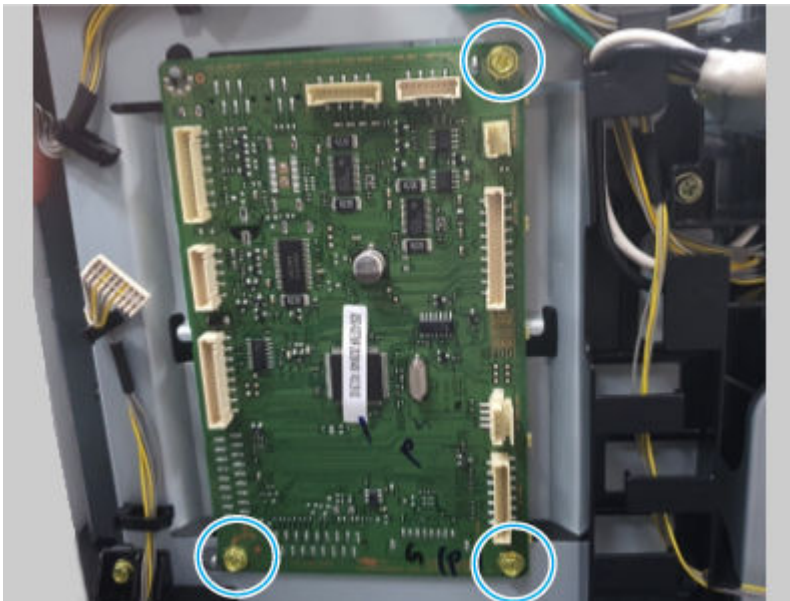
1. Open the top cover and the pickup cover.
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the PCA.

Figure 6-1537 Disconnect all connectors



3. Remove three screws, and then remove the sHCI PCA.

Figure 6-1538 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

DCF (department)

Learn about dual cassette feeder (department) parts removal and replacement.

Covers

Review the DCF cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right cover.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-188 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40006	DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

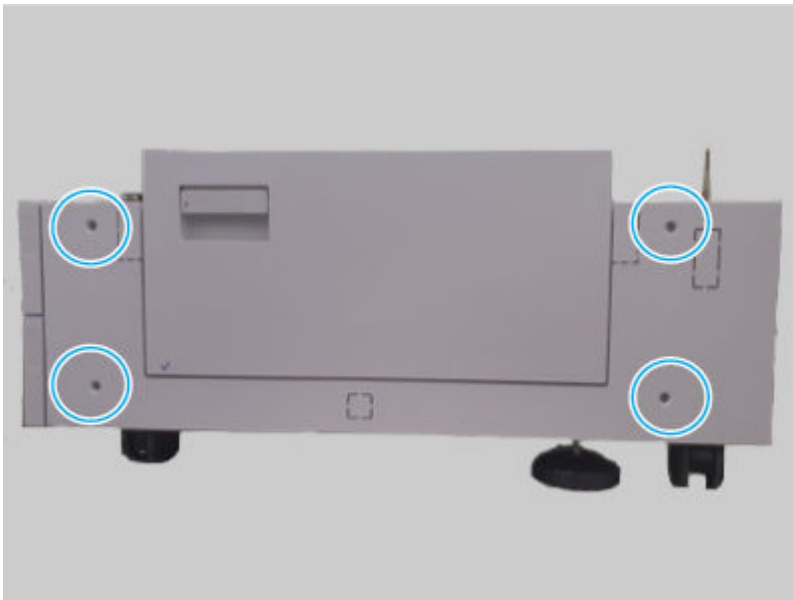
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1539 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-189 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40007	DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1540 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) left cover.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-190 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40008	DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

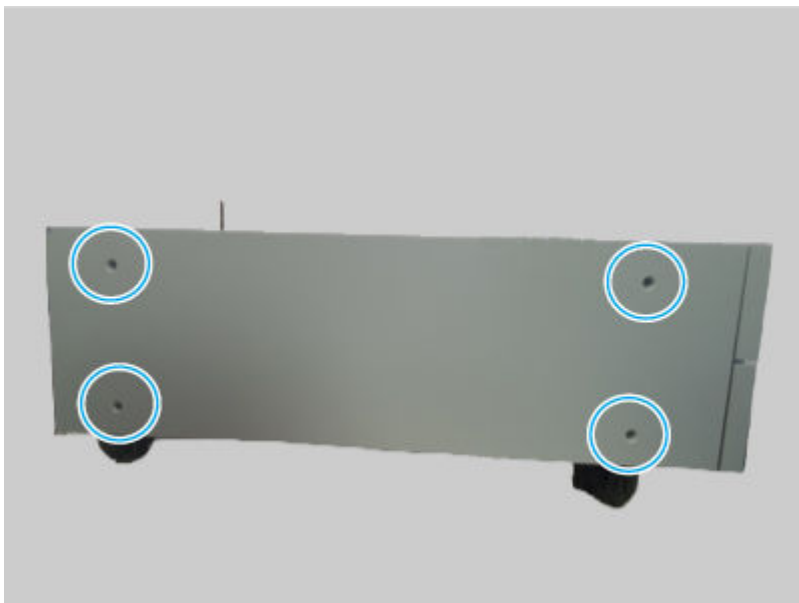
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-1541 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-191 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-61004	DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

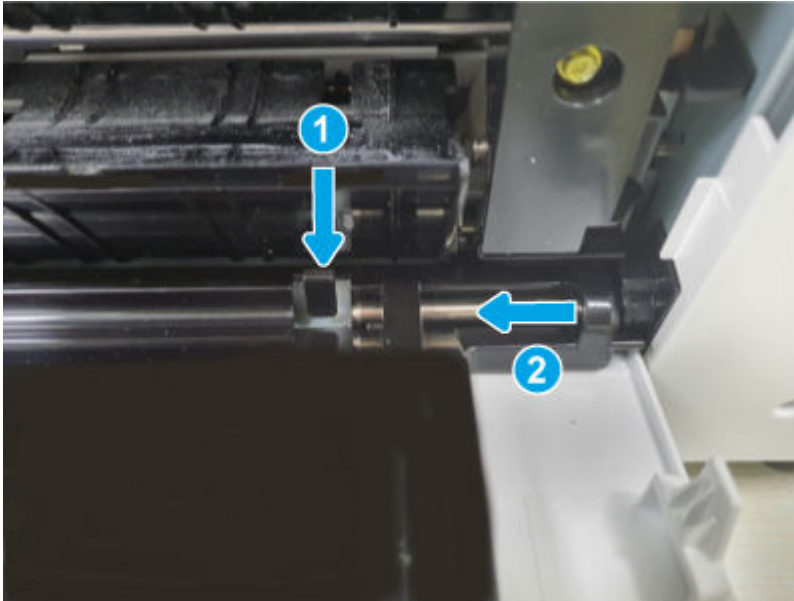
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1542 Remove the door



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 CMF panels

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4, 5 color panel.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-192 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40011	Tray 4 CMF panel
5QK08-40012	Tray 5 CMF panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

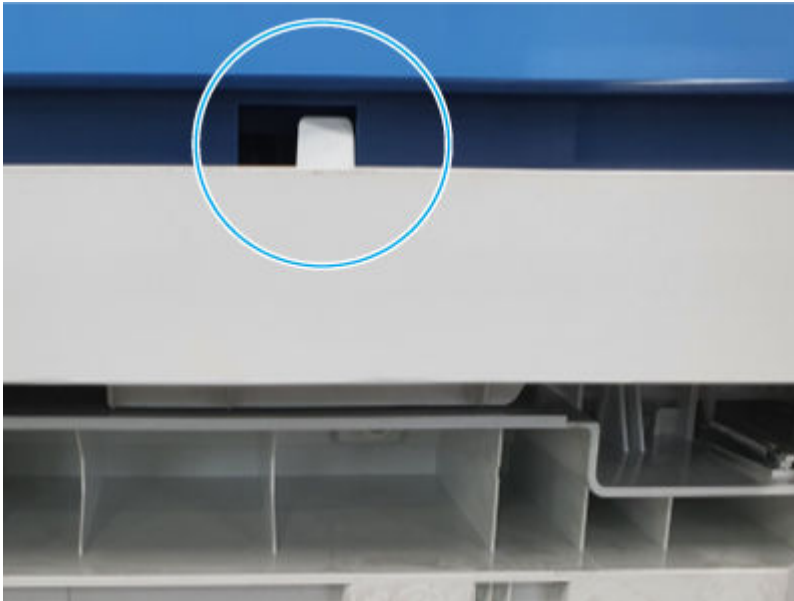
1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 CMF panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4, 5 CMF panel.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.

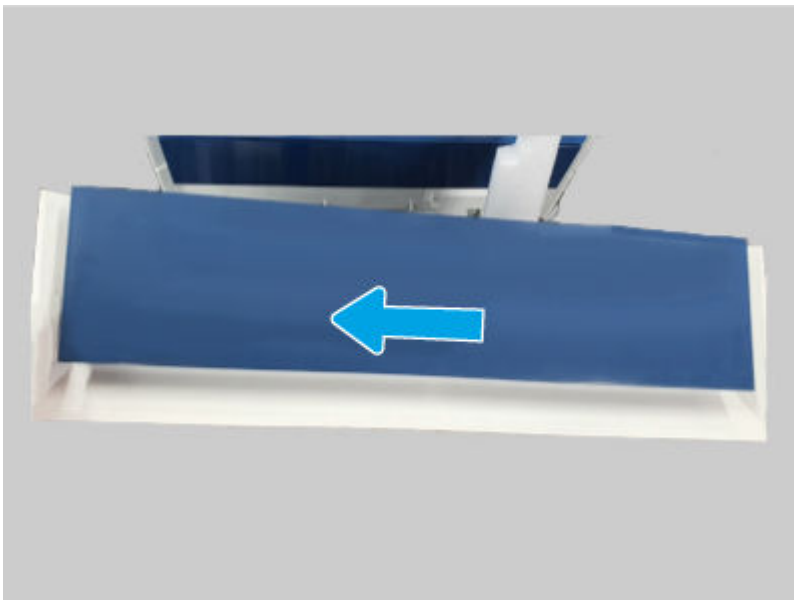
2. Push the hook to release it.

Figure 6-1543 Release the hook



3. Slide the panel to the left to remove the tray CMF panel.

Figure 6-1544 Remove the panel



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster wheel

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) caster wheel.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-193 Part information

Part number	Part description
6109-001138	Caster wheel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

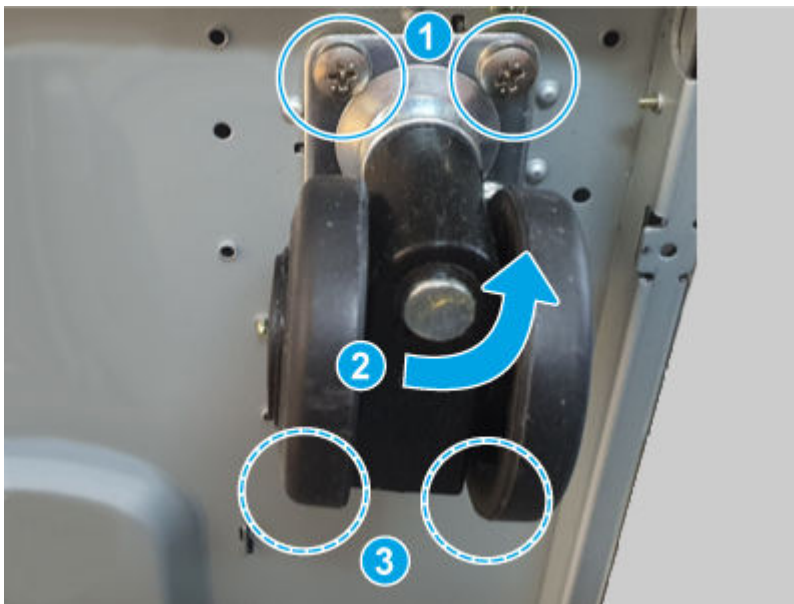
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the caster wheel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF caster wheel.

1. Remove the DCF from the printer.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two screws (callout 1).
 - b. Rotate the caster wheel (callout 2) out of the way, and then remove two screws (callout 3).
 - c. Remove the caster wheel.

Figure 6-1545 Remove the caster



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Holder wheel kit - guide adjust

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) holder wheel kit.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-194 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-04871A	Guide - adjust DCF

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

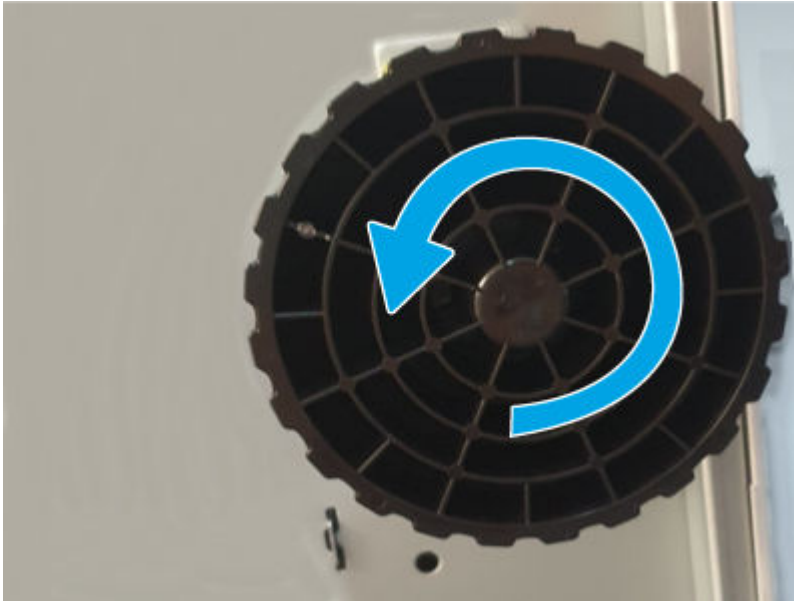
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the holder wheel kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF holder wheel kit.

1. Remove the DCF from the printer.
2. Turn the holder wheel counterclockwise to remove it.

Figure 6-1546 Remove the holder wheel



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the holder wheel mounting bracket.

Figure 6-1547 Remove the bracket



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Unit

Review the DCF unit parts removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 cassettes

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4, 5 cassette.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-195 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ08-61007	Tray 4 cassette
5QJ08-61005	Tray 5 cassette

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

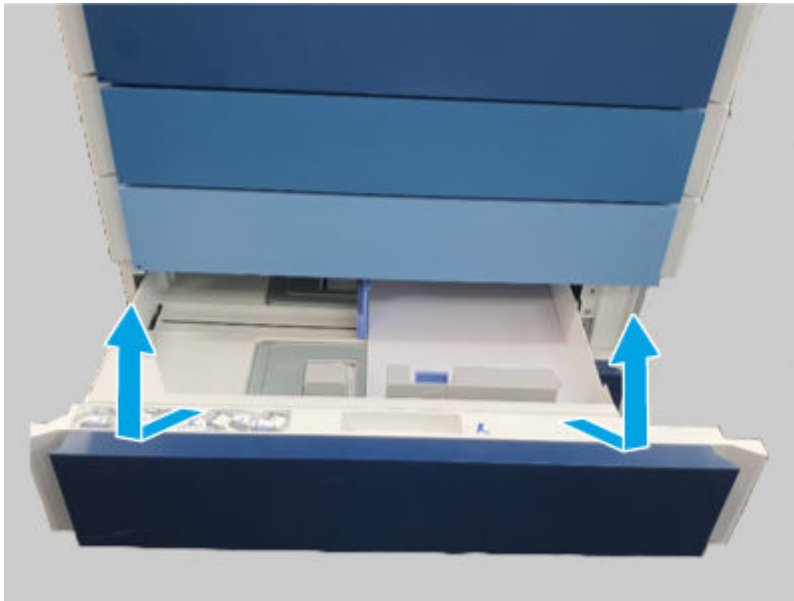
Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1548 Remove the cassette



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Roller

Review the DCF roller removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: DCF roller kit

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4, 5 rollers.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-196 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN66-67001	DCF roller kit Tray 4
5PN66-67001	DCF roller kit Tray 5

Required tools

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

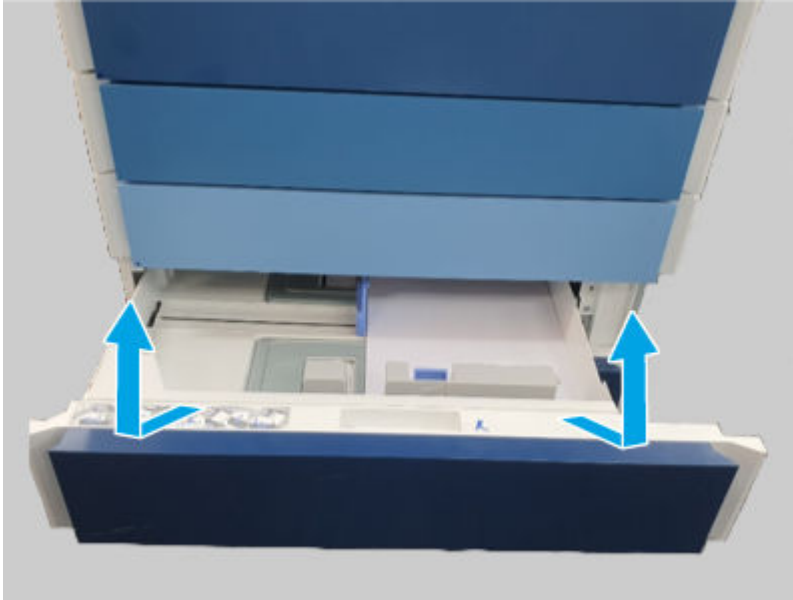
1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.


- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1549 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the Tray 4, 5 rollers

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray rollers.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing the rollers is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

1. Inside the tray cavity, slide the return guide toward the front of the printer until it stops.


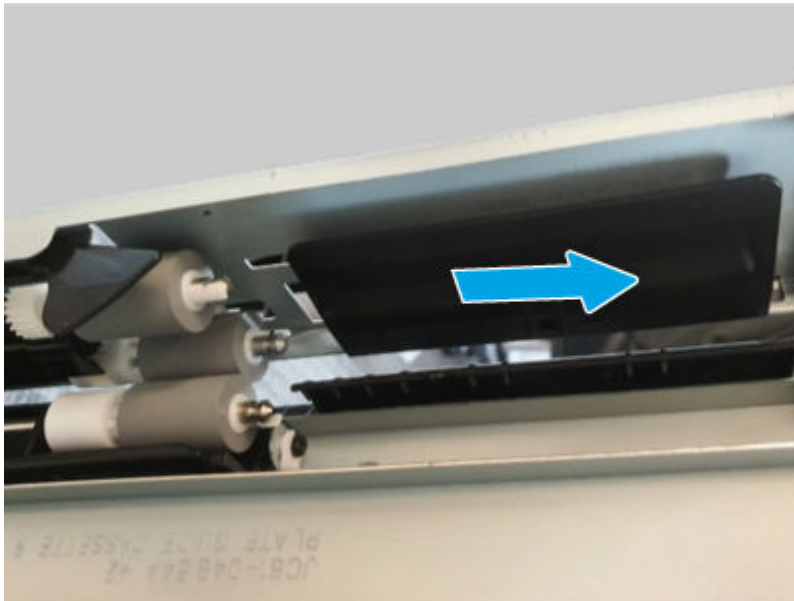
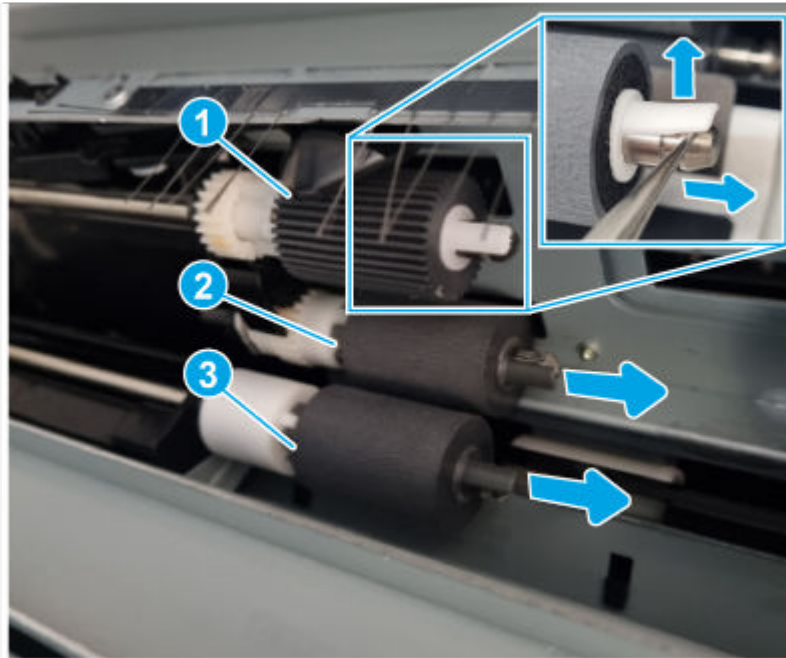
 **Reinstallation tip:** To prevent jams, make sure to slide the guide toward the rear of the printer after installing replacement rollers.

Figure 6-1550 Move the guide



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release the locking tab, and then slide the roller off the shaft to remove it.
 - **Pickup roller:** callout 1
 - **Forward roller:** callout 2
 - **Reverse roller:** callout 3

Figure 6-1551 Remove the rollers



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.




IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Motor

Review the DCF motor removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: DCF pickup drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup drive assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-197 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01663A	DCF pickup drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1552 Remove the cover

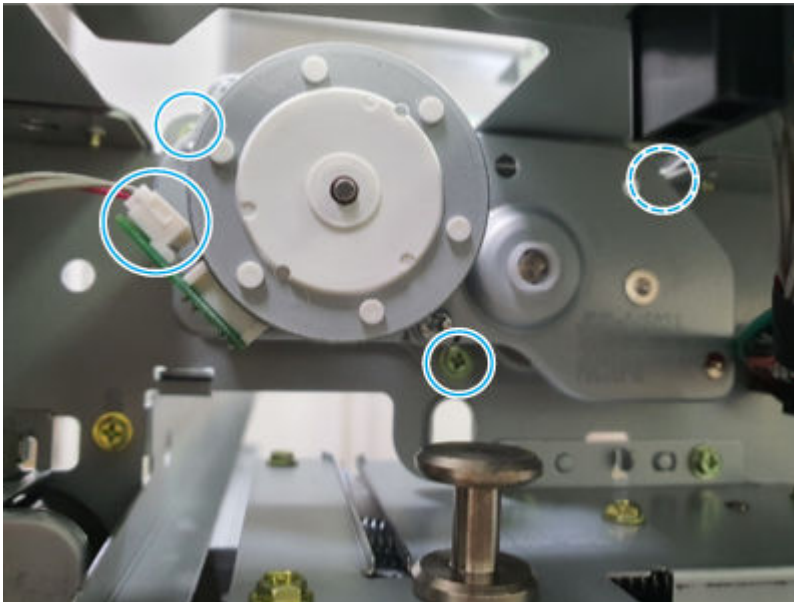


2. Remove the DCF pickup drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF pickup drive assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup drive assembly.

Figure 6-1553 Remove the assembly (Tray 4)



2. Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the Tray 5 pickup drive assembly.

Figure 6-1554 Remove the assembly (Tray 5)



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4 pickup motor

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4 pickup motor.



NOTE: Remove the DCF from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-198 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01083A	Drive-motor step (Tray 4 pickup motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1555 Remove the cover

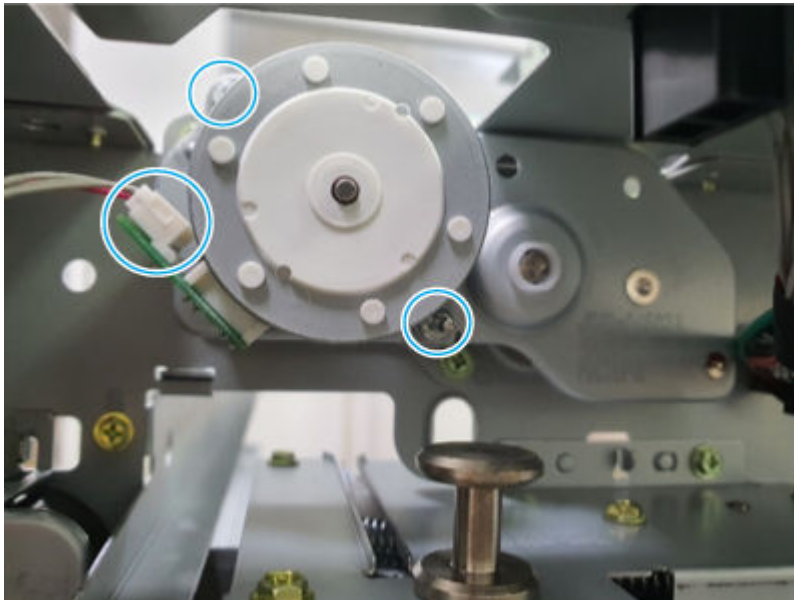


2. Remove the DCF Tray 4 pickup motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup motor.

Figure 6-1556 Remove the motor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 5 pickup motor

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 5 pickup motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-199 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01083A	Drive-motor step (Tray 5 pickup motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1557 Remove the cover

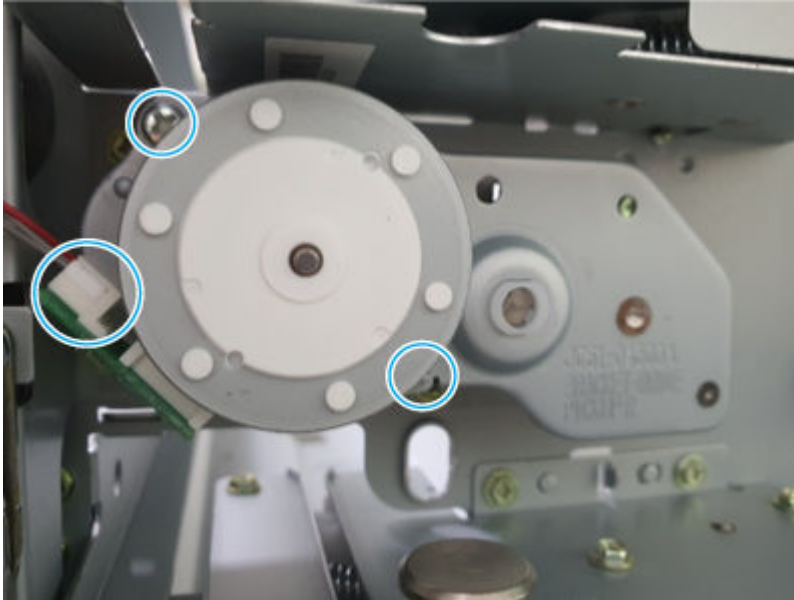


2. Remove the DCF Tray 5 pickup motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 5 pickup motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the Tray 5 pickup motor.

Figure 6-1558 Remove the motor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF feed drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) feed drive assembly.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-200 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01135A	DCF feed drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1559 Remove the cover

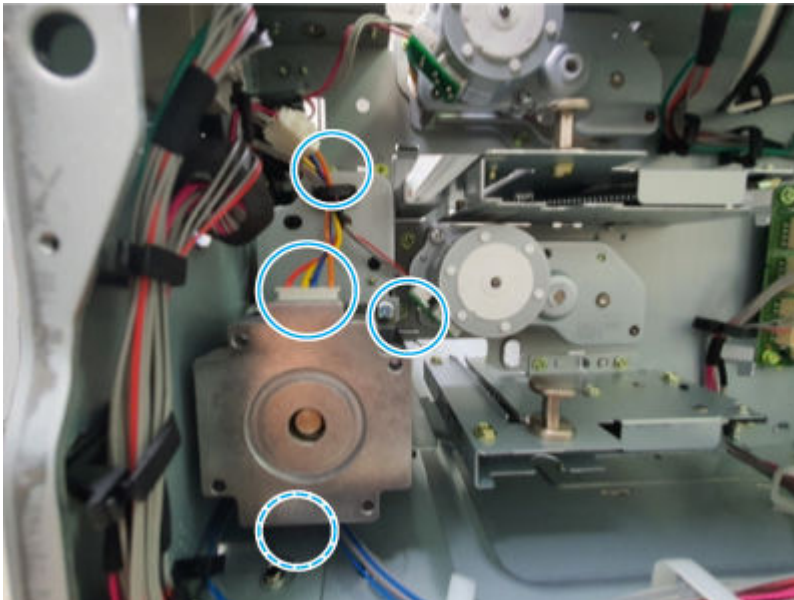


2. Remove the DCF feed drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF feed drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly.


Figure 6-1560 Remove the assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) feed motor

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) feed motor.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-201 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00177A	Motor, step (DCF Tray 4, 5 feed motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1561 Remove the cover

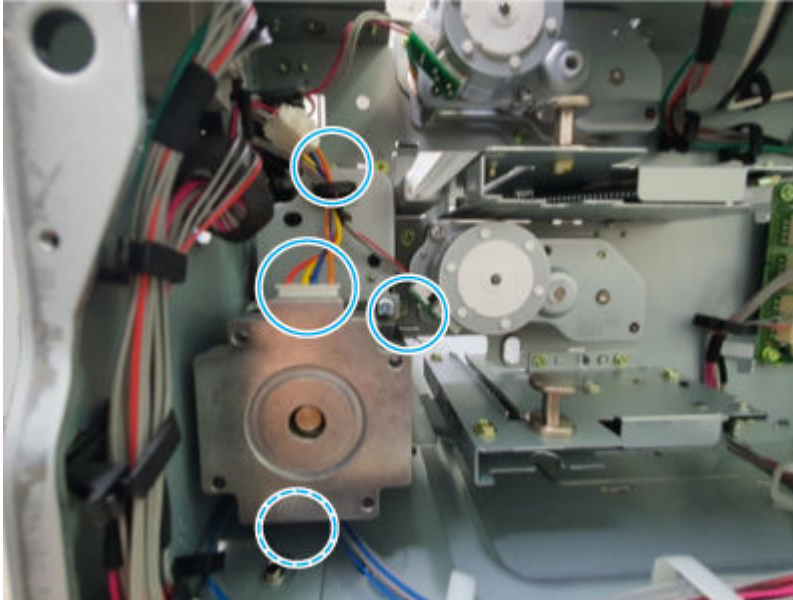


2. Remove the DCF feed drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF feed drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly.

Figure 6-1562 Remove the assembly

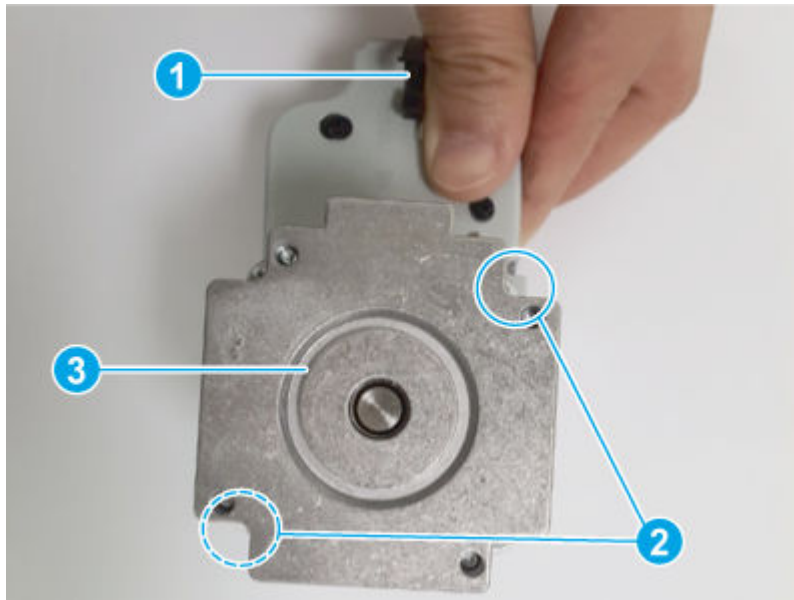


3. Remove the DCF feed motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF feed motor.

- Remove the belt (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the feed motor (callout 3).

Figure 6-1563 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Sensor

Review the DCF sensor removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-202 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00018B	Autosize sensor (Paper size Tray 4)

Table 6-202 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
JC93-00018B	Autosize sensor (Paper size Tray 5)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

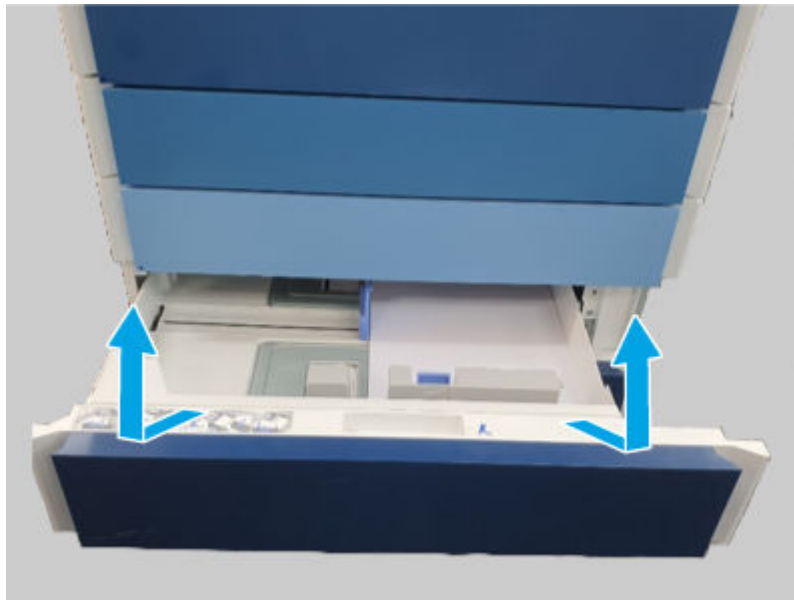
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1564 Remove the cassette



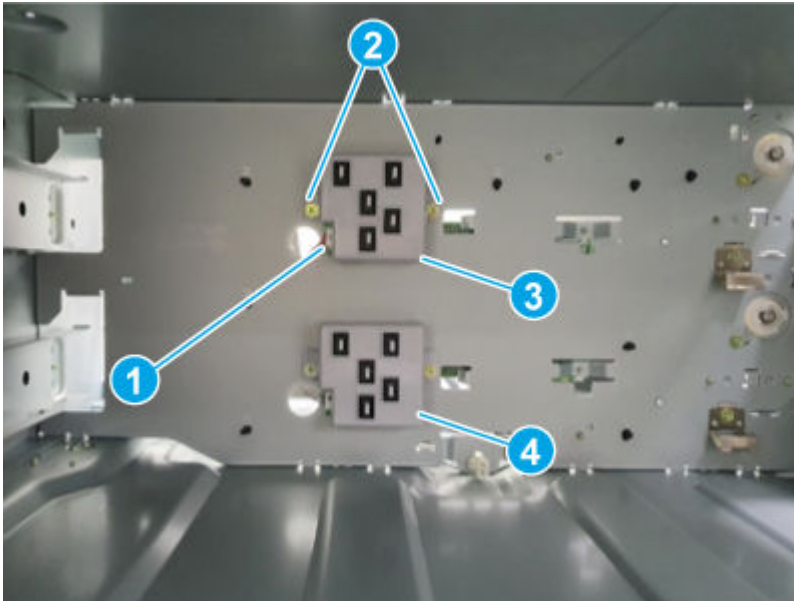
2. Remove the Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray paper size sensors.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing the paper size sensors is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the paper size sensor.
 - **Callout 3:** Tray 4 paper size sensor
 - **Callout 4:** Tray 5 paper size sensor


Figure 6-1565 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4 pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4 pickup assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-203 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-61009	Tray 4 pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

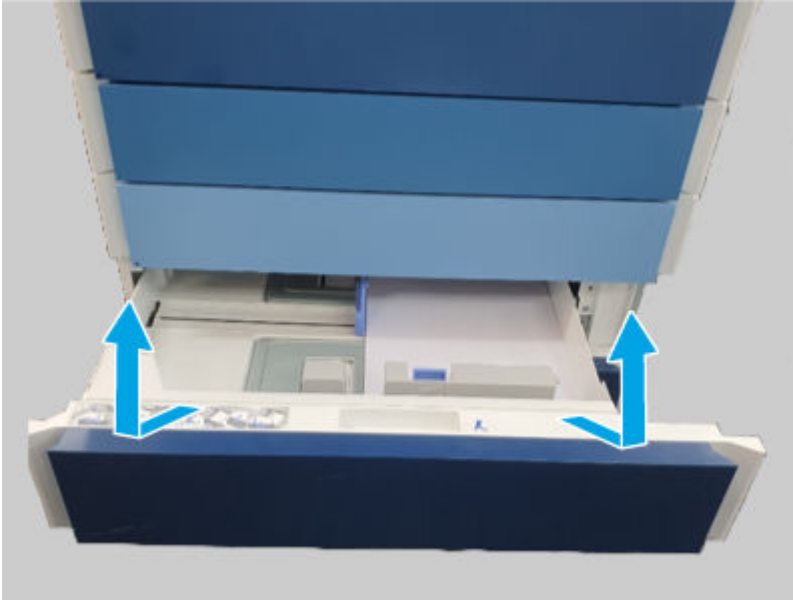
1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1566 Remove the cassette

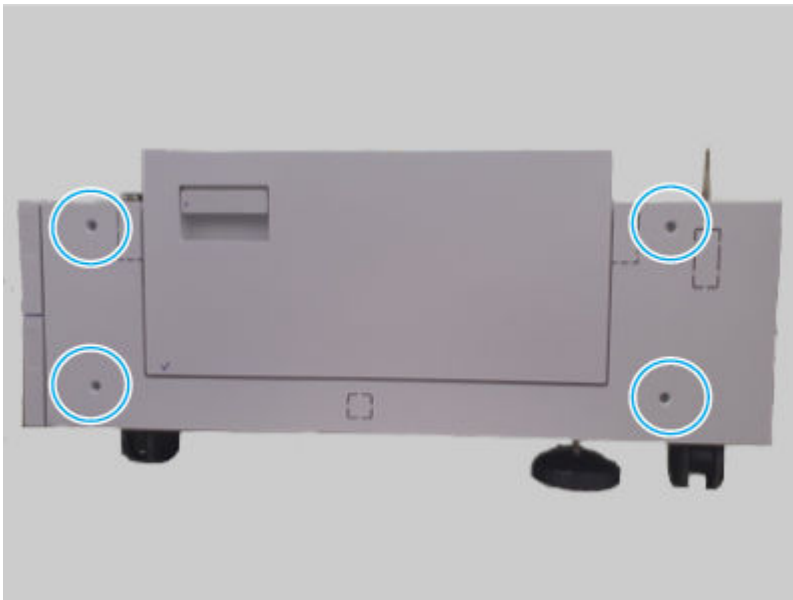


2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1567 Remove the cover

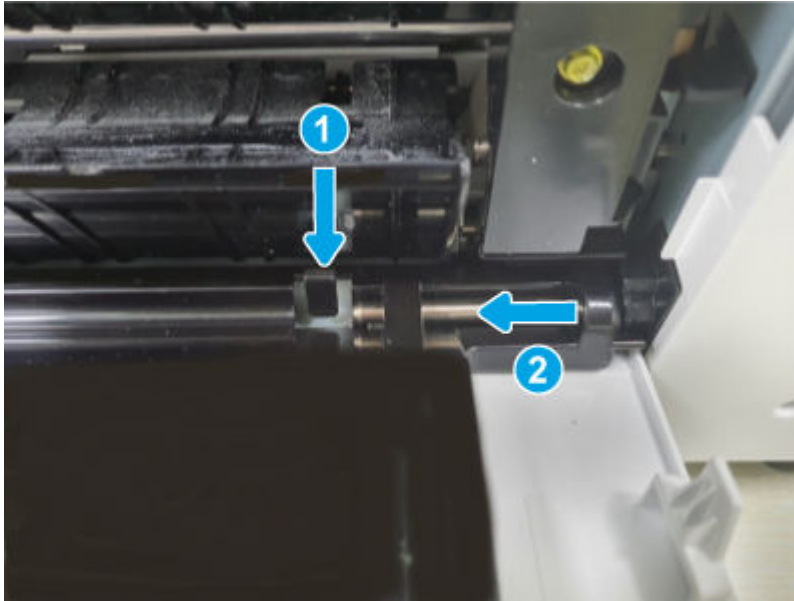


3. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1568 Remove the door

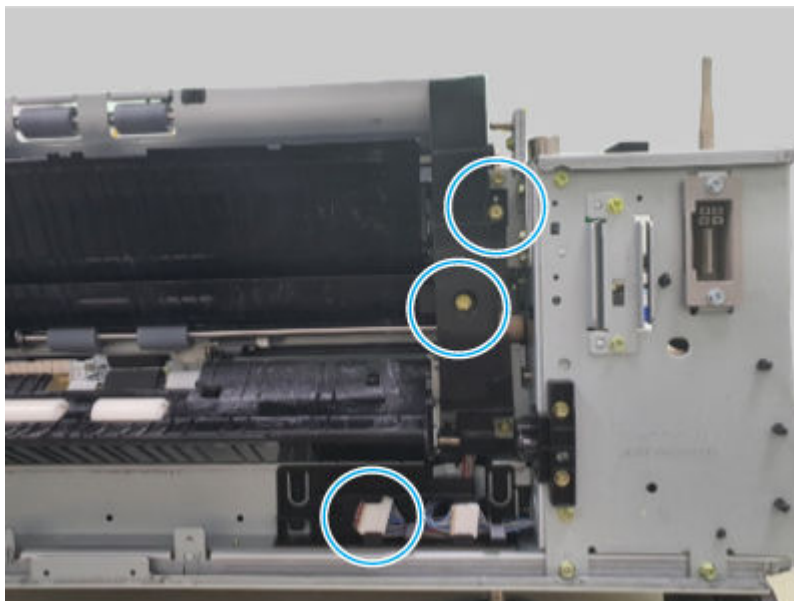


4. Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

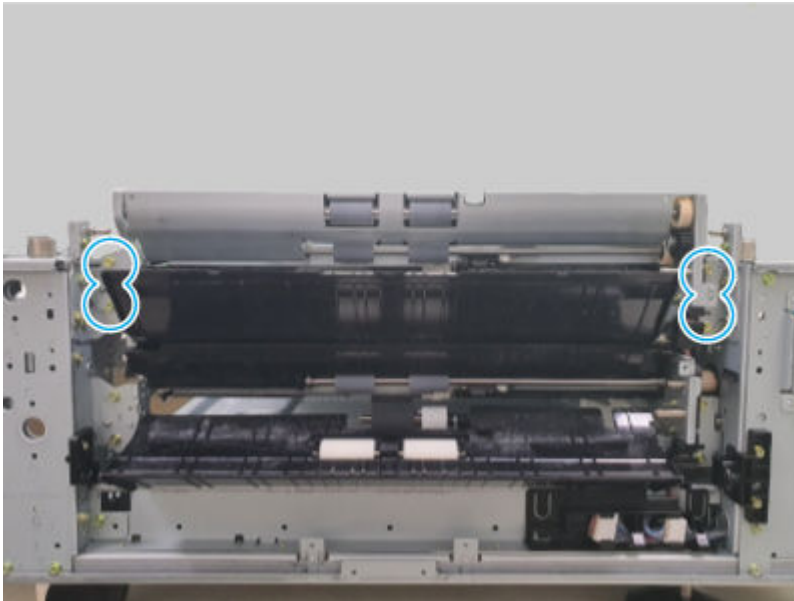
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1569 Disconnect connector and remove screws



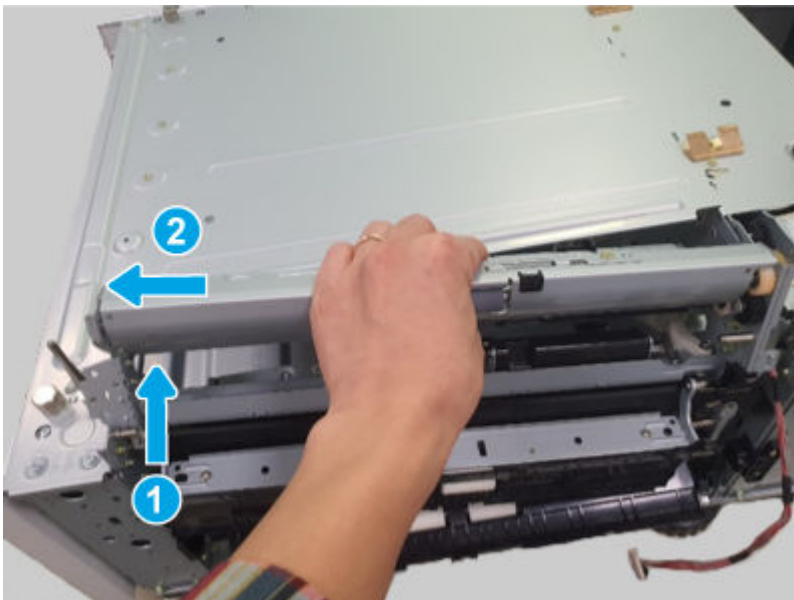
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1570 Remove four screws



3. Rotate the pickup assembly up (callout 1), and then out of the DCF (callout 2).

Figure 6-1571 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4 paper empty and stack height sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4 paper empty and stack height sensors.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-204 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 4 paper empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 4 paper stack height sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

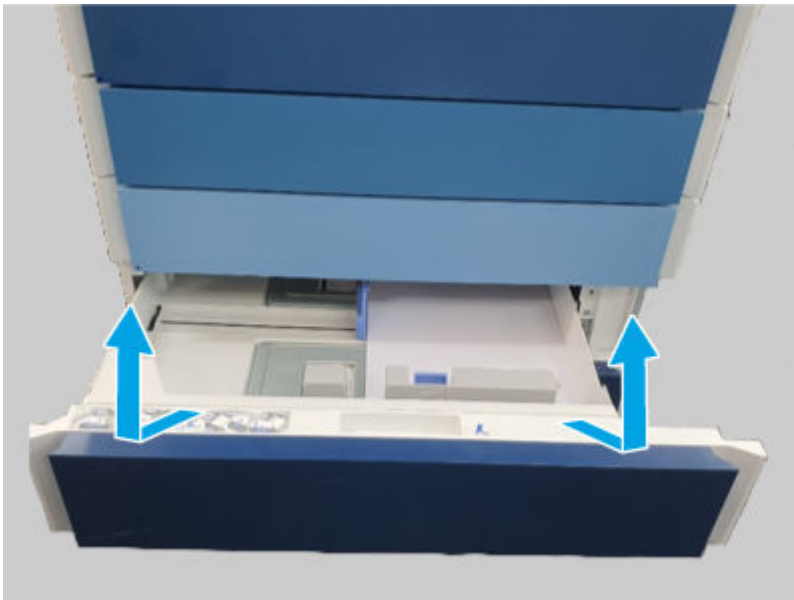
1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.


- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1572 Remove the cassette



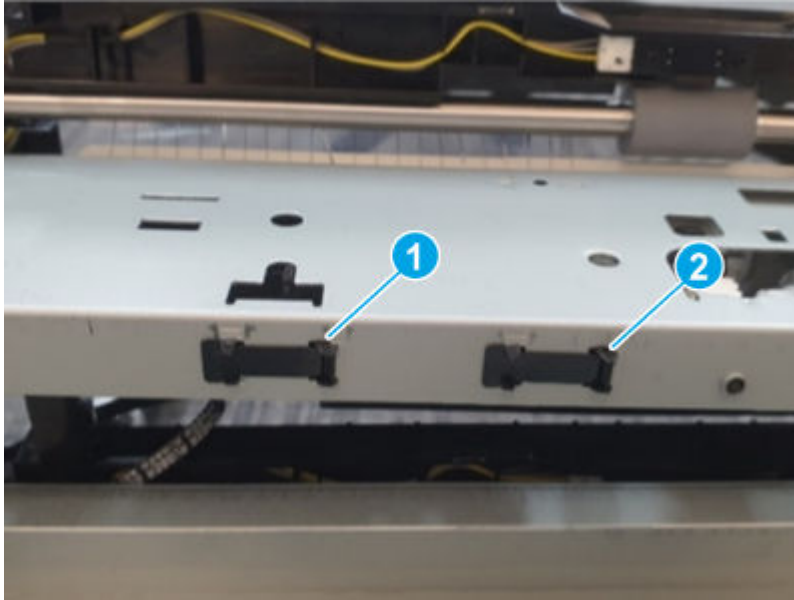
2. Remove the Tray 4, 5 paper empty and stack height sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray paper empty and stack height sensors.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing the paper empty sensor or the paper stack height sensor is the same for both sensors.

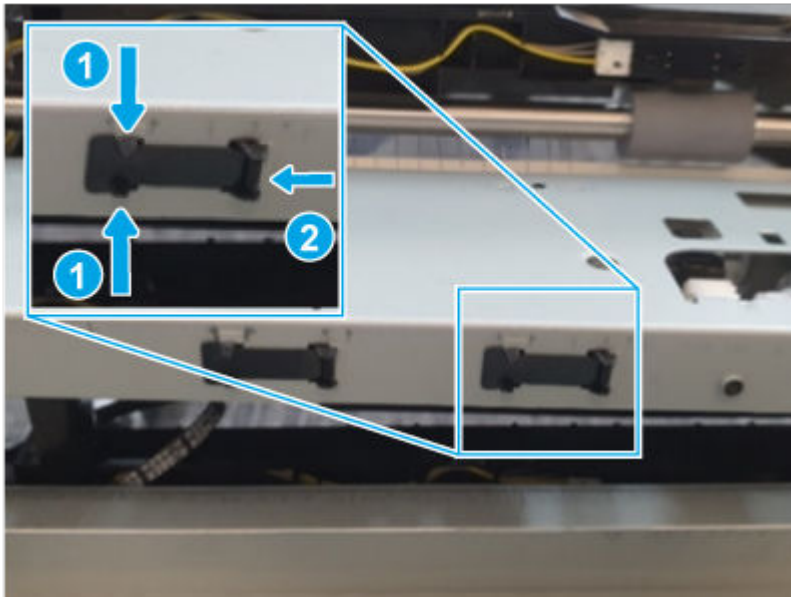
1. Locate the desired sensor to remove (on the Tray 4 pickup assembly).
 - **Callout 1:** Tray 4, 5 paper stack height sensor
 - **Callout 2:** Tray 4, 5 paper empty sensor

Figure 6-1573 Locate the sensor



2. Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
 - Release the sensor.

Figure 6-1574 Release the sensor



3. Disconnect one connector to remove the sensor.

Figure 6-1575 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4 prefeed sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4 prefeed sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-205 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Tray 4 prefeed sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

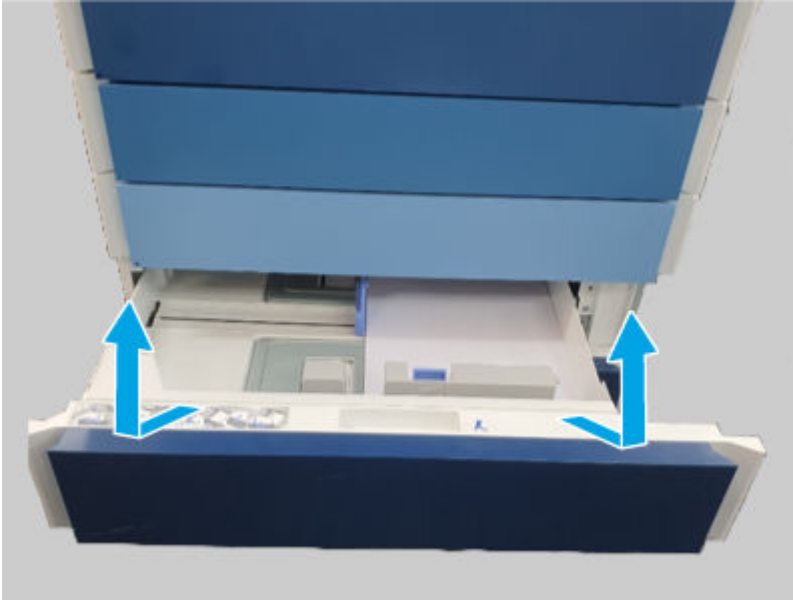
Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1576 Remove the cassette

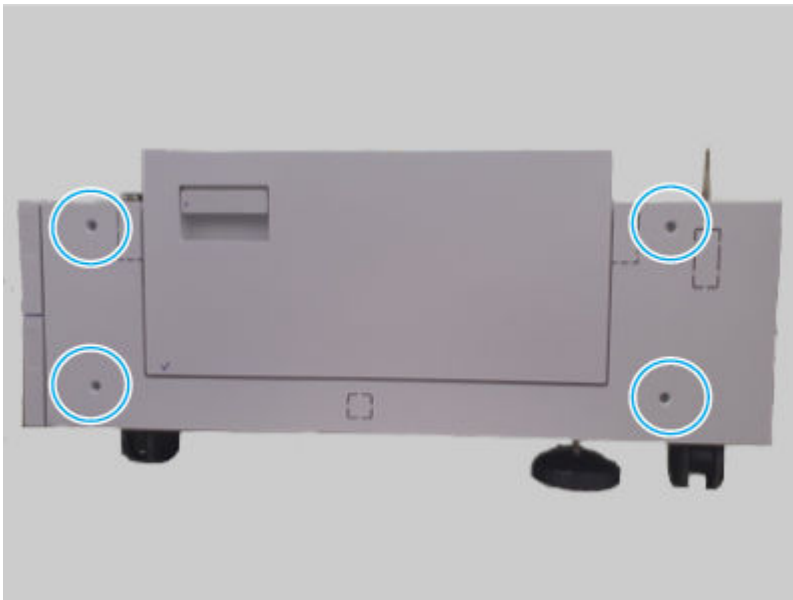


Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1577 Remove the cover

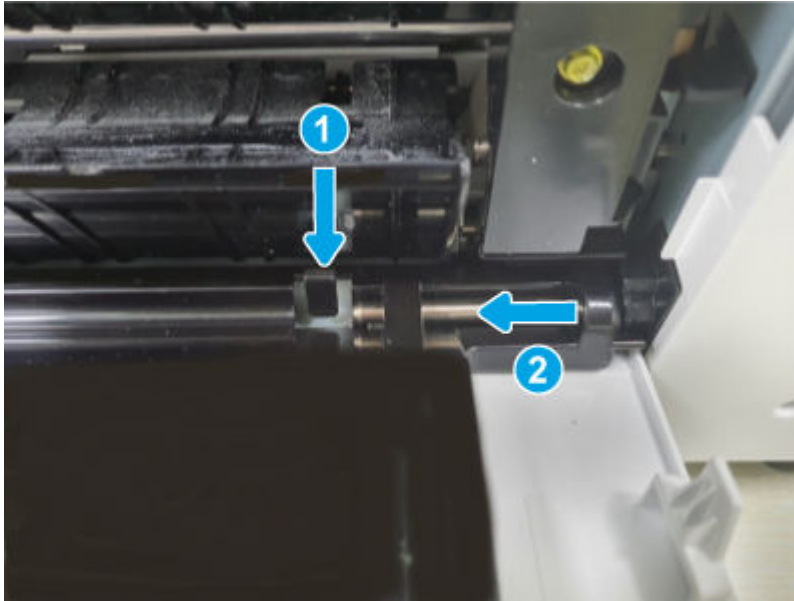


Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1578 Remove the door

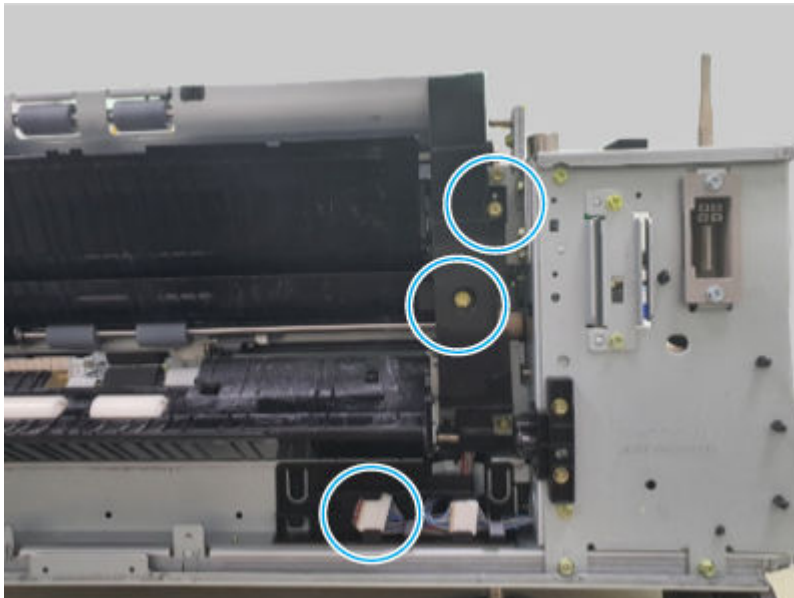


Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

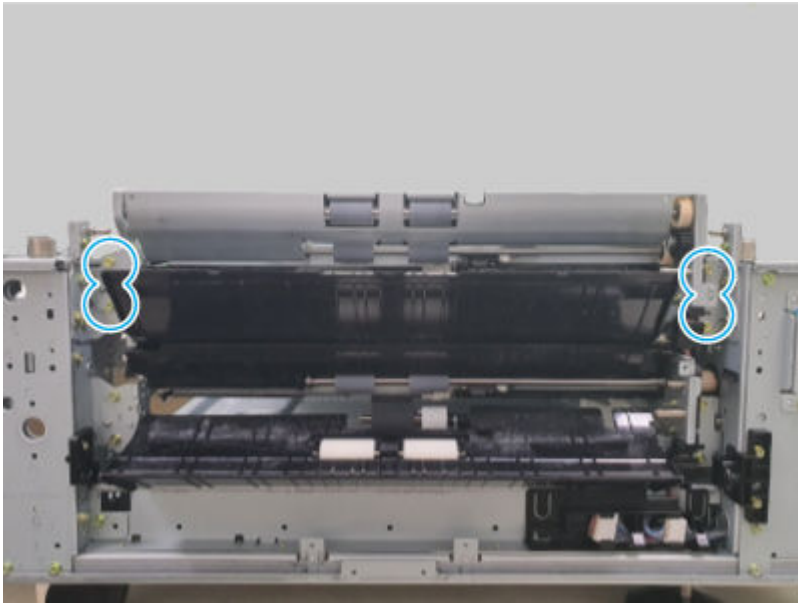
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1579 Disconnect connector and remove screws



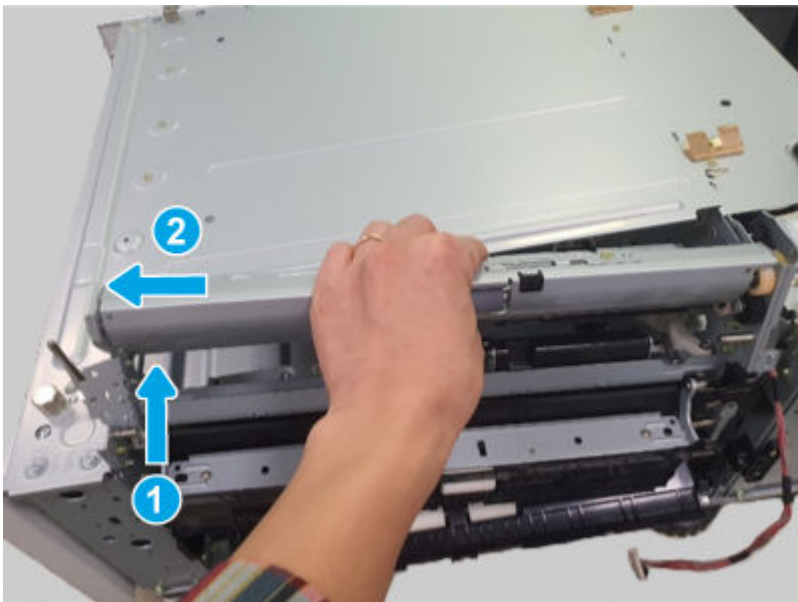
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1580 Remove four screws



3. Rotate the pickup assembly up (callout 1), and then out of the DCF (callout 2).

Figure 6-1581 Remove the assembly



Remove the Tray 4 prefeed sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 prefeed sensor.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1582 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2) to remove the Tray 4 prefeed sensor.

Figure 6-1583 Remove the sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 5 pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 5 pickup assembly.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-206 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-61010	Tray 5 pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

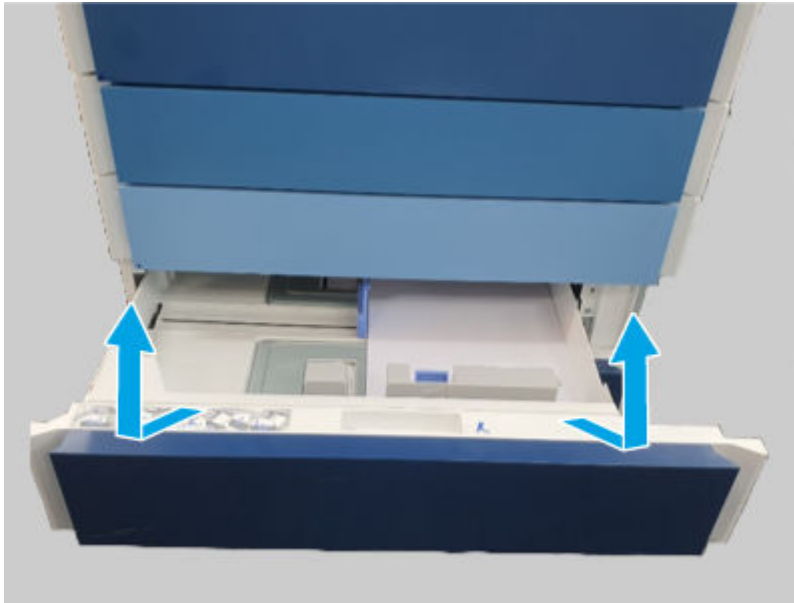
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1584 Remove the cassette



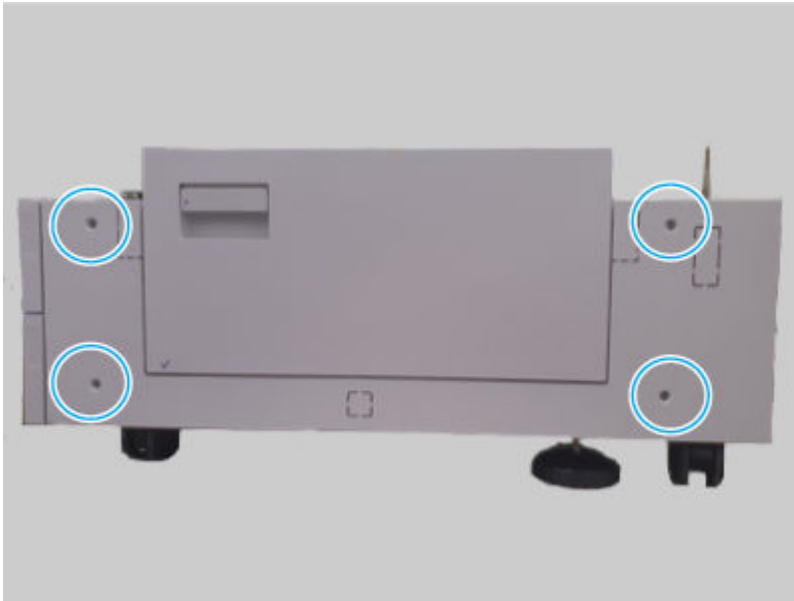
2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1585 Remove the cover

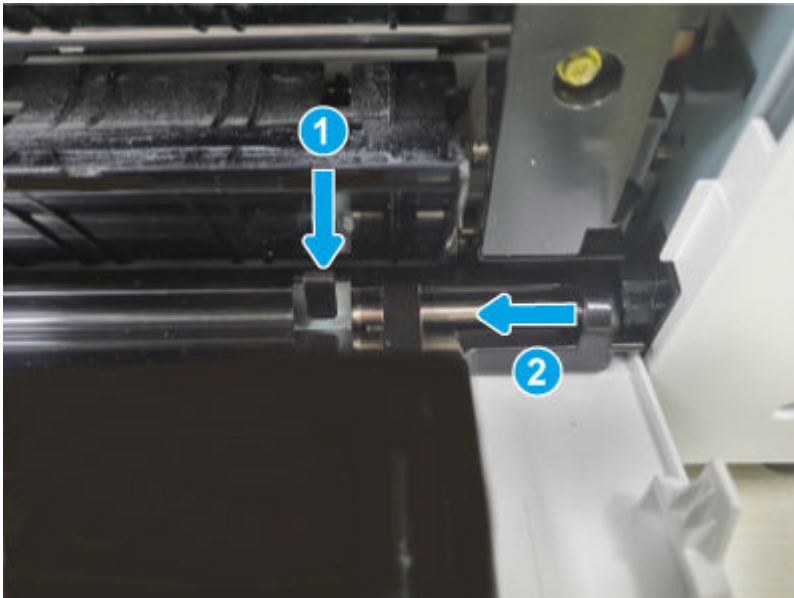


3. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1586 Remove the door

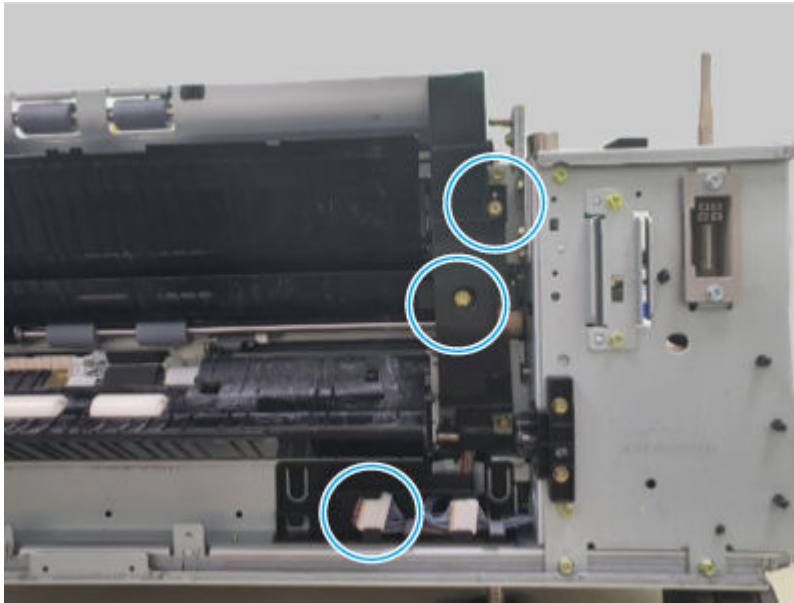


4. Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

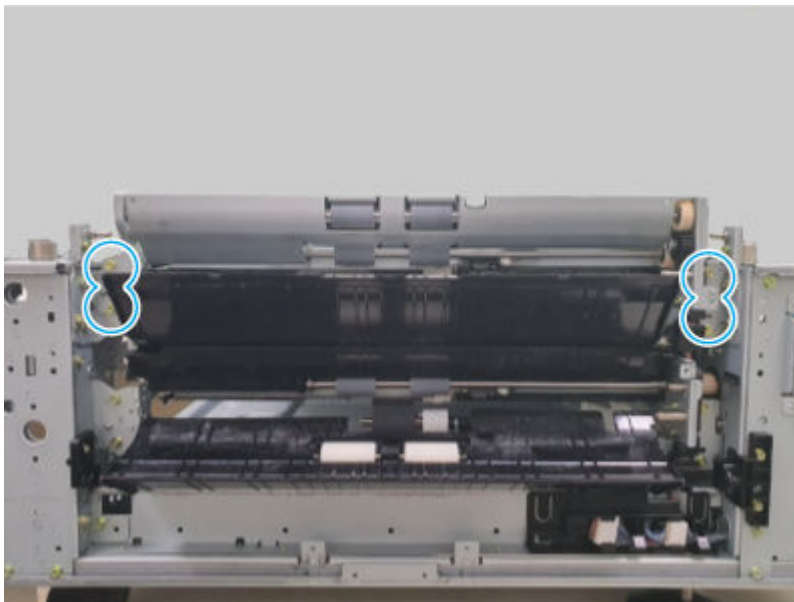
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1587 Disconnect connector and remove screws



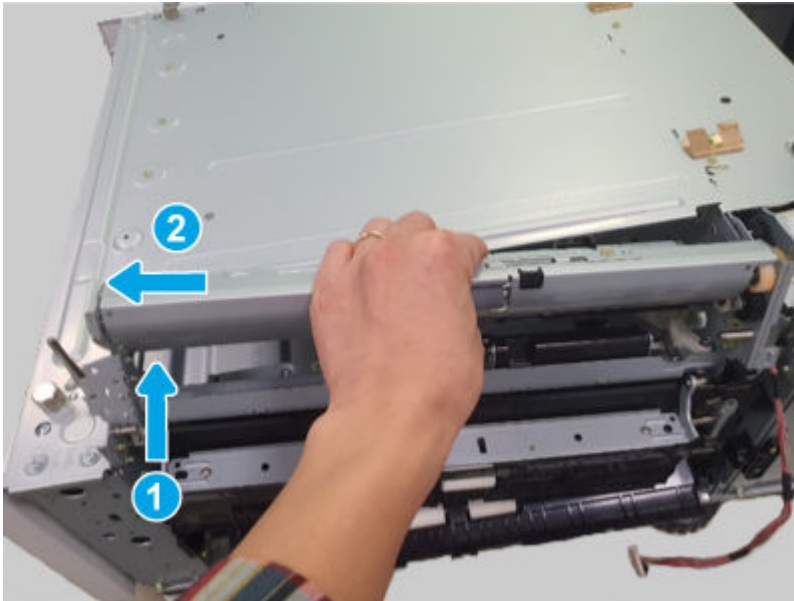
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1588 Remove four screws



3. Rotate the pickup assembly up (callout 1), and then out of the DCF (callout 2).

Figure 6-1589 Remove the assembly

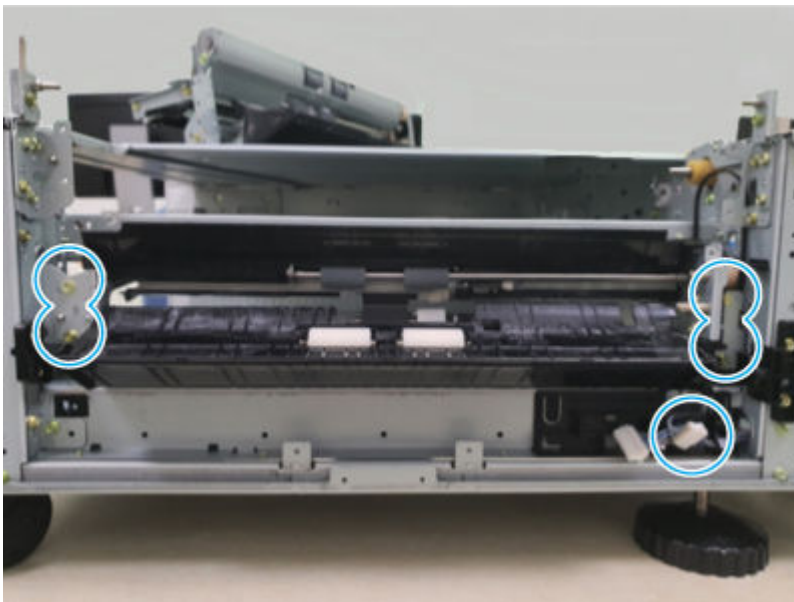


5. Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 5 pickup assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove four screws, and then remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly.


Figure 6-1590 Remove the assembly



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 5 paper empty and stack height sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 5 paper empty and stack height sensors.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-207 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 5 paper empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 5 paper stack height sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1591 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the Tray 4, 5 paper empty and stack height sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray paper empty and stack height sensors.

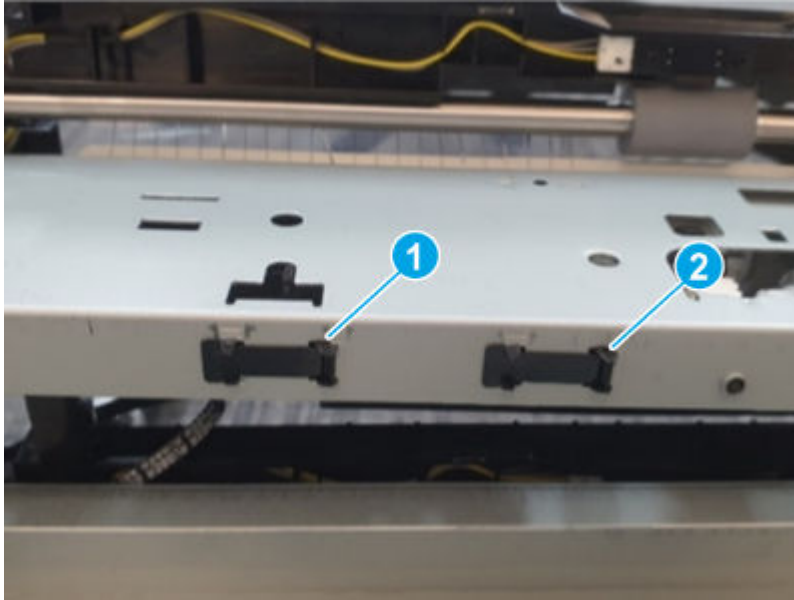


NOTE: The procedure for removing the paper empty sensor or the paper stack height sensor is the same for both sensors.

1. Locate the desired sensor to remove (on the Tray 4 pickup assembly).
 - **Callout 1:** Tray 4, 5 paper stack height sensor

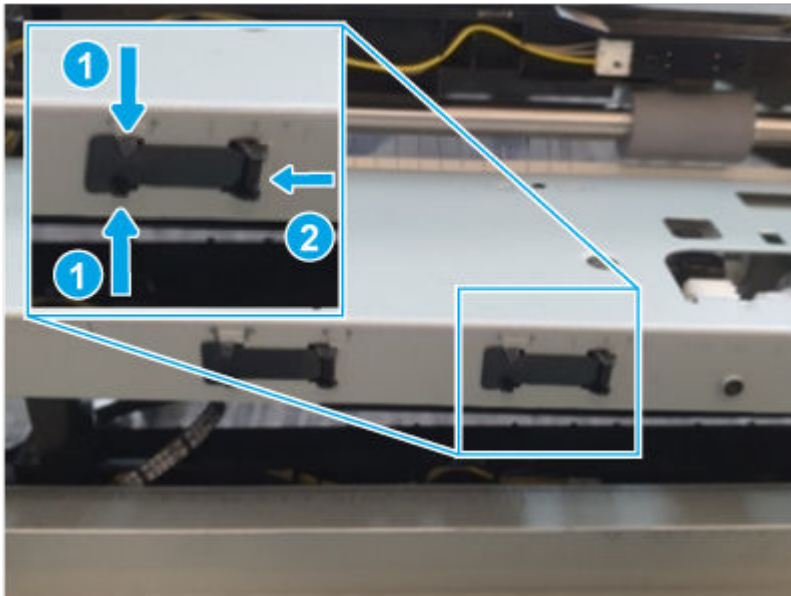
- **Callout 2:** Tray 4, 5 paper empty sensor

Figure 6-1592 Locate the sensor



2. Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
 - Release the sensor.

Figure 6-1593 Release the sensor



3. Disconnect one connector to remove the sensor.


Figure 6-1594 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 5 prefeed sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 5 prefeed sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-208 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Tray 5 prefeed sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

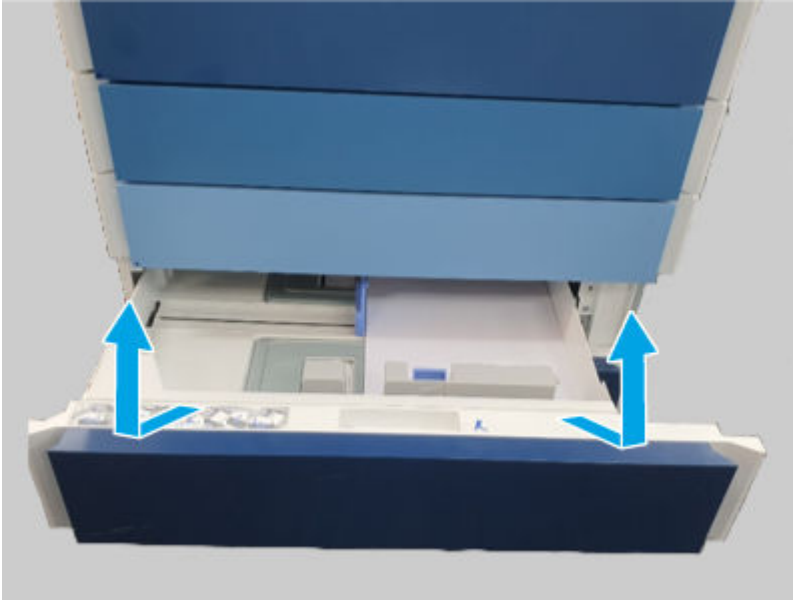
1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1595 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1596 Remove the cover

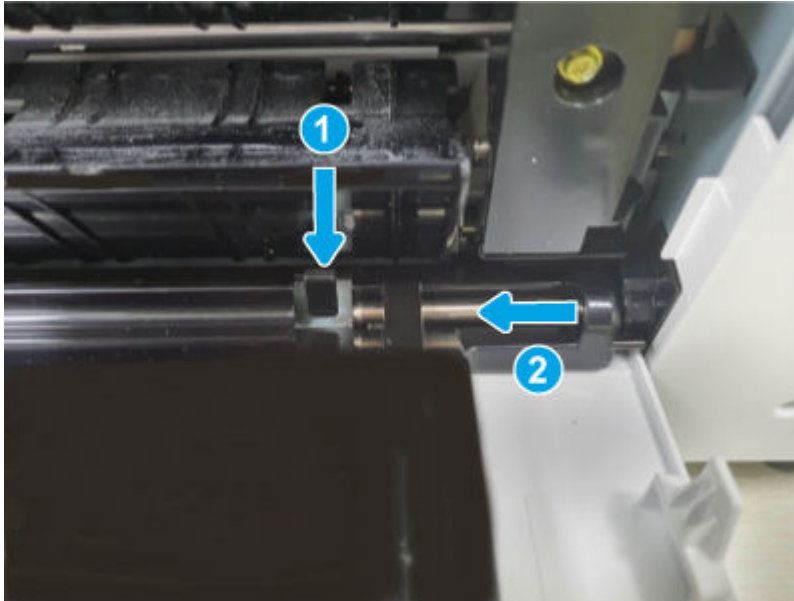


3. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1597 Remove the door

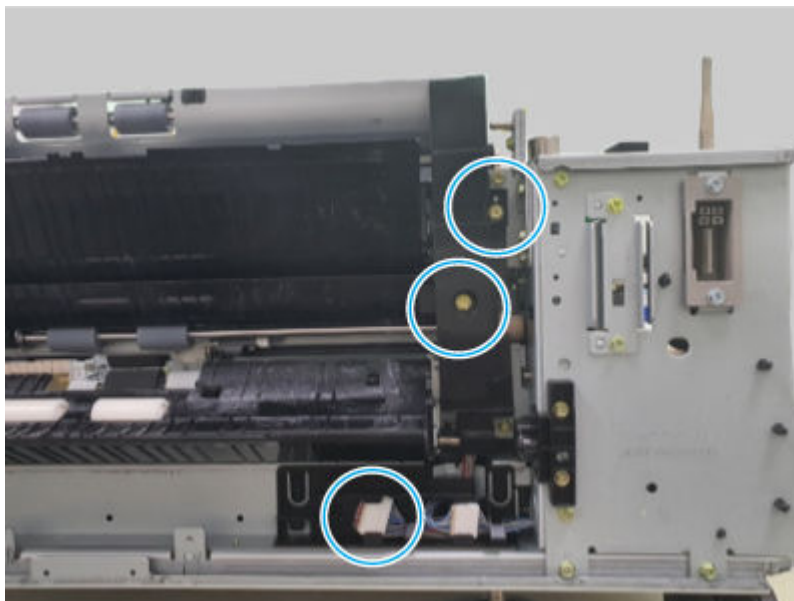


4. Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

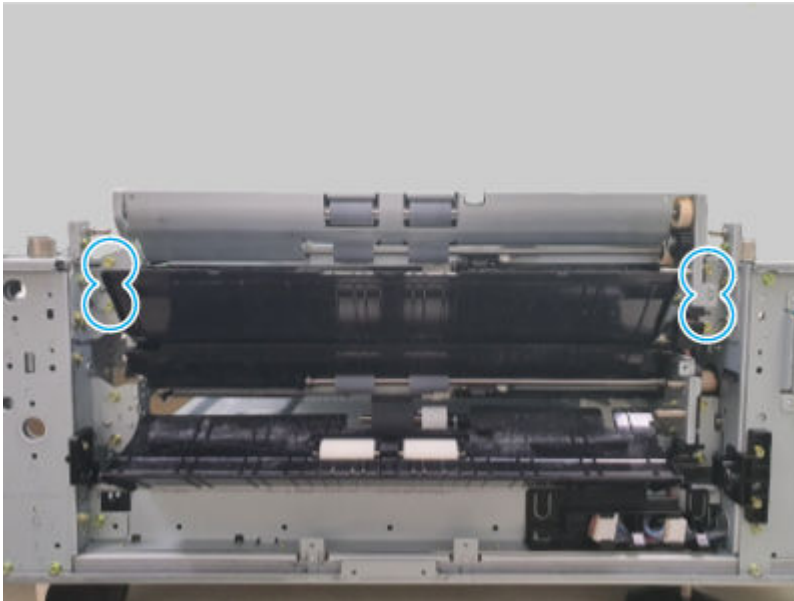
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1598 Disconnect connector and remove screws



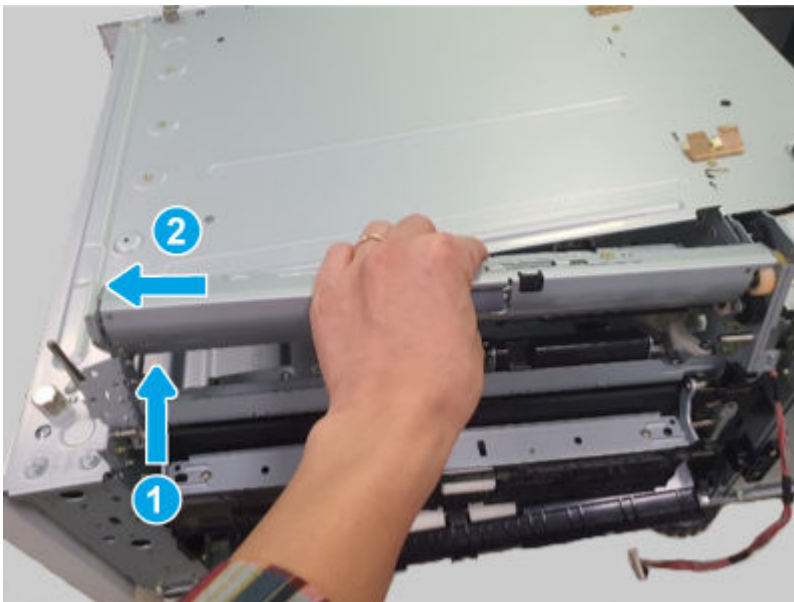
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1599 Remove four screws



3. Rotate the pickup assembly up (callout 1), and then out of the DCF (callout 2).

Figure 6-1600 Remove the assembly

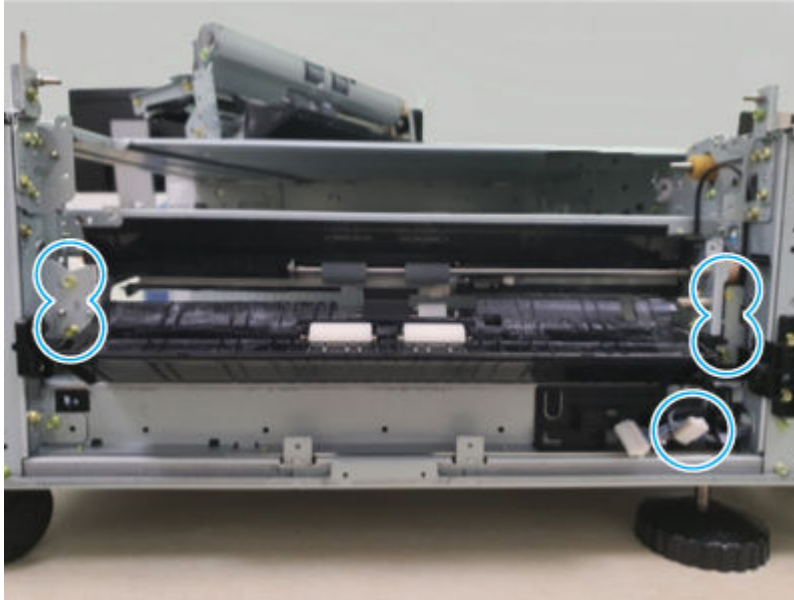


5. Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 5 pickup assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove four screws, and then remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly.

Figure 6-1601 Remove the assembly

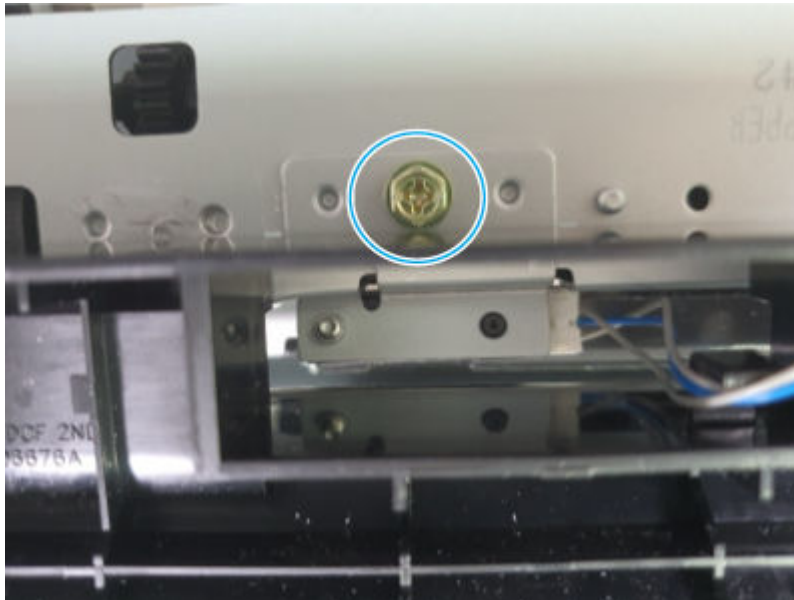


6. Remove the Tray 5 prefeed sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 5 prefeed sensor.

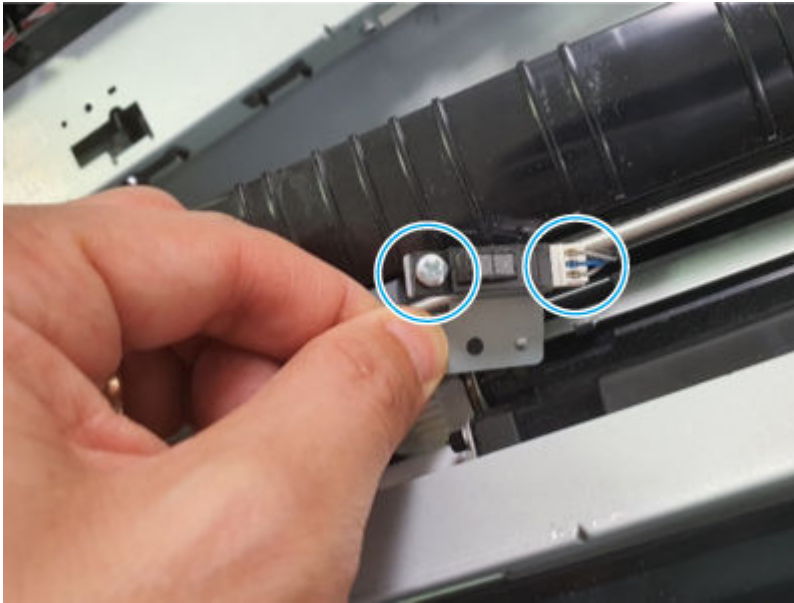
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1602 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2) to remove the Tray 5 prefeed sensor.

Figure 6-1603 Remove the sensor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF feed sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) feed sensor.


 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.

Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-209 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter (DCF feed sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

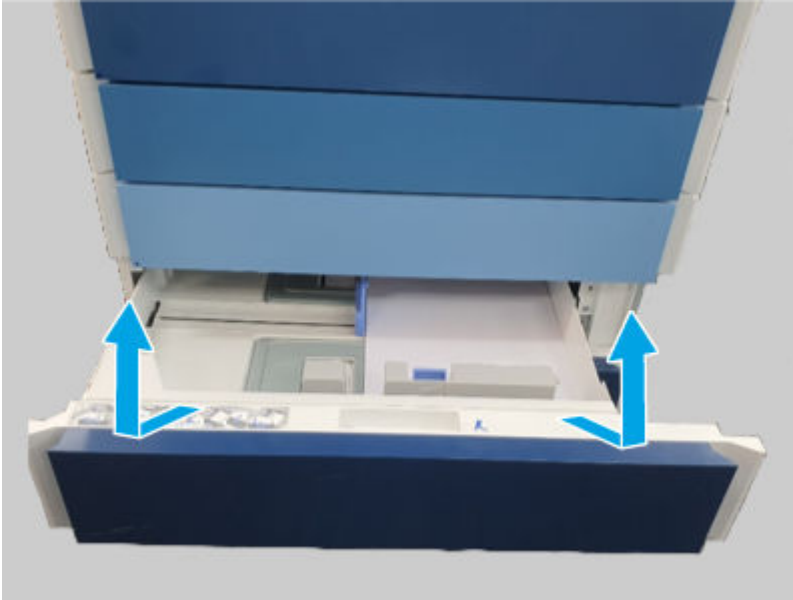
1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1604 Remove the cassette

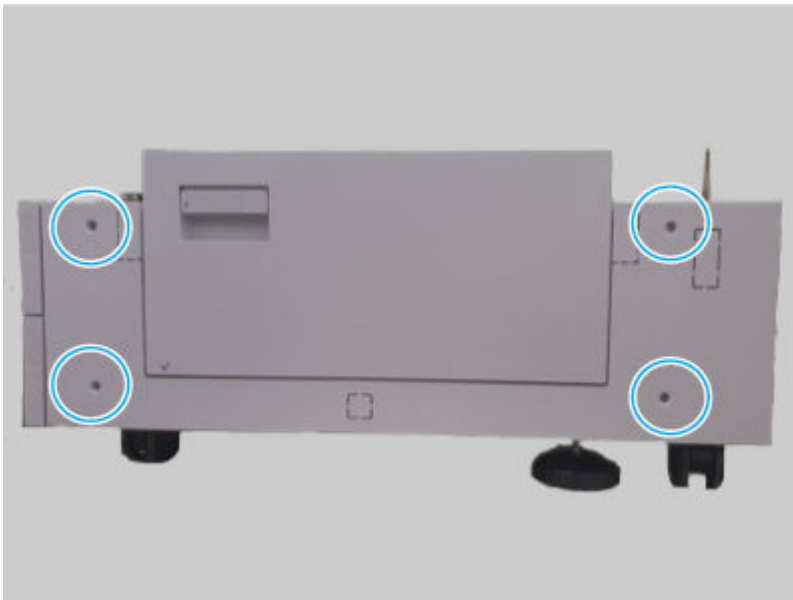


2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1605 Remove the cover

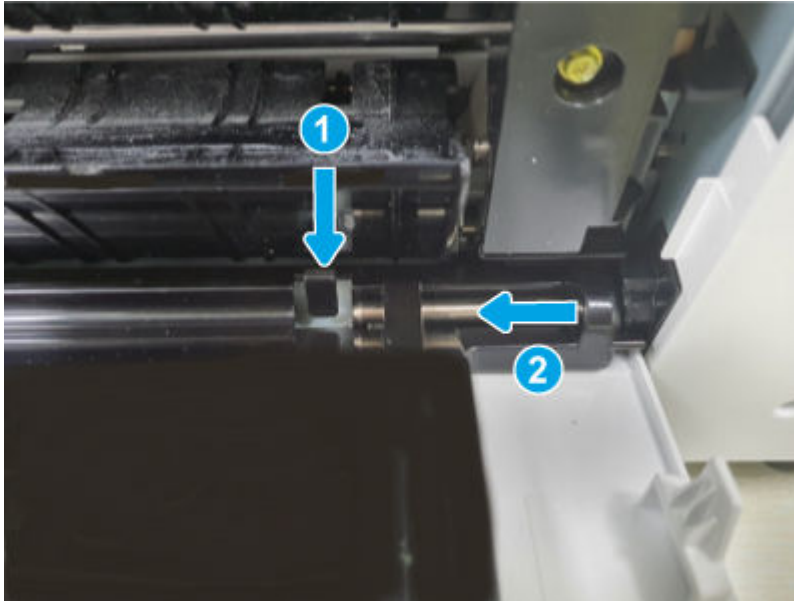


3. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1606 Remove the door

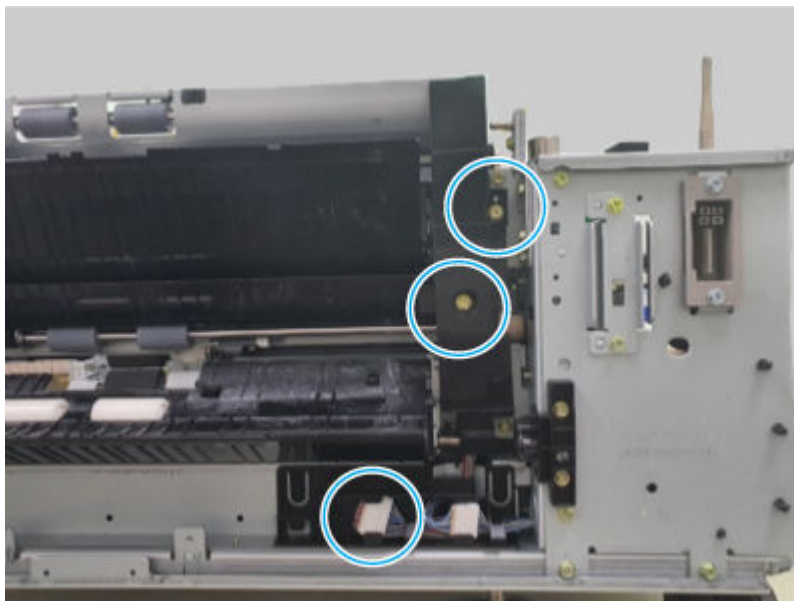


4. Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

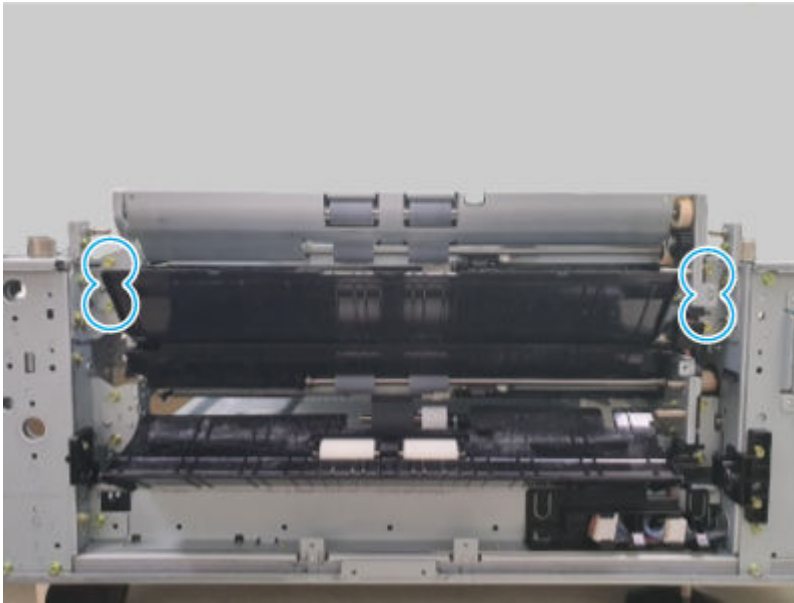
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1607 Disconnect connector and remove screws



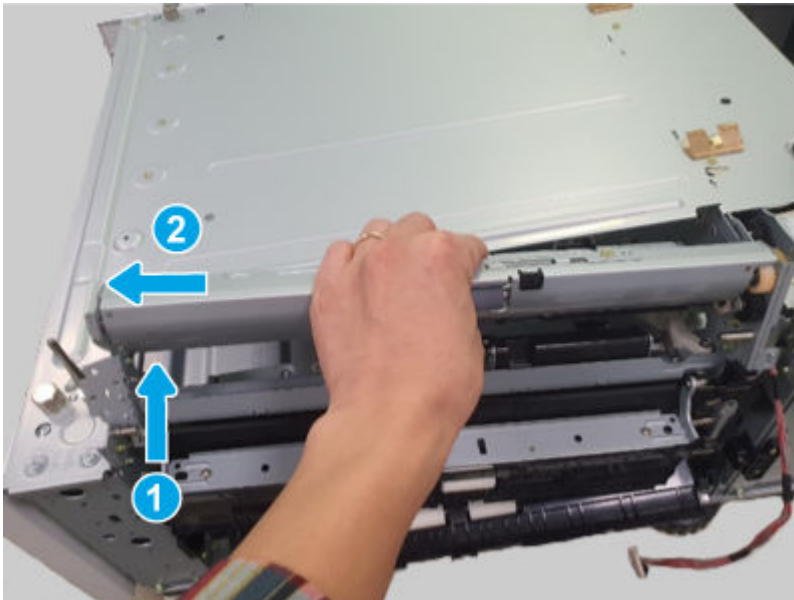
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1608 Remove four screws



3. Rotate the pickup assembly up (callout 1), and then out of the DCF (callout 2).

Figure 6-1609 Remove the assembly

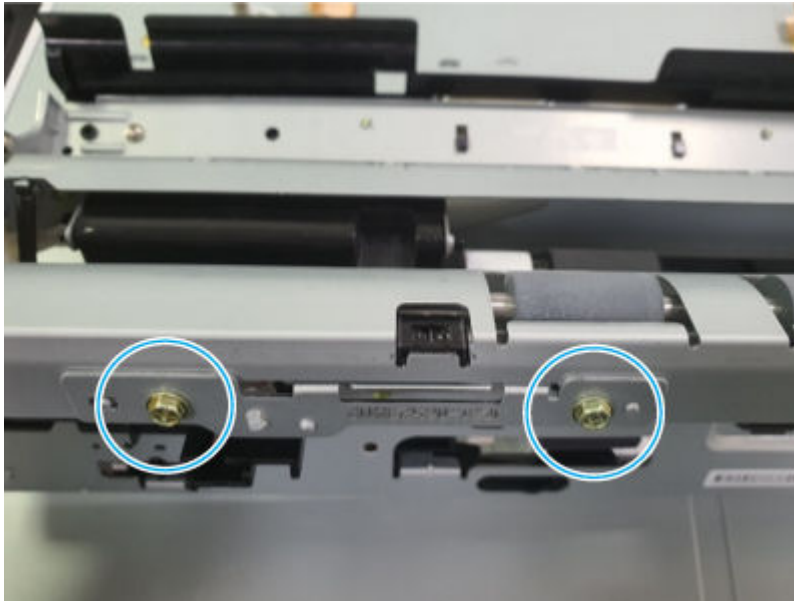


5. Remove the DCF feed sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF feed sensor.

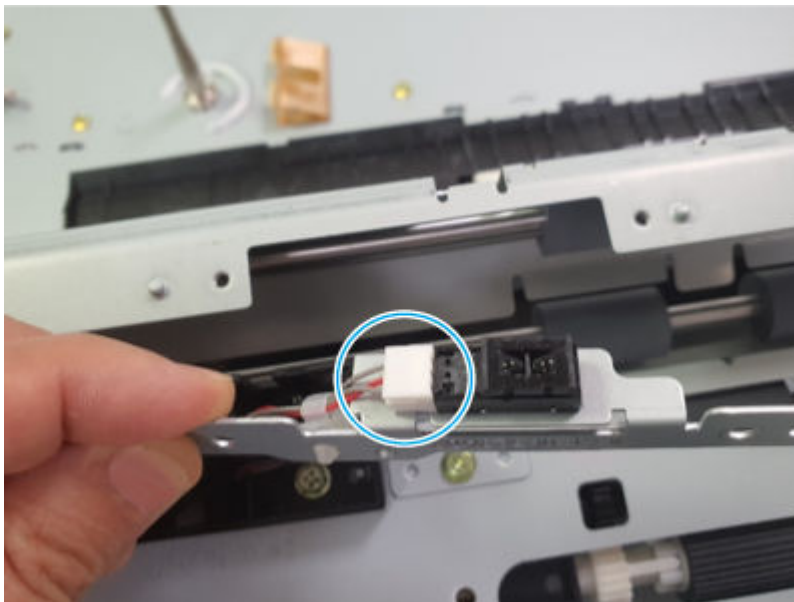
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1610 Remove two screws



2. Turn the assembly over, disconnect one connector, and then remove the DCF feed sensor.

Figure 6-1611 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA and harness

Review the DCF PCA and harness removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Tray heater

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF tray heaters.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-210 Part information

Part number	Part description
Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V
Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.


- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1612 Remove the cassette



Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1613 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:

- Slightly lift up on the front of the heater, and pull it toward the front of the printer.

CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the heater. It is still attached to the printer by a wire-harness connector.


- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the heater.

Figure 6-1614 Remove the heater



2. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.


 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1615 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:
 - Slightly lift up on the front of the heater, and pull it toward the front of the printer.

 **CAUTION:** Do not attempt to completely remove the heater. It is still attached to the printer by a wire-harness connector.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the heater.

Figure 6-1616 Remove the heater



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF PCA.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-211 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW47-60001	DCF (Tray4, 5) PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1617 Remove the cover

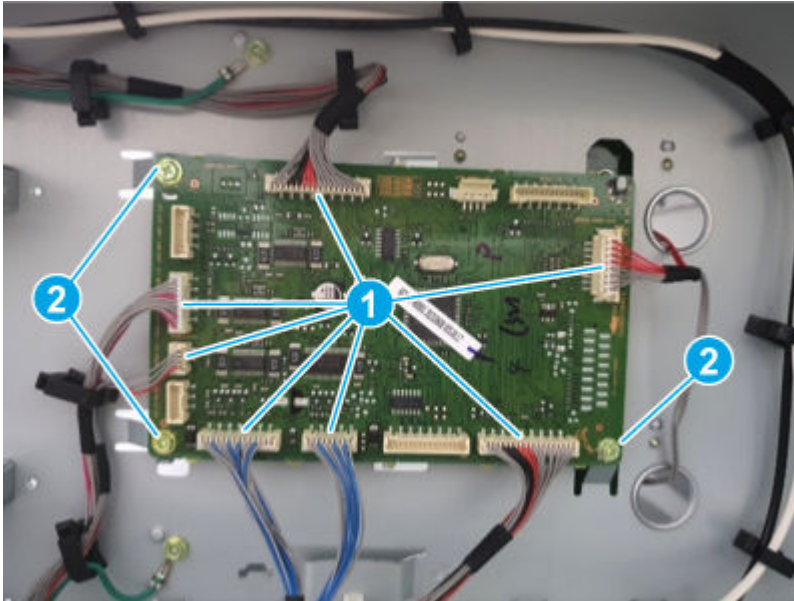


2. Remove the DCF PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF PCA.

- Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the DCF PCA.

Figure 6-1618 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door open switch holder assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF right door open switch holder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure describes replacing only the switch holder. To replace the right door open switch, remove and replace the *DCF Dpt door open switch and harness* (JC39-02268A).


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-212 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01385A	DCF (Tray4, 5) right door open switch holder

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1619 Remove the cover

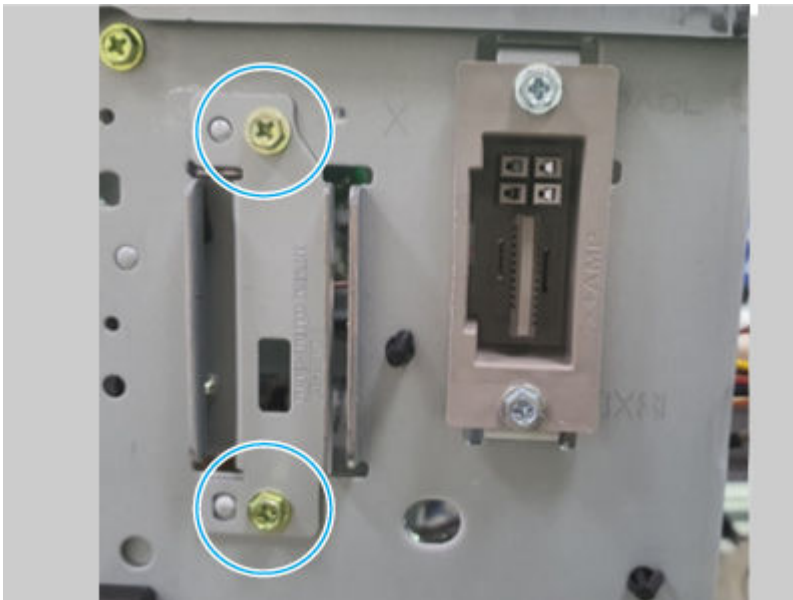


2. Remove the DCF right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF right door open switch holder.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1620 Remove two screws



3. Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.


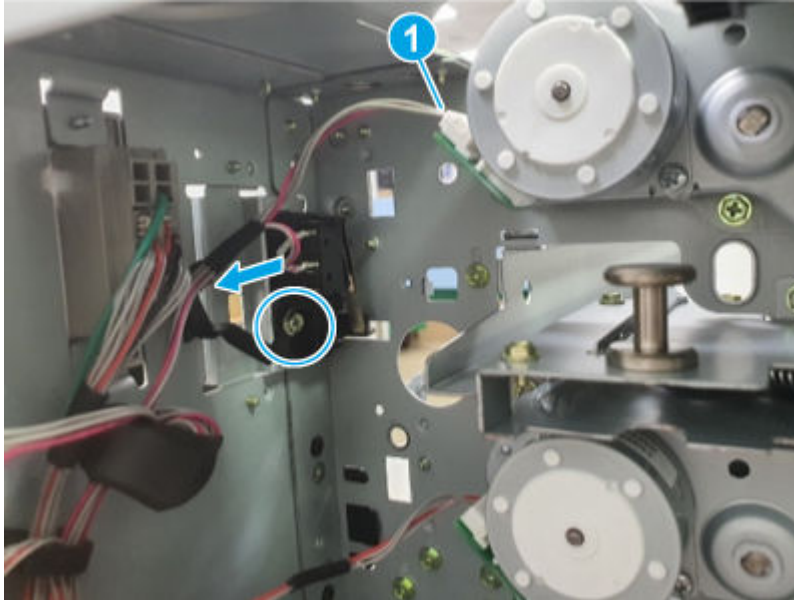
 **TIP:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and release the wire harness from retainers as needed to create enough wire harness slack to pull the switch-holder assembly out.

Figure 6-1621 Pull out the switch and holder



4. Release two tabs (callout 1) and then remove the switch from the holder to remove it (callout 2).


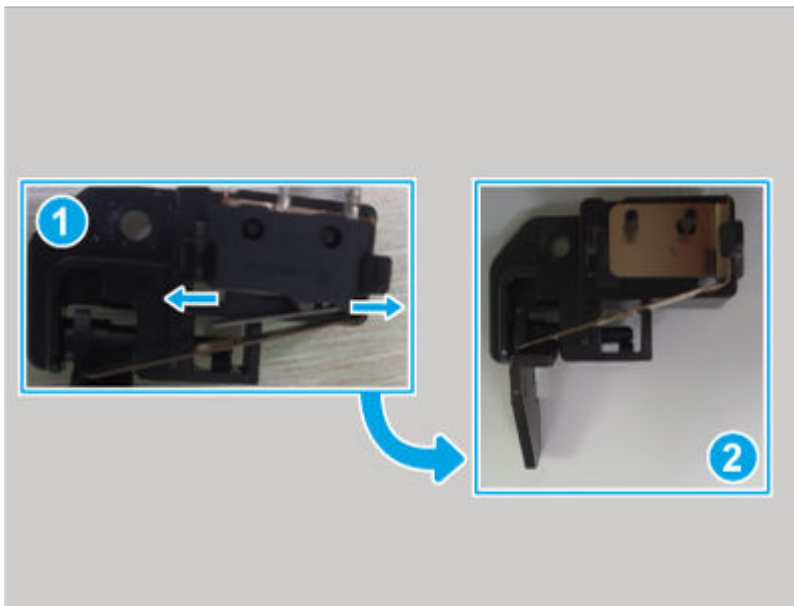
 **NOTE:** This step is required to replace the switch holder. To replace the right door open switch, remove the *DCF Dpt door open switch and harness* (JC39-02268A).


Figure 6-1622 Remove the holder





3. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF IF harness

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF IF harness.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-213 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02606A	DCF IF harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1623 Remove the cover

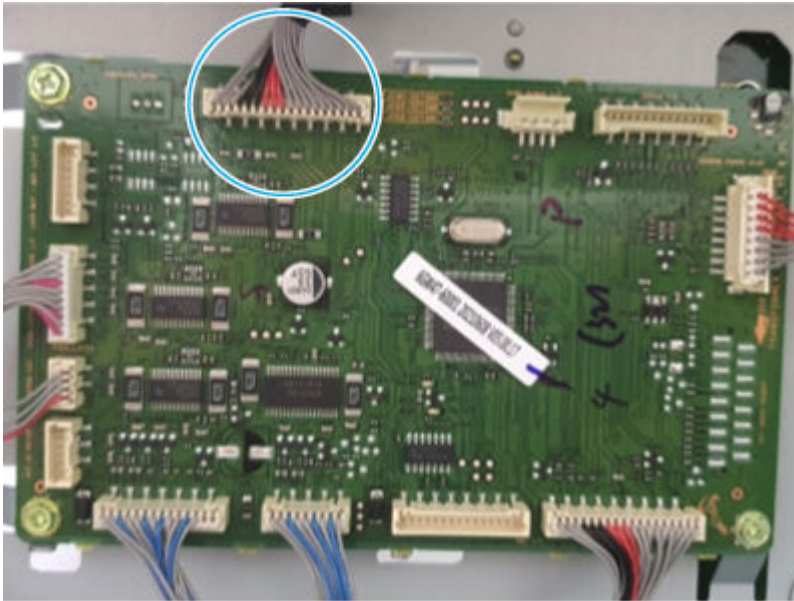


2. Remove the DCF IF harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF IF harness.

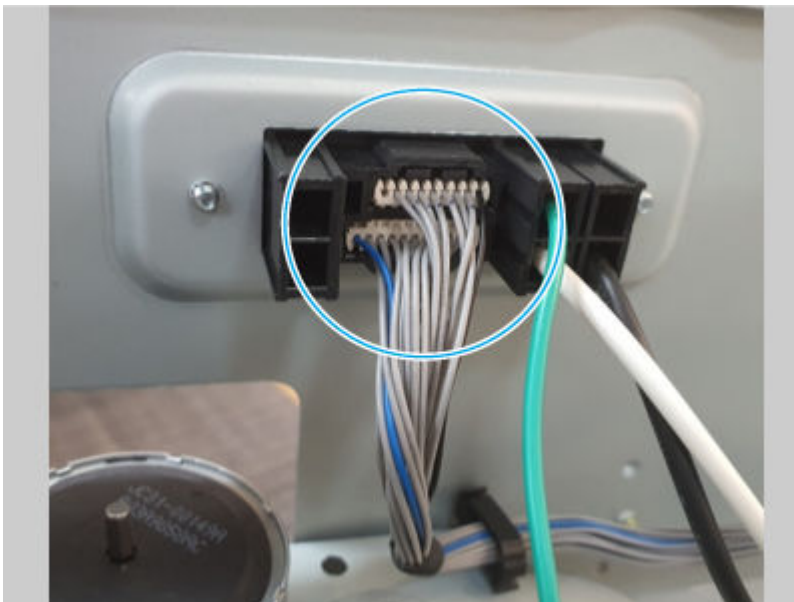
1. Disconnect one connector on the DCF PCA.

Figure 6-1624 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect two connectors, release retainers as needed, and then remove the DCF IF harness.


Figure 6-1625 Remove the harness



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF door open switch sensor and harness

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF door open switch and harness.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-214 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02268A	DCF door open switch and harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1626 Remove the cover



2. Remove the DCF right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF right door open switch holder.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1627 Remove two screws



3. Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.


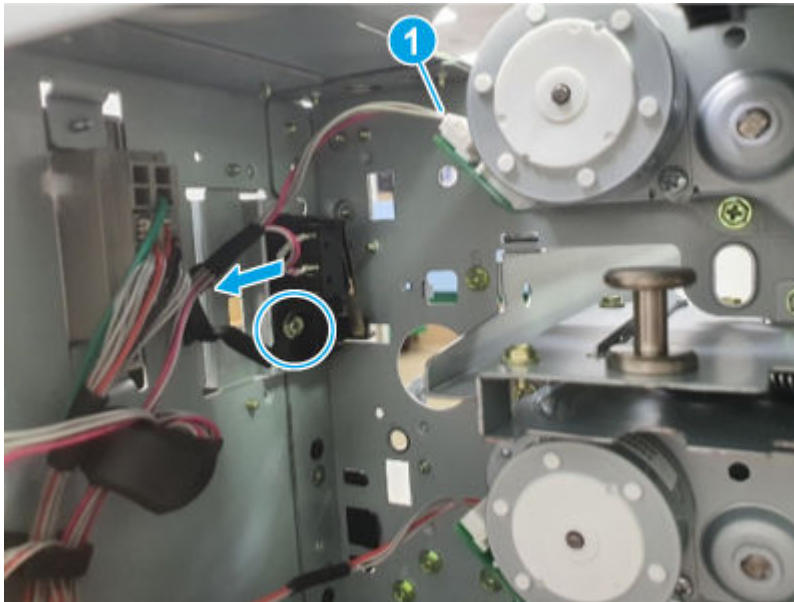
 **TIP:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and release the wire harness from retainers as needed to create enough wire harness slack to pull the switch-holder assembly out.

Figure 6-1628 Pull out the switch and holder



4. Release two tabs (callout 1) and then remove the switch from the holder to remove it (callout 2).


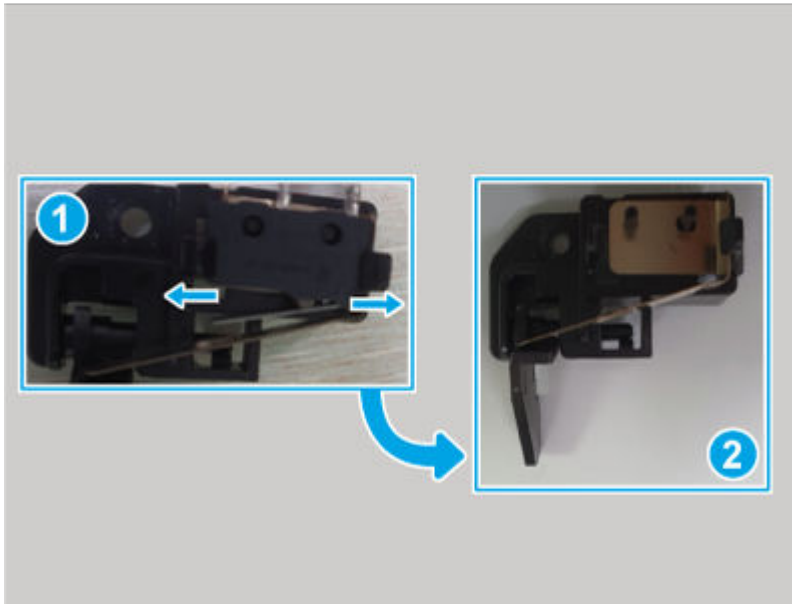
 **NOTE:** This step is required to replace the switch holder. To replace the right door open switch, remove the *DCF Dpt door open switch and harness* (JC39-02268A).

Figure 6-1629 Remove the holder

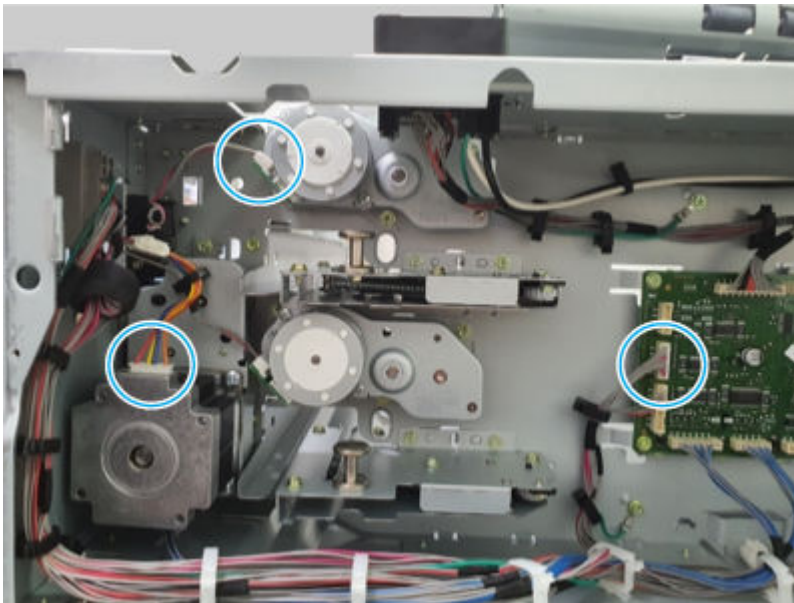


3. Remove the door open switch and harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF door open switch and harness.

- Disconnect three connectors, release retainers as needed, and then remove the DCF door open switch and harness.


Figure 6-1630 Remove the harness





4. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF motor harness 2nd

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF motor harness 2nd.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-215 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02268A	DCF motor harness 2nd

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1631 Remove the cover

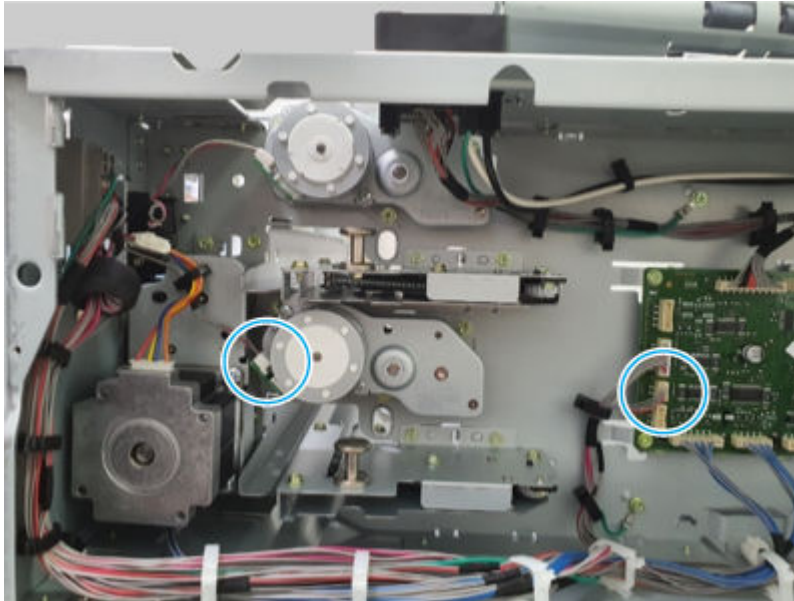


2. Remove the motor harness 2nd

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF motor harness 2nd.

- Disconnect two connectors, release retainers as needed, and then remove the DCF motor harness 2nd.

Figure 6-1632 Remove the harness



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF sensor harness 1st

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF sensor harness 1st.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-216 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02271A	DCF sensor harness 1st

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1633 Remove the cover

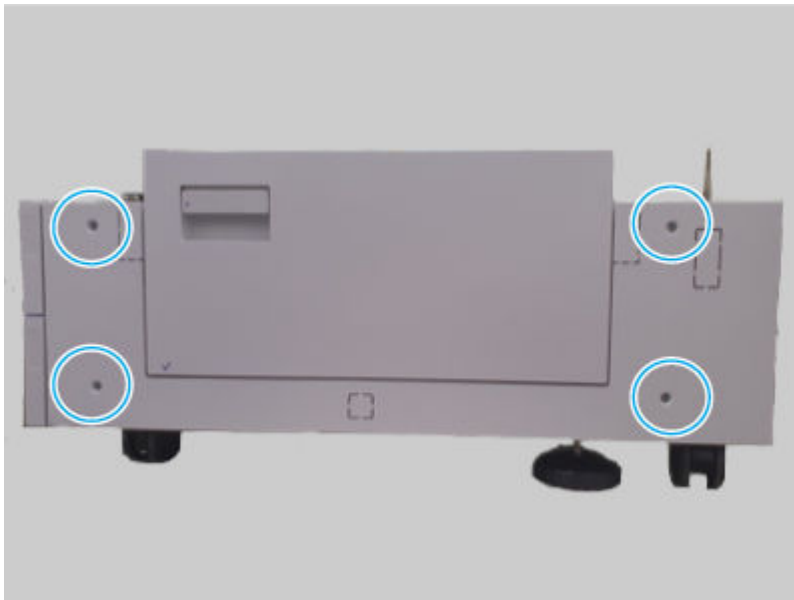


2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1634 Remove the cover

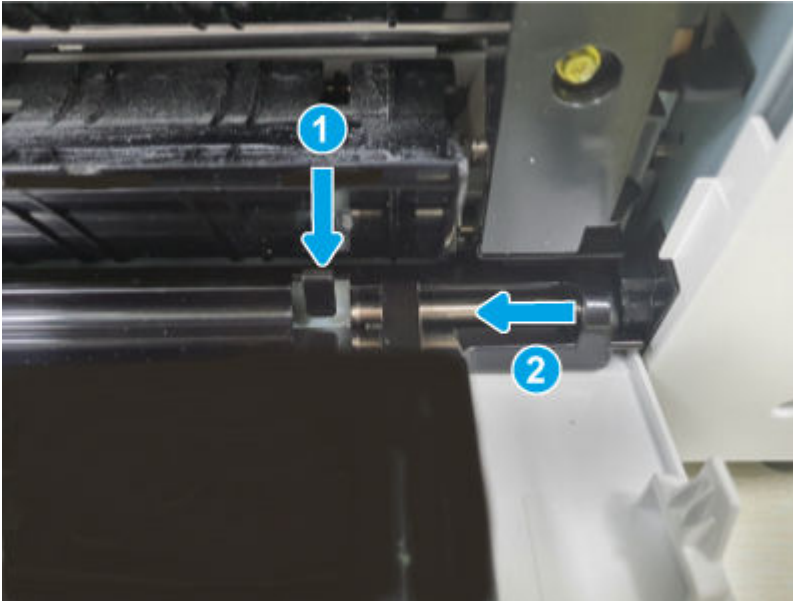


3. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1635 Remove the door

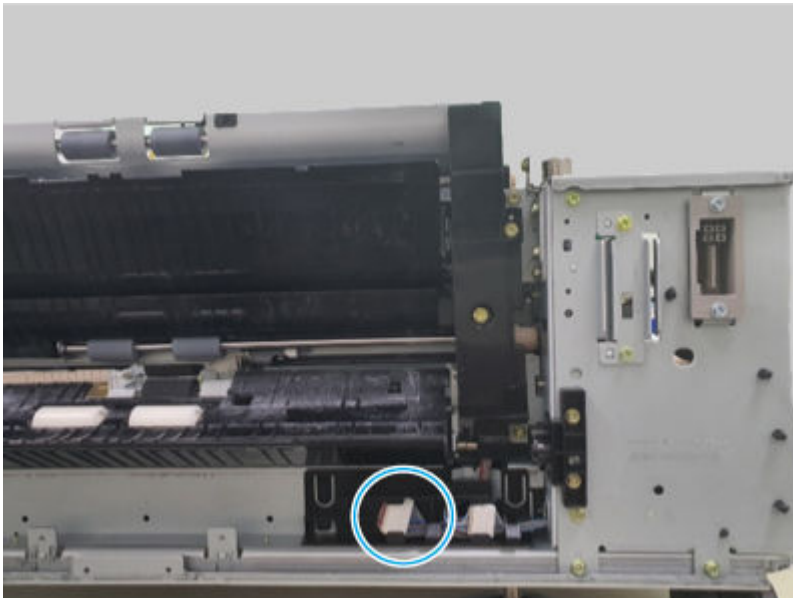


4. Remove the sensor harness 1st

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF sensor harness 1st.

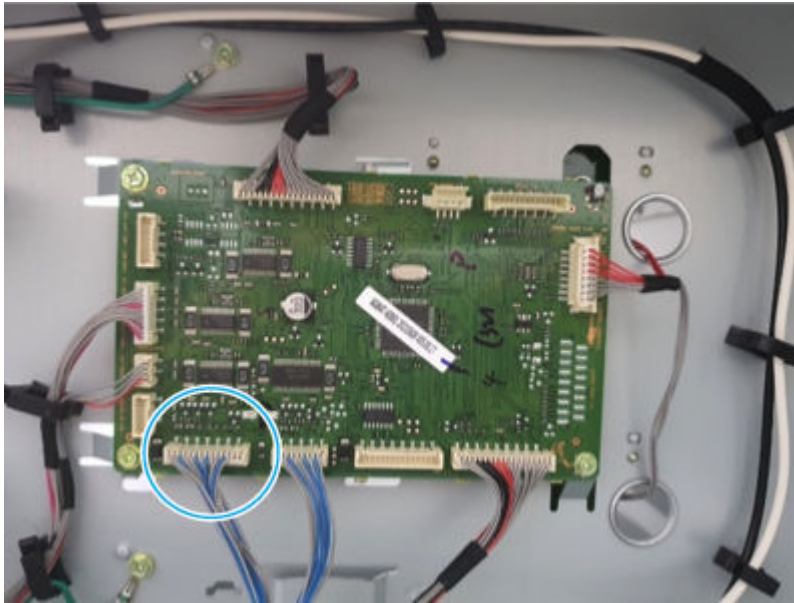
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1636 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect one connector, release retainers as needed, and then remove the DCF sensor harness 1st.

Figure 6-1637 Remove the harness



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF sensor harness 2nd

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF sensor harness 2nd.



NOTE: Remove the DCF from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-217 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02269A	DCF sensor harness 2nd

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1638 Remove the cover

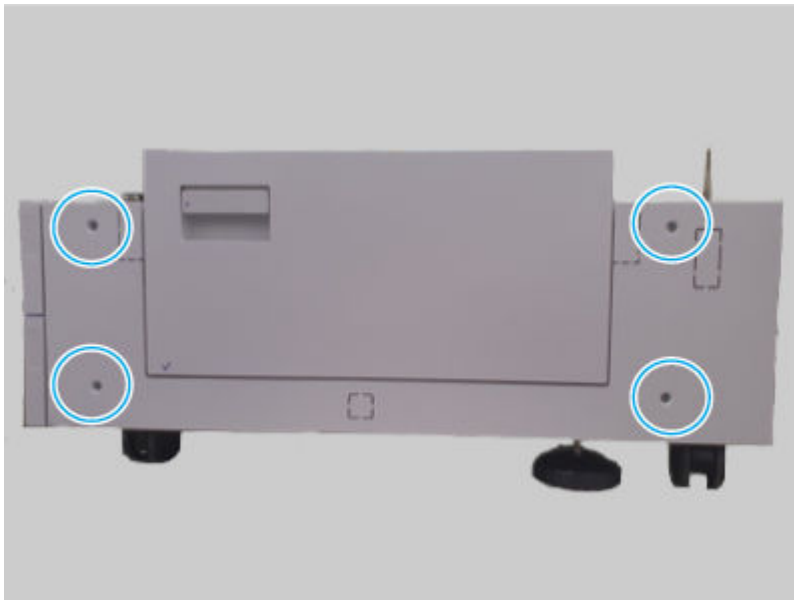


2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1639 Remove the cover

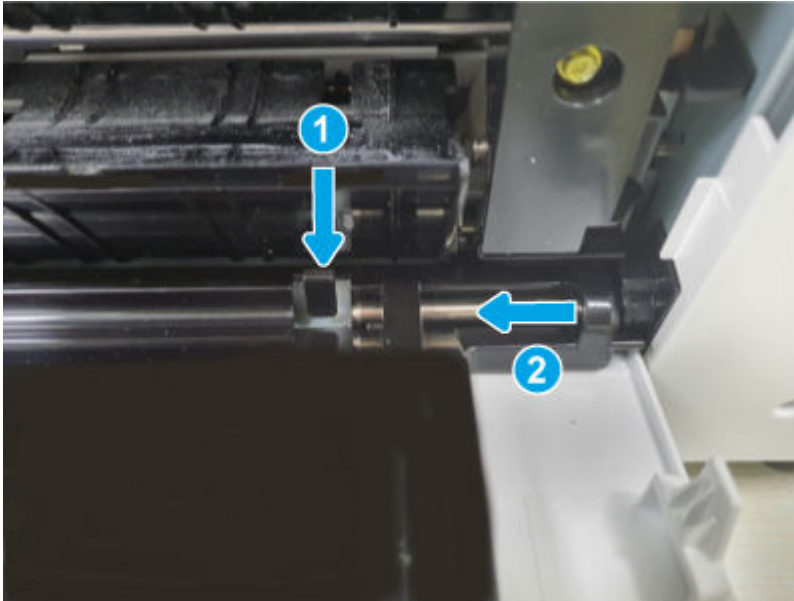


3. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1640 Remove the door

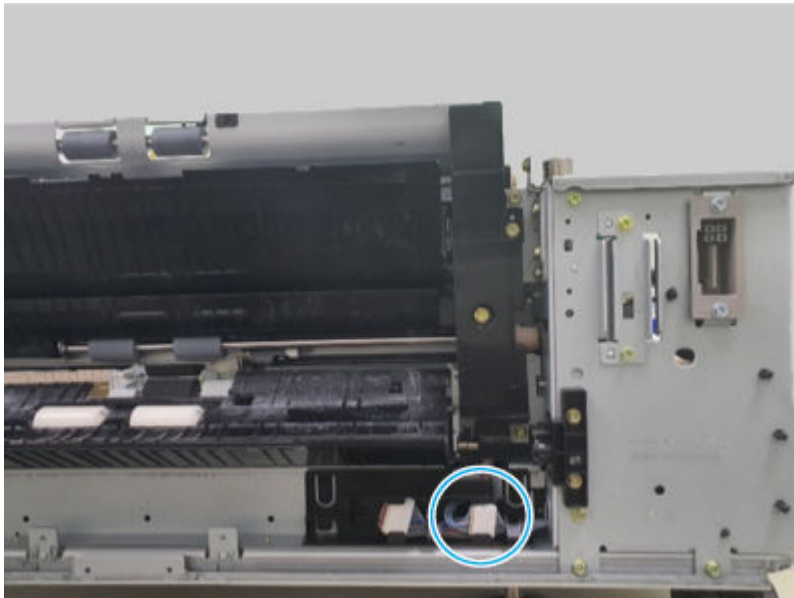


4. Remove the sensor harness 2nd

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF sensor harness 2nd.

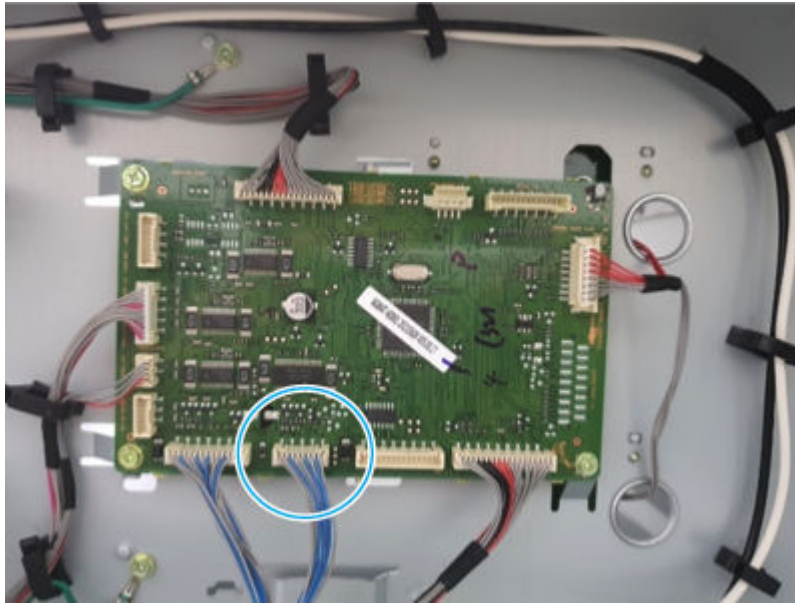
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1641 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect one connector, release retainers as needed, and then remove the DCF sensor harness 2nd.

Figure 6-1642 Remove the harness



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF size harness

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF size harness.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-218 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02275A	DCF size harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

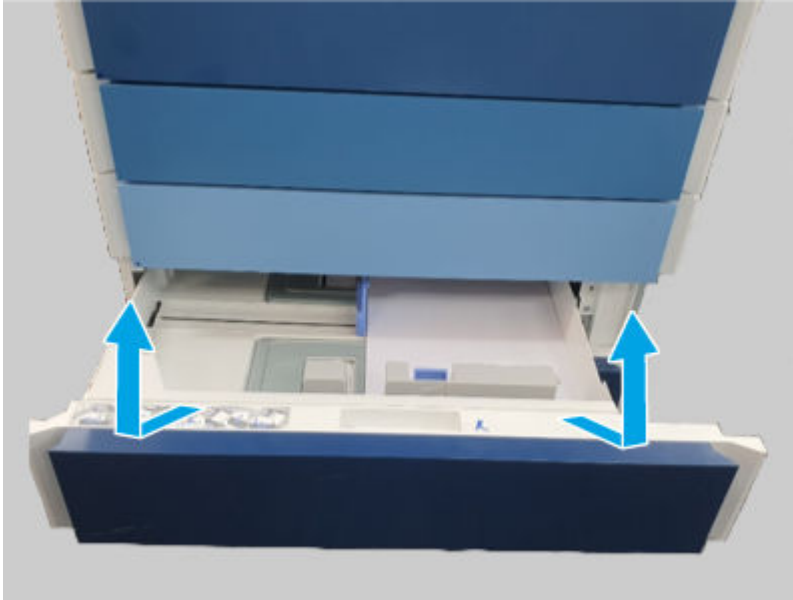
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1643 Remove the cassette



Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1644 Remove the cover



Remove the size harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF size harness.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1645 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect two connectors (inside the tray cavity), release retainers as needed, and then remove the DCF size harness (from the rear of the DCF).

Figure 6-1646 Remove the harness



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI (department)

Learn about high capacity input (department) parts removal and replacement.

Covers

Review the HCI cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) right cover.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-219 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40006	HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

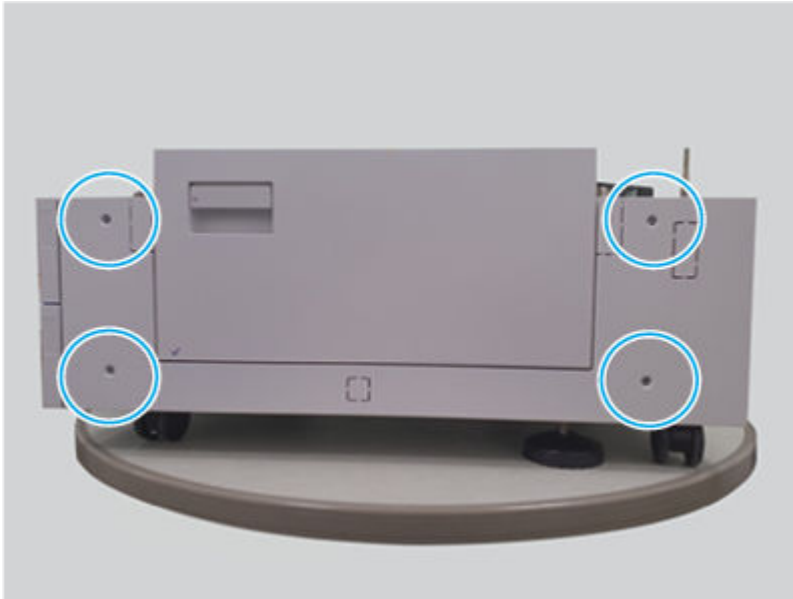
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1647 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) rear cover.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-220 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40007	HCI (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1648 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) left cover.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-221 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40008	HCI (Tray 4, 5) left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

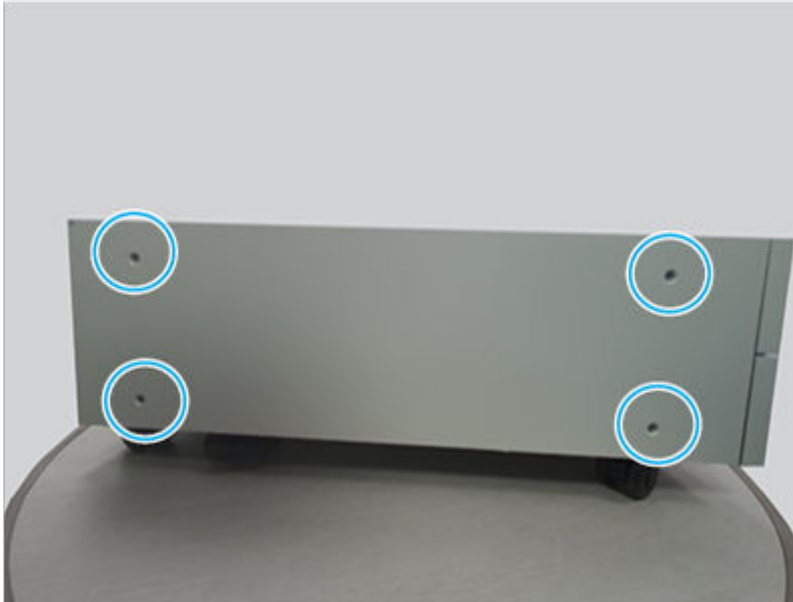
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI left cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-1649 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) right door

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) right door.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-222 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-61023	HCI (Tray 4) right door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

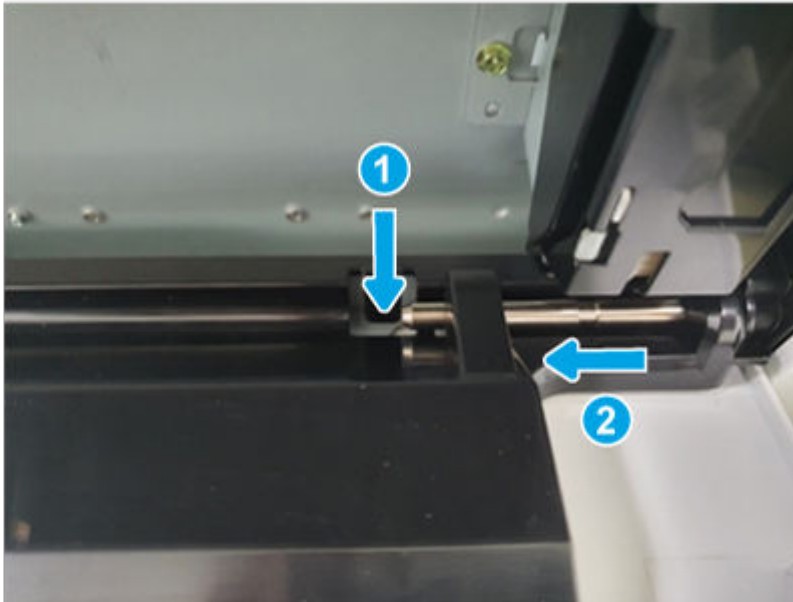
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door.

- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1650 Remove the door



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) front CMF panel

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) front CMF panel.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-223 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-40016	HCI (Tray 4) front CMF panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

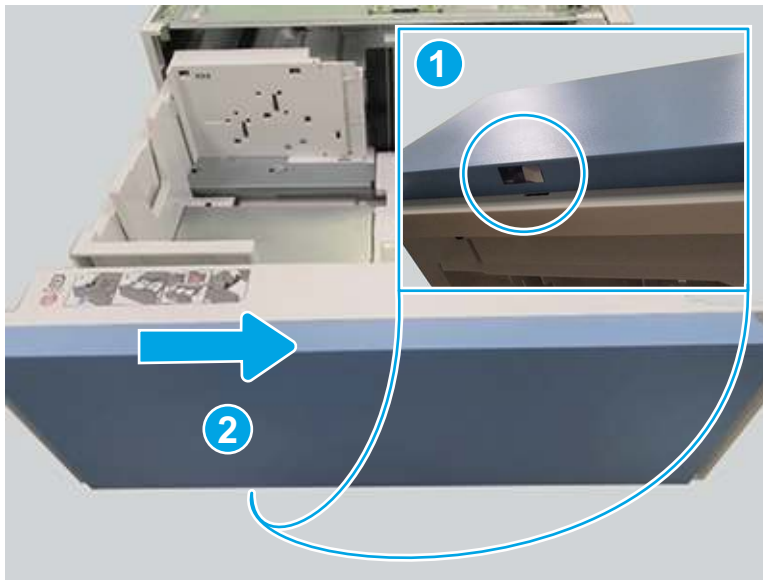
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) front CMF panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI CMF panel.

- Release one tab (callout 1), slide the panel to the left (callout 2), and then remove the front CMF panel

Figure 6-1651 Remove the panel



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster wheel

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) caster wheel.

 **NOTE:** Remove the HCI from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-224 Part information

Part number	Part description
6109-001138	Caster wheel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

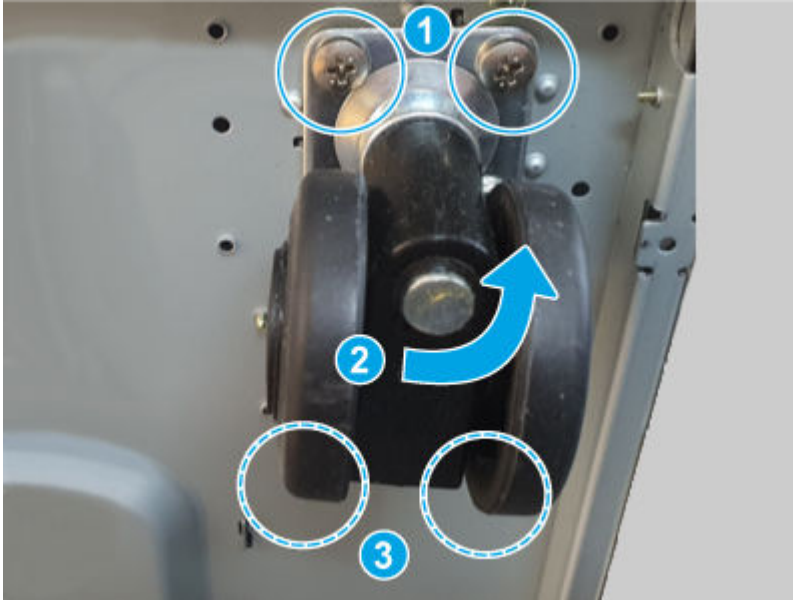
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the caster wheel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI caster wheel.

1. Remove the HCI from the printer.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two screws (callout 1).
 - b. Rotate the caster wheel (callout 2) out of the way, and then remove two screws (callout 3).
 - c. Remove the caster wheel.

Figure 6-1652 Remove the caster



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Holder wheel kit - guide adjust

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) holder wheel kit.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-225 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-04871A	Guide - adjust HCI

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

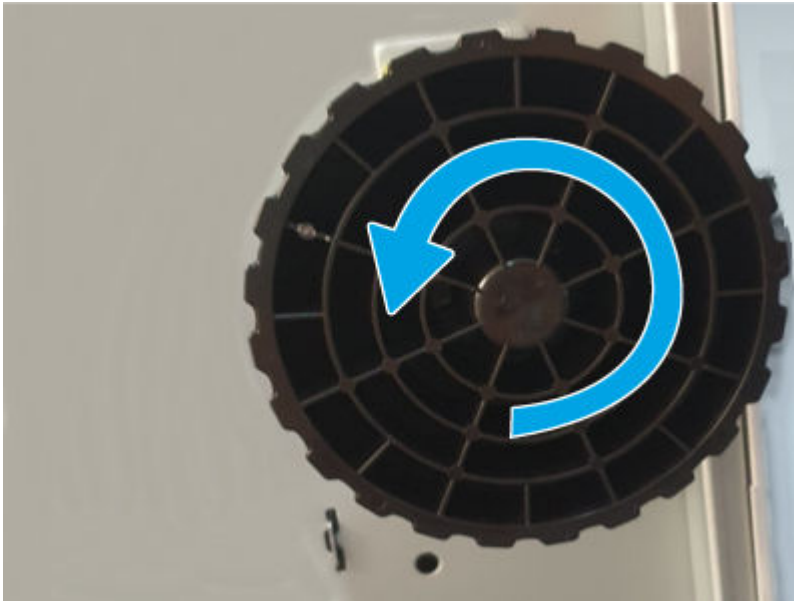
1. Remove the holder wheel kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI holder wheel kit.

1. Remove the HCI from the printer.

2. Turn the holder wheel counterclockwise to remove it.

Figure 6-1653 Remove the holder wheel



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the holder wheel mounting bracket.

Figure 6-1654 Remove the bracket



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Unit

Review the HCI unit parts removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) unit

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) unit.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-226 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW57-67001	HCI (Tray 4) unit
	NOTE: This is the whole unit replacement (WUR) part number.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

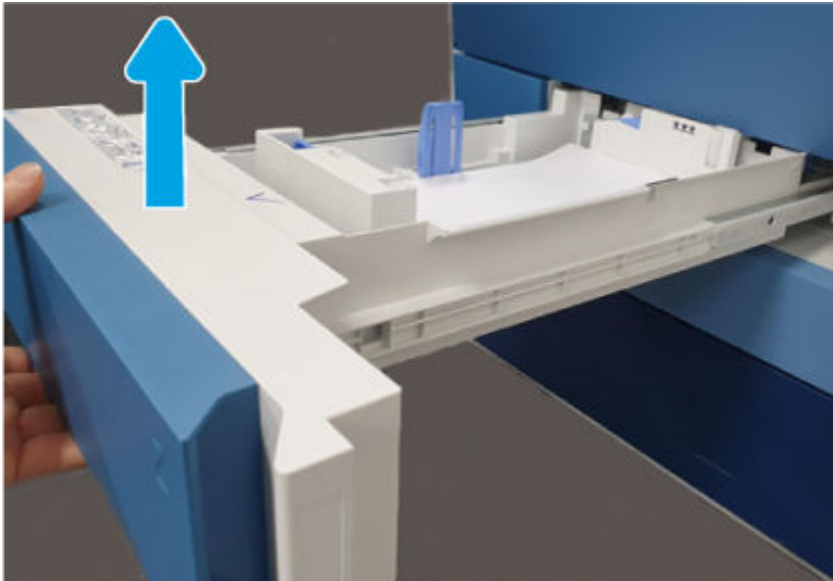
1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-1655 Remove the tray

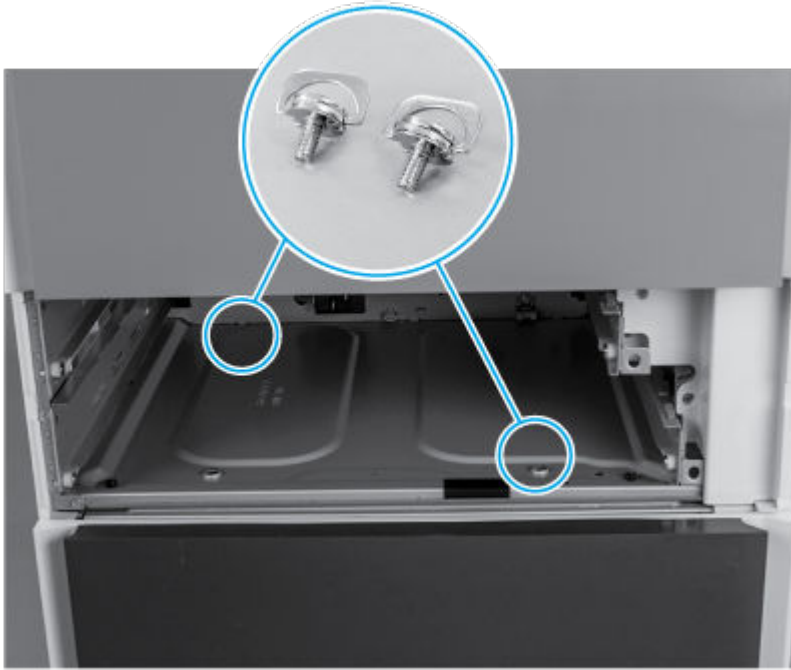


2. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI Tray 4 unit.

1. Remove two thumbscrews.

Figure 6-1656 Remove two thumbscrews



2. Lift the printer off of the HCI unit, and then use the install guide included with the replacement HCI to install it.

⚠ WARNING! The printer is heavy. HP recommends that four people lift the printer off of the HCI.

Figure 6-1657 Remove the HCI



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) cassette

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) cassette.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-227 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-61014	HCI (Tray 4) cassette

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

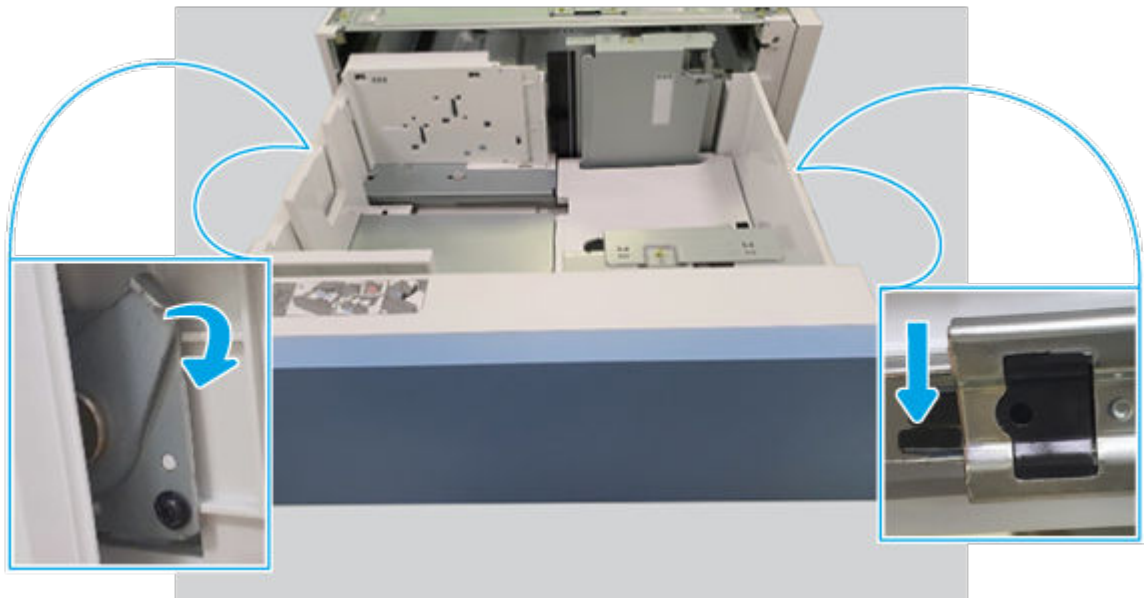
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1658 Remove the cassette



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) pickup assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the HCI from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-228 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK08-61013	HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

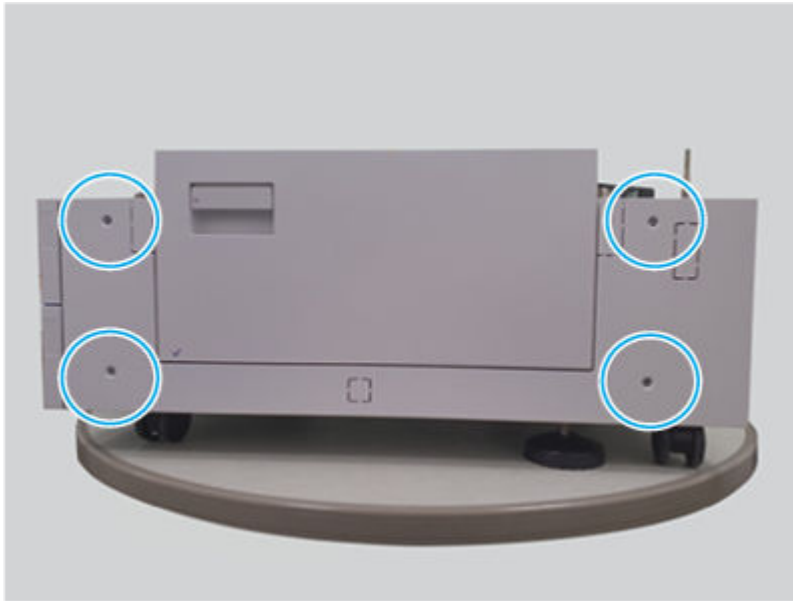
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1659 Remove the cover

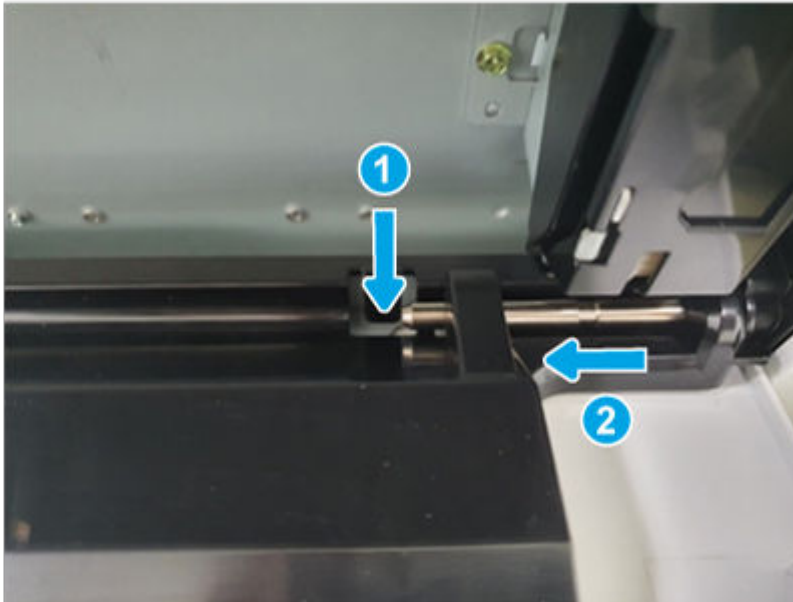


2. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door.


- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1660 Remove the door



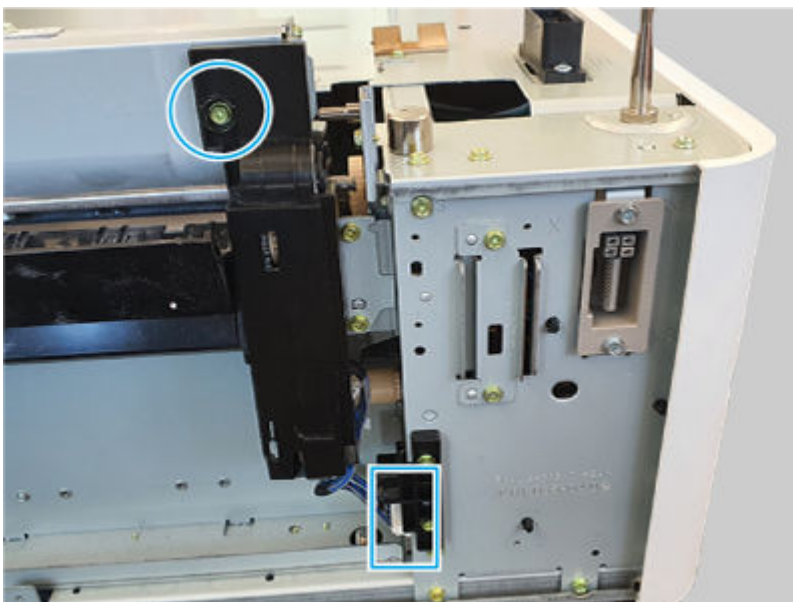
3. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI Tray 4 pickup assembly.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4 pickup assembly. The removal steps for the HCI Tray 4 pickup assembly are identical to the DCF pickup assembly.

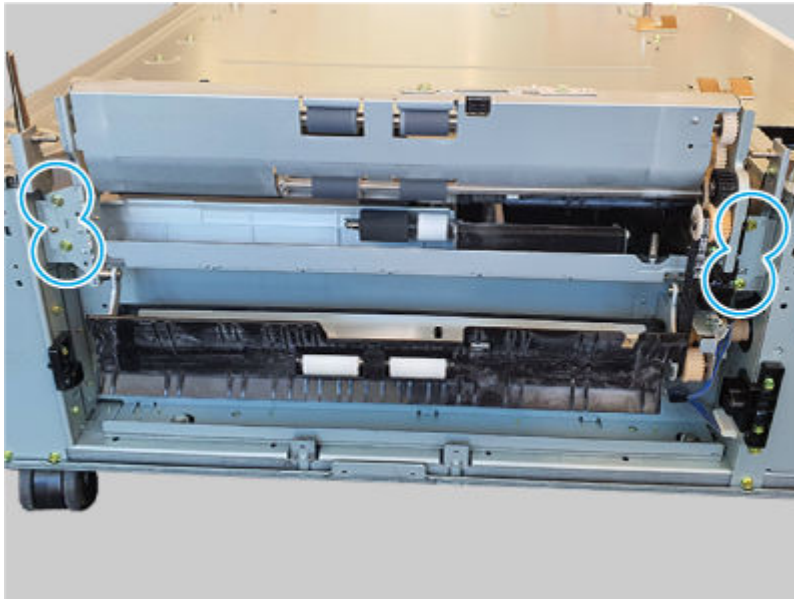
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1661 Disconnect connector and remove screws



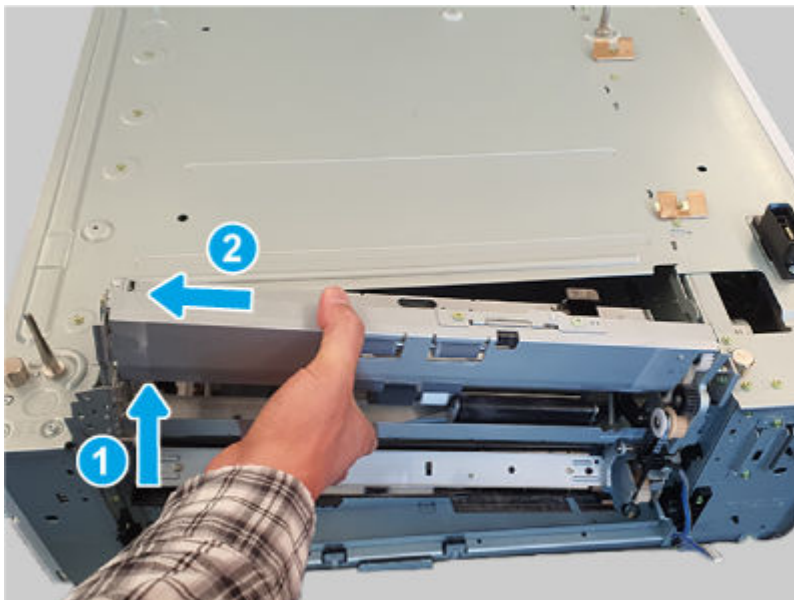
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1662 Remove four screws



3. Rotate the pickup assembly up (callout 1), and then out of the HCI (callout 2).

Figure 6-1663 Remove the assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Roller

Review the HCI roller removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) roller kit

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) Tray 4 rollers.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-229 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN66-67001	HCI Tray 4 roller kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

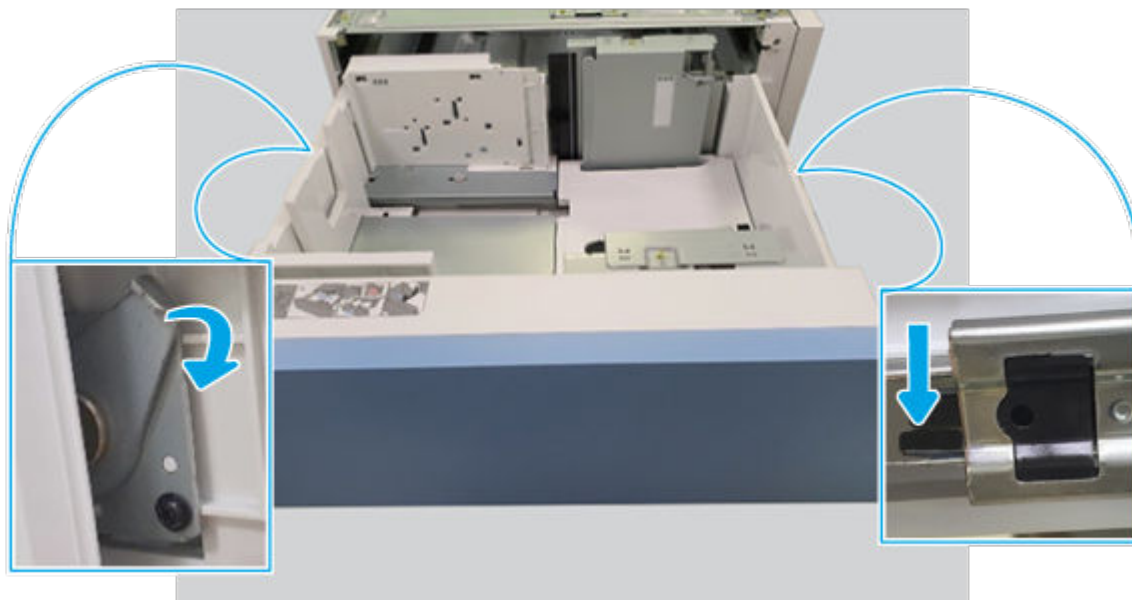
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.


- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1664 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the Tray 4, 5 rollers

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray rollers.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing the rollers is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

1. Inside the tray cavity, slide the return guide toward the front of the printer until it stops.


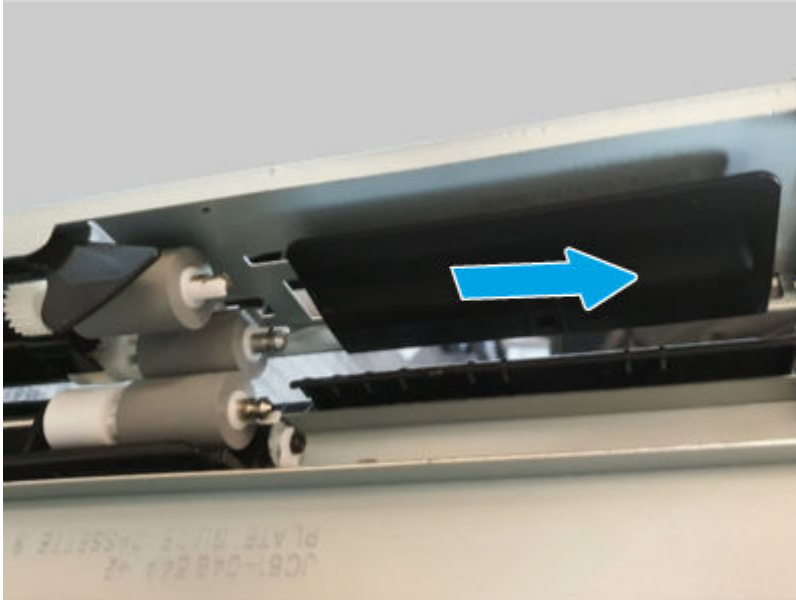
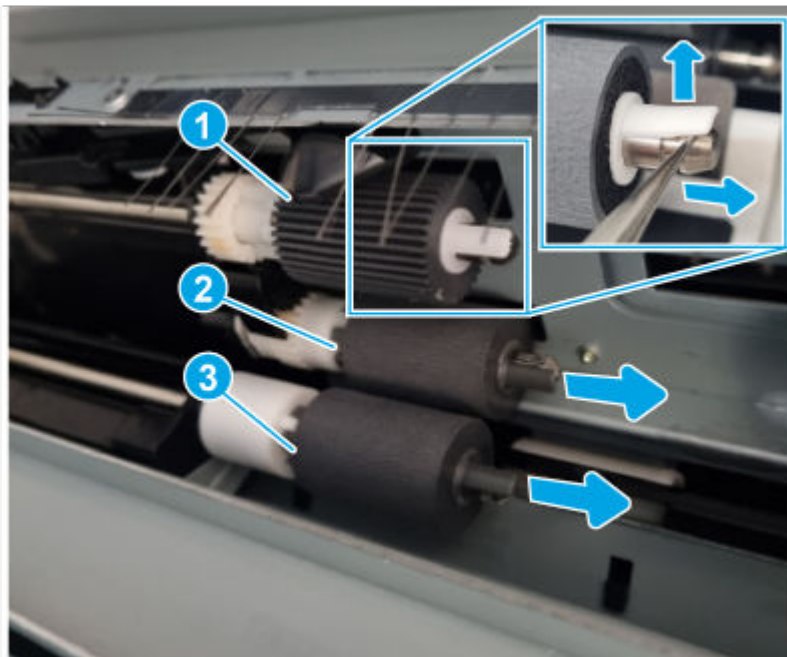
 **Reinstallation tip:** To prevent jams, make sure to slide the guide toward the rear of the printer after installing replacement rollers.

Figure 6-1665 Move the guide



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release the locking tab, and then slide the roller off the shaft to remove it.
 - Pickup roller: callout 1
 - Forward roller: callout 2
 - Reverse roller: callout 3

Figure 6-1666 Remove the rollers



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Motor

Review the HCI motor removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift and lift motors

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) shift lift motors.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-230 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00125A	Motor, geared (HCI (Tray4) shift motor)

Table 6-230 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
JC31-00109A	Motor, geared (HCI (Tray4) lift motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

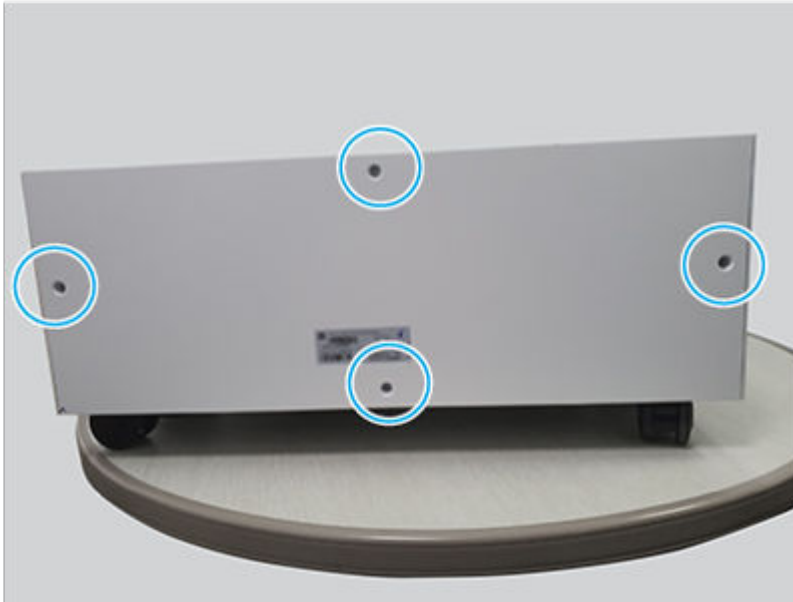
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1667 Remove the cover

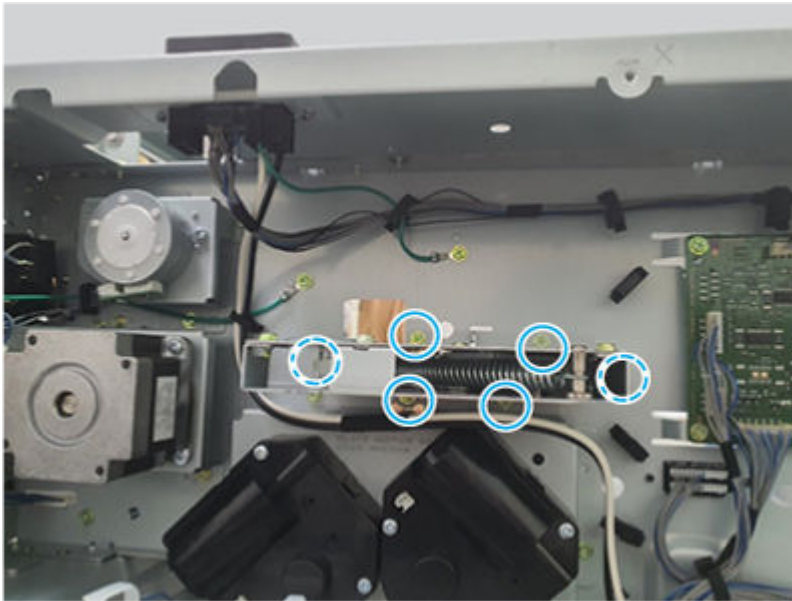


2. Remove the HCI shift and lift motors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI shift and lift motor.

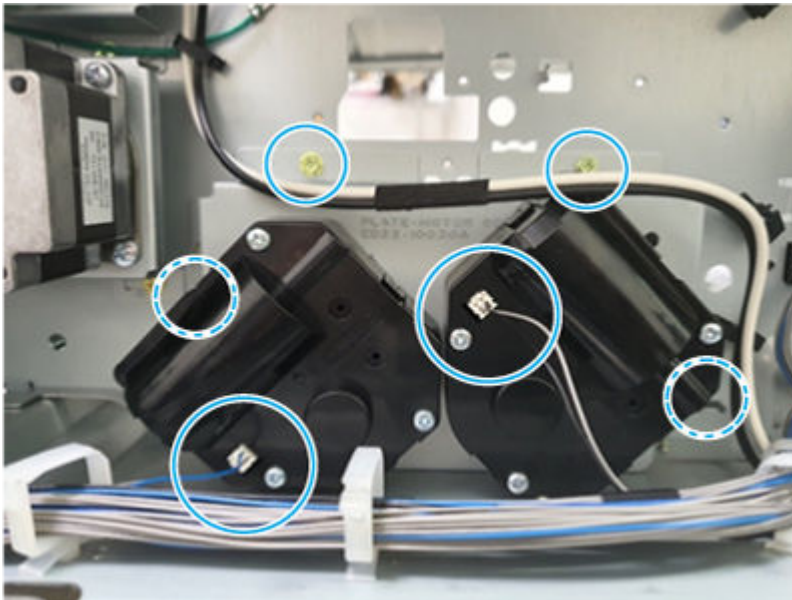
1. Remove six screws, and then remove the spring assembly (callout 1).

Figure 6-1668 Remove six screws



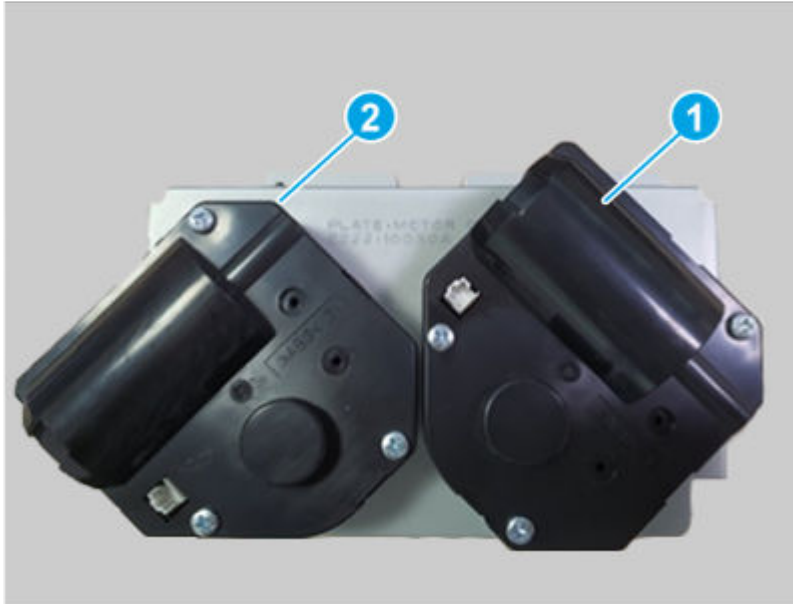
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the motors and mounting plate.

Figure 6-1669 Remove the motors



3. Locate the desired motor.
 - **Callout 1:** HCI (Tray 4) shift motor
 - **Callout 2:** HCI (Tray 4) lift motor (Tray 4 elevating motor)

Figure 6-1670 Locate the motor



4. Remove three screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-1671 Remove the motor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Shift plate

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) shift plate.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-231 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC81-07481B	Shift plate

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

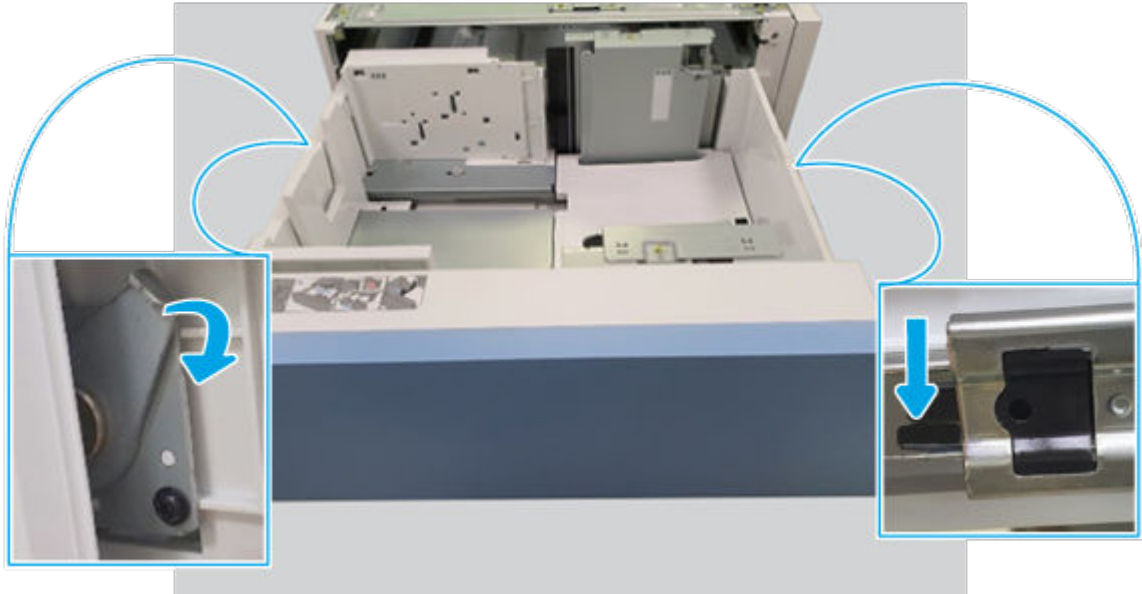
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1672 Remove the cassette

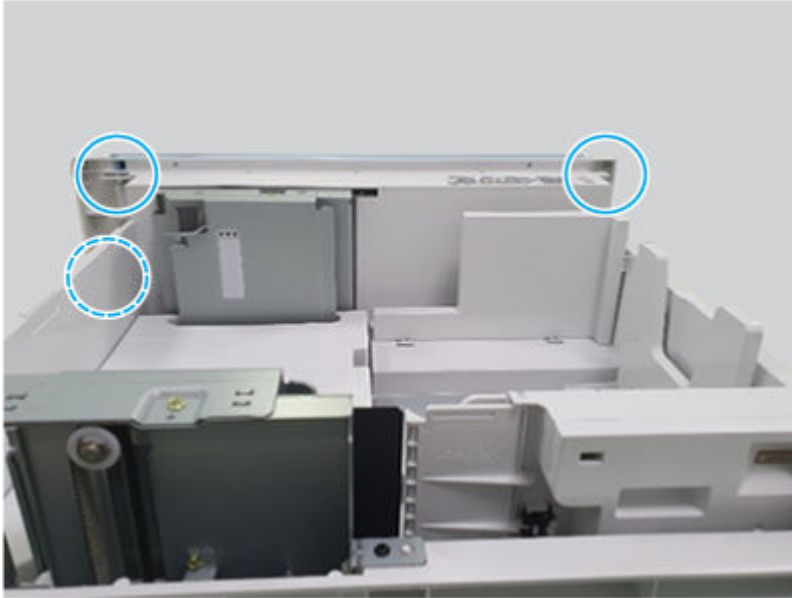


2. Remove the HCI shift plate

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI shift plate.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1673 Remove three screws



2. Turn the tray over, remove two screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1674 Remove two screws



3. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1675 Remove four screws



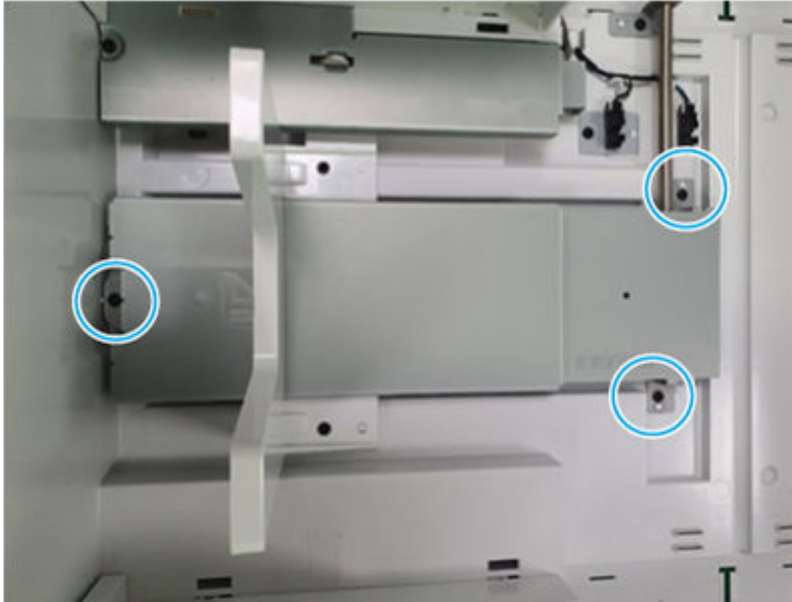
4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the knockup plate.

Figure 6-1676 Remove the plate



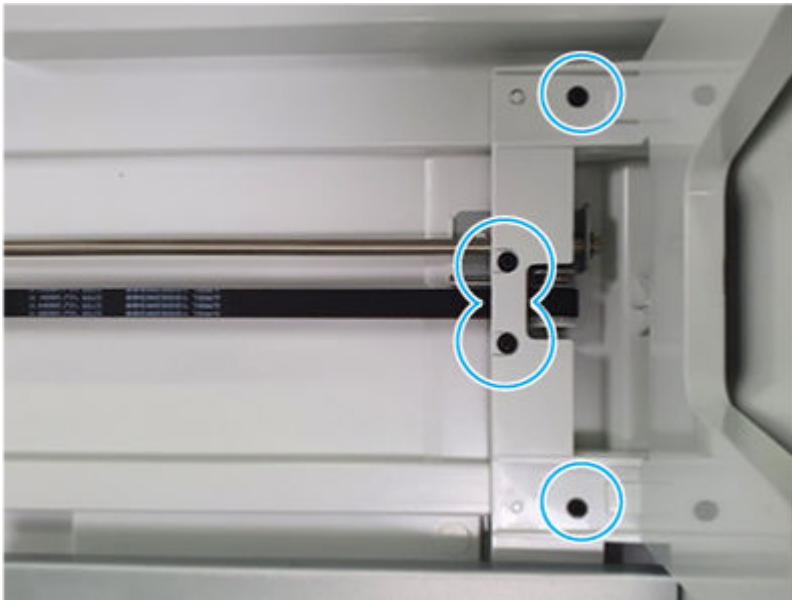
5. Remove three screws, and then remove the shift tray.

Figure 6-1677 Remove the shift tray



6. Remove four screws, and then remove the shift plate.

Figure 6-1678 Remove the plate



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Knockup plate assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) knockup plate.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-232 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW48-60003	Knockup plate

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

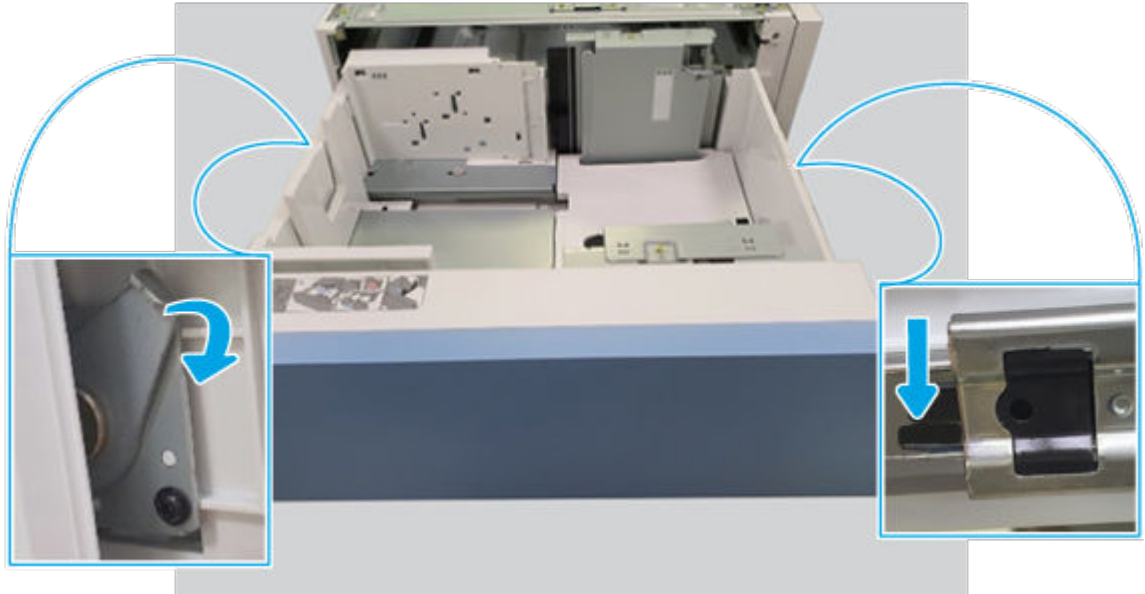
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1679 Remove the cassette

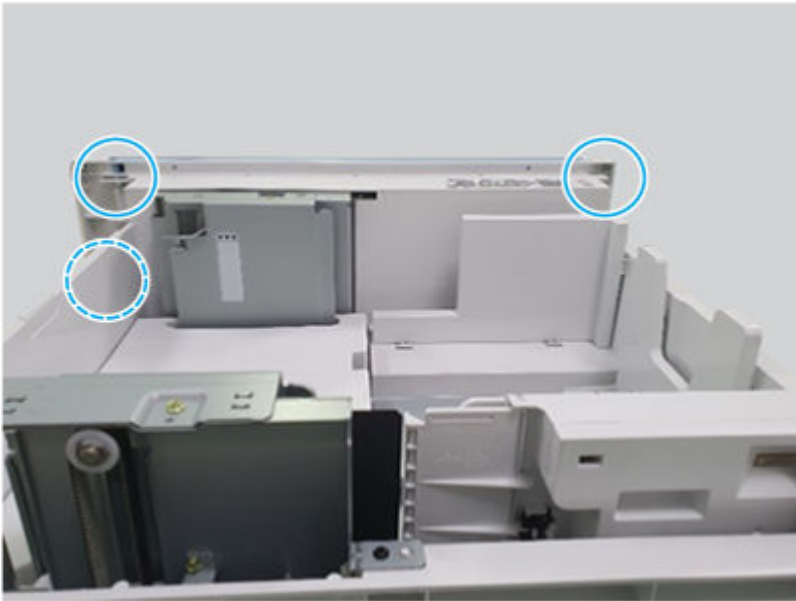


2. Remove the HCI knockup plate assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI knockup plate.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1680 Remove three screws



2. Turn the tray over, remove two screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1681 Remove two screws



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the knockup plate.

Figure 6-1682 Remove four screws



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper gate

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) paper gate.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-233 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC81-07478B	Paper gate

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

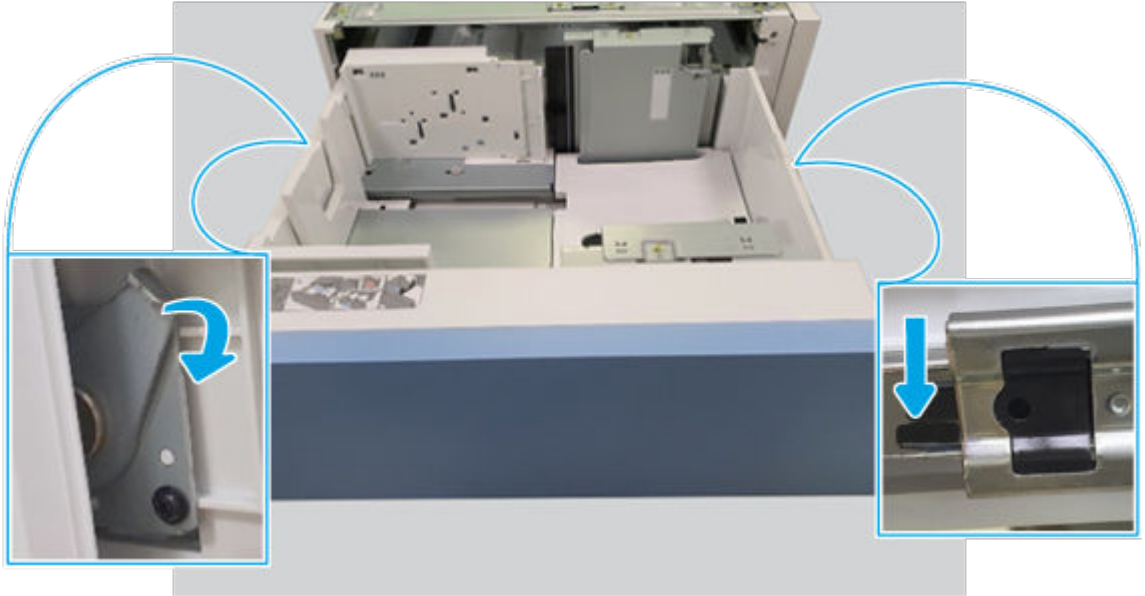
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1683 Remove the cassette

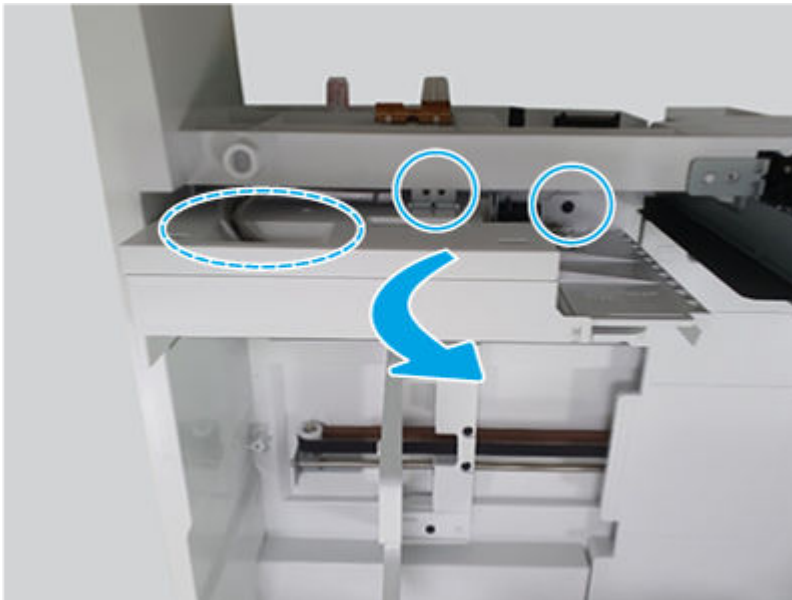


2. Remove the HCI paper gate

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI paper gate.

1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then pull the assembly up to gain access to it.

Figure 6-1684 Access the assembly



2. Remove one spring, and then remove the paper gate.


Figure 6-1685 Remove the paper gate



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) feed motor drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) feed motor drive assembly.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-234 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01114A	HCI (Tray 4) feed motor drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1686 Remove the cover

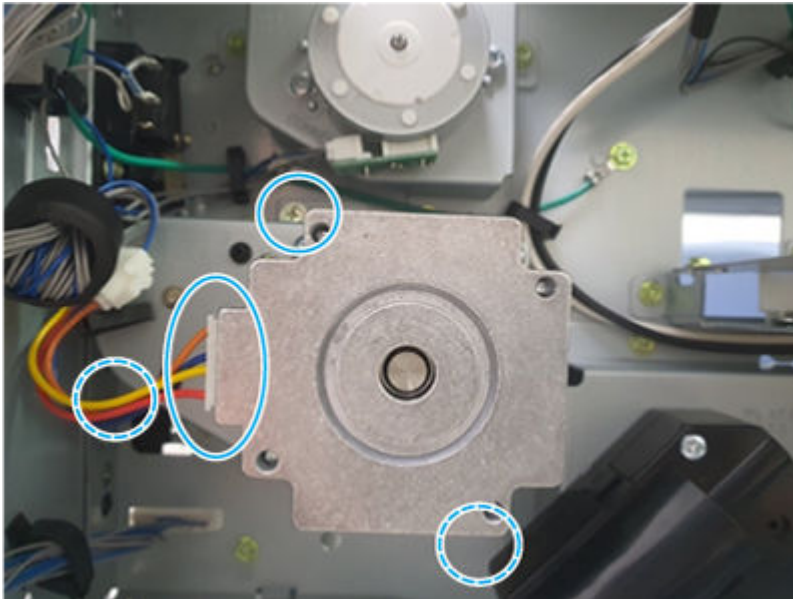


2. Remove the HCI feed motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI feed motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the feed motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-1687 Remove the assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) pickup motor drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) pickup motor drive assembly.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-235 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01115A	HCI (Tray 4) pickup motor drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1688 Remove the cover

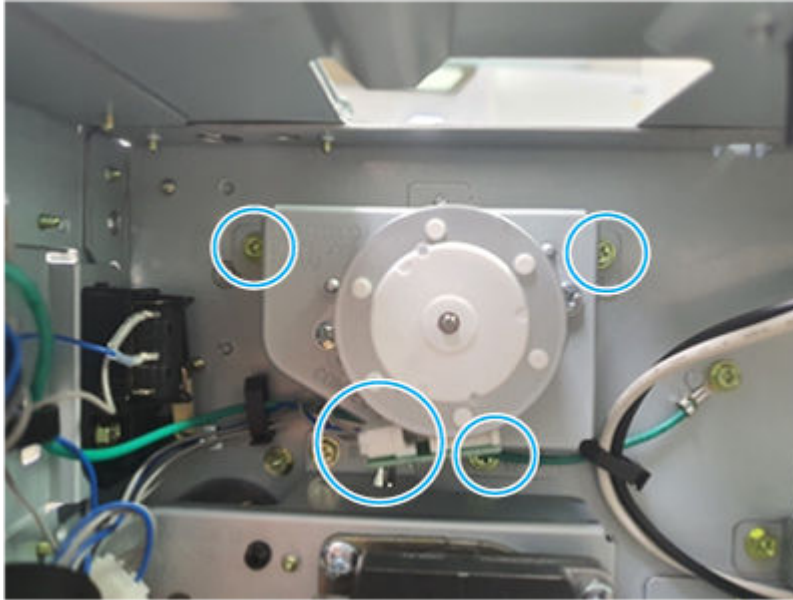


2. Remove the HCI pickup motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI pickup motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the pickup motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-1689 Remove the assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift gate solenoid

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) shift gate solenoid.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-236 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting (HCI (Tray 4) shift gate solenoid)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

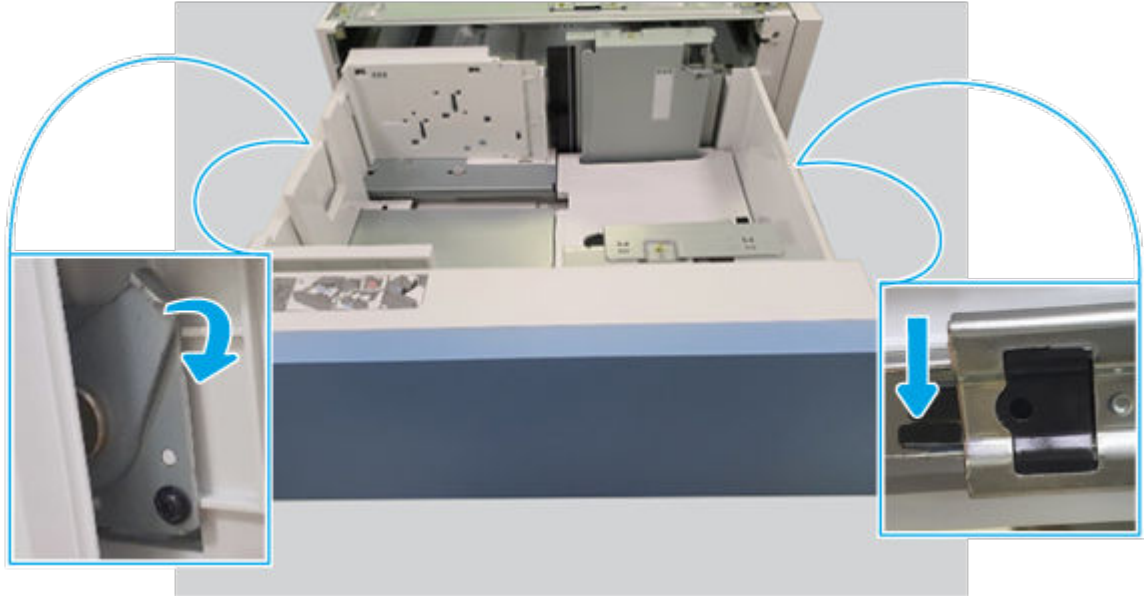
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1690 Remove the cassette

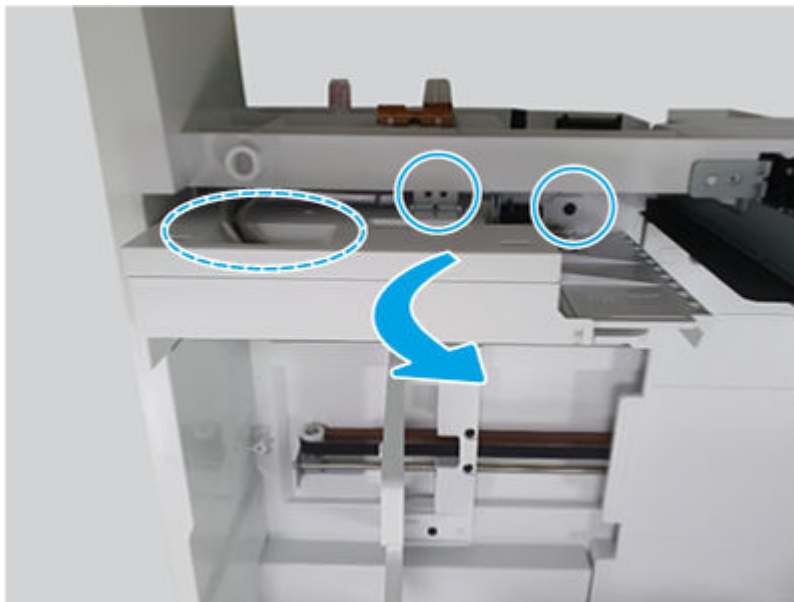


Remove the HCI shift gate solenoid

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI shift gate solenoid.

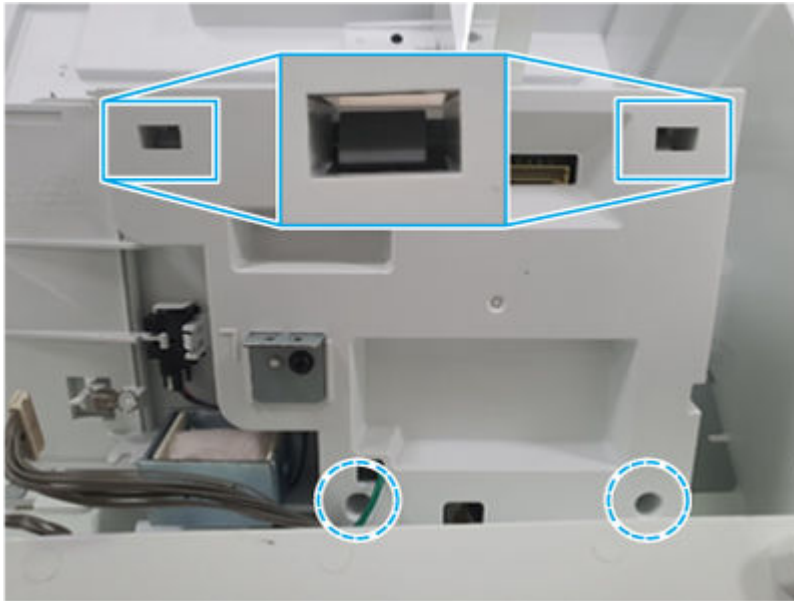
1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then pull the assembly up to gain access to it.

Figure 6-1691 Access the assembly



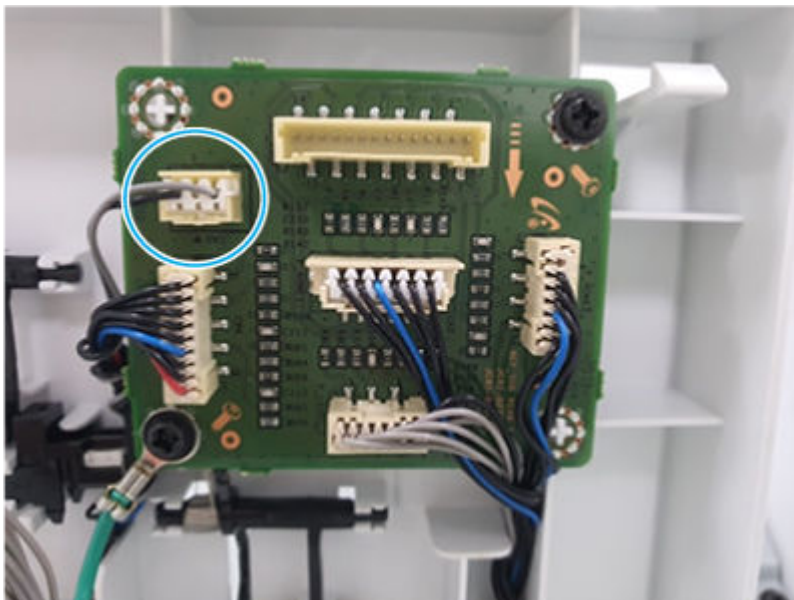
2. Remove two screws, release two hooks, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1692 Remove the cover



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1693 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove two screws, and then remove the shift gate solenoid (behind the panel).


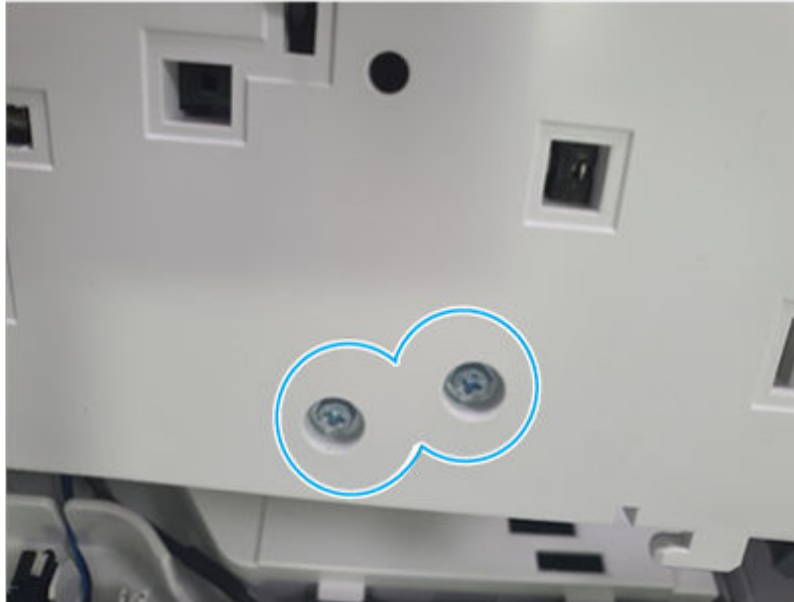
 **NOTE:** Release the solenoid wire harness as needed.

Figure 6-1694 Remove the solenoid



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Sensor

Review the HCI sensor removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Prefeed 4 sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) prefeed 4 sensor.



NOTE: Remove the HCI from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-237 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (prefeed 4 sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

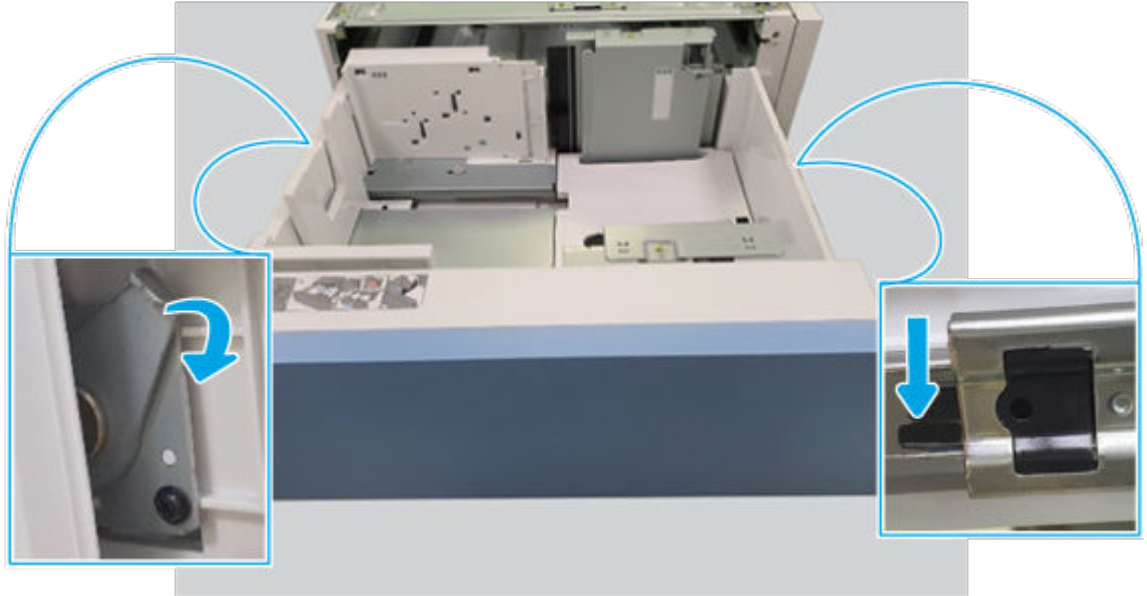
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1695 Remove the cassette

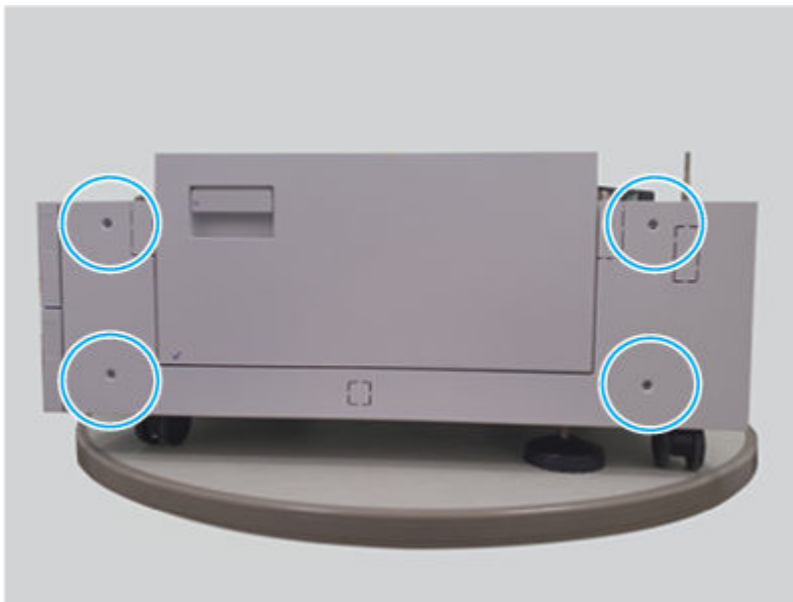


2. Remove the HCl (Tray 4) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCl right cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1696 Remove the cover

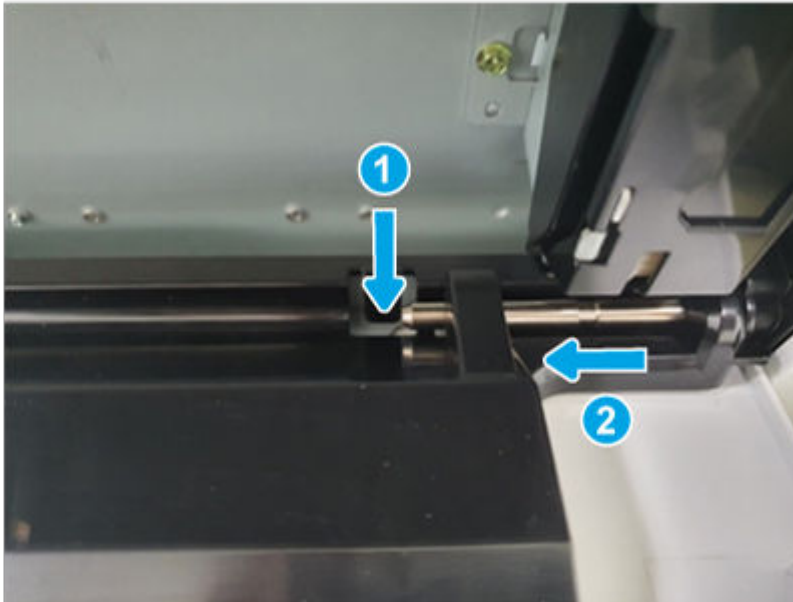


3. Remove the HCl (Tray 4) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCl right door.


- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1697 Remove the door



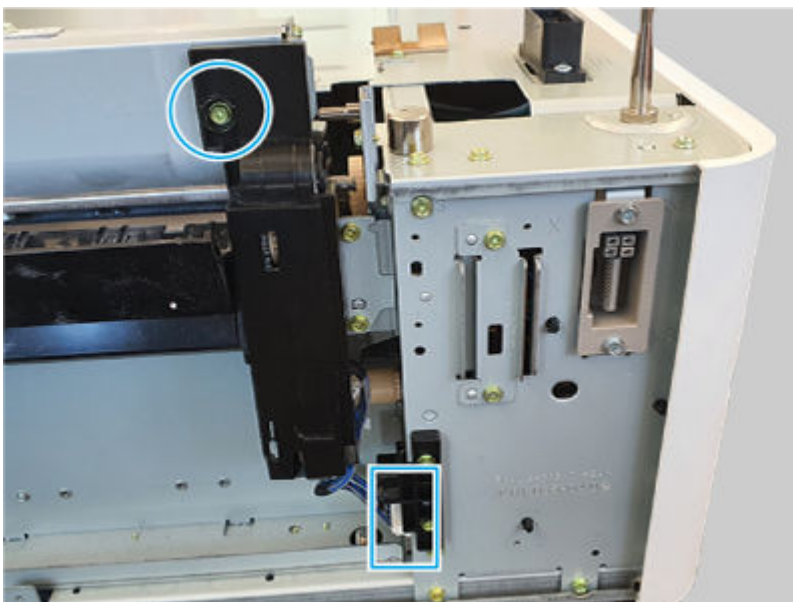
4. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI Tray 4 pickup assembly.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4 pickup assembly. The removal steps for the HCI Tray 4 pickup assembly are identical to the DCF pickup assembly.

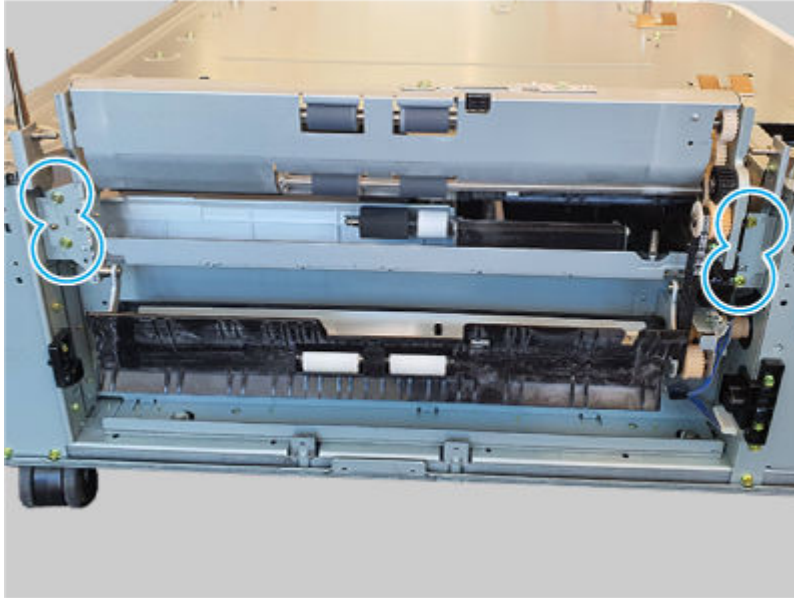
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1698 Disconnect connector and remove screws



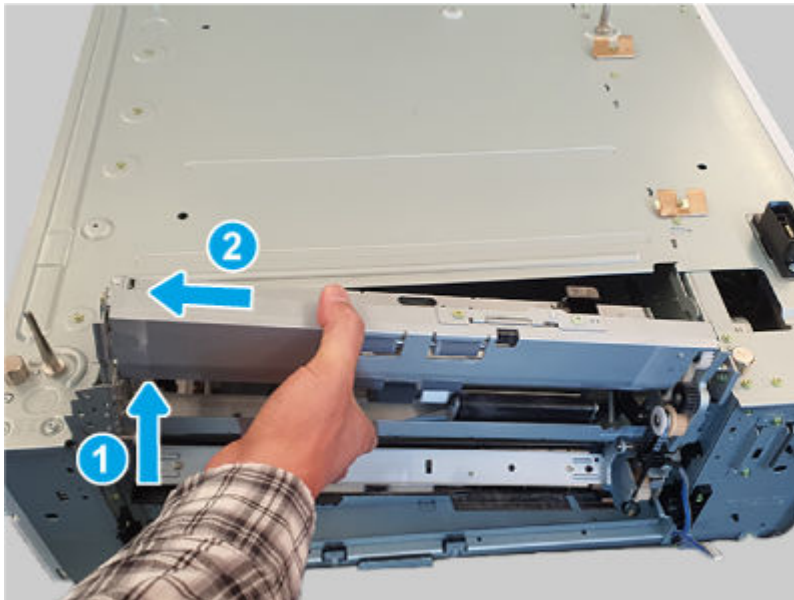
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1699 Remove four screws



3. Rotate the pickup assembly up (callout 1), and then out of the HCI (callout 2).

Figure 6-1700 Remove the assembly



5. Remove the Tray 4 prefeed sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI Tray 4 prefeed sensor.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1701 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2) to remove the Tray 4 prefeed sensor.

Figure 6-1702 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) feed sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) feed sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the HCI from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-238 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) feed sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

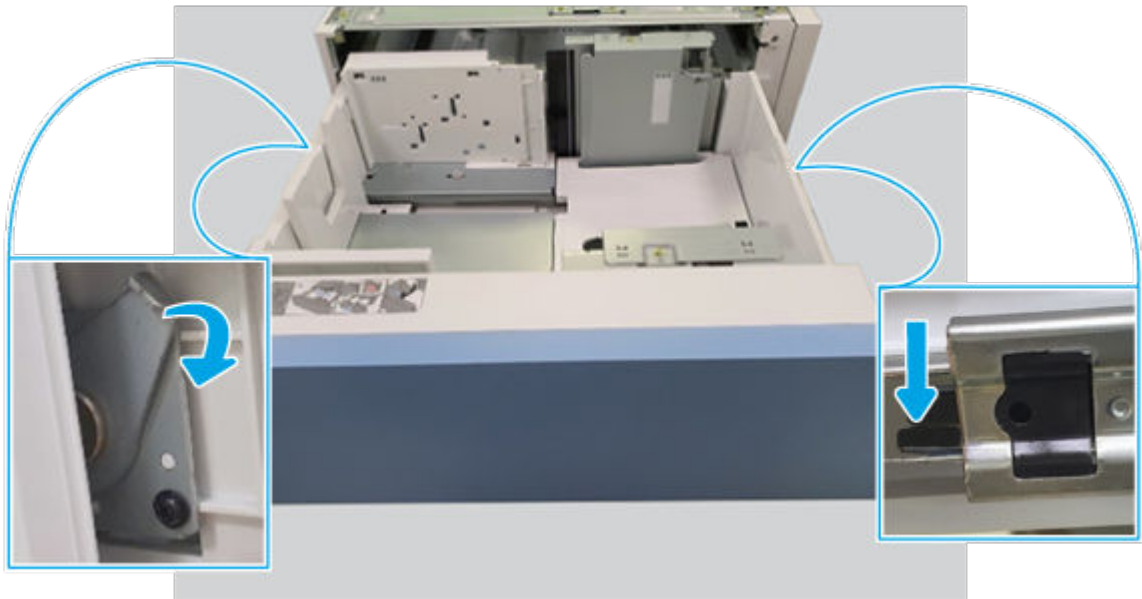
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1703 Remove the cassette

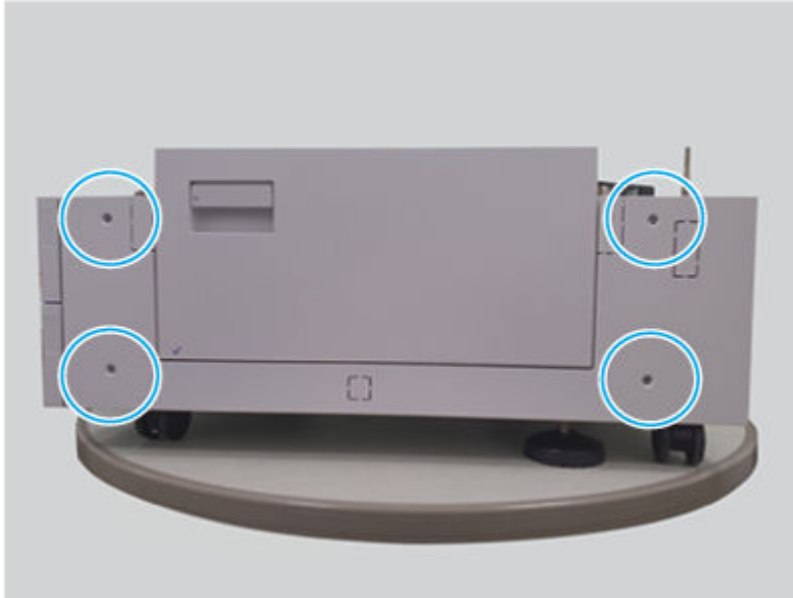


2. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1704 Remove the cover

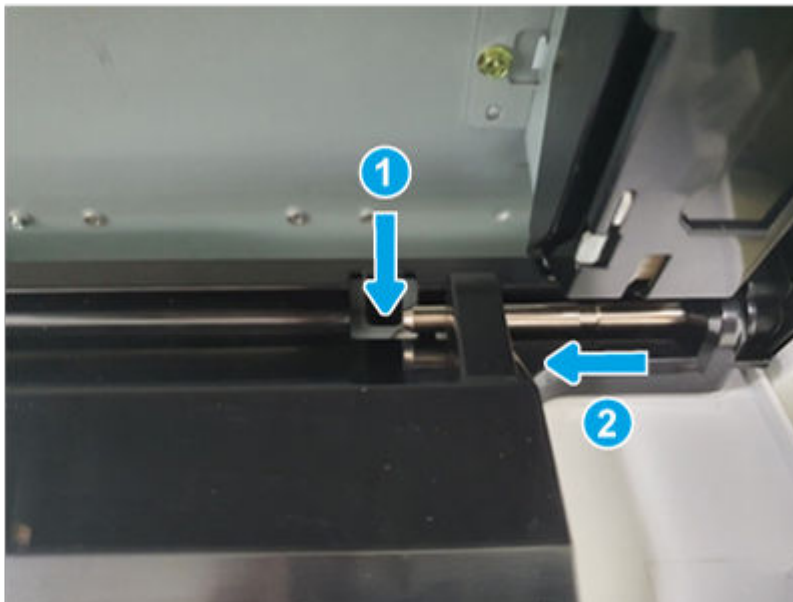


3. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door.


- Push down on the hook (callout 1), slide the pin (callout 2) as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1705 Remove the door



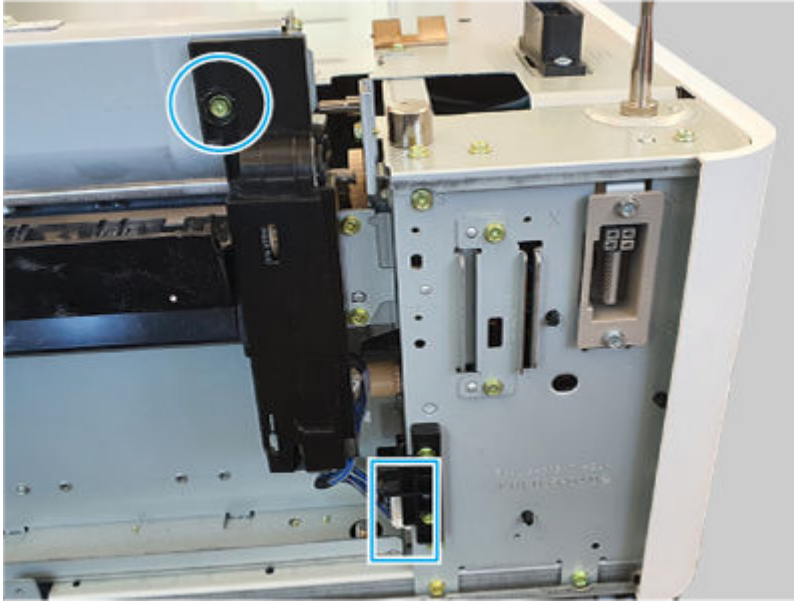
4. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI Tray 4 pickup assembly.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4 pickup assembly. The removal steps for the HCI Tray 4 pickup assembly are identical to the DCF pickup assembly.

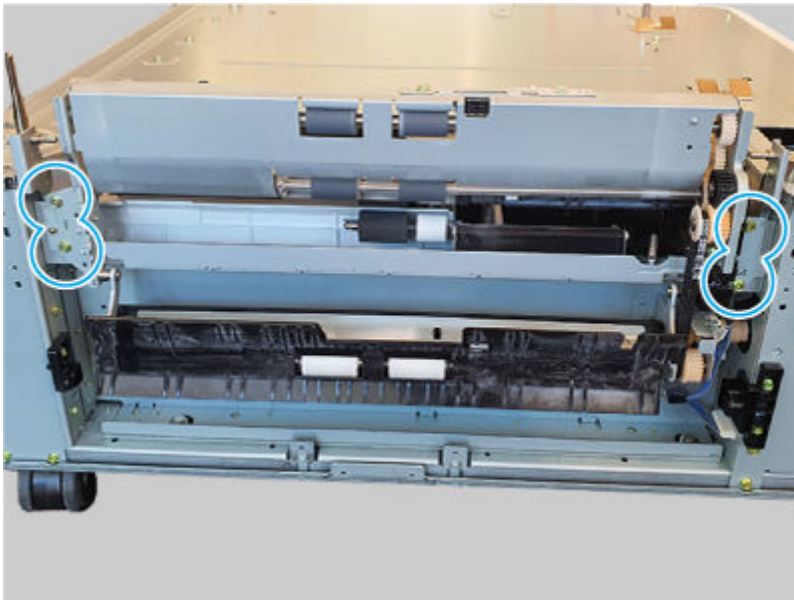
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1706 Disconnect connector and remove screws



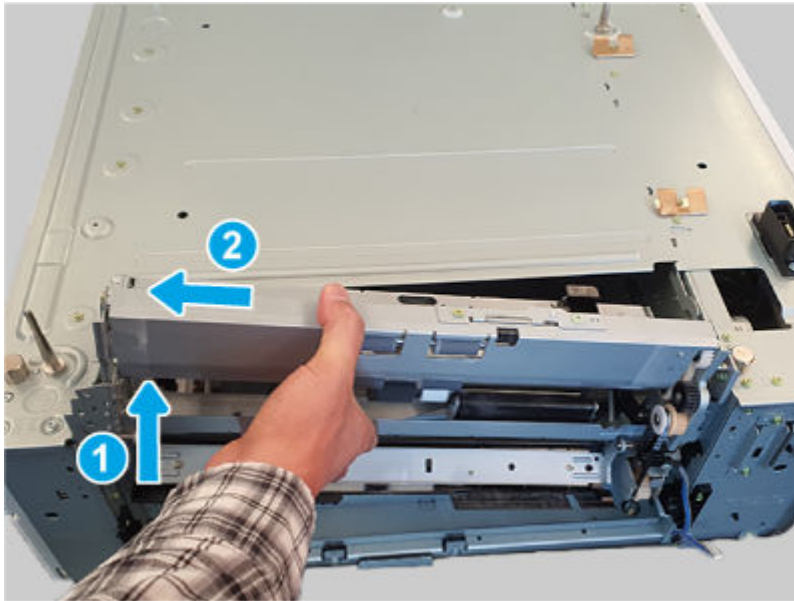
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1707 Remove four screws



3. Rotate the pickup assembly up (callout 1), and then out of the HCI (callout 2).

Figure 6-1708 Remove the assembly

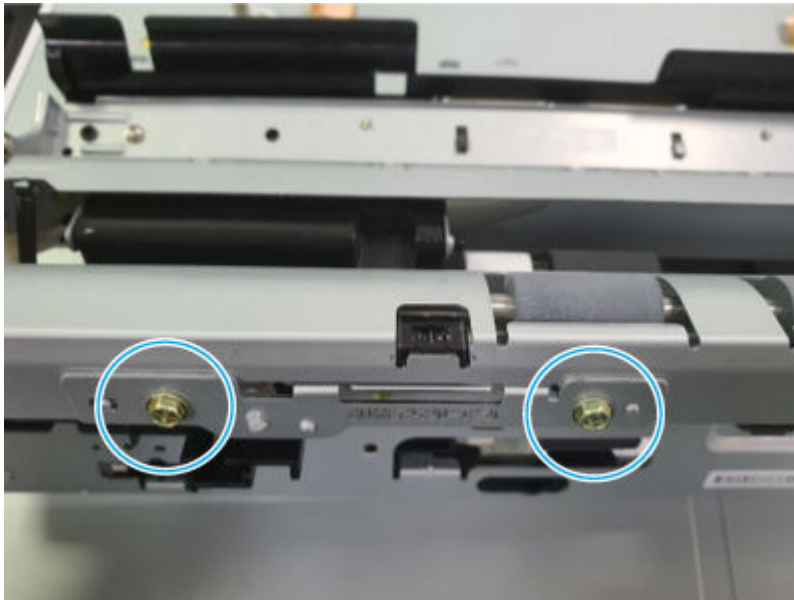


5. Remove the HCI feed sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI feed sensor.

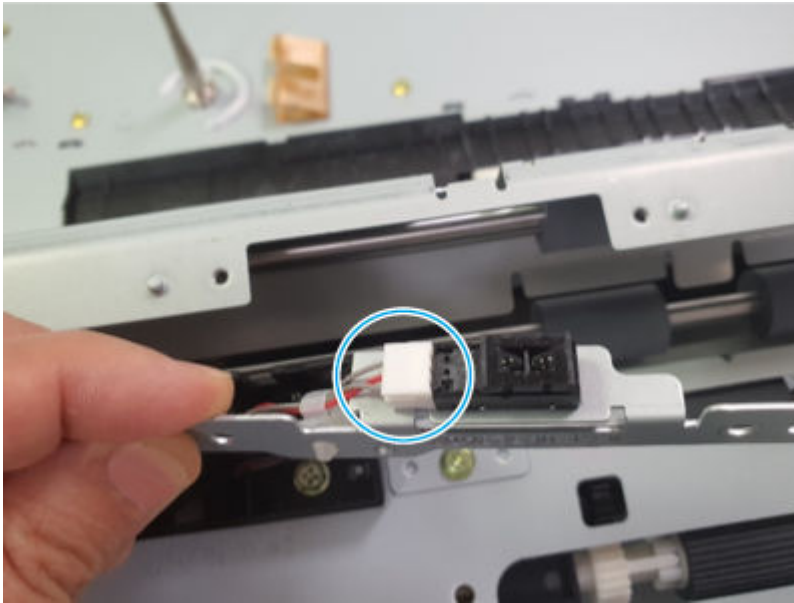
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1709 Remove two screws



2. Turn the assembly over, disconnect one connector, and then remove the HCI feed sensor.

Figure 6-1710 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) paper empty and stack height sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) Tray 4 paper empty and stack height sensors.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-239 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI Tray 4 paper empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI Tray 4 paper stack height sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

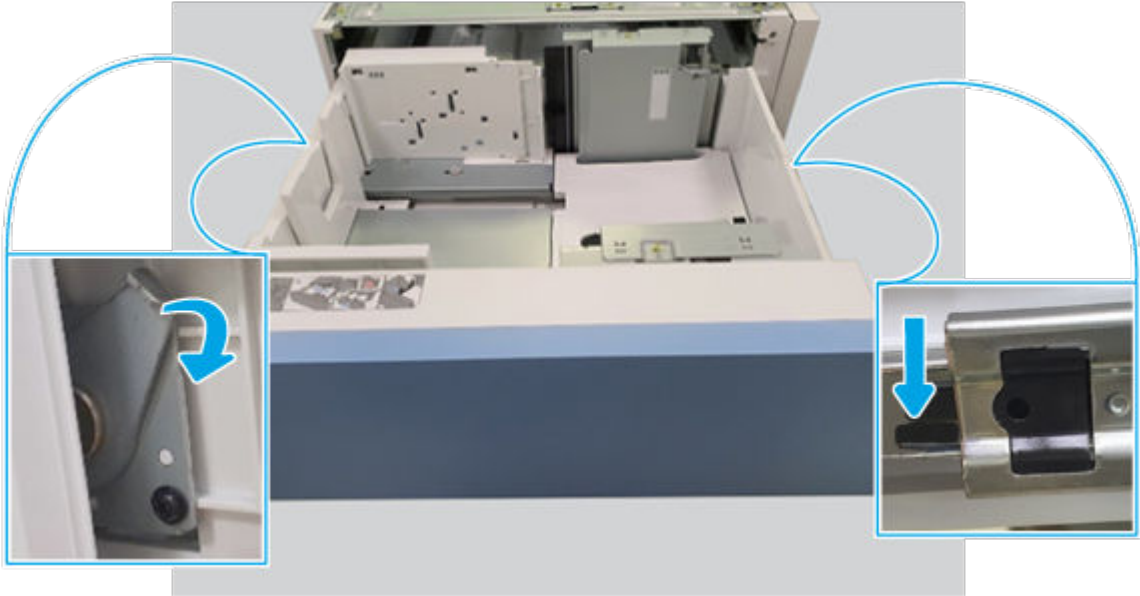
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1711 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the Tray 4 paper empty and stack height sensors

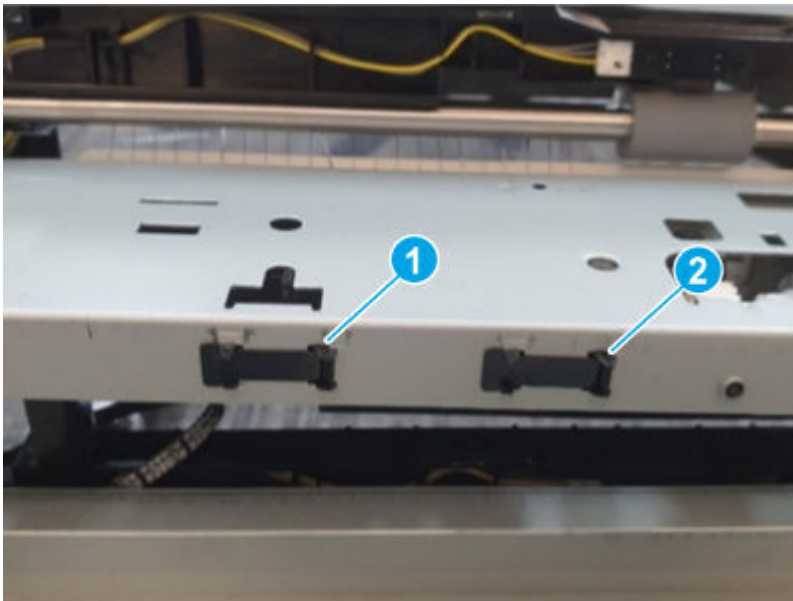
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCL tray paper empty and stack height sensors.



NOTE: The procedure for removing the paper empty sensor or the paper stack height sensor is the same for both sensors.

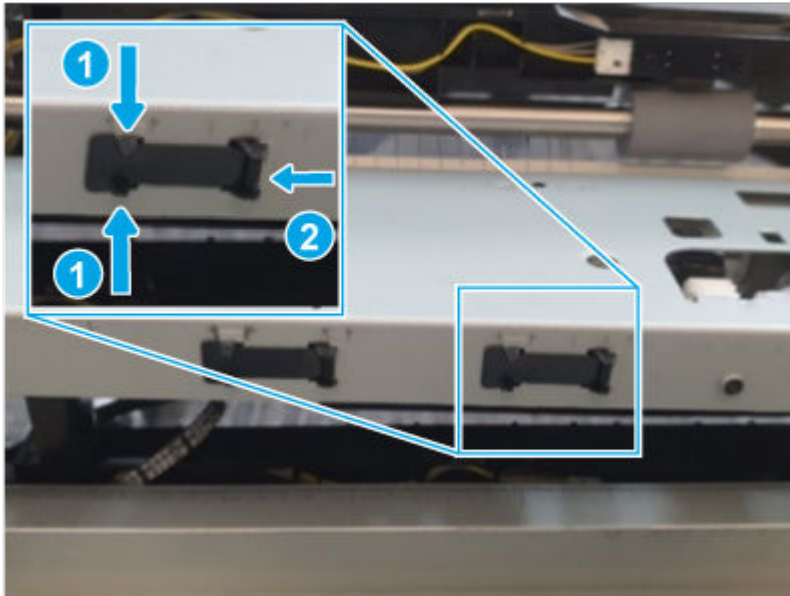
1. Locate the desired sensor to remove (on the Tray 4 pickup assembly).
 - **Callout 1:** Tray 4 paper stack height sensor
 - **Callout 2:** Tray 4 paper empty sensor

Figure 6-1712 Locate the sensor



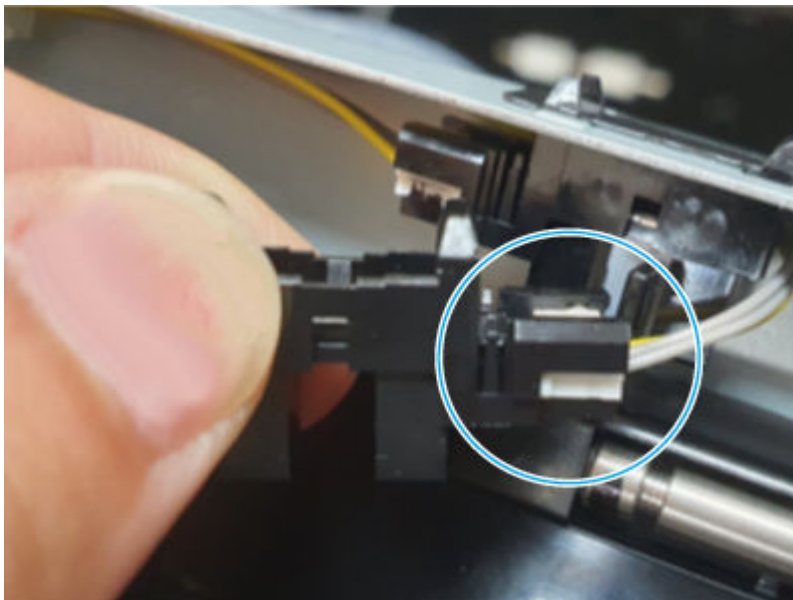
2. Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
 - Release the sensor.

Figure 6-1713 Release the sensor



3. Disconnect one connector to remove the sensor.

Figure 6-1714 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) knockup home and shift tray end sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) knockup home sensor.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-240 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) knockup home sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) shift tray end sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

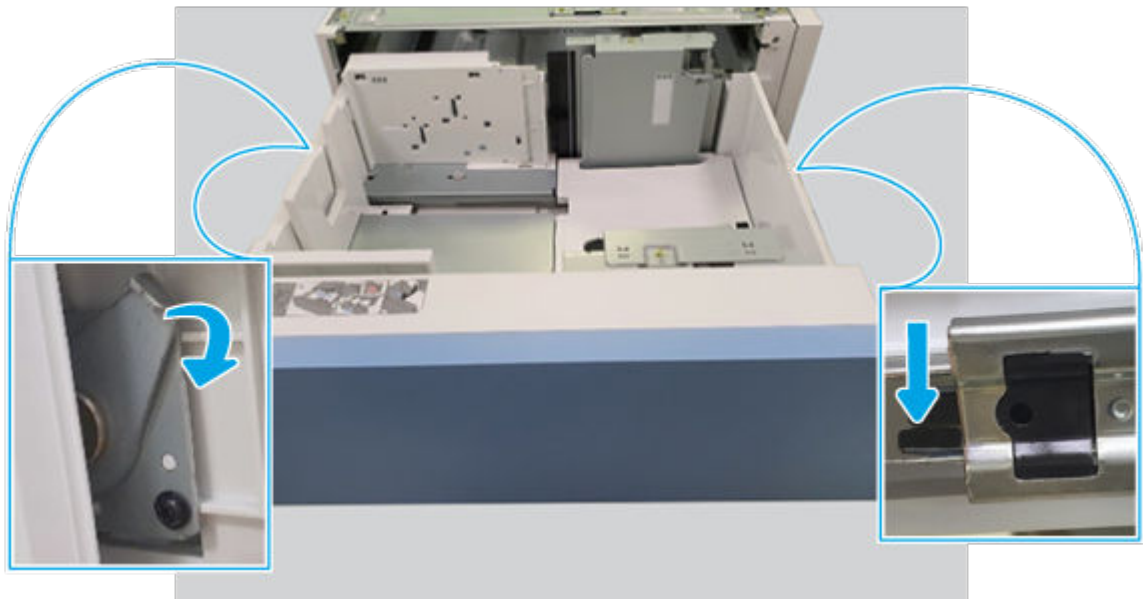
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1715 Remove the cassette

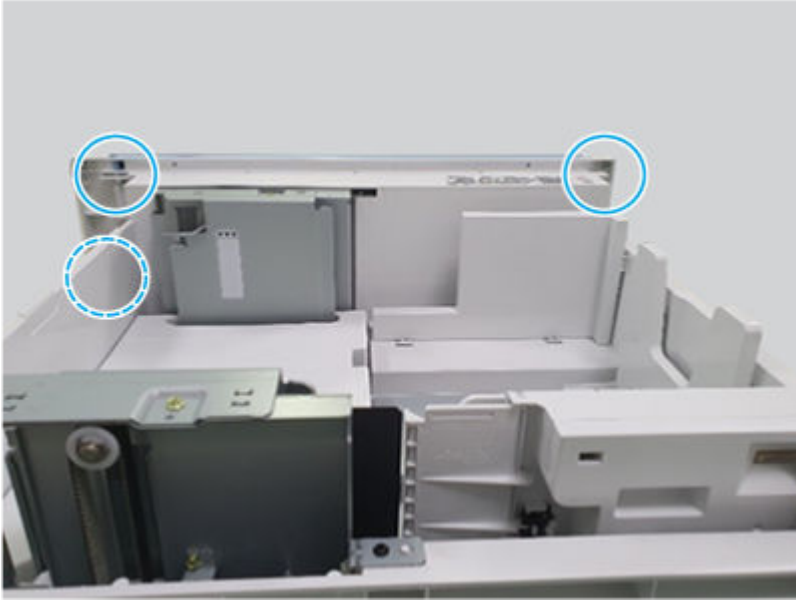


2. Remove the HCI knockup home and shift tray end sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI knockup home and shift tray end sensors.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1716 Remove three screws



2. Turn the tray over, remove two screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1717 Remove two screws



3. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1718 Remove four screws



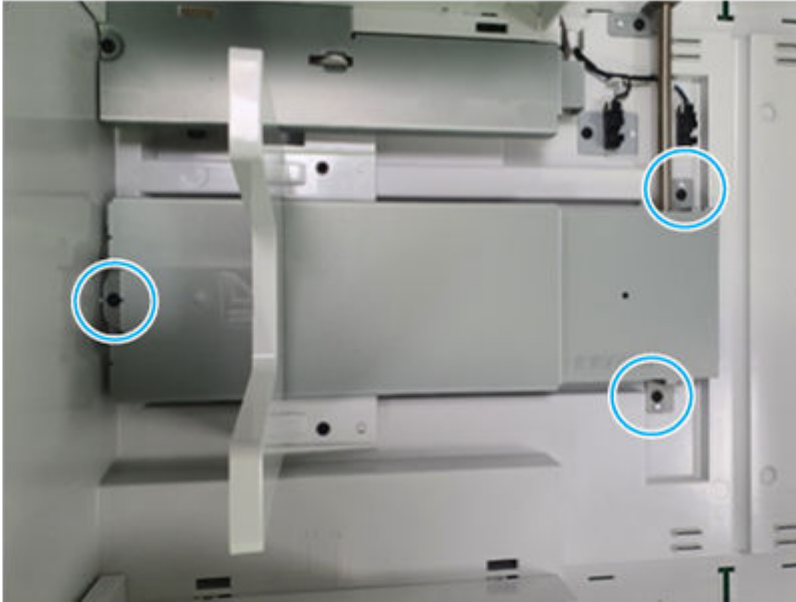
4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the knockup plate.

Figure 6-1719 Remove the plate



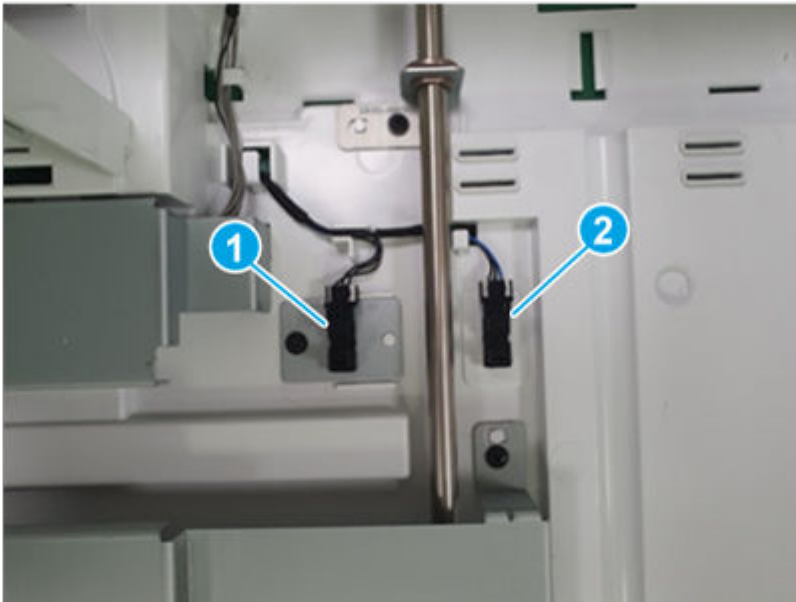
5. Remove three screws, and then remove the shift tray.

Figure 6-1720 Remove the shift tray



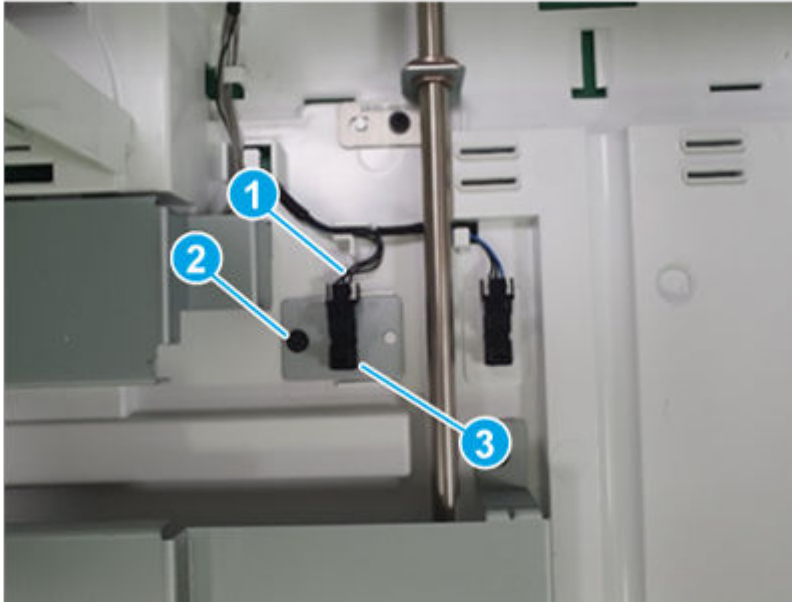
6. Locate the desired sensor to remove.
 - **Callout 1:** HCI shift tray end sensor
 - **Callout 2:** HCI knockup home sensor

Figure 6-1721 Locate the sensor



7. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the sensor (callout 3).

Figure 6-1722 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 1 and 2

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) shift tray level sensor 1 and 2.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-241 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) shift tray level sensor 1)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) shift tray level sensor 2)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

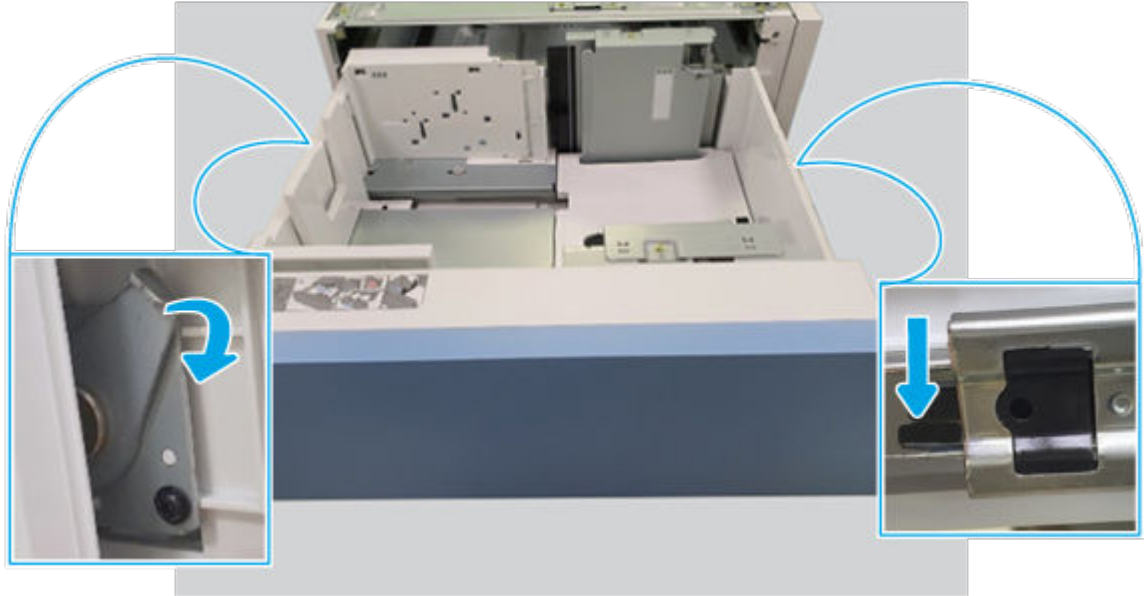
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1723 Remove the cassette

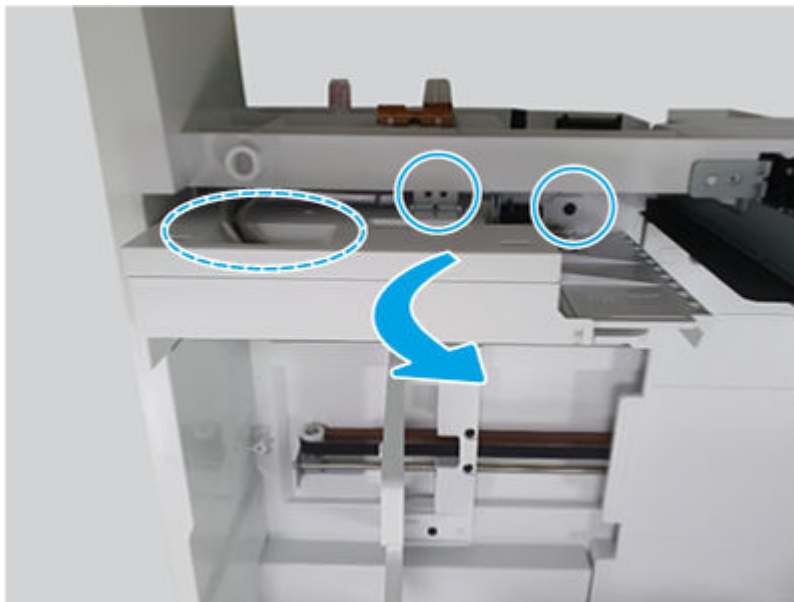


2. Remove the HCI shift tray level sensor 1 and 2

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI shift tray level sensor 1 and 2.

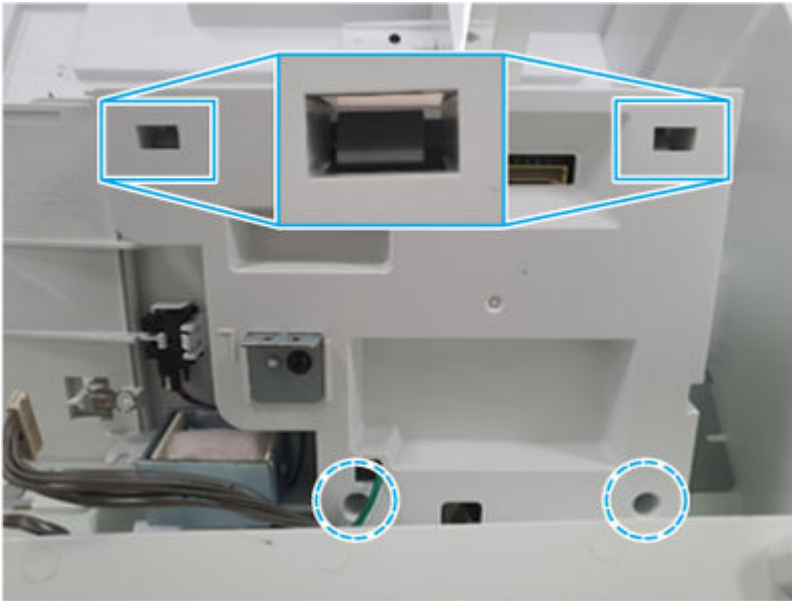
1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then pull the assembly up to gain access to it..

Figure 6-1724 Access the assembly



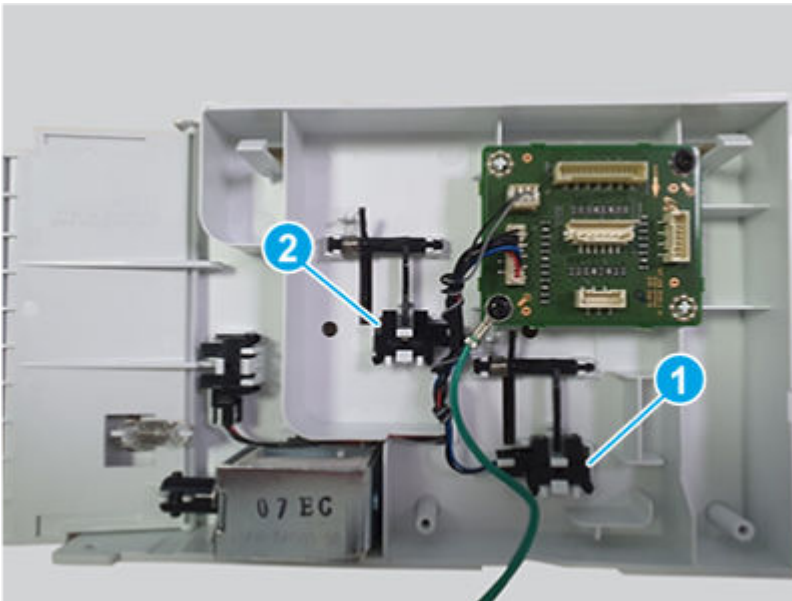
2. Remove two screws, release two hooks, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1725 Remove the cover



3. Locate the desired sensor to remove.
 - **Callout 1:** HCI (Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 1
 - **Callout 2:** HCI (Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 1r

Figure 6-1726 Locate the sensor



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the shift tray level sensor (callout 2).


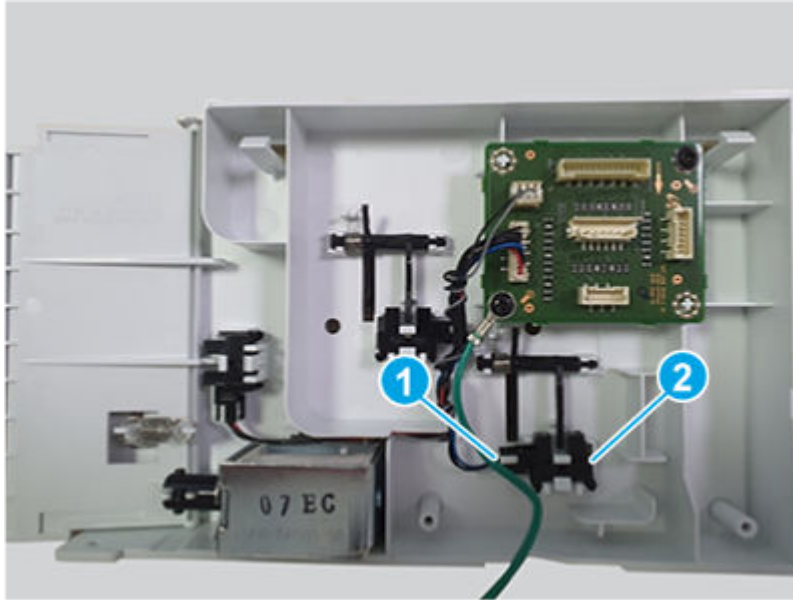
 **NOTE:** Removing the shift tray level sensor 1 is shown below.

Figure 6-1727 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift tray empty and home sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) shift tray empty sensor.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-242 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) shift tray empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) shift tray home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

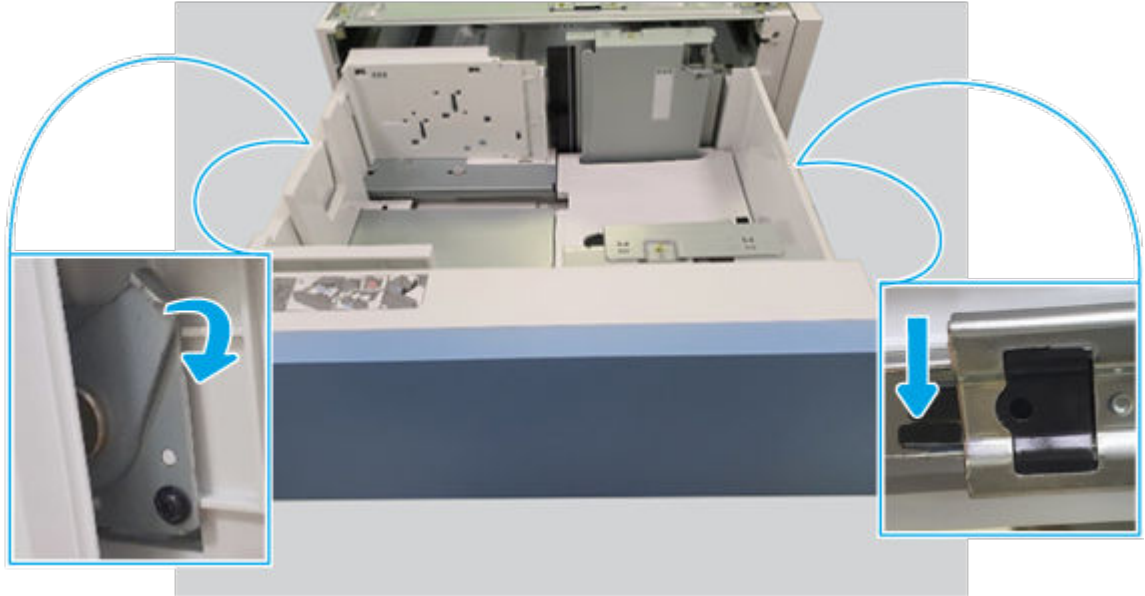
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1728 Remove the cassette

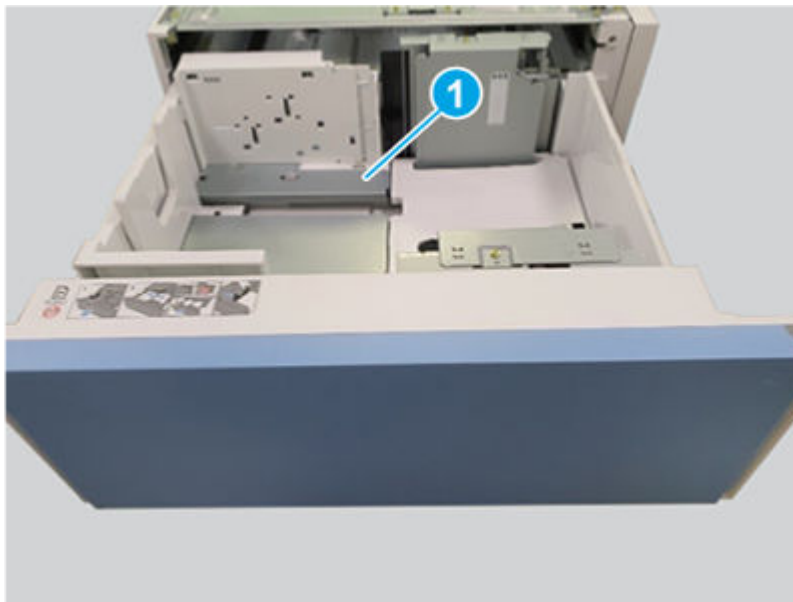


2. Remove the HCI shift tray empty and home sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI shift tray empty and home sensors.

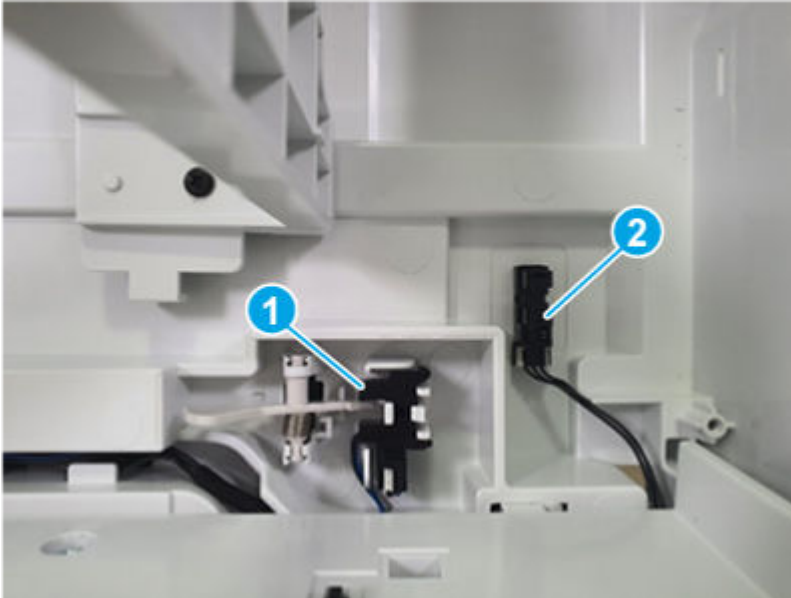
1. Remove one sheet-metal plate (callout 1).

Figure 6-1729 Remove the plate



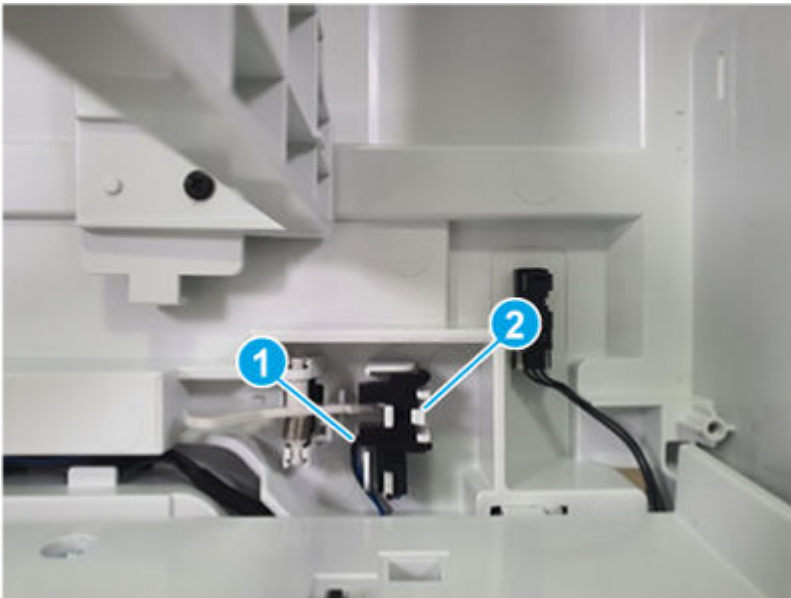
2. Locate the sensor.
 - **Callout 1:** Shift tray empty sensor
 - **Callout 2:** Shift tray home sensor

Figure 6-1730 Locate the sensor



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the shift tray empty sensor (callout 2). Repeat this step for the shift tray home sensor if necessary.

Figure 6-1731 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) tray open sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) tray open sensor.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-243 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) tray open sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1732 Remove the cover

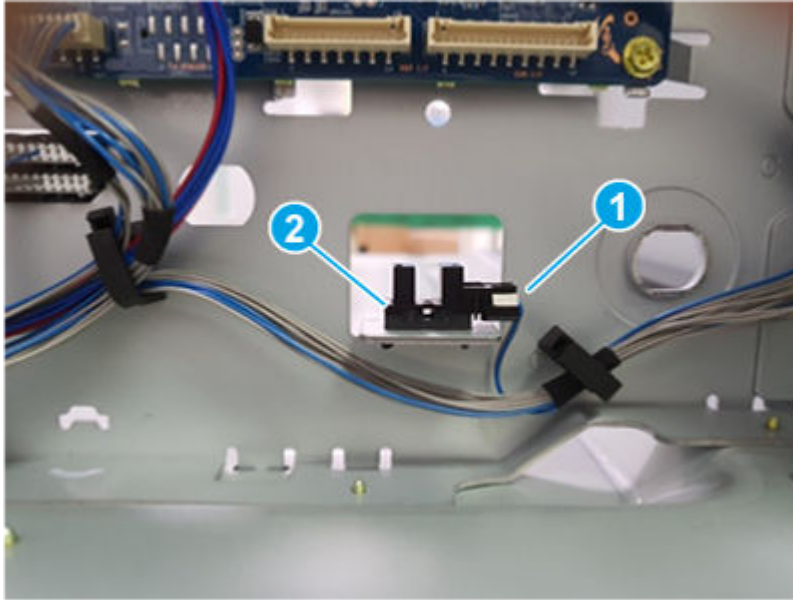


2. Remove the HCI tray open sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI tray open sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the tray open sensor (callout 2).


Figure 6-1733 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) gate solenoid home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) gate solenoid home sensor.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-244 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) gate solenoid home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

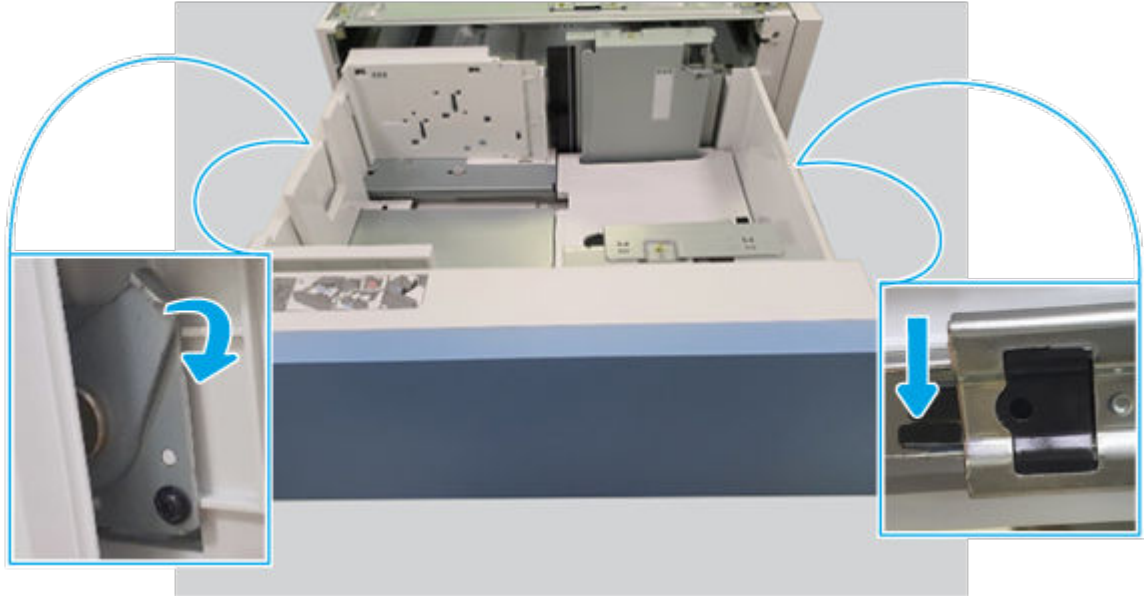
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1734 Remove the cassette

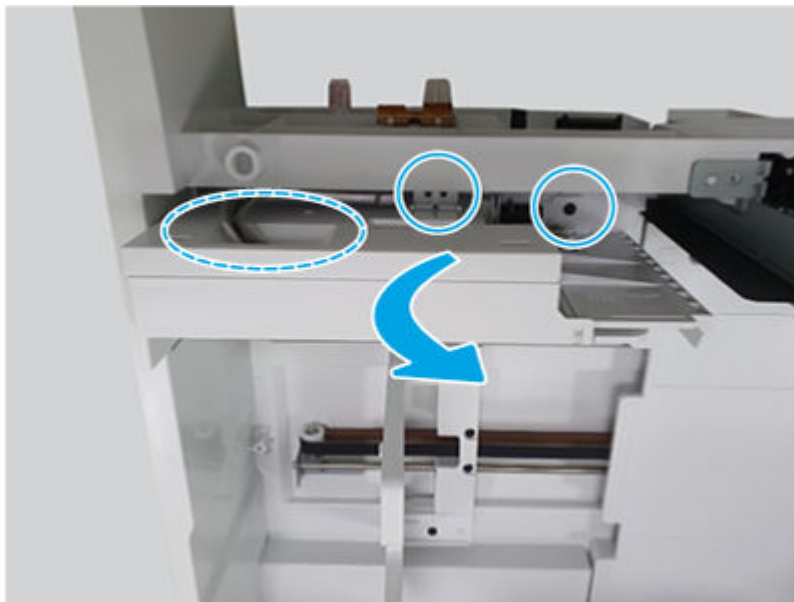


2. Remove the HCI gate solenoid home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI gate solenoid home sensor.

1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then pull the assembly up to gain access to it.

Figure 6-1735 Access the assembly



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the gate solenoid home sensor (callout 2).


Figure 6-1736 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) gate solenoid home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) gate solenoid home sensor.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-245 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) gate solenoid home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1737 Remove the cover

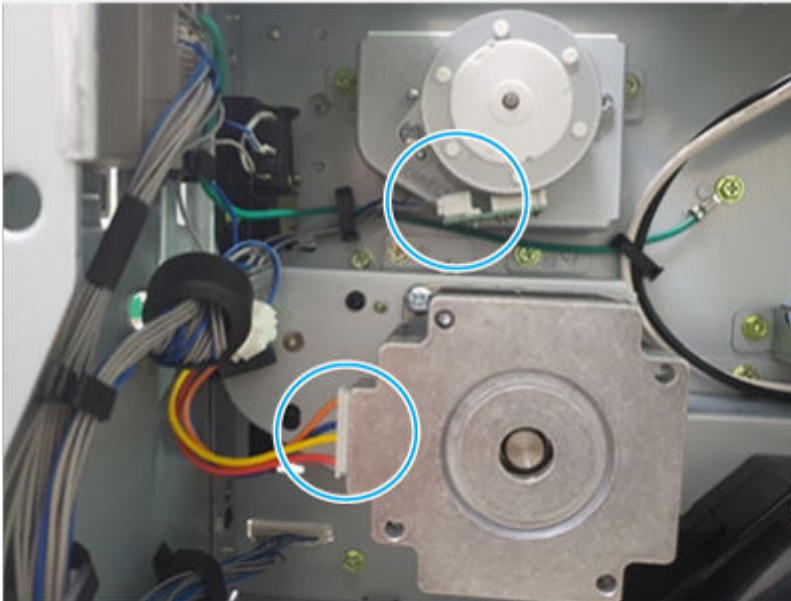


Remove the HCI right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door open switch holder.

1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1738 Remove two screws



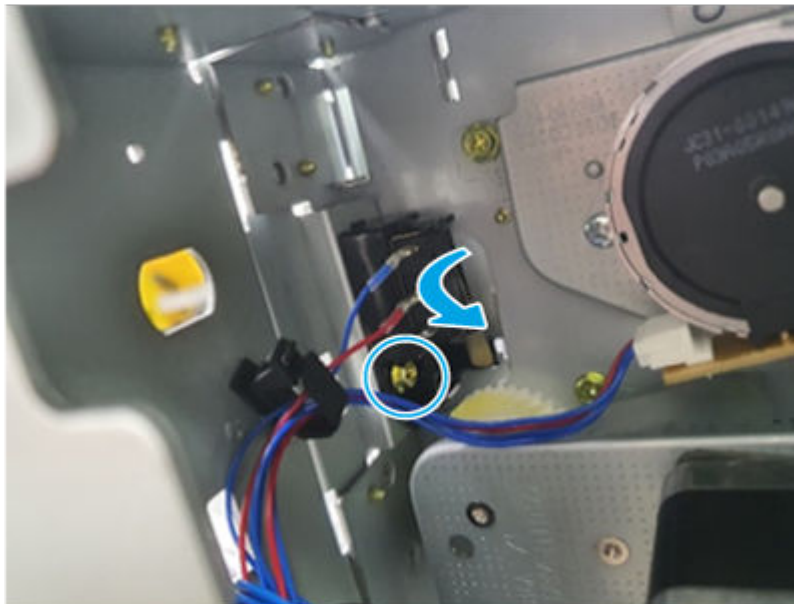
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1739 Remove two screws



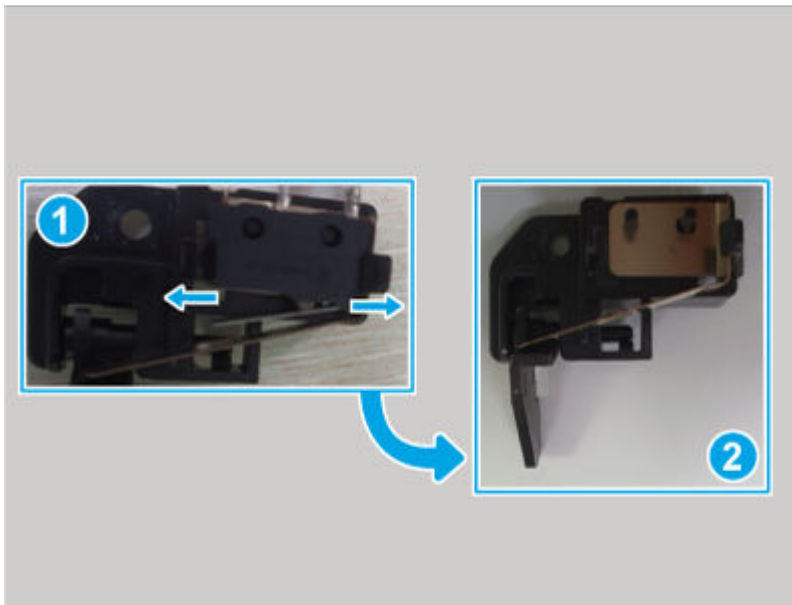
3. Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.

Figure 6-1740 Pull out the switch and holder



4. Release two tabs (callout 1) and then remove the switch from the holder to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-1741 Remove the holder



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA and harness

Review the HCI PCA and harness removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) PCA.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-246 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW57-60001	HCI (Tray 4) PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1742 Remove the cover

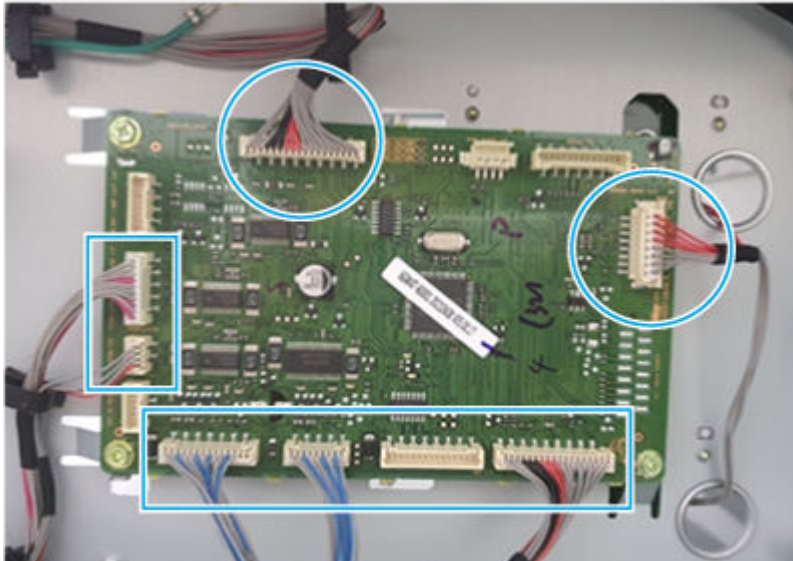


2. Remove the HCI PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI PCA.

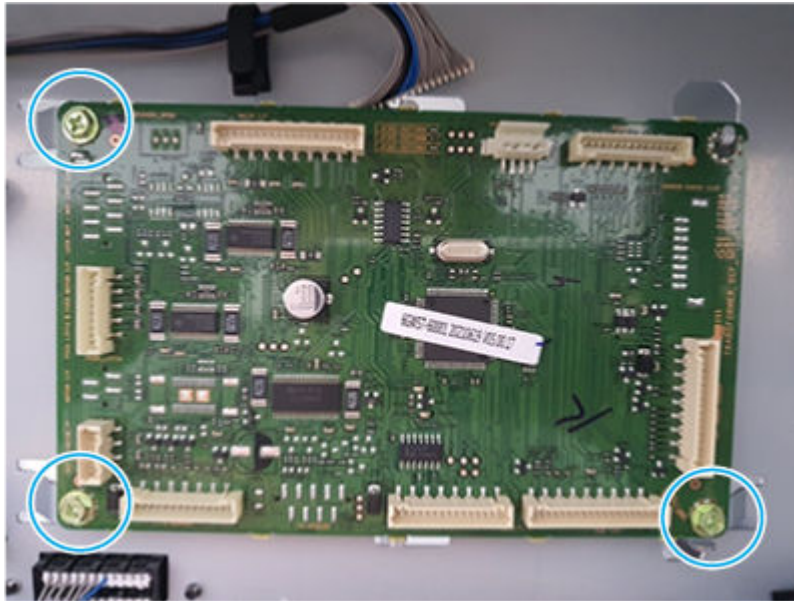
1. Disconnect all of the connectors.

Figure 6-1743 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove three screws, and then remove the PCA.


Figure 6-1744 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) sub PCA.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-247 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02792A	HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

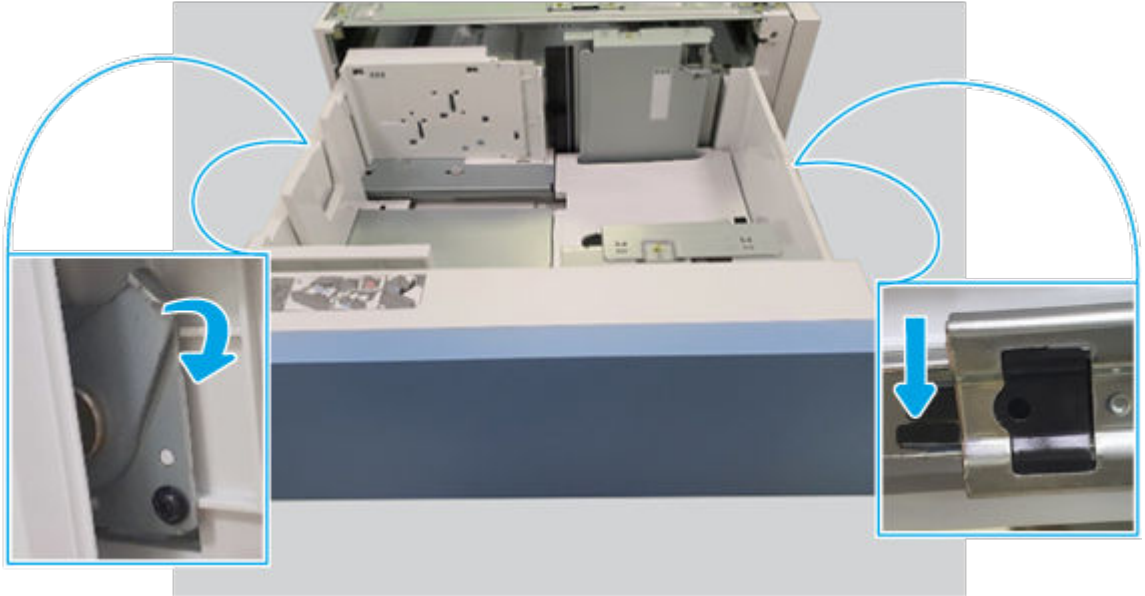
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1745 Remove the cassette

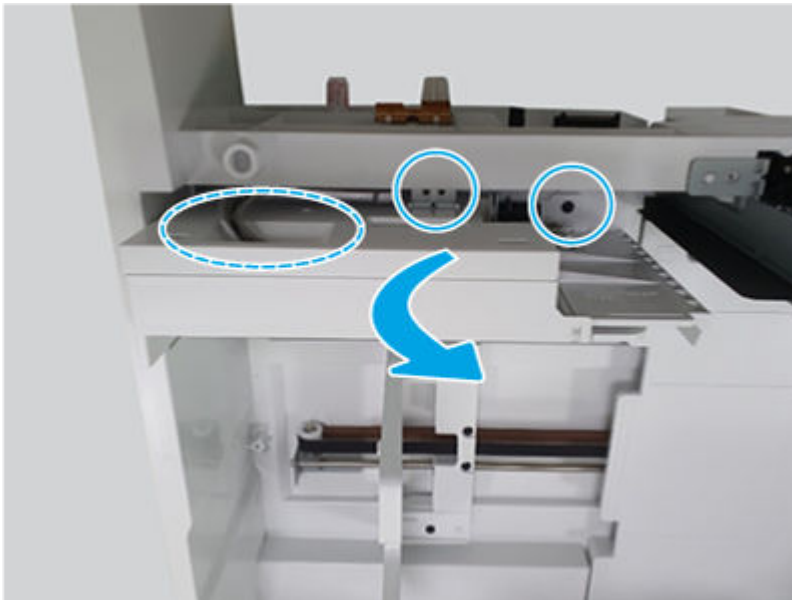


2. Remove the HCI sub PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI sub PCA.

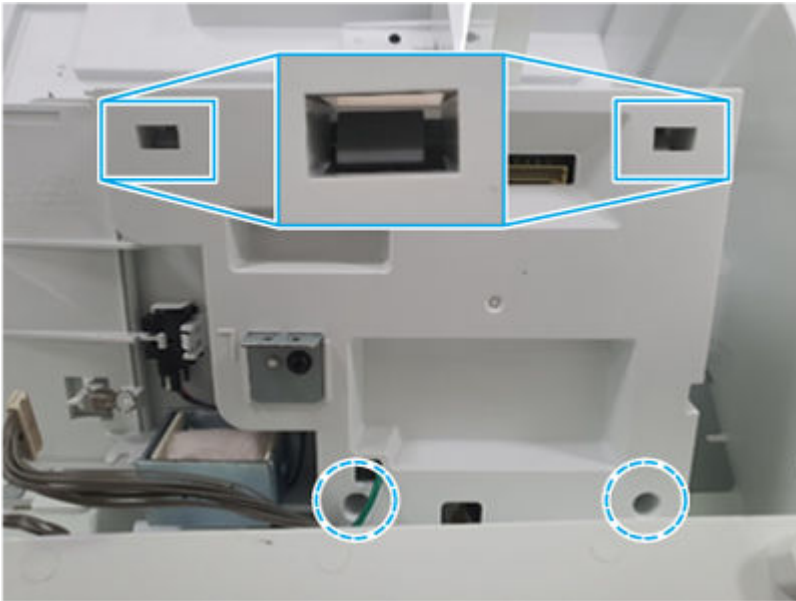
1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then pull the assembly up to gain access to it.

Figure 6-1746 Access the assembly



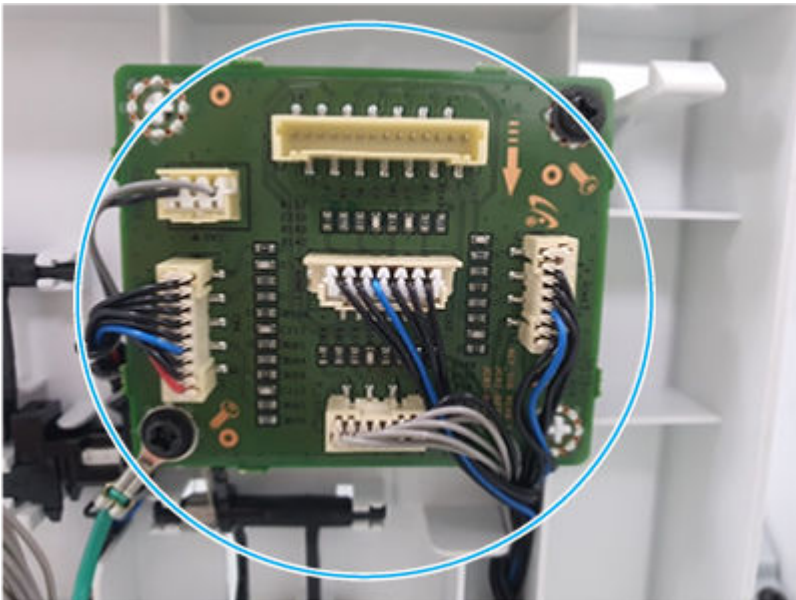
2. Remove two screws, release two hooks, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1747 Remove the cover



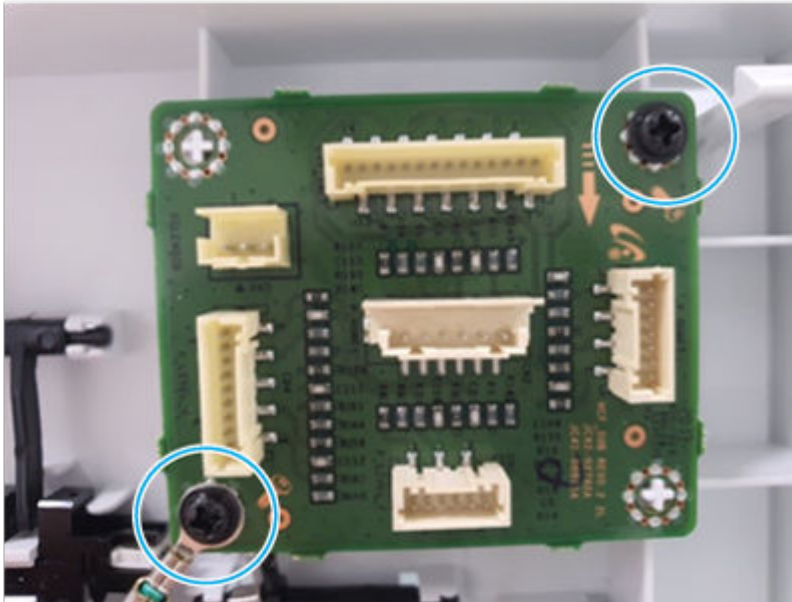
3. Disconnect all of the connectors.

Figure 6-1748 Disconnect all connectors



4. Remove two screws, and then remove the sub PCA.

Figure 6-1749 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI main IF harness

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) main IF harness.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-248 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02605A	HCI main IF harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1750 Remove the cover

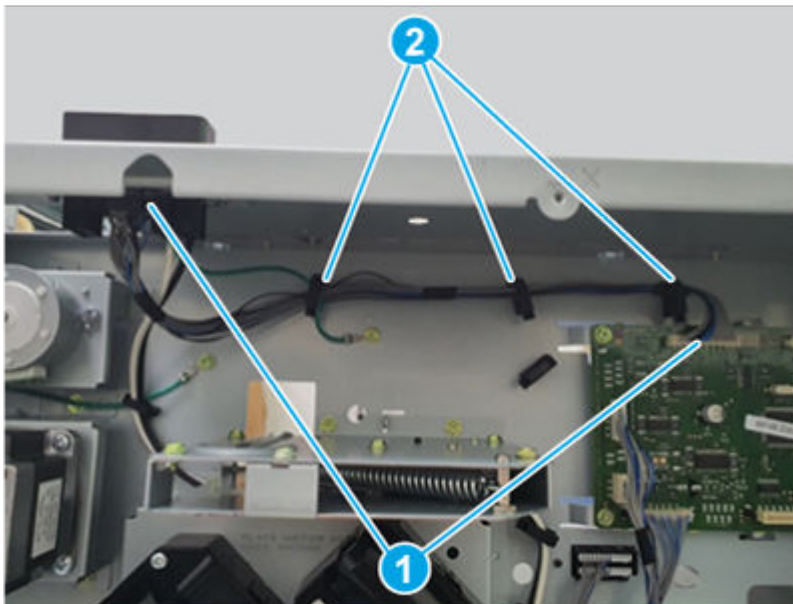


2. Remove the HCI main IF harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI main IF harness.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), release the harness from the retainers (callout 2), and then remove the main IF harness.

Figure 6-1751 Remove the harness



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI sub tray IF harness

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) inner tray IF harness.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-249 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02604A	HCI sub tray IF harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

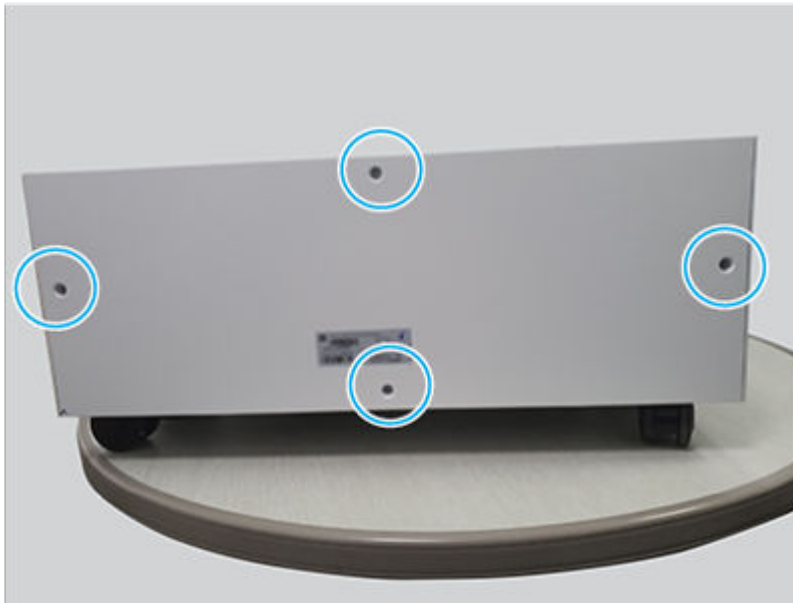
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1752 Remove the cover

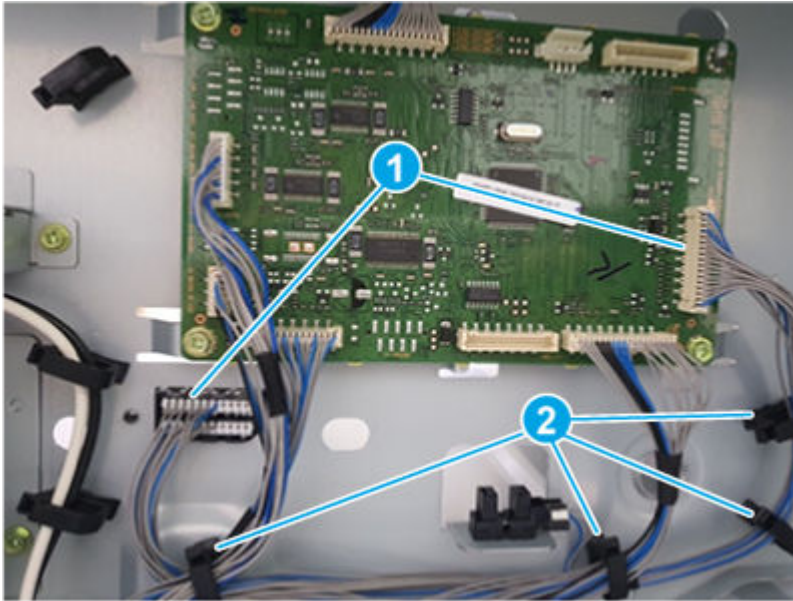


2. Remove the HCI sub tray IF harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI inner tray IF harness.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), release the harness from the retainers (callout 2), and then remove the inner tray IF harness.


Figure 6-1753 Remove the harness



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI DC motor IF (lift and shift)

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) DC motor IF.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-250 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02282A	HCI DC motor IF

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1754 Remove the cover



2. Remove the HCI DC motor IF (lift and shift)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI DC motor IF.

- Disconnect three connectors, and then remove the DC motor IF.


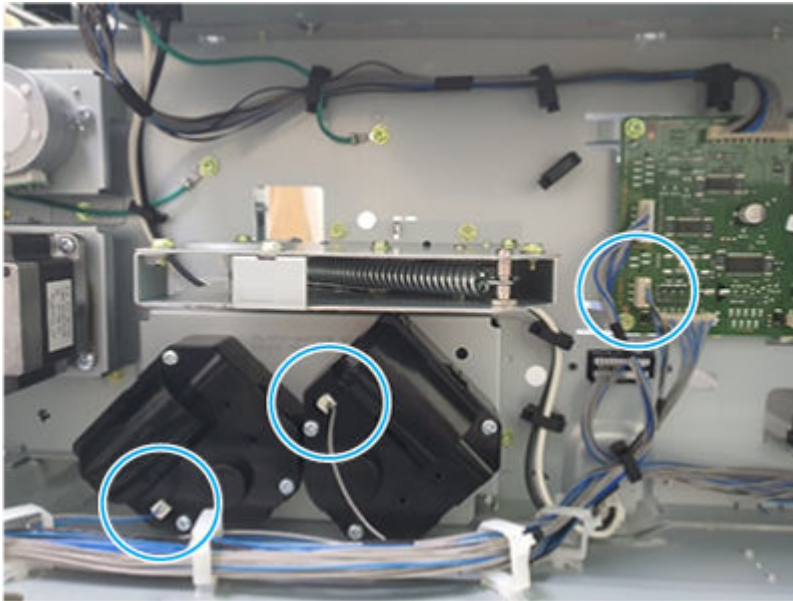
 **NOTE:** Release retainers as needed.


Figure 6-1755 Remove the DC motor IF



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI motor IF (pick and feed)

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) motor IF.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-251 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02279A	HCI motor IF

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

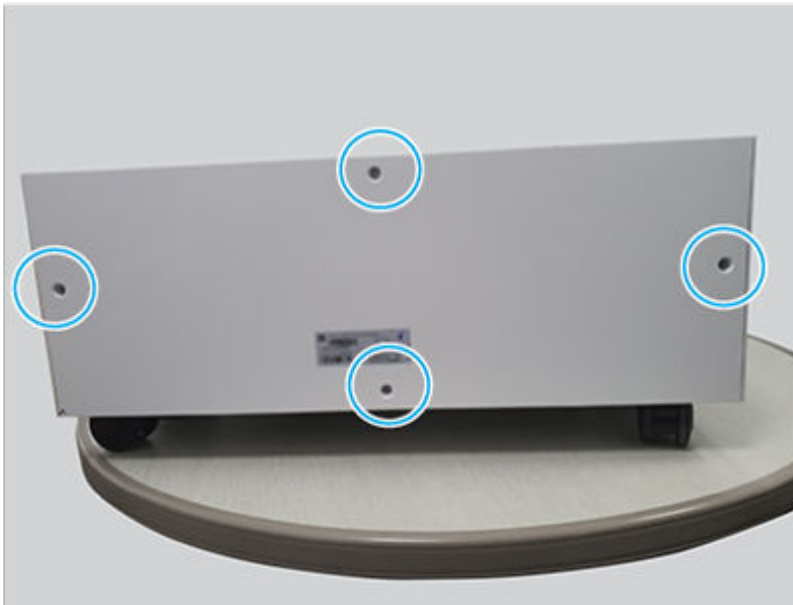
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1756 Remove the cover

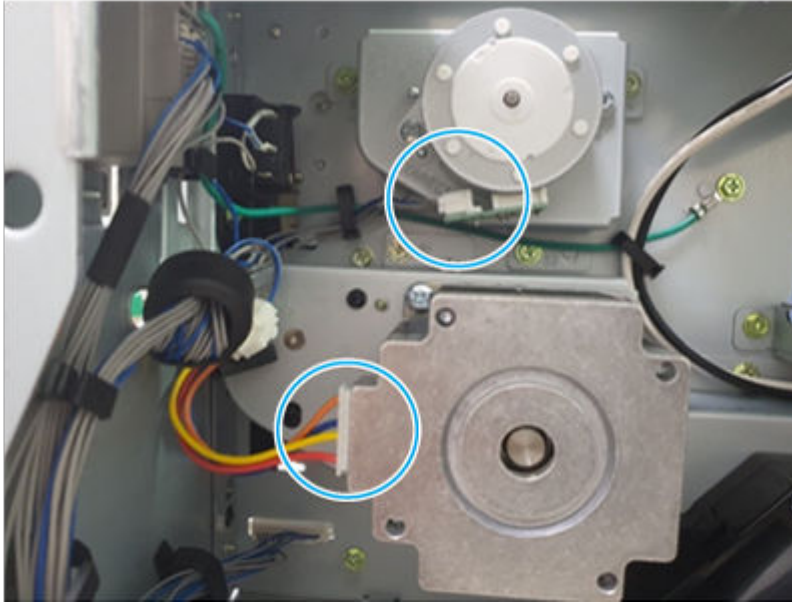


2. Remove the HCI right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door open switch holder.

1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1757 Remove two screws



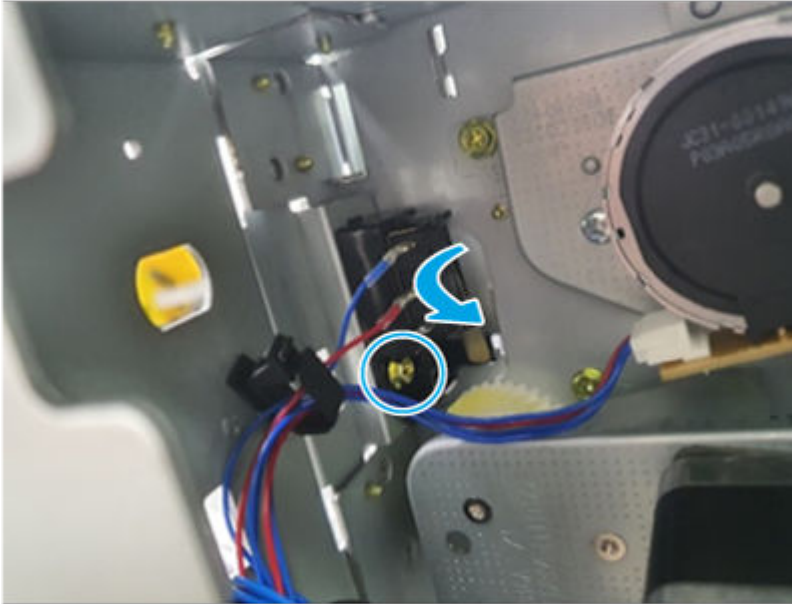
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1758 Remove two screws



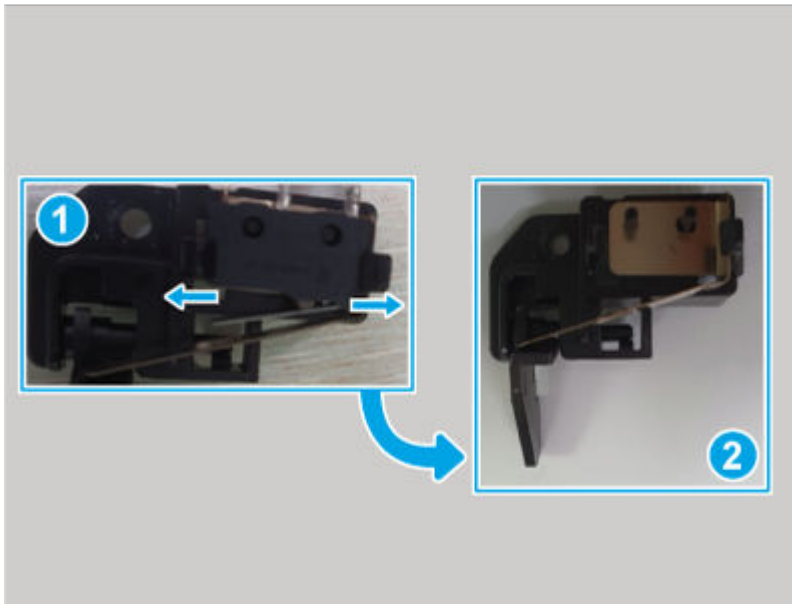
3. Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.

Figure 6-1759 Pull out the switch and holder



4. Release two tabs (callout 1) and then remove the switch from the holder to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-1760 Remove the holder



3. Remove the HCI motor IF (pick and feed)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI motor IF.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the motor IF.


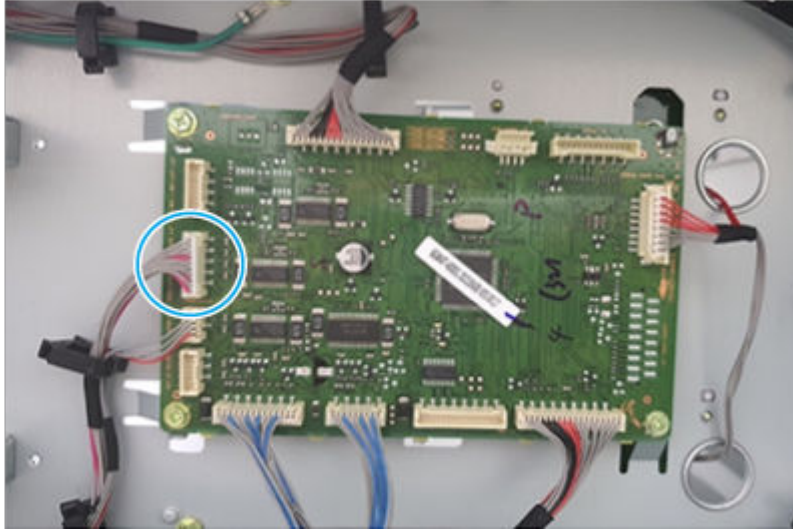
 **NOTE:** Release retainers as needed.

Figure 6-1761 Remove the motor IF



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI inner drawer IF

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) inner drawer IF.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-252 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02286A	HCI inner drawer IF

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

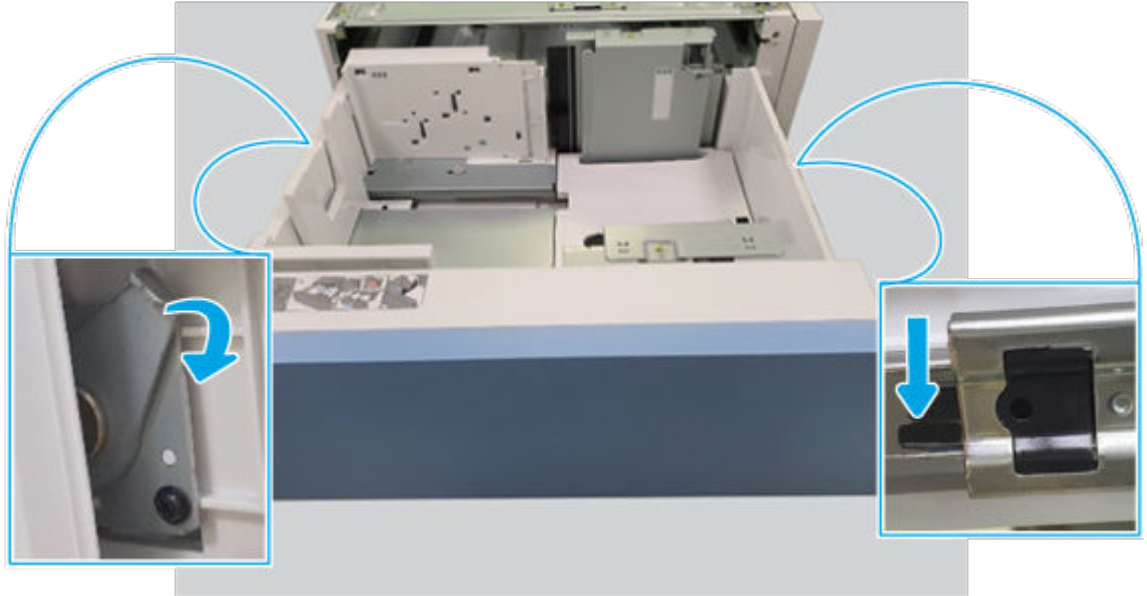
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1762 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the HCI inner drawer IF

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI inner drawer IF.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1763 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the HCI inner drawer IF.


Figure 6-1764 Remove the inner drawer IF



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output device

Learn about output device parts removal and replacement.

Stapler/stacker and (or) Booklet finisher

Learn about external finisher stapler/stacker or booklet finishers parts removal and replacement.

Cover

Review the external finisher cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Front door

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front door.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-253 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60106	Front door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

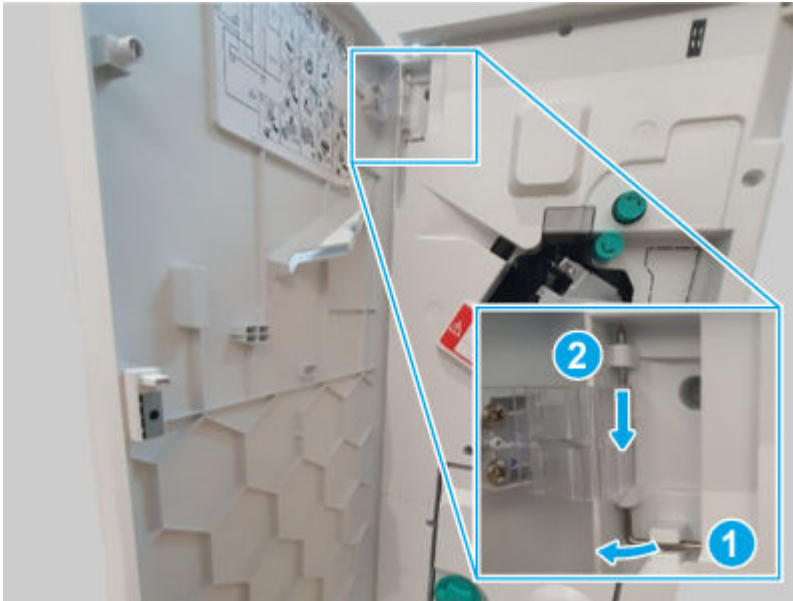
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

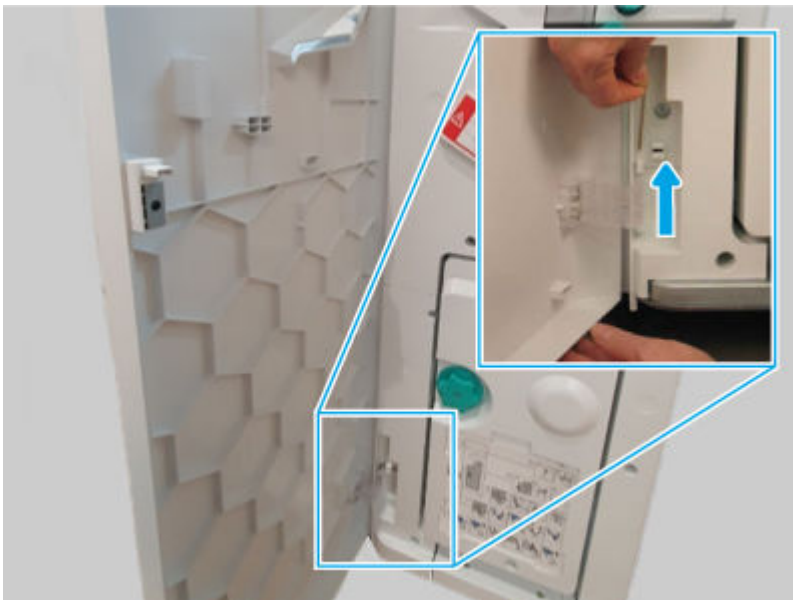
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1765 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1766 Remove the door



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher caster cover.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-254 Part Information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-40018	Caster cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

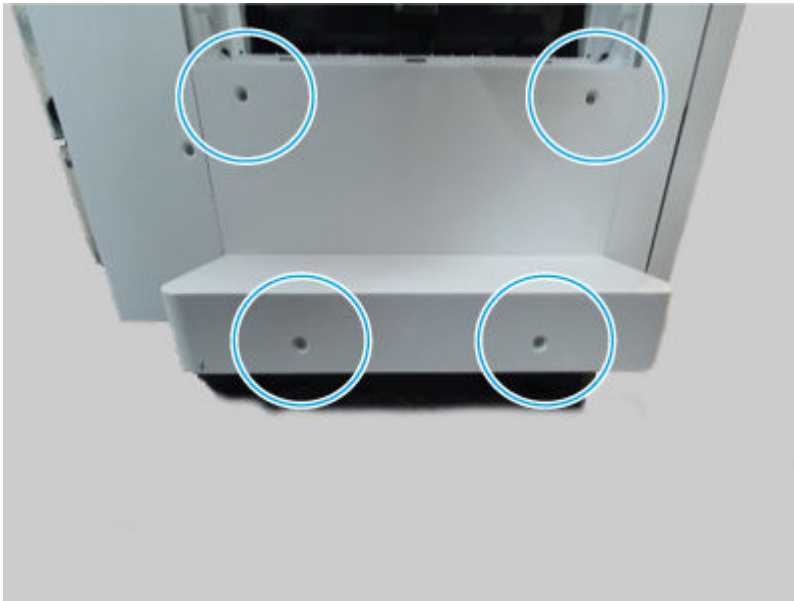
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1767 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left lower cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher left lower cover.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-255 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60106	Left lower cover (stacker)
8GS05-60124	Left lower cover (booklet)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

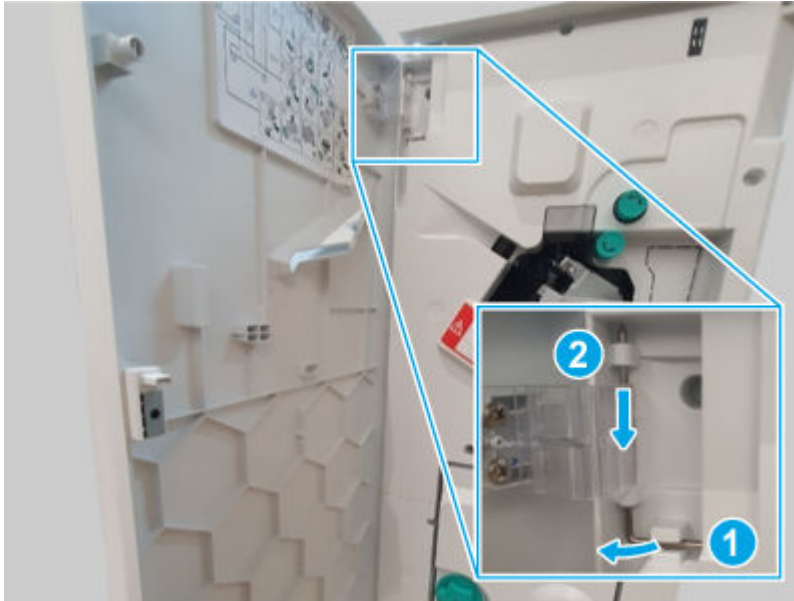
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

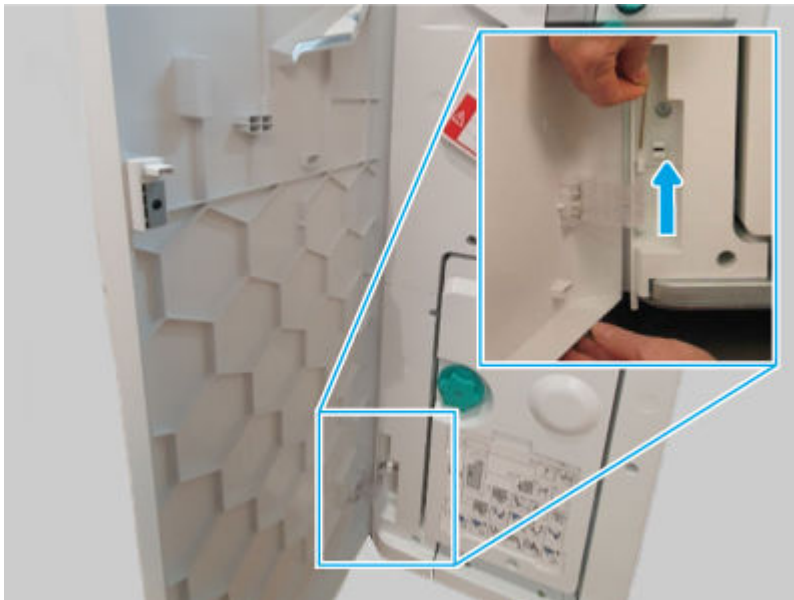
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1768 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1769 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

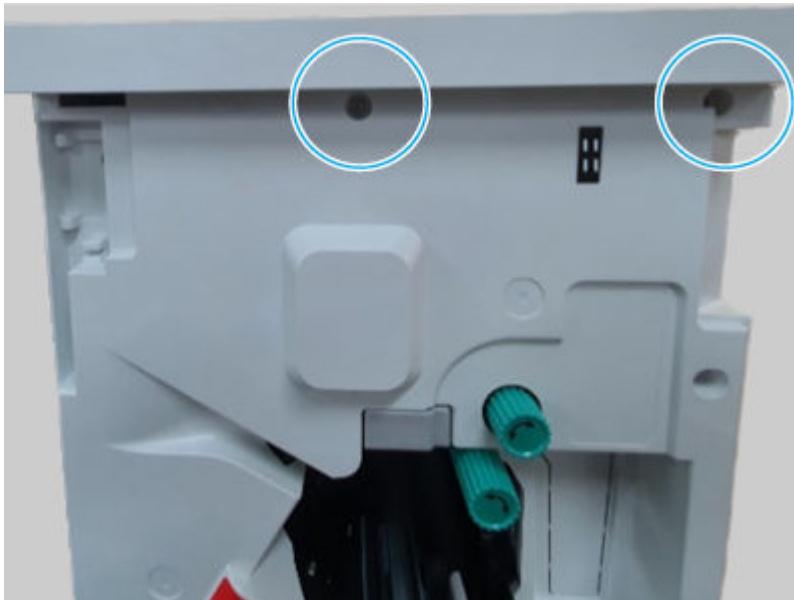
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1770 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1771 Remove the cover

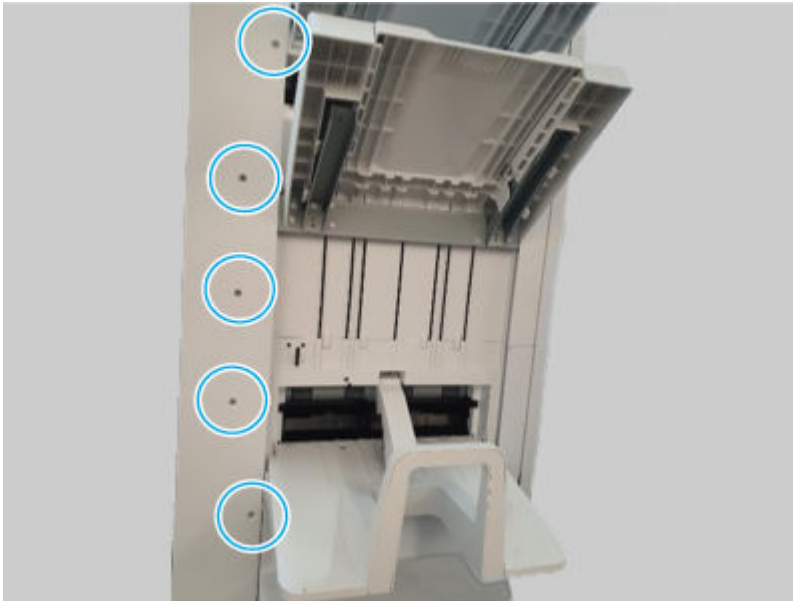


3. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1772 Remove five screws

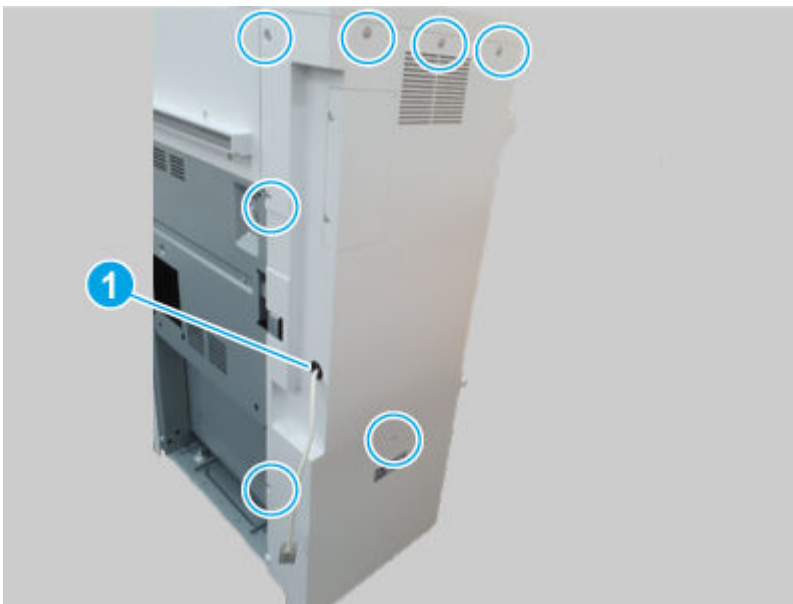


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1773 Remove the cover

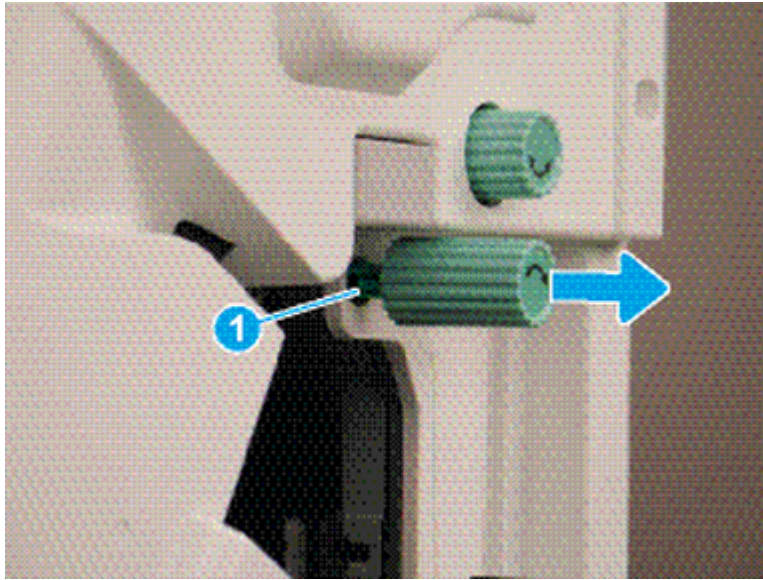


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1774 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1775 Remove the cover



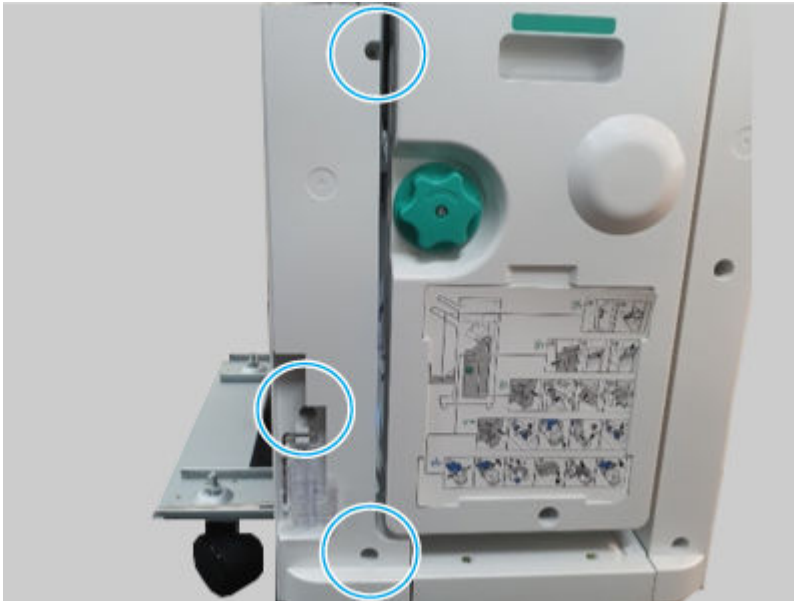
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1776 Remove the cover

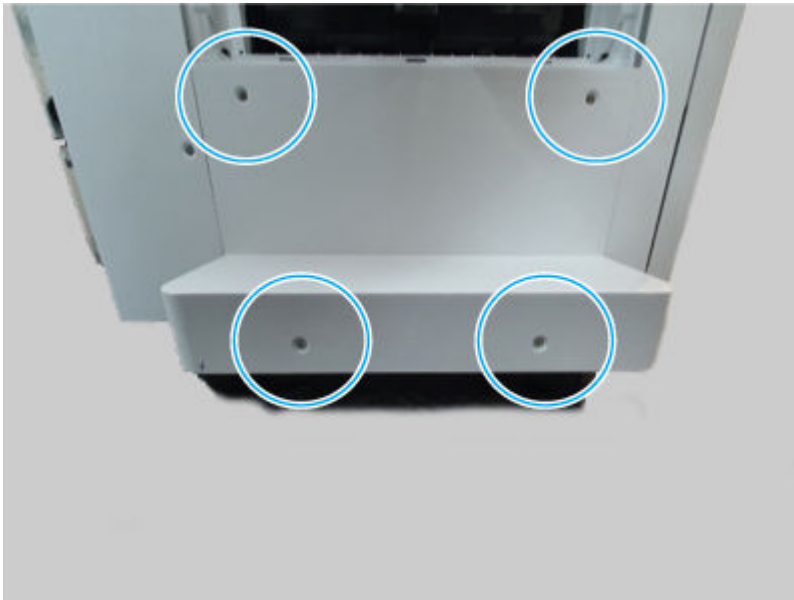


6. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1777 Remove the cover

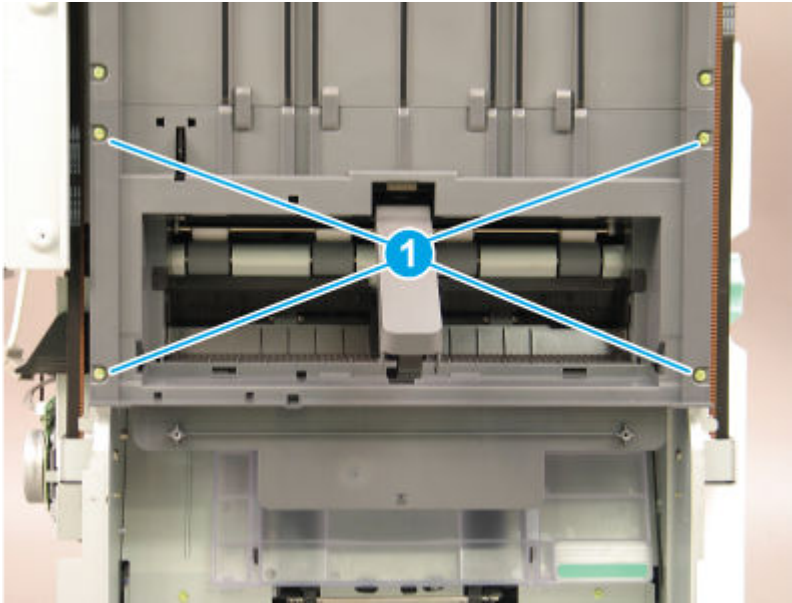


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1778 Remove four screws

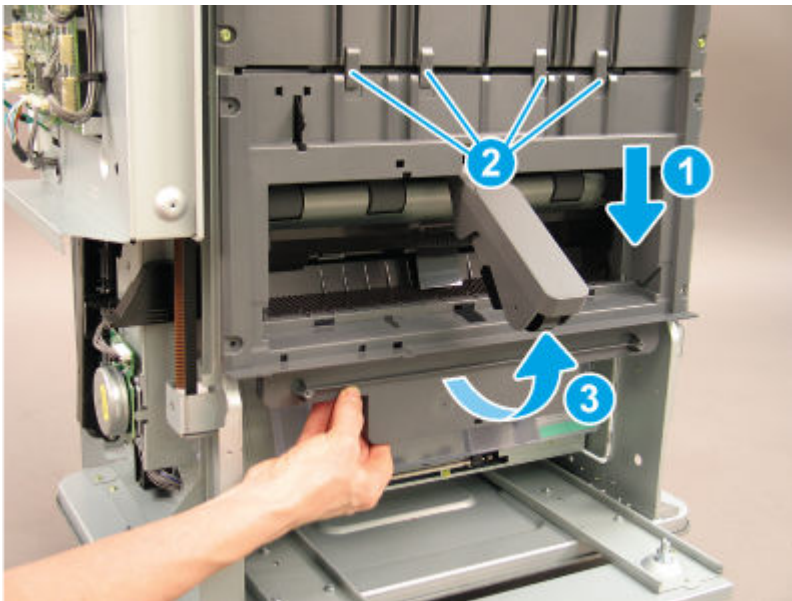


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

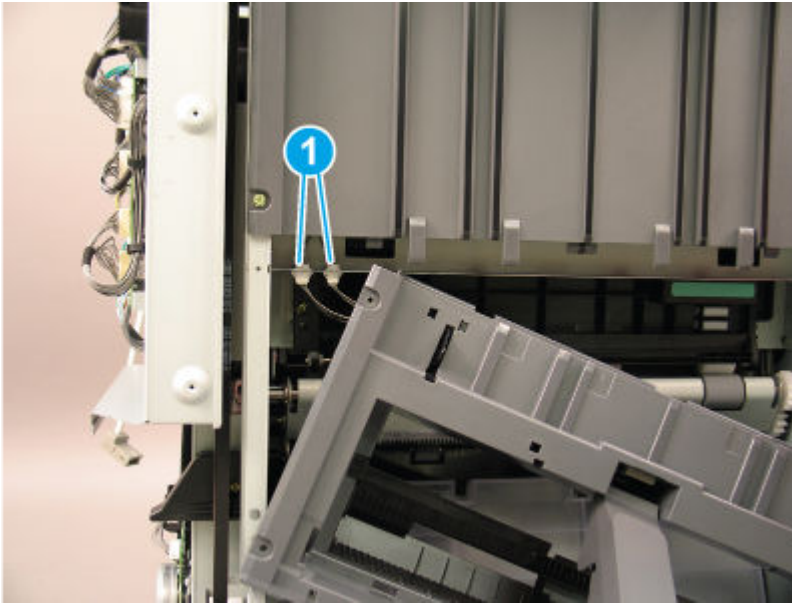
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1779 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1780 Remove the cover



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher left upper cover.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-256 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60118	Left upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

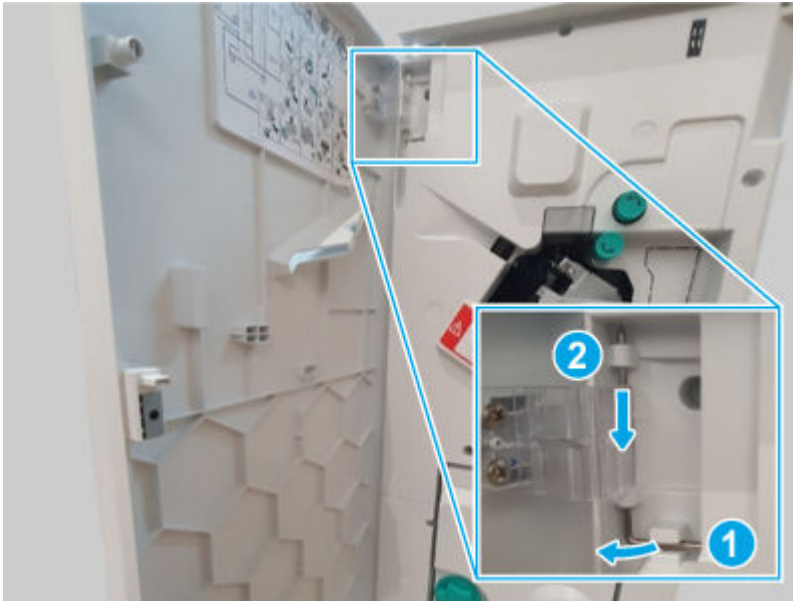
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

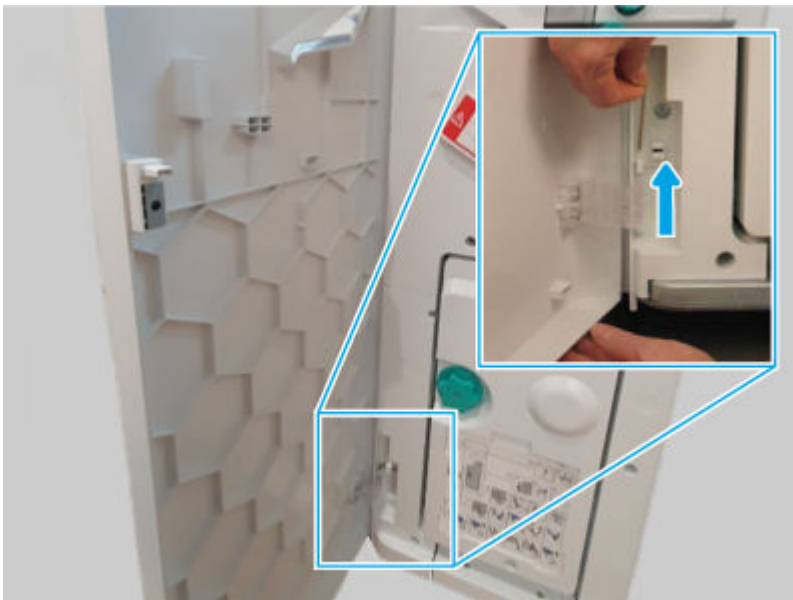
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1781 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1782 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

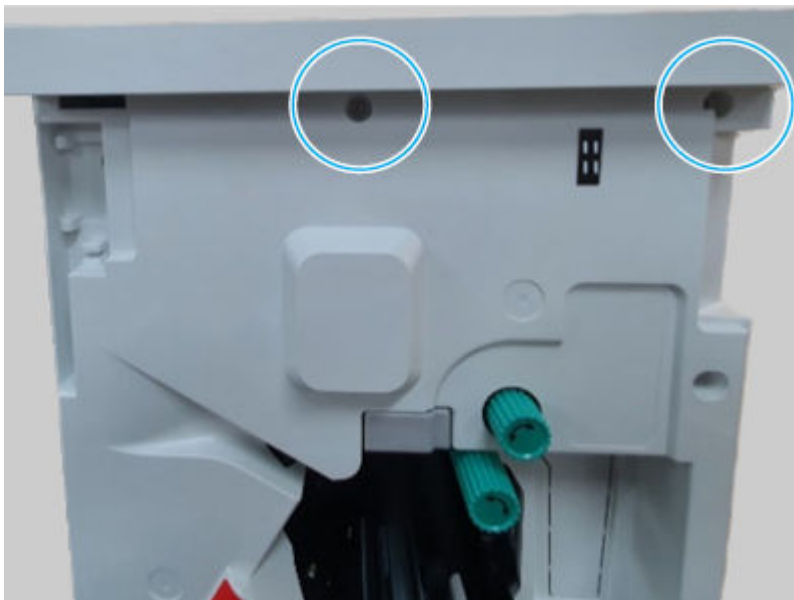
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1783 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1784 Remove the cover

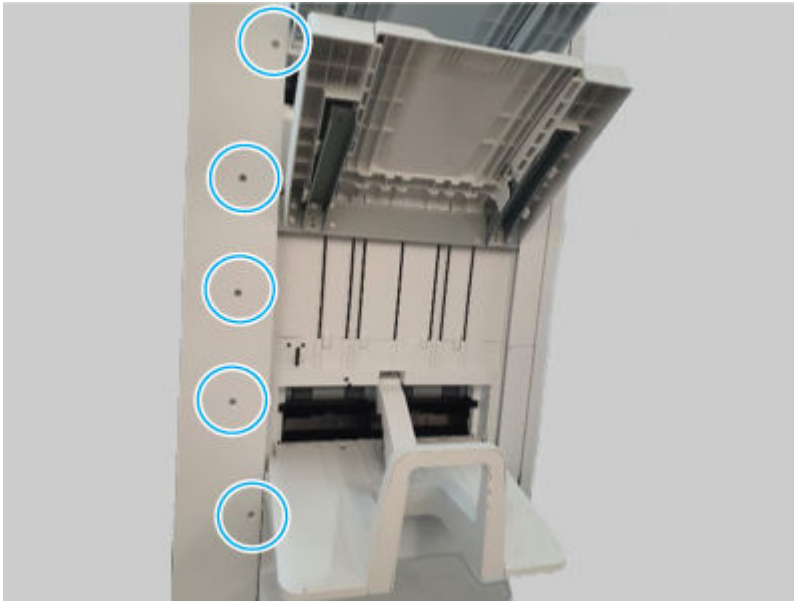


3. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1785 Remove five screws

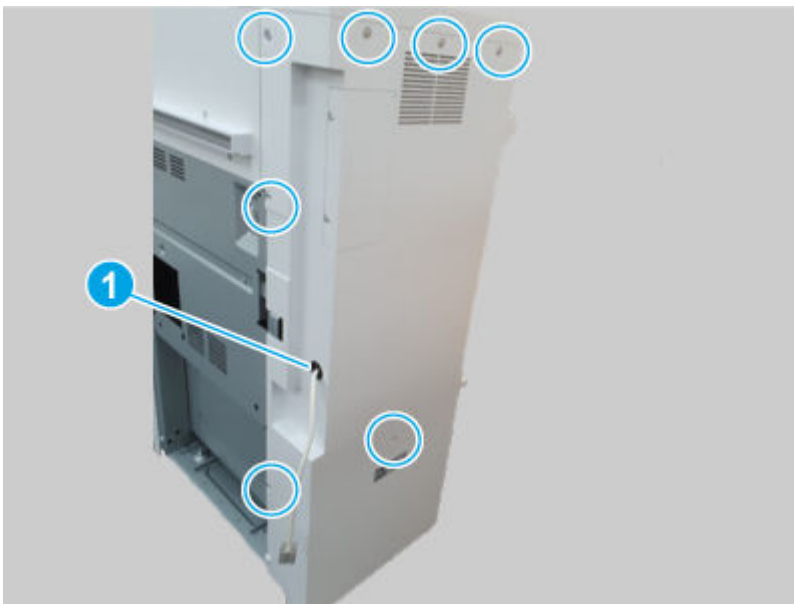


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1786 Remove the cover

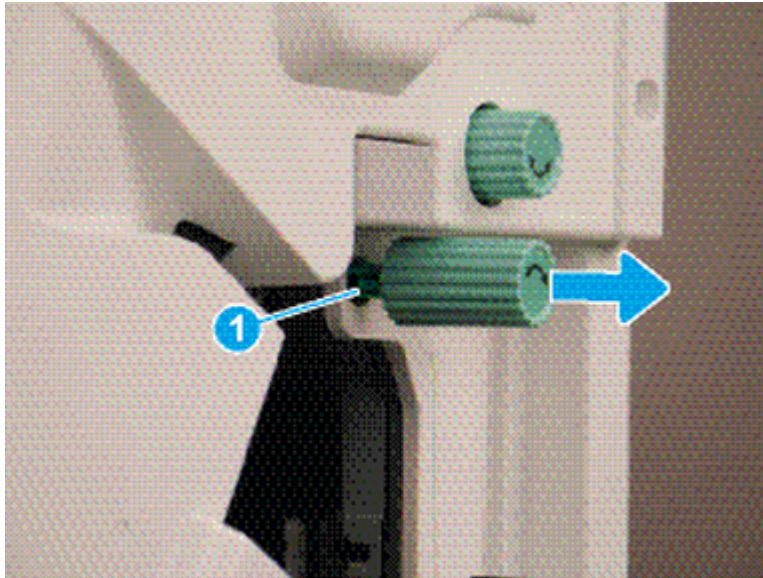


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1787 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1788 Remove the cover



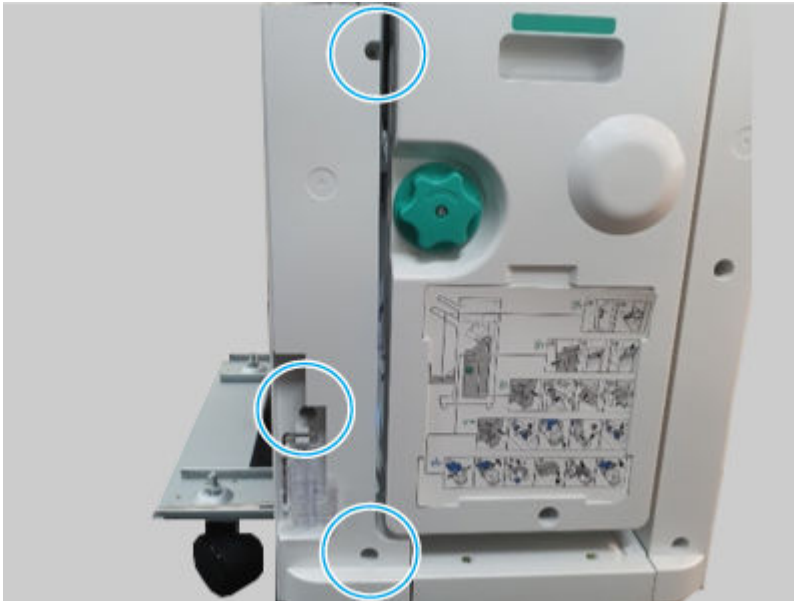
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1789 Remove the cover

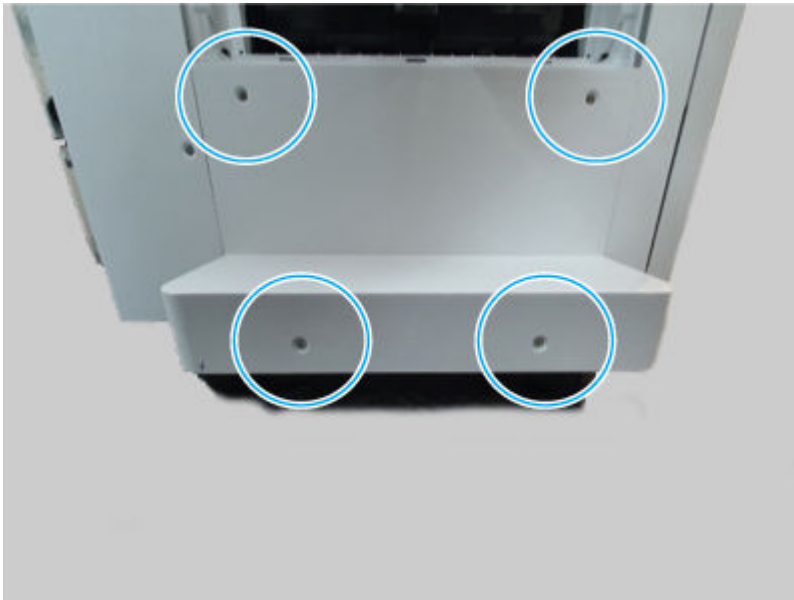


6. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1790 Remove the cover

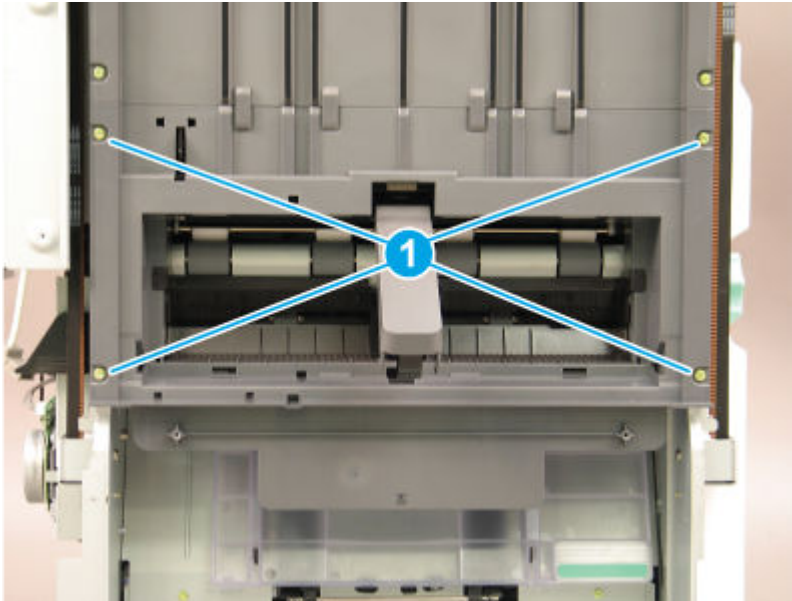


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1791 Remove four screws

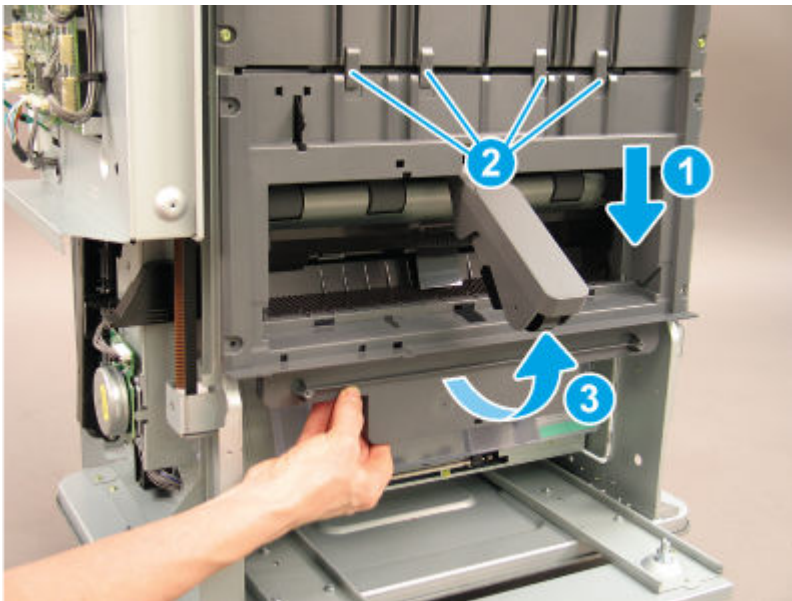


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

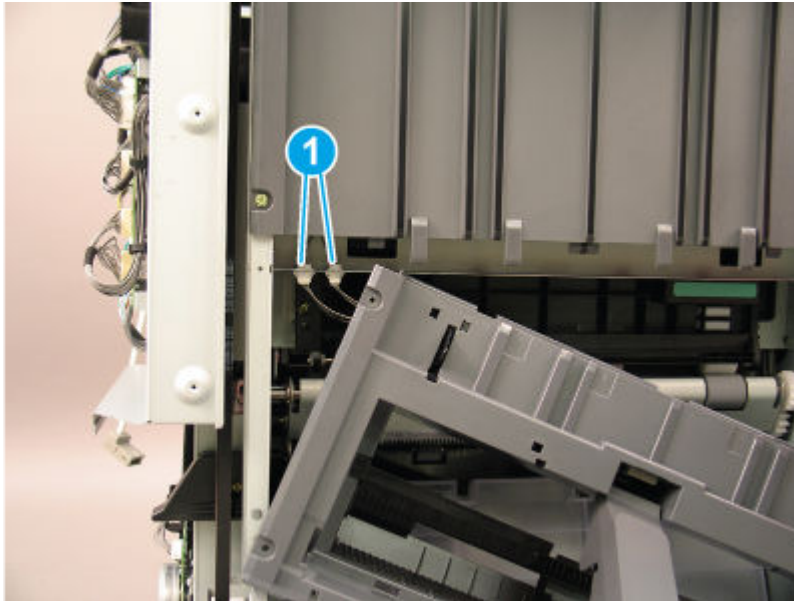
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1792 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1793 Remove the cover

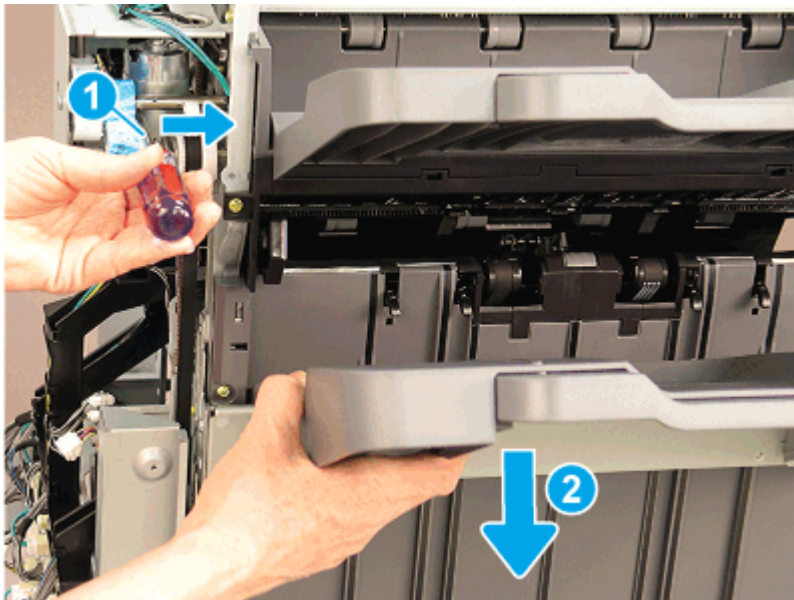


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

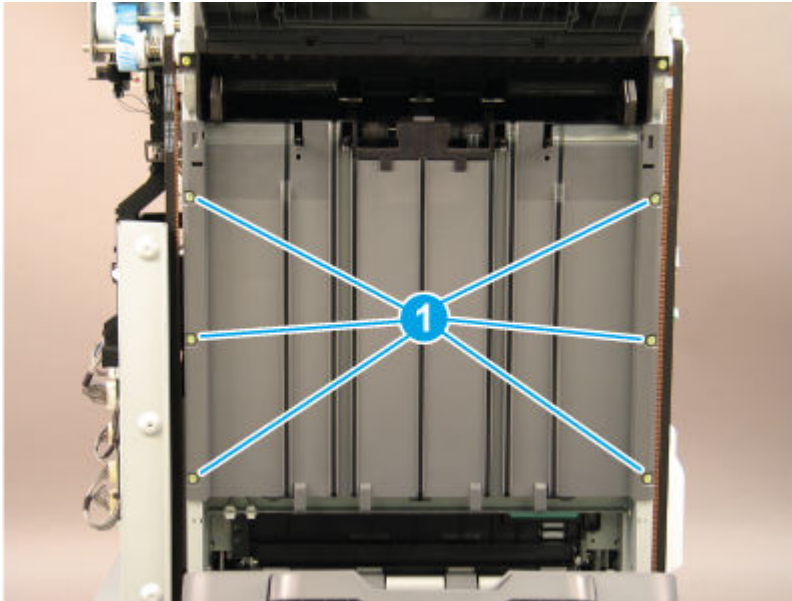
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1794 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1795 Remove six screws

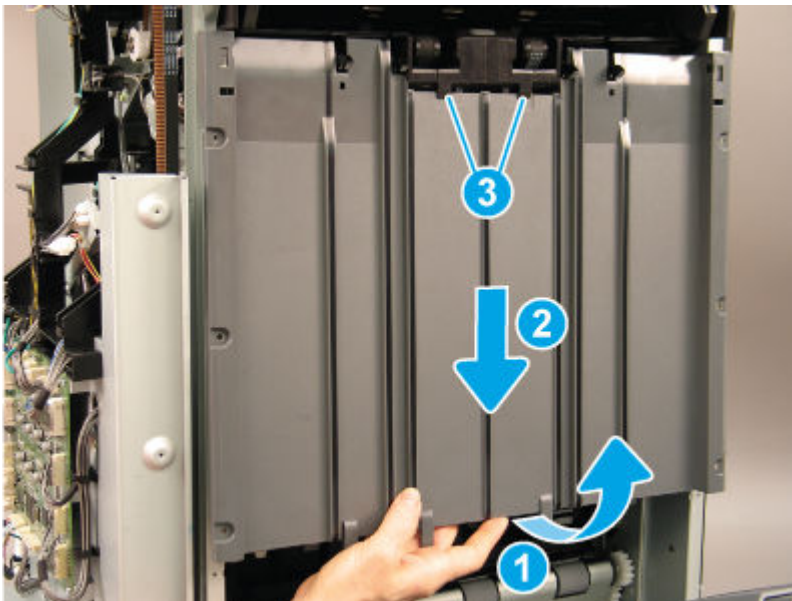


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

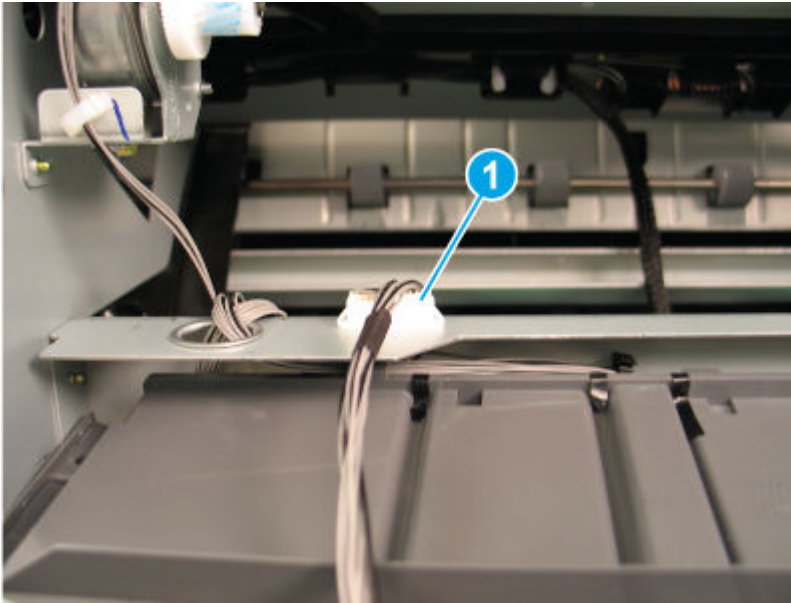
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1796 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1797 Remove the cover



9. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher booklet output tray.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-257 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60126	Booklet output tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

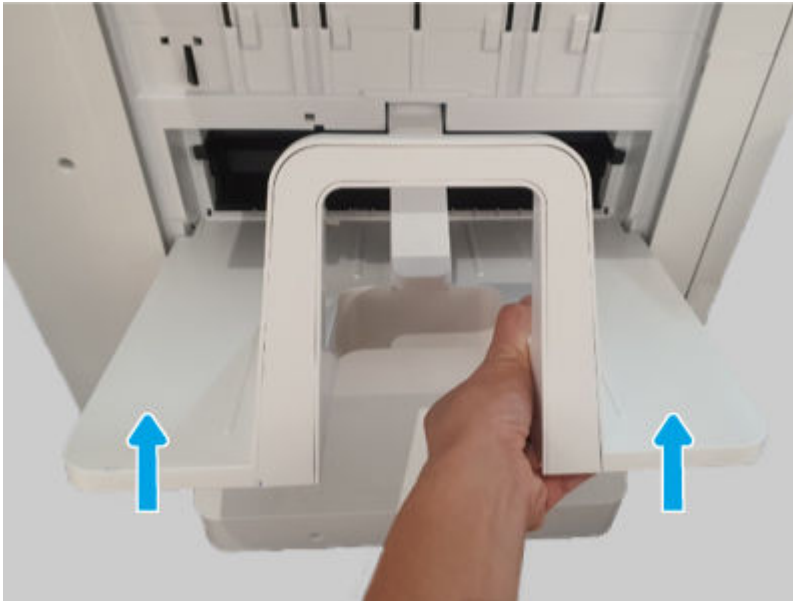
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher booklet output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet output tray.

1. Rotate the tray up.

Figure 6-1798 Rotate the tray



2. Pull the booklet output tray out and away from the finisher to remove it.


Figure 6-1799 Remove the tray



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top output tray

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top output tray.


Mean time to repair: 1 minute

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-258 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40027	Top output tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

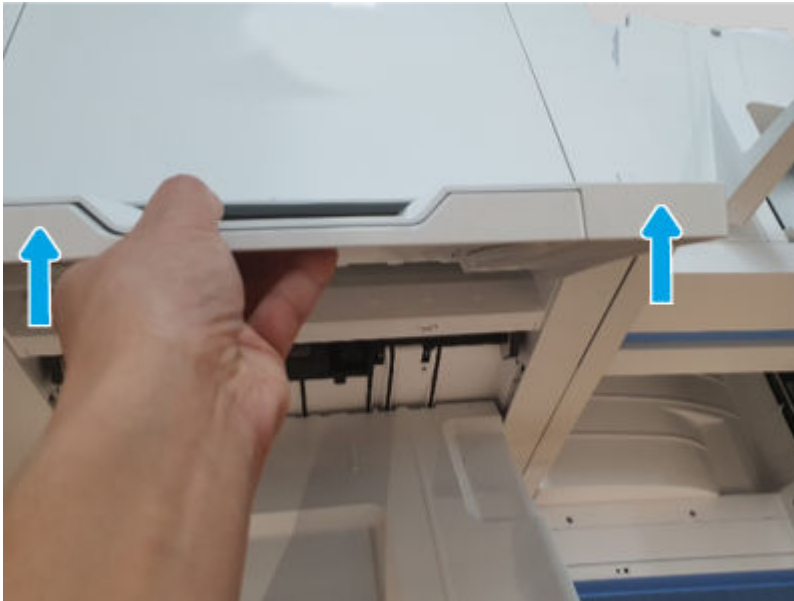
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top output tray.

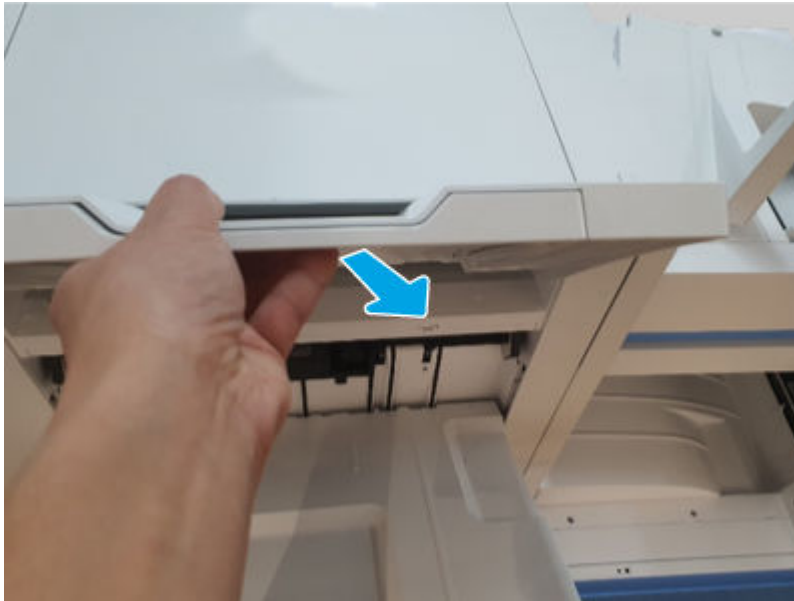
1. Rotate the tray up.

Figure 6-1800 Rotate the tray



2. Pull the top output tray out and away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1801 Remove the tray



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-259 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40028	Main output tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

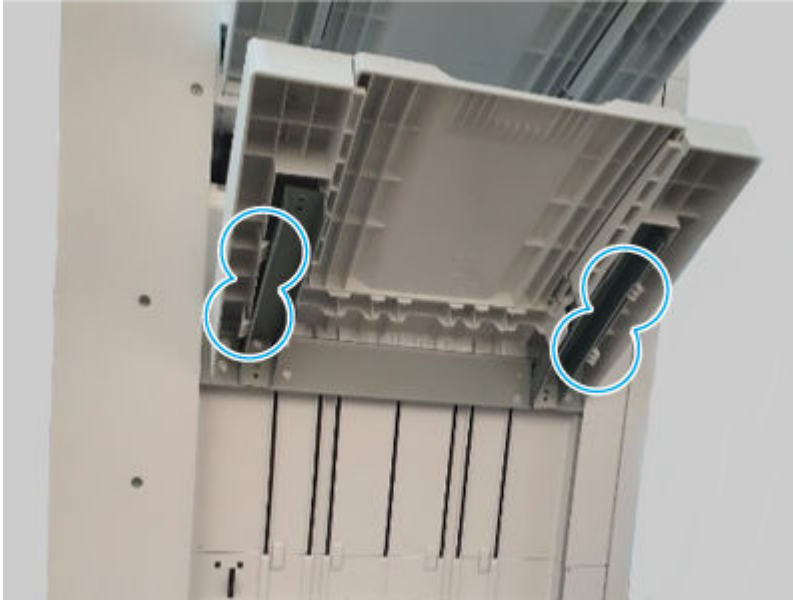
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher main output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray.

- Release four tabs, and then remove the main output tray.

Figure 6-1802 Remove the tray



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-260 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60118	Rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

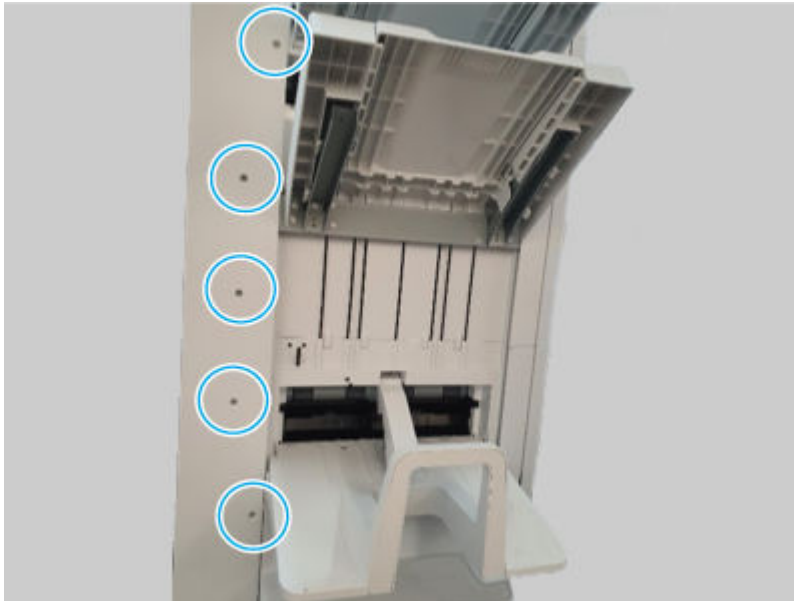
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1803 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


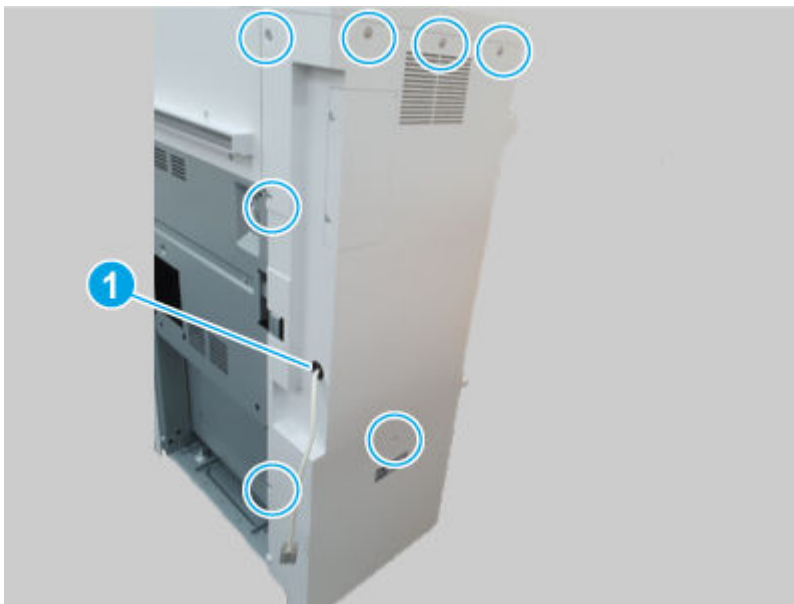
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).


Figure 6-1804 Remove the cover





2. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front cover.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-261 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40019	Front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

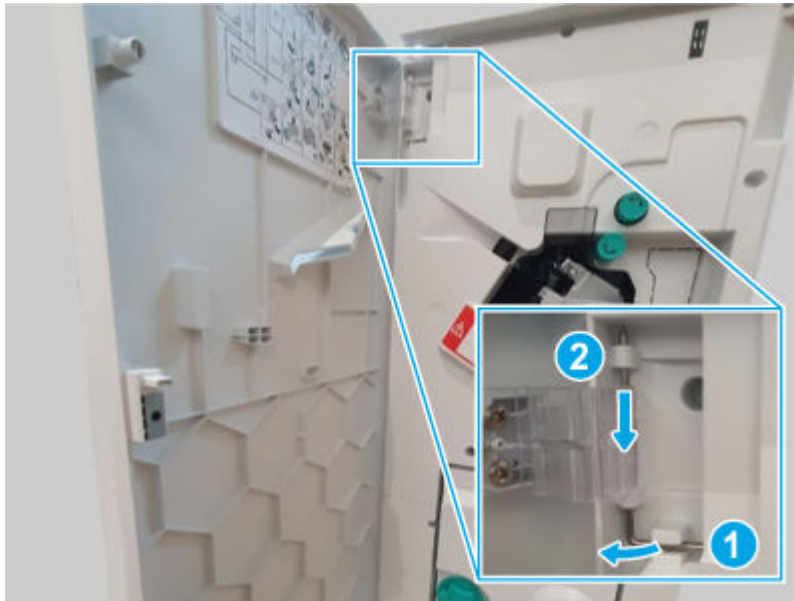
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

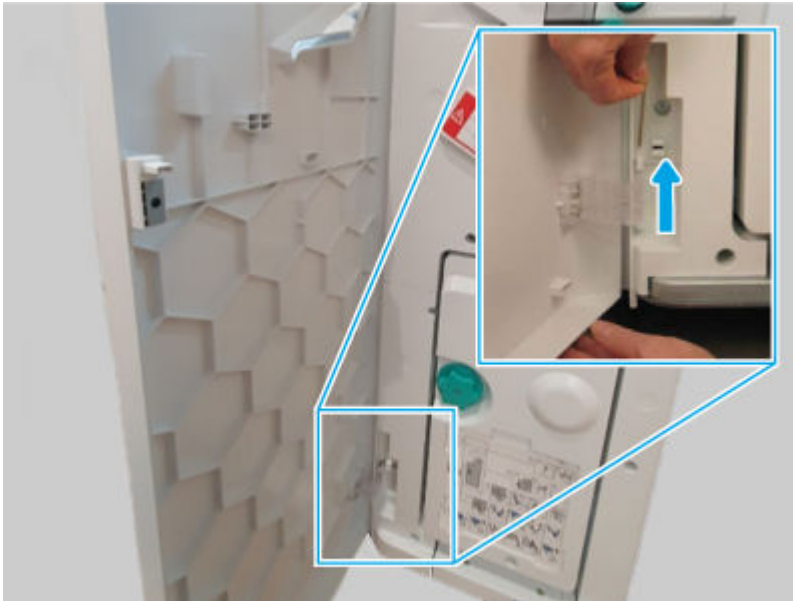
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1805 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1806 Remove the door



Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

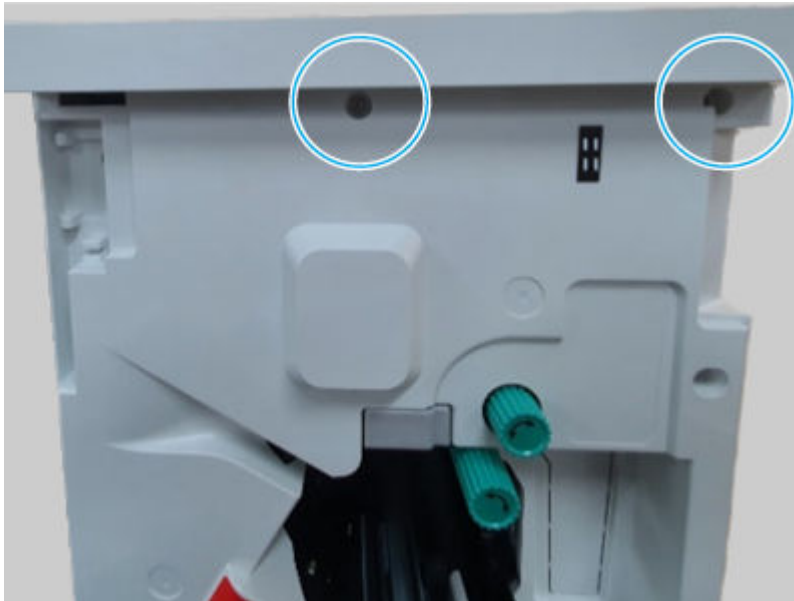
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1807 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1808 Remove the cover

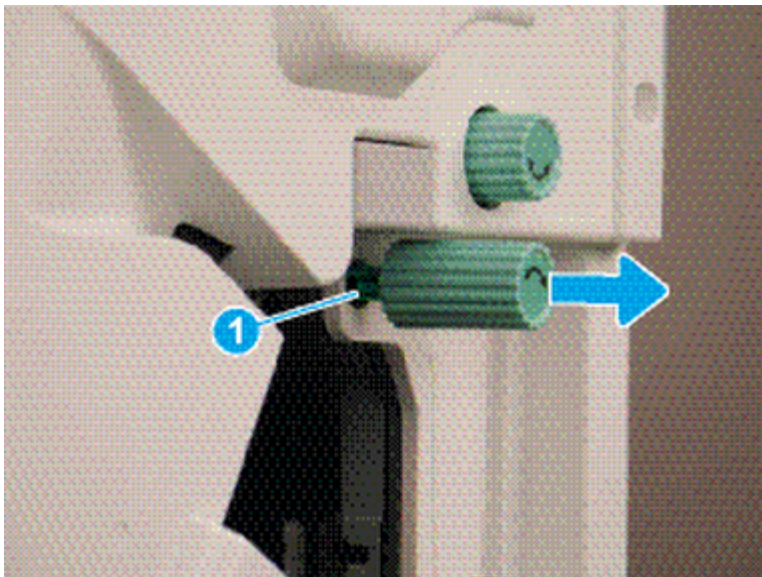


Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1809 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1810 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Punch cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher punch cover.

Mean time to repair: 1 minute

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-262 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40030	Punch cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

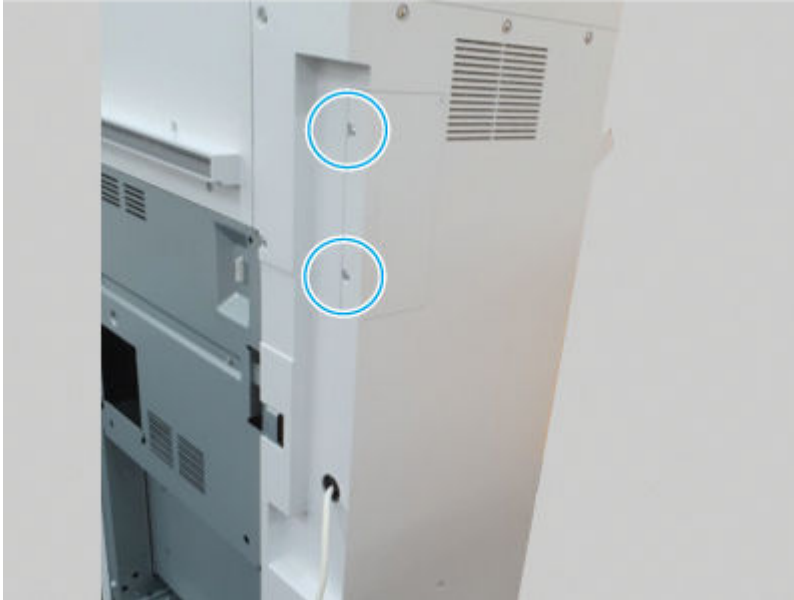
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the punch cover.

Figure 6-1811 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-263 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60108	Top cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

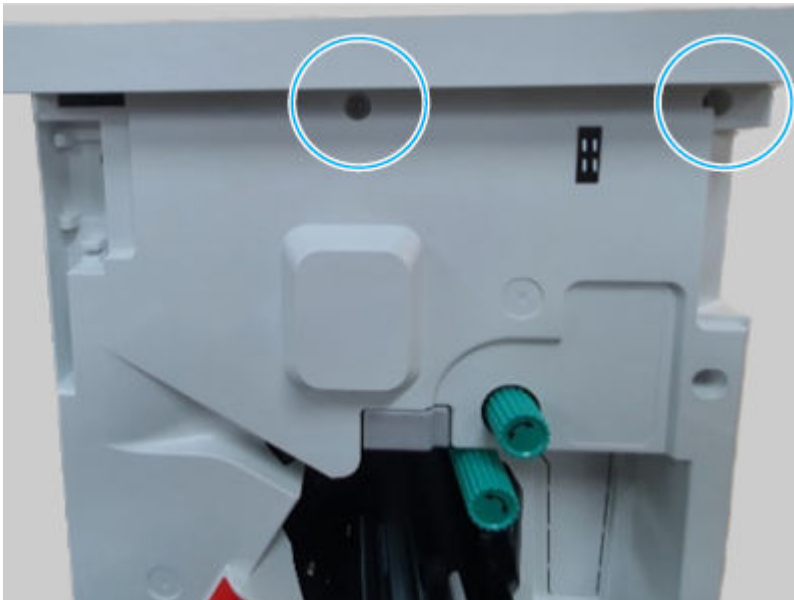
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1812 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1813 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top door

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top door.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-264 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60107	Top door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

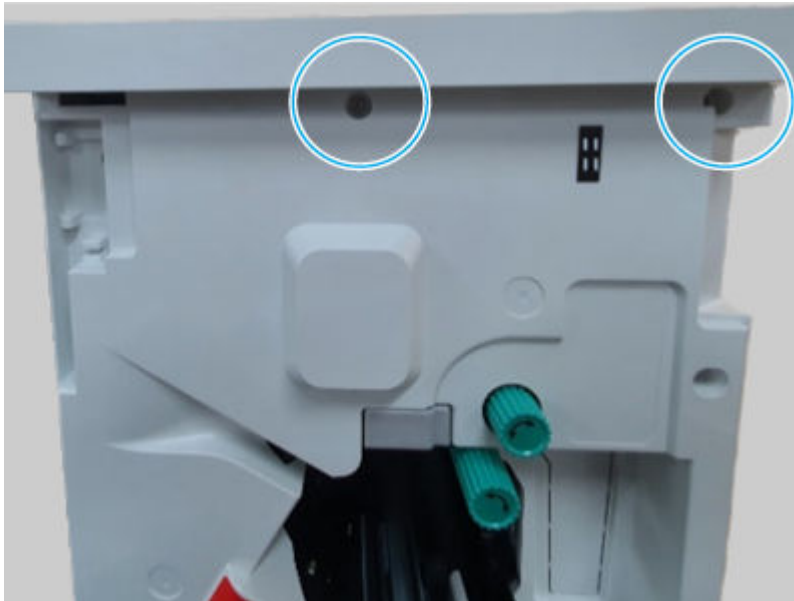
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1814 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1815 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher top door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top door.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one screw from the bracket.

Figure 6-1816 Remove one screw



3. Slide the top door as shown below to remove it.


Figure 6-1817 Remove the door



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-265 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60109	Right upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

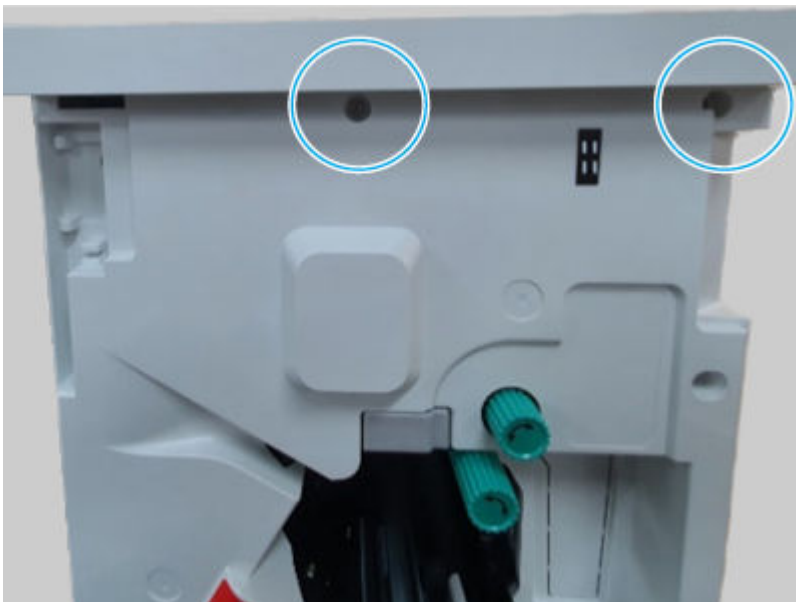
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1818 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1819 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher right upper cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove six screws, and then remove the right upper cover.

Figure 6-1820 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front lower left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front lower left cover.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-266 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40047	Front lower left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

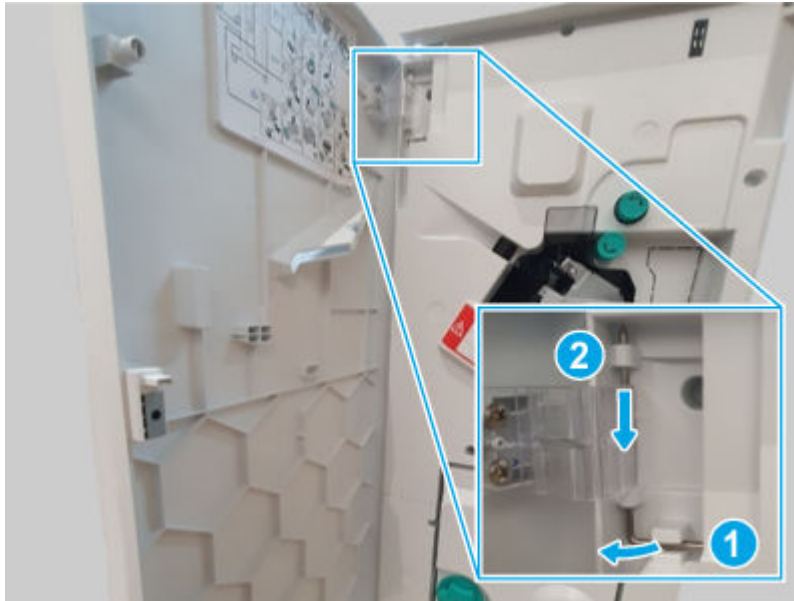
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

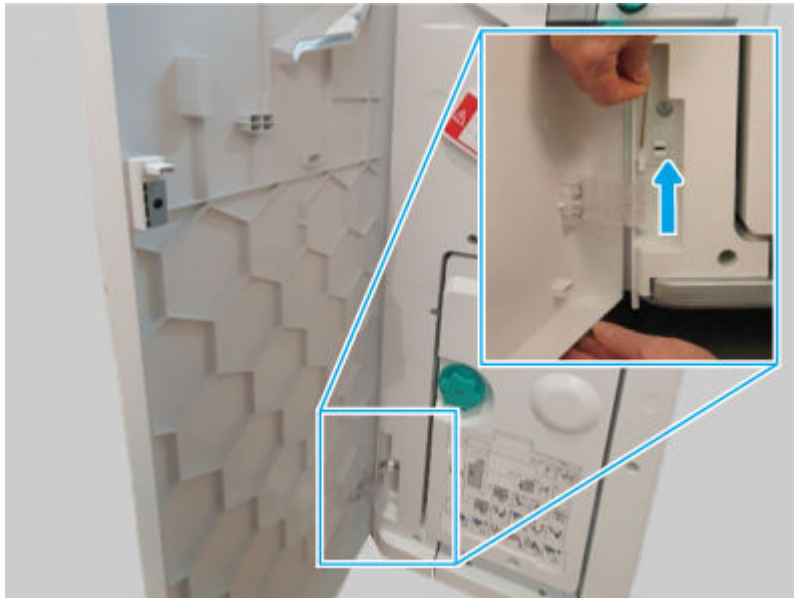
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1821 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1822 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

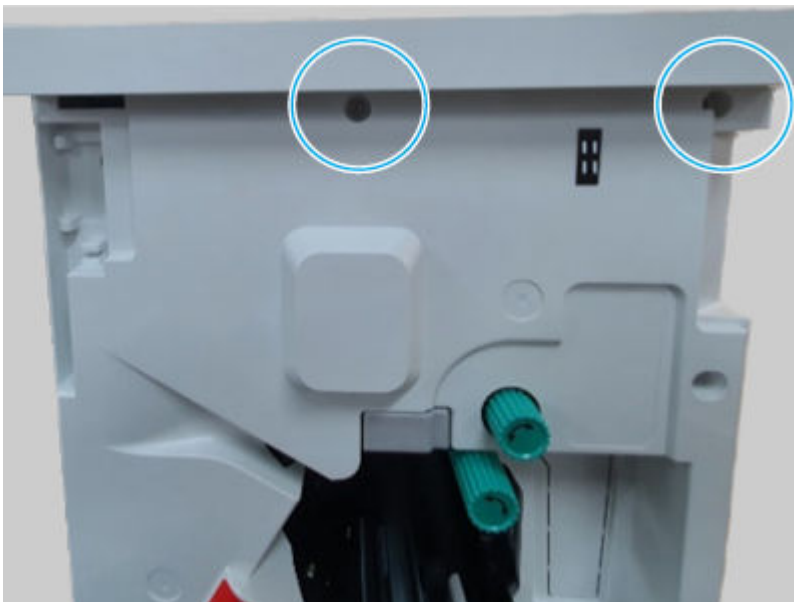
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1823 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1824 Remove the cover

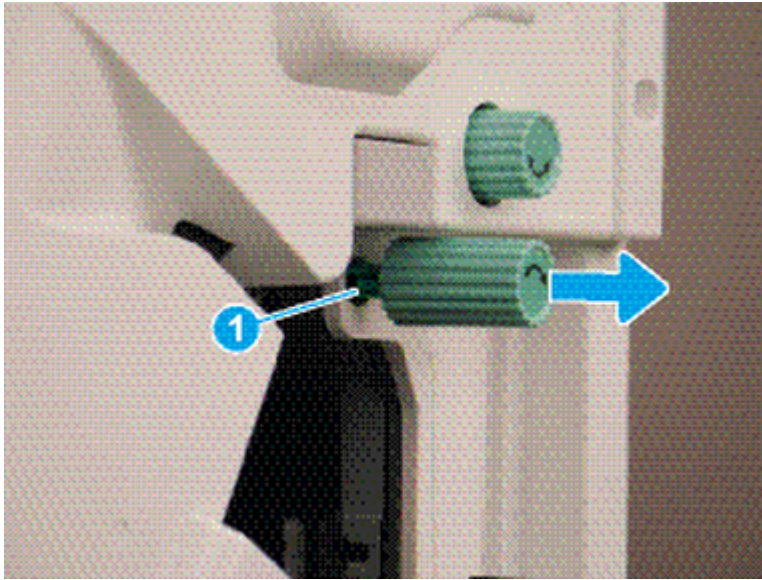


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1825 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1826 Remove the cover



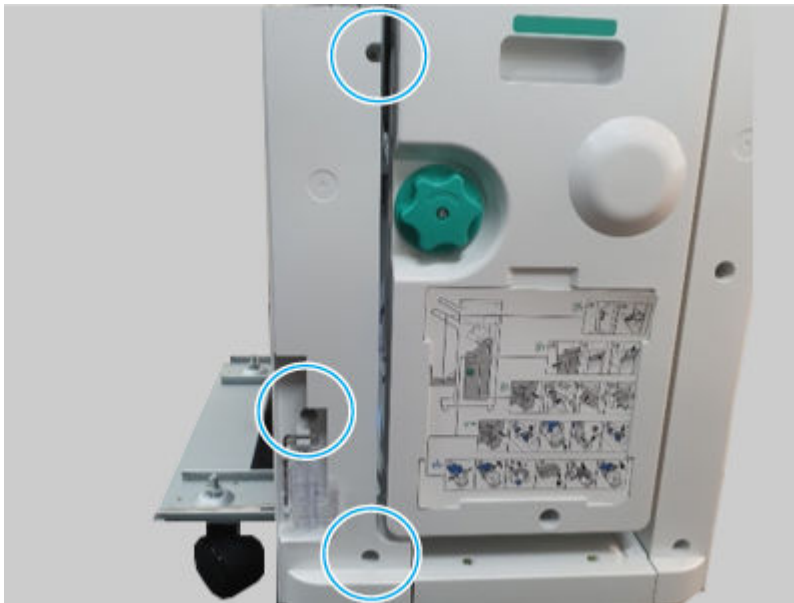
4. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1827 Remove the cover



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front lower right cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front lower right cover.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-267 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40048	Front lower right cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front lower right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower right cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower right cover.

Figure 6-1828 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Shaft hinge - door

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher shaft hinge - door.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-268 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60107	Shaft hinge - door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher shaft hinge - door

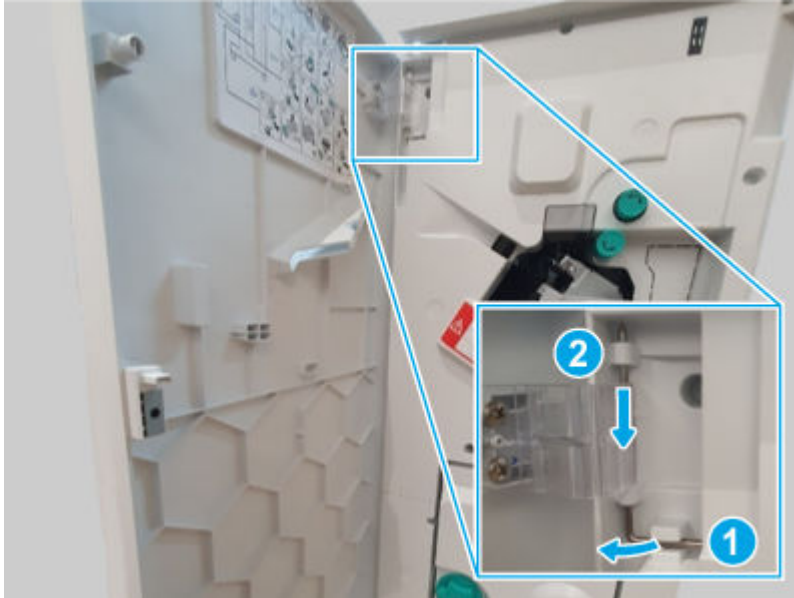
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher shaft hinge - door.

⚠ CAUTION: If both the upper and lower shaft hinges are removed the front door will not be attached to the finisher.

- 1. Upper shaft hinge - door removal:** Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

⚠ CAUTION: When the upper shaft hinge is removed the top of the front door is not attached to the finisher. To avoid damage to the door, **do not** let the top of the door separate from the finisher.

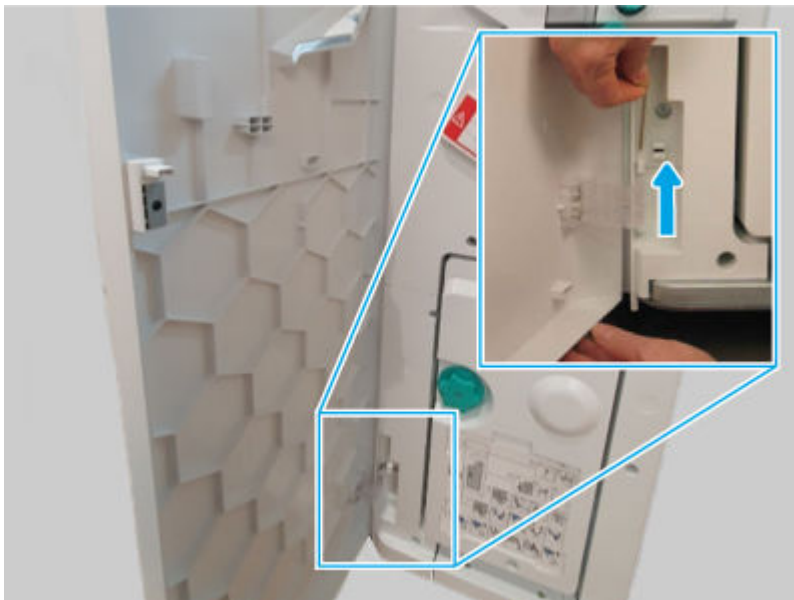
Figure 6-1829 Remove the hinge pin



2. **Lower shaft hinge - door removal** Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

⚠ CAUTION: When the lower shaft hinge is removed the bottom of the front door is not attached to the finisher. To avoid damage to the door, **do not** let the bottom of the door separate from the finisher.


Figure 6-1830 Remove the hinge pin



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher caster.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher form the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-269 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-07452A	Caster

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

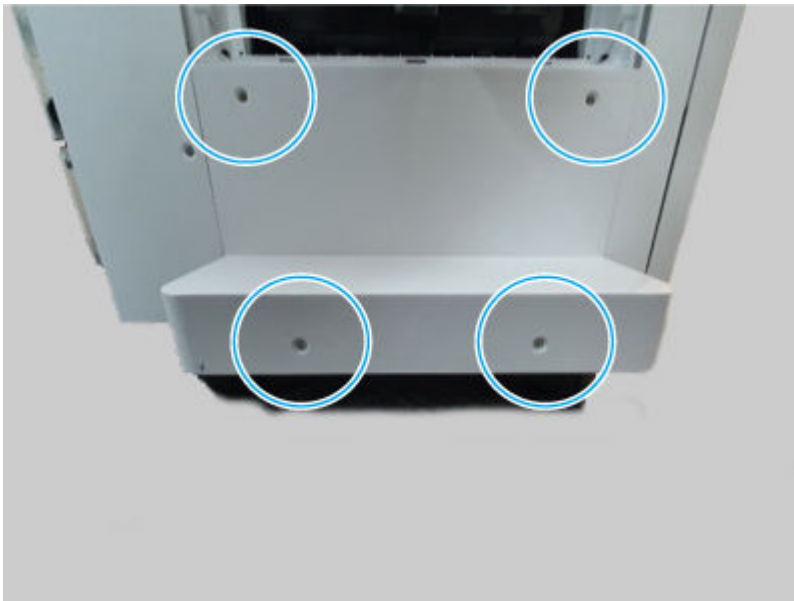
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1831 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

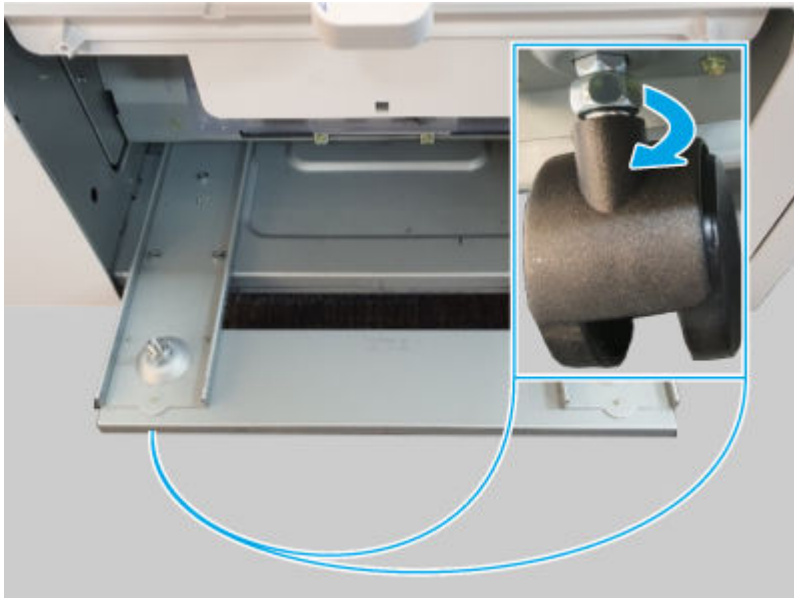
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1832 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1833 Remove the caster



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster fix nut

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher caster fix nut.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-270 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-07444A	Caster fix nut

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

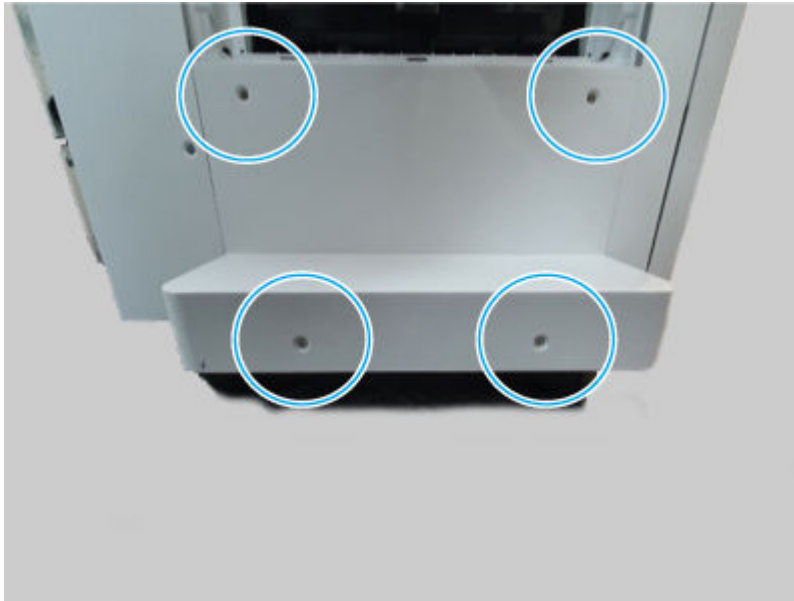
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1834 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher caster fix nut

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster fix nut.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.


 **NOTE:** Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1835 Remove the nut



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet front cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher booklet front cover.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-271 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01478B	Booklet front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

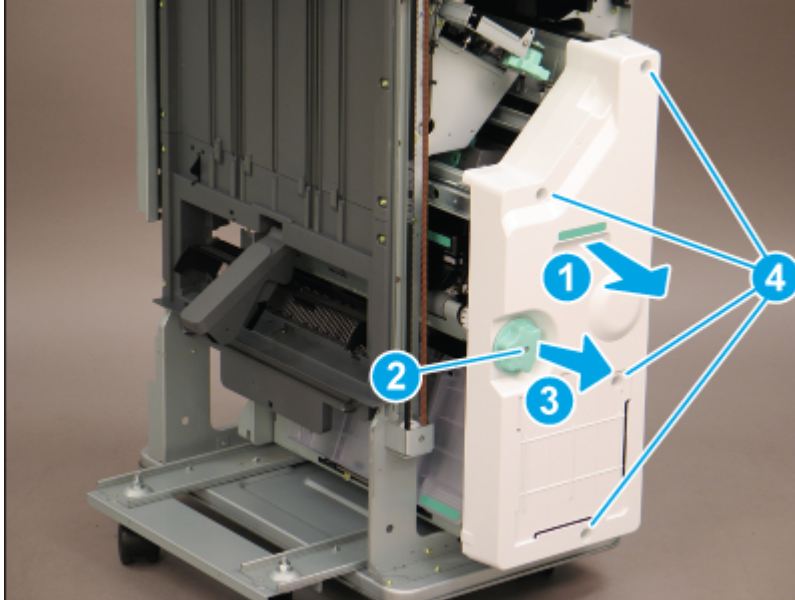
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-1836 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bridge unit

Review the external finisher bridge unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Bridge unit

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher bridge unit.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-272 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60110	Bridge unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher bridge unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge unit.

1. Open the finisher front door.

Figure 6-1837 Open the door



2. Pull the lock straight out of the finisher to release it.

Figure 6-1838 Release the lock



3. Slightly separate the finisher and printer, and then disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1839 Disconnect two connectors



4. Slide the bridge unit off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1840 Remove the unit



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge door sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher bridge door sensor.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-273 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Bridge door sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher bridge unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge unit.

1. Open the finisher front door.

Figure 6-1841 Open the door



2. Pull the lock straight out of the finisher to release it.

Figure 6-1842 Release the lock



3. Slightly separate the finisher and printer, and then disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1843 Disconnect two connectors



4. Slide the bridge unit off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1844 Remove the unit

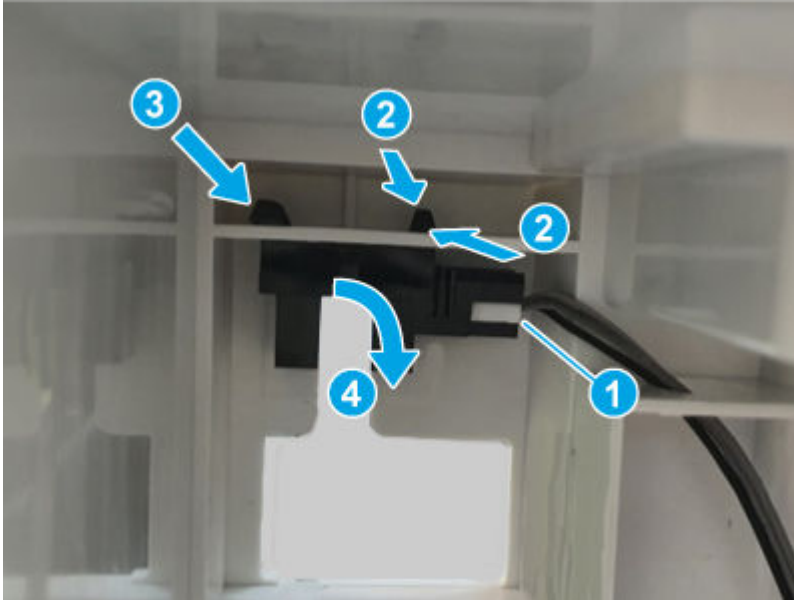


2. Remove the external finisher bridge door sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge door sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
 - Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 4) to remove it.

Figure 6-1845 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge entrance sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher bridge entrance sensor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-274 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Sensor-RP (Bridge entrance sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher bridge unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge unit.

1. Open the finisher front door.

Figure 6-1846 Open the door



2. Pull the lock straight out of the finisher to release it.

Figure 6-1847 Release the lock



3. Slightly separate the finisher and printer, and then disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1848 Disconnect two connectors



4. Slide the bridge unit off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1849 Remove the unit



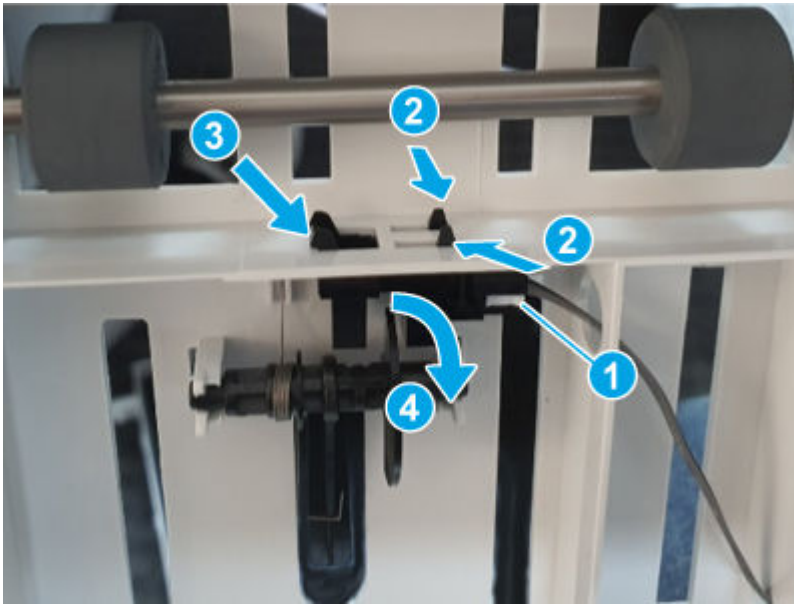
2. Remove the external finisher bridge entrance sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge entrance sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).

- Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 4) to remove it.

Figure 6-1850 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge exit sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher bridge exit sensor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-275 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Bridge exit sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher bridge unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge unit.

1. Open the finisher front door.

Figure 6-1851 Open the door



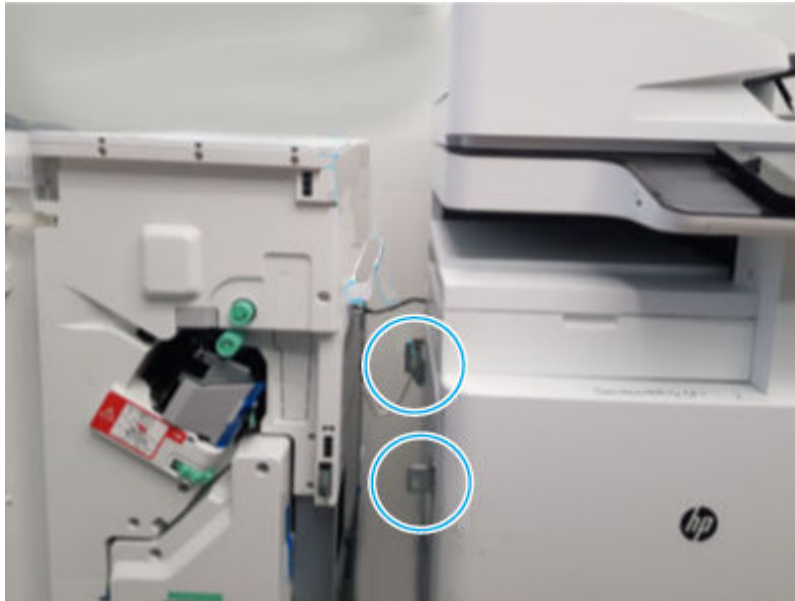
2. Pull the lock straight out of the finisher to release it.

Figure 6-1852 Release the lock



3. Slightly separate the finisher and printer, and then disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1853 Disconnect two connectors



4. Slide the bridge unit off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1854 Remove the unit

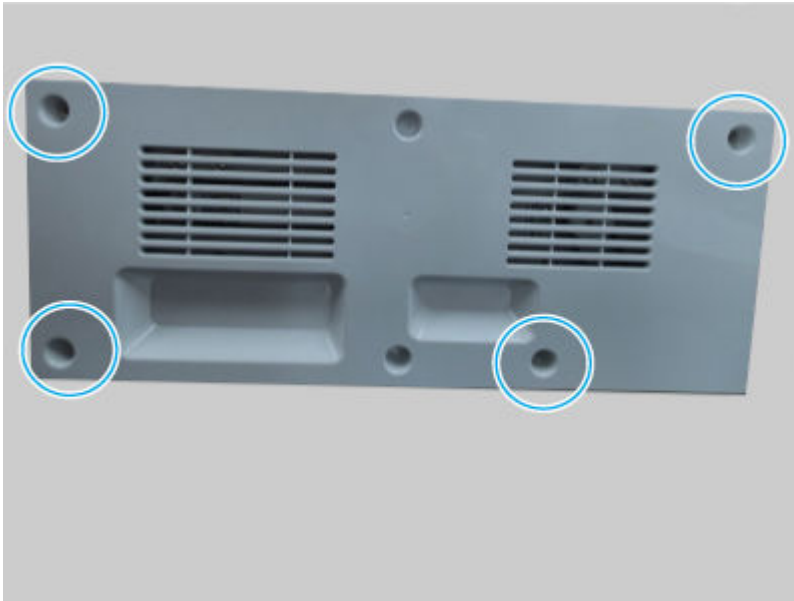


2. Remove the external finisher bridge exit sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge exit sensor.

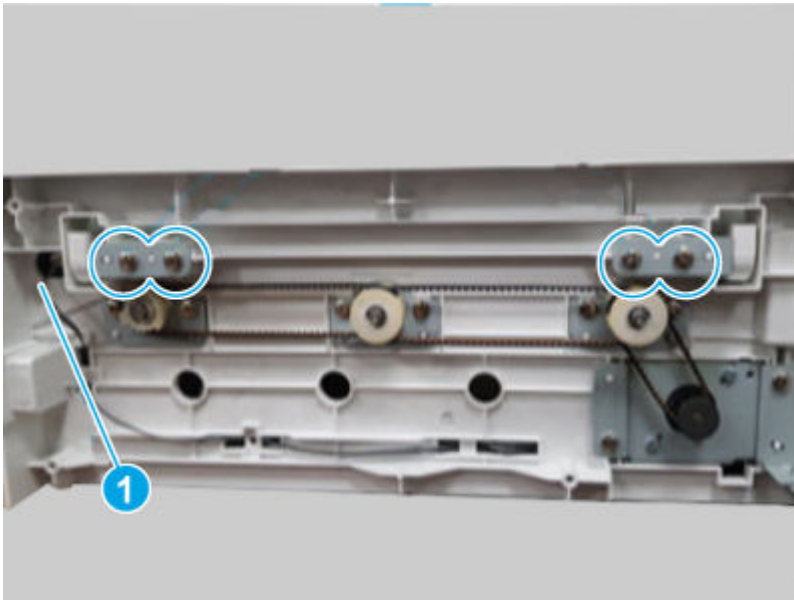
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1855 Remove the cover



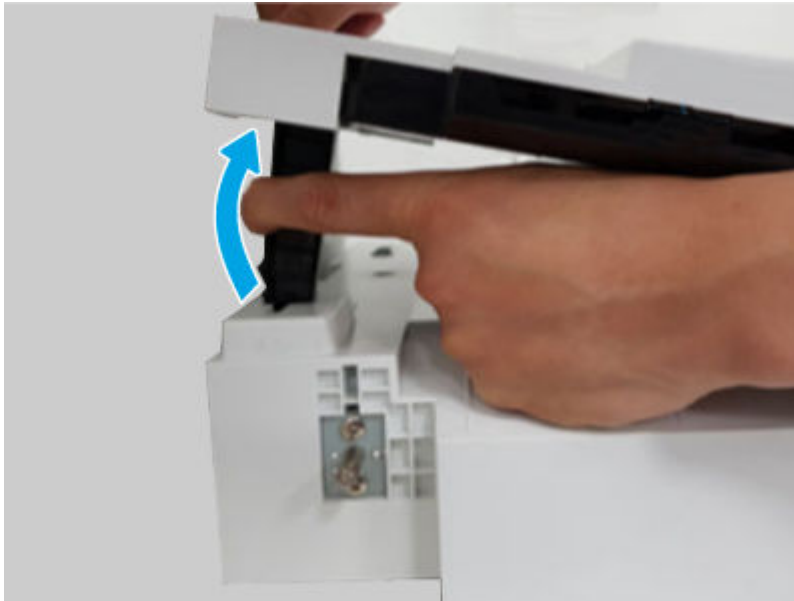
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the sheet-metal holder (callout 1).

Figure 6-1856 Remove the holder



3. Open the bridge door.

Figure 6-1857 Open the door



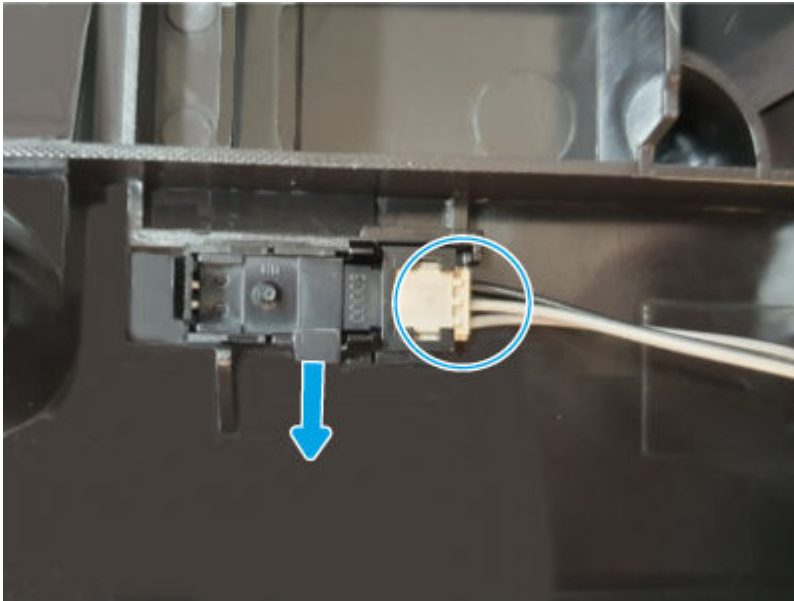
4. Remove thirteen screws, and then remove the inner cover.

Figure 6-1858 Remove the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, release one tab, and then remove the bridge exit sensor.

Figure 6-1859 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher bridge motor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-276 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ19-80501	Bridge motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher bridge unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge unit.

1. Open the finisher front door.

Figure 6-1860 Open the door



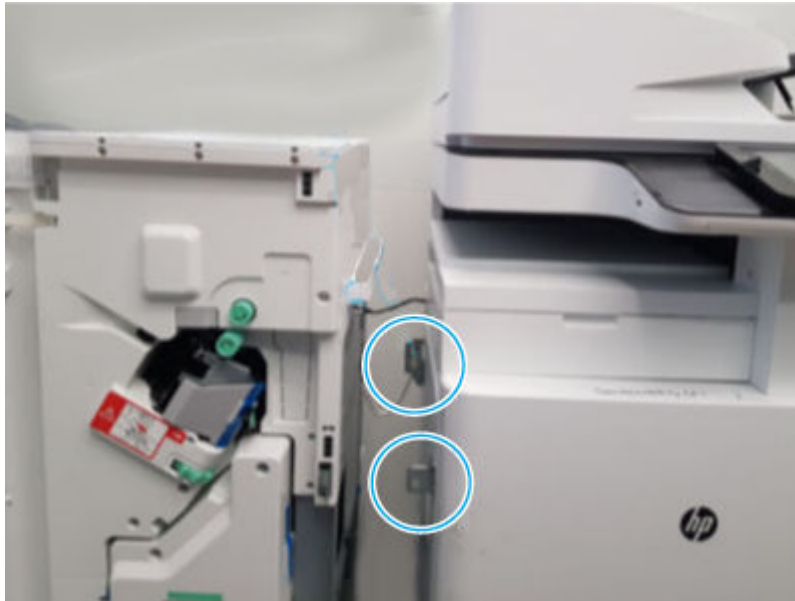
2. Pull the lock straight out of the finisher to release it.

Figure 6-1861 Release the lock



3. Slightly separate the finisher and printer, and then disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1862 Disconnect two connectors



4. Slide the bridge unit off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1863 Remove the unit

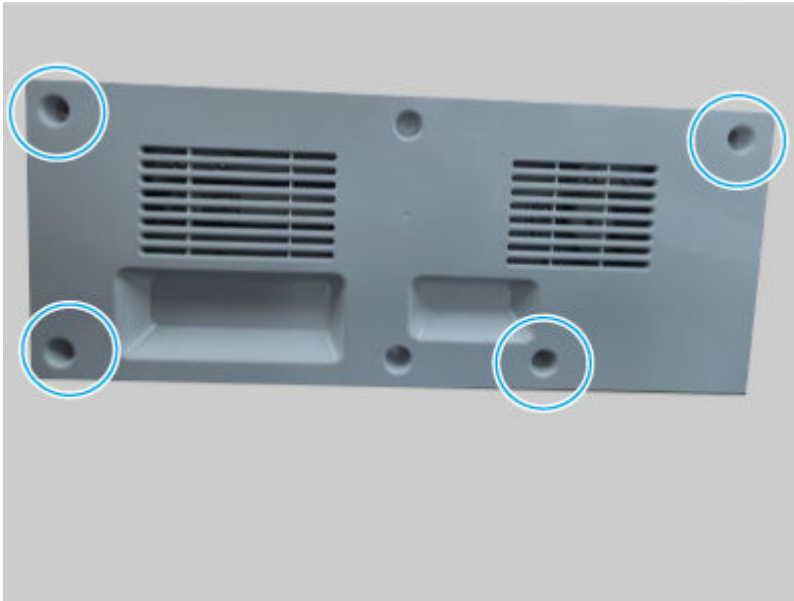


2. Remove the external finisher bridge motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge motor.

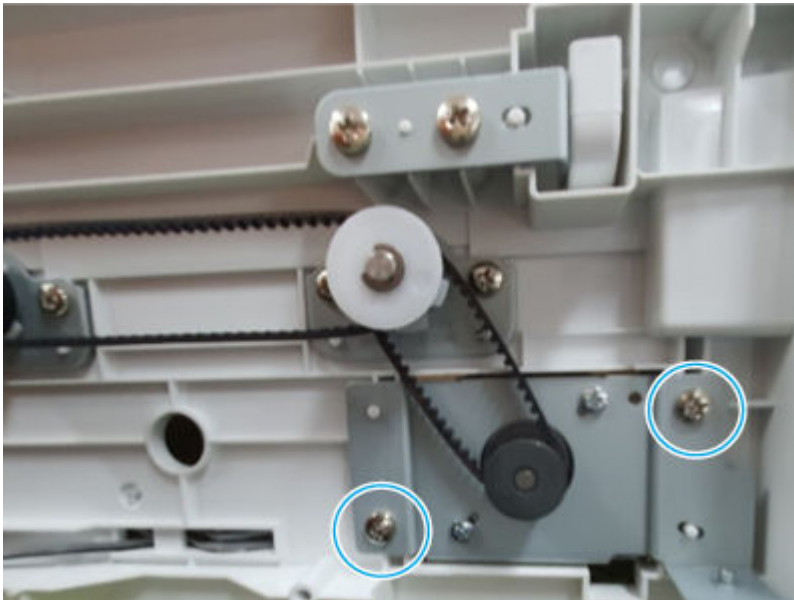
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1864 Remove the cover



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1865 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the bridge motor.

Figure 6-1866 Remove the motor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Entrance unit

Review the external finisher entrance unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Entrance sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher entrance sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-277 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Sensor-RP (Entrance sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

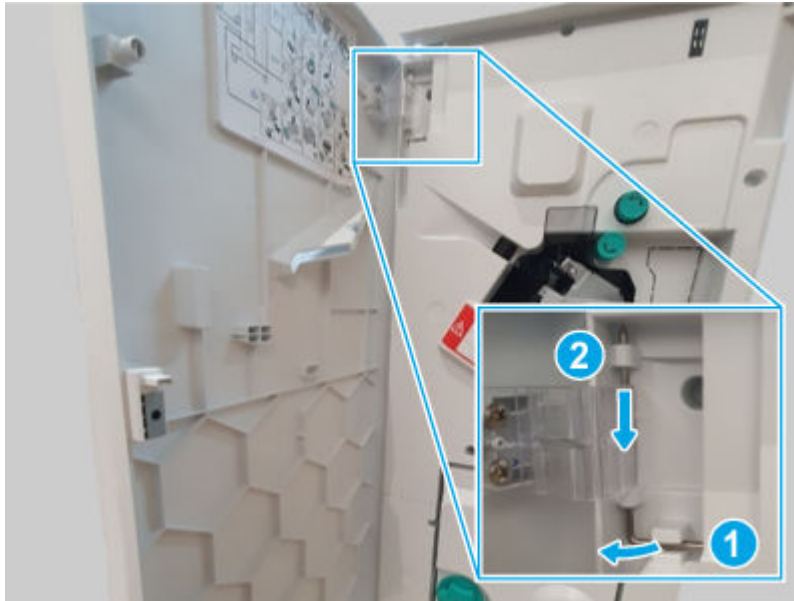
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

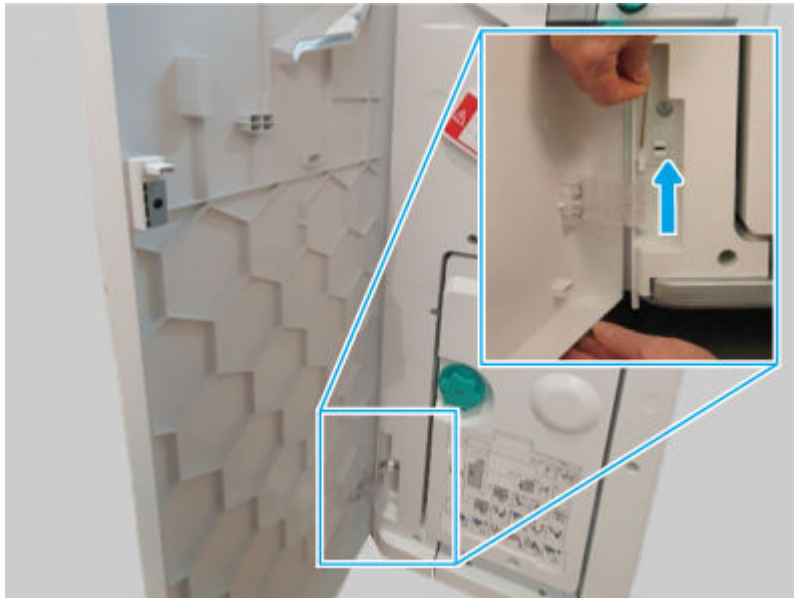
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1867 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1868 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

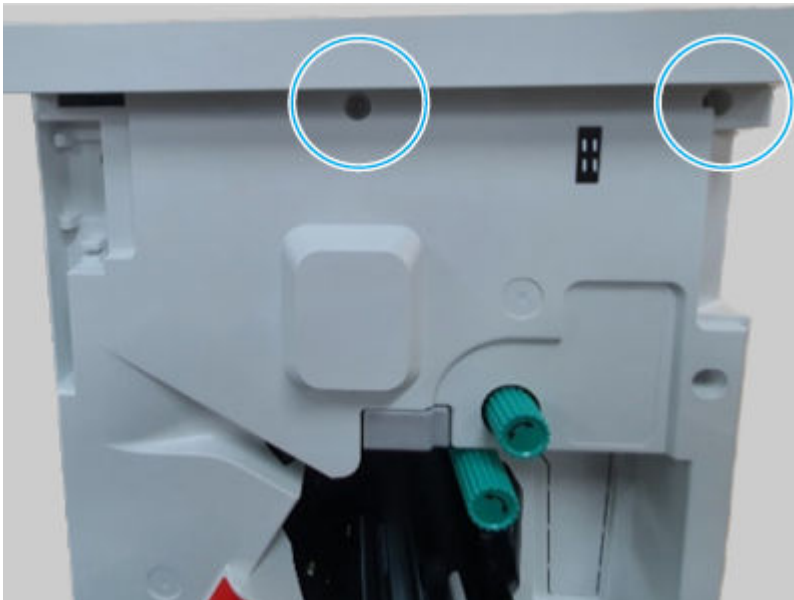
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1869 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1870 Remove the cover

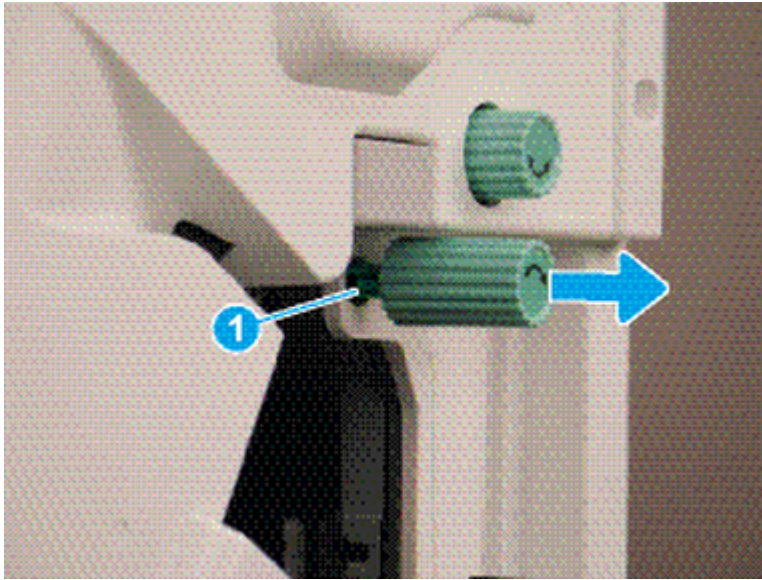


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1871 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1872 Remove the cover



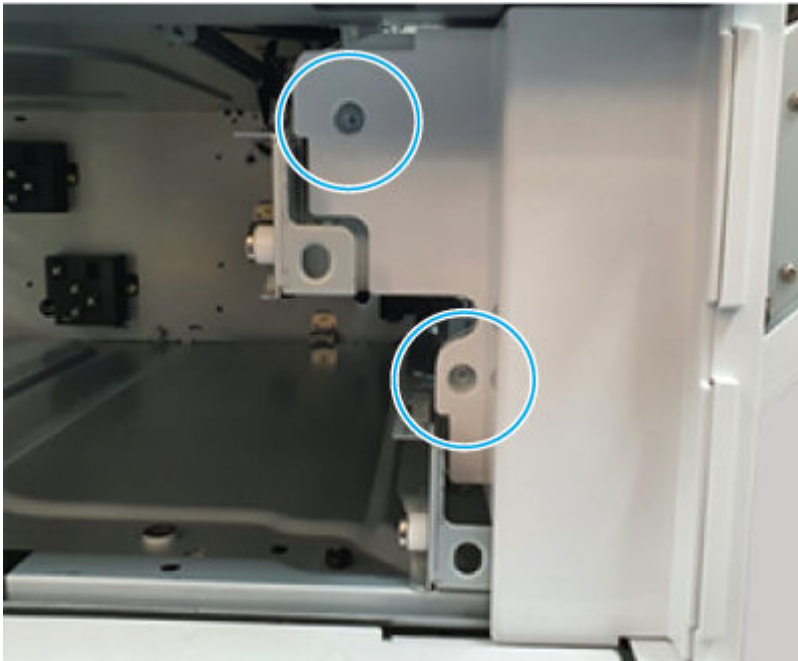
4. Remove the front lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front lower cover.

1. If Tray 2 and Tray 3 are installed, remove them now.

2. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1873 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

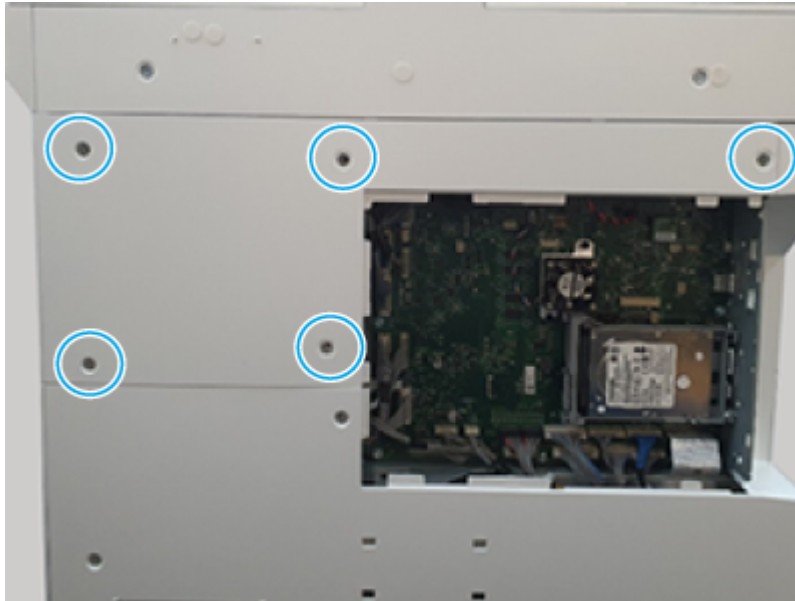
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1874 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1875 Remove the cover



6. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1876 Remove the cover



7. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

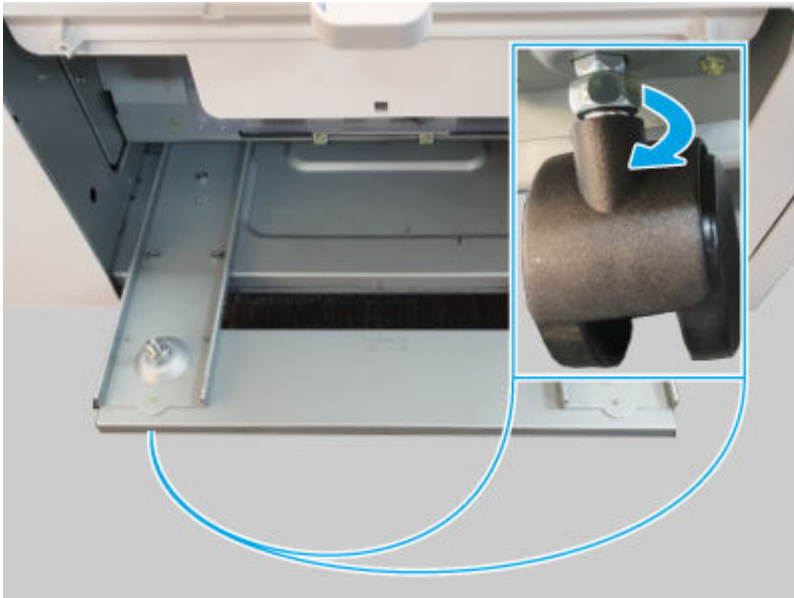
📝 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1877 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1878 Remove the caster

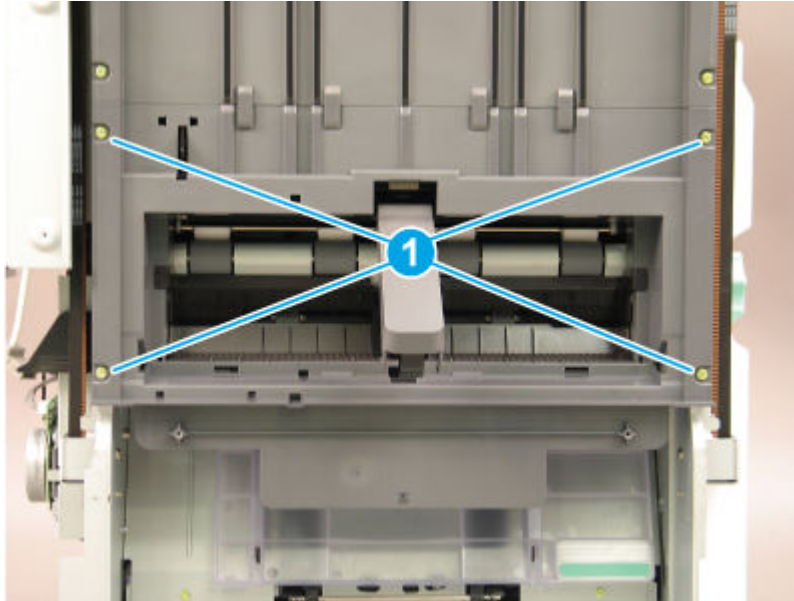


8. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1879 Remove four screws

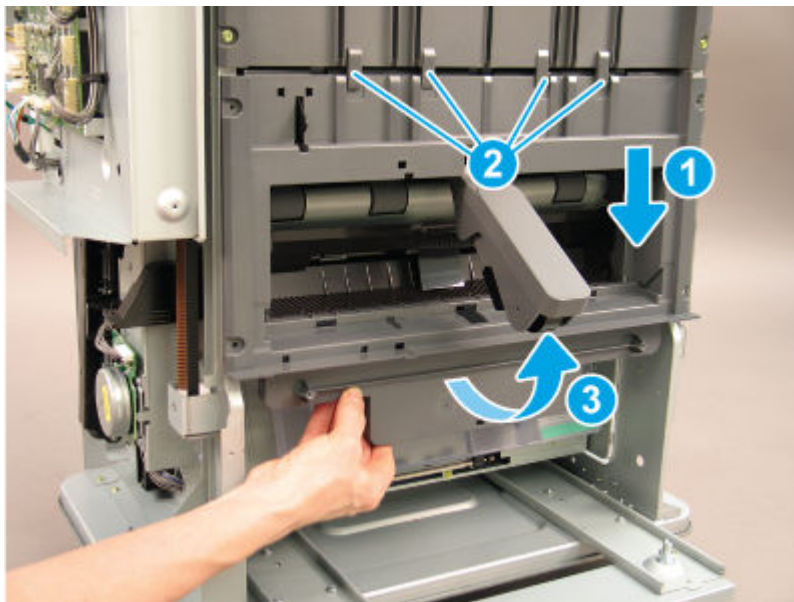


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

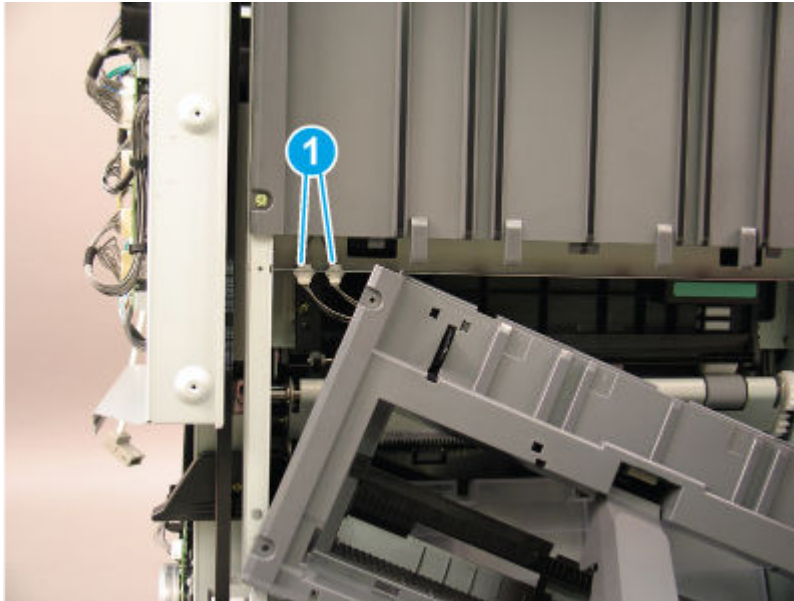
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1880 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1881 Remove the cover

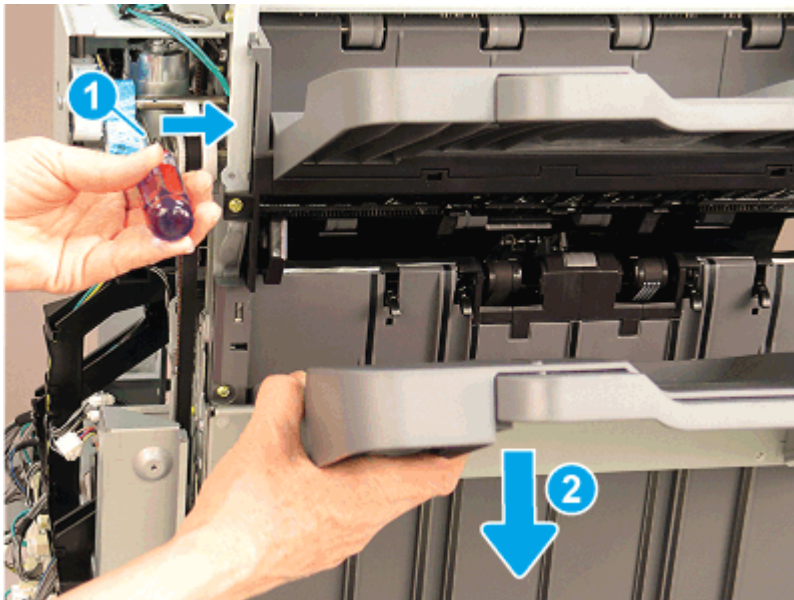


9. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

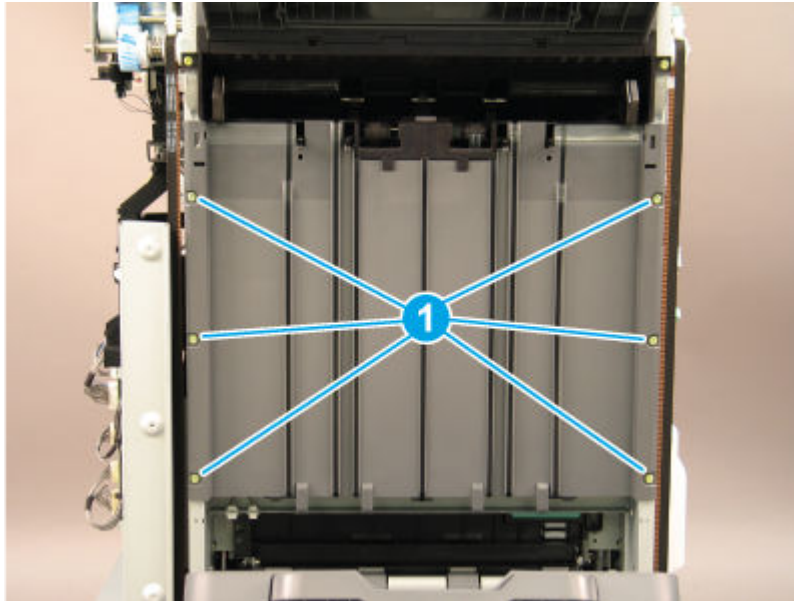
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1882 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1883 Remove six screws

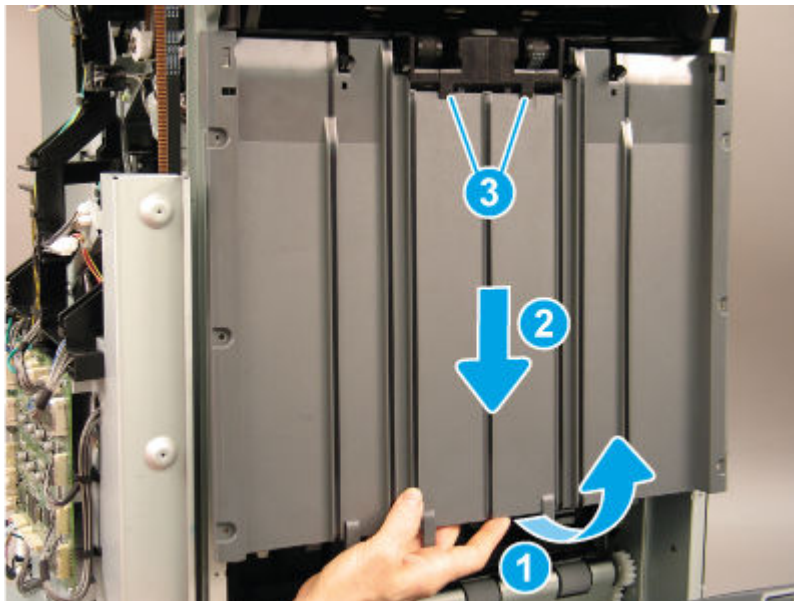


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

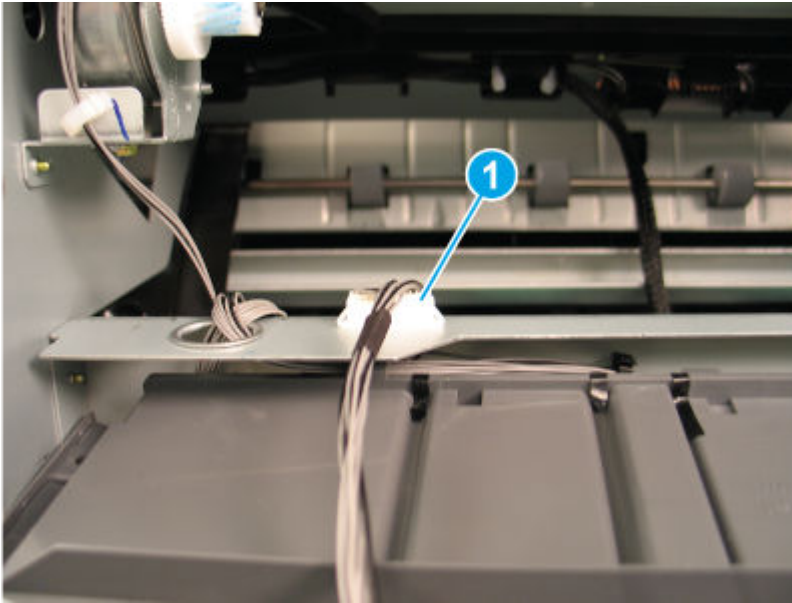
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1884 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1885 Remove the cover



10. Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


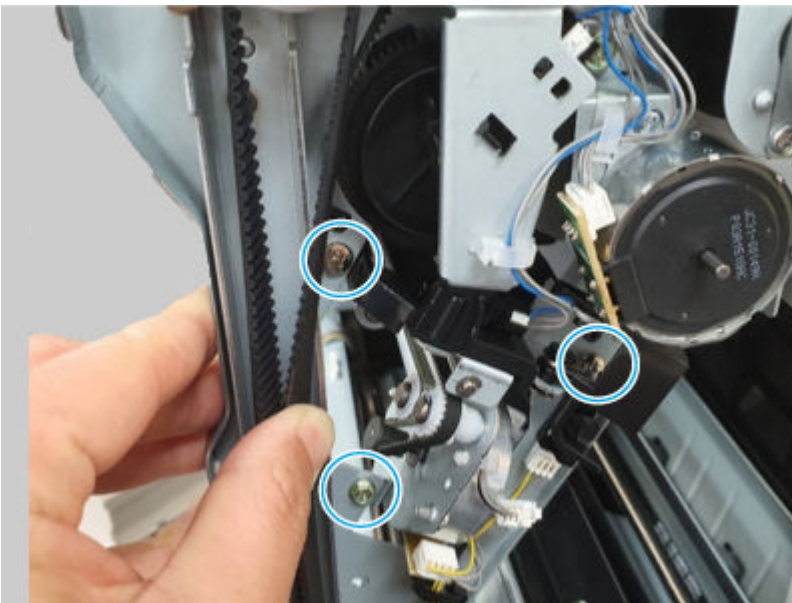
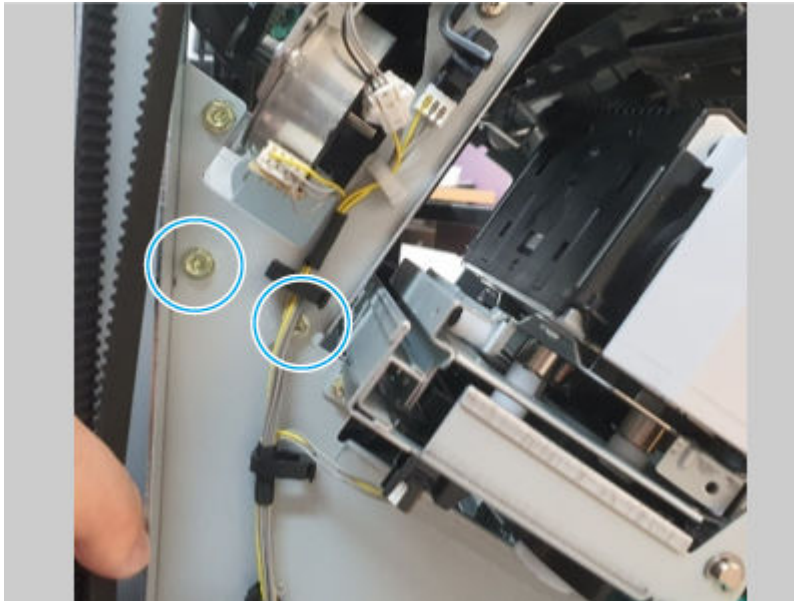
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1886 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-1887 Remove two screws

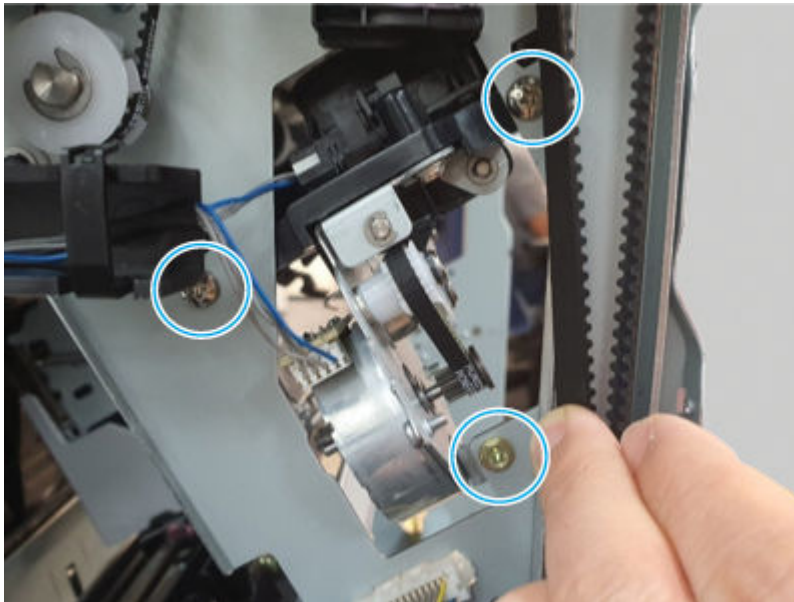


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1888 Release the tamper



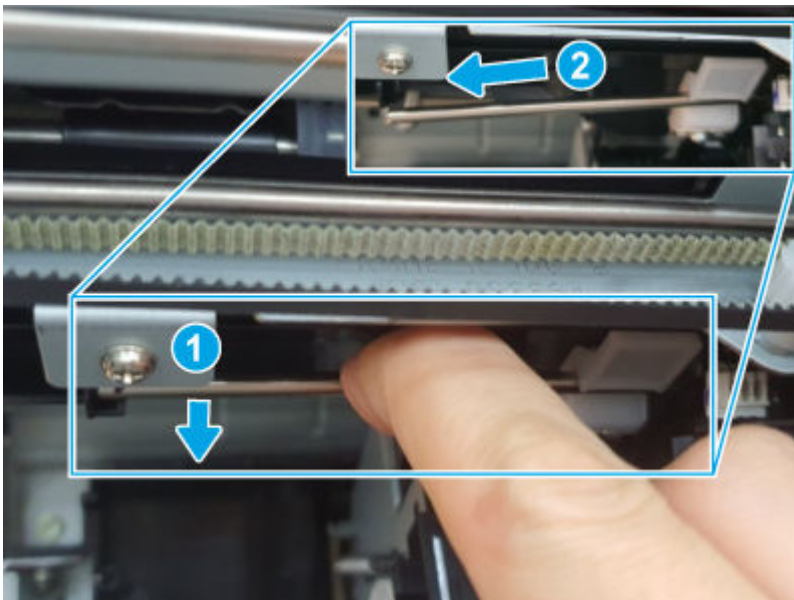
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-1889 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-1890 Remove the shaft

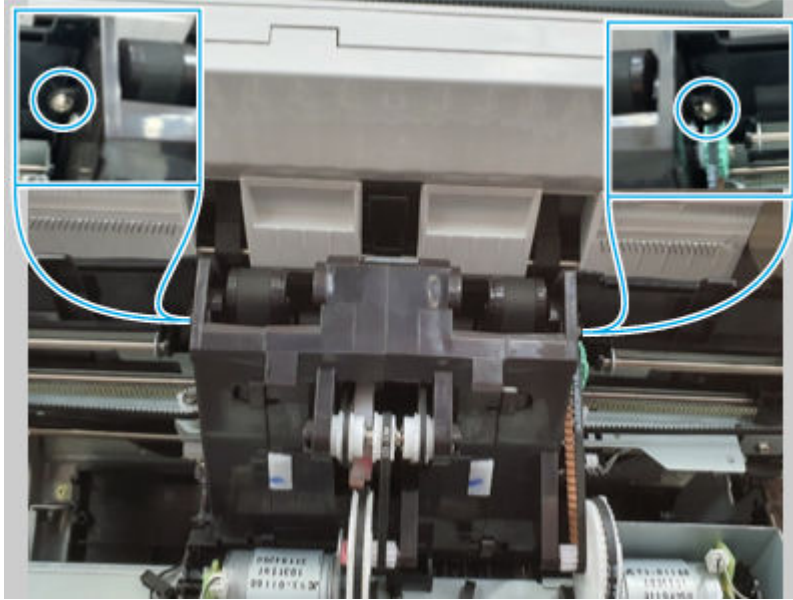


6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.



NOTE: Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-1891 Remove the unit



11. Remove the external finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper.

- Disconnect three connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the front tamper.


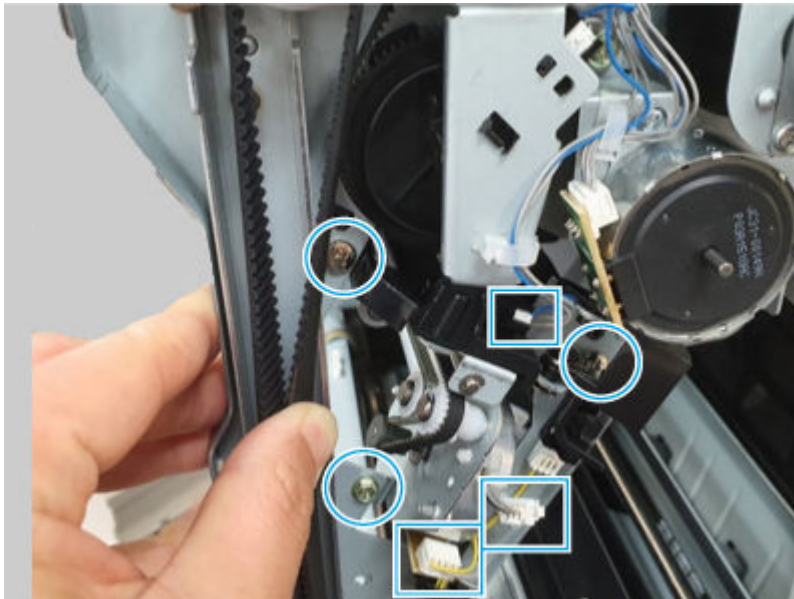
 **NOTE:** If the tamper unit is removed after the ejector unit to gain access to another assembly, the screws have already been removed.

Figure 6-1892 Remove the tamper

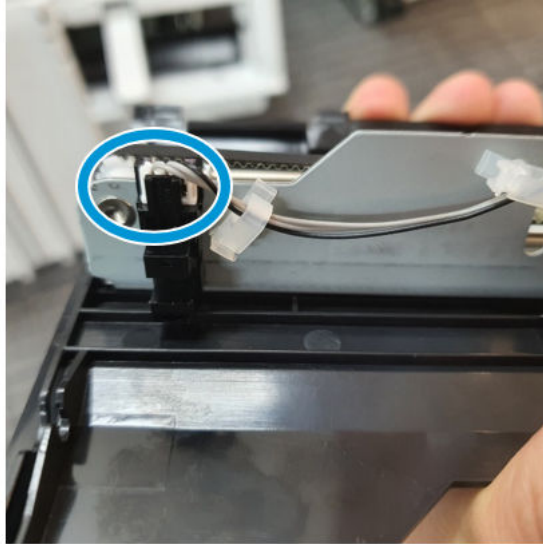


12. Remove the external finisher entrance sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher entrance sensor.

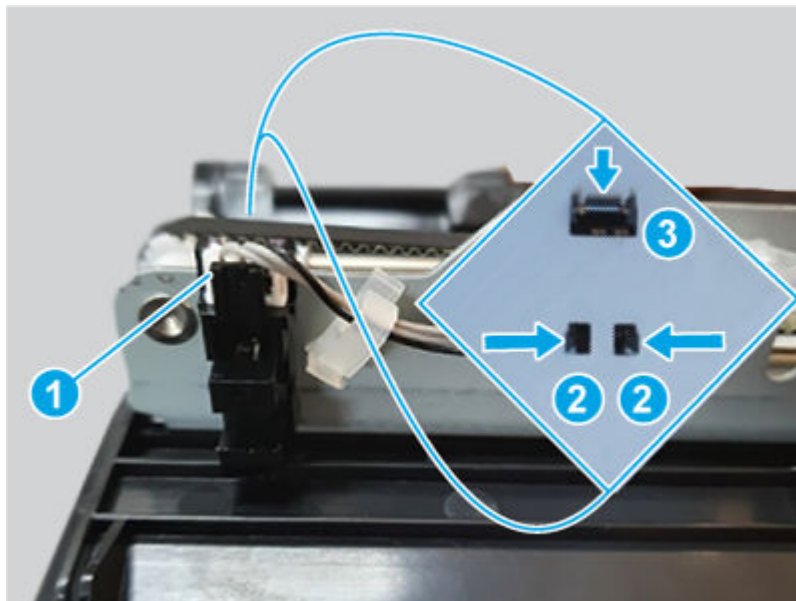
1. Disconnect the connector

Figure 6-1893 Disconnect the connector



2. Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release two hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the entrance sensor.


Figure 6-1894 Remove the sensor



13. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher entrance motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-278 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60104	Entrance motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

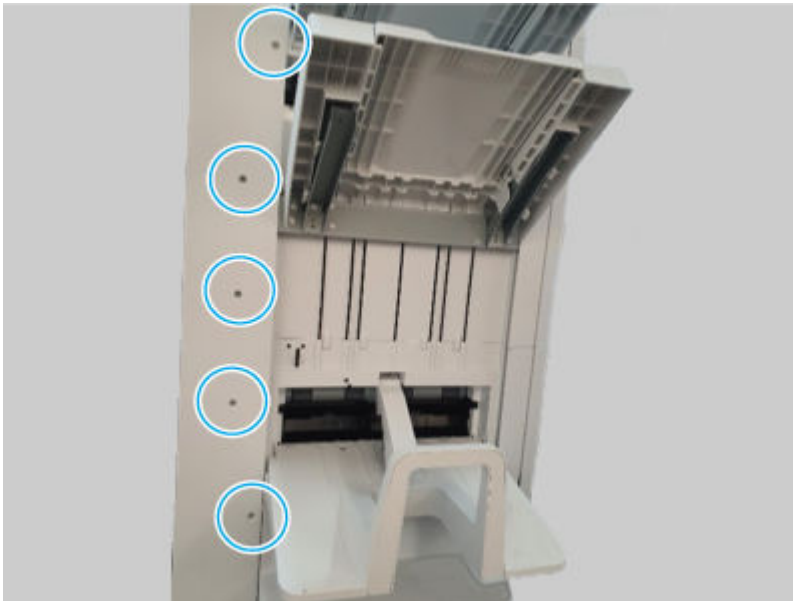
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1895 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1896 Remove the cover

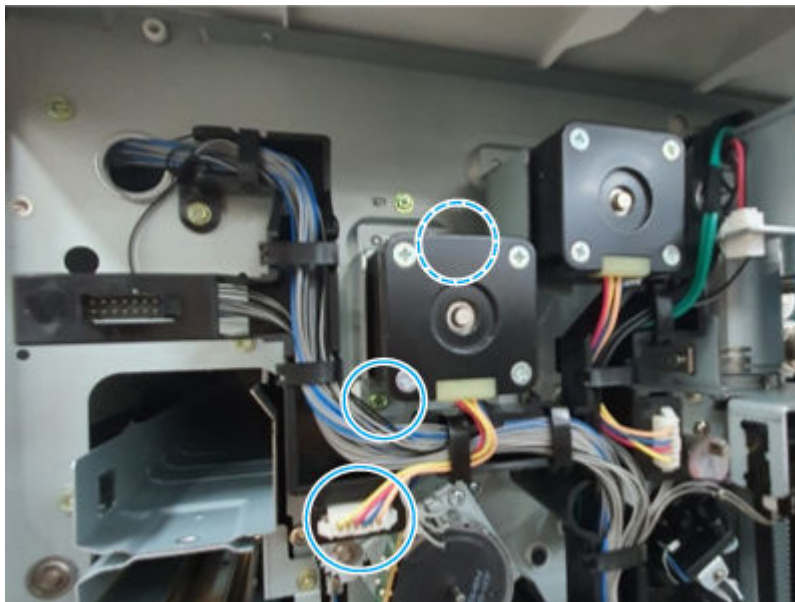


Remove the external finisher entrance motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher entrance motor assembly.

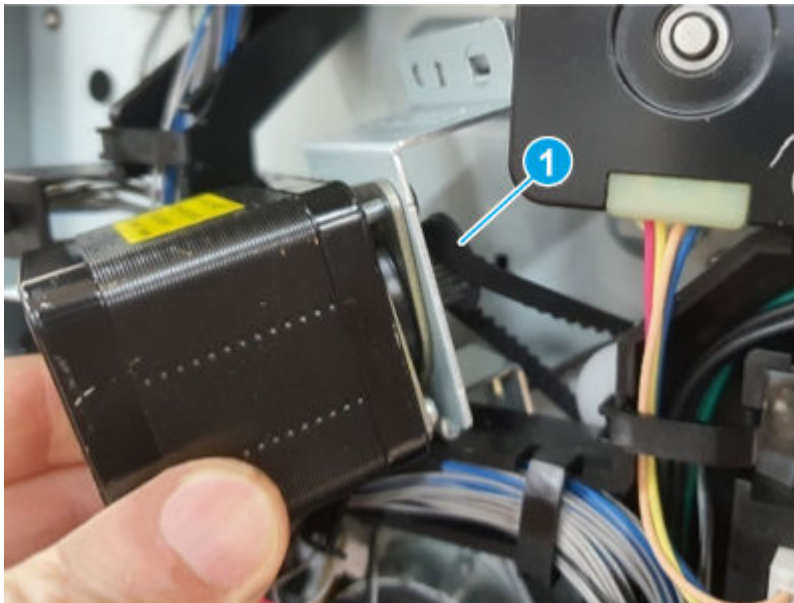
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1897 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Slightly separate the entrance motor assembly from the finisher chassis, remove the belt (callout 1), and then remove the entrance motor assembly.

Figure 6-1898 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher entrance motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-279 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ19-80501	Entrance motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

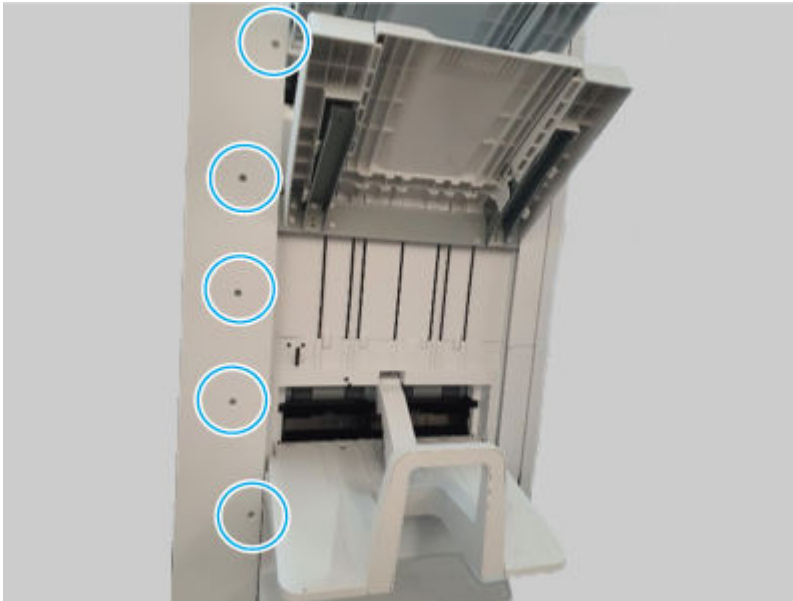
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1899 Remove five screws

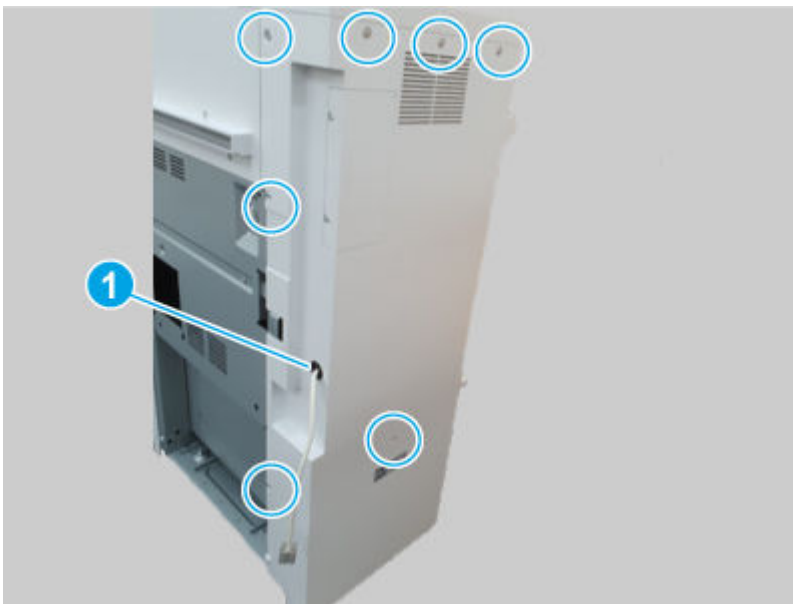


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1900 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher entrance motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher entrance motor assembly.

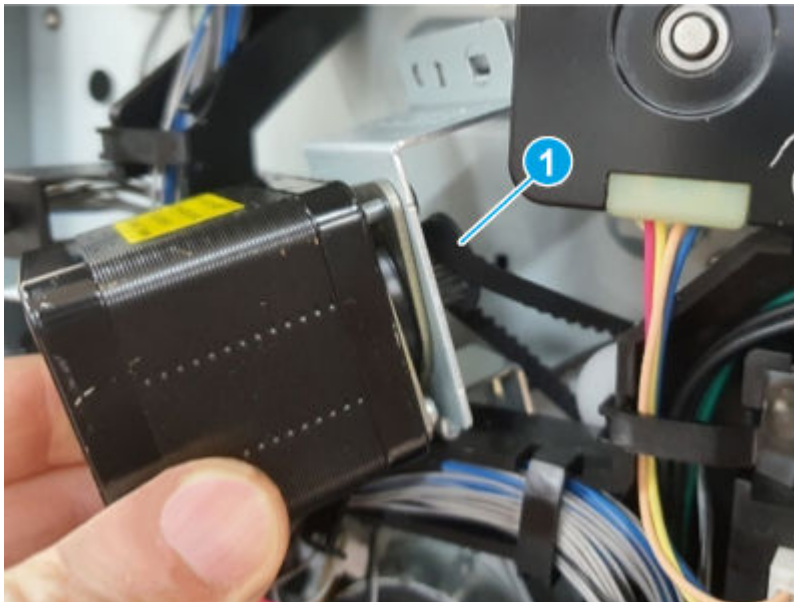
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1901 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Slightly separate the entrance motor assembly from the finisher chassis, remove the belt (callout 1), and then remove the entrance motor assembly.

Figure 6-1902 Remove the assembly



3. Remove the external finisher entrance motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher entrance motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the entrance motor.

Figure 6-1903 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Punch unit

Review the external finisher punch unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Punch unit

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher punch unit.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-280 Part information

Part number	Part description
Y1G10-67901	Punch unit (2-3 hole)
Y1G11-67901	Punch unit (2-4 hole)
Y1G12-67901	Punch unit (Swedish hole)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher punch unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher punch unit.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove one screw, and then remove the punch unit.

Figure 6-1904 Remove the unit



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tray diverter unit

Review the external finisher tray diverter unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Top jam cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top jam cover assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-281 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

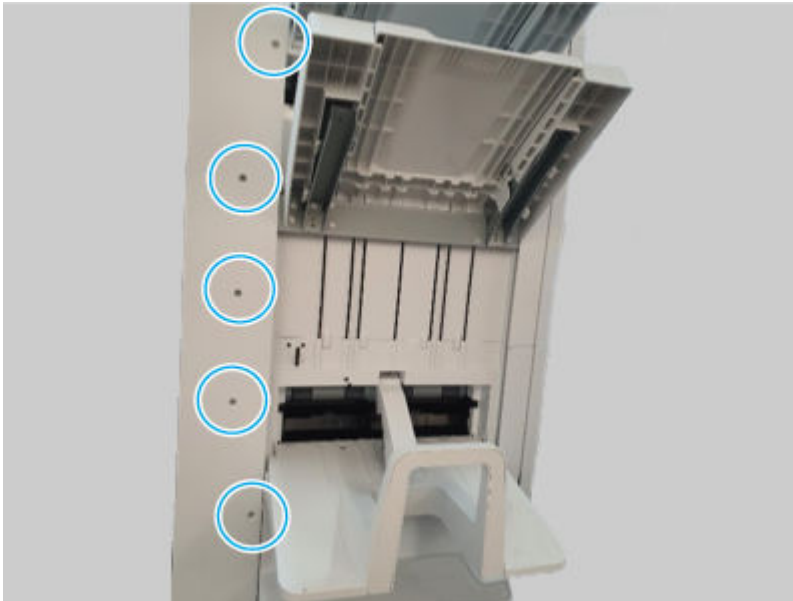
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1905 Remove five screws

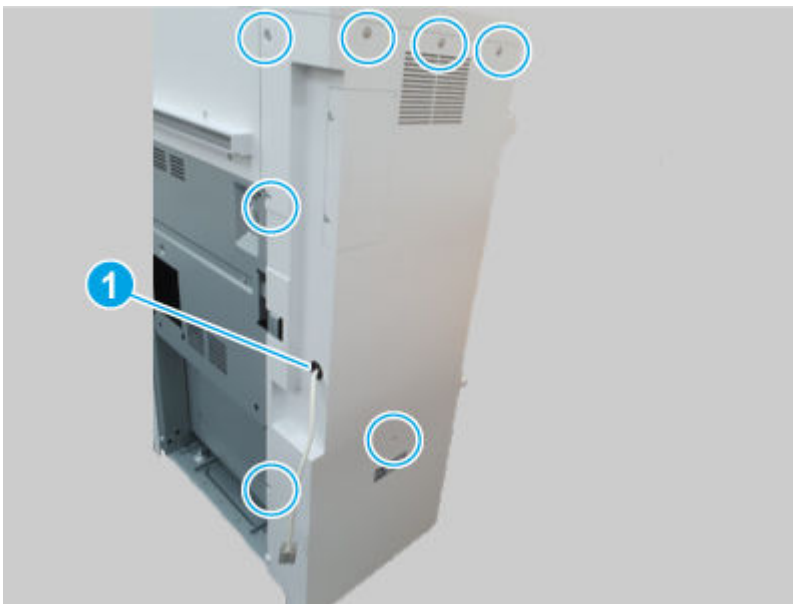


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1906 Remove the cover

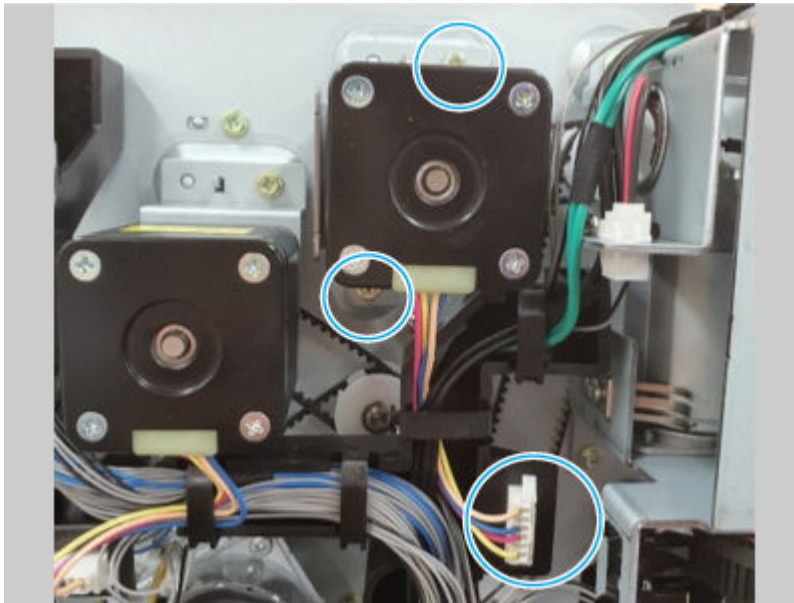


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1907 Remove the assembly

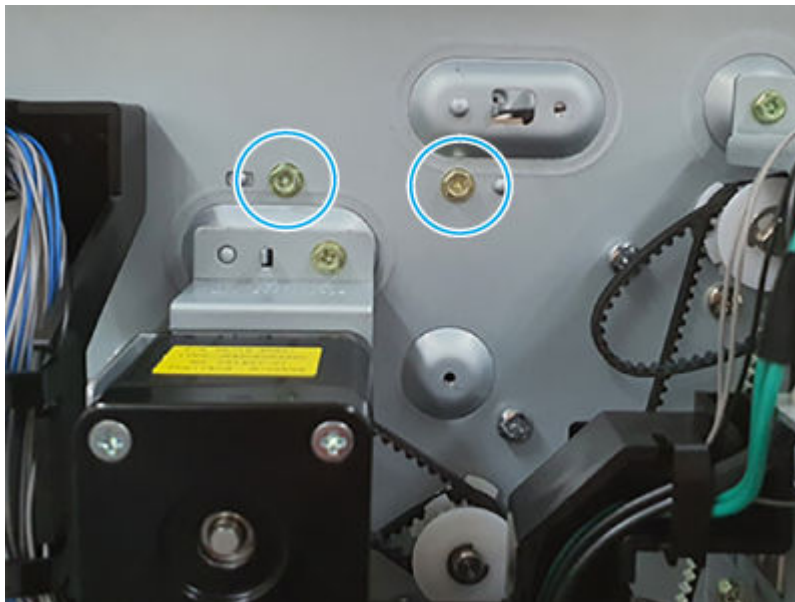


3. Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

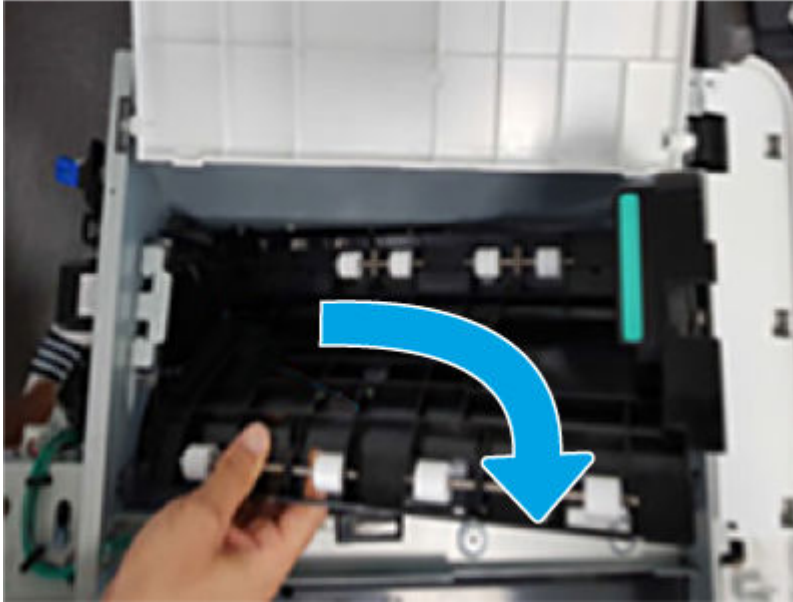
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1908 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1909 Remove the assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray diverter

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher tray diverter.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-282 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-07205A	Tray diverter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

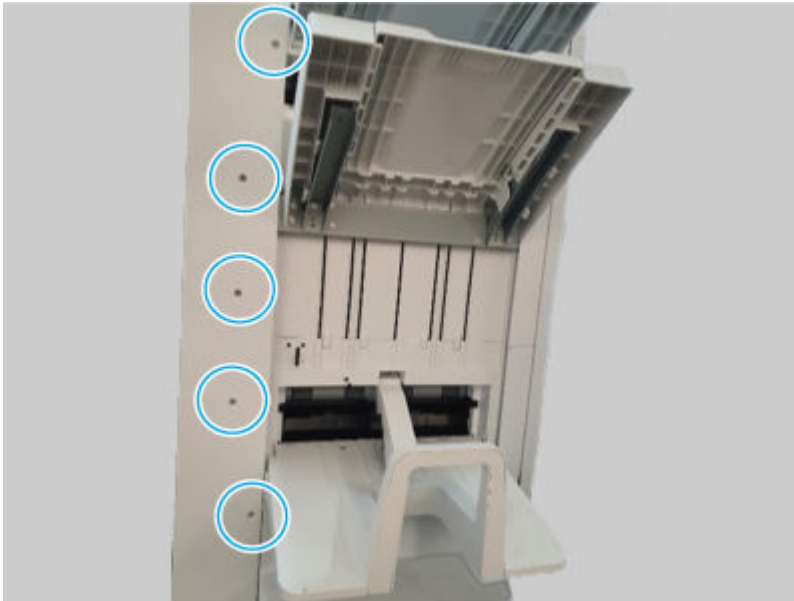
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1910 Remove five screws

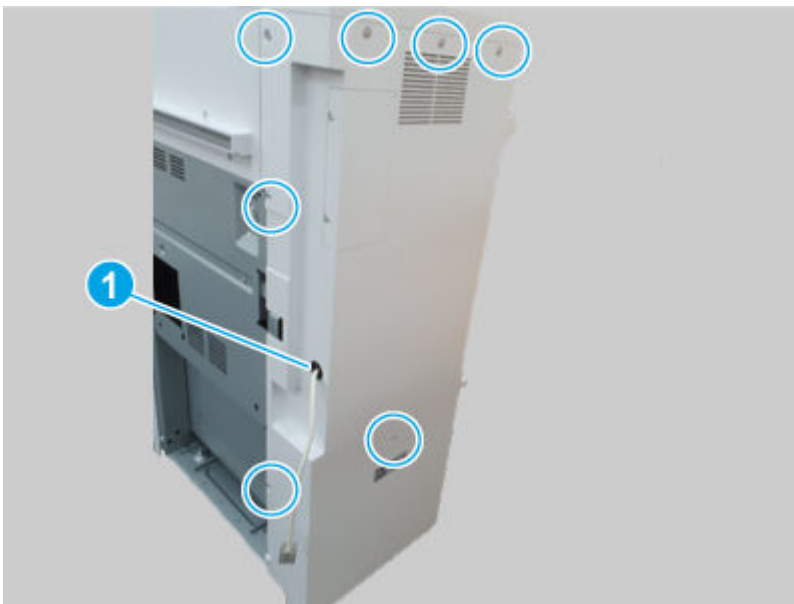


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1911 Remove the cover

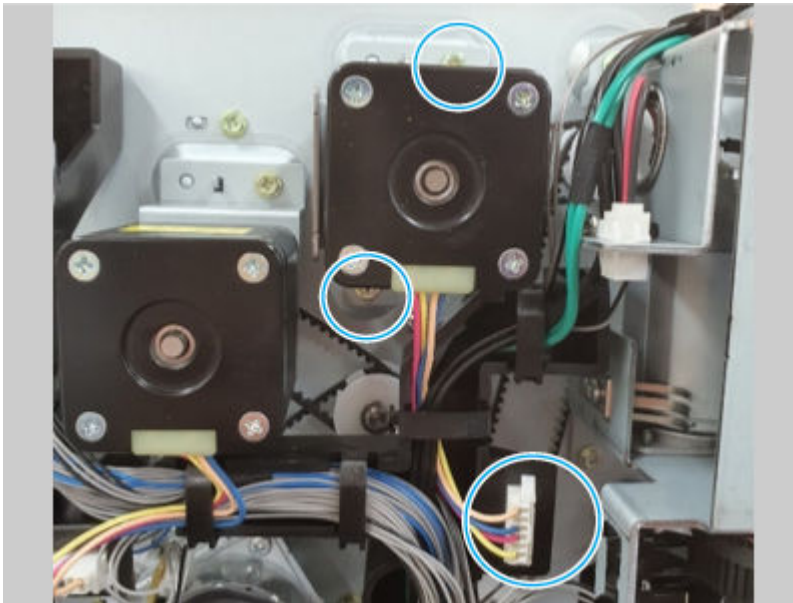


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1912 Remove the assembly

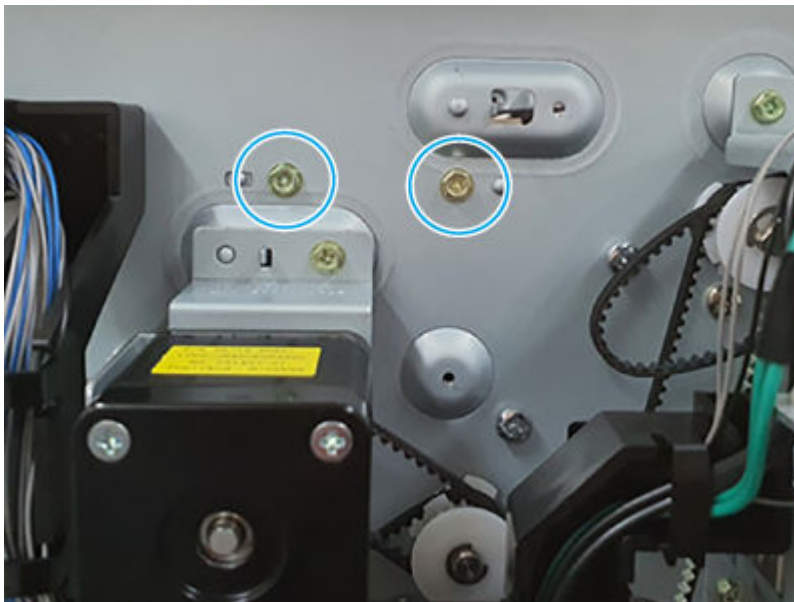


3. Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1913 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1914 Remove the assembly

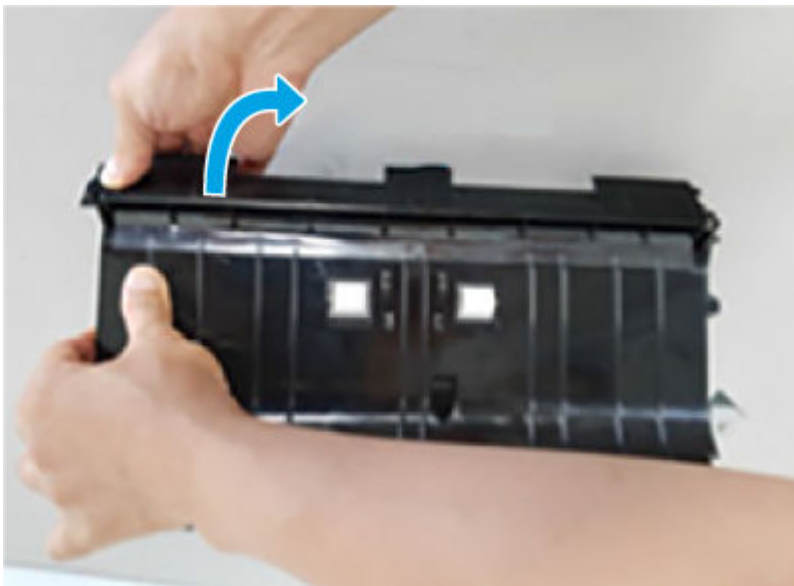


4. Remove the external finisher tray diverter

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher tray diverter.

- Carefully separate the tray diverter from the top jam cover assembly to remove it.

Figure 6-1915 Remove the diverter



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top door open switch

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top door open switch.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-283 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02631A	Top door open switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

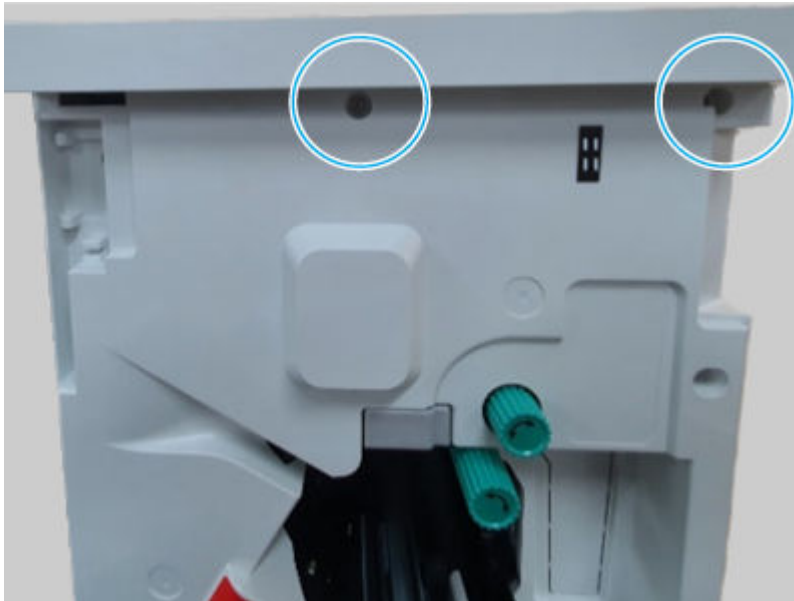
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1916 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1917 Remove the cover

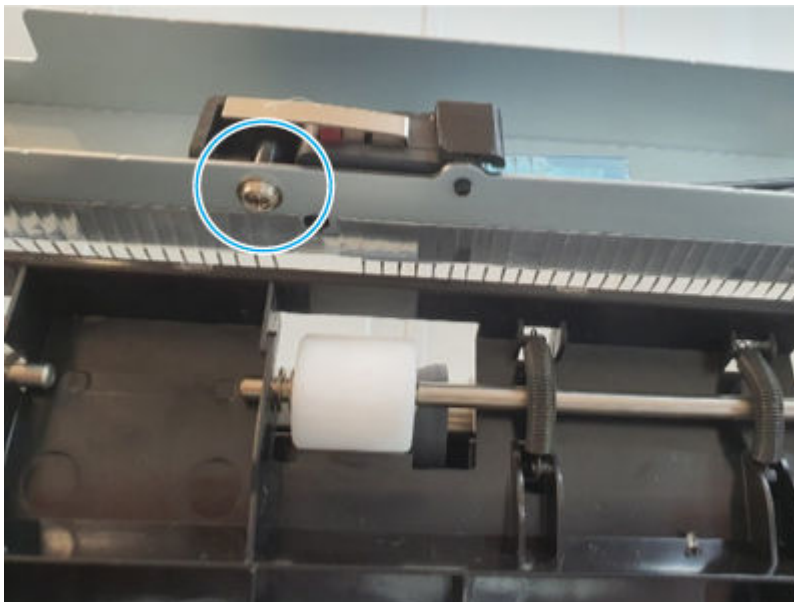


2. Remove the external finisher top door open switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top door open switch.

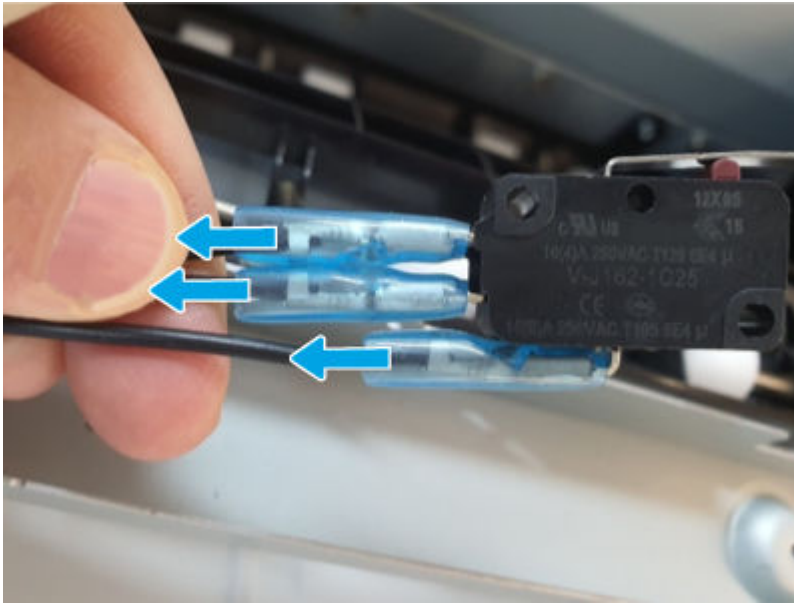
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1918 Remove one screw



2. Separate the top door open switch from the finisher, and then disconnect three connectors to remove it.


Figure 6-1919 Remove the switch



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray diverter cam

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher tray diverter cam.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-284 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01458A	Tray diverter cam

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

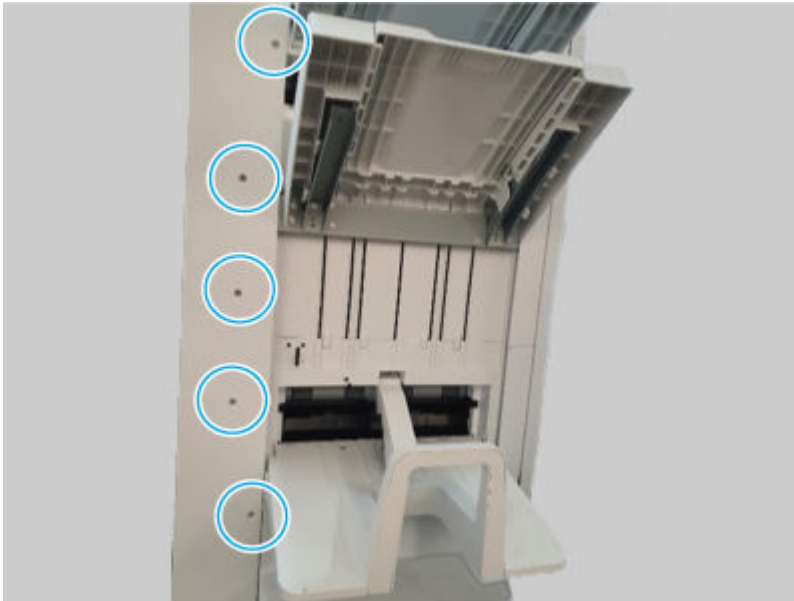
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1920 Remove five screws

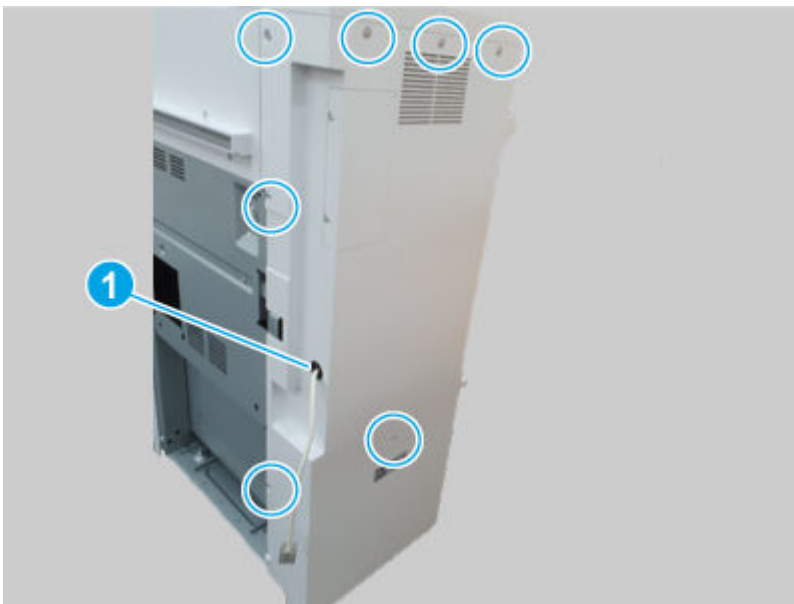


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1921 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher entrance motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher entrance motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the entrance motor.

Figure 6-1922 Remove the motor

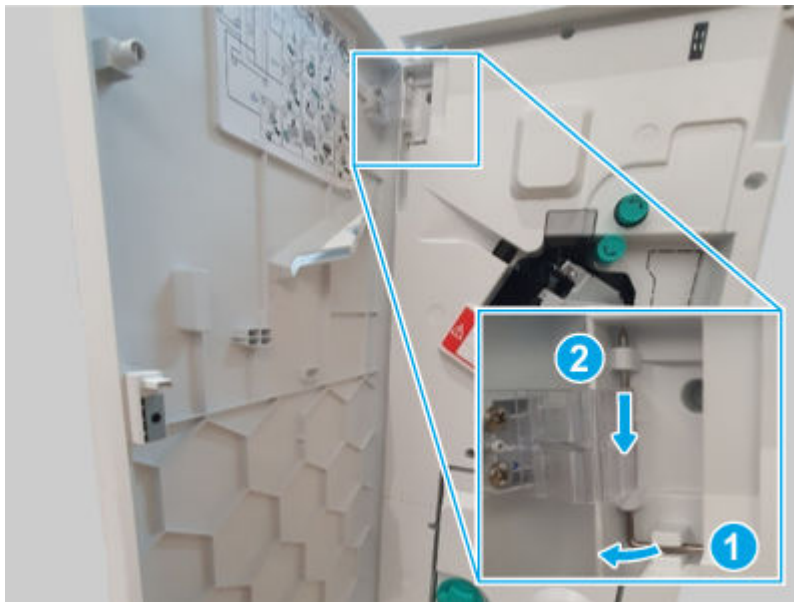


3. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

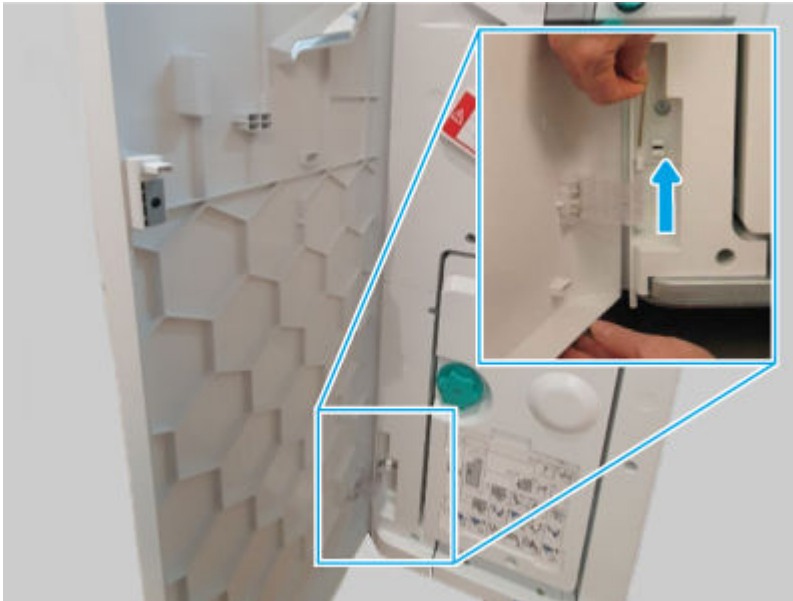
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1923 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1924 Remove the door



4. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

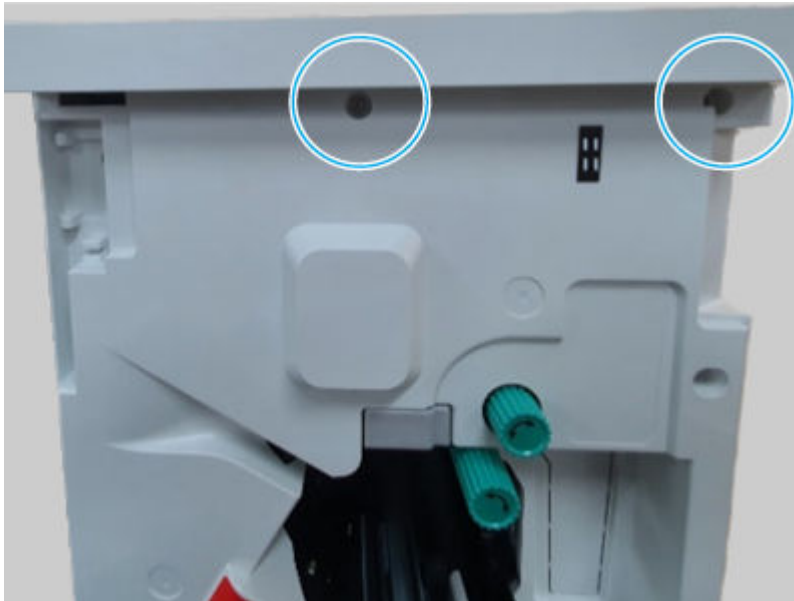
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1925 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1926 Remove the cover

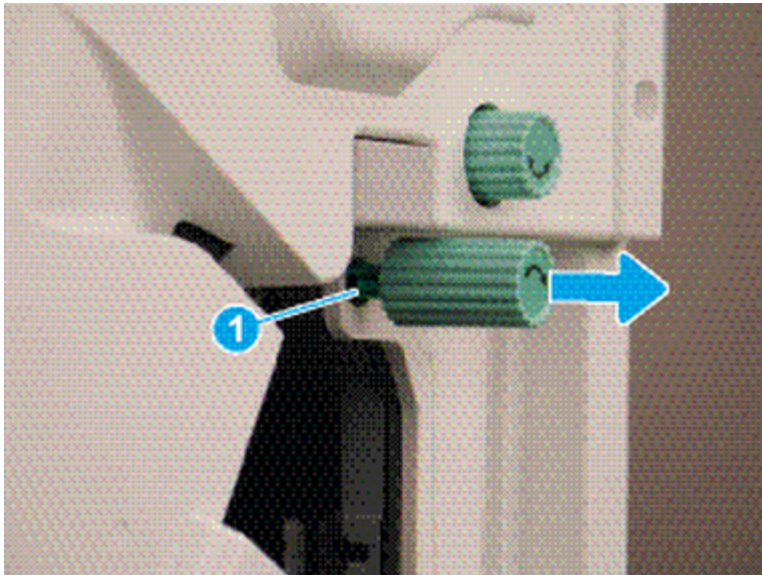


5. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1927 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1928 Remove the cover

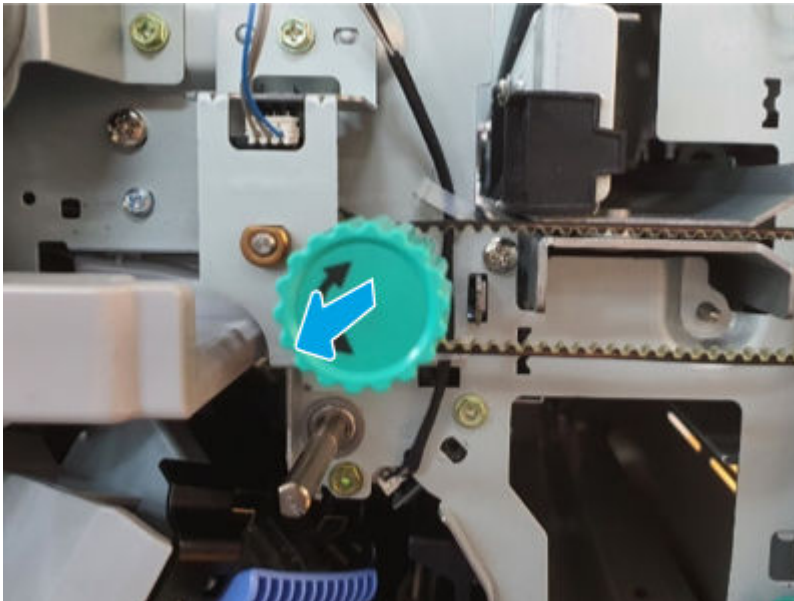


6. Remove the external finisher tray diverter home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher tray diverter home sensor.

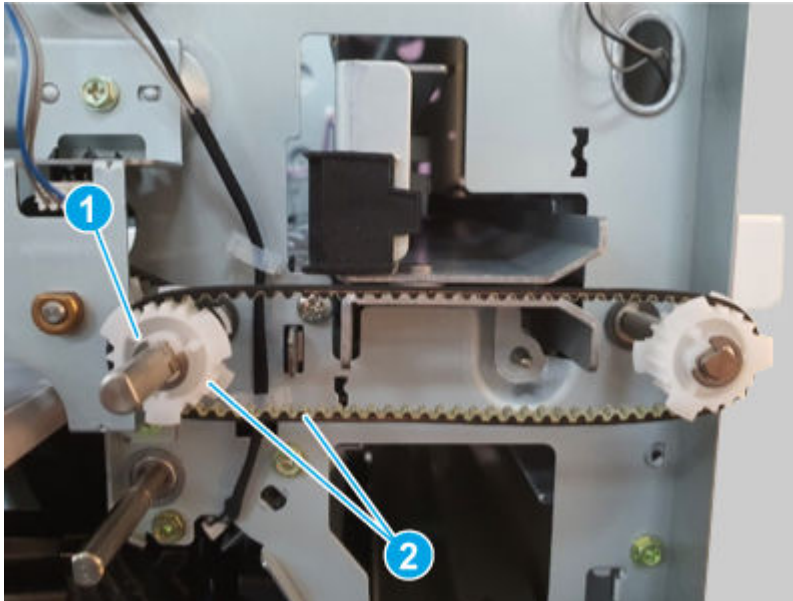
1. Remove the green handle.

Figure 6-1929 Remove the handle



2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then remove the gear and belt (callout 2).

Figure 6-1930 Remove the gear and belt

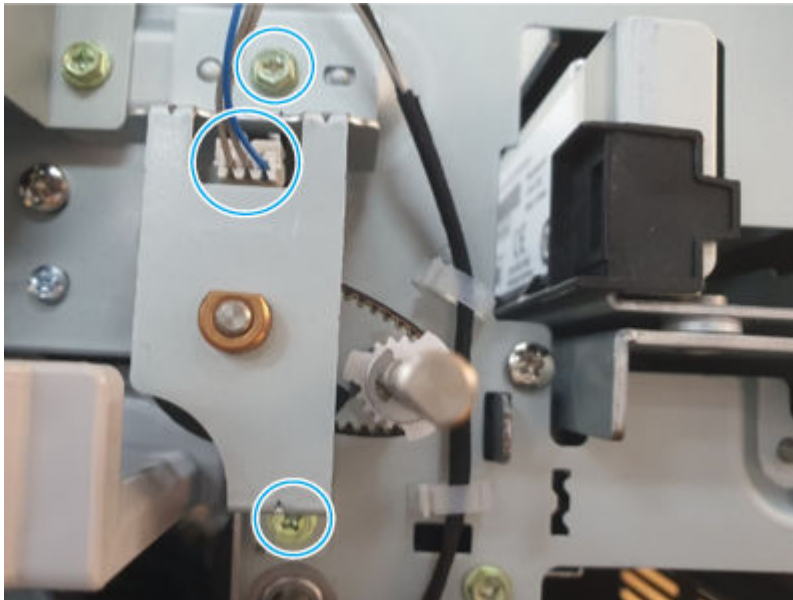


3. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the sensor and bracket.



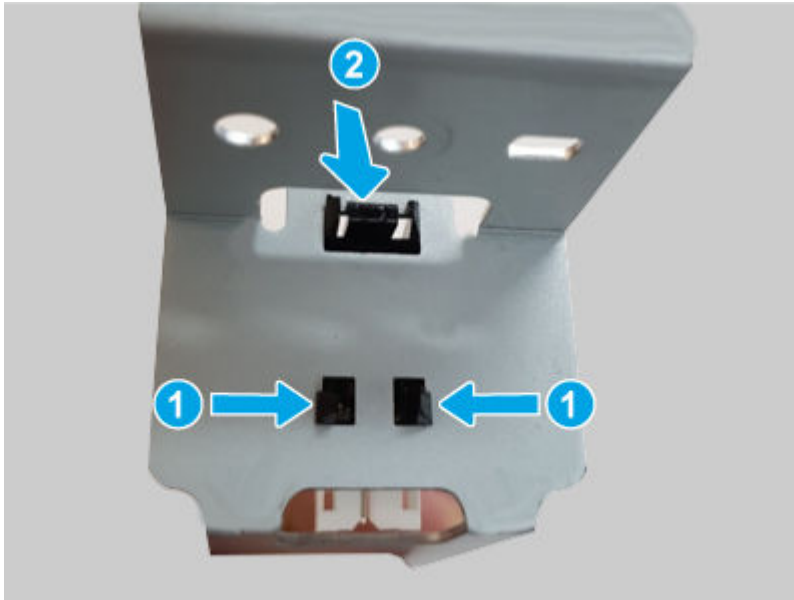
NOTE: If the tray diverter home sensor assembly is being removed to gain access to another part, stop now.

Figure 6-1931 Remove the sensor and bracket



4. Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - Remove the tray diverter home position sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-1932 Remove the sensor



7. Remove the external finisher tray diverter cam

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher tray diverter cam

- Carefully slide the tray diverter cam off of the shaft to remove it.


Figure 6-1933 Remove the cam





8. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray diverter home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher tray diverter home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-285 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Tray diverter home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

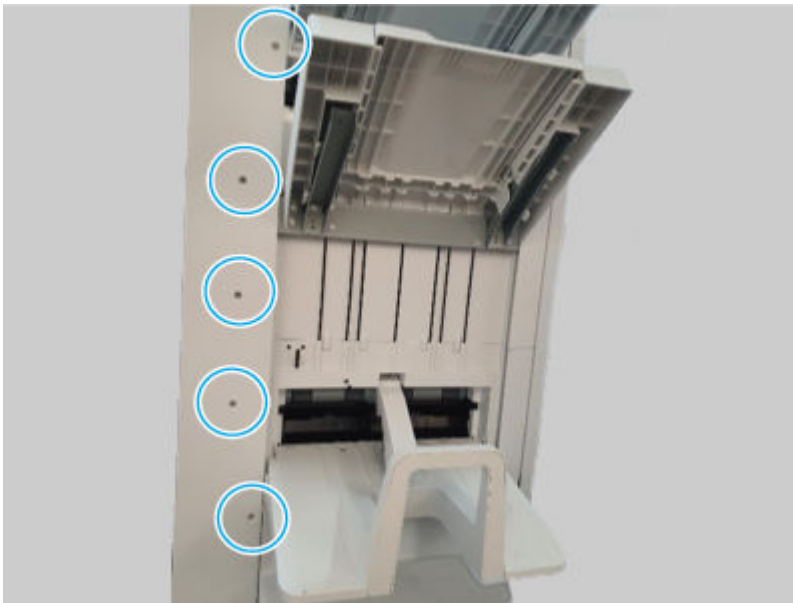
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1934 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1935 Remove the cover

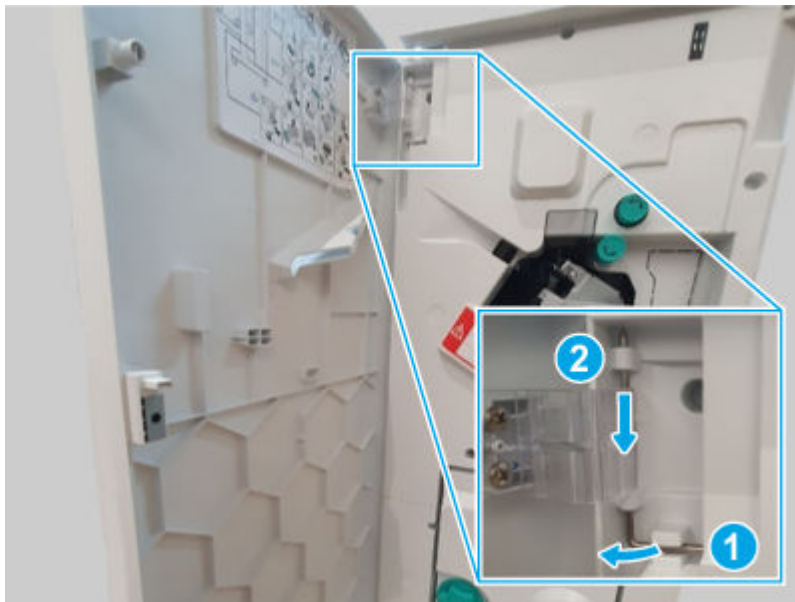


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

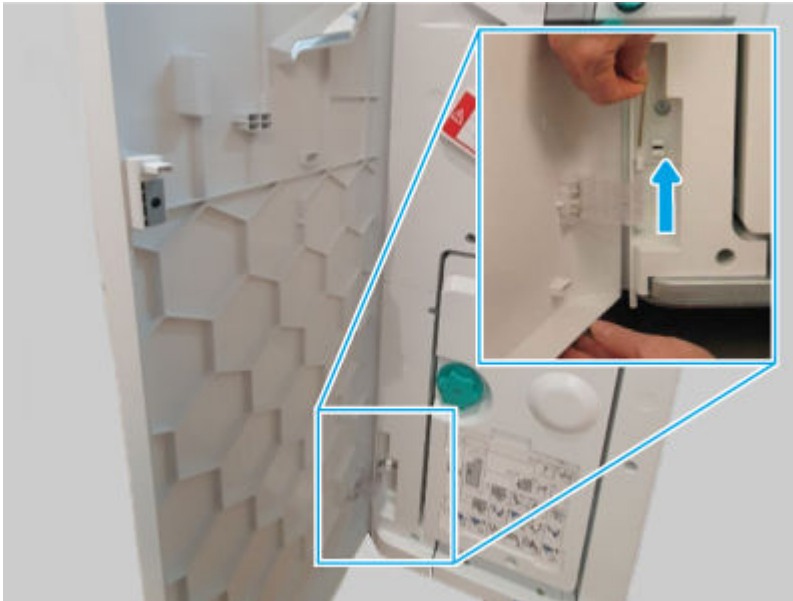
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1936 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1937 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

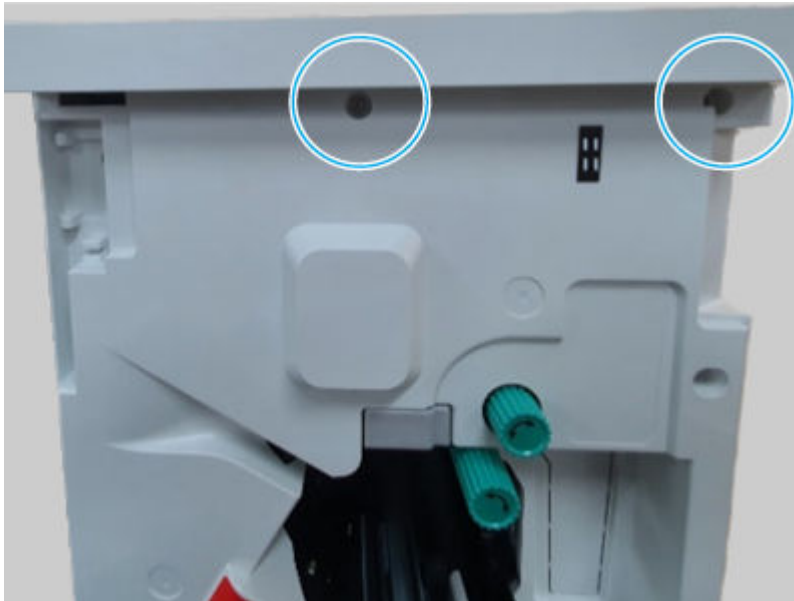
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1938 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1939 Remove the cover

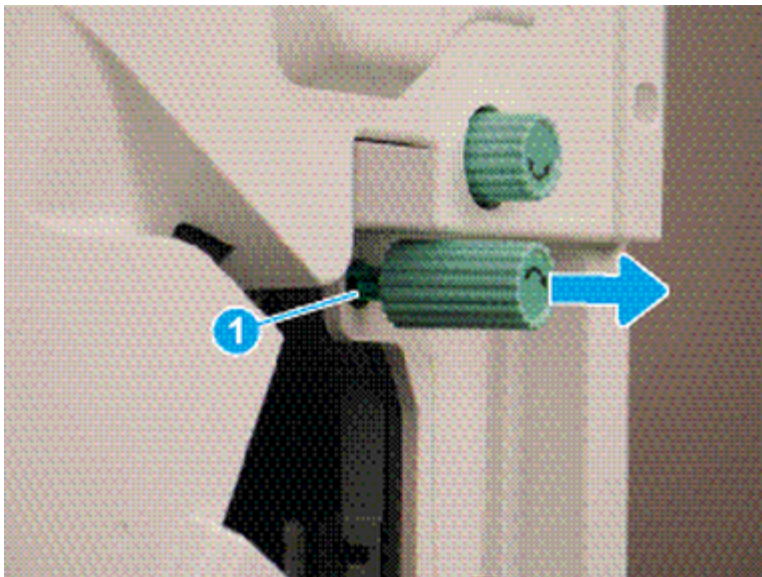


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1940 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1941 Remove the cover

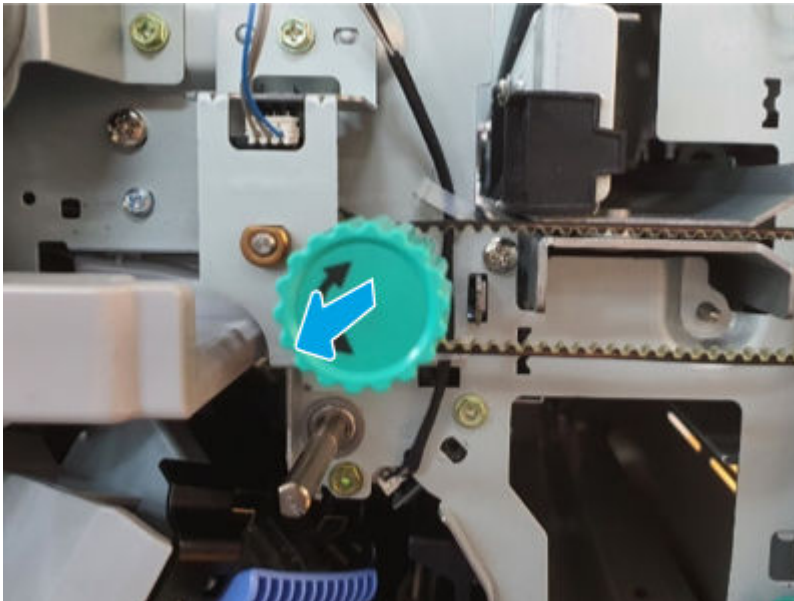


5. Remove the external finisher tray diverter home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher tray diverter home sensor.

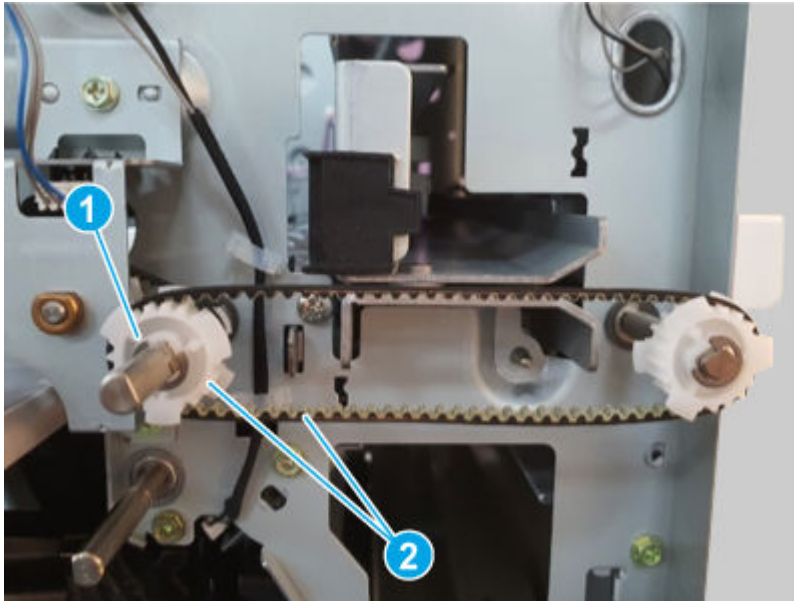
1. Remove the green handle.

Figure 6-1942 Remove the handle



2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then remove the gear and belt (callout 2).

Figure 6-1943 Remove the gear and belt

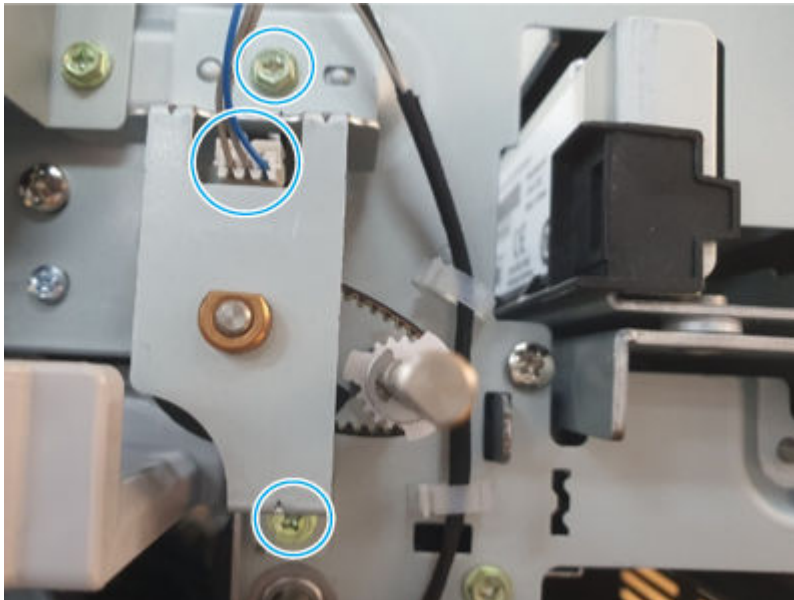


3. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the sensor and bracket.



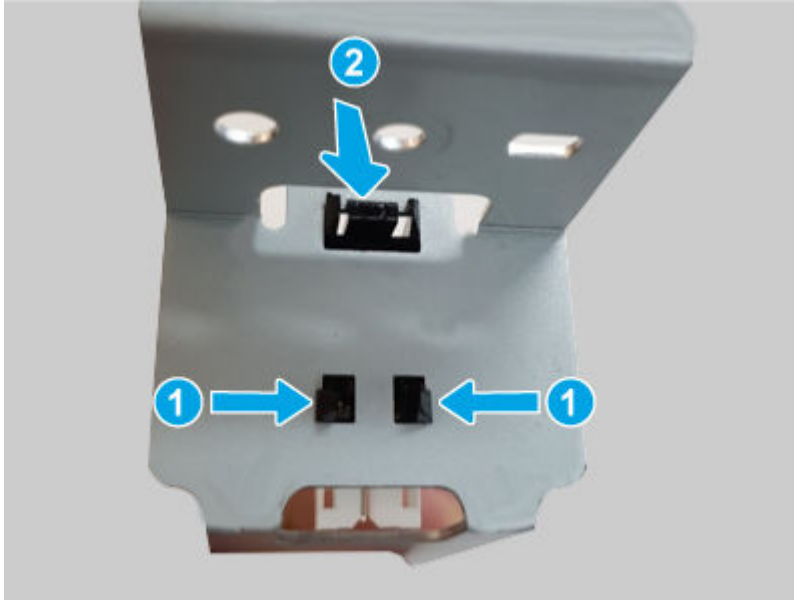
NOTE: If the tray diverter home sensor assembly is being removed to gain access to another part, stop now.

Figure 6-1944 Remove the sensor and bracket



4. Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - Remove the tray diverter home position sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-1945 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.




NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top exit unit

Review the external finisher top exit unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Top exit sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top exit sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-286 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Top exit sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

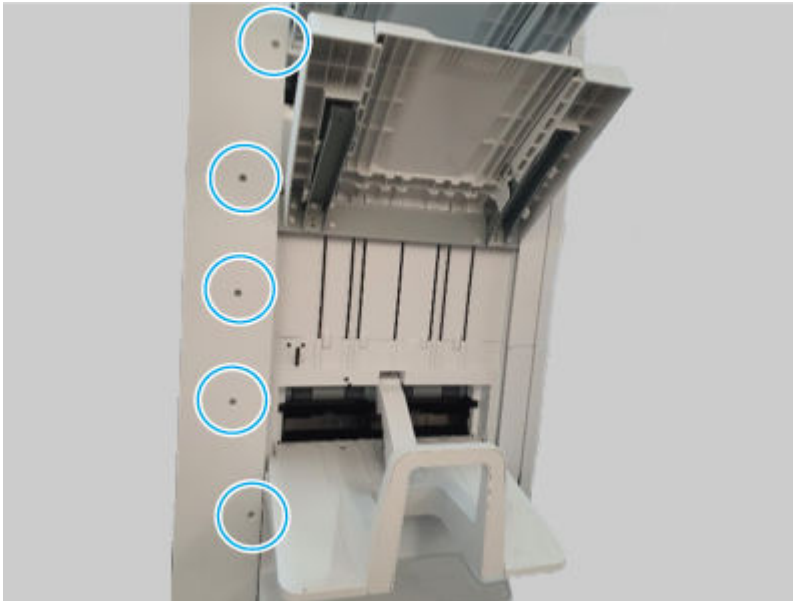
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1946 Remove five screws

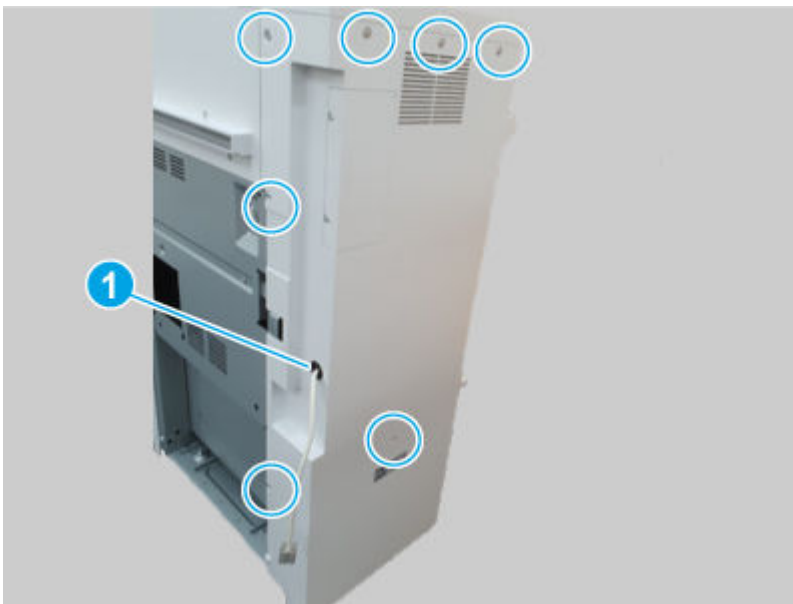


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1947 Remove the cover

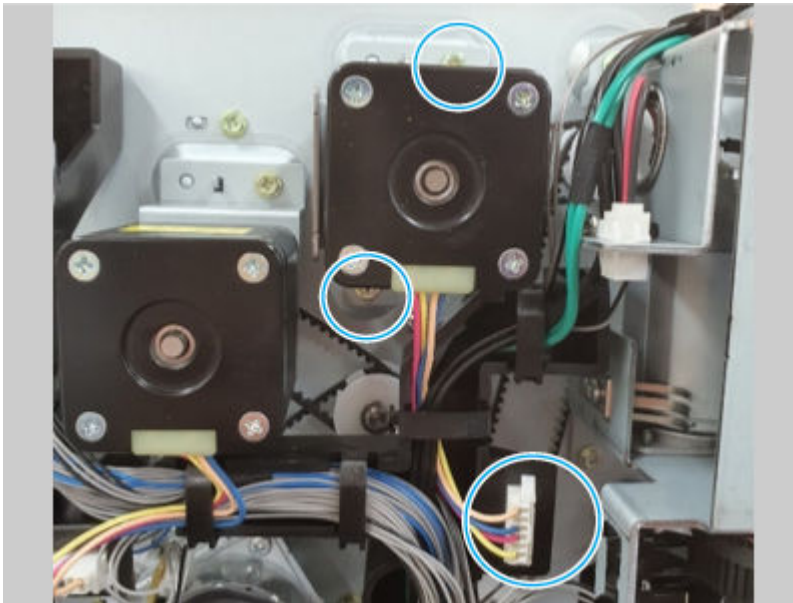


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1948 Remove the assembly

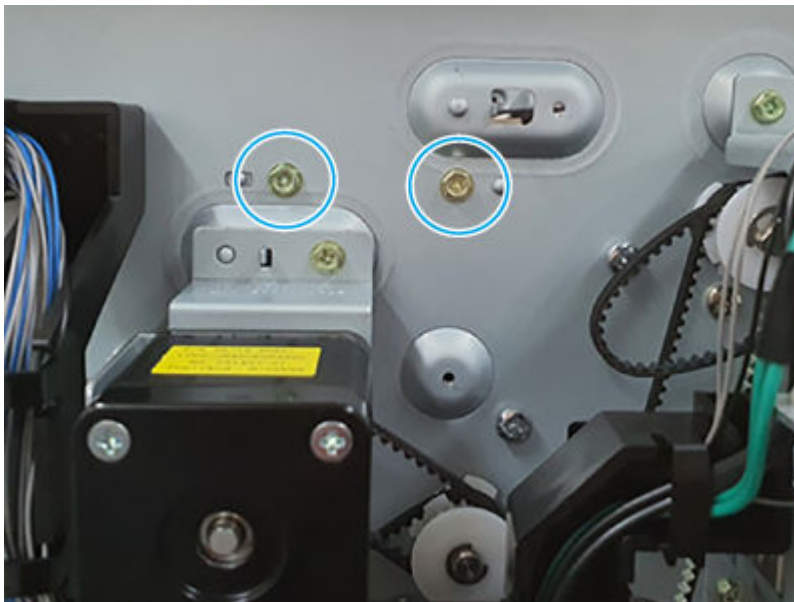


3. Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

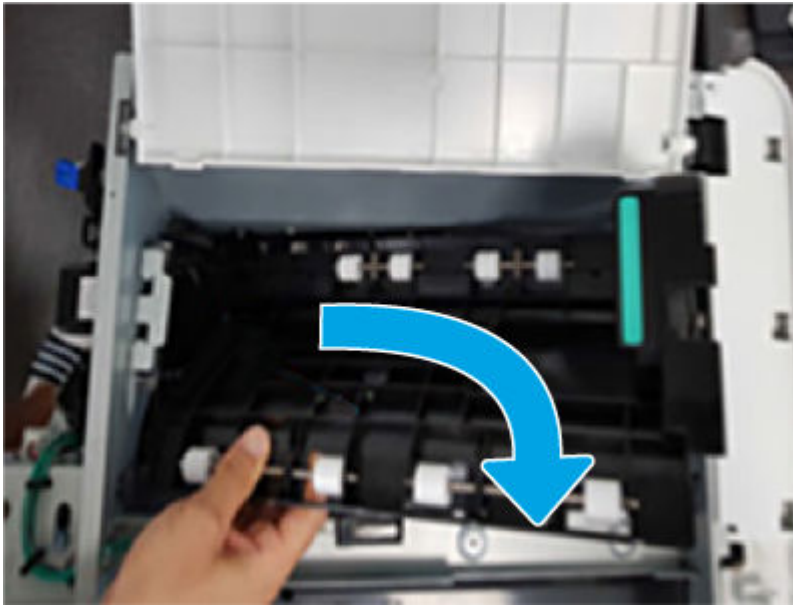
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1949 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1950 Remove the assembly

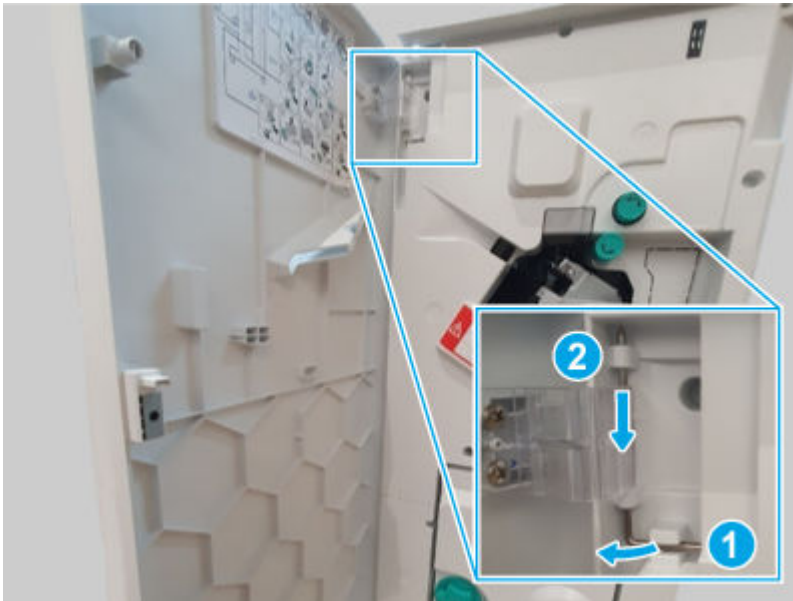


4. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

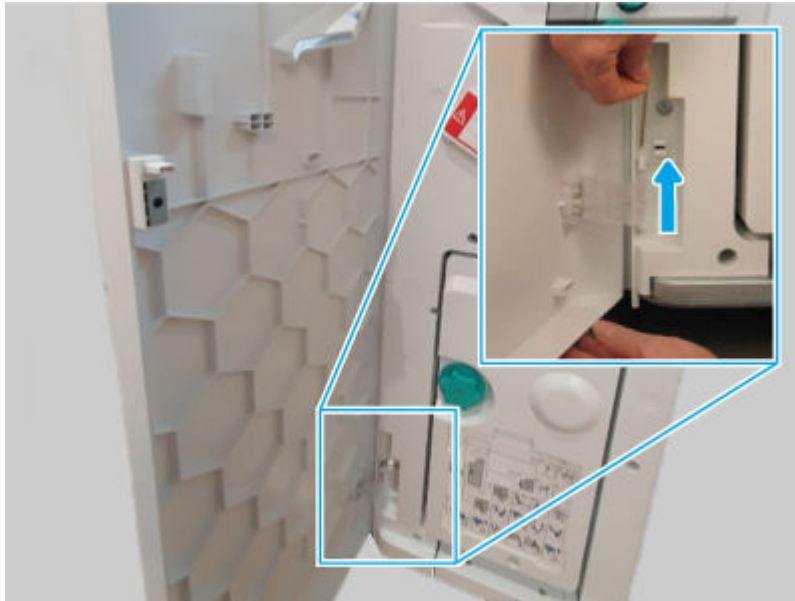
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1951 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1952 Remove the door



5. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

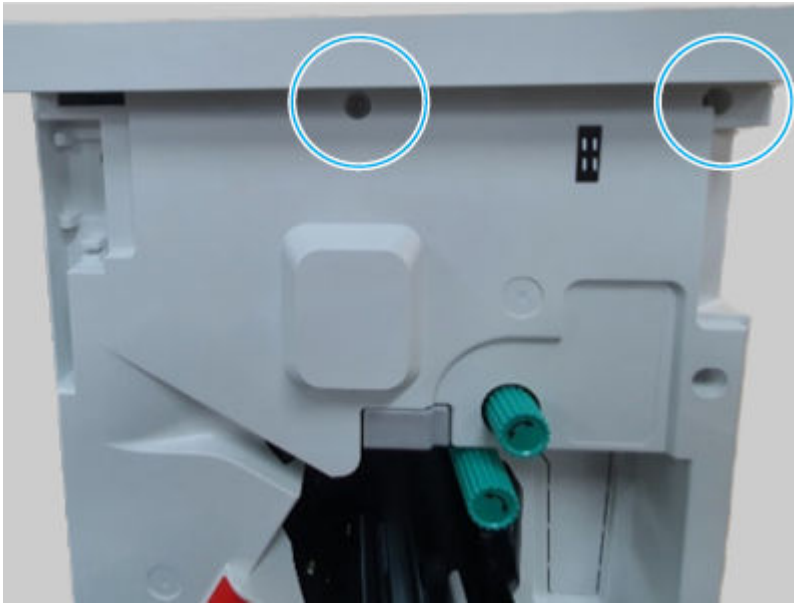
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1953 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1954 Remove the cover

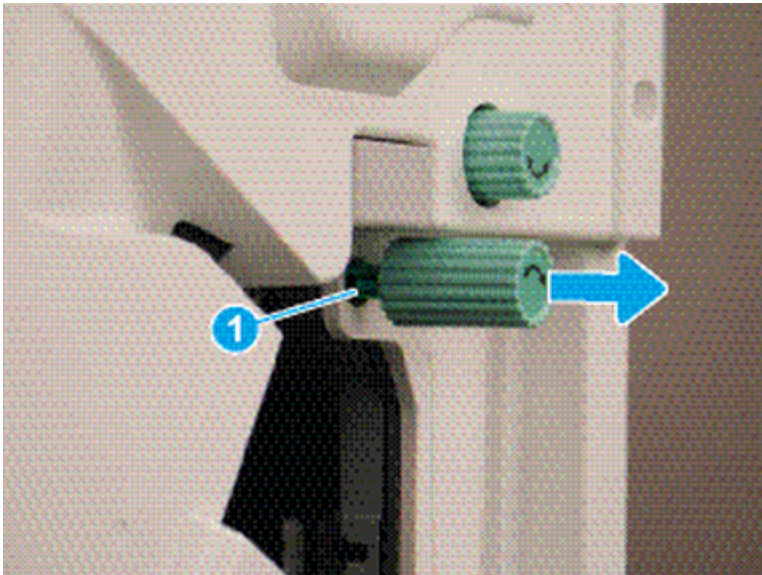


6. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1955 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1956 Remove the cover

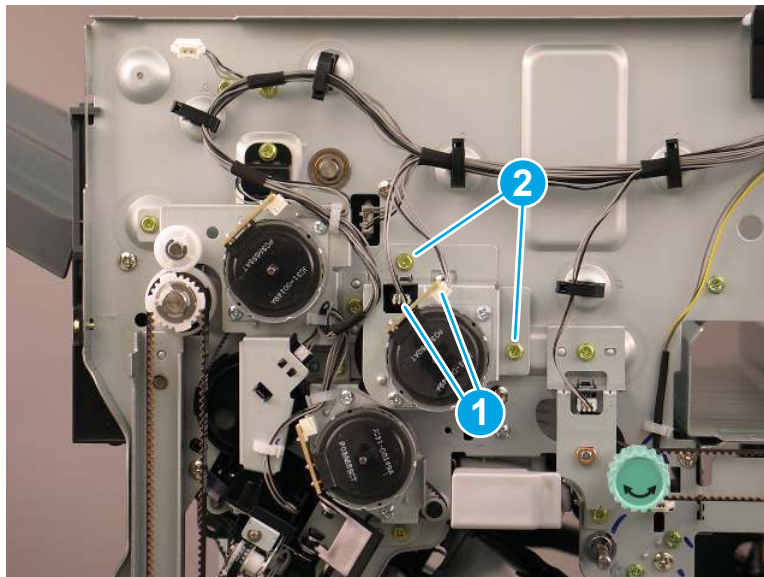


7. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor assembly.

Figure 6-1957 Remove the assembly

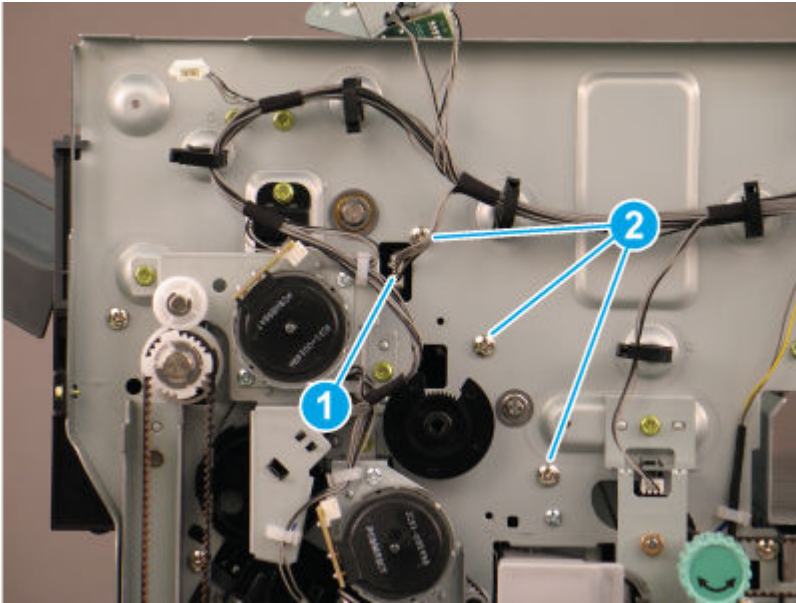


8. Remove the external finisher top lower feed assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top lower feed assembly.

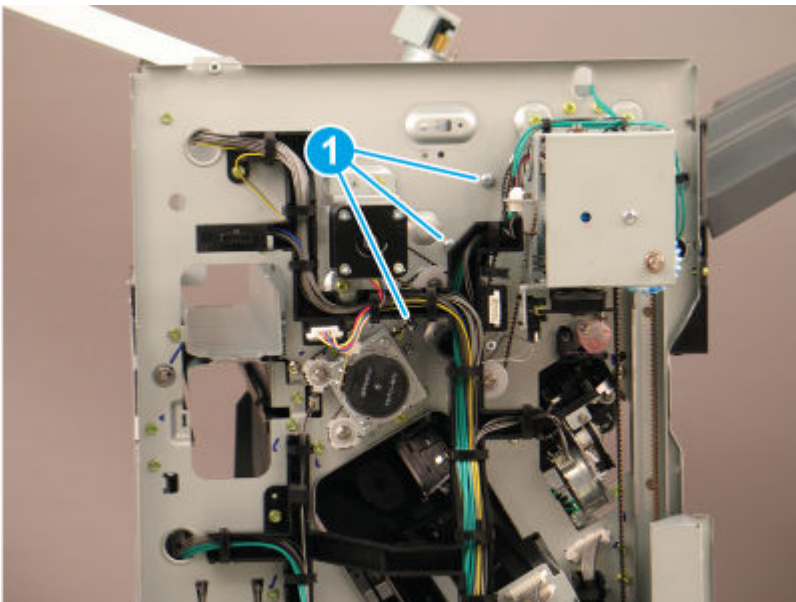
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-1958 Disconnect connector and remove screws



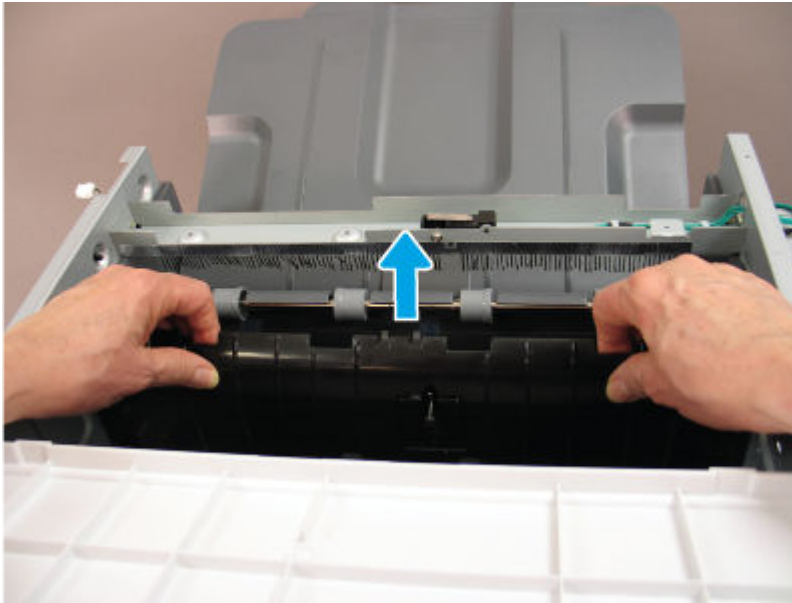
2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1959 Remove three screws



3. Pull the top lower feed assembly straight up and out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1960 Remove the assembly

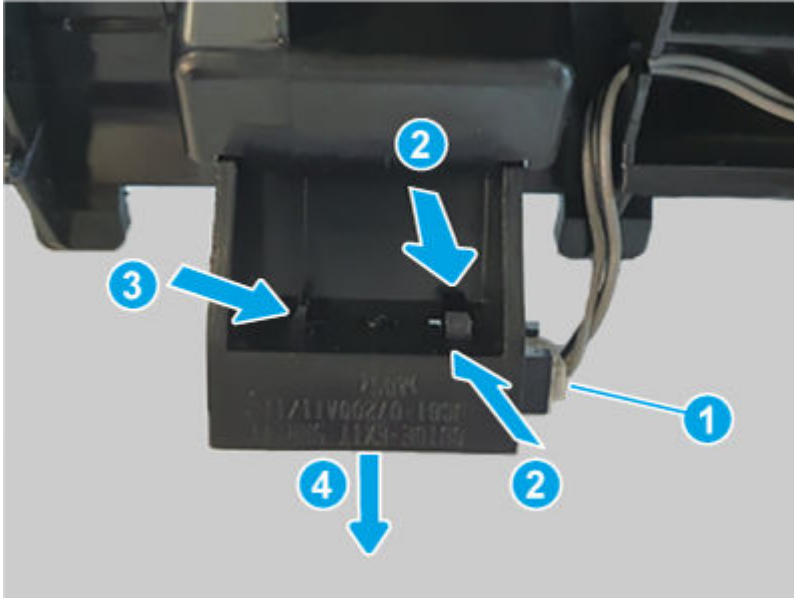


9. Remove the external finisher top exit sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top exit sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the top exit sensor (callout 4).

Figure 6-1961 Remove the sensor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher exit motor assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-287 Part Information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

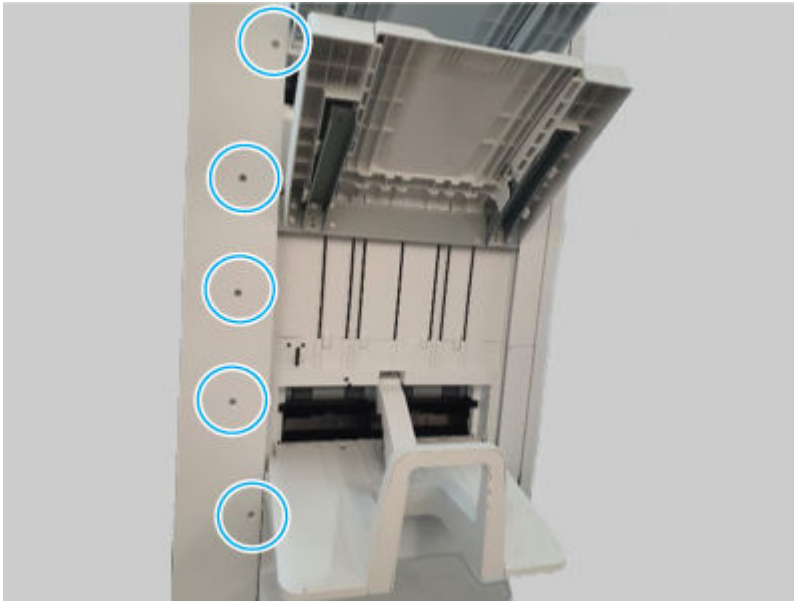
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1962 Remove five screws

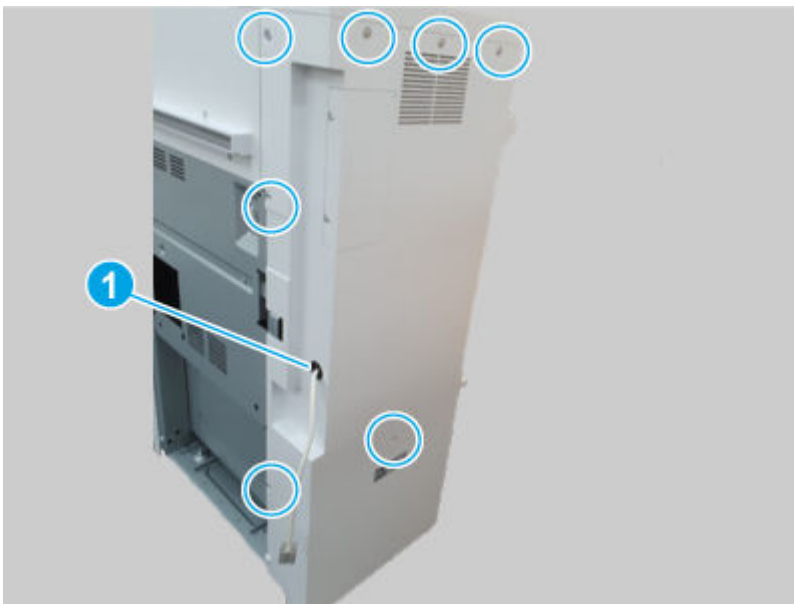


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1963 Remove the cover

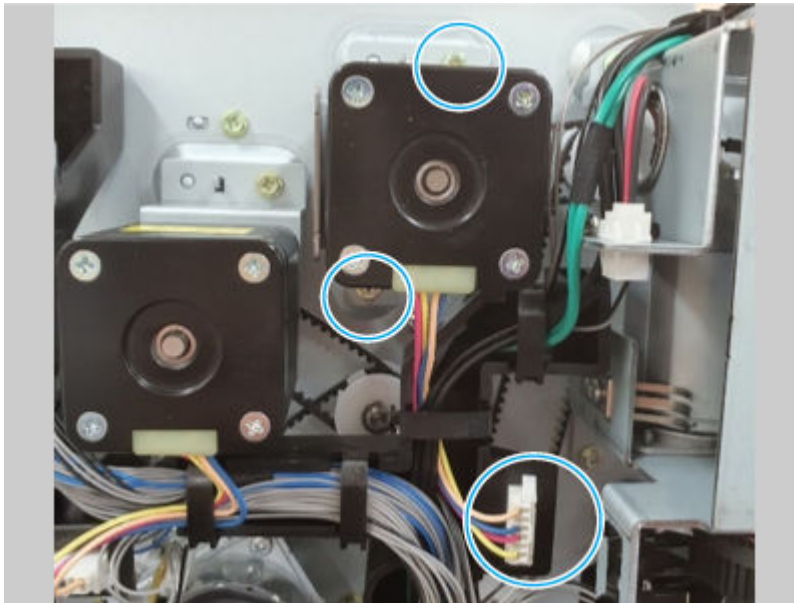


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1964 Remove the assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher exit motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-288 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ19-80501	Exit motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

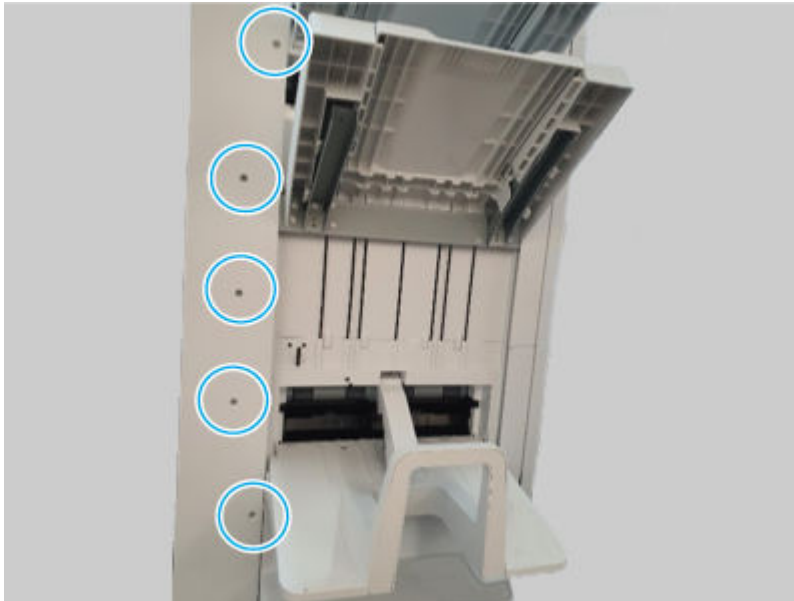
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1965 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


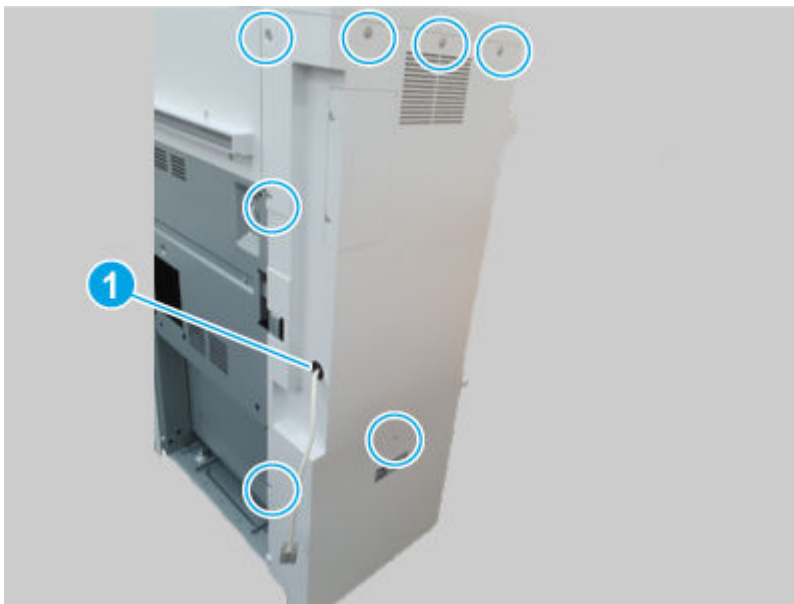
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1966 Remove the cover

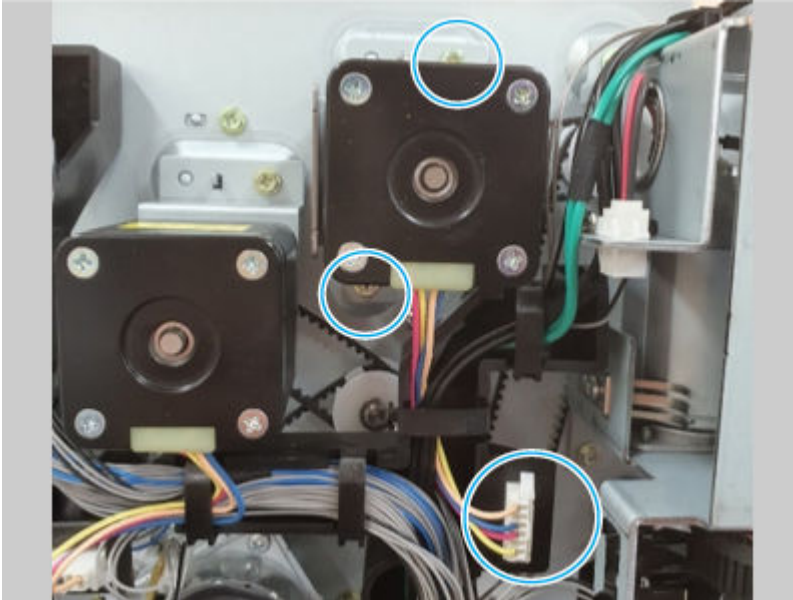


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1967 Remove the assembly



3. Remove the external finisher exit motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor.

Figure 6-1968 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top output tray unit

Review the external finisher top output tray unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Top lower feed assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top lower feed assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-289 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

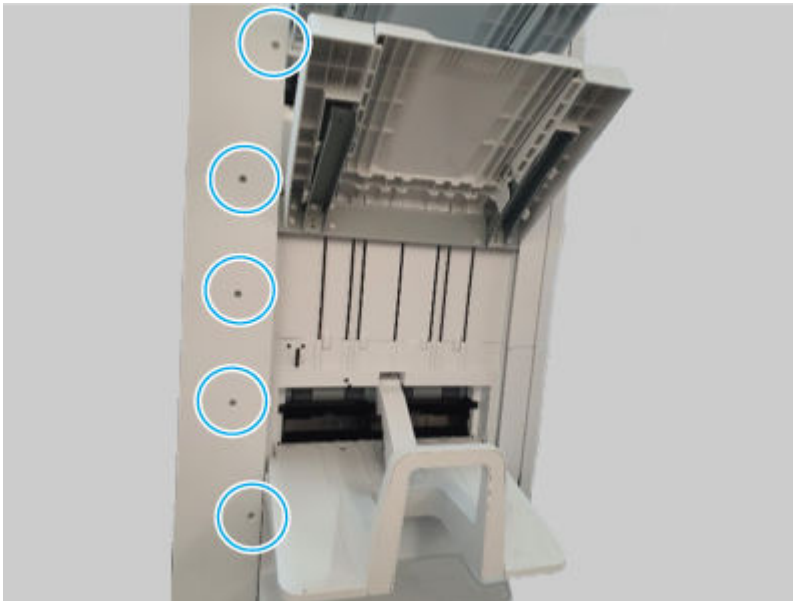
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1969 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1970 Remove the cover

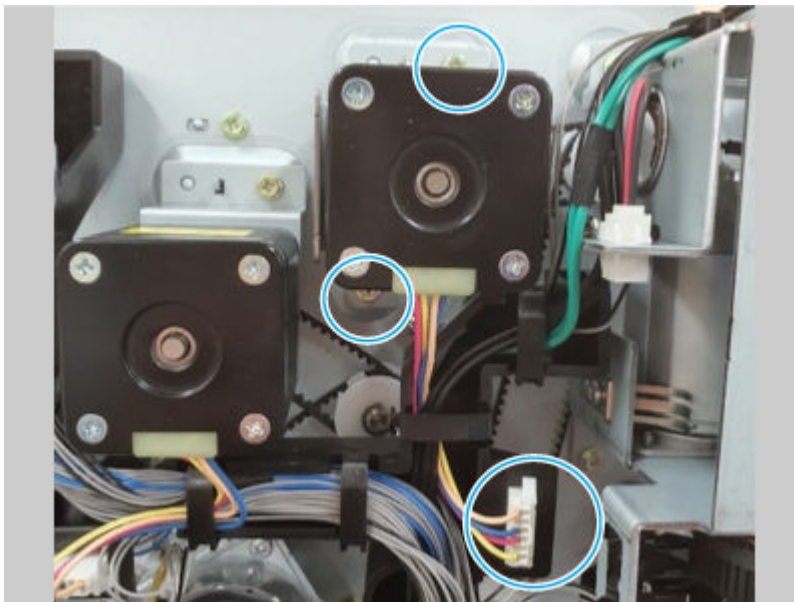


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1971 Remove the assembly

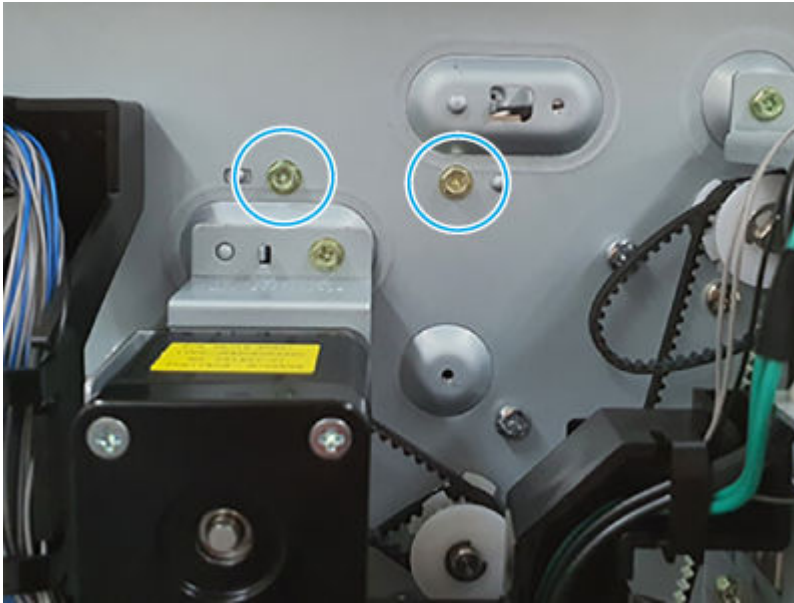


3. Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

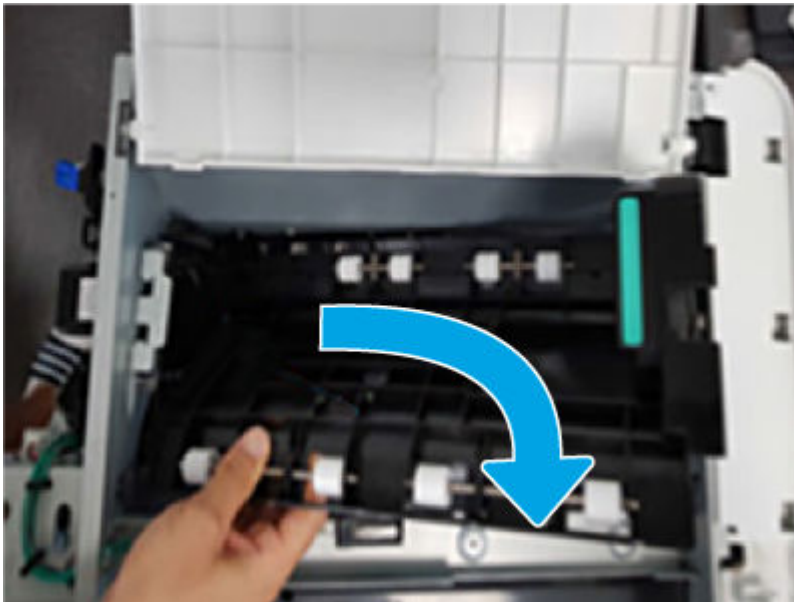
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1972 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1973 Remove the assembly

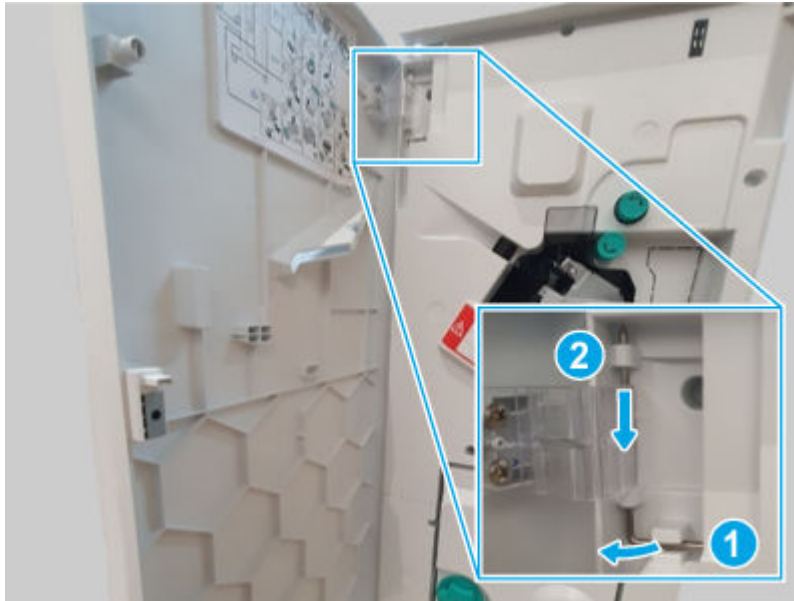


4. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

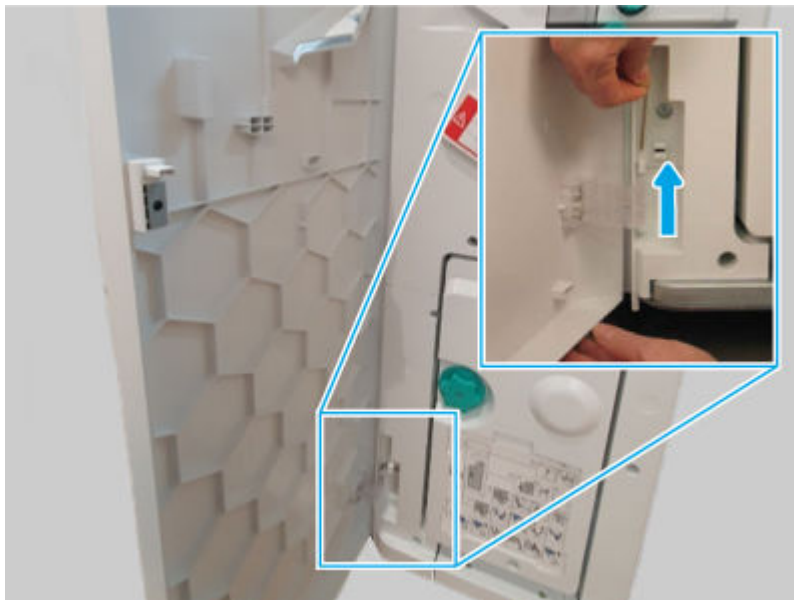
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1974 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1975 Remove the door



5. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

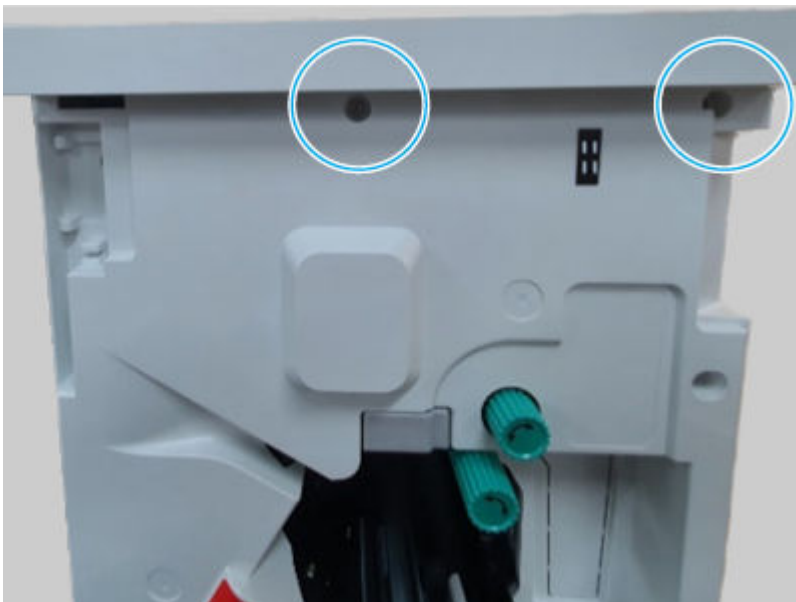
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1976 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1977 Remove the cover

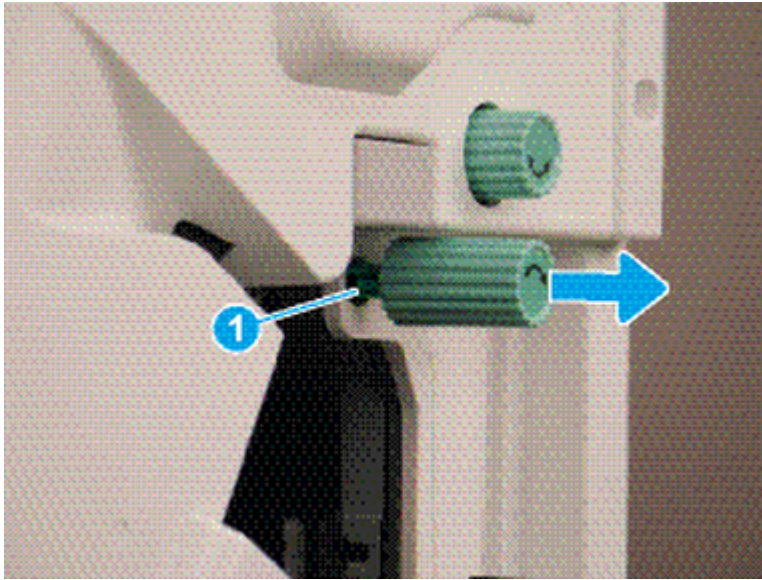


6. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1978 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1979 Remove the cover

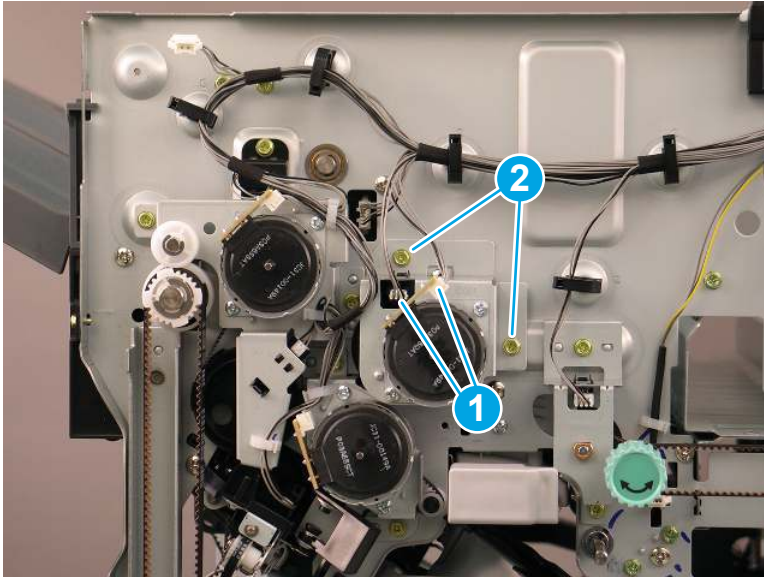


7. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor assembly.

Figure 6-1980 Remove the assembly

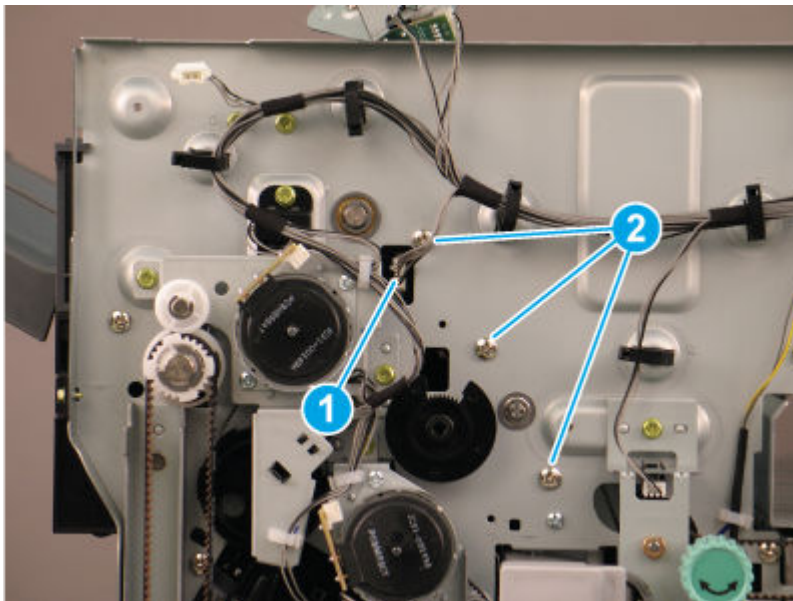


8. Remove the external finisher top lower feed assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top lower feed assembly.

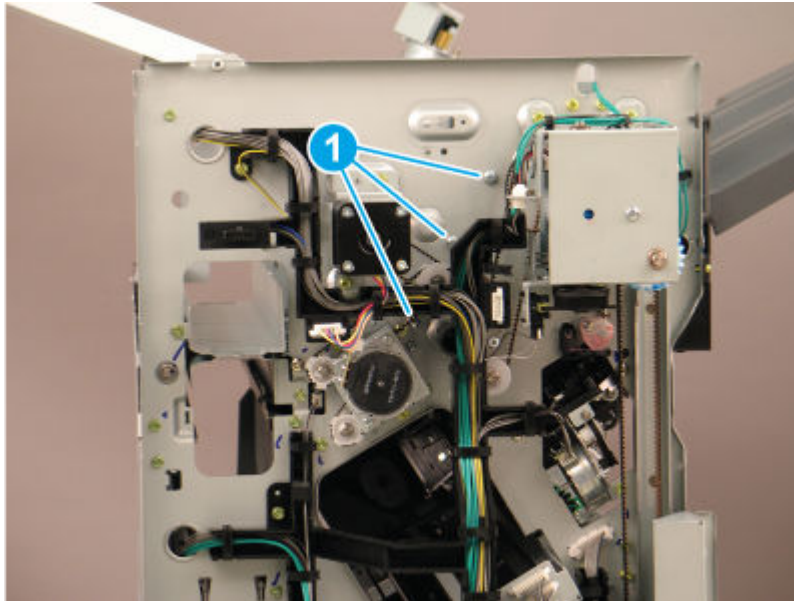
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-1981 Disconnect connector and remove screws



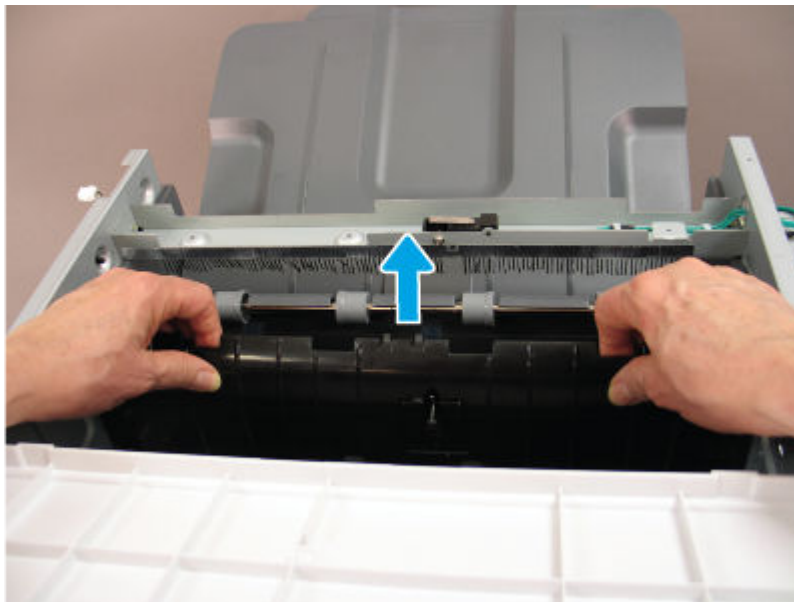
2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1982 Remove three screws



3. Pull the top lower feed assembly straight up and out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1983 Remove the assembly



9. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray extension

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher tray extension.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-290 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40029	Tray extension

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

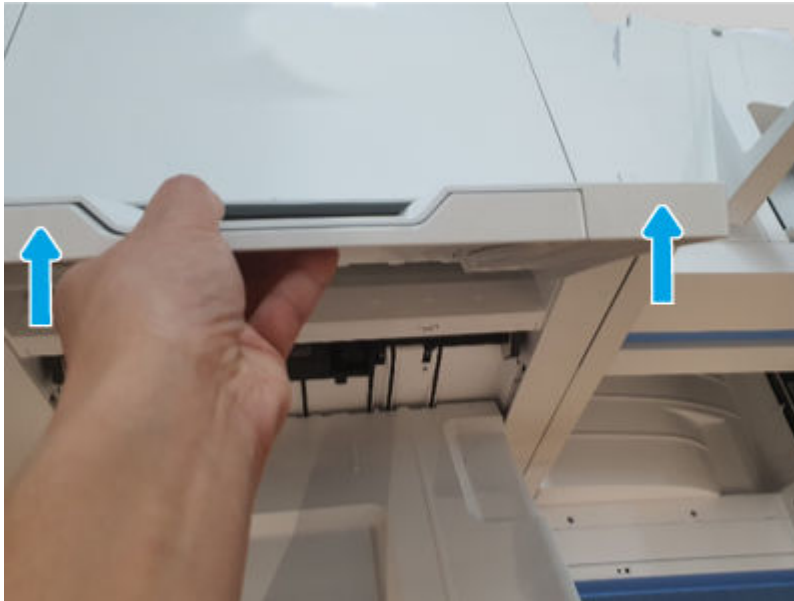
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top output tray.

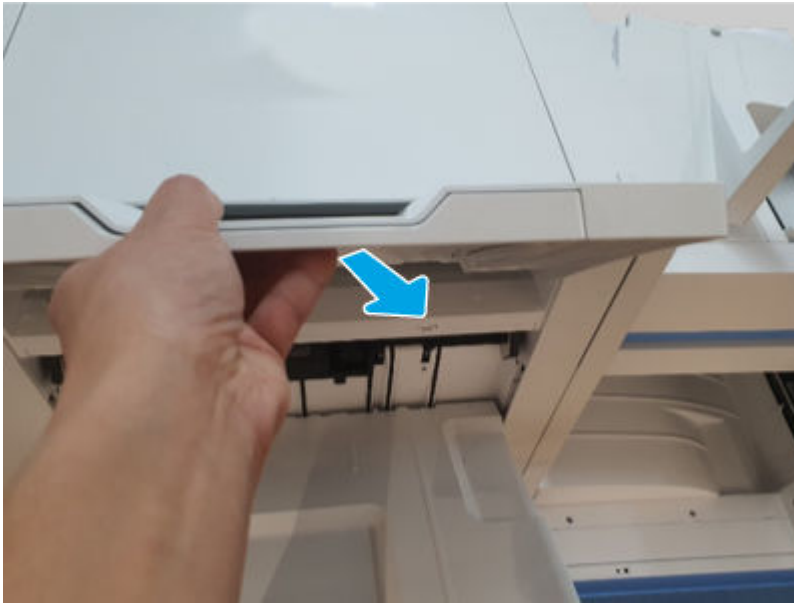
1. Rotate the tray up.

Figure 6-1984 Rotate the tray



2. Pull the top output tray out and away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1985 Remove the tray

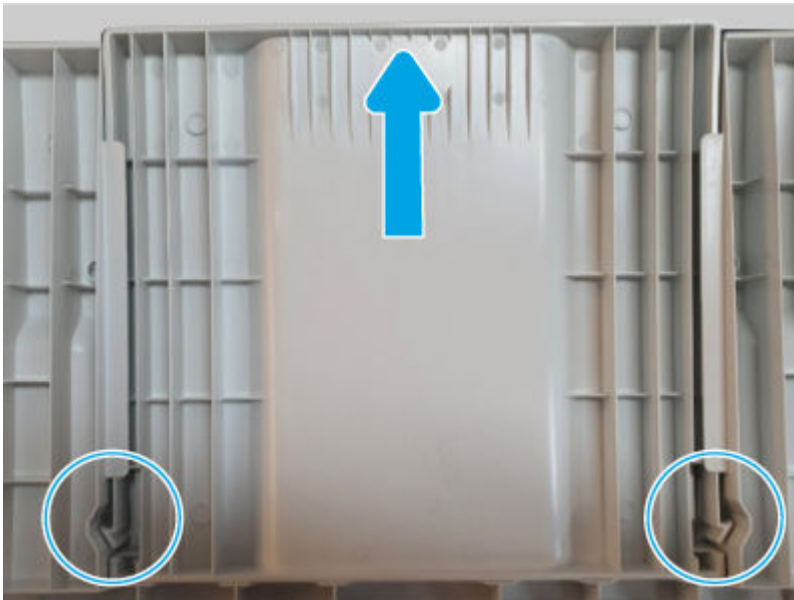


2. Remove the external finisher tray extension

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher tray extension.

- Release two hooks, and then slide the tray extension away from the top output tray to remove it.


Figure 6-1986 Remove the tray extension



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top output tray paper full sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top output tray paper full sensor.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-291 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	Tray sensor kit (Top output tray paper full sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

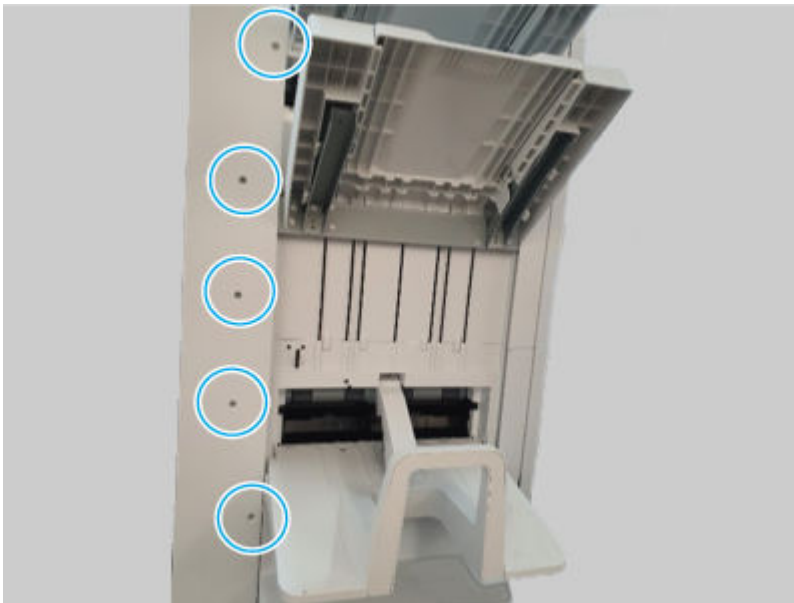
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1987 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1988 Remove the cover

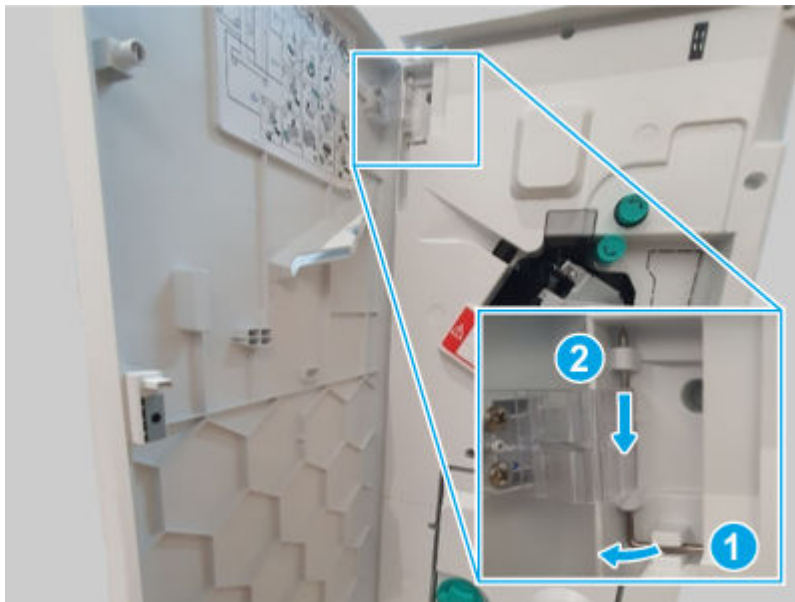


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

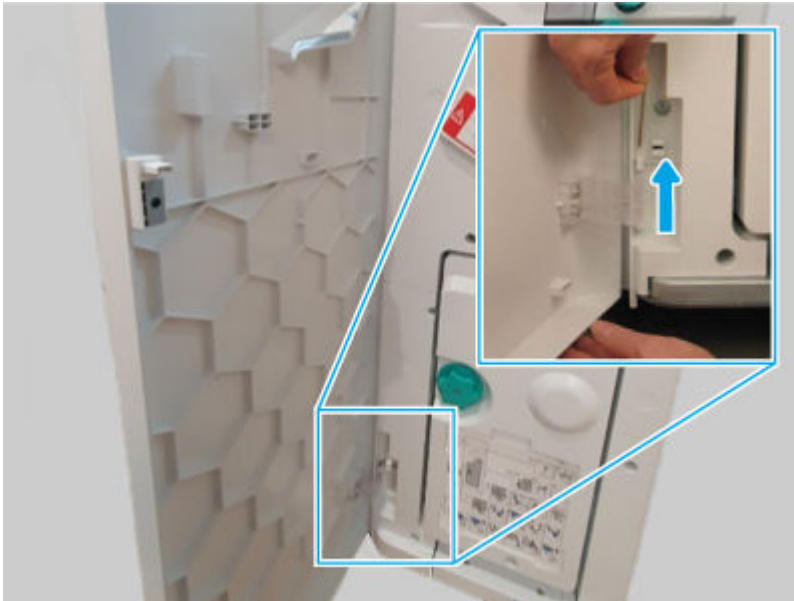
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1989 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1990 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

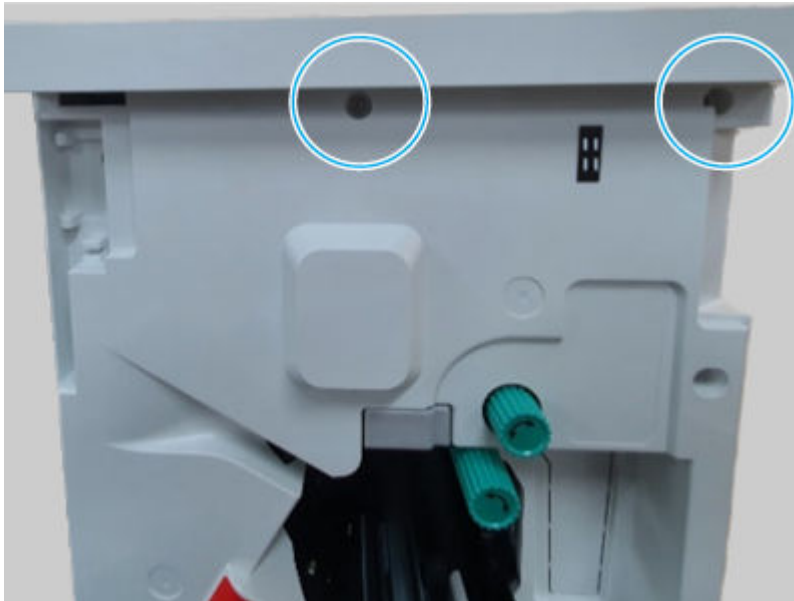
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1991 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1992 Remove the cover

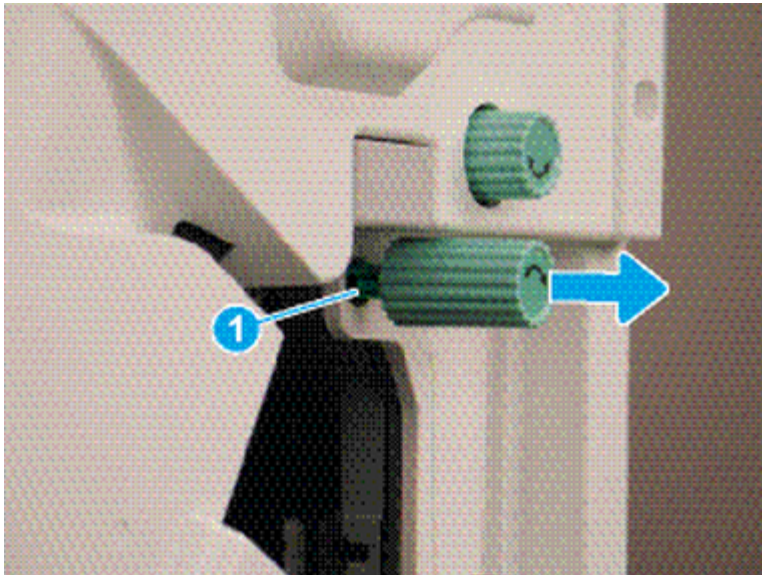


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1993 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1994 Remove the cover

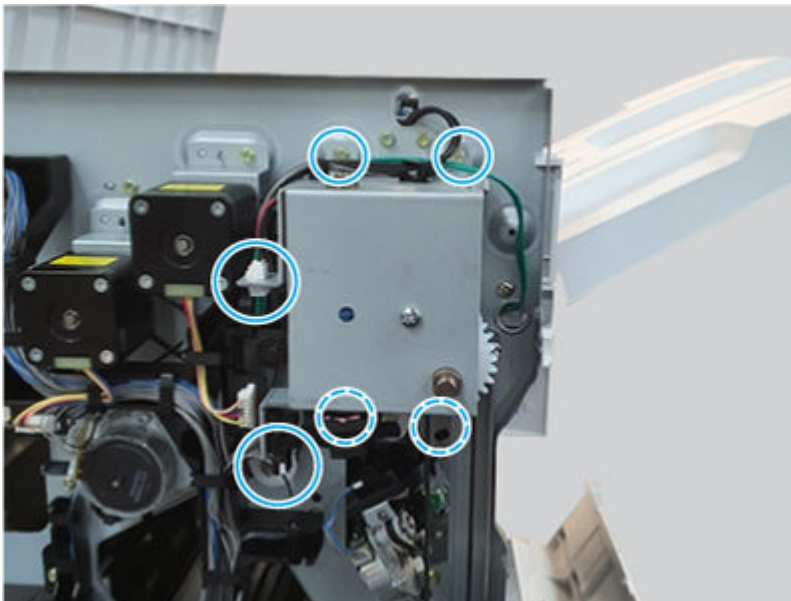


5. Remove the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the main output tray motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-1995 Remove the sensor

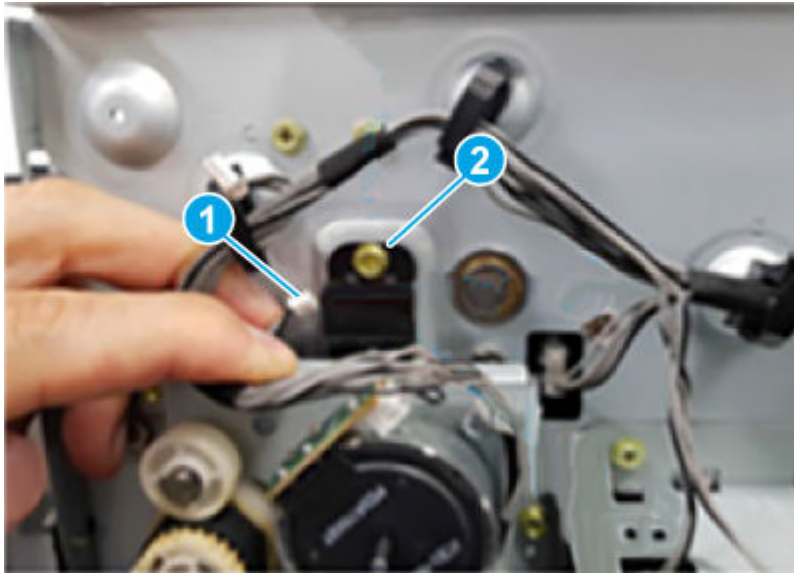


6. Remove the external finisher top output tray paper full sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top output tray paper full sensor.

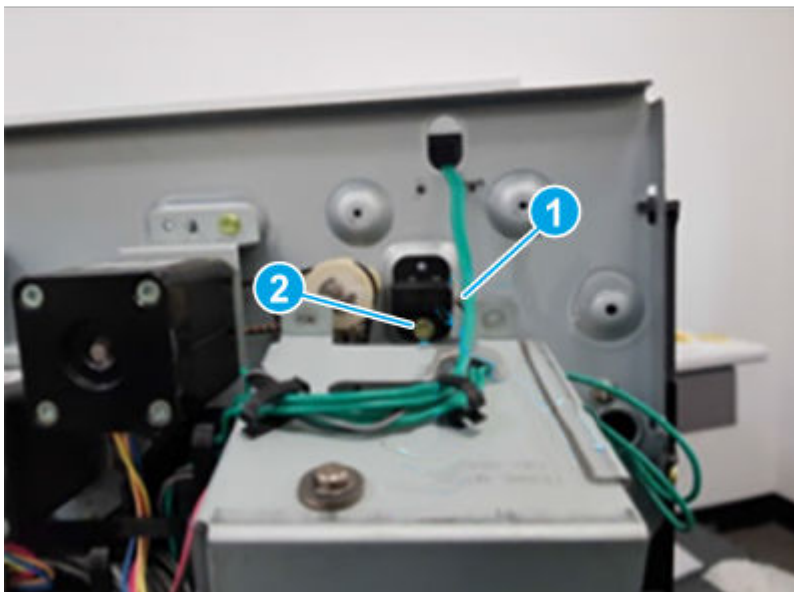
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-1996 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-1997 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main exit unit

Review the external finisher main exit unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Main exit sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main exit sensor.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-292 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Sensor-RP (Main exit sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

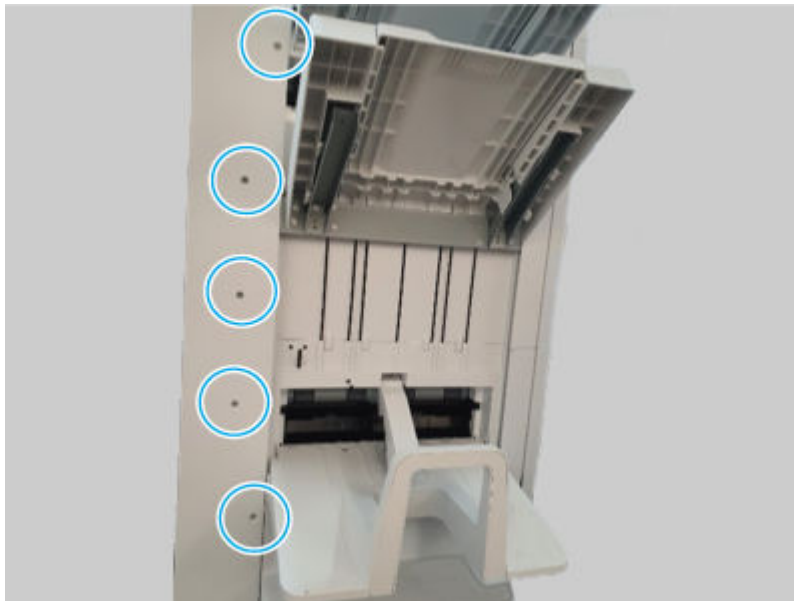
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1998 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


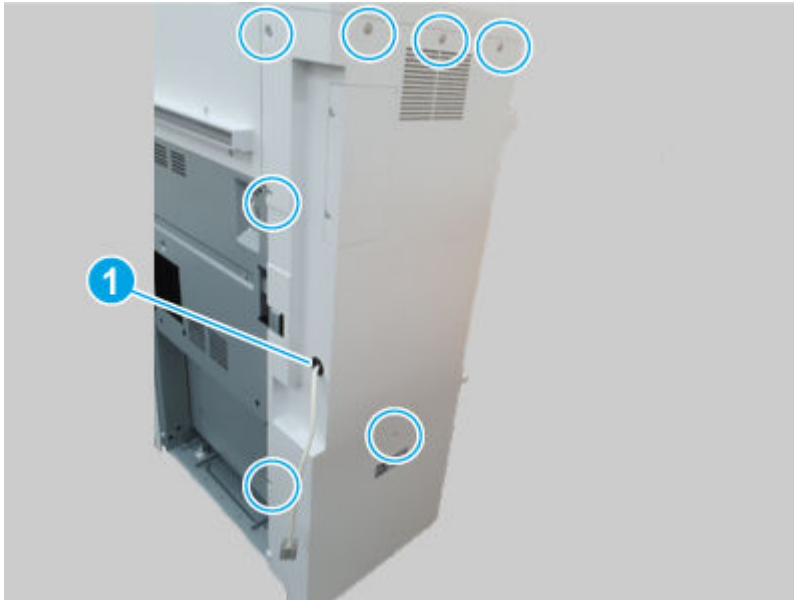
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1999 Remove the cover

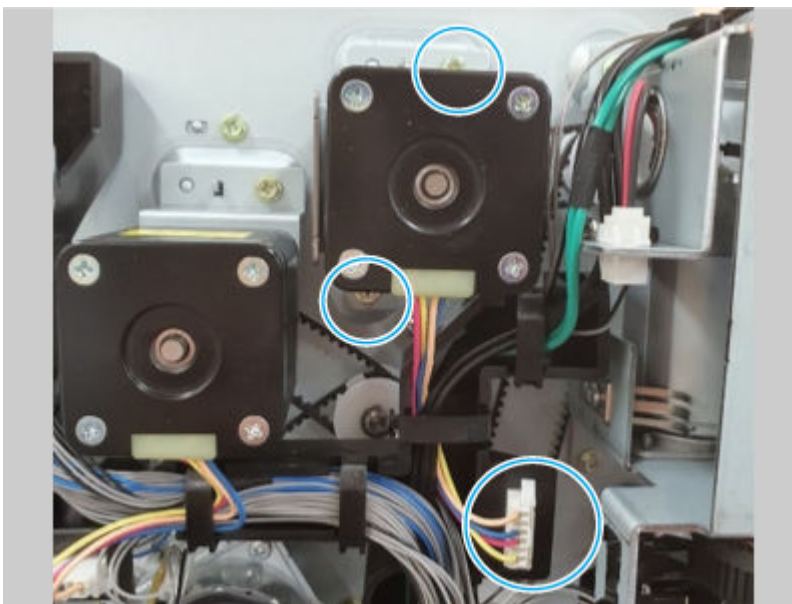


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-2000 Remove the assembly

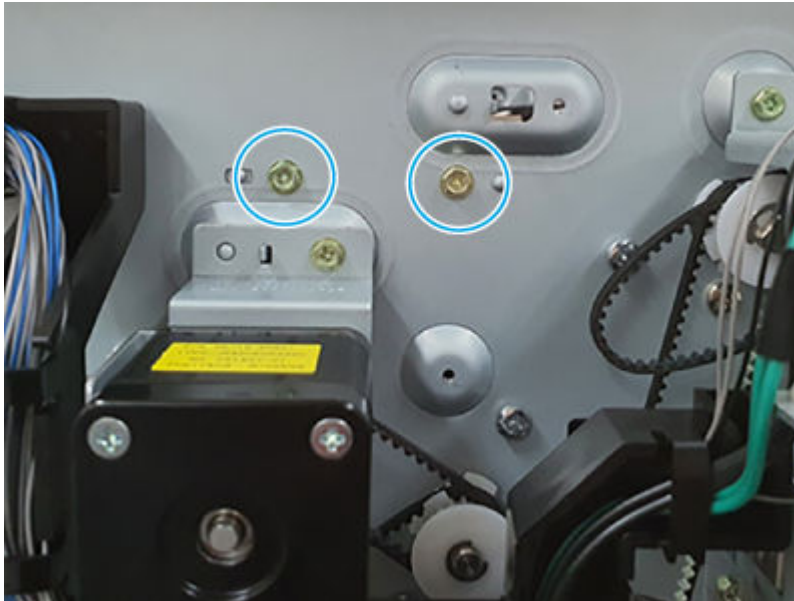


3. Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

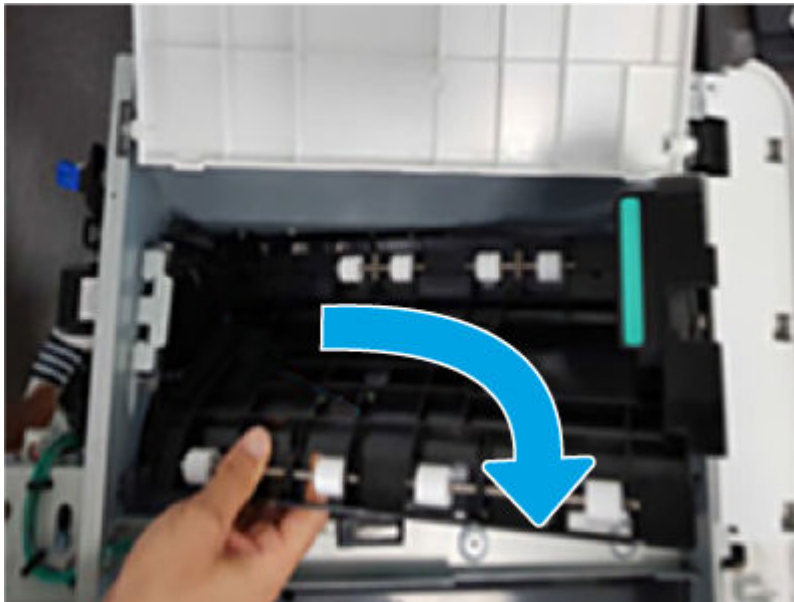
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2001 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2002 Remove the assembly

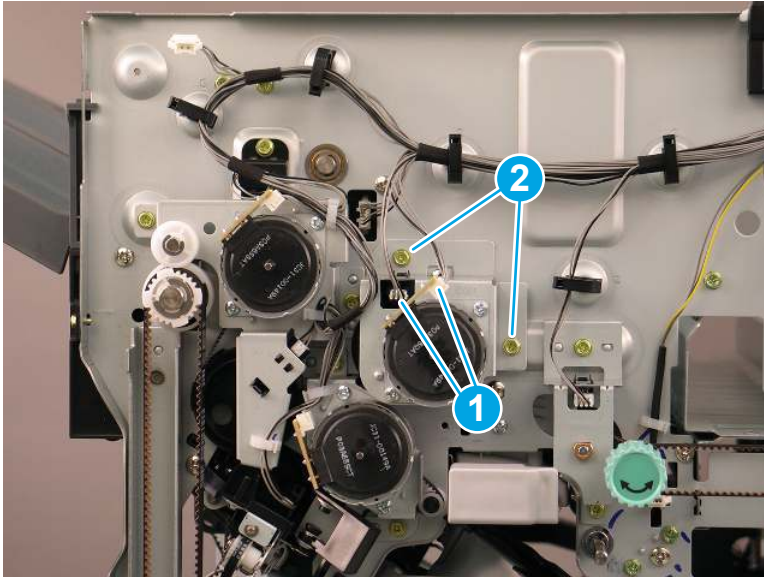


4. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor assembly.

Figure 6-2003 Remove the assembly

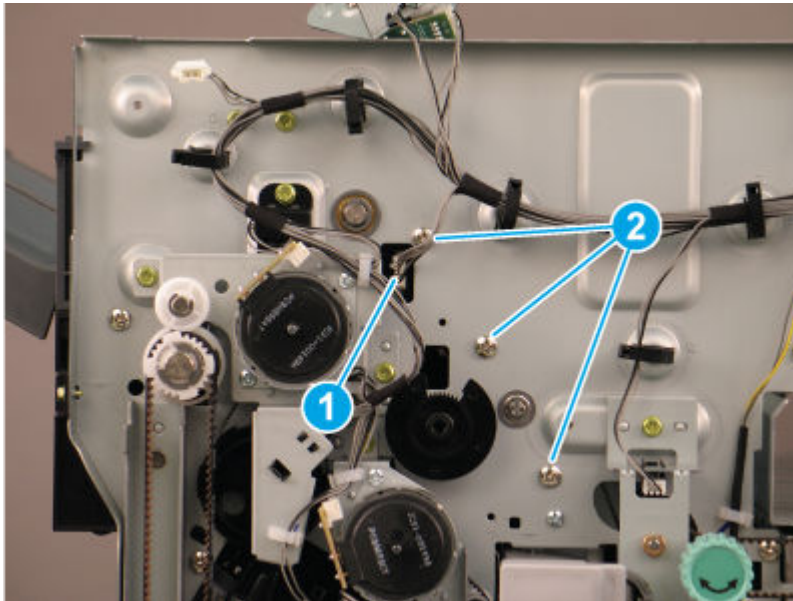


5. Remove the external finisher top lower feed assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top lower feed assembly.

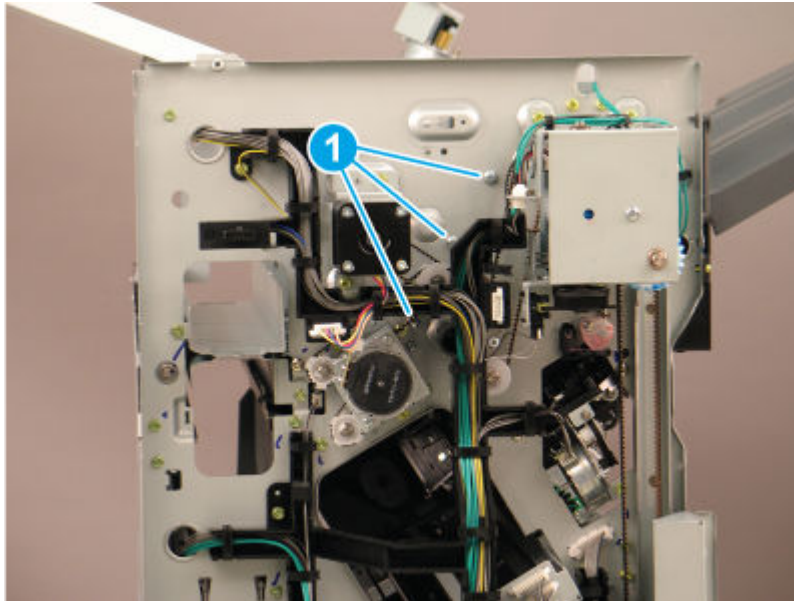
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2004 Disconnect connector and remove screws



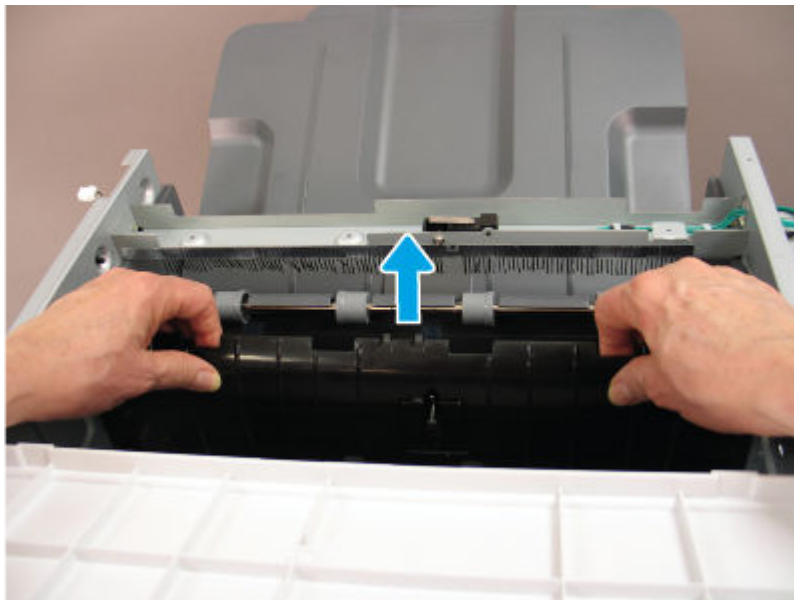
2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2005 Remove three screws



3. Pull the top lower feed assembly straight up and out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2006 Remove the assembly

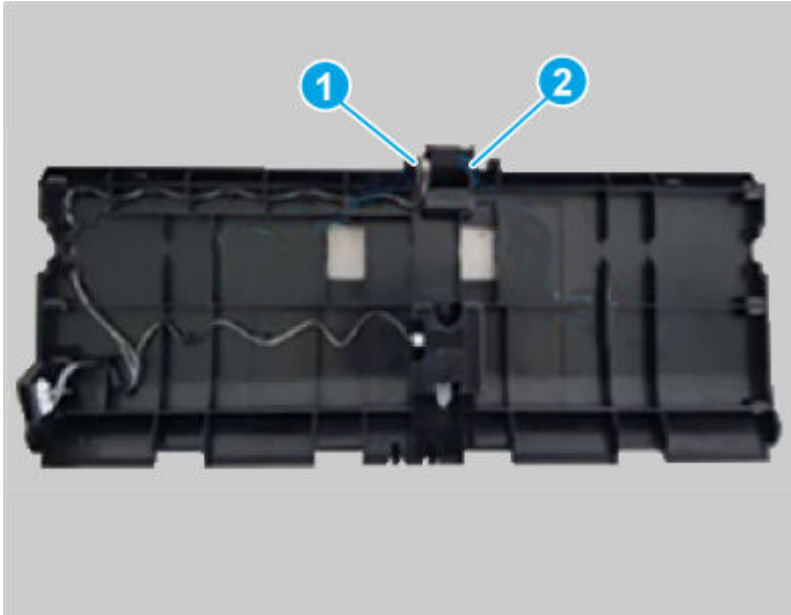


6. Remove the external finisher main exit sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the main exit sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-2007 Remove the sensor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main exit cam motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-293 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

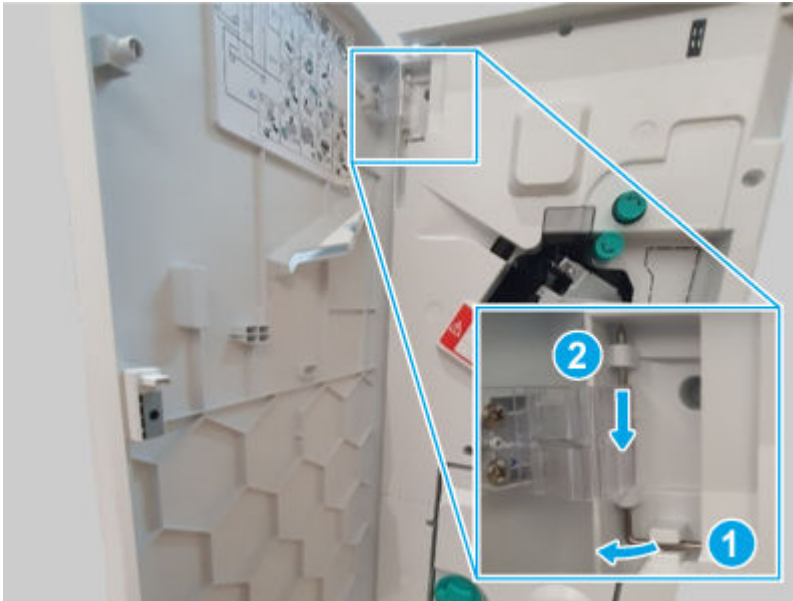
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

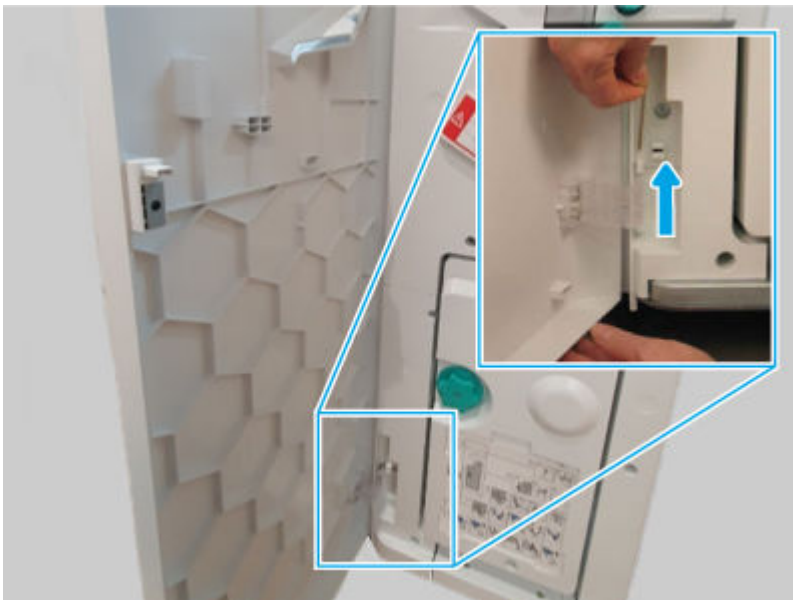
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2008 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2009 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

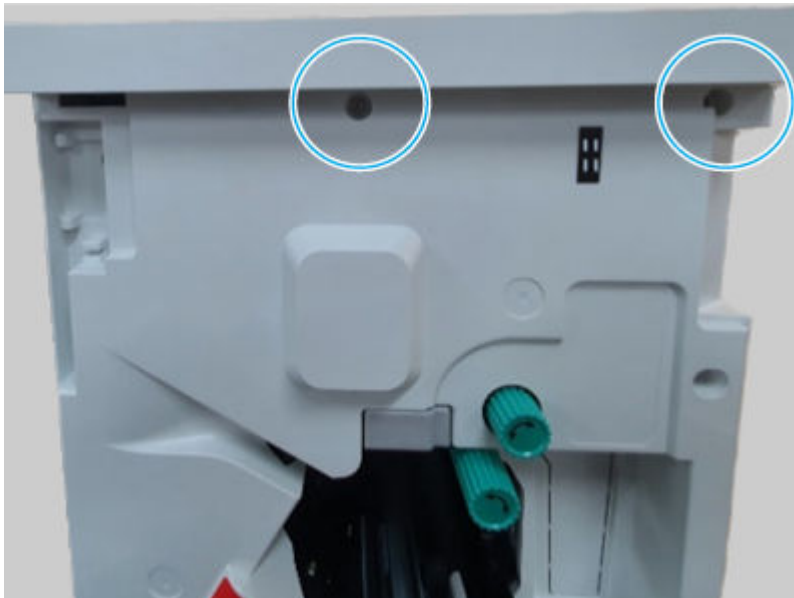
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2010 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2011 Remove the cover

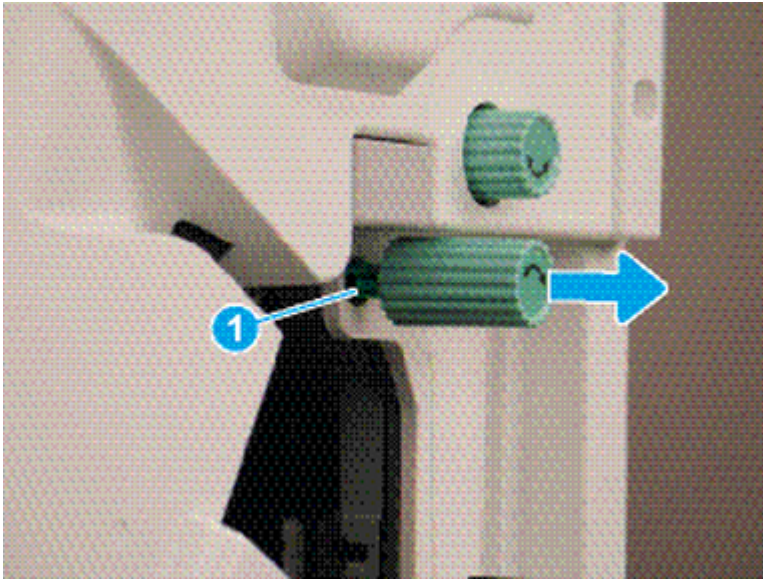


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2012 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2013 Remove the cover

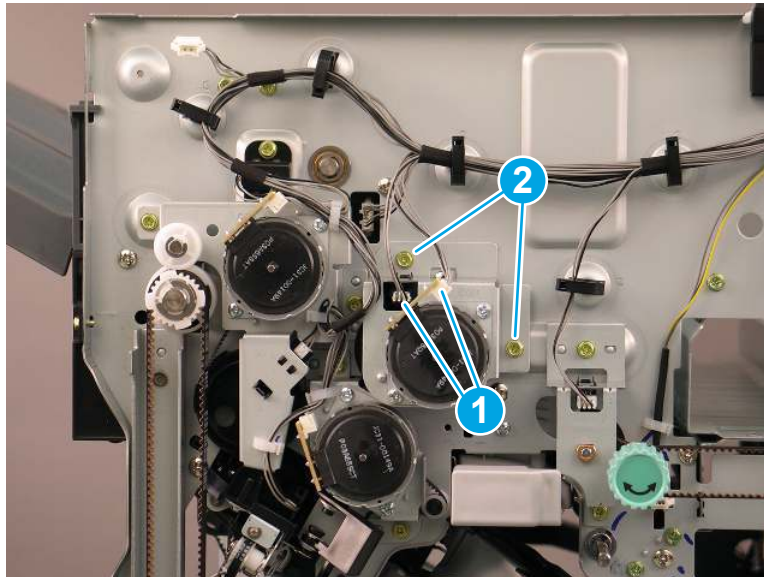


4. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor assembly.

Figure 6-2014 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main exit cam home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main exit cam home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-294 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Main exit cam home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

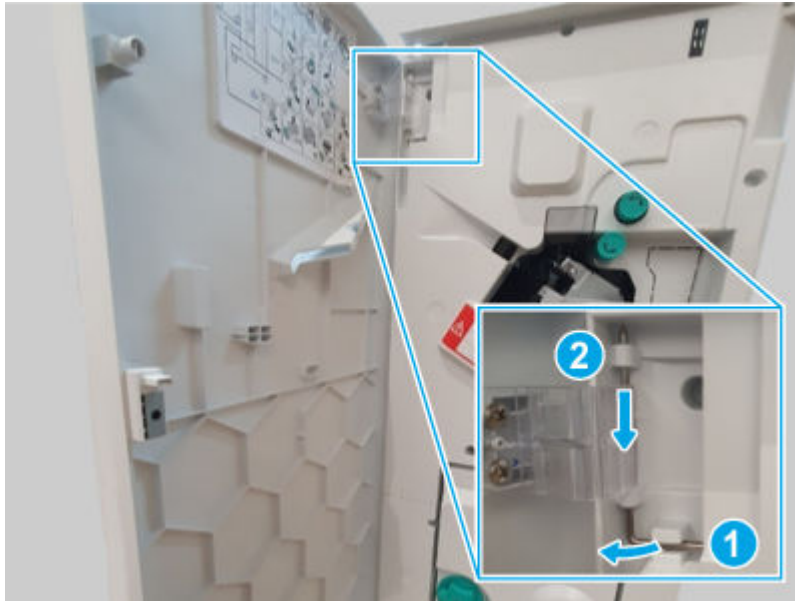
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

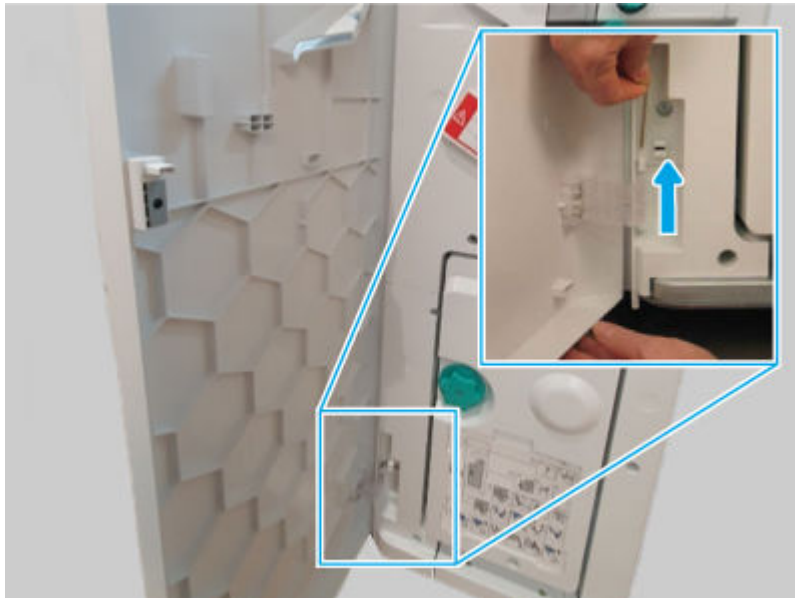
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2015 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2016 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

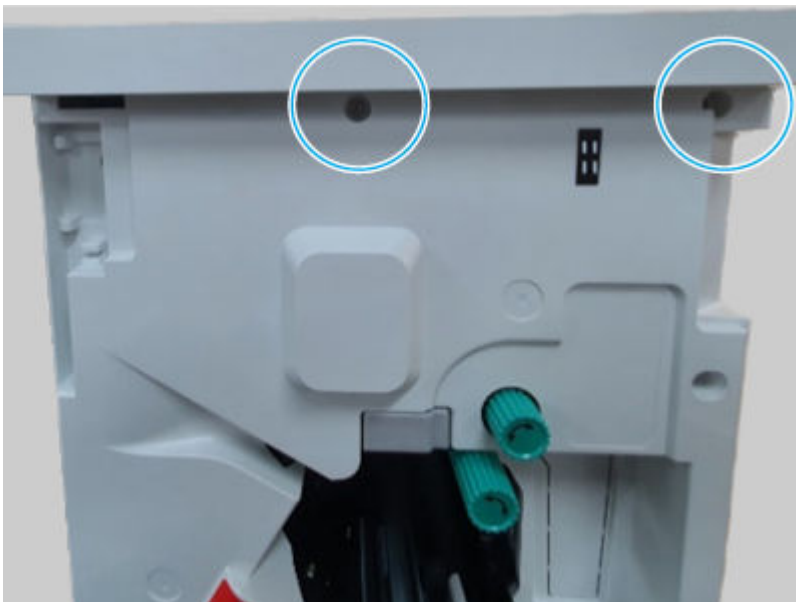
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2017 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2018 Remove the cover

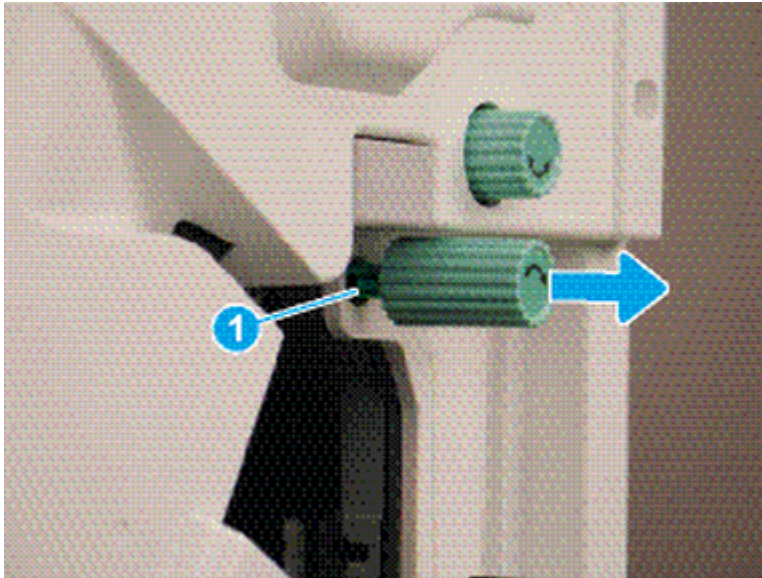


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2019 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2020 Remove the cover

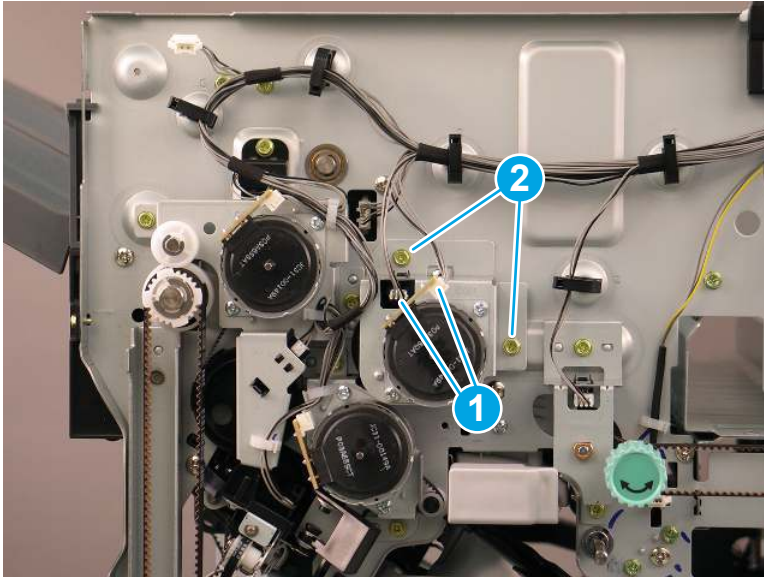


4. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor assembly.

Figure 6-2021 Remove the assembly

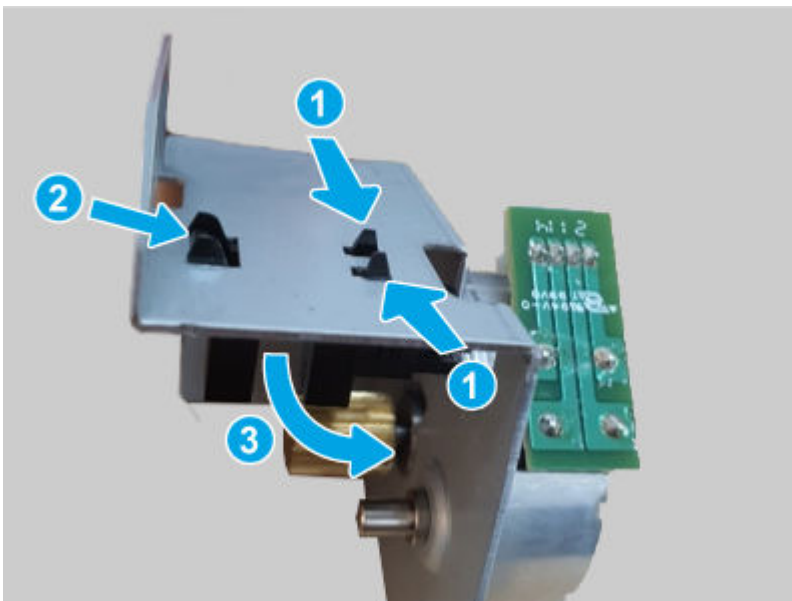


5. Remove the external finisher main exit cam home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam home sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - Remove the main exit cam home sensor from the bracket (callout 3).

Figure 6-2022 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main exit cam motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main exit cam motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-295 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60117	Main exit cam motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

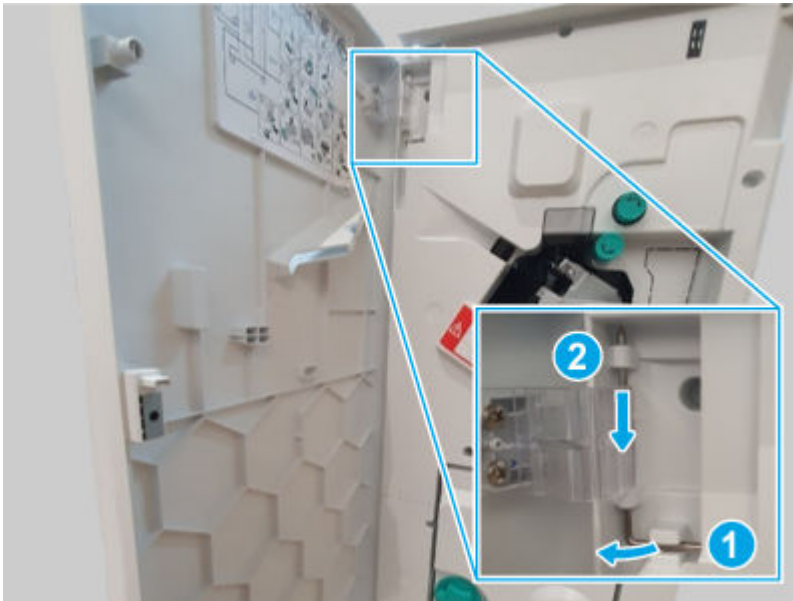
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

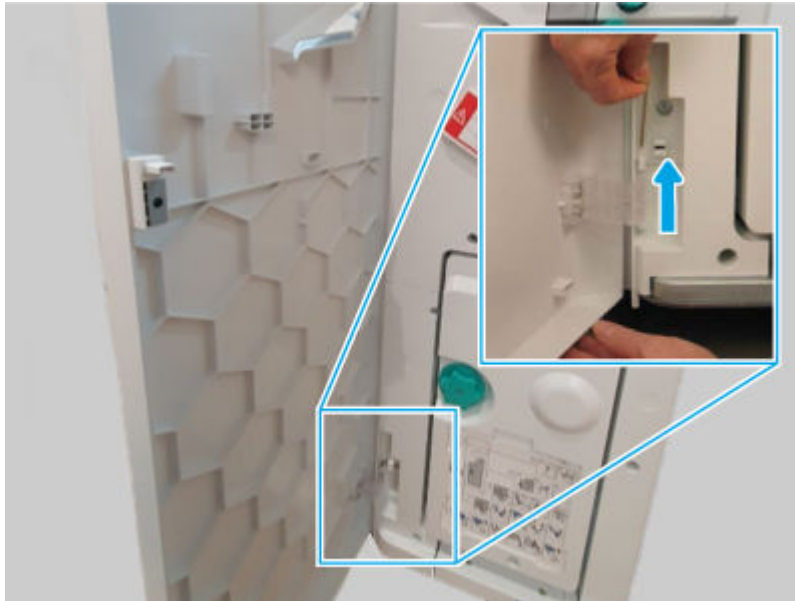
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2023 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2024 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

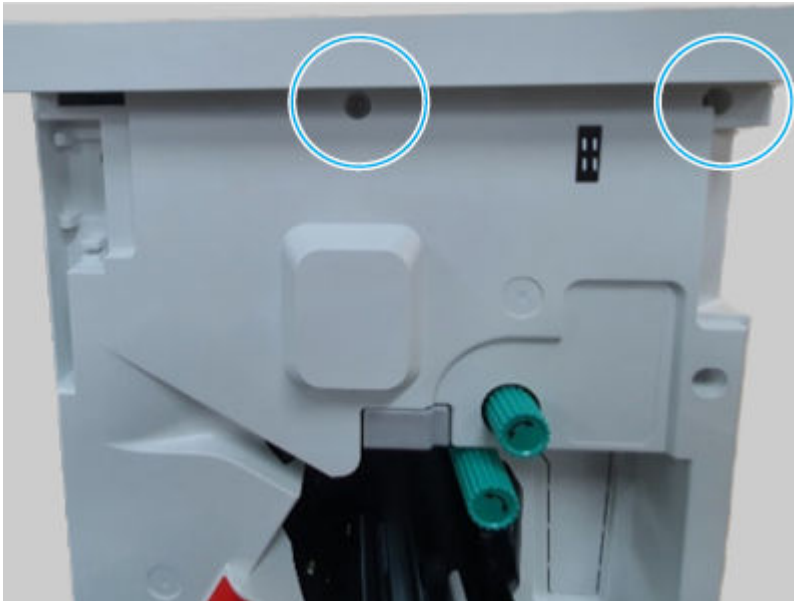
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2025 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2026 Remove the cover

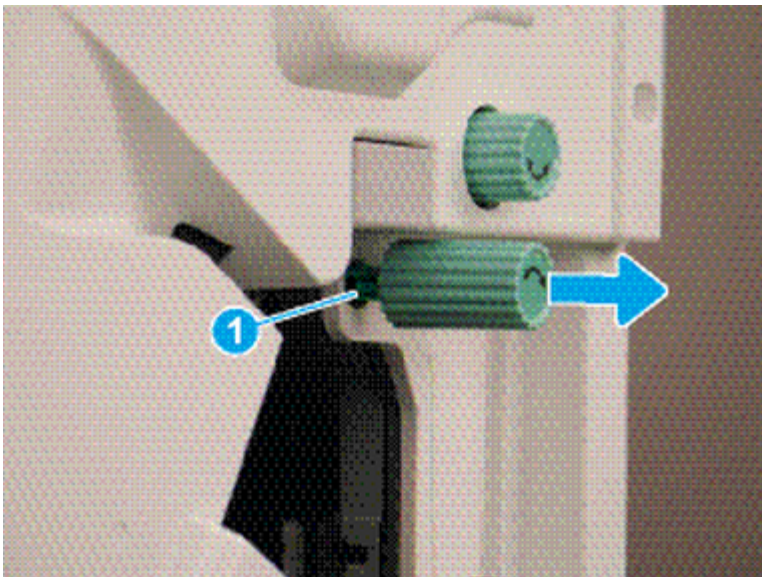


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2027 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2028 Remove the cover

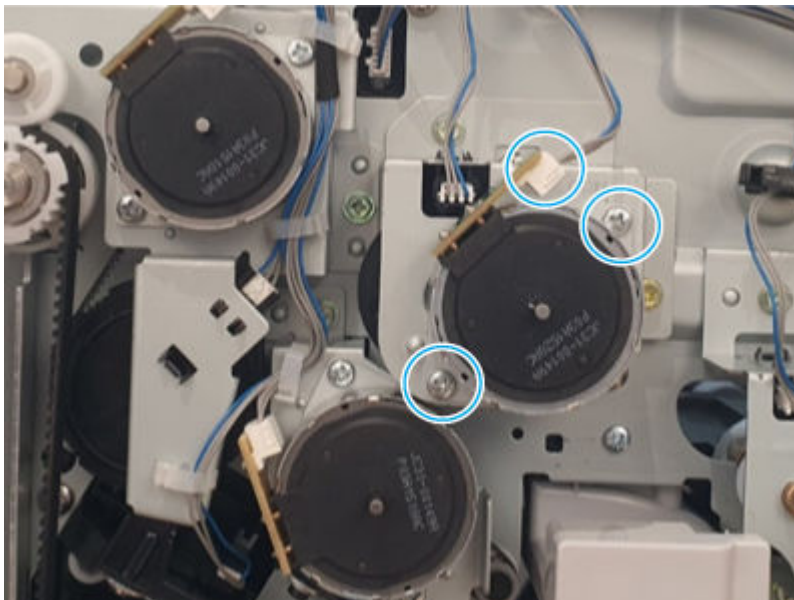


4. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor.


Figure 6-2029 Remove the motor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front door switch

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front door switch.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-296 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02309A	Front door switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

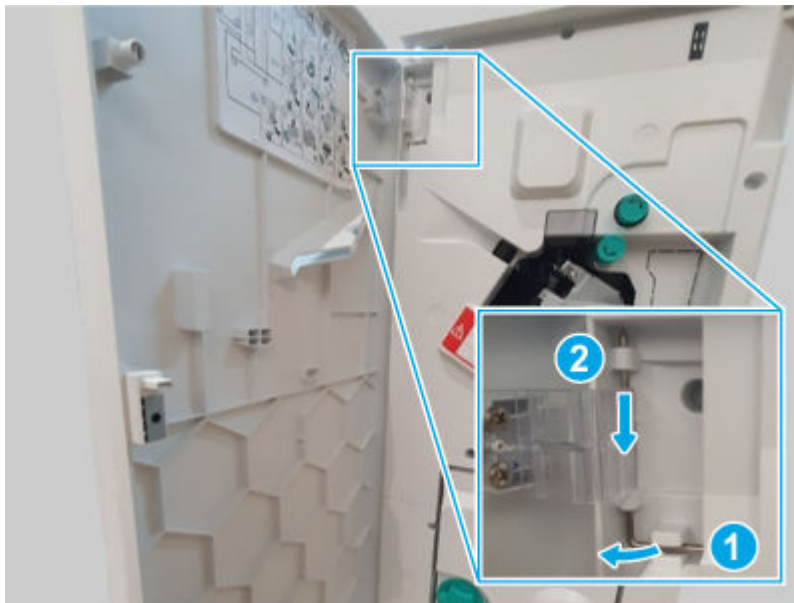
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

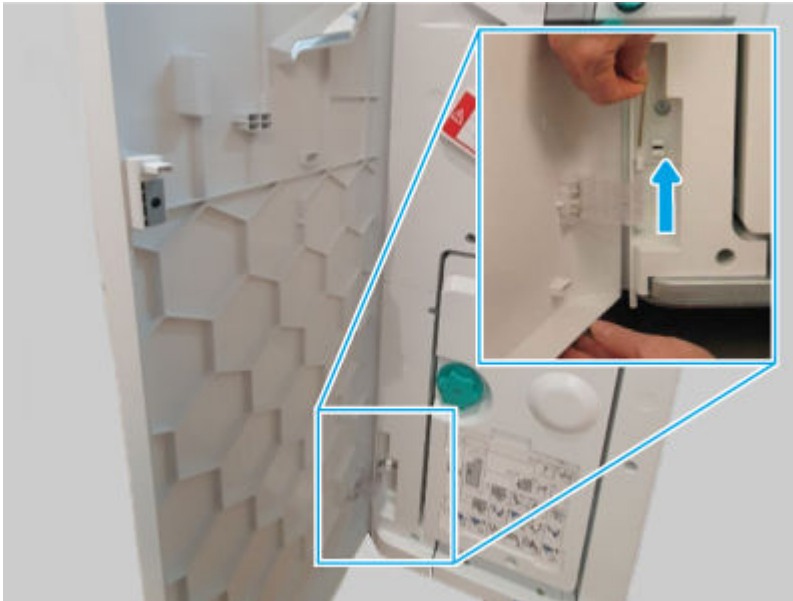
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2030 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2031 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

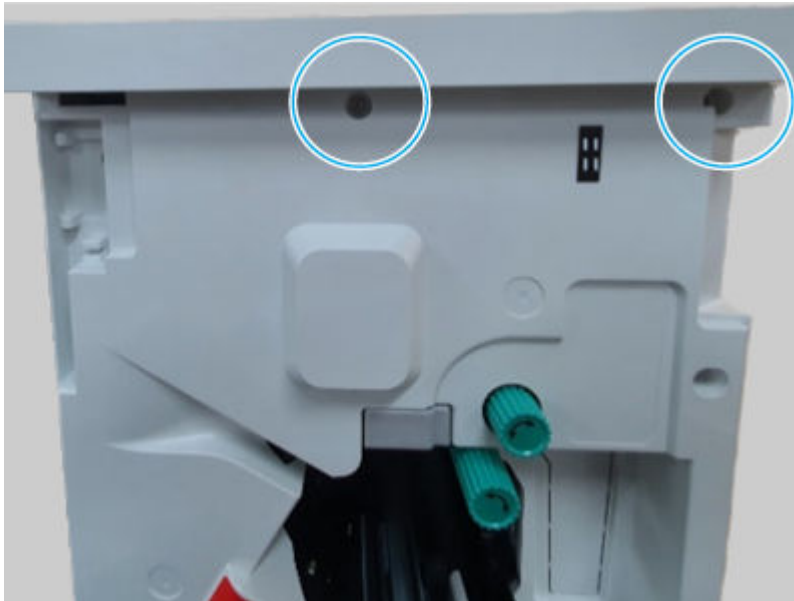
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2032 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2033 Remove the cover

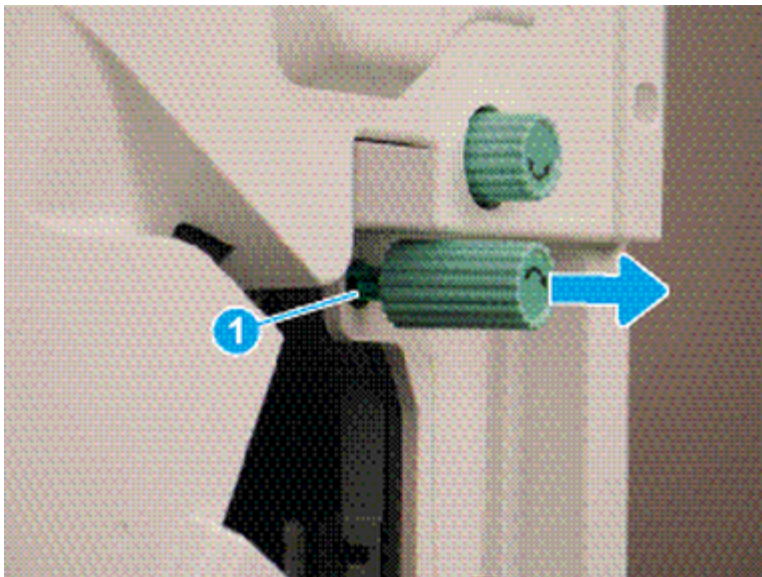


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2034 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2035 Remove the cover



4. Remove the external finisher front door switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door switch.

1. Remove one screw, and then separate the switch and holder from the finisher.

CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the switch. It is still attached by cables to the finisher.

Figure 6-2036 Separate the switch and holder from the finisher



2. Separate the switch from the holder, and then disconnect two connectors to remove the front door switch.

Figure 6-2037 Remove the switch



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paddle unit

Review the external finisher paddle unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Paddle

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paddle.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-297 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01480A	Paddle

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

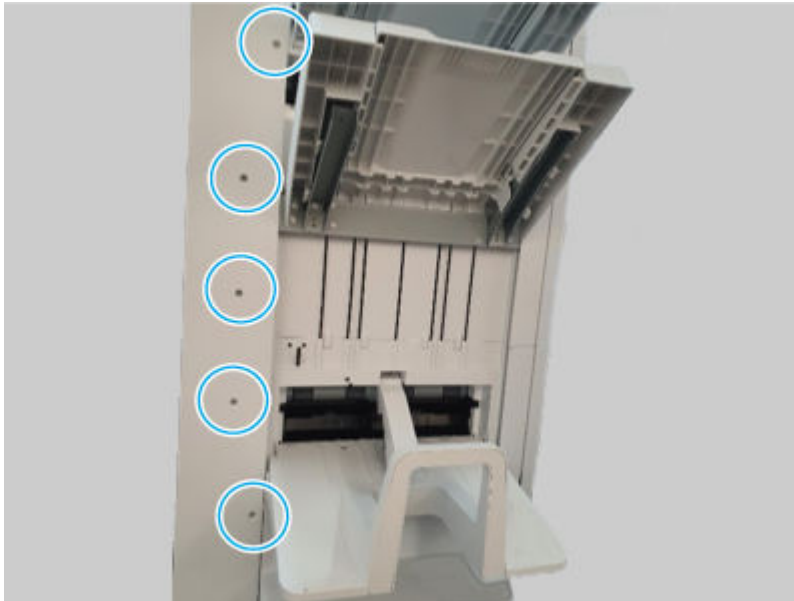
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2038 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


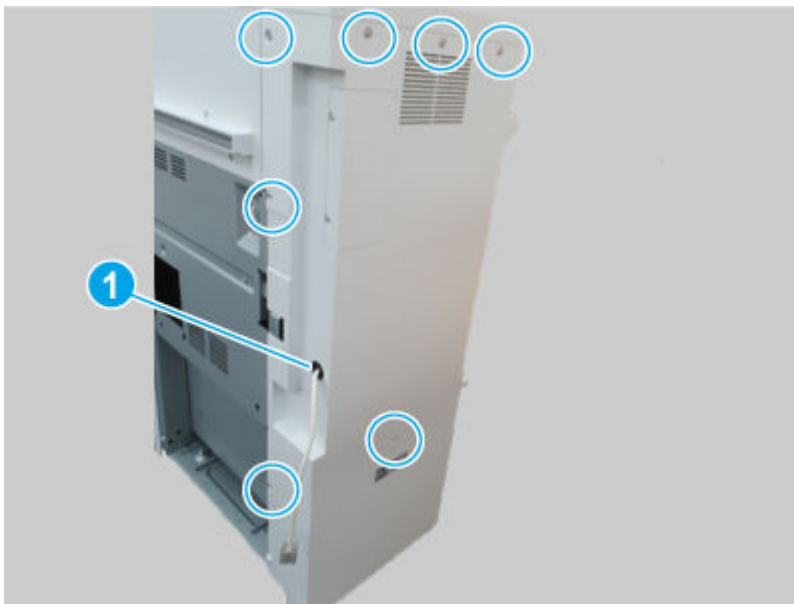
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2039 Remove the cover

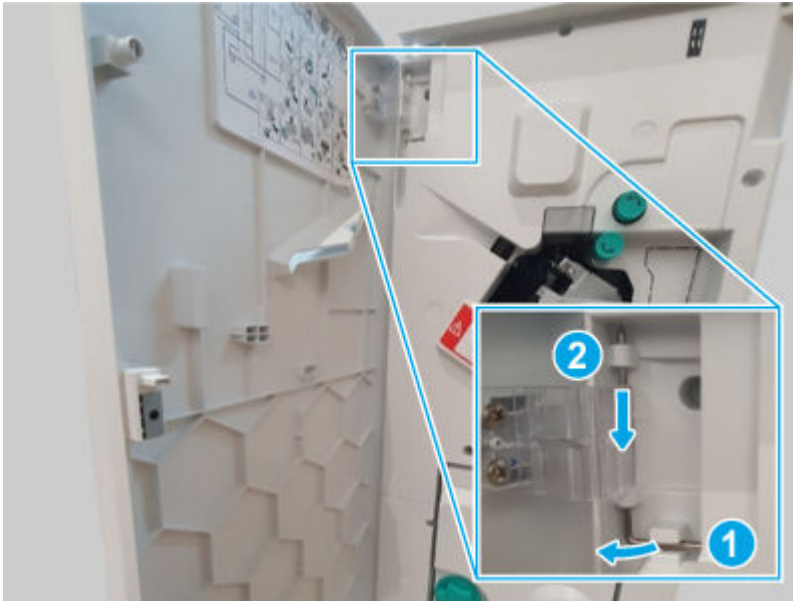


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

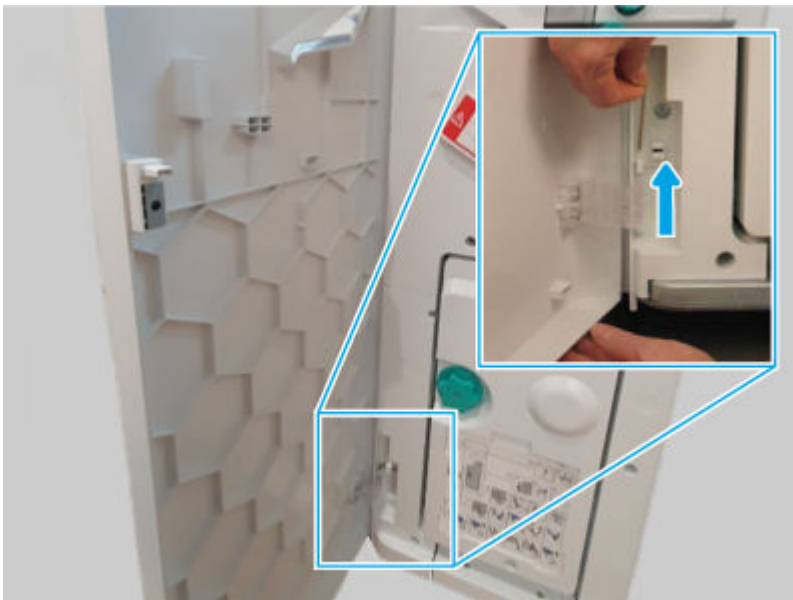
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2040 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2041 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

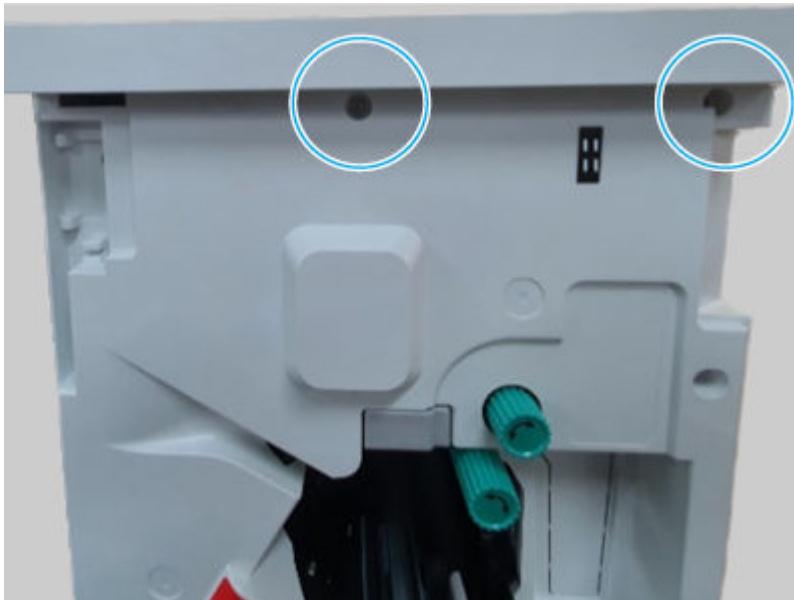
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2042 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2043 Remove the cover

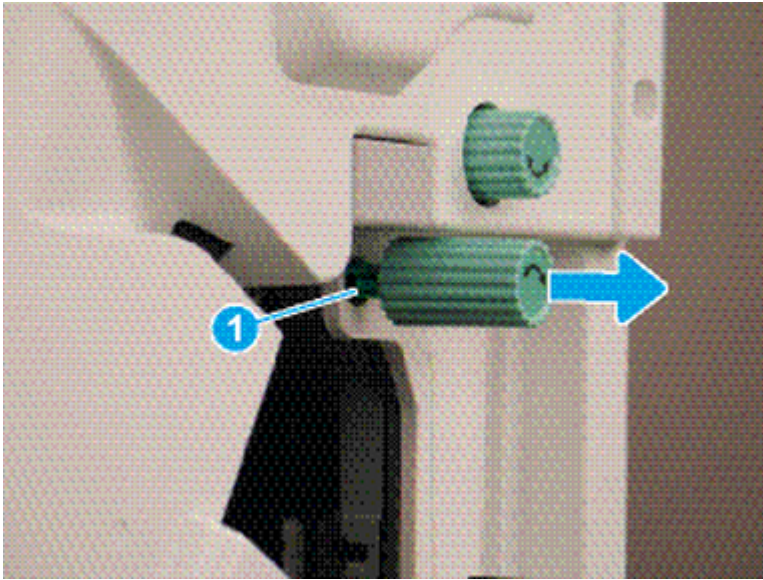


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2044 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2045 Remove the cover



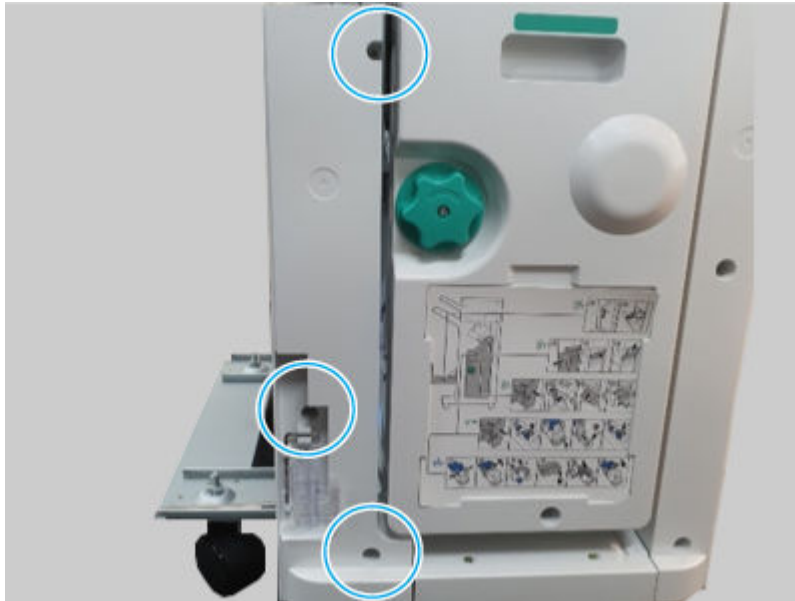
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2046 Remove the cover

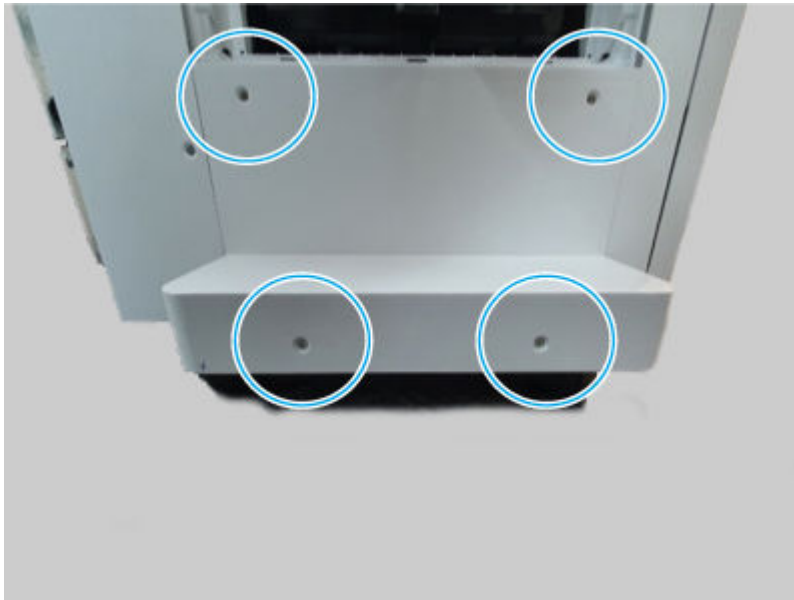


6. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-2047 Remove the cover

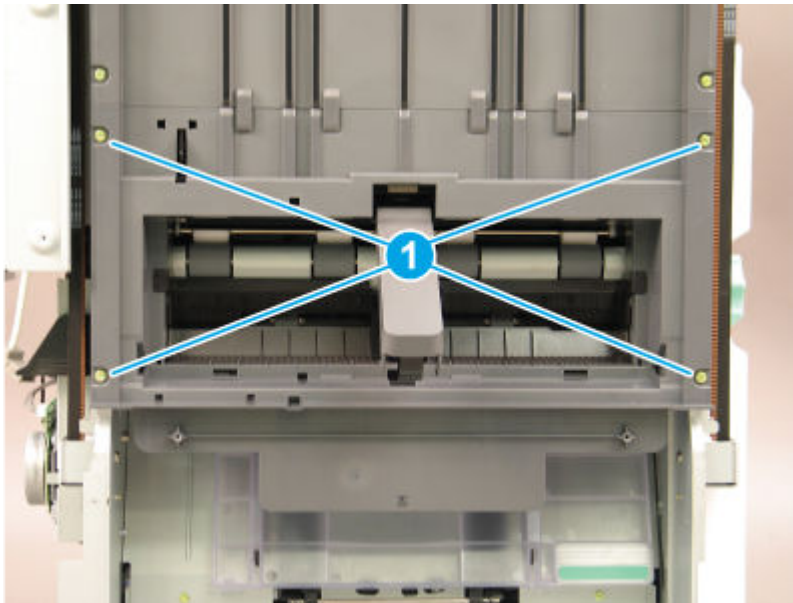


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2048 Remove four screws

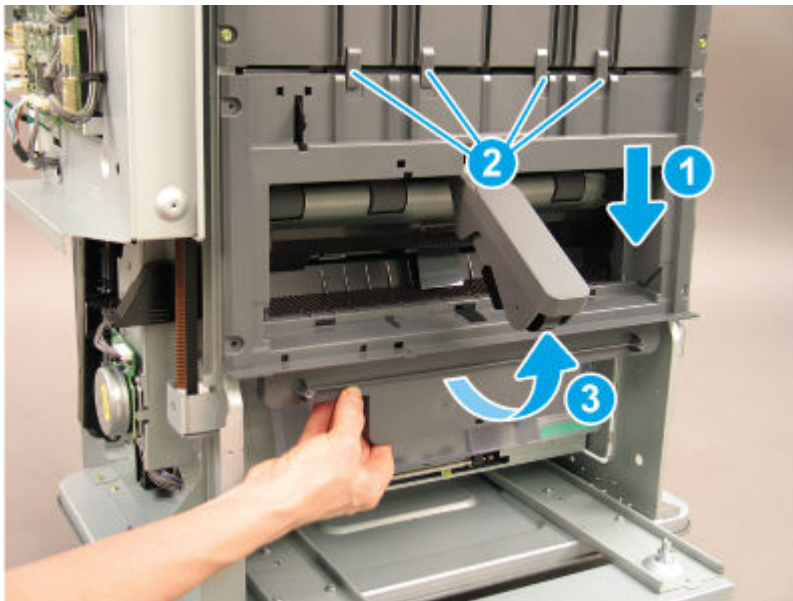


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

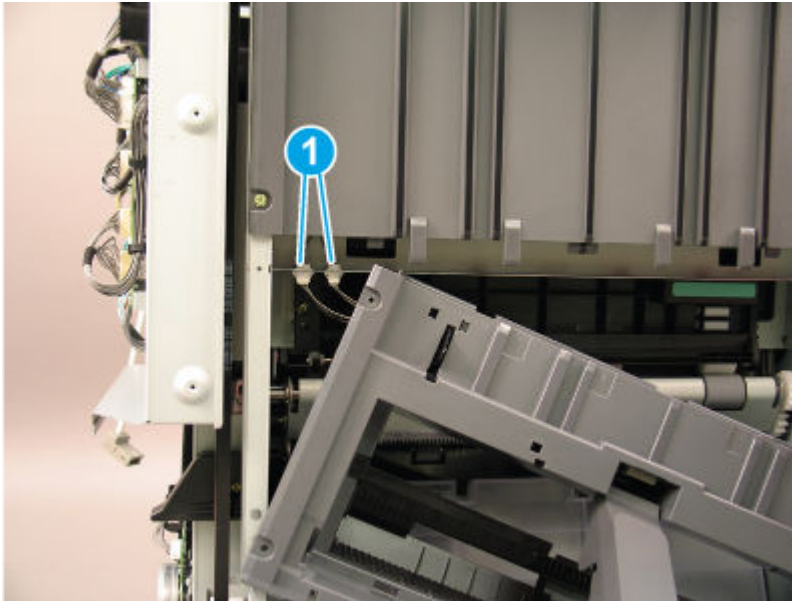
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2049 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2050 Remove the cover

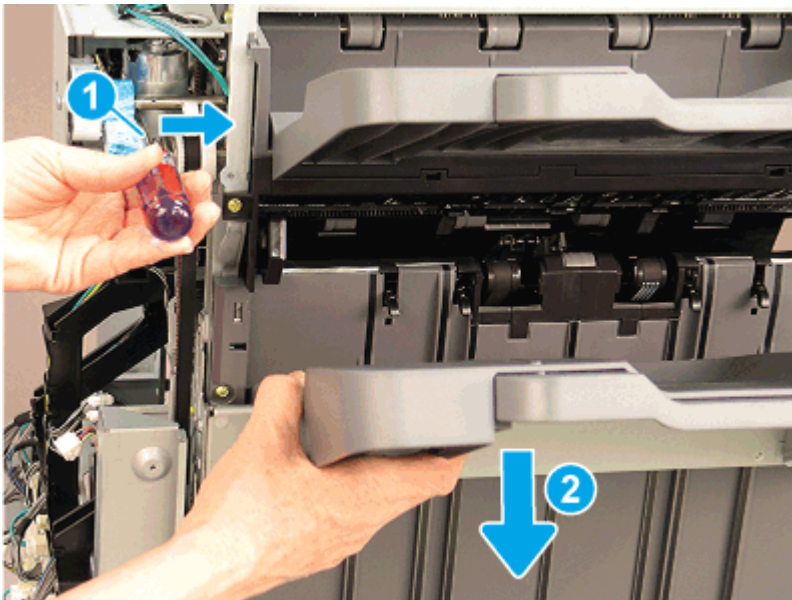


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

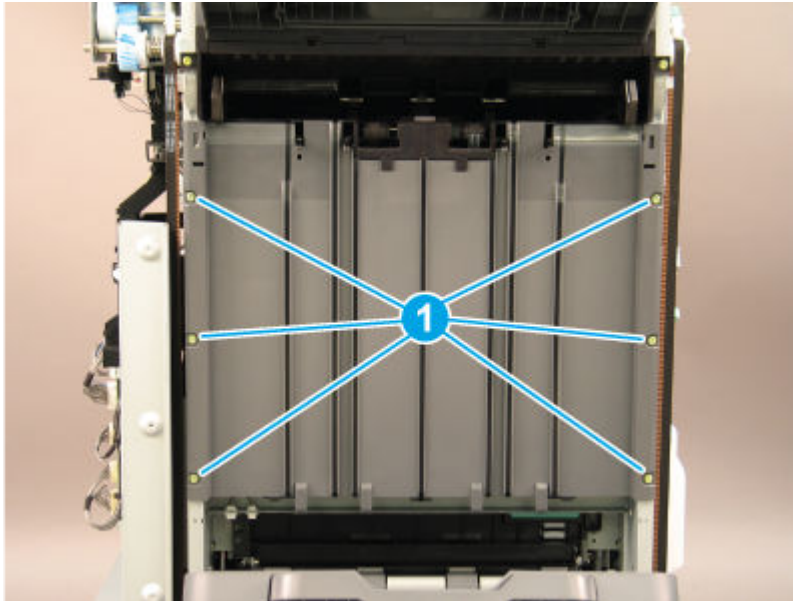
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2051 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2052 Remove six screws

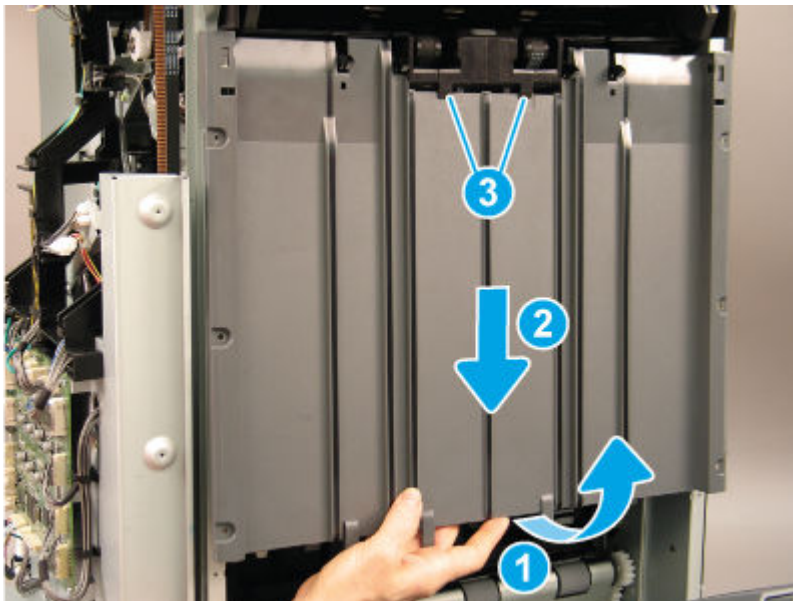


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

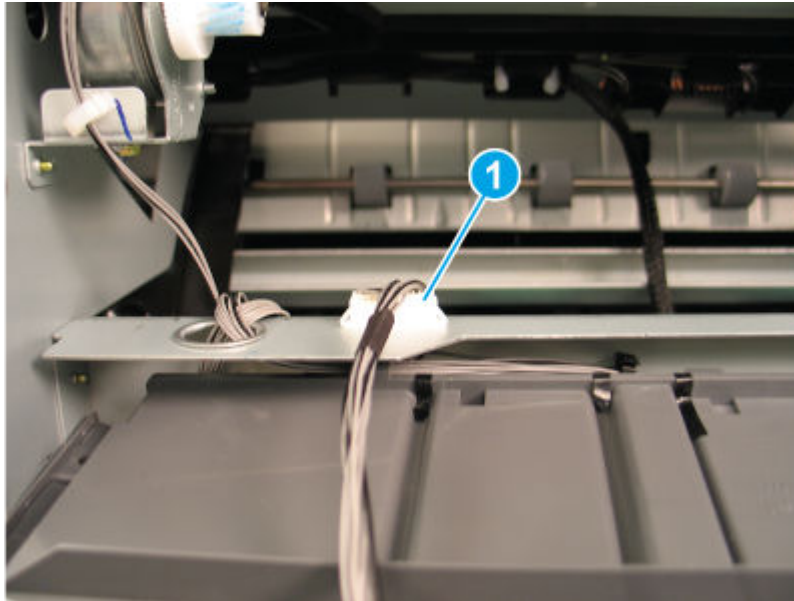
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2053 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2054 Remove the cover

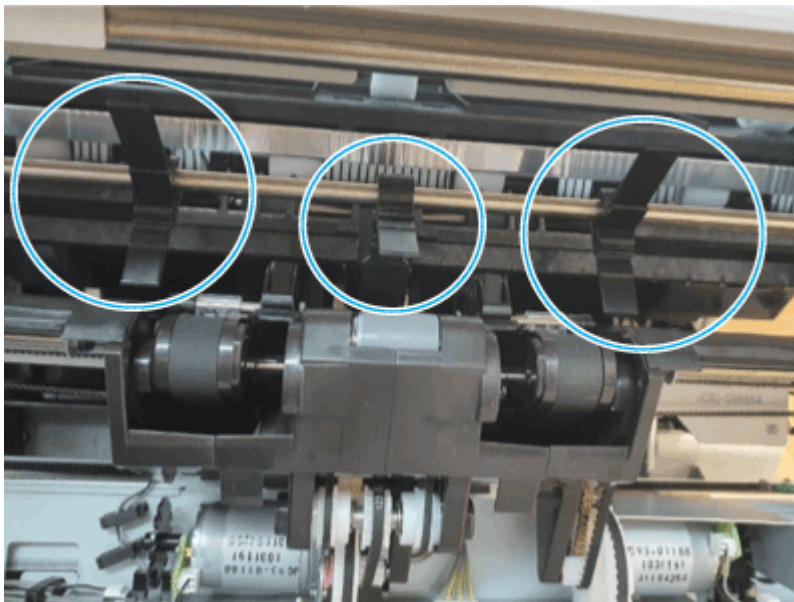


9. Remove the external finisher paddle

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle.

- Pull the paddle straight out to remove it.


Figure 6-2055 Remove the paddle



10. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paddle motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-298 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

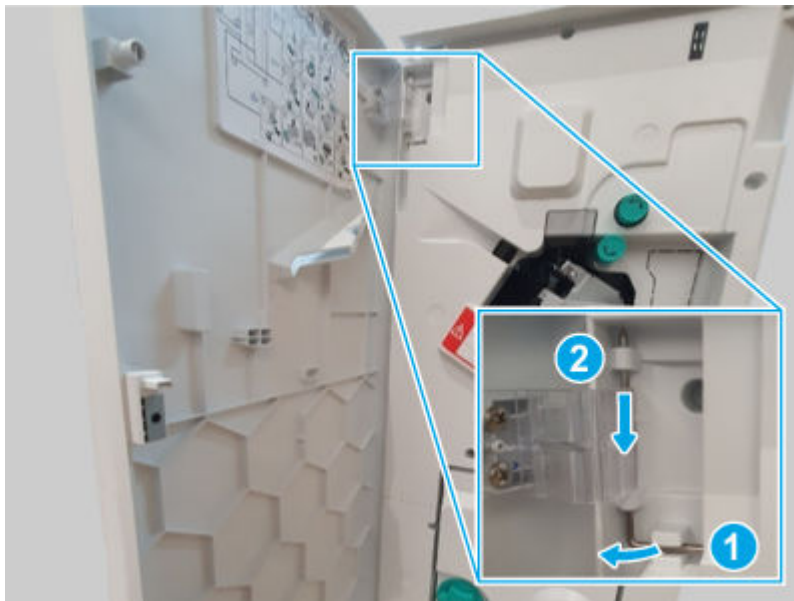
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

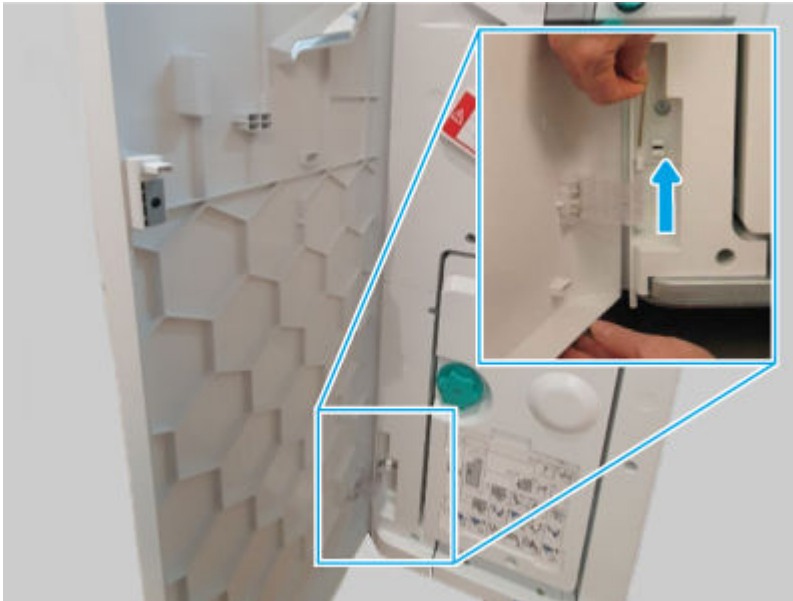
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2056 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2057 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

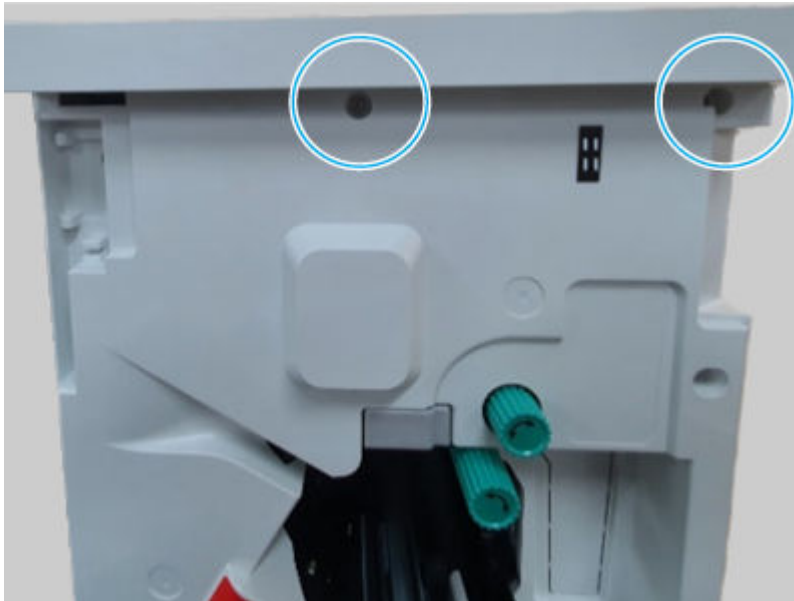
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2058 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2059 Remove the cover

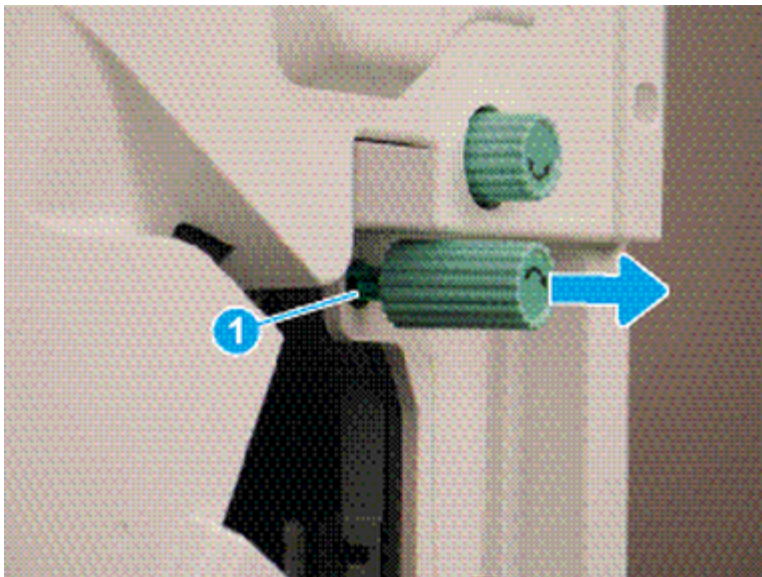


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2060 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2061 Remove the cover

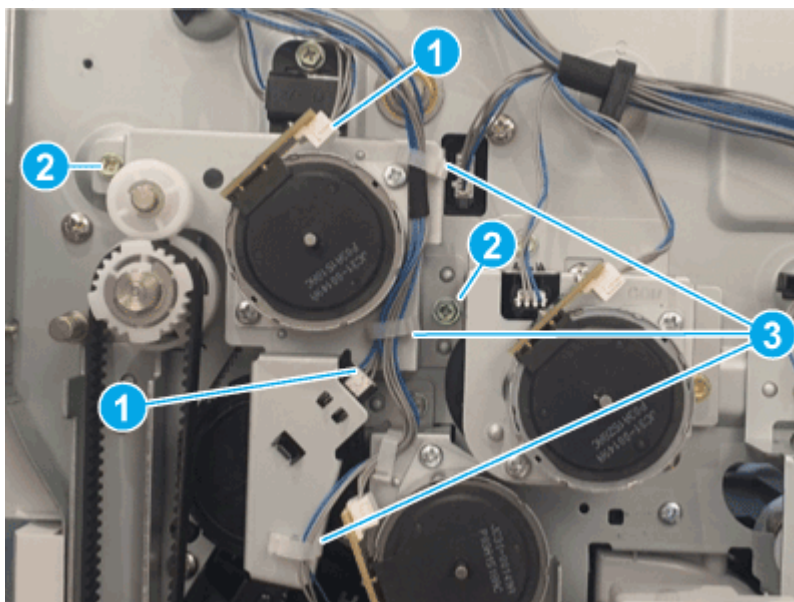


4. Remove the external finisher paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).
 - b. Remove two screws (callout 2).
 - c. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 3), and then remove the paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2062 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paddle home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paddle home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-299 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paddle home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

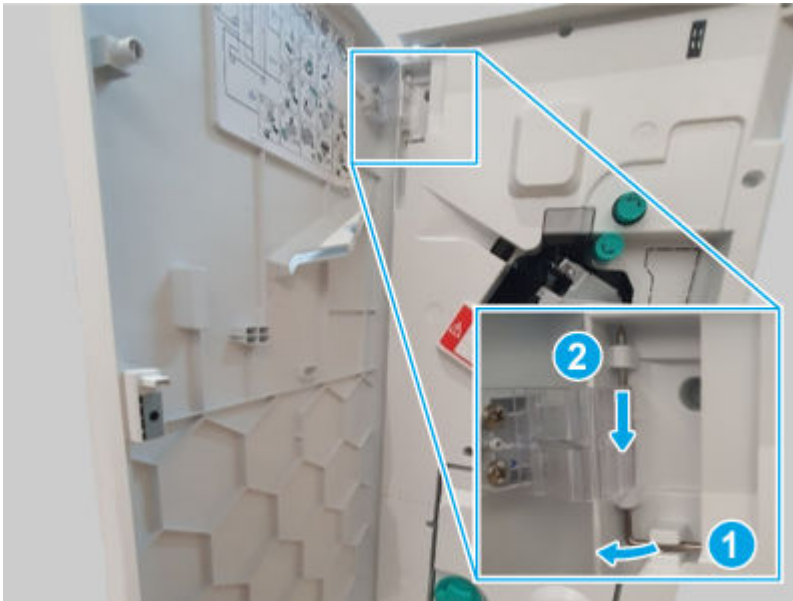
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

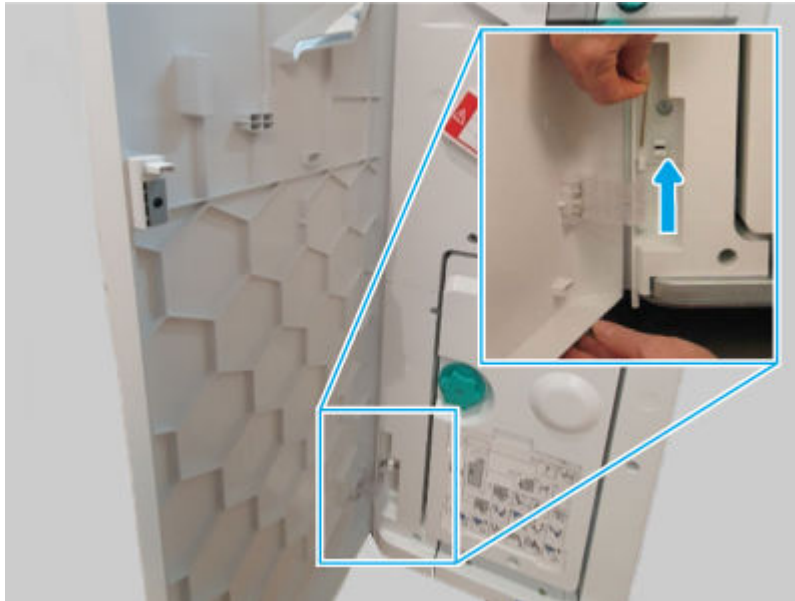
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2063 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2064 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

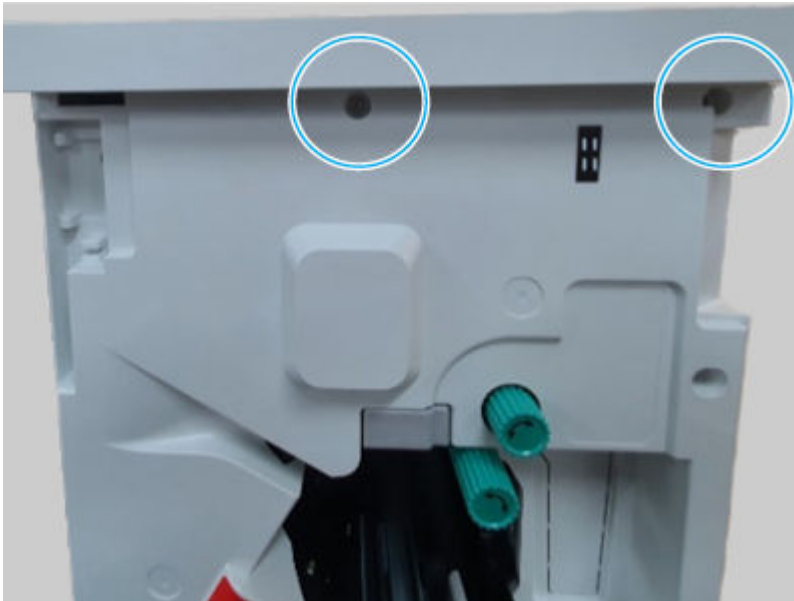
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2065 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2066 Remove the cover

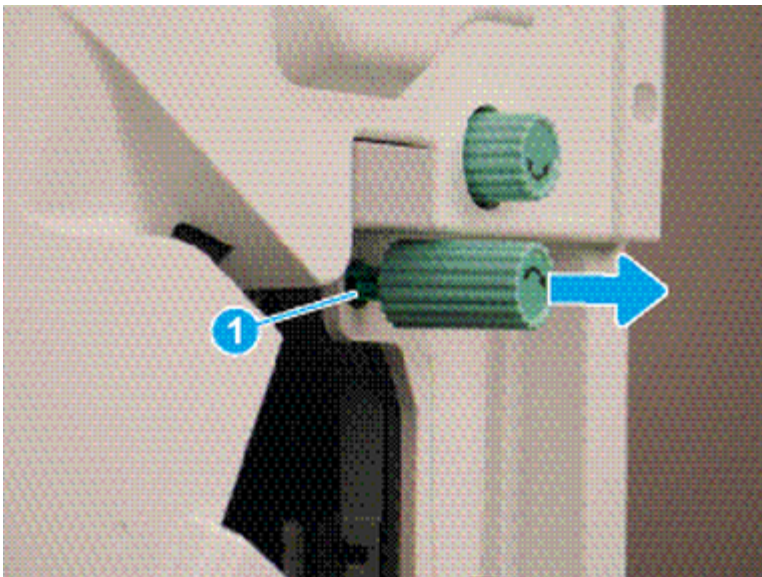


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2067 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2068 Remove the cover

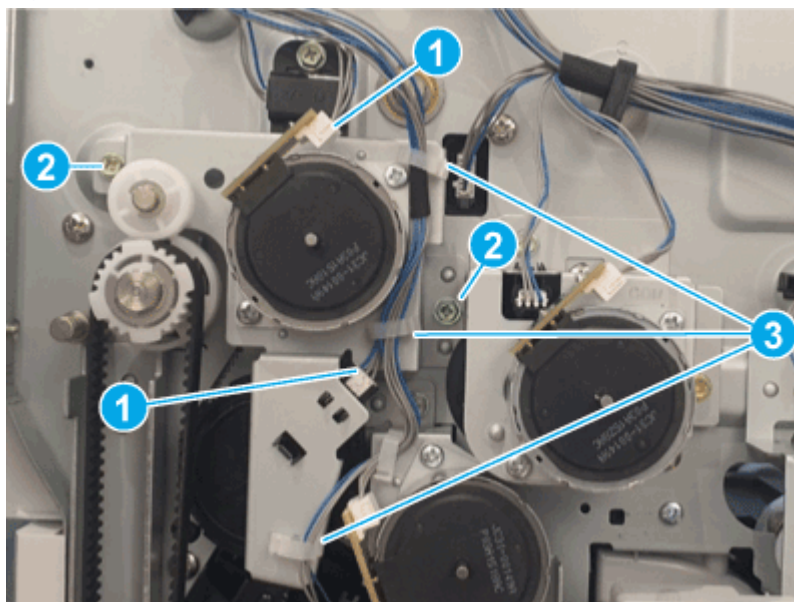


4. Remove the external finisher paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).
 - b. Remove two screws (callout 2).
 - c. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 3), and then remove the paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2069 Remove the assembly

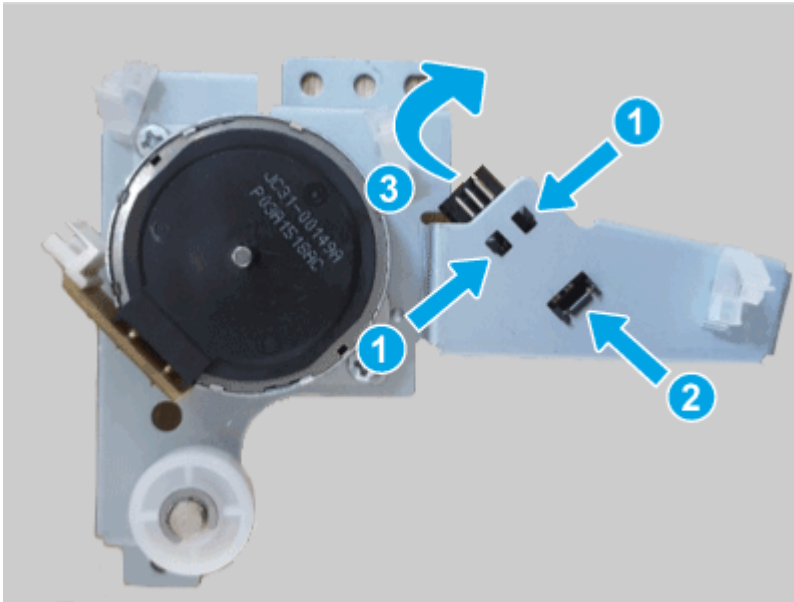


5. Remove the external finisher paddle home sensory

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle home sensor.

- Do the following:
 - a. Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - b. Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the paddle home sensor from the bracket (callout 3).

Figure 6-2070 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.




IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using

disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paddle motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paddle motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-300 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Paddle motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

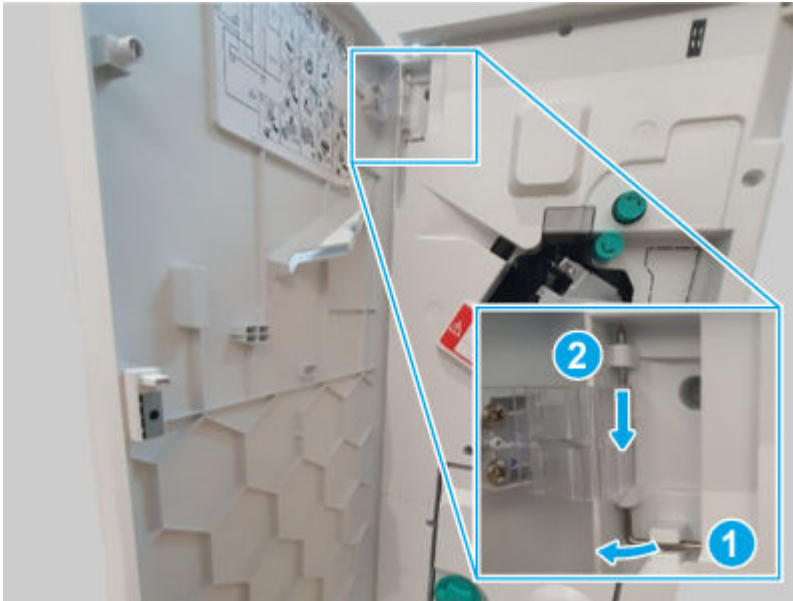
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

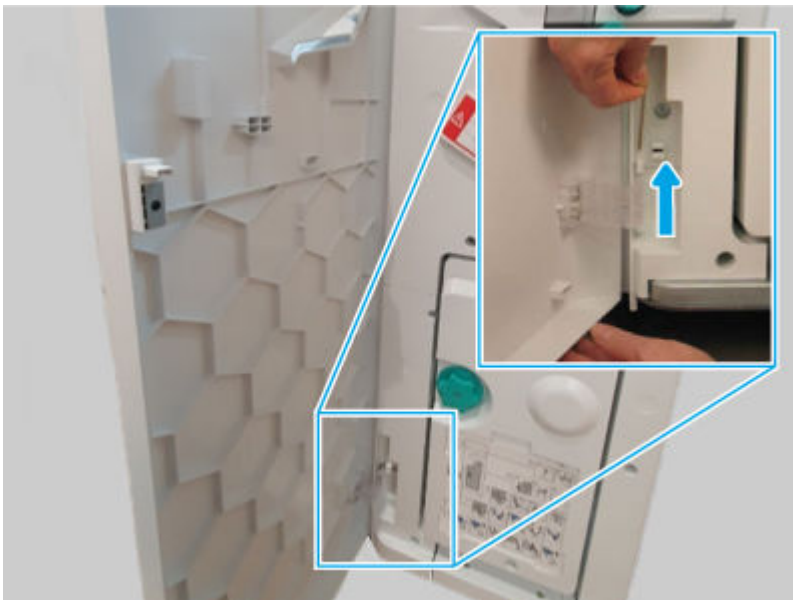
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2071 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2072 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

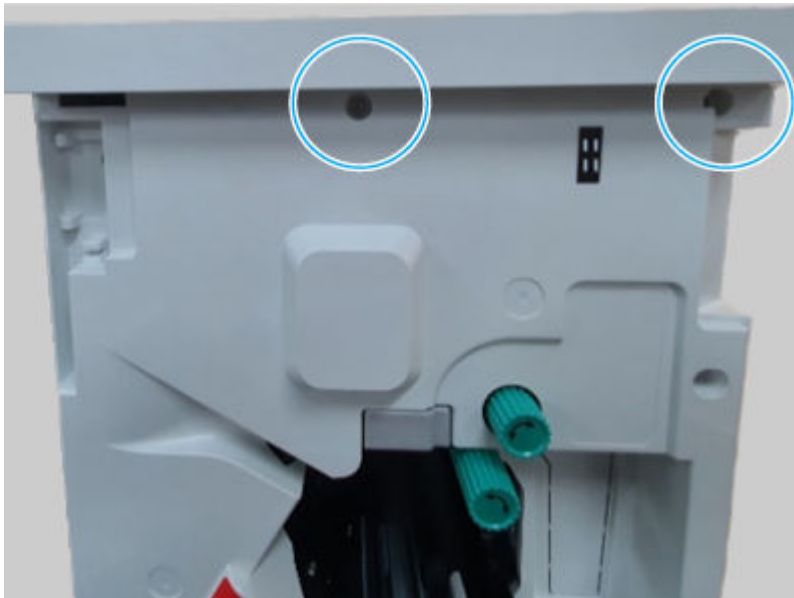
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2073 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2074 Remove the cover

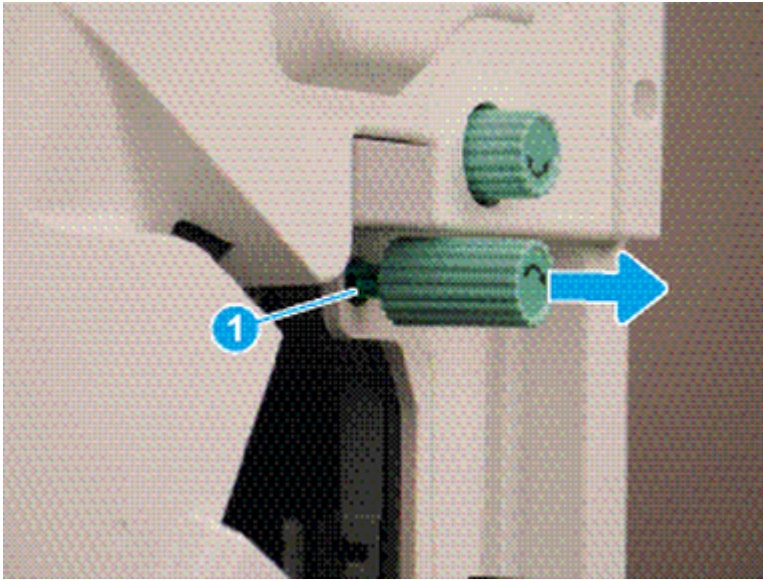


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2075 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2076 Remove the cover

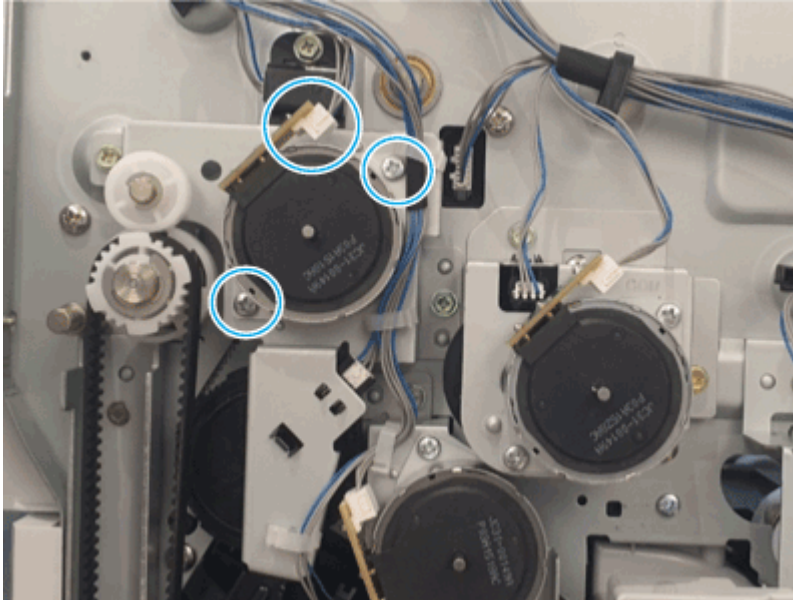


4. Remove the external finisher paddle motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the paddle motor.


Figure 6-2077 Remove the motor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

End fence unit

Review the external finisher end fence unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: End fence home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher end fence home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-301 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (End fence sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

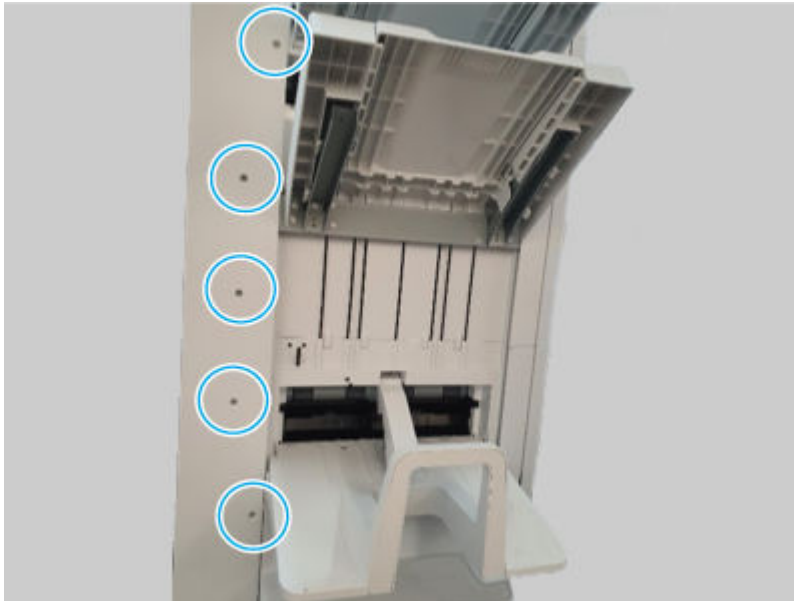
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2078 Remove five screws

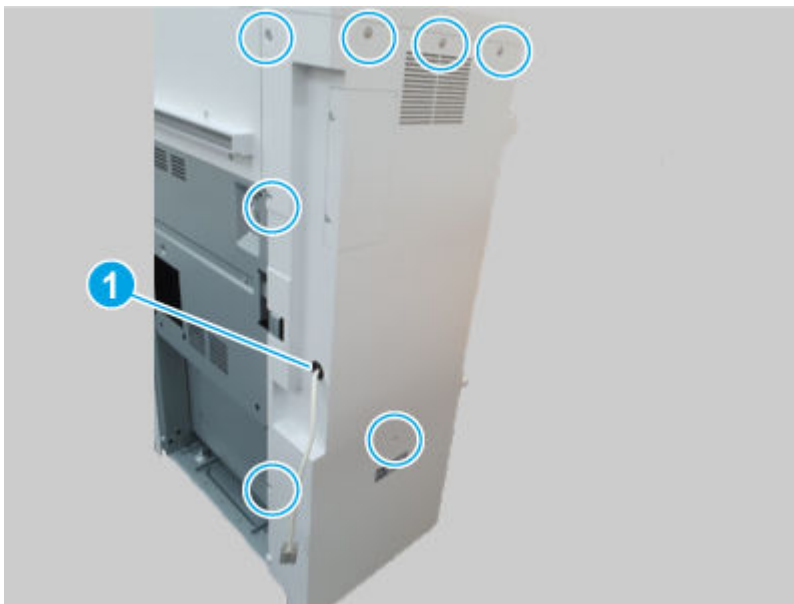


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2079 Remove the cover

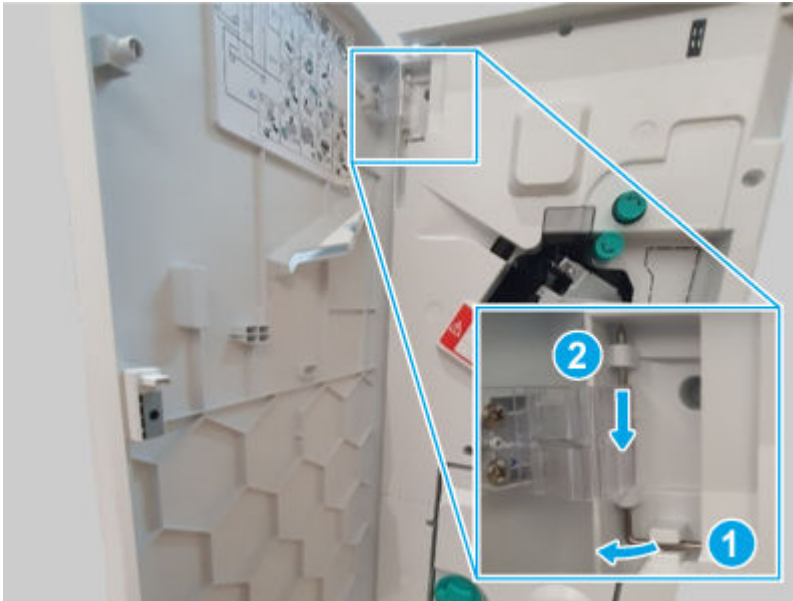


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

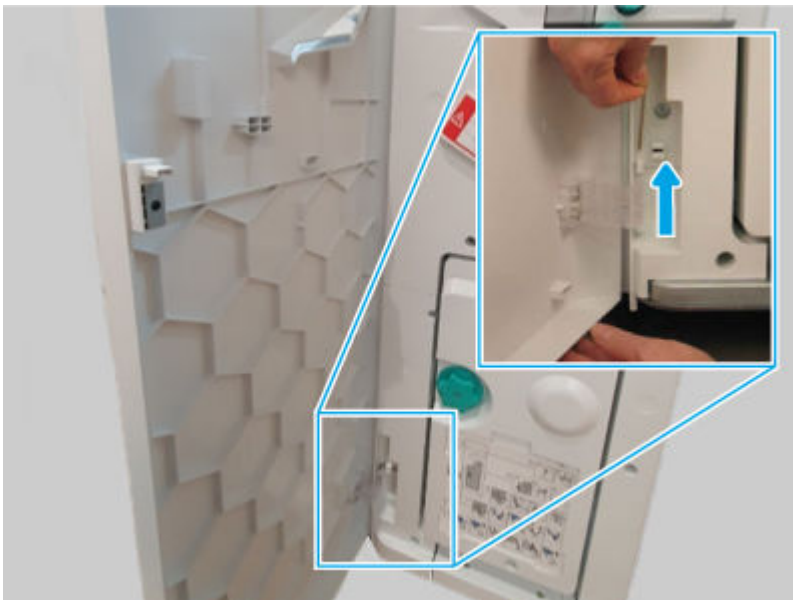
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2080 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2081 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

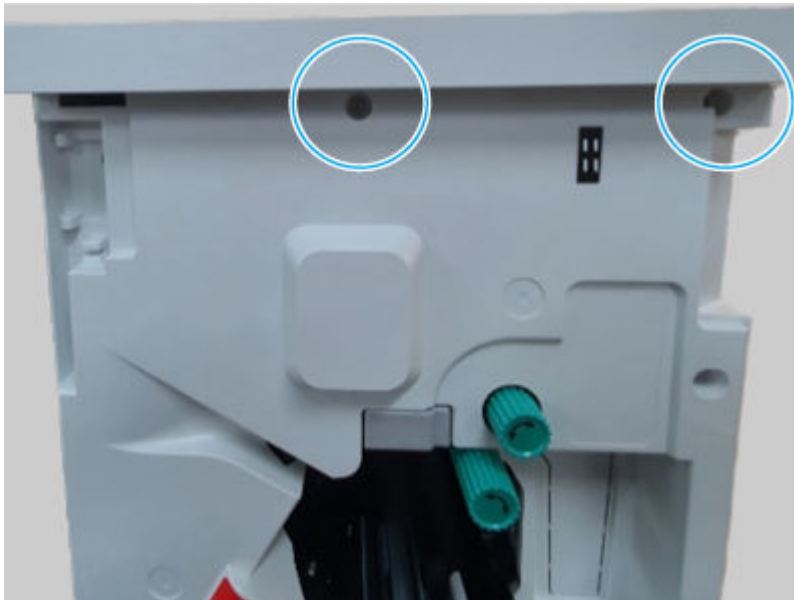
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2082 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2083 Remove the cover

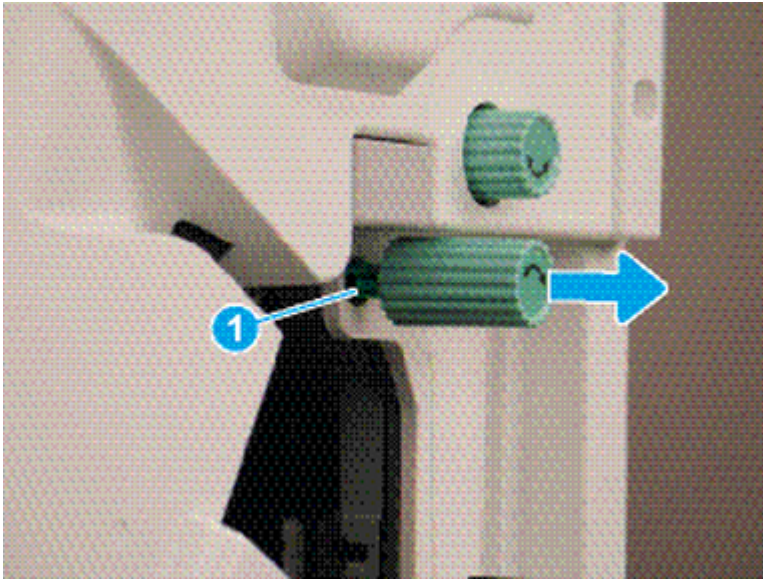


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2084 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2085 Remove the cover



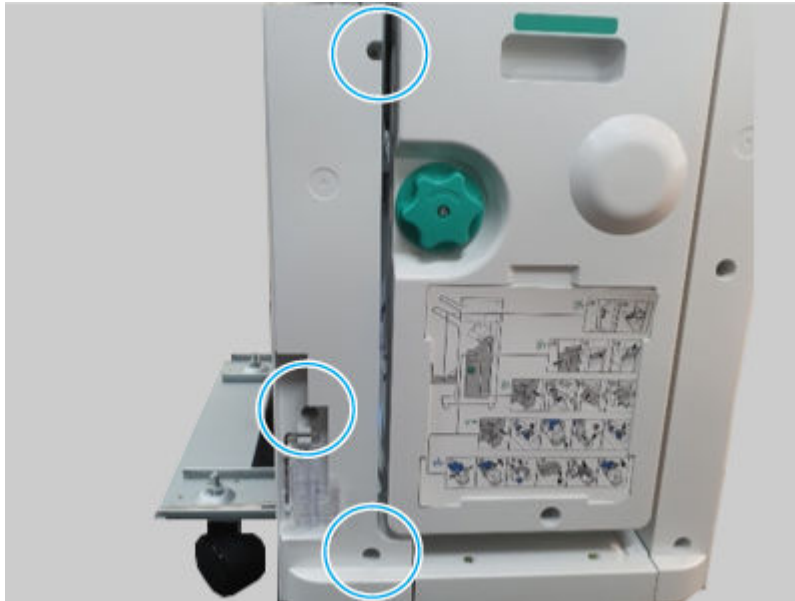
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2086 Remove the cover

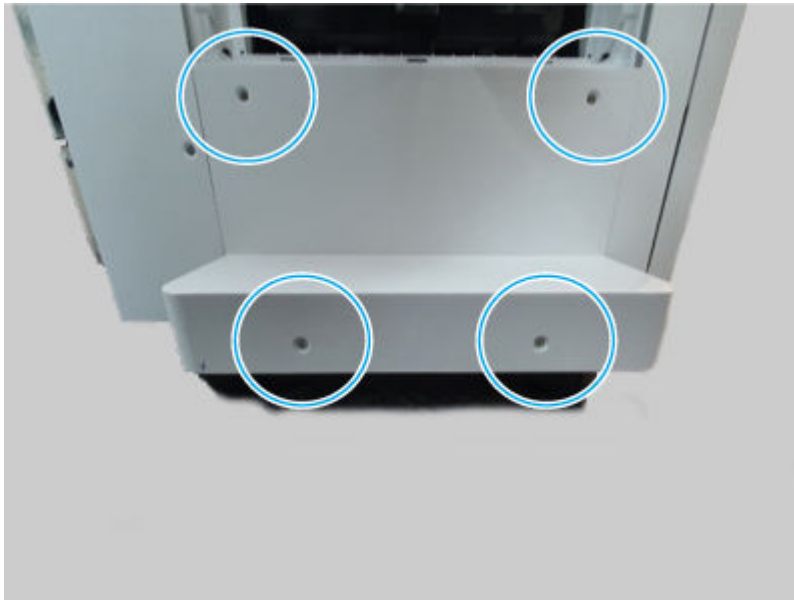


6. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-2087 Remove the cover

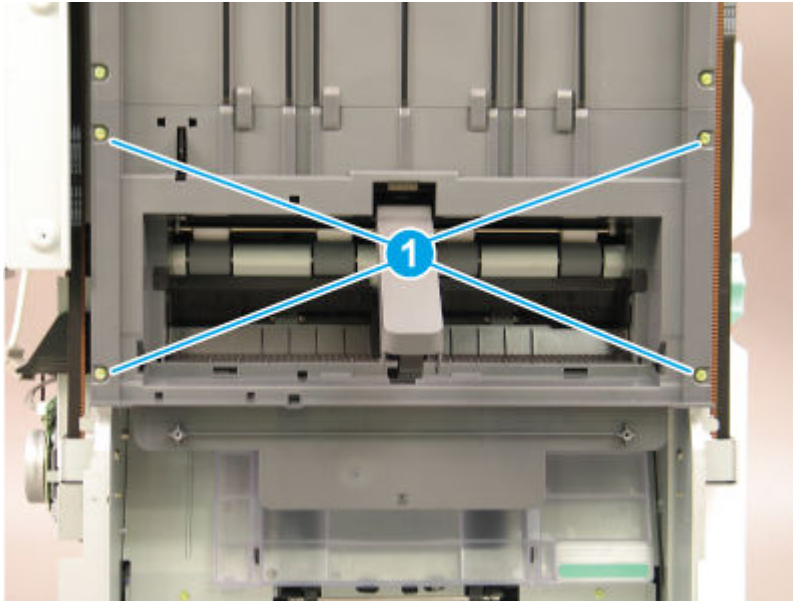


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2088 Remove four screws

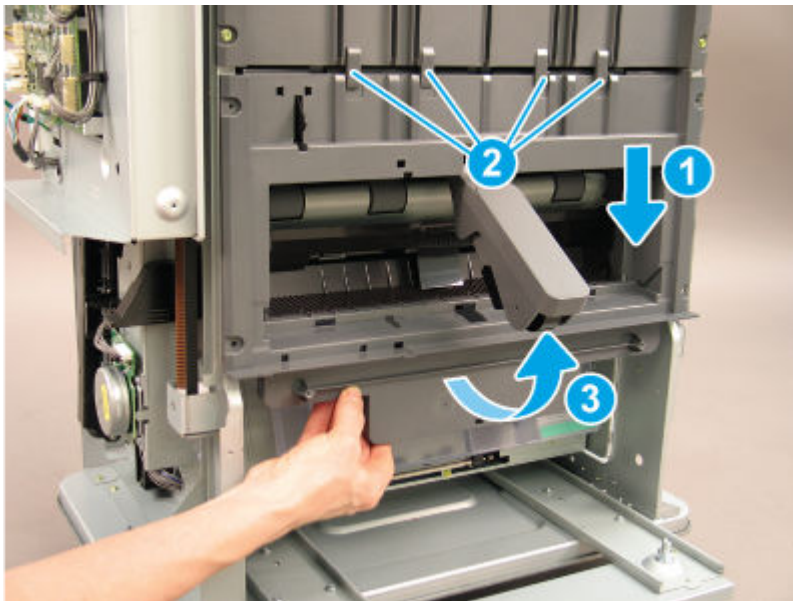


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

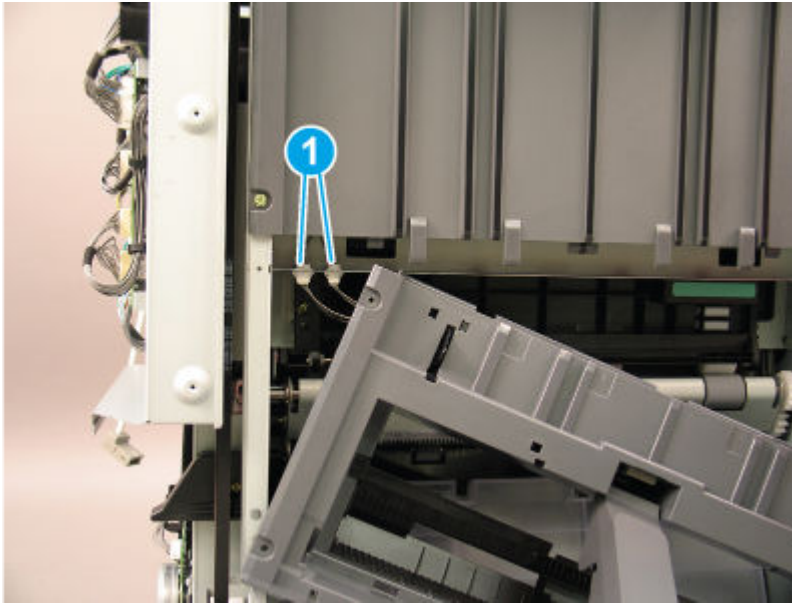
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2089 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2090 Remove the cover

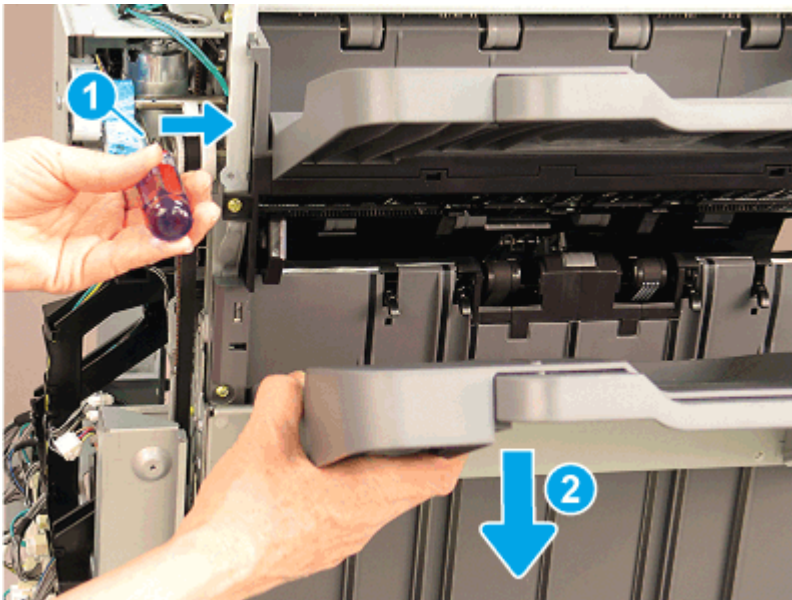


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

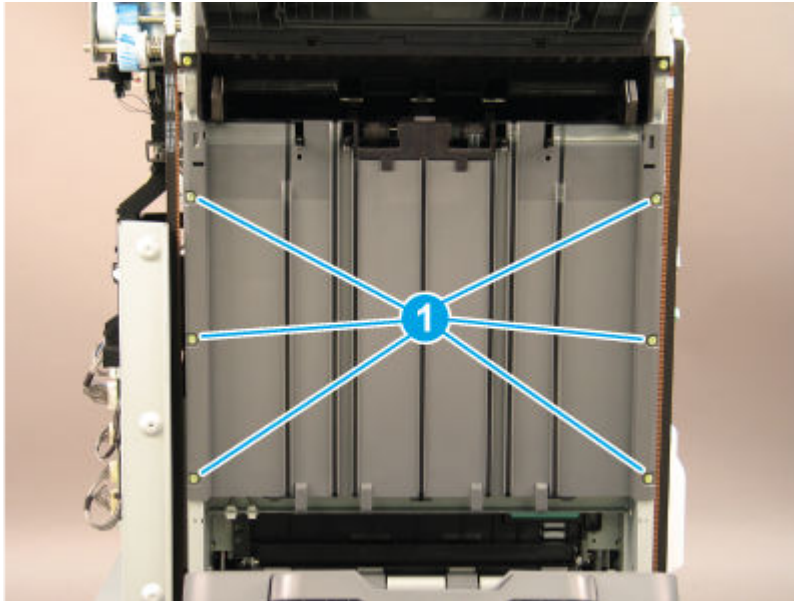
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2091 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2092 Remove six screws

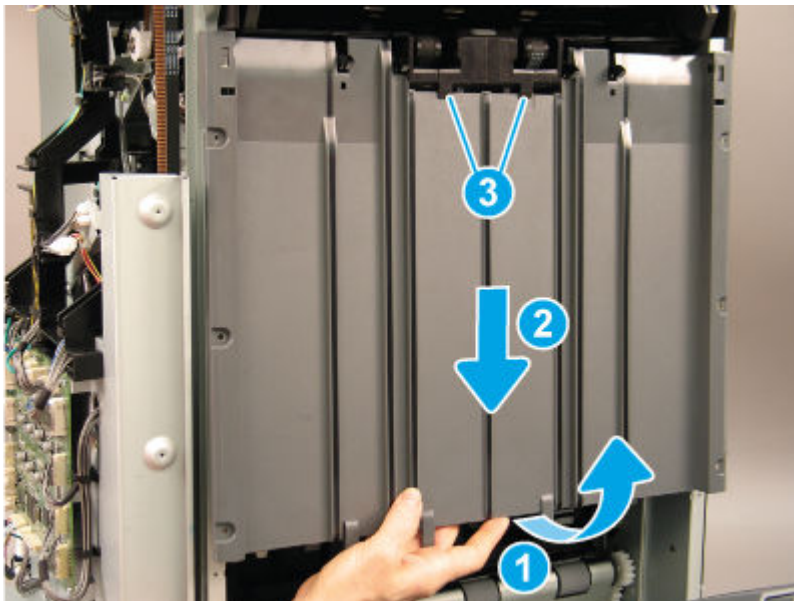


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

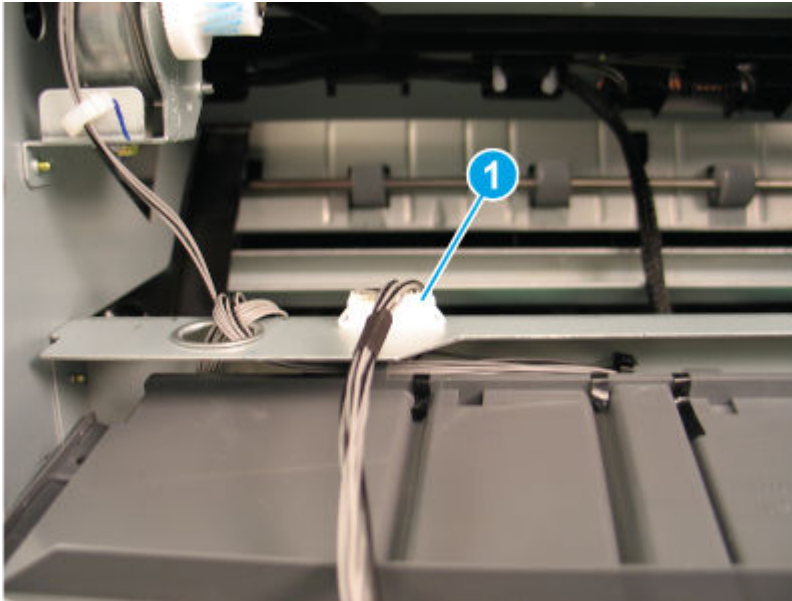
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2093 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2094 Remove the cover



9. Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


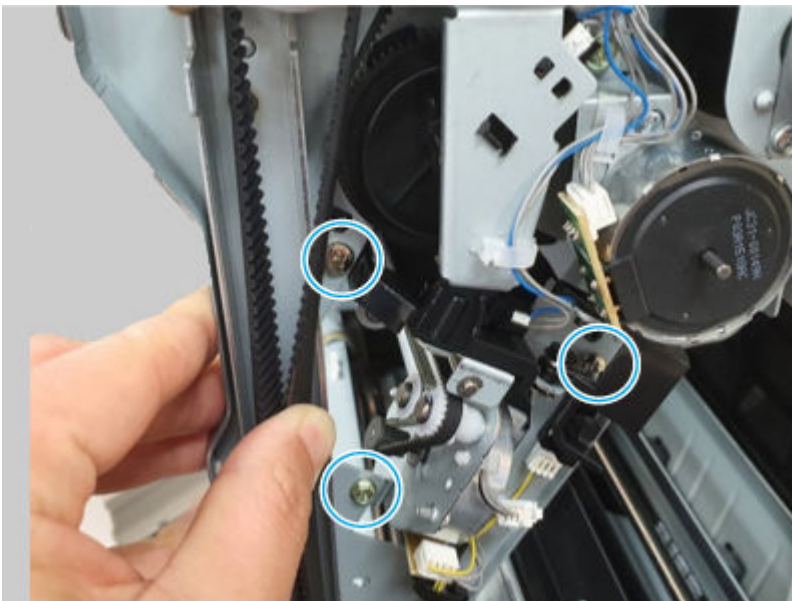
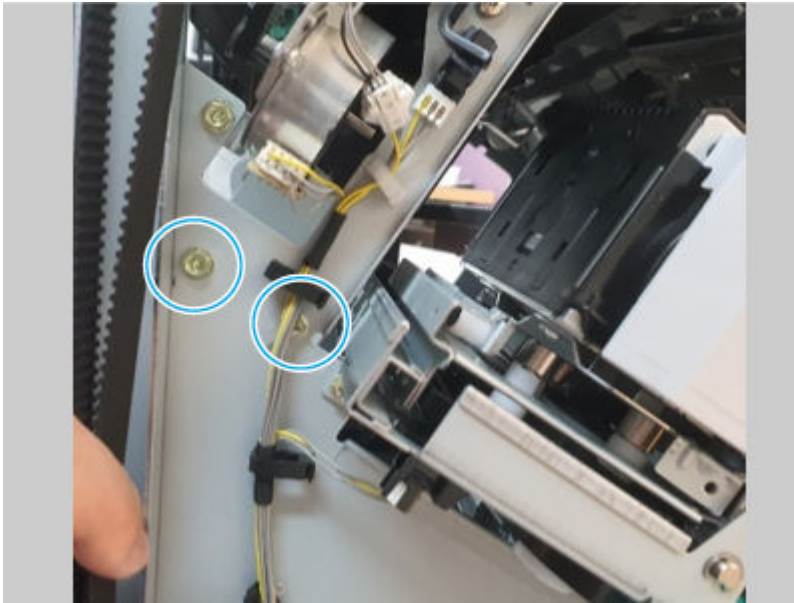
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2095 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-2096 Remove two screws

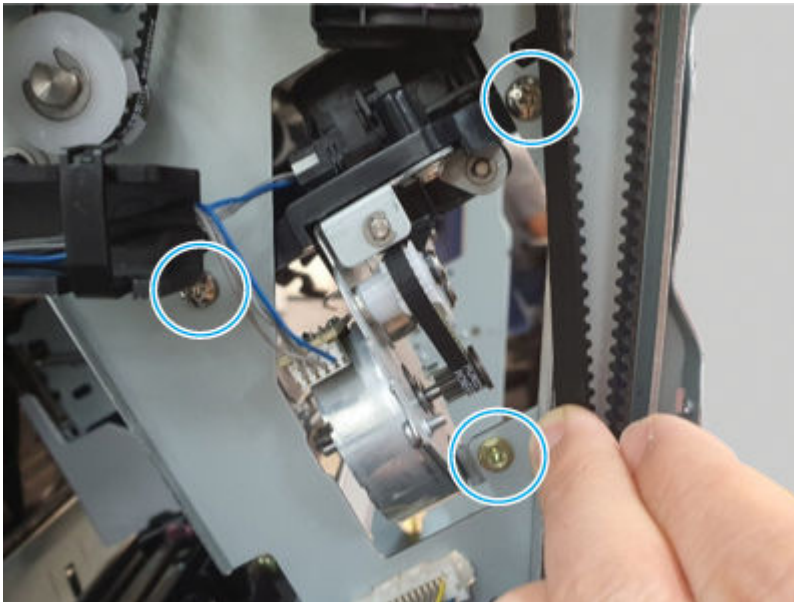


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2097 Release the tamper



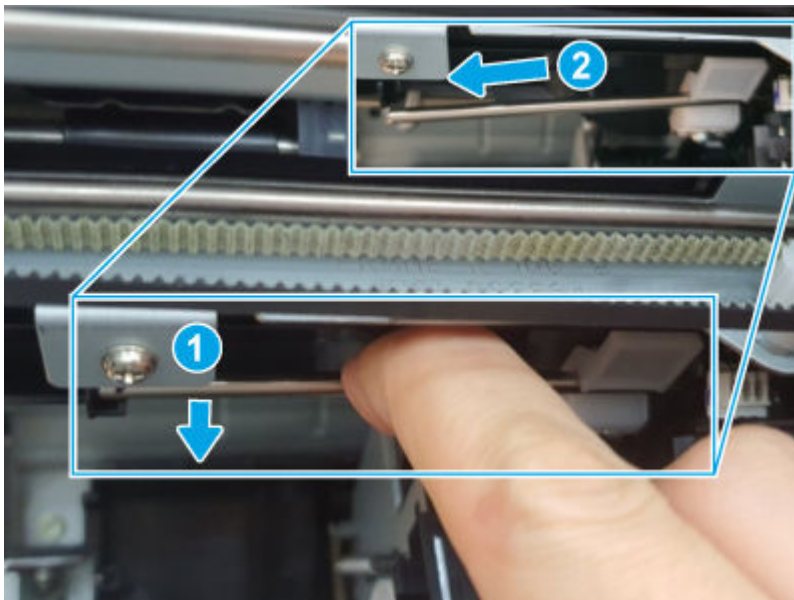
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-2098 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-2099 Remove the shaft



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.


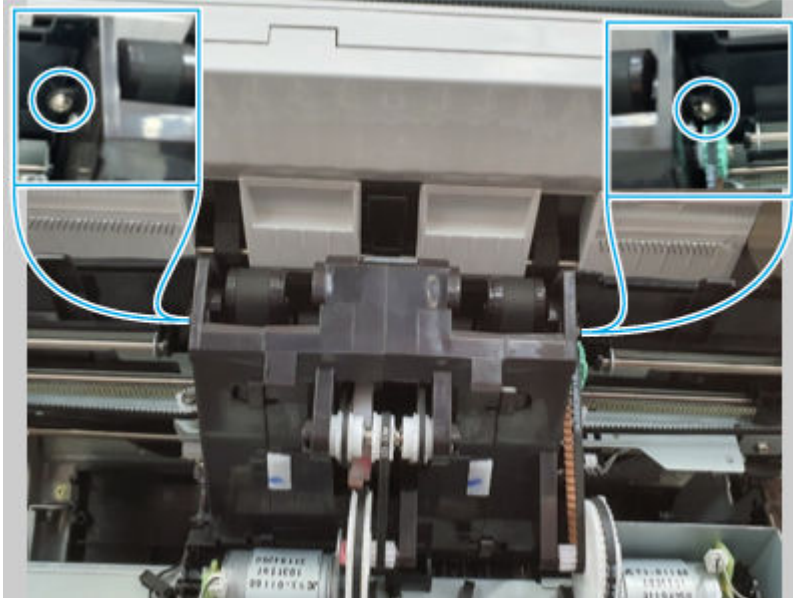
 **NOTE:** Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-2100 Remove the unit



10. Remove the external finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper.

- Disconnect three connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the front tamper.


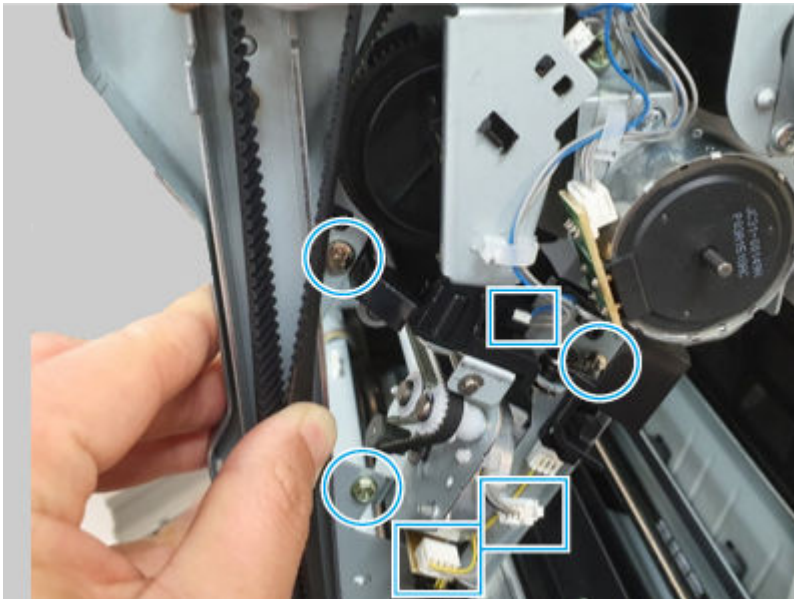
 **NOTE:** If the tamper unit is removed after the ejector unit to gain access to another assembly, the screws have already been removed.

Figure 6-2101 Remove the tamper

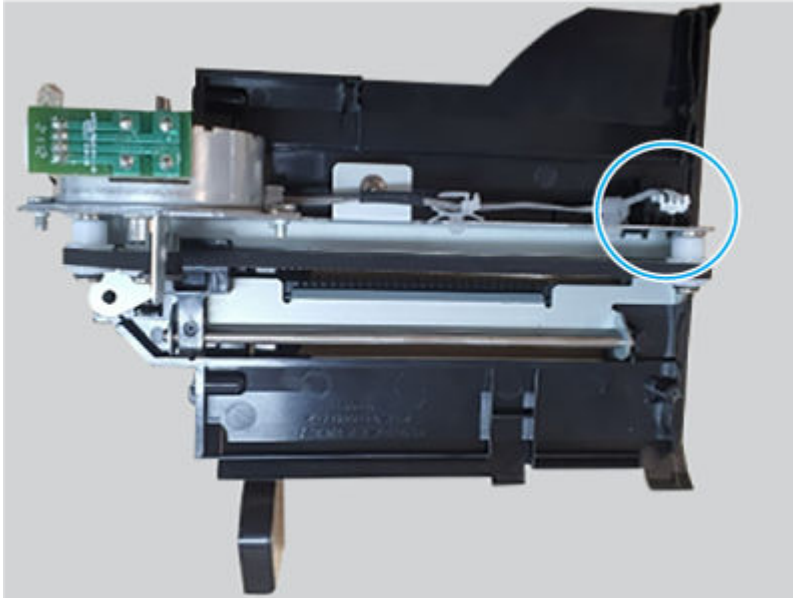


11. Remove the external finisher end fence home sensory

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher end fence home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the end fence home sensor.


Figure 6-2102 Remove the sensor



12. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: End fence motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher end fence motor assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-302 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01467A	End fence motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

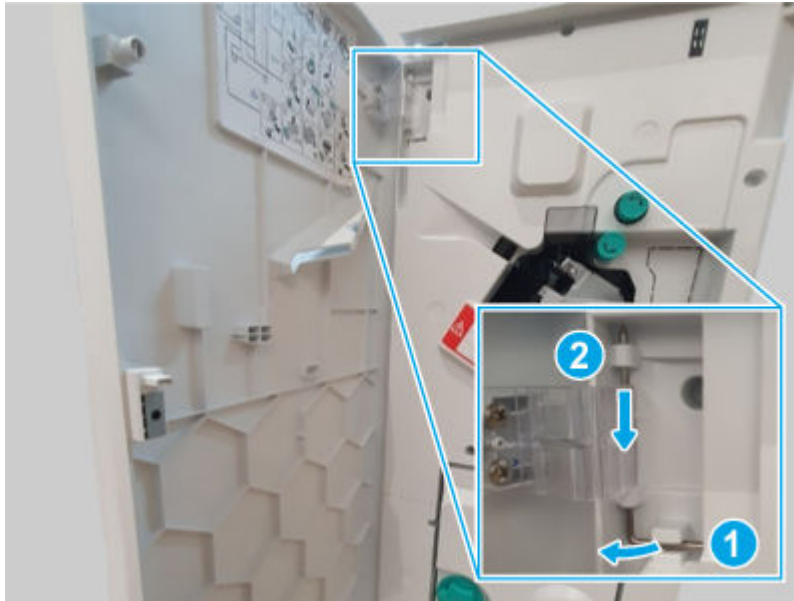
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

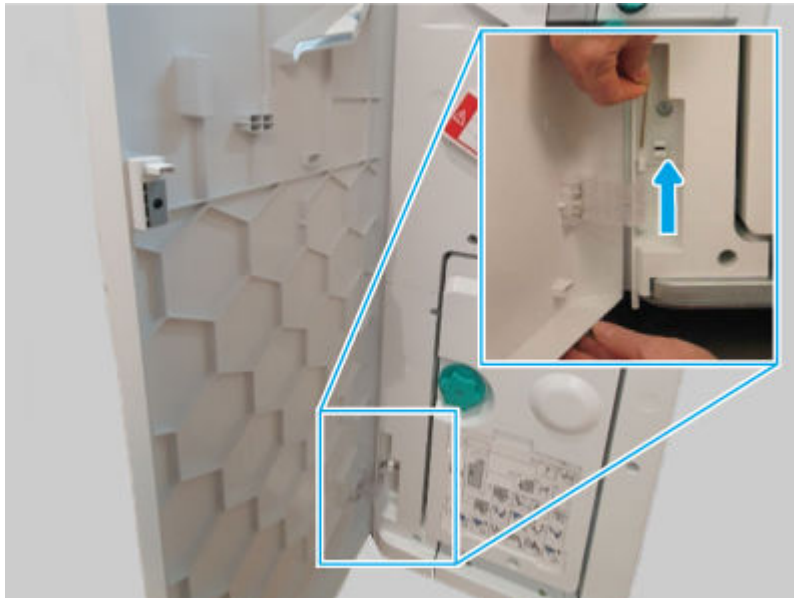
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2103 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2104 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

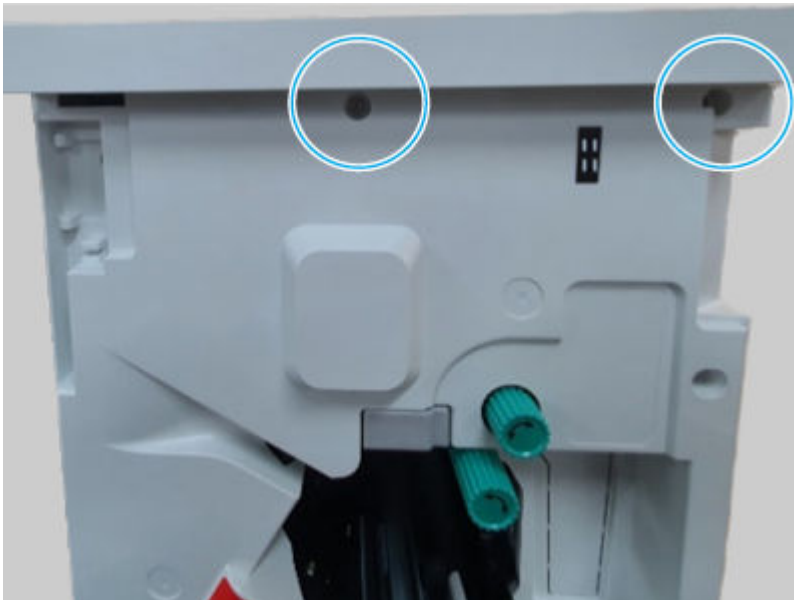
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2105 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2106 Remove the cover

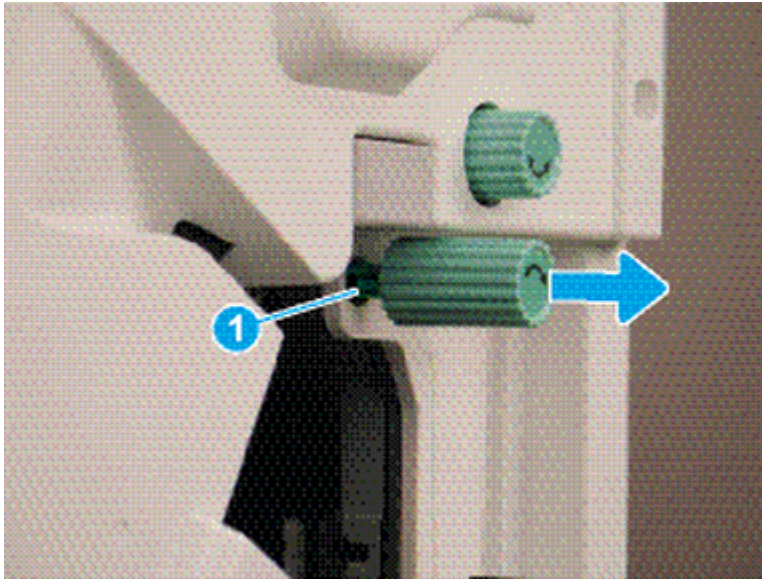


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2107 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2108 Remove the cover

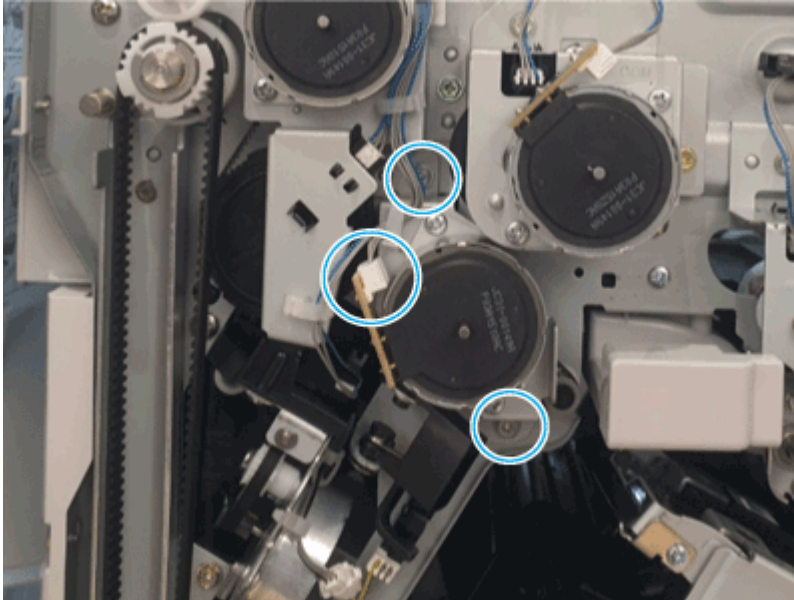


4. Remove the external finisher end fence motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher end fence motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the end fence motor assembly.

Figure 6-2109 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: End fence motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher end fence motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-303 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (End fence motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

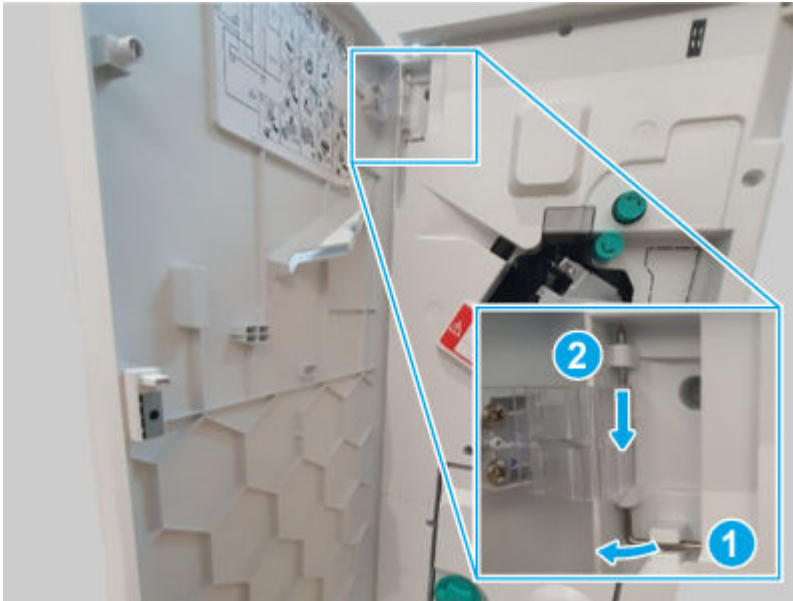
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

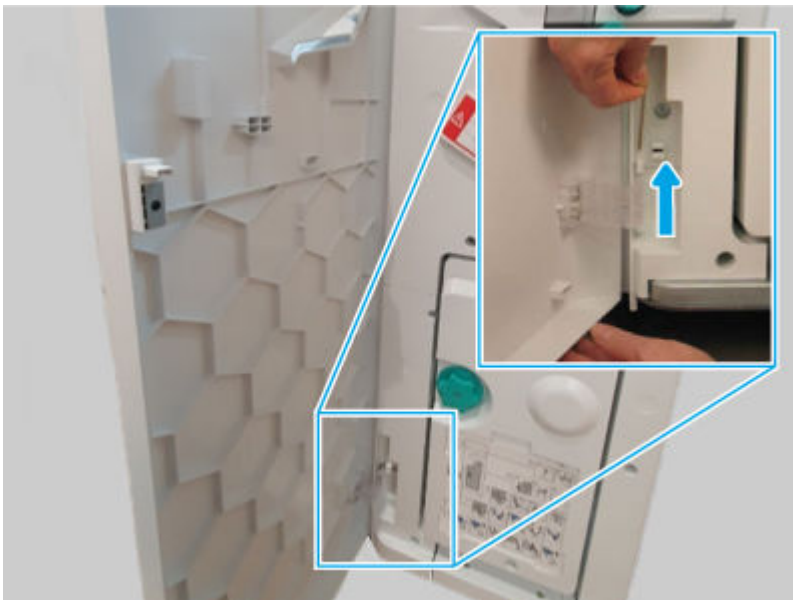
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2110 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2111 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2112 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2113 Remove the cover

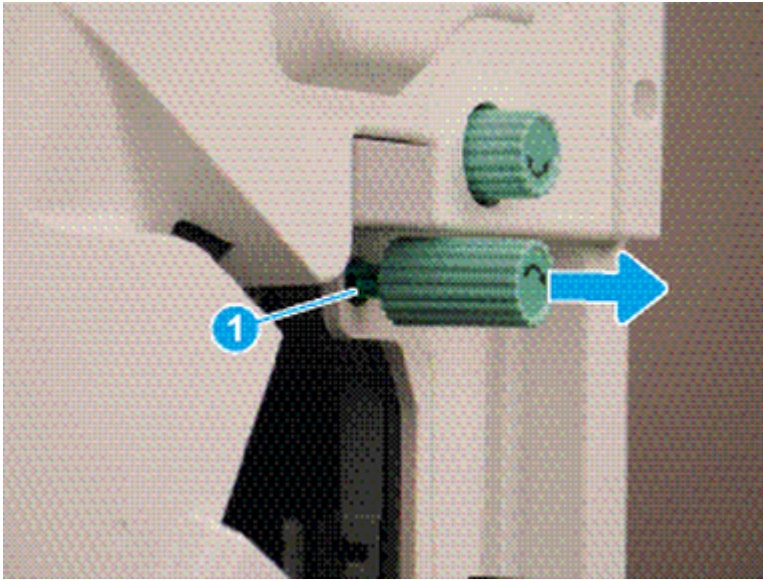


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2114 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2115 Remove the cover

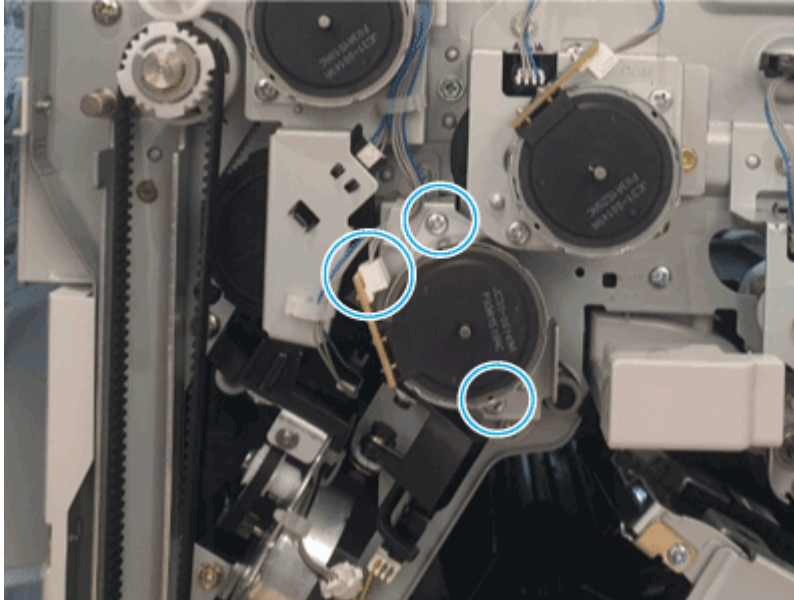


4. Remove the external finisher end fence motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher end fence motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the end fence motor.

Figure 6-2116 Remove the motor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch guide

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch guide.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-304 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-40019	Main output tray top of stack switch guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

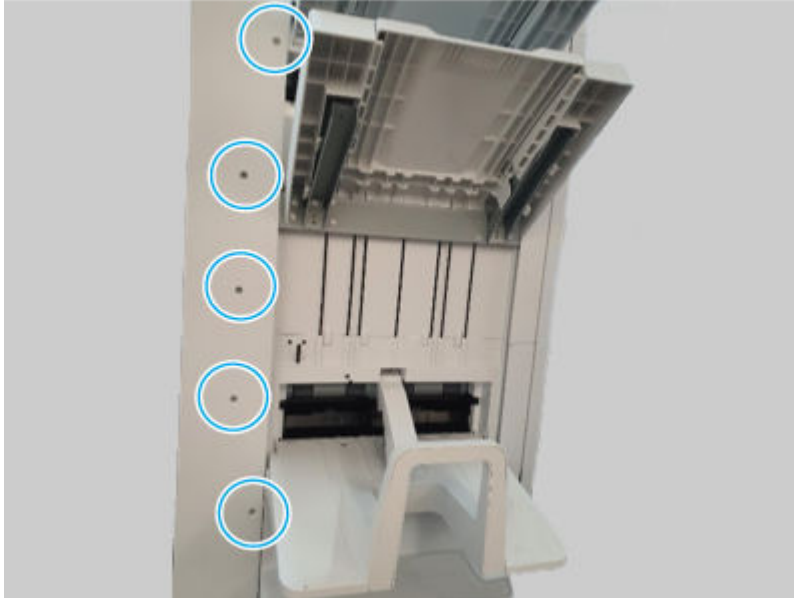
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2117 Remove five screws

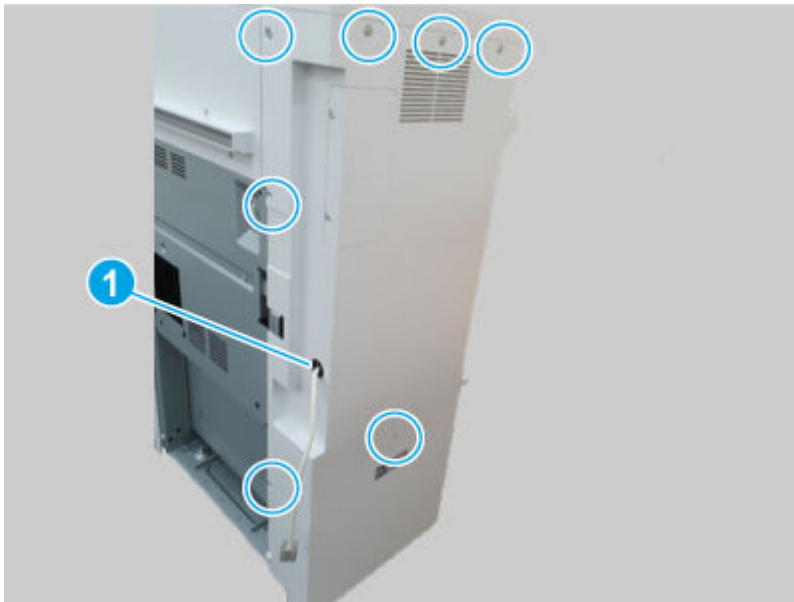


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2118 Remove the cover

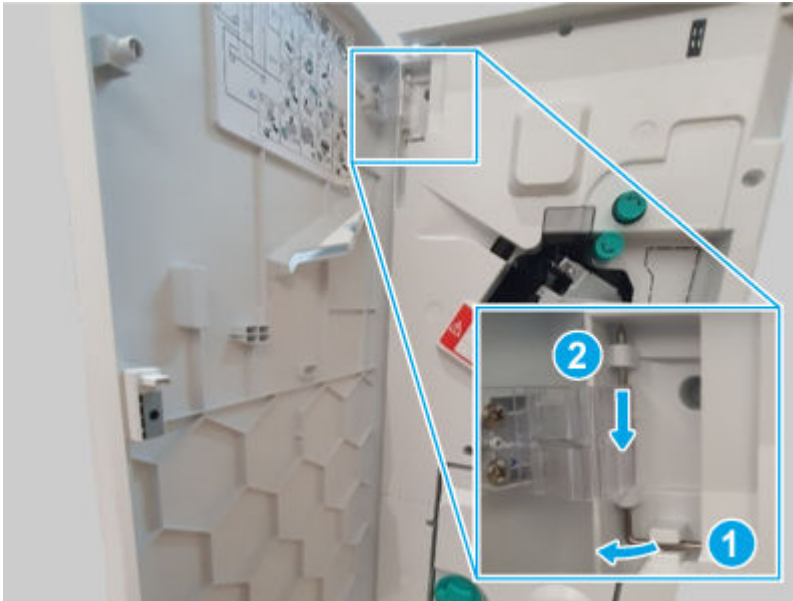


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

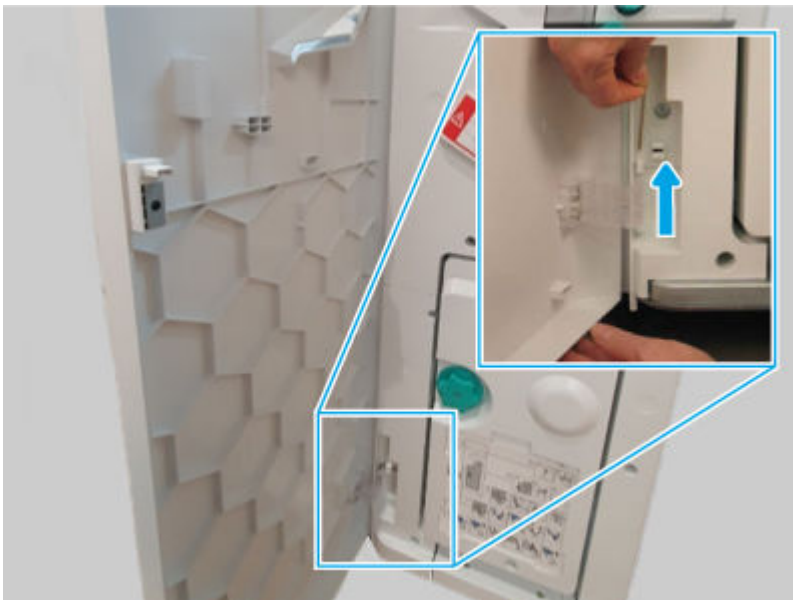
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2119 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2120 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

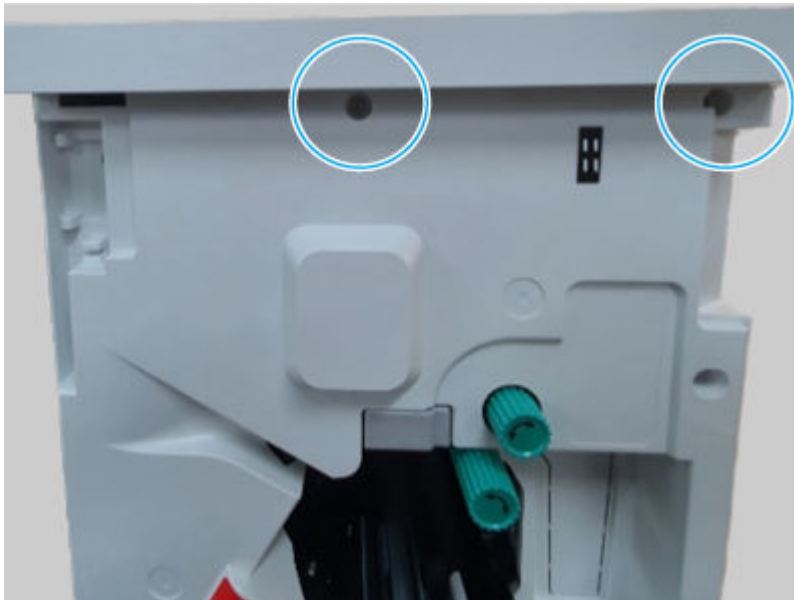
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2121 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2122 Remove the cover

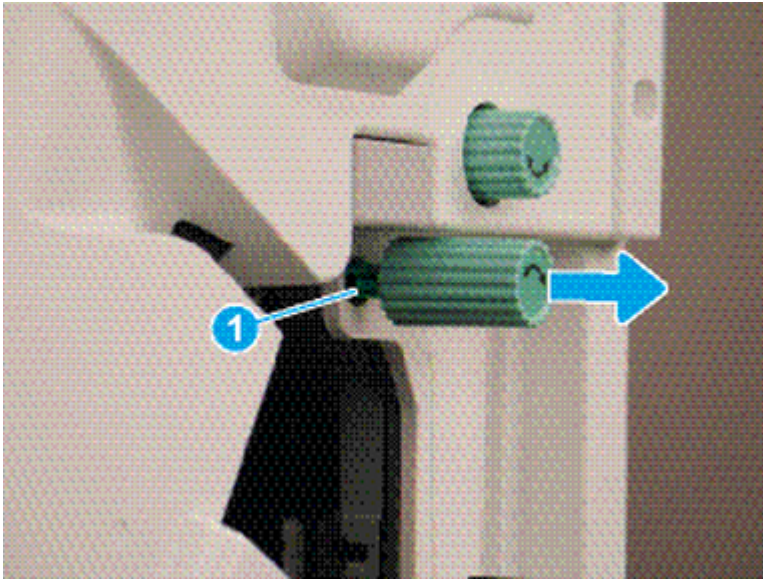


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2123 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2124 Remove the cover

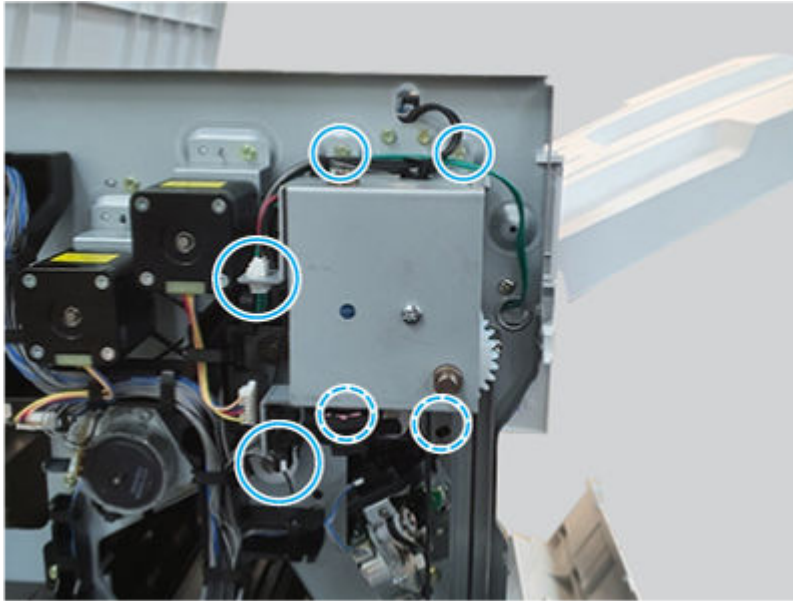


5 Remove the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the main output tray motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-2125 Remove the sensor

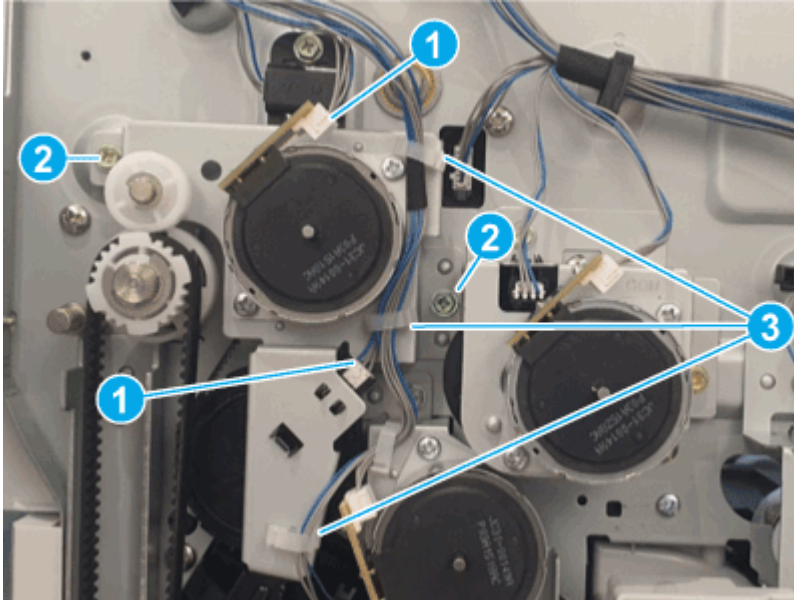


6 Remove the external finisher paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).
 - b. Remove two screws (callout 2).
 - c. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 3), and then remove the paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2126 Remove the assembly

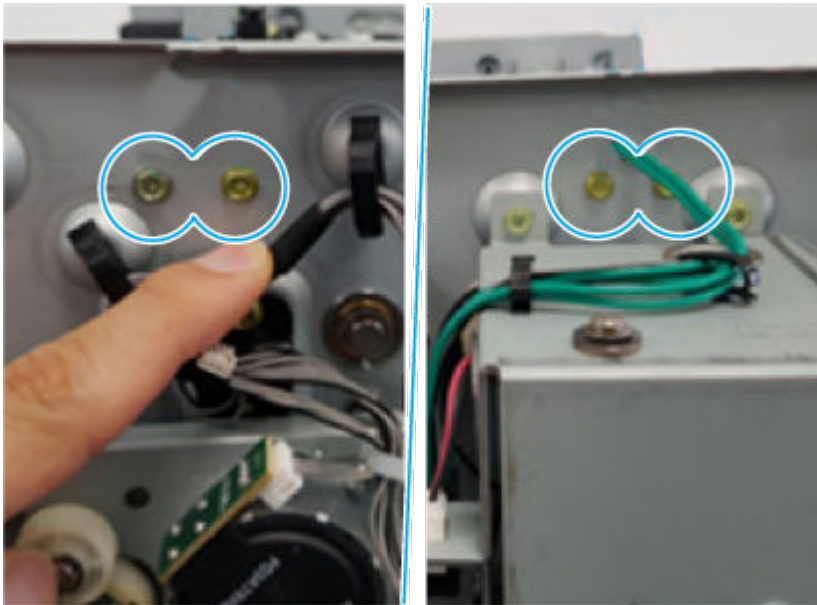


7 Remove the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch guide.

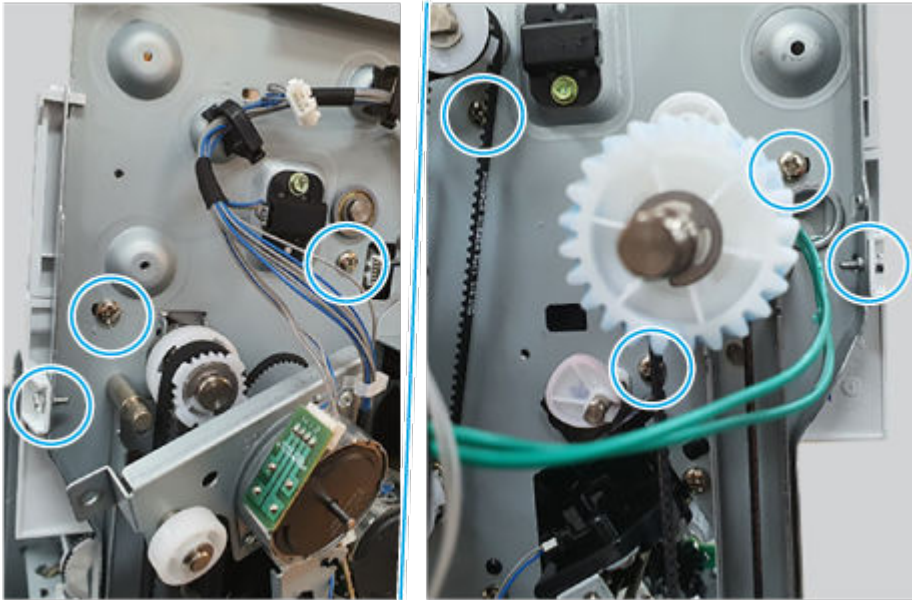
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the frame cover.

Figure 6-2127 Remove the cover



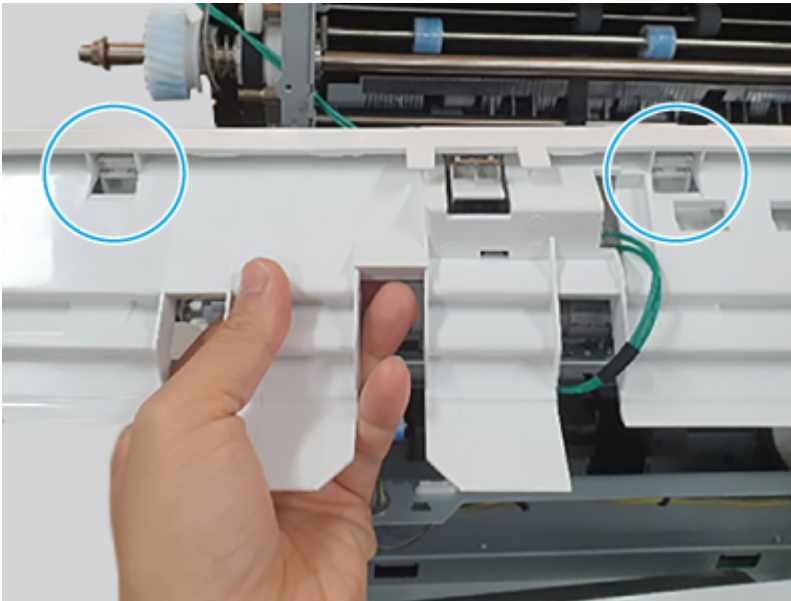
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the top output tray.

Figure 6-2128 Remove the tray



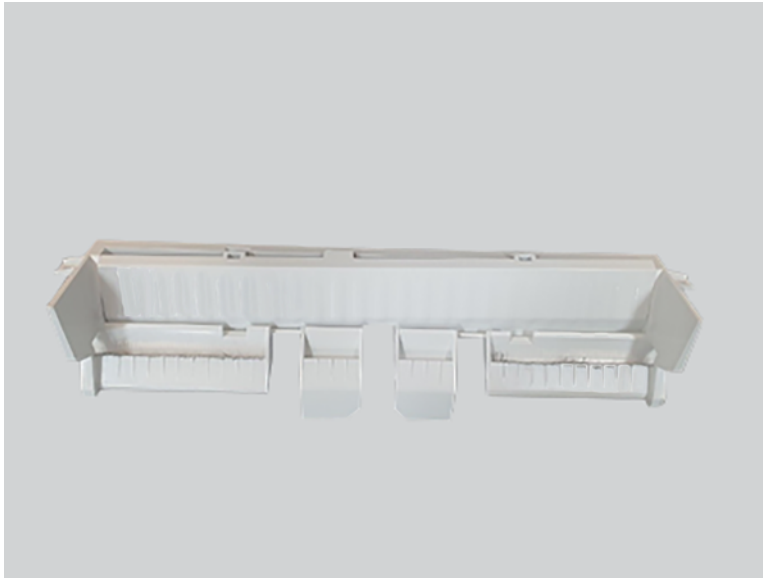
3. Release two hooks.

Figure 6-2129 Release two hooks



4. Remove the main output tray top of stack switch guide.

Figure 6-2130 Remove the guide



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch lower guide

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch lower guide.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-305 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-40020	Main output tray top of stack switch lower guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

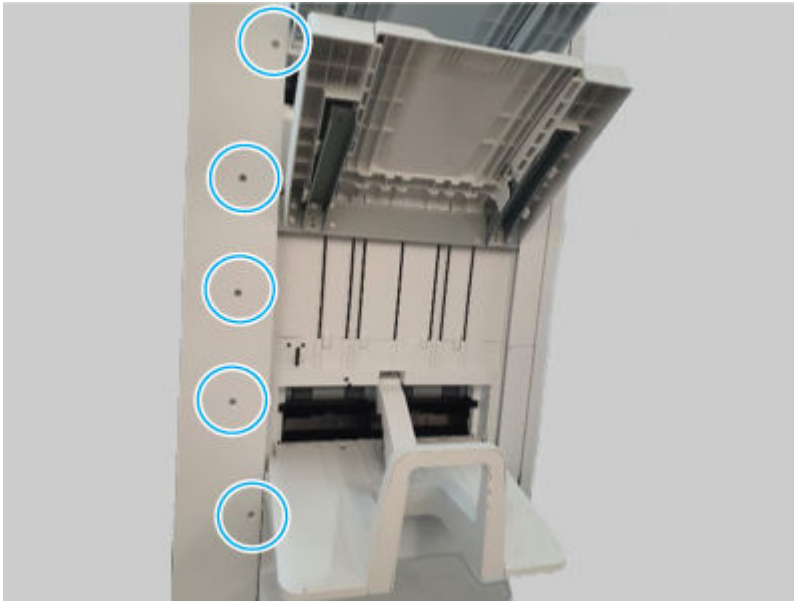
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2131 Remove five screws

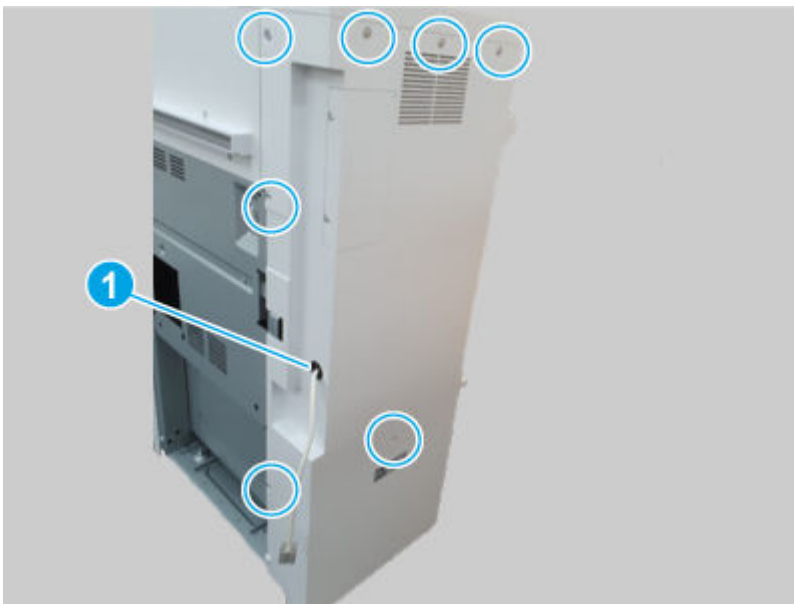


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2132 Remove the cover

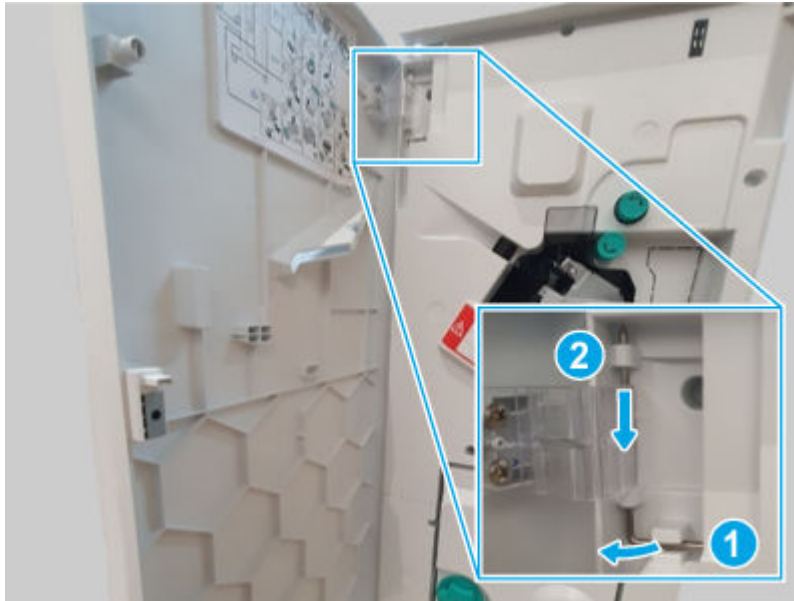


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

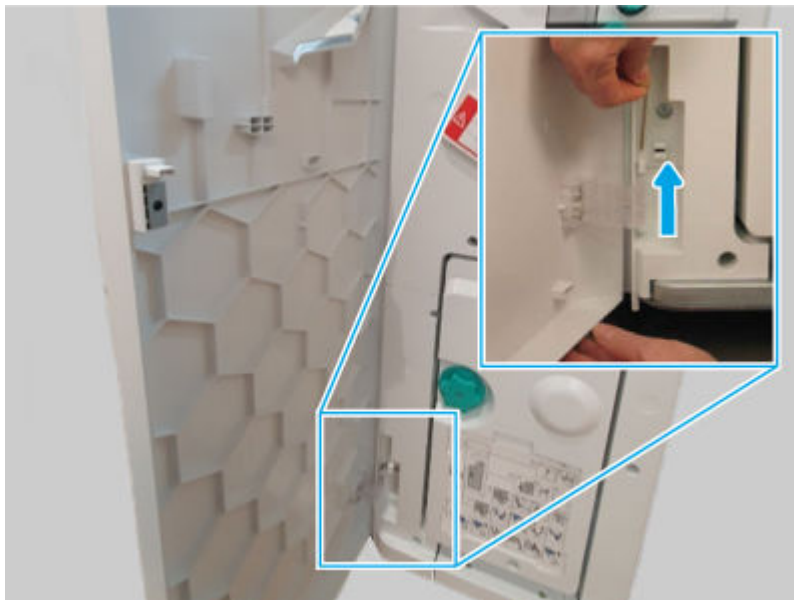
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2133 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2134 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

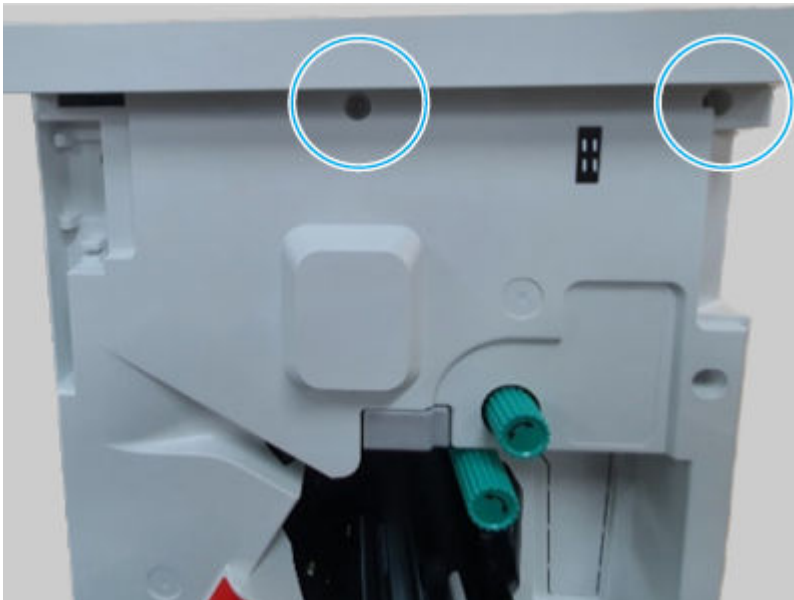
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2135 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2136 Remove the cover

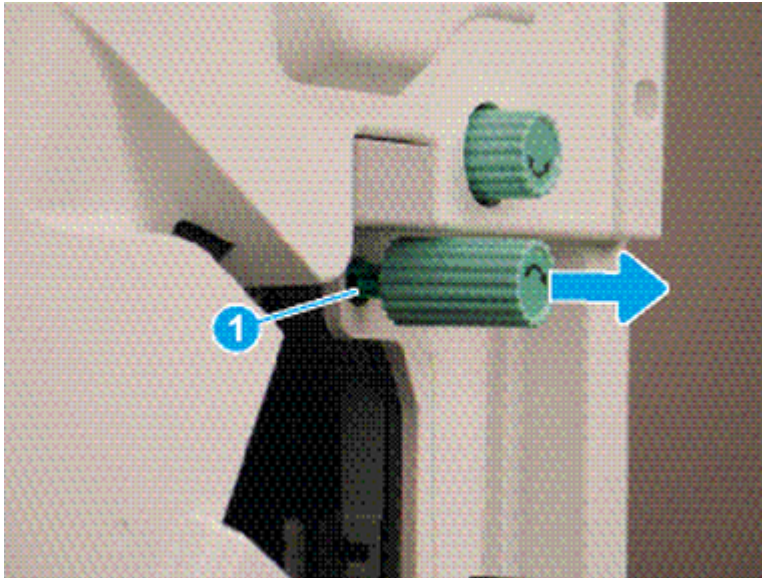


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2137 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2138 Remove the cover

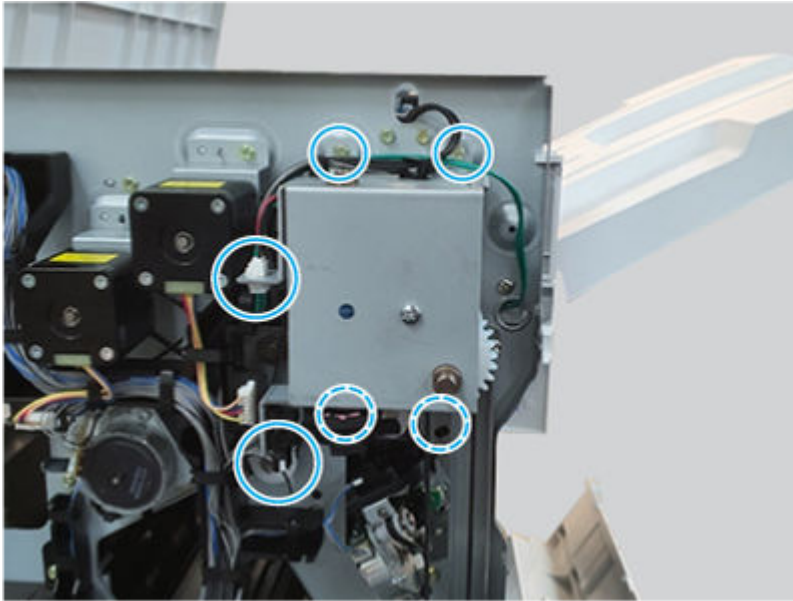


5 Remove the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the main output tray motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-2139 Remove the sensor

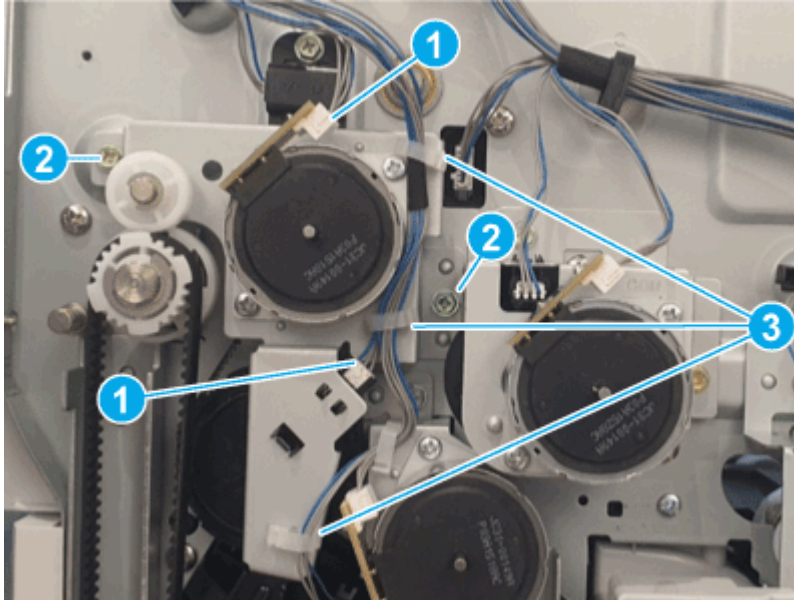


6 Remove the external finisher paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).
 - b. Remove two screws (callout 2).
 - c. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 3), and then remove the paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2140 Remove the assembly

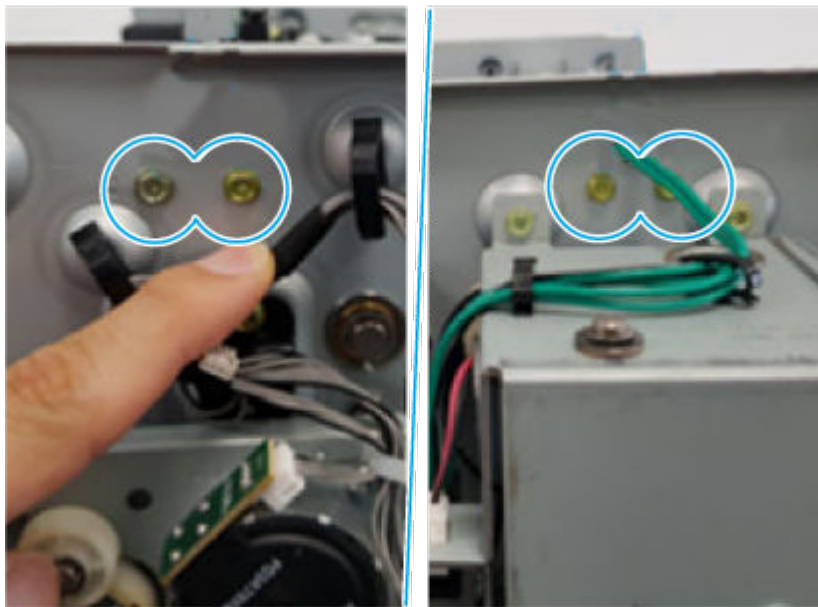


7 Remove the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch lower guide.

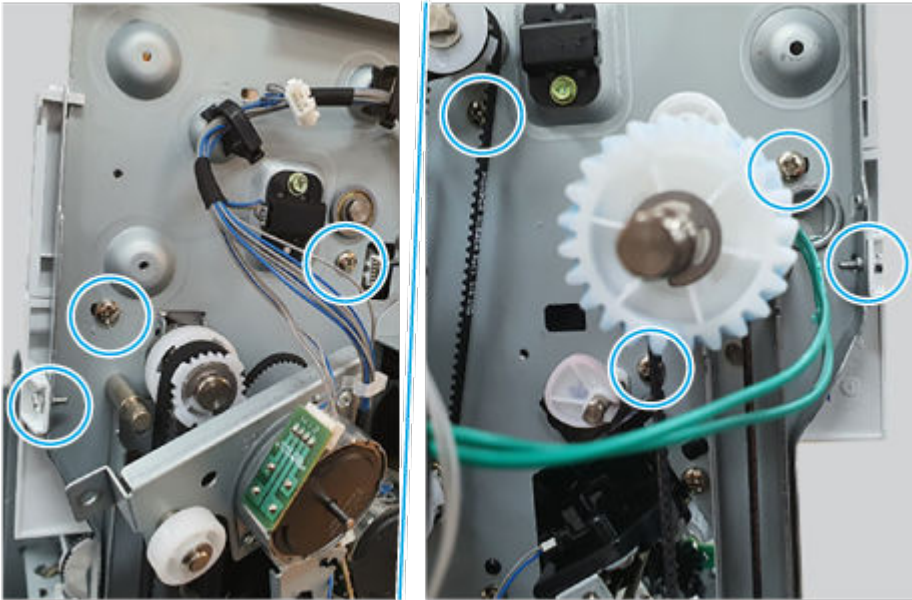
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the frame cover.

Figure 6-2141 Remove the cover



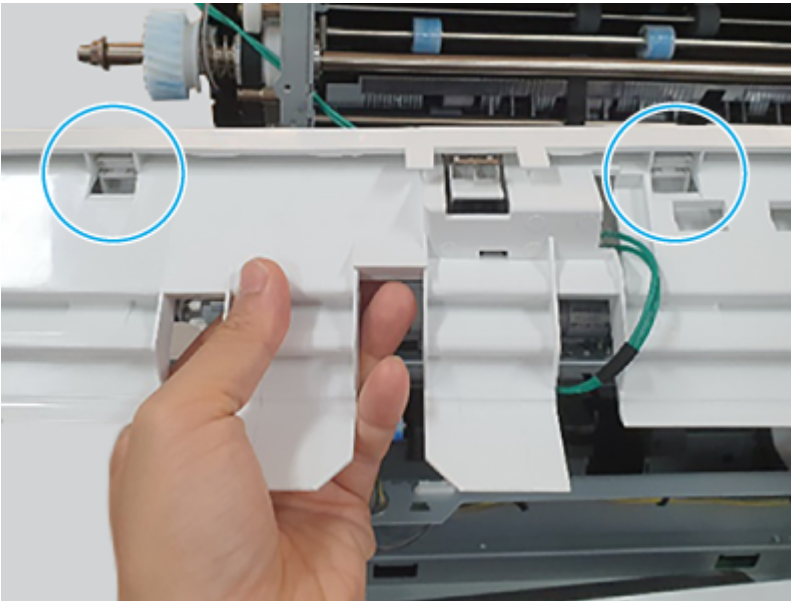
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the top output tray.

Figure 6-2142 Remove the tray



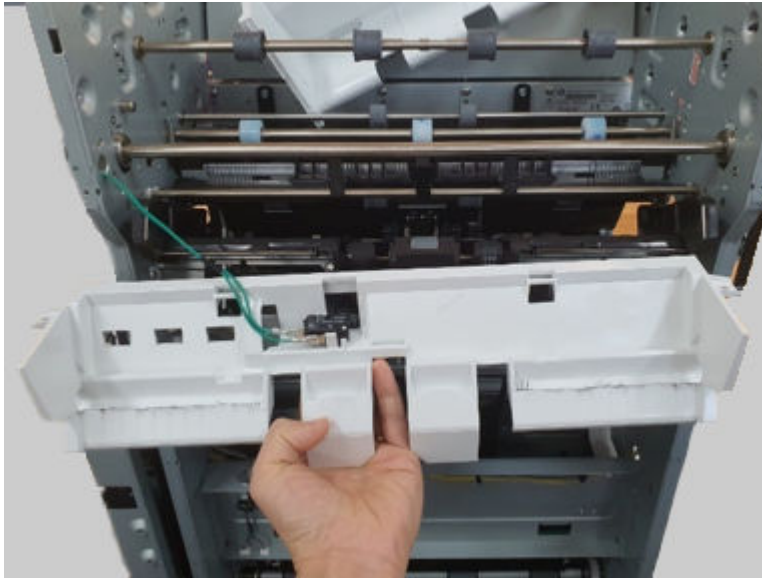
3. Release two hooks.

Figure 6-2143 Release two hooks



4. Remove the main output tray top of stack switch guide.

Figure 6-2144 Remove the guide



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tamper unit

Review the external finisher tamper unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front tamper.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-306 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00901A	Front tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

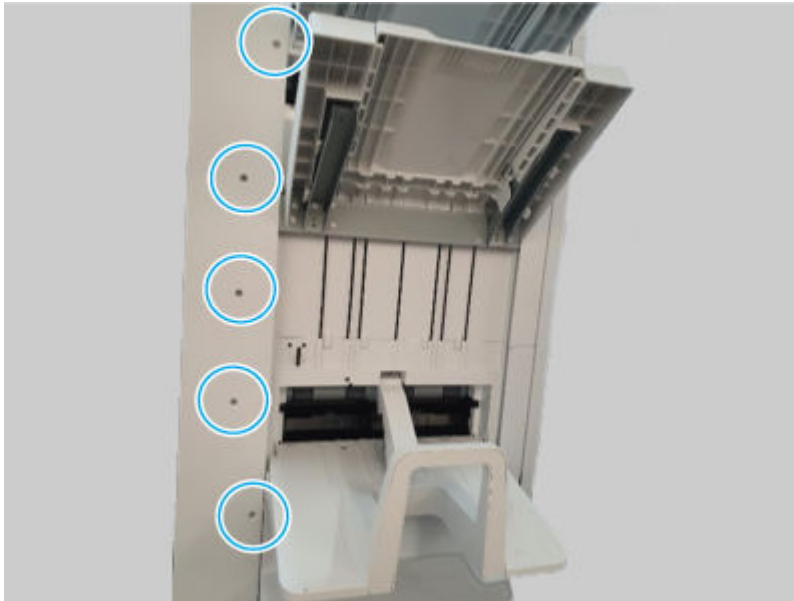
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2145 Remove five screws

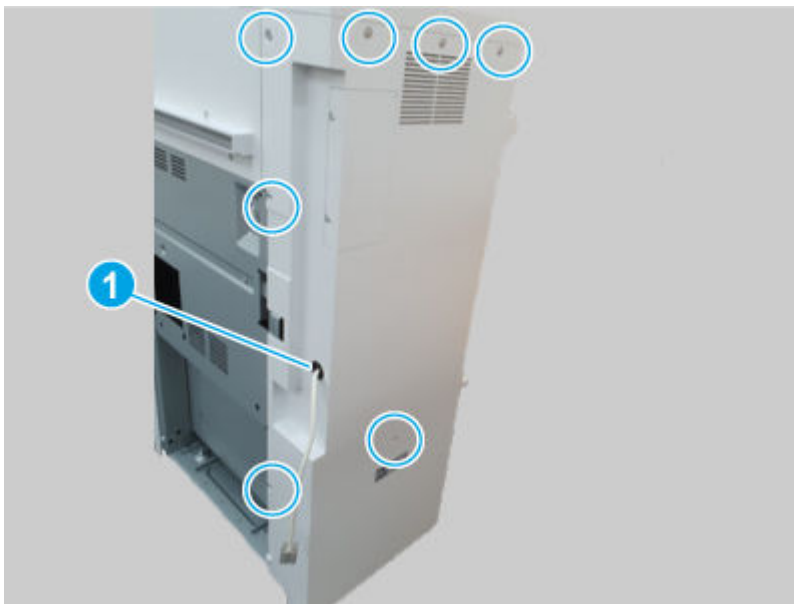


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2146 Remove the cover

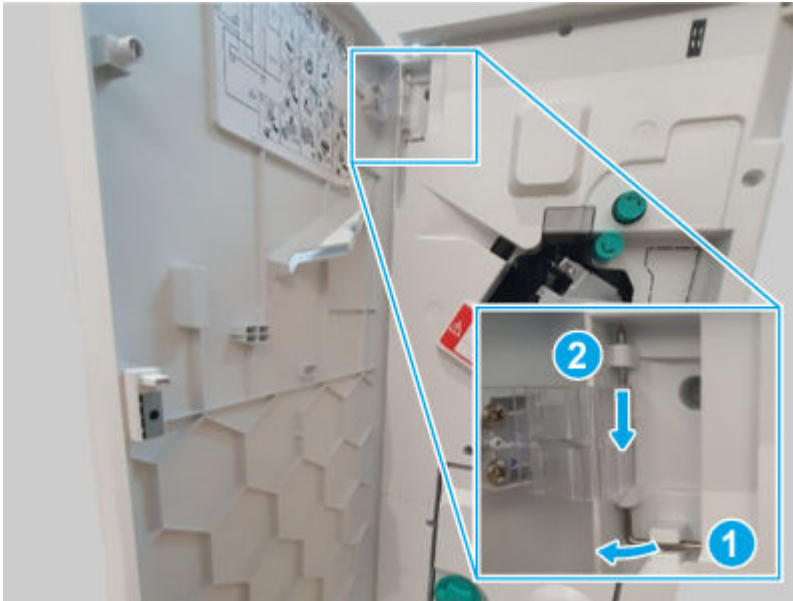


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

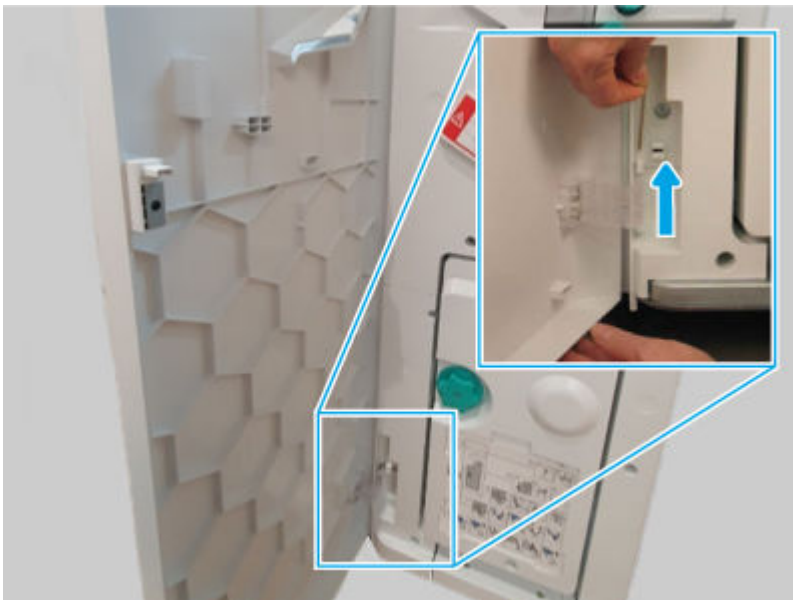
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2147 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2148 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

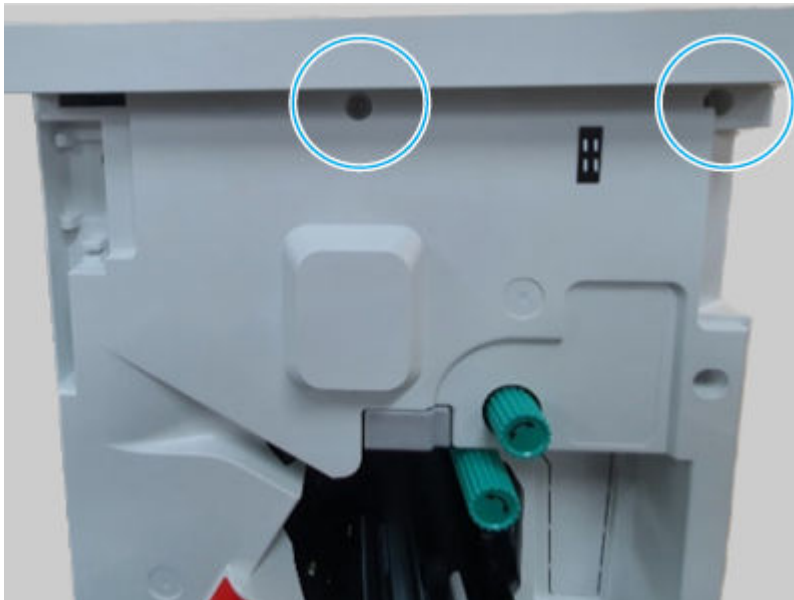
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2149 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2150 Remove the cover

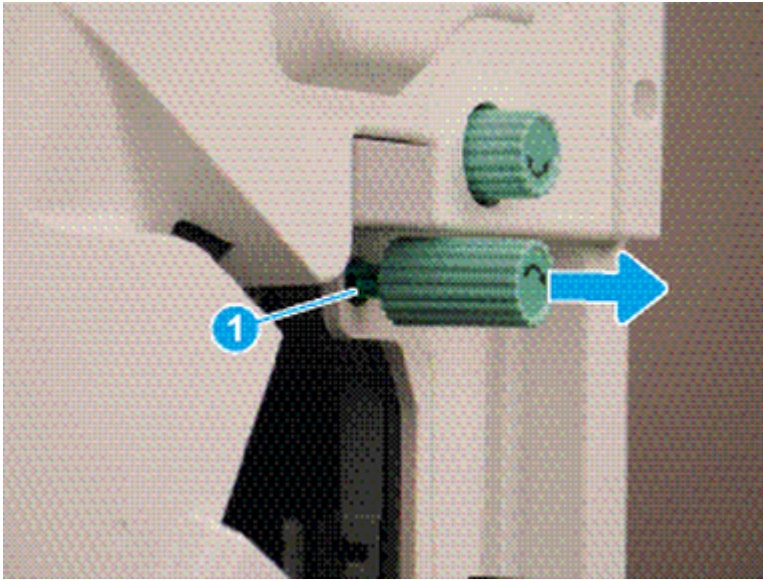


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2151 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2152 Remove the cover



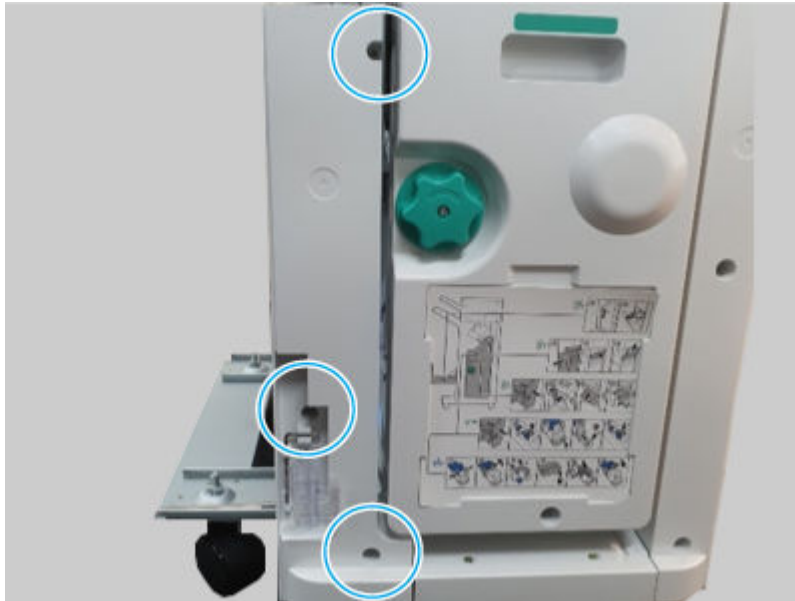
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2153 Remove the cover



6. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

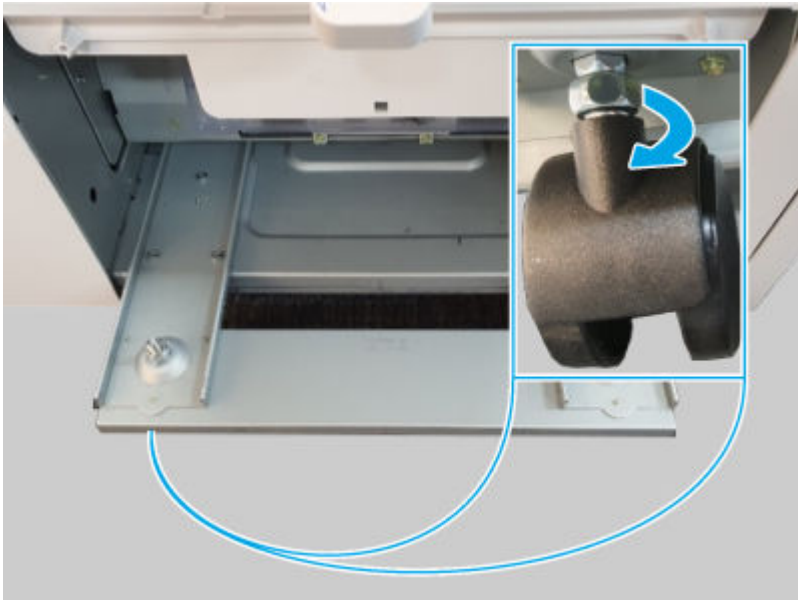
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2154 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2155 Remove the caster

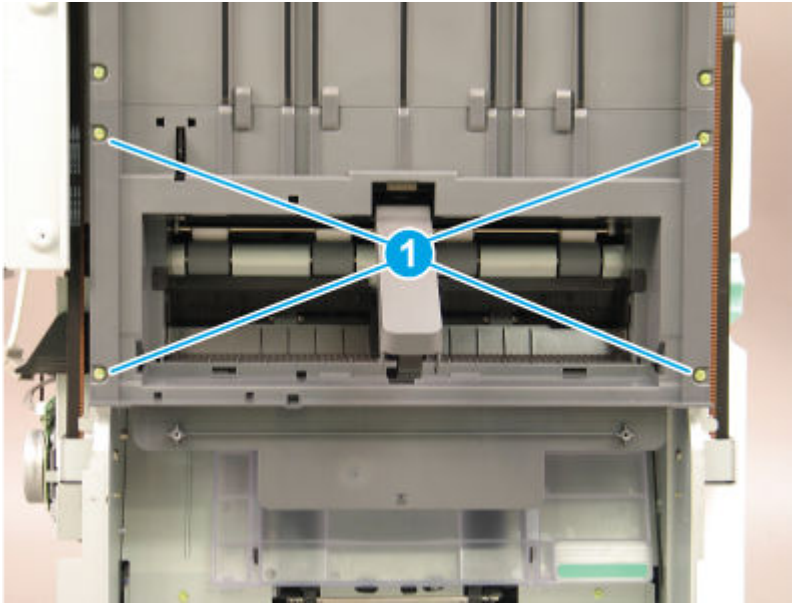


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2156 Remove four screws

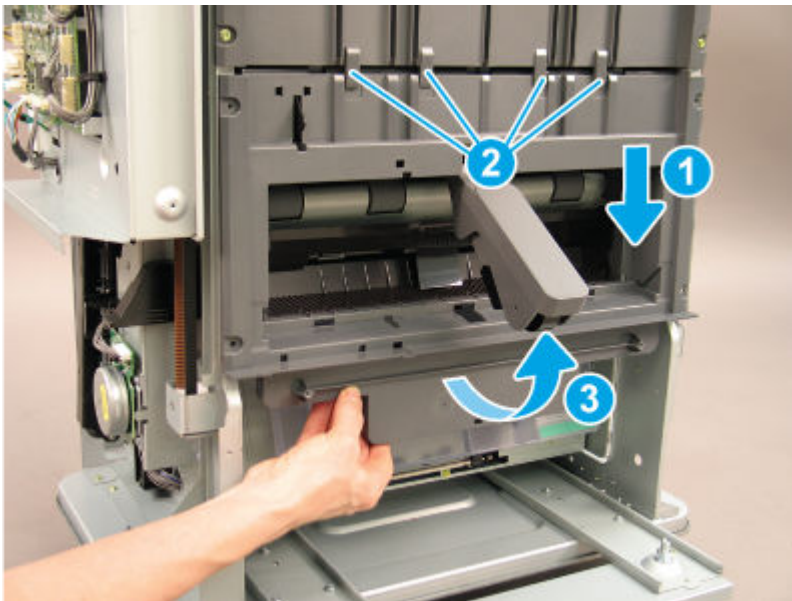


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

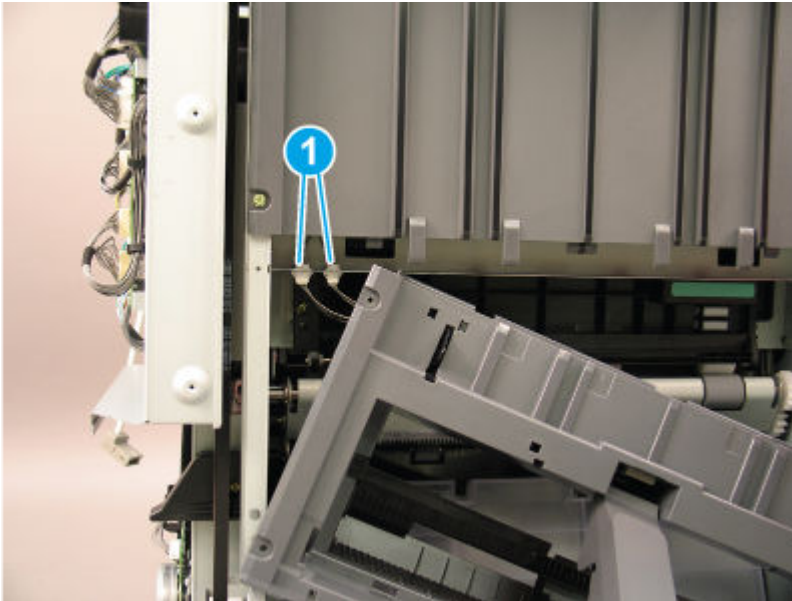
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2157 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2158 Remove the cover

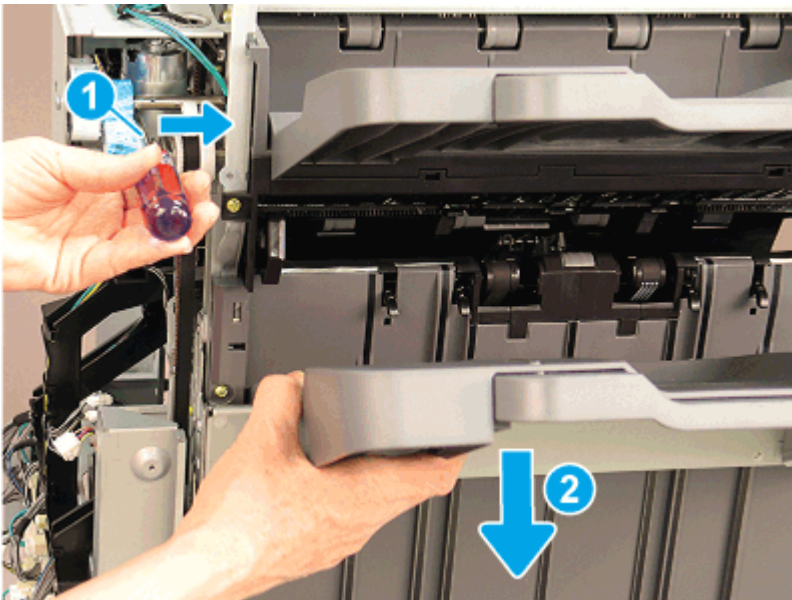


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

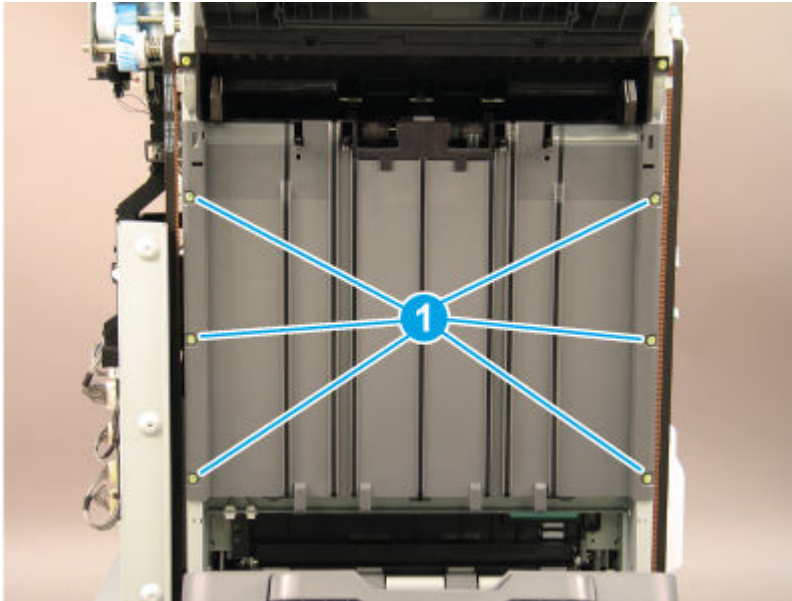
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2159 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2160 Remove six screws

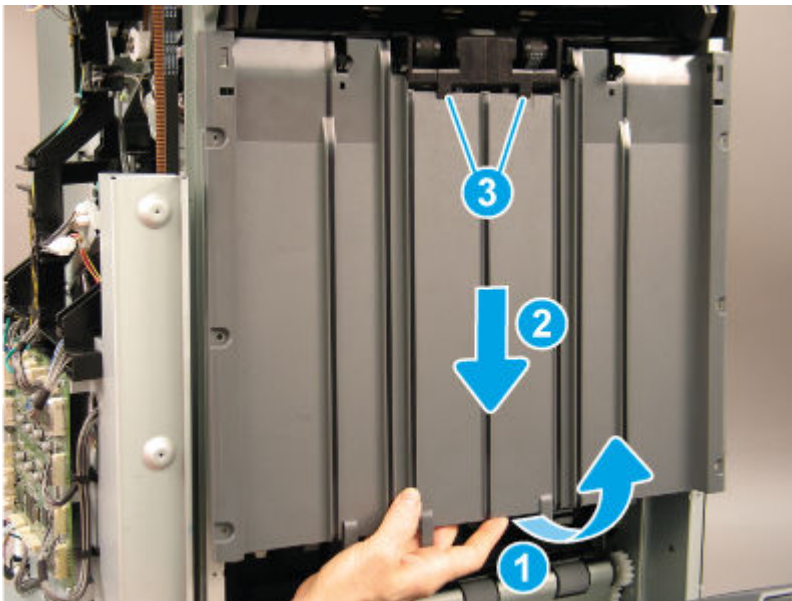


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

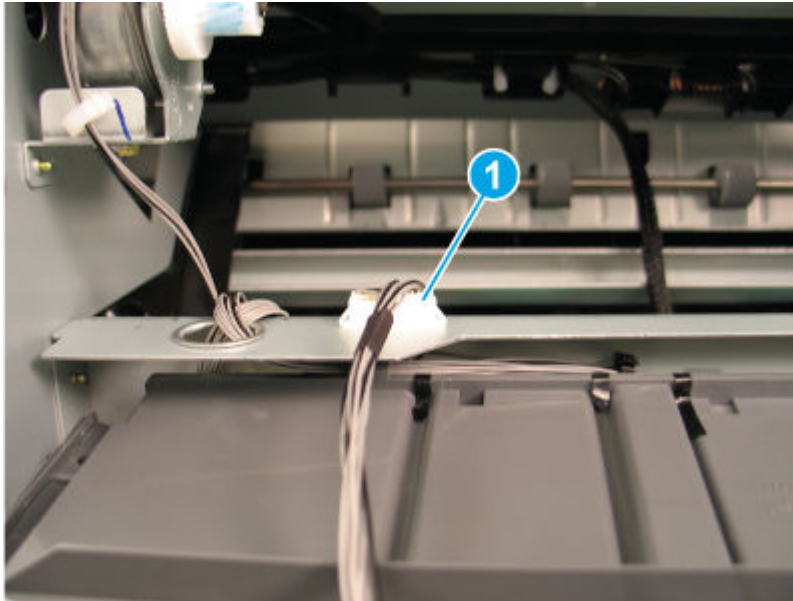
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2161 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2162 Remove the cover



9. Remove the external finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper.

- Disconnect three connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the front tamper.


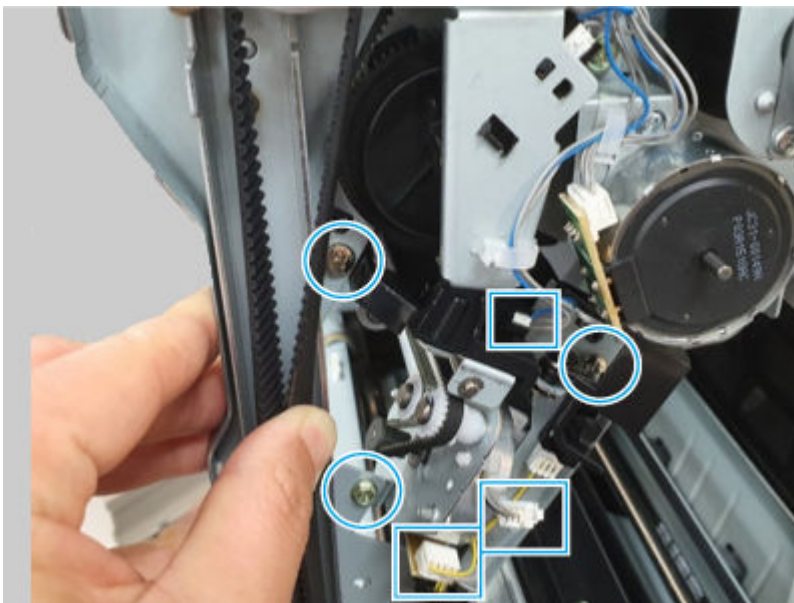
 **NOTE:** If the tamper unit is removed after the ejector unit to gain access to another assembly, the screws have already been removed.


Figure 6-2163 Remove the tamper



10. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front tamper home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-307 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Front tamper home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

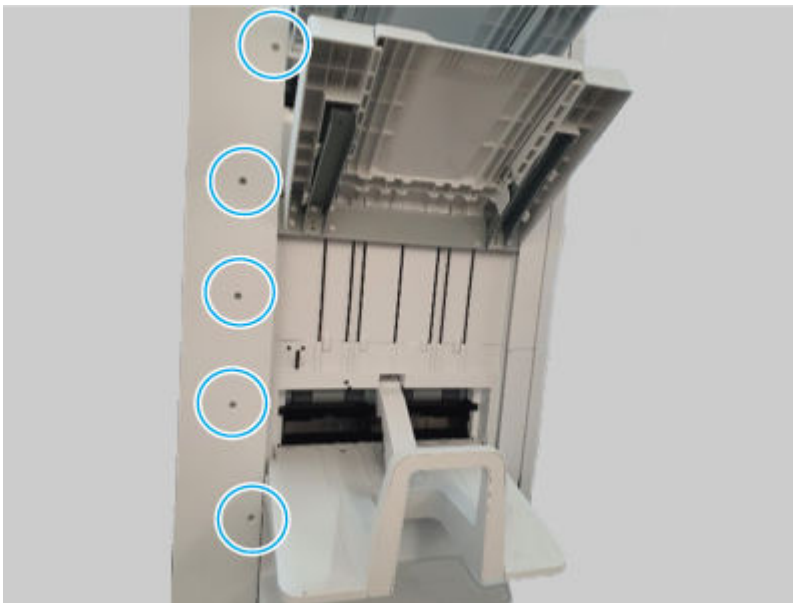
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2164 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2165 Remove the cover

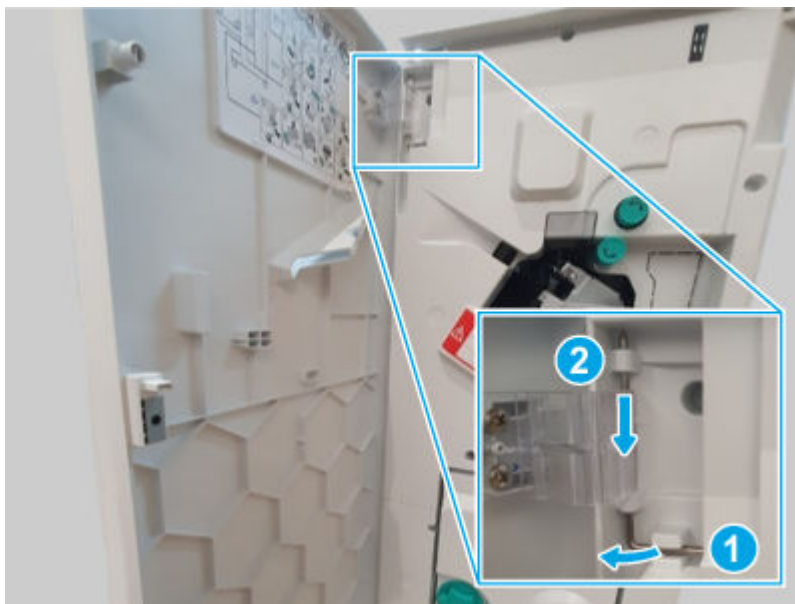


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

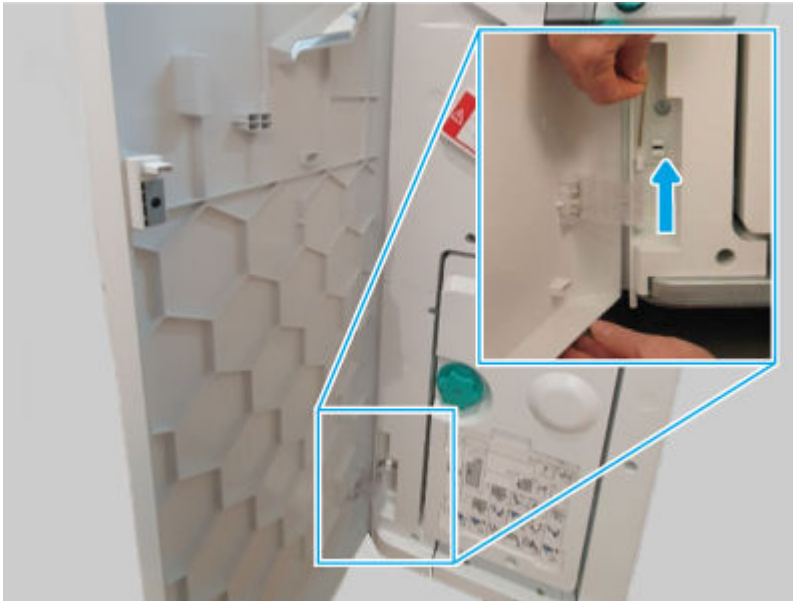
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2166 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2167 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

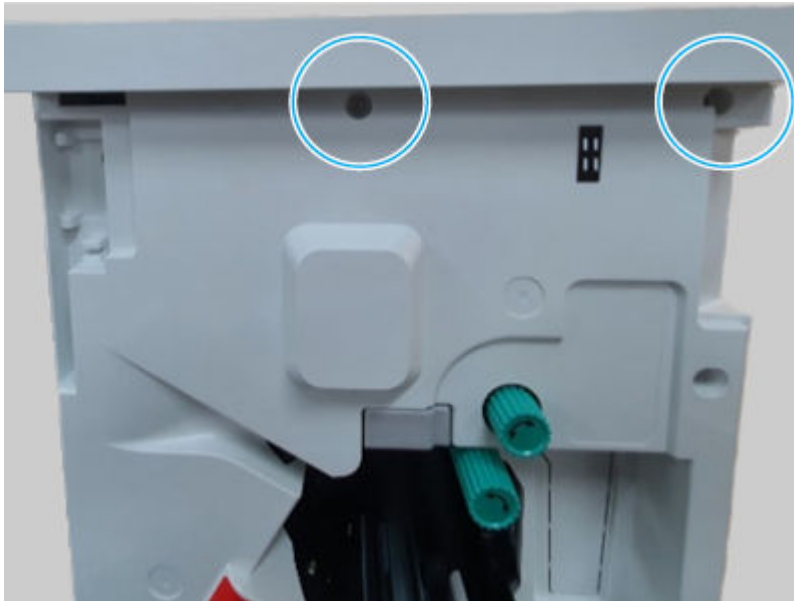
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2168 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2169 Remove the cover

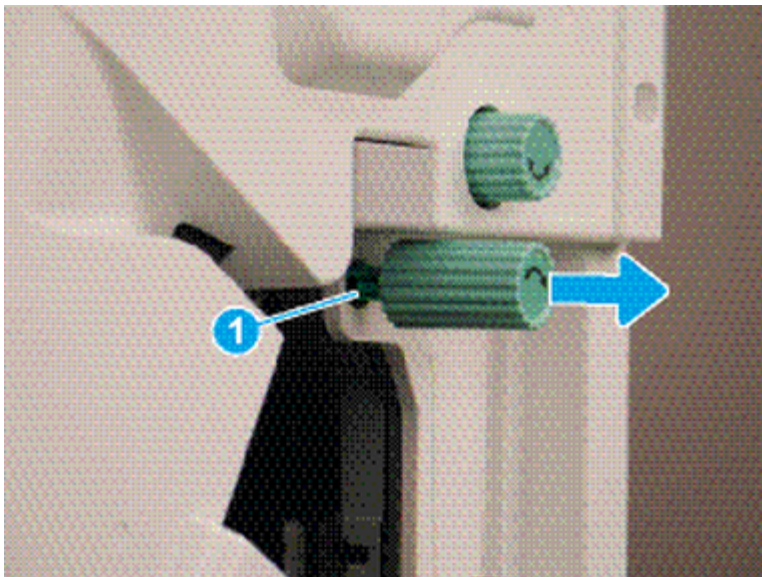


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2170 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2171 Remove the cover

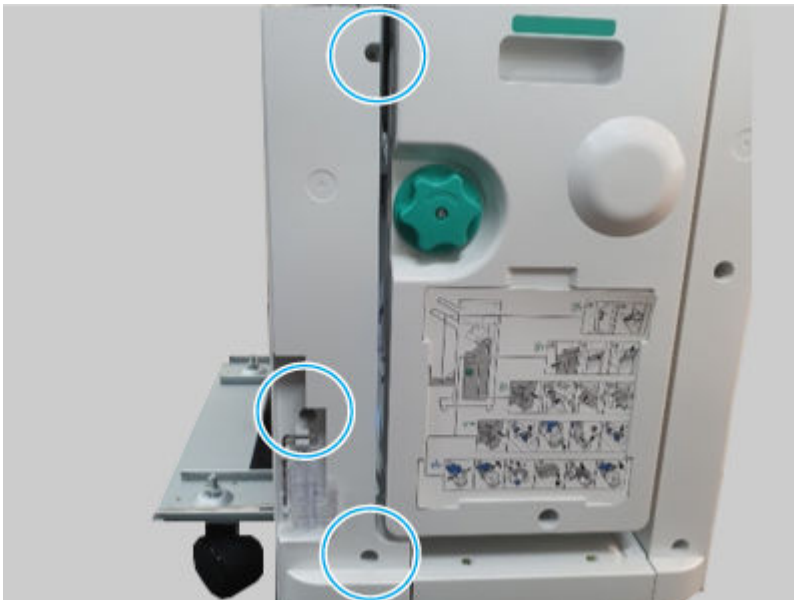


5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2172 Remove the cover

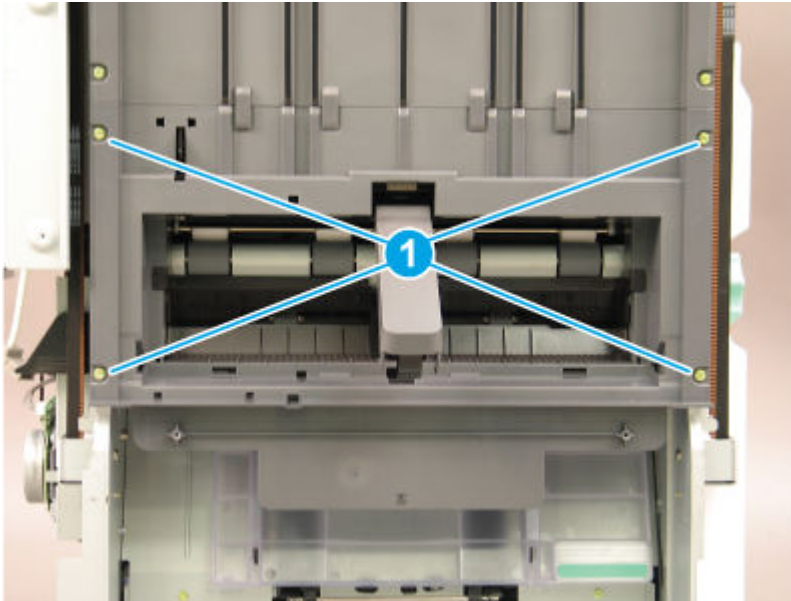


6. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2173 Remove four screws

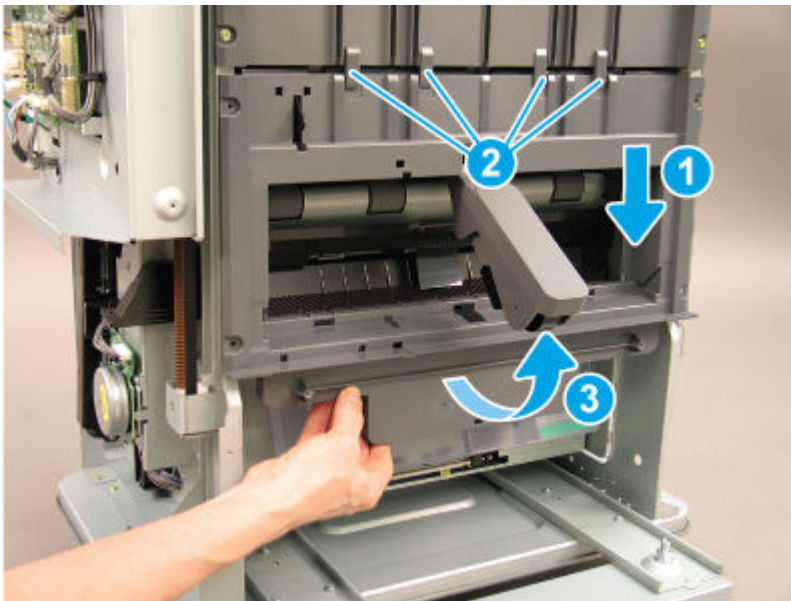


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

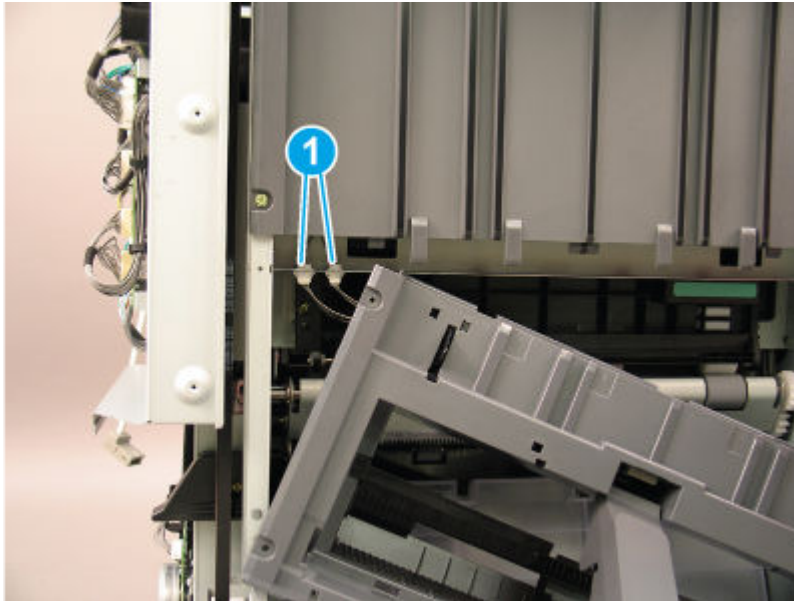
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2174 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2175 Remove the cover

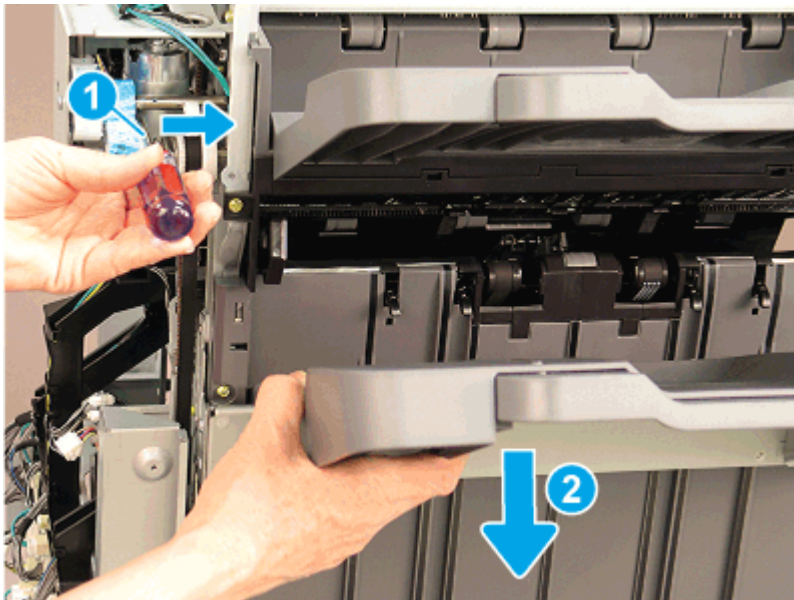


7. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

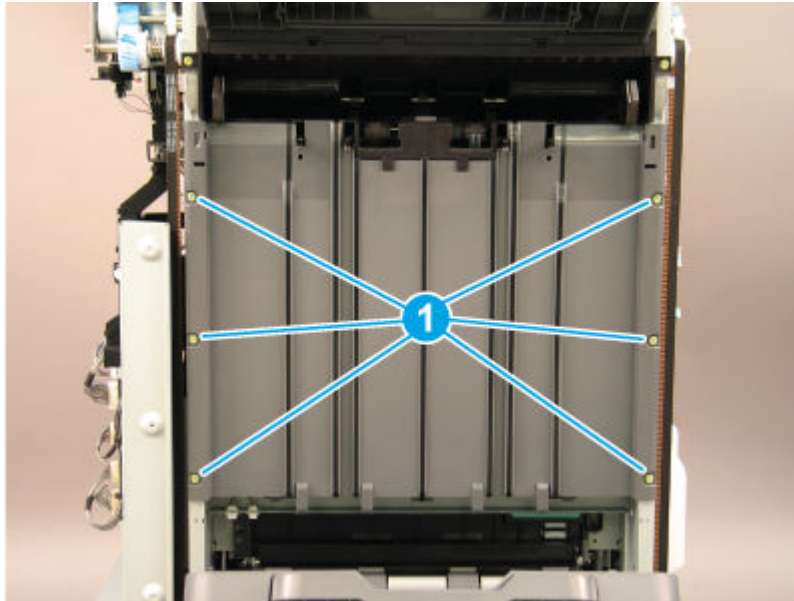
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2176 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2177 Remove six screws

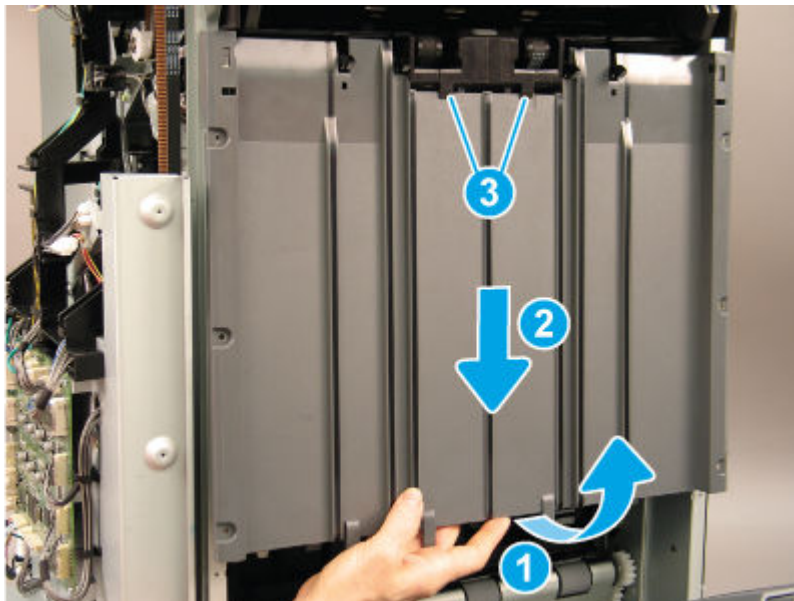


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

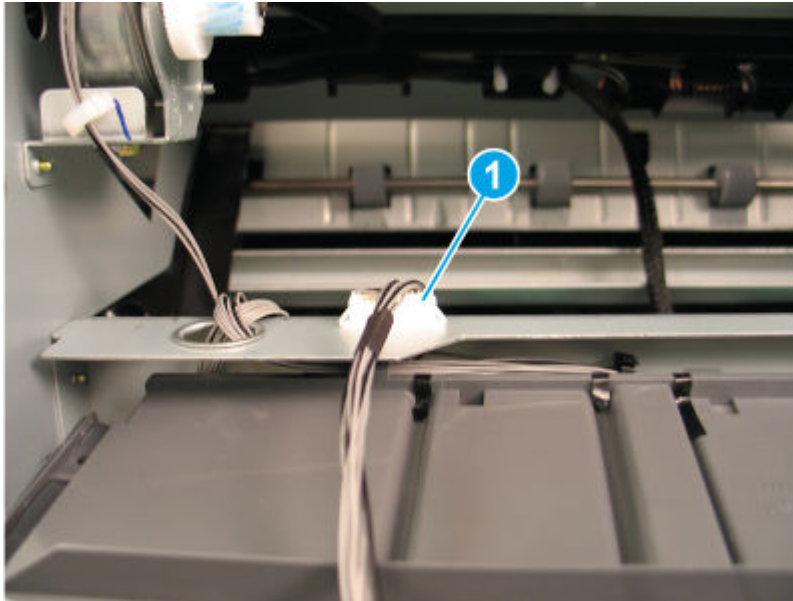
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2178 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2179 Remove the cover



8. Remove the external finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper.

- Disconnect three connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the front tamper.


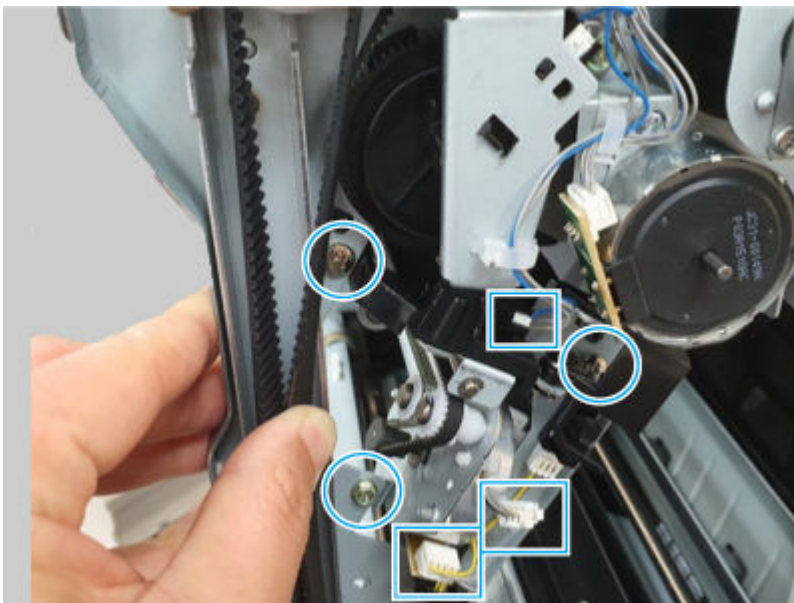
 **NOTE:** If the tamper unit is removed after the ejector unit to gain access to another assembly, the screws have already been removed.

Figure 6-2180 Remove the tamper

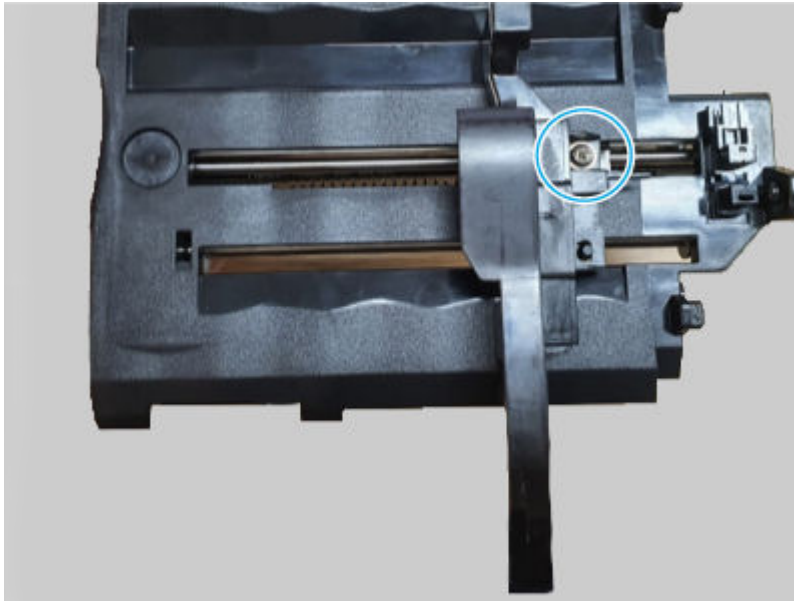


9. Remove the external finisher front tamper home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper home sensor.

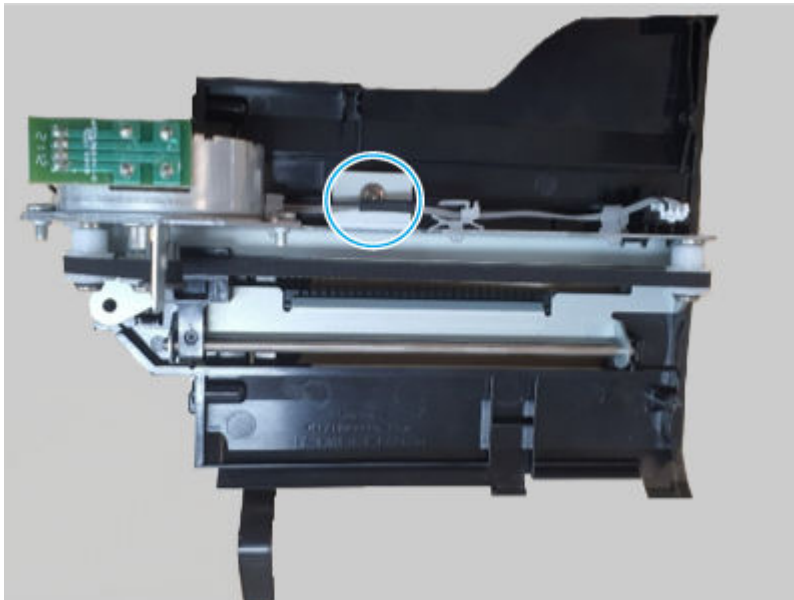
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the tamper.

Figure 6-2181 Remove the tamper



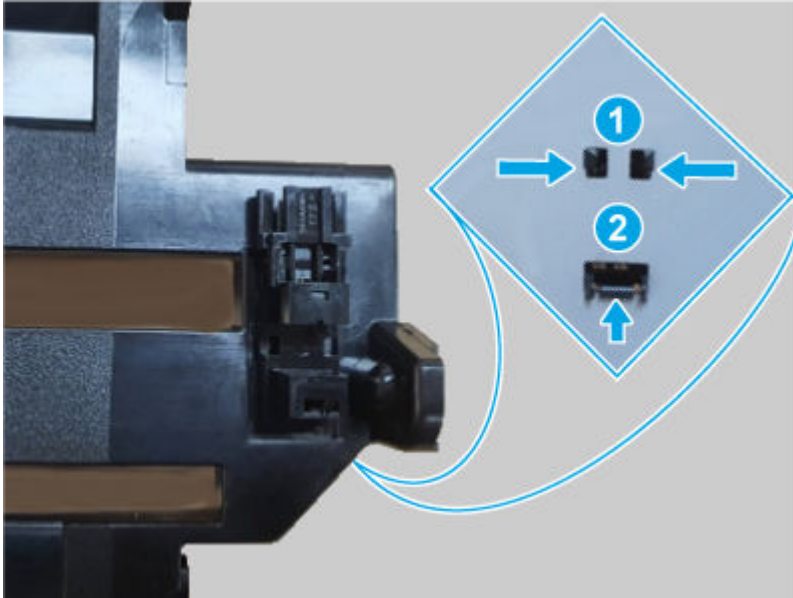
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the bracket.

Figure 6-2182 Remove the bracket



3. Do the following:
 - a. Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - b. Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the tamper home sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-2183 Remove the sensor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front tamper motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-308 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Front tamper motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

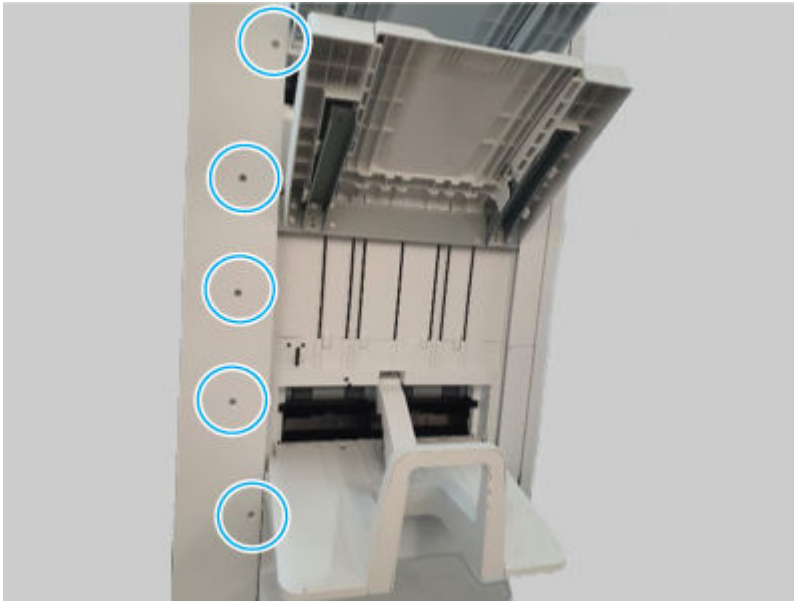
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2184 Remove five screws

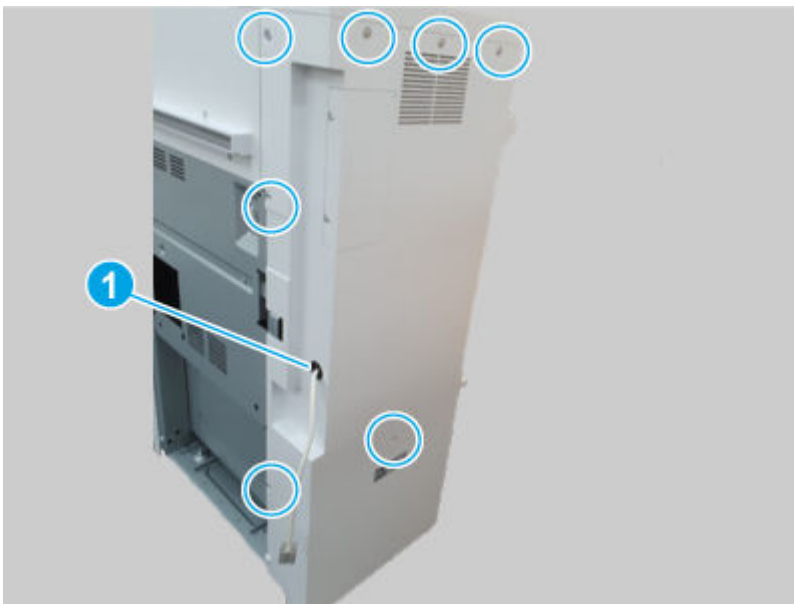


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2185 Remove the cover

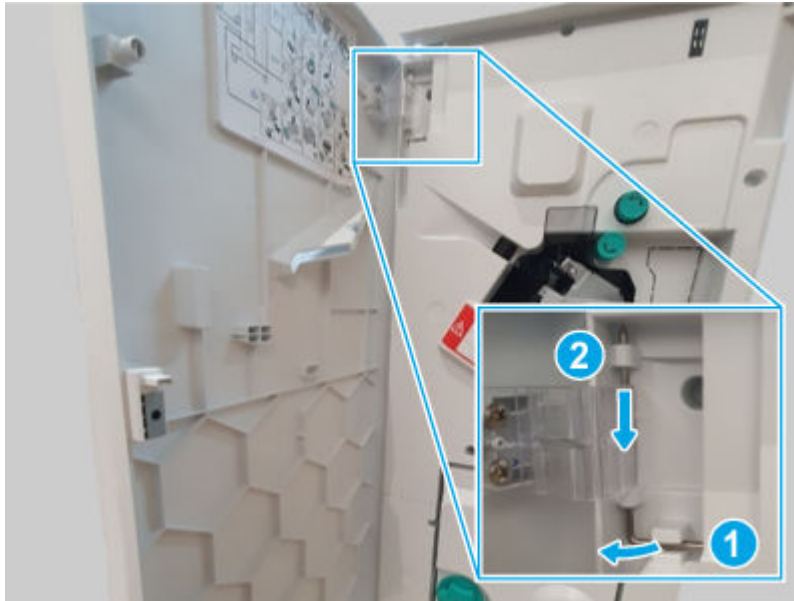


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

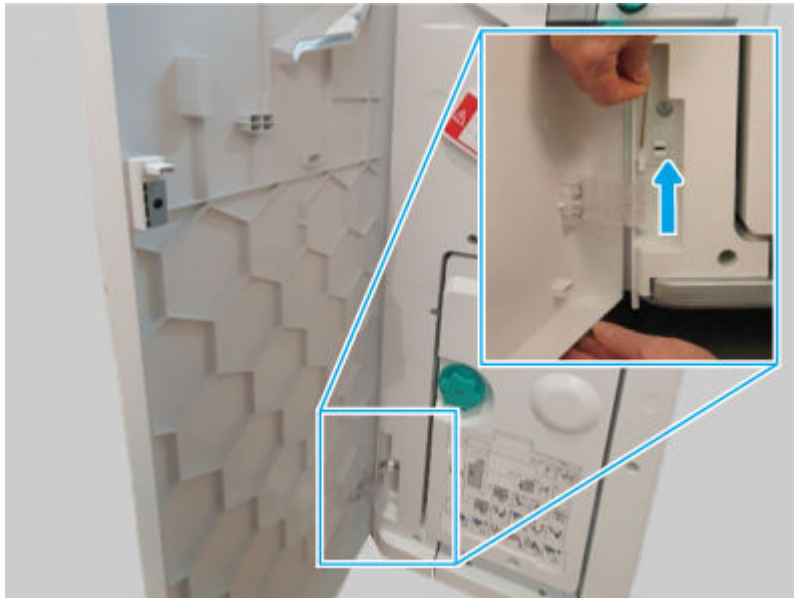
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2186 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2187 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2188 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2189 Remove the cover

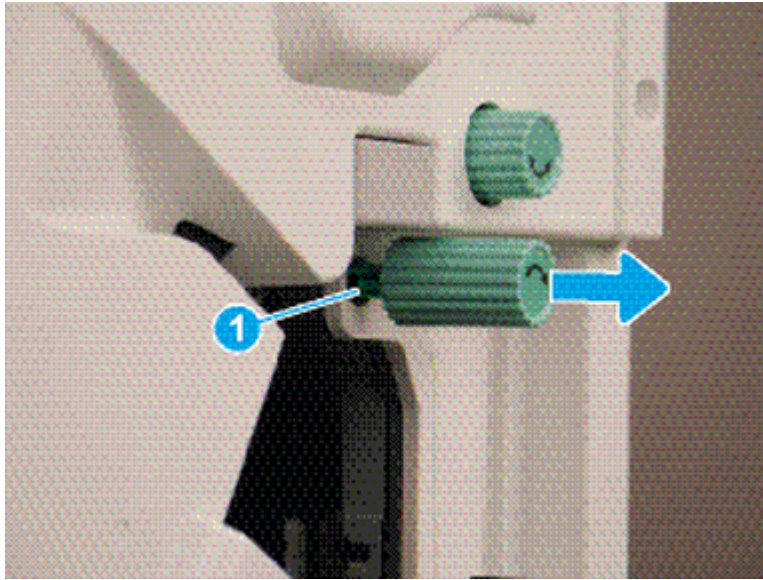


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2190 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2191 Remove the cover



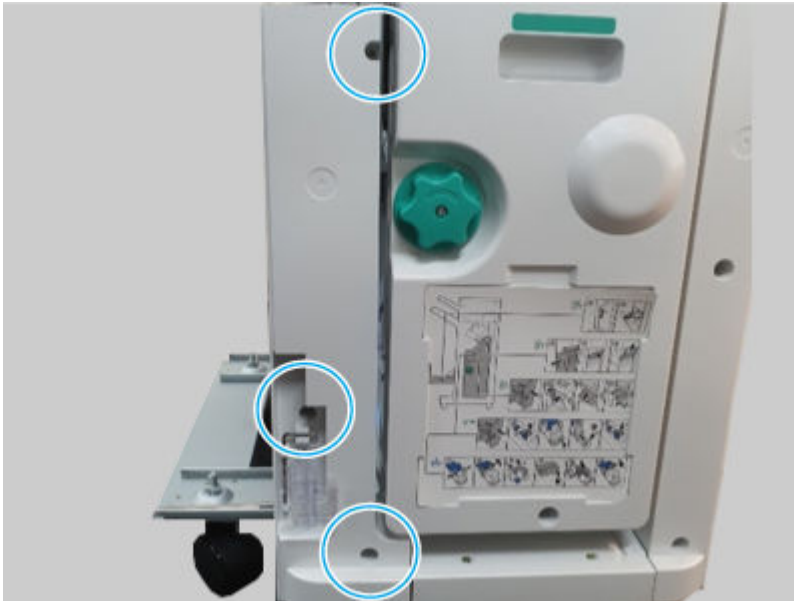
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2192 Remove the cover

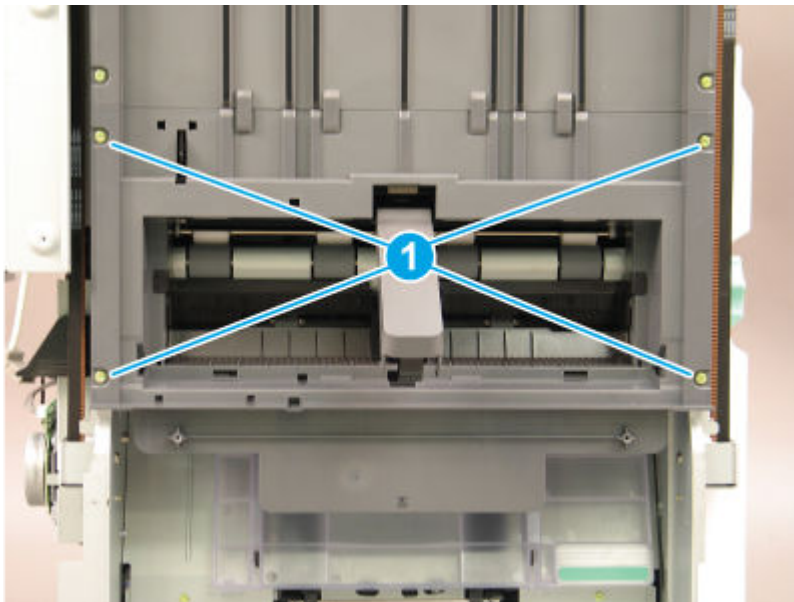


6. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2193 Remove four screws



2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.


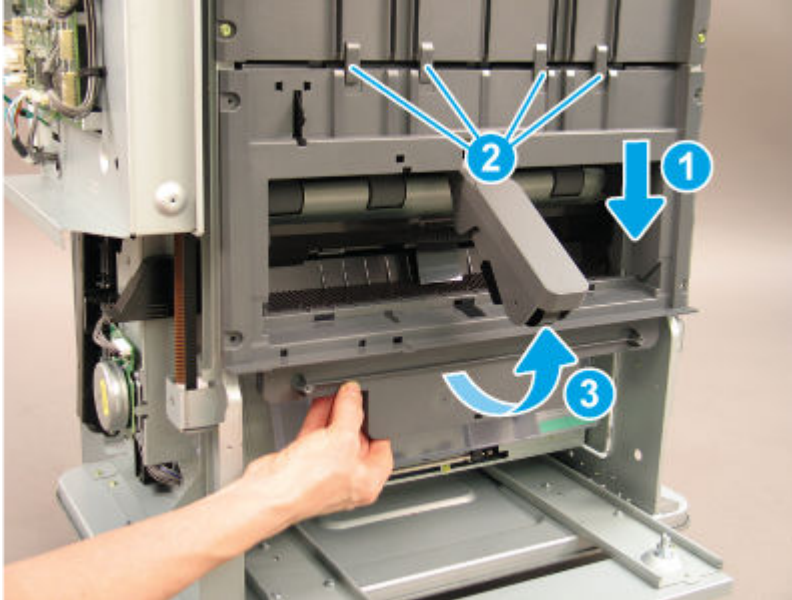
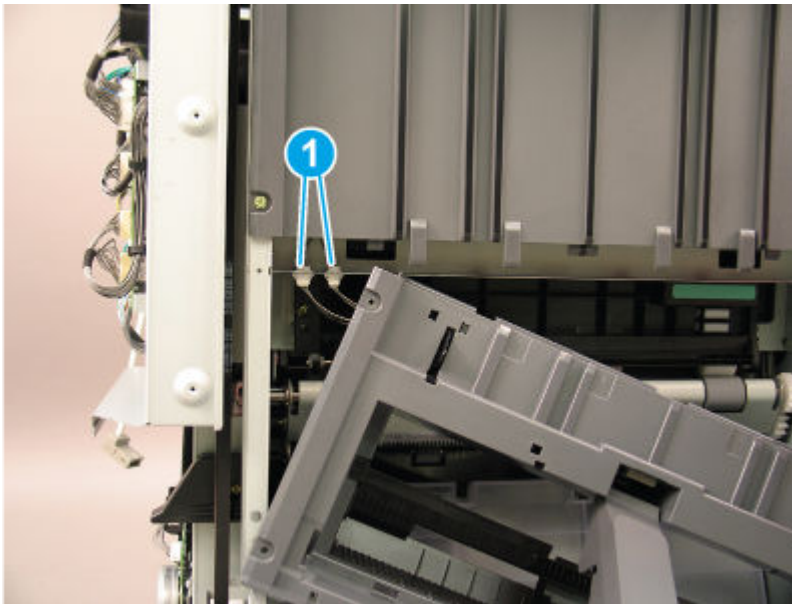
 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2194 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2195 Remove the cover

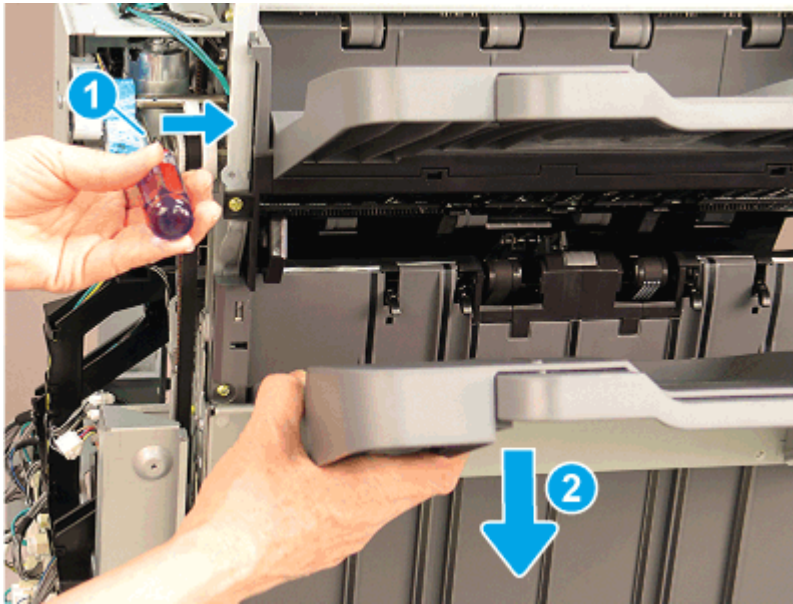


7. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

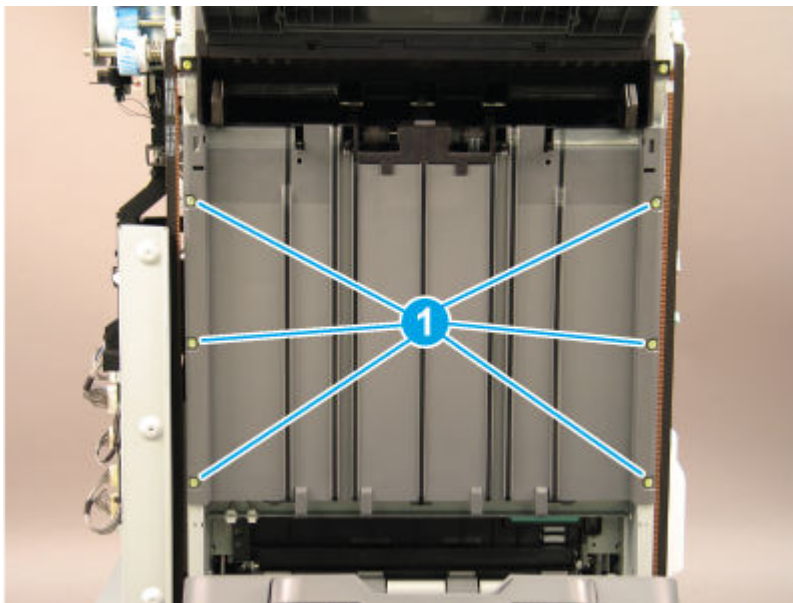
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2196 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2197 Remove six screws

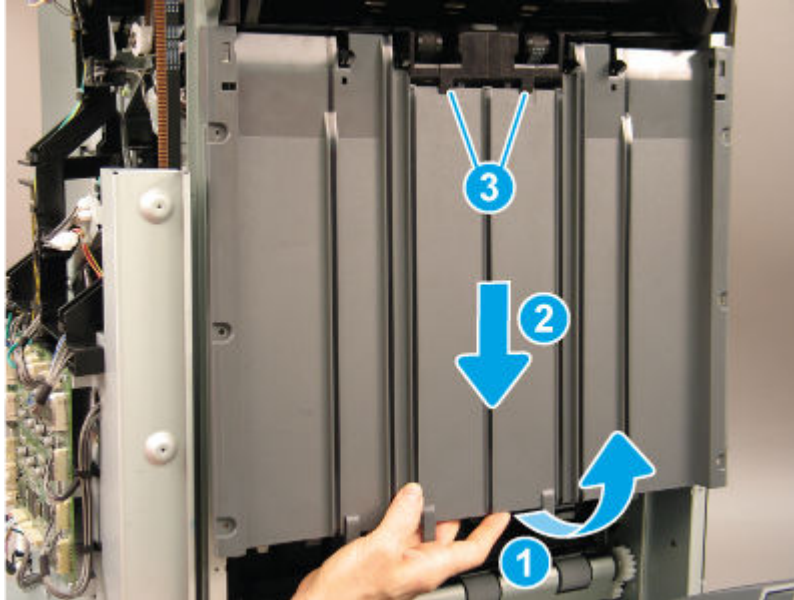


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

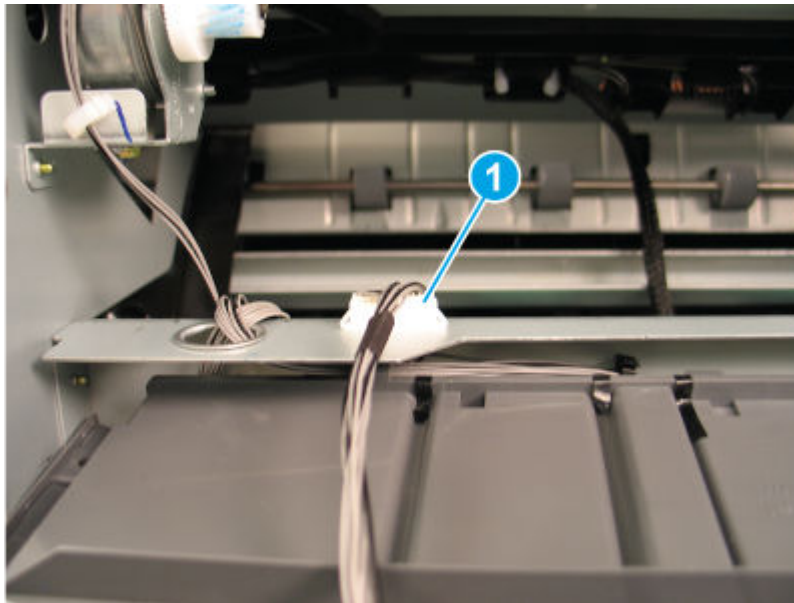
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2198 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2199 Remove the cover



8. Remove the external finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper.

- Disconnect three connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the front tamper.


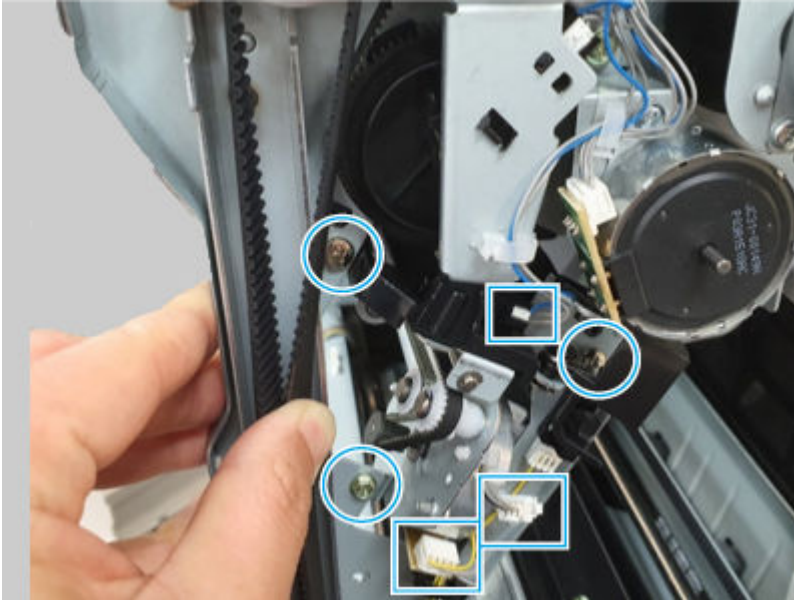
 **NOTE:** If the tamper unit is removed after the ejector unit to gain access to another assembly, the screws have already been removed.

Figure 6-2200 Remove the tamper

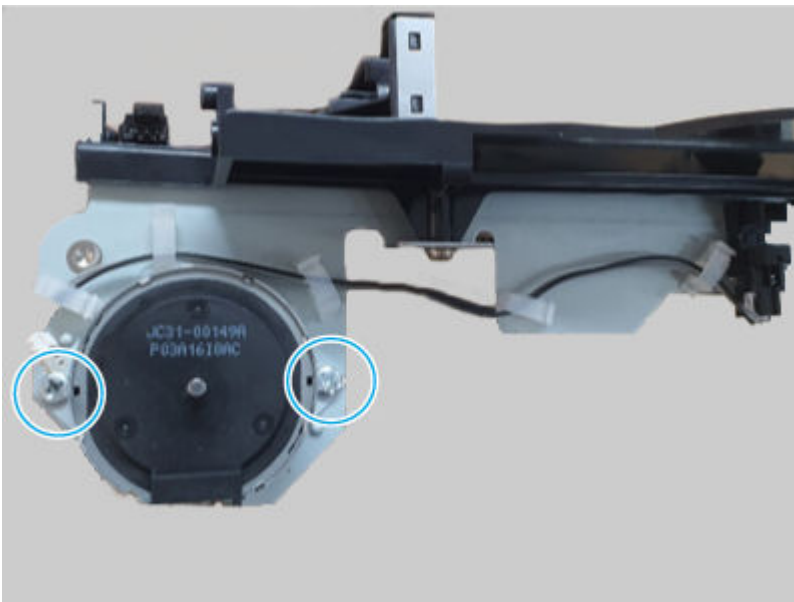


9. Remove the external finisher front tamper motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the front tamper motor.

Figure 6-2201 Remove the motor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher rear tamper.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-309 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00898A	Rear tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

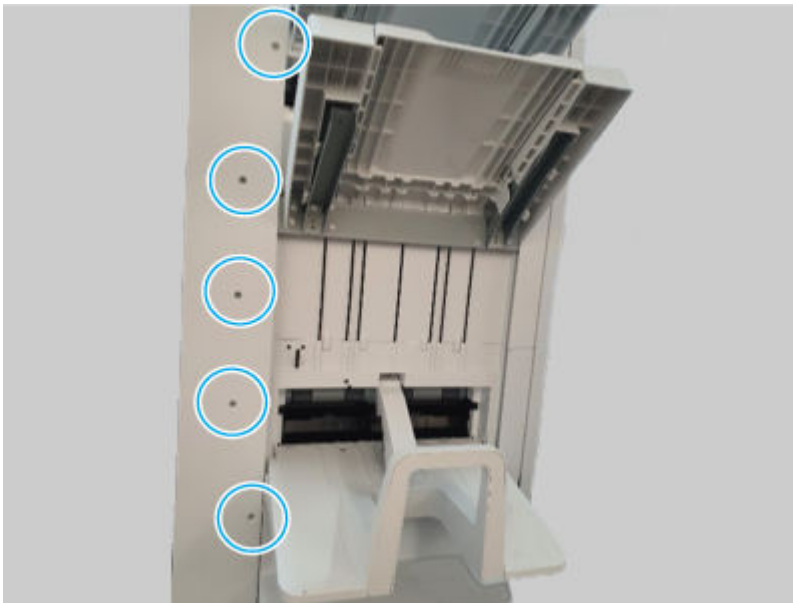
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2202 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2203 Remove the cover

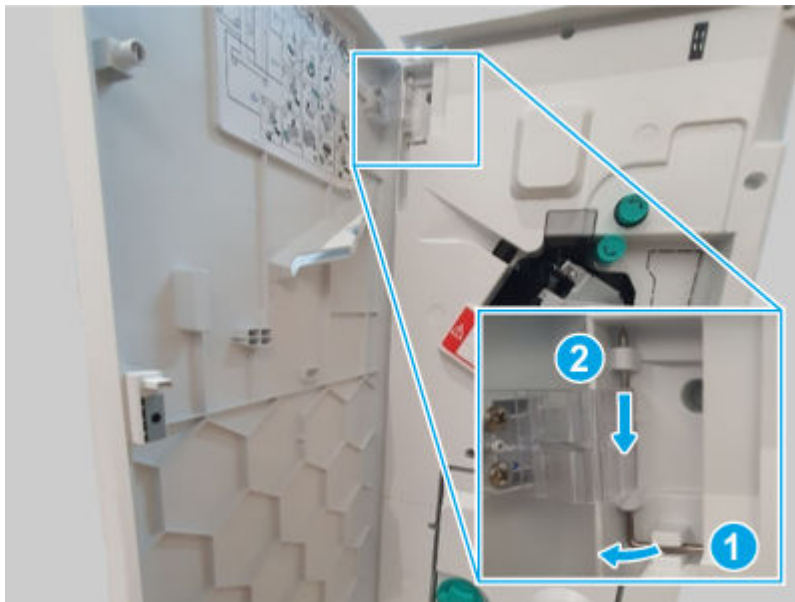


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

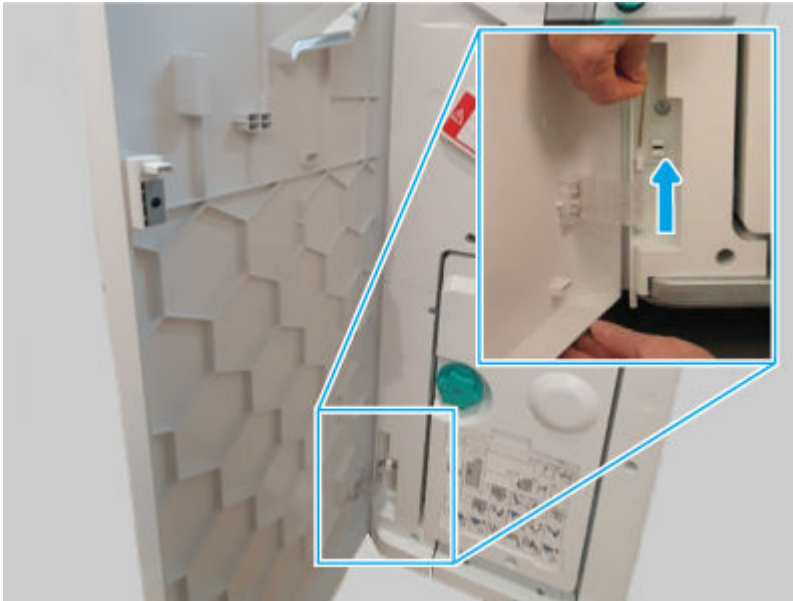
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2204 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2205 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

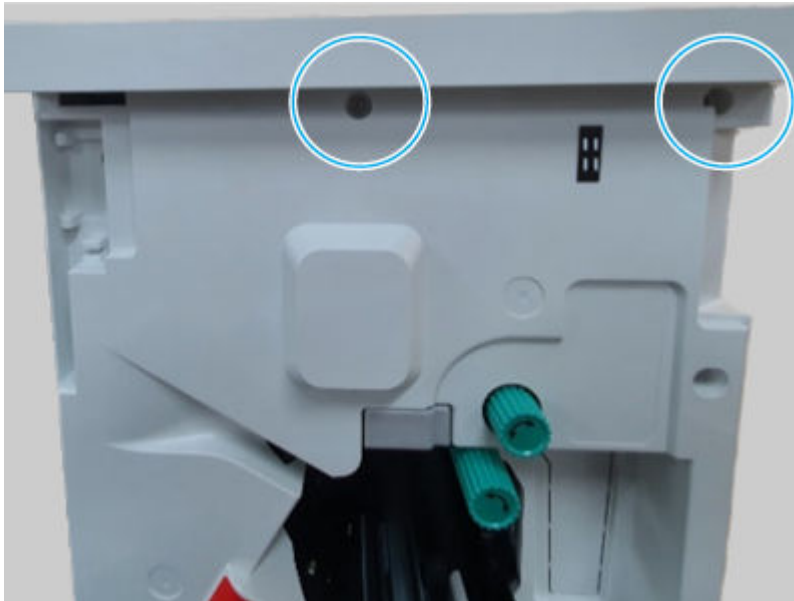
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2206 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2207 Remove the cover

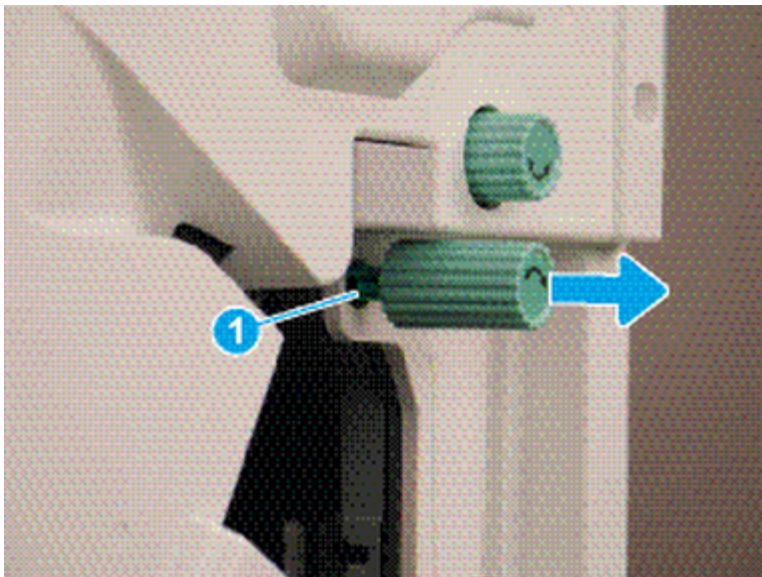


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2208 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2209 Remove the cover

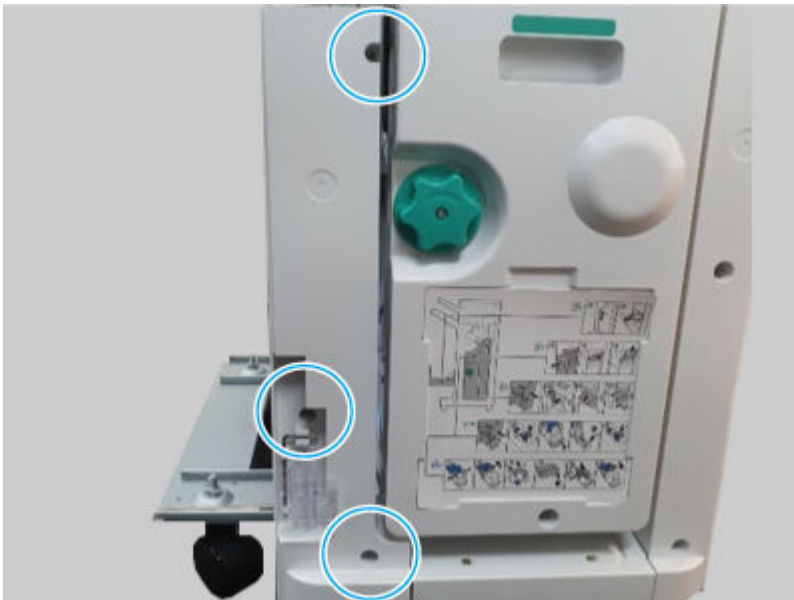


5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2210 Remove the cover

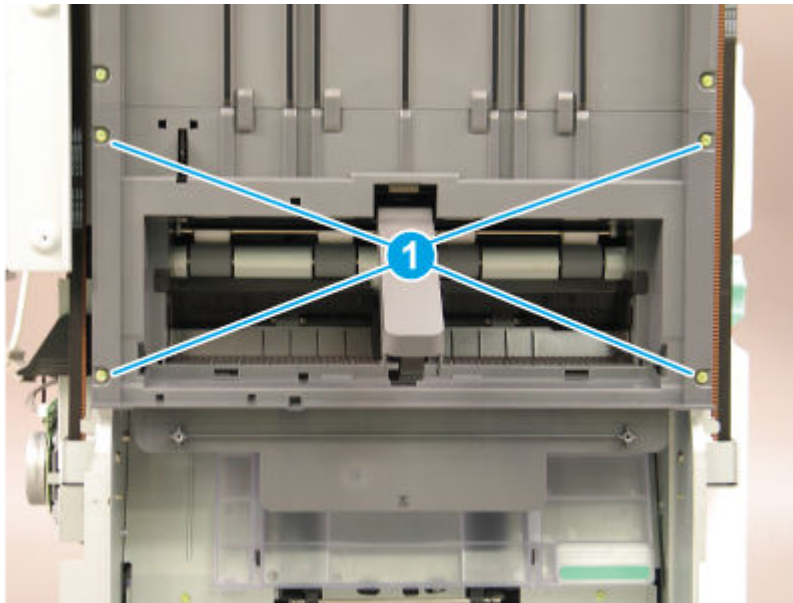


6. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2211 Remove four screws

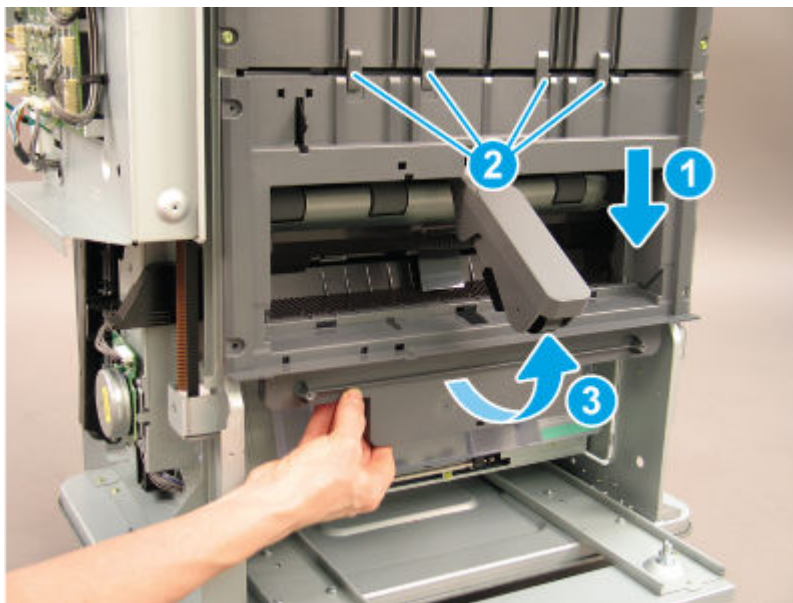


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

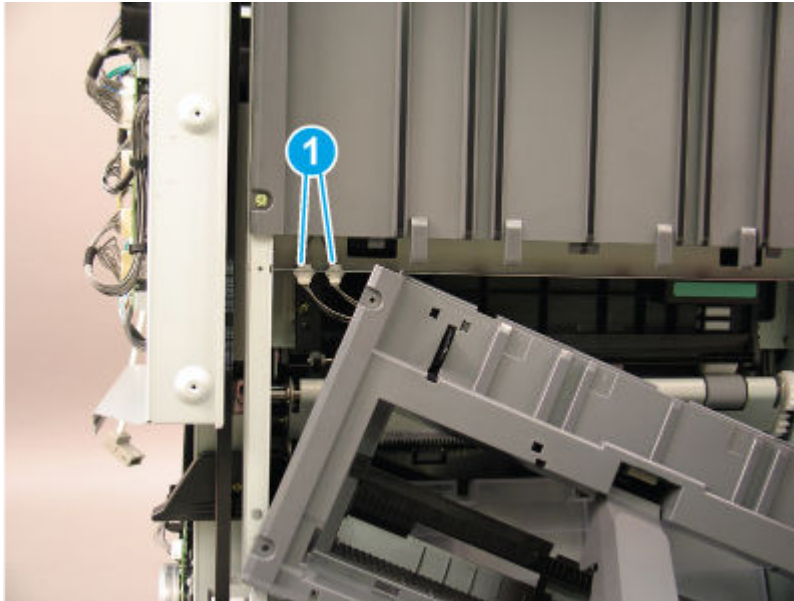
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2212 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2213 Remove the cover

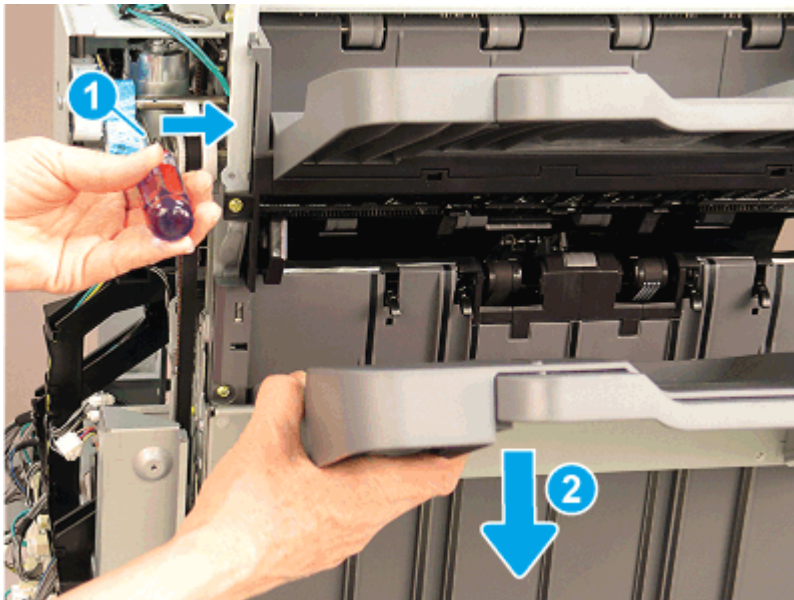


7. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

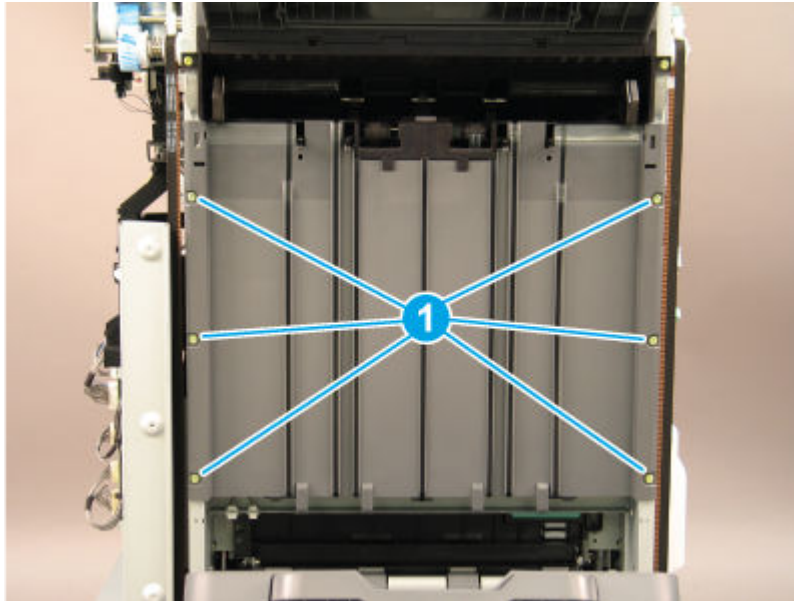
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2214 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2215 Remove six screws

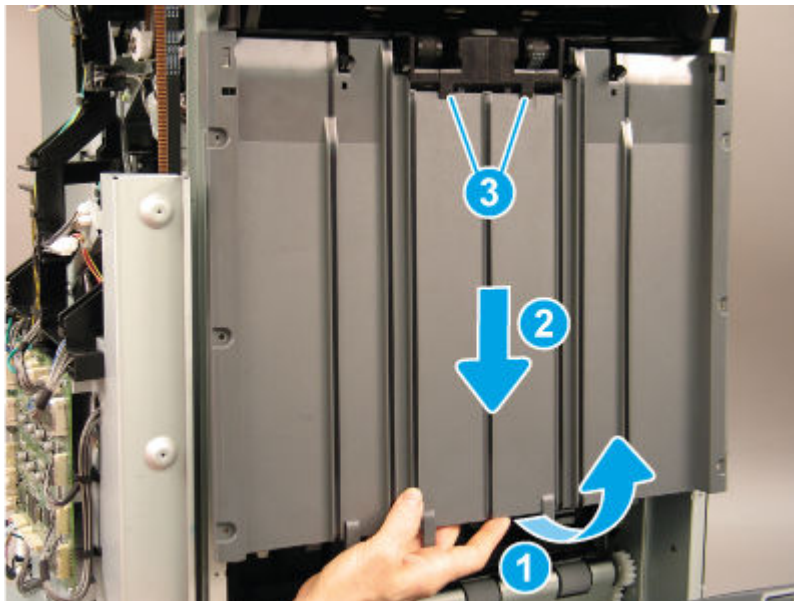


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

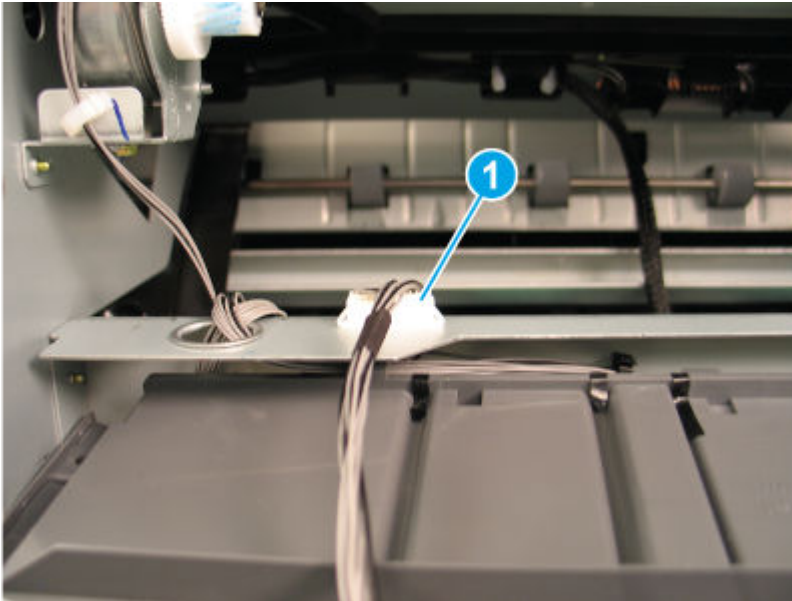
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2216 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2217 Remove the cover

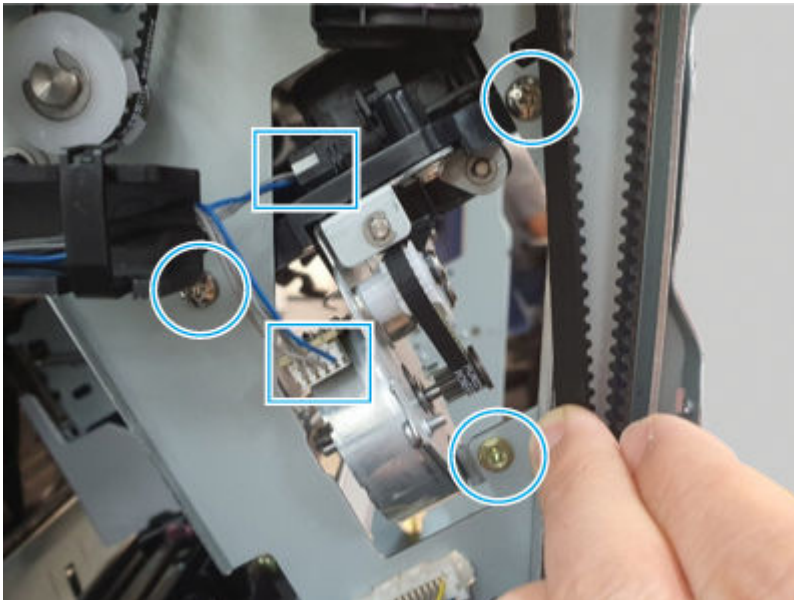


8. Remove the external finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear tamper.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the rear tamper.


Figure 6-2218 Remove the tamper



9. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher rear tamper home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-310 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Rear tamper home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

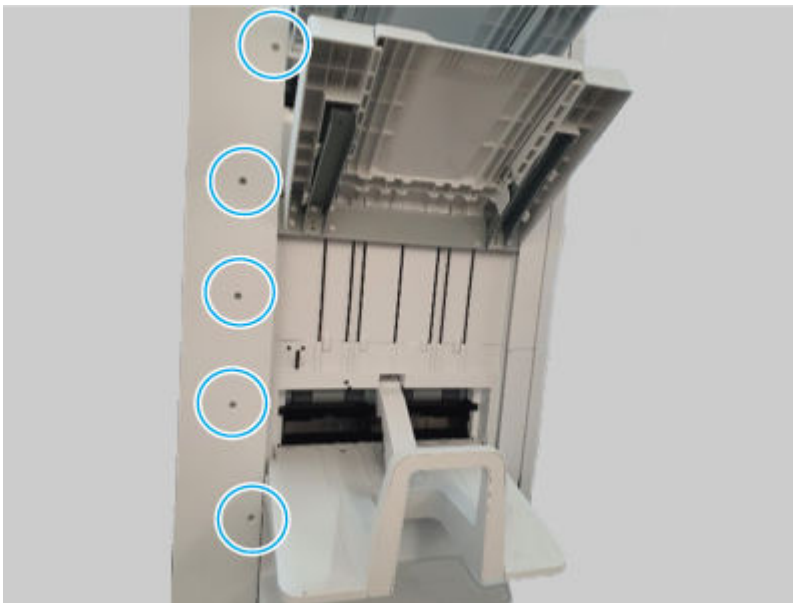
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2219 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2220 Remove the cover

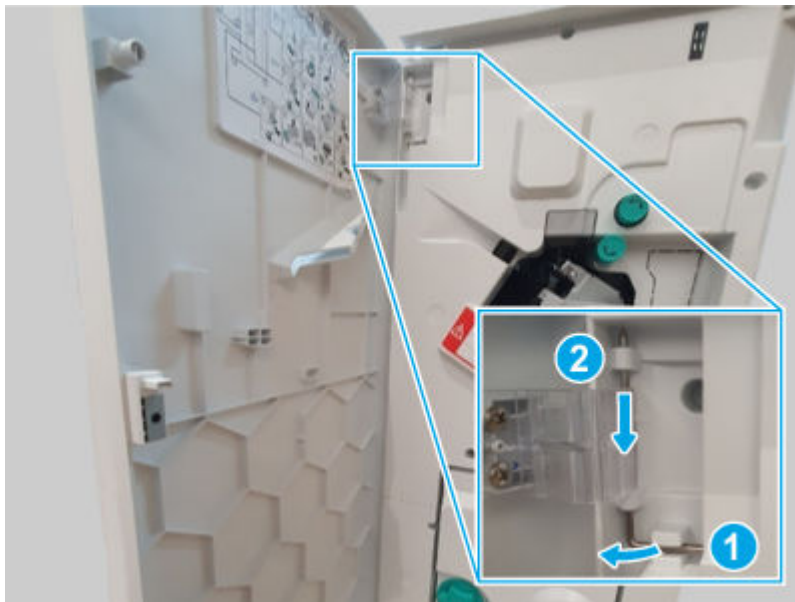


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

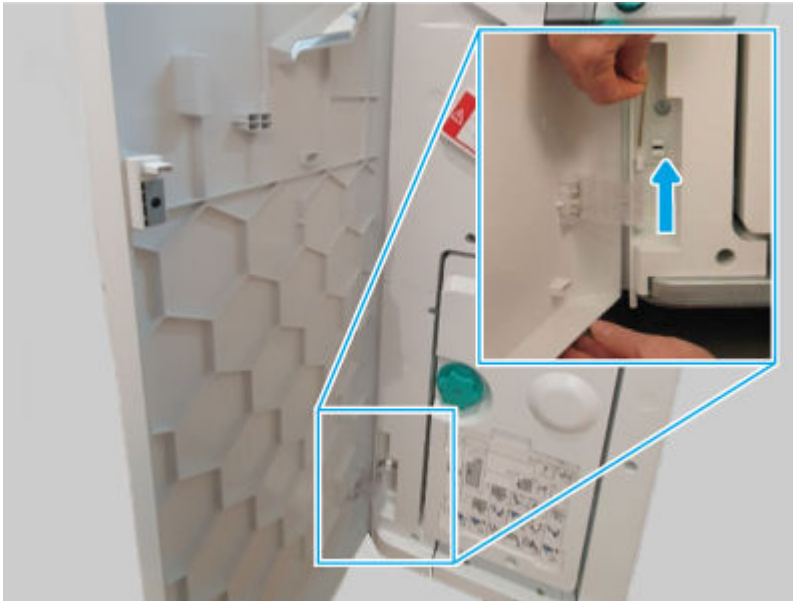
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2221 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2222 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

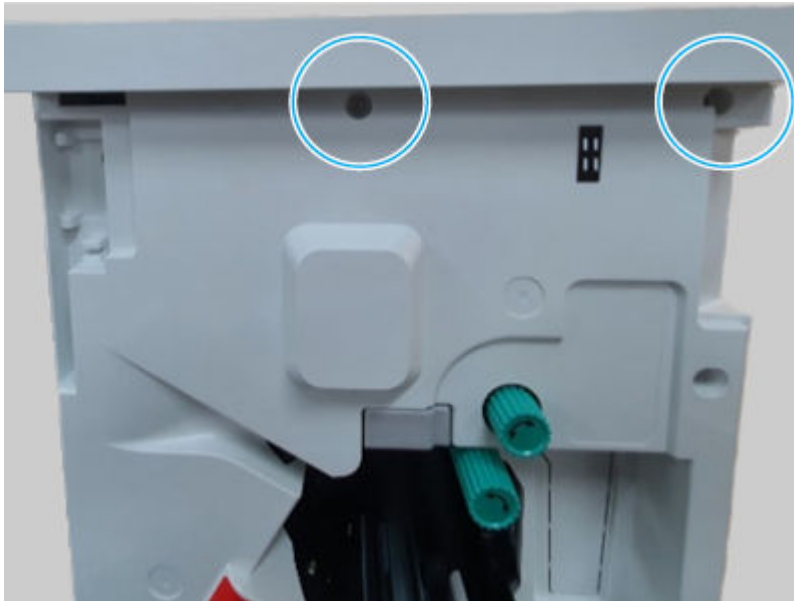
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2223 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2224 Remove the cover

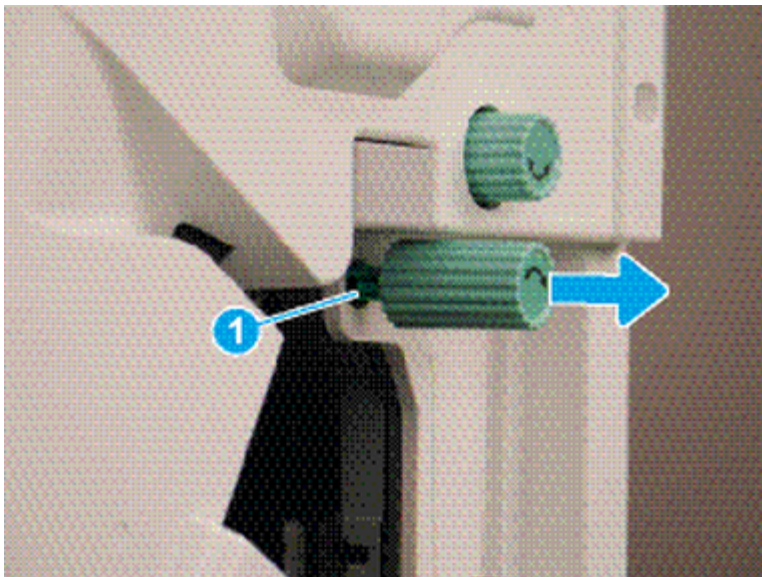


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2225 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2226 Remove the cover

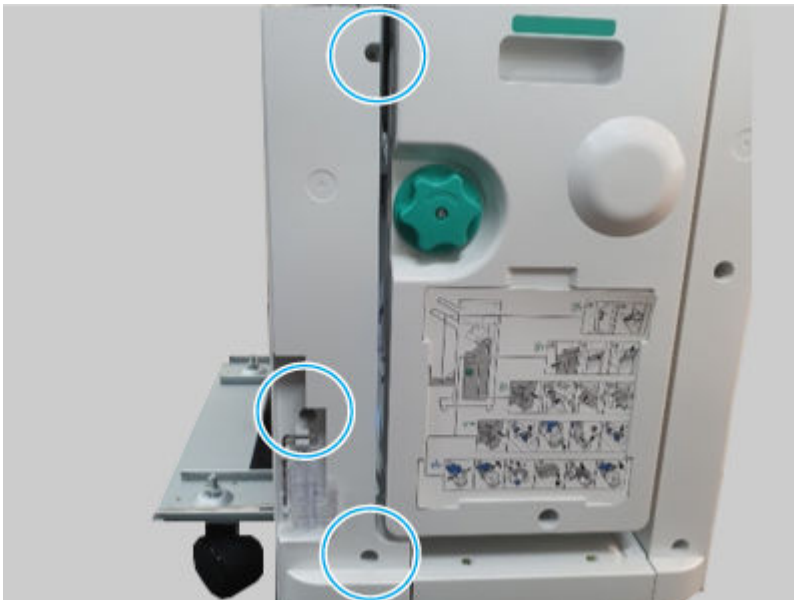


5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2227 Remove the cover

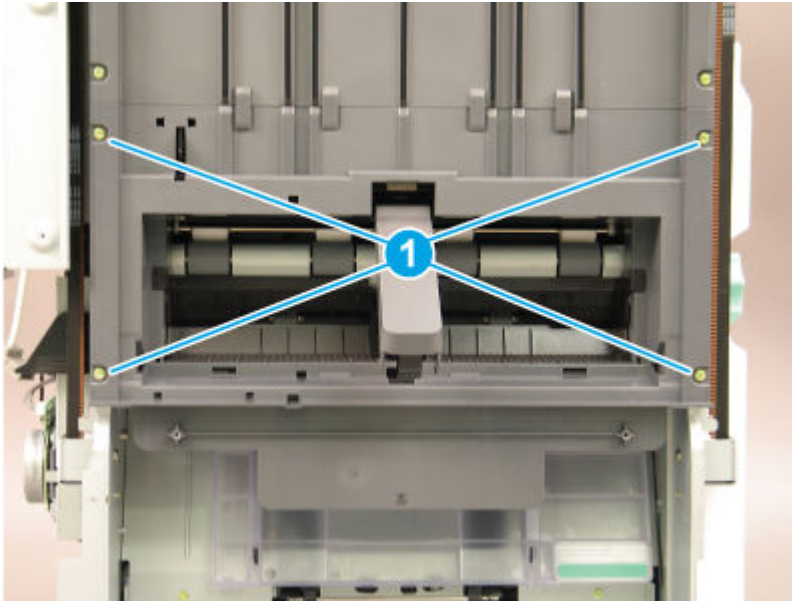


6. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2228 Remove four screws

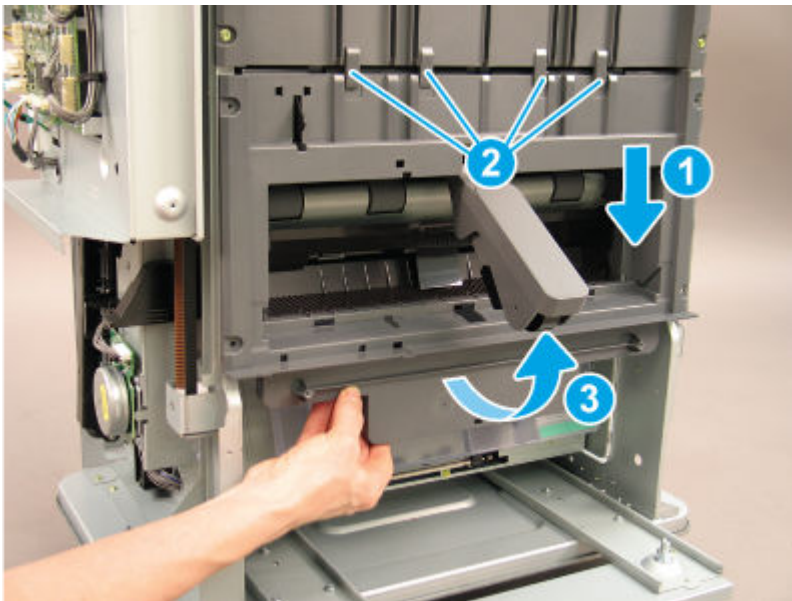


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

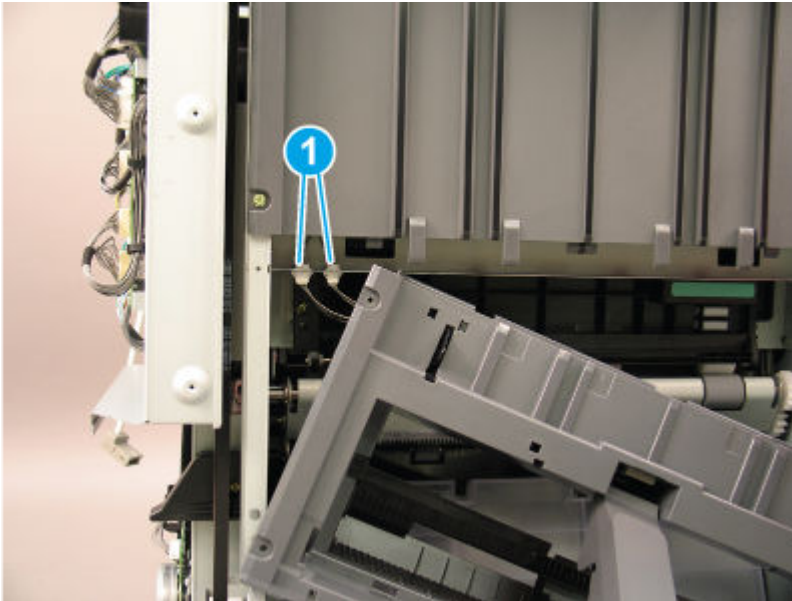
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2229 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2230 Remove the cover

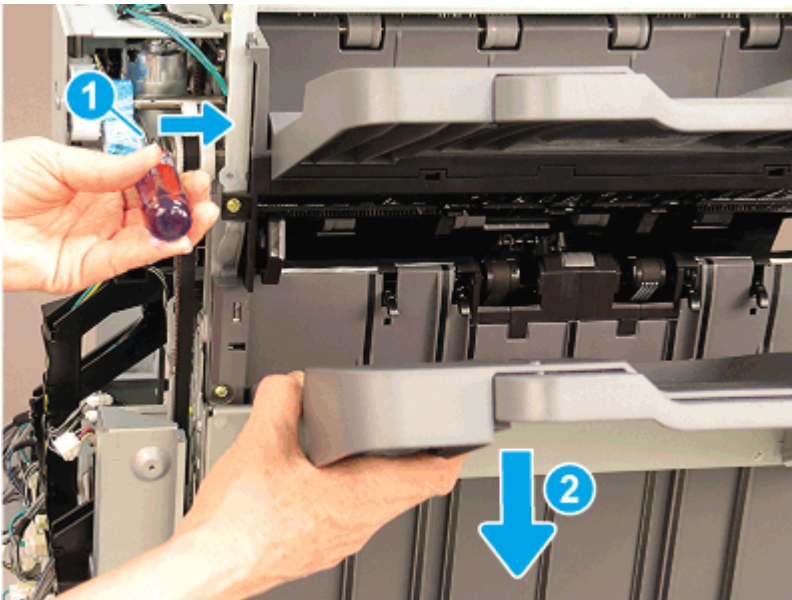


7. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

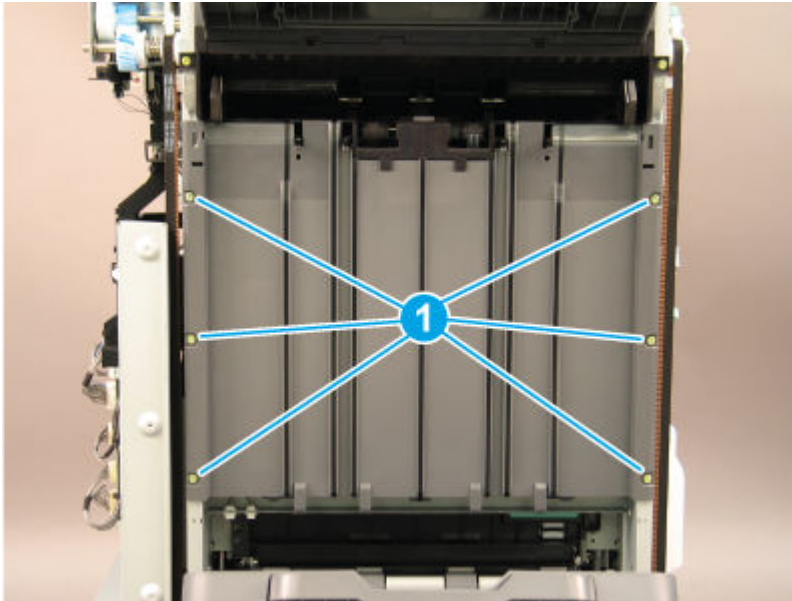
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2231 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2232 Remove six screws

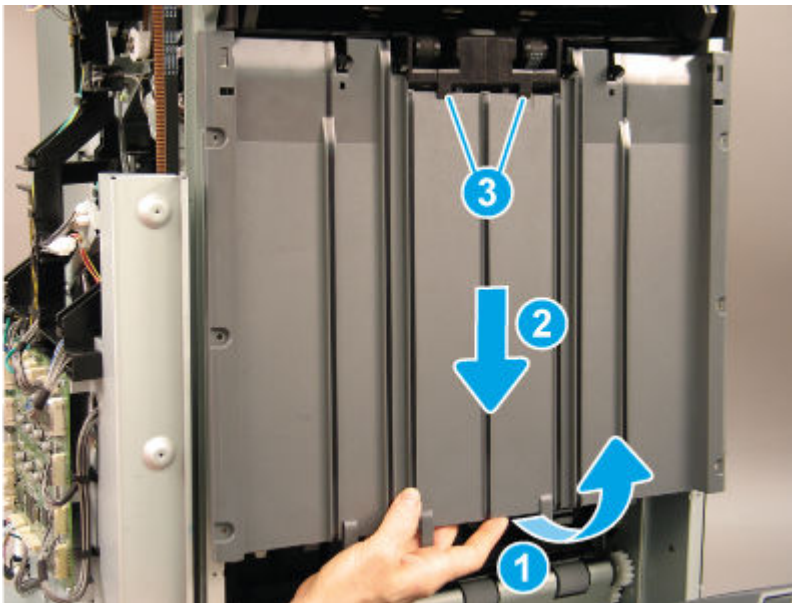


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

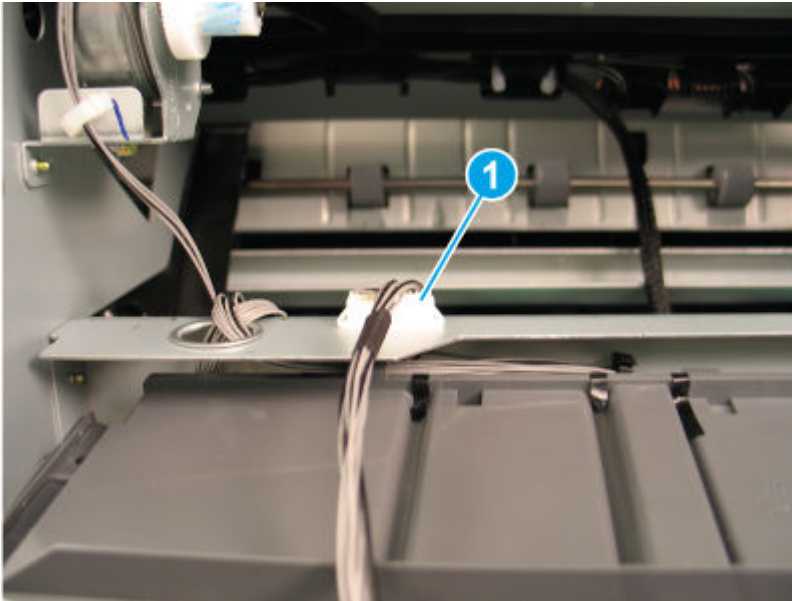
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2233 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2234 Remove the cover

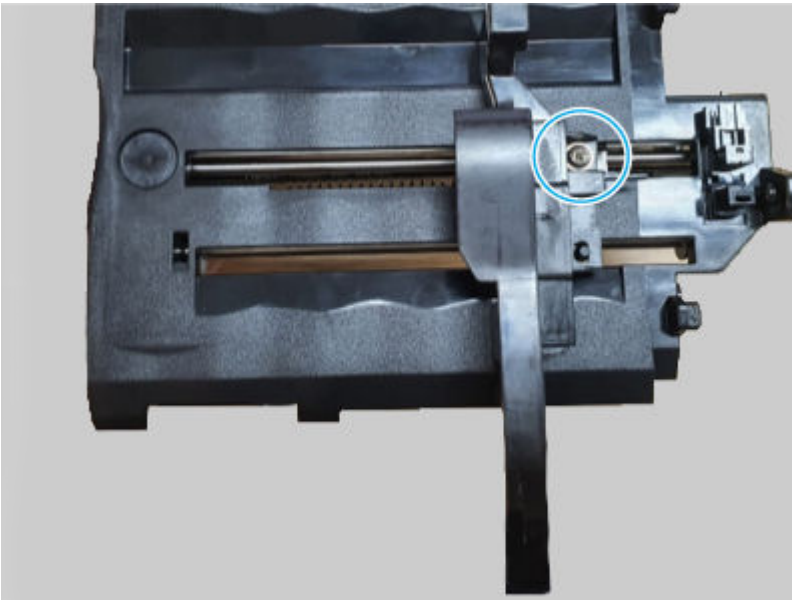


8. Remove the external finisher front tamper home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper home sensor.

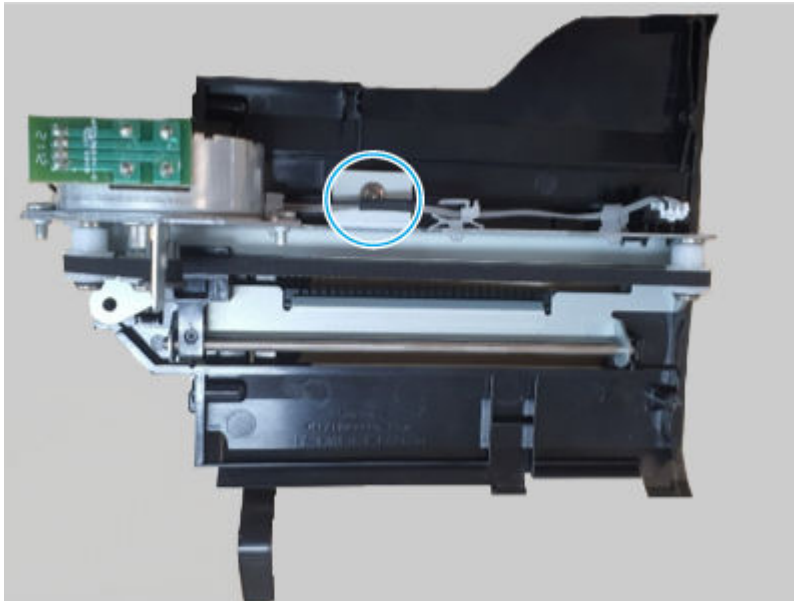
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the tamper.

Figure 6-2235 Remove the tamper



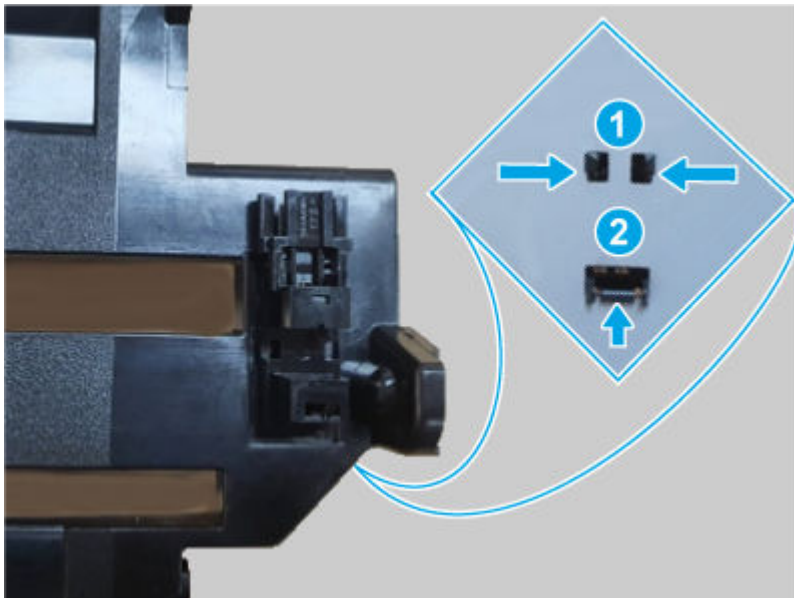
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the bracket.

Figure 6-2236 Remove the bracket



3. Do the following:
 - a. Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - b. Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the tamper home sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-2237 Remove the sensor



9. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher rear tamper motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-311 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Rear tamper motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

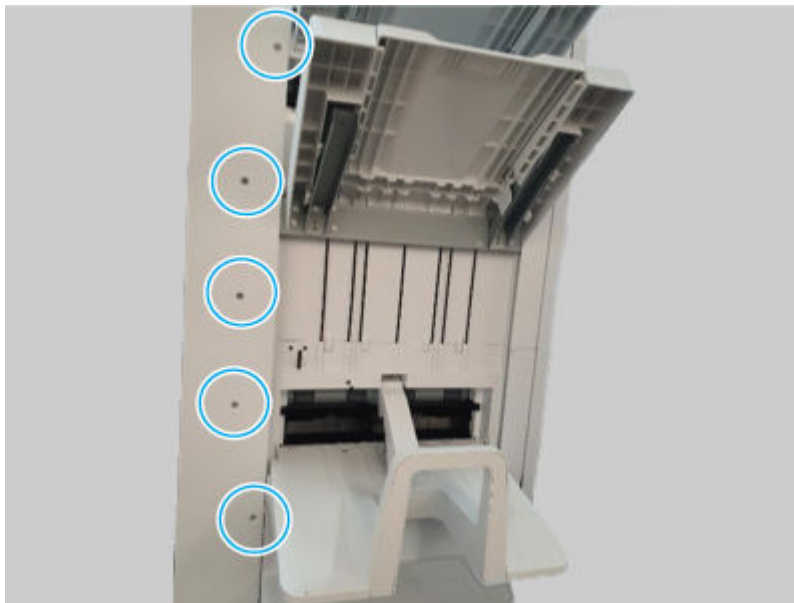
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2238 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


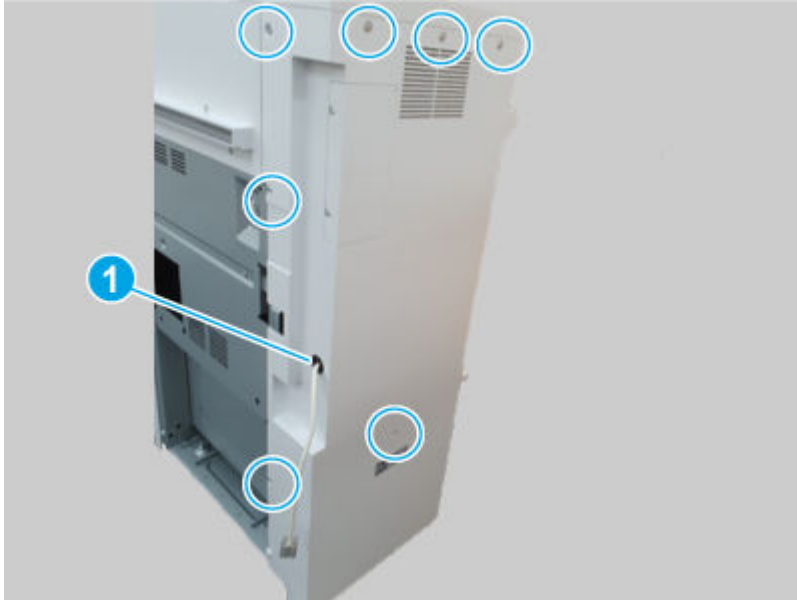
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2239 Remove the cover

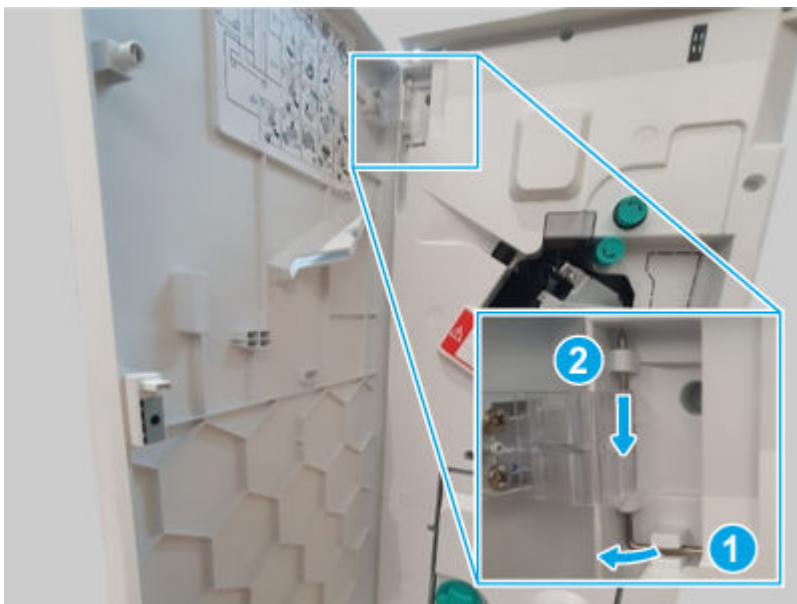


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

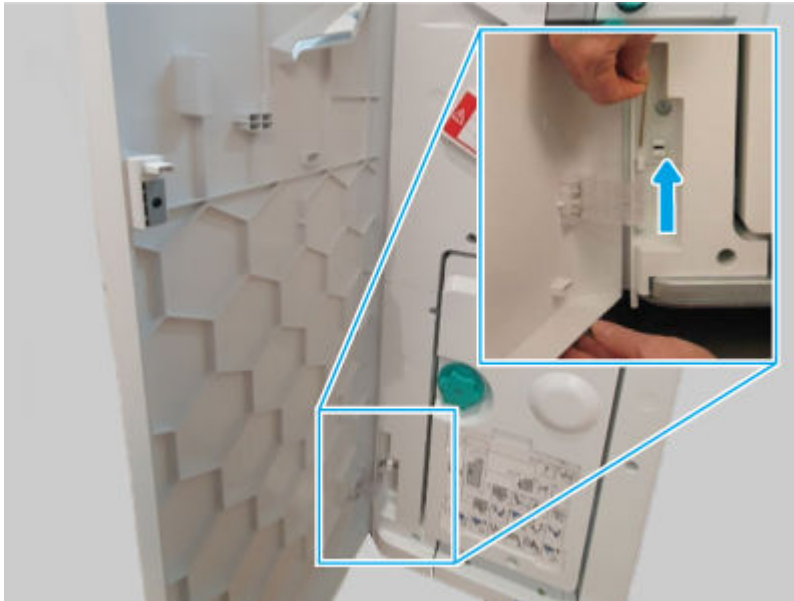
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2240 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2241 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

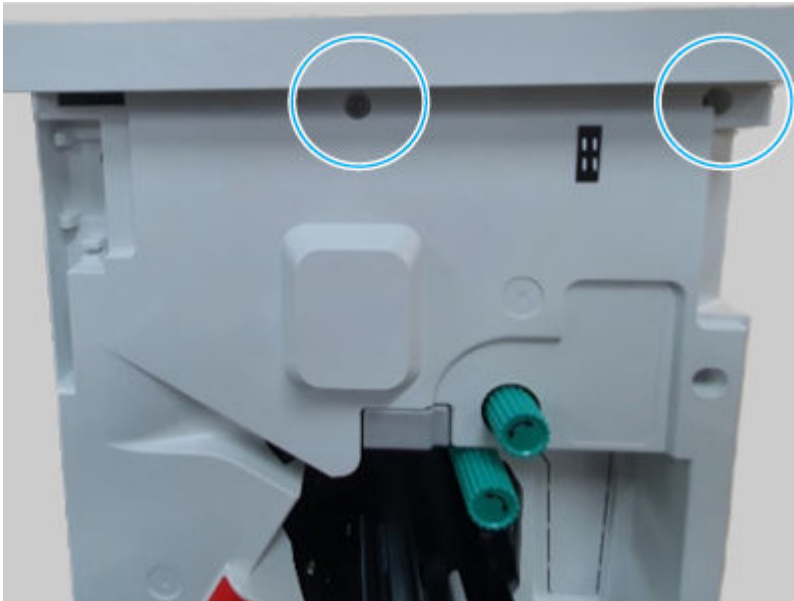
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2242 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2243 Remove the cover

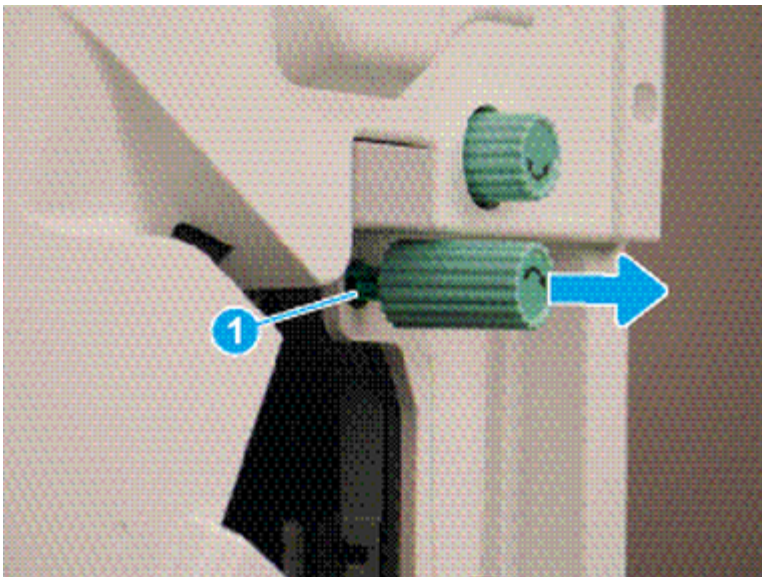


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2244 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2245 Remove the cover

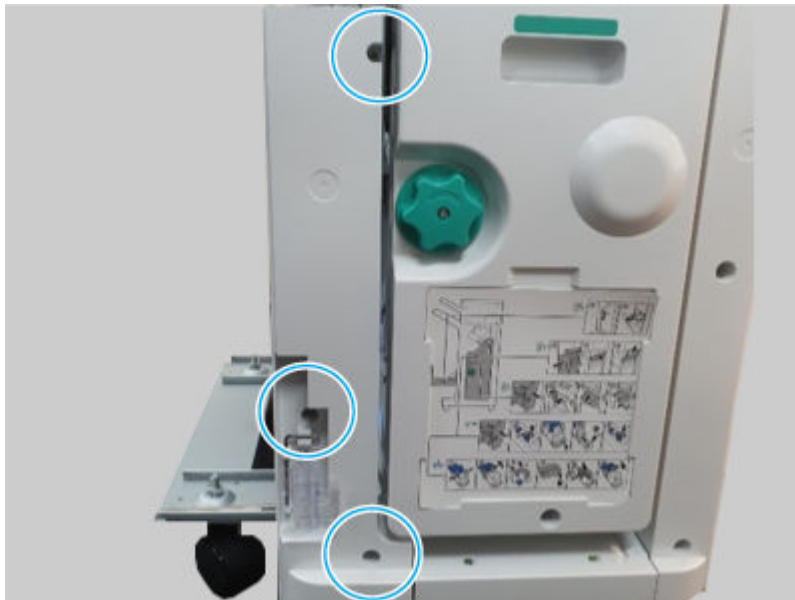


5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2246 Remove the cover



6. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

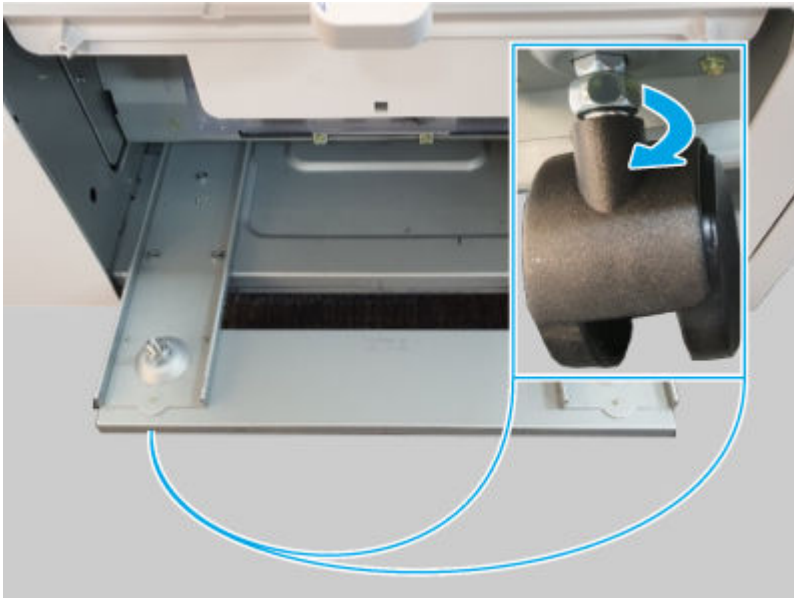
📝 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2247 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2248 Remove the caster

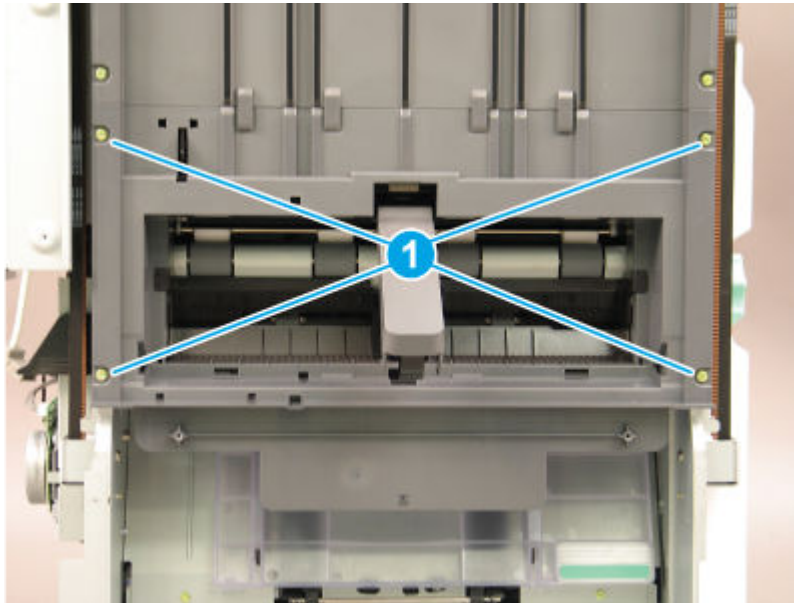


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2249 Remove four screws

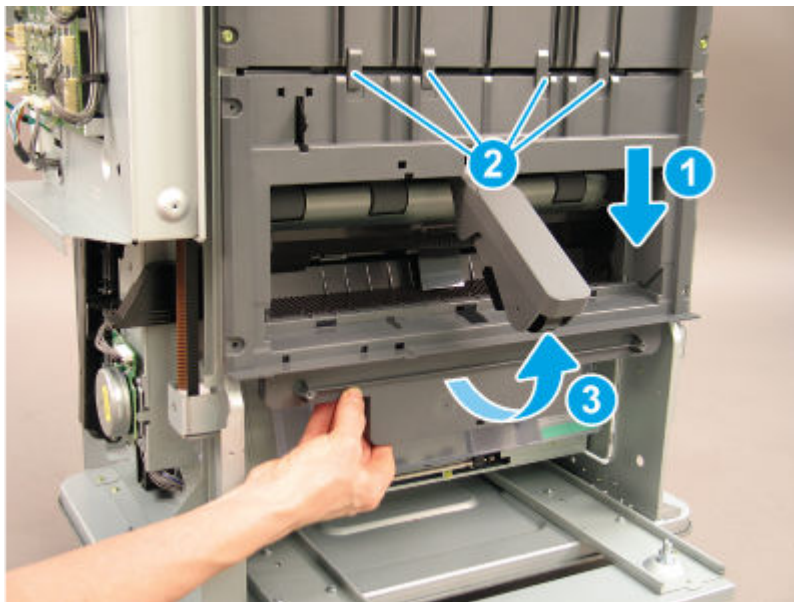


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

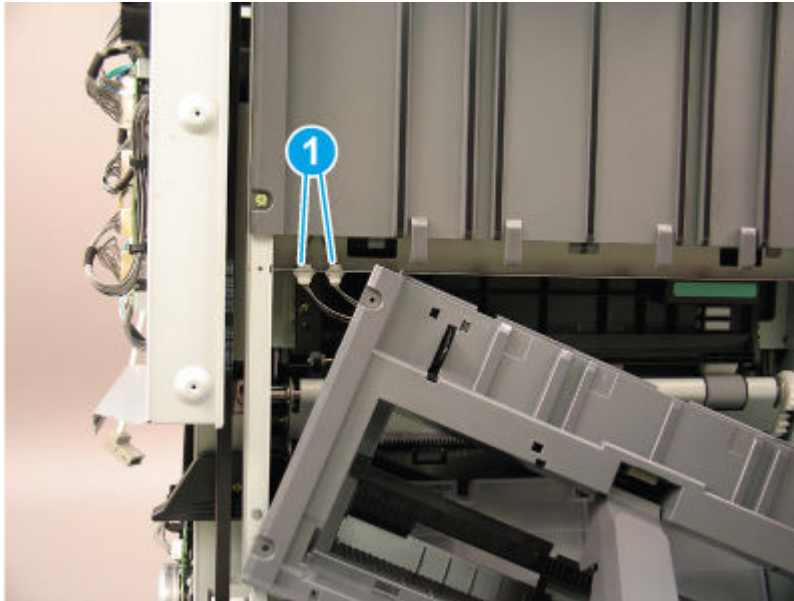
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2250 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2251 Remove the cover

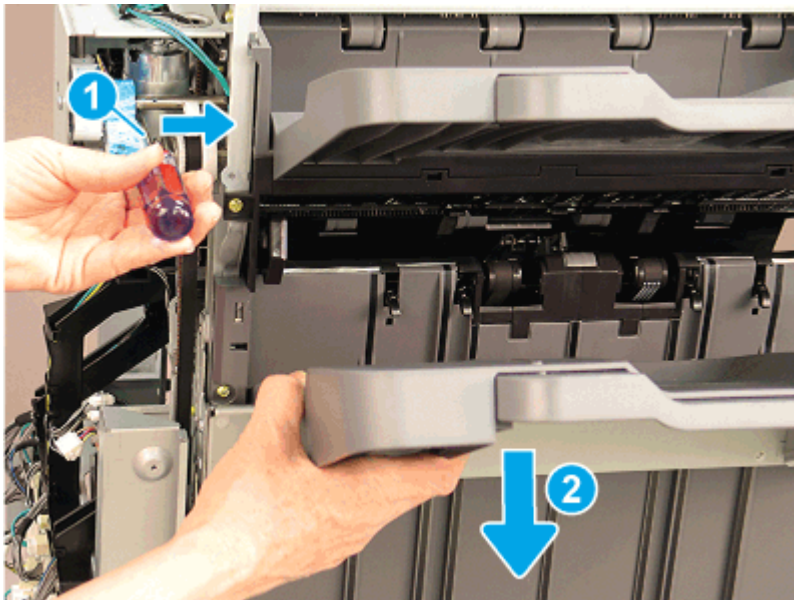


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

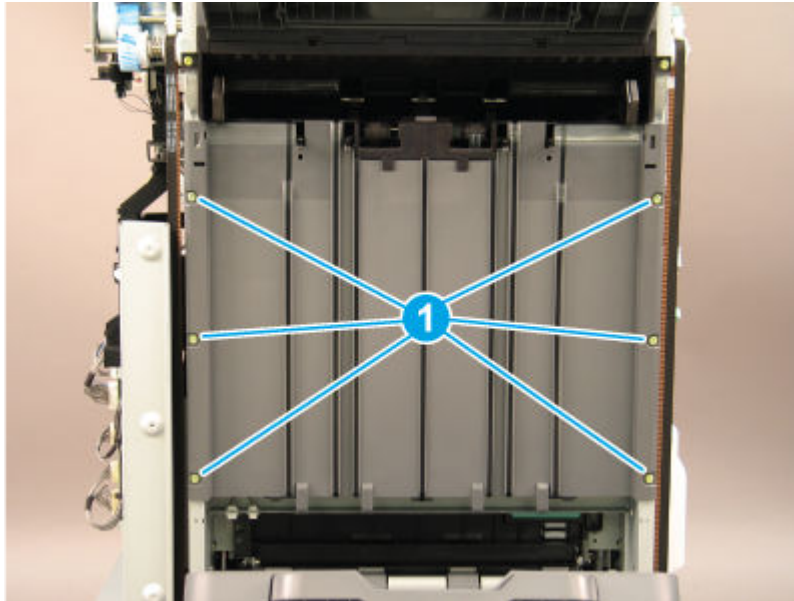
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2252 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2253 Remove six screws

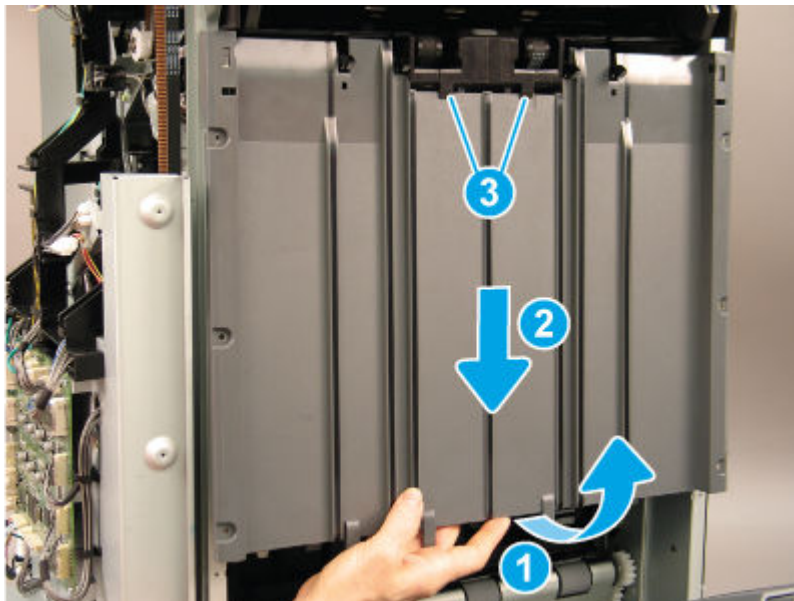


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

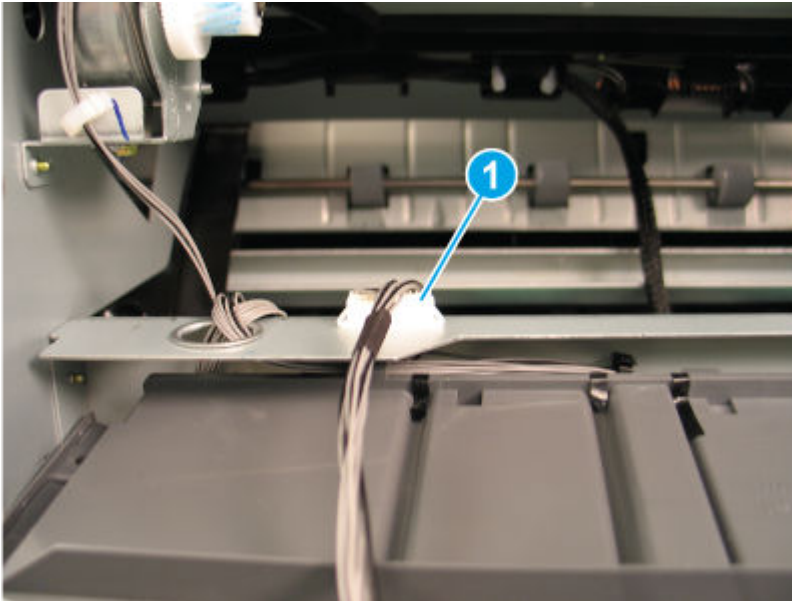
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2254 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2255 Remove the cover

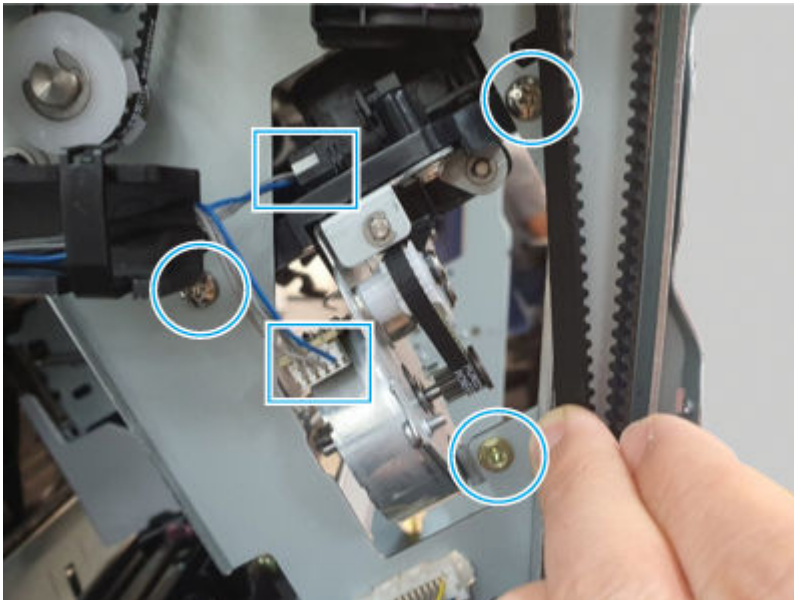


9. Remove the external finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear tamper.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-2256 Remove the tamper

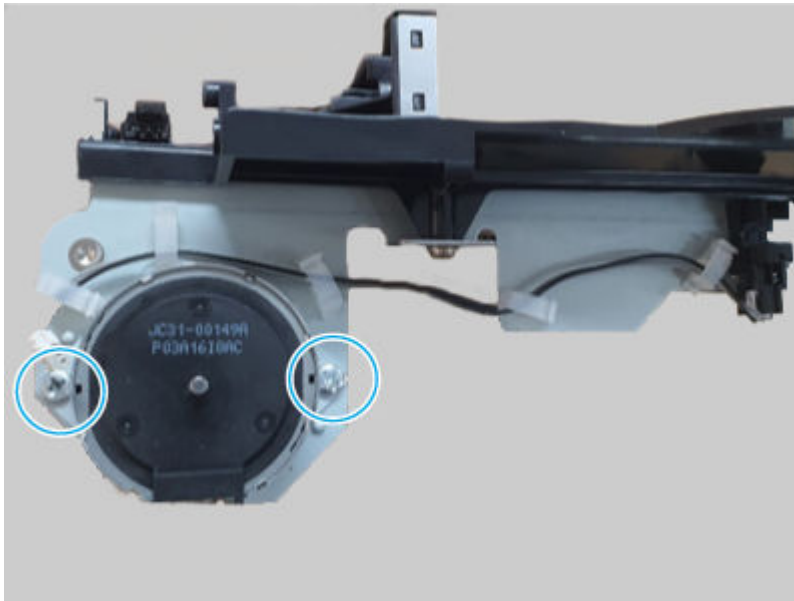


10. Remove the external finisher front tamper motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the front tamper motor.

Figure 6-2257 Remove the motor



11. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler unit

Review the external finisher stapler unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Stapler unit

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-312 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00894A	Stapler unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

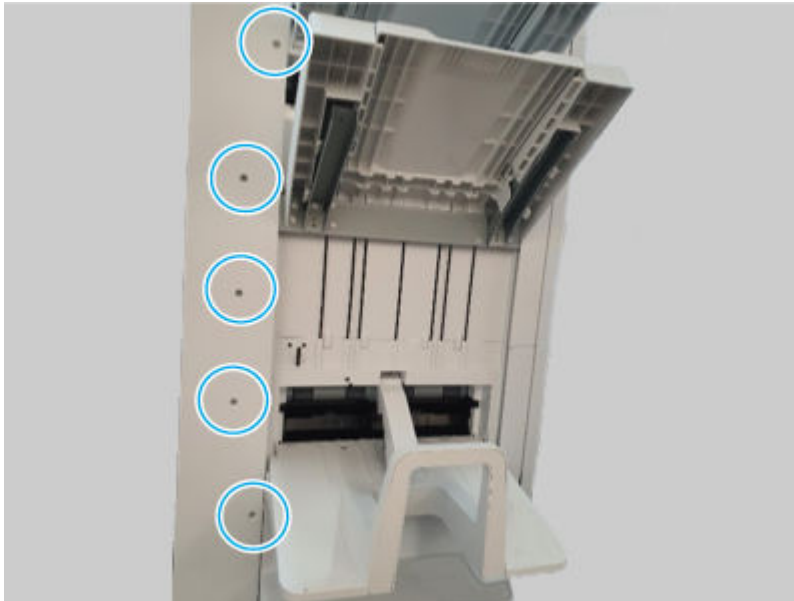
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2258 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


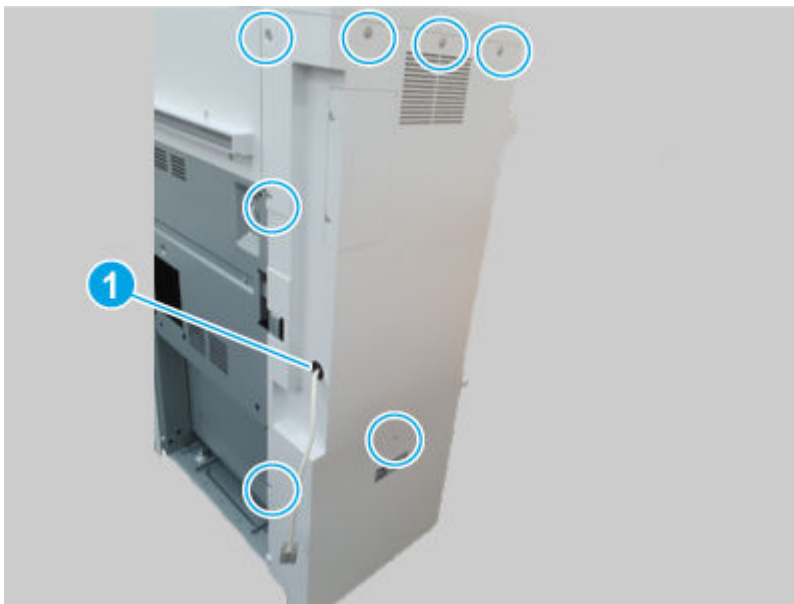
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2259 Remove the cover

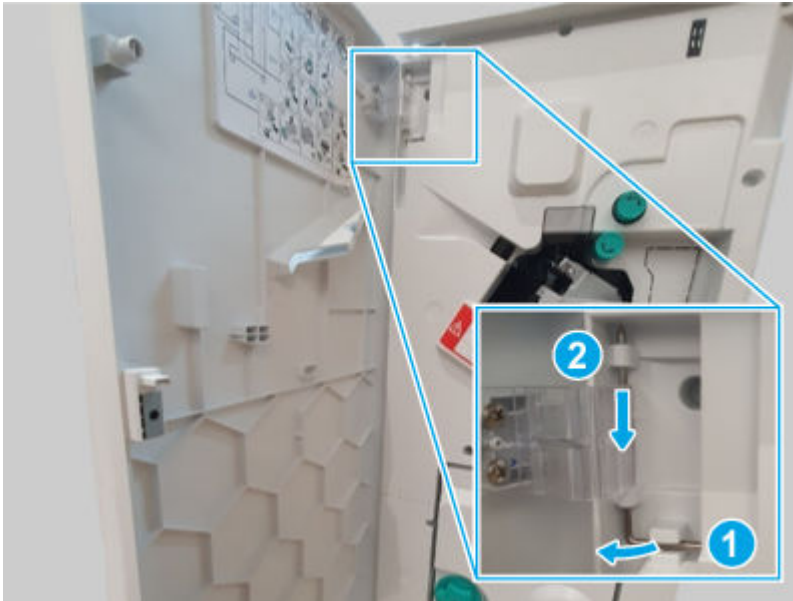


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

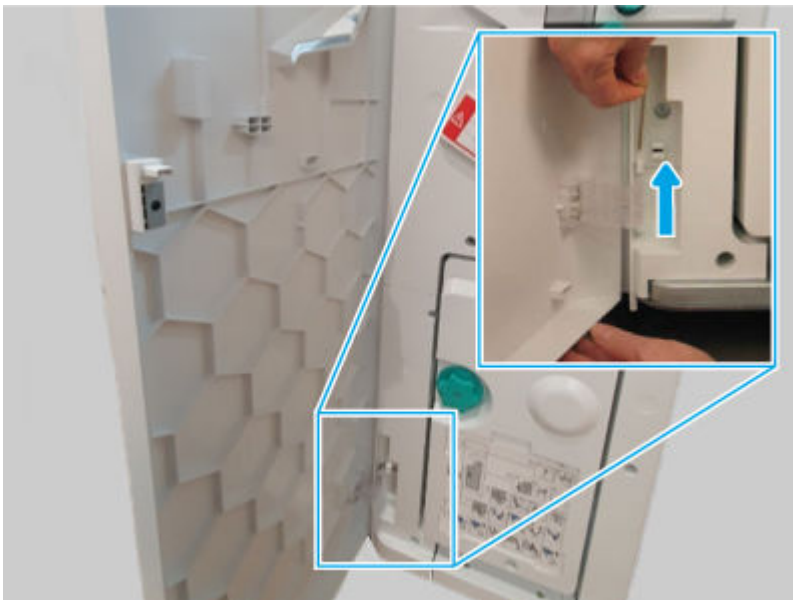
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2260 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2261 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

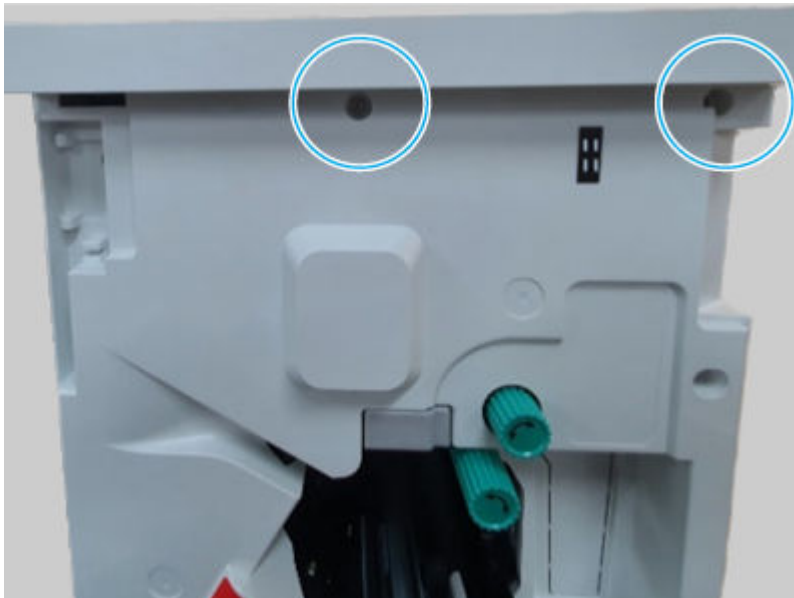
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2262 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2263 Remove the cover

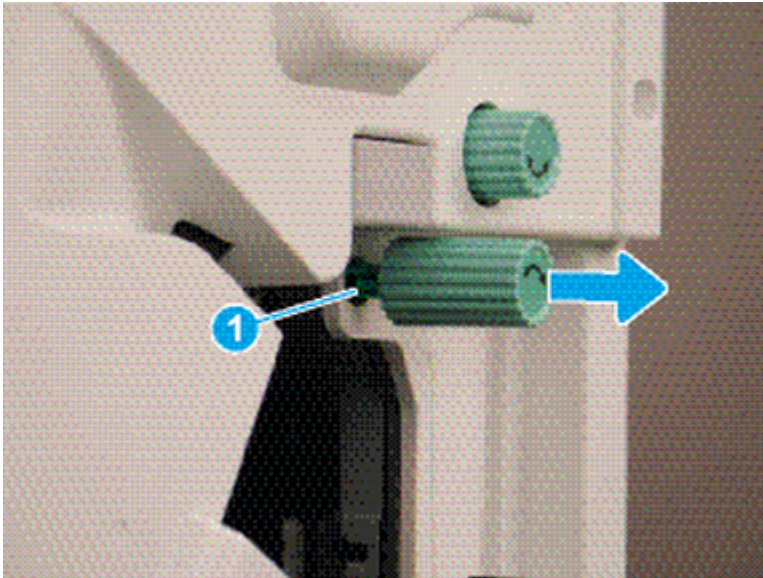


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2264 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2265 Remove the cover

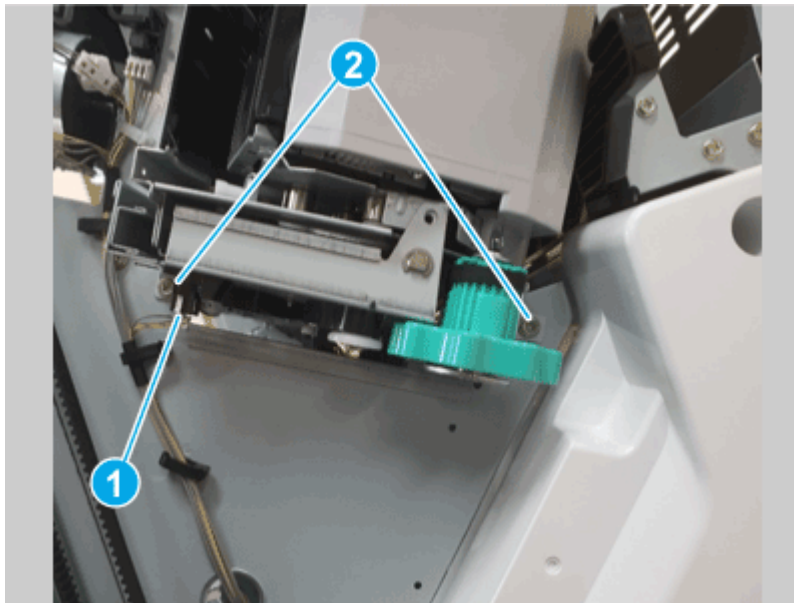


5. Remove the external finisher stapler unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler unit.

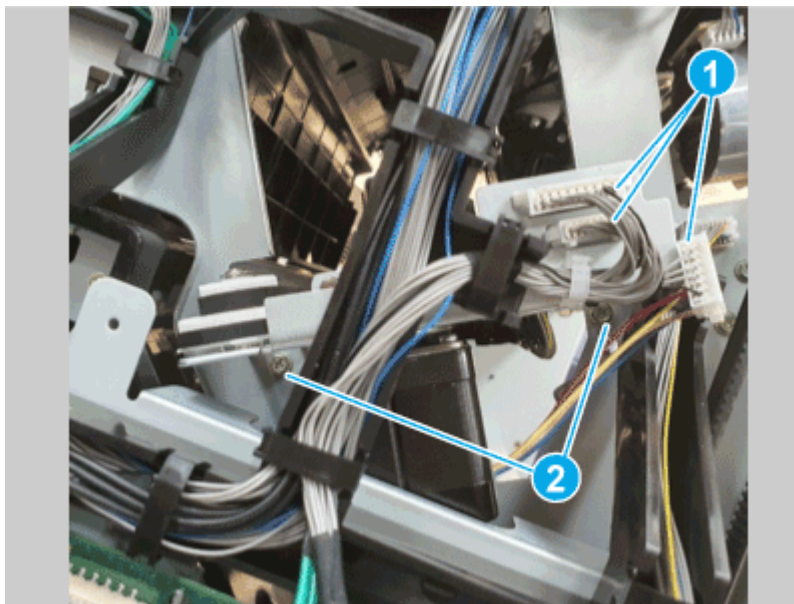
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2266 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler unit.

Figure 6-2267 Remove the unit



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Staple cartridge

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher staple cartridge.


Mean time to repair: 1 minute

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-313 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC81-09882B	Staple cartridge

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher staple unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher staple unit.

- Grasp the blue handle, and then pull the staple cartridge straight out of the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2268 Remove the cartridge



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler front sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher stapler front sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-314 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler front sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

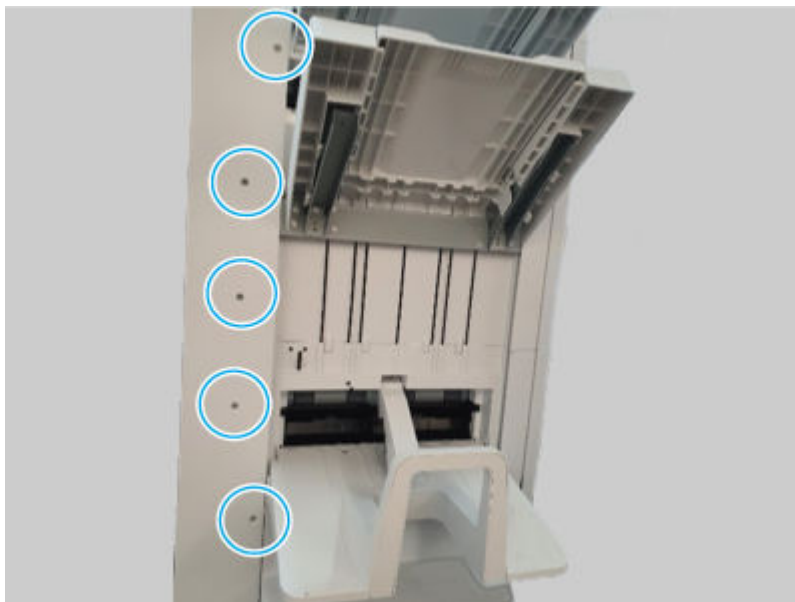
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2269 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


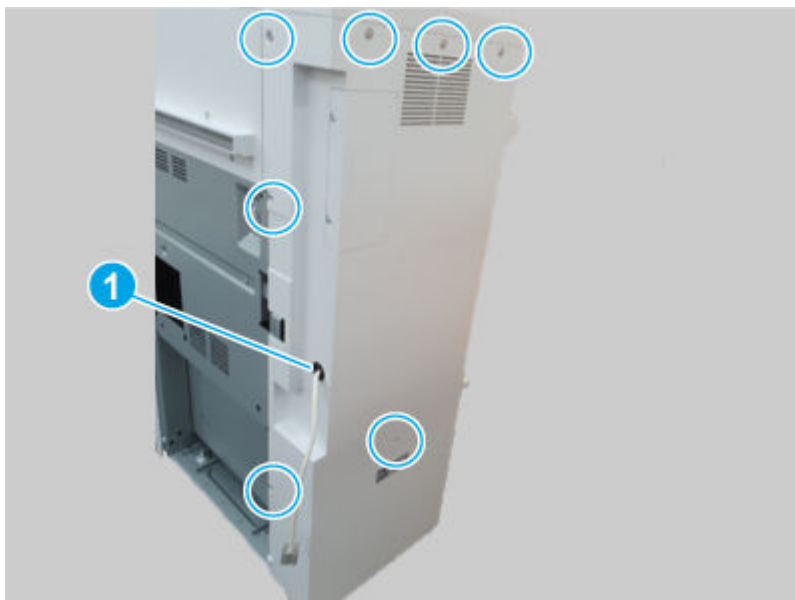
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2270 Remove the cover

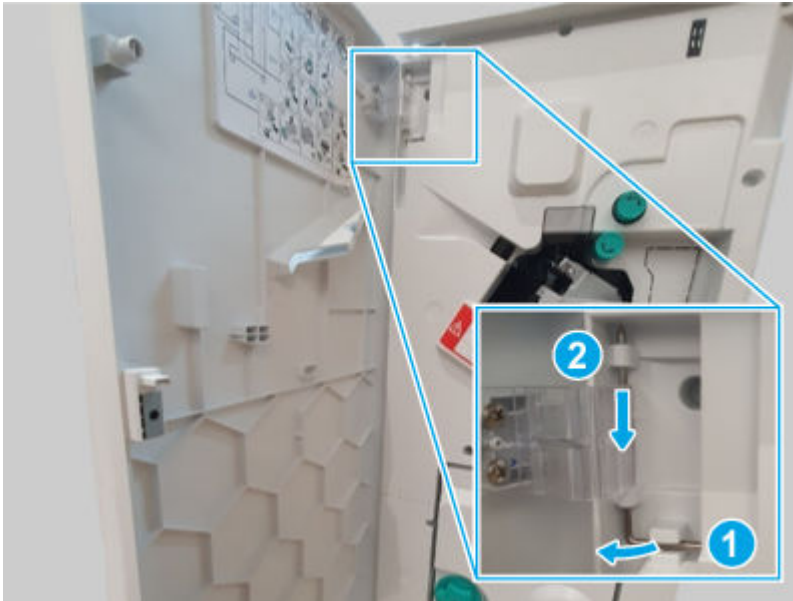


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

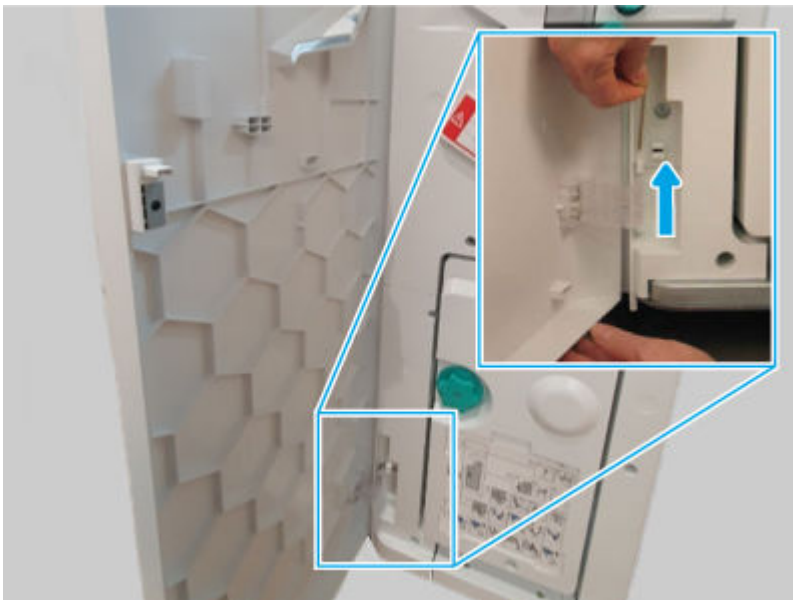
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2271 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2272 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2273 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2274 Remove the cover

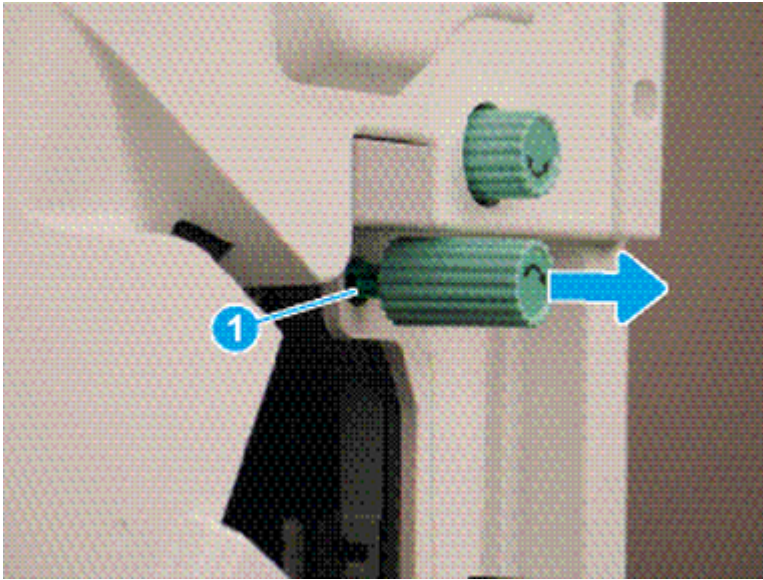


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2275 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2276 Remove the cover

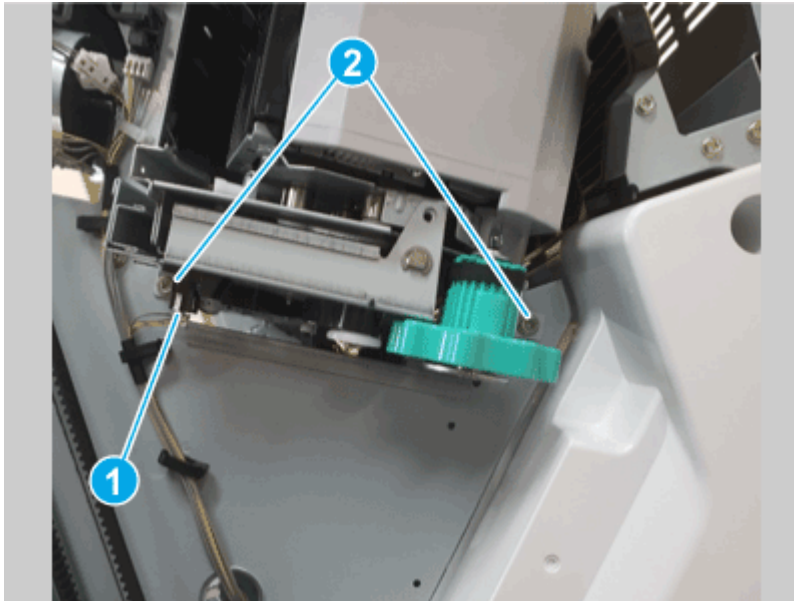


5. Remove the external finisher stapler unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler unit.

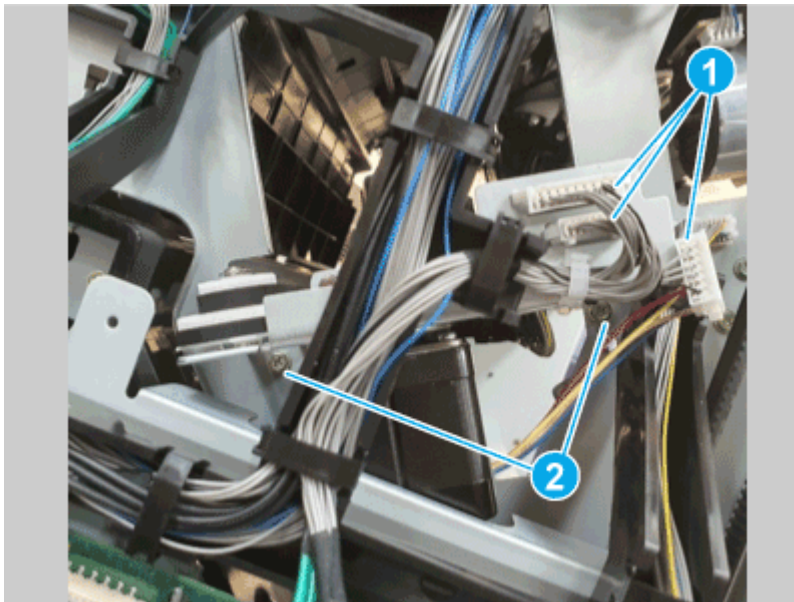
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2277 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler unit.

Figure 6-2278 Remove the unit



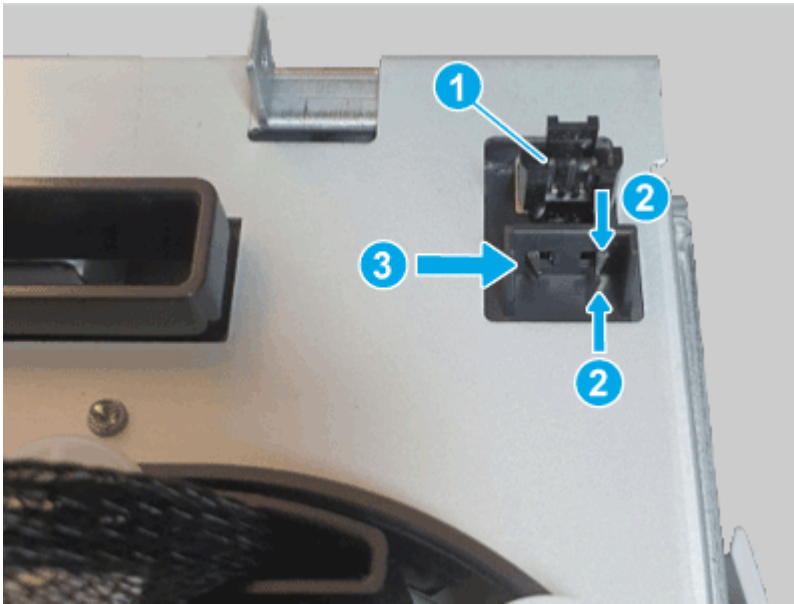
6. Remove the external finisher stapler front sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler front sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).

- Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
- Remove the stapler front sensor.


Figure 6-2279 Remove the sensor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-315 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler mid-front sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler mid-rear sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

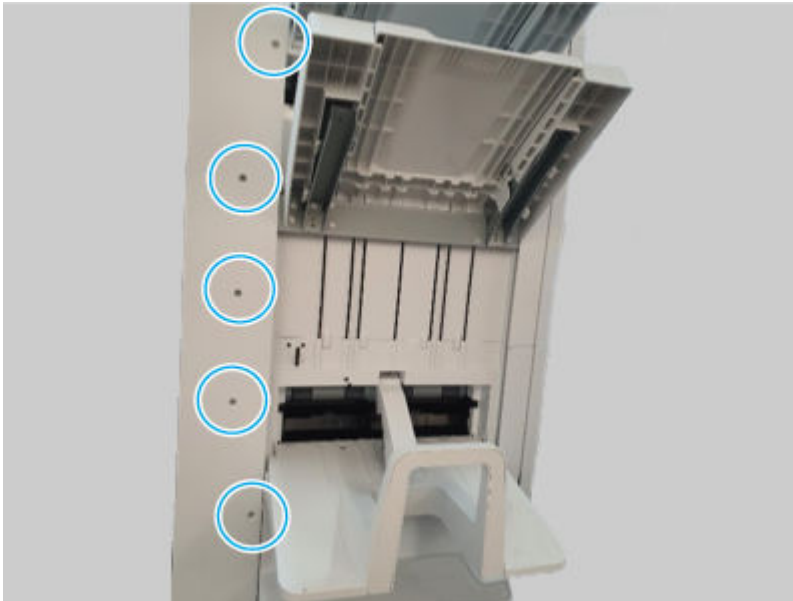
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2280 Remove five screws

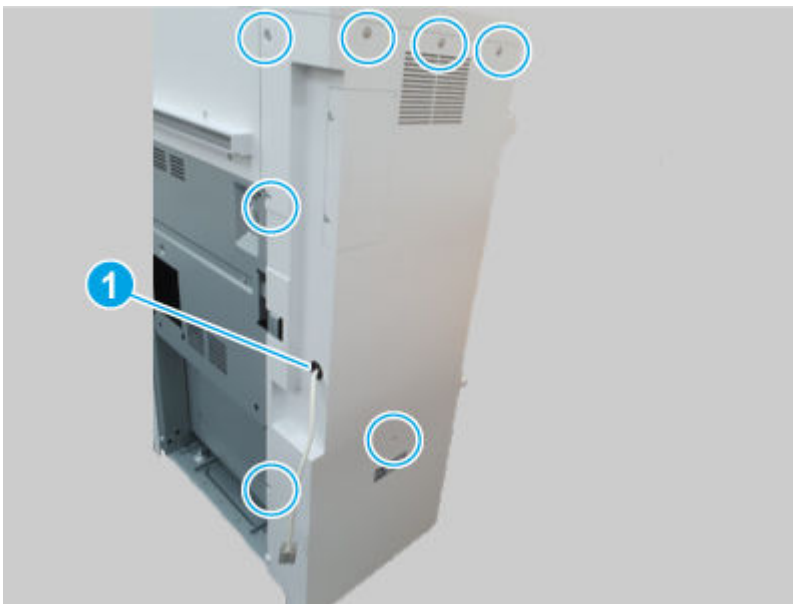


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2281 Remove the cover

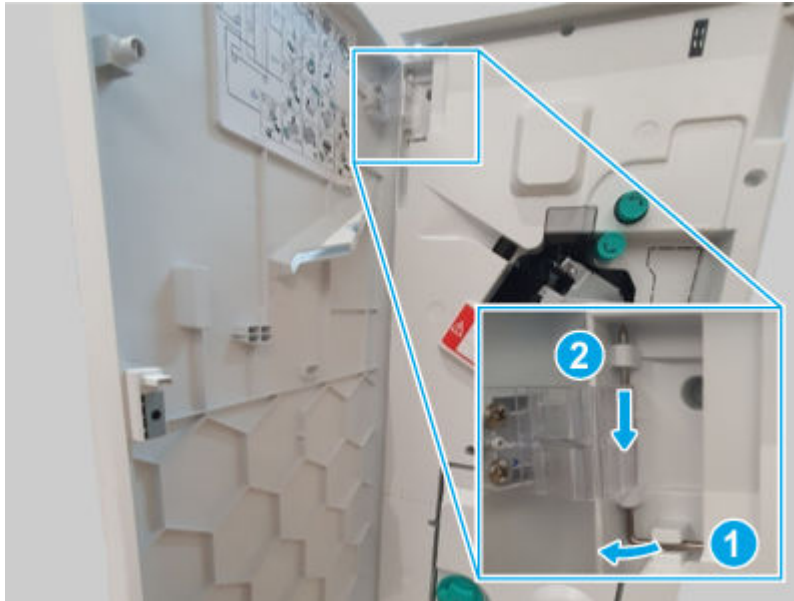


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

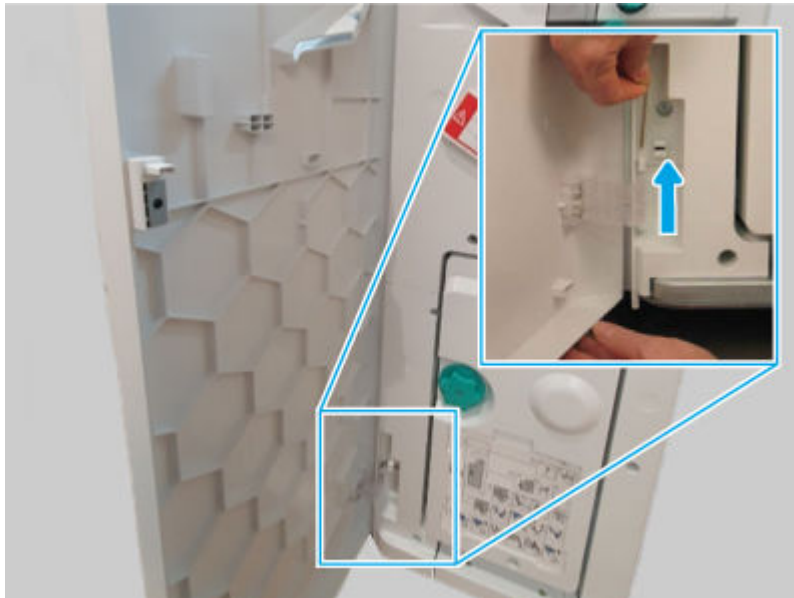
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2282 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2283 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

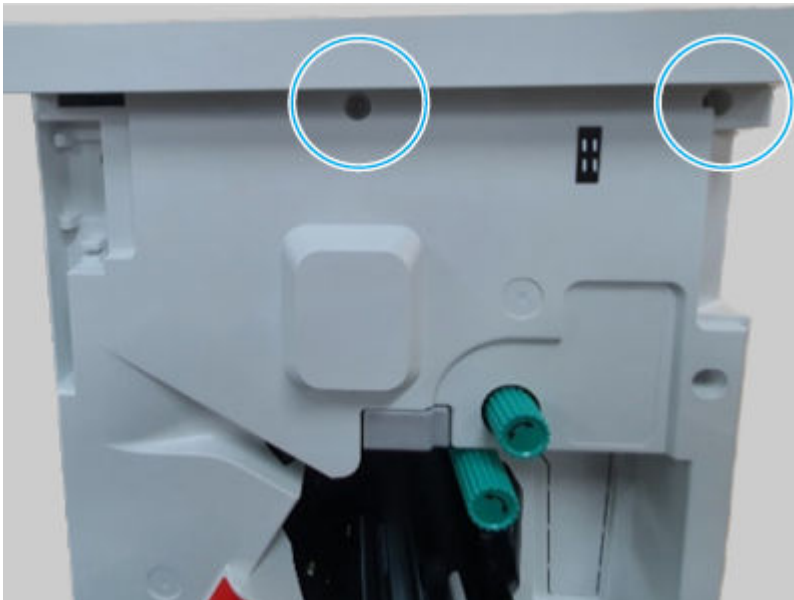
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2284 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2285 Remove the cover

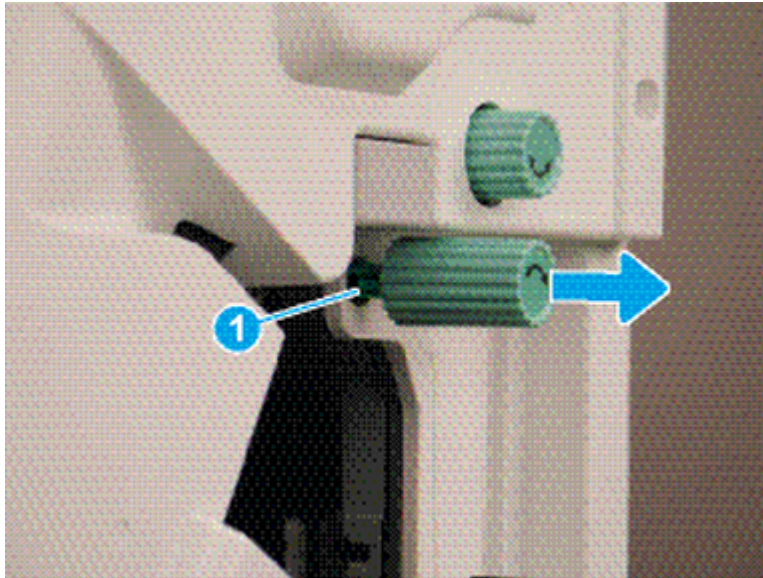


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2286 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2287 Remove the cover

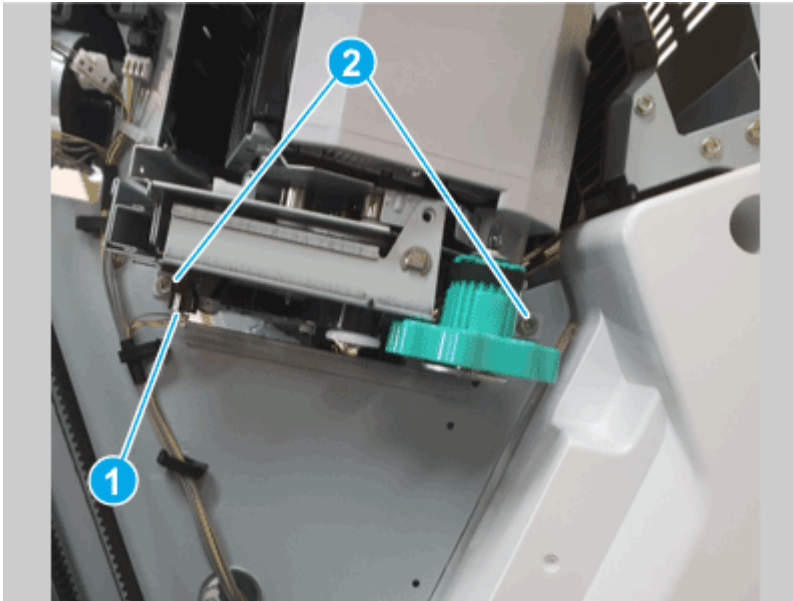


5. Remove the external finisher stapler unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler unit.

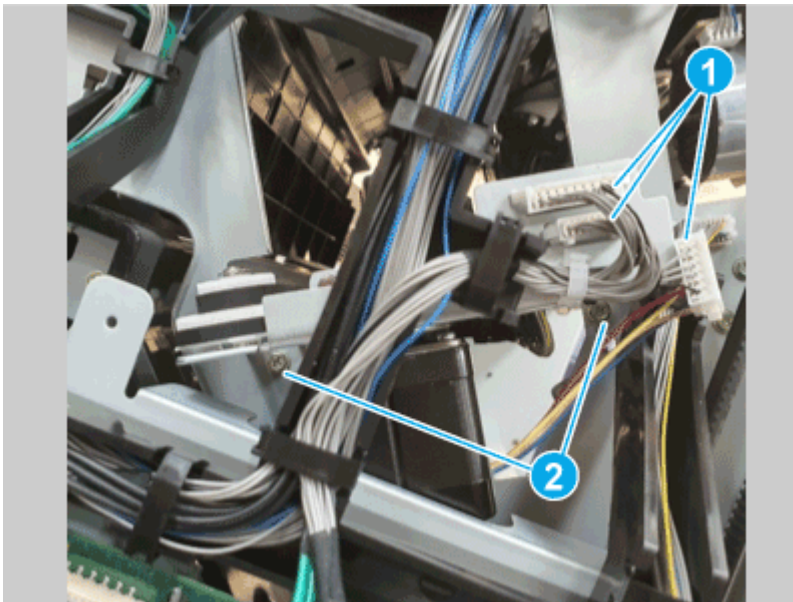
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2288 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler unit.

Figure 6-2289 Remove the unit



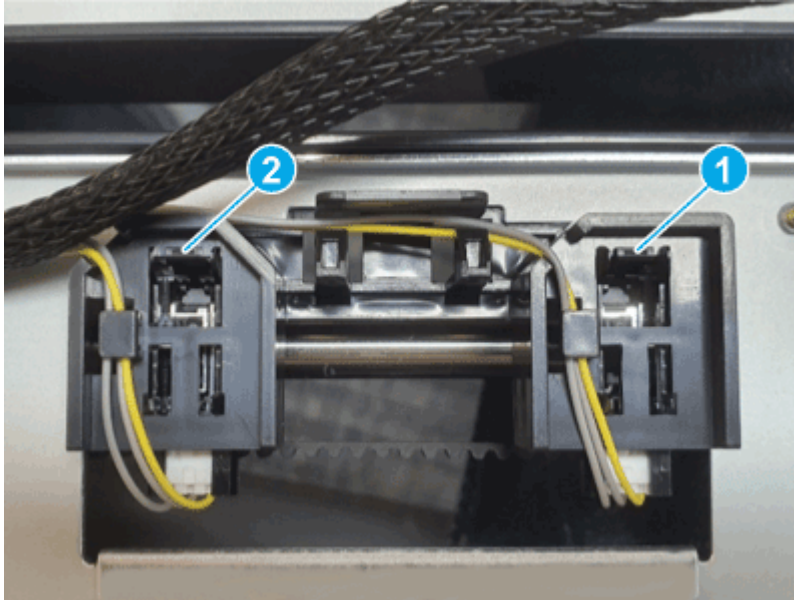
6. Remove the external finisher stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors.

1. Locate the desired sensor.
 - **Callout 1:** Mid-front sensor

- **Callout 2:** Mid-rear sensor

Figure 6-2290 Locate the sensors



2. Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the stapler mid-front sensor.


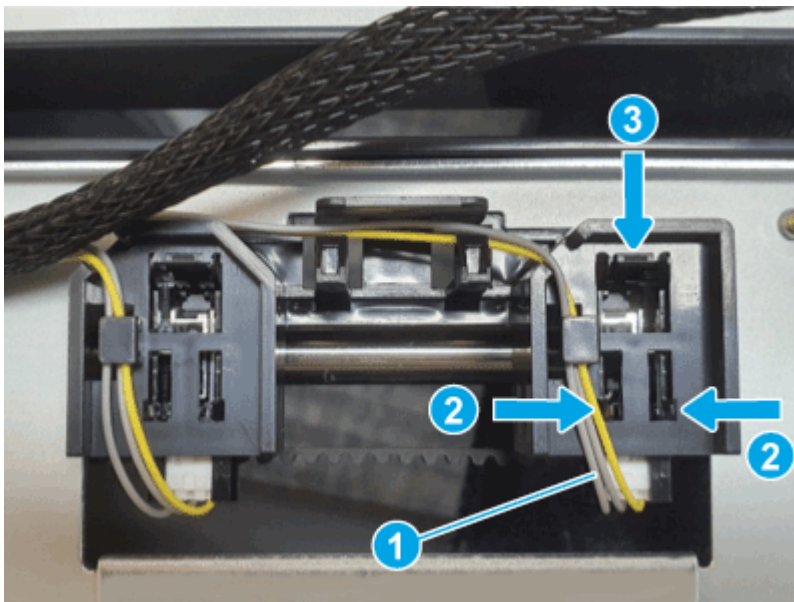
 **NOTE:** Repeat this step to remove the stapler mid-rear sensor if necessary.

Figure 6-2291 Remove the sensor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Manual staple sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher manual staple sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-316 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler manual staple sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

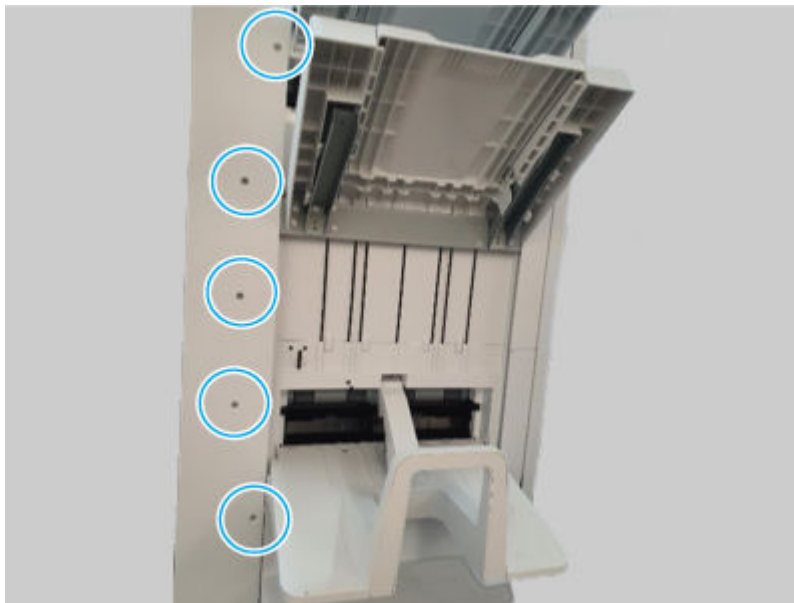
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2292 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2293 Remove the cover

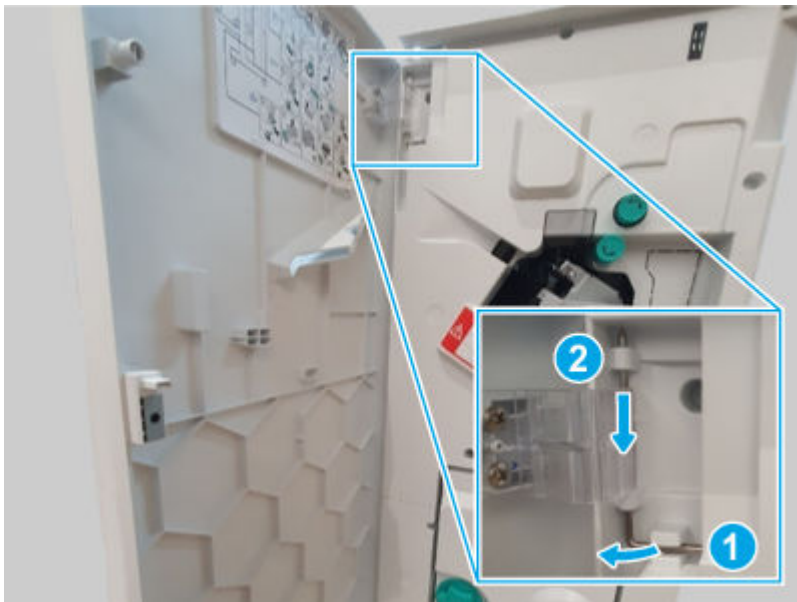


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

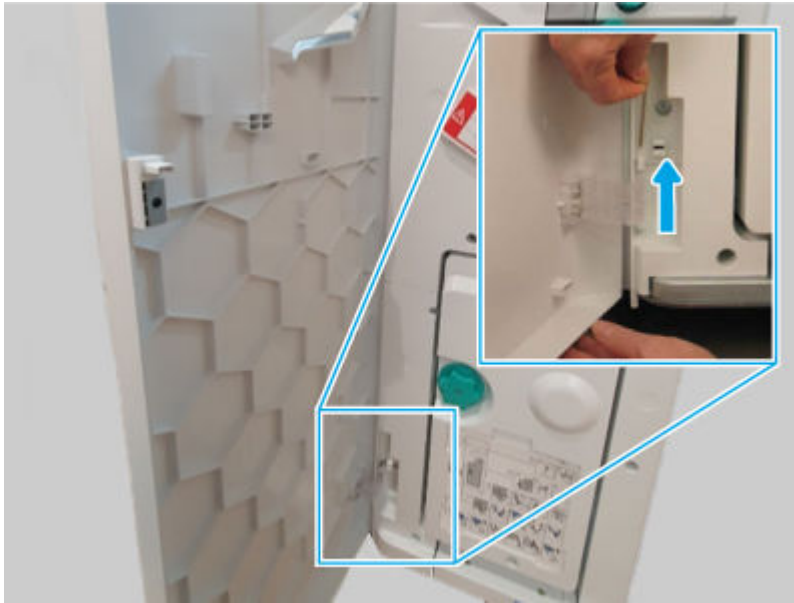
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2294 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2295 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

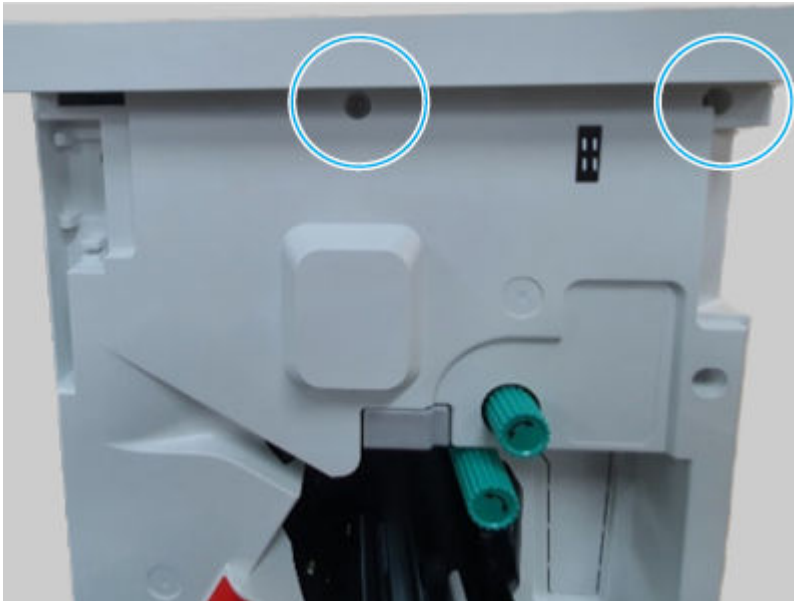
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2296 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2297 Remove the cover

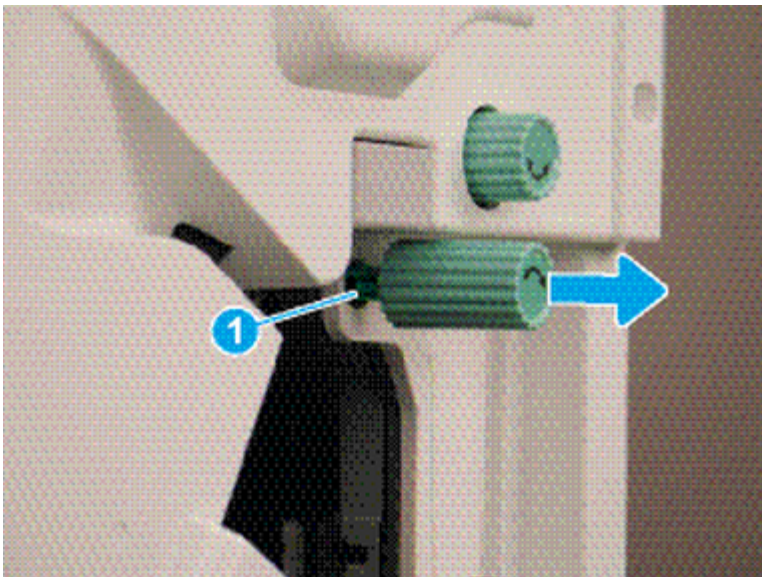


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2298 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2299 Remove the cover

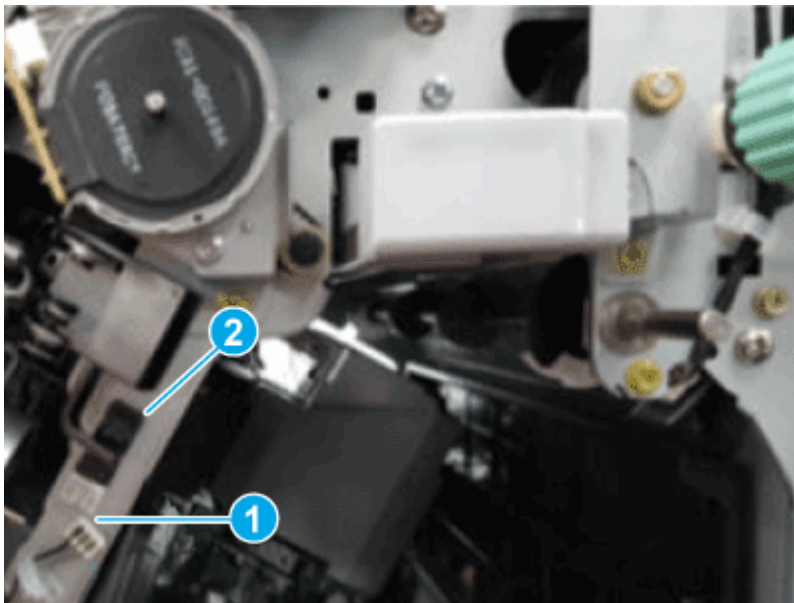


5. Remove the external finisher manual staple sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher manual staple sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the manual staple sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-2300 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler position motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher stapler position motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-317 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00163A	Motor, step (Stapler position motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

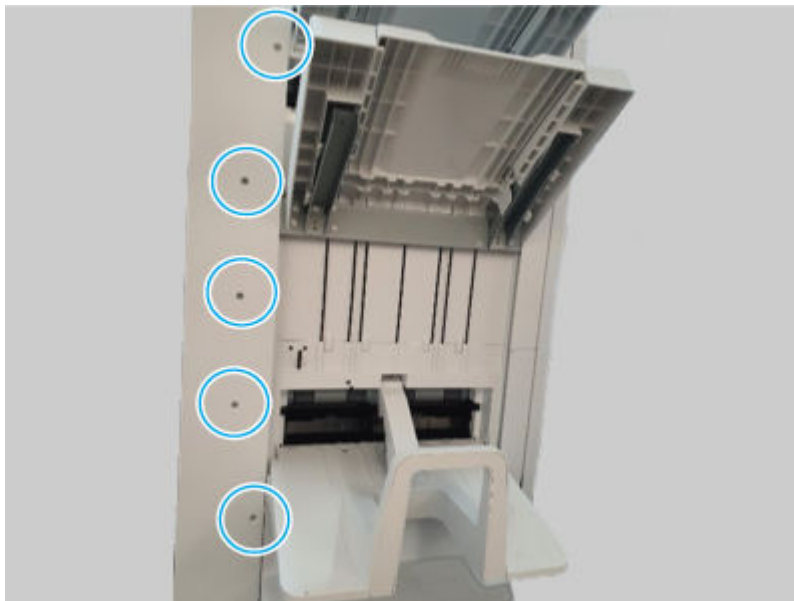
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2301 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


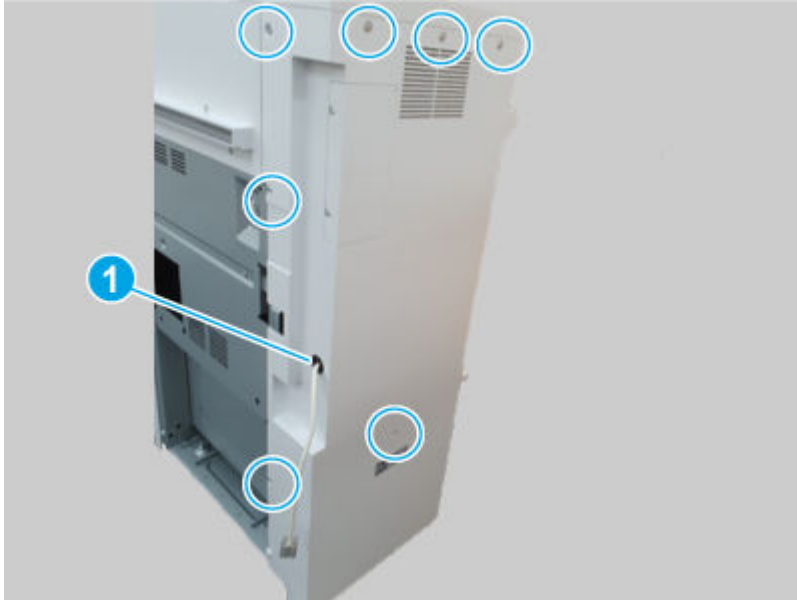
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2302 Remove the cover

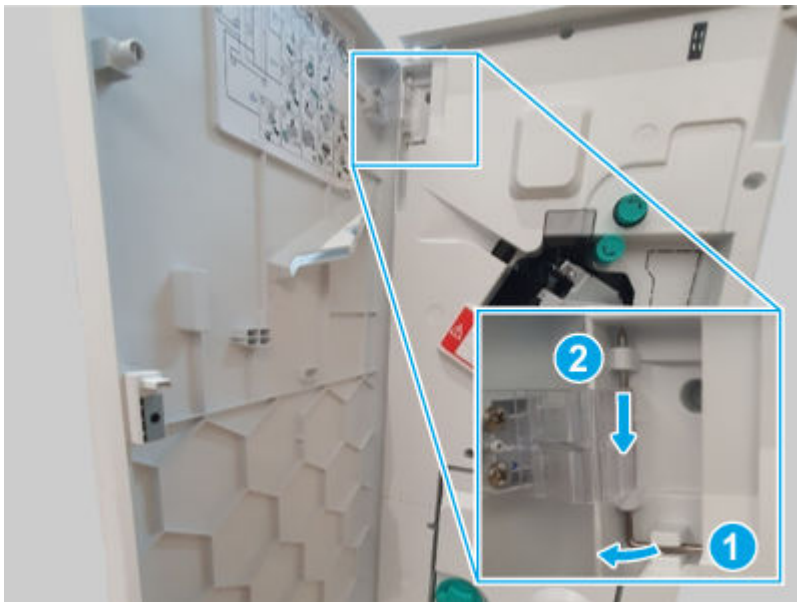


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

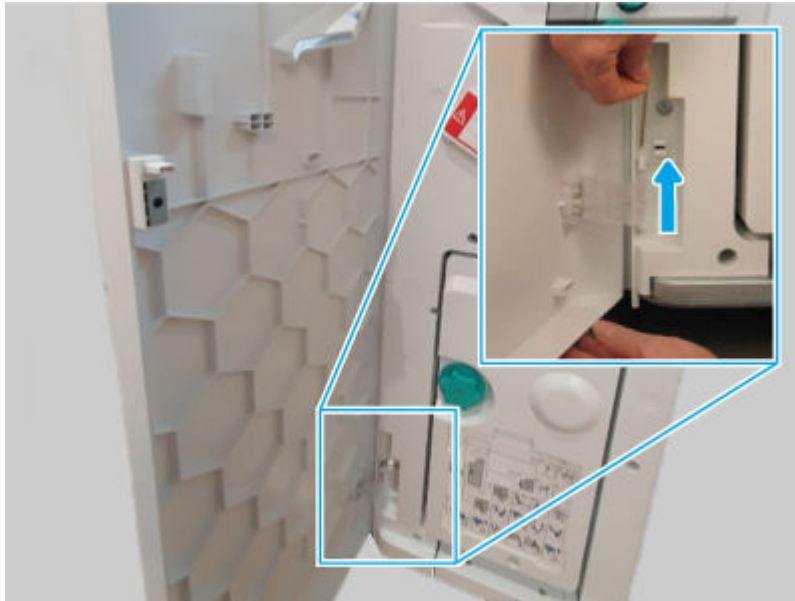
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2303 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2304 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

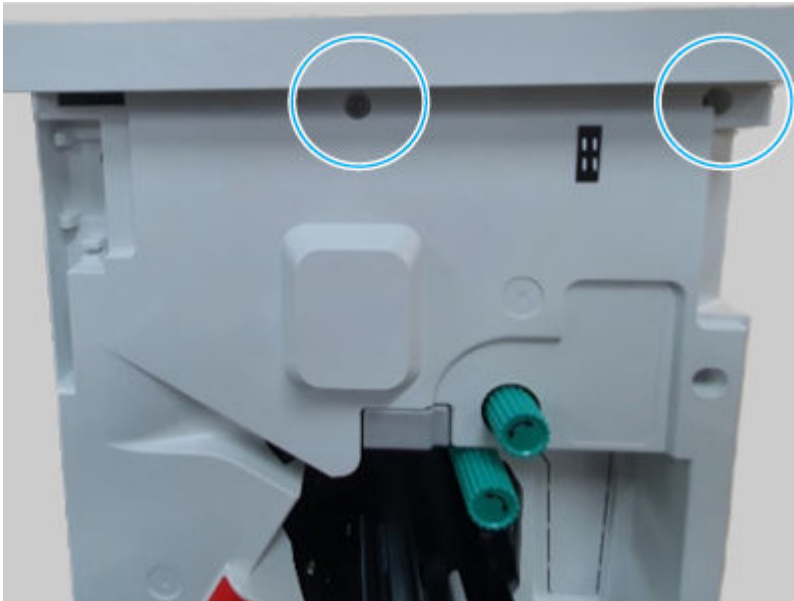
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2305 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2306 Remove the cover

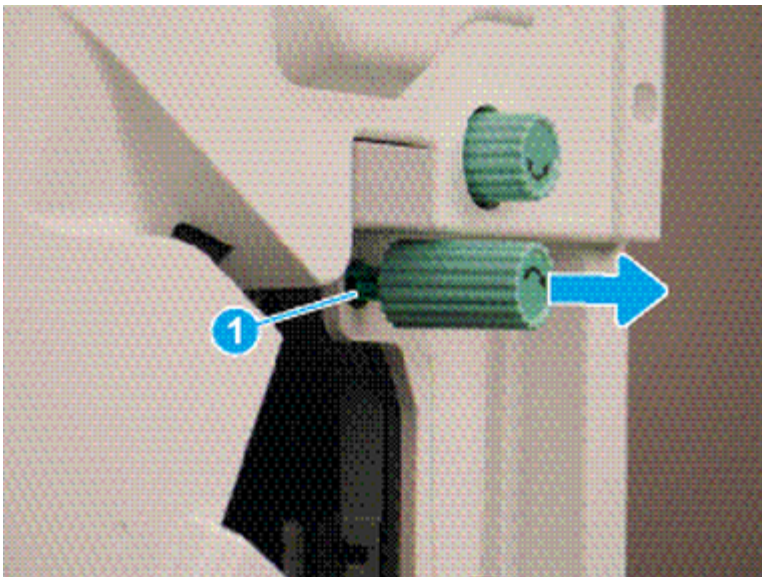


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2307 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2308 Remove the cover

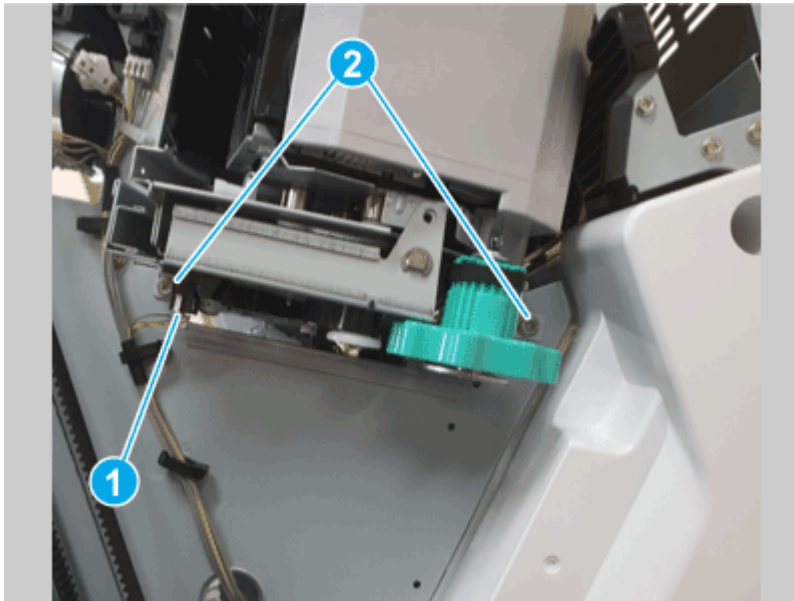


5. Remove the external finisher stapler unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler unit.

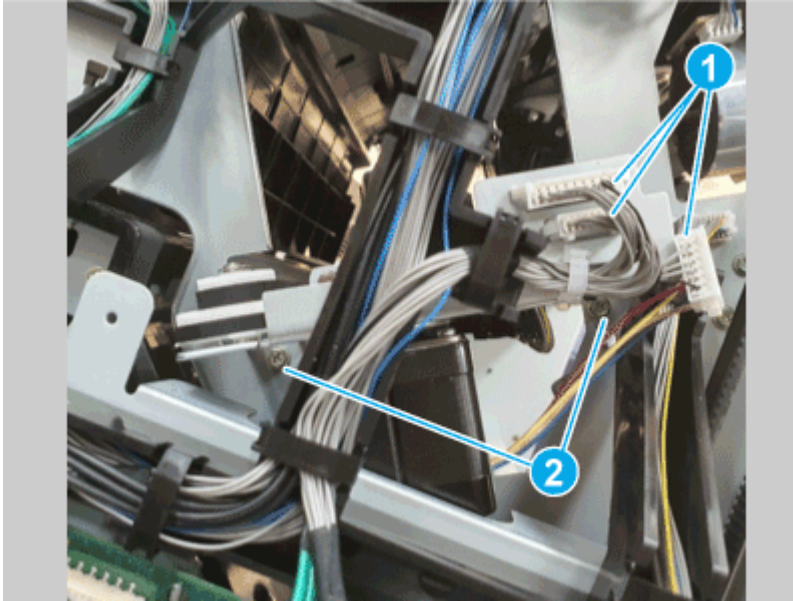
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2309 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler unit.

Figure 6-2310 Remove the unit

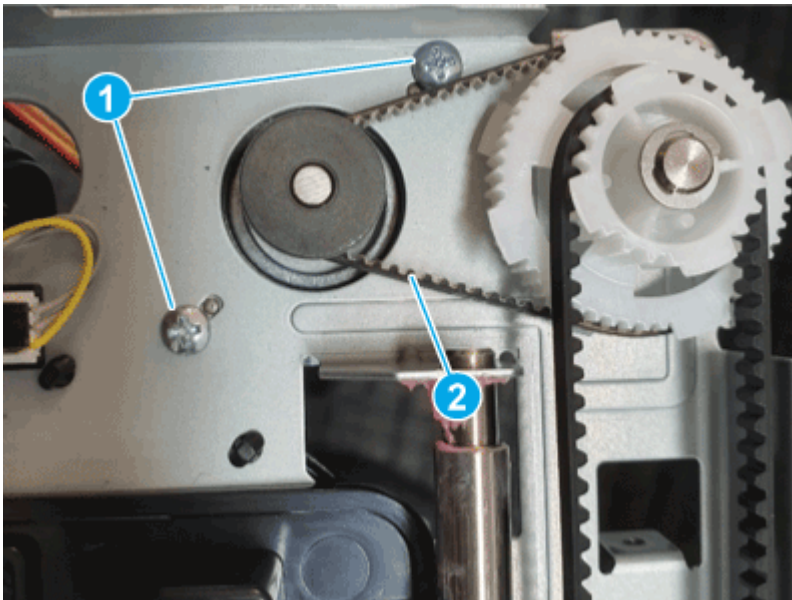


6. Remove the external finisher stapler position motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler position motor.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), release the belt (callout 2), and then remove the stapler position motor.

Figure 6-2311 Remove the motor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector unit

Review the external finisher ejector unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Ejector unit

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher ejector unit.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-318 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01802A	Ejector unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

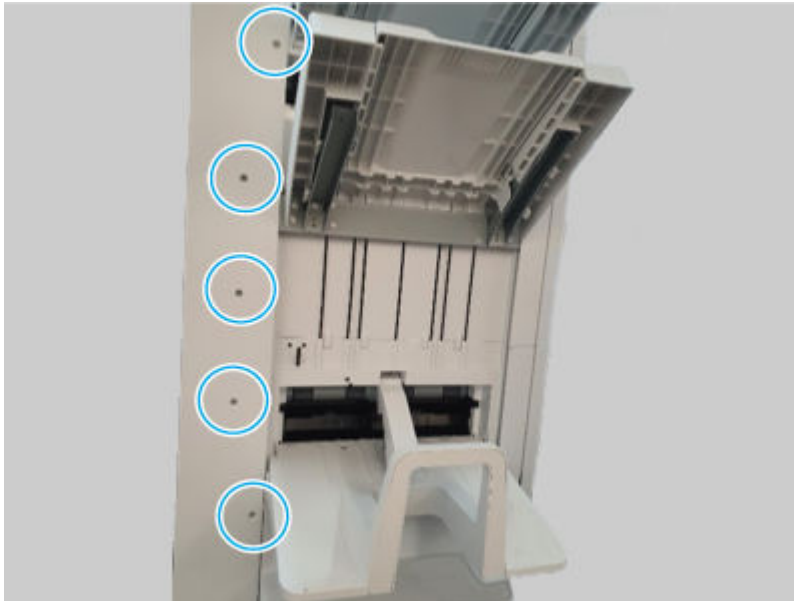
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2312 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


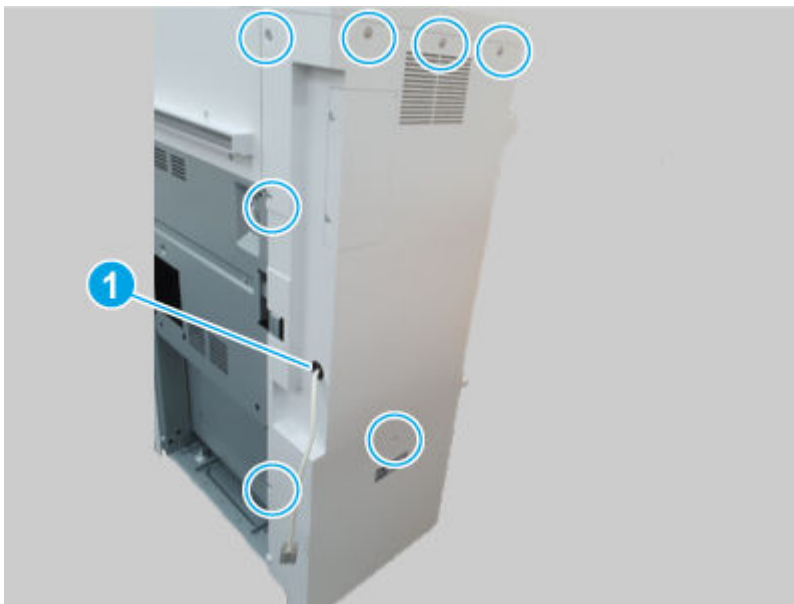
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2313 Remove the cover

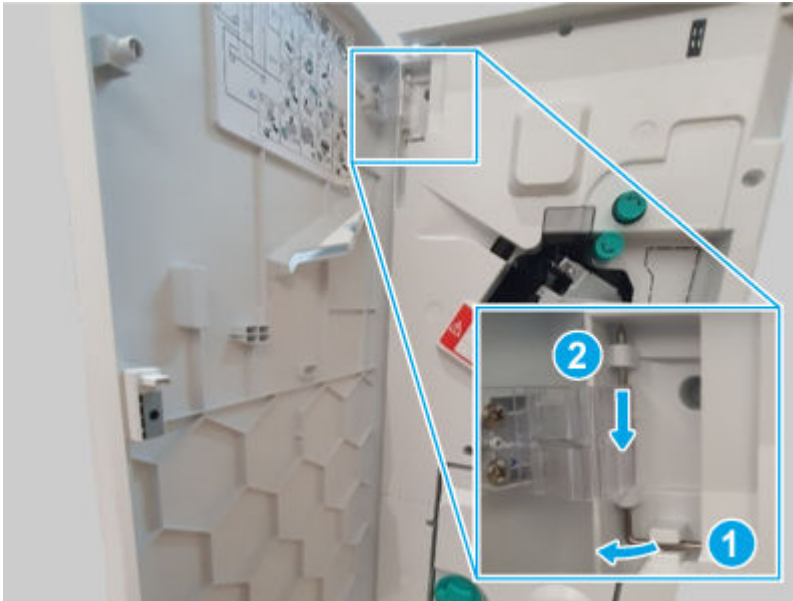


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

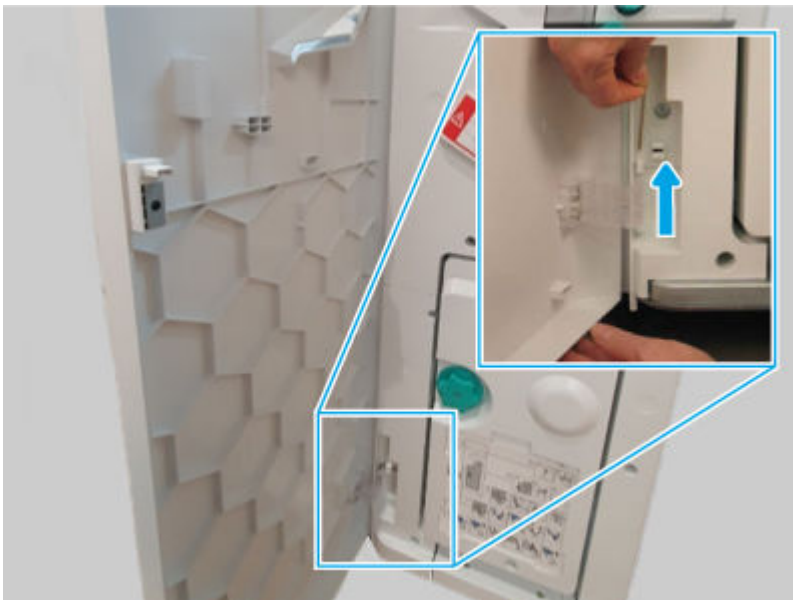
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2314 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2315 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

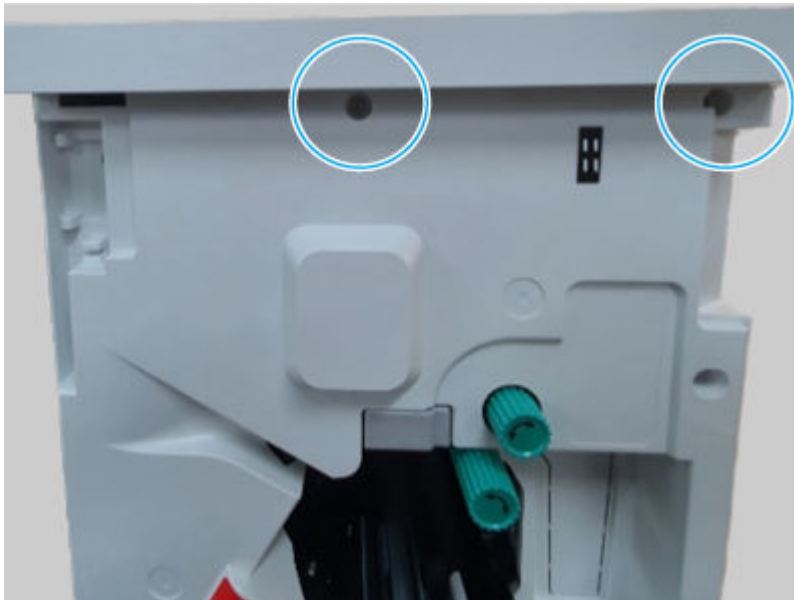
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2316 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2317 Remove the cover

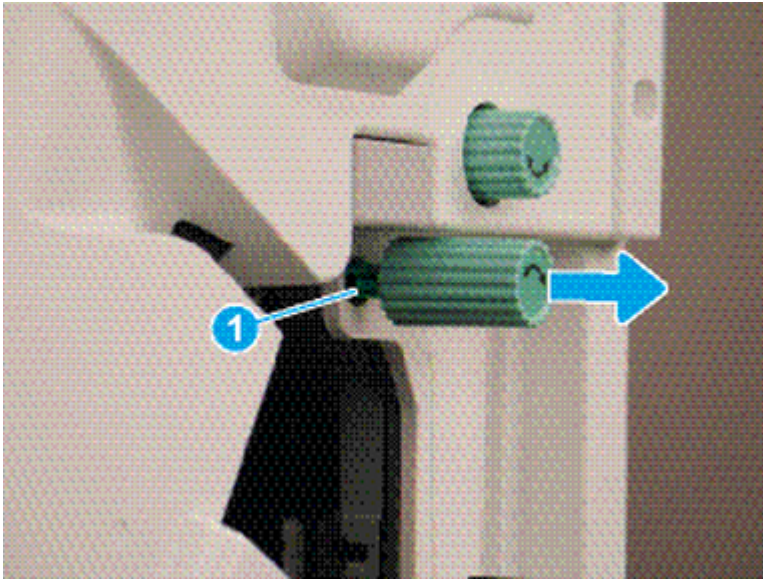


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2318 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2319 Remove the cover



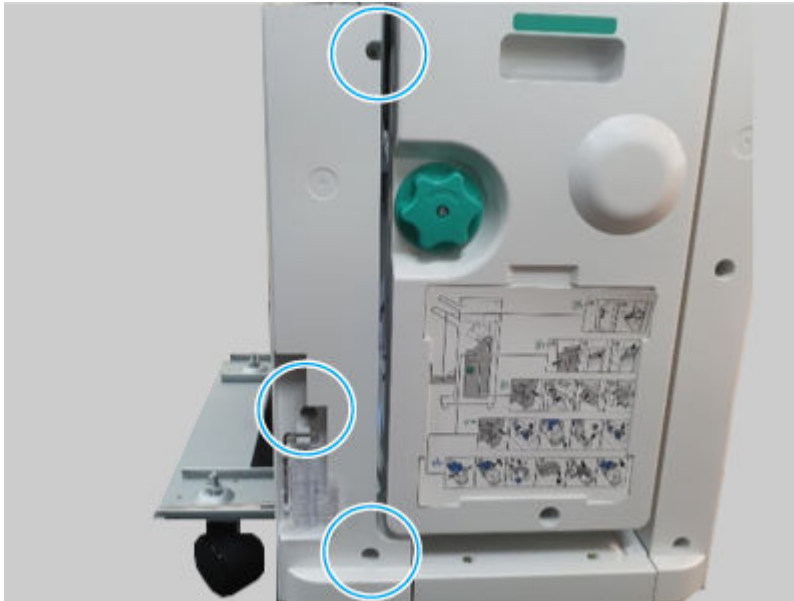
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2320 Remove the cover



6. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

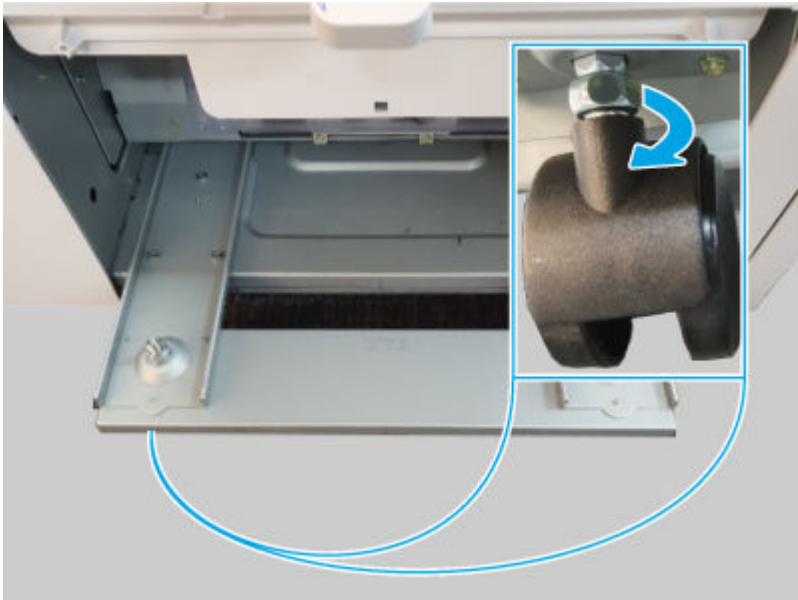
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2321 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2322 Remove the caster

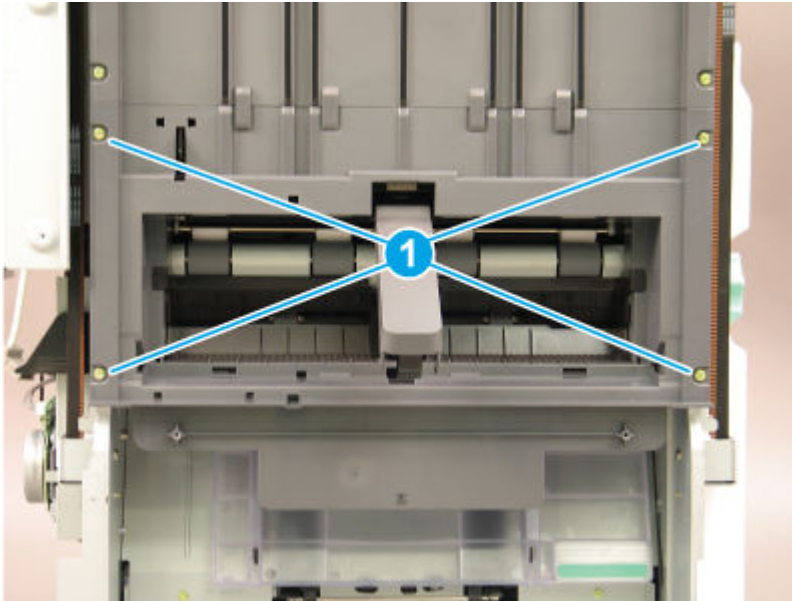


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2323 Remove four screws

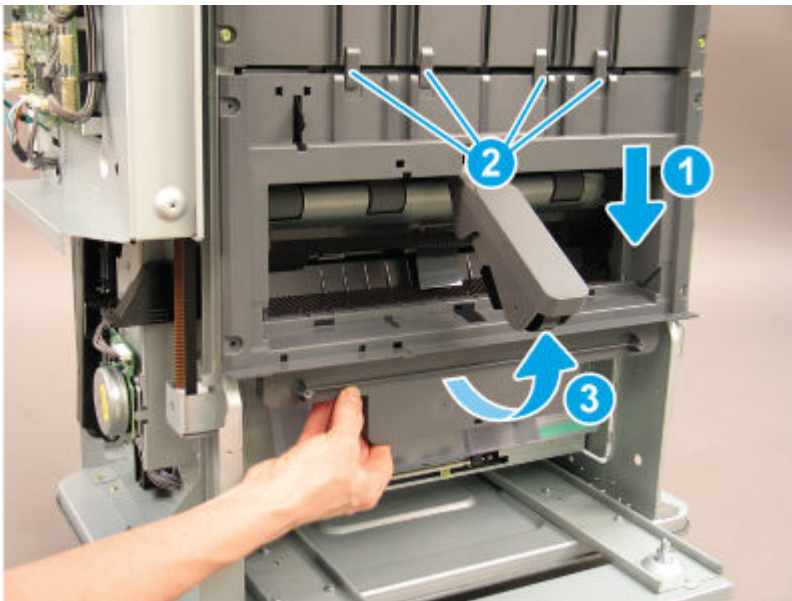


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

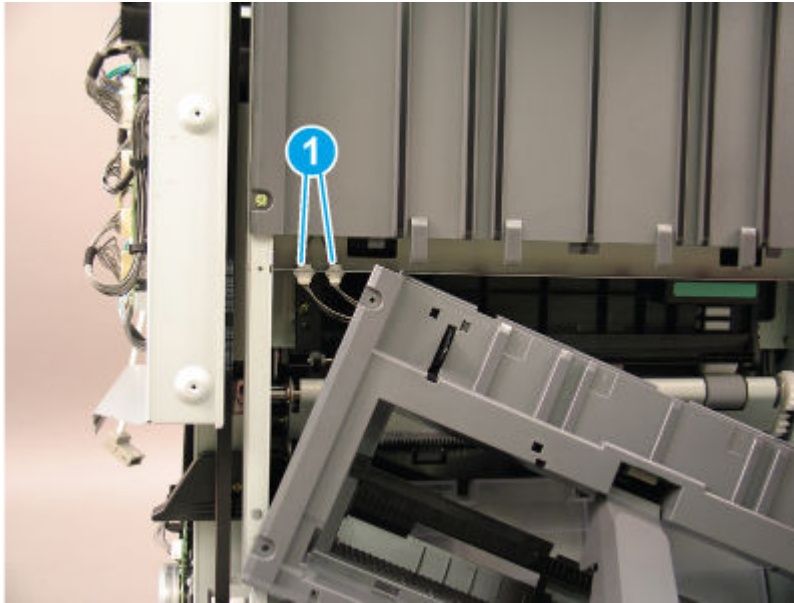
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2324 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2325 Remove the cover

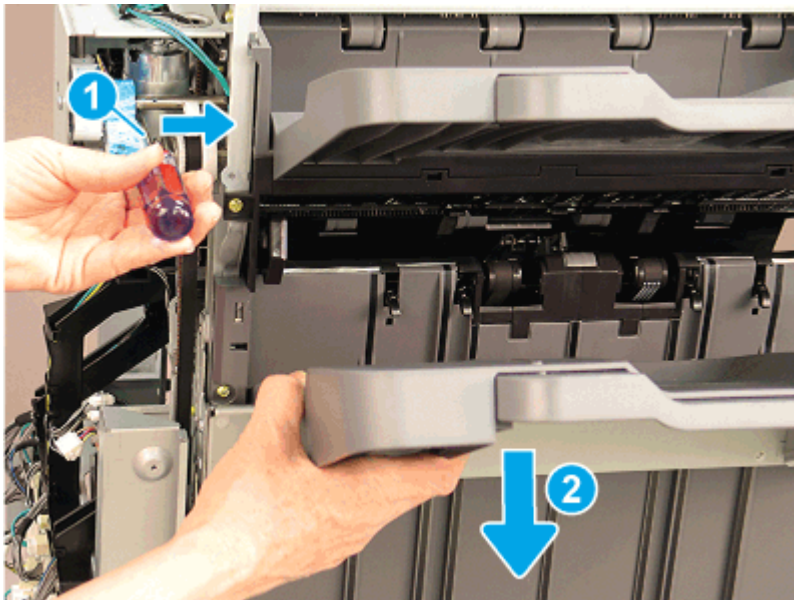


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

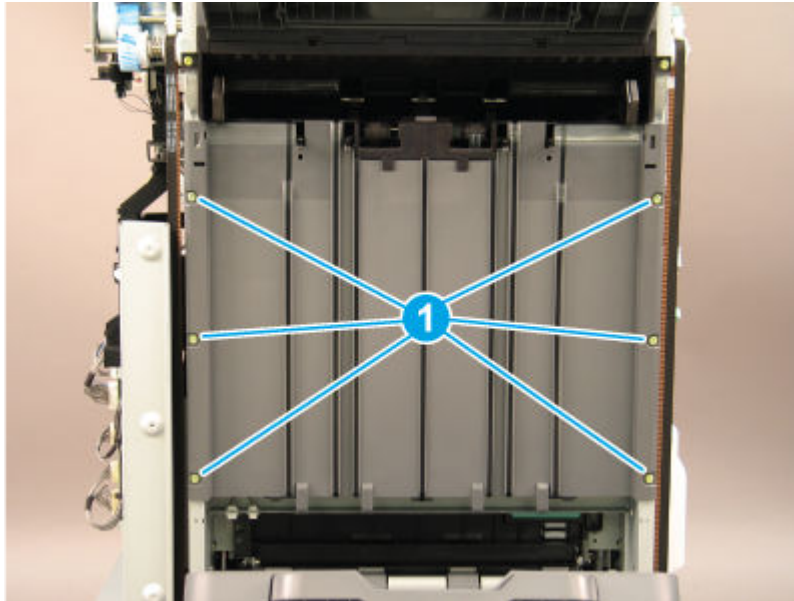
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2326 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2327 Remove six screws

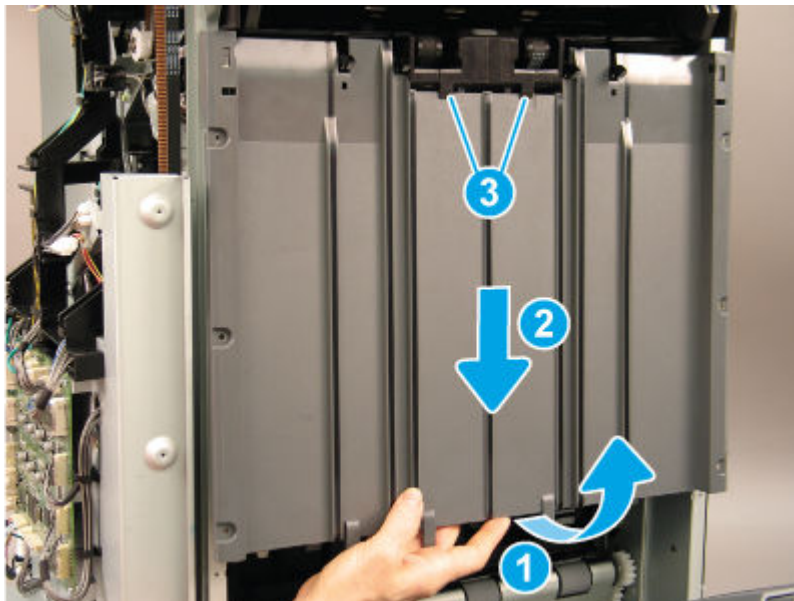


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

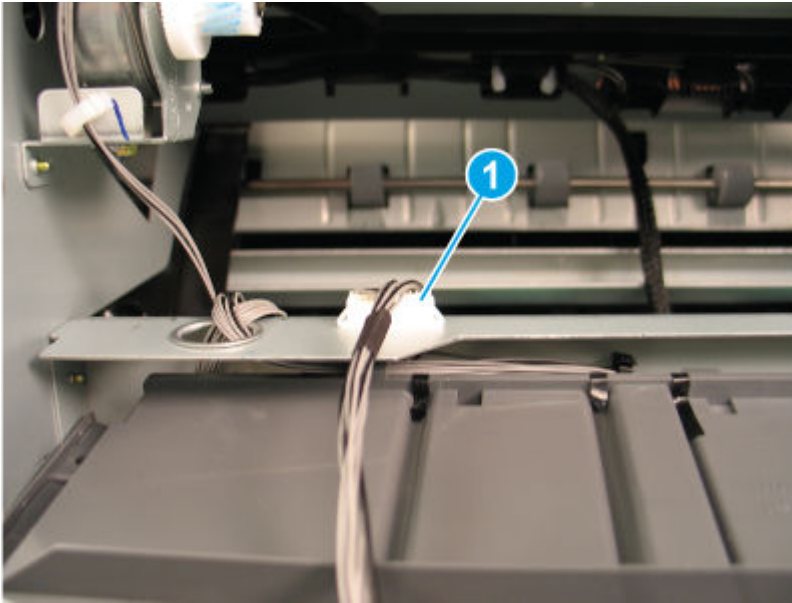
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2328 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2329 Remove the cover



9. Remove the external finisher ejector unit

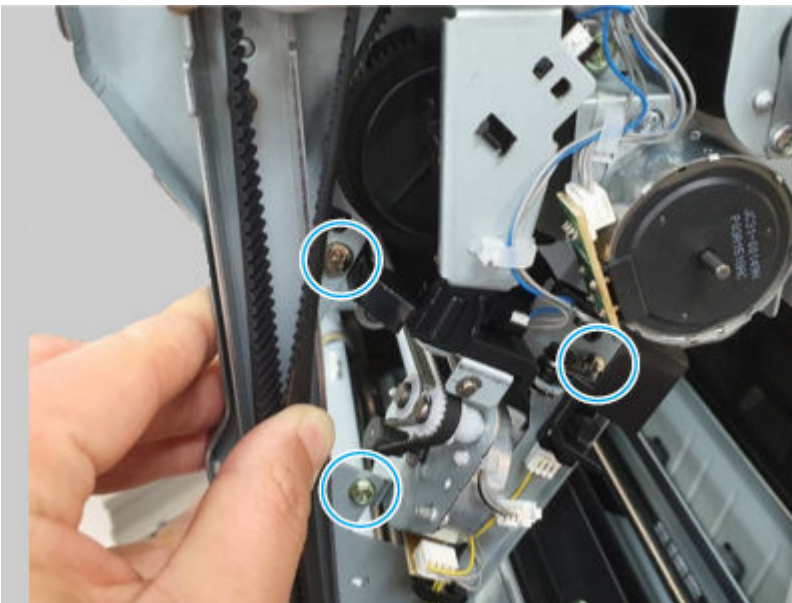
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.



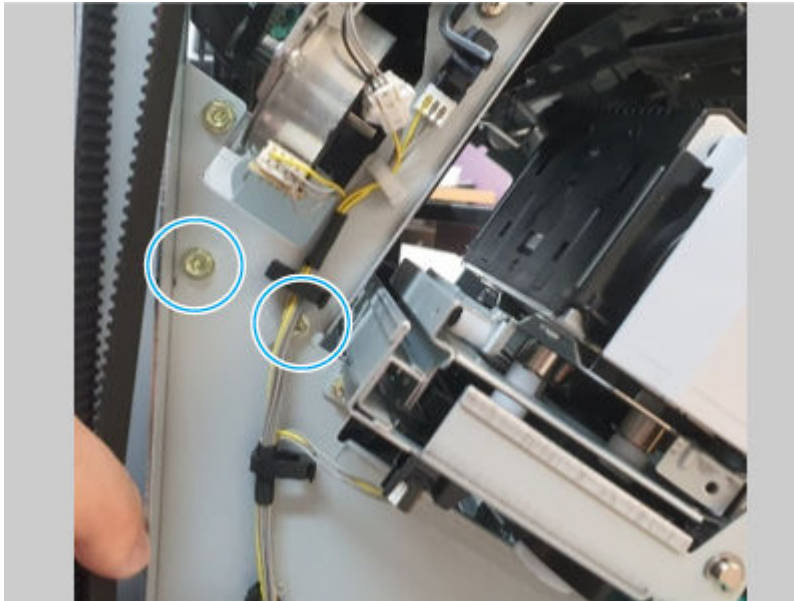
NOTE: Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2330 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-2331 Remove two screws

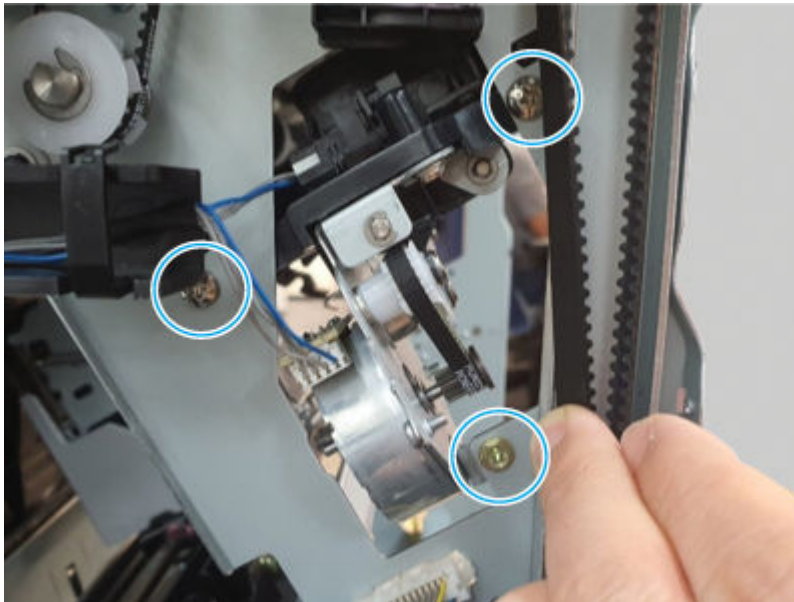


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2332 Release the tamper



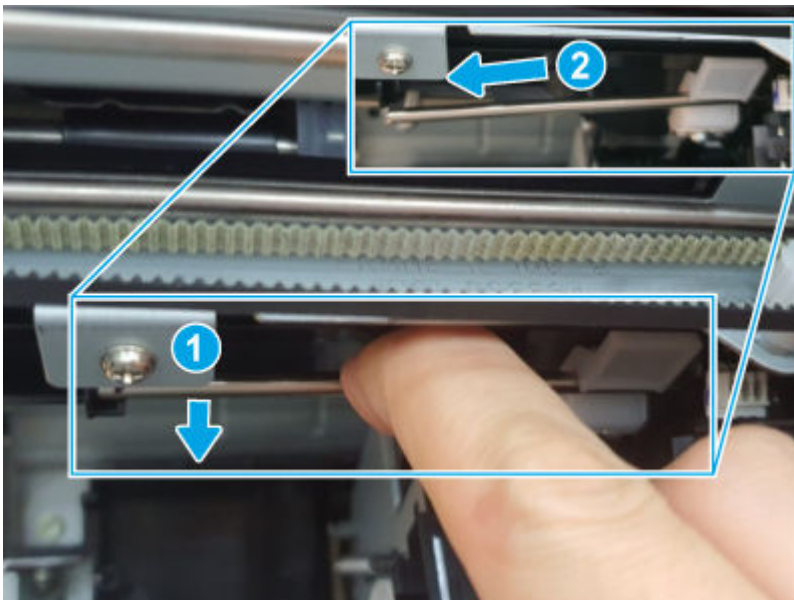
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-2333 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-2334 Remove the shaft

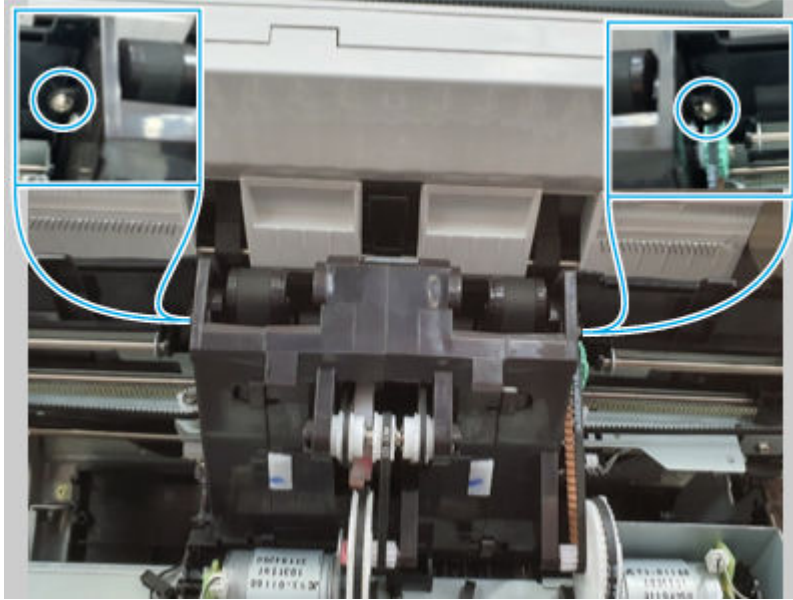


6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.



NOTE: Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-2335 Remove the unit



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher ejector sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-319 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Sensor-RP (Ejector sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

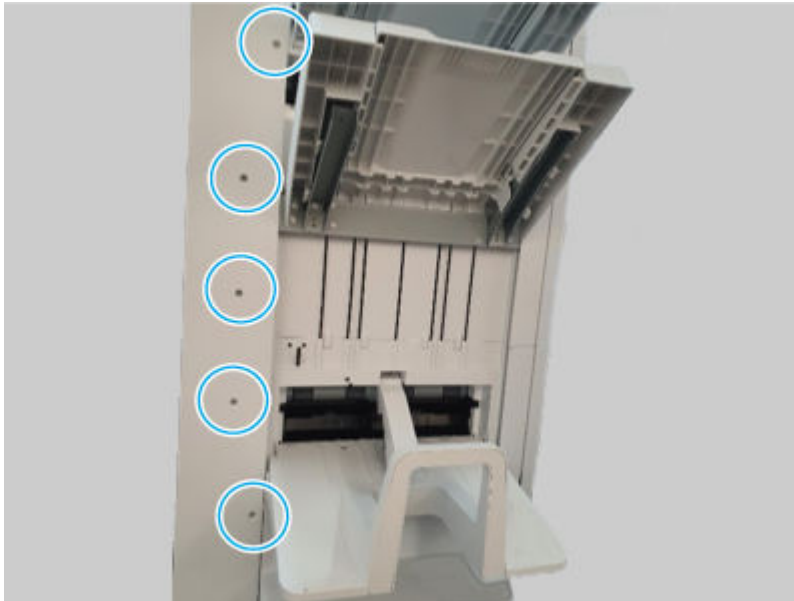
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2336 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


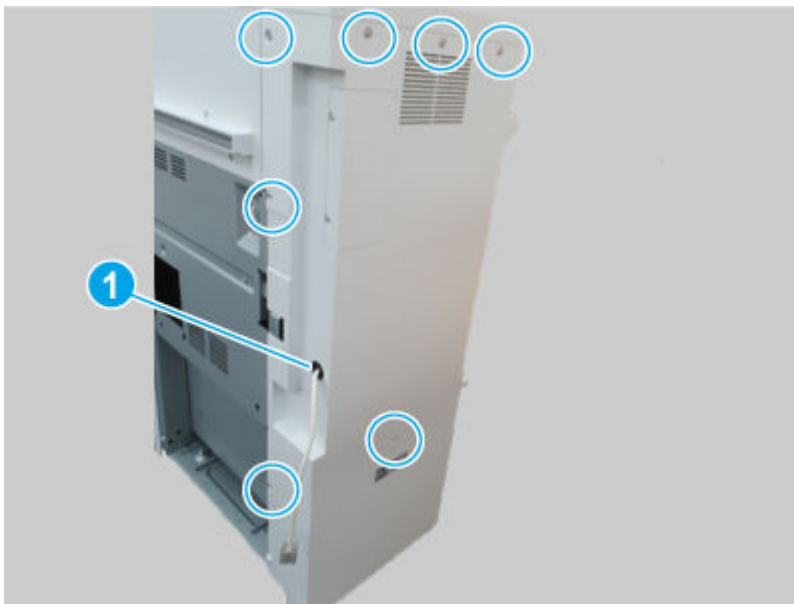
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2337 Remove the cover

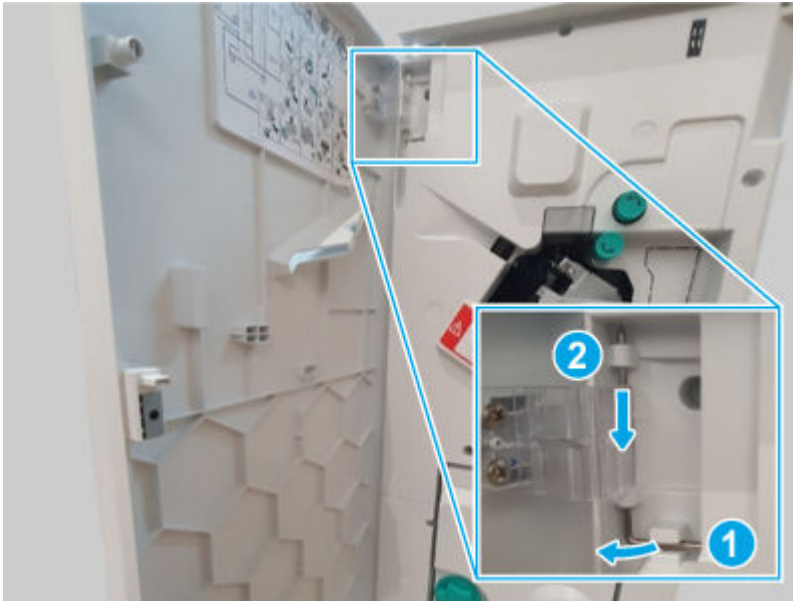


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

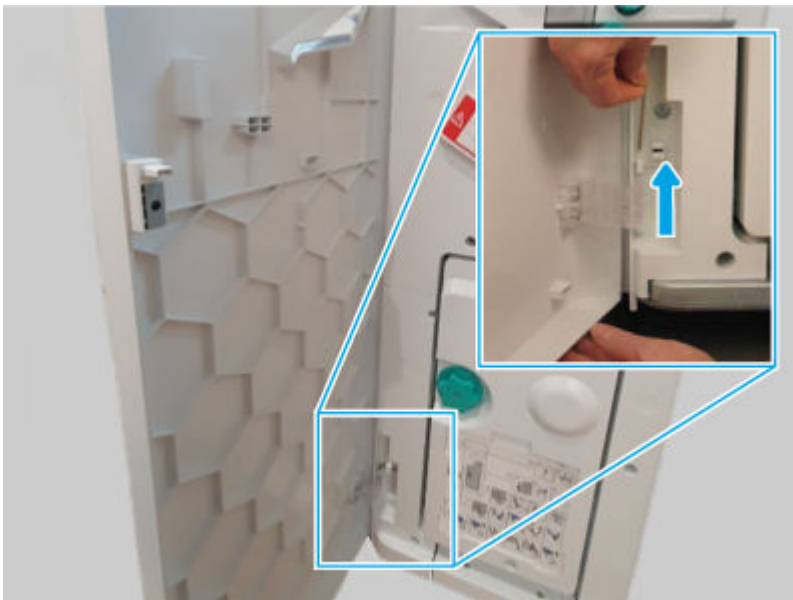
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2338 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2339 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

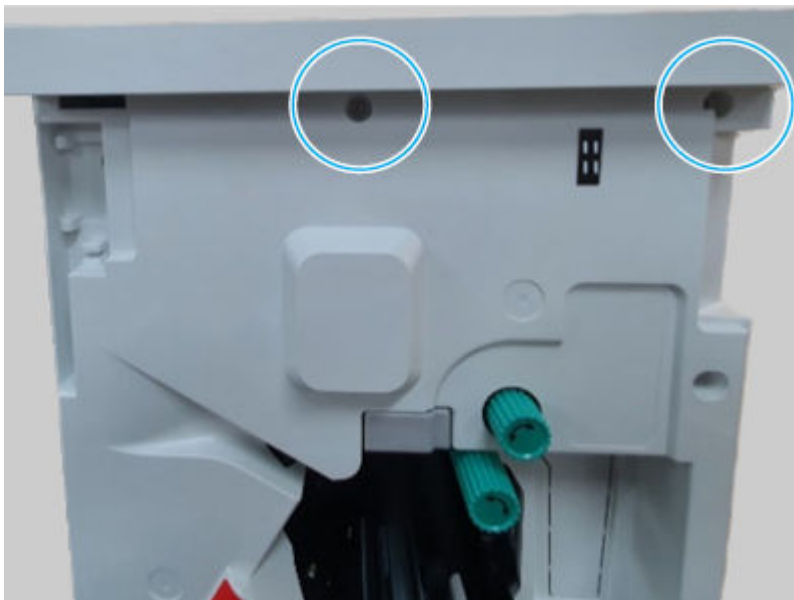
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2340 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2341 Remove the cover

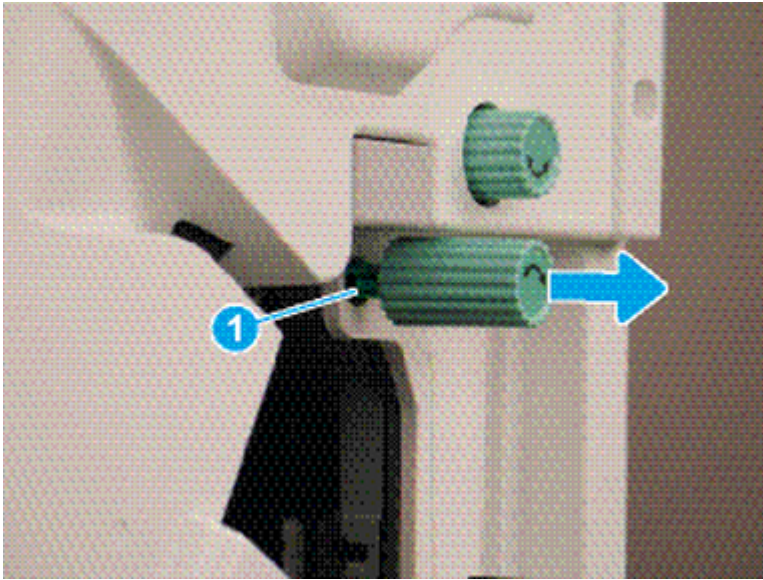


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2342 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2343 Remove the cover



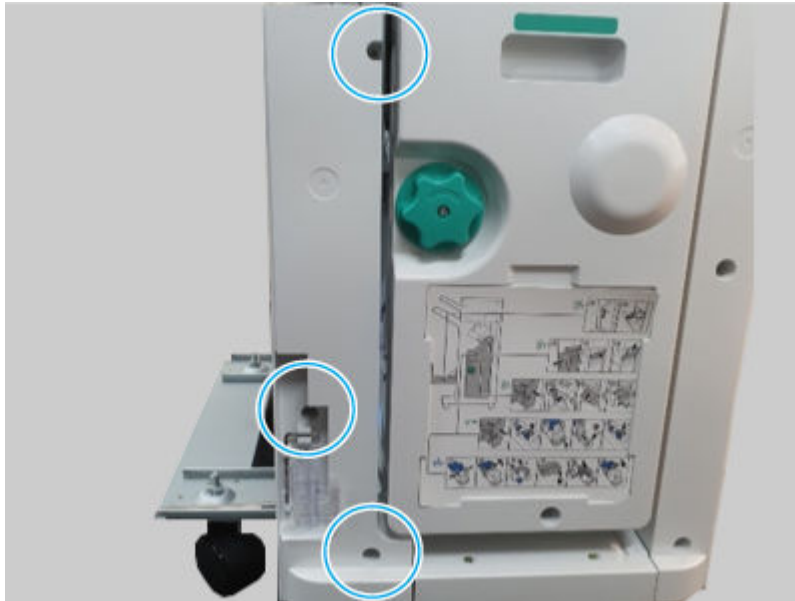
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2344 Remove the cover



6. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

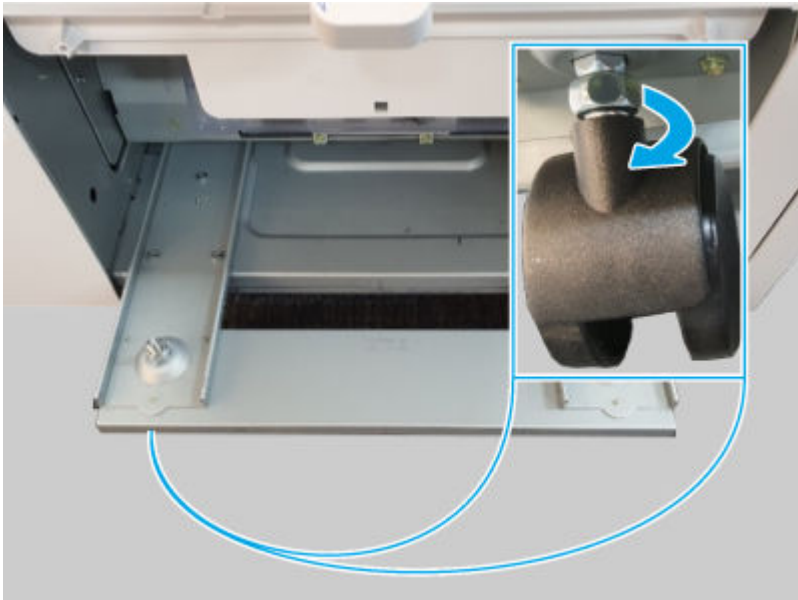
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2345 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2346 Remove the caster

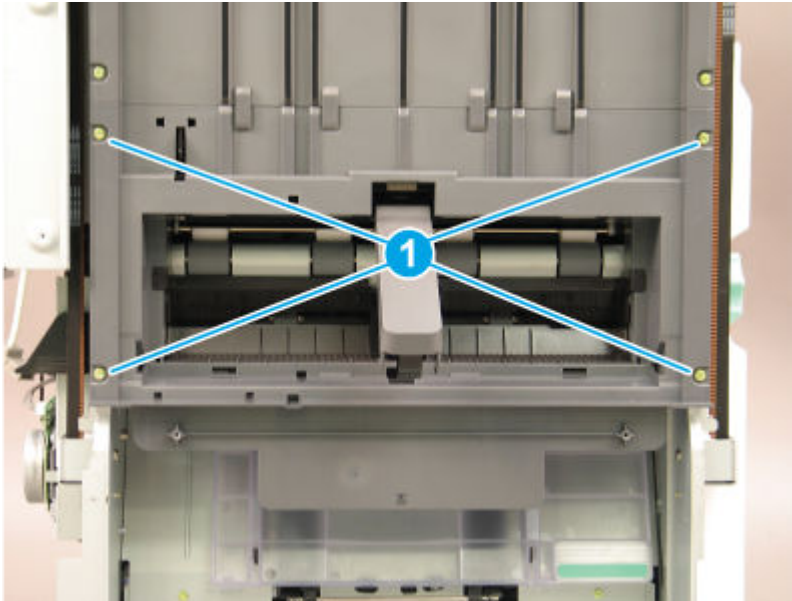


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2347 Remove four screws

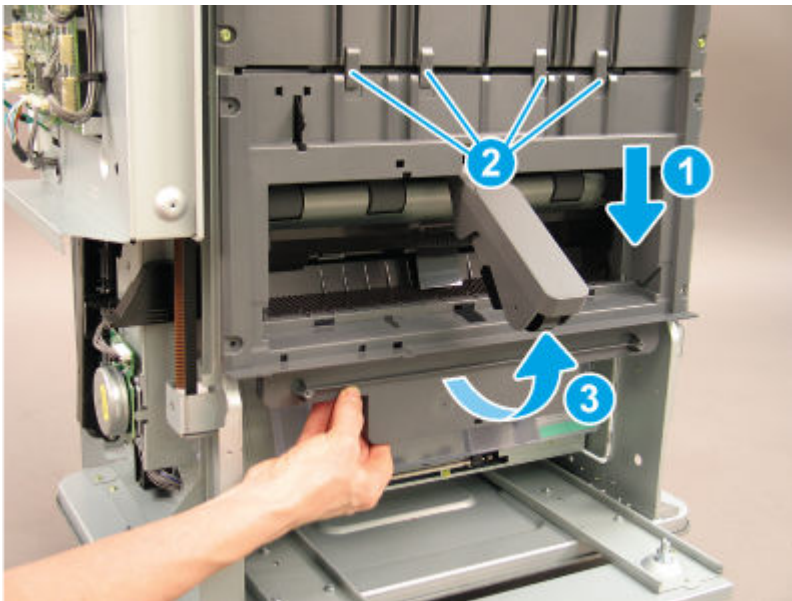


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

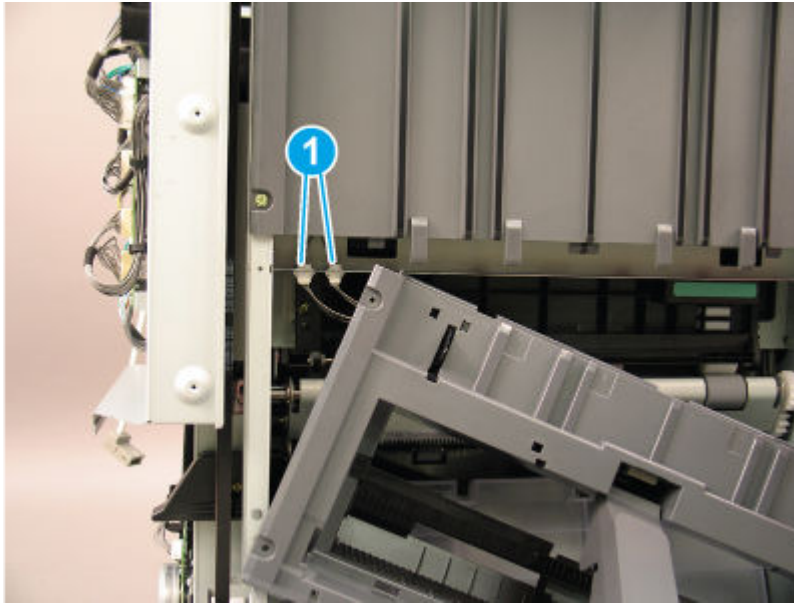
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2348 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2349 Remove the cover

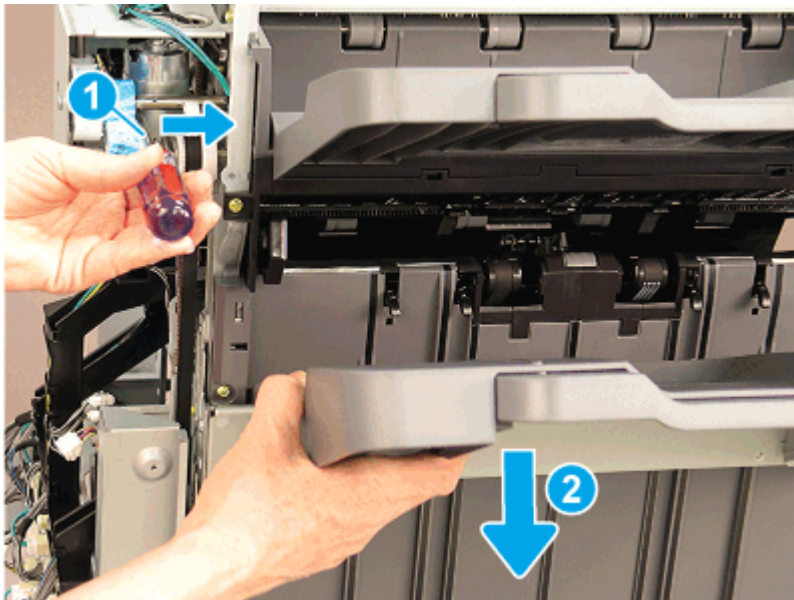


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

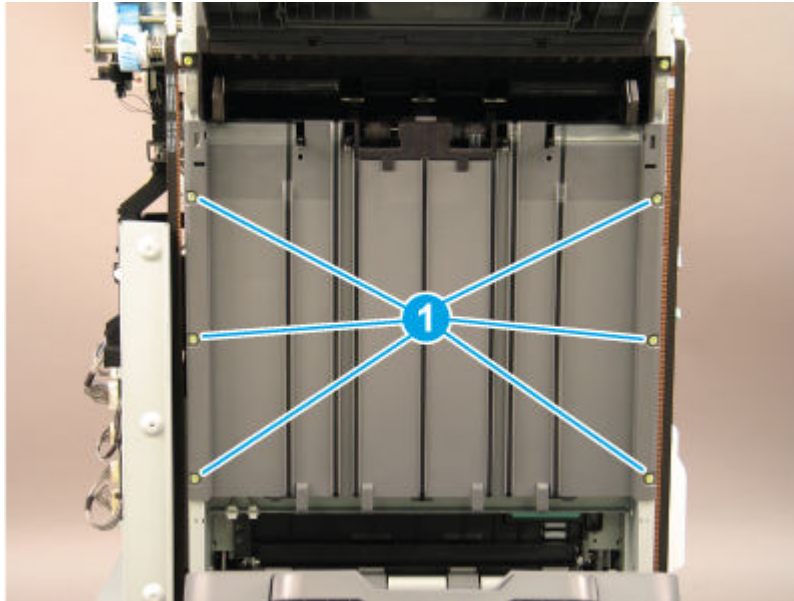
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2350 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2351 Remove six screws

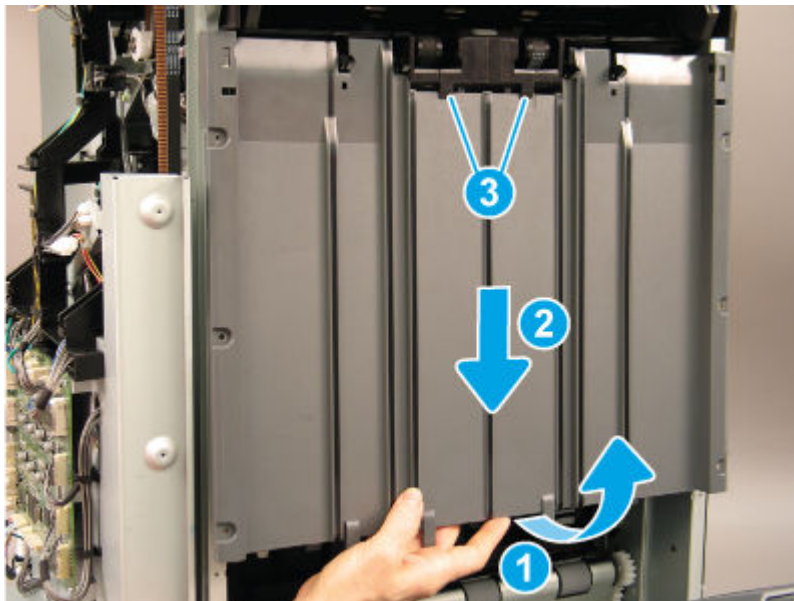


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

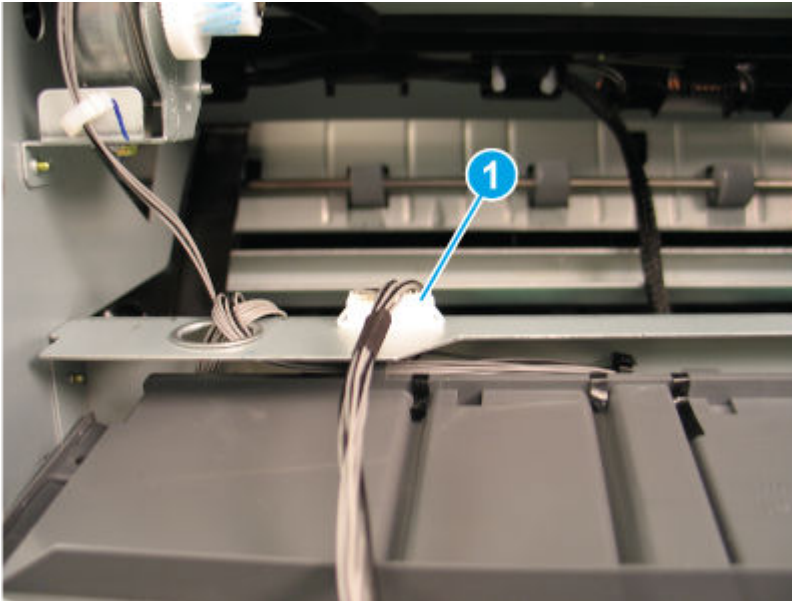
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2352 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2353 Remove the cover



9. Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


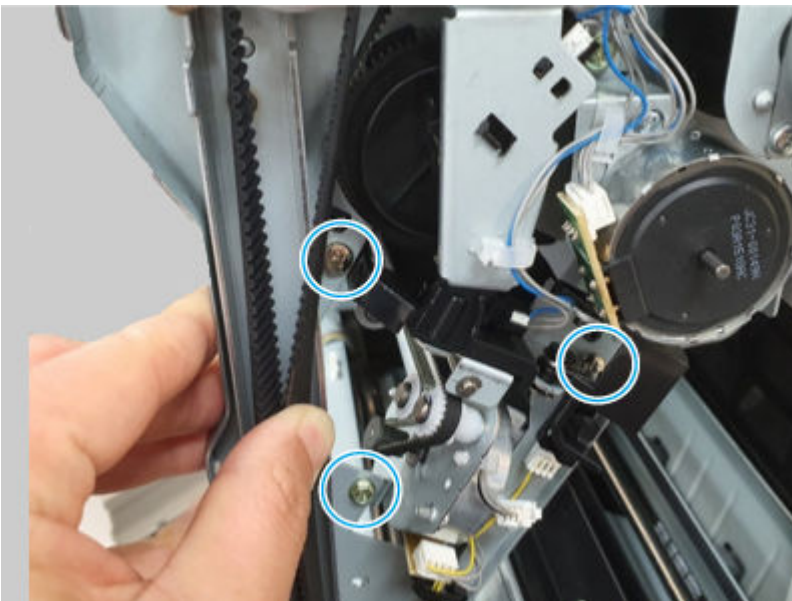
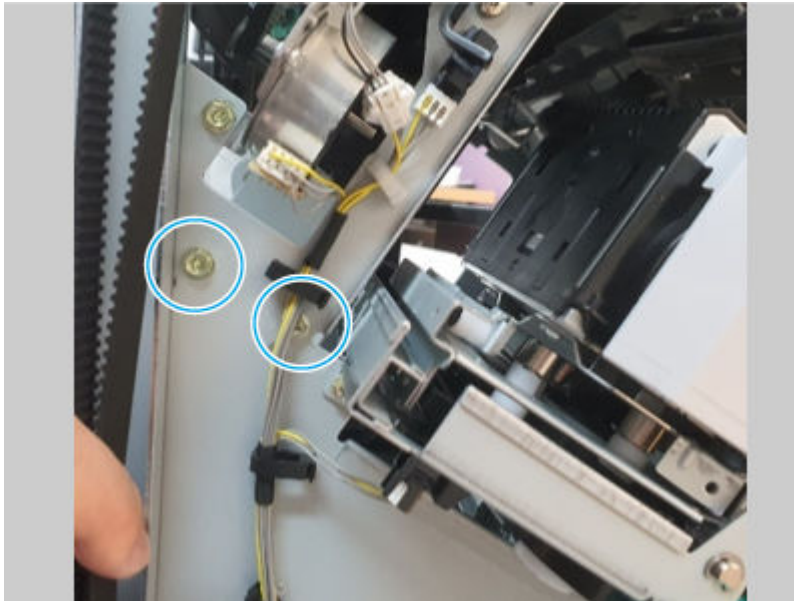
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2354 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-2355 Remove two screws

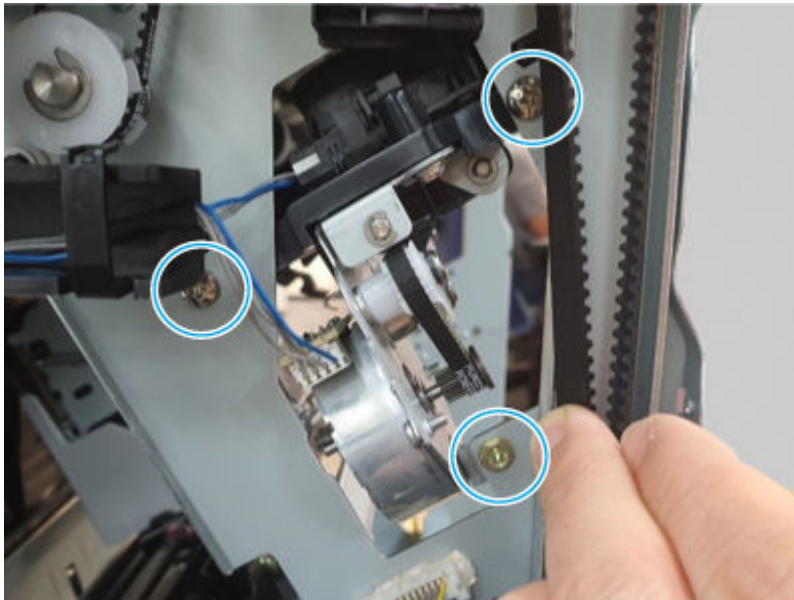


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2356 Release the tamper



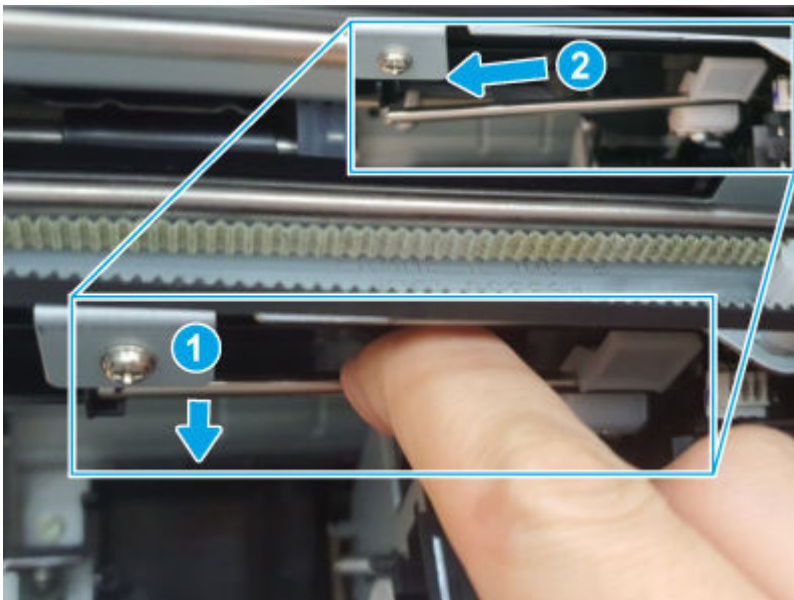
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-2357 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-2358 Remove the shaft

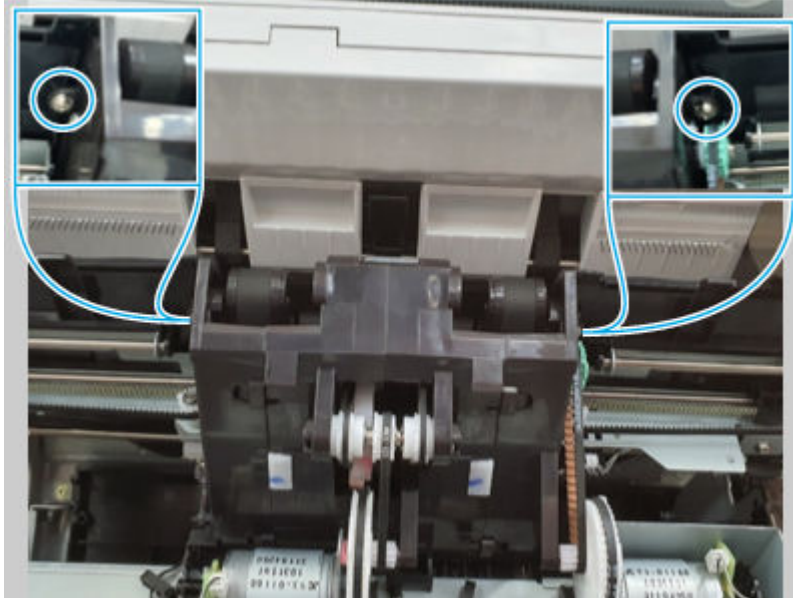


6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.



NOTE: Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-2359 Remove the unit

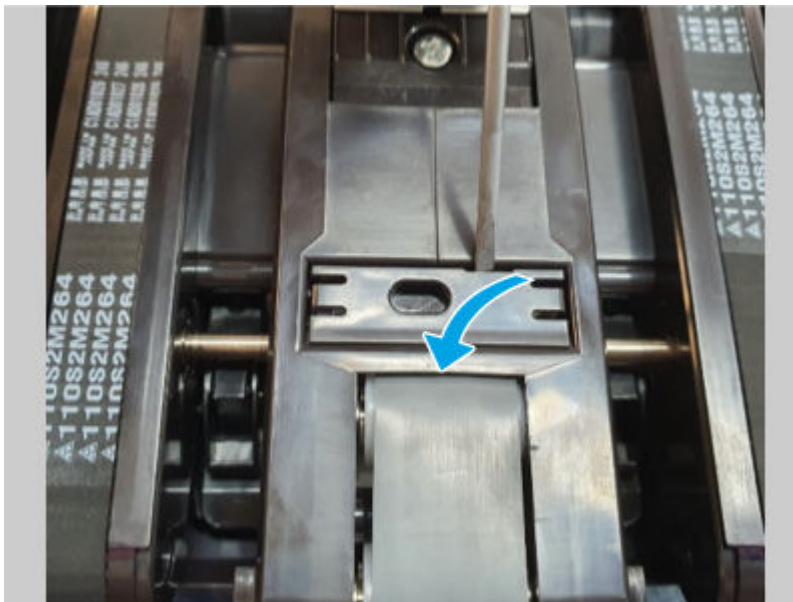


10. Remove the external finisher ejector sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector sensor.

1. Remove the ejector sensor cover.

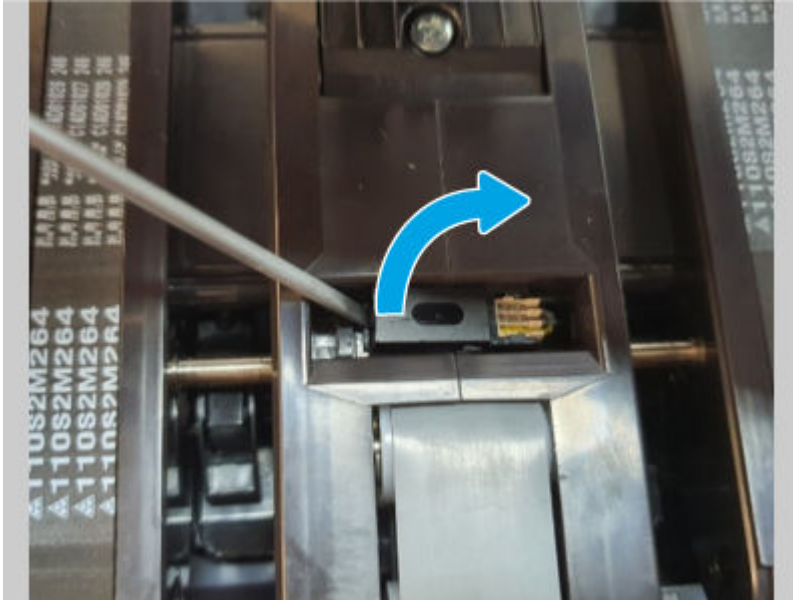
Figure 6-2360 Release the cover



2. Carefully separate the ejector sensor from the ejector unit.

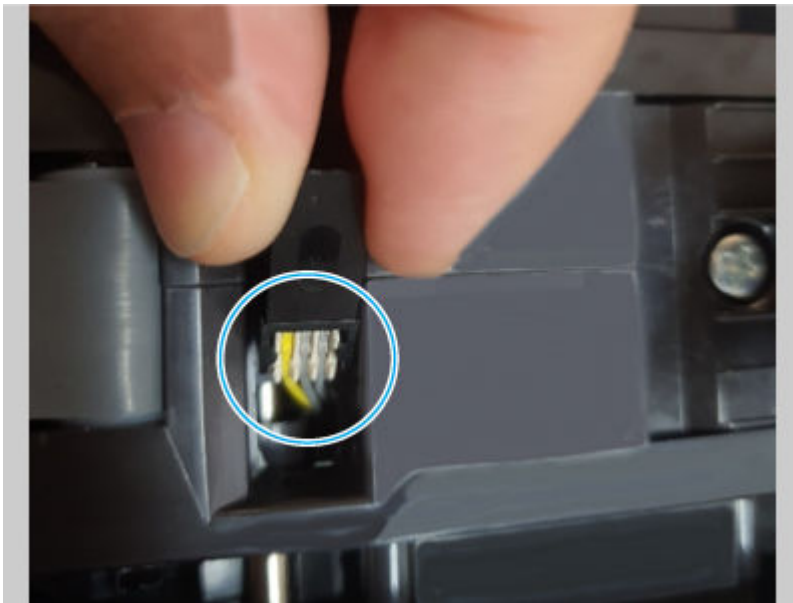
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the sensor. It is still attached to the ejector unit by a wire harness.

Figure 6-2361 Release the sensor



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the ejector sensor.

Figure 6-2362 Remove the sensor



11. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector 1 home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher ejector 1 home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-320 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Ejector 1 home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

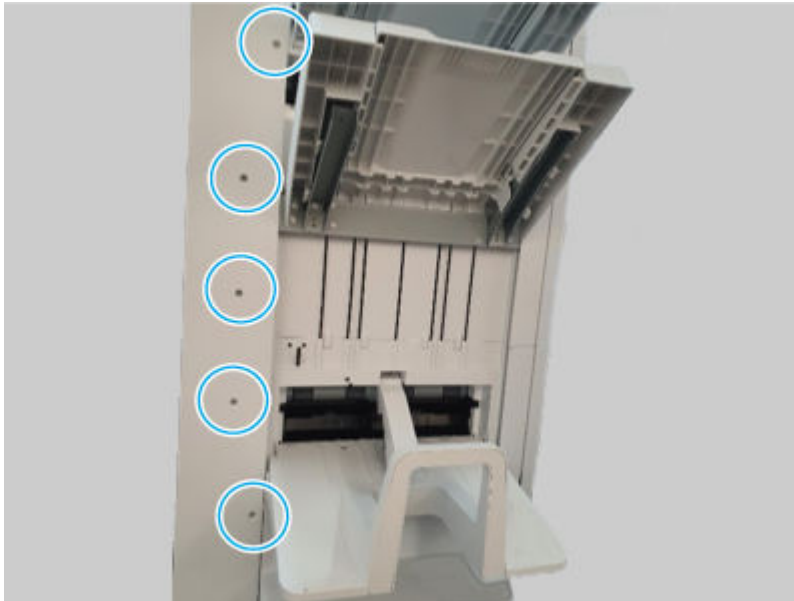
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2363 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


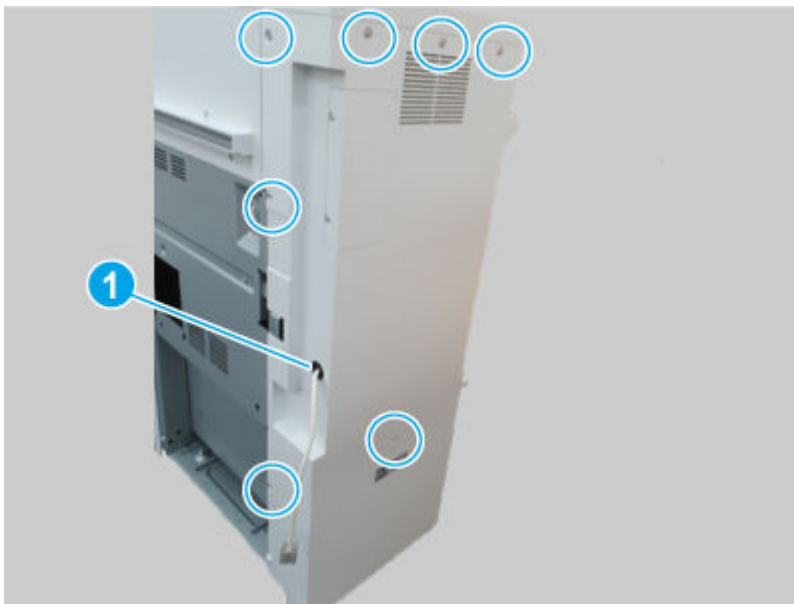
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2364 Remove the cover

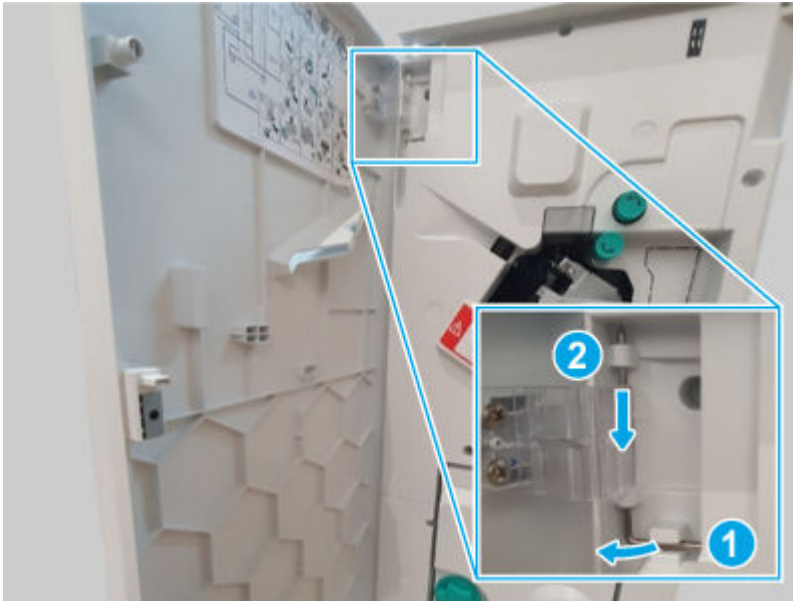


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

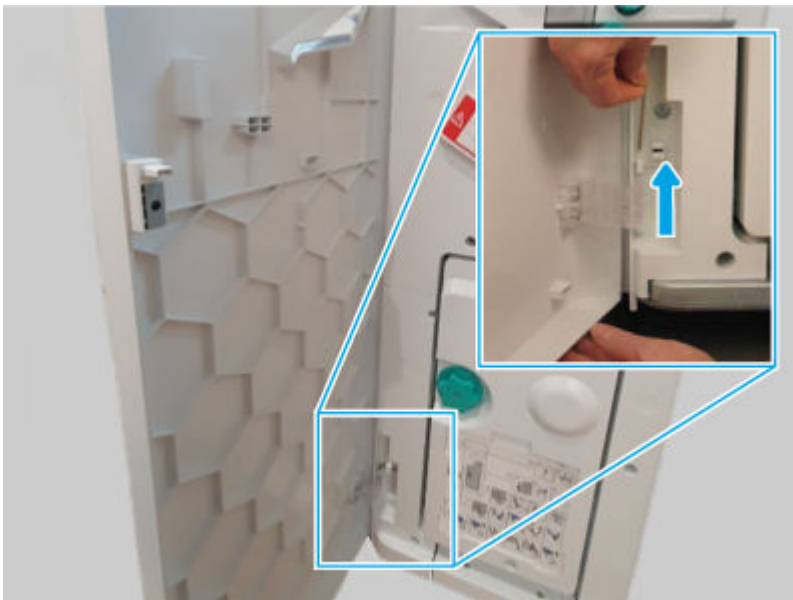
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2365 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2366 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

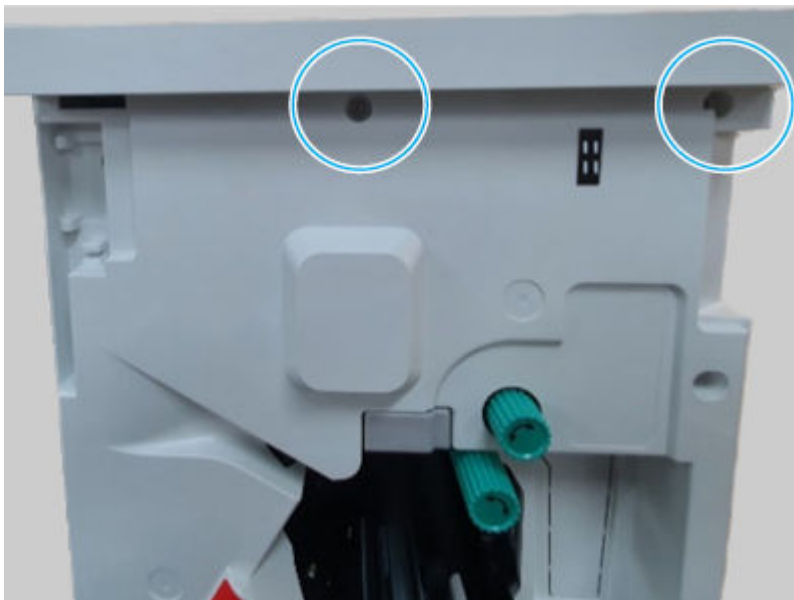
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2367 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2368 Remove the cover

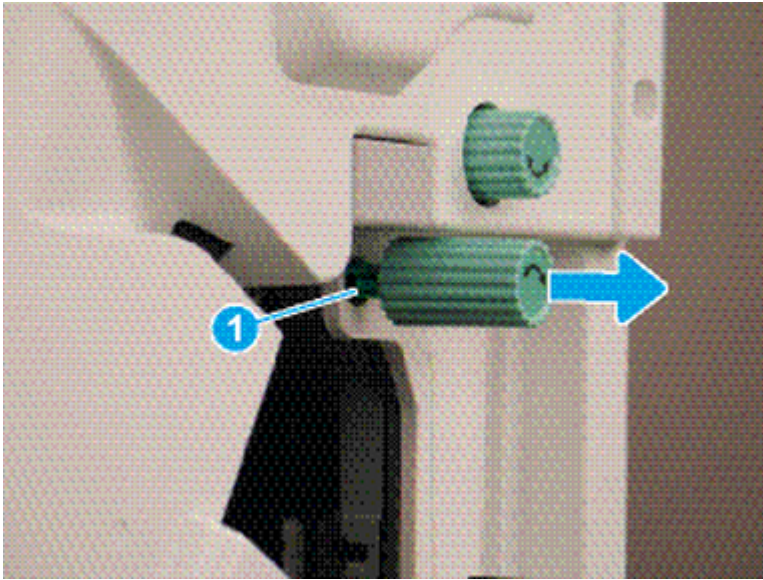


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2369 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2370 Remove the cover



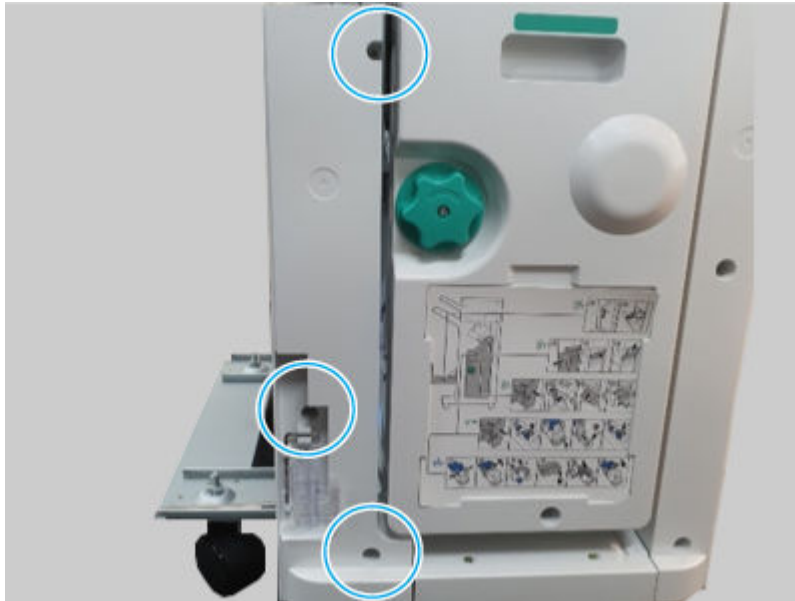
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2371 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

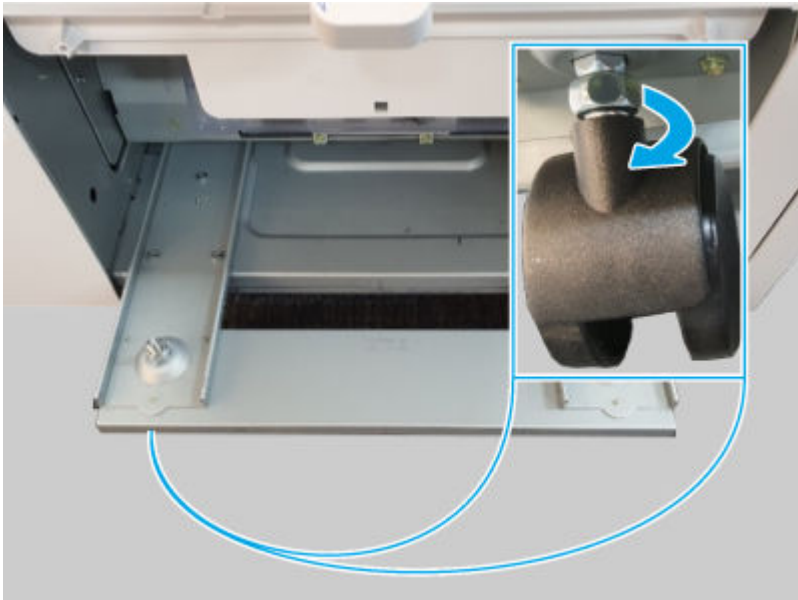
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2372 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2373 Remove the caster

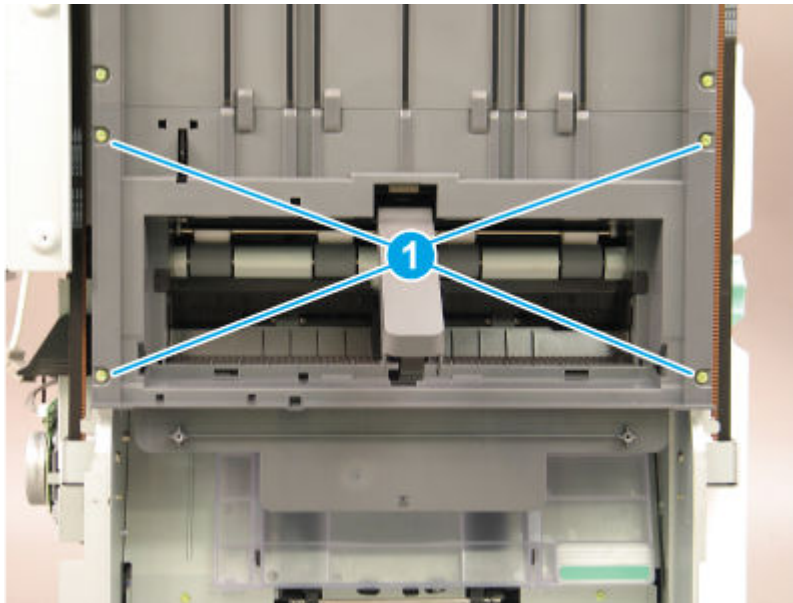


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2374 Remove four screws

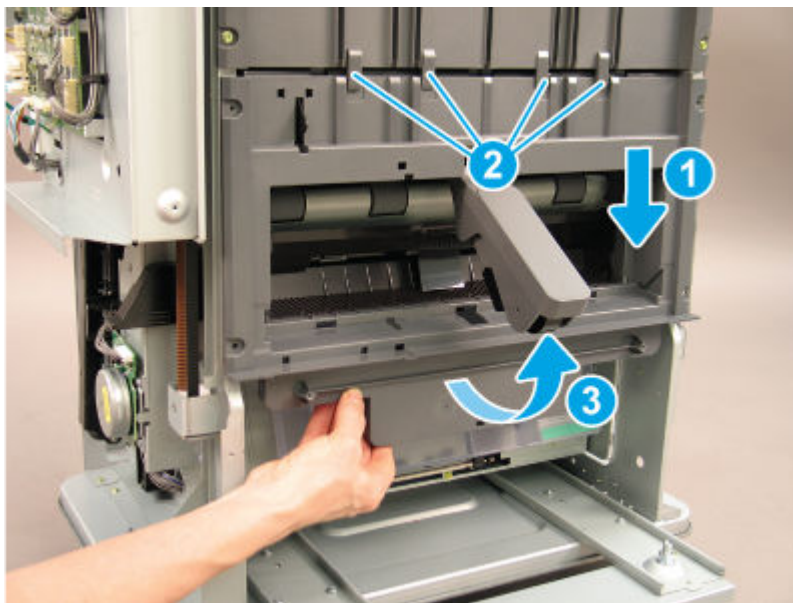


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

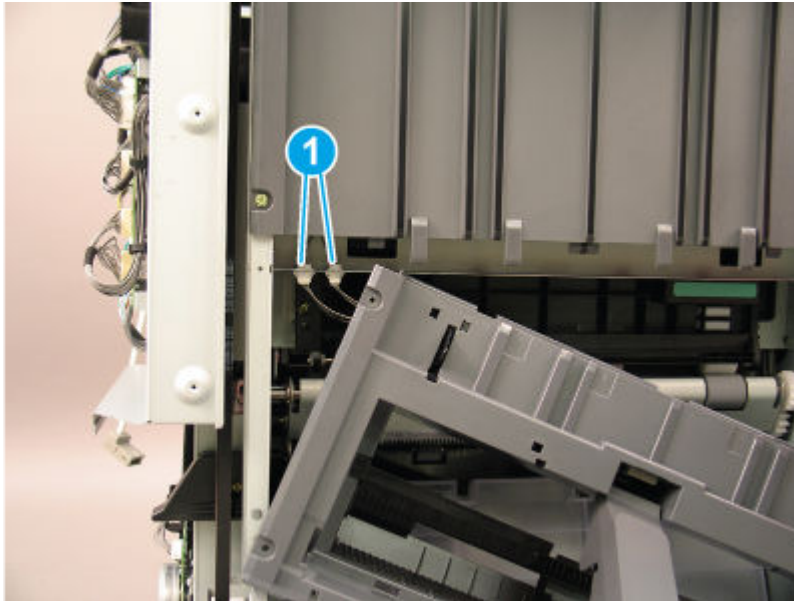
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2375 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2376 Remove the cover

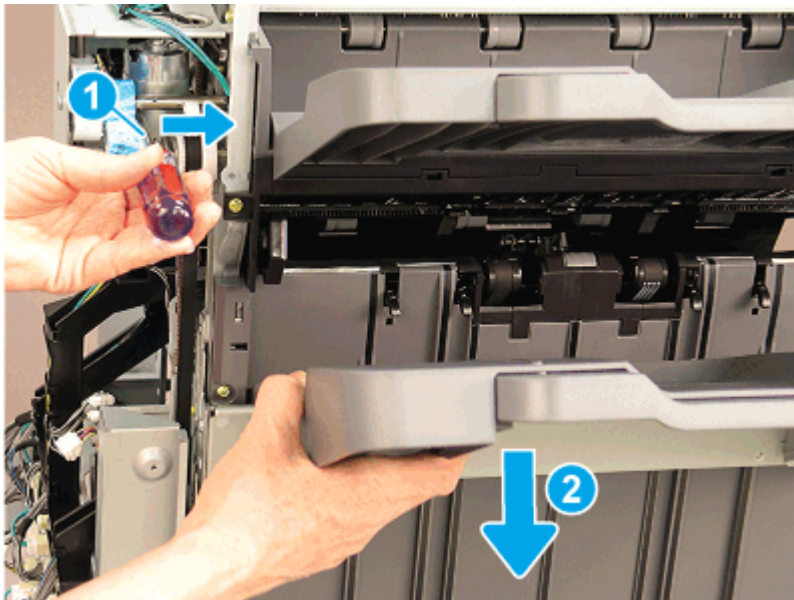


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

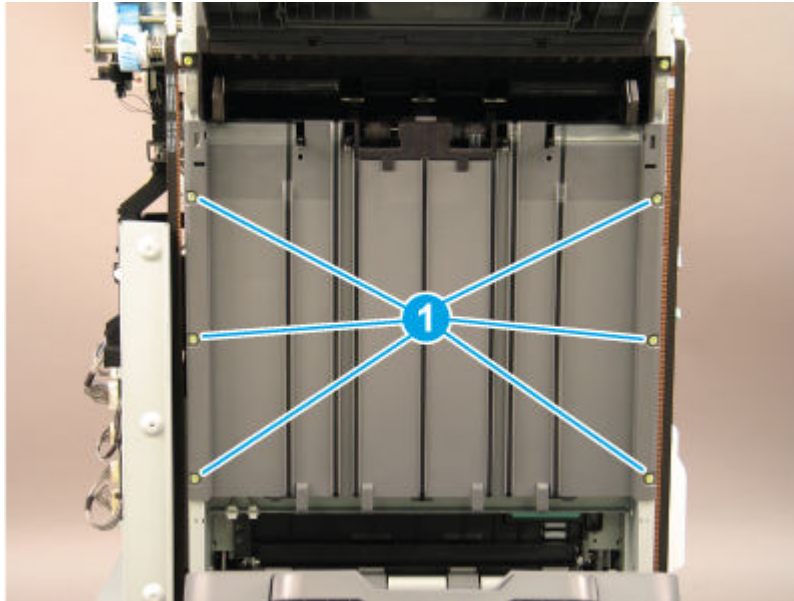
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2377 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2378 Remove six screws

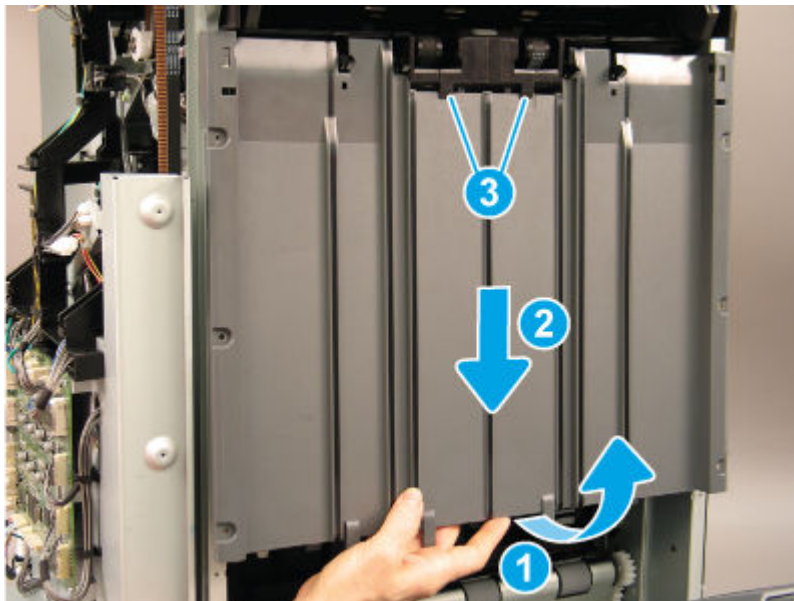


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

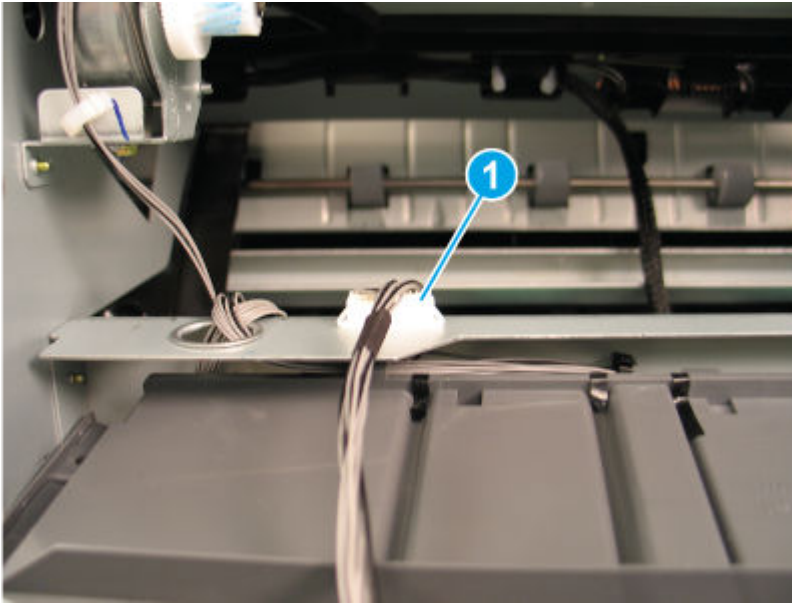
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2379 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2380 Remove the cover



9 Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


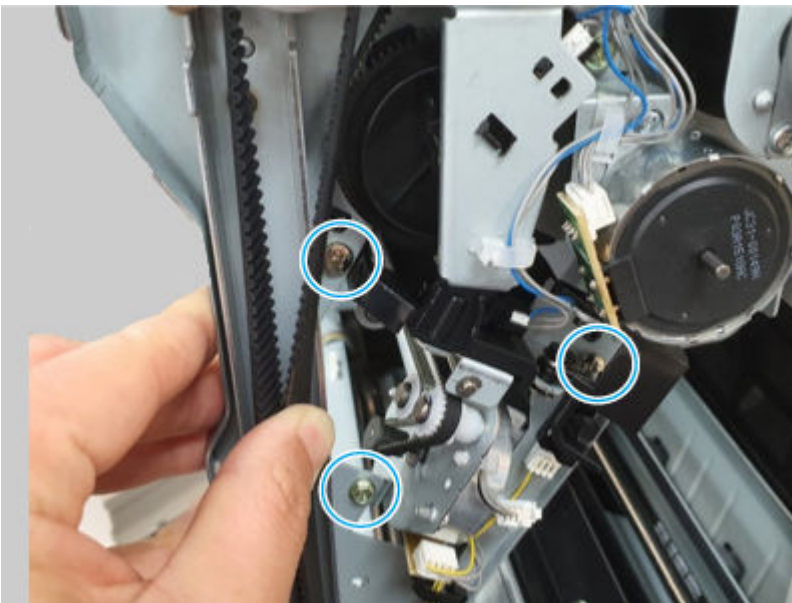
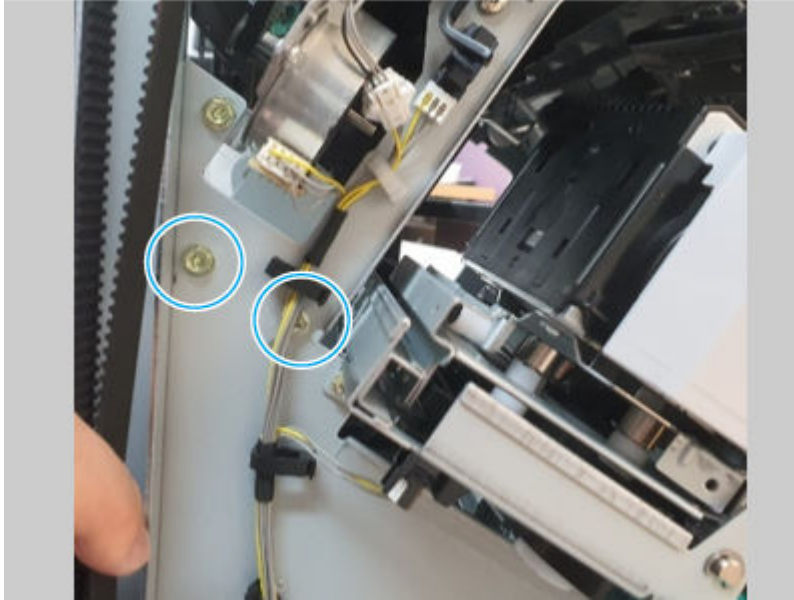
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2381 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-2382 Remove two screws

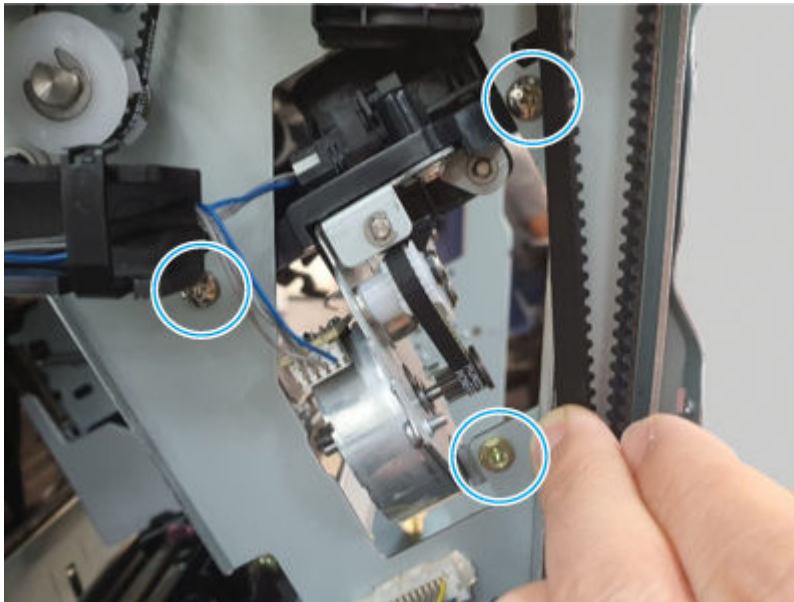


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2383 Release the tamper



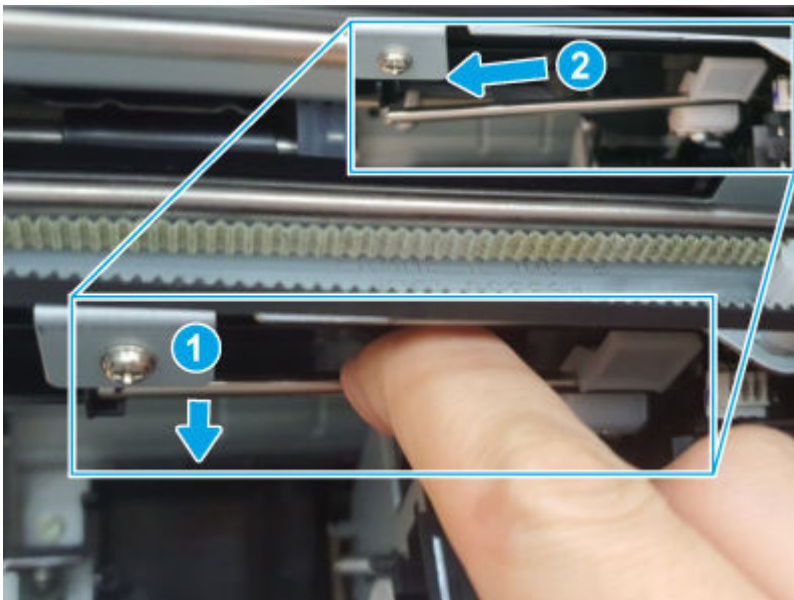
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-2384 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-2385 Remove the shaft

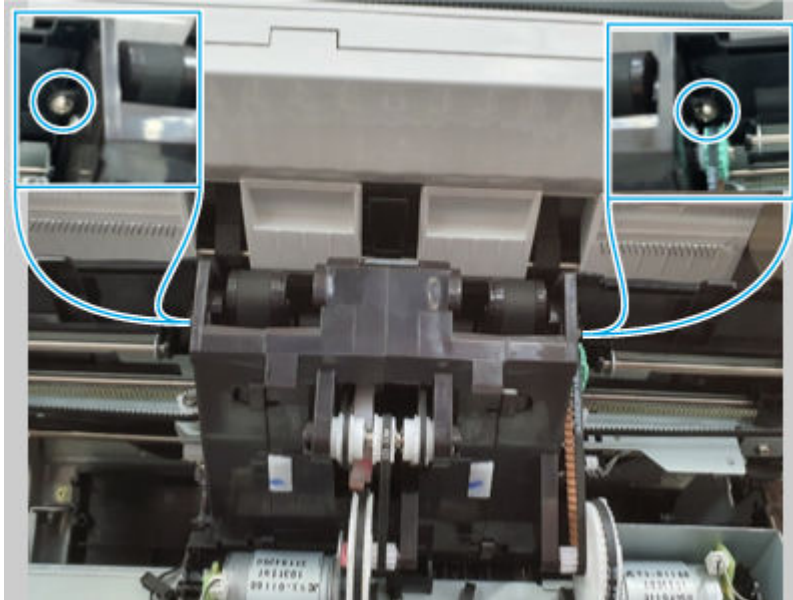


6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.



NOTE: Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-2386 Remove the unit

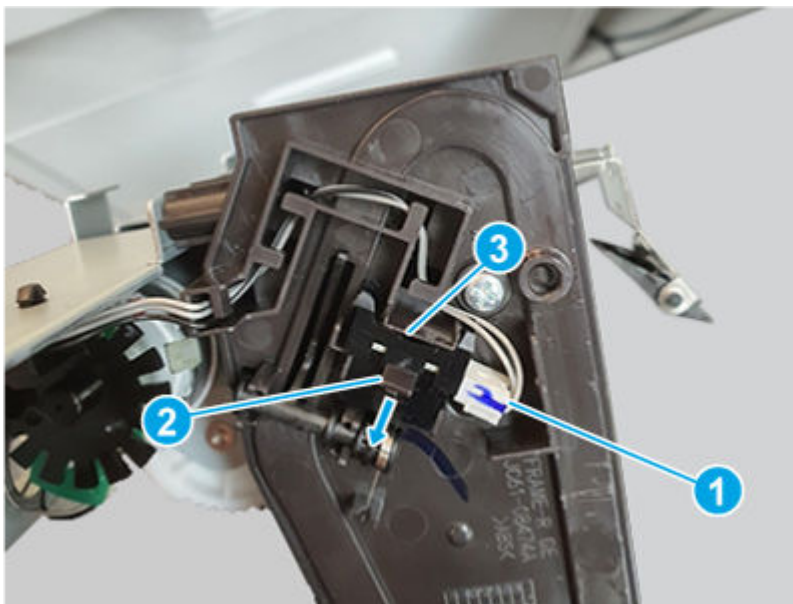


10 Remove the external finisher ejector 1 home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector 1 home sensor.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - b. Release the hook (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the ejector 1 home sensor (callout 3).

Figure 6-2387 Remove the sensor



11 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector 1 motor sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher ejector 1 motor sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-321 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Ejector 1 motor sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

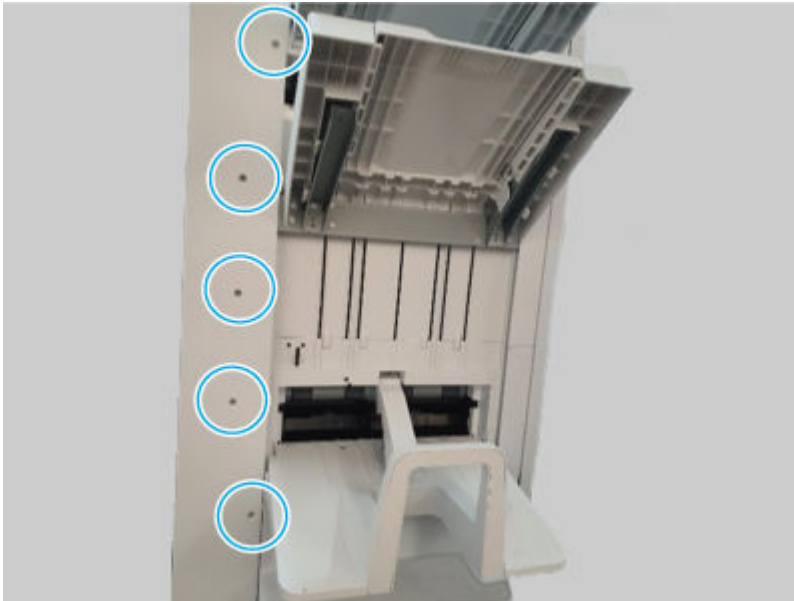
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2388 Remove five screws

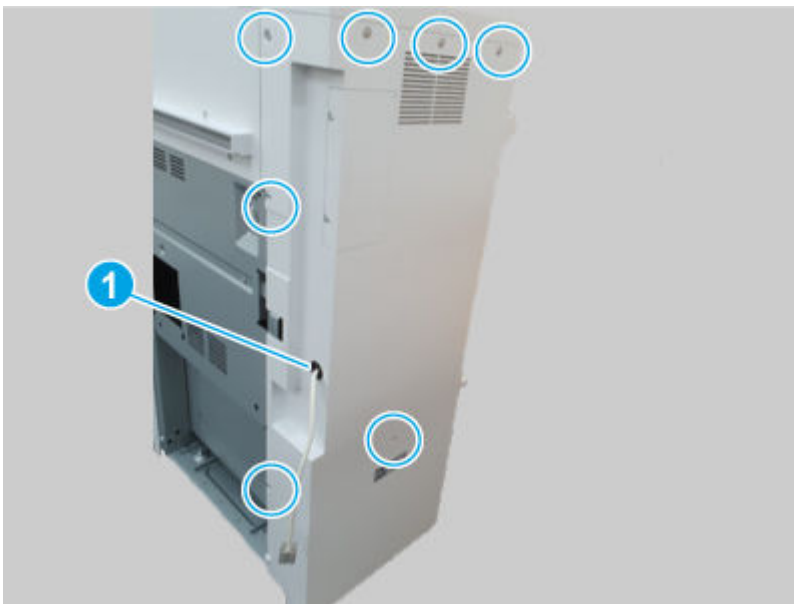


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2389 Remove the cover

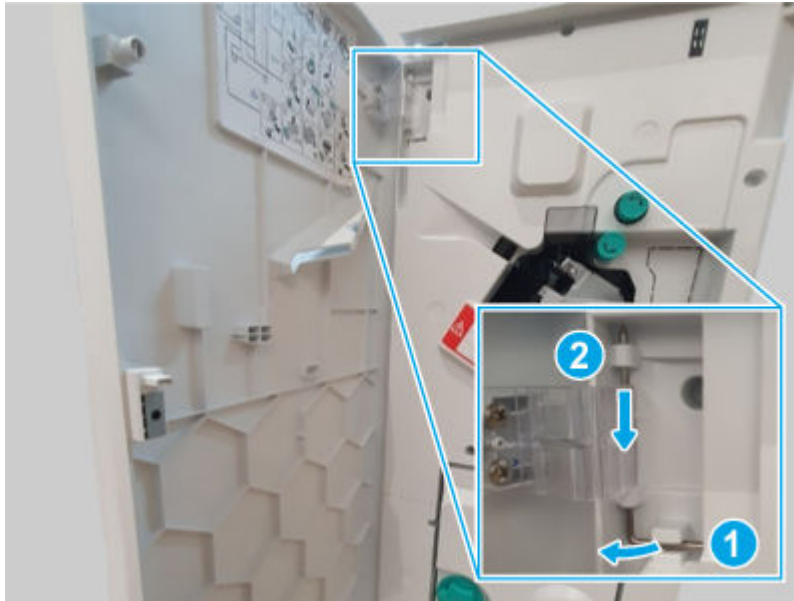


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

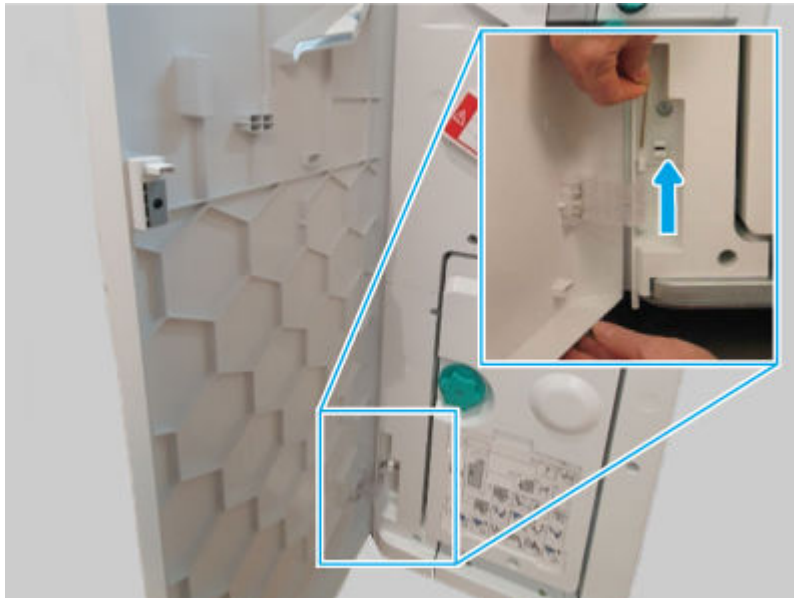
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2390 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2391 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

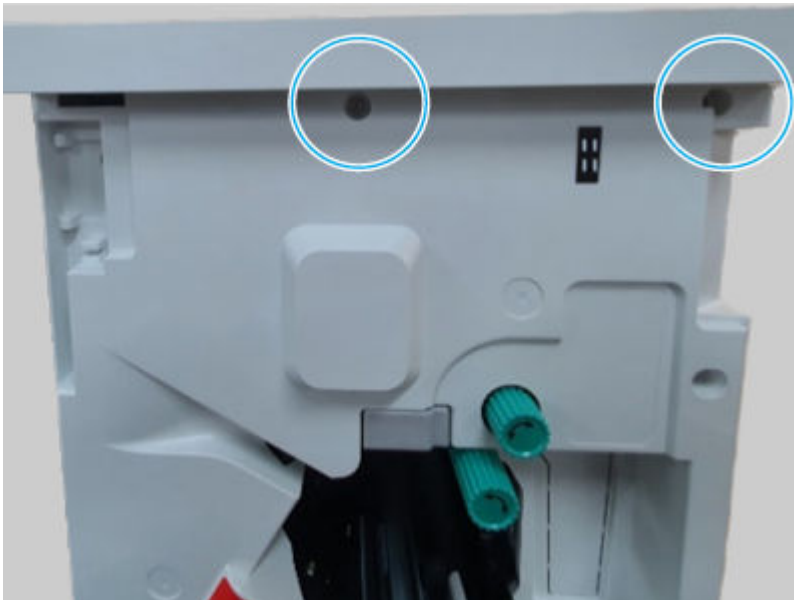
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2392 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2393 Remove the cover

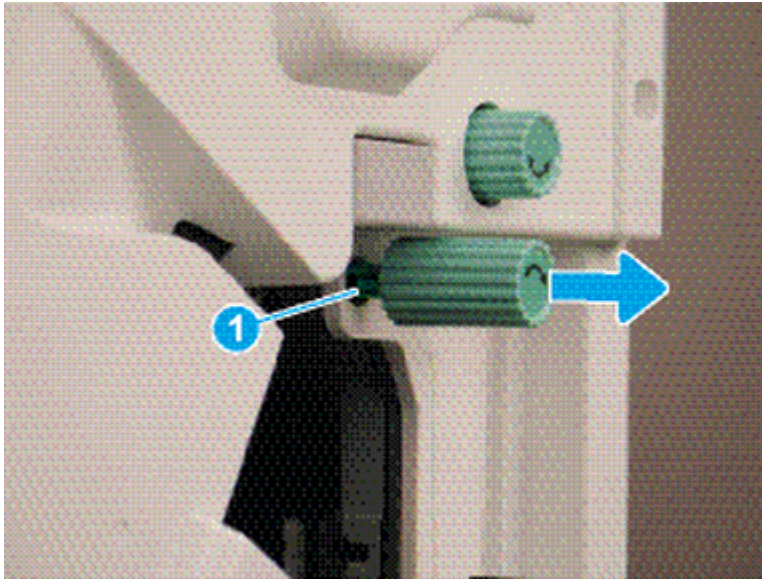


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2394 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2395 Remove the cover



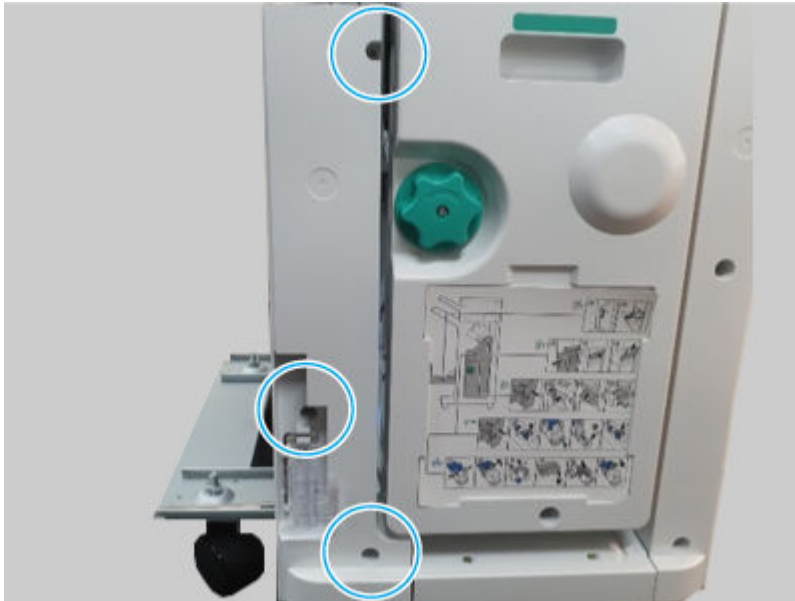
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2396 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

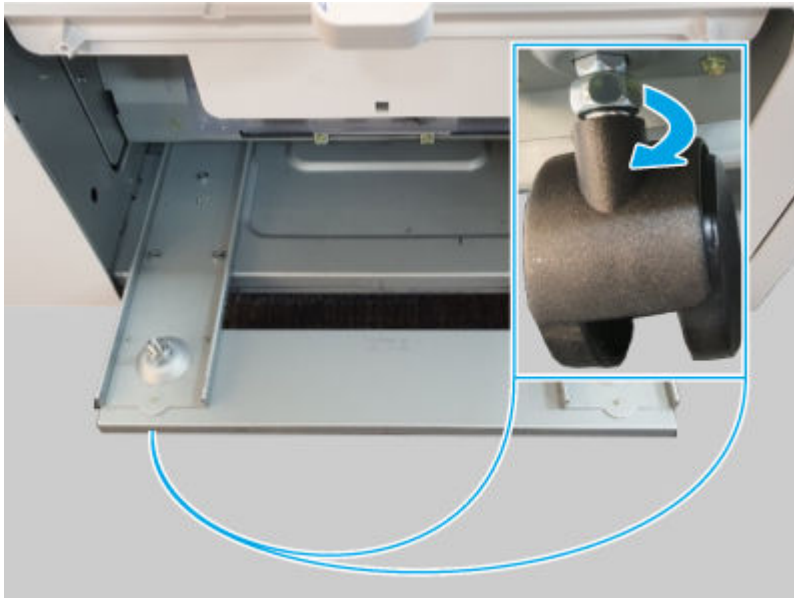
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2397 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2398 Remove the caster

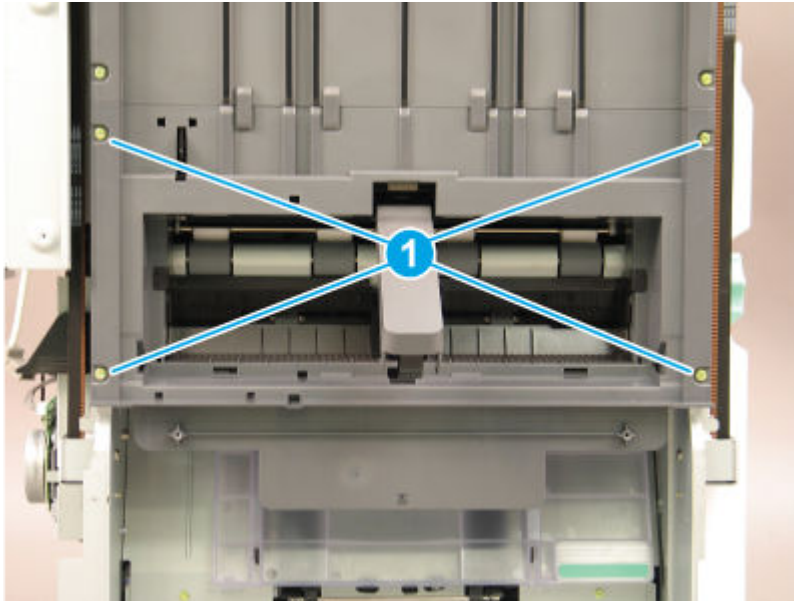


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2399 Remove four screws

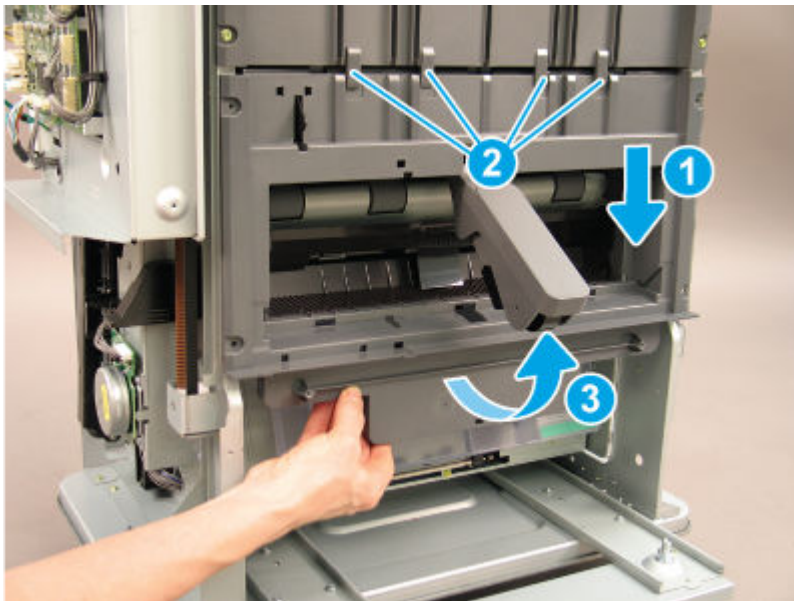


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

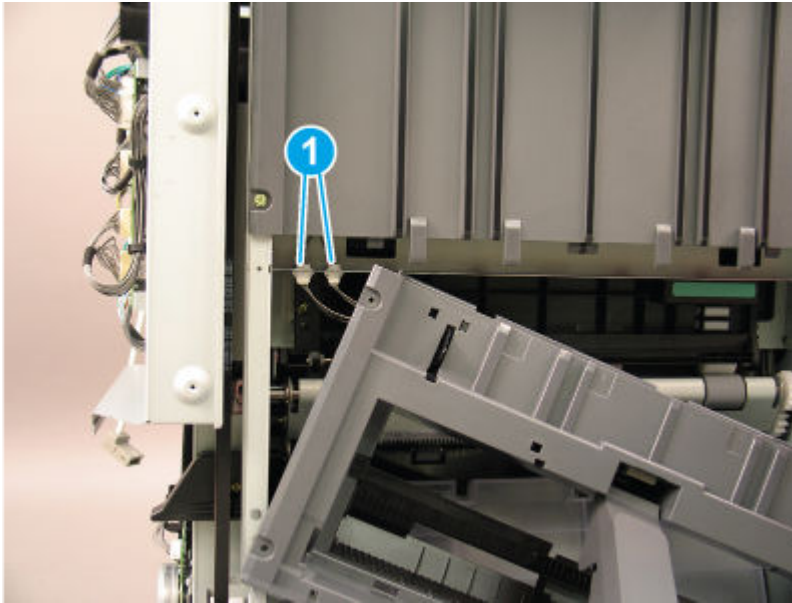
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2400 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2401 Remove the cover

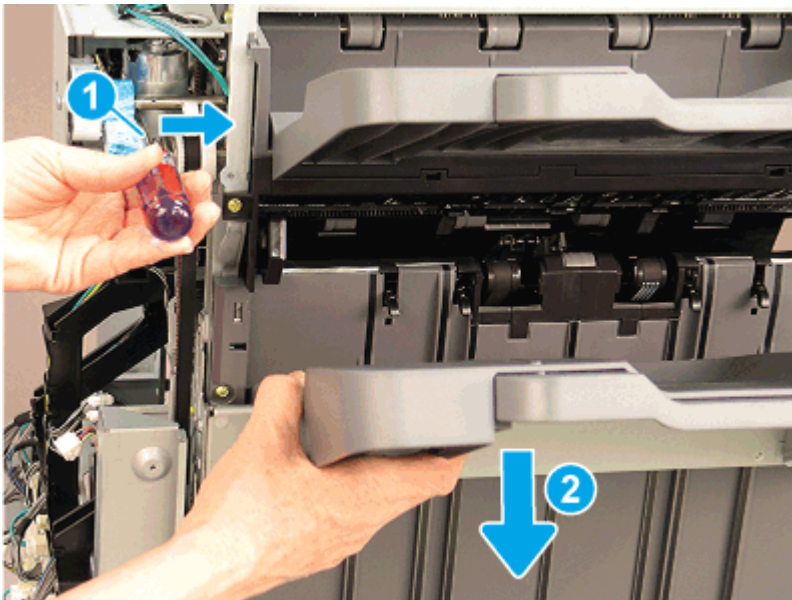


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

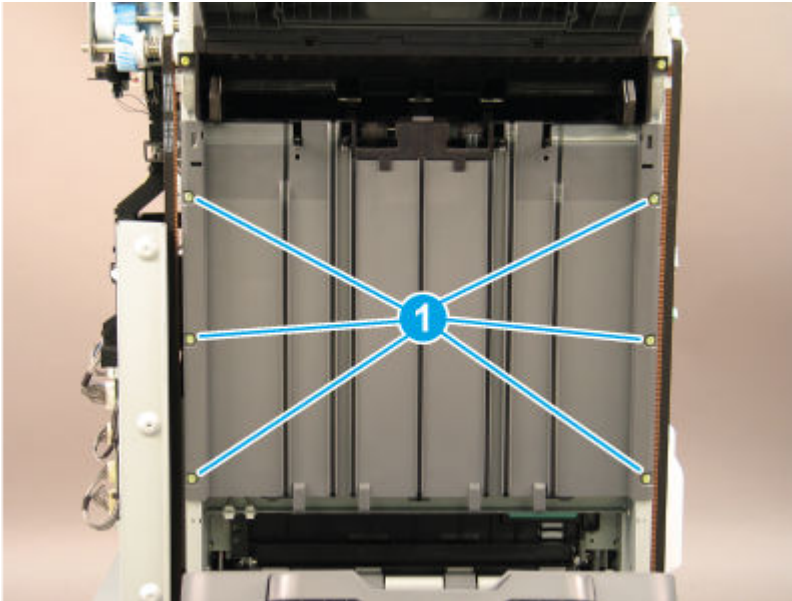
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2402 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2403 Remove six screws

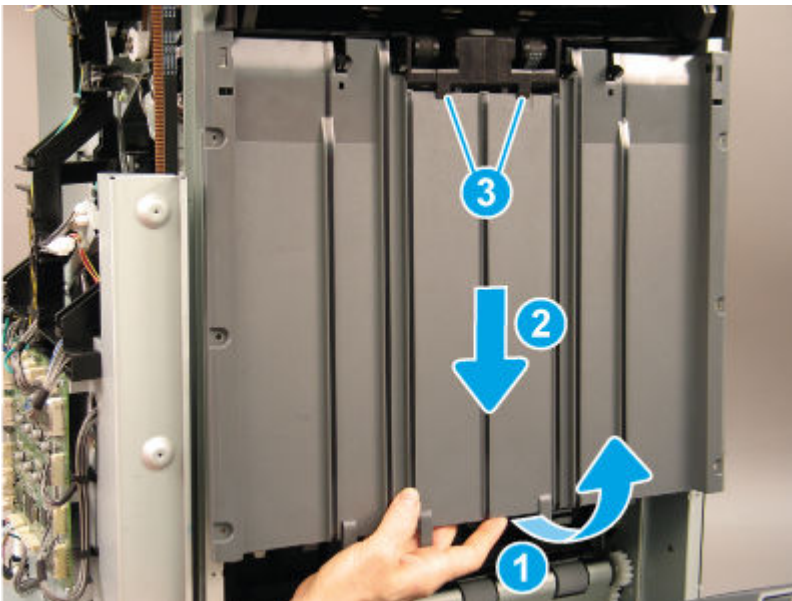


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

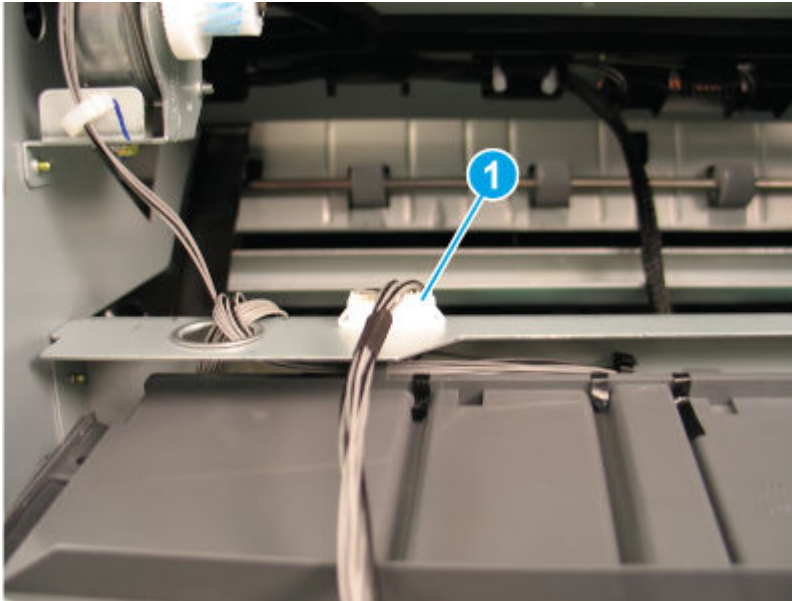
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2404 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2405 Remove the cover



9 Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


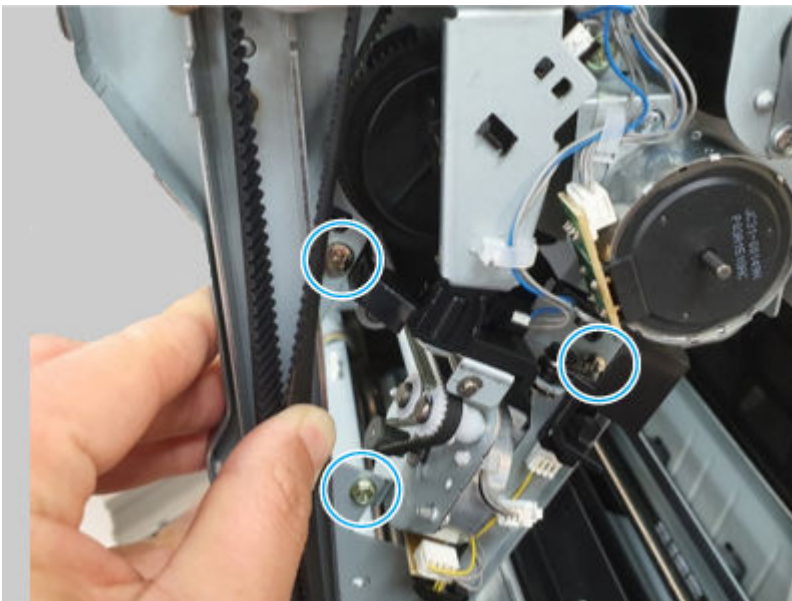
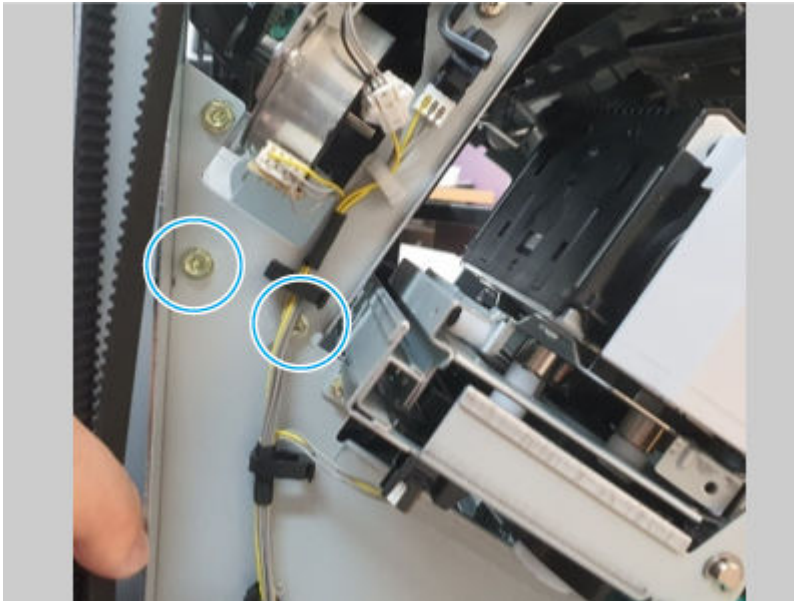
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2406 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-2407 Remove two screws

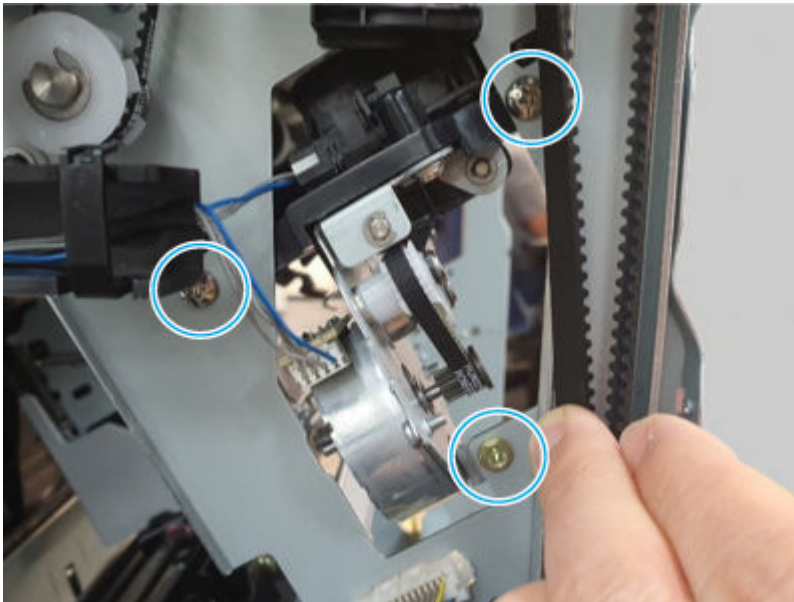


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2408 Release the tamper



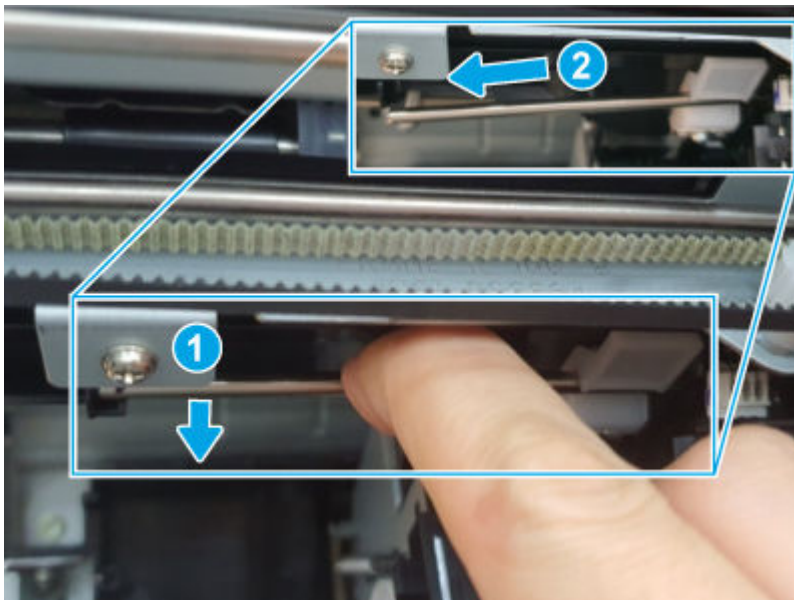
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-2409 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

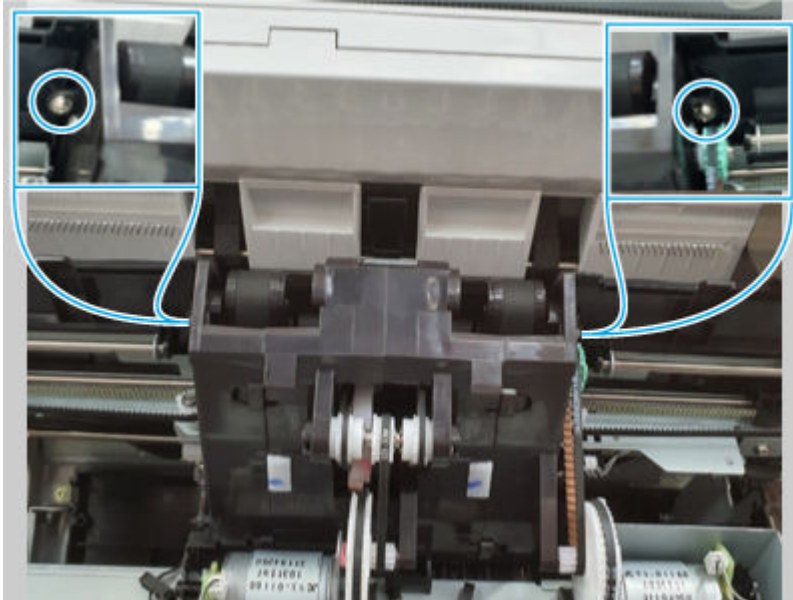
Figure 6-2410 Remove the shaft



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.

 **NOTE:** Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-2411 Remove the unit

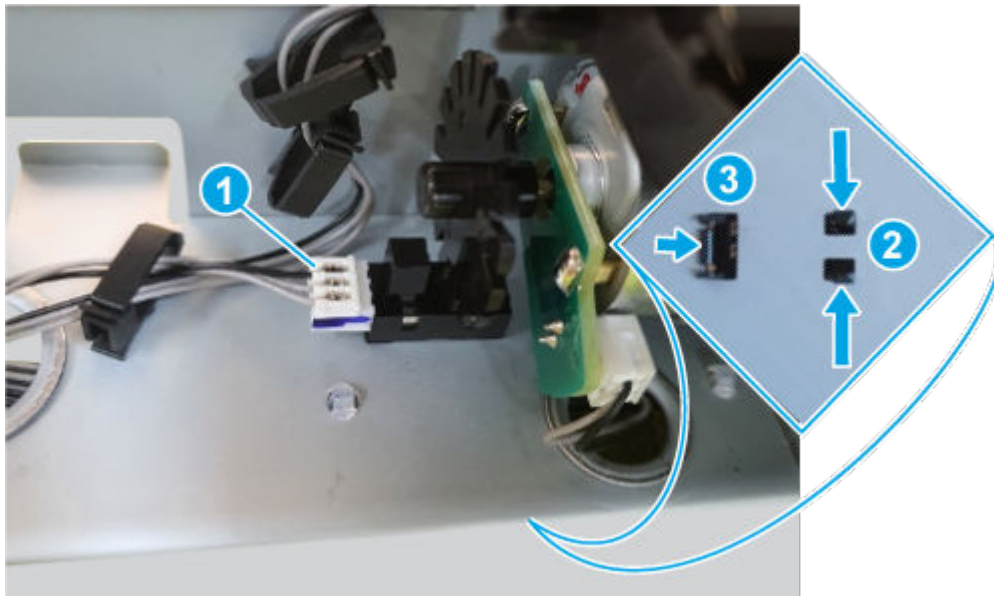


10 Remove the external finisher ejector 1 motor sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector 1 motor sensor.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - b. Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - c. Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3)
 - d. Remove the ejector 1 motor sensor.

Figure 6-2412 Remove the sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector 2 motor sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher ejector 2 motor sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-322 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Ejector 2 motor sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

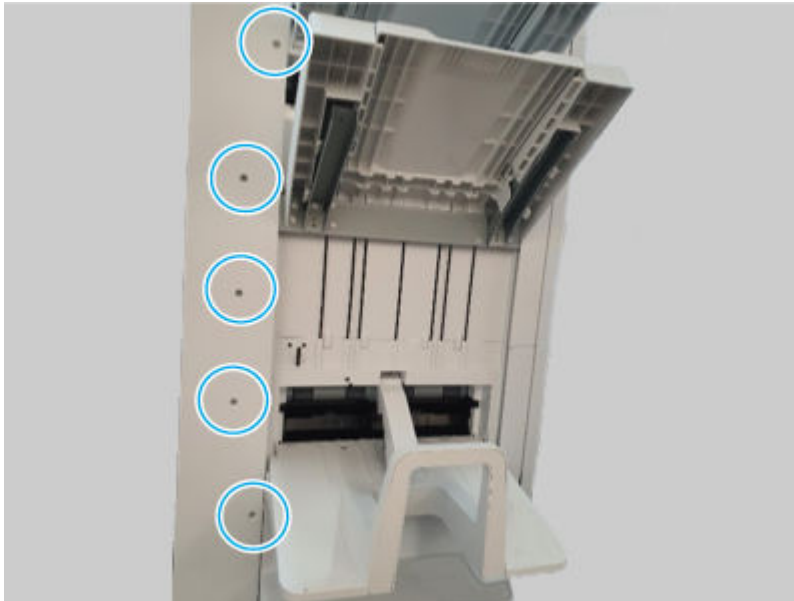
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2413 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


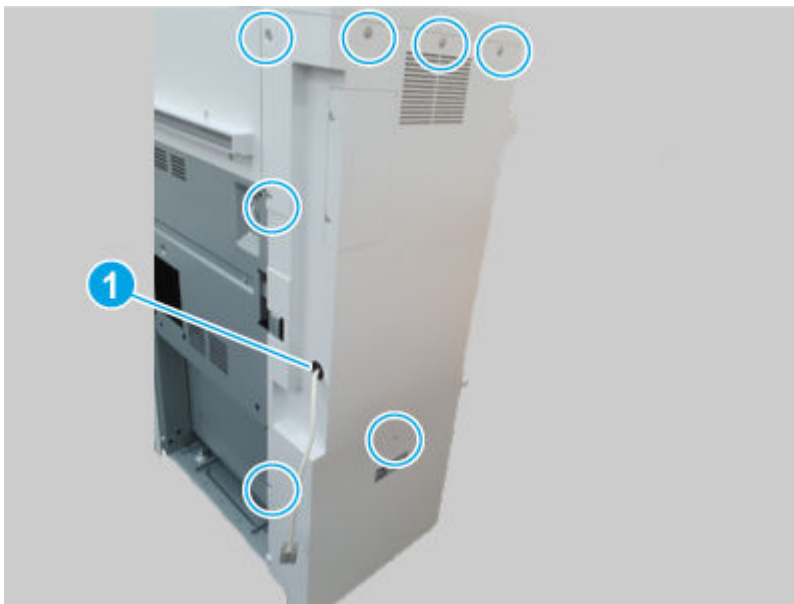
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2414 Remove the cover

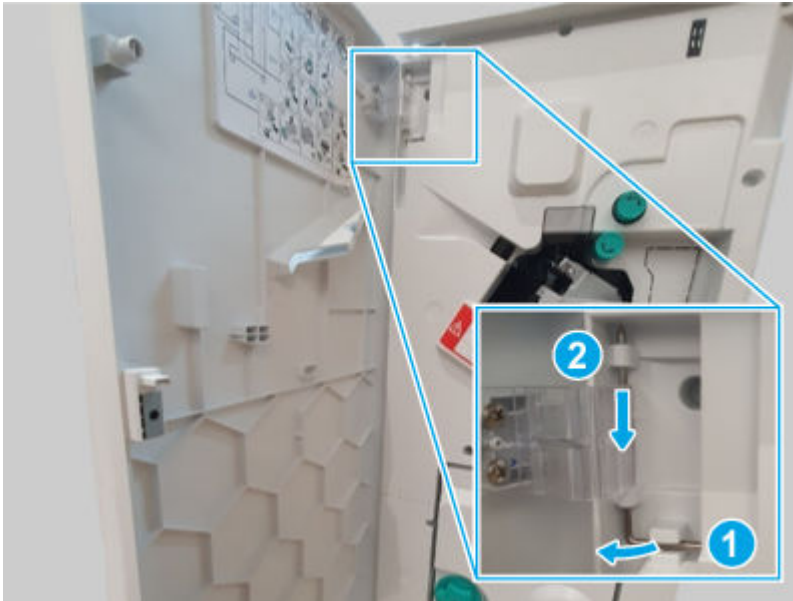


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

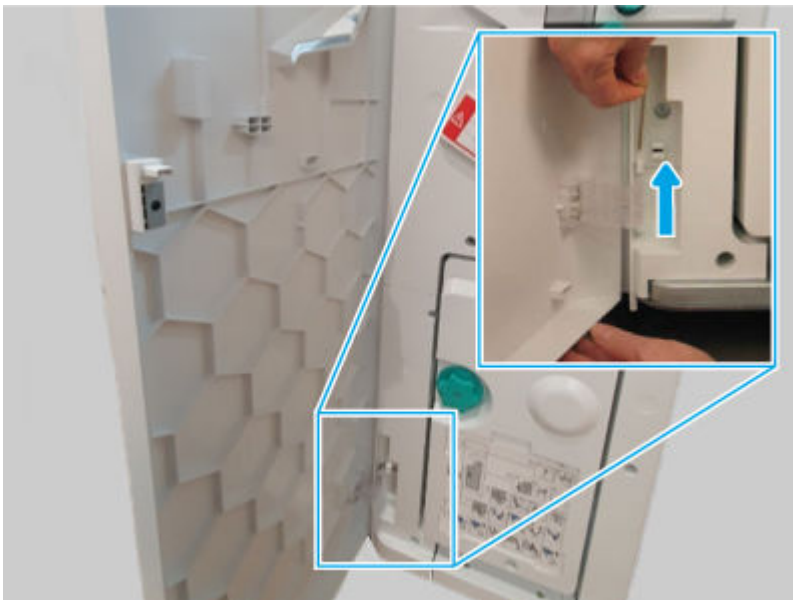
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2415 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2416 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

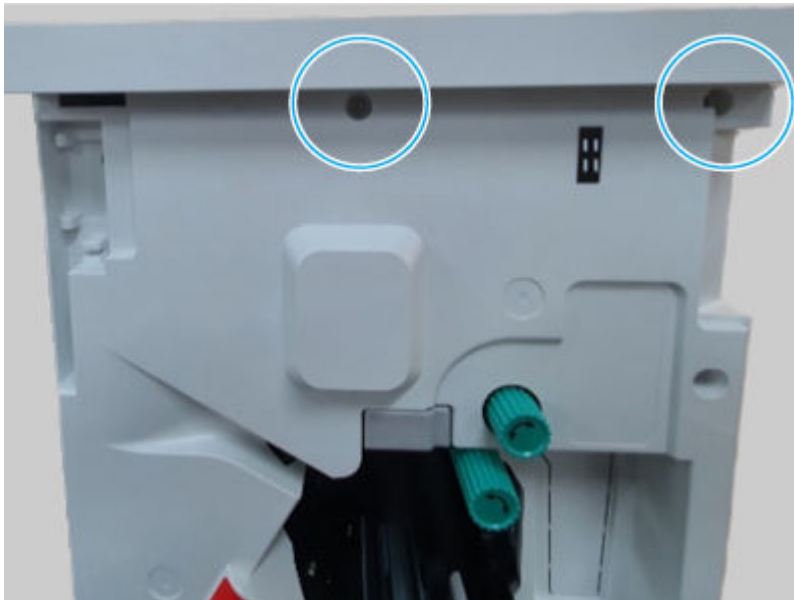
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2417 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2418 Remove the cover

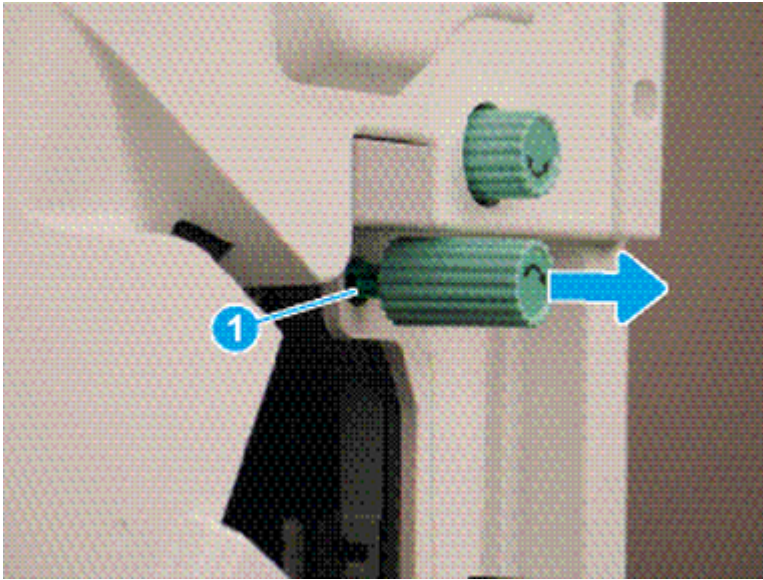


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2419 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2420 Remove the cover



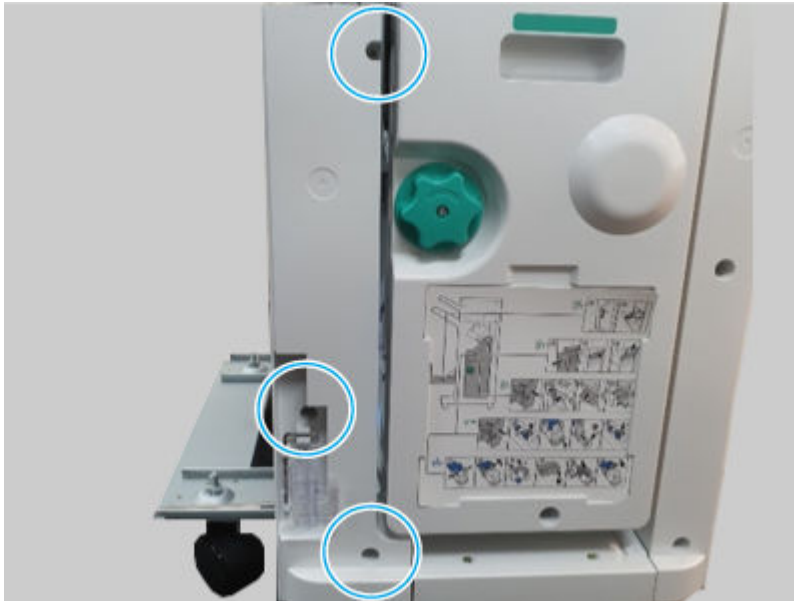
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2421 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

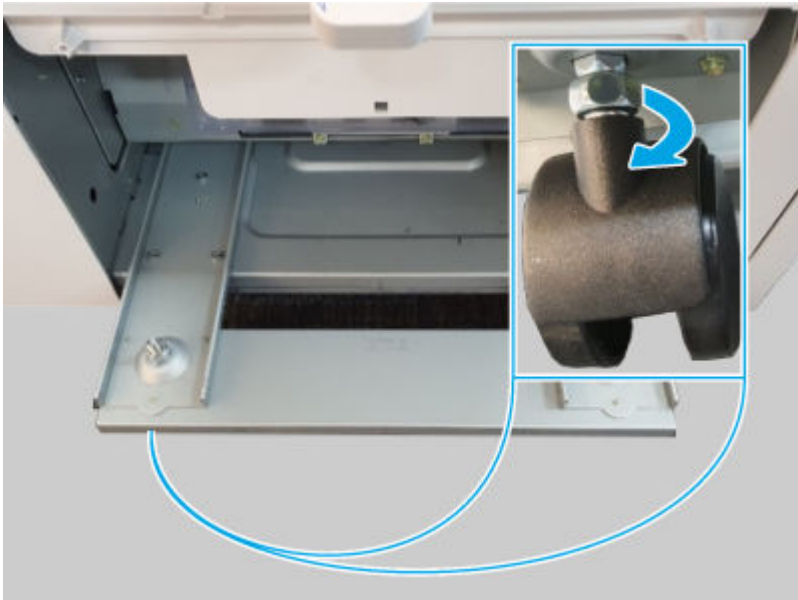
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2422 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2423 Remove the caster

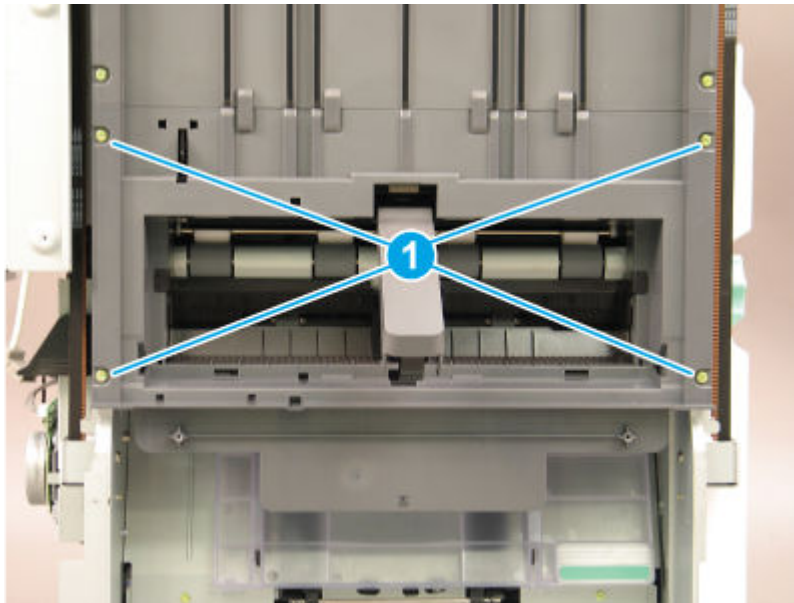


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2424 Remove four screws

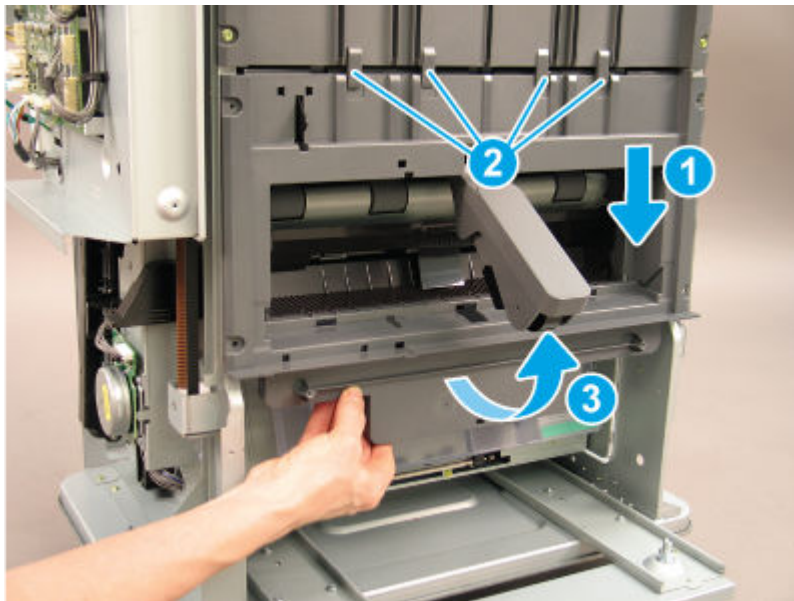


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

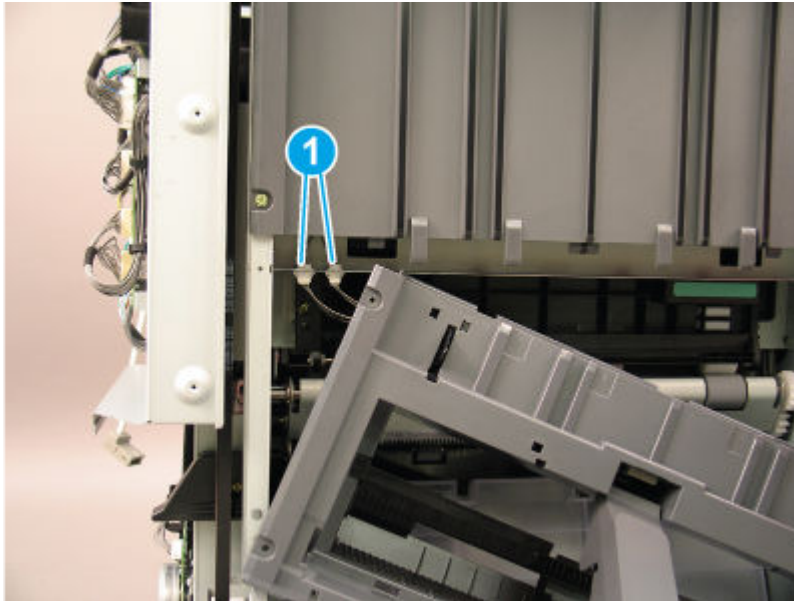
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2425 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2426 Remove the cover

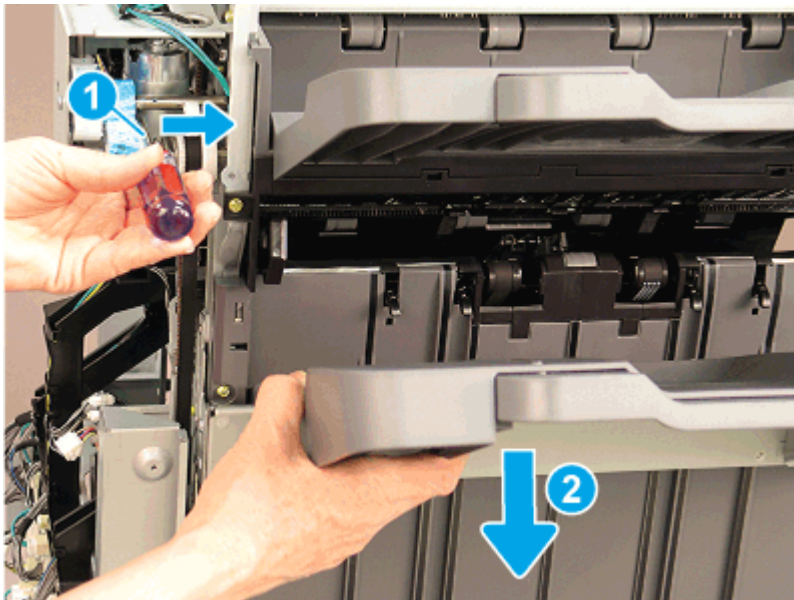


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

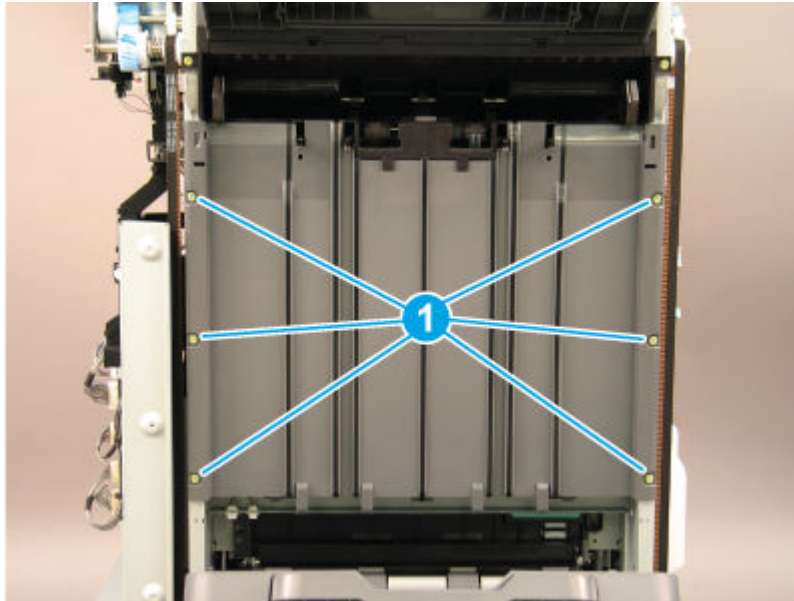
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2427 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2428 Remove six screws

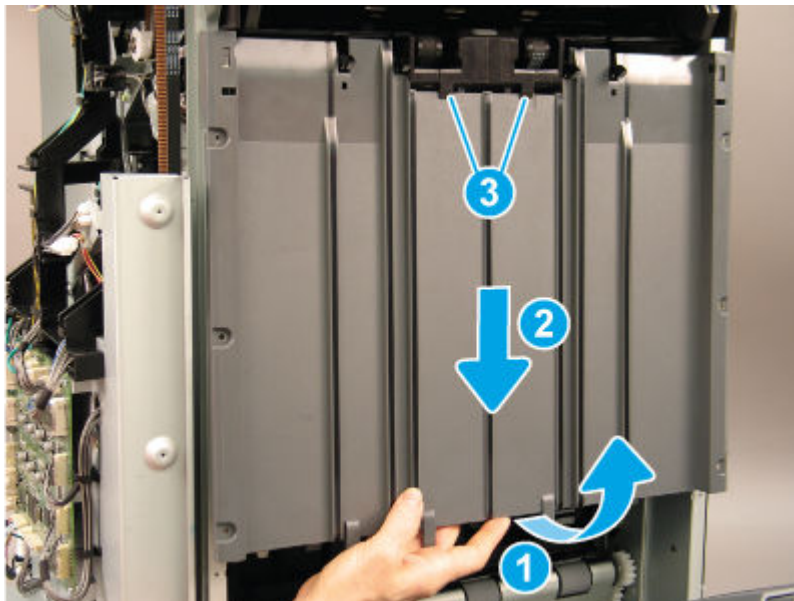


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

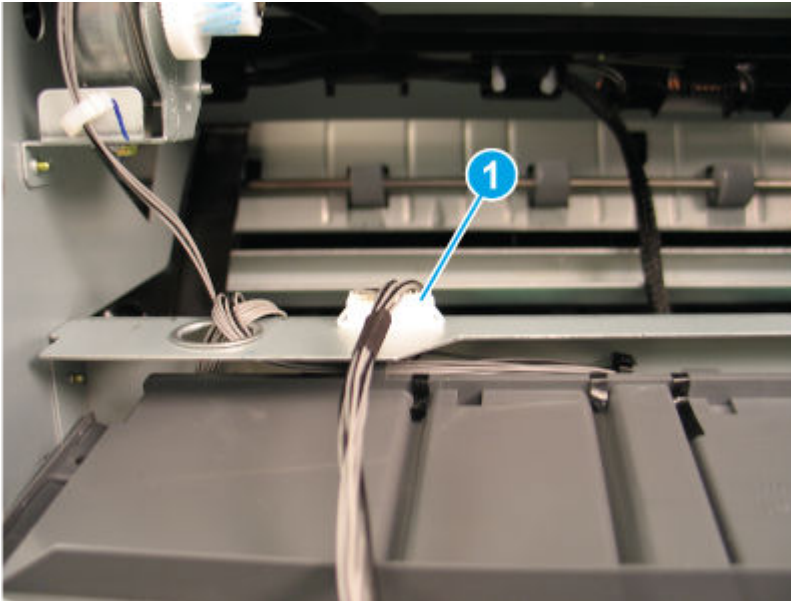
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2429 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2430 Remove the cover



9 Remove the external finisher ejector unit

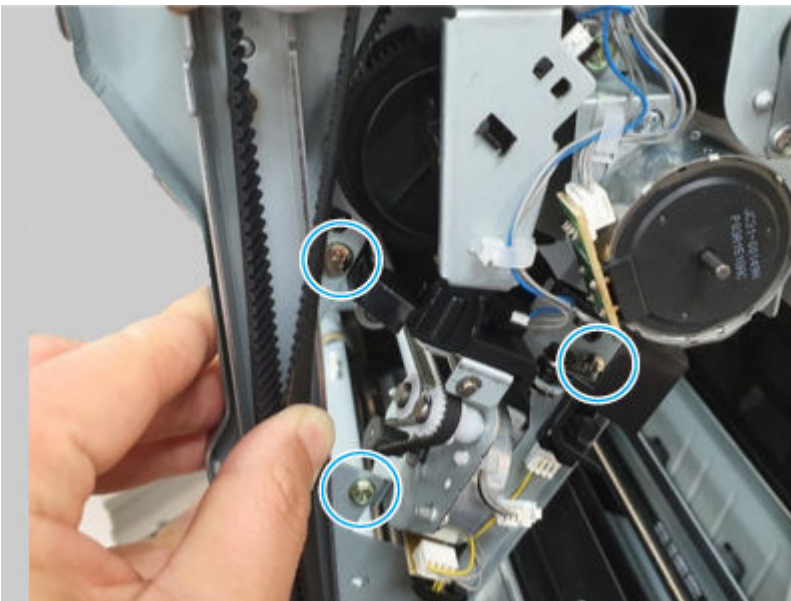
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.



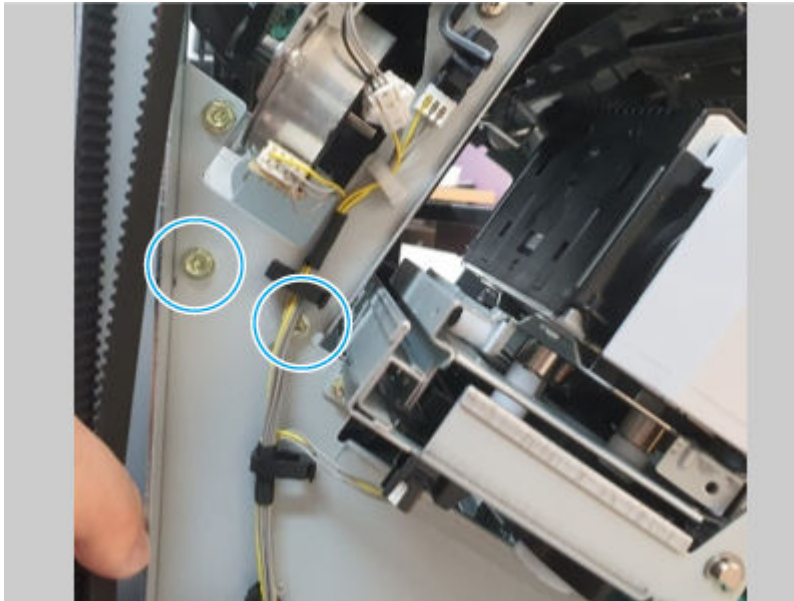
NOTE: Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2431 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-2432 Remove two screws

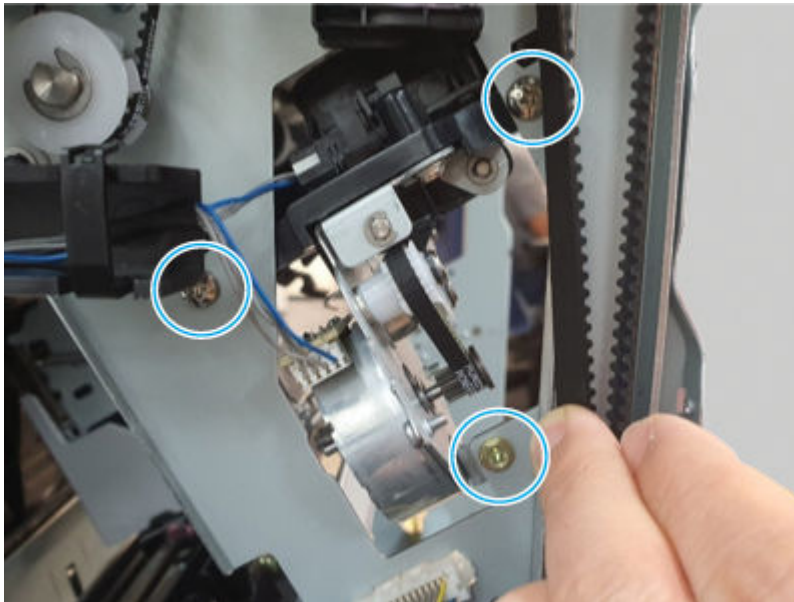


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-2433 Release the tamper



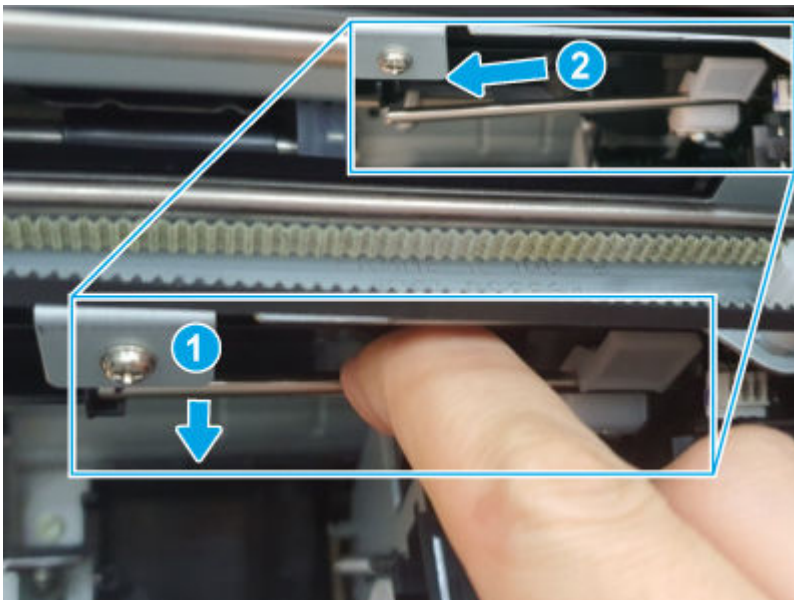
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-2434 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-2435 Remove the shaft

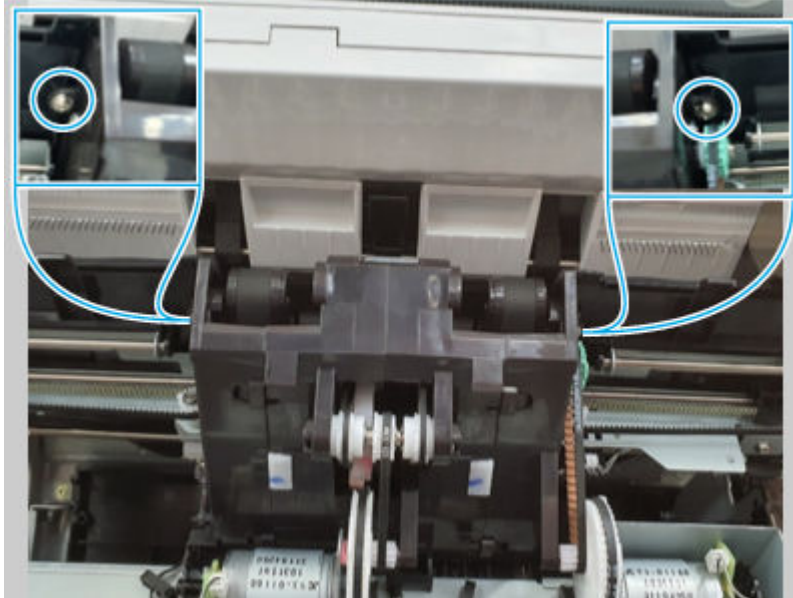


6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.



NOTE: Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-2436 Remove the unit

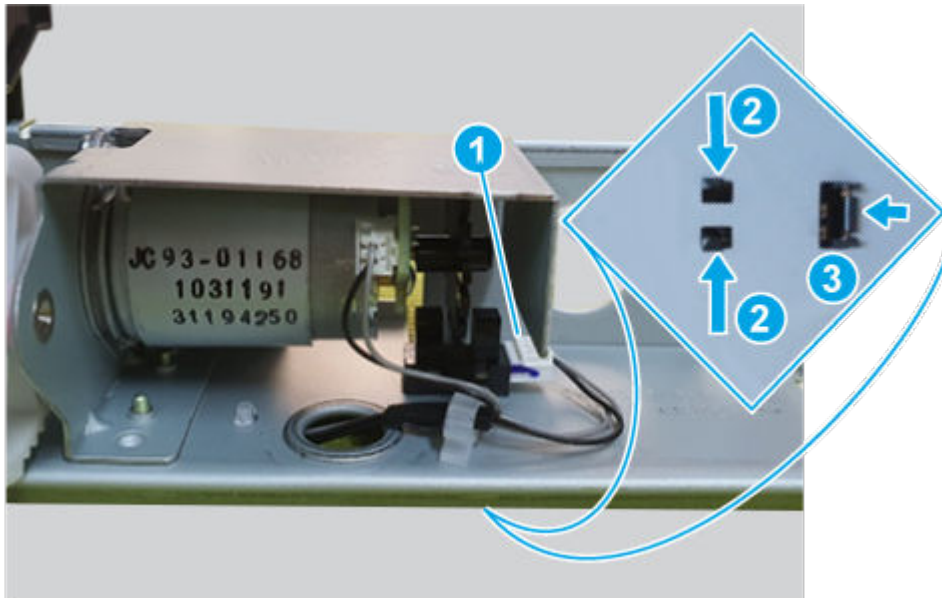


10 Remove the external finisher ejector 2 motor sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector 2 motor sensor.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - b. Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - c. Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3)
 - d. Remove the ejector 2 motor sensor.

Figure 6-2437 Remove the sensor



11 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main output tray unit

Review the external finisher main output tray unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-323 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40028	Main output tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

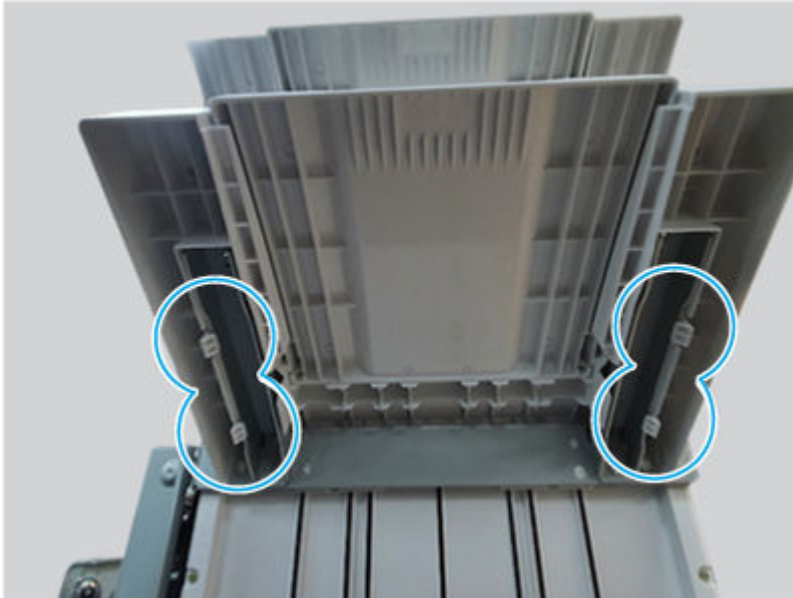
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher main output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray.

- Release four hooks, and then remove the main output tray.

Figure 6-2438 Remove the tray



2 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray top of stack sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-324 Part information

Part number	Part description
1404-001417	Tray sensor kit (Main output tray top of stack sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

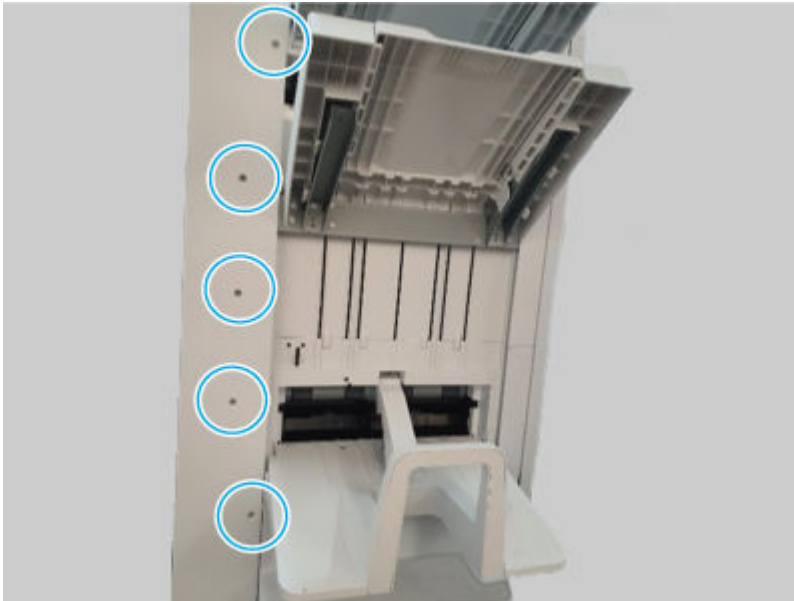
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2439 Remove five screws

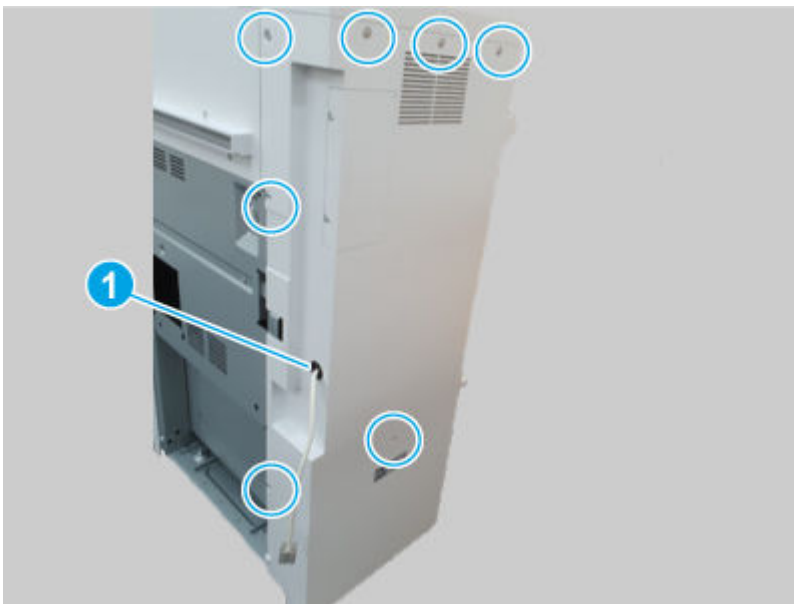


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2440 Remove the cover

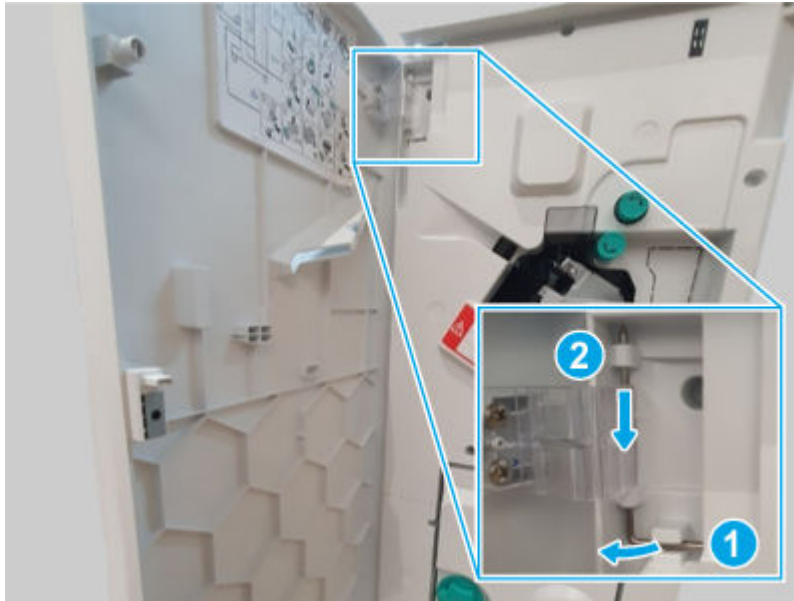


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

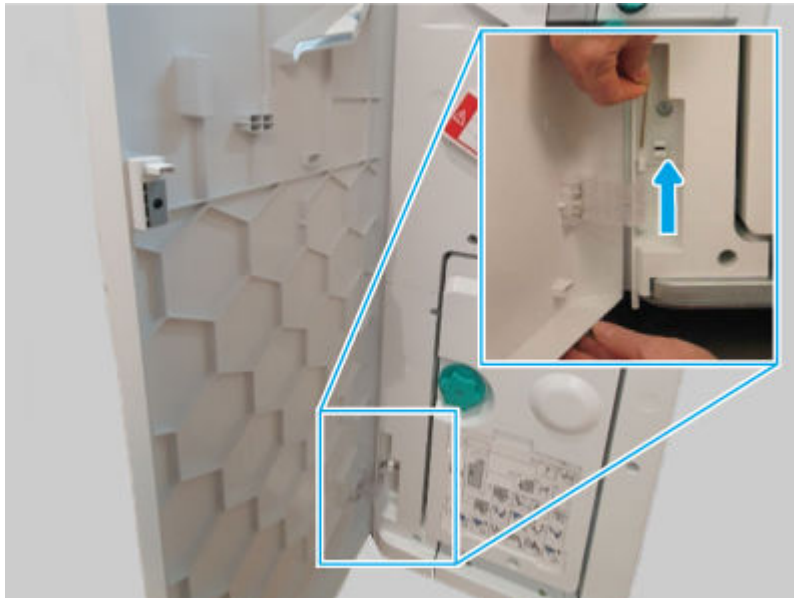
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2441 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2442 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

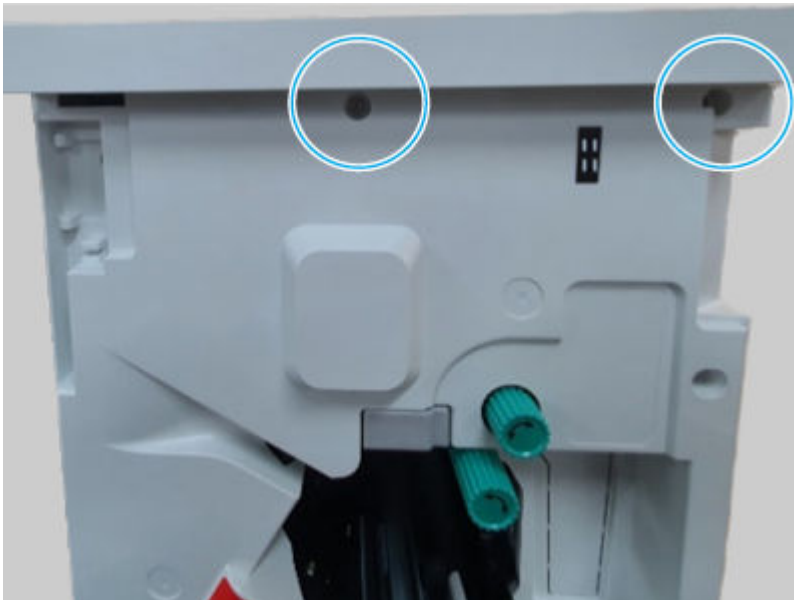
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2443 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2444 Remove the cover

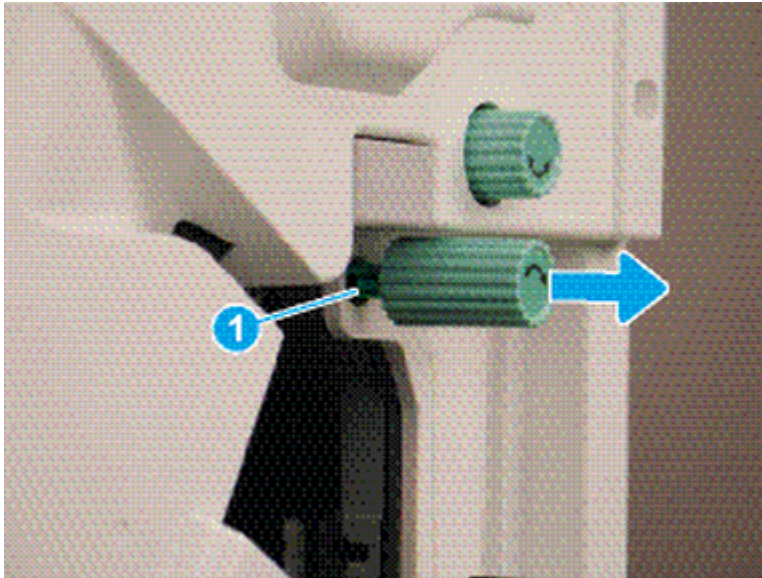


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2445 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2446 Remove the cover



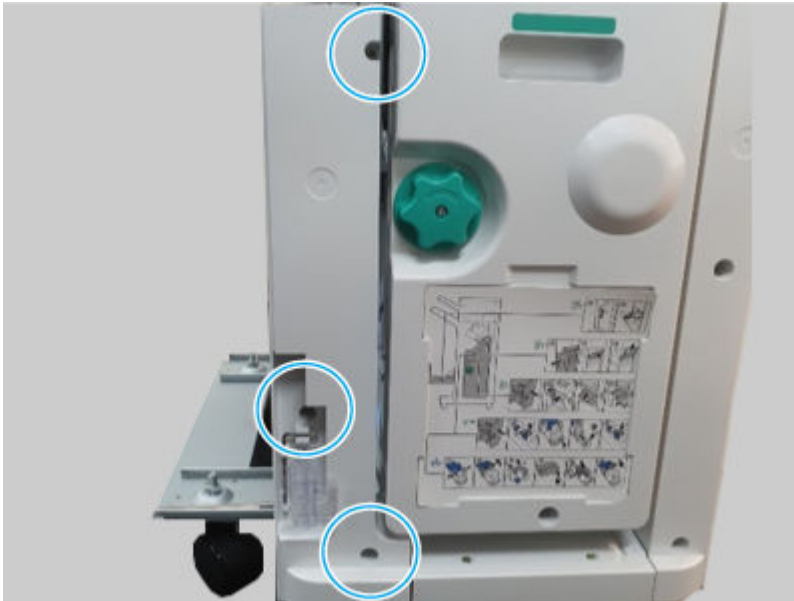
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2447 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

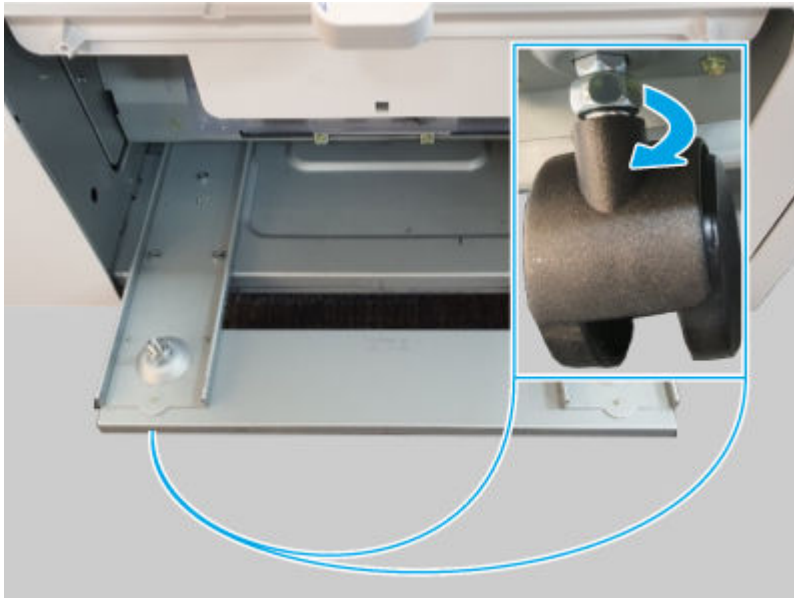
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2448 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2449 Remove the caster

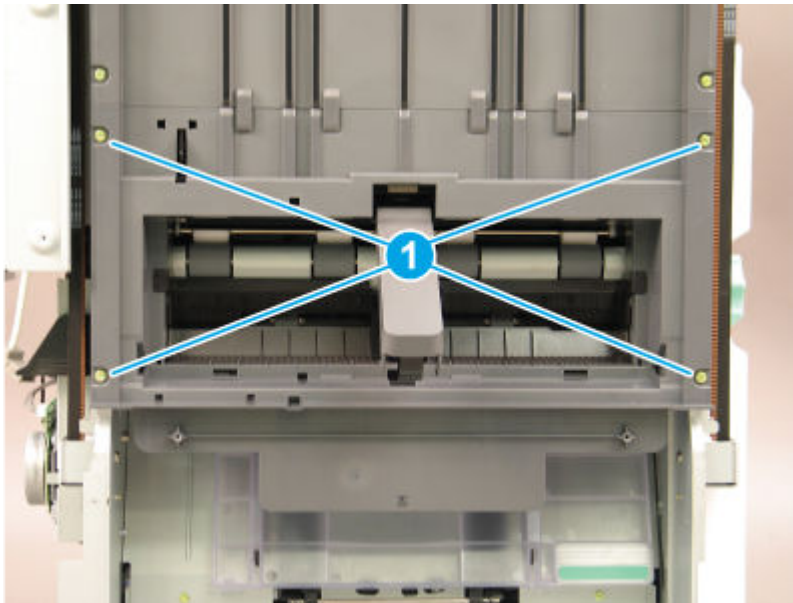


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2450 Remove four screws

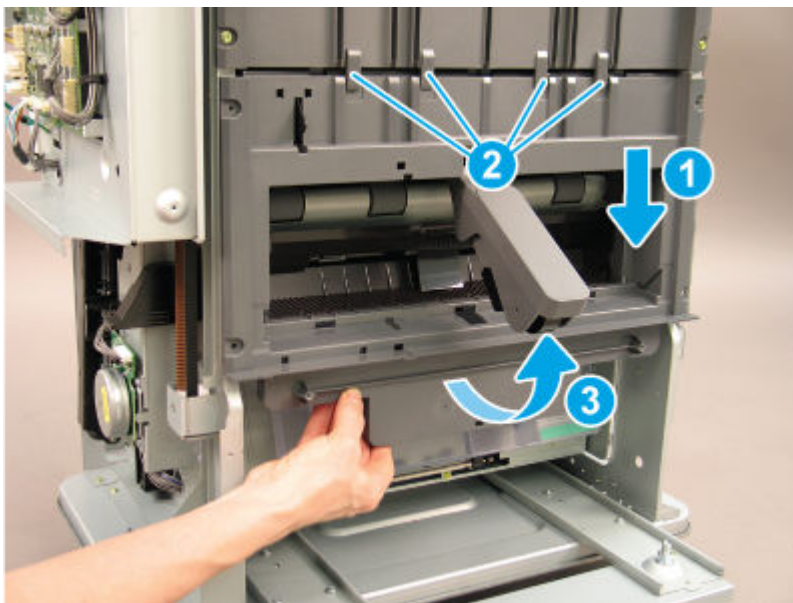


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

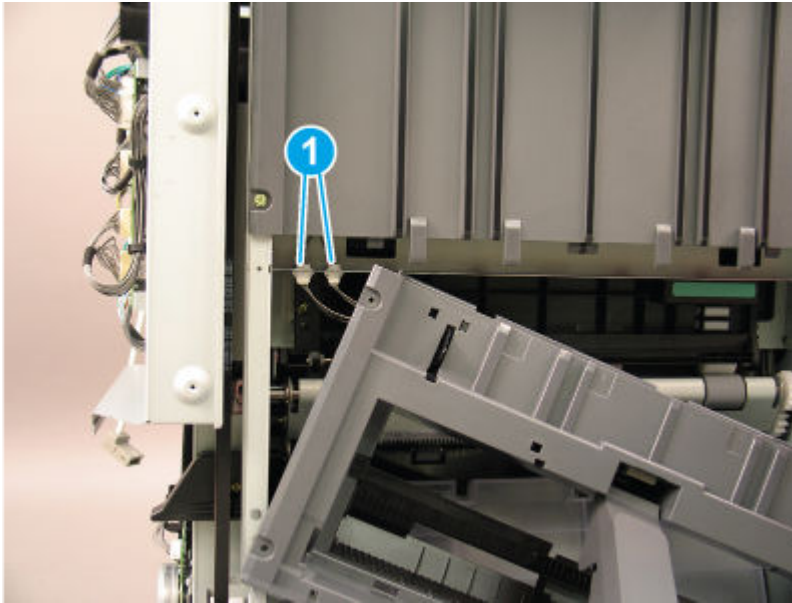
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2451 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2452 Remove the cover

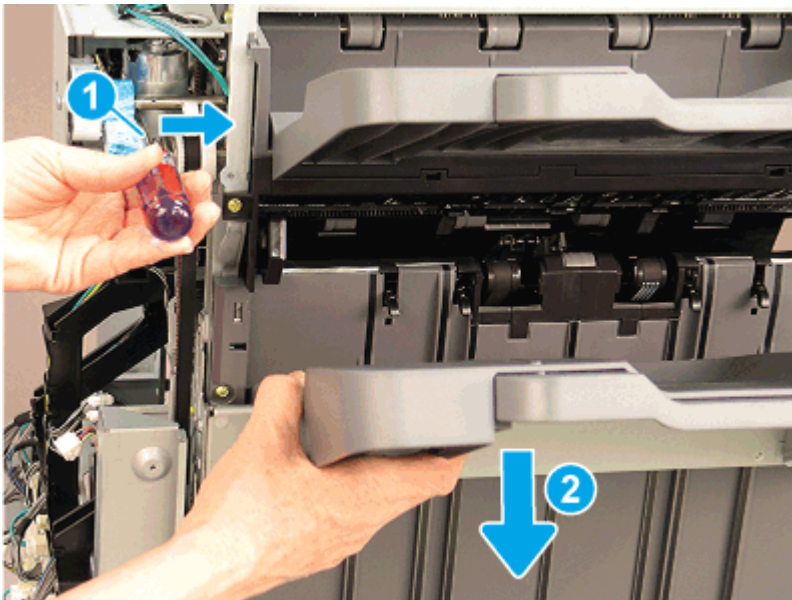


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

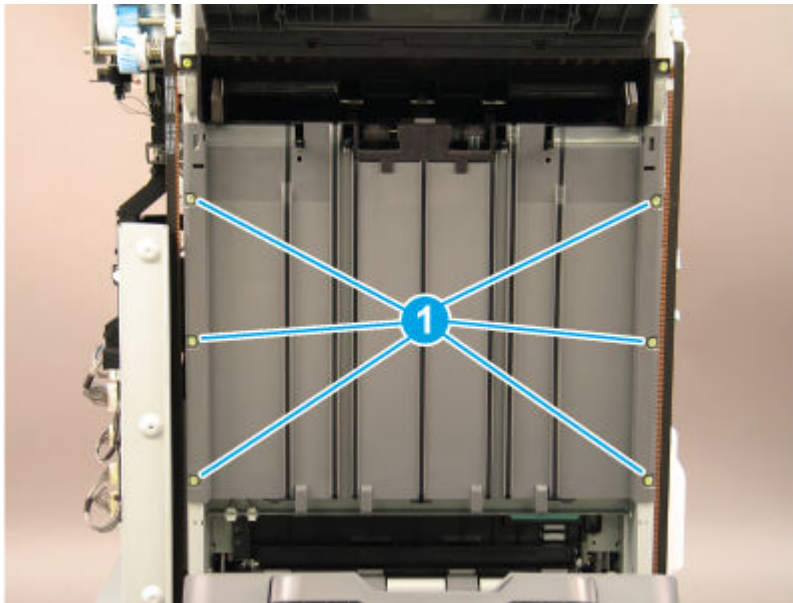
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2453 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2454 Remove six screws

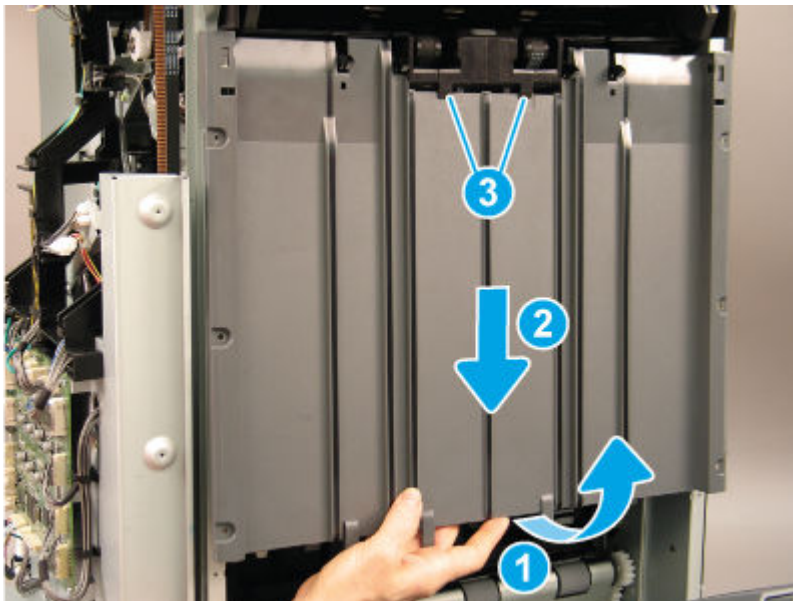


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

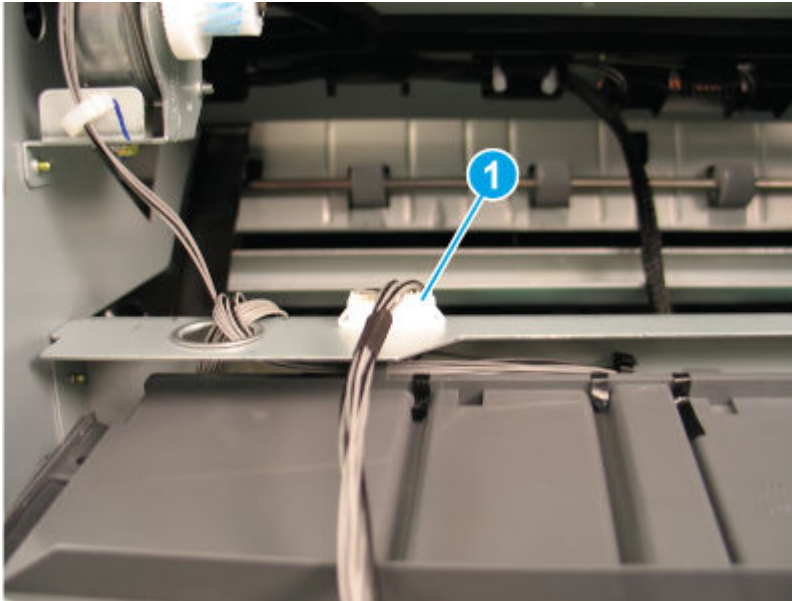
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2455 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2456 Remove the cover

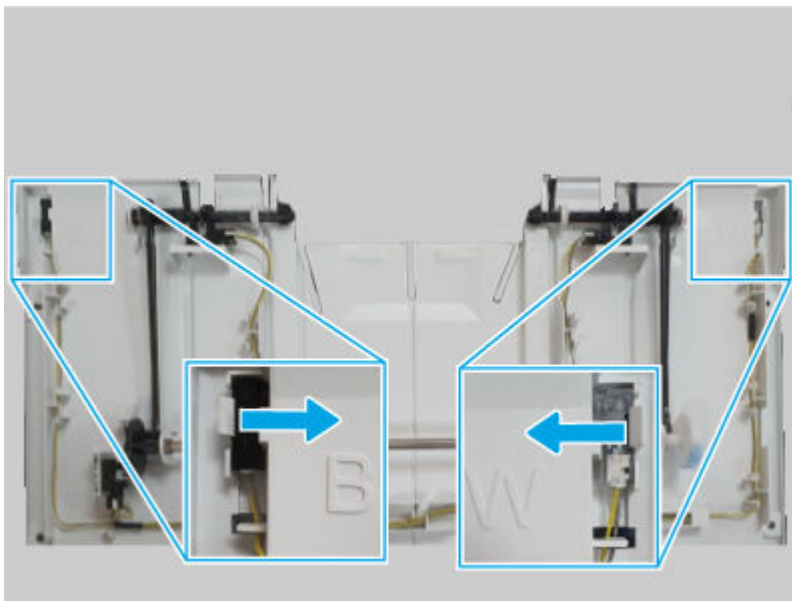


9 Remove the external finisher main output tray top of stack sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray top of stack sensor.

- Release two hooks, and then remove the main output tray top of stack sensor.


Figure 6-2457 Remove the sensor



10 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray lower limit sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray lower limit sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-325 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Main output tray lower limit sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

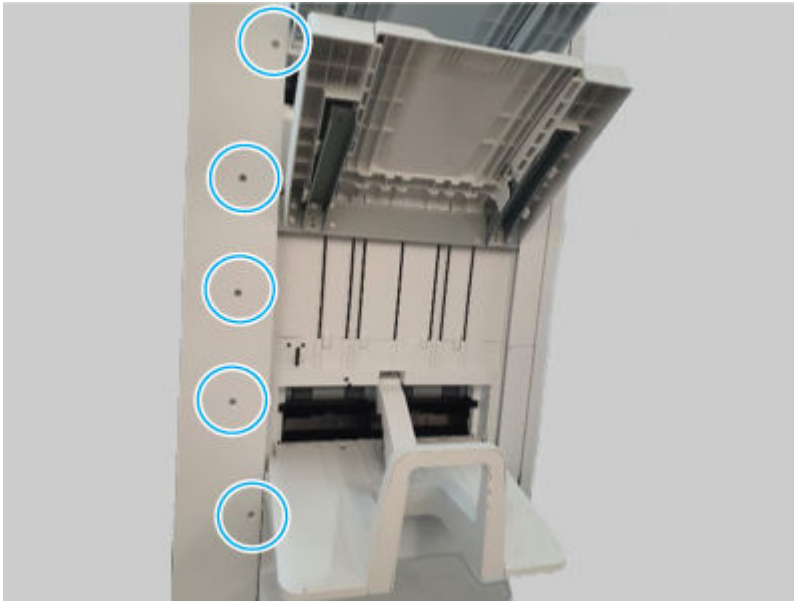
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2458 Remove five screws

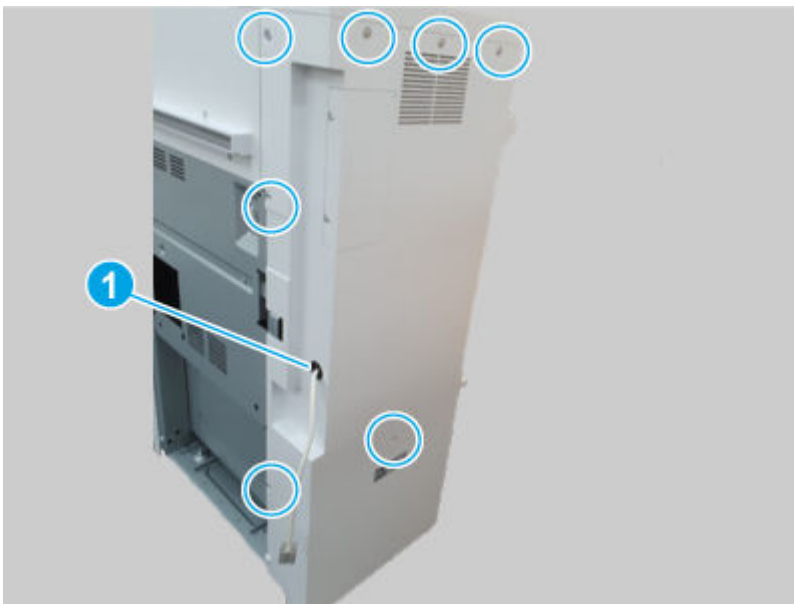


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2459 Remove the cover

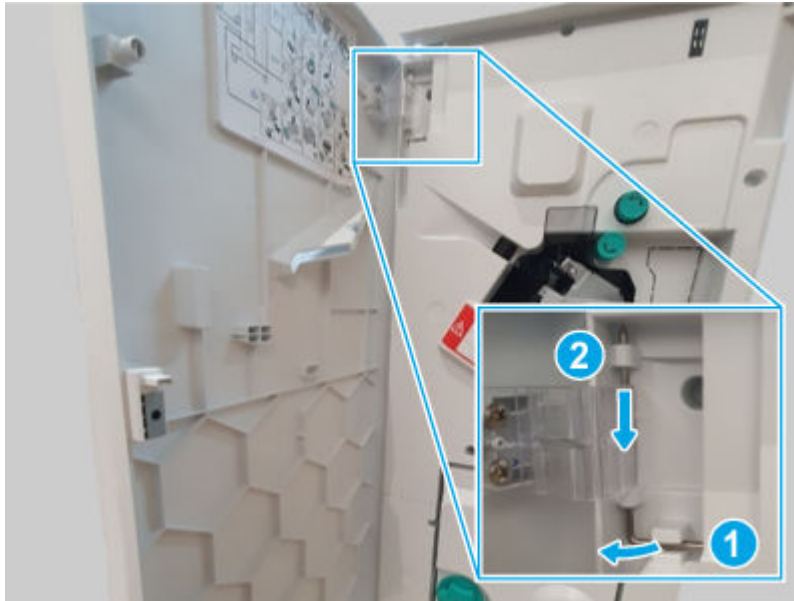


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

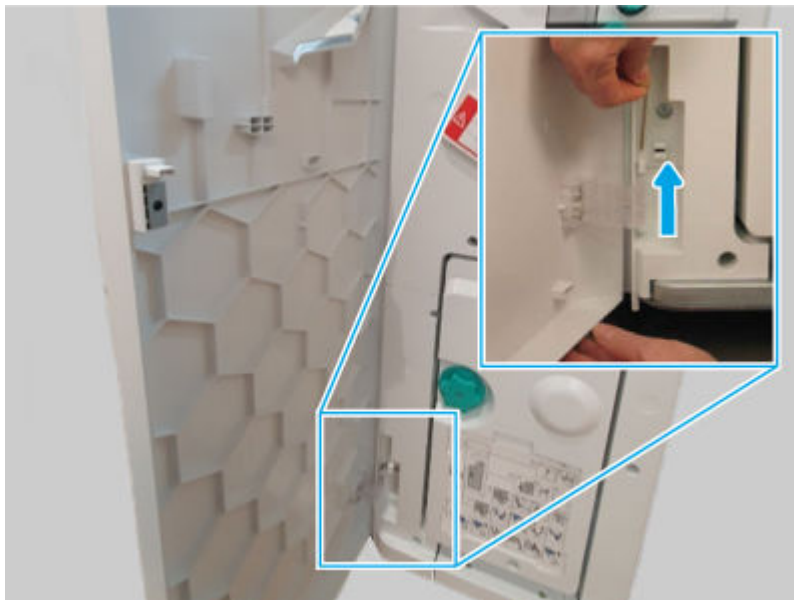
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2460 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2461 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

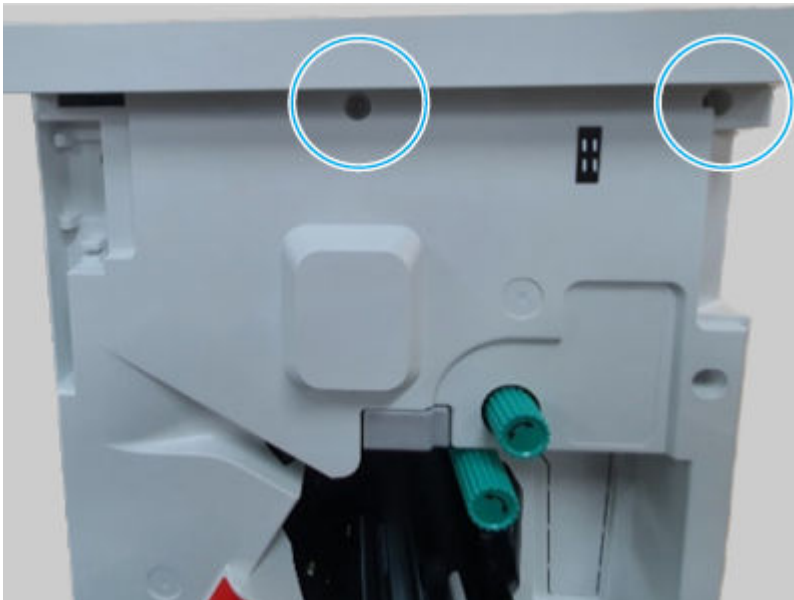
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2462 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2463 Remove the cover

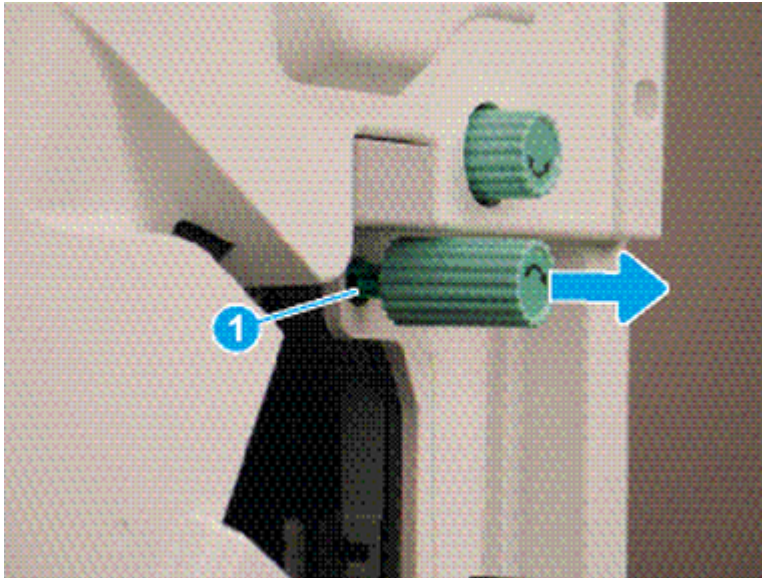


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2464 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2465 Remove the cover



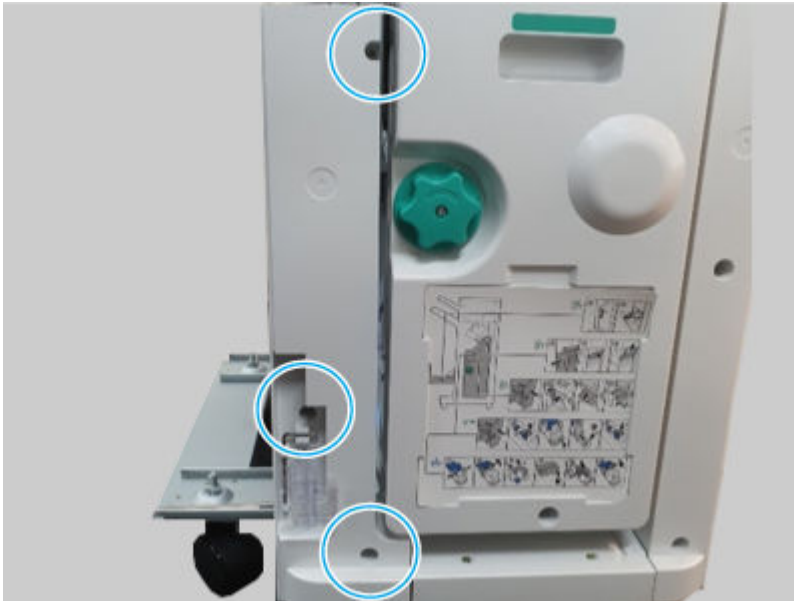
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2466 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

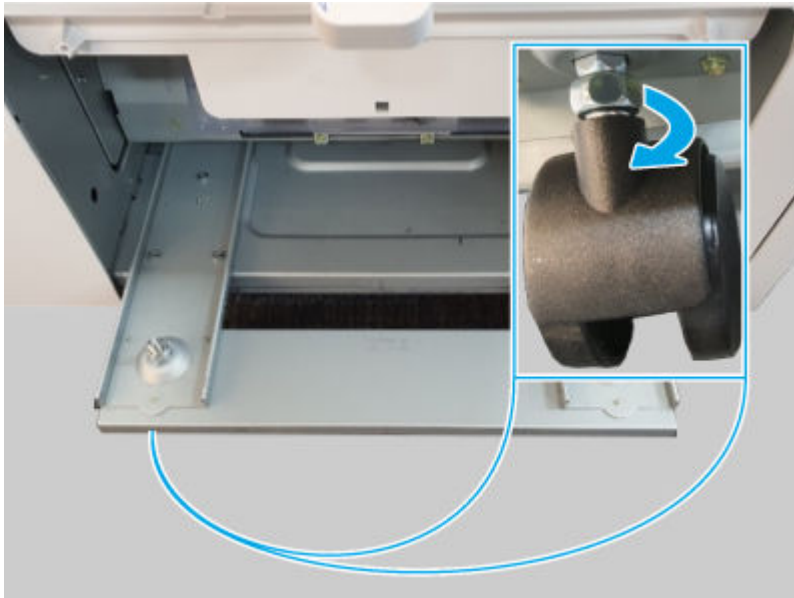
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2467 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2468 Remove the caster

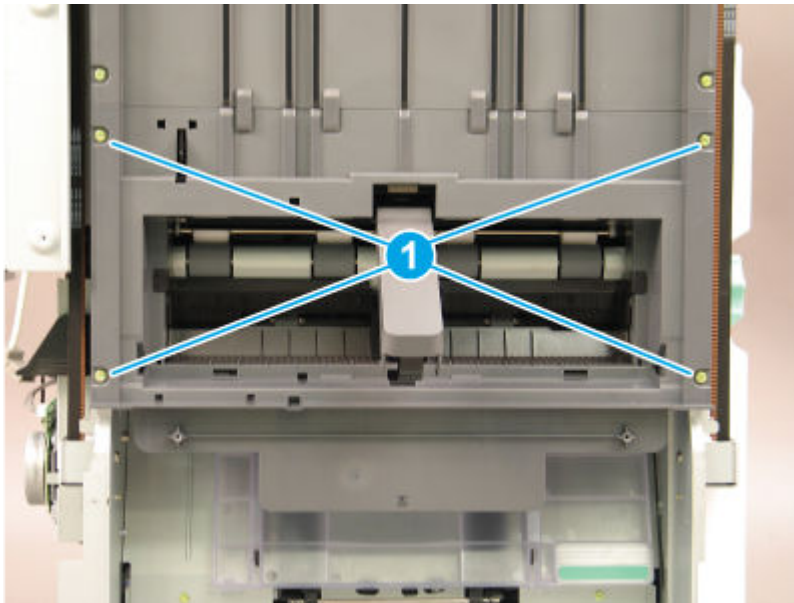


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2469 Remove four screws

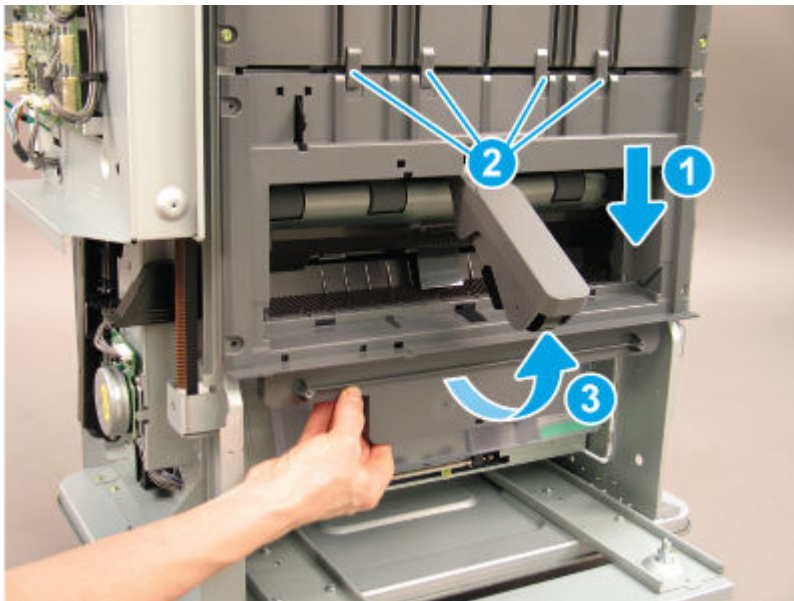


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

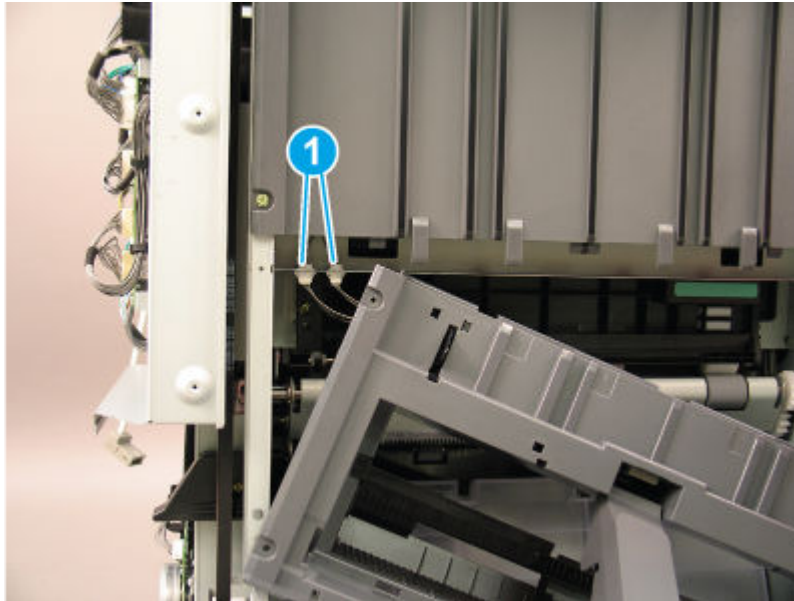
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2470 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2471 Remove the cover

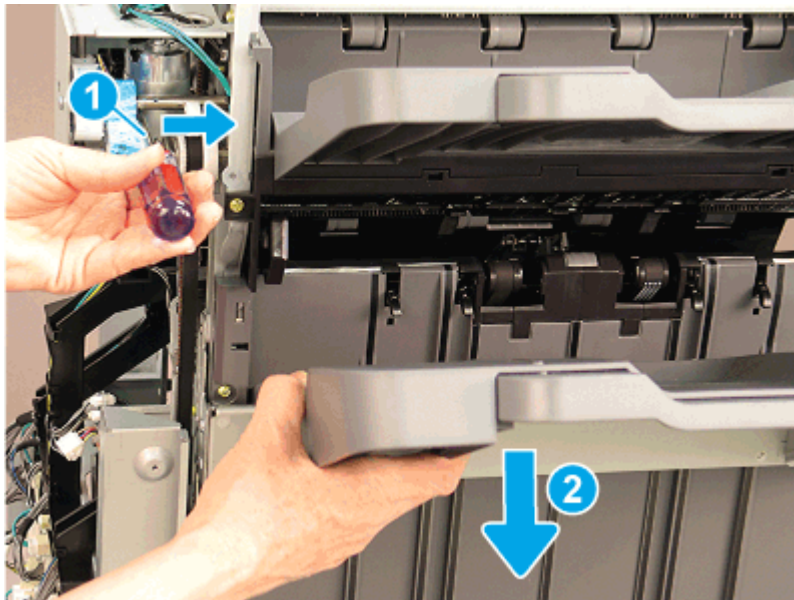


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

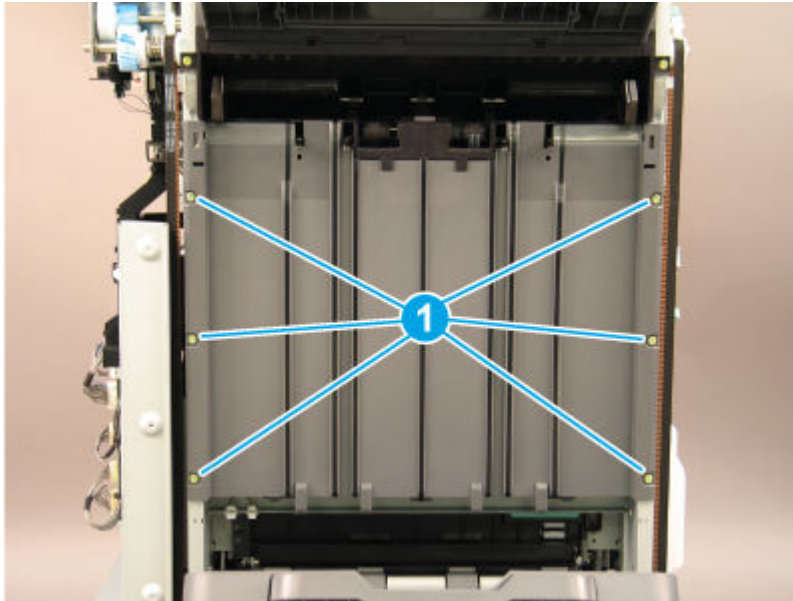
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2472 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2473 Remove six screws

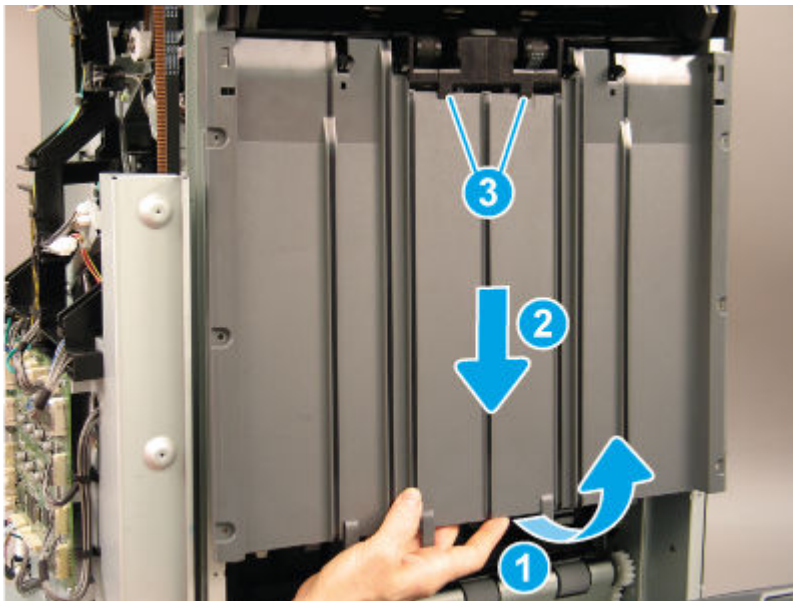


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

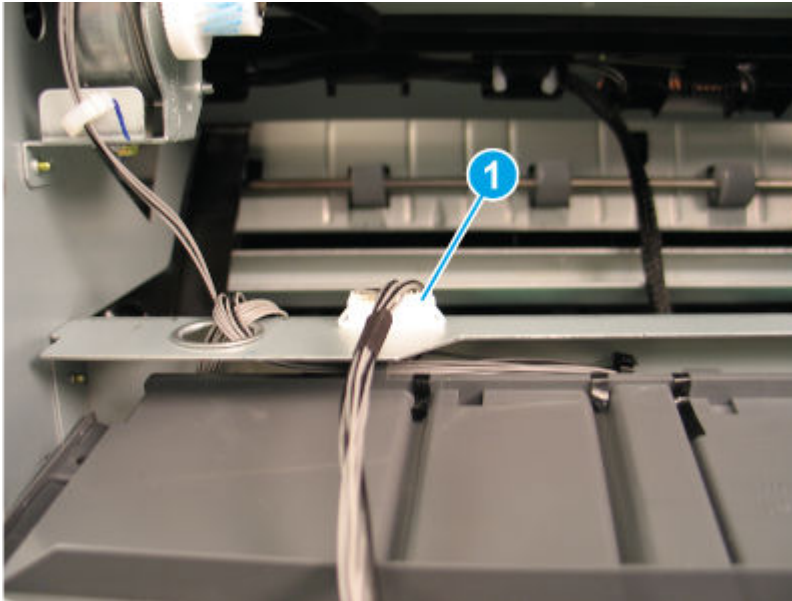
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2474 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2475 Remove the cover

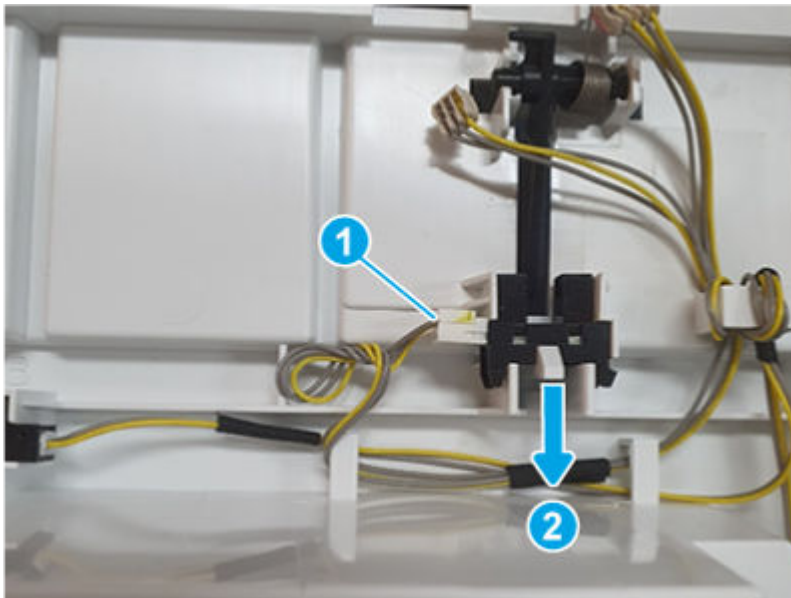


9 Remove the external finisher main output tray lower limit sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray lower limit sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one hook, and then remove the main output tray lower limit sensor.


Figure 6-2476 Remove the sensor



10 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray motor sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray motor sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-326 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Main output tray motor sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

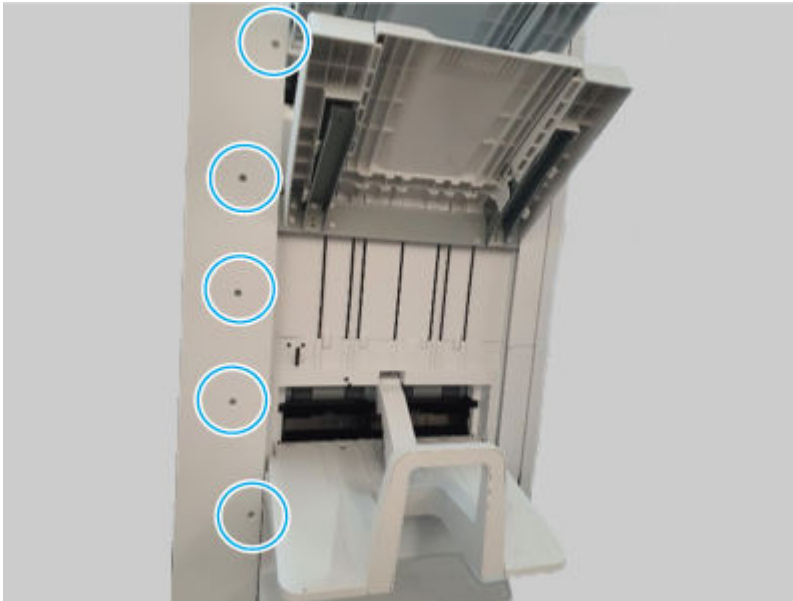
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2477 Remove five screws

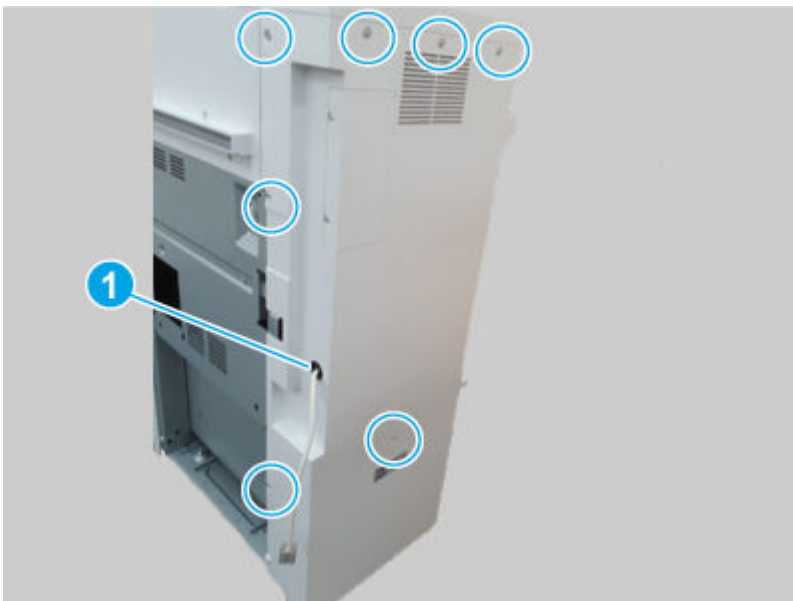


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2478 Remove the cover



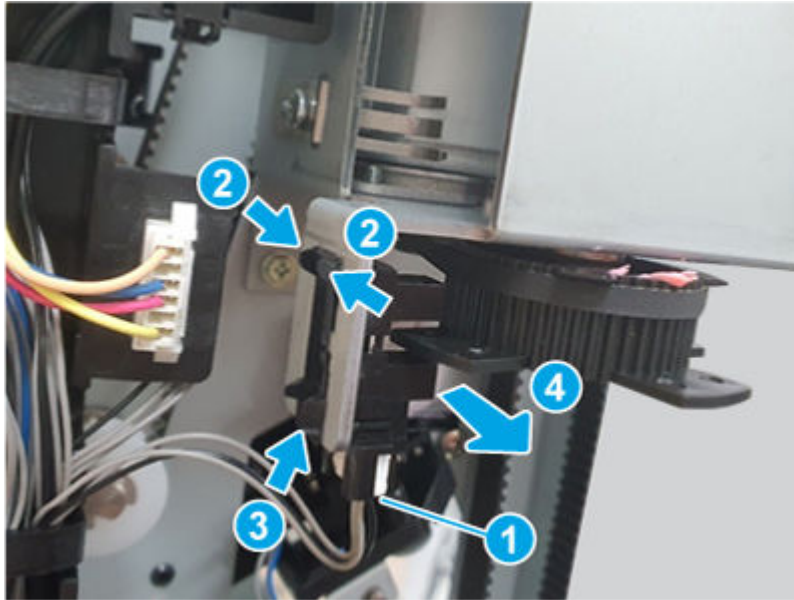
2 Remove the external finisher main output tray motor sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor sensor.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

- b. Release the hooks (callout 2).
- c. Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3)
- d. Remove the main output tray motor sensor (callout 4).

Figure 6-2479 Remove the sensor



3 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray motor drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-327 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

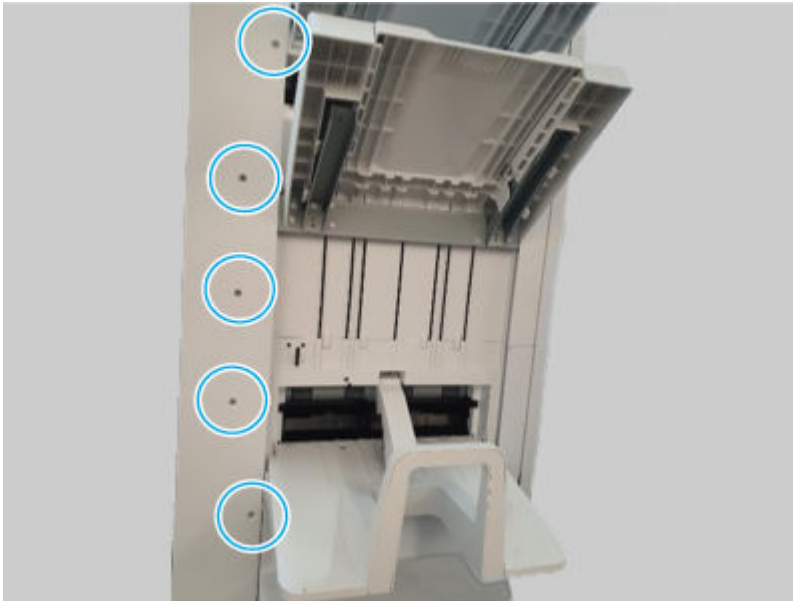
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2480 Remove five screws

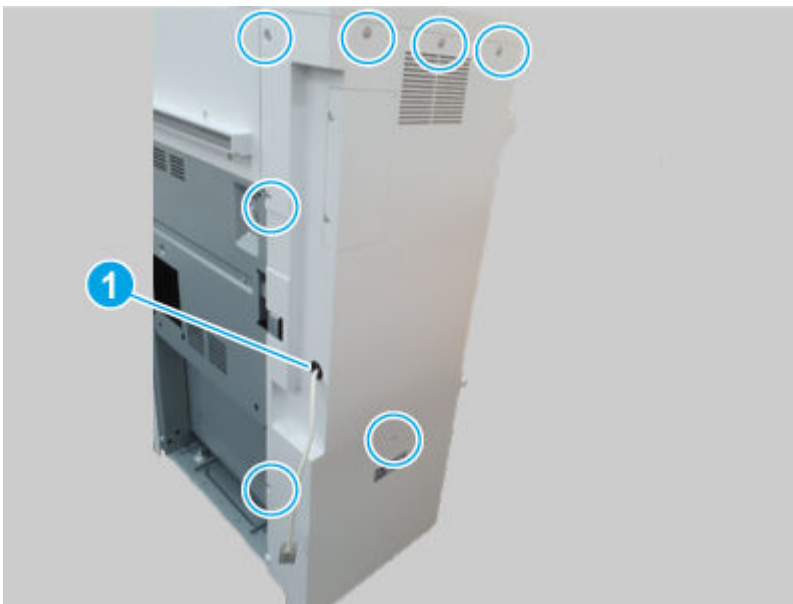


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2481 Remove the cover

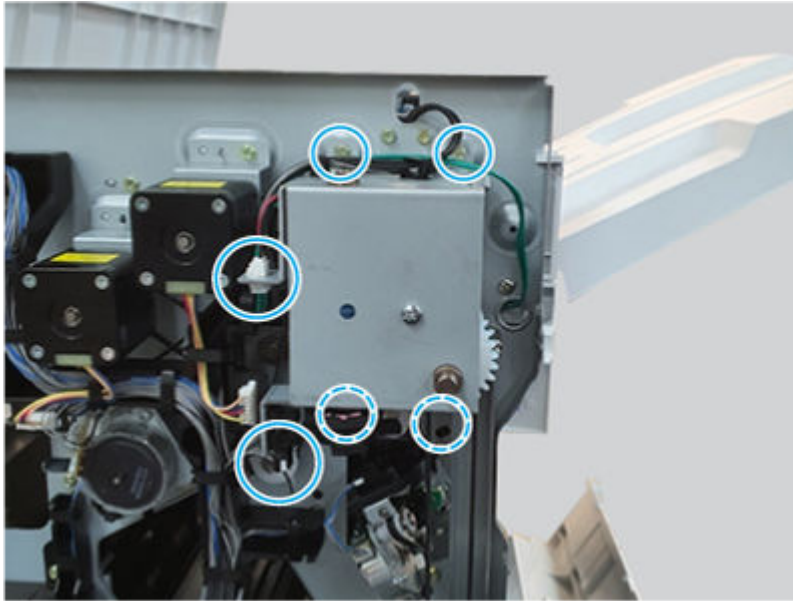


2 Remove the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the main output tray motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-2482 Remove the sensor



3 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-328 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	Tray sensor kit (Main output tray top of stack switch)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

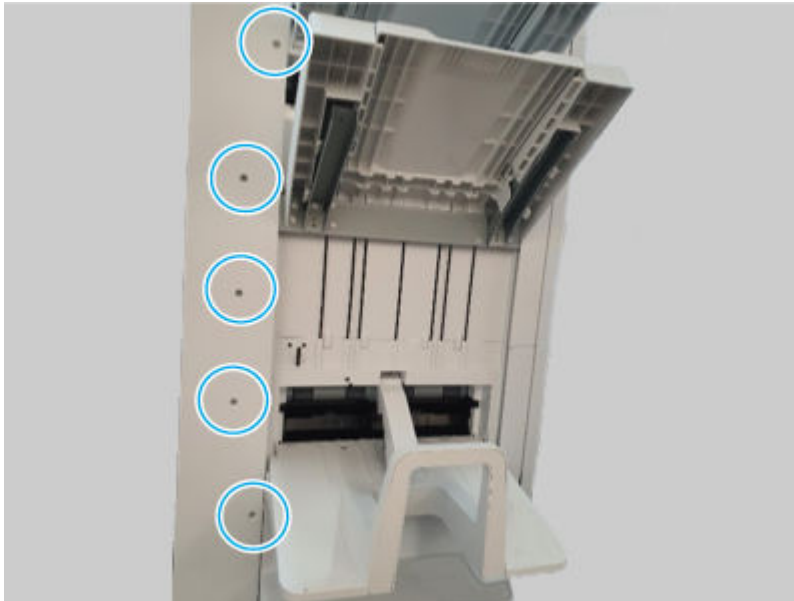
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2483 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


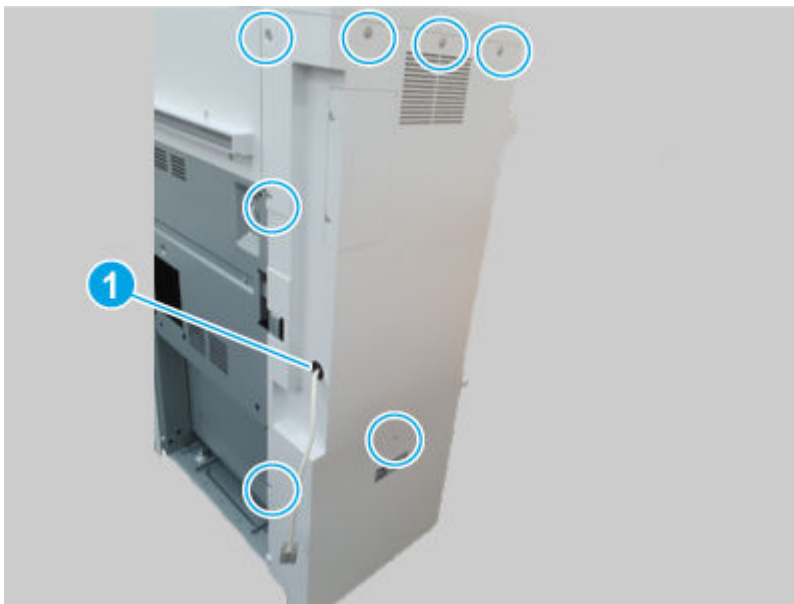
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2484 Remove the cover

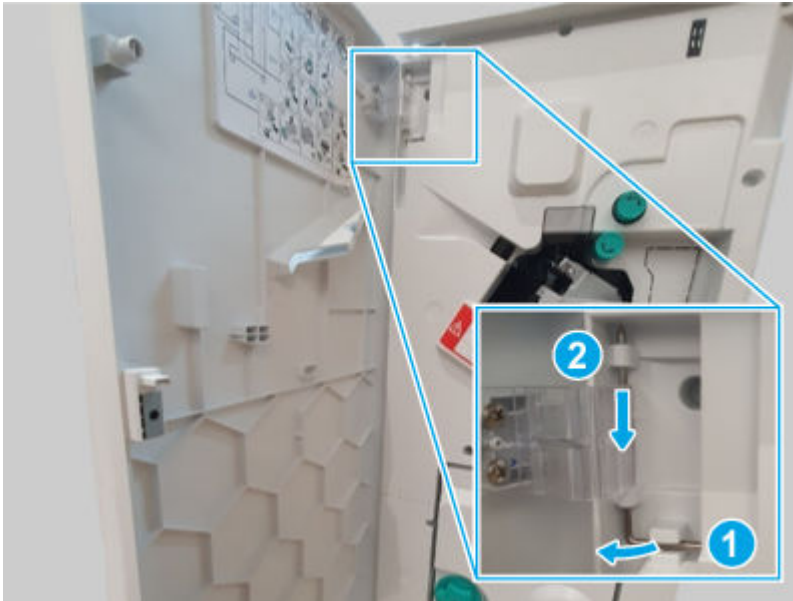


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

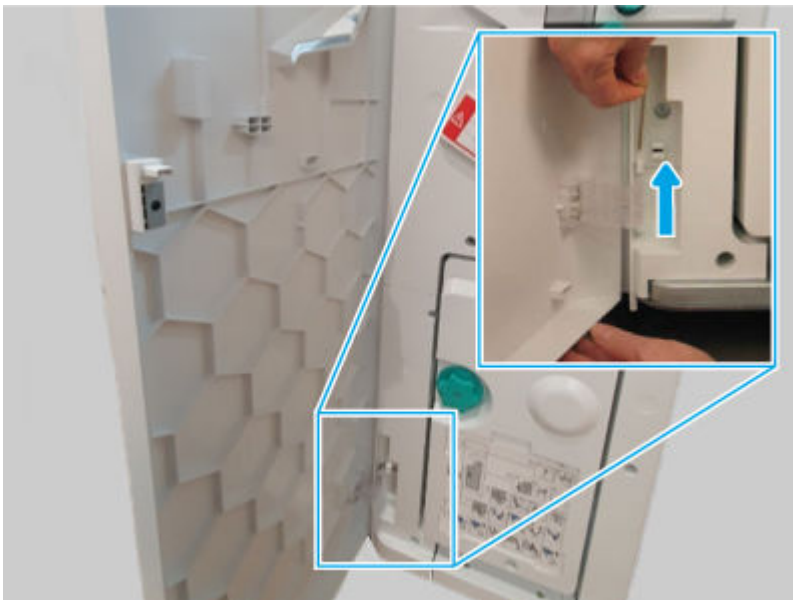
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2485 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2486 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2487 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2488 Remove the cover

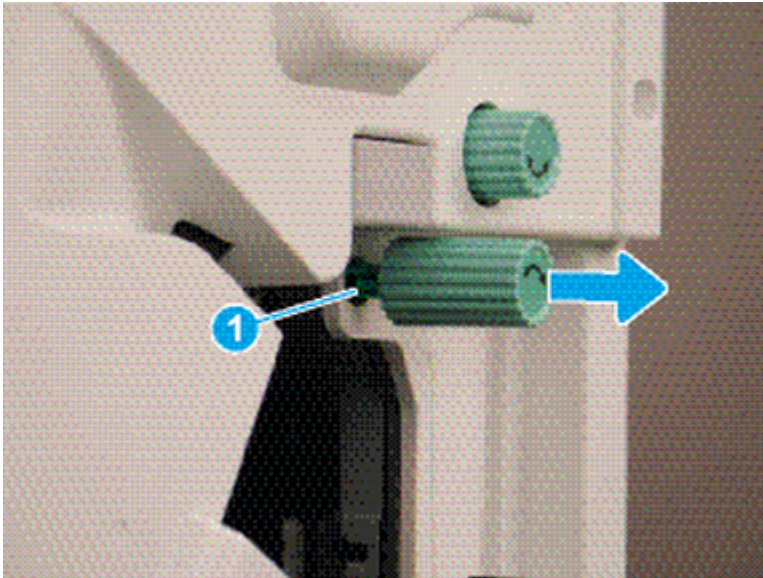


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2489 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2490 Remove the cover

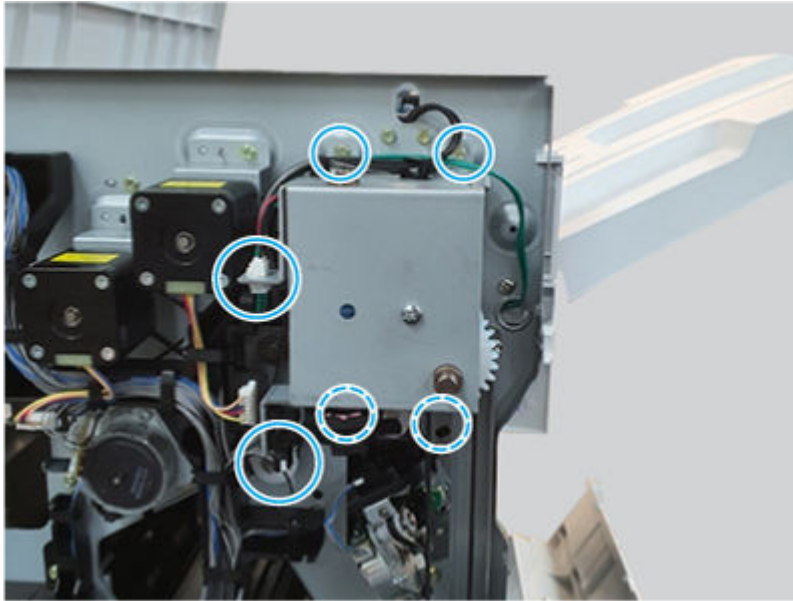


5 Remove the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the main output tray motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-2491 Remove the sensor

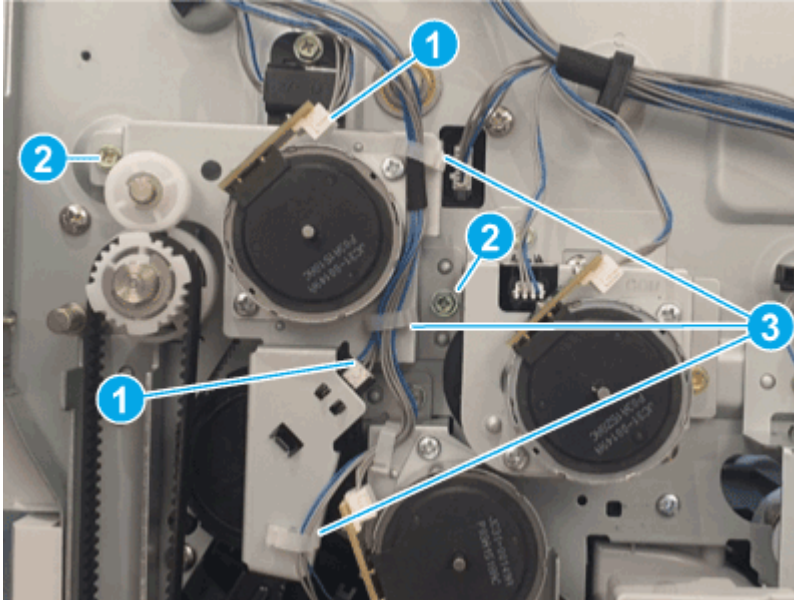


6 Remove the external finisher paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).
 - b. Remove two screws (callout 2).
 - c. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 3), and then remove the paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2492 Remove the assembly

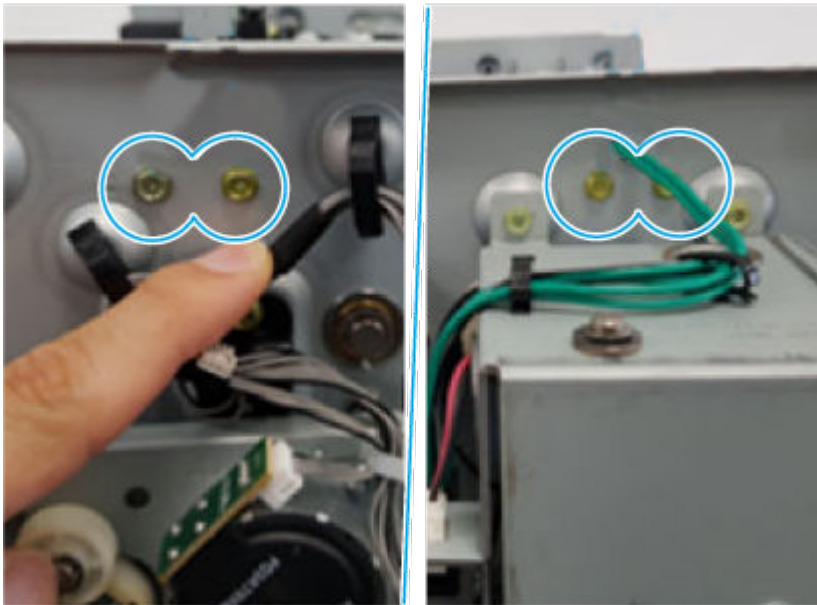


7 Remove the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch.

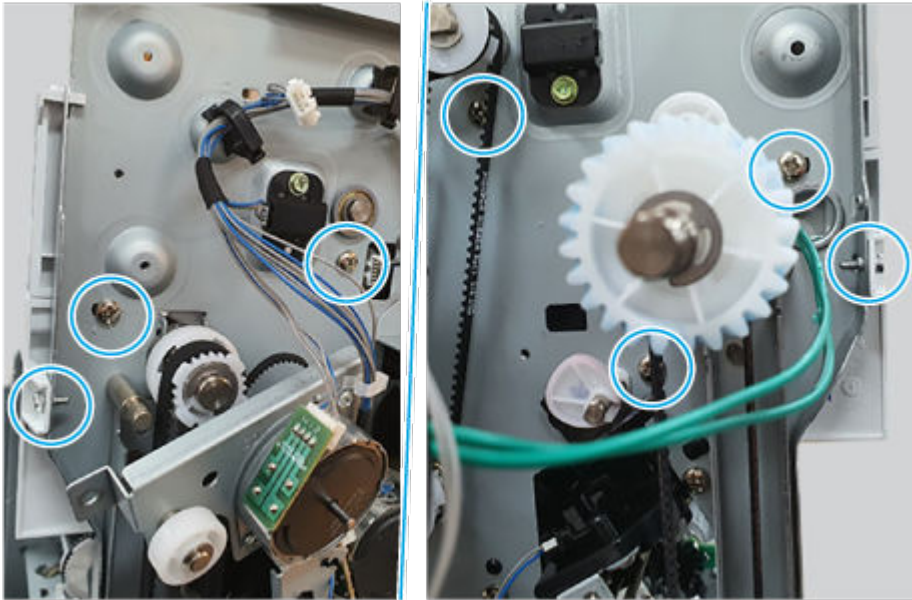
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the frame cover.

Figure 6-2493 Remove the cover



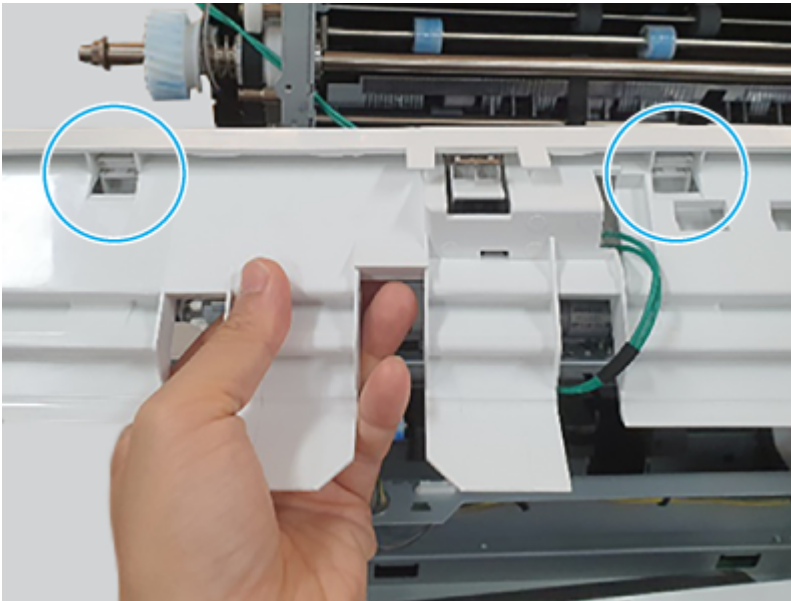
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the top output tray.

Figure 6-2494 Remove the tray



3. Release two hooks.

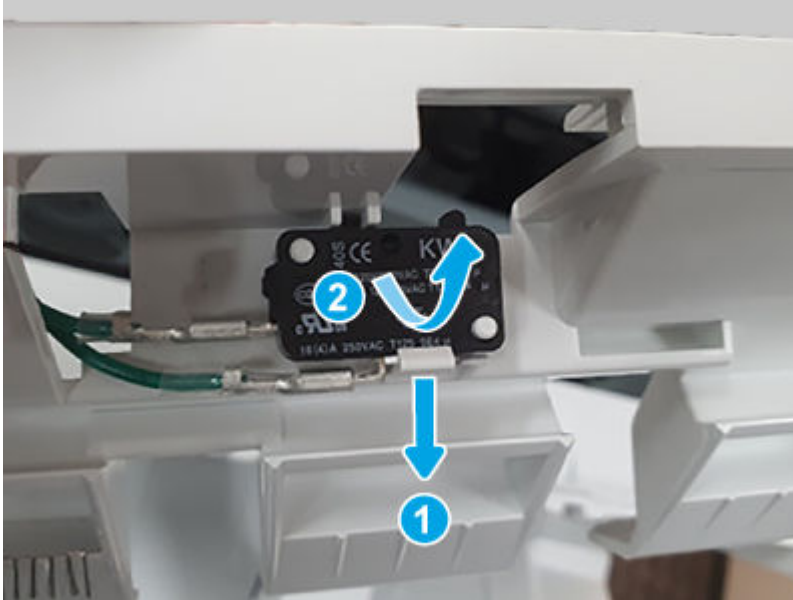
Figure 6-2495 Release two hooks



4. Release one hook, and then separate the sensor from the assembly.

CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the switch. It is still attached to the finisher by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-2496 Release the sensor



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the main output tray top of stack switch.


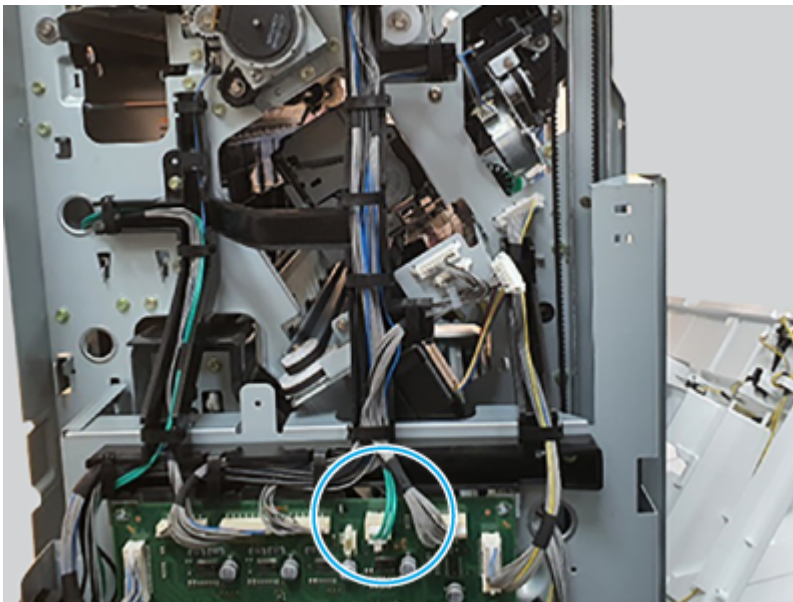
 **NOTE:** Release the switch wire harness from the retainers as needed to remove the switch.


Figure 6-2497 Remove the switch



8 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper holding unit

Review the external finisher paper holding unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Front and rear paper holding sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front and rear paper holding sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-329 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Front paper holding sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Rear paper holding sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

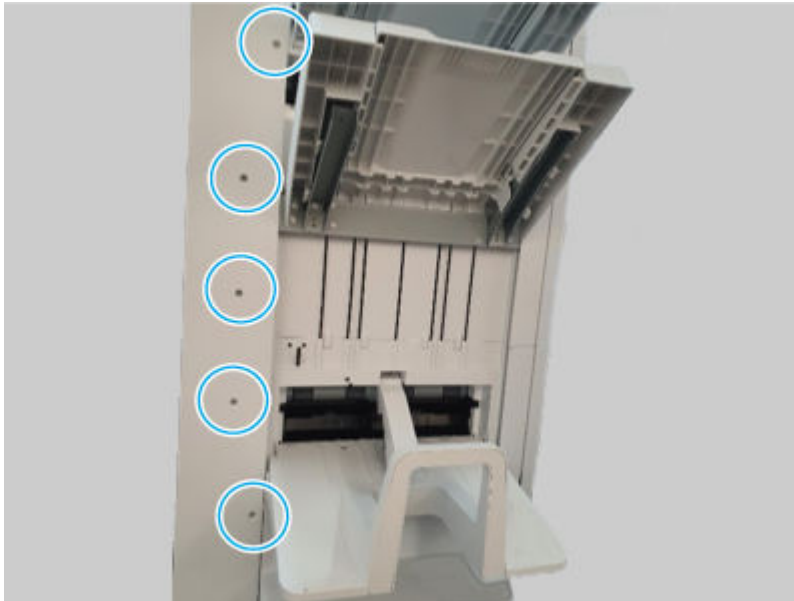
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2498 Remove five screws

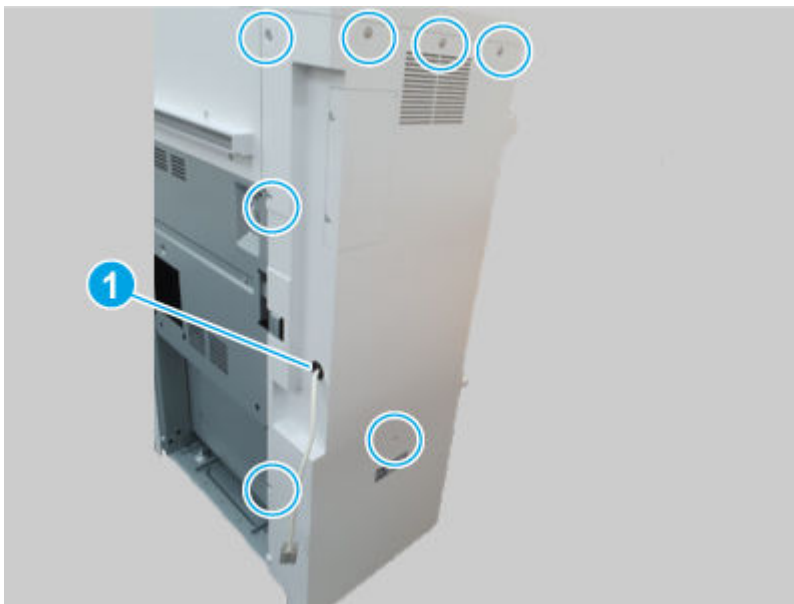


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2499 Remove the cover

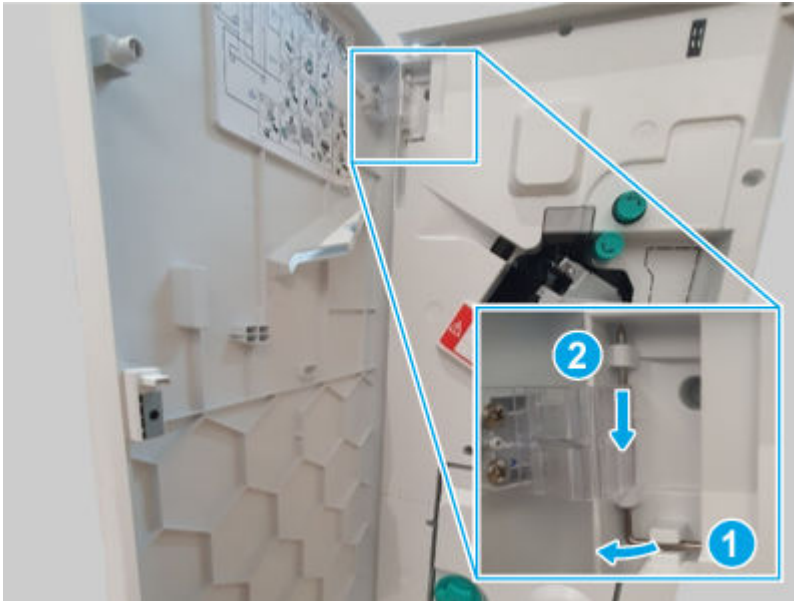


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

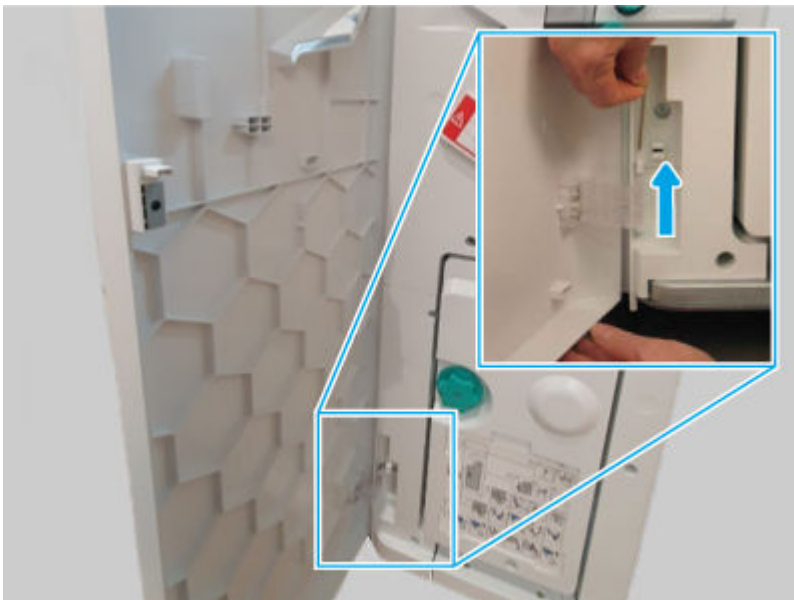
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2500 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2501 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

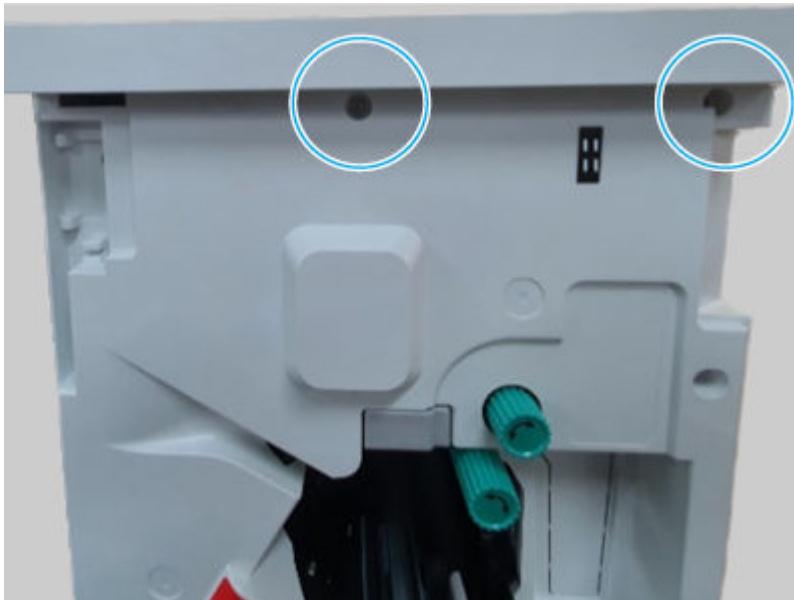
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2502 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2503 Remove the cover

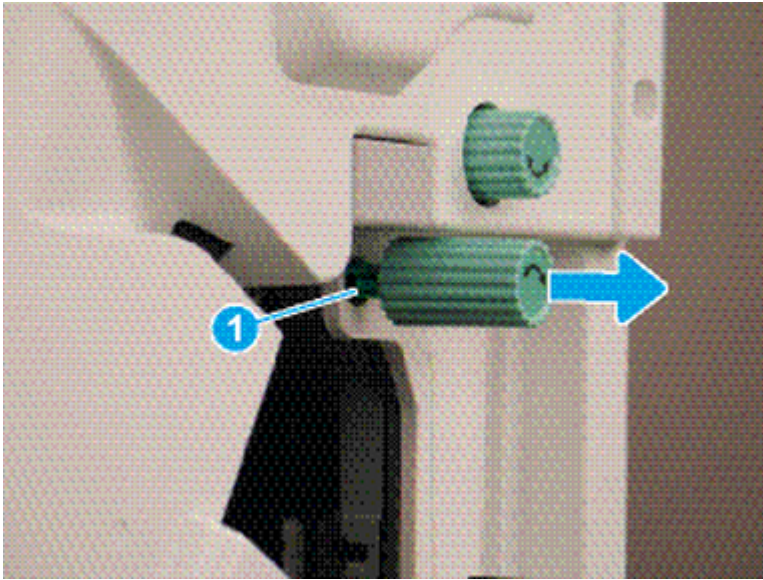


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2504 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2505 Remove the cover



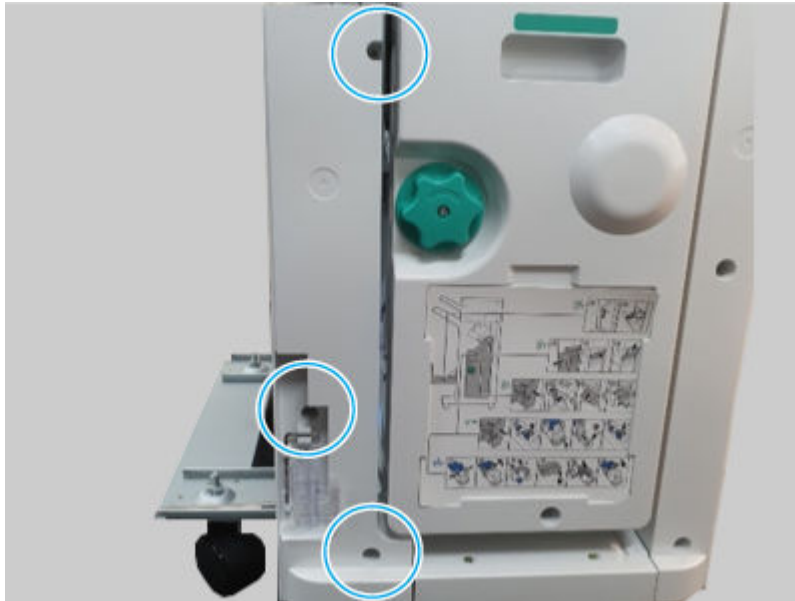
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2506 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

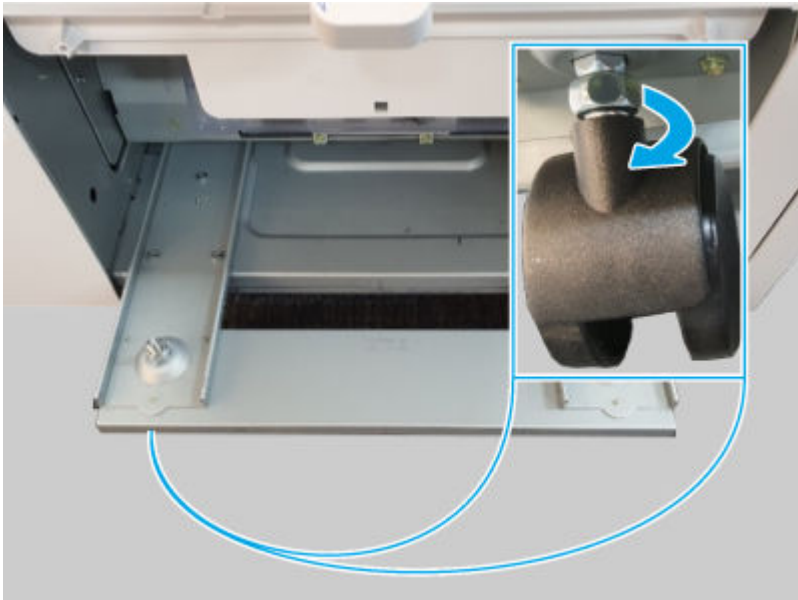
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2507 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2508 Remove the caster

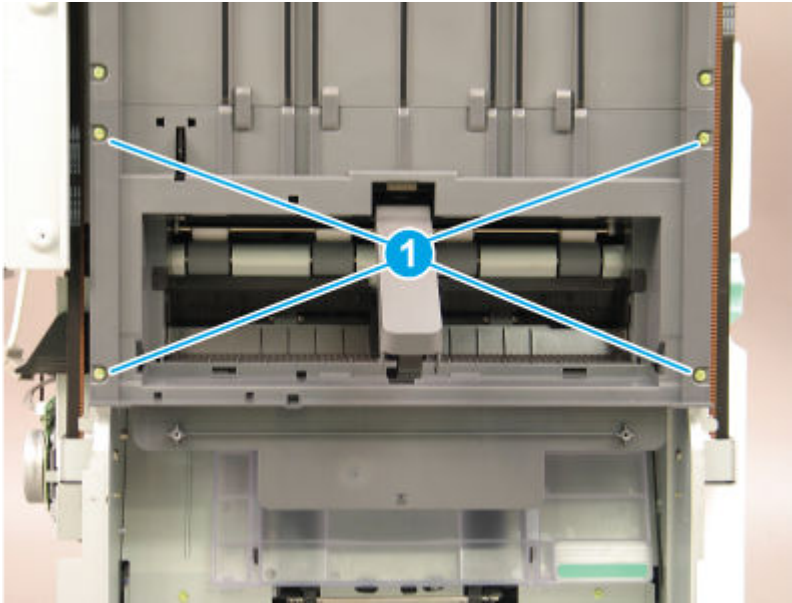


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2509 Remove four screws

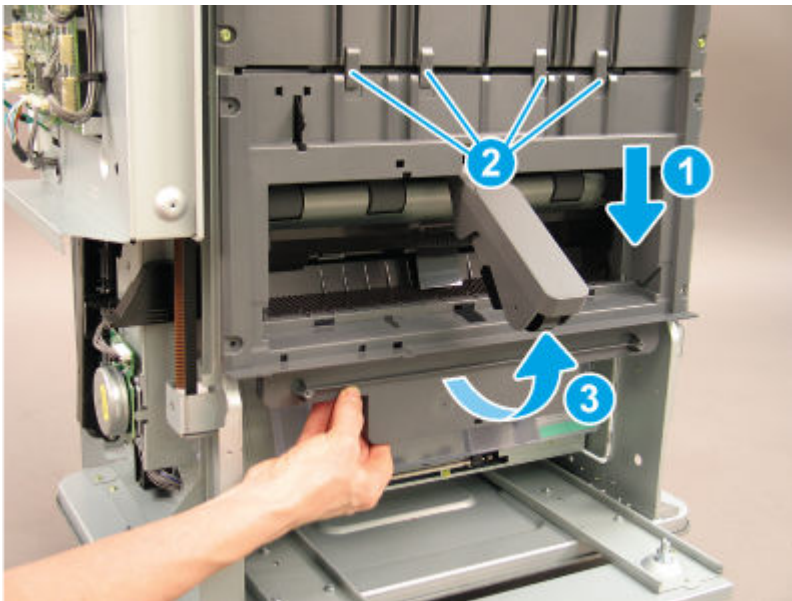


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

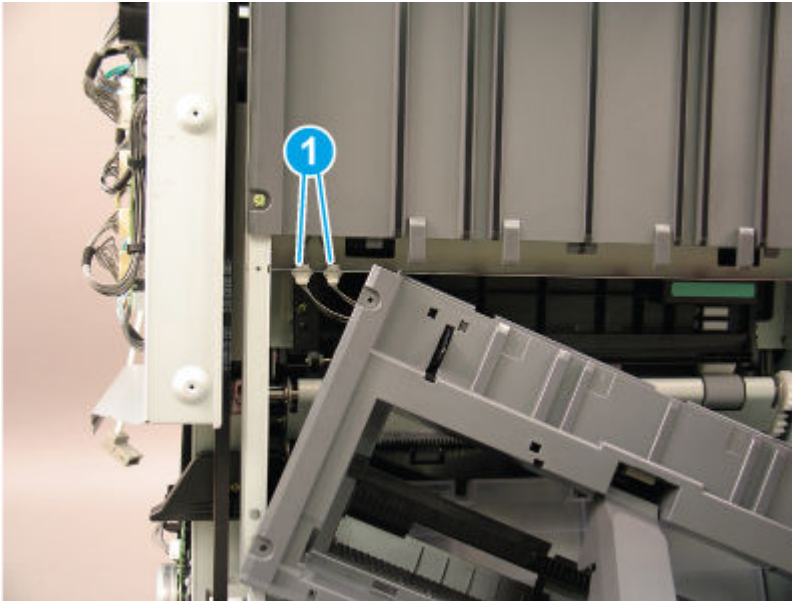
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2510 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2511 Remove the cover

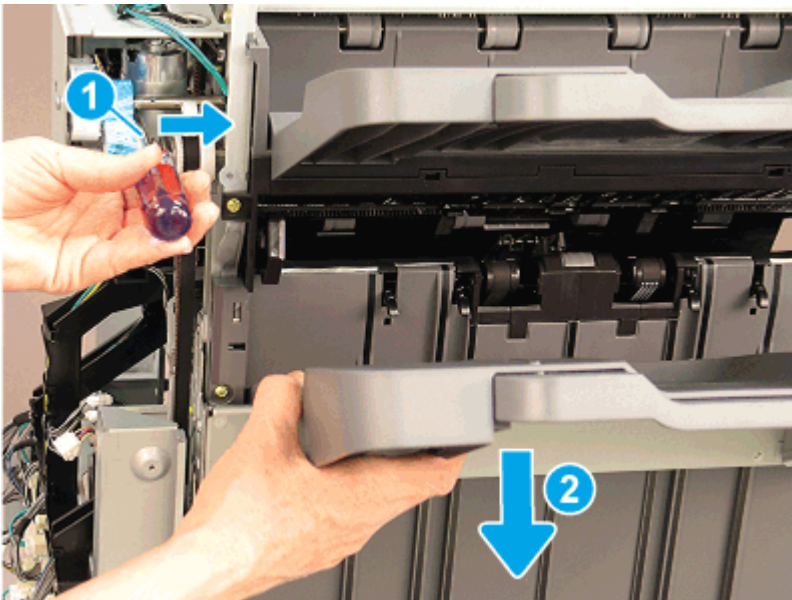


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

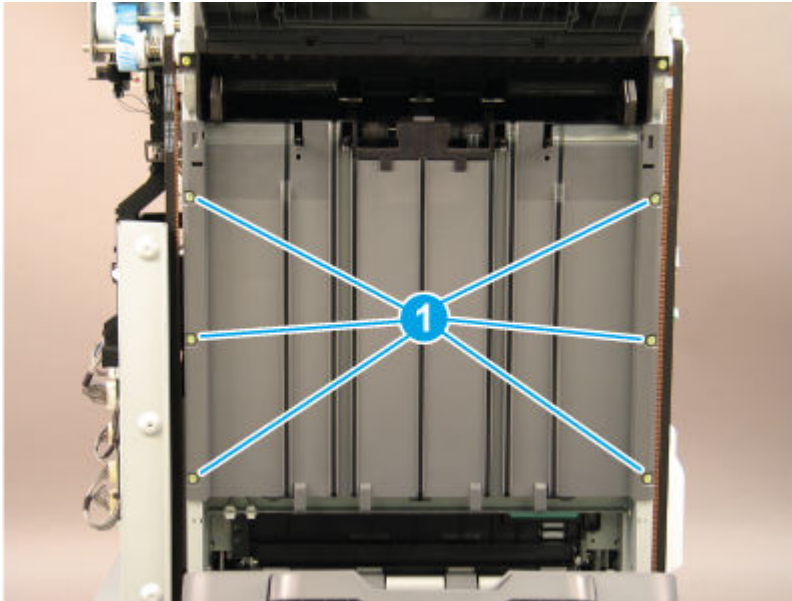
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2512 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2513 Remove six screws

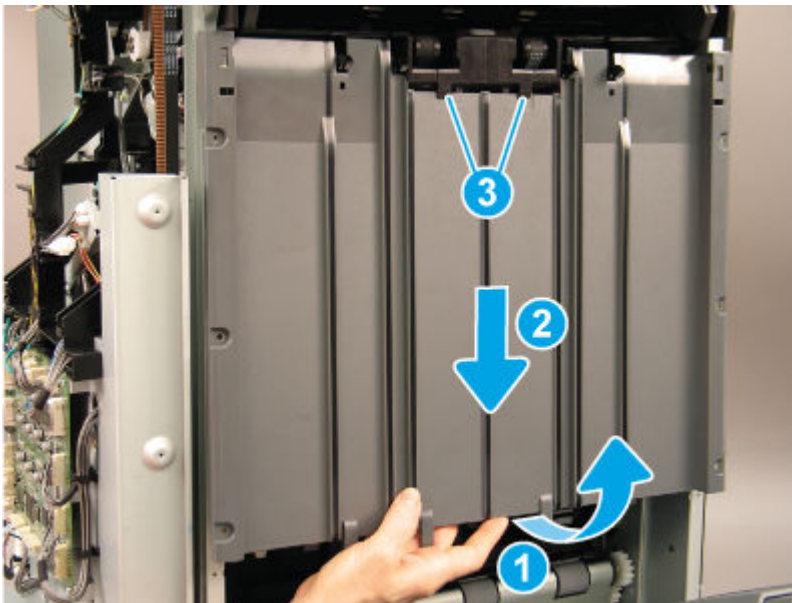


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

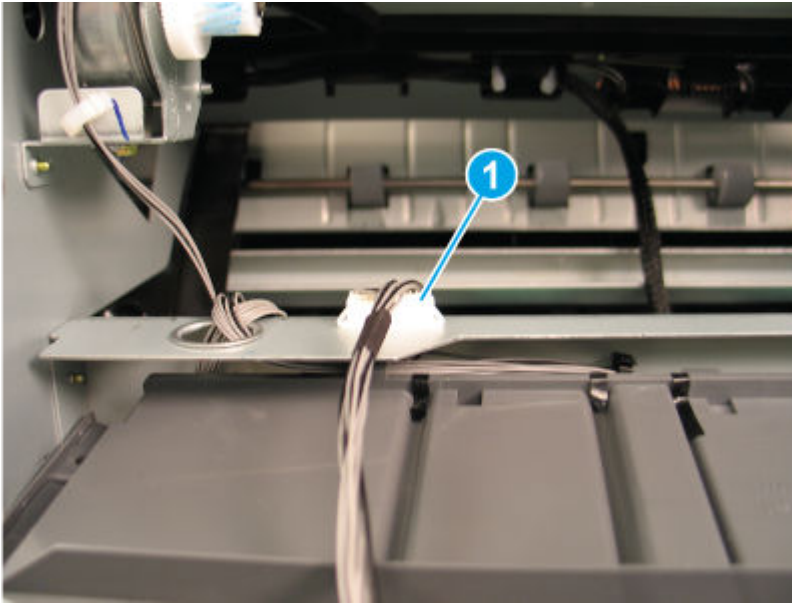
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2514 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2515 Remove the cover

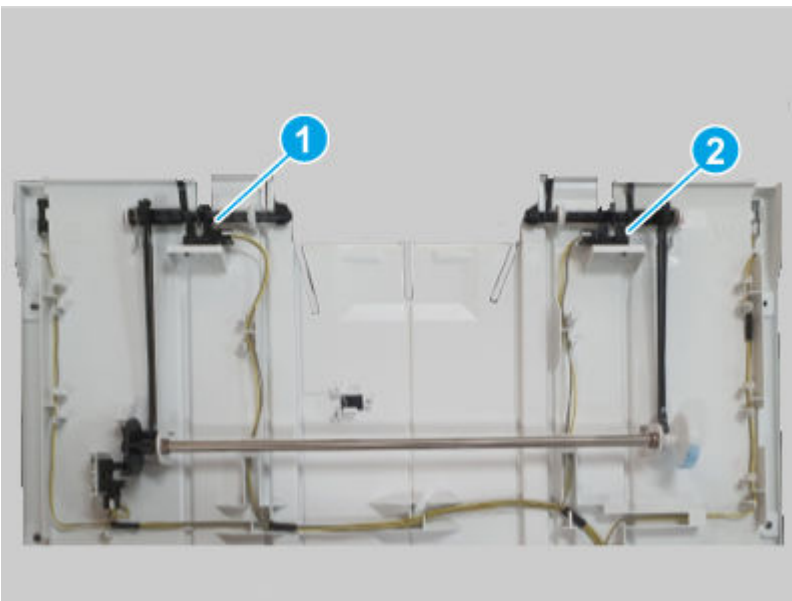


9 Remove the external finisher front and rear paper holding sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front and rear paper holding sensor.

1. Locate the desired sensor.
 - **Callout 1:** Front paper holding sensor
 - **Callout 2:** Rear paper holding sensor

Figure 6-2516 Locate the sensor



2. Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release two hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the front paper holding sensor.


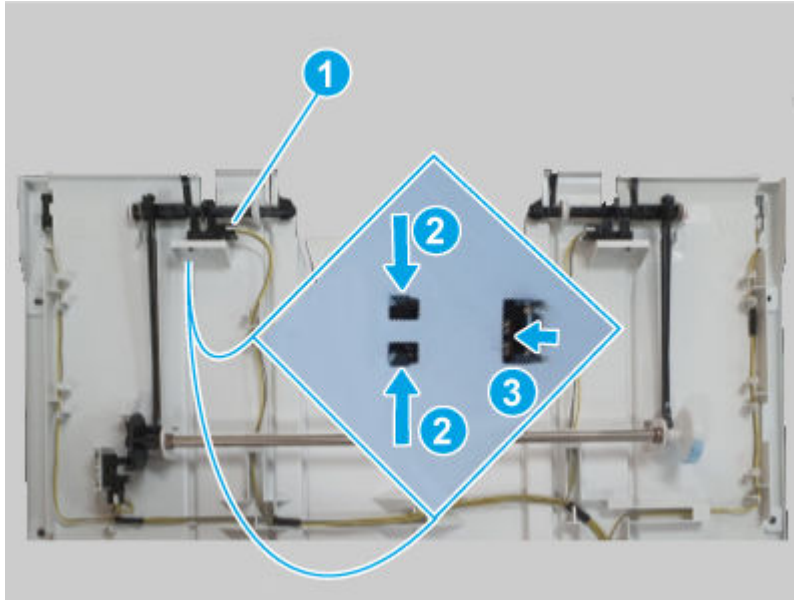
 **NOTE:** Repeat this step to remove the rear paper holding sensor if necessary


Figure 6-2517 Remove the sensor



10 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using

disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
-



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paper holding home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-330 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paper holding home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

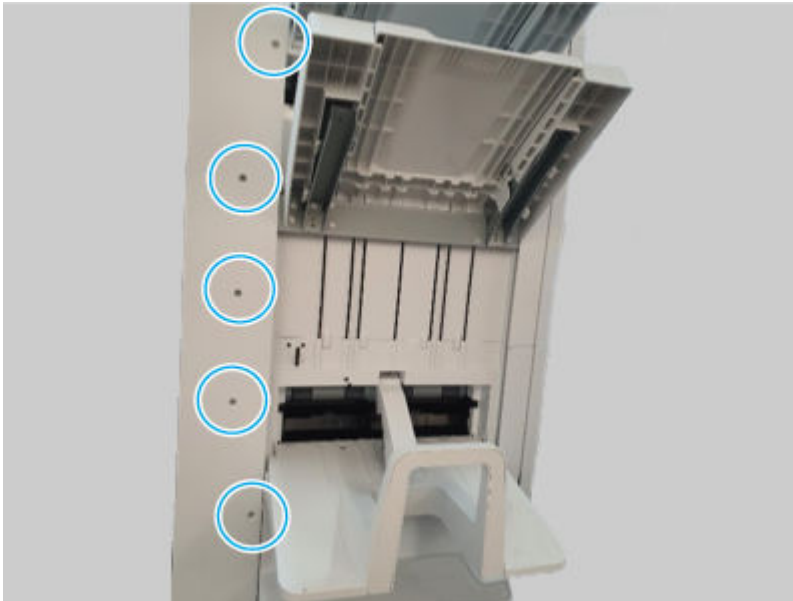
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2518 Remove five screws

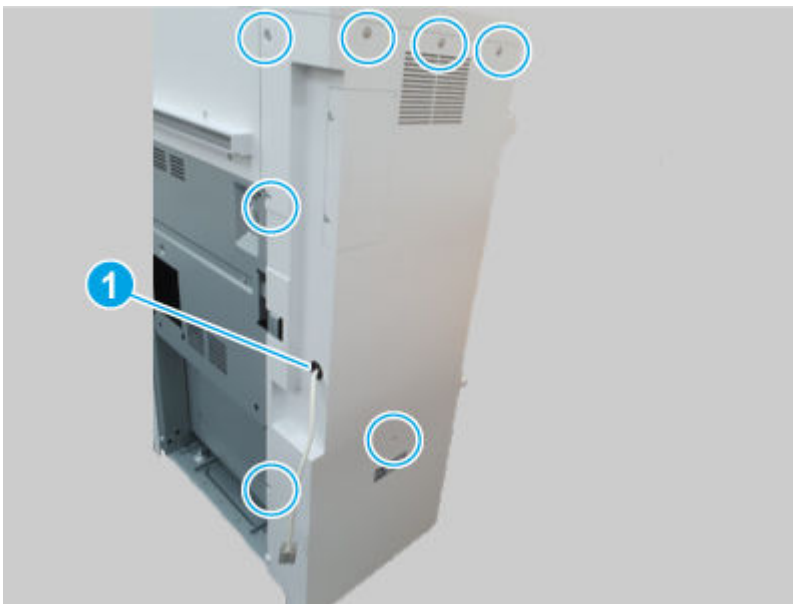


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2519 Remove the cover

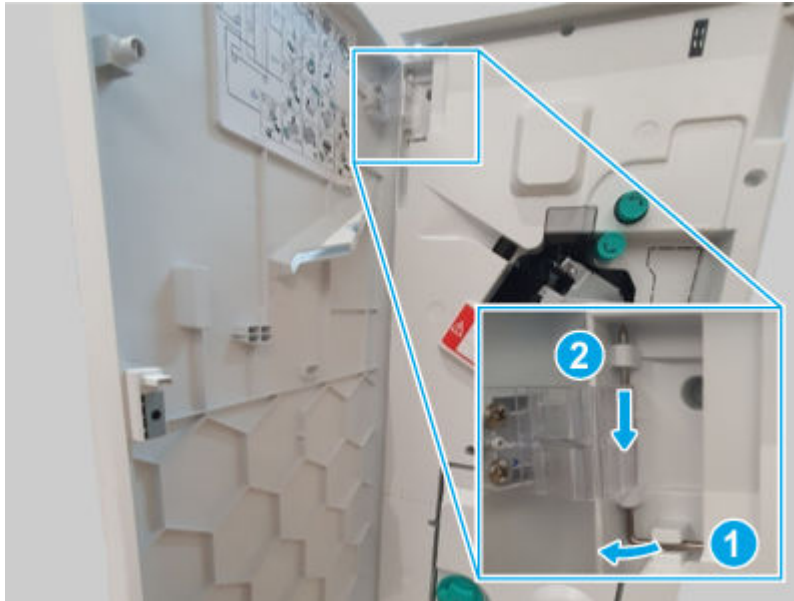


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

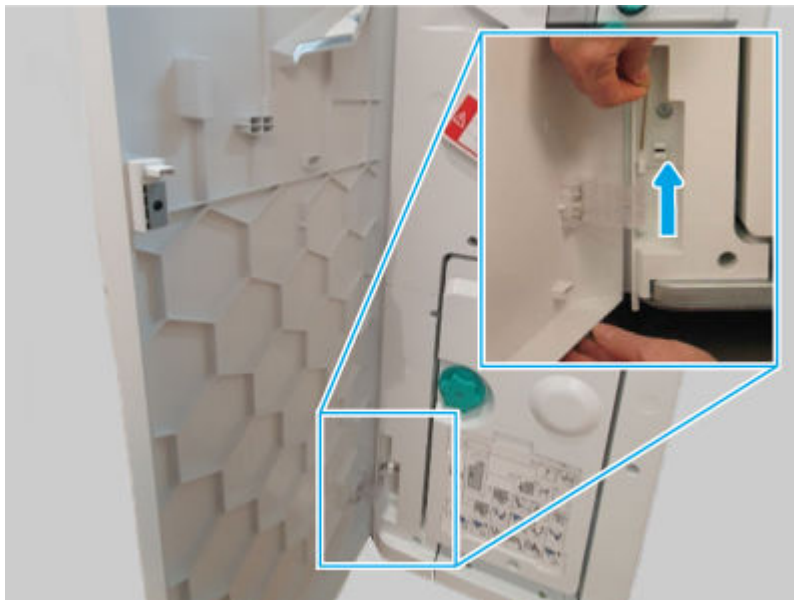
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2520 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2521 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

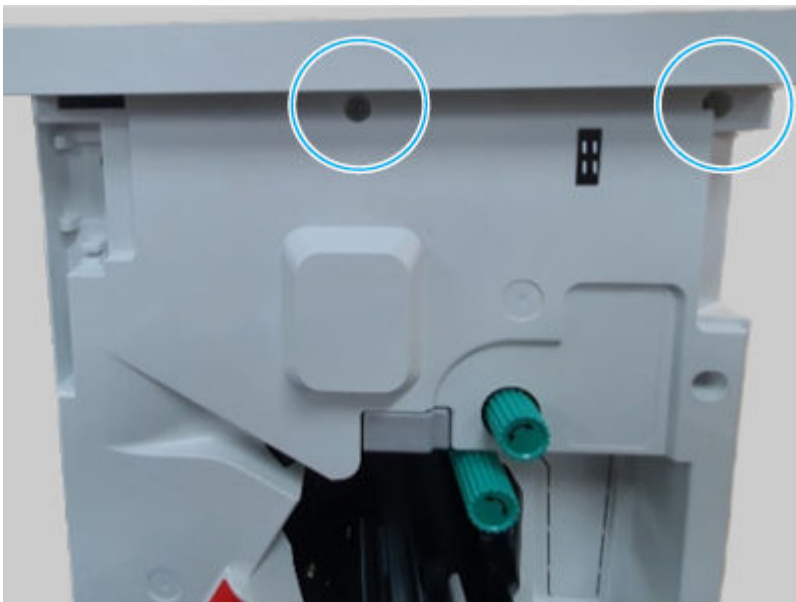
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2522 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2523 Remove the cover

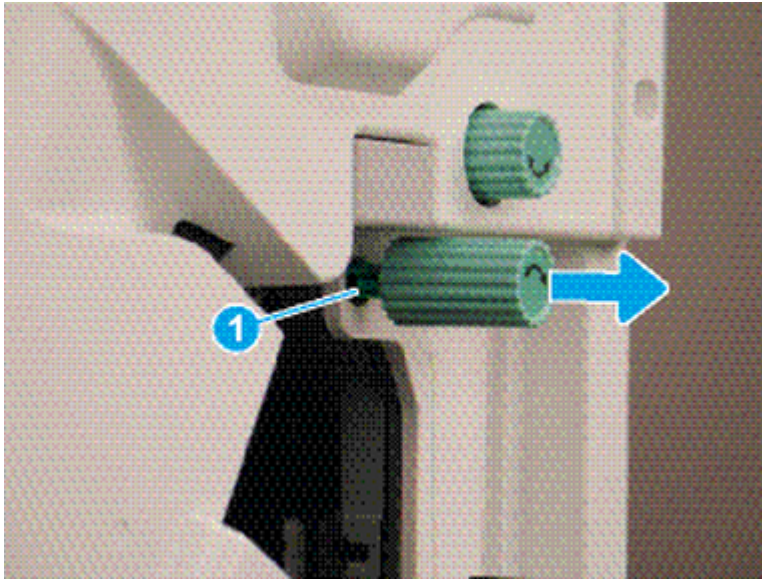


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2524 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2525 Remove the cover



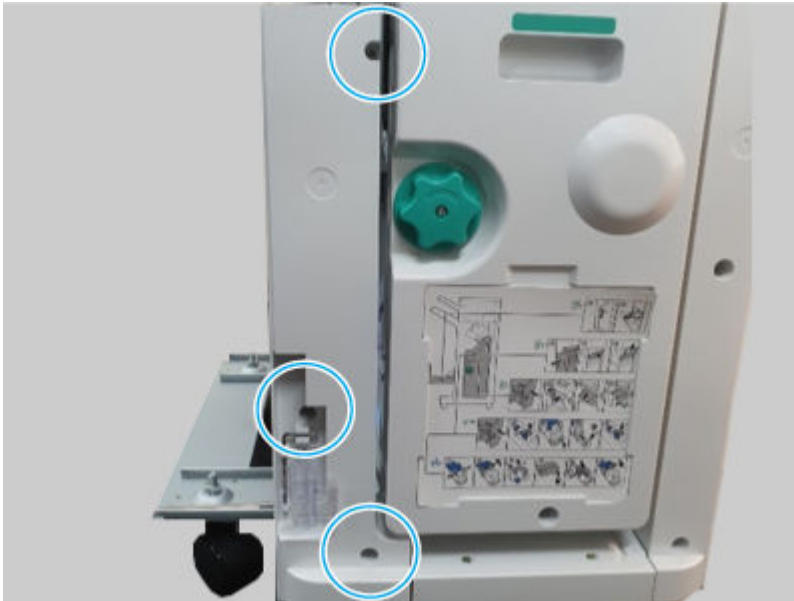
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2526 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

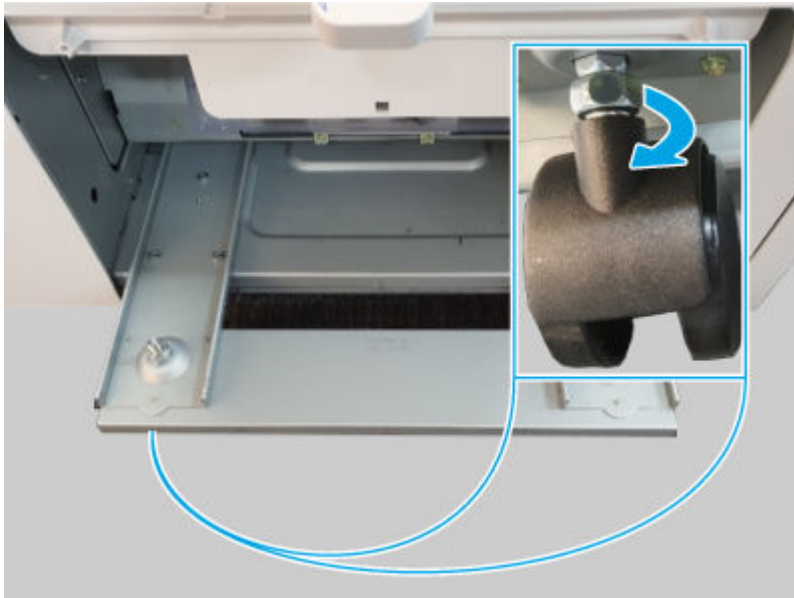
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2527 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2528 Remove the caster

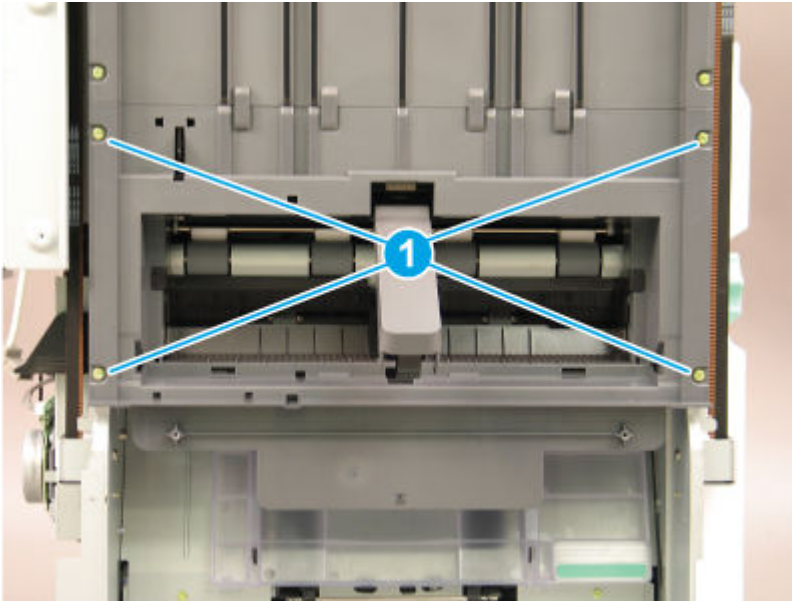


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2529 Remove four screws

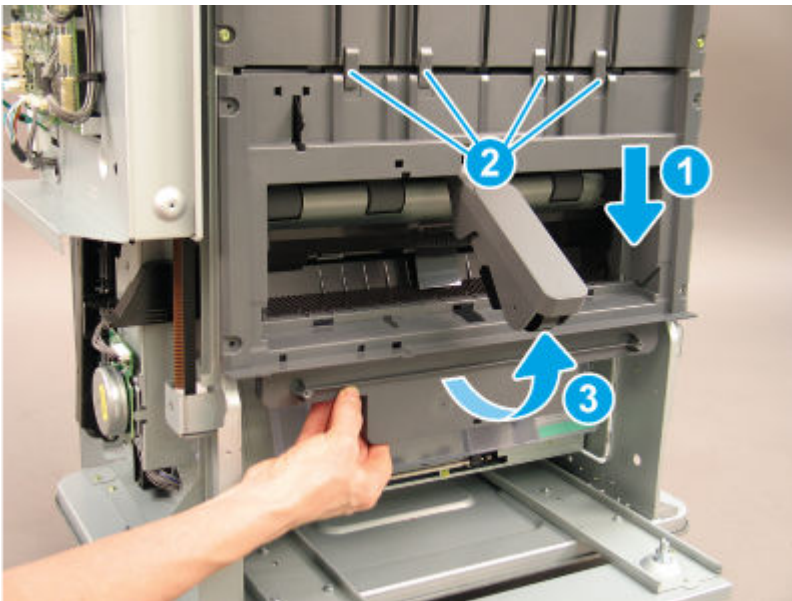


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

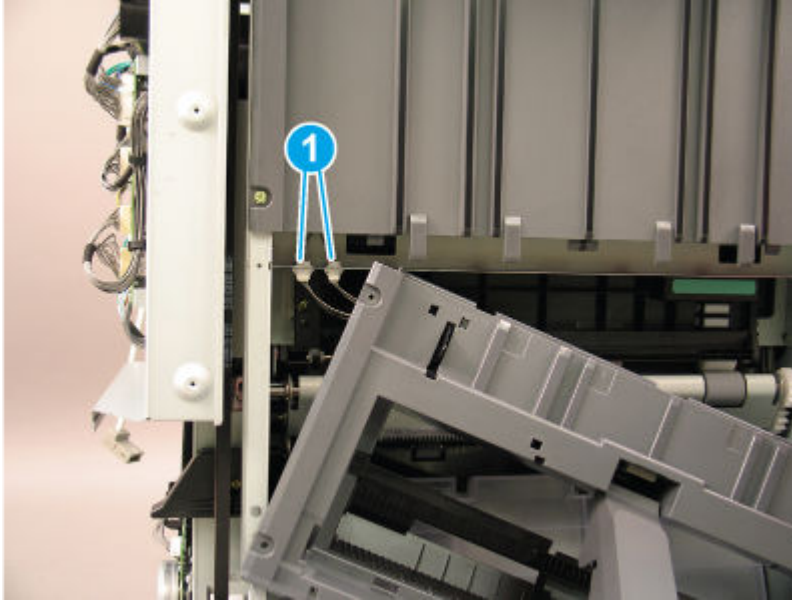
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2530 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2531 Remove the cover

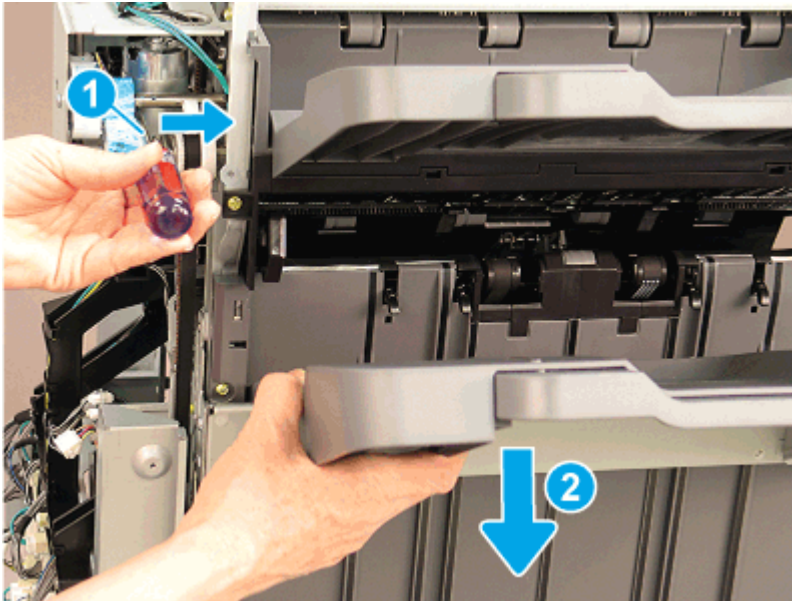


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

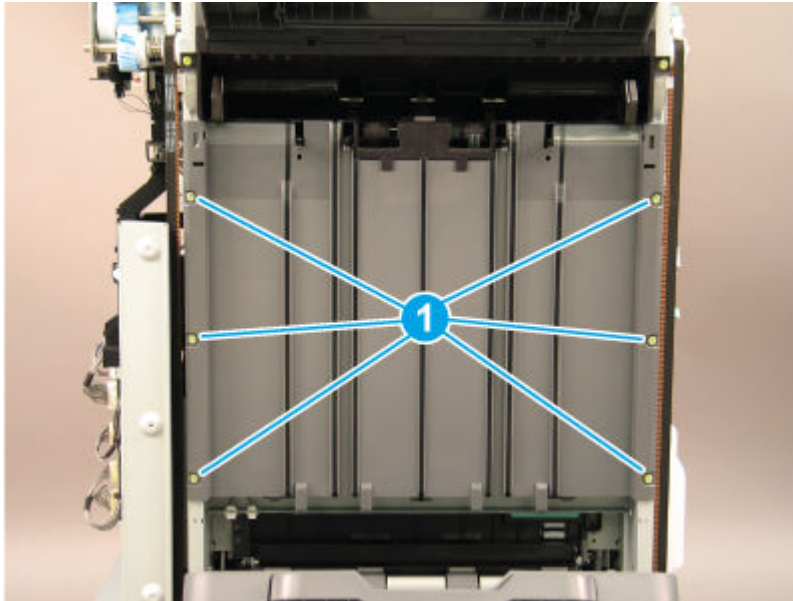
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2532 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2533 Remove six screws

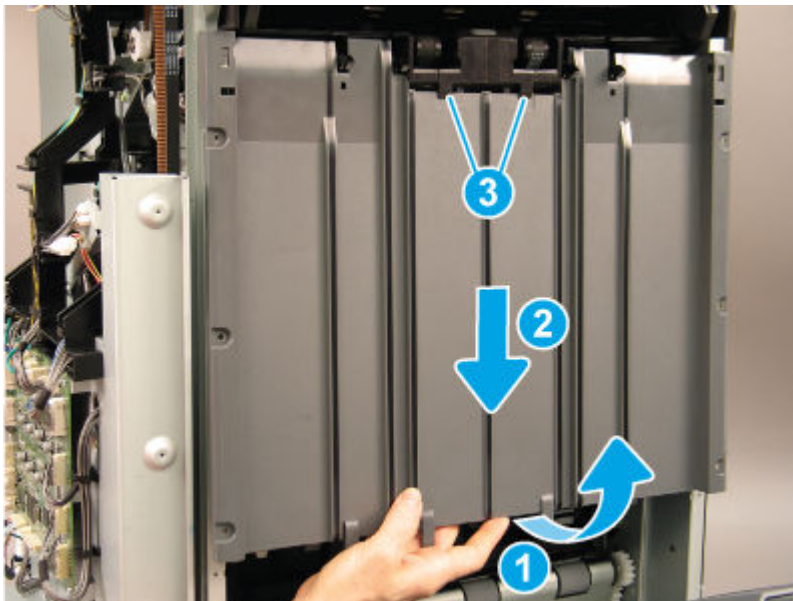


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

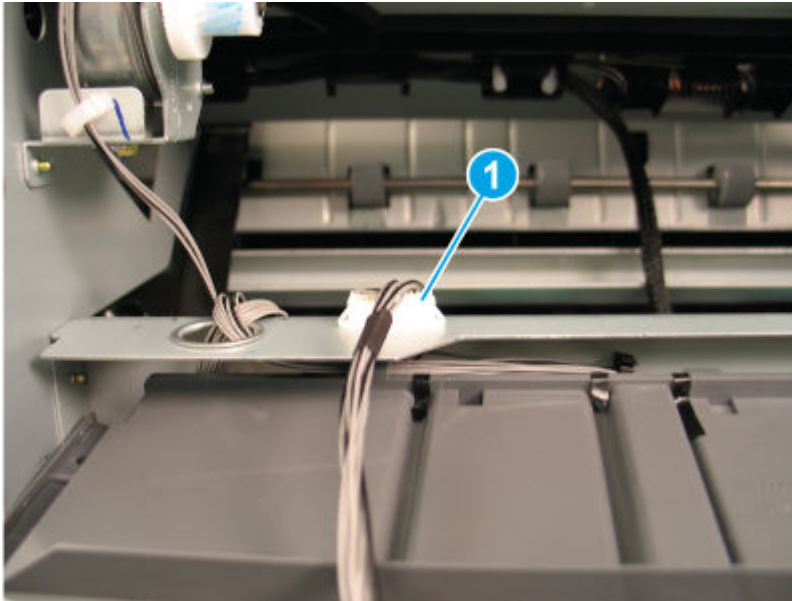
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2534 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2535 Remove the cover

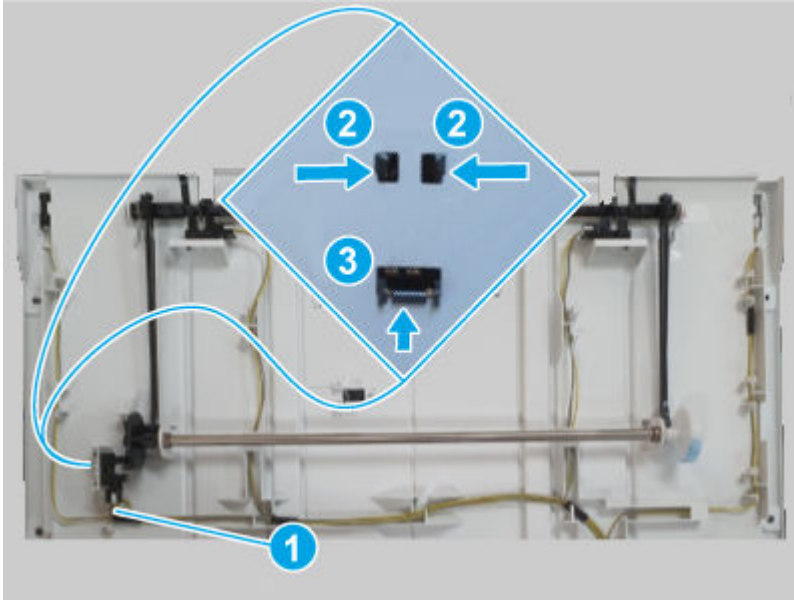


9 Remove the external finisher paper holding home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paper holding home sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release two hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the paper holding home sensor.

Figure 6-2536 Remove the sensor



10 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding motor drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paper holding motor drive assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-331 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

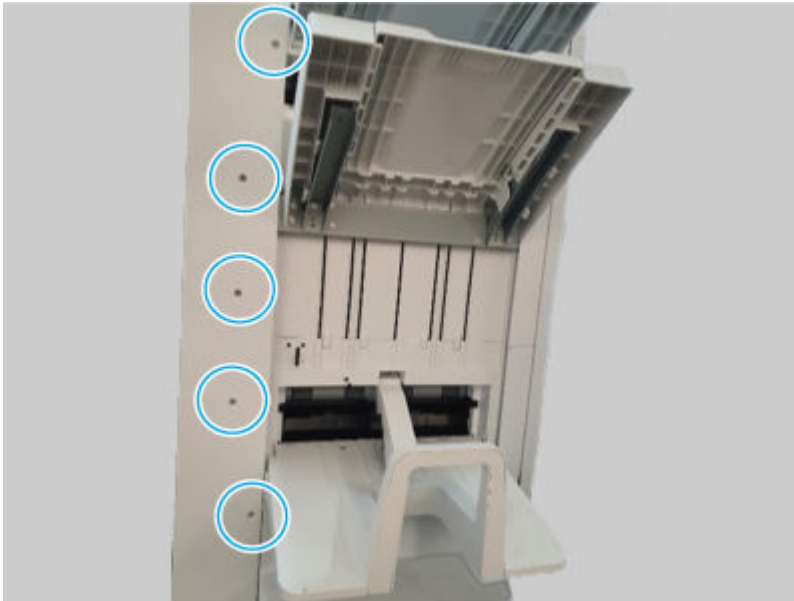
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2537 Remove five screws

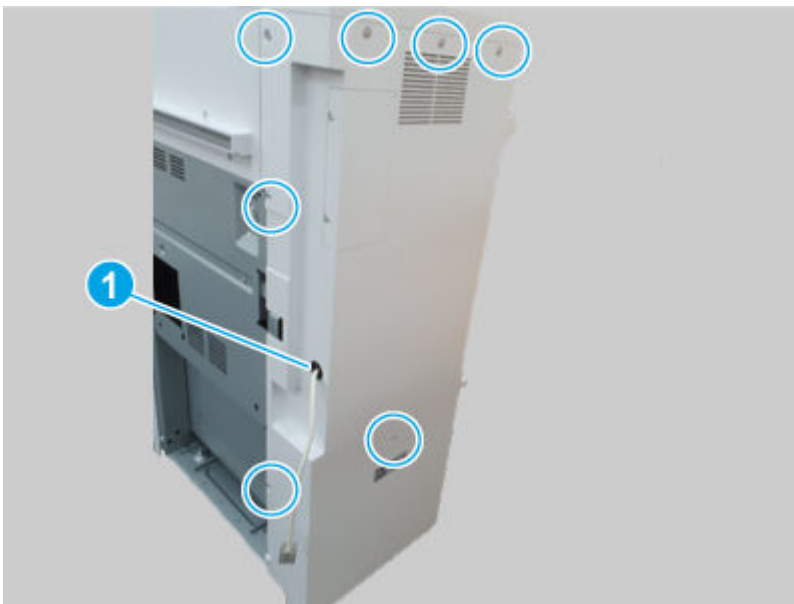


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2538 Remove the cover

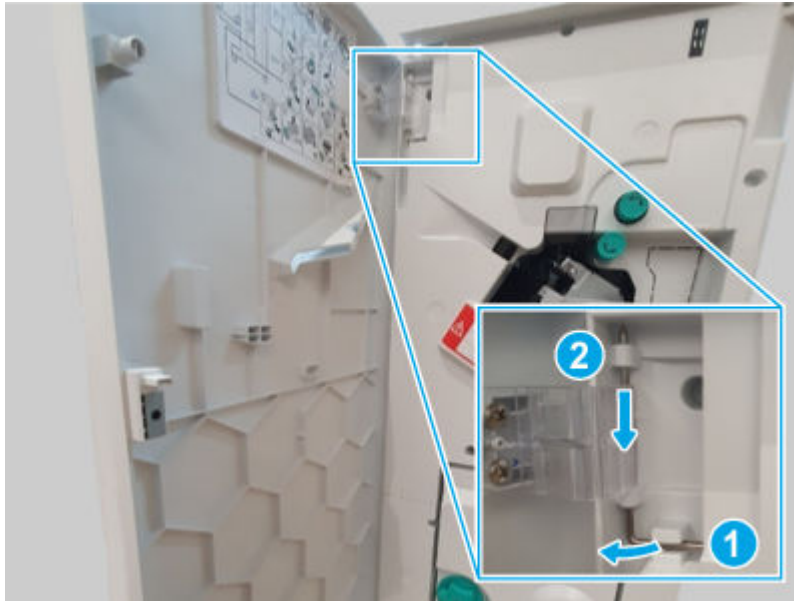


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

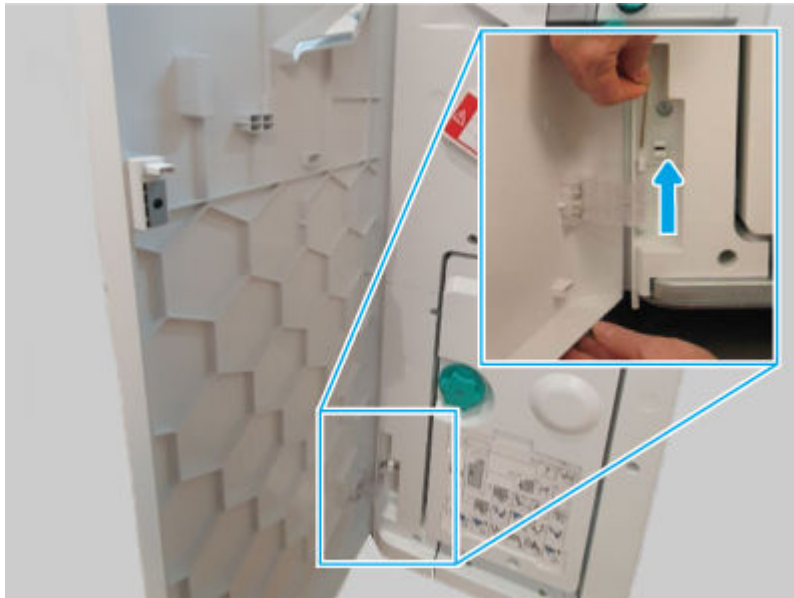
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2539 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2540 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

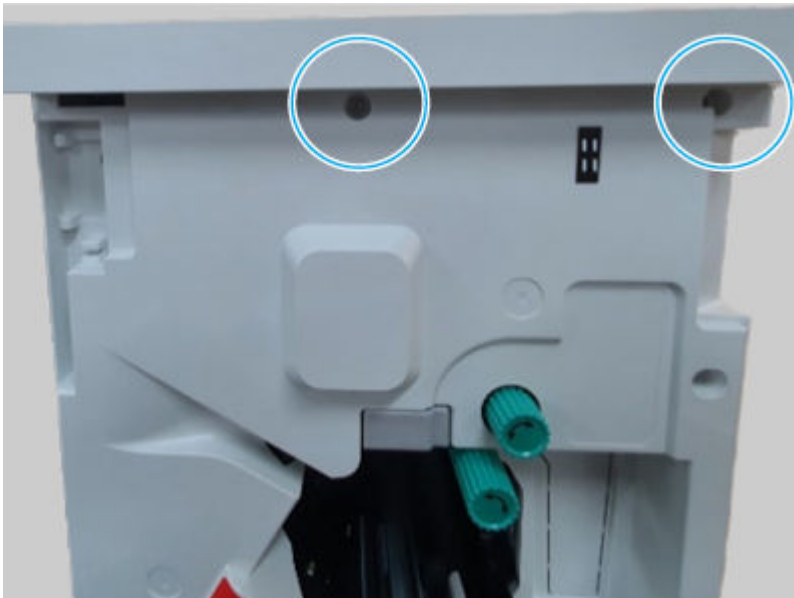
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2541 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2542 Remove the cover

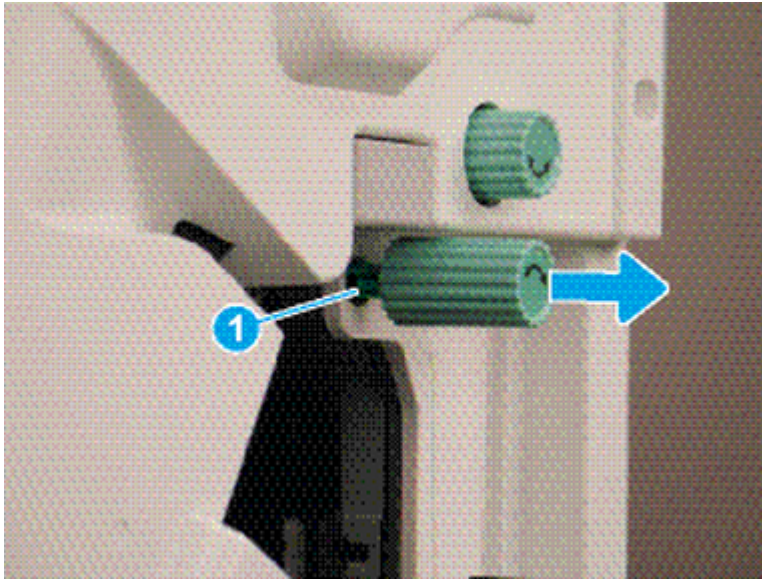


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2543 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2544 Remove the cover



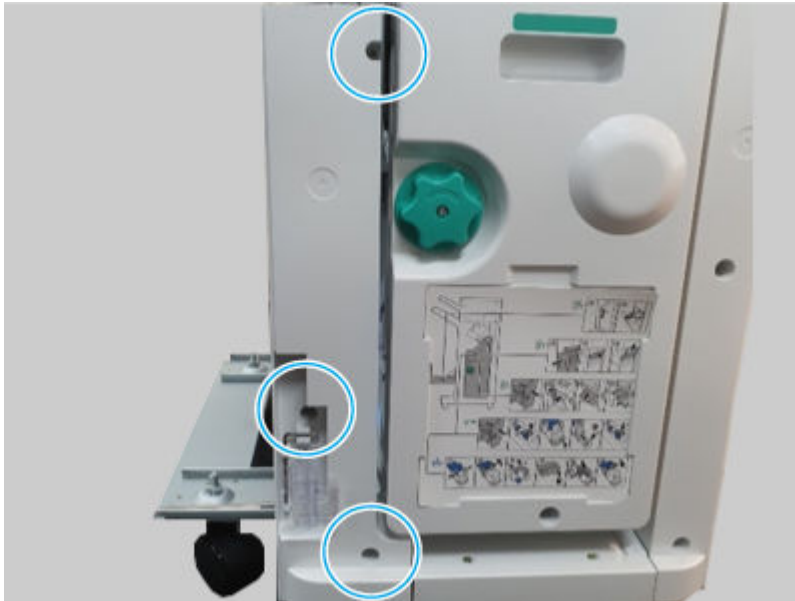
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2545 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

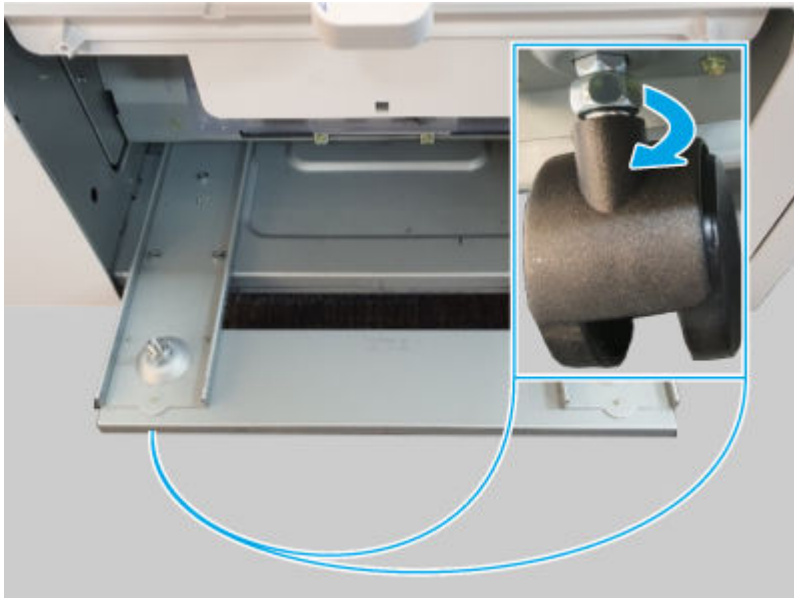
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2546 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2547 Remove the caster

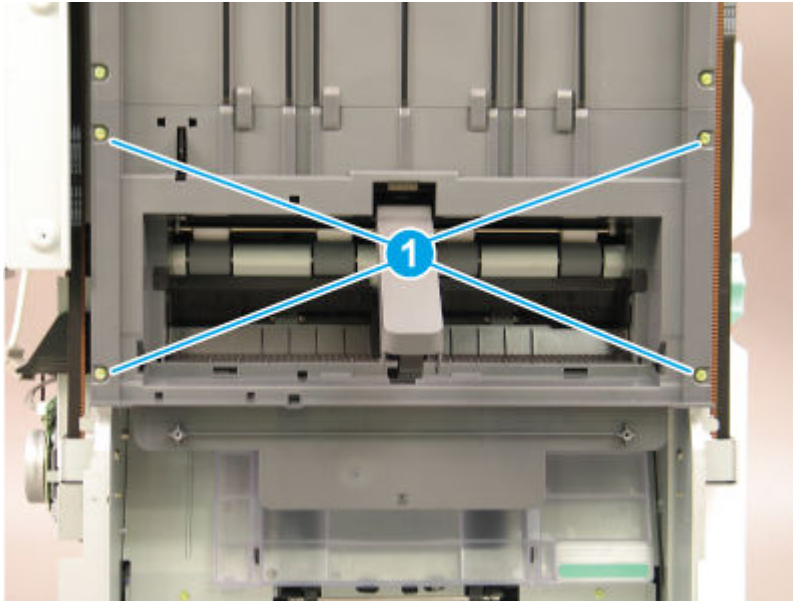


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2548 Remove four screws

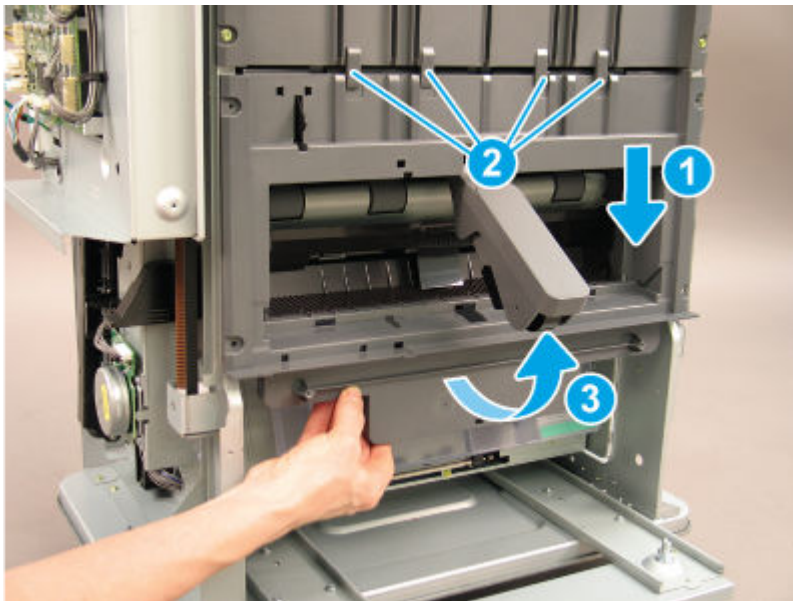


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

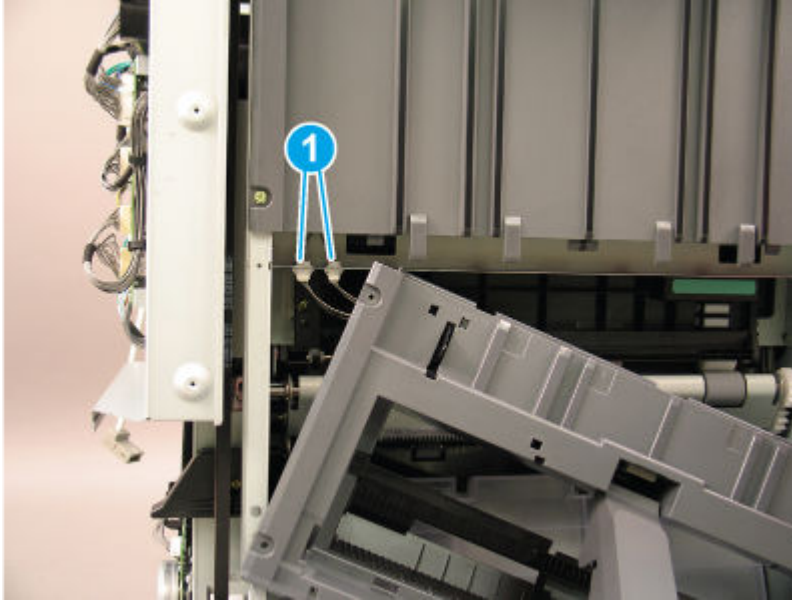
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2549 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2550 Remove the cover

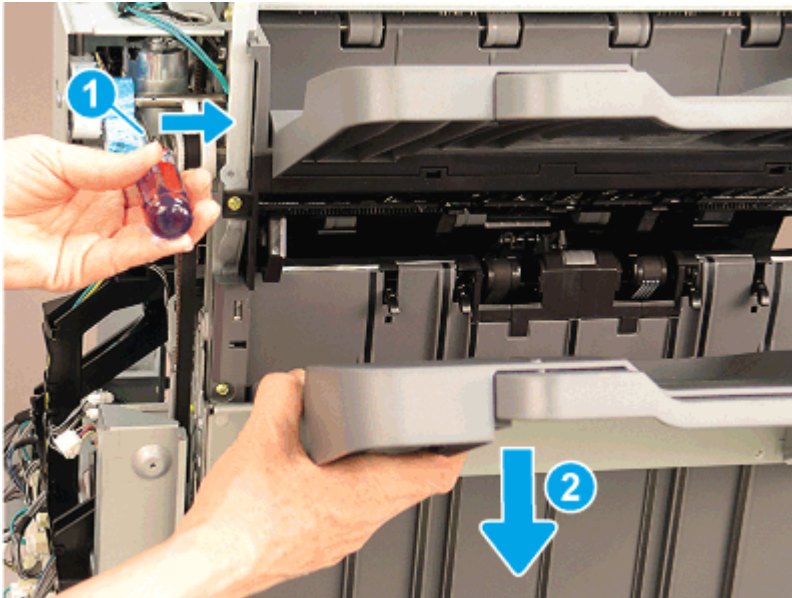


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

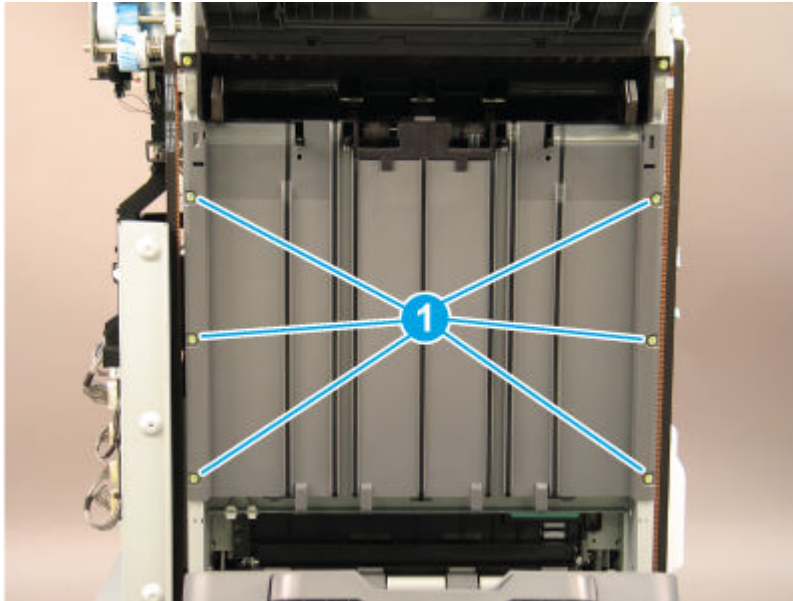
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2551 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2552 Remove six screws

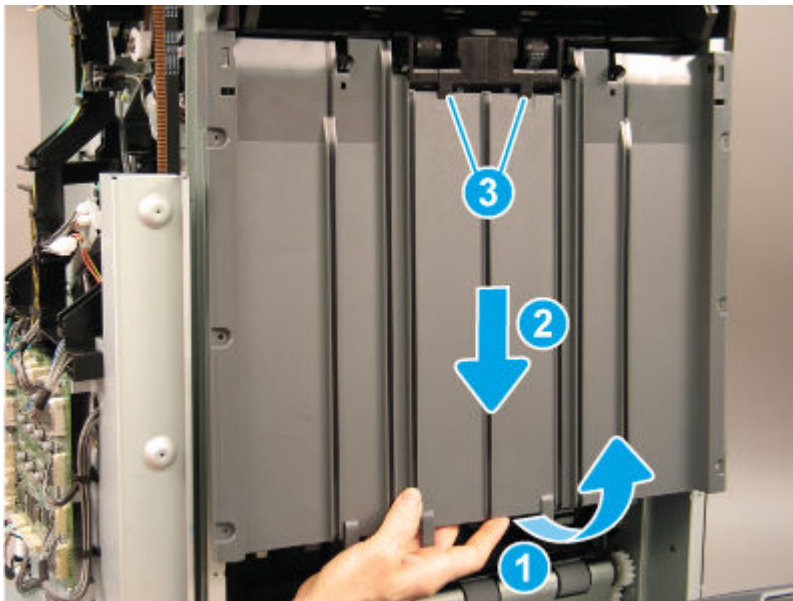


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

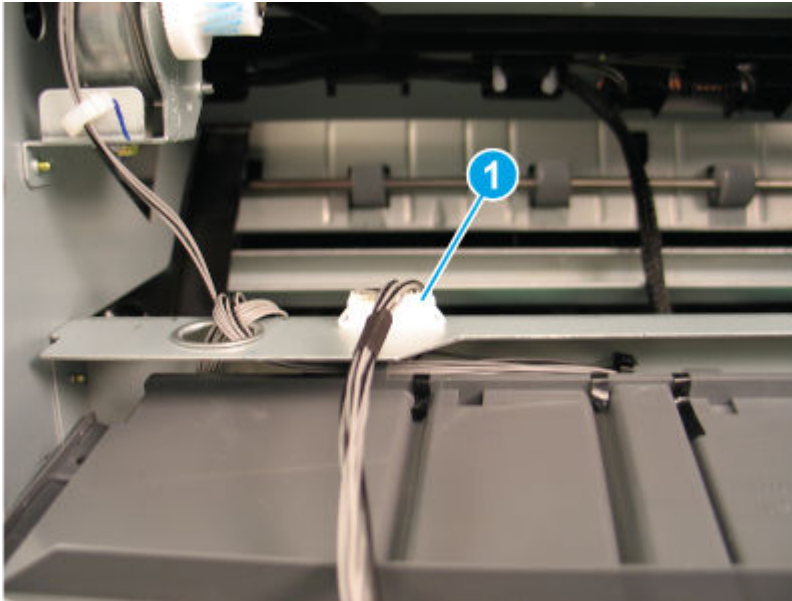
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2553 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2554 Remove the cover

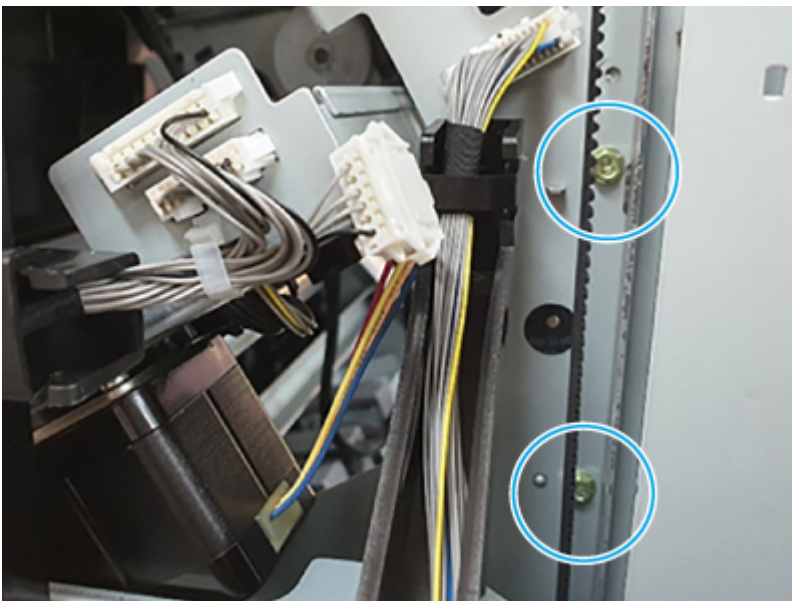


9 Remove the external finisher paper holding motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paper holding motor drive assembly.

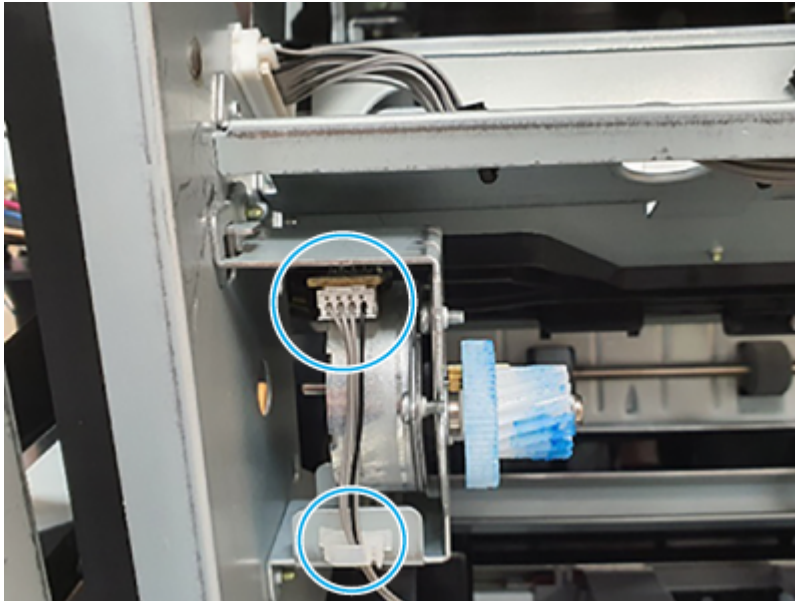
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2555 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release the wire harness from the retainer, and then remove the paper holding motor drive assembly.


Figure 6-2556 Remove the assembly



10 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Buffer unit

Review the external finisher buffer unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Buffer solenoid assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher buffer solenoid assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-332 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2557 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2558 Remove the cover



2 Remove the external finisher right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher right upper cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove six screws, and then remove the right upper cover.

Figure 6-2559 Remove the cover

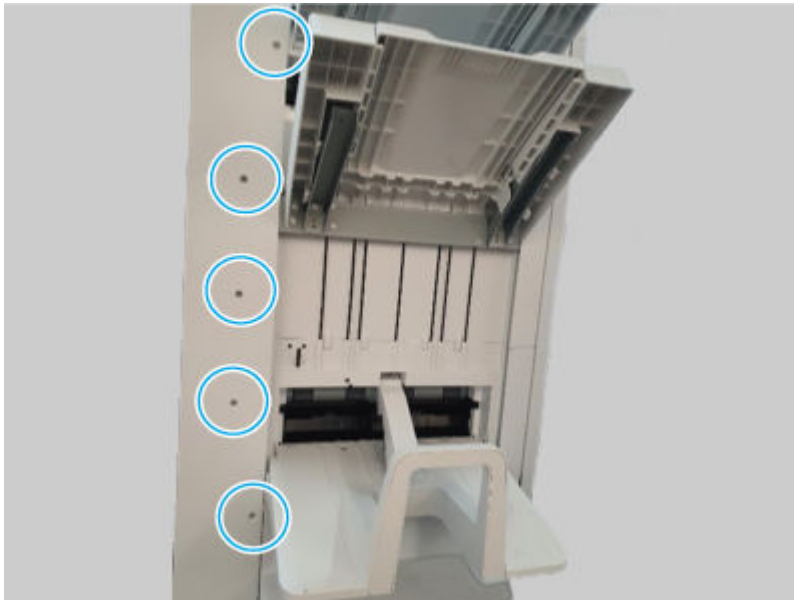


3 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2560 Remove five screws

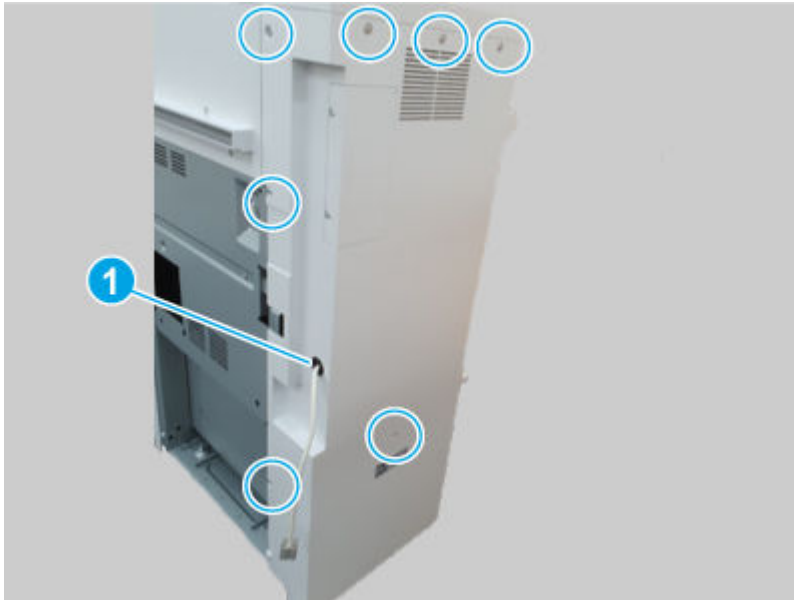


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2561 Remove the cover

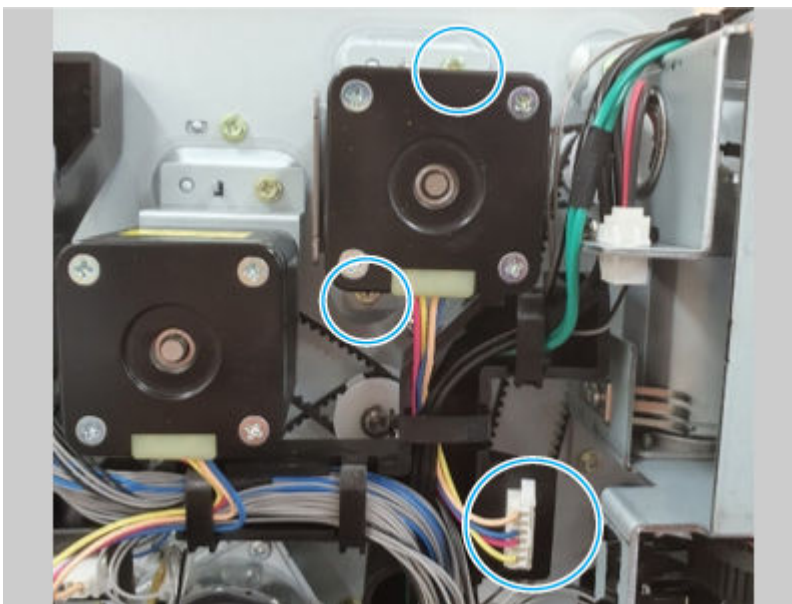


4 Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-2562 Remove the assembly

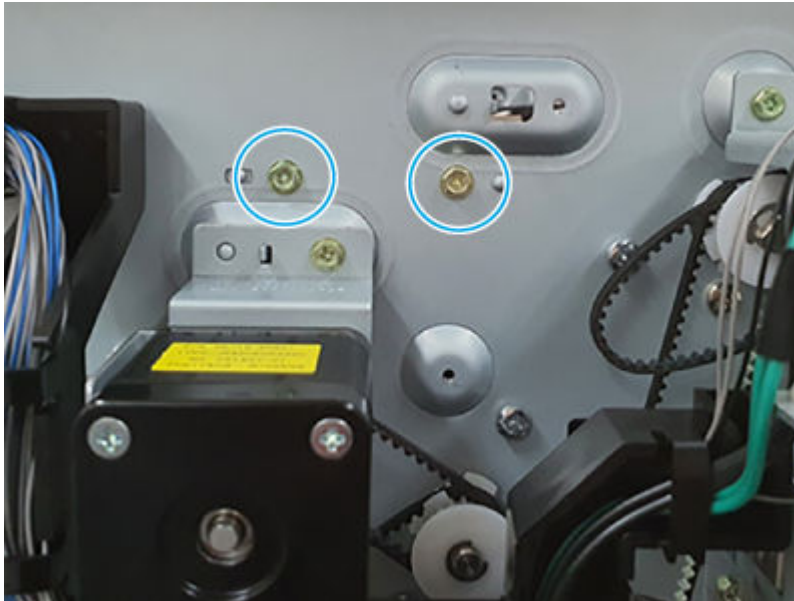


5 Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

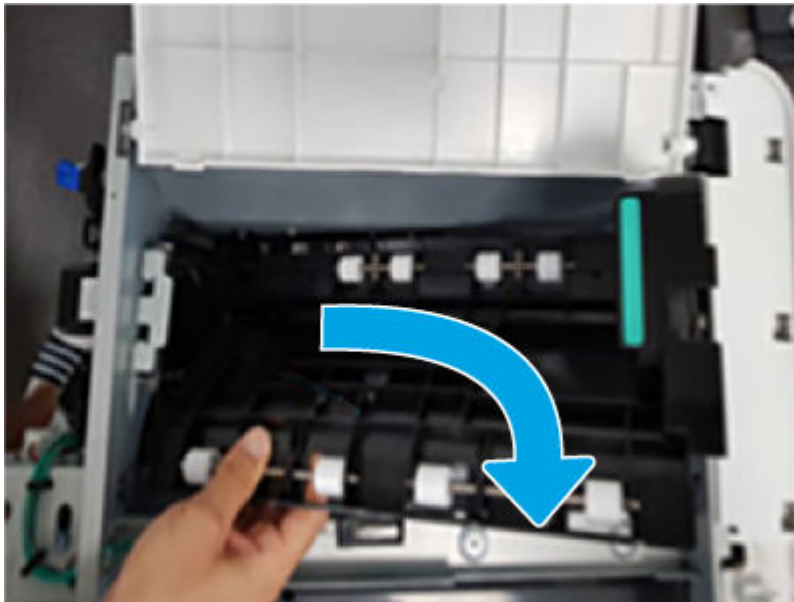
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2563 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2564 Remove the assembly

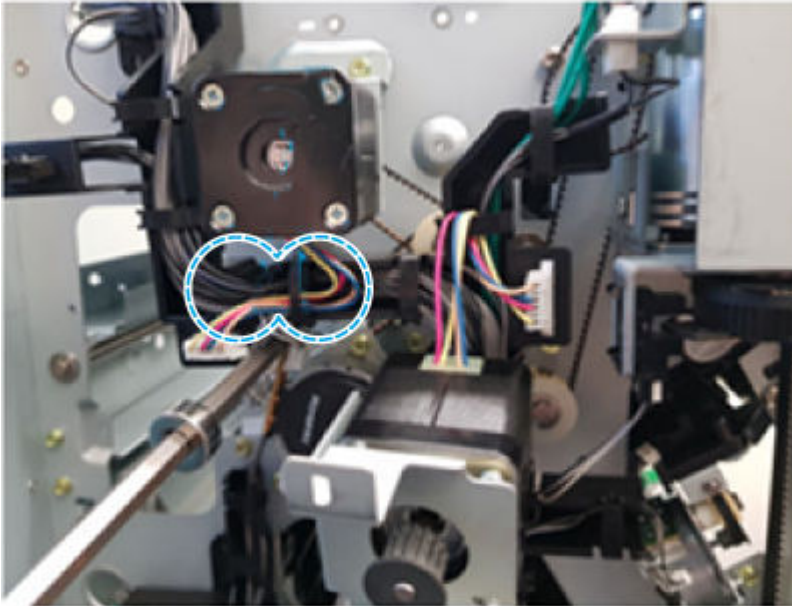


6 Remove the external finisher buffer solenoid assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher buffer solenoid assembly.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2565 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the buffer solenoid assembly.


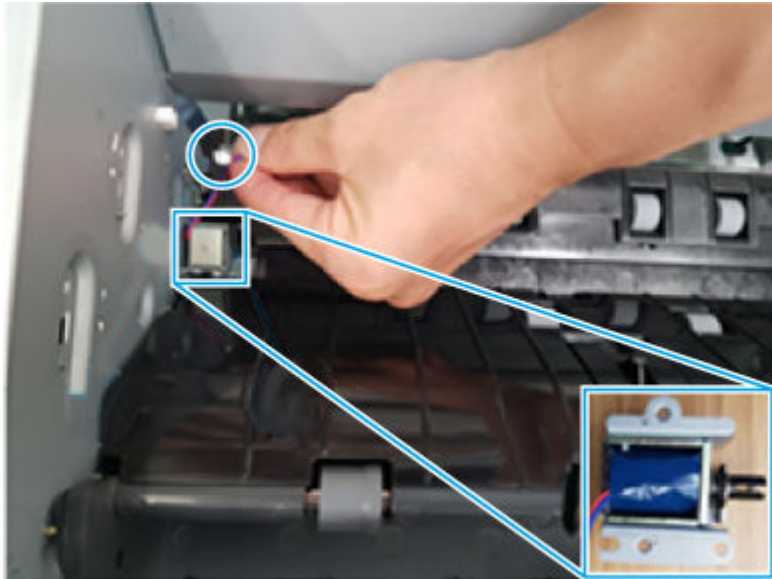
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness as necessary to remove the solenoid assembly.


Figure 6-2566 Remove the assembly





7 **Unpack the replacement assembly**


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Buffer motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher buffer motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-333 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01152A	Drive-motor step (Buffer motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

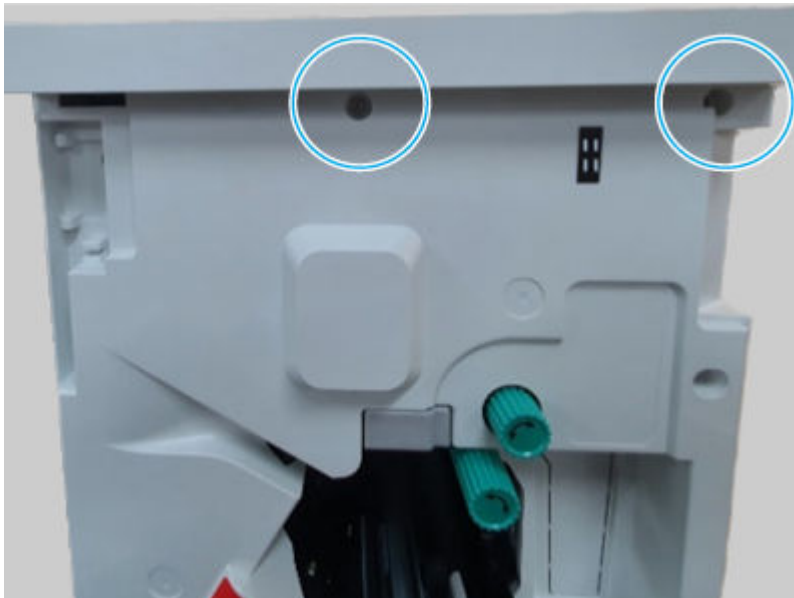
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2567 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2568 Remove the cover

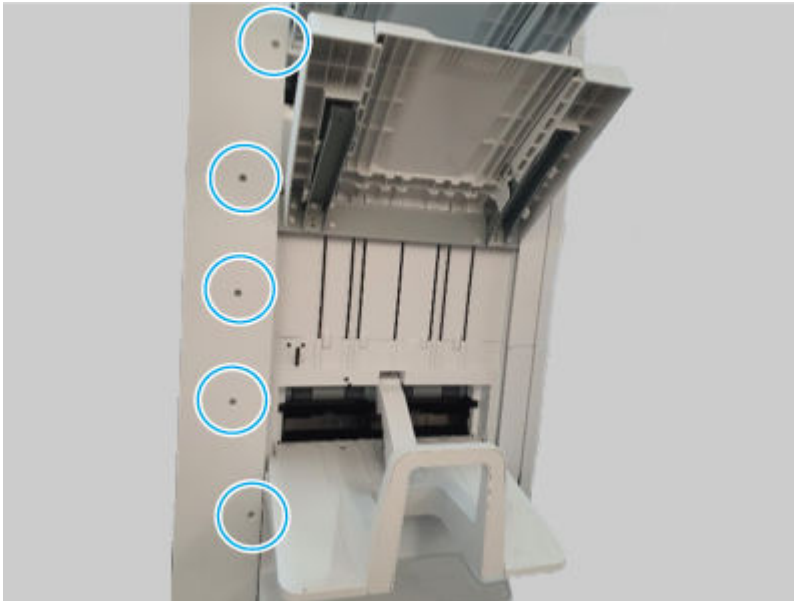


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2569 Remove five screws

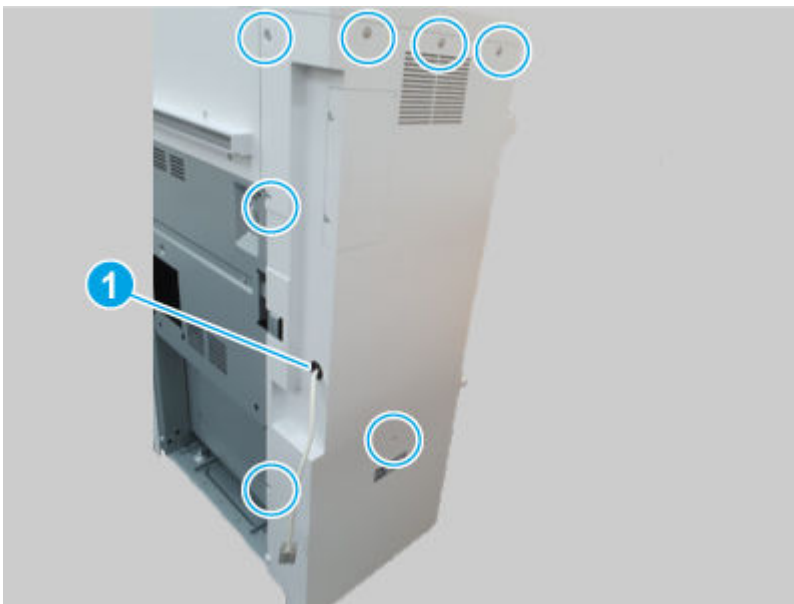


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2570 Remove the cover

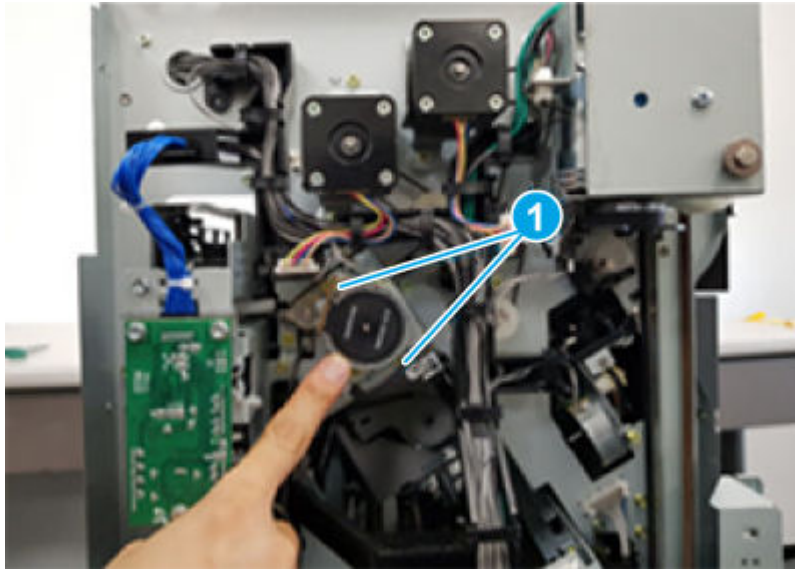


- 3 **Remove the external finisher buffer motor**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher buffer motor.

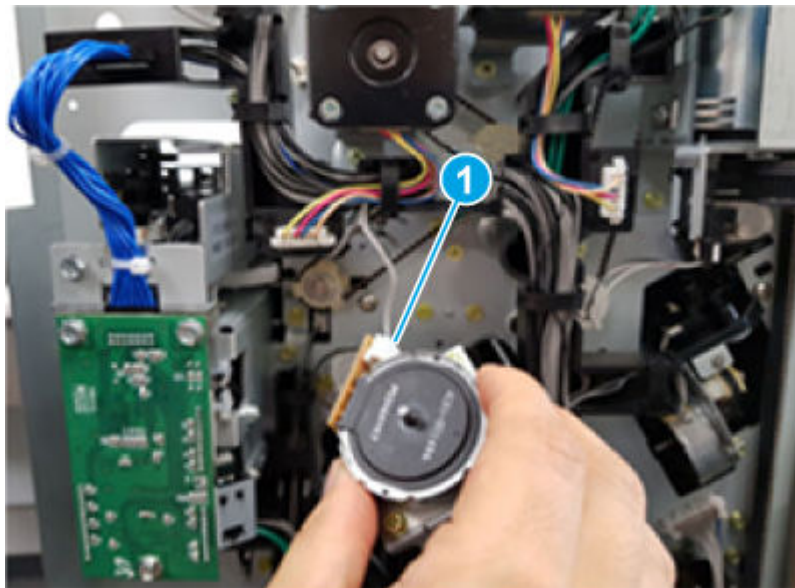
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2571 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the buffer motor.

Figure 6-2572 Remove the motor



4 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher (only)

Learn about booklet finisher (only) parts removal and replacement.

Booklet maker

Review the booklet finisher booklet maker removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet maker

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-334 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00905A	Booklet maker

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

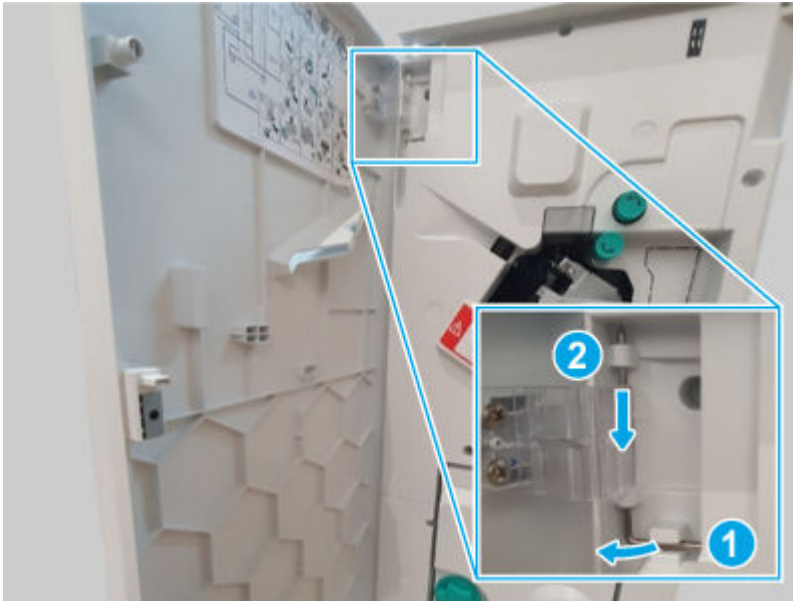
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

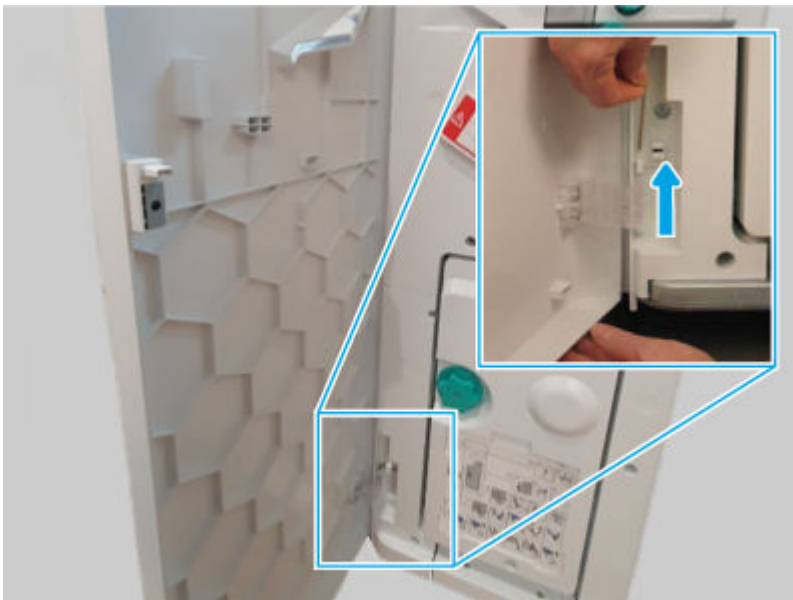
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2573 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2574 Remove the door

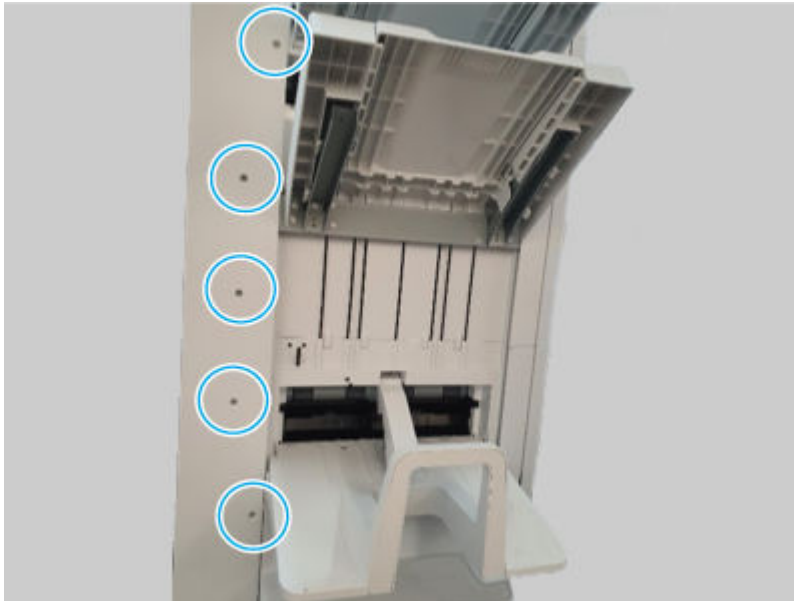


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2575 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


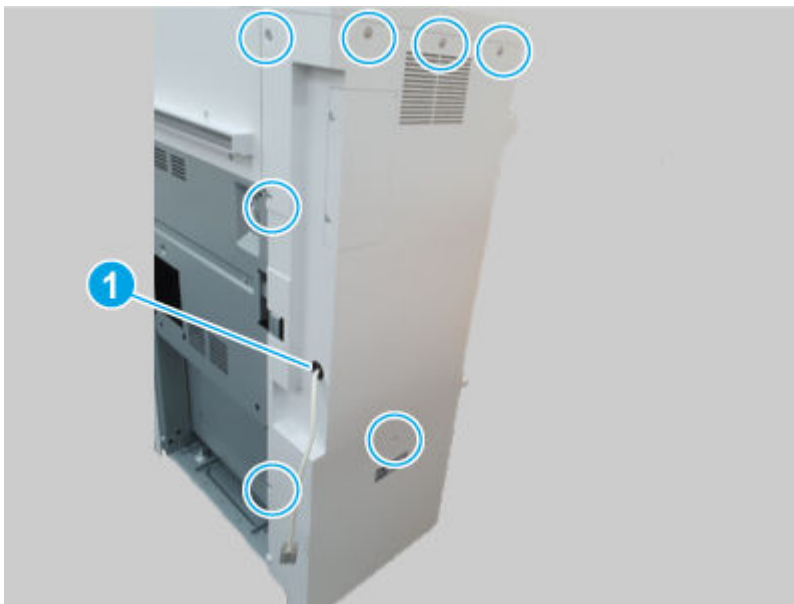
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2576 Remove the cover



3. **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

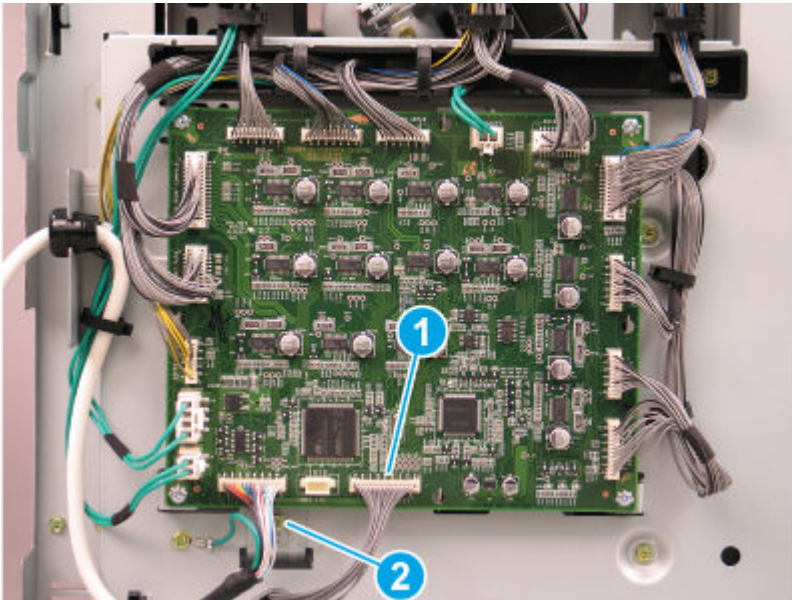
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2577 Slide the booklet maker out



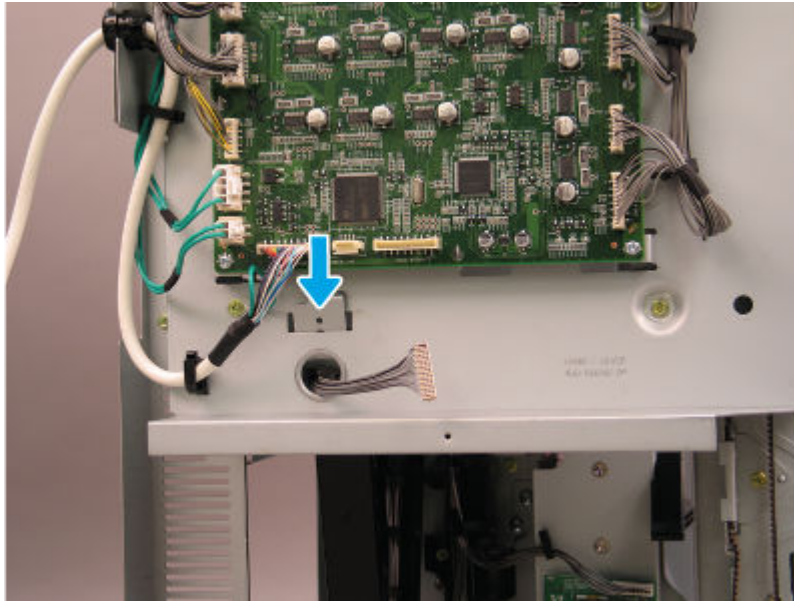
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2578 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



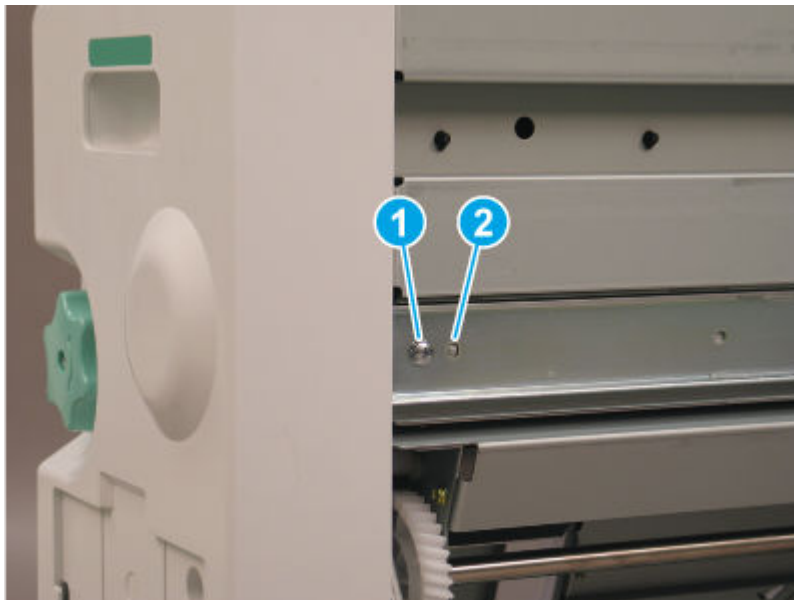
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2579 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2580 Release the alignment pin



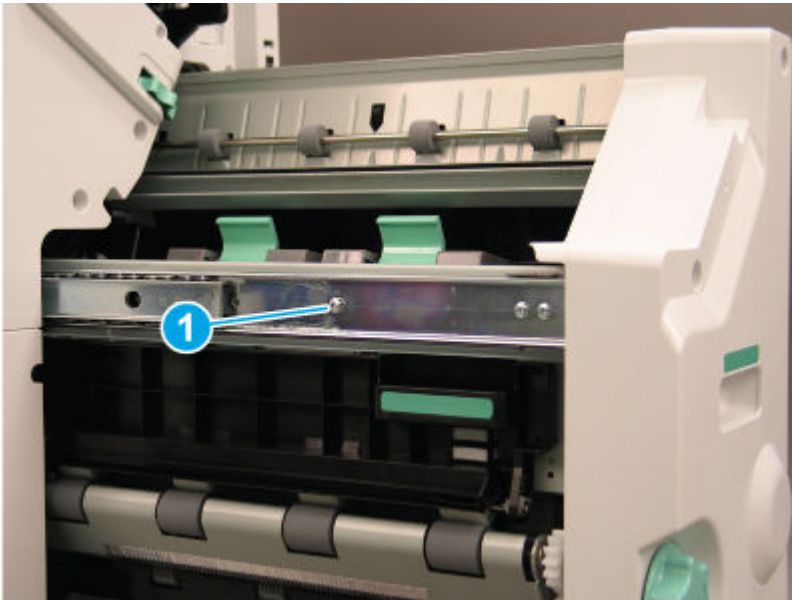
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2581 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2582 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


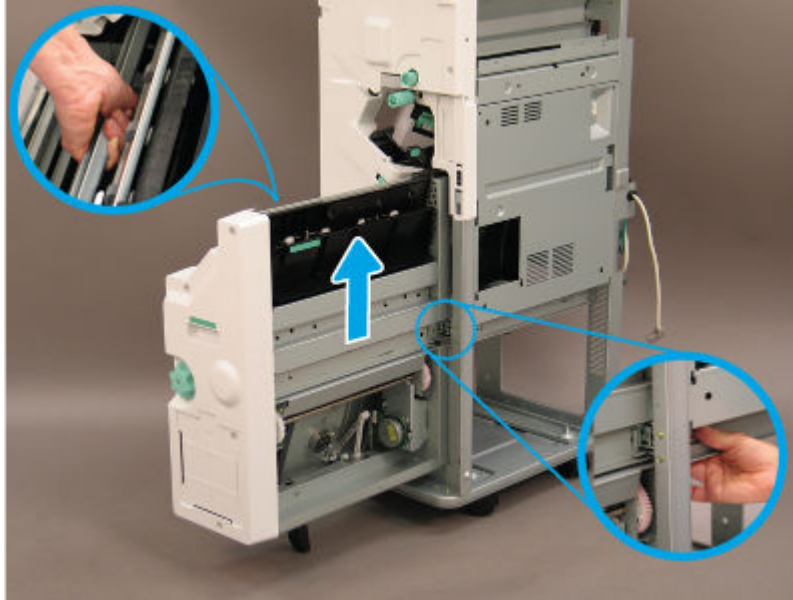
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2583 Remove the booklet maker



4 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

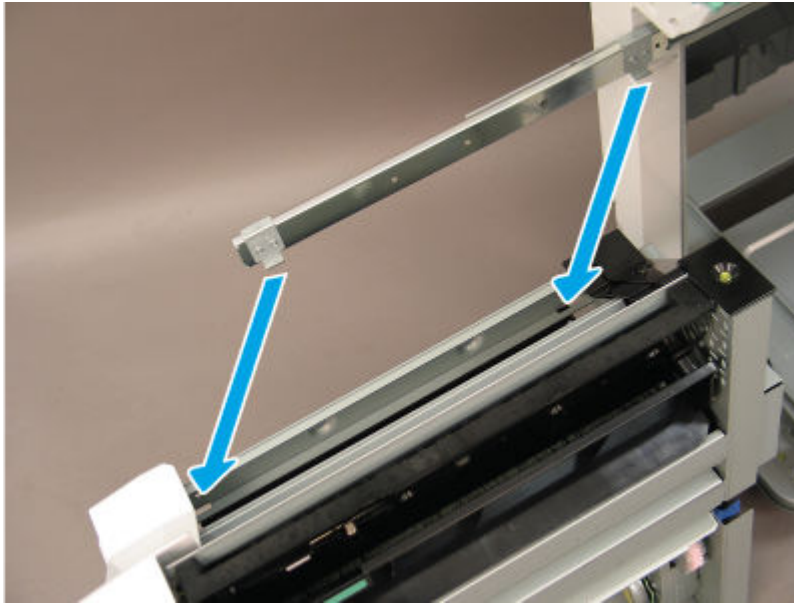
5 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

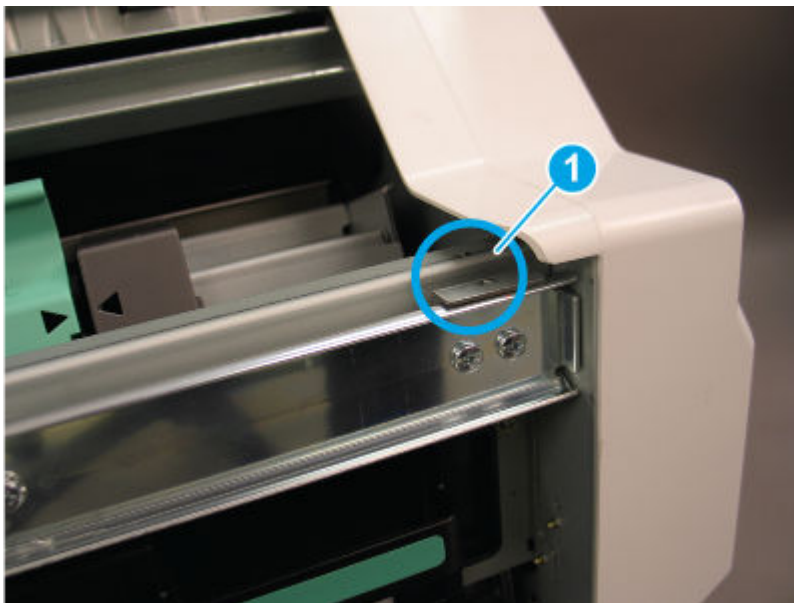
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2584 Position the hooks on the rail



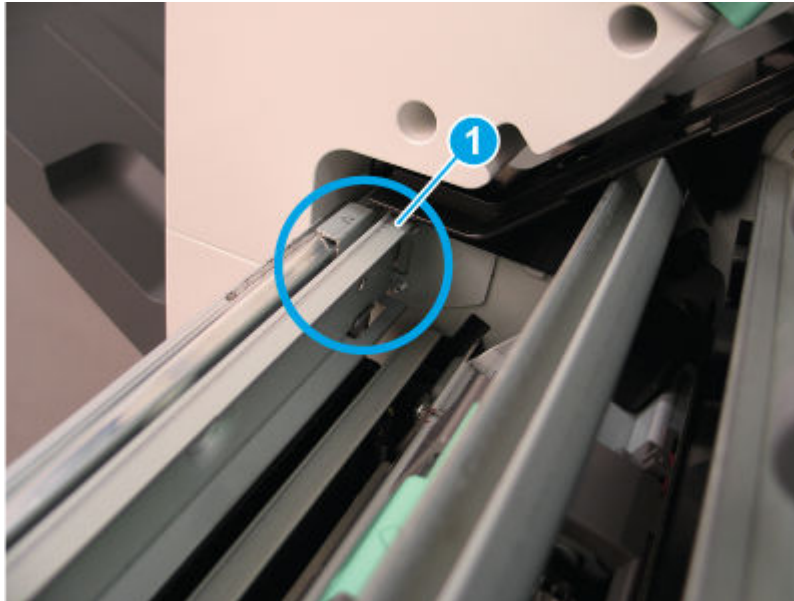
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2585 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2586 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2587 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Harness guide

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher harness guide.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-335 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01477A	Harness guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

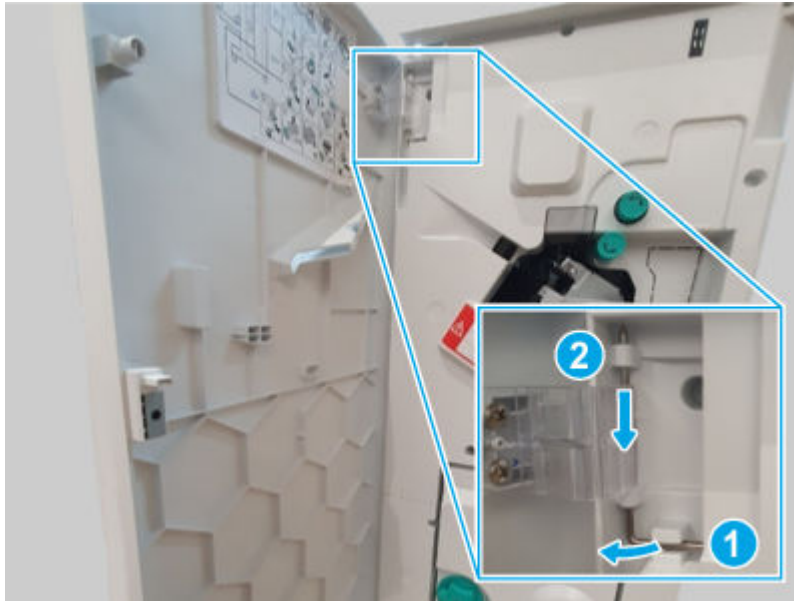
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

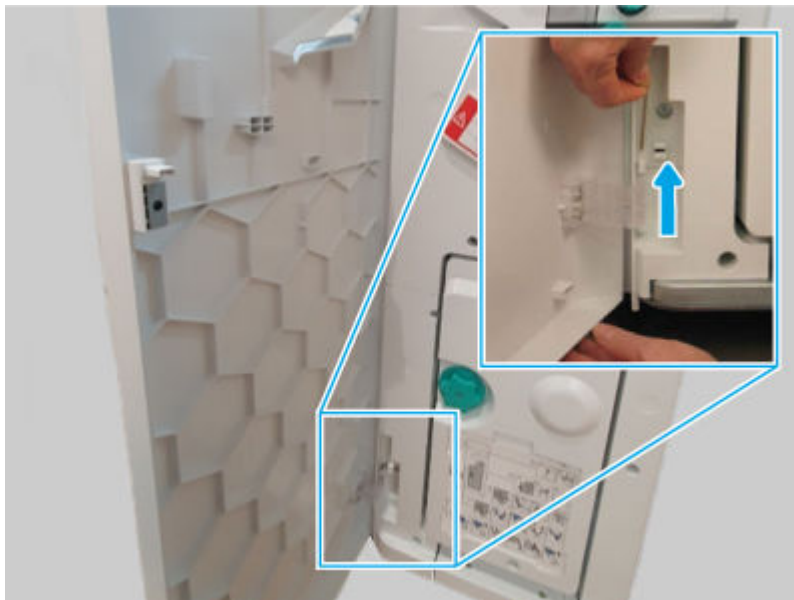
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2588 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2589 Remove the door

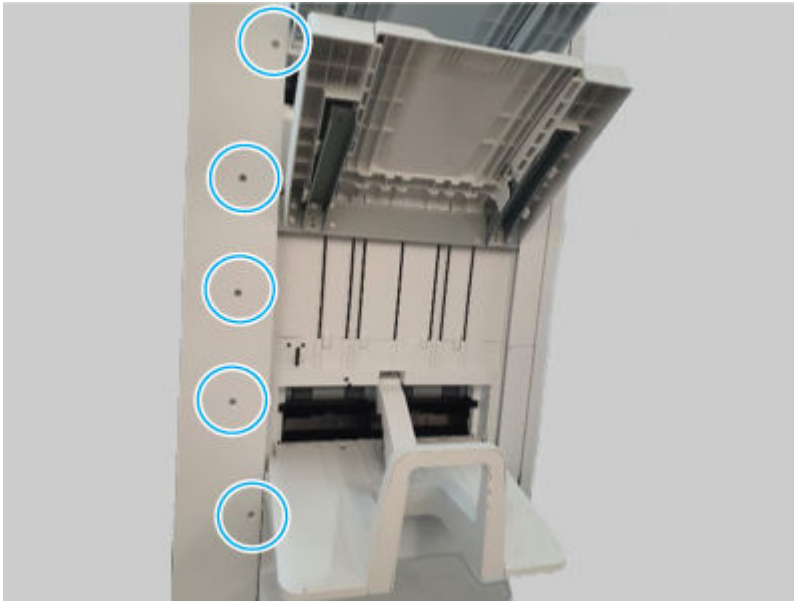


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2590 Remove five screws

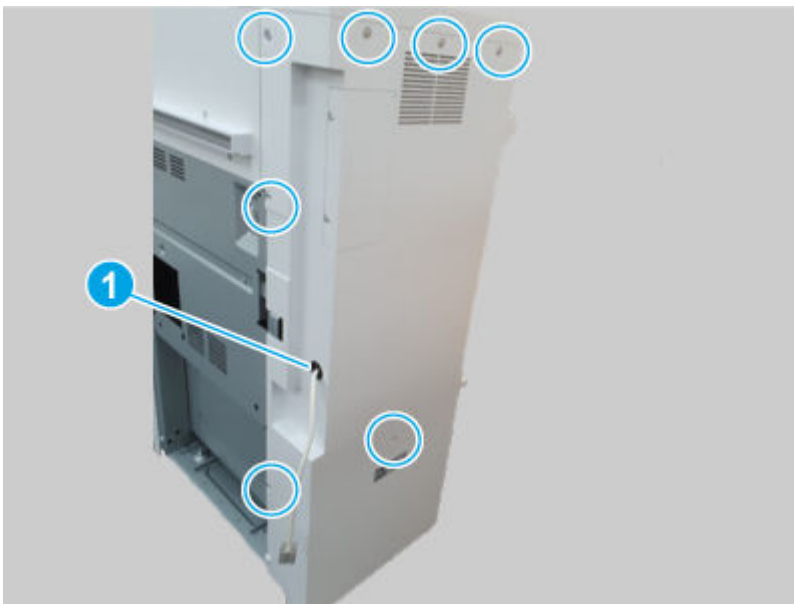


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2591 Remove the cover

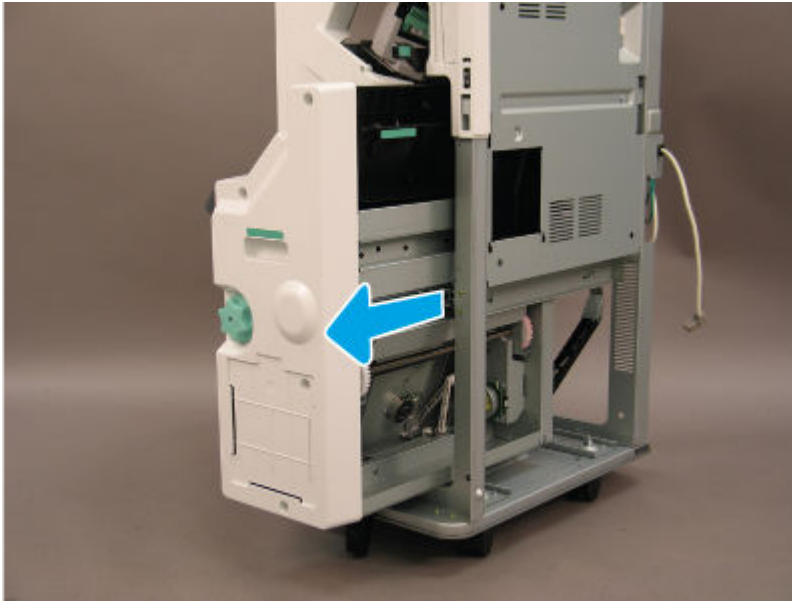


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

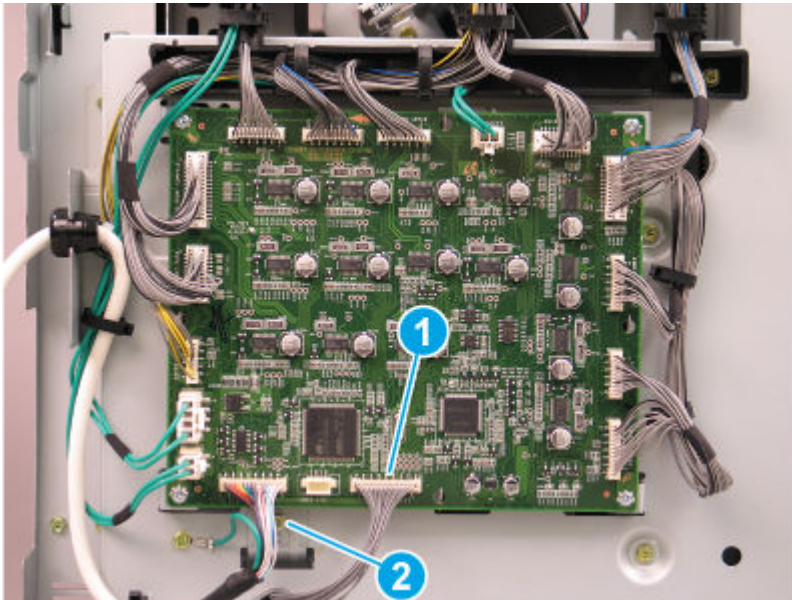
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2592 Slide the booklet maker out



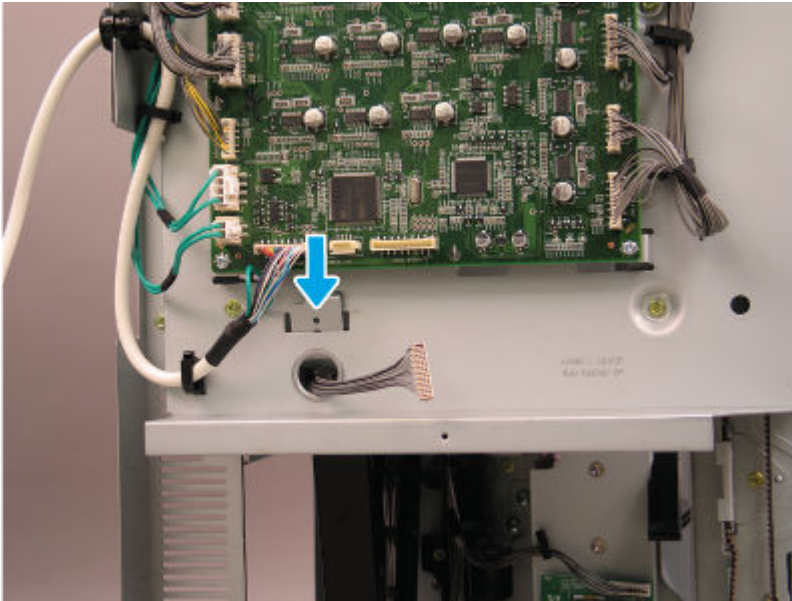
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2593 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



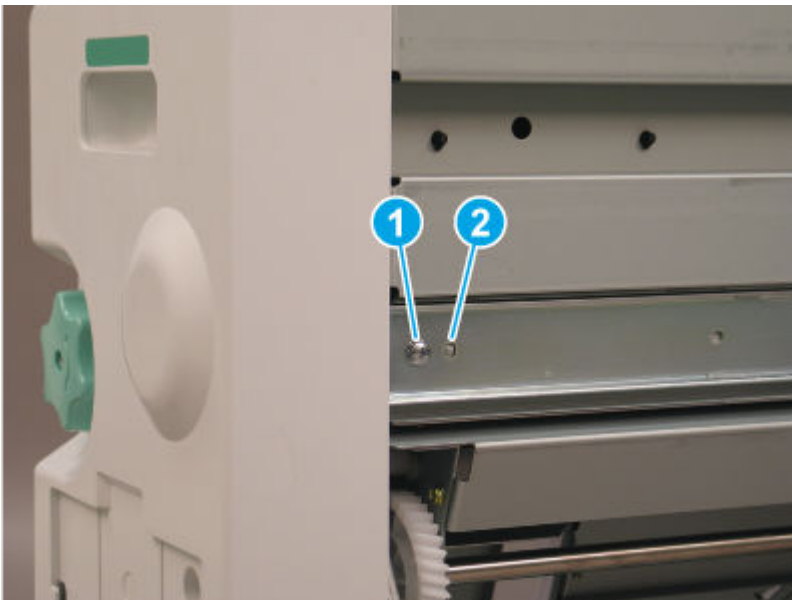
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2594 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2595 Release the alignment pin



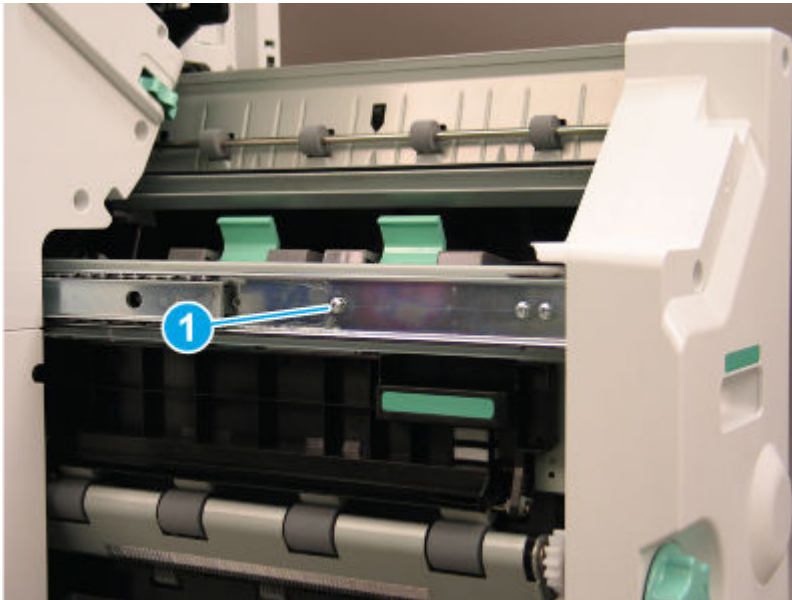
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2596 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2597 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


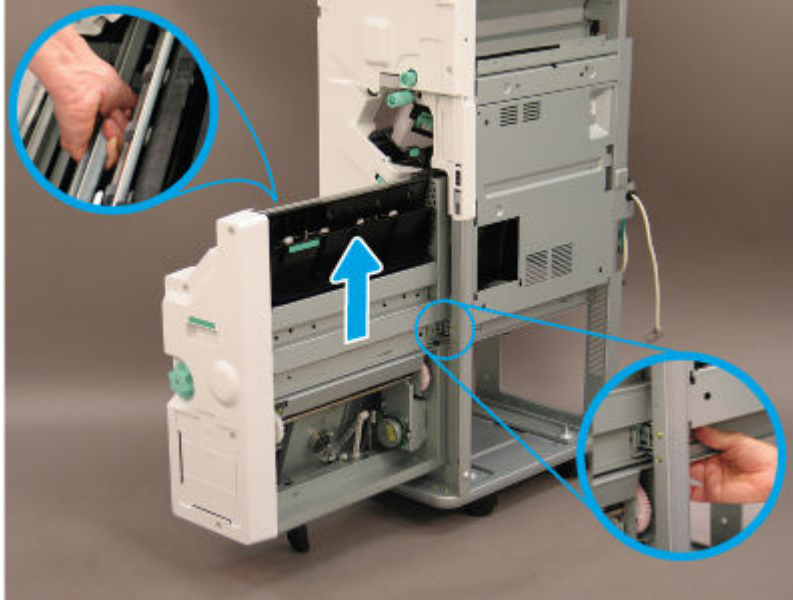
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2598 Remove the booklet maker

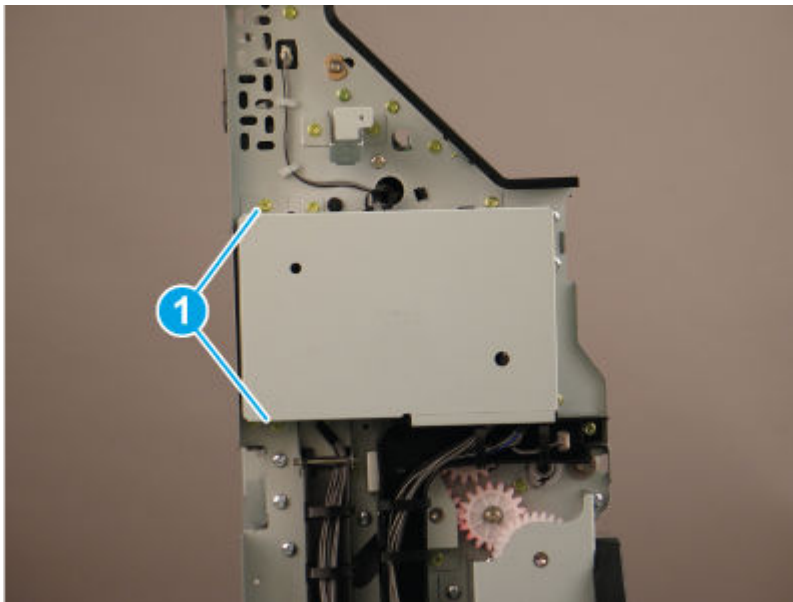


4 Remove the booklet finisher PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher PCA.

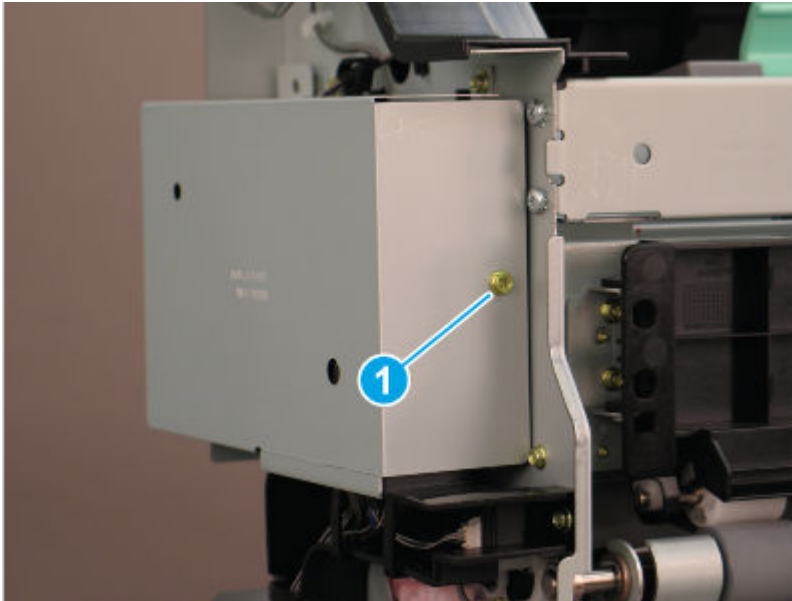
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2599 Remove two screws



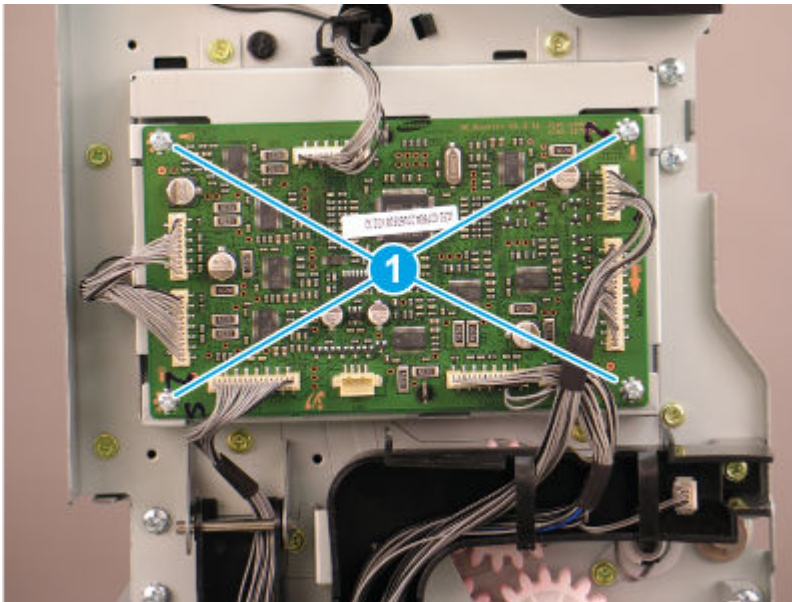
2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 6-2600 Remove one screw



3. Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet finisher PCA.

Figure 6-2601 Remove the PCA

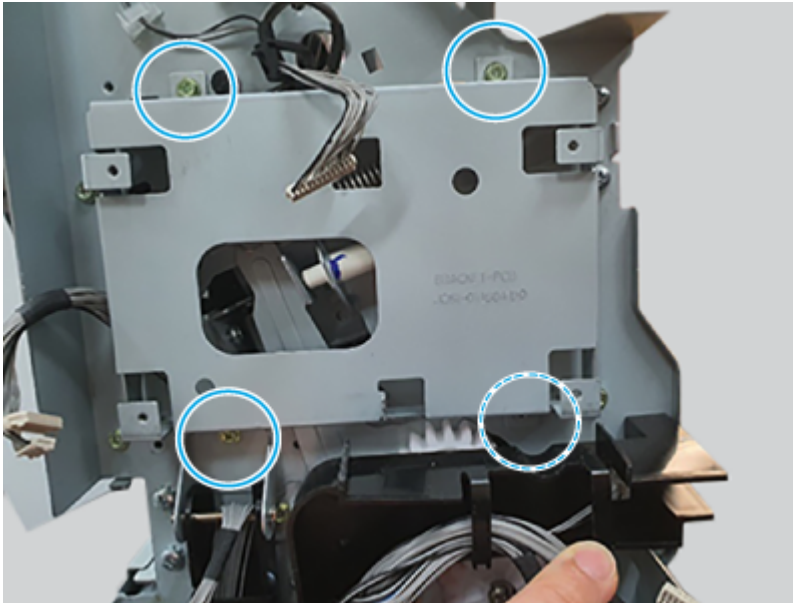


5 Remove the booklet finisher harness guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher harness guide.

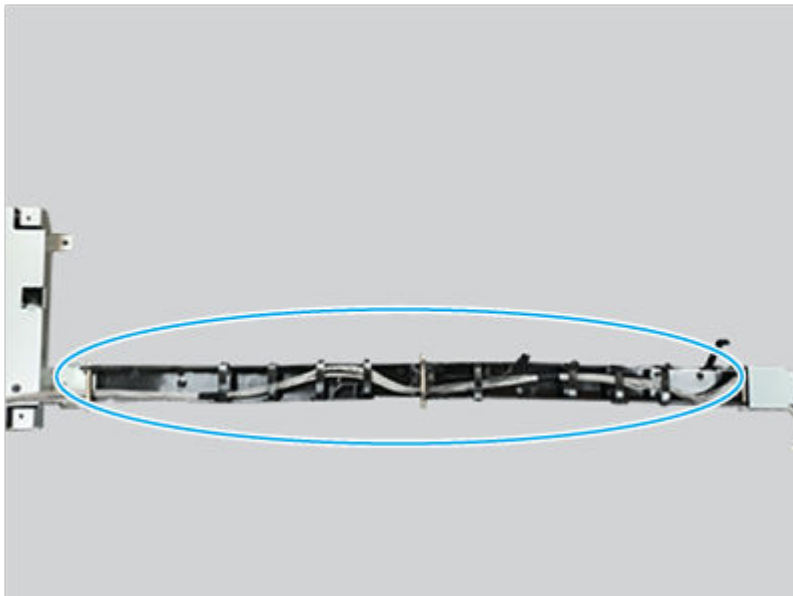
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2602 Remove four screws



2. Release twelve retainers, and then remove the harness guide.

Figure 6-2603 Remove the guide



6 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

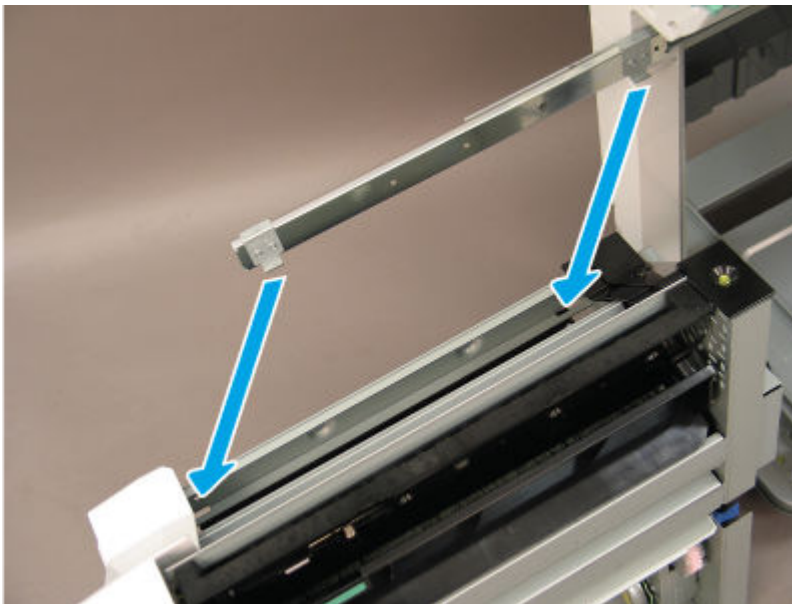
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

NOTE:  Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

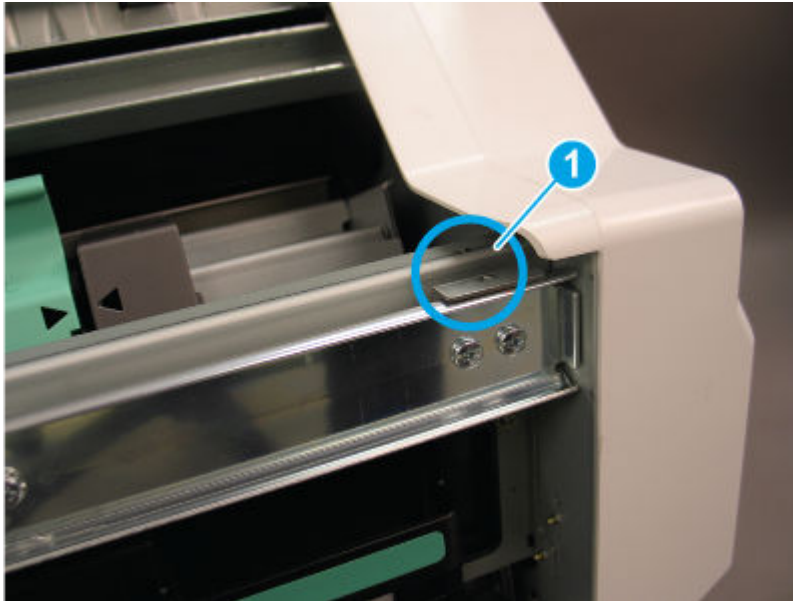
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2604 Position the hooks on the rail



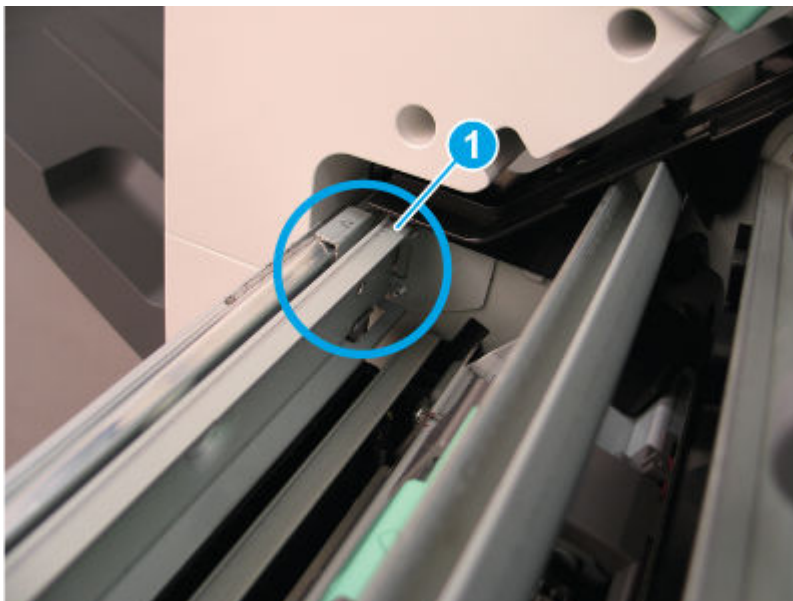
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2605 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2606 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2607 Attach the rail



Booklet entrance unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet entrance unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance unit

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher entrance unit.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-336 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW51-60102	Booklet entrance unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

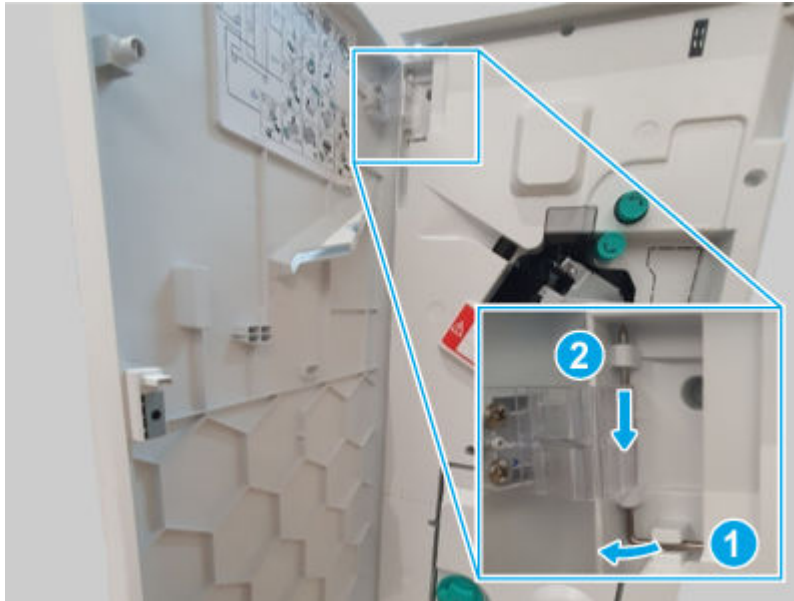
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

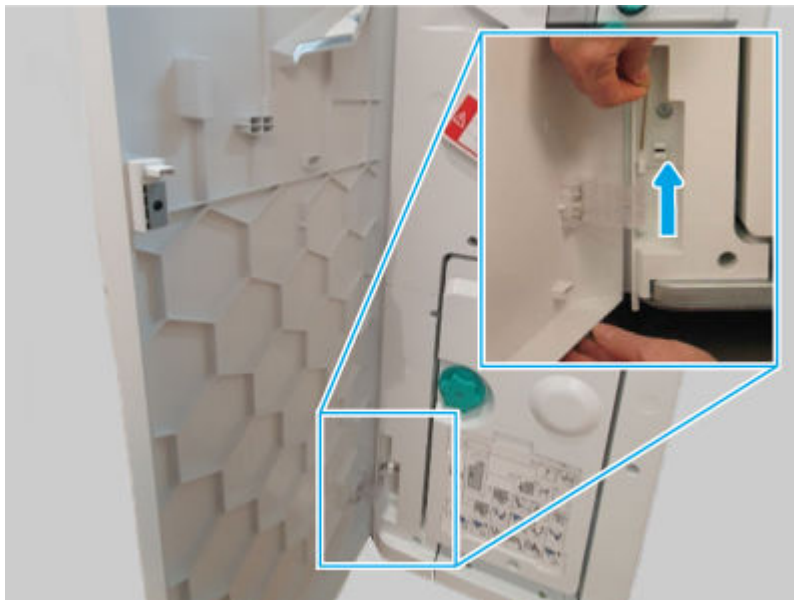
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2608 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2609 Remove the door

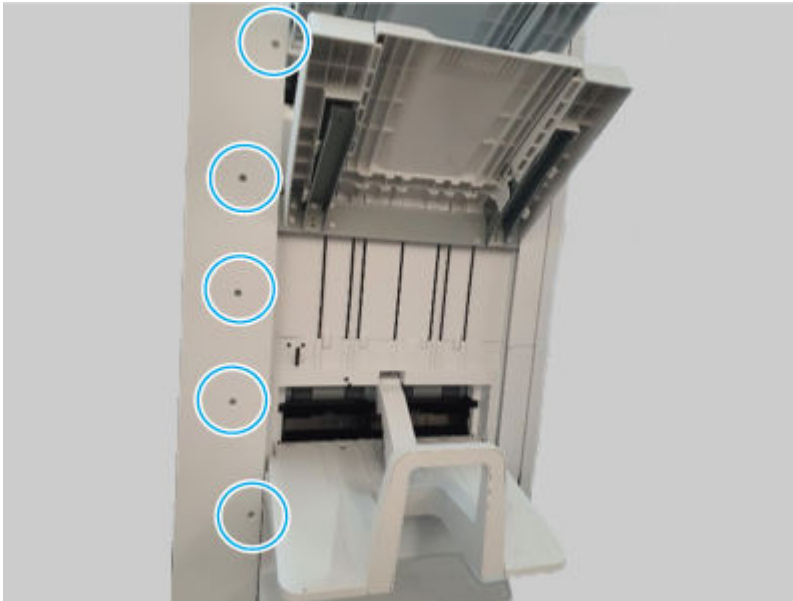


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2610 Remove five screws

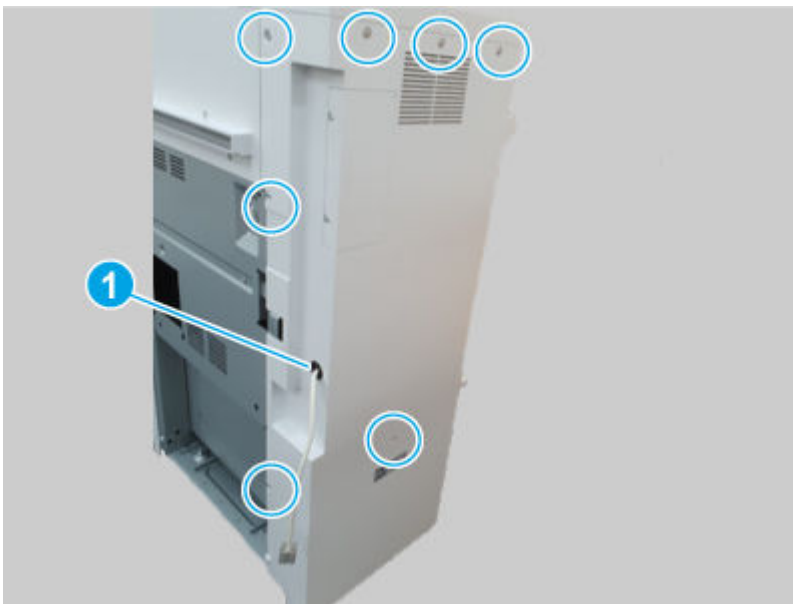


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2611 Remove the cover

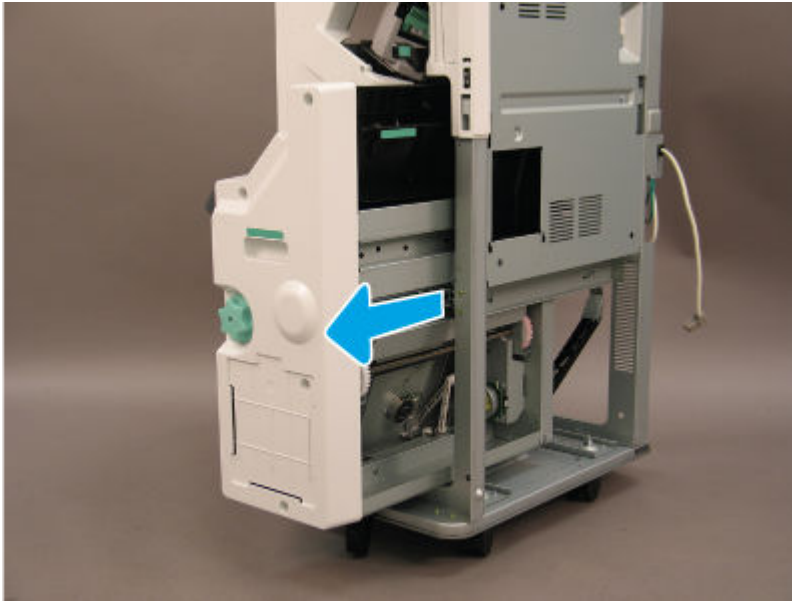


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

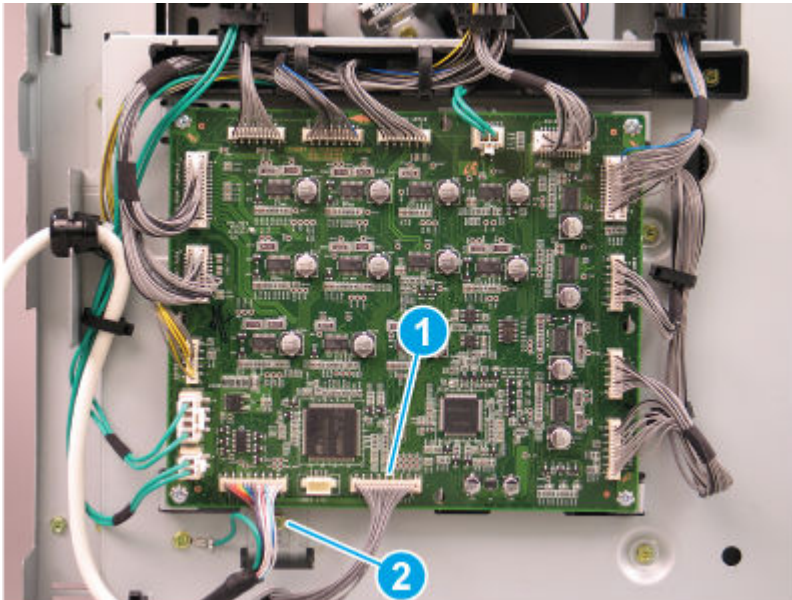
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2612 Slide the booklet maker out



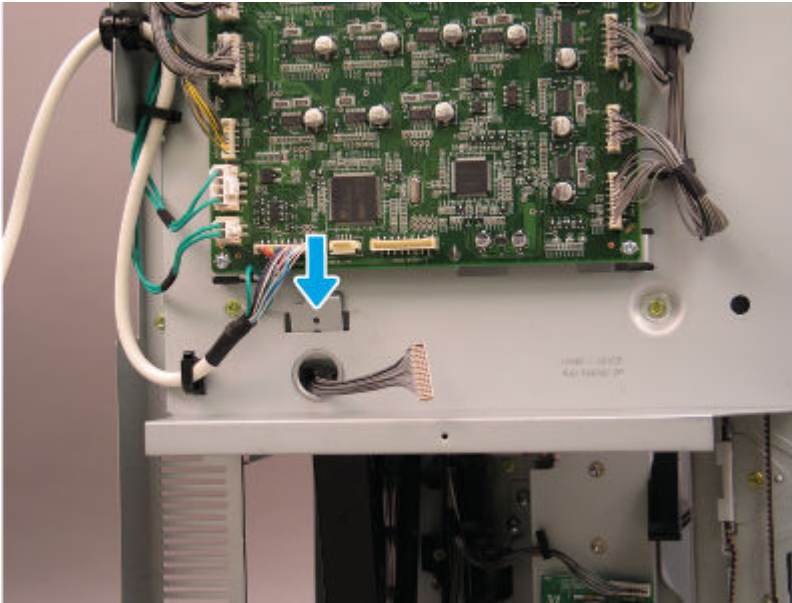
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2613 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



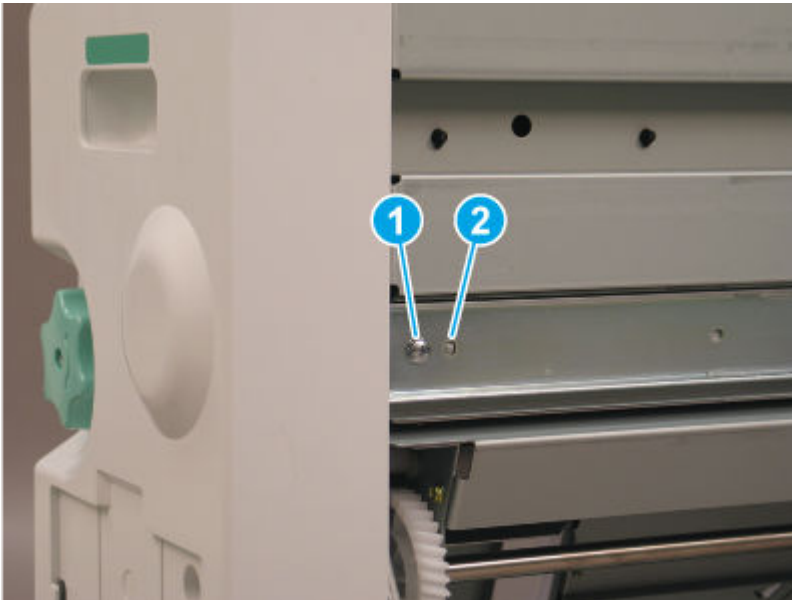
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2614 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



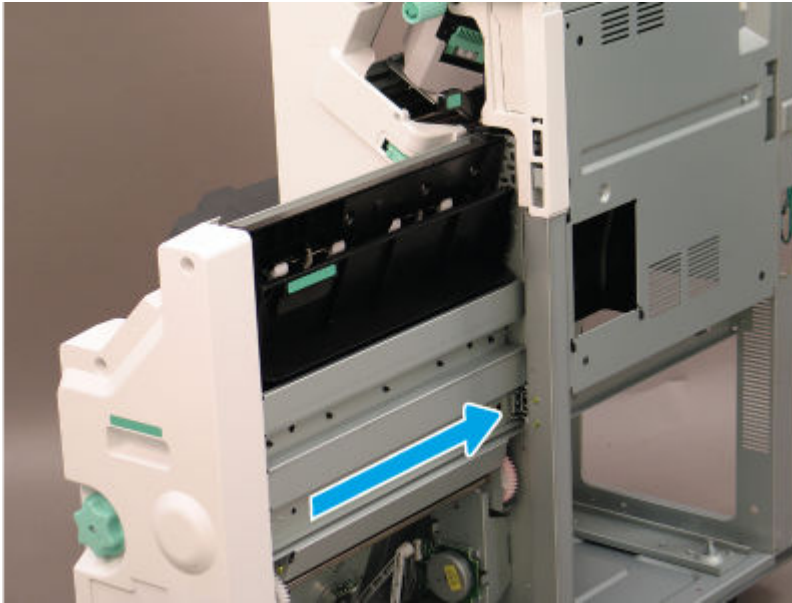
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2615 Release the alignment pin



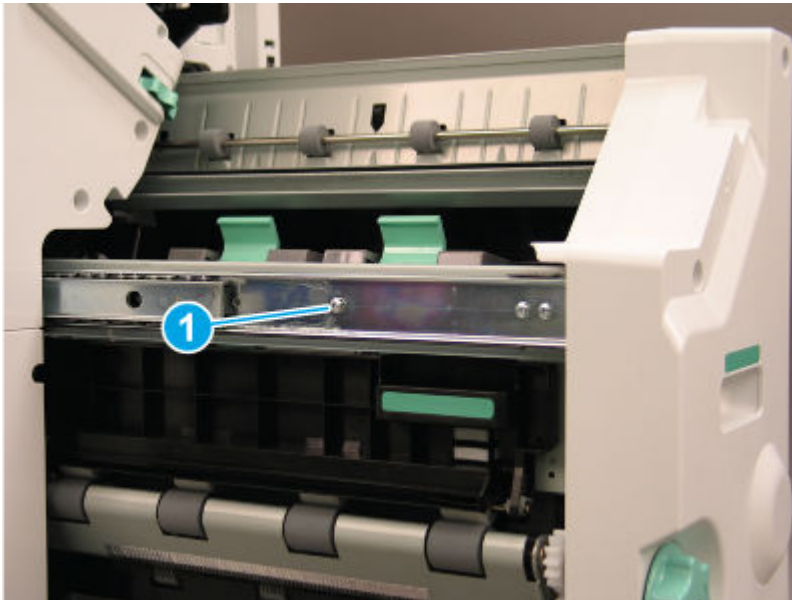
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2616 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2617 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


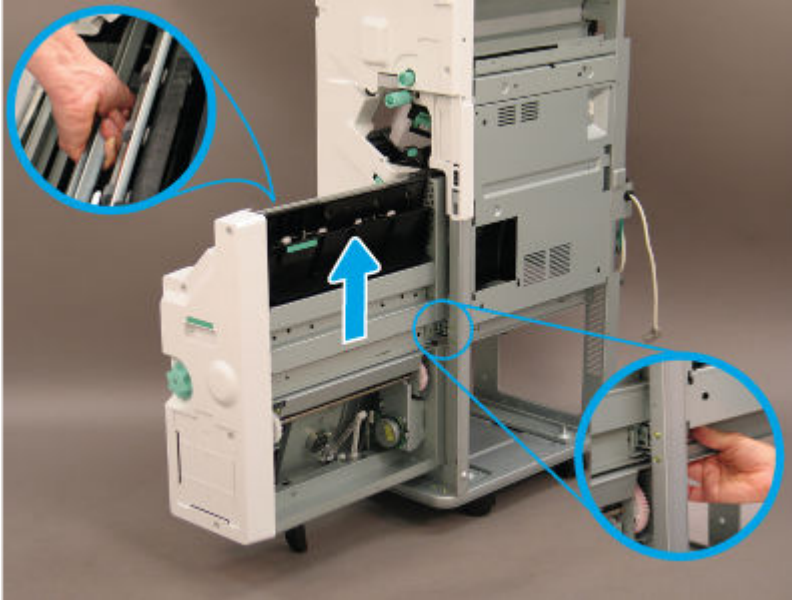
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2618 Remove the booklet maker

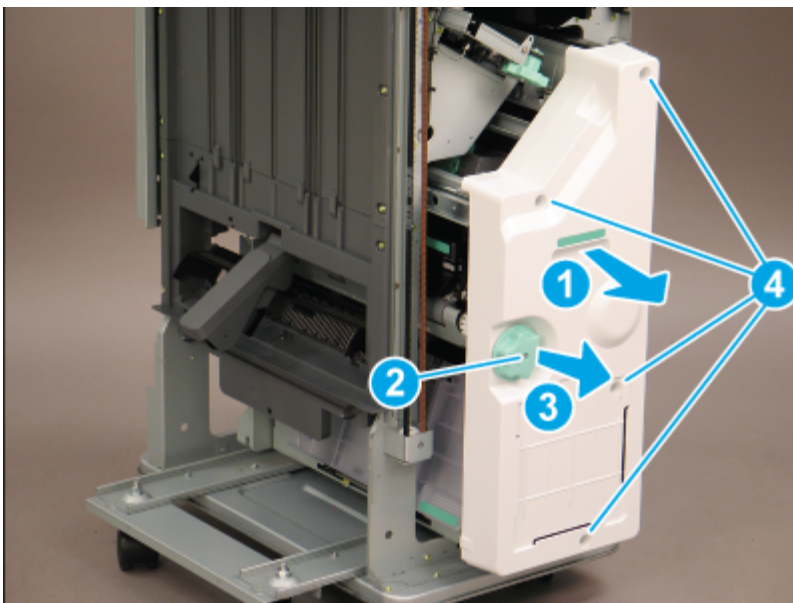


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2619 Remove the cover

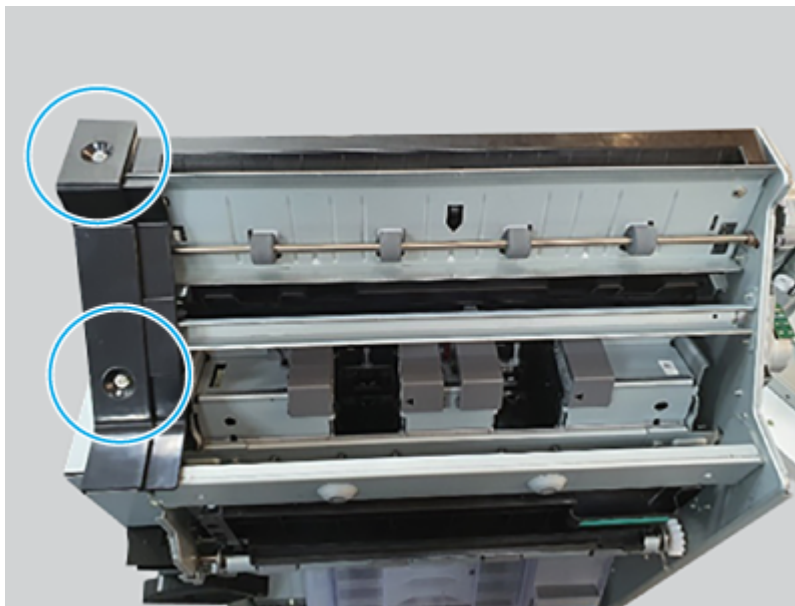


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance unit.

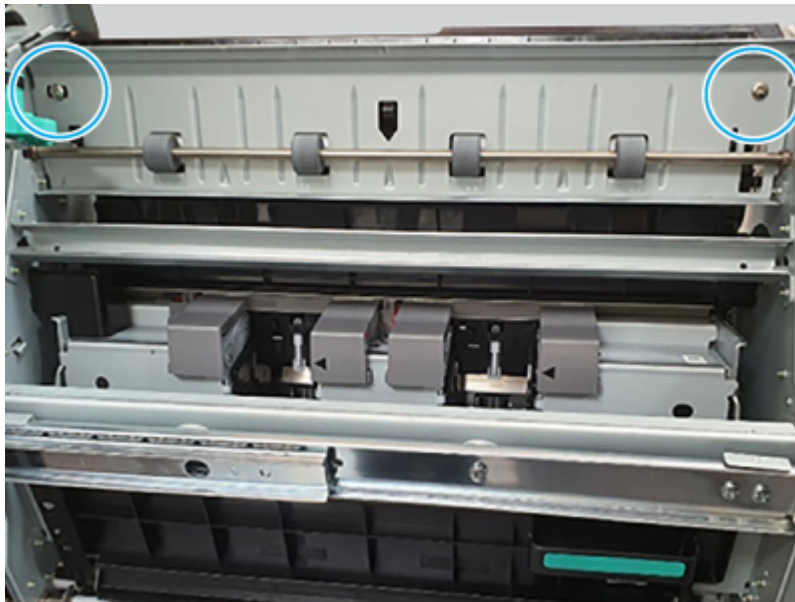
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2620 Remove two screws



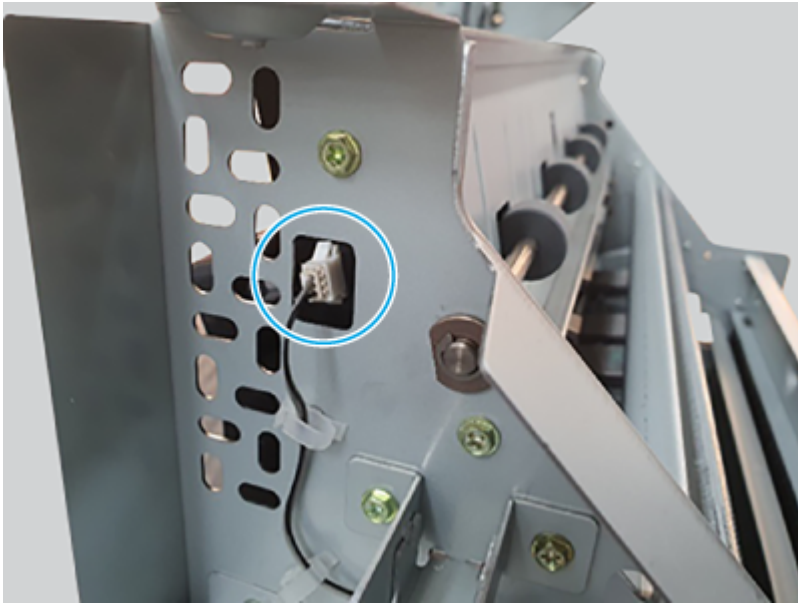
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2621 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector.

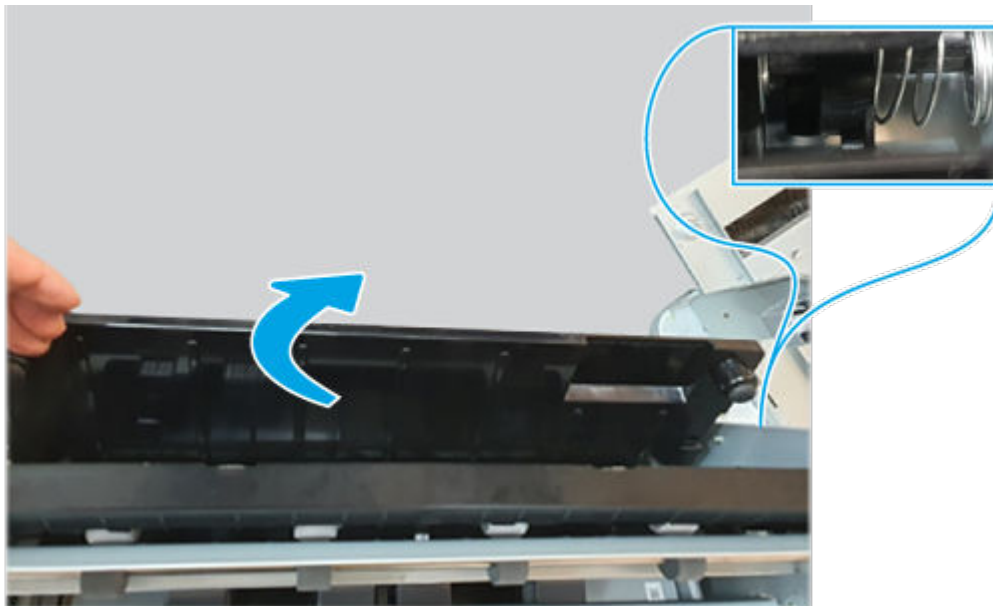
Figure 6-2622 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove the booklet entrance unit.

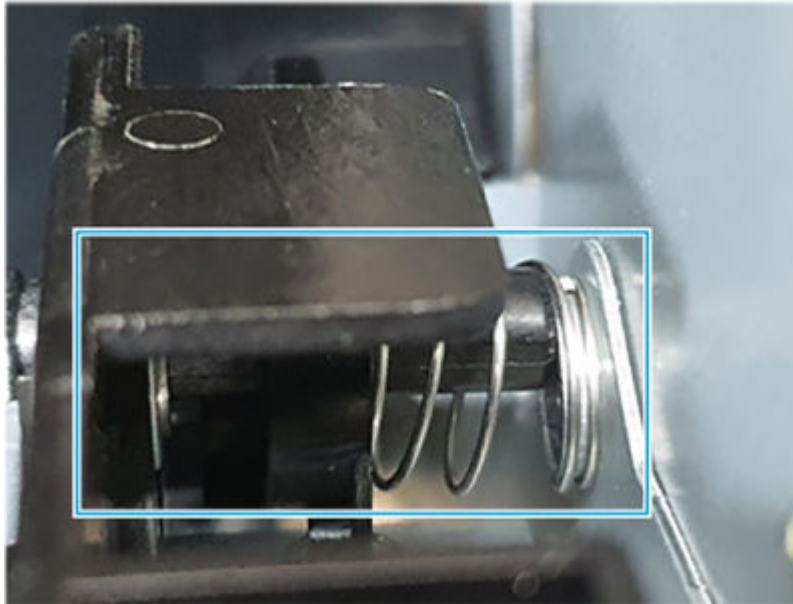
⚠ CAUTION: The spring and holder on the entrance unit are not captive. Do not lose them when handling the unit.

Figure 6-2623 Remove the unit



5. **Reinstall step:** Make sure that the spring on the unit is correctly positioned on the chassis of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2624 Reinstall the unit



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

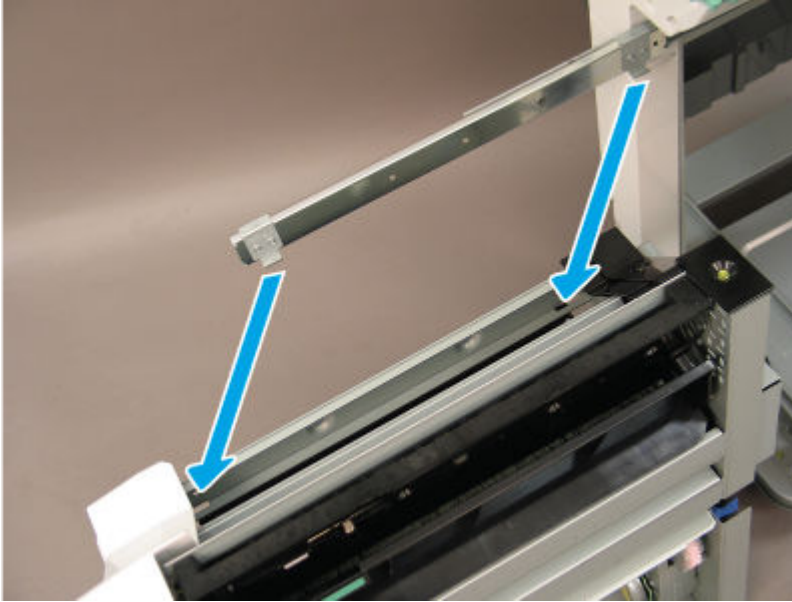
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

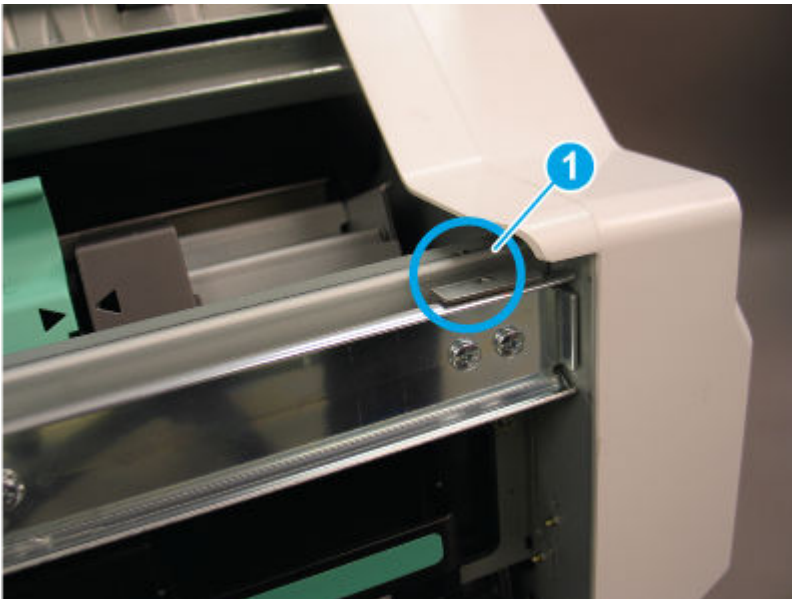
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2625 Position the hooks on the rail



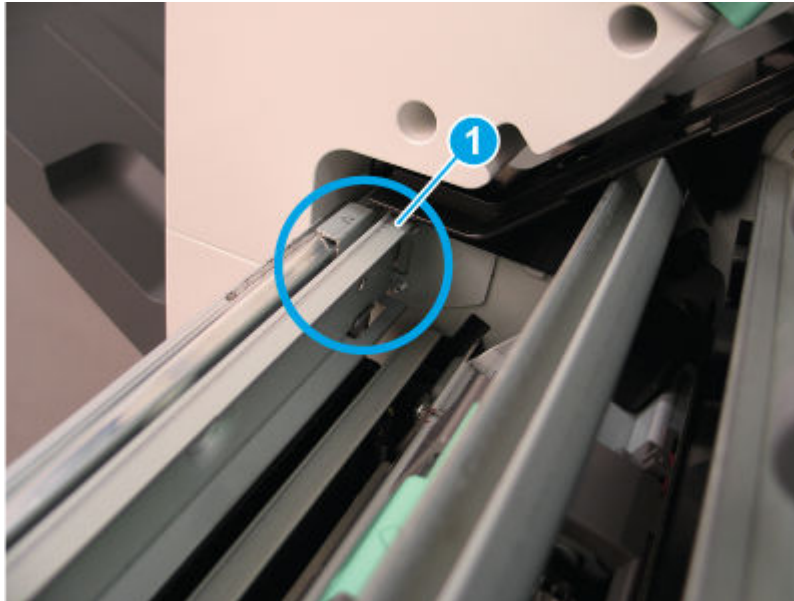
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2626 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2627 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2628 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher entrance sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-337 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Booklet entrance sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

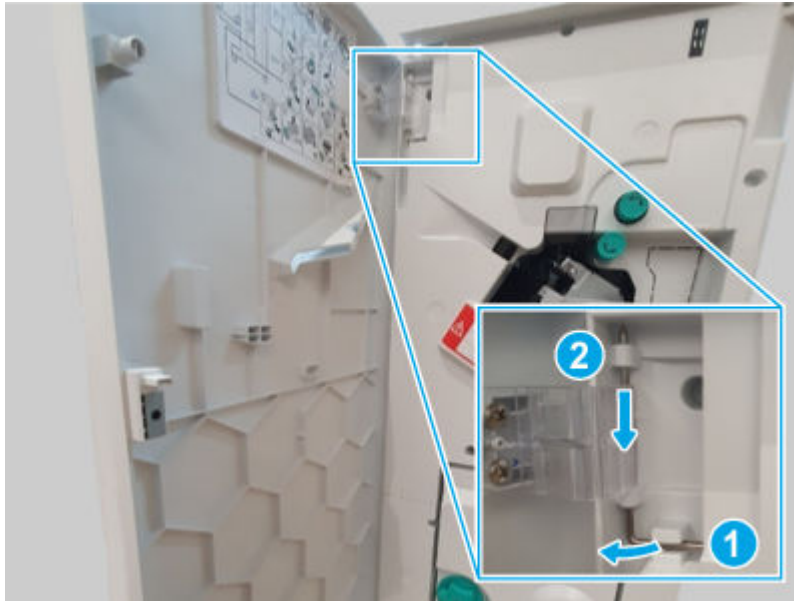
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

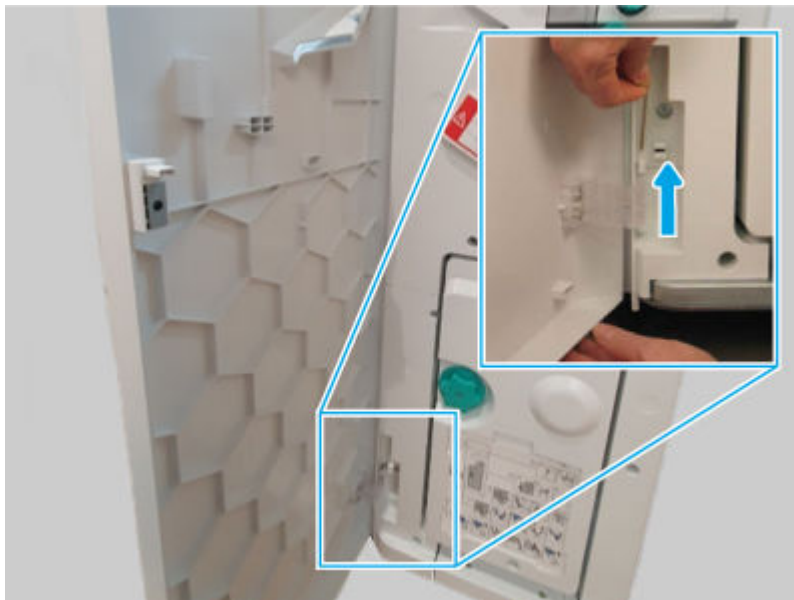
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2629 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2630 Remove the door

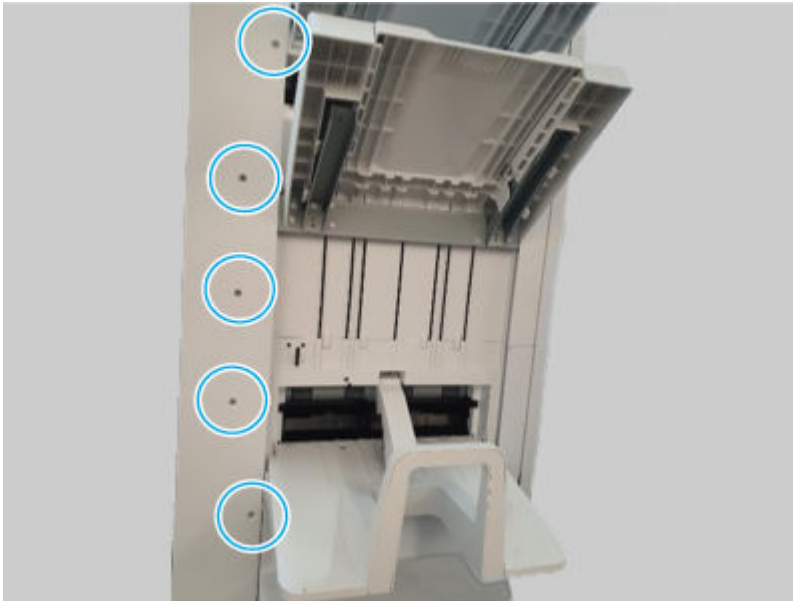


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2631 Remove five screws

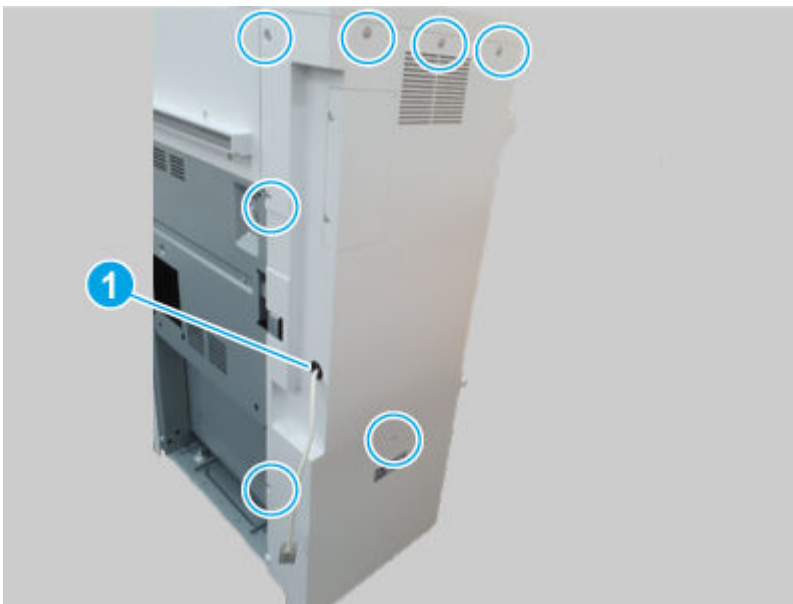


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2632 Remove the cover

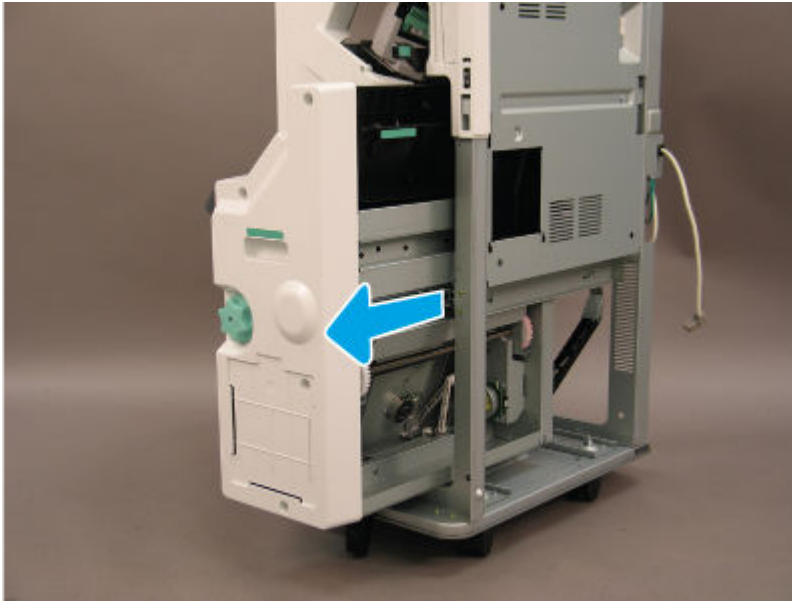


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

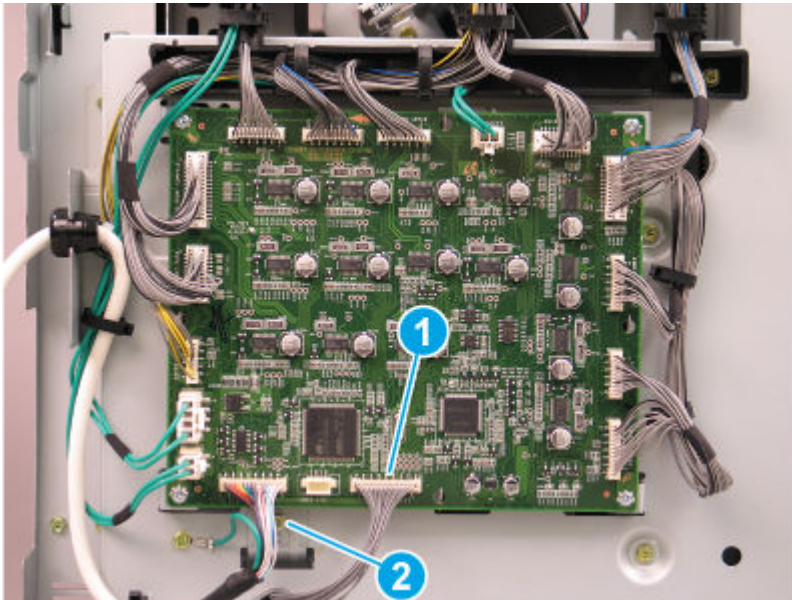
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2633 Slide the booklet maker out



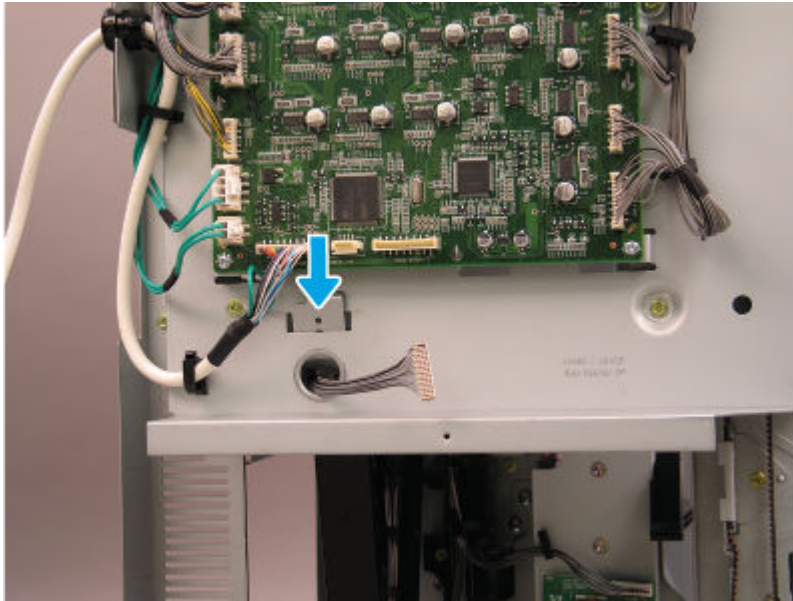
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2634 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



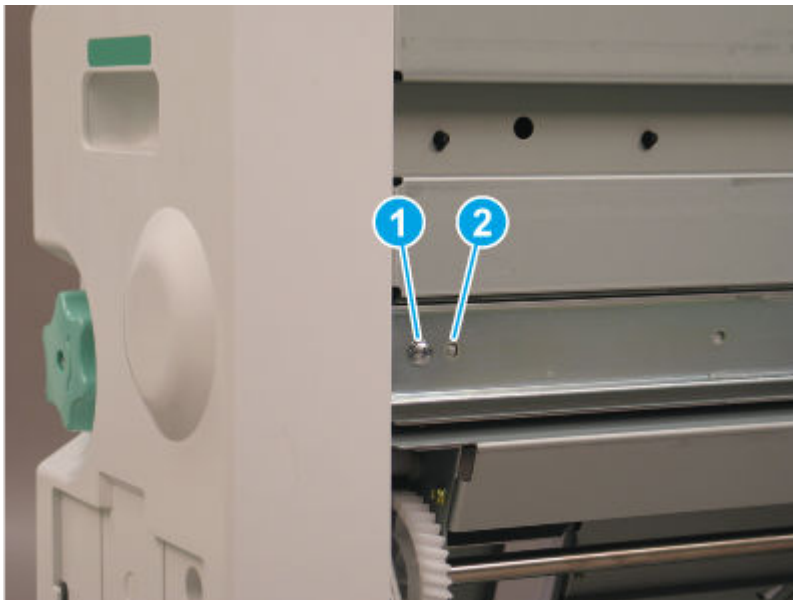
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2635 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2636 Release the alignment pin



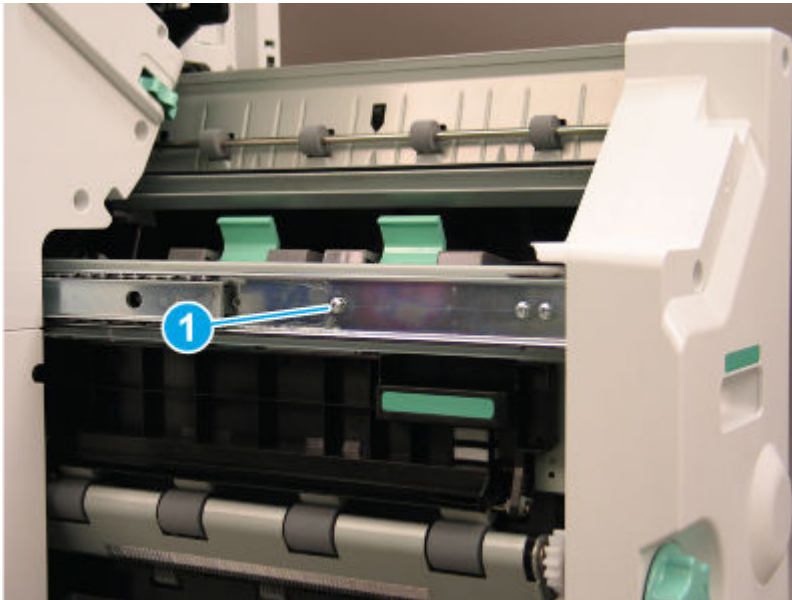
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2637 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2638 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


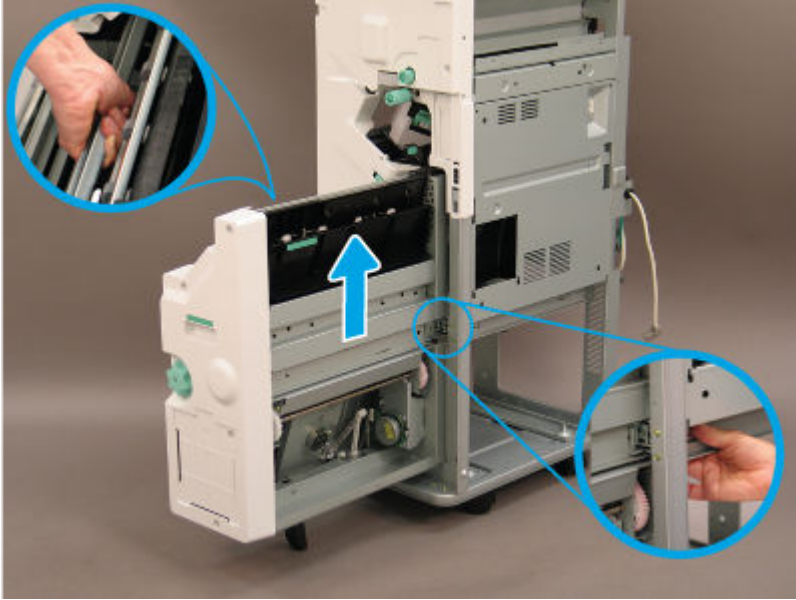
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2639 Remove the booklet maker

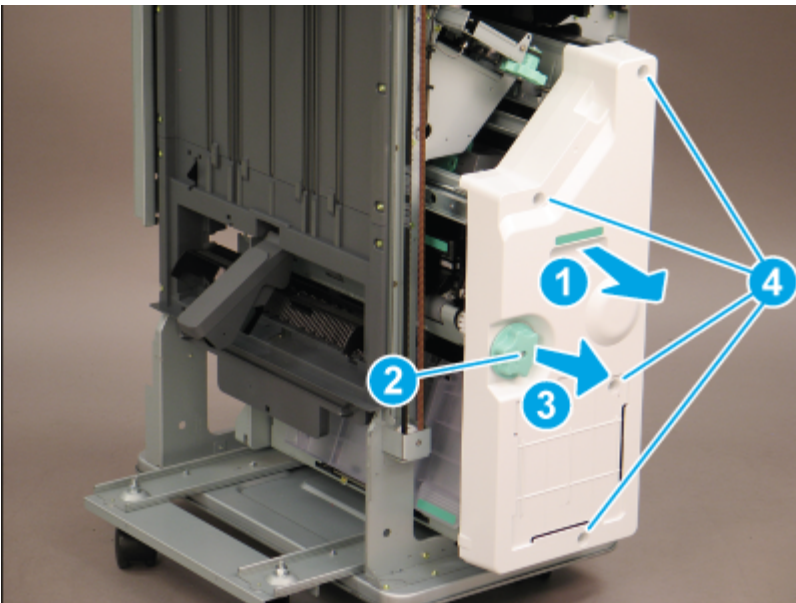


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2640 Remove the cover

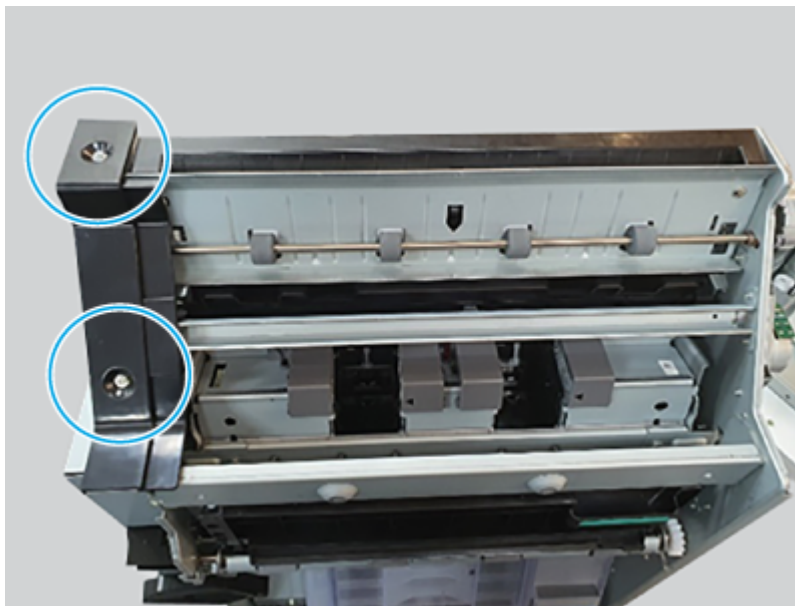


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance unit.

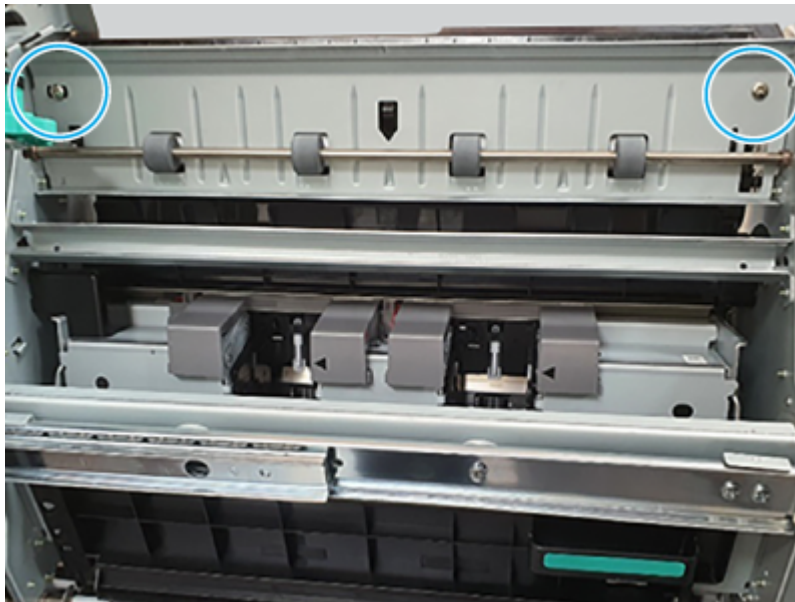
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2641 Remove two screws



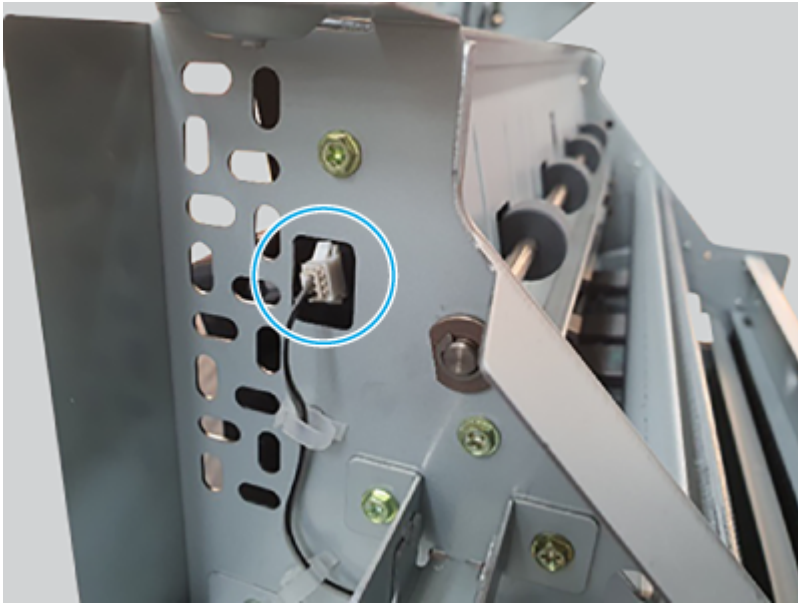
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2642 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector.

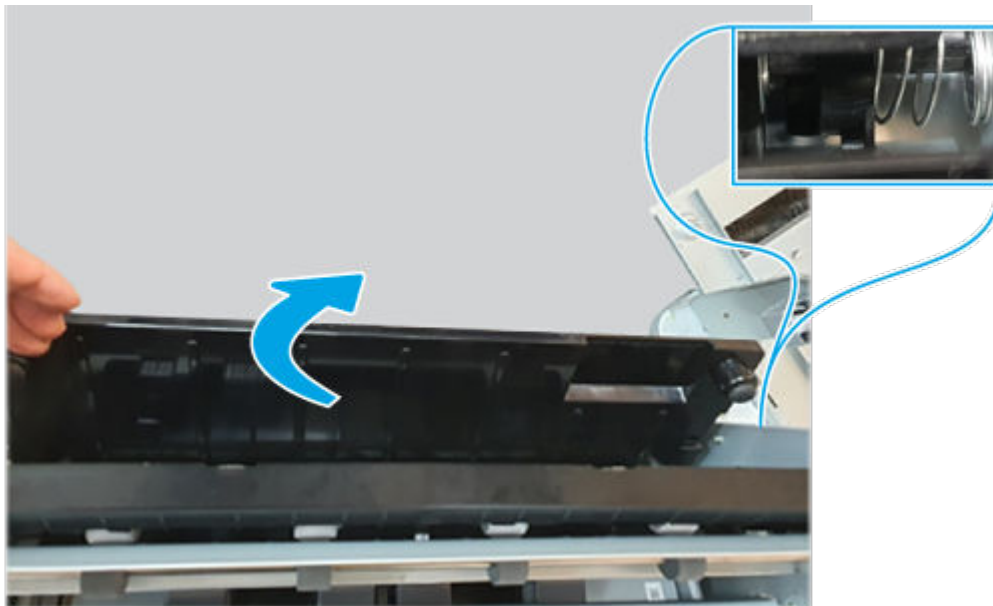
Figure 6-2643 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove the booklet entrance unit.

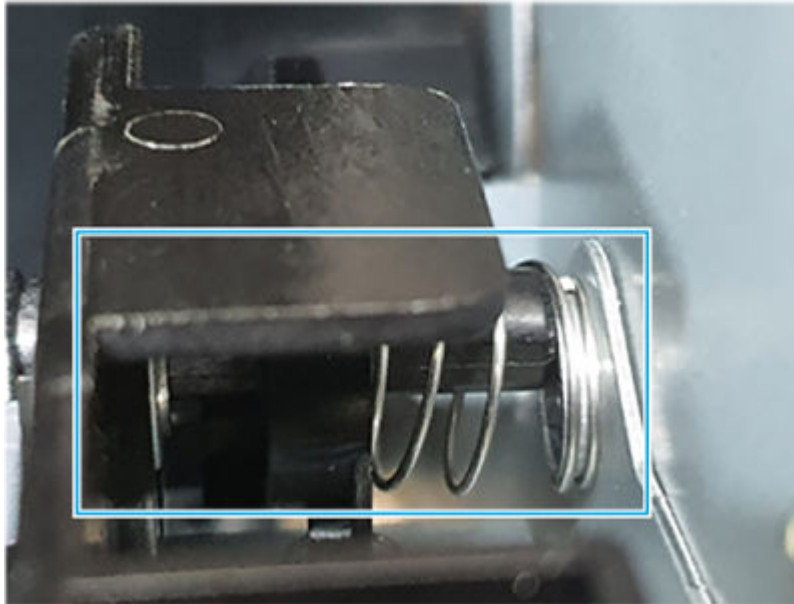
⚠ CAUTION: The spring and holder on the entrance unit are not captive. Do not lose them when handling the unit.

Figure 6-2644 Remove the unit



5. **Reinstall step:** Make sure that the spring on the unit is correctly positioned on the chassis of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2645 Reinstall the unit



6 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance sensor.

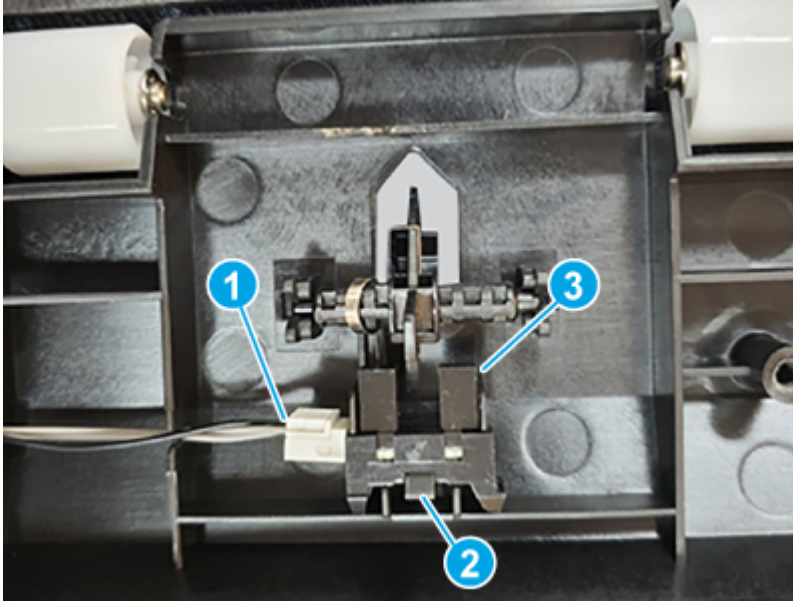
1. Remove three screws, and then remove the entrance actuator cover.

Figure 6-2646 Remove the cover



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the booklet entrance sensor (callout 3).

Figure 6-2647 Remove the sensor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

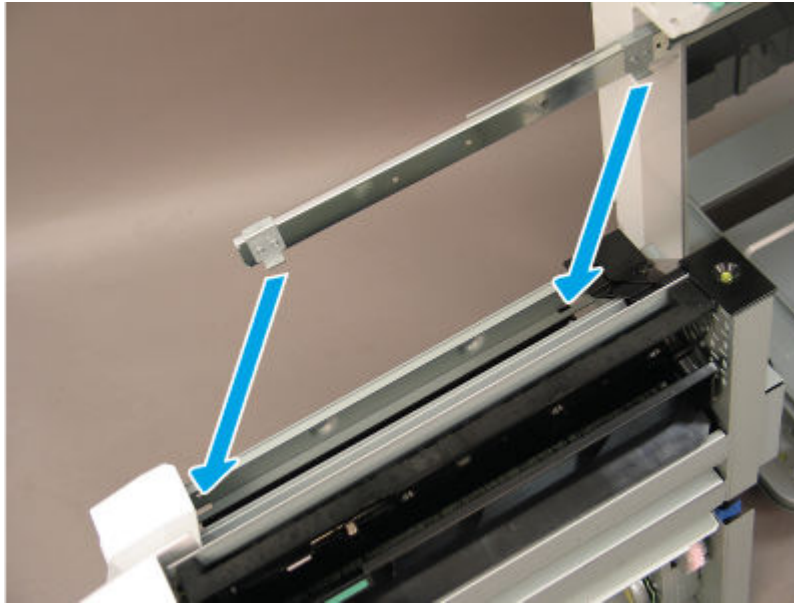
Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

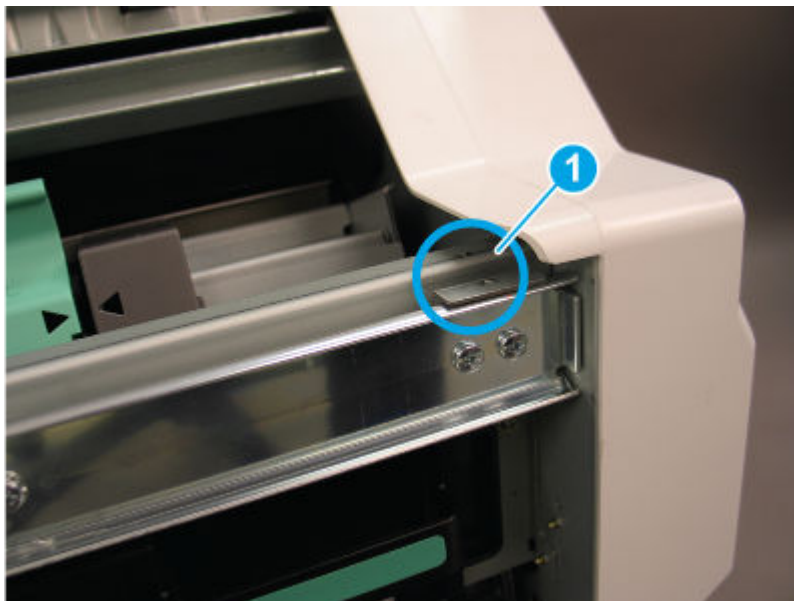
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2648 Position the hooks on the rail



2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2649 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2650 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.




NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2651 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher entrance-presser motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-338 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01425A	Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

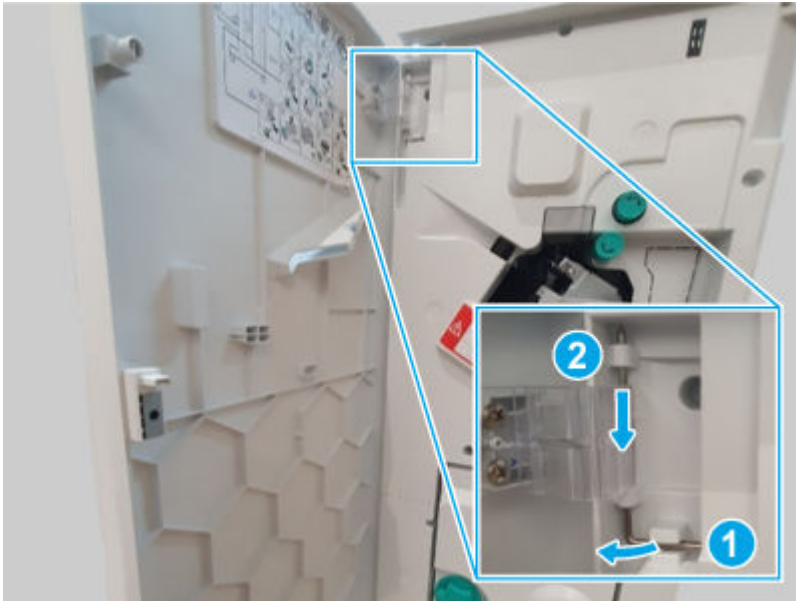
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

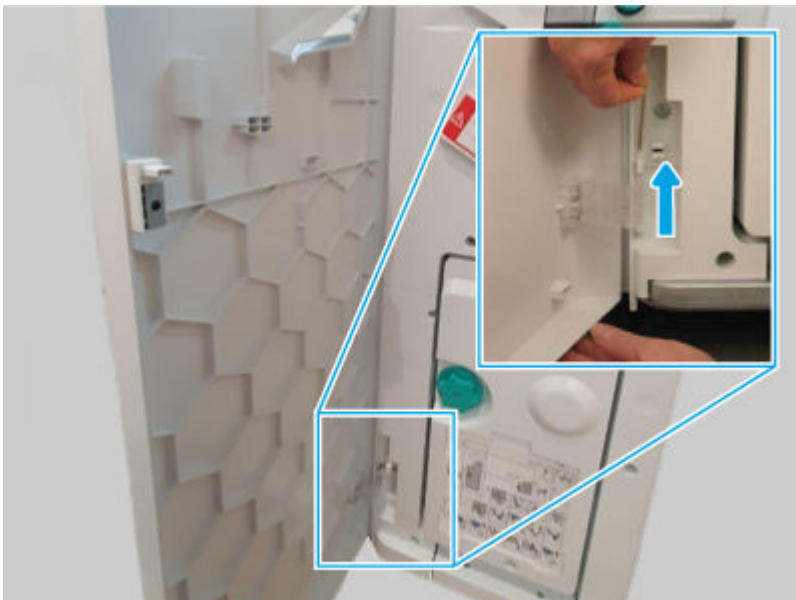
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2652 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2653 Remove the door



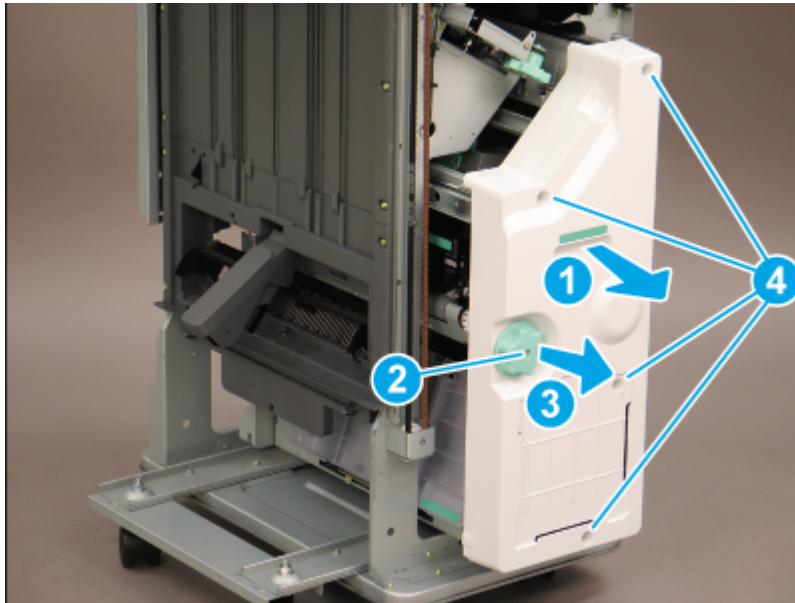
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2654 Remove the cover

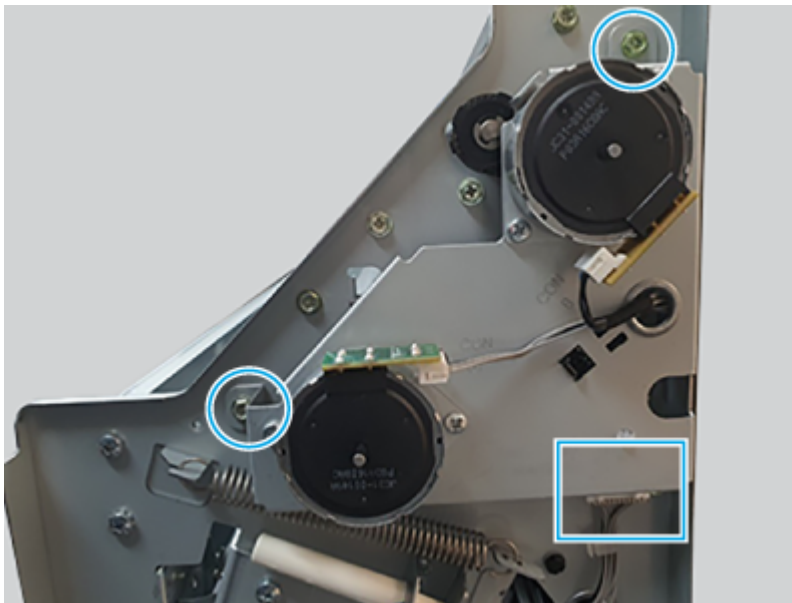


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance-presser motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance-presser motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the booklet entrance-presser motor assembly.

Figure 6-2655 Remove the assembly



4 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher entrance motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-339 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01152A	Drive-motor step (Booklet entrance motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

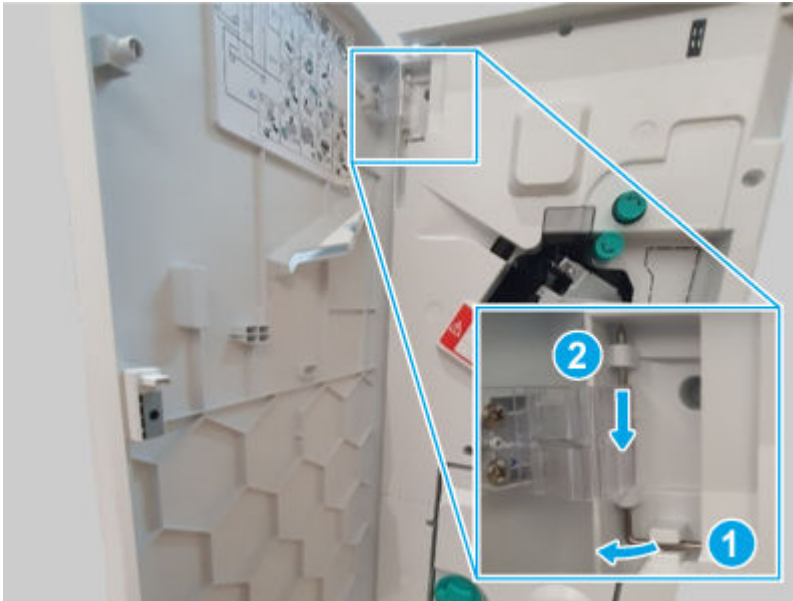
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

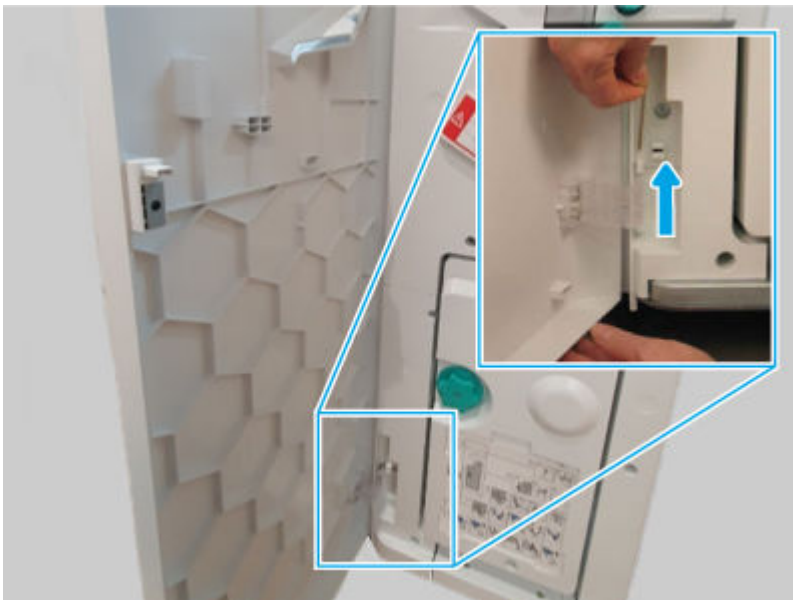
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2656 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2657 Remove the door

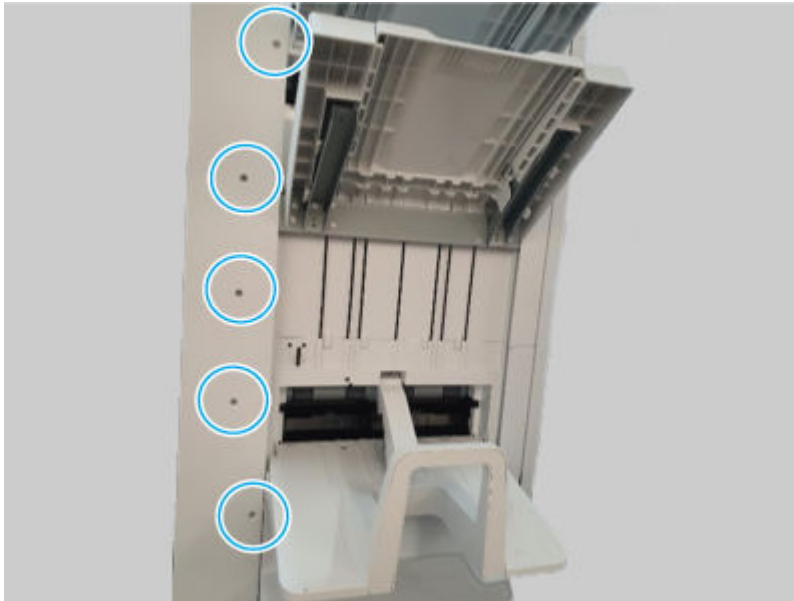


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2658 Remove five screws

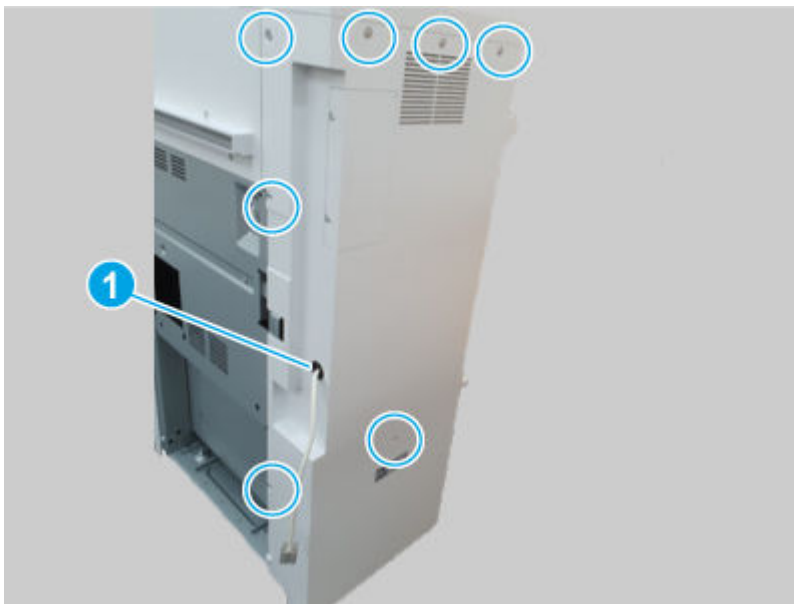


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2659 Remove the cover

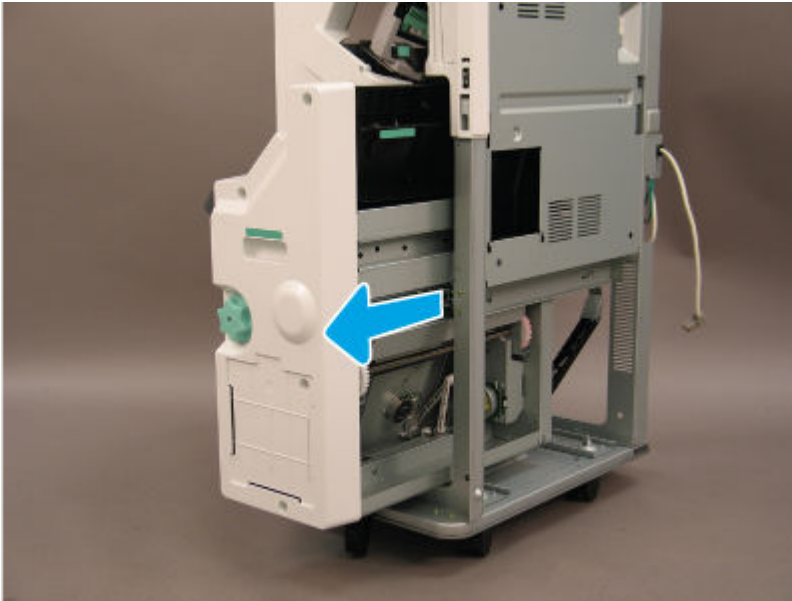


3. **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

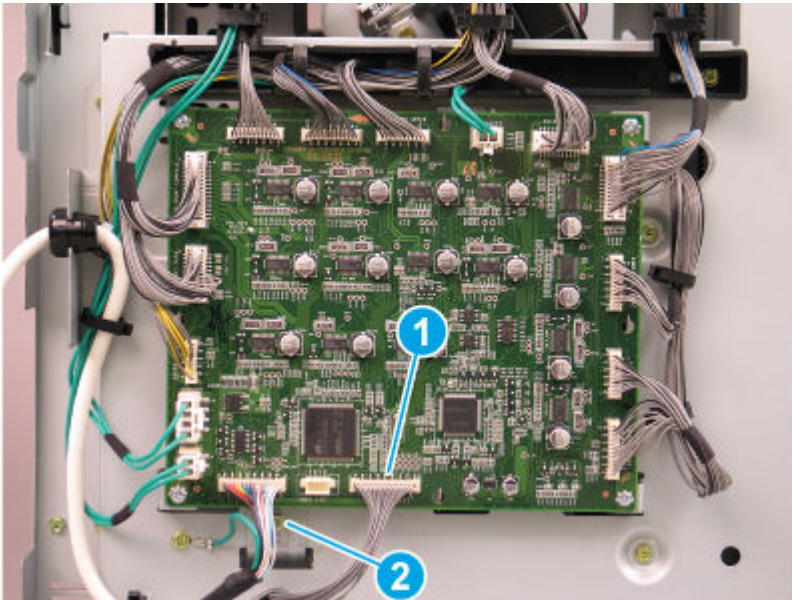
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2660 Slide the booklet maker out



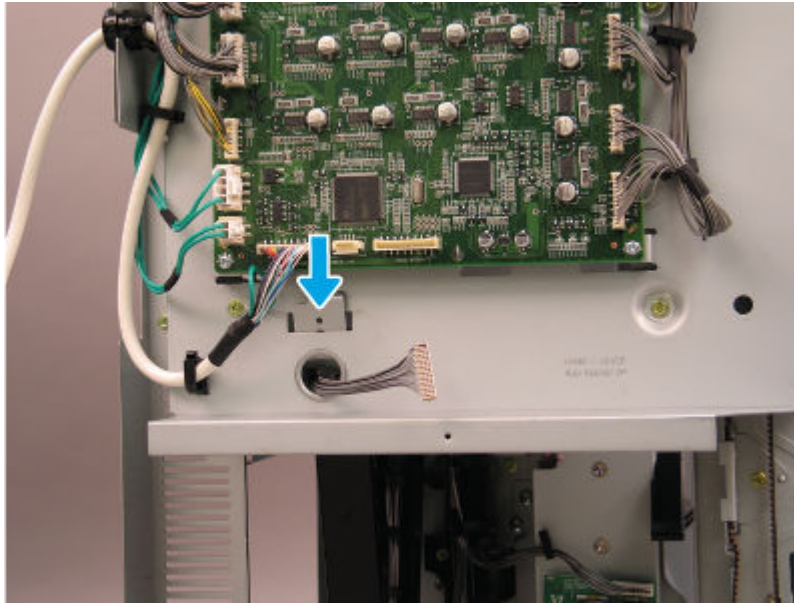
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2661 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



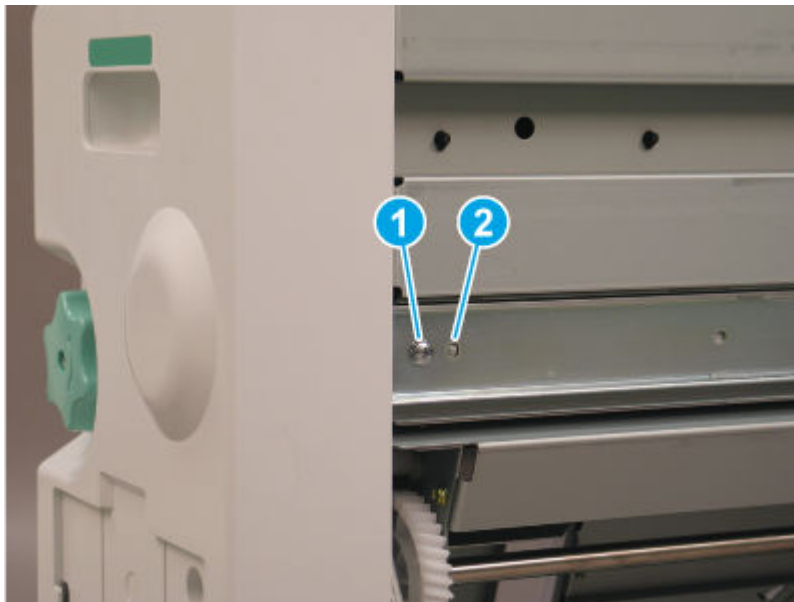
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2662 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2663 Release the alignment pin



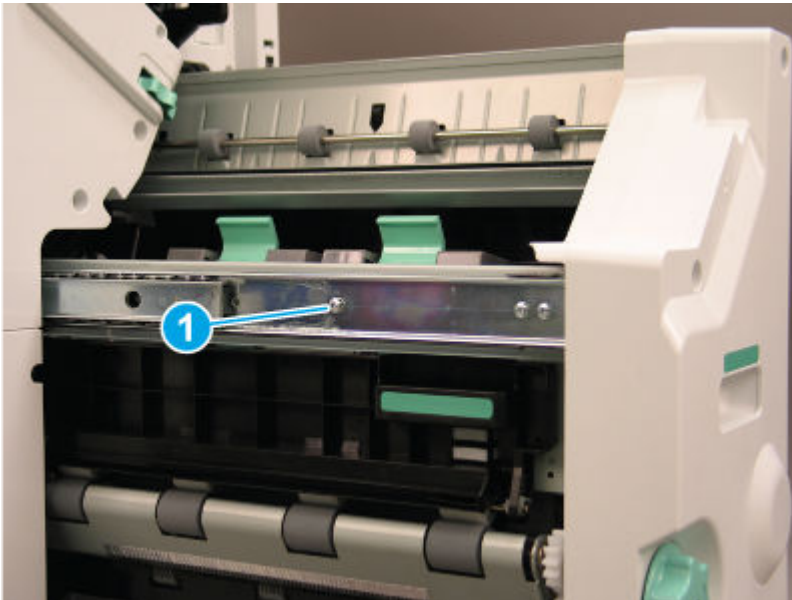
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2664 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2665 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


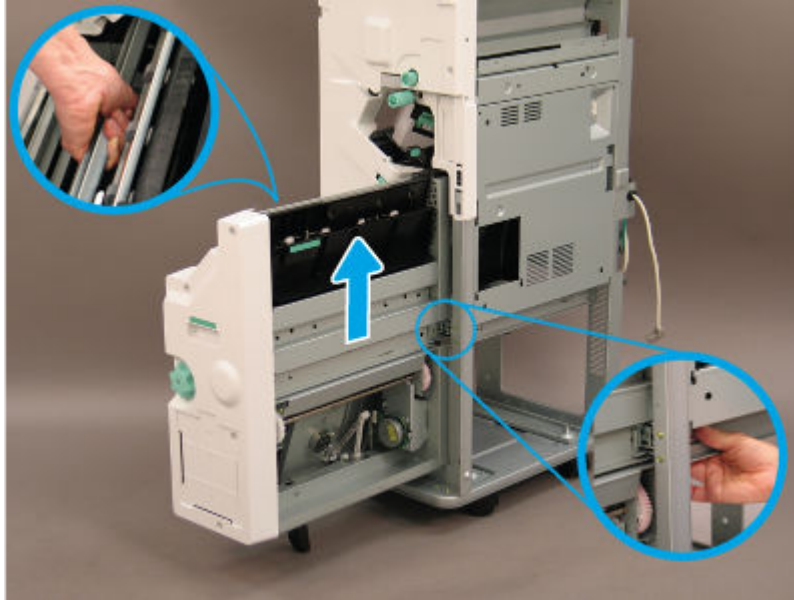
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2666 Remove the booklet maker

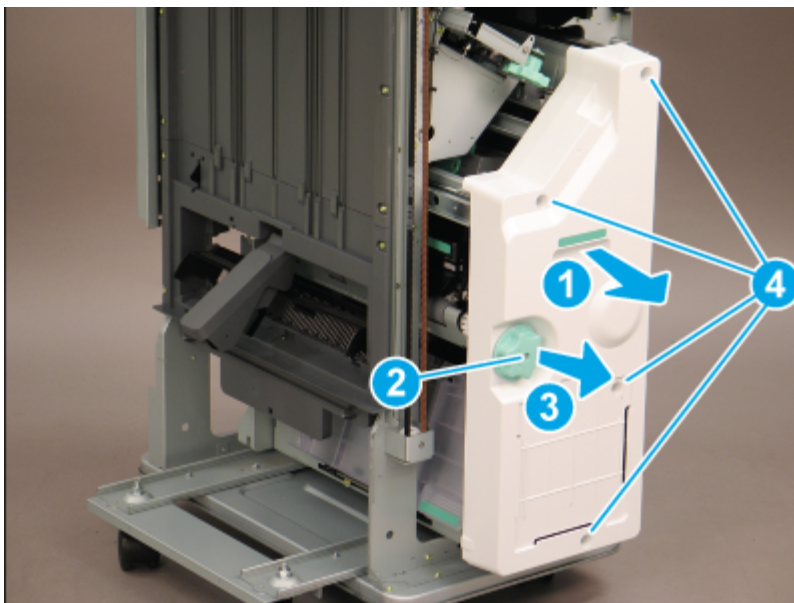


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2667 Remove the cover



5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the entrance motor.

Figure 6-2668 Remove the motor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.




IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.




NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

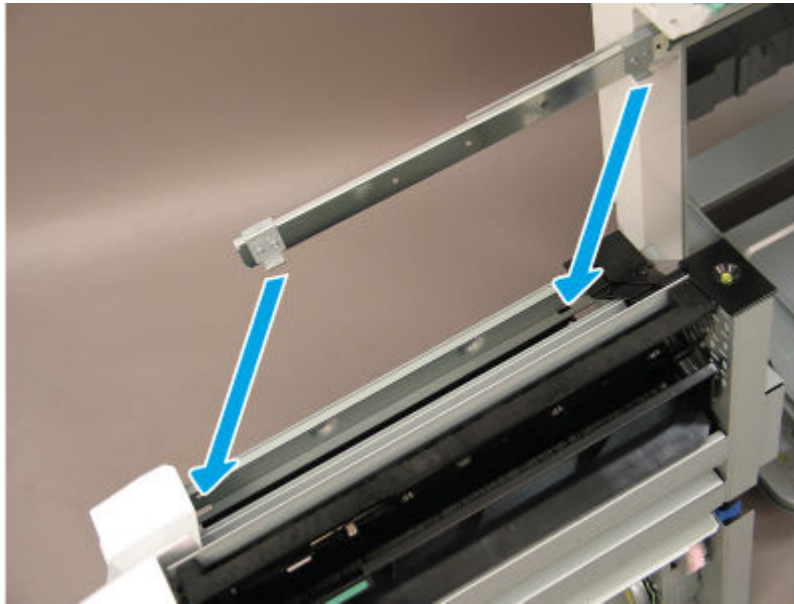
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

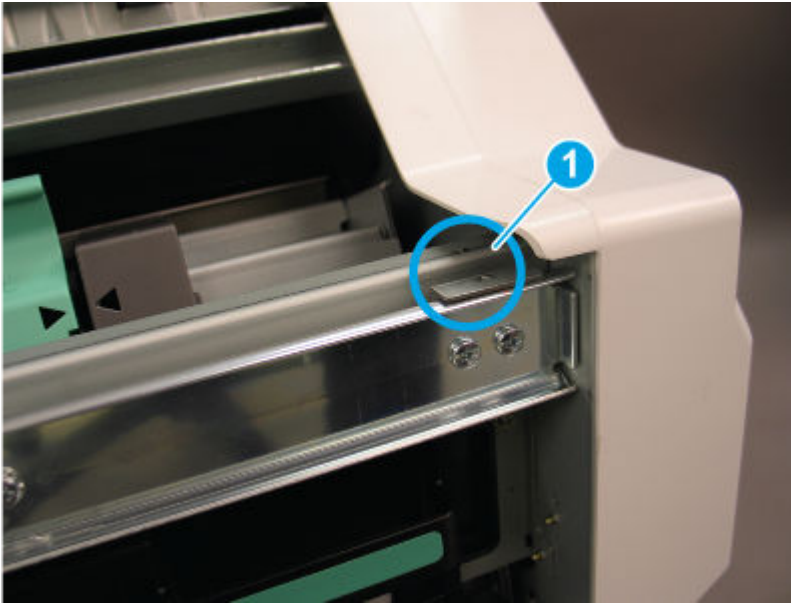
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2669 Position the hooks on the rail



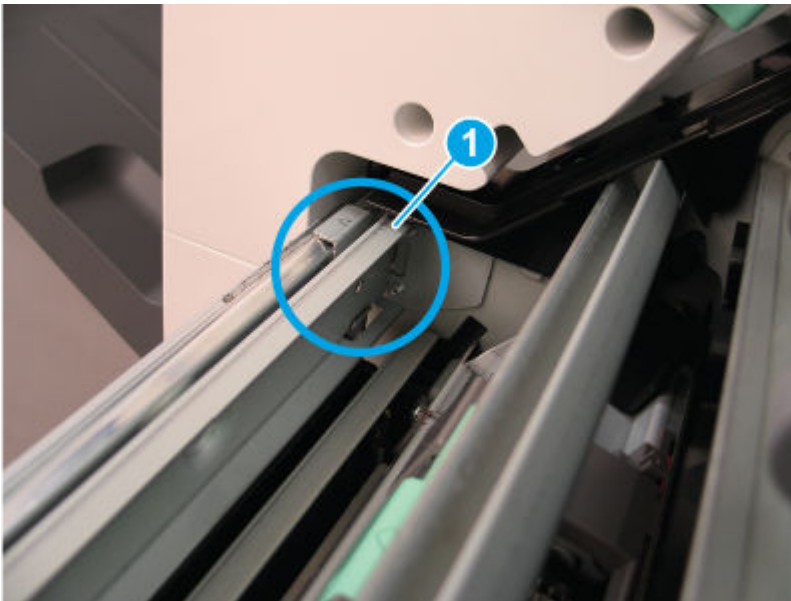
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2670 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2671 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2672 Attach the rail



Booklet paddle unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet paddle unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher paddle home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-340 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet paddle home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

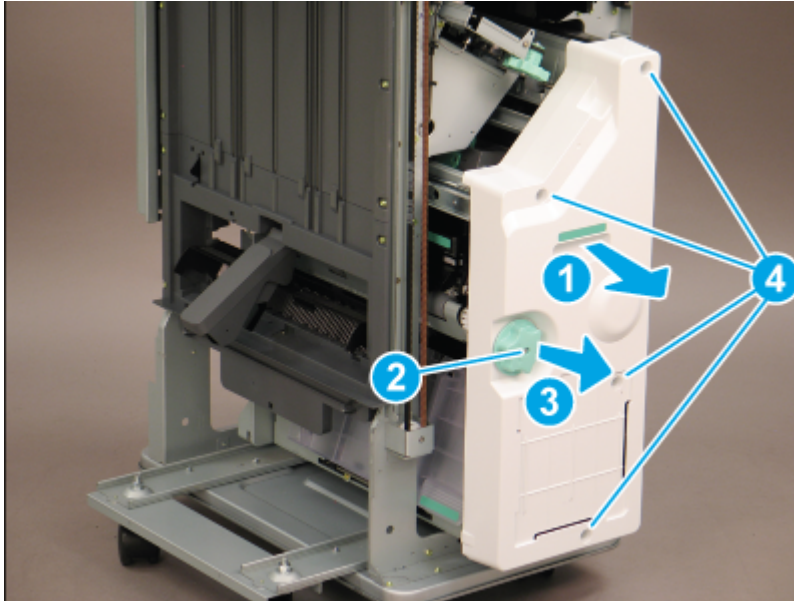
1 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2673 Remove the cover

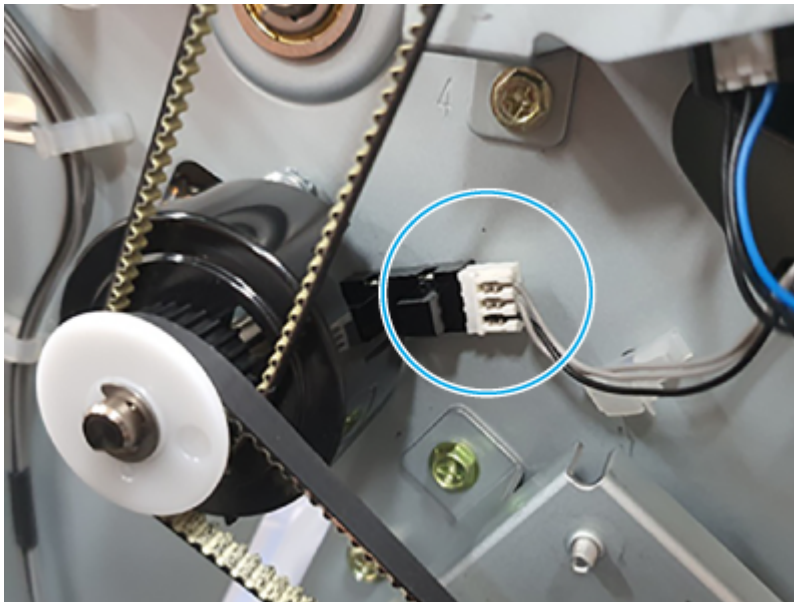


2 Remove the booklet finisher booklet paddle home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher paddle home sensor.

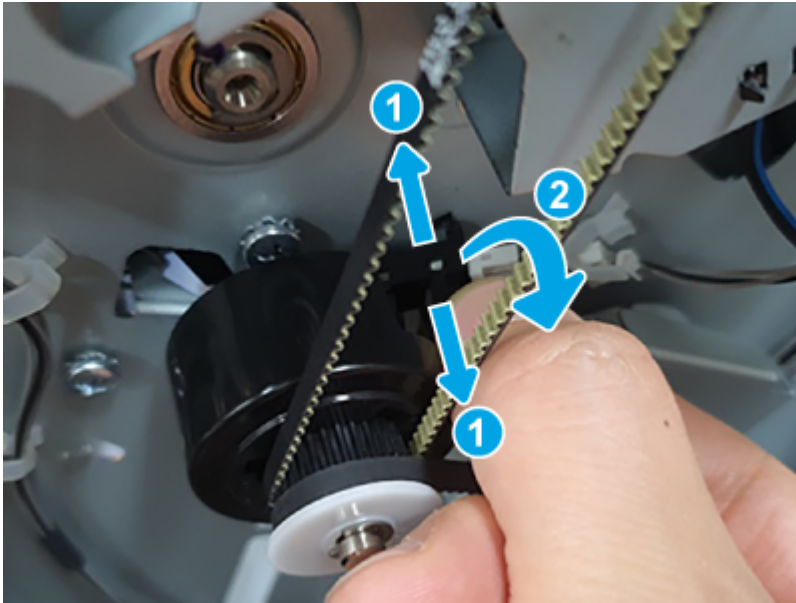
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2674 Disconnect one connector



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the booklet paddle home sensor (callout 2).


Figure 6-2675 Remove the sensor



3 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher paddle motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-341 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01430A	Booklet paddle motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

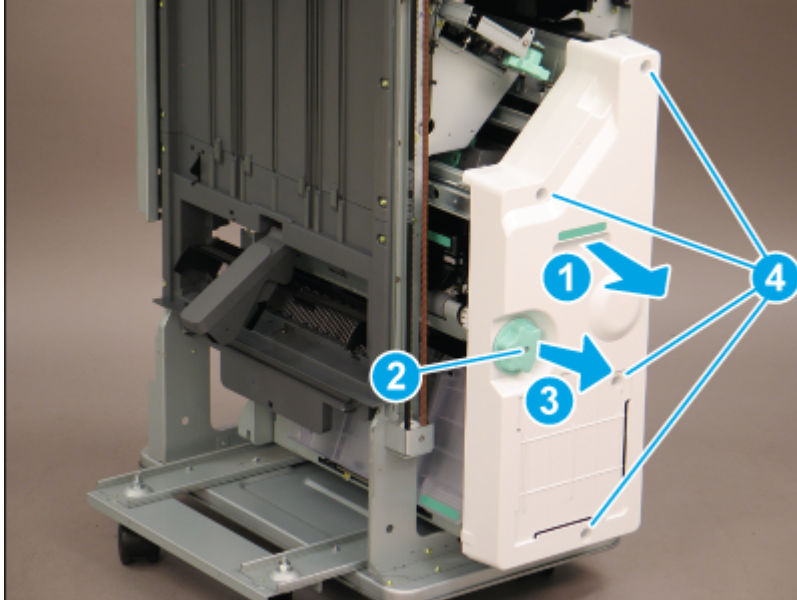
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2676 Remove the cover



2 Remove the booklet finisher booklet paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher paddle motor assembly.

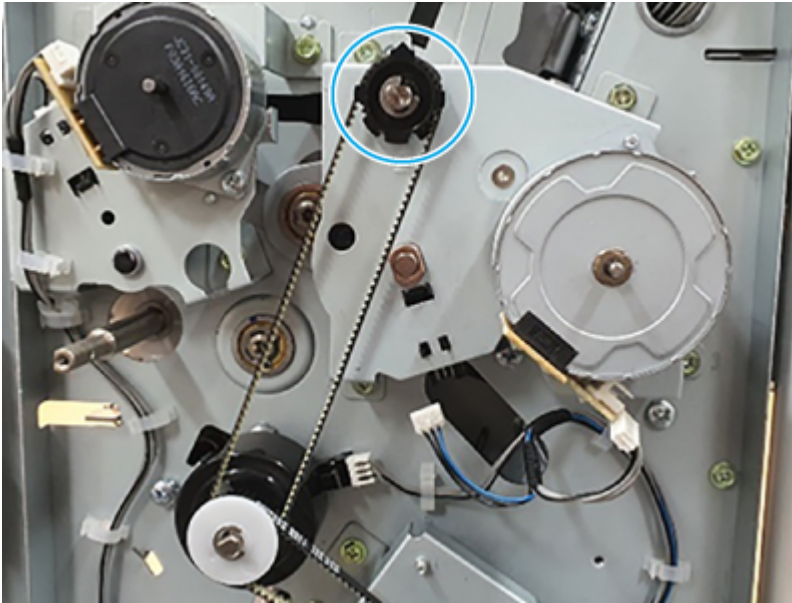
1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2677 Disconnect two connectors



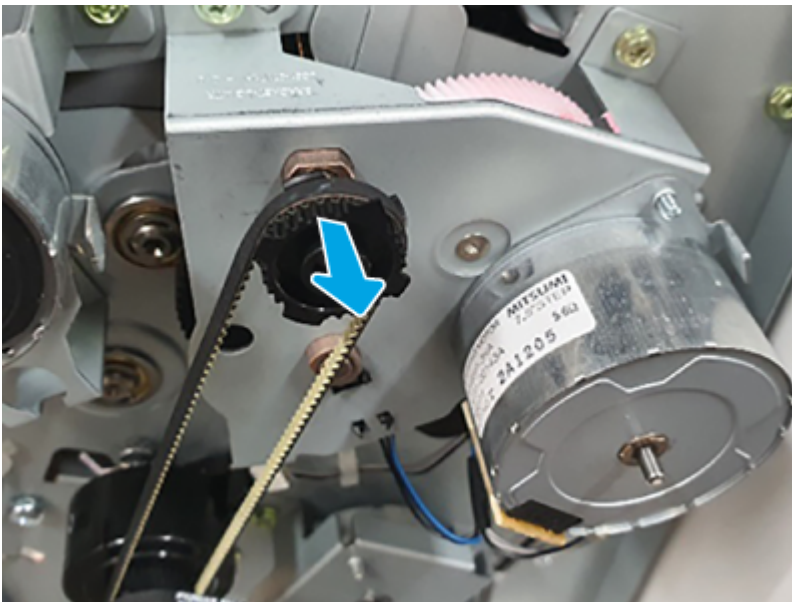
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.

Figure 6-2678 Remove the e-ring



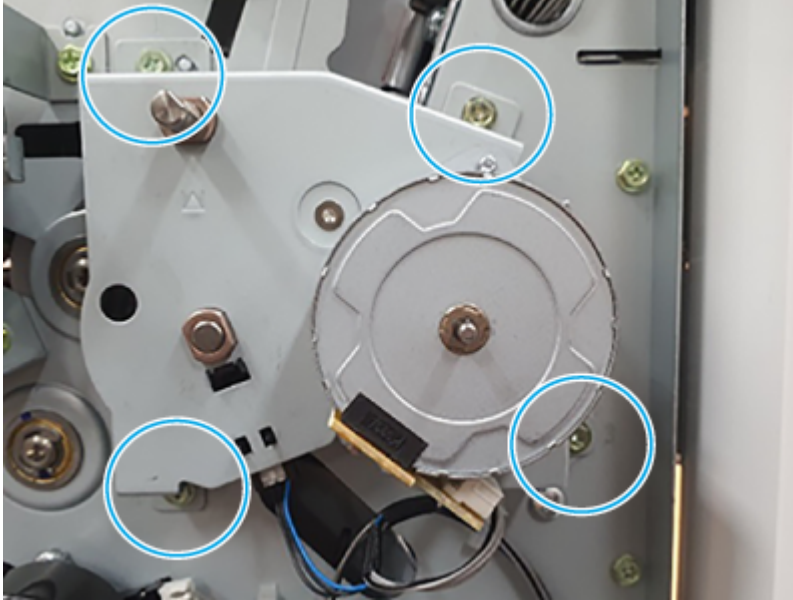
3. Remove the belt and gear.

Figure 6-2679 Remove the belt and gear



4. Remove four screws, and then remove the booklet paddle motor assembly.


Figure 6-2680 Remove the assembly



3 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher paddle motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-342 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Booklet paddle motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

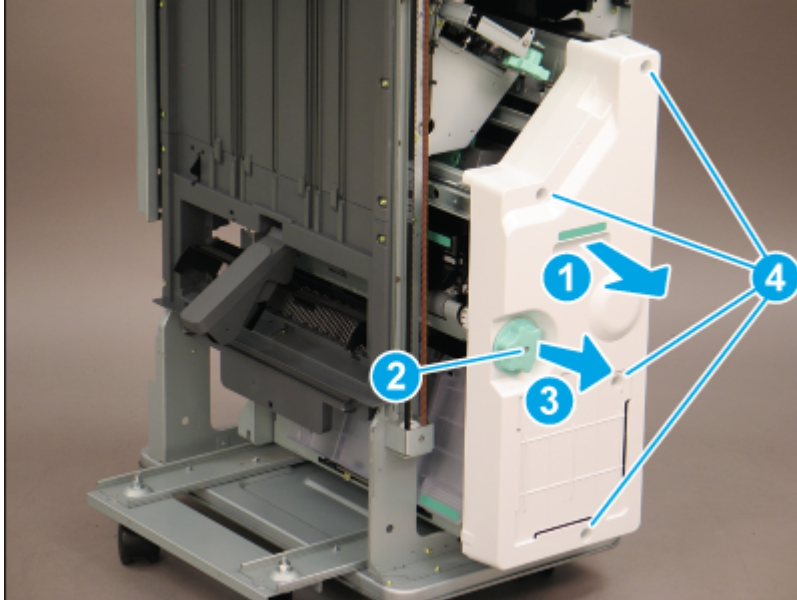
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2681 Remove the cover



2 Remove the booklet finisher booklet paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher paddle motor assembly.

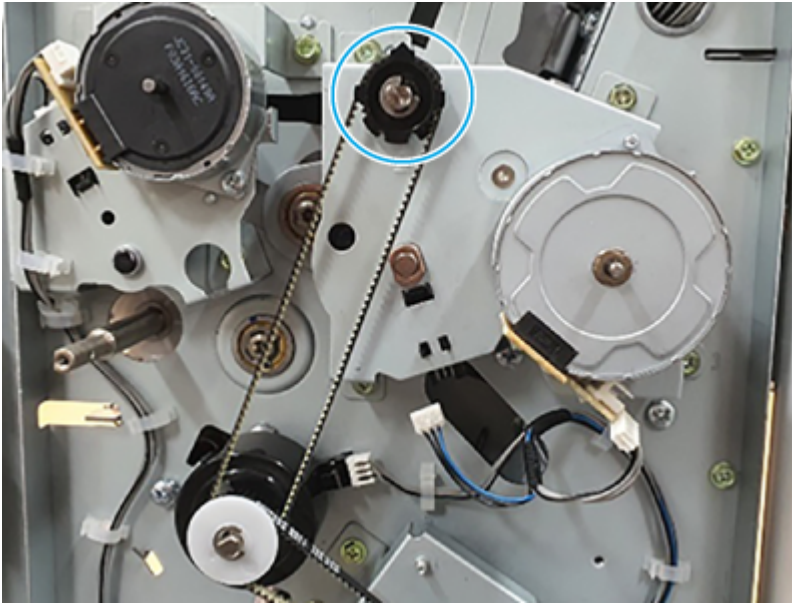
1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2682 Disconnect two connectors



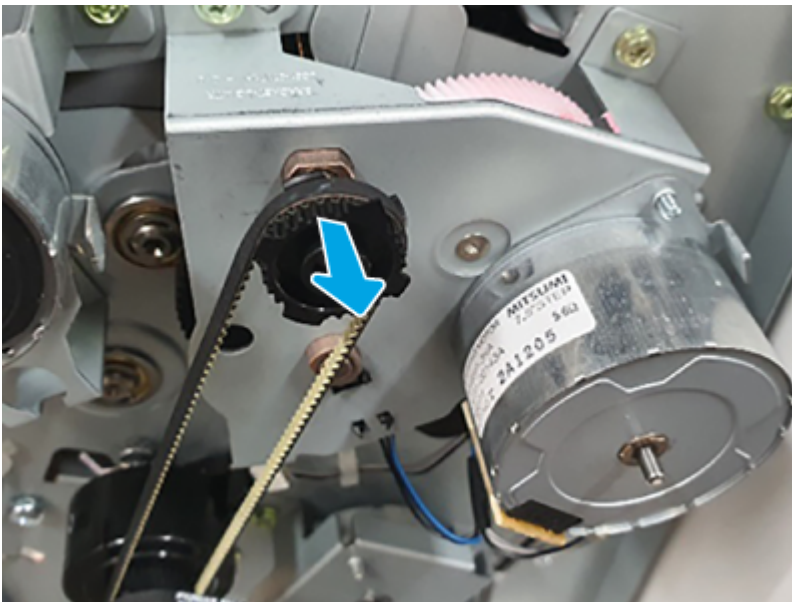
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.

Figure 6-2683 Remove the e-ring



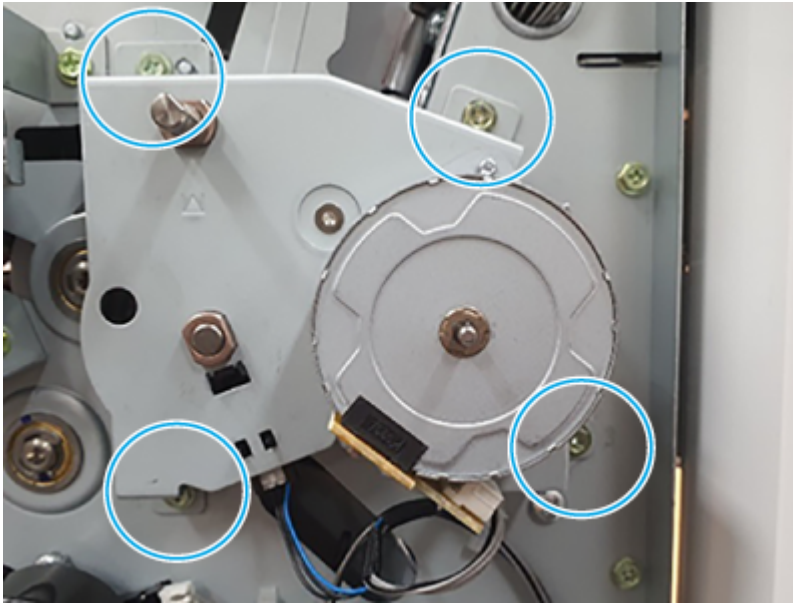
3. Remove the belt and gear.

Figure 6-2684 Remove the belt and gear



4. Remove four screws, and then remove the booklet paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2685 Remove the assembly

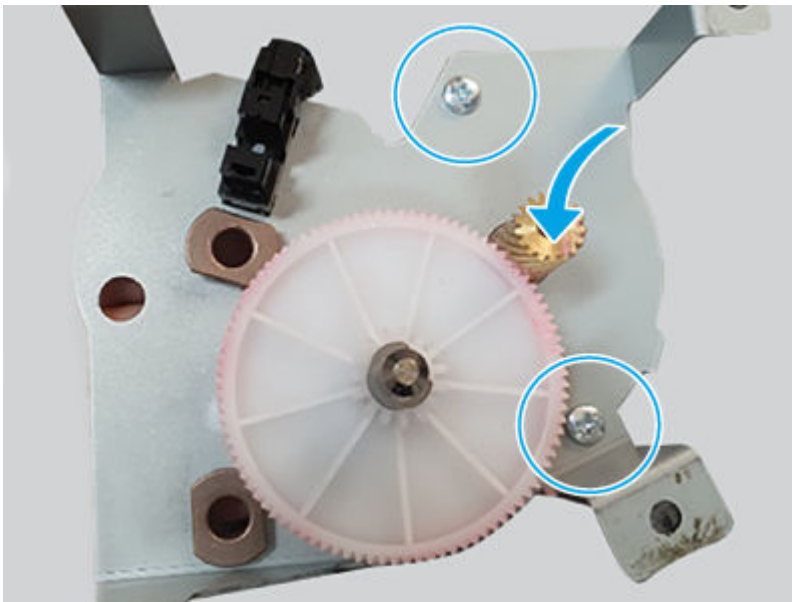


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet paddle motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher paddle motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the booklet paddle motor.

Figure 6-2686 Remove the motor



4 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet end fence unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet end fence unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet end fence home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher end fence home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-343 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet end fence home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

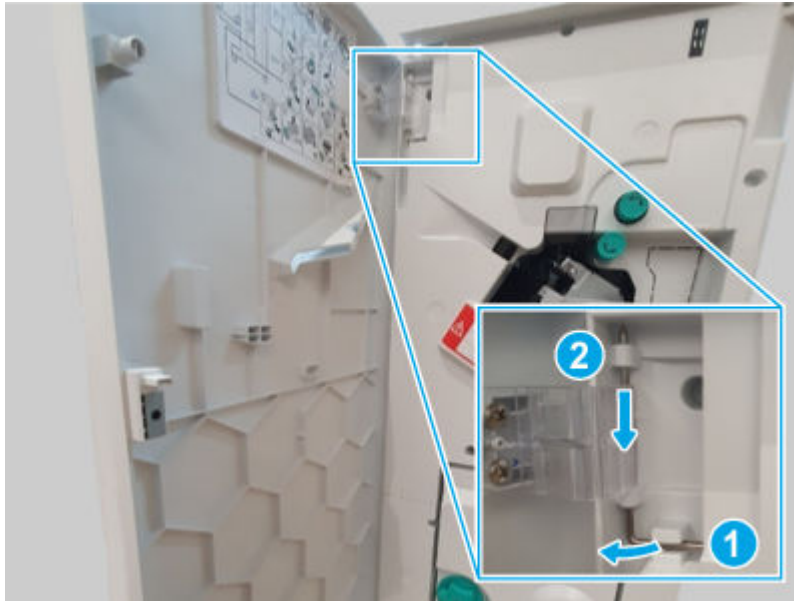
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

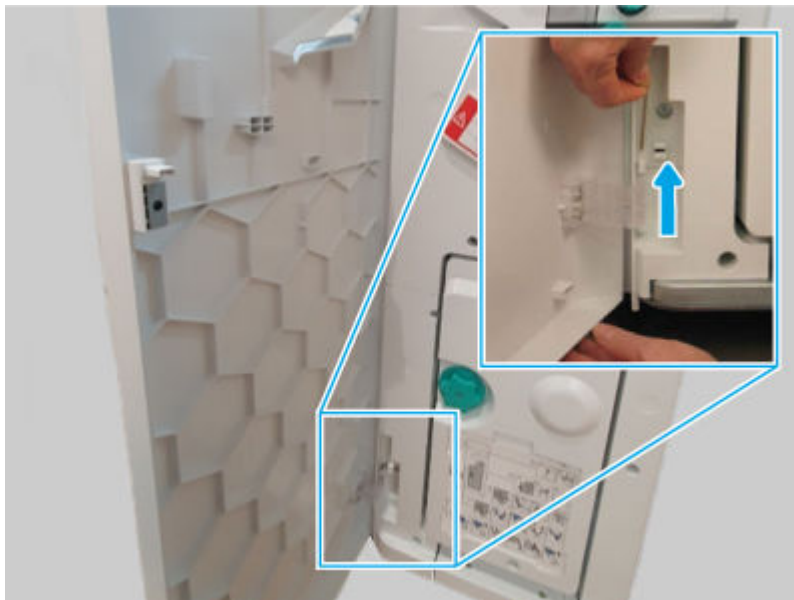
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2687 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2688 Remove the door

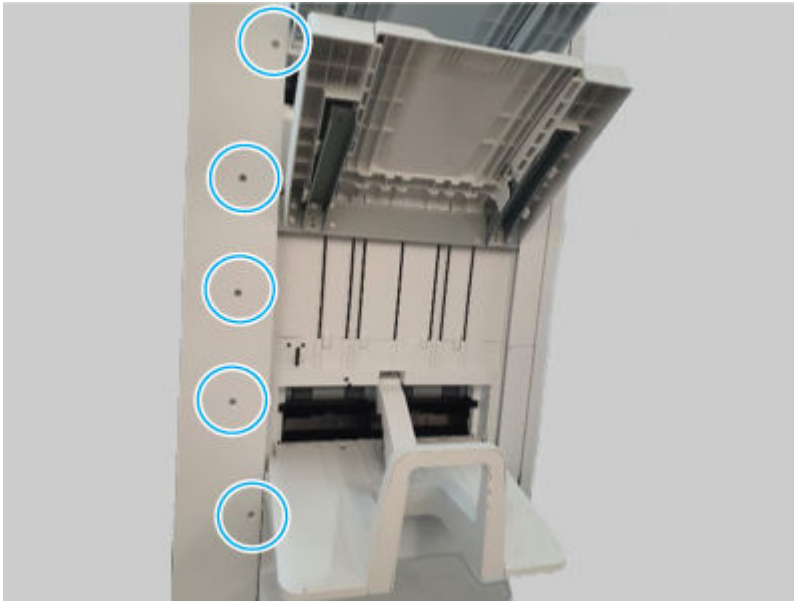


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2689 Remove five screws

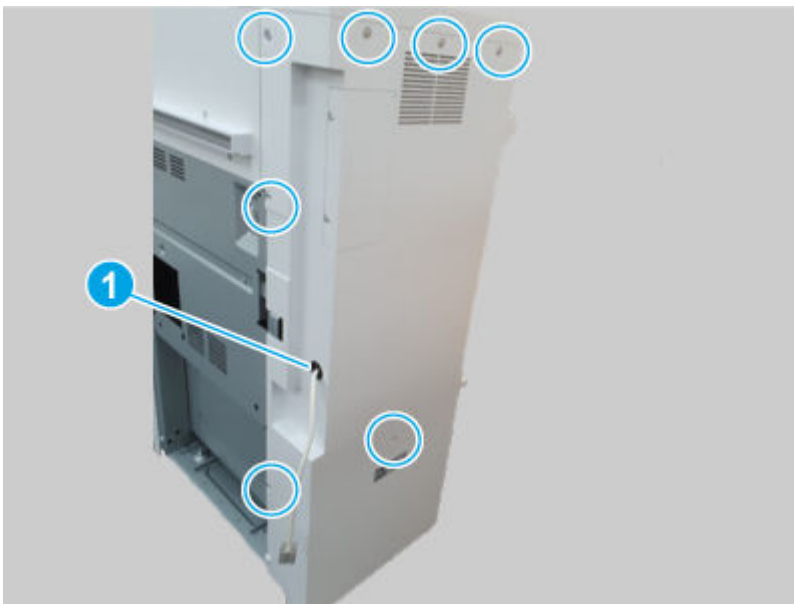


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2690 Remove the cover

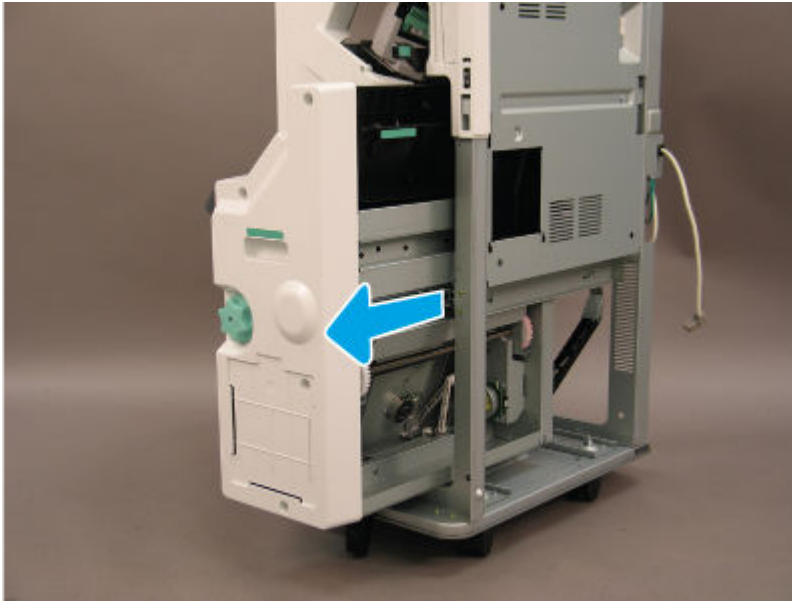


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

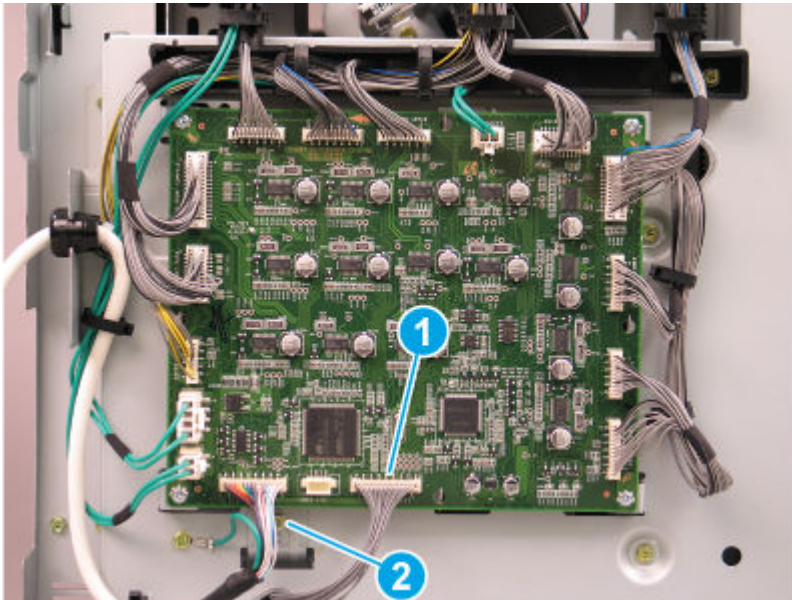
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2691 Slide the booklet maker out



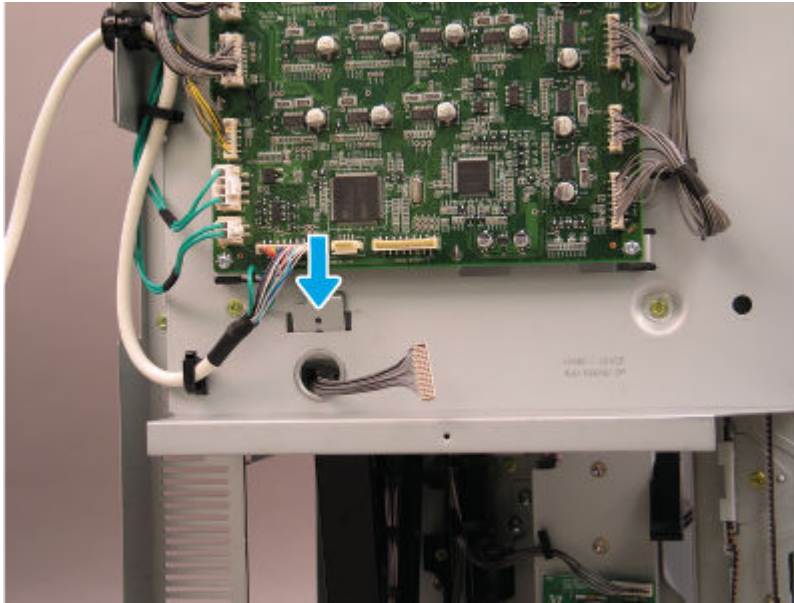
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2692 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



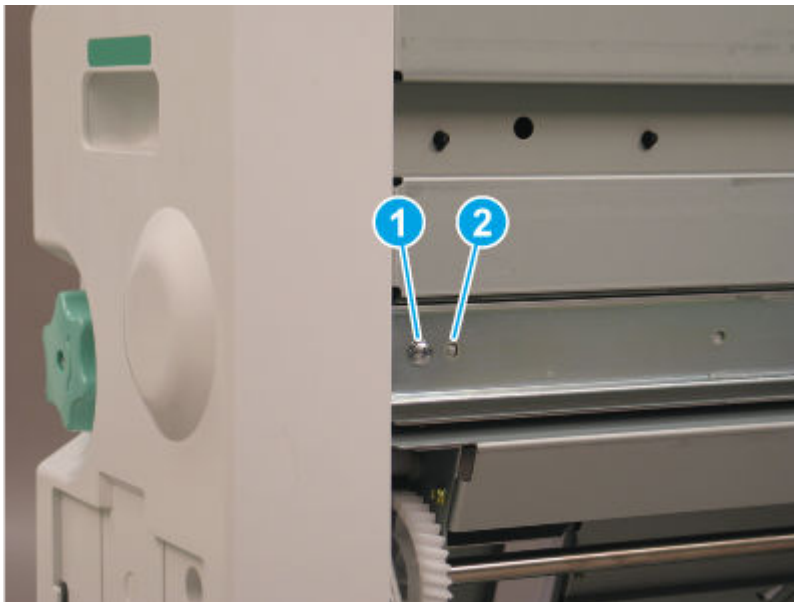
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2693 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2694 Release the alignment pin



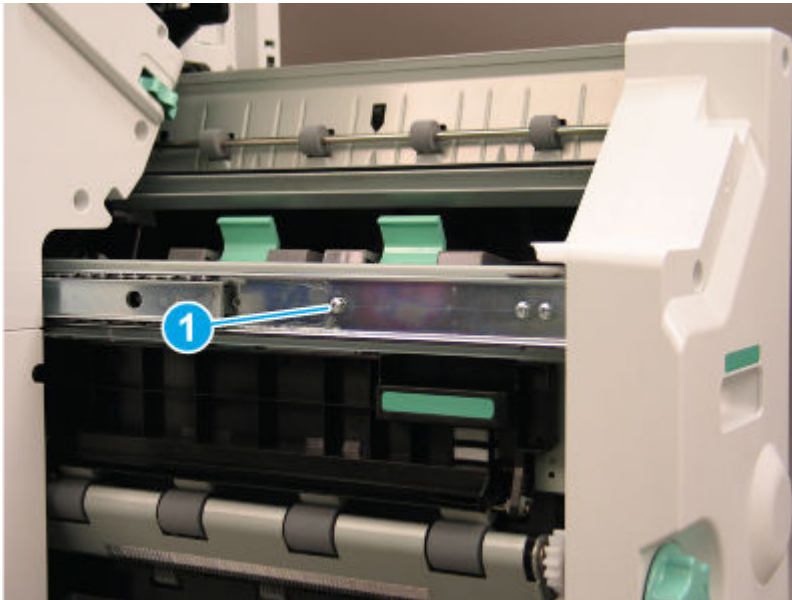
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2695 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2696 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


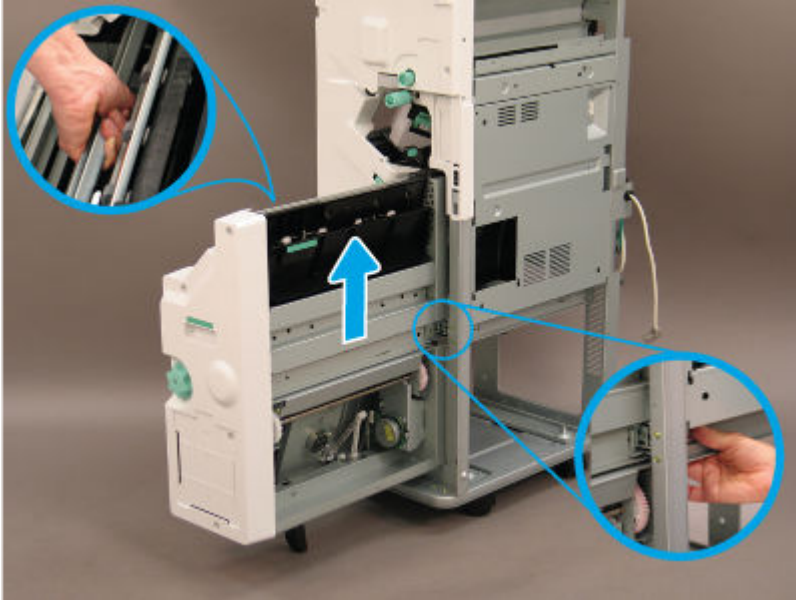
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2697 Remove the booklet maker

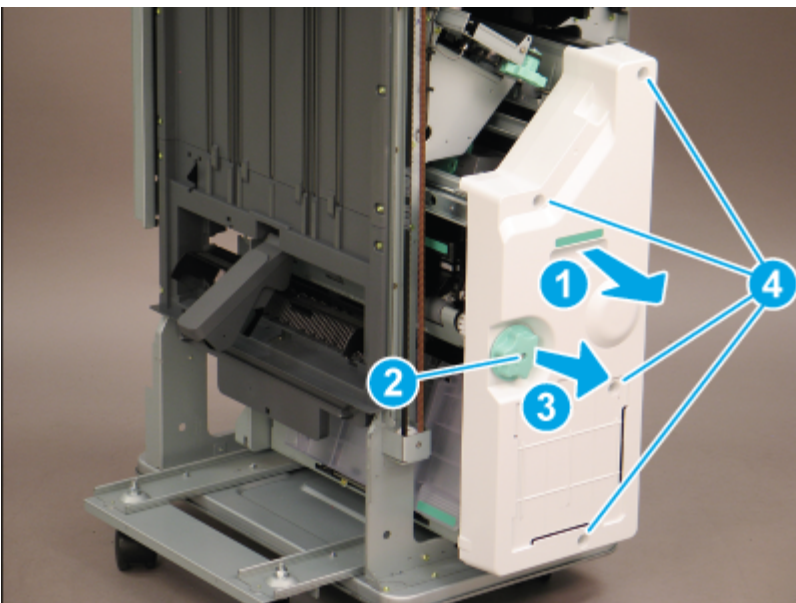


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2698 Remove the cover

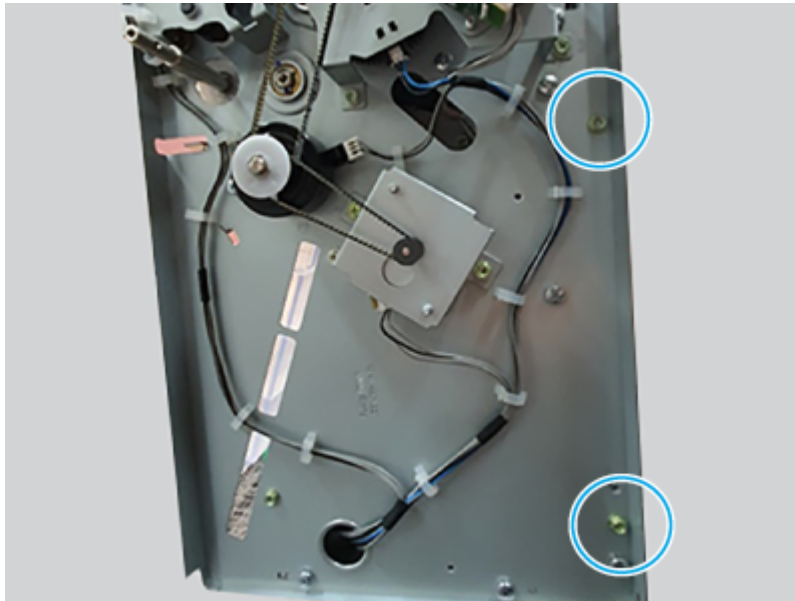


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet end fence home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher end fence home sensor.

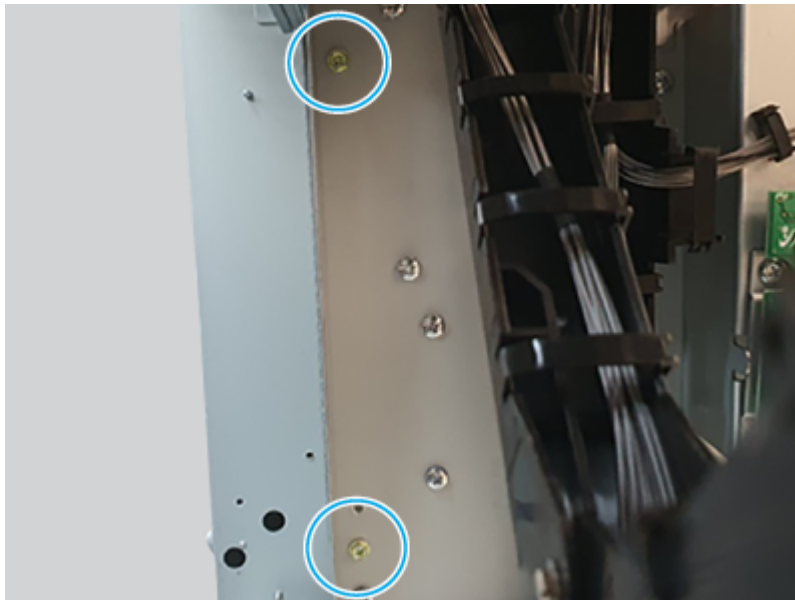
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2699 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the shield-r lower.

Figure 6-2700 Remove the shield



3. Move the upper jam guide out of the way.

Figure 6-2701 Move the guide



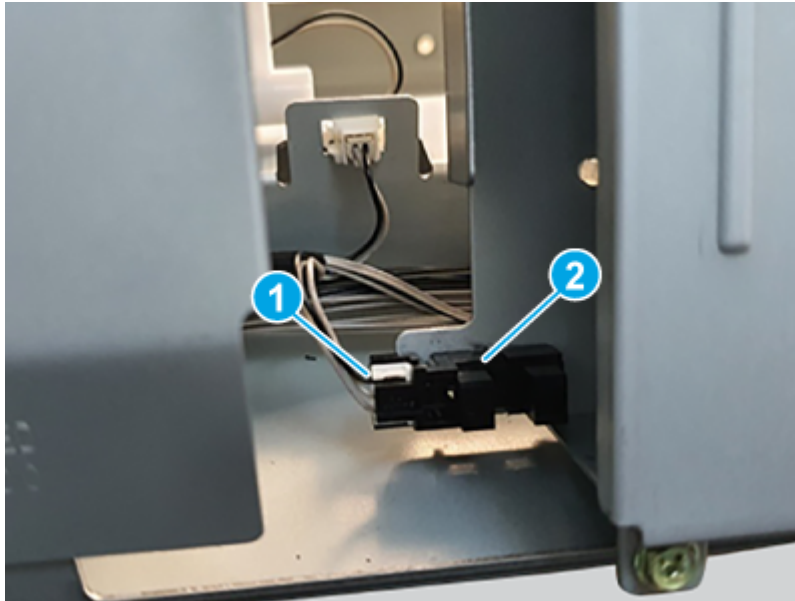
4. Lift up the booklet end fence.

Figure 6-2702 Lift the fence



5. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the booklet end fence home sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-2703 Remove the sensor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

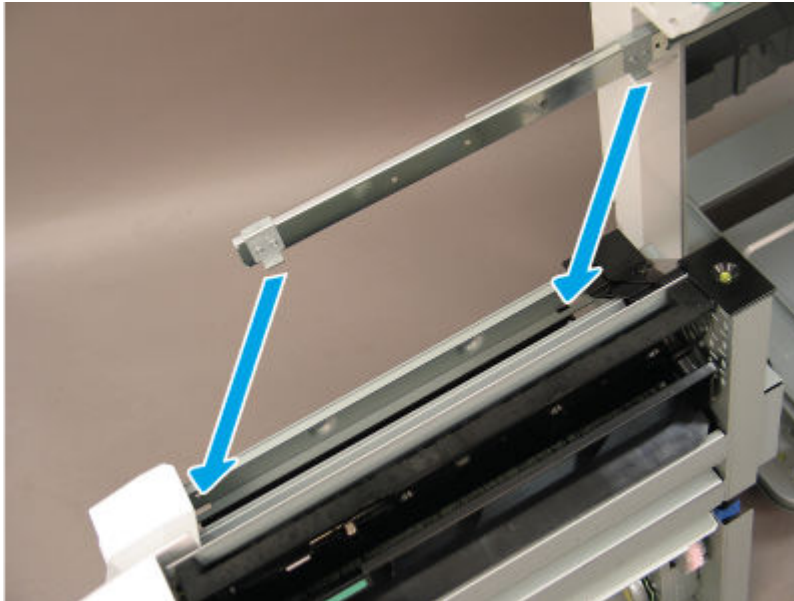
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

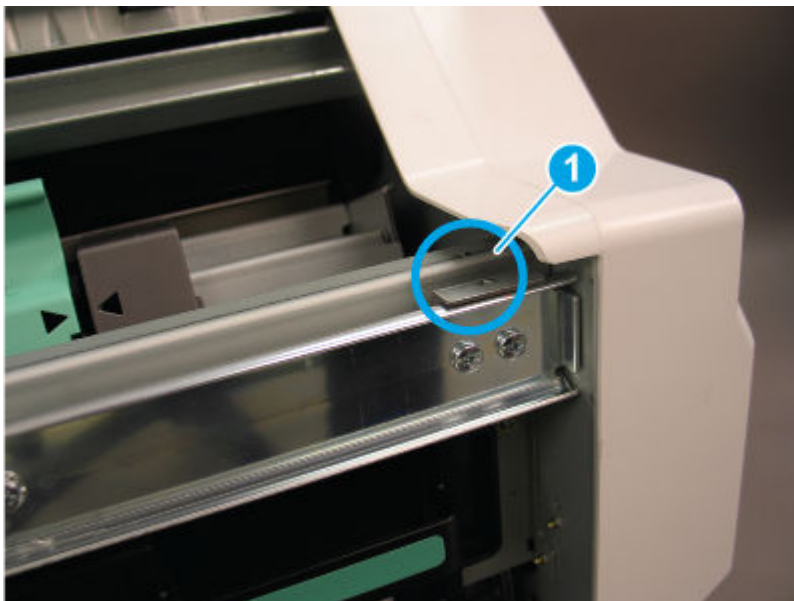
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2704 Position the hooks on the rail



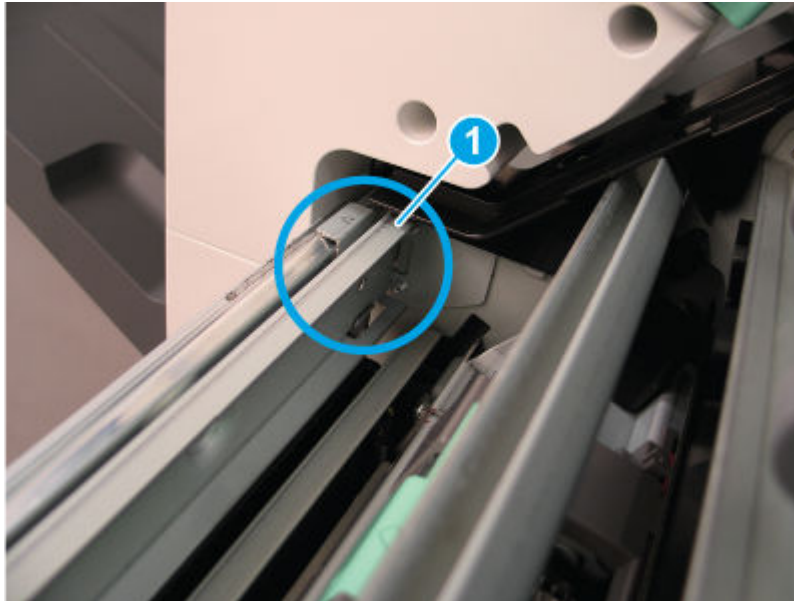
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2705 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2706 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2707 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet end fence motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher end fence motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-344 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01155A	Drive-motor step (Booklet end fence motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

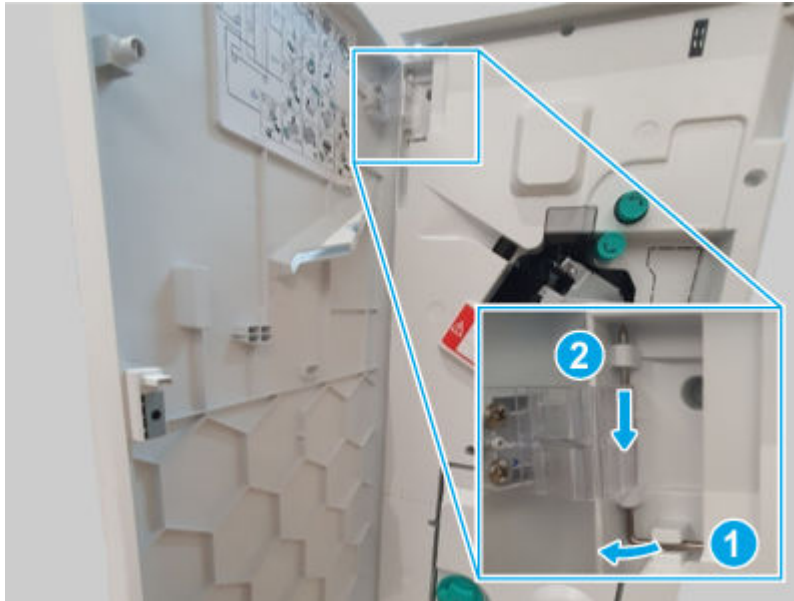
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

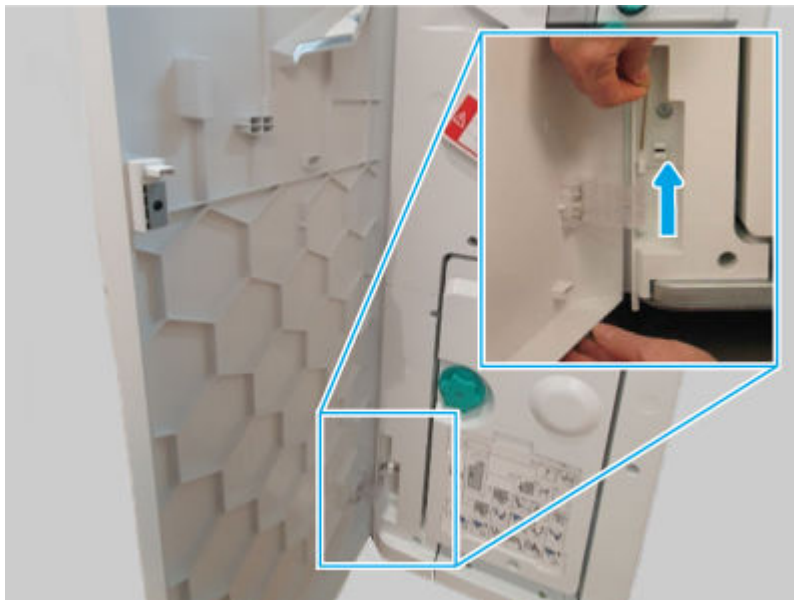
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2708 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2709 Remove the door

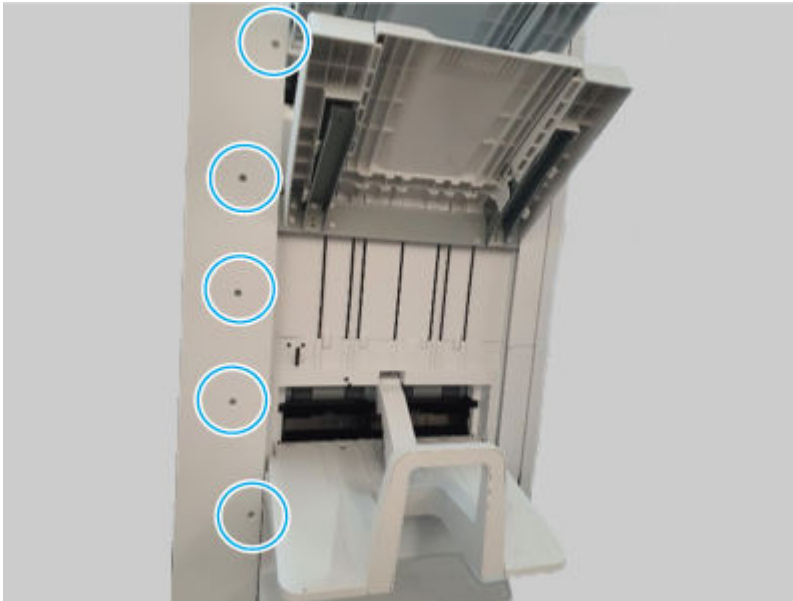


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2710 Remove five screws

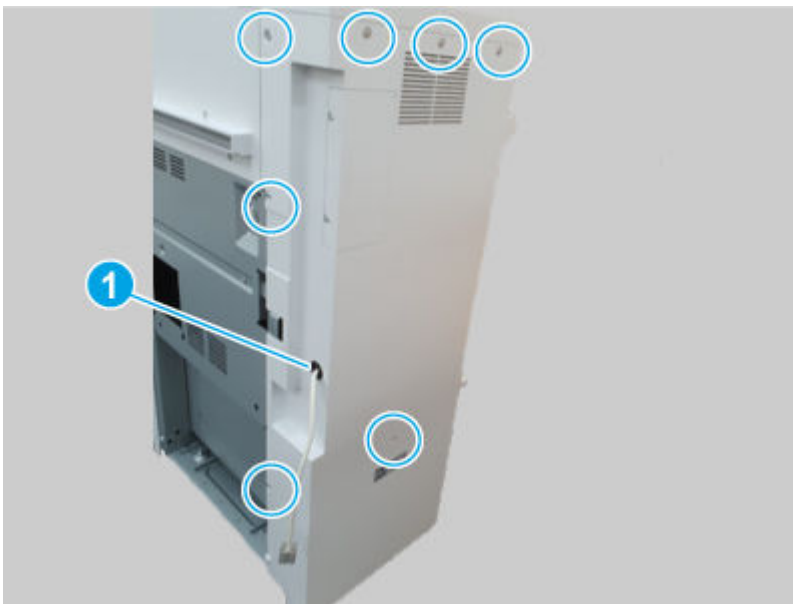


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2711 Remove the cover

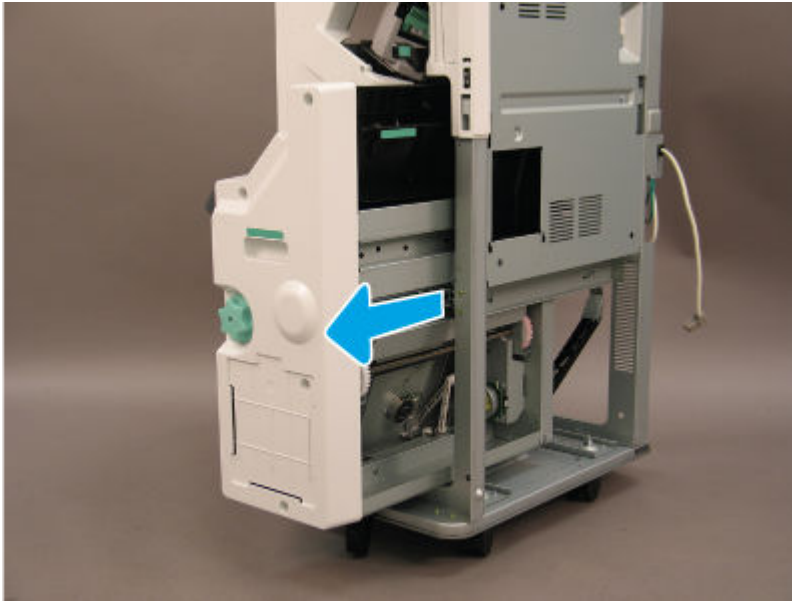


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

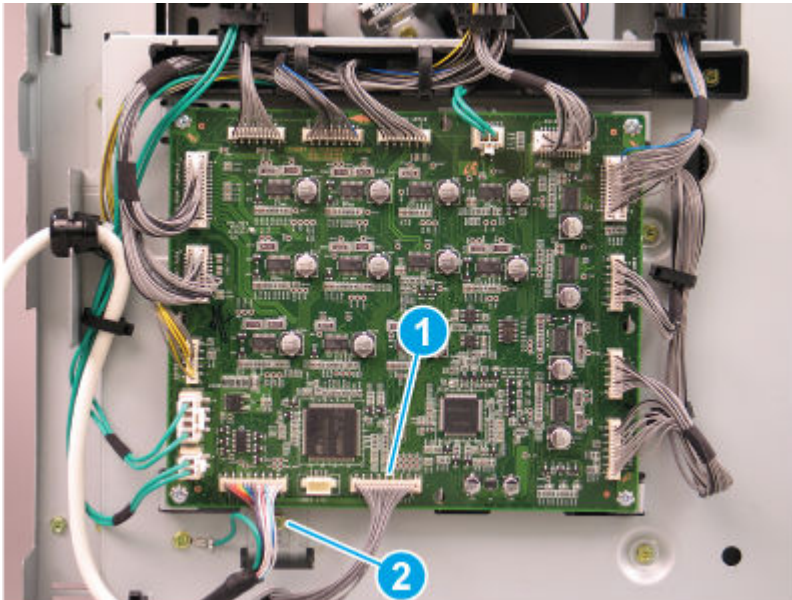
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2712 Slide the booklet maker out



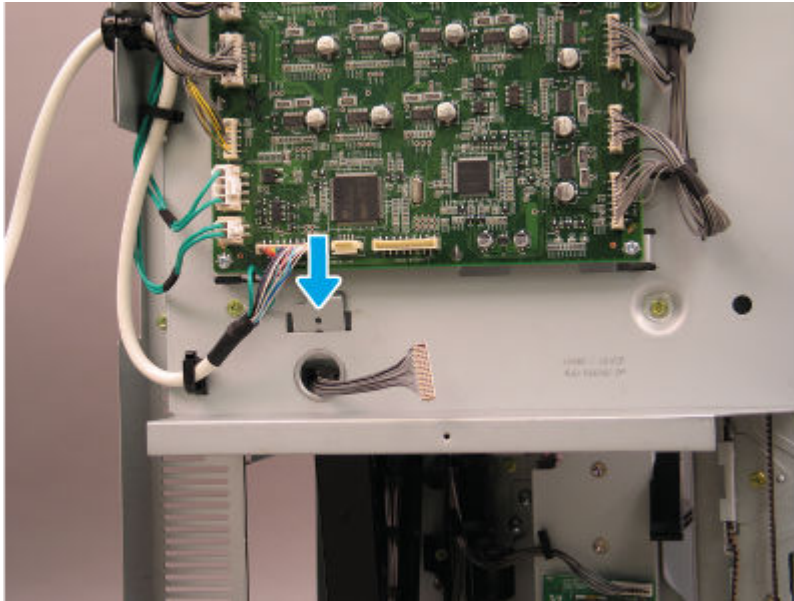
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2713 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



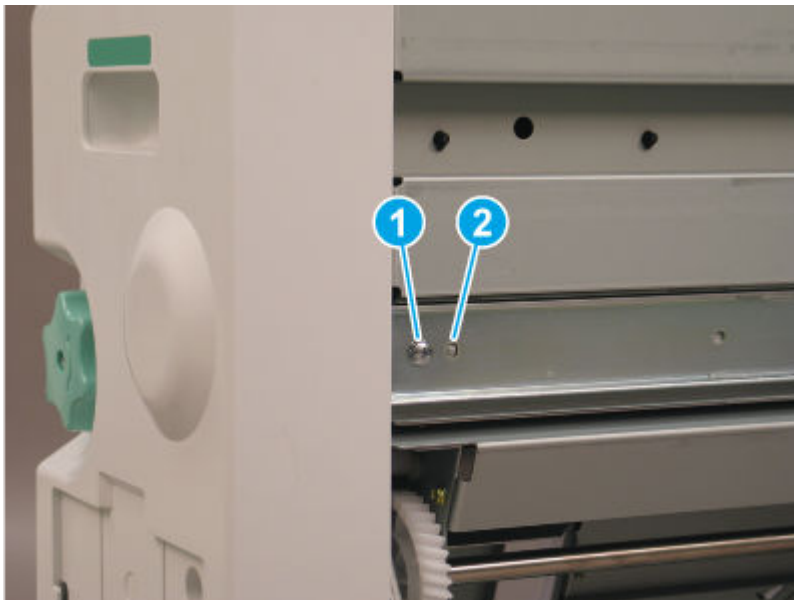
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2714 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2715 Release the alignment pin



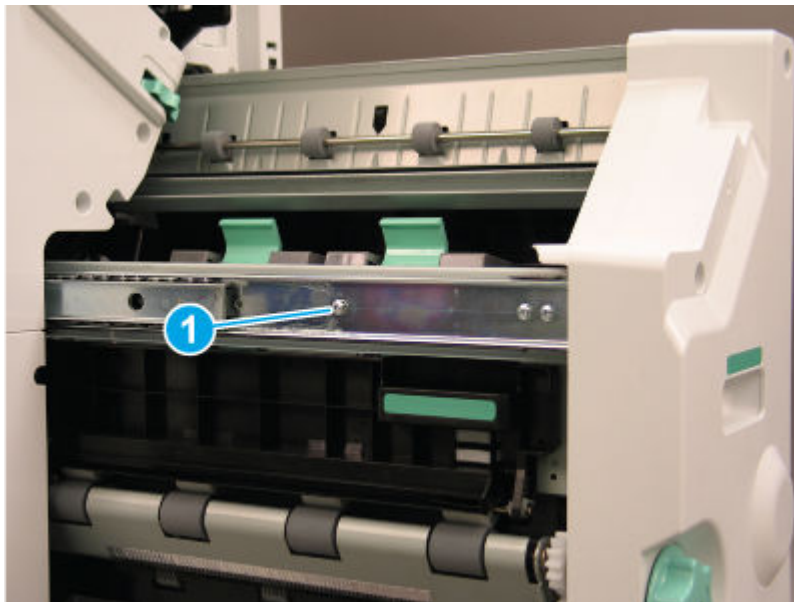
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2716 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2717 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


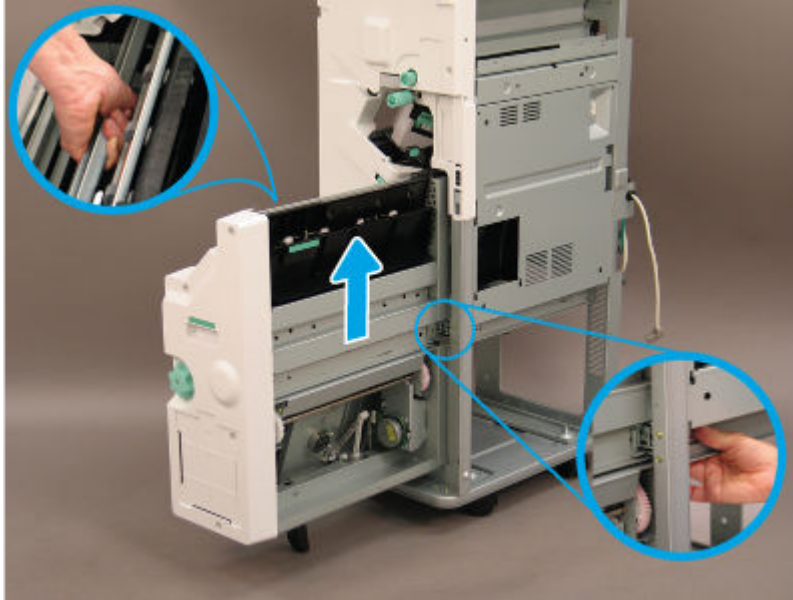
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2718 Remove the booklet maker

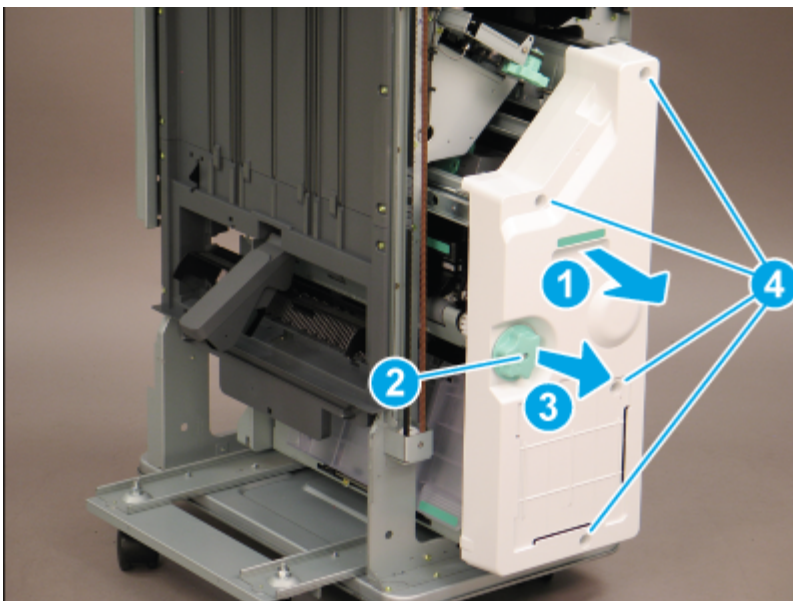


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2719 Remove the cover

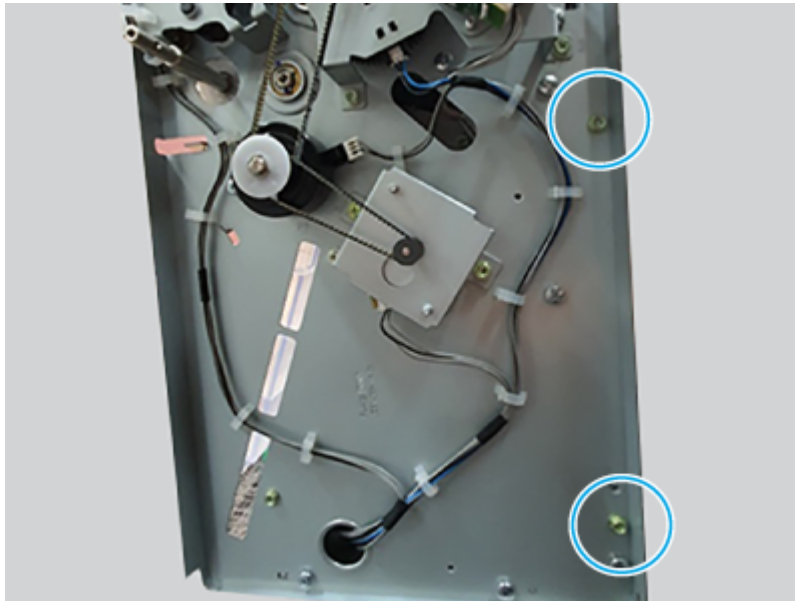


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet end fence motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher end fence motor.

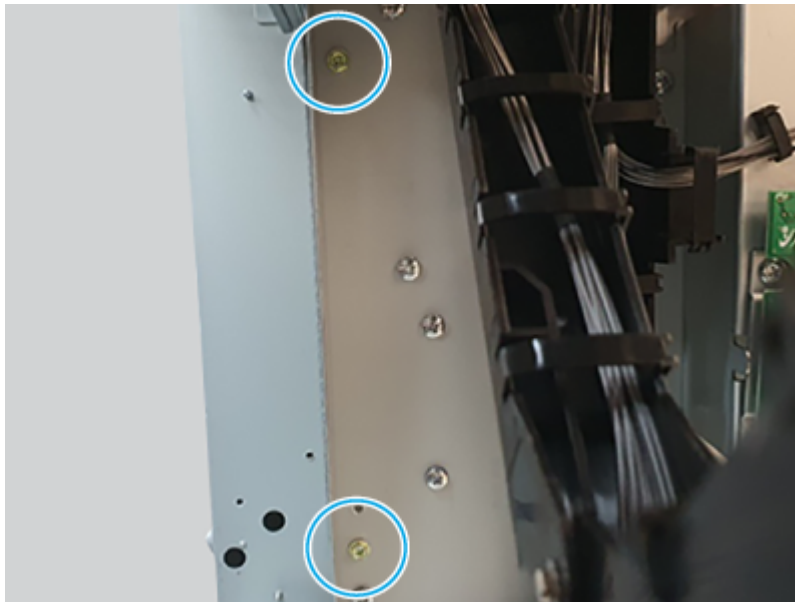
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2720 Remove two screws



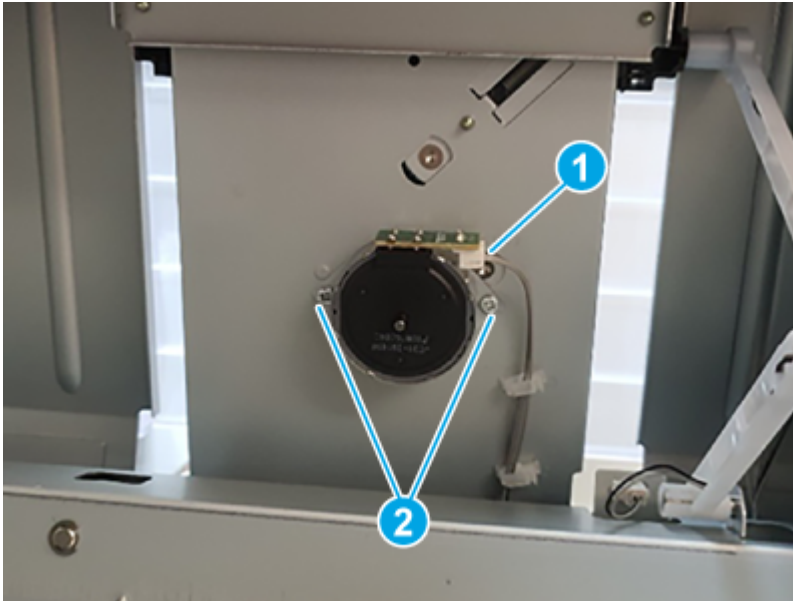
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the shield-r lower.

Figure 6-2721 Remove the shield



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet end fence motor.


Figure 6-2722 Remove the motor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

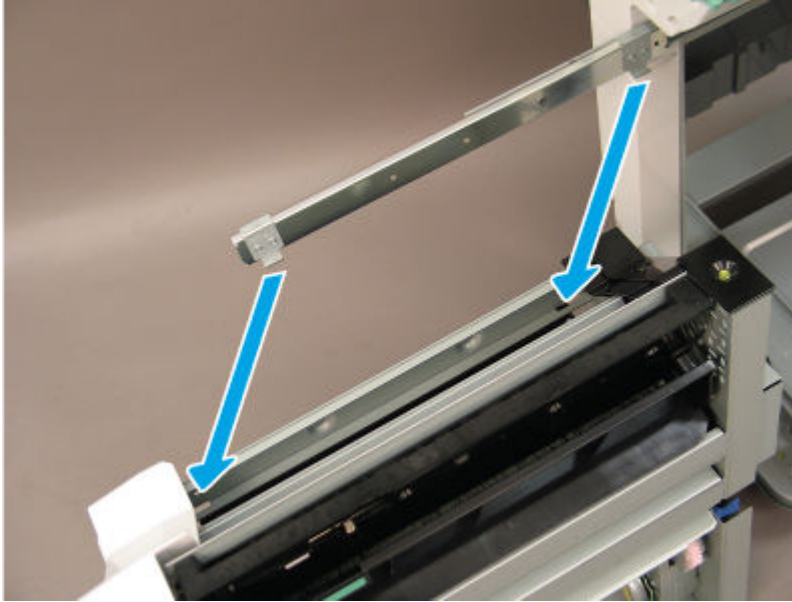
Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.



NOTE: Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

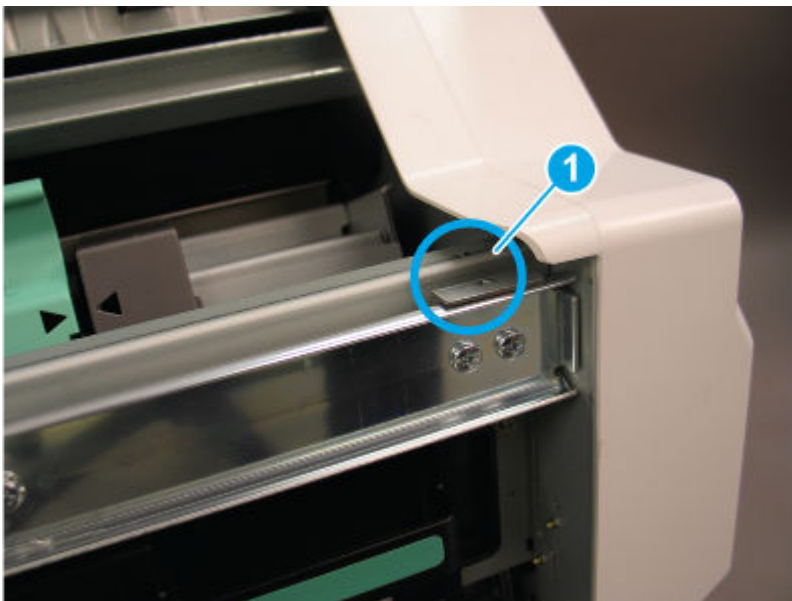
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2723 Position the hooks on the rail



2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2724 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2725 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2726 Attach the rail



Booklet presser unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet presser unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet presser home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher presser home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-345 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet presser home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

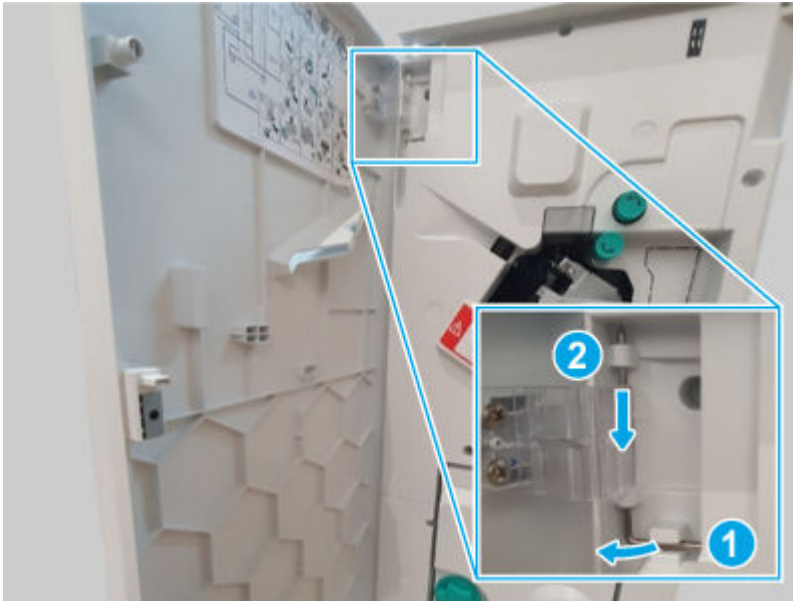
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

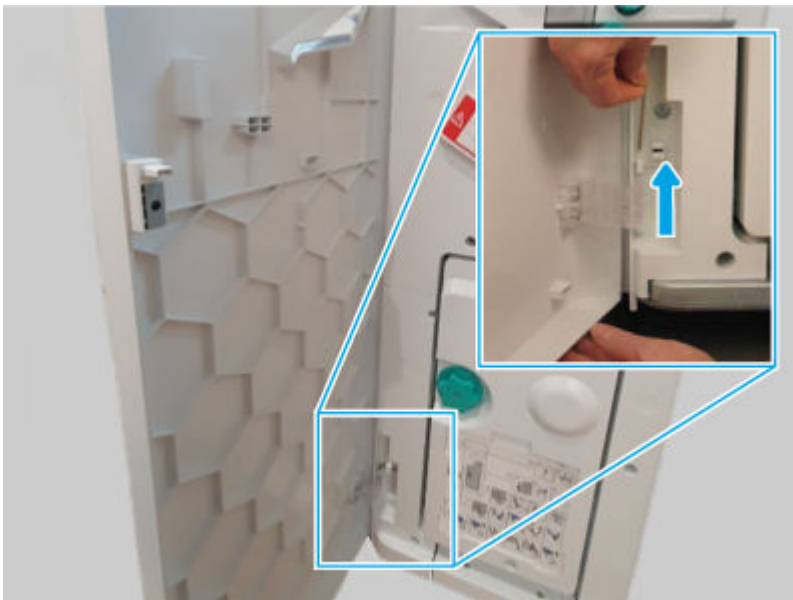
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2727 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2728 Remove the door



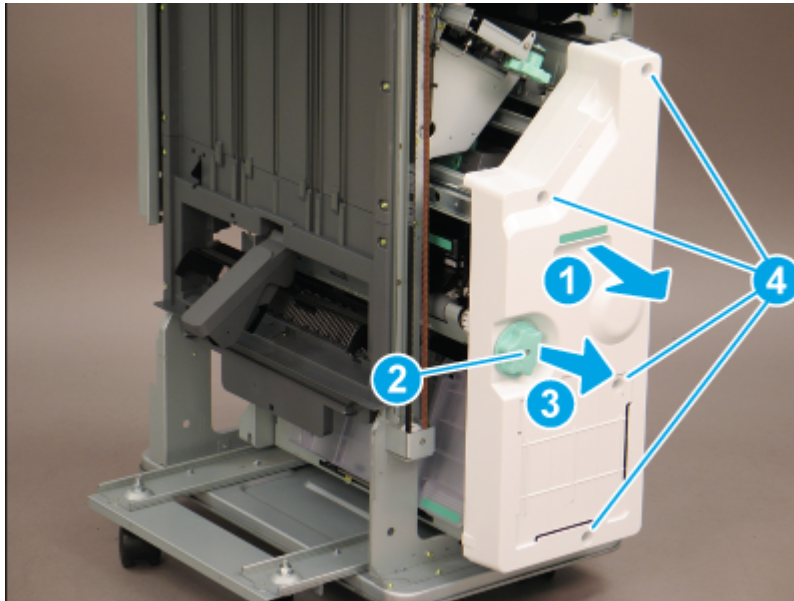
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2729 Remove the cover

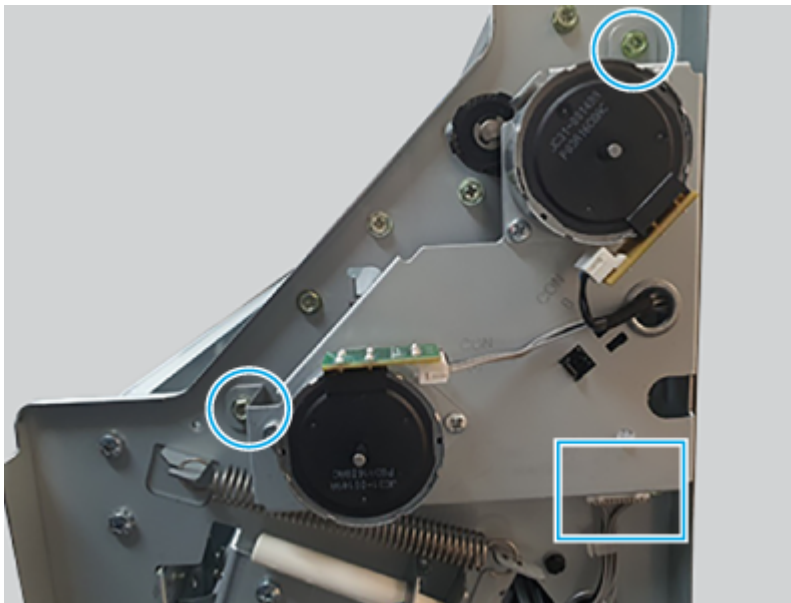


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance-presser motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance-presser motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the booklet entrance-presser motor assembly.

Figure 6-2730 Remove the assembly

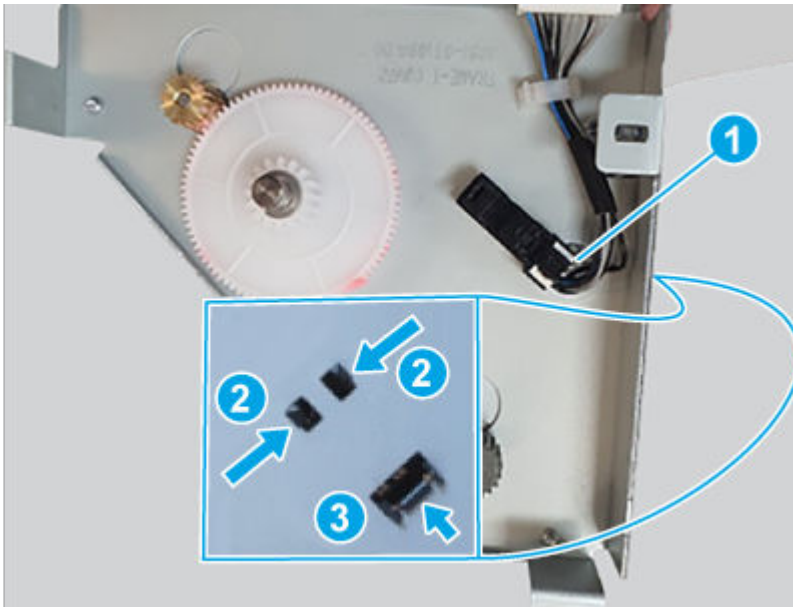


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet presser home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher presser home sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the booklet presser home sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-2731 Remove the sensor



5 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher tamper.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-346 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01431A	Booklet tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

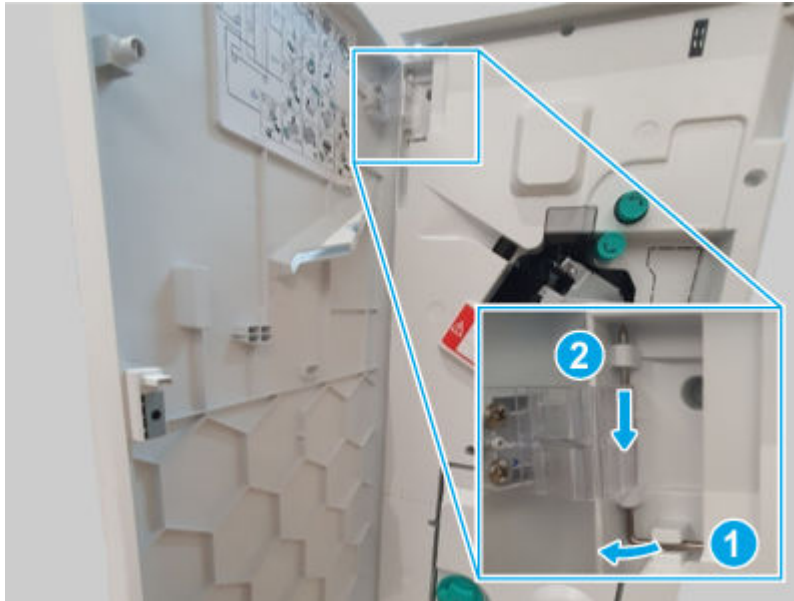
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

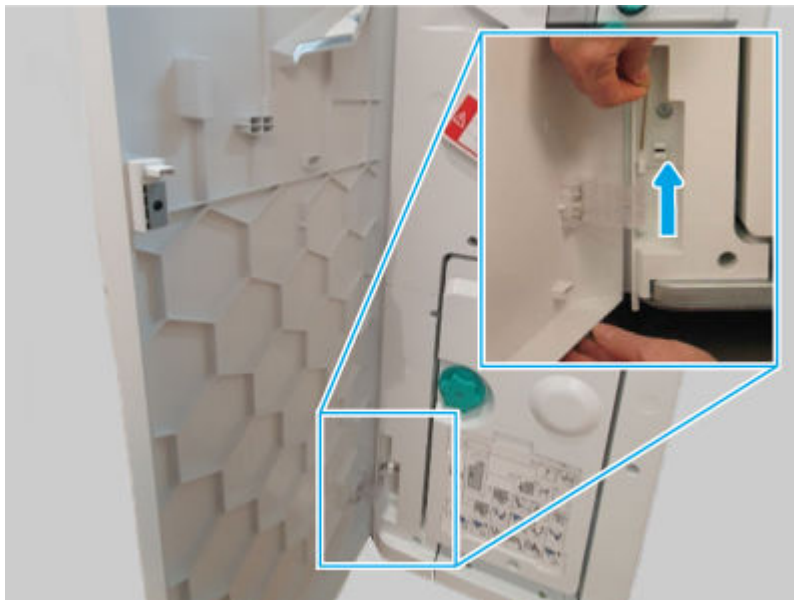
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2732 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2733 Remove the door

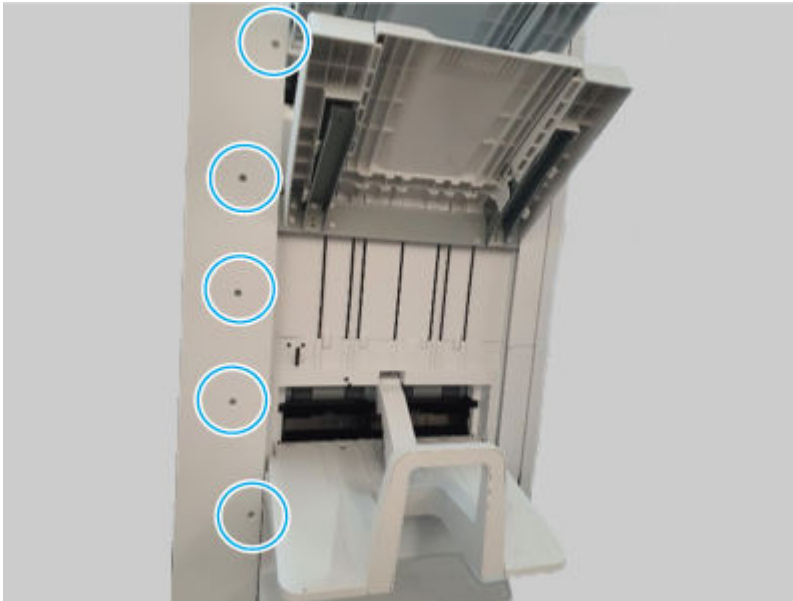


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2734 Remove five screws

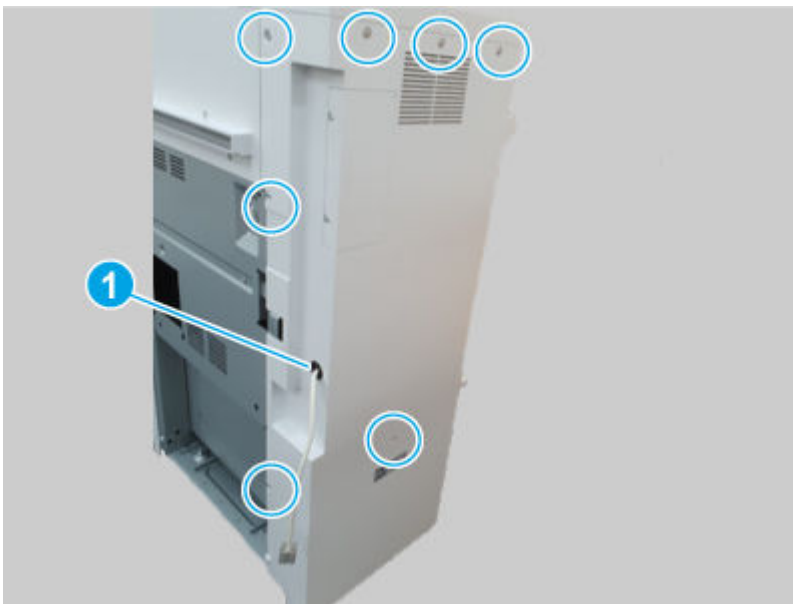


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2735 Remove the cover

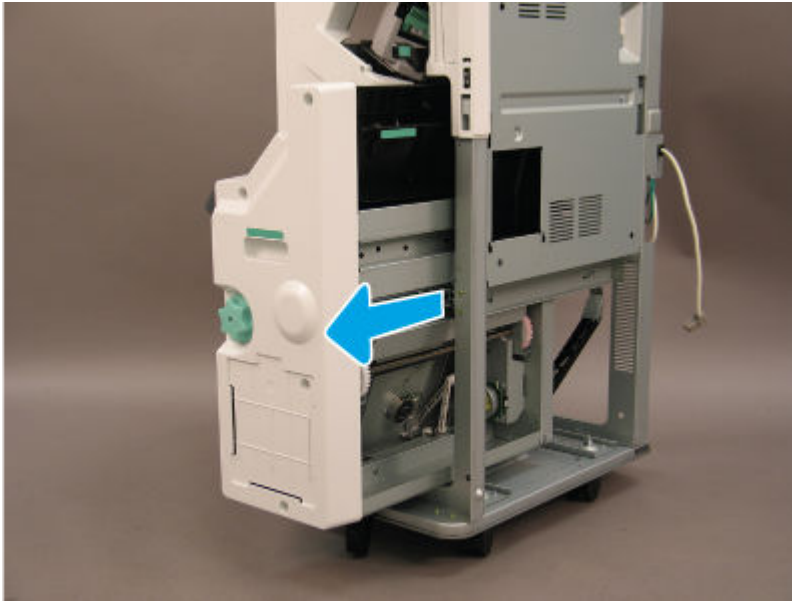


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

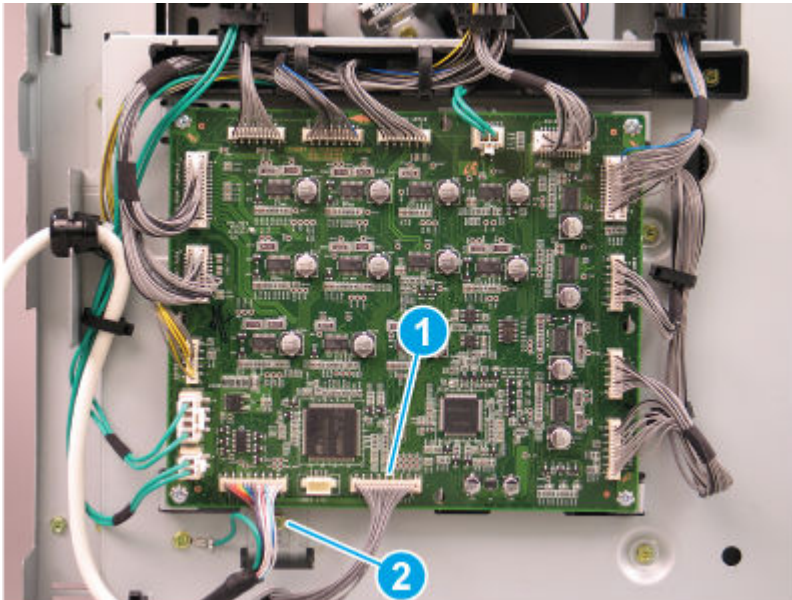
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2736 Slide the booklet maker out



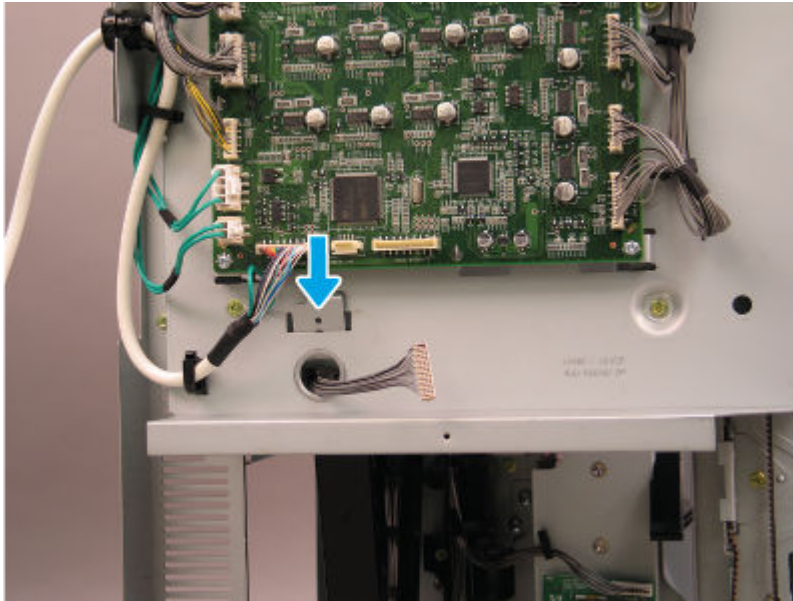
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2737 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



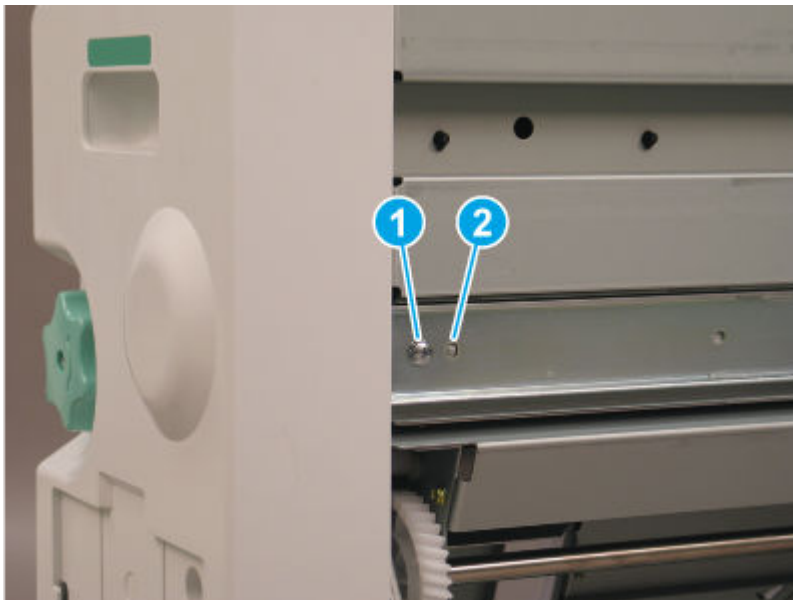
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2738 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



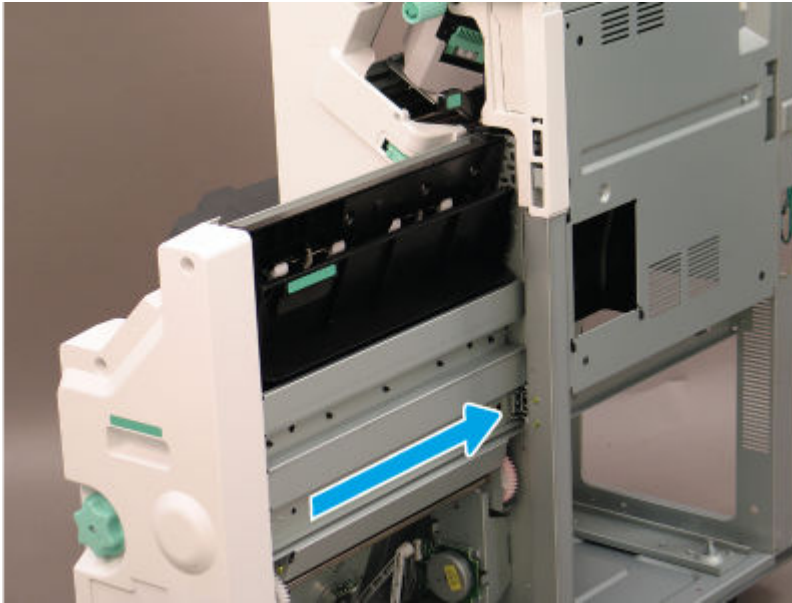
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2739 Release the alignment pin



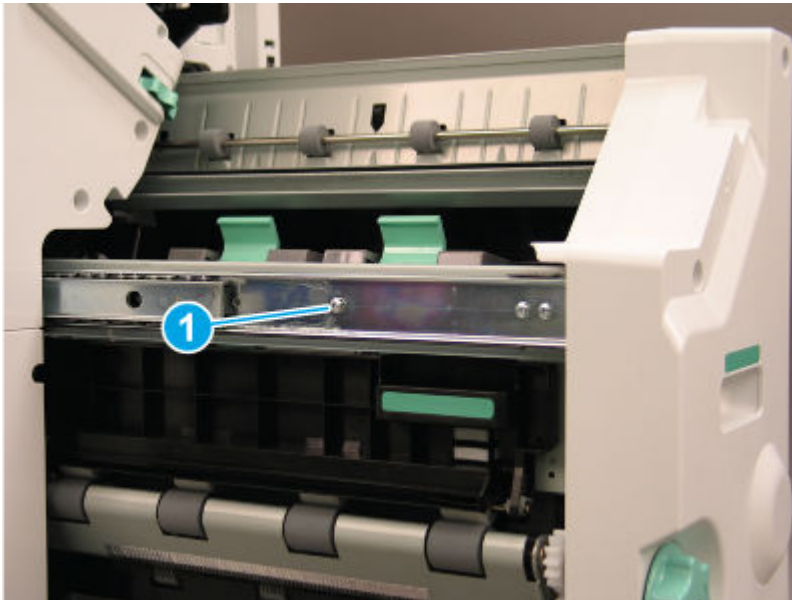
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2740 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2741 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


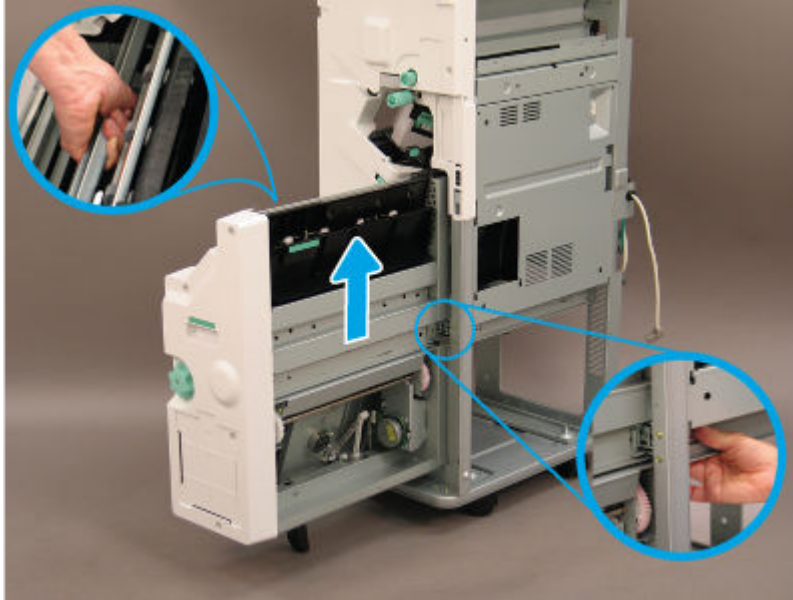
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2742 Remove the booklet maker

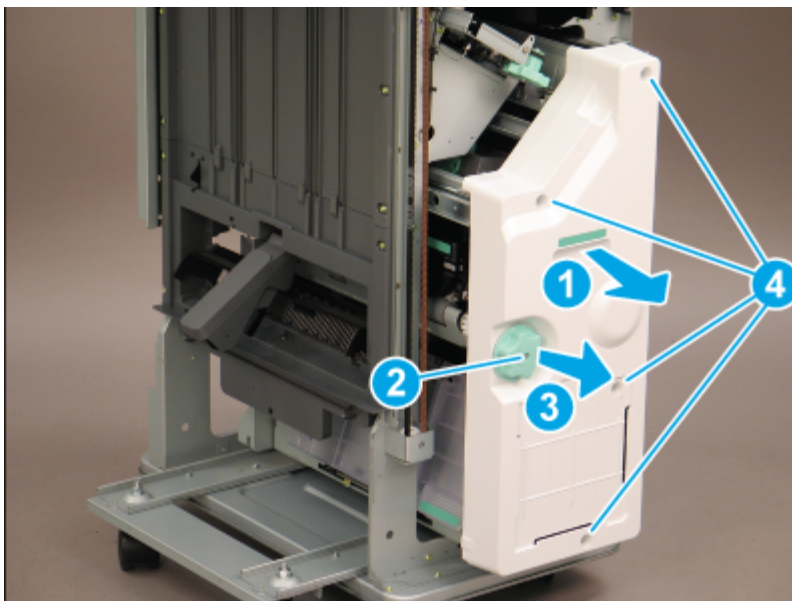


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2743 Remove the cover

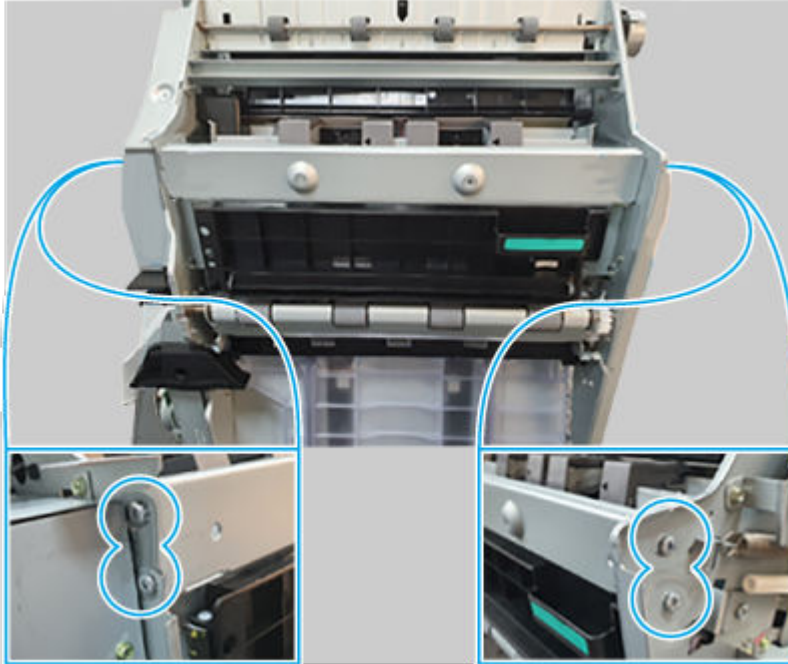


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher tamper.

1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 6-2744 Remove four screws



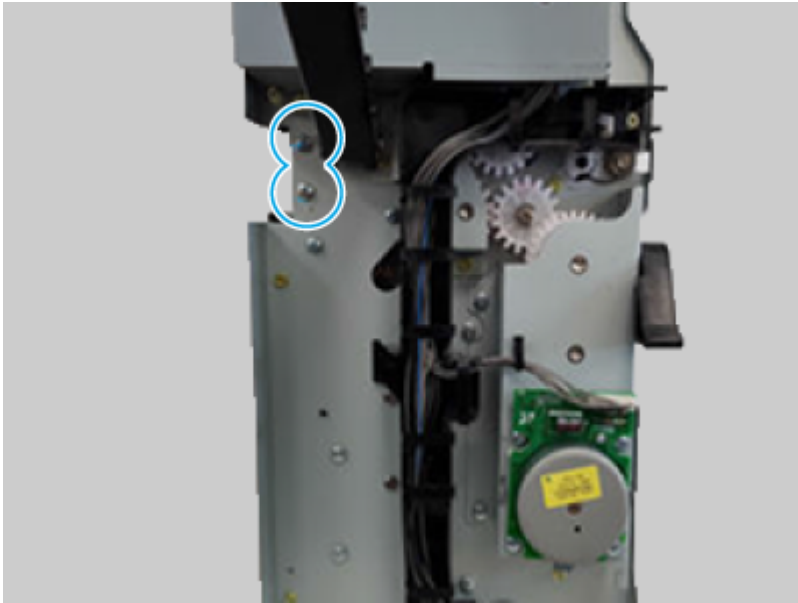
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2745 Remove two screws



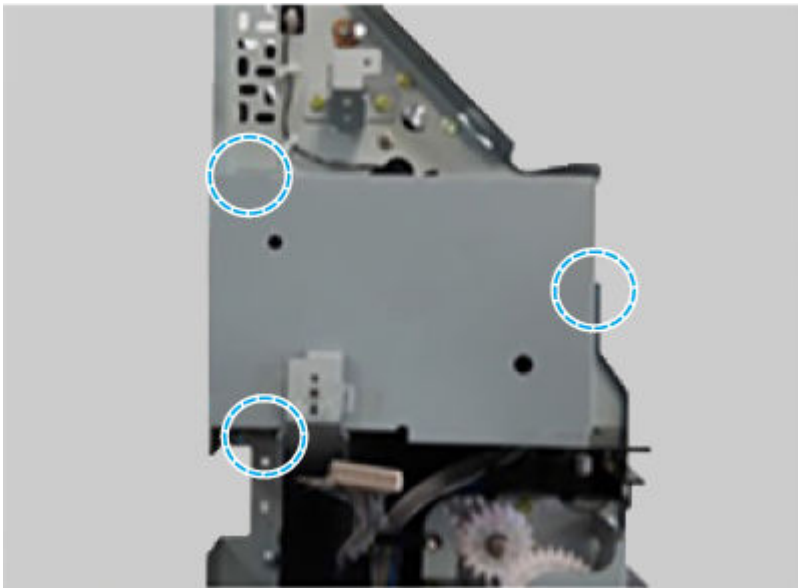
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2746 Remove two screws



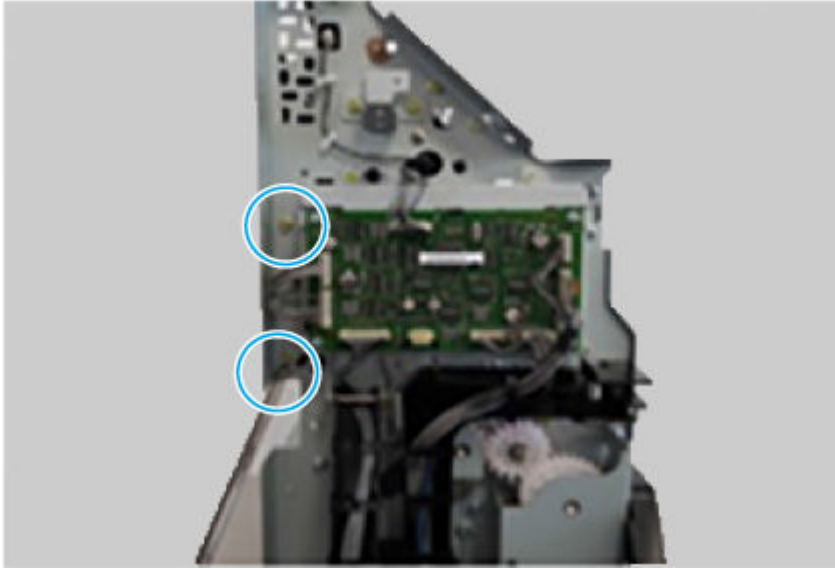
4. Remove three screws and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2747 Remove three screws



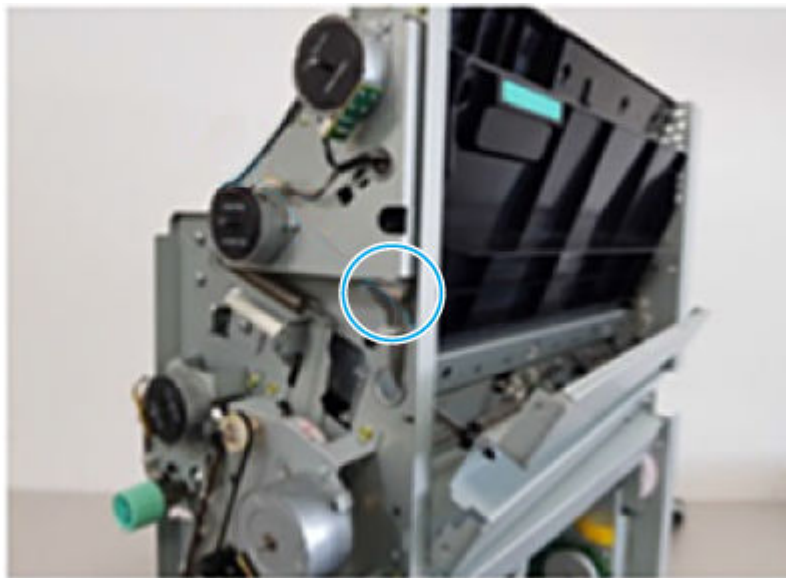
5. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2748 Remove two screws



6. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2749 Disconnect one connector



7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2750 Disconnect one connector



8. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2751 Remove two screws



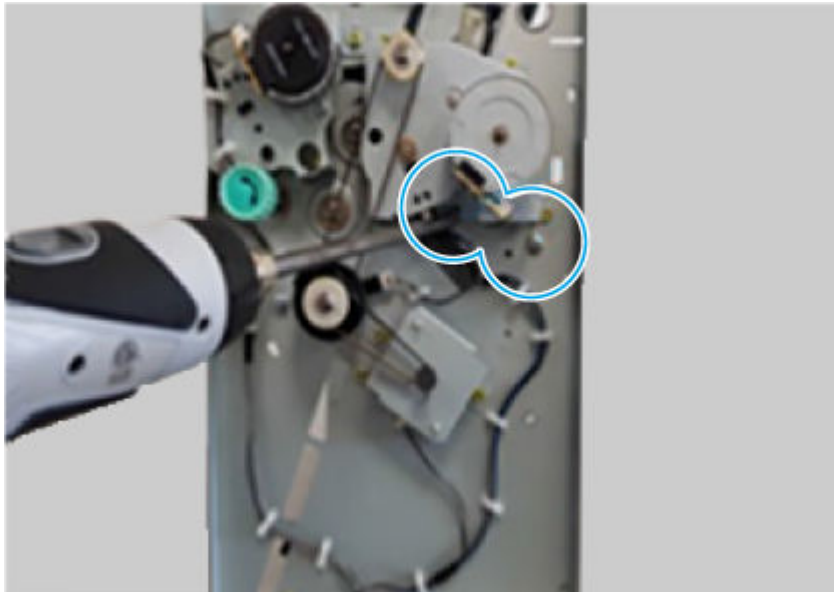
9. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2752 Remove three screws



10. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2753 Remove two screws



11. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2754 Remove two screws



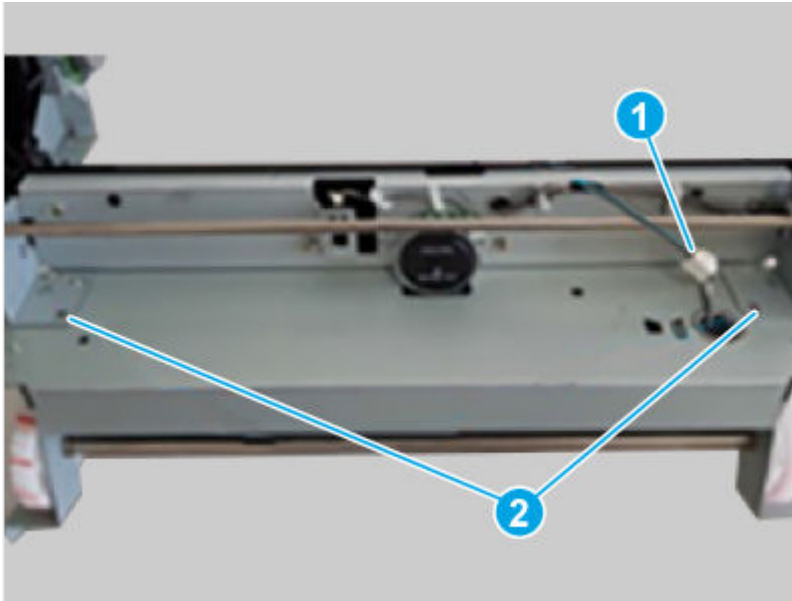
12. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2755 Disconnect one connector



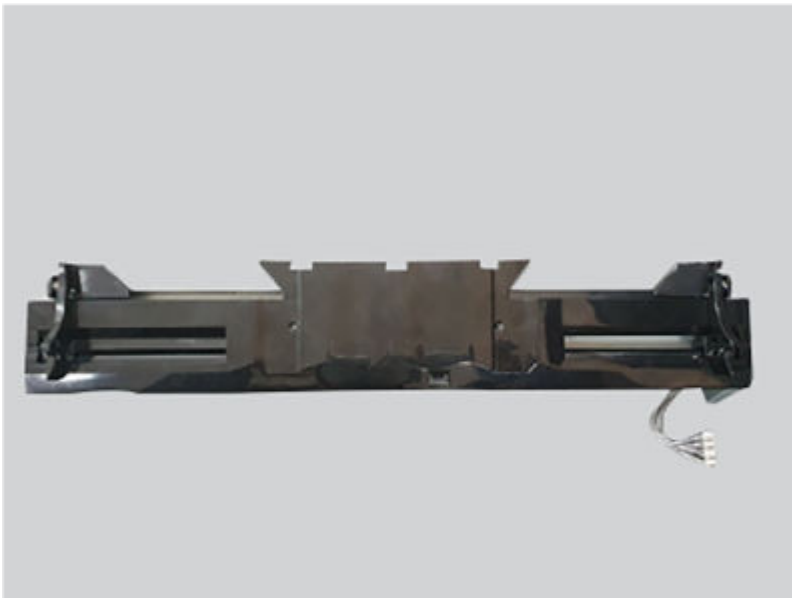
13. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2756 Disconnect connector and remove screws



14. Remove the booklet tamper.

Figure 6-2757 Remove the tamper



6 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

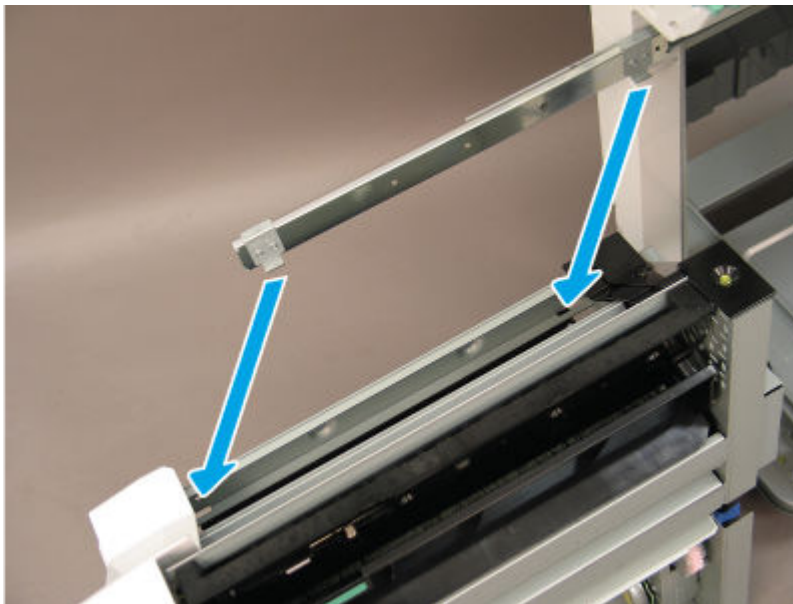
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

NOTE:  Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

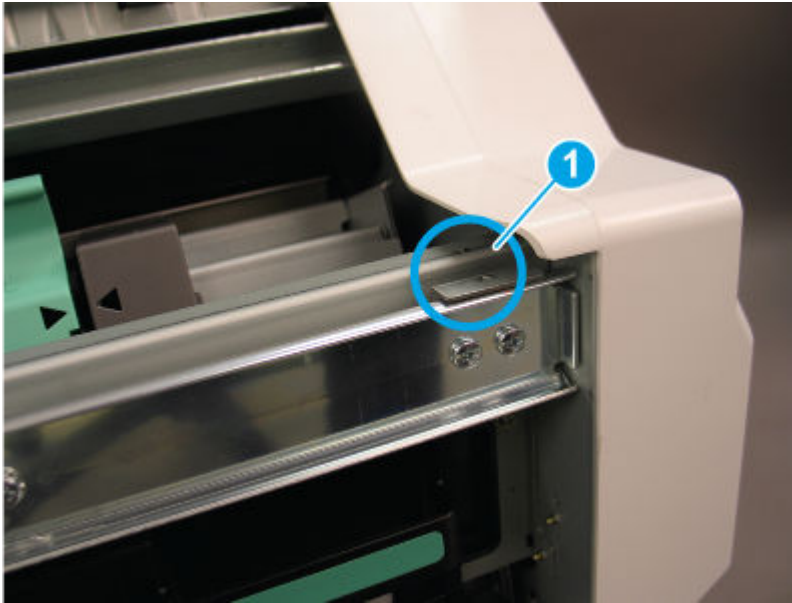
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2758 Position the hooks on the rail



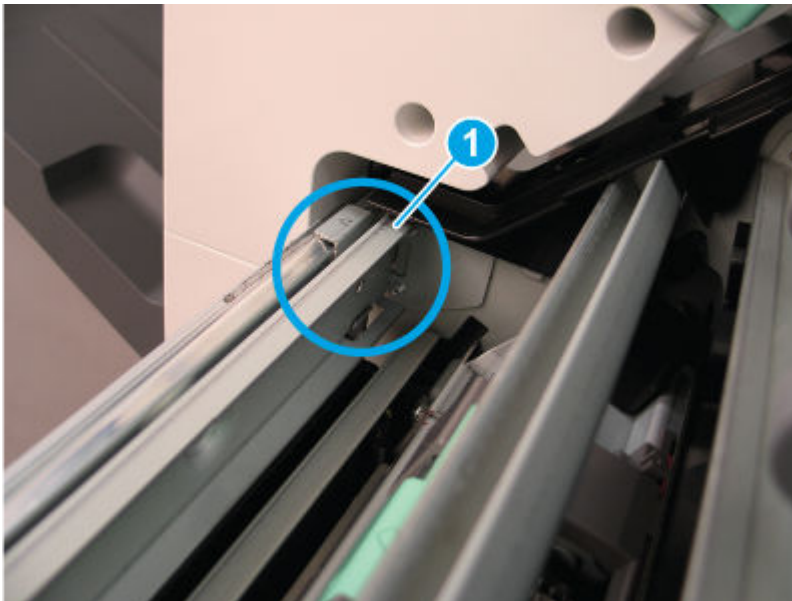
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2759 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2760 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2761 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher tamper home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-347 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet tamper home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

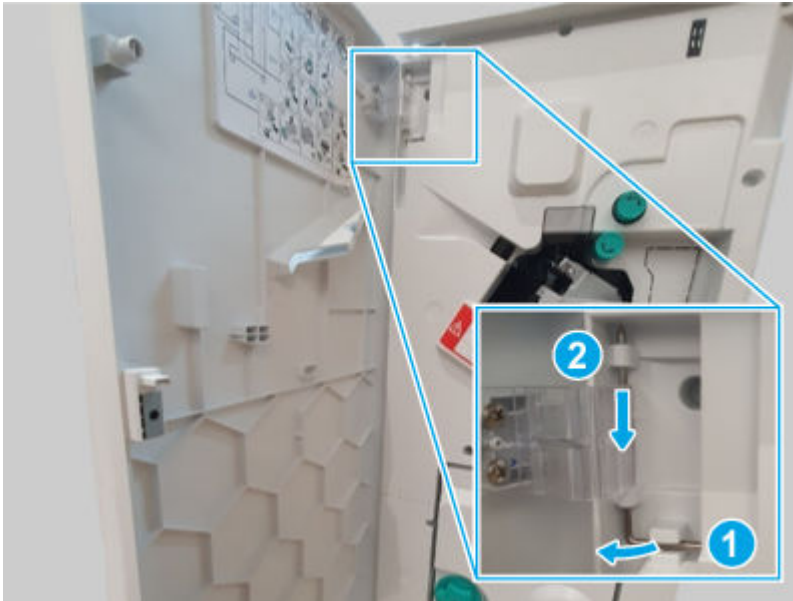
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

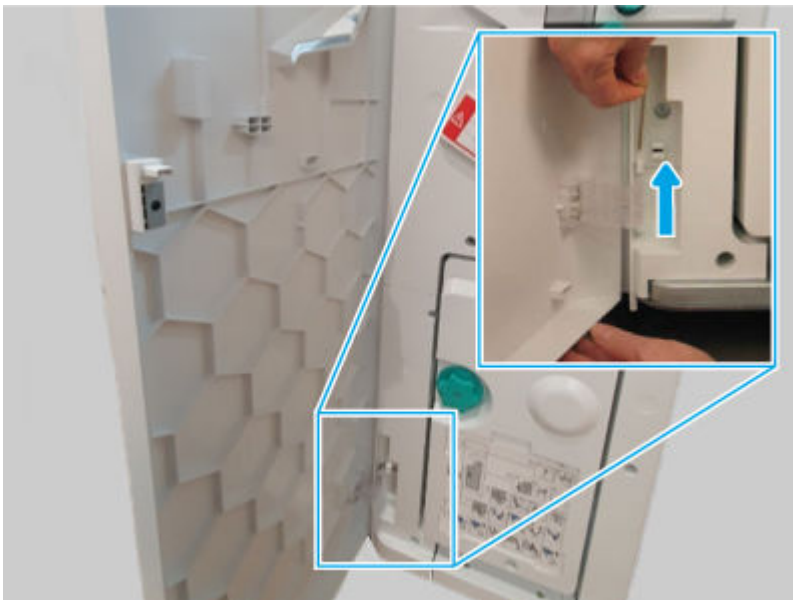
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2762 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2763 Remove the door

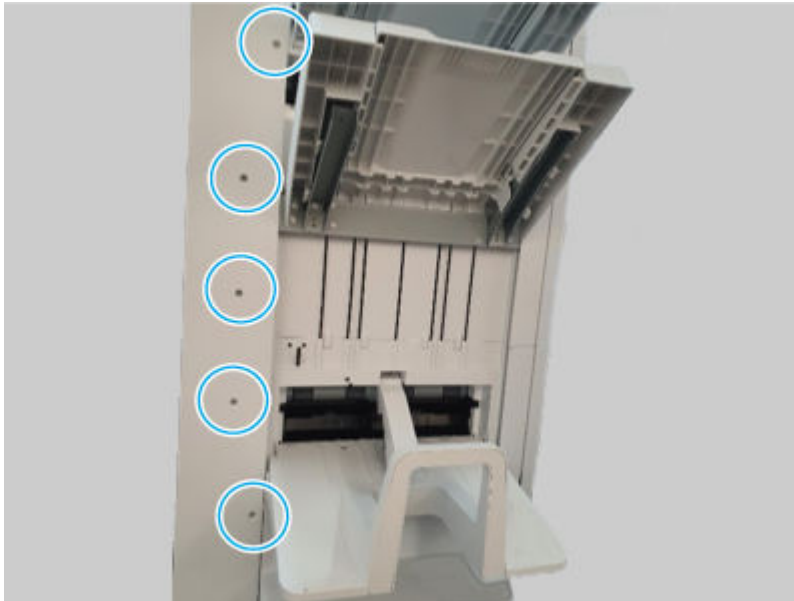


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2764 Remove five screws

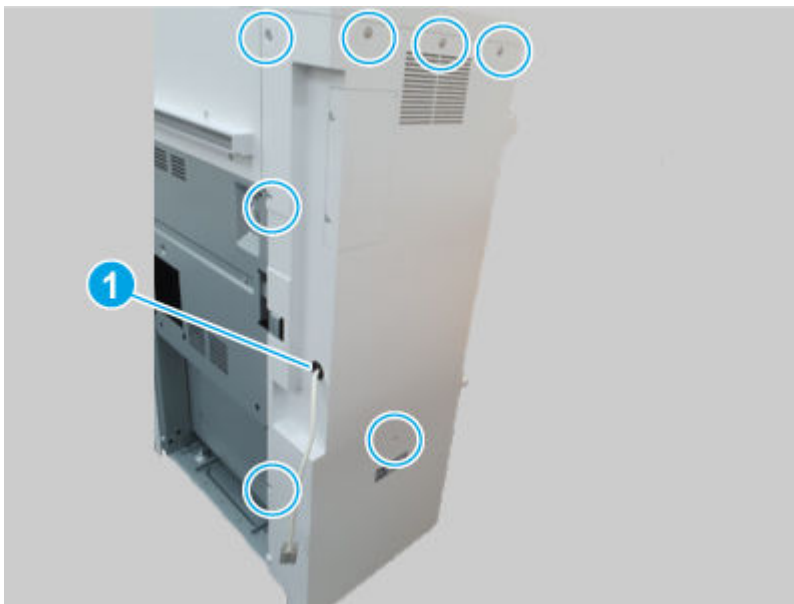


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2765 Remove the cover

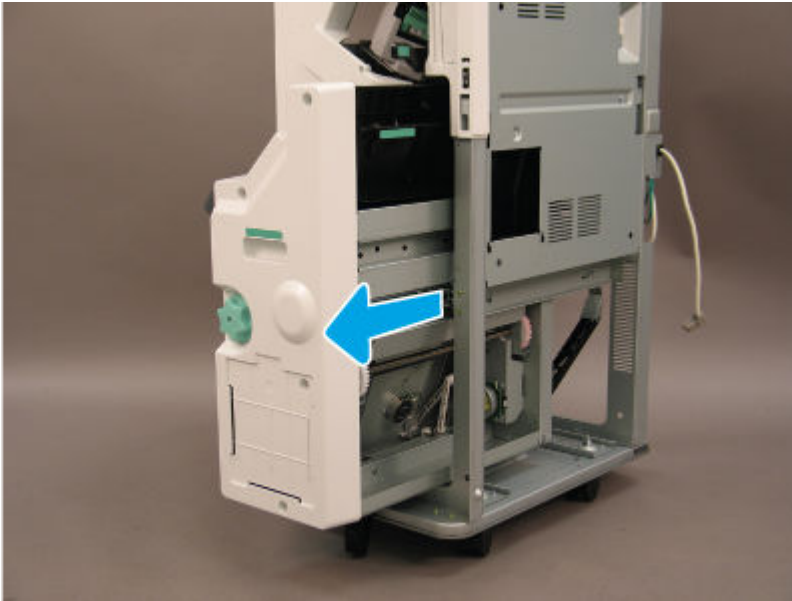


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

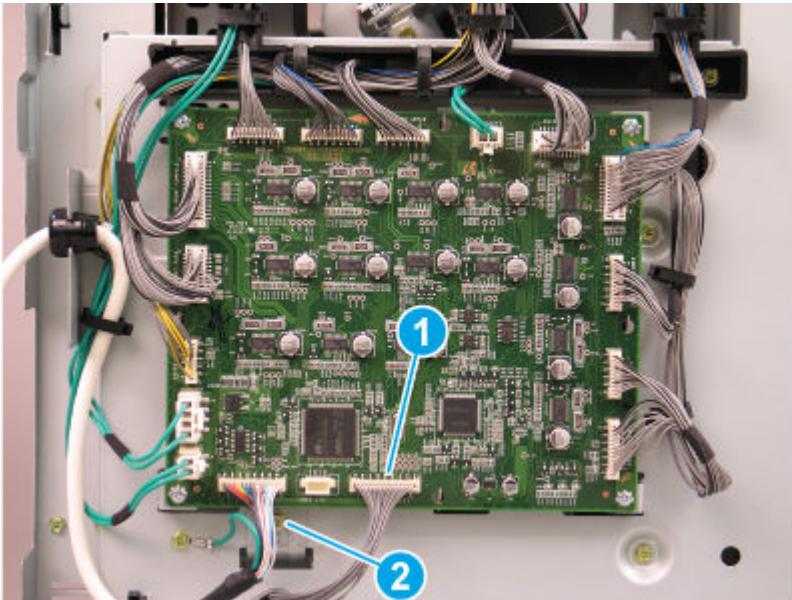
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2766 Slide the booklet maker out



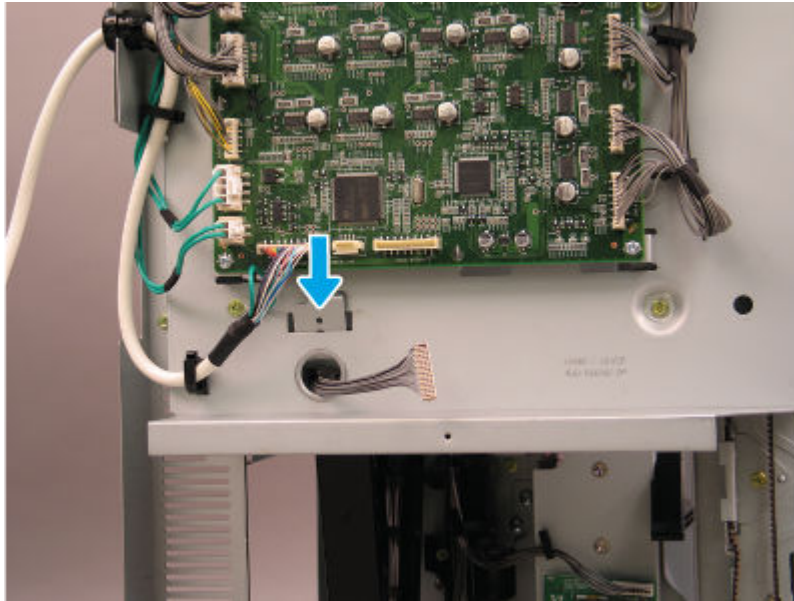
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2767 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



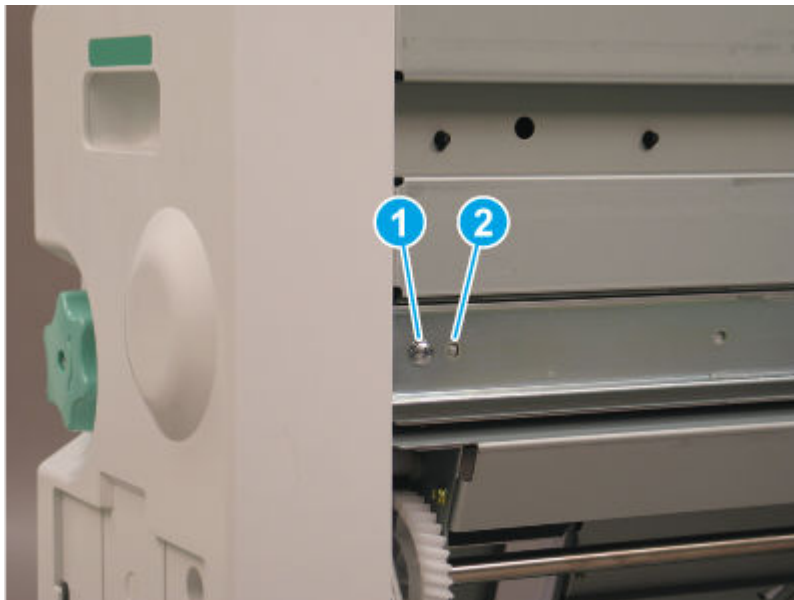
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2768 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2769 Release the alignment pin



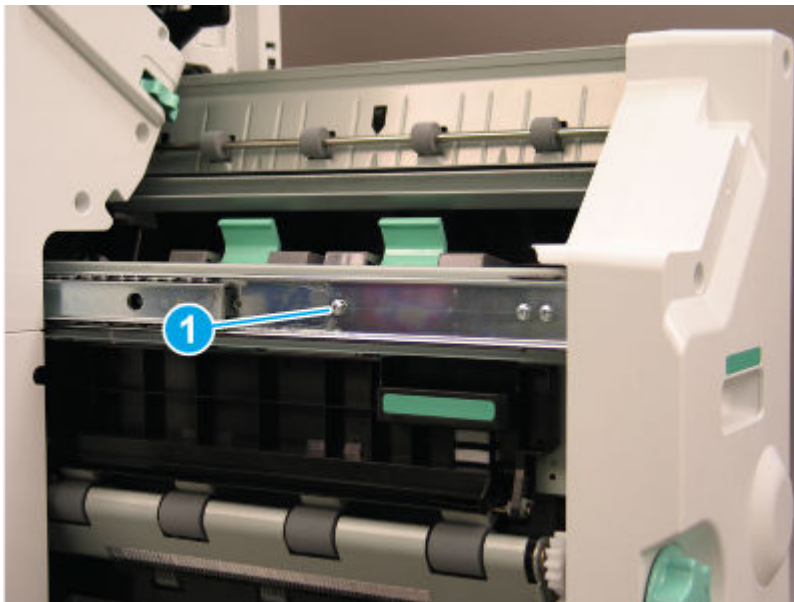
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2770 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2771 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


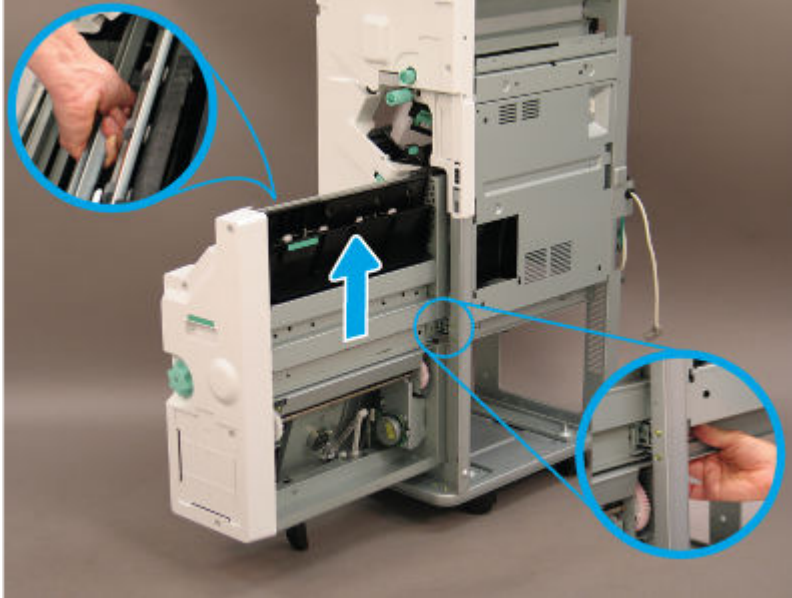
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2772 Remove the booklet maker

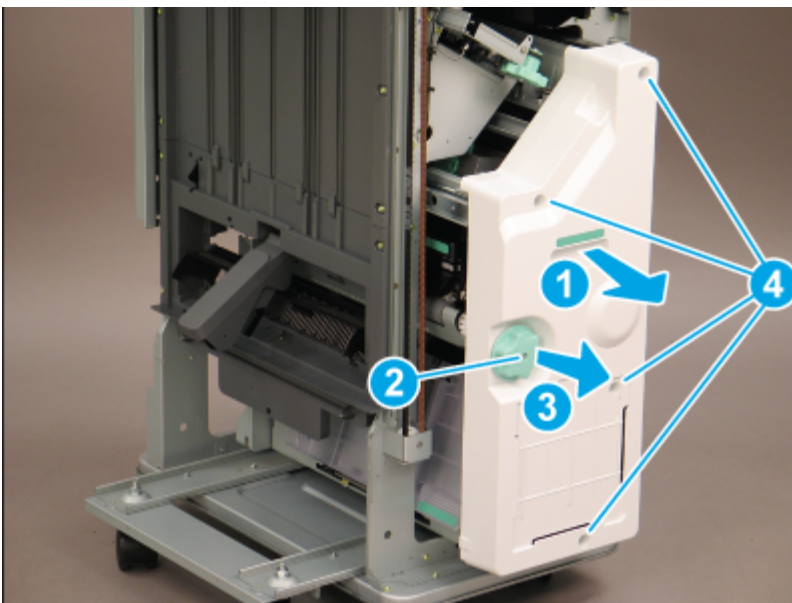


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2773 Remove the cover

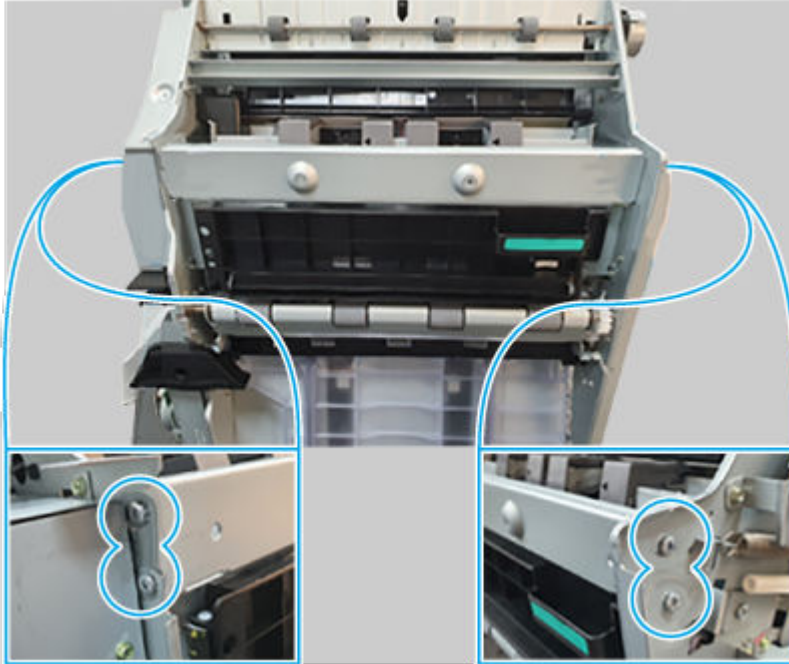


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet tamper home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher tamper home sensor.

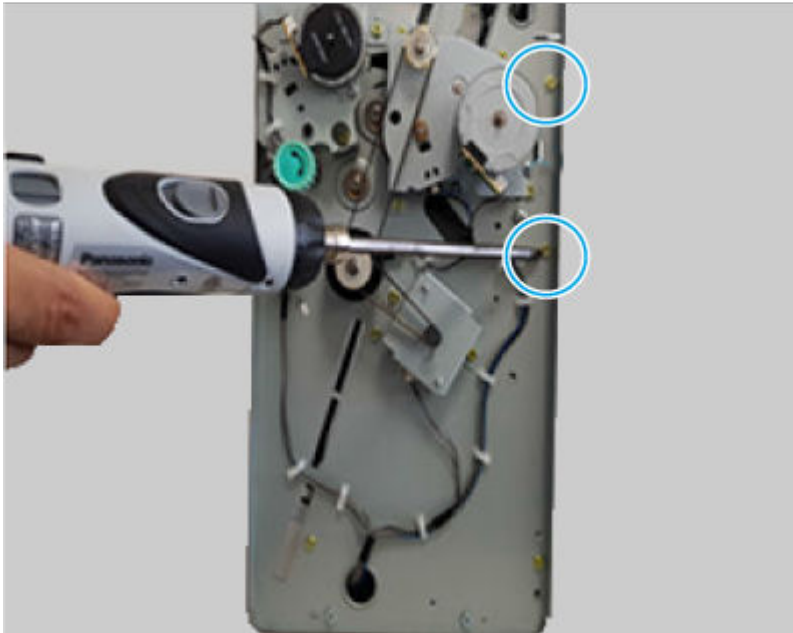
1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 6-2774 Remove four screws



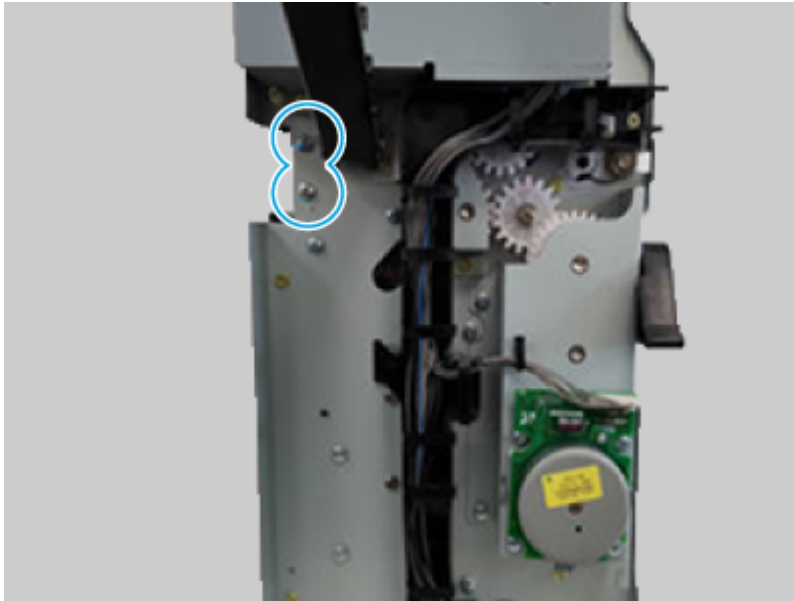
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2775 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2776 Remove two screws



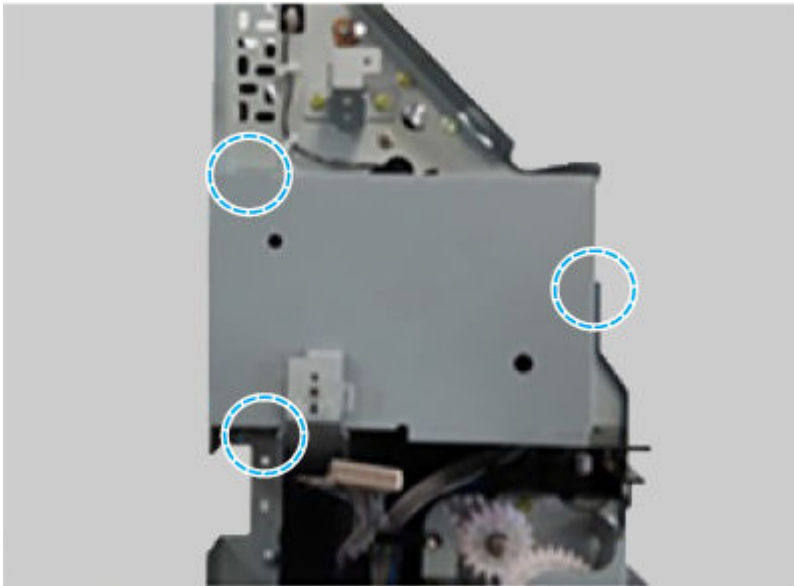
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2777 Remove two screws



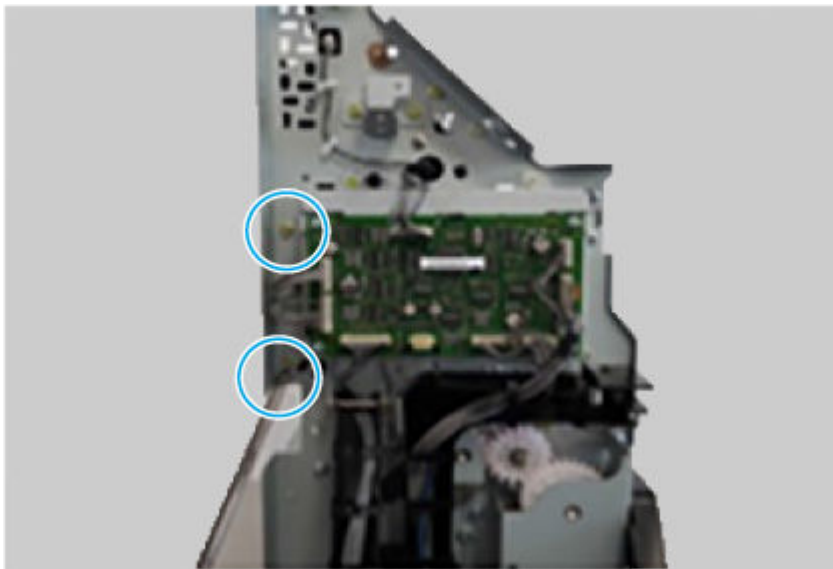
5. Remove three screws and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2778 Remove three screws



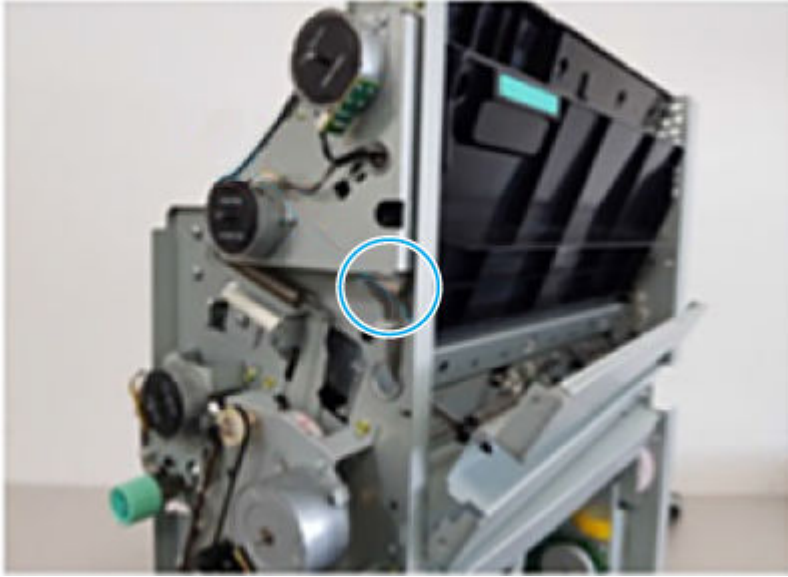
6. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2779 Remove two screws



7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2780 Disconnect one connector



8. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2781 Disconnect one connector



9. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2782 Remove two screws



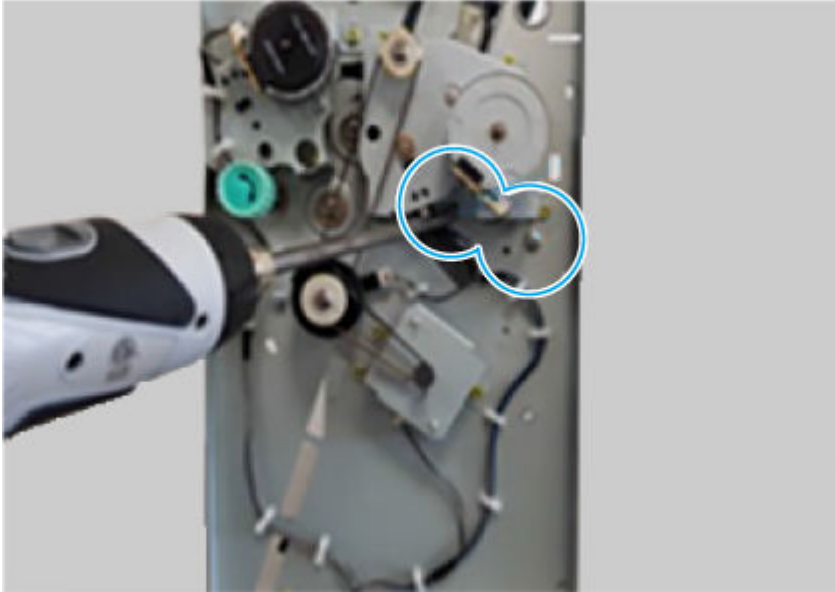
10. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2783 Remove three screws



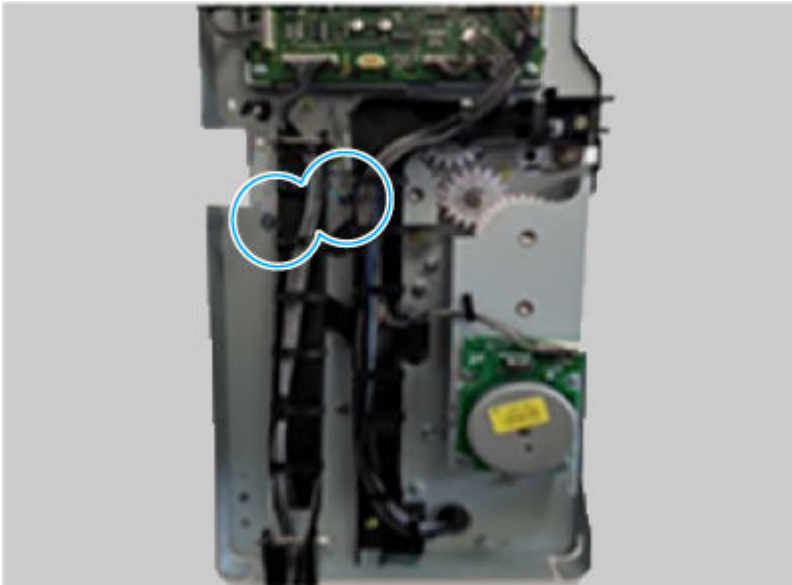
11. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2784 Remove two screws



12. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2785 Remove two screws



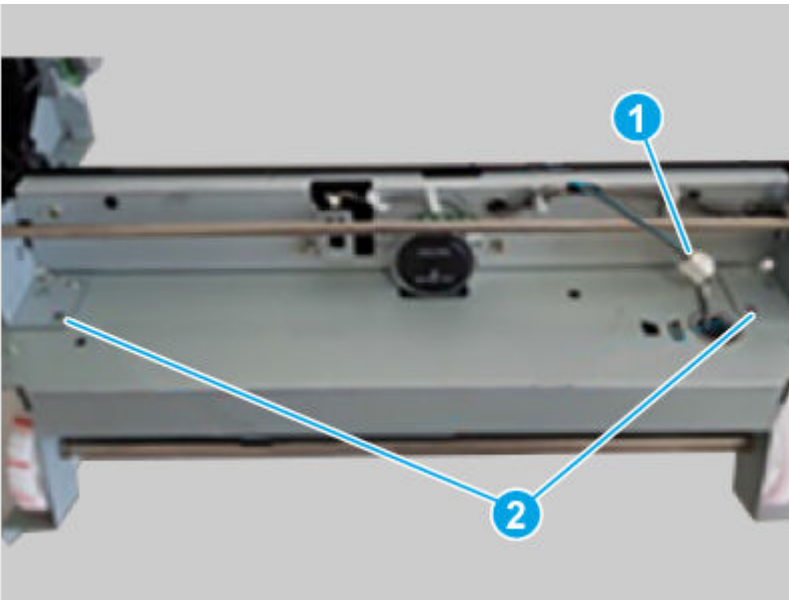
13. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2786 Disconnect one connector



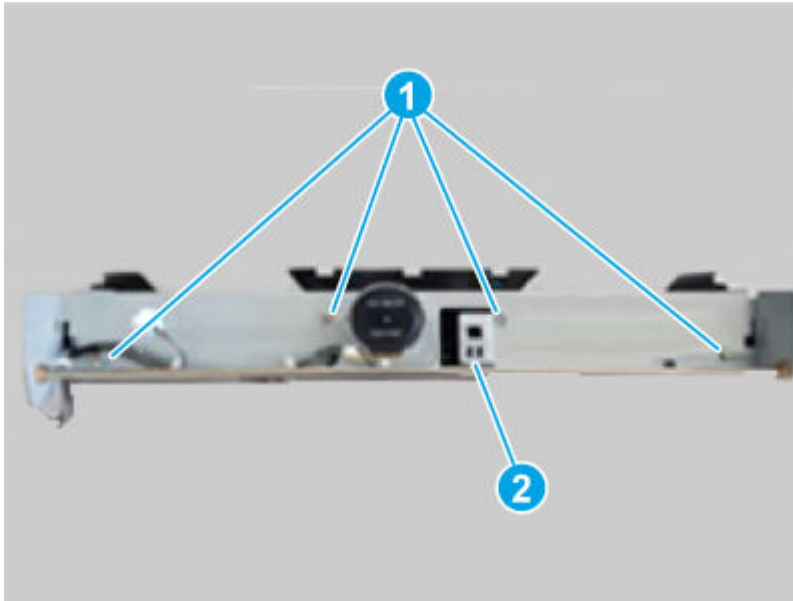
14. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2787 Disconnect connector and remove screws



15. Remove four screws (callout 1), remove the cover, and then remove the booklet tamper home sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-2788 Remove the sensor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

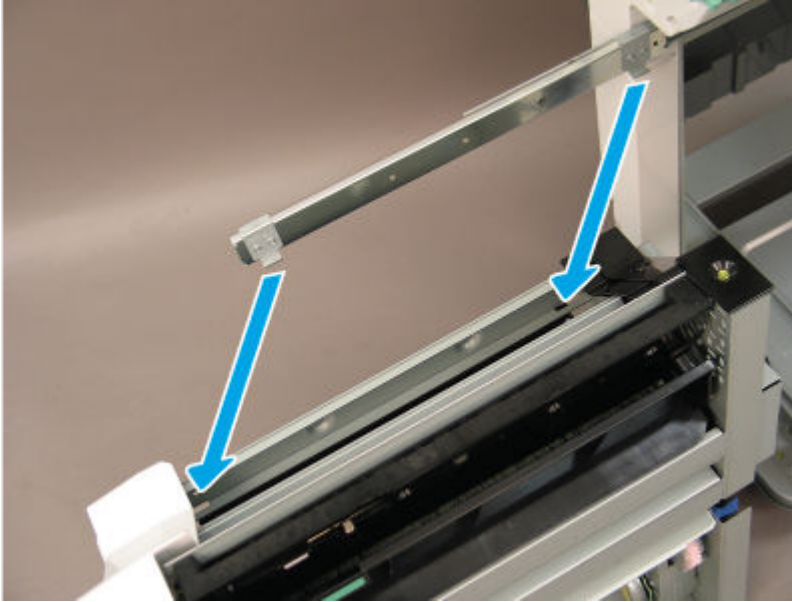
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

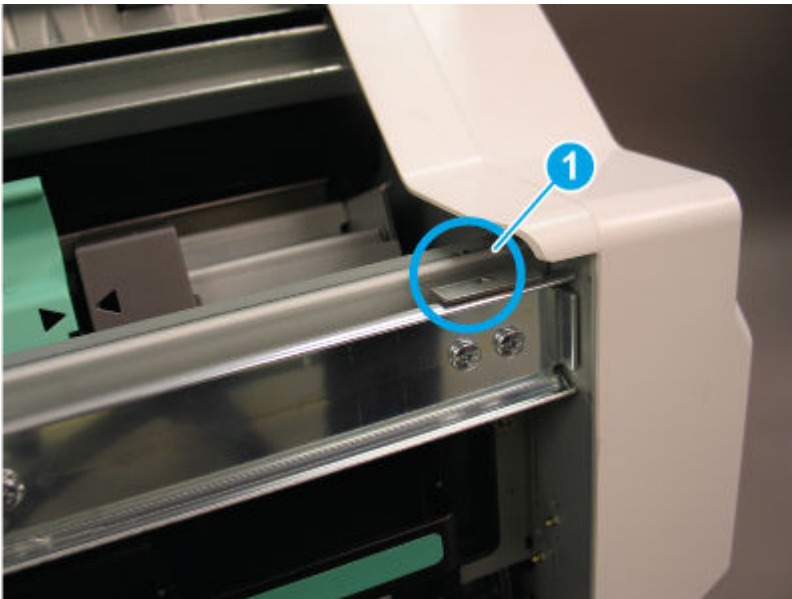
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2789 Position the hooks on the rail



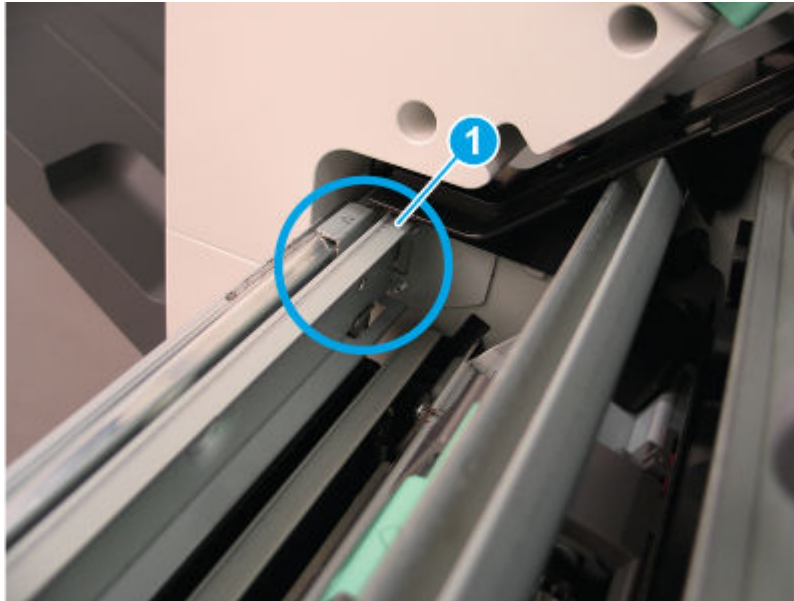
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2790 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2791 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2792 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher tamper motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-348 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40126	Booklet tamper motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

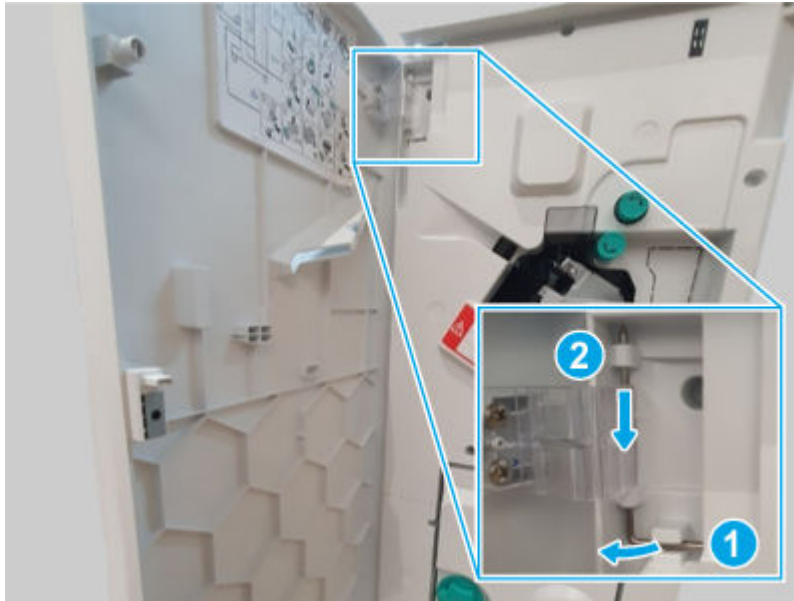
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

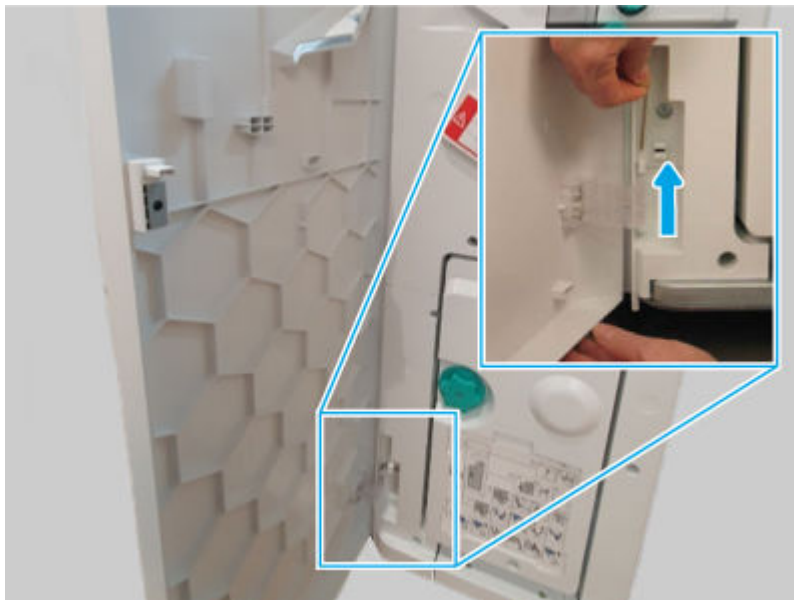
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2793 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2794 Remove the door

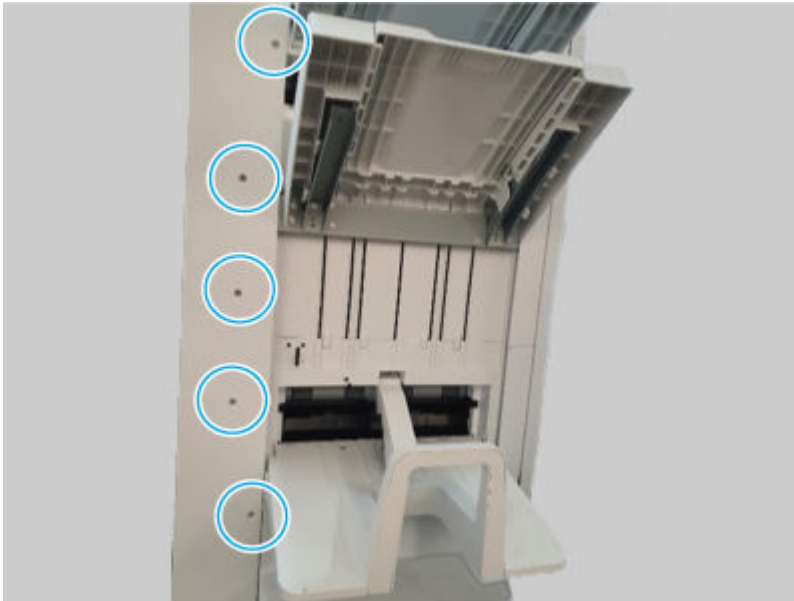


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2795 Remove five screws

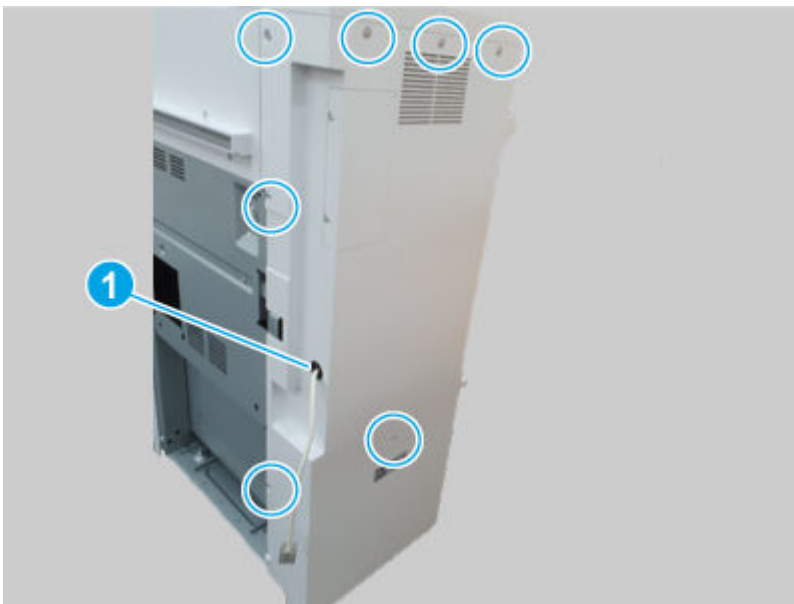


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2796 Remove the cover

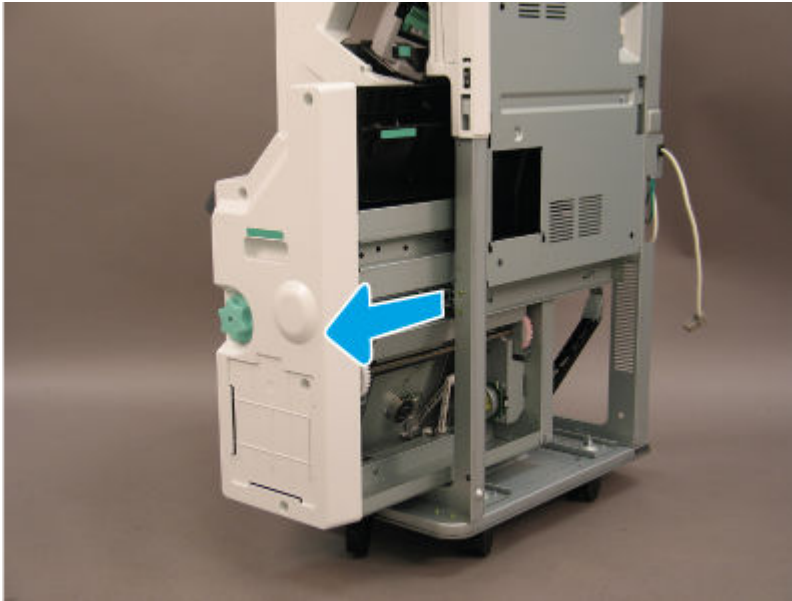


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

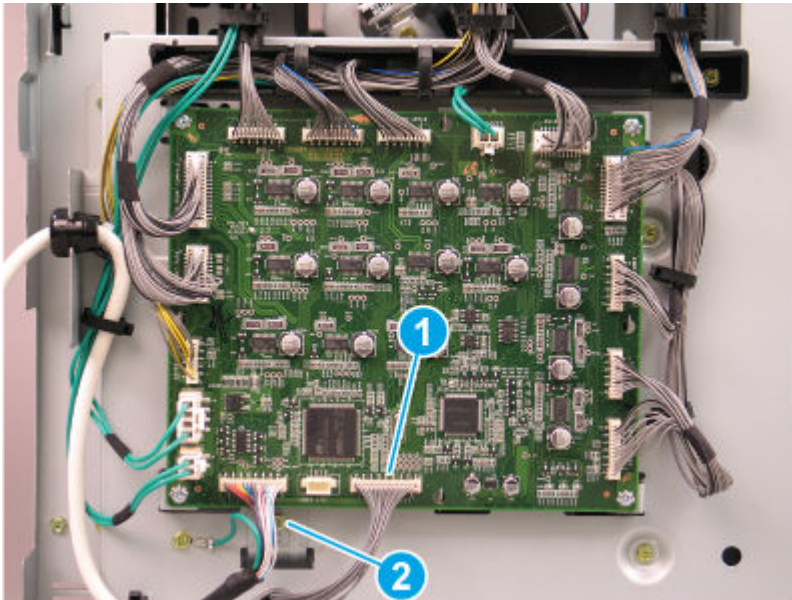
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2797 Slide the booklet maker out



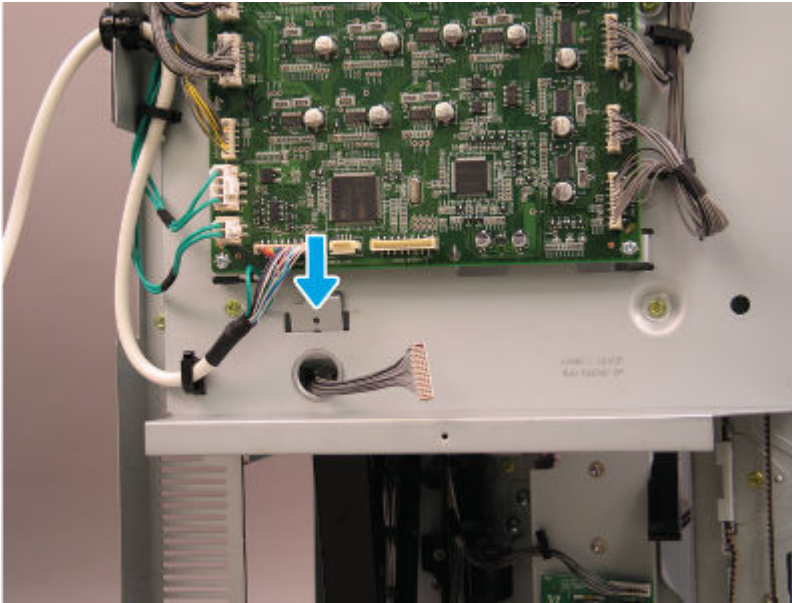
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2798 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



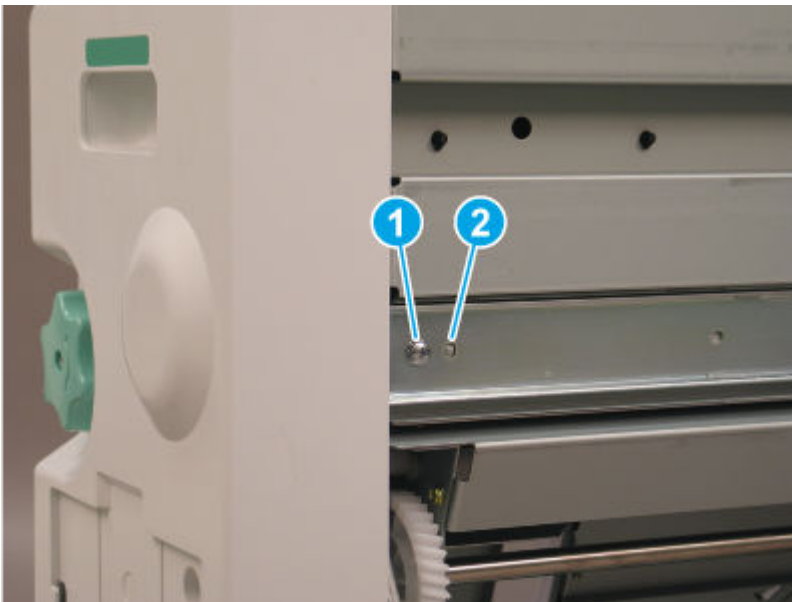
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2799 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2800 Release the alignment pin



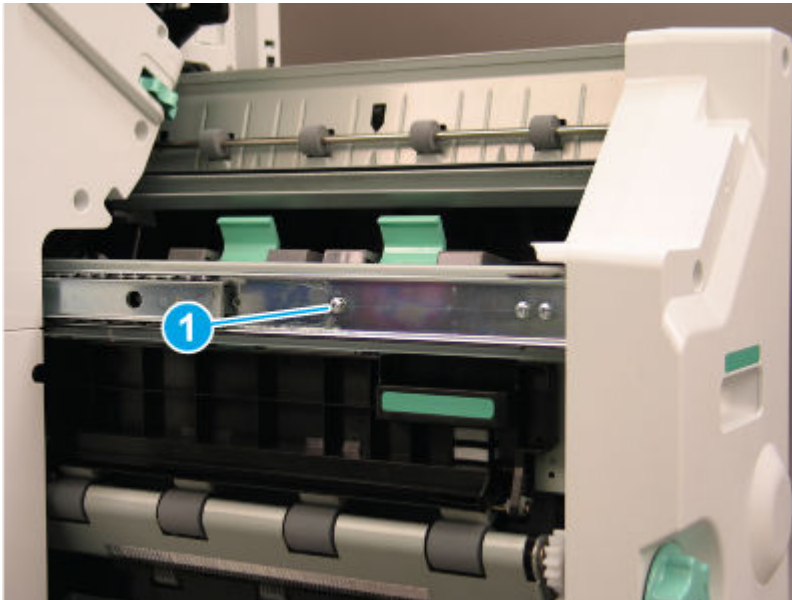
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2801 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2802 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


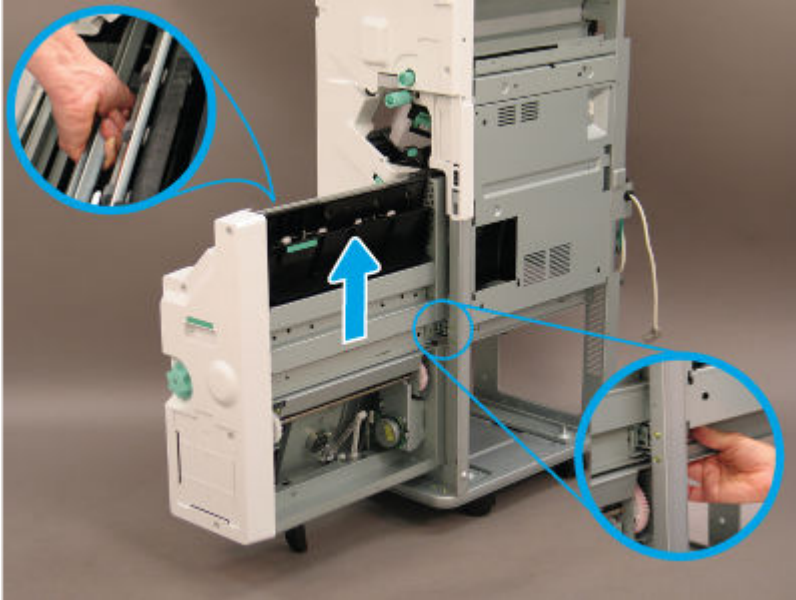
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2803 Remove the booklet maker

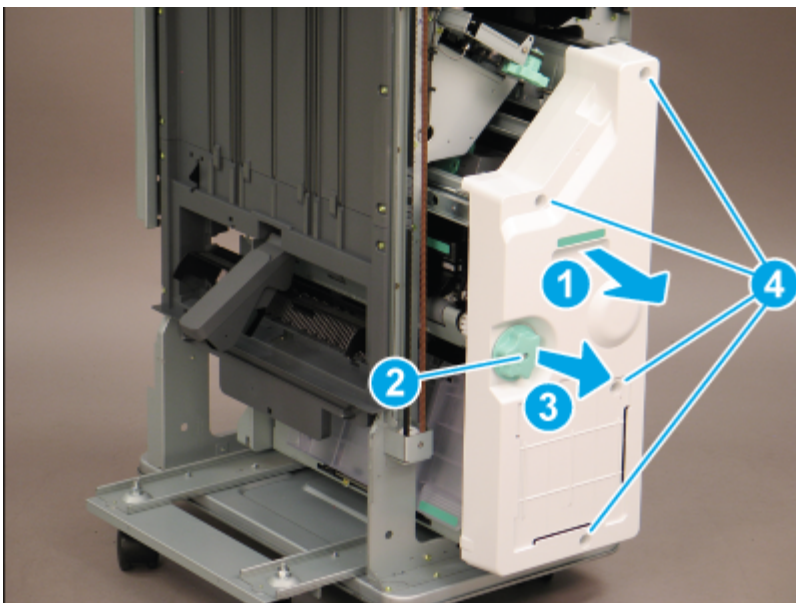


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2804 Remove the cover

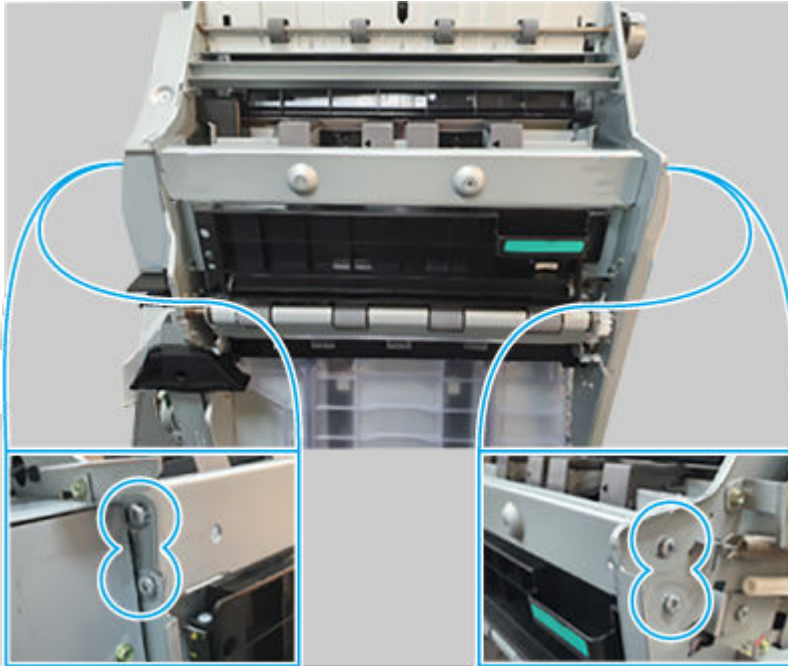


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet tamper motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher tamper motor.

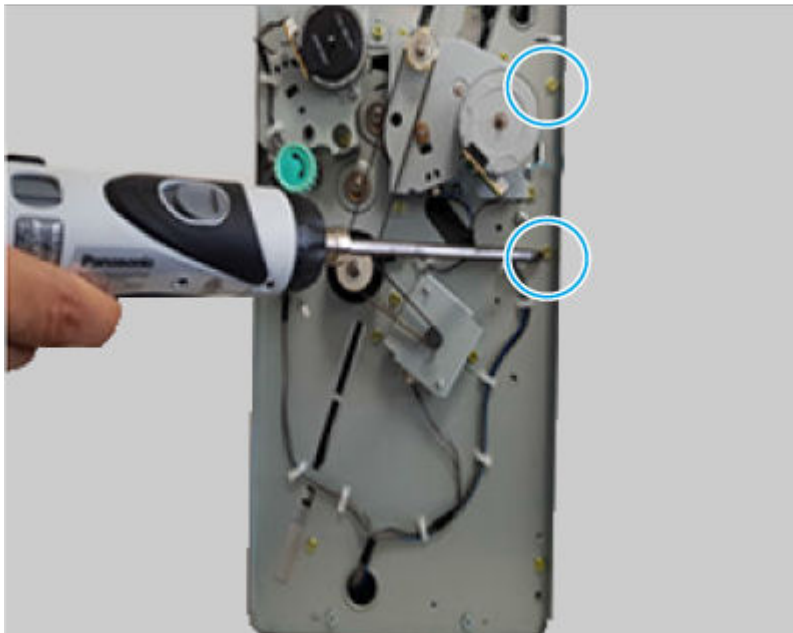
1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 6-2805 Remove four screws



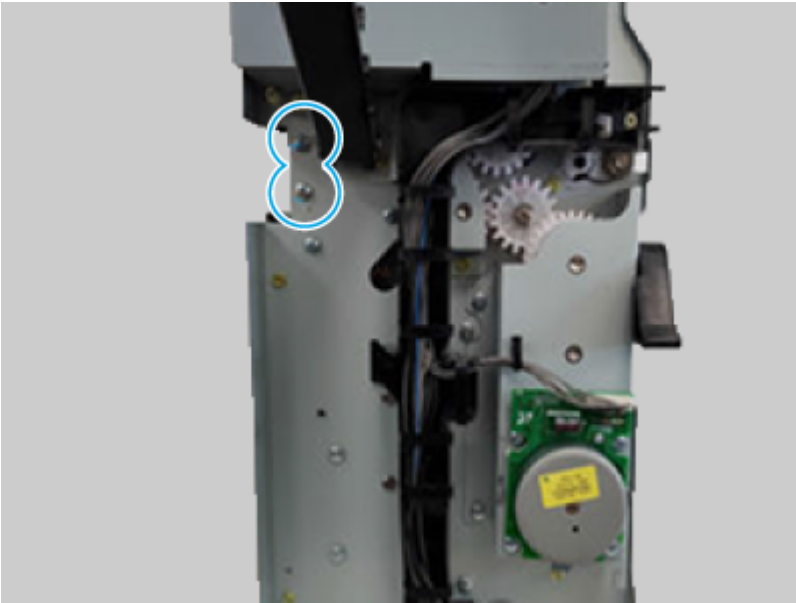
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2806 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2807 Remove two screws



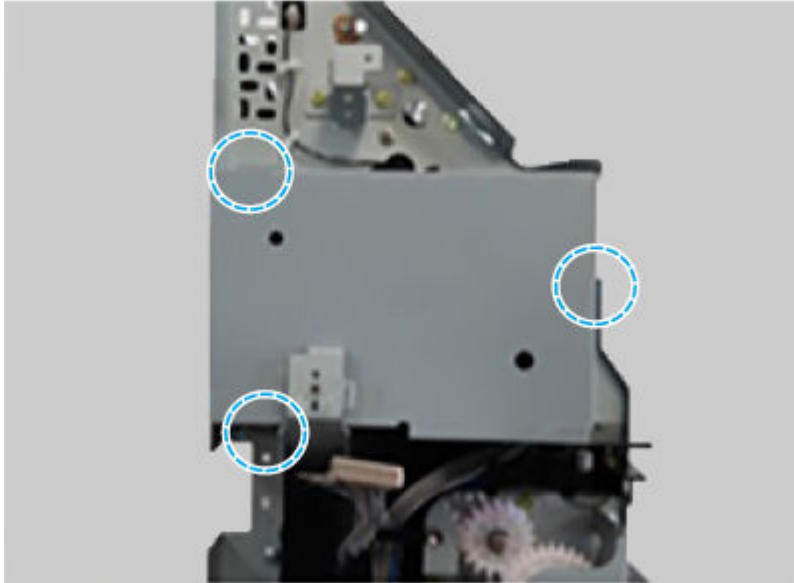
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2808 Remove two screws



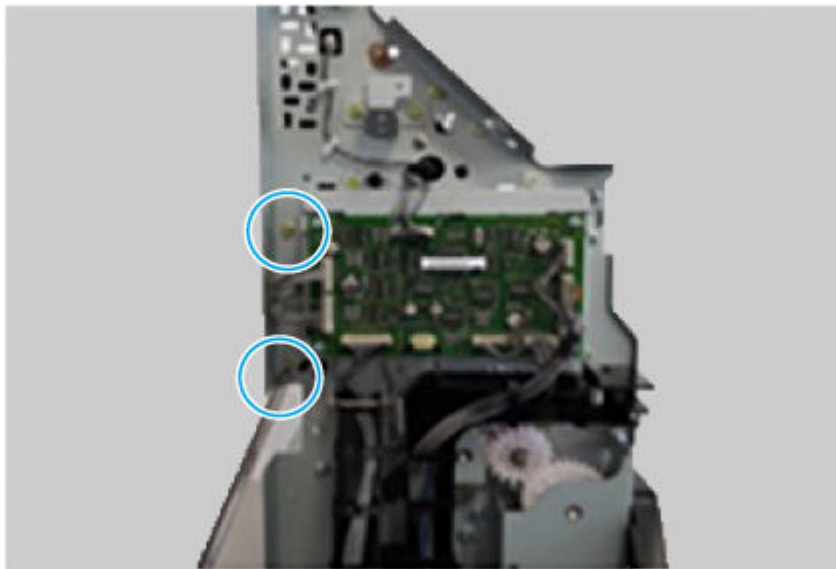
5. Remove three screws and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2809 Remove three screws



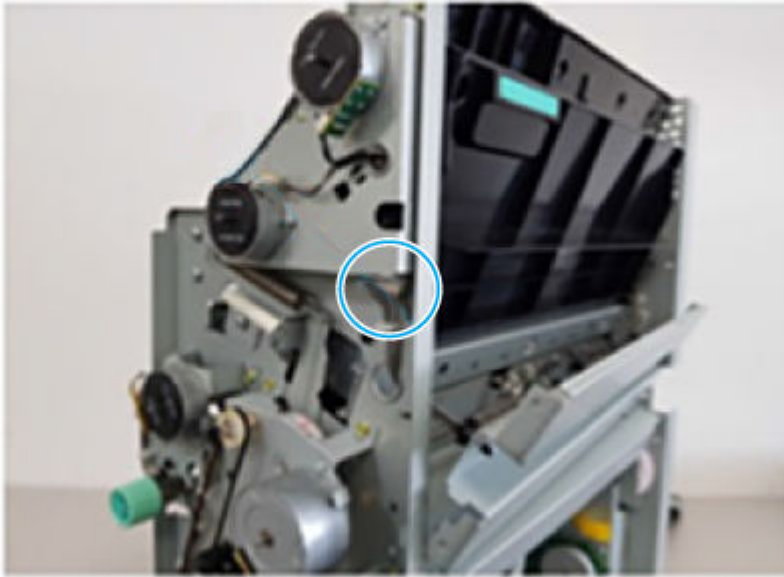
6. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2810 Remove two screws



7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2811 Disconnect one connector



8. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2812 Disconnect one connector



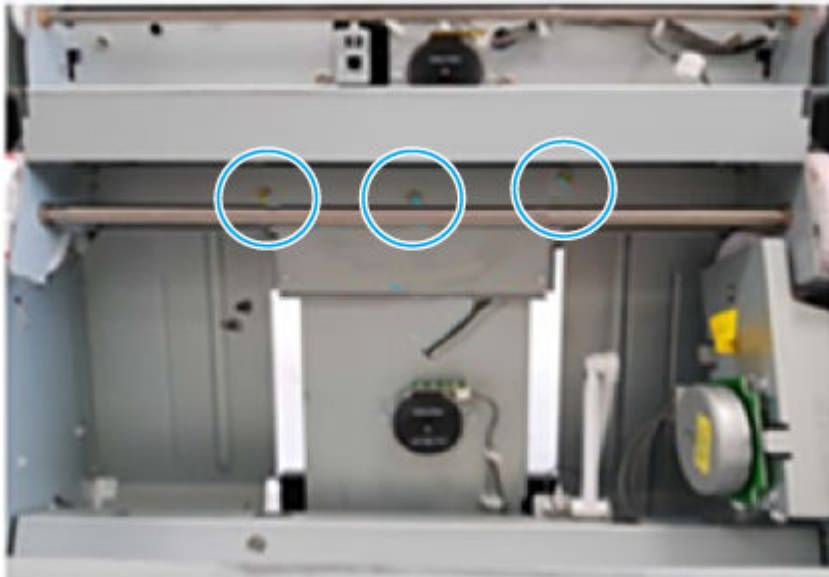
9. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2813 Remove two screws



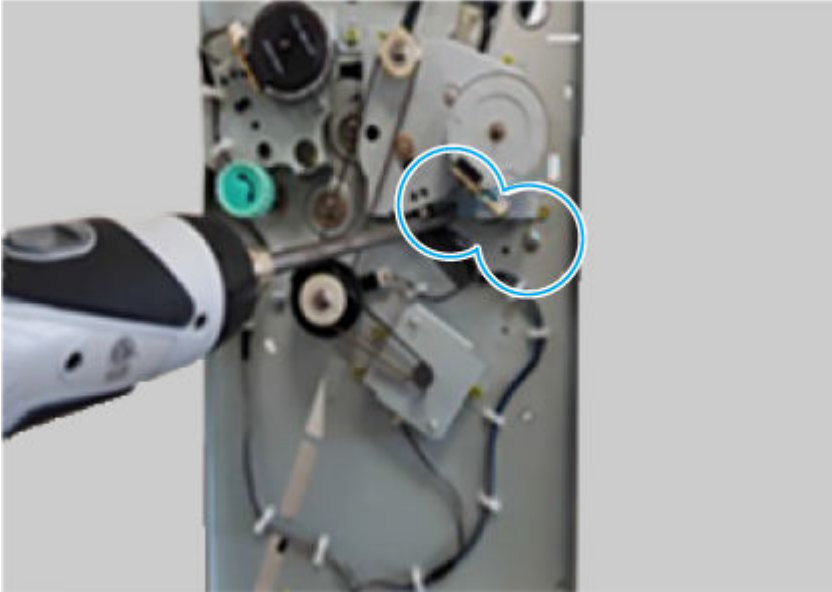
10. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2814 Remove three screws



11. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2815 Remove two screws



12. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2816 Remove two screws



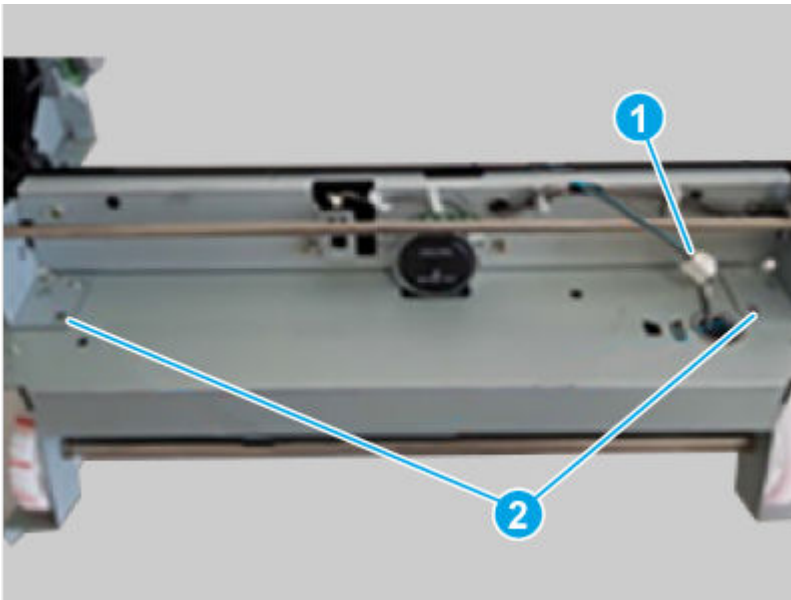
13. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2817 Disconnect one connector



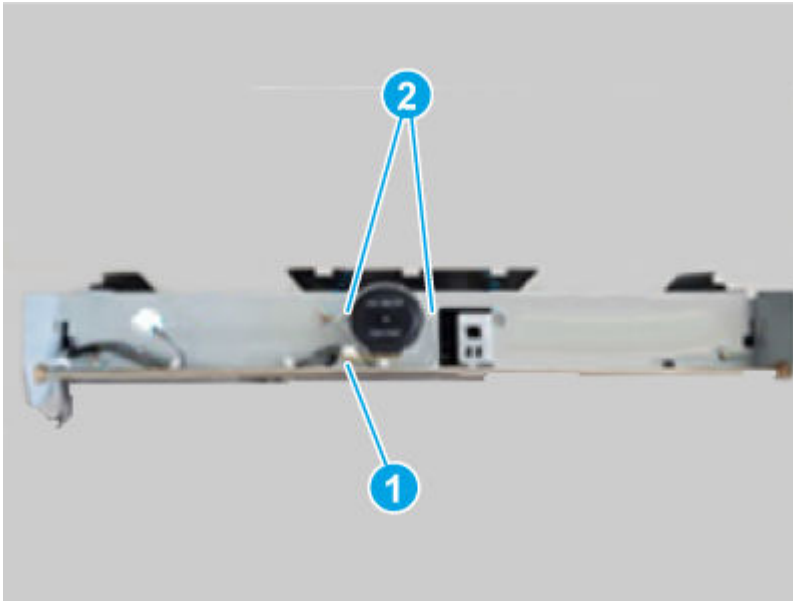
14. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2818 Disconnect connector and remove screws



15. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet tamper motor.

Figure 6-2819 Remove the motor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

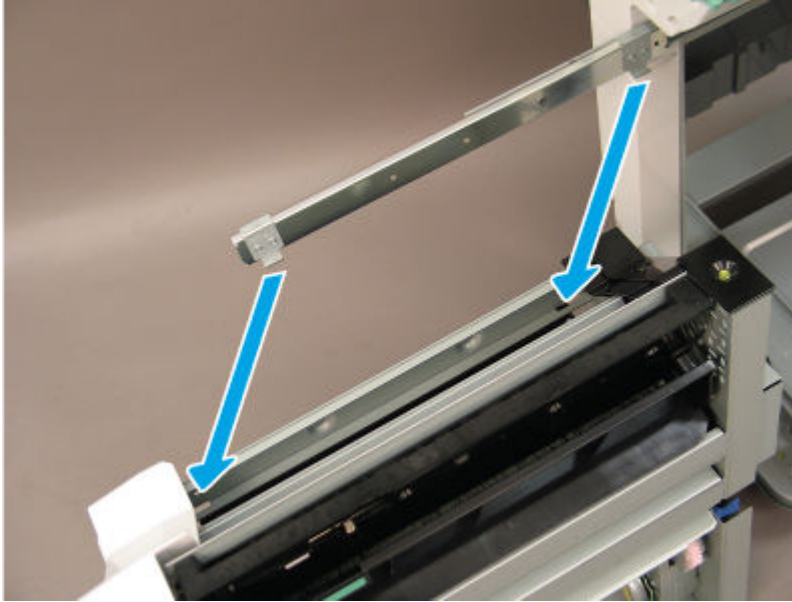
Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.



NOTE: Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

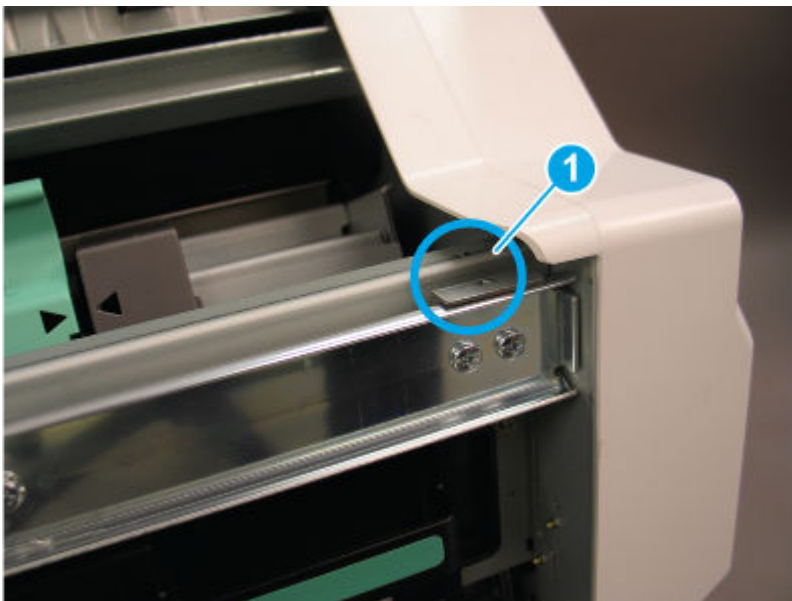
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2820 Position the hooks on the rail



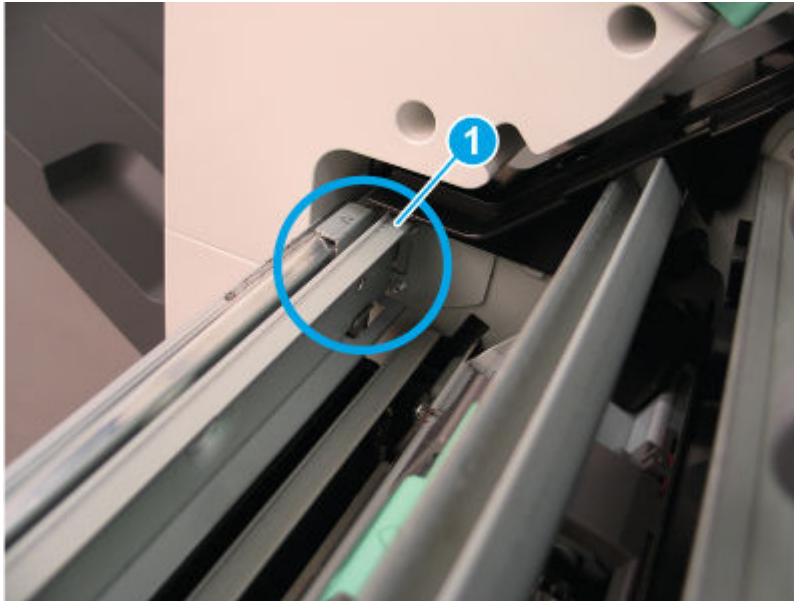
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2821 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2822 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2823 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher tamper sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-349 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Sensor-RP (Booklet tamper sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

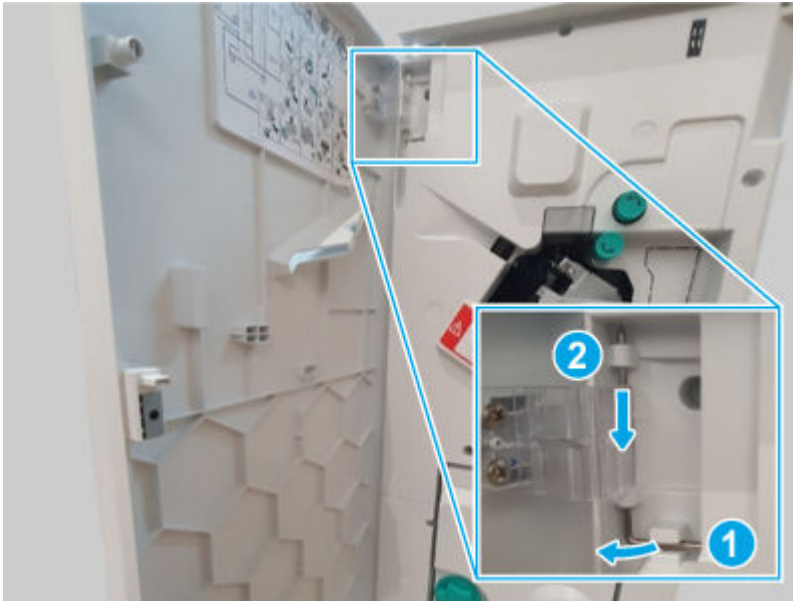
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

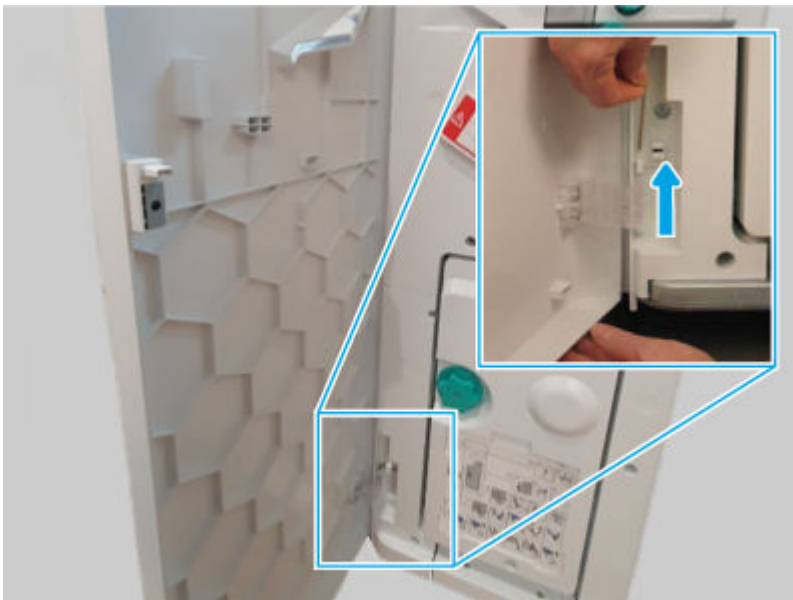
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2824 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2825 Remove the door

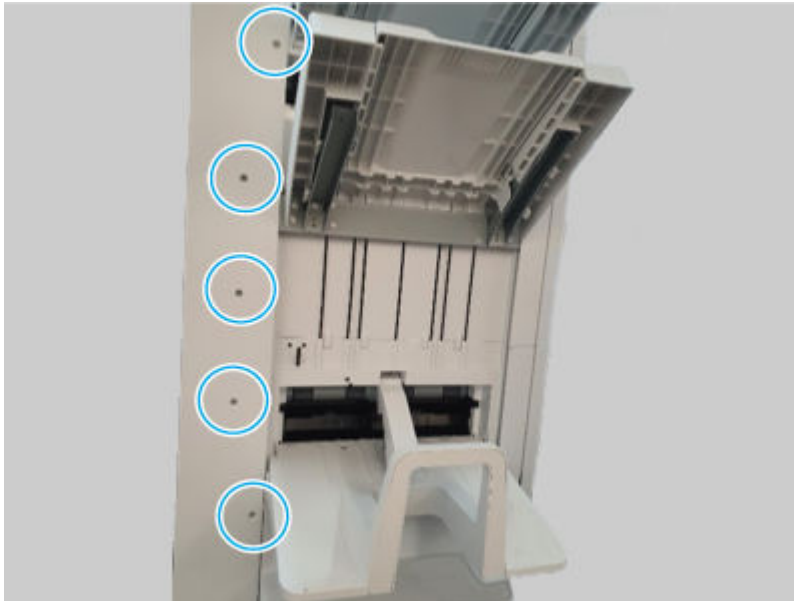


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2826 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


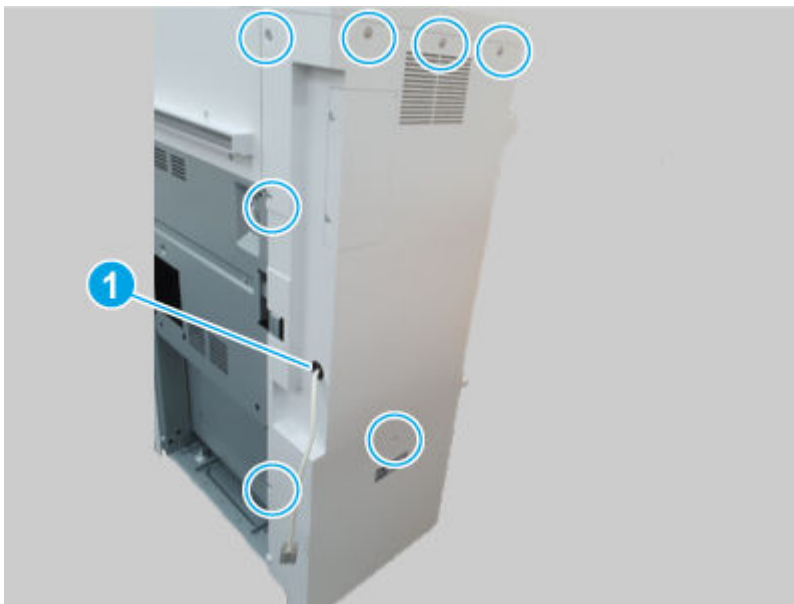
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2827 Remove the cover

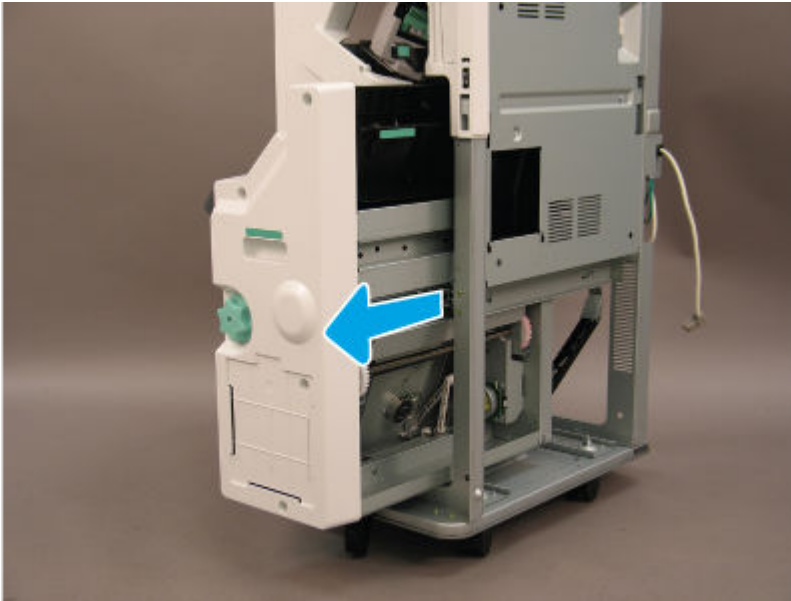


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

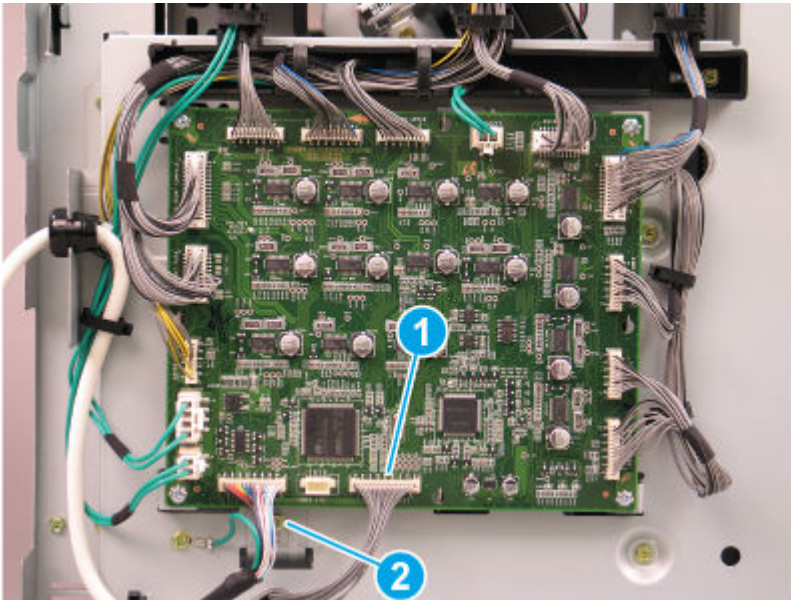
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2828 Slide the booklet maker out



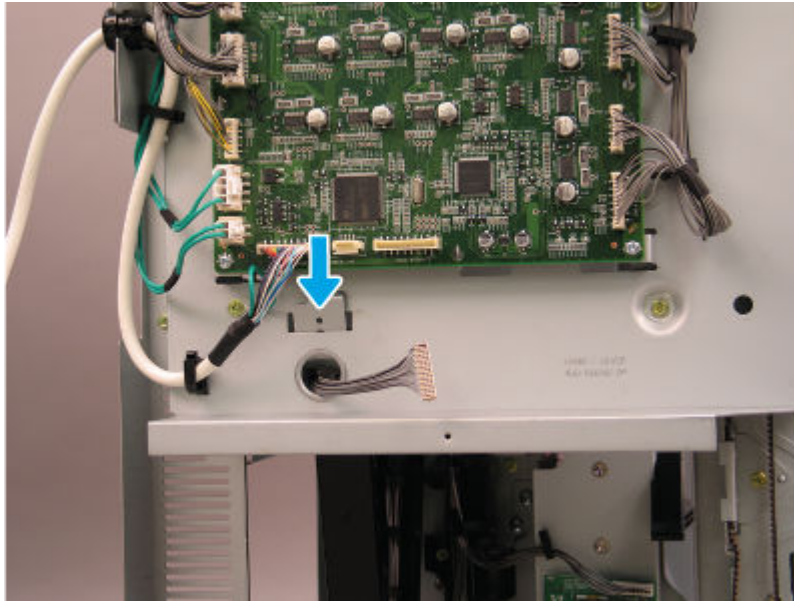
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2829 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



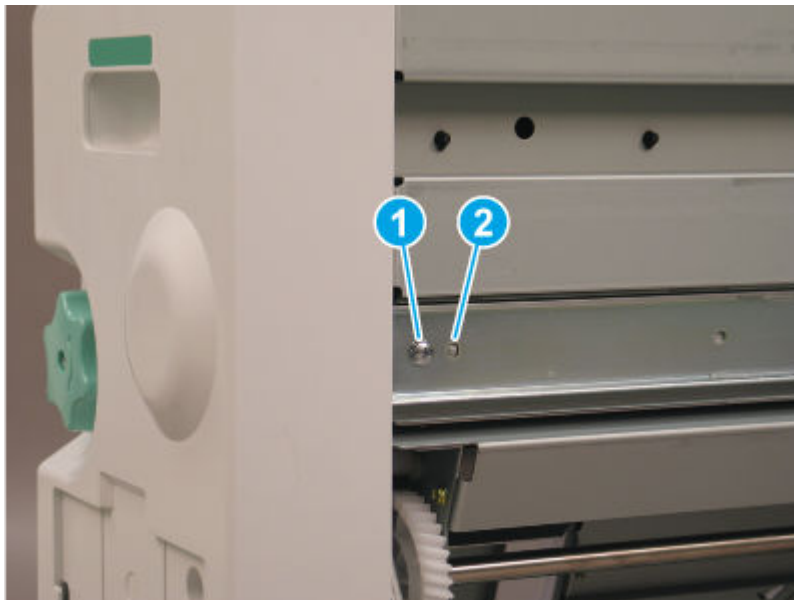
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2830 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2831 Release the alignment pin



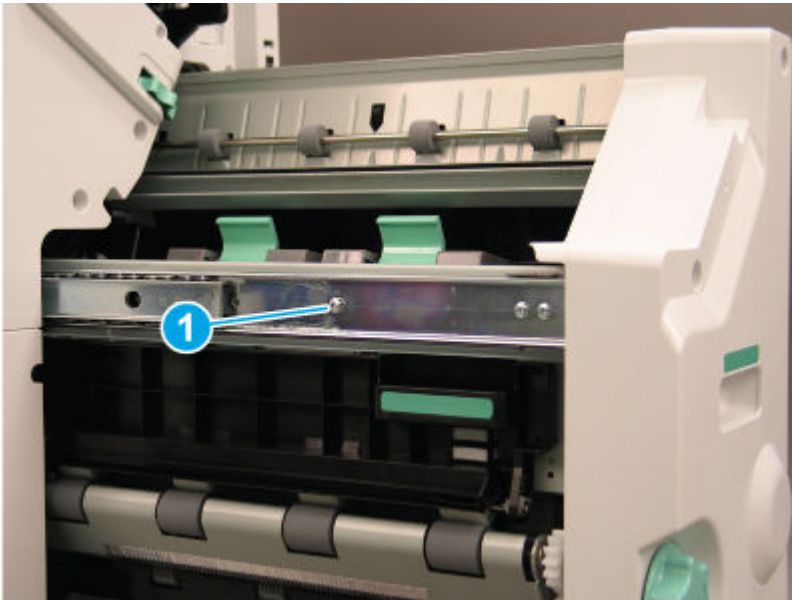
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2832 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2833 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


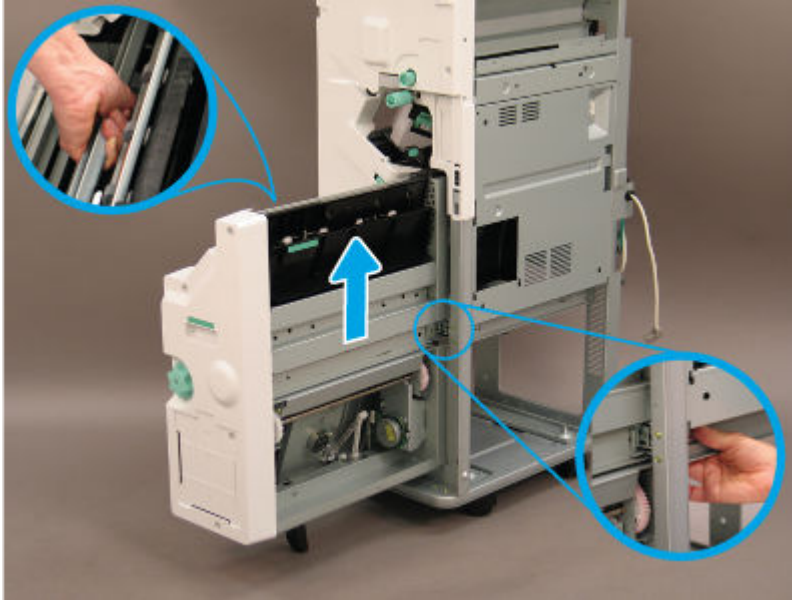
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2834 Remove the booklet maker

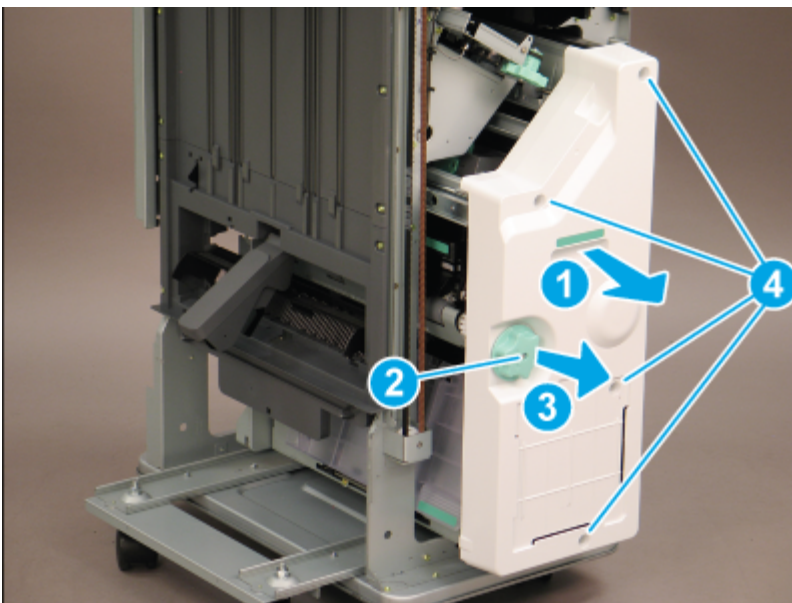


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2835 Remove the cover

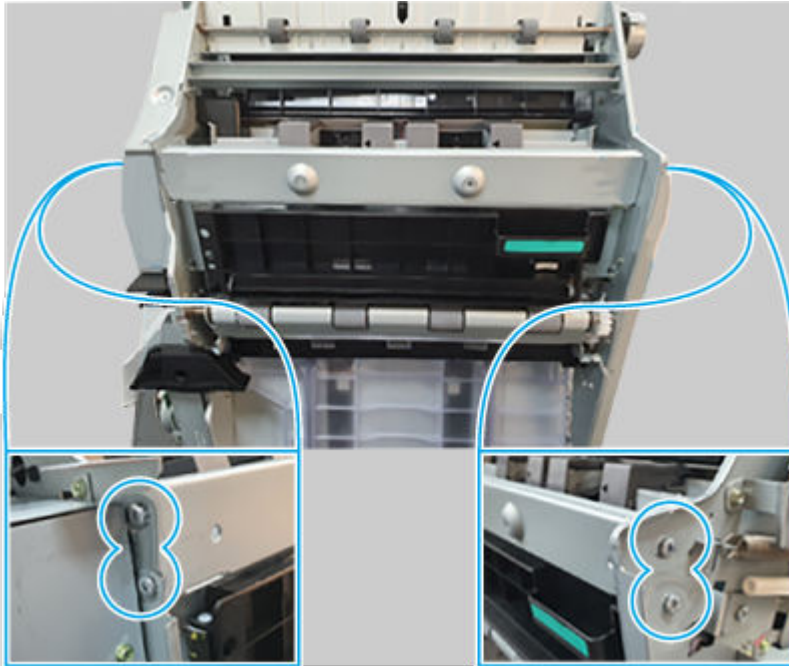


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet tamper sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher tamper sensor.

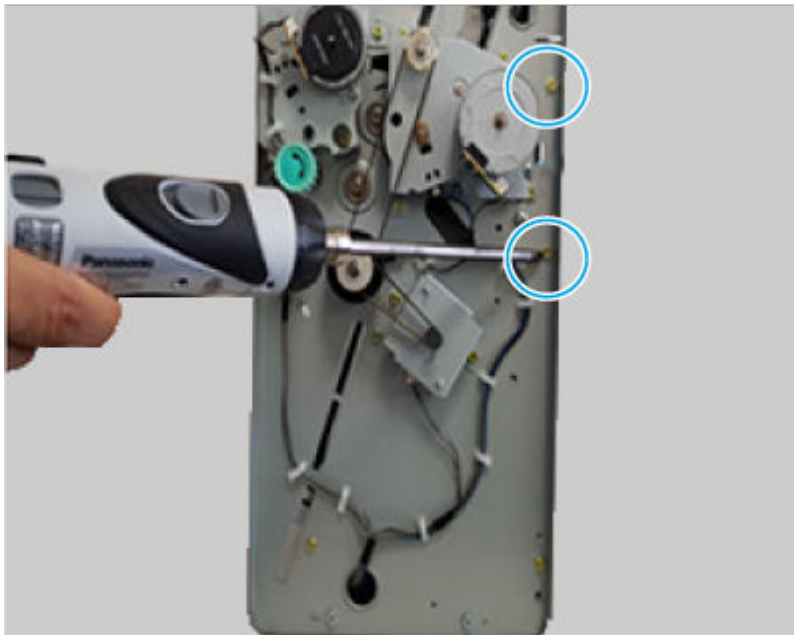
1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 6-2836 Remove four screws



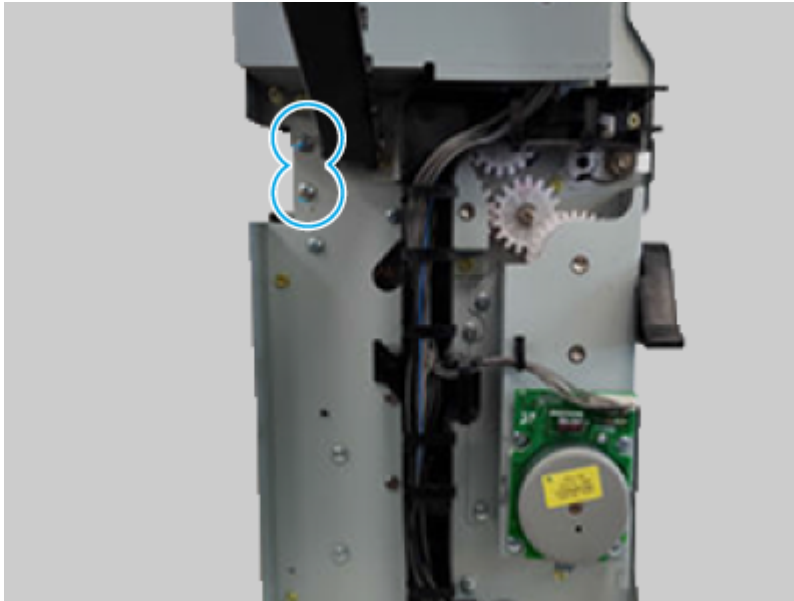
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2837 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2838 Remove two screws



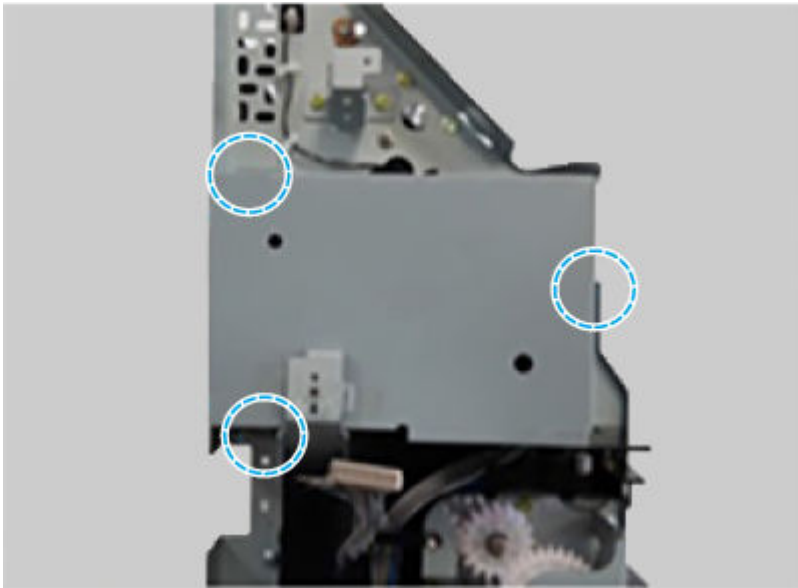
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2839 Remove two screws



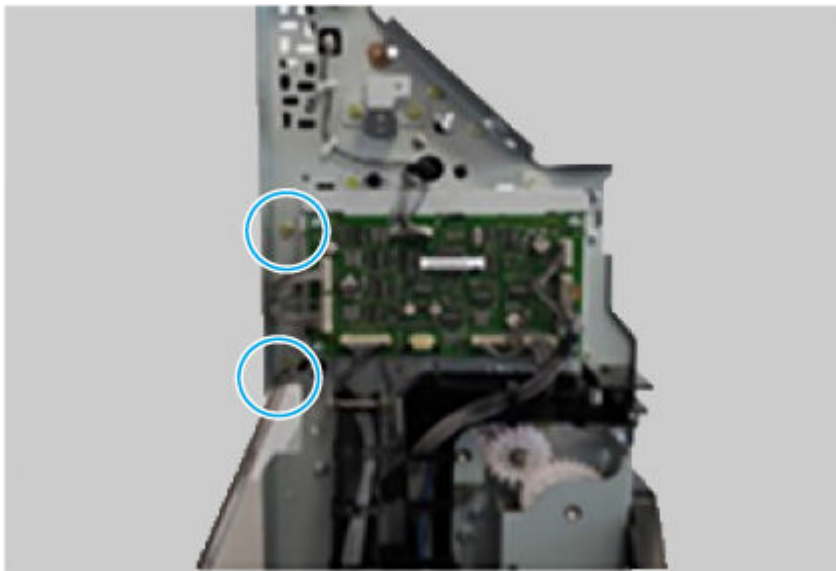
5. Remove three screws and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2840 Remove three screws



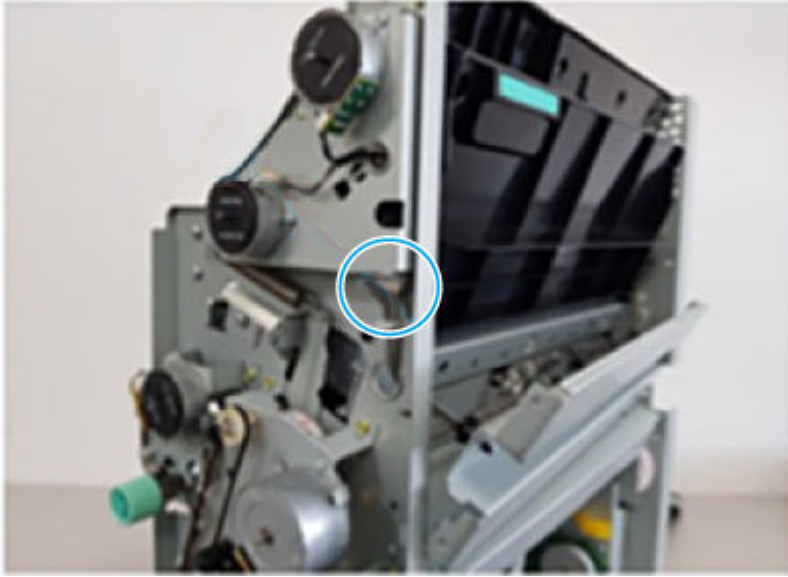
6. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2841 Remove two screws



7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2842 Disconnect one connector



8. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2843 Disconnect one connector



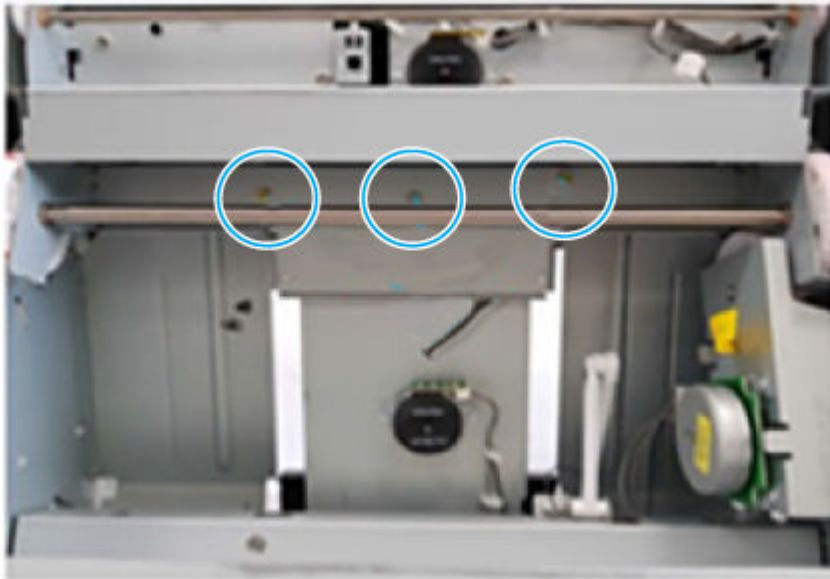
9. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2844 Remove two screws



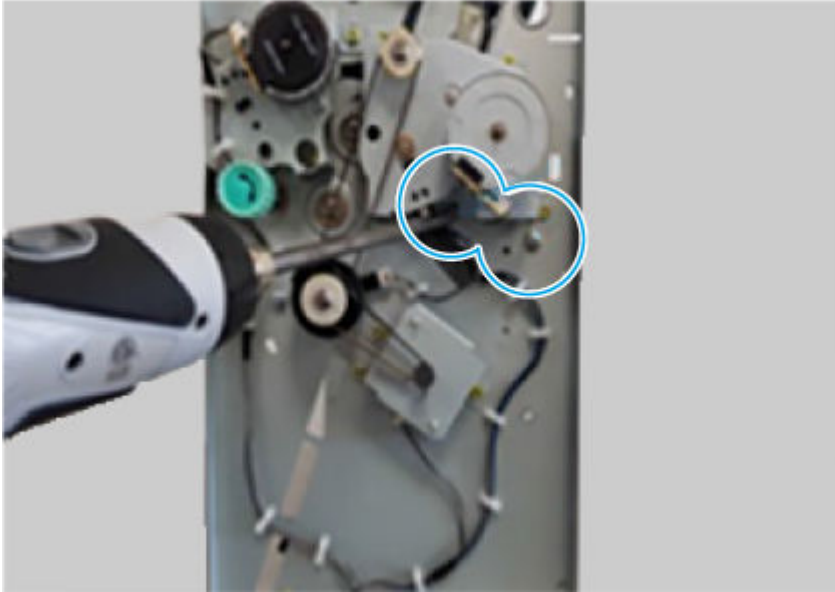
10. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2845 Remove three screws



11. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2846 Remove two screws



12. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2847 Remove two screws



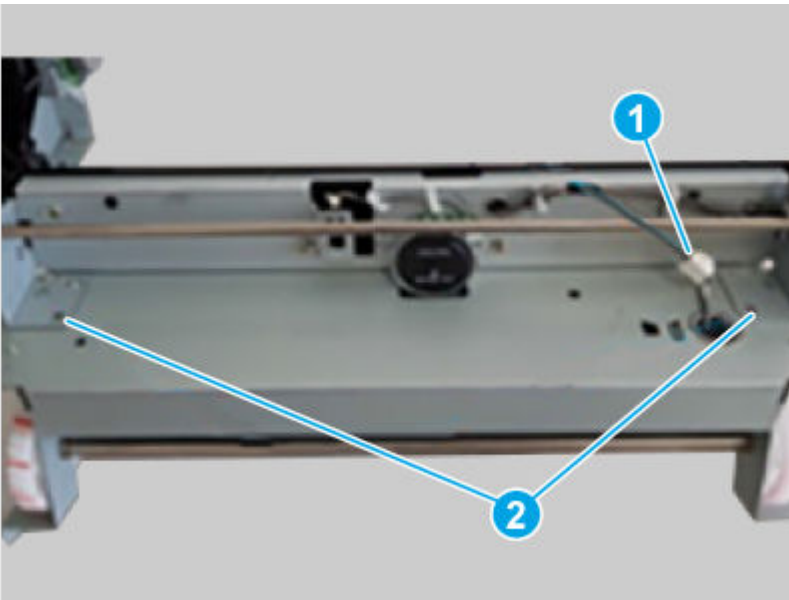
13. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2848 Disconnect one connector



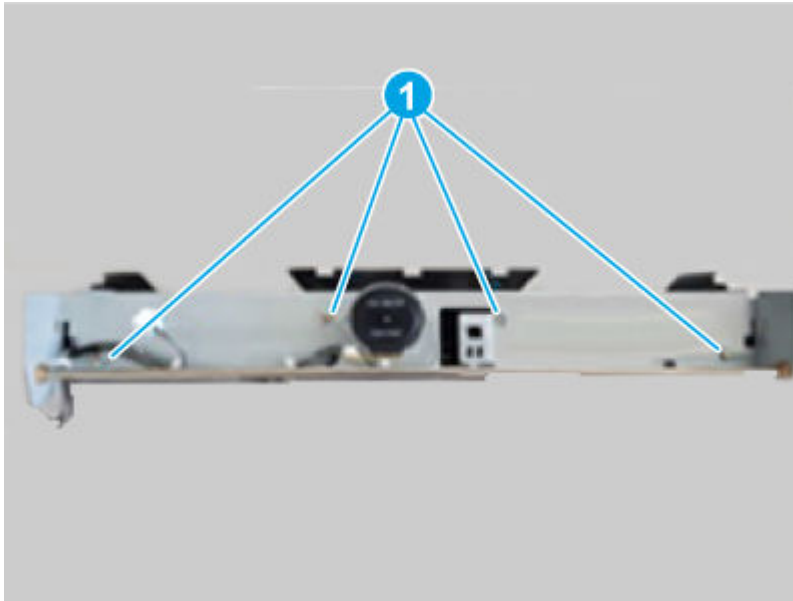
14. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2849 Disconnect connector and remove screws



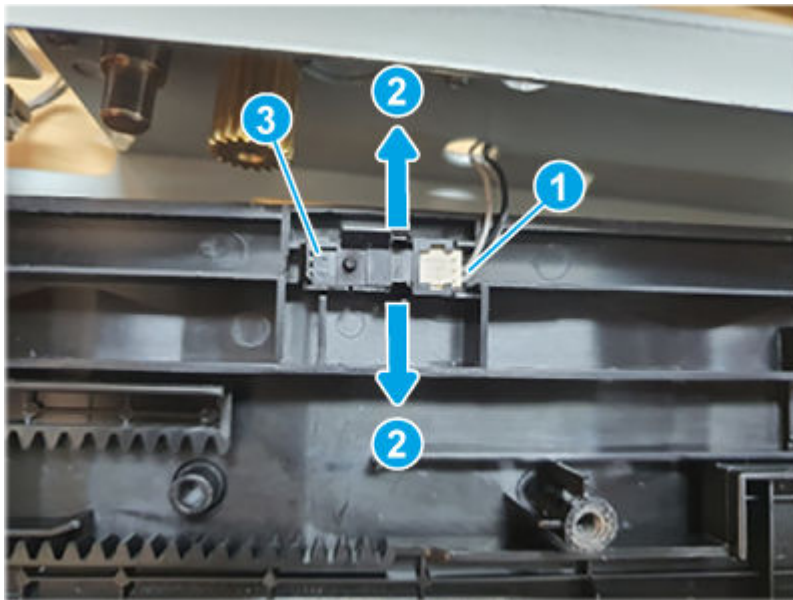
15. Remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2850 Remove the cover



16. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the booklet tamper sensor (callout 3).

Figure 6-2851 Remove the sensor



6 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

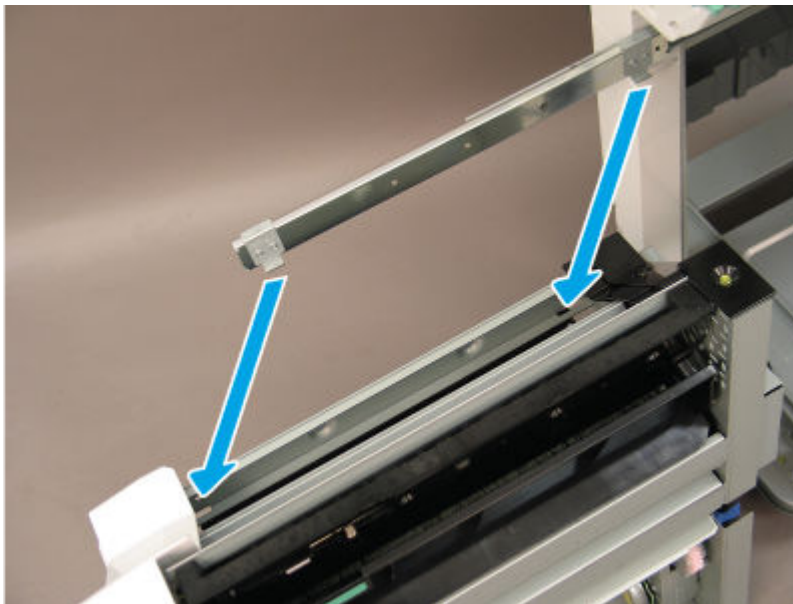
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

NOTE:  Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

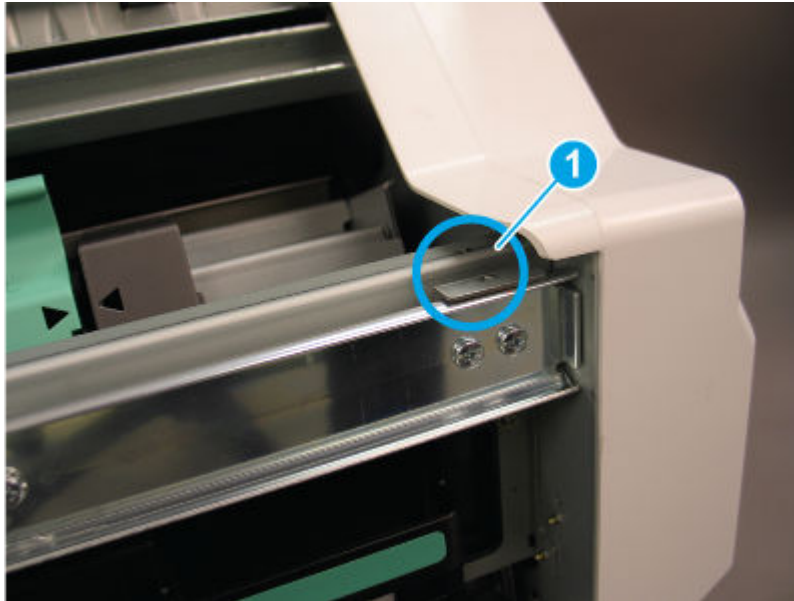
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2852 Position the hooks on the rail



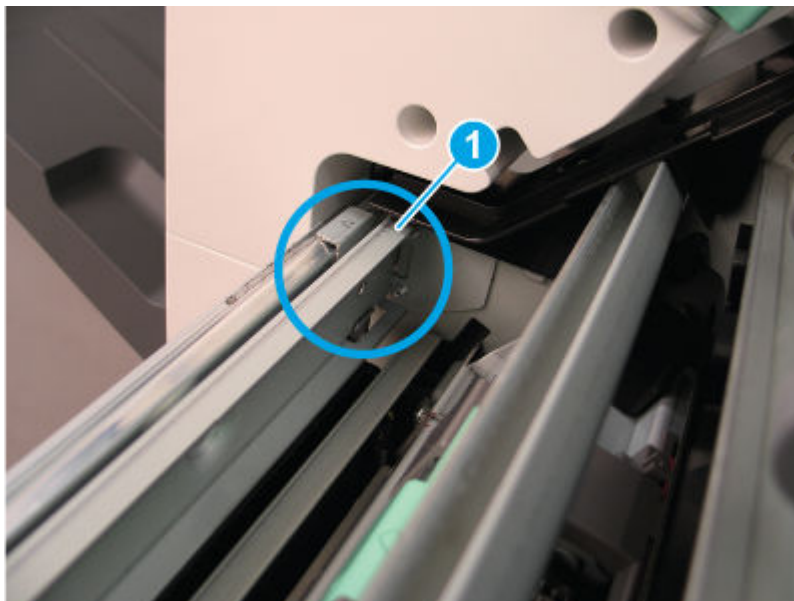
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2853 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2854 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2855 Attach the rail



Booklet stapler unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet stapler unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet stapler

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher stapler.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-350 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW51-40001	Booklet stapler

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

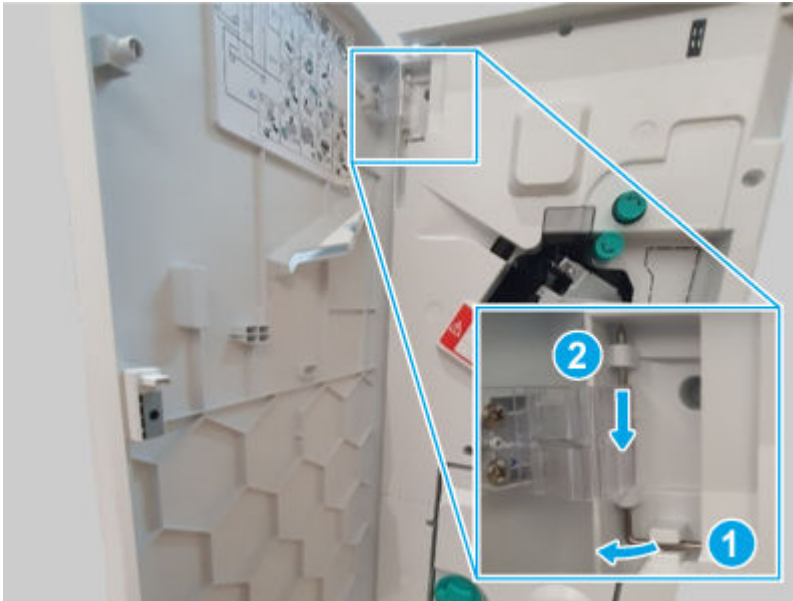
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

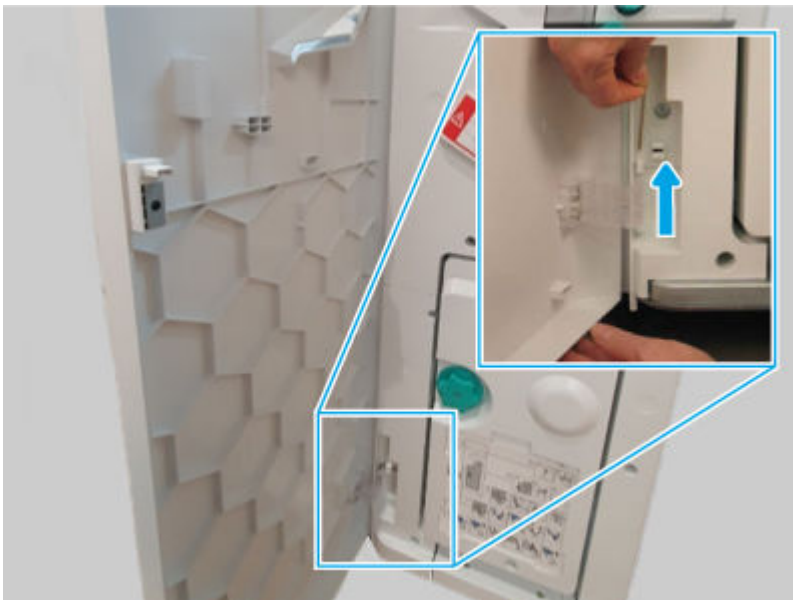
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2856 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2857 Remove the door

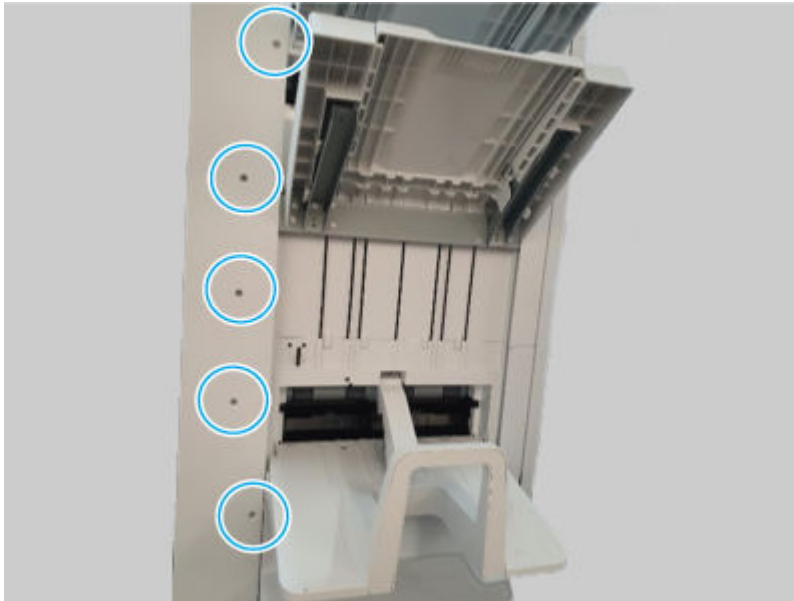


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2858 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


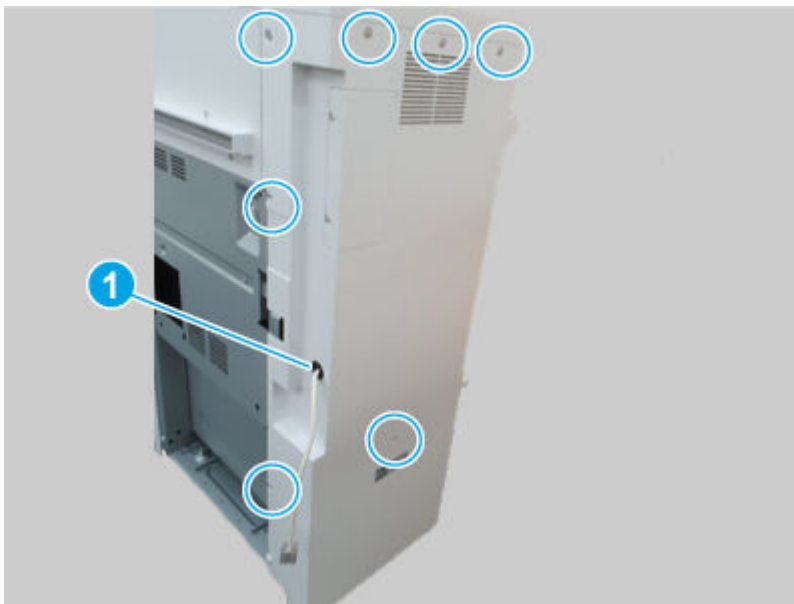
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2859 Remove the cover



3. **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2860 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2861 Remove the cover

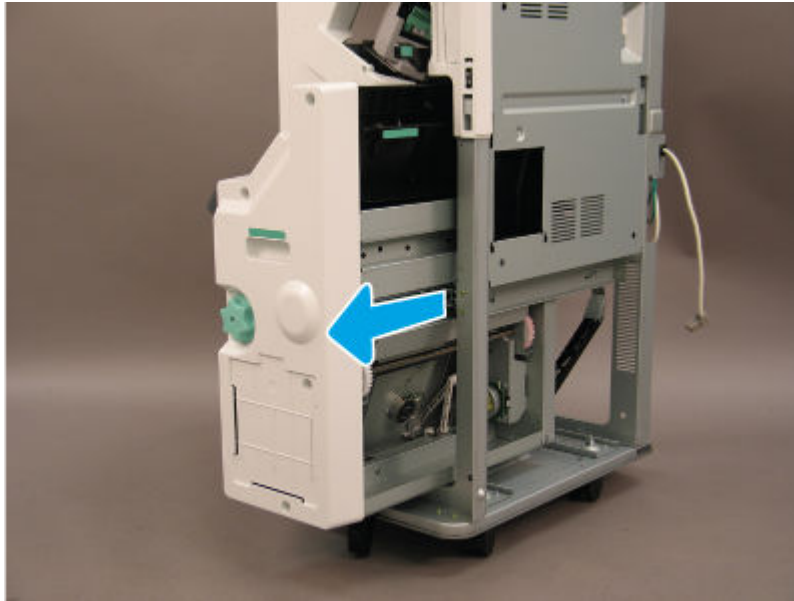


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

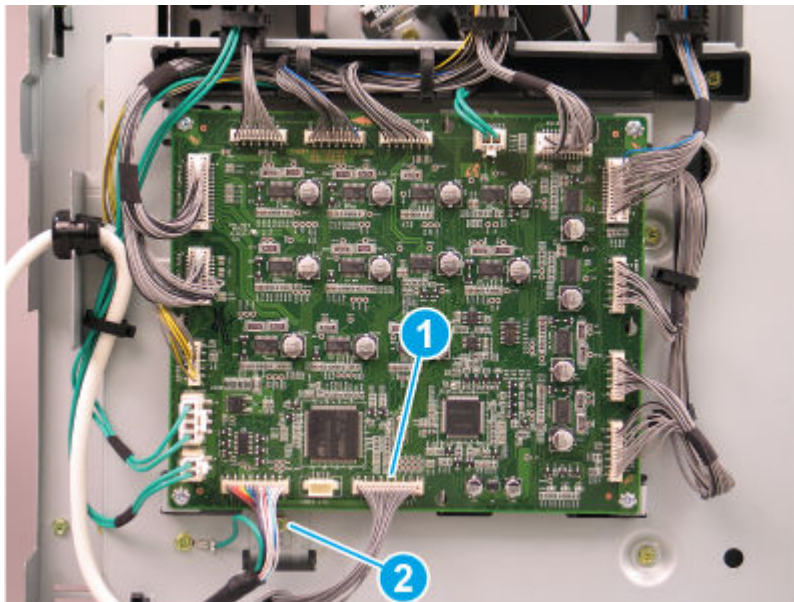
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2862 Slide the booklet maker out



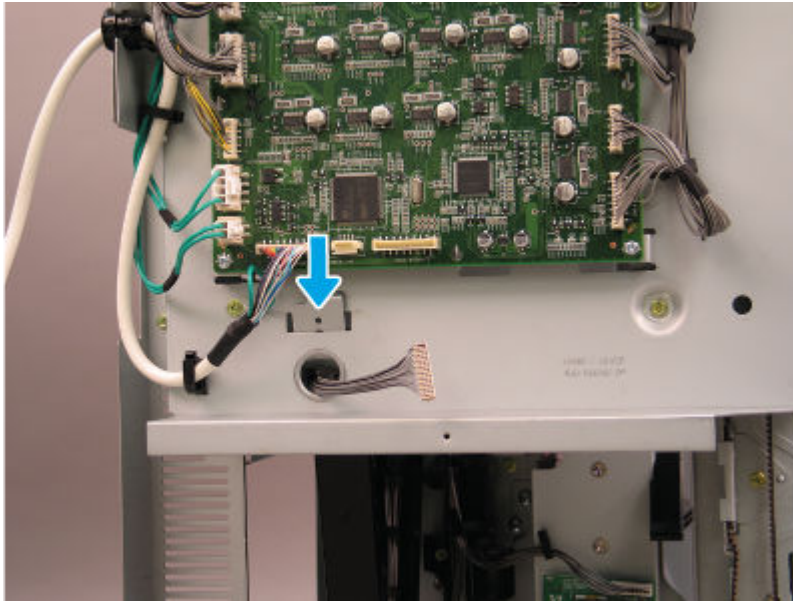
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2863 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



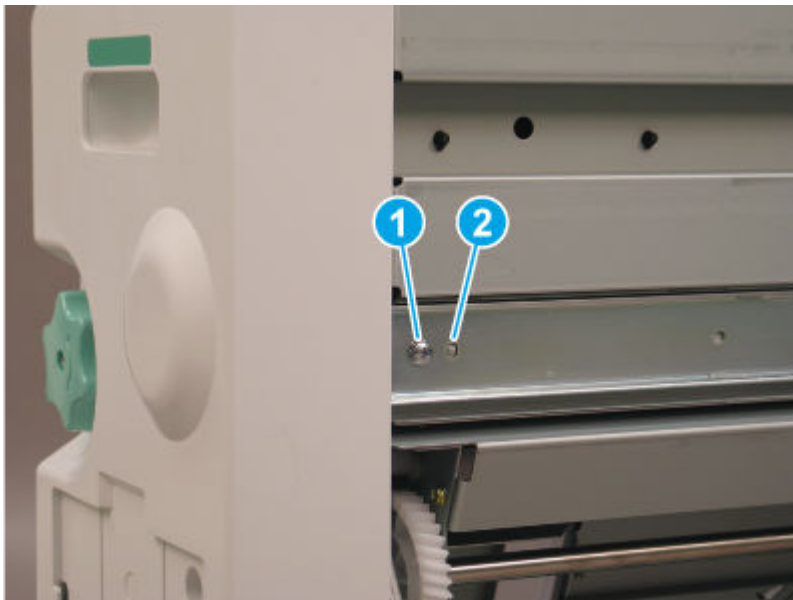
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2864 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2865 Release the alignment pin



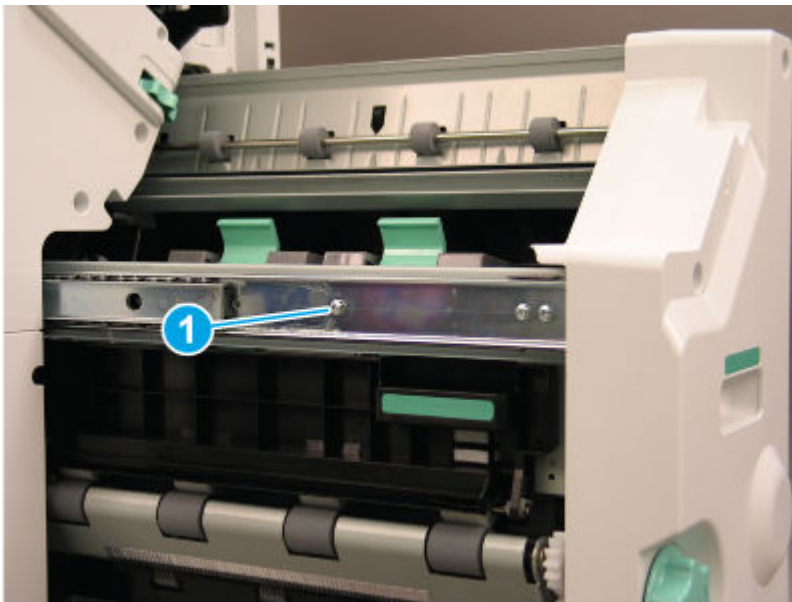
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2866 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2867 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


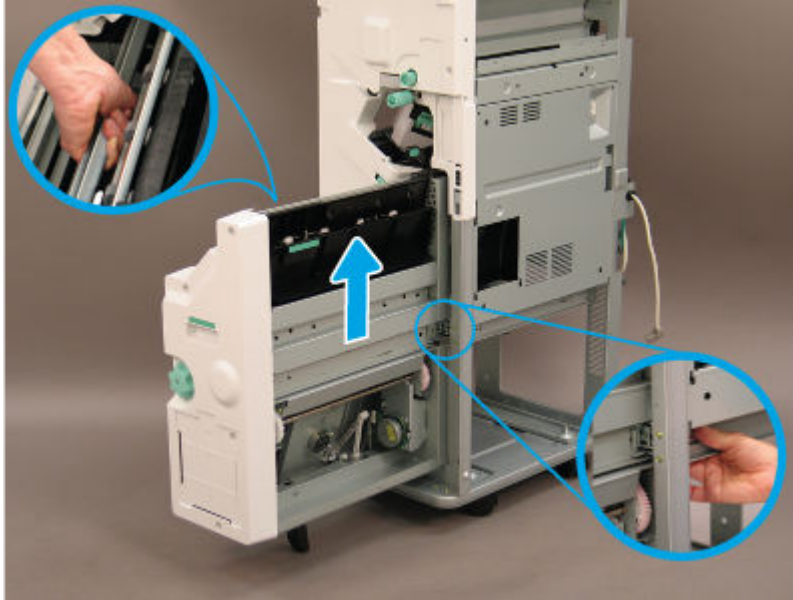
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2868 Remove the booklet maker

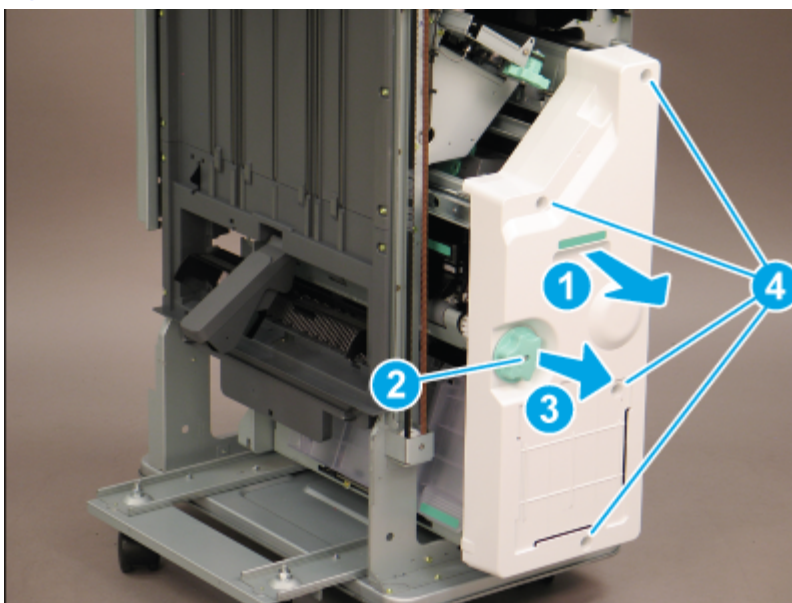


5 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2869 Remove the cover



6 Remove the booklet finisher booklet staple cartridge

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet staple cartridge.

1. Open the front door, and then pull the booklet maker out.
2. Remove the booklet staple cartridge.


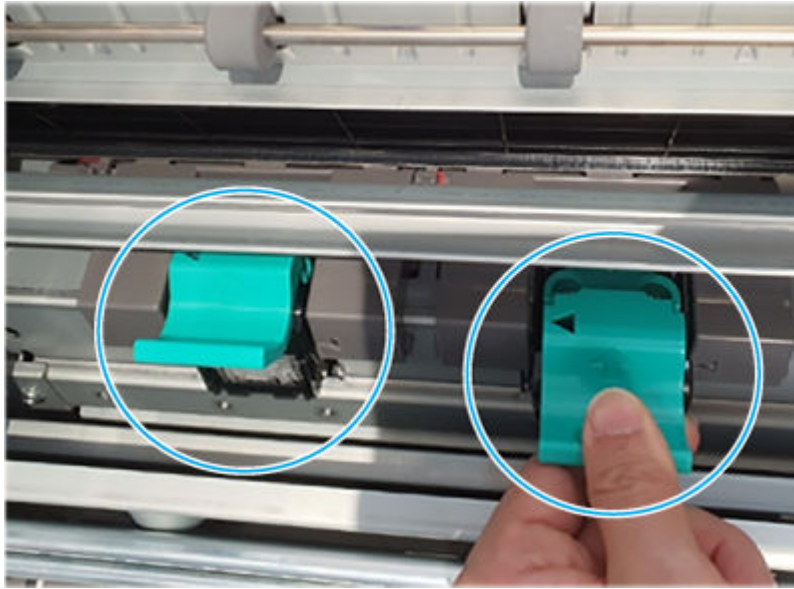
 **NOTE:** Repeat this step for the remaining cartridge.

Figure 6-2870 Remove the cartridge

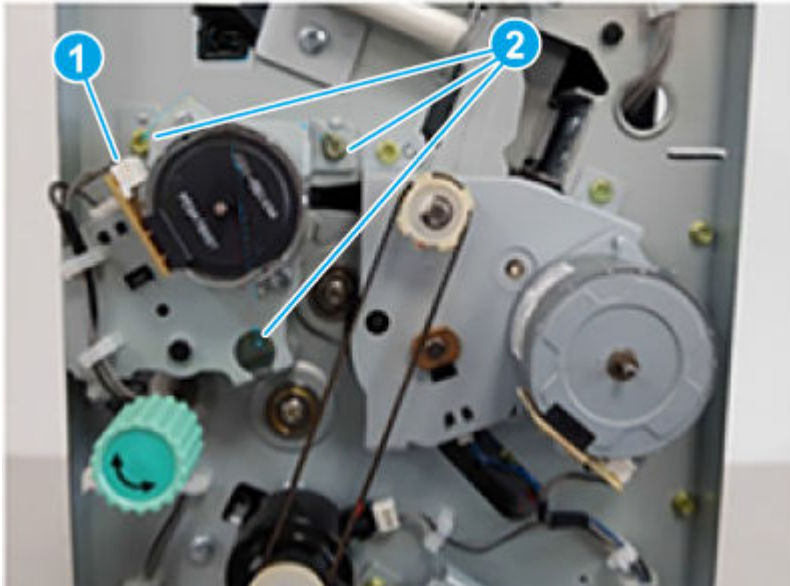


7 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor assembly.

Figure 6-2871 Remove the assembly

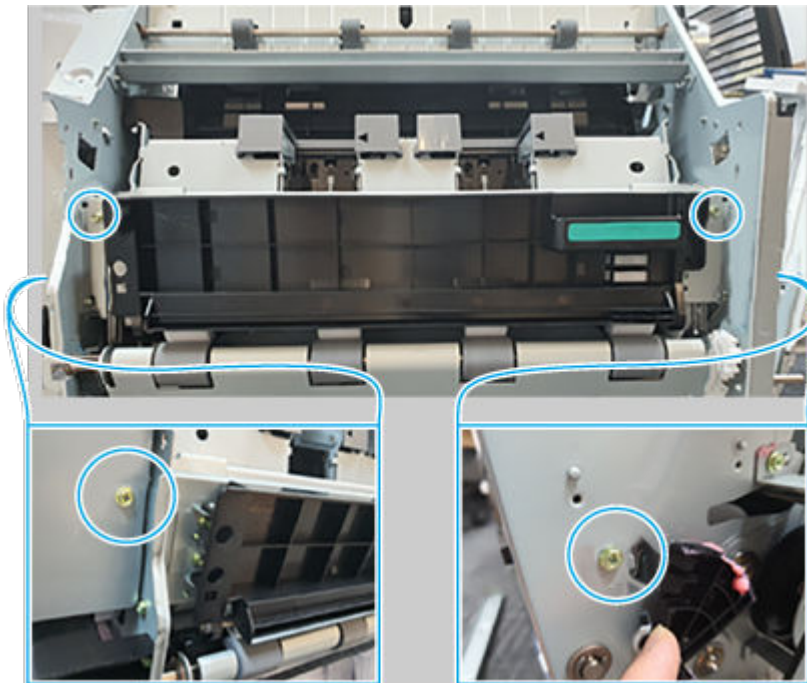


8 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade assembly.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the c-fold blade assembly.

Figure 6-2872 Remove the assembly



9 Remove the booklet finisher booklet tamper sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher tamper sensor.

1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.


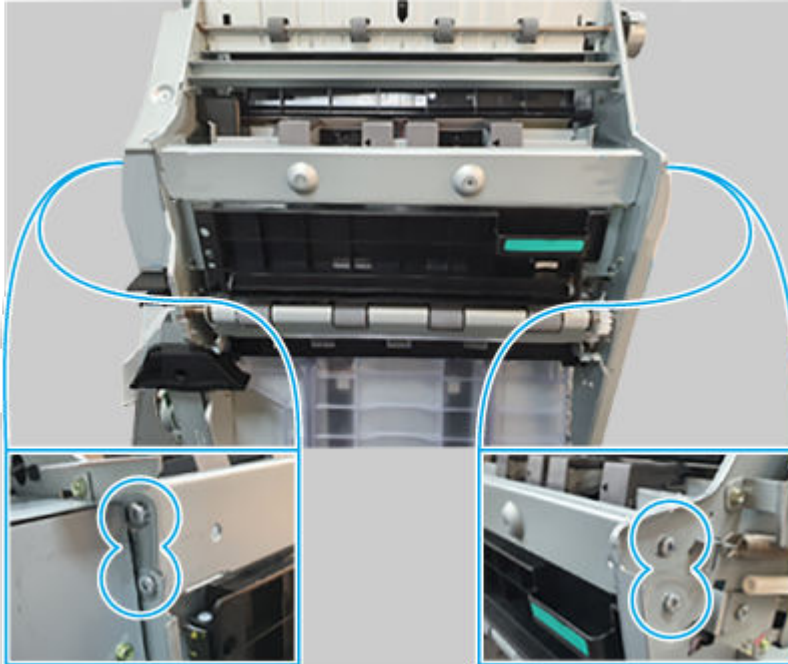
 **NOTE:** The c-fold blade assembly is shown installed in the figure below. However it was removed in the previous step.

Figure 6-2873 Remove four screws



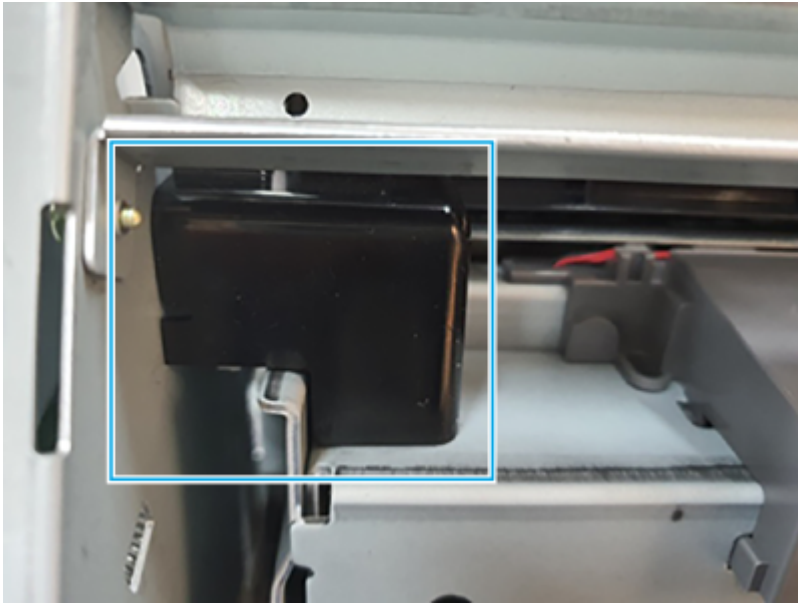
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-2874 Remove one screw



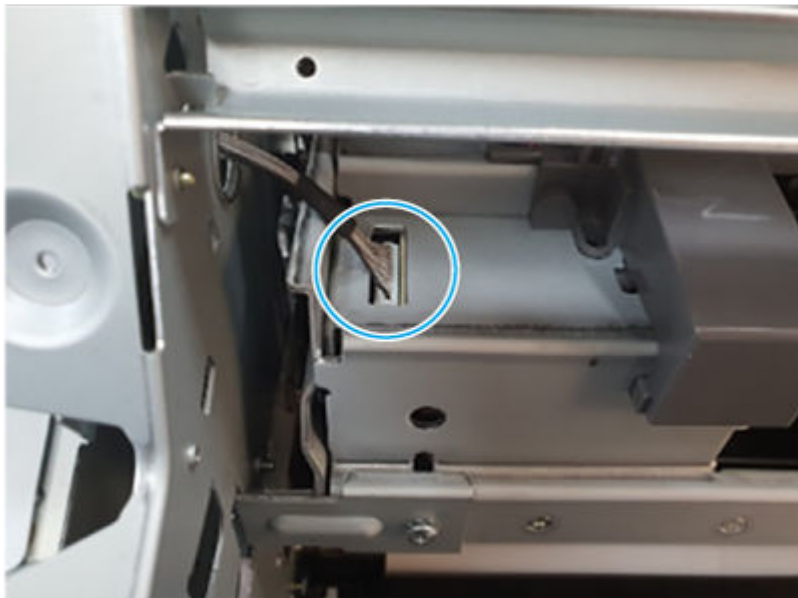
3. Remove the black-plastic cover.

Figure 6-2875 Remove the cover



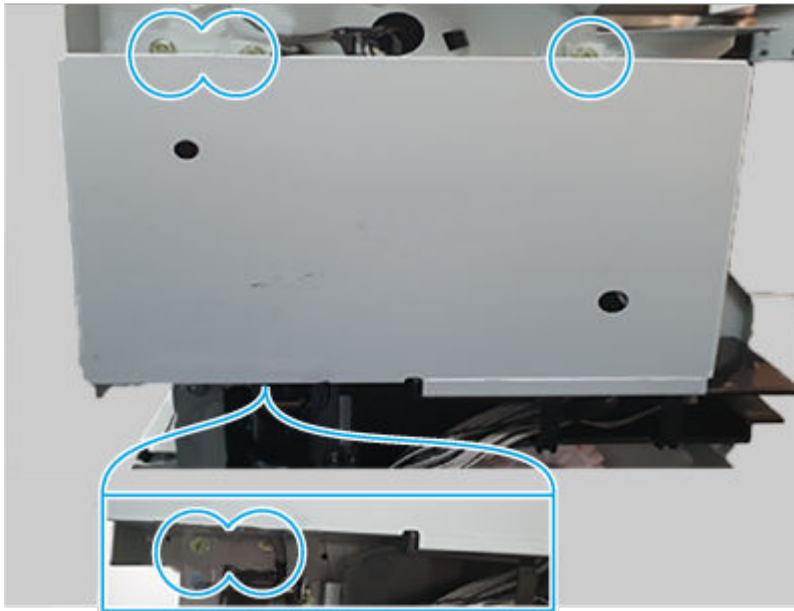
4. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2876 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2877 Remove five screws



6. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2878 Disconnect one connector



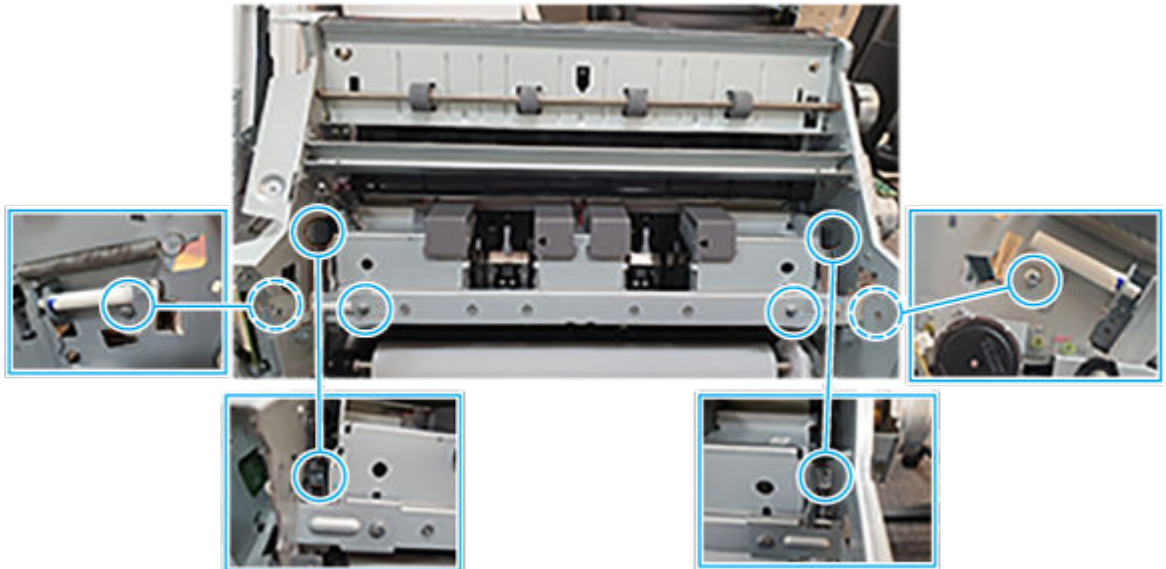
7. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2879 Disconnect two connectors



8. Remove six screws, and then remove the booklet stapler.

Figure 6-2880 Remove the stapler



10 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

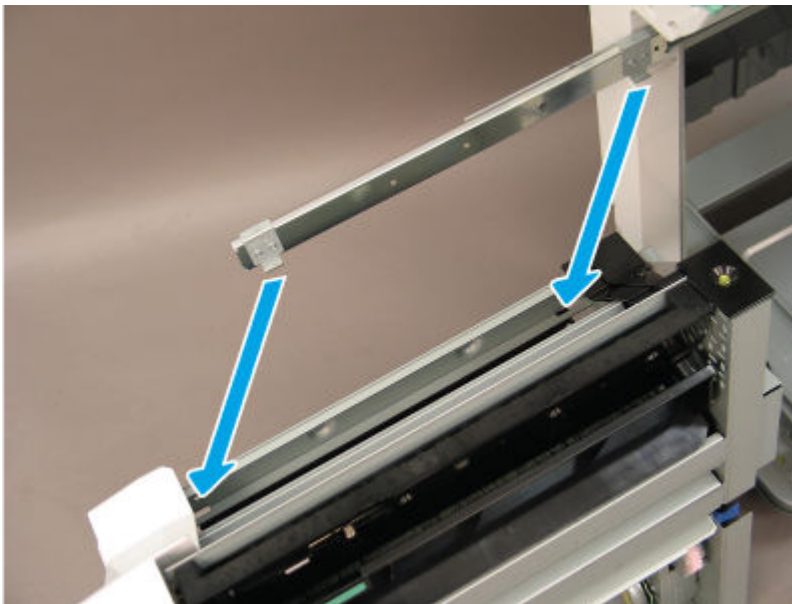
11 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

NOTE:  Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

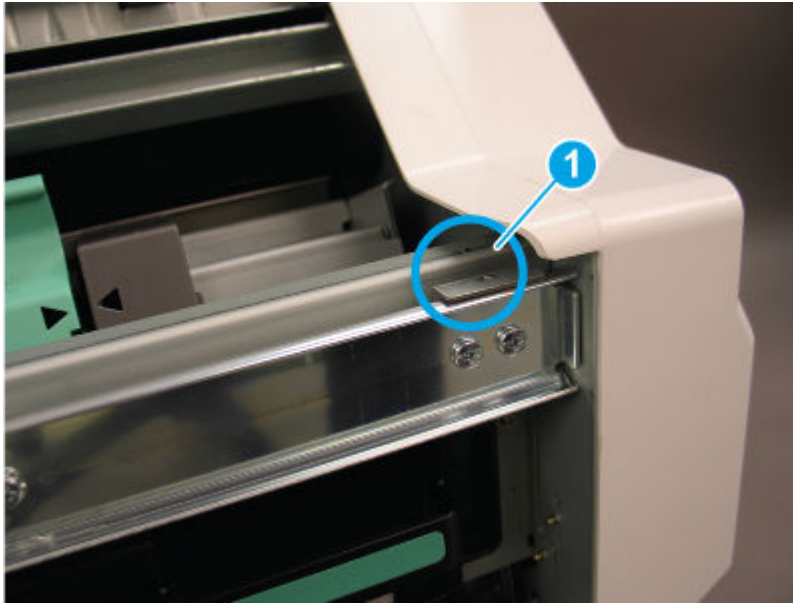
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2881 Position the hooks on the rail



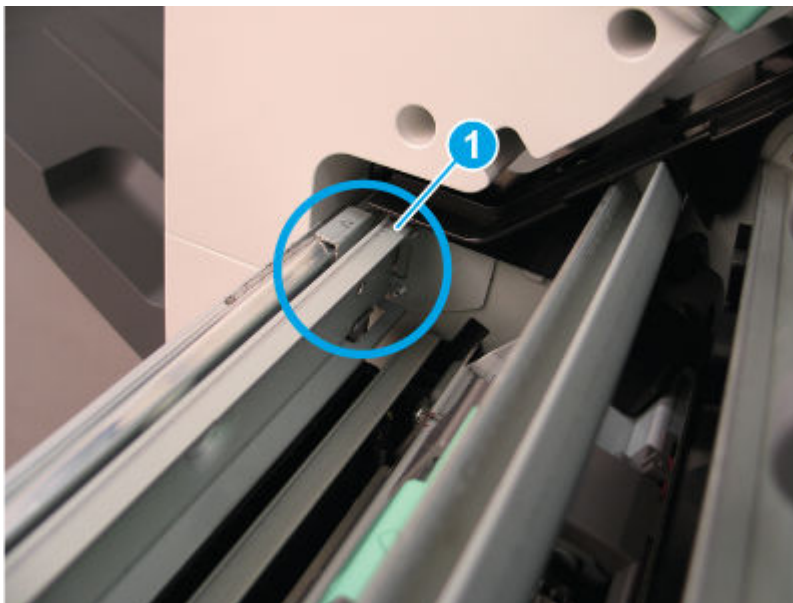
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2882 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2883 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2884 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet staple cartridge

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher staple cartridge.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-351 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC81-09881B	Booklet staple cartridge

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the booklet finisher booklet staple cartridge

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet staple cartridge.

1. Open the front door, and then pull the booklet maker out.
2. Remove the booklet staple cartridge.


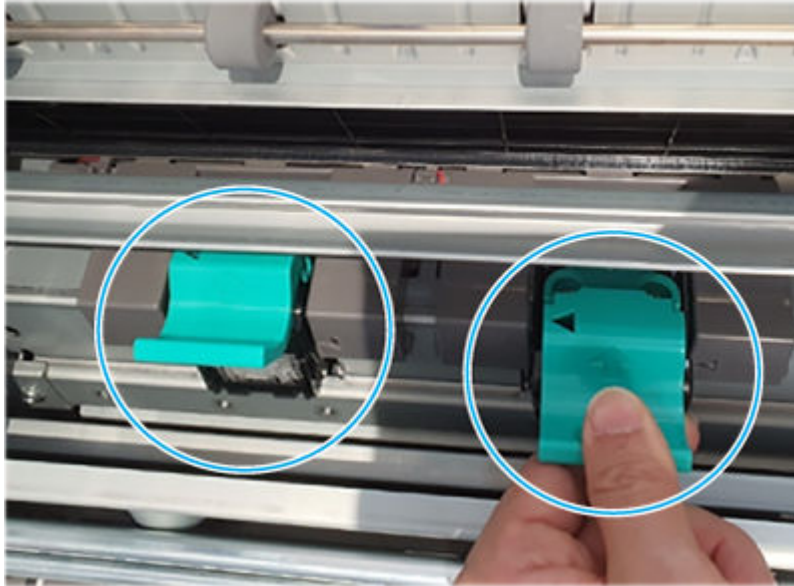
 **NOTE:** Repeat this step for the remaining cartridge.

Figure 6-2885 Remove the cartridge



2 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet fold unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet fold unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher c-fold blade assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-352 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01438A	Booklet c-fold blade assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

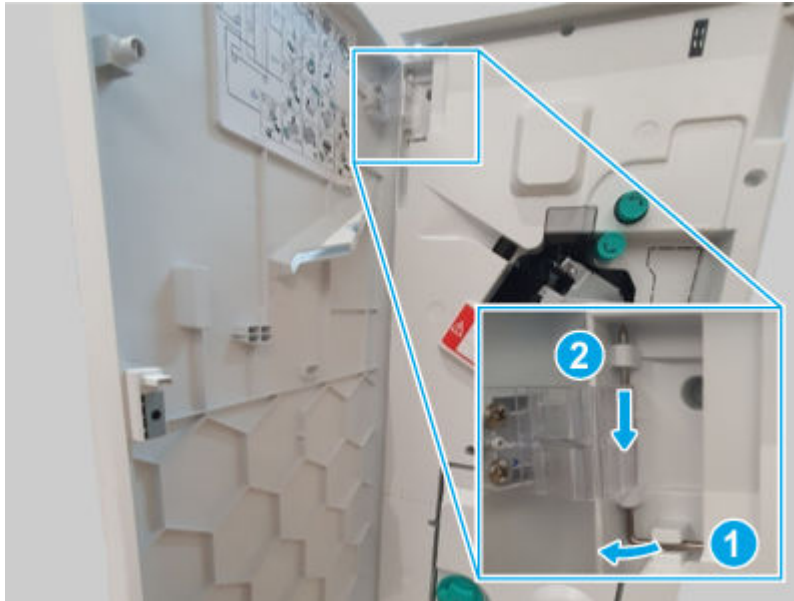
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

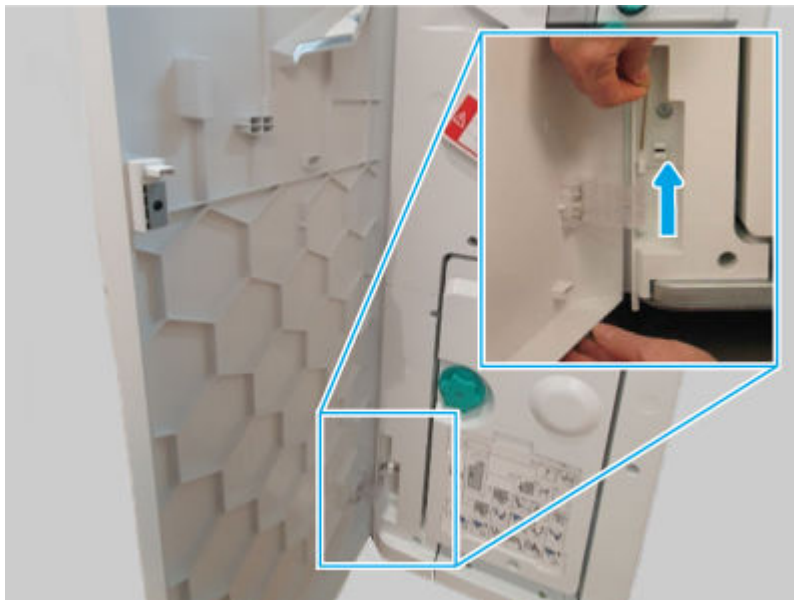
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2886 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2887 Remove the door

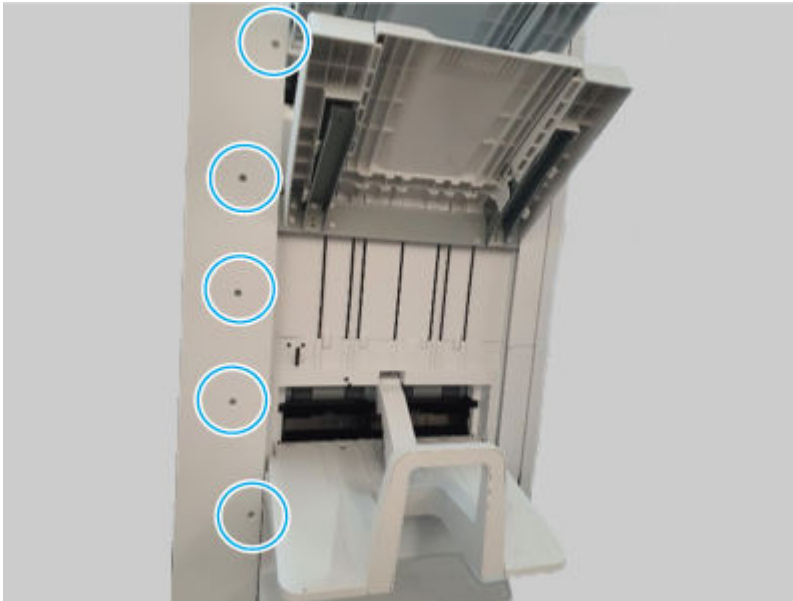


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2888 Remove five screws

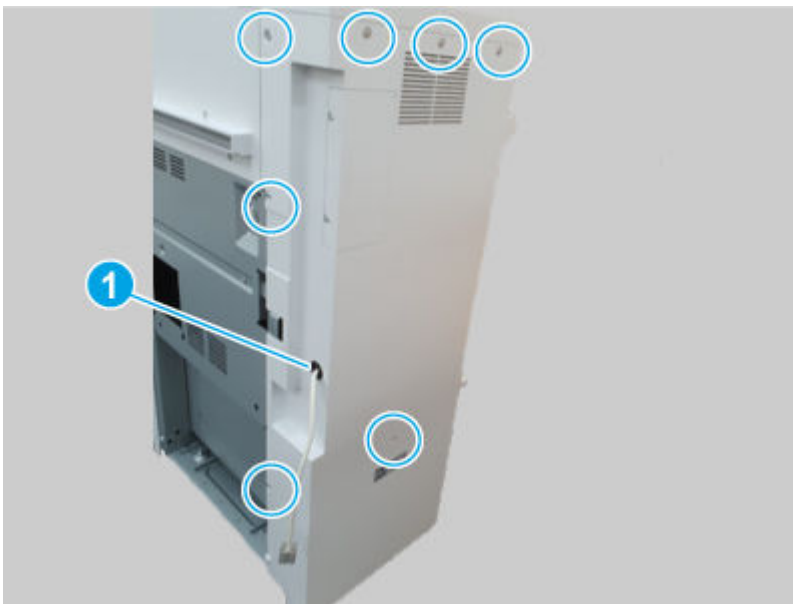


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2889 Remove the cover



- 3 **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

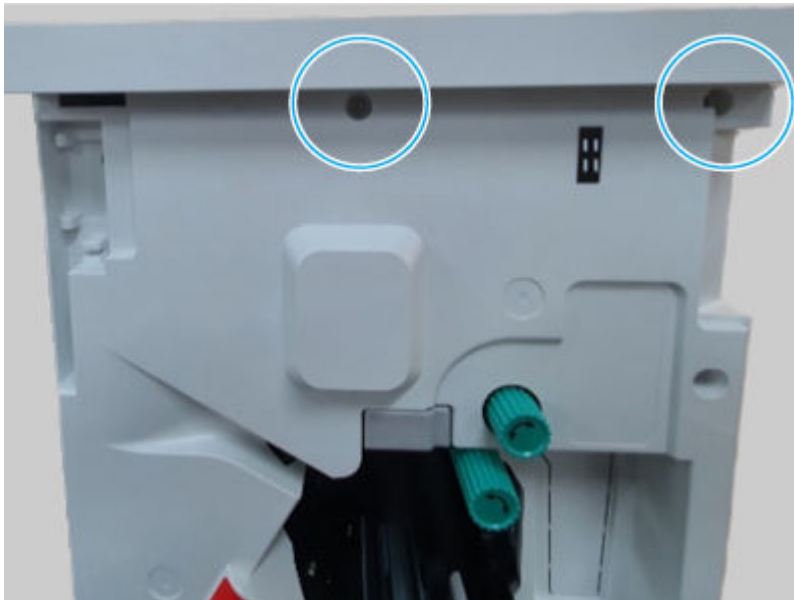
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2890 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2891 Remove the cover

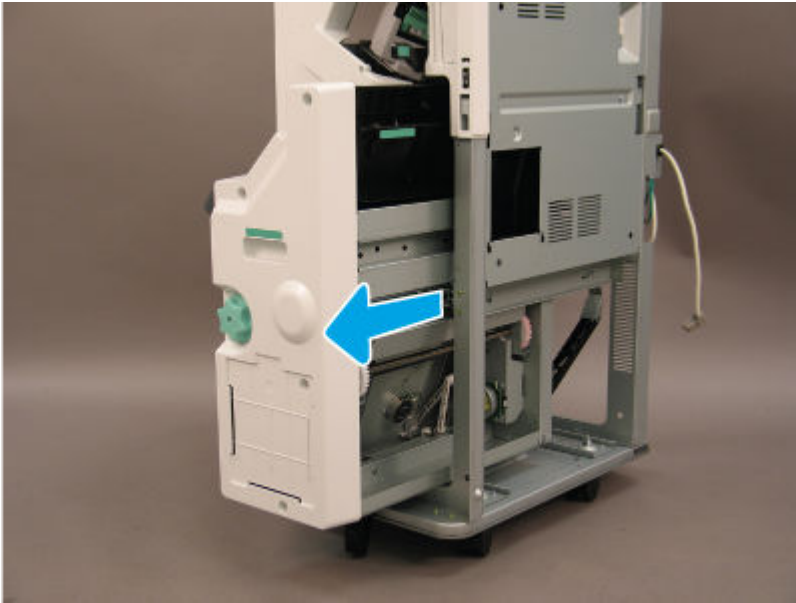


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

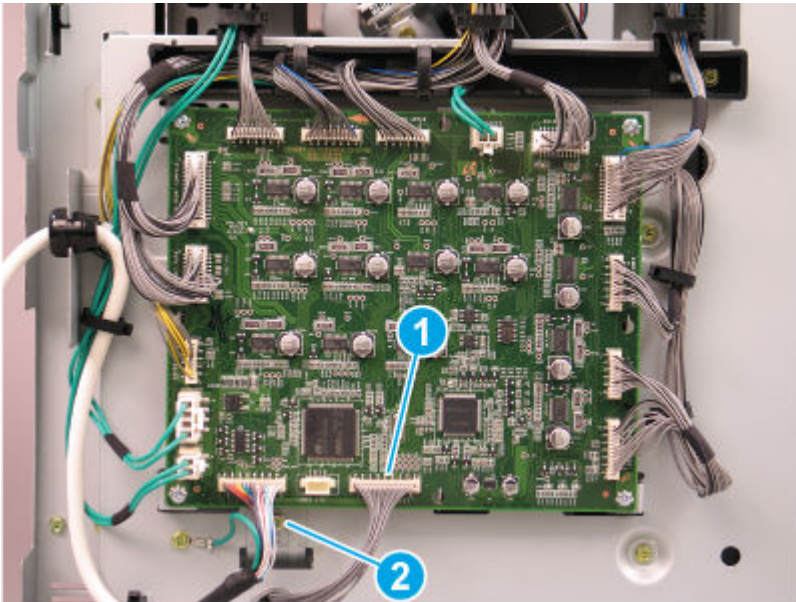
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2892 Slide the booklet maker out



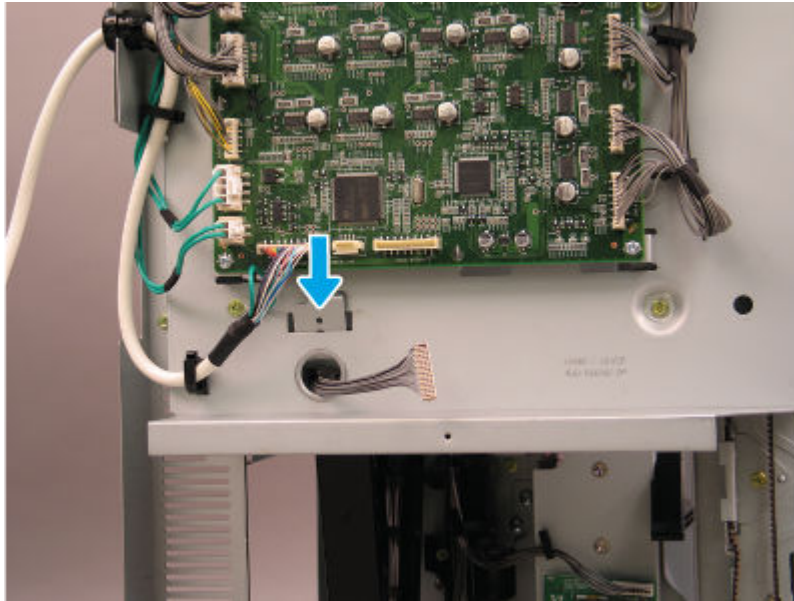
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2893 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



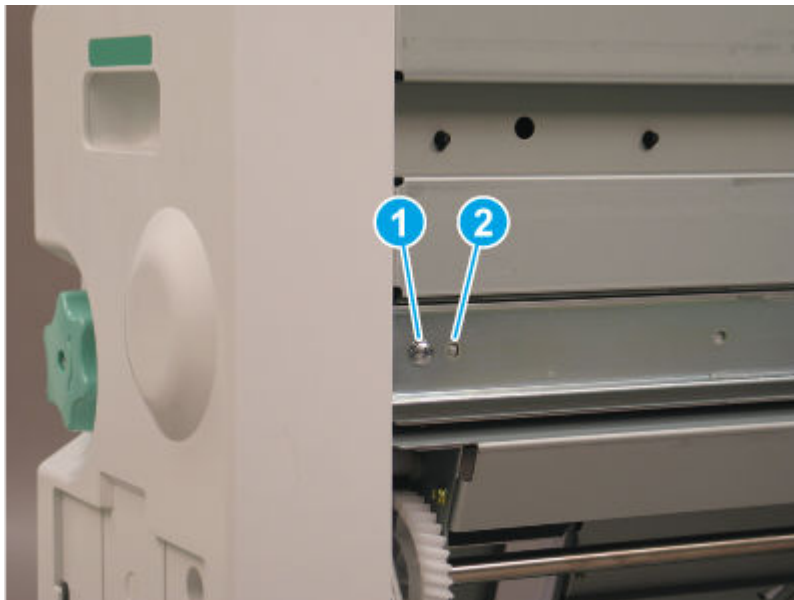
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2894 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2895 Release the alignment pin



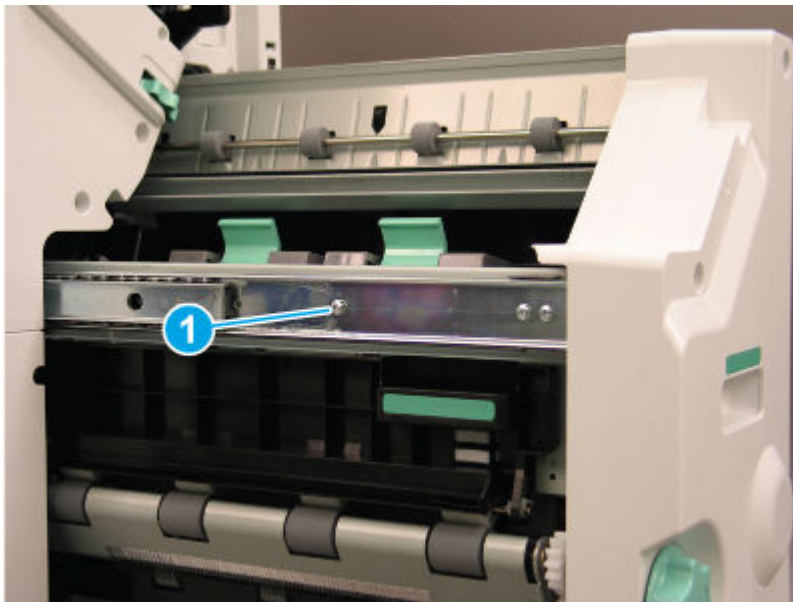
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2896 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2897 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


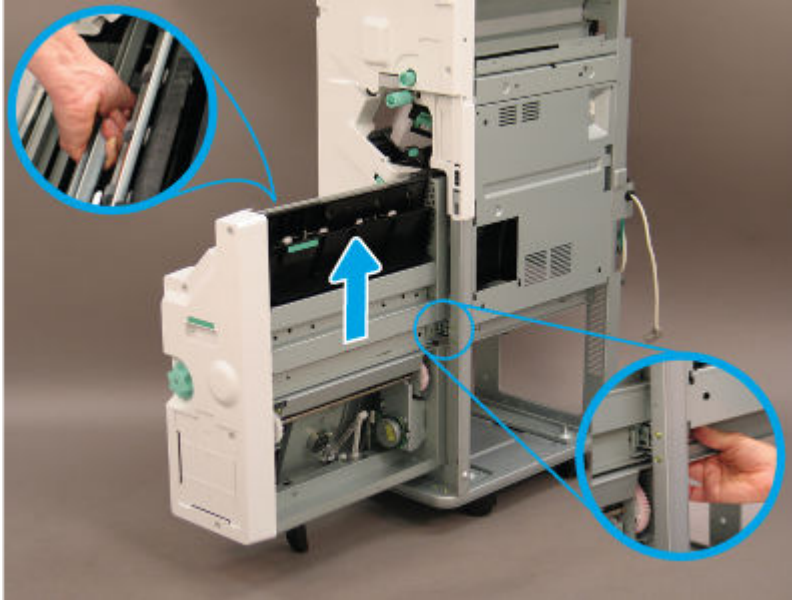
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2898 Remove the booklet maker

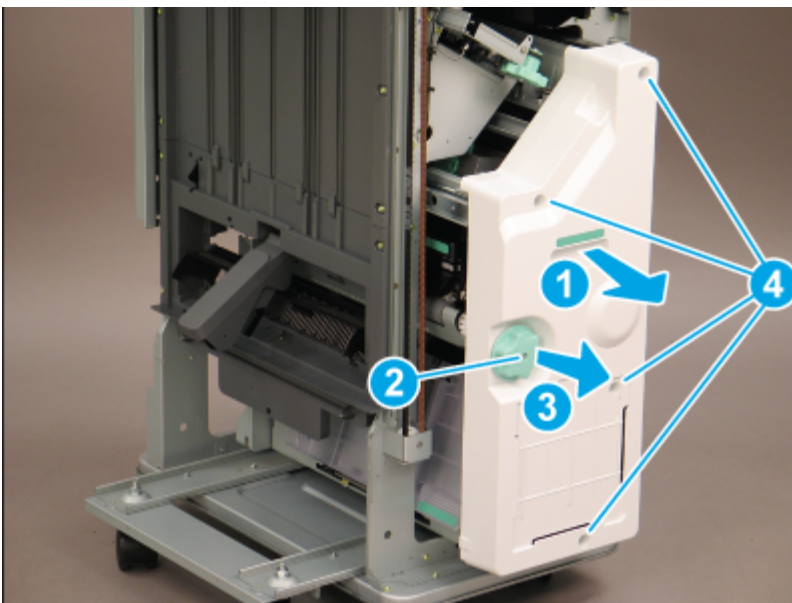


5 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2899 Remove the cover

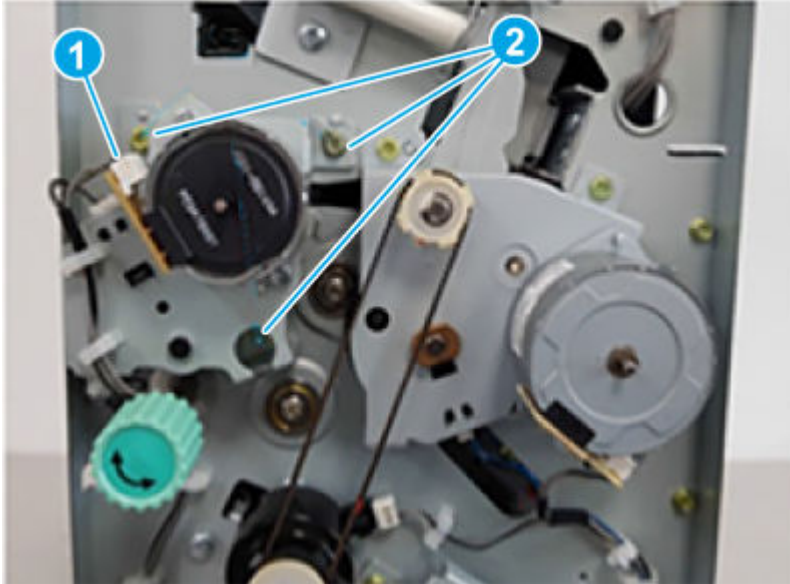


6 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor assembly.

Figure 6-2900 Remove the assembly

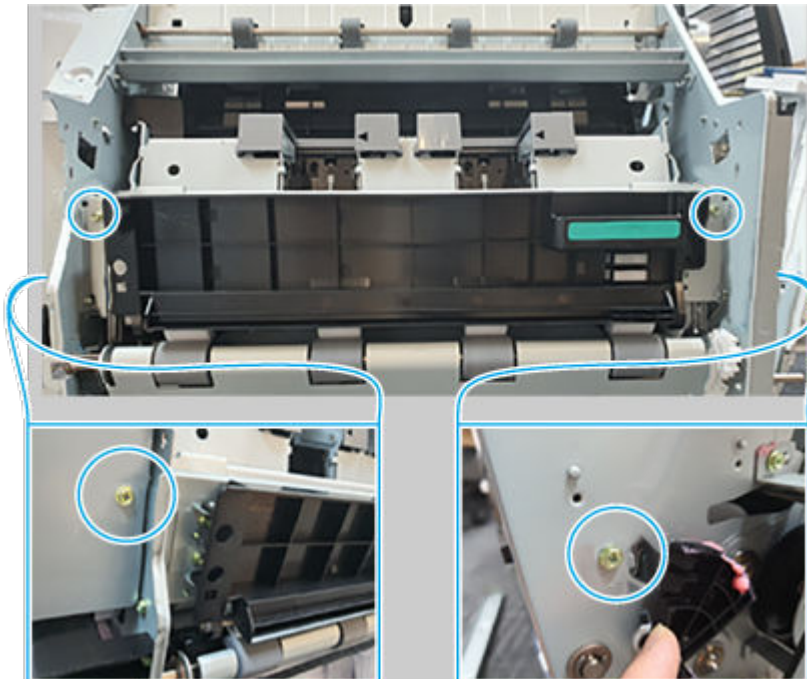


7 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade assembly.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the c-fold blade assembly.

Figure 6-2901 Remove the assembly



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

9 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

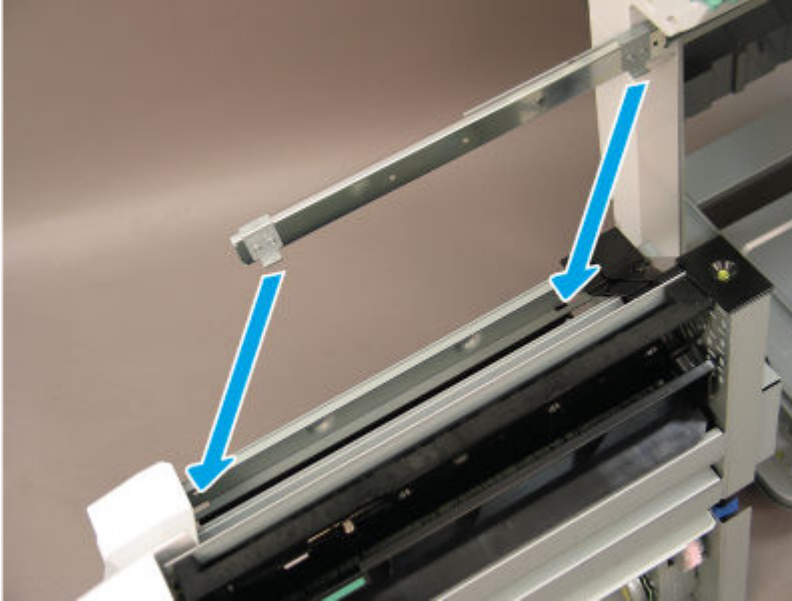
Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.



NOTE: Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2902 Position the hooks on the rail



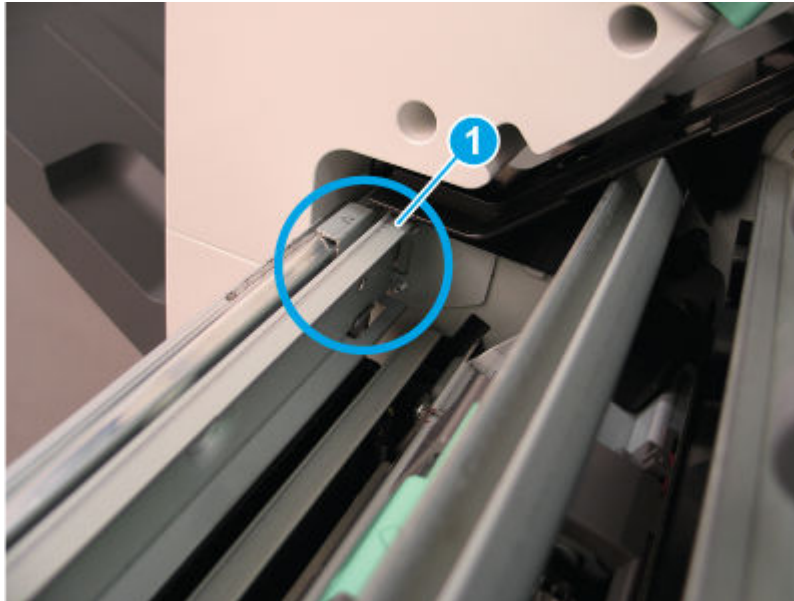
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2903 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2904 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2905 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher c-fold blade home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-353 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet c-fold blade home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

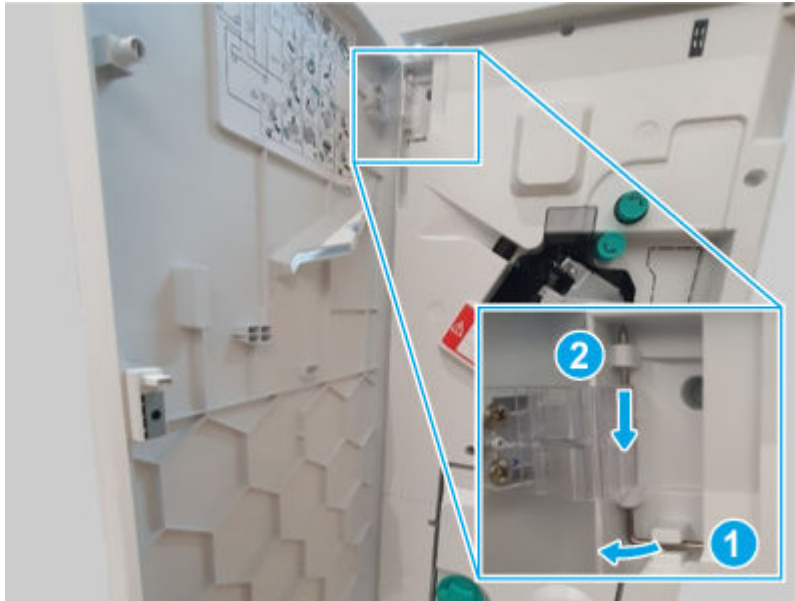
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

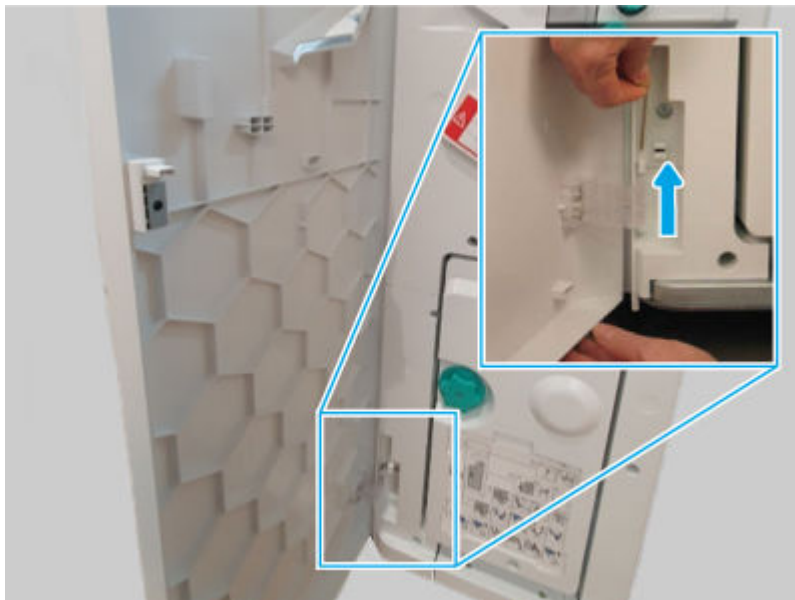
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2906 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2907 Remove the door



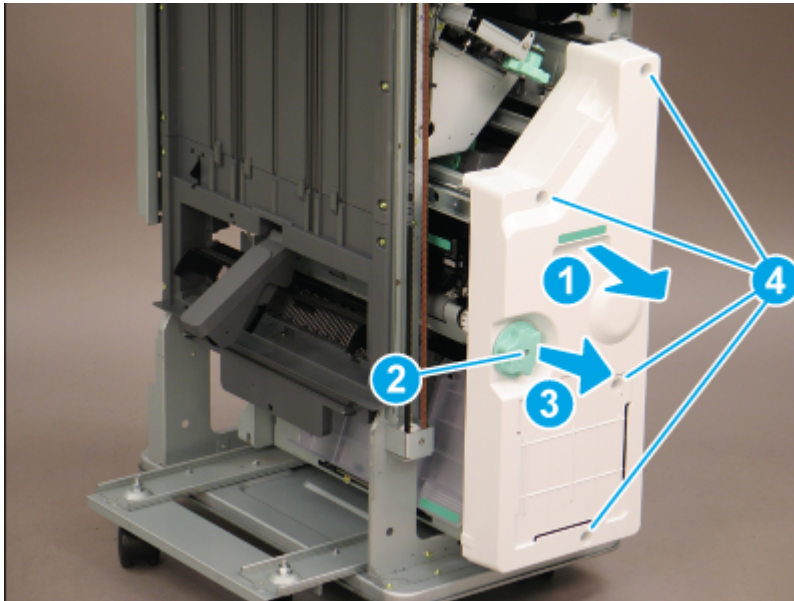
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2908 Remove the cover

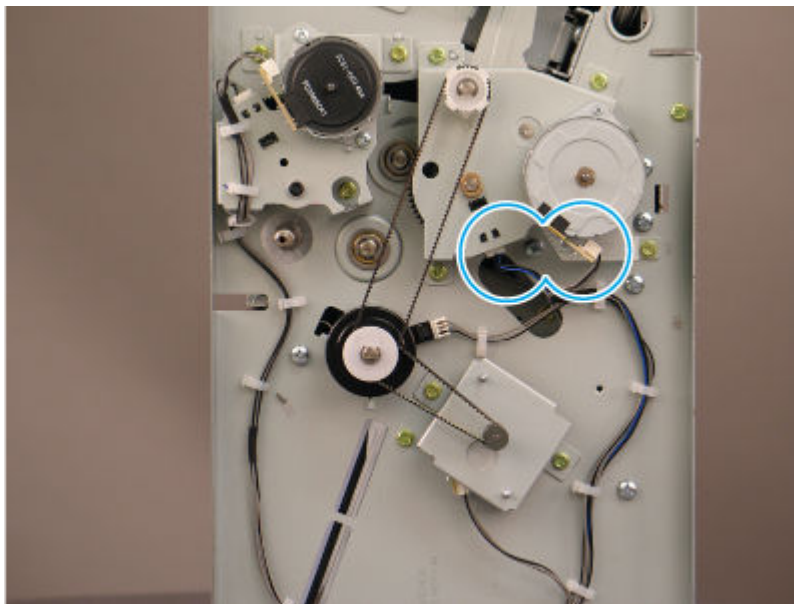


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor assembly.

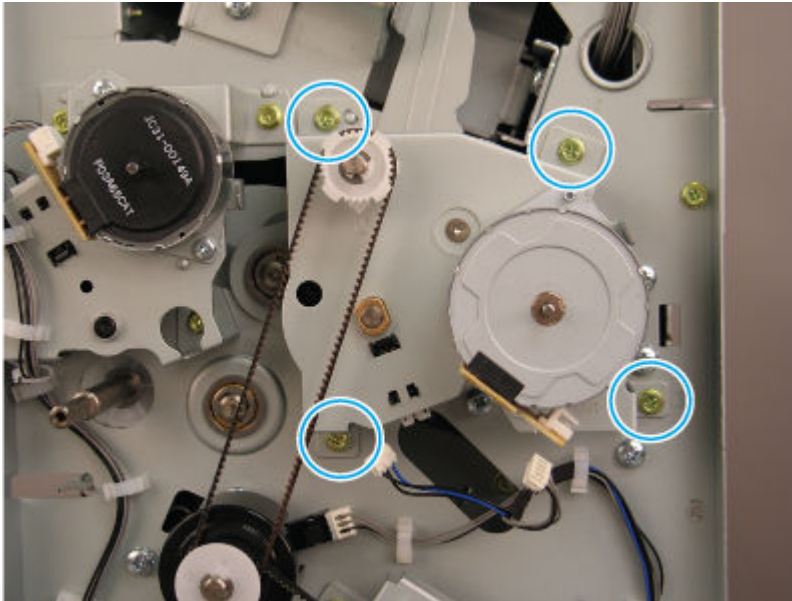
1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2909 Disconnect two connectors



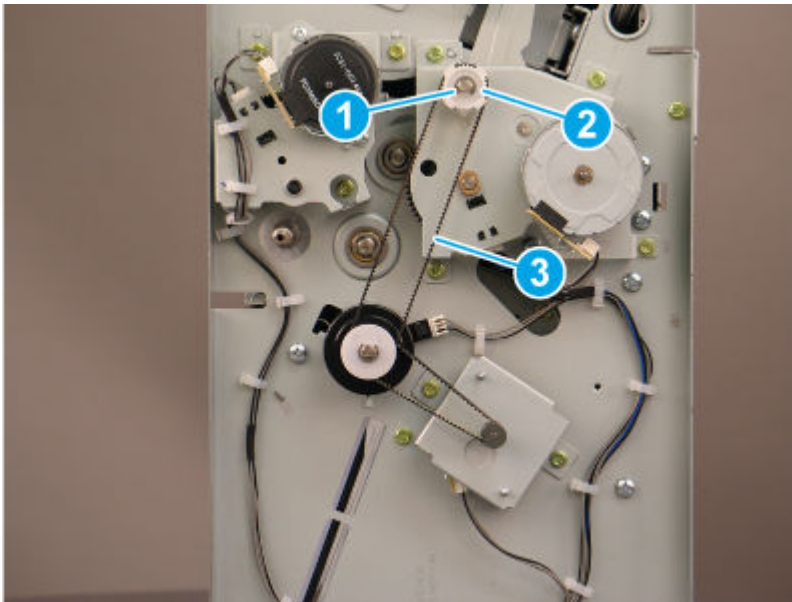
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2910 Remove four screws



3. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), remove the gear (callout 2), and then release the belt (callout 3).

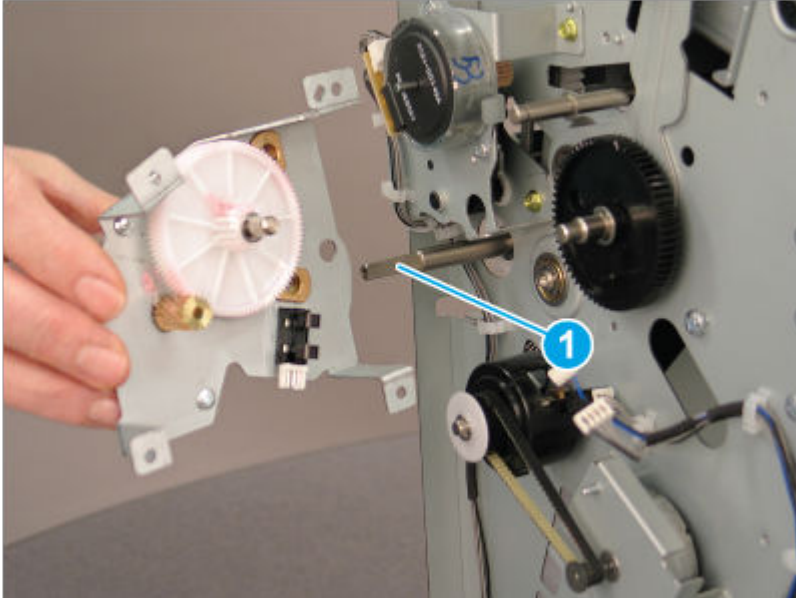
Figure 6-2911 Release the belt



4. Remove the booklet c-fold blade motor assembly.

CAUTION: Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet finisher PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.

Figure 6-2912 Remove the assembly

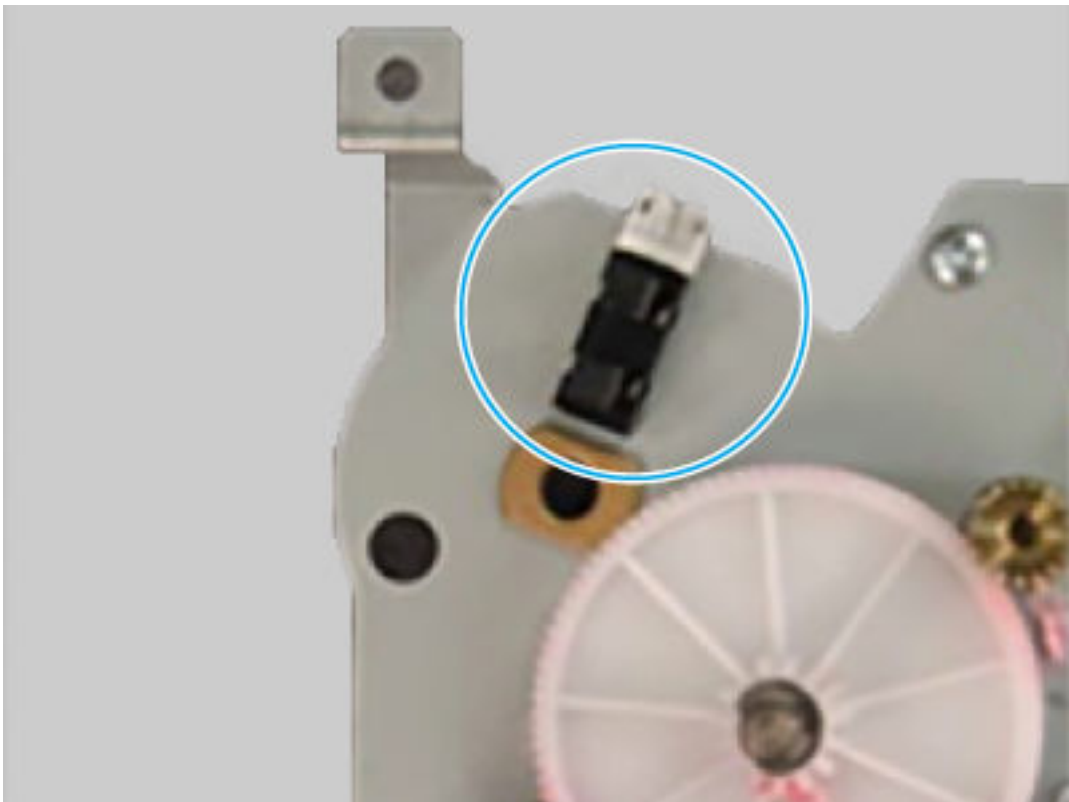


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the c-fold blade home sensor.

Figure 6-2913 Remove the sensor



5 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-354 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01396A	Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

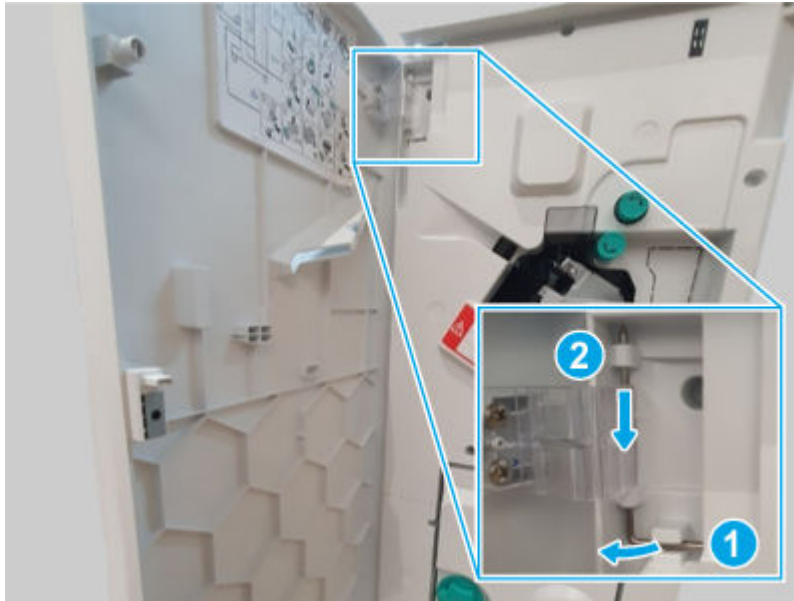
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

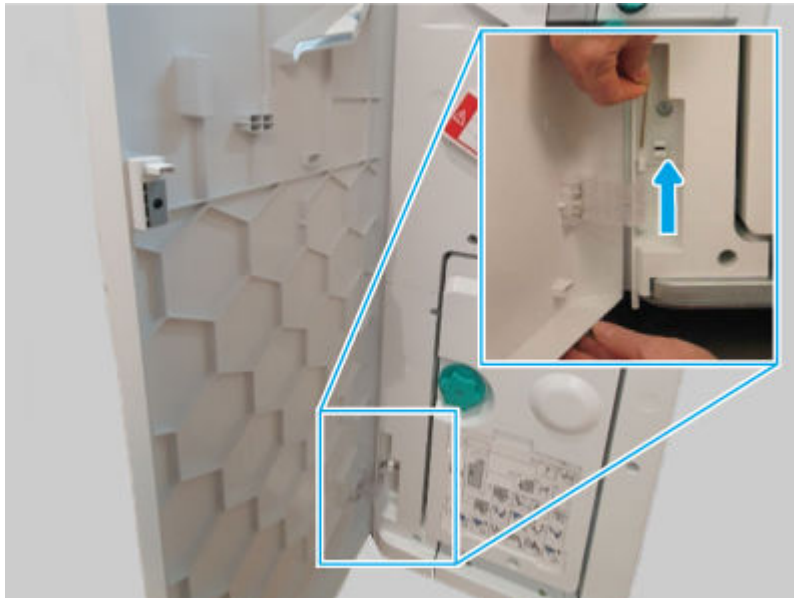
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2914 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2915 Remove the door



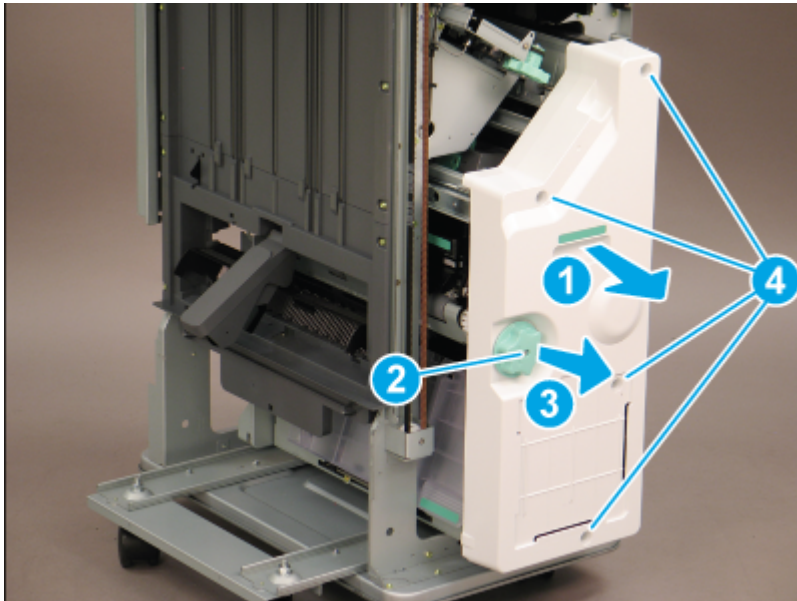
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2916 Remove the cover

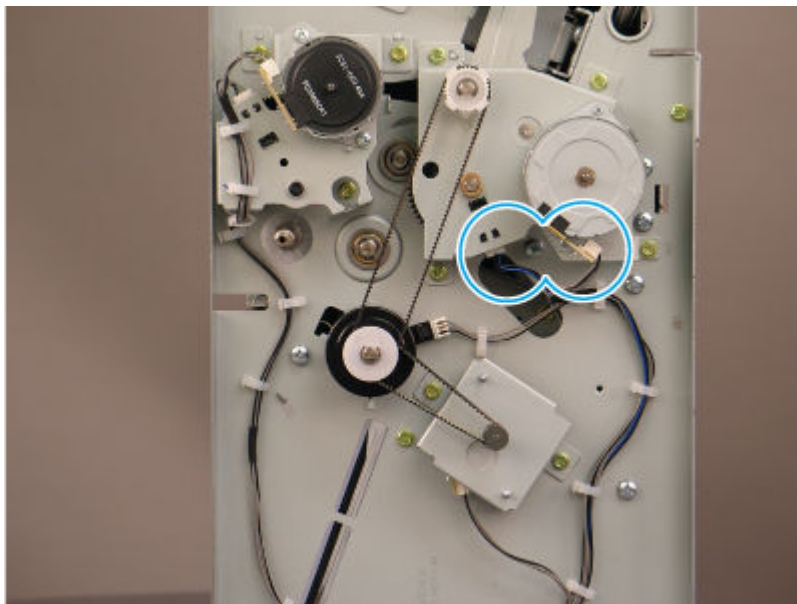


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor assembly.

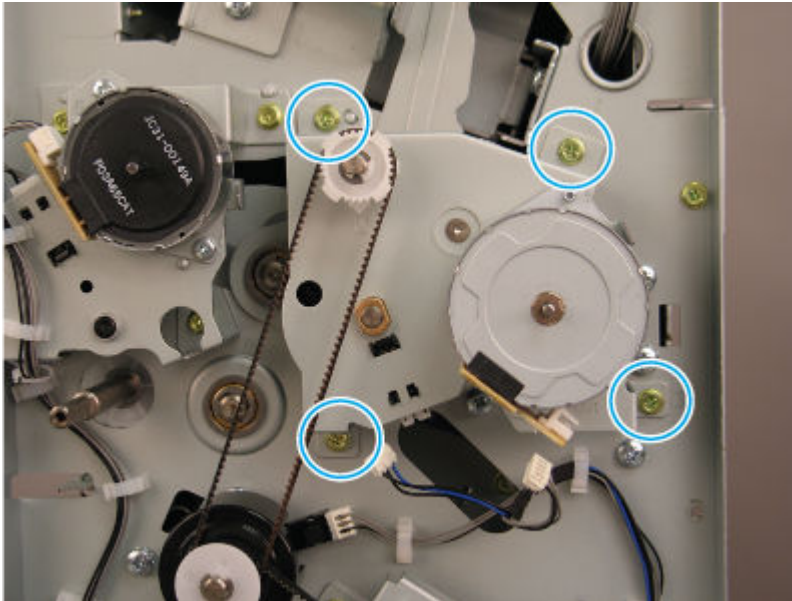
1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2917 Disconnect two connectors



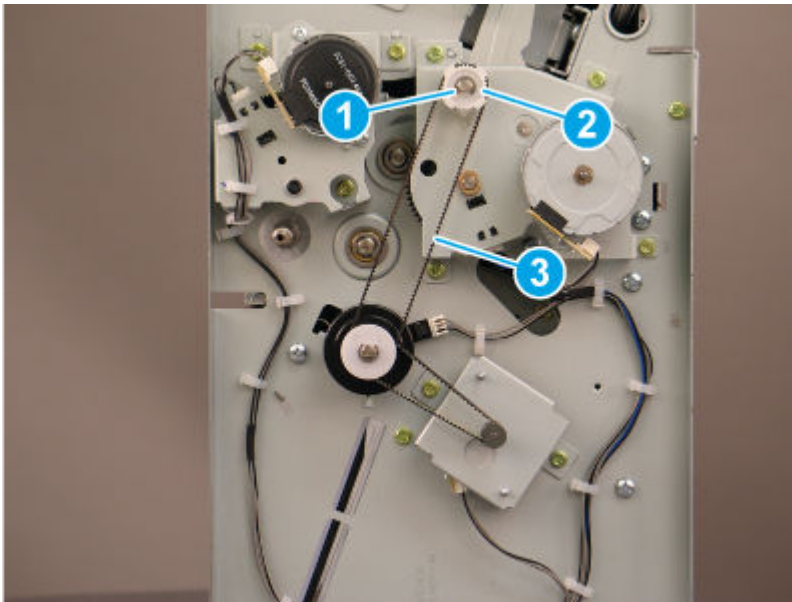
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2918 Remove four screws



3. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), remove the gear (callout 2), and then release the belt (callout 3).

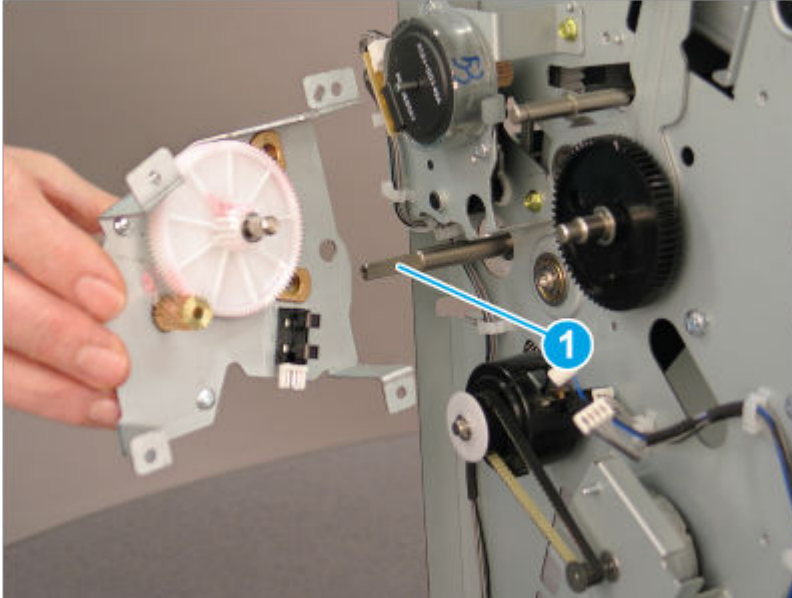
Figure 6-2919 Release the belt



4. Remove the booklet c-fold blade motor assembly.

CAUTION: Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet finisher PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.

Figure 6-2920 Remove the assembly



4 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-355 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01154A	Drive-motor step (Booklet c-fold blade motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

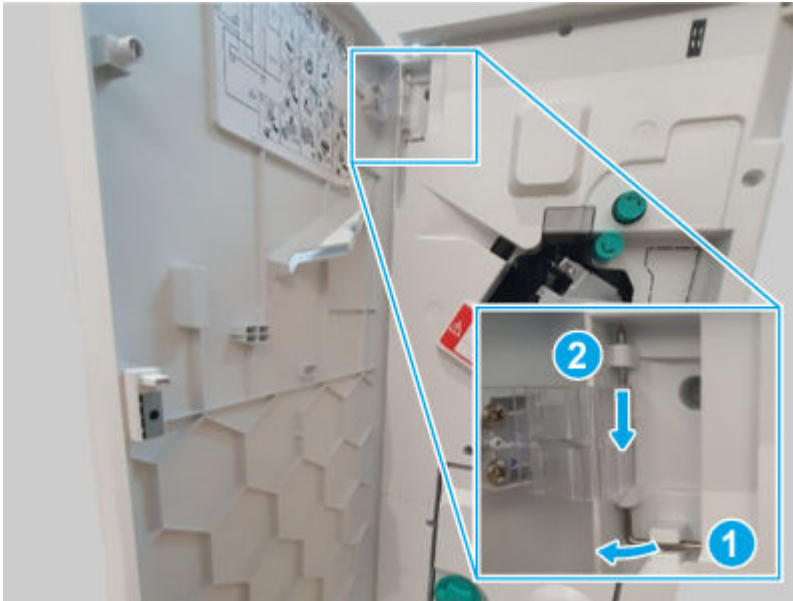
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

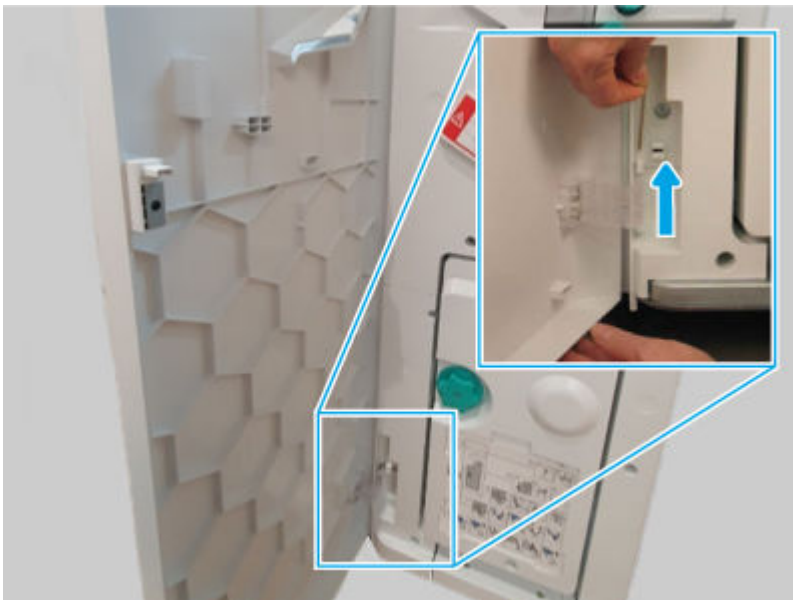
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2921 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2922 Remove the door



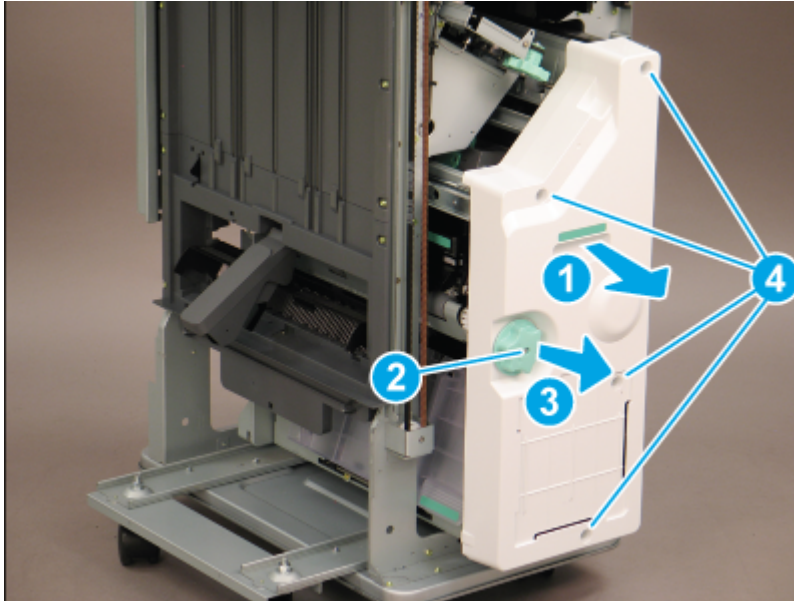
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2923 Remove the cover

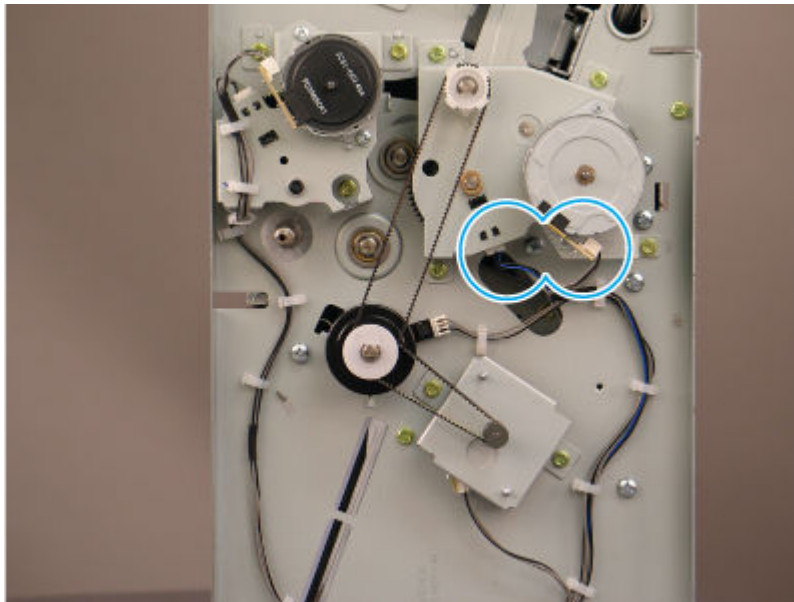


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor assembly.

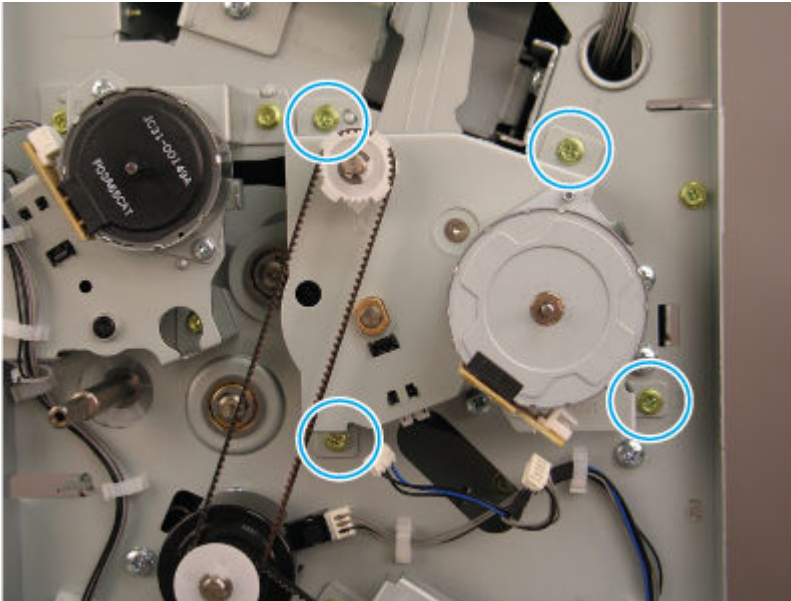
- 1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2924 Disconnect two connectors



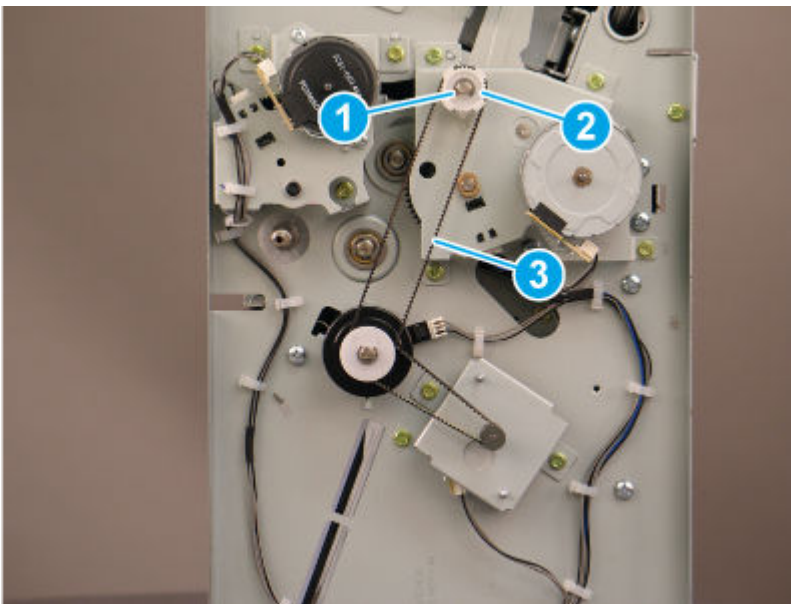
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2925 Remove four screws



3. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), remove the gear (callout 2), and then release the belt (callout 3).

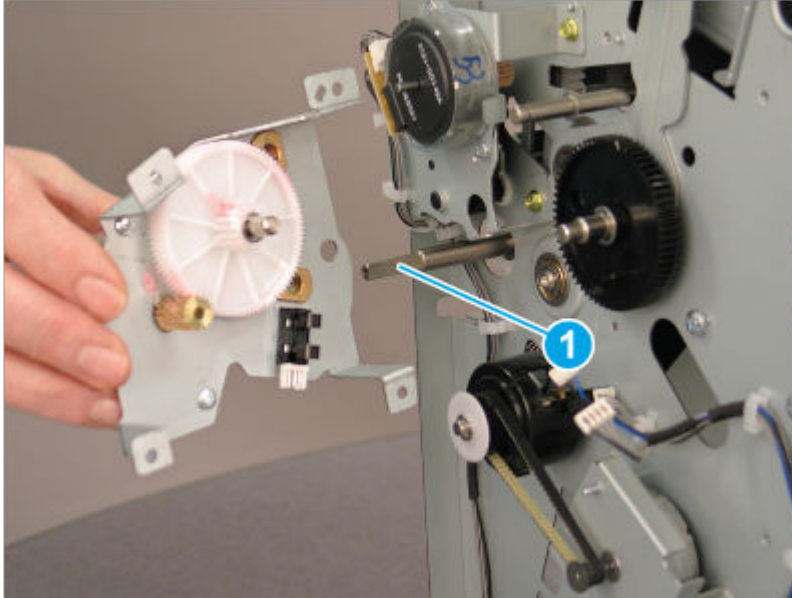
Figure 6-2926 Release the belt



4. Remove the booklet c-fold blade motor assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet finisher PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.

Figure 6-2927 Remove the assembly

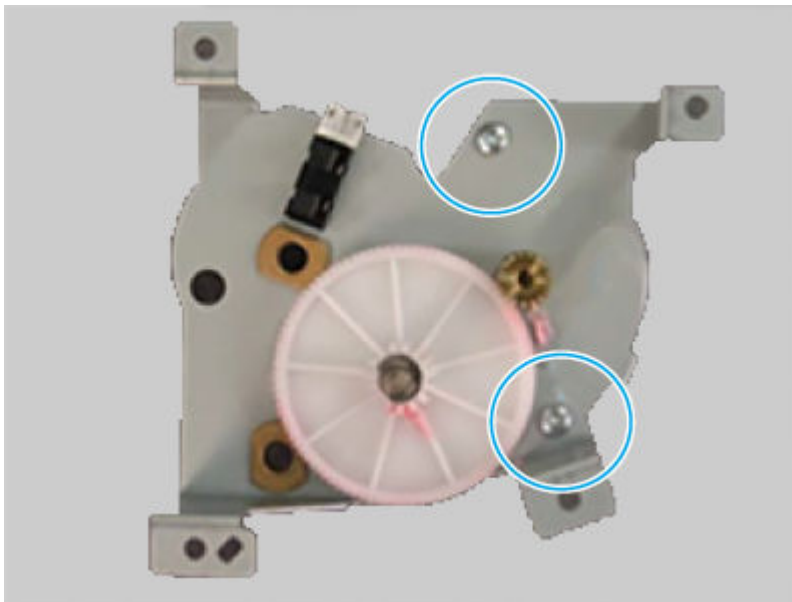


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the booklet c-fold blade motor.


Figure 6-2928 Remove the motor





5 Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet blade home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher blade home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-356 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet booklet blade home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

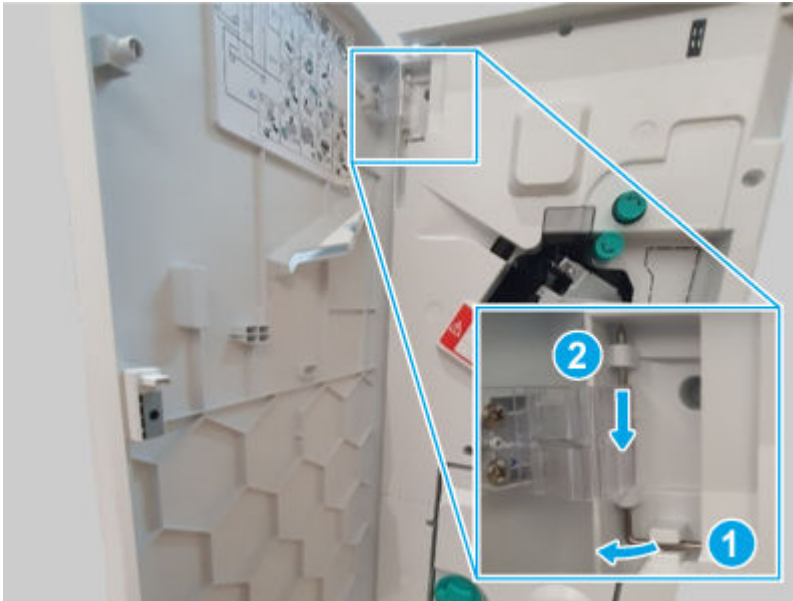
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

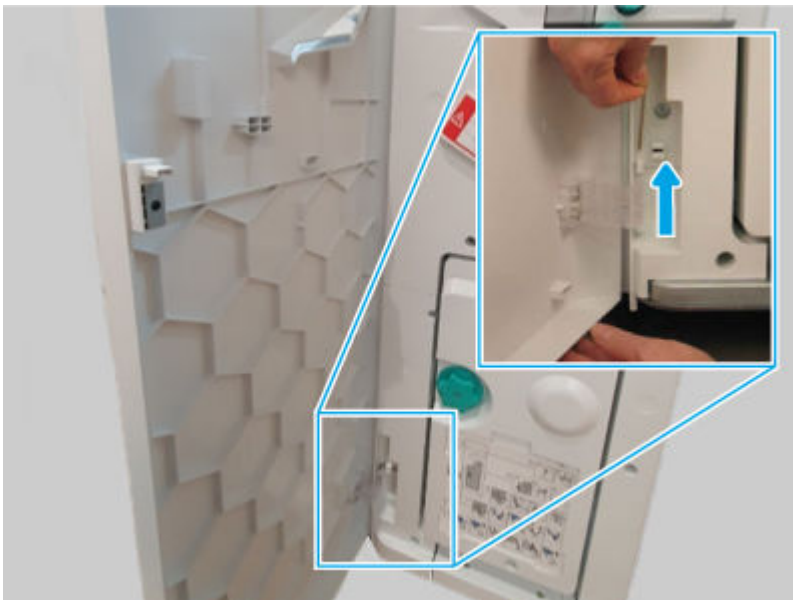
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2929 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2930 Remove the door

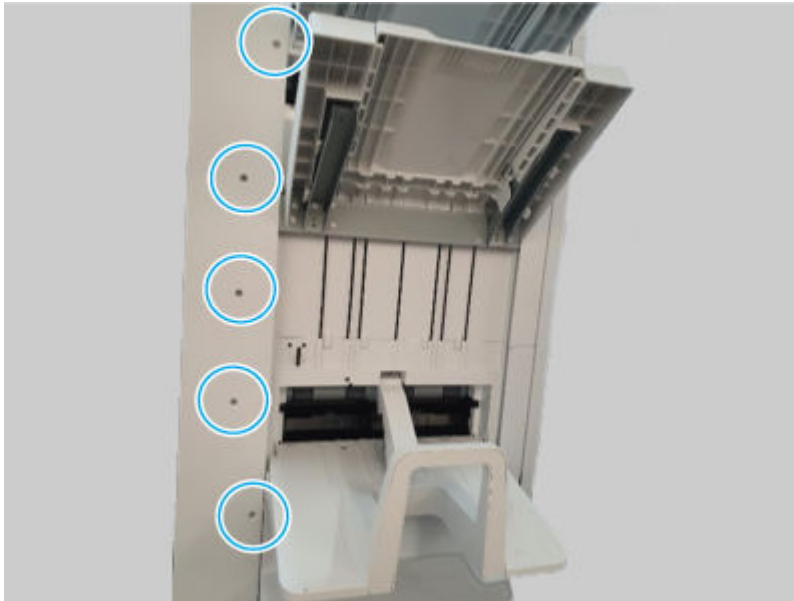


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2931 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


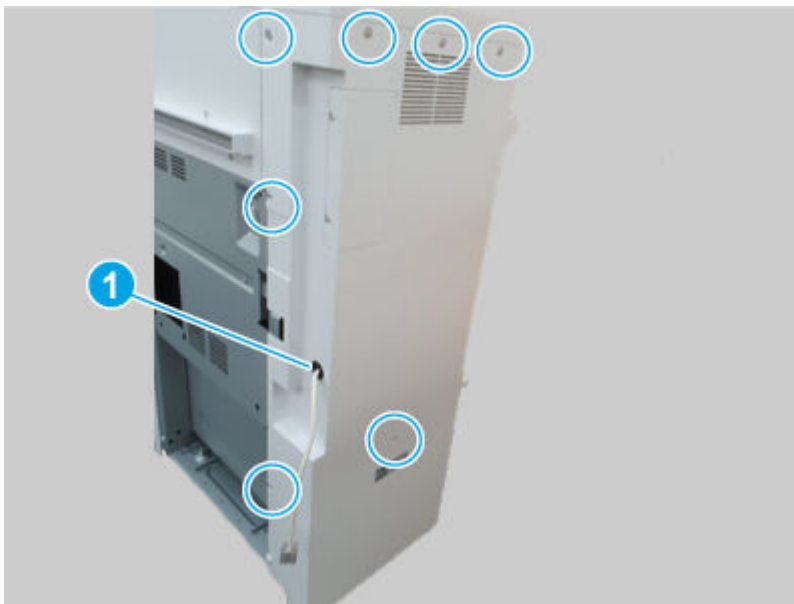
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2932 Remove the cover

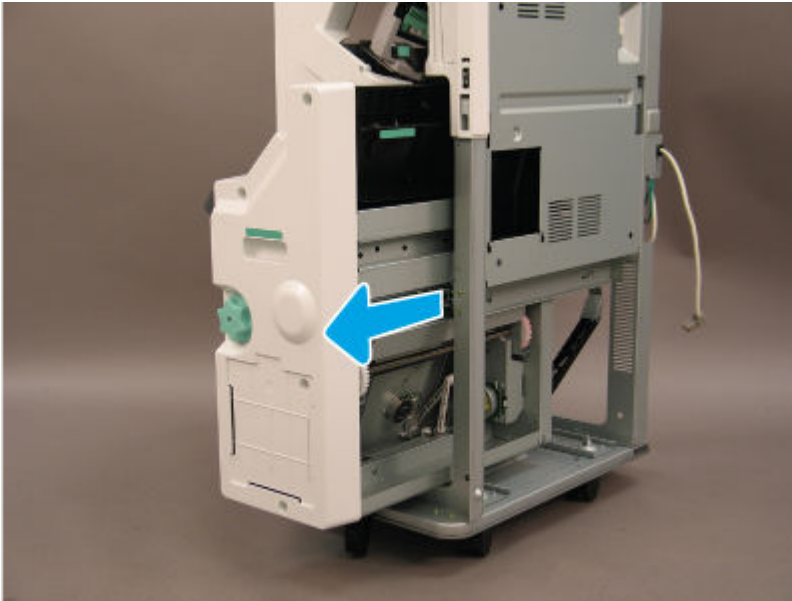


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

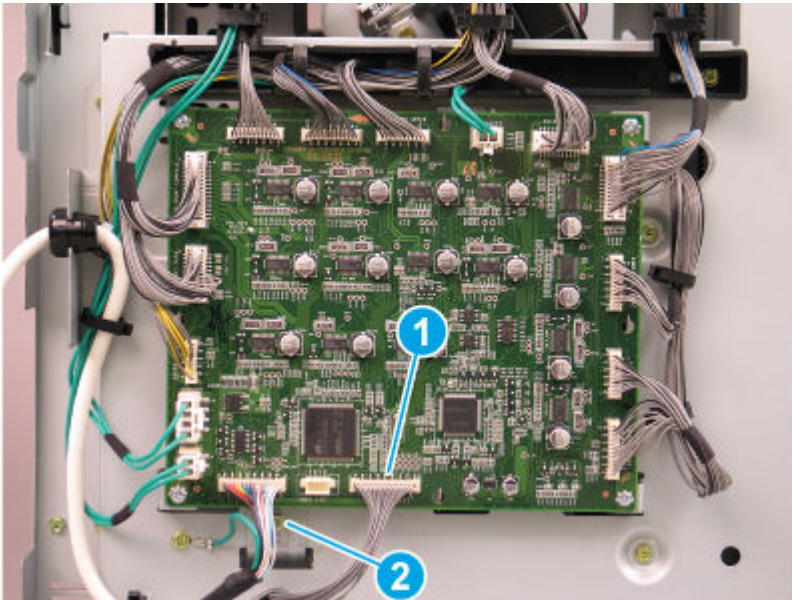
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2933 Slide the booklet maker out



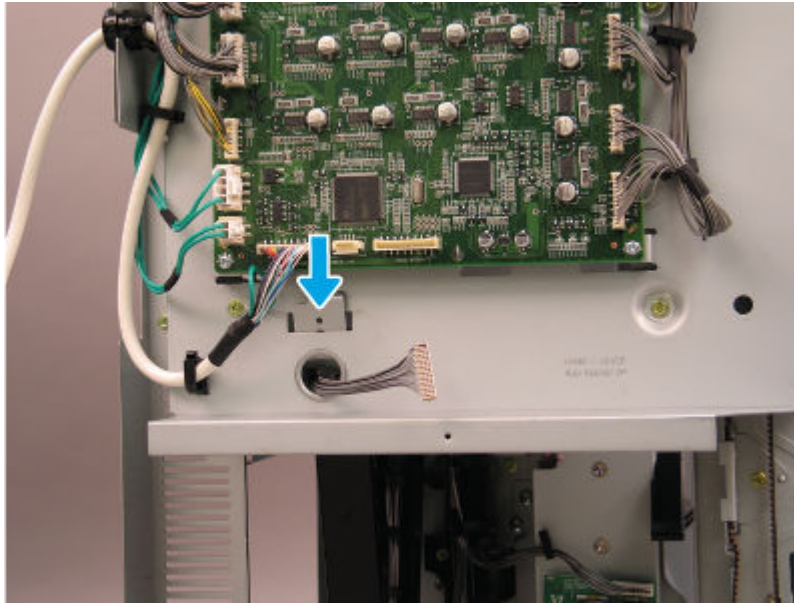
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2934 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



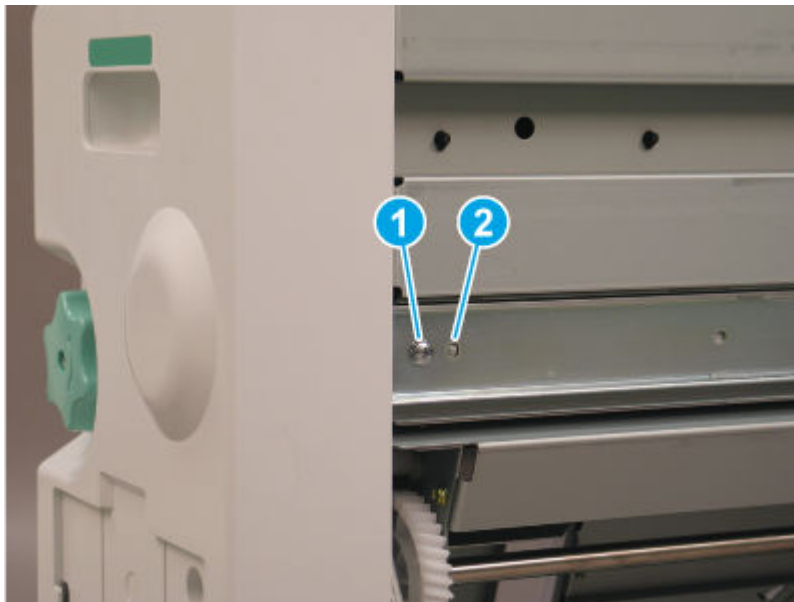
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2935 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2936 Release the alignment pin



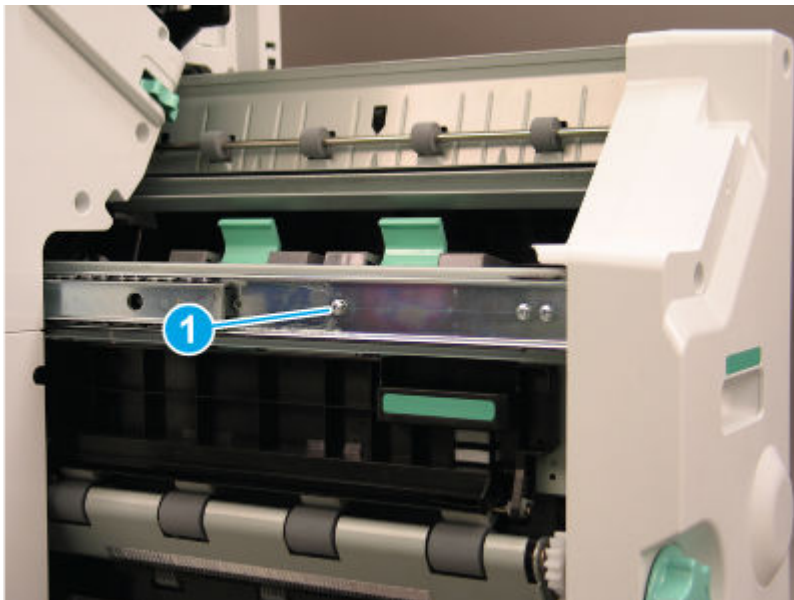
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2937 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2938 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


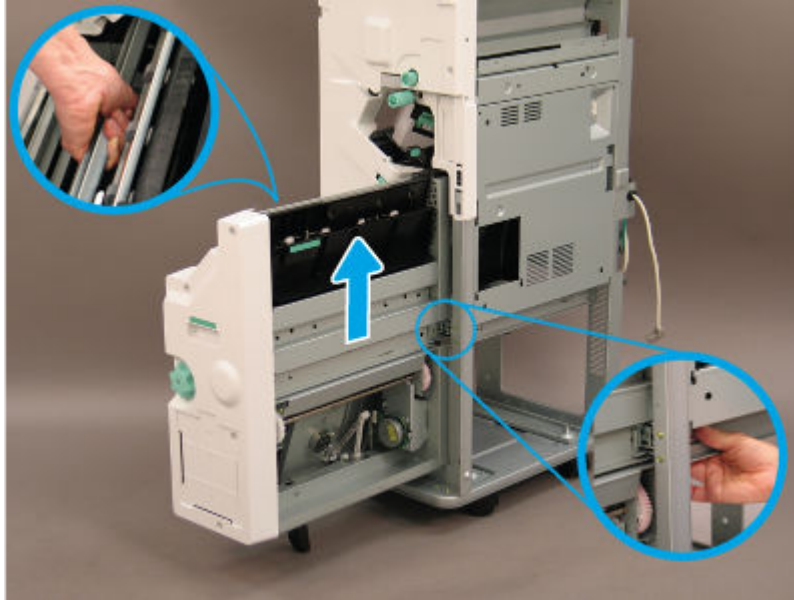
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2939 Remove the booklet maker

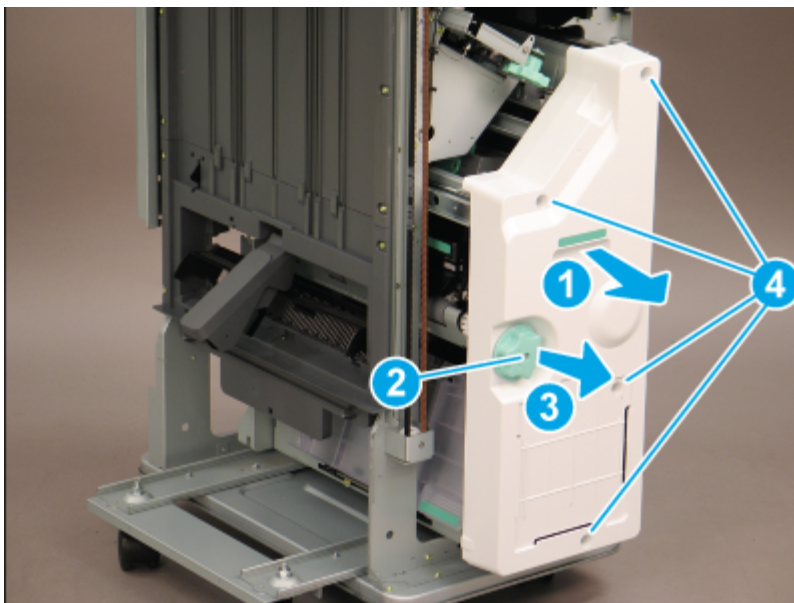


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2940 Remove the cover

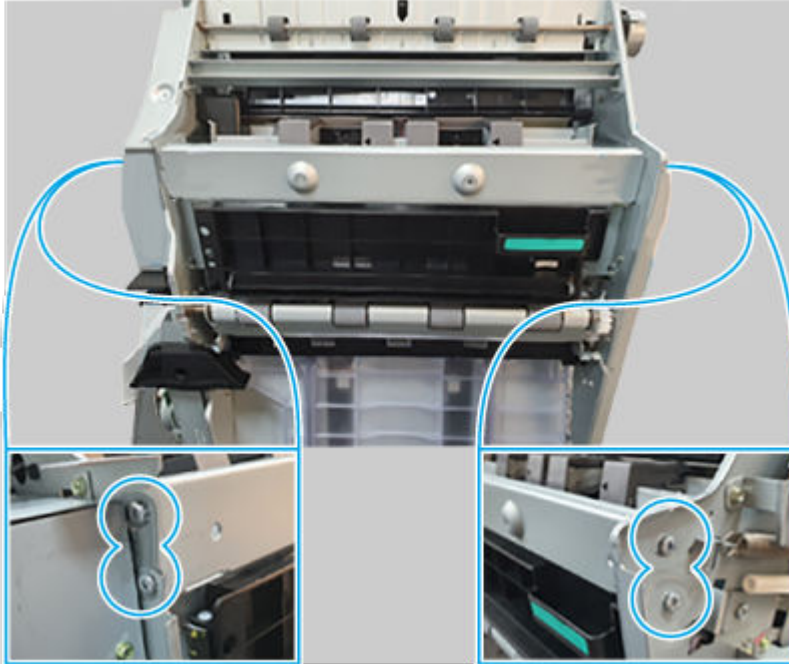


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet blade home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet blade home sensor.

1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 6-2941 Remove four screws



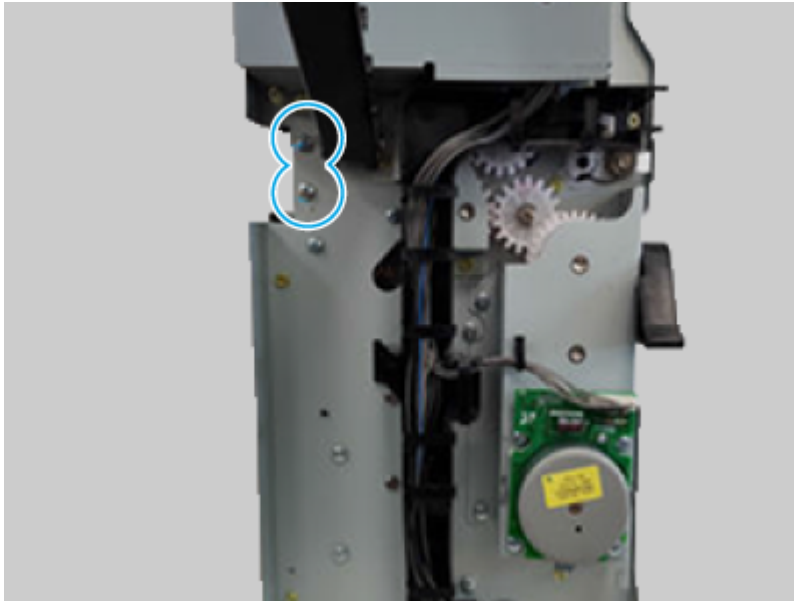
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2942 Remove two screws



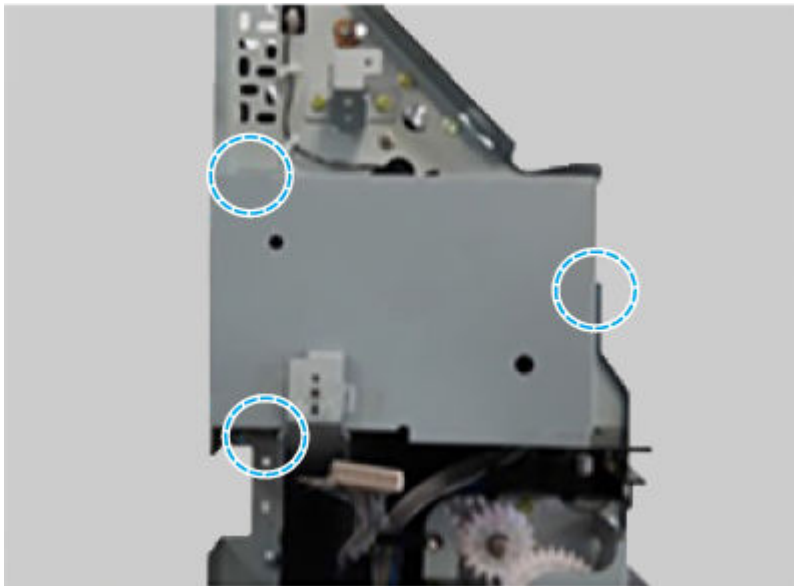
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2943 Remove two screws



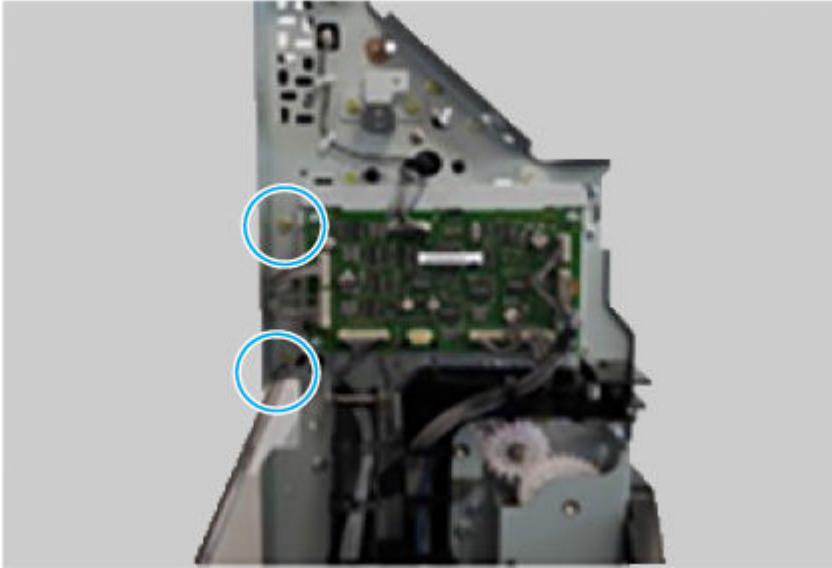
4. Remove three screws and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2944 Remove three screws



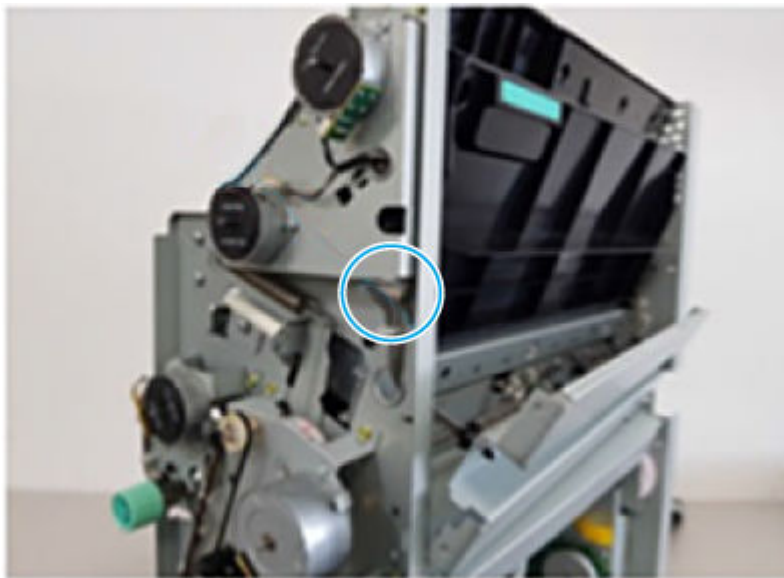
5. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2945 Remove two screws



6. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2946 Disconnect one connector



7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2947 Disconnect one connector



8. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2948 Remove two screws



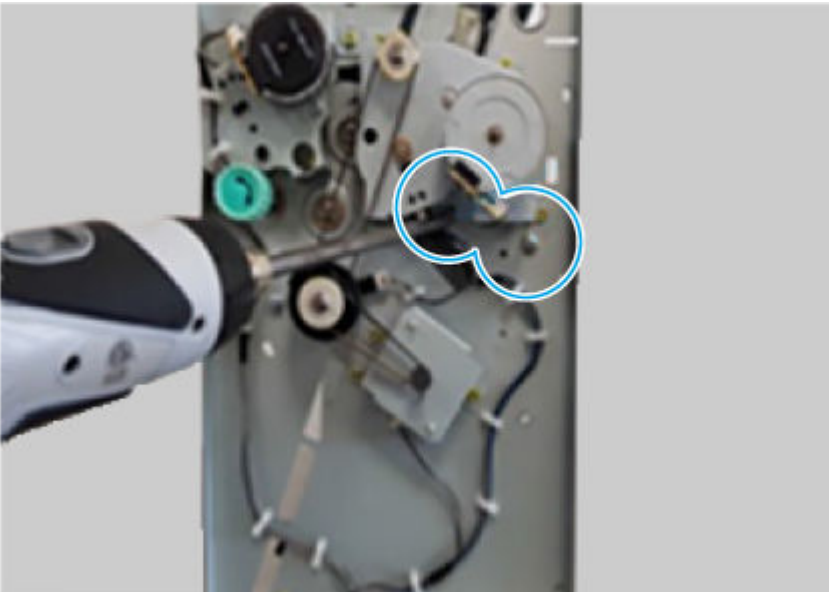
9. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2949 Remove three screws



10. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2950 Remove two screws



11. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2951 Remove two screws



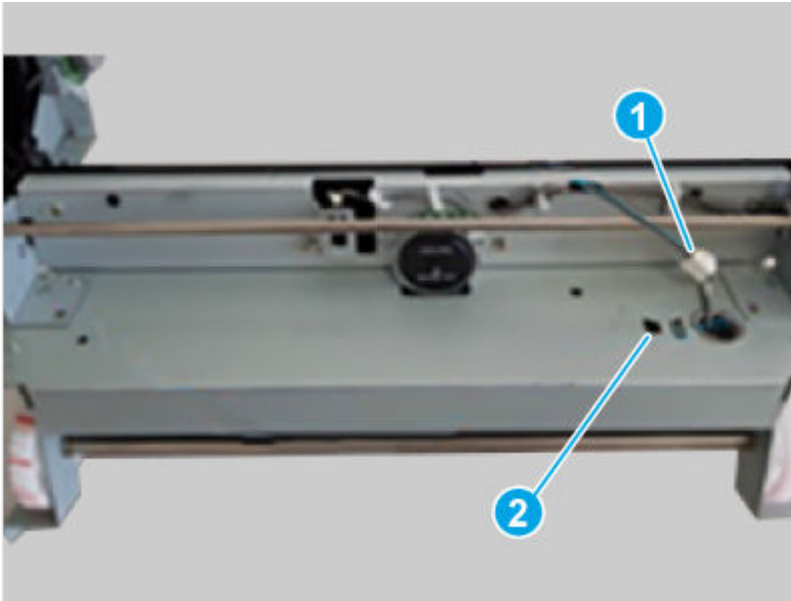
12. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2952 Disconnect one connector



13. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the booklet blade home sensor (callout 2).


Figure 6-2953 Remove the sensor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

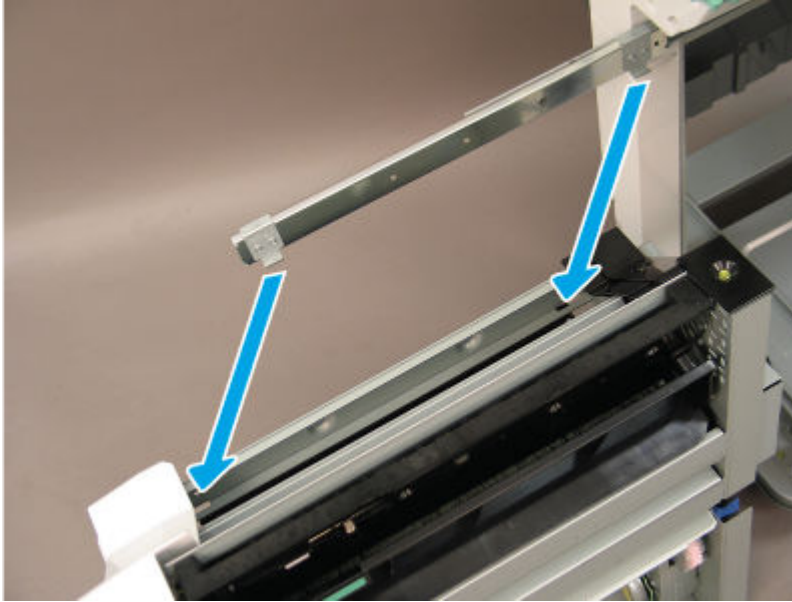
Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.



NOTE: Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

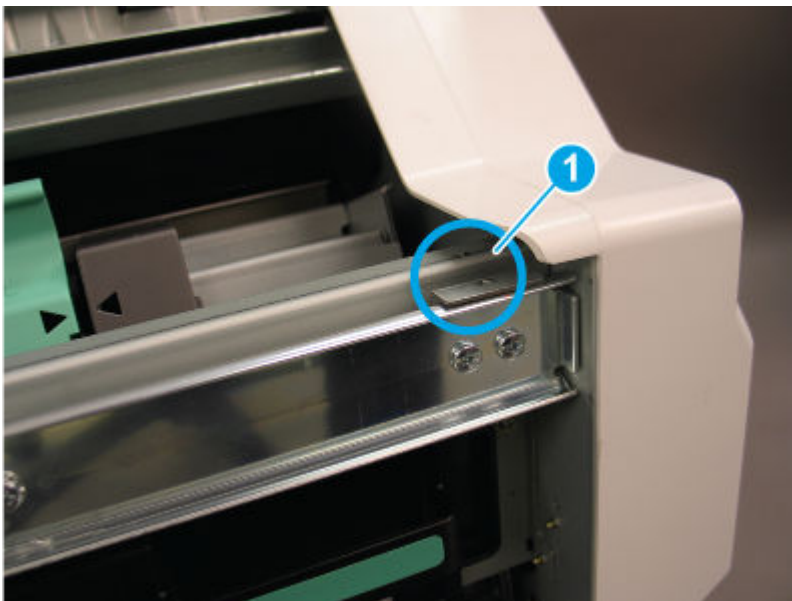
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2954 Position the hooks on the rail



2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2955 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2956 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.




NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2957 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet blade motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher blade motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-357 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00144A	Motor BLDC (Booklet booklet blade motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

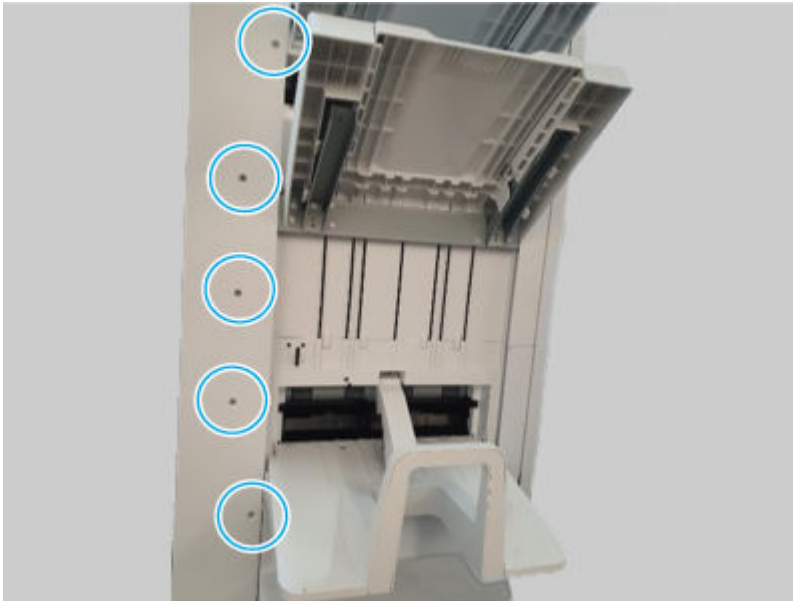
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2958 Remove five screws

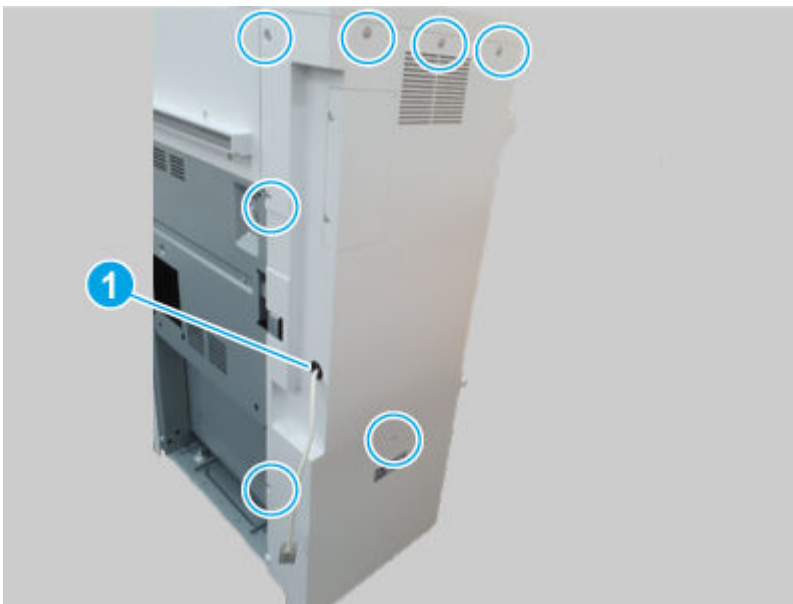


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2959 Remove the cover



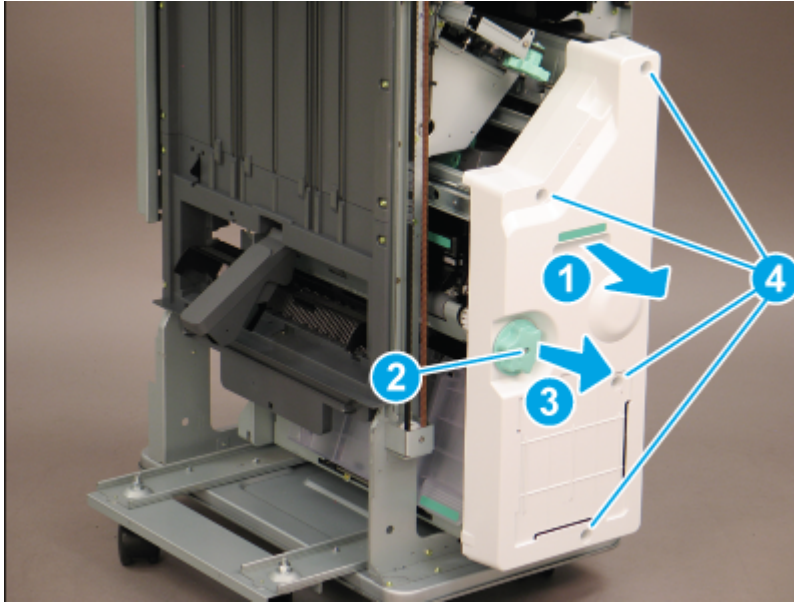
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.

2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2960 Remove the cover

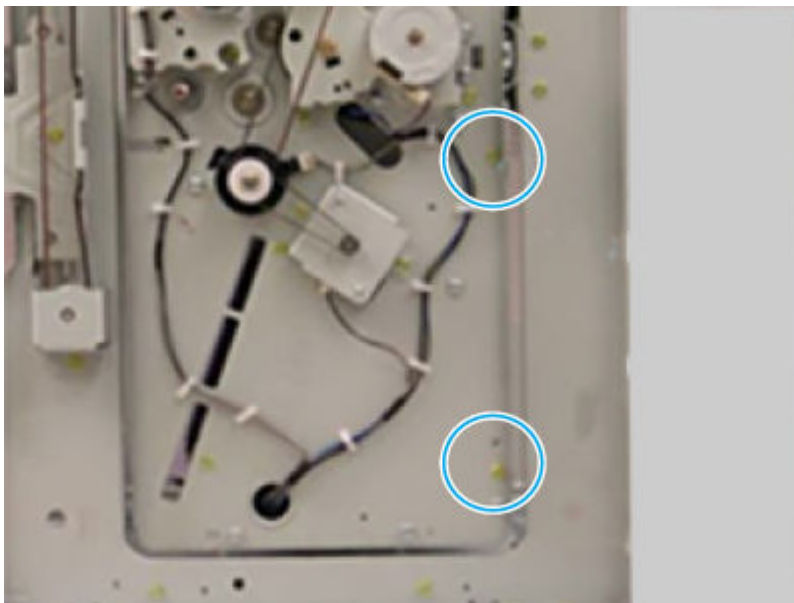


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet blade motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher blade motor.

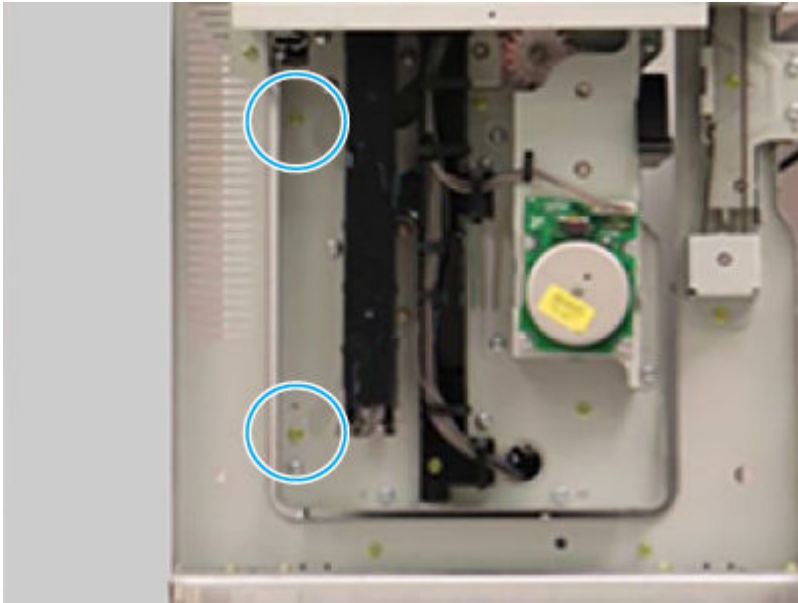
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2961 Remove two screws



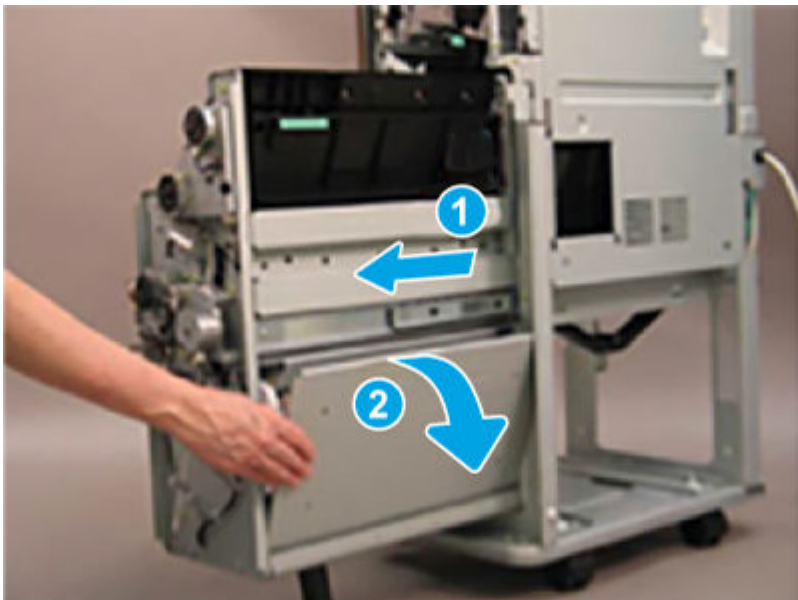
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2962 Remove two screws



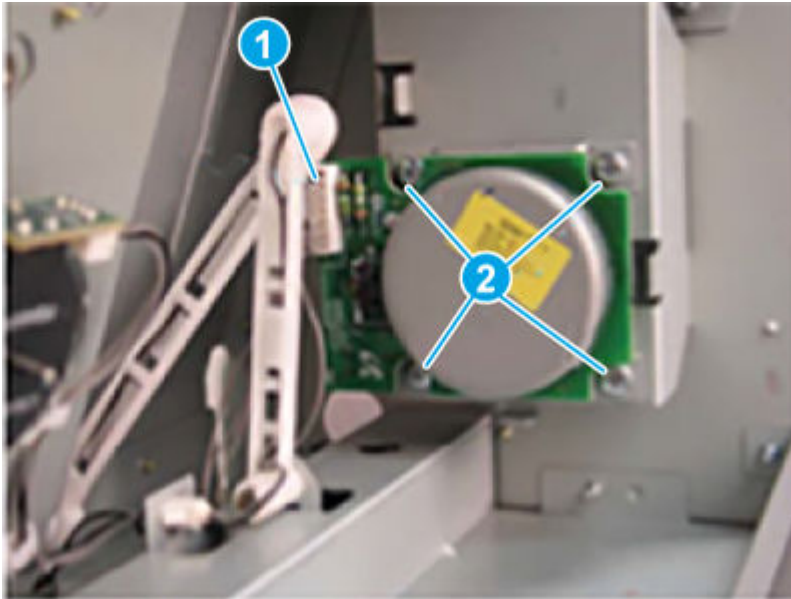
3. Remove the right lower plate.

Figure 6-2963 Remove the plate



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet blade motor.

Figure 6-2964 Remove the motor



4 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet fold motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher fold motor assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-358 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01436A	Booklet booklet fold motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

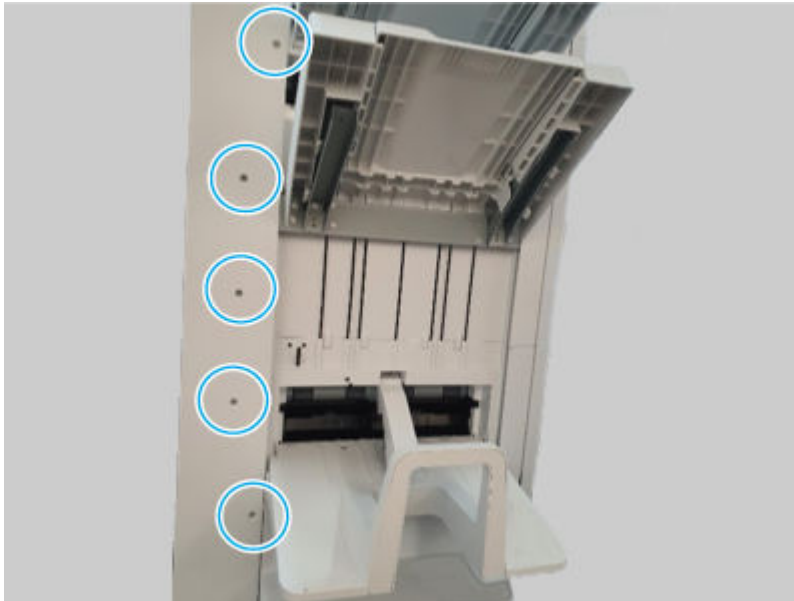
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2965 Remove five screws

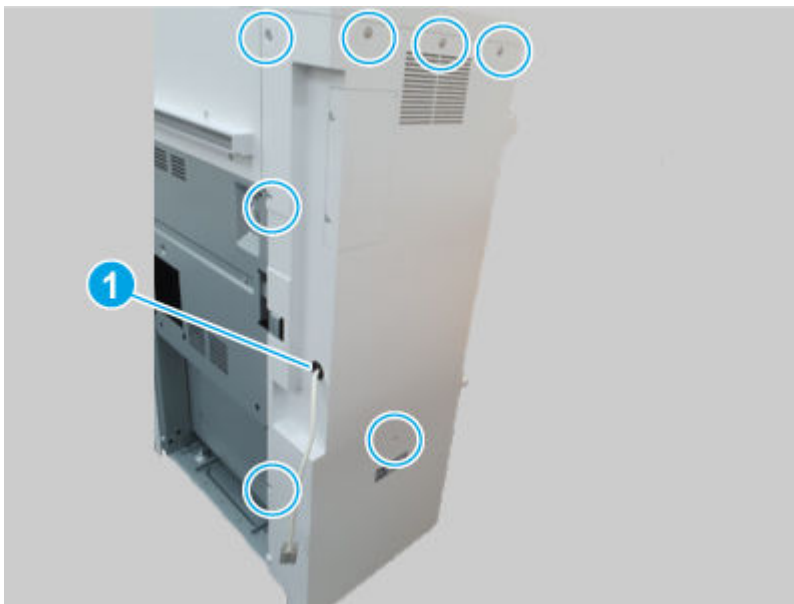


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2966 Remove the cover



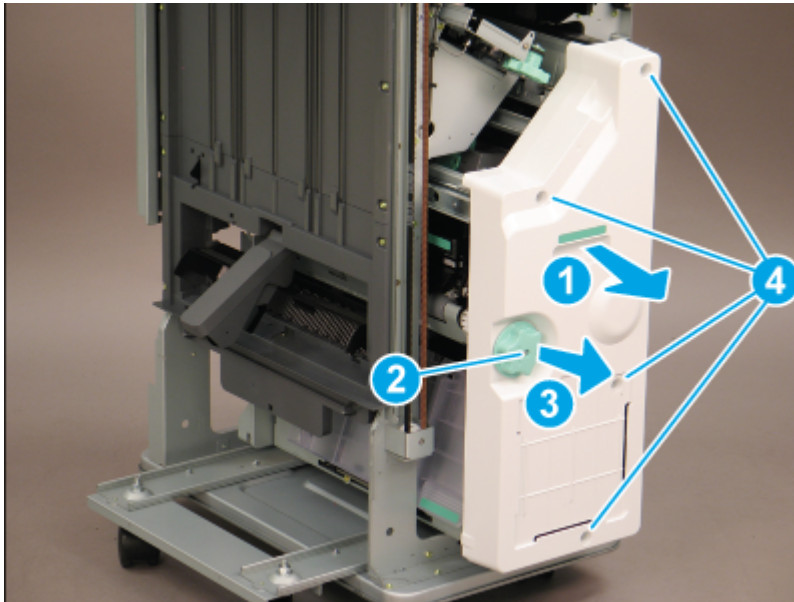
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.

2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2967 Remove the cover

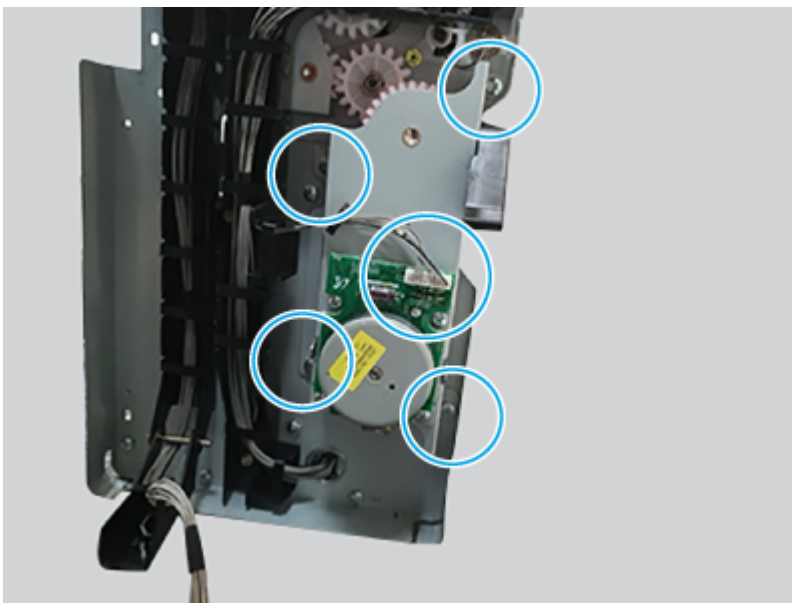


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet fold motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher fold motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove four screws, and then remove the booklet fold motor assembly.

Figure 6-2968 Remove the assembly



4 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet fold motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher fold motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-359 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00144A	Motor BLDC (Booklet booklet fold motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

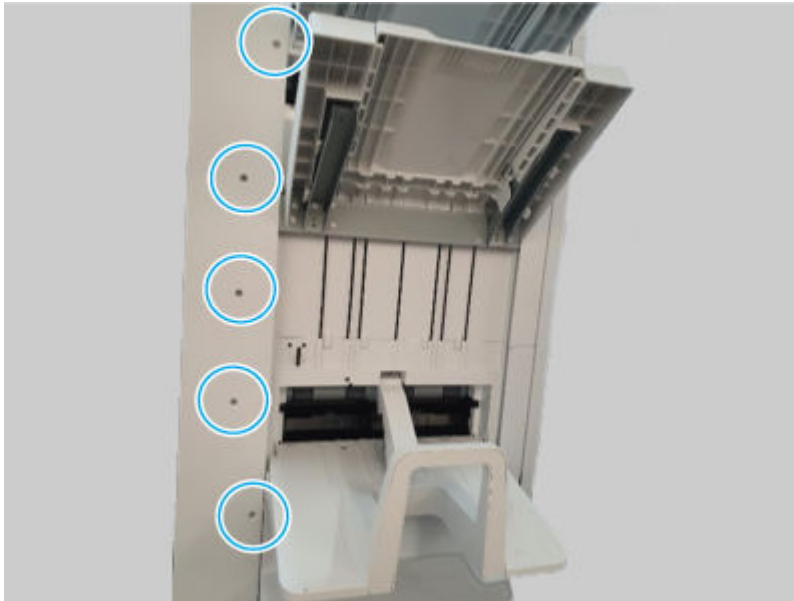
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2969 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


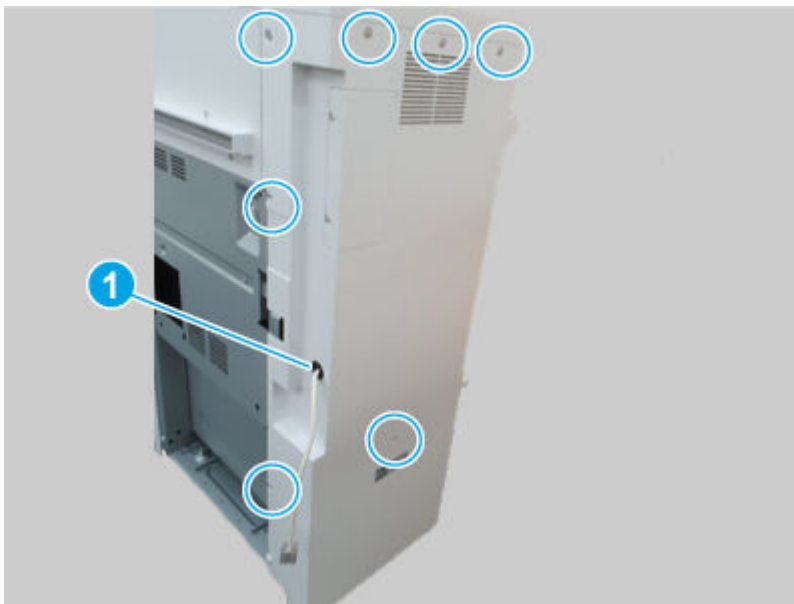
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2970 Remove the cover



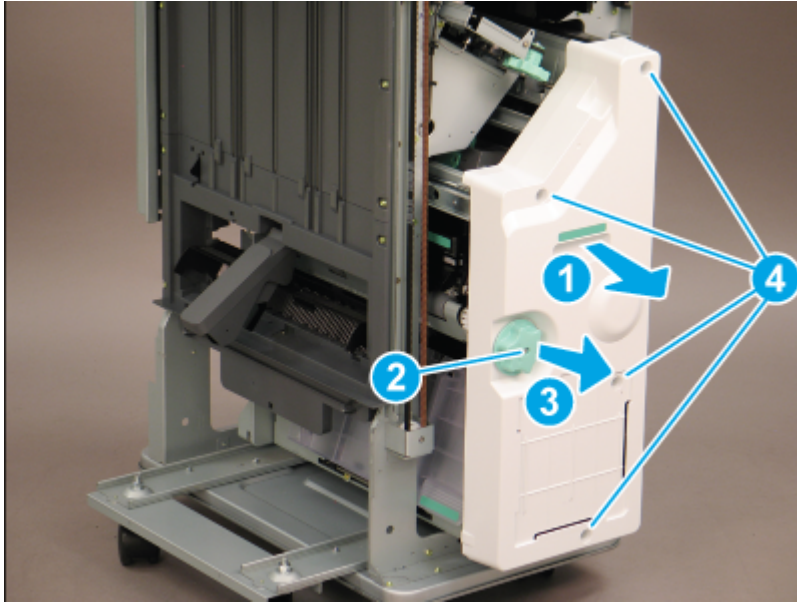
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.

2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2971 Remove the cover

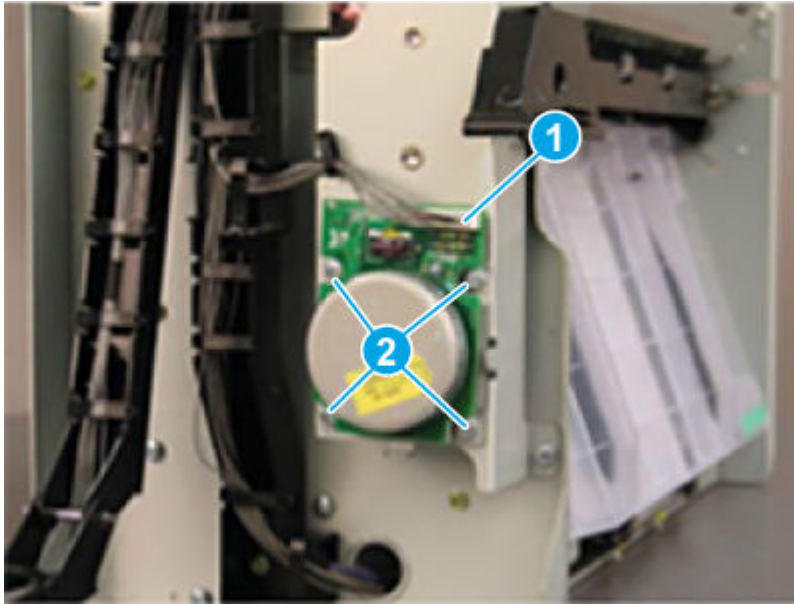


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet fold motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher fold motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet fold motor.

Figure 6-2972 Remove the motor



4 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet diverter unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet diverter unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher diverter.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-360 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01398A	Booklet diverter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

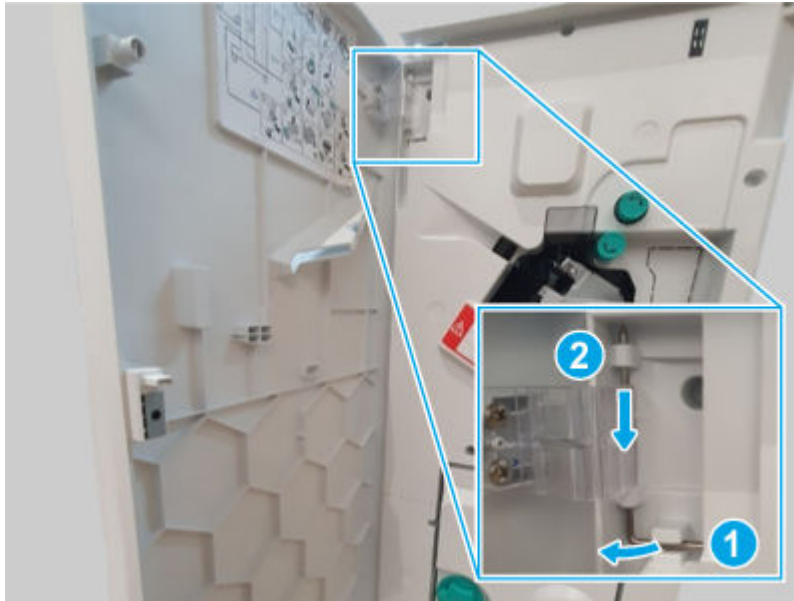
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

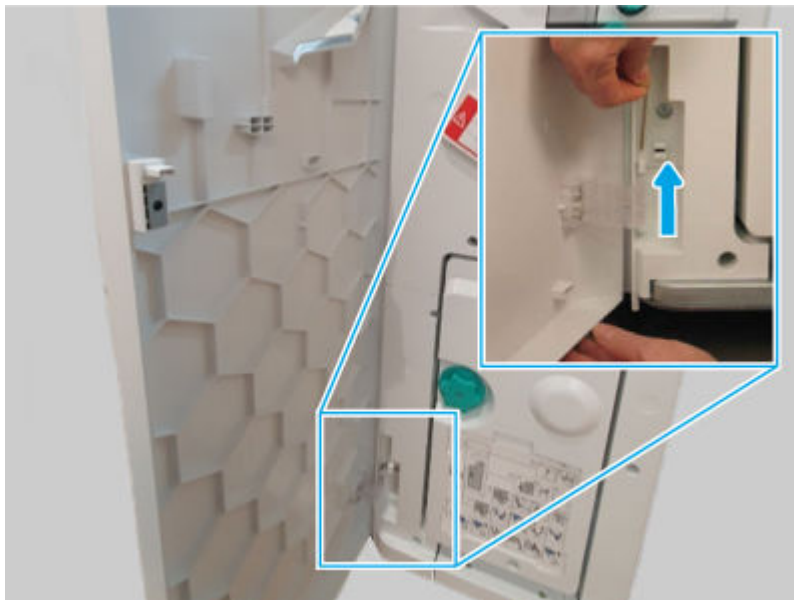
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2973 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2974 Remove the door

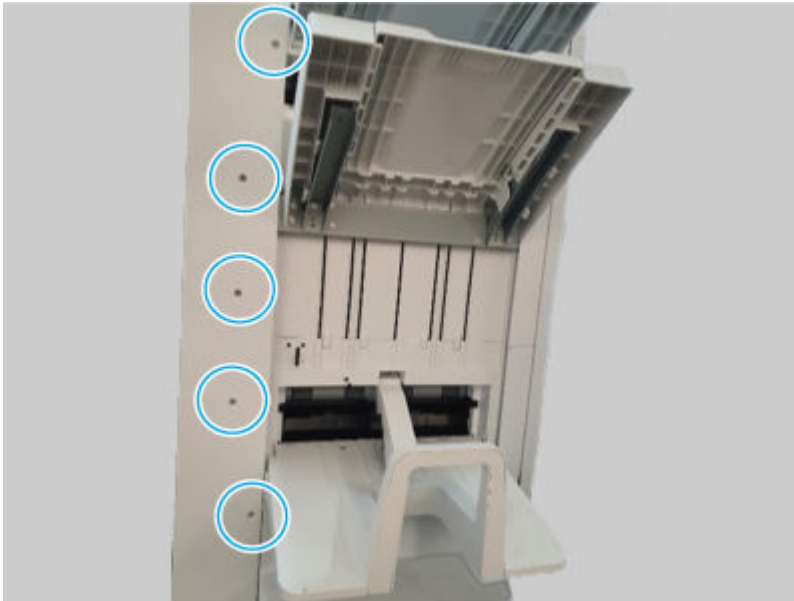


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2975 Remove five screws

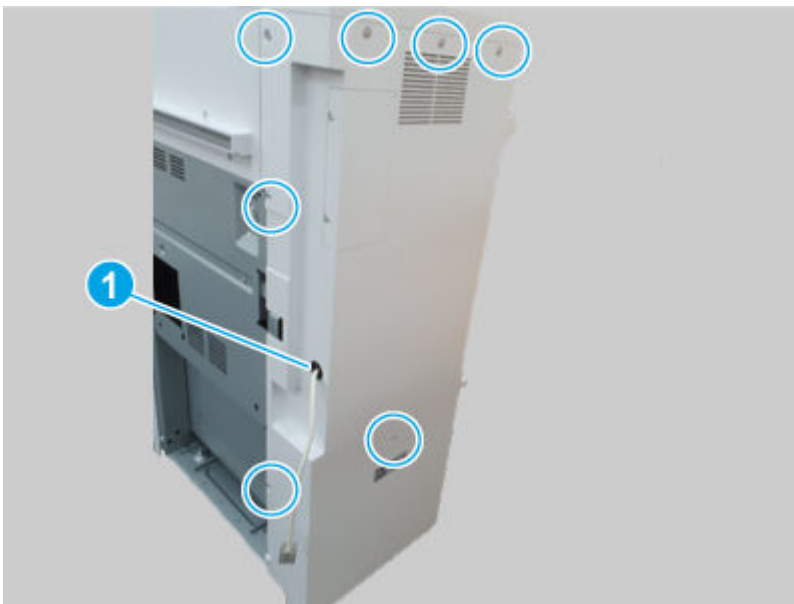


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2976 Remove the cover



- 3 **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

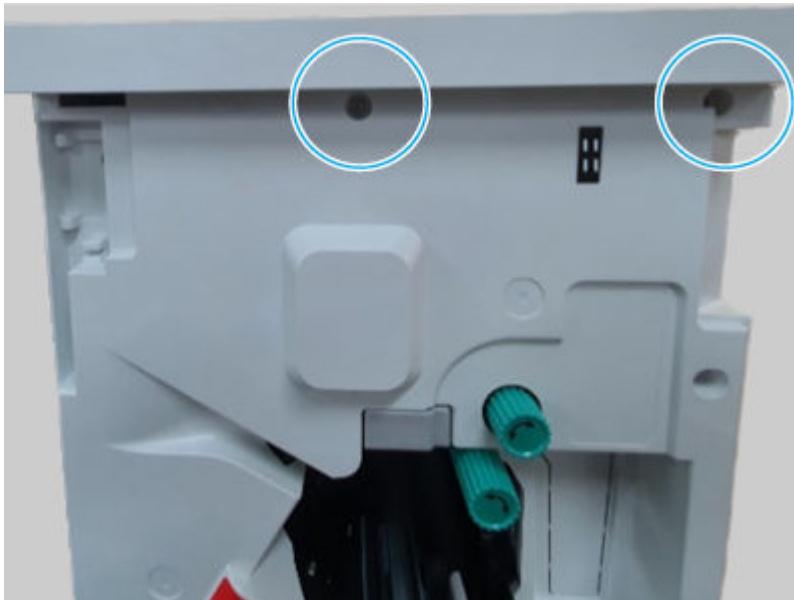
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2977 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2978 Remove the cover



4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

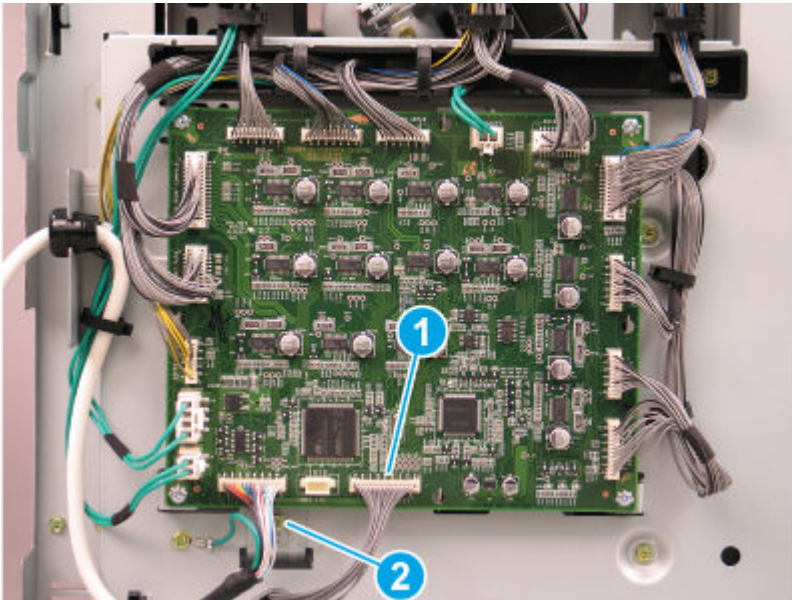
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2979 Slide the booklet maker out



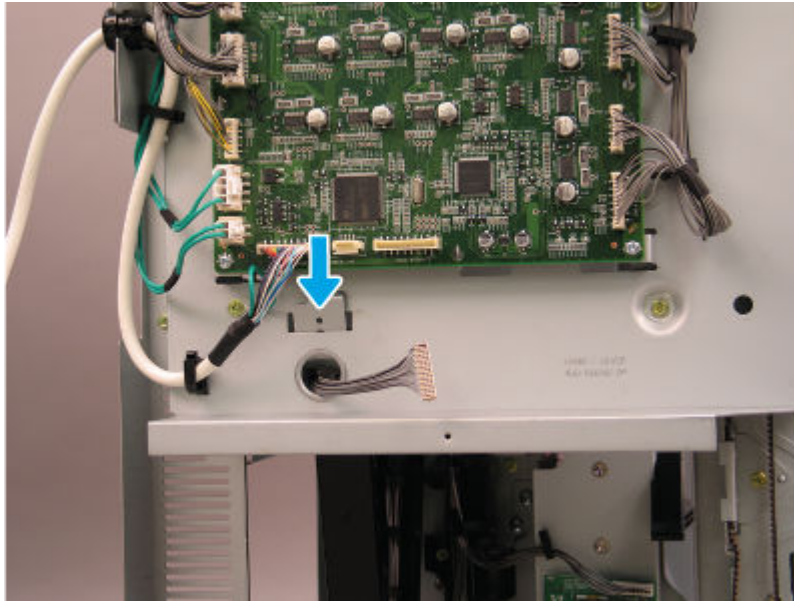
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2980 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



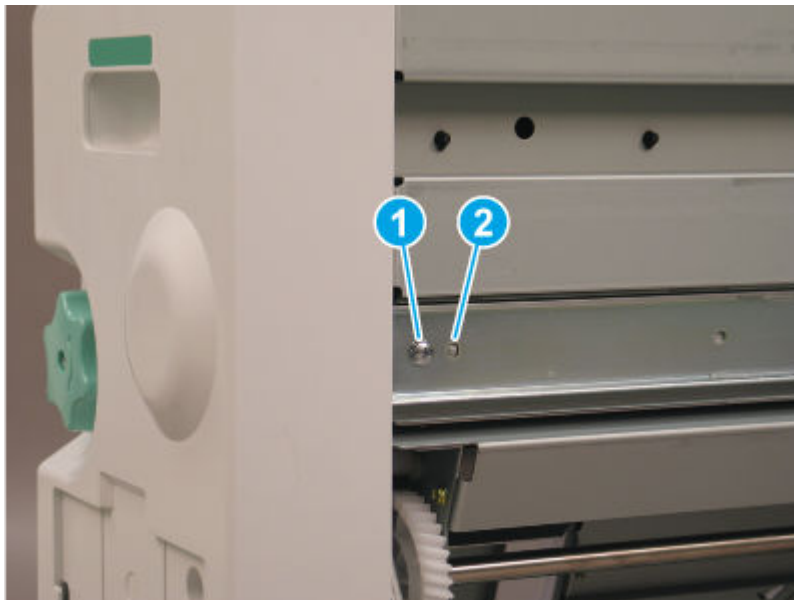
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2981 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2982 Release the alignment pin



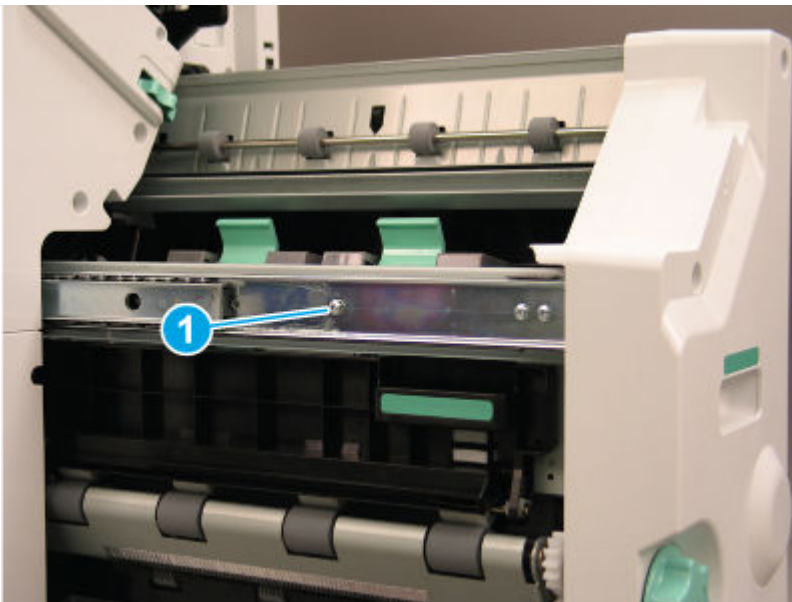
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2983 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2984 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


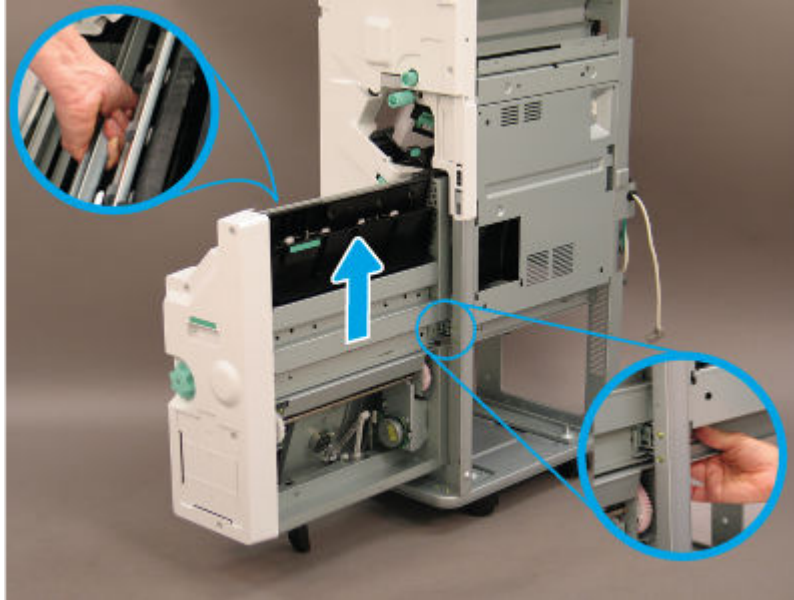
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2985 Remove the booklet maker

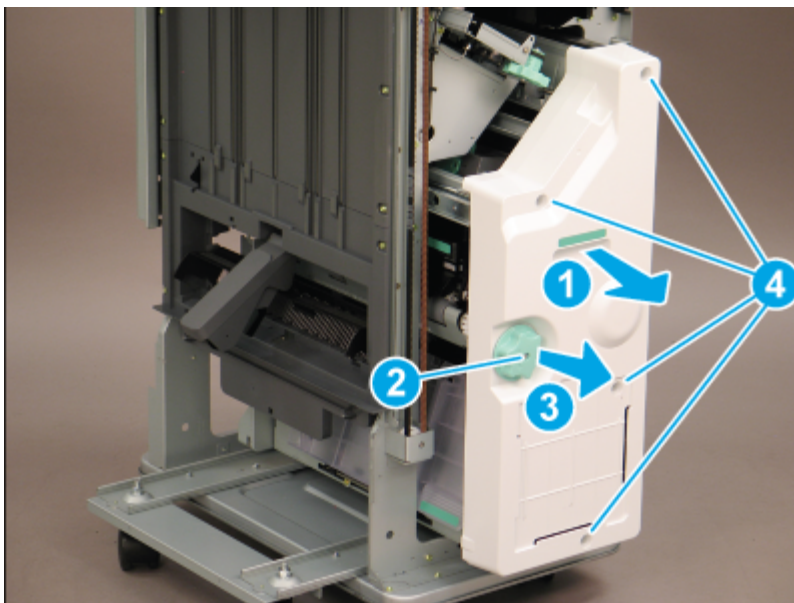


5 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2986 Remove the cover

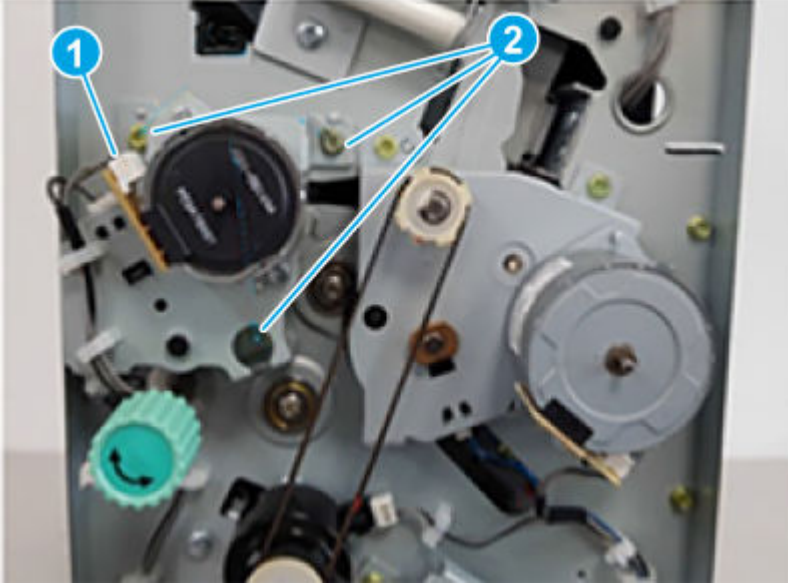


6 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor assembly.

Figure 6-2987 Remove the assembly

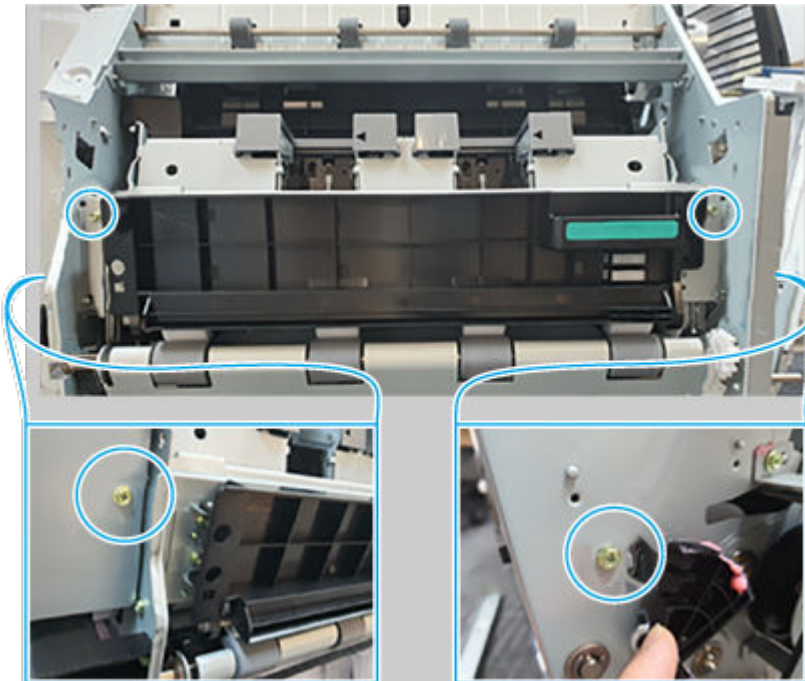


7 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade assembly.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the c-fold blade assembly.

Figure 6-2988 Remove the assembly

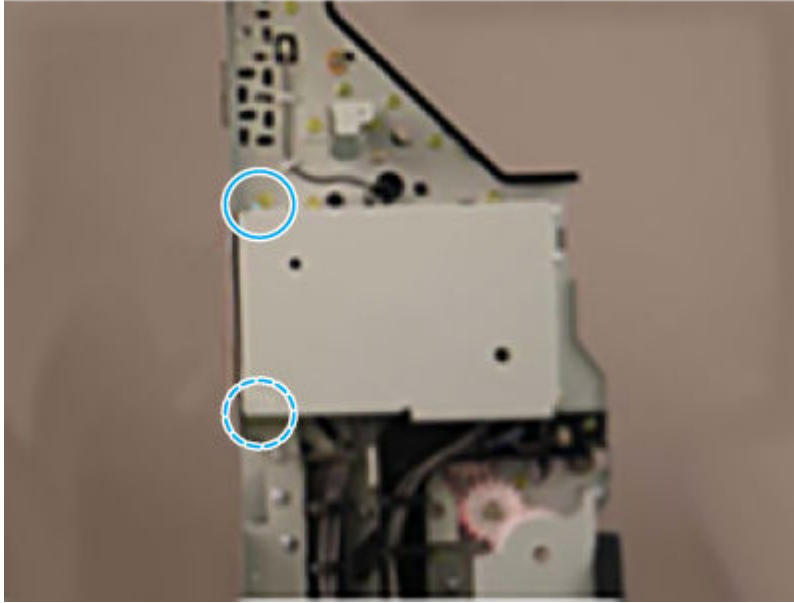


8 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter.

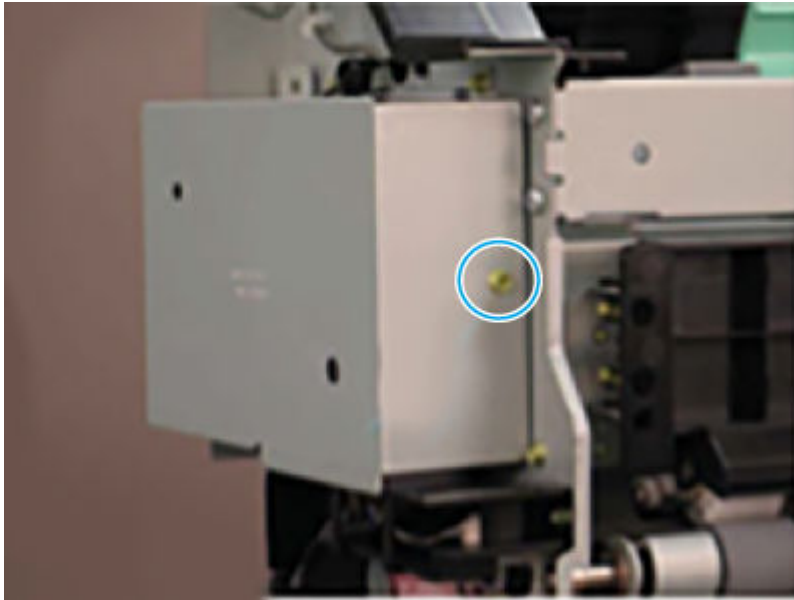
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2989 Remove two screws



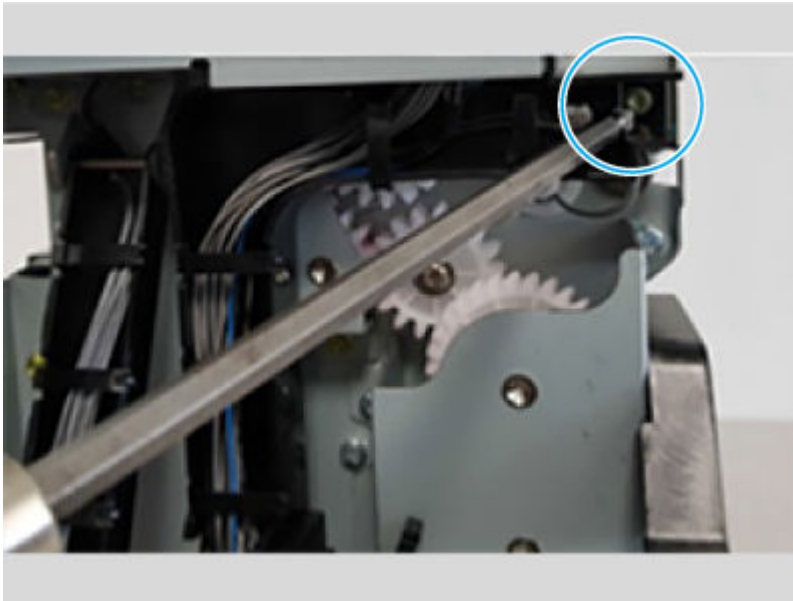
2. Remove one screw and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2990 Remove one screw



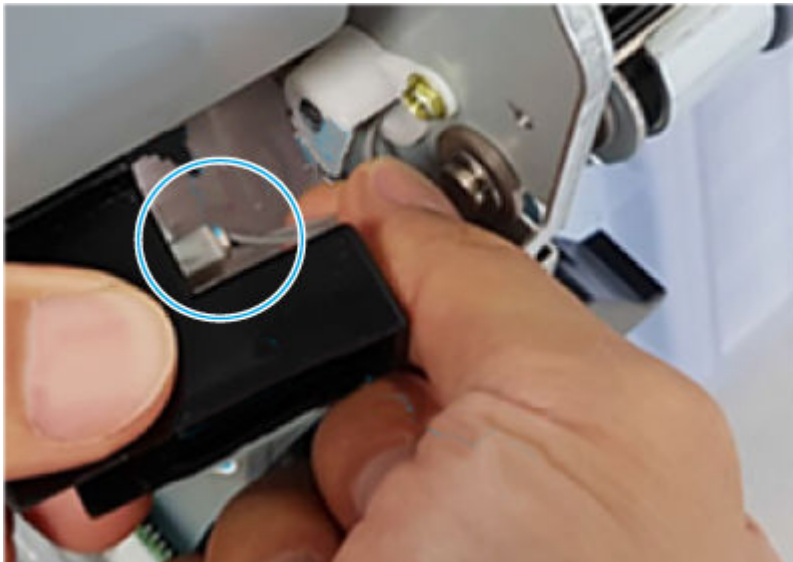
3. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-2991 Remove one screw



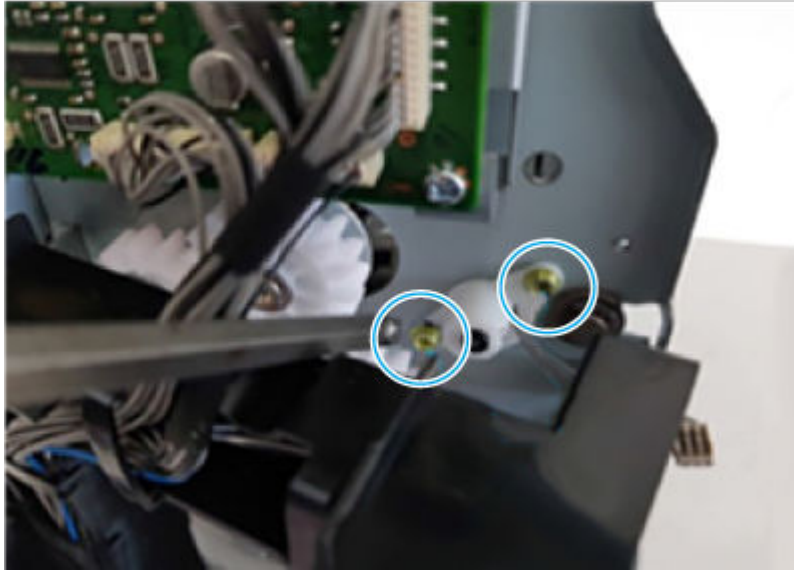
4. Remove the connector cover, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2992 Disconnect one connector



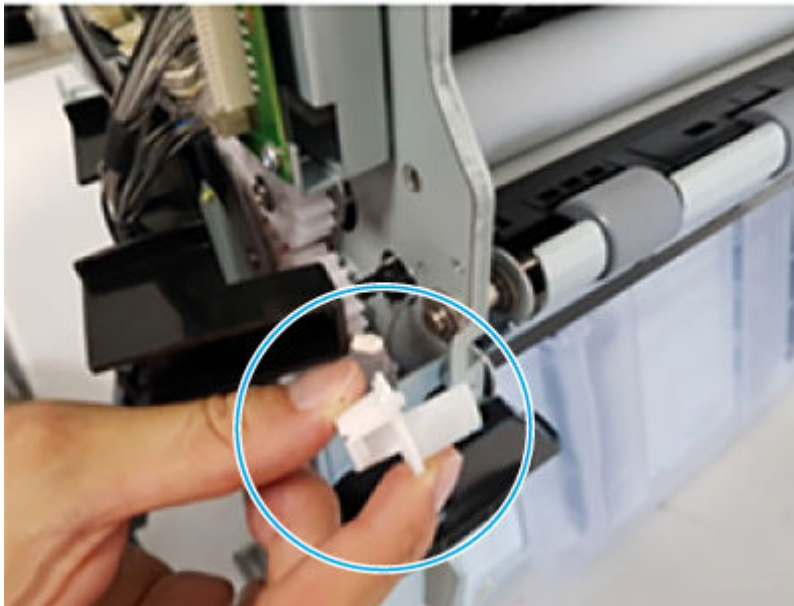
5. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2993 Remove two screws



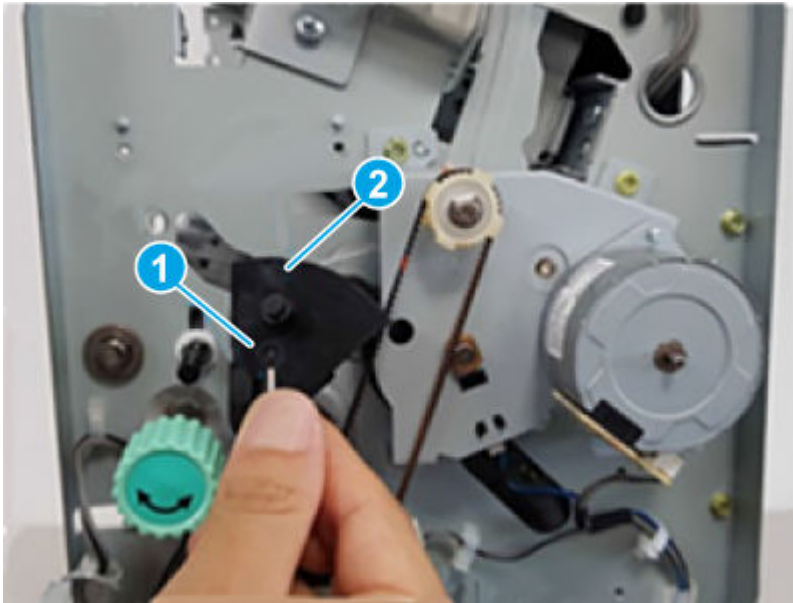
6. Remove the white-plastic bushing.

Figure 6-2994 Remove the bushing



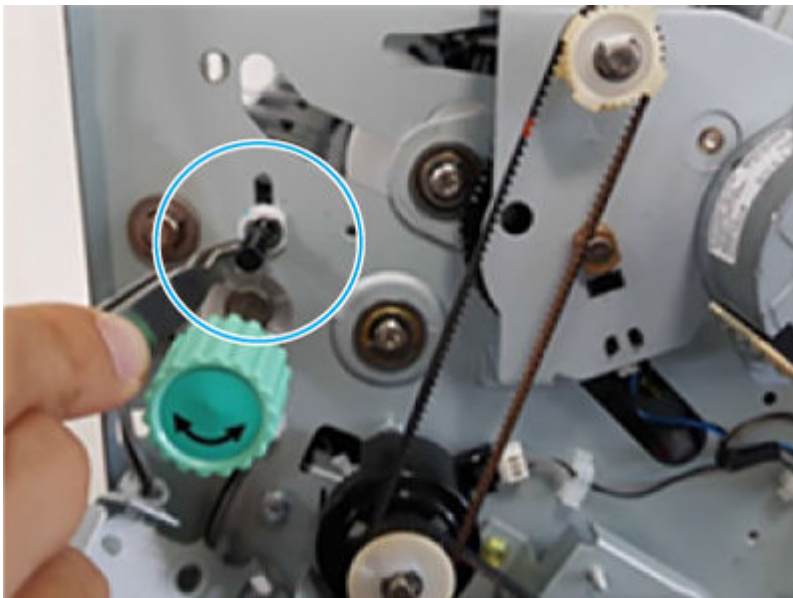
7. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then remove the actuator (callout 2).

Figure 6-2995 Remove the actuator



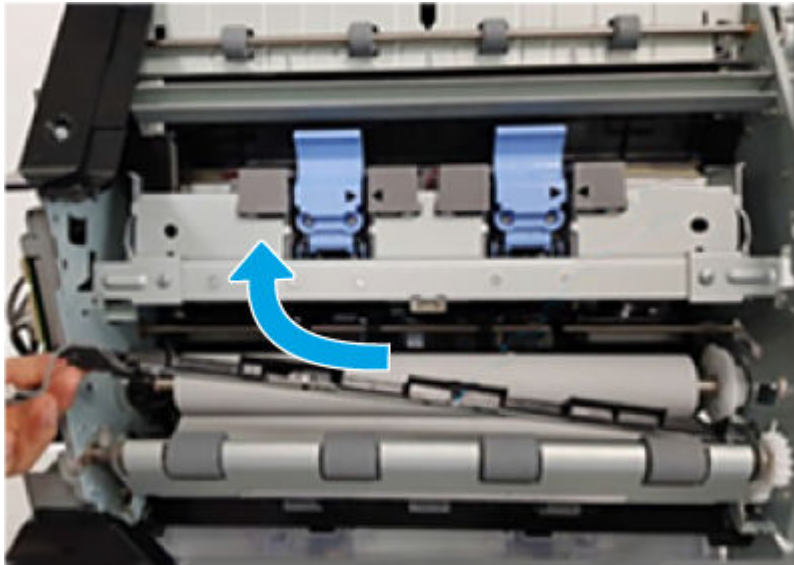
8. Remove the white-plastic bushing.

Figure 6-2996 Remove the bushing



9. Remove the booklet diverter.


Figure 6-2997 Remove the diverter



9 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

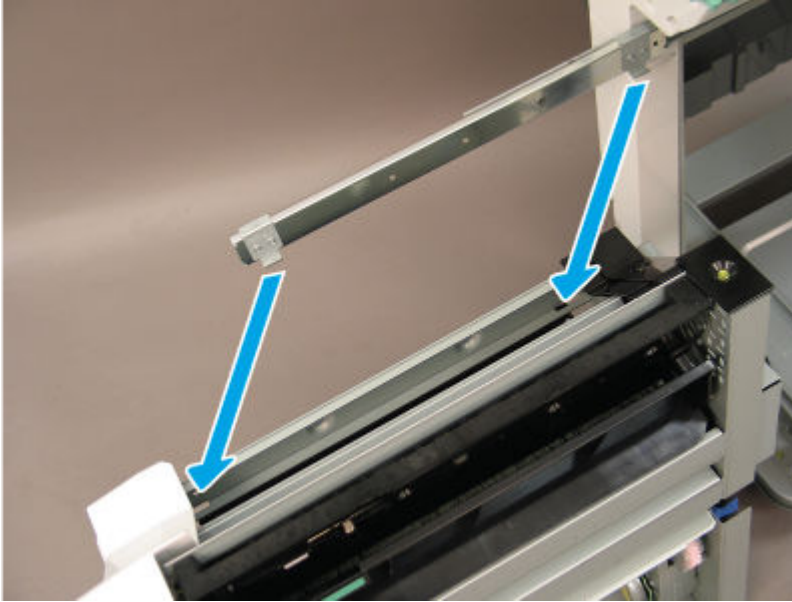
Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.



NOTE: Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

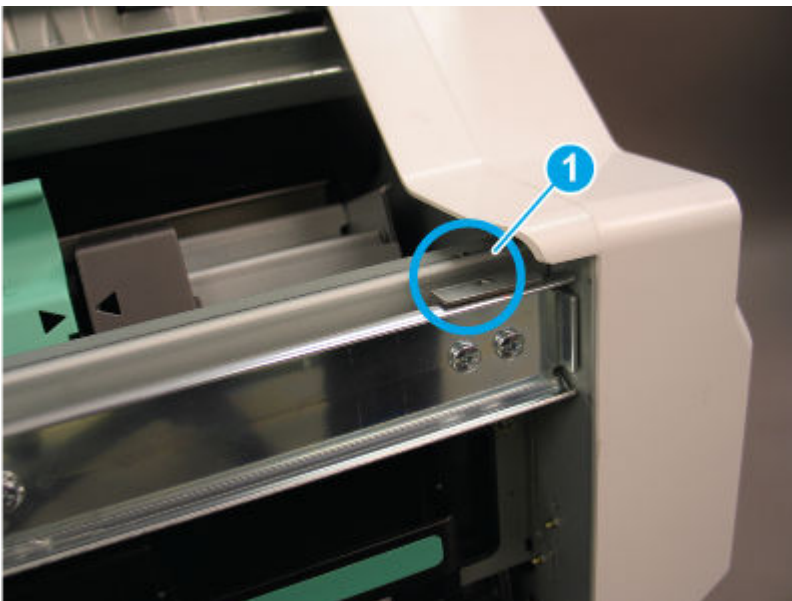
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2998 Position the hooks on the rail



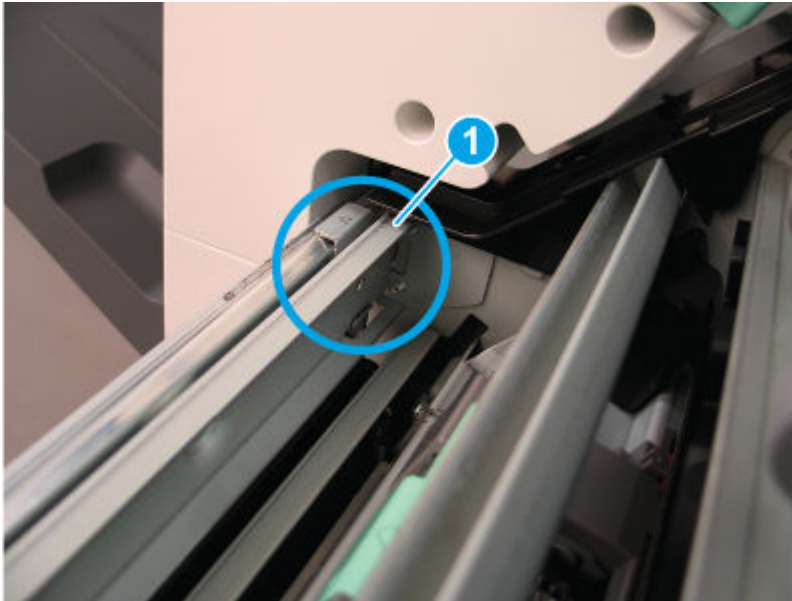
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2999 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-3000 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-3001 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher diverter home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-361 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Booklet booklet diverter home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

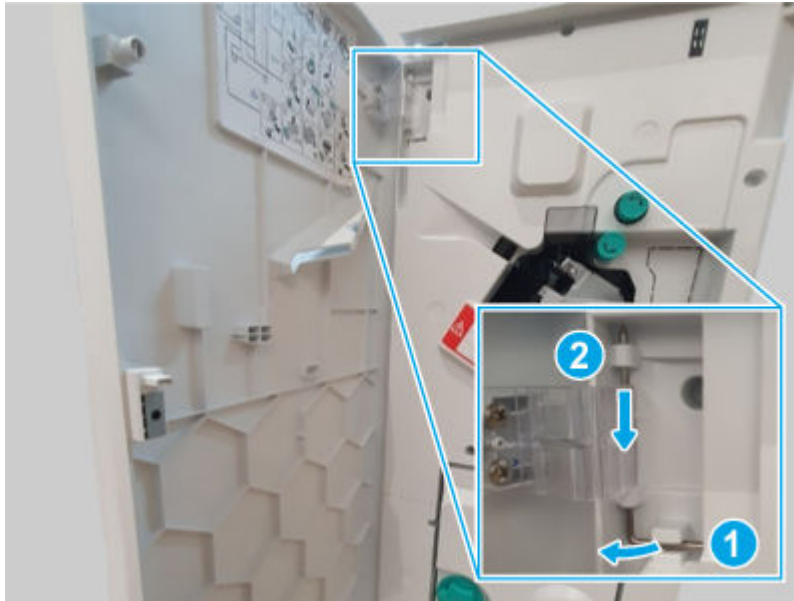
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

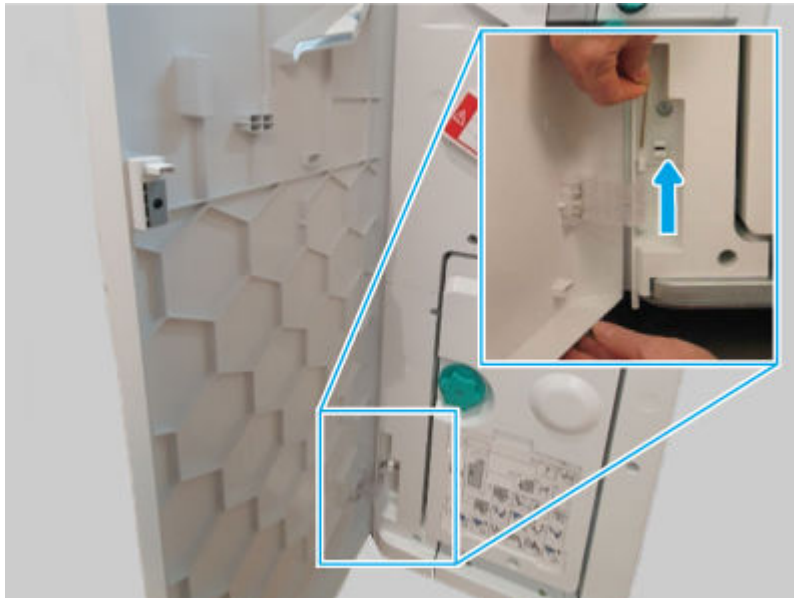
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-3002 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-3003 Remove the door

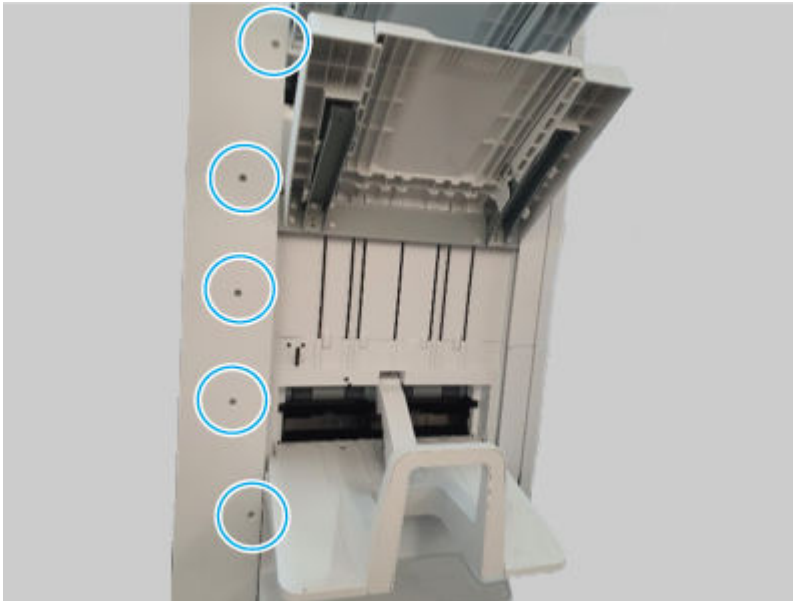


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-3004 Remove five screws

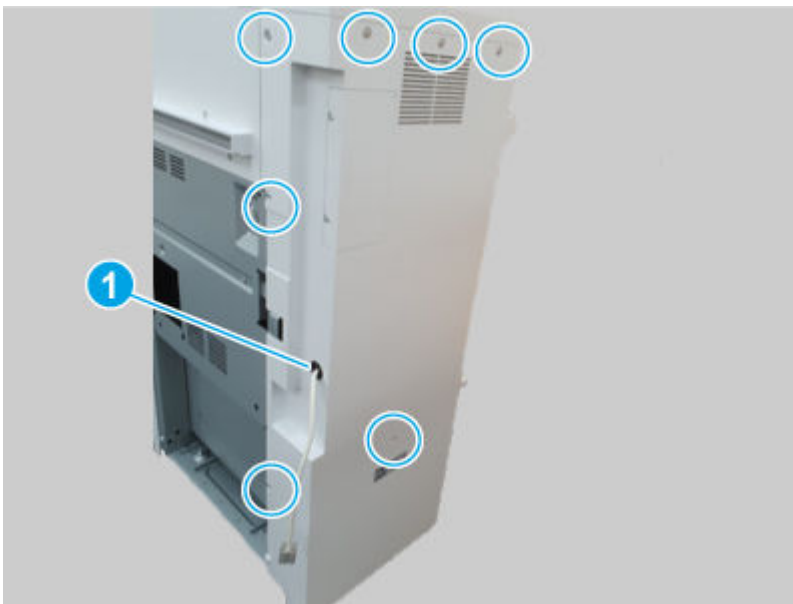


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-3005 Remove the cover



- 3 **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

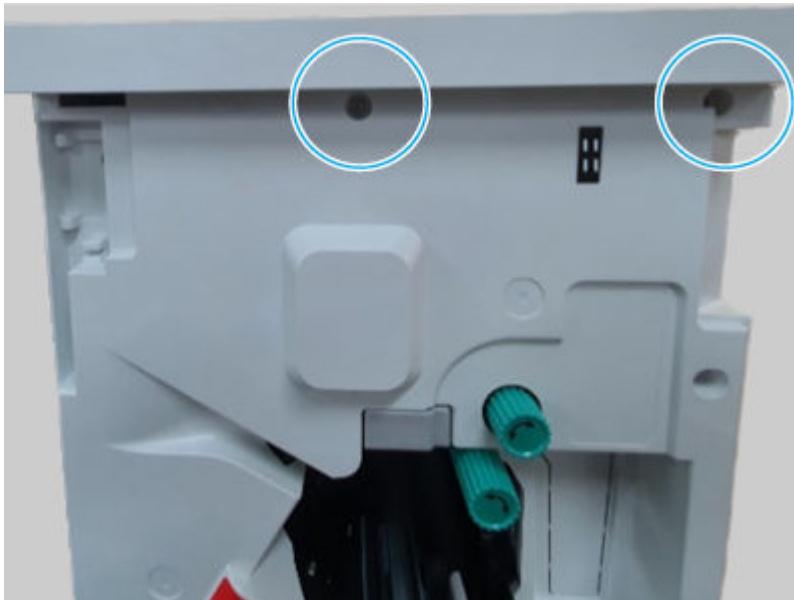
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3006 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-3007 Remove the cover



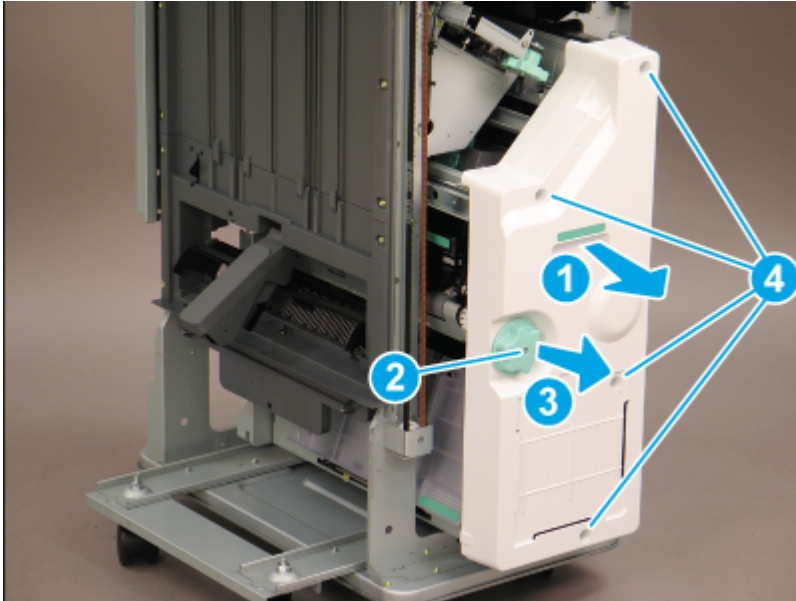
4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-3008 Remove the cover

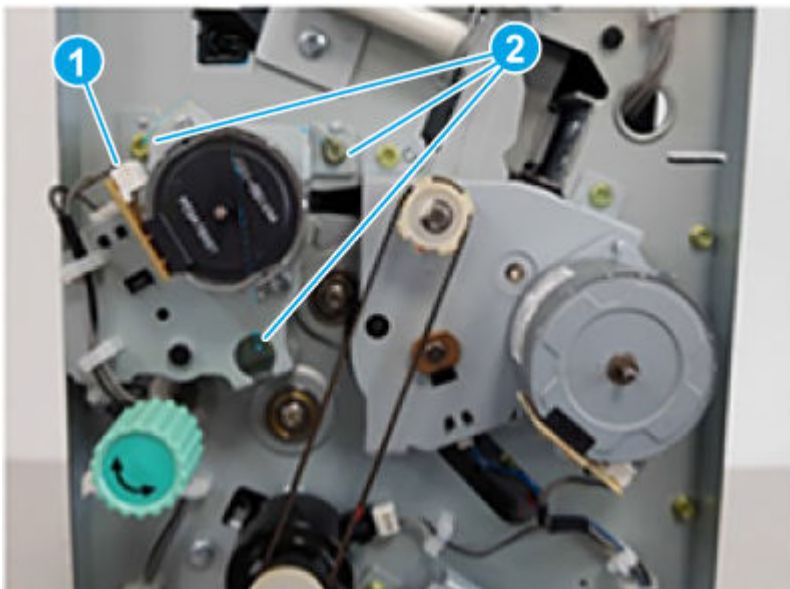


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor assembly.

Figure 6-3009 Remove the assembly

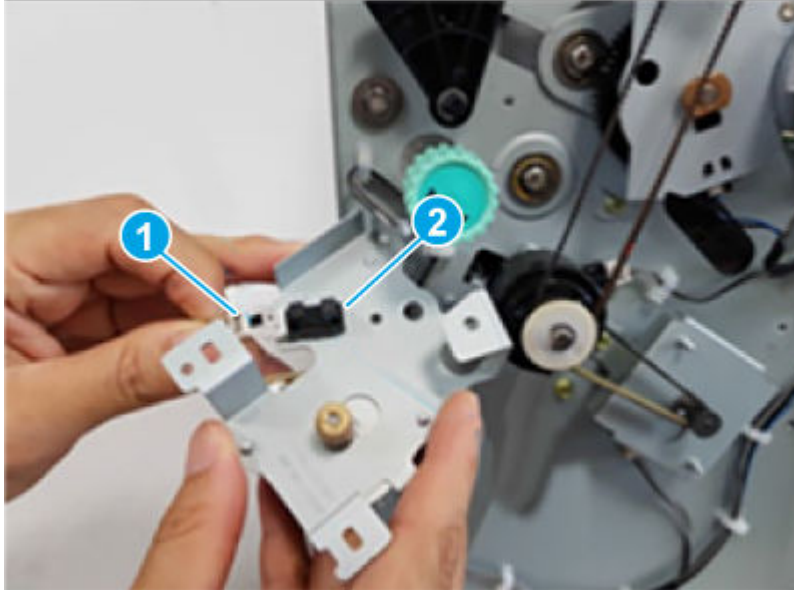


6 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the booklet diverter home sensor.

Figure 6-3010 Remove the sensor



7 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher diverter motor assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-362 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01397A	Booklet diverter motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

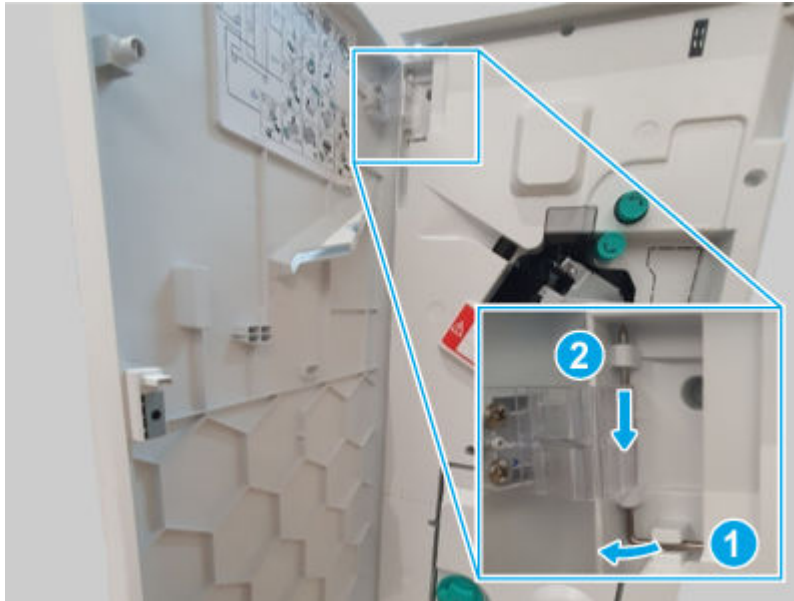
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

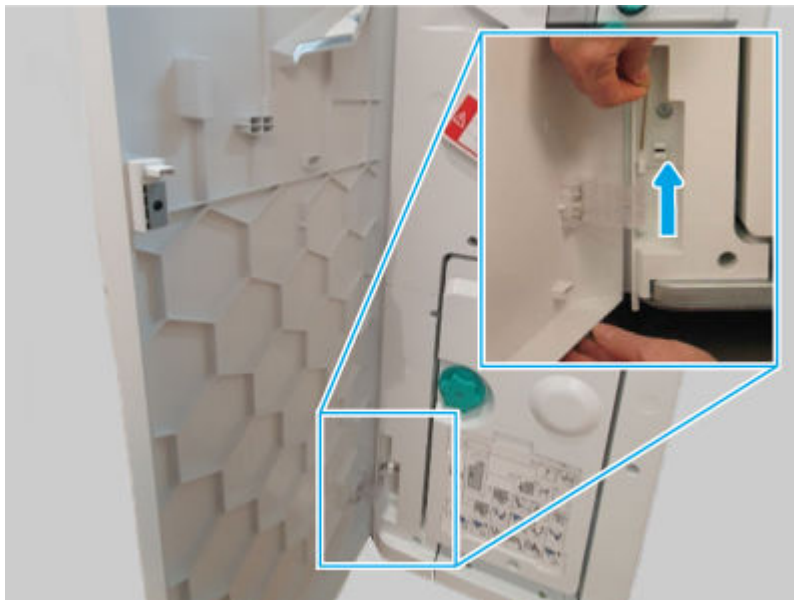
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-3011 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-3012 Remove the door

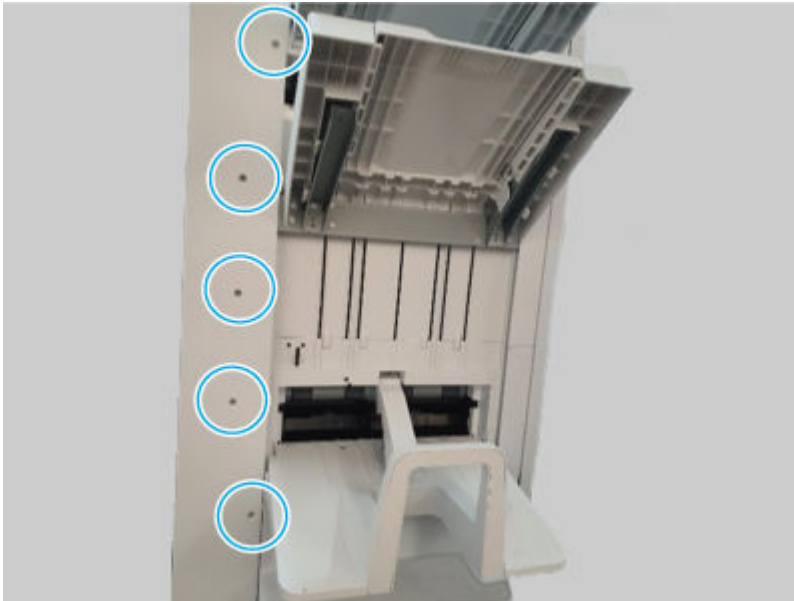


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-3013 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


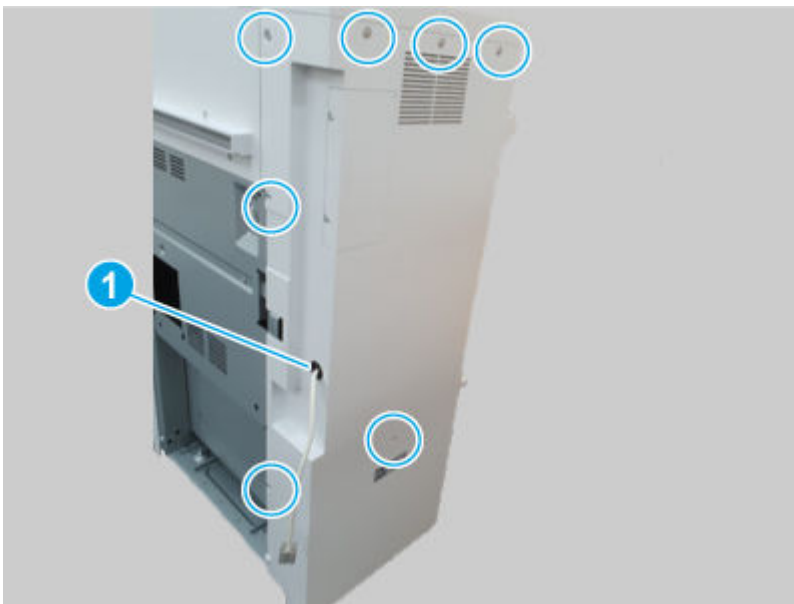
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-3014 Remove the cover



- 3 **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

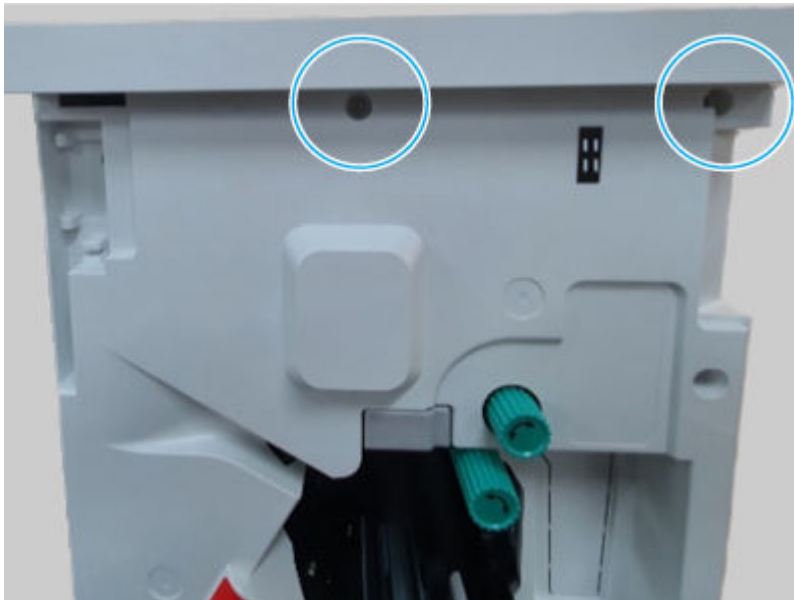
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3015 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-3016 Remove the cover



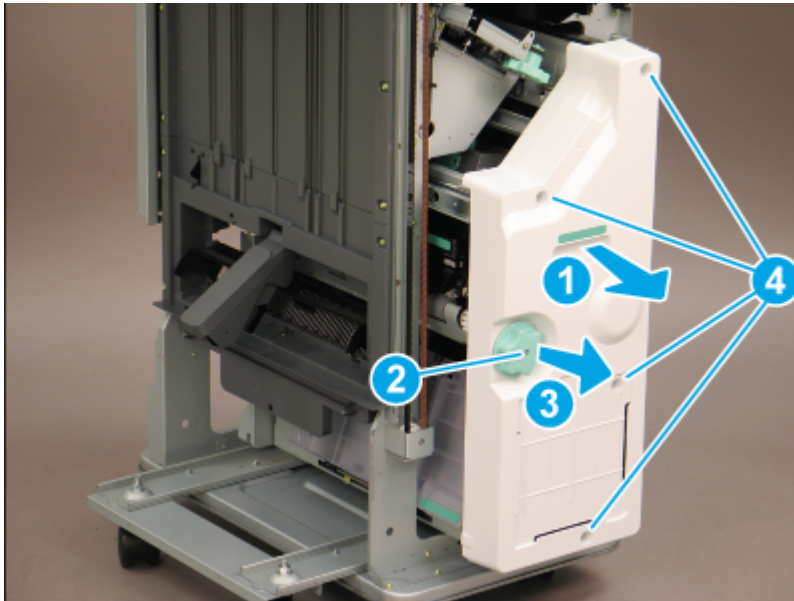
4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-3017 Remove the cover

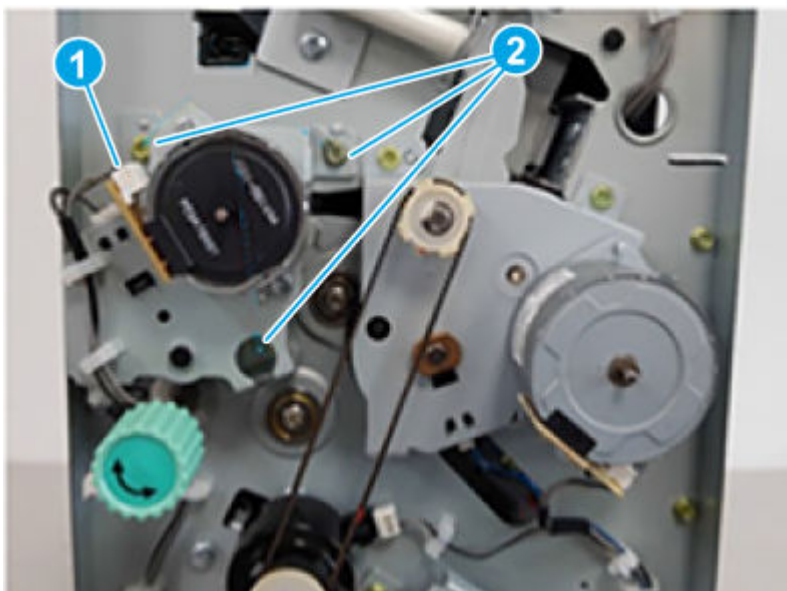


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor assembly.

Figure 6-3018 Remove the assembly



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher diverter motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-363 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC81-09881B	Booklet diverter motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

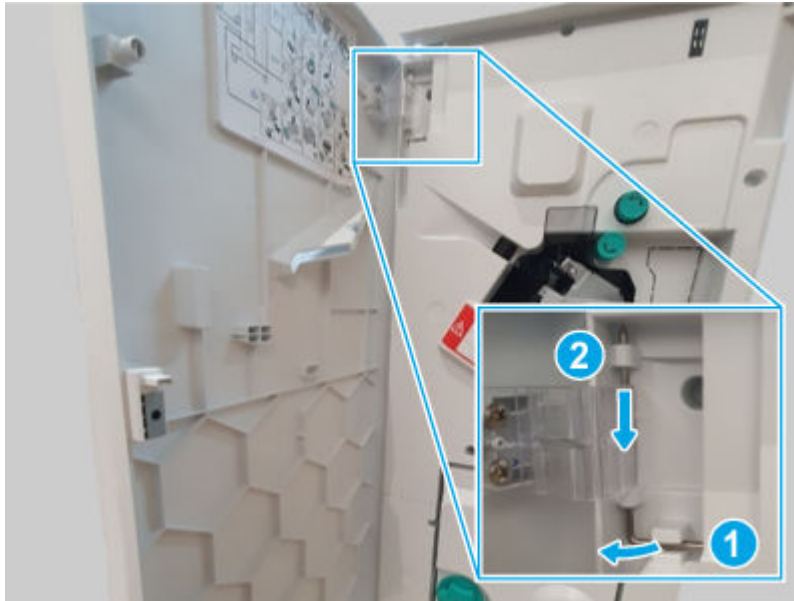
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

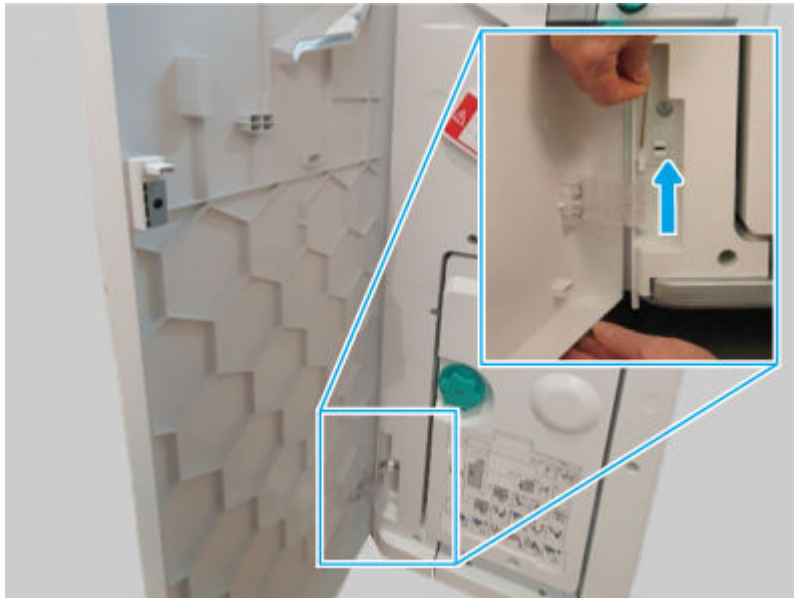
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-3019 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-3020 Remove the door

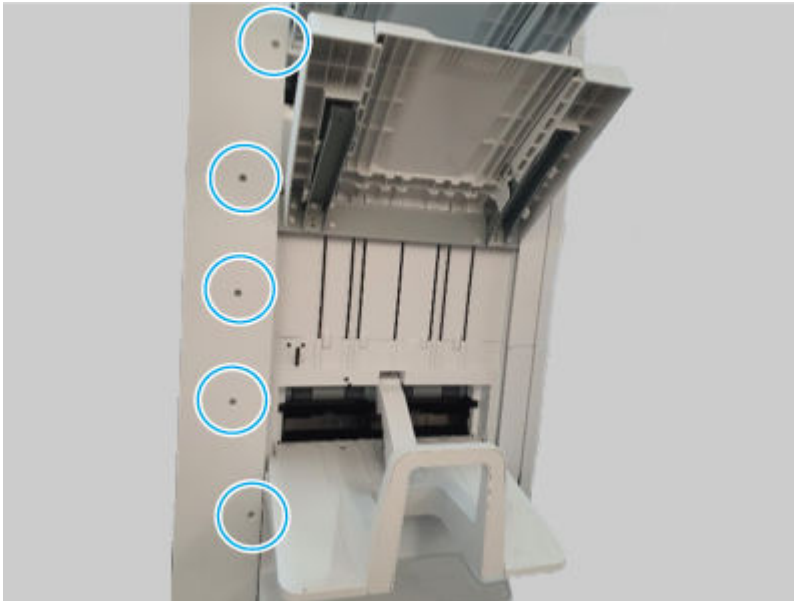


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-3021 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


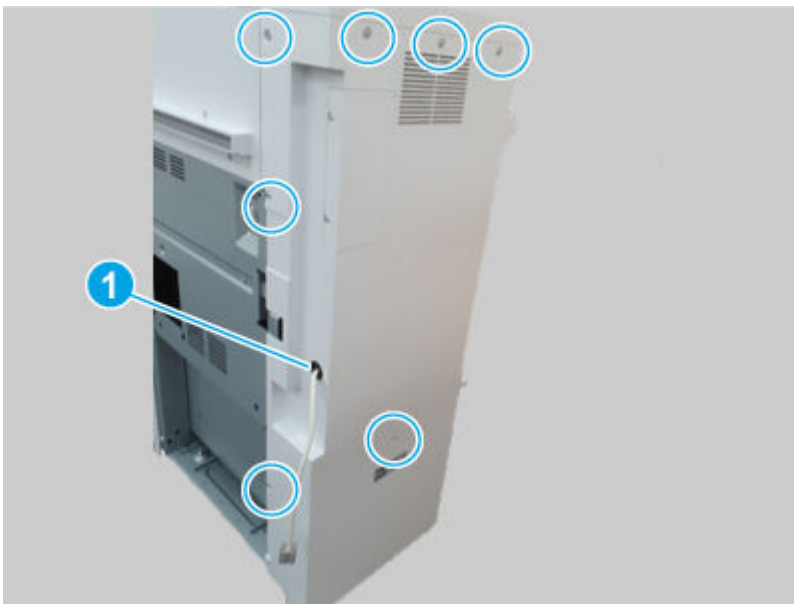
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-3022 Remove the cover



- 3 **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

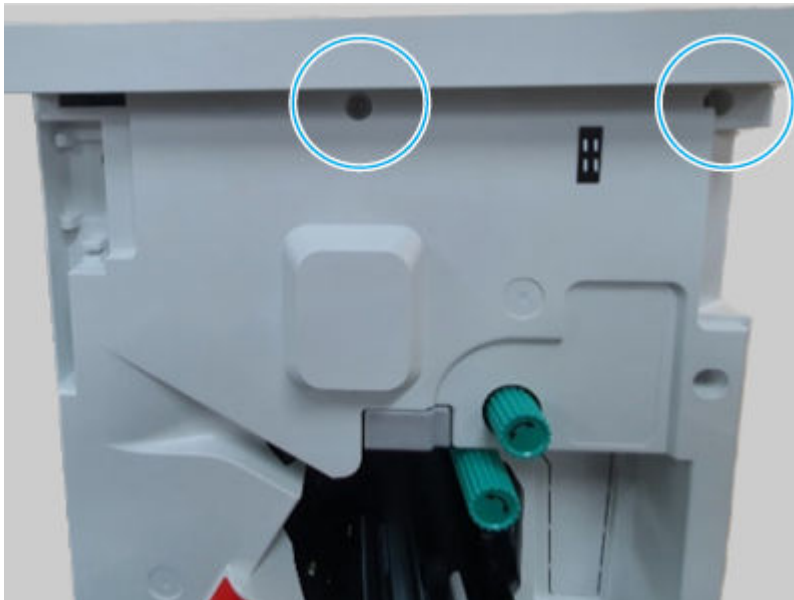
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3023 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-3024 Remove the cover



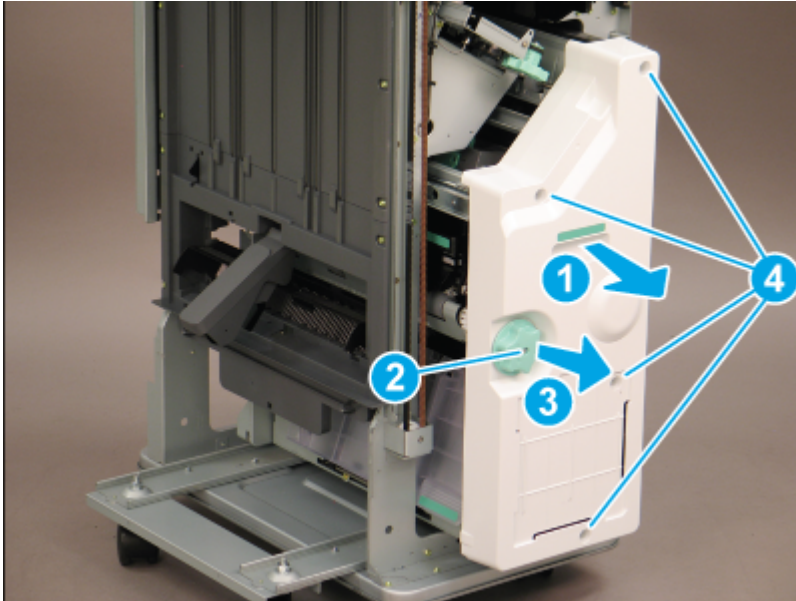
4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-3025 Remove the cover

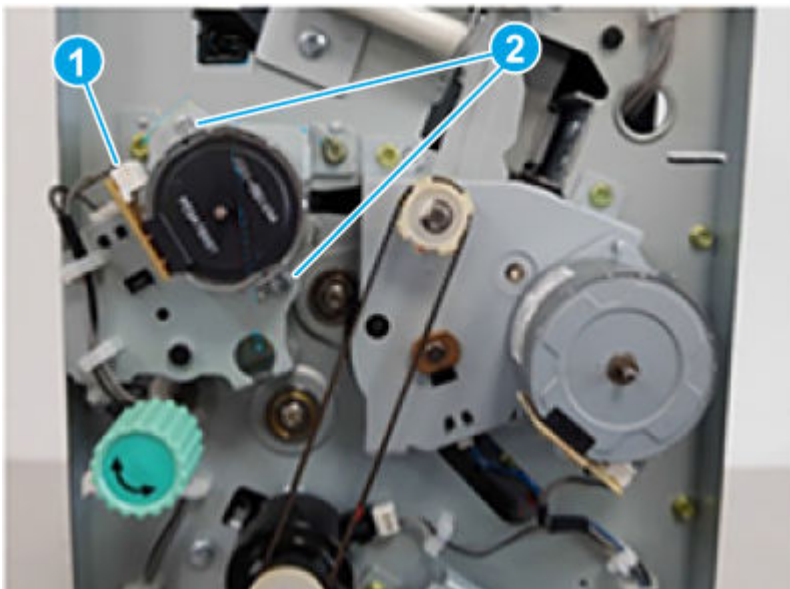


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor.

Figure 6-3026 Remove the motor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet output tray unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet output tray unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher output tray.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-364 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60126	Booklet output tray

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

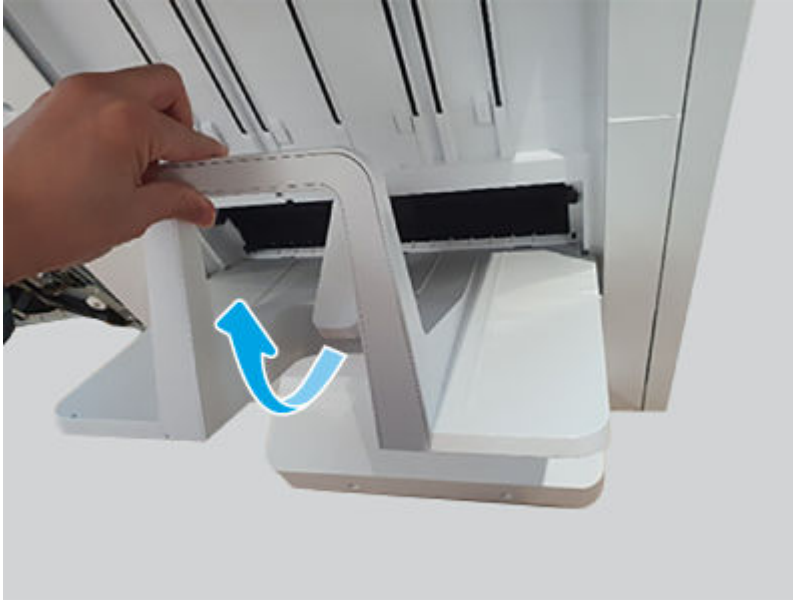
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the booklet finisher booklet output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet output tray.

- Rotate the front of the tray up, and then pull it away from the finisher to remove it.


Figure 6-3027 Remove the tray



2 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher output tray sensor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-365 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	Tray sensor kit (Booklet output tray sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

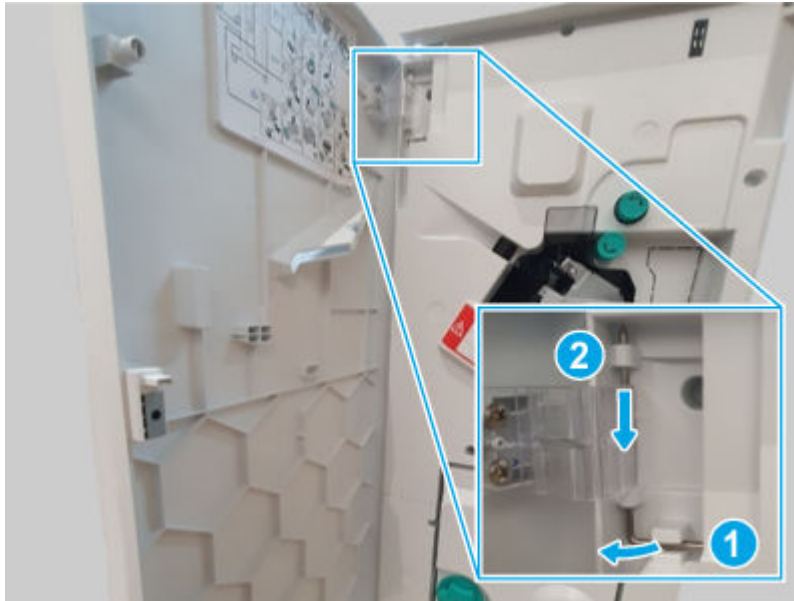
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

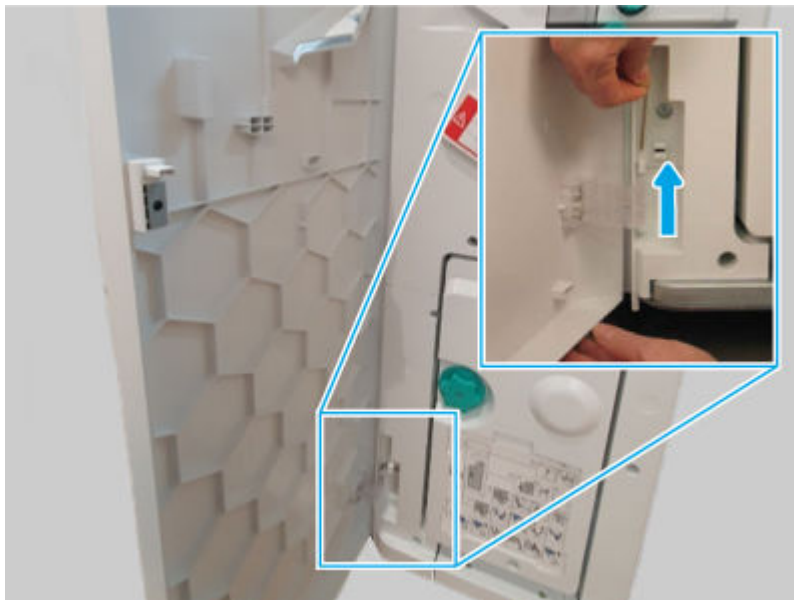
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-3028 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-3029 Remove the door



2 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

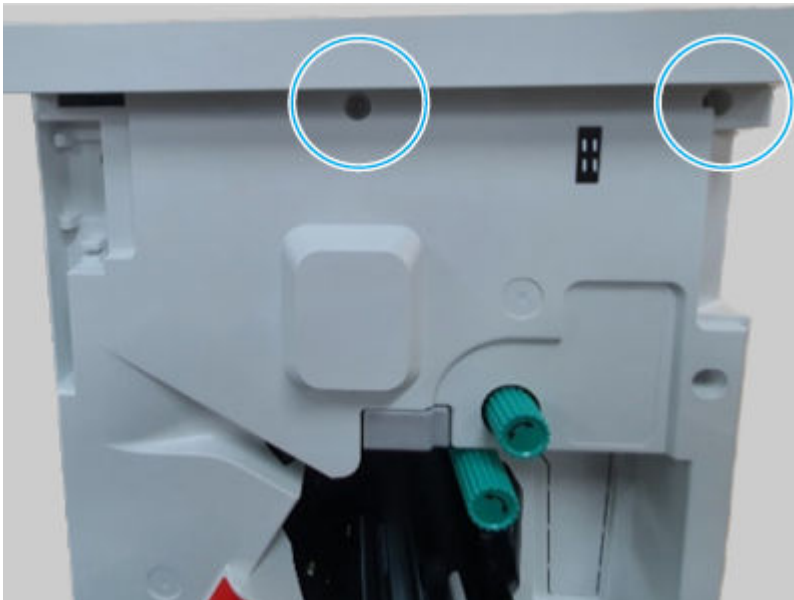
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3030 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-3031 Remove the cover

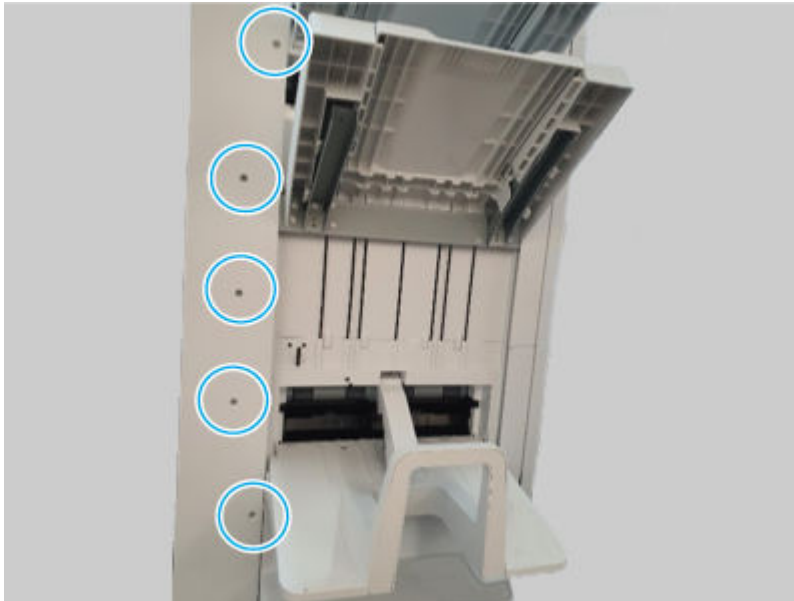


3 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-3032 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


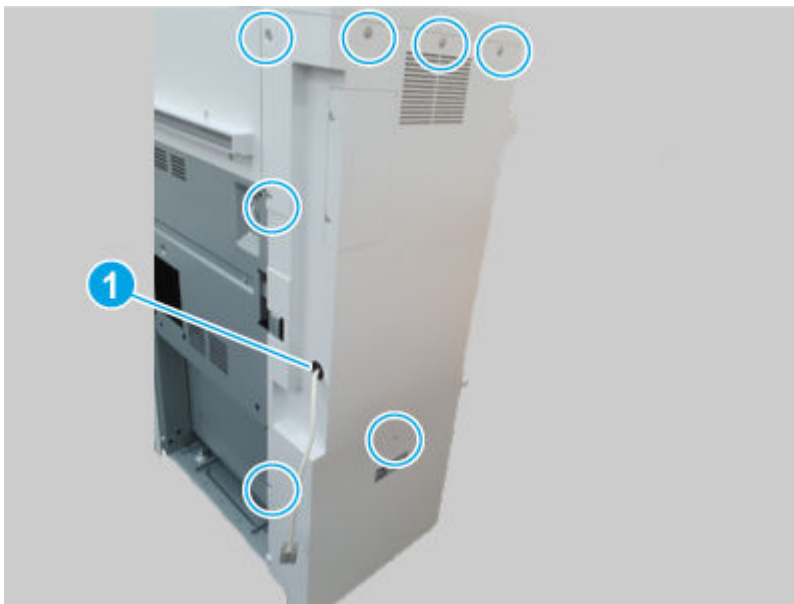
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-3033 Remove the cover



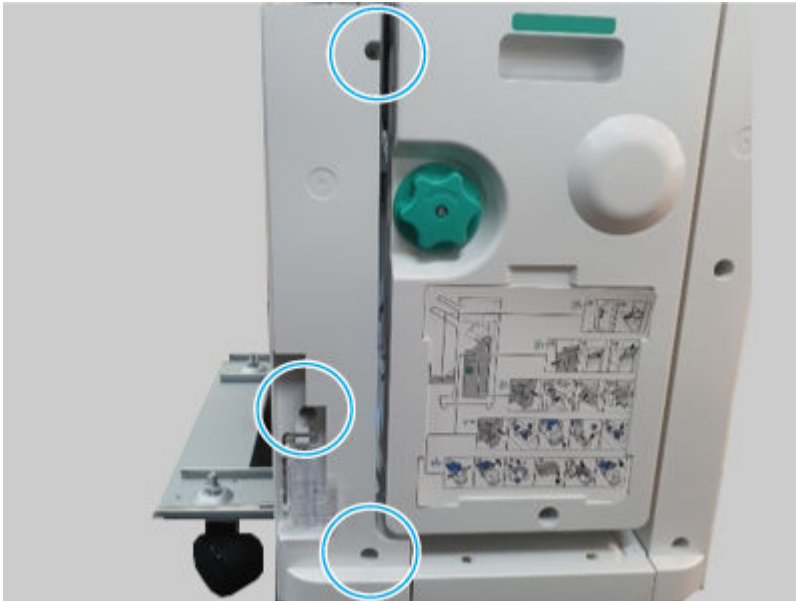
4 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-3034 Remove the cover

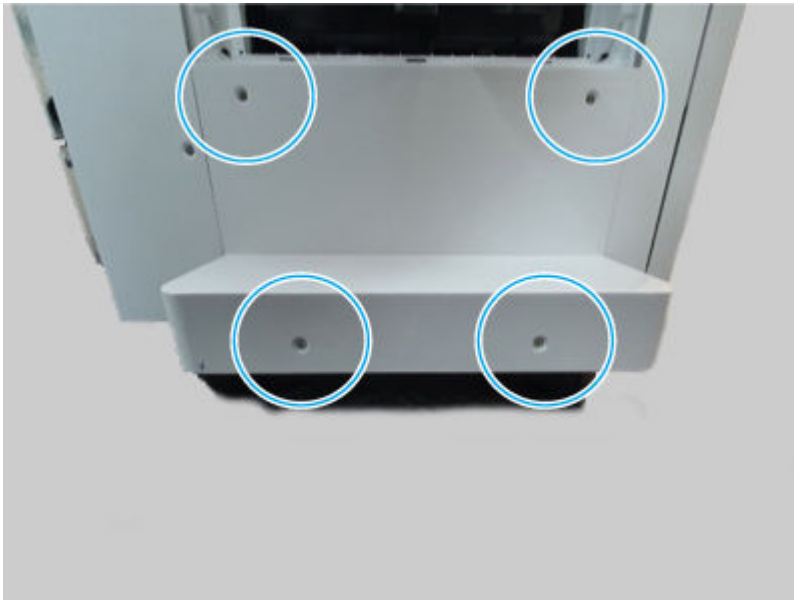


5 Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-3035 Remove the cover

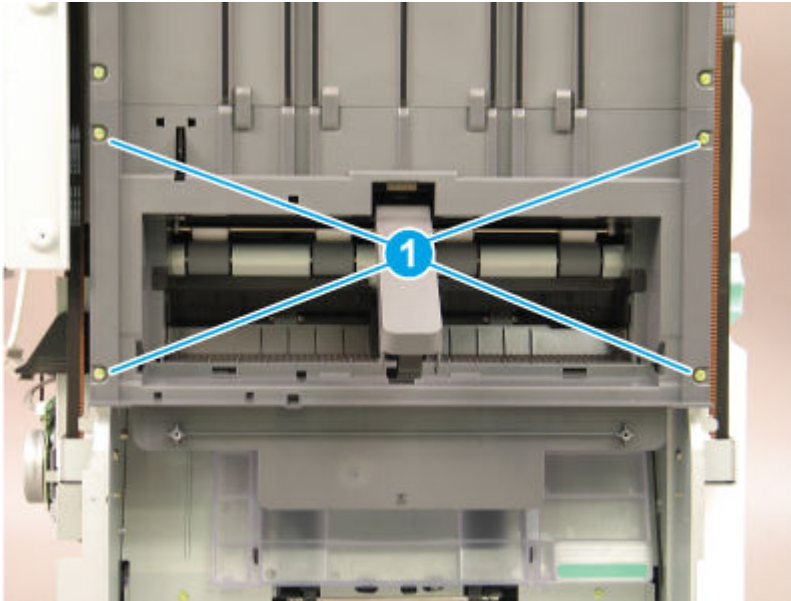


6 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-3036 Remove four screws

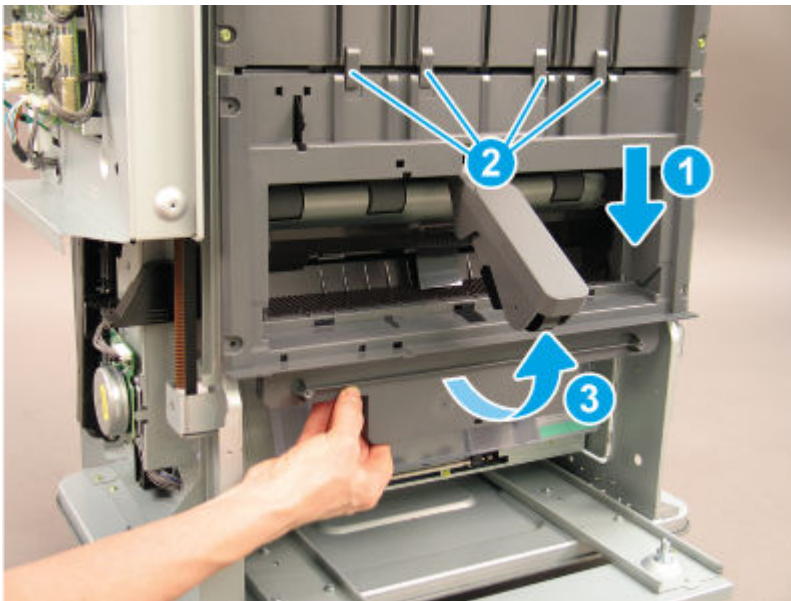


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

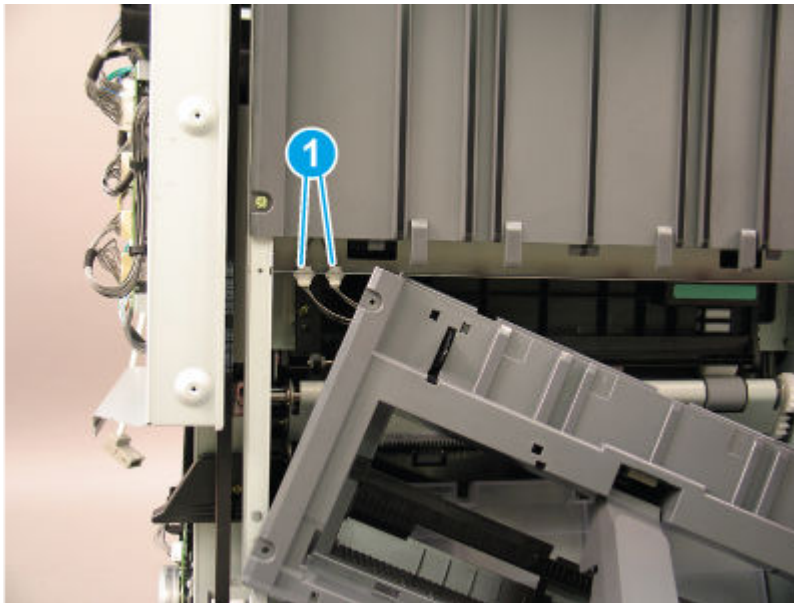
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-3037 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-3038 Remove the cover



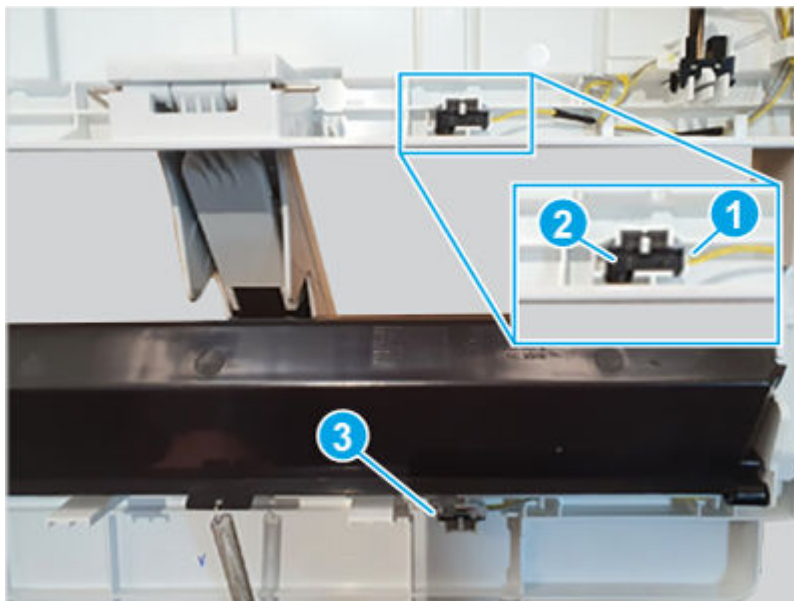
7 Remove the booklet finisher booklet output tray sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet output tray sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the booklet output tray sensor (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** Repeat this step for the remaining sensor (callout 3) if necessary.

Figure 6-3039 Remove the sensor



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA

Review the booklet finisher PCA removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Main PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher main PCA.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-366 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW55-60001	Booklet maker main PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

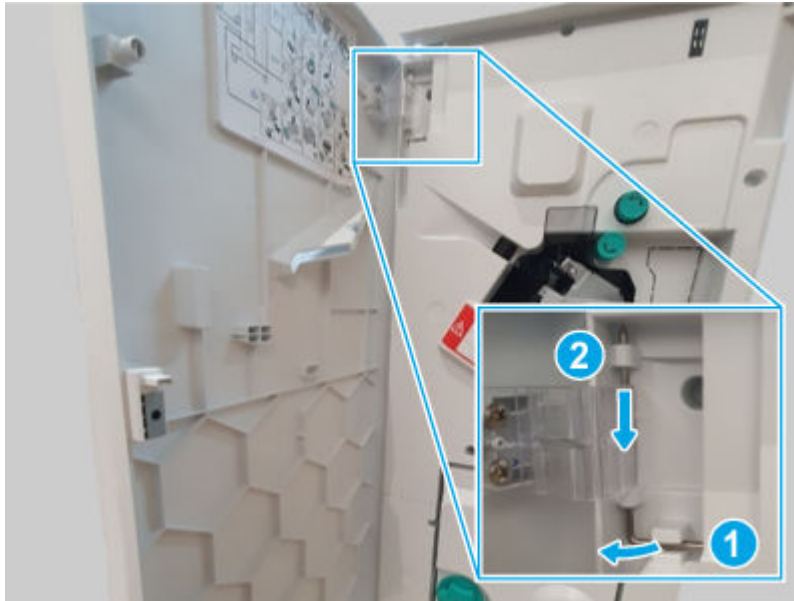
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

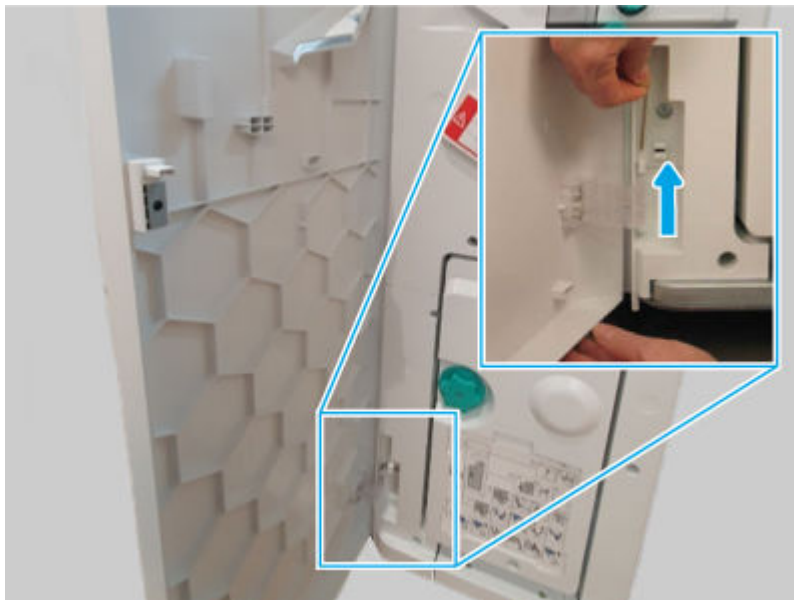
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-3040 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-3041 Remove the door



2 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

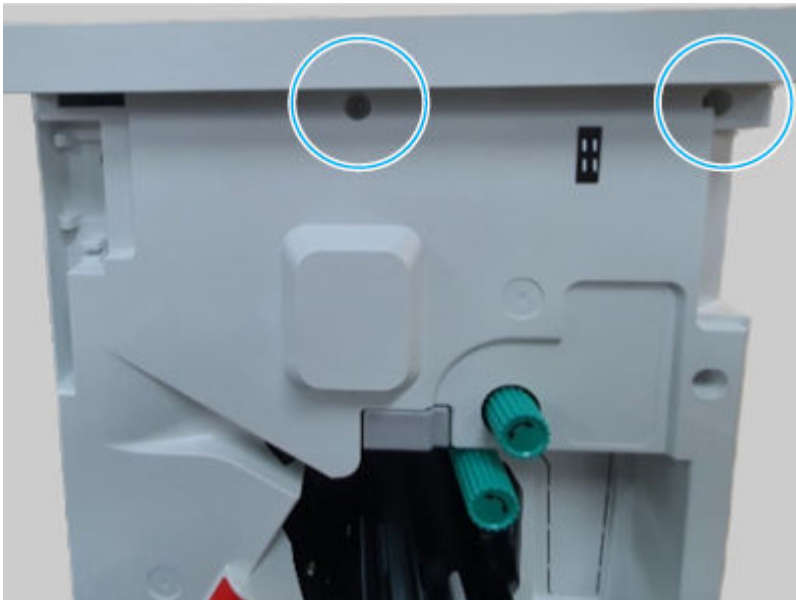
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3042 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-3043 Remove the cover

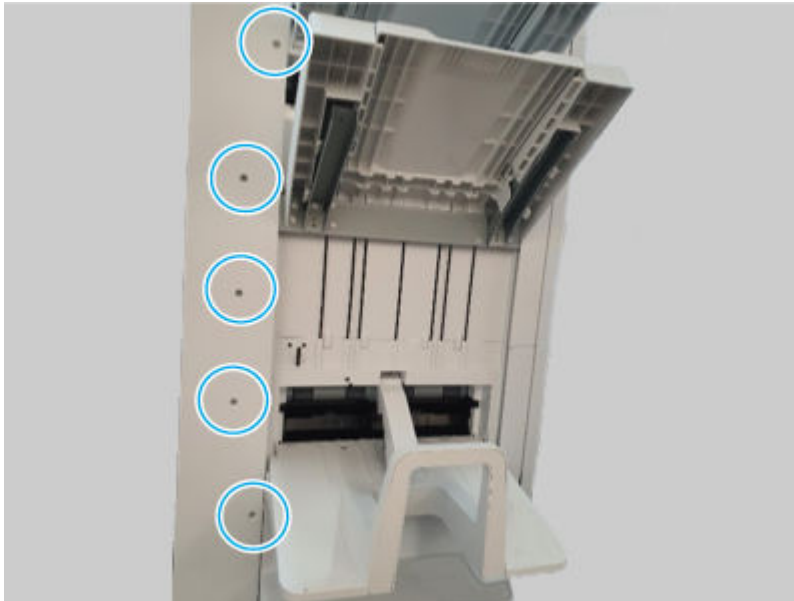


3 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-3044 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


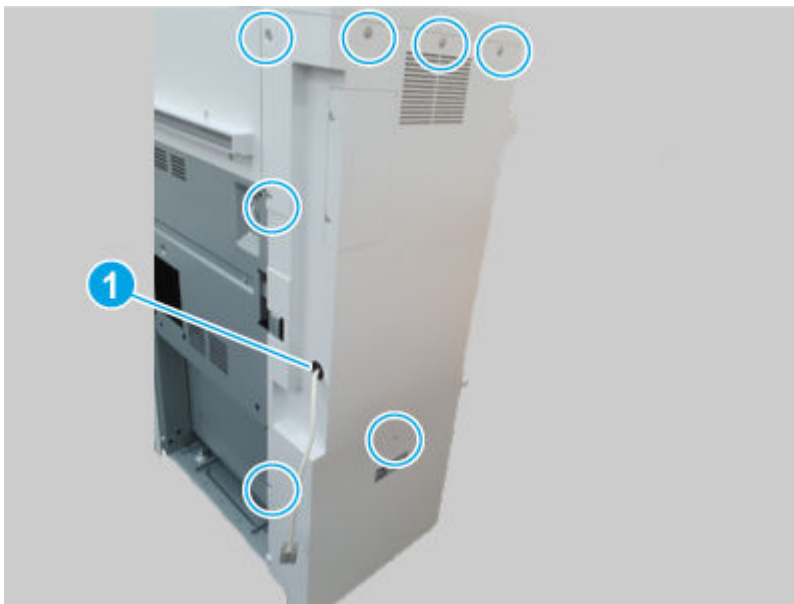
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-3045 Remove the cover

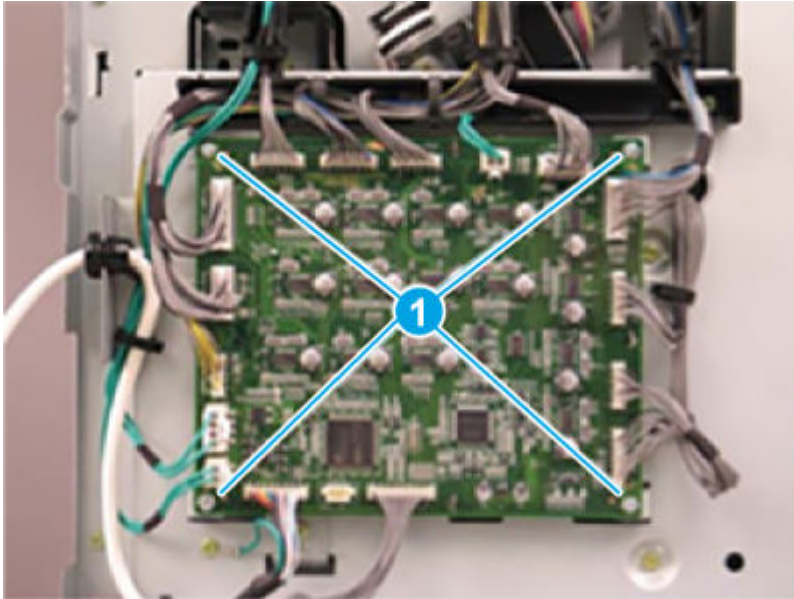


4 Remove the booklet finisher main PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher main PCA.

- Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet finisher PCA.


Figure 6-3046 Remove the PCA



5 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher PCA.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-367 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW51-60001	Booklet maker PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

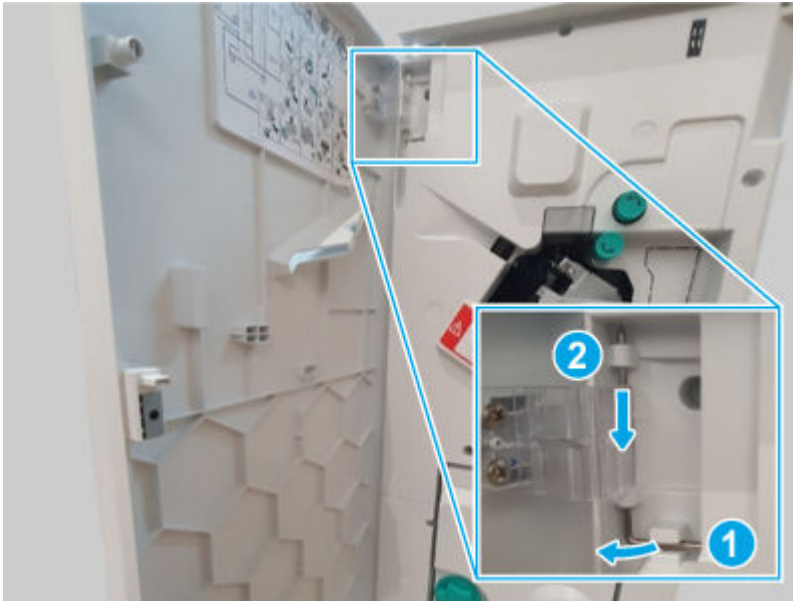
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

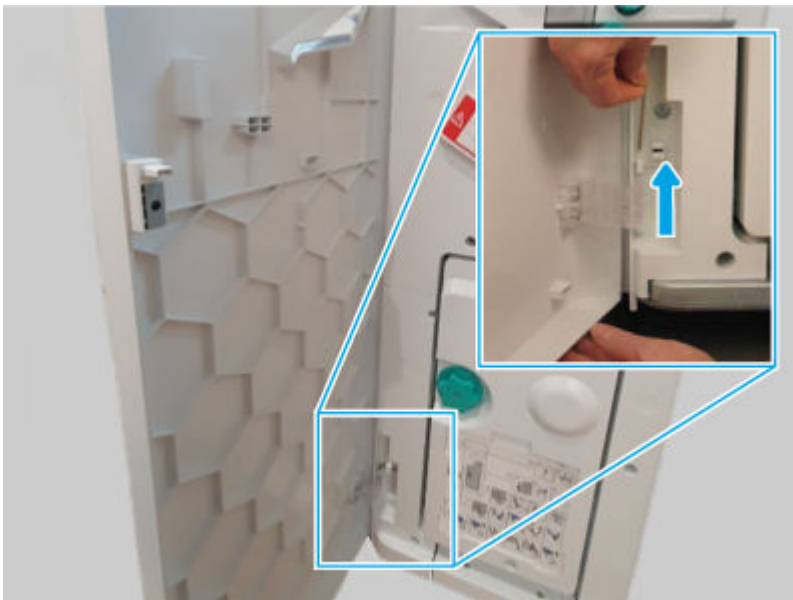
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-3047 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-3048 Remove the door

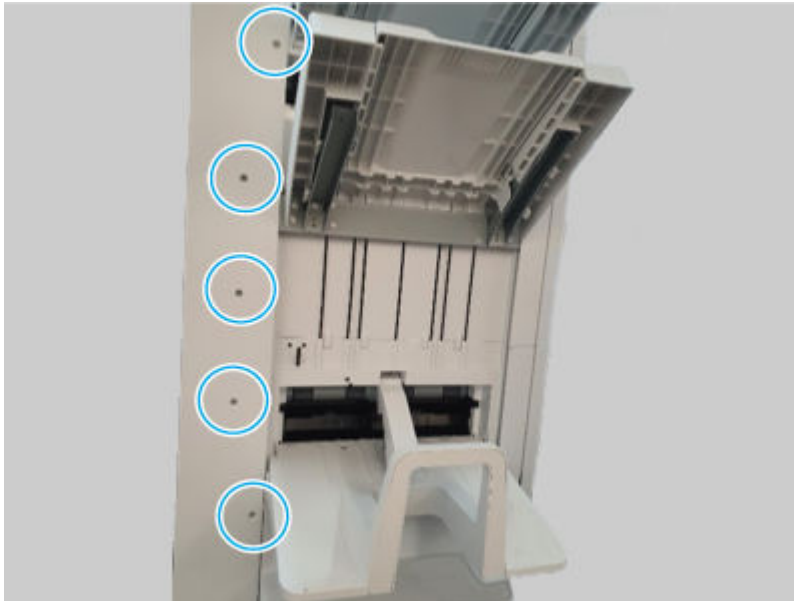


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-3049 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


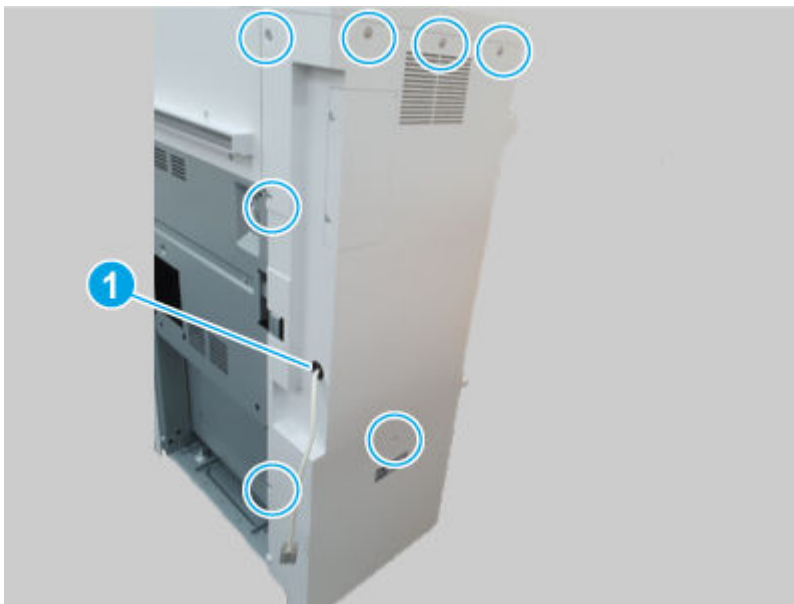
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-3050 Remove the cover

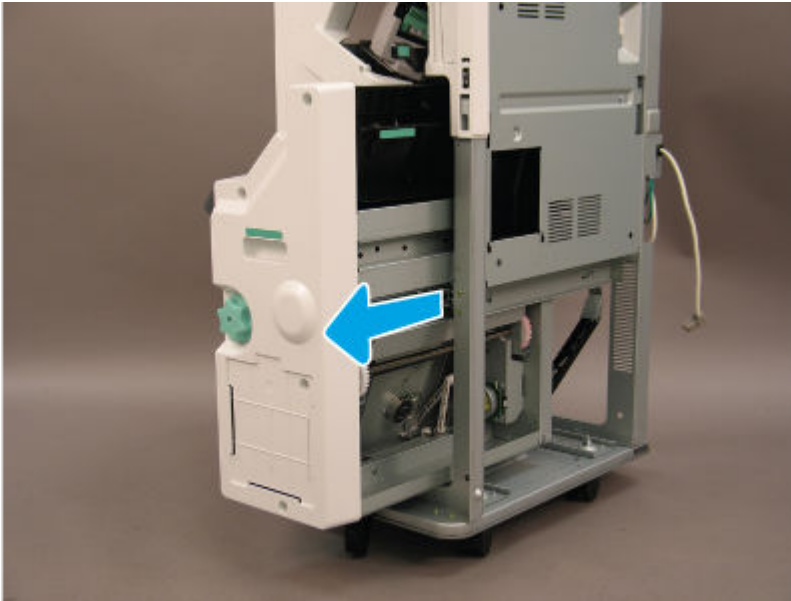


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

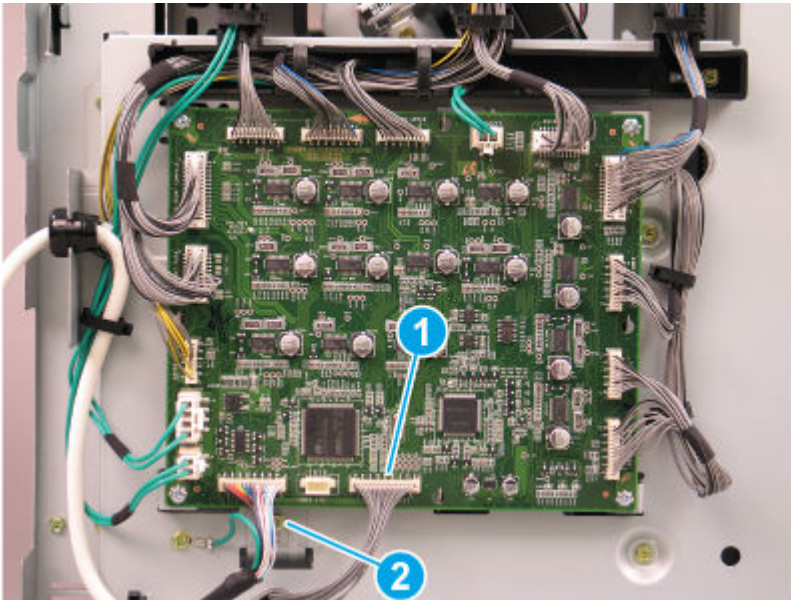
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-3051 Slide the booklet maker out



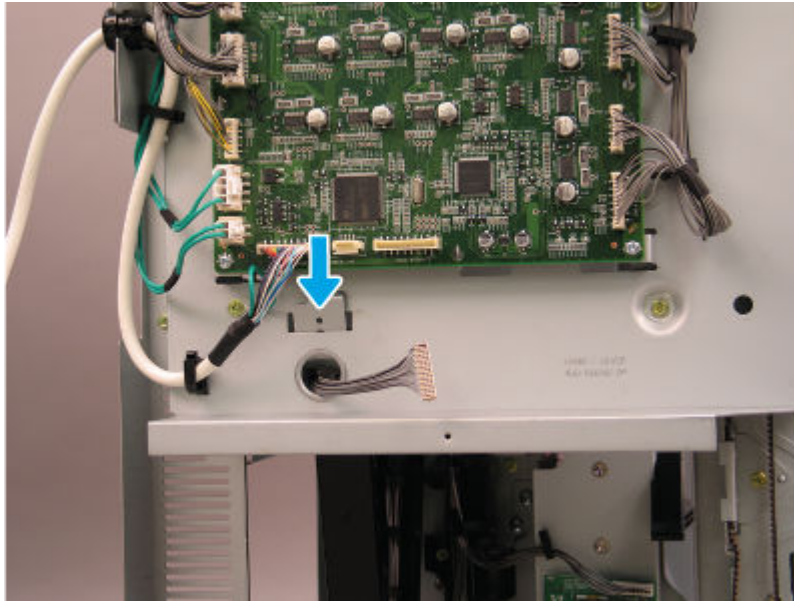
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-3052 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



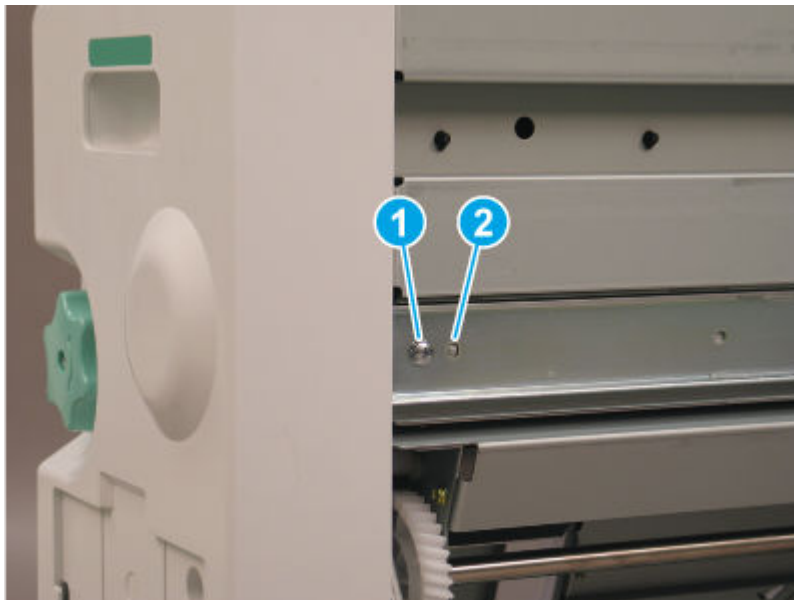
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-3053 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-3054 Release the alignment pin



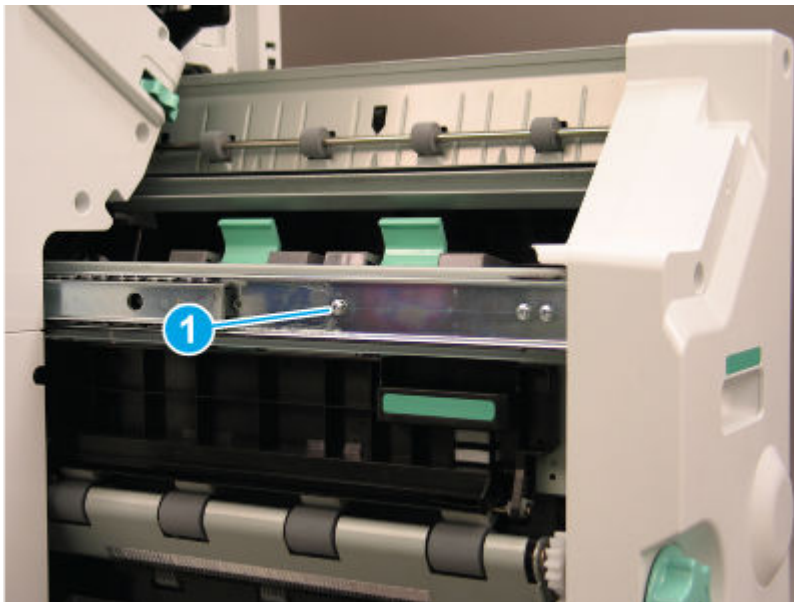
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-3055 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-3056 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


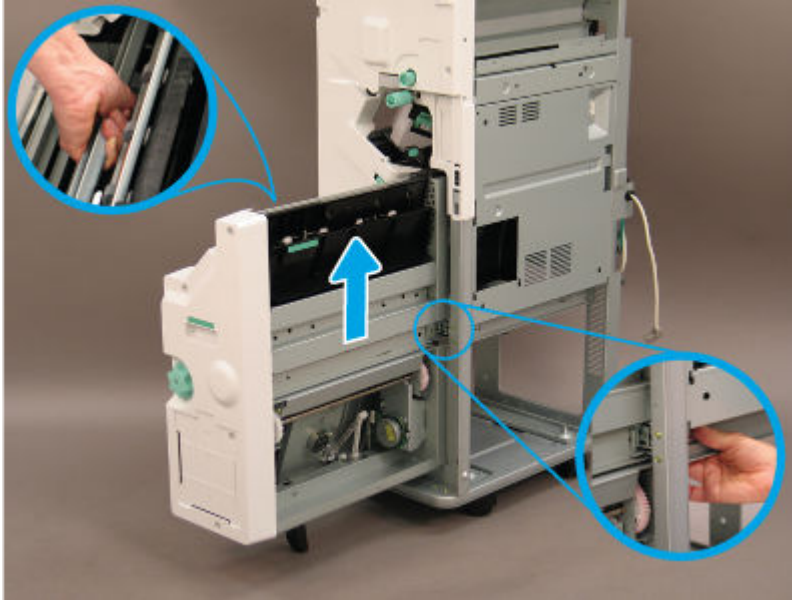
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-3057 Remove the booklet maker

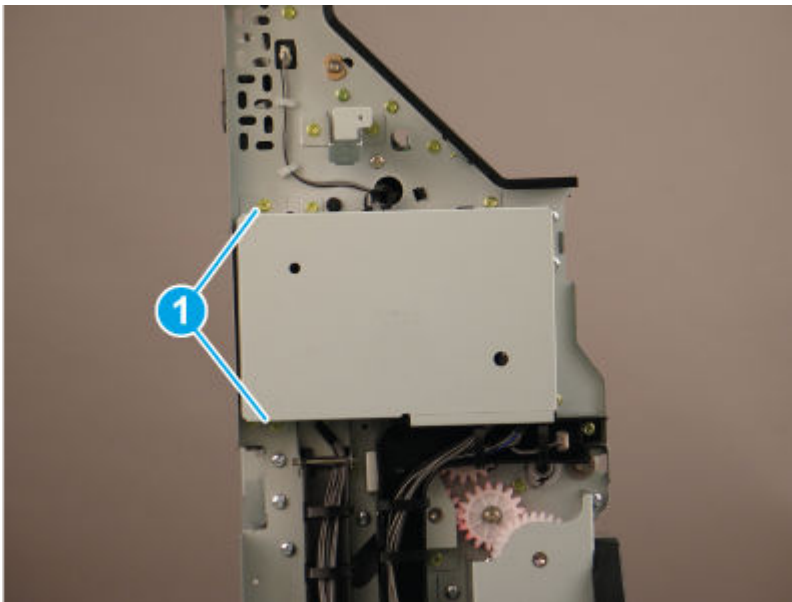


4 Remove the booklet finisher PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher PCA.

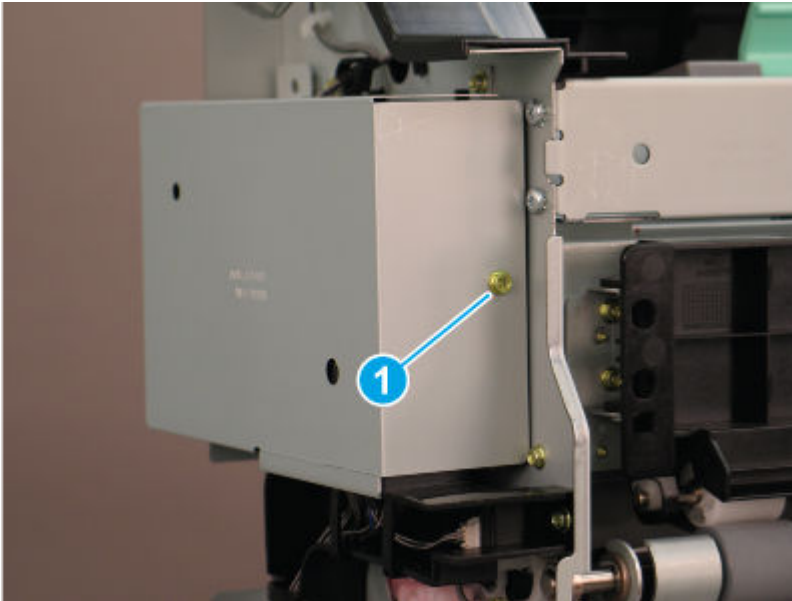
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-3058 Remove two screws



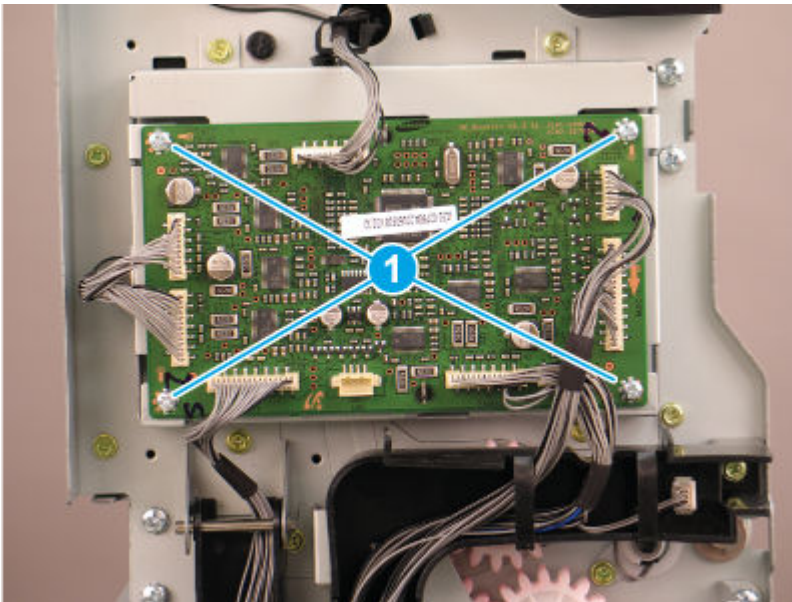
2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 6-3059 Remove one screw



3. Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet finisher PCA.

Figure 6-3060 Remove the PCA



5 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

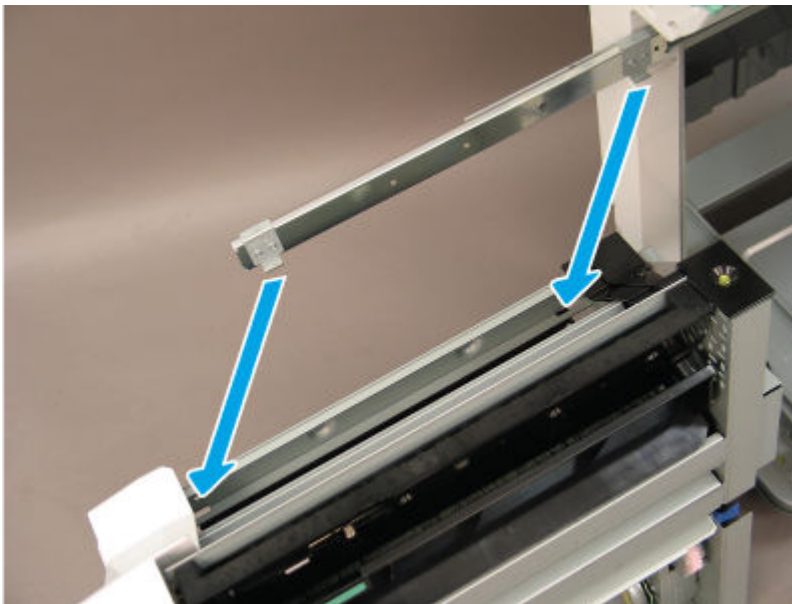
6 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

NOTE:  Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

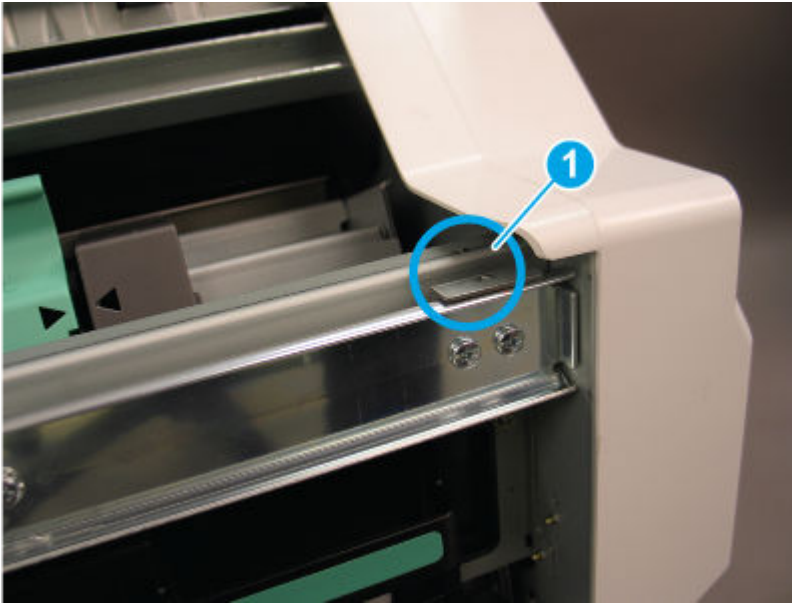
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-3061 Position the hooks on the rail



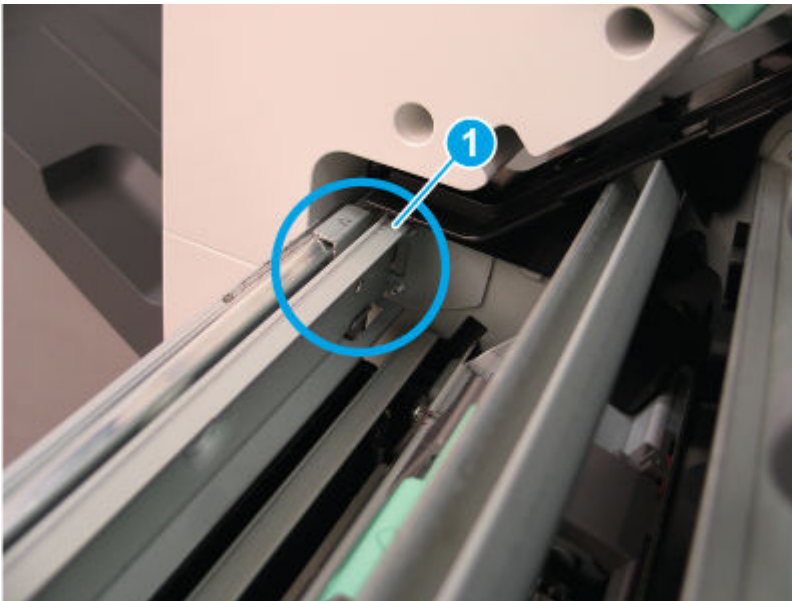
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-3062 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-3063 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-3064 Attach the rail



Miscellaneous parts

Review the booklet finisher miscellaneous parts removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Finisher mounting brackets

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher mounting brackets.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-368 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01442A	Finisher mount bracket

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher mounting brackets

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher mounting brackets.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the external finisher mounting brackets.

Figure 6-3065 Remove the brackets



2 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Inner finisher

Learn about inner finisher parts removal and replacement.

Whole unit and rail

Review the inner finisher whole unit and rail removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Inner finisher

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-369 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW49-67002	Inner finisher

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3066 Disconnect one connector



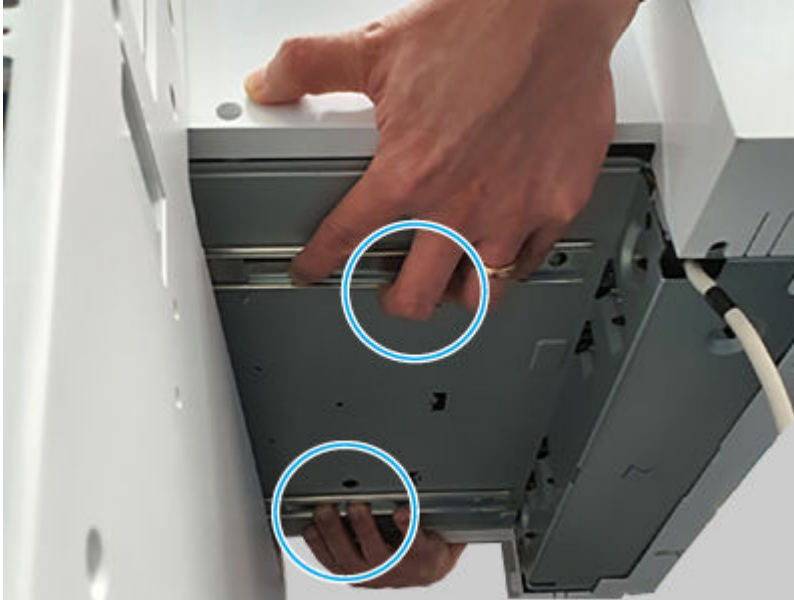
2. Open the front cover, and then pull the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3067 Pull the handle



3. Do the following:
 - Partially slide the inner finisher away from the printer.
 - Release two locks on the slide rails.
 - Slide the inner finisher completely off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-3068 Remove the unit



2 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Guide rails

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher guide rails.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher form the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-370 Part information

Part number	Part description
6102-003354	Guide rail

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3069 Disconnect one connector



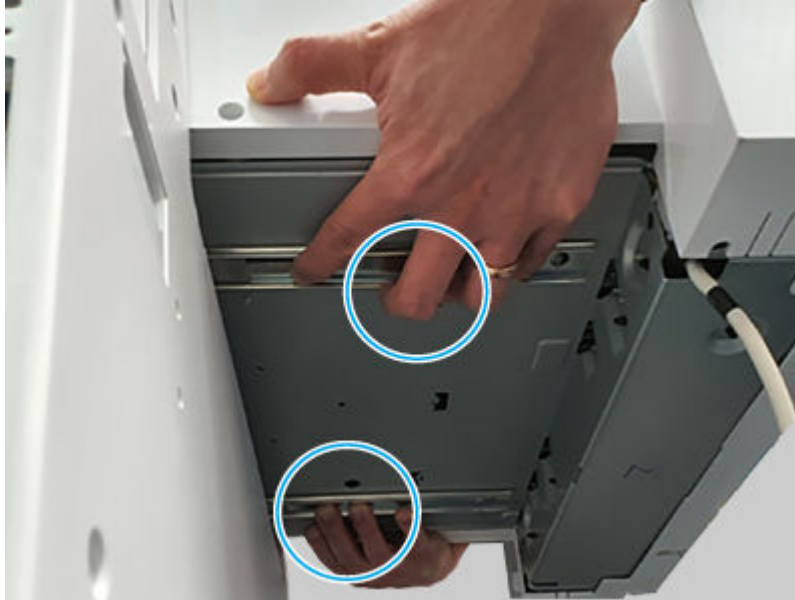
2. Open the front cover, and then pull the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3070 Pull the handle



3. Do the following:
 - Partially slide the inner finisher away from the printer.
 - Release two locks on the slide rails.
 - Slide the inner finisher completely off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-3071 Remove the unit

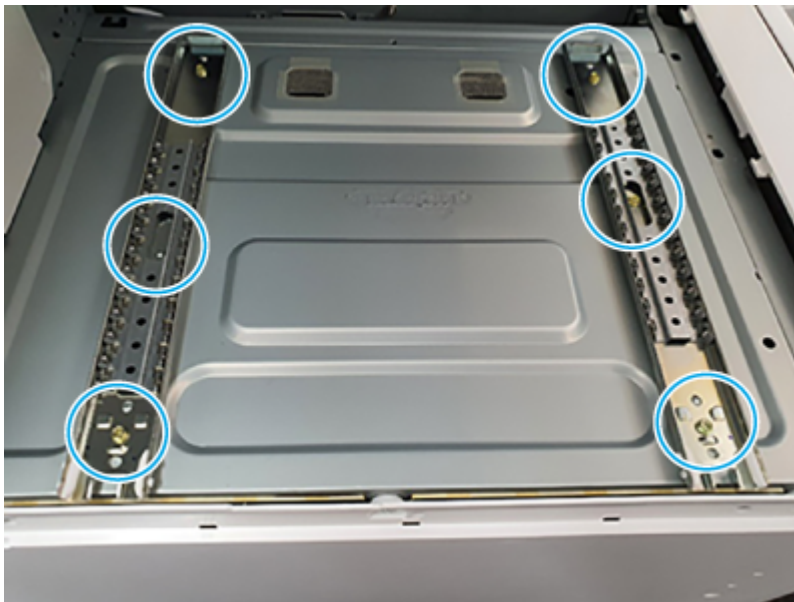


2 Remove the inner finisher guide rails

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher guide rails.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher guide rails.


Figure 6-3072 Remove the guide rails





3 Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Cover

Review the inner finisher cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-371 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60123	Front cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

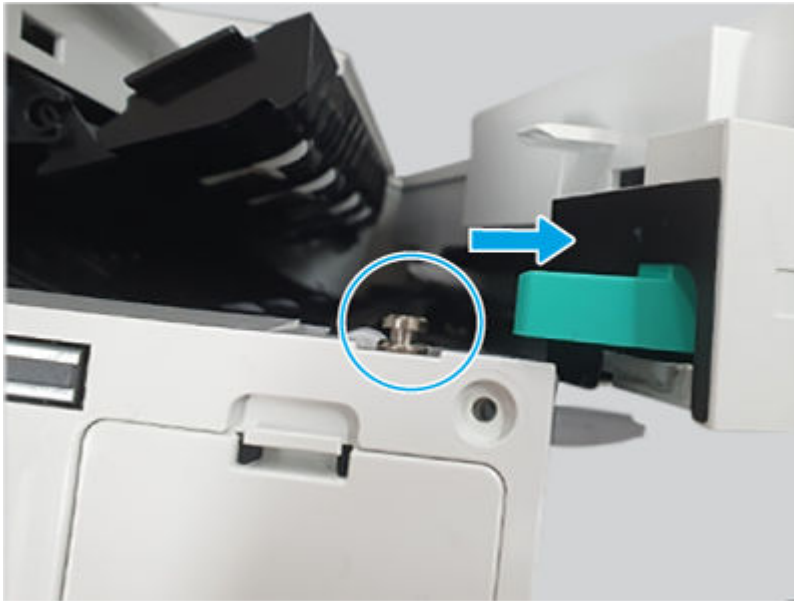
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3073 Open the punch cover



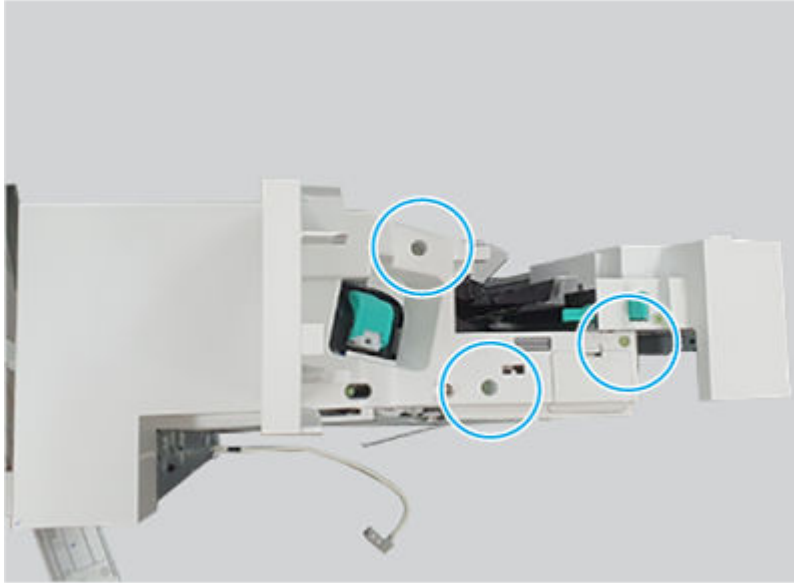
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3074 Remove the handle



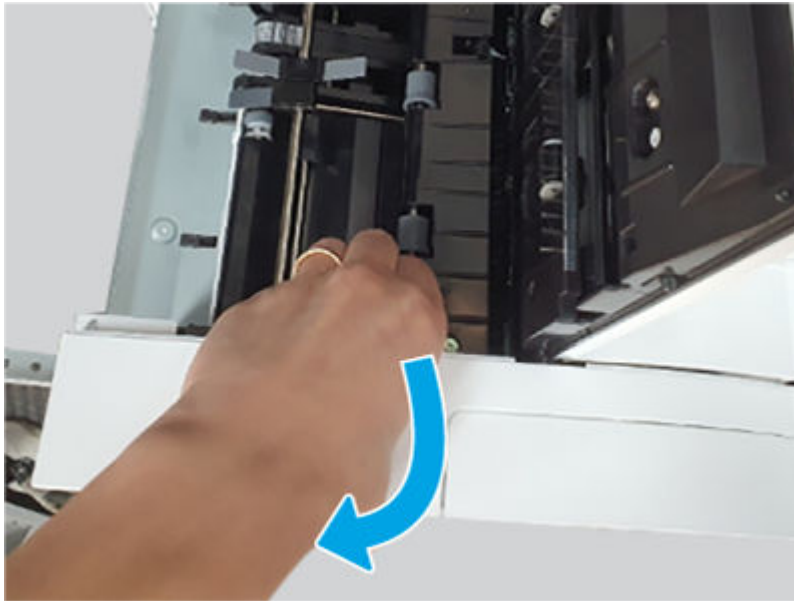
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3075 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3076 Remove the cover



2 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher top cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-372 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60125	Top cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

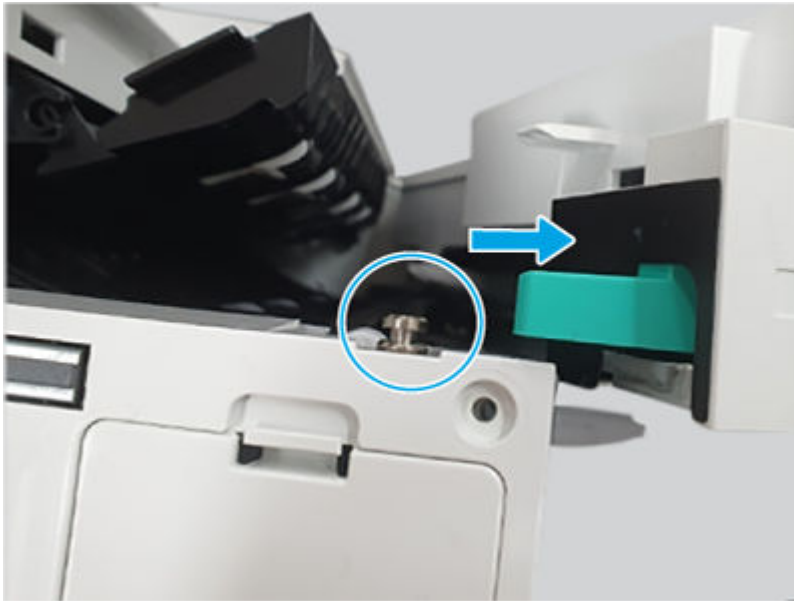
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3077 Open the punch cover



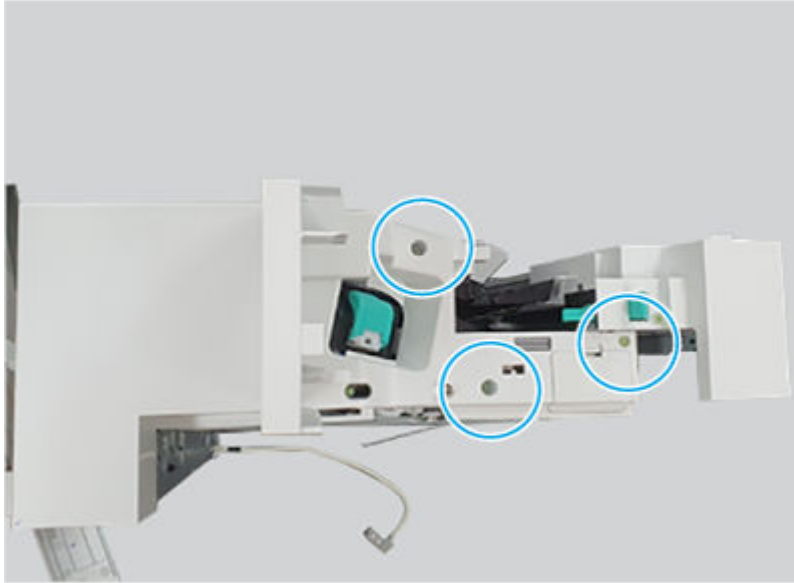
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3078 Remove the handle



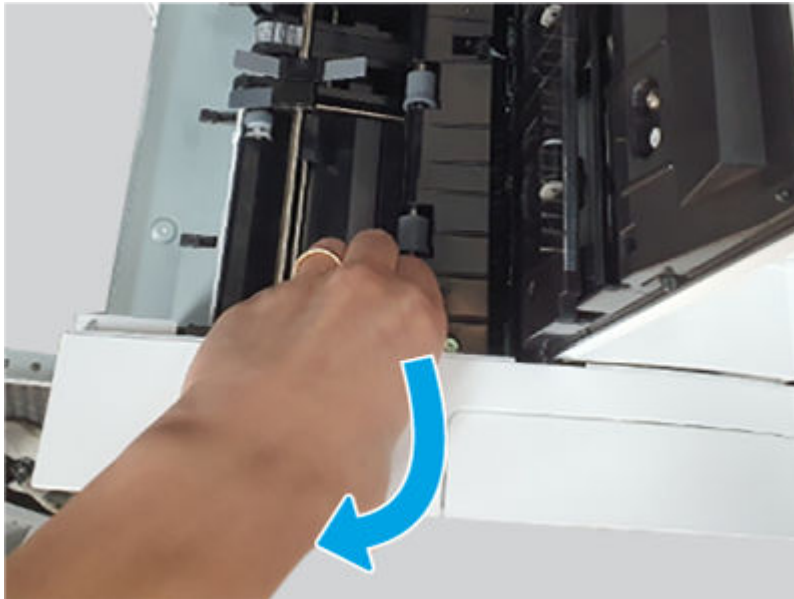
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3079 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3080 Remove the cover

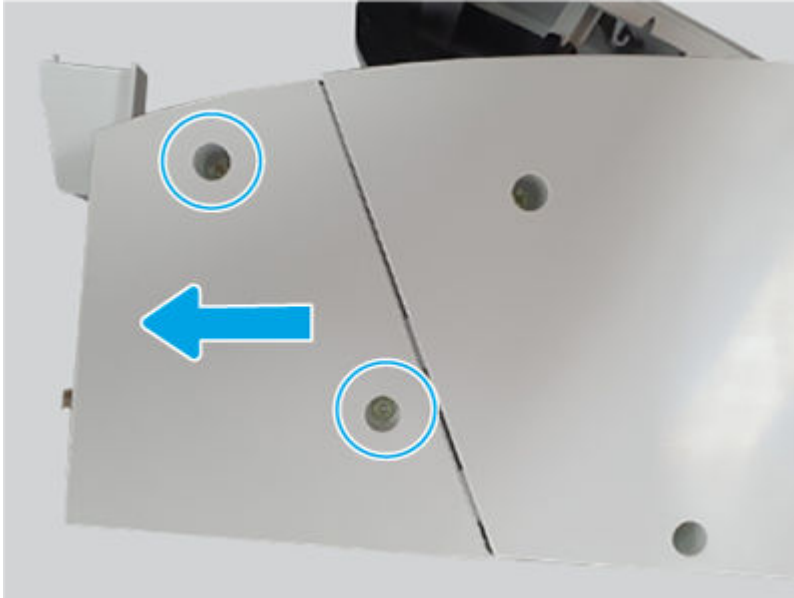


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3081 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

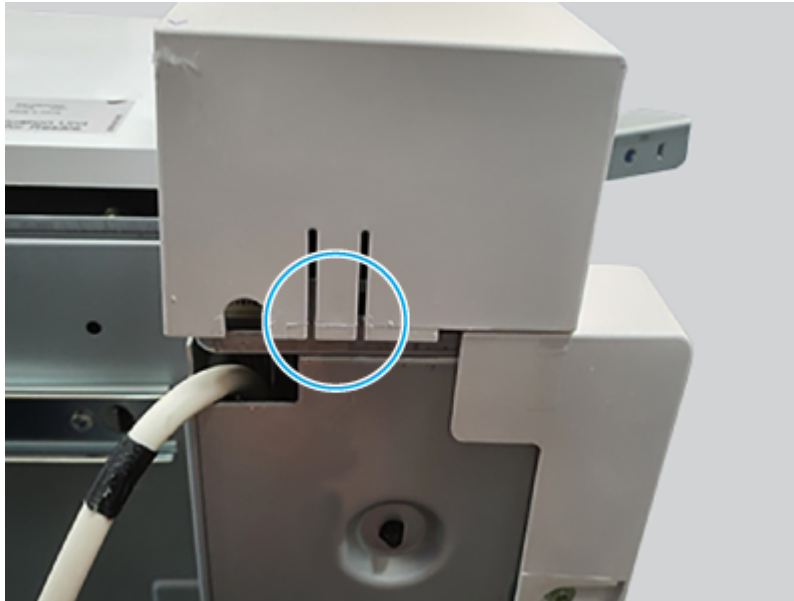
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3082 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3083 Remove the cover

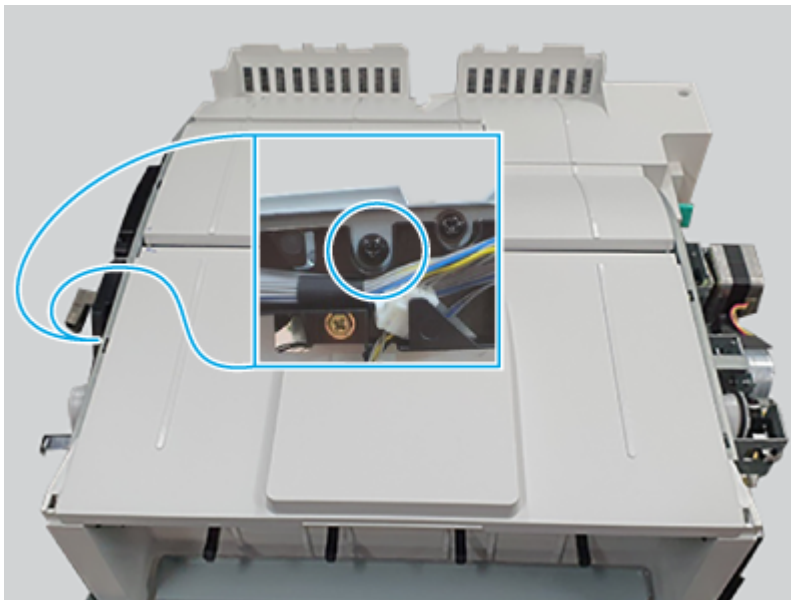


4. **Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.


Figure 6-3084 Remove the cover



5. **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Middle cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-373 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60124	Middle cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

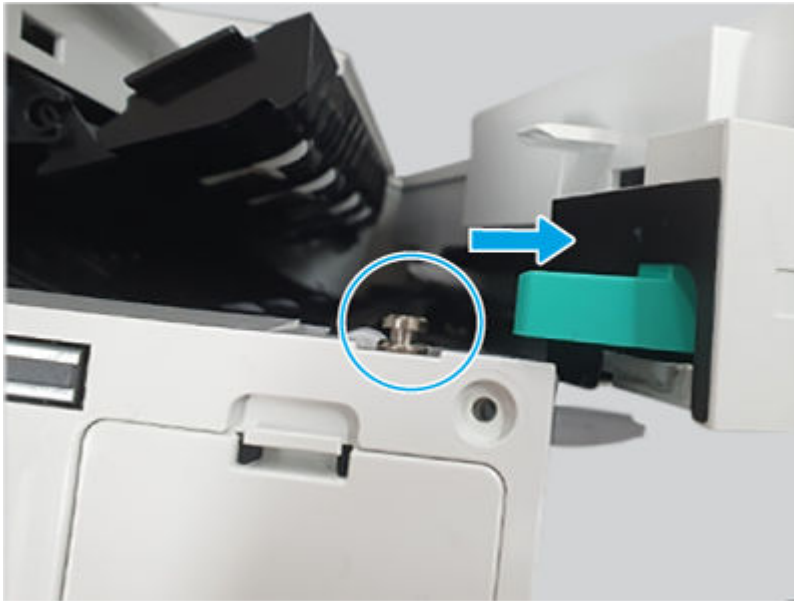
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3085 Open the punch cover



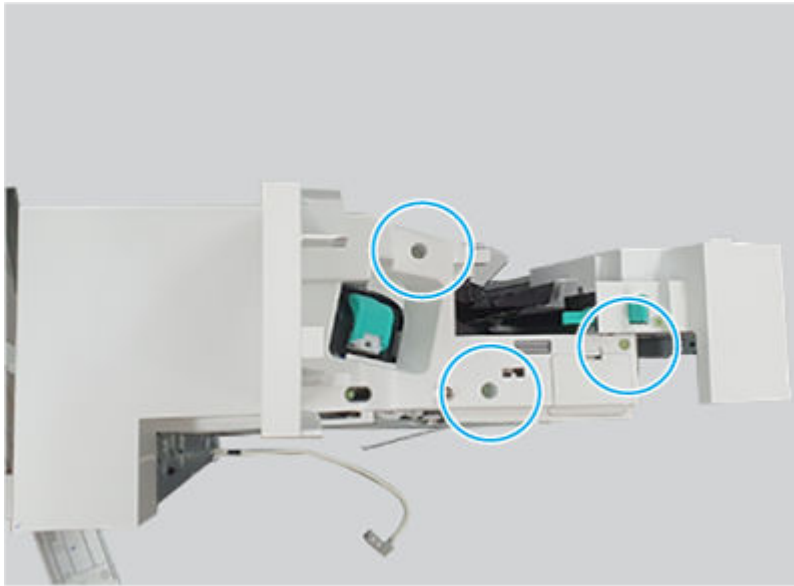
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3086 Remove the handle



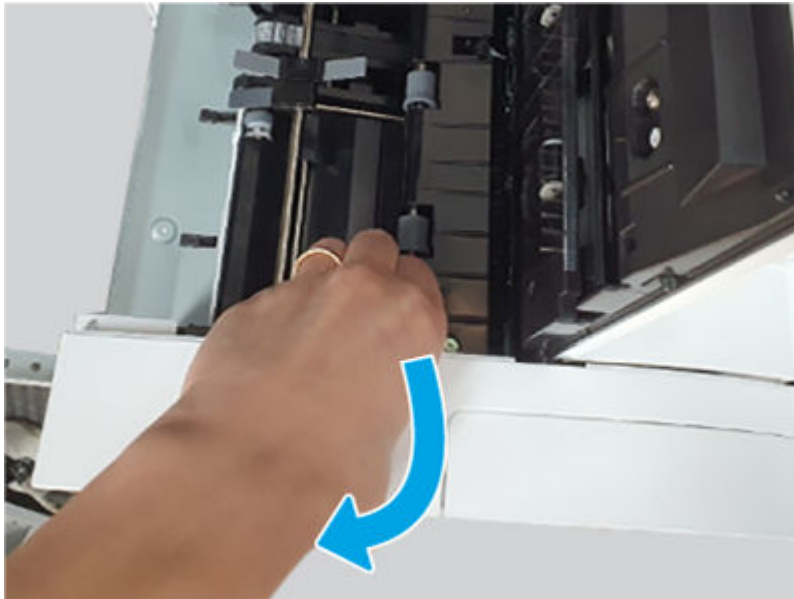
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3087 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3088 Remove the cover

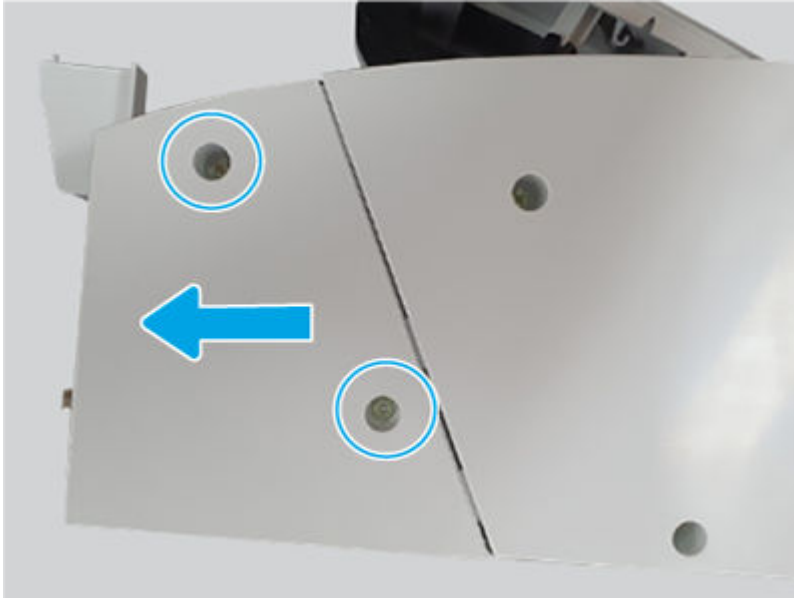


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3089 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

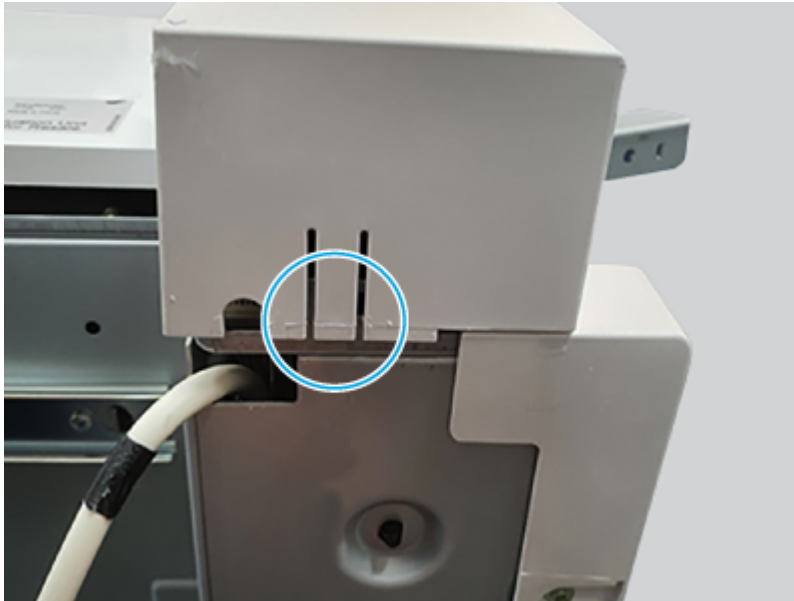
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3090 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3091 Remove the cover

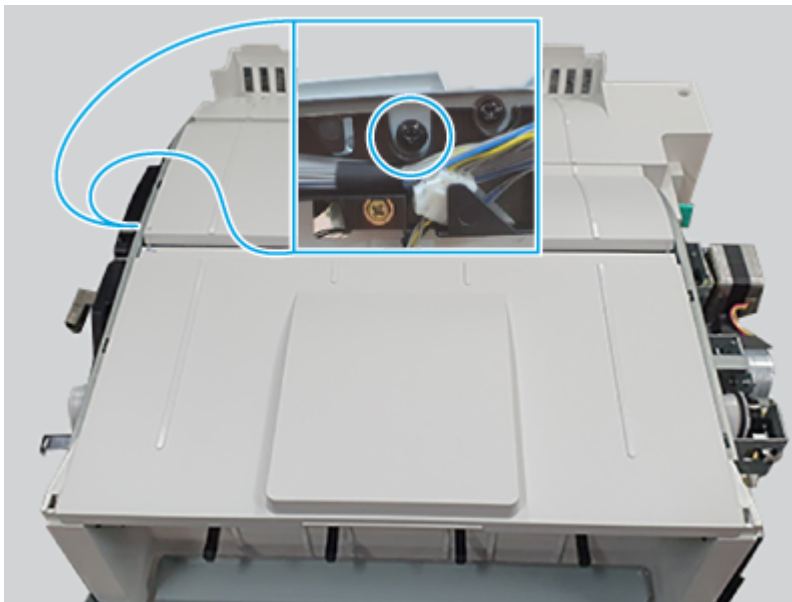


4. **Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.


Figure 6-3092 Remove the cover



5. **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Punch cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-374 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60114	Punch cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

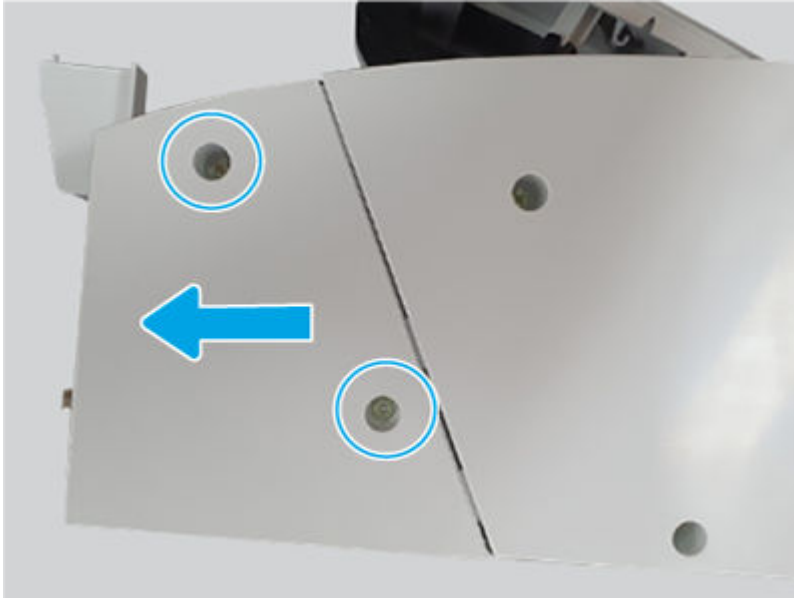
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3093 Remove the cover

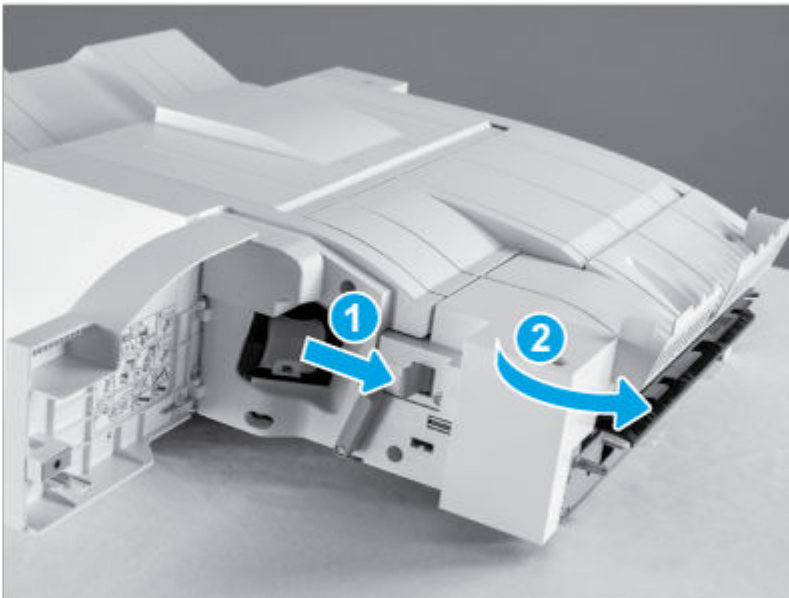


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

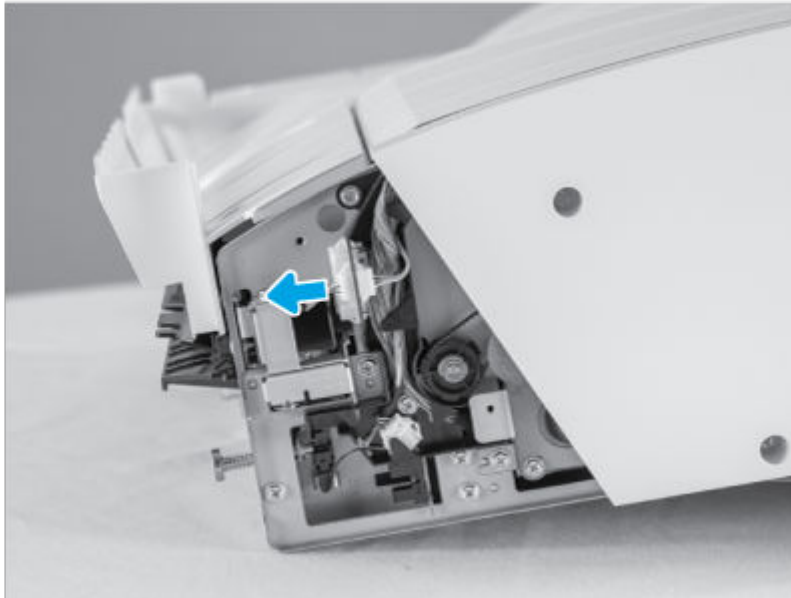
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3094 Rotate the punch



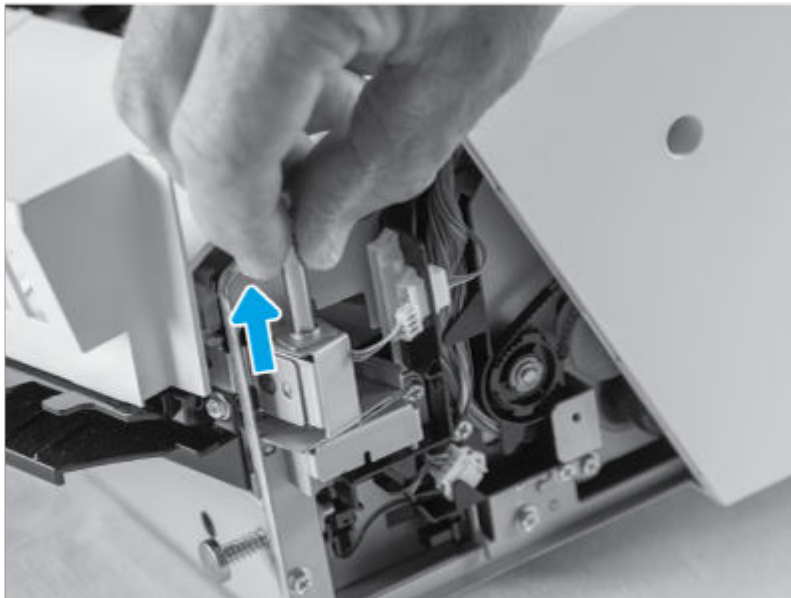
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3095 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3096 Remove the assembly



3 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-375 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60118	Output tray assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

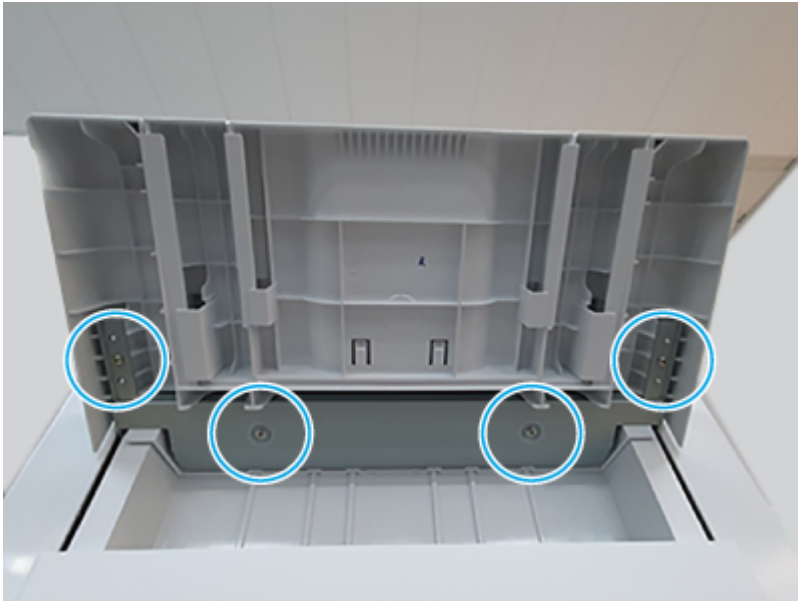
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

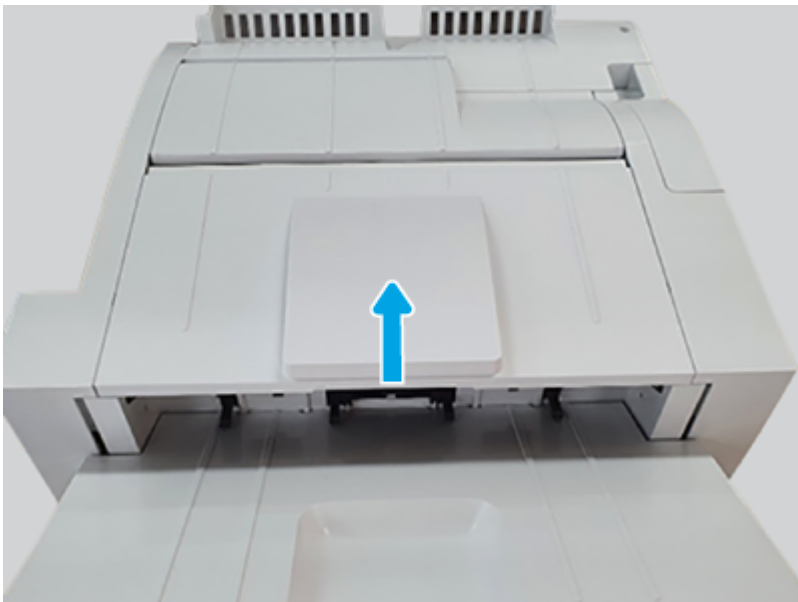
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-3097 Remove four screws



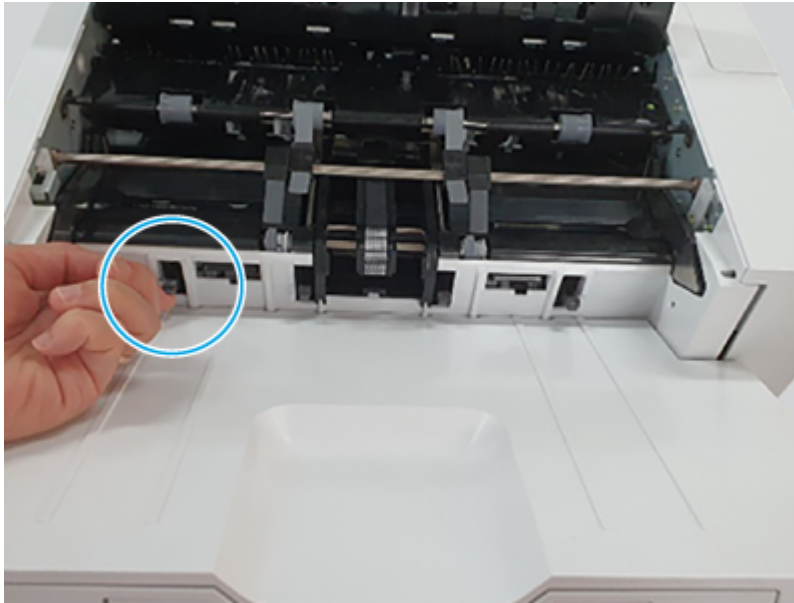
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-3098 Open the cover



3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3099 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-3100 Remove the tray



2 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: PCA cover

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher PCA cover.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-376 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40004	PCA cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

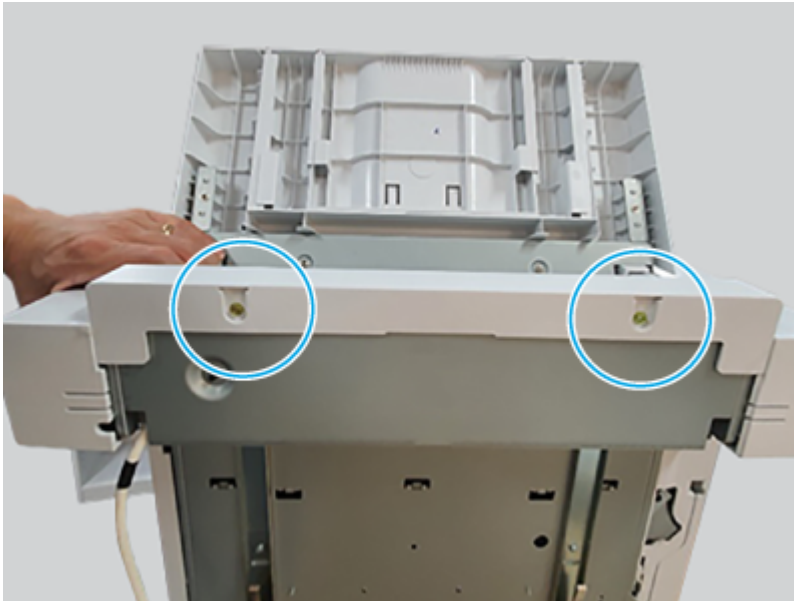
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher PCA cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher PCA cover.

1. Lift up the inner finisher, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-3101 Remove two screws



2. Remove the inner finisher PCA cover.

Figure 6-3102 Remove the cover



2 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Finisher sub stay assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-377 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60113	Finisher sub stay assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

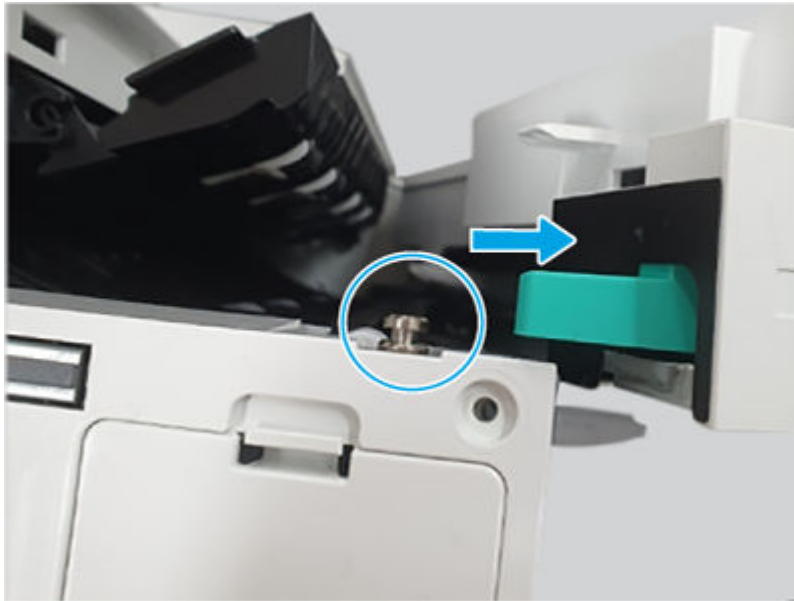
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3103 Open the punch cover



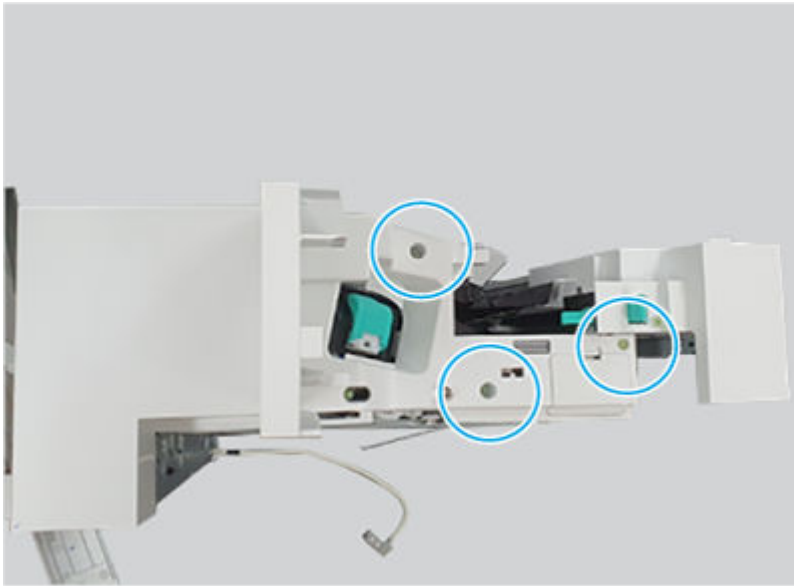
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3104 Remove the handle



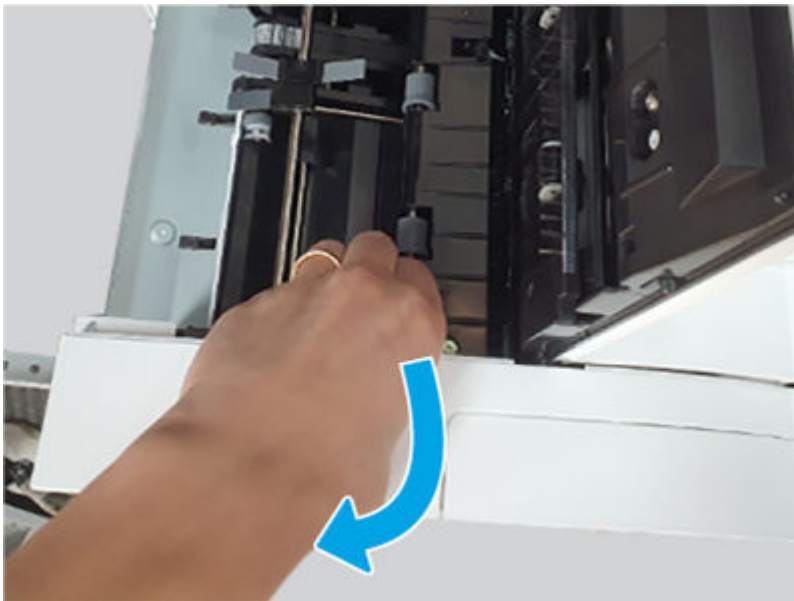
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3105 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3106 Remove the cover

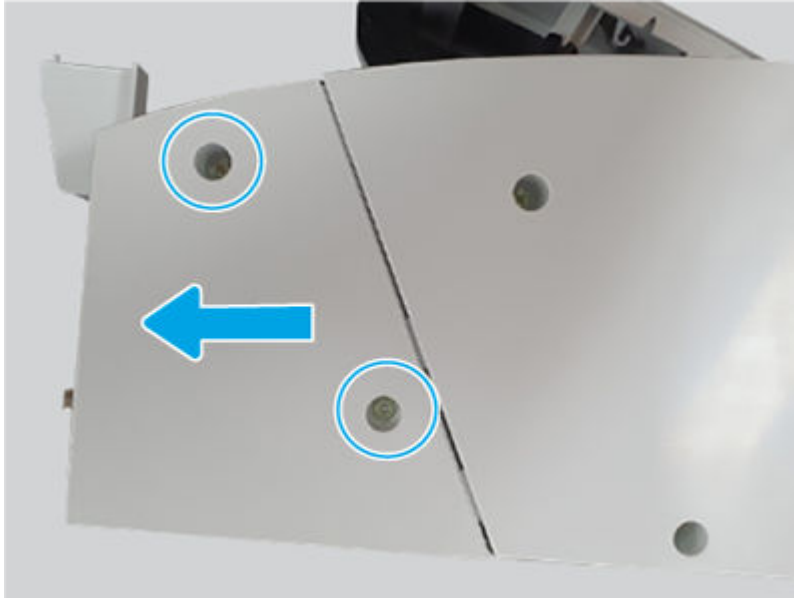


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3107 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

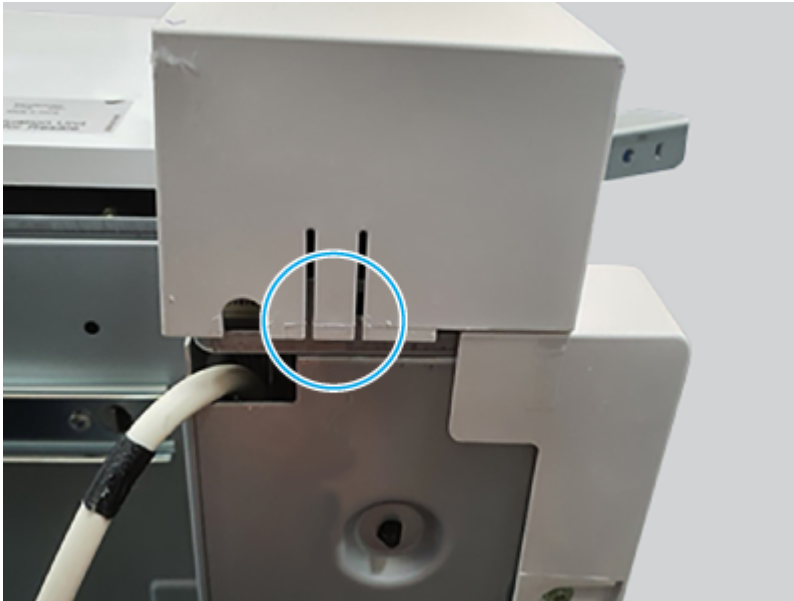
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3108 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3109 Remove the cover

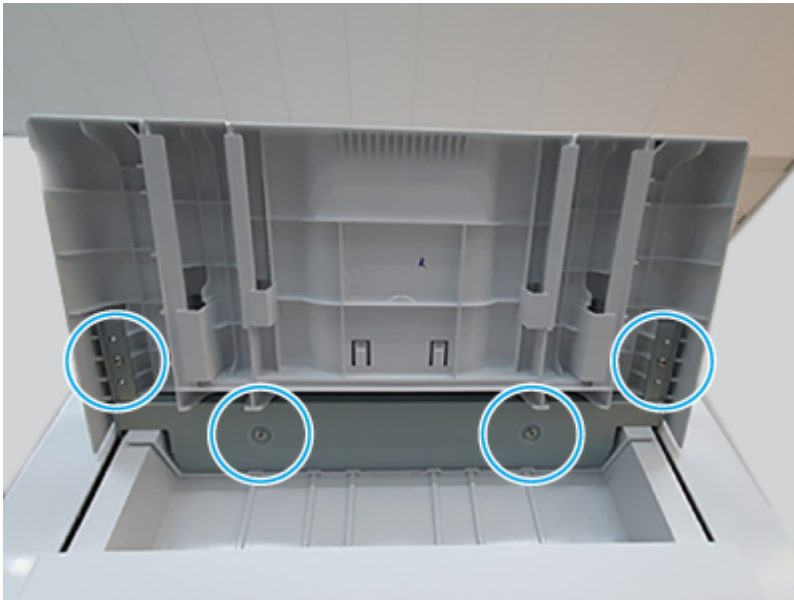


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

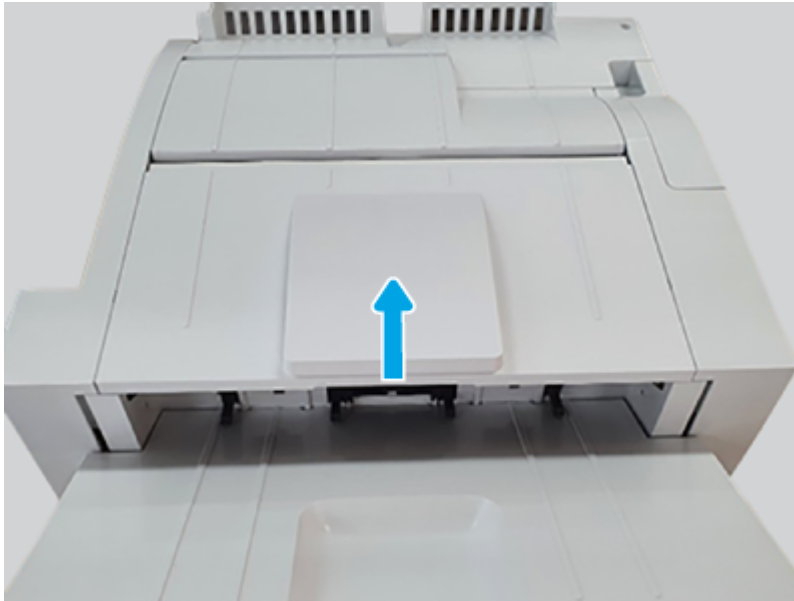
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-3110 Remove four screws



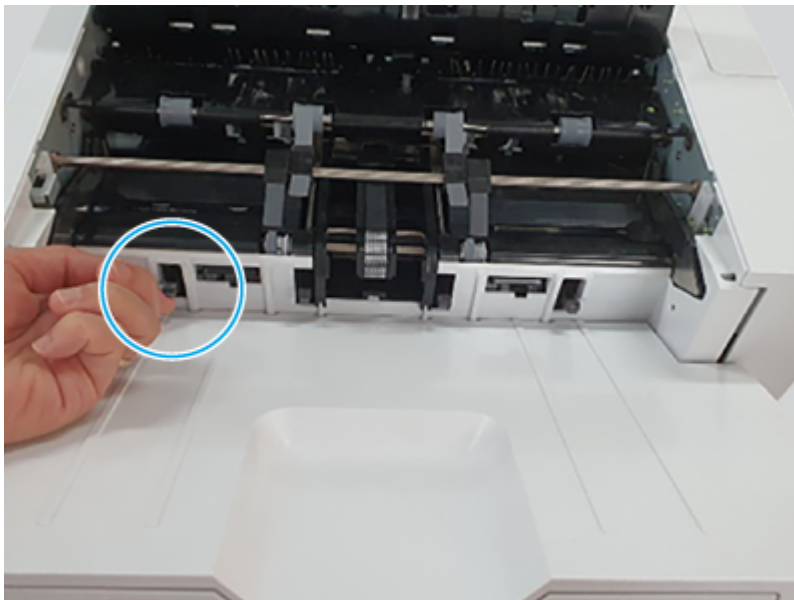
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-3111 Open the cover



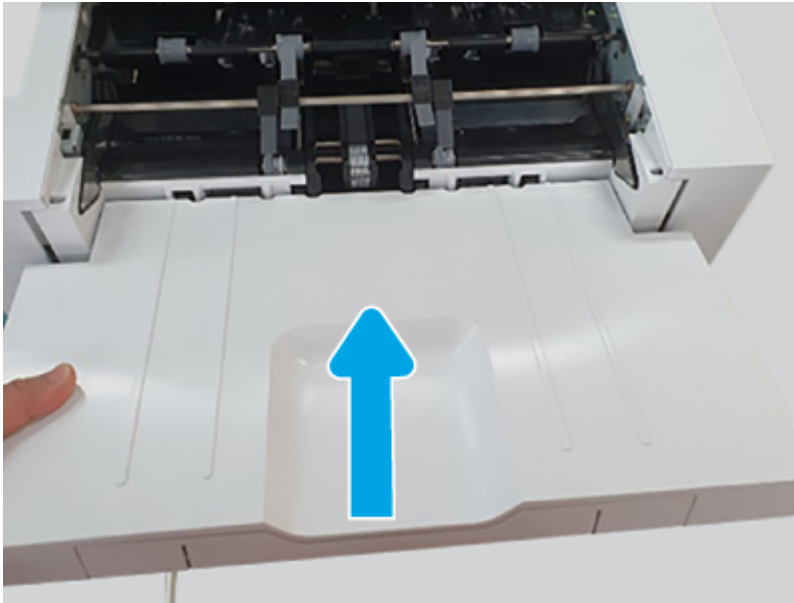
3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3112 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-3113 Remove the tray

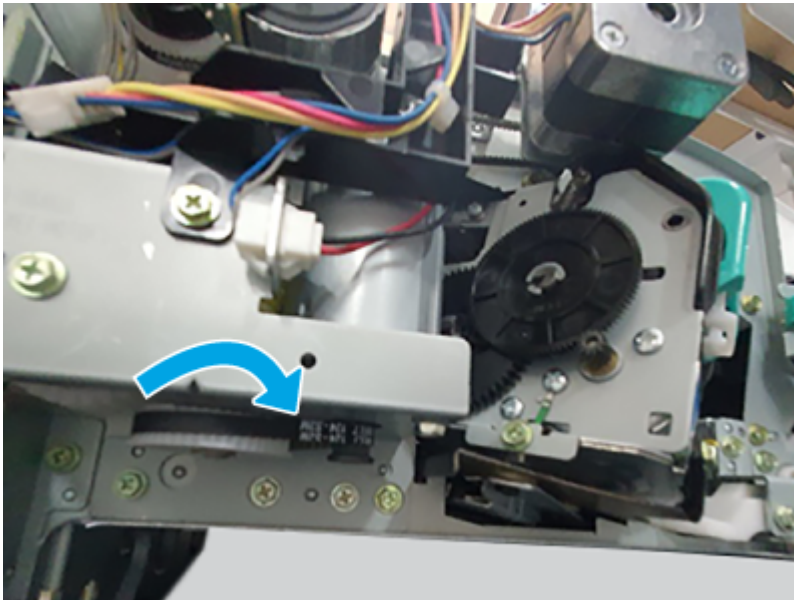


5 Remove the output tray frame

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray frame.

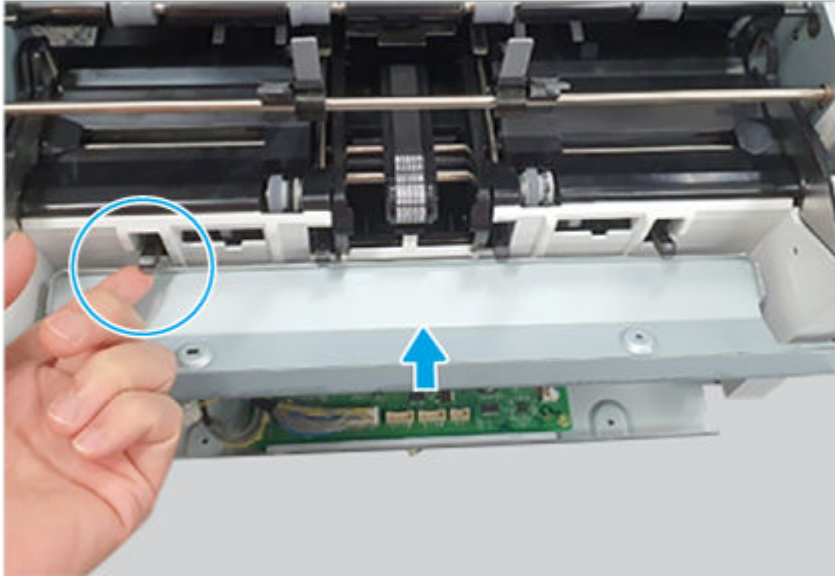
1. Rotate the output tray gear.

Figure 6-3114 Rotate the gear



2. Press the paper holding actuator, and then lift the inner finisher output tray frame up to remove it.

Figure 6-3115 Remove the frame

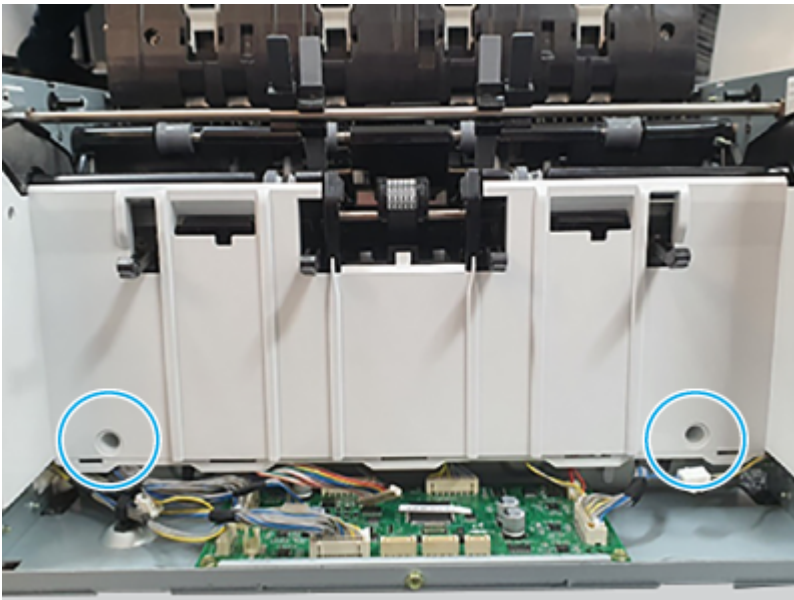


6 Remove the finisher sub stay assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

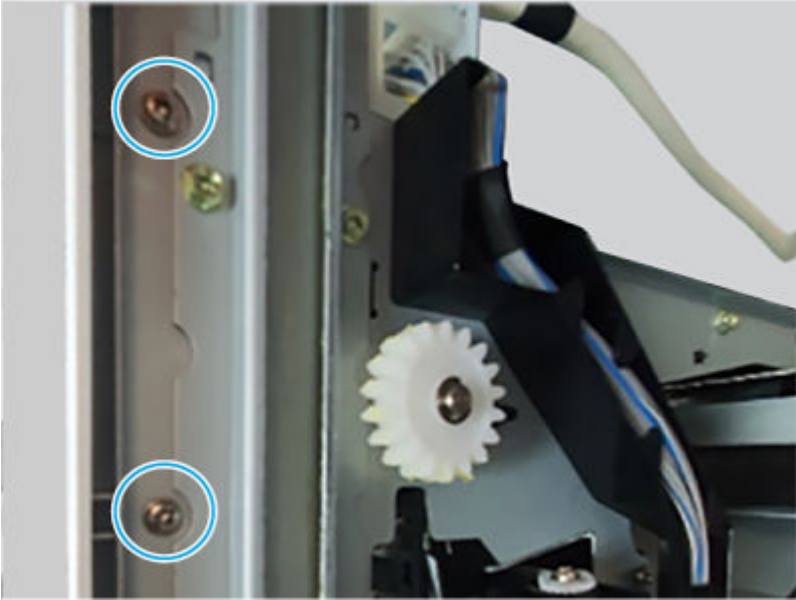
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3116 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3117 Remove two screws



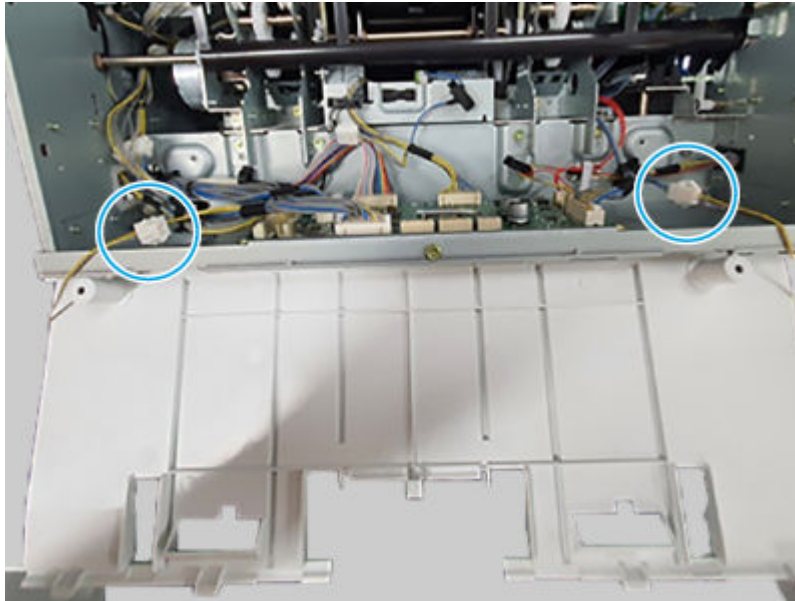
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3118 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

Figure 6-3119 Remove the assembly



7 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover - base

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear base cover.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-378 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40018	Rear base cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

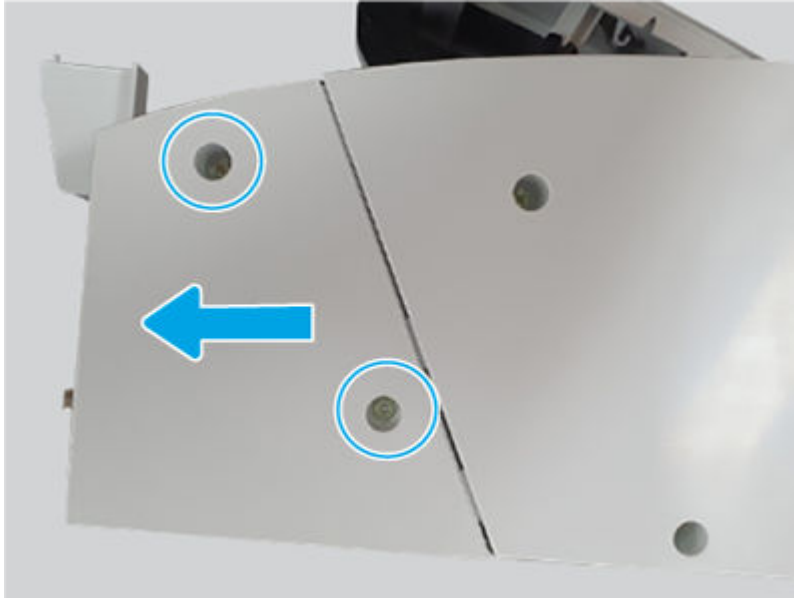
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3120 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

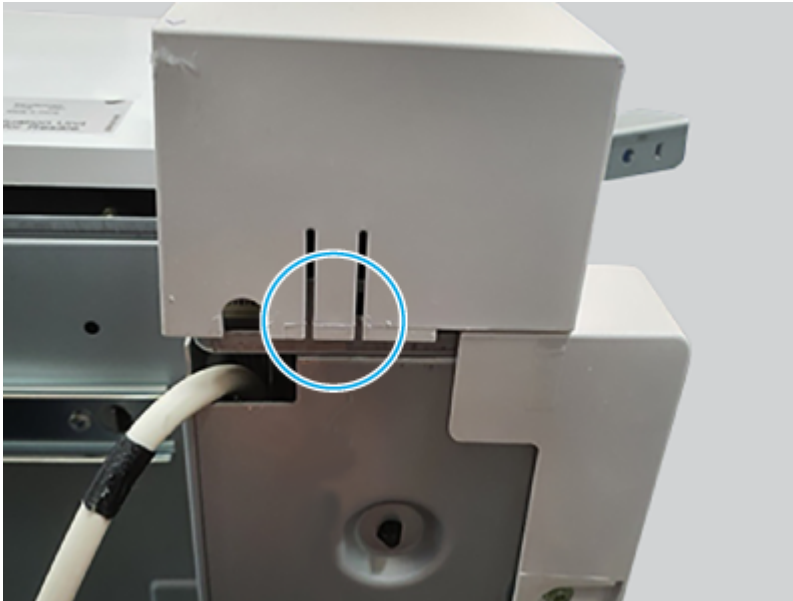
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3121 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3122 Remove the cover



3 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover - punch

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear punch cover.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-379 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40037	Rear punch cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

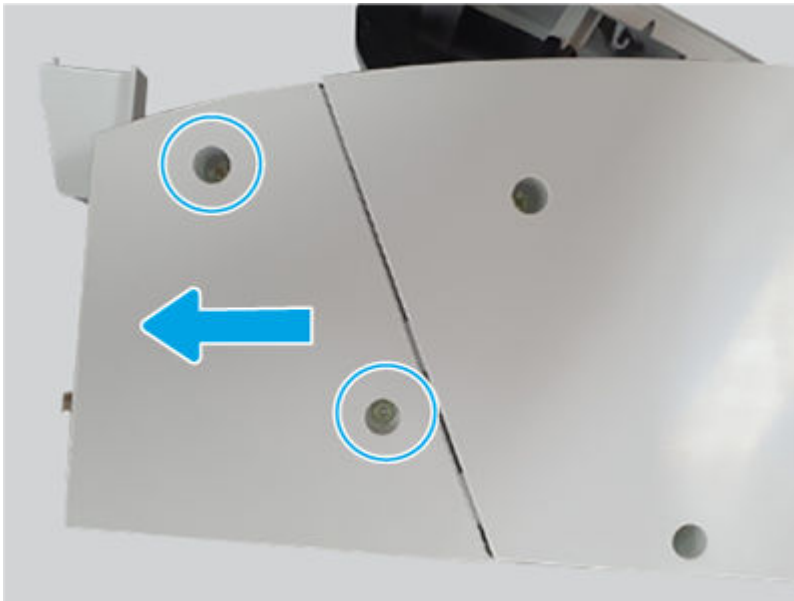
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3123 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lock release handle

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher lock release handle.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-380 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04233A	Lock release handle

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

- Open the front door, remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3124 Remove the handle



2 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main interface harness

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher main interface harness.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher form the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-381 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02169A	Main interface harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3125 Open the punch cover



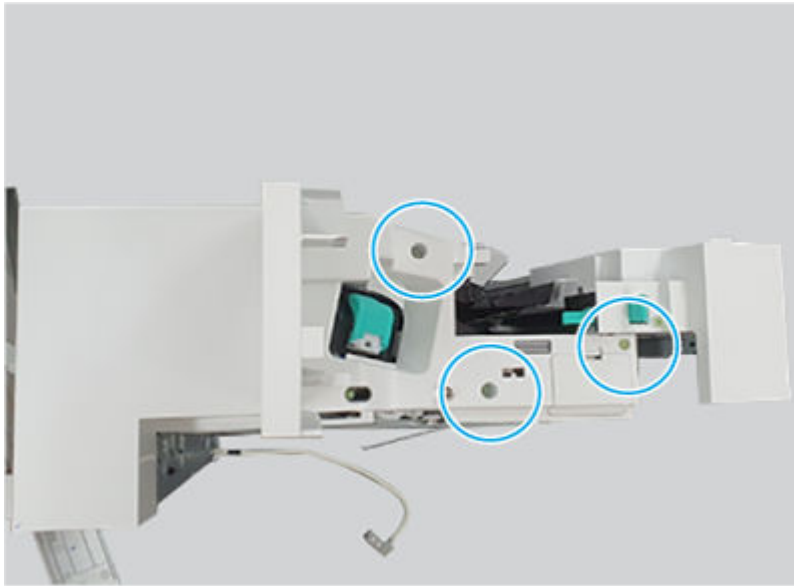
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3126 Remove the handle



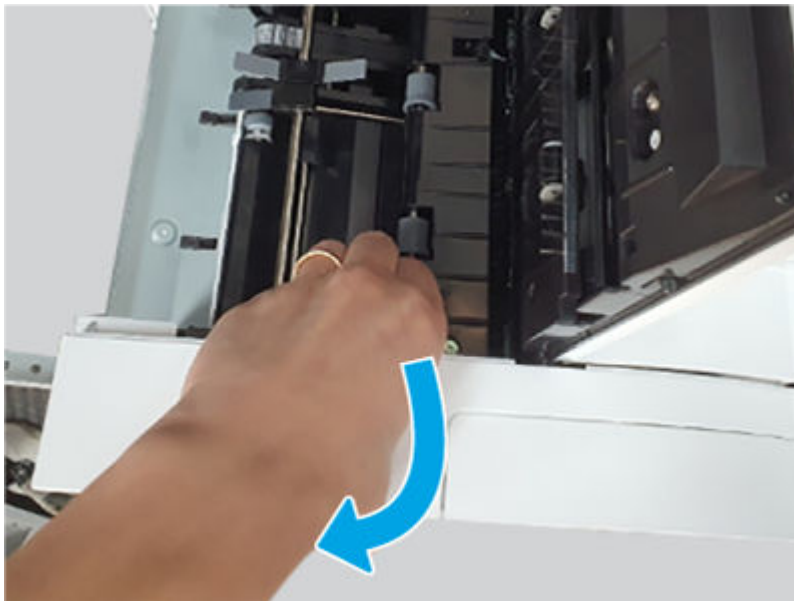
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3127 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3128 Remove the cover

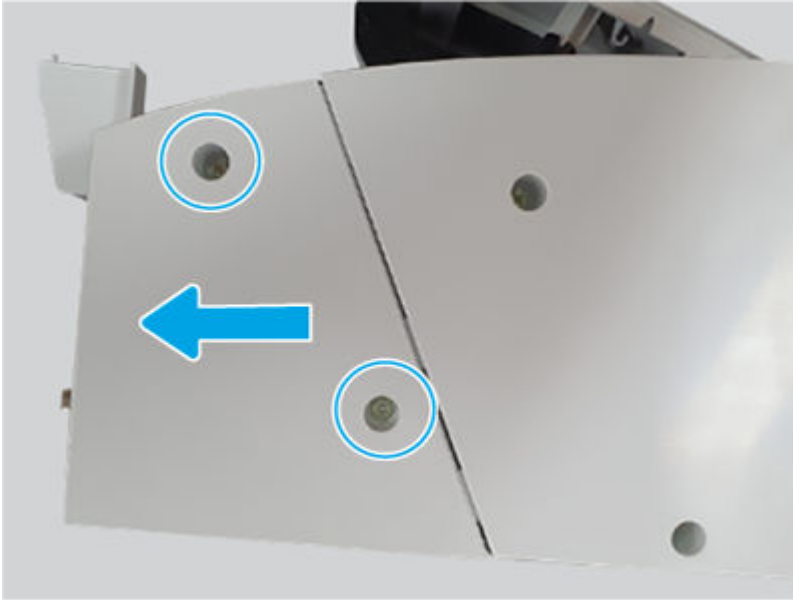


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3129 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

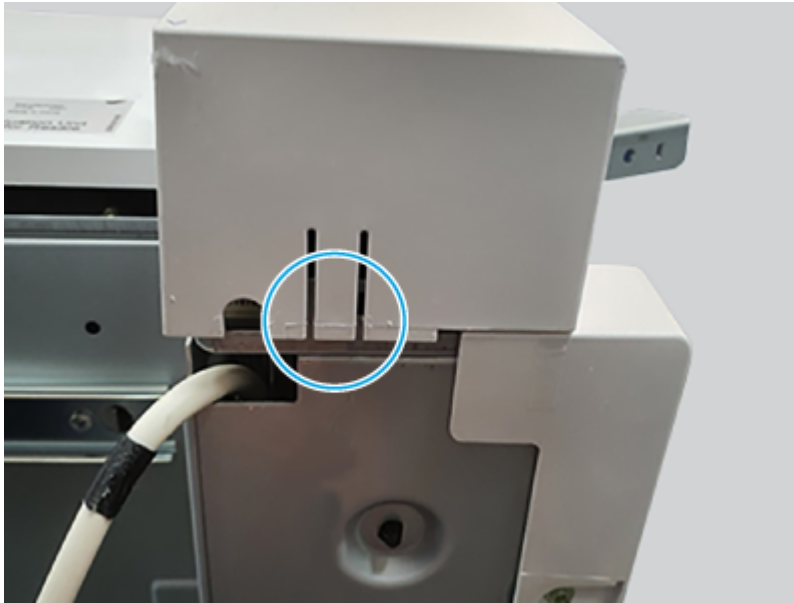
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3130 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3131 Remove the cover

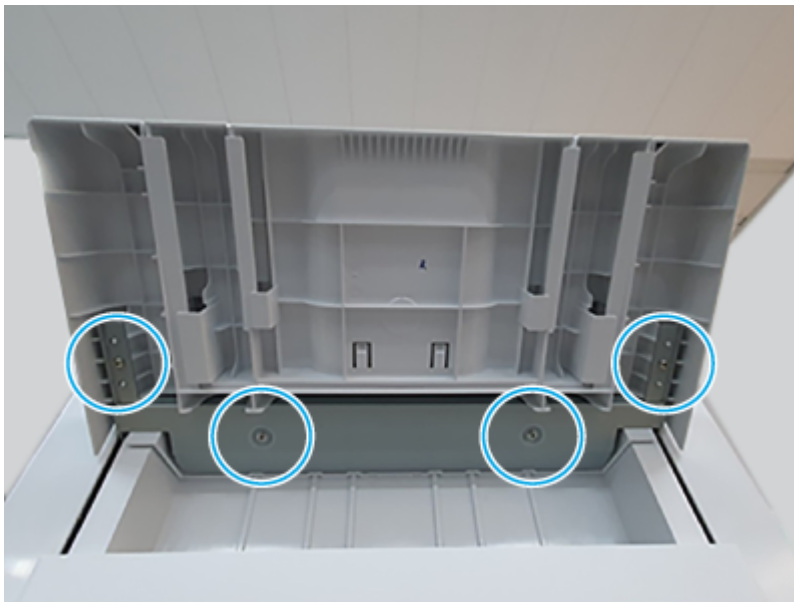


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

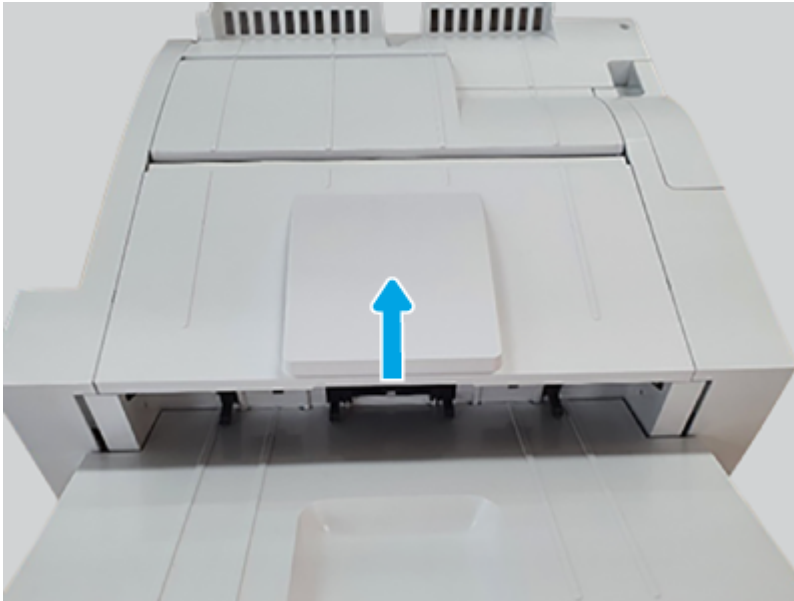
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-3132 Remove four screws



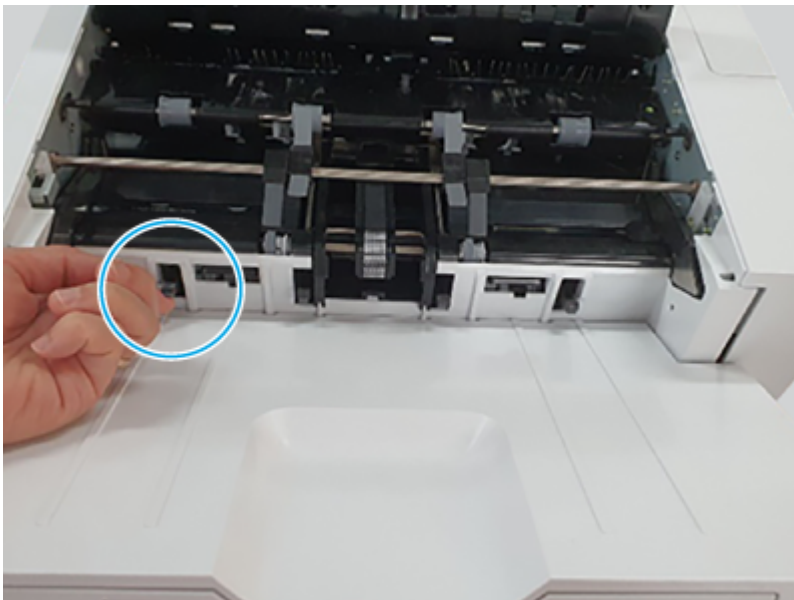
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-3133 Open the cover



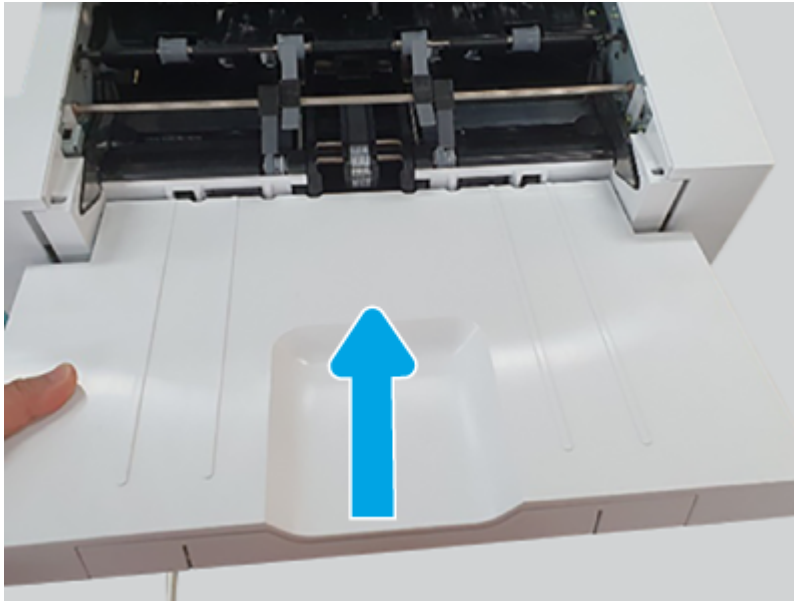
3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3134 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-3135 Remove the tray

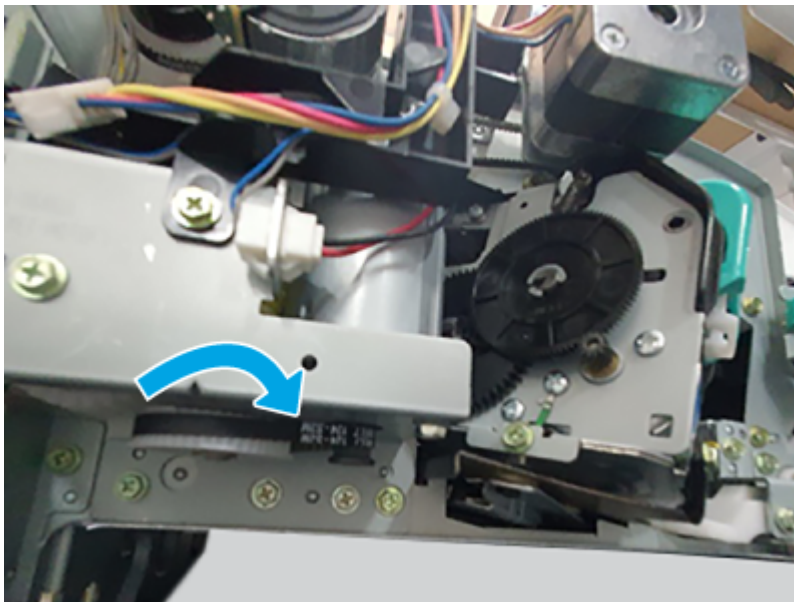


5. **Remove the output tray frame**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray frame.

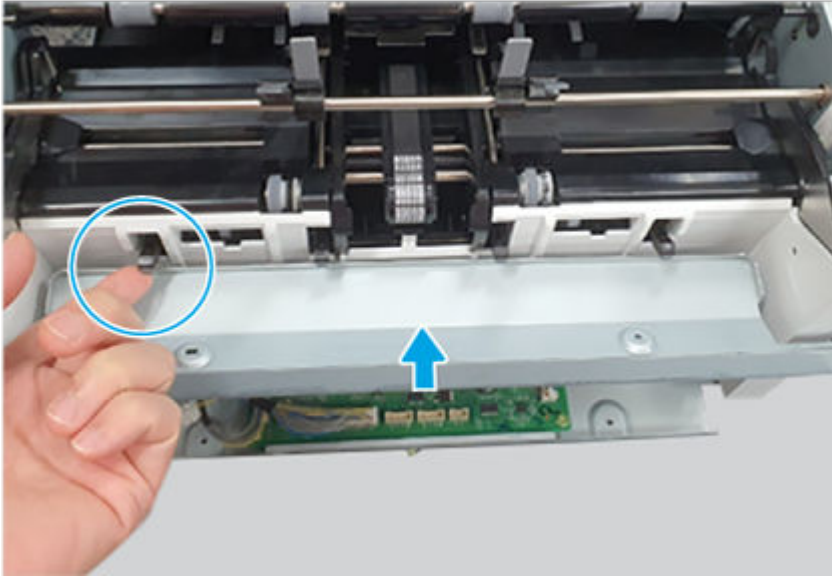
1. Rotate the output tray gear.

Figure 6-3136 Rotate the gear



2. Press the paper holding actuator, and then lift the inner finisher output tray frame up to remove it.

Figure 6-3137 Remove the frame

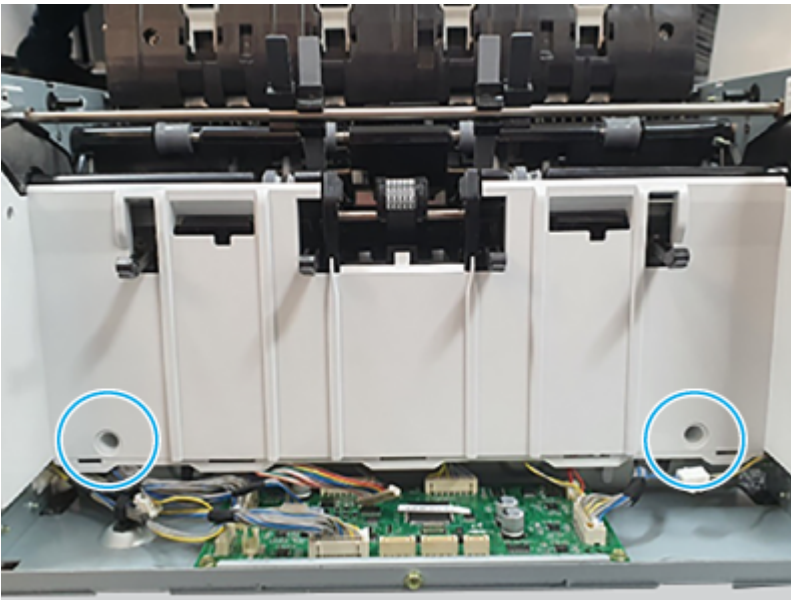


6 Remove the finisher sub stay assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

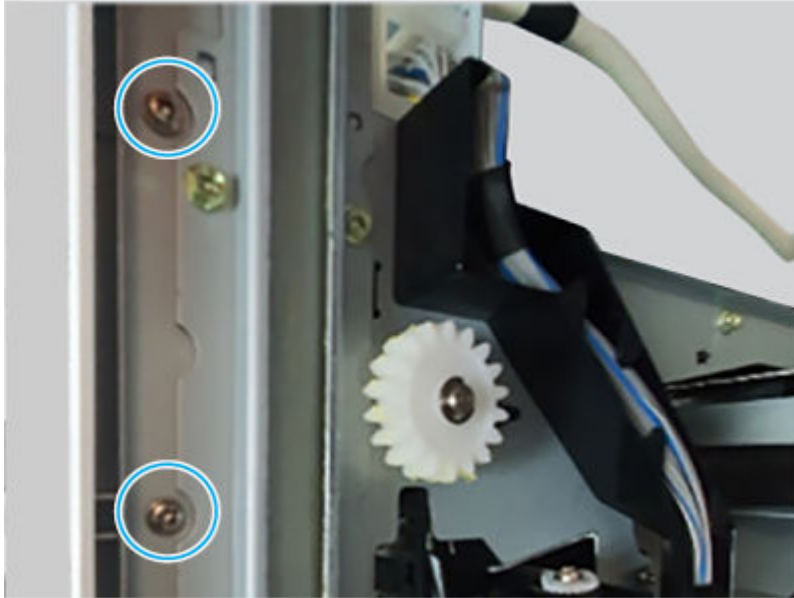
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3138 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3139 Remove two screws



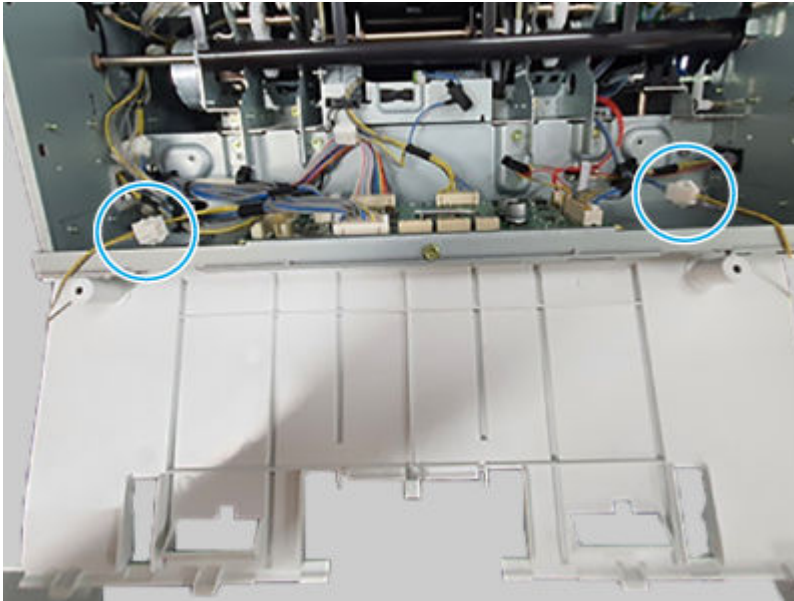
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3140 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

Figure 6-3141 Remove the assembly



7 Remove the main interface harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main interface harness.

- Remove one screw, disconnect one connector, and then remove the inner finisher main interface harness.


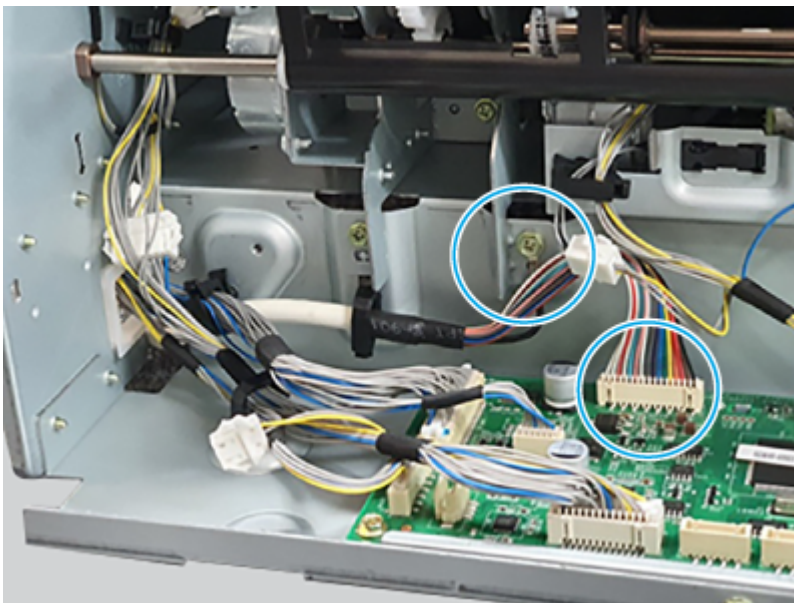
 **NOTE:** Release wire harness retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3142 Remove the harness



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit bin full

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit bin full.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-382 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01546A	Exit bin full

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

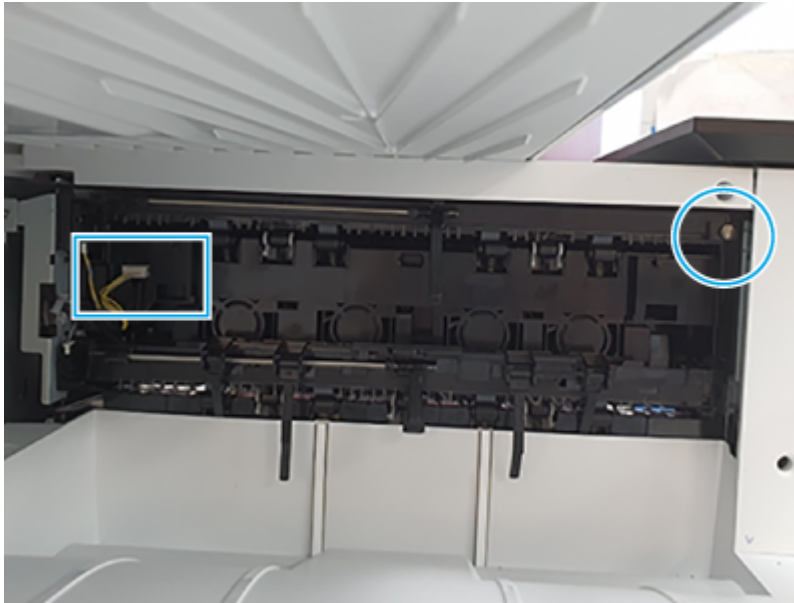
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher exit bin full

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit bin full.

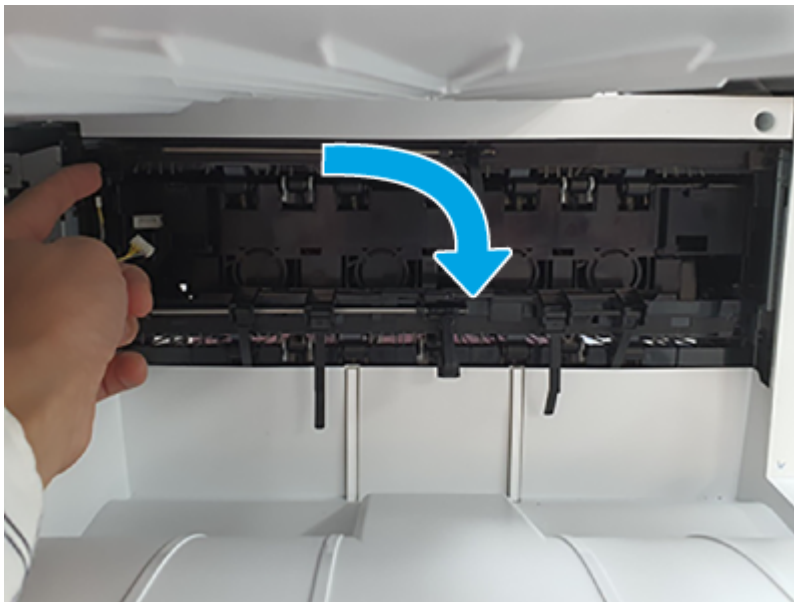
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-3143 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



2. Slide the inner finisher exit bin full as shown below to remove it.


Figure 6-3144 Remove the assembly



2 **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Punch unit

Review the inner finisher punch unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Hole punch

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher hole punch.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-383 Part information

Part number	Part description
155P7-67001	Hole 2/3 punch
8GS05-60133	Hole 2/4 punch
8GS05-60134	Swedish punch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

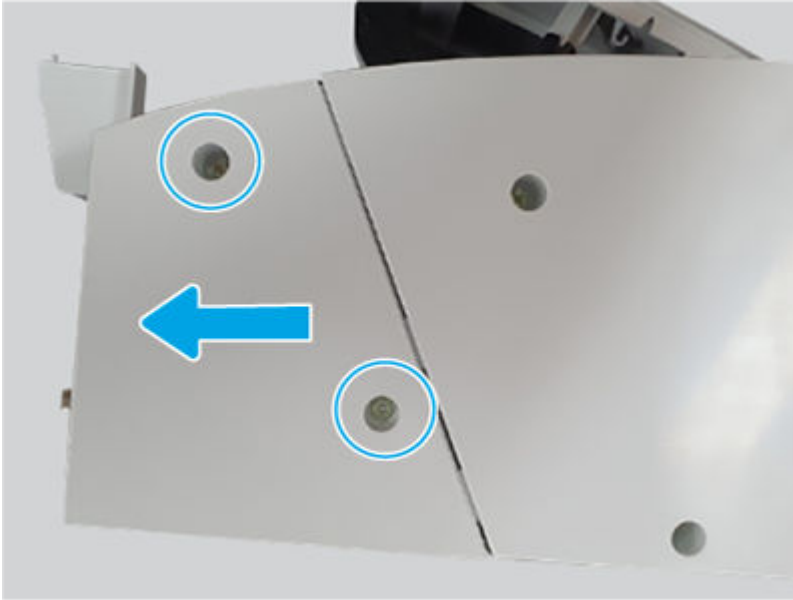
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3145 Remove the cover

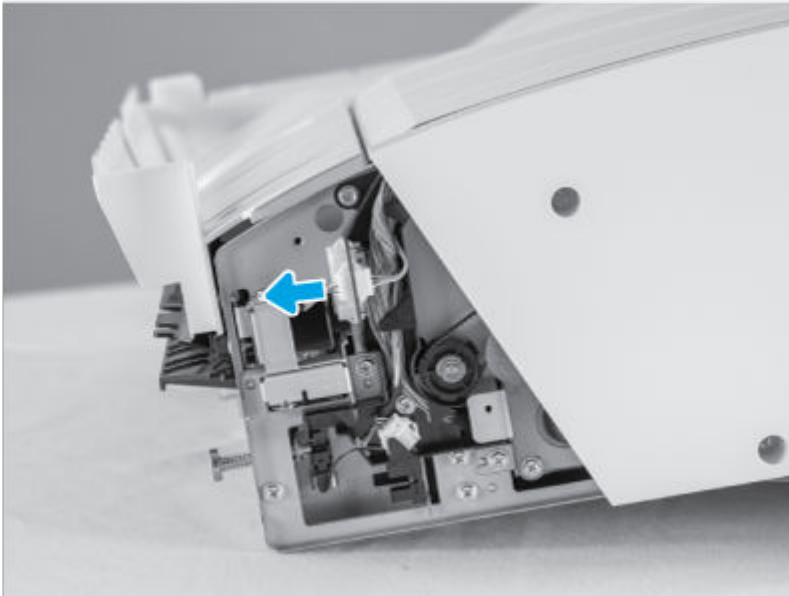


2 Remove the inner finisher hole punch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher hole punch.

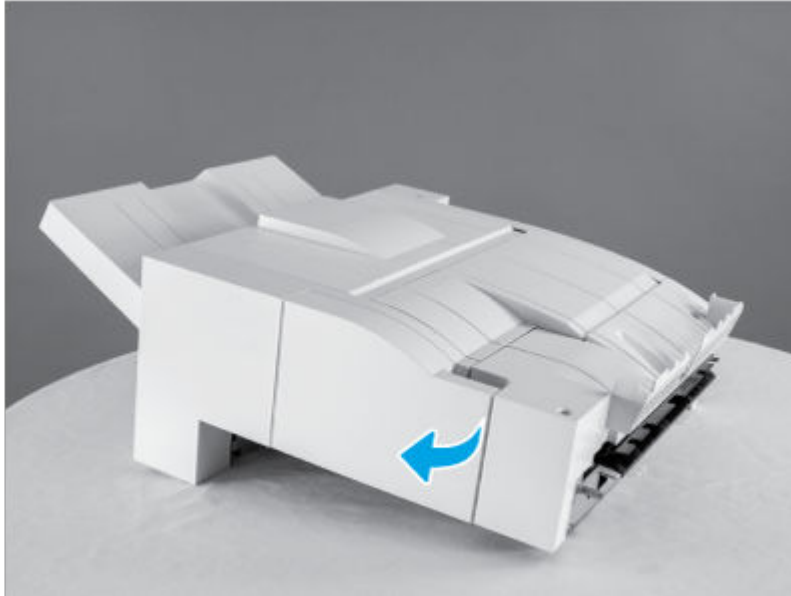
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3146 Disconnect one connector



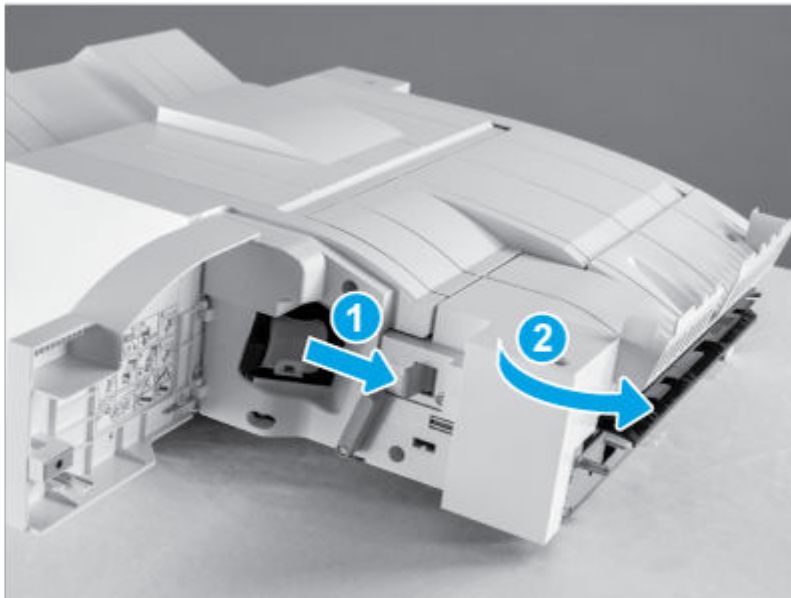
2. Open the door.

Figure 6-3147 Open the door



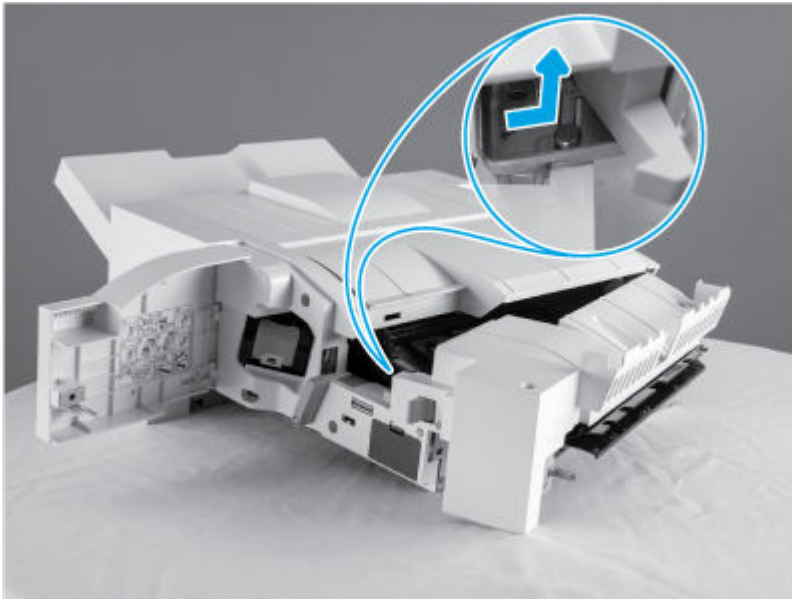
3. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3148 Rotate the punch



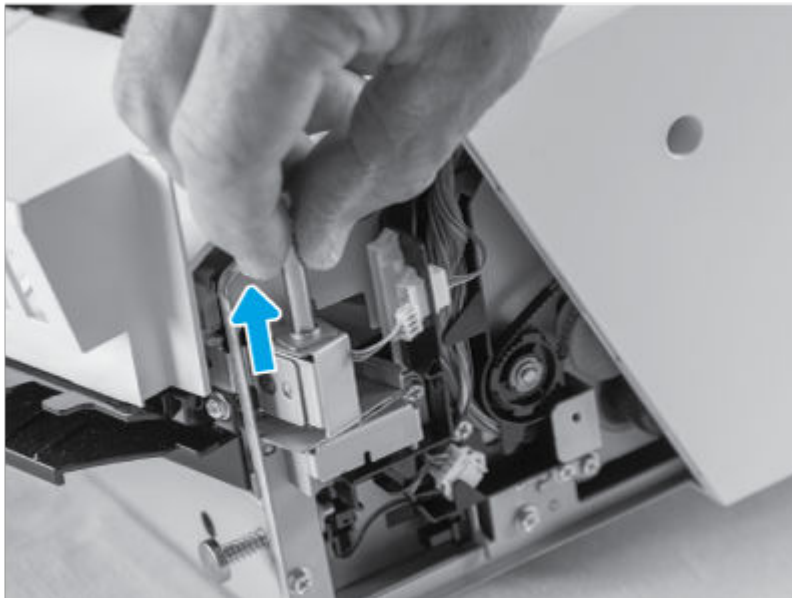
4. Release the retainer pin.

Figure 6-3149 Release the pin



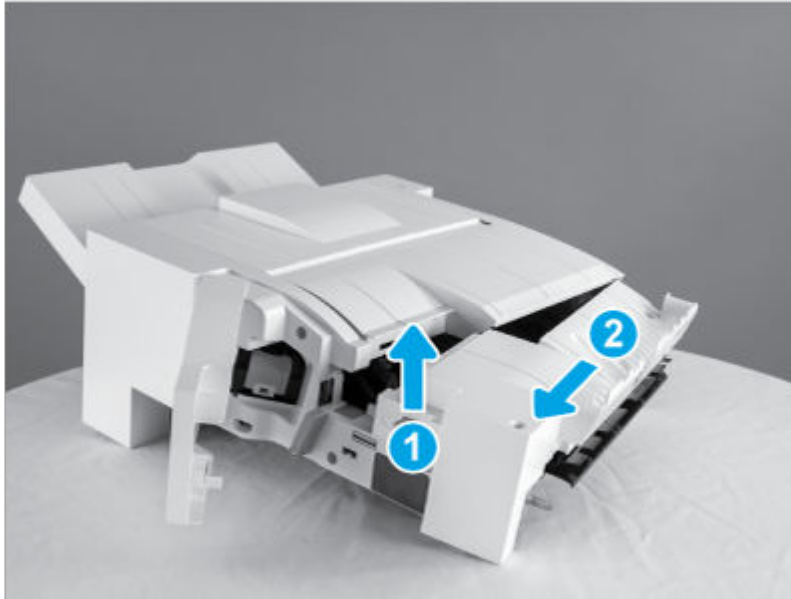
5. Remove the hinge shaft.

Figure 6-3150 Remove the shaft



- Lift up on the end of the inner finisher hole punch (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-3151 Remove the punch



3 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

- Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

- Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Punch waste full sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher punch waste full.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-384 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Punch waste full sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

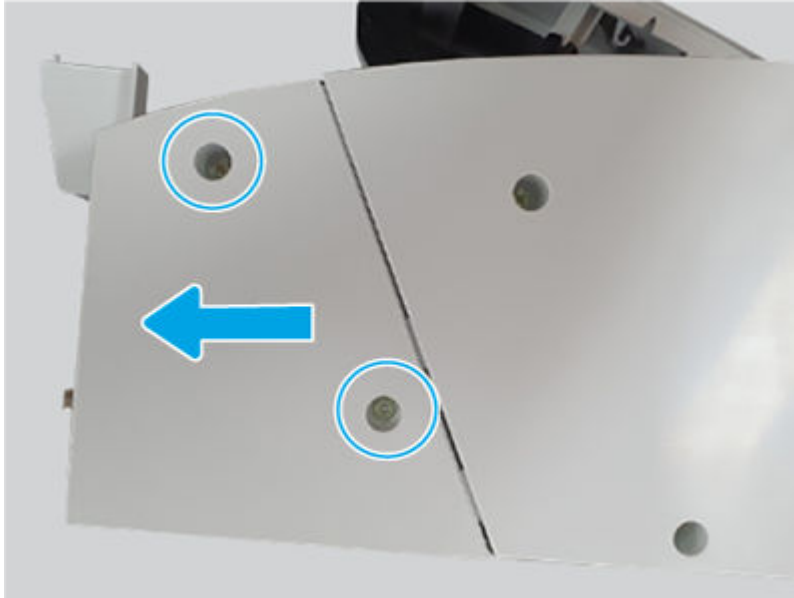
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3152 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

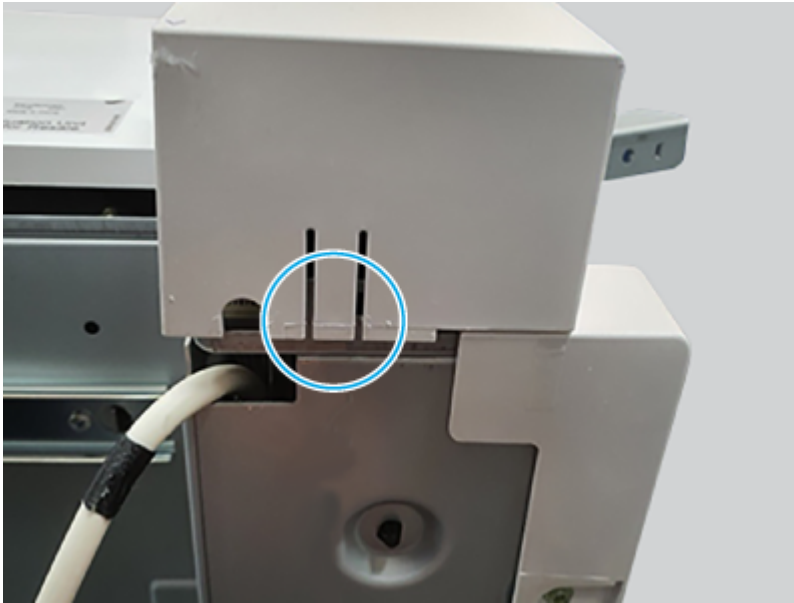
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3153 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3154 Remove the cover

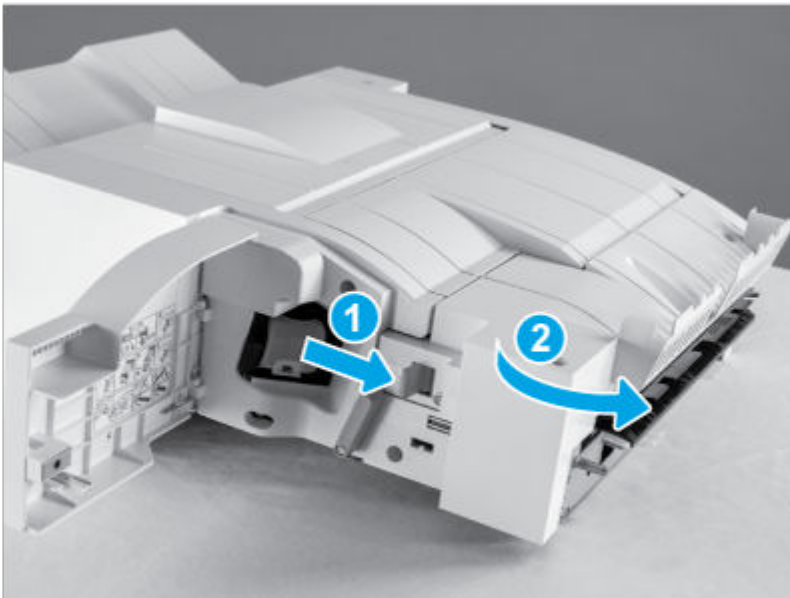


3 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

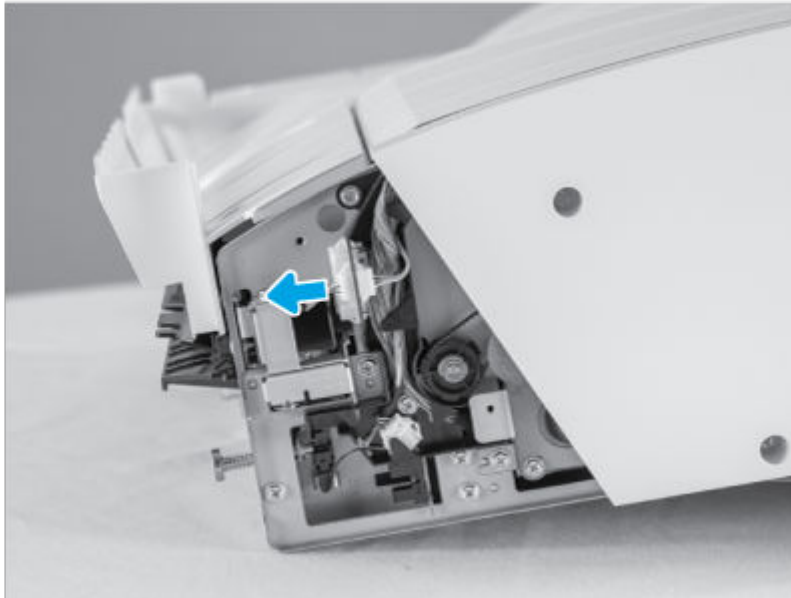
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3155 Rotate the punch



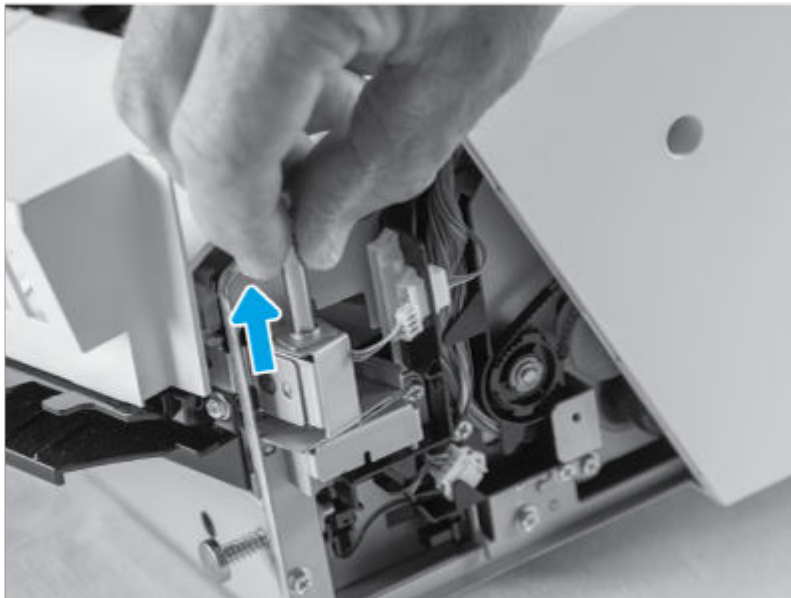
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3156 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3157 Remove the assembly



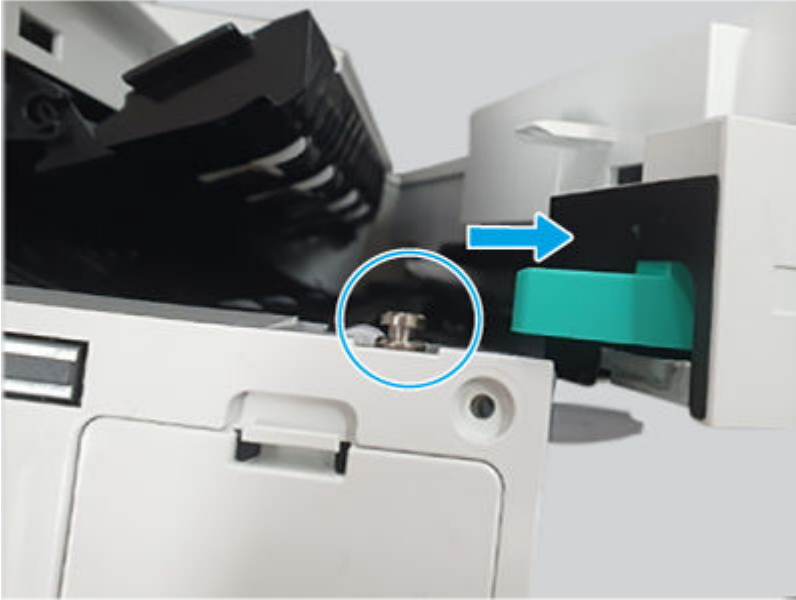
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3158 Open the punch cover



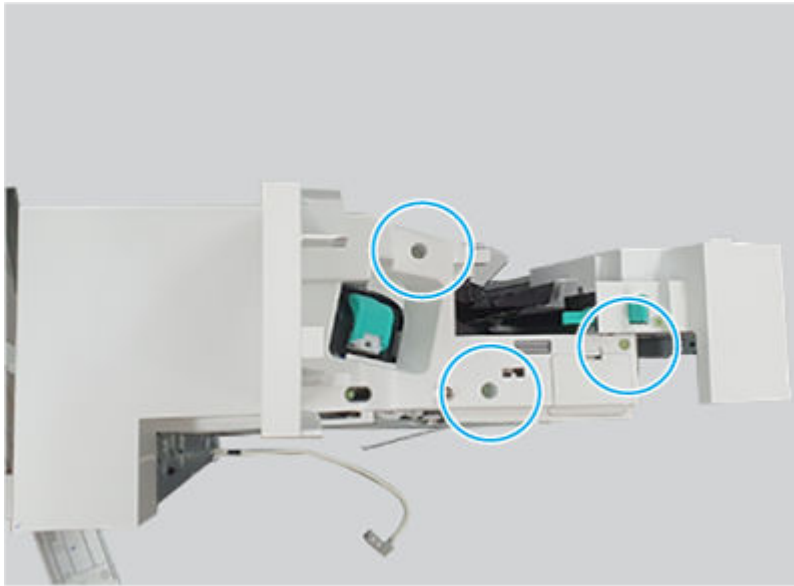
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3159 Remove the handle



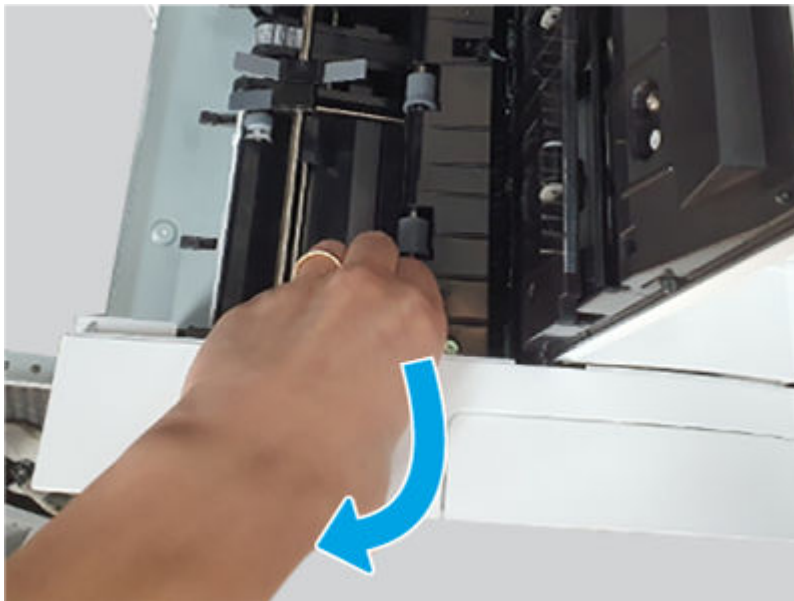
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3160 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3161 Remove the cover

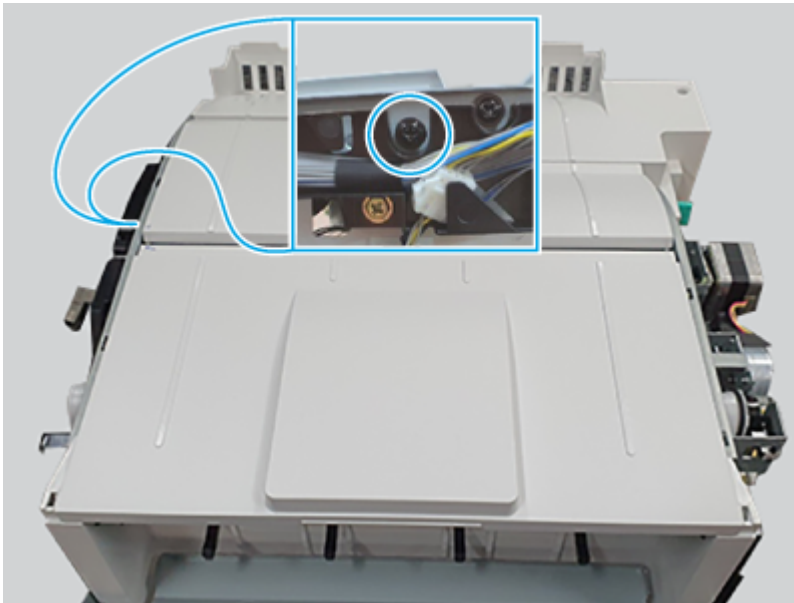


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3162 Remove the cover

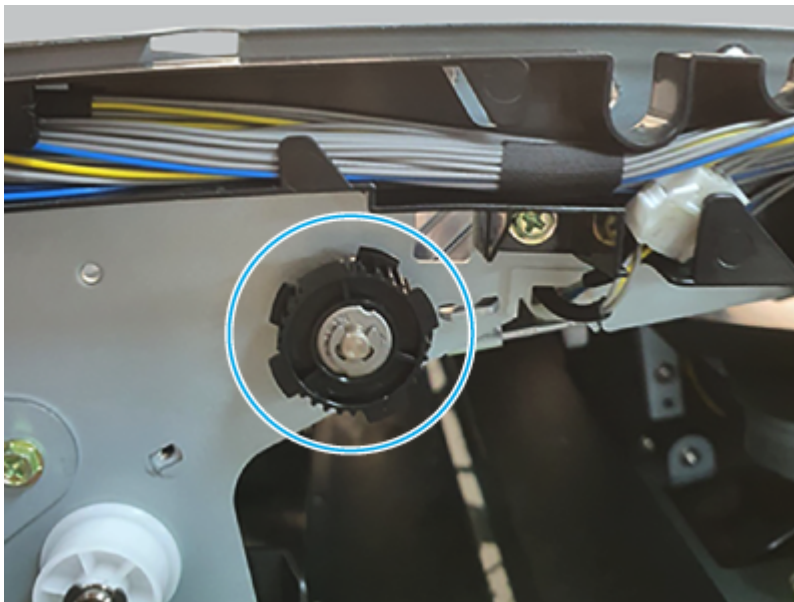


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

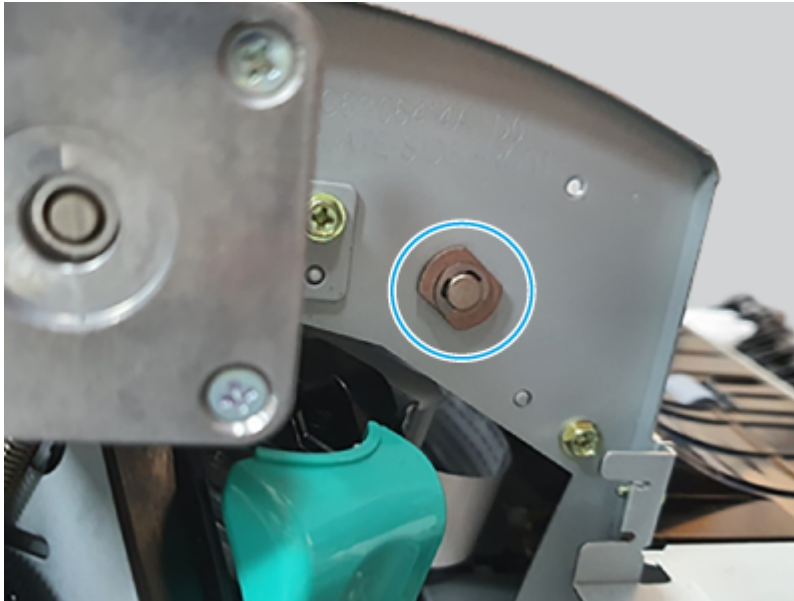
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3163 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



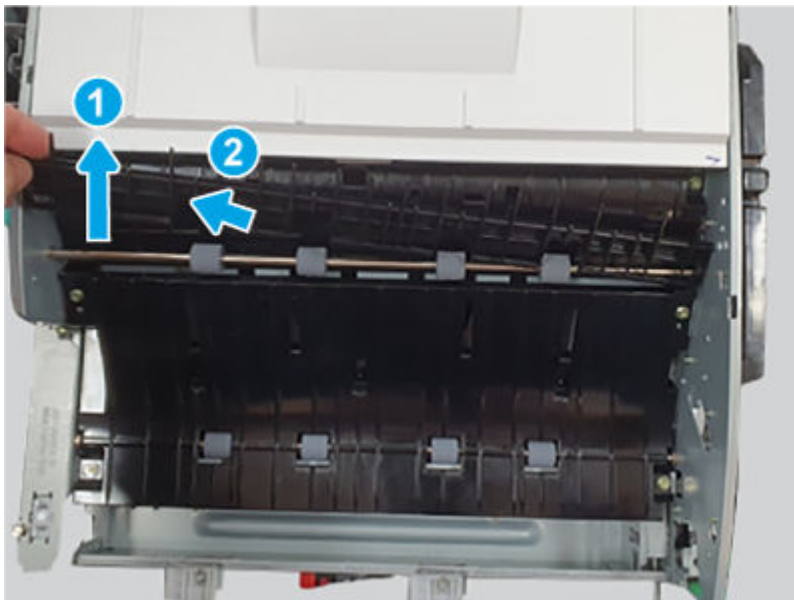
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3164 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3165 Remove the roller



7 Remove the inner finisher punch waste full sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch waste full sensor.

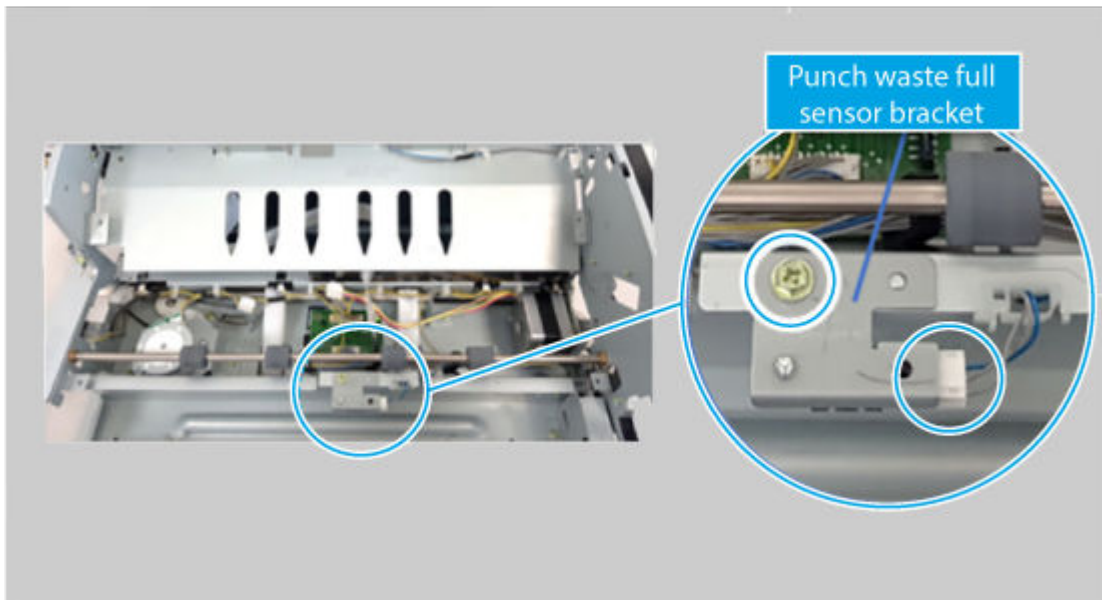
1. Remove six screws.

Figure 6-3166 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the punch waste full sensor.


Figure 6-3167 Remove the sensor



8 **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Entrance unit

Review the inner finisher entrance unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Entrance sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher entrance sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-385 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Entrance sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

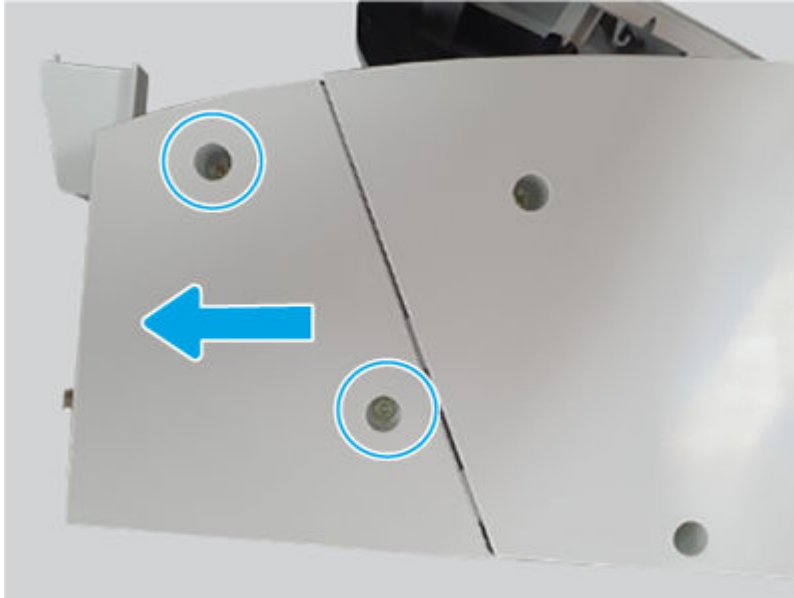
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3168 Remove the cover

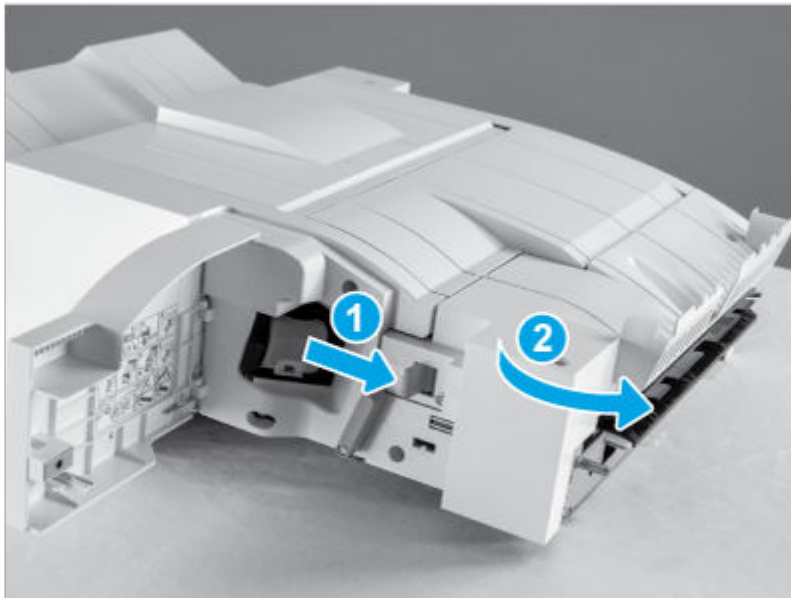


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

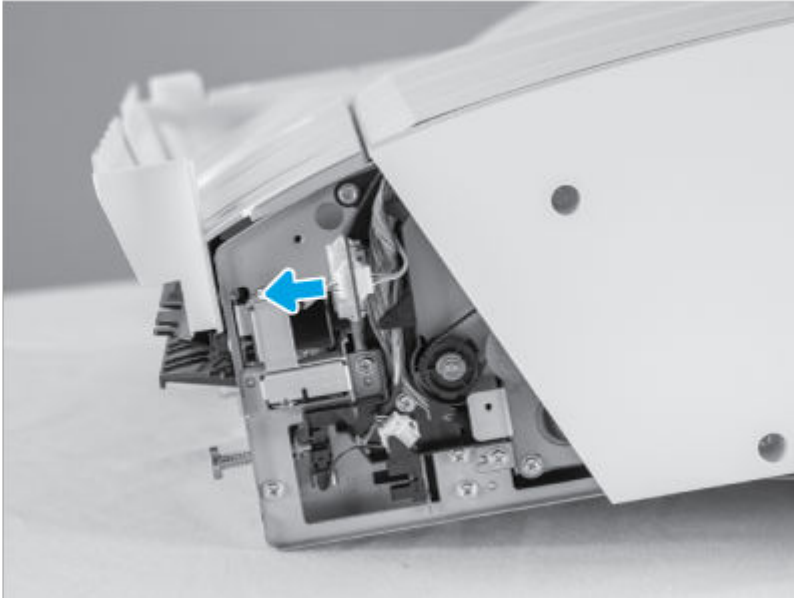
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3169 Rotate the punch



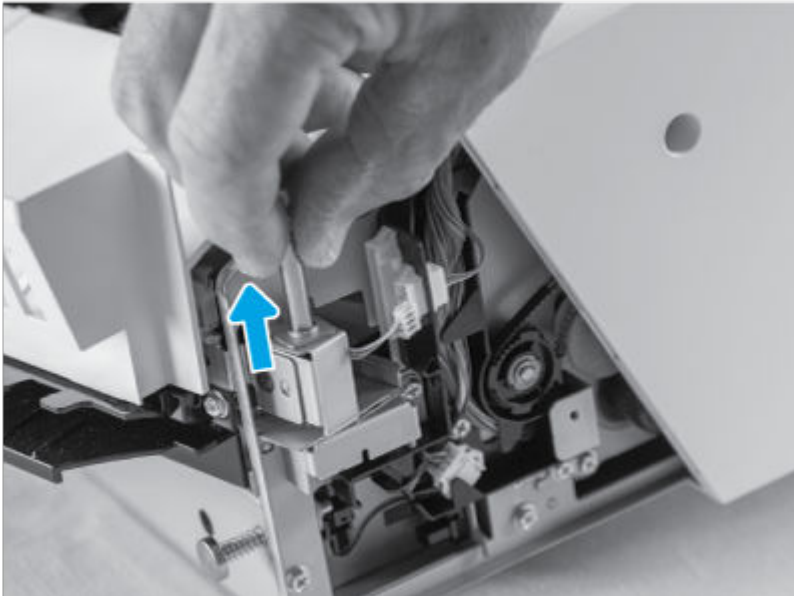
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3170 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3171 Remove the assembly

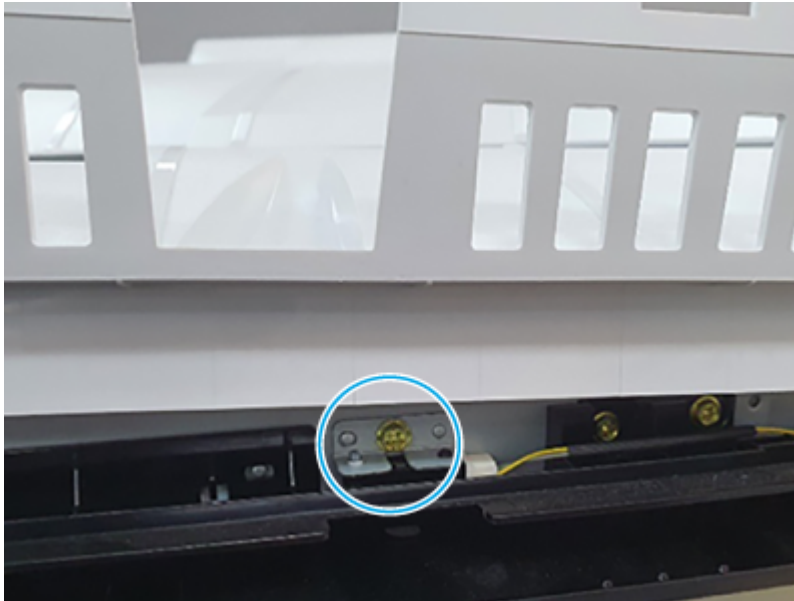


3 Remove the inner finisher entrance sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher entrance sensor.

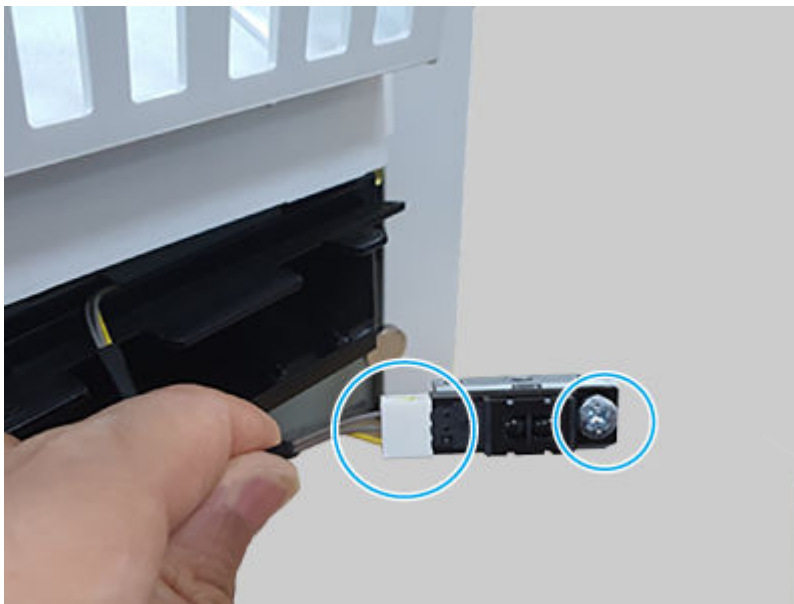
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3172 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then separate the inner finisher entrance sensor from the mounting bracket to remove it.

Figure 6-3173 Remove the sensor



4 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher entrance motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-386 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60128	Entrance motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

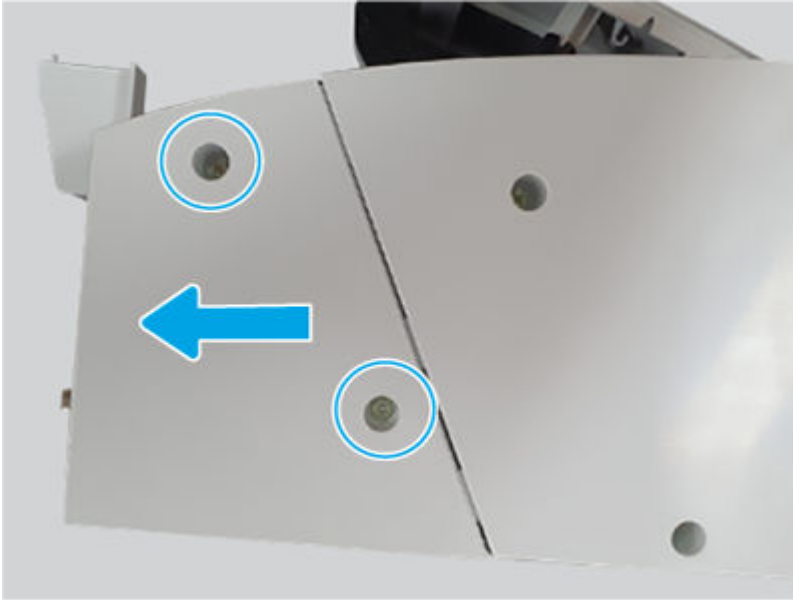
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3174 Remove the cover

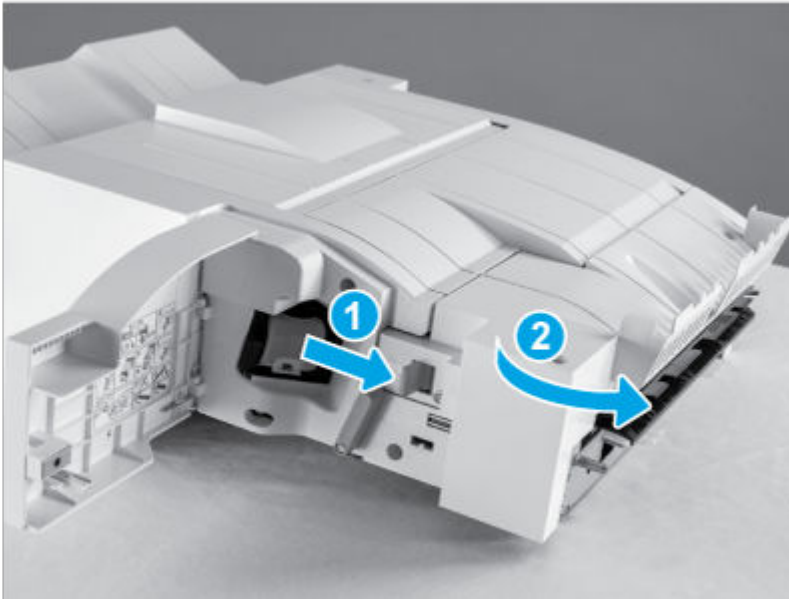


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

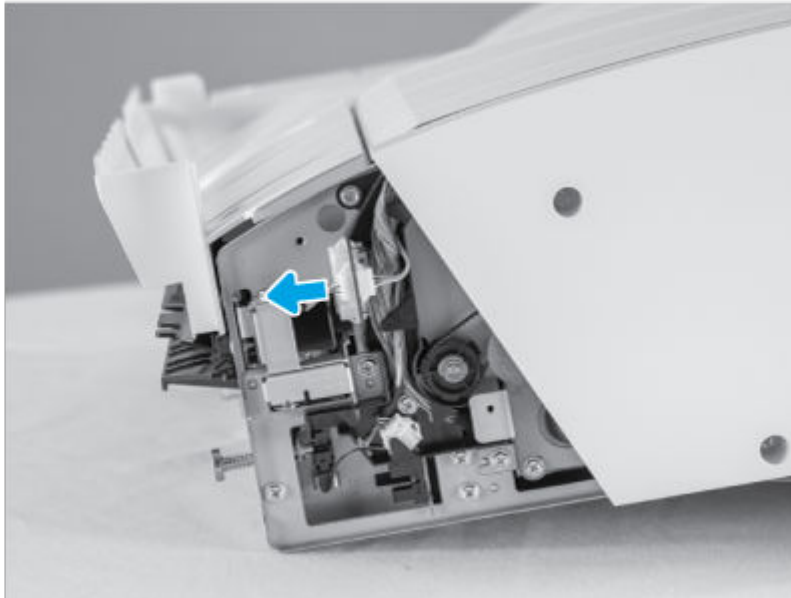
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3175 Rotate the punch



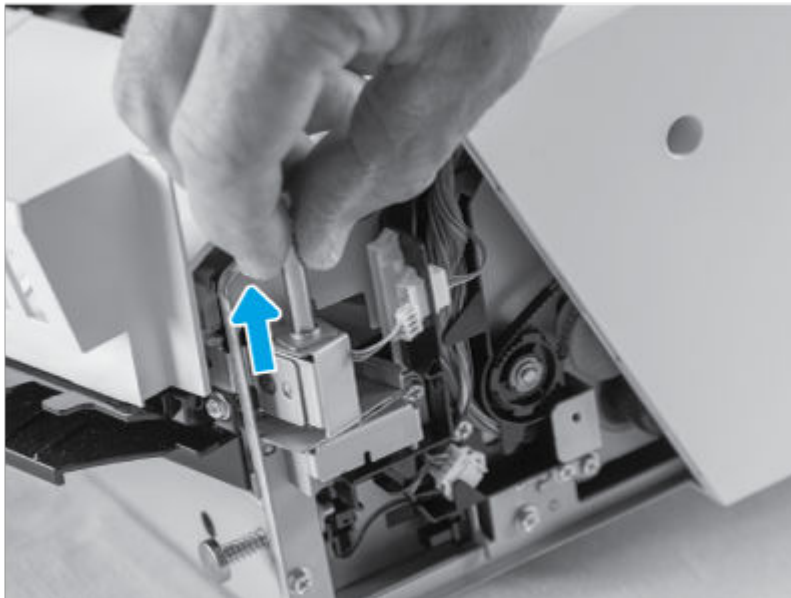
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3176 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3177 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

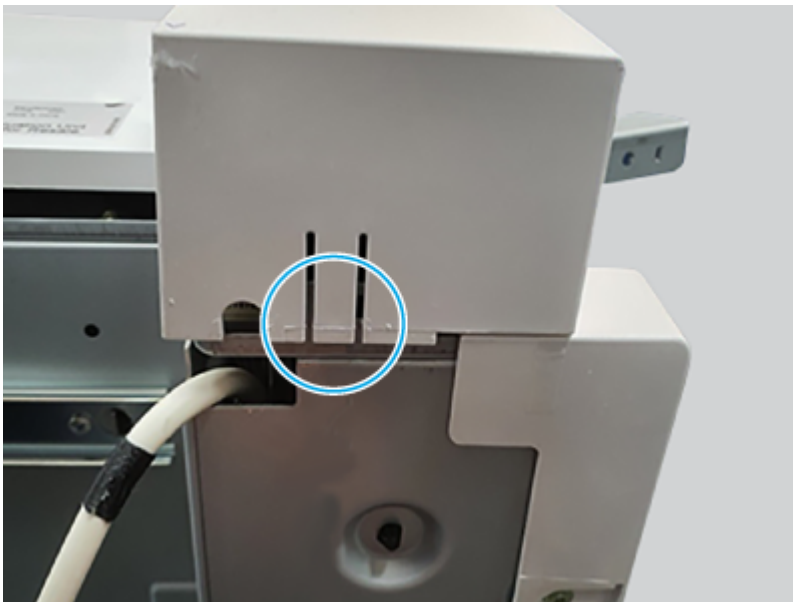
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3178 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3179 Remove the cover



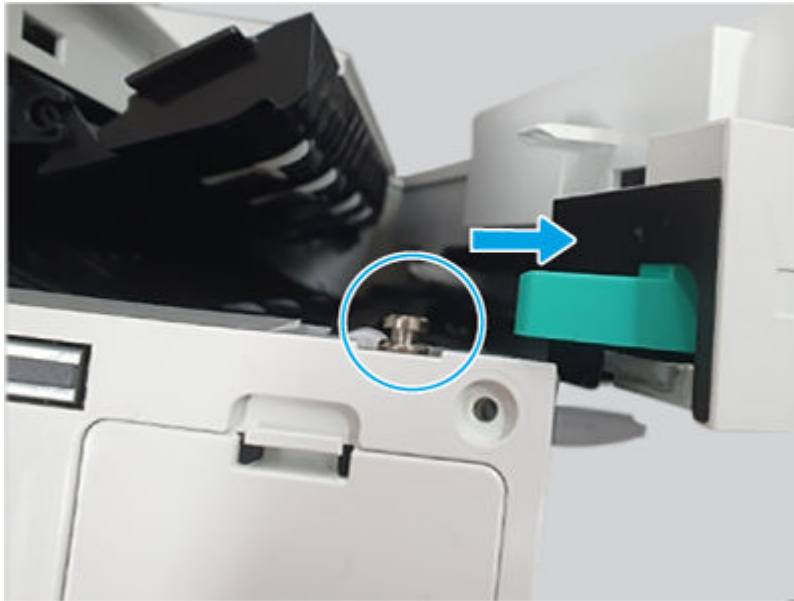
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3180 Open the punch cover



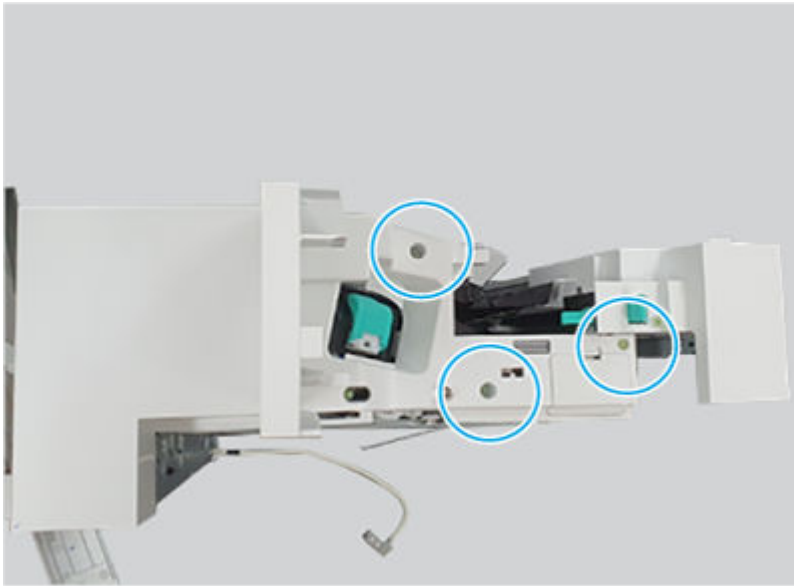
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3181 Remove the handle



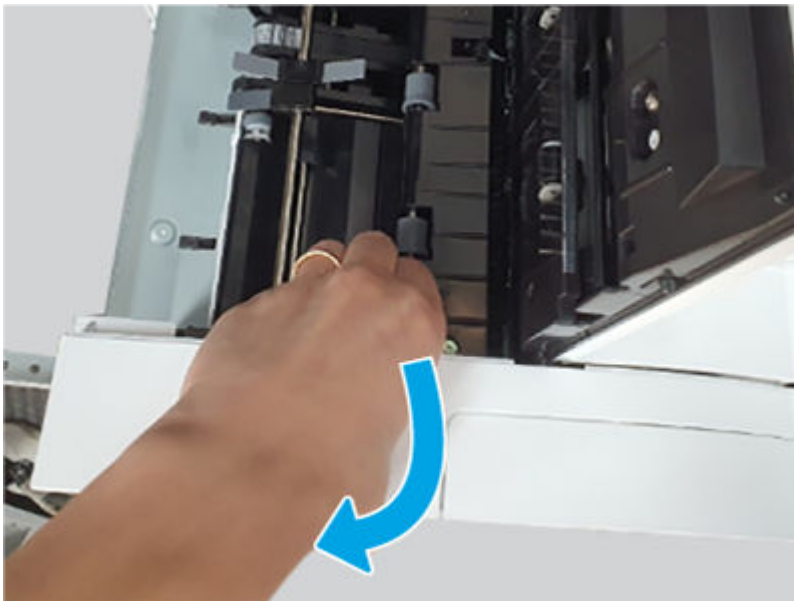
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3182 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3183 Remove the cover

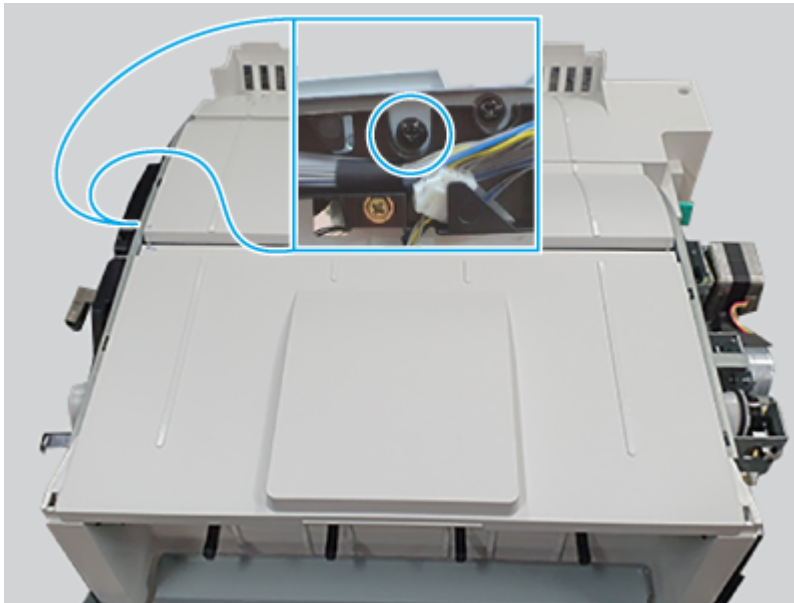


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3184 Remove the cover

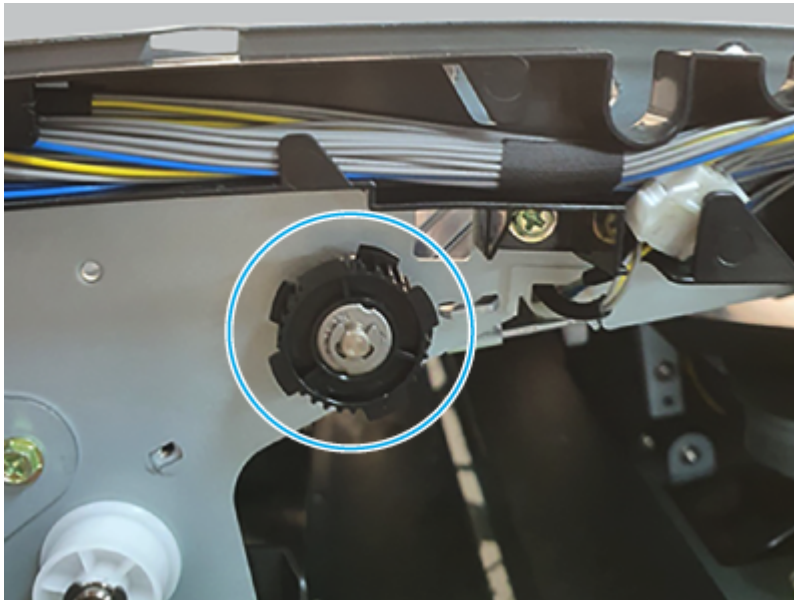


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3185 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



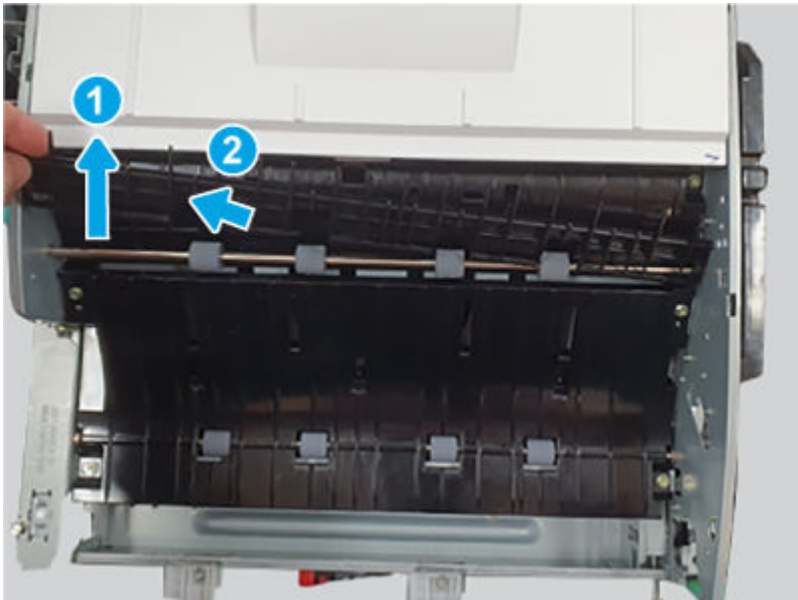
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3186 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3187 Remove the roller

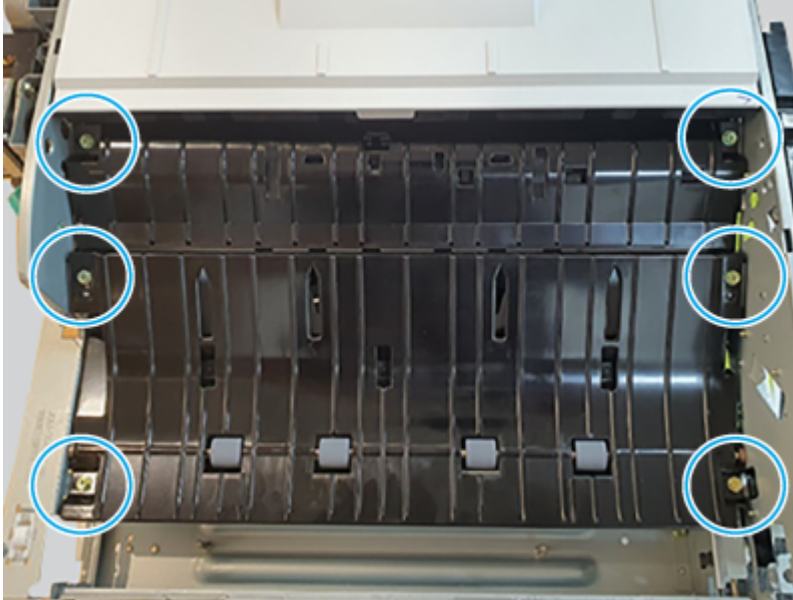


7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3188 Remove the guide



8 Remove the inner finisher entrance motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher entrance motor assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.

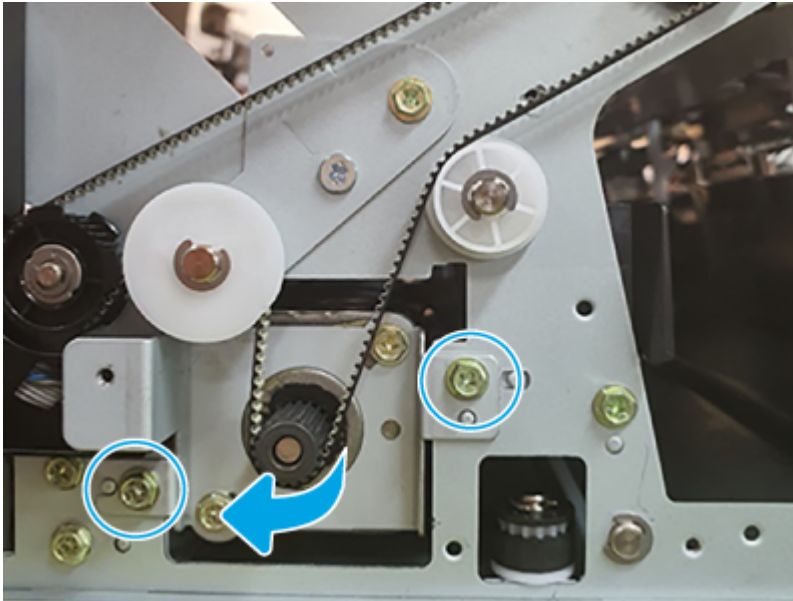
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3189 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove the belt, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher entrance motor assembly.


Figure 6-3190 Remove the assembly



9 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher entrance motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-387 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00169B	Motor, step (Entrance motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

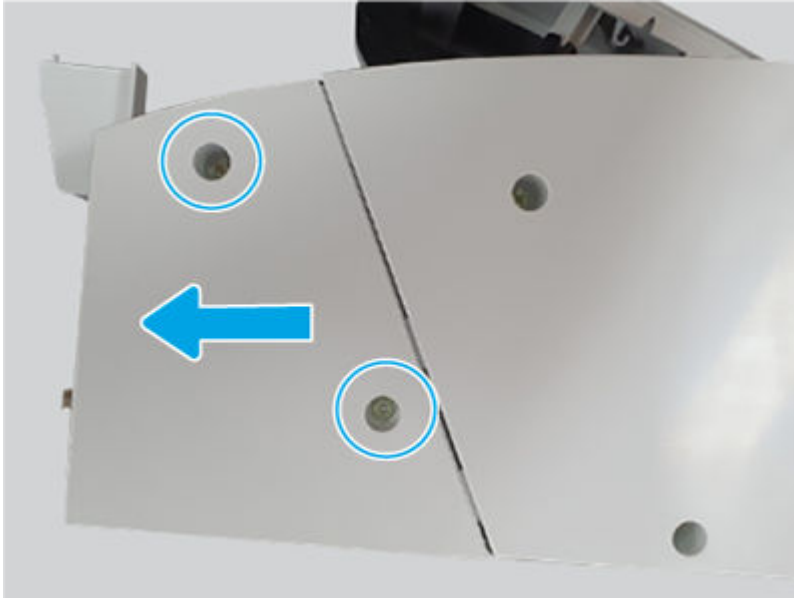
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3191 Remove the cover

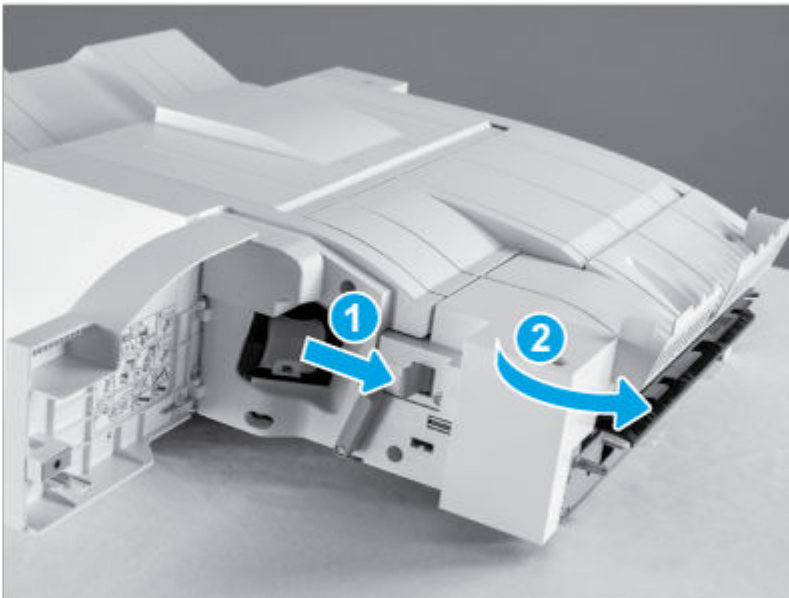


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

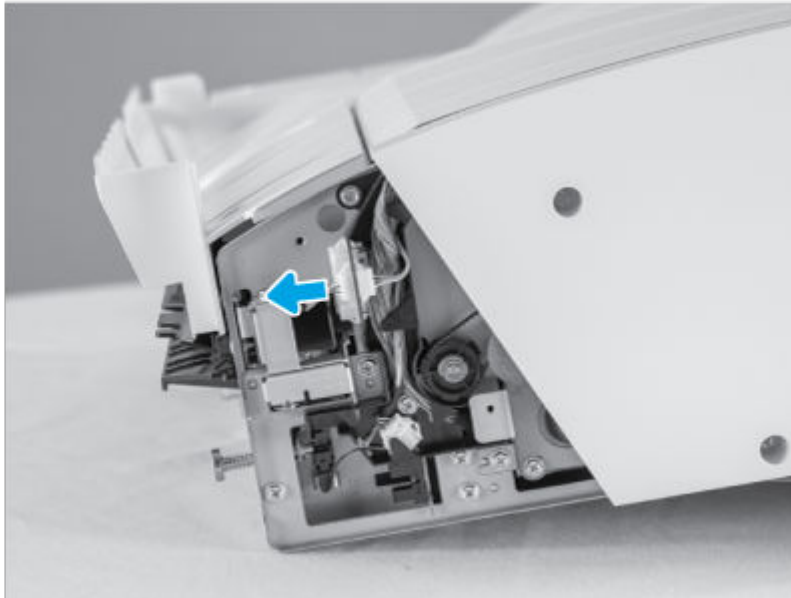
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3192 Rotate the punch



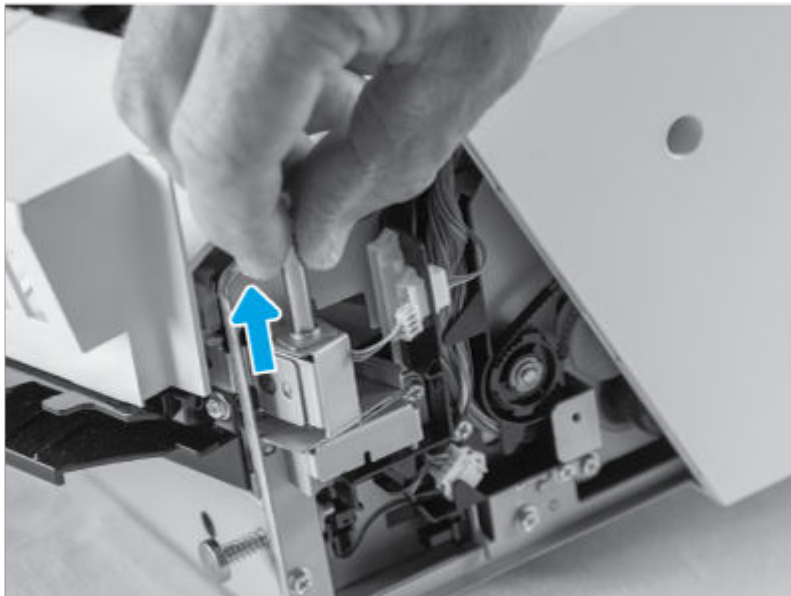
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3193 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3194 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

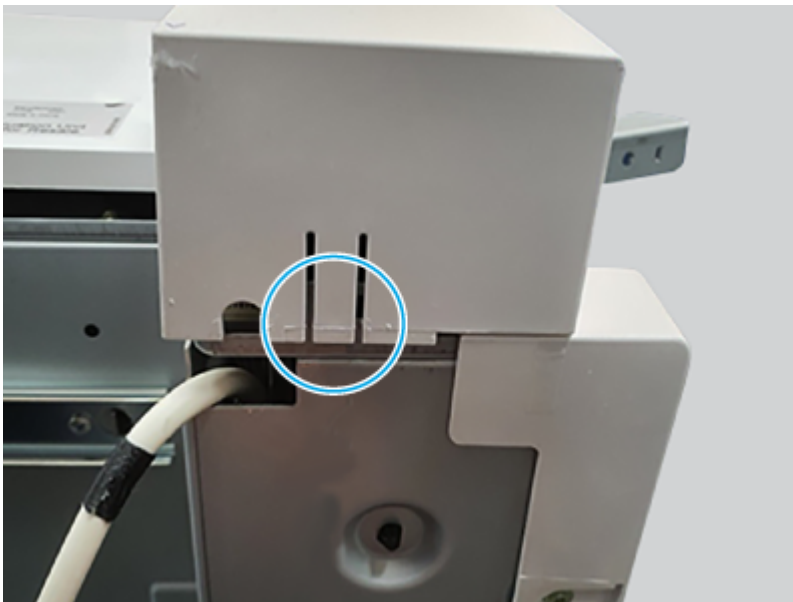
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3195 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3196 Remove the cover



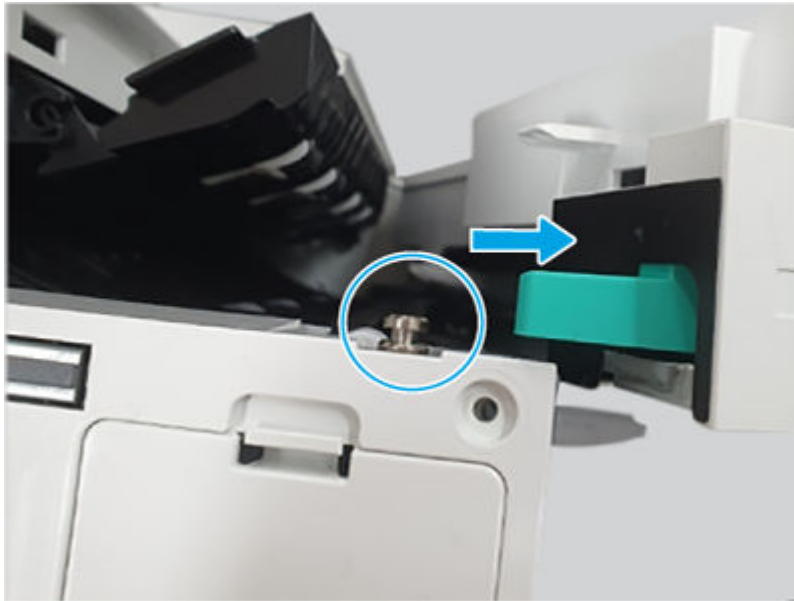
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3197 Open the punch cover



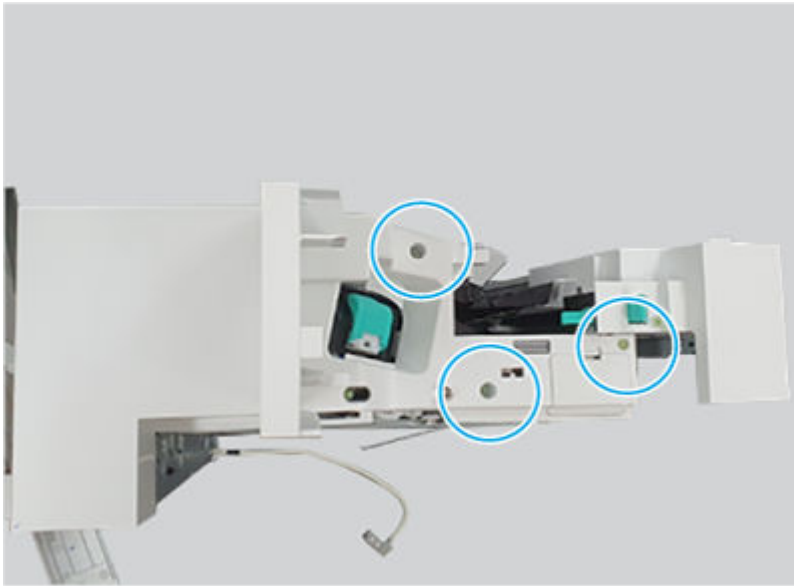
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3198 Remove the handle



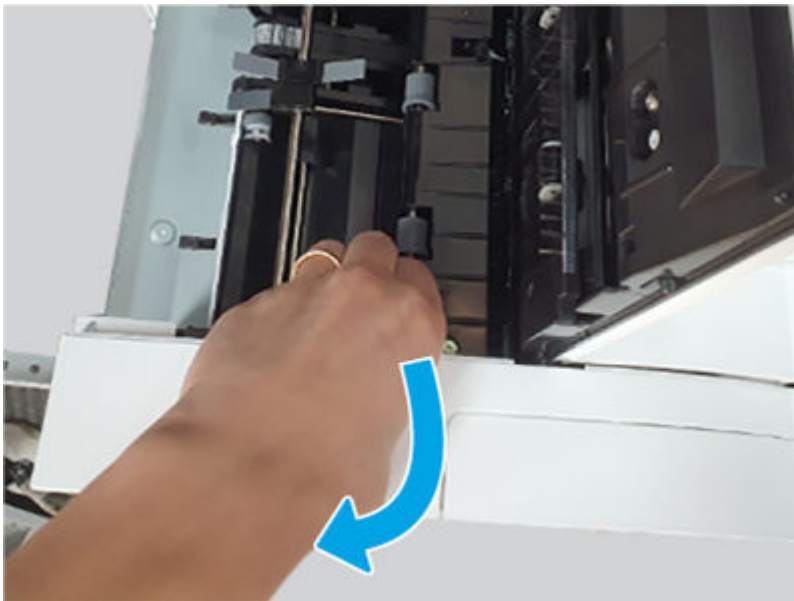
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3199 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3200 Remove the cover

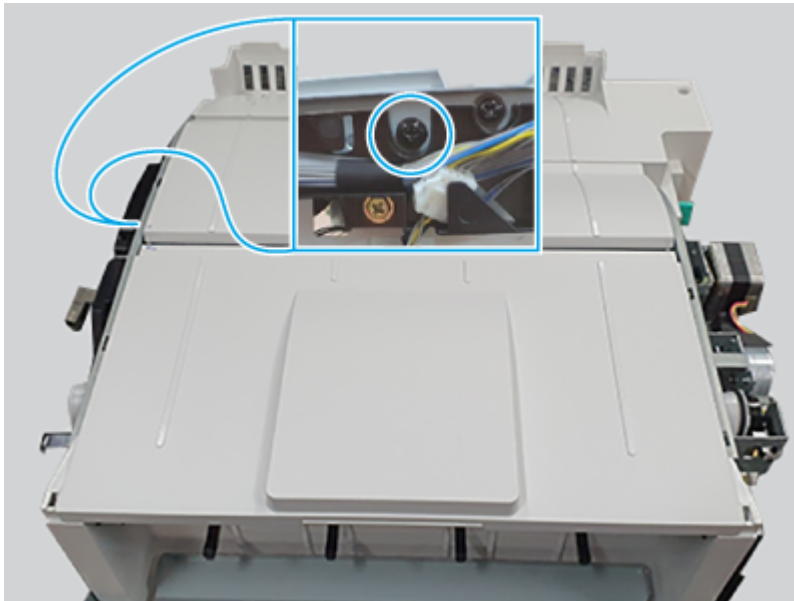


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3201 Remove the cover

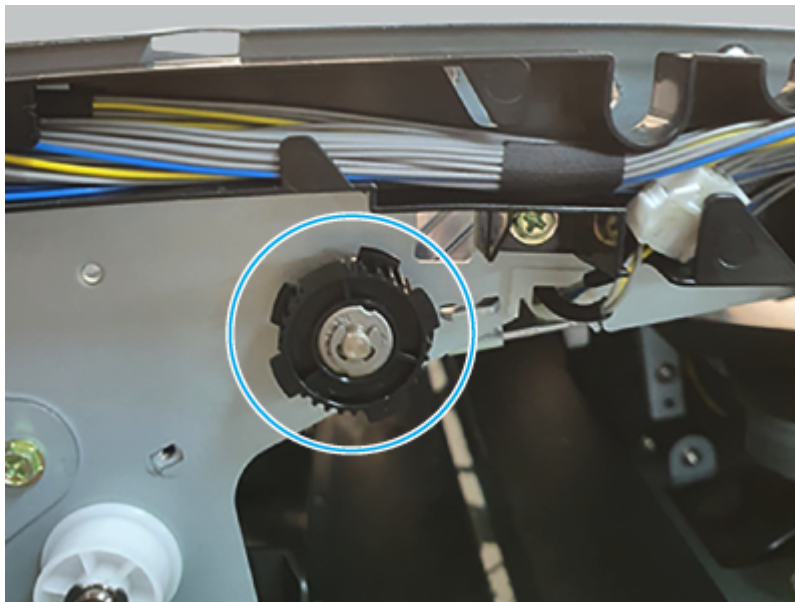


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

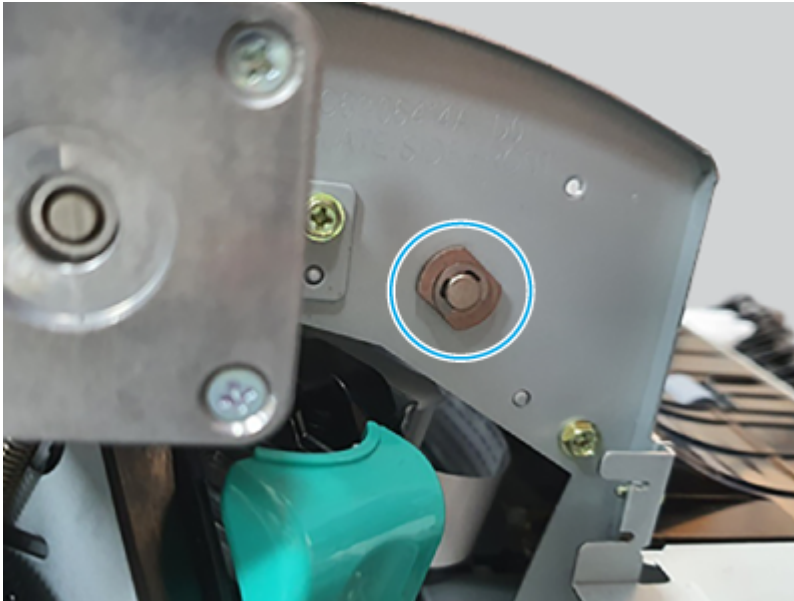
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3202 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



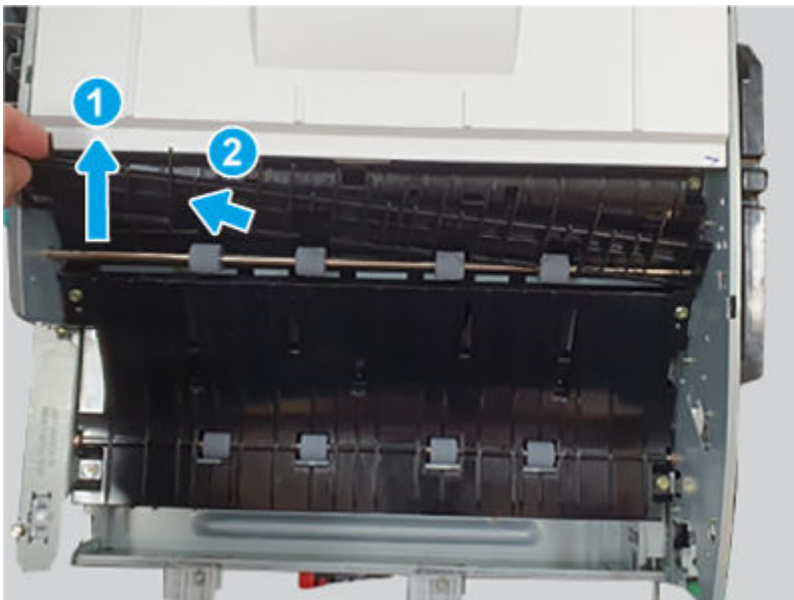
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3203 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3204 Remove the roller

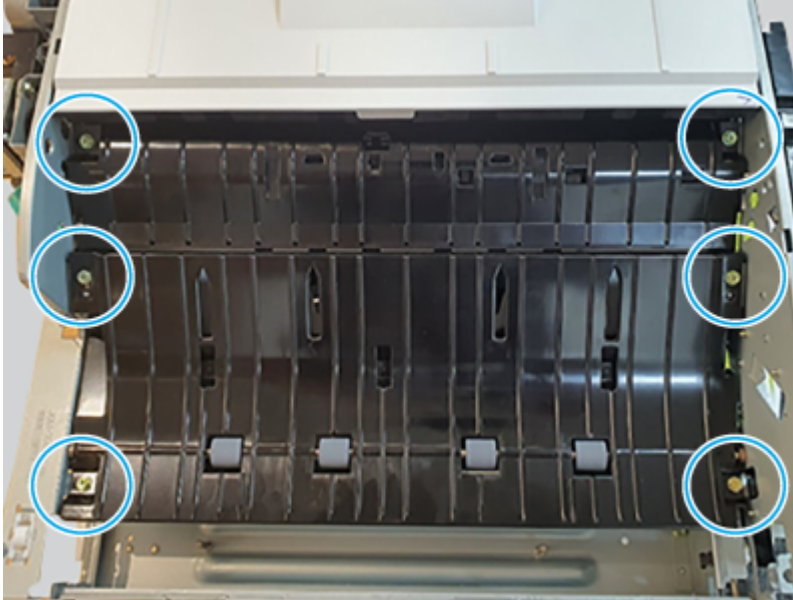


7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3205 Remove the guide



8 Remove the inner finisher entrance motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher entrance motor.

1. Disconnect one connector.


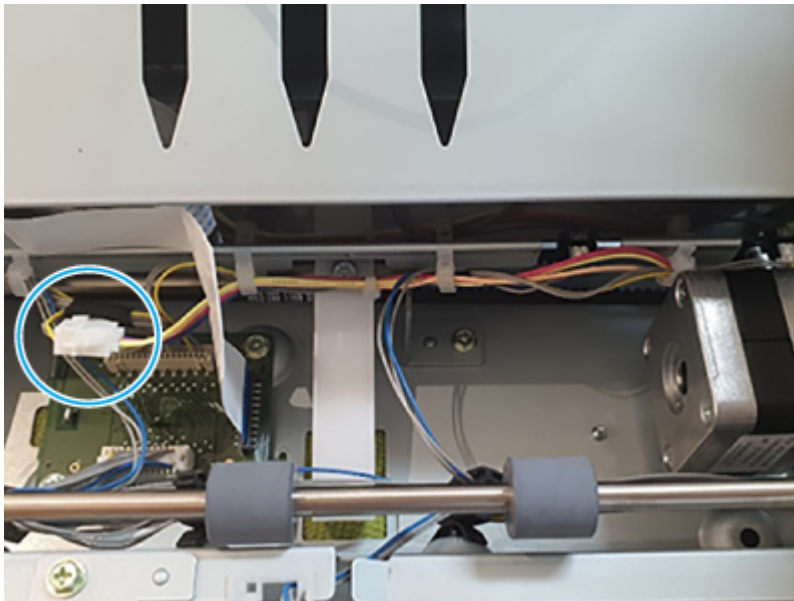
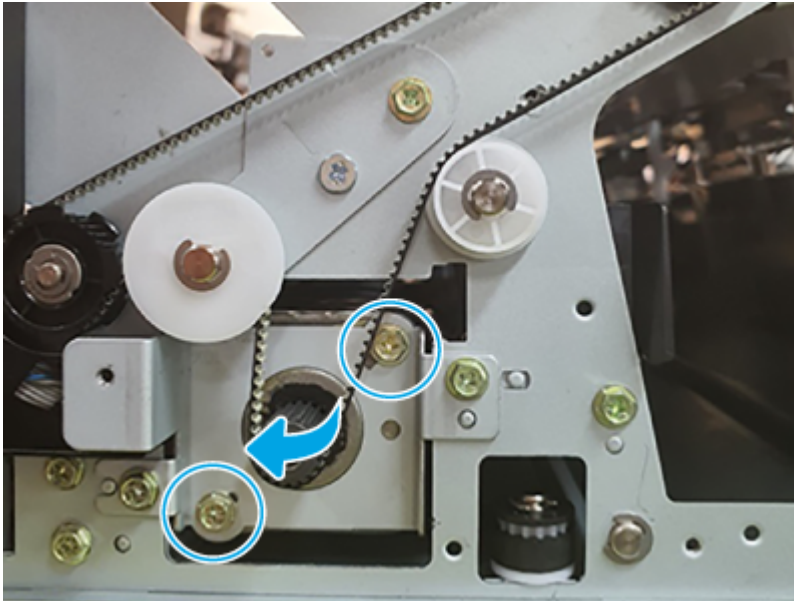
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3206 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove the belt, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher entrance motor.


Figure 6-3207 Remove the motor



9 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor timing belt

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher entrance motor timing belt.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-388 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00169B	Entrance motor timing belt

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

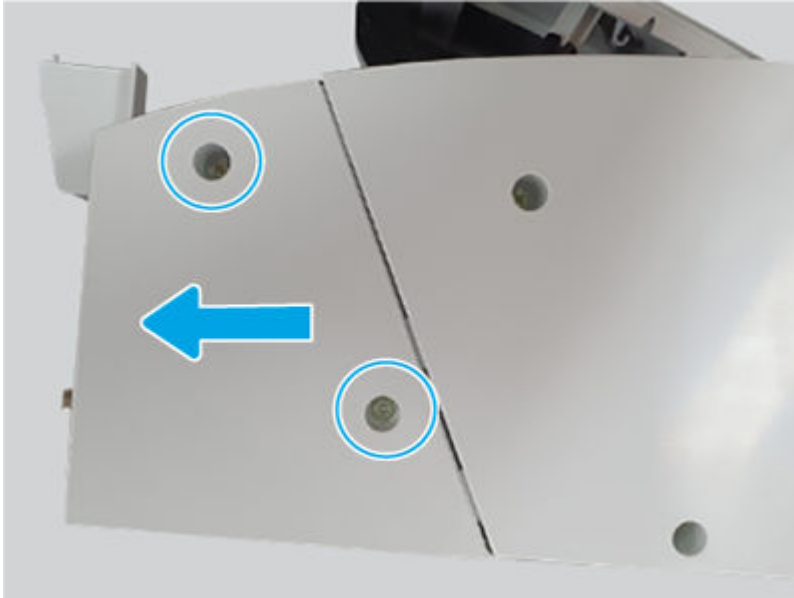
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3208 Remove the cover

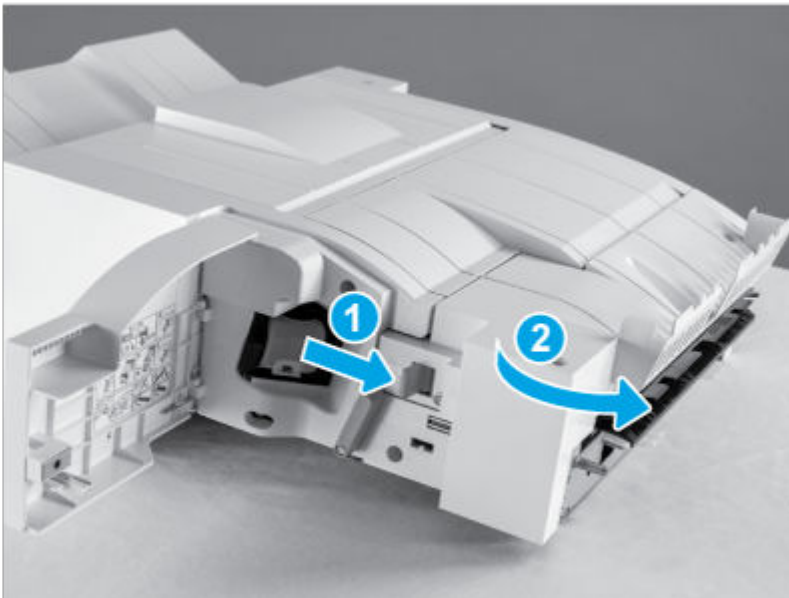


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

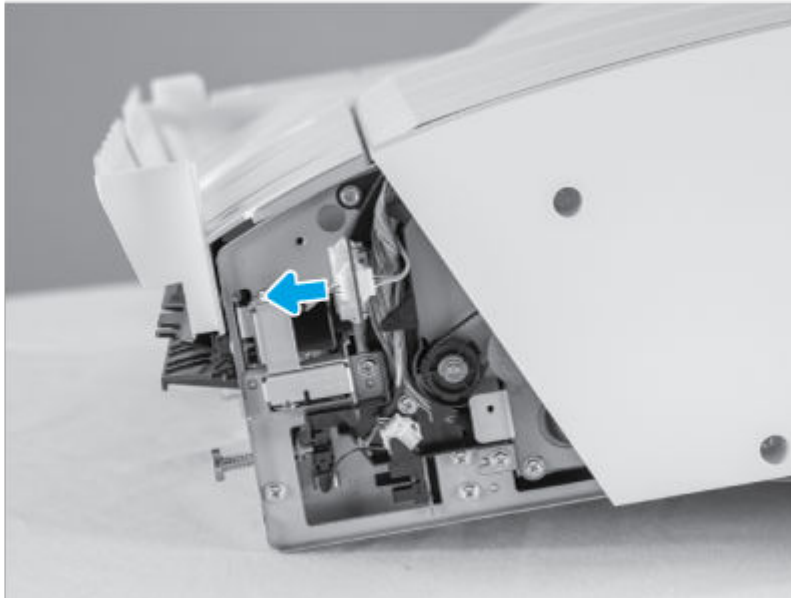
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3209 Rotate the punch



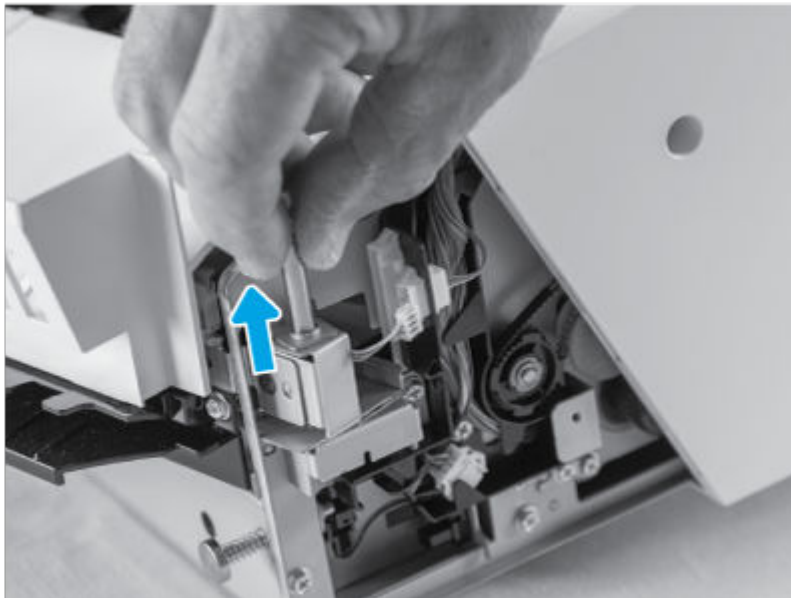
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3210 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3211 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

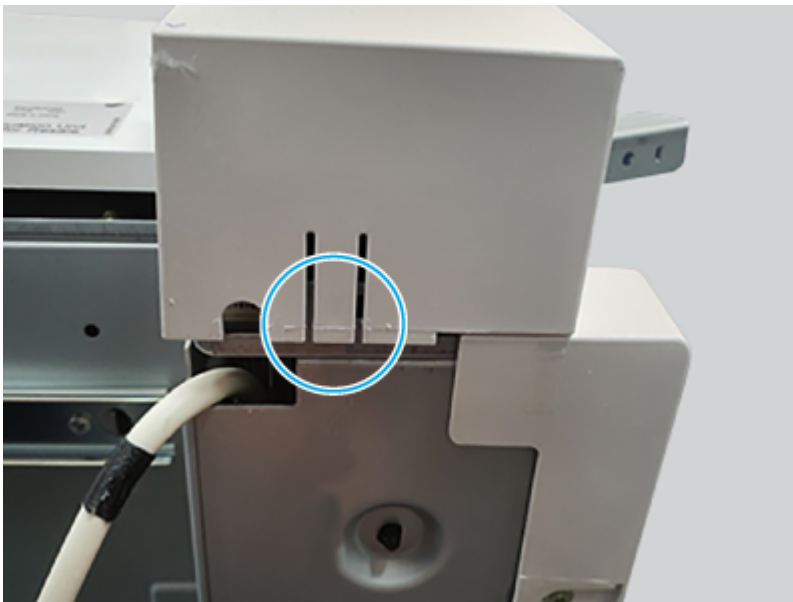
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3212 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3213 Remove the cover



4 Remove the inner finisher entrance motor timing belt

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher entrance motor timing belt.

- Remove the inner finisher entrance motor timing belt.


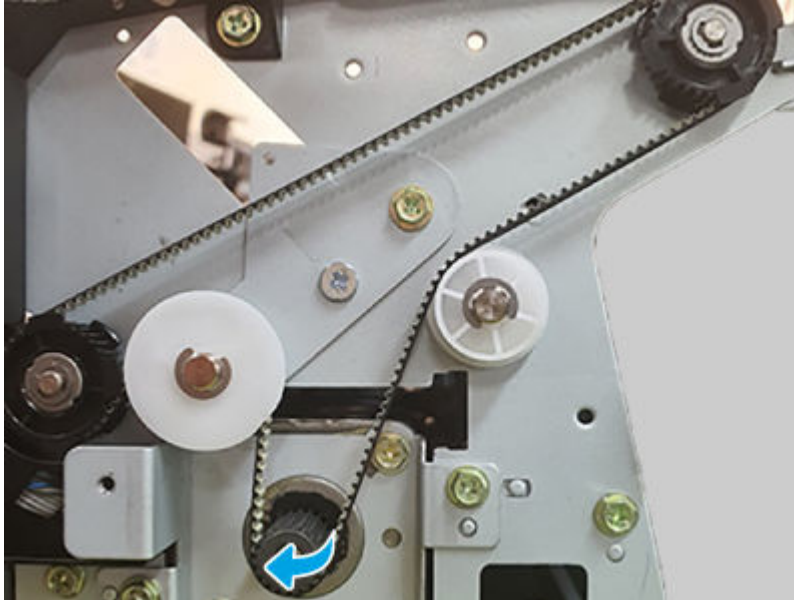
 **NOTE:** To begin, slip the belt off of the lower most gear when removing the belt.

Figure 6-3214 Remove the belt



5 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance roller

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher entrance roller.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-389 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04243A	Entrance roller

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

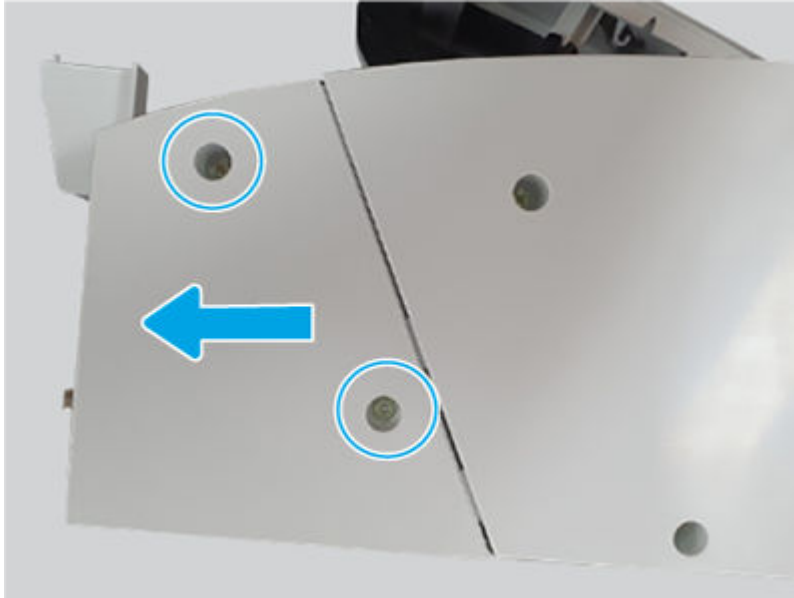
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3215 Remove the cover

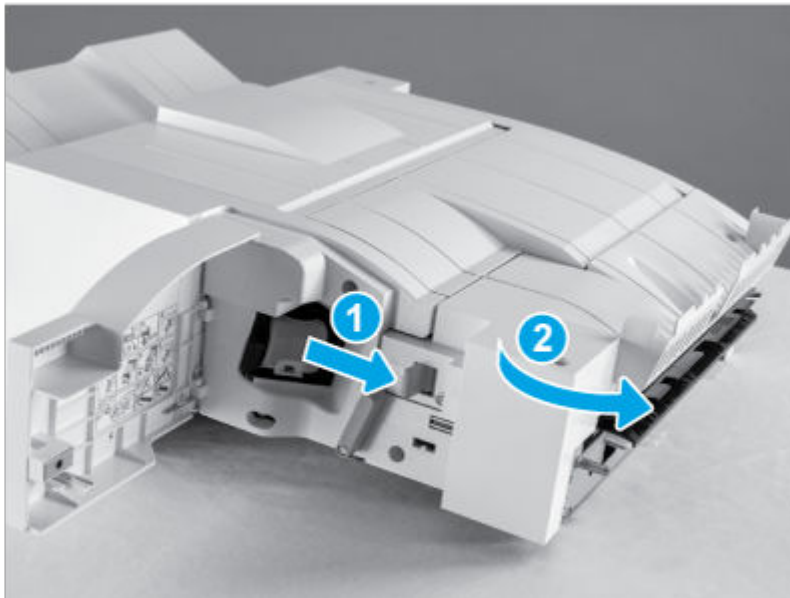


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

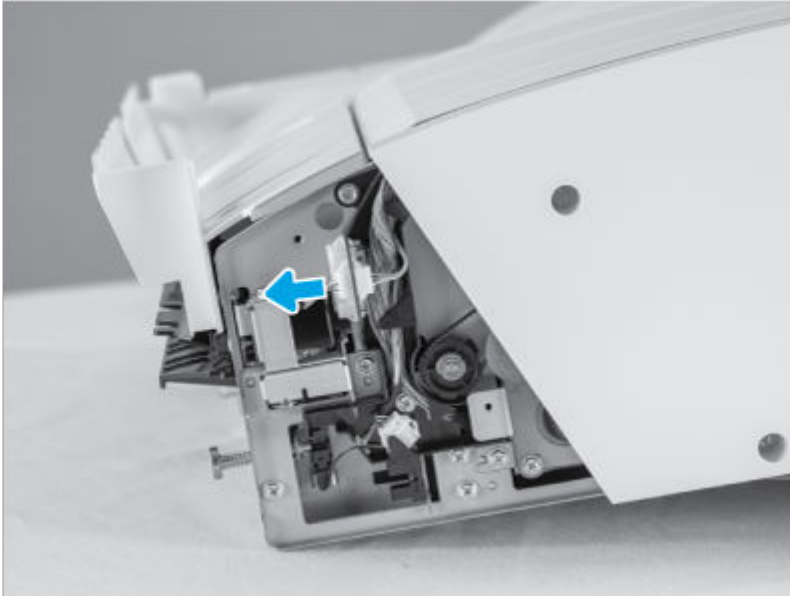
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3216 Rotate the punch



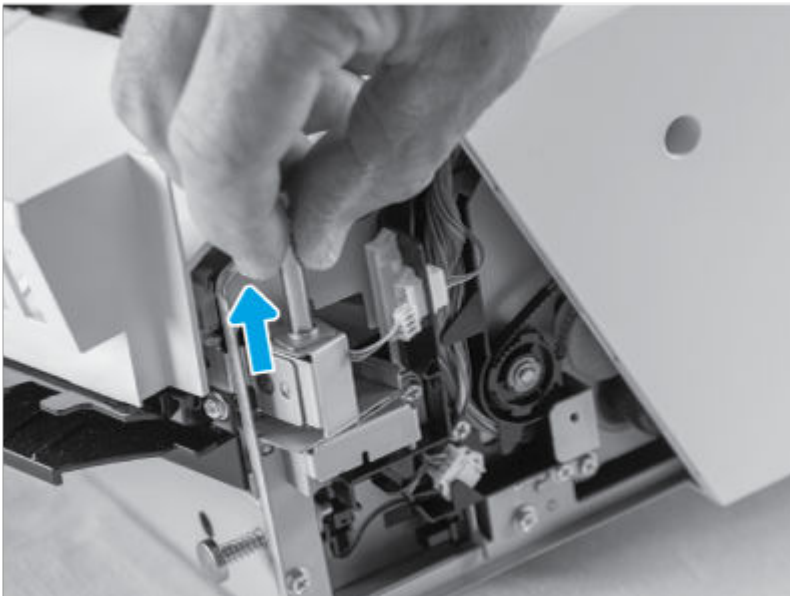
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3217 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3218 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

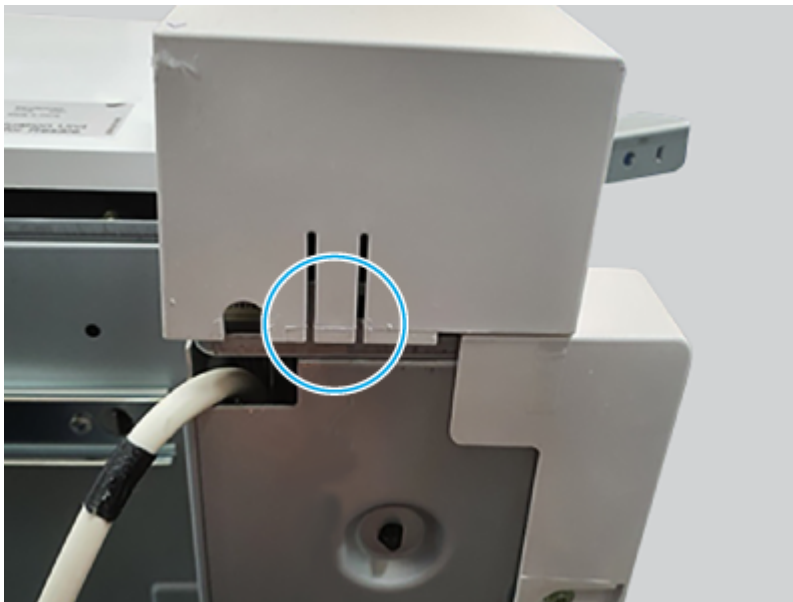
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3219 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3220 Remove the cover



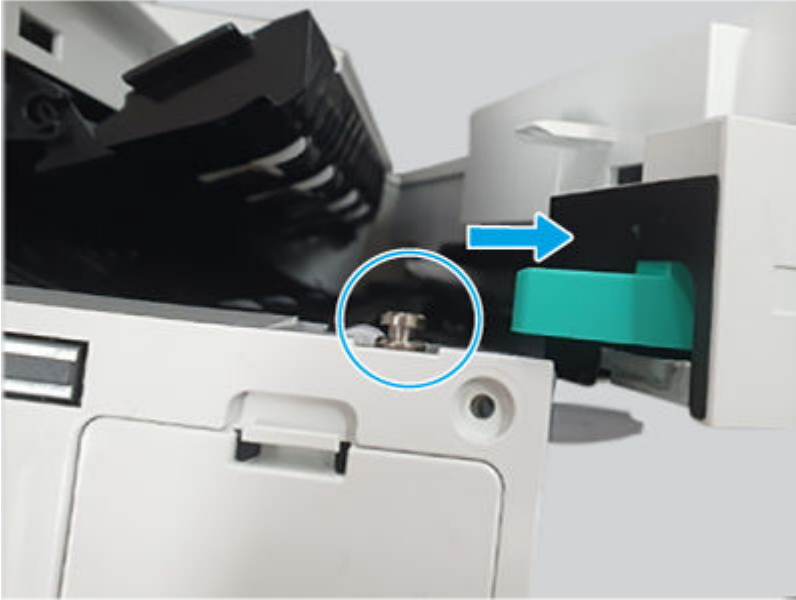
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3221 Open the punch cover



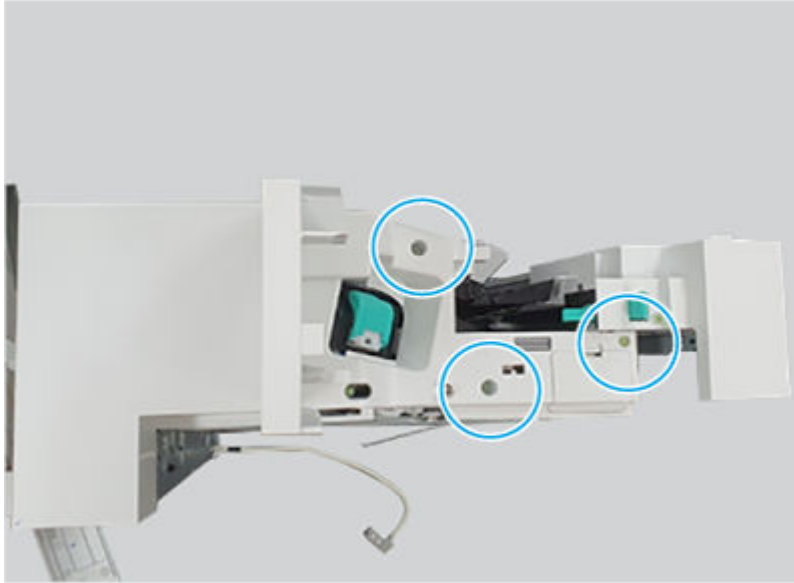
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3222 Remove the handle



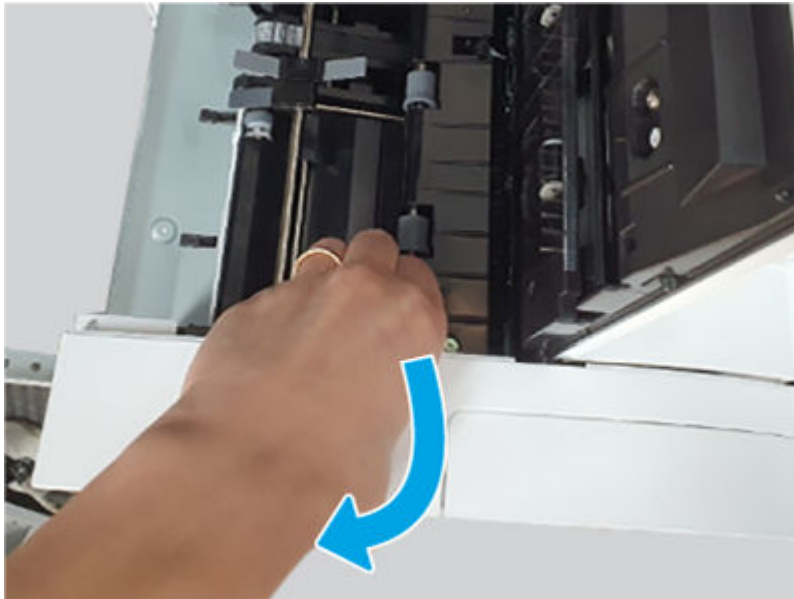
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3223 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3224 Remove the cover

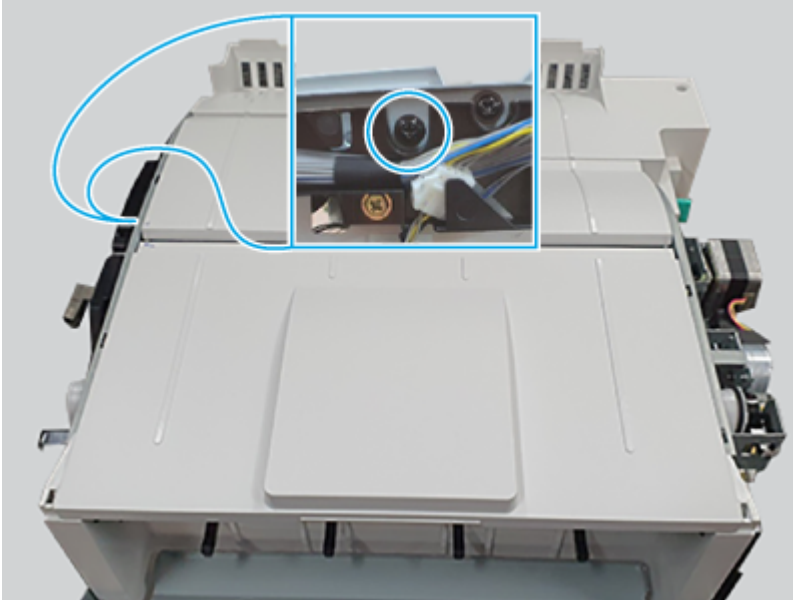


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3225 Remove the cover

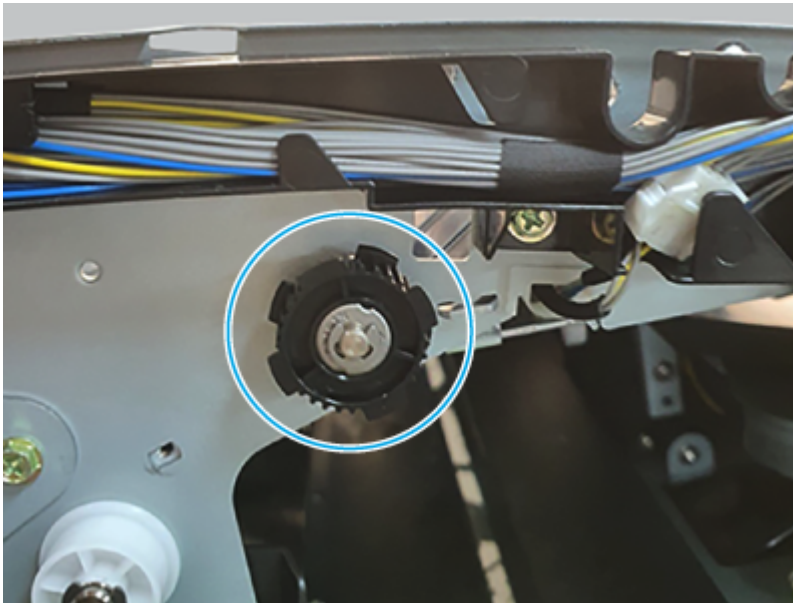


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

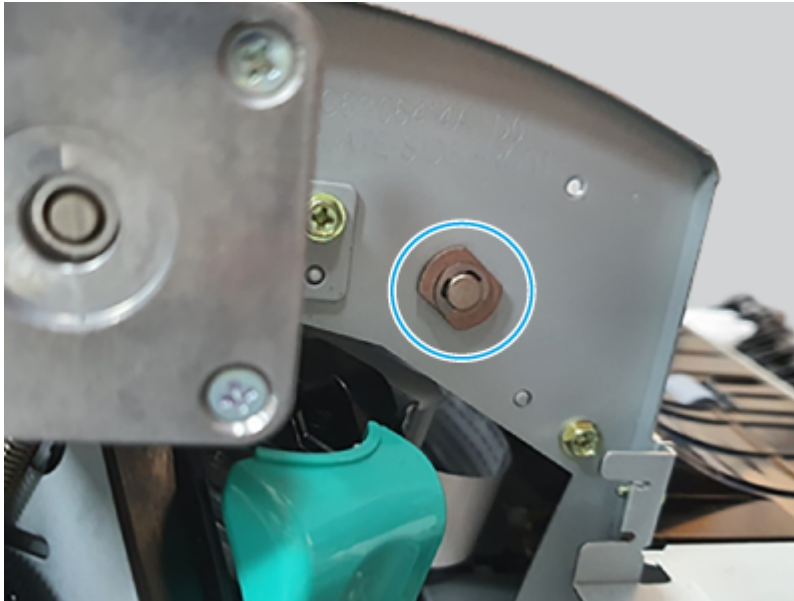
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3226 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



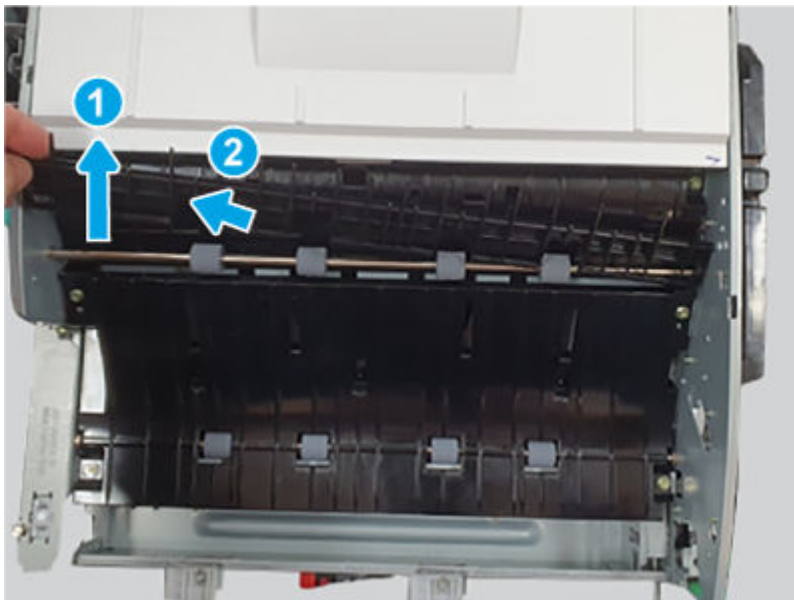
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3227 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3228 Remove the roller

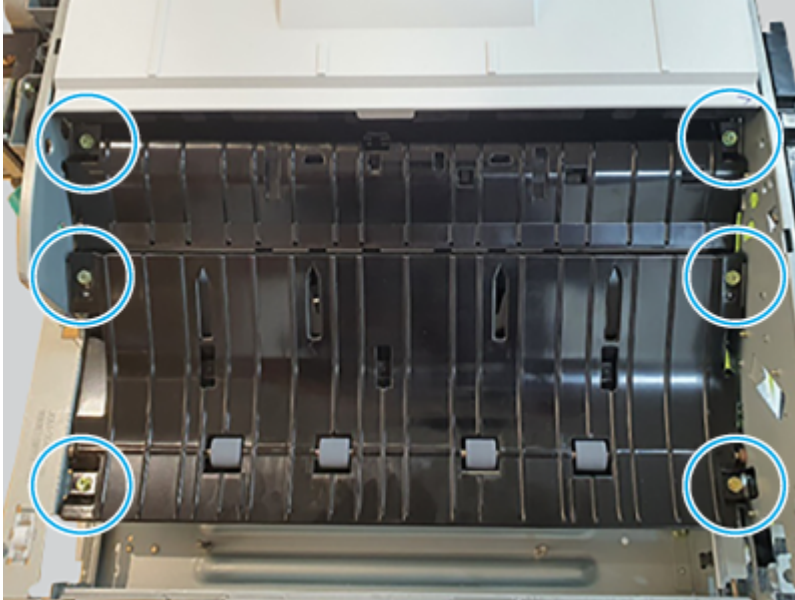


7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3229 Remove the guide

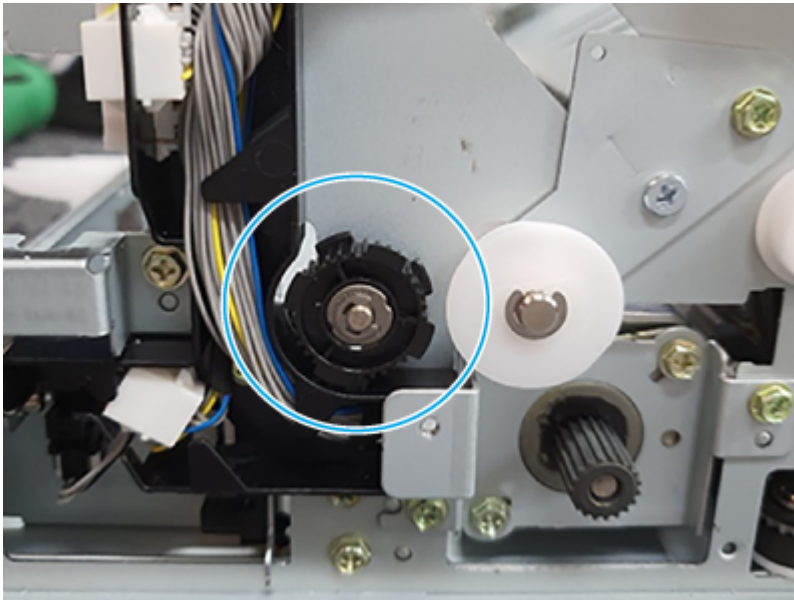


8 Remove the inner finisher entrance roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher entrance roller.

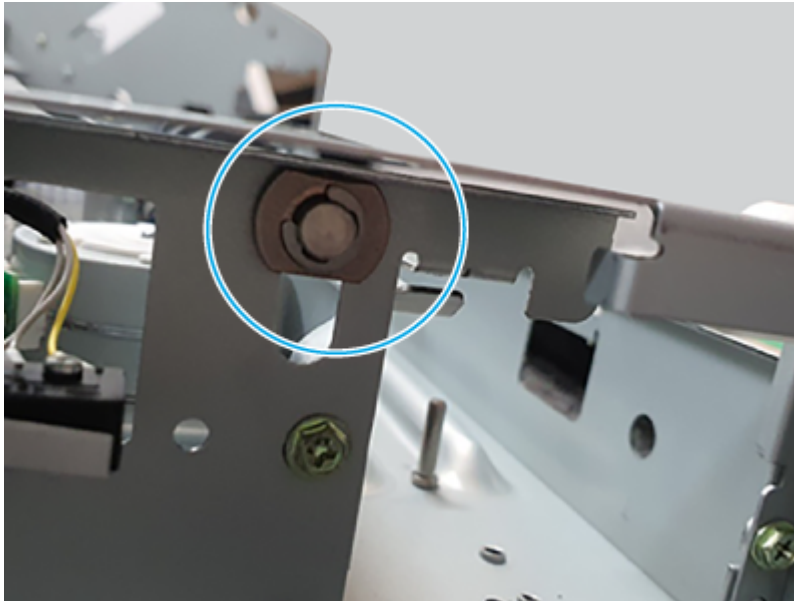
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the gear, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3230 Remove the e-ring, gear, and bushing



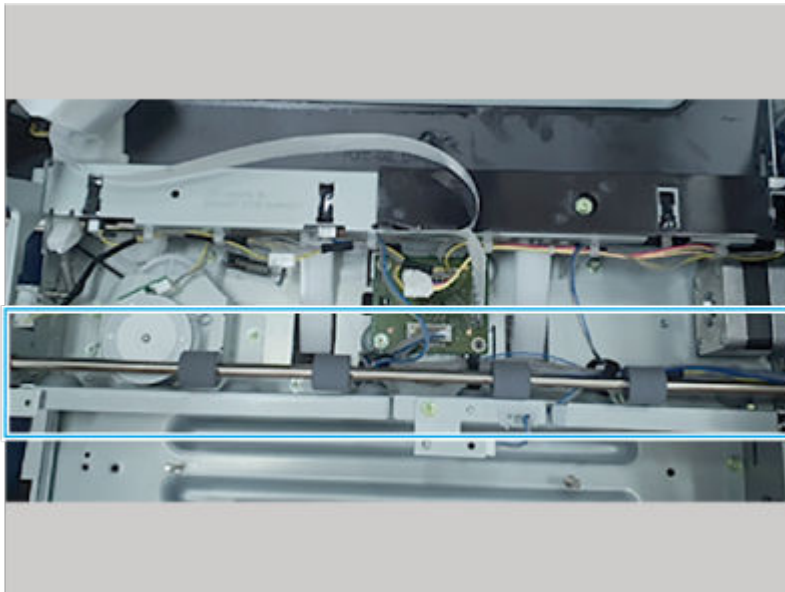
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3231 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher entrance roller.

Figure 6-3232 Remove the roller



9 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Middle roller

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher middle roller.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-390 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04243A	Middle roller

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

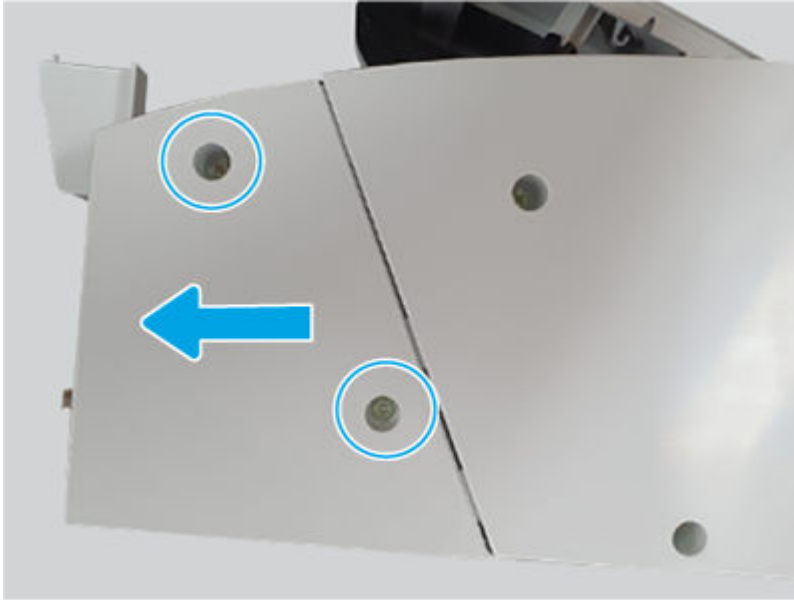
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3233 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

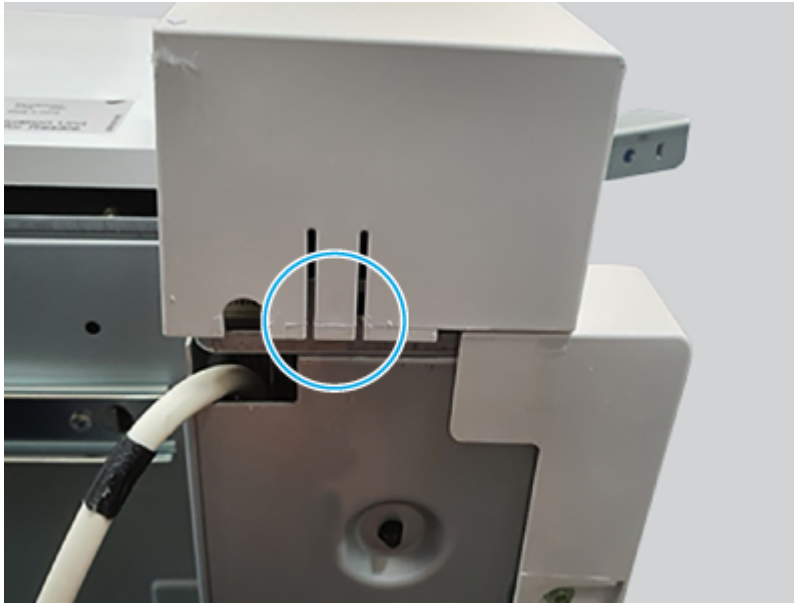
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3234 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3235 Remove the cover

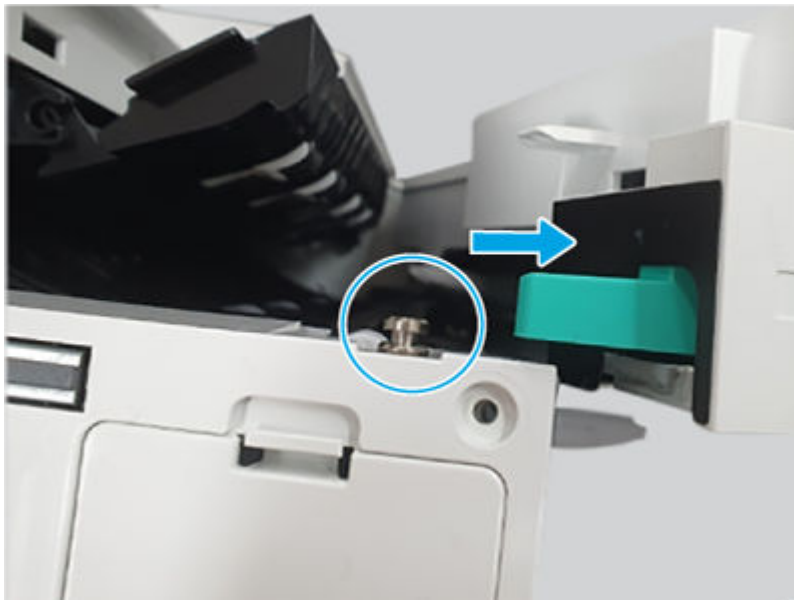


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3236 Open the punch cover



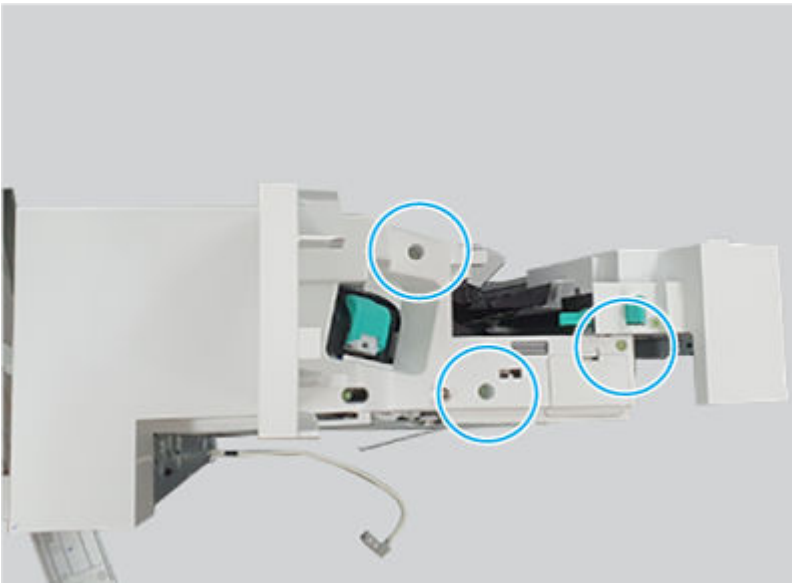
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3237 Remove the handle



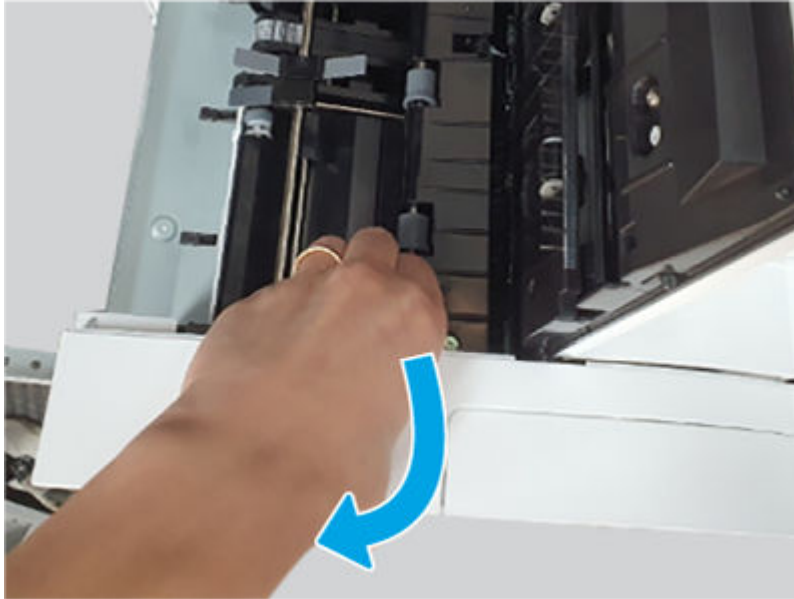
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3238 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3239 Remove the cover

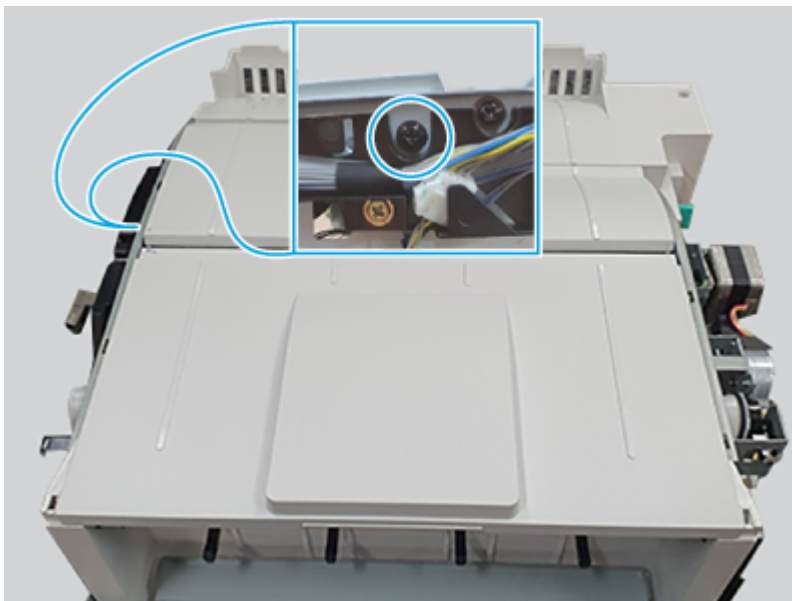


4 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3240 Remove the cover

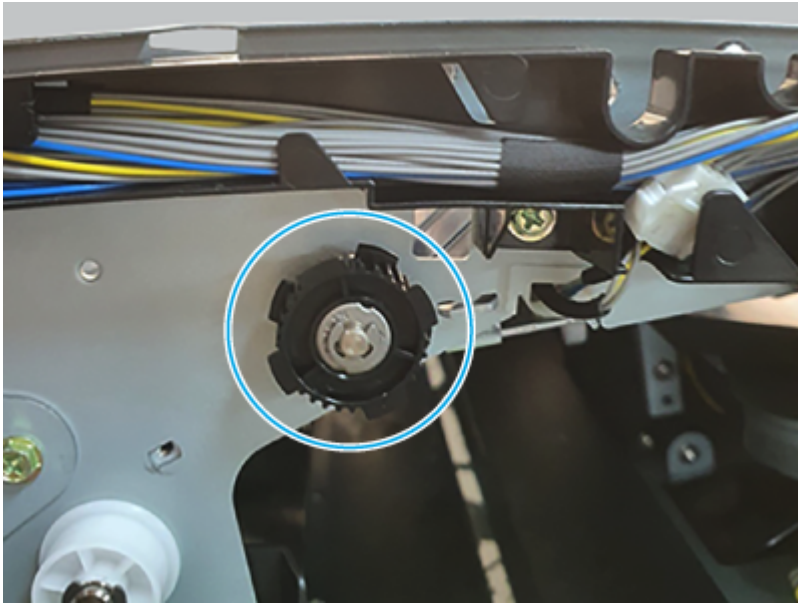


5 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3241 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



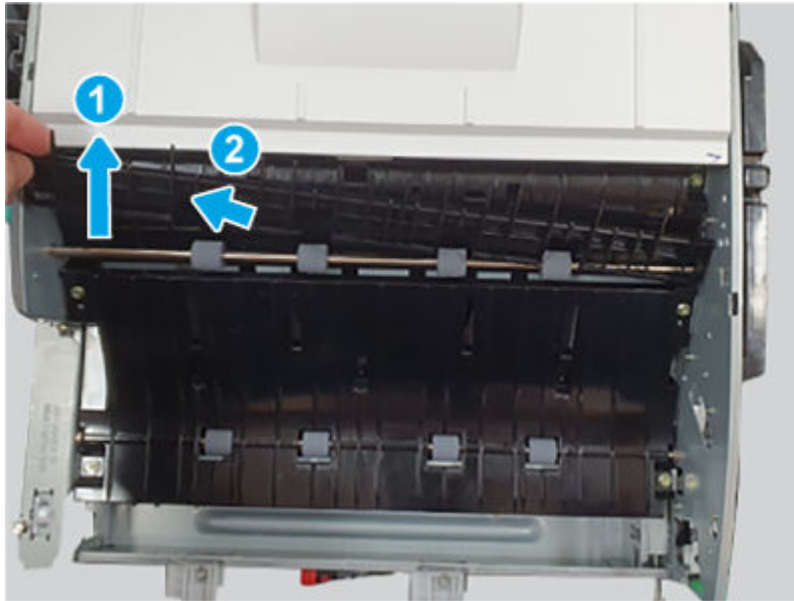
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3242 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.


Figure 6-3243 Remove the roller



6 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Exit unit

Review the inner finisher exit unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Exit roller assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit roller assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-391 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01330A	Exit roller assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

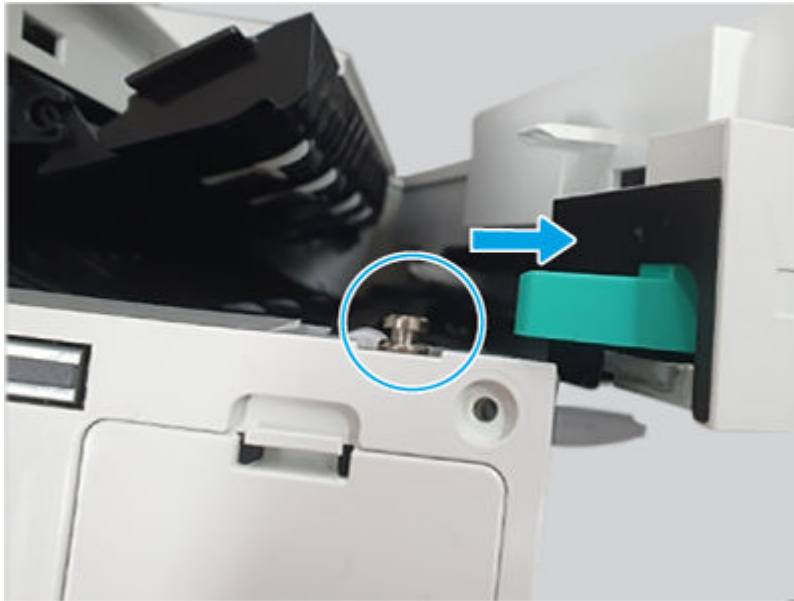
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3244 Open the punch cover



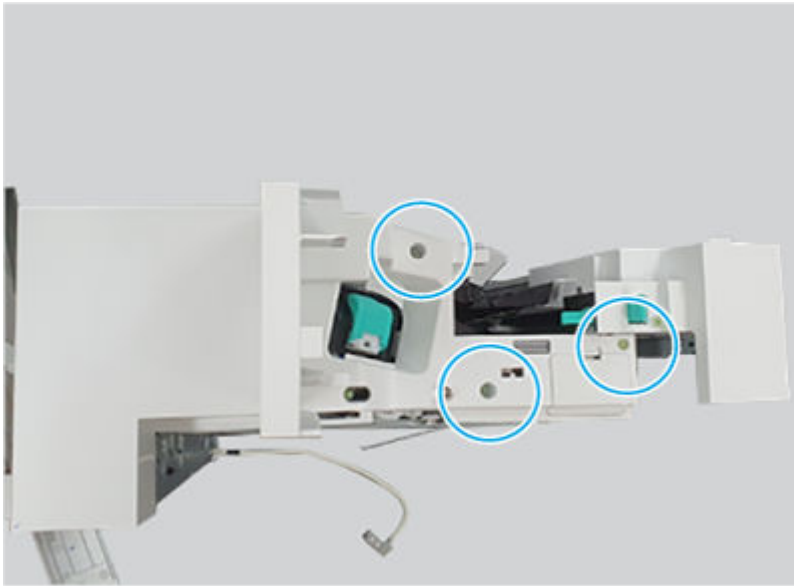
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3245 Remove the handle



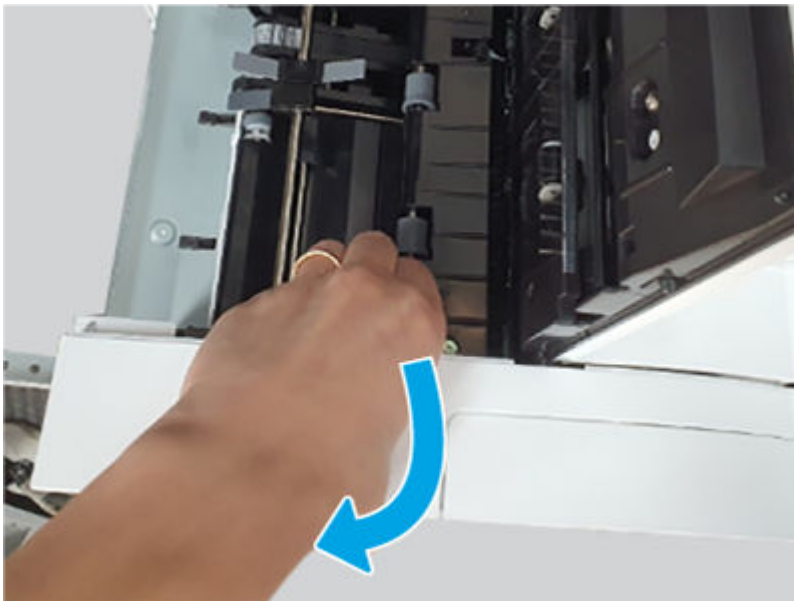
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3246 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3247 Remove the cover

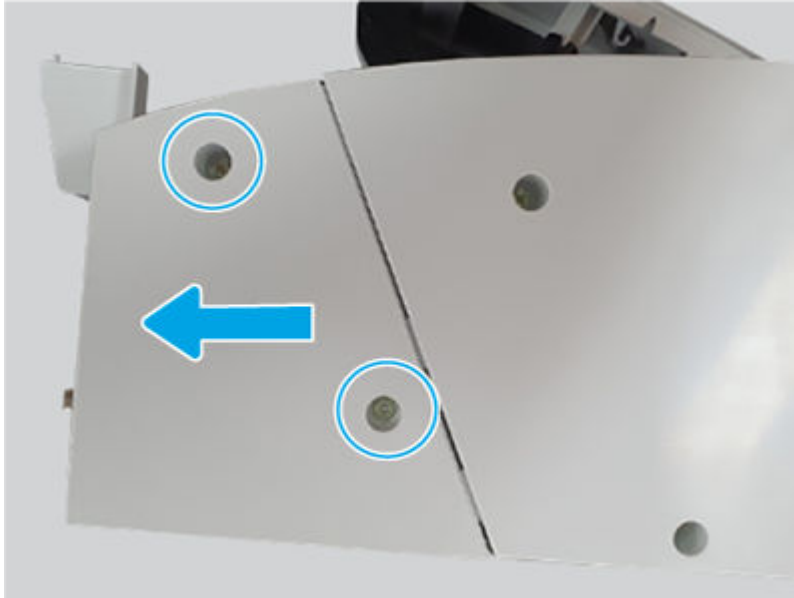


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3248 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

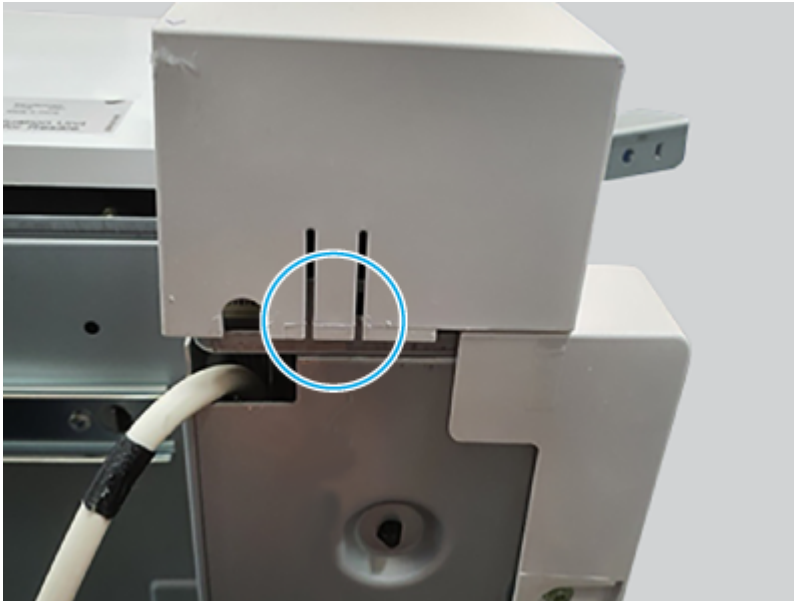
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3249 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3250 Remove the cover

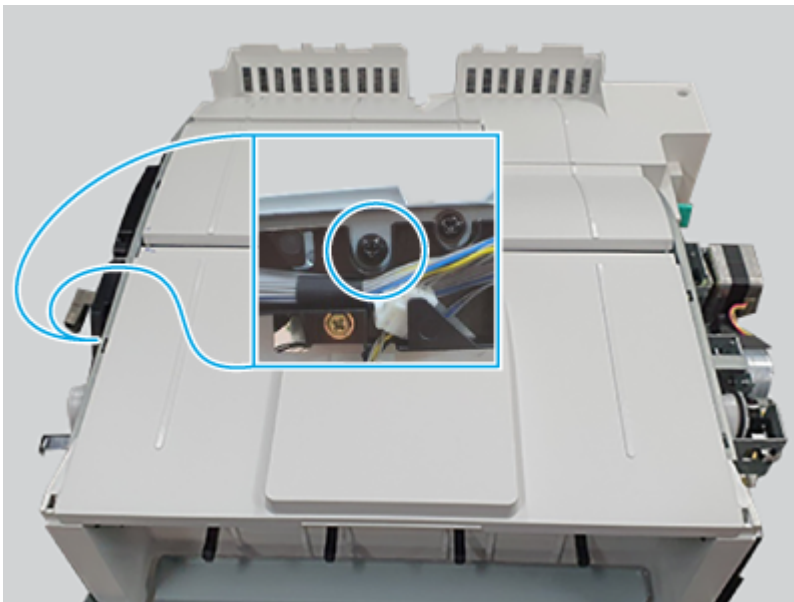


4. **Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3251 Remove the cover



5. **Remove the inner finisher sub paddle assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub paddle assembly.

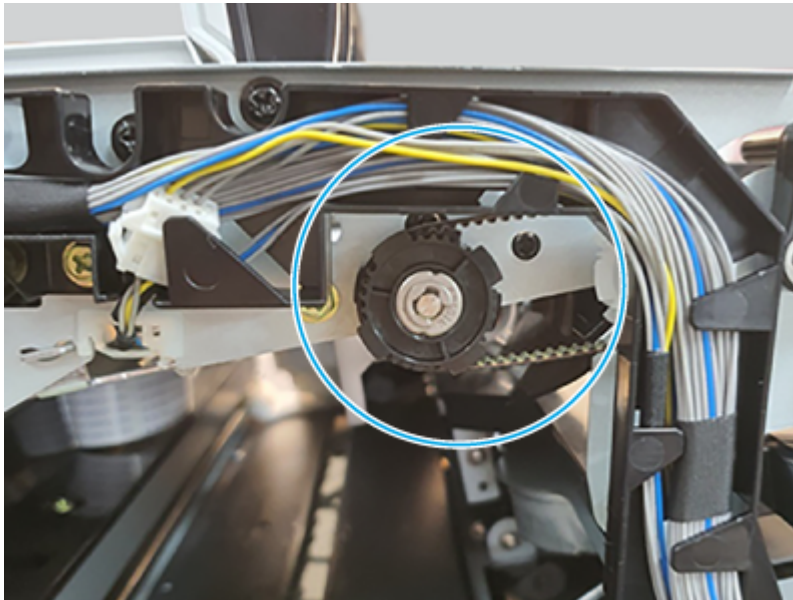
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3252 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:
 - Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.
 - Remove the gear, belt, and bushing.
 - Remove the sub paddle assembly.

Figure 6-3253 Remove the assembly

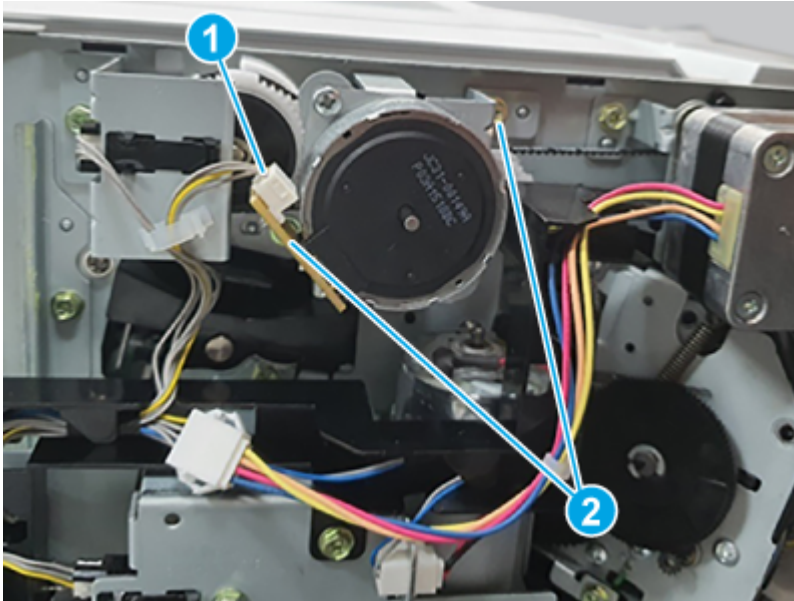


6 Remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
 - Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-3254 Remove the assembly

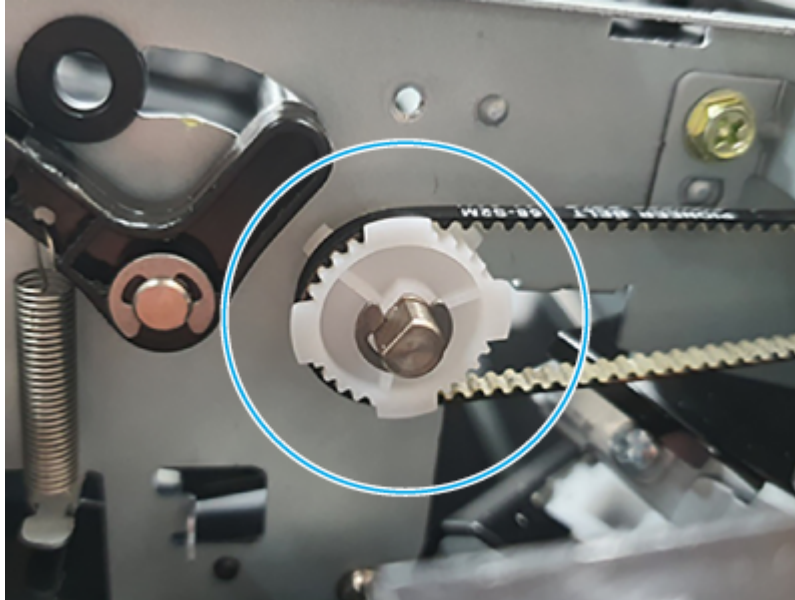


7 Remove the inner finisher exit roller assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit roller assembly.

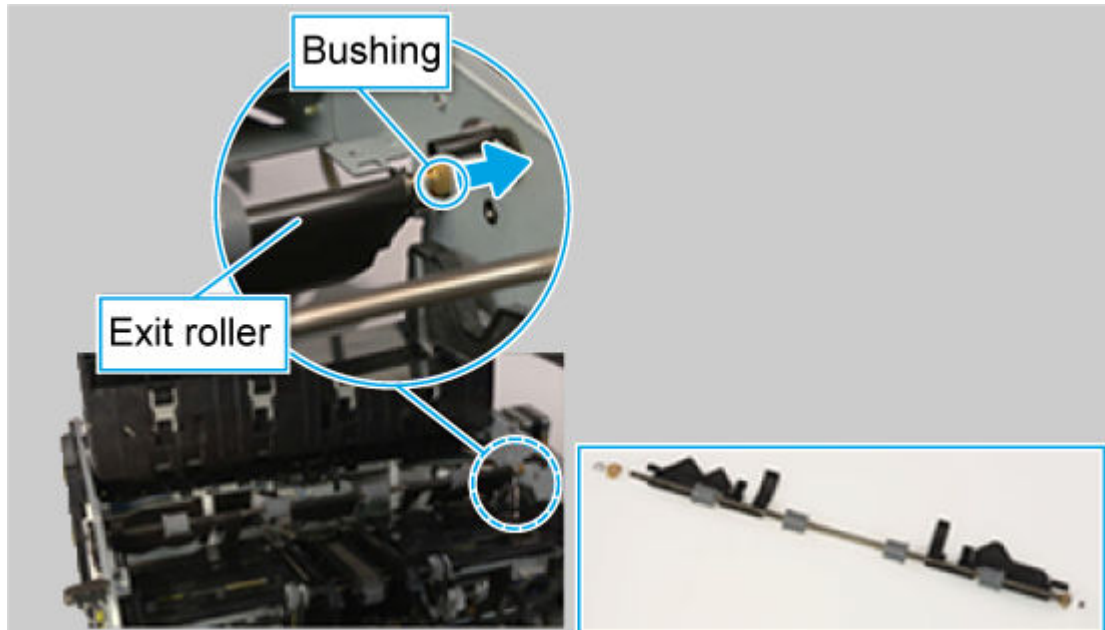
1. Do the following:
 - Release the belt.
 - Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.
 - Remove the gear, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3255 Remove the e-ring, gear, and bushing



2. Remove the inner finisher exit roller assembly.

Figure 6-3256 Remove the roller



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit sensor.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-392 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Exit sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

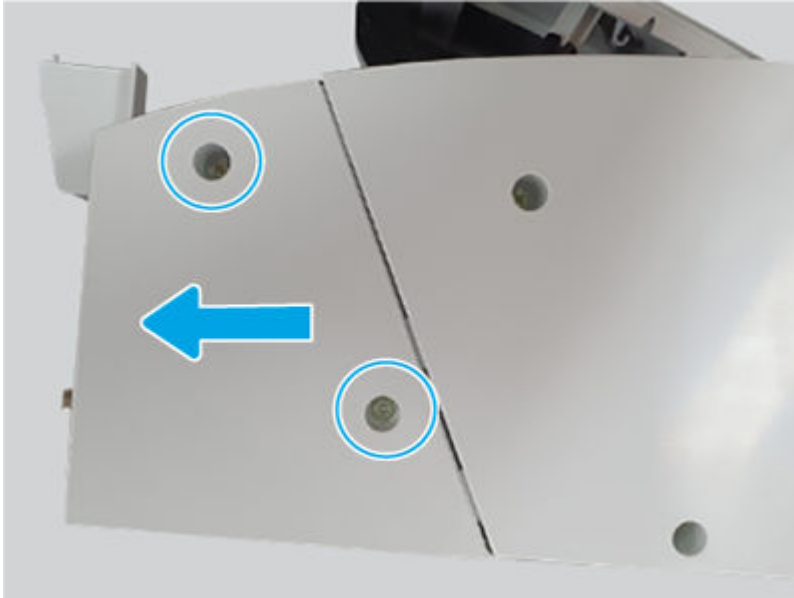
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3257 Remove the cover

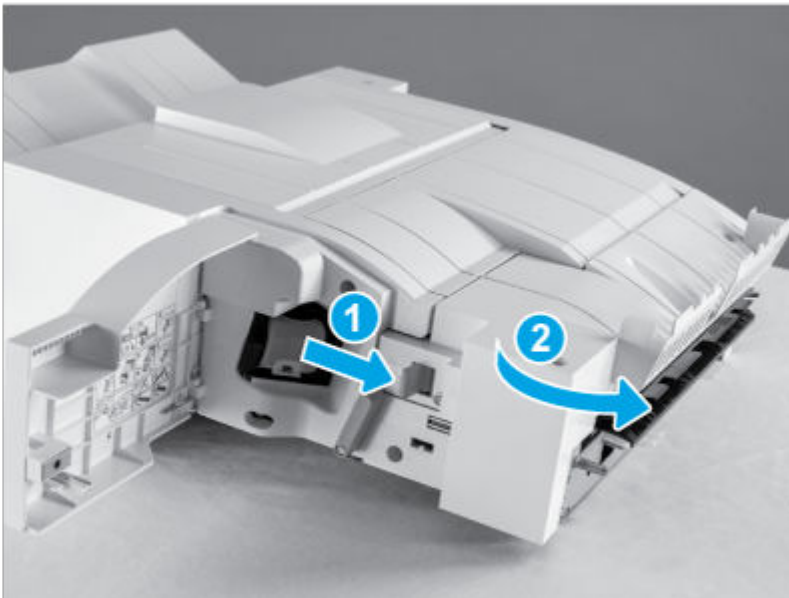


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

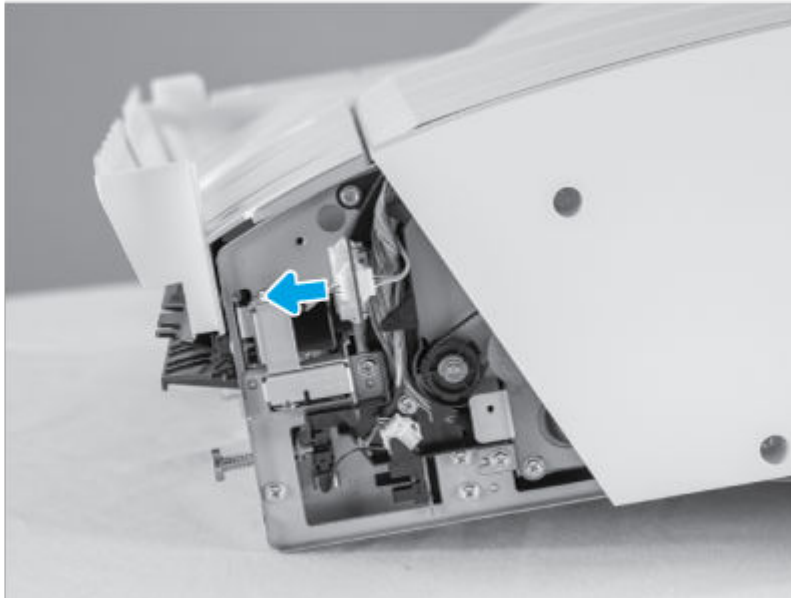
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3258 Rotate the punch



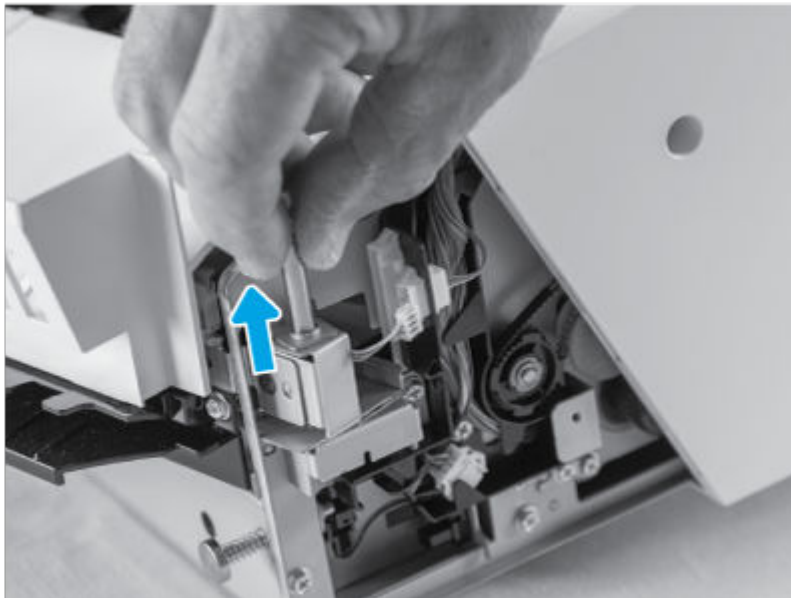
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3259 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3260 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

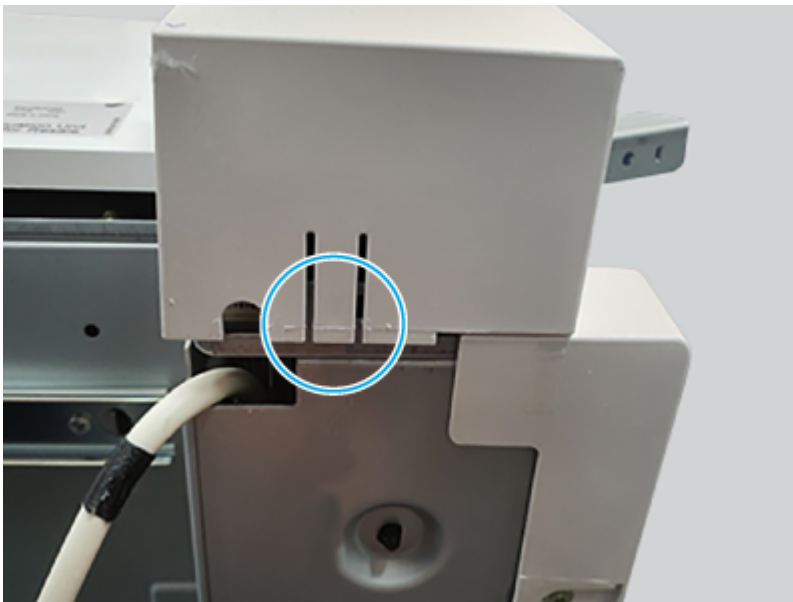
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3261 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3262 Remove the cover



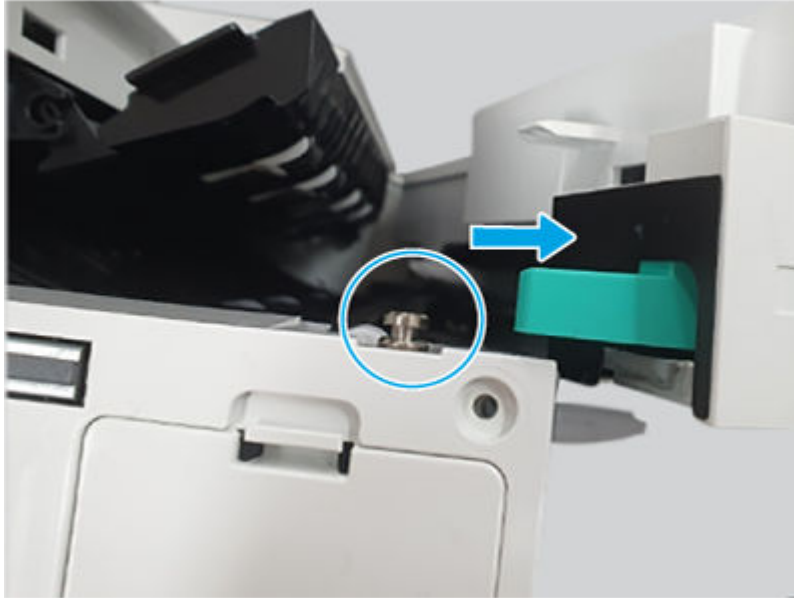
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3263 Open the punch cover



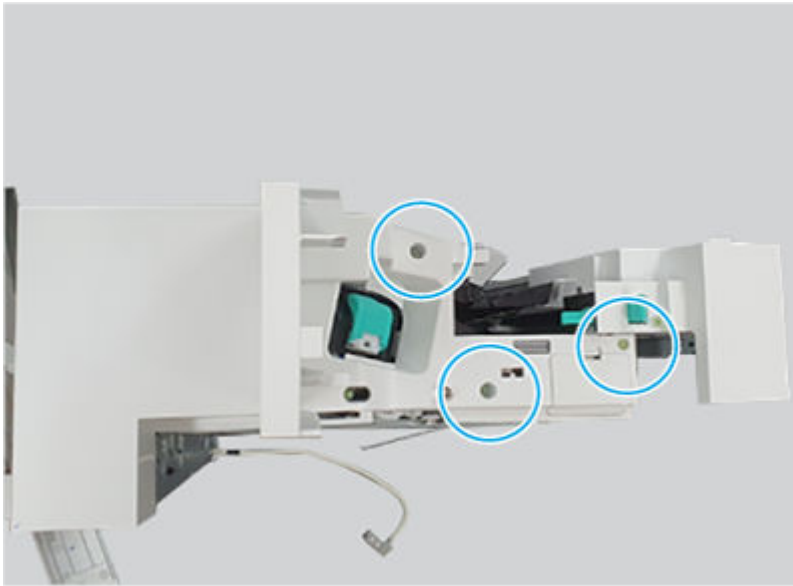
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3264 Remove the handle



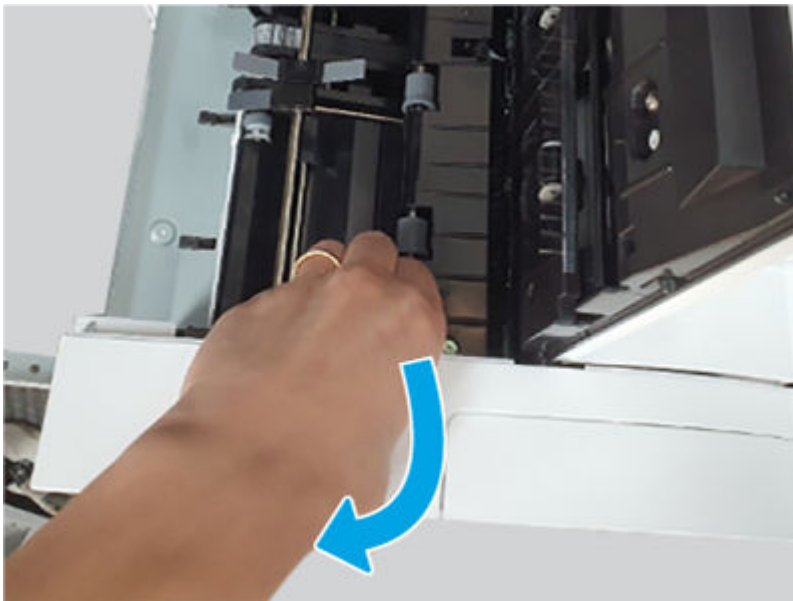
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3265 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3266 Remove the cover

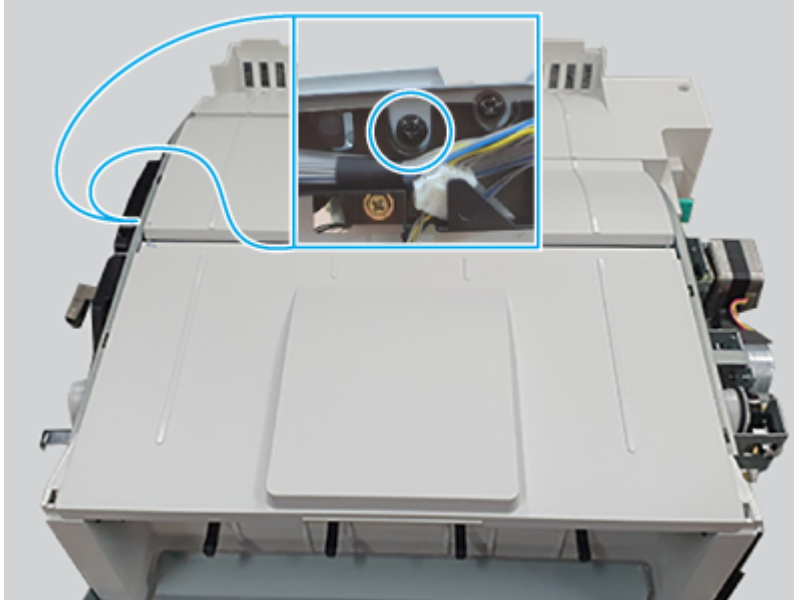


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3267 Remove the cover

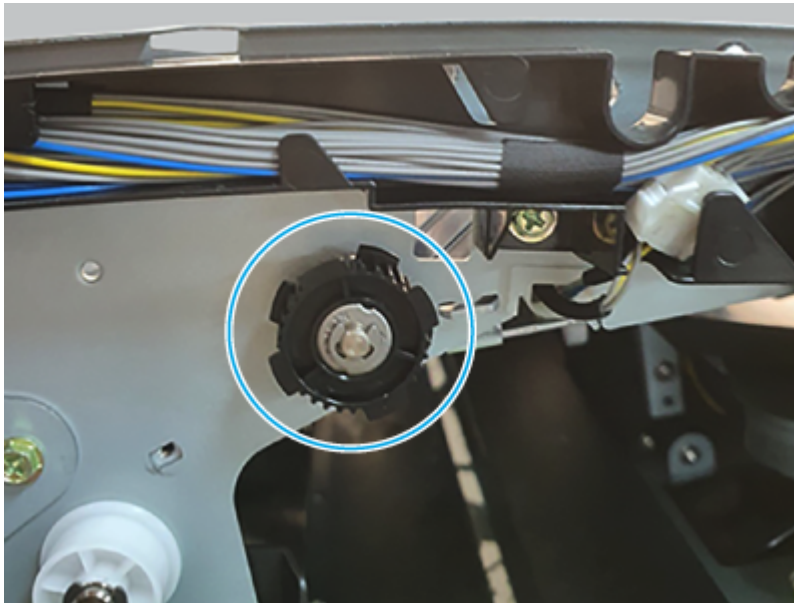


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3268 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



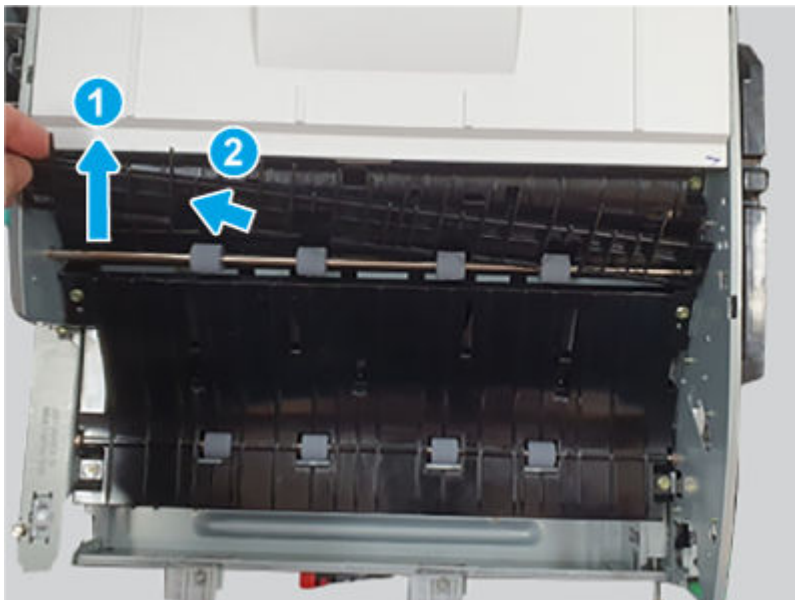
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3269 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3270 Remove the roller

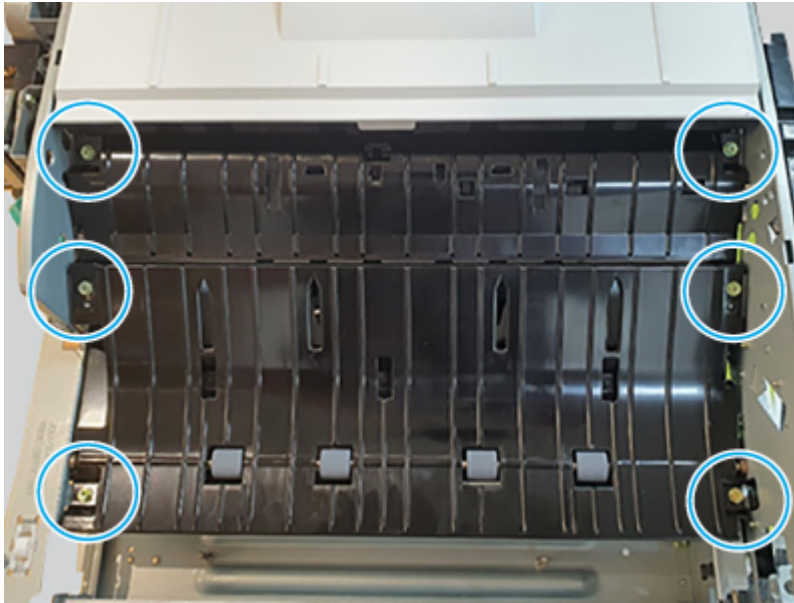


7 Remove the inner finisher exit sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit sensor.

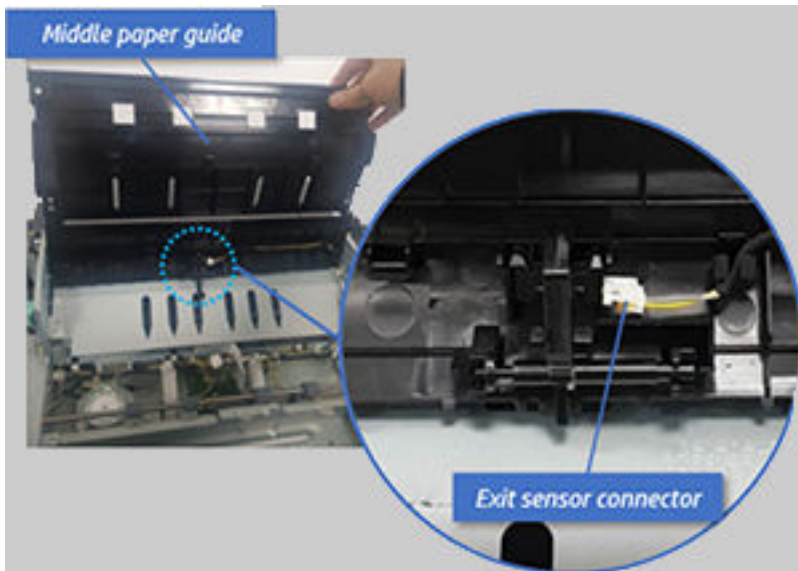
1. Remove six screws, and then raise the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-3271 Remove six screws



2. Do the following:
 - Remove one screw.
 - Disconnect one connector.
 - Remove the inner finisher ext sensor.


Figure 6-3272 Remove the sensor



8 **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit sensor actuator

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit sensor actuator.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-393 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04199A	Exit sensor actuator

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

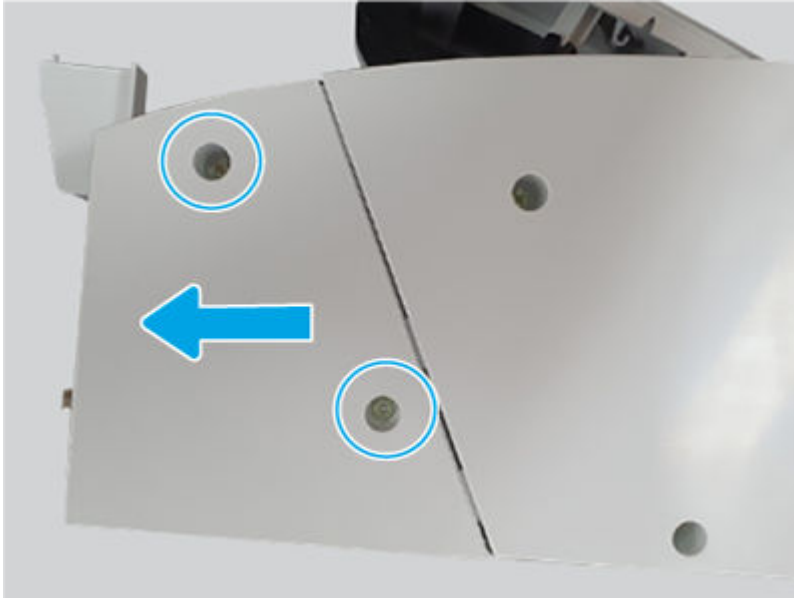
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3273 Remove the cover

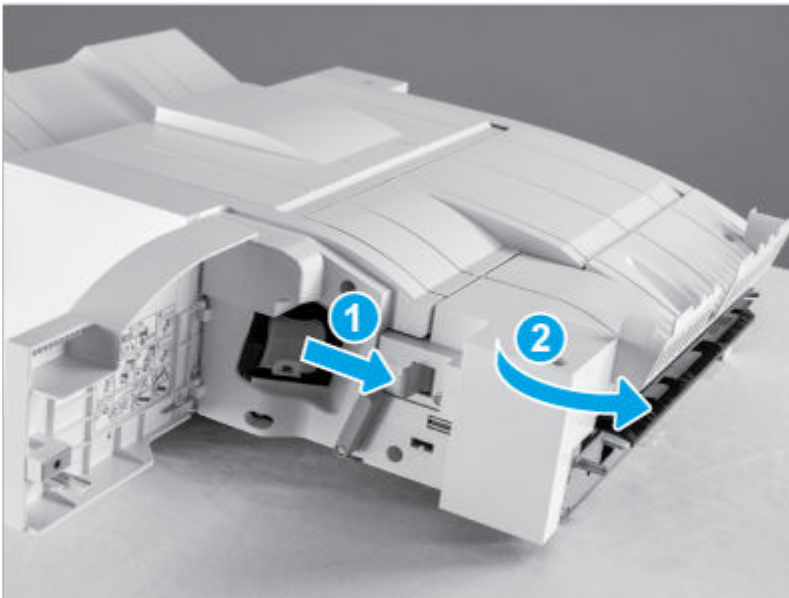


Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

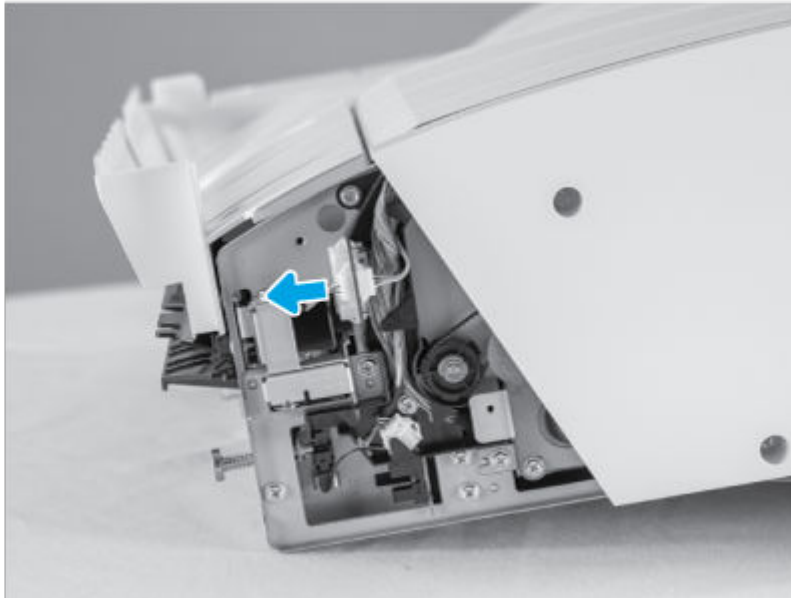
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3274 Rotate the punch



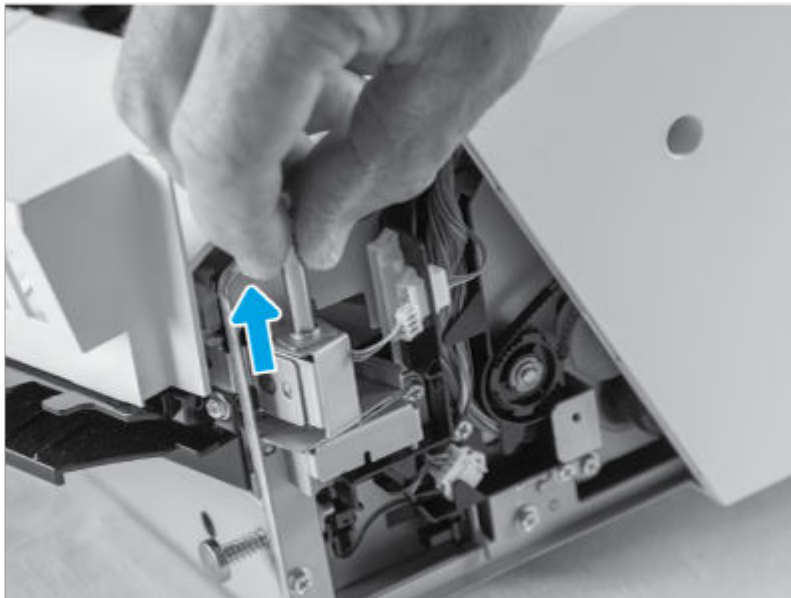
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3275 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3276 Remove the assembly



Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

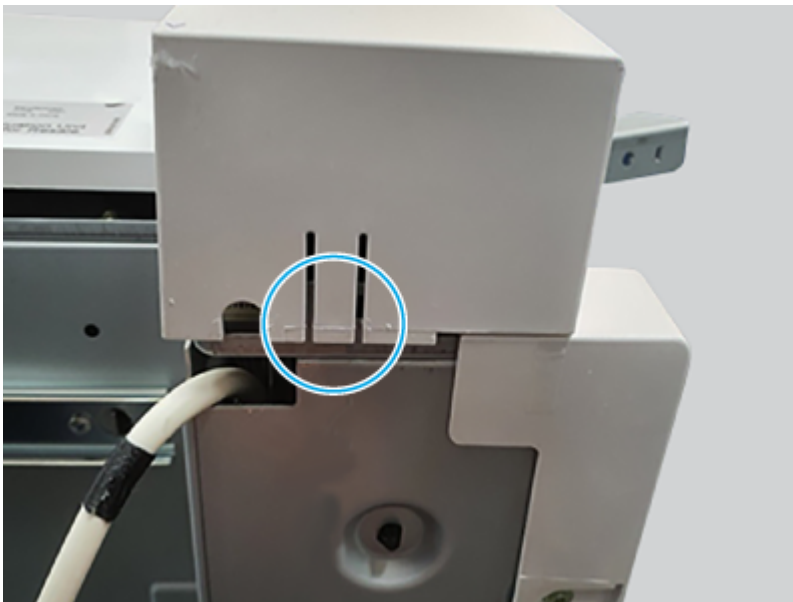
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3277 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3278 Remove the cover



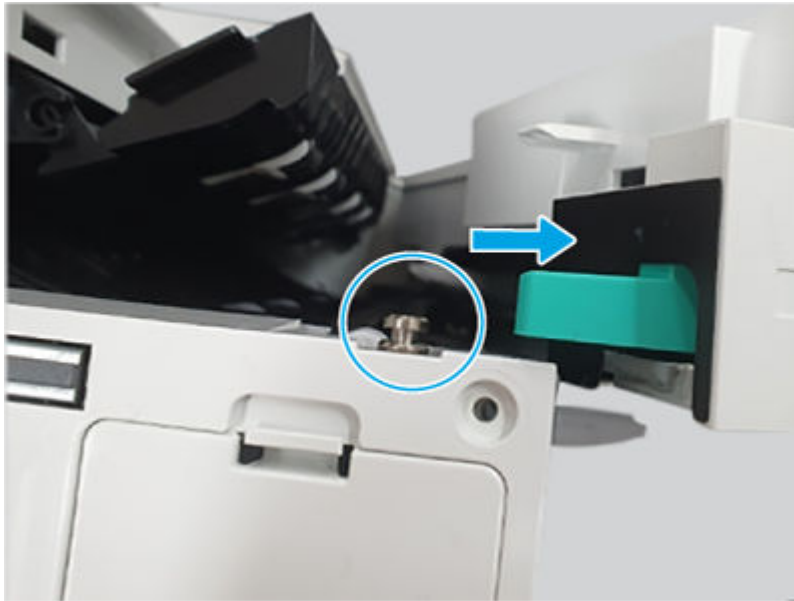
Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3279 Open the punch cover



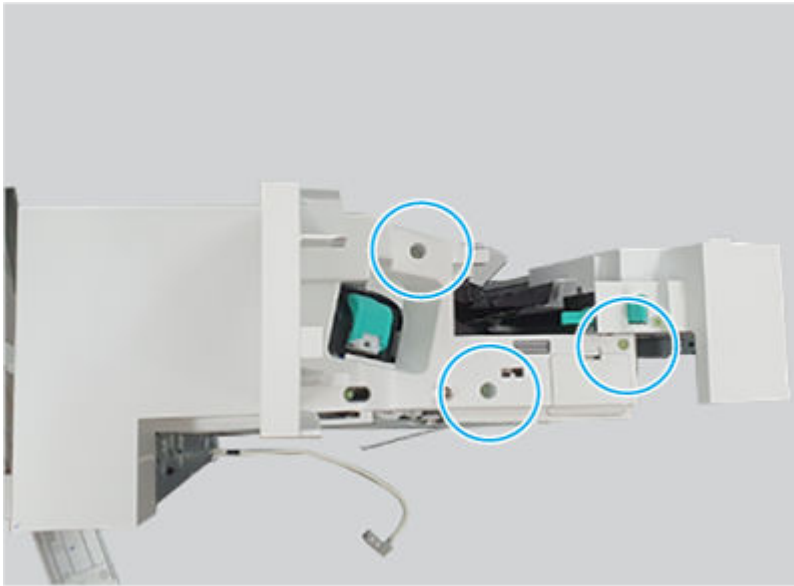
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3280 Remove the handle



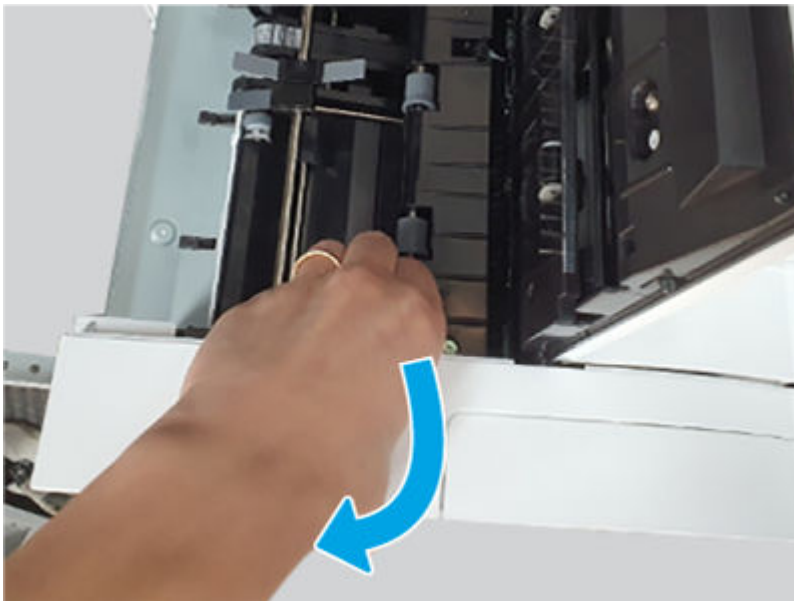
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3281 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3282 Remove the cover

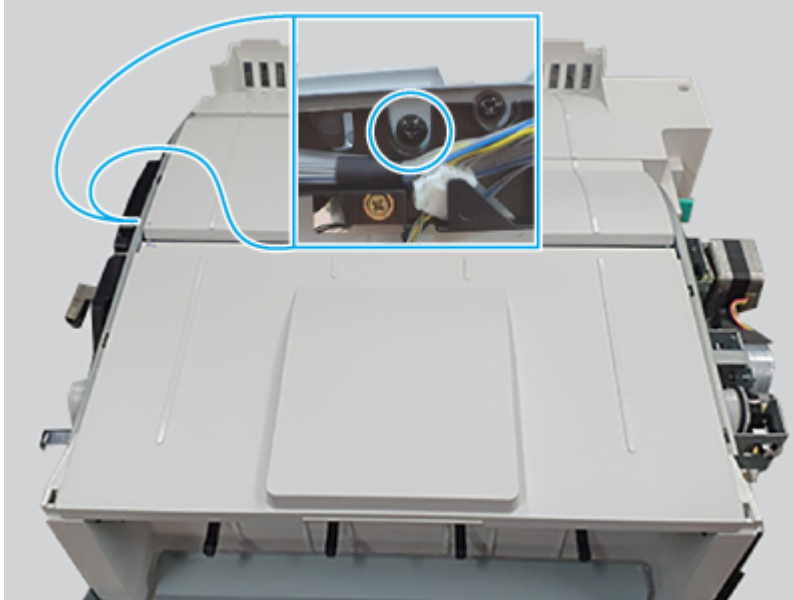


Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3283 Remove the cover

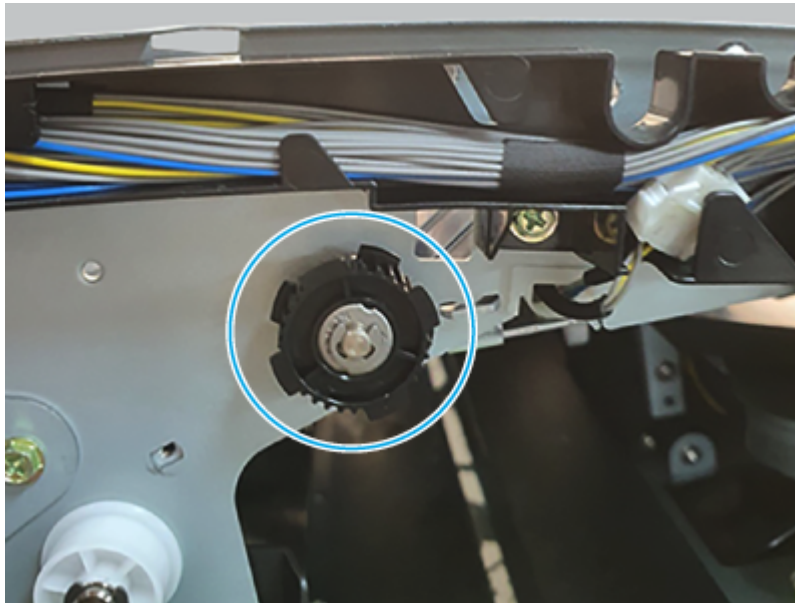


Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3284 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



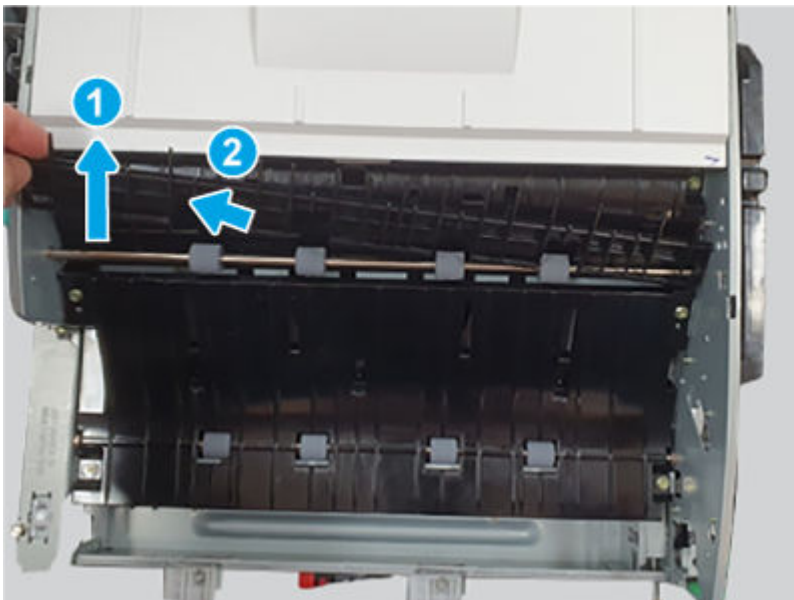
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3285 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3286 Remove the roller

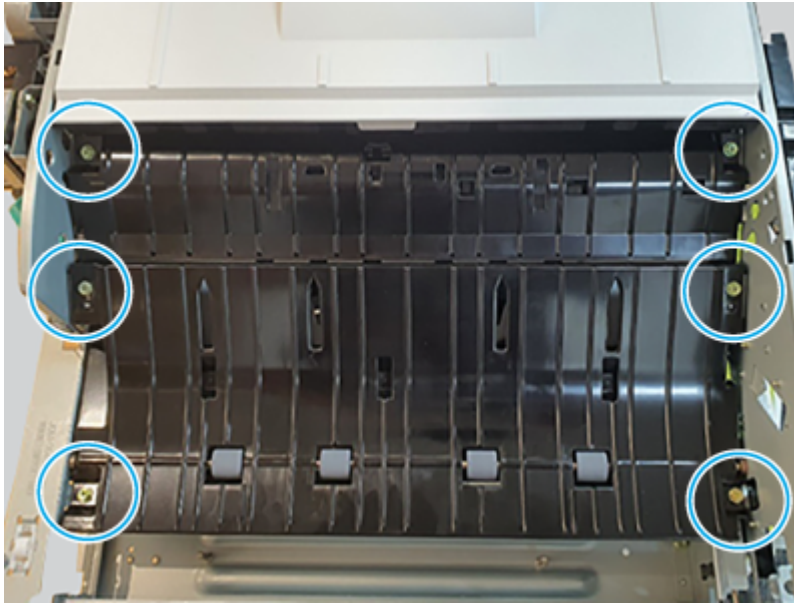


Remove the inner finisher exit sensor actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit sensor actuator.

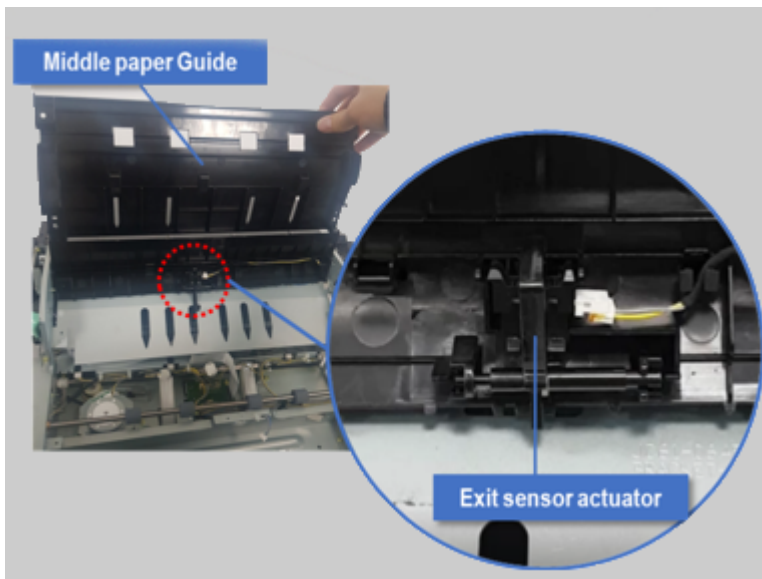
1. Remove six screws, and then raise the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-3287 Remove six screws



2. Remove the inner finisher exit sensor actuator.

Figure 6-3288 Remove the actuator



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-394 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01331A	Exit motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

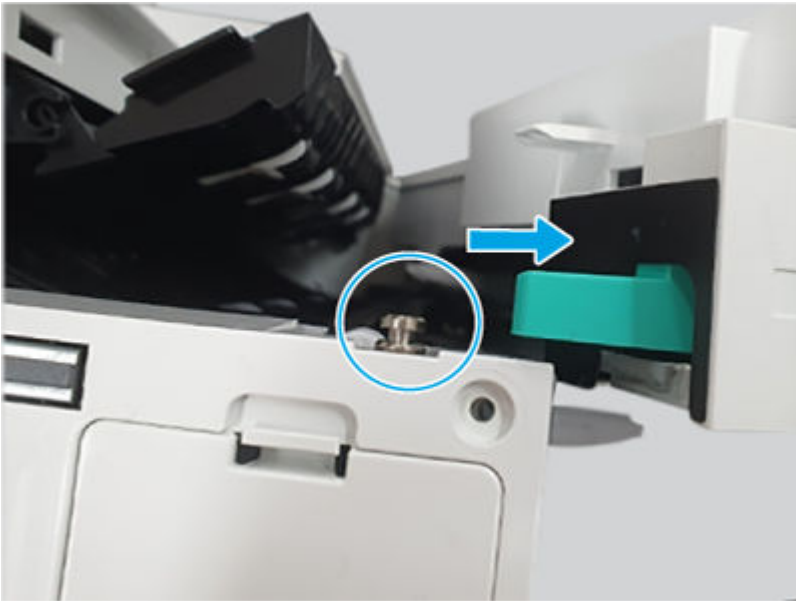
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3289 Open the punch cover



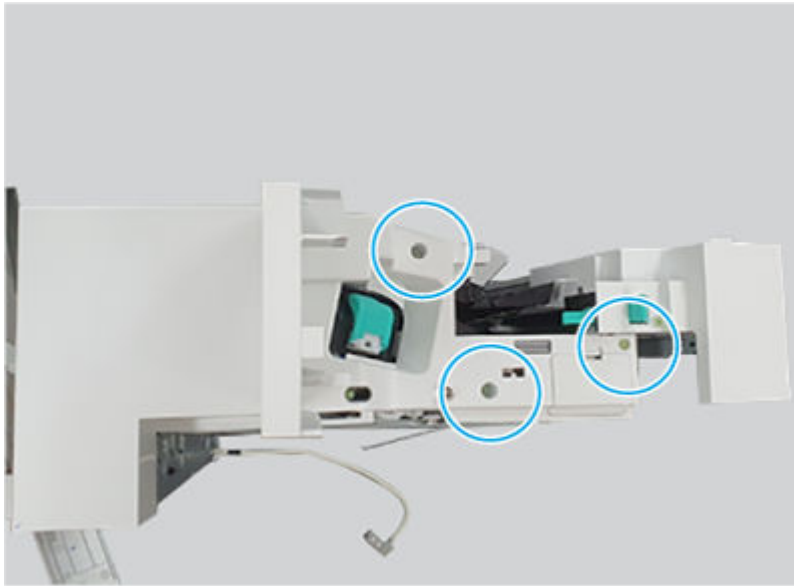
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3290 Remove the handle



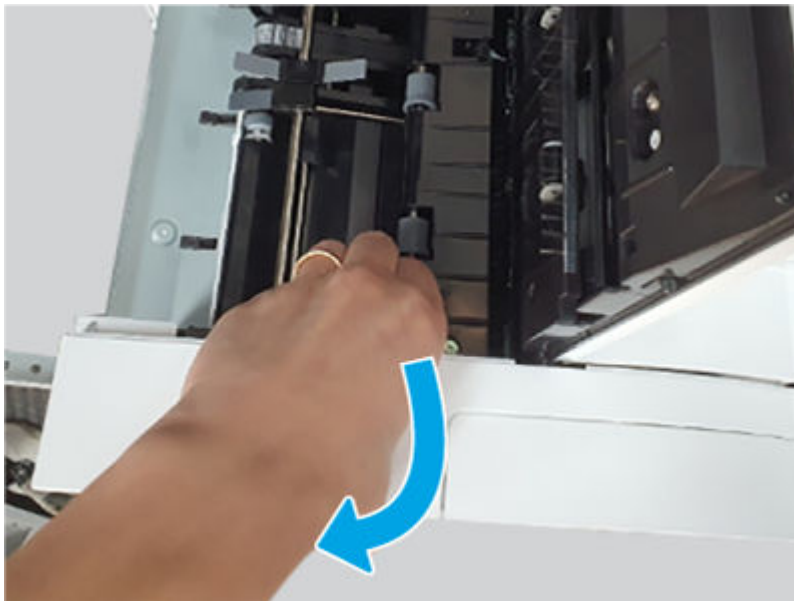
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3291 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3292 Remove the cover



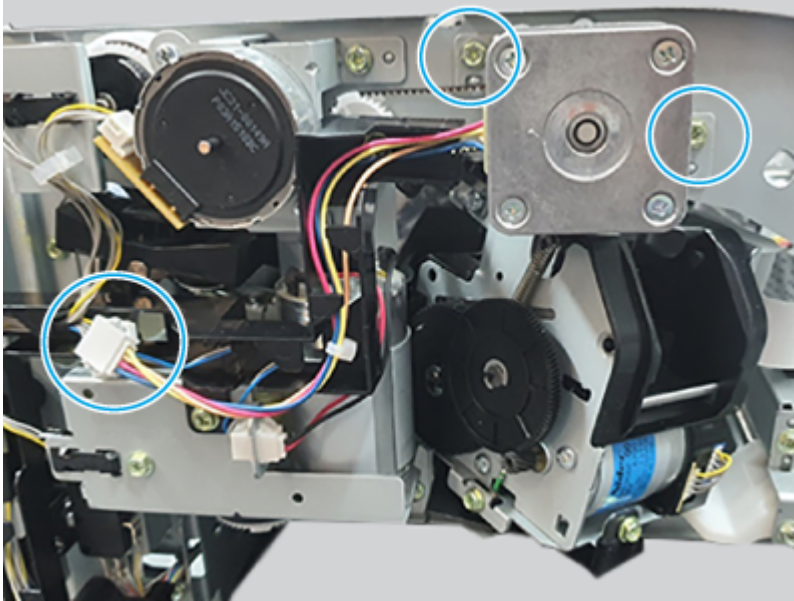
2 Remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-3293 Remove the motor



3 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-395 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00169B	Motor, step (Exit motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

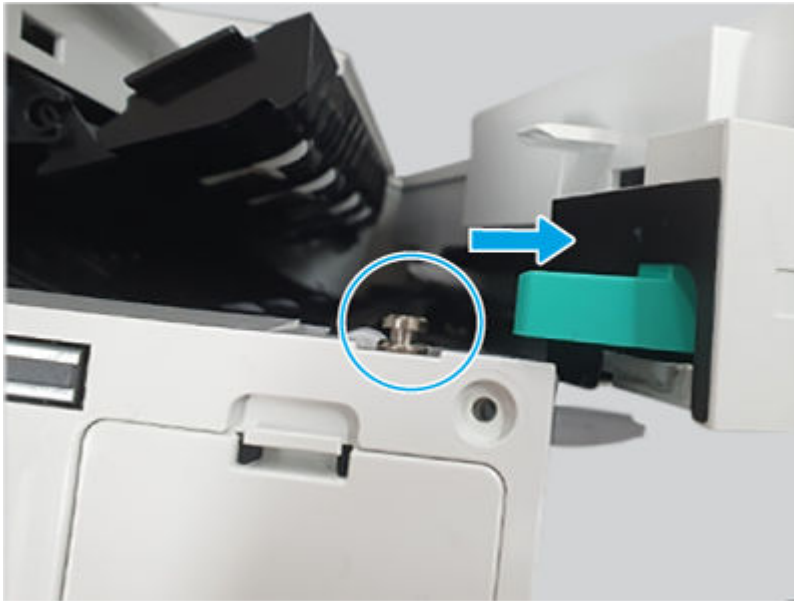
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3294 Open the punch cover



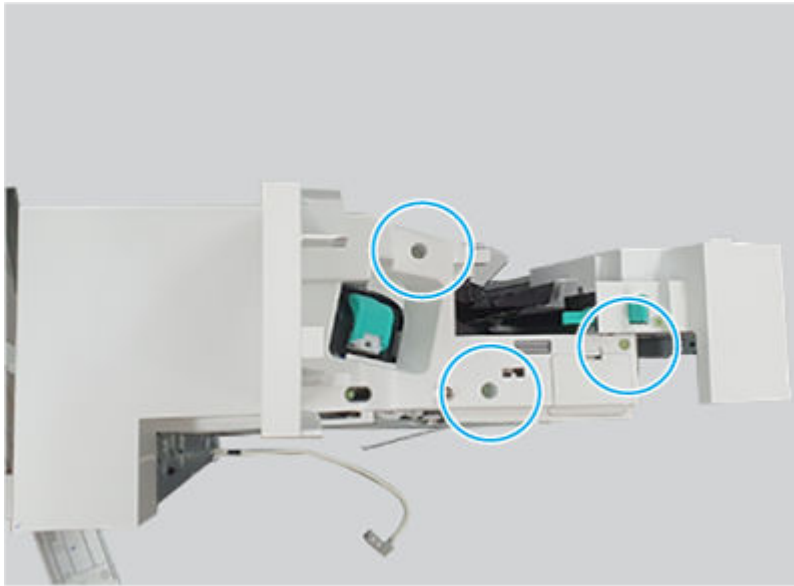
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3295 Remove the handle



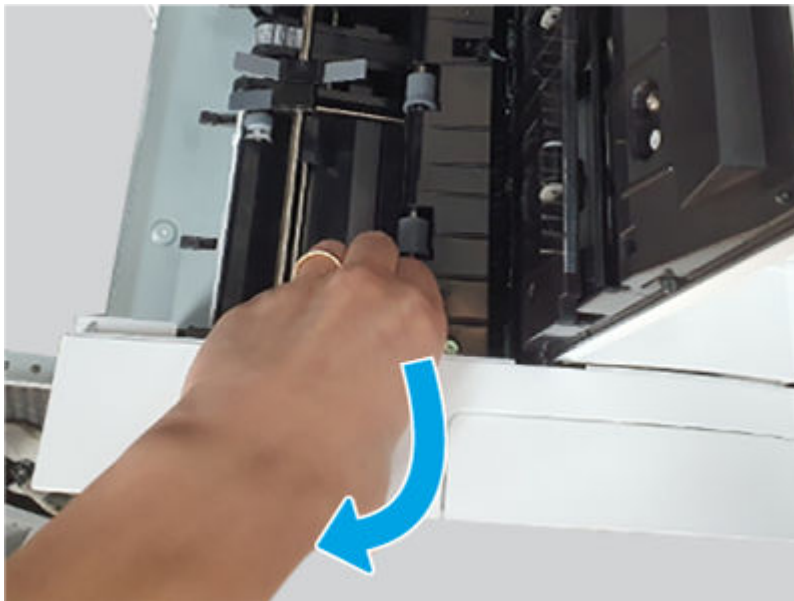
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3296 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3297 Remove the cover



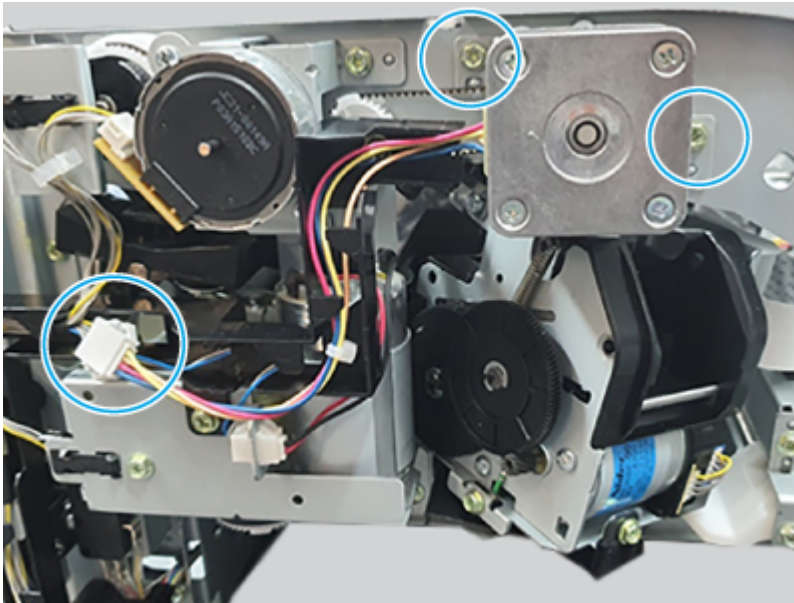
2 Remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-3298 Remove the motor

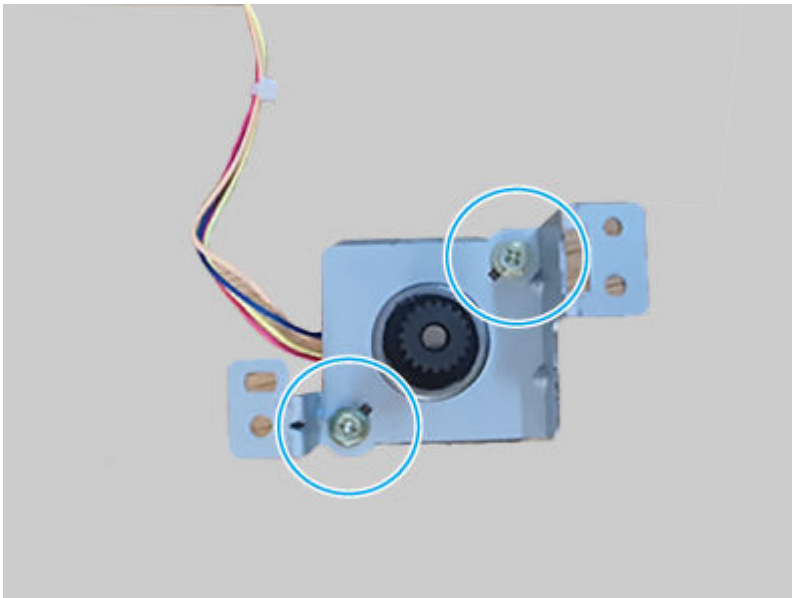


3 Remove the inner finisher exit motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit motor.

- Remove two screws, and then separate the inner finisher exit motor from the mounting bracket to remove it.

Figure 6-3299 Remove the motor



4 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.




NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper support unit

Review the inner finisher paper support unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Rear paper support

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear paper support.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-396 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01310A	Rear paper support

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

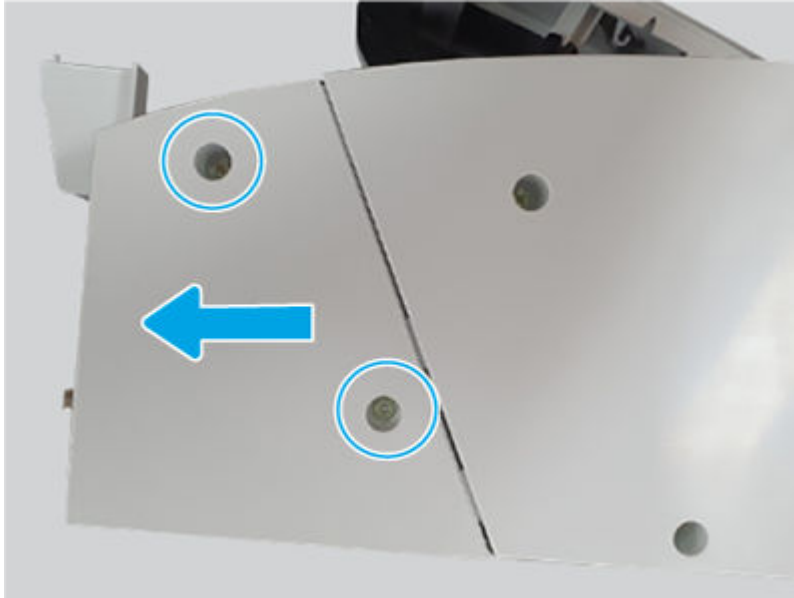
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3300 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

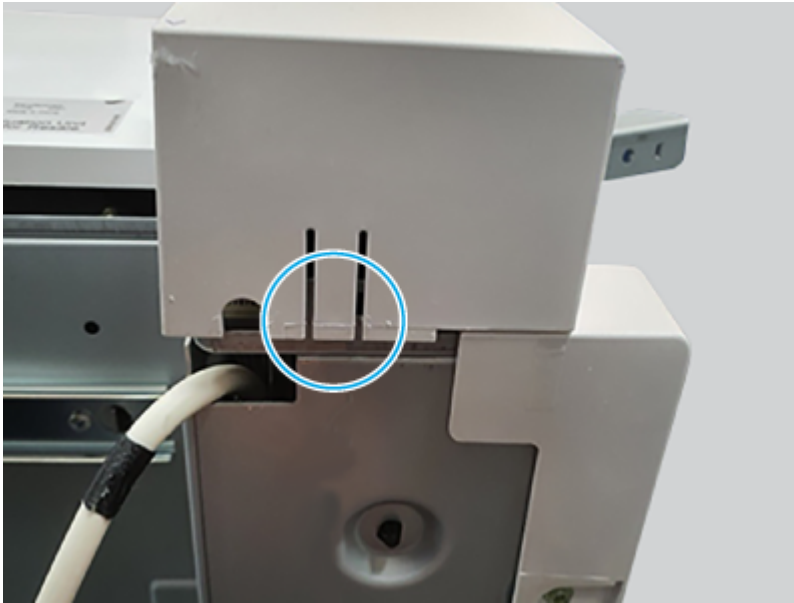
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3301 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3302 Remove the cover

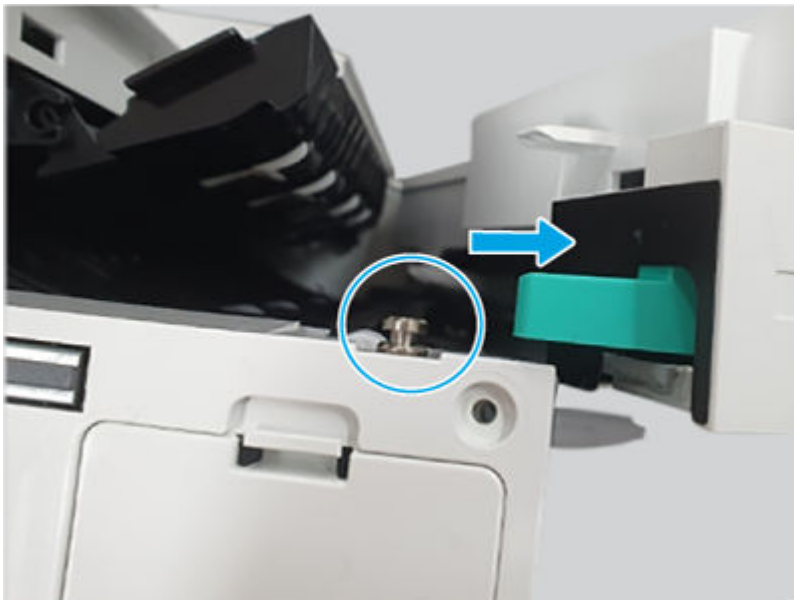


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3303 Open the punch cover



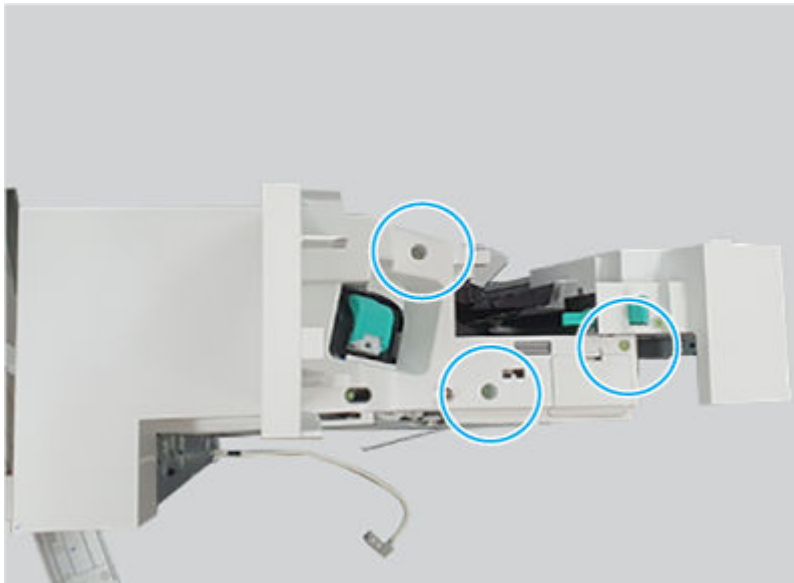
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3304 Remove the handle



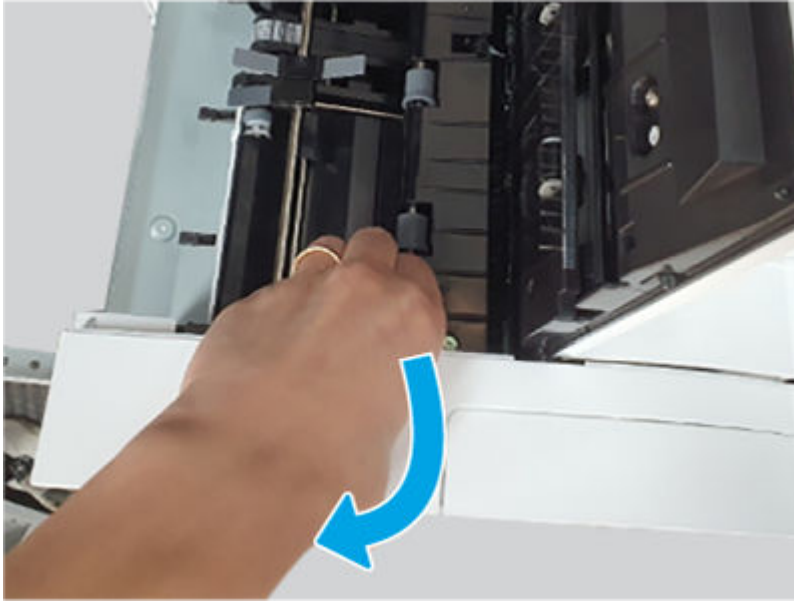
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3305 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3306 Remove the cover

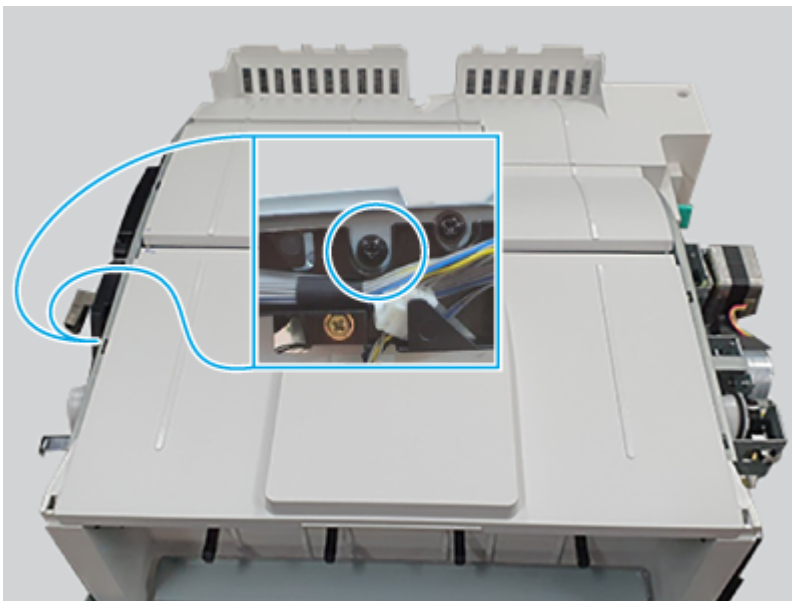


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3307 Remove the cover

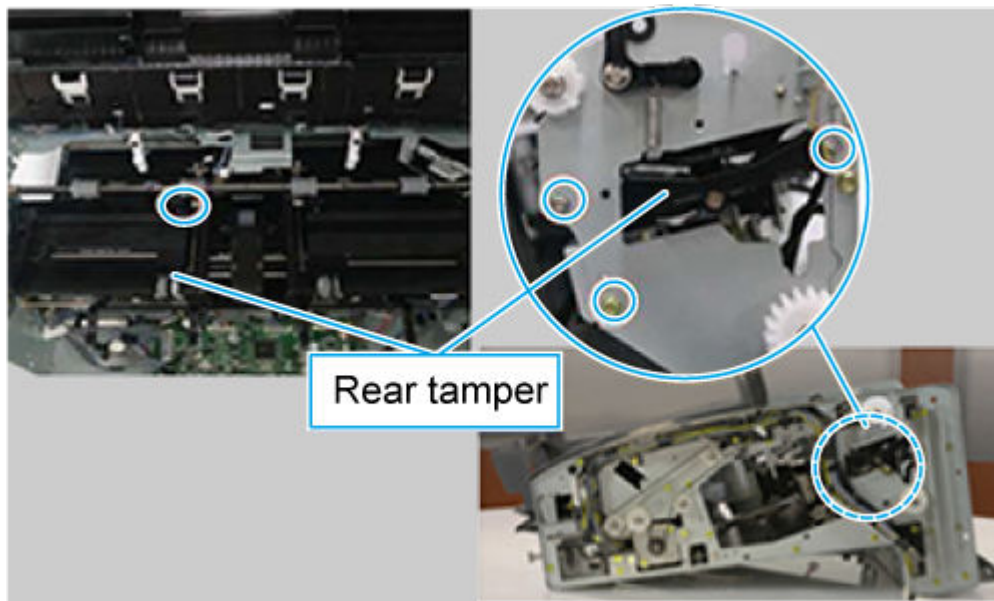


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3308 Remove the tamper

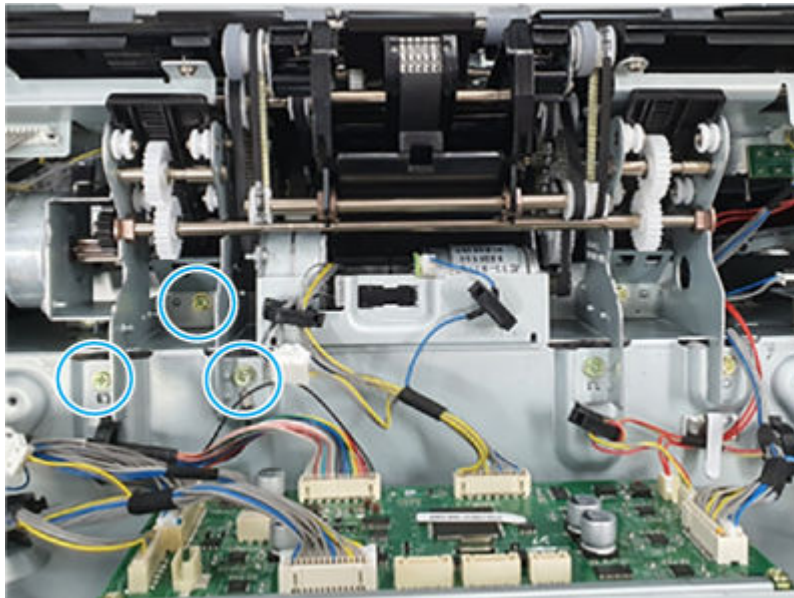


6 Remove the inner finisher rear paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear paper support.

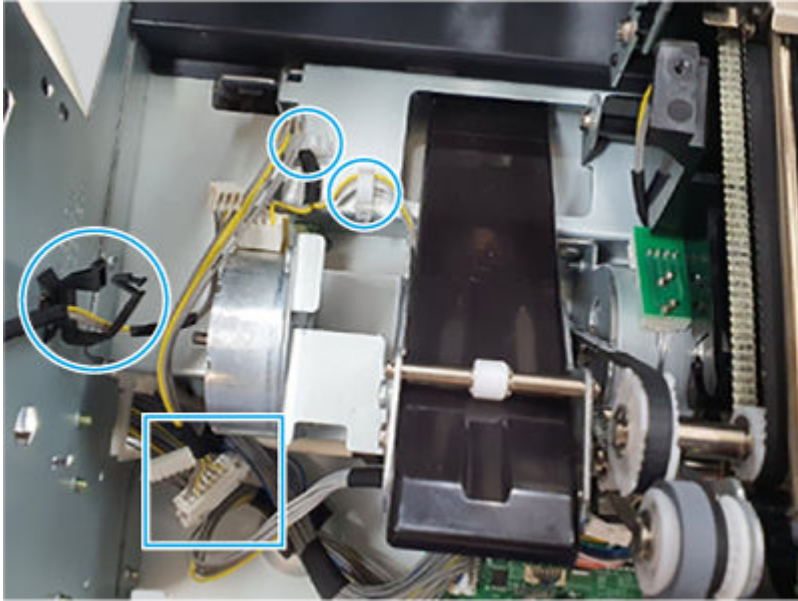
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3309 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release three hooks, and then remove the inner finisher rear paper support.

Figure 6-3310 Remove the support



7 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper support home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper support home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-397 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paper support home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

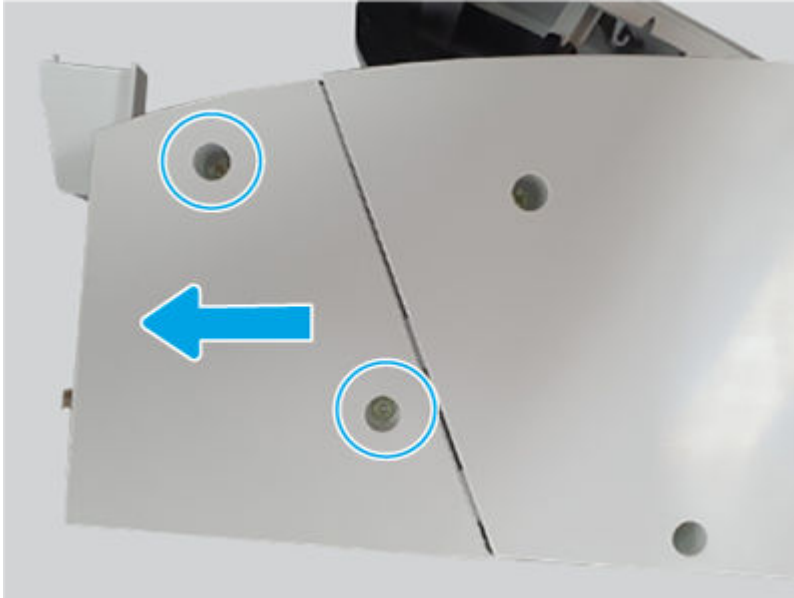
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3311 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

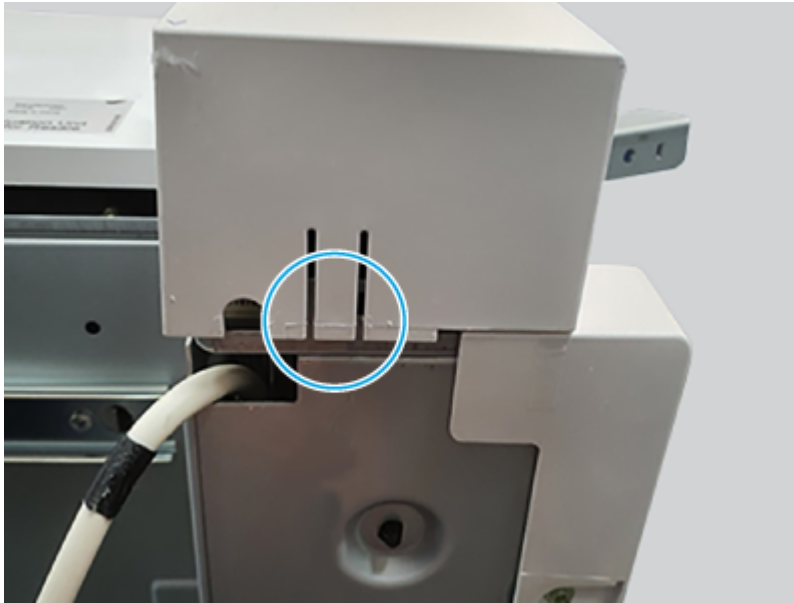
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3312 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3313 Remove the cover

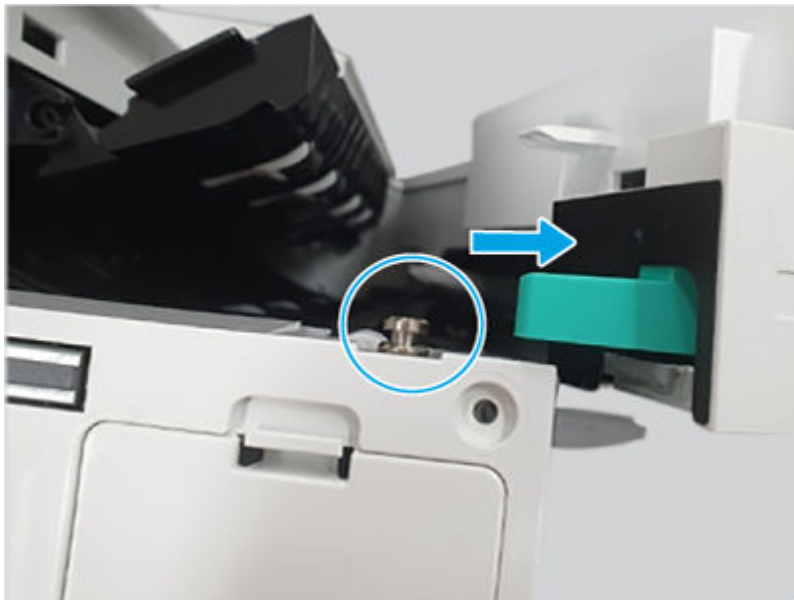


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3314 Open the punch cover



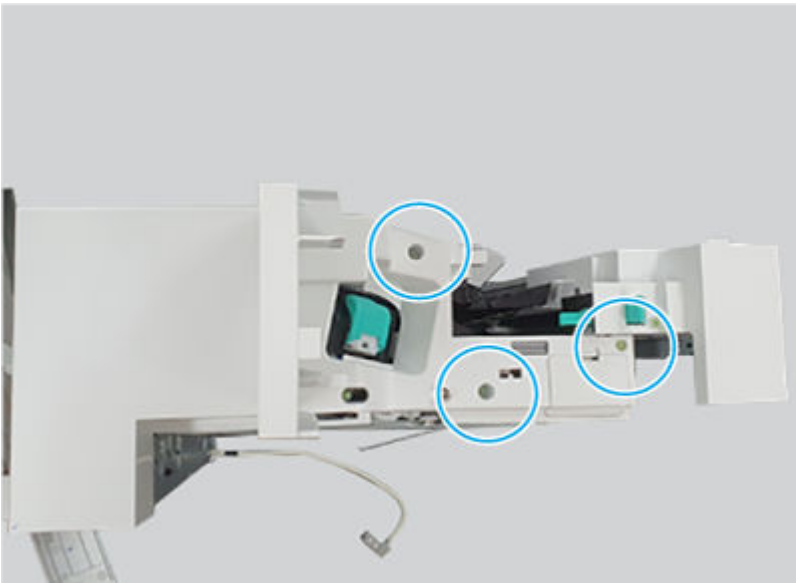
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3315 Remove the handle



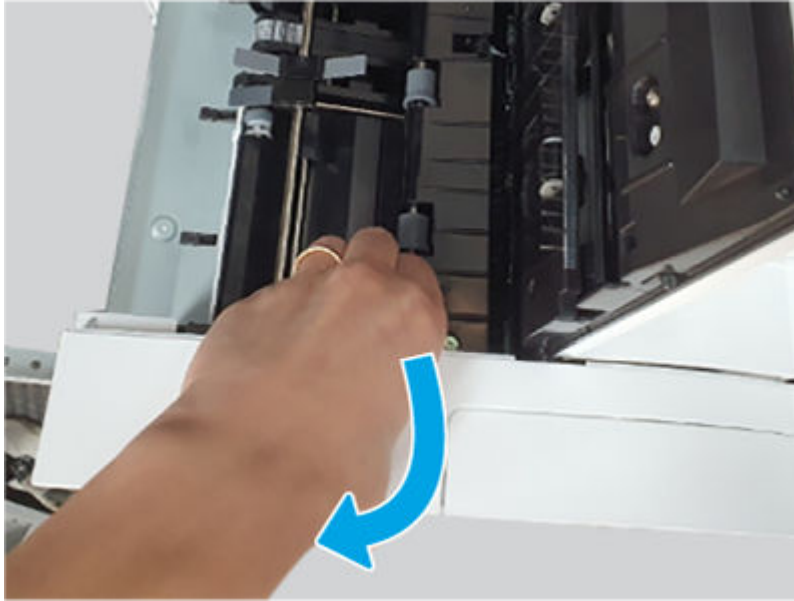
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3316 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3317 Remove the cover

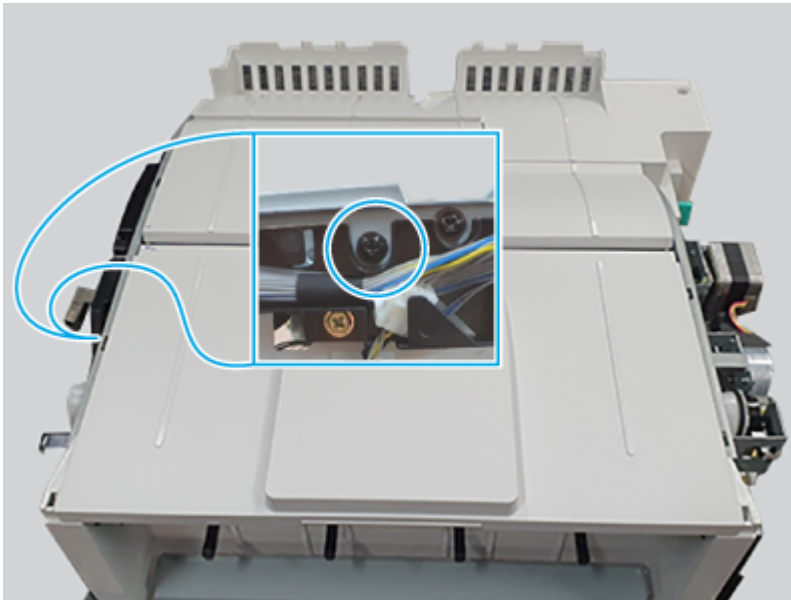


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3318 Remove the cover

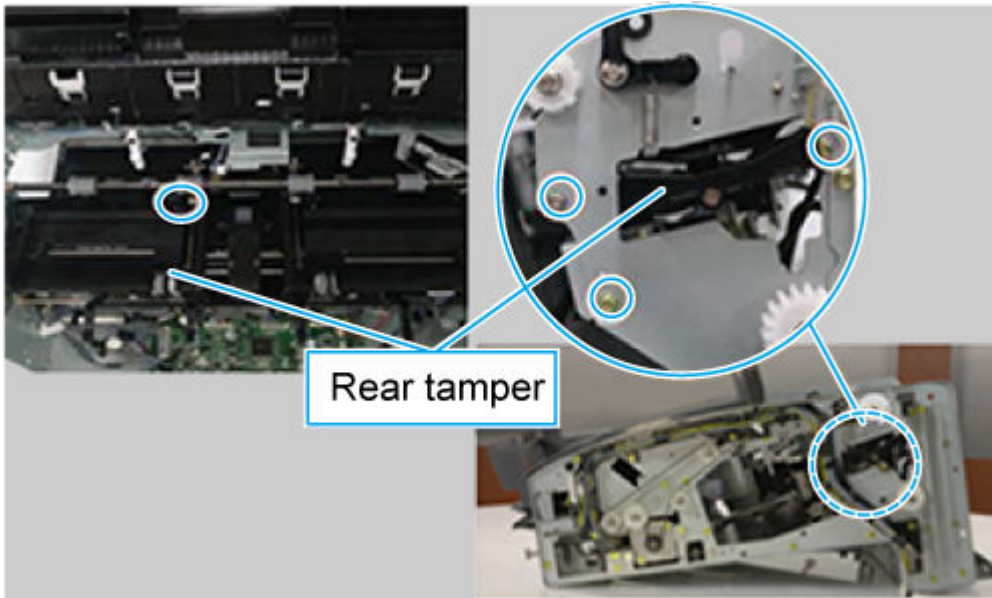


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3319 Remove the tamper

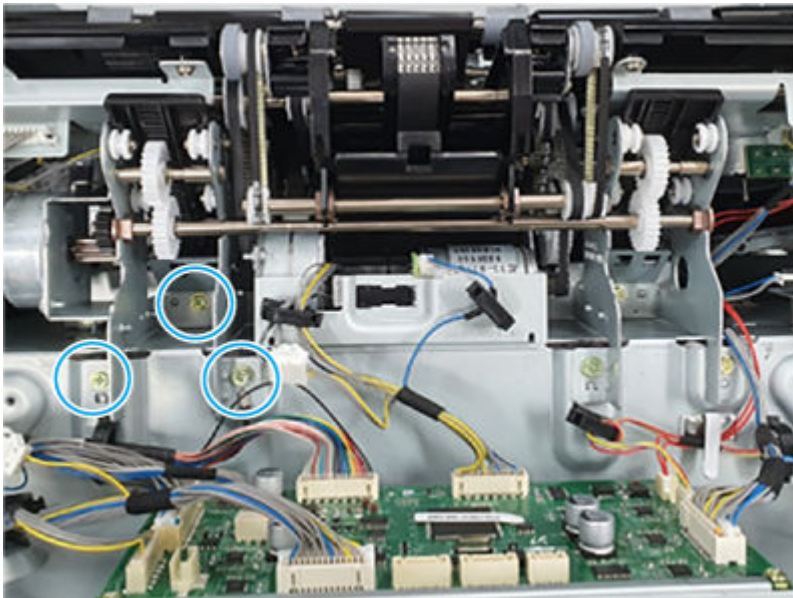


6 Remove the inner finisher rear paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear paper support.

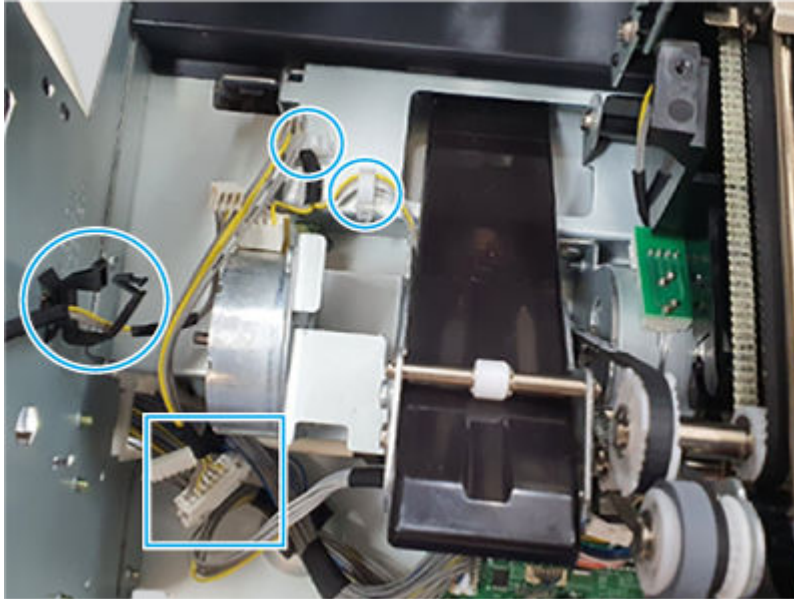
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3320 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release three hooks, and then remove the inner finisher rear paper support.

Figure 6-3321 Remove the support

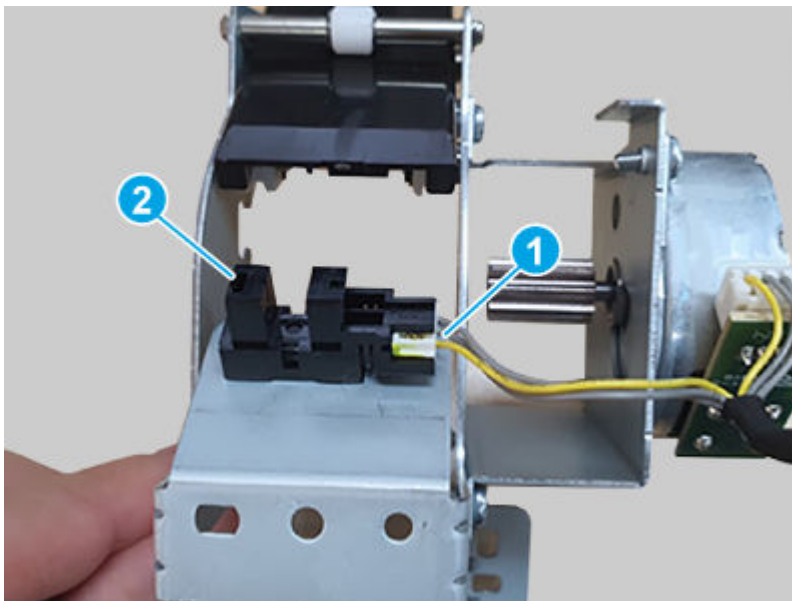


7 Remove the inner finisher paper support home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper support home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the inner finisher paper support home sensor.

Figure 6-3322 Remove the sensor



8 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper support motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper support motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-398 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01312A	Paper support motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

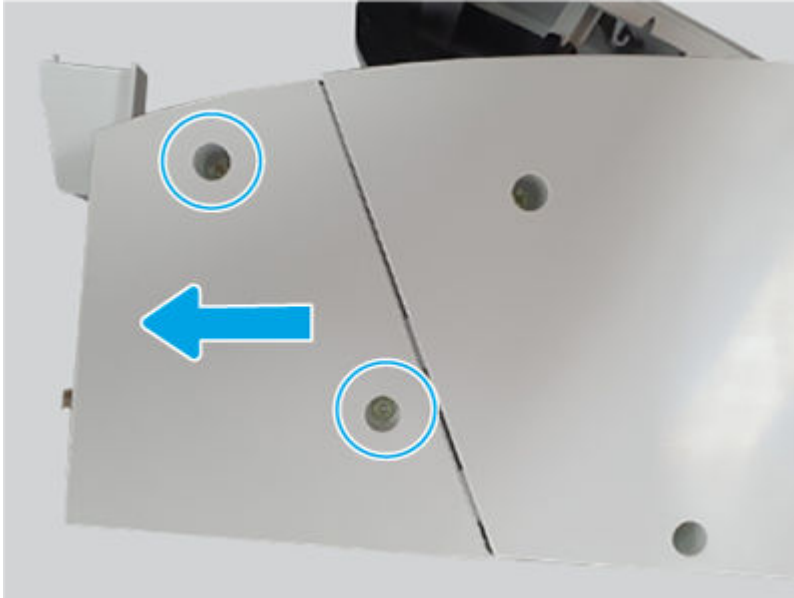
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3323 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

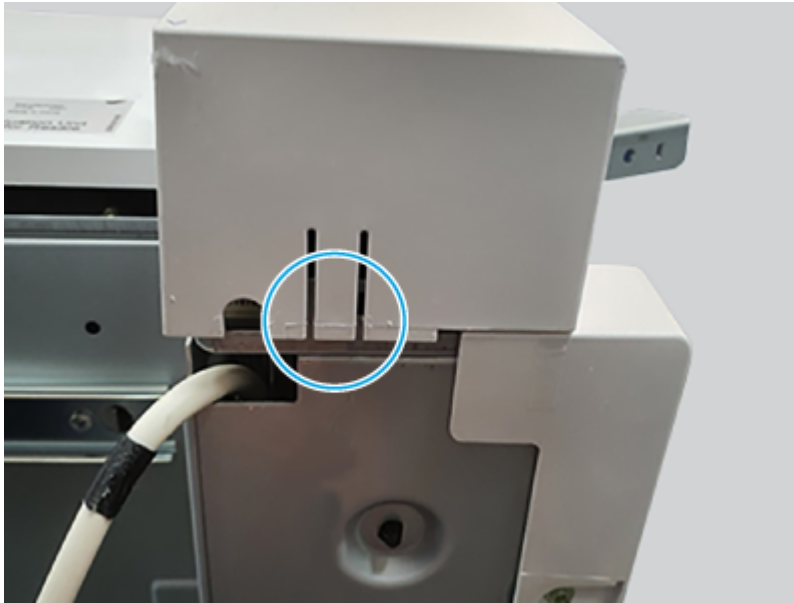
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3324 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3325 Remove the cover

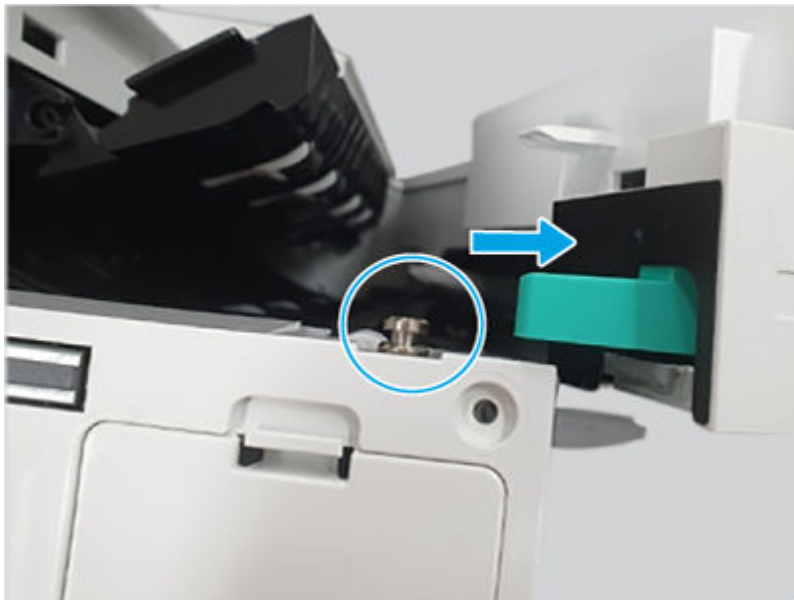


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3326 Open the punch cover



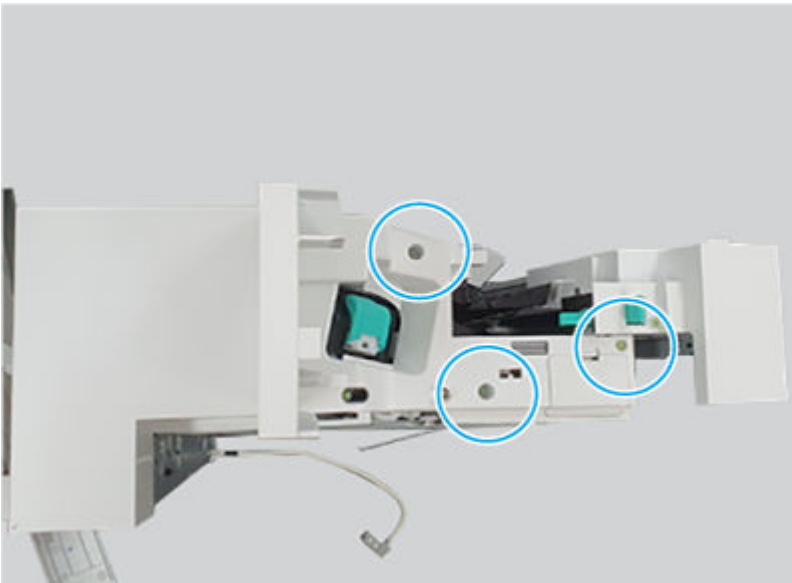
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3327 Remove the handle



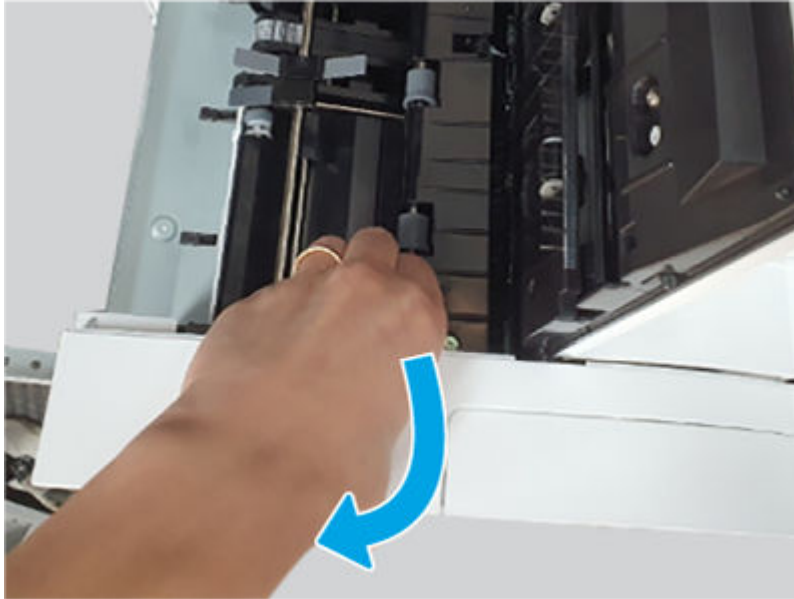
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3328 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3329 Remove the cover

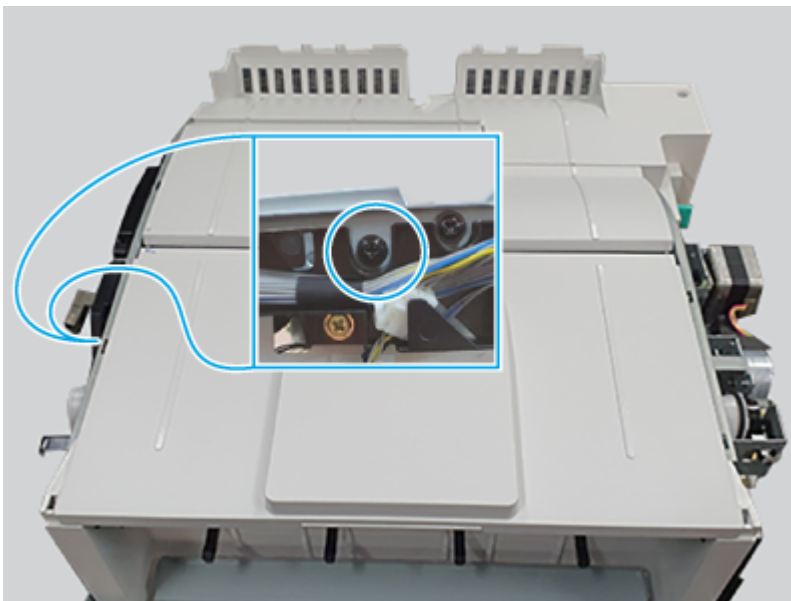


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3330 Remove the cover

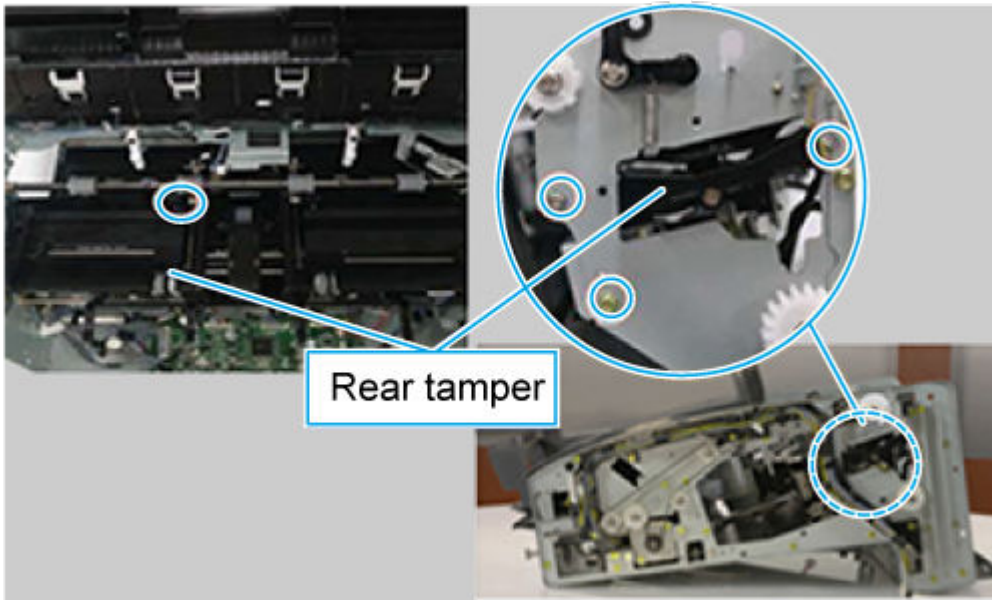


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3331 Remove the tamper

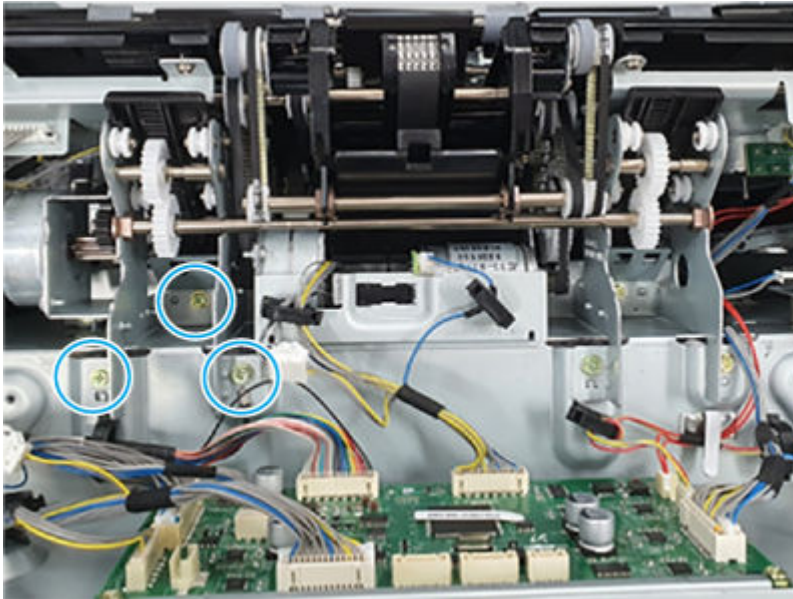


6 Remove the inner finisher rear paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear paper support.

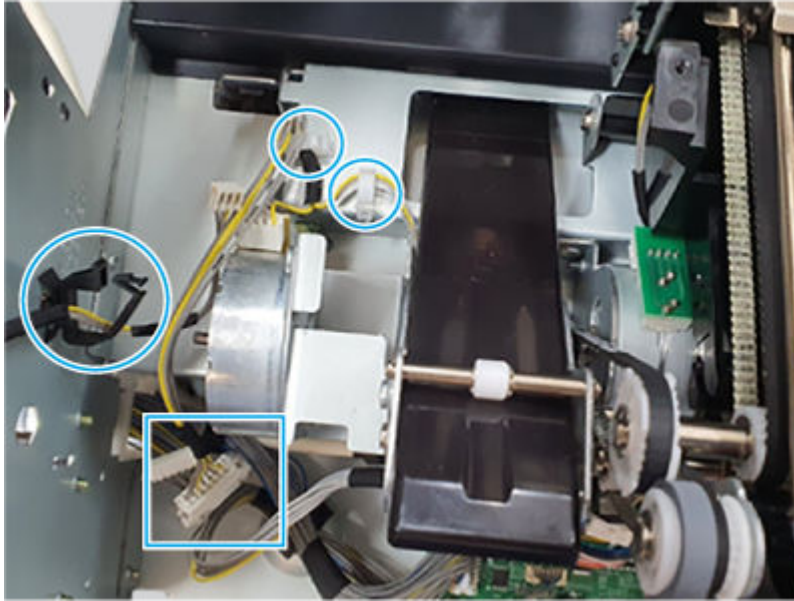
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3332 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release three hooks, and then remove the inner finisher rear paper support.

Figure 6-3333 Remove the support

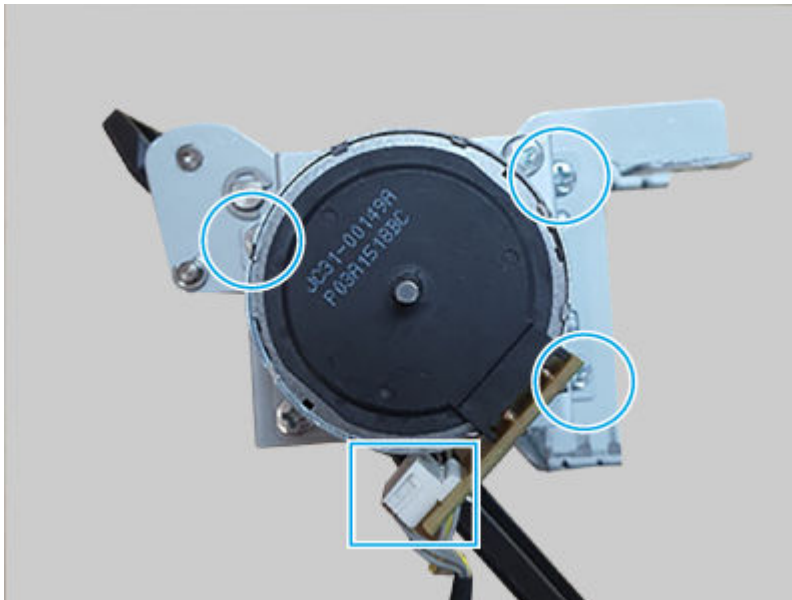


7 Remove the inner finisher paper support motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper support motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher paper support motor assembly.


Figure 6-3334 Remove the assembly



8 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper support motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper support motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-399 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00802B	Drive sub-motor step (Paper support motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

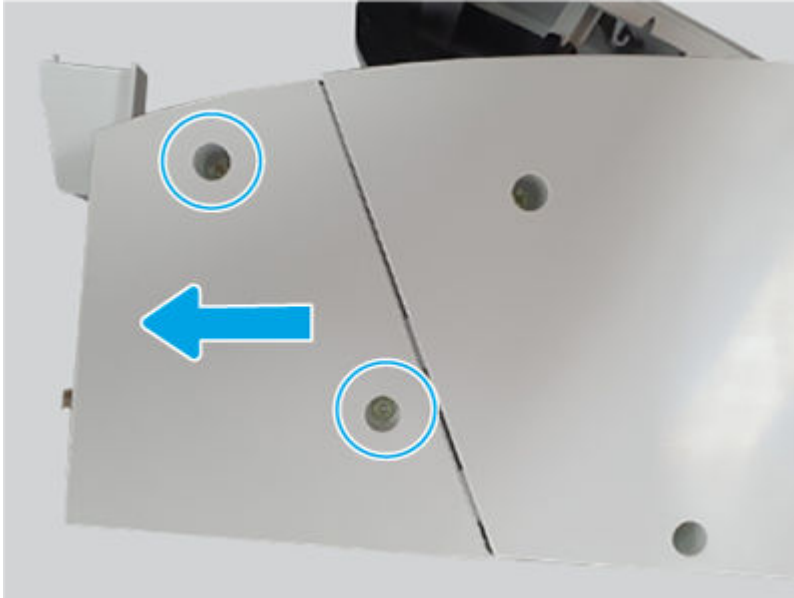
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3335 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

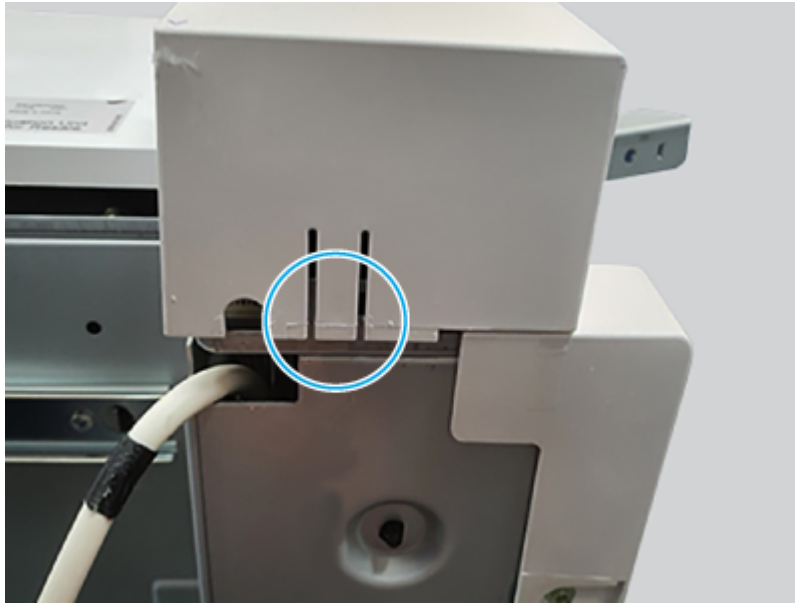
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3336 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3337 Remove the cover

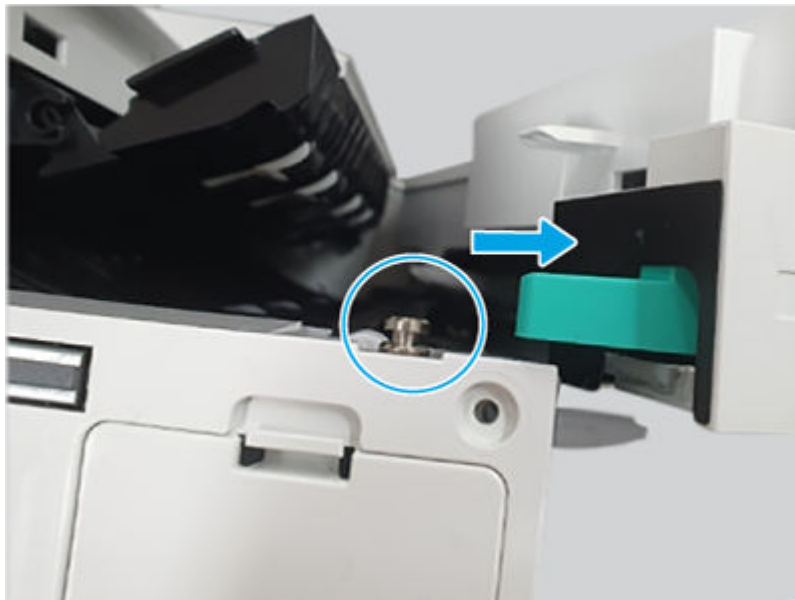


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3338 Open the punch cover



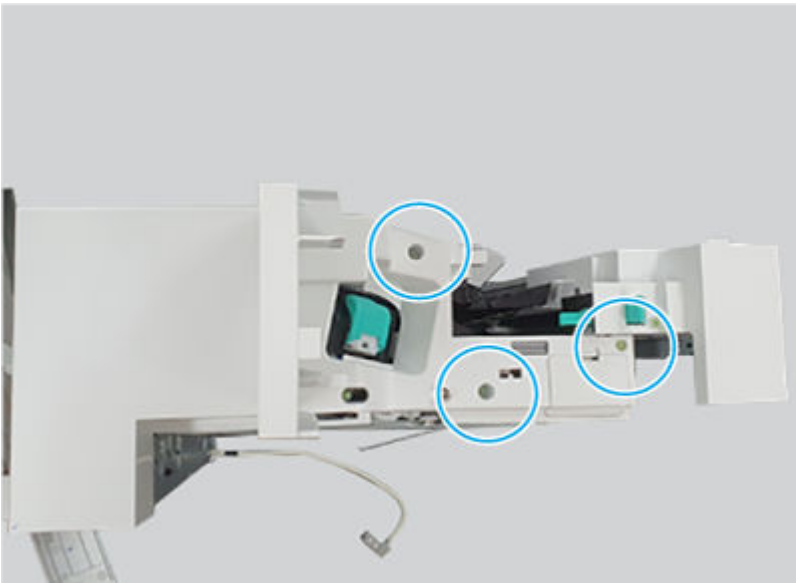
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3339 Remove the handle



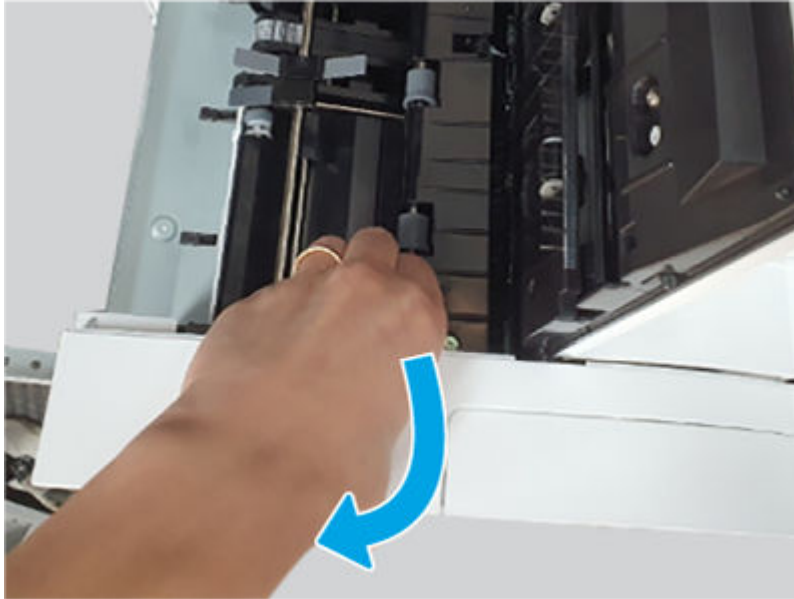
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3340 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3341 Remove the cover

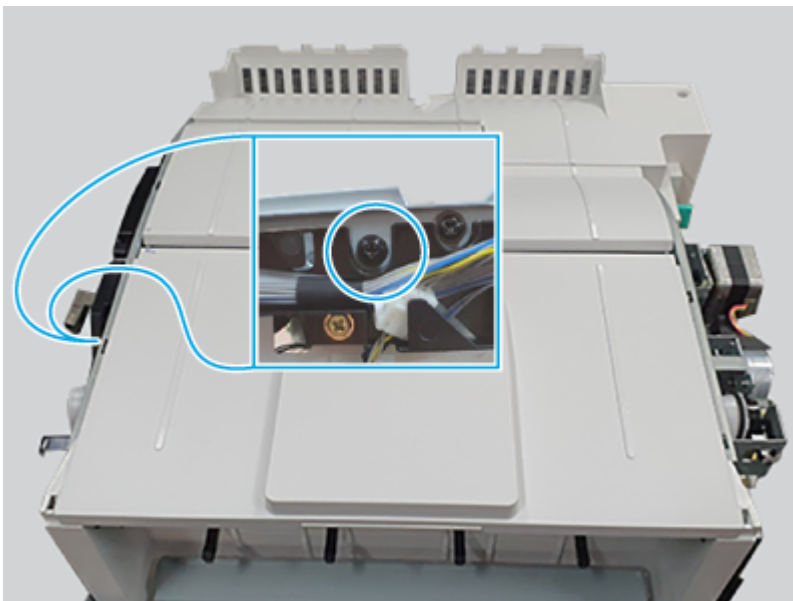


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3342 Remove the cover

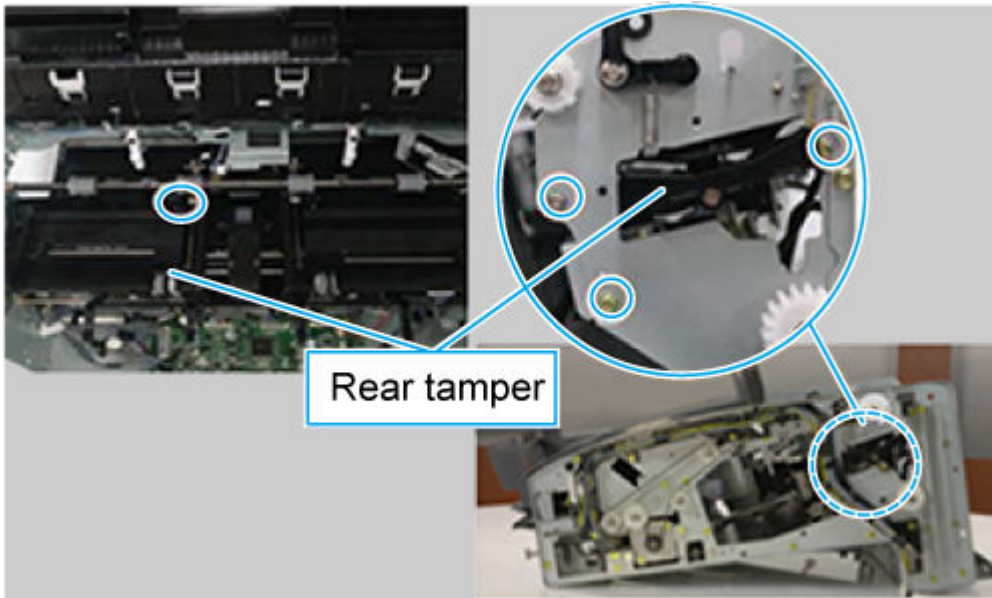


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3343 Remove the tamper

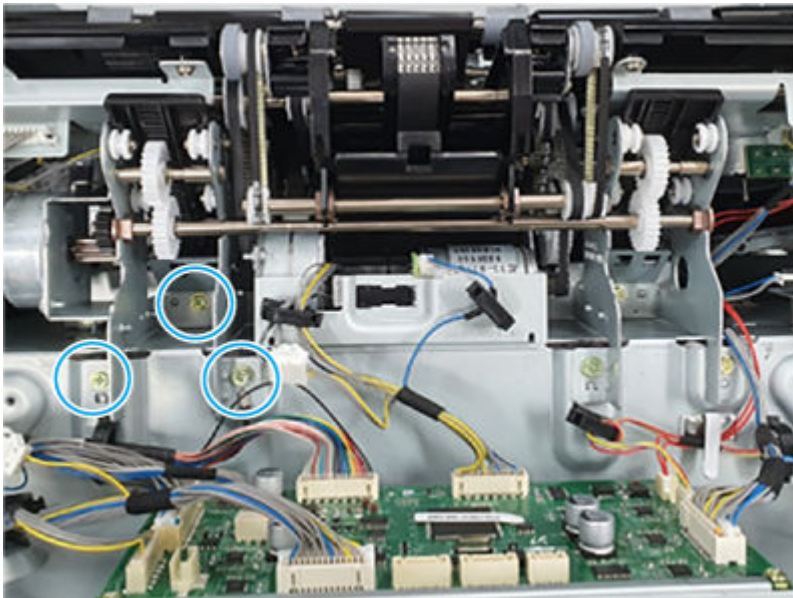


6 Remove the inner finisher rear paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear paper support.

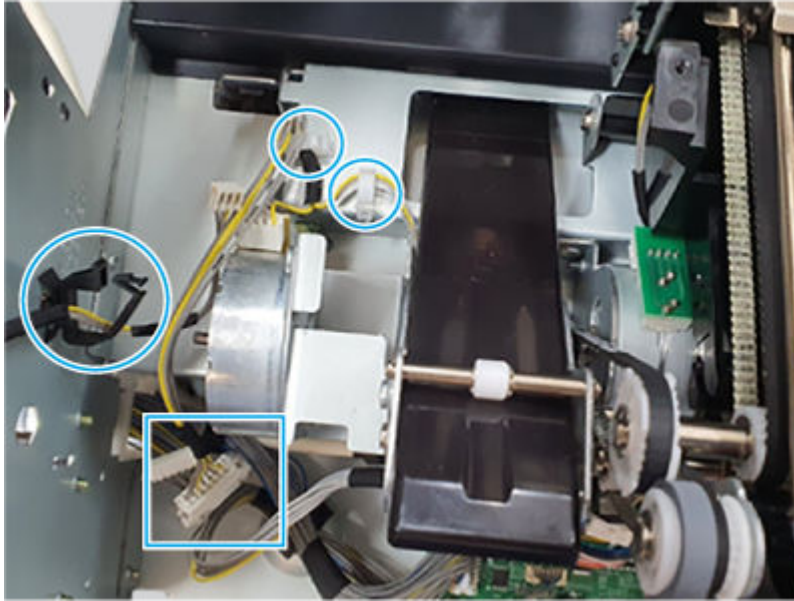
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3344 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release three hooks, and then remove the inner finisher rear paper support.

Figure 6-3345 Remove the support

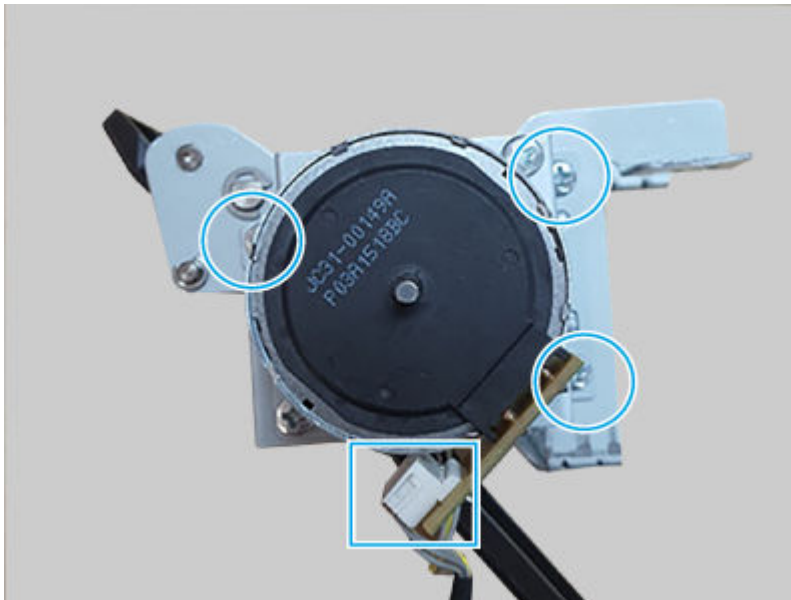


7 Remove the inner finisher paper support motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper support motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher paper support motor assembly.

Figure 6-3346 Remove the assembly

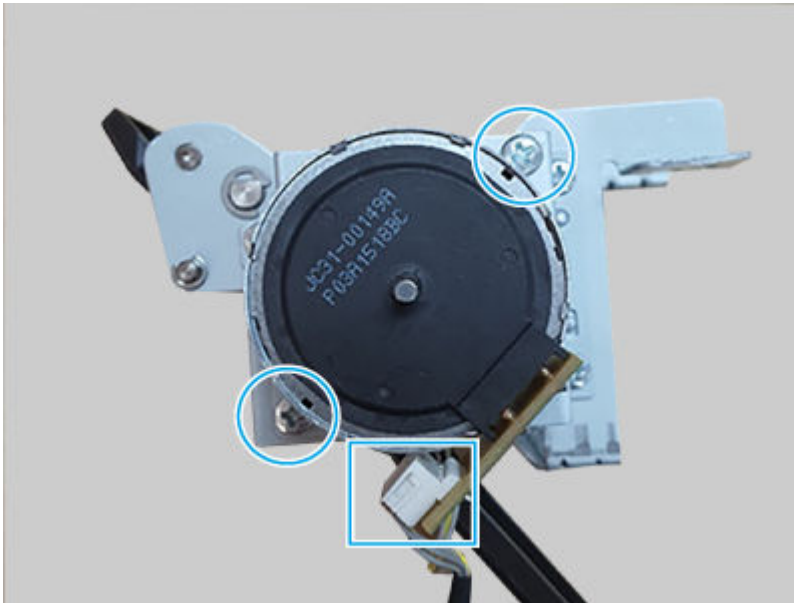


8 Remove the inner finisher paper support motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper support motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher paper support motor.


Figure 6-3347 Remove the motor



9 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front paper support

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front paper support.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-400 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01310A	Front paper support

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

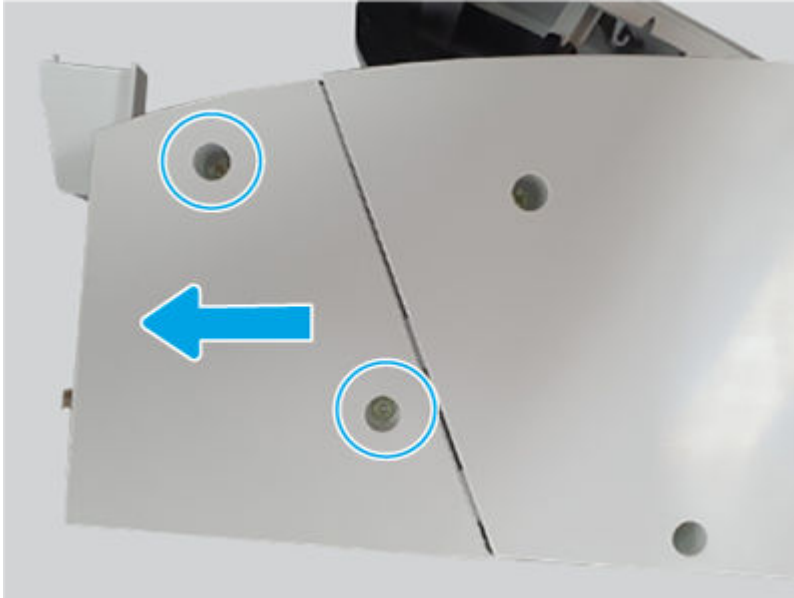
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3348 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

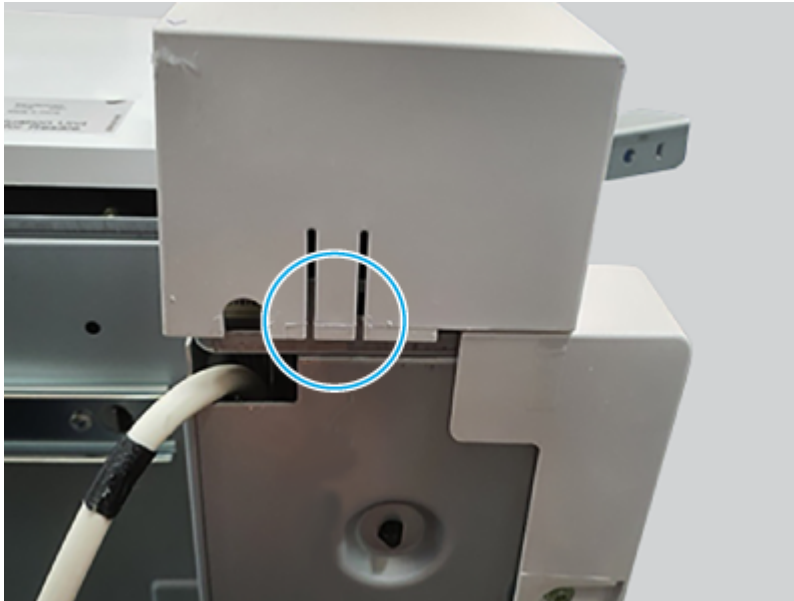
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3349 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3350 Remove the cover

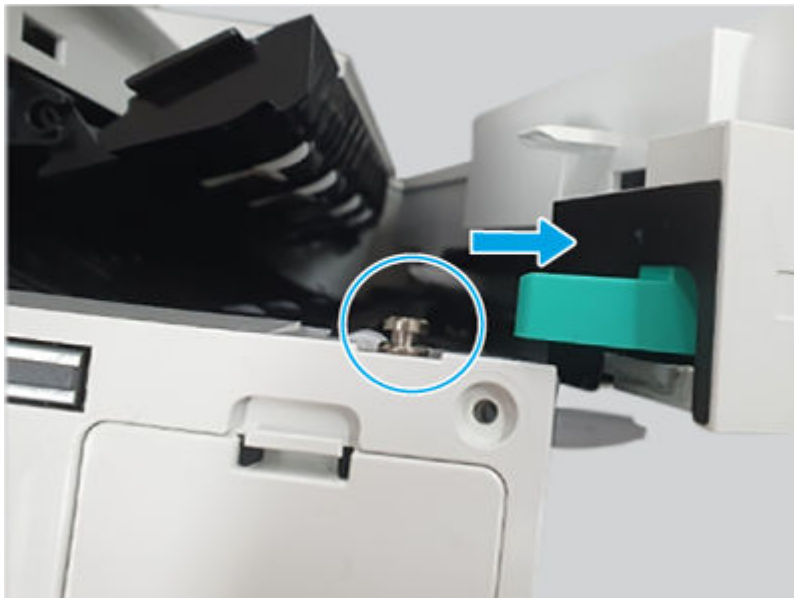


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3351 Open the punch cover



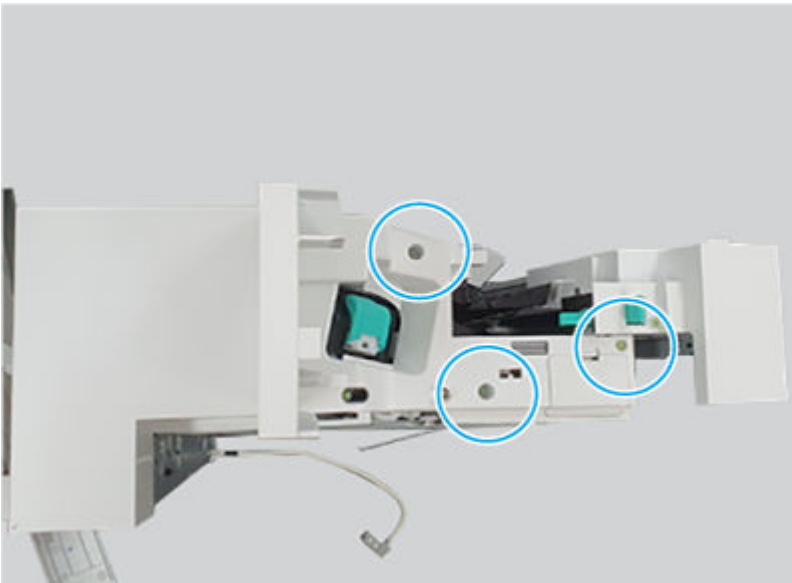
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3352 Remove the handle



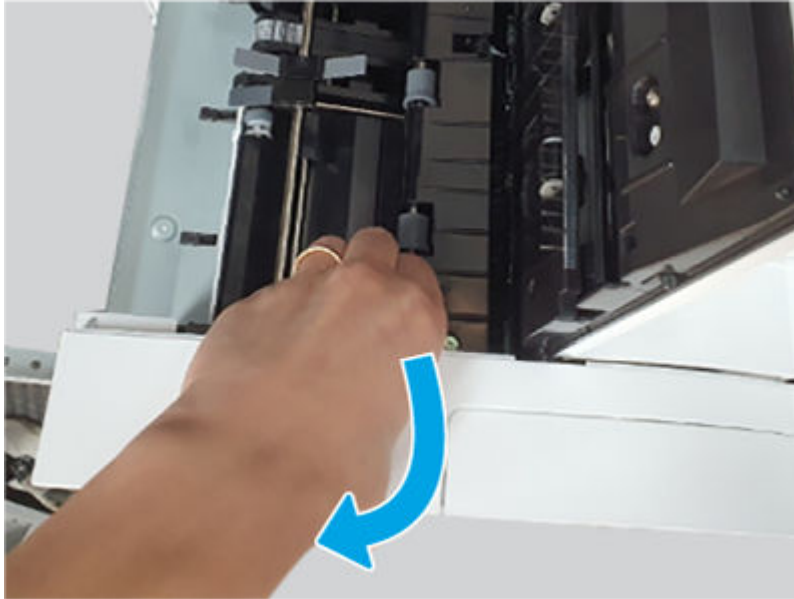
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3353 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3354 Remove the cover

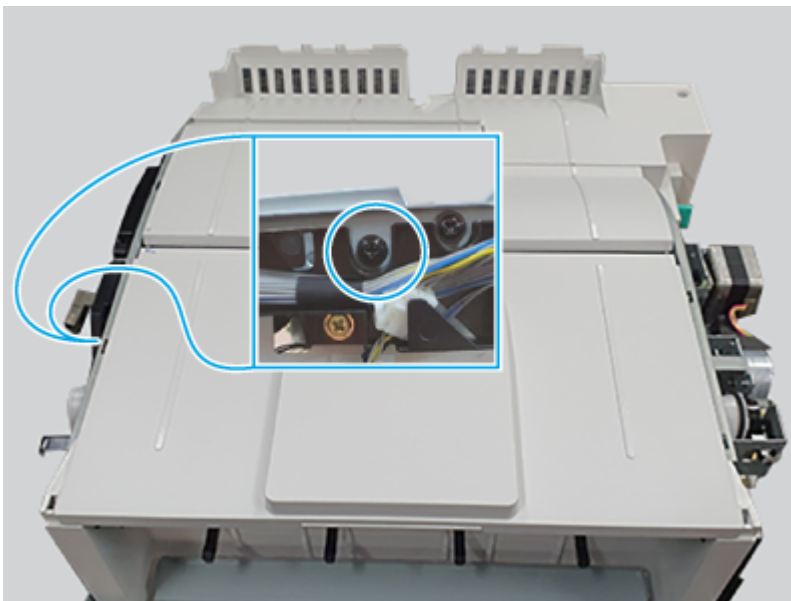


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3355 Remove the cover

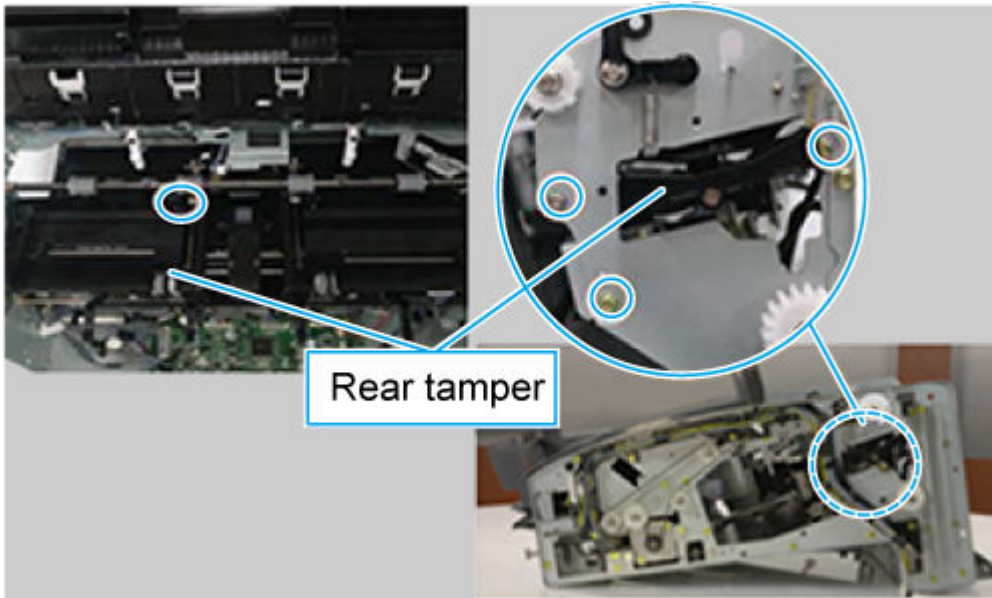


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3356 Remove the tamper

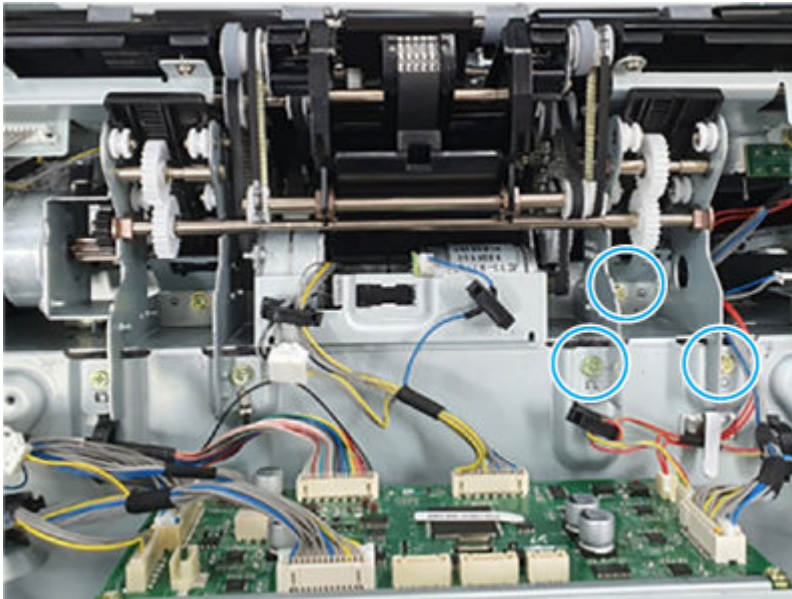


6 Remove the inner finisher front paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front paper support.

- Remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher front paper support..

Figure 6-3357 Remove the support



7 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paddle unit

Review the inner finisher paddle unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Main paddle assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher main paddle assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-401 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01327A	Main paddle assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

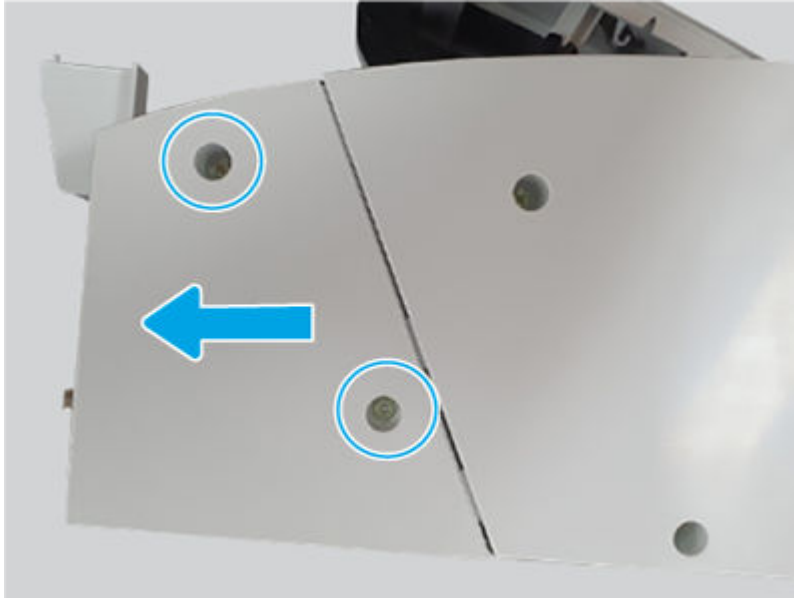
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3358 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

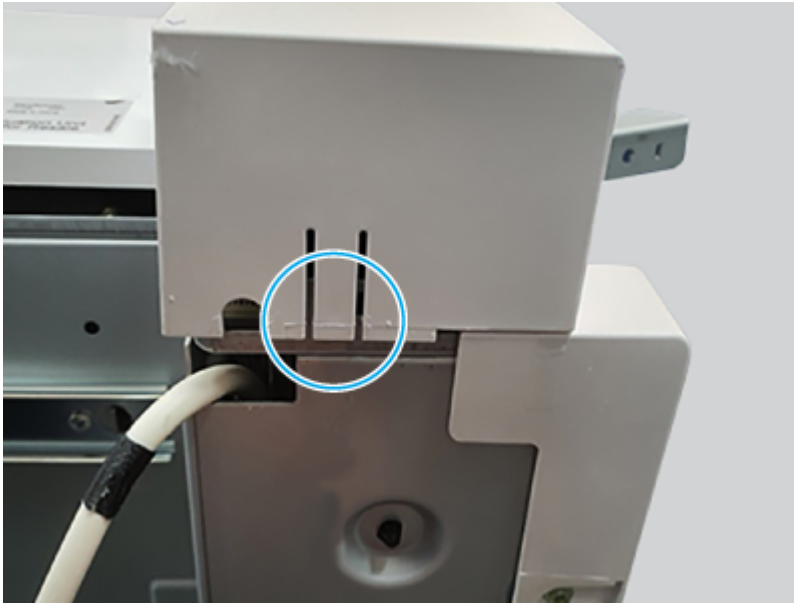
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3359 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3360 Remove the cover

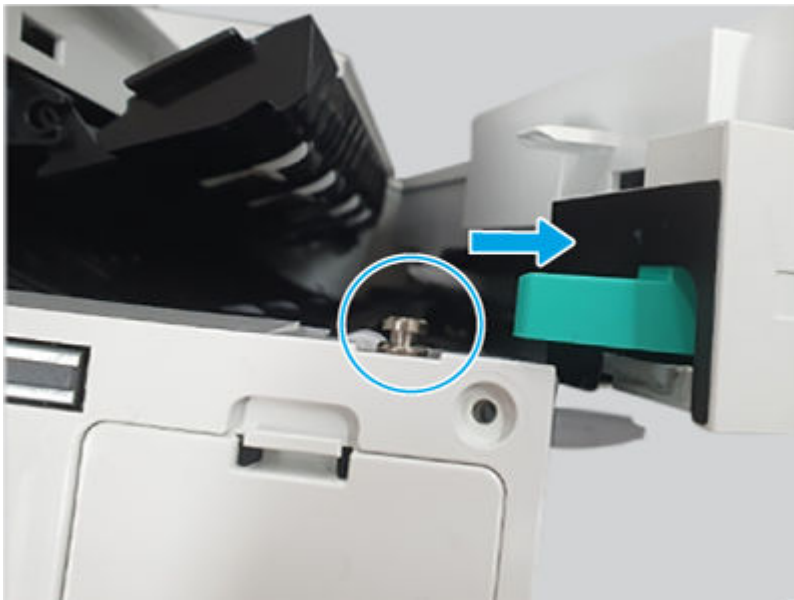


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3361 Open the punch cover



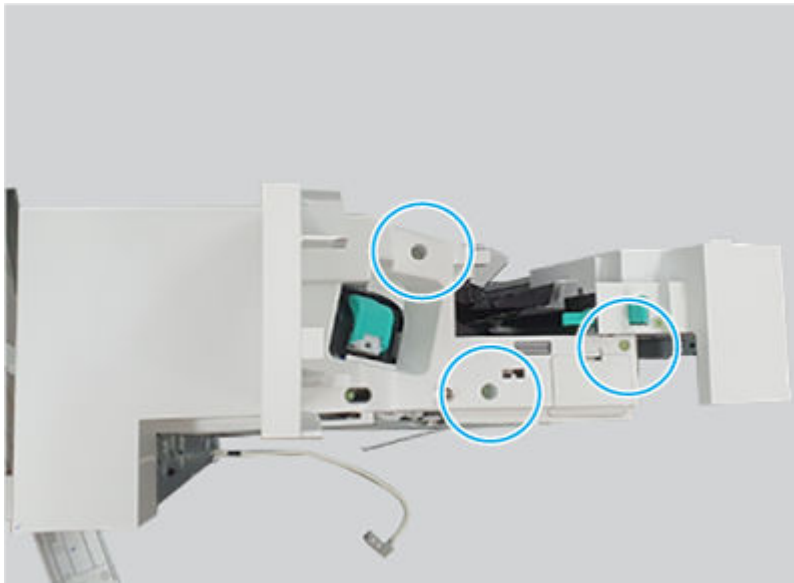
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3362 Remove the handle



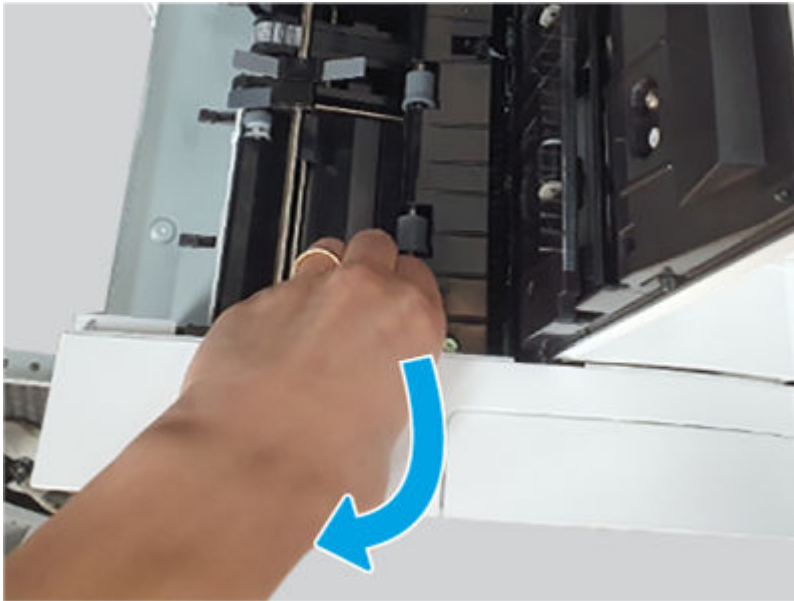
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3363 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3364 Remove the cover



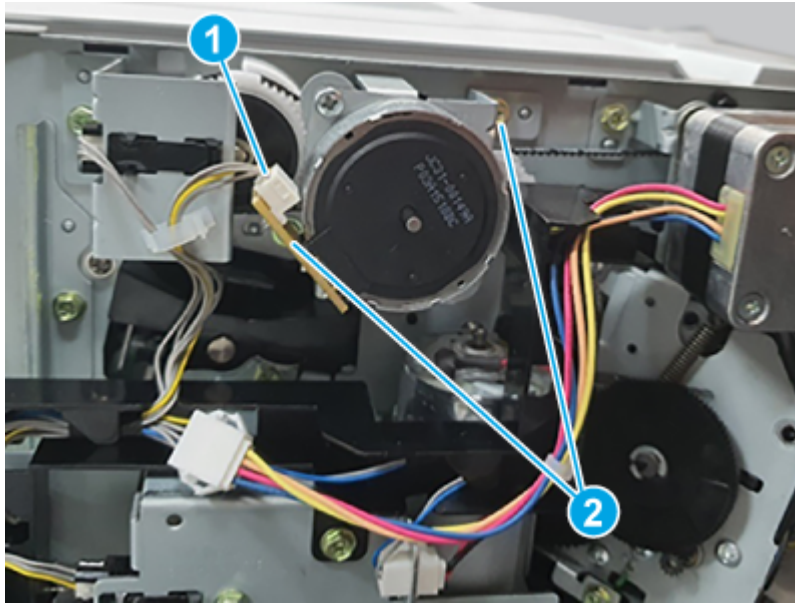
4 Remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
 - Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-3365 Remove the assembly



5 Remove the inner finisher main paddle home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher main paddle home sensor.


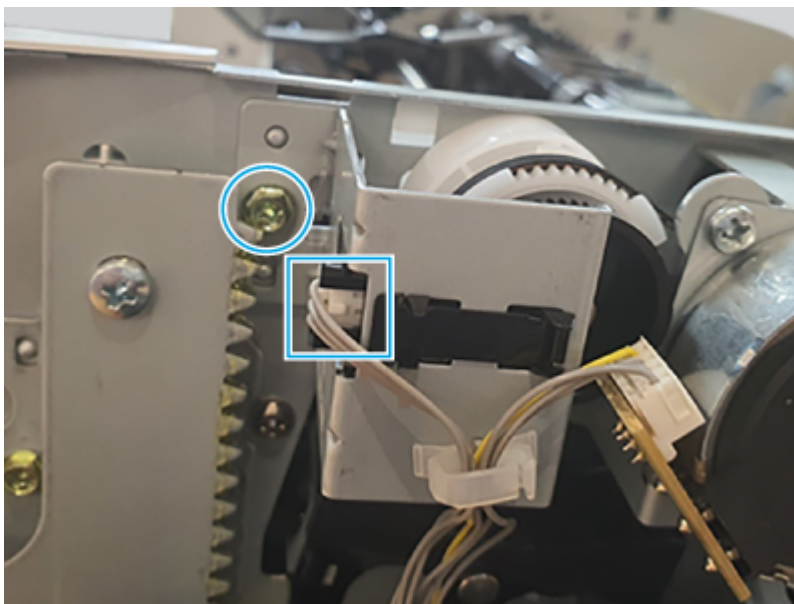
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harnesses from the retainer as necessary.

Figure 6-3366 Remove the sensor

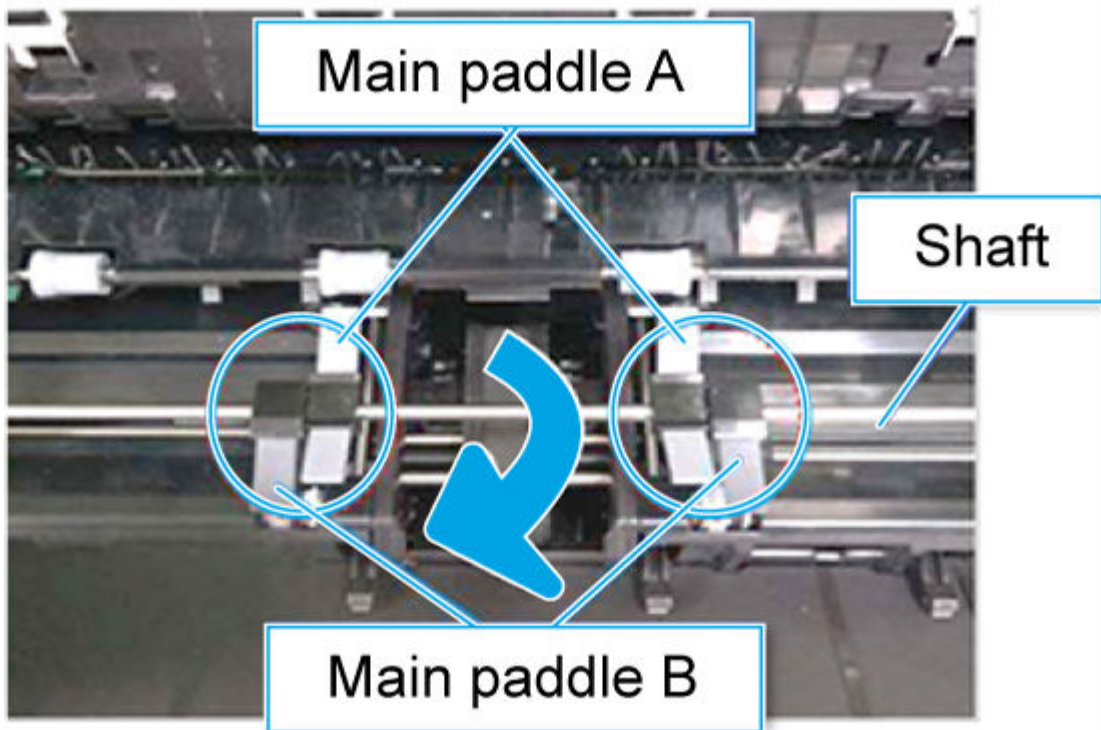


6 Remove the inner finisher main paddle assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle assembly.

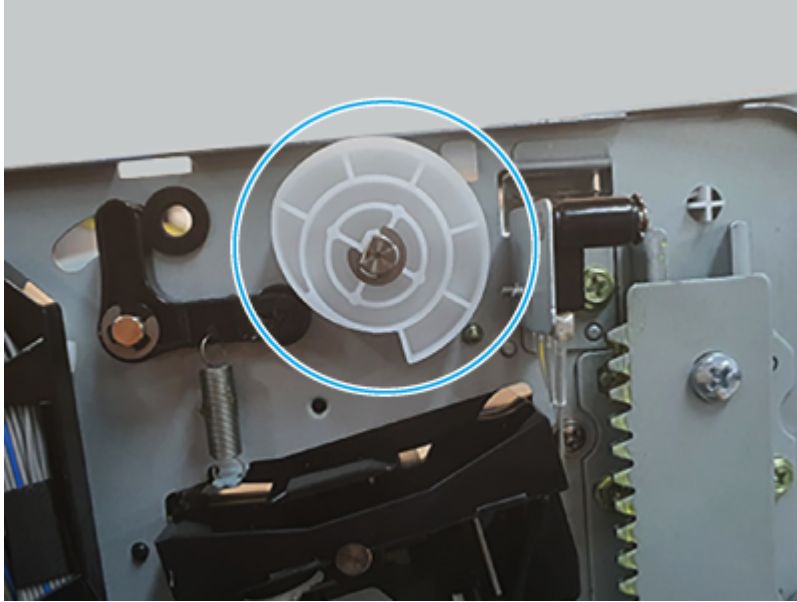
1. Remove four paddles.

Figure 6-3367 Remove four paddles



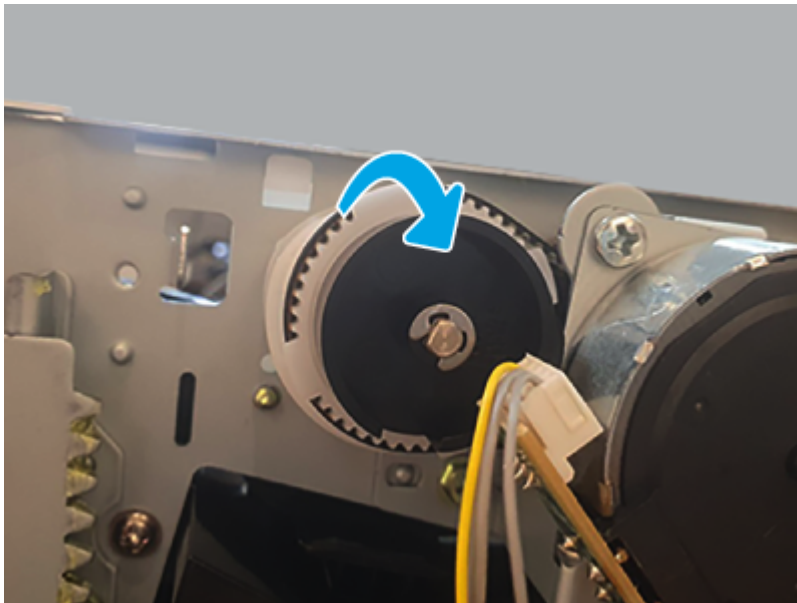
2. Do the following:
 - Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.
 - Remove the main paddle cam and bushing.

Figure 6-3368 Remove the e-ring, cam, and bushing



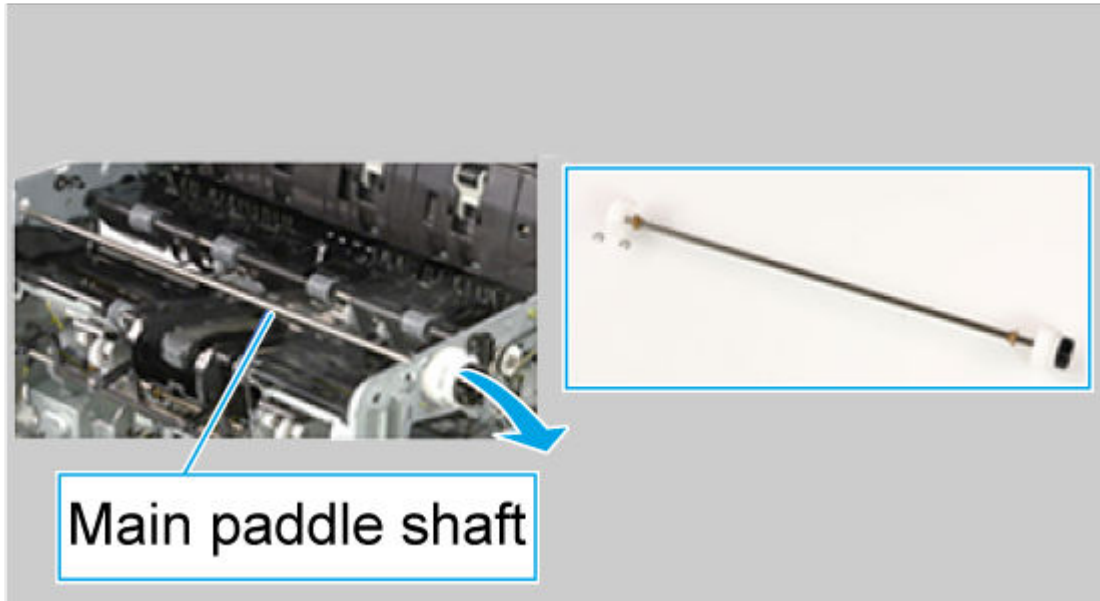
3. Release the belt.

Figure 6-3369 Release the belt



4. Remove the main paddle shaft.

Figure 6-3370 Remove the shaft



7 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Sub paddle assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher sub paddle assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-402 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01336A	Sub paddle assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

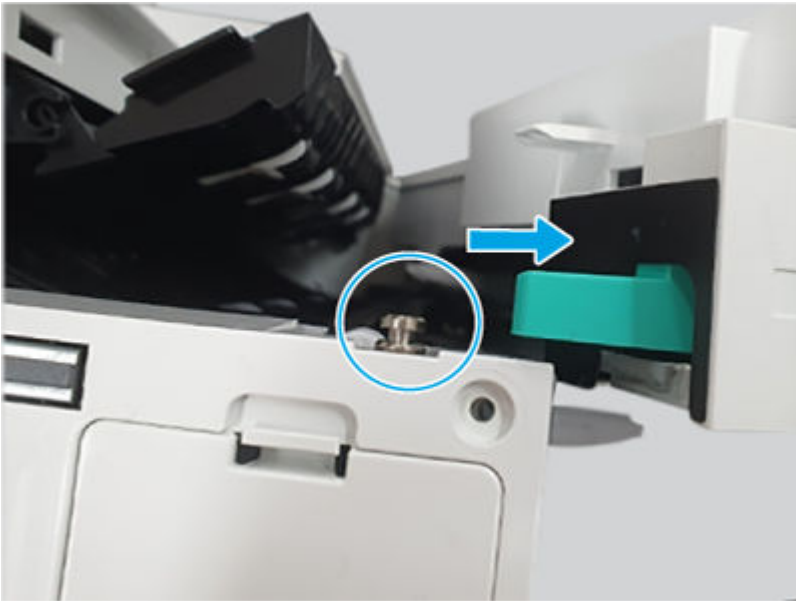
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3371 Open the punch cover



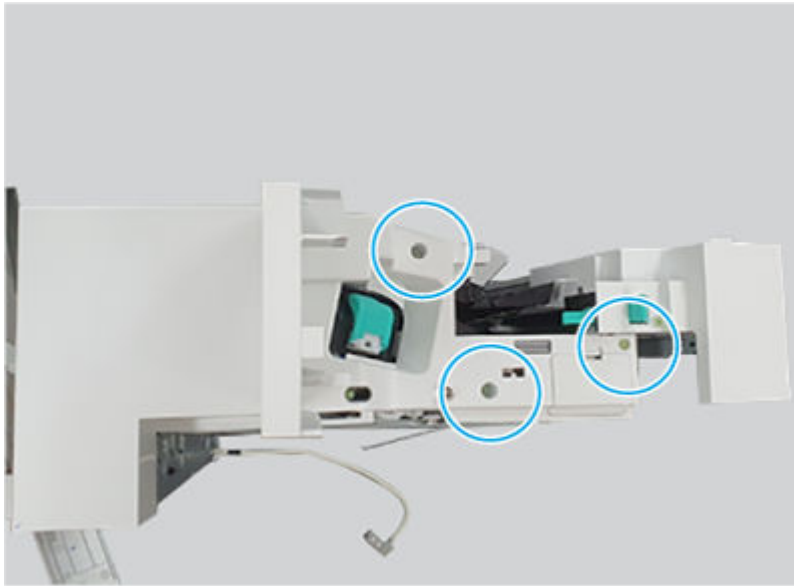
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3372 Remove the handle



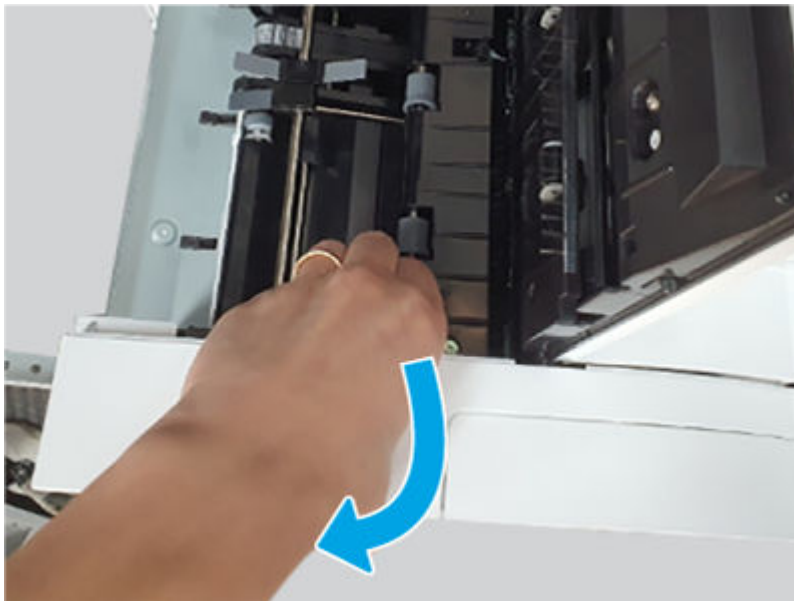
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3373 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3374 Remove the cover

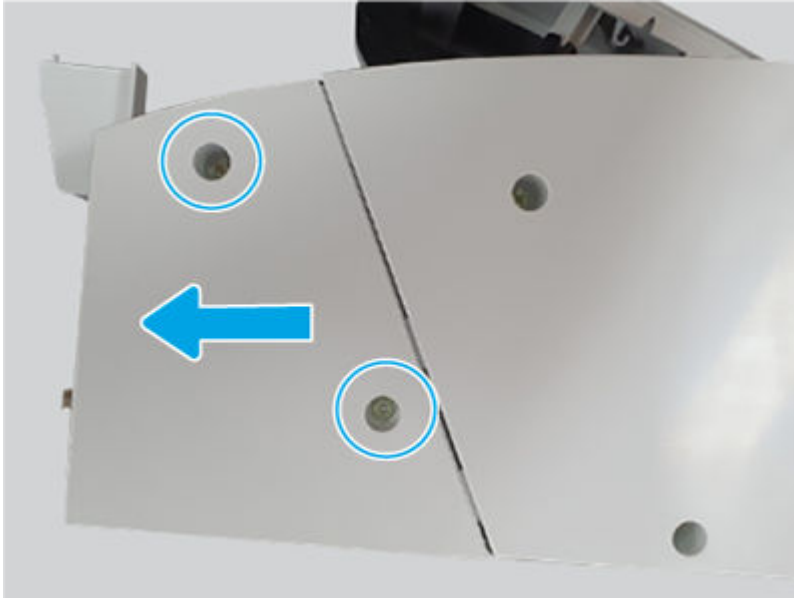


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3375 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

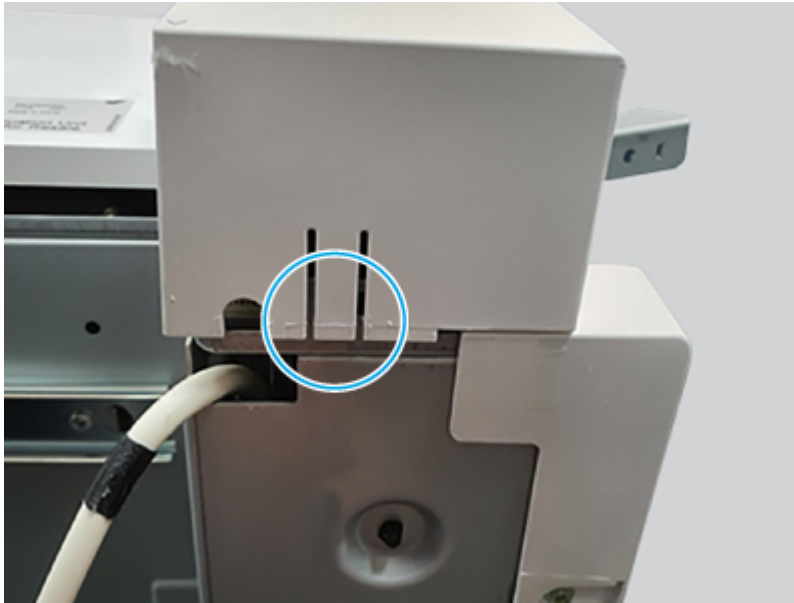
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3376 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3377 Remove the cover

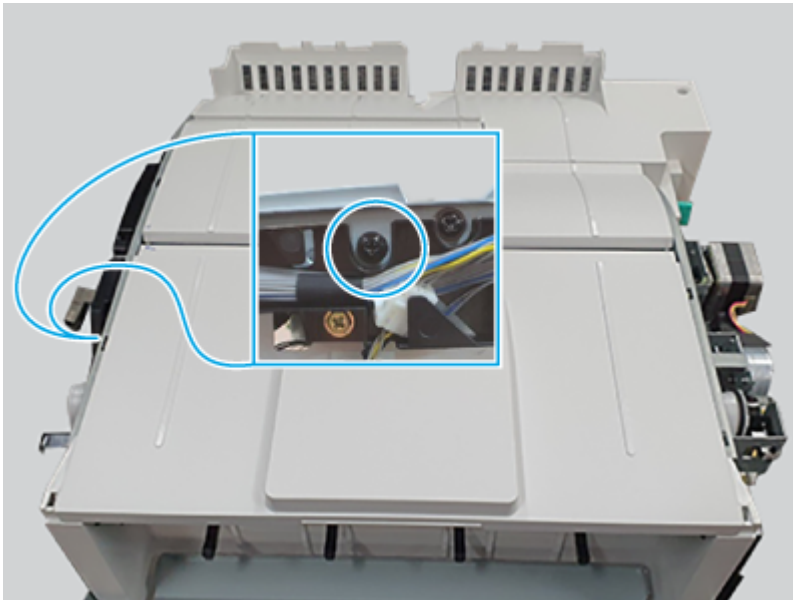


4. **Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3378 Remove the cover



5. **Remove the inner finisher sub paddle assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub paddle assembly.

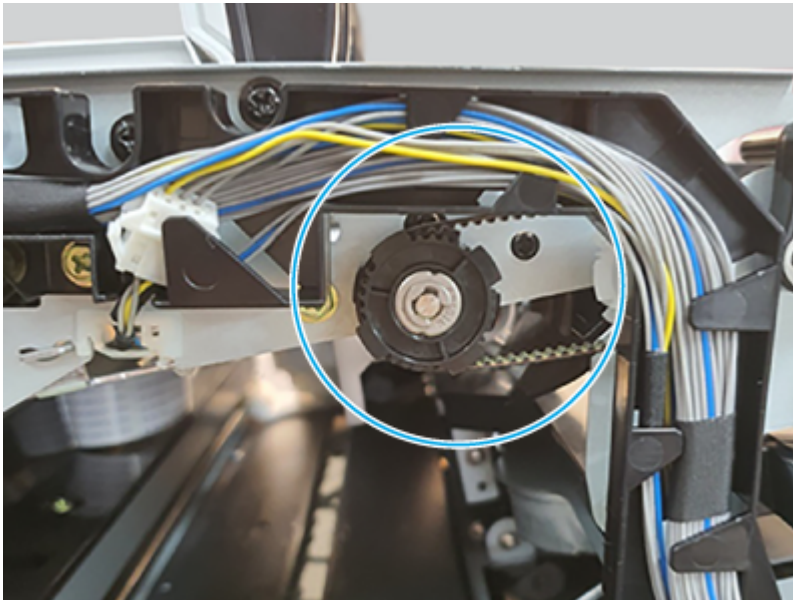
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3379 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:
 - Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.
 - Remove the gear, belt, and bushing.
 - Remove the sub paddle assembly.

Figure 6-3380 Remove the assembly



6 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main paddle home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher main paddle home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-403 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Main paddle home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

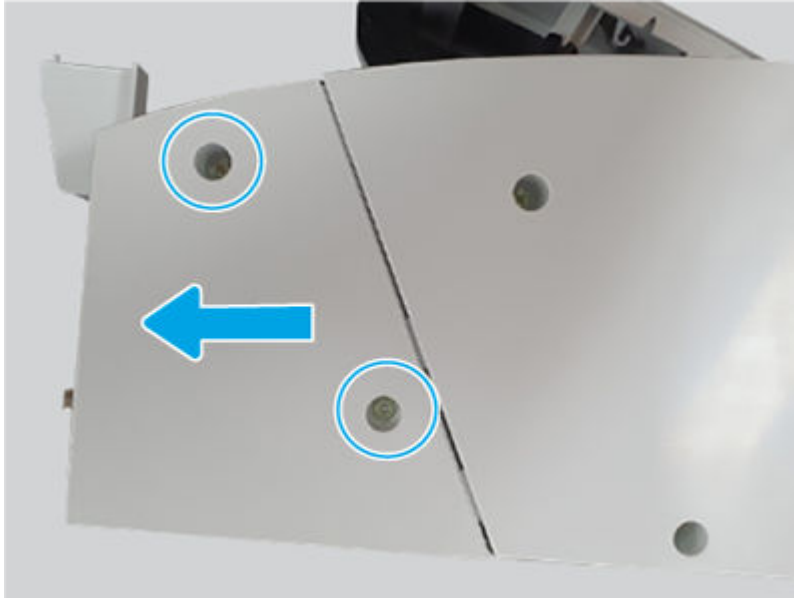
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3381 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

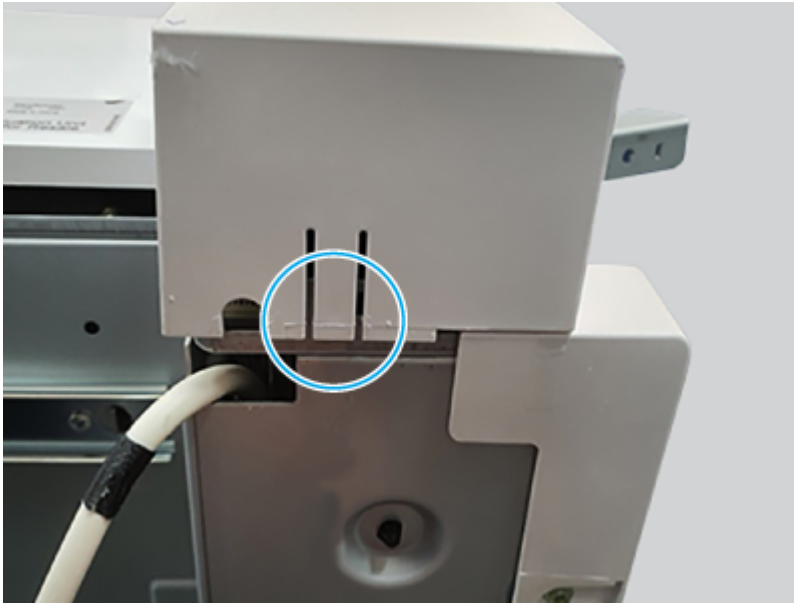
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3382 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3383 Remove the cover

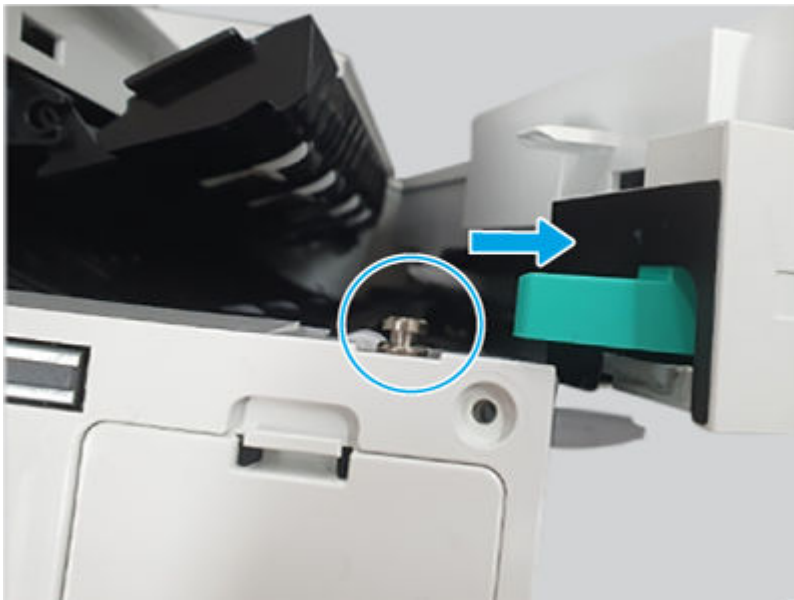


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3384 Open the punch cover



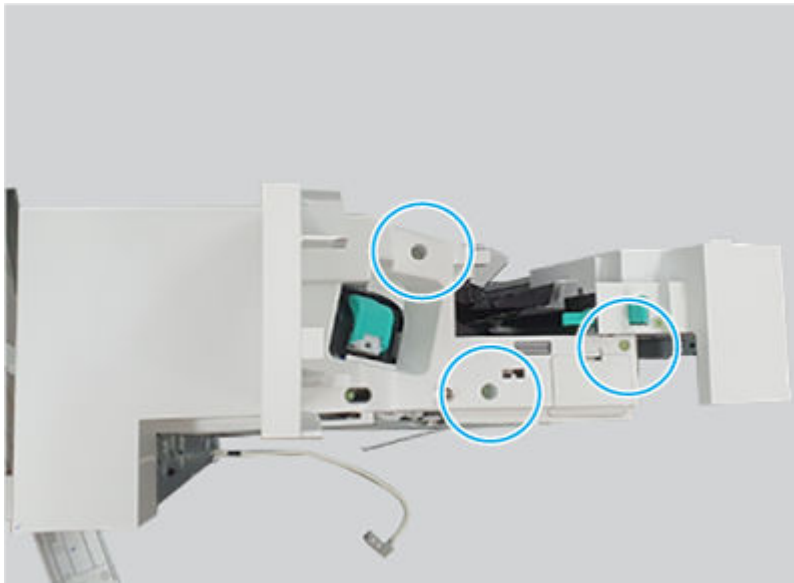
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3385 Remove the handle



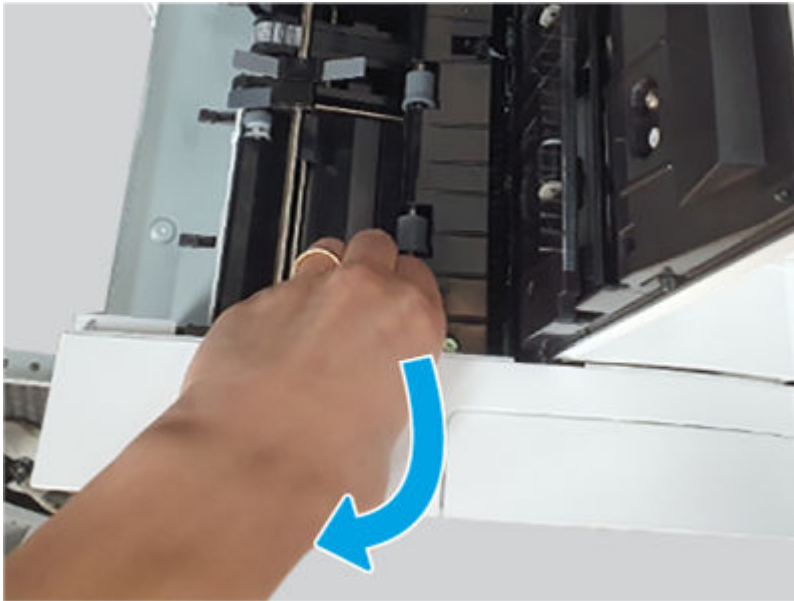
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3386 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3387 Remove the cover



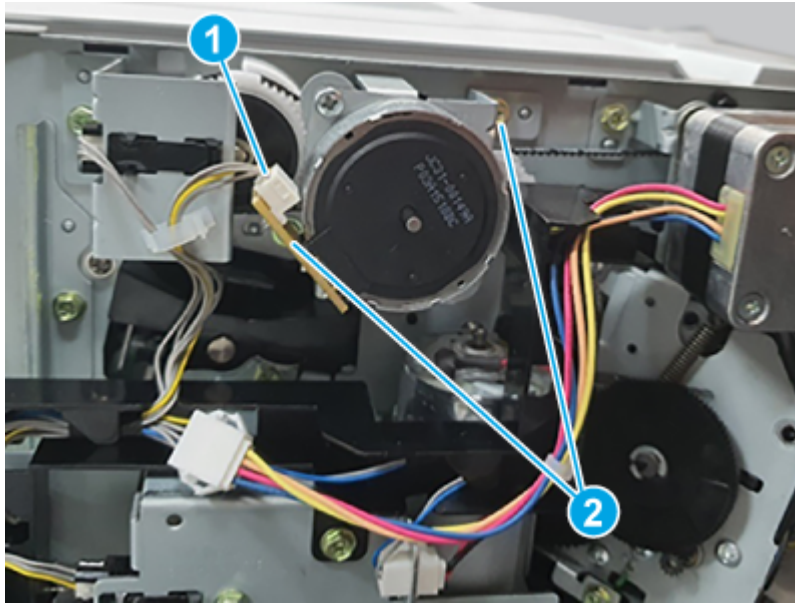
4 Remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
 - Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-3388 Remove the assembly



5 Remove the inner finisher main paddle home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher main paddle home sensor.


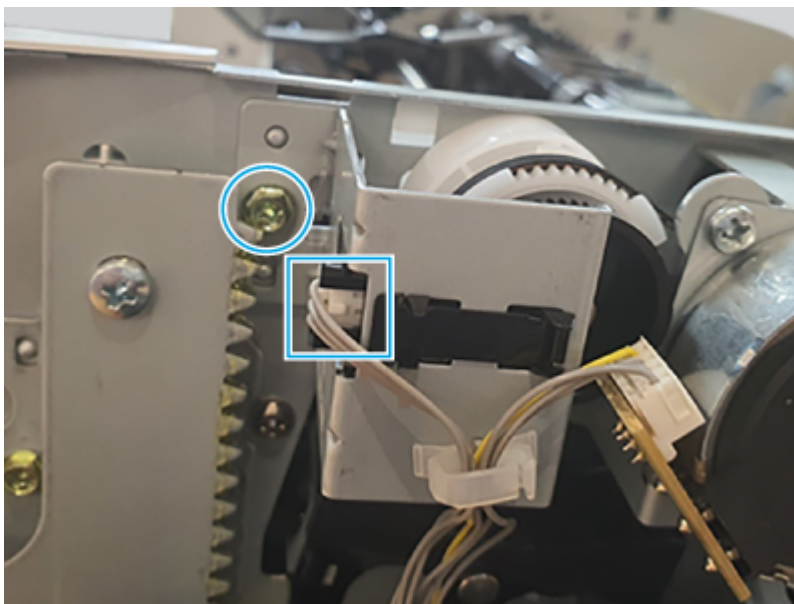
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harnesses from the retainer as necessary.

Figure 6-3389 Remove the sensor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main paddle motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-404 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01331A	Main paddle motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

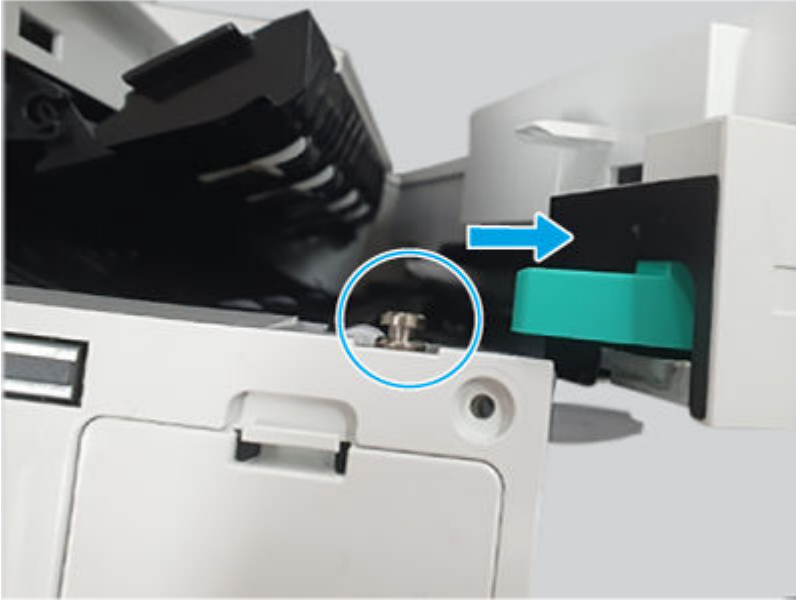
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3390 Open the punch cover



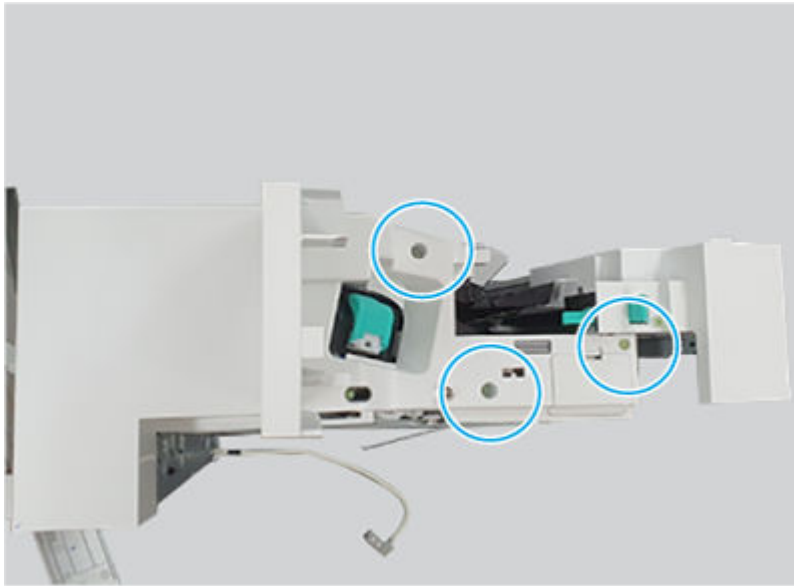
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3391 Remove the handle



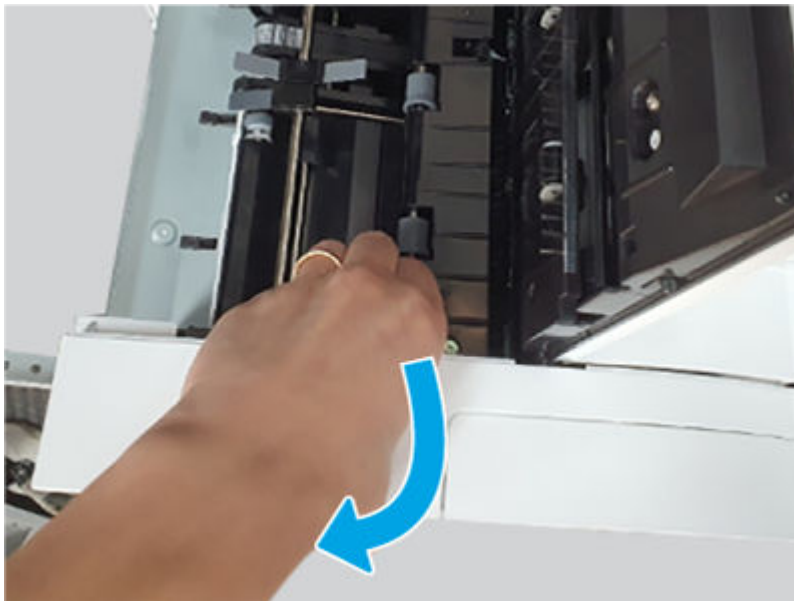
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3392 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3393 Remove the cover



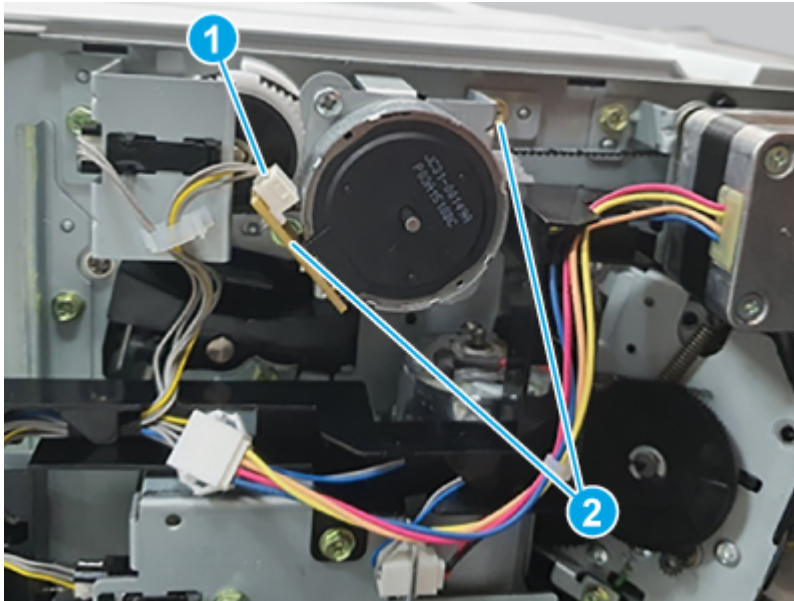
2 Remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

- Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.


Figure 6-3394 Remove the assembly



3 **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

End fence unit

Review the inner finisher end fence unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: End fence sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher end fence sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-405 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (End fence sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

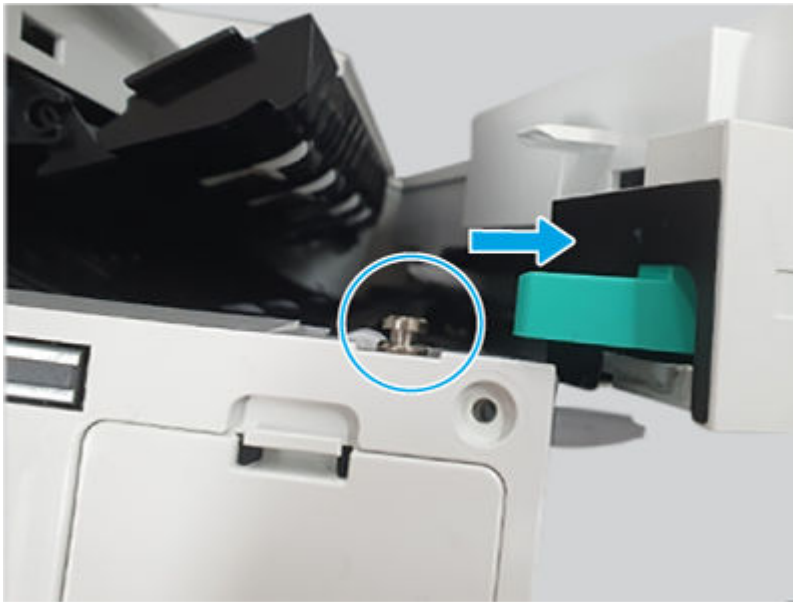
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

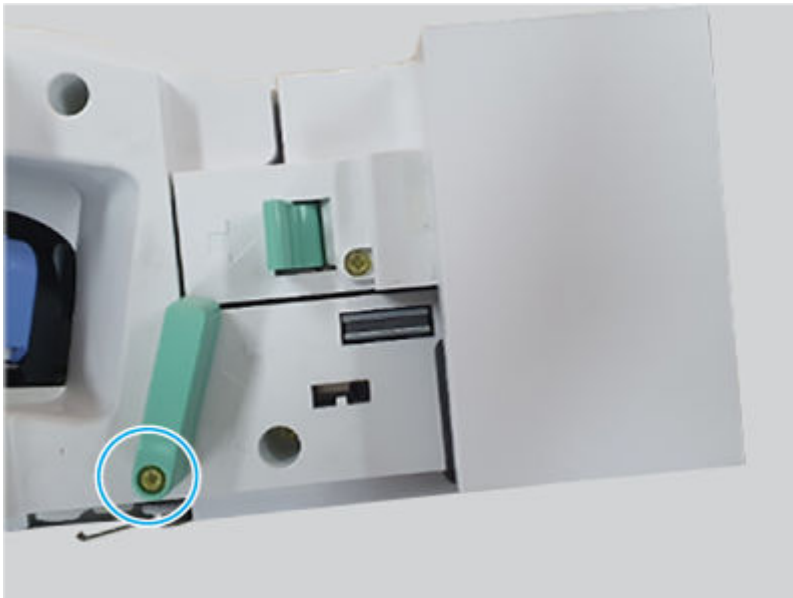
1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3395 Open the punch cover



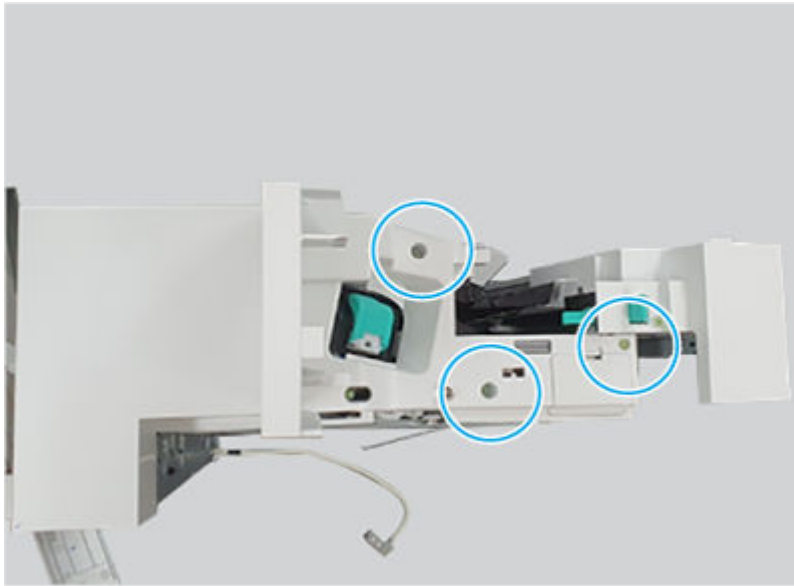
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3396 Remove the handle



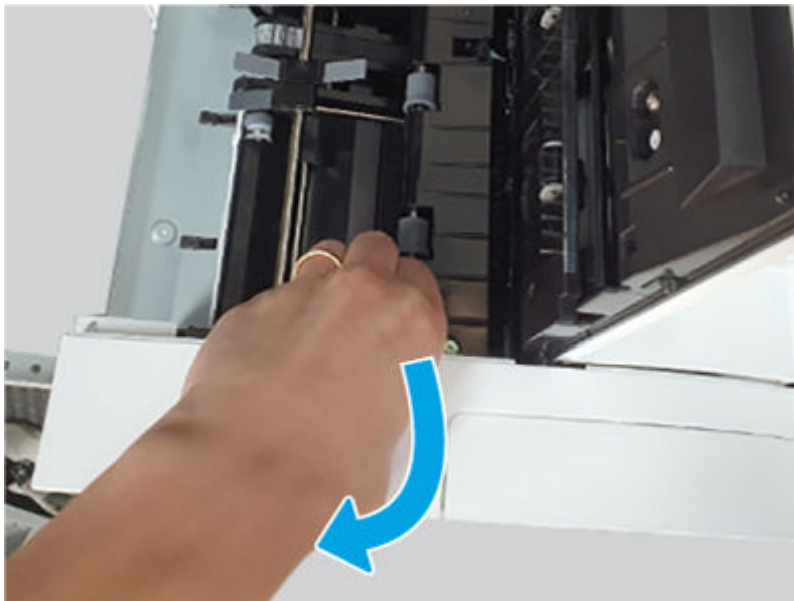
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3397 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3398 Remove the cover

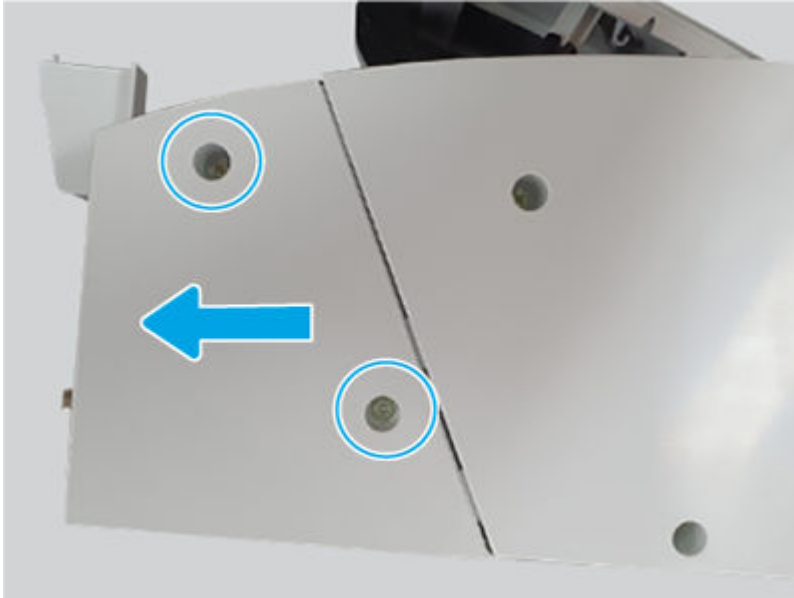


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3399 Remove the cover

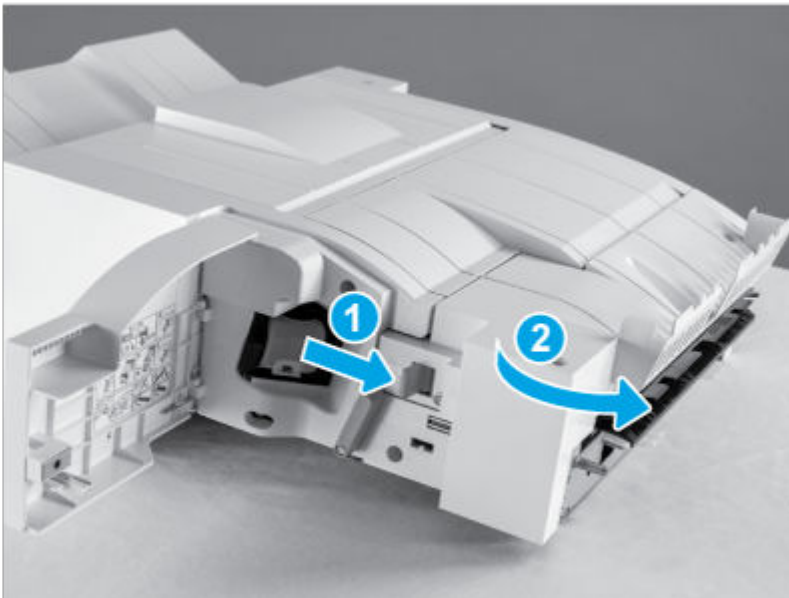


3 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

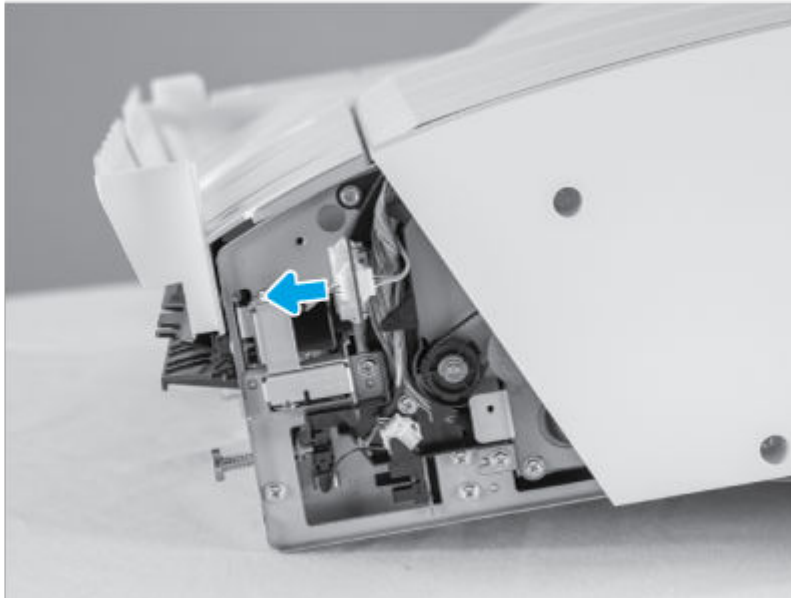
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3400 Rotate the punch



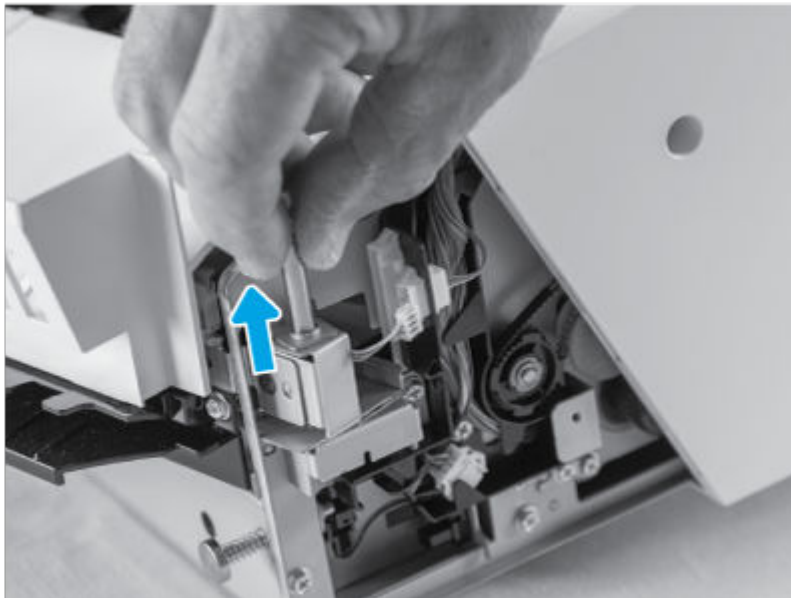
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3401 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3402 Remove the assembly



4 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

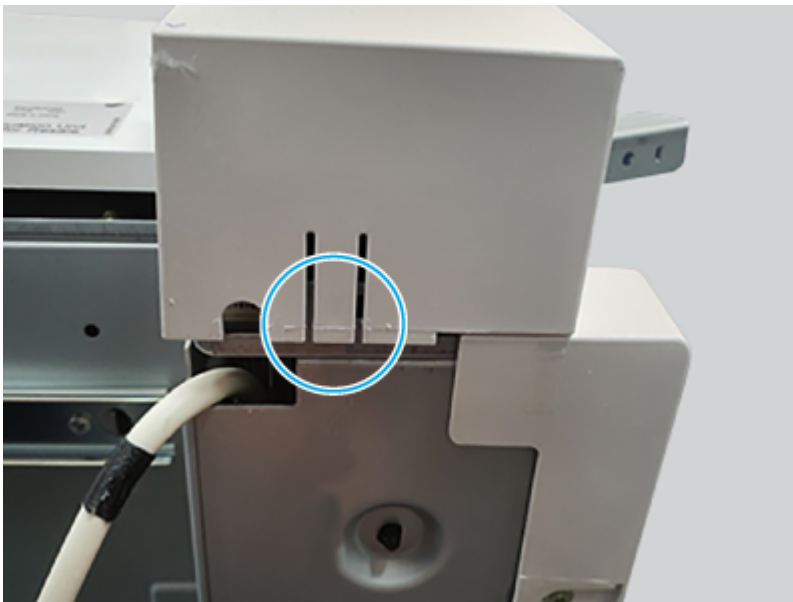
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3403 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3404 Remove the cover

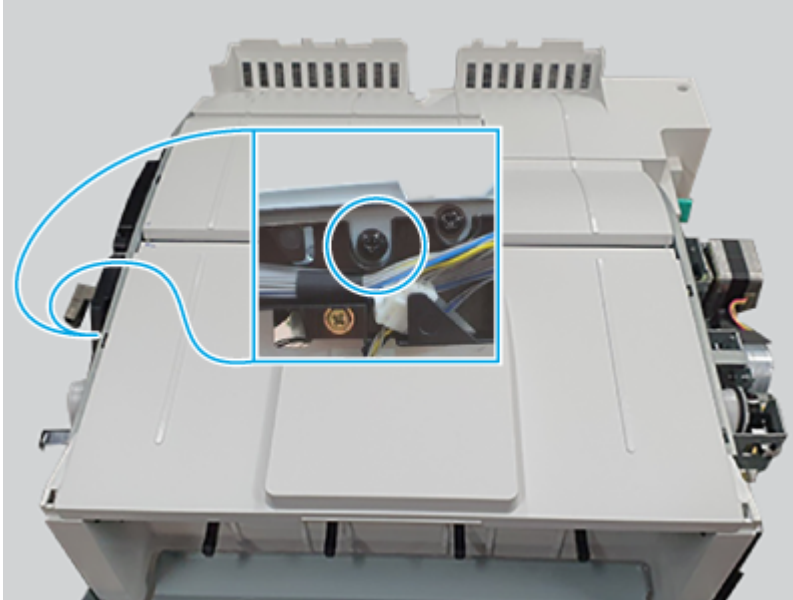


5 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3405 Remove the cover



6 Remove the inner finisher sub paddle assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub paddle assembly.

1. Remove one screw.

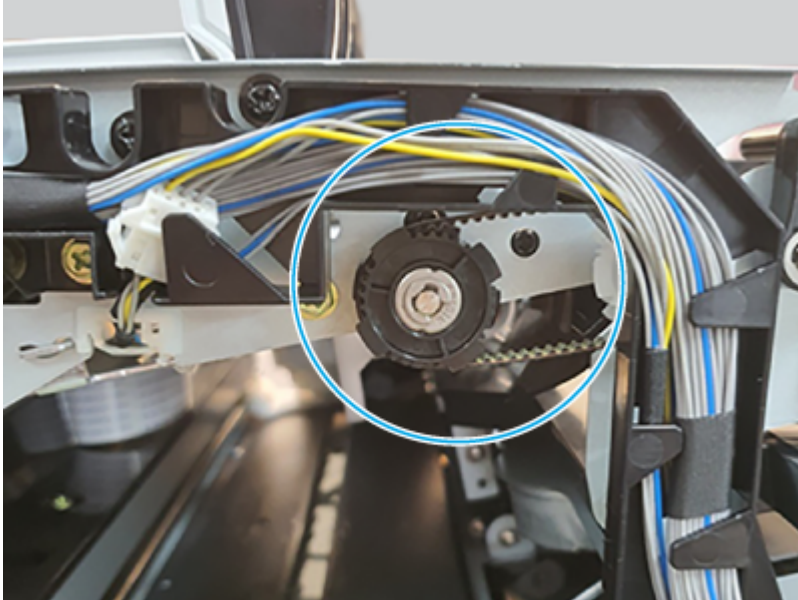
Figure 6-3406 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:
 - Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.
 - Remove the gear, belt, and bushing.

- Remove the sub paddle assembly.

Figure 6-3407 Remove the assembly

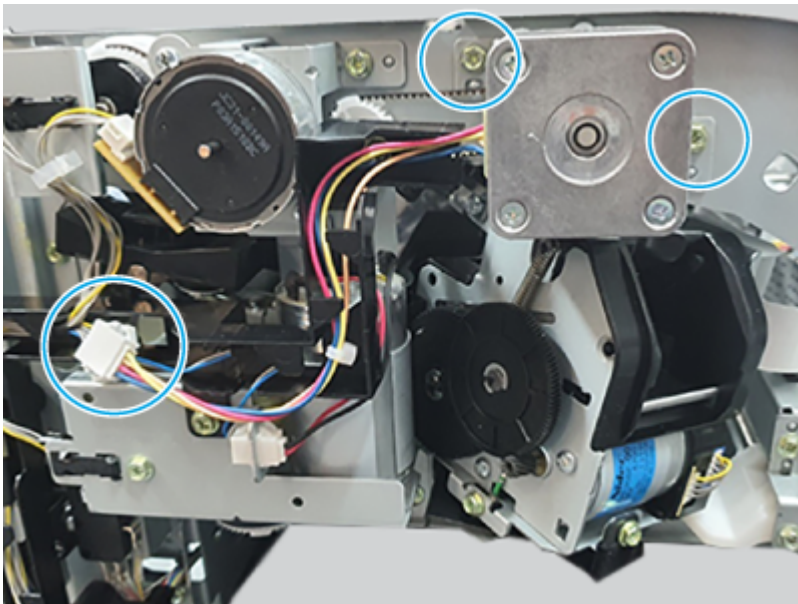


7 Remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-3408 Remove the motor

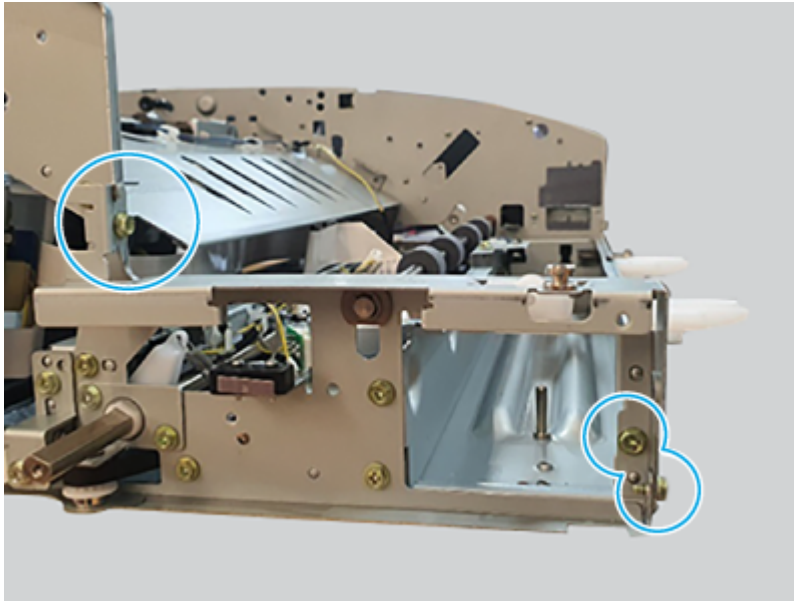


8 Remove the inner finisher bracket support guide and stay

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher bracket support guide and stay.

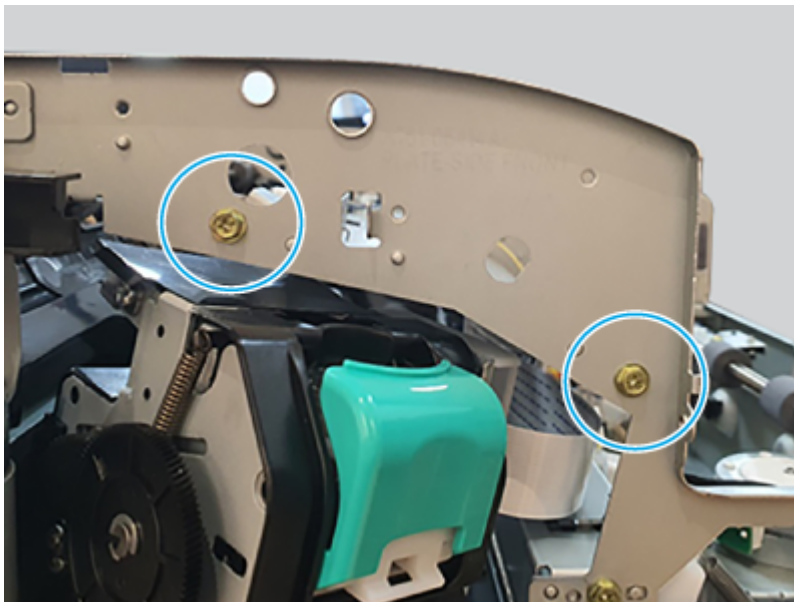
1. Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket support guide.

Figure 6-3409 Remove the guide



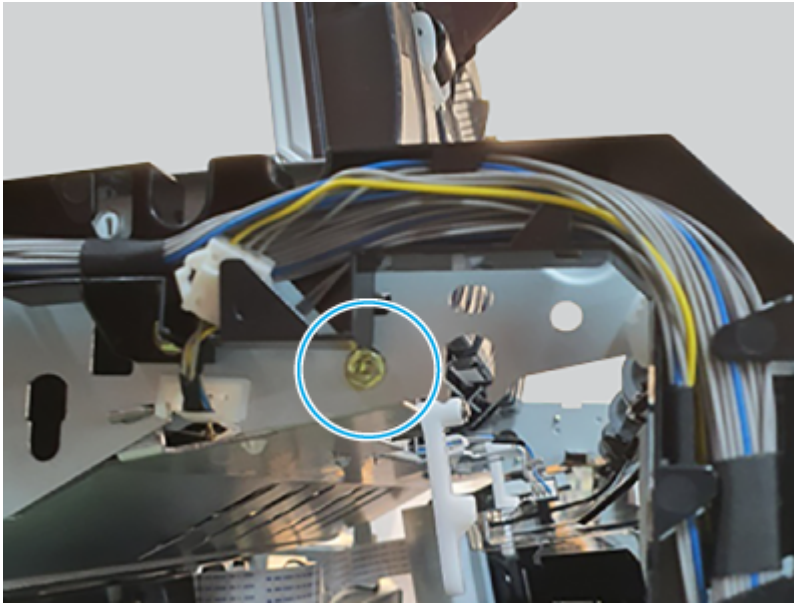
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3410 Remove two screws



3. Remove one screw, and then remove the bracket stay.

Figure 6-3411 Remove the stay

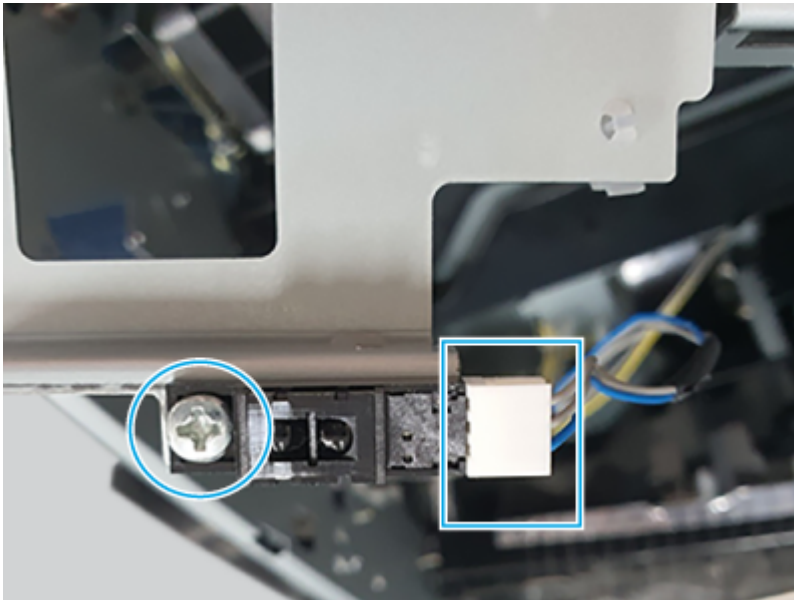


9 Remove the inner finisher end fence sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher end fence sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher end fence sensor.

Figure 6-3412 Remove the sensor



10 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.




NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tamper unit

Review the inner finisher tamper unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front tamper.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-406 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00899A	Front tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

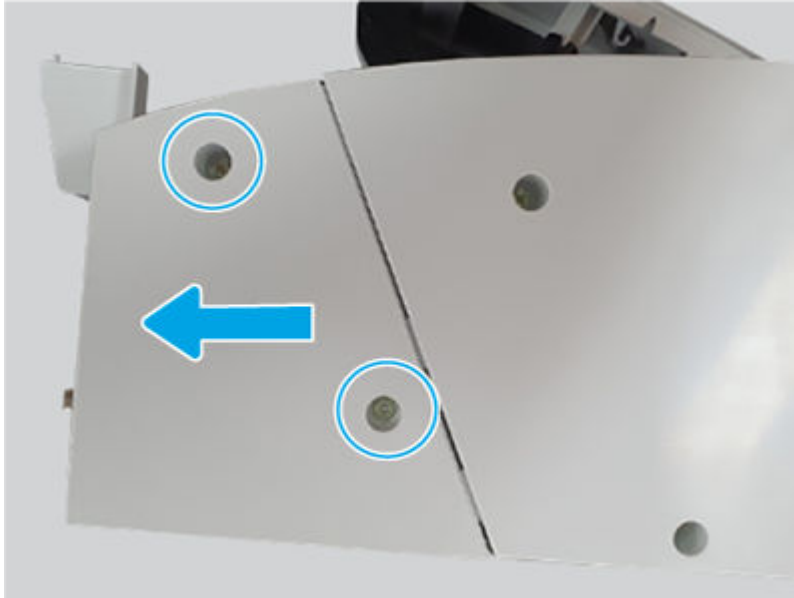
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3413 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

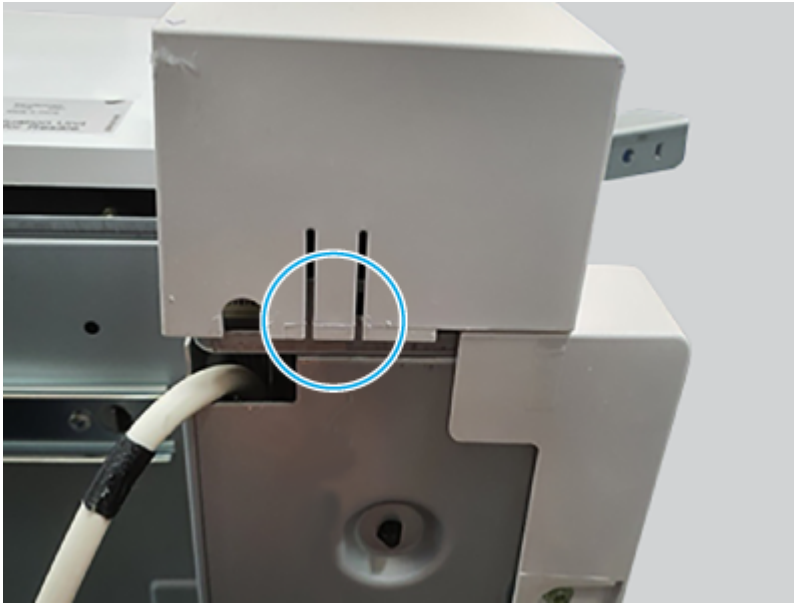
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3414 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3415 Remove the cover

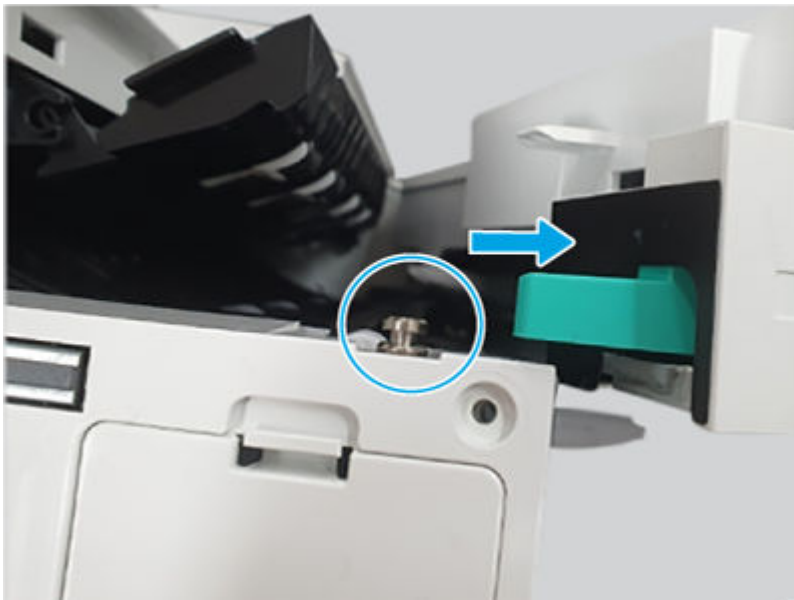


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3416 Open the punch cover



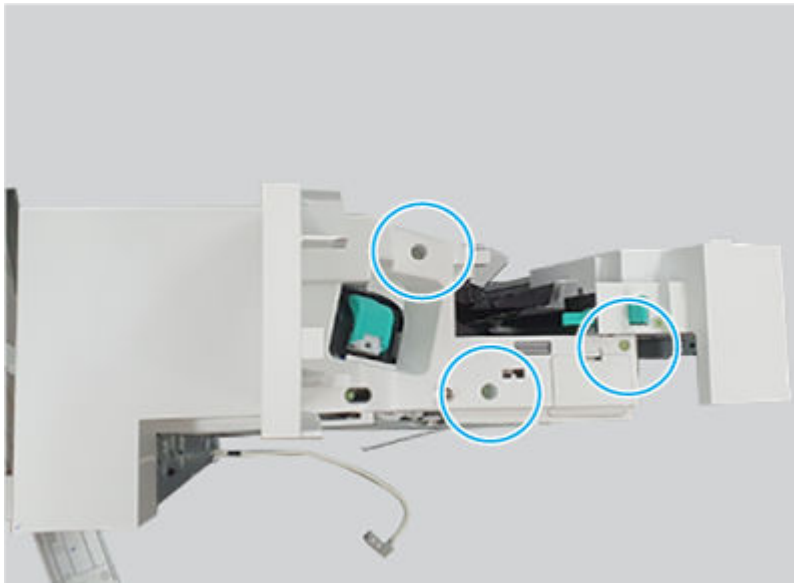
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3417 Remove the handle



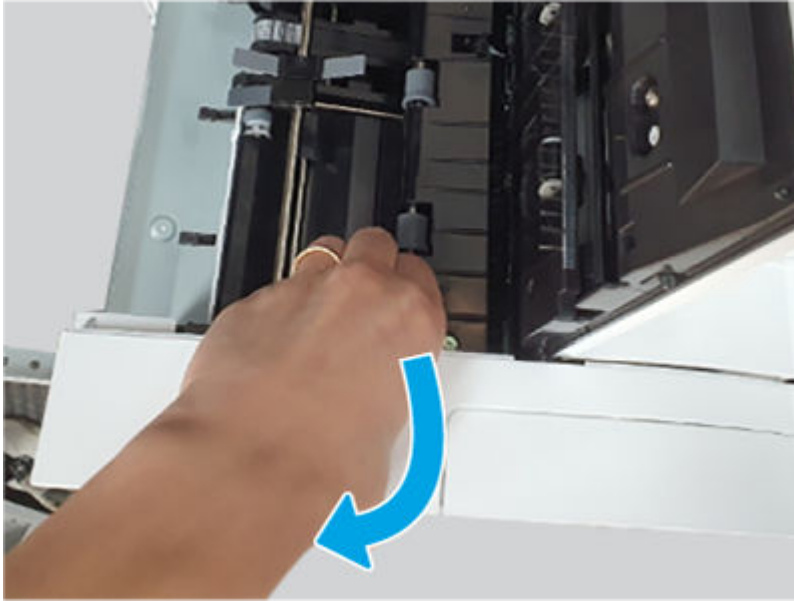
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3418 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3419 Remove the cover

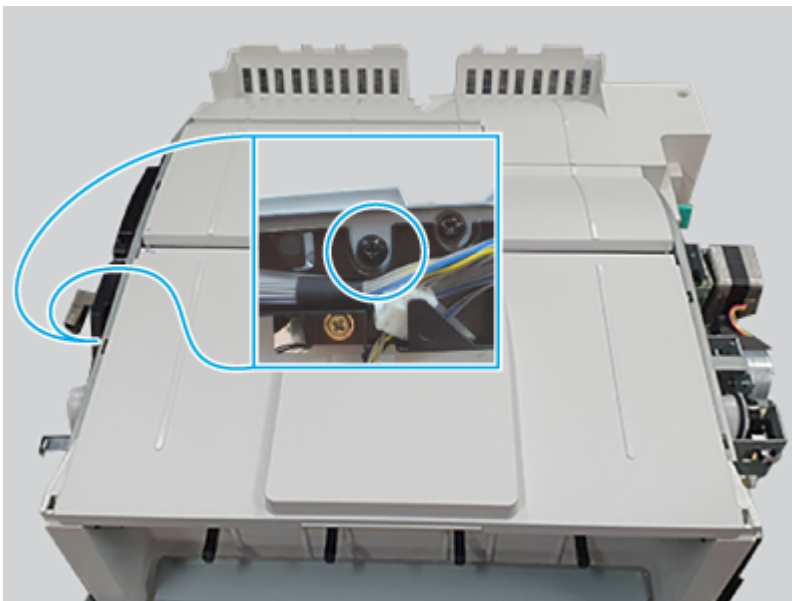


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3420 Remove the cover

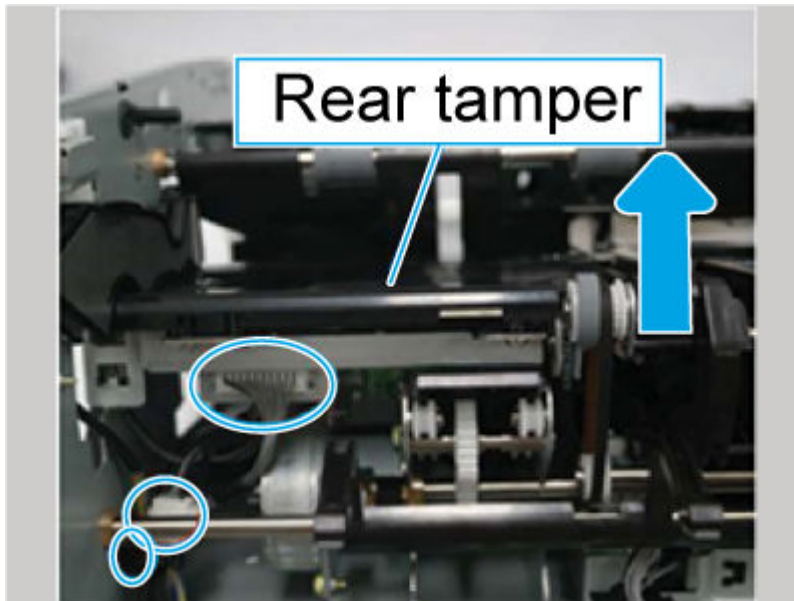


5 Remove the inner finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front tamper.

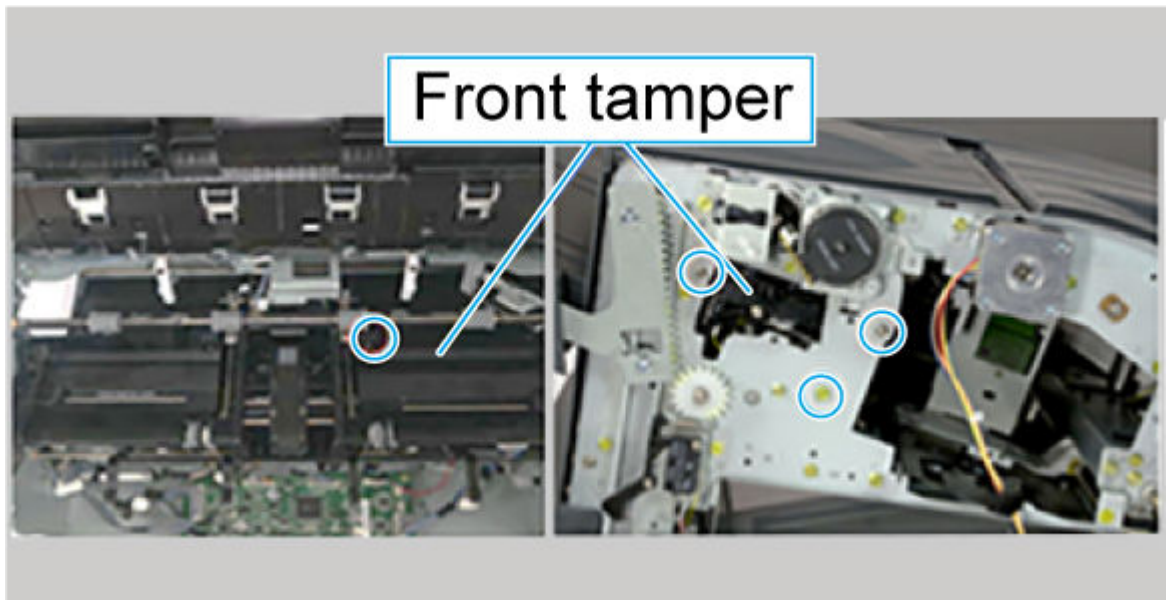
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then release two hooks.

Figure 6-3421 Disconnect connectors and release hooks



2. Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher front tamper.

Figure 6-3422 Remove the tamper



6 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front tamper motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-407 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Front tamper motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

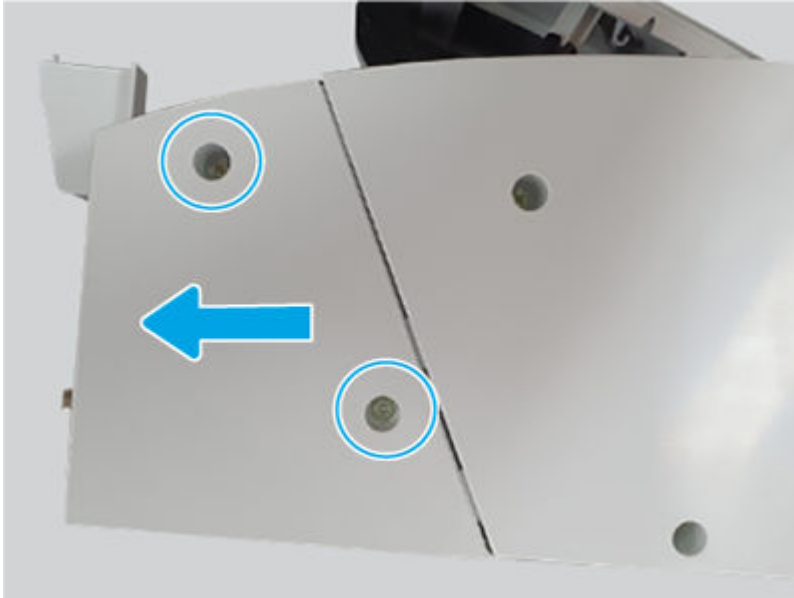
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3423 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

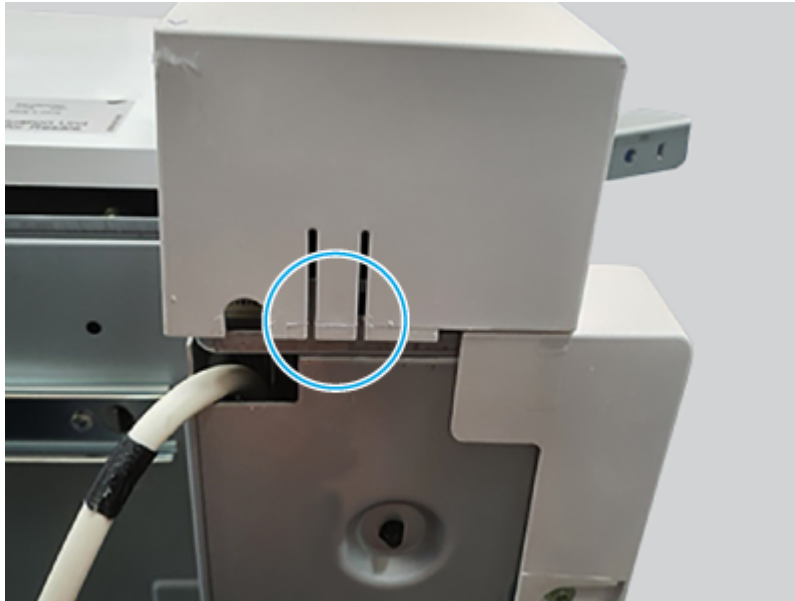
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3424 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3425 Remove the cover

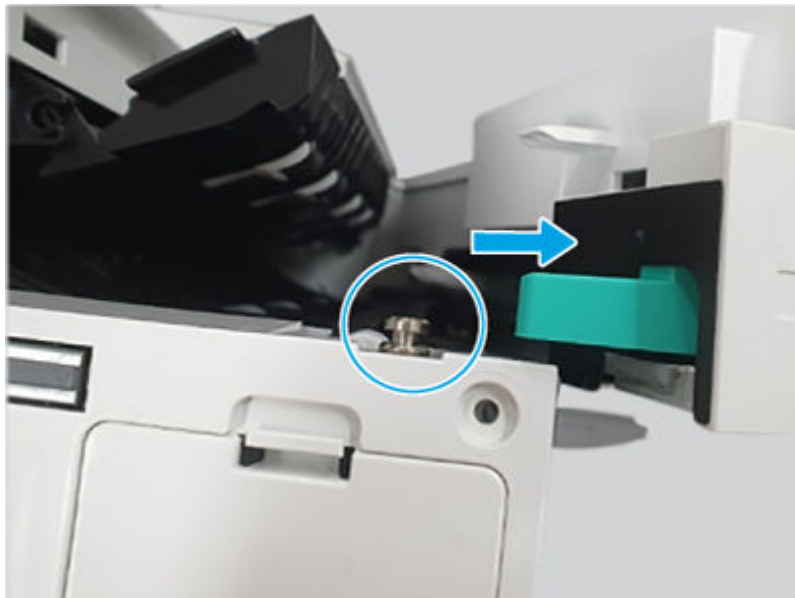


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3426 Open the punch cover



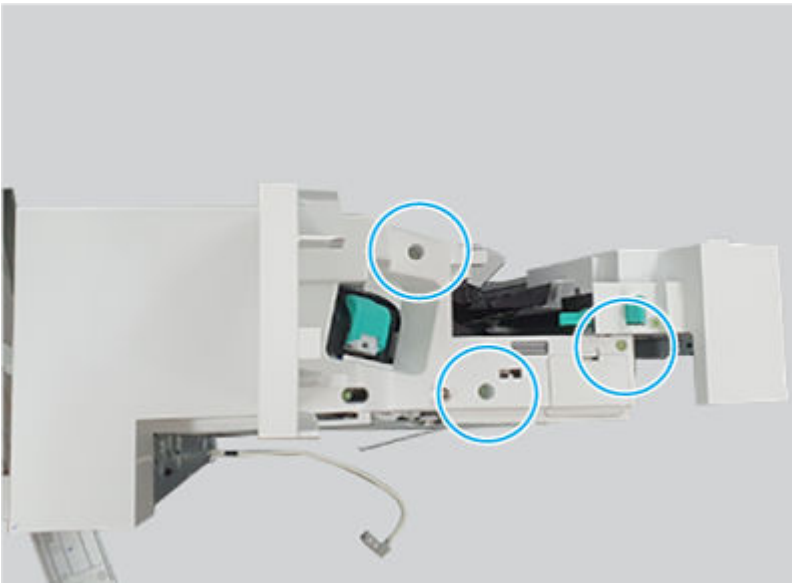
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3427 Remove the handle



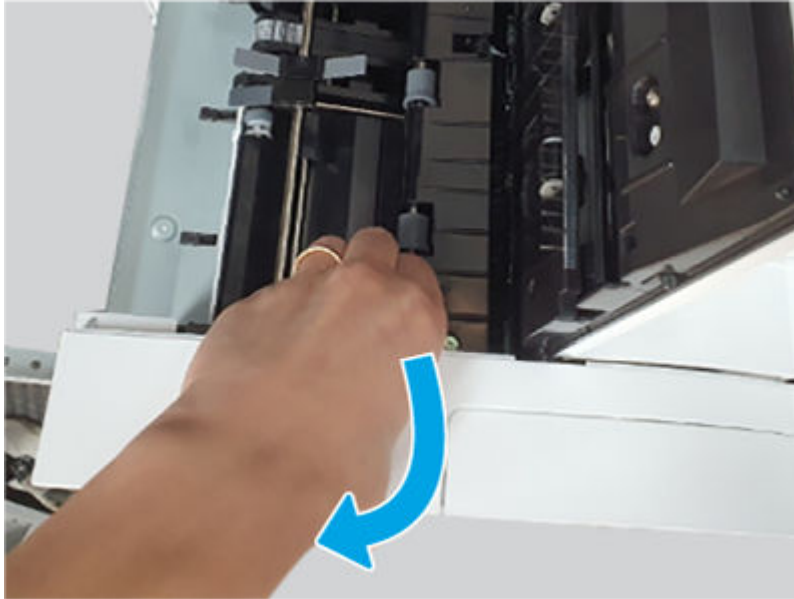
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3428 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3429 Remove the cover

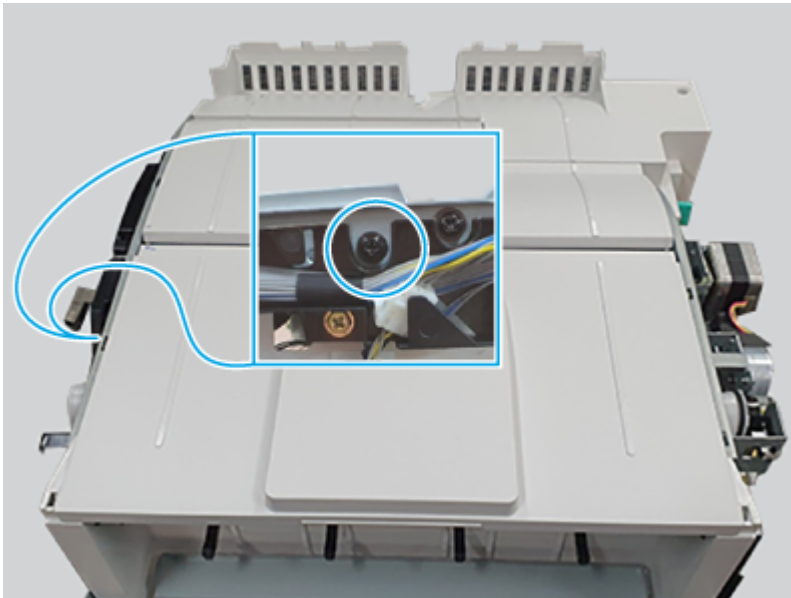


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3430 Remove the cover

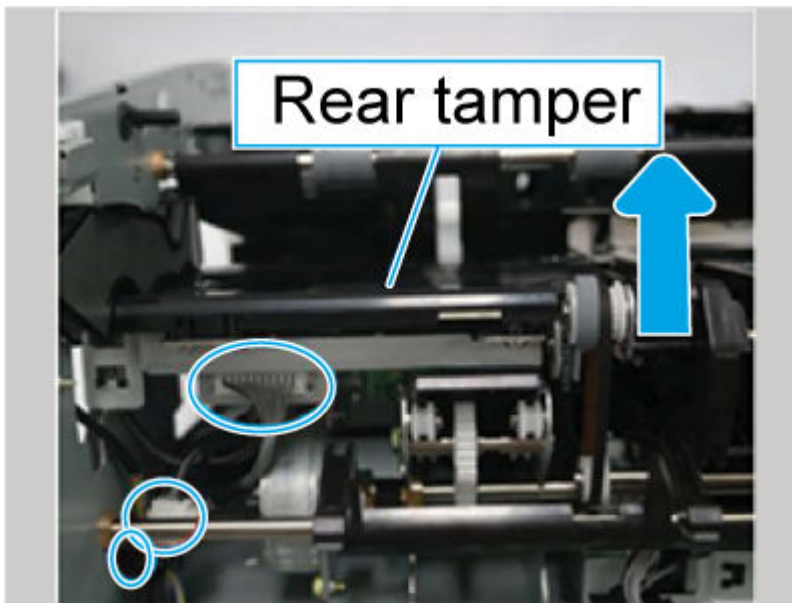


5 Remove the inner finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front tamper.

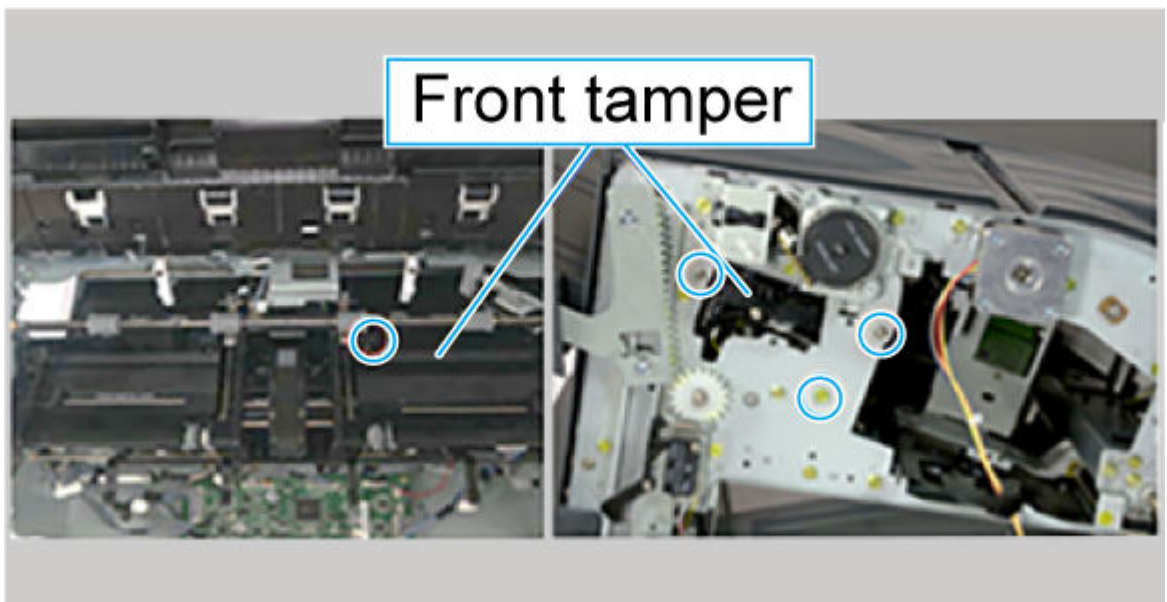
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then release two hooks.

Figure 6-3431 Disconnect connectors and release hooks



2. Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher front tamper.

Figure 6-3432 Remove the tamper

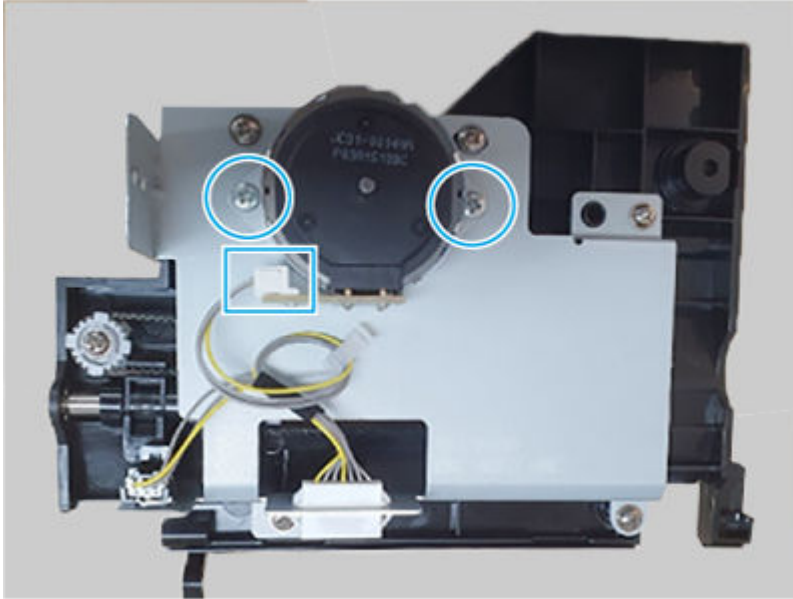


6 Remove the inner finisher front tamper motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front tamper motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher front tamper motor.


Figure 6-3433 Remove the motor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front tamper home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-408 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Front tamper home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

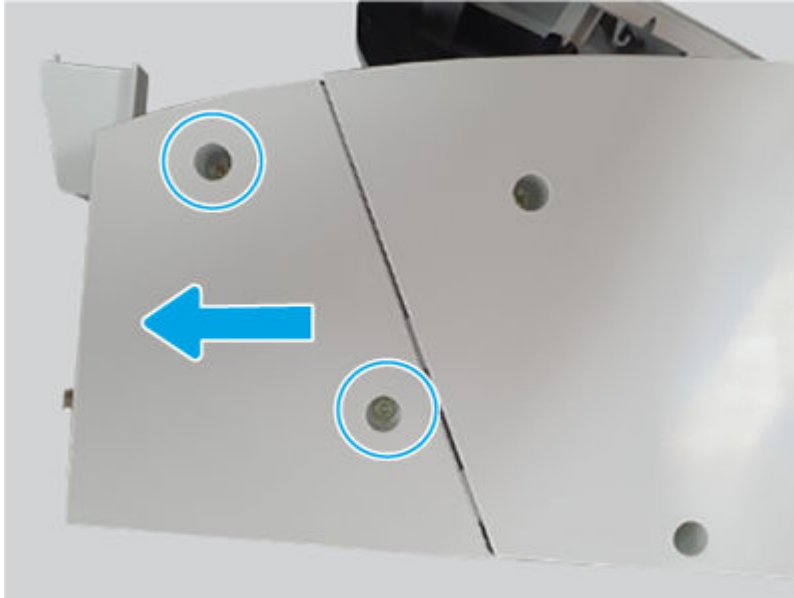
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3434 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

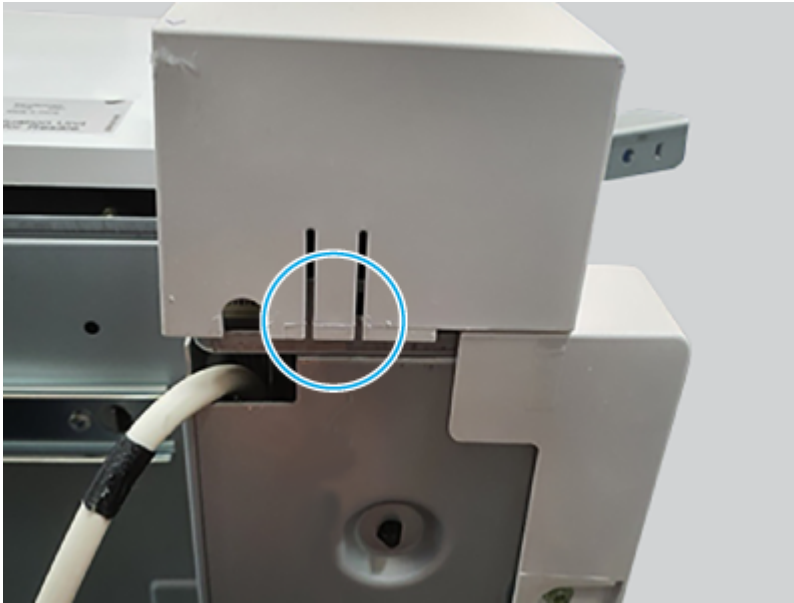
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3435 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3436 Remove the cover

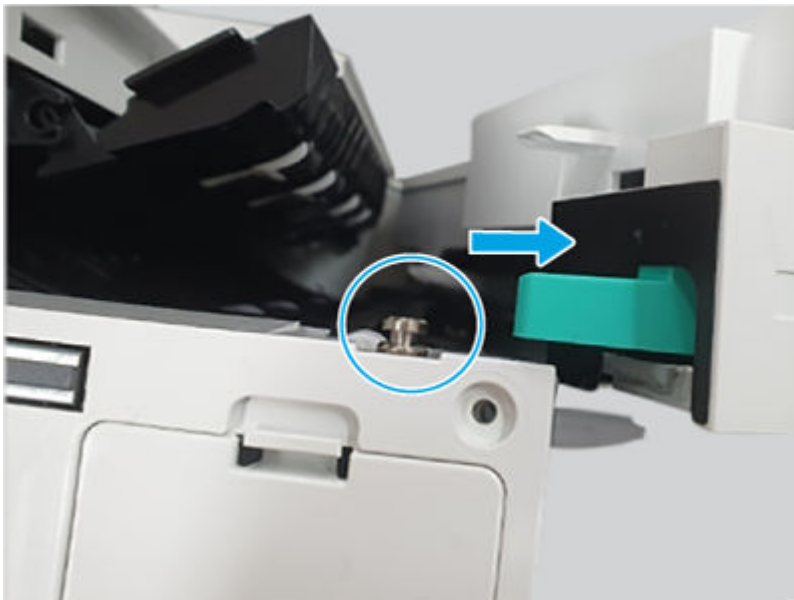


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3437 Open the punch cover



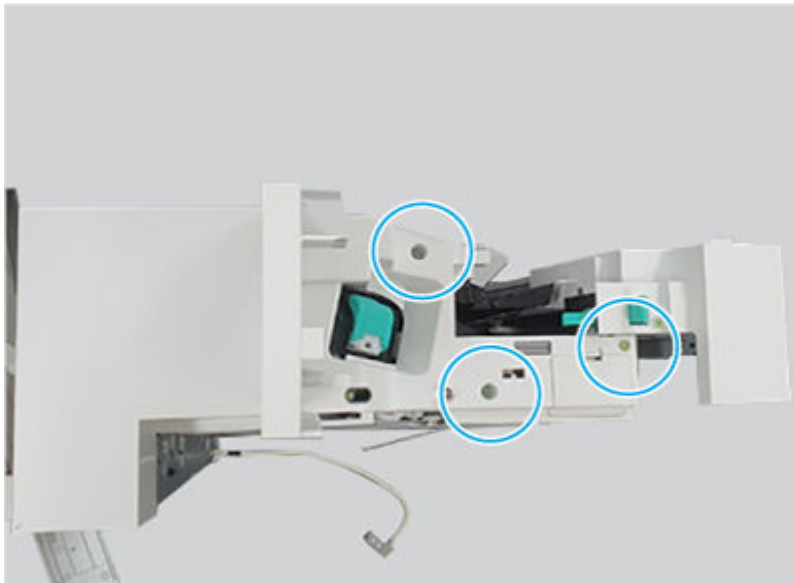
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3438 Remove the handle



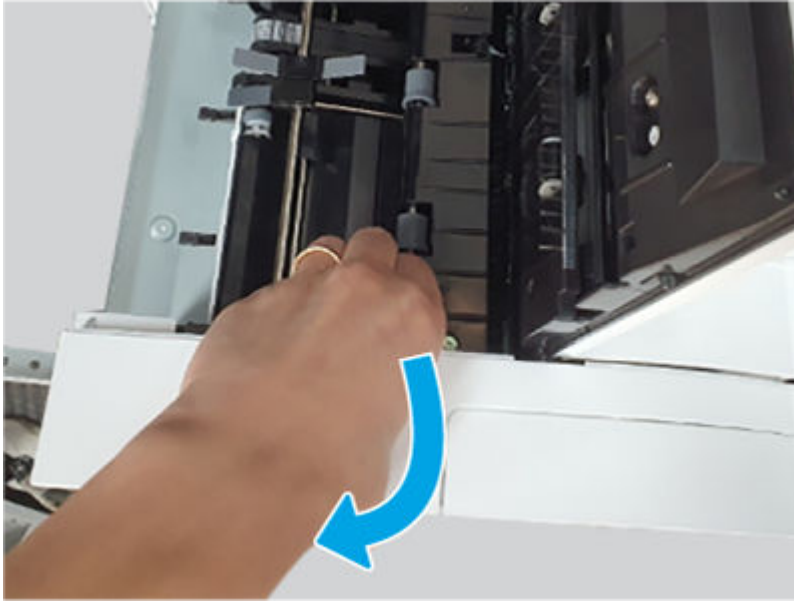
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3439 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3440 Remove the cover

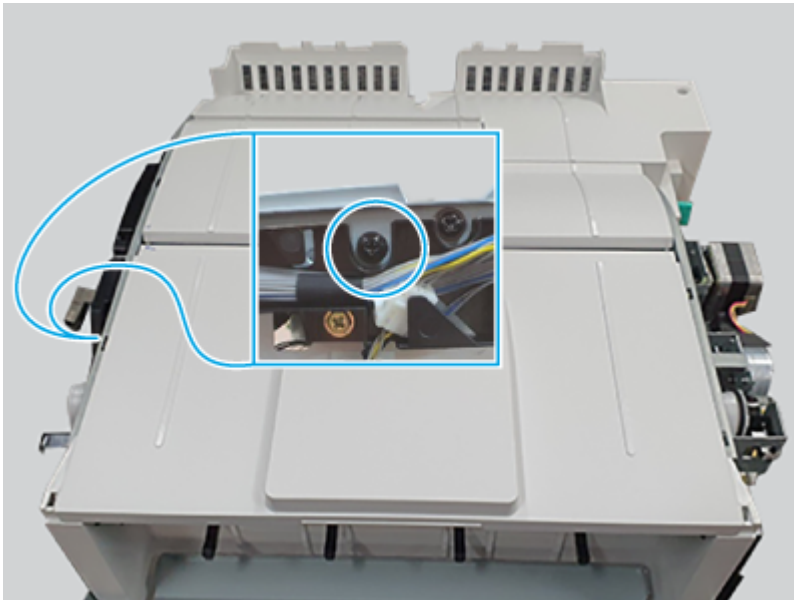


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3441 Remove the cover

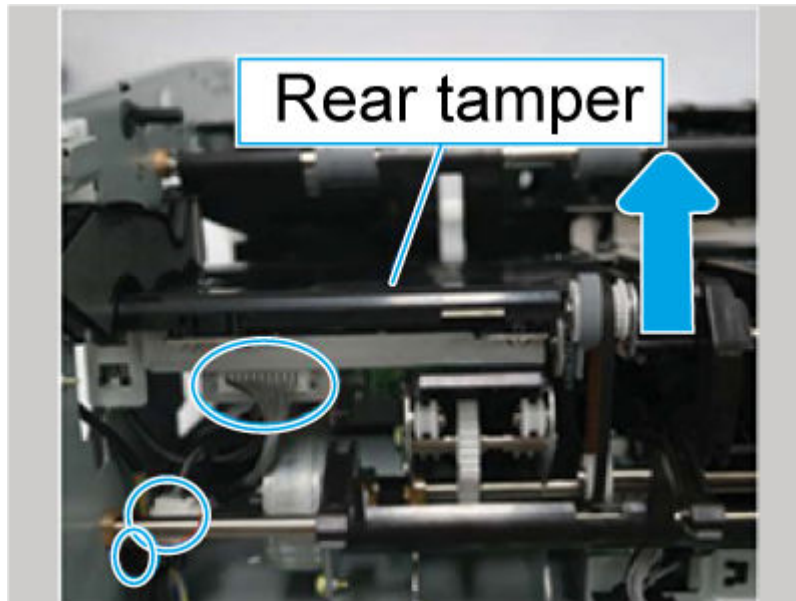


5 Remove the inner finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front tamper.

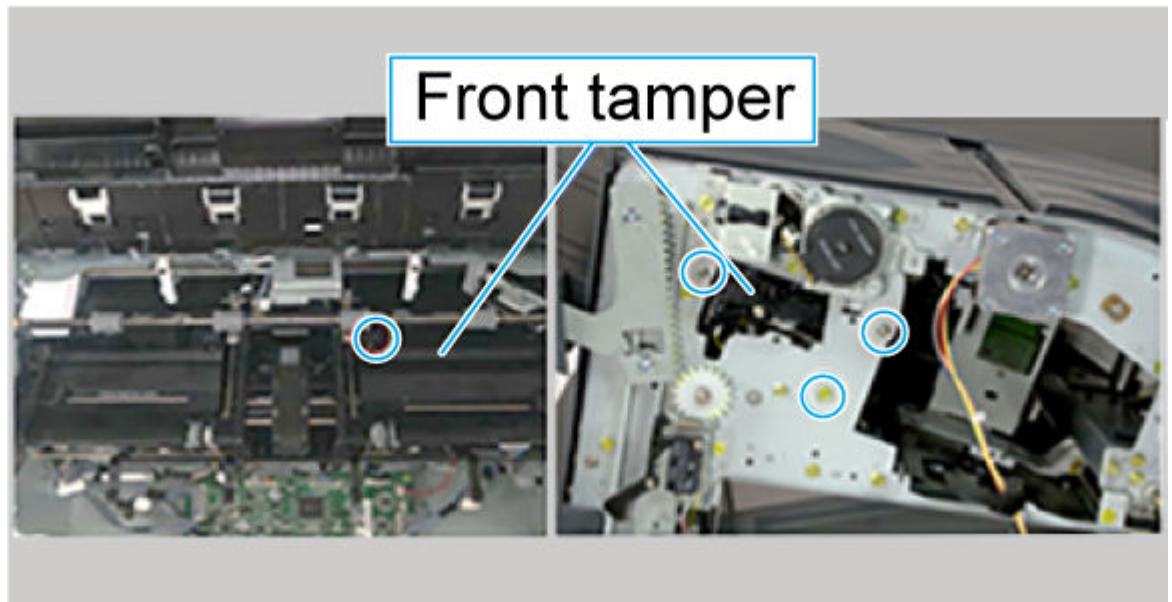
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then release two hooks.

Figure 6-3442 Disconnect connectors and release hooks



2. Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher front tamper.

Figure 6-3443 Remove the tamper

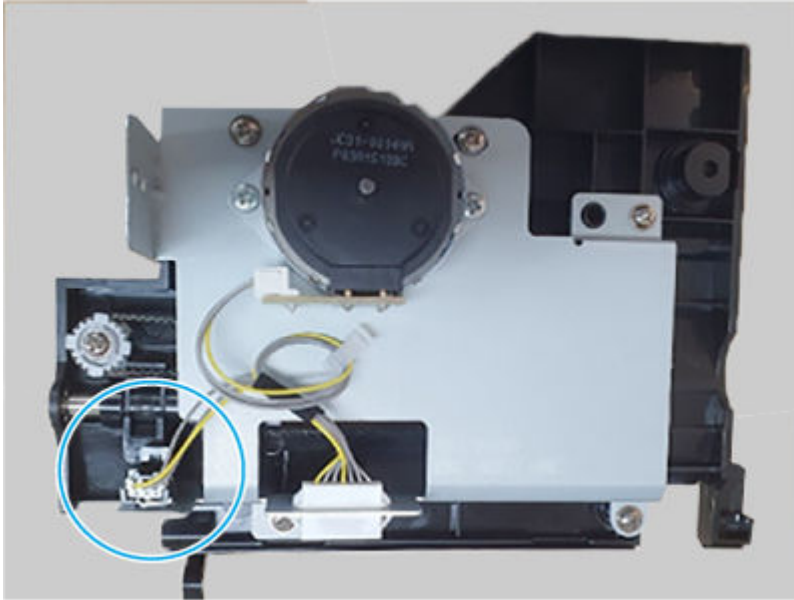


6 Remove the inner finisher front tamper home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front tamper home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the inner finisher front tamper home sensor.


Figure 6-3444 Remove the sensor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear tamper.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-409 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00900A	Rear tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

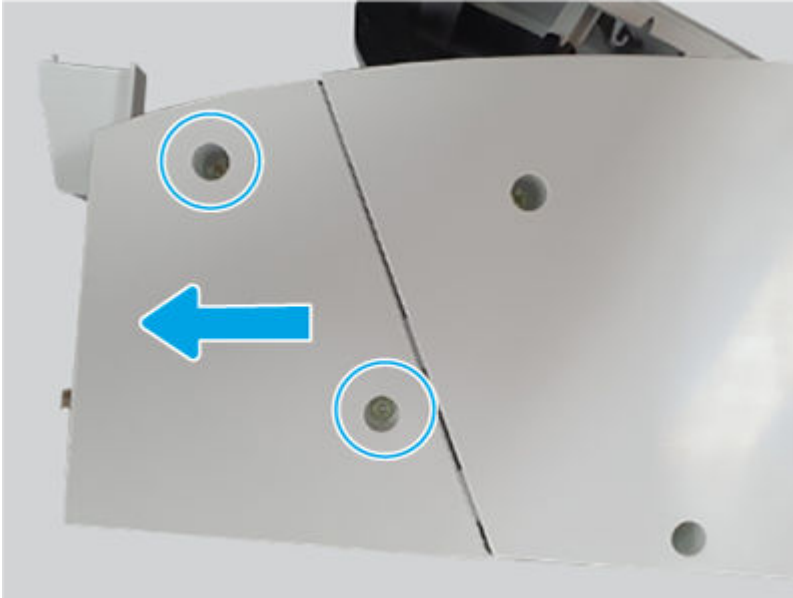
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3445 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

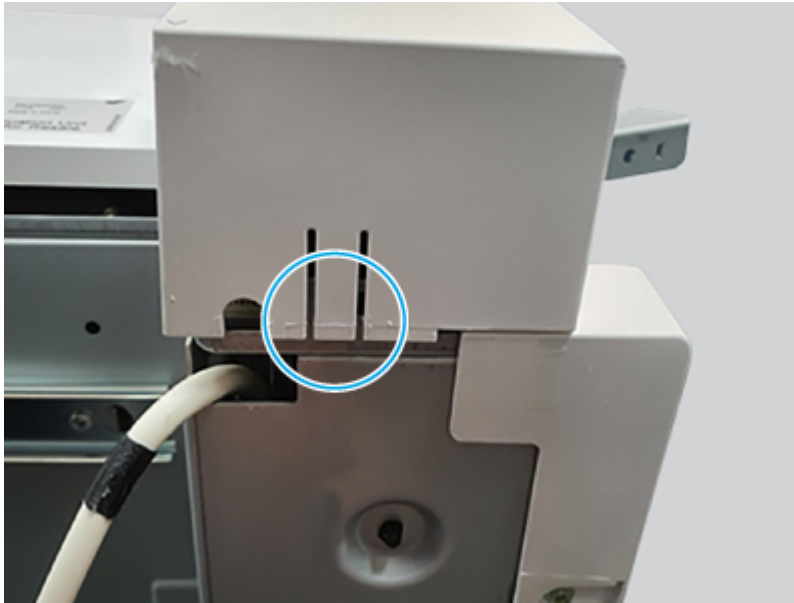
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3446 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3447 Remove the cover

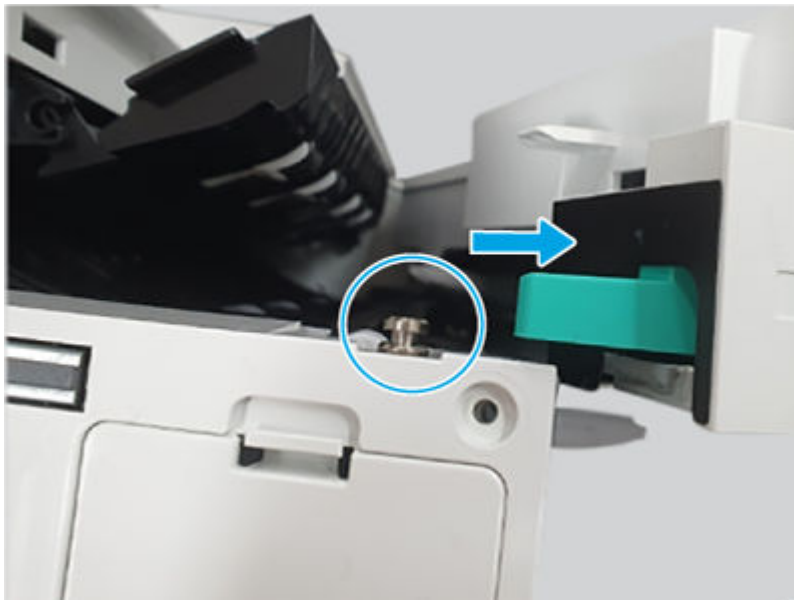


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3448 Open the punch cover



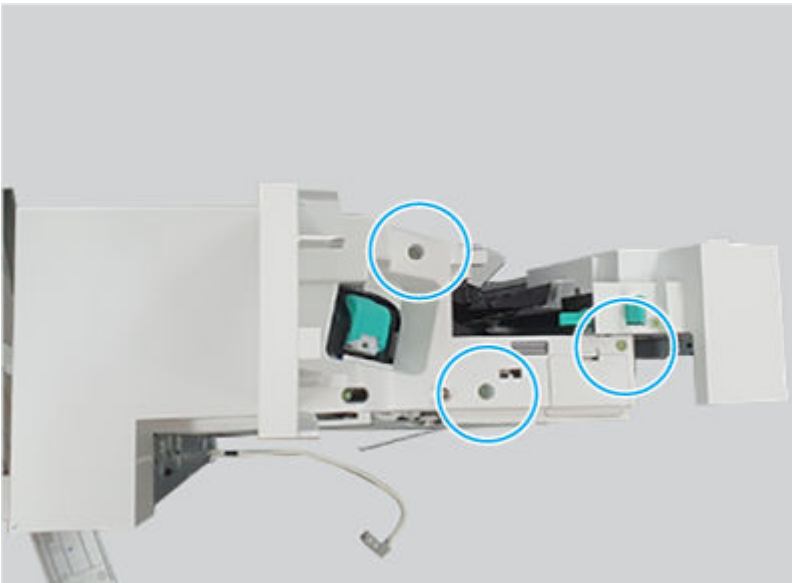
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3449 Remove the handle



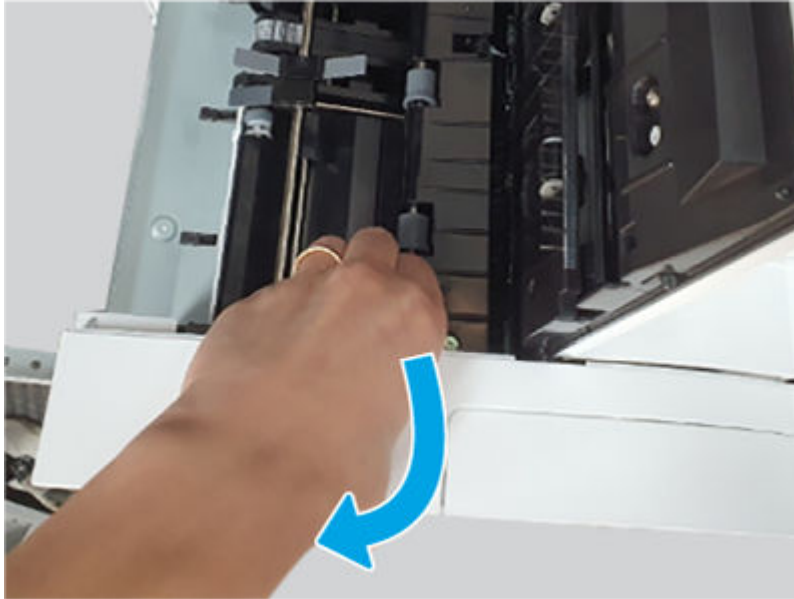
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3450 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3451 Remove the cover

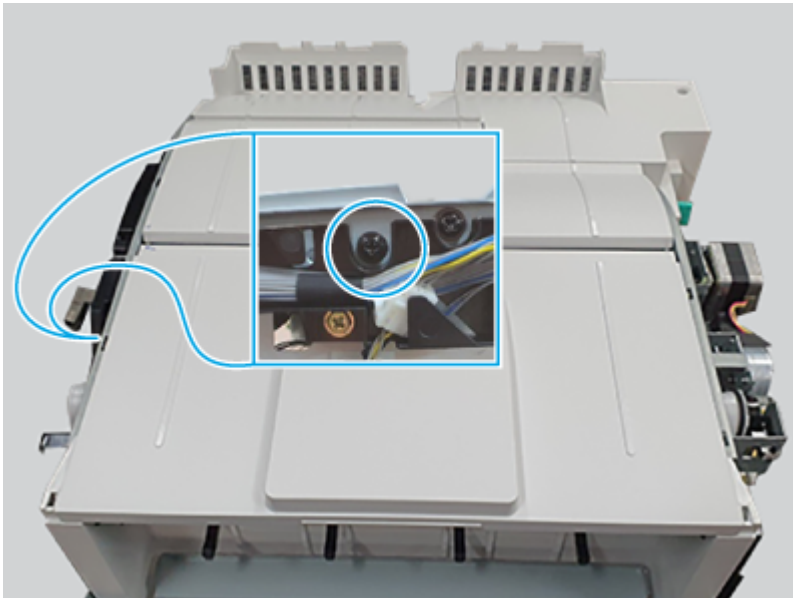


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3452 Remove the cover

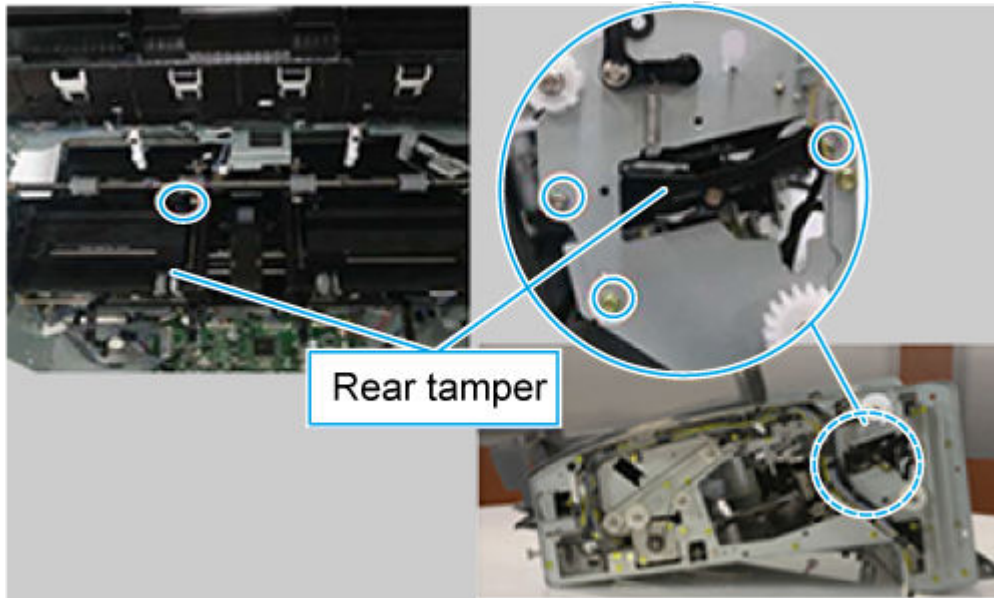


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.


Figure 6-3453 Remove the tamper



6 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear tamper motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-410 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Rear tamper motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

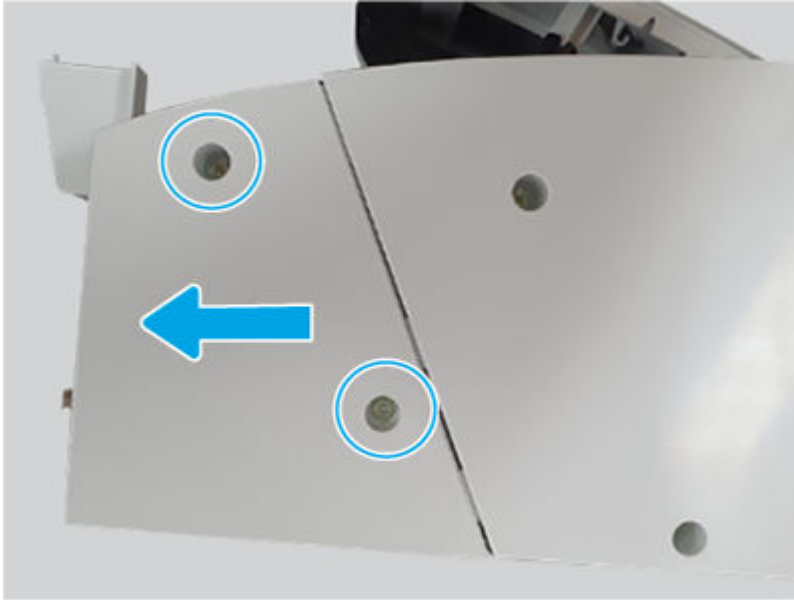
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3454 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

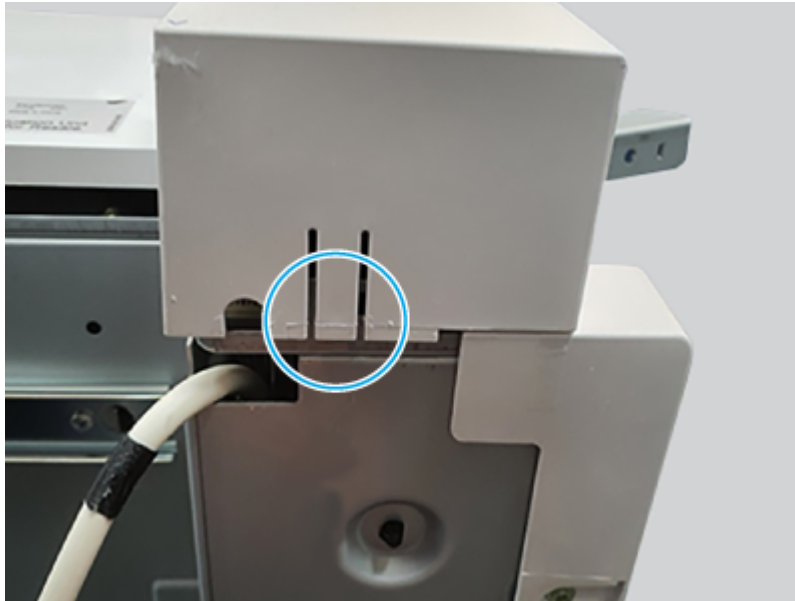
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3455 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3456 Remove the cover

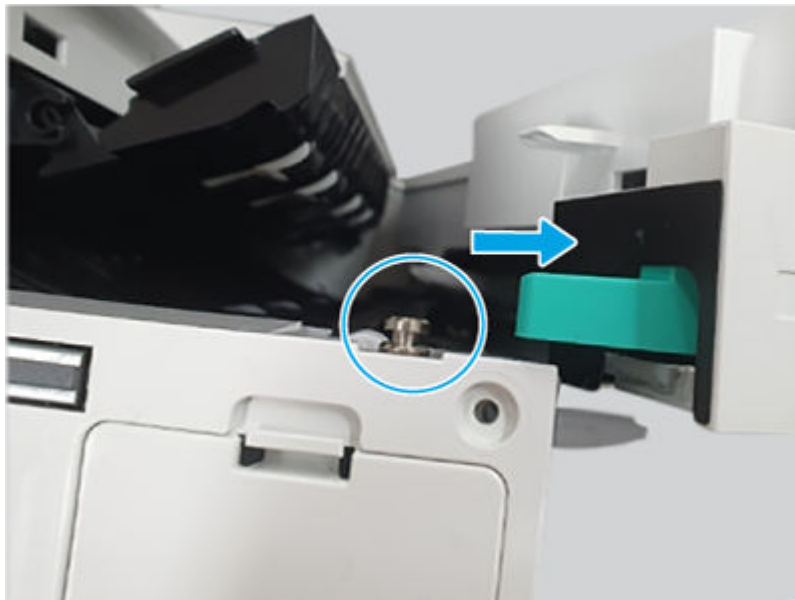


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3457 Open the punch cover



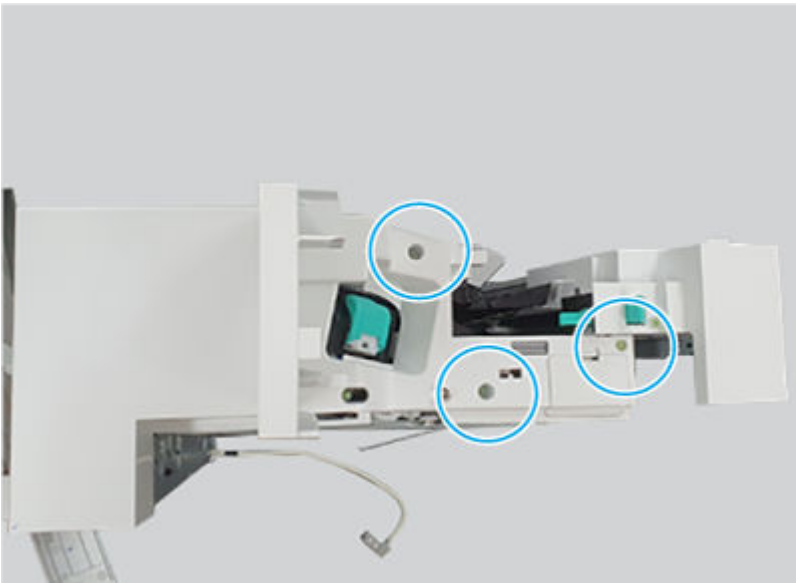
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3458 Remove the handle



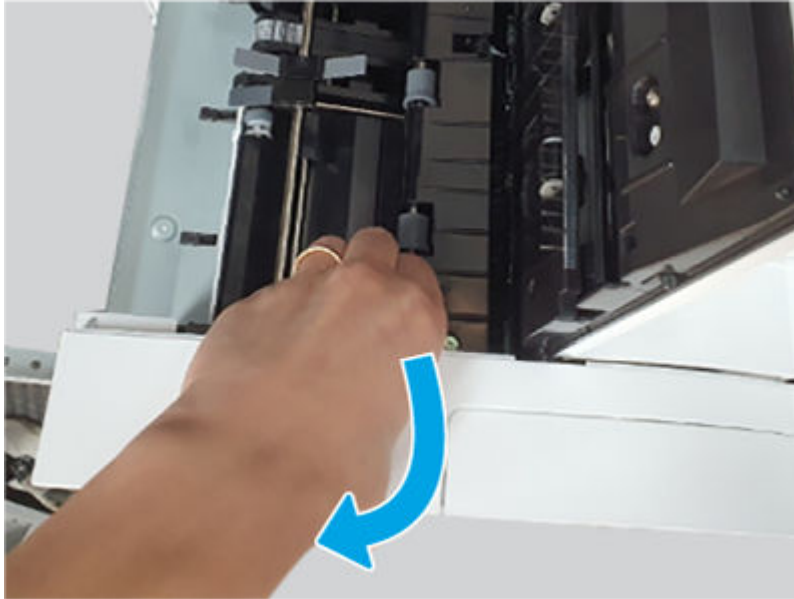
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3459 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3460 Remove the cover

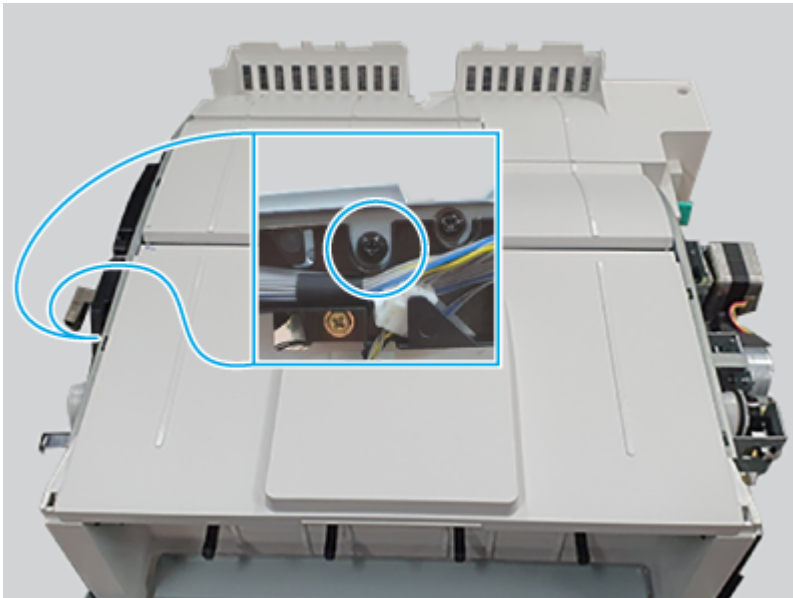


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3461 Remove the cover

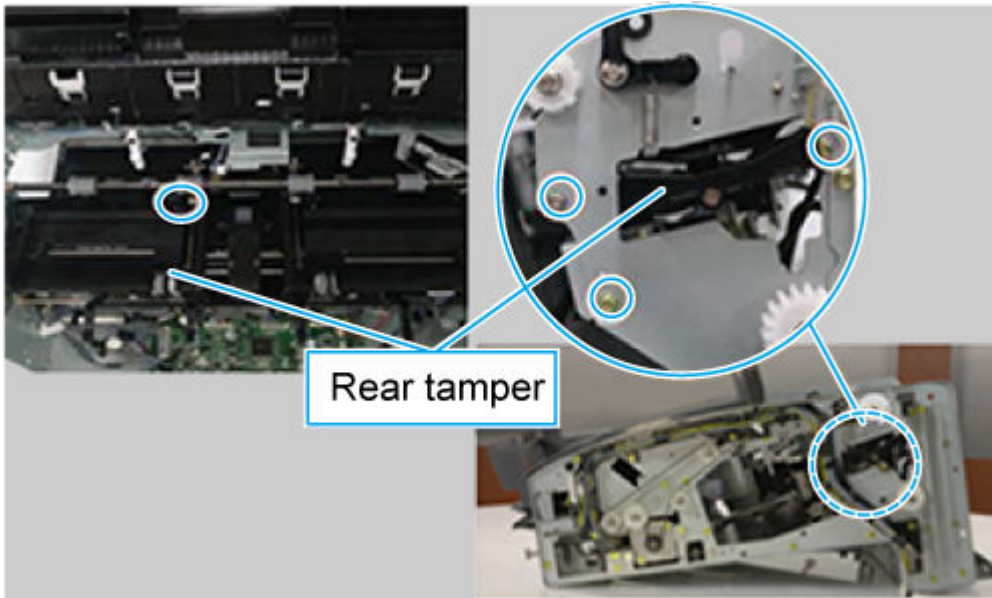


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3462 Remove the tamper

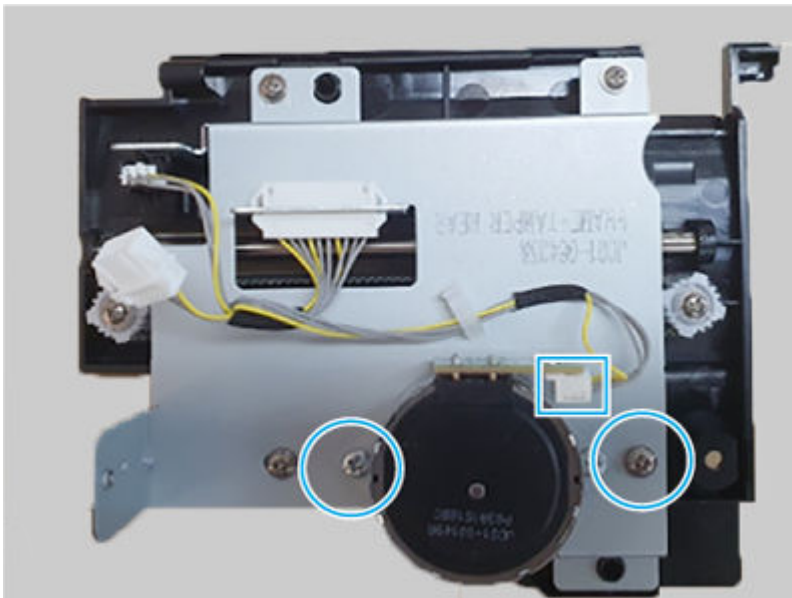


6 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper motor.

Figure 6-3463 Remove the motor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear tamper home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-411 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Rear tamper home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

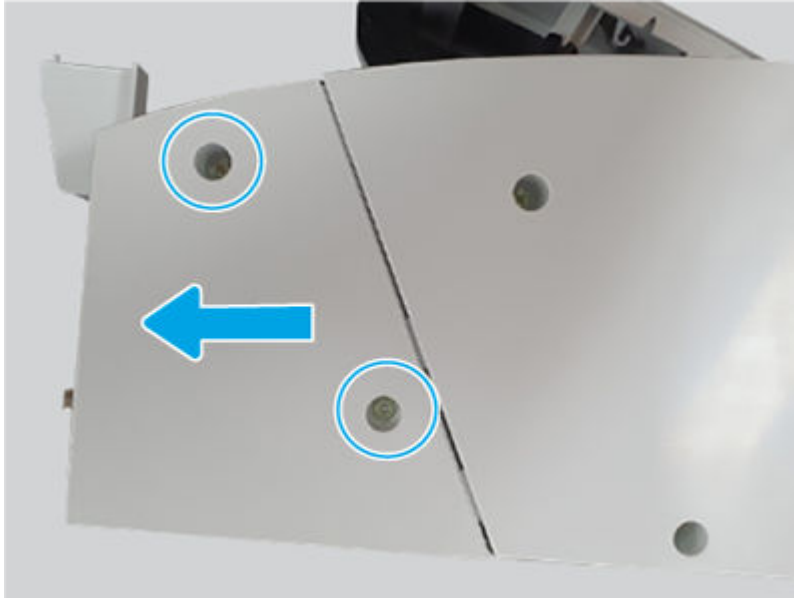
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3464 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

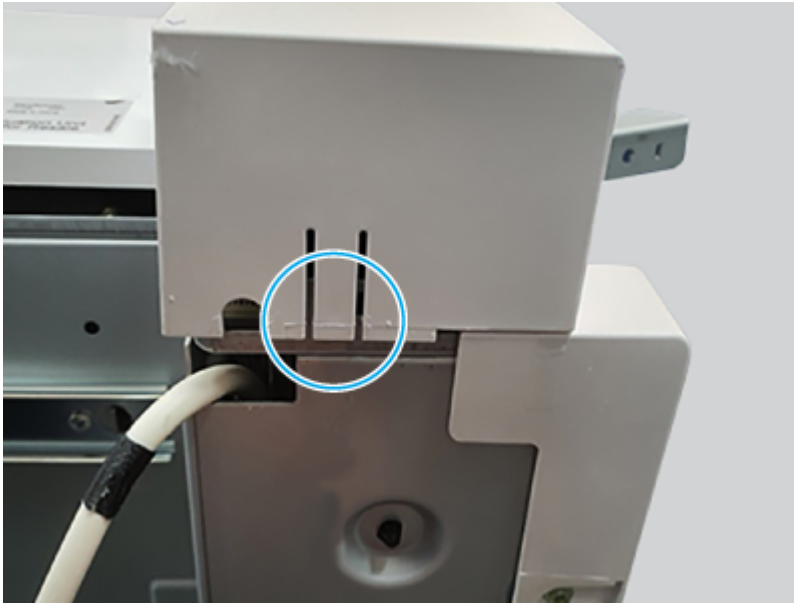
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3465 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3466 Remove the cover

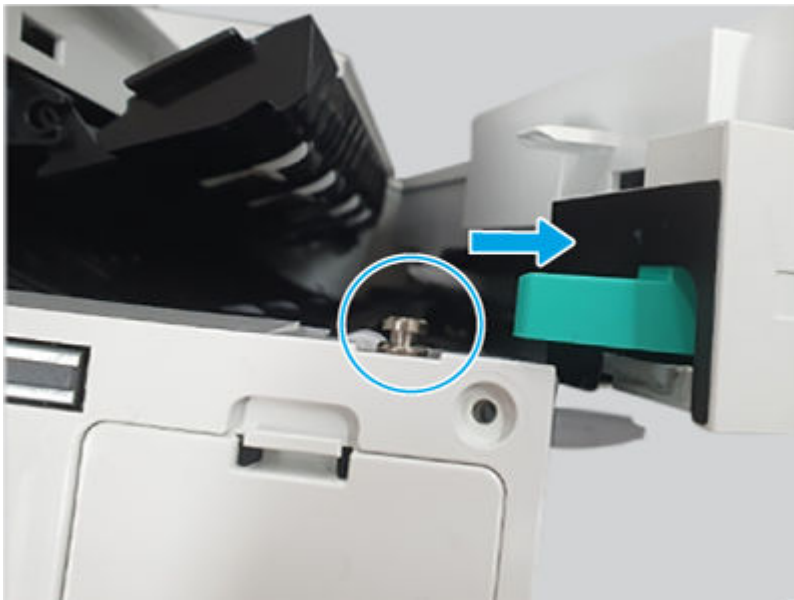


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3467 Open the punch cover



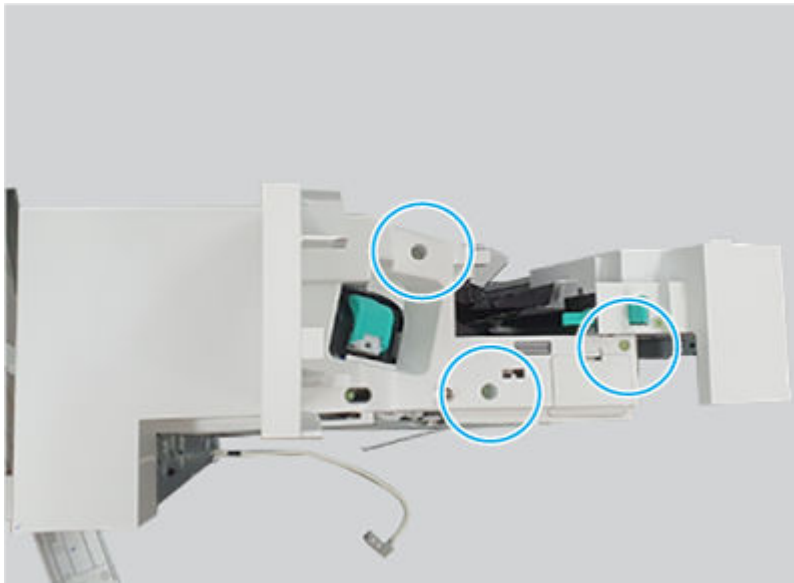
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3468 Remove the handle



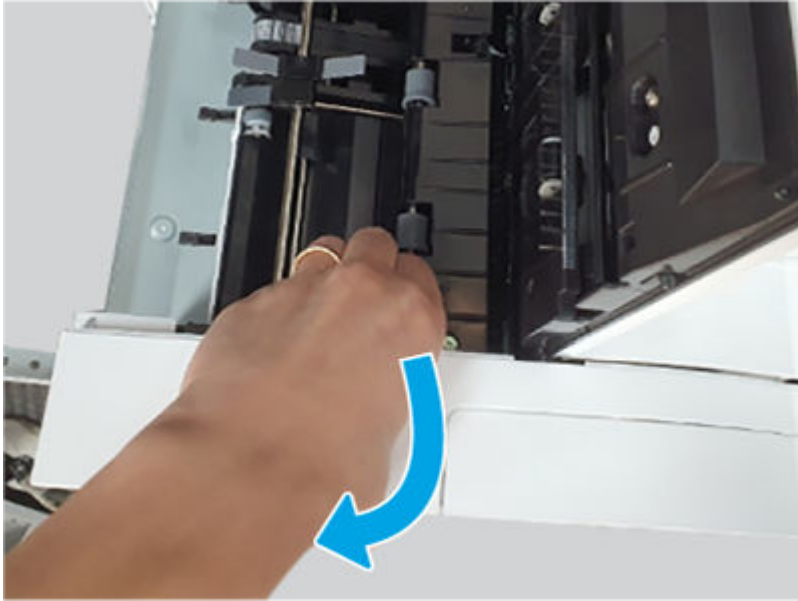
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3469 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3470 Remove the cover

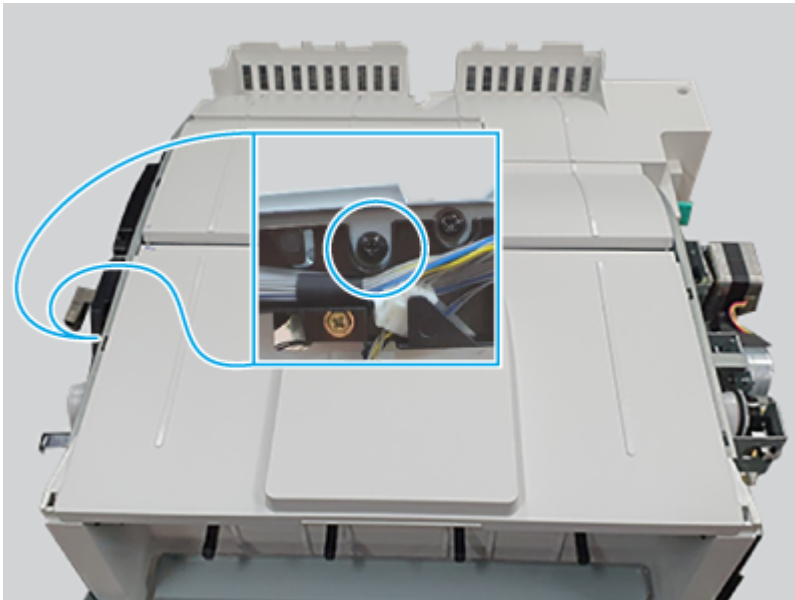


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3471 Remove the cover

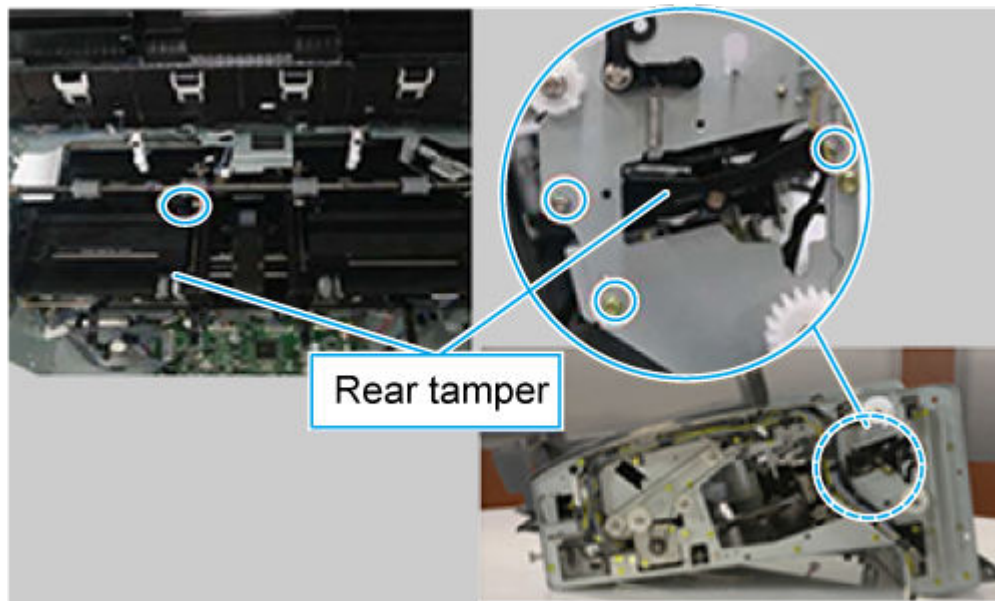


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3472 Remove the tamper

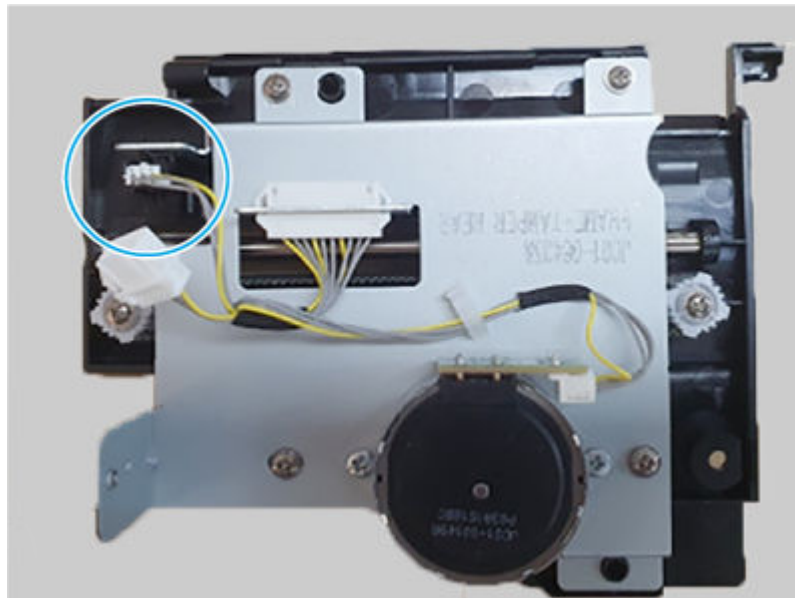


6 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper home sensor.


Figure 6-3473 Remove the sensor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler unit

Review the inner finisher stapler unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Stapler assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher stapler assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-412 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW49-60003	Stapler assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

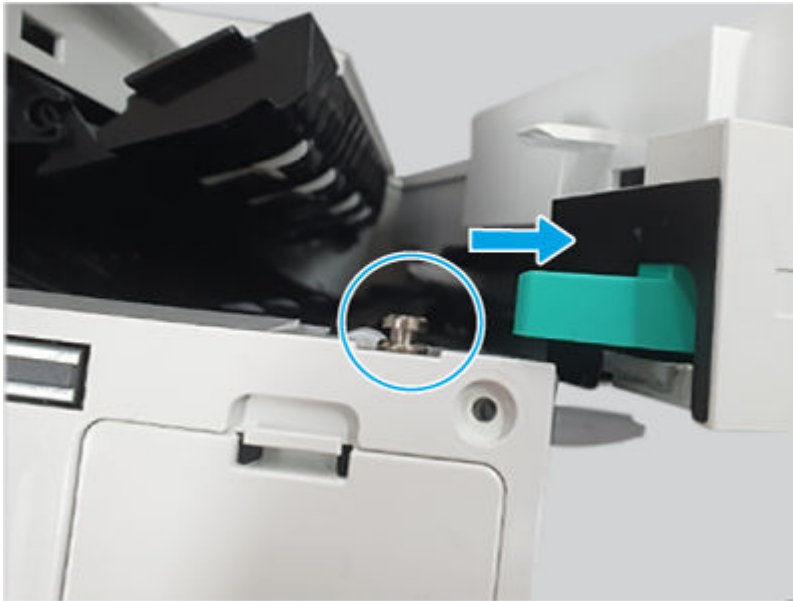
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3474 Open the punch cover



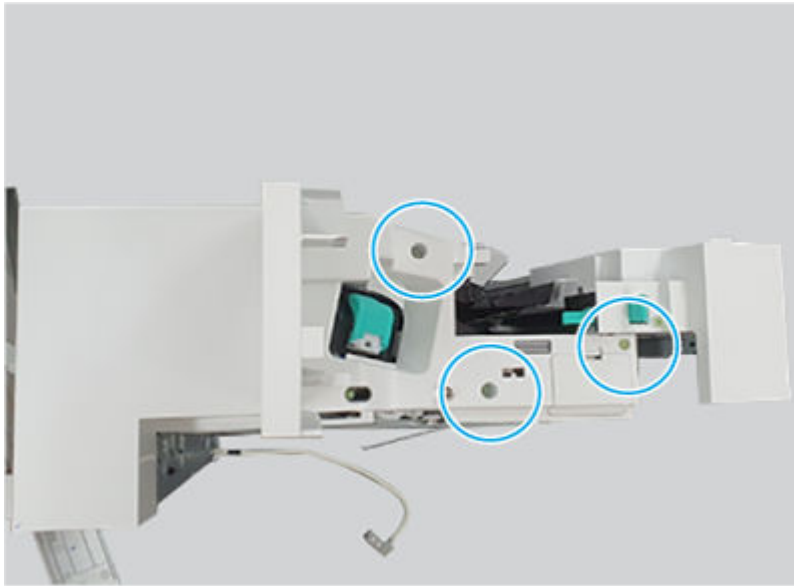
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3475 Remove the handle



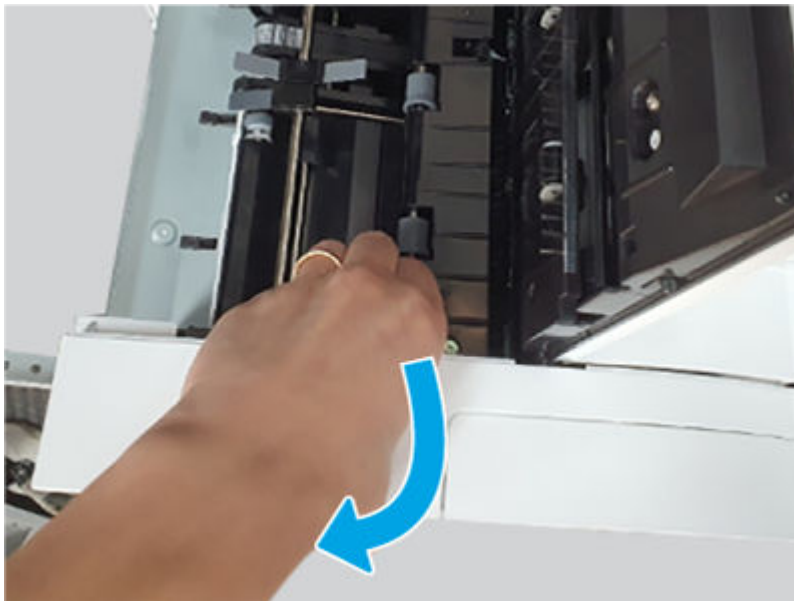
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3476 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3477 Remove the cover

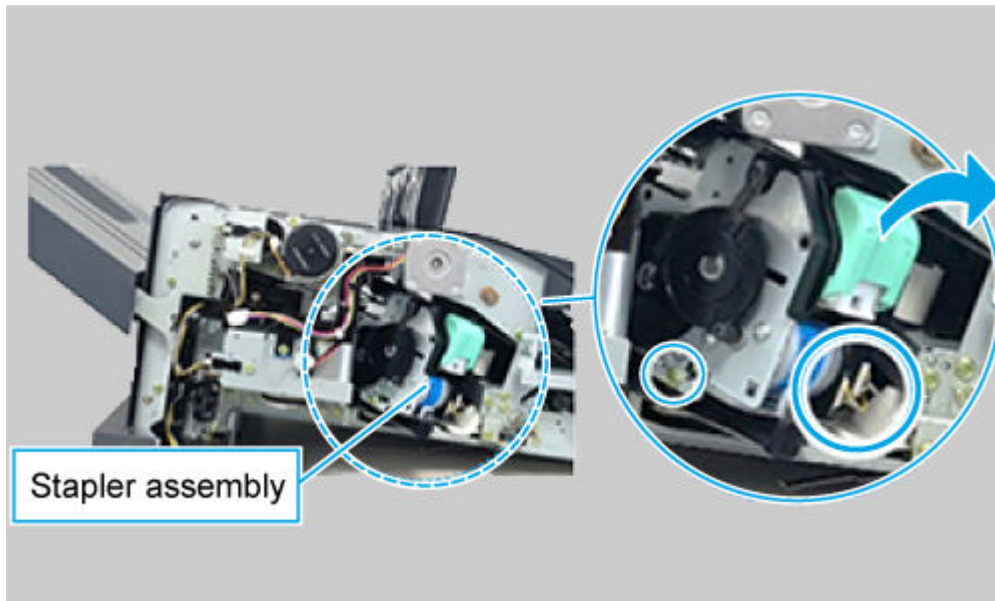


2 Remove the inner finisher stapler assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher stapler assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher stapler assembly.


Figure 6-3478 Remove the assembly



3 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Staple cartridge

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher staple cartridge.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-413 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW49-40001	Staple cartridge

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

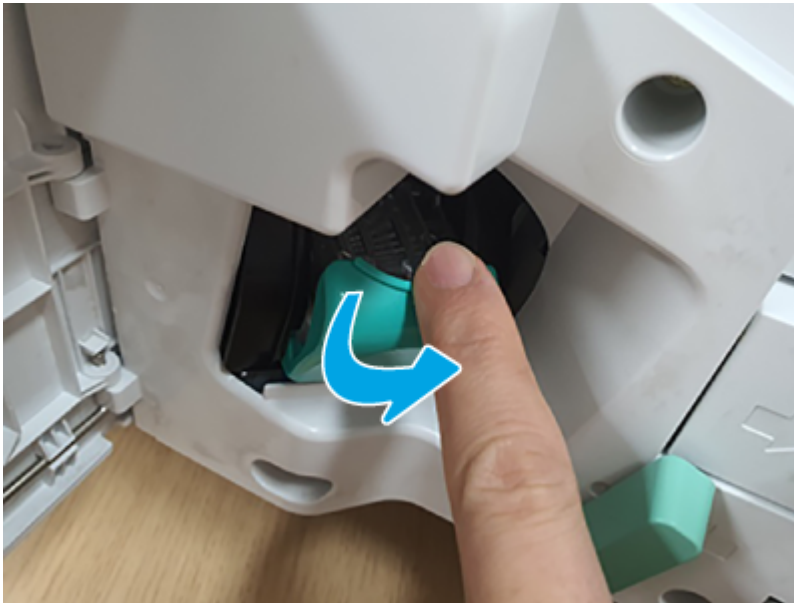
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher staple cartridge

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher staple cartridge.

- Open the front cover, and then pull the inner finisher staple cartridge out to remove it.


Figure 6-3479 Remove the cartridge



2 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler position sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher stapler position sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher form the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-414 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler position sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

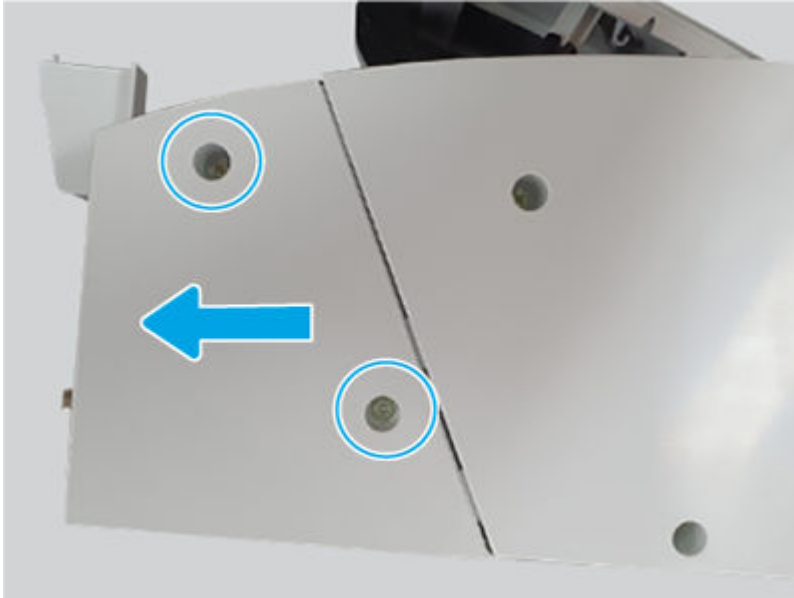
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3480 Remove the cover

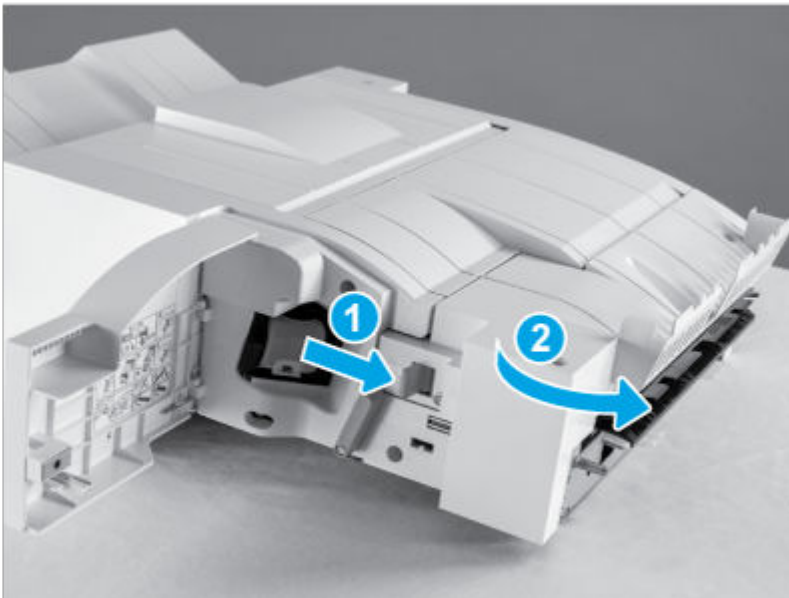


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

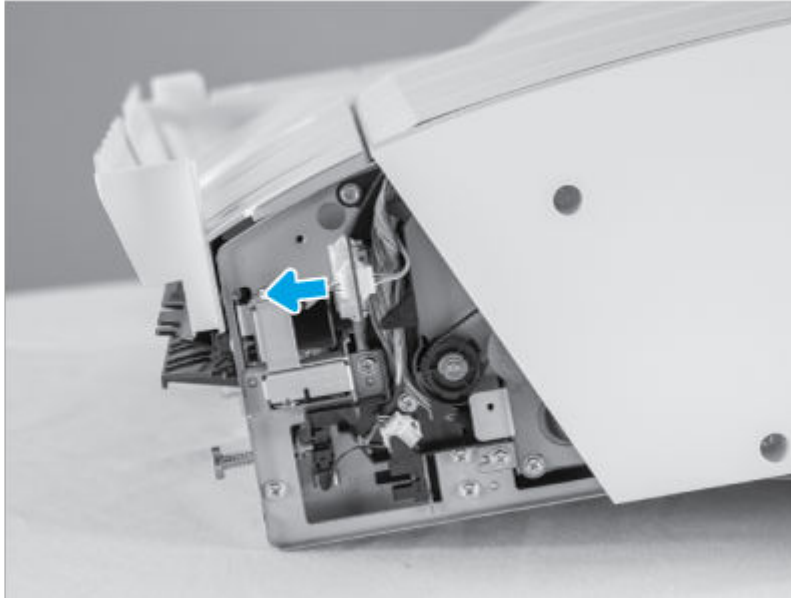
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3481 Rotate the punch



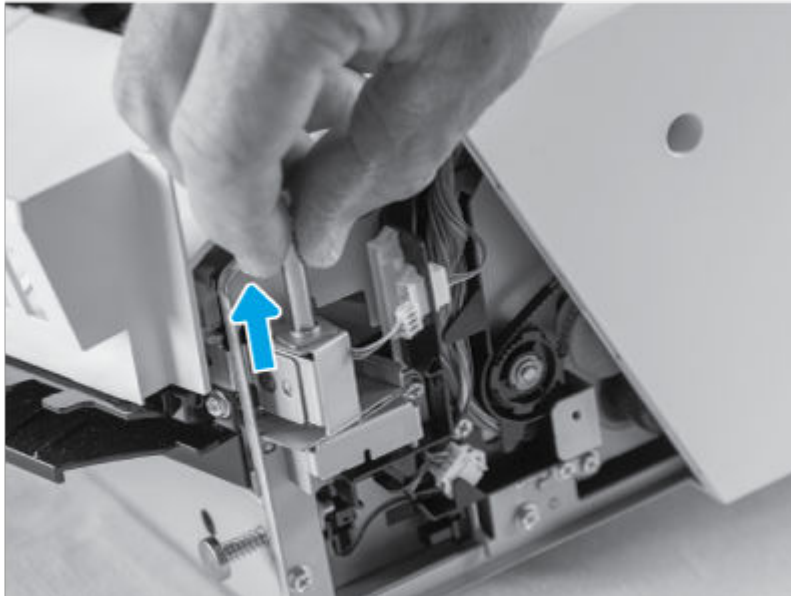
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3482 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3483 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

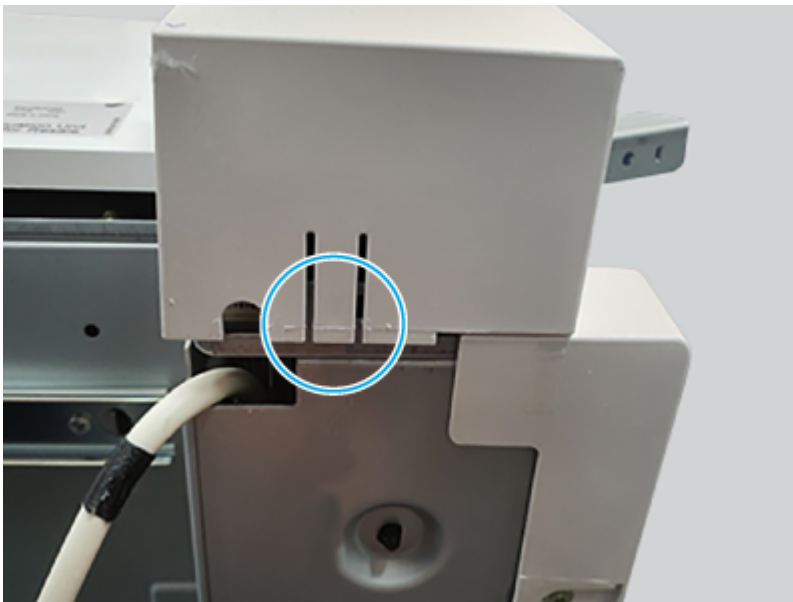
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3484 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3485 Remove the cover



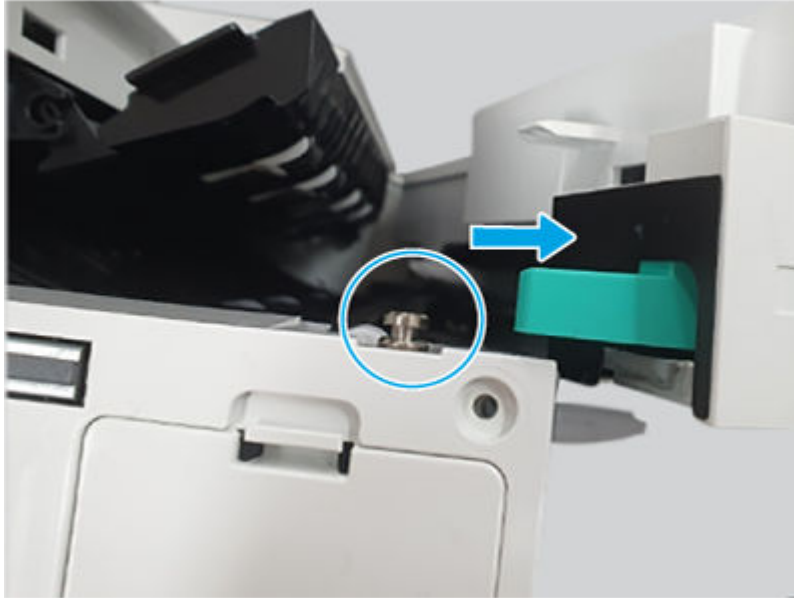
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3486 Open the punch cover



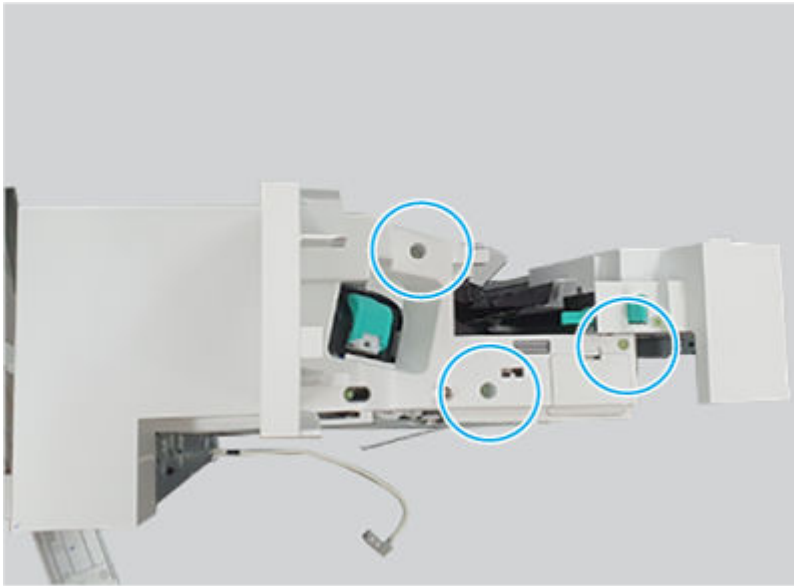
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3487 Remove the handle



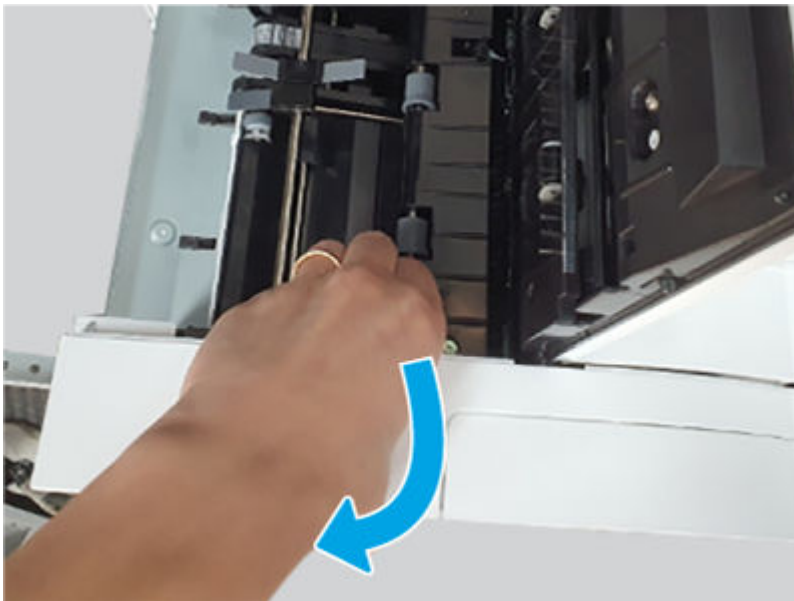
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3488 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3489 Remove the cover

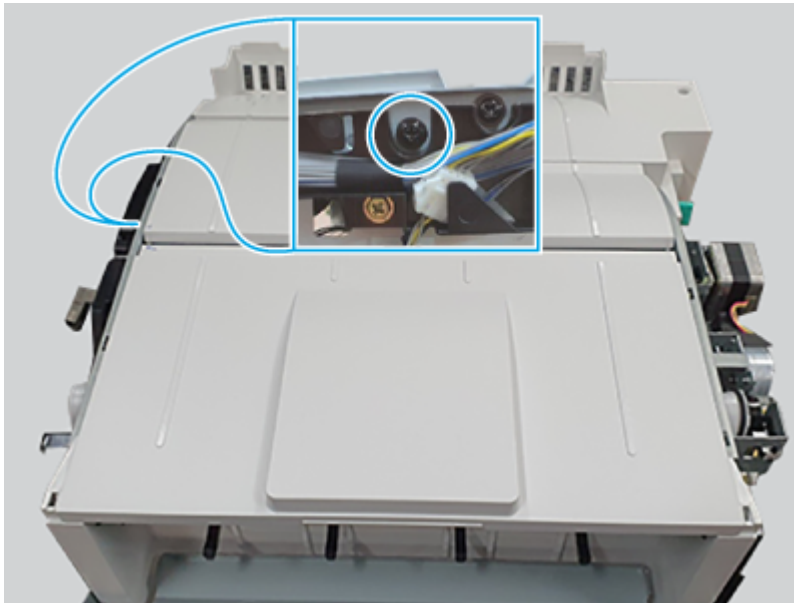


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3490 Remove the cover

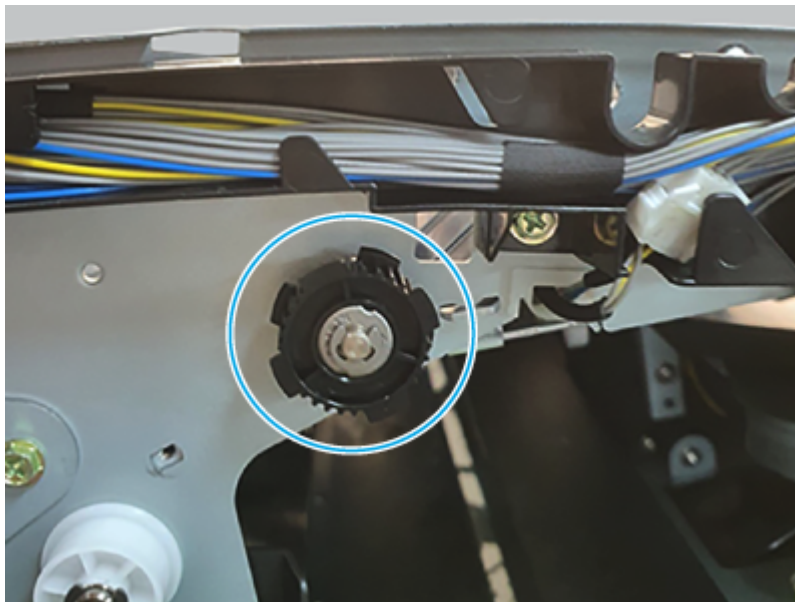


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3491 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



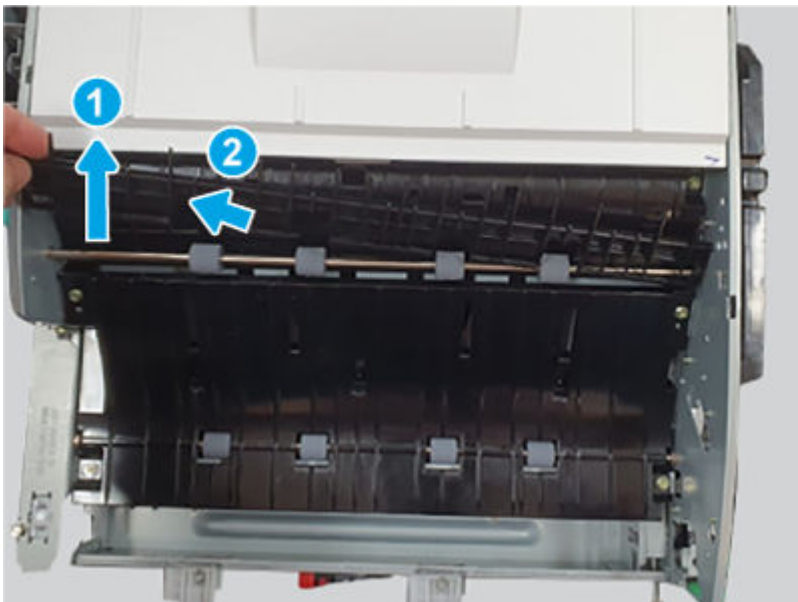
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3492 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3493 Remove the roller

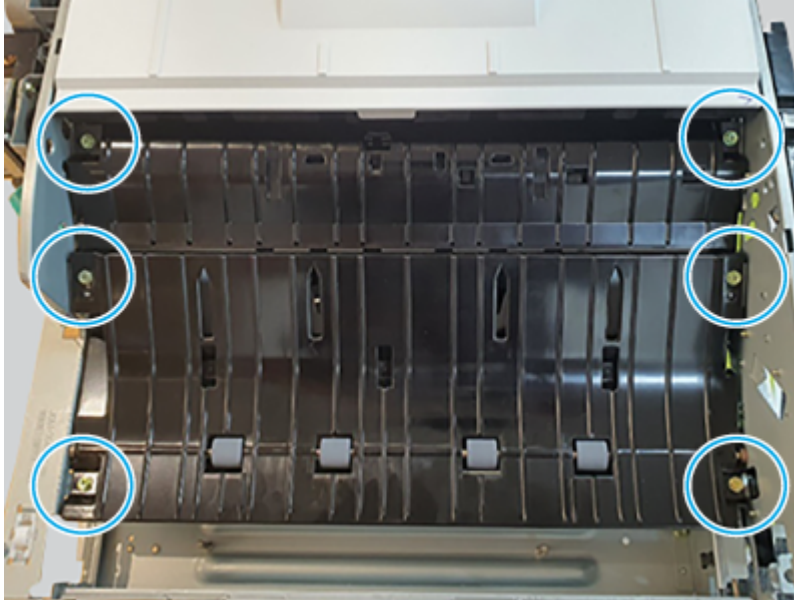


7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3494 Remove the guide

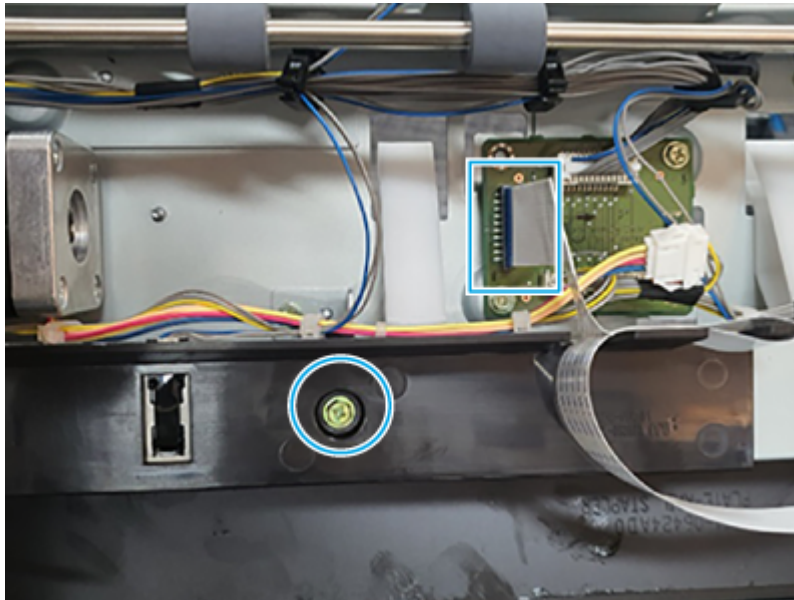


8 Remove the inner finisher stapler position sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher stapler position sensor.

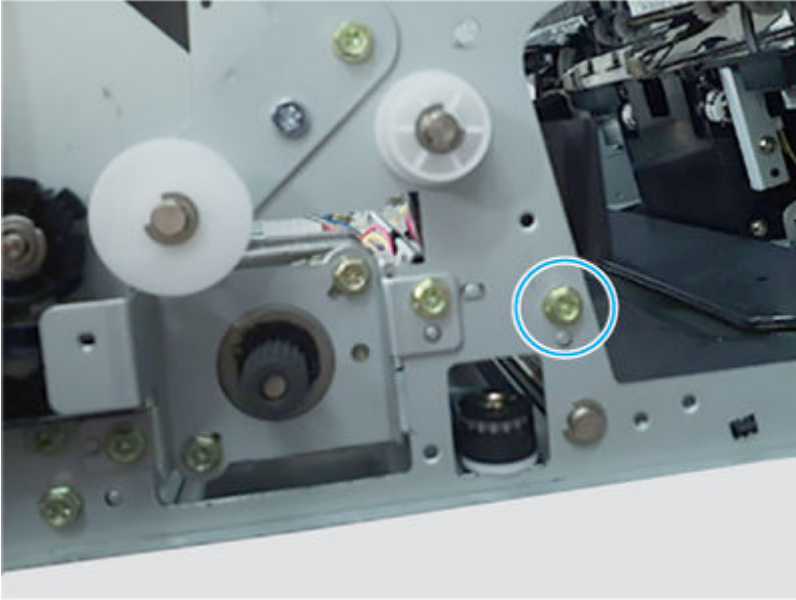
1. Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the guide.

Figure 6-3495 Remove the guide



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3496 Remove one screw



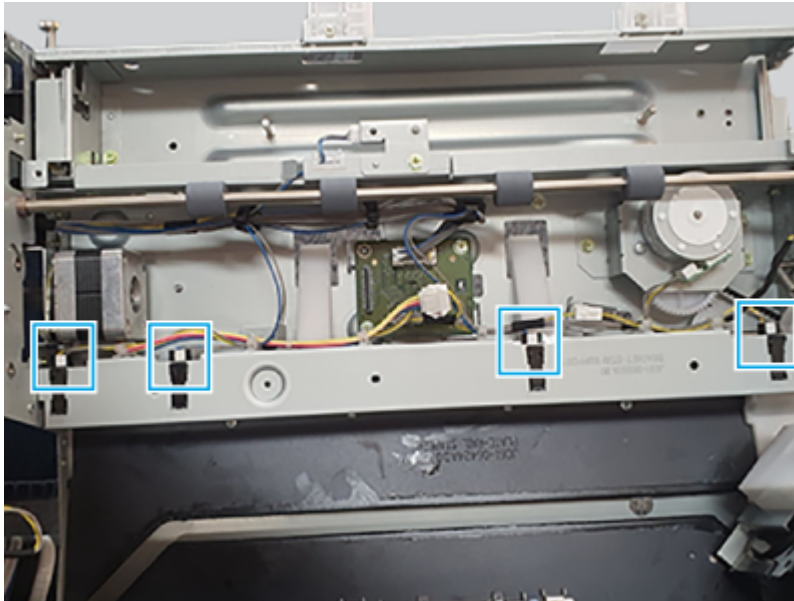
3. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3497 Remove one screw



4. Disconnect four connectors.

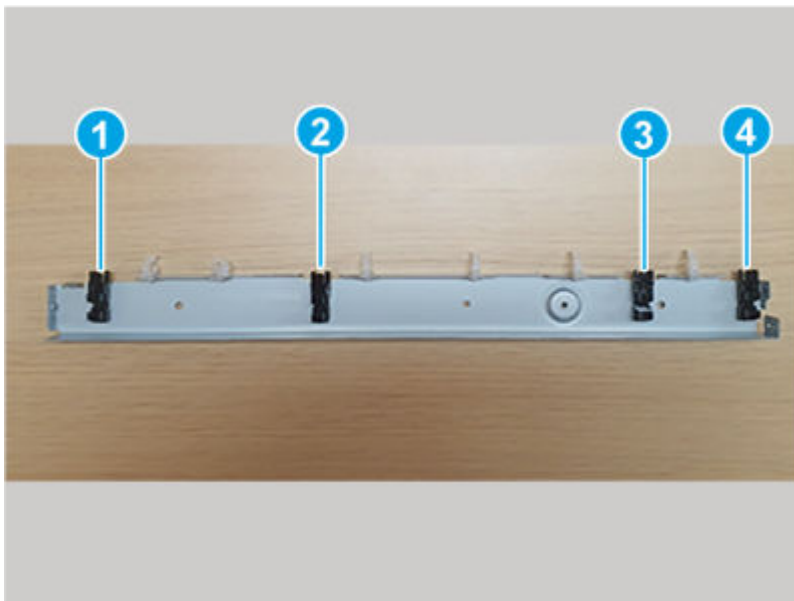
Figure 6-3498 Disconnect four connectors



5. Remove the inner finisher stapler position sensor.

- **Callout 1:** Front stapler position sensor
- **Callout 2:** Middle stapler position sensor
- **Callout 3:** Middle stapler position sensor
- **Callout 4:** Rear stapler position sensor

Figure 6-3499 Remove the sensor



9 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler position motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher stapler position motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher form the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-415 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00999A	Drive-motor step (Stapler position motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

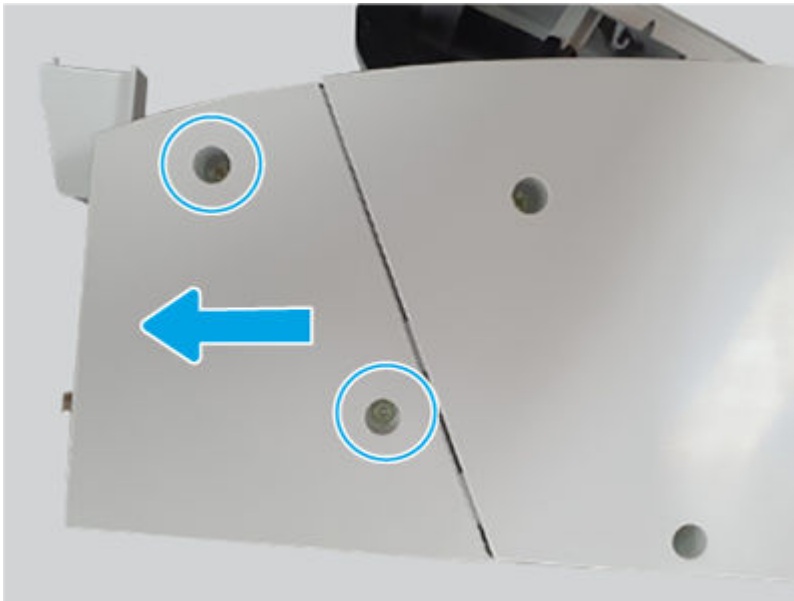
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3500 Remove the cover

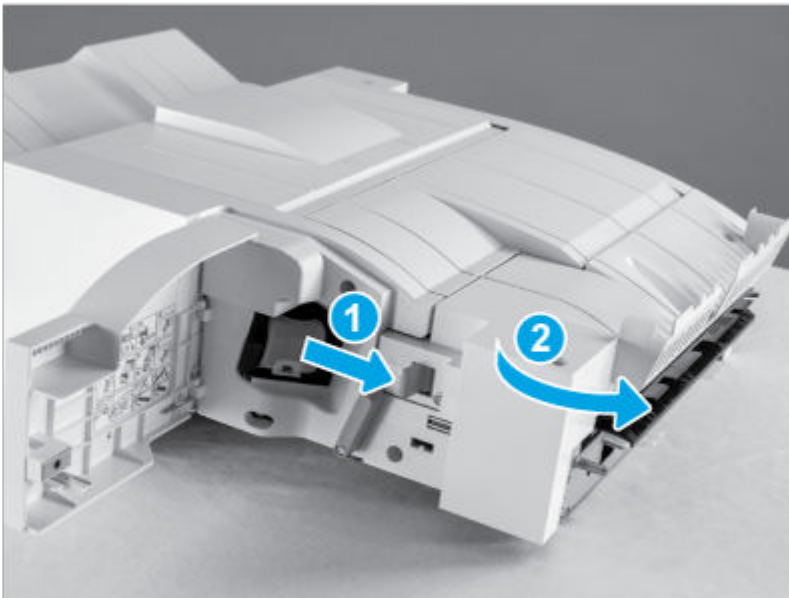


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

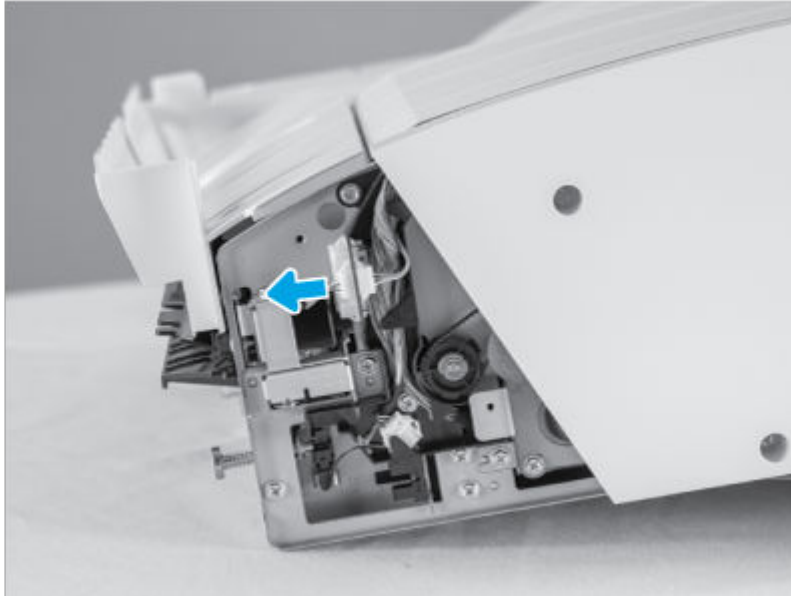
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3501 Rotate the punch



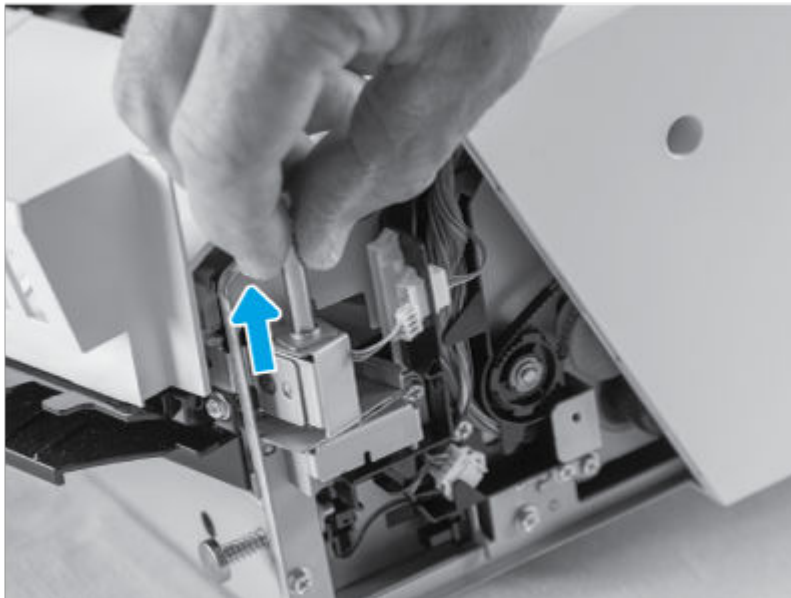
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3502 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3503 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

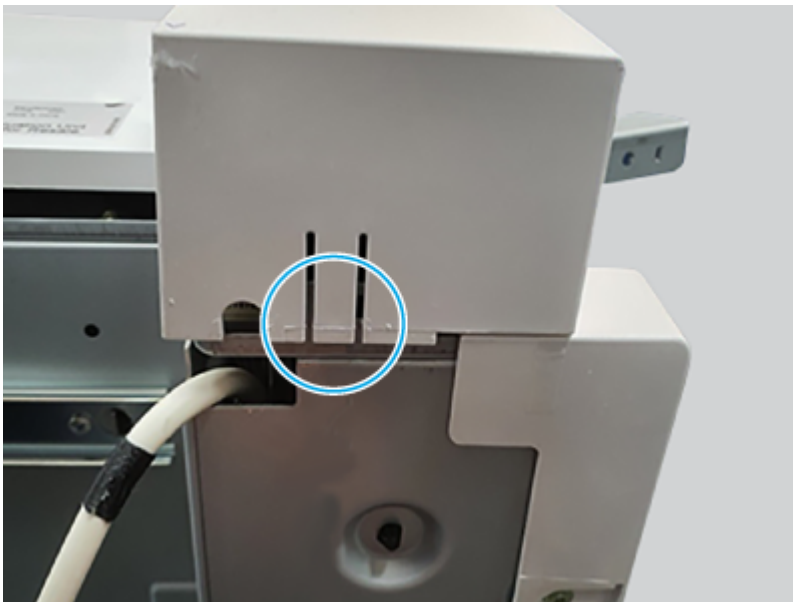
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3504 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3505 Remove the cover



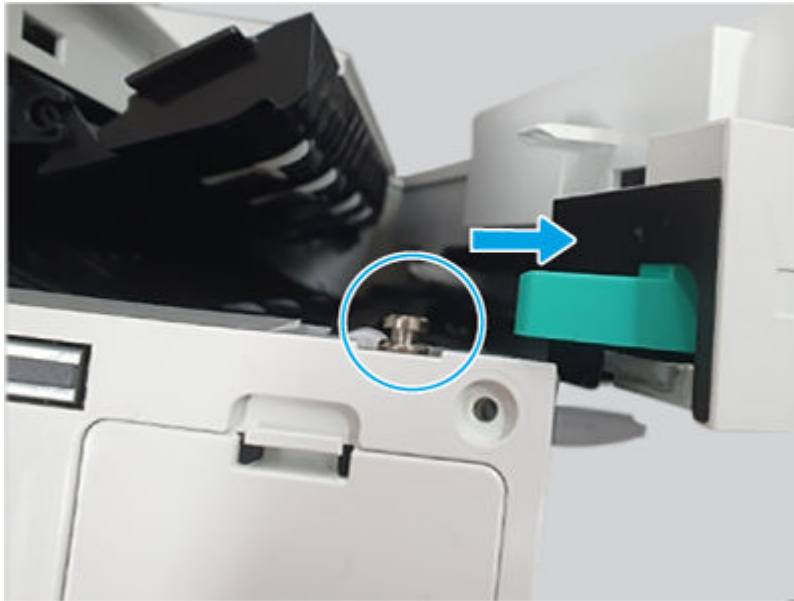
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3506 Open the punch cover



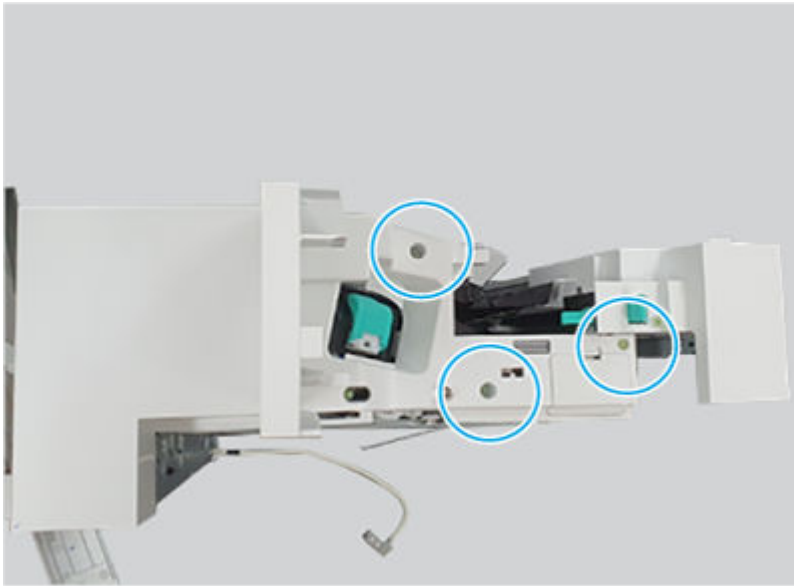
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3507 Remove the handle



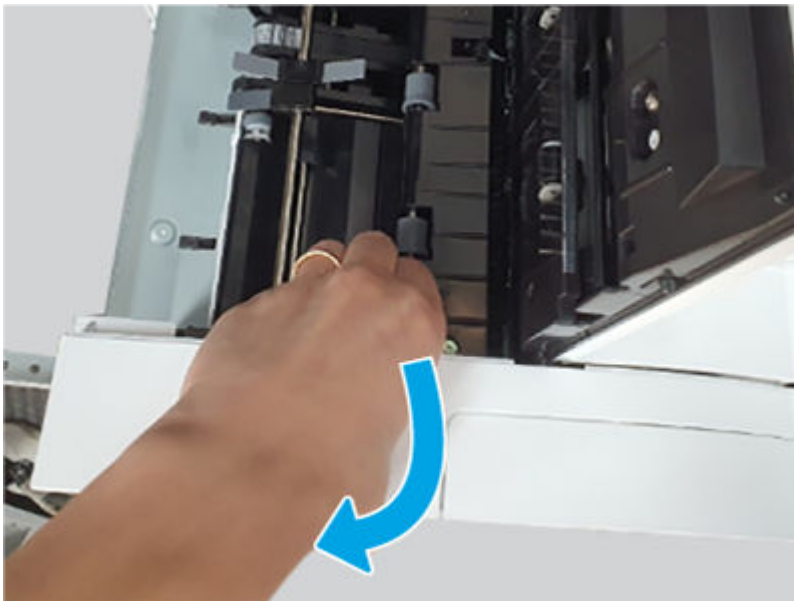
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3508 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3509 Remove the cover

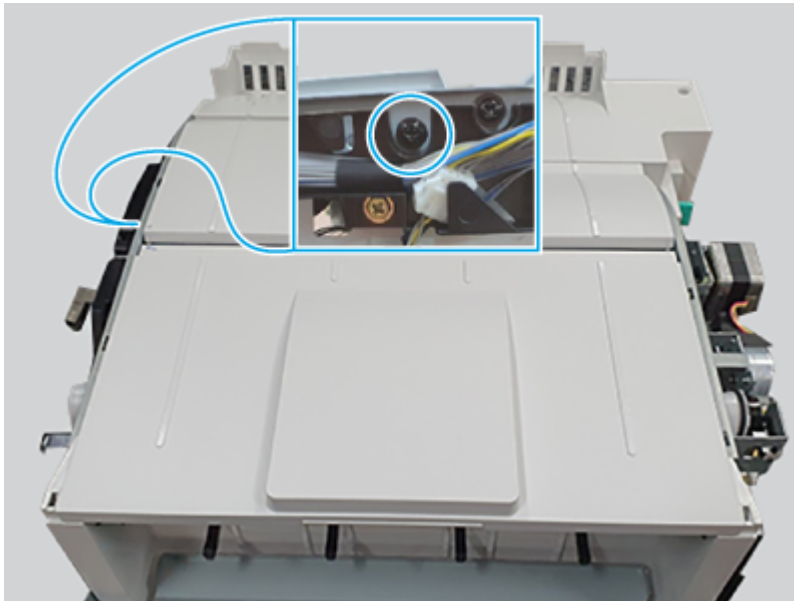


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3510 Remove the cover

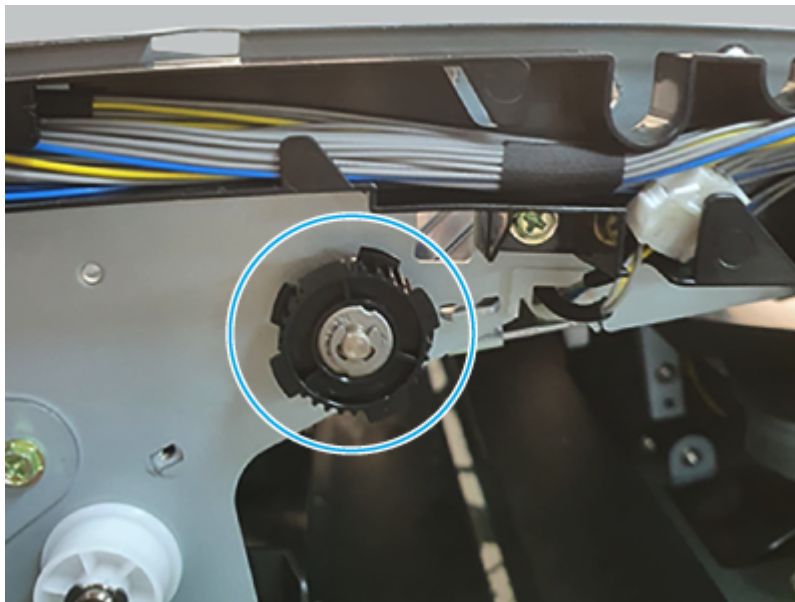


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3511 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



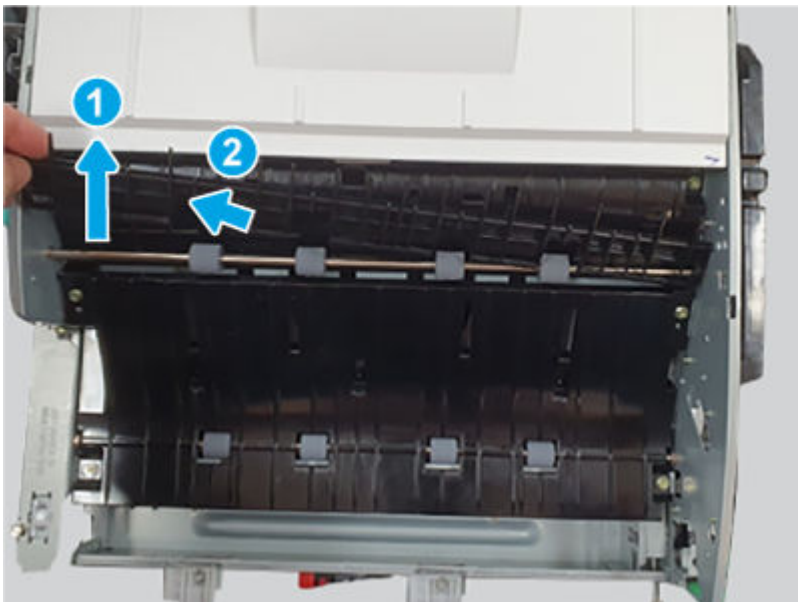
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3512 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3513 Remove the roller

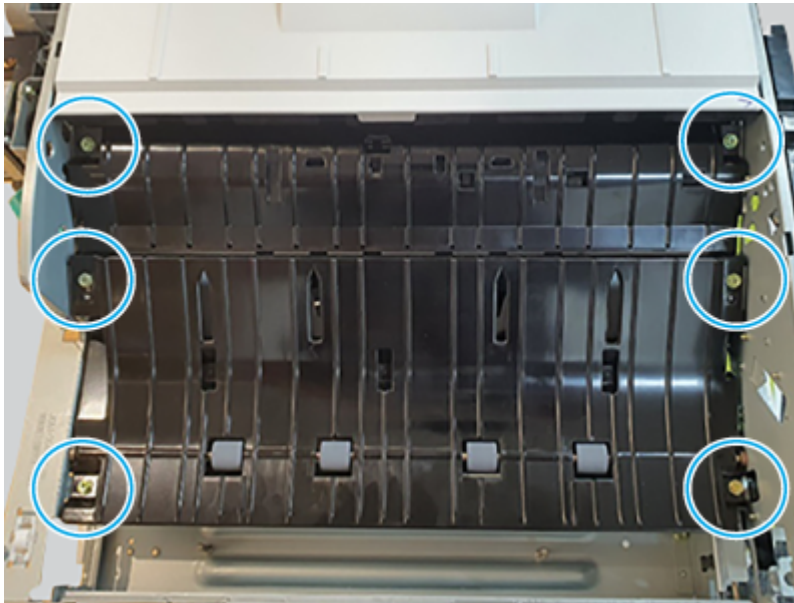


7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3514 Remove the guide

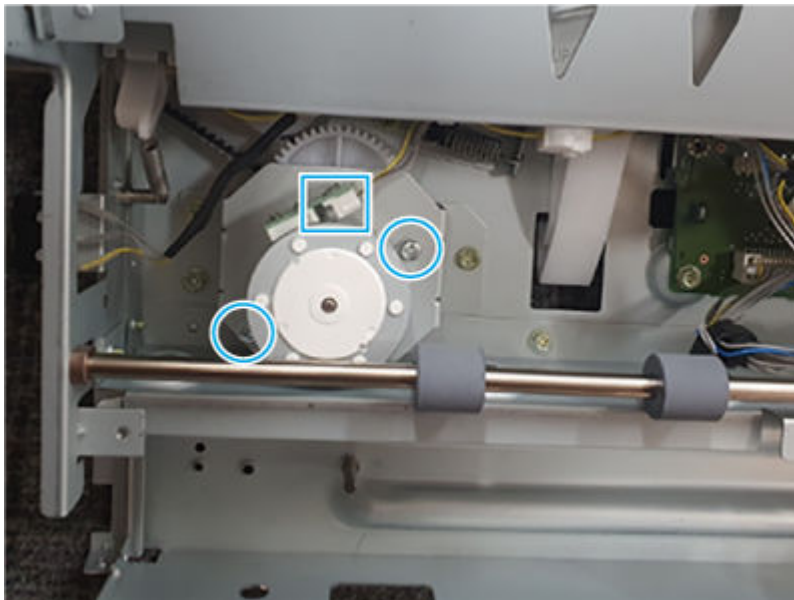


8 Remove the inner finisher stapler position motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher stapler position motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher stapler position motor.


Figure 6-3515 Remove the motor



9 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector unit

Review the inner finisher ejector unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Ejector

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher ejector.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher form the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-416 Part information

Part number	Part description
SS456-61001	Ejector

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

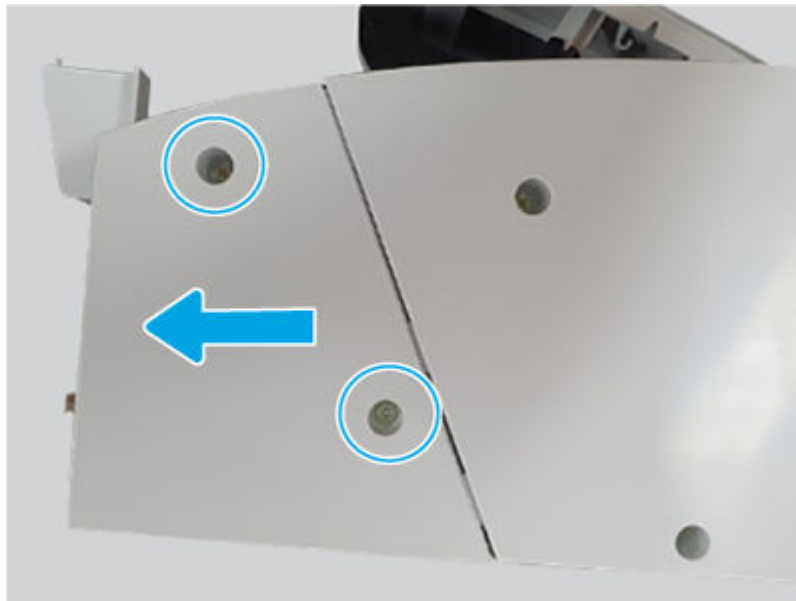
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3516 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.

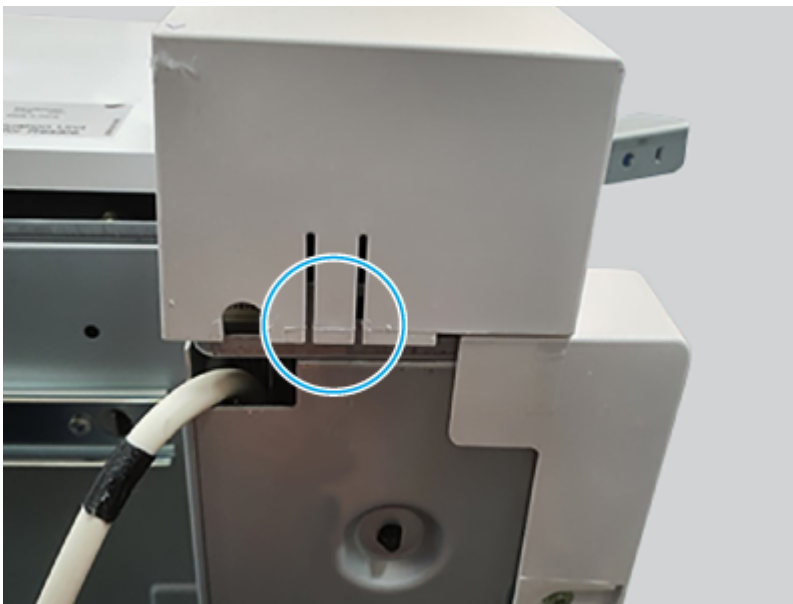
- Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3517 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3518 Remove the cover



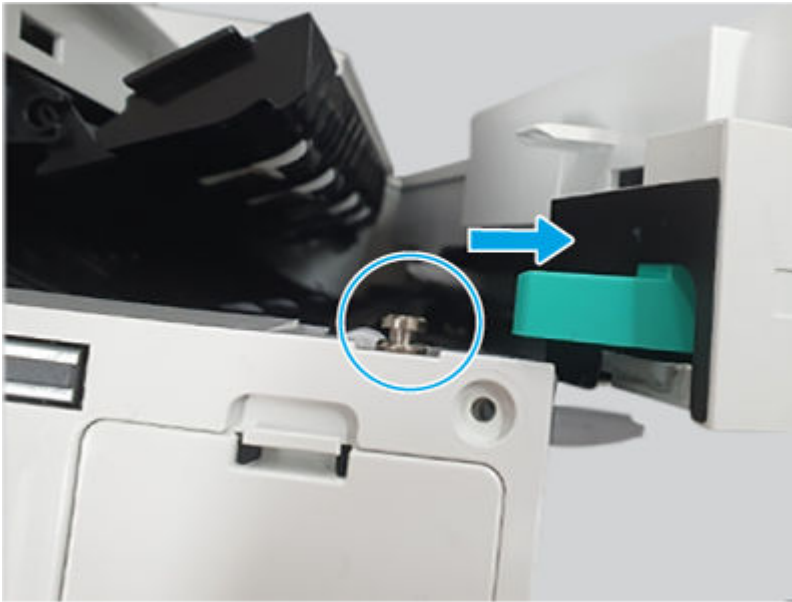
3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.

- Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3519 Open the punch cover



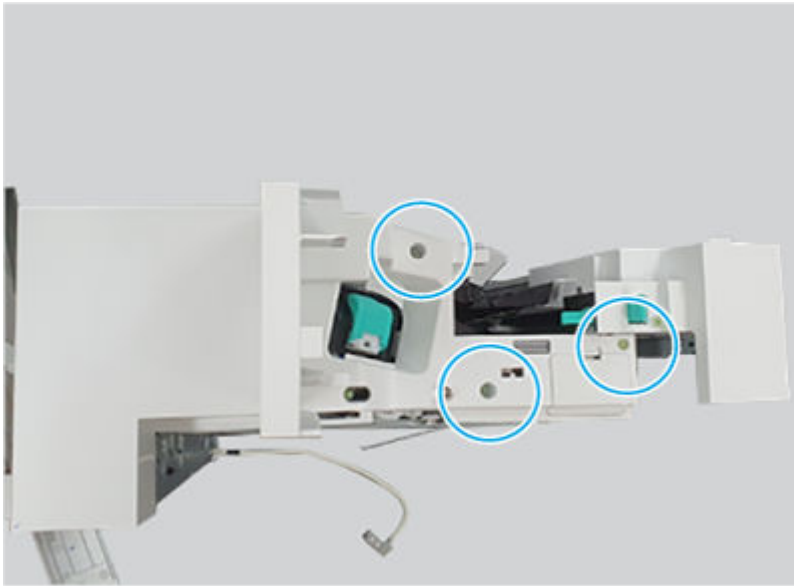
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3520 Remove the handle



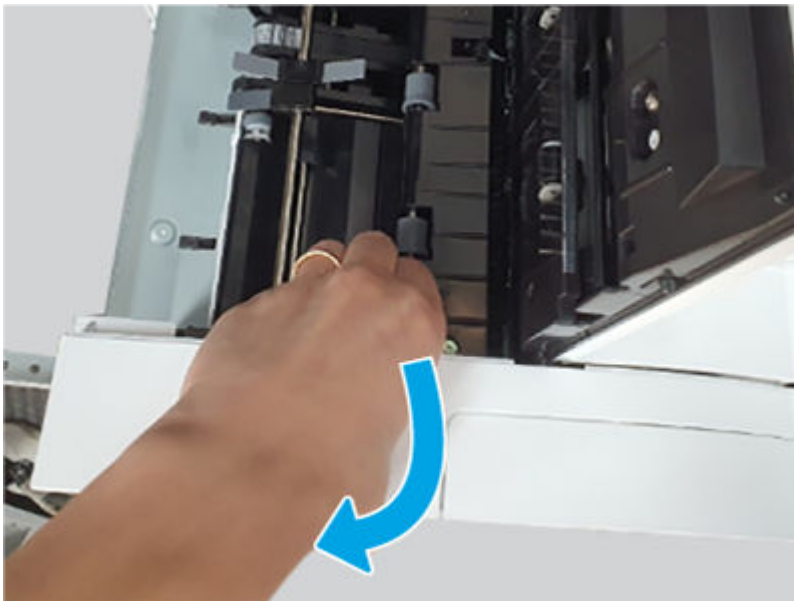
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3521 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3522 Remove the cover

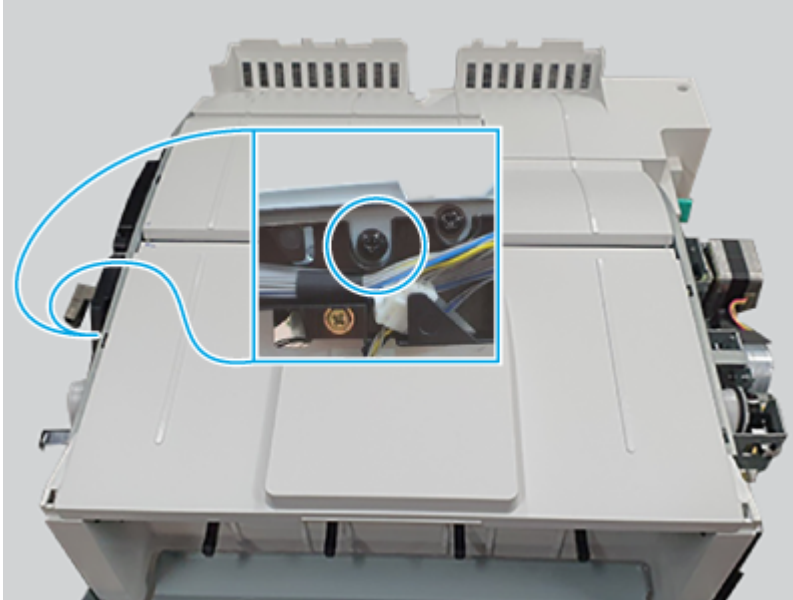


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3523 Remove the cover

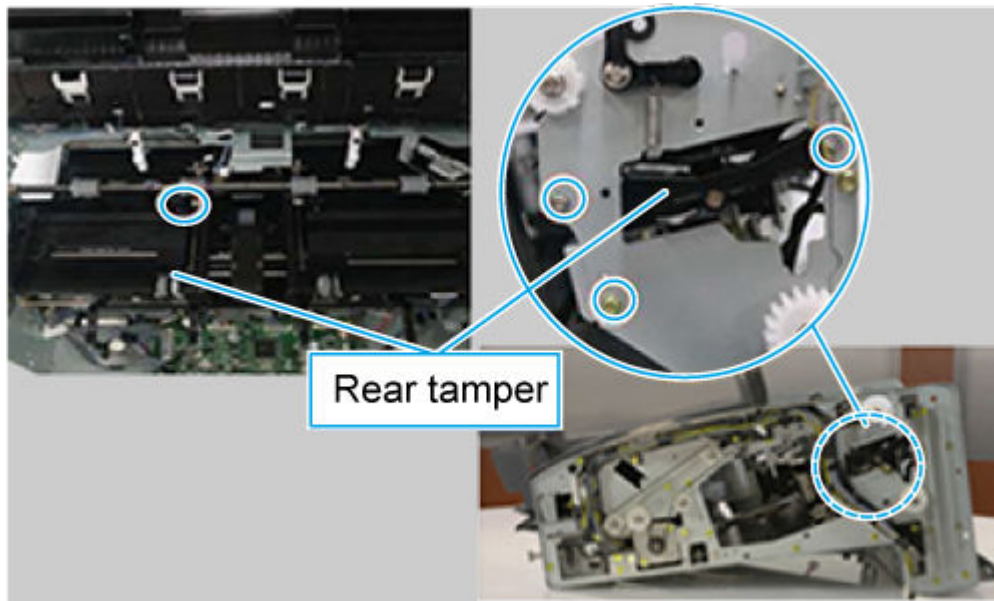


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3524 Remove the tamper

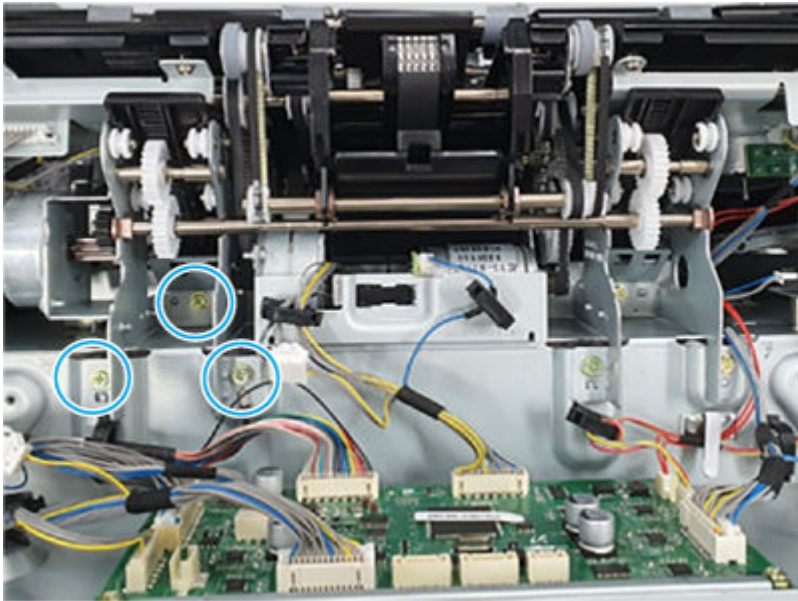


6 Remove the inner finisher rear paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear paper support.

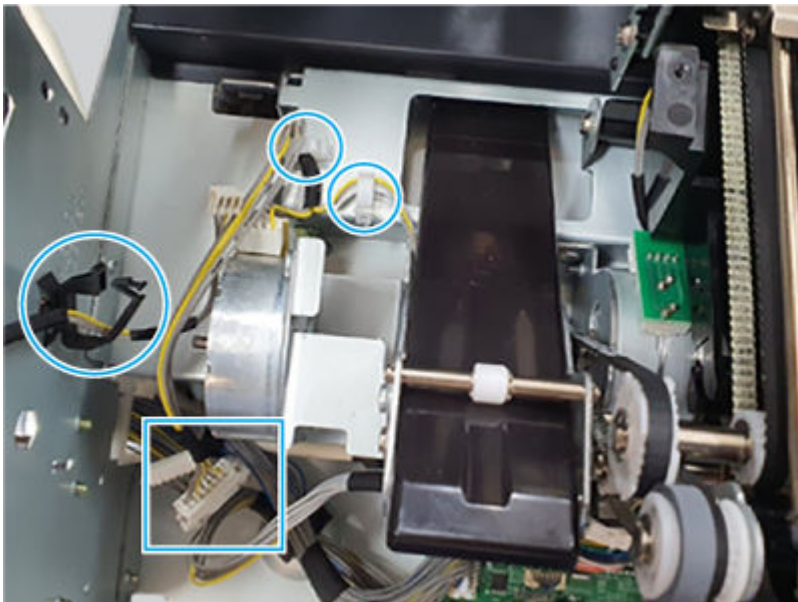
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3525 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release three hooks, and then remove the inner finisher rear paper support.

Figure 6-3526 Remove the support

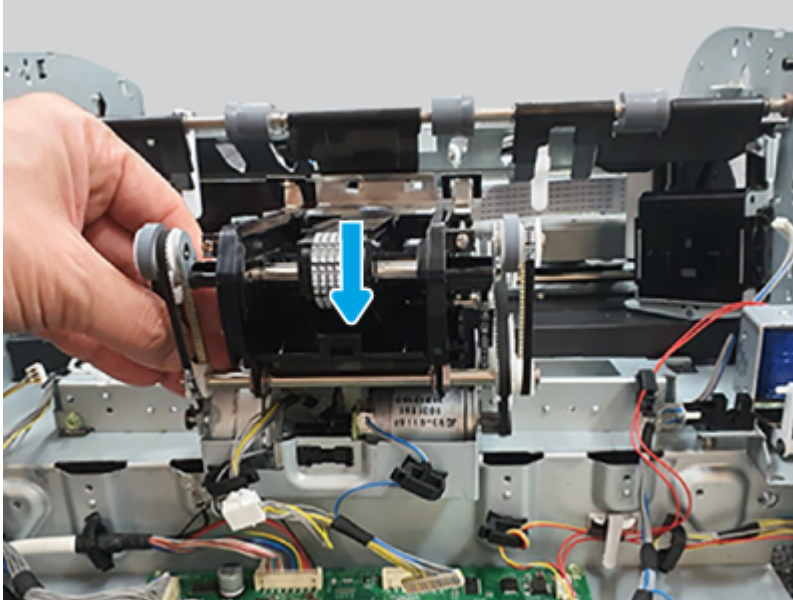


7 Remove the inner finisher ejector

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher ejector.

- Remove the inner finisher ejector.


Figure 6-3527 Remove the ejector



8 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output tray and paper holding unit

Review the inner finisher output tray and paper holding unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Output tray motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-417 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01334B	Output tray motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

- Open the front door, remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3528 Remove the handle

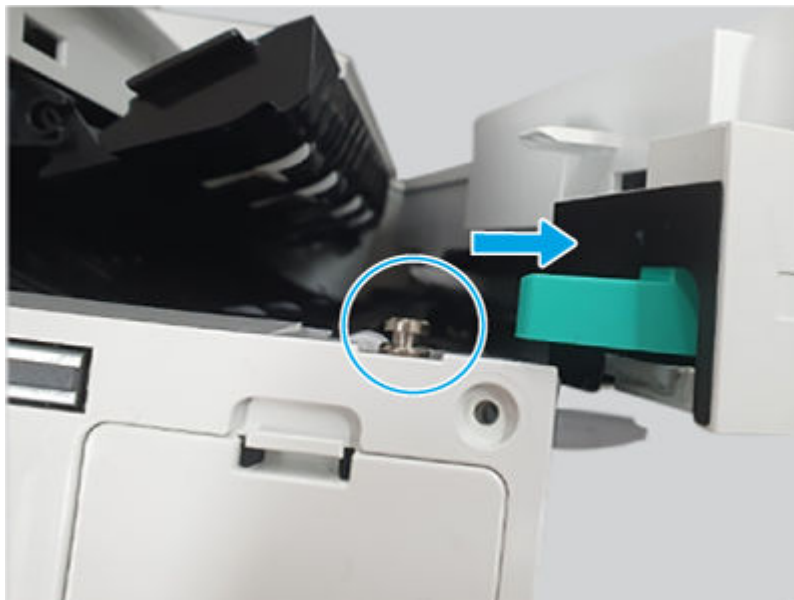


2 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3529 Open the punch cover



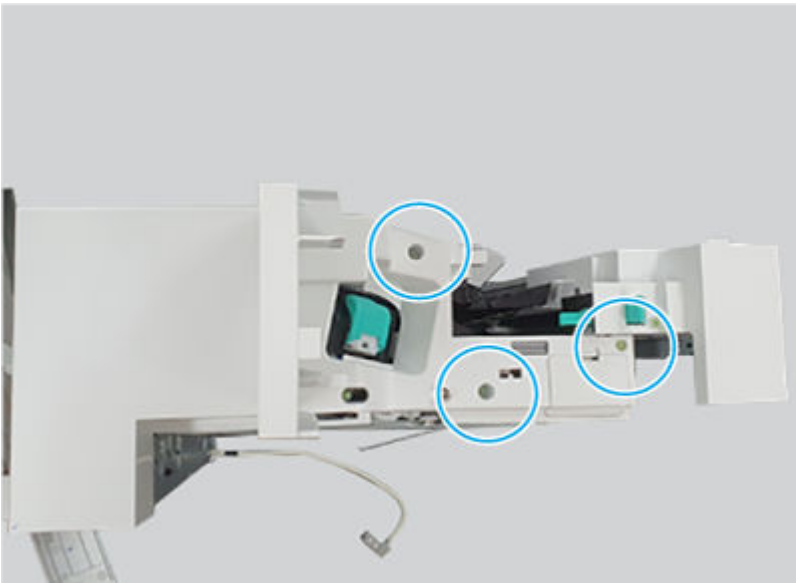
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3530 Remove the handle



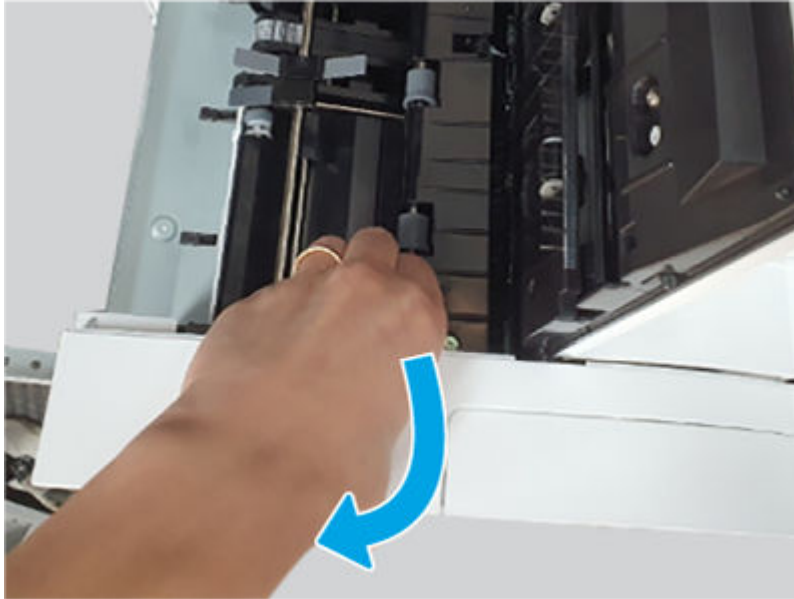
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3531 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3532 Remove the cover



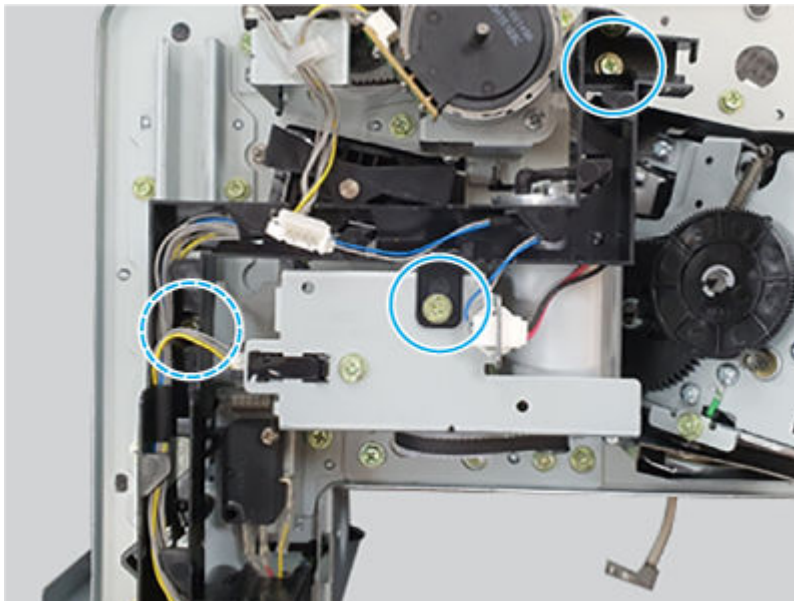
3 Remove the inner finisher cable guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher cable guide.

- Remove three screws, and remove the inner finisher cable guide.

 **NOTE:** Remove the wire harness as necessary.

Figure 6-3533 Remove the guide

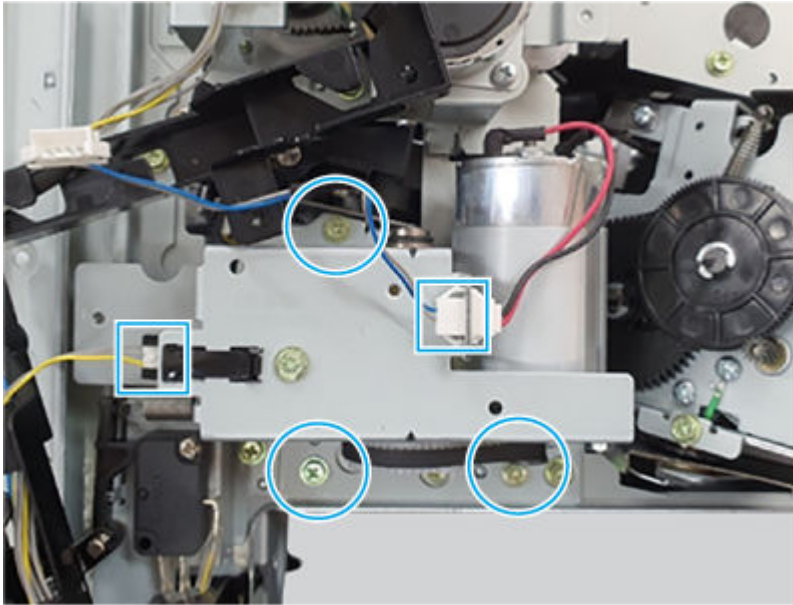


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.


Figure 6-3534 Remove the assembly



5 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray motor.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-418 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00178B	JC31-00144G (Output tray motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

- Open the front door, remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3535 Remove the handle

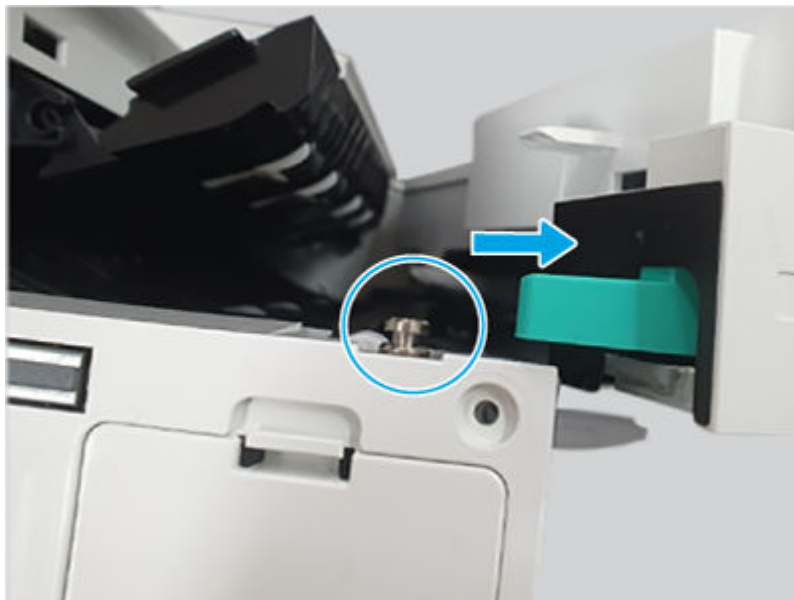


2 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3536 Open the punch cover



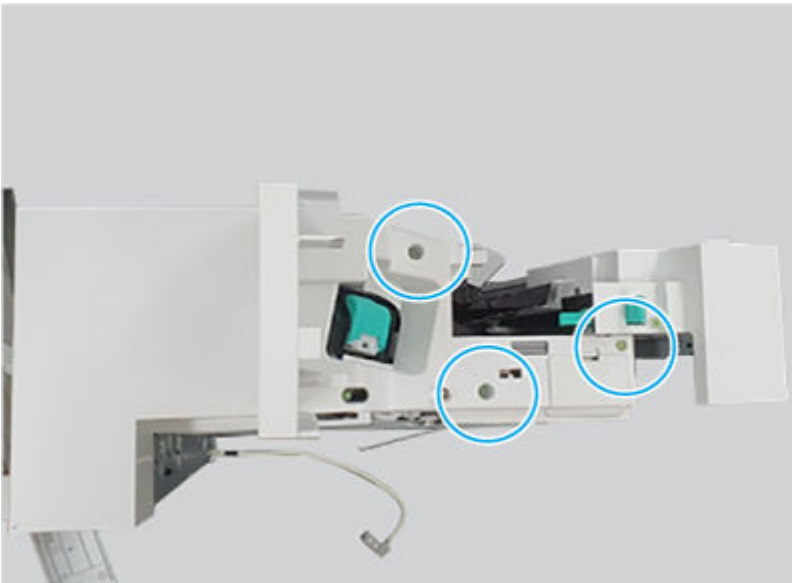
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3537 Remove the handle



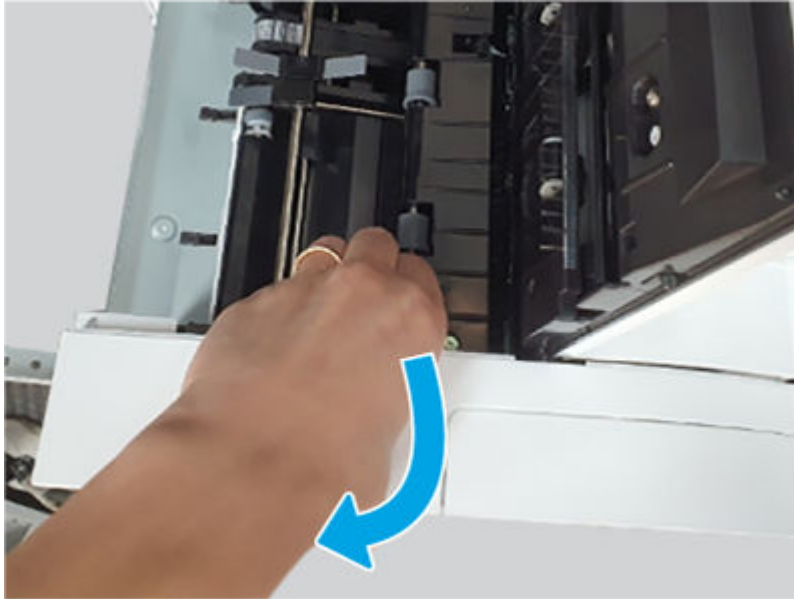
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3538 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3539 Remove the cover



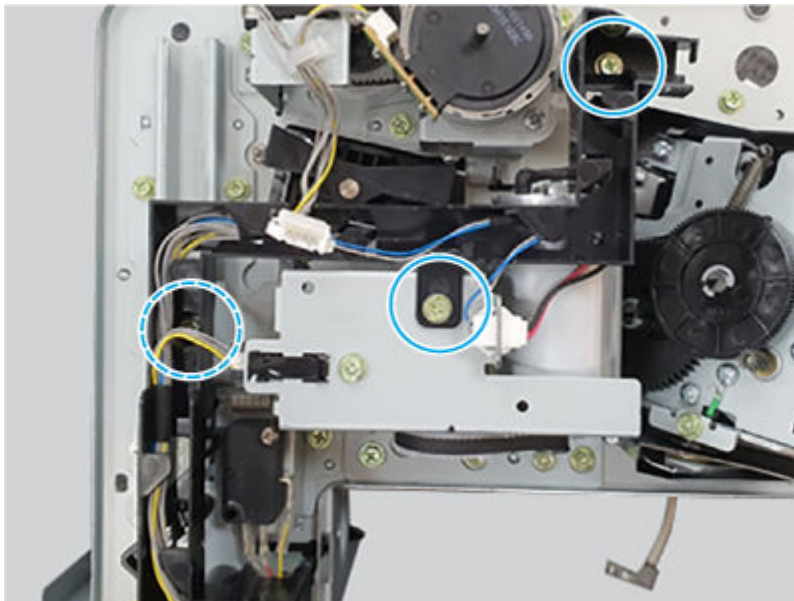
3 Remove the inner finisher cable guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher cable guide.

- Remove three screws, and remove the inner finisher cable guide.

 **NOTE:** Remove the wire harness as necessary.

Figure 6-3540 Remove the guide

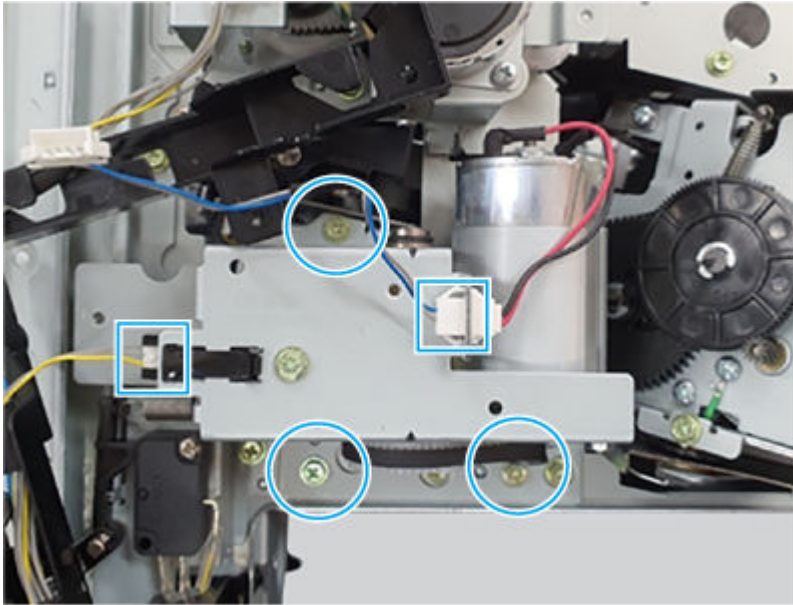


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-3541 Remove the assembly

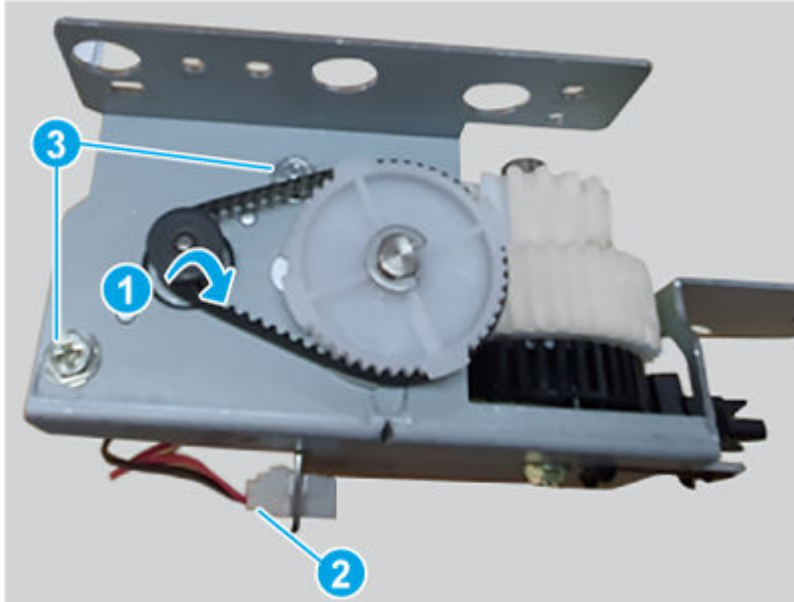


5 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor.

- Do the following:
 - Release the belt (callout 1).
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 2).
 - Remove two screws (callout 3)
 - Remove the inner finisher output tray motor.

Figure 6-3542 Remove the motor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray motor sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray motor sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-419 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Output tray motor sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

- Open the front door, remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3543 Remove the handle

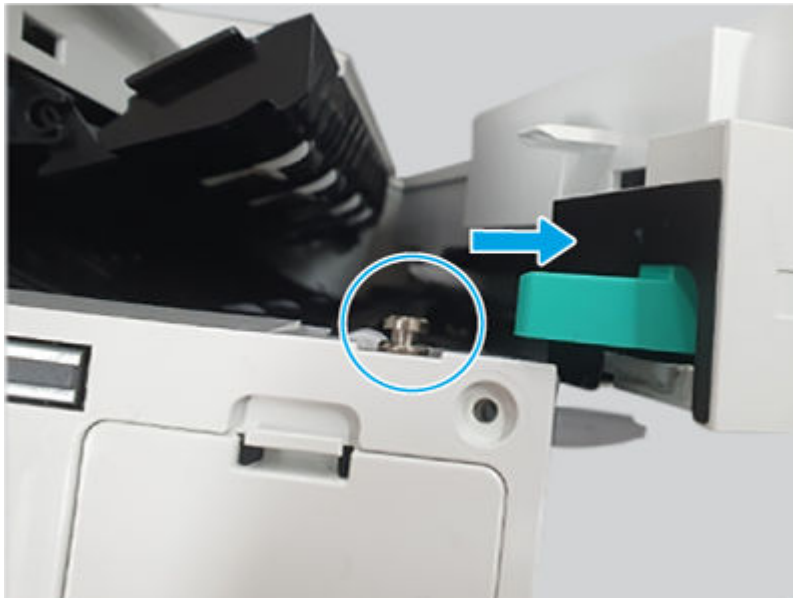


2 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3544 Open the punch cover



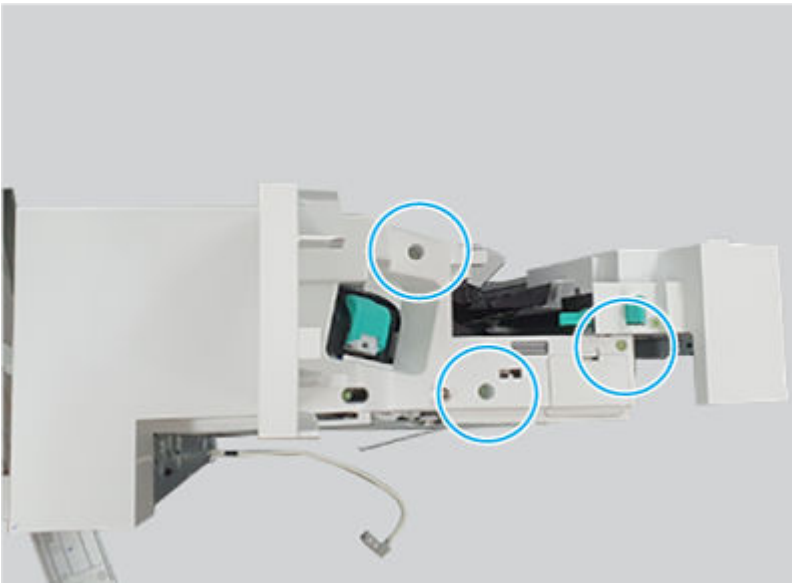
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3545 Remove the handle



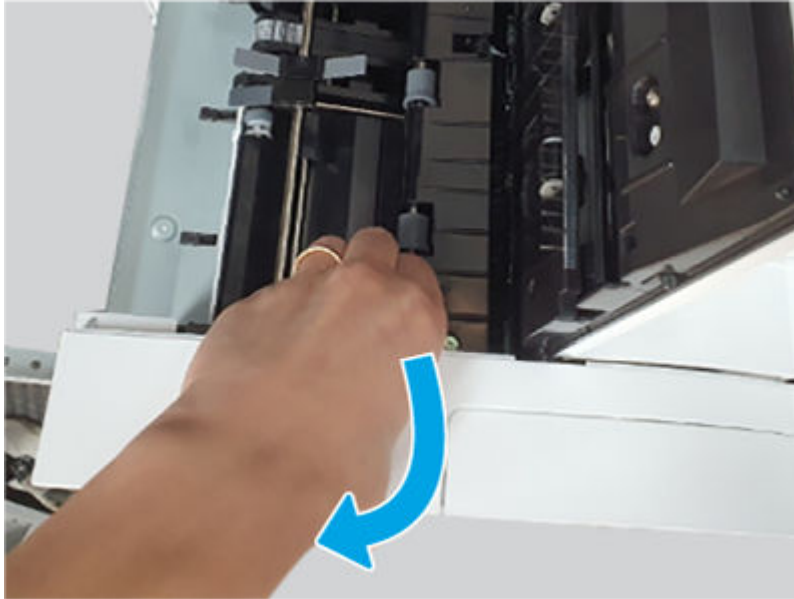
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3546 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3547 Remove the cover



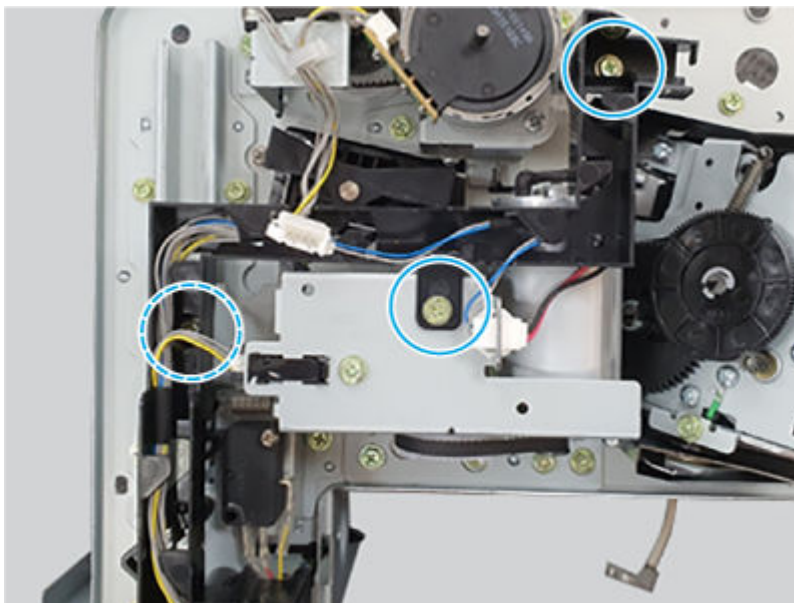
3 Remove the inner finisher cable guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher cable guide.

- Remove three screws, and remove the inner finisher cable guide.

 **NOTE:** Remove the wire harness as necessary.

Figure 6-3548 Remove the guide

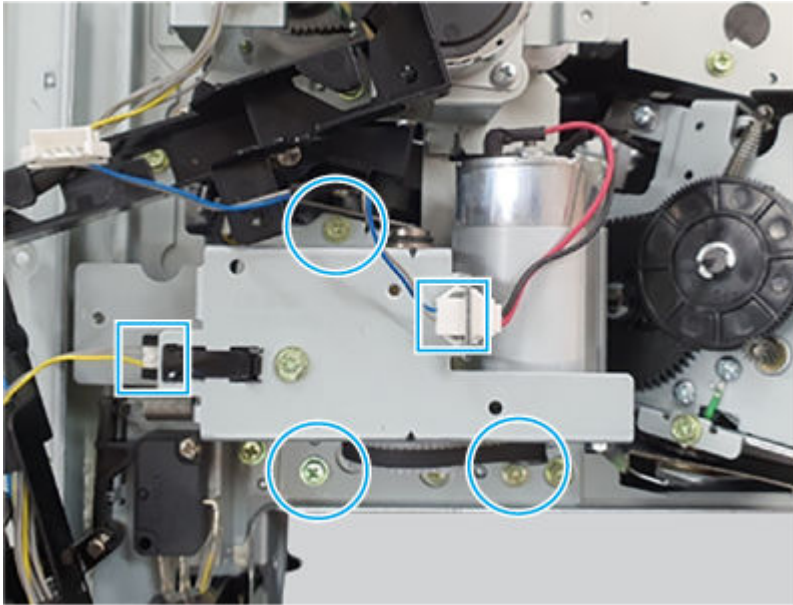


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-3549 Remove the assembly

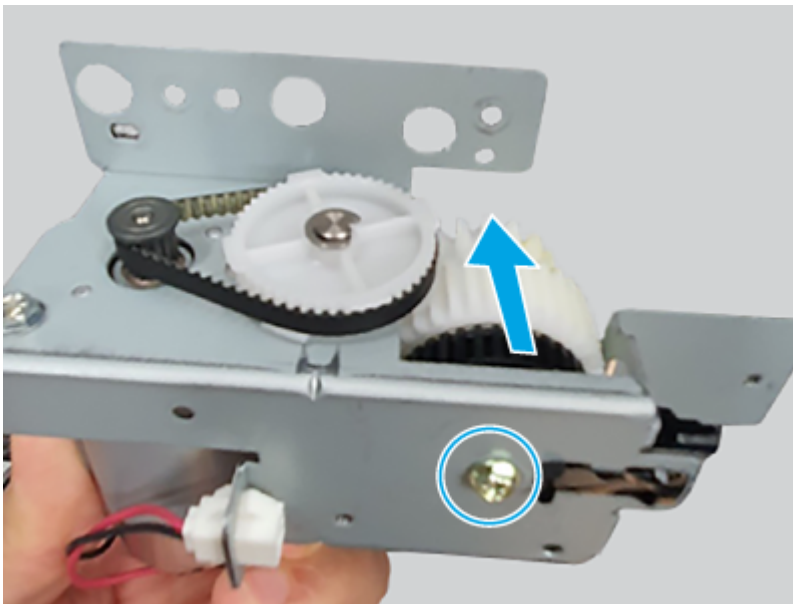


5 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor sensor.

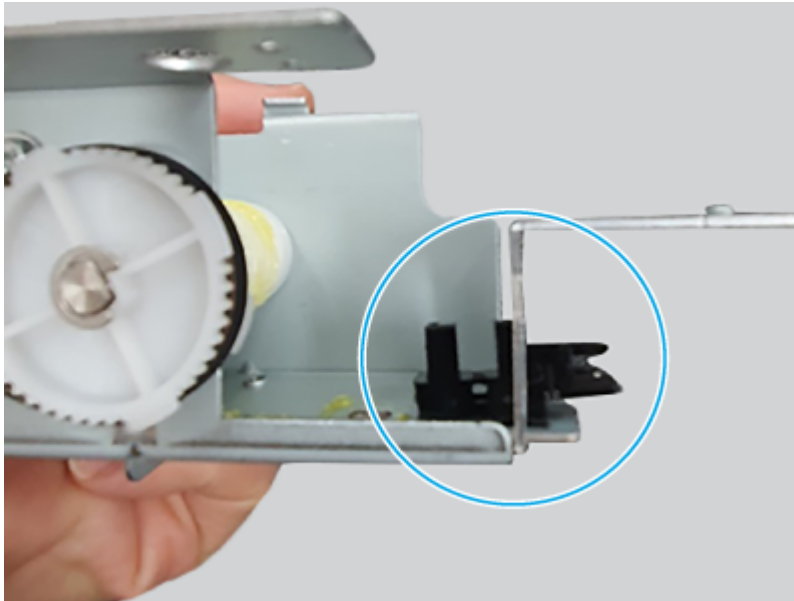
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the gear.

Figure 6-3550 Remove the gear



2. Remove the inner finisher output tray motor sensor.

Figure 6-3551 Remove the sensor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray lower limit switch assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-420 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01320A	Finisher sub-tray, lower limit (Output tray lower limit switch assembly)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

- Open the front door, remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3552 Remove the handle

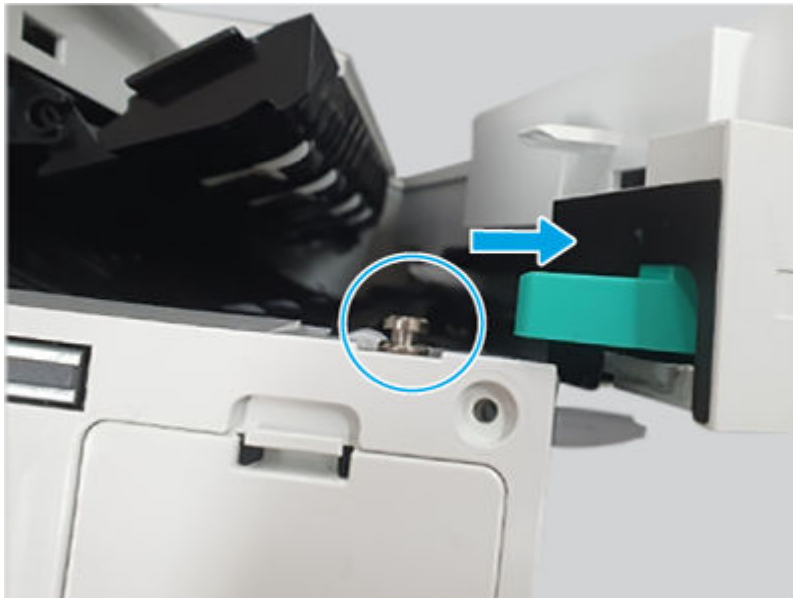


2 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3553 Open the punch cover



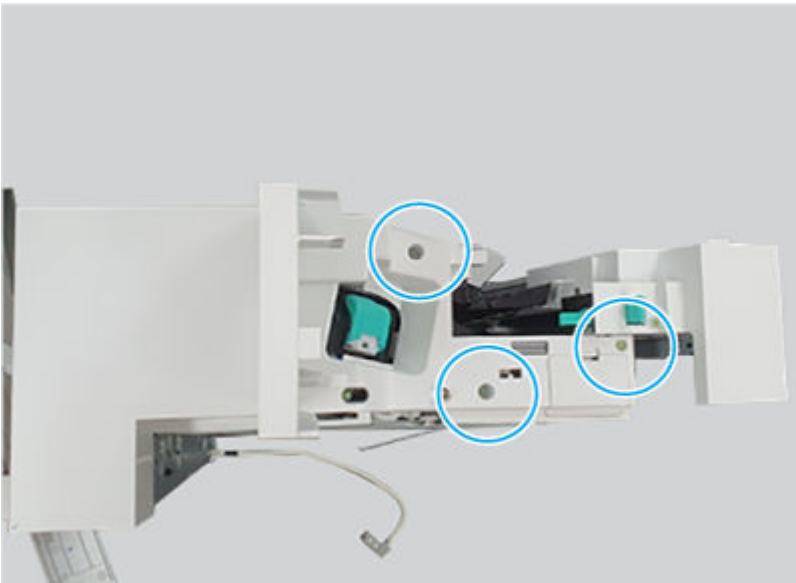
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3554 Remove the handle



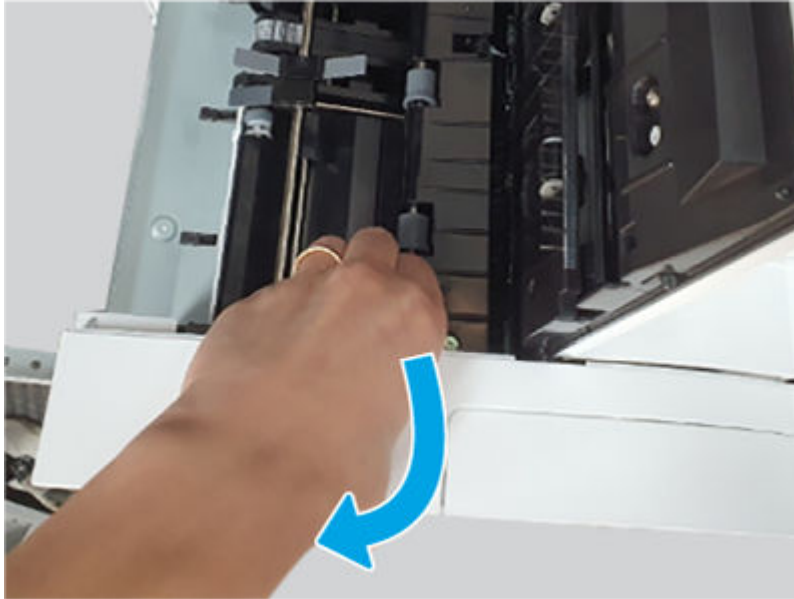
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3555 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3556 Remove the cover

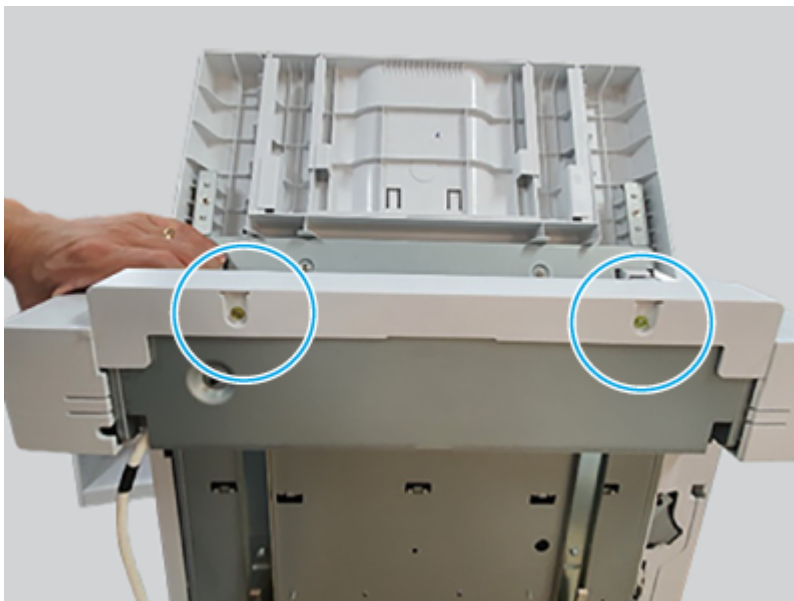


3 Remove the inner finisher PCA cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher PCA cover.

1. Lift up the inner finisher, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-3557 Remove two screws



2. Remove the inner finisher PCA cover.

Figure 6-3558 Remove the cover



4 Remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.


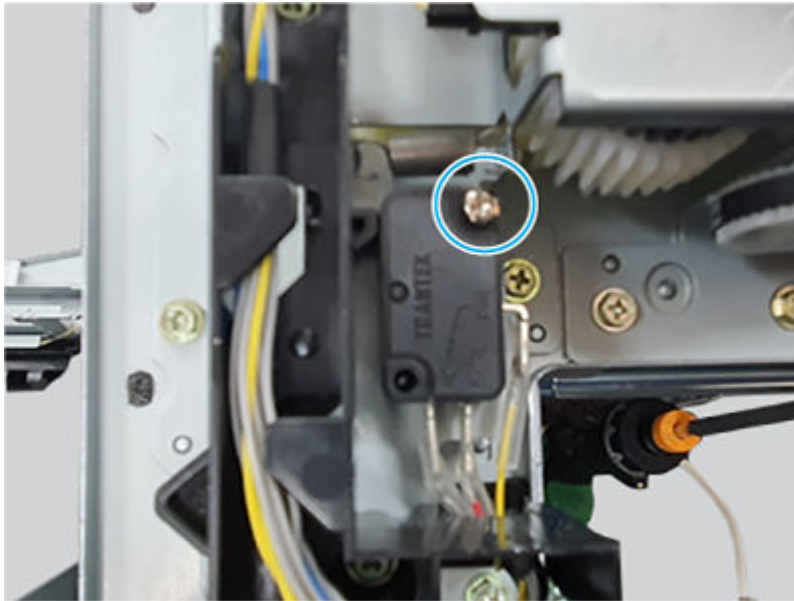
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3559 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

Figure 6-3560 Remove the switch



5 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray top of stack sensor kit

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray top of stack sensor kit.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-421 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	Tray sensor kit (Output tray top of stack sensor kit)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

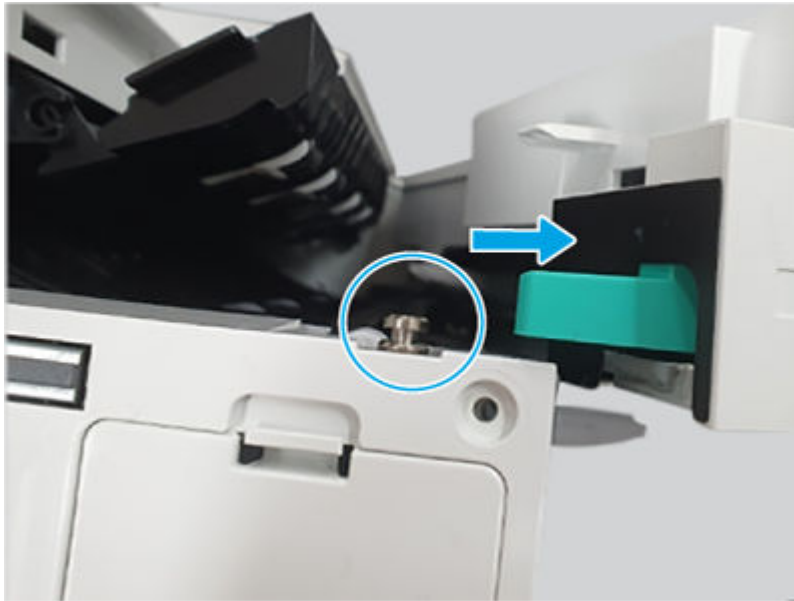
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3561 Open the punch cover



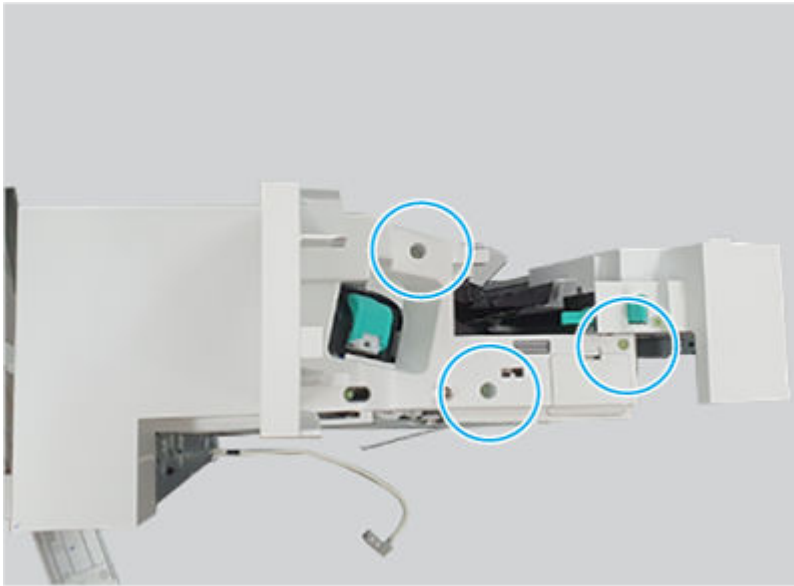
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3562 Remove the handle



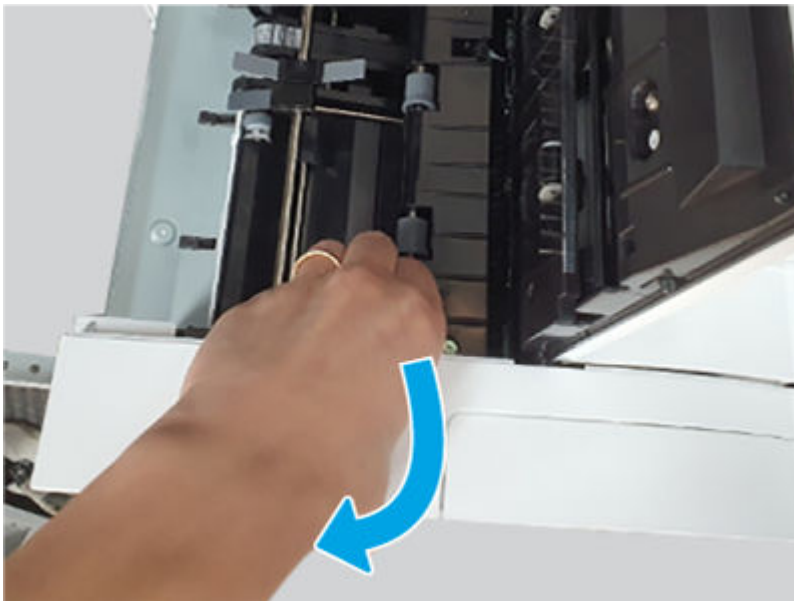
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3563 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3564 Remove the cover

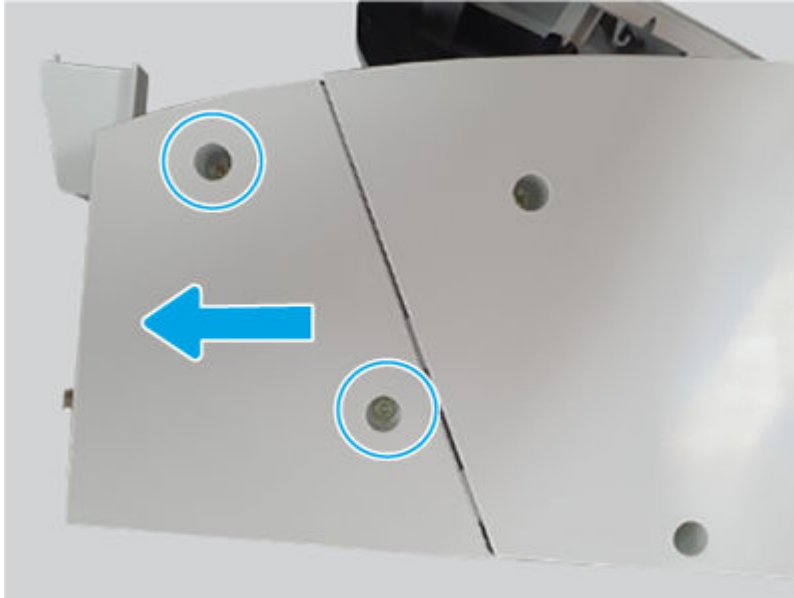


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3565 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

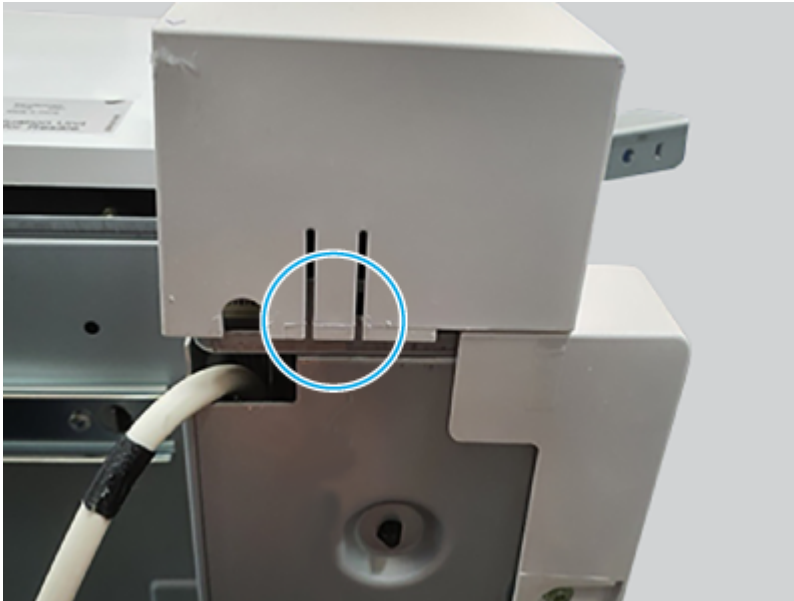
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3566 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3567 Remove the cover



4. **Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

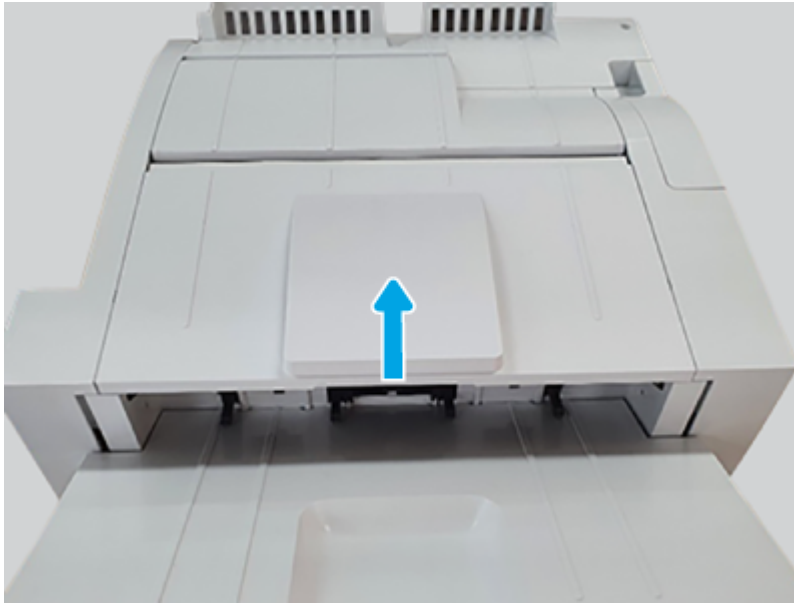
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-3568 Remove four screws



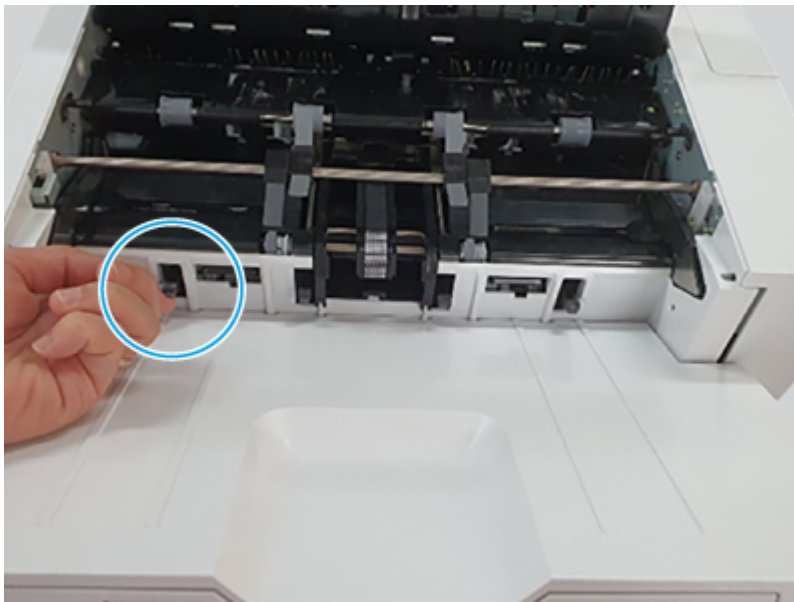
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-3569 Open the cover



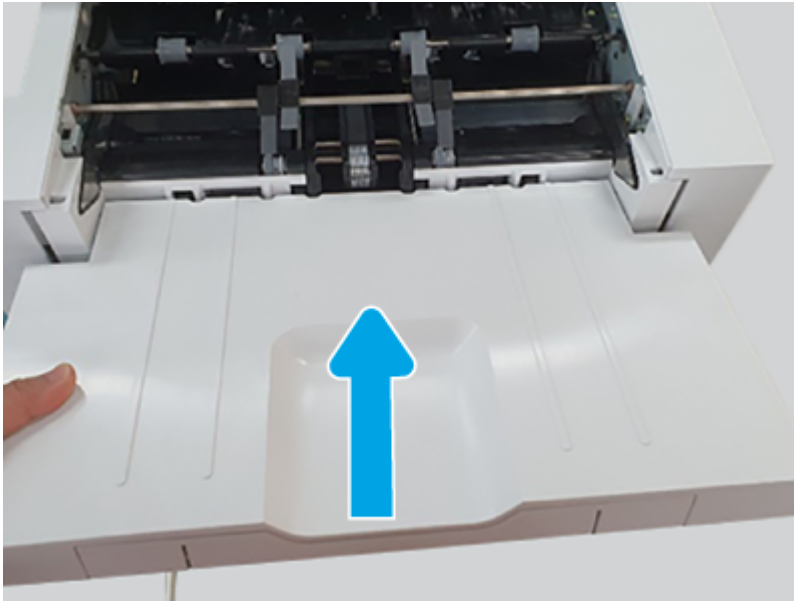
3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3570 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-3571 Remove the tray

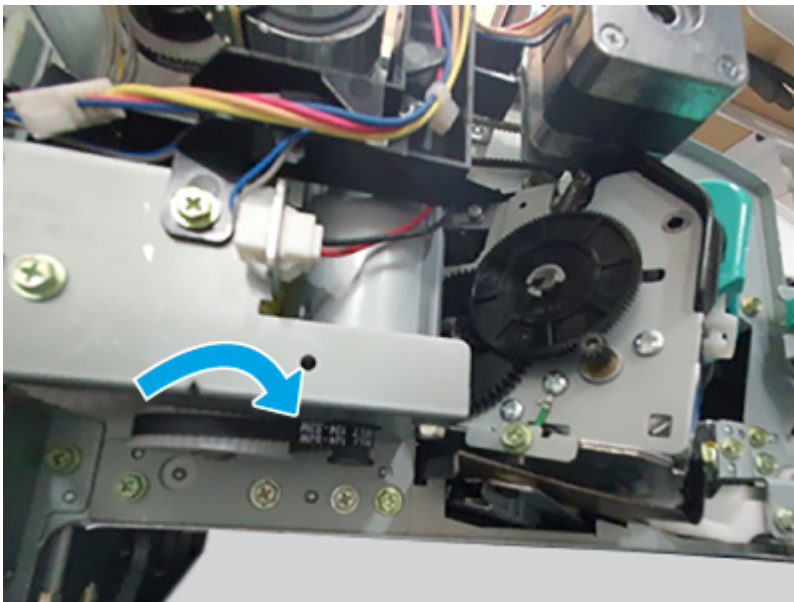


5 Remove the output tray frame

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray frame.

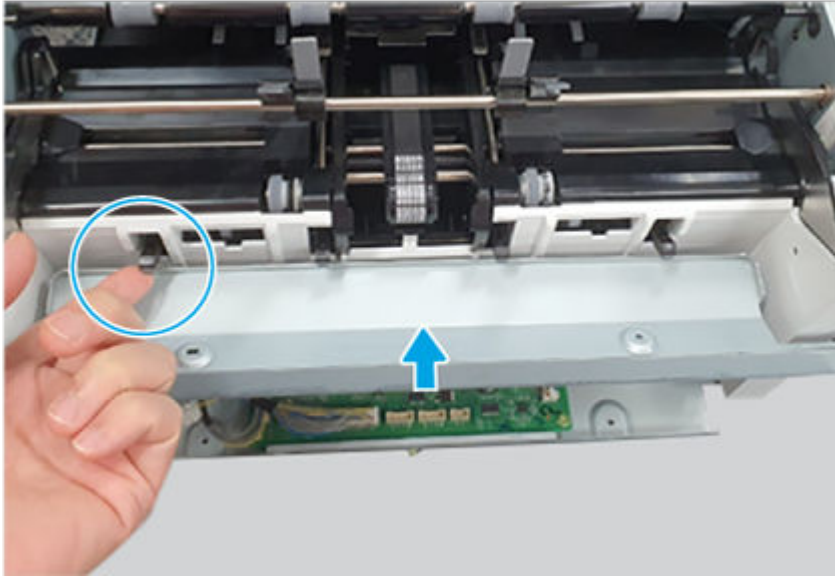
1. Rotate the output tray gear.

Figure 6-3572 Rotate the gear



2. Press the paper holding actuator, and then lift the inner finisher output tray frame up to remove it.

Figure 6-3573 Remove the frame

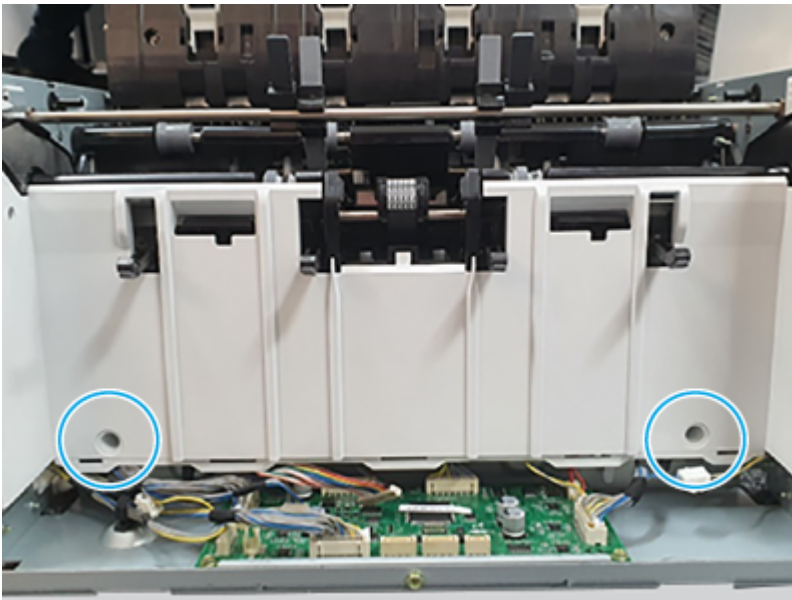


6 Remove the finisher sub stay assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

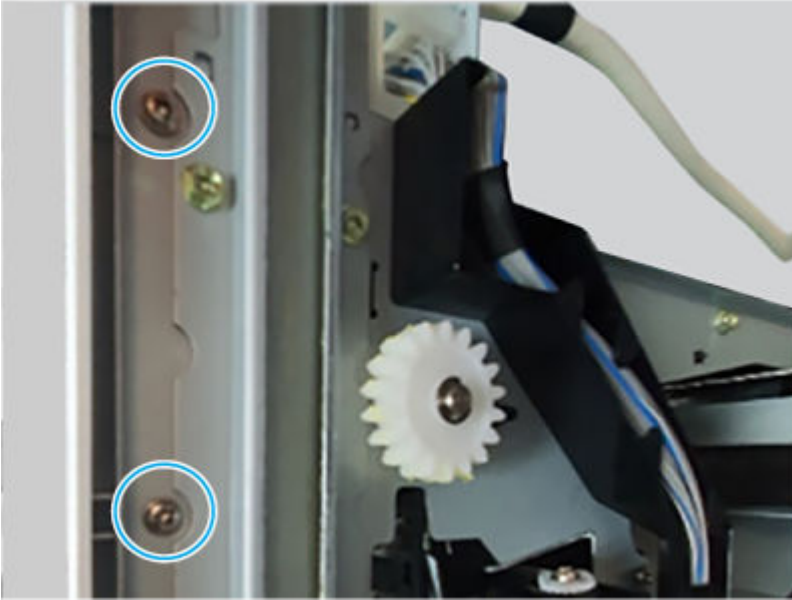
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3574 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3575 Remove two screws



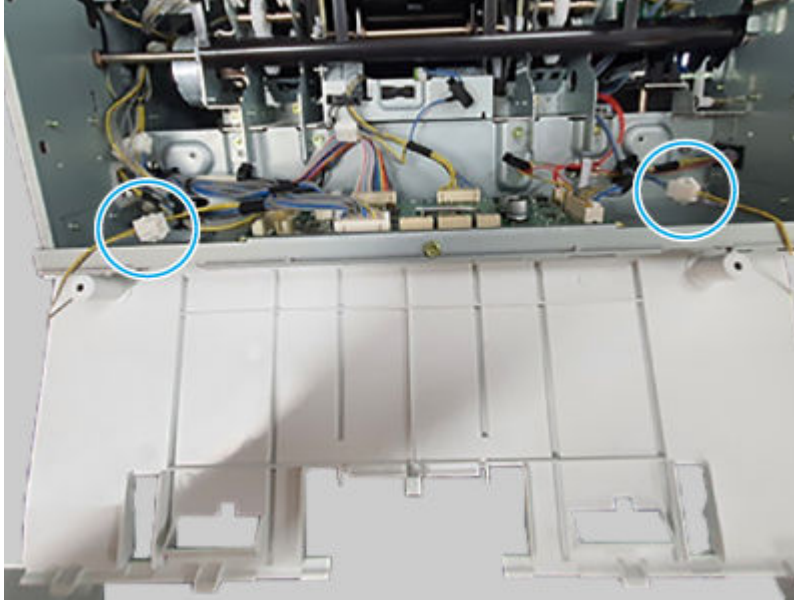
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3576 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

Figure 6-3577 Remove the assembly

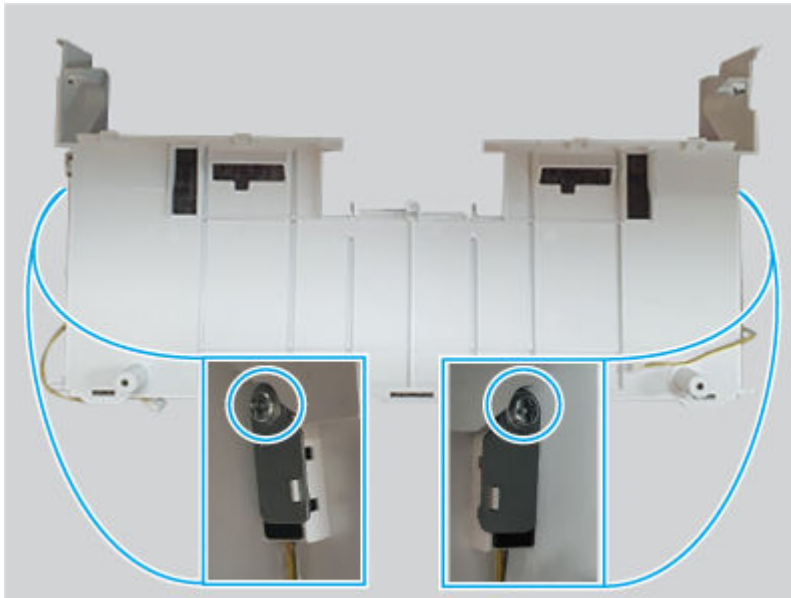


7 Remove the inner finisher output tray top of tray sensor kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray top of tray sensor kit.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray top of stack sensors.


Figure 6-3578 Remove the sensors



8 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding actuator

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-422 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01313A	Paper holding actuator

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

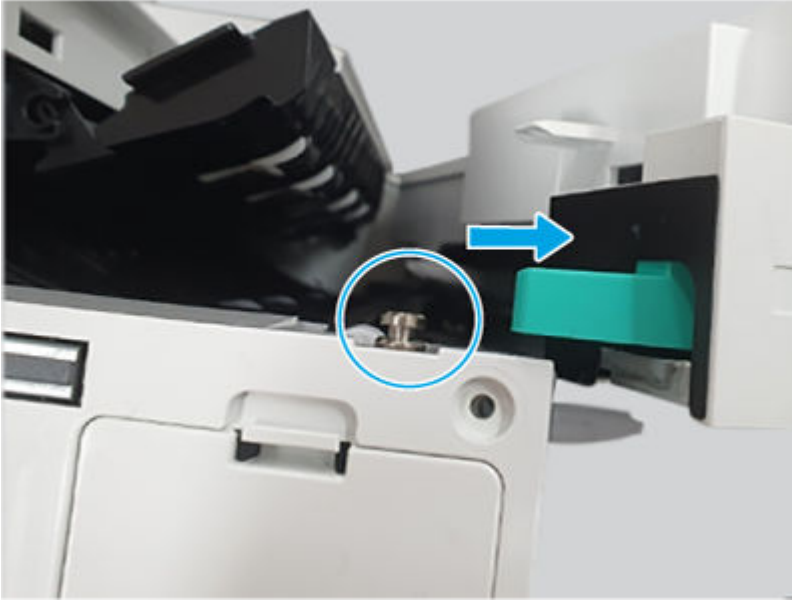
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3579 Open the punch cover



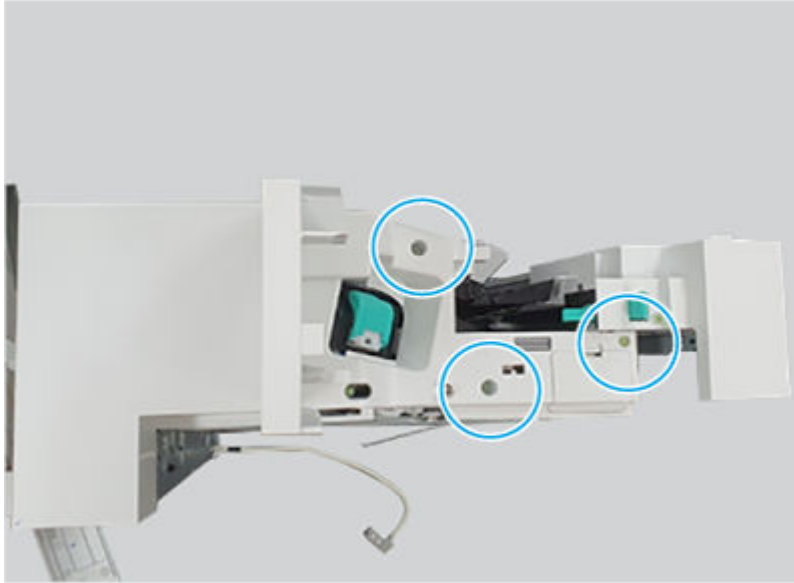
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3580 Remove the handle



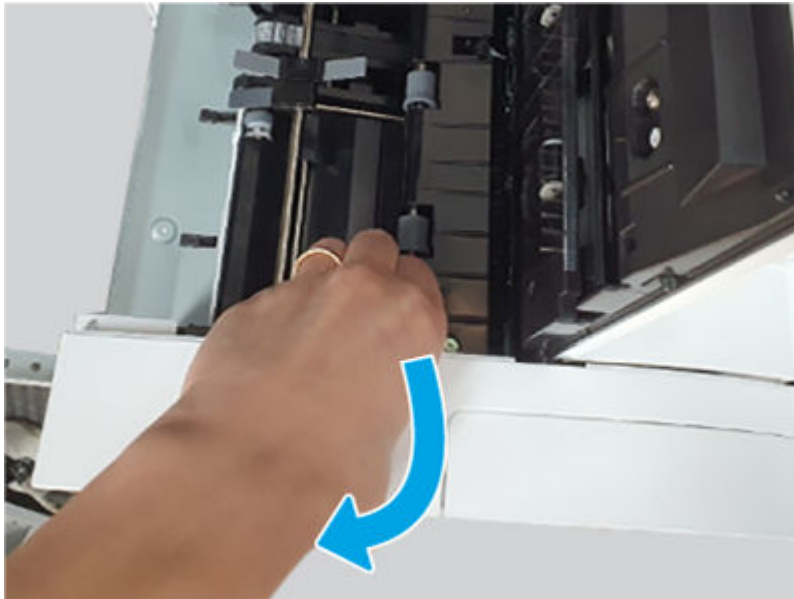
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3581 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3582 Remove the cover

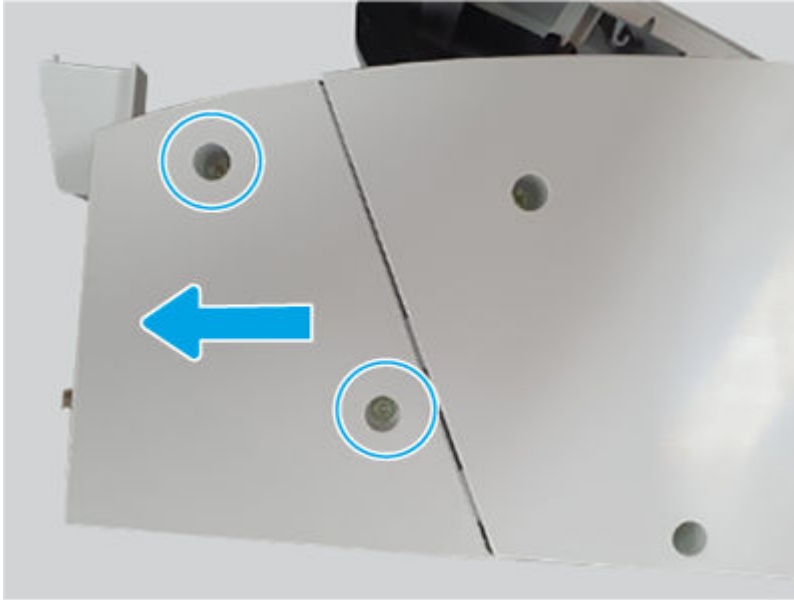


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3583 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

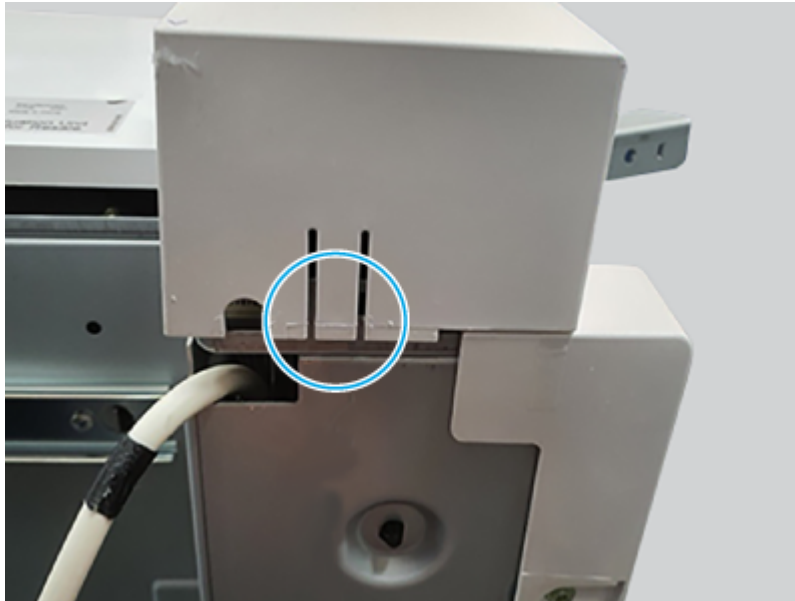
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3584 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3585 Remove the cover

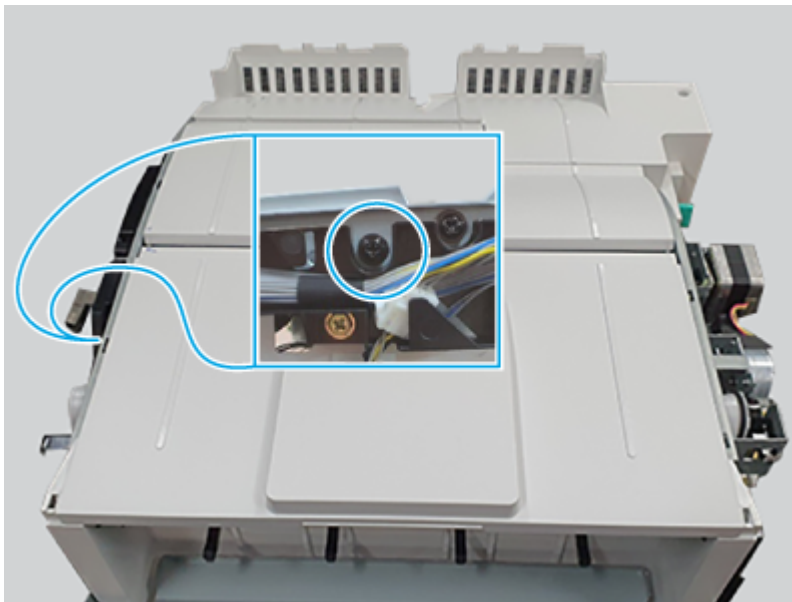


4. **Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3586 Remove the cover



5. **Remove the inner finisher cable guide**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher cable guide.

- Remove three screws, and remove the inner finisher cable guide.


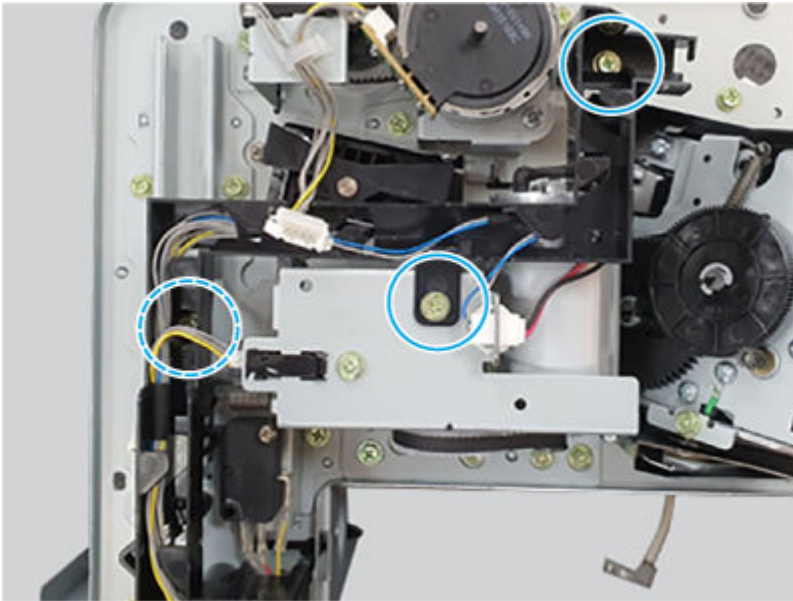
 **NOTE:** Remove the wire harness as necessary.

Figure 6-3587 Remove the guide

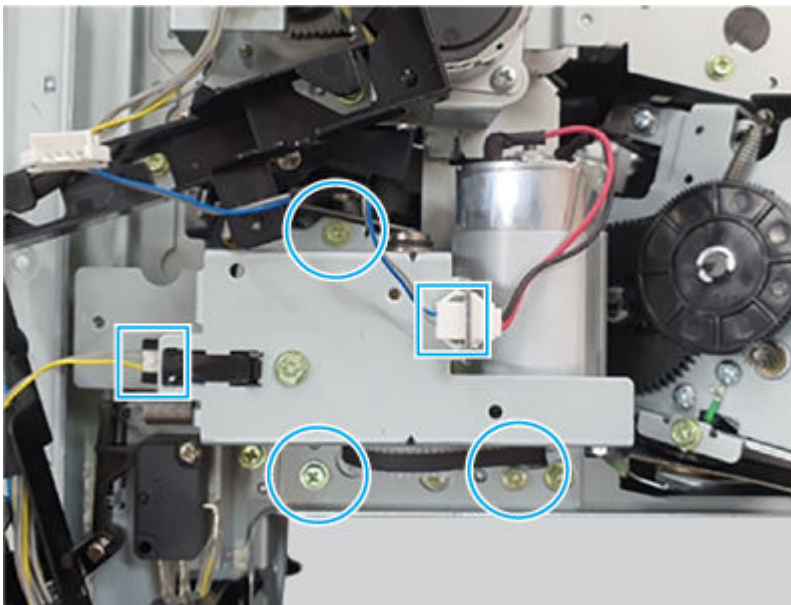


6 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-3588 Remove the assembly

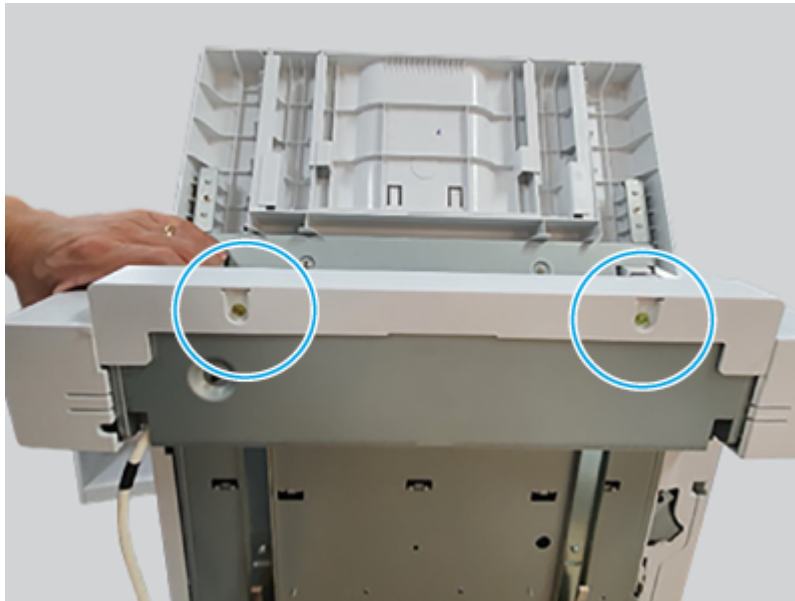


7 Remove the inner finisher PCA cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher PCA cover.

1. Lift up the inner finisher, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-3589 Remove two screws



2. Remove the inner finisher PCA cover.

Figure 6-3590 Remove the cover



8 Remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.


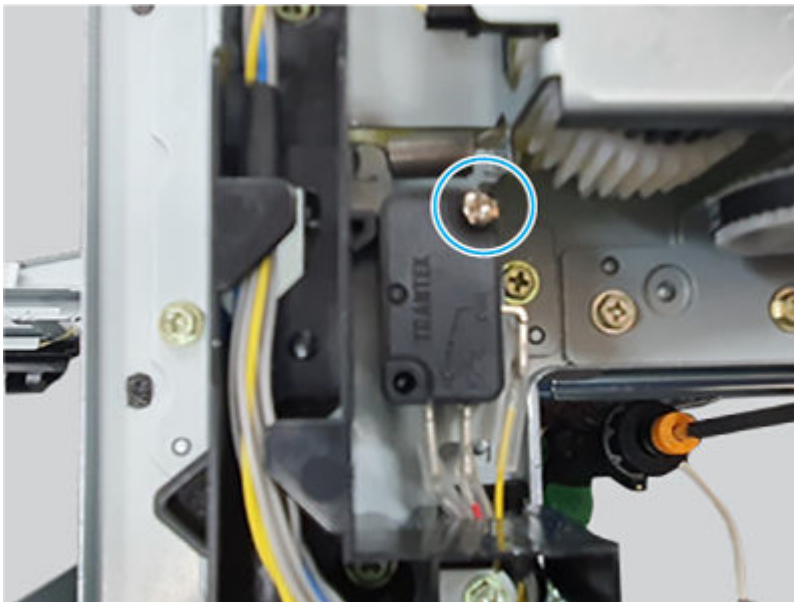
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3591 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

Figure 6-3592 Remove the switch

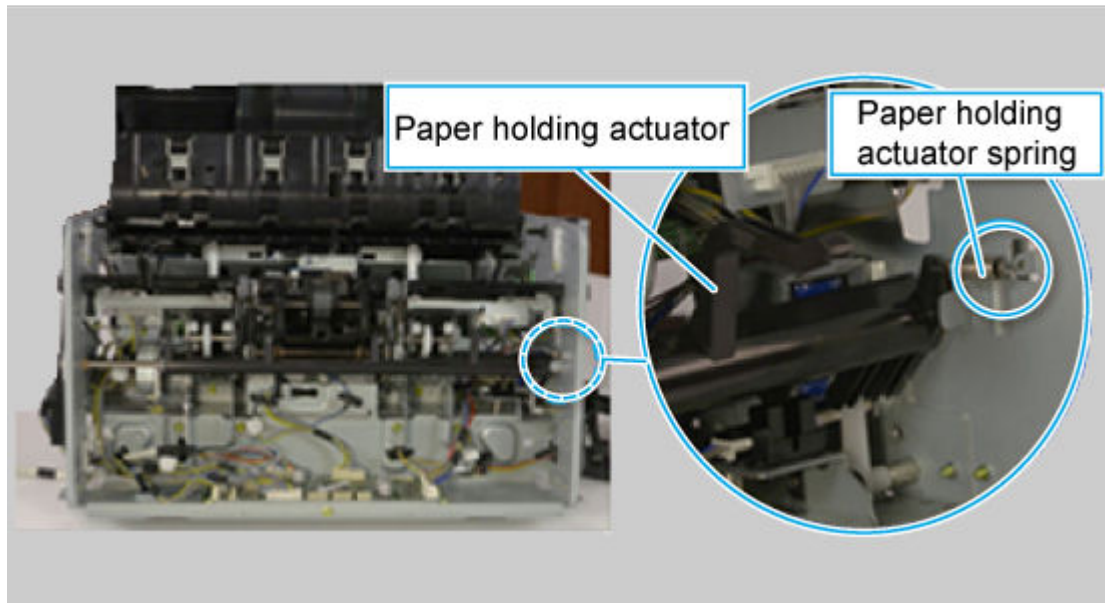


9 Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

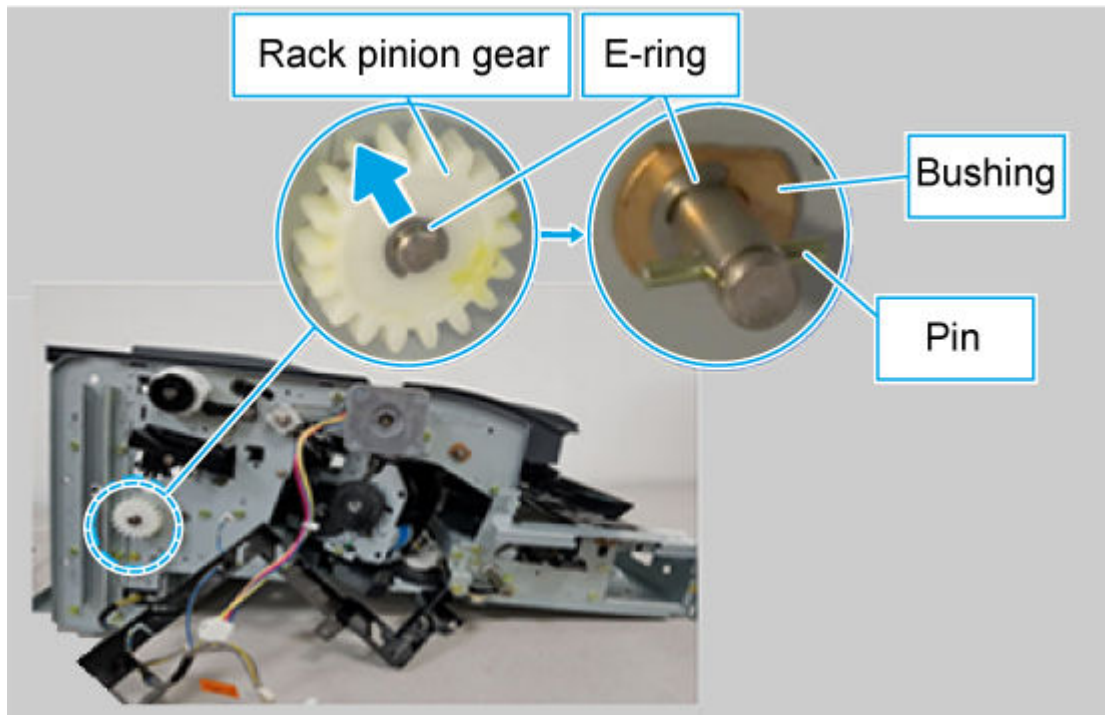
1. Remove one spring.

Figure 6-3593 Remove one spring



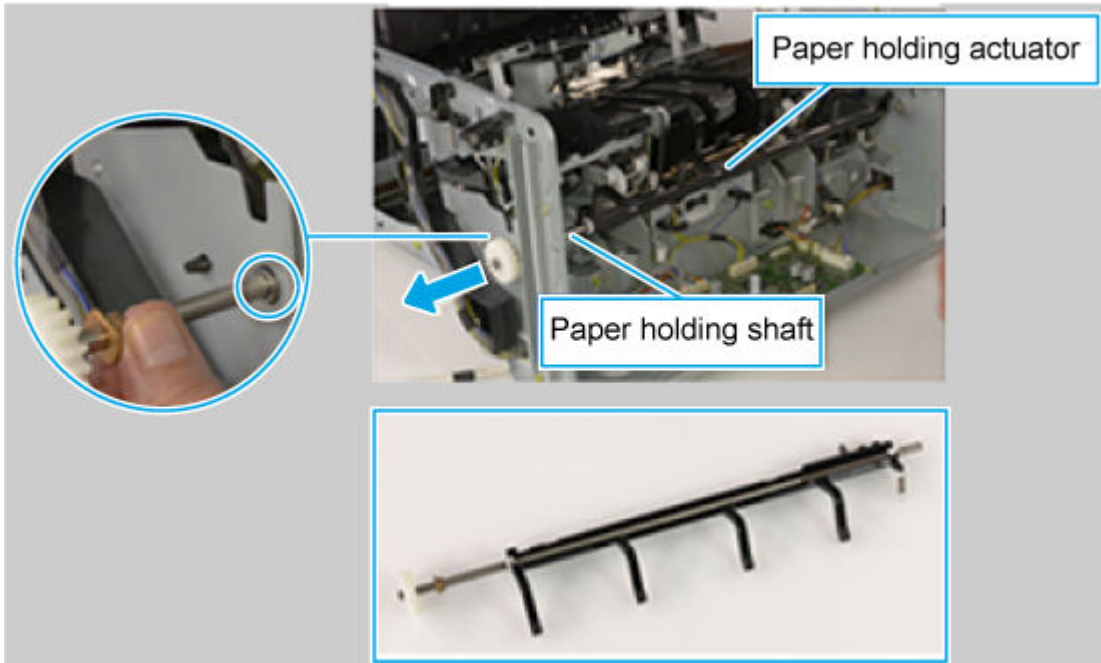
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove two e-rings, and then remove the pin and bushing.

Figure 6-3594 Remove the e-rings, pin, and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3595 Remove the actuator



10 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding kit

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper holding kit.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-423 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01314A	Paper holding kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

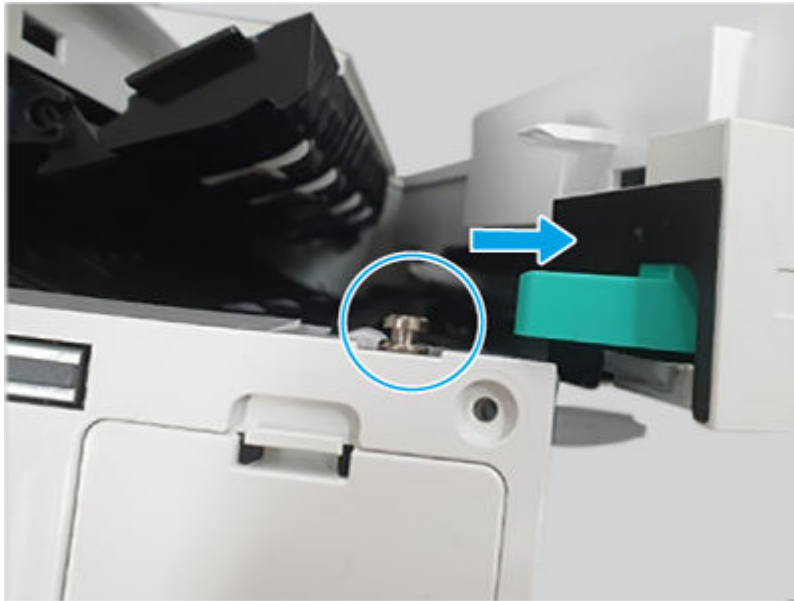
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3596 Open the punch cover



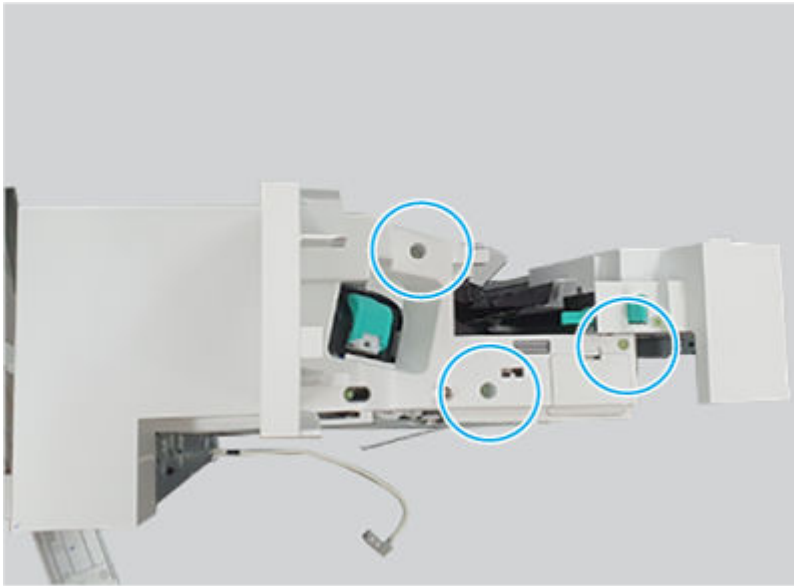
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3597 Remove the handle



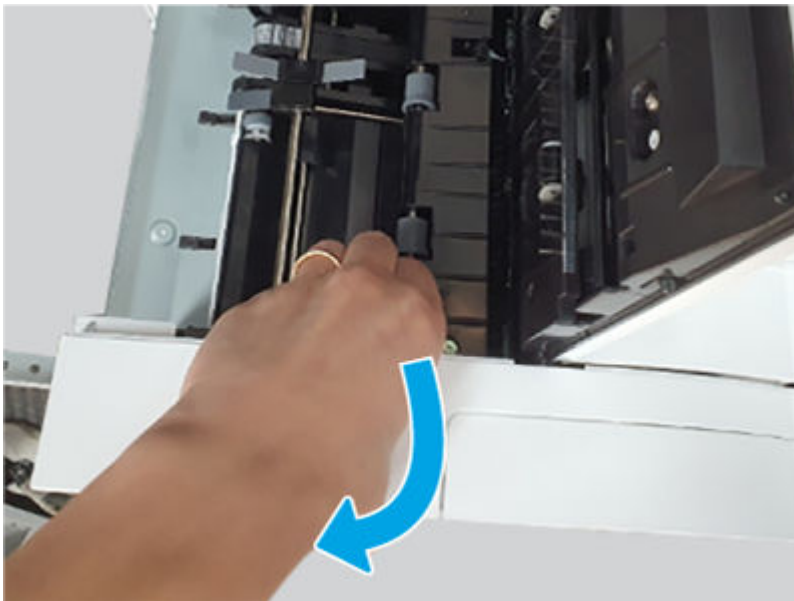
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3598 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3599 Remove the cover

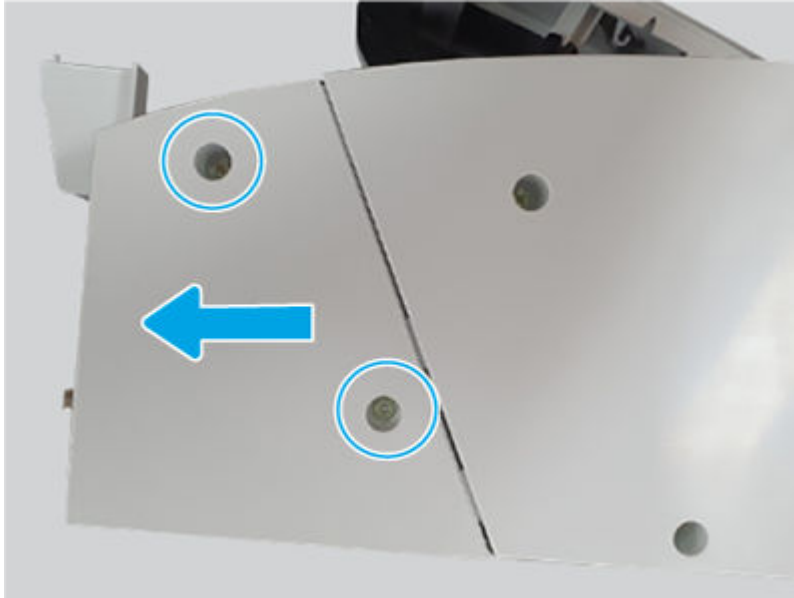


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3600 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

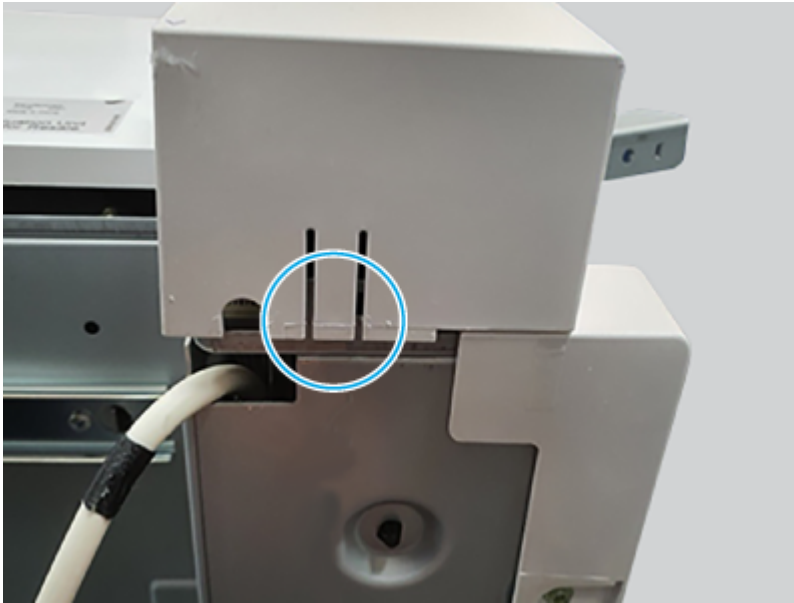
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3601 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3602 Remove the cover

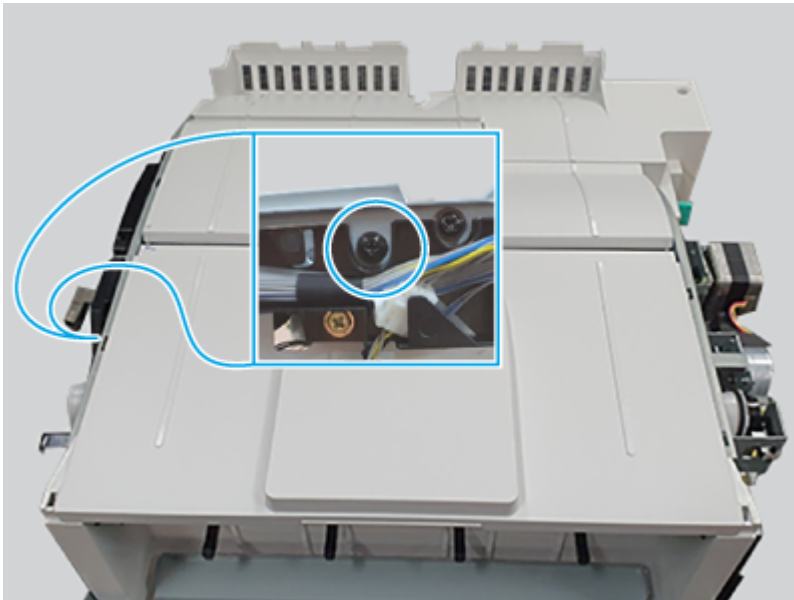


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3603 Remove the cover



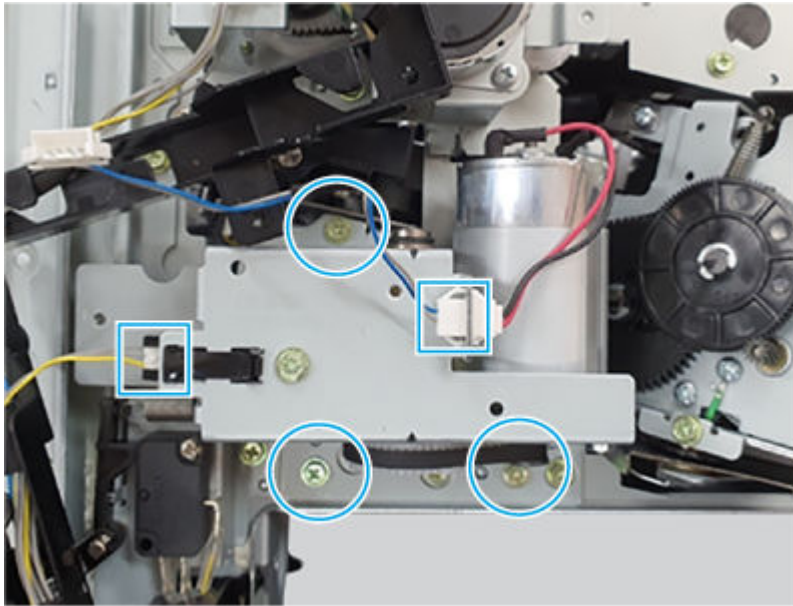
5 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-3604 Remove the assembly



6 Remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.


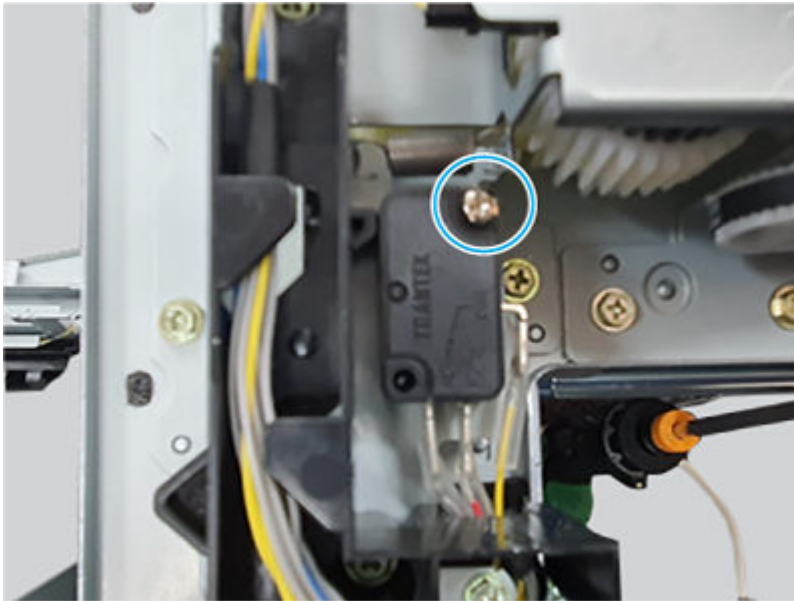
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3605 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

Figure 6-3606 Remove the switch

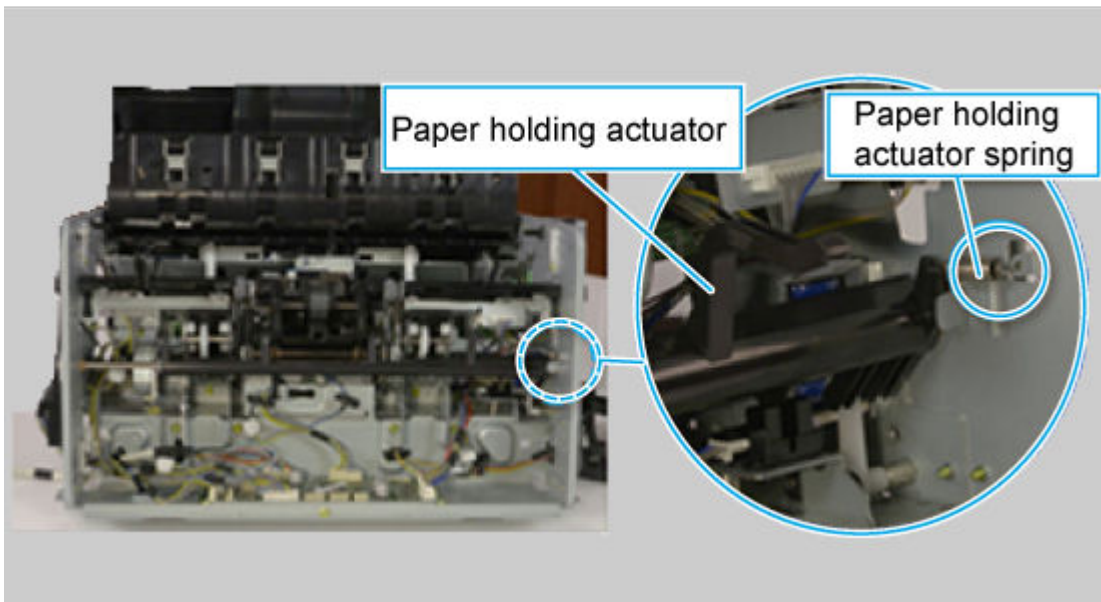


7 Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

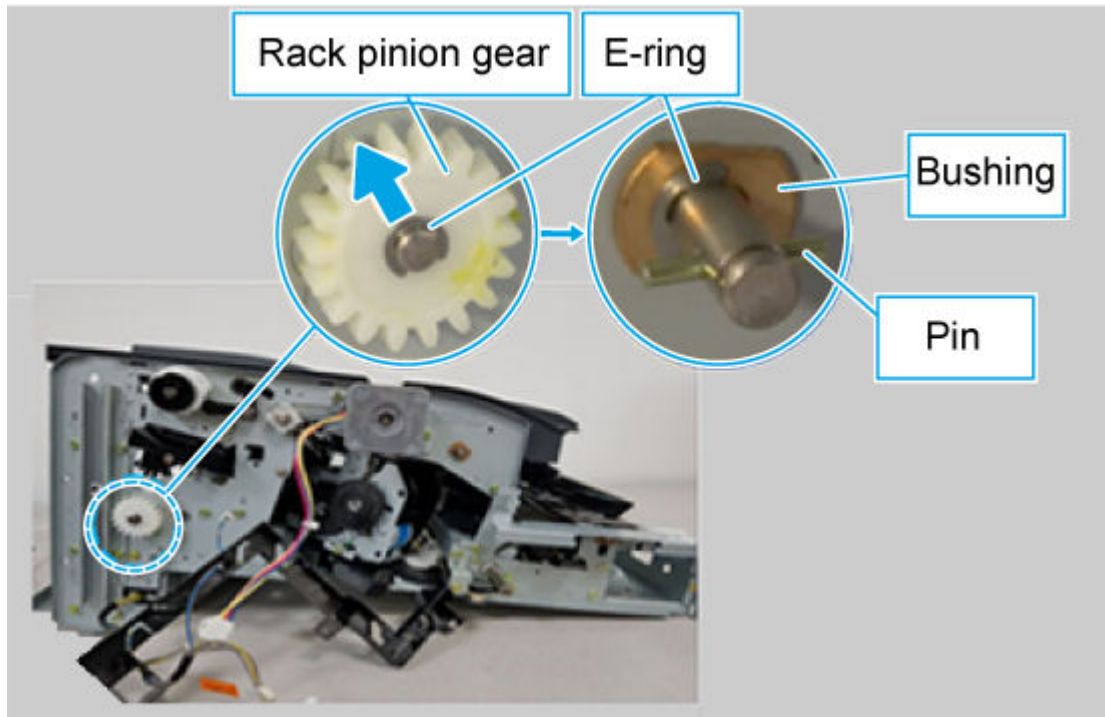
1. Remove one spring.

Figure 6-3607 Remove one spring



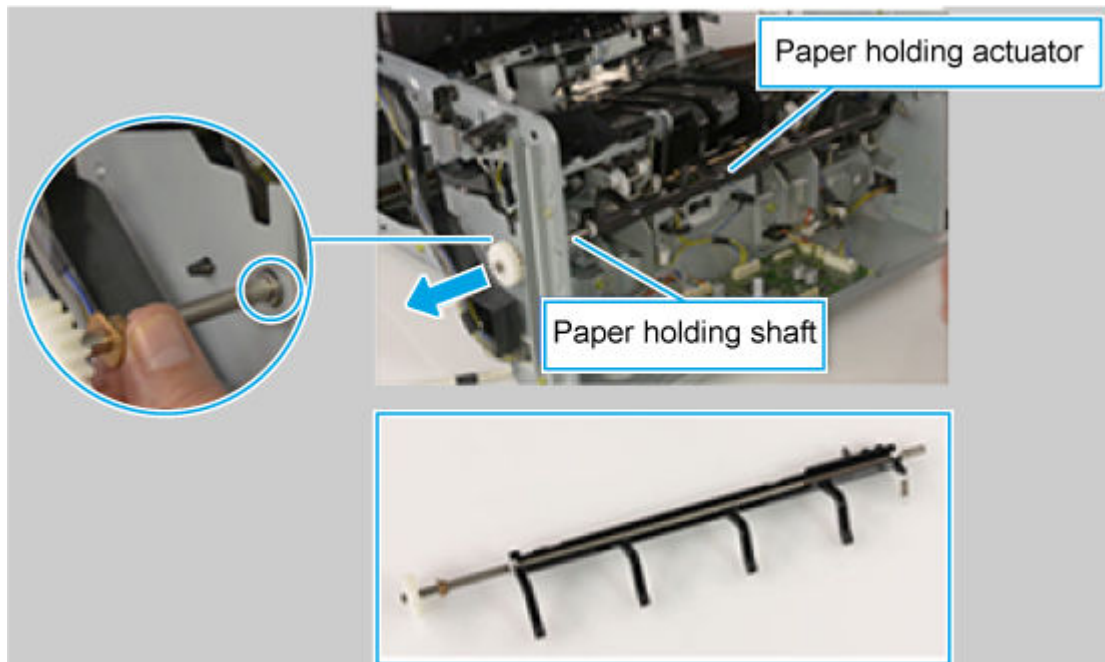
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove two e-rings, and then remove the pin and bushing.

Figure 6-3608 Remove the e-rings, pin, and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3609 Remove the actuator

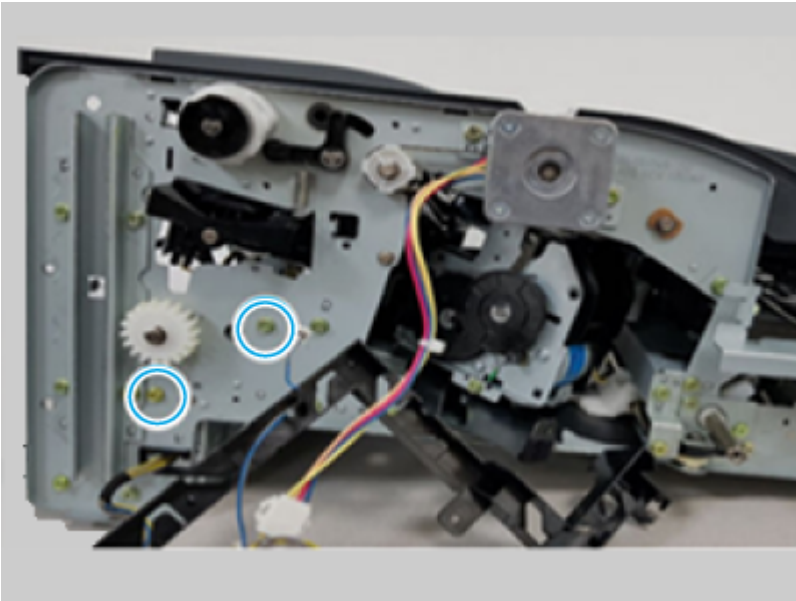


8 Remove the inner finisher paper holding kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding kit.

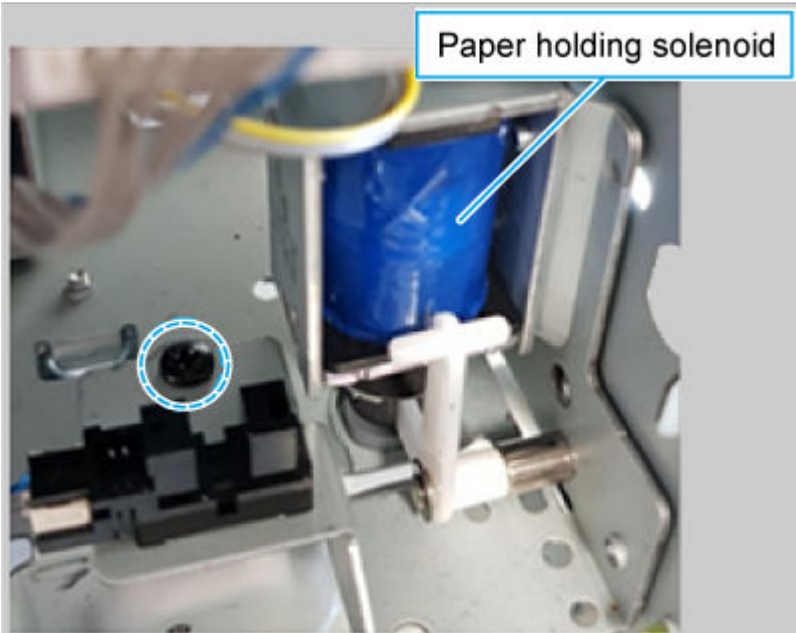
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3610 Remove two screws



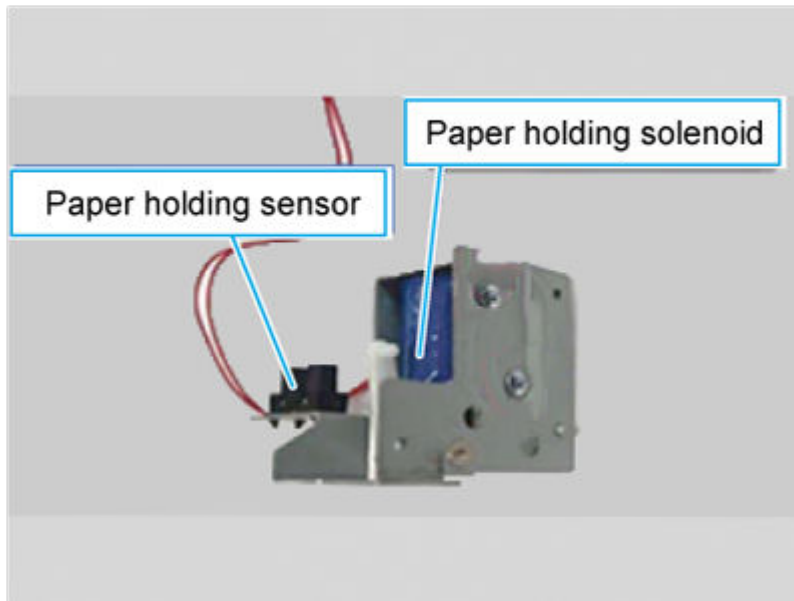
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3611 Remove one screw



3. Remove the inner finisher paper holding kit.


Figure 6-3612 Remove the kit



9 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding solenoid

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper holding solenoid.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-424 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC33-00037A	Solenoid, TDS (Paper holding solenoid)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

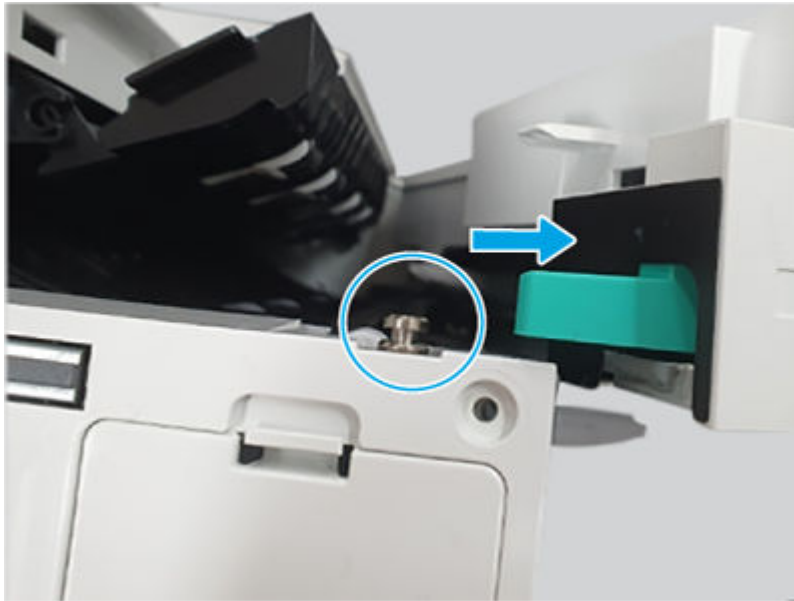
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3613 Open the punch cover



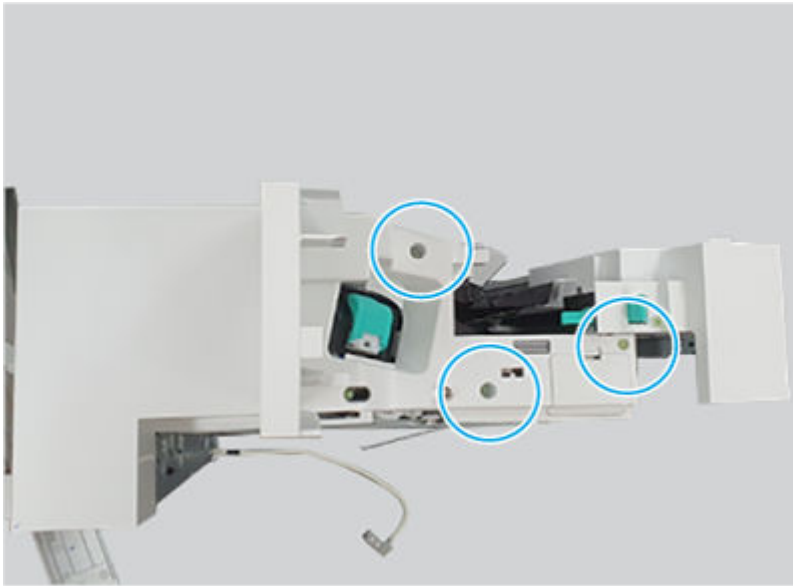
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3614 Remove the handle



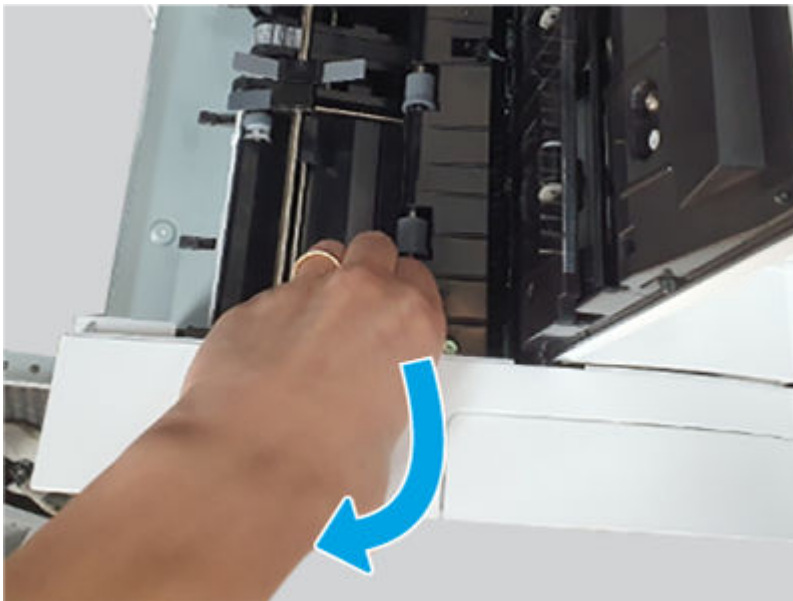
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3615 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3616 Remove the cover

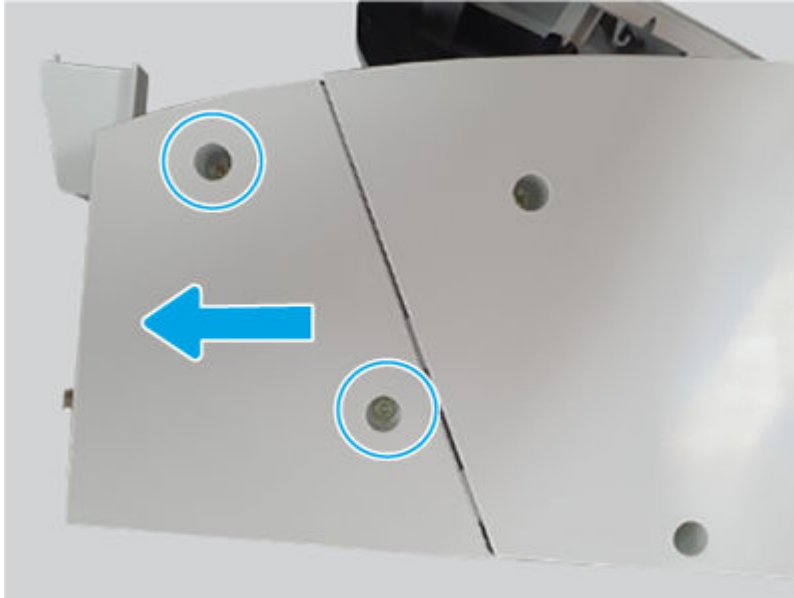


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3617 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

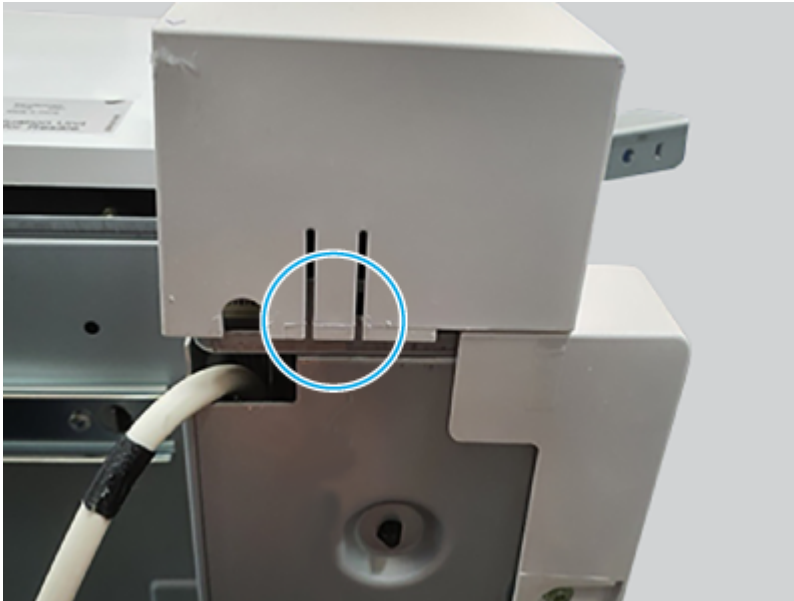
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3618 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3619 Remove the cover

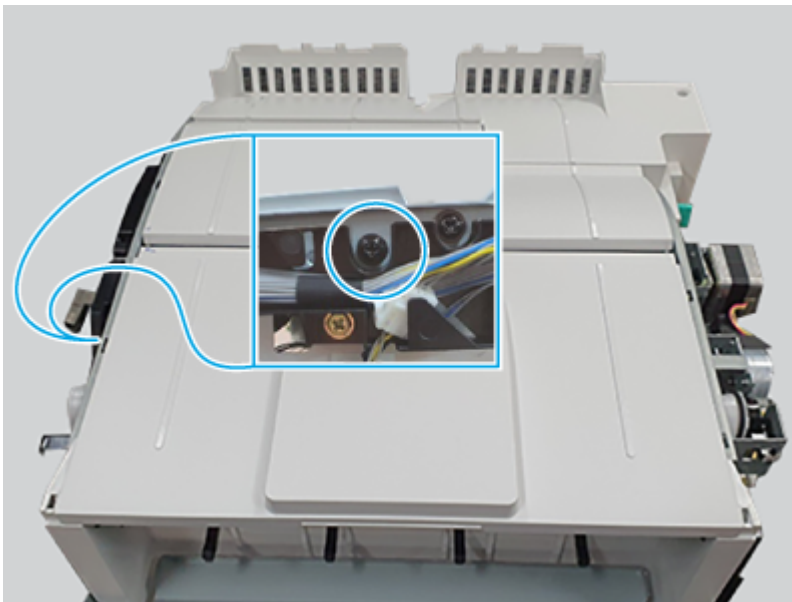


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3620 Remove the cover



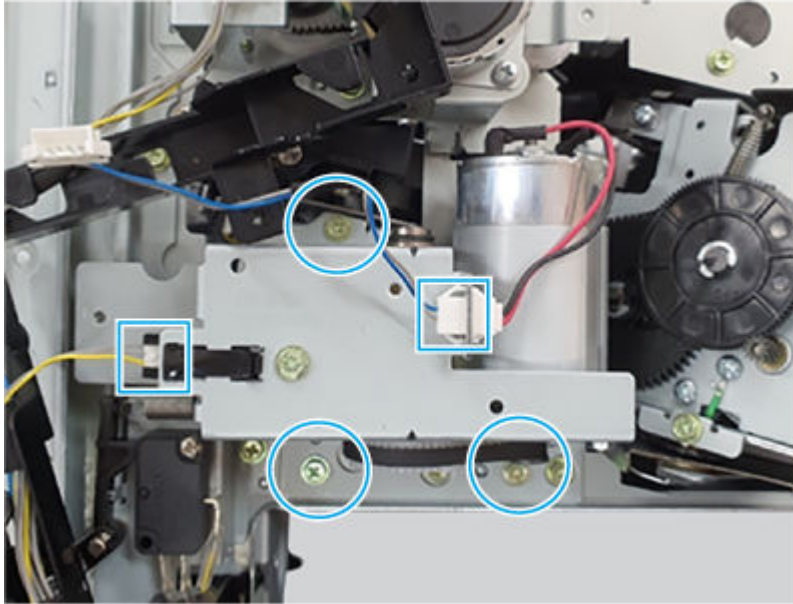
5 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-3621 Remove the assembly



6 Remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.


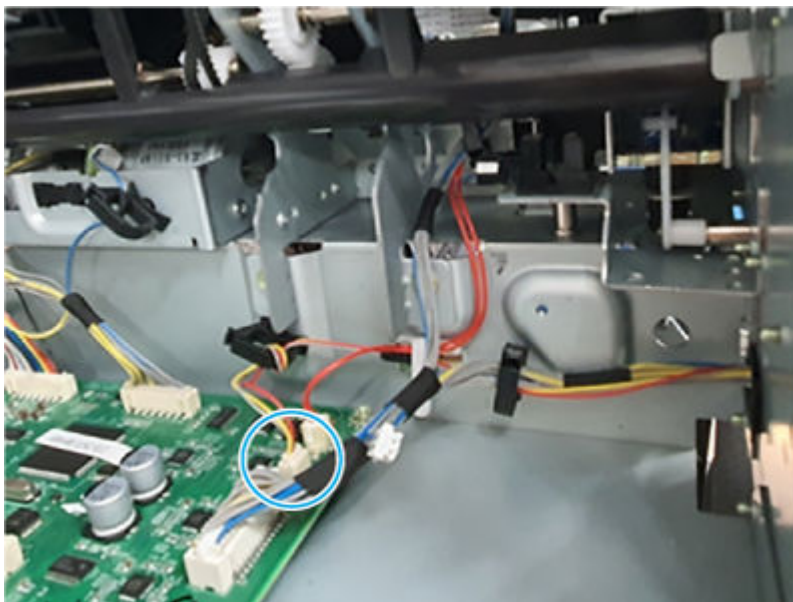
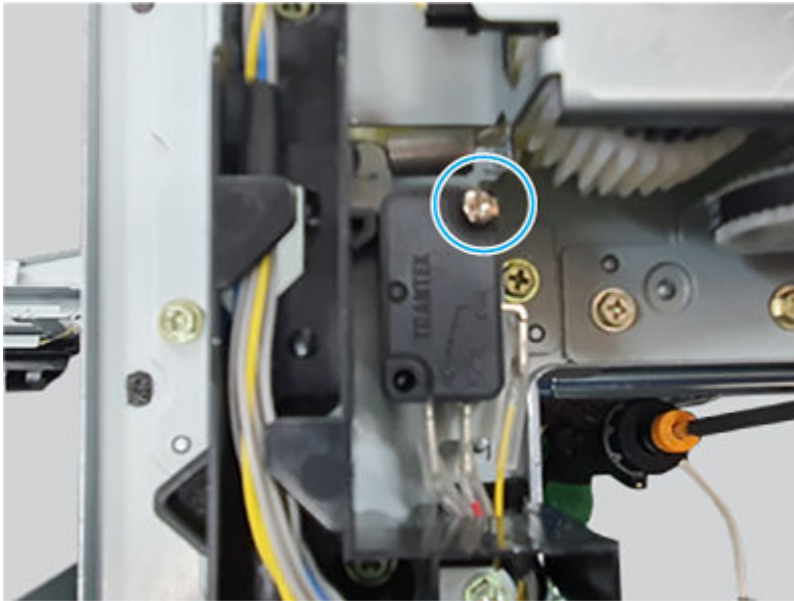
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3622 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

Figure 6-3623 Remove the switch

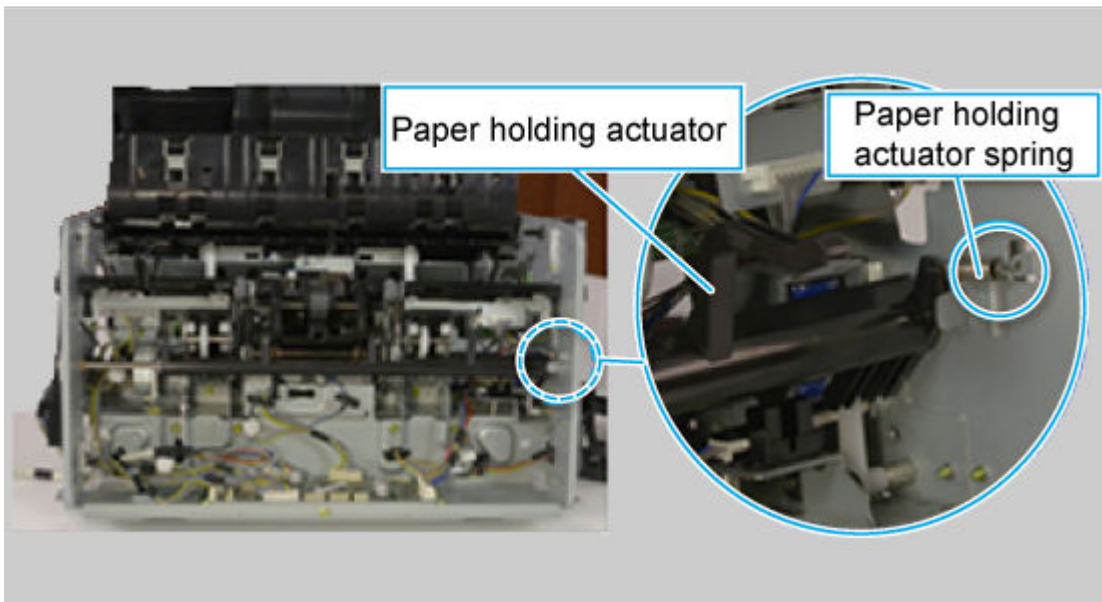


7 Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

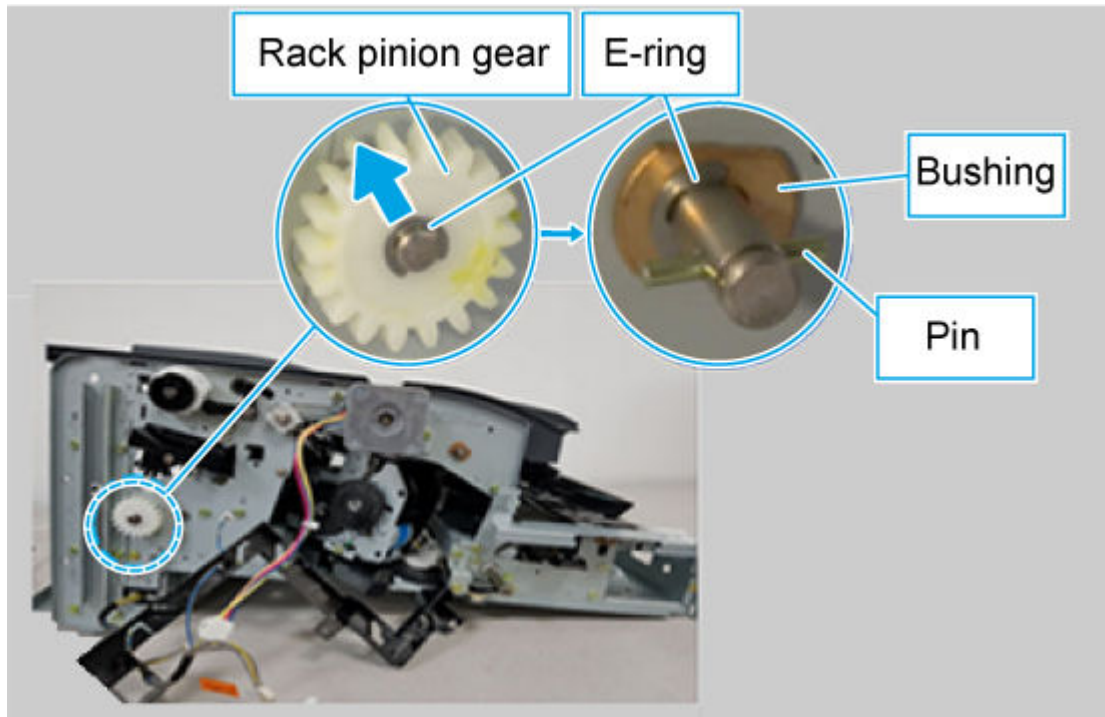
1. Remove one spring.

Figure 6-3624 Remove one spring



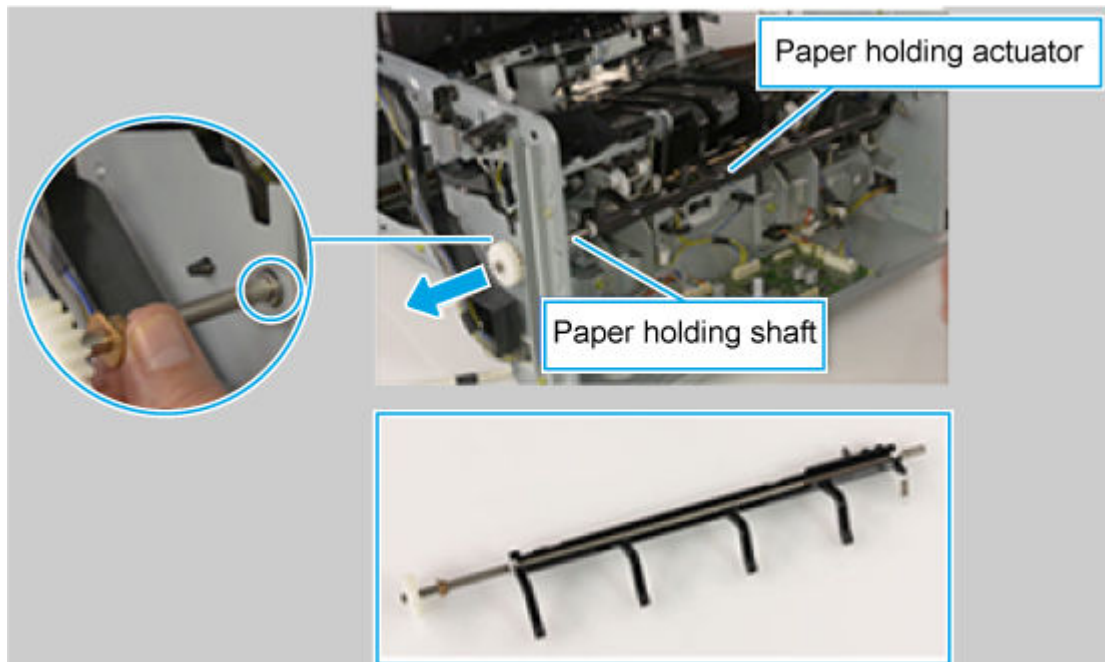
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove two e-rings, and then remove the pin and bushing.

Figure 6-3625 Remove the e-rings, pin, and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3626 Remove the actuator

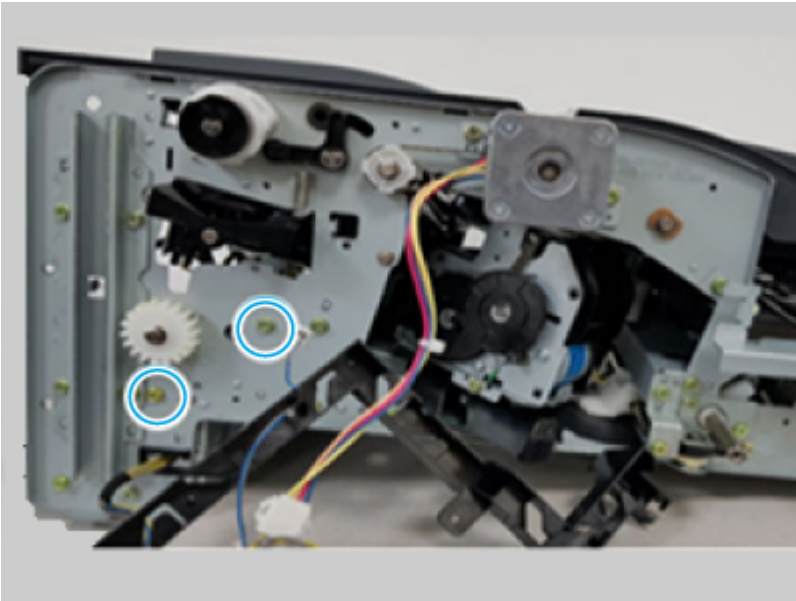


8 Remove the inner finisher paper holding kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding kit.

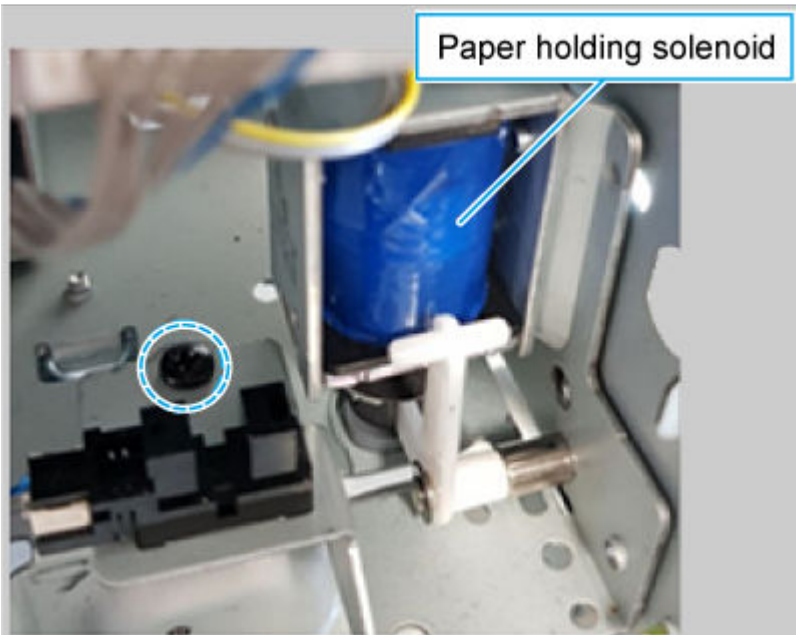
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3627 Remove two screws



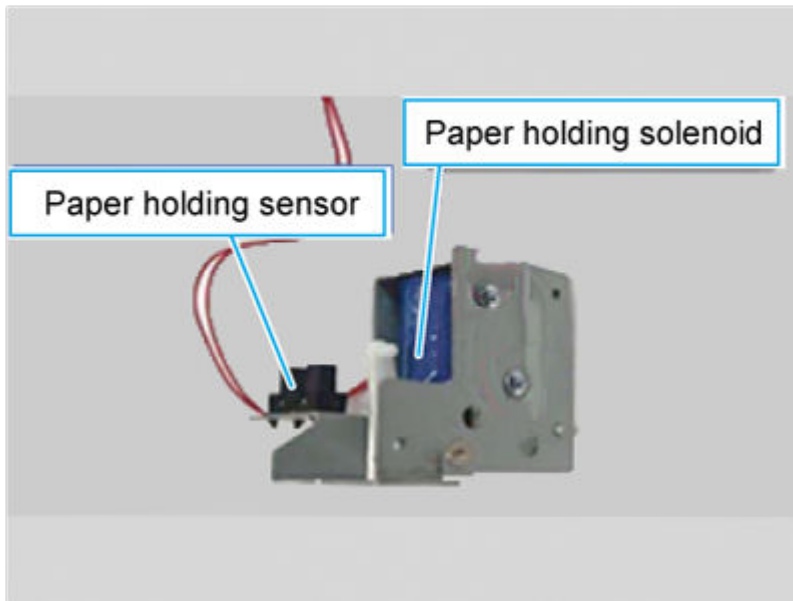
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3628 Remove one screw



3. Remove the inner finisher paper holding kit.

Figure 6-3629 Remove the kit

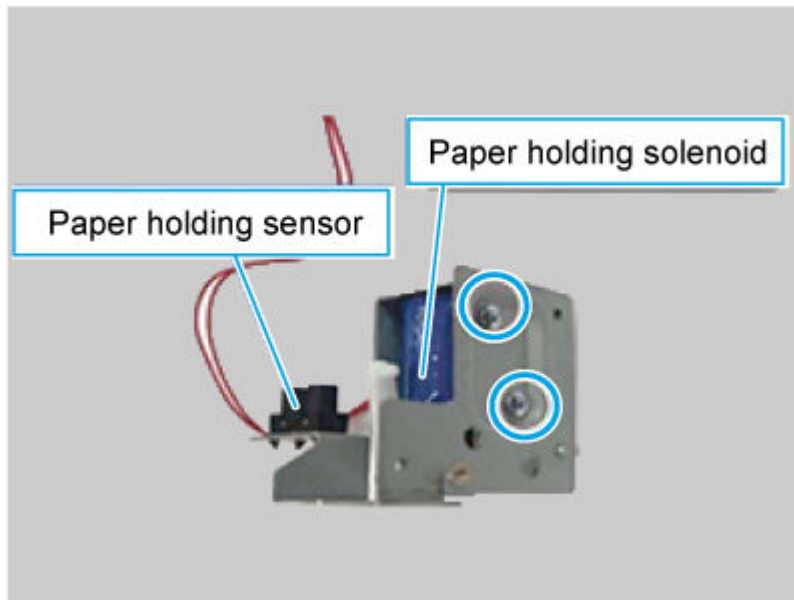


9 Remove the inner finisher paper holding solenoid

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding solenoid.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher paper holding solenoid.


Figure 6-3630 Remove the solenoid



10 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper holding sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-425 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paper holding sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

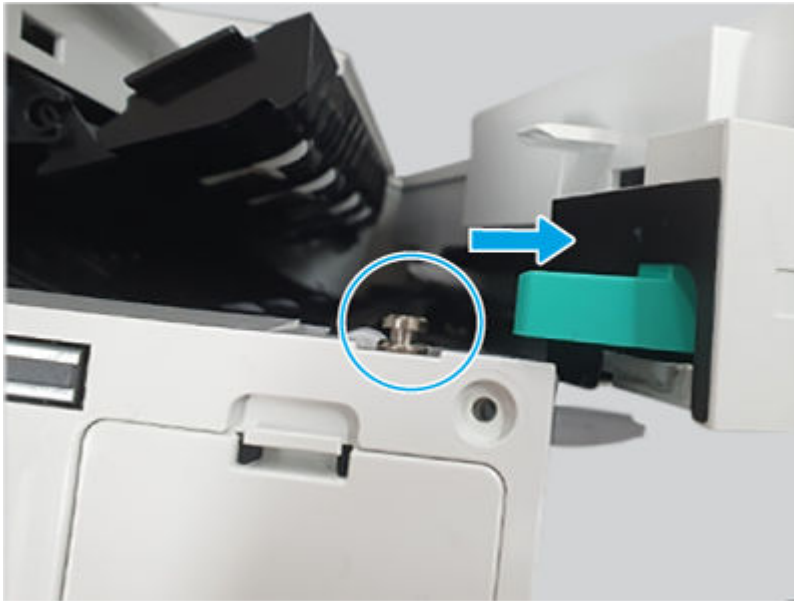
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3631 Open the punch cover



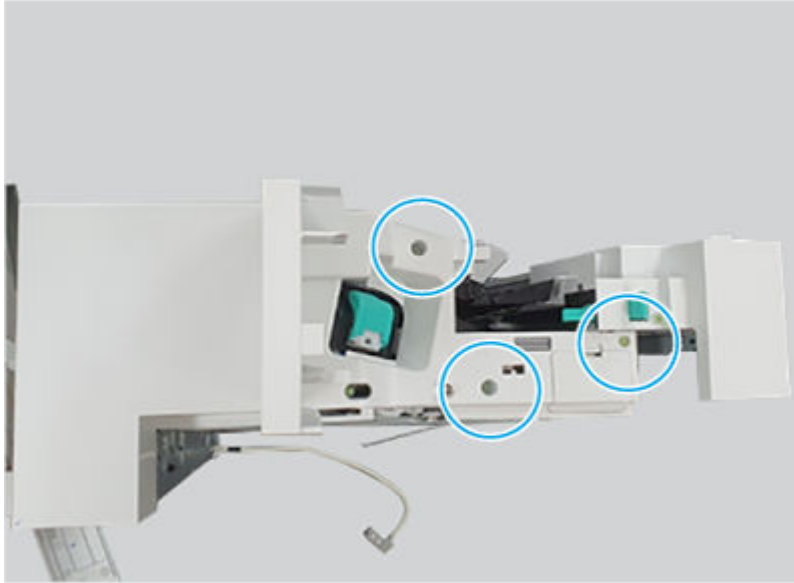
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3632 Remove the handle



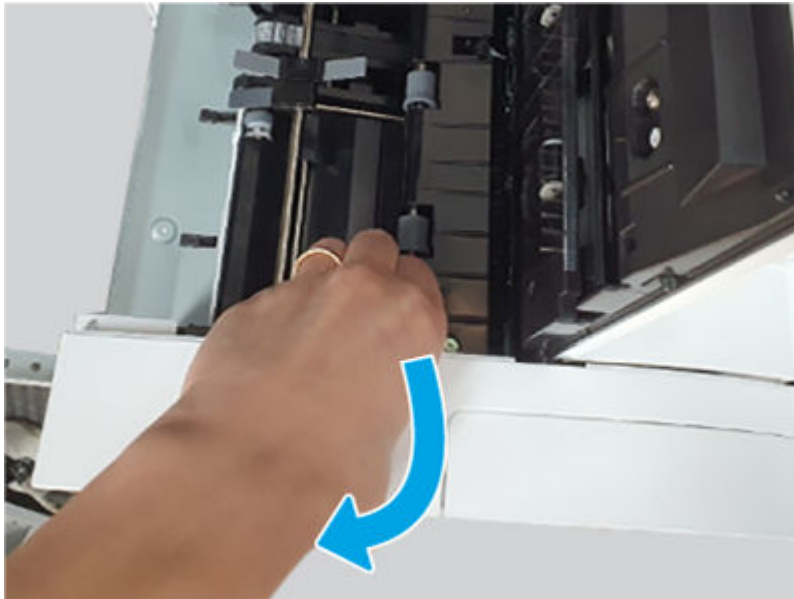
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3633 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3634 Remove the cover

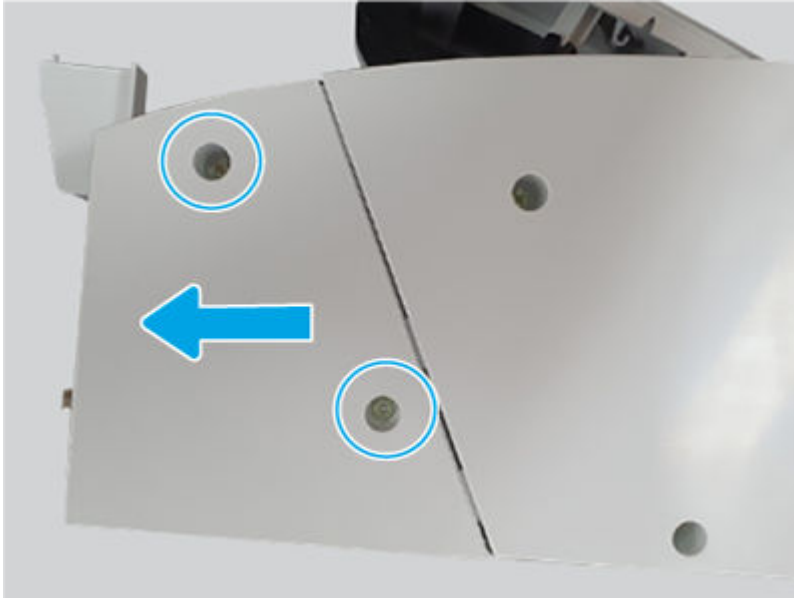


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3635 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

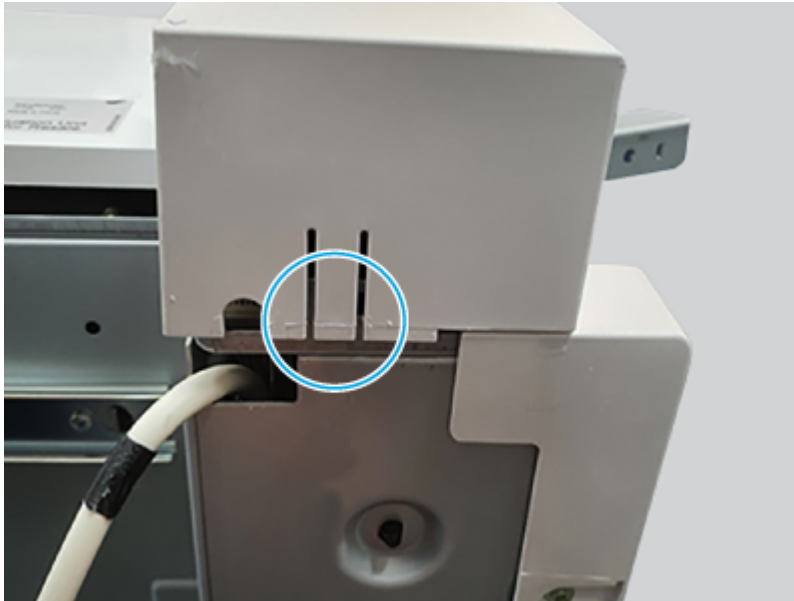
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3636 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3637 Remove the cover

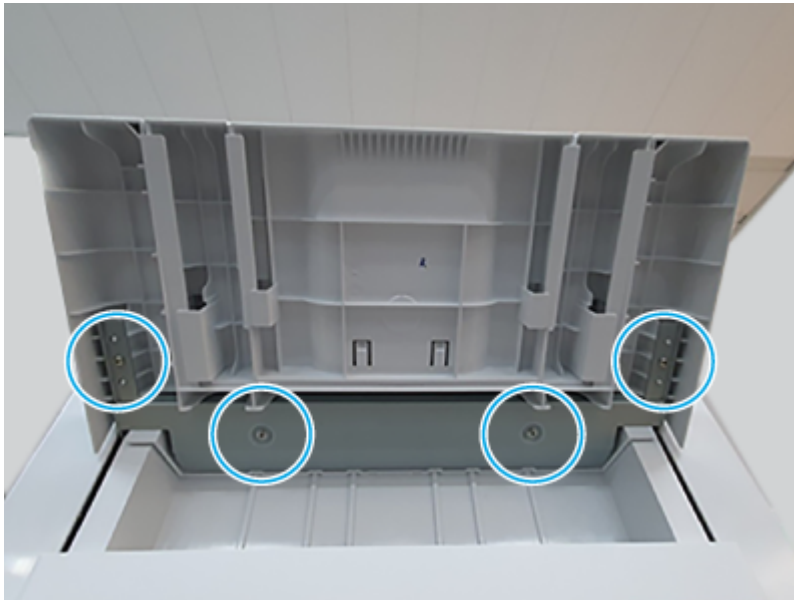


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

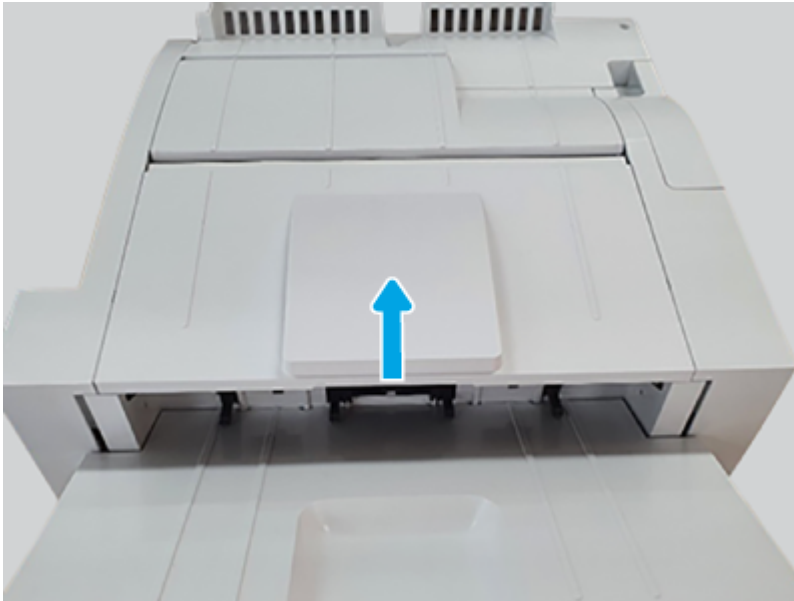
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-3638 Remove four screws



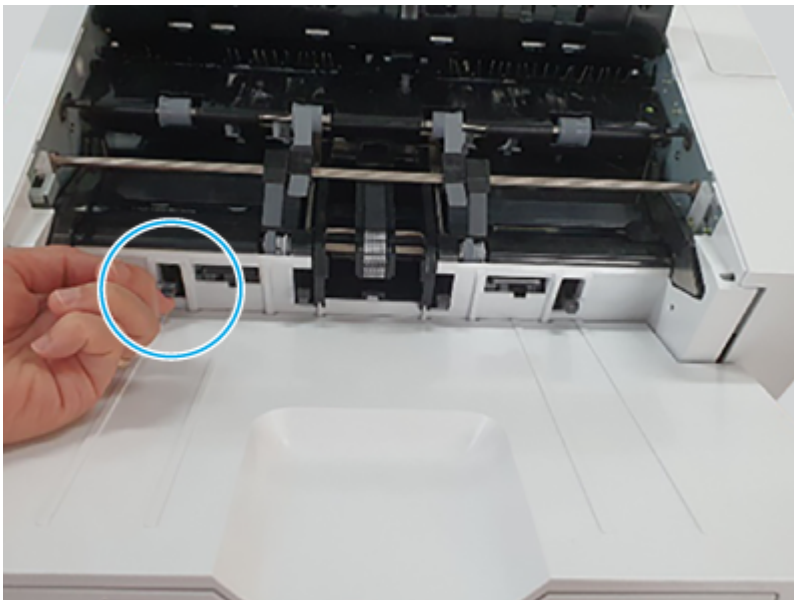
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-3639 Open the cover



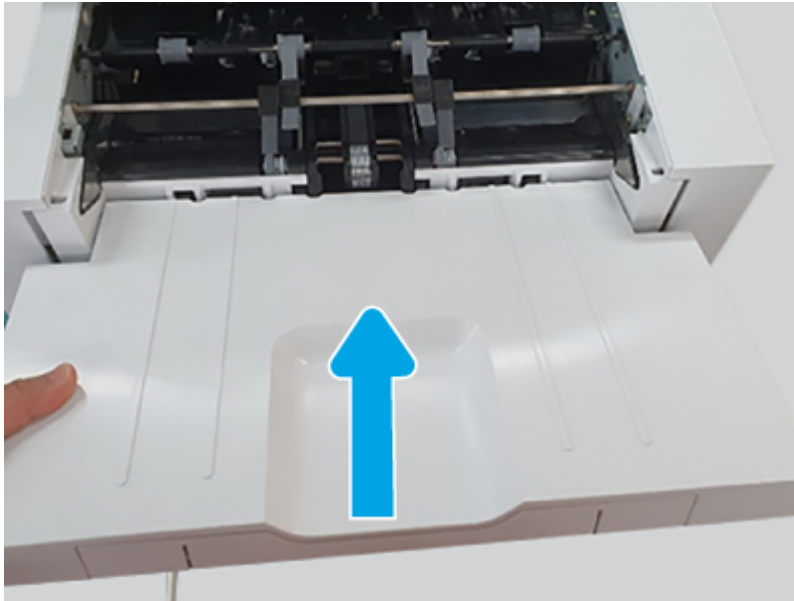
3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3640 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-3641 Remove the tray

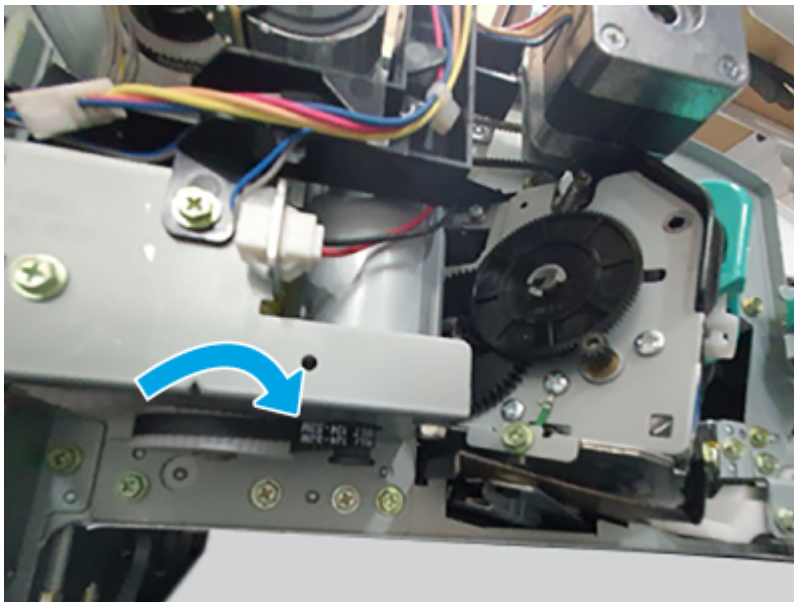


- 5 **Remove the output tray frame**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray frame.

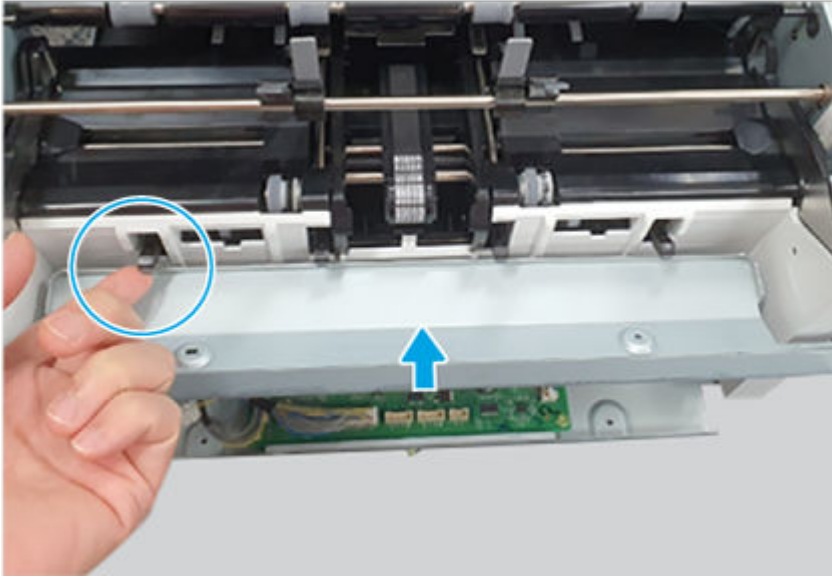
1. Rotate the output tray gear.

Figure 6-3642 Rotate the gear



2. Press the paper holding actuator, and then lift the inner finisher output tray frame up to remove it.

Figure 6-3643 Remove the frame

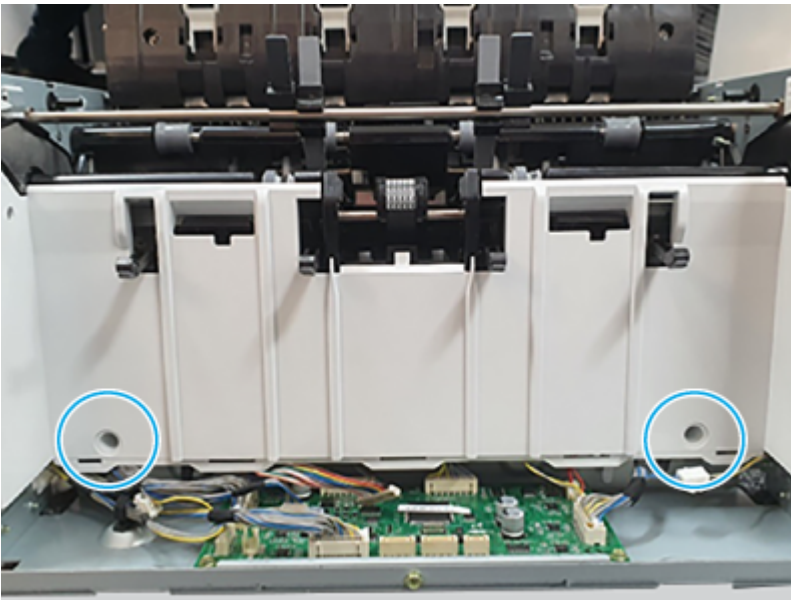


6 Remove the finisher sub stay assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

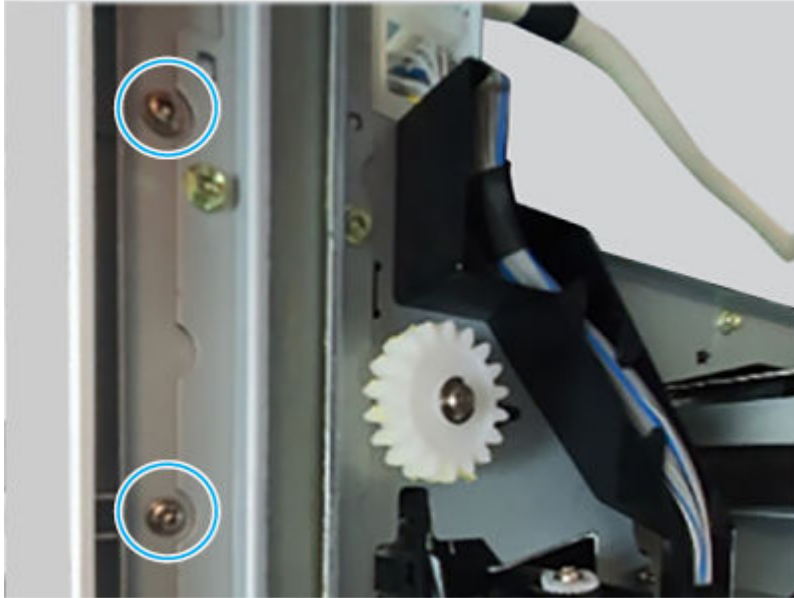
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3644 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3645 Remove two screws



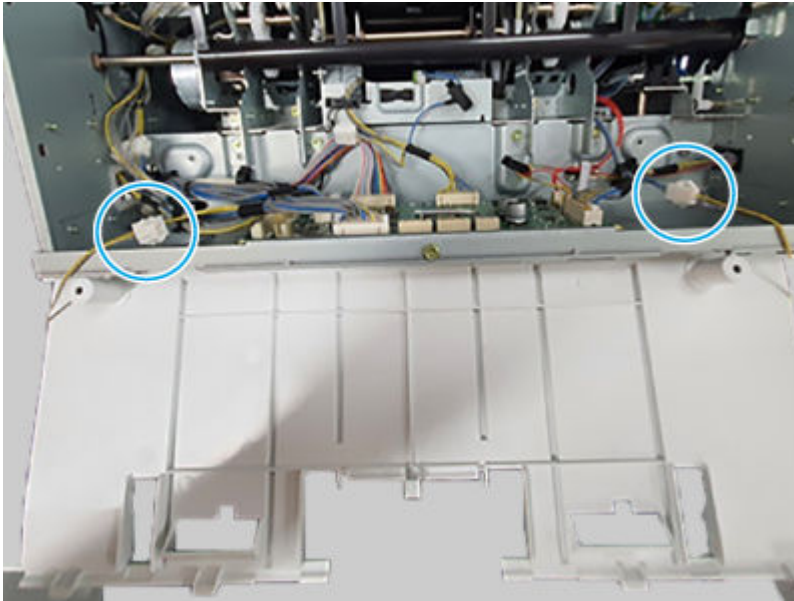
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3646 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

Figure 6-3647 Remove the assembly

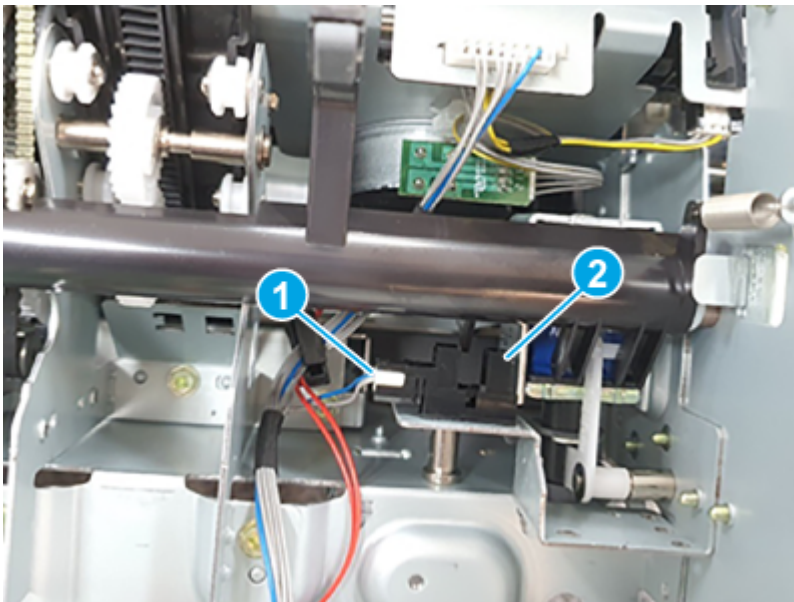


7 Remove the inner finisher paper holding sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the inner finisher paper holding sensor.

Figure 6-3648 Remove the sensor



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.




NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA and switch

Review the inner finisher PCA and switch removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher PCA.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-426 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW49-60001	Inner finisher PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

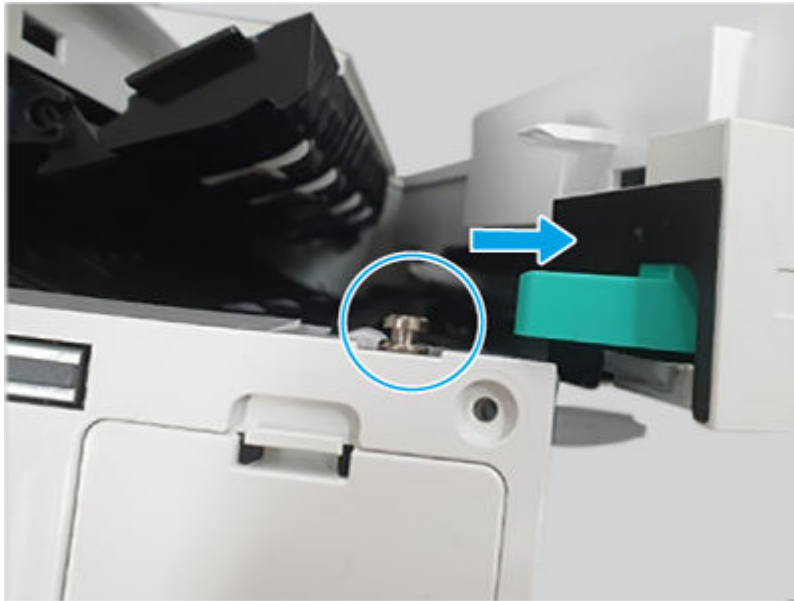
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3649 Open the punch cover



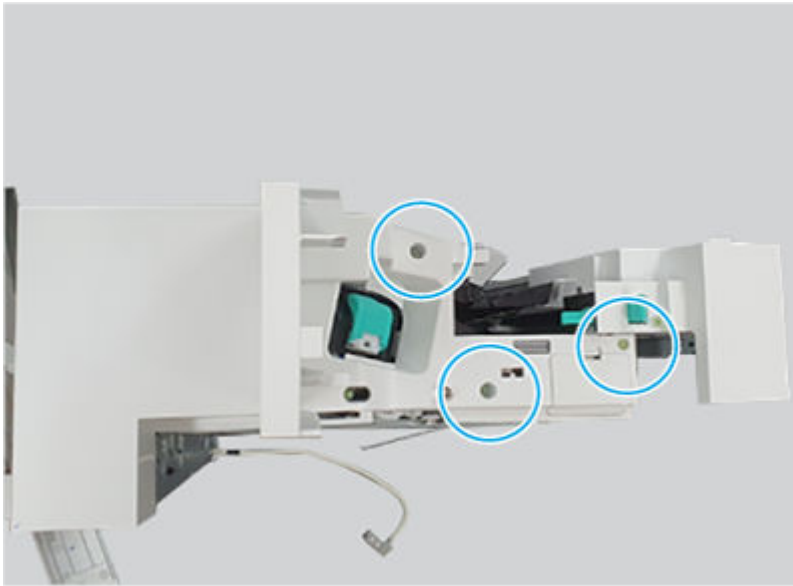
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3650 Remove the handle



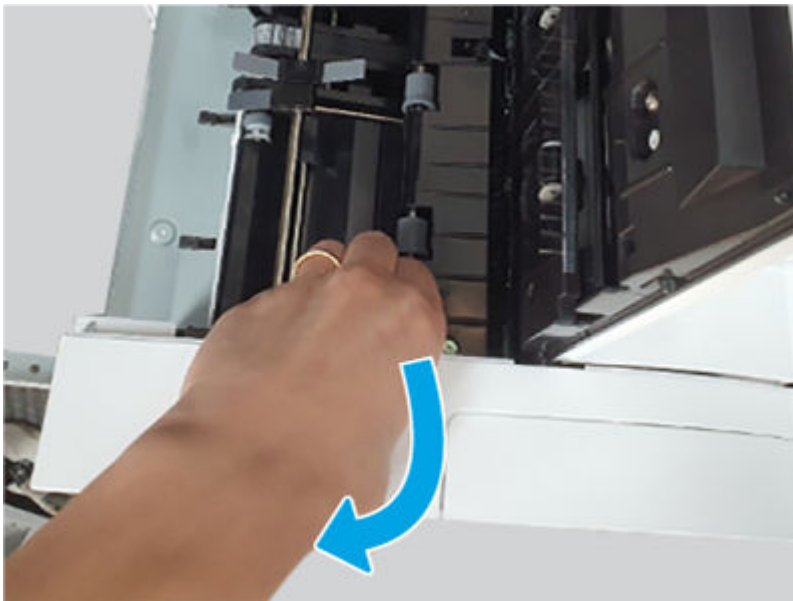
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3651 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3652 Remove the cover

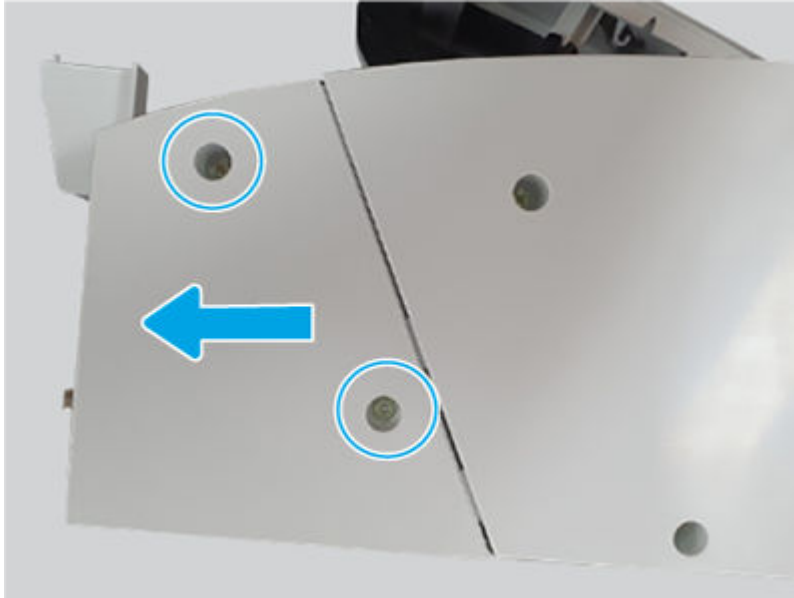


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3653 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

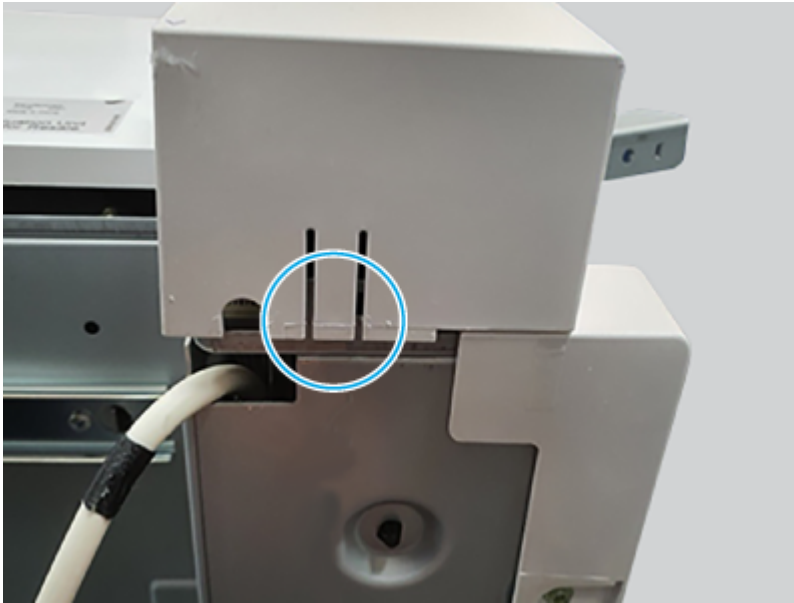
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3654 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3655 Remove the cover

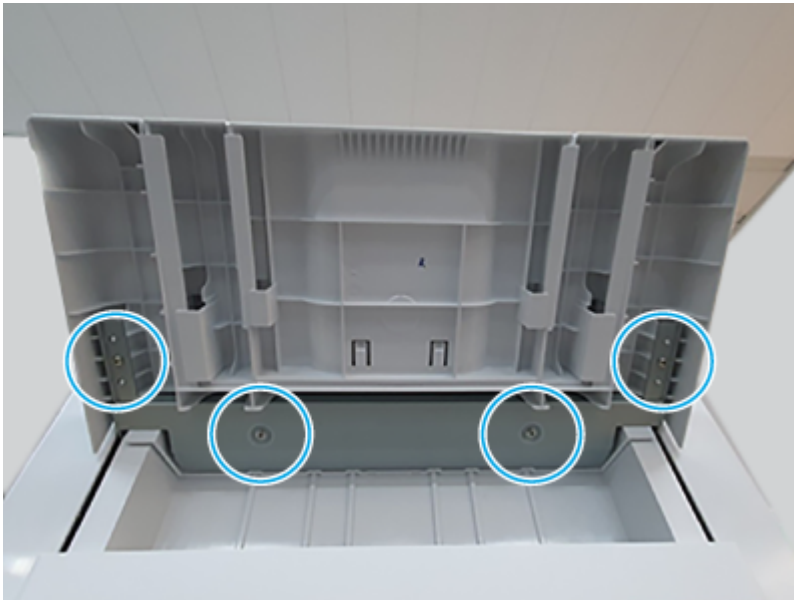


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

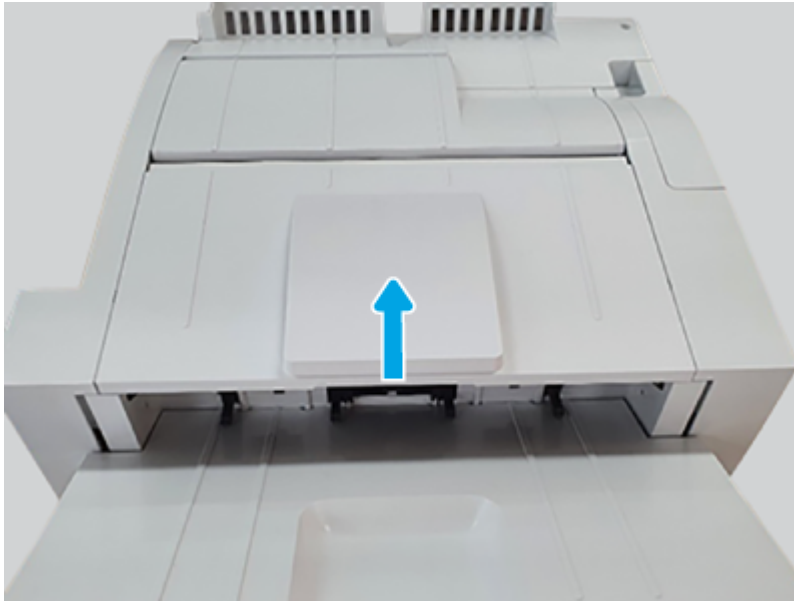
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-3656 Remove four screws



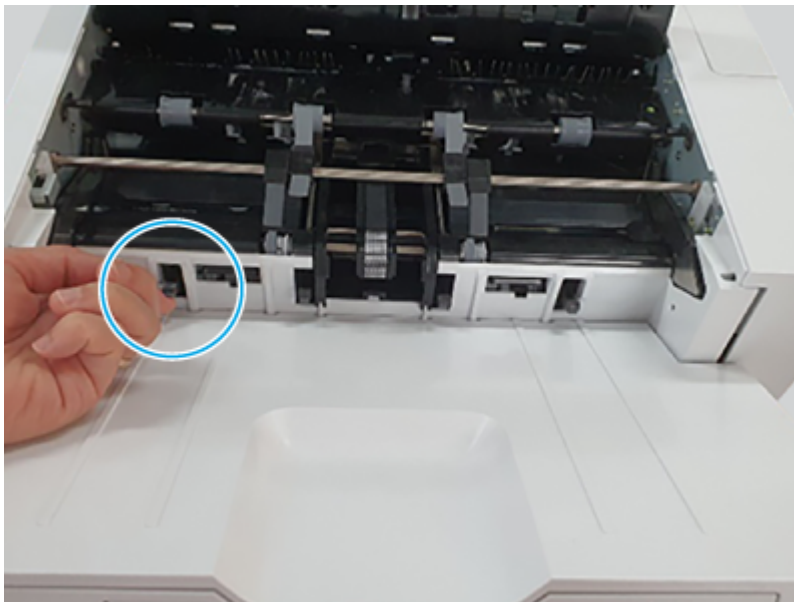
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-3657 Open the cover



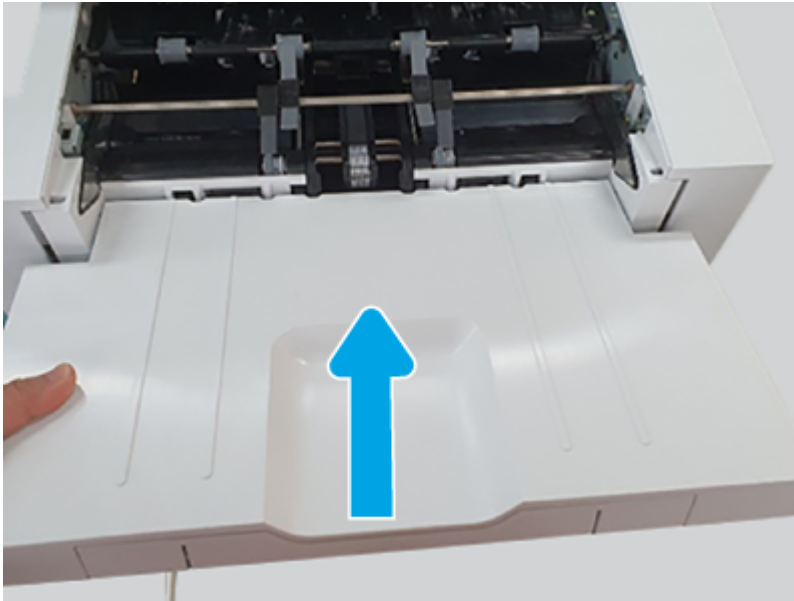
3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3658 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-3659 Remove the tray

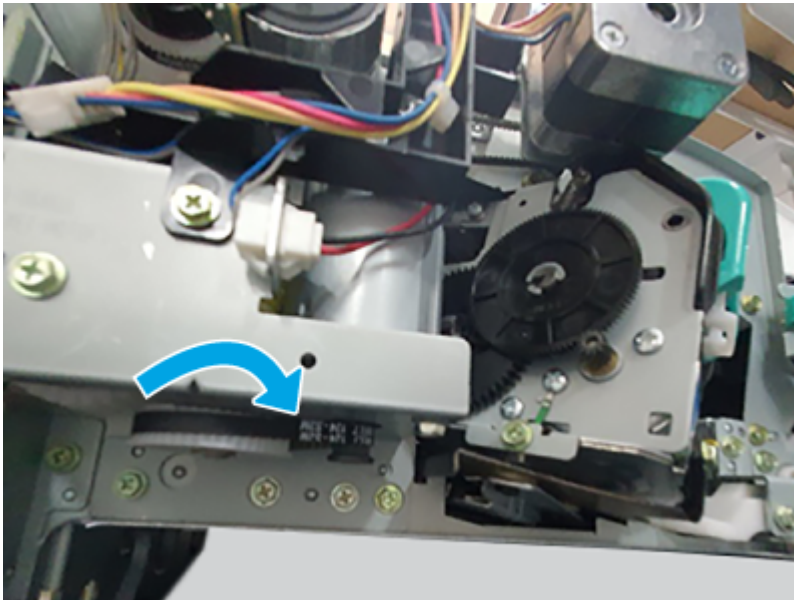


- 5 **Remove the output tray frame**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray frame.

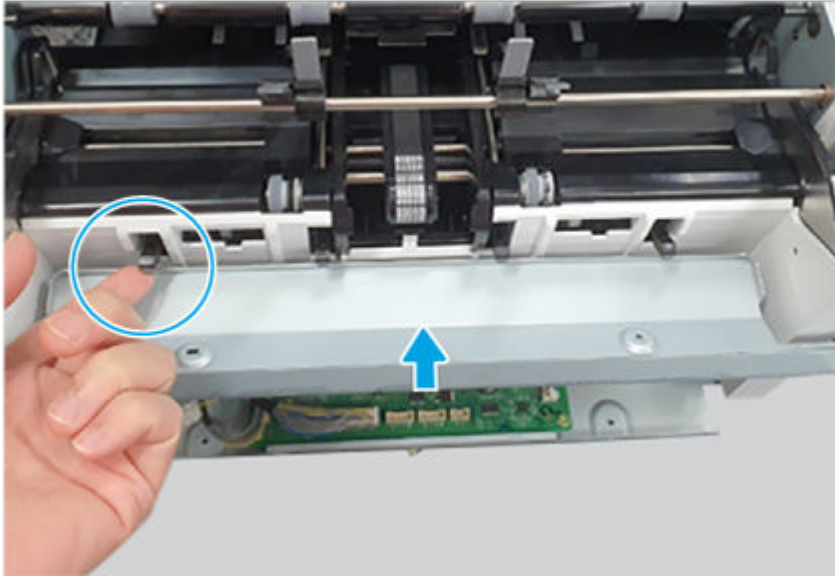
1. Rotate the output tray gear.

Figure 6-3660 Rotate the gear



2. Press the paper holding actuator, and then lift the inner finisher output tray frame up to remove it.

Figure 6-3661 Remove the frame

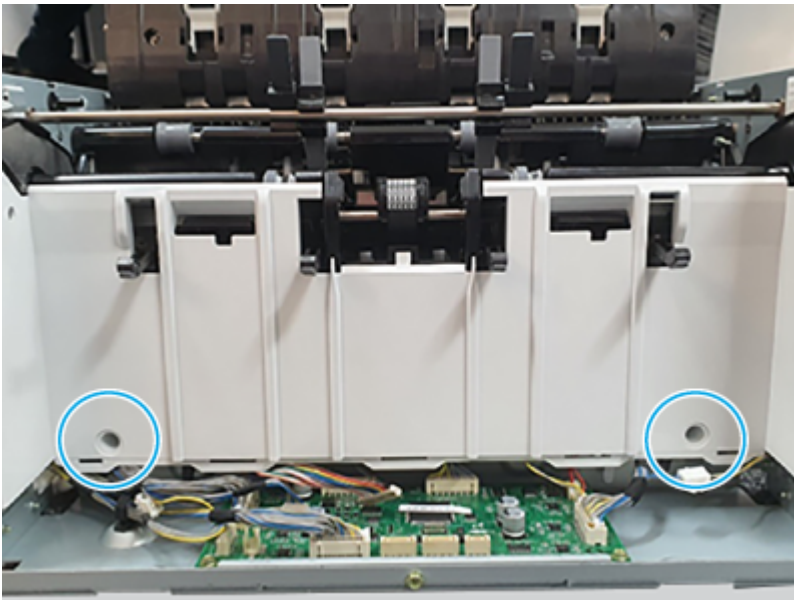


6 Remove the finisher sub stay assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

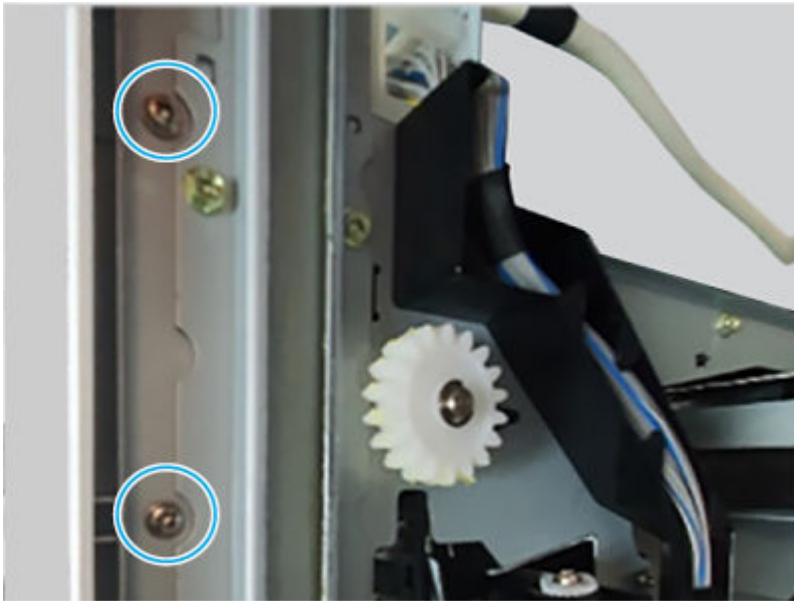
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3662 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3663 Remove two screws



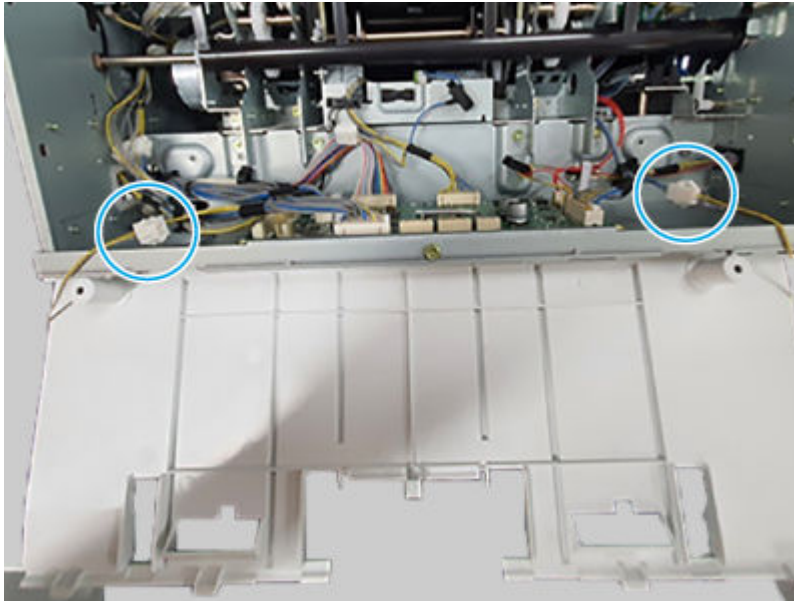
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3664 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

Figure 6-3665 Remove the assembly

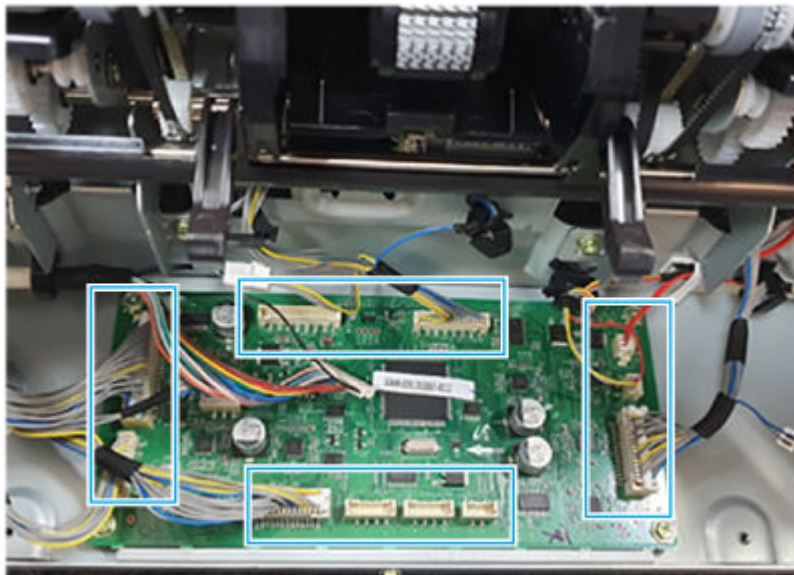


7 Remove the inner finisher PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher PCA.

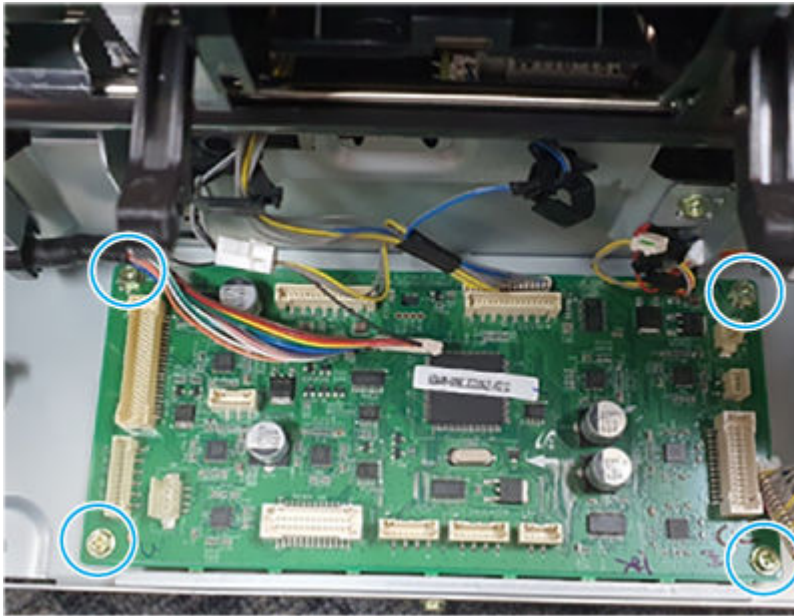
1. Disconnect all of the connectors.

Figure 6-3666 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher PCA.

Figure 6-3667 Remove the PCA



8 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear joint PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear joint PCA.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-427 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02780A	Inner finisher rear joint PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

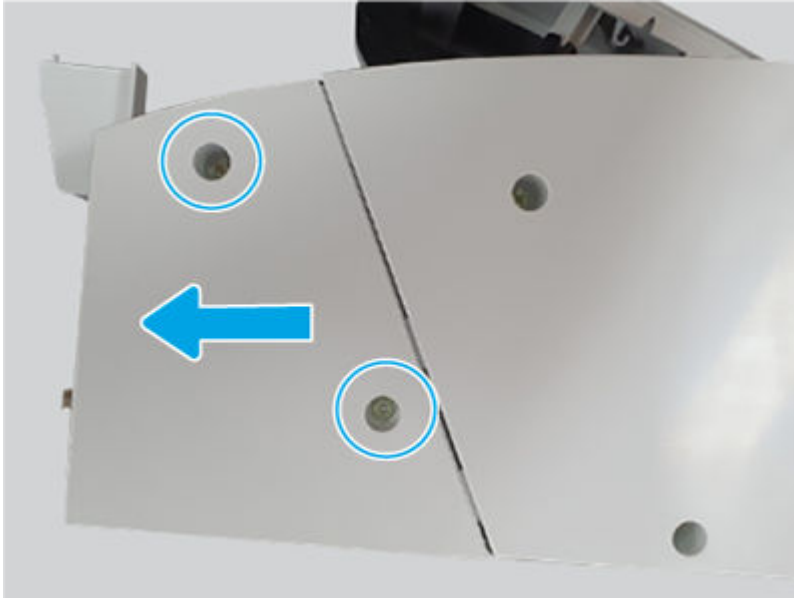
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3668 Remove the cover

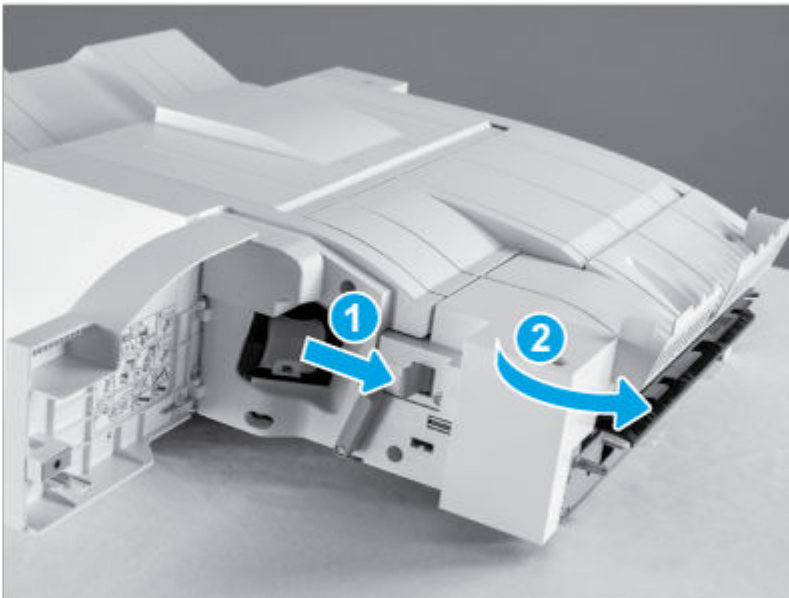


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

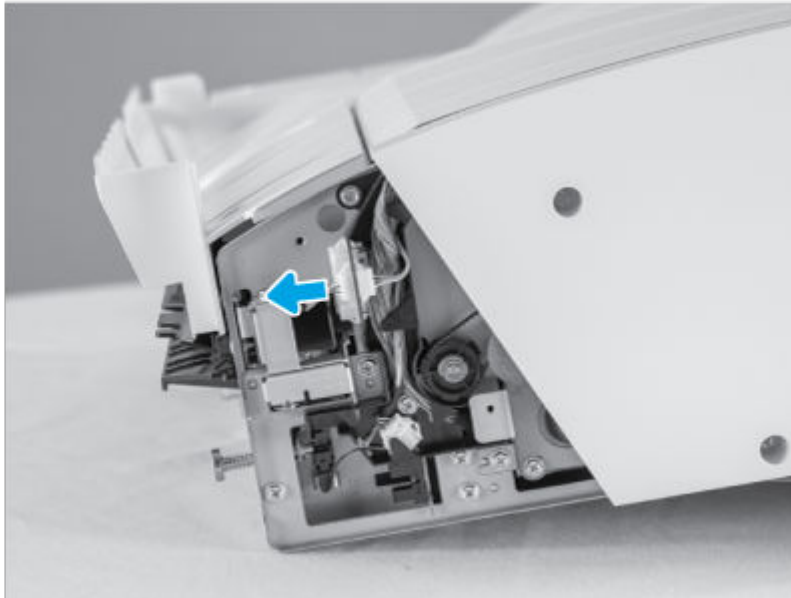
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3669 Rotate the punch



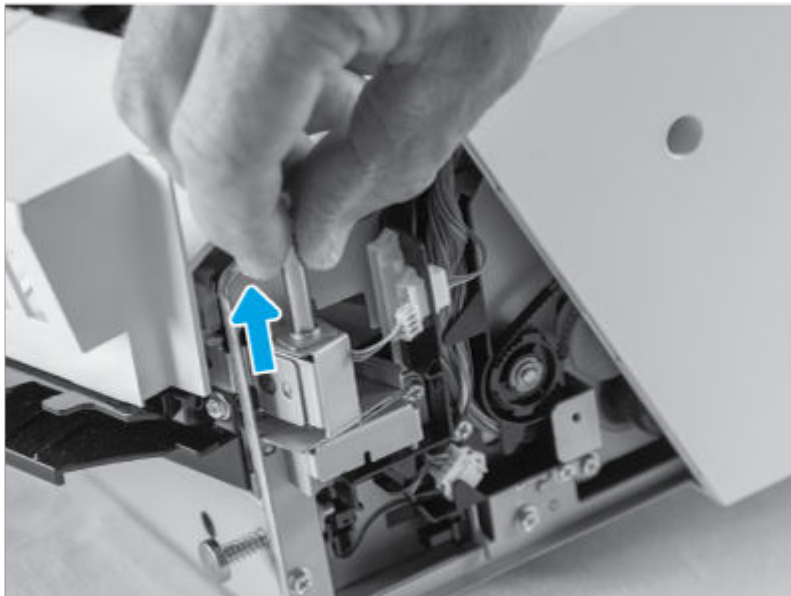
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3670 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3671 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

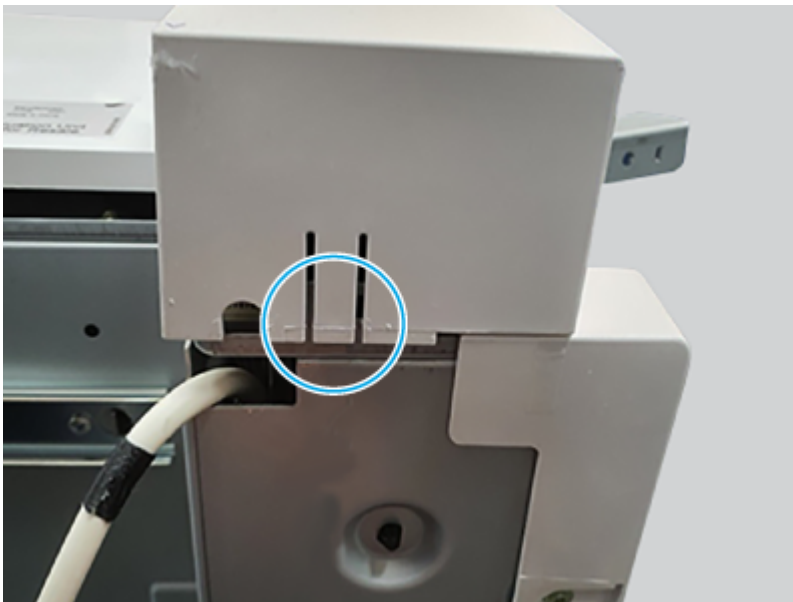
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3672 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3673 Remove the cover



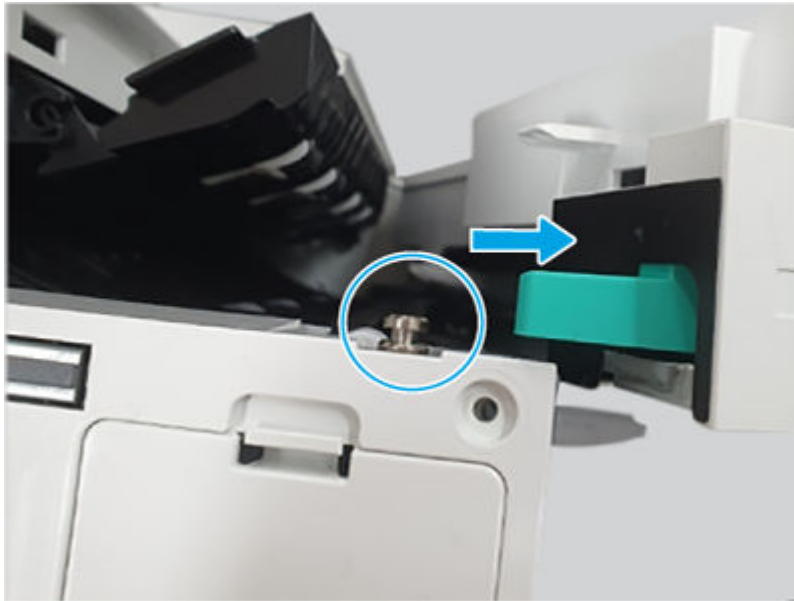
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3674 Open the punch cover



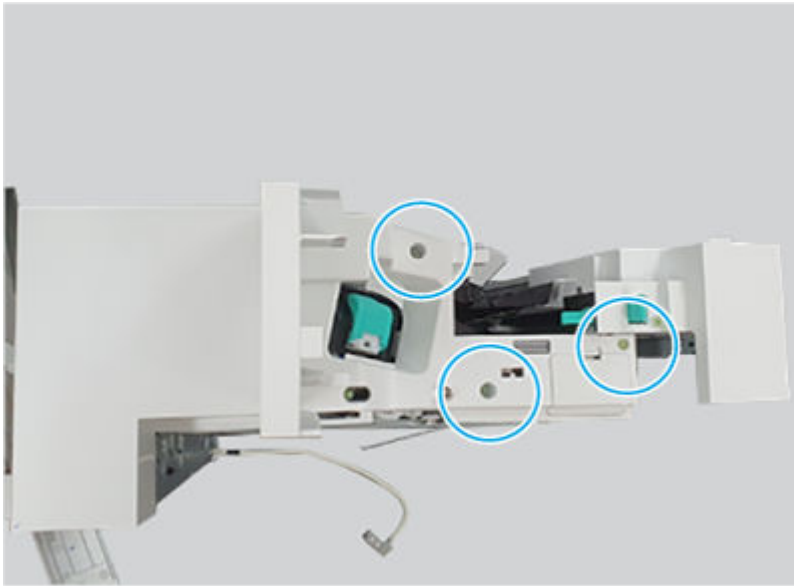
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3675 Remove the handle



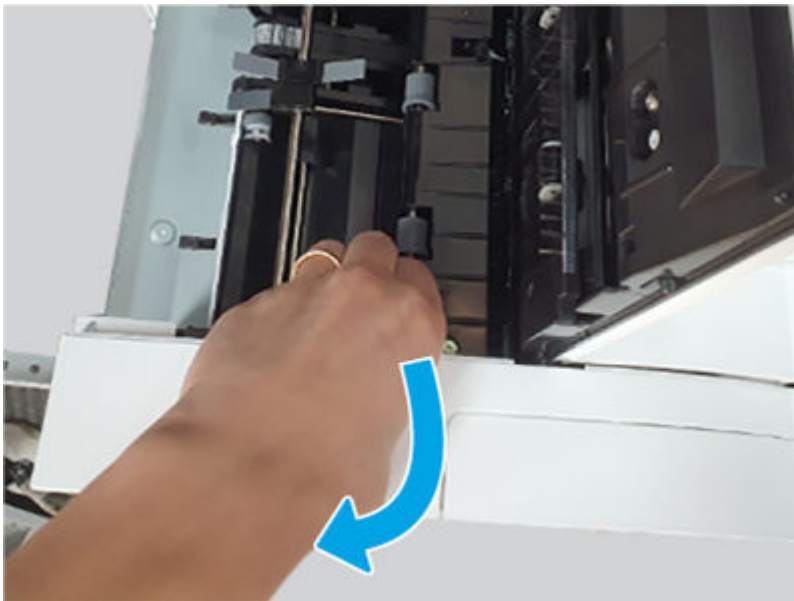
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3676 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3677 Remove the cover

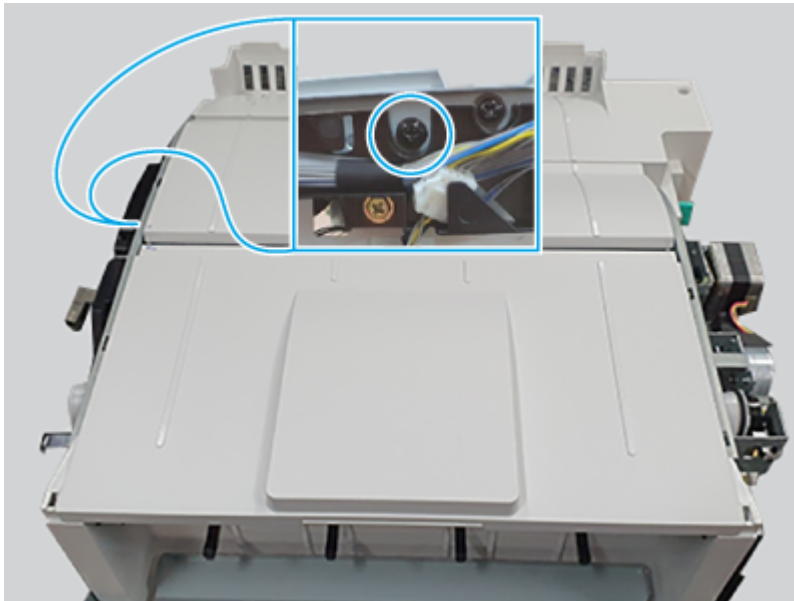


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3678 Remove the cover

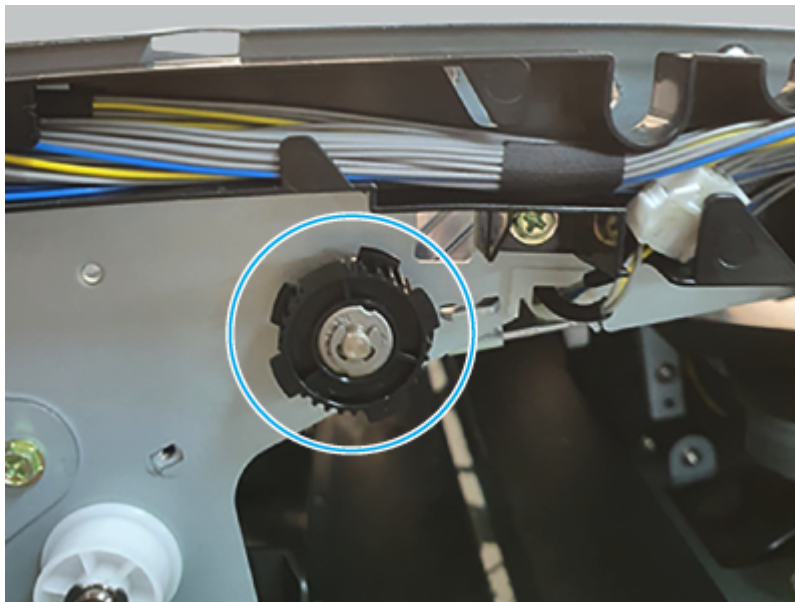


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3679 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



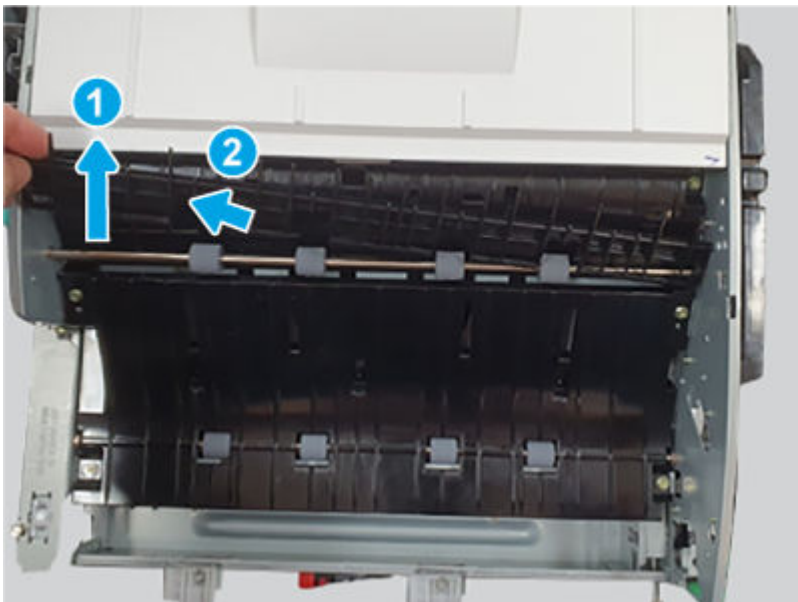
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3680 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3681 Remove the roller

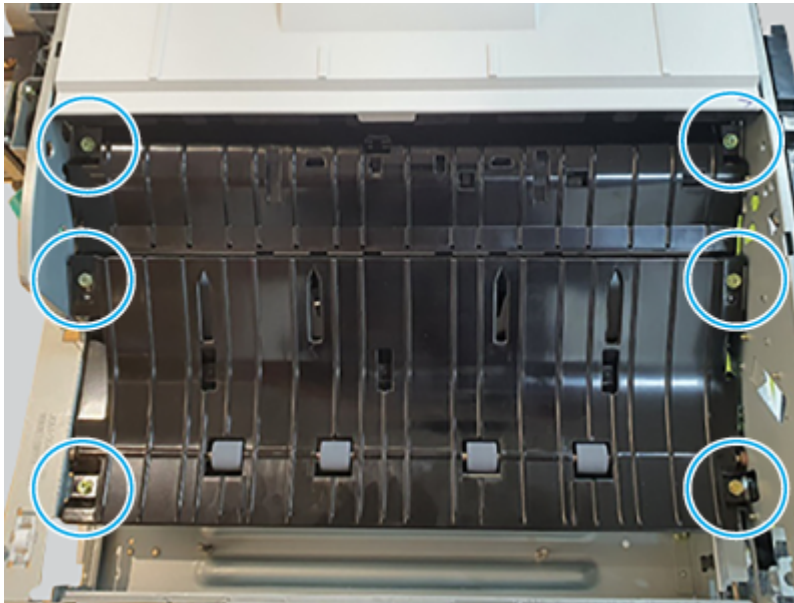


7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3682 Remove the guide

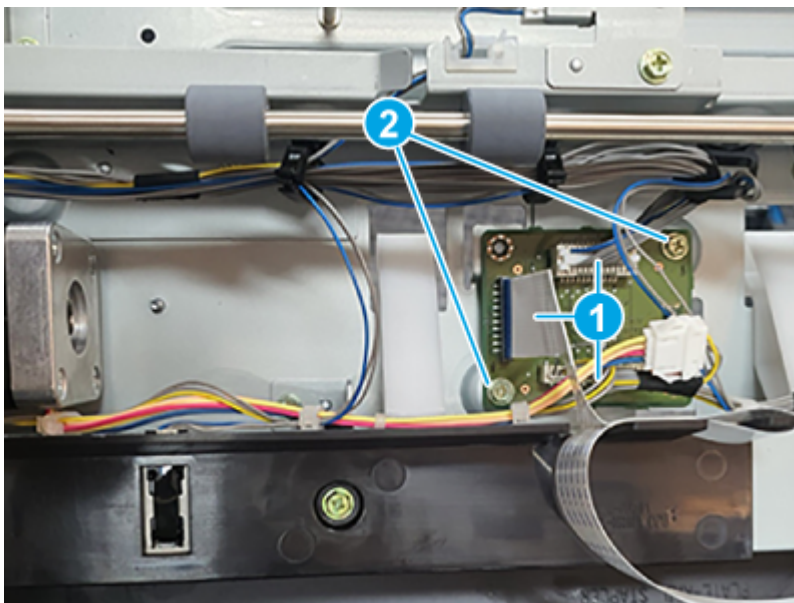


8 Remove the inner finisher rear joint PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear joint PCA.

- Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the inner finisher rear joint PCA.


Figure 6-3683 Remove the PCA



9 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front cover switch

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front cover switch.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-428 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open (Front cover switch)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

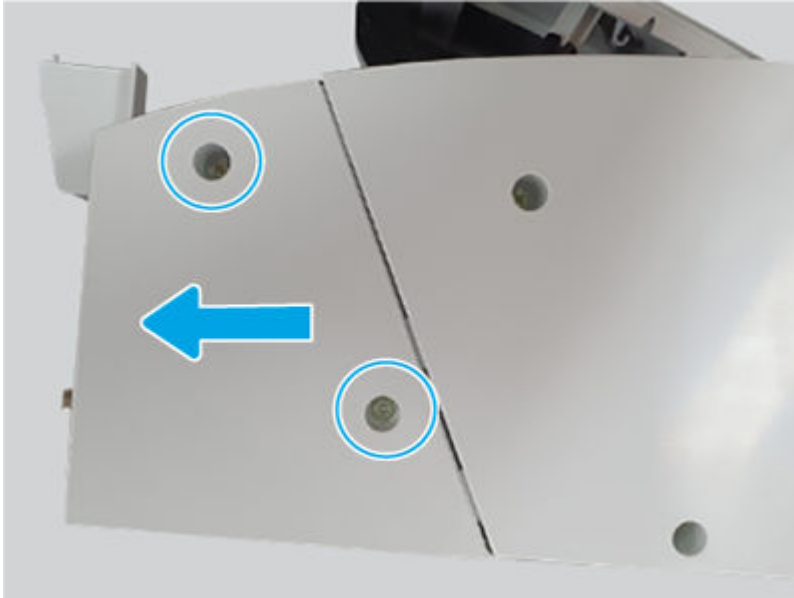
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3684 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

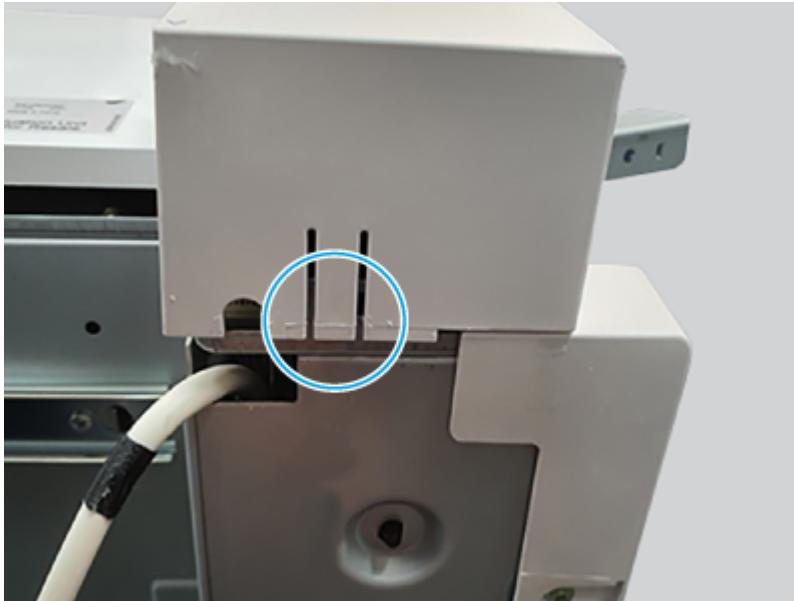
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3685 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3686 Remove the cover

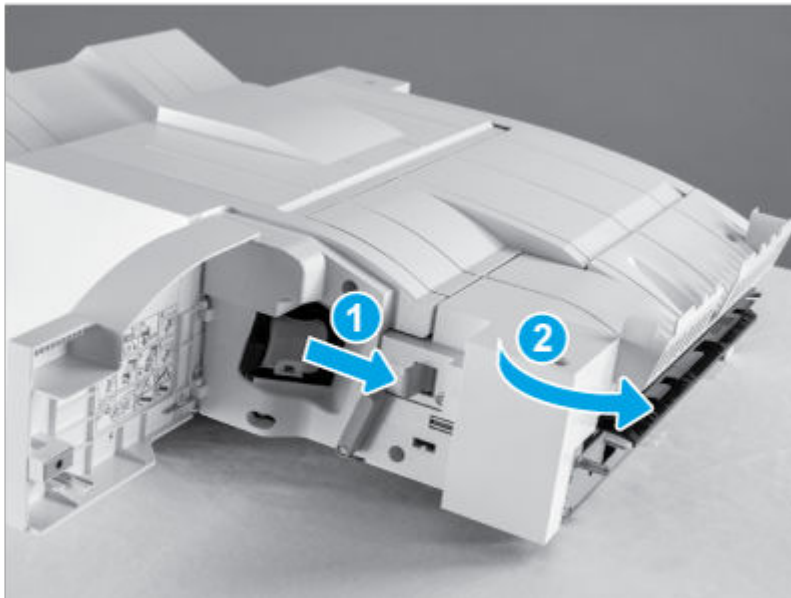


3 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

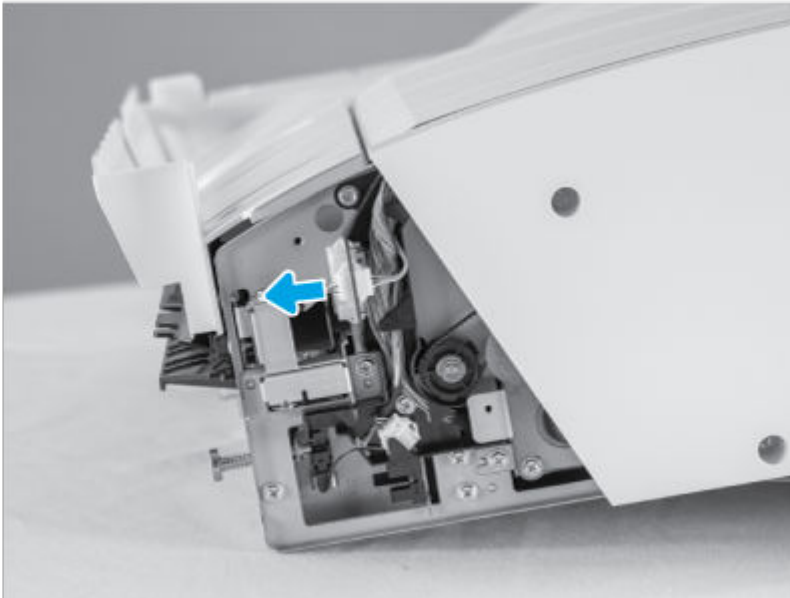
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3687 Rotate the punch



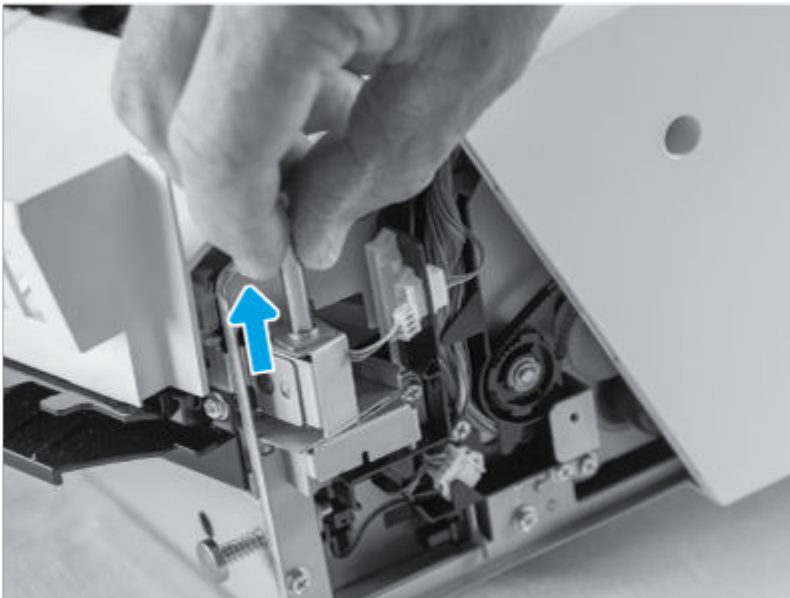
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3688 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3689 Remove the assembly



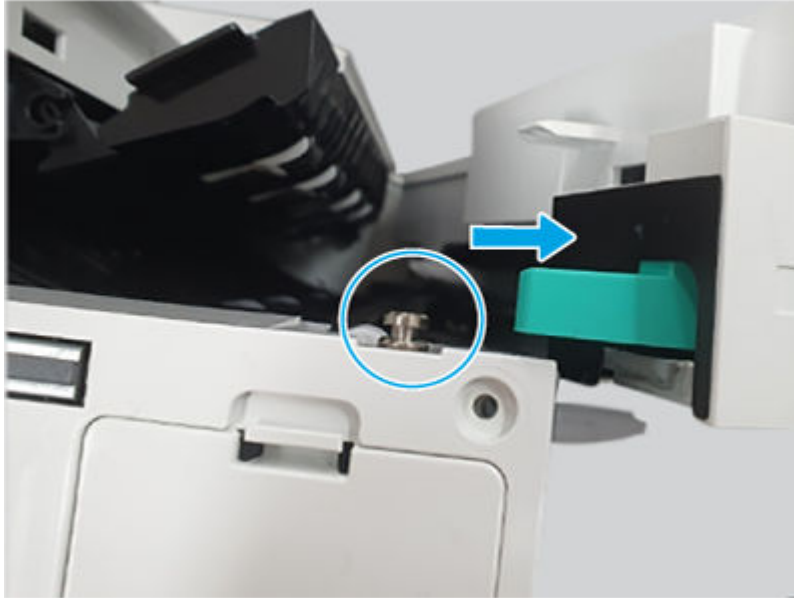
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3690 Open the punch cover



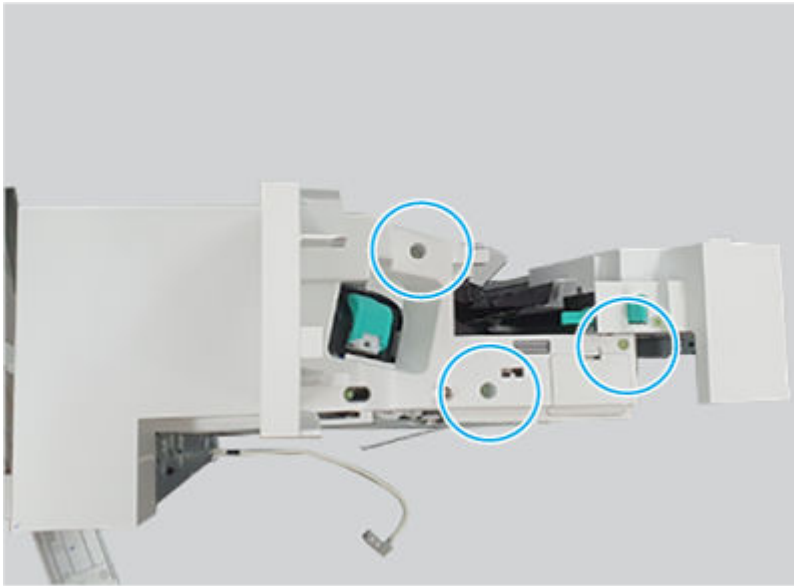
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3691 Remove the handle



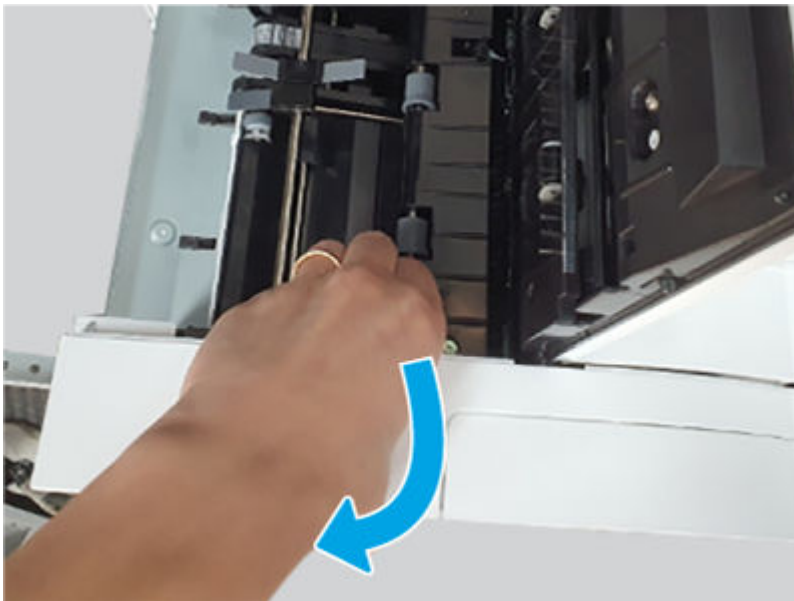
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3692 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3693 Remove the cover

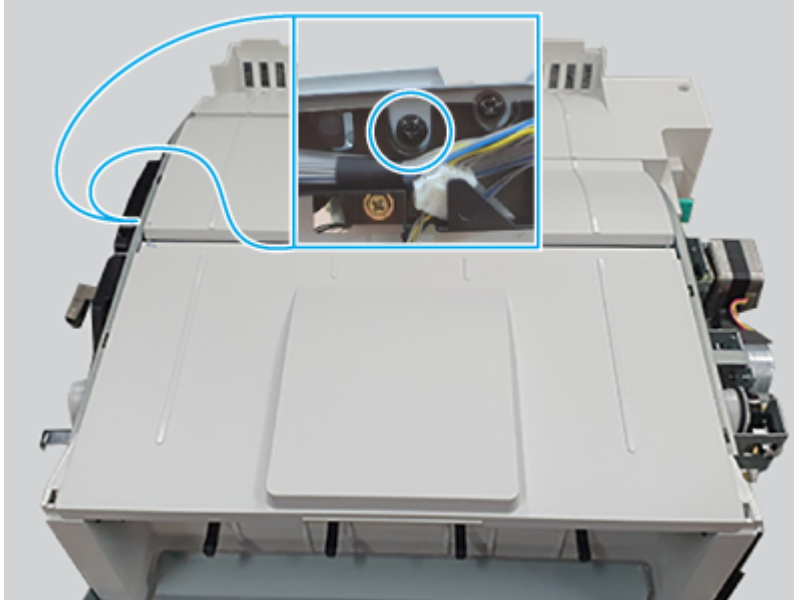


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3694 Remove the cover

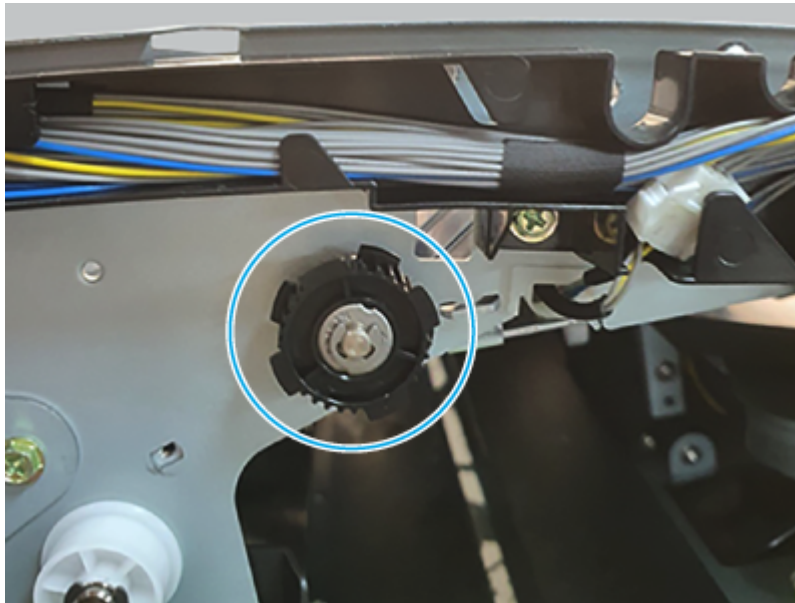


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3695 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



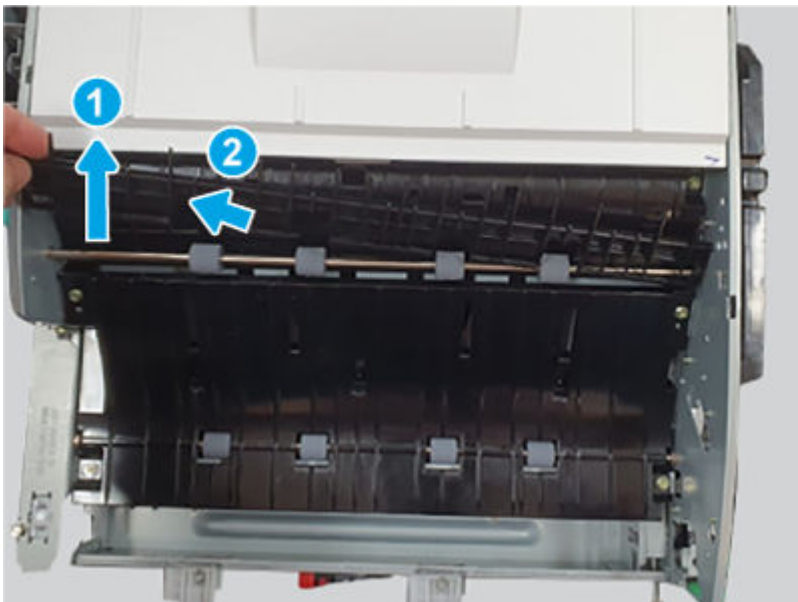
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3696 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3697 Remove the roller

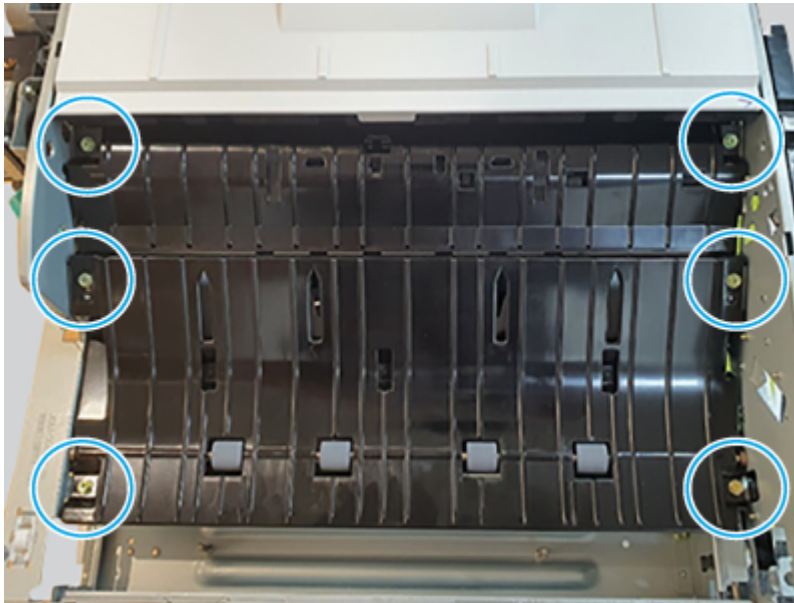


7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3698 Remove the guide

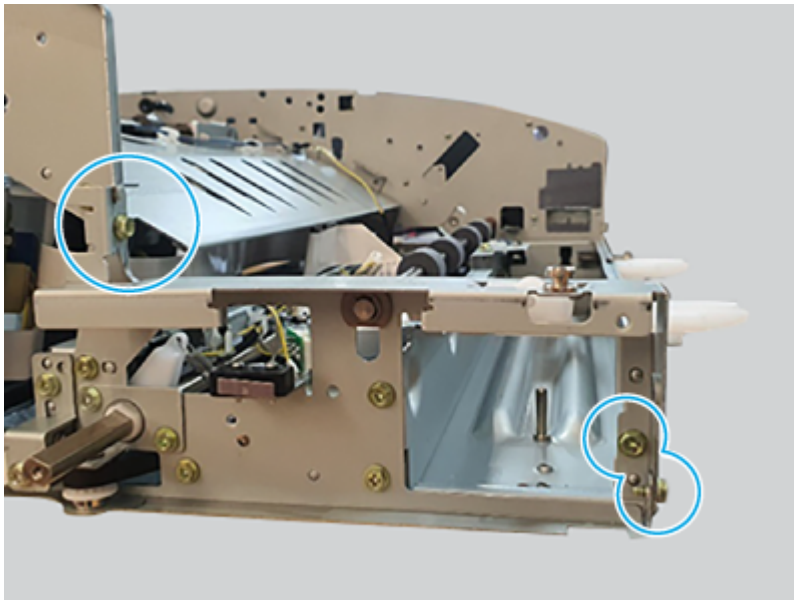


8 Remove the inner finisher bracket support guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher bracket support guide.

- Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket support guide.

Figure 6-3699 Remove the guide



9 Remove the inner finisher front cover switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover switch.

1. Disconnect one connector.


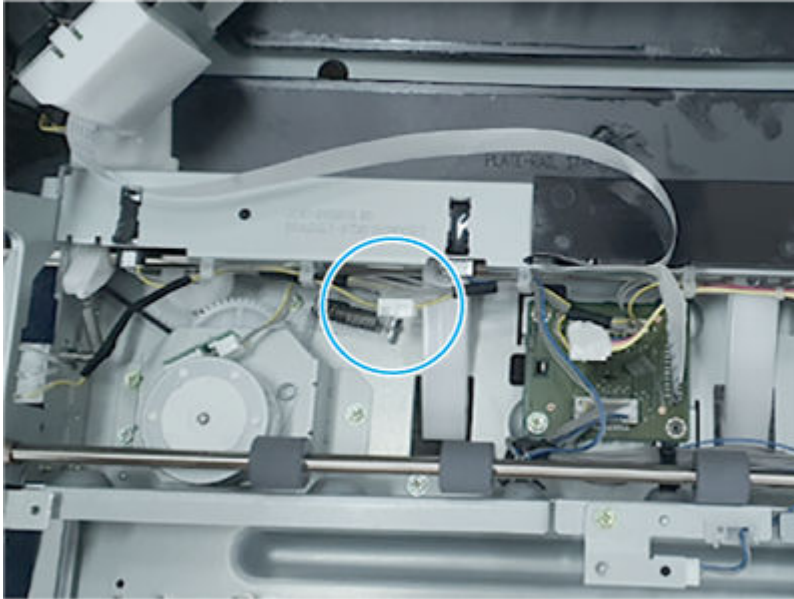
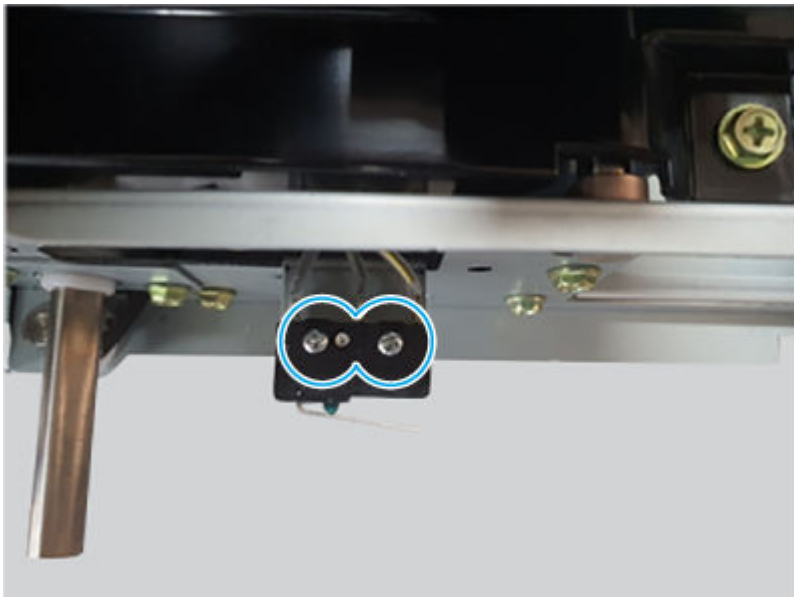
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3700 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher front cover switch.


Figure 6-3701 Remove the switch





10 **Unpack the replacement assembly**


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top cover switch

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher top cover switch.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-429 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open (Top cover switch)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

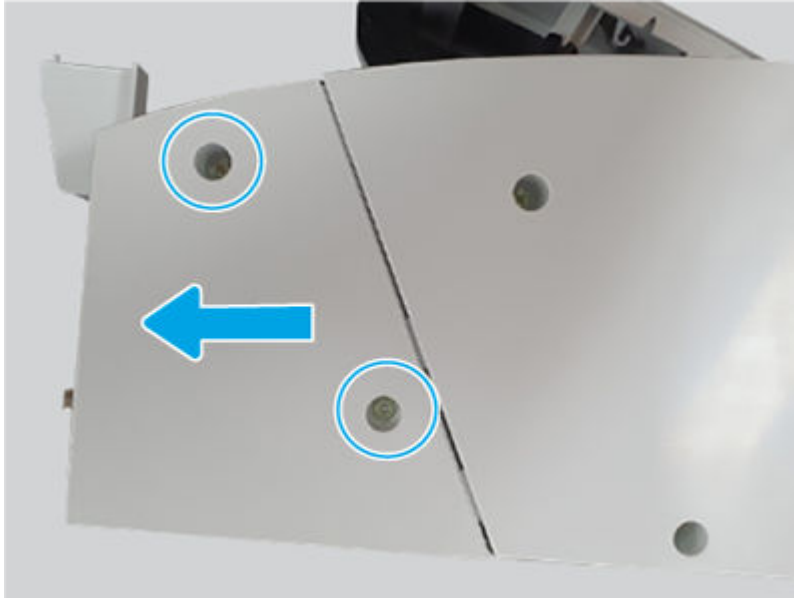
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3702 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

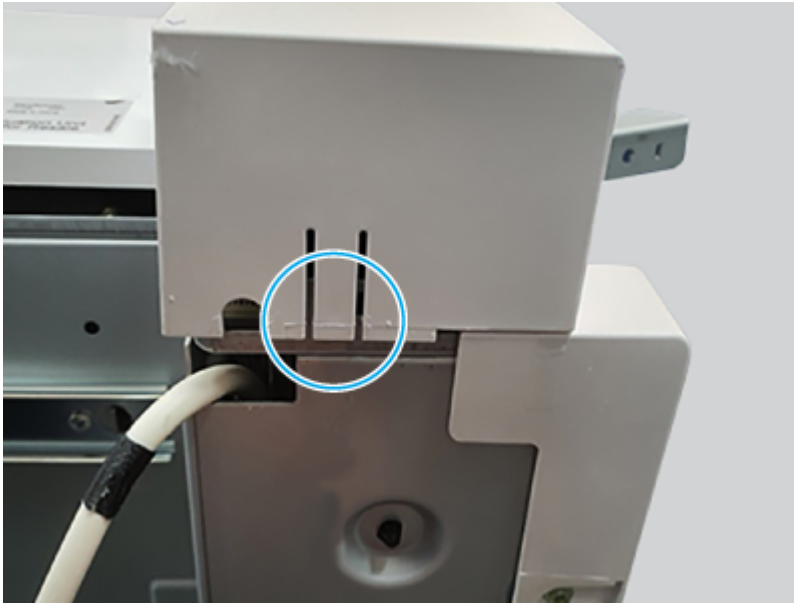
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3703 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3704 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher top cover switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover switch.

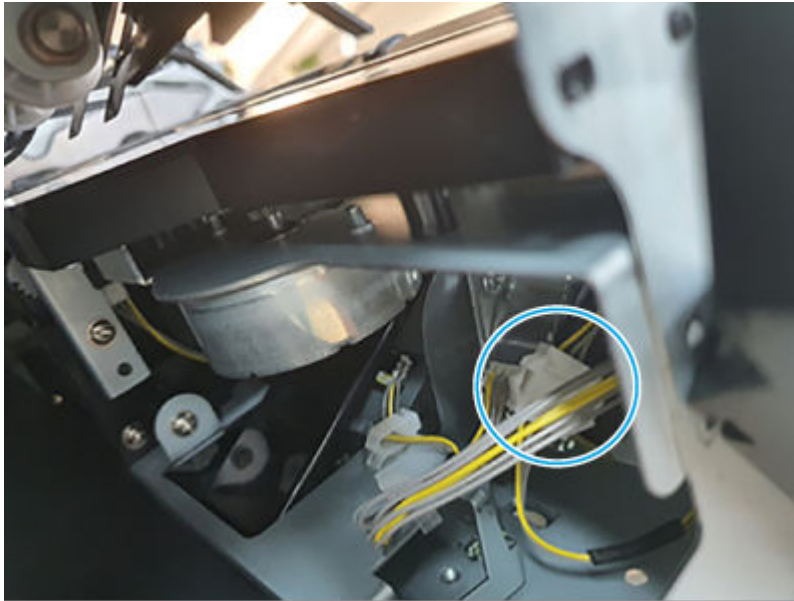
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3705 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the inner finisher top cover switch.

Figure 6-3706 Remove the switch



4 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Docking sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher docking sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-430 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open (Docking sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

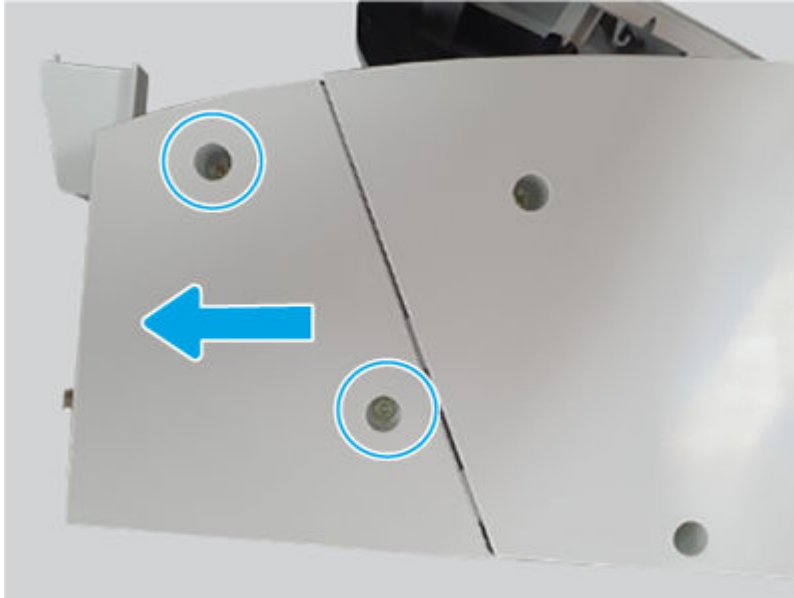
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3707 Remove the cover

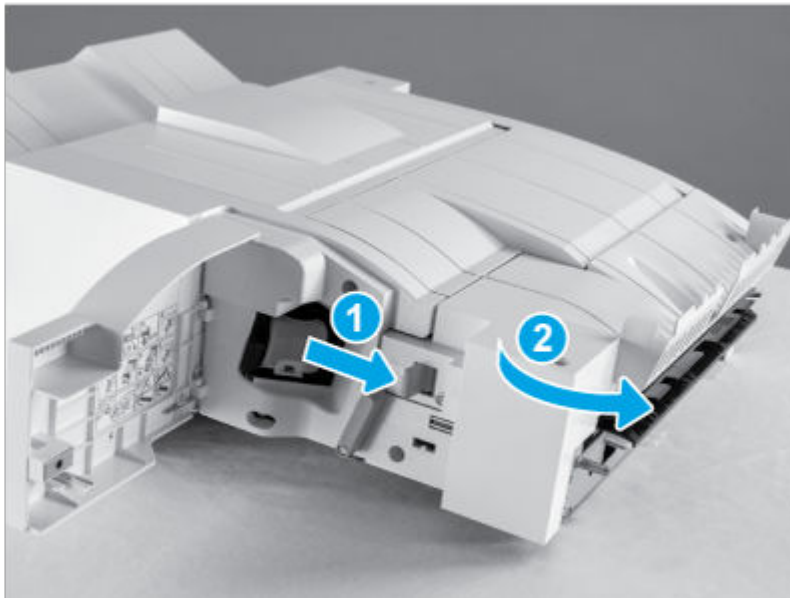


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

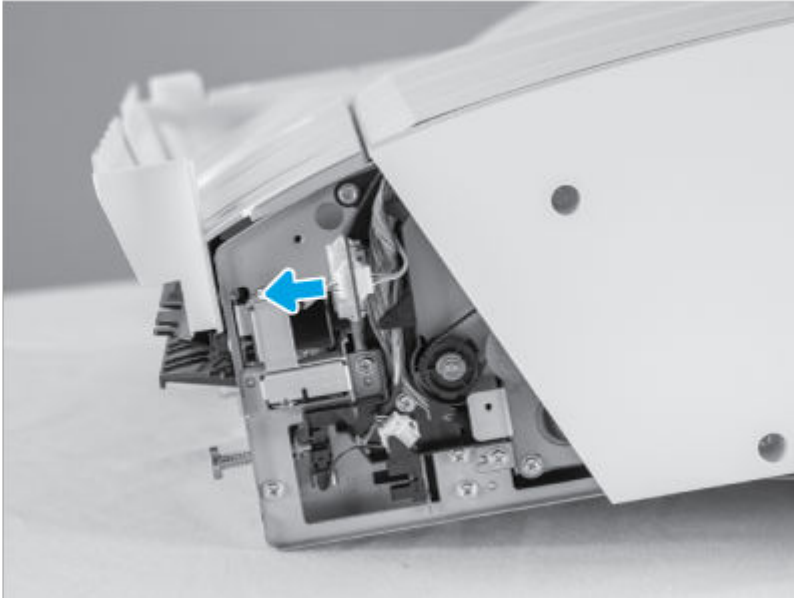
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3708 Rotate the punch



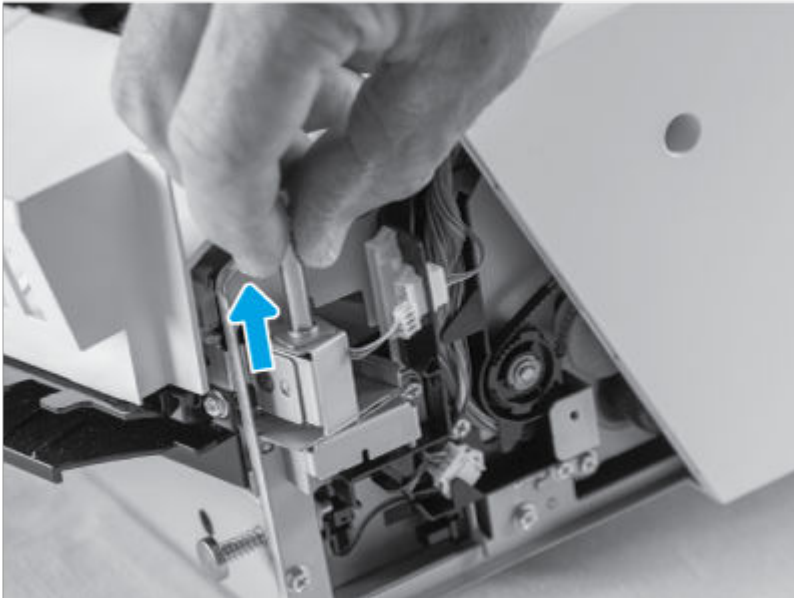
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3709 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3710 Remove the assembly

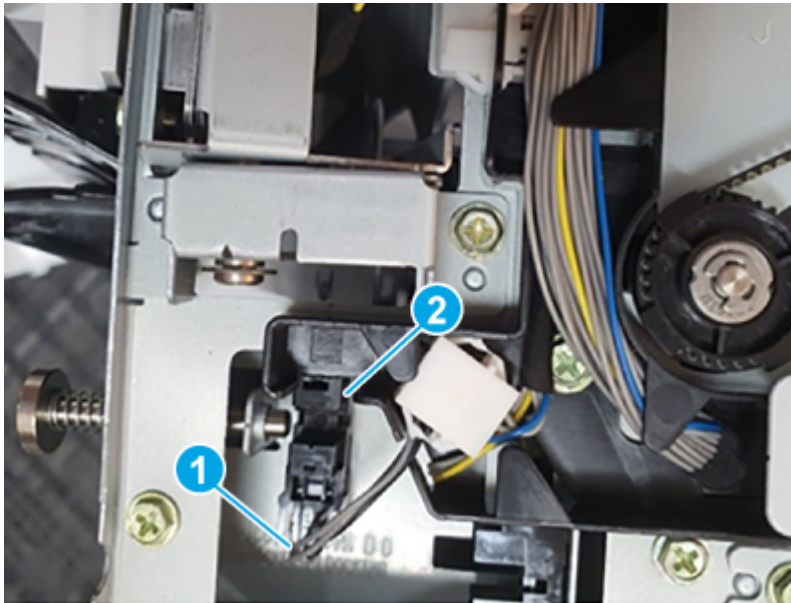


3 Remove the inner finisher docking sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher docking sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the inner finisher docking sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-3711 Remove the sensor



4 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

7 Parts and diagrams

Printer parts information including exploded assembly diagrams and part number lists.

Base printer

Learn about the printer engine parts and assemblies.

Covers

Learn about base printer cover service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Covers

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer covers.

Figure 7-1 Covers

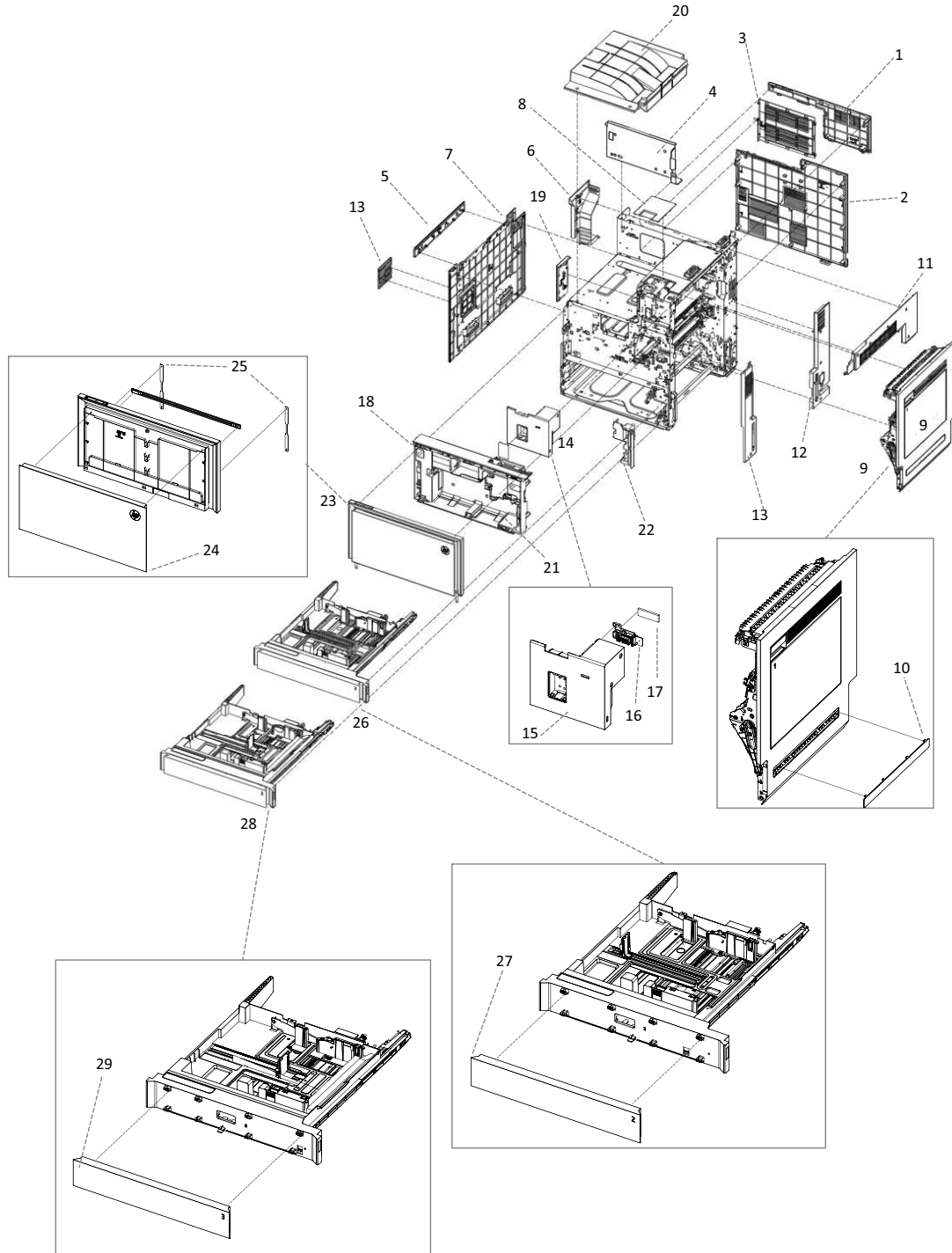


Table 7-1 Covers

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, C1	6ER04-40008	Rear upper cover	1
2, C2	6ER04-40019	Rear lower cover	1
3, C3	6ER04-61005	Controller cover	1

Table 7-1 Covers (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
4, C4	6ER04-40028	Exit rear cover	1
5, C5	JC63-04862B	Left top cover	1
6, C6	6ER04-40027	Left upper cover	1
7, C7	6ER04-40049	Left cover	1
8, C8	6ER04-40026	Middle upper cover	1
9, U1	JC95-02246A	Right door assembly	1
10, C9	JC63-04918B	Right door sHCl dummy cover	1
11, C10	6ER04-40021	Right upper cover	1
12, C11	6ER04-61003	Right rear cover	1
13, C12	6ER04-40005	Right front cover	1
14, C13	6ER04-61006	Right middle cover assembly	1
15	6ER04-40025	Right middle cover	1
16	6EQ94-40029	Power key	1
17, C13	3SJ33-60007	PCA -power key	1
18, C14	6EQ94-40032	HIP cover	1
19, C15	6ER04-40036	Middle left cover	1
20, C16	6ER04-61004	Exit cover stacker	1
21, C17	6ER08-61002	Inner cover	1
22, C18	6ER04-40030	Front lower cover	1
23, C19	6ER08-61001	Front cover assembly	1
24	6ER04-40003	Front cover - Blue CMF Panel	1
24	6ER04-40054	Front cover - Gray CMF Panel	1
24	6ER04-40055	Front cover - Red CMF Panel	1
24	6ER04-40056	Front cover - Green CMF Panel	1
24	6ER04-40057	Front cover - Yellow CMF Panel	1
24	6ER04-40058	Front cover - Purple CMF Panel	1
25	JC61-04626A	Tie stopper	1
26, U3	5QK09-60120	Tray 2 cassette	1
27, C20	5QK09-40055	Tray 2 cover - Blue CMF panel	1
27, C20	5QK09-40072	Tray 2 cover - Gray CMF panel	1
27, C20	5QK09-40074	Tray 2 cover - Red CMF panel	1
27, C20	5QK09-40076	Tray 2 cover - Green CMF panel	1
27, C20	5QK09-40078	Tray 2 cover - Yellow CMF panel	1

Table 7-1 Covers (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
28, C20	5QK09-40080	Tray 2 cover - Purple CMF panel	1
28, U4	5QK09-60121	Tray 3	1
29, C21	5QK09-40058	Tray 3 cover - Blue CMF panel	1
29, C21	5QK09-40071	Tray 3 cover - Gray CMF panel	1
29, C21	5QK09-40073	Tray 3 cover - Red CMF panel	1
29, C21	5QK09-40075	Tray 3 cover - Green CMF panel	1
29, C21	5QK09-40077	Tray 3 cover - Yellow CMF panel	1
29, C21	5QK09-40079	Tray 3 cover - Purple CMF panel	1

Feeding system

Learn about base printer feeding system service parts.

Tray 1

Learn about base printer Tray 1 service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Tray 1

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer Tray 1.

Figure 7-2 Tray 1

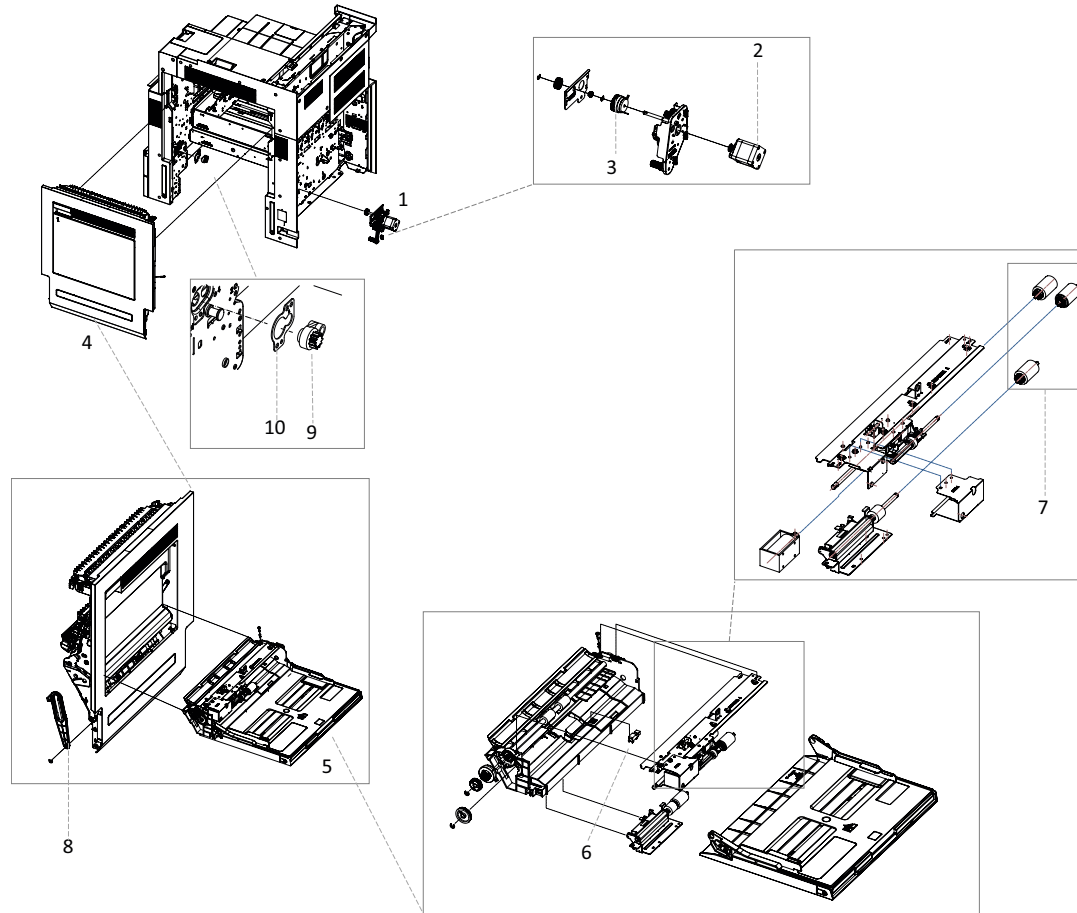


Table 7-2 Tray 1

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	JC93-01664A	Feed drive assembly	1
2, M1	JC31-00189A	Drive-motor step (Feed motor)	1
3, CL1	JC47-00037A	Electric clutch (Tray 1 clutch)	1
4, U1	JC95-02246A	Right door assembly	1
5, U2	JC90-01844A	Tray 1 unit	1
6, S1	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (Tray 1 paper empty sensor)	1
7< K1	5RC03-67001	Tray 1 roller kit	1
8	JC66-04398A	Right door front link	1
9	JC66-01425A	Right door front damper	1
10	JC61-08935A	Right door front damper bracket	1

Tray 2, 3

Learn about base printer Tray 2, 3 service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Tray 2, 3

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer Tray 2, 3.

Figure 7-3 Tray 2, 3

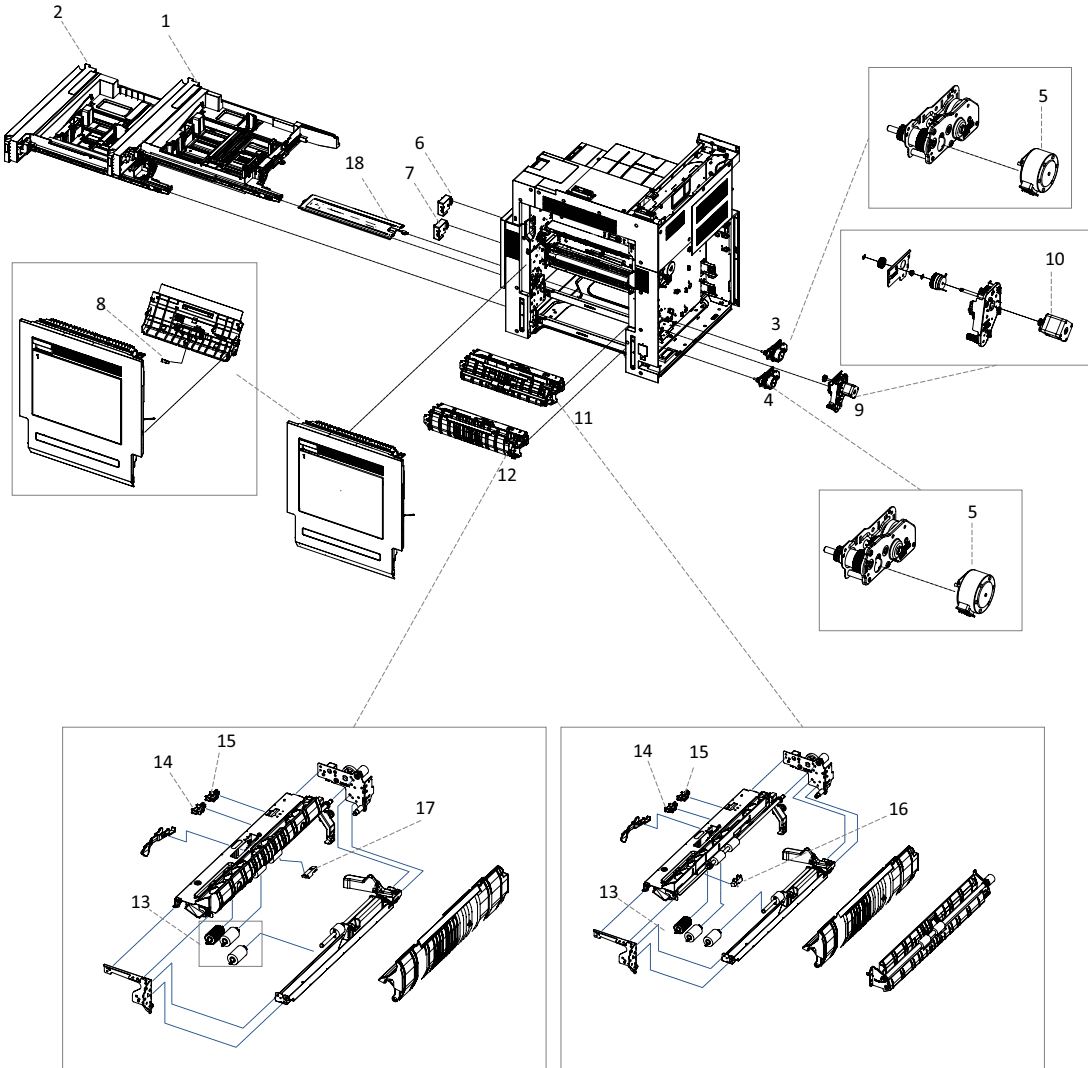


Table 7-3 Tray 2, 3

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U3	5QK09-60120	Tray 2 cassette	1
2, U4	5QK09-60121	Tray 3 cassette	1
3, U5	JC93-01663A	Tray 2 pickup drive assembly	1
4, U6	JC93-01663A	Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	1
5, M2, M3	JC93-01083A	Drive-motor step (Tray 2, 3 pickup motor)	1

Table 7-3 Tray 2, 3 (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6, S5		(Tray 2 tray open, paper size sensor)	1
7, S9		(Tray 3 tray open, paper size sensor)	1
8, S10	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (Feed 2 sensor)	1
9, U10	JC93-01664A	Feed drive assembly	1
10, M1	JC31-00189A	Drive-motor step (Feed motor)	1
11, U6	JC93-01694A	Tray 2 pickup assembly	1
12, U8	JC93-01695A	Tray 3 pickup assembly	1
13, K3	5PN66-67001	Tray 2, 3 roller kit	1
14, S2, S6	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 2, 3 paper empty sensor)	1
15, S3, S7	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 2, 3 stack height sensor)	1
16, S4	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (Tray 2 prefeed sensor)	1
17, S8	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Tray 3 prefeed sensor)	1
18, U9-1	Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V	1
18, U9-2	Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V	1

Registration and loop sensors

Learn about base printer registration and loop sensors service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Registration and loop sensors

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer registration and loop sensors.

Figure 7-4 Registration and loop sensors

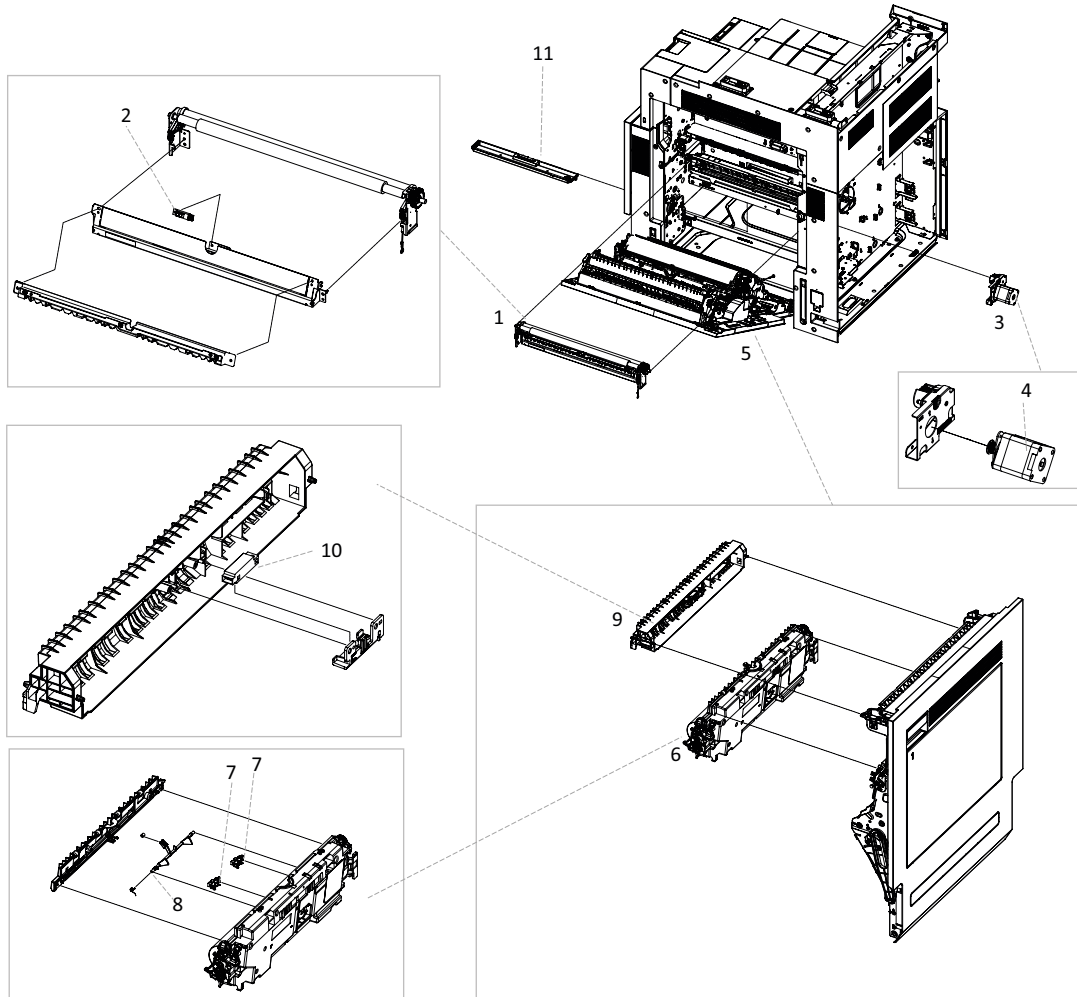


Table 7-4 Registration and loop sensors

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U12	5QK13-60101	Registration unit assembly	1
2, S11	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Registration sensor)	1
3, U13	JC93-01665A	Registration drive assembly	1
4, M4	JC31-00189A	Drive-motor step (Registration motor)	1
5, U1	JC95-02246A	Right door assembly	1
6, U14	5PN85-67001	Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) kit	1
7, S12, S13	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Loop sensor 1, 2)	1
8	JC66-04572A	Loop actuator	1
9, U15	JC95-02249A	Right door exit assembly	1
10, S14	0960-5271	Paper sensor (Fuser out sensor)	1
11	5QK09-40109	Cover waste	1

Exit unit

Learn about base printer exit unit service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Exit unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer exit unit.

Figure 7-5 Exit unit

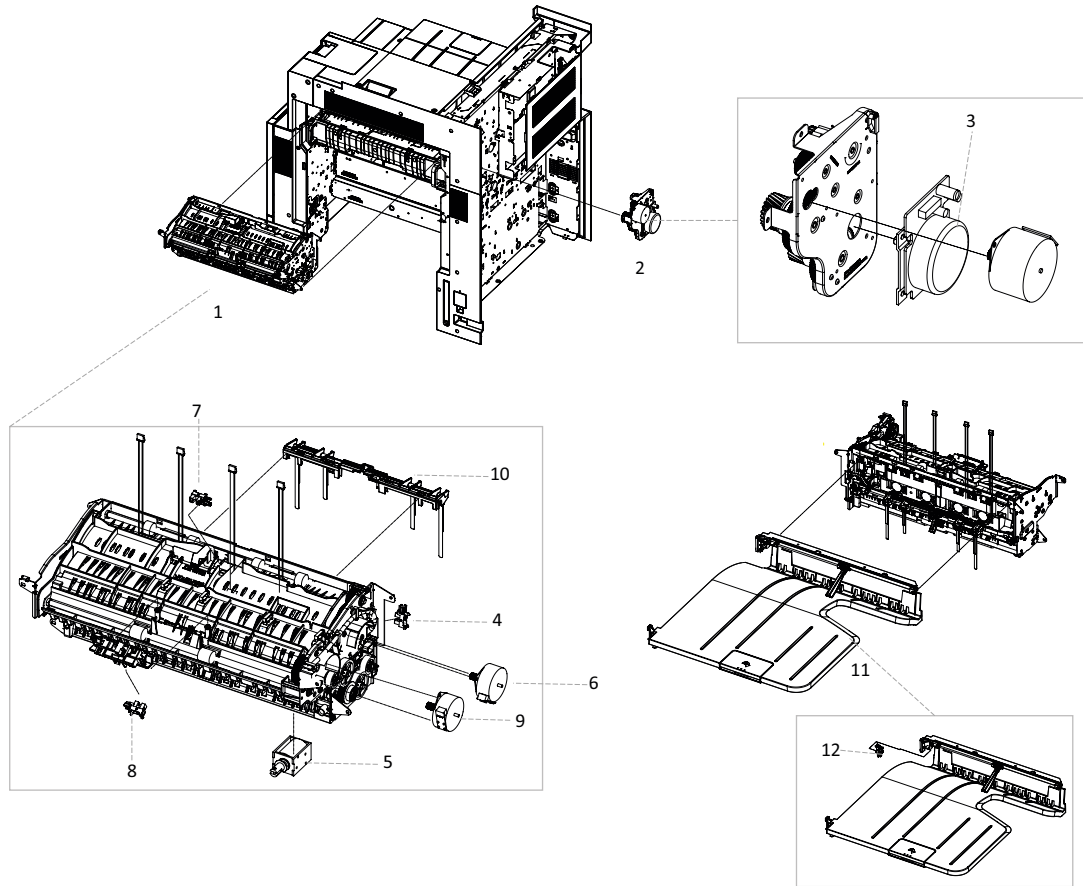


Table 7-5 Exit unit

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U18	JC90-01856A	Exit unit	1
2, U33	JC93-01850A	Fuser and exit drive assembly	1
3, M14	JC31-00144G	Motor BLDC (Fuser and exit motor)	1
4, S14	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Out bin 1 full sensor)	1
5, SL2	JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting (Return gate solenoid)	1
6, M5	JC93-00336A	Drive-motor step (Exit 2 motor)	1
7, S17	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Exit 2 sensor)	1
8, S18	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Duplex jam 1 sensor)	1
9, M6	JC93-00336A	Drive-motor step (Duplex 1 motor)	1

Table 7-5 Exit unit (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
10, U19	JC90-01865A	Exit stack guide	1
11, U17	5QK03-61008	Job separator (optional)	1
12, S16	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Out bin 2 full sensor (optional))	1

Duplex

Learn about base printer duplex service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Duplex

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer duplex).

Figure 7-6 Duplex

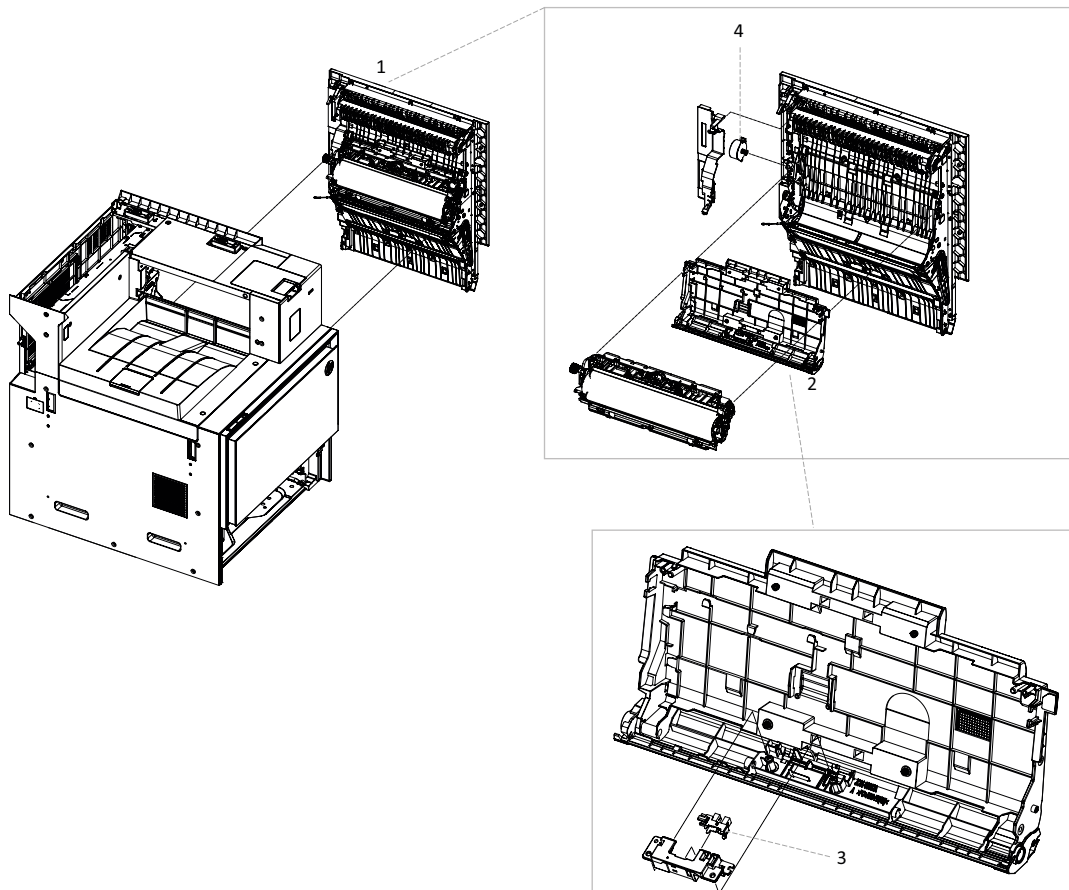


Table 7-6 Duplex

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U1	JC95-02246A	Right door assembly	1

Table 7-6 Duplex (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
2< U20	JC95-02250A	Duplex assembly	1
3, S19	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Duplex jam 2 sensor)	1
4, M7	JC93-01085A	Drive-motor step (Duplex 2 motor)	1

Toner flow

Learn about base printer toner flow service parts.

Toner cartridge

Learn about base printer toner cartridge service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Toner

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer toner.

Figure 7-7 Toner

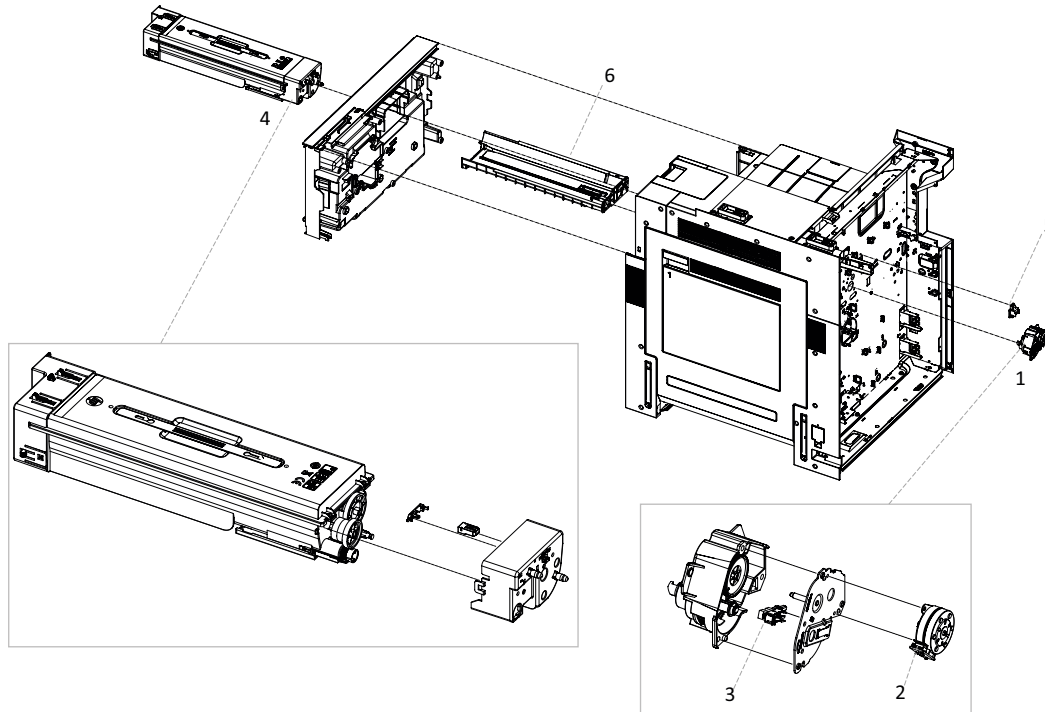


Table 7-7 Toner

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U21	JC93-01667A	Toner dispense motor assembly	1
2, M8	SS216-80501	Toner dispense motor	2

Table 7-7 Toner (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
3, S20	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Toner dispense motor sensor)	1
4, U22-1	W9084-67006	Toner cartridge -standard yield	1
4, U22-2	W9085-67007	Toner cartridge -high yield	1
5	JC61-02910A	Toner CRUM modular holder	1
5	JC39-02214A	Toner CRUM modular jack	1
6	63C82-60006	Guide toner cartridge assembly	1

Reservoir

Learn about base printer reservoir service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Reservoir

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer reservoir.

Figure 7-8 Reservoir

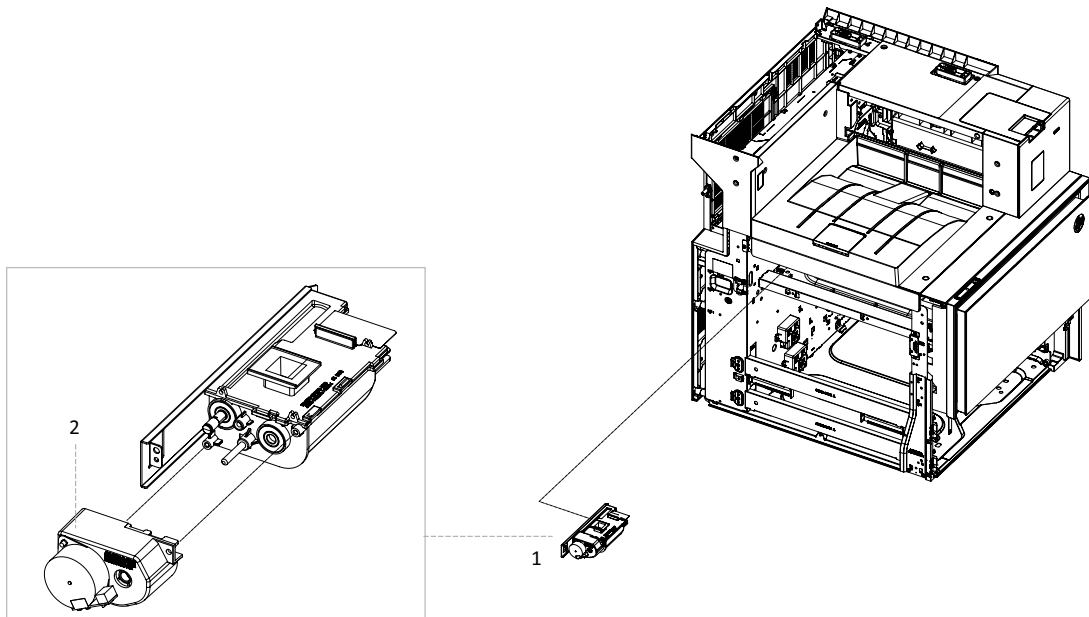


Table 7-8 Reservoir

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U23	X3A79-60003	Reservoir unit	1
2, M9	JC93-01067A	Reservoir drive assembly	1

Toner collection unit (TCU)

Learn about base printer TCU service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Toner collection unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer toner collection unit.

Figure 7-9 Toner collection unit

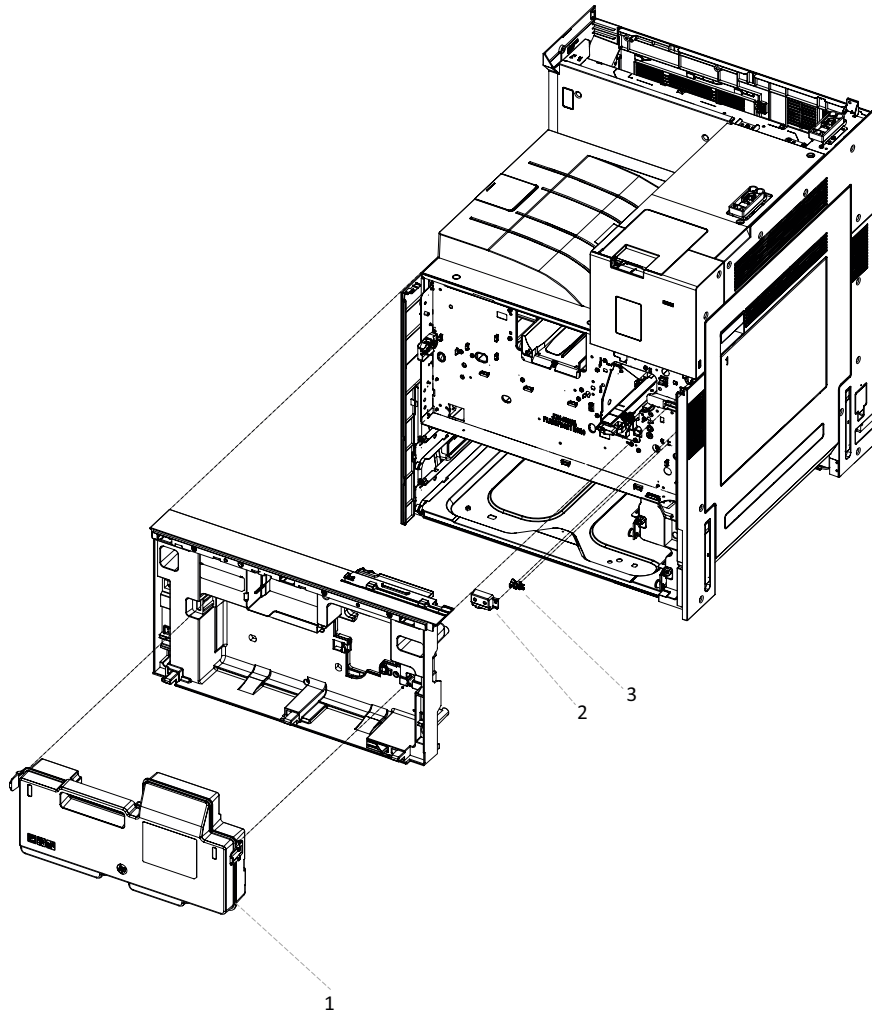


Table 7-9 Toner collection unit

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U24	W9016-67001	Toner collection unit	1
2, S23	JC93-00492A	Toner collection full sensor assembly	1
3, S22	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Toner collection unit detection sensor)	1

Image creation

Learn about base printer image creation service parts.

Laser scanner unit (LSU)

Learn about base printer LSU service parts.

Parts and diagrams: laser scanner unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer laser scanner unit.

Figure 7-10 Laser scanner unit

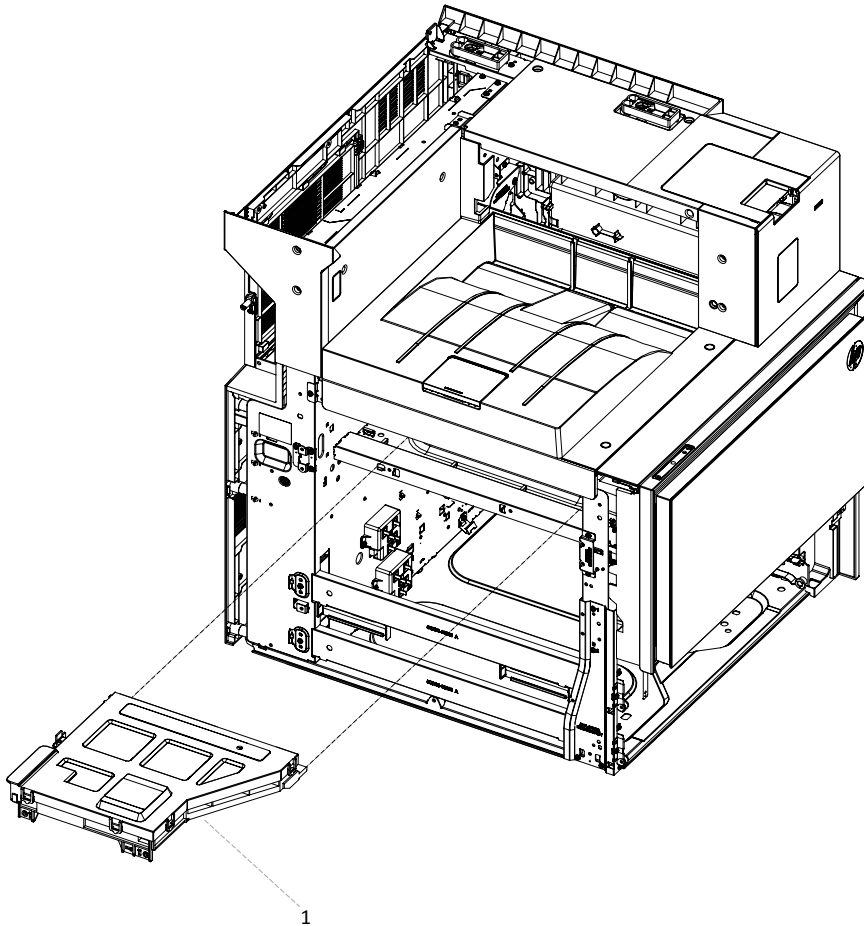


Table 7-10 Laser scanner unit

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U25	JC97-05149A	Laser scanner unit (LSU)	1

Developer

Learn about base printer developer service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Developer

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer developer.

Figure 7-11 Developer

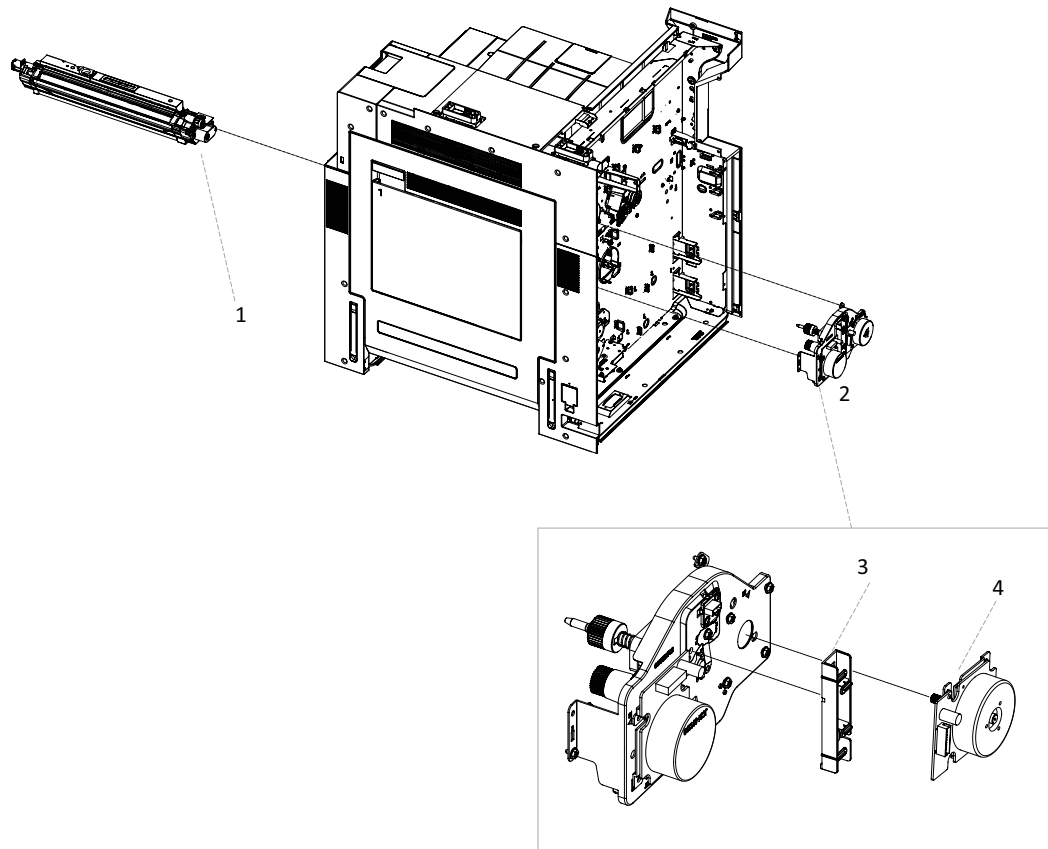


Table 7-11 Developer

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U27	5PN82-67002	SVC_HP LaserJet Black Developer Unit	1
Not shown, K4	5PN82-67001	Developer powder kit	1
2, U28	JC93-01662A	Drum and developer drive assembly	1
3, M12	JC31-00197A	Developer motor	1
4	JC61-06282A	Cable guide	1

Drum

Learn about base printer drum service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Drum

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer drum.

Figure 7-12 Drum

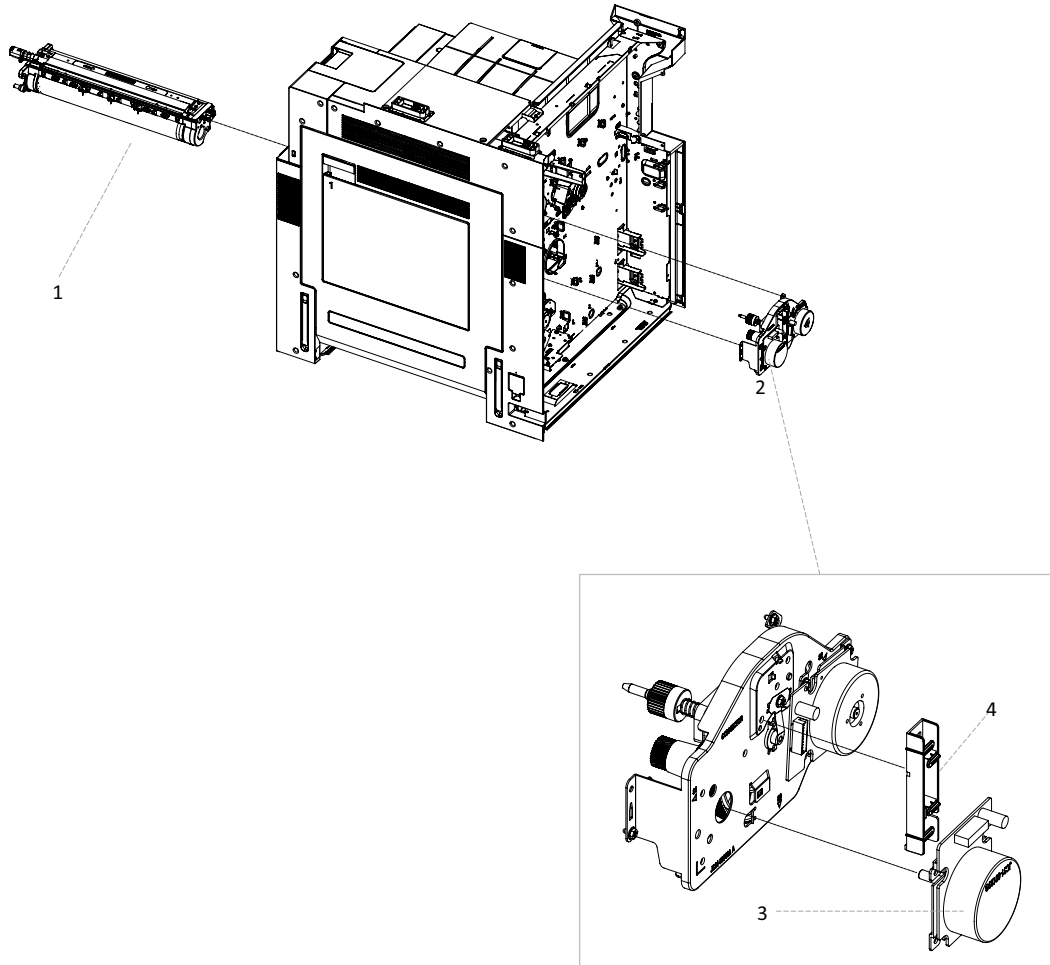


Table 7-12 Drum

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U26	W9086-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Black Managed Imaging Drum	1
2, U28	JC93-01662A	Developer, drum and PTB drive assembly	1
3, M11	JC31-00123G	Drum and PTB motor	1
4	JC61-06282A	Cable guide	1

CTD

Learn about base printer CTD service parts.

Parts and diagrams: CTD

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer drum.

Figure 7-13 CTD

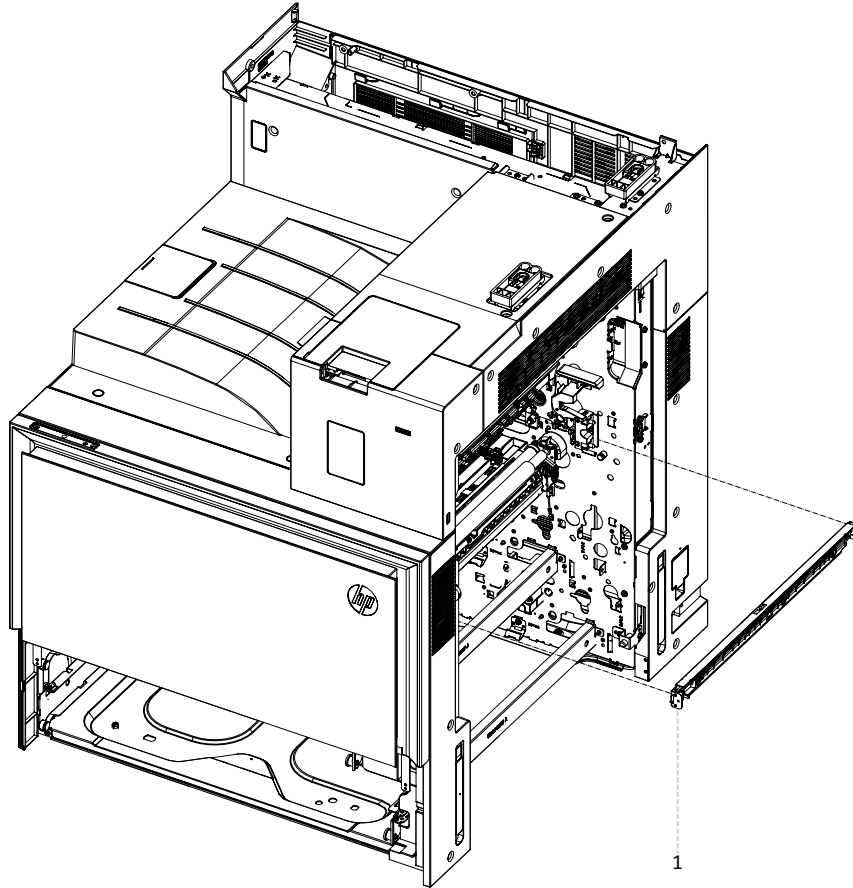


Table 7-13 CTD

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U29	6ER04-60002	CTD sensor assembly	1

PTB

Learn about base printer PTB service parts.

Parts and diagrams: PTB

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer drum.

Figure 7-14 PTB

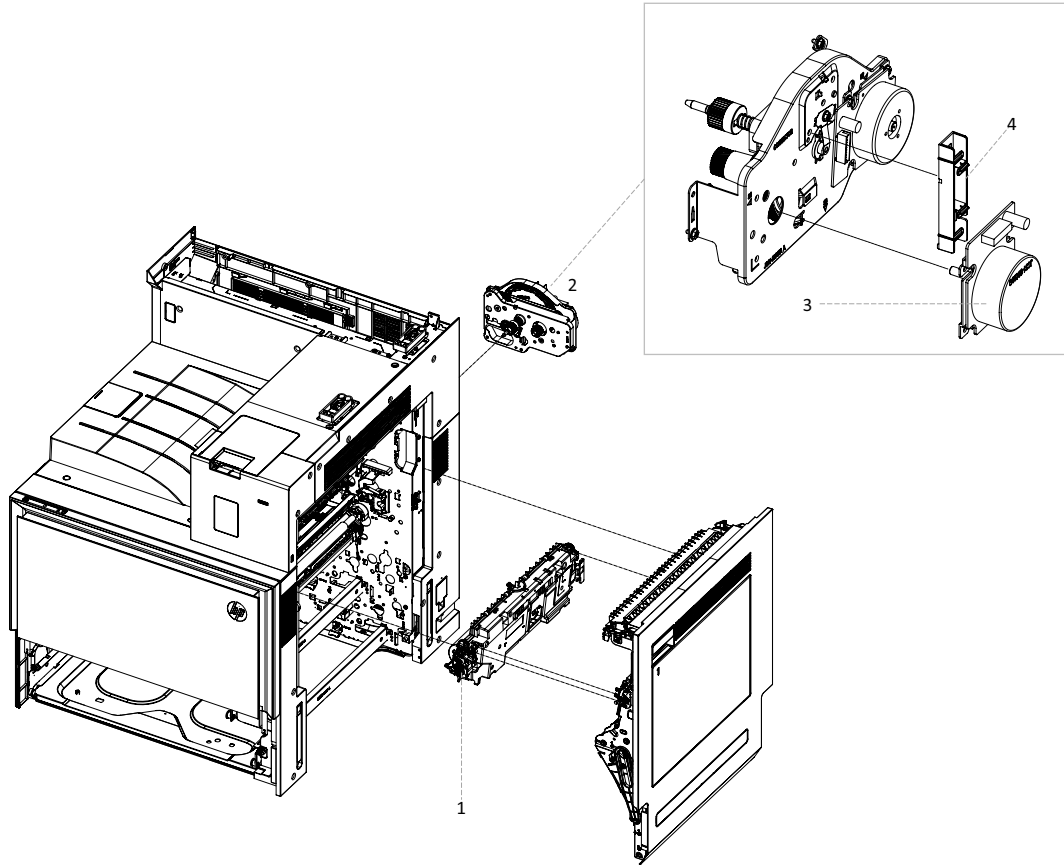


Table 7-14 PTB

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U30	5PN85-67001	Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) kit	1
2, U28	JC93-01662A	Developer, drum and PTB drive assembly	1
3, M11	JC31-00123G	Drum and ITB motor	1
4	JC61-06282A	Cable guide	1

Fuser

Learn about base printer fuser service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Fuser

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer fuser.

Figure 7-15 Fuser

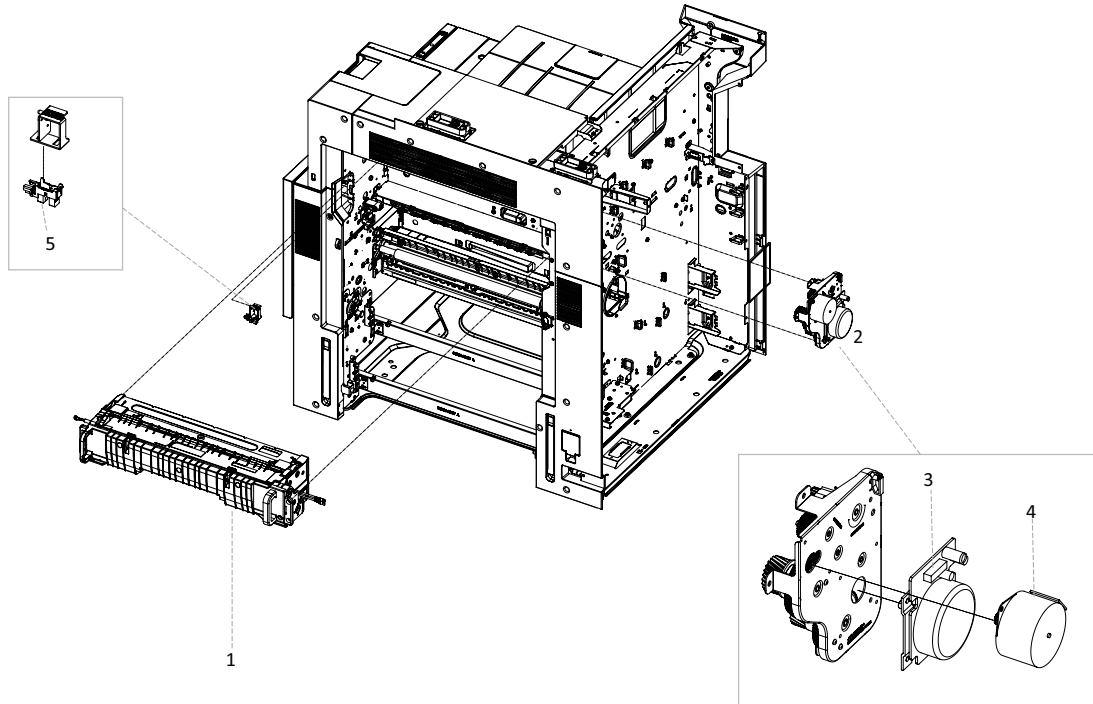


Table 7-15 Fuser

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U32-1	5PN53-67001	Fuser unit -100V	1
1, U32-2	5PN76-67001	Fuser unit -110V	1
1, U32-3	5PN77-67001	Fuser unit -220V	1
2, U33	JC93-01850A	Fuser and exit drive assembly	1
3, M14	JC31-00144G	Motor BLDC (Fuser and exit motor)	1
4, M15	JC93-01084A	Drive-motor step (Fuser gap motor)	1
5, S31	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Fuser gap sensor)	1

Sensor and fan

Learn about base printer sensor and fan service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Sensor and fan

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer sensor and fan.

Figure 7-16 Sensor and fan

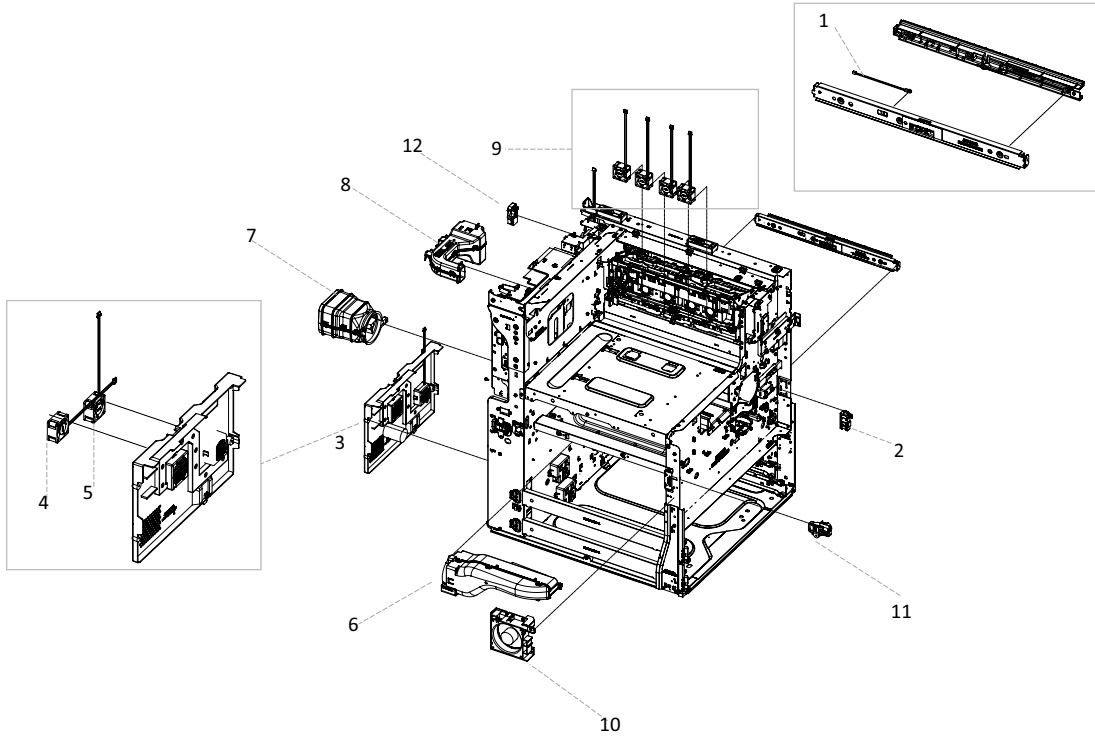


Table 7-16 Sensor and fan

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, S32	1404-001417	Thermistor (Inner temperature sensor)	1
2, U34	5QJ90-40002	Outer environment sensor assembly	1
3	JC93-01795A	LVPS FDB fan assembly	1
4, F1	JC31-00198A	Fan (LVPS fan)	1
5, F2	JC31-00154A	Fan (FDB fan)	1
6, U36	5QK09-40083	Developer fan assembly	1
7	JC93-01007A	Developer suction duct	1
8	JC93-01446A	Fuser ventilation duct	1
9, F4	JC31-00154A (not orderable)	Exit fan1, 2, 3, 4	4
10, U36	5QK09-64013	LSU fan assembly	1
11, S34	JC93-00466A	Front door open switch (Front door switch assembly)	1
12, S35	JC93-01467A	Switch (Right door switch assembly)	1

PCA

Learn about base printer PCA service parts.

Parts and diagrams: PCA

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer covers.

Figure 7-17 PCA

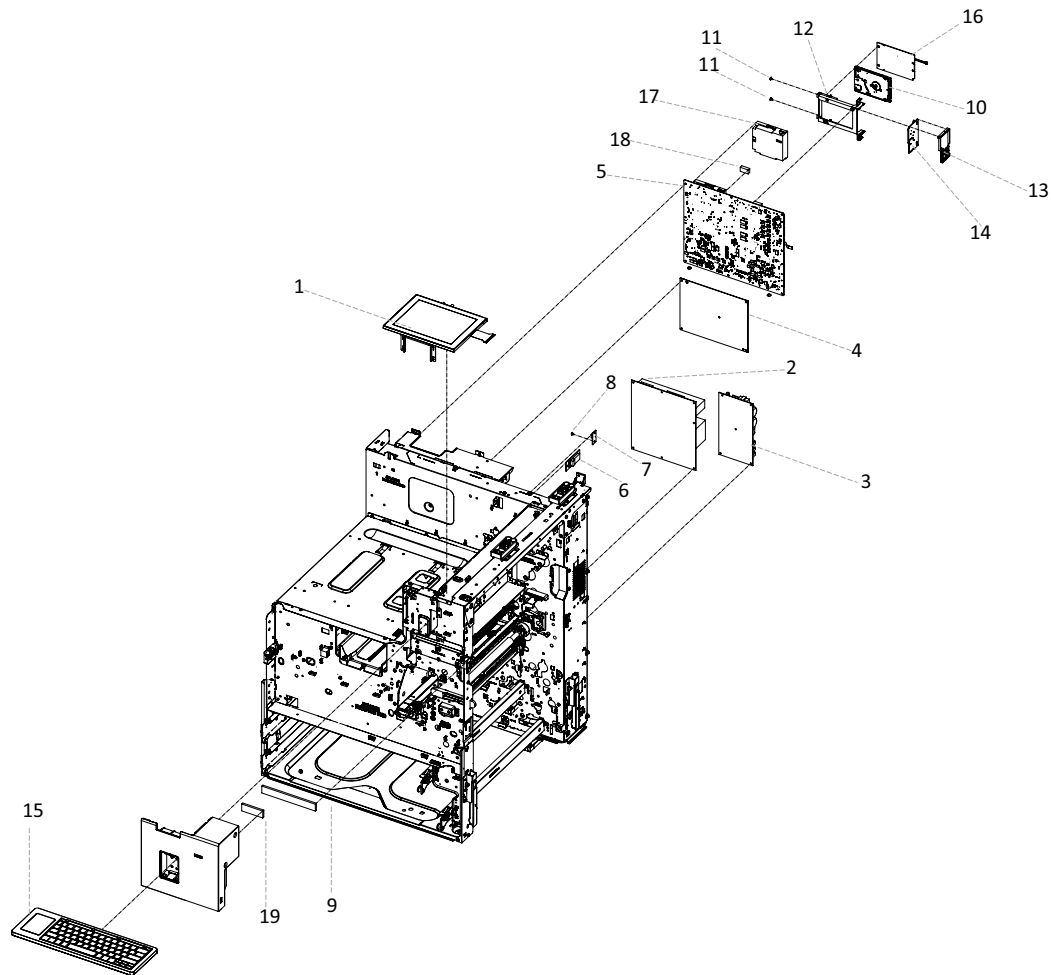


Table 7-17 PCA

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, U37-1	5QK42-60101	Control panel (10.1 inch)	1
1, U37-2	3SJ15-60101	Control panel (8 inch)	1
2, P11-1	JC44-00150C	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 220V	1
2, P11-2	JC44-00149C	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 110V	1
3, P12-1	JC44-00236C	Fuser drive board (FDB), 220V	1
3, P12-2	JC44-00235C	Fuser drive board (FDB), 110V	1
4, P10	5QK09-60001	High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS)	1
5, P1	6CF14-67002	Formatter	1
6, P7	3SJ06-60001	Island of Data (IOD) PCA	1
7, P8	T3U64-60001	Echo PCA	1

Table 7-17 PCA (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
8	6ER04-40034	Rivet-Echo PCA	1
9, P6	3SJ04-60001	USB Hub PCA	1
10, P5	933853-010	Hard disk 500GB SED	1
11	6ER04-40035	Rivet-HDD	1
12	5851-7753	Cradle-HDD	1
13	5851-7754	Cradle-Riser Card	1
14, P3-1	3SJ01-60001	Riser for HDD	1
14, P3-2	4XN67-60001	Riser for HDD, USB ports	1
14, P3-3	3SJ02-60001	Riser for HDD, USB ports, Accelerator	1
15, U38-1	JC93-01742A	Keyboard Assy-US English	1
Not shown	5851-6019	Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE,ES,UK Kybd)	1
Not shown	5851-6020	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES,US Kybd)	1
Not shown	5851-6021	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA,UK Kybd)	1
Not shown	5851-6022	Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	1
Not shown	5851-6023	Keyboard overlay kit (ES, PT)	1
Not shown	5851-6024	Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	1
15, U38-2	JC93-01743A	Keyboard Assy-UK English	1
16, P4	6HN30-67001	Accelerator (Optional)	1
17, P18-1	7ZA08-67001	Single Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	1
17, P18-2	7ZA09-67001	Single Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	1
17, P18-3	5QK14-67001	Dual Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	1
17, P18-4	7ZA07-67001	Dual Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	1
18, P2	3SJ03-60001 (Not Orderable)	TPM	1
19, P13	3SJ33-60007	PCA - power key	1

ADF / Image scanner assembly

Learn about the ADF and sub-scanner parts and assemblies.

Image scanner assembly (ISA)

Learn about the integrated-scanner assembly parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: ISA

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer ISA.

Figure 7-18 ISA

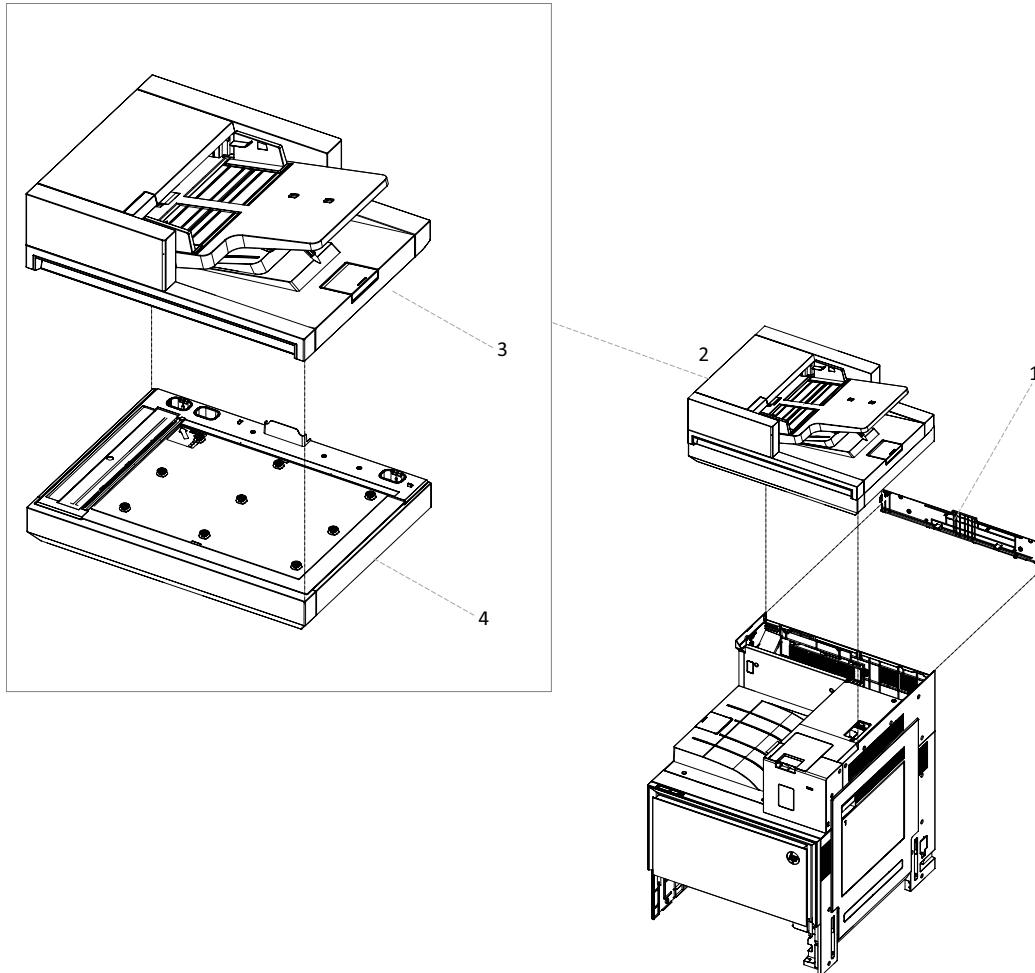


Table 7-18 ISA

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	3SJ11-40008	Cover Rear	1
2	5QK37-67001	HP LaserJet 300ipm 300 sheet Flow DADF high speed Scanner (300sh flow ADF + Tarot platen)	1
2	5QK35-67001	HP LaserJet 180ipm 200 sheet DADF Scanner (200sh ADF + Tarot platen)	1
3, U501	SQJ90-61042	300sh flow ADF (does not include white backing or suspension clips)	1
3, U601	5QJ90-67011	200sh ADF	1
4, U811	3SJ11-60103	Tarot platen	1

300sh flow ADF

Learn about the 300sh flow ADF parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: 300sh flow ADF (1 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer ADF.

Figure 7-19 300sh flow ADF (1 of 2)

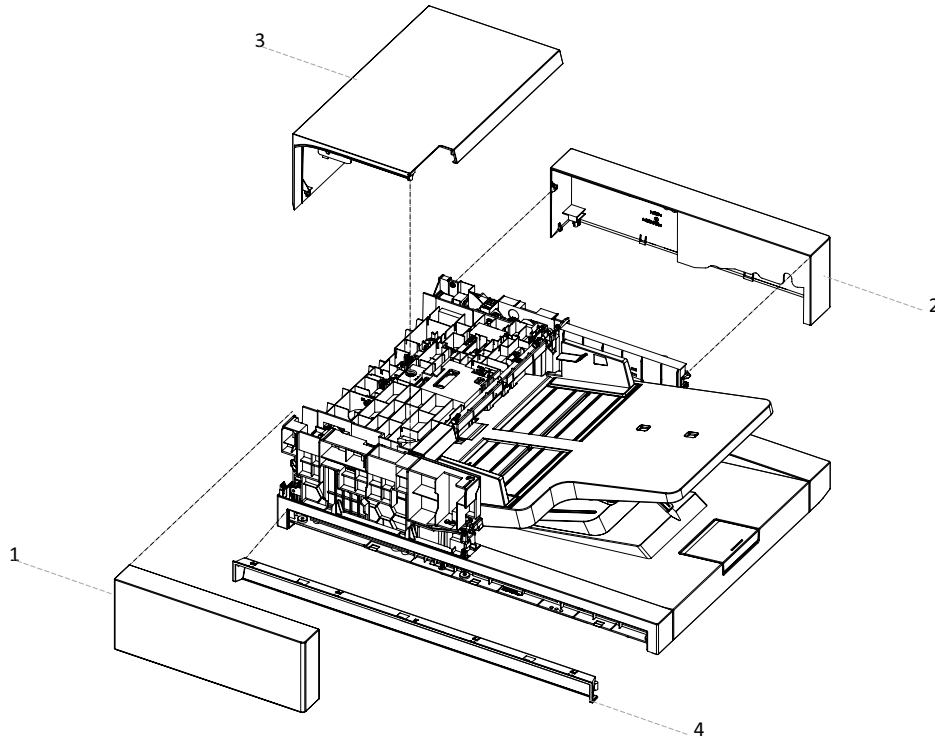


Table 7-19 300sh flow ADF (1 of 2)

Ref No, Callout	Part number	Description	Qty
1, C501	5QJ90-40049	ADF front cover	1
2, C502	5QJ90-40041	ADF rear cover	1
3, C503	5QJ90-40054	ADF top cover	1
4, C505	5QJ90-40056	ADF Blue CMF panel	1
4, C505	5QJ90-40108	ADF Gray CMF panel	1
4, C505	5QJ90-40109	ADF Red CMF panel	1
4, C505	5QJ90-40110	ADF Green CMF panel	1
4, C505	5QJ90-40111	ADF Yellow CMF panel	1
4, C505	5QJ90-40112	ADF Purple CMF panel	1

Parts and diagrams: 300sh flow ADF (2 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer ADF.

Figure 7-20 300sh flow ADF (2 of 2)

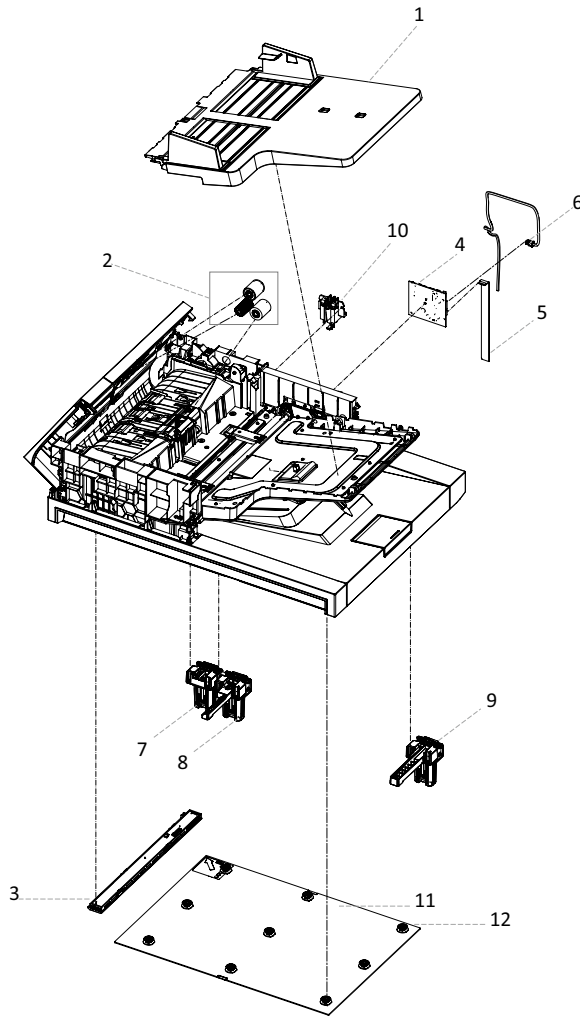


Table 7-20 300sh flow ADF (2 of 2)

Ref No, Callout	Part number	Description	Qty
1, C504	Z9Y05-60032	ADF input tray	1
2, K501	5RC00-67001	ADF roller kit	1
3, S511	Z9Y05-60047	ADF image sensor	1
4, P501	Z9Y05-60004	300sh ADF PCA	1
5	Z9Y05-50002	ADF FFC cable to SSA	1
6	Z9Y05-50003	ADF Power cable	1
7	Z9Y05-60014	Hinge left	1
8	Z9Y05-60015	Hinge middle	1
9	Z9Y05-60013	Hinge right	1

Table 7-20 300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) (continued)

Ref No, Callout	Part number	Description	Qty
10	Z9Y05-60016	Damper module	1
11	5QJ83-400019	White backing plate	1
12	J8J63-60135	White backing suspension	9

200sh ADF

Learn about the 200sh ADF parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (1 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer ADF.

Figure 7-21 200sh ADF (1 of 2)

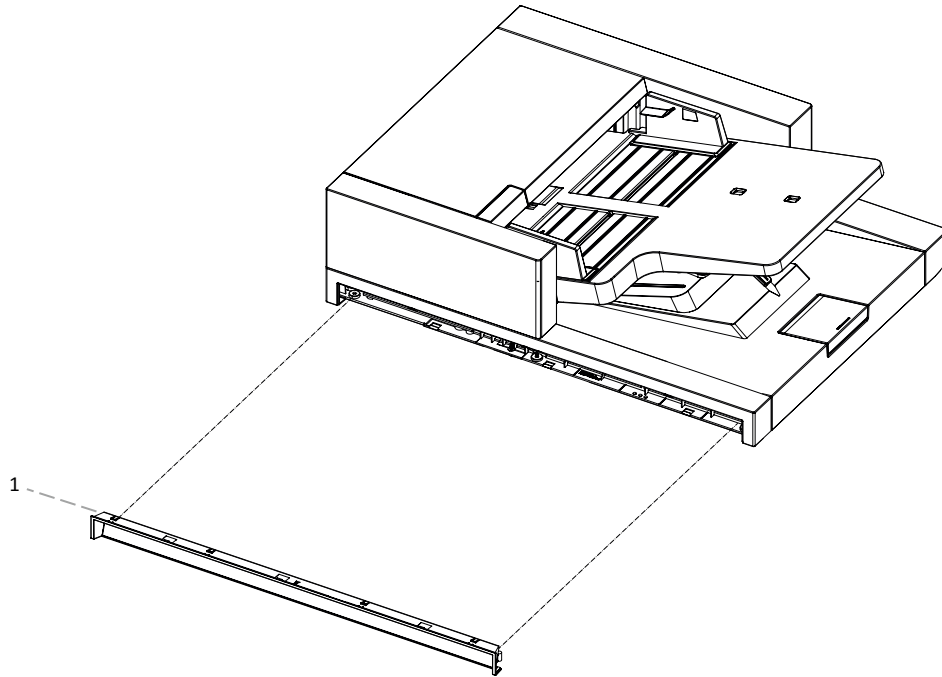


Table 7-21 200sh ADF (1 of 2)

Ref No, Callout	Part number	Description	Qty
1, C605	5QJ90-40056	ADF Blue CMF panel	1
1, C605	5QJ90-40108	ADF Gray CMF panel	1
1, C605	5QJ90-40109	ADF Red CMF panel	1
1, C605	5QJ90-40110	ADF Green CMF panel	1
1, C605	5QJ90-40111	ADF Yellow CMF panel	1
1, C605	5QJ90-40112	ADF Purple CMF panel	1

Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (2 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer ADF.

Figure 7-22 200sh ADF (2 of 2)

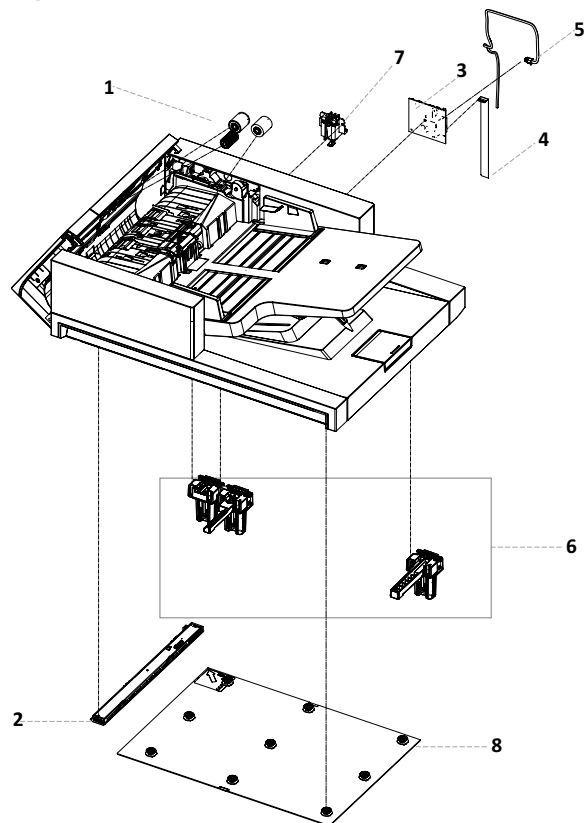


Table 7-22 200sh ADF (2 of 2)

Ref No, Callout	Part number	Description	Qty
1, K601	5851-7202	ADF roller kit	1
2, S609	Z9Y05-60047	ADF image sensor	1
3, P601-1	5QJ90-67013	200sh ENT ADF PCA	1
4	5QJ90-67009	ADF FFC cable to SSA	1
5	5QJ90-67010	ADF Power cable	1
6, K602	5QJ90-67004	Hinge Kit	1
7	5QJ90-67006	Damper module	1
8, K603	5QK08-67005	A3 White Backing Kit	1

Tarot platen

Learn about the tarot platen parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: Tarot platen

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer tarot platen.

Figure 7-23 Tarot platen

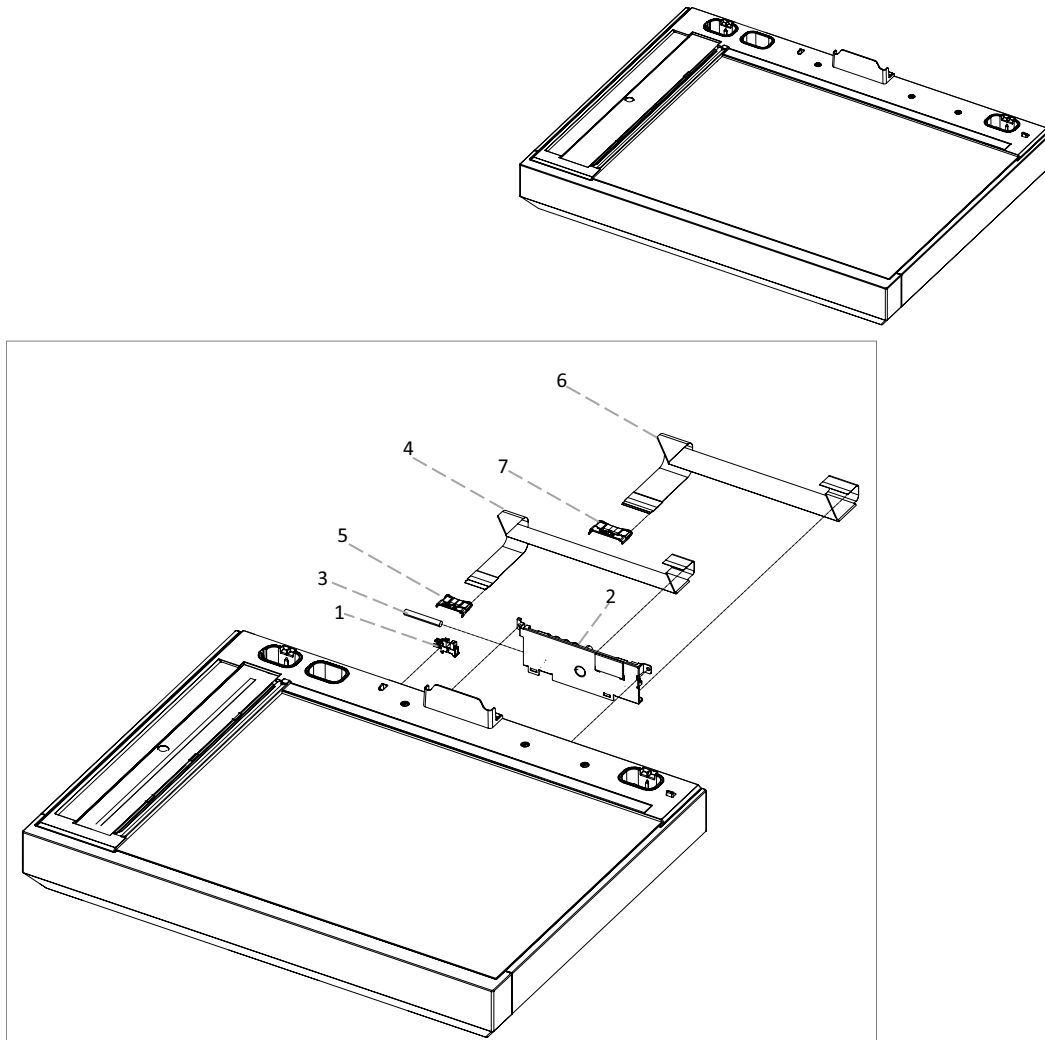


Table 7-23 Tarot platen

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, S803	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (ADF open sensor)	1
2, P811	Y6V12-60035	Tarot platen PCA	1
3	3SJ11-50006	Discrete power cable	1
4	3SJ11-50021	Platen FFC 50 pin	1
5	5QJ83-40035	Guide FFC	1
6	3SJ11-50022	Platen FFC 68 pin	1
7	5QJ83-40036	Guide FFC	1

Input devices

Learn about input device parts and assemblies.

Department Dual cassette feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5)

Learn about the DCF parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: DCF (1 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer DCF.

Figure 7-24 DCF (1 of 2)

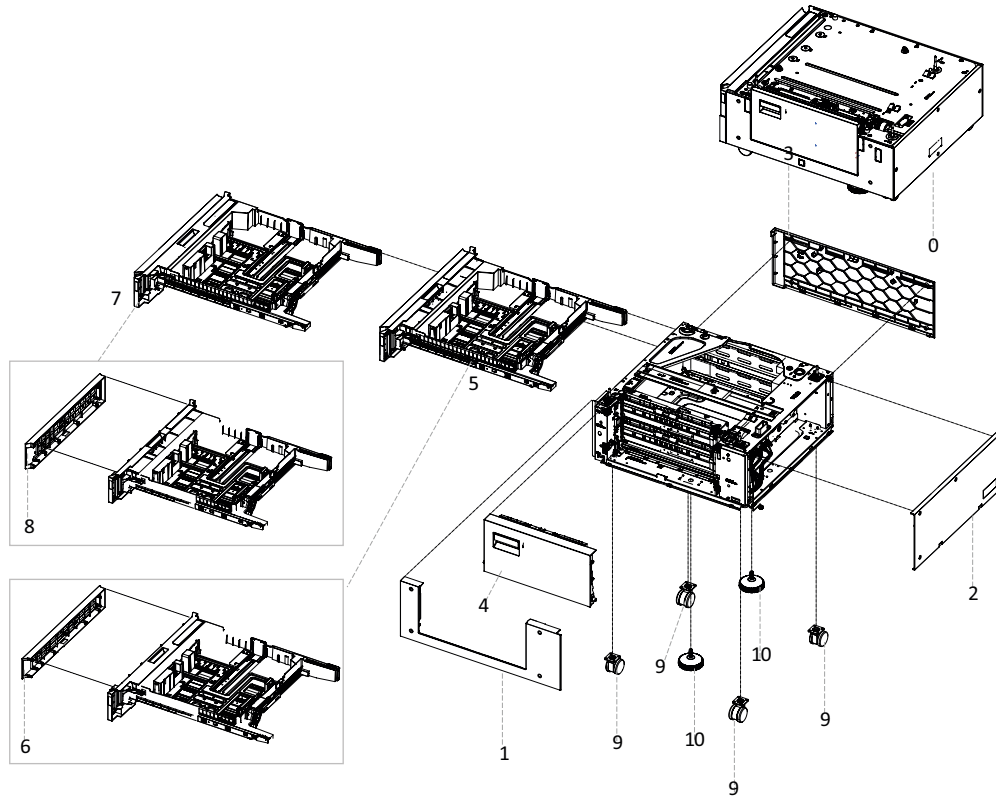


Table 7-24 DCF (1 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
0	6GW47-67001	DCF	1
1	5QK08-40006	DCF right cover	1
2	5QK08-40007	DCF rear cover	1
3	5QK08-40008	DCF left cover	1
4	5QK08-61004	DCF right door	1
5	5QK08-61007	Tray 4 cassette	1
6	5QK08-40011	Tray 4 Blue CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40027	Tray 4 Gray CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40030	Tray 4 Red CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40031	Tray 4 Green CMF panel	1

Table 7-24 DCF (1 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	8GR90-40032	Tray 4 Yellow CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40033	Tray 4 Purple CMF panel	1
7	5QK08-61005	Tray 5 cassette	1
8	5QK08-40012	Tray 5 Blue CMF panel	1
8	8GR90-40028	Tray 5 Gray CMF panel	1
8	8GR90-40034	Tray 5 Red CMF panel	1
8	8GR90-40035	Tray 5 Green CMF panel	1
8	8GR90-40036	Tray 5 Yellow CMF panel	1
8	8GR90-40037	Tray 5 Purple CMF panel	1
9	6109-001138	Caster wheel	1
10	JC61-04871A	Guide - adjust	1

Parts and diagrams: DCF (2 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer DCF.

Figure 7-25 DCF (2 of 2)

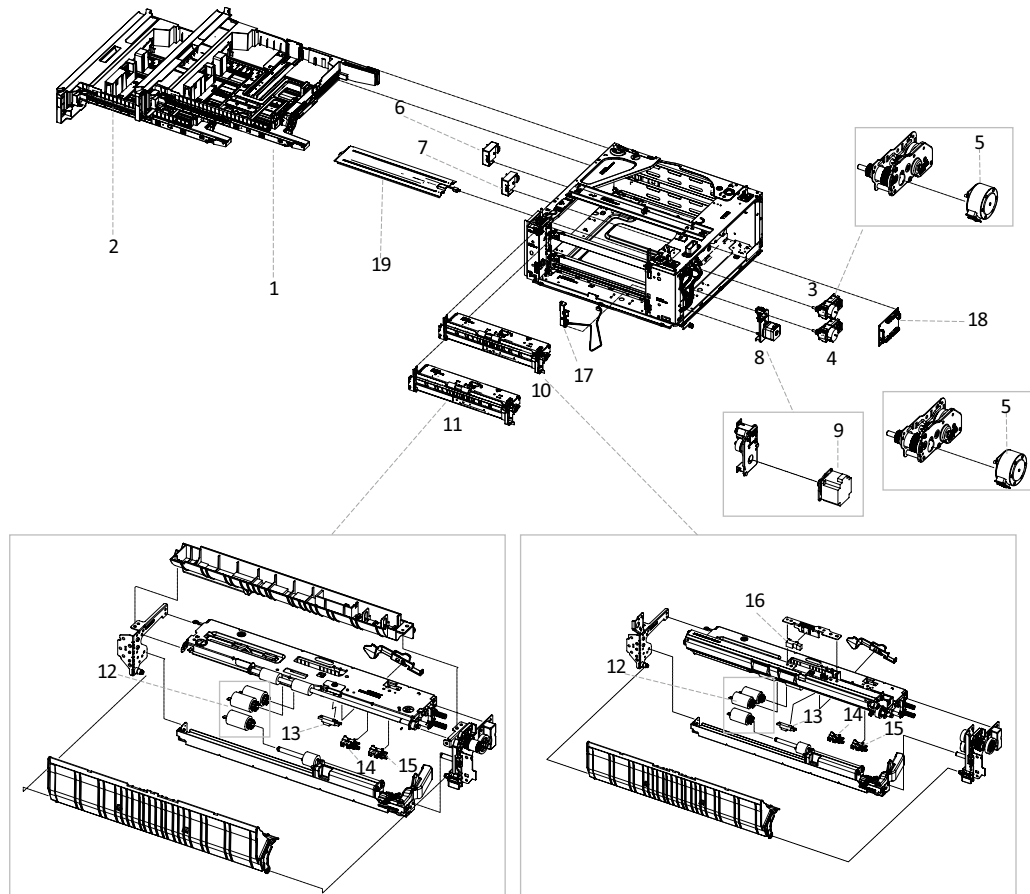


Table 7-25 DCF (2 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QK08-61007	Tray 4 cassette	1
2	5QK08-61005	Tray 5 cassette	1
3	JC93-01663A	Tray 4 pickup drive assembly	1
4	JC93-01663A	Tray 5 pickup drive assembly	1
5	JC93-01083A	Drive-motor step (Tray 4, 5 pickup motor)	1
6		(Tray 4 tray open, paper size sensor)	1
7		(Tray 5 tray open, paper size sensor)	1
8	JC93-01135A	DCF feed drive assembly	1
9	JC31-00177A	Motor, step (DCF feed motor)	1
10	5QK08-61009	Tray 4 pickup assembly	1
11	5QK08-61010	Tray 5 pickup assembly	1

Table 7-25 DCF (2 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
12	5PN66-67001	Tray 4, 5 roller kit	1
13	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Prefeed 4, 5 sensor)	1
14	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (DCF paper empty sensor)	1
15	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (DCF stack height sensor)	1
16	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (feed sensor)	1
17	JC90-01385A	Right door open switch holder assy	1
17	JC39-02268A	DCF Dpt_Door open switch sensor and harness	1
18	6GW47-60001	PCA-DCF Department	1
19	Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V	1
19	Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V	1

Department High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4)

Learn about the HCI parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: HCI (1 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer HCI.

Figure 7-26 HCI (1 of 2)

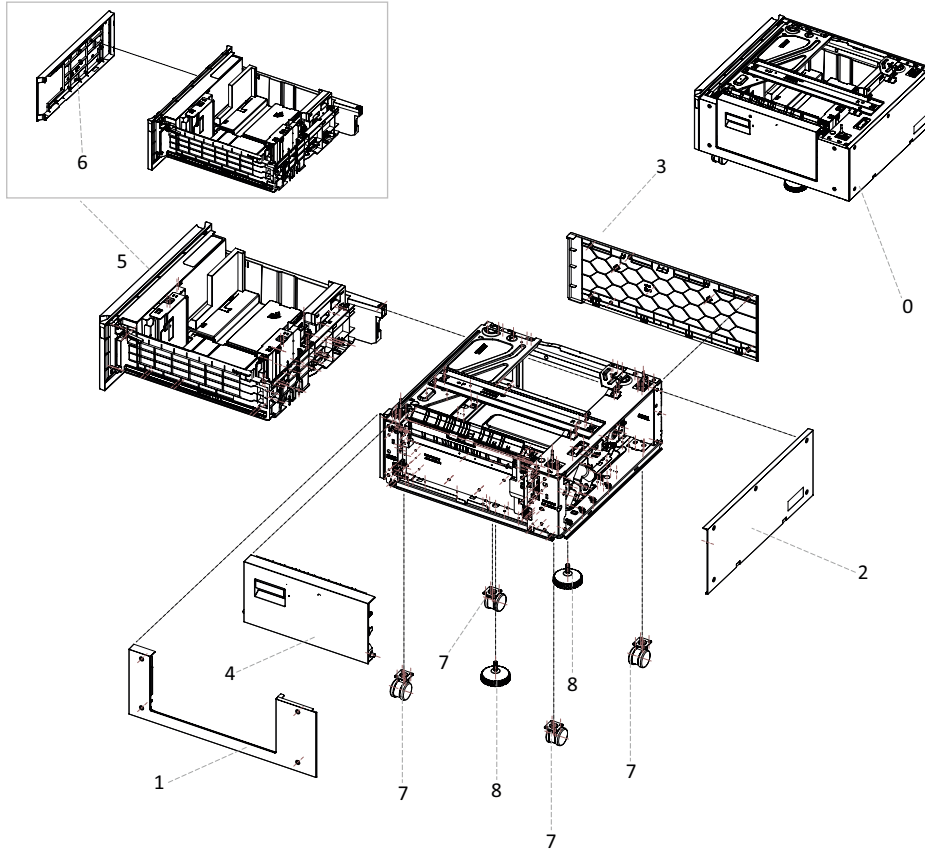


Table 7-26 HCI (1 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
0	6GW57-67001	HCI	1
1	5QK08-40006	HCI right cover	1
2	5QK08-40007	HCI rear cover	1
3	5QK08-40008	HCI left cover	1
4	5QK08-61023	HCI right door	1
5	5QK08-61014	HCI cassette	1
6	5QK08-40016	HCI front Blue CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40029	HCI front Gray CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40038	HCI front Red CMF panel	1

Table 7-26 HCl (1 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	8GR90-40039	HCl front Green CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40040	HCl front Yellow CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40041	HCl front Purple CMF panel	1
7	6109-001138	Caster wheel	1
8	JC61-04871A	Guide - adjust	1

Parts and diagrams: HCI (2 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer HCI.

Figure 7-27 HCI (2 of 2)

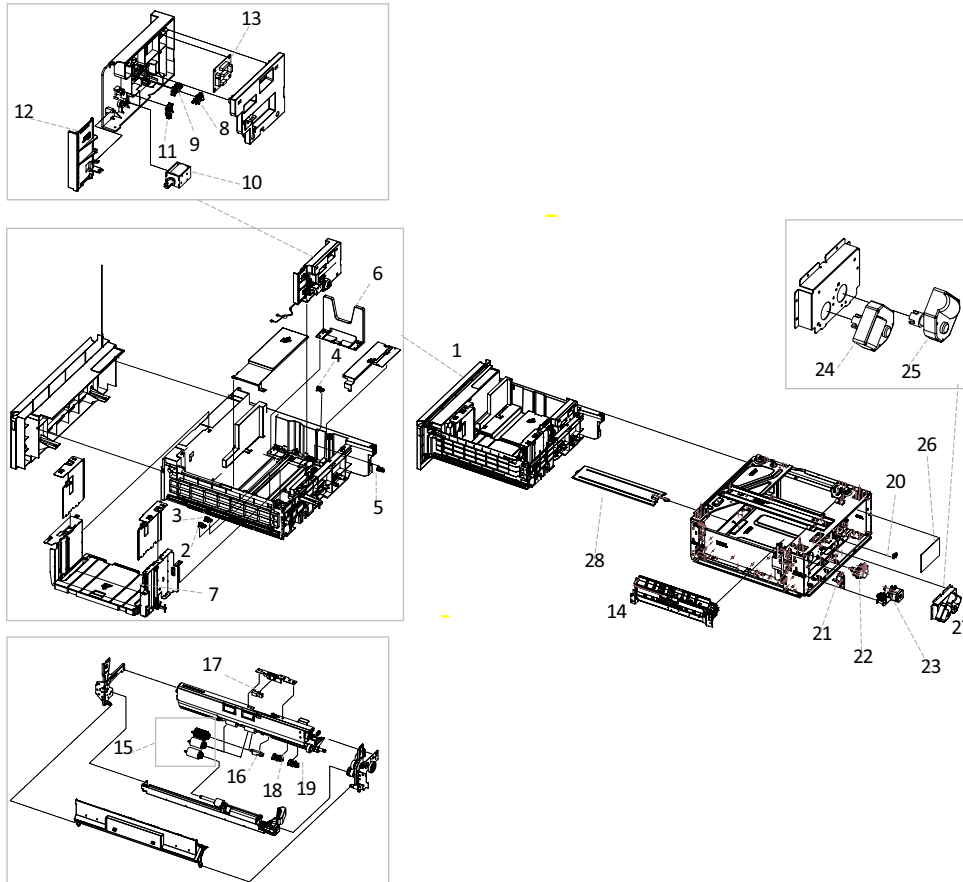


Table 7-27 HCI (2 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QK08-61014	HCI cassette	1
2	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI knock-up home sensor)	1
3	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift tray end sensor)	1
4	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift tray home sensor)	1
5	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift tray empty sensor)	1
6	JC81-07481B	HCI shift plate	1
7	6GW48-60003	Knock-up plate assembly	1
8	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift tray level sensor 1)	1
9	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift tray level sensor 2)	1
10	JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting (HCI shift gate solenoid)	1
11	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift gate solenoid home sensor)	1

Table 7-27 HCl (2 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
12	JC81-07478B	Paper gate	1
13	JC92-02792A	PBA-Shift tray level	1
14	5QK08-61013	HCl pickup assembly	1
15	5PN66-67001	HCl roller kit	1
16	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Prefeed 4 sensor)	1
17	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (HCl feed sensor)	1
18	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCl paper empty sensor)	1
19	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCl stack height sensor)	1
20	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCl tray open sensor)	1
21	JC90-01385A	Right door open switch holder assy	1
21	JC39-02279A	HCl Dpt_Dooropen switch sensor and harness	1
22	JC93-01115A	HCl pickup motor	1
23	JC93-01114A	HCl feed motor	1
24	JC31-00109A	(HCl tray lift motor)Motor, geared	1
25	JC31-00125A	Motor, geared (HCl paper shift motor)	1
26	6GW57-60001	PCA-HCl Department	1
27	JC93-01118A	HCl Lift Drive Assy (Shift)	1
28	Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V	1
28	Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V	1

Department Side High Capacity Input device (sHCI, Tray 5 or 6)

Learn about the sHCI parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: sHCI (1 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer sHCI.

Figure 7-28 sHCI (1 of 2)

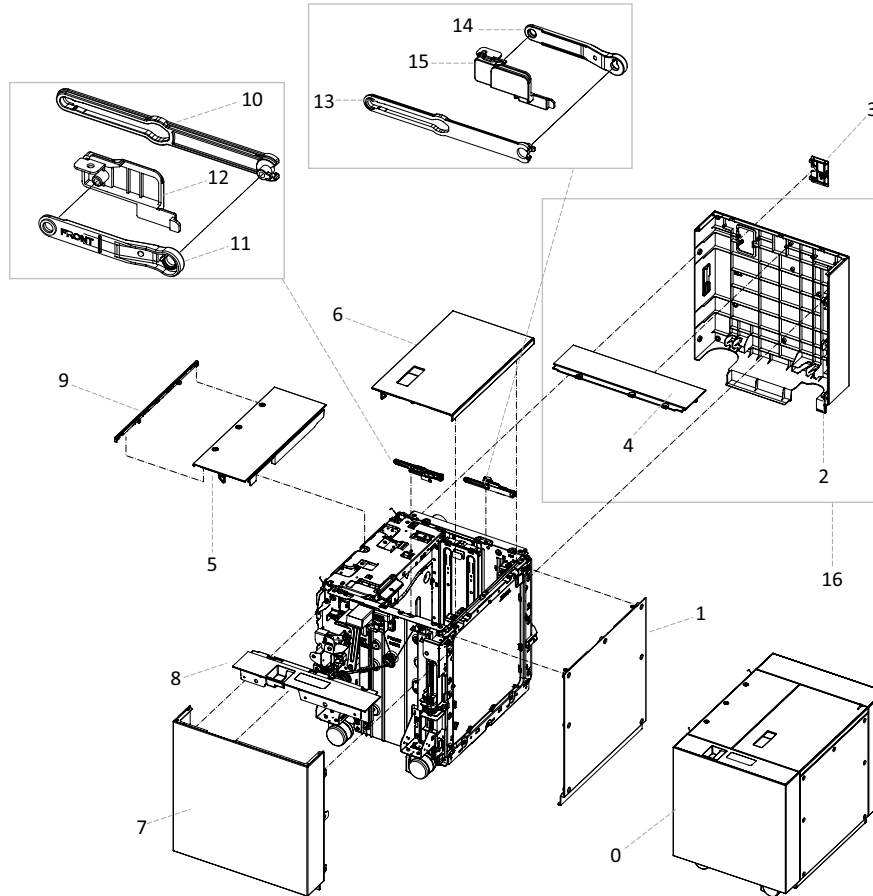


Table 7-28 sHCI (1 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
0	6GW56-67001	sHCI	1
1	5QK08-40020	sHCI right cover	1
2	5QK08-40025	sHCI rear cover	1
3	5QK08-40018	sHCI harness cover	1
4	5QK08-40024	sHCI rear top cover	1
5	5QK08-40019	sHCI pickup cover	1
6	5QK08-61018	sHCI top cover	1
7	5QK08-40026	sHCI front cover	1

Table 7-28 sHCI (1 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
8	5QK08-40027	sHCI front top cover	1
9	5QK08-40028	sHCI left cover	1
10	JC66-04279A	Link door 1st front	1
11	JC66-04278A	Link door 2nd front	1
12	JC61-06567A	Link holder front	1
13	JC66-04279A	Link door 1st rear	1
14	JC66-04277A	Link door 2nd rear	1
15	JC61-06568A	Link holder rear	1
16	5QK08-61019	sHCI rear cover assembly	1

Parts and diagrams: sHCI (2 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer sHCI.

Figure 7-29 sHCI (2 of 2)

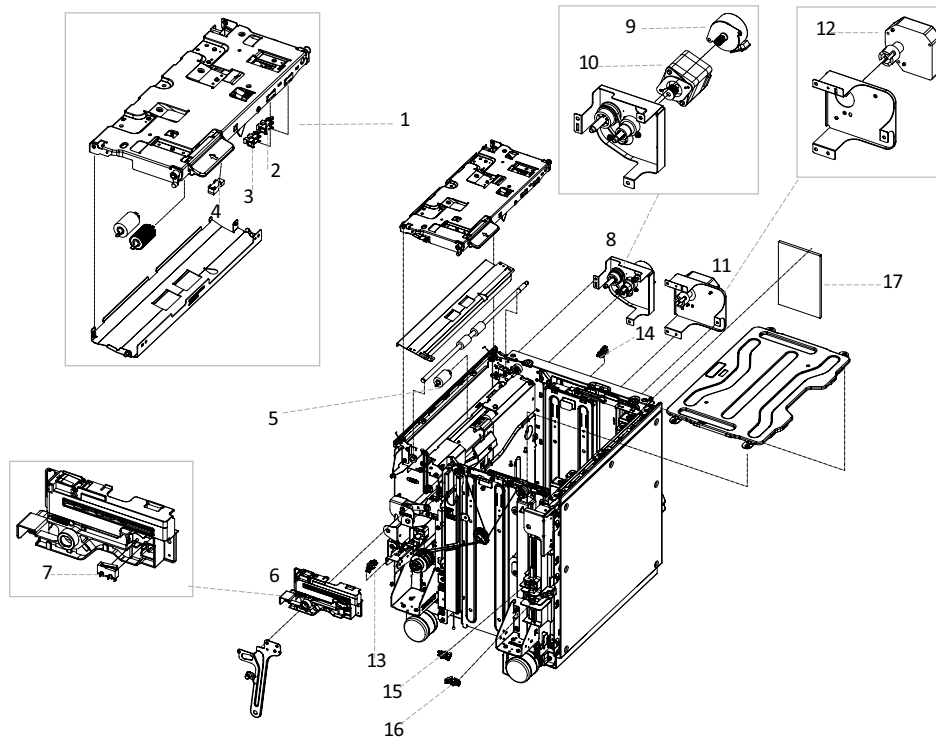


Table 7-29 sHCI (2 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QJ98-60014	sHCI pickup assembly	
2	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI stack height sensor)	1
3	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI paper empty sensor)	1
4	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (Prefeed 5 sensor)	1
5	JC93-01726A	Reverse roller	1
6	JC93-01123A	sHCI top cover open switch assembly	1
7	JC39-02346A	sHCI door open sensor	1
8	JC93-01112A	sHCI pickup/feed drive assembly	1
9	JC93-01083A	Drive-motor step (sHCI pickup motor)	1
10	JC31-00163A	Motor, step (sHCI feed motor)	1
11	JC93-01127A	sHCI lift drive assembly	1
12	JC31-00109A	Motor, geared (sHCI lift motor)	1
13	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI detection sensor 1, front)	1

Table 7-29 sHCI (2 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
14	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI detection sensor 2, rear)	1
15	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI paper level sensor 1)	1
16	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sHCI paper level sensor 2)	1
17	6GW56-60001	PCA-sHCI Department	1

Output device

Learn about output device parts and assemblies.

Inner finisher

Learn about the inner finisher parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (1 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer inner finisher.

Figure 7-30 Inner finisher (1 of 5)

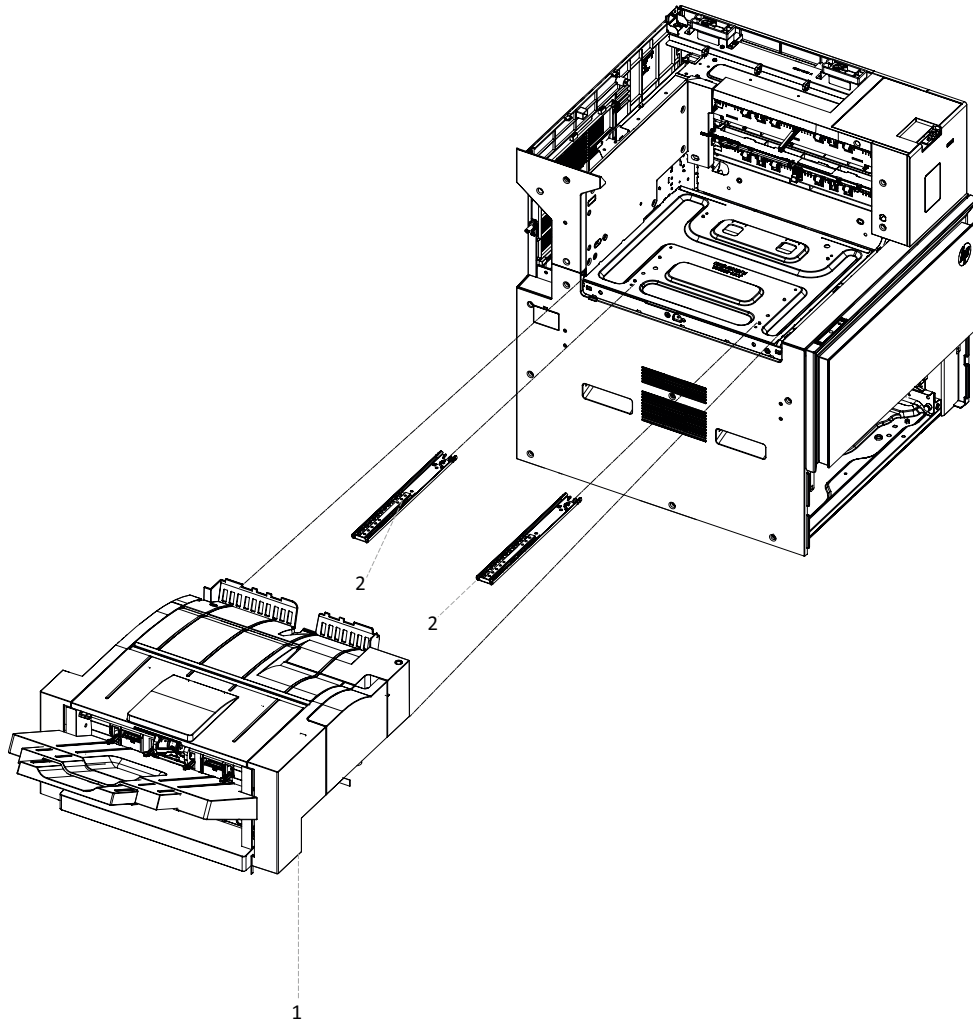


Table 7-30 Inner finisher (1 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	6GW49-67002	Inner Finisher	1
2	6102-003354	Guide rail	1

Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (2 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer inner finisher.

Figure 7-31 Inner finisher (2 of 5)

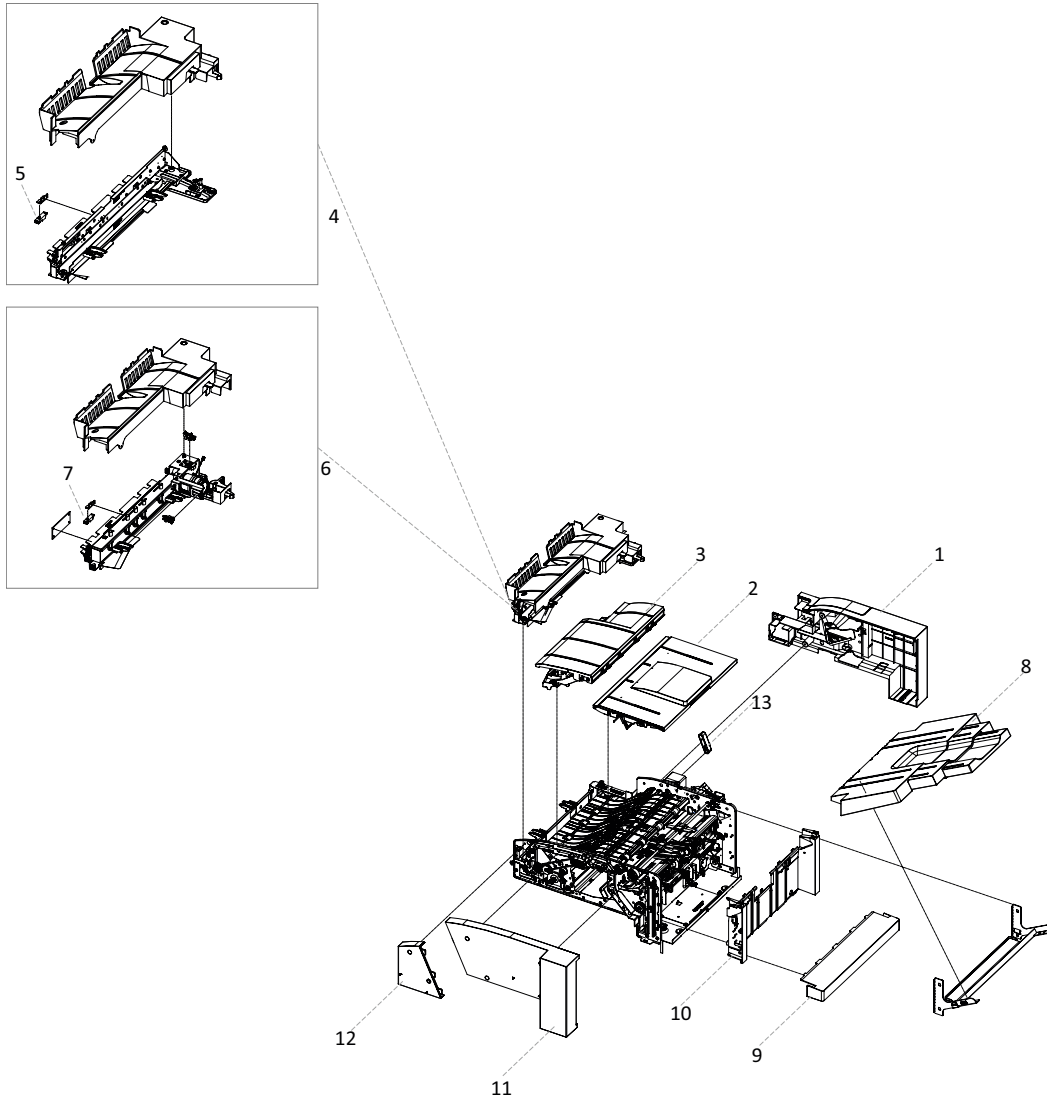


Table 7-31 Inner finisher (2 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QK09-60123	Front cover assy	1
2	5QK09-60125	Top cover assy	1
3	5QK09-60124	Middle cover assy	1
4	8GS05-60114	Punch cover assembly	1
5	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Entrance sensor)	1
6	155P7-67001	Hole 2/3 punch (optional)	1
6	155P8-67001	Hole 2/4 punch (optional)	1

Table 7-31 Inner finisher (2 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	155P9-67001	Swedish punch (optional)	1
7	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Entrance sensor)	1
8	5QK09-60118	Output tray assy	1
9	5QK09-40004	PCA cover	1
10	8GS05-60113	Left cover assy	1
11	5QK09-40018	Rear cover -base	1
12	5QK09-40037	Rear cover -punch	1
13	JC66-04233A	Lock release handle	1

Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (3 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer inner finisher.

Figure 7-32 Inner finisher (3 of 5)

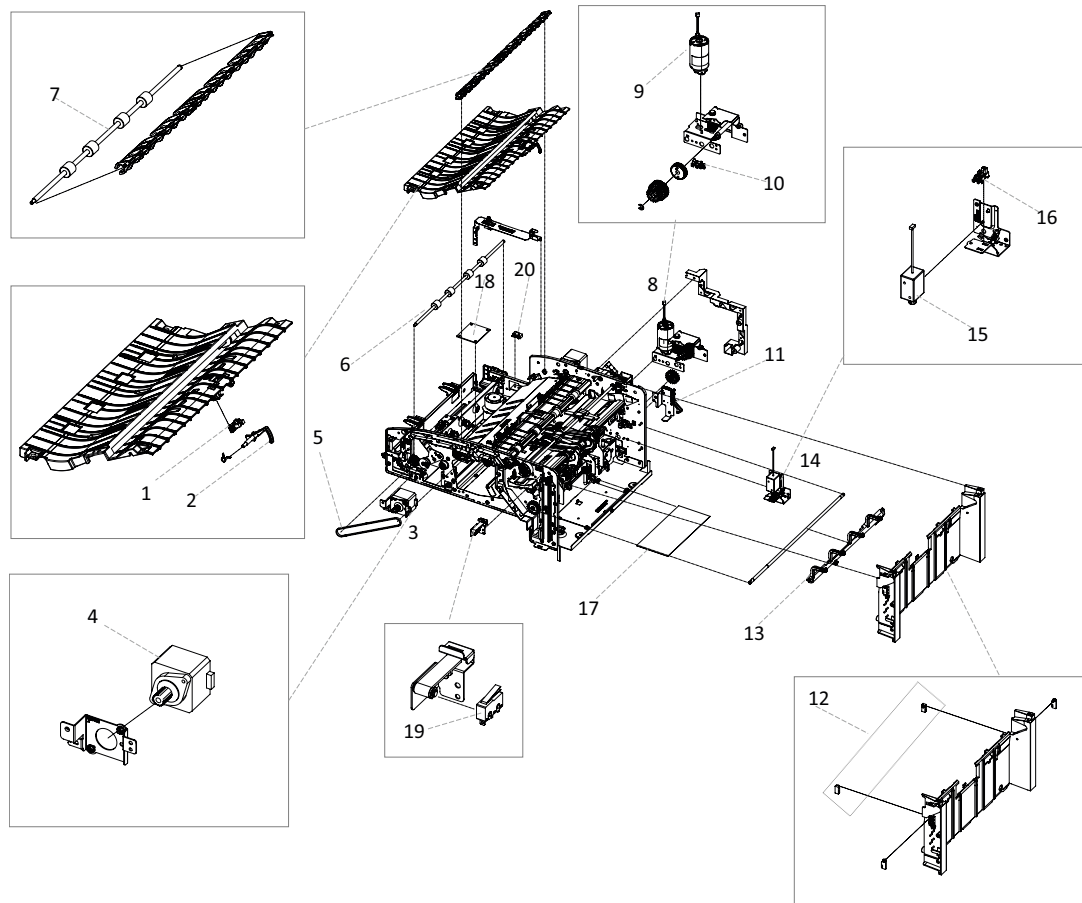


Table 7-32 Inner finisher (3 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Exit sensor)	1
2	JC66-04199A	Exit sensor actuator	1
3	5QK09-60128	Entrance motor assy	1
4	JC31-00169B	Motor, step (Entrance motor)	1
5	6602-003644	Entrance motor timing belt	1
6	JC66-04243A	Entrance roller	1
7	JC66-04243A	Middle roller	1
8	JC90-01334B	Output tray motor assy	1
9	JC31-00178B	Motor DC (Output tray motor)	1
10	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Output tray motor sensor)	1
11	JC90-01320A	Output tray lower limit switch assy	1

Table 7-32 Inner finisher (3 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
12	JC82-01039A	Output tray top of stack sensor kit	1
13	JC90-01313A	Paper holding actuator	1
14	JC90-01314A	Paper holding kit	1
15	JC33-00037A	Electric clutch (Paper holding solenoid)	1
16	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paper holding sensor)	1
17	6GW49-60001	Inner finisher PCA	1
18	JC92-02780A	Rear joint PCA	1
19	JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open (Front cover switch)	1
20	JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open (Top cover switch)	1

Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (4 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer inner finisher.

Figure 7-33 Inner finisher (4 of 5)

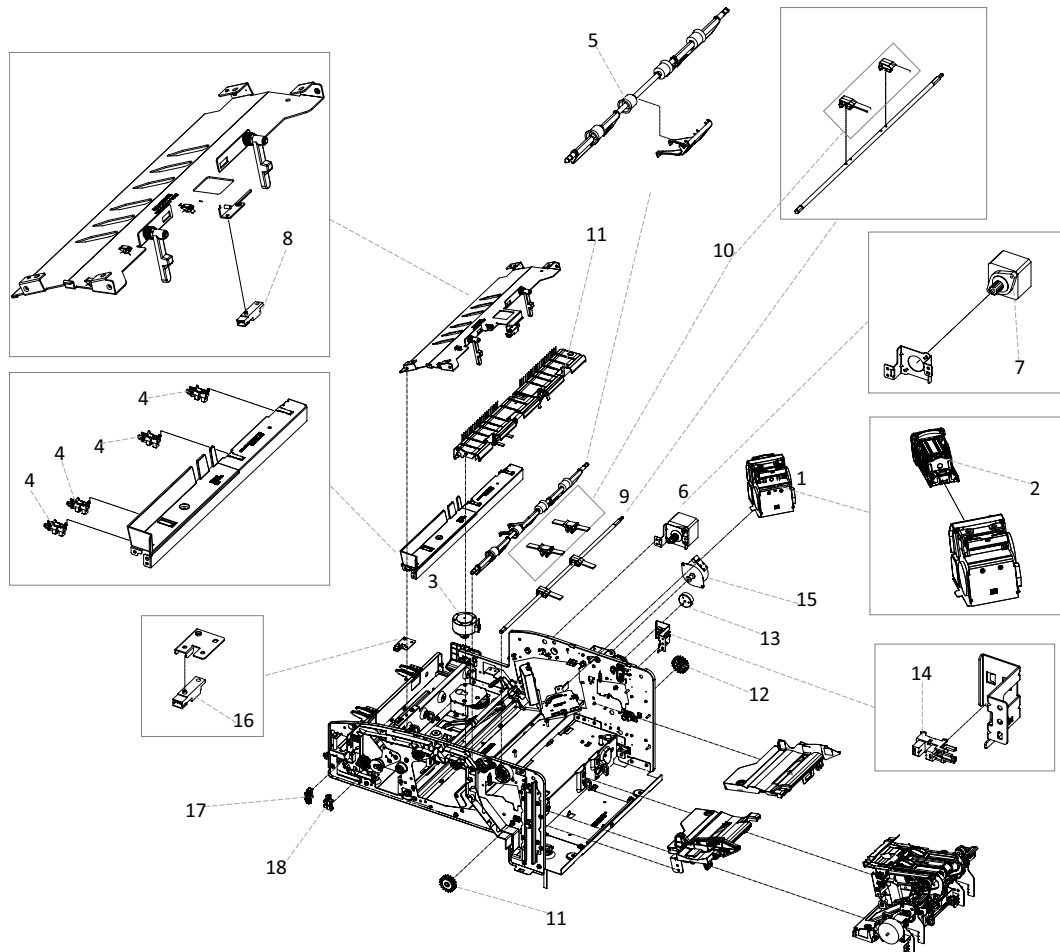


Table 7-33 Inner finisher (4 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	6GW49-60003	Stapler assembly	1
2	6GW49-40001	Staple cartridge	1
3	JC93-00999A	Drive-motor step (Stapler position motor)	1
4	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler position sensor)	1
5	JC90-01330A	Exit roller assy	1
6	JC90-01331A	Exit motor assy	1
7	JC31-00169B	Motor, step (Exit motor)	1
8	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (End fence sensor)	1
9	JC90-01327A	Main paddle	1
10	JC82-01038A	Main paddle kit	1

Table 7-33 Inner finisher (4 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
11	JC90-01336A	Sub paddle assy	1
12	JC66-04218A	Gear rack pinion	1
13	JC66-04201A	Actuator home paddle	1
14	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Main paddle home sensor)	1
15	JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Main paddle motor)	1
16	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Punch waste full sensor)	1
17	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (finisher docking sensor)	1
18	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (punch waste box sensor)	1

Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (5 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer inner finisher.

Figure 7-34 Inner finisher (5 of 5)

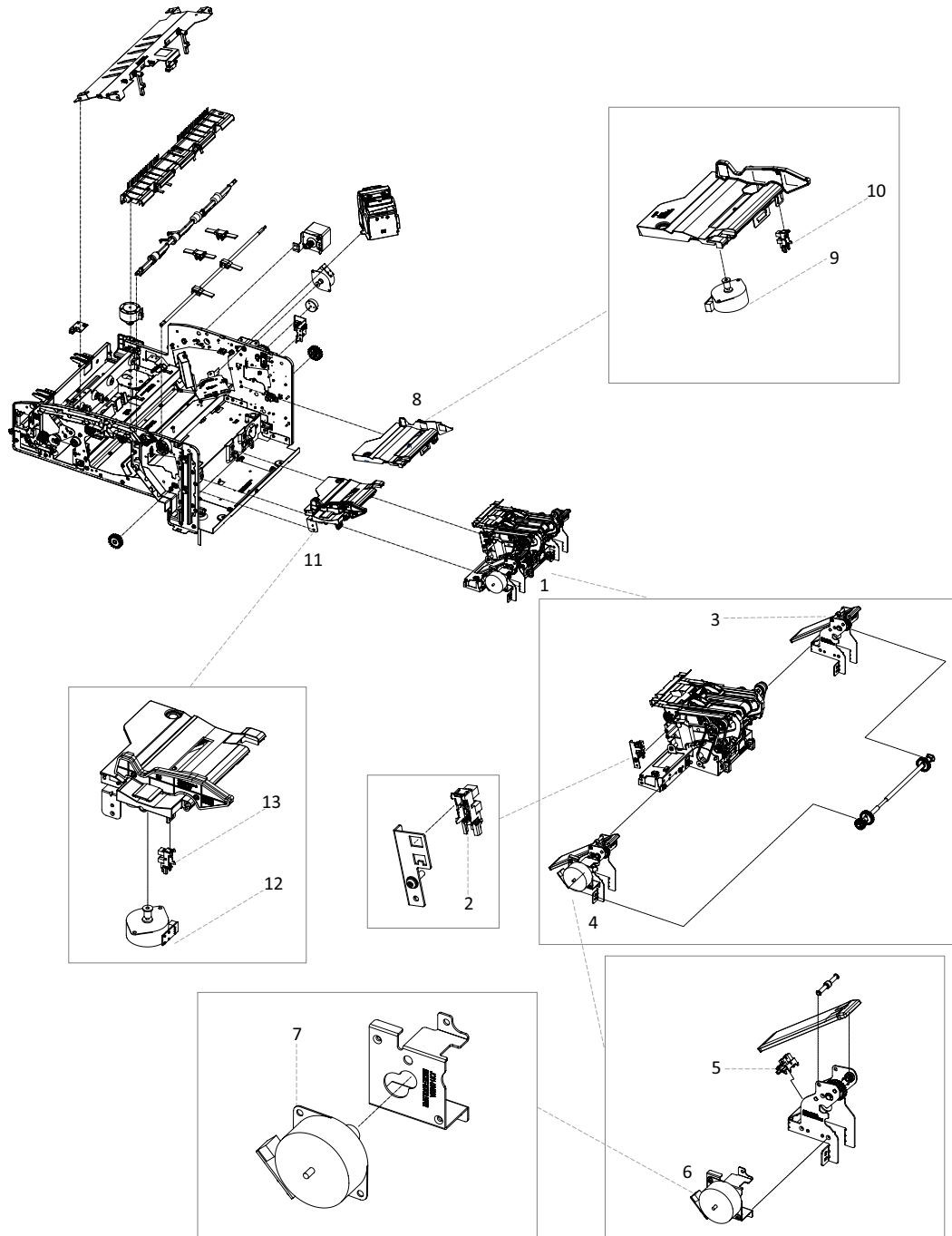


Table 7-34 Inner finisher (5 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	SS456-61001	Ejector	1
2	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Ejector1 home sensor)	1

Table 7-34 Inner finisher (5 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
3	JC90-01310A	Front paper support	1
4	JC90-01311A	Rear paper support	1
5	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paper support home sensor)	1
6	JC90-01312A	Paper support motor assy	1
7	JC93-00802B	Drive sub-motor step (Paper support motor)	1
8	JC82-00899A	Front tamper	1
9	JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Front tamper motor)	1
10	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Front tamper home sensor)	1
11	JC82-00900A	Rear tamper	1
12	JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Rear tamper motor)	1
13	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Rear tamper home sensor)	1

Stapler/Stacker finisher

Learn about the stapler/stacker parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4)

Parts diagram and parts list for the stapler/stacker finisher.

Figure 7-35 Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4)

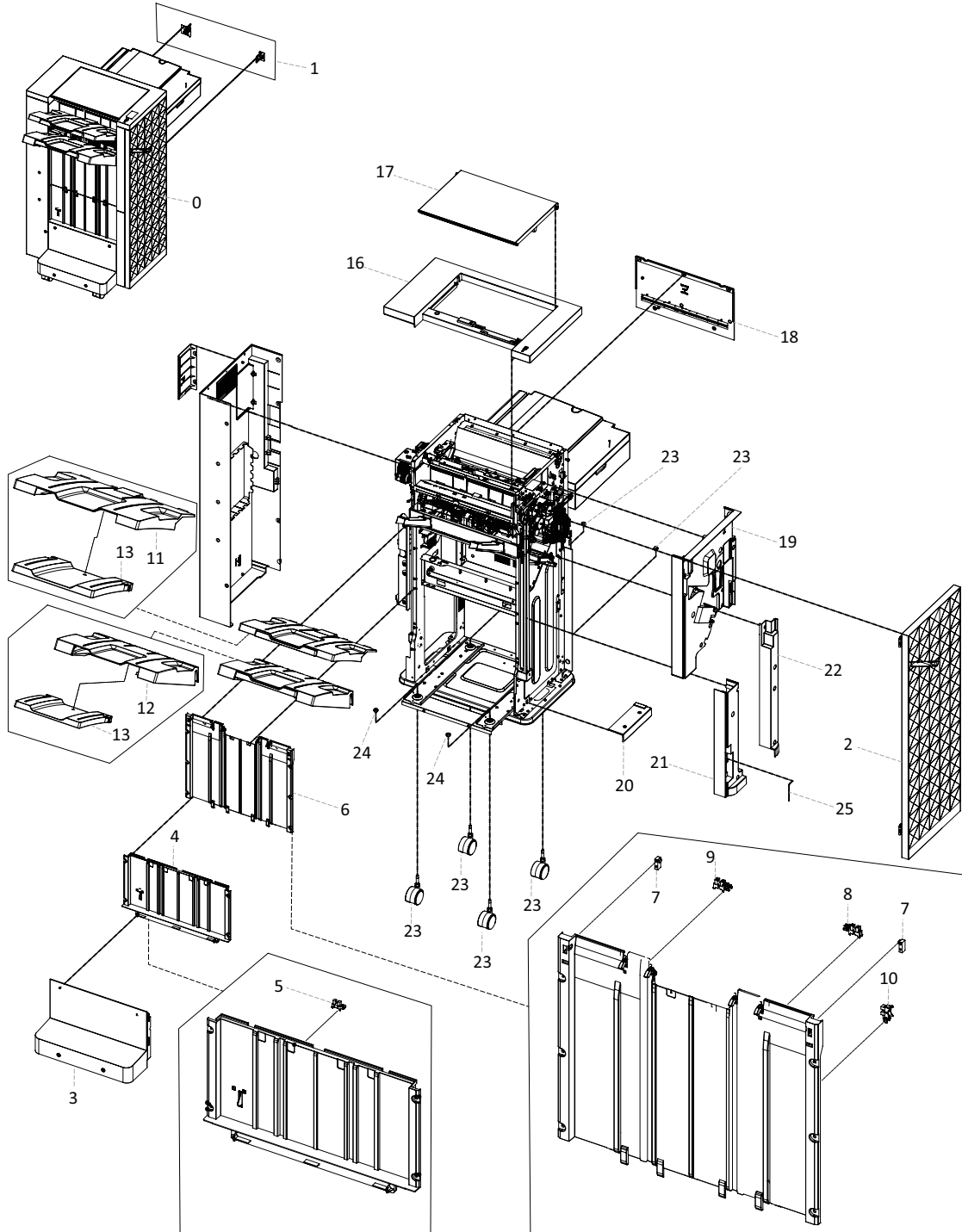


Table 7-35 Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
0	6GW55-67001	Stapler/Stacker finisher	1
1	JC90-01442A	Finisher mount bracket	1
2	5QK09-60106	Front door	1
3	8GS05-40018	Caster cover	1
4	8GS05-60122	Left lower cover	1
5	0604-001415	Main output tray lower limit sensor	1
6	8GS05-60118	Left upper cover	1
7	JC82-01039A	Main output tray top of stack sensor	1
8	0604-001393	Front paper holding sensor	1
9	0604-001393	Rear paper holding sensor	1
10	0604-001393	Paper holding home sensor	1
11	5QK09-40027	Top output tray	1
12	5QK09-40028	Main output tray	1
14	5QK09-40029	Tray extension	1
14	5QK09-40021	Rear cover	1
15	5QK09-40030	Punch cover	1
16	5QK09-60108	Top cover	1
17	5QK09-60107	Top door	1
18	5QK09-60109	Right upper cover	1
19	5QK09-40019	Front cover	1
20	5QK09-40020	Front lower cover	1
21	5QK09-40047	Front lower left cover	1
22	5QK09-40048	Front lower right cover	1
23	JC61-07452A	Caster	1
24	JC61-07444A	Caster fix nut	1
25	JC66-04767A	Shaft hinge - door	1

Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4)

Parts diagram and parts list for the stapler/stacker finisher.

Figure 7-36 Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4)

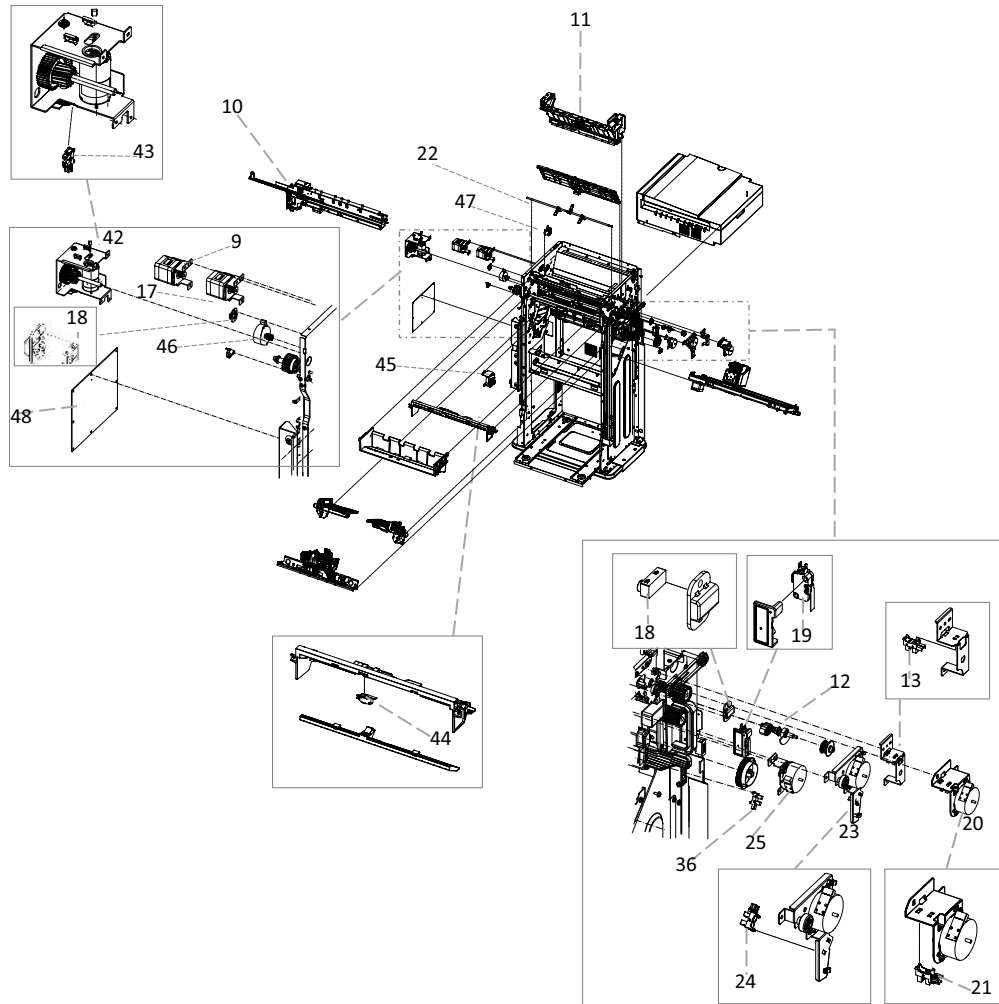


Table 7-36 Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
9	8GS05-60104	Entrance motor assembly	1
10	Y1G10-67901	Punch unit 2-3 hole	1
10	Y1G11-67901	Punch unit 2-4 hole	1
10	Y1G12-67901	Punch unit Swedish hole	1
11	JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly	1
12	JC90-01458A	Tray diverter cam	1
13	0604-001415	Tray diverter home sensor	1
17	8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	1
18	JC82-01039A	Top output tray paper full sensor	1

Table 7-36 Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
19	JC39-02309A	Front door switch	1
20	JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly	1
21	0604-001393	Main exit cam home sensor	1
22	JC90-01480A	Paddle	1
23	JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly	1
24	0604-001393	Paddle home sensor	1
25	JC90-01467A	End fence motor assembly	1
36	0604-001415	Manual staple sensor	1
42	JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor drive assembly	1
43	0604-001393	Main output tray motor sensor	1
44	JC39-02316A	Main output tray top of stack switch	1
45	JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor drive assembly	1
46	JC93-01152A	Buffer motor	1
47	JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid assembly	1
48	6GW55-60001	Main PCA	1

Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4)

Parts diagram and parts list for the stapler/stacker finisher.

Figure 7-37 Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4)

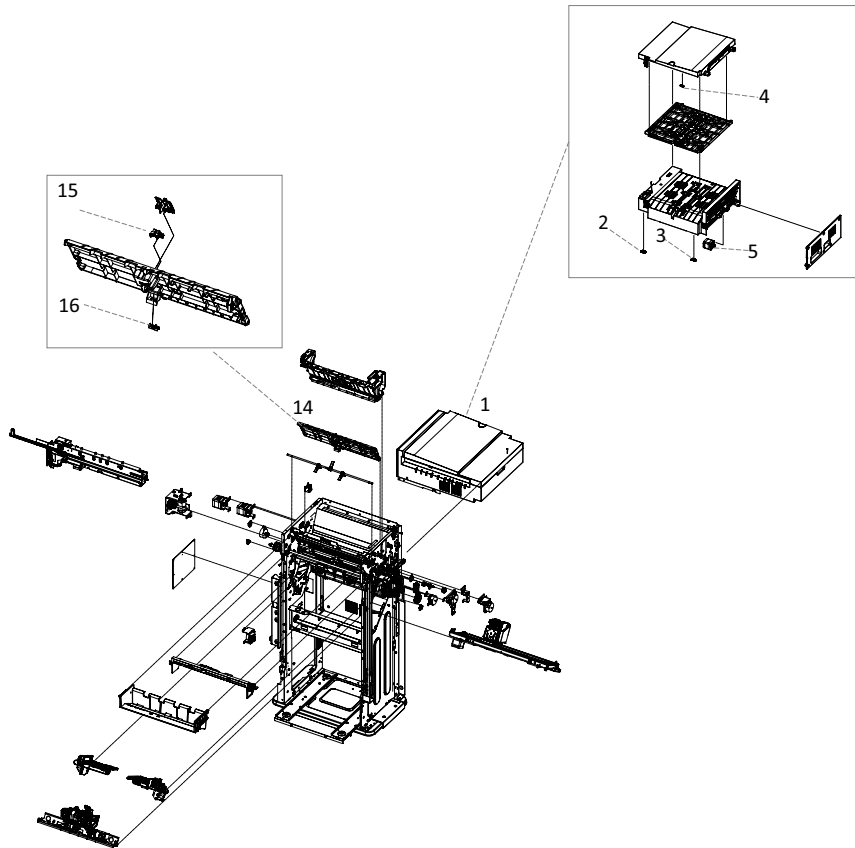


Table 7-37 Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QK09-60110	Bridge unit	1
2	0604-001393	Bridge door sensor	1
3	JC32-00020A	Bridge entrance sensor	1
4	0604-001393	Bridge exit sensor	1
5	3SJ19-80501	Bridge motor	1
14	JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly	1
15	JC32-00020A	Main exit sensor	1
16	0604-001393	Top exit sensor	1
17	8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	1

Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4)

Parts diagram and parts list for the stapler/stacker finisher.

Figure 7-38 Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4)

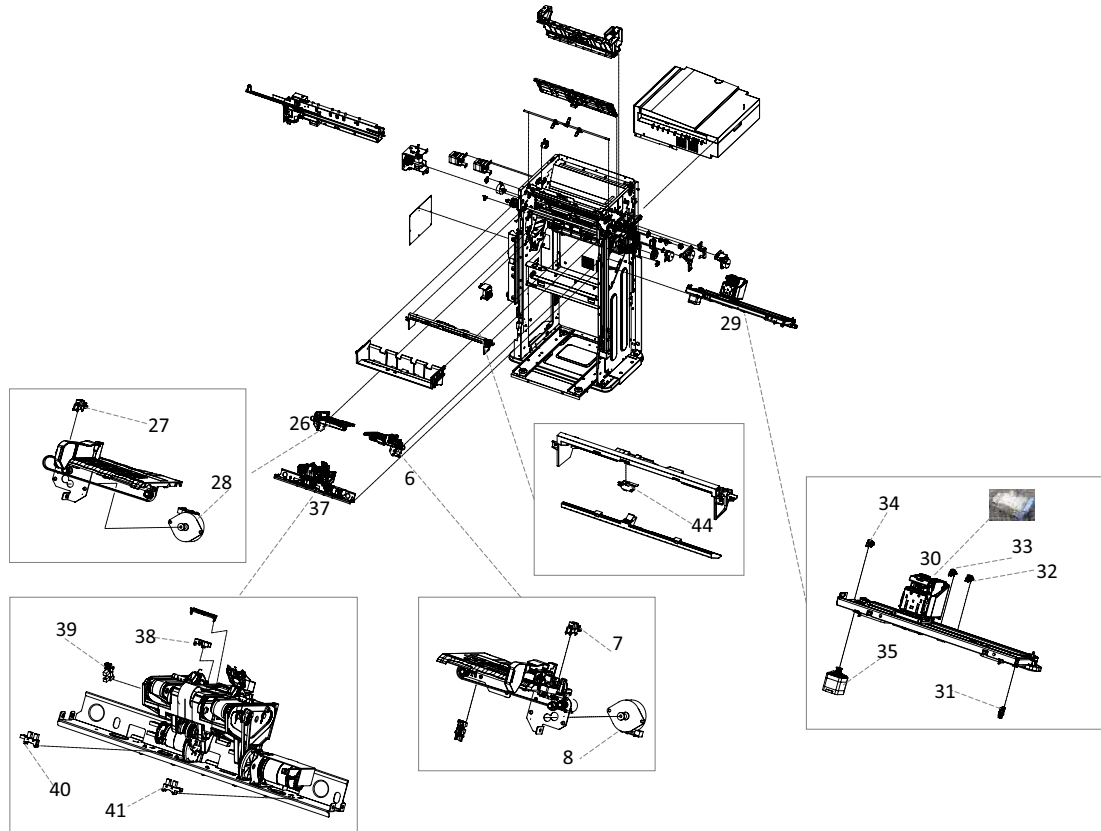


Table 7-38 Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	JC82-00901A	Front tamper	1
7	0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor	1
8	JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor	1
26	JC82-00898A	Rear tamper	1
27	0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor	1
28	JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor	1
29	JC82-00894A	Staple unit	1
30	JC81-09882B	Staple cartridge	1
31	0604-001393	Staple front sensor	1
32	0604-001393	Staple mid-front sensor	1
33	0604-001393	Staple mid-rear sensor	1
34	0604-001393	Staple rear sensor	1
35	JC31-00163A	Staple position motor	1

Table 7-38 Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
37	JC90-01802A	Ejector unit	1
38	JC32-00020A	Ejector sensor	1
39	0604-001415	Ejector1 home sensor	1
40	0604-001415	Ejector1 motor sensor	1
41	0604-001415	Ejector2 motor sensor	1

Booklet finisher

Learn about the booklet finisher parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (1 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer booklet finisher.

Figure 7-39 Booklet finisher (1 of 5)

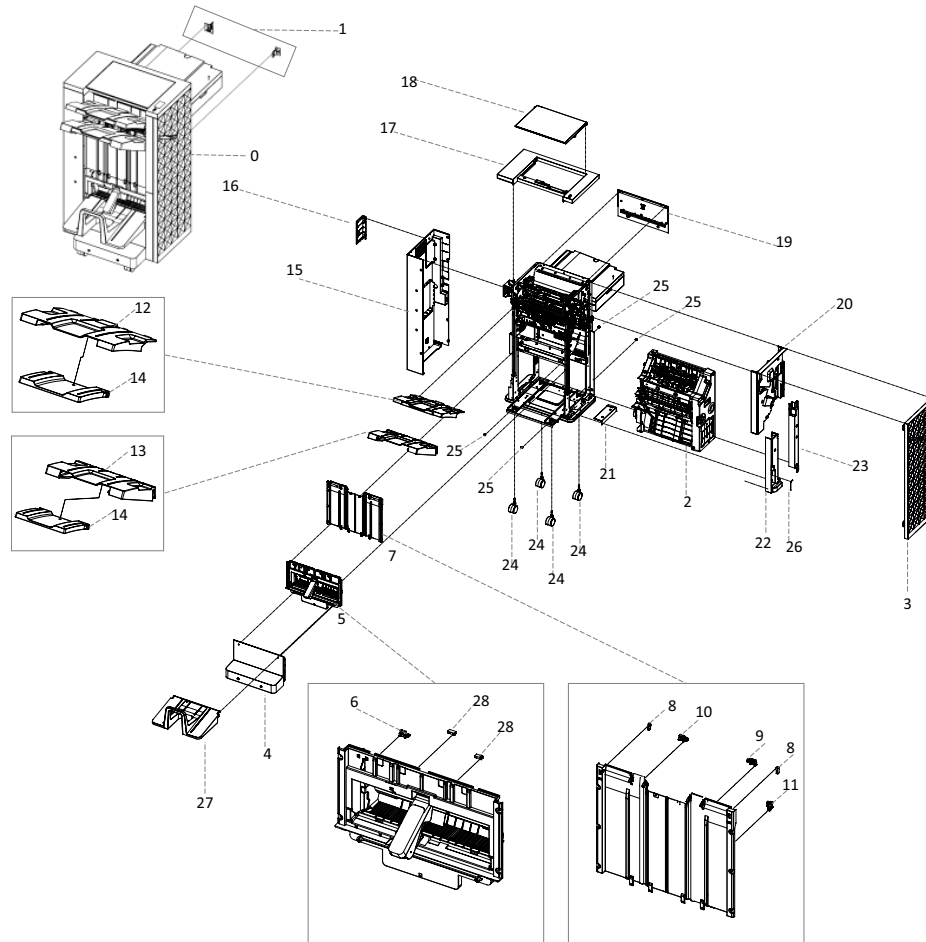


Table 7-39 Booklet finisher (1 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
0	6GW51-67001	Booklet finisher	1
1	JC90-01442A	Finisher mount bracket	1
2	5QK09-60104	Booklet maker unit	1
3	5QK09-60106	Front door	1
4	8GS05-40018	Caster cover	1
5	8GS05-60124	Left lower cover (Booklet)	1
6	0604-001415	Main output tray lower limit sensor	1

Table 7-39 Booklet finisher (1 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
7	8GS05-60118	Left upper cover	1
8	JC82-01039A	Main output tray top of stack sensor	1
9	0604-001393	Front paper holding sensor	1
10	0604-001393	Rear paper holding sensor	1
11	0604-001393	Paper holding home sensor	1
12	5QK09-40027	Top output tray	1
13	5QK09-40028	Main output tray	1
14	5QK09-40029	Tray extension	1
15	5QK09-40021	Rear cover	1
16	5QK09-40030	Punch cover	1
17	5QK09-60108	Top cover	1
18	5QK09-60107	Top door	1
19	5QK09-60109	Right upper cover	1
20	5QK09-40019	Front cover	1
21	5QK09-40020	Front lower cover	1
22	5QK09-40047	Front lower left cover	1
23	5QK09-40048	Front lower right cover	1
24	JC61-07452A	Caster	1
25	JC61-07444A	Caster fix nut	1
26	JC66-04767A	Shaft hinge - door	1
27	8GS05-60126	Booklet output tray	1
28	JC82-01039A	Booklet output tray sensor	1

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (2 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer booklet finisher.

Figure 7-40 Booklet finisher (2 of 5)

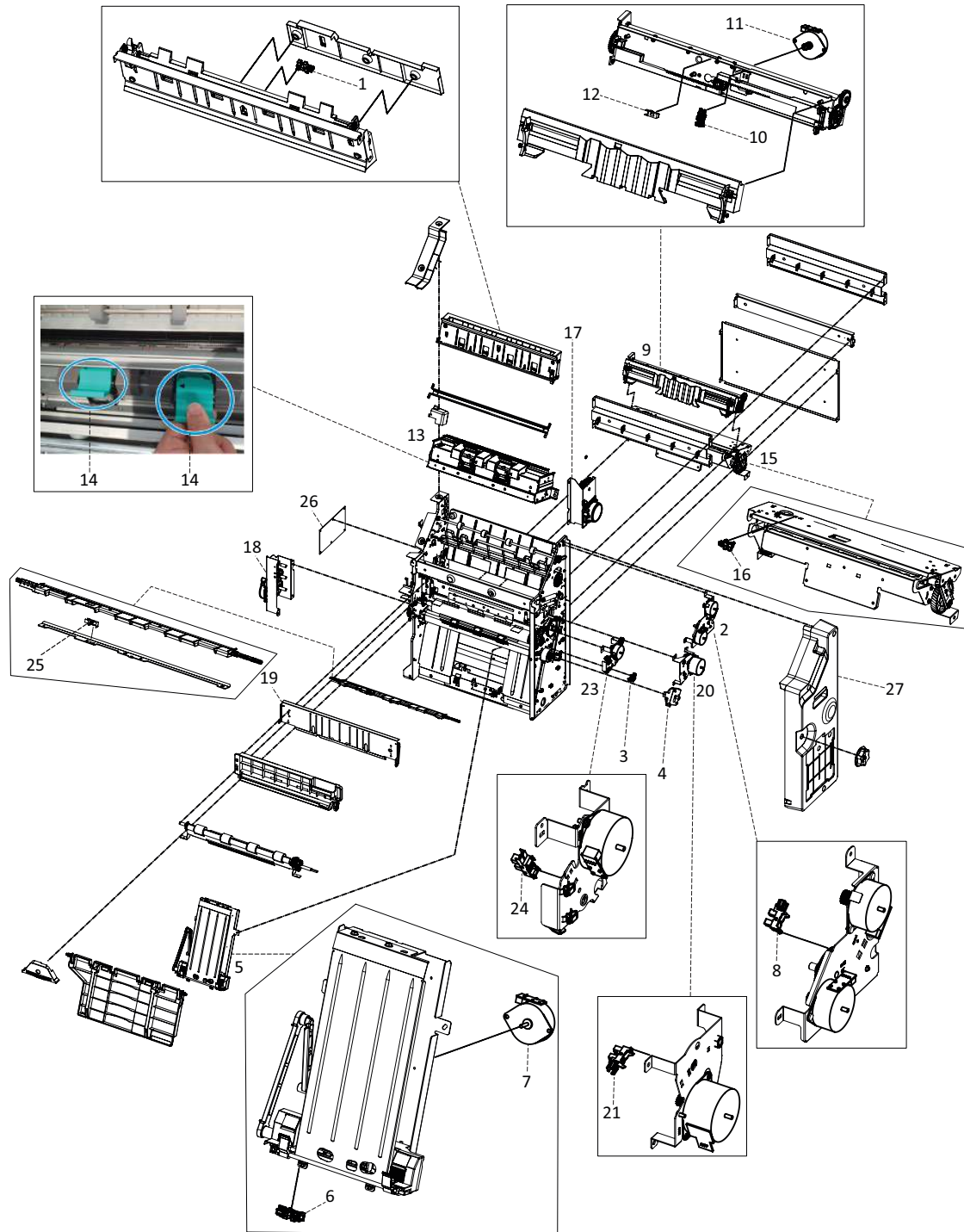


Table 7-40 Booklet finisher (2 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	0604-001415	Booklet entrance sensor	1
2	JC90-01425A	Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly	1
3	0604-001393	Booklet paddle home sensor	1
4	JC90-01430A	Booklet paddle motor assembly	1
5	JC90-01432A	Booklet end fence	1
6	0604-001393	Booklet end fence home sensor	1
7	JC93-01155A	Booklet end fence motor	1
8	0604-001393	Booklet presser home sensor	1
9	JC90-01431A	Booklet tamper	1
10	0604-001393	Booklet tamper home sensor	1
11	JC93-01155A	Booklet tamper motor	1
12	JC32-00020A	Booklet tamper sensor	1
13	8GS05-60126	Booklet stapler	1
14	JC81-08274A	Booklet stapler cartridge	1
15	JC93-01163A	Booklet blade	1
16	0604-001393	Booklet blade home sensor	1
17	JC90-01435A	Booklet blade motor assembly	1
18	JC90-01436A	Booklet fold motor assembly	1
19	JC61-07366A	Booklet c-fold blade	1
20	JC90-01396A	Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly	1
21	0604-001393	Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	1
22	JC90-01398A	Booklet diverter	1
23	JC90-01397A	Booklet diverter motor assembly	1
24	0604-001415	Booklet diverter home sensor	1
25	JC32-00020A	Booklet exit sensor	1
26	6GW51-60001	Booklet maker PCA	1
27	JC90-01478B	Booklet front cover	1

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (3 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer booklet finisher.

Figure 7-41 Booklet finisher (3 of 5)

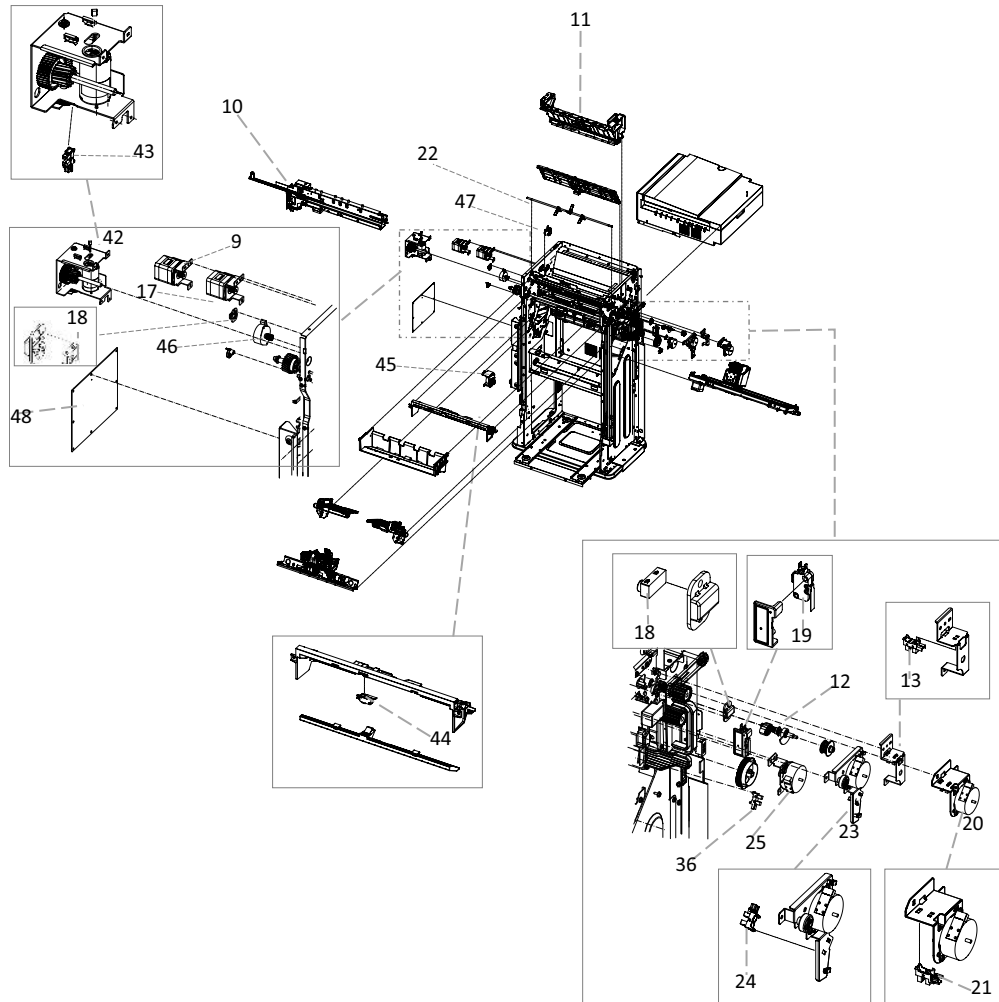


Table 7-41 Booklet finisher (3 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
9	8GS05-60104	Entrance motor assembly	1
10	Y1G10-67901	Punch unit 2-3 hole	1
10	Y1G11-67901	Punch unit 2-4 hole	1
10	Y1G12-67901	Punch unit Swedish hole	1
11	JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly	1
12	JC90-01458A	Tray diverter cam	1
13	0604-001415	Tray diverter home sensor	1
17	8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	1
18	JC82-01039A	Top output tray paper full sensor	1

Table 7-41 Booklet finisher (3 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
19	JC39-02309A	Front door switch	1
20	JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly	1
21	0604-001393	Main exit cam home sensor	1
22	JC90-01480A	Paddle	1
23	JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly	1
24	0604-001393	Paddle home sensor	1
25	JC90-01467A	End fence motor assembly	1
36	0604-001415	Manual staple sensor	1
42	JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor drive assembly	1
43	0604-001393	Main output tray motor sensor	1
44	JC39-02316A	Main output tray top of stack switch	1
45	JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor drive assembly	1
46	JC93-01152A	Buffer motor	1
47	JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid assembly	1
48	6GW55-60001	Main PCA	1

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (4 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer booklet finisher.

Figure 7-42 Booklet finisher (4 of 5)

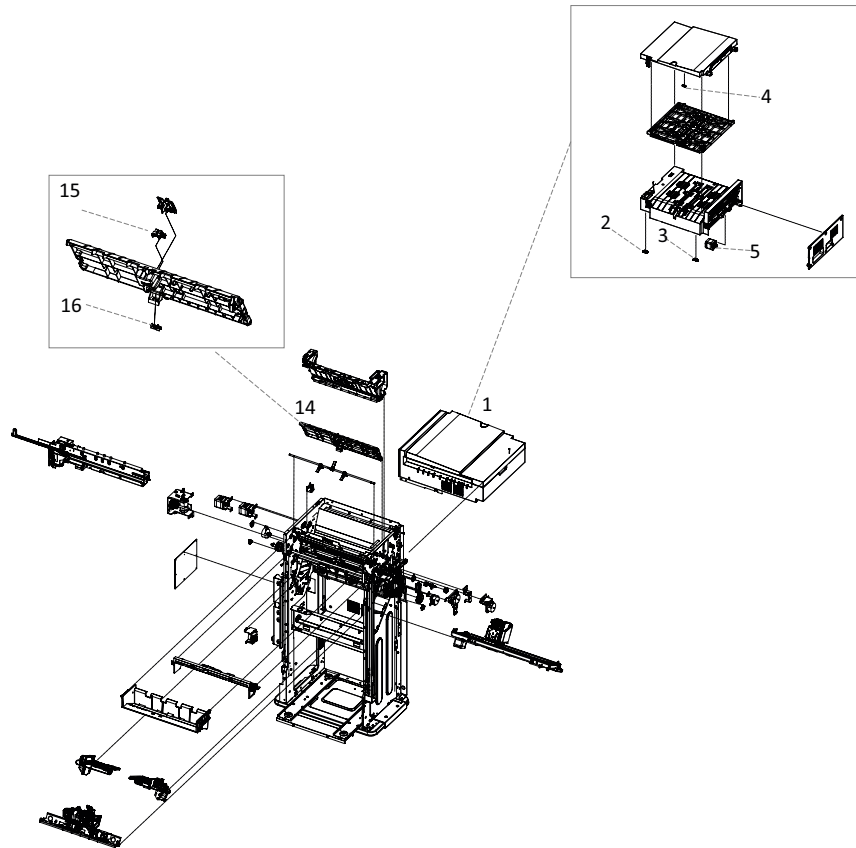


Table 7-42 Booklet finisher (4 of 4)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QK09-60110	Bridge unit	1
2	0604-001393	Bridge door sensor	1
3	JC32-00020A	Bridge entrance sensor	1
4	0604-001393	Bridge exit sensor	1
5	3SJ19-80501	Bridge motor	1
14	JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly	1
15	JC32-00020A	Main exit sensor	1
16	0604-001393	Top exit sensor	1
17	8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	1

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (5 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer booklet finisher.

Figure 7-43 Booklet finisher (5 of 5)

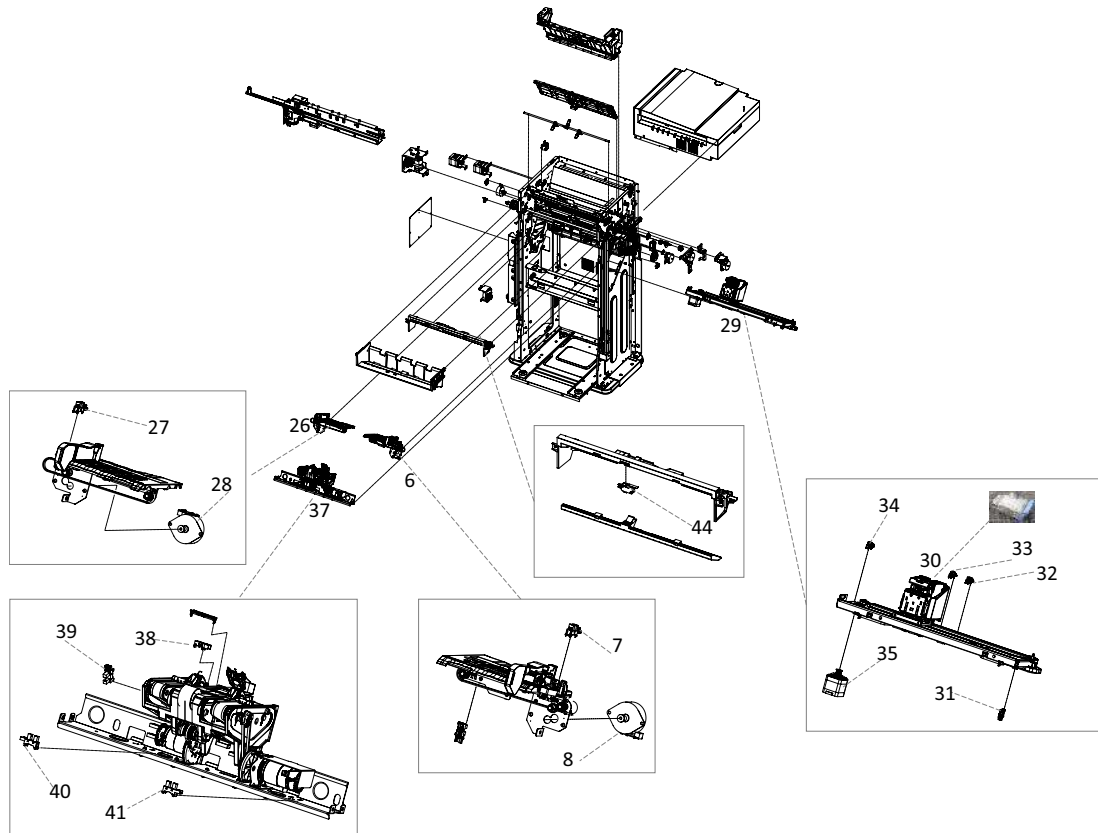


Table 7-43 Booklet finisher (5 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	JC82-00901A	Front tamper	1
7	0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor	1
8	JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor	1
26	JC82-00898A	Rear tamper	1
27	0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor	1
28	JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor	1
29	JC82-00894A	Staple unit	1
30	JC81-09882B	Staple cartridge	1
31	0604-001393	Staple front sensor	1
32	0604-001393	Staple mid-front sensor	1
33	0604-001393	Staple mid-rear sensor	1
34	0604-001393	Staple rear sensor	1
35	JC31-00163A	Staple position motor	1

Table 7-43 Booklet finisher (5 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
37	JC90-01802A	Ejector unit	1
38	JC32-00020A	Ejector sensor	1
39	0604-001415	Ejector1 home sensor	1
40	0604-001415	Ejector1 motor sensor	1
41	0604-001415	Ejector2 motor sensor	1

Alphabetical parts list

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list

Description	Part number	Table and page
(Tray 4 tray open, paper size sensor)		DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
(Tray 5 tray open, paper size sensor)		DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
200sh ADF	5QJ90-67011	ISA on page 3108
200sh ENT ADF PCA	5QJ90-67013	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
300sh ADF PCA	Z9Y05-60004	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
300sh flow ADF (does not include white backing or suspension clips)	SQJ90-61042	ISA on page 3108
A3 White Backing Kit	5QK08-67005	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
ADF Blue CMF panel	5QJ90-40056	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
ADF Blue CMF panel	5QJ90-40056	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
ADF FFC cable to SSA	5QJ90-67009	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
ADF FFC cable to SSA	Z9Y05-50002	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
ADF Gray CMF panel	5QJ90-40108	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
ADF Gray CMF panel	5QJ90-40108	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
ADF Green CMF panel	5QJ90-40110	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
ADF Green CMF panel	5QJ90-40110	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
ADF Power cable	5QJ90-67010	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
ADF Power cable	Z9Y05-50003	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
ADF Purple CMF panel	5QJ90-40112	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
ADF Purple CMF panel	5QJ90-40112	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
ADF Red CMF panel	5QJ90-40109	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
ADF Red CMF panel	5QJ90-40109	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
ADF Yellow CMF panel	5QJ90-40111	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
ADF Yellow CMF panel	5QJ90-40111	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
ADF front cover	5QJ90-40049	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
ADF image sensor	Z9Y05-60047	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
ADF image sensor	Z9Y05-60047	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
ADF input tray	Z9Y05-60032	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
ADF rear cover	5QJ90-40041	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
ADF roller kit	5851-7202	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
ADF roller kit	5RC00-67001	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
ADF top cover	5QJ90-40054	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
Accelerator (Optional)	6HN30-67001	PCA on page 3106
Actuator home paddle	JC66-04201A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Booklet blade	JC93-01163A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet blade home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet blade motor assembly	JC90-01435A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet c-fold blade	JC61-07366A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly	JC90-01396A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet diverter	JC90-01398A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet diverter motor assembly	JC90-01397A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet end fence	JC90-01432A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly	JC90-01425A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet finisher	6GW51-67001	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Booklet fold motor assembly	JC90-01436A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet front cover	JC90-01478B	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet maker PCA	6GW51-60001	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet maker unit	5QK09-60104	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Booklet output tray	8GS05-60126	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Booklet output tray sensor	JC82-01039A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet paddle motor assembly	JC90-01430A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet stapler	8GS05-60126	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet stapler cartridge	JC81-08274A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet tamper	JC90-01431A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
Bridge motor	3SJ19-80501	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Bridge motor	3SJ19-80501	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
Bridge unit	5QK09-60110	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
Bridge unit	5QK09-60110	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Buffer solenoid assembly	JC90-01675A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Buffer solenoid assembly	JC90-01675A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
CTD sensor assembly	6ER04-60002	CTD on page 3102
Caster	JC61-07452A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Caster	JC61-07452A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Caster cover	8GS05-40018	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Caster cover	8GS05-40018	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Caster fix nut	JC61-07444A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Caster fix nut	JC61-07444A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Caster wheel	6109-001138	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Caster wheel	6109-001138	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
Control panel (10.1 inch)	5QK42-60101	PCA on page 3106
Control panel (8 inch)	3SJ15-60101	PCA on page 3106
Controller cover	6ER04-61005	Covers on page 3087
Cover Rear	3SJ11-40008	ISA on page 3108
Cover waste	5QK09-40109	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
Cradle-HDD	5851-7753	PCA on page 3106
Cradle-Riser Card	5851-7754	PCA on page 3106
DCF	6GW47-67001	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
DCF Dpt_Door open switch sensor and harness	JC39-02268A	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
DCF feed drive assembly	JC93-01135A	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
DCF left cover	5QK08-40008	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
DCF rear cover	5QK08-40007	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
DCF right cover	5QK08-40006	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
DCF right door	5QK08-61004	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Damper module	5QJ90-67006	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
Damper module	Z9Y05-60016	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
Developer fan assembly	5QK09-40083	Sensor and fan on page 3105
Developer powder kit	5PN82-67001	Developer on page 3100
Developer suction duct	JC93-01007A	Sensor and fan on page 3105
Developer, drum and PTB drive assembly	JC93-01662A	Drum on page 3101
Discrete power cable	3SJ11-50006	Tarot platen on page 3114
Drive sub-motor step	JC93-00802B	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Drive-motor step	JC31-00189A	Tray 1 on page 3090
Drive-motor step	JC31-00189A	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Drive-motor step	JC31-00189A	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
Drive-motor step	JC93-00336A	Exit unit on page 3094
Drive-motor step	JC93-00336A	Exit unit on page 3094
Drive-motor step	JC93-00999A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Drive-motor step	JC93-01001A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Drive-motor step	JC93-01001A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Drive-motor step	JC93-01001A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Drive-motor step	JC93-01083A	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Drive-motor step	JC93-01083A	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Drive-motor step	JC93-01083A	sHCl (2 of 2) on page 3126
Drive-motor step	JC93-01084A	Fuser on page 3104
Drive-motor step	JC93-01085A	Duplex on page 3095
Drum and developer drive assembly	JC93-01662A	Developer on page 3100
Dual Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	7ZA07-67001	PCA on page 3106
Dual Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	5QK14-67001	PCA on page 3106
Duplex assembly	JC95-02250A	Duplex on page 3095
Echo PCA	T3U64-60001	PCA on page 3106

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Ejector	SS456-61001	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Ejector unit	JC90-01802A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Ejector unit	JC90-01802A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Ejector1 home sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Ejector1 home sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Ejector1 motor sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Ejector1 motor sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Ejector2 motor sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Ejector2 motor sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Electric clutch	JC33-00037A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Electric clutch	JC47-00037A	Tray 1 on page 3090
End fence motor assembly	JC90-01467A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
End fence motor assembly	JC90-01467A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Entrance motor assembly	8GS05-60104	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Entrance motor assembly	8GS05-60104	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Entrance motor assy	5QK09-60128	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Entrance motor timing belt	6602-003644	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Entrance roller	JC66-04243A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Exit cover stacker	6ER04-61004	Covers on page 3087
Exit motor assembly	8GS05-60106	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Exit motor assembly	8GS05-60106	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Exit motor assembly	8GS05-60106	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Exit motor assembly	8GS05-60106	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
Exit motor assy	JC90-01331A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Exit rear cover	6ER04-40028	Covers on page 3087
Exit roller assy	JC90-01330A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Exit sensor actuator	JC66-04199A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Exit stack guide	JC90-01865A	Exit unit on page 3094
Exit unit	JC90-01856A	Exit unit on page 3094
Fan	JC31-00154A	Sensor and fan on page 3105
Fan	JC31-00198A	Sensor and fan on page 3105
Feed drive assembly	JC93-01664A	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Finisher mount bracket	JC90-01442A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Finisher mount bracket	JC90-01442A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Formatter	6CF14-67002	PCA on page 3106
Front cover	5QK09-40019	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Front cover	5QK09-40019	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Front cover - Blue CMF Panel	6ER04-40003	Covers on page 3087
Front cover - Gray CMF Panel	6ER04-40054	Covers on page 3087
Front cover - Green CMF Panel	6ER04-40056	Covers on page 3087
Front cover - Purple CMF Panel	6ER04-40058	Covers on page 3087
Front cover - Red CMF Panel	6ER04-40055	Covers on page 3087
Front cover - Yellow CMF Panel	6ER04-40057	Covers on page 3087
Front cover assembly	6ER08-61001	Covers on page 3087
Front cover assy	5QK09-60123	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Front door	5QK09-60106	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Front door	5QK09-60106	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Front door open switch	JC93-00466A	Sensor and fan on page 3105

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Front door switch	JC39-02309A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Front door switch	JC39-02309A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Front lower cover	5QK09-40020	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Front lower cover	5QK09-40020	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Front lower cover	6ER04-40030	Covers on page 3087
Front lower left cover	5QK09-40047	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Front lower left cover	5QK09-40047	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Front lower right cover	5QK09-40048	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Front lower right cover	5QK09-40048	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Front paper support	JC90-01310A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Front tamper	JC82-00899A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Front tamper	JC82-00901A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Front tamper	JC82-00901A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Fuser and exit drive assembly	JC93-01850A	Exit unit on page 3094
Fuser and exit drive assembly	JC93-01850A	Fuser on page 3104
Fuser drive board (FDB), 220V	JC44-00236C	PCA on page 3106
Fuser unit -100V	5PN53-67001	Fuser on page 3104
Fuser unit -110V	5PN76-67001	Fuser on page 3104
Fuser unit -220V	5PN77-67001	Fuser on page 3104

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Gear rack pinion	JC66-04218A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Guide - adjust	JC61-04871A	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Guide - adjust	JC61-04871A	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
Guide FFC	5QJ83-40035	Tarot platen on page 3114
Guide FFC	5QJ83-40036	Tarot platen on page 3114
Guide rail	6102-003354	Inner finisher (1 of 5) on page 3128
HCI	6GW57-67001	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI Dpt_Dooropen switch sensor and harness	JC39-02279A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
HCI cassette	5QK08-61014	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI cassette	5QK08-61014	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
HCI feed motor	JC93-01114A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
HCI front Blue CMF panel	5QK08-40016	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI front Gray CMF panel	8GR90-40029	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI front Green CMF panel	8GR90-40039	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI front Purple CMF panel	8GR90-40041	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI front Red CMF panel	8GR90-40038	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI front Yellow CMF panel	8GR90-40040	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI left cover	5QK08-40008	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI pickup assembly	5QK08-61013	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
HCI pickup motor	JC93-01115A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
HCI rear cover	5QK08-40007	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI right cover	5QK08-40006	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI right door	5QK08-61023	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
HCI roller kit	5PN66-67001	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
HCI shift plate	JC81-07481B	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
HIP cover	6EQ94-40032	Covers on page 3087
HP LaserJet 180ipm 200 sheet DADF Scanner (200sh ADF + Tarot platen)	5QK35-67001	ISA on page 3108
HP LaserJet 300ipm 300 sheet Flow DADF high speed Scanner (300sh flow ADF + Tarot platen)	5QK37-67001	ISA on page 3108
Hard disk 500GB SED	933853-010	PCA on page 3106
Harness - cover open	JC39-01610A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Harness - cover open	JC39-01610A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS)	5QK09-60001	PCA on page 3106
Hinge Kit	5QJ90-67004	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
Hinge left	Z9Y05-60014	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
Hole 2/3 punch (optional)	155P7-67001	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Hole 2/4 punch (optional)	155P8-67001	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Inner Finisher	6GW49-67002	Inner finisher (1 of 5) on page 3128
Inner cover	6ER08-61002	Covers on page 3087
Inner finisher PCA	6GW49-60001	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Island of Data (IOD) PCA	3SJ06-60001	PCA on page 3106
Keyboard Assy-UK English	JC93-01743A	PCA on page 3106
Keyboard Assy-US English	JC93-01742A	PCA on page 3106
Keyboard overlay kit (ES, PT)	5851-6023	PCA on page 3106
Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE,ES,UK Kybd)	5851-6019	PCA on page 3106
Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES,US Kybd)	5851-6020	PCA on page 3106
Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA,UK Kybd)	5851-6021	PCA on page 3106
Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	5851-6024	PCA on page 3106
Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	5851-6022	PCA on page 3106
Knock-up plate assembly	6GW48-60003	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
LSU fan assembly	5QK09-64013	Sensor and fan on page 3105
LVPS FDB fan assembly	JC93-01795A	Sensor and fan on page 3105
Laser scanner unit (LSU)	JC97-05149A	Laser scanner unit on page 3099
Left cover	6ER04-40049	Covers on page 3087
Left cover assy	8GS05-60113	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Left lower cover	8GS05-60122	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Left lower cover (Booklet)	8GS05-60124	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Left top cover	JC63-04862B	Covers on page 3087
Left upper cover	8GS05-60118	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Left upper cover	8GS05-60118	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Link door 1st front	JC66-04279A	sHCl (1 of 2) on page 3124
Link door 1st rear	JC66-04279A	sHCl (1 of 2) on page 3124
Link door 2nd front	JC66-04278A	sHCl (1 of 2) on page 3124
Link door 2nd rear	JC66-04277A	sHCl (1 of 2) on page 3124
Link holder front	JC61-06567A	sHCl (1 of 2) on page 3124
Link holder rear	JC61-06568A	sHCl (1 of 2) on page 3124
Lock release handle	JC66-04233A	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Loop actuator	JC66-04572A	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 110V	JC44-00149C	PCA on page 3106
Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 220V	JC44-00150C	PCA on page 3106
Main PCA	6GW55-60001	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Main PCA	6GW55-60001	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Main exit cam home sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Main exit cam home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Main exit cam motor assembly	JC90-01453A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Main exit cam motor assembly	JC90-01453A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
Main output tray	5QK09-40028	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Main output tray	5QK09-40028	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Main output tray lower limit sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Main output tray lower limit sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Main output tray motor drive assembly	JC90-01415B	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Main output tray motor drive assembly	JC90-01415B	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Main output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Main output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Main output tray top of stack sensor	JC82-01039A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Main output tray top of stack sensor	JC82-01039A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Main paddle	JC90-01327A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Main paddle kit	JC82-01038A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Middle cover assy	5QK09-60124	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Middle left cover	6ER04-40036	Covers on page 3087
Middle roller	JC66-04243A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Middle upper cover	6ER04-40026	Covers on page 3087
Motor BLDC	JC31-00144G	Exit unit on page 3094
Motor BLDC	JC31-00144G	Fuser on page 3104
Motor DC	JC31-00178B	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Motor, geared	JC31-00109A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Motor, geared	JC31-00109A	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Motor, geared	JC31-00125A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Motor, step	JC31-00163A	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Motor, step	JC31-00169B	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Motor, step	JC31-00169B	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Motor, step	JC31-00177A	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Outer environment sensor assembly	5QJ90-40002	Sensor and fan on page 3105
Output tray assy	5QK09-60118	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Output tray lower limit switch assy	JC90-01320A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Output tray motor assy	JC90-01334B	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Output tray top of stack sensor kit	JC82-01039A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
PBA-Shift tray level	JC92-02792A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
PCA - power key	3SJ33-60007	PCA on page 3106
PCA -power key	3SJ33-60007	Covers on page 3087
PCA cover	5QK09-40004	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
PCA-DCF Department	6GW47-60001	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
PCA-HCI Department	6GW57-60001	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
PCA-sHCI Department	6GW56-60001	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Paddle	JC90-01480A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Paddle	JC90-01480A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Paddle motor assembly	JC90-01461A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Paddle motor assembly	JC90-01461A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) kit	5PN85-67001	PTB on page 3103
Paper gate	JC81-07478B	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Paper holding actuator	JC90-01313A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Paper holding kit	JC90-01314A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Paper holding motor drive assembly	JC90-01414A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Paper holding motor drive assembly	JC90-01414A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Paper sensor	0960-5271	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
Paper support motor assy	JC90-01312A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Exit unit on page 3094
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Exit unit on page 3094
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Exit unit on page 3094
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Exit unit on page 3094
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Duplex on page 3095
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Toner on page 3096
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Toner collection unit on page 3098
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Fuser on page 3104
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Tarot platen on page 3114
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Photo interrupter	0604-001415	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Photo interrupter	0604-001490	Tray 1 on page 3090
Photo interrupter	0604-001490	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Photo interrupter	0604-001490	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Photo interrupter	0604-001490	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Photo interrupter	0604-001490	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Photo interrupter	0604-001490	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Platen FFC 50 pin	3SJ11-50021	Tarot platen on page 3114
Platen FFC 68 pin	3SJ11-50022	Tarot platen on page 3114
Power key	6EQ94-40029	Covers on page 3087

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Punch cover	5QK09-40030	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Punch cover	5QK09-40030	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Punch cover assembly	8GS05-60114	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Punch unit 2-3 hole	Y1G10-67901	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Punch unit 2-3 hole	Y1G10-67901	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Punch unit 2-4 hole	Y1G11-67901	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Punch unit 2-4 hole	Y1G11-67901	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Punch unit Swedish hole	Y1G12-67901	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Punch unit Swedish hole	Y1G12-67901	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Rear cover	5QK09-40021	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Rear cover	5QK09-40021	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Rear cover -base	5QK09-40018	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Rear cover -punch	5QK09-40037	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Rear joint PCA	JC92-02780A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
Rear lower cover	6ER04-40019	Covers on page 3087
Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Rear paper support	JC90-01311A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Rear tamper	JC82-00900A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Rear upper cover	6ER04-40008	Covers on page 3087
Registration drive assembly	JC93-01665A	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
Registration unit assembly	5QK13-60101	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
Reservoir drive assembly	JC93-01067A	Reservoir on page 3097
Reservoir unit	X3A79-60003	Reservoir on page 3097
Reverse roller	JC93-01726A	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
Right door assembly	JC95-02246A	Covers on page 3087
Right door assembly	JC95-02246A	Tray 1 on page 3090
Right door assembly	JC95-02246A	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
Right door assembly	JC95-02246A	Duplex on page 3095
Right door exit assembly	JC95-02249A	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
Right door front damper	JC66-01425A	Tray 1 on page 3090
Right door front damper bracket	JC61-08935A	Tray 1 on page 3090
Right door front link	JC66-04398A	Tray 1 on page 3090
Right door open switch holder assy	JC90-01385A	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Right door open switch holder assy	JC90-01385A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Right door sHCI dummy cover	JC63-04918B	Covers on page 3087
Right front cover	6ER04-40005	Covers on page 3087
Right middle cover	6ER04-40025	Covers on page 3087
Right middle cover assembly	6ER04-61006	Covers on page 3087
Right rear cover	6ER04-61003	Covers on page 3087
Right upper cover	5QK09-60109	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Right upper cover	5QK09-60109	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Right upper cover	6ER04-40021	Covers on page 3087
Riser for HDD	3SJ01-60001	PCA on page 3106
Riser for HDD, USB ports	4XN67-60001	PCA on page 3106

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Riser for HDD, USB ports, Accelerator	3SJ02-60001	PCA on page 3106
Rivet-Echo PCA	6ER04-40034	PCA on page 3106
Rivet-HDD	6ER04-40035	PCA on page 3106
SVC_HP LaserJet Black Developer Unit	5PN82-67002	Developer on page 3100
SVC_HP LaserJet Black Managed Imaging Drum	W9086-67001	Drum on page 3101
Shaft hinge - door	JC66-04767A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Shaft hinge - door	JC66-04767A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Single Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	7ZA09-67001	PCA on page 3106
Single Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	7ZA08-67001	PCA on page 3106
Solenoid, lifting	JC33-00031B	Exit unit on page 3094
Solenoid, lifting	JC33-00031B	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Staple cartridge	6GW49-40001	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Staple cartridge	JC81-09882B	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Staple cartridge	JC81-09882B	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Staple front sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Staple front sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Staple mid-front sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Staple mid-front sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Staple mid-rear sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Staple mid-rear sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Staple position motor	JC31-00163A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Staple position motor	JC31-00163A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Staple rear sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
Staple rear sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Staple unit	JC82-00894A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Staple unit	JC82-00894A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
Stapler assembly	6GW49-60003	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Stapler/Stacker finisher	6GW55-67001	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Sub paddle assy	JC90-01336A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
Swedish punch (optional)	155P9-67001	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Switch	JC93-01467A	Sensor and fan on page 3105
TPM	3SJ03-60001 (Not Orderable)	PCA on page 3106
Tarot platen	3SJ11-60103	ISA on page 3108
Tarot platen PCA	Y6V12-60035	Tarot platen on page 3114
Thermistor	1404-001417	Sensor and fan on page 3105
Tie stopper	JC61-04626A	Covers on page 3087
Toner cartridge -high yield	W9085-67007	Toner on page 3096
Toner cartridge -standard yield	W9084-67006	Toner on page 3096
Toner collection full sensor assembly	JC93-00492A	Toner collection unit on page 3098
Toner collection unit	W9016-67001	Toner collection unit on page 3098
Toner dispense motor	SS216-80501	Toner on page 3096
Toner dispense motor assembly	JC93-01667A	Toner on page 3096
Top cover	5QK09-60108	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Top cover	5QK09-60108	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Top cover assy	5QK09-60125	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
Top door	5QK09-60107	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Top door	5QK09-60107	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Top exit sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
Top exit sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
Top jam cover assembly	JC90-01455A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Top jam cover assembly	JC90-01455A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Top lower feed assembly	JC90-01454A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
Top lower feed assembly	JC90-01454A	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
Top output tray	5QK09-40027	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Top output tray	5QK09-40027	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Tray 1 roller kit	5RC03-67001	Tray 1 on page 3090
Tray 1 unit	JC90-01844A	Tray 1 on page 3090
Tray 2 cassette		Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Tray 2 cover - Blue CMF panel	5QK09-40055	Covers on page 3087
Tray 2 cover - Gray CMF panel	5QK09-40072	Covers on page 3087
Tray 2 cover - Green CMF panel	5QK09-40076	Covers on page 3087
Tray 2 cover - Purple CMF panel	5QK09-40080	Covers on page 3087
Tray 2 cover - Red CMF panel	5QK09-40074	Covers on page 3087
Tray 2 cover - Yellow CMF panel	5QK09-40078	Covers on page 3087
Tray 2 pickup assembly	JC93-01694A	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Tray 2 pickup drive assembly	JC93-01663A	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Tray 2, 3 roller kit	5PN66-67001	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Tray 3	5QK09-60121	Covers on page 3087
Tray 3 cassette	5QK09-60121	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Tray 3 cover - Blue CMF panel	5QK09-40058	Covers on page 3087
Tray 3 cover - Gray CMF panel	5QK09-40071	Covers on page 3087
Tray 3 cover - Green CMF panel	5QK09-40075	Covers on page 3087
Tray 3 cover - Purple CMF panel	5QK09-40079	Covers on page 3087
Tray 3 cover - Red CMF panel	5QK09-40073	Covers on page 3087
Tray 3 cover - Yellow CMF panel	5QK09-40077	Covers on page 3087
Tray 3 pickup assembly	JC93-01695A	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	JC93-01663A	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Tray 4 Blue CMF panel	5QK08-40011	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Tray 4 Gray CMF panel	8GR90-40027	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 4 Green CMF panel	8GR90-40031	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 4 Purple CMF panel	8GR90-40033	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 4 Red CMF panel	8GR90-40030	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 4 Yellow CMF panel	8GR90-40032	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 4 cassette	5QK08-61007	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 4 cassette	5QK08-61007	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Tray 4 pickup assembly	5QK08-61009	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Tray 4 pickup drive assembly	JC93-01663A	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Tray 4, 5 roller kit	5PN66-67001	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Tray 5 Blue CMF panel	5QK08-40012	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 5 Gray CMF panel	8GR90-40028	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 5 Green CMF panel	8GR90-40035	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 5 Purple CMF panel	8GR90-40037	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 5 Red CMF panel	8GR90-40034	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 5 Yellow CMF panel	8GR90-40036	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 5 cassette	5QK08-61005	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
Tray 5 cassette	5QK08-61005	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Tray 5 pickup assembly	5QK08-61010	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Tray 5 pickup drive assembly	JC93-01663A	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Tray diverter cam	JC90-01458A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Tray diverter cam	JC90-01458A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Tray extension	5QK09-40029	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
Tray extension	5QK09-40029	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
Tray heater 110V	Y1G22-67901	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Tray heater 110V	Y1G22-67901	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Tray heater 110V	Y1G22-67901	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Tray heater 220V	Y1G22-67902	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Tray heater 220V	Y1G22-67902	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118

Table 7-44 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Tray heater 220V	Y1G22-67902	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
USB Hub PCA	3SJ04-60001	PCA on page 3106
White backing plate	5QJ83-400019	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
White backing suspension	J8J63-60135	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
sHCI	6GW56-67001	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
sHCI door open sensor	JC39-02346A	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
sHCI front cover	5QK08-40026	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
sHCI front top cover	5QK08-40027	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
sHCI harness cover	5QK08-40018	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
sHCI left cover	5QK08-40028	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
sHCI lift drive assembly		sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
sHCI pickup assembly	5QJ98-60014	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
sHCI pickup cover	5QK08-40019	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
sHCI pickup/feed drive assembly	JC93-01112A	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
sHCI rear cover	5QK08-40025	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
sHCI rear top cover	5QK08-40024	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
sHCI right cover	5QK08-40020	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
sHCI top cover	5QK08-61018	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
sHCI top cover open switch assembly	JC93-01123A	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126

Numerical parts list

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list

Part number	Description	Table and page
	Tray 2 cassette	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
	sHCI lift drive assembly	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
	(Tray 4 tray open, paper size sensor)	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
	(Tray 5 tray open, paper size sensor)	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
0604-001393	Booklet blade home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
0604-001393	Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
0604-001393	Booklet end fence home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
0604-001393	Booklet paddle home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
0604-001393	Booklet presser home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
0604-001393	Booklet tamper home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
0604-001393	Bridge door sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
0604-001393	Bridge door sensor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
0604-001393	Bridge exit sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
0604-001393	Bridge exit sensor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
0604-001393	Front paper holding sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
0604-001393	Front paper holding sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
0604-001393	Main exit cam home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
0604-001393	Main exit cam home sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
0604-001393	Main output tray motor sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
0604-001393	Main output tray motor sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
0604-001393	Paddle home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
0604-001393	Paddle home sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
0604-001393	Paper holding home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
0604-001393	Paper holding home sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Exit unit on page 3094
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Exit unit on page 3094
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Exit unit on page 3094
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Exit unit on page 3094
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Duplex on page 3095
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Toner on page 3096
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Toner collection unit on page 3098
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Fuser on page 3104
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Tarot platen on page 3114
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
0604-001393	Rear paper holding sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
0604-001393	Rear paper holding sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
0604-001393	Staple front sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
0604-001393	Staple front sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
0604-001393	Staple mid-front sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
0604-001393	Staple mid-front sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
0604-001393	Staple mid-rear sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
0604-001393	Staple mid-rear sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
0604-001393	Staple rear sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
0604-001393	Staple rear sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
0604-001393	Top exit sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
0604-001393	Top exit sensor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
0604-001415	Booklet diverter home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
0604-001415	Booklet entrance sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
0604-001415	Ejector1 home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
0604-001415	Ejector1 home sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
0604-001415	Ejector1 motor sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
0604-001415	Ejector1 motor sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
0604-001415	Ejector2 motor sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
0604-001415	Ejector2 motor sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
0604-001415	Main output tray lower limit sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
0604-001415	Main output tray lower limit sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
0604-001415	Manual staple sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
0604-001415	Manual staple sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
0604-001415	Tray diverter home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
0604-001415	Tray diverter home sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
0604-001490	Photo interrupter	Tray 1 on page 3090
0604-001490	Photo interrupter	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
0604-001490	Photo interrupter	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
0604-001490	Photo interrupter	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
0604-001490	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
0604-001490	Photo interrupter	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
0960-5271	Paper sensor	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
1404-001417	Thermistor	Sensor and fan on page 3105
155P7-67001	Hole 2/3 punch (optional)	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
155P8-67001	Hole 2/4 punch (optional)	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
155P9-67001	Swedish punch (optional)	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
3SJ01-60001	Riser for HDD	PCA on page 3106
3SJ02-60001	Riser for HDD, USB ports, Accelerator	PCA on page 3106
3SJ03-60001 (Not Orderable)	TPM	PCA on page 3106
3SJ04-60001	USB Hub PCA	PCA on page 3106
3SJ06-60001	Island of Data (IOD) PCA	PCA on page 3106
3SJ11-40008	Cover Rear	ISA on page 3108
3SJ11-50006	Discrete power cable	Tarot platen on page 3114
3SJ11-50021	Platen FFC 50 pin	Tarot platen on page 3114
3SJ11-50022	Platen FFC 68 pin	Tarot platen on page 3114
3SJ11-60103	Tarot platen	ISA on page 3108
3SJ15-60101	Control panel (8 inch)	PCA on page 3106
3SJ19-80501	Bridge motor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
3SJ19-80501	Bridge motor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
3SJ33-60007	PCA - power key	PCA on page 3106
3SJ33-60007	PCA -power key	Covers on page 3087

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
4XN67-60001	Riser for HDD, USB ports	PCA on page 3106
5851-6019	Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE,ES,UK Kybd)	PCA on page 3106
5851-6020	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES,US Kybd)	PCA on page 3106
5851-6021	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA,UK Kybd)	PCA on page 3106
5851-6022	Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	PCA on page 3106
5851-6023	Keyboard overlay kit (ES, PT)	PCA on page 3106
5851-6024	Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	PCA on page 3106
5851-7202	ADF roller kit	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
5851-7753	Cradle-HDD	PCA on page 3106
5851-7754	Cradle-Riser Card	PCA on page 3106
5PN53-67001	Fuser unit -100V	Fuser on page 3104
5PN66-67001	HCI roller kit	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
5PN66-67001	Tray 2, 3 roller kit	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
5PN66-67001	Tray 4, 5 roller kit	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
5PN76-67001	Fuser unit -110V	Fuser on page 3104
5PN77-67001	Fuser unit -220V	Fuser on page 3104
5PN82-67001	Developer powder kit	Developer on page 3100
5PN82-67002	SVC_HP LaserJet Black Developer Unit	Developer on page 3100
5PN85-67001	Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) kit	PTB on page 3103
5QJ83-400019	White backing plate	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
5QJ83-40035	Guide FFC	Tarot platen on page 3114
5QJ83-40036	Guide FFC	Tarot platen on page 3114
5QJ90-40002	Outer environment sensor assembly	Sensor and fan on page 3105
5QJ90-40041	ADF rear cover	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
5QJ90-40049	ADF front cover	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
5QJ90-40054	ADF top cover	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
5QJ90-40056	ADF Blue CMF panel	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
5QJ90-40056	ADF Blue CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
5QJ90-40108	ADF Gray CMF panel	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
5QJ90-40108	ADF Gray CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
5QJ90-40109	ADF Red CMF panel	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
5QJ90-40109	ADF Red CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
5QJ90-40110	ADF Green CMF panel	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
5QJ90-40110	ADF Green CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
5QJ90-40111	ADF Yellow CMF panel	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
5QJ90-40111	ADF Yellow CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
5QJ90-40112	ADF Purple CMF panel	300sh flow ADF (1 of 2) on page 3109
5QJ90-40112	ADF Purple CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 3112
5QJ90-67004	Hinge Kit	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
5QJ90-67006	Damper module	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
5QJ90-67009	ADF FFC cable to SSA	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
5QJ90-67010	ADF Power cable	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
5QJ90-67011	200sh ADF	ISA on page 3108
5QJ90-67013	200sh ENT ADF PCA	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
5QJ98-60014	sHCI pickup assembly	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
5QK08-40006	DCF right cover	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
5QK08-40006	HCI right cover	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
5QK08-40007	DCF rear cover	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
5QK08-40007	HCI rear cover	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
5QK08-40008	DCF left cover	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
5QK08-40008	HCI left cover	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
5QK08-40011	Tray 4 Blue CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
5QK08-40012	Tray 5 Blue CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
5QK08-40016	HCI front Blue CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
5QK08-40018	sHCI harness cover	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
5QK08-40019	sHCI pickup cover	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
5QK08-40020	sHCI right cover	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
5QK08-40024	sHCI rear top cover	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
5QK08-40025	sHCI rear cover	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
5QK08-40026	sHCI front cover	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
5QK08-40027	sHCI front top cover	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
5QK08-40028	sHCI left cover	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
5QK08-61004	DCF right door	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
5QK08-61005	Tray 5 cassette	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
5QK08-61005	Tray 5 cassette	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
5QK08-61007	Tray 4 cassette	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
5QK08-61007	Tray 4 cassette	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
5QK08-61009	Tray 4 pickup assembly	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
5QK08-61010	Tray 5 pickup assembly	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
5QK08-61013	HCI pickup assembly	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
5QK08-61014	HCI cassette	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
5QK08-61014	HCI cassette	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
5QK08-61018	sHCI top cover	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
5QK08-61023	HCI right door	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
5QK08-67005	A3 White Backing Kit	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113
5QK09-40004	PCA cover	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
5QK09-40018	Rear cover -base	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
5QK09-40019	Front cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-40019	Front cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-40020	Front lower cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-40020	Front lower cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-40021	Rear cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-40021	Rear cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-40027	Top output tray	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-40027	Top output tray	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-40028	Main output tray	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-40028	Main output tray	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-40029	Tray extension	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-40029	Tray extension	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
5QK09-40030	Punch cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-40030	Punch cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-40037	Rear cover -punch	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
5QK09-40047	Front lower left cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-40047	Front lower left cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-40048	Front lower right cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-40048	Front lower right cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-40055	Tray 2 cover - Blue CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40058	Tray 3 cover - Blue CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40071	Tray 3 cover - Gray CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40072	Tray 2 cover - Gray CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40073	Tray 3 cover - Red CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40074	Tray 2 cover - Red CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40075	Tray 3 cover - Green CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40076	Tray 2 cover - Green CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40077	Tray 3 cover - Yellow CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40078	Tray 2 cover - Yellow CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40079	Tray 3 cover - Purple CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40080	Tray 2 cover - Purple CMF panel	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-40083	Developer fan assembly	Sensor and fan on page 3105
5QK09-40109	Cover waste	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
5QK09-60001	High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS)	PCA on page 3106
5QK09-60104	Booklet maker unit	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-60106	Front door	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-60106	Front door	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-60107	Top door	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-60107	Top door	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
5QK09-60108	Top cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-60108	Top cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-60109	Right upper cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
5QK09-60109	Right upper cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
5QK09-60110	Bridge unit	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
5QK09-60110	Bridge unit	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
5QK09-60118	Output tray assy	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
5QK09-60121	Tray 3	Covers on page 3087
5QK09-60121	Tray 3 cassette	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
5QK09-60123	Front cover assy	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
5QK09-60124	Middle cover assy	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
5QK09-60125	Top cover assy	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
5QK09-60128	Entrance motor assy	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
5QK09-64013	LSU fan assembly	Sensor and fan on page 3105
5QK13-60101	Registration unit assembly	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
5QK14-67001	Dual Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	PCA on page 3106
5QK35-67001	HP LaserJet 180ipm 200 sheet DADF Scanner (200sh ADF + Tarot platen)	ISA on page 3108
5QK37-67001	HP LaserJet 300ipm 300 sheet Flow DADF high speed Scanner (300sh flow ADF + Tarot platen)	ISA on page 3108
5QK42-60101	Control panel (10.1 inch)	PCA on page 3106
5RC00-67001	ADF roller kit	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
5RC03-67001	Tray 1 roller kit	Tray 1 on page 3090
6102-003354	Guide rail	Inner finisher (1 of 5) on page 3128
6109-001138	Caster wheel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
6109-001138	Caster wheel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
6602-003644	Entrance motor timing belt	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
6CF14-67002	Formatter	PCA on page 3106
6EQ94-40029	Power key	Covers on page 3087
6EQ94-40032	HIP cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40003	Front cover - Blue CMF Panel	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40005	Right front cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40008	Rear upper cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40019	Rear lower cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40021	Right upper cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40025	Right middle cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40026	Middle upper cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40028	Exit rear cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40030	Front lower cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40034	Rivet-Echo PCA	PCA on page 3106
6ER04-40035	Rivet-HDD	PCA on page 3106
6ER04-40036	Middle left cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40049	Left cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40054	Front cover - Gray CMF Panel	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40055	Front cover - Red CMF Panel	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40056	Front cover - Green CMF Panel	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40057	Front cover - Yellow CMF Panel	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-40058	Front cover - Purple CMF Panel	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-60002	CTD sensor assembly	CTD on page 3102
6ER04-61003	Right rear cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-61004	Exit cover stacker	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-61005	Controller cover	Covers on page 3087
6ER04-61006	Right middle cover assembly	Covers on page 3087
6ER08-61001	Front cover assembly	Covers on page 3087
6ER08-61002	Inner cover	Covers on page 3087
6GW47-60001	PCA-DCF Department	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
6GW47-67001	DCF	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
6GW48-60003	Knock-up plate assembly	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
6GW49-40001	Staple cartridge	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
6GW49-60001	Inner finisher PCA	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
6GW49-60003	Stapler assembly	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
6GW49-67002	Inner Finisher	Inner finisher (1 of 5) on page 3128
6GW51-60001	Booklet maker PCA	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
6GW51-67001	Booklet finisher	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
6GW55-60001	Main PCA	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
6GW55-60001	Main PCA	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
6GW55-67001	Stapler/Stacker finisher	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
6GW56-60001	PCA-sHCI Department	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
6GW56-67001	sHCI	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
6GW57-60001	PCA-HCI Department	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
6GW57-67001	HCI	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
6HN30-67001	Accelerator (Optional)	PCA on page 3106
7ZA07-67001	Dual Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	PCA on page 3106
7ZA08-67001	Single Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	PCA on page 3106
7ZA09-67001	Single Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	PCA on page 3106
8GR90-40027	Tray 4 Gray CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
8GR90-40028	Tray 5 Gray CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
8GR90-40029	HCI front Gray CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
8GR90-40030	Tray 4 Red CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
8GR90-40031	Tray 4 Green CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
8GR90-40032	Tray 4 Yellow CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
8GR90-40033	Tray 4 Purple CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
8GR90-40034	Tray 5 Red CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
8GR90-40035	Tray 5 Green CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
8GR90-40036	Tray 5 Yellow CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
8GR90-40037	Tray 5 Purple CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
8GR90-40038	HCI front Red CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
8GR90-40039	HCI front Green CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
8GR90-40040	HCI front Yellow CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
8GR90-40041	HCI front Purple CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
8GS05-40018	Caster cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
8GS05-40018	Caster cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
8GS05-60104	Entrance motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
8GS05-60104	Entrance motor assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
8GS05-60113	Left cover assy	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
8GS05-60114	Punch cover assembly	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129
8GS05-60118	Left upper cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
8GS05-60118	Left upper cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
8GS05-60122	Left lower cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
8GS05-60124	Left lower cover (Booklet)	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
8GS05-60126	Booklet output tray	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
8GS05-60126	Booklet stapler	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
933853-010	Hard disk 500GB SED	PCA on page 3106
J8J63-60135	White backing suspension	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
JC31-00109A	Motor, geared	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
JC31-00109A	Motor, geared	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
JC31-00125A	Motor, geared	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
JC31-00144G	Motor BLDC	Exit unit on page 3094
JC31-00144G	Motor BLDC	Fuser on page 3104
JC31-00154A	Fan	Sensor and fan on page 3105
JC31-00163A	Motor, step	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC31-00163A	Staple position motor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
JC31-00163A	Staple position motor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
JC31-00169B	Motor, step	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC31-00169B	Motor, step	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
JC31-00177A	Motor, step	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
JC31-00178B	Motor DC	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC31-00189A	Drive-motor step	Tray 1 on page 3090
JC31-00189A	Drive-motor step	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
JC31-00189A	Drive-motor step	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
JC31-00198A	Fan	Sensor and fan on page 3105
JC32-00020A	Booklet exit sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC32-00020A	Booklet tamper sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC32-00020A	Bridge entrance sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
JC32-00020A	Bridge entrance sensor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
JC32-00020A	Ejector sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
JC32-00020A	Ejector sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
JC32-00020A	Main exit sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
JC32-00020A	Main exit sensor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting	Exit unit on page 3094
JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
JC33-00037A	Electric clutch	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC39-02268A	DCF Dpt_Door open switch sensor and harness	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
JC39-02279A	HCI Dpt_Dooropen switch sensor and harness	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC39-02309A	Front door switch	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC39-02309A	Front door switch	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC39-02316A	Main output tray top of stack switch	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC39-02316A	Main output tray top of stack switch	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC39-02346A	sHCI door open sensor	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
JC44-00149C	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 110V	PCA on page 3106
JC44-00150C	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 220V	PCA on page 3106
JC44-00236C	Fuser drive board (FDB), 220V	PCA on page 3106
JC47-00037A	Electric clutch	Tray 1 on page 3090
JC61-04626A	Tie stopper	Covers on page 3087
JC61-04871A	Guide - adjust	DCF (1 of 2) on page 3116
JC61-04871A	Guide - adjust	HCI (1 of 2) on page 3120
JC61-06567A	Link holder front	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
JC61-06568A	Link holder rear	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
JC61-07366A	Booklet c-fold blade	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC61-07444A	Caster fix nut	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
JC61-07444A	Caster fix nut	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
JC61-07452A	Caster	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
JC61-07452A	Caster	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
JC61-08935A	Right door front damper bracket	Tray 1 on page 3090
JC63-04862B	Left top cover	Covers on page 3087
JC63-04918B	Right door sHCI dummy cover	Covers on page 3087
JC66-01425A	Right door front damper	Tray 1 on page 3090
JC66-04199A	Exit sensor actuator	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC66-04201A	Actuator home paddle	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
JC66-04218A	Gear rack pinion	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
JC66-04233A	Lock release handle	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 3129

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC66-04243A	Entrance roller	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC66-04243A	Middle roller	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC66-04277A	Link door 2nd rear	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
JC66-04278A	Link door 2nd front	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
JC66-04279A	Link door 1st front	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
JC66-04279A	Link door 1st rear	sHCI (1 of 2) on page 3124
JC66-04398A	Right door front link	Tray 1 on page 3090
JC66-04572A	Loop actuator	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
JC66-04767A	Shaft hinge - door	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
JC66-04767A	Shaft hinge - door	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
JC81-07478B	Paper gate	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
JC81-07481B	HCI shift plate	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
JC81-08274A	Booklet stapler cartridge	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC81-09882B	Staple cartridge	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
JC81-09882B	Staple cartridge	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
JC82-00894A	Staple unit	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
JC82-00894A	Staple unit	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
JC82-00898A	Rear tamper	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
JC82-00898A	Rear tamper	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
JC82-00899A	Front tamper	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
JC82-00900A	Rear tamper	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
JC82-00901A	Front tamper	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
JC82-00901A	Front tamper	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
JC82-01038A	Main paddle kit	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
JC82-01039A	Booklet output tray sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC82-01039A	Main output tray top of stack sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
JC82-01039A	Main output tray top of stack sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
JC82-01039A	Output tray top of stack sensor kit	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC82-01039A	Top output tray paper full sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC82-01039A	Top output tray paper full sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC90-01310A	Front paper support	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
JC90-01311A	Rear paper support	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
JC90-01312A	Paper support motor assy	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
JC90-01313A	Paper holding actuator	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC90-01314A	Paper holding kit	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC90-01320A	Output tray lower limit switch assy	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC90-01327A	Main paddle	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
JC90-01330A	Exit roller assy	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
JC90-01331A	Exit motor assy	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
JC90-01334B	Output tray motor assy	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC90-01336A	Sub paddle assy	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
JC90-01385A	Right door open switch holder assy	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
JC90-01385A	Right door open switch holder assy	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
JC90-01396A	Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC90-01397A	Booklet diverter motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC90-01398A	Booklet diverter	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor drive assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor drive assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor drive assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor drive assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC90-01425A	Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC90-01430A	Booklet paddle motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC90-01431A	Booklet tamper	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC90-01432A	Booklet end fence	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC90-01435A	Booklet blade motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC90-01436A	Booklet fold motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC90-01442A	Finisher mount bracket	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 3138
JC90-01442A	Finisher mount bracket	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 3144
JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 3141
JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 3150
JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC90-01458A	Tray diverter cam	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC90-01458A	Tray diverter cam	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC90-01467A	End fence motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC90-01467A	End fence motor assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC90-01478B	Booklet front cover	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC90-01480A	Paddle	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC90-01480A	Paddle	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC90-01802A	Ejector unit	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
JC90-01802A	Ejector unit	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
JC90-01844A	Tray 1 unit	Tray 1 on page 3090
JC90-01856A	Exit unit	Exit unit on page 3094
JC90-01865A	Exit stack guide	Exit unit on page 3094
JC92-02780A	Rear joint PCA	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 3131
JC92-02792A	PBA-Shift tray level	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
JC93-00336A	Drive-motor step	Exit unit on page 3094
JC93-00336A	Drive-motor step	Exit unit on page 3094
JC93-00466A	Front door open switch	Sensor and fan on page 3105
JC93-00492A	Toner collection full sensor assembly	Toner collection unit on page 3098
JC93-00802B	Drive sub-motor step	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
JC93-00999A	Drive-motor step	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 3133
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151
JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 3142
JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 3151

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC93-01007A	Developer suction duct	Sensor and fan on page 3105
JC93-01067A	Reservoir drive assembly	Reservoir on page 3097
JC93-01083A	Drive-motor step	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
JC93-01083A	Drive-motor step	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
JC93-01083A	Drive-motor step	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
JC93-01084A	Drive-motor step	Fuser on page 3104
JC93-01085A	Drive-motor step	Duplex on page 3095
JC93-01112A	sHCI pickup/feed drive assembly	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
JC93-01114A	HCI feed motor	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
JC93-01115A	HCI pickup motor	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
JC93-01123A	sHCI top cover open switch assembly	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
JC93-01135A	DCF feed drive assembly	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
JC93-01152A	Buffer motor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
JC93-01152A	Buffer motor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
JC93-01155A	Booklet end fence motor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC93-01155A	Booklet tamper motor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC93-01163A	Booklet blade	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 3147
JC93-01467A	Switch	Sensor and fan on page 3105
JC93-01662A	Developer, drum and PTB drive assembly	Drum on page 3101
JC93-01662A	Drum and developer drive assembly	Developer on page 3100
JC93-01663A	Tray 2 pickup drive assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
JC93-01663A	Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
JC93-01663A	Tray 4 pickup drive assembly	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
JC93-01663A	Tray 5 pickup drive assembly	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
JC93-01664A	Feed drive assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
JC93-01665A	Registration drive assembly	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
JC93-01667A	Toner dispense motor assembly	Toner on page 3096
JC93-01694A	Tray 2 pickup assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
JC93-01695A	Tray 3 pickup assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
JC93-01726A	Reverse roller	sHCI (2 of 2) on page 3126
JC93-01742A	Keyboard Assy-US English	PCA on page 3106

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC93-01743A	Keyboard Assy-UK English	PCA on page 3106
JC93-01795A	LVPS FDB fan assembly	Sensor and fan on page 3105
JC93-01850A	Fuser and exit drive assembly	Exit unit on page 3094
JC93-01850A	Fuser and exit drive assembly	Fuser on page 3104
JC95-02246A	Right door assembly	Covers on page 3087
JC95-02246A	Right door assembly	Tray 1 on page 3090
JC95-02246A	Right door assembly	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
JC95-02246A	Right door assembly	Duplex on page 3095
JC95-02249A	Right door exit assembly	Registration and loop sensors on page 3093
JC95-02250A	Duplex assembly	Duplex on page 3095
JC97-05149A	Laser scanner unit (LSU)	Laser scanner unit on page 3099
SQJ90-61042	300sh flow ADF (does not include white backing or suspension clips)	ISA on page 3108
SS216-80501	Toner dispense motor	Toner on page 3096
SS456-61001	Ejector	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 3135
T3U64-60001	Echo PCA	PCA on page 3106
W9016-67001	Toner collection unit	Toner collection unit on page 3098
W9084-67006	Toner cartridge -standard yield	Toner on page 3096
W9085-67007	Toner cartridge -high yield	Toner on page 3096
W9086-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Black Managed Imaging Drum	Drum on page 3101
X3A79-60003	Reservoir unit	Reservoir on page 3097
Y1G10-67901	Punch unit 2-3 hole	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Y1G10-67901	Punch unit 2-3 hole	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Y1G11-67901	Punch unit 2-4 hole	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Y1G11-67901	Punch unit 2-4 hole	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Y1G12-67901	Punch unit Swedish hole	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 3139
Y1G12-67901	Punch unit Swedish hole	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 3148
Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118

Table 7-45 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V	Tray 2, 3 on page 3091
Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V	DCF (2 of 2) on page 3118
Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V	HCI (2 of 2) on page 3122
Y6V12-60035	Tarot platen PCA	Tarot platen on page 3114
Z9Y05-50002	ADF FFC cable to SSA	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
Z9Y05-50003	ADF Power cable	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
Z9Y05-60004	300sh ADF PCA	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
Z9Y05-60014	Hinge left	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
Z9Y05-60016	Damper module	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
Z9Y05-60032	ADF input tray	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
Z9Y05-60047	ADF image sensor	300sh flow ADF (2 of 2) on page 3110
Z9Y05-60047	ADF image sensor	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 3113

8 Electrical mechanical relationships (EMR) diagrams

Learn more about electrical mechanical relationships diagrams.

Base printer

Learn about base printer electrical mechanical relationships.

EMR diagrams: Tray 1

Learn about the Tray 1 electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-1 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram Tray 1 (1 of 2)

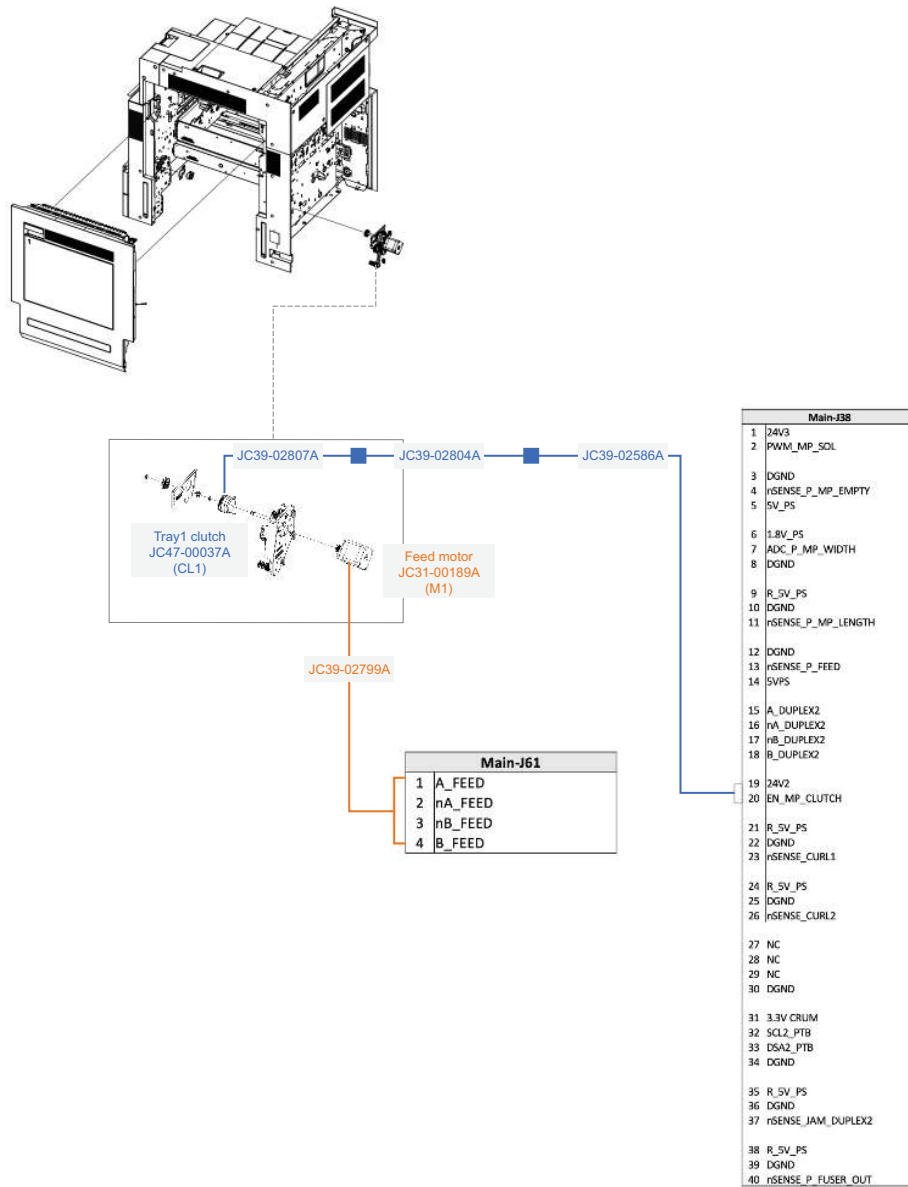
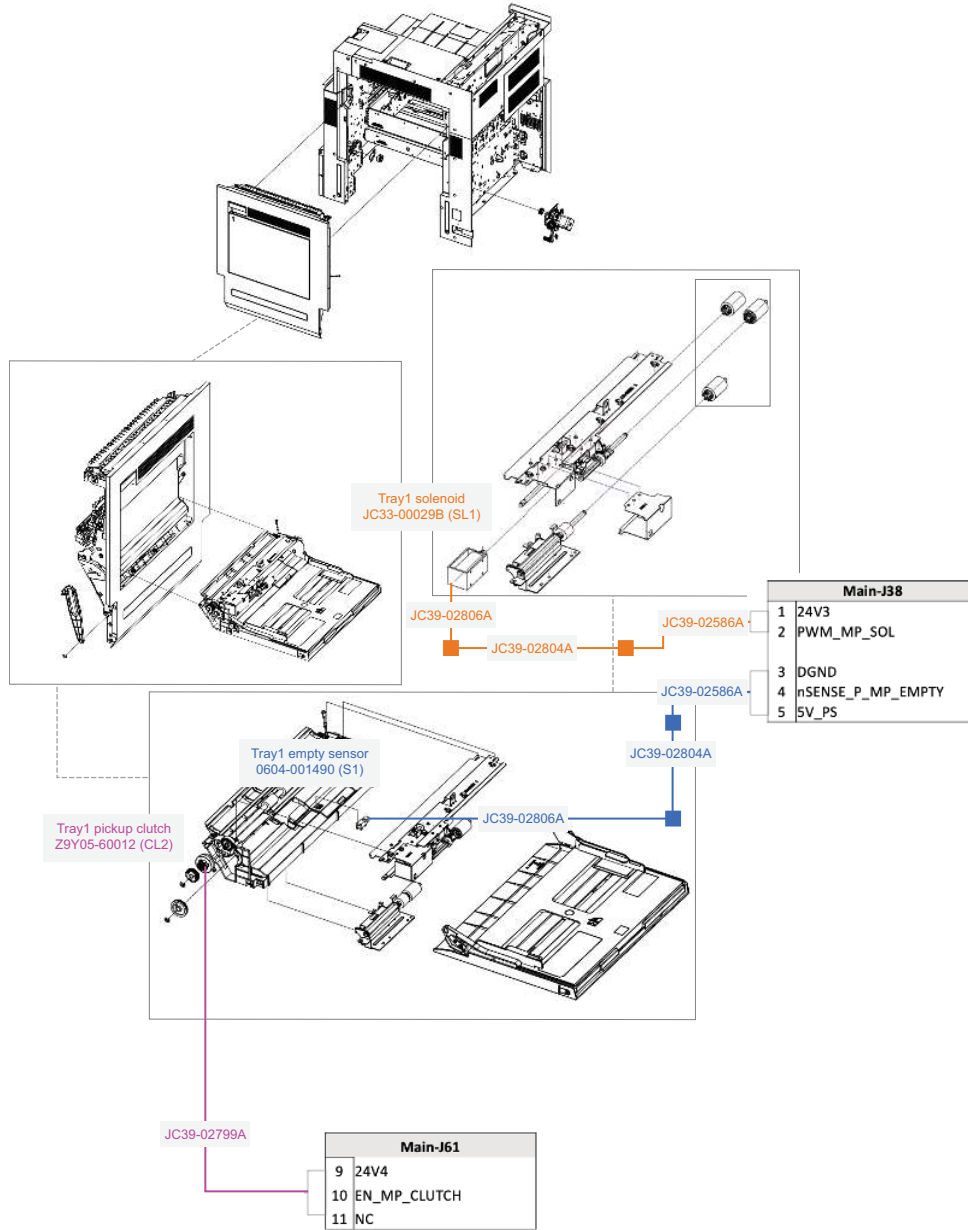


Figure 8-2 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram Tray 1 (2 of 2)



EMR diagrams: Tray 2/3

Learn about the Tray 2/3 electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-3 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram Tray 2/3 (1 of 2)

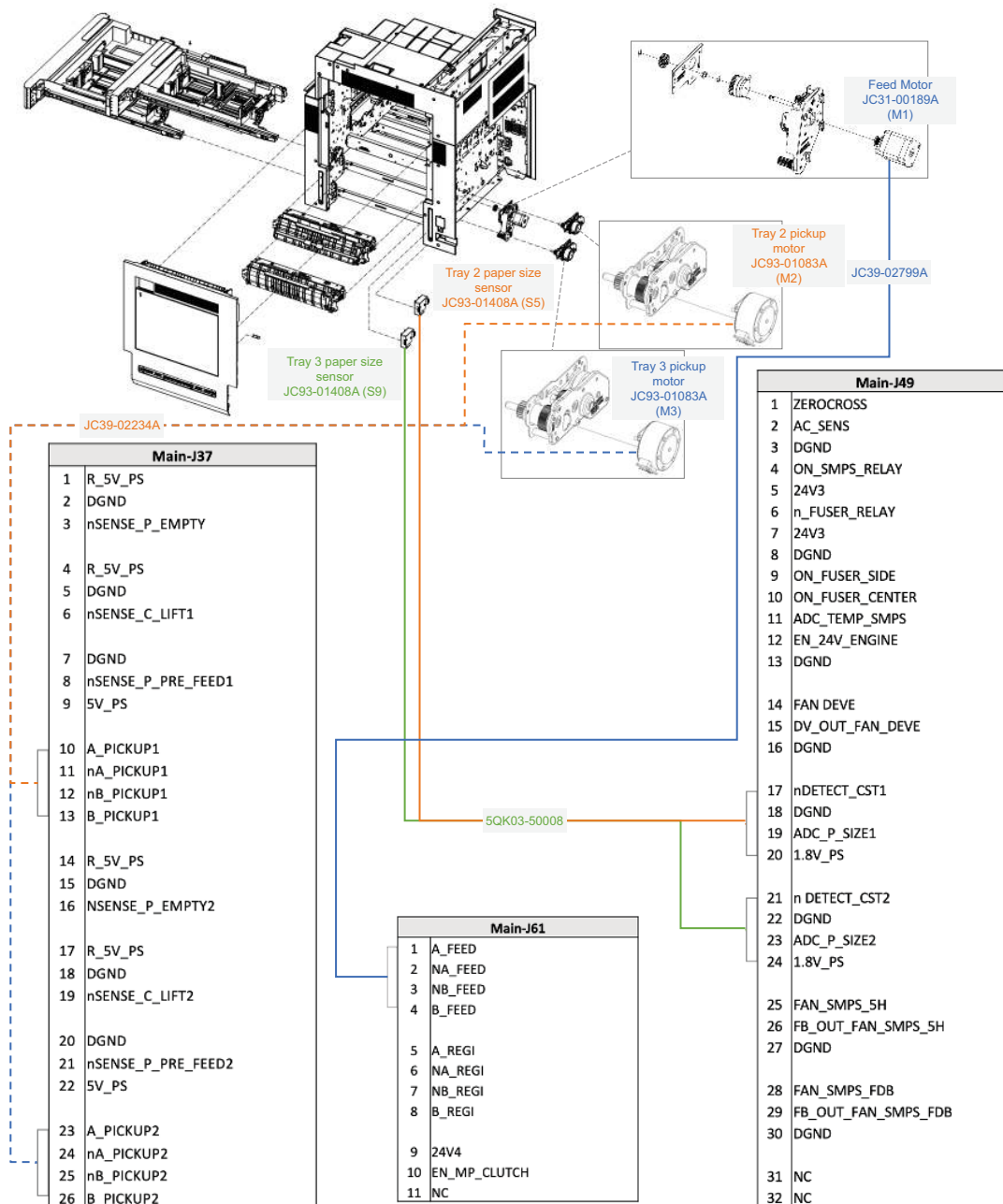
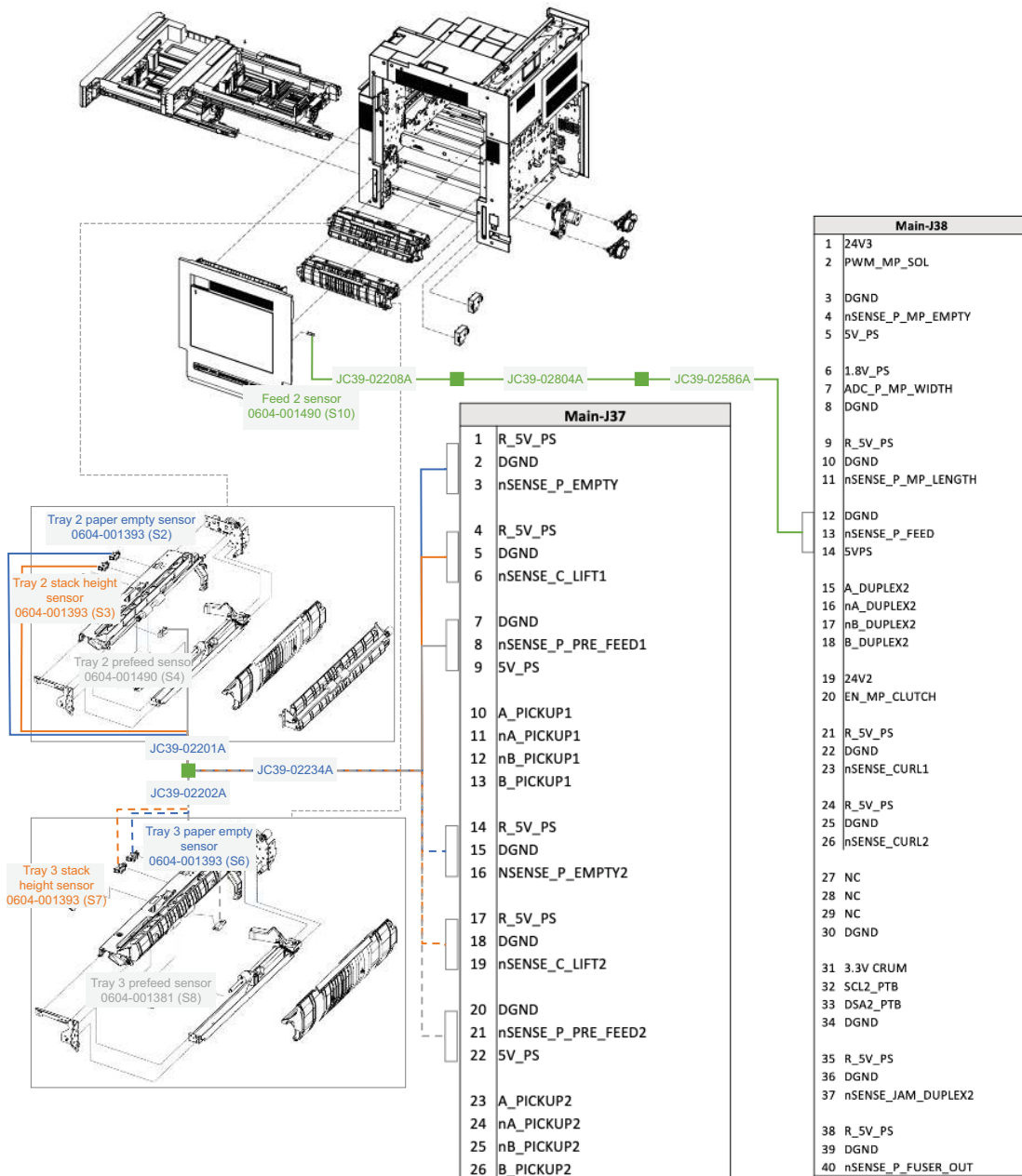


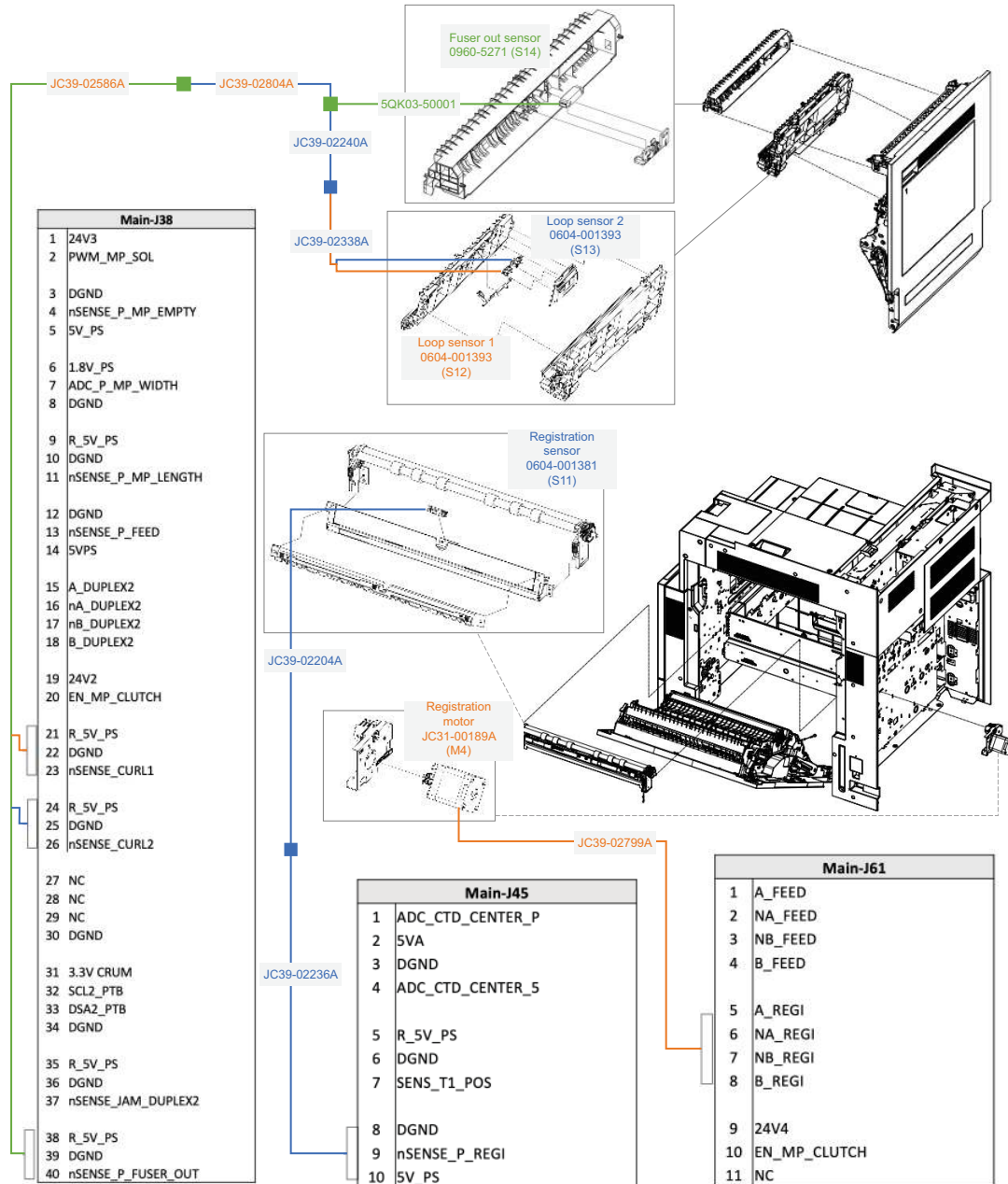
Figure 8-4 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram Tray 2/3 (2 of 2)



EMR diagrams: Registration and loop sensors

Learn about the registration and loop sensors electrical mechanical relationships.

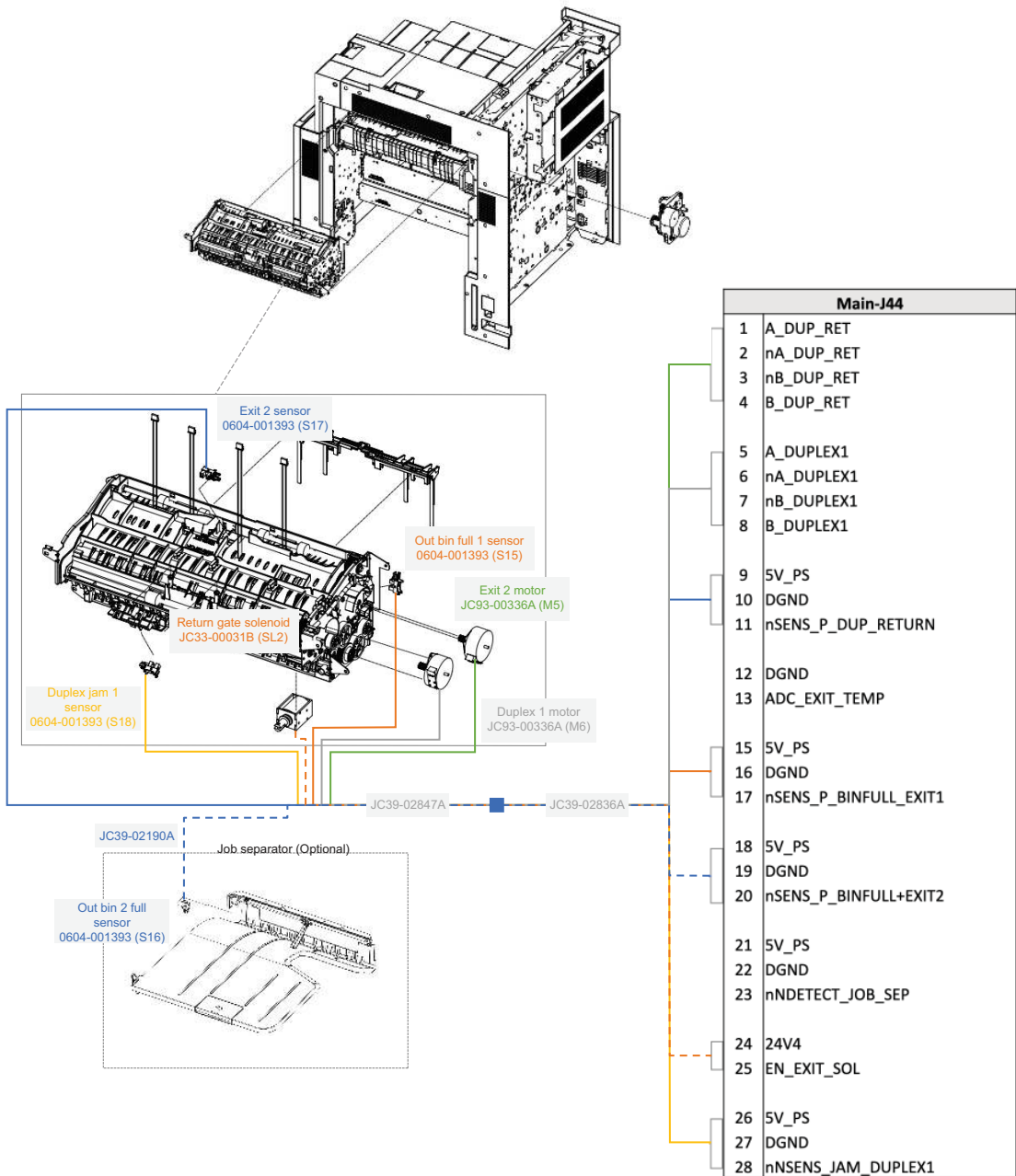
Figure 8-5 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram registration and loop sensors



EMR diagrams: Exit unit

Learn about the exit unit electrical mechanical relationships.

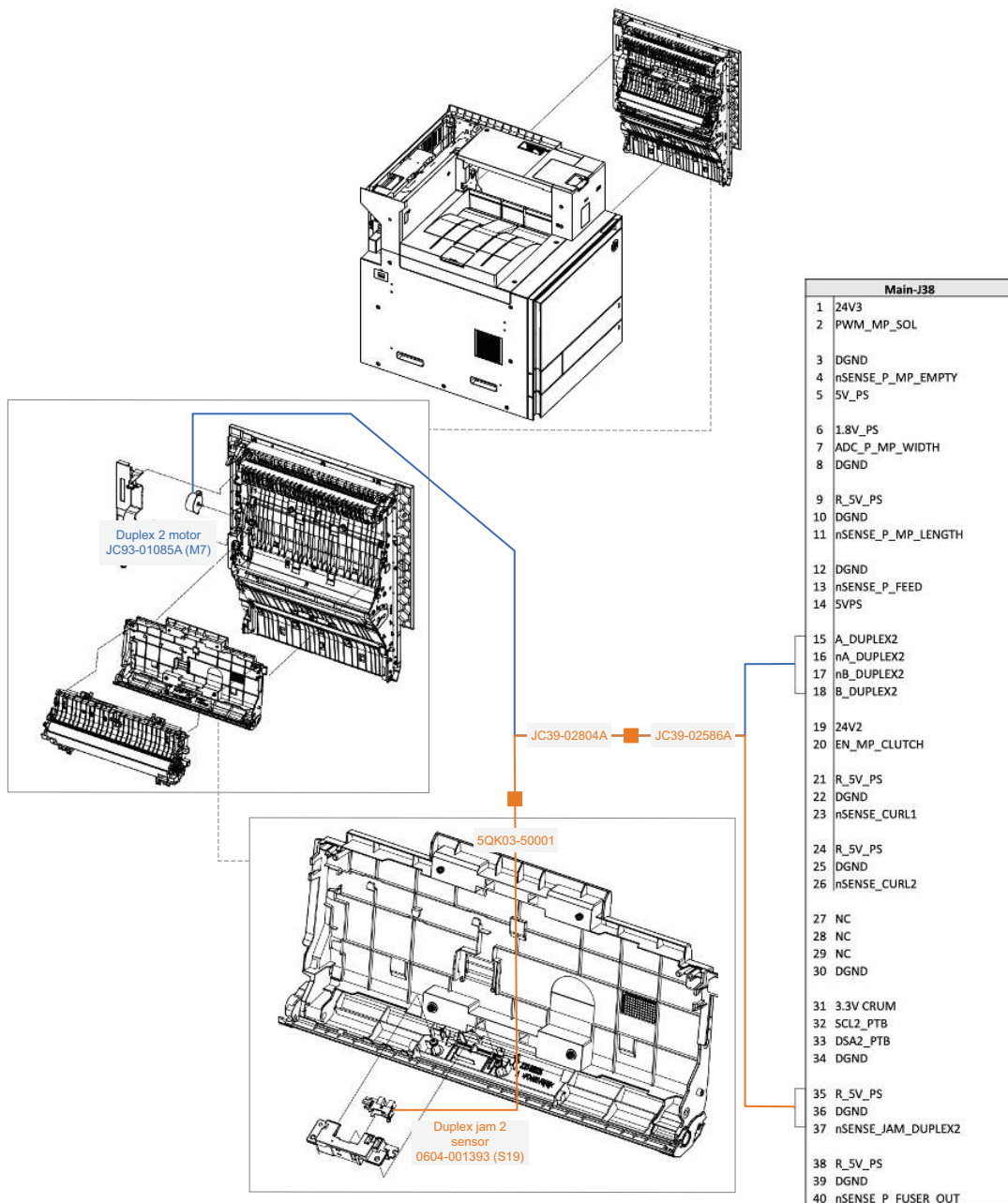
Figure 8-6 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram exit unit



EMR diagrams: Duplex

Learn about the duplex electrical mechanical relationships.

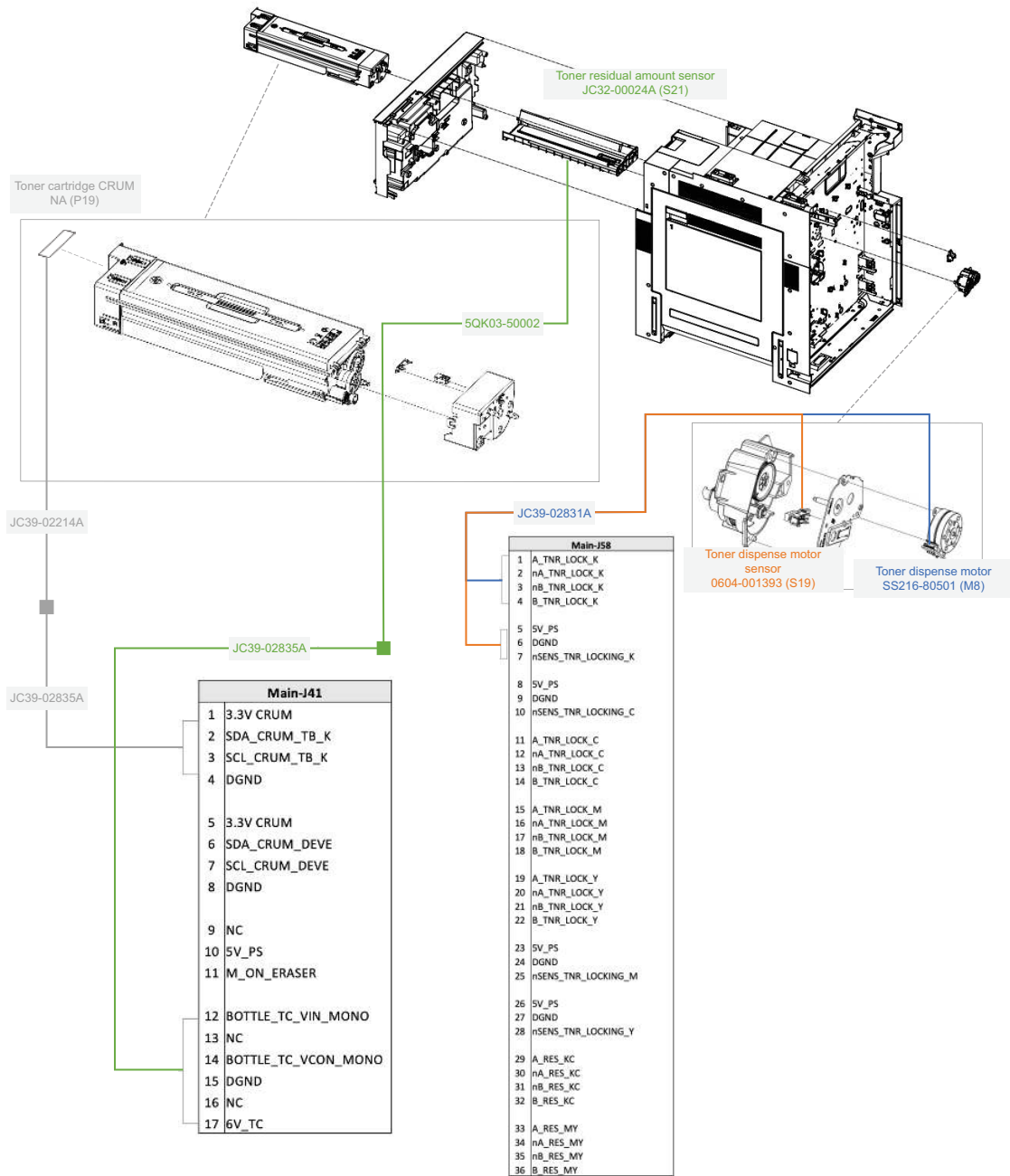
Figure 8-7 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram duplex



EMR diagrams: Toner cartridge

Learn about the toner cartridge electrical mechanical relationships.

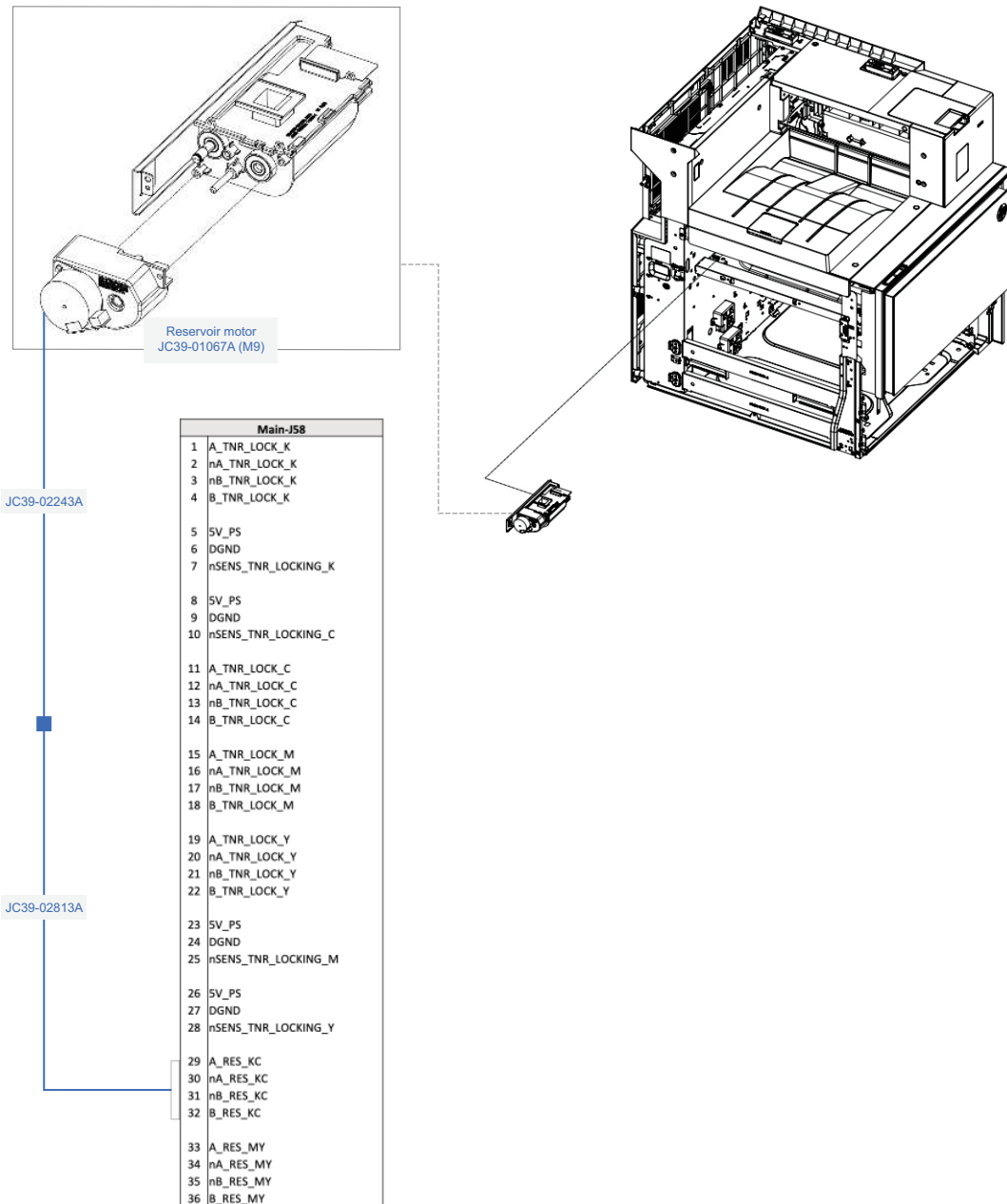
Figure 8-8 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram toner cartridge



EMR diagrams: Reservoir

Learn about the reservoir electrical mechanical relationships.

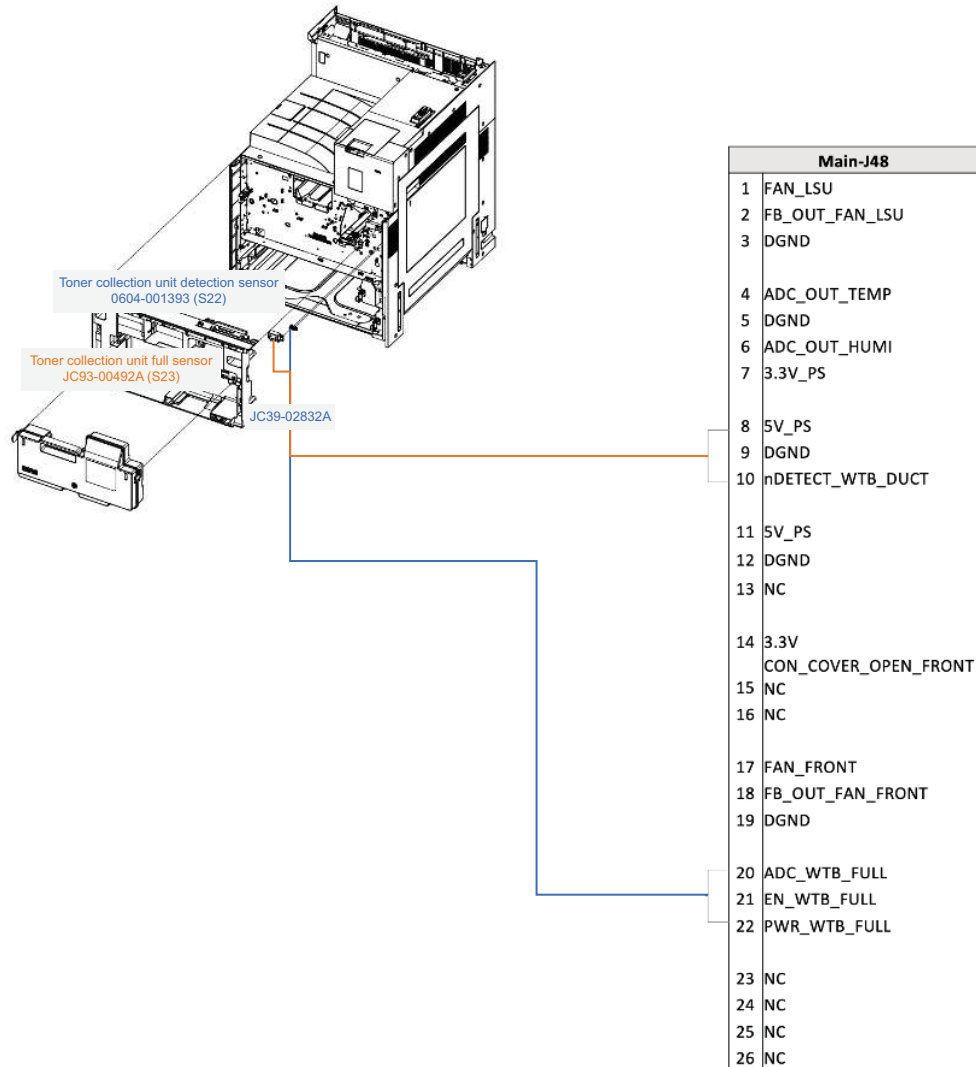
Figure 8-9 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram reservoir



EMR diagrams: Toner collection unit

Learn about the toner collection unit electrical mechanical relationships.

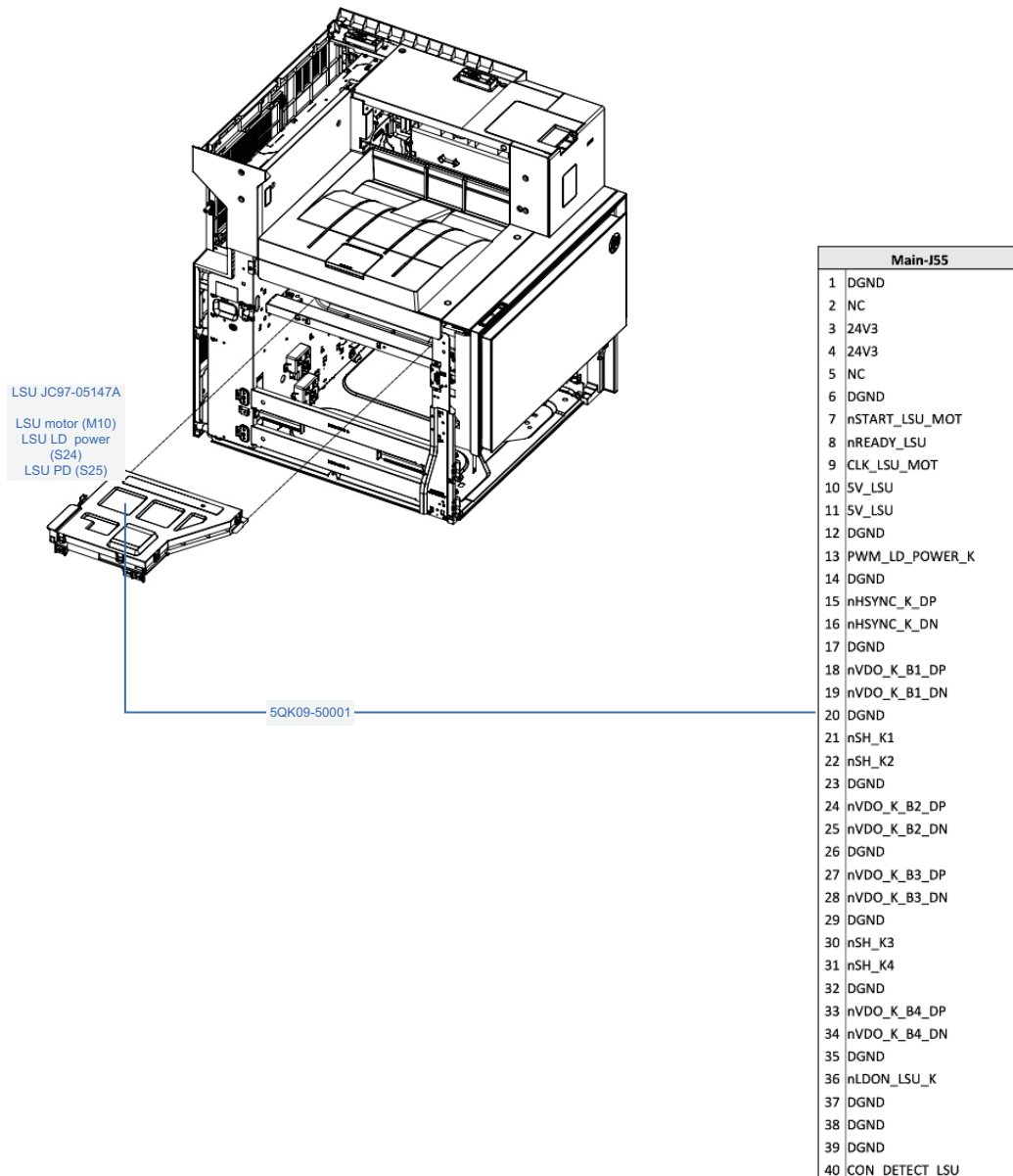
Figure 8-10 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram toner collection unit



EMR diagrams: LSU

Learn about the LSU electrical mechanical relationships.

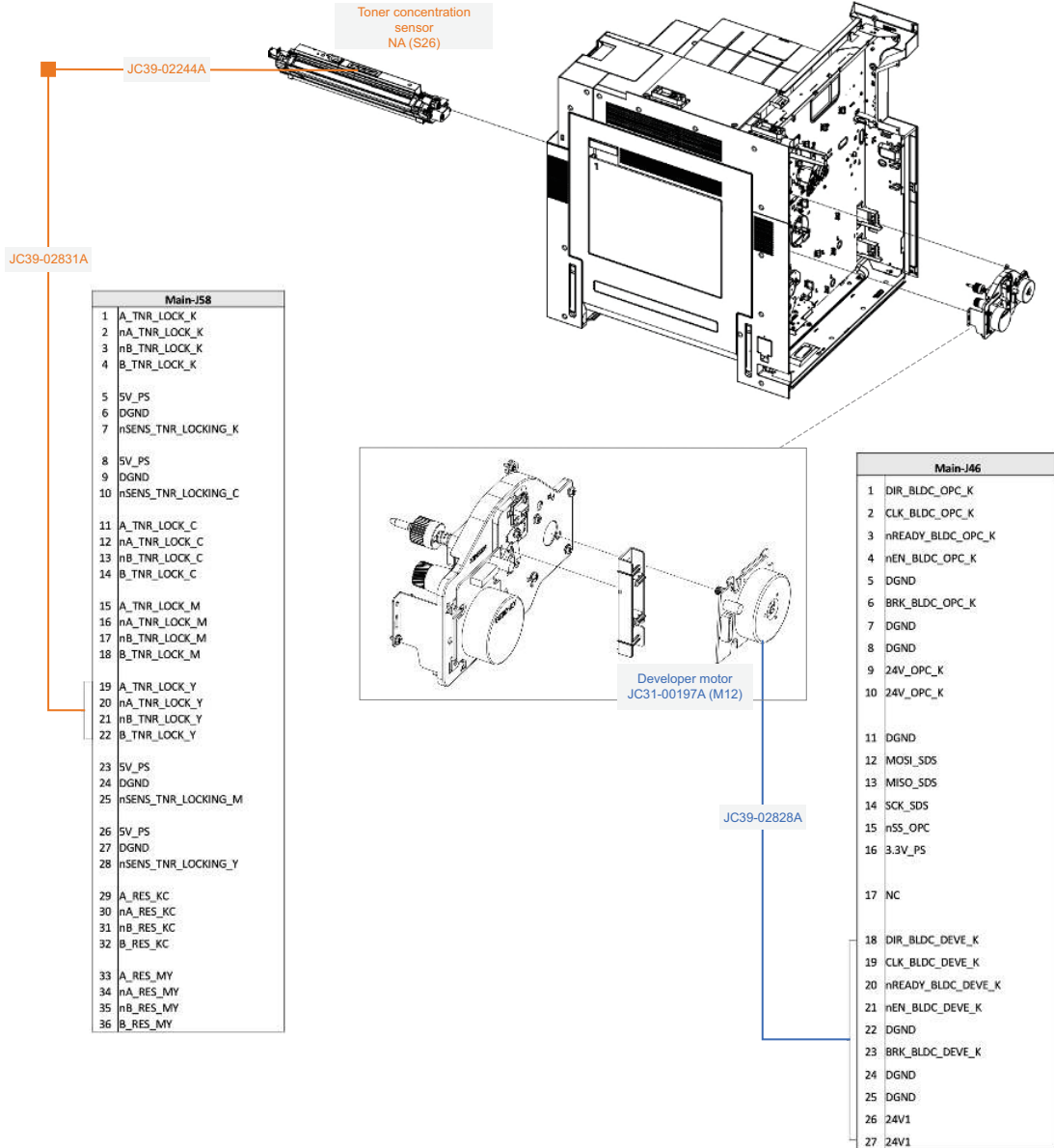
Figure 8-11 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram LSU



EMR diagrams: DEV

Learn about the DEV electrical mechanical relationships.

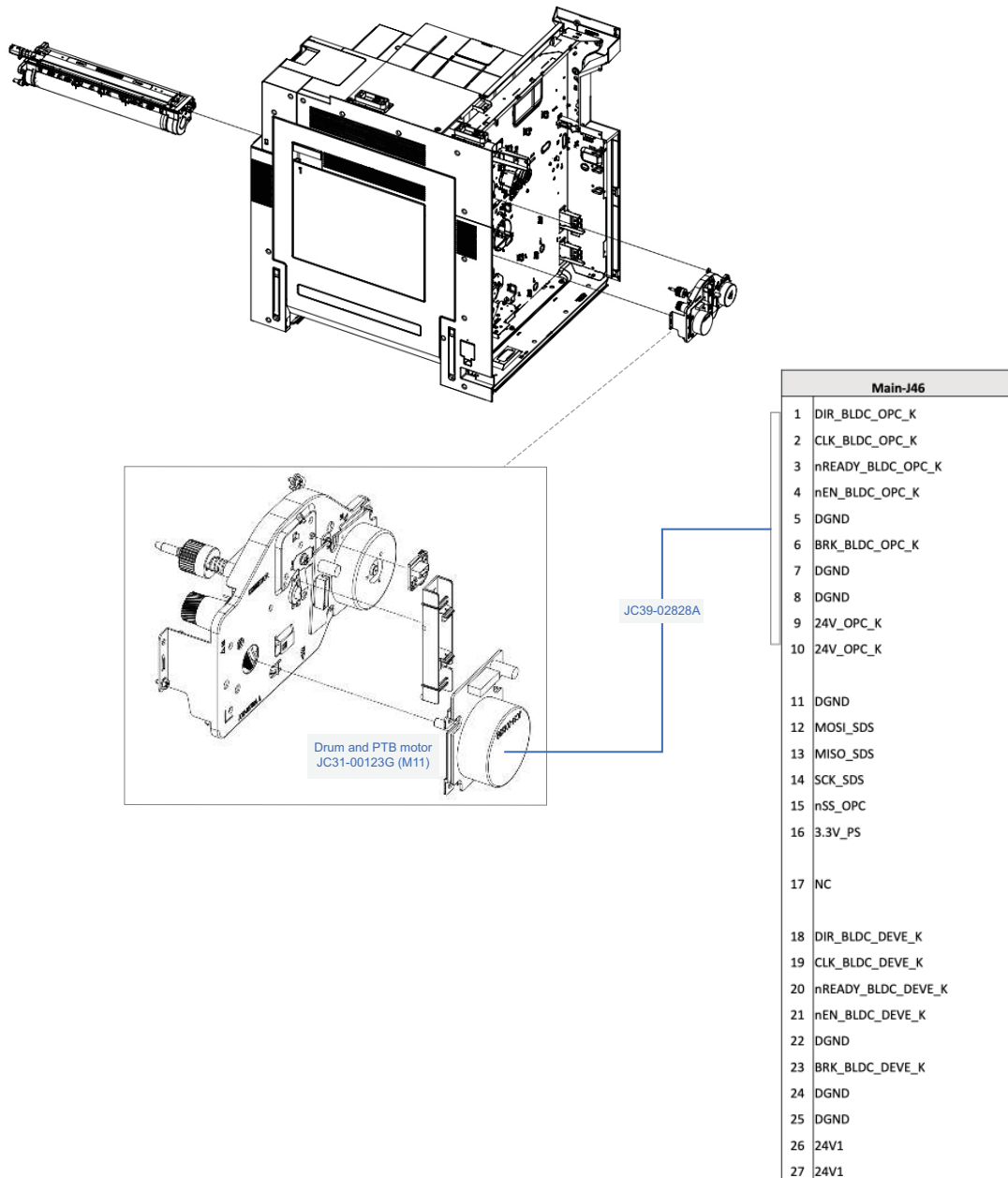
Figure 8-12 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram DEV



EMR diagrams: Drum

Learn about the drum electrical mechanical relationships.

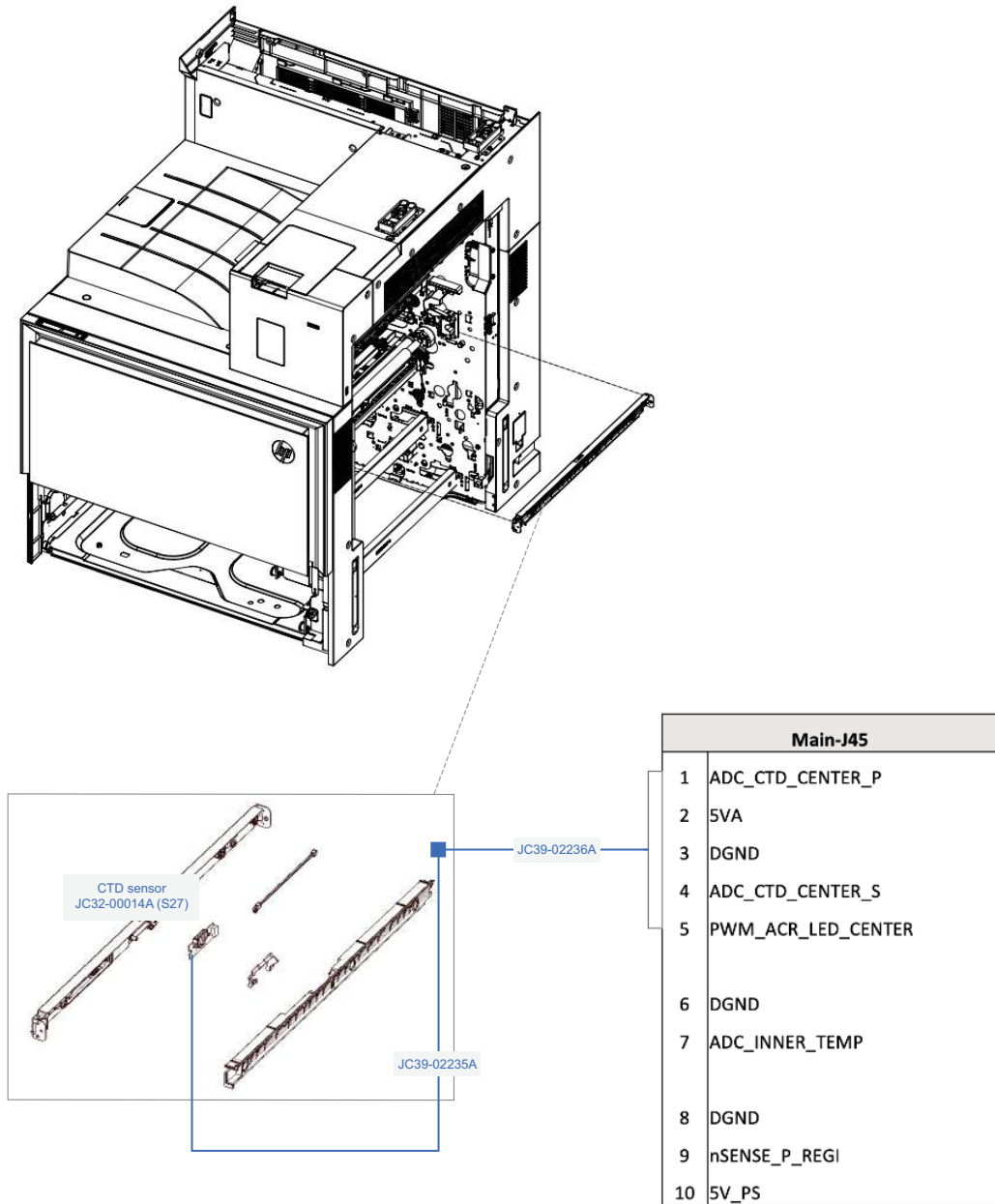
Figure 8-13 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram drum



EMR diagrams: CTD

Learn about the CTB electrical mechanical relationships.

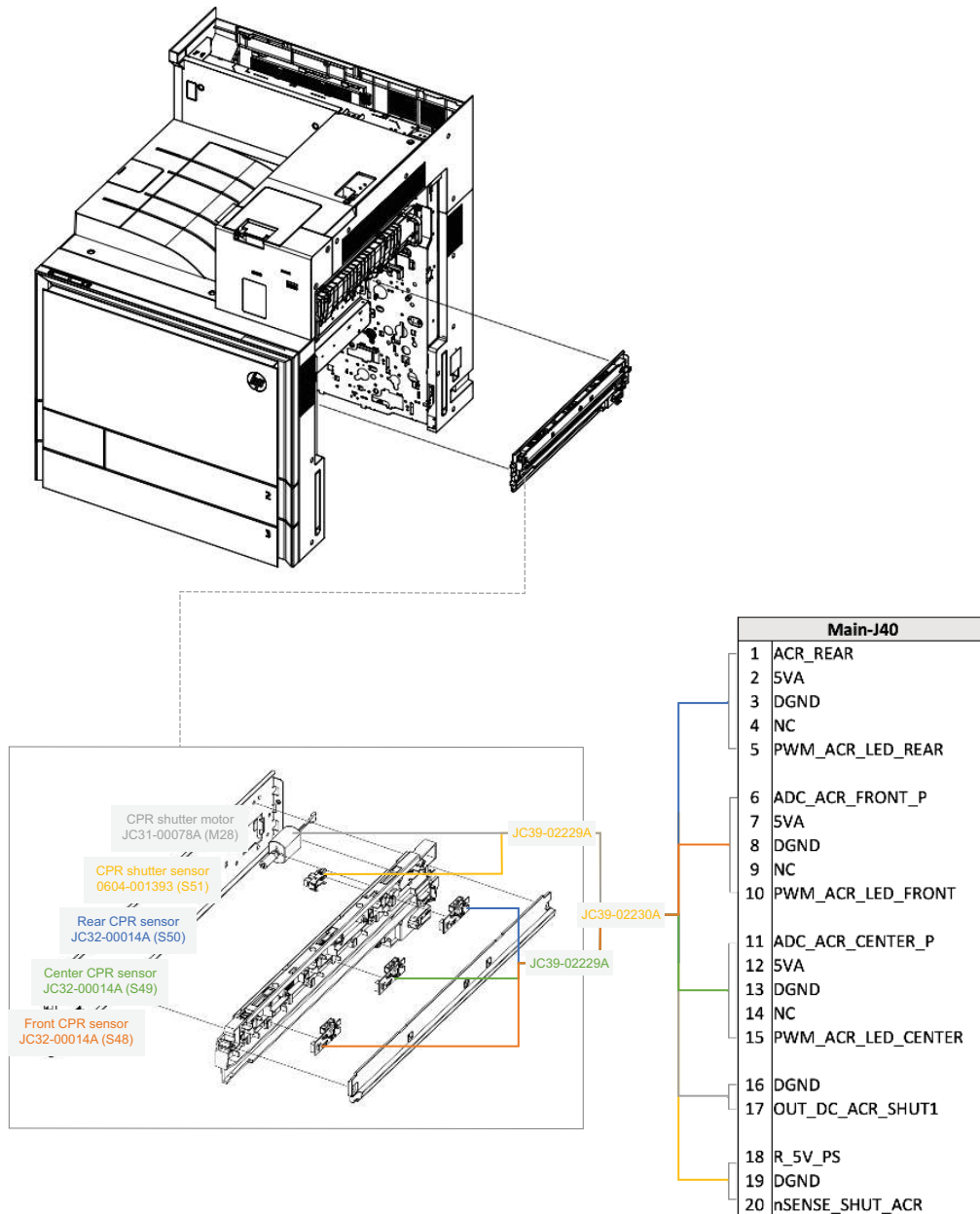
Figure 8-14 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram CTD



EMR diagrams: CPR

Learn about the CPR electrical mechanical relationships.

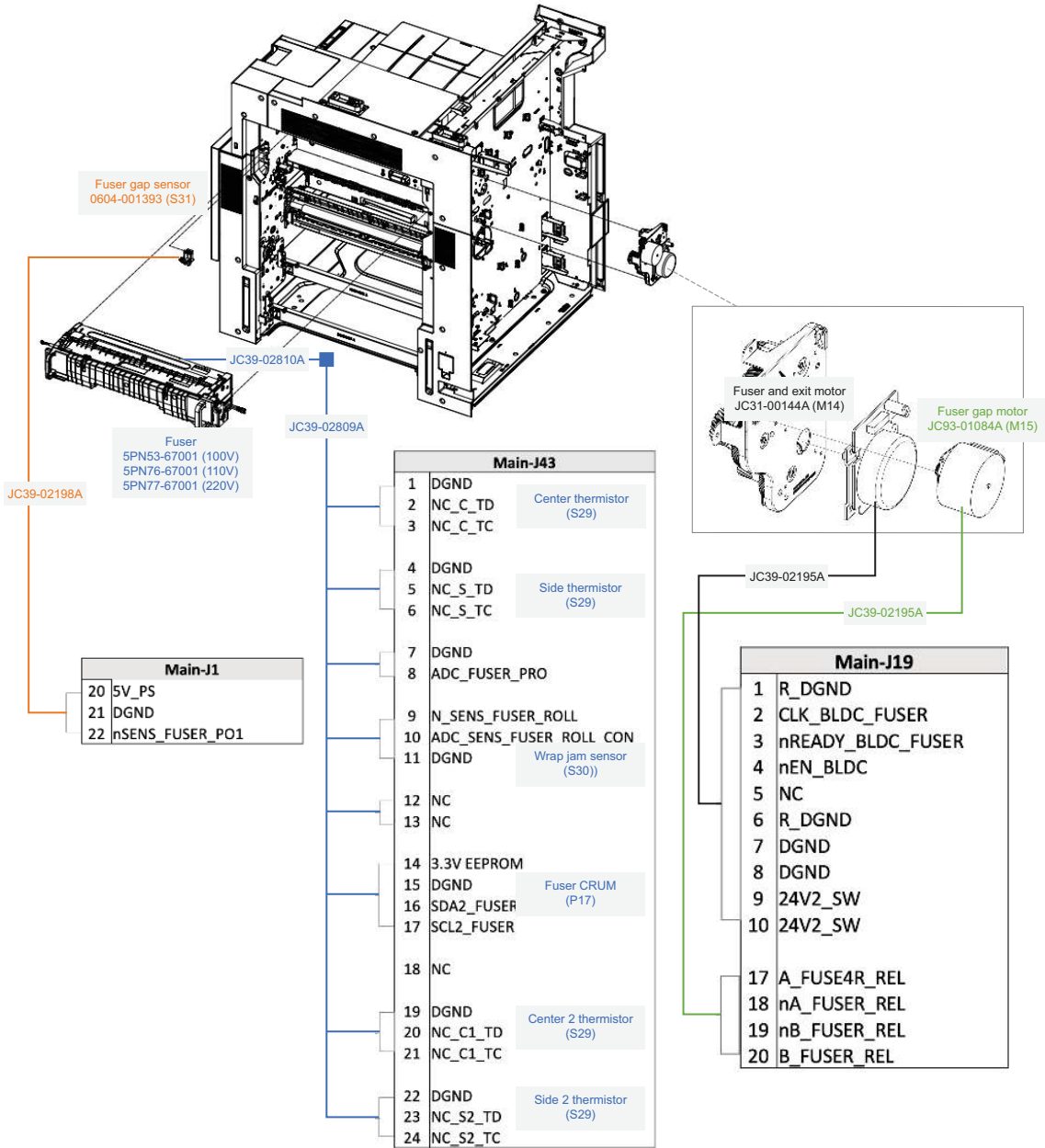
Figure 8-15 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram CPR



EMR diagrams: Fuser

Learn about the fuser electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-16 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram fuser



EMR diagrams: Sensor and Fan

Learn about the sensor and fan electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-17 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram sensor and fan 1 of 2

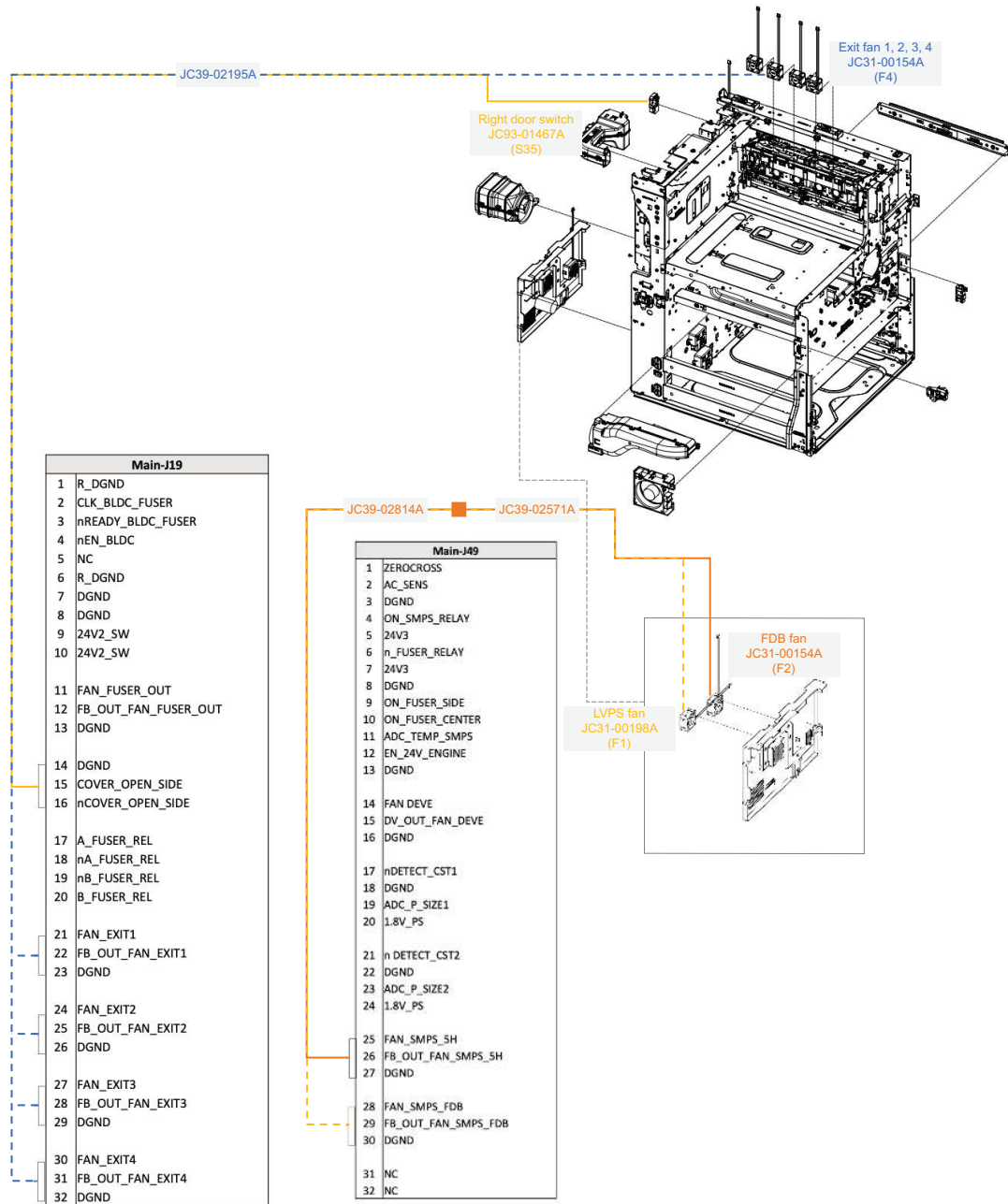
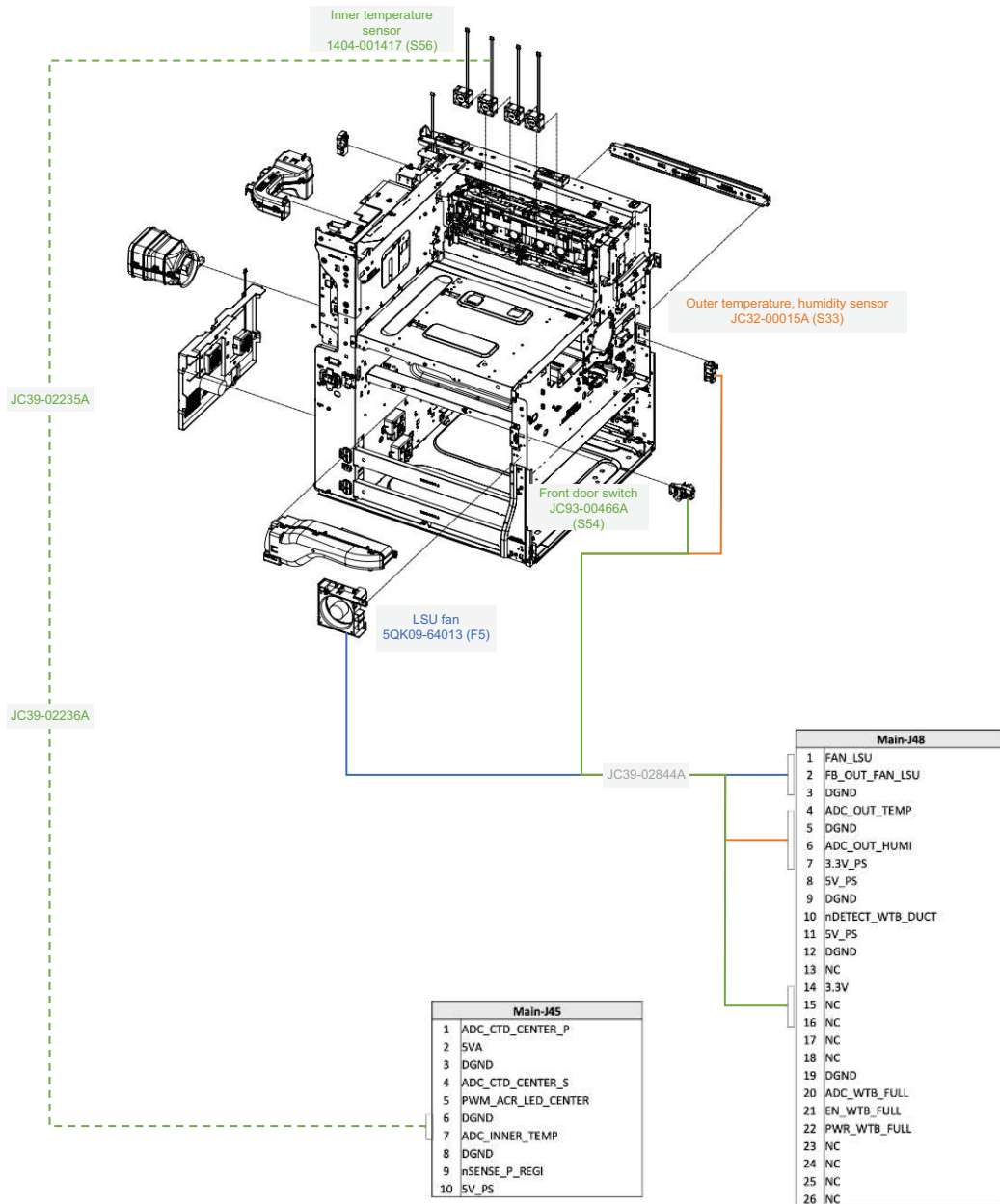


Figure 8-18 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram sensor and fan 2 of 2



EMR diagrams: PCA

Learn about the PCA electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-19 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (1 of 16)

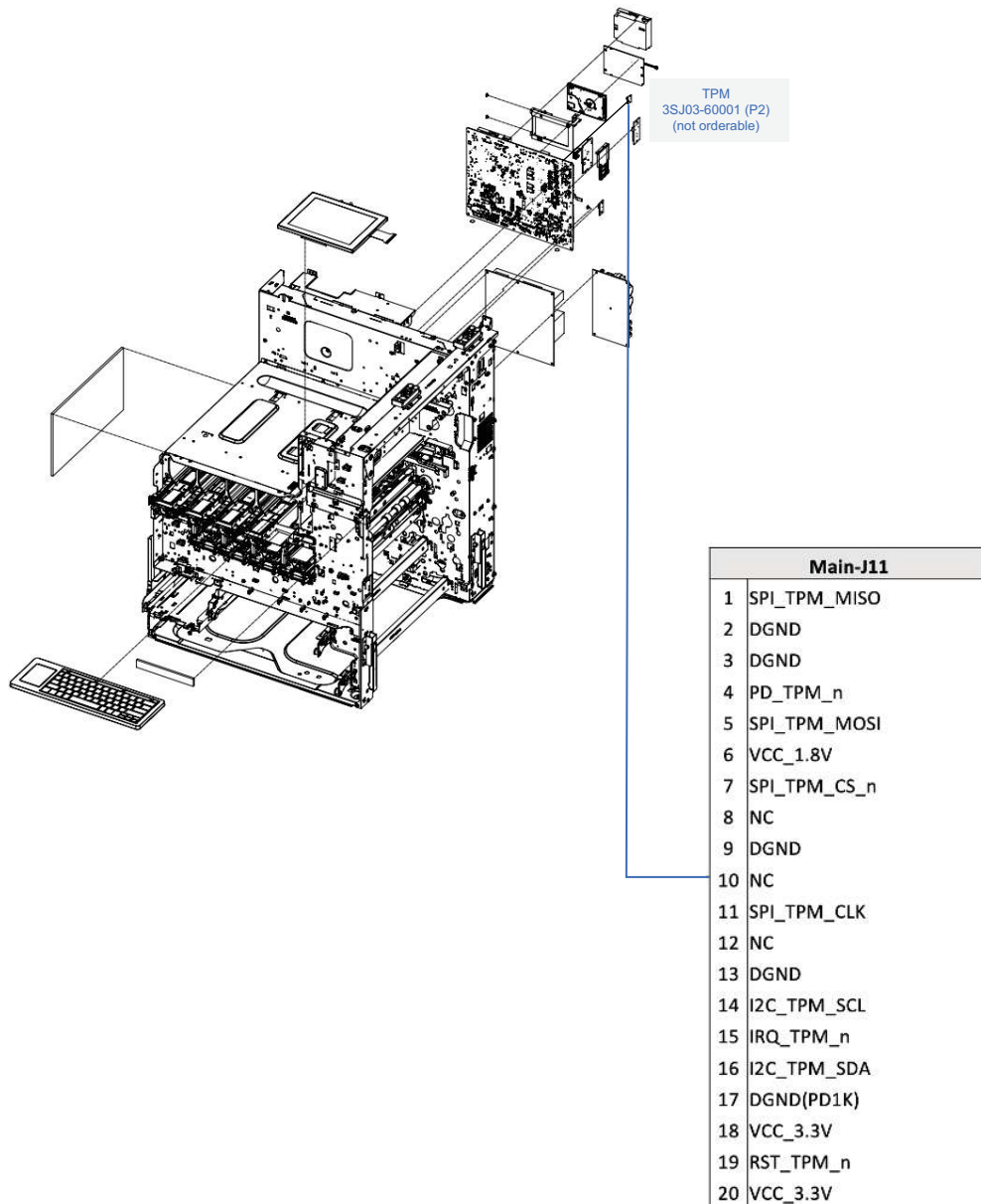


Figure 8-20 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (2 of 16)

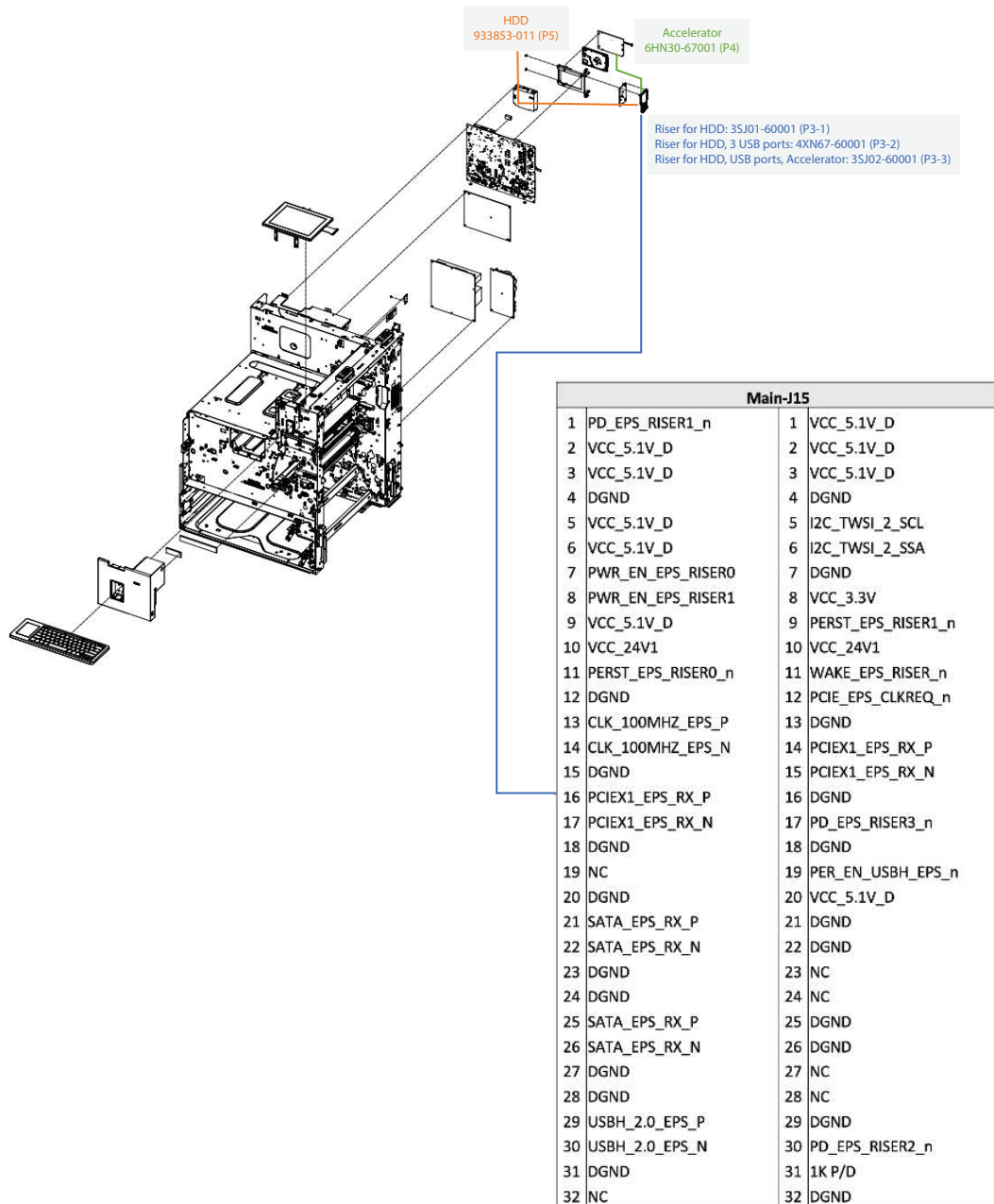


Figure 8-21 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (3 of 16)

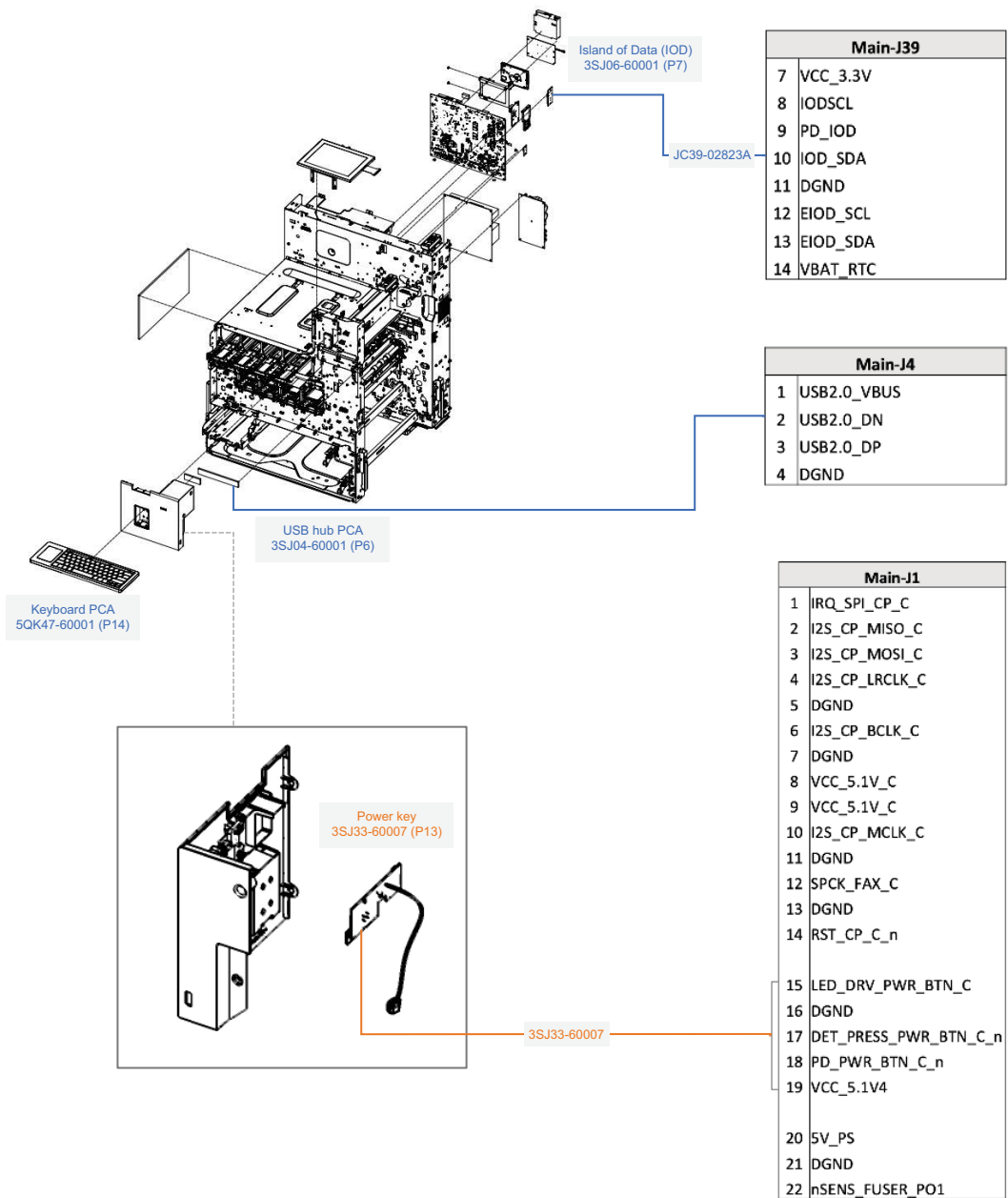


Figure 8-22 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (4 of 16)

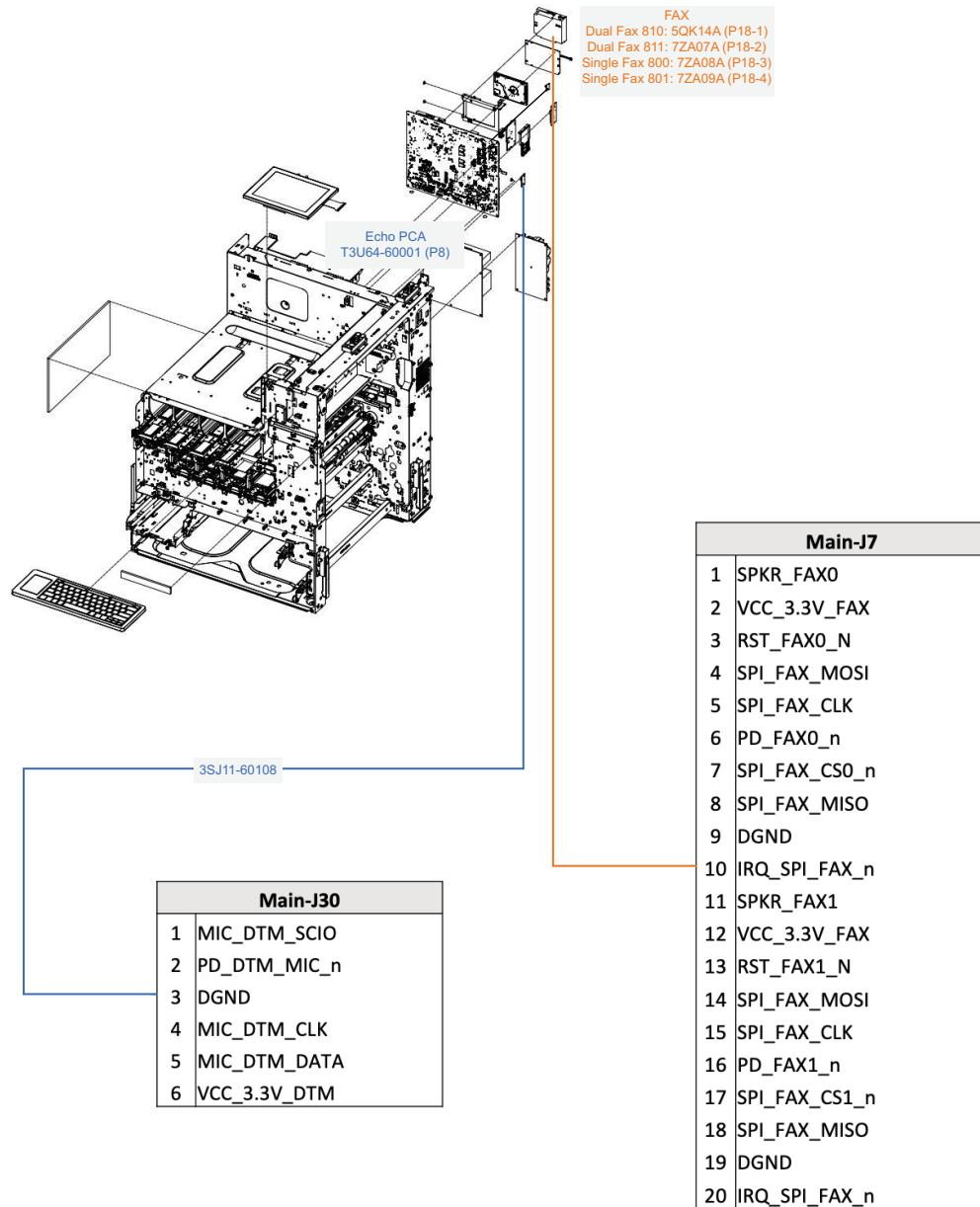


Figure 8-23 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (5 of 16)

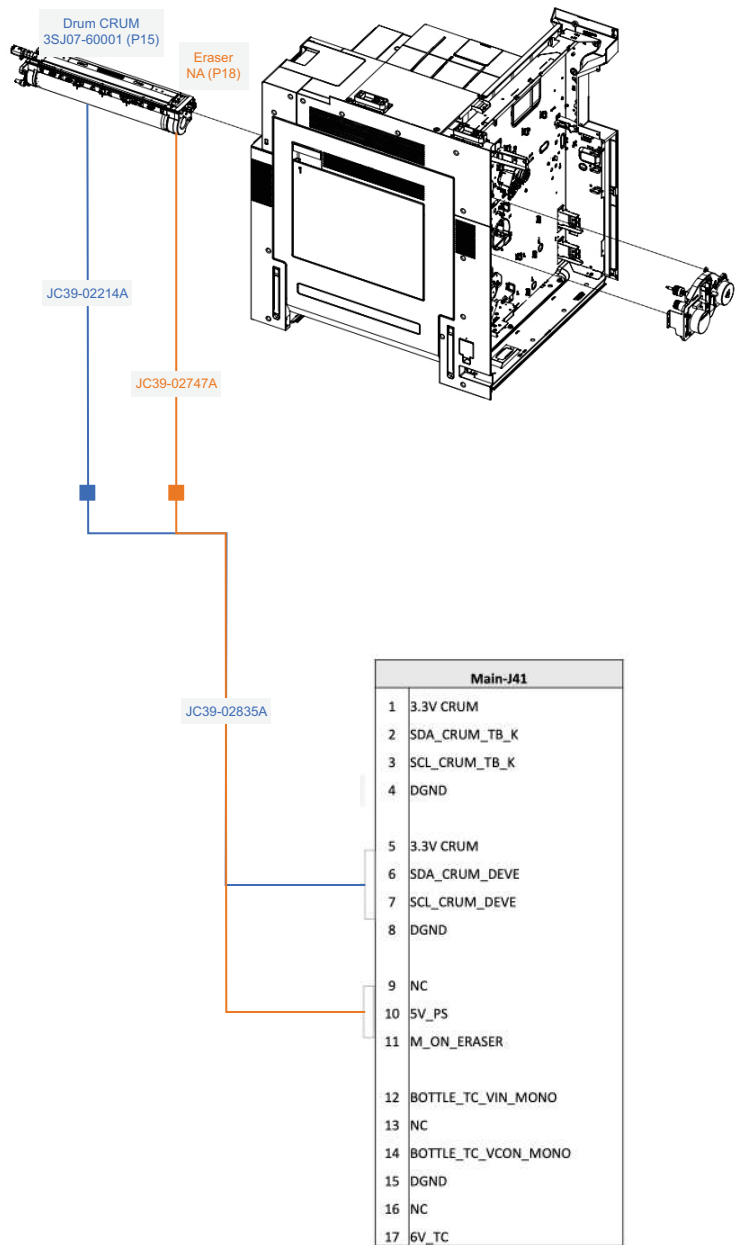


Figure 8-24 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (6 of 16)

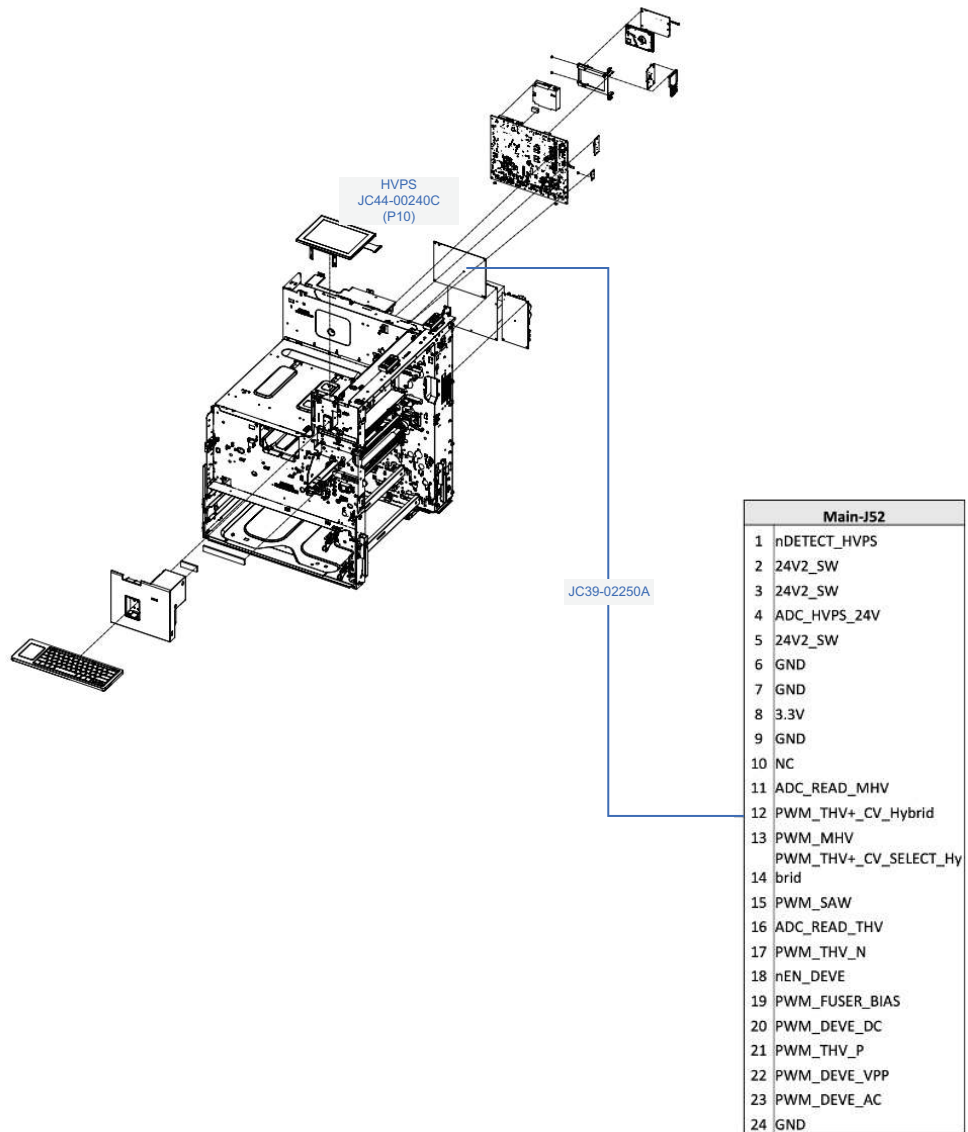


Figure 8-25 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (7 of 16)

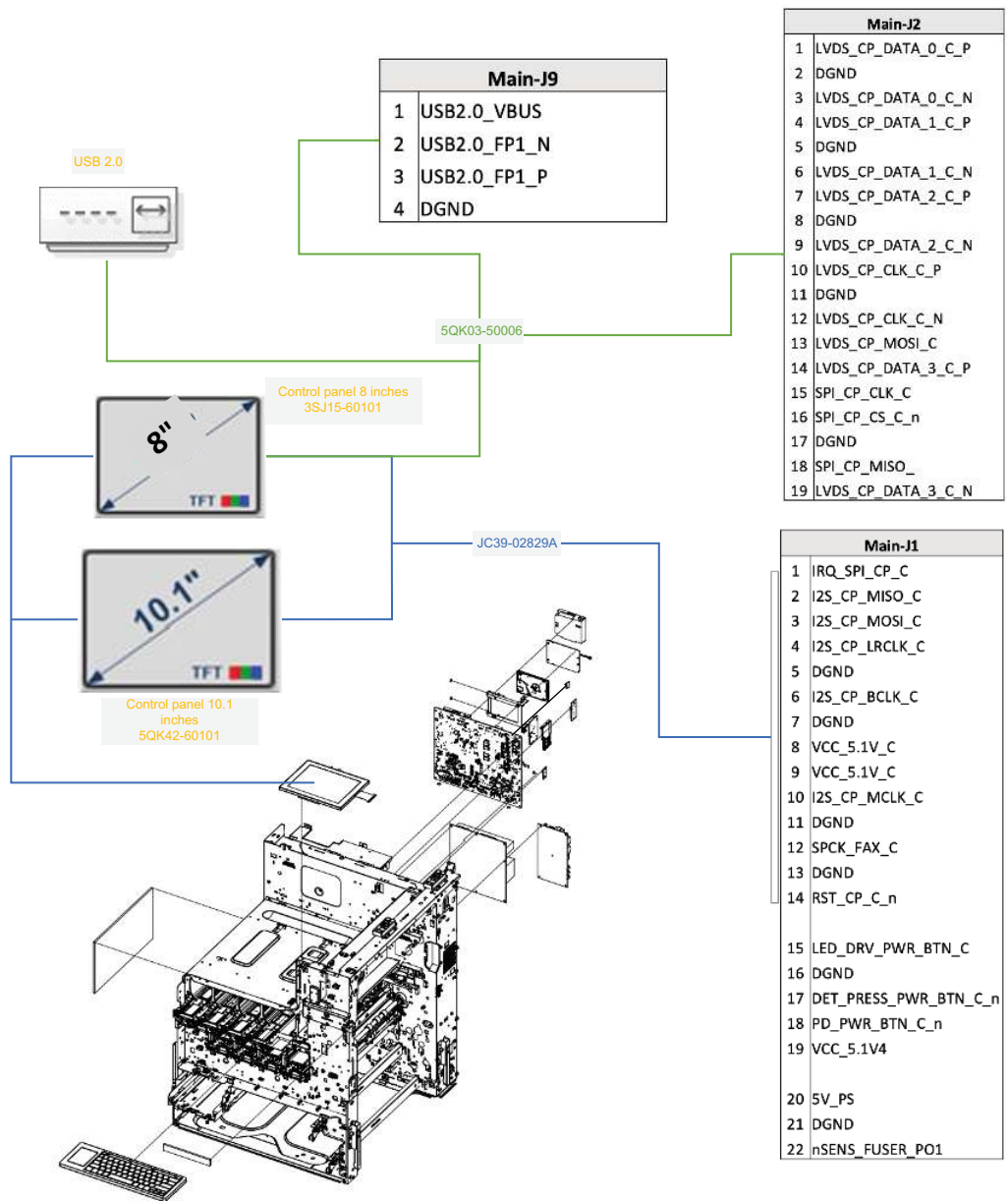


Figure 8-26 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (8 of 16)

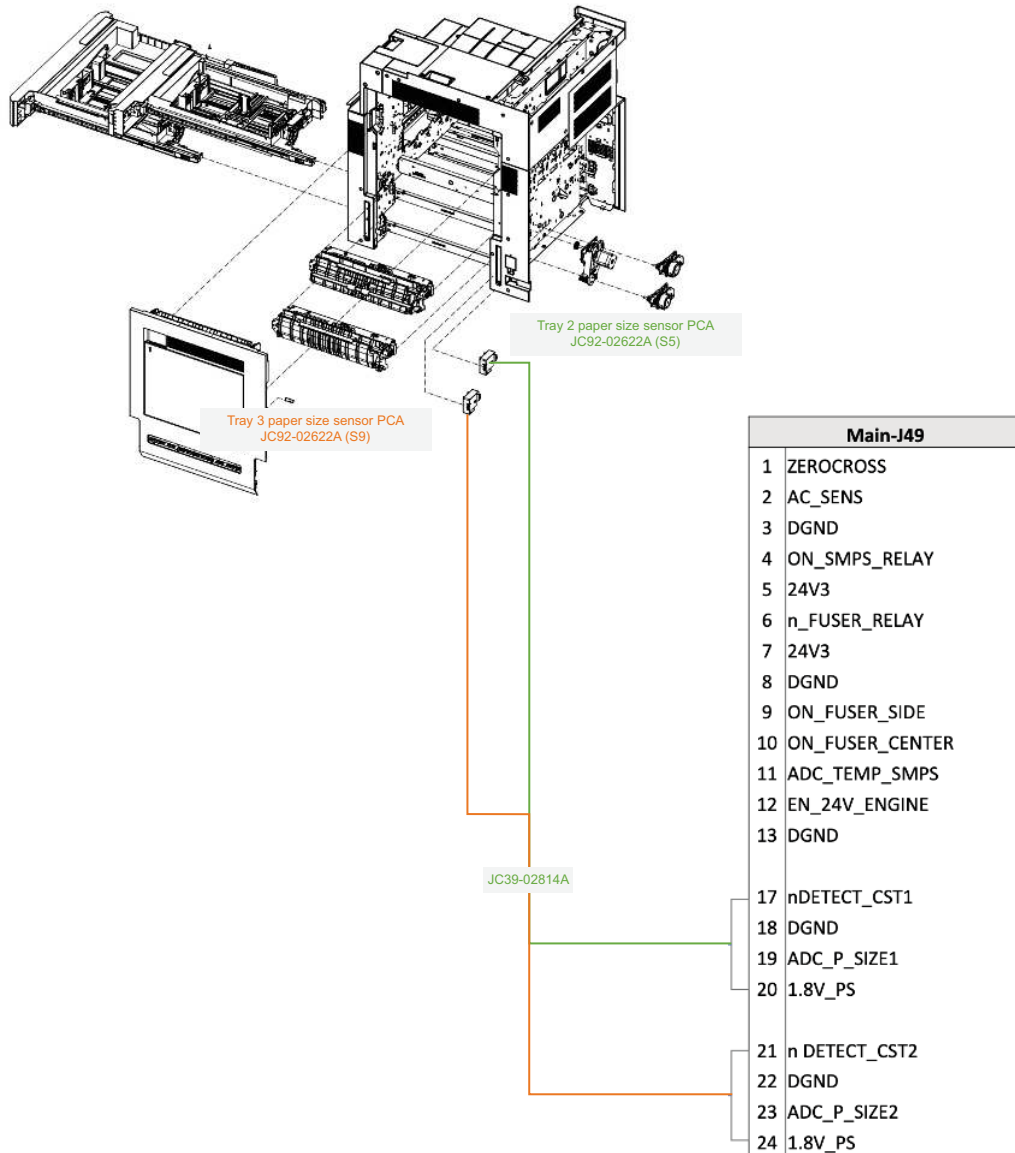


Figure 8-27 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (9 of 16)

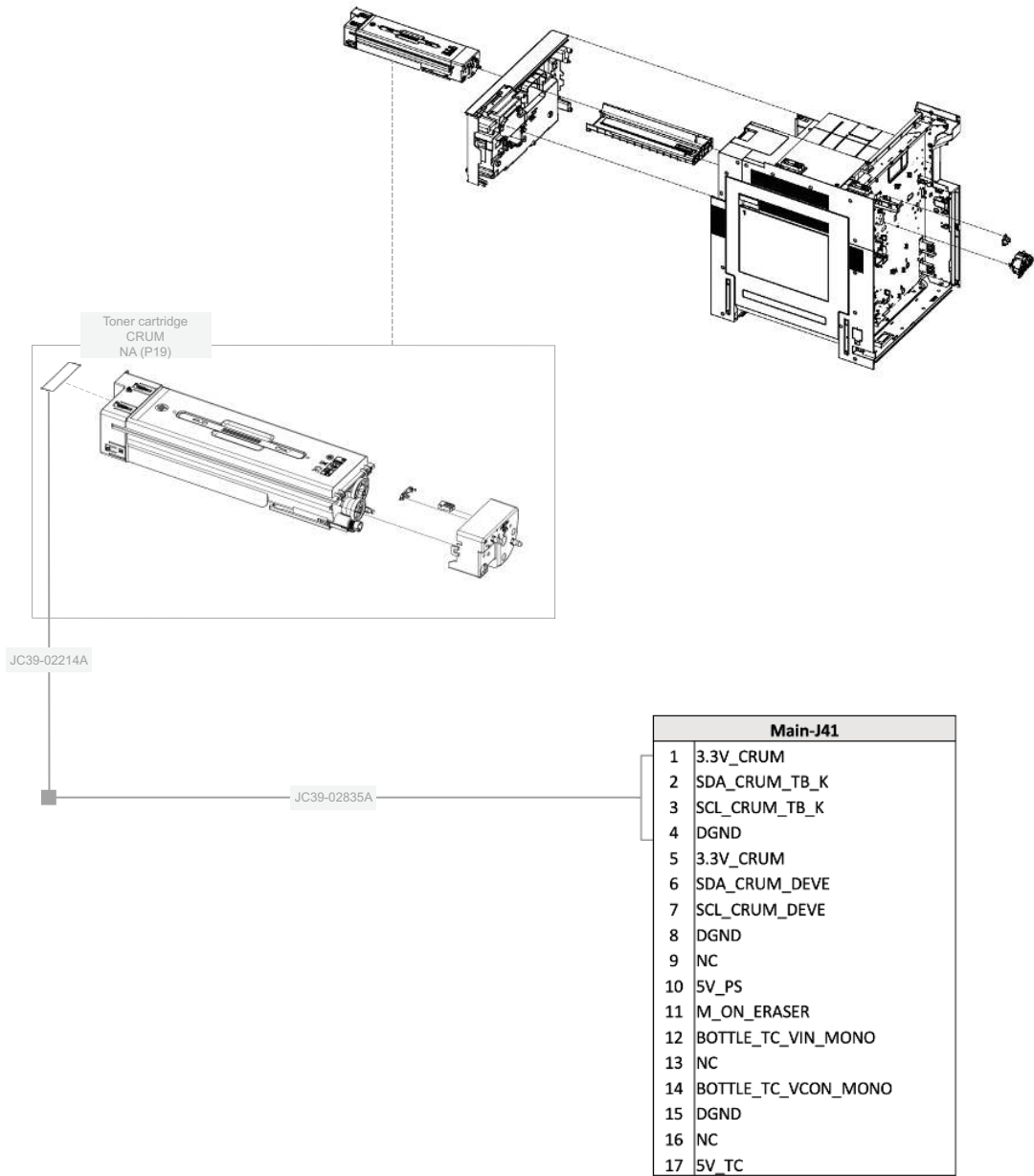


Figure 8-28 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (10 of 16)

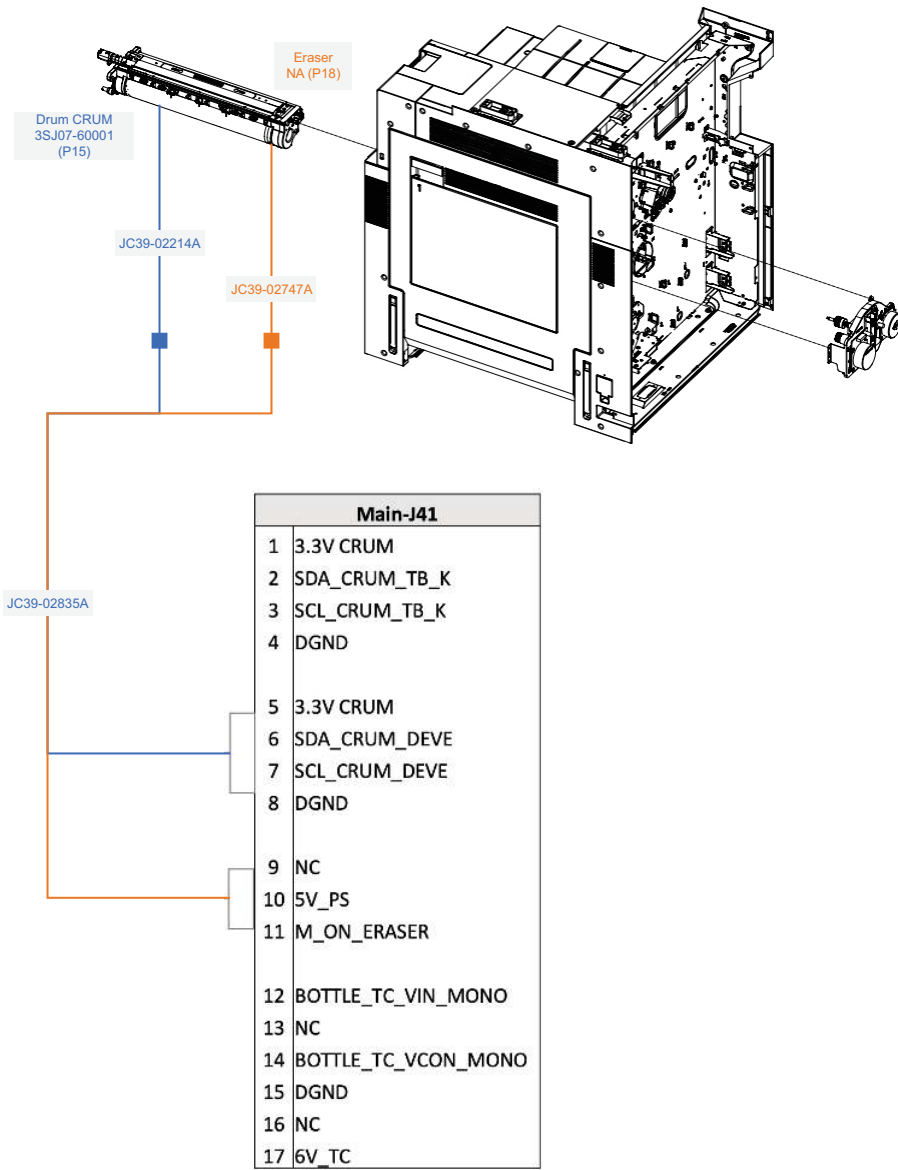


Figure 8-29 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (11 of 16)

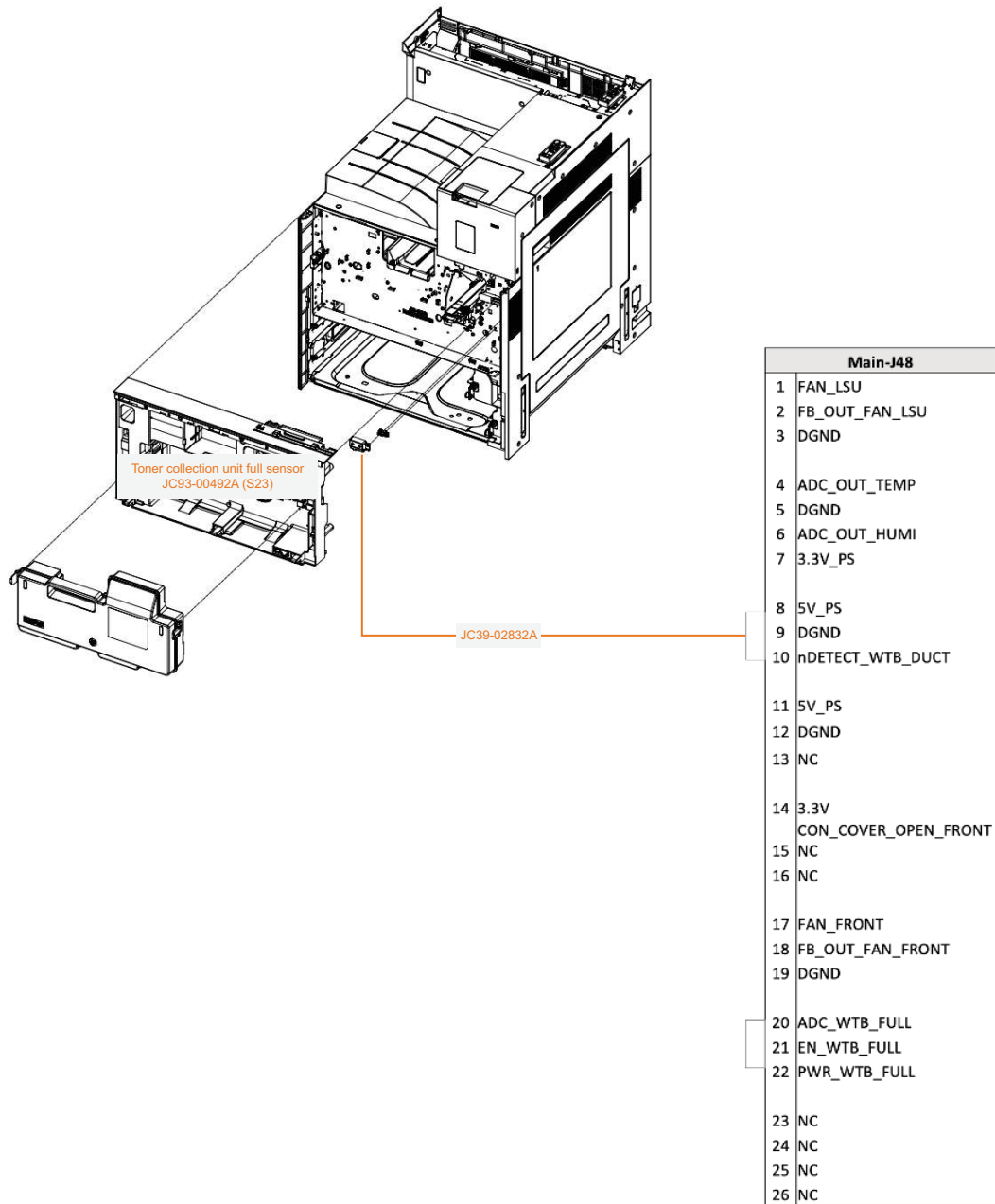


Figure 8-30 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (12 of 16)

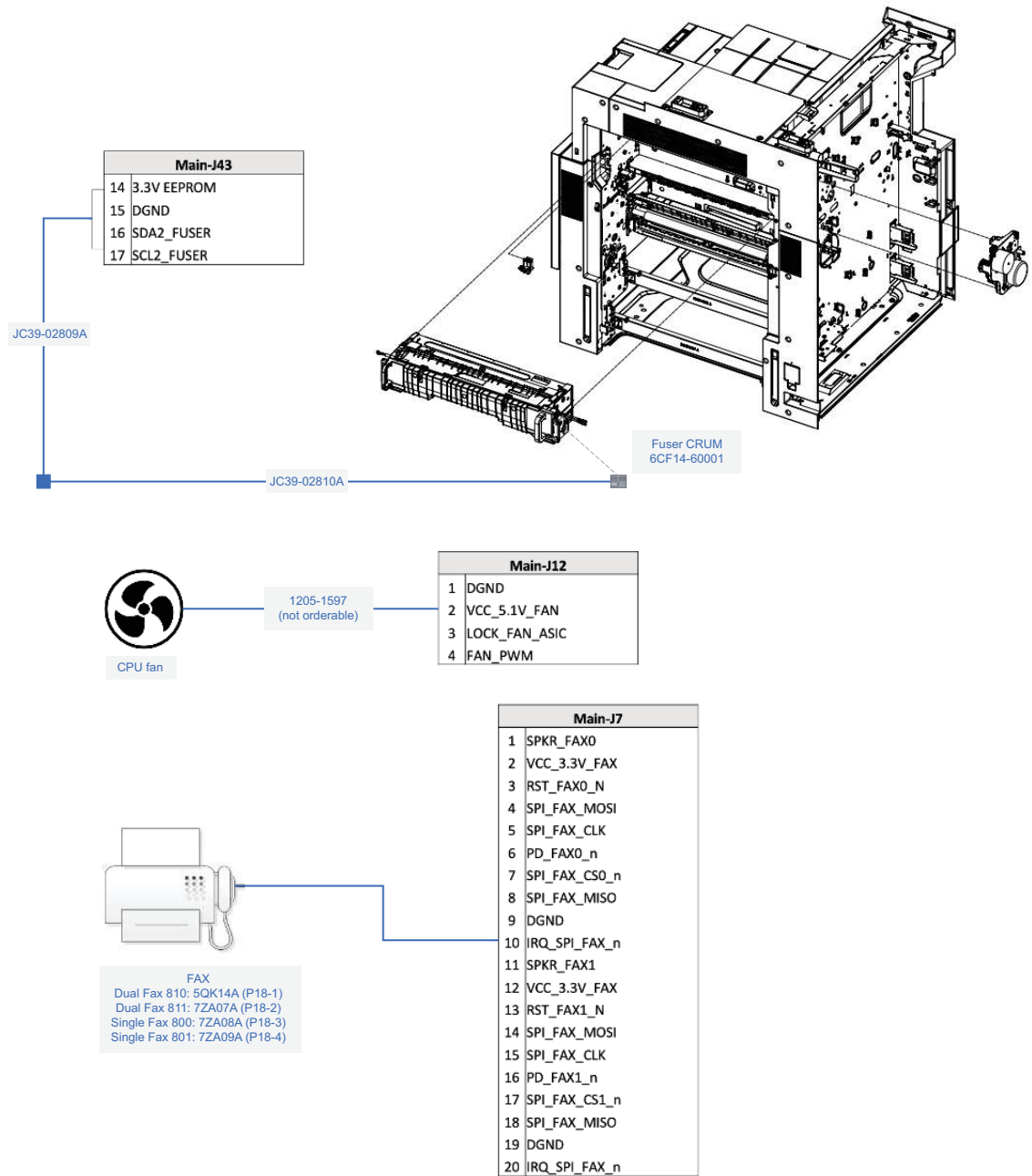


Figure 8-31 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (13 of 16)

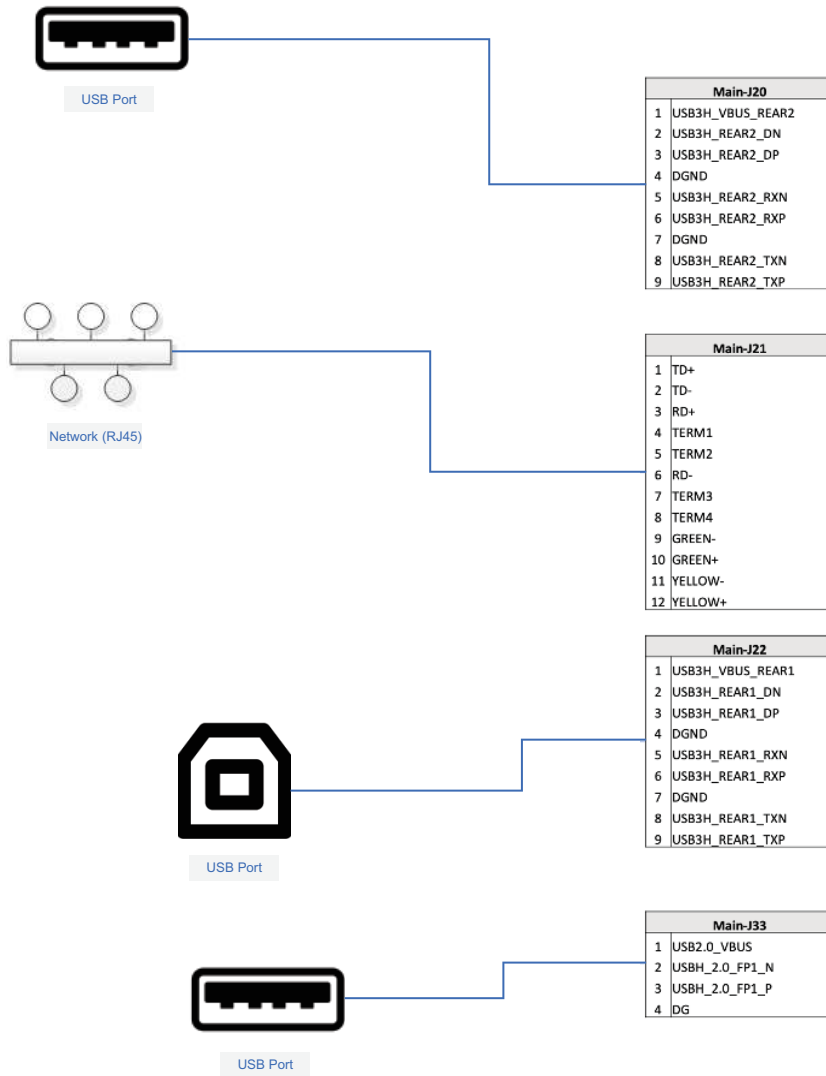


Figure 8-32 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (14 of 16)

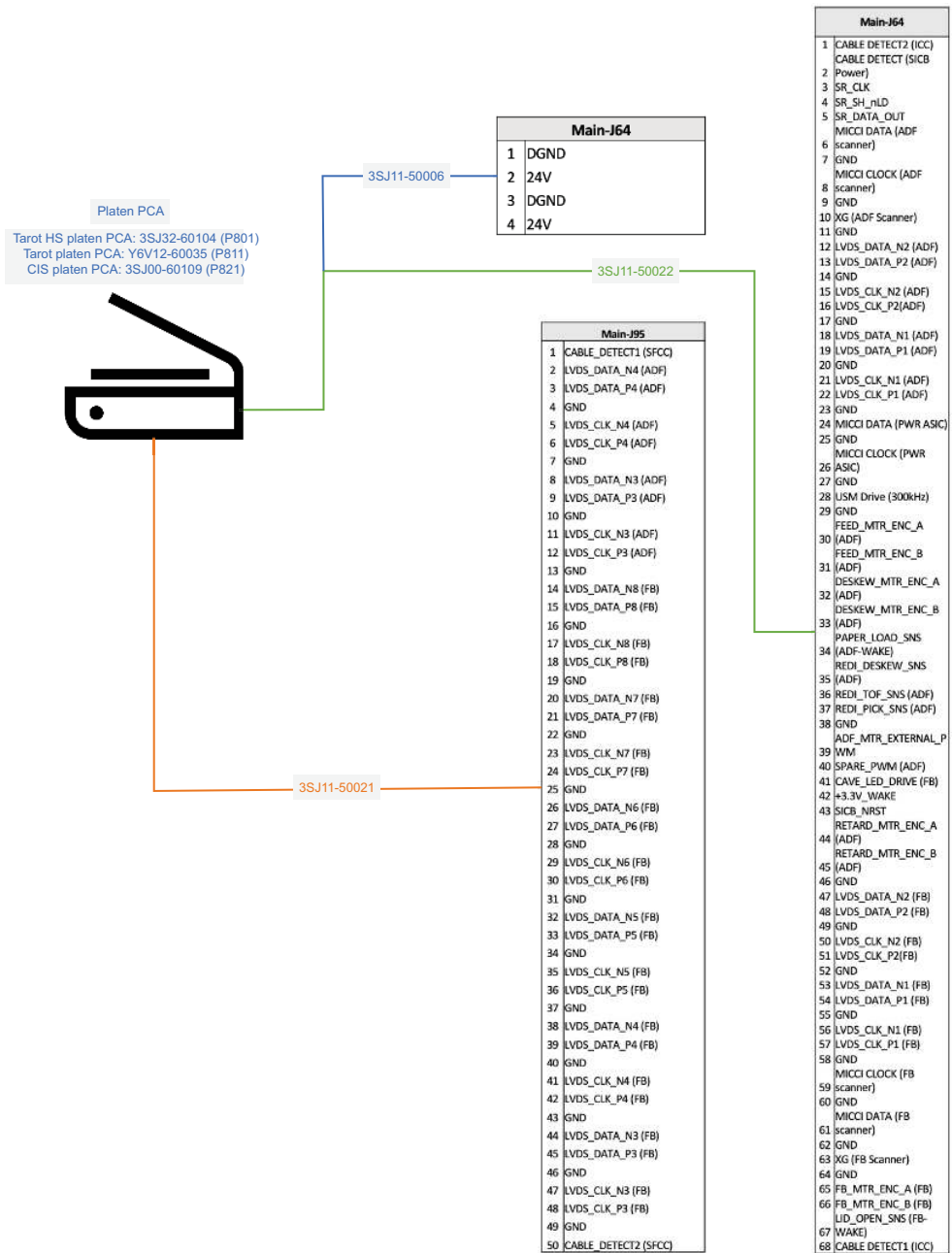


Figure 8-33 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (15 of 16)

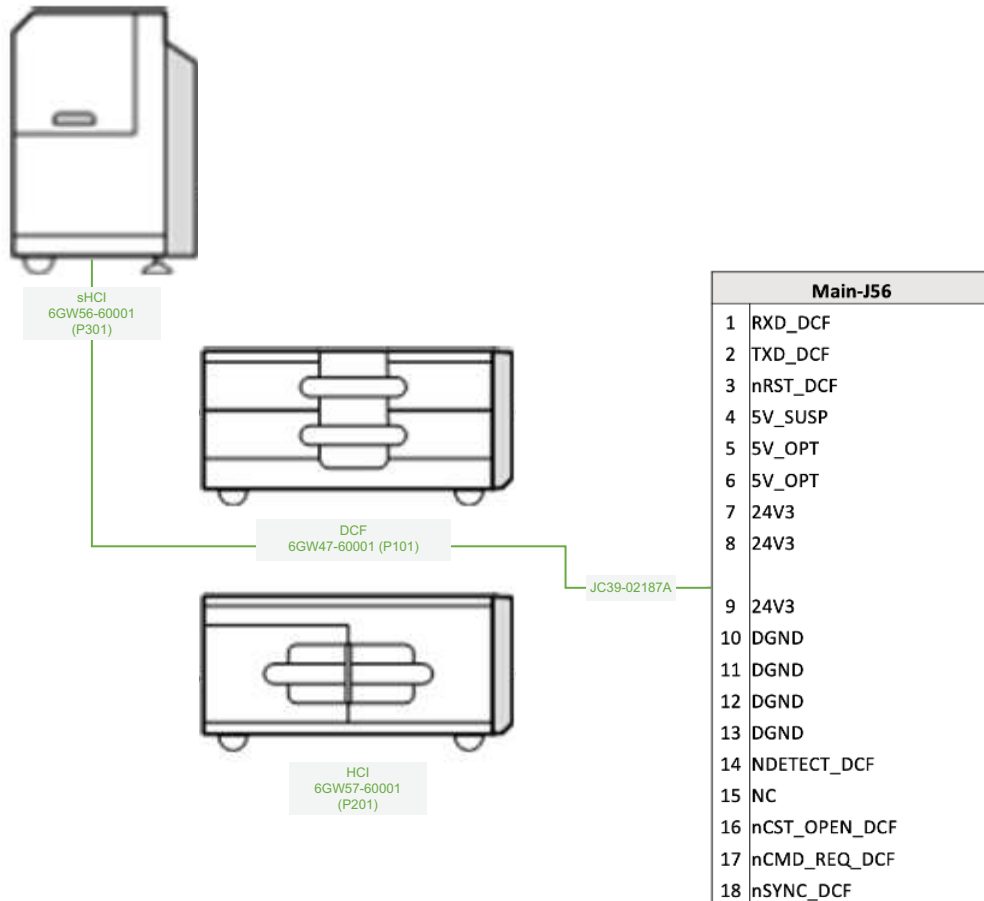
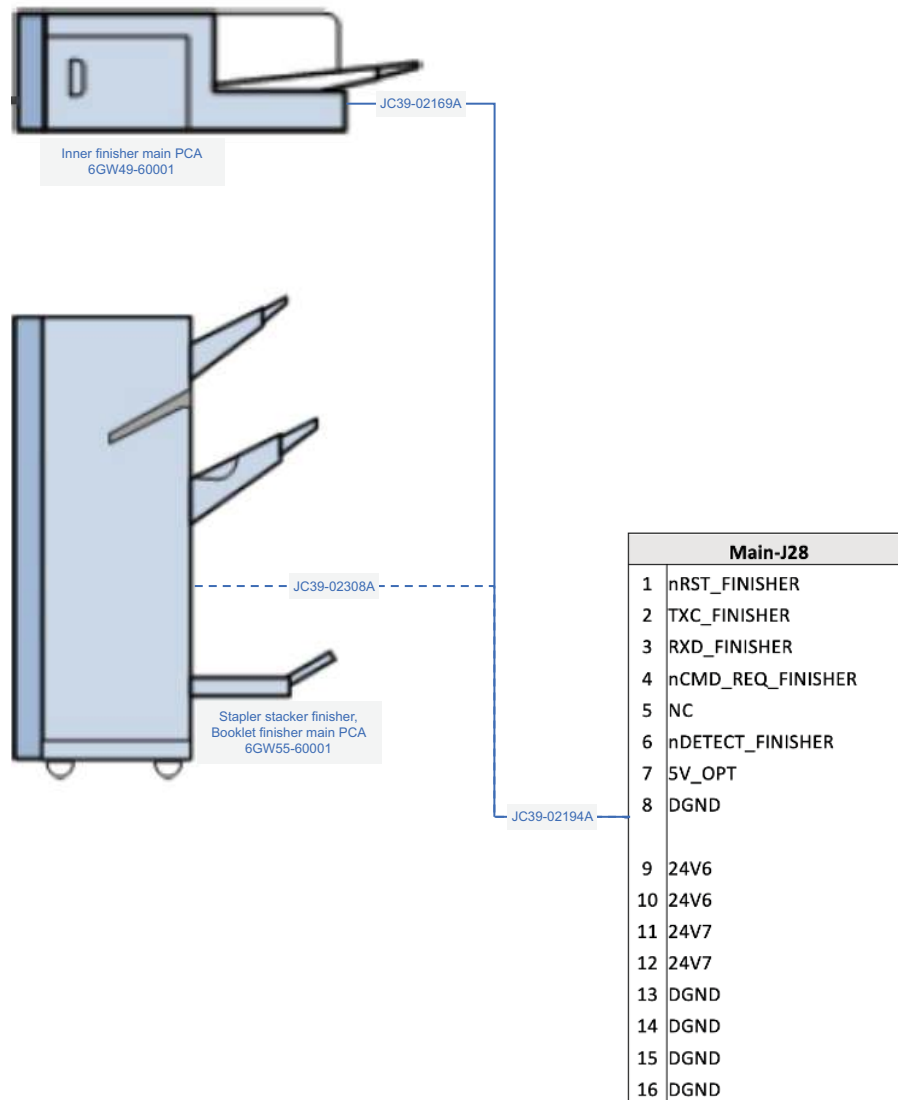


Figure 8-34 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (16 of 16)



Input devices

Learn about input devices for electrical mechanical relationships.

EMR diagrams: Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF)

Learn about the DCF electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-35 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram DCF (1 of 4)

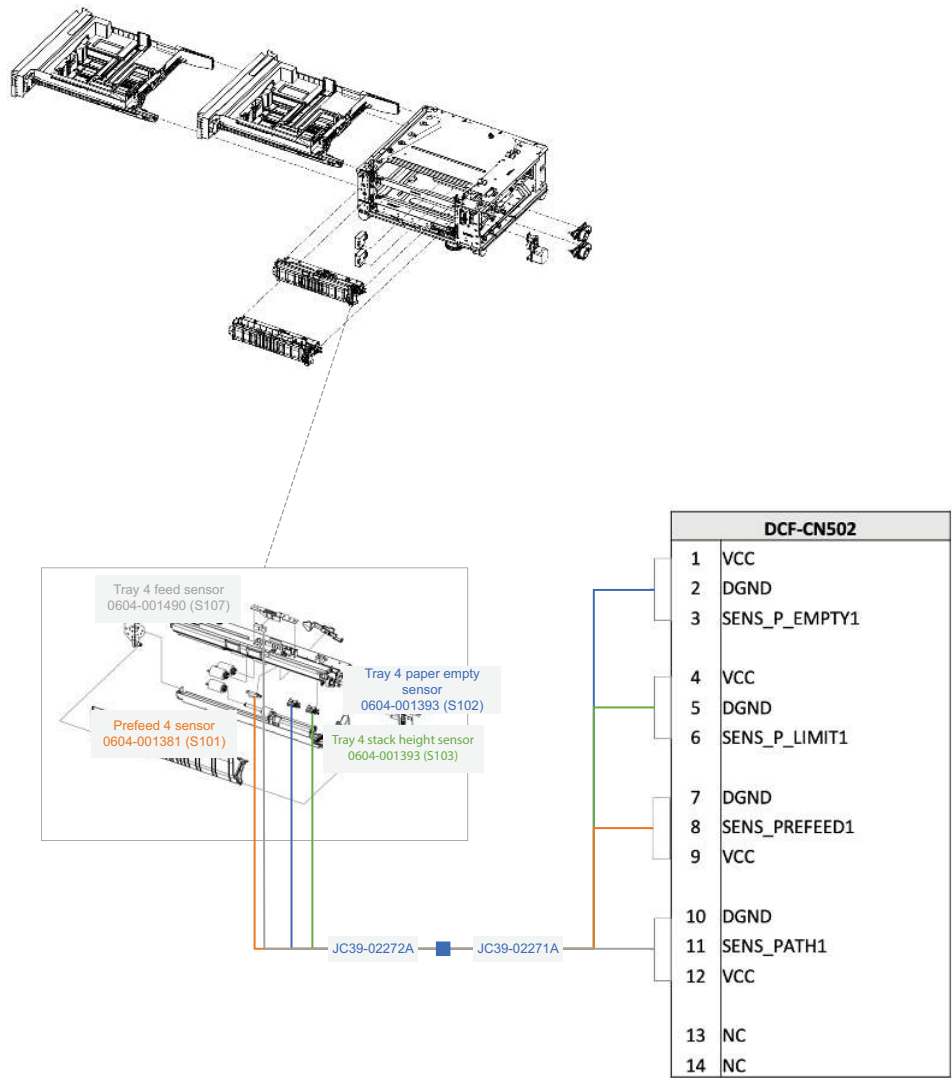


Figure 8-36 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram DCF (2 of 4)

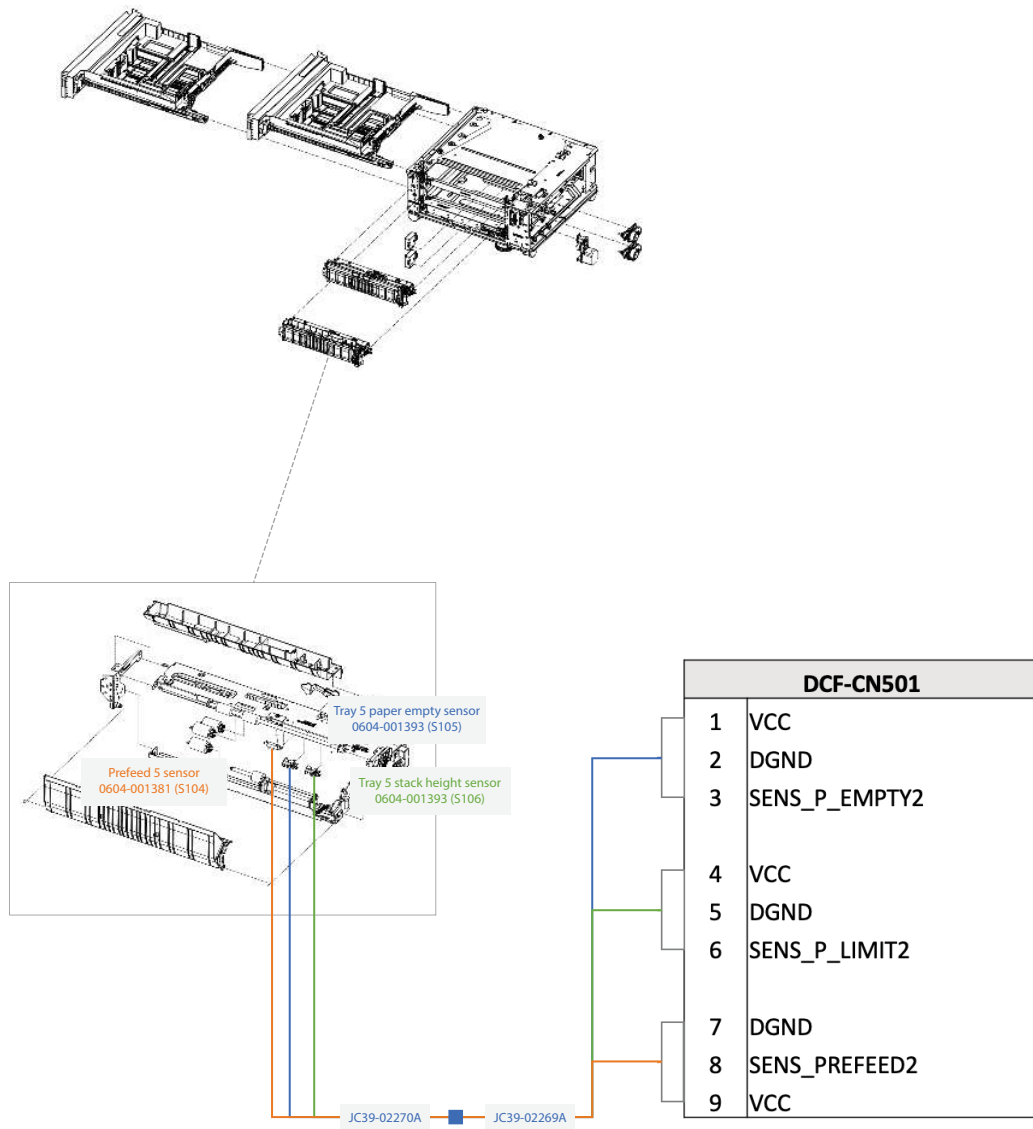


Figure 8-37 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram DCF (3 of 4)

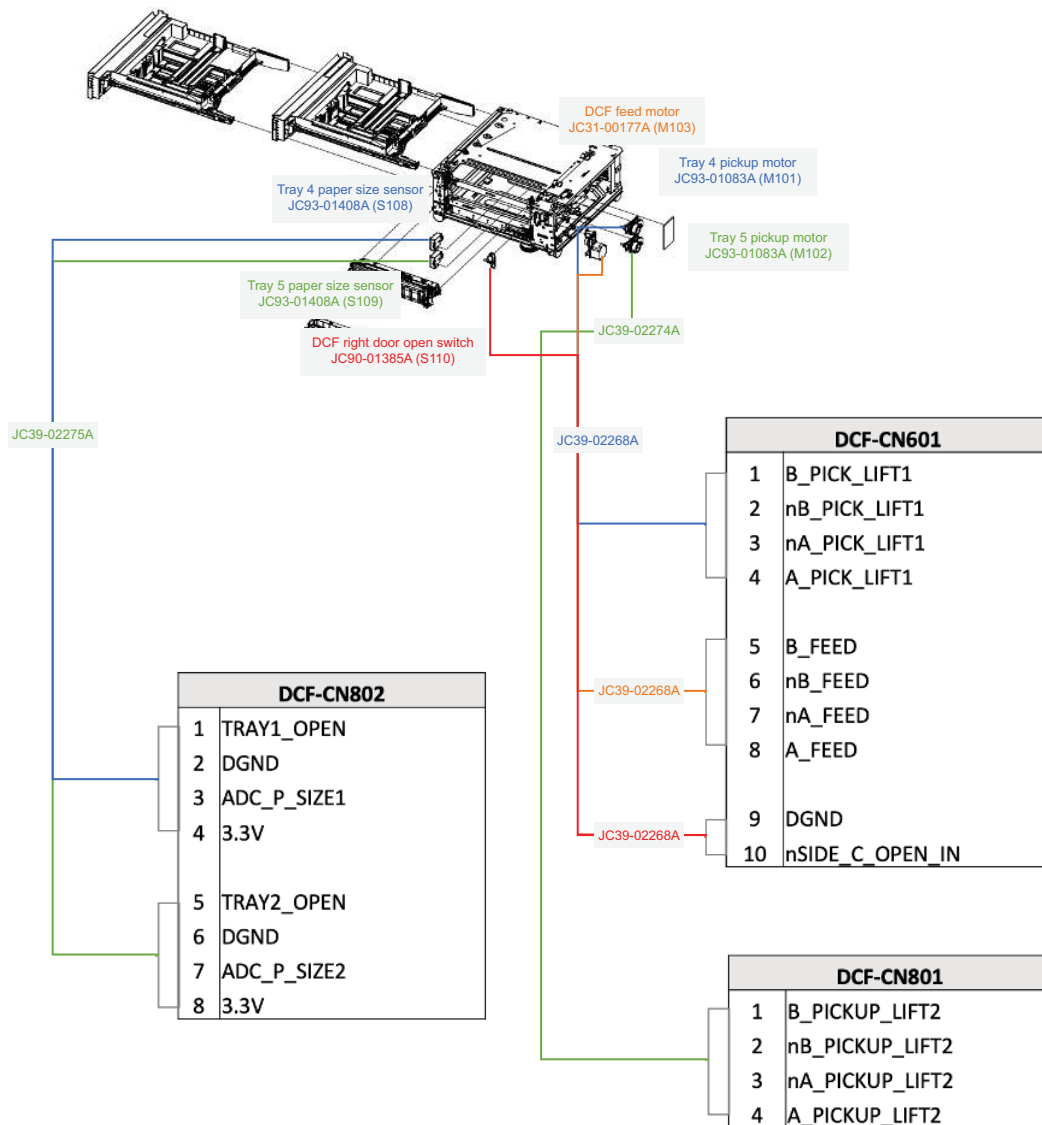
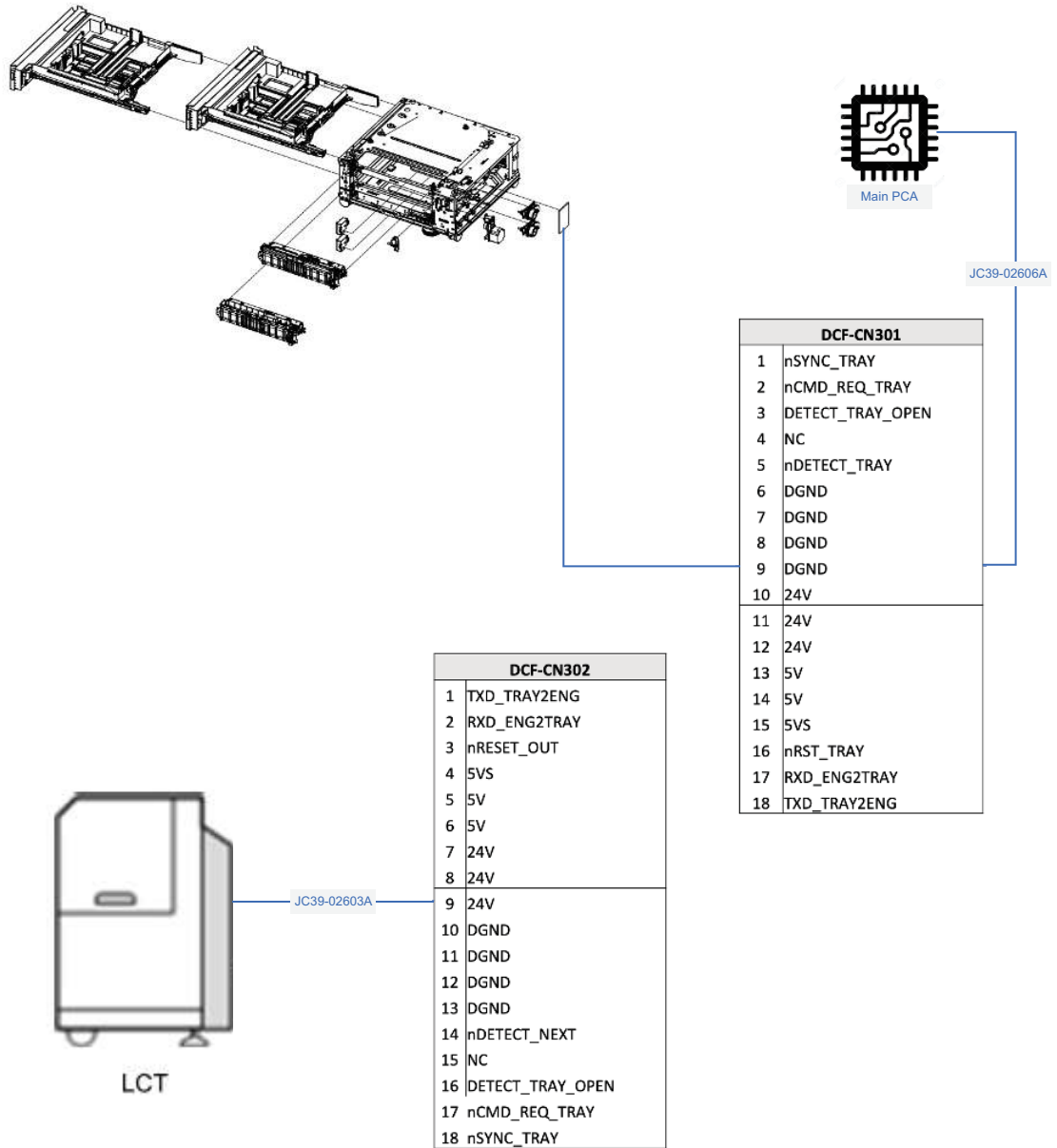


Figure 8-38 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram DCF (4 of 4)



EMR diagrams: High Capacity Input Tray (HCI)

Learn about the HCI electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-39 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram HCI (1 of 5)

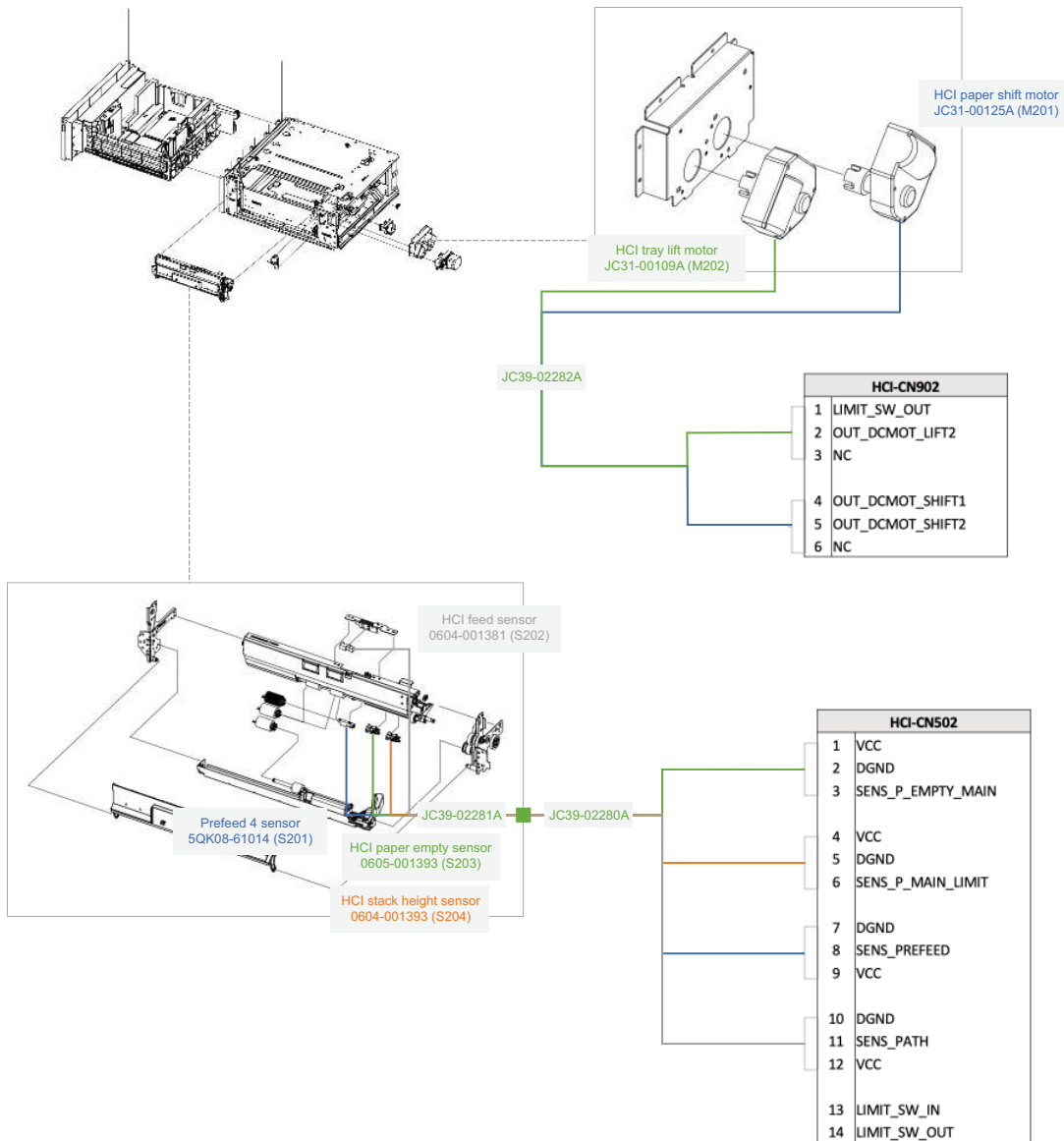


Figure 8-40 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram HCI (2 of 5)

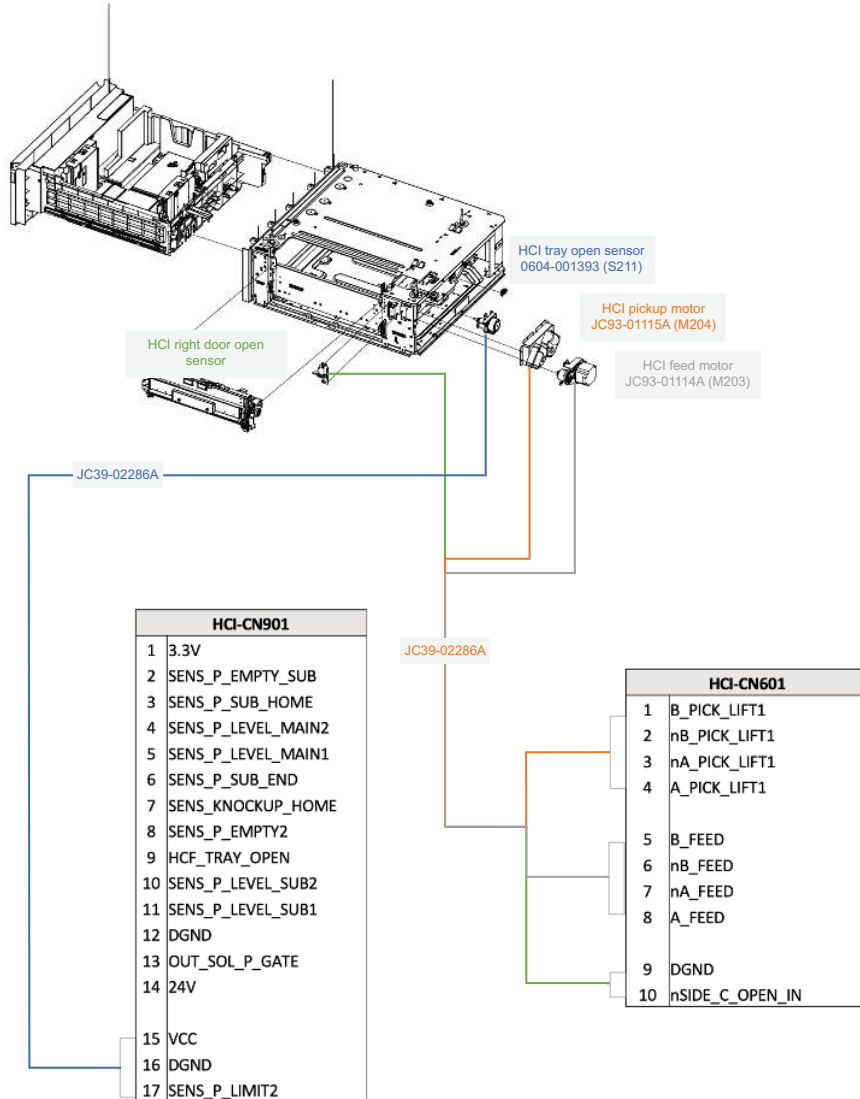


Figure 8-41 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram HCI (3 of 5)

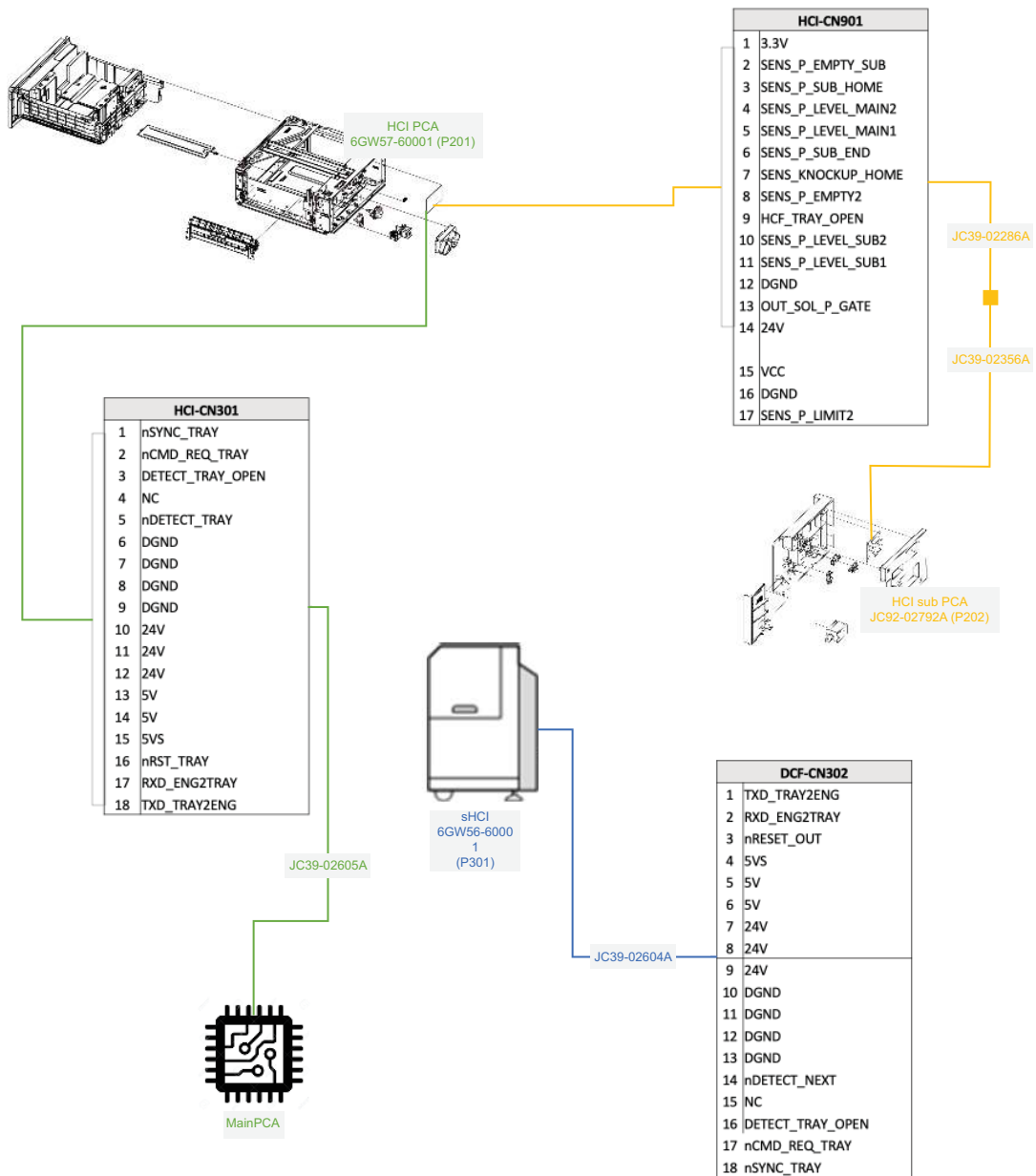


Figure 8-42 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram HCl (4 of 5)

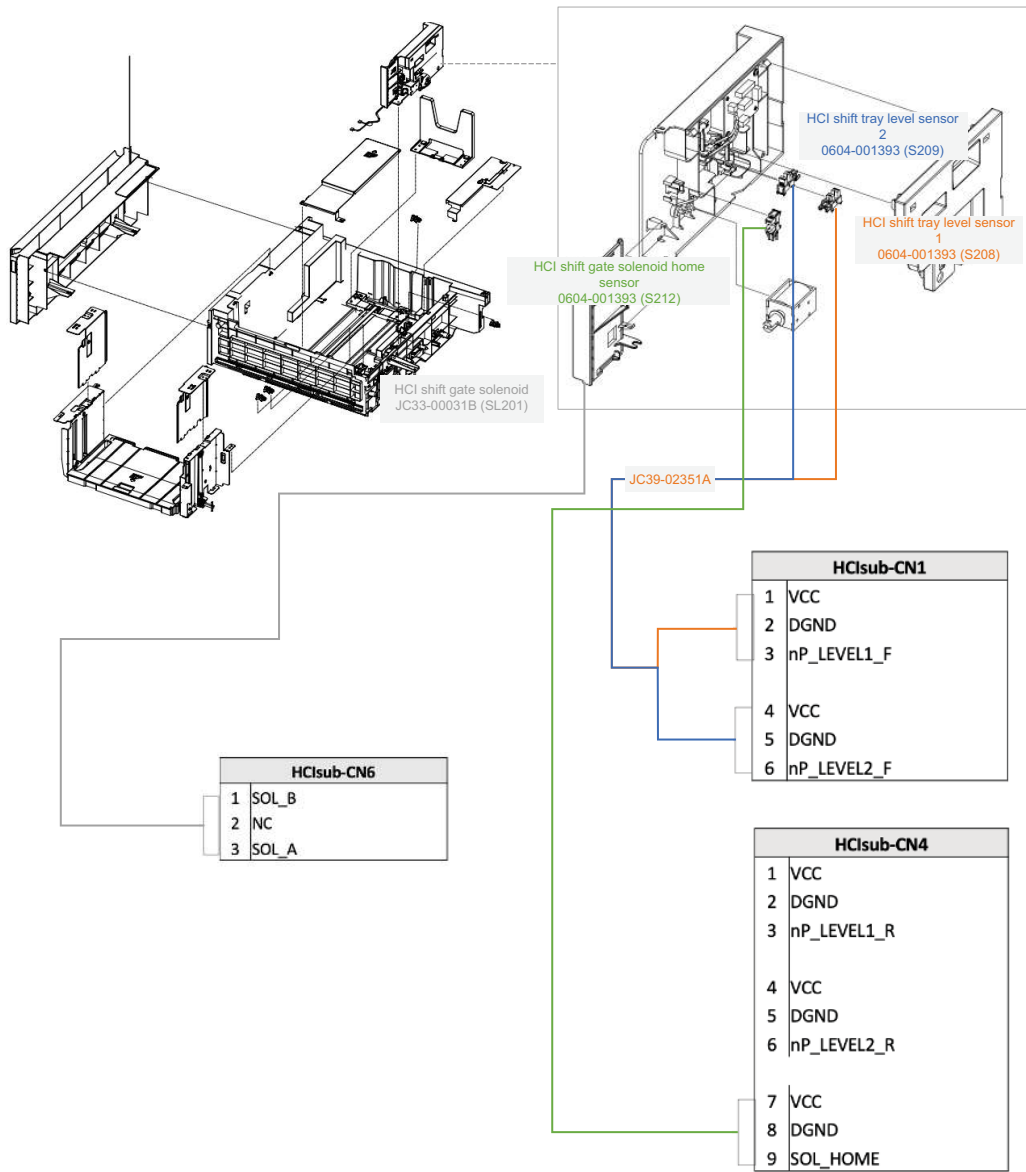
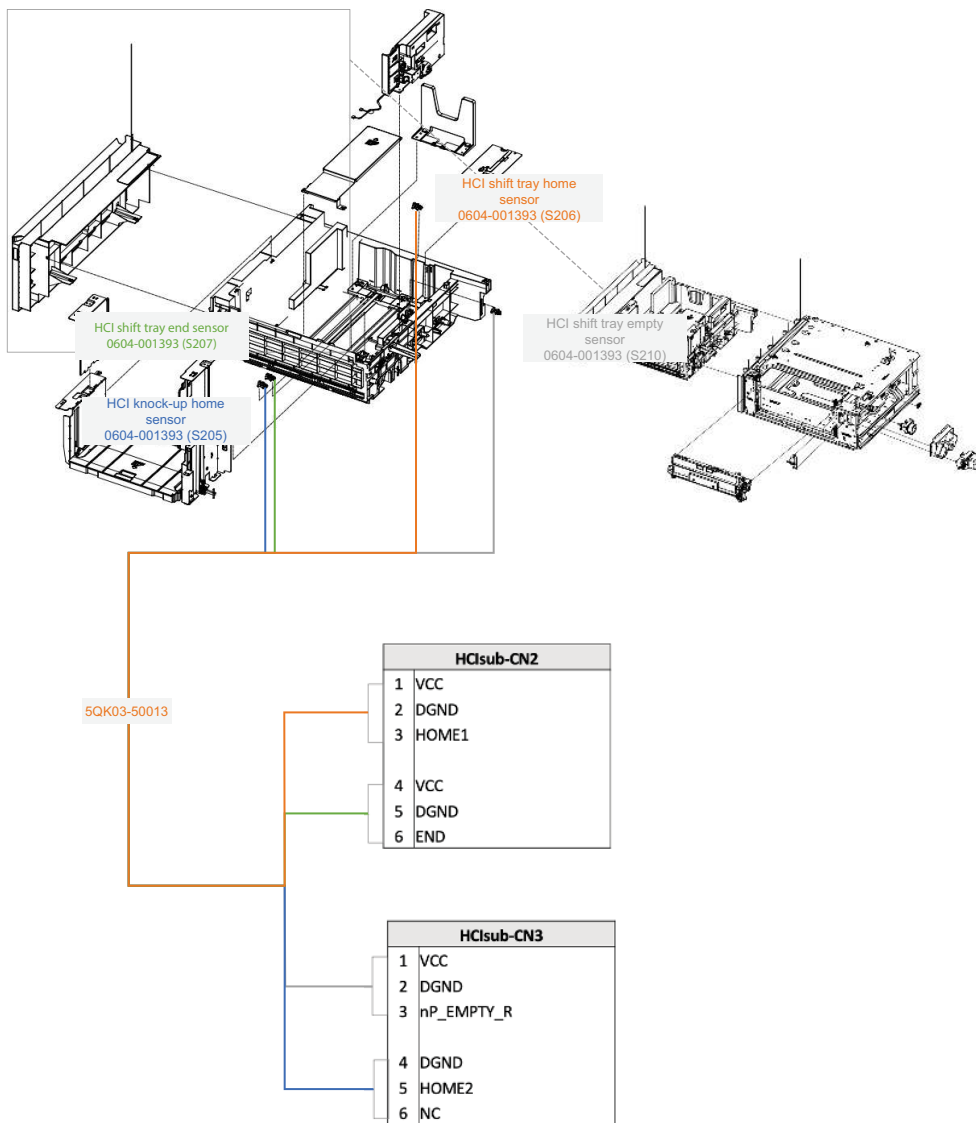


Figure 8-43 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram HCI (5 of 5)



EMR diagrams: Side High Capacity Input device (sHCI)

Learn about the sHCI electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-44 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram sHCI (1 of 3)

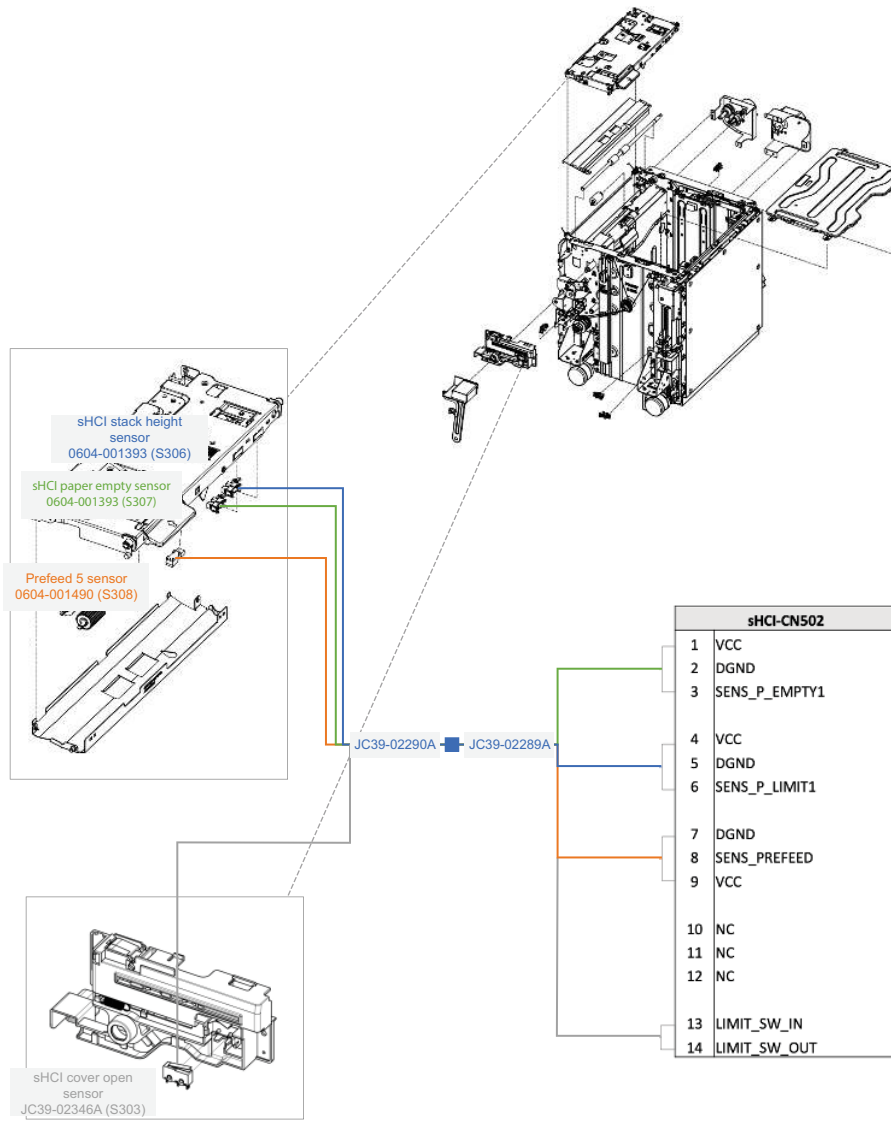


Figure 8-45 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram sHCI (2 of 3)

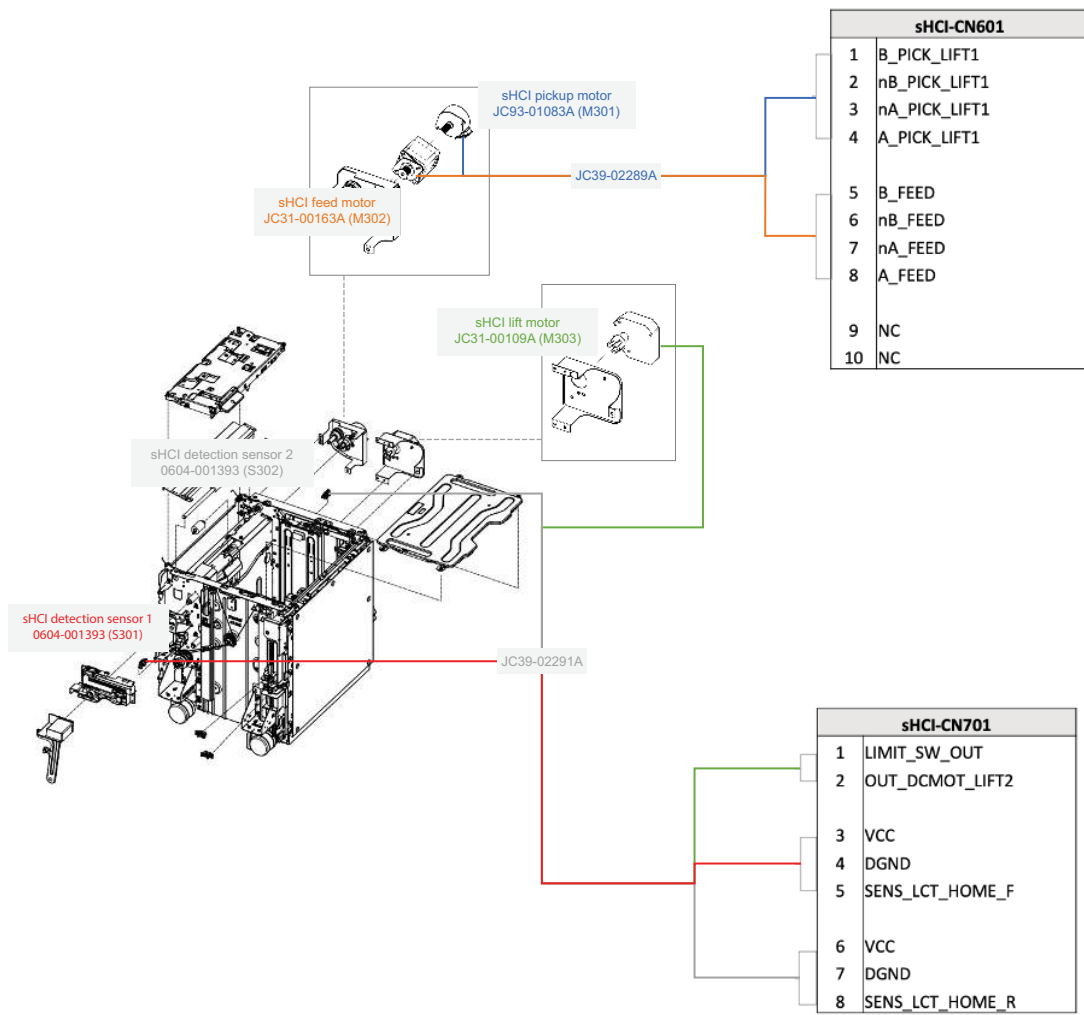
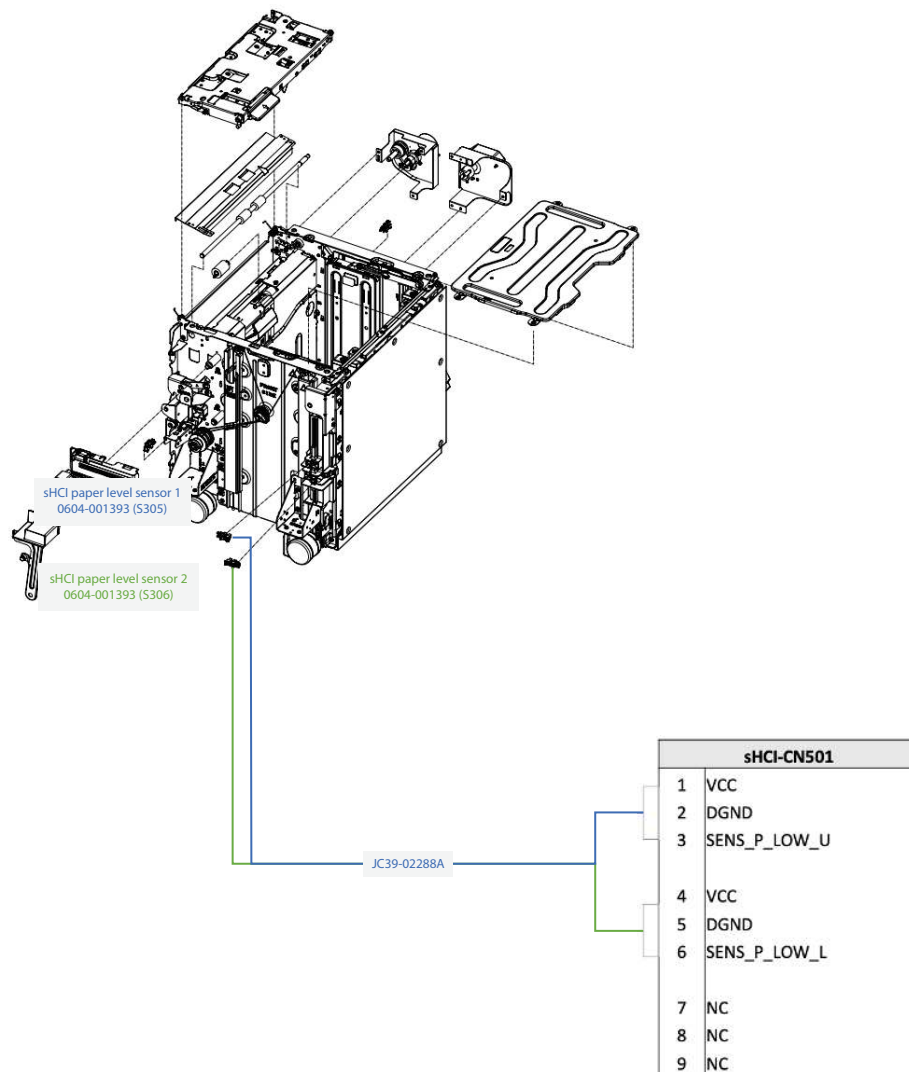


Figure 8-46 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram sHCI (3 of 3)



Output devices

Learn about output devices for electrical mechanical relationships.

EMR diagrams: Inner finisher

Learn about the inner finisher electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-47 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (1 of 10)

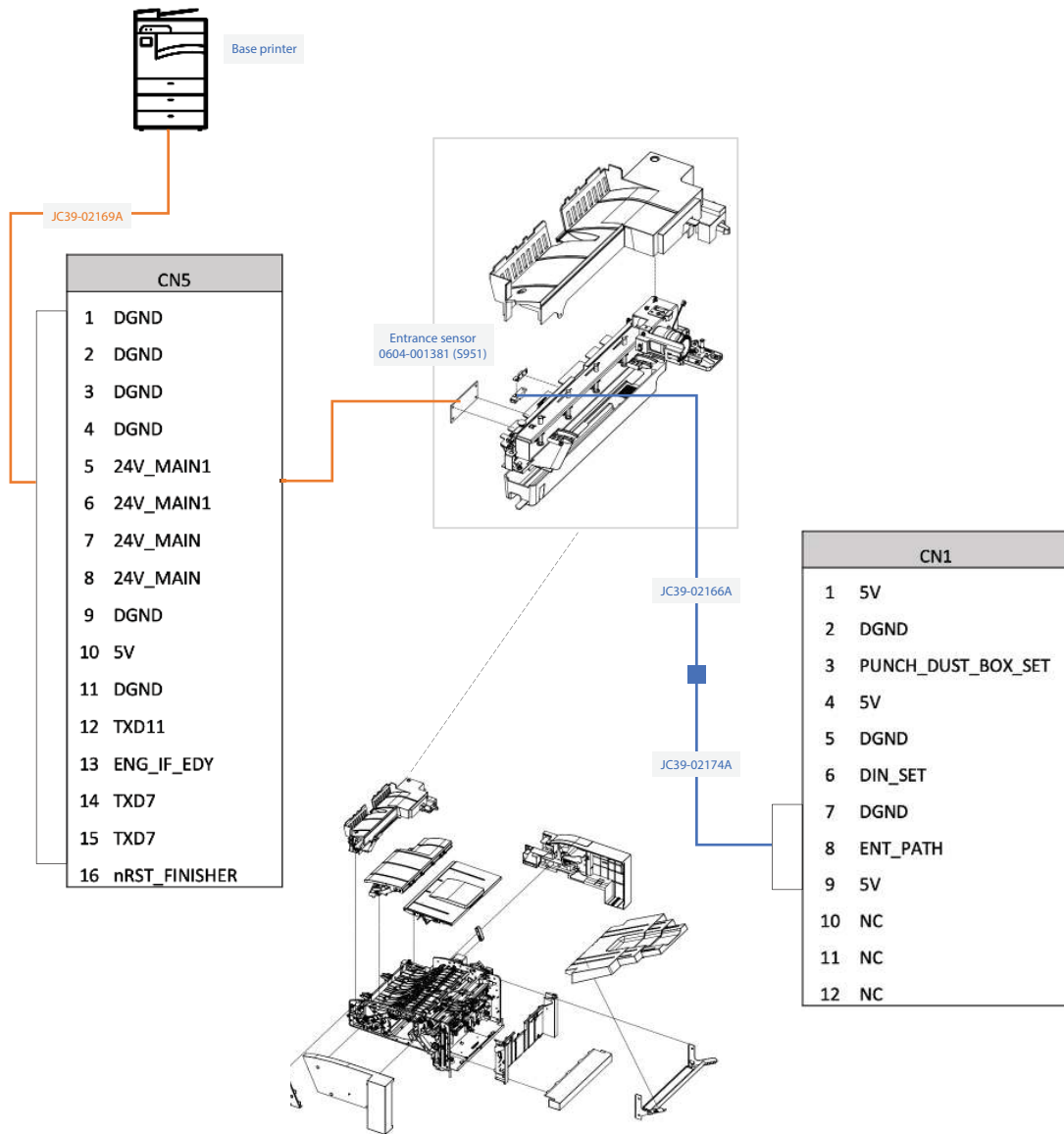


Figure 8-48 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (2 of 10)

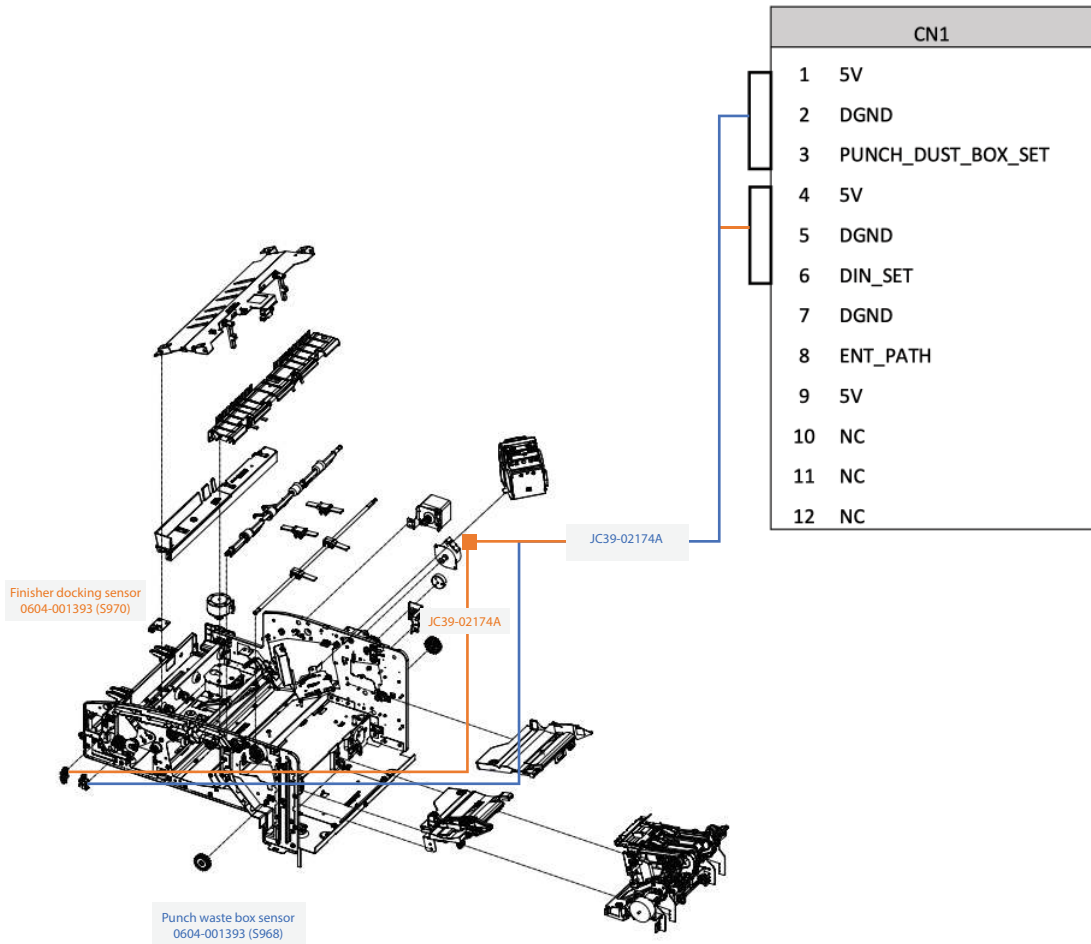


Figure 8-49 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (3 of 10)

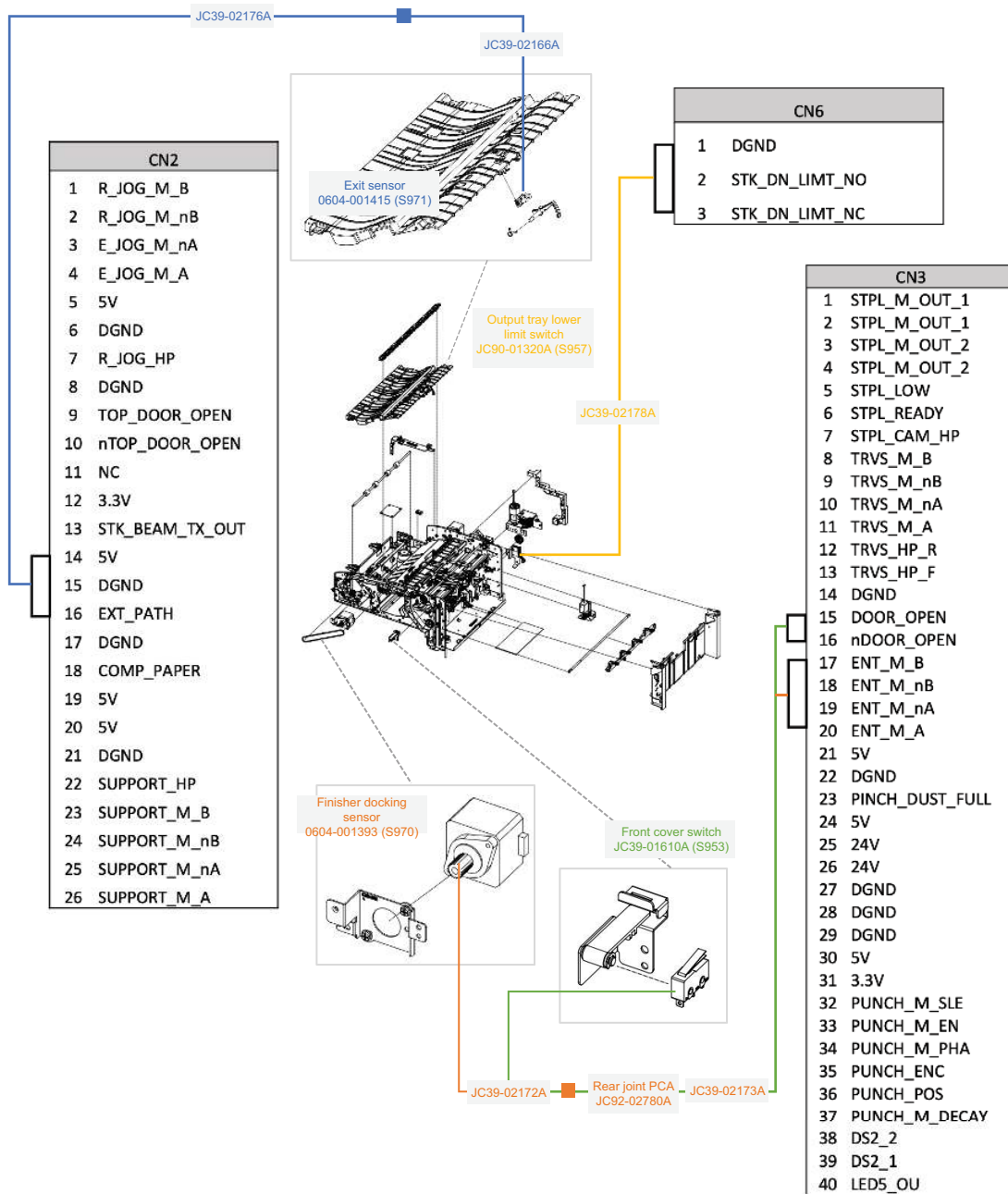


Figure 8-50 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (4 of 10)

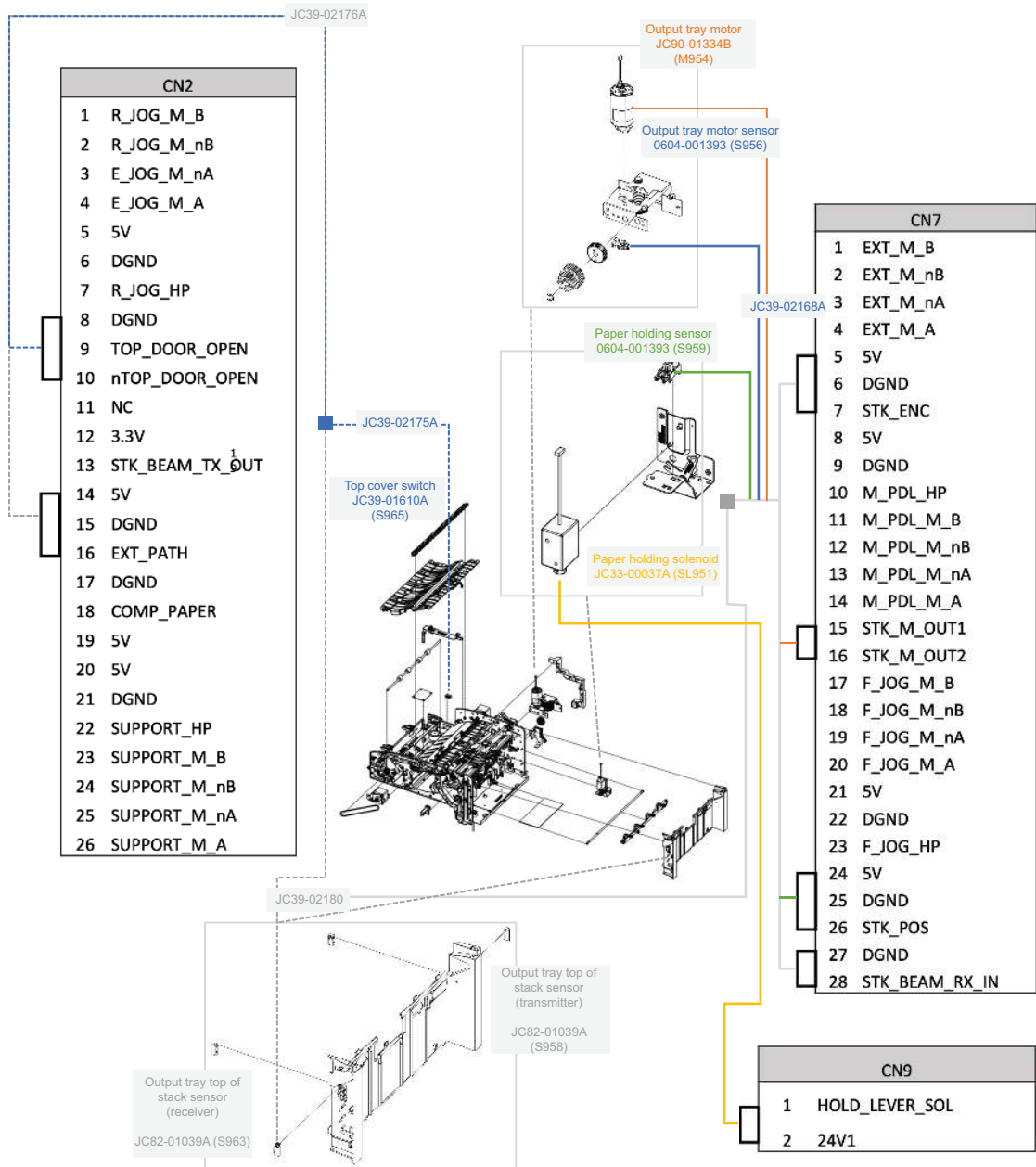


Figure 8-51 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (5 of 10)

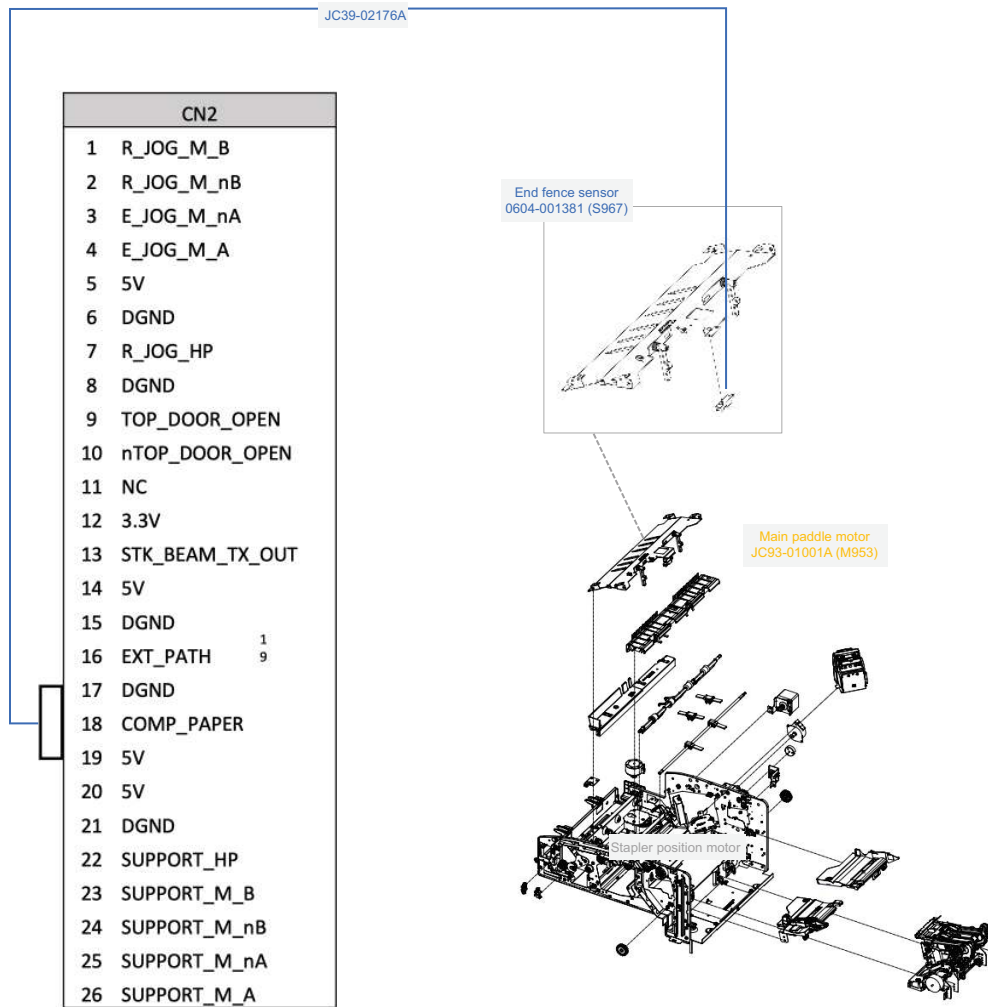


Figure 8-52 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (6 of 10)

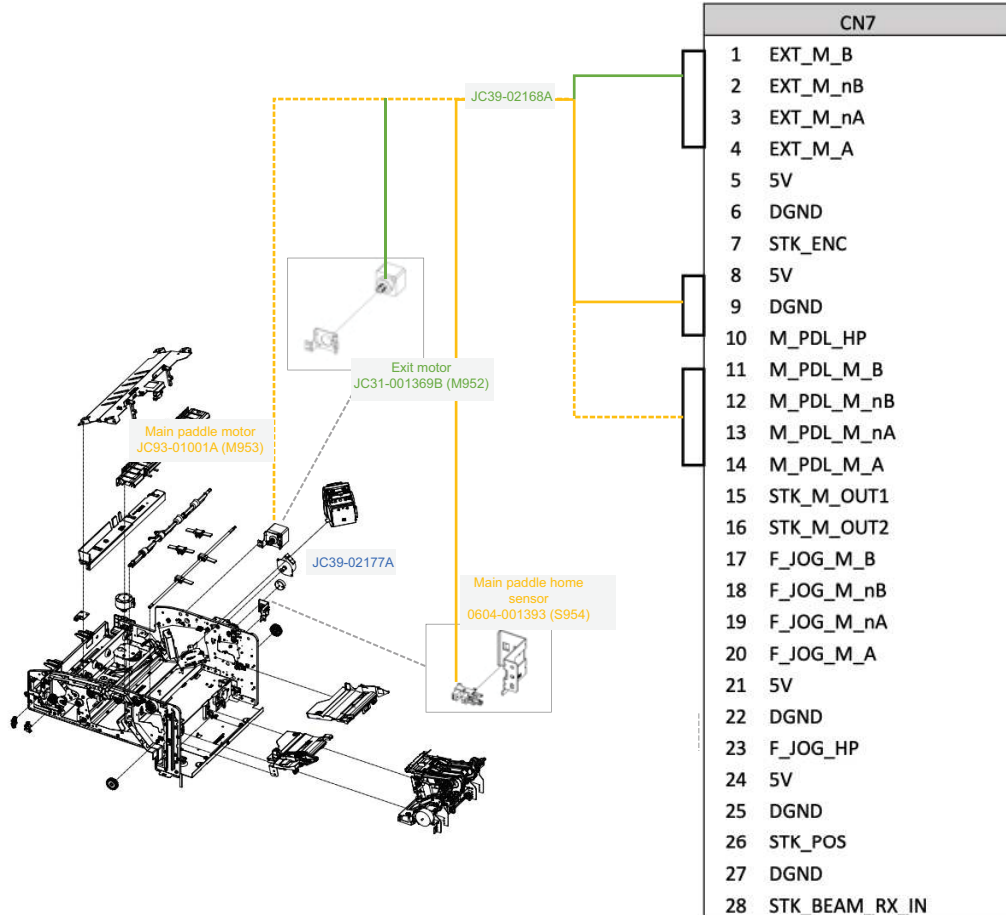


Figure 8-53 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (7 of 10)

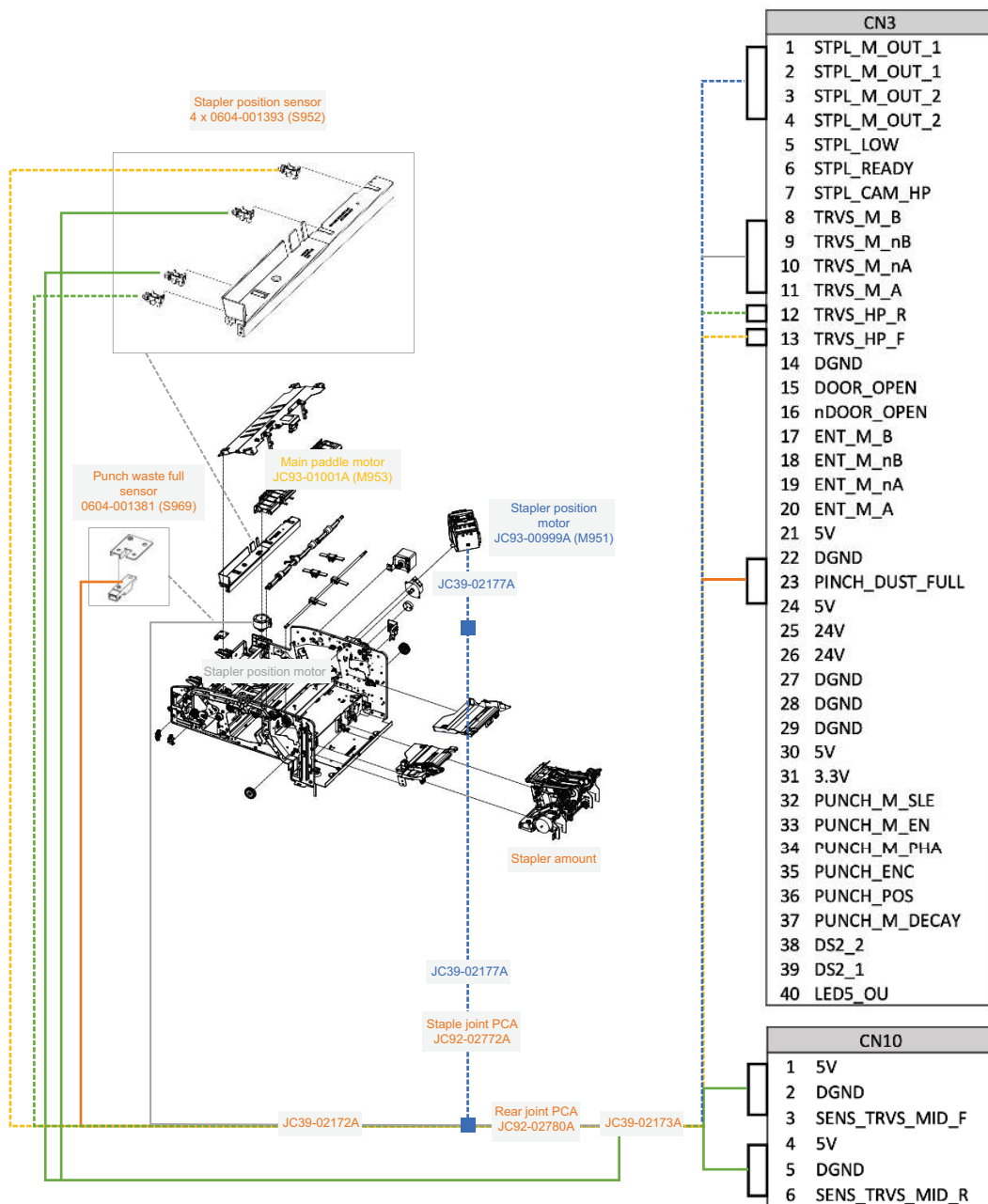


Figure 8-54 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (8 of 10)

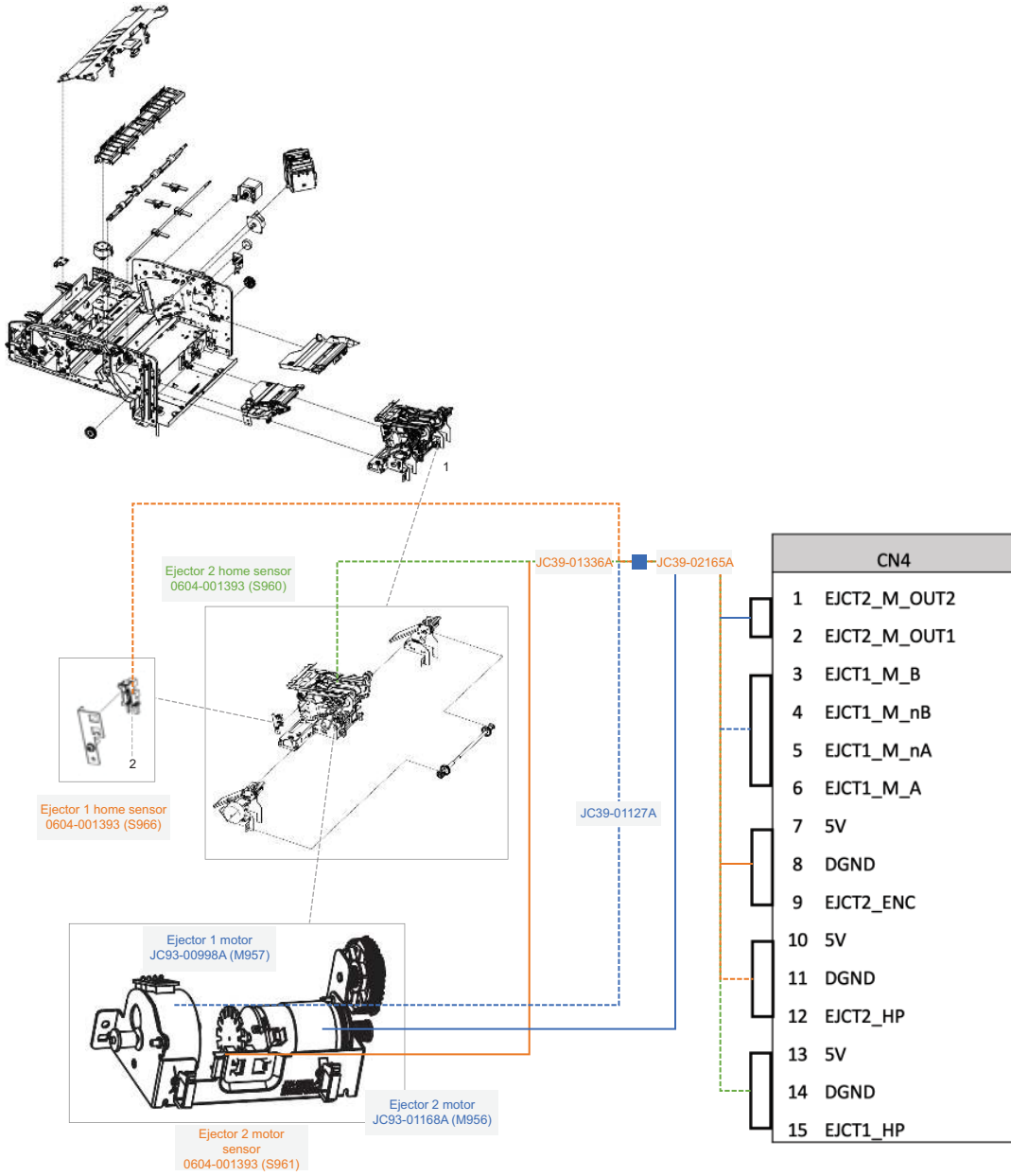


Figure 8-55 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (9 of 10)

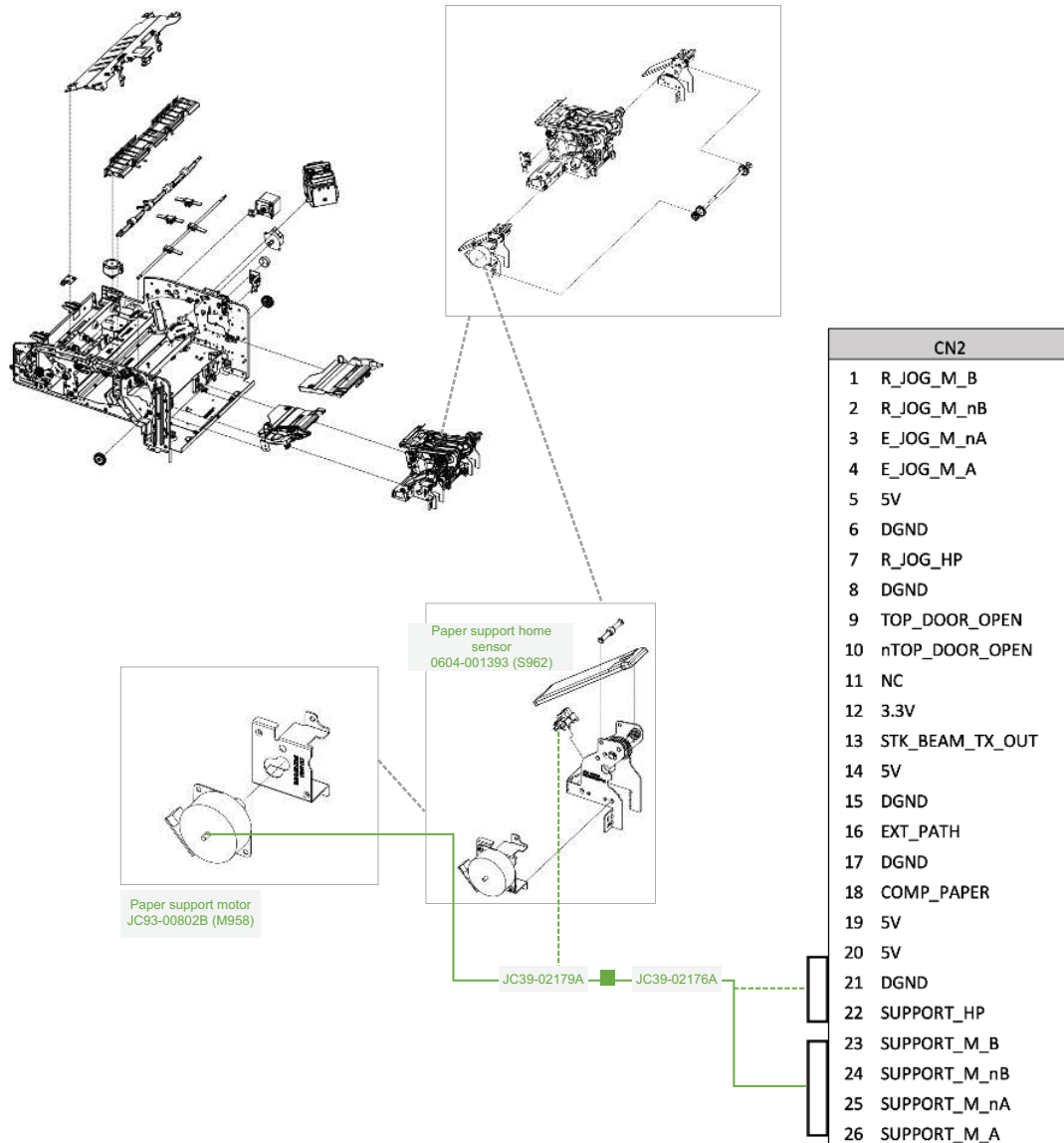
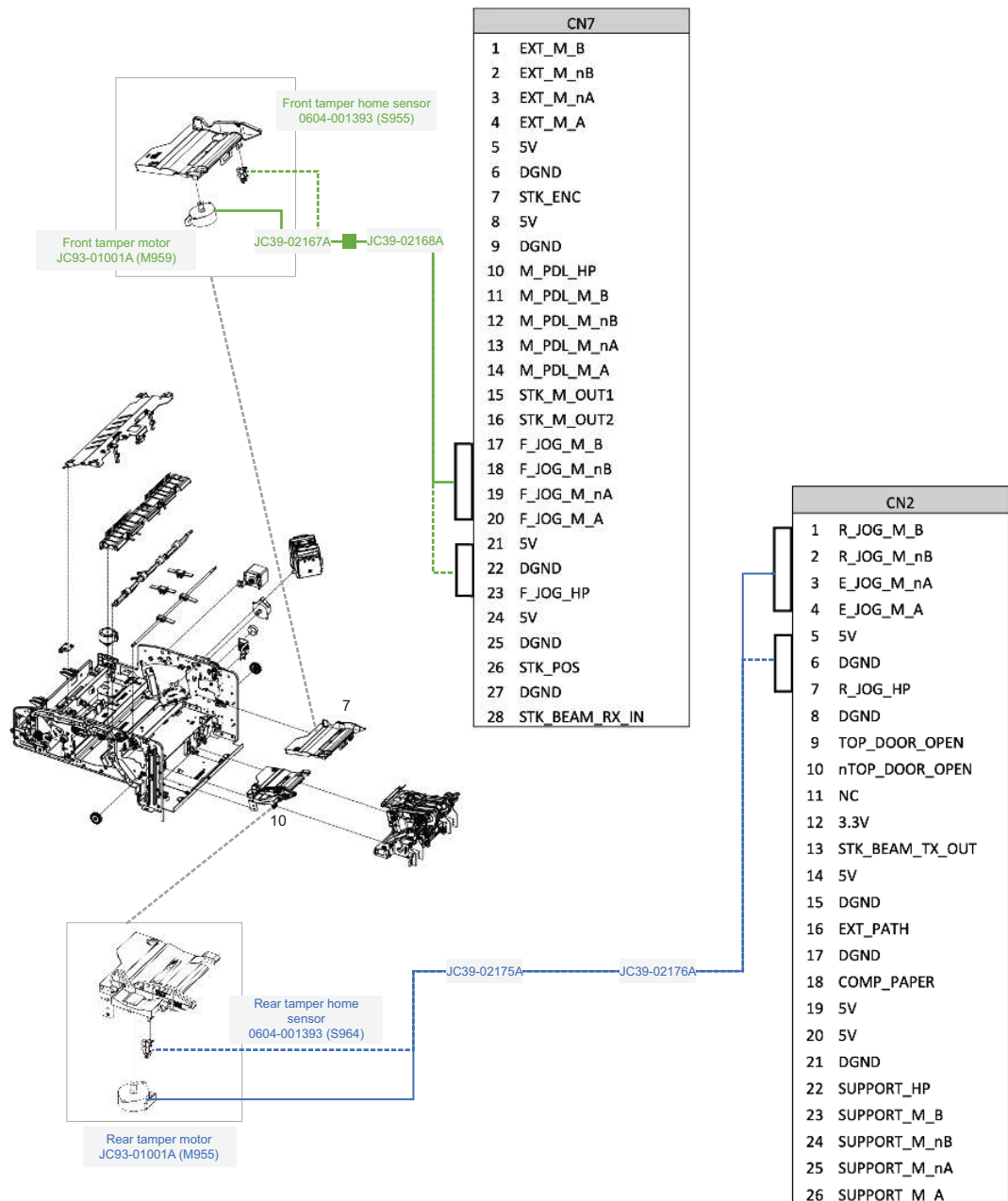


Figure 8-56 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (10 of 10)



EMR diagrams: Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-57 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram bridge unit

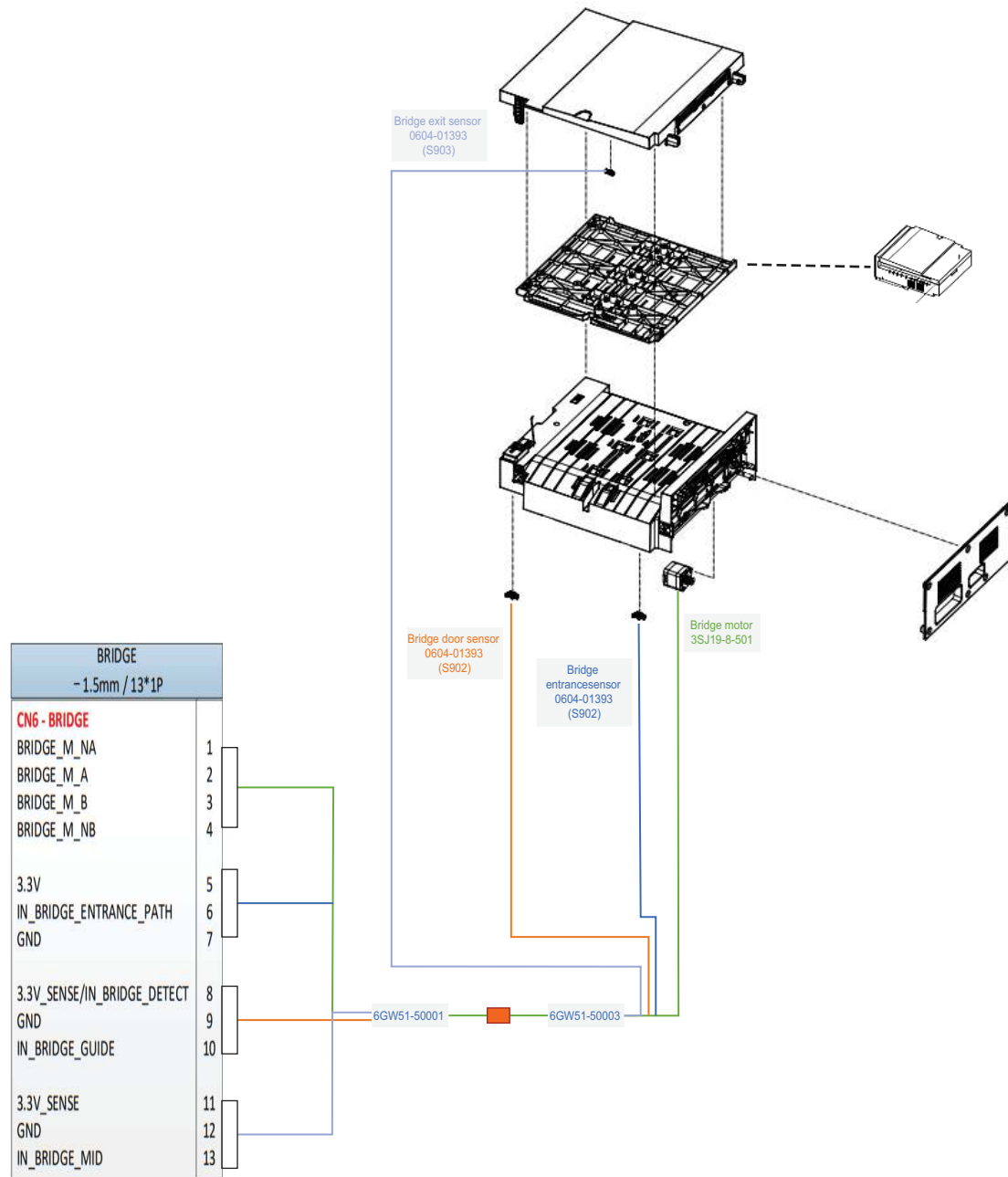


Figure 8-58 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram punch unit

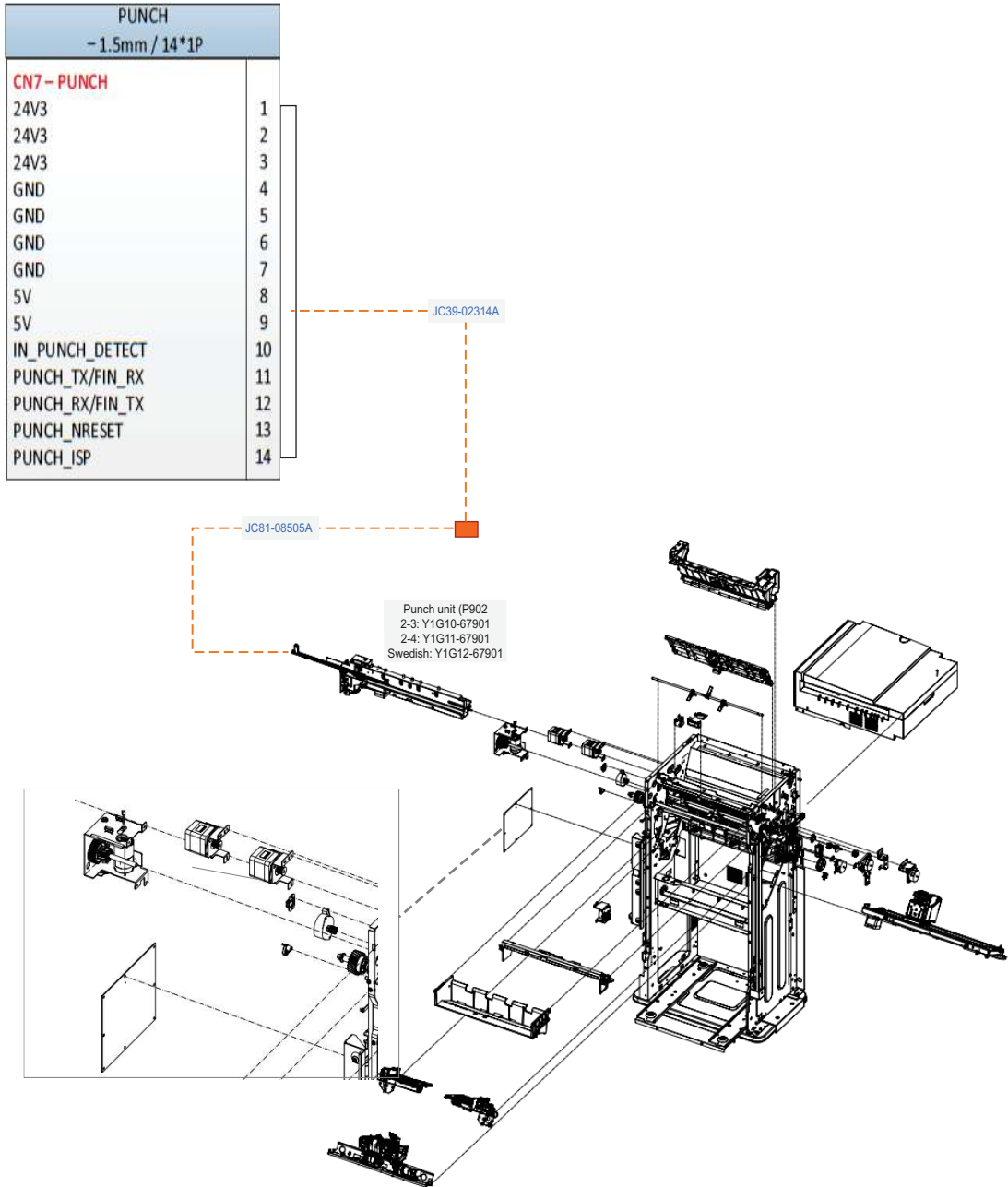


Figure 8-59 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram entrance unit

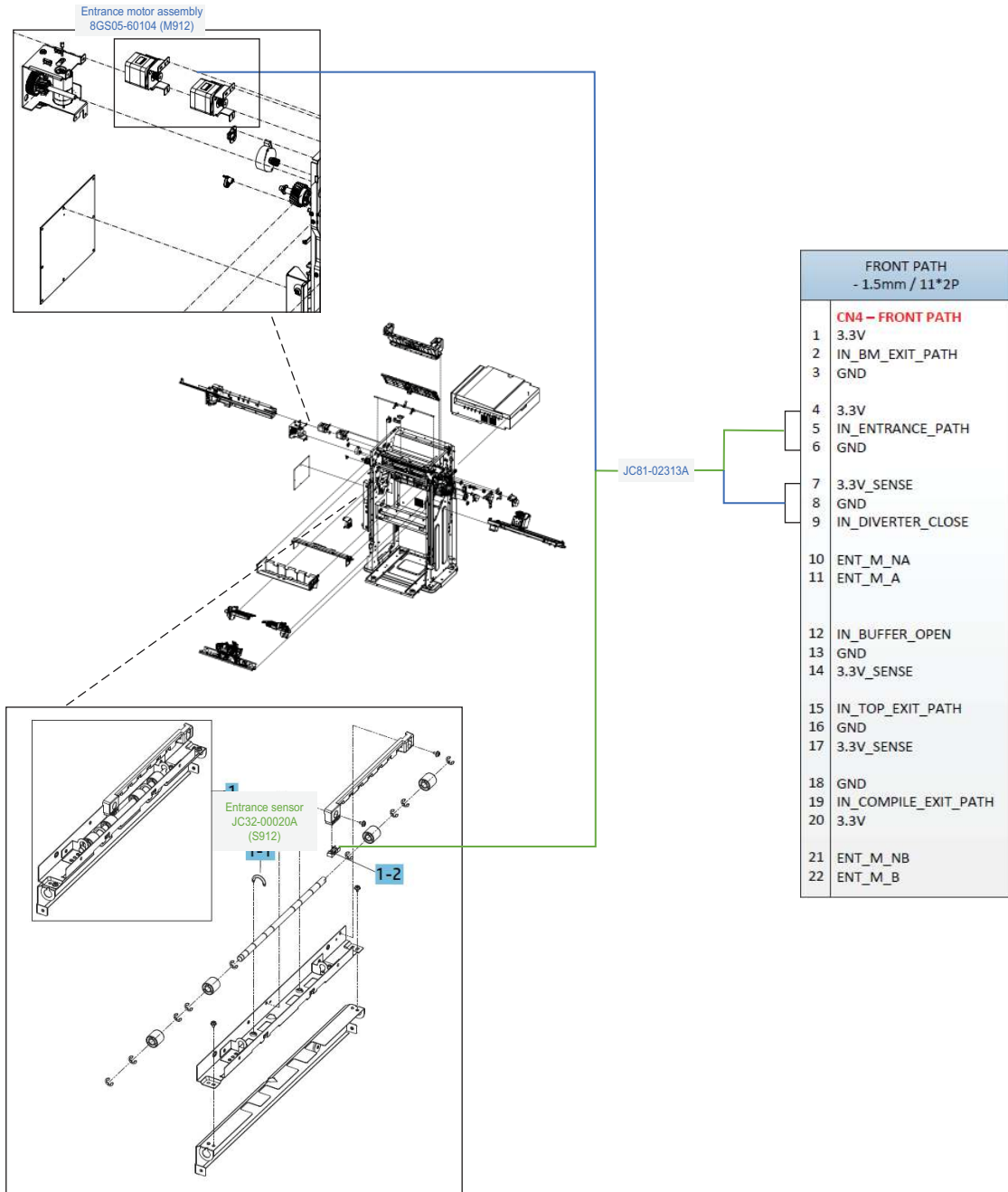


Figure 8-60 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram tray diverter unit

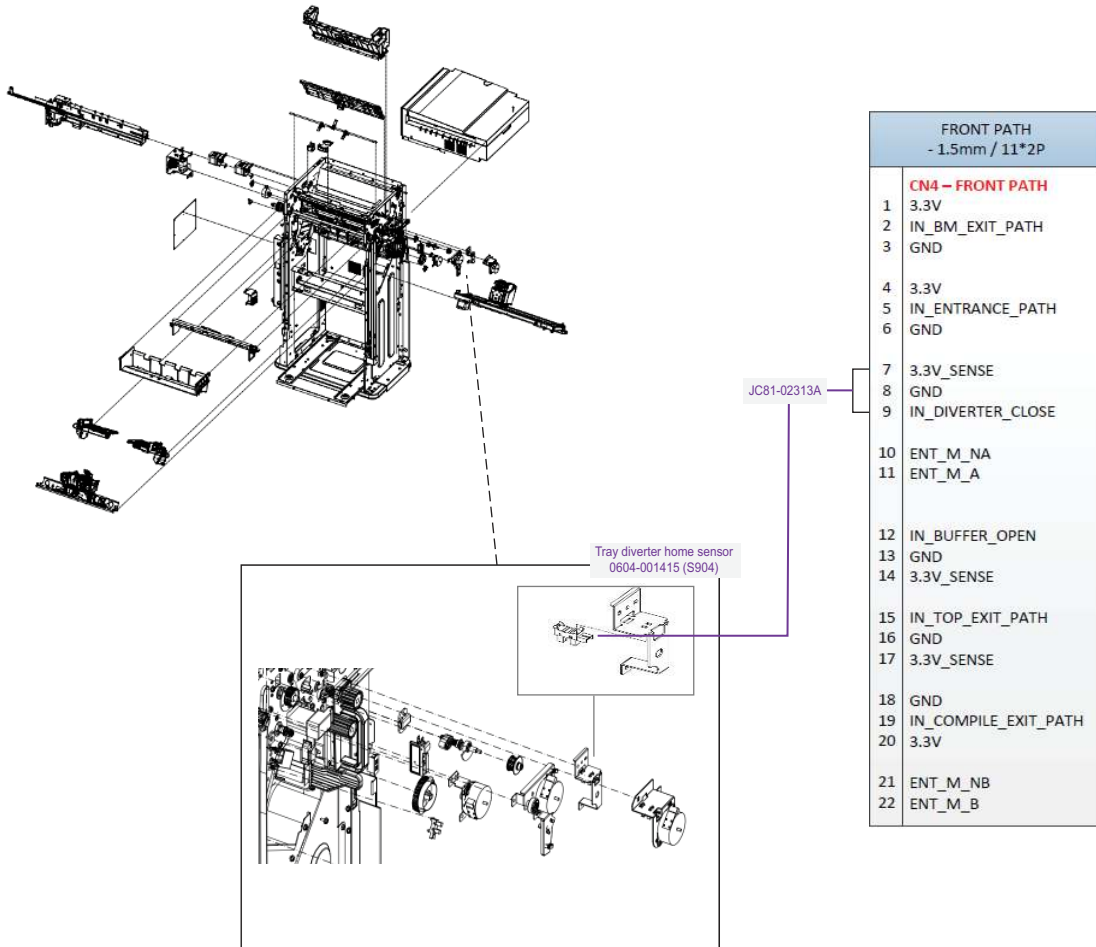


Figure 8-61 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram top exit

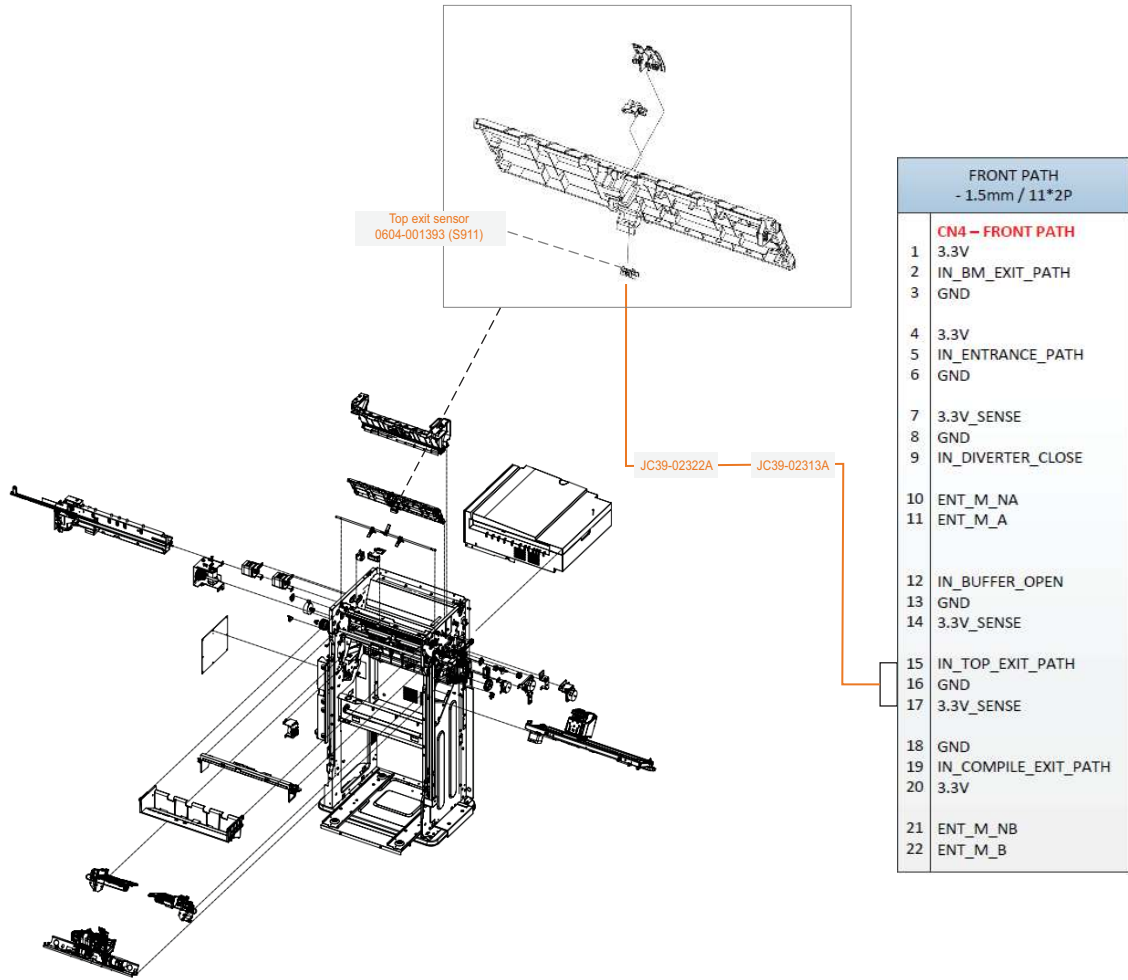


Figure 8-62 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram top output tray unit

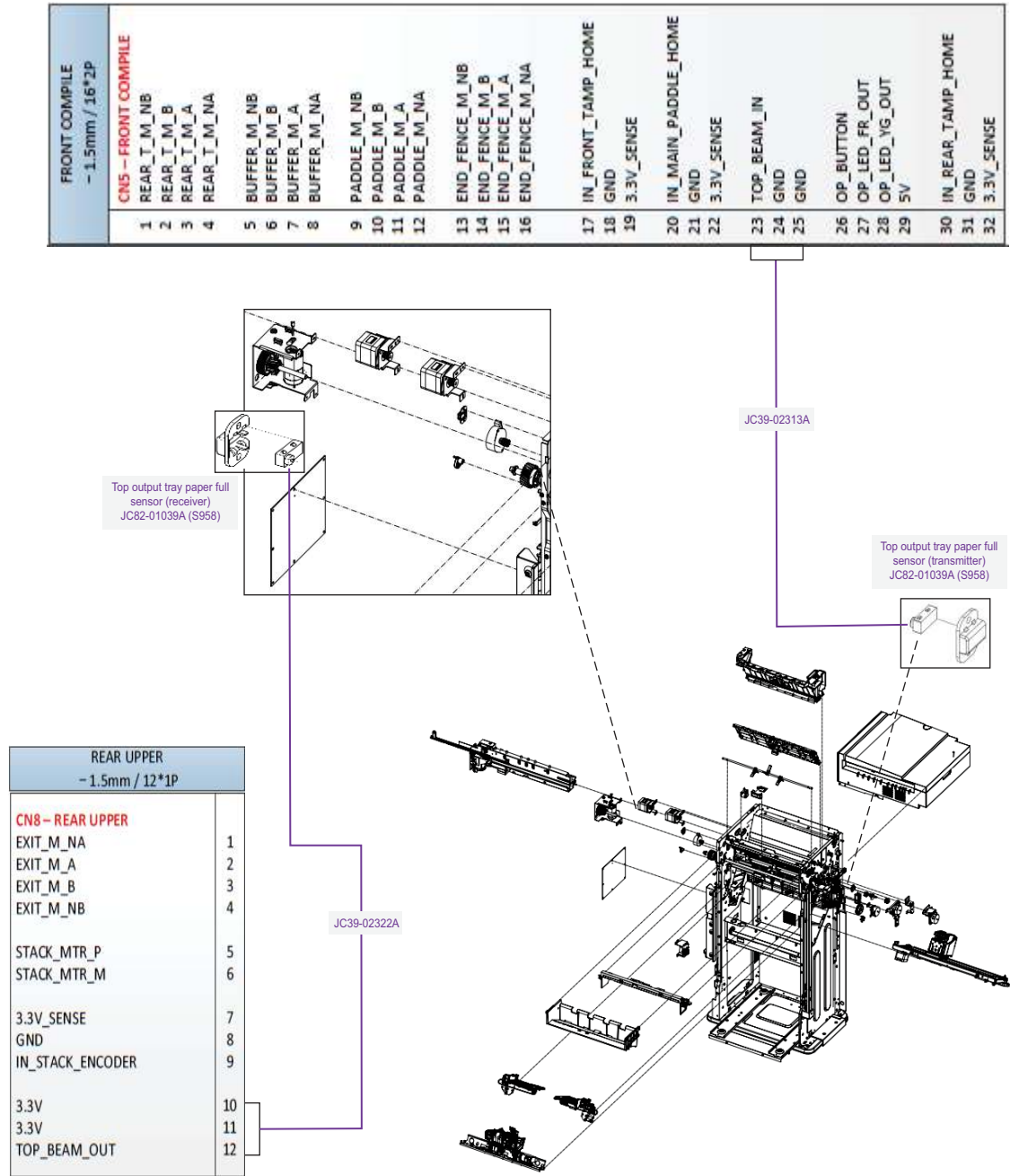


Figure 8-63 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram main exit (1 of 2)

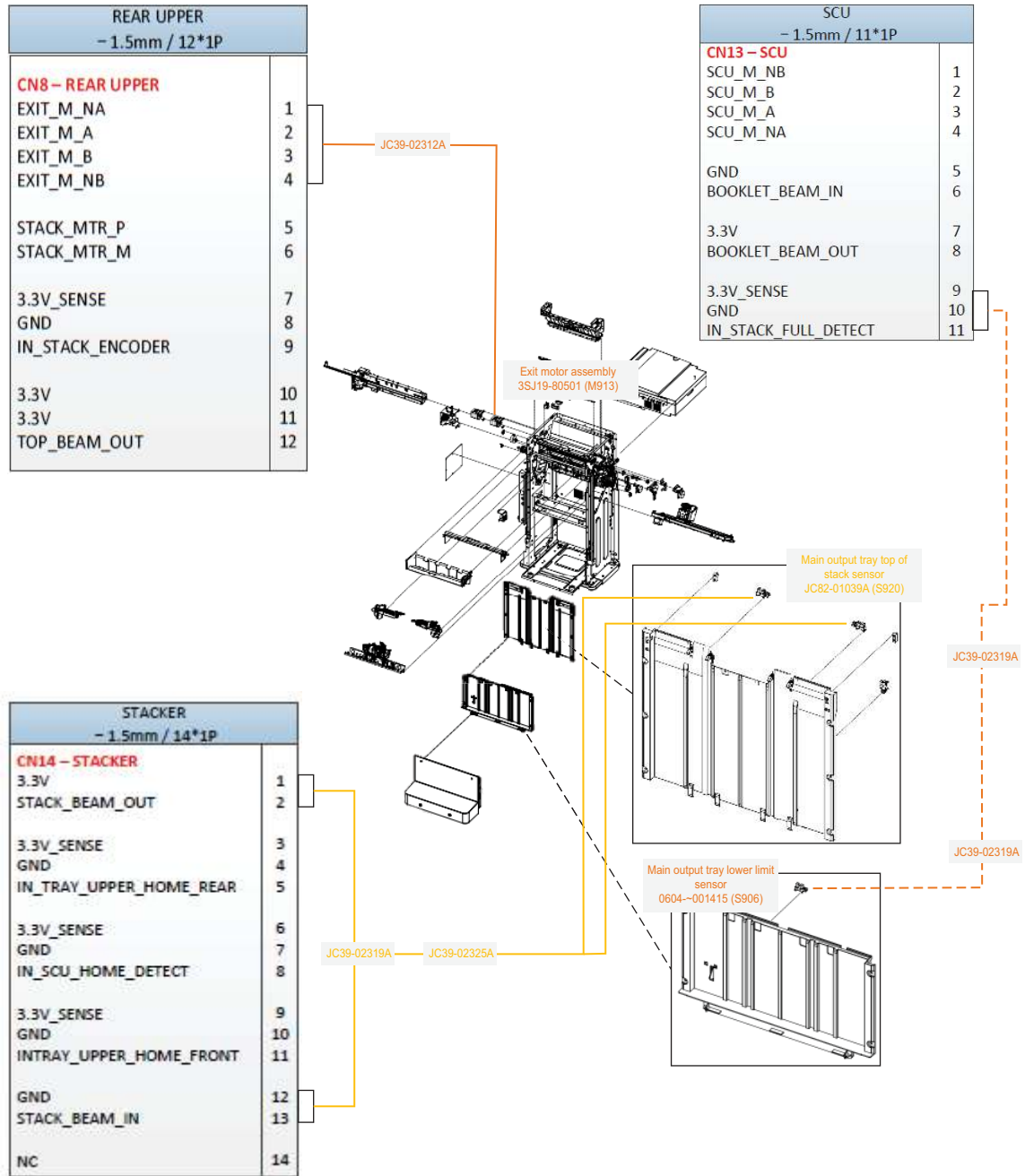


Figure 8-64 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram main exit (2 of 2)

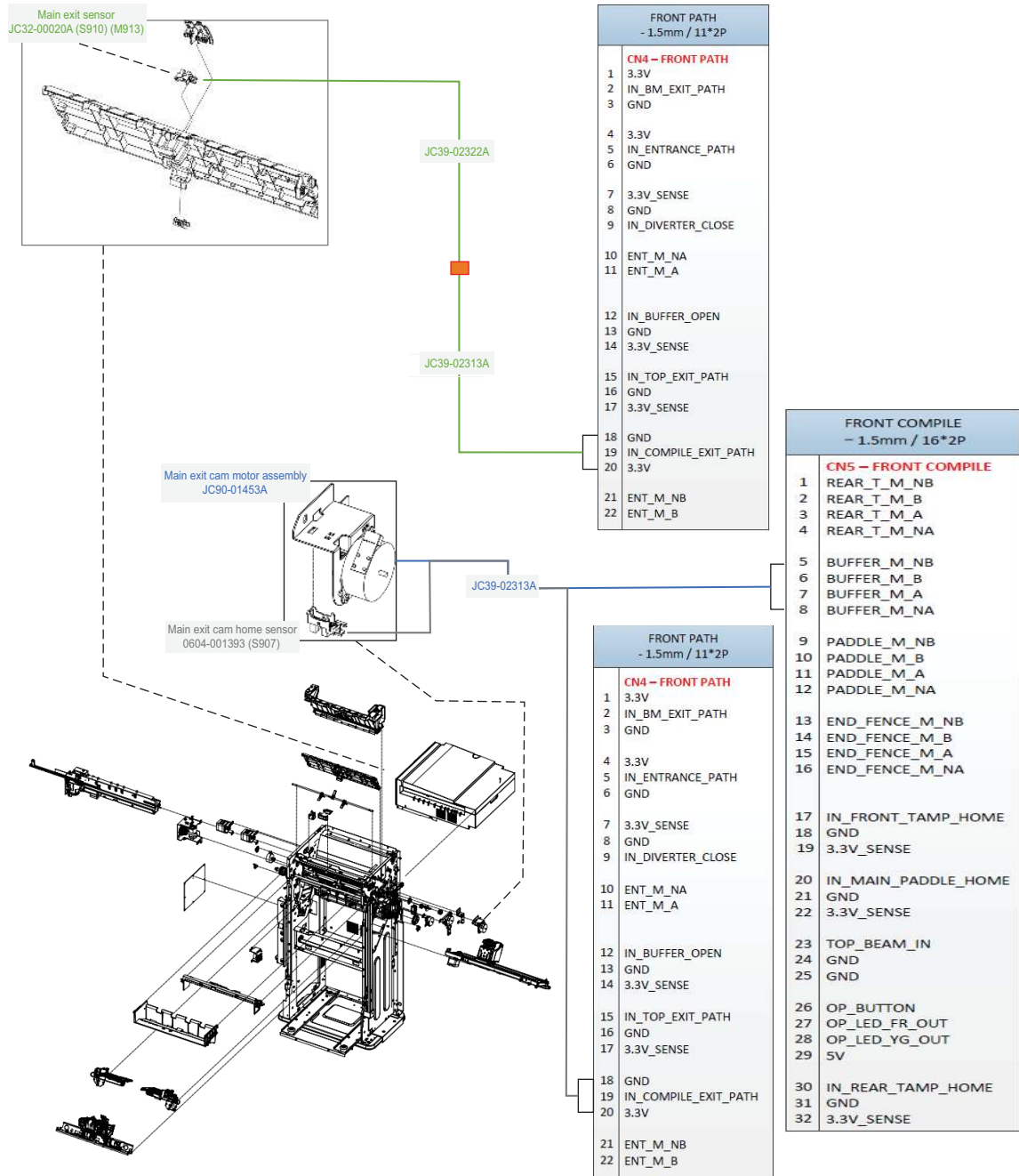


Figure 8-65 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram paddle unit

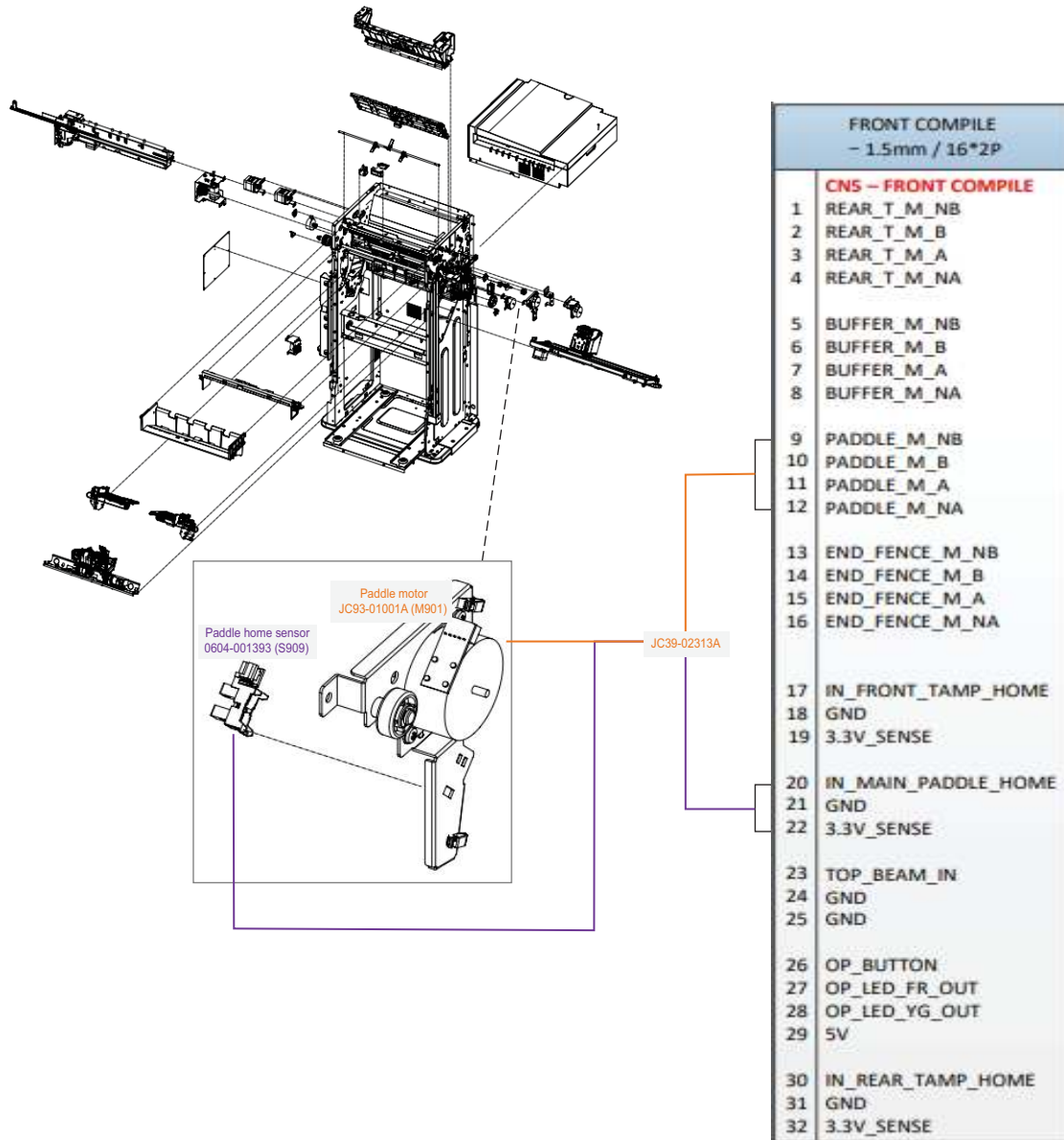


Figure 8-66 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram end fence unit

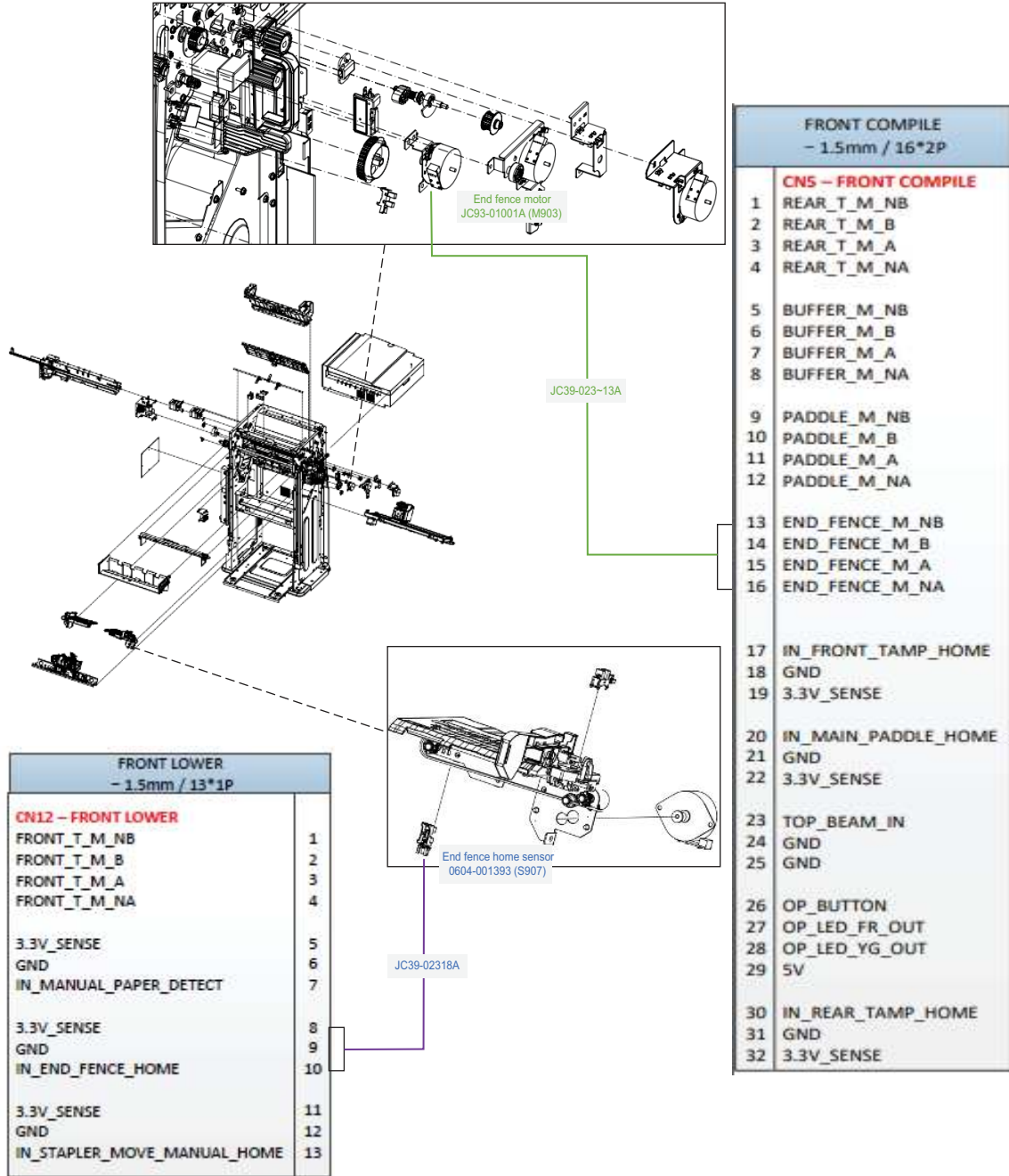


Figure 8-67 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram tamper unit

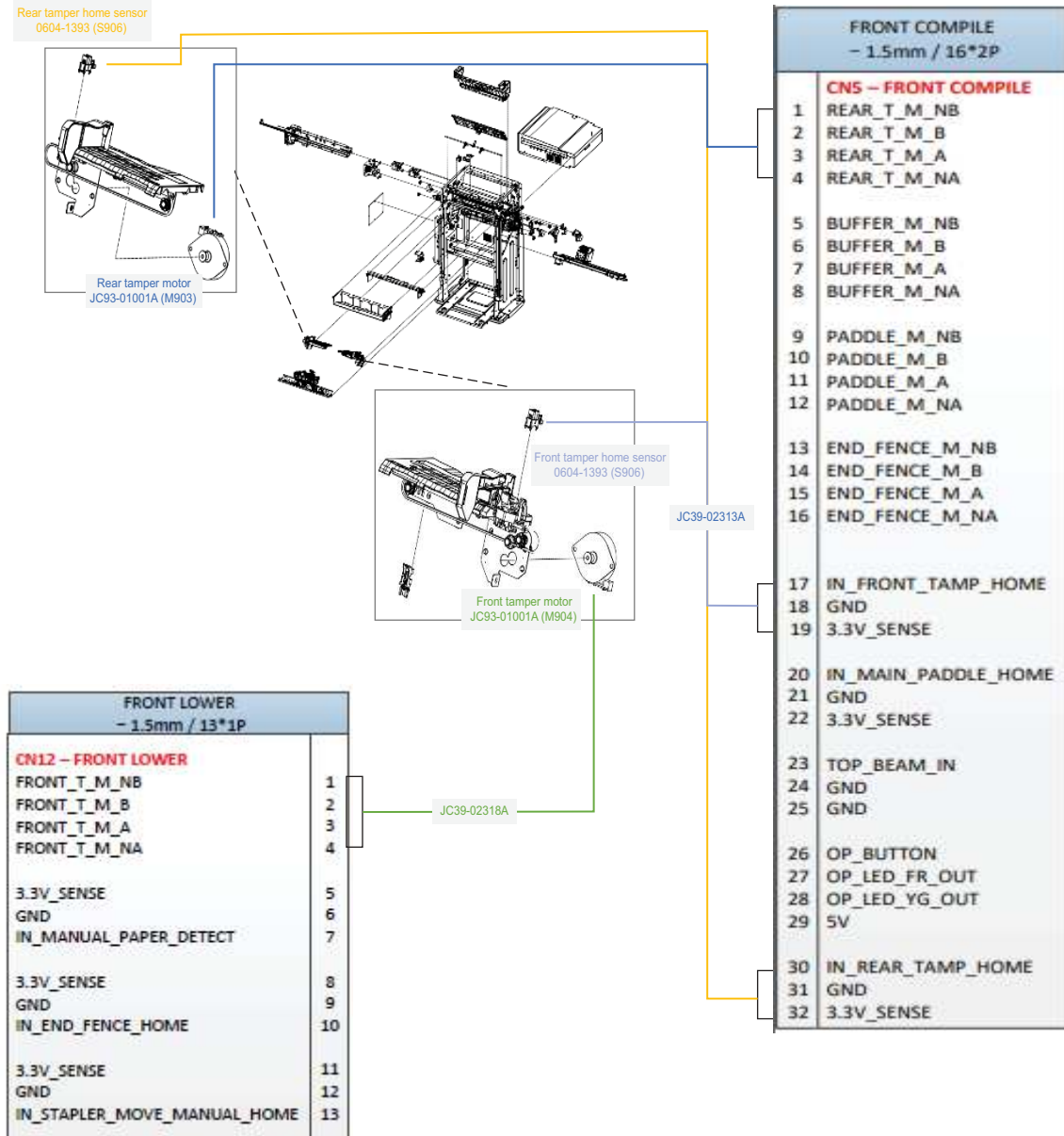


Figure 8-68 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram stapler unit

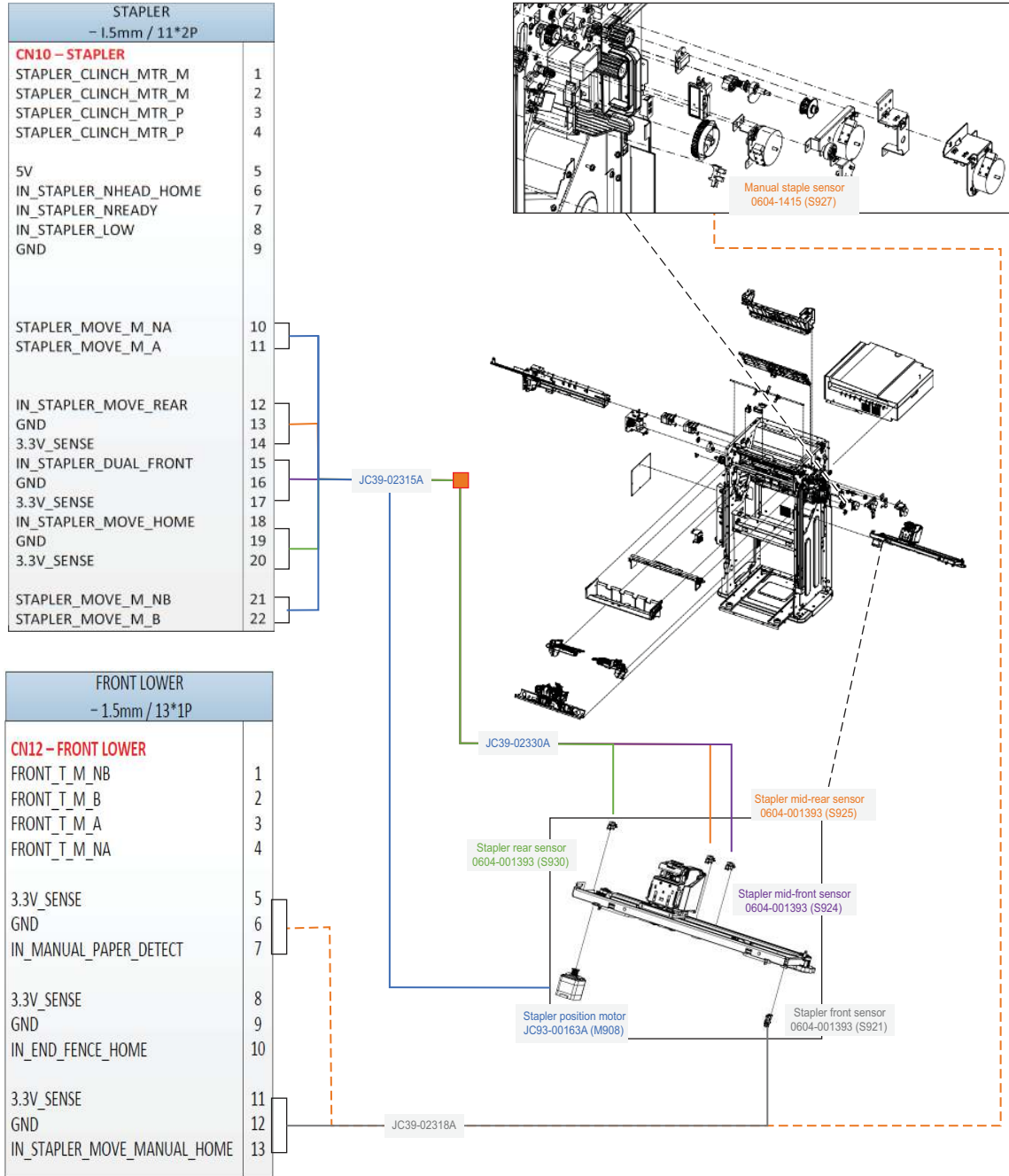


Figure 8-69 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram ejector unit

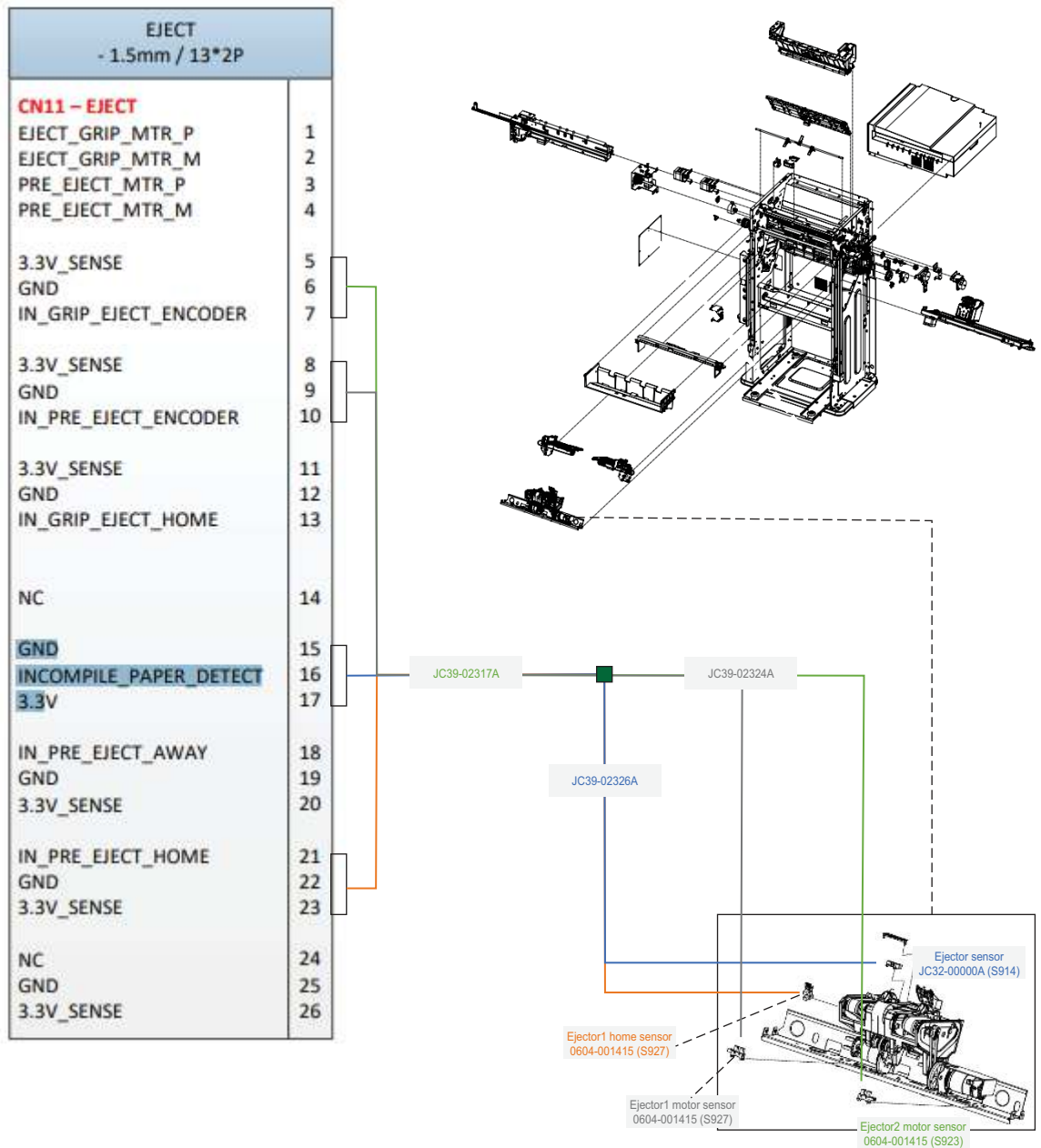


Figure 8-70 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram main output tray unit

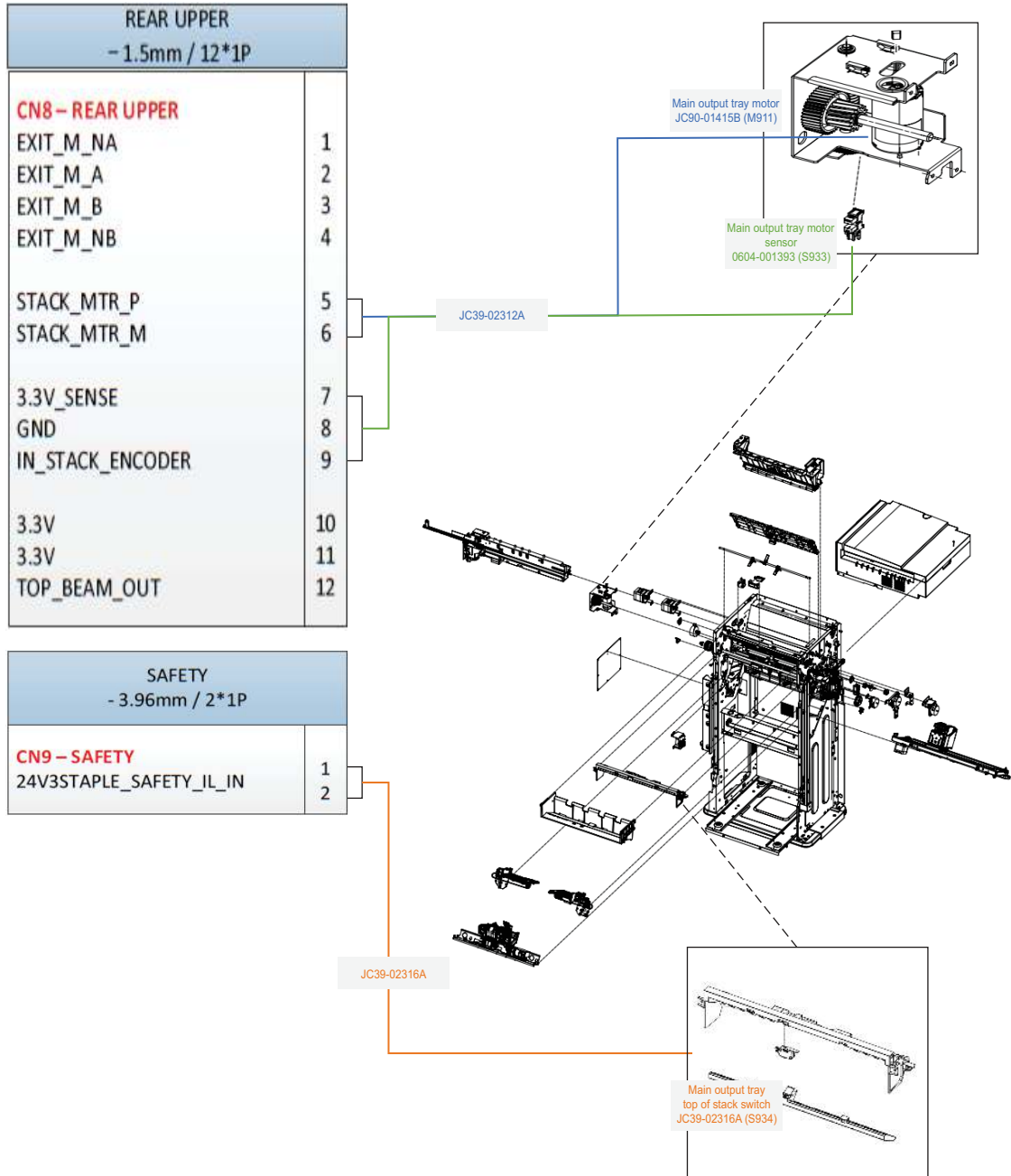


Figure 8-71 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram paper holding unit

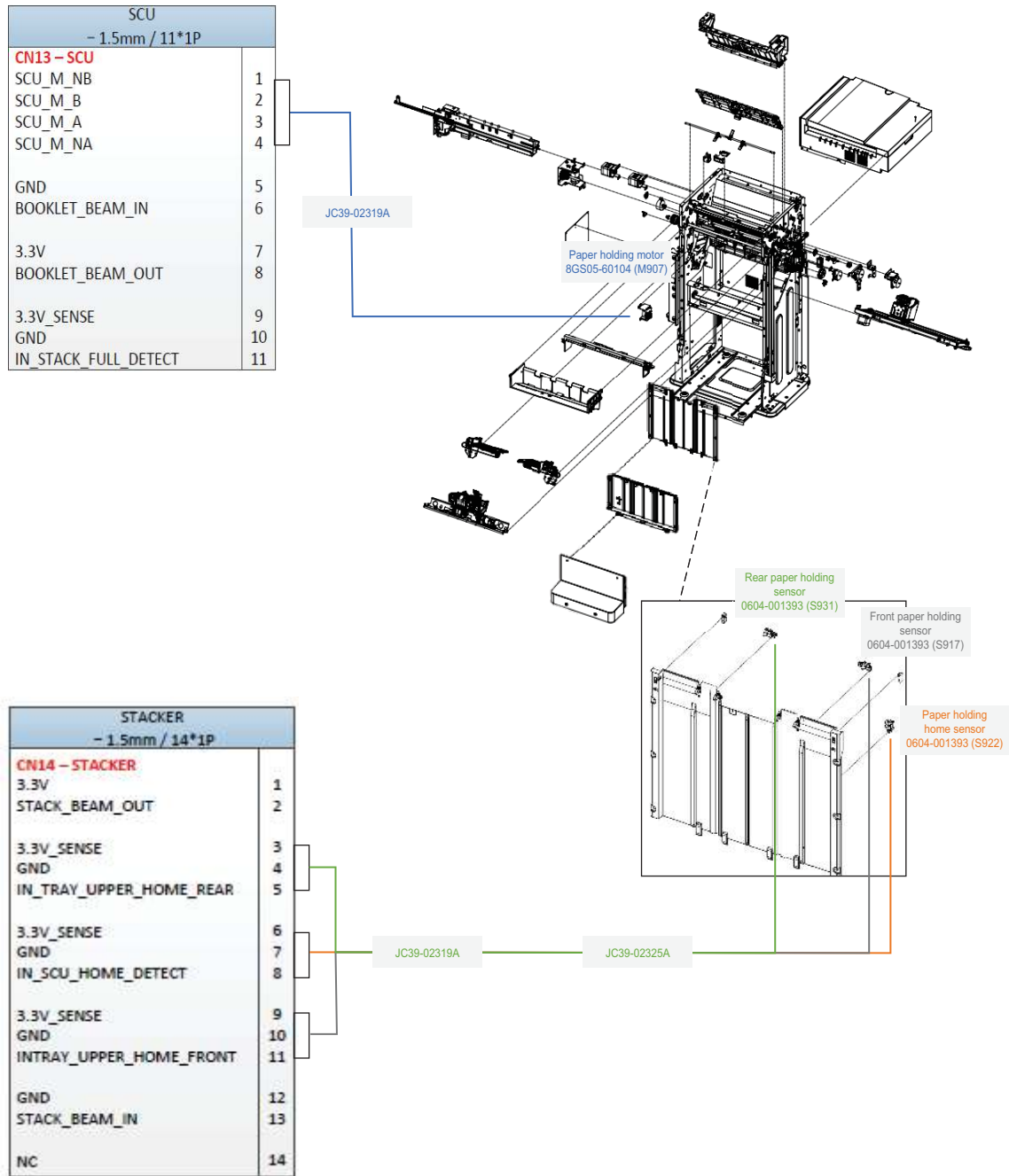


Figure 8-72 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram buffer unit

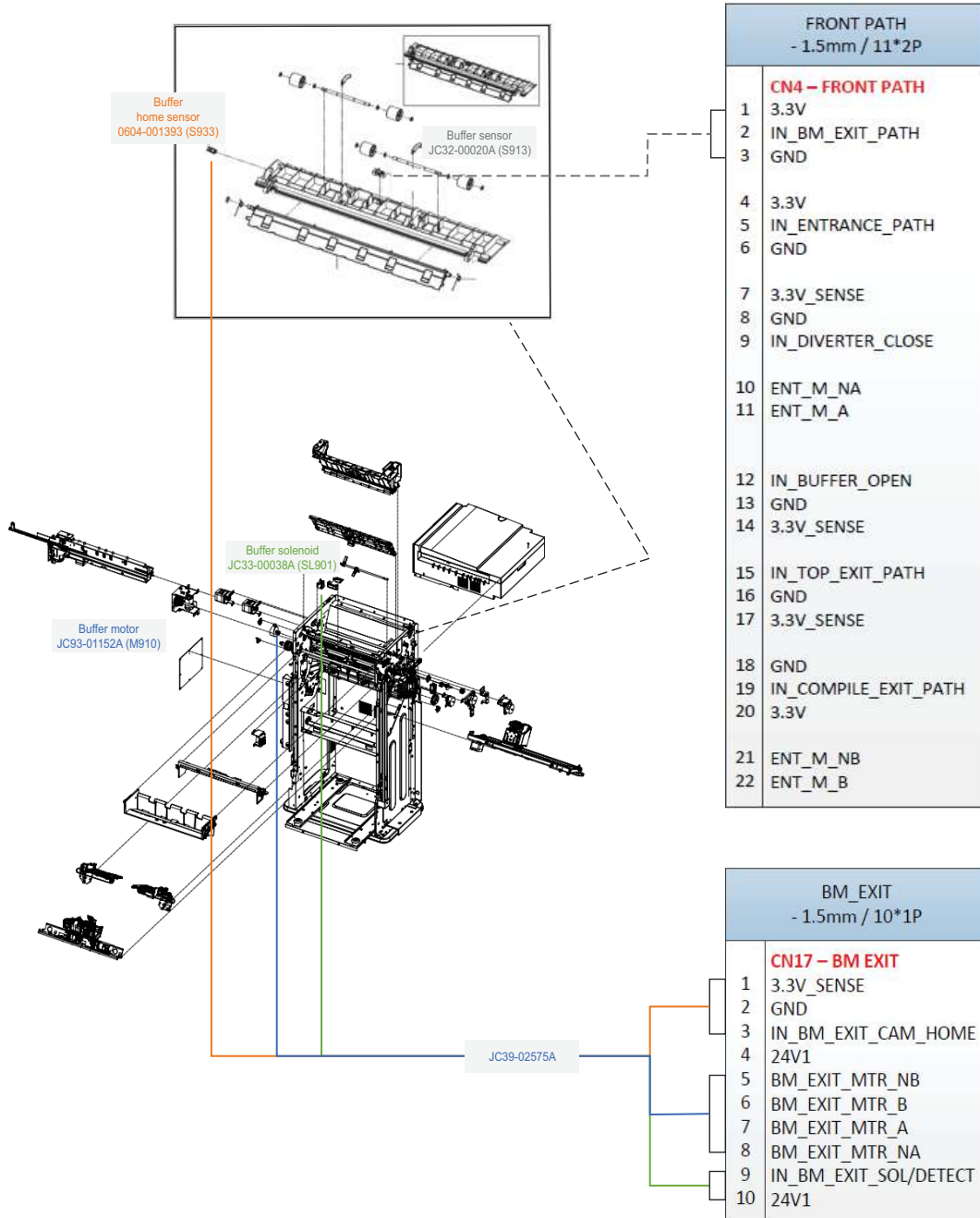


Figure 8-73 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram door switch

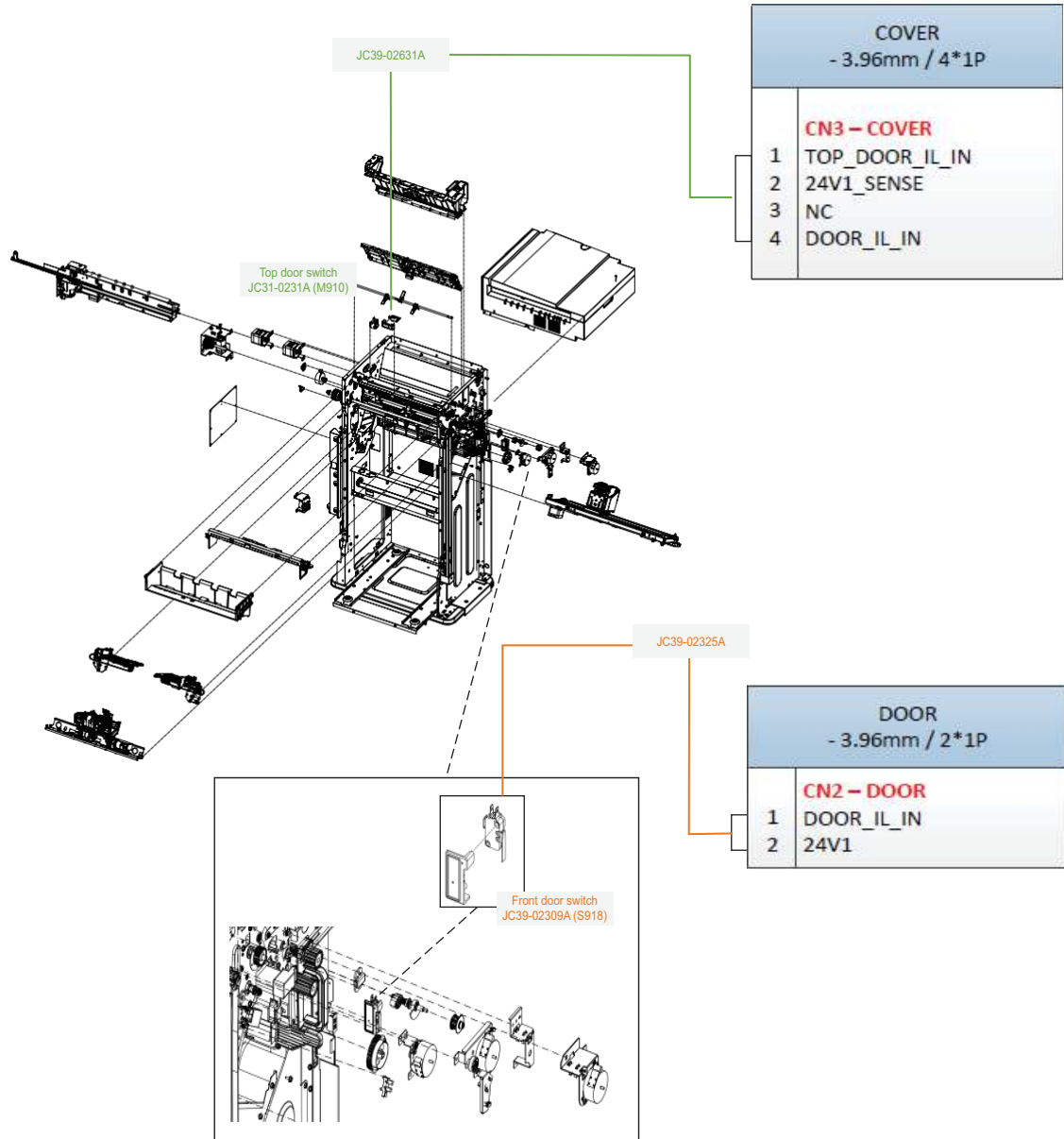
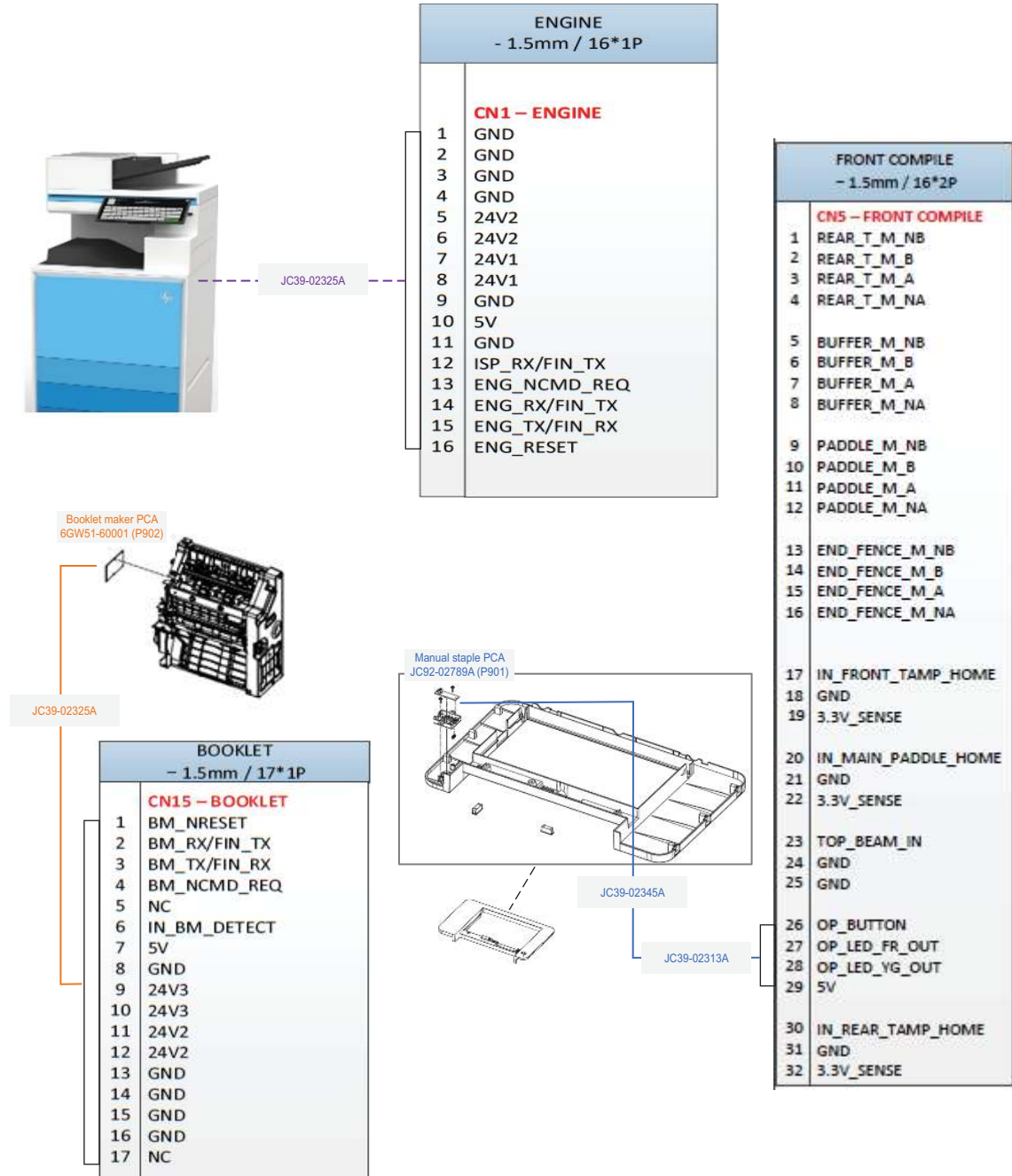


Figure 8-74 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA



A Certificate of Volatility

Review the certificates of volatility for the printer.

Certificate of Volatility

Learn about the product certificate of volatility.

Figure A-1 Certificate of Volatility (1 of 3)

Hewlett-Packard Certificate of Volatility				
Model: HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E826dn HP Color LaserJet Managed Flow MFP E826z	Part Number: Managed 5QK09A= E826dn 5QK13A= E826z		Address: Hewlett Packard Company 11311 Chinden Blvd Boise, ID 83714	
Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): DDR4 DRAM	Size: 6GB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Used for temporary storage during the process of jobs, and for applications that are running on the OS. (Note: Total memory on formatter consists of 6GB.)	Steps to clear memory: When the printer is powered off the memory is erased.

Figure A-2 Certificate of Volatility (2 of 3)

Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): IOD EEPROM	Size: 32 KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Backup device for critical system counters and product configuration information.	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): SPI Flash	Size: 8MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Contains the boot code and factory product configuration data required for the device to function. User modifications are limited to downloading digitally signed HP firmware images.	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): TPM 2.0 NVRAM Flash	Size: 7206 bytes	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Stores HP-signed immutable ID certificate and associated RSA key pair in locked memory, engine speed configuration data, SED (self-encrypting drive) drive lock password.	Steps to clear memory: Drive lock password can be changed through the device embedded web server interface and/or Preboot Menu of the Control Panel. No other data stored on the TPM 2.0 Flash can be cleared.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): IOD Engine EEPROM	Size: 32 KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Stores device lifecycle data (e.g. device page counts), consumables information, device specific printing handler data (e.g. fusing, EP, paper handler), toner supply control data, device configuration data (e.g. margin info), device maintenance information (e.g. calibration data)	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc.): HDD	Size: 500GB	User Modifiable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Store customer data, OS, applications, digitally signed firmware images, persistent data, and temporary data used for processing and system functions.	Steps to clear memory: There are several ways to erase this: 1. Secure Storage Erase - Erases temporary files and job data by overwriting information one or three times 2. Secure Disk Erase - Industry standard ATA Secure Erase. Overwrites all data on the hard drive. 3. Secure File Erase - Erases files when jobs finish processing by overwriting them one or three times.

Figure A-3 Certificate of Volatility (3 of 3)

USB			
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e. Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below			
Print jobs, HP digitally signed firmware upgrades, 3rd party application loading. USB ports can be disabled.			
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below			
Diagnostic service logs can be uploaded. Print files can be printed via a USB thumb drive.			
RF/RFID			
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics? (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below			
Purpose:			
Frequency:		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications:			
Other Transmission Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose: Product contains an integrated Wi-Fi/NFC accessory modules consisting of a Wi-Fi 802.11n and Near Field Communication (NFC) radio. The Wi-Fi portion acts in Access Point mode ONLY and provides AP client connection capability. NFC is used to pass NDEF tag data (Wi-Fi SSID, WPA configuration data). The latter is used to enable wireless direct print for mobile devices.			
Frequency: 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications: 802.11 b/g/n (Wi-Fi) NFC Tag Type 4 ISO14443B Compliant (NFC)			
Other Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose: Fax			
Specifications: Fax modem max speed 33.6kbps			
Author Information			
Name	Title	Email	Business Unit
Hewlett Packard Company	Technical Marketing Eng	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	Print Hardware Systems (PHS)
Date Prepared: March 8, 2022			

Glossary of terms

802.11

802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).

802.11b/g/n

802.11b/g/n can share the same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps, 802.11n supports bandwidth up to 150 Mbps. 802.11b/g/n devices might occasionally suffer interferences from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.

AC

An electric current that reverses its direction many times a second at regular intervals. For example, the 110V line current found in a typical US electrical wall receptacle.

AC Control Module (PageWide)

The AC Control Module controls the heating elements in the airflow assembly. Functions include voltage monitoring (ensuring correct operation in a low-quality-power environment), isolation (low voltage heater control signals are isolated from the high voltage AC power for safety), AC switching (power is switched on/off to the heater), and heating element configuration (heating element configuration is changed between series and parallel for temperature predictability).

ADF

An Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) is a device that automatically feeds an original sheet (or multiple sheets) of paper into the image scanner. The document feeder is a component of the integrated scanner assembly (ADF and image scanner).

Airflow System (PageWide)

The airflow system conditions the printed pages to avoid page curling due to the ink on the page. The airflow system functionally consists of a fan and heating elements. The pressurized air is blown on the page through the nozzles that are placed on the paper path of the airflow system between print and eject zone.

BOOTP

Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assigns an IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables "diskless workstation" computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.

CCD

A Charged Coupled Device (CCD) is the scanner module which enables a scan job. A CCD locking mechanism is used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when the printer is moved.

CIS

A Contact Image Sensor (CIS) scanner captures an image using the printer's optical path. Red, green, and blue LEDs sequentially illuminate a small strip of the document (often called a raster line), and the optical system captures each color in a single row of Charged Coupled Device (CCD) sensors that cover the entire page width.

Collation

Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.

Control Panel

The control panel is a flat, typically vertical panel or screen where the user can control and/or monitor the printer. The control panel is found on the front of the printer.

Coverage

Coverage is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. If the paper or original has complicated images or a large amount of text, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.

DC

An electric current flowing in one direction only. Typically, a low voltage load current supplied to an electrical assembly.

DCC

The DC controller (DCC) controls the operation of the printer sub-systems and electrical components. The DCC sends out various signals to operate motors, solenoids, and other printer components based on the print command and image data that the host computer sends the formatter.

Default

The value or setting that is in effect when a printer is unboxed, reset, or initialized.

DHCP

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. The DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.

Digital Send Software

Digital send software allows a multi-function printer (MFP) to scan and send information quickly and securely to email, network folders, other printers, and fax services.

DIMM

A Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM) is a small circuit board that holds memory. The DIMM stores all data within the printer, such as printing data and received fax data.

DPI

Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution (more visible detail in the image and a larger file size).

Duplex

A mechanism that automatically turns over a sheet of paper so that the printer can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a duplex unit can print on both sides of the paper during one print cycle.

Duty Cycle

Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally, the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period. For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month the printer limit is 2,400 pages a day (assuming 20 working days/month).

Dynamic Security

Dynamic Security is a toner cartridge design and process for authenticating genuine HP supplies. HP printers use toner cartridges that have security chips or electronic circuitry. Cartridges using a non-HP chip, or modified chip, or non-HP circuitry might not work (now or in the future).

e-Duplex

Single-pass electronic duplex (e-Duplex) printer use two separate scan modules to scan the front-side and back-side of an e-duplex copy job page in a single pass through the document feeder.

EMC

EMC is a measure of a device's ability to operate as intended in its shared operating environment while, at the same time, not affecting the ability of other equipment within the same environment to operate as intended.

EMI

EMI is the electromagnetic energy which affects the functioning of an electronic device. Electronic devices (like printers) are a source of EMI. Because it is rare for electronics to operate in isolation, products are generally engineered to function in the presence of some amount of EMI.

eMMC

An embedded Multi-Media Card is a compact memory device consisting of NAND flash memory and a simple storage controller.

Emulation

Emulation is a technique of one machine obtaining the same results as another. An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior. This is different from simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.

EPS

Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) is a PostScript (PS) code file which is used for storing font and vector graphic image information.

ESD

An electrostatic discharge (ESD) is a sudden flow of electricity between two electrically charged objects caused by contact, an electrical short, or dielectric breakdown. Discharge of built up static electricity.

Ethernet

Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/data link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. Ethernet has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to present.

Ferrite

A ferrite is used to reduce the amount of radio frequency noise (or interference) in a wire or cable. A ferrite enables proper EMC/EMI performance for regulatory purposes.

FFC

Flat Flexible Cables (FFCs) are designed for Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA) to PCA connections (for example, connecting a fax PCA to the formatter).

FIH

A Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) is a port that enables HP multifunction printers (MFPs) to use third-party devices to extend the capabilities of the MFP.

Firmware

The formatter stores the printer firmware. A remote firmware upgrade process is used to overwrite and upgrade the firmware.

Flash memory

Flash memory is non-volatile, meaning it retains stored data even when the power is turned off.

Flow integrated scanner assembly

A printer scanner assembly that includes a slide-out external physical keyboard.

Formatter (LaserJet)

The formatter controls printer functions like receiving and processes print data, developing and coordinating data placement and timing with the DC controller PCA, storing font and customer configuration information, communicating with the host computer, and monitoring control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel.

FTP

FTP stands for File Transfer Protocol. FTP is a protocol designed for transferring files over the Internet. Files stored on an FTP server can be accessed using an FTP client, such as a web browser, FTP software program, or a command line interface.

Fuser Unit

The fuser unit is part of a laser printer that adheres the toner onto the printed page. It consists of a heat roller and a pressure roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to make sure that the toner stays on the paper permanently (which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a laser printer).

Gateway

A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. A gateway is used to connect two different computer networks, especially a connection to the Internet.

Grayscale

Shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of a color image printed in monochrome. Colors are represented by a range of gray shades from white to black.

Halftone

Halftone is a way of reproducing a photograph or other image in which the various tones of gray or color are produced by variously sized dots of ink or toner. Halftone simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

HDD

A Hard-Disk Drive (HDD) (commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk) is a non-volatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.

IEEE

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.

Image scanner

The image scanner (or Sub Scanner Assembly) contains the components to digitally scan an original source document. The image scanner is a component of the integrated scanner assembly (ADF and image scanner).

IP address

An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that a device uses in order to identify and communicate with other devices on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.

IPM

The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a method of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete in one minute.

IPP

The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing and managing print jobs, media size, resolution, etc. IPP can be used locally, or over the internet to reach hundreds of printers. IPP also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a capable and secure printing solution.

ISA

The Integrated Scanner Assembly (ISA) includes the document feeder and image scanner.

ISO

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. It produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.

JBIG

Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality. It was designed for compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used for other images.

JPEG

Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a commonly used standard method of loss compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Web.

LDAP

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.

LED

A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that can indicate the status of a printer (formatter LEDs) or a component in a contact image sensor (CIS) scanner that helps capture an image.

LEDM

Low end data model (LEDM) provides one consistent data representation method and defines the dynamic and capabilities tickets shared between clients and devices, as well as the access protocol, event, security, and discovery methods.

LPDC

Late point differentiation configuration (LPDC) allows the channel partner to configure the speed to the printer depending on the customer's order. LPDC configuration is stored on the Trusted Platform Module (TPM).

LVPS - SMPS

Low Voltage Power Supplies (LVPS) and Switching Mode Power Supplies (SMPS) supply direct current (DC) voltages to various printer components and assemblies.

MAC address

Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48-bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (for example, 00-00-0c-34-11-4e). This address is usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by the manufacturer and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on a large network.

MEt

HP Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) effectively doubles the standard memory through a variety of font- and data-compression methods. MEt is available only in Printer Command Language (PCL) mode; it is not functional when printing in PostScript (PS) mode.

MFP

A Multi Function Printer (MFP) is a printer that incorporates multiple functionalities in a single physical body. For example, an MFP printer can scan, digitally send, fax, copy, and print.

MHV

Miniature High Voltage (MHV) is designed for high voltage applications of BNC connectors (DC voltage between 500 V and 5 kV).

Modem

A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.

MPCA (PageWide)

The MPCA integrates both formatter (LaserJet) and engine control electronics (DC controller) into a single assembly. The Main PCA (MPCA) controls printer functions like receiving and processes print data, developing and coordinating data placement, storing font and customer configuration information, communicating with the host computer, and monitoring control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel.

NAND

NAND is not an acronym (the term is short for **NOT AND** a Boolean operator and logic gate). NAND (flash) memory is non-volatile, meaning it retains stored data even when the power is turned off.

NVRAM

Nonvolatile random access memory (NVRAM) is used to store I/O and information about the print environment configuration (stored data even when the power is turned off).

OPC

Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer. It is usually green or rust colored and has a cylinder shape. An imaging unit containing a drum slowly wears the drum surface during its usage in the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately due to wear from contact with the cartridge development brush, cleaning mechanism, and paper.

Originals

The first example of something, such as a document, photograph, or text which is copied, reproduced, or translated to produce additional copies. The original itself is not copied or derived from something else.

PCA

Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA). Once the printed circuit board (PCB) is complete, electronic components must be assembled to form a functional printed circuit assembly or PCA.

PCL

Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol. PCL has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early Inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, dot matrix printers and laser printers.

PDF

Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems. A PDF represents two dimension documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.

PJL

Printer job language (PJL) is an integral part of printer configuration, in addition to the standard PCL and PostScript (PS). With standard cabling, the printer can use PJL to perform a variety of functions like dynamic I/O switching, context-sensitive switching, and isolation of print environment settings from one print job to the next.

PML

Printer management language (PML) allows remote configuration of the printer and status read-back from the printer through the I/O ports.

PostScript (PS)

PostScript (PS) is a Page Description Language (PDL) and programming language used primarily in electronic and desktop publishing. PostScript is run in an interpreter to generate an image.

PPM

Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.

Print Media

Media like paper, envelopes, labels, and transparencies which can be used in a printer, scanner, fax, or copier.

Printer Driver

A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.

Printhead (PageWide)

The printhead converts the digital firing instructions from the printer electronics into properly formed and timed microscopic drops of the four ink colors.

Printhead Wiper (PageWide)

The printhead wiper system keeps the printhead nozzles firing correctly throughout the life of the printer as it performs the wiping and capping functions. The wiping function cleans the nozzles of ink residue and particulates. The capping function keeps the nozzles moist during storage and when the printer is idle.

Protocol

A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer between two computing endpoints.

RAM

Random Access Memory (RAM) is the printer memory device where the data in current use is kept so it can be quickly retrieved by the device's processor. This memory is an important factor in avoiding errors and printing documents properly. Printer memory is used to store, and process print jobs as they are sent to the printer from a computer. After printing, the job is cleared from the memory to make room for more print jobs. Printer memory is directly linked to two print characteristics: speed and print quality. More memory allows you to print faster and print larger, high-quality graphics.

REDI sensor

An optical reflective edge detection interrupter (REDI) sensor. Usually used in conjunction with mirrors to sense the presence or absence of paper in the paper path. These sensors are carefully aligned and calibrated at the factory, so care must be taken when servicing these sensors.

Resolution

The sharpness of an image is measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the DPI, the greater the resolution.

SCB

The Scanner Control Board (SCB) controls the functions of the image scanner components in the Sub Scanner Assembly (SSA).

Service fluid and aerosol management systems (PageWide)

There are two types of service fluid, shipping fluid and ink. The service fluid management system is contained entirely within the duplex module. Service fluid is discharged as droplets from the printhead, and then collected in a container inside the duplex module. Some of the droplets are called aerosol because they are lighter than air. Aerosol can float inside the printer and collect on the lens of optical sensors, producing false failures. The aerosol management system transports the aerosol and collects it in a safe place. Aerosol management consists of an aerosol fan, mounted on the rear wall of the air flow assembly, which creates air flow that pulls the aerosol through the holes in the platen and into the aerosol filter inside the duplex module.

SFP

A single-function printer only processes print jobs sent from a host computer or from an USB port on the printer.

SMB

Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. SMB also provides an authenticated inter-process communication mechanism.

SMTP

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for email transmissions across the internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipient of a message is specified, and the message text is transferred. It is a client server protocol where the client transmits an email message to the server.

SODIMM

Small outline dual in-line memory module (SODIMM) is a thin profile memory storage device (a smaller alternative to a standard DIMM device).

SSA

The Sub-Scanner Assembly is the image scanner component of the Integrated Scanner Assembly (ISA, which includes the document feeder and the image scanner).

Subnet Mask

The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.

TCP/IP

The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP) are the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the internet and most commercial networks run.

TIFF

Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bit mapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images use tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.

Toner Cartridge

A bottle or container that holds toner, which is used in a machine like a printer. Toner is a powder used in laser printers and photocopiers. The toner forms the text and images on printed paper. Toner can be fused by a combination of heat/pressure from the fuser, causing it to bind the fibers in the paper.

TPM

The HP Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a security accessory for printers. The TPM strengthens protection of encrypted credentials and data stored on your printer. Certificate private keys are both generated by and protected by the TPM. Once installed, the printer and the TPM are sealed, and the printer owns the TPM. The TPM may not be moved to another device without losing its ownership from the original printer. Installing a TPM accessory might necessitate a firmware upgrade. The TPM prevents the printer from starting if the TPM is missing. If the TPM is removed from the printer, a control-panel error message appears indicating that the TPM is missing.



NOTE: The TPM is not a service part for some printer models. Check the printer service manual to determine if the TPM is a replaceable service part.

TWAIN

An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN compliant scanner with TWAIN-compliant software, a scan can be initiated from the program. TWAIN is an image capture API for Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh operating systems.

URL

Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use. The second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

USB

Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

Walk-up USB

Some printers support direct printing from a USB flash drive (the walk-up USB port is usually near the control panel).

Watermark

A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears lighter when viewed by transmitted light. Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282. Watermarks have been used by paper makers to identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discourage counterfeiting.

XPS

XML Paper Specification (XPS) is a specification for a Page Description Language (PDL) and a new document format developed by Microsoft. This has benefits for portable document and electronic documents. It is an XML-based specification based on a new print path and vector-based, device-independent document format.

ZIF Connector

Zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors use a mechanical locking method to secure Flat Flexible Cables (FFCs) to a Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA).

Index

Symbols/Numerics

200sh ADF
parts and diagrams 3112
200sh ADF 1 of 2
parts 3112
200sh ADF 2 of 2
parts 3113
300sh flow ADF
parts and diagrams 3109
300sh flow ADF 1 f 2
parts 3109
300sh flow ADF 2 of 2
parts 3110
520-sheet trays
jams 366
76.00.24 378

A

accelerator 121
accelerator card
removal and
replacement 1283
accessories
dimensions 1, 6
weight 1, 6
acoustic specifications 1, 6
ADF
removal and
replacement 1342
ADF - 00sh Flow
ADF roller 158
ADF - 200-sheet
ADF unit 155
ADF - 200-sheet Flow
ADF unit 155
ADF - 200sh 155
ADF cover 155
ADF image scanner
cleaning 168
ADF PCA 168
ADF sensors 157
ADF system overview 157
ADF workflow 157
deskew operation 166
deskew unit 162
document feeder hinges
operation 167

document feeder simplex
operation 164
lift plate unit 159
pickup unit 160
scan and exit unit 163
ADF - 200sh Flow 155
ADF cover 155
ADF image scanner
cleaning 168
ADF PCA 168
ADF sensors 157
ADF solenoid 158
ADF system motor 158
ADF system overview 157
ADF workflow 157
deskew operation 166
deskew unit 162
document feeder hinges
operation 167
document feeder simplex
operation 164
lift plate unit 159
pickup unit 160
scan and exit unit 163
ADF - 300-sheet Flow
ADF unit 136
ADF workflow 137
ADF - 300sh Flow 135
ADF cover 135
ADF image scanner
cleaning 153
ADF PCA 153
ADF roller 139
ADF sensors 138
ADF solenoid 139
ADF system motor 139
ADF system overview 137
deskew operation 151
deskew unit 146
document feeder hinges
operation 152
document feeder simplex
operation 149
lift plate unit 141
pickup unit 143
scan and exit unit 147
ADF cover - 200sh 155
ADF cover - 200sh Flow 155

ADF cover - 300sh Flow 135
ADF FFC
automatic document
feeder 1439
ADF image scanner cleaning -
200sh 168
ADF image scanner cleaning -
200sh Flow 168
ADF image scanner cleaning -
300sh Flow 153
ADF PCA - 200sh 168
ADF PCA - 200sh Flow 168
ADF PCA - 300sh Flow 153
ADF roller - 200sh Flow 158
ADF roller - 300sh Flow 139
ADF sensors - 200sh 157
ADF sensors - 200sh Flow 157
ADF sensors - 300sh Flow 138
ADF solenoid - 200sh Flow 158
ADF solenoid - 300sh Flow 139
ADF system motor - 200sh
Flow 158
ADF system motor - 300sh
Flow 139
ADF system overview -
200sh 157
ADF system overview - 200sh
Flow 157
ADF system overview - 300sh
Flow 137
ADF unit - 200-sheet 155
ADF unit - 200-sheet Flow 155
ADF unit - 300-sheet Flow 136
ADF workflow - 200sh 157
ADF workflow - 200sh Flow 157
ADF workflow - 300-sheet
Flow 137
ADF, 200-sheet
dn bundle 1412
ADF, 200sh
parts and diagrams 3112
ADF, 200sh 1 of 2
parts 3112
ADF, 200sh 2 of 2
parts 3113
ADF, 300-sheet
z bundle 1343

- ADF, 300sh flow
 - parts and diagrams 3109
 - ADF, 300sh flow 1 of 2
 - parts 3109
 - ADF, 300sh flow 2 of 2
 - parts 3110
 - ADF, tarot platen
 - parts and diagrams 3113
 - after-service checklist 527, 528
 - authorized service providers,
 - parts 526
 - automatic document feeder
 - 200-sheet dn bundle 1412
 - 300-sheet z bundle 1343
 - removal and
 - replacement 1342, 1343
 - removal and replacement,
 - 5QJ90-67011,
 - 5QJ90-67012 1412
 - automatic document feeder color panel
 - removal and
 - replacement 1358, 1419
 - automatic document feeder damper module
 - removal and
 - replacement 1406
 - removal and replacement,
 - 5QJ90-67011,
 - 5QJ90-67012 1459
 - automatic document feeder FFC
 - removal and
 - replacement 1439
 - automatic document feeder flat-flexible cable
 - removal and
 - replacement 1386
 - automatic document feeder front cover
 - removal and
 - replacement 1352
 - automatic document feeder hinge kit
 - removal and
 - replacement 1398
 - removal and replacement,
 - 5QJ90-67011,
 - 5QJ90-67012 1451
 - automatic document feeder image scanner
 - removal and
 - replacement 1377, 1431
 - automatic document feeder input tray
 - removal and
 - replacement 1372
 - automatic document feeder pickup roller kit
 - removal and
 - replacement 1374
 - removal and replacement,
 - 5QJ90-67011,
 - 5QJ90-67012 1427
 - automatic document feeder power cable
 - removal and
 - replacement 1392, 1445
 - automatic document feeder printed circuit assembly
 - removal and
 - replacement 1380
 - removal and replacement,
 - 5QJ90-67011,
 - 5QJ90-67012 1433
 - automatic document feeder rear cover
 - removal and
 - replacement 1360
 - automatic document feeder top cover
 - removal and
 - replacement 1365
 - automatic document feeder white backing
 - removal and
 - replacement 1367, 1422
- B**
- backup error
 - 32.WX.YZ error 340, 376
 - reset error 340, 376
 - restore error 340, 376
 - base printer
 - covers, remove and
 - replace 529
 - covers, service parts 3086
 - CTD, service parts 3101
 - developer, service parts 3099
 - drum, service parts 3100
 - duplex, service parts 3095
 - electrical mechanical relationships 3197
 - exit unit, service parts 3094
 - fan, service parts 3104
 - feeding system, service parts 3089
 - fuser, service parts 3103
 - image creation, service parts 3099
 - laser scanner unit, service parts 3099
 - parts and diagrams 3086
 - PCA, service parts 3105
 - PTB, service parts 3102
 - registration and loop sensors, service parts 3092
 - remove and replace parts 529
 - reservoir, service parts 3097
 - sensor, service parts 3104
 - toner cartridge, service parts 3096
 - toner collection unit, service parts 3098
 - toner flow, service parts 3096
 - tray 1, service parts 3089
 - tray 2, 3, service parts 3091
 - Base printer 38
 - before servicing
 - ESD precautions 526
 - how to use part lists 526
 - ordering parts 526
 - remove and replace 526
 - service approach 526
 - bin, output
 - locating 1
 - black developer unit.
 - removal and
 - replacement 1140
 - booklet diverter unit 285
 - operation 286
 - overview 285
 - booklet end fence unit 271
 - operation 273
 - overview 271
 - booklet entrance unit 268
 - overview 268
 - booklet exit unit 287
 - overview 287
 - booklet finisher
 - booklet maker, remove and
 - replace 2341
 - diverter unit, remove and
 - replace 2588
 - electrical mechanical relationships
 - diagrams 3253
 - end fence unit, remove and
 - replace 2414
 - entrance unit, remove and
 - replace 2362

fold unit, remove and
 replace 2530
 miscellaneous parts, remove
 and replace 2647
 output tray unit, remove and
 replace 2622
 paddle unit, remove and
 replace 2402
 parts and diagrams 3144
 PCA, remove and
 replace 2632
 presser unit, remove and
 replace 2437
 stapler unit, remove and
 replace 2511
 booklet finisher 1 of 5
 parts 3144
 booklet finisher 3 of 5
 parts 3148
 booklet finisher 4 of 5
 parts 3150
 booklet finisher 5 of 5
 parts 3151
 booklet finisher booklet blade
 home sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2559
 booklet finisher booklet blade
 motor
 removal and
 replacement 2575
 booklet finisher booklet diverter
 home sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2604
 booklet finisher booklet fold motor
 removal and
 replacement 2584
 booklet finisher booklet fold motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2580
 booklet finisher booklet maker
 removal and
 replacement 2341
 booklet finisher booklet maker
 PCA
 removal and
 replacement 2637
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2530
 booklet finisher c-fold blade home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2542
 booklet finisher c-fold blade motor
 removal and
 replacement 2553
 booklet finisher c-fold blade motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2548
 booklet finisher diverter
 removal and
 replacement 2588
 booklet finisher diverter motor
 removal and
 replacement 2616
 booklet finisher diverter motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2610
 booklet finisher end fence home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2414
 booklet finisher end fence motor
 removal and
 replacement 2426
 booklet finisher entrance motor
 removal and
 replacement 2391
 booklet finisher entrance sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2374
 booklet finisher entrance unit
 removal and
 replacement 2362
 booklet finisher entrance-presser
 motor assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2387
 booklet finisher harness guide
 removal and
 replacement 2350
 booklet finisher main PCA
 removal and
 replacement 2632
 booklet finisher output tray
 removal and
 replacement 2622
 booklet finisher output tray sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2624
 booklet finisher paddle home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2402
 booklet finisher paddle motor
 removal and
 replacement 2409
 booklet finisher paddle motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2405
 booklet finisher presser home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2437
 booklet finisher staple cartridge
 removal and
 replacement 2528
 booklet finisher stapler
 removal and replacement 2511
 booklet finisher tamper
 removal and
 replacement 2442
 booklet finisher tamper home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2459
 booklet finisher tamper motor
 removal and
 replacement 2476
 booklet finisher tamper sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2493
 booklet finisher, only
 removal and
 replacement 2340
 booklet fold unit 280
 operation 283
 overview 280
 booklet maker 209, 268
 booklet diverter unit 285
 booklet end fence unit 271
 booklet entrance unit 268
 booklet exit unit 287
 booklet finisher, remove and
 replace 2341
 booklet fold unit 280
 booklet output tray unit 288
 booklet paddle unit 270
 booklet presser unit 273
 booklet stapler unit 277
 booklet tamper unit 275
 bridge unit 228
 covers 215
 detailed specifications 209

- overview 217
- stapler-stacker finisher 229
- booklet maker PCA 294
- booklet or stapler/stacker finishers
 - removal and replacement 1801
- booklet output tray unit 288
 - operation 290
 - overview 288
- booklet paddle unit 270
 - overview 270
- booklet presser unit 273
 - operation 275
 - overview 273
- booklet staple unit
 - staple and staple cartridge 278
- booklet stapler unit 277
 - operation 279
 - overview 277
- booklet tamper unit 275
 - operation 277
 - overview 275
- bridge unit 228
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1864
 - overview 228
- buffer unit 263
 - external finisher, remove and replace 2329
 - operation 266
 - overview 263

C

- cable guide
 - removal and replacement 1167
- cables
 - automatic document feeder, power 1392, 1445
- Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control panel 340, 351, 379
- cassette 40
- caution iv
- certificate of volatility 3272
- Channel partners
 - WISE 369
- checklists
 - after-service 527, 528
 - preservice 527, 528
- cleaning page 340, 351, 379
- cleaning the paper dust stick 27
- cleaning the scan glass 27
- clutches
 - Tray 1 clutch 679

- color toner density (CTD) sensor
 - cleaning 96
- color toner density (CTD) sensor
 - operation 95
- component test
 - special mode test 340, 348, 350
- components
 - diagnostic tests 340, 348, 350
- connector error
 - 65.WX.YZ error 340, 377
- control panel 108, 110
 - 10.1 inch 108
 - 8 inch 108, 110
 - Advanced Print Quality Pages 524
 - Altitude Adjustment 511
 - Auto Tone Adjustment 515
 - Backup/Restore 515
 - Backup/Restore menu 340, 351, 379
 - Buckle Adjustment 484
 - Calibrate Scanner 516
 - Calibrate/Cleaning menu 340, 351, 379
 - Cold Reset Paper 481
 - Component tests 503
 - Configuration/Status Pages 519
 - Consumables Access Control 482
 - Copy menu (MFP only) 340, 351, 379, 434
 - Counts 478
 - coverage report 479
 - CPMD 340
 - CTD Sensor Cleaning 516
 - Custom Color 515
 - Engine NVM Read/Write 494
 - Event Log 478, 524
 - Fax menu (fax models only) 340, 351, 379, 471
 - Fax Reports 520
 - Fax Service Log 521
 - Fax Speaker Mode 521
 - Fax T.30 Trace Report 520
 - Fax V.29 Speed 514
 - Fax V.34 521
 - Finisher Adjustment 485
 - Footer 513
 - Humidity 512
 - Import/Export 515
 - JBIG Compression 521
 - License Management 516
 - locating 1

- locating features 4
- Low Alerts 481
- Low-temperature Idling Mode 510
- Maintenance menu 514
- Manual Tone Adjustment 516
- Other Pages 520
- overview 108, 110
- Paper Path Page 524
- Part Replacement Count 513
- PQ Troubleshooting Pages 521
- Print Adjustment 483
- Print menu 340, 351, 379, 475
- PTT Test Mode 513
- remove and replace parts 1257
- Reports menu 340, 351, 379, 396
- Reset Engine NVM 493
- Reset Supplies 514
- Reset Supplies Level 481
- Retrieve Diagnostic Data 524
- Retrieve Fax Diagnostic Data 525
- Run Fax Test 524
- Scan menu 443
- Scan menu (MFP only) 340, 351, 379
- Scanner Settings 479
- Sensors 495
- Serial Number 480
- Service ID 480
- Service menu 476
- Service Reports 483
- Settings menu 340, 351, 379, 398
- Software Version 482
- Supplies menu 340, 351, 379, 475
- Test Support 513
- Toner Density Calibration 516
- TR Control Mode 509
- Trays menu 340, 351, 379, 476
- troubleshooting menu 340, 351, 379
- Troubleshooting menu 519
- USB Firmware Upgrade 516
- USB Firmware Upgrade menu 340, 351, 379
- Vapor Mode 512
- Control panel 10.1 inches PCA 131
- Control panel 8 inches PCA 131
- control panel diagnostic flowcharts 340, 343

control panel menus 340, 351, 379
 control panel messages 376
 control panel PCA 130
 control panel, 10.1 inch
 removal and replacement 1257
 control panel, 8 inch
 removal and replacement 1257
 controller cover
 removal and replacement 536
 conventions used iv
 Copy menu (MFP only), control panel 340, 351, 379, 434
 copy specifications 1, 6
 CoV
 certificate of volatility 3272
 cover
 inner finisher 300
 covers
 base printer, remove and replace 529
 base printer, service parts 3086
 controller 536
 DCF left cover 1595
 DCF rear cover 1593
 DCF right cover 1591
 DCF right door 1597
 DCF Tray 4, 5 color panel 1599
 DCF, remove and replace 1591
 document feeder color panel 1358, 1419
 document feeder front 1352
 document feeder rear 1360
 document feeder top 1365
 dual cassette feeder left cover 1595
 dual cassette feeder rear cover 1593
 dual cassette feeder right cover 1591
 dual cassette feeder right door 1597
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5 color panel 1599
 exit cover stacker 597
 exit rear cover 538
 external finisher, remove and replace 1801
 flatbed scanner 1473
 front cover 613
 front cover CMF panel 615
 front lower cover 610
 hardware integration pocket [HIP] 593
 HCI, remove and replace 1691
 high capacity input front CMF panel 1699
 high capacity input left cover 1695
 high capacity input rear cover 1693
 high capacity input right cover 1691
 high capacity input right door 1697
 HIP 593
 inner cover 600
 inner finisher, remove and replace 2657
 left cover 547
 left top cover 541
 left upper cover 543
 middle left 594
 middle upper cover 551
 parts 3086
 power key 584
 rear lower 533
 rear upper 529
 removal and replacement, external finisher booklet front cover 1862
 removal and replacement, external finisher booklet output tray 1823
 removal and replacement, external finisher caster 1857
 removal and replacement, external finisher caster cover 1803
 removal and replacement, external finisher caster fix nut 1860
 removal and replacement, external finisher front cover 1832
 removal and replacement, external finisher front door 1801
 removal and replacement, external finisher front lower left cover 1848
 removal and replacement, external finisher front lower right cover 1853
 removal and replacement, external finisher left lower cover 1805
 removal and replacement, external finisher left upper cover 1813
 removal and replacement, external finisher main output tray 1828
 removal and replacement, external finisher punch cover 1837
 removal and replacement, external finisher rear cover 1830
 removal and replacement, external finisher right upper cover 1845
 removal and replacement, external finisher shaft hinge - door 1855
 removal and replacement, external finisher top cover 1839
 removal and replacement, external finisher top door 1841
 removal and replacement, external finisher top jam cover assembly 1913
 removal and replacement, external finisher top output tray 1825
 removal and replacement, HCI front CMF panel 1699
 removal and replacement, HCI left cover 1695
 removal and replacement, HCI rear cover 1693
 removal and replacement, HCI right cover 1691
 removal and replacement, HCI right door 1697
 removal and replacement, inner finisher front cover assembly 2657
 removal and replacement, inner finisher middle cover assembly 2667
 removal and replacement, inner finisher output tray assembly 2677
 removal and replacement, inner finisher PCA cover 2681

removal and replacement, inner finisher punch cover assembly 2673
removal and replacement, inner finisher rear base cover 2694
removal and replacement, inner finisher rear punch cover 2697
removal and replacement, inner finisher sub stayassembly 2684
removal and replacement, inner finisher top cover assembly 2661
removal and replacement, sHCI door links 1st 1522
removal and replacement, sHCI door links 2nd 1527
removal and replacement, sHCI front cover 1515
removal and replacement, sHCI front top cover 1518
removal and replacement, sHCI harness cover 1502
removal and replacement, sHCI link holder 1532
removal and replacement, sHCI pickup cover 1507
removal and replacement, sHCI rear cover 1500
removal and replacement, sHCI rear top cover 1504
removal and replacement, sHCI right cover 1498
removal and replacement, sHCI top cover 1510
right door 623
right door front damper 632
right door front damper bracket 637
right door front link 627
right door sHCI dummy cover 553
right front cover 565
right middle 576
right middle assembly 568
right rear cover 563
right upper 555
sHCI, remove and replace 1498
side high capacity input door links 1st 1522
side high capacity input door links 2nd 1527
side high capacity input front cover 1515
side high capacity input front top cover 1518
side high capacity input harness cover 1502
side high capacity input link holder 1532
side high capacity input pickup cover 1507
side high capacity input rear cover 1500
side high capacity input rear top cover 1504
side high capacity input right cover 1498
side high capacity input top cover 1510
stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker 215
tie stoppers 608
tray 1 unit 642
tray 2 color panel 619
tray 3 color panel 621
covers 1 of 2
theory of operation 38
covers 2 of 2
theory of operation 39
CPMD 376
CPR
electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3211
CRUM module assembly removal and replacement 1063
CTD
electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3210
parts 3101
CTD sensor assembly removal and replacement 1170
current settings pages 340, 351
D
DC controller communication error 55.WX.YZ error 340, 377
DC controller firmware error 70.WX.YZ error 340, 377
DCF 38
covers, remove and replace 1591
electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3231
harness, remove and replace 1660
motor, remove and replace 1611
PCA, remove and replace 1660
roller, remove and replace 1608
sensor, remove and replace 1624
unit parts, remove and replace 1606
DCF (department) removal and replacement 1591
DCF 1 of 2 parts 3116
DCF 2 of 2 parts 3118
DCF caster wheel removal and replacement 1601
DCF feed drive assembly removal and replacement 1619
DCF feed motor removal and replacement 1621
DCF feed sensor removal and replacement 1655
DCF holder wheel kit removal and replacement 1603
DCF IF harness removal and replacement 1670
DCF left cover removal and replacement 1595
DCF motor harness 2nd removal and replacement 1677
DCF PCA removal and replacement 1664
DCF pickup drive assembly removal and replacement 1611
DCF rear cover removal and replacement 1593

DCF right cover
 removal and
 replacement 1591
 DCF right door
 removal and
 replacement 1597
 DCF right door open switch holder
 removal and
 replacement 1667
 DCF sensor harness 1st
 removal and
 replacement 1680
 DCF sensor harness 2nd
 removal and
 replacement 1684
 DCF size harness
 removal and
 replacement 1688
 DCF Tray 4 paper empty sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1631
 DCF Tray 4 paper stack height
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1631
 DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1627
 DCF Tray 4 pickup motor
 removal and
 replacement 1614
 DCF Tray 4 prefeed sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1635
 DCF Tray 4, 5 cassette
 removal and
 replacement 1606
 DCF Tray 4, 5 color panel
 removal and
 replacement 1599
 DCF Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors
 removal and
 replacement 1624
 DCF Tray 4, 5 rollers
 removal and
 replacement 1608
 DCF Tray 5 paper empty sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1645
 DCF Tray 5 paper stack height
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1645
 DCF Tray 5 pickup assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1640
 DCF Tray 5 pickup motor
 removal and
 replacement 1616
 DCF Tray 5 prefeed sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1649
 DCF tray heaters
 removal and
 replacement 1660
 DCF, Tray 4, 5 174
 cover 174
 feeding system workflow 174
 motor operation 183
 motors 180
 operation 181
 PCA 183
 roller 176
 sensors 178
 unit 175
 decoding
 message 340
 defeating
 interlocks 340, 348, 349
 definitions and terms
 glossary 3275
 Department Dual Cassette Feeder
 (DCF, Tray 4, 5) 174
 covers 174
 feeding system workflow 174
 motor operation 183
 motors 180
 operation 181
 PCA 183
 rollers 176
 sensors 178
 unit 175
 Department High Capacity Input
 tray (HCI, Tray 4) 185
 covers 185
 motor operation 192
 motors 189
 operation 191
 PCA 194
 rollers 187
 sensors 188
 sub PCA 195
 unit 186
 workflow 185
 Department Side High Capacity
 Input device (sHCI, Tray 5 or
 6) 196
 covers 196
 feeding system workflow 198
 motor operation 207
 motors 204
 operation 206
 PCA 208
 rollers 200
 sensors 202
 unit 200
 department stand 172
 deskew operation - 200sh 166
 deskew operation - 200sh
 Flow 166
 deskew operation - 300sh
 Flow 151
 deskew unit - 200sh 162
 deskew unit - 200sh Flow 162
 deskew unit - 300sh Flow 146
 determine problem source 340
 DEV
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 3208
 developer
 parts 3100
 developer and drum
 remove and replace parts 1137
 developer and drum unit
 driving 94
 developer and drum unit
 operation 93
 developer and drum unit
 overview 92
 developer drive assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1154
 developer fan assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1223
 developer motor K
 removal and
 replacement 1164
 developer powder.
 removal and
 replacement 1145
 developer suction duct
 removal and
 replacement 1234
 developer unit 91
 developer unit.
 removal and
 replacement 1140
 diagnostics
 adjustment 340
 component 340, 348, 350
 engine 340, 348, 349

- fax 340
- image management 340
- LED 340, 348
- print test patterns 340
- scanner 340
- diagrams
 - use parts lists and diagrams 526
- digital sending error (firmware)
 - 44.WX.YZ error 340, 377
- dimensions
 - accessories 1, 6
 - printer 1, 6
- diverter unit 312
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2588
 - operation 313
 - overview 312
- diverter unit operation 313
- diverter unit overview 312
- document feeder
 - jams 364
 - locating 1
- document feeder / image scanner assembly
 - parts and diagrams 3107
- document feeder error
 - 31.WX.YZ error 340, 376
- document feeder hinges operation
 - 200sh 167
- document feeder hinges operation
 - 200sh Flow 167
- document feeder hinges operation
 - 300sh Flow 152
- document feeder simplex operation - 200sh 164
- document feeder simplex operation - 200sh Flow 164
- document feeder simplex operation - 300sh Flow 149
- document feeder skew (LX du models) 340
- door open switch and harness
 - removal and replacement 1673
- drive system 38
- drivers, supported 1, 6
- drives
 - feed drive assembly 788
 - tray 2 pickup drive assembly 734
 - tray 3 pickup drive assembly 743
- drum
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3209
 - parts 3100
- drum CRUM PCA 128
- drum drive assembly
 - removal and replacement 1154
- drum motor
 - removal and replacement 1161
- drum unit 91
 - removal and replacement 1137
- dual cassette feeder 38
 - covers, remove and replace 1591
 - harness, remove and replace 1660
 - motor, remove and replace 1611
 - parts and diagrams 3116
 - PCA, remove and replace 1660
 - roller, remove and replace 1608
 - sensor, remove and replace 1624
 - unit parts, remove and replace 1606
- dual cassette feeder (department)
 - removal and replacement 1591
- dual cassette feeder 1 of 2
 - parts 3116
- dual cassette feeder 2 of 2
 - parts 3118
- dual cassette feeder caster wheel
 - removal and replacement 1601
- dual cassette feeder door open switch and harness
 - removal and replacement 1673
- dual cassette feeder feed drive assembly
 - removal and replacement 1619
- dual cassette feeder feed motor
 - removal and replacement 1621
- dual cassette feeder feed sensor
 - removal and replacement 1655
- dual cassette feeder holder wheel kit
 - removal and replacement 1603
- dual cassette feeder IF harness
 - removal and replacement 1670
- dual cassette feeder left cover
 - removal and replacement 1595
- dual cassette feeder motor harness 2nd
 - removal and replacement 1677
- dual cassette feeder PCA
 - removal and replacement 1664
- dual cassette feeder pickup drive assembly
 - removal and replacement 1611
- dual cassette feeder rear cover
 - removal and replacement 1593
- dual cassette feeder right cover
 - removal and replacement 1591
- dual cassette feeder right door
 - removal and replacement 1597
- dual cassette feeder right door open switch holder
 - removal and replacement 1667
- dual cassette feeder sensor harness 1st
 - removal and replacement 1680
- dual cassette feeder sensor harness 2nd
 - removal and replacement 1684
- dual cassette feeder size harness
 - removal and replacement 1688
- dual cassette feeder Tray 4 paper empty sensor
 - removal and replacement 1631
- dual cassette feeder Tray 4 paper stack height sensor
 - removal and replacement 1631

- dual cassette feeder Tray 4 pickup assembly
 - removal and replacement 1627
- dual cassette feeder Tray 4 pickup motor
 - removal and replacement 1614
- dual cassette feeder Tray 4 prefeed sensor
 - removal and replacement 1635
- dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5 cassette
 - removal and replacement 1606
- dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5 color panel
 - removal and replacement 1599
- dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors
 - removal and replacement 1624
- dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5 rollers
 - removal and replacement 1608
- dual cassette feeder Tray 5 paper empty sensor
 - removal and replacement 1645
- dual cassette feeder Tray 5 paper stack height sensor
 - removal and replacement 1645
- dual cassette feeder Tray 5 pickup assembly
 - removal and replacement 1640
- dual cassette feeder Tray 5 pickup motor
 - removal and replacement 1616
- dual cassette feeder Tray 5 prefeed sensor
 - removal and replacement 1649
- dual cassette feeder tray heaters
 - removal and replacement 1660
- duplex
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3203
 - parts 3095
 - duplex 1 motor
 - removal and replacement 979
 - duplex 2 motor
 - removal and replacement 1015
 - duplex assembly
 - removal and replacement 996
 - duplex jam 1 sensor
 - removal and replacement 963
 - duplex jam 2 sensor
 - removal and replacement 1005
 - duplex unit 71
 - remove and replace parts 996
 - duplex unit driving 73
 - duplex unit operation 73
 - duplexer error
 - 69.WX.YZ error 340, 377

E

- easy-access USB port
 - locating 1
- echo PCA 124
 - removal and replacement 1299
- ejector unit 254, 329
 - external finisher, remove and replace 2174
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2960
 - operation 256, 331
 - overview 254, 329
- ejector unit operation 331
- ejector unit overview 329
- electrical mechanical relationships
 - base printer 3197
- electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3197
 - booklet finisher 3253
 - CPR 3211
 - CTD 3210
 - DCF 3231
 - DEV 3208
 - drum 3209
 - duplex 3203
 - exit unit 3202
 - fuser 3212
 - HCI 3235
 - inner finisher 3243
 - input devices 3231
 - lsu 3207
 - output devices 3243
 - PCA 3215
 - registration and loop sensors 3201
 - reservoir 3205
 - sensor fan 3213
 - sHCI 3240
 - stapler-stacker finisher 3253
 - toner cartridge 3204
 - toner collection unit 3206
 - tray 1 3197
 - tray 2/3 3199
- electrical specifications 1, 6
- electrostatic discharge (ESD) 527
- Embedded Jetdirect error
 - 80.WX.YZ error 340, 378
- end fence unit 245, 321
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2414
 - external finisher, remove and replace 2030
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2881
 - operation 246, 322
 - overview 245, 321
- end fence unit operation 322
- end fence unit overview 321
- engine
 - control panel, remove and replace parts 1257
 - covers, remove and replace 529
 - covers, service parts 3086
 - CTD, service parts 3101
 - developer and drum, remove and replace parts 1137
 - developer, service parts 3099
 - diagnostics 340, 348, 349
 - drum, service parts 3100
 - duplex, service parts 3095
 - duplex unit, remove and replace parts 996
 - environmental sensor, switch, and fan 1204
 - exit unit, service parts 3094
 - exit unit, remove and replace parts 886
 - fan, service parts 3104
 - feeding system, remove and replace parts 623
 - feeding system, right door assemblies remove and replace parts 623
 - feeding system, service parts 3089

feeding system, Tray 1 unit
 remove and replace parts 642
 feeding system, Tray 2-3 units
 remove and replace parts 692
 fuser unit, remove and replace parts 1177
 fuser, service parts 3103
 image creation, remove and replace parts 1132
 image creation, service parts 3099
 laser scanner unit, remove and replace parts 1132
 laser scanner unit, service parts 3099
 loop sensing unit, remove and replace parts 816
 LSU, remove and replace parts 1132
 main PCAs, remove and replace parts 1260
 main printed circuit assembly, remove and replace parts 1260
 PCA, service parts 3105
 PCAs, remove and replace parts 1260
 power supply PCAs, remove and replace parts 1321
 power supply printed circuit assembly, remove and replace parts 1321
 printed circuit assembly, remove and replace parts 1260
 PTB, service parts 3102
 registration and loop sensors, service parts 3092
 registration unit, remove and replace parts 816
 remove and replace parts 529
 reservoir , service parts 3097
 reservoir unit, remove and replace parts 1084
 sensor, service parts 3104
 sub PCAs, remove and replace parts 1283
 sub printed circuit assembly, remove and replace parts 1283
 toner cartridge, remove and replace parts 1022
 toner cartridge, service parts 3096
 toner collection unit, remove and replace parts 1114
 toner collection unit, service parts 3098
 toner flow, remove and replace parts 1022
 toner flow, service parts 3096
 tray 1, service parts 3089
 tray 2, 3, service parts 3091
 engine error (LaserJet)
 46.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 63.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 engine error (PageWide)
 61.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 engine, printer
 parts and diagrams 3086
 entrance unit 229, 310
 booklet finisher, remove and replace 2362
 external finisher, remove and replace 1888
 inner finisher, remove and replace 2730
 overview 230, 310
 entrance unit overview 310
 environmental sensor 105
 environmental sensor, fan, switch
 overview 105
 environmental sensor, switch, and fan
 remove and replace parts 1204
 eraser PCA 129
 error
 fault 340
 ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 527
 Ethernet (RJ-45)
 locating 3
 event log 340, 351
 clear using touchscreen control panel 340, 351
 find links to information 354
 event log error (firmware)
 42.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 exit 2 motor
 removal and replacement 933
 exit 2 sensor
 removal and replacement 948
 exit cover stacker
 removal and replacement 597
 exit rear cover
 removal and replacement 538
 exit stack guide
 removal and replacement 994
 exit unit 66, 314
 electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3202
 inner finisher, remove and replace 2778
 overview 314
 parts 3094
 removal and replacement 886
 remove and replace parts 886
 exit unit driving 71
 exit unit for duplex printing 70
 exit unit for simplex printing 69
 exit unit overview 314
 exploded parts views, use parts lists and diagrams 526
 external booklet 2 of 5 parts 3146
 external finisher
 bridge unit, remove and replace 1864
 buffer unit, remove and replace 2329
 covers, remove and replace 1801
 ejector unit, remove and replace 2174
 end fence unit, remove and replace 2030
 entrance unit, remove and replace 1888
 main exit unit, remove and replace 1976
 main output tray unit, remove and replace 2249
 paddle unit, remove and replace 2004
 paper holding unit, remove and replace 2292
 punch unit, remove and replace 1911
 stapler unit, remove and replace 2138
 tamper unit, remove and replace 2072
 top exit unit, remove and replace 1940
 top output tray unit, remove and replace 1957
 tray diverter unit, remove and replace 1913

external finisher booklet front cover
removal and
replacement 1862

external finisher booklet output tray
removal and
replacement 1823

external finisher bridge door sensor
removal and
replacement 1868

external finisher bridge entrance sensor
removal and
replacement 1872

external finisher bridge exit sensor
removal and
replacement 1877

external finisher bridge motor
removal and
replacement 1883

external finisher bridge unit
removal and
replacement 1865

external finisher buffer motor
removal and
replacement 2336

external finisher buffer solenoid assembly
removal and
replacement 2329

external finisher caster
removal and
replacement 1857

external finisher caster cover
removal and
replacement 1803

external finisher caster fix nut
removal and
replacement 1860

external finisher ejector 1 home sensor
removal and
replacement 2204

external finisher ejector 1 motor sensor
removal and
replacement 2219

external finisher ejector 2 motor sensor
removal and
replacement 2234

external finisher ejector sensor
removal and
replacement 2187

external finisher ejector unit
removal and
replacement 2174

external finisher end fence home sensor
removal and
replacement 2030

external finisher end fence motor
removal and
replacement 2049

external finisher end fence motor assembly
removal and
replacement 2044

external finisher entrance motor
removal and
replacement 1907

external finisher entrance motor assembly
removal and
replacement 1903

external finisher entrance sensor
removal and
replacement 1888

external finisher exit motor
removal and
replacement 1954

external finisher exit motor assembly
removal and
replacement 1950

external finisher front cover
removal and
replacement 1832

external finisher front door
removal and
replacement 1801

external finisher front door switch
removal and
replacement 1998

external finisher front lower left cover
removal and
replacement 1848

external finisher front lower right cover
removal and
replacement 1853

external finisher front paper holding sensor
removal and
replacement 2292

external finisher front tamper
removal and
replacement 2072

external finisher front tamper home sensor
removal and
replacement 2083

external finisher front tamper motor
removal and
replacement 2094

external finisher left lower cover
removal and
replacement 1805

external finisher left upper cover
removal and
replacement 1813

external finisher main exit cam home sensor
removal and
replacement 1988

external finisher main exit cam motor
removal and
replacement 1993

external finisher main exit cam motor assembly
removal and
replacement 1983

external finisher main exit sensor
removal and
replacement 1976

external finisher main output tray
removal and
replacement 1828, 2249

external finisher main output tray lower limit sensor
removal and
replacement 2263

external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly
removal and
replacement 2279

external finisher main output tray motor sensor
removal and
replacement 2275

external finisher main output tray top of stack sensor
removal and
replacement 2251

external finisher main output tray top of stack switch
removal and
replacement 2282

external finisher main output tray
top of stack switch guide
removal and
replacement 2054

external finisher main output tray
top of stack switch lower guide
removal and
replacement 2063

external finisher mounting
brackets
removal and
replacement 2647

external finisher paddle
removal and
replacement 2004

external finisher paddle home
sensor
removal and
replacement 2019

external finisher paddle motor
removal and
replacement 2025

external finisher paddle motor
assembly
removal and
replacement 2014

external finisher paper holding
home sensor
removal and
replacement 2305

external finisher paper holding
motor drive assembly
removal and
replacement 2317

external finisher punch cover
removal and
replacement 1837

external finisher punch unit
removal and replacement 1911

external finisher rear cover
removal and
replacement 1830

external finisher rear paper
holding sensor
removal and
replacement 2292

external finisher rear tamper
removal and
replacement 2105

external finisher rear tamper home
sensor
removal and
replacement 2115

external finisher rear tamper
motor
removal and
replacement 2126

external finisher right upper cover
removal and
replacement 1845

external finisher shaft hinge - door
removal and
replacement 1855

external finisher staple cartridge
removal and
replacement 2144

external finisher stapler front
sensor
removal and
replacement 2146

external finisher stapler manual
staple sensor
removal and
replacement 2160

external finisher stapler mid-front
sensor
removal and
replacement 2153

external finisher stapler mid-rear
sensor
removal and
replacement 2153

external finisher stapler position
motor
removal and
replacement 2166

external finisher stapler unit
removal and
replacement 2138

external finisher stapler/stacker or
booklet finishers
removal and
replacement 1801

external finisher top cover
removal and
replacement 1839

external finisher top door
removal and
replacement 1841

external finisher top door open
switch
removal and
replacement 1921

external finisher top exit sensor
removal and
replacement 1941

external finisher top jam cover
assembly
removal and
replacement 1913

external finisher top lower feed
assembly
removal and
replacement 1957

external finisher top output tray
removal and
replacement 1825

external finisher top output tray
paper full sensor
removal and
replacement 1969

external finisher tray diverter
removal and replacement 1917

external finisher tray diverter cam
removal and
replacement 1925

external finisher tray diverter
home sensor
removal and
replacement 1933

external finisher tray extension
removal and
replacement 1966

external finisher, booklet maker
parts and diagrams 3144

external finisher, stapler/stacker
parts and diagrams 3137

F

fan error
58.WX.YZ error 340, 377

fans 105

FDB fan 1215

laser scanner unit fan 1241

LVPS fan 1212

parts 3104

fax card
removal and
replacement 1318

Fax menu (fax models only), control
panel 340, 351, 379, 471

FDB
removal and
replacement 1328

FDB fan
removal and
replacement 1215

feed 2 sensor
removal and replacement 806

- feed drive assembly
 - removal and replacement 788
- feed motor
 - removal and replacement 796
 - Tray 2 58
- feed roller
 - Tray 2 58
- feed sensor
 - Tray 2 58
- feeding system 38, 40
 - cassette 40
 - duplex unit 71
 - duplex unit driving 73
 - duplex unit operation 73
 - exit unit 66
 - exit unit driving 71
 - exit unit for duplex printing 70
 - exit unit for simplex printing 69
 - job separator 69
 - loop sensing 63
 - loop sensor 65
 - main components and functions 40
 - motors 45
 - MP feeder assembly 40
 - overview 40
 - page size sensor 58
 - pickup unit 40
 - registration unit 40, 63, 65
 - registration unit driving 66
 - remove and replace parts 623
 - right door assemblies, remove and replace parts 623
 - rollers 40, 41
 - sensor, motor, and solenoid 40
 - sensors 43
 - solenoids 45
 - Tray 1 47
 - Tray 1 unit, remove and replace parts 642
 - Tray 2 cassette 52
 - Tray 2 pickup assembly 53
 - Tray 2-3 units, remove and replace parts 692
 - Tray 3 cassette 52
 - Tray 3 pickup assembly 53
 - tray heater 58
 - workflow 41
- feeding system information 40, 52
 - duplex unit 71
 - exit unit 66
 - loop sensing 63
- registration unit 63
 - Tray 1 unit 47
 - Tray 2 unit 51
 - Tray 3 unit 51
- feeding system overview 40
- feeding system workflow 41
- FFC
 - automatic document feeder 1386
- finisher main PCA - shared 291
- firmware communication error 49.WX.YZ error 340, 377
- firmware install error 99.WX.YZ error 340, 378
- hard disk error 340, 378
- remote firmware upgrade error 340, 378
- flat-flexible cable
 - automatic document feeder 1386
- flatbed scanner
 - covers 1473
 - harness 1476
 - PCA 1476
 - sensor 1476
 - whole unit replacement 1466
- flatbed scanner (Tarot)
 - removal and replacement 1466
- flatbed scanner system 38
- flatbed, FFC 50 pin
 - removal and replacement 1480
- flatbed, FFC 68 pin
 - removal and replacement 1485
- flatbed, open sensor
 - removal and replacement 1495
- flatbed, PCA
 - removal and replacement 1476
- flatbed, power cable
 - removal and replacement 1490
- flatbed, rear cover
 - removal and replacement 1473
- flatbed, whole unit
 - removal and replacement 1466
- flow ADF skew (LX du models) 340
- fold unit
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2530
- formatter 114
 - locating 1, 2
 - removal and replacement 1260
- formatter lights 340, 348
- front cover
 - removal and replacement 613
- front cover CMF panel
 - removal and replacement 615
- front door
 - locating 1
- front door switch
 - removal and replacement 1245
- front lower cover
 - removal and replacement 610
- fuser
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3212
 - jams 368
 - parts 3103
- fuser and exit drive assembly
 - removal and replacement 1180
- fuser and exit motor
 - removal and replacement 1185
- fuser CRUM PCA 129
- fuser drive assembly 38
- fuser drive board
 - removal and replacement 1328
- fuser drive board (FDB) 134
- fuser drive board fan
 - removal and replacement 1215
- fuser driving 104
- fuser error
 - 41.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 - laser scanner error 340, 377
 - paper path error 340, 377
- fuser error (LaserJet) 50.WX.YZ error 340, 377
- fuser gap motor
 - removal and replacement 1190
- fuser gap sensor 102
 - removal and replacement 1194
- fuser out sensor
 - removal and replacement 877

fuser out sensor harness
 removal and replacement 881
 fuser unit 99
 overview 100
 removal and replacement 1178
 remove and replace parts 1177
 fuser unit temperature
 control 102
 fuser ventilation duct
 removal and
 replacement 1237
 fuser wrap jam sensor 103

G

General Settings menu, control
 panel 340, 351, 379, 398
 general specifications 1, 6
 glass cleaning
 image scanner and flat-bed
 glass 171
 glossary
 terms and definitions 3275
 guide toner cartridge assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1072
 guides
 cable guide 1167

H

hard disk
 removal and
 replacement 1279
 hard disk cradle
 removal and
 replacement 1273
 hard disk drive 122
 hard disk partition error
 98.WX.YZ error 340, 378
 hard-disk drive rivet
 removal and replacement 1271
 hardware configuration 38, 112
 accelerator 121
 Control panel 10.1 inches
 PCA 131
 Control panel 8 inches
 PCA 131
 control panel PCA 130
 drum CRUM PCA 128
 echo PCA 124
 eraser PCA 129
 formatter 114
 fuser CRUM PCA 129
 fuser drive board (FDB) 134
 hard disk drive 122

high-voltage power supply
 (HVPS) 132
 island of data (IOD) 123
 keyboard PCA 125
 low-voltage power supply
 (LVPS) 133
 overview 112
 paper size sensor PCA 127
 PCA overview 112
 power key PCA 124
 riser card 119
 riser card for HDD 119
 riser card for HDD and USB
 ports 120
 riser card for HDD, USB ports,
 and accelerator board 121
 toner cartridge CRUM
 PCA 128
 Toner Collection Unit full sensor
 PCA 127
 Trusted Platform Module
 (TPM) 119
 USB hub PCA 123
 hardware configuration
 information 112
 hardware integration pocket (HIP)
 locating 1
 hardware integration pocket (HIP)
 is not functioning 340, 343,
 347
 hardware integration pocket [HIP]
 removal and replacement 593
 harnesses
 DCF, remove and
 replace 1660
 flatbed scanner 1476
 HCI, remove and replace 1779
 removal and replacement, DCF
 IF harness 1670
 removal and replacement, dual
 cassette feeder door open
 switch and harness 1673
 removal and replacement, dual
 cassette feeder IF
 harness 1670
 removal and replacement, dual
 cassette feeder motor
 harness 2nd 1677
 removal and replacement, dual
 cassette feeder sensor
 harness 1st 1680
 removal and replacement, dual
 cassette feeder sensor
 harness 2nd 1684

removal and replacement, dual
 cassette feeder size
 harness 1688
 removal and replacement, high
 capacity input DC motor
 IF 1791
 removal and replacement, high
 capacity input inner drawer
 IF 1797
 removal and replacement, high
 capacity input main IF
 harness 1786
 removal and replacement, high
 capacity input motor
 IF 1793
 removal and replacement, high
 capacity input sub tray IF
 harness 1788
 HCI 38
 covers, remove and
 replace 1691
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 3235
 harness, remove and
 replace 1779
 motor, remove and
 replace 1717
 PCA, remove and replace 1779
 roller, remove and
 replace 1714
 sensor, remove and
 replace 1741
 unit parts, remove and
 replace 1705
 HCI (department)
 removal and
 replacement 1691
 HCI 1 of 2
 parts 3120
 HCI 2 of 2
 parts 3122
 HCI cassette
 removal and
 replacement 1708
 HCI caster wheel
 removal and replacement 1701
 HCI DC motor IF
 removal and replacement 1791
 HCI feed motor drive
 removal and
 replacement 1733
 HCI feed sensor
 removal and replacement 1747

HCI front CMF panel
 removal and
 replacement 1699
 HCI gate solenoid home sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1772, 1775
 HCI holder wheel kit
 removal and
 replacement 1702
 HCI inner drawer IF
 removal and
 replacement 1797
 HCI knockup home sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1756
 HCI knockup plate
 removal and
 replacement 1726
 HCI left rear
 removal and
 replacement 1695
 HCI lift motor
 removal and replacement 1717
 HCI main IF harness
 removal and
 replacement 1786
 HCI motor IF
 removal and
 replacement 1793
 HCI paper gate
 removal and
 replacement 1730
 HCI PCA
 removal and
 replacement 1779
 HCI pickup assembly
 removal and replacement 1710
 HCI pickup motor drive
 removal and
 replacement 1735
 HCI prefeed 4 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1742
 HCI right cover
 removal and
 replacement 1691
 HCI right door
 removal and
 replacement 1697
 HCI right rear
 removal and
 replacement 1693
 HCI rollers
 removal and replacement 1714
 HCI shift gate solenoid
 removal and
 replacement 1738
 HCI shift motor
 removal and replacement 1717
 HCI shift plate
 removal and replacement 1721
 HCI shift tray empty sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1765
 HCI shift tray end sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1756
 HCI shift tray home sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1765
 HCI shift tray level sensor 1 and 2
 removal and
 replacement 1762
 HCI sub PCA
 removal and
 replacement 1782
 HCI sub tray IF harness
 removal and
 replacement 1788
 HCI Tray 4 paper empty sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1753
 HCI Tray 4 paper stack height
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1753
 HCI tray open sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1769
 HCI unit
 removal and
 replacement 1705
 HCI, Tray 4 185
 covers 185
 motor operation 192
 motors 189
 operation 191
 PCA 194
 rollers 187
 sensors 188
 sub PCA 195
 unit 186
 workflow 185
 HDD
 removal and
 replacement 1279
 HDD, cradle
 removal and
 replacement 1273
 HDD, riser card and cradle
 removal and
 replacement 1267
 Help button
 locating 4
 Hi-Speed USB 2.0 printing port
 locating 3
 high capacity input
 covers, remove and
 replace 1691
 harness, remove and
 replace 1779
 motor, remove and
 replace 1717
 parts and diagrams 3120
 PCA, remove and replace 1779
 roller, remove and
 replace 1714
 sensor, remove and
 replace 1741
 unit parts, remove and
 replace 1705
 high capacity input (department)
 removal and
 replacement 1691
 high capacity input 1 of 2
 parts 3120
 high capacity input 2 of 2
 parts 3122
 high capacity input cassette
 removal and
 replacement 1708
 high capacity input caster wheel
 removal and replacement 1701
 high capacity input DC motor IF
 removal and replacement 1791
 high capacity input feed motor
 drive
 removal and
 replacement 1733
 high capacity input feed sensor
 removal and replacement 1747
 high capacity input front CMF
 panel
 removal and
 replacement 1699
 high capacity input gate solenoid
 home sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1772, 1775
 high capacity input holder wheel
 kit
 removal and
 replacement 1702

high capacity input inner drawer IF
 removal and
 replacement 1797
 high capacity input knockup home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1756
 high capacity input knockup plate
 removal and
 replacement 1726
 high capacity input left cover
 removal and
 replacement 1695
 high capacity input lift motor
 removal and replacement 1717
 high capacity input main IF
 harness
 removal and
 replacement 1786
 high capacity input motor IF
 removal and
 replacement 1793
 high capacity input paper gate
 removal and
 replacement 1730
 high capacity input PCA
 removal and
 replacement 1779
 high capacity input pickup
 assembly
 removal and replacement 1710
 high capacity input pickup motor
 drive
 removal and
 replacement 1735
 high capacity input prefeed 4
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1742
 high capacity input rear cover
 removal and
 replacement 1693
 high capacity input right cover
 removal and
 replacement 1691
 high capacity input right door
 removal and
 replacement 1697
 high capacity input rollers
 removal and replacement 1714
 high capacity input shift gate
 solenoid
 removal and
 replacement 1738
 high capacity input shift motor
 removal and replacement 1717
 high capacity input shift plate
 removal and replacement 1721
 high capacity input shift tray
 empty sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1765
 high capacity input shift tray end
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1756
 high capacity input shift tray home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1765
 high capacity input shift tray level
 sensor 1 and 2
 removal and
 replacement 1762
 high capacity input sub PCA
 removal and
 replacement 1782
 high capacity input sub tray IF
 harness
 removal and
 replacement 1788
 high capacity input tray 38
 high capacity input Tray 4 paper
 empty sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1753
 high capacity input Tray 4 paper
 stack height sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1753
 high capacity input tray open
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1769
 high capacity input unit
 removal and
 replacement 1705
 high voltage power supply
 PCA 38
 high-voltage power supply
 removal and
 replacement 1321
 high-voltage power supply
 (HVPS) 132
 hinge kit
 automatic document
 feeder 1398
 automatic document feeder,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1451
 Home button
 locating 4
 home button is
 unresponsive 340, 343, 346
 HP internal users
 WISE 369
 HP Jetdirect print server
 lights 340, 348
 HVPS
 removal and
 replacement 1321
I
 image creation 38, 86
 color toner density (CTD)
 sensor cleaning 96
 color toner density (CTD)
 sensor operation 95
 developer and drum unit 91
 developer and drum unit
 driving 94
 developer and drum unit
 operation 93
 developer and drum unit
 overview 92
 fuser driving 104
 fuser gap sensor 102
 fuser unit 99, 100
 fuser unit temperature
 control 102
 fuser wrap jam sensor 103
 Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) 89
 Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)
 operation 91
 Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)
 overview 90
 motor 89
 overview 86, 87
 Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) 96
 paper transfer belt (PTB)
 driving 99
 paper transfer belt (PTB)
 operation 98
 paper transfer belt (PTB)
 overview 96
 remove and replace
 parts 1132
 sensors 87
 workflow 87
 image creation information 87,
 89, 91, 96, 99

- image quality 378
 - black lines, vertical 340
 - blurred image 340
 - flow ADF or ADF skew (LX du models) 340
 - foggy image 340
 - jitter image 340
 - light image 340
 - light lines, vertical 340
 - periodic black dots, horizontal 340
 - periodic black lines, horizontal 340
 - periodic light/dark dots, horizontal 340
 - periodic light/dark lines, horizontal 340
 - poor fusing 340
 - skewed image 340
 - stain on back side 340
 - standard tone, setting 340
 - uneven pitch 340
 - white lines, vertical 340
- image scanner
 - covers, flatbed 1473
 - harness, flatbed 1476
 - PCA, flatbed 1476
 - sensor, flatbed 1476
 - whole unit replacement 1466
- image scanner and flat-bed glass cleaning 171
- image scanner assembly
 - parts and diagrams 3107
- Image Scanner Assembly (ISA)
 - ADF - 200sh 155
 - ADF - 200sh Flow 155
 - ADF - 300sh Flow 135
 - Tarot Platen 169
- image scanner assembly/ document feeder
 - parts and diagrams 3107
- individual component
 - diagnostics 340, 348
- information
 - general 340
 - print reports 340
 - software version 340
 - supply status 340
- inner cover
 - removal and replacement 600
- inner finisher 296
 - cover 300
 - covers, remove and replace 2657
 - detailed specifications 296
- diverter unit 312
- ejector unit 329
- ejector unit, remove and replace 2960
- electrical mechanical relationships
 - diagrams 3243
- end fence unit 321
- end fence unit, remove and replace 2881
- entrance unit 310
- entrance unit, remove and replace 2730
- exit unit 314
- exit unit, remove and replace 2778
- main PCA 336
- output tray 332
- output tray, remove and replace 2968
- overview 302
- paddle unit 318
- paddle unit, remove and replace 2854
- paper holding unit 332
- paper holding unit, remove and replace 2968
- paper support unit 316
- paper support unit, remove and replace 2816
- parts and diagrams 3128
- PCA 336
- PCA, remove and replace 3046
- punch unit 307
- punch unit, remove and replace 2715
- rail, remove and replace 2650
- rear joint PCA 338
- removal and replacement 2649, 2650
- staple and staple cartridge 327
- stapler unit 325
- stapler unit, remove and replace 2933
- switch, remove and replace 3046
- tamper unit 323
- tamper unit, remove and replace 2892
- whole unit, remove and replace 2650
- inner finisher 1 of 5
 - parts 3128
- inner finisher 2 of 5
 - parts 3129
- inner finisher 3 of 5
 - parts 3131
- inner finisher 4 of 5
 - parts 3133
- inner finisher 5 of 5
 - parts 3135
- inner finisher detailed specifications 296
- inner finisher docking sensor
 - removal and replacement 3082
- inner finisher ejector
 - removal and replacement 2960
- inner finisher end fence sensor
 - removal and replacement 2881
- inner finisher entrance motor
 - removal and replacement 2745
- inner finisher entrance motor assembly
 - removal and replacement 2735
- inner finisher entrance motor timing belt
 - removal and replacement 2755
- inner finisher entrance roller
 - removal and replacement 2760
- inner finisher entrance sensor
 - removal and replacement 2730
- inner finisher exit bin full
 - removal and replacement 2712
- inner finisher exit motor
 - removal and replacement 2811
- inner finisher exit motor assembly
 - removal and replacement 2807
- inner finisher exit roller assembly
 - removal and replacement 2778
- inner finisher exit sensor
 - removal and replacement 2787
- inner finisher exit sensor actuator
 - removal and replacement 2797

inner finisher front cover assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2657
 inner finisher front cover switch
 removal and
 replacement 3067
 inner finisher front paper support
 removal and
 replacement 2847
 inner finisher front tamper
 removal and
 replacement 2892
 inner finisher front tamper home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2906
 inner finisher front tamper motor
 removal and
 replacement 2899
 inner finisher guide rails
 removal and
 replacement 2653
 inner finisher hole punch
 removal and
 replacement 2715
 inner finisher lock release handle
 removal and
 replacement 2699
 inner finisher main interface
 harness
 removal and
 replacement 2701
 inner finisher main paddle
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2854
 inner finisher main paddle home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2870
 inner finisher main paddle motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2877
 inner finisher main PCA 336
 inner finisher middle cover
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2667
 inner finisher middle roller
 removal and
 replacement 2771
 inner finisher output tray assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2677
 inner finisher output tray lower
 limit switch assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2986
 inner finisher output tray motor
 removal and
 replacement 2974
 inner finisher output tray motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2968
 inner finisher output tray motor
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2980
 inner finisher output tray top of
 stack sensor kit
 removal and
 replacement 2992
 inner finisher overview 302
 motor and solenoid 304
 PCA 306
 roller 305
 sensor 303
 workflow 302
 inner finisher paper holding
 actuator
 removal and
 replacement 3003
 inner finisher paper holding kit
 removal and
 replacement 3014
 inner finisher paper holding sensor
 removal and
 replacement 3035
 inner finisher paper holding
 solenoid
 removal and
 replacement 3024
 inner finisher paper support home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2823
 inner finisher paper support motor
 removal and
 replacement 2839
 inner finisher paper support motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2831
 inner finisher PCA
 removal and
 replacement 3046
 inner finisher PCA cover
 removal and
 replacement 2681
 inner finisher punch cover
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2673
 inner finisher punch waste full
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2720
 inner finisher rear base cover
 removal and
 replacement 2694
 inner finisher rear joint PCA 338
 removal and
 replacement 3057
 inner finisher rear paper support
 removal and
 replacement 2816
 inner finisher rear punch cover
 removal and
 replacement 2697
 inner finisher rear tamper
 removal and
 replacement 2913
 inner finisher rear tamper home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2926
 inner finisher rear tamper motor
 removal and
 replacement 2919
 inner finisher staple cartridge
 removal and
 replacement 2937
 inner finisher stapler assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2933
 inner finisher stapler position
 motor
 removal and
 replacement 2951
 inner finisher stapler position
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2939
 inner finisher sub paddle assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2863
 inner finisher sub stay assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2684

- inner finisher top cover assembly
 - removal and replacement 2661
- inner finisher top cover switch
 - removal and replacement 3078
- input accessory error
 - 67.WX.YZ error 340, 377
- input device (department)
 - removal and replacement 1498
- input devices
 - DCF, Tray 4, 5 174
 - department stand 172
 - electrical mechanical relationships
 - diagrams 3231
 - HCI, Tray 4 185
 - parts and diagrams 3115
 - sHCI, Tray 5 or 6 196
- Input devices 172
- input tray
 - automatic document feeder 1372
- input/output error
 - 40.WX.YZ error 340, 377
- Integrated Scan Asset (ISA) 135
- integrated scanner assembly
 - flatbed (Tarot), removal and replacement 1466
 - removal and replacement 1333
 - removal and replacement dn bundle 1338
 - removal and replacement z bundle 1333
- integrated scanner asset
 - 200-sheet dn bundle, whole unit replacement 1337
 - 300-sheet z bundle, whole unit replacement 1333
 - whole unit replacement 1333
- integrated-scanner assembly
 - parts 3108
- interface ports
 - locating 2, 3
- interlocks
 - defeating 340, 348, 349
- internal diagnostics error
 - 90.WX.YZ error 340, 378
 - video display error 340, 378
- IOD 123
 - removal and replacement 1295
- ISA
 - parts 3108
 - parts and diagrams 3107
 - removal and replacement 1333
 - removal and replacement dn bundle 1338
 - removal and replacement flatbed, FFC 50 pin 1480
 - removal and replacement flatbed, FFC 68 pin 1485
 - removal and replacement flatbed, open sensor 1495
 - removal and replacement flatbed, PCA 1476
 - removal and replacement flatbed, power cable 1490
 - removal and replacement flatbed, rear cover 1473
 - removal and replacement flatbed, whole unit 1466
 - removal and replacement z bundle 1333
 - whole unit replacement 1333
- ISA, 200-sheet
 - dn bundle, whole unit replacement 1337
- ISA, 300-sheet
 - z bundle, whole unit replacement 1333
- island of data
 - removal and replacement 1295
- island of data (IOD) 123
- J**
 - jam error (LaserJet)
 - 13.WX.YZ error 340, 376
 - jam error (PageWide)
 - 13.WX.YZ error 340, 376
 - jams
 - 520-sheet trays 366
 - auto-navigation 363
 - causes of 364
 - document feeder 364
 - fuser 368
 - locations 340, 362
 - output bin 368
 - right door 368
 - Tray 1 366
 - Tray 2 366
 - Tray 3 366
 - Jetdirect print server
 - lights 340, 348
- job accounting error (firmware)
 - 48.WX.YZ error 340, 377
- job management error (firmware) 340, 377
- job pipeline error (firmware) 340, 377
- job parser error (firmware)
 - 47.WX.YZ error 340, 377
- printer calibration error 340, 377
- job separator 69
- K**
 - keyboard
 - removal and replacement 1312
 - keyboard PCA 125
 - kits
 - removal and replacement, sHCI
 - Tray 5 or 6 tray roller kit 1546
 - tray 1 roller 689
 - tray 2/3 rollers 703, 757
- L**
 - LAN port
 - locating 3
 - laser scanner assembly 38
 - laser scanner error (LaserJet)
 - 51.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 - 52.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 - laser scanner unit
 - parts 3099
 - removal and replacement 1132
 - remove and replace parts 1132
 - laser scanner unit fan
 - removal and replacement 1241
 - Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) 89
 - Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)
 - operation 91
 - Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)
 - overview 90
 - LEDs
 - See* lights
 - left cover
 - removal and replacement 547
 - left top cover
 - removal and replacement 541
 - left upper cover
 - removal and replacement 543
 - lift plate unit - 200sh 159
 - lift plate unit - 200sh Flow 159

lift plate unit - 300sh Flow 141
 lights
 formatter 340, 348
 troubleshooting with 340, 348
 local area network (LAN)
 locating 3
 loop actuator
 removal and replacement 867
 loop sensing 63
 loop sensing unit
 remove and replace parts 816
 loop sensor 65
 operation 65
 loop sensor 1
 removal and replacement 851
 loop sensor 2
 removal and replacement 859
 low voltage power supply 38
 low-voltage power supply
 removal and
 replacement 1324
 low-voltage power supply
 (LVPS) 133
 low-voltage power supply fan
 removal and replacement 1212
 low-voltage power supply fuser
 drive board fan assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1219
 lsu
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 3207
 LSU
 parts 3099
 removal and
 replacement 1132
 remove and replace
 parts 1132
 LSU fan
 removal and replacement 1241
 LVPS
 removal and
 replacement 1324
 LVPS fan
 removal and replacement 1212
 LVPS FDB fan assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1219

M

machine cleaning for
 maintenance 27
 cleaning the ADF) 27
 cleaning the paper dust
 stick 27
 cleaning the scan glass 27
 main exit unit 240
 external finisher, remove and
 replace 1976
 operation 241
 overview 240
 main output tray unit 257
 external finisher, remove and
 replace 2249
 overview 257
 main printed circuit assembly
 remove and replace
 parts 1260
 maintenance 27
 machine cleaning for
 maintenance 27
 preventive maintenance 27
 maintenance counts
 part replacement count 340
 Maintenance menu, control
 panel 514
 maintenance parts 1, 6, 15
 manual staple PCA 295
 memory error
 82.WX.YZ error 340, 378
 EMMC error 340, 378
 hard disk error 340, 378
 menu
 Support Tools menu 476
 menu map 340, 351
 menus, control panel
 Advanced Print Quality
 Pages 524
 Altitude Adjustment 511
 Auto Tone adjustment 515
 Backup/Restore 515
 Buckle Adjustment 484
 Calibrate Scanner 516
 Calibrate/Cleaning 340, 351,
 379
 Cold Reset Paper 481
 Component tests 503
 Configuration/Status
 Pages 519
 Consumables Access
 Control 482
 Copy (MFP only) 340, 351, 379,
 434
 Counts 478
 coverage report 479
 CTD Sensor Cleaning 516
 Custom Color 515
 Engine NVM Read/Write 494

Event Log 478, 524
 Fax (fax models only) 340, 351,
 379, 471
 Fax Reports 520
 Fax Service Log 521
 Fax Speaker Mode 521
 Fax T.30 Trace Report 520
 Fax V.29 Speed 514
 Fax V.34 521
 Finisher Adjustment 485
 Footer 513
 General Settings 340, 351,
 379, 398
 Humidity 512
 Import/Export 515
 JBIG Compression 521
 License Management 516
 Low Alerts 481
 Low-temperature Idling
 Mode 510
 Maintenance 514
 Manage Trays 340, 351, 379,
 476
 Manual Tone Adjustment 516
 Other Pages 520
 Paper Path Page 524
 Part Replacement Count 513
 PQ Troubleshooting Pages 521
 Print 340, 351, 379, 475
 Print Adjustment 483
 PTT Test Mode 513
 Reports 340, 351, 379, 396
 Reset Engine NVM 493
 Reset Supplies 514
 Reset Supplies Level 481
 Retrieve Diagnostic Data 524
 Retrieve Fax Diagnostic
 Data 525
 Run Fax Test 524
 Scan 443
 Scan (MFP only) 340, 351, 379
 Scanner Settings 479
 Sensors 495
 Serial Number 480
 Service 476
 Service ID 480
 Service Reports 483
 Software Version 482
 Supplies 340, 351, 379, 475
 Test Support 513
 Toner Density Calibration 516
 TR Control Mode 509
 Troubleshooting 519
 USB Firmware Upgrade 516
 Vapor Mode 512

middle left cover
 removal and replacement 594
 middle upper cover
 removal and replacement 551
 miscellaneous parts
 booklet finisher, remove and
 replace 2647
 motor error (LaserJet)
 59.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 motors
 DCF, remove and replace 1611
 developer motor K 1164
 drum, removal and
 replacement 1161
 duplex 1 motor 979
 duplex 2 motor 1015
 exit 2 motor 933
 feed motor 796
 fuser and exit motor 1185
 fuser gap motor 1190
 HCI, remove and replace 1717
 PTB, removal and
 replacement 1161
 registration motor 837
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher booklet
 blade motor 2575
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher booklet fold
 motor 2584
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher booklet fold
 motor assembly 2580
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 motor 2553
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 motor assembly 2548
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher diverter
 motor 2616
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher diverter
 motor assembly 2610
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher end fence
 motor 2426
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher entrance
 motor 2391
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher entrance-
 presser motor
 assembly 2387
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher paddle
 motor 2409
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher paddle
 motor assembly 2405
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher tamper
 motor 2476
 removal and replacement, DCF
 feed motor 1621
 removal and replacement, DCF
 Tray 4 pickup motor 1614
 removal and replacement, DCF
 Tray 5 pickup motor 1616
 removal and replacement, dual
 cassette feeder feed
 motor 1621
 removal and replacement, dual
 cassette feeder Tray 4
 pickup motor 1614
 removal and replacement, dual
 cassette feeder Tray 5
 pickup motor 1616
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher bridge
 motor 1883
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher buffer
 motor 2336
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher end fence
 motor 2049
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher end fence
 motor assembly 2044
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher entrance
 motor 1907
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher entrance
 motor assembly 1903
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher exit
 motor 1954
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher exit motor
 assembly 1950
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher front
 tamper motor 2094
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher main exit
 cam motor 1993
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher main exit
 cam motor assembly 1983
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher main output
 tray motor drive
 assembly 2279
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher paddle
 motor 2025
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher paddle
 motor assembly 2014
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher paper
 holding motor drive
 assembly 2317
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher rear tamper
 motor 2126
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher stapler mid-
 front and mid-rear
 sensors 2166
 removal and replacement, HCI
 lift motor 1717
 removal and replacement, HCI
 shift motor 1717
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher entrance
 motor 2745
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher entrance motor
 assembly 2735
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher entrance motor
 timing belt 2755
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher exit motor 2811
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher exit motor
 assembly 2807
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher front tamper
 motor 2899
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher main paddle motor
 assembly 2877
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher output tray
 motor 2974
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher output tray motor
 assembly 2968

- removal and replacement, inner finisher paper support motor 2839
- removal and replacement, inner finisher paper support motor assembly 2831
- removal and replacement, inner finisher rear tamper motor 2919
- removal and replacement, inner finisher stapler position motor 2951
- sHCl Tray 5 or 6 feed motor, removal and replacement 1555
- sHCl Tray 5 or 6 pickup motor, removal and replacement 1552
- sHCl, remove and replace 1549
- toner dispense motor 1032
- toner dispense motor assembly 1022
- tray 2 pickup motor 740
- tray 3 pickup motor 746
- multipurpose feeder assembly 40

N

- Near Field Communication error 81.WX.YZ error 340, 378
- Bluetooth error 340, 378
- external I/O card error 340, 378
- internal EIO error 340, 378
- wireless error 340, 378
- network and software specifications 1, 6, 15
- network interface 1, 6, 15
- no control panel sound 340, 343, 345
- note iv

O

- on/off button locating 1
- operating systems, supported 1, 6
- operating-environment range printer 9
- option specifications 1, 6, 17, 20
- optional configurations 1, 6, 17
- options list 1, 6, 17
- orderable parts 526

- other errors
 - drive unit 340
 - electrical circuit 340
 - feeding system 340
 - flow ADF 340
 - fuser 340
 - image system 340
 - laser scanner assembly 340
 - scanner 340
- outer temperature humidity sensor assembly, sensor and holder removal and replacement 1204
- output accessory error 66.WX.YZ error 340, 377
- output bin
 - clear jams 368
 - locating 1
- output bin 1 sensor removal and replacement 901
- output device
 - parts and diagrams 3127
 - removal and replacement 1801
- output devices 209
 - booklet maker 209
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3243
 - inner finisher 296
 - stapler-stacker finisher 209
 - stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker 209
- output tray 332
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2968
 - operation 335
 - overview 332
- output tray unit
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2622
- OXPd/Web kit error 45.WX.YZ error 340, 377

P

- paddle unit 242, 318
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2402
 - external finisher, remove and replace 2004
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2854
 - operation 244, 320
 - overview 242, 318

- paddle unit operation 320
- paddle unit overview 318
- page error 21.WX.YZ error 340, 376
- page size sensor 58
- paper
 - jams 364
 - paper dust holder removal and replacement 884
 - paper handling error (LaserJet) 56.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 - paper handling specifications 1, 6
 - paper holding unit 259, 332
 - external finisher, remove and replace 2292
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2968
 - operation 261, 335
 - overview 259, 332
 - paper jams
 - 520-sheet trays 366
 - document feeder 364
 - fuser 368
 - locations 340, 362
 - output bin 368
 - right door 368
 - Tray 1 366
 - Tray 2 366
 - Tray 3 366
 - paper size sensor PCA 127
 - paper support unit 316
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2816
 - overview 316
 - Paper support unit operation 317
 - Paper support unit operation 317
 - paper support unit overview 316
 - paper transfer belt (PTB) removal and replacement 845
 - Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) 96
 - paper transfer belt (PTB) driving 99
 - paper transfer belt (PTB) operation 98
 - paper transfer belt (PTB) overview 96
 - paper transfer belt unit 38
 - parts 526
 - 200sh ADF 1 of 2 3112
 - 200sh ADF 2 of 2 3113
 - 300sh flow ADF 1 of 2 3109
 - 300sh flow ADF 2 of 2 3110
 - booklet finisher 1 of 5 3144

booklet finisher 3 of 5 3148
 booklet finisher 4 of 5 3150
 booklet finisher 5 of 5 3151
 covers 3086
 CTD 3101
 DCF 1 of 2 3116
 DCF 2 of 2 3118
 developer 3100
 drum 3100
 dual cassette feeder 1 of 2 3116
 dual cassette feeder 2 of 2 3118
 duplex 3095
 exit unit 3094
 external booklet 2 of 5 3146
 fan 3104
 fuser 3103
 HCI 1 of 2 3120
 HCI 2 of 2 3122
 high capacity input 1 of 2 3120
 high capacity input 2 of 2 3122
 inner finisher 1 of 5 3128
 inner finisher 2 of 5 3129
 inner finisher 3 of 5 3131
 inner finisher 4 of 5 3133
 inner finisher 5 of 5 3135
 integrated-scanner assembly 3108
 ISA 3108
 laser scanner unit 3099
 LSU 3099
 PCA 3106
 PTB 3102
 registration and loop sensors 3092
 reservoir 3097
 sensor 3104
 sHCI 1 of 2 3124
 sHCI 2 of 2 3126
 side high capacity input 1 of 2 3124
 side high capacity input 2 of 2 3126
 stapler/stacker finisher 1 of 4 3137
 stapler/stacker finisher 2 of 4 3139
 stapler/stacker finisher 3 of 4 3141
 stapler/stacker finisher 4 of 4 3142
 tarot platen 3114
 TCU 3098
 toner 3096
 toner collection unit 3098
 tray 1 3089
 tray 2, 3 3091
 use parts lists and diagrams 526
 parts and diagrams
 200sh ADF 3112
 300sh flow ADF 3109
 ADF / image scanner assembly 3107
 base printer 3086
 base printer, covers 3086
 base printer, CTD 3101
 base printer, developer 3099
 base printer, drum 3100
 base printer, duplex 3095
 base printer, exit unit 3094
 base printer, fan 3104
 base printer, feeding system 3089
 base printer, fuser 3103
 base printer, image creation 3099
 base printer, laser scanner unit 3099
 base printer, PCA 3105
 base printer, PTB 3102
 base printer, registration and loop sensors 3092
 base printer, reservoir 3097
 base printer, sensor 3104
 base printer, toner cartridge 3096
 base printer, toner collection unit 3098
 base printer, toner flow 3096
 base printer, tray 1 3089
 base printer, tray 2, 3 3091
 booklet finisher 3144
 DCF 3116
 document feeder / image scanner assembly 3107
 dual cassette feeder 3116
 engine, printer 3086
 HCI 3120
 high capacity input 3120
 image scanner assembly 3107
 image scanner assembly / ADF 3107
 inner finisher 3128
 input devices 3115
 ISA 3107
 output device 3127
 sHCI 3124
 side high capacity input 3124
 stapler/stacker 3137
 tarot platen 3113
 parts and diagrams, using 526
 parts list and diagrams, how to use 526
 parts, miscellaneous
 booklet finisher, remove and replace 2647
 parts, order by authorized service providers 526
 parts, orderable 526
 parts, ordering 526
 PCA 291, 336
 automatic document feeder 1380
 automatic document feeder, 5QJ90-67011, 5QJ90-67012 1433
 booklet maker 294
 electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3215
 finisher main - shared 291
 inner finisher main 336
 inner finisher rear joint 338
 manual staple 295
 PCA overview 112
 PCAs
 accelerator card 1283
 booklet finisher, remove and replace 2632
 DCF, remove and replace 1660
 echo PCA 1299
 fax card 1318
 FDB 1328
 flatbed scanner 1476
 formatter 1260
 fuser drive board 1328
 HCI, remove and replace 1779
 high-voltage power supply 1321
 HVPS 1321
 inner finisher, remove and replace 3046
 IOD 1295
 island of data 1295
 low-voltage power supply 1324
 LVPS 1324
 parts 3106
 power key PCA 1303
 removal and replacement, booklet finisher booklet finisher main PCA 2632

- removal and replacement, booklet finisher booklet maker PCA 2637
 - removal and replacement, DCF 1664
 - removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder 1664
 - removal and replacement, high capacity input PCA 1779
 - removal and replacement, high capacity input sub PCA 1782
 - removal and replacement, inner finisher PCA 3046
 - removal and replacement, inner finisher rear joint PCA 3057
 - remove and replace parts 1260
 - sHCI PCA, removal and replacement 1588
 - sHCI, remove and replace 1588
 - USB hub PCA 1287
 - PCAs, main
 - remove and replace parts 1260
 - PCAs, power supply
 - remove and replace parts 1321
 - PCAs, sub
 - remove and replace parts 1283
 - pickup assembly, tray 2
 - removal and replacement 694
 - pickup assembly, tray 3
 - removal and replacement 749
 - pickup unit 40
 - pickup unit - 200sh 160
 - pickup unit - 200sh Flow 160
 - pickup unit - 300sh Flow 143
 - ports
 - locating 3
 - post-service tests 527, 529
 - power
 - consumption 1, 6
 - power key
 - removal and replacement 584
 - power key PCA 124
 - removal and replacement 1303
 - power subsystem 340
 - power supply
 - troubleshooting 340
 - power supply printed circuit assembly
 - remove and replace parts 1321
 - power-on troubleshooting
 - overview 340
 - pre-boot menu options 340, 351, 379
 - find links to information 354
 - precautions
 - replacing parts 527
 - preservice checklist 527, 528
 - presser unit
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2437
 - print bar error (PageWide)
 - 62.WXYZ error 340, 377
 - print drivers, supported 1, 6
 - Print menu, control panel 340, 351, 379, 475
 - print quality
 - test 527, 529
 - print quality troubleshooting 340
 - flow ADF skew adjust 340
 - image quality 340
 - other errors 340
 - print specifications 1, 6
 - Print Test Page 340, 351, 379, 398
 - printed circuit assembly
 - automatic document feeder 1380
 - automatic document feeder, 5QJ90-67011, 5QJ90-67012 1433
 - remove and replace parts 1260
 - printer
 - dimensions 1, 6
 - operating-environment range 9
 - weight 1, 6
 - printer engine
 - parts and diagrams 3086
 - printer memory error
 - 20.WXYZ error 340, 376
 - Process Cleaning Page 340, 351, 379
 - Product installation 27
 - Product maintenance 27
 - product number
 - locating 1
 - location 2
 - PTB
 - parts 3102
 - removal and replacement 845
 - PTB drive assembly
 - removal and replacement 1154
 - PTB motor
 - removal and replacement 1161
 - punch unit 231, 307
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1911
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2715
 - operation 233, 310
 - overview 231, 307
 - punch unit operation 310
 - punch unit overview 307
- Q**
- quality, image 378
- R**
- rail
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2650
 - real-time clock error
 - 11.WXYZ error 340, 376
 - rear lower cover
 - removal and replacement 533
 - rear upper cover
 - removal and replacement 529
 - registration and loop sensors
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3201
 - parts 3092
 - registration drive assembly
 - removal and replacement 831
 - registration motor
 - removal and replacement 837
 - registration sensor
 - removal and replacement 823
 - registration unit 40, 63, 65
 - operation 65
 - removal and replacement 816
 - remove and replace parts 816
 - registration unit driving 66
 - operation 66
 - removal and replacement
 - accelerator card 1283
 - automatic document feeder 1343
 - automatic document feeder color panel 1358, 1419
 - automatic document feeder damper module 1406

automatic document feeder
 damper module,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1459
 automatic document feeder
 FFC 1439
 automatic document feeder
 flat-flexible cable 1386
 automatic document feeder
 front cover 1352
 automatic document feeder
 hinge kit 1398
 automatic document feeder
 hinge kit, 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1451
 automatic document feeder
 image scanner 1377, 1431
 automatic document feeder
 input tray 1372
 automatic document feeder
 pickup roller kit 1374
 automatic document feeder
 pickup roller kit,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1427
 automatic document feeder
 power cable 1392, 1445
 automatic document feeder
 printed circuit
 assembly 1380
 automatic document feeder
 printed circuit assembly,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1433
 automatic document feeder
 rear cover 1360
 automatic document feeder top
 cover 1365
 automatic document feeder
 white backing 1367, 1422
 automatic document feeder,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1412
 black developer unit 1140
 booklet finisher booklet blade
 home sensor 2559
 booklet finisher booklet blade
 motor 2575
 booklet finisher booklet diverter
 home sensor 2604
 booklet finisher booklet fold
 motor 2584
 booklet finisher booklet fold
 motor assembly 2580
 booklet finisher booklet
 maker 2341
 booklet finisher booklet maker
 PCA 2637
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 assembly 2530
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 home sensor 2542
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 motor 2553
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 motor assembly 2548
 booklet finisher diverter 2588
 booklet finisher diverter
 motor 2616
 booklet finisher diverter motor
 assembly 2610
 booklet finisher end fence
 home sensor 2414
 booklet finisher end fence
 motor 2426
 booklet finisher entrance
 motor 2391
 booklet finisher entrance
 sensor 2374
 booklet finisher entrance
 unit 2362
 booklet finisher entrance-
 presser motor
 assembly 2387
 booklet finisher harness
 guide 2350
 booklet finisher main
 PCA 2632
 booklet finisher output
 tray 2622
 booklet finisher output tray
 sensor 2624
 booklet finisher paddle home
 sensor 2402
 booklet finisher paddle
 motor 2409
 booklet finisher paddle motor
 assembly 2405
 booklet finisher presser home
 sensor 2437
 booklet finisher staple
 cartridge 2528
 booklet finisher stapler 2511
 booklet finisher tamper 2442
 booklet finisher tamper home
 sensor 2459
 booklet finisher tamper
 motor 2476
 booklet finisher tamper
 sensor 2493
 booklet finisher, only 2340
 cable guide 1167
 control panel, 10.1 inch 1257
 control panel, 8 inch 1257
 controller cover 536
 CTD sensor assembly 1170
 DCF (department) 1591
 DCF caster wheel 1601
 DCF door open switch and
 harness 1673
 DCF feed drive assembly 1619
 DCF feed motor 1621
 DCF feed sensor 1655
 DCF holder wheel kit 1603
 DCF IF harness 1670
 DCF left cover 1595
 DCF motor harness 2nd 1677
 DCF PCA 1664
 DCF pickup drive
 assembly 1611
 DCF rear cover 1593
 DCF right cover 1591
 DCF right door 1597
 DCF right door open switch
 holder 1667
 DCF sensor harness 1st 1680
 DCF sensor harness 2nd 1684
 DCF size harness 1688
 DCF Tray 4 paper empty
 sensor 1631
 DCF Tray 4 paper stack height
 sensor 1631
 DCF Tray 4 pickup
 assembly 1627
 DCF Tray 4 pickup motor 1614
 DCF Tray 4 prefeed
 sensor 1635
 DCF Tray 4, 5 cassette 1606
 DCF Tray 4, 5 color panel 1599
 DCF Tray 4, 5 paper size
 sensors 1624
 DCF Tray 4, 5 rollers 1608
 DCF Tray 5 paper empty
 sensor 1645
 DCF Tray 5 paper stack height
 sensor 1645
 DCF Tray 5 pickup
 assembly 1640
 DCF Tray 5 pickup motor 1616
 DCF Tray 5 prefeed
 sensor 1649
 DCF tray heaters 1660

developer drive
 assembly 1154
 developer fan assembly 1223
 developer motor K 1164
 developer powder 1145
 developer suction duct 1234
 developer unit 1140
 drum drive assembly 1154
 drum motor 1161
 drum unit 1137
 dual cassette feeder
 (department) 1591
 dual cassette feeder caster
 wheel 1601
 dual cassette feeder door open
 switch and harness 1673
 dual cassette feeder feed drive
 assembly 1619
 dual cassette feeder feed
 motor 1621
 dual cassette feeder feed
 sensor 1655
 dual cassette feeder holder
 wheel kit 1603
 dual cassette feeder IF
 harness 1670
 dual cassette feeder left
 cover 1595
 dual cassette feeder motor
 harness 2nd 1677
 dual cassette feeder
 PCA 1664
 dual cassette feeder pickup
 drive assembly 1611
 dual cassette feeder rear
 cover 1593
 dual cassette feeder right
 cover 1591
 dual cassette feeder right
 door 1597
 dual cassette feeder right door
 open switch holder 1667
 dual cassette feeder sensor
 harness 1st 1680
 dual cassette feeder sensor
 harness 2nd 1684
 dual cassette feeder size
 harness 1688
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4
 paper empty sensor 1631
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4
 paper stack height
 sensor 1631
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4
 pickup assembly 1627
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4
 pickup motor 1614
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4
 prefeed sensor 1635
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5
 cassette 1606
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5
 color panel 1599
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5
 paper size sensors 1624
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5
 rollers 1608
 dual cassette feeder Tray 5
 paper empty sensor 1645
 dual cassette feeder Tray 5
 paper stack height
 sensor 1645
 dual cassette feeder Tray 5
 pickup assembly 1640
 dual cassette feeder Tray 5
 pickup motor 1616
 dual cassette feeder Tray 5
 prefeed sensor 1649
 dual cassette feeder tray
 heaters 1660
 duplex 1 motor 979
 duplex 2 motor 1015
 duplex assembly 996
 duplex jam 1 sensor 963
 duplex jam 2 sensor 1005
 echo PCA 1299
 exit 2 motor 933
 exit 2 sensor 948
 exit cover stacker 597
 exit rear cover 538
 exit stack guide 994
 exit unit 886
 external finisher booklet front
 cover 1862
 external finisher booklet output
 tray 1823
 external finisher bridge door
 sensor 1868
 external finisher bridge
 entrance sensor 1872
 external finisher bridge exit
 sensor 1877
 external finisher bridge
 motor 1883
 external finisher bridge
 unit 1865
 external finisher buffer
 motor 2336
 external finisher buffer solenoid
 assembly 2329
 external finisher caster 1857
 external finisher caster
 cover 1803
 external finisher caster fix
 nut 1860
 external finisher ejector 1 home
 sensor 2204
 external finisher ejector 1 motor
 sensor 2219
 external finisher ejector 2 motor
 sensor 2234
 external finisher ejector
 sensor 2187
 external finisher ejector
 unit 2174
 external finisher end fence
 home sensor 2030
 external finisher end fence
 motor 2049
 external finisher end fence
 motor assembly 2044
 external finisher entrance
 motor 1907
 external finisher entrance
 motor assembly 1903
 external finisher entrance
 sensor 1888
 external finisher exit
 motor 1954
 external finisher exit motor
 assembly 1950
 external finisher front
 cover 1832
 external finisher front
 door 1801
 external finisher front door
 switch 1998
 external finisher front lower left
 cover 1848
 external finisher front lower
 right cover 1853
 external finisher front paper
 holding sensor 2292
 external finisher front
 tamper 2072
 external finisher front tamper
 home sensor 2083
 external finisher front tamper
 motor 2094
 external finisher left lower
 cover 1805
 external finisher left upper
 cover 1813
 external finisher main exit cam
 home sensor 1988

external finisher main exit cam motor 1993

external finisher main exit cam motor assembly 1983

external finisher main exit sensor 1976

external finisher main output tray 1828, 2249

external finisher main output tray lower limit sensor 2263

external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly 2279

external finisher main output tray motor sensor 2275

external finisher main output tray top of stack sensor 2251

external finisher main output tray top of stack switch 2282

external finisher main output tray top of stack switch guide 2054

external finisher main output tray top of stack switch lower guide 2063

external finisher mounting brackets 2647

external finisher paddle 2004

external finisher paddle home sensor 2019

external finisher paddle motor 2025

external finisher paddle motor assembly 2014

external finisher paper holding home sensor 2305

external finisher paper holding motor drive assembly 2317

external finisher punch cover 1837

external finisher punch unit 1911

external finisher rear cover 1830

external finisher rear paper holding sensor 2292

external finisher rear tamper 2105

external finisher rear tamper home sensor 2115

external finisher rear tamper motor 2126

external finisher right upper cover 1845

external finisher shaft hinge - door 1855

external finisher staple cartridge 2144

external finisher stapler front sensor 2146

external finisher stapler manual staple sensor 2160

external finisher stapler mid-front sensor 2153

external finisher stapler mid-rear sensor 2153

external finisher stapler position motor 2166

external finisher stapler unit 2138

external finisher stapler/stacker or booklet finishers 1801

external finisher top cover 1839

external finisher top door 1841

external finisher top door open switch 1921

external finisher top exit sensor 1941

external finisher top jam cover assembly 1913

external finisher top lower feed assembly 1957

external finisher top output tray 1825

external finisher top output tray paper full sensor 1969

external finisher tray diverter 1917

external finisher tray diverter cam 1925

external finisher tray diverter home sensor 1933

external finisher tray extension 1966

fax card 1318

FDB 1328

FDB fan 1215

feed 2 sensor 806

feed drive assembly 788

feed motor 796

flatbed, FFC 50 pin 1480

flatbed, FFC 68 pin 1485

flatbed, open sensor 1495

flatbed, PCA 1476

flatbed, power cable 1490

flatbed, rear cover 1473

flatbed, whole unit 1466

formatter 1260

front cover 613

front cover CMF panel 615

front door switch 1245

front lower cover 610

fuser and exit drive assembly 1180

fuser and exit motor 1185

fuser drive board 1328

fuser gap motor 1190

fuser gap sensor 1194

fuser out sensor 877

fuser out sensor harness 881

fuser unit 1178

fuser ventilation duct 1237

guide toner cartridge assembly 1072

hard disk 1279

hard disk cradle 1273

hard-disk drive rivet 1271

hardware integration pocket [HIP] 593

HCI (department) 1691

HCI cassette 1708

HCI DC motor IF 1791

HCI feed motor drive 1733

HCI feed sensor 1747

HCI front CMF panel 1699

HCI gate solenoid home sensor 1772, 1775

HCI holder wheel kit 1702

HCI inner drawer IF 1797

HCI knockup home sensor 1756

HCI knockup plate 1726

HCI left cover 1695

HCI lift motor 1717

HCI main IF harness 1786

HCI motor IF 1793

HCI paper gate 1730

HCI PCA 1779

HCI pickup motor drive 1735

HCI prefeed 4 sensor 1742

HCI rear cover 1693

HCI right cover 1691

HCI right door 1697

HCI shift gate solenoid 1738

HCI shift motor 1717

HCI shift plate 1721

HCI shift tray empty sensor 1765

HCI shift tray end sensor 1756

HCI shift tray home sensor 1765

HCI shift tray level sensor 1 and 2 1762
 HCI sub PCA 1782
 HCI sub tray IF harness 1788
 HCI Tray 4 paper empty sensor 1753
 HCI Tray 4 paper stack height sensor 1753
 HCI tray open sensor 1769
 HCI Tray pickup assembly 1710
 HCI Tray rollers 1714
 HCI Tray unit 1705
 HCIF caster wheel 1701
 high capacity cassette 1708
 high capacity input (department) 1691
 high capacity input caster wheel 1701
 high capacity input DC motor IF 1791
 high capacity input feed motor drive 1733
 high capacity input feed sensor 1747
 high capacity input front CMF panel 1699
 high capacity input gate solenoid home sensor 1772, 1775
 high capacity input holder wheel kit 1702
 high capacity input inner drawer IF 1797
 high capacity input knockup home sensor 1756
 high capacity input knockup plate 1726
 high capacity input left cover 1695
 high capacity input lift motor 1717
 high capacity input main IF harness 1786
 high capacity input motor IF 1793
 high capacity input paper gate 1730
 high capacity input PCA 1779
 high capacity input pickup assembly 1710
 high capacity input pickup motor drive 1735
 high capacity input prefeed 4 sensor 1742
 high capacity input rear cover 1693
 high capacity input right cover 1691
 high capacity input right door 1697
 high capacity input rollers 1714
 high capacity input shift gate solenoid 1738
 high capacity input shift motor 1717
 high capacity input shift plate 1721
 high capacity input shift tray empty sensor 1765
 high capacity input shift tray end sensor 1756
 high capacity input shift tray home sensor 1765
 high capacity input shift tray level sensor 1 and 2 1762
 high capacity input sub PCA 1782
 high capacity input sub tray IF harness 1788
 high capacity input Tray 4 paper empty sensor 1753
 high capacity input Tray 4 paper stack height sensor 1753
 high capacity input tray open sensor 1769
 high capacity input unit 1705
 high-voltage power supply 1321
 HVPS 1321
 inner cover 600
 inner finisher 2649, 2650
 inner finisher docking sensor 3082
 inner finisher ejector 2960
 inner finisher end fence sensor 2881
 inner finisher entrance motor 2745
 inner finisher entrance motor assembly 2735
 inner finisher entrance motor timing belt 2755
 inner finisher entrance roller 2760
 inner finisher entrance sensor 2730
 inner finisher exit bin full 2712
 inner finisher exit motor 2811
 inner finisher exit motor assembly 2807
 inner finisher exit roller assembly 2778
 inner finisher exit sensor 2787
 inner finisher exit sensor actuator 2797
 inner finisher front cover assembly 2657
 inner finisher front cover switch 3067
 inner finisher front paper support 2847
 inner finisher front tamper 2892
 inner finisher front tamper home sensor 2906
 inner finisher front tamper motor 2899
 inner finisher guide rails 2653
 inner finisher hole punch 2715
 inner finisher lock release handle 2699
 inner finisher main interface harness 2701
 inner finisher main paddle assembly 2854
 inner finisher main paddle home sensor 2870
 inner finisher main paddle motor assembly 2877
 inner finisher middle cover assembly 2667
 inner finisher middle roller 2771
 inner finisher output tray assembly 2677
 inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly 2986
 inner finisher output tray motor 2974
 inner finisher output tray motor assembly 2968
 inner finisher output tray motor sensor 2980
 inner finisher output tray top of stack sensor kit 2992
 inner finisher paper holding actuator 3003
 inner finisher paper holding kit 3014
 inner finisher paper holding sensor 3035
 inner finisher paper holding solenoid 3024

inner finisher paper support
 home sensor 2823
 inner finisher paper support
 motor 2839
 inner finisher paper support
 motor assembly 2831
 inner finisher PCA 3046
 inner finisher PCA cover 2681
 inner finisher punch cover
 assembly 2673
 inner finisher punch waste
 full 2720
 inner finisher rear base
 cover 2694
 inner finisher rear joint
 PCA 3057
 inner finisher rear paper
 support 2816
 inner finisher rear punch
 cover 2697
 inner finisher rear
 tamper 2913
 inner finisher rear tamper home
 sensor 2926
 inner finisher rear tamper
 motor 2919
 inner finisher staple
 cartridge 2937
 inner finisher stapler
 assembly 2933
 inner finisher stapler position
 motor 2951
 inner finisher stapler position
 sensor 2939
 inner finisher sub paddle
 assembly 2863
 inner finisher sub stay
 assembly 2684
 inner finisher top cover
 assembly 2661
 inner finisher top cover
 switch 3078
 input device
 (department) 1498
 integrated scanner assembly
 dn bundle 1338
 integrated scanner assembly z
 bundle 1333
 IOD 1295
 island of data 1295
 keyboard 1312
 laser scanner unit 1132
 laser scanner unit fan 1241
 left cover 547
 left top cover 541
 left upper cover 543
 loop actuator 867
 loop sensor 1 851
 loop sensor 2 859
 low-voltage power supply 1324
 LSU 1132
 LVPS 1324
 LVPS fan 1212
 LVPS FDB fan assembly 1219
 middle left cover 594
 middle upper cover 551
 outer temperature humidity
 sensor assembly, sensor
 and holder 1204
 output bin 1 sensor 901
 output device 1801
 paper dust holder 884
 paper transfer belt (PTB) 845
 pickup assembly, tray 3 749
 power key 584
 power key PCA 1303
 PTB drive assembly 1154
 PTB motor 1161
 rear lower cover 533
 rear upper cover 529
 registration drive
 assembly 831
 registration motor 837
 registration sensor 823
 registration unit 816
 reservoir drive assembly 1099
 reservoir unit 1084
 return gate solenoid 917
 right door 623
 right door exit assembly 874
 right door front damper 632
 right door front damper
 bracket 637
 right door front link 627
 right door sHCl dummy
 cover 553
 right door switch 1253
 right front cover 565
 right middle cover 576
 right middle cover
 assembly 568
 right rear cover 563
 right upper cover 555
 riser card and cradle 1267
 sHCl (department) 1498
 sHCl door links 1st 1522
 sHCl door links 2nd 1527
 sHCl front cover 1515
 sHCl front top cover 1518
 sHCl harness cover 1502
 sHCl link holder 1532
 sHCl PCA 1588
 sHCl pickup cover 1507
 sHCl prefeed 5 sensor 1583
 sHCl rear cover 1500
 sHCl rear top cover 1504
 sHCl right cover 1498
 sHCl top cover 1510
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 detection
 sensor 1 1565
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 detection
 sensor 2 1569
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 door open
 sensor 1572
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 feed
 motor 1555
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 lift drive 1559
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 lift
 motor 1562
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 paper level
 sensor 1575
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 pickup
 assembly 1536
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 pickup
 motor 1552
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 pickup, feed
 drive assembly 1549
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 stack height
 and paper empty
 sensors 1579
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 top cover open
 switch 1542
 sHCl Tray 5 or 6 tray roller
 kit 1546
 side high capacity input
 (department) 1498
 side high capacity input door
 links 1st 1522
 side high capacity input door
 links 2nd 1527
 side high capacity input front
 cover 1515
 side high capacity input front
 top cover 1518
 side high capacity input
 harness cover 1502
 side high capacity input link
 holder 1532
 side high capacity input
 PCA 1588
 side high capacity input pickup
 cover 1507
 side high capacity input prefeed
 5 sensor 1583

side high capacity input rear cover 1500
 side high capacity input rear top cover 1504
 side high capacity input right cover 1498
 side high capacity input top cover 1510
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 detection sensor 1 1565
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 detection sensor 2 1569
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 door open sensor 1572
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 feed motor 1555
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 lift drive 1559
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 lift motor 1562
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 paper level sensor 1575
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 pickup assembly 1536
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 pickup motor 1552
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 pickup, feed drive assembly 1549
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 stack height and paper empty sensors 1579
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 top cover open switch 1542
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 tray roller kit 1546
 tie stoppers 608
 toner cartridge, control panel 1052
 toner cartridge, disassemble 1053
 toner collection unit 1114
 toner collection unit detection sensor 1116
 toner collection unit full sensor assembly 1124
 toner CRUM module assembly 1063
 toner dispense motor 1032
 toner dispense motor assembly 1022
 toner dispense motor sensor 1040
 toner residual sensor 1072
 Tray 1 clutch 679
 tray 1 empty sensor 660
 tray 1 roller kit 689
 tray 1 unit 642
 tray 2 color panel 619
 tray 2 empty sensor 707
 tray 2 open and paper size sensor 731
 tray 2 or tray 3 692
 tray 2 pickup assembly 694
 tray 2 pickup drive assembly 734
 tray 2 pickup motor 740
 tray 2 prefeed sensor 719
 tray 2 stack height sensor 707
 tray 2/3 roller kit 703, 757
 tray 3 color panel 621
 tray 3 empty sensor 760
 tray 3 open and paper size sensor 781
 tray 3 pickup drive assembly 743
 tray 3 pickup motor 746
 tray 3 prefeed sensor 771
 tray 3 stack height sensor 760
 tray heaters 785
 USB hub PCA 1287
 removal order
 removing order 527, 529
 remove and replace before servicing 526
 Remove and replace 526
 remove and replace parts base printer 529
 control panel 1257
 developer and drum 1137
 duplex unit 996
 environmental sensor, switch, and fan 1204
 exit unit 886
 feeding system 623
 feeding system, right door assemblies 623
 feeding system, Tray 1 unit 642
 feeding system, Tray 2-3 units 692
 fuser unit 1177
 image creation 1132
 laser scanner unit 1132
 loop sensing unit 816
 LSU 1132
 main PCAs 1260
 main printed circuit assembly 1260
 PCAs 1260
 power supply PCAs 1321
 power supply printed circuit assembly 1321
 printed circuit assembly 1260
 registration unit 816
 reservoir unit 1084
 sub PCAs 1283
 sub printed circuit assembly 1283
 toner cartridge 1022
 toner collection unit 1114
 toner flow 1022
 removing parts checklists 527, 528
 replacing parts precautions 527
 Reports menu, control panel 340, 351, 379, 396
 reservoir electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3205
 parts 3097
 reservoir drive assembly removal and replacement 1099
 reservoir unit removal and replacement 1084
 remove and replace parts 1084
 return gate solenoid removal and replacement 917
 revision history iii
 right door jams 368
 locating 1
 removal and replacement 623
 right door exit assembly removal and replacement 874
 right door front damper removal and replacement 632
 right door front damper bracket removal and replacement 637
 right door front link removal and replacement 627
 right door sHCl dummy cover removal and replacement 553
 right door switch removal and replacement 1253

right front cover
 removal and replacement 565
 right middle cover
 removal and replacement 576
 right middle cover assembly
 removal and replacement 568
 right rear cover
 removal and replacement 563
 right upper cover
 removal and replacement 555
 riser card 119
 riser card and cradle
 removal and
 replacement 1267
 riser card for HDD 119
 riser card for HDD and USB
 ports 120
 riser card for HDD, USB ports, and
 accelerator board 121
 rivet, hard-disk drive
 removal and replacement 1271
 RJ-45 port
 locating 3
 rollers
 automatic document feeder
 pickup roller kit 1374
 automatic document feeder
 pickup roller kit,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1427
 DCF, remove and
 replace 1608
 HCI, remove and replace 1714
 removal and replacement,
 DCF 1608
 removal and replacement,
 HCI 1714
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher entrance
 roller 2760
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher exit roller
 assembly 2778
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher middle roller 2771
 sHCI, remove and
 replace 1546

S

scan and exit unit - 200sh 163
 scan and exit unit - 200sh
 Flow 163
 scan and exit unit - 300sh
 Flow 147

Scan menu (MFP only), control
 panel 340, 351, 379
 Scan menu, control panel 443
 scan specifications 1, 6
 scanner
 automatic document feeder,
 image 1377, 1431
 workflow 169
 scanner error
 30.WX.YZ error 340, 376
 scanning system
 components 38
 security error
 33.WX.YZ error 340, 376
 sensors
 toner residual sensor, removal
 and replacement 1072
 sensor
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher output tray top of
 stack sensor kit 2992
 sensor error
 54.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 58.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 sensor fan
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 3213
 sensors
 base printer service parts,
 registration and loop
 sensors 3092
 CTD sensor assembly 1170
 DCF, remove and replace 1624
 duplex jam 1 sensor 963
 duplex jam 2 sensor 1005
 exit 2 sensor 948
 feed 2 sensor 806
 flatbed scanner 1476
 fuser gap sensor 1194
 fuser out sensor 877
 fuser out sensor harness 881
 HCI, remove and replace 1741
 loop actuator 867
 loop sensor 1 851
 loop sensor 2 859
 outer temperature humidity
 sensor assembly 1204
 output bin 1 sensor 901
 parts 3104
 registration sensor 823
 removal and replacement
 flatbed, open sensor 1495

removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher booklet
 blade home sensor 2559
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher booklet
 diverter home sensor 2604
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 home sensor 2542
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher end fence
 home sensor 2414
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher entrance
 sensor 2374
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher output tray
 sensor 2624
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher paddle
 home sensor 2402
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher presser
 home sensor 2437
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher tamper
 sensor 2493
 removal and replacement, DCF
 feed sensor 1655
 removal and replacement, DCF
 paper size 1624
 removal and replacement, DCF
 Tray 4 paper empty
 sensor 1631, 1645
 removal and replacement, DCF
 Tray 4 paper stack height
 sensor 1631
 removal and replacement, DCF
 Tray 4 prefeed sensor 1635
 removal and replacement, DCF
 Tray 5 paper stack height
 sensor 1645
 removal and replacement, DCF
 Tray 5 prefeed sensor 1649
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher bridge door
 sensor 1868
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher bridge
 entrance sensor 1872
 removal and replacement,
 external finisher bridge exit
 sensor 1877

removal and replacement,
external finisher ejector 1
home sensor 2204

removal and replacement,
external finisher ejector 1
motor sensor 2219

removal and replacement,
external finisher ejector 2
motor sensor 2234

removal and replacement,
external finisher ejector
sensor 2187

removal and replacement,
external finisher end fence
home sensor 2030

removal and replacement,
external finisher entrance
sensor 1888

removal and replacement,
external finisher front paper
holding sensor 2292

removal and replacement,
external finisher front
tamper home sensor 2083

removal and replacement,
external finisher main exit
cam home sensor 1988

removal and replacement,
external finisher main exit
sensor 1976

removal and replacement,
external finisher main output
tray lower limit
sensor 2263

removal and replacement,
external finisher main output
tray motor sensor 2275

removal and replacement,
external finisher main output
tray top of stack
sensor 2251

removal and replacement,
external finisher paddle
home sensor 2019

removal and replacement,
external finisher paper
holding home sensor 2305

removal and replacement,
external finisher rear paper
holding sensor 2292

removal and replacement,
external finisher rear tamper
home sensor 2115

removal and replacement,
external finisher stapler
front sensor 2146

removal and replacement,
external finisher stapler
manual staple sensor 2160

removal and replacement,
external finisher stapler mid-
front and mid-rear
sensors 2153

removal and replacement,
external finisher top exit
sensor 1941

removal and replacement,
external finisher top output
tray paper full sensor 1969

removal and replacement,
external finisher tray diverter
home sensor 1933

removal and replacement, HCI
feed sensor 1747

removal and replacement, HCI
gate solenoid home
sensor 1772, 1775

removal and replacement, HCI
knockup home sensor 1756

removal and replacement, HCI
shift tray empty
sensor 1765

removal and replacement, HCI
shift tray end sensor 1756

removal and replacement, HCI
shift tray home
sensor 1765

removal and replacement, HCI
shift tray level sensor 1 and
2 1762

removal and replacement, HCI
Tray 4 paper empty
sensor 1753

removal and replacement, HCI
Tray 4 paper stack height
sensor 1753

removal and replacement, HCI
tray open sensor 1769

removal and replacement, inner
finisher docking
sensor 3082

removal and replacement, inner
finisher end fence
sensor 2881

removal and replacement, inner
finisher entrance
sensor 2730

removal and replacement, inner
finisher exit sensor 2787

removal and replacement, inner
finisher exit sensor
actuator 2797

removal and replacement, inner
finisher front tamper home
sensor 2906

removal and replacement, inner
finisher main paddle home
sensor 2870

removal and replacement, inner
finisher output tray motor
sensor 2980

removal and replacement, inner
finisher paper holding
sensor 3035

removal and replacement, inner
finisher paper support home
sensor 2823

removal and replacement, inner
finisher rear tamper home
sensor 2926

removal and replacement, inner
finisher stapler position
sensor 2939

removal and replacement,
prefeed 4 sensor 1742

sHCI prefeed 5 sensor, removal
and replacement 1583

sHCI Tray 5 or 6 detection
sensor 1, removal and
replacement 1565

sHCI Tray 5 or 6 detection
sensor 2, removal and
replacement 1569

sHCI Tray 5 or 6 door open
sensor, removal and
replacement 1572

sHCI Tray 5 or 6 paper level
sensor, removal and
replacement 1575

sHCI Tray 5 or 6 stack height
and paper empty sensors,
removal and
replacement 1579

sHCI, remove and
replace 1565

toner collection unit detection
sensor 1116

toner collection unit full sensor
assembly 1124

toner dispense motor 1040

tray 1 empty sensor 660

tray 2 empty sensor, removal and replacement 707
 tray 2 open and paper size sensor, removal and replacement 731
 tray 2 prefeed sensor, removal and replacement 719
 tray 2 stack height sensor, removal and replacement 707
 tray 3 empty sensor, removal and replacement 760
 tray 3 open and paper size sensor, removal and replacement 781
 tray 3 prefeed sensor, removal and replacement 771
 tray 3 stack height sensor, removal and replacement 760
 serial number
 locating 1, 2
 service and support
 WISE 369
 service approach 527
 precautions 527
 service functions
 capture log 340
 debug log 340
 envelope rotate 340
 main memory clear 340
 transfer assembly control 340
 Service menu, control panel 476
 service mode 340
 diagnostics 340
 entering service mode 340
 information 340
 maintenance counts 340
 mode menu tree 340
 service functions 340
 service parts
 base printer, covers 3086
 base printer, CTD 3101
 base printer, developer 3099
 base printer, drum 3100
 base printer, duplex 3095
 base printer, exit unit 3094
 base printer, fan 3104
 base printer, feeding system 3089
 base printer, fuser 3103
 base printer, image creation 3099
 base printer, laser scanner unit 3099
 base printer, PCA 3105
 base printer, PTB 3102
 base printer, registration and loop sensors 3092
 base printer, reservoir 3097
 base printer, sensor 3104
 base printer, toner cartridge 3096
 base printer, toner collection unit 3098
 base printer, toner flow 3096
 base printer, tray 1 3089
 base printer, tray 2, 3 3091
 sHCI 38
 covers, remove and replace 1498
 electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 3240
 motor, remove and replace 1549
 PCA, remove and replace 1588
 roller, remove and replace 1546
 sensor, remove and replace 1565
 unit parts, remove and replace 1536
 sHCI (department)
 removal and replacement 1498
 sHCI 1 of 2
 parts 3124
 sHCI 2 of 2
 parts 3126
 sHCI door links 1st
 removal and replacement 1522
 sHCI door links 2nd
 removal and replacement 1527
 sHCI front cover
 removal and replacement 1515
 sHCI front top cover
 removal and replacement 1518
 sHCI harness cover
 removal and replacement 1502
 sHCI link holder
 removal and replacement 1532
 sHCI PCA
 removal and replacement 1588
 sHCI pickup cover
 removal and replacement 1507
 sHCI prefeed 5 sensor
 removal and replacement 1583
 sHCI rear cover
 removal and replacement 1500
 sHCI rear top cover
 removal and replacement 1504
 sHCI right cover
 removal and replacement 1498
 sHCI top cover
 removal and replacement 1510
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 detection sensor 1
 removal and replacement 1565
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 detection sensor 2
 removal and replacement 1569
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 door open sensor
 removal and replacement 1572
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 feed motor
 removal and replacement 1555
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 lift drive
 removal and replacement 1559
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 lift motor
 removal and replacement 1562
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 paper level sensor
 removal and replacement 1575
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 pickup assembly
 removal and replacement 1536
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 pickup motor
 removal and replacement 1552
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 pickup, feed drive assembly
 removal and replacement 1549

sHCI Tray 5 or 6 stack height and paper empty sensors removal and replacement 1579
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 top cover open switch removal and replacement 1542
 sHCI Tray 5 or 6 tray roller kit removal and replacement 1546
 sHCI, Tray 5 or 6 196
 covers 196
 feeding system workflow 198
 motor operation 207
 motors 204
 operation 206
 PCA 208
 rollers 200
 sensors 202
 unit 200
 side high capacity input covers, remove and replace 1498
 motor, remove and replace 1549
 parts and diagrams 3124
 PCA, remove and replace 1588
 roller, remove and replace 1546
 sensor, remove and replace 1565
 unit parts, remove and replace 1536
 side high capacity input (department) removal and replacement 1498
 side high capacity input 1 f 2 parts 3124
 side high capacity input 2 f 2 parts 3126
 side high capacity input door links removal and replacement 1st 1522
 removal and replacement 2nd 1527
 side high capacity input front cover removal and replacement 1515
 side high capacity input front top cover removal and replacement 1518
 side high capacity input harness cover removal and replacement 1502
 side high capacity input link holder removal and replacement 1532
 side high capacity input PCA removal and replacement 1588
 side high capacity input pickup cover removal and replacement 1507
 side high capacity input prefeed 5 sensor removal and replacement 1583
 side high capacity input rear cover removal and replacement 1500
 side high capacity input rear top cover removal and replacement 1504
 side high capacity input right cover removal and replacement 1498
 side high capacity input top cover removal and replacement 1510
 side high capacity input tray 38
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 detection sensor 1 removal and replacement 1565
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 detection sensor 2 removal and replacement 1569
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 door open sensor removal and replacement 1572
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 feed motor removal and replacement 1555
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 lift drive removal and replacement 1559
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 lift motor removal and replacement 1562
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 paper level sensor removal and replacement 1575
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 pickup assembly removal and replacement 1536
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 pickup motor removal and replacement 1552
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 pickup, feed drive assembly removal and replacement 1549
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 stack height and paper empty sensors removal and replacement 1579
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 top cover open switch removal and replacement 1542
 side high capacity input Tray 5 or 6 tray roller kit removal and replacement 1546
 Sign In button locating 4
 Sign Out button locating 4
 software and solutions 1, 6, 15
 solenoids removal and replacement, external finisher buffer solenoid assembly 2329
 removal and replacement, high capacity input shift gate solenoid 1738
 removal and replacement, inner finisher paper holding solenoid 3024
 return gate solenoid 917
 solve problems control panel messages 376
 CPMD 376
 specifications 1, 6
 copy specifications 1, 6
 electrical and acoustic 1, 6

- general specifications 1, 6
- maintenance parts 1, 6, 15
- network interface 1, 6, 15
- network specifications 1, 6, 15
- option 20
- options 1, 6, 17
- options list 1, 6, 17
- paper handling
 - specifications 1, 6
- print specifications 1, 6
- scan specifications 1, 6
- software and solutions 1, 6, 15
- software specifications 1, 6, 15
- supplies 1, 6, 14
- SSA
 - flatbed (Tarot), removal and replacement 1466
- staple and staple cartridge 252, 278, 327
- stapler unit 250, 325
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2511
 - external finisher, remove and replace 2138
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2933
 - operation 253, 328
 - overview 250, 325
 - staple and staple cartridge 252, 327
- stapler unit operation 328
- stapler unit overview 325
- stapler-stacker and booklet maker
 - staple and staple cartridge 252
- stapler-stacker finisher 209, 229
 - bridge unit 228
 - buffer unit 263
 - covers 215
 - detailed specifications 209
 - ejector unit 254
 - electrical mechanical relationships
 - diagrams 3253
 - end fence unit 245
 - entrance unit 229
 - main exit unit 240
 - main output tray unit 257
 - overview 217
 - paddle unit 242
 - paper holding unit 259
 - punch unit 231
 - stapler unit 250
 - stapler-stacker finisher 229
 - tamper unit 247
 - top exit unit 237
 - top output tray unit 238
 - tray diverter unit 234
- stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker 209
 - booklet maker 268
 - bridge unit 228
 - covers 215
 - detailed specifications 209
 - overview 217
 - PCA 291
 - stapler-stacker finisher 229
- stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker unit
 - overview 217
- motors and solenoids 223
- PCAs 227
- rollers 226
- sensor 218
- workflow 217
- stapler/stacker finisher
 - parts and diagrams 3137
- stapler/stacker finisher 1 of 4
 - parts 3137
- stapler/stacker finisher 2 of 4
 - parts 3139
- stapler/stacker finisher 3 of 4
 - parts 3141
- stapler/stacker finisher 4 of 4
 - parts 3142
- stapler/stacker or booklet finishers
 - removal and replacement 1801
- static, precautions for 527
- sub printed circuit assembly
 - remove and replace parts 1283
- supplies
 - toner cartridge, control panel 1052
 - toner cartridge, disassemble 1053
 - supplies error (LaserJet)
 - 10.WX.YZ error 340, 376
 - 17.WX.YZ error 340, 376
 - Supplies menu, control panel 340, 351, 379, 475
 - switch
 - front door 105
 - right door 105
 - switches
 - front door switch 1245
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 3046
 - removal and replacement, DCF
 - door open switch and harness 1673
 - removal and replacement, DCF
 - right door open switch holder 1667
 - removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder
 - right door open switch holder 1667
 - removal and replacement, external finisher
 - front door switch 1998
 - removal and replacement, external finisher
 - main output tray top of stack switch 2282
 - removal and replacement, external finisher
 - main output tray top of stack switch guide 2054
 - removal and replacement, external finisher
 - main output tray top of stack switch lower guide 2063
 - removal and replacement, external finisher
 - top door open switch 1921
 - removal and replacement, inner finisher
 - front cover switch 3067
 - removal and replacement, inner finisher
 - output tray lower limit switch assembly 2986
 - removal and replacement, inner finisher
 - top cover switch 3078
 - removal and replacement, sHCl
 - Tray 5 or 6 top cover open switch 1542
 - right door switch 1253
 - system error (LaserJet)
 - 62.WX.YZ error 340, 377
 - system requirements
 - minimum 1, 6
- T
 - tamper unit 247, 323
 - external finisher, remove and replace 2072
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2892
 - operation 249, 324
 - overview 247, 323
 - tamper unit operation 324

- tamper unit overview 323
- tarot platen
 - cover 170
 - motor 171
 - parts 3114
 - parts and diagrams 3113
 - PCA 172
 - sensor 171
 - workflow 169
- Tarot Platen 169
- tarot platen cover 170
- tarot platen motor 171
- tarot platen PCA 172
- tarot platen sensor 171
- tarot platen workflow 169
- TCU
 - parts 3098
 - removal and replacement 1114
- temperature/humidity
 - sensor 105
- terms and definitions
 - glossary 3275
- tests
 - post-service 527, 529
 - print-quality 527, 529
- theory of operation
 - accelerator 121
 - color toner density (CTD)
 - sensor cleaning 96
 - color toner density (CTD)
 - sensor operation 95
 - control panel 108, 110
 - Control panel 10.1 inches
 - PCA 131
 - Control panel 8 inches
 - PCA 131
 - control panel PCA 130
 - covers 1 of 2 38
 - covers 2 of) 39
 - developer and drum unit 91
 - developer and drum unit
 - driving 94
 - developer and drum unit
 - operation 93
 - developer and drum unit
 - overview 92
 - drum CRUM PCA 128
 - duplex unit 71
 - echo PCA 124
 - environmental sensor, fan,
 - switch overview 105
 - eraser PCA 129
 - exit unit 66
 - feeding system motors 45
 - feeding system overview 40
 - feeding system rollers 41
 - feeding system sensors 43
 - feeding system solenoids 45
 - formatter 114
 - fuser CRUM PCA 129
 - fuser drive board (FDB) 134
 - fuser driving 104
 - fuser unit 99, 100
 - fuser unit temperature
 - control 102
 - fuser wrap jam sensor 103
 - hard disk drive 122
 - hardware configuration 112
 - high-voltage power supply
 - (HVPS) 132
 - image creation motors 89
 - image creation overview 87
 - image creation workflow 87
 - image creation sensors 87
 - Integrated Scan Asset
 - (ISA) 135
 - island of data (IOD) 123
 - keyboard PCA 125
 - Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)
 - operation 91
 - Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)
 - overview 90
 - Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)(89
 - loop sensing 63
 - low-voltage power supply
 - (LVPS) 133
 - paper size sensor PCA 127
 - Paper Transfer Belt (PTB) 96
 - paper transfer belt (PTB)
 - driving 99
 - paper transfer belt (PTB)
 - operation 98
 - paper transfer belt (PTB)
 - overview 96
 - PCA overview 112
 - power key PCA 124
 - registration unit 63
 - riser card 119
 - riser card for HDD 119
 - riser card for HDD and USB
 - ports 120
 - riser card for HDD, USB ports,
 - and accelerator board 121
 - toner cartridge 77
 - toner cartridge CRUM
 - PCA 128
 - toner cartridge operaton 79
 - toner cartridge overview 77
 - toner cartridge unlock
 - driving 79
 - Toner Collection Unit (TCU) 84
 - Toner Collection Unit full sensor
 - PCA 127
 - toner collection unit
 - operation 86
 - toner dispense 79
 - toner flow motors 76
 - toner flow overview 74
 - toner flow sensors 75
 - toner flow workflow 74
 - toner reservoir 80
 - toner reservoir driving 83
 - toner reservoir operation 83
 - toner reservoir overview 80
 - toner residual amount sensor
 - operation 82
 - Tray 1 unit 47
 - Tray 2 cassette 52
 - Tray 2 pickup assembly 53
 - Tray 2 unit 51
 - Tray 2/3 unit overview 52
 - Tray 3 cassette 52
 - Tray 3 pickup assembly 53
 - Tray 3 unit 51
 - Trusted Platform Module
 - (TPM) 119
 - USB hub PCA 123
 - tie stoppers
 - removal and replacement 608
 - tip iv
 - toner
 - parts 3096
 - toner cartridge 77
 - electrical mechanical
 - relationships
 - diagrams 3204
 - remove and replace
 - parts 1022
 - toner cartridge operation 79
 - toner cartridge overview 77
 - toner cartridge unlock driving 79
 - toner cartridge, control panel
 - removal and
 - replacement 1052
 - toner cartridge, disassemble
 - removal and
 - replacement 1053
 - toner collection unit
 - electrical mechanical
 - relationships
 - diagrams 3206
 - parts 3098
 - removal and replacement 1114
 - remove and replace parts 1114
 - Toner Collection Unit (TCU) 84

Toner Collection Unit (TCU)
 overview 84
 toner collection unit detection
 sensor
 removal and replacement 1116
 toner collection unit full sensor
 assembly
 removal and replacement 1124
 Toner Collection Unit full sensor
 PCA 127
 toner collection unit operation 86
 toner CRUM module assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1063
 toner dispense 79
 toner dispense motor
 removal and
 replacement 1032
 toner dispense motor assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1022
 toner dispense motor sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1040
 toner flow 74
 main components and
 functions 74
 motor 74, 76
 overview 74
 remove and replace
 parts 1022
 sensor 74
 sensors 75
 workflow 74
 toner flow information 74
 toner flow motor 74
 toner flow sensor 74
 toner flow system
 toner cartridge operation 79
 toner cartridge overview 77
 toner cartridge unlock
 driving 79
 Toner Collection Unit (TCU)
 overview 84
 toner collection unit
 operation 86
 toner dispense 79
 toner reservoir driving 83
 toner reservoir operation 83
 toner reservoir overview 80
 toner residual amount sensor
 operation 82
 toner flow system information 77,
 80, 84

 toner flow unit
 toner cartridge 77
 Toner Collection Unit (TCU) 84
 toner reservoir 80
 toner reservoir 80
 toner reservoir driving 83
 toner reservoir operation 83
 toner reservoir overview 80
 toner residual amount sensor
 operation 82
 toner residual sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1072
 tools, additional
 troubleshooting 354
 top exit unit 237
 external finisher, remove and
 replace 1940
 overview 237
 top output tray unit 238
 external finisher, remove and
 replace 1957
 overview 238
 touchscreen
 locating features 4
 touchscreen blank, white, or dim
 (no image) 340, 343
 touchscreen has an unresponsive
 zone 340, 343, 344
 TPM 119
 tray 1
 base printer, service
 parts 3089
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 3197
 parts 3089
 Tray 1
 jams 366
 jams, clearing 340
 locating 1
 Tray 1 clutch
 removal and replacement 679
 tray 1 empty sensor
 removal and replacement 660
 Tray 1 empty sensor 49
 Tray 1 operation 49
 Tray 1 pickup roller 49
 tray 1 roller kit
 removal and replacement 689
 Tray 1 solenoid 49
 tray 1 unit
 removal and replacement 642
 Tray 1 unit 47
 Tray 1 unit driving 51

 tray 2
 removal and replacement 692
 Tray 2
 feed motor 58
 feed roller 58
 feed sensor 58
 jams 366
 jams, clearing 340
 locating 1
 Tray 2 cassette 52
 tray 2 color panel
 removal and replacement 619
 tray 2 empty sensor
 removal and replacement 707
 tray 2 open and paper size sensor
 removal and replacement 731
 Tray 2 operation 60
 tray 2 pickup assembly
 removal and replacement 694
 Tray 2 pickup assembly 53
 tray 2 pickup drive assembly
 removal and replacement 734
 tray 2 pickup motor
 removal and replacement 740
 tray 2 prefeed sensor
 removal and replacement 719
 tray 2 stack height sensor
 removal and replacement 707
 Tray 2 unit 51
 tray 2, 3
 base printer, service
 parts 3091
 parts 3091
 tray 2/3
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 3199
 Tray 2/3 driving 62
 tray 2/3 roller kit
 removal and replacement 703,
 757
 Tray 2/3 unit
 overview 52
 tray 3
 removal and replacement 692
 Tray 3
 jams 366
 jams, clearing 340
 locating 1
 Tray 3 cassette 52
 tray 3 color panel
 removal and replacement 621
 tray 3 empty sensor
 removal and replacement 760

- tray 3 open and paper size sensor
 - removal and replacement 781
- tray 3 pickup assembly
 - removal and replacement 749
- Tray 3 pickup assembly 53
- tray 3 pickup drive assembly
 - removal and replacement 743
- tray 3 pickup motor
 - removal and replacement 746
- tray 3 prefeed sensor
 - removal and replacement 771
- tray 3 stack height sensor
 - removal and replacement 760
- Tray 3 unit 51
- tray diverter unit 234
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1913
 - operation 236
 - overview 234
- tray heater 58
- tray heaters
 - removal and replacement 785
- tray motor error (LaserJet)
 - 60.WX.YZ error 340, 377
- tray selection - use requested tray 340, 351, 379, 398
- trays
 - jams, clearing 340
 - locating 1
 - removal and replacement, DCF 1606
 - tray 2 or tray 3, remove and replace 692
 - tray heaters, remove and replace 785
- Trays menu, control panel 340, 351, 379, 476
- troubleshooting 378
 - additional tools 354
 - checklist 340, 351
 - control panel checks 340, 343
 - jams 362, 364
 - lights, using 340, 348
 - power 340
 - process 340
- Troubleshooting menu, control panel 519
- troubleshooting tools
 - control panel messages 376
 - CPMD 376
- Trusted Platform Module (TPM) 119

U

- understand lights on the formatter
 - formatter lights 340, 348
- understand the lights on the formatter
 - HP Jetdirect LEDs 340, 348
- unit parts
 - DCF, remove and replace 1606
 - HCI, remove and replace 1705
 - sHCI, remove and replace 1536
- USB hub PCA 123
 - removal and replacement 1287
- USB port
 - locating 3
- Use Requested Tray 340, 351, 379, 398

W

- warning iv
- Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE)
 - HP internal users and Channel partners 369
- weight
 - accessories 1, 6
 - printer 1, 6
- white backing 1367, 1422
- whole unit
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2650
- whole unit replacement
 - flatbed scanner 1466
 - integrated scanner asset 1333
- WISE
 - HP internal users and Channel partners 369